

THE  
PHILOSOPHY  
COMMONLY CALLED,  
THE  
MORALS

WRITTEN  
By the Learned Philosopher  
PLUTARCH

OF  
*CHAE R O N E A.*  
Translated out of Greek into English, and conferred  
with the Latine Translations and the French,

---

By *PHILEMON HOLLAND,*  
Doctor of *PHYSICK.*

---

Whereunto are annexed the Summaries necessary  
to be read before every *TREATISE.*

Newly Revised and Corrected.

---



---

LONDON,  
Printed by *S. G.* and are to be sold by *G. Bedell,* and *T. Collins,* at their  
Shop, at the Middle Temple-Gate, 1657.



COMMONLY CALLED,

THE



William Penn Esq. Proprietor  
of Pennsylvania 1703



TO THE

Most High and Mighty Prince,

**J A M E S,**

By the Grace of God,

**K I N G**

OF

ENGLAND, SCOTLAND, FRANCE

and IRELAND, Defender of the

F A I T H, &c.



**I**N this generall joy of affectionate and loyall subjects, testified by their frequent confluence from all parts, longing for nothing so much as the full fruition of that beautifull Star, which lately upon the shutting in of evening with us after our long Summers day, immediately by his radiant beames maintained still a twilight from the North, and within some few houres appeared bright shining above our Horizon, suffering neither the dark night and confused Chaos of Anarchy to overspread and subvert, nor the turbulent tempests and bloody broyles of factions sidings to trouble and pervert our State: I also, for my part could not stay behind, but in testimony of semblable love and allegiance shew my self; and withall, most humbly present unto your Highness, This Philosophy of PLUTARCH: which being first naturally bred in Greece; then,

## The Epistle Dedicatory.

transplanted in Italy, France, and other regions of the continent; after sundry Nativities, if I may so speak, reserved (not without some divine providence) unto this day, is now in this our Island newly come to light; ready both to congratulate your Majesties first entry upon the inheritance of these Kingdomes, & desirous also to enjoy the benefit of that happy Horoscope and fortunate Ascendant, under which it was born: even the favourable aspect of your gracions countenance: by vertue whereof, it may not only be marked to long life, feeble otherwise of it self, but also yeeld pleasure with profit to the English Nation.

Vouchsafes; therefore, my dear Lord and dread Sovereign, to accept that now at my hands, whole and entire, which in part Trajanus the best Roman Emperour that ever was, received sometime from the first Authour and Stock-father himself: Protect the same in English habit, whom in French attire Amiot Dedicated to the late most Christian King: and deign into her noble's favour and grace, than her younger Sister, to wit, the History or Parallele Lives, hath already obtained: which being transported out of France into England by that worthy Knight Sir Thomas North our Countrey-man, was Patronized by our late Sovereign Lady of famous memory Elizabeth. And the rather, for that considering the prerogative of birth-right, and the same accompanied with more variety and depth of knowledge, I may be bold to pronounce as much in her commendation, as the Poet wrote of Jupiter in comparison of his brother Neptune:

ἢ μὲν ἀμφοτέρῃσιν ἐμὸν γῆϑον, ἢ δ' ἴσ' ἅπταίς,  
ἀλλ' αὐτὴ φροτίη γὰρ... ἐξέλεσθαι ἤδεν.

These regards, albeit they were sufficient motives in themselves to induce me, for to attempt none other Patronage than the Name of my Liege Lord so gracious; nor to submit my labours to the censure of any person, before a King so judicious: yet was I more animated to enterprize the same, by the former experience that I had of a Princes benignity in that behalf: what time as I consecrated my English Translation of the Roman History written by Titus Livius, unto the immortal memory of the said Noble and renowned Queen. Now, seeing that with her Realms and Dominions, the best parts and gifts that were in her, be likewise hereditarily descended upon your royall person, and the same multiplied in greater measure, proportionable to the dignity of sex, the addition of scepters and diademes, and the weighty charge of so puissant and populous an Empire; it were in me a grosse absurdity, if not meer invidy, to make any doubt of that excellent vertue of all others, whereby Princes come neereſt unto the Nature of God, whose Majesty be upon earth they represent. To say nothing, how the world hath taken knowledge already, as well by your vertuous life and politick regiment hitherto, as also by the prudent and religious designments, delivered in those sage and learned Compositi-

Plutarch  
De fortu  
vel Vir-  
tut.  
Alexan-  
dri.  
Orat, 1.

ons of your Highness's penning, That your blessed intention is to hold on the same course still, not only <sup>herein</sup> ~~herein~~, a point that the Indian Potentate Porus required of Alexander the Great; but also <sup>wherein</sup> ~~wherein~~ the singular note that our present Author set upon all the actions of the said mighty Monarch; in this is much to be seen.

Since then both these attributes concur in your Noble Person, just cause have we, in all devout thankfulness to acknowledge the goodness of the Almighty, who

from

## The Epistle Dedicatory.

*from heaven above hath sent us so wise a Prince, under whose Reign we (if ever any Nation under the Sun) may assuredly expect that felicity and happiness, which the divine Philosopher Plato so much recommendeth: and in due reverence unto your Majesty, with one heart and voice, both sing and say:*

Dialo. 50  
De rep.

Hic ames dici Pater atq; Princeps :  
Serus in cælum redeas, tuoq;  
Lætus interfis populo, *Britannum*  
Prime Monarcha.

Horat. 1.  
Carm.  
od. 3.

Your Majesties most humble  
and obedient Subject,

**Philémon Holland.**

## A CATALOGUE



# CATALOGUE

CONTAINING

The Titles of every *TREATISE* in Order, thorough the whole *WORK*: with a direction to the Page, where any one of them beginneth.

1	Of the Nouriture and Education of Children.	1
2	How a young man ought to hear Poets: and how he may take profit by reading Poems.	17
3	Of Hearing.	17
4	Of Morall vertue.	64
5	Of Vertue and Vice.	78
6	That Vertue may be taught and learned.	80
7	How a man may discern a flatterer from a friend.	83
8	How to Bridle Anger.	117
9	Of Curiosity.	133
10	Of the Tranquillity and contentment of Mind.	144
11	Of Unseemly and naughty Bashfulness.	162
12	Of Brotherly Love.	173
13	Of Intemperate speech or Garrulity.	191
14	Of Avarice or Covetousness.	208
15	Of the naturall love or kindness of Parents to their children.	216
16	Of the plurality of Friends.	223
17	Of Fortune.	229
18	Of Envy and Hatred.	233
19	How a man may receive profit by his enemies.	236
20	How a man may perceive his own, proceeding and going forward in Vertue.	245
21	Of Superstition.	258
22	Of Exile or Banishment.	269
23	That we ought not to take up Money upon Usury.	282
24	That a Philosopher ought to converse especially with Princes and great Rulers, and with them to discourse.	288
25	How a man may praise himself, without incurring envy or blame.	300
26	What passions and maladies be worse, those of the soul or those of the body.	312
	27 Precepts	312

27	Precepts of Wedlock.	313
28	The banquet of the seven Sages.	325
29	Instructions for them that manage affairs of State.	346
30	Whether an aged man ought to manage publick affairs.	382
31	The Apophthegms or Notable Sayings, of Kings, Princes, and great Captains.	401
32	Laconick Apophthegms, or the notable sayings of Lacedaemonians.	445
33	The Apophthegms, that is to say, the notable sayings and answers of Lacedaemonian Dames.	479
34	The vertuous deeds of Women.	482
35	A Consolatory oration, sent unto A P O L L O N I U S, upon the death of his Son.	509
36	A Consolatory letter or discourse, sent unto his own Wife, as touching the death of her child.	533
37	How to comfort, that the divine Justice deferreth otherwhiles the punishment of wicked persons.	538
38	That Brute beasts have discourse of reason, in manner of a Dialogue named Gryllus.	561
39	Whether it be lawfull to eat flesh or no, the former oration of Treasile.	571
40	Of eating flesh the second Declaration.	576
41	That a man cannot live pleasantly according to the doctrine of E P I C U R U S.	580
42	Whether this common Mot be well said, L I V E H I D D E N, or, S O L I V E, as no man may know thou livest.	605
43	Rules and precepts of health, in manner of a Dialogue.	609
44	Of the Romans fortune.	627
45	The Symposiacks, or table Questions, The first Book.	641
	Of Symposiacks, the second Book.	661
	Of Symposiacks, the third Book.	680
	Of Symposiacks, the fourth Book.	698
	Of Symposiacks, the fifth Book.	713
	Of Symposiacks, the sixth Book.	729
	Of Symposiacks, the seventh Book.	742
	Of Symposiacks, the eighth Book.	764
	Of Symposiacks, the ninth Book.	785
46	The opinions of Philosophers.	802
	Of Philosophers opinions, the first Book.	804
	Of Philosophers opinions, the second Book.	817
	Of Philosophers opinions, the third Book.	826
	Of Philosophers opinions, the fourth Book.	833
	Of Philosophers opinions, the fifth Book.	841
47	Roman Questions.	850
48	Demaunds or questions as touching Greek affairs.	888
49	The Parallels, or a brief Collation, of Roman narrations, with the semblable reported of the Greeks.	906
50	The Lives of the ten Oratours.	918
51	Whether creatures be more wise, they of the land, or those of the water.	949
52	Whether the Athenians were more renowned for Martial Arms, or good Letters.	981
53	Whether of the twain is more profitable, Fire or Water.	989
54	Of the Primitive or first Cold.	992
55	Naturall Questions.	1002
56	Platonique Questions.	1016
57	A Commentary of the Creation of the soul, which P L A T O describeth in his Book Timaeus.	1030
	58 Of	93

58	Of all Necessity.	1048
59	A Compendious Review or Discourse, That the Stoicks deliver more strange opinions, than do the Poëts.	1055
60	The Contradictions of Stoick Philosophers.	1057
61	Of Common Conceptions against the Stoicks.	1081
62	Against COLOTES the Epicurean.	1109
63	Of Love.	1130
64	Of the Face appearing within the Roundle of the Moon.	1159
65	Why the propheteſſe PYTHIA, giveth no answer now from the Oracle, in verse or Meeter.	1185
66	Of the Demon or familiar Spirit of SOCRATES.	1202
67	Of the Malice of HERODOTUS.	1227
68	Of Musick	1248
69	Of the Fortune or vertue of King ALEXANDER, the first Oration.	1263
	Of the Fortune or vertue of K. ALEXANDER, the second Oration.	1272
70	Of ISIS and OSIRIS.	1286
71	Of the Oracles that have Ceased to give answer.	1320
72	What signifieth this word, EI, engraven over the Dore of APOLLOES Temple in the City of DELPHI.	1351



## OF THE NURTURE AND EDUCATION OF CHILDREN.

### The Summary.

**T**he very title of this Treatise discovereth sufficiently the intention of the Author; and whoſoever he was that reduced theſe Morals and mixt works of his into one entire Volume, was well adviſed, and had great reaſon to range this preſent Diſcourſe in the firſt and moſt place: For unleſſe our minds be framed unto vertue from our infancy, impoſſible it is that we ſhould performe any worthy act ſo long as we live. Now, albeit Plutarch (as a meer Pagan) hath both in this book, and alſo in others enſuing, where he treateth of vertues and vices, left out the chiefe and principall thing to wit, The Law of God and his Truth, (wherein he was altogether ignorant) yet nevertheleſſe, theſe excellent precepts by him delivered like raies which proceed from the light of nature remaining ſtill in the ſpirit and ſoul of man, as well to leave ſinners inexcusable, as to ſhew how happy they be, who are guided by the heavenly light of holy Scripture: are able to commence action againſt thoſe, who make profeſſion in word how they embrace the true and ſoveraigne Good, but in deed and effect do annihilate, as much as lieth in them, the power and efficacy thereof.

Moreover, in this Treatiſe he proveth firſt of all, That the generation of Infants ought in no wiſe to be defamed with the blot either of Adultery or Drunkenneſſe: Then, he entreath into a diſcourſe of their Education: and after he hath ſhewed, that Nature, Reaſon, and Uſage ought to concur in their inſtruction, he teacheth how and by whom they ſhould be nurtured, brought up and taught, where here- proveth ſharply the ſtate of ignorance and avarice of ſome Fathers. And the better to declare the excellency of theſe benefits, namely, good inſtruction, knowledge and vertue, which the ſtudy of Philoſophy doth promiſe and teach, he compareth the ſame with all the greateſt goods of the world: and ſo conſequently ſetteth down what vices eſpecially they are to ſhun and avoid, who would be capable of ſincere and true literature.

But before he proceedeth further, he deſcribeth and limiteth how far forth children well borne and of good parentage ſhould be urged and forced by compulſion: deciphering briefly the praifes of morall Philoſophy: and concluding withall, That the man is bleſſed, who is both helpfull to his neighbour as it becometh, and alſo good unto himſelfe. All theſe points above rehearſed, when he hath enriched and embellished with ſimilitudes, examples, apophthegmes, and ſuch like ornaments, he propoundeth divers rules pertinent to the inſtitution of young children: which done, he paſſeth from tender childhood to young full age, ſhewing what government there ought to be of young men: far from whom, he baniſheth and chaſtiſeth flatterers eſpecially: and for a final concluſion diſcourſeth of the kind behaviour of Fathers, and the good example that they are to give unto their Children.

A

THE

## The Education of Children.



As much as we are to consider what may be said as touching the Education of children free borne and defended from gentle blood, how and by what discipline they may become honest and virtuous, we shall perhaps treat hereof the better, if we begin at their very generation and nativity. First and foremost therefore, I would advise those who desire to be the fathers of such children, as may live another day in honour and reputation among men, not to match themselves and meddle with light women, common Courtizans I mean, or private Concubines. For a reproach this is that followeth in all the daies of his life, and a shameful stain which by no means can be fetched out, if haply he be not come of a good father or good mother; neither is there any one thing that presenteth it self more readily unto his detestment, and forger, in their mouth, when they are disposed to check, taunt and revile, than to twine him with such parentage. In which regard, wisely said the Poet Empirides:

*When at the grounds not well laid  
At first for our nativity;  
With parents fault, men will upbraid  
Both us and our posterity.*

A goodly treasure then have they who are well and honestly borne, when in the confidence and assurance thereof, they may be bold to bear their heads aloft, and speake their minds frankly wheresoever they come: and verily they of all others are to make the greatest account of this blessing, who with to have faire issue of their bodies lawfully begotten. Certain, a thing it is that ordinarily daunteth and casteth down the heart of man, when he is privy to the baseness of his birth, and knoweth some defect, blemish, and imperfection by his parents. Most truly therefore, and to the purpose right fitly saith the same Poet:

*The privy to fathers vice  
Or mothers fault reproachable,  
Will him debaseth who otherwise  
Is thought, shown, and commendable.*

Whereas contrariwise, they that are known to be the children of noble and worthy parents, be themselves highly, and are full of stomach and generosity. In which conceit and lofty spirit it is reported, that *Diaphantus* the son of *Themistocles*, was wont to say, and that in the hearing of many, That whatsoever pleased him, the same also the people of *Athen* thought well of: for that which I would have done, quoth he, my motherlike wife saith Yea unto it: what my mothers mind stands to, *Themistocles* my father will not gain say it: and look what likes *Themistocles* the *Athenians* all are will contented therewith. Where by the way, the magnanimity, and brave mind of the *Lacedaemonians* is highly to be praised, who condemned their King *Archidamus* in a great fine of money, for that he could find in his heart to espouse a wife of little stature, alledging therewith a good reason: Because, say they, his meaning is to get, not a breed of Kings, but Dwarf-kings, or divers Kings, to reigne over us.

Well, upon this first advertisement concerning children, there dependeth another, which they who wrote before us of the like argument, forgot not to set down; and what is that? namely, That they who for procreation of children will come neare unto women, ought to meddle with them, either upon empty stomachs, and before they have drunk any wine at all, or at leastwise, after they have taken their wine in measure, and soberly: for such will prove commonly wine-bibbers and drunkards who were engendered when their fathers were drunken: according to that which *Diogenes* laid upon a time unto a youth whom he saw beside himselfe, and far overteene with drinke; my lad, quoth he, thy father gat thee when he was drunke. And thus much may suffice for the generation of children.

As touching their nurture and education, whereof now I am to discourse: That which we are wont generally to say of all Arts and Sciences, the same we may be bold to pronounce of vertue, to wit, that to the accomplishment thereof, and to make a man perfectly virtuous, three things ought to concur, Nature, Reason, and Usage. By Reason, I understand doctrine and precepts: by Usage exercise and practice. The first beginnings we have from Nature; progresse and proceeding come by teaching and instruction: exercise and practice is performed by diligence: And all three together bring forth the height of perfection. If any one of these faile it cannot otherwise be, but this *Ursula* also should have her defect and be maimed: For Nature without learning is blind: *Diogenes* wanting the gift of nature is defective; and exercise void of the other twaine imperfect. And verily it fareth in this case much like as in Husbandry and tillage of the earth. For first and foremost requisite it is, that the ground be good: Secondly, that the Husbandman beskillfull; and in the third place, that the seed be cleane and well chosen. Semblably, Nature resemblen the soile: the Master who teacheth, representeth the labouring Husbandman: and last of all, the

rules

## Education of Children.

rules, precepts, admonitions, and examples are compared to the seed. All these good means (I dare with confidence avouch) met together, and inspired their power into the minds of these worthy personages, who throughout the world are so renowned; *Pittagoras* I mean, *Socrates*, *Plato*, and all the rest who have attained to a memorable name and immortal glory. Blessed then is that man and entirely beloved of the gods, whose hap it is by their favour and grace to be furnished with all three. Now if any one be of this opinion, that those who are not endued with the gift of naturall wit, and yet have the helps of the instruction and diligent exercise to the attaining of vertue, cannot by this means recover and repair the fore said defect: Know he, that he is much deceived, and to say more truly, quite out of the way: for as idleness and negligence doth marre and corrupt the goodnesse of nature: so, the indolence and diligence of good education supplieth the defect, and correcteth the fault thereof. Idle and slothfull persons (we say) are not able to compass the things that be easie: whereas contrariwise by study and travell, the greatest difficulties are achieved. Moreover, of what efficacy, and execution, diligence and labour is, a man may easily know by sundry effects that are daily observed. For we do evidently perceive that drops of water falling upon the hard rock do eate the same hollow: Iron and bras we see to weare and consume only by continual handling: The fellicies in Chariot wheels, which by labour are bended and curved, will not returne and be reduced againe, do what you can, to their former straightnesse: Like as it is impossible by any advice to set straight the crooked staves that Stage-players go withall. And evident it is, that whatsoever against nature is by force and labour changed and redressed becommeth much better and more sure than those things that continue in their own kind. But, are these the things only wherein appeareth the power of study and diligence? No verily. For there are an infinite number of other experiments; which will prove the same most clearly. Is there a peece of ground naturally good? Let it lie neglected, it becommeth wild and barren: Yea, and the more rich and fertile that it is of it selfe, the more waste and unprofitable it proveth for want of tillage and husbandry. Contrariwise, you shall see another plot hard, rough, and more stony than it should be: which by good ordering altho the careless hand of the husbandman soon bringeth forth faire and goodly fruit. Again, what trees are there which will not twine, grow crooked, and prove fruitlesse, if good heed be not taken unto them? Whereas, if due regard be had, and that carelesse employed about them which becommeth, they beare fruit, and yeeld the same ripe in due season. Is therewith body so found and able, but by neglect, riot, delicacy, and an evil habit or custome it will grow dull, feeble and unlithe, yea, and fall into a milking and consumption? On the other side, what complexion is there so faint and weak, which is not brought to great strength and perfection in the end by continual travell and ordinary exercises? Are there any horses in the world, which if they be well handled and broken while they are colts, will not prove gentle in the end, and suffer themselves easily to be mounted and manned? Contrariwise, let them remaine untamed in their youth, strong-headed, stiff-necked and untuly will they be always after, and never fit for service. And why should we marvel at these and such like matters, considering that many of the most savage and cruell beasts that be, are made gentle and familiar, yea, and brought to hand by labour and paines taken about them? Well said therefore that *Theophrastus*, whosoever he was, who being demanded, which *Theophrastus* of all others were most dull and slowest of spirit, answered thus, Even they that have given over warfare. But what need we to stand longer upon this point? For certaine it is that our manners and conditions are qualities imprinted in us by tract and continuance of time: and whosoever saith that 'Morall vertues are gotten by custome, in tiny conceits speaketh not amiss, but to very great purpose. And therefore with one example and no more produced by *Lycurgus* as touching this matter, I will knit up and conclude my discourse thereof. *Lycurgus*, him I mean who established the Laws of the *Lacedaemonians* took two whelps of one litter, and continuing both him the same time and damme: Those he caused to be nourished and brought up diversly, and unlike one to the other: that as the one proved a greedy and ravenous cur, and full of shrewd turns: so the other was given to hunting, and minded nothing but to quest and follow the game. Now upon a certaine day afterwards, when the *Lacedaemonians* were met together in a frequent Assembly, he spake unto them in this manner, My Masters, Citizens of *Lacedaemon*, Of what importance to engender vertue in the heart of man, custome, nurture, discipline and education is, I will presently shew unto you by an evident demonstration: and with that he brought forth in the sight of them all throe two whelps, and set directly before them a great platter of fops in broth, and therewith let loose also a live hare: but behold, one of them followed immediately after the hare, but the other ran straight to flap in the platter aforesaid. The *Lacedaemonians* wist not what to make of this. For to what purpose he shewed throe thoe their two dogs before laid, until he brake out into this speech. These two dogs (quoth he) had one damme, and the same sire but being bred and brought up diversly, see how the one is become a greedy cur, and the other a kind hound. And thus much may serve as touching custome and diversity of education.

It were meet now in the next place to treat of the feeding and nourishing of Infantes newly borne, I hold it therefore convenient that mothers reare their babes, and suckle them with their own breasts: For feed them they will with greater affection, with more care and diligence, as loving them inwardly, and (as the Proverbe saith) from their tender nailes, whereas much nor

\* Grace melius,  
milkis aptius  
educat de suis  
alys.

A 2

for

ses and foster-mothers carry not so kind a heart unto their nurselings, but rather a fained and counterfeit affection, as being mercenary and loving them indeed for hire only and reward. Furthermore, even nature her self is sufficient to prove, that mothers ought to suckle and nourish those whom they have borne and brought into the world: For to this end hath the given to every living creature that bringeth forth young the food of milke: and in great wilddome the divine providence hath furnished a woman with two teats for this purpose, that if happily she should be delivered of two twins at once, she might likewise have two fountaines of milke to yeeld nourishment for them both. Moreover, by this means more kind and loving they will be unto their children: and verily not without great reason: For this fellowship in feeding together is a bond that knitteth, or rather a wreath that straineth and stretteth benevolence to the utmost. The experience whereof we may see even in the very brute and wilde beasts, which hardly are parted from their company, with whom they have been nourished, but still they lowe and mowe after them. Mothers therefore (as I have said) ought especially to endeavour and do their best for to be nurses of their own children, if it be possible. But in case they cannot, by reason either of some bodily infirmity and indisposition that way, (for so it may fall out) or that they have a desire, and do make haste to be with child againe, and to have more children: then a careful eye and good regard would be had, not to entertaine those for nurses and governesses that come next to hand, but to make choise of the very best and most honest that they can come by, and namely, for faire conditions and good behaviour, to choose Greekish women before any other. For like as the members and limbs of little Infants, so soon as ever they be borne, are of necessity to be formed and fashioned, that afterwards they may grow straight and not crooked: even so, at the very first their hearts and manners ought to be framed and set in order: For this first age of childhood is moist and soft, apt to receive any impression: whilst the heart is tender every lesson may be soon intilled into it, and quickly will take hold, whereas hard things are not so easie to be wrought and made soft. And as Signers or Seales will quickly set a print upon soft wax: so the tender hearts of young children take readily the impression of whatsoever is taught them. In which regard, *Plato*, that heavenly and divine Philosopher, seemeth unto me to have given a wise admonition for nurses, when he warned them not to tell foolish tales, nor to use vain speeches inconsiderately in the hearing of young infants, for feare lest at the first their minds might apprehend folly and conceive corrupt opinions. Semblably the Poet *Phocylides* seemeth to deliver sage counsell in this behalfe, when he saith:

*A child's young and tender age  
Ought to be taught things good and sage.*

Neither is this precept in any wise to be forgotten or passed by. That other children also who are either to attend upon them whilst they be nursed and brought up, or to beate their company and be fed together with them, be chosen such as above all things are well mannered, and of good conditions: Then that they speake the Greeke tongue naturally, and pronounce the same most plainly and distinctly, for feare, lest if they sort with such feeders as either in language are barbarous, or in behaviour lewd and ungracious, they catch infection from them, and be tainted with their vices. For such old lawes and Proverbs as these are not to rile without good reason. *If thou converse and cohabite with a lame cripple, thou wilt soon leaue to limpe and halt thy selfe.*

Now when children be grown to that age, wherein they are to be committed unto the charge of Tutors, Schoole-masters and governours: then parents ought to have an especiall care of their state, namely, under whom they let them to be trained up: lest for want of good providence and fore-sight they betray them into the hands of some villaines, base barbarians, vain and light-headed persons. For most absurd and ridiculous is the practice of many men in this point: who if they have any servants more virtuous or better disposed than others, some of them they appoint to husbandry and tillage of their ground; others they make Masters of their ships. They employ them (I say) either in Merchandise to be their Factors, or as Stewards of their house to receive and pay all; or else to be banquers, and so they trust them with the exchanging and turning of their monies. But if they meet with one slave among the rest that is best to be cup-hortened, given to gluttony and belly cheare, or otherwise is untoward for any good service, him they let over their children to bring them up: Whereas indeed a governour over youth should be well given, and of a right good nature himselfe, such a one as *Phanix* was, who had the breeding and education of *Achilles*. The principall point therefore and most important of all that hitherto hath beene alledged is this, That choice men be sought out for to be teachers and masters of our children: who live in good name and without Challenge, whose carriage and behaviour is blamelesse: and who for their knowledge and experience of the world are the best that may be found. For surely the fource and root of all goodness and honesty is the good education and training up of our children in their tender age. And like as good husbandmen and gardeners are wont to pitch props and stakes close unto their young plants, to stay them up and keep them straight: even so, discreet and wise teachers plant good precepts and wholesome instructions round about their young Schollars, to the end that thereby their manners may bud forth commendably, and be framed to the rule of vertue. But contrariwise you shall have some fathers now a daies, that deserve no better than to be spit at in their very faces: who either upon ignorance, or for want

of

of experience, before any trial made of those Masters, who are to have the conduct and charge of their children, commit them hand over head to the tuition of lewd persons, and such as beare hew and make profession of that which they are not. Neither were this absurdity altogether so grosse and ridiculous, if it be they faulted herein of meere simplicity and default of fore-knowledge. But here is the height of their folly and error, that themselves knowing otherwhiles the insufficiency, yea, and the naughtinesse of some such Masters, better than they doe who advertise them thereof: yet for all that they commit their children unto them, partly being overcome by the flattery of claw-backs, and partly willing to gratifie some friends upon their kind and earnest entreaty. Wherein they do much like for all the world to him, who lying very sick in body, for to content and satisfie a friend, leaveth an expert and learned Physitian who was able to cure him, and entertaineth another blind leech, who for want of skill and experience quickly killeth him: or else unto one who being at sea, forgoeth an excellent Pilot whom he knoweth to be very skilfull, and for the love of a friend maketh choice of another that is most insufficient. O *Jupiter*, and all the gods in heaven! Is it possible that a man, bearing the name of a father, should make more account of a friends request, than of the good education of his own children? Which considered, had not that ancient Philosopher *Crates* (thinke you) just occasion to lay often times, that if possibly he might, he would willingly mount to the highest place of the City, and there cry out aloud in this manner: What mean you my Matters, and whether run you headlong, carking and caring all that ever you can to gather goods and rake riches together as you do: whilst in the meane time you make little or no reckoning at all of your children, unto whom you are to leave all your wealth? To which exclamation of his I may adde thus much moreover and say, That such fathers are like unto him that hath great regard of his shoe, but taketh no heed unto his foot. And verily, a man shall see many of these fathers, who upon a covetous mind, and a cold affection toward their own children, are grown to this passe, that for to spare their purse, and ease themselves of charge, chooe men of no worth to teach them: which is as much as to seeke a good market where they may buy ignorance cheaply. Certes *Arifippus* said very well to this purpose, when upon a time he prettily mocked such a father who had neither wit nor understanding, and gybed pleasantly with him in this manner: For when he demanded of him how much he would take for the training up and teaching of his son? He answered, An hundred Crowns: A hundred Crowns! quoth the father: by *Hercules* I sweare, you aske too much out of the way; For with a hundred crowns I could buy a good slave, True quoth *Arifippus* againe, Lay out this hundred crowns for you may have twaine, your son for one, and him whom you buy for the other. And is not this a folly of all follies, that nurses should use their young infants to take meat and feed themselves with the right hand, yea, and rebuke them if happily they put forth their left: and not to forecast and give order that they may learne civility, and heare age and whosome instructions? But what befalleth afterwards to these good fathers, when they have first nuried their children badly, and then taught them as lewdly? Mary I will tell you, When these children of theirs are grown to mans estate, and will not abide to heare of living orderly, and as it becommeth honest men: but contrariwise tall headlong into outrageous courses, and give themselves wholly to sensuality and idle pleasures: Then such fathers all repent for their negligence past, in taking no better order for their education: but all too late, considering no good eniueh thereupon: but contrariwise, the lewd pranks which they commit daily augment their griefe of heart and caule them to languish in sorrow. For some of them they see to keep company with flatterers, parasites, and smell-seats, the lewdest, basest, and most curied wretches of all other, who serve for nothing but to corrupt, spoile, and marre youth: Others, to captivate and spend themselves upon harlots, queanes, and common trumppers, proud and sumptuous in expence: the entertainment of whom is infinitely costly. Many of them consume all in delicate fare, and feeding a dainty and fine tooth: Many of them fall to dice, and with mumming and masking hazard all they have. And divers of them againe entangle themselves in other vices more hardy and adventurous, courting faire dames, and making love to other mens wives: for which purpose they walke disguised in the night, like the franticke Priests of *Bacchus*, to commit adulteries, buying sometimes one only nights pleasure with the price of their life: Whereas if such as these had conversed beforewith any Philosopher they would never have taken such waies as this, and given themselves to like vanities: but rather they would never have taken a new lease, and learned a lesson of *Dionenes*, who in words not very vill and seemly, howbeit to the point not untruly, gave this counsell, and said, Go thy waies to the Stews (I advise thee) and enter into some Brothell house, where thou shalt know how the pleasure that colteth little or nothing differeth not from that which is bought full dearly.

To knit up therefore all in one sum I will conclude, and this my conclusion ought of right to be esteemed for an oracle, rather than a simple counsell and admonition: That the beginning, midit, and end of all these matters lieth only in a virtuous nurture and holy education, which I avouch are the very means that be operative and powerful for the attaining both of vertue and true happinesse. As for all other things which we count good in this world are in comparison hereof, mortall, transitory, small, and not worth the seeking after with such care and study. Nobility I confesse to be a goodly thing, but it is the gift of our Ancestors, Riches, who doubteth that they be gay and precious matters? Howbeit, lying in the power of fortune only, who taketh the

same many times from those that possess them, and giveth them away to such as never look for them. Moreover, much wealth is the very mark wherat they flout who are common cut-purses, privy and domestical thieves, Sycophants, and promoters, and that which is most, the wickedest persons in the world oftentimes meet therewith. Glory and honour are things venerable, howbeit uncertaine and mutable. Beauty is lovely, and very much desired, but it continueth a small while. Health is worth much, and yet you see how soon it changeth. Strength of body who witheth not? But quickly it is decayed and gone, either by sickness or yeares: inasmuch, as whosoever vaunteth and beareth himselfe in his able body, is greatly deceived, and cometh far short of his reckoning. For what is mans force, compared with that of other beasts, I meane, Elephants, Bulls, and Lions? It is learning and knowledge only which in us is divine, heavenly, and immortal. For in mans nature two parts there are to be considered of all other most principally, to wit, understanding, and speech. And of these, understanding is as it were the Master that commandeth: Speech, the servant that obeyeth. Now the foresaid understanding is not exported to the injury of fortune: no flanders raised by Sycophants can take it away: Sickness hath no power to corrupt and destroy it: neither doth it decay or perish by old age: For it is the only thing that being in yeares waxeth young and fresh. Length of time, which doth diminish and impair all things else, addeth still more knowledge to our understanding, the elder that we are. The violence of war, which in manner of a flame casteth down and carrieth all away with it, is not able to make havock and spoyle of knowledge and learning: that only is norin danger thereof. And in my conceit, *Stilpo* the Megarian Philosopher gave a most worthy and memorable answer unto King *Demetrius*, who having forced, sacked, and rased the City of *Alexandria* to the very foundation, demanded of him what losses he sustained in that general sack? None at all (quoth he) For war can make no spoile of virtue. To which answer of *Stilpo*, what sonderth well the Apophthegme of *Socrates*, who (as I take it) being asked of *Gorgias*, what opinion he had of the great King and Monarch of the Persians in those daies, whether he deemed him happy or no? I wot not (quoth he) how he is furnished with virtue and learning: as if he judged that true felicity consisted in these two things, and not in the transitory gifts of fortune.

But as my temsell and advice unto parents is, to hold nothing in the world more deere and precious, than to traine up their children in good letters, and virtuous manners: so I say againe, that they ought to have an eye unto that literature and institution which is sound, pure and uncorrupt: furthermore, to sequester and withdraw their children, as far as possibly they can, from the vanity and foolish desire to be seen and heard in the frequent and publick assemblies of the people. For commonly we find, that to please a multitude, is to displease the wiser sort. And that I speake truth herein, *Eno pides* giveth good testimony in these verses:

*No filed tongue I have, nor eloquence,  
To speake in place of frequent audiences  
Among my severes and those in number few,  
I love to give advice, and make no show:  
For, those whose speech doth please a multitude,  
With learned men are foolish thought and rude.*

For mine own part, I observe those men who endeavour to speake to the appetite and pleasure of the base and vulgar sort, that ordinarily they become loose and dissolute persons, abandoned to all sensuality. And verily not without great appearance of reason: For if to gratifie and content others, they have no regard of honesty: more likelihood there is a great deale, that for to do a pleasure to themselves, and feed their own humour and appetite, they will forget all honour and devoir: yea, and sooner give themselves to their own delights, than follow the straight rules of temperance and sobriety.

But now, what good thing is there moreover that we are to teach our children? and whereto should we advise them for to give their minds? A goodly matter no doubt it is to do nothing rashly, nor to speake a word unadvisedly: But (as the old Proverb saith) whatsoever is faire and goodly, the same also is hard and difficult. As for these orations which be made *extempore*, and without premeditation, they go away with great facility, and are very rash and full of vanity: And such commonly as to speake know not well either where to begin or when to make an end. Also, over and above other absurdities and faults which they commit, who are accustomed in this wise to parle at a venture, and to let their tongue run at randome, know not how to keep any meane or measure of speech but fall into a marvellous superfluity and exesse of words: Whereas on the contrary side, when a man thinketh before hand what he should say, he will never overthrow him so far as to passe beyond the bounds of temperate and proportionable language. *Pericles*, as we have been given to understand being oftentimes called upon and importuned by the people, and there expressly by name, for to deliver his opinion as touching a matter in question, would not so much as rise from his place, but excused himselfe, and said, I am not provided to speake. Semblably *Demosthenes*, one who greatly affected the said *Pericles*, and followed his steps in policy and managing of State-affaires, being called by the Athenians to sit in counsell with them and requested to give his advice in certaine points, refused and made the same answer, saying, I have not yet thought upon it, neither am I prepared. But peradventure some man will say,

this is an headlesse tale and a devised report received by tradition from hand to hand, and not grounded upon any certaine testimony. Listen then what he saith himselfe in that oration which he made against *Midas*, wherein he setteth evidently before our eyes, the profit that cometh by premeditation: For in one place thereof, these be his words: "My Matters of *Athena*, I confesse plainly, and cannot deny or dissemble, that I have taken as much paines in composing of this oration as possibly I could: For an idle wretch I had been, if having suffered, and suffering still such indignities as these, I would not consider and study before-hand what I had to say in reason concerning these matters. Neither alledge I this, as one who condemned altogether the promptitude and readinesse of the tongue, and the gift of utterance *extempore*, but the ordinary custom and exercise thereof in every small matter, and of no great importance. For otherwhiles it is tolerable: provided alwaies that we use it so, as we would take a purging medicine. And to speake more plainly, my meaning is, that I would not have young men before they be grown to mans age, for to speake ought without good advice and consideration. But after they be well grounded, and have gathered sufficient root which may yeeld pithy speech, then if occasion be offered, and that they be called unto it, I thinke it convenient they should be allowed to speake freely. For even as they who have been fettered a long time, and worned irons on their feet, when they are loosed from their gyves, cannot go well at the first, because they have continued such a while with clogs at their heeles, but ever and anon are ready to trip and stumble: so it fareth with those that of long time have been tongue-tied (as it were) and restrained of their liberty of speech: For if happily there be presented some matter, whereto they are to speake on a sudden they will retain still the same manner and forme of stile, and speake no otherwise than they did before with premeditation. Many, to suffer young boyes to make lubinary, and inconsiderate orations, is the next way to bring them to vaine babbling, and causeth them to utter many words altogether impertinent to the matter. It is reported, that upon a time a vaine and foolish painter came to *Apelles*, and shewed him a picture, saying withall, This image I drew thus and thus soon. I wot well (quoth *Apelles*) at the first sight, although thou saidst never a word that it was quickly painted and in haste: and I marvel rather that thou hast not painted many more such in the same time. But to returne againe to my former discourse which I began withall, as touching speech, like as I would give counsell to beware of glorious and brave words, and to avoid that manner of haughty voice which belongeth to tragedies, and is meete for Theaters: So I advise and admonish againe to flye as much that kind of language which is too small and over-lowly: For that the one which is so loud and aloft, exceedeth civility: and the other that is as much beneath, bewrayeth overmuch fearfulness. Moreover, as the body ought not only to be sound and in health, but also in good plight and well-liking: so our speech should be not only cleare from sickness, as it were, and malady, but also strong and able: For that a thing that is, sound and faile only we do but barely praise: whereas that which is hardy and adventurous we admire and wonder at. That which I have said, as touching the tongue and speech, the same opinion I have of the heart and the disposition thereof. For I would not have a youth to be overbold and audacious: neither do I like of him if he be too timorous and fearful: For the one turneth in the end to presumption and impudency: so the other into servile cowardise. But here lieth all the matter and cunning, as well in this as in all things else, namely, to cut even in the midit, and to hold the golden meane. And since I am entred thus far into the discourse as touching the literature and erudition of youth, before I proceed any further I will deliver mine opinion thereof generally in these termes: Namely, That to be able to speake of one thing and no more, is first and forme in my conceit no small signe of ignorance. Then, I suppose that the exercise and practice thereof soon bringeth satiety. And againe, I hold it impossible to continue evermore in the same: For so to be ever in one long breedeth tediousnesse, and soon a man is weary of it: whereas variety is alwaies delectable both in this, and also in all other objects as well of the eye as the eare. And therefore it behoveth that a child well defended and free borne be not suffered to want either the sight or the hearing of all those Arts and liberrall Sciences which are linked, as it were, and comprehended within one circle, and thereupon called *encycloia*, i.e. Circular. These would I have him to run through every one superficially for a taste only of them: forasmuch as to attaine unto the perfection thereof were impossible. Yet so, as his chiefe and principall study be employed in Philoophy: which opinion of mine I may very well confirme by a proper similitude. For all one it is as if a man would say, a commendable thing it were to fall along the coasts, and see many a City: but expedient and profitable to make abode and dwell in the best: and much like to that pleasant and pretty conceited speech of *Bion* the Philosopher, who said, That even as the lovers and wooers of *Lady Penelope*, when they could not enjoy the Mistress herselfe, went in hand with her waiting maides, and companied with them: so as many as are not able to attaine unto Philoophy, spend and consume themselves in the study of other Arts, which in comparison of it are nothing worth. And therefore we ought to make this account, that Philoophy is the principall head (as it were) of all other learning and knowledge whatsoever. True it is, that for the maintenance and preservation of the body men have devised two Arts, to wit, Physicke, and bodily exercise: of which twaine, the one procureth health: the other addeth thereto a good habitude and strong constitution: but for the infirmities and maladies of the soule, there is no other physick but only Philoophy: For by the meanes of it, and

together with it, we may know what is good, what is bad, what is honest and dishonest, what is just, and generally what to choose, and what to refuse, how we ought to behave ourselves towards the gods, and towards our parents, what our demeanour should be with our elders, what regard we are to have of laws, what our carriage must be to strangers, to superiors: how we are to converse with our friends, in what sort we ought to demean ourselves towards our children and wives, and finally, what behaviour it becometh us to shew unto our servants and familie. Forasmuch as our duty is to worship and adore the gods, to honour our parents, to reverence our ancients, to obey the laws, to give place unto our superiors and betters, to love our friends, to use our wives chastely and with moderation: to be kind and affectionate to our children, and not to be outrageous with our servants, nor to tyrannize over them. But the principall and chiefe of all is this: not to shew our selves overjoyous and merry in prosperity, nor yet exceeding heavy and sad in adversity: not in pleasures and delight dissolute, nor in anger furious, and transported, or rather transformed, into brutish beasts by choler. And these I esteeme to be the sovereign fruits that are to be gathered and gotten by Philosophy. For to carry a generous and noble heart in prosperity is the part of a braveminded man: to live without envy and malice is the signe of a good and tractable nature: to overcome pleasures by the guidance of reason is the act of wise and sage men: and to bridle and restrain choler is a mastery that every one cannot skill of: But the height of perfection in my judgement those only attaine unto, who are able to joyne and interminge the politick government of weale publike with the profession and study of Philosophy: For by this meanes (I suppose) they may enjoy two of the best things in the world, to wit the profit of the Common weale by managing State-affaires: and their owngood, living to as they do in tranquillity and repose of mind, by the means of Philosophy. For whereas there be among men three sorts of life, namely, Active, Contemplative, and Voluptuous: this last named, being dissolute, loose, and thrall to pleasures, is brutish, beastly, base, and vile: The contemplative wanting the active is unprofitable: and the active, not participating with the speculation of Philosophy, committeth many absurd enormities, and wanteth ornaments to grace and beautifie it. In which regard men must endeavour and assay as much as lieth in them both to deale in government of the State, and also to give their minds to the study of Philosophy, to far forth as they have time and publike affaires will permit. Thus governed in times past noble Pericles: Thus ruled Archytas the Tarentine: Thus Dion the Syracusan, and Epimenidas of Thebes swayed the State where they lived: and both of them, as well as the one as the other, conversed familiarly with Plato. As touching the institution of children in good literature, needlesse (I suppose) it is to write any more. This only will I adde unto the rest that hath been said, which I suppose to be expedient or rather necessary: namely, that they make no small account of the workes and books of the ancient Sages and Philosophers, but diligently collect and gather them together: so as they do it after the manner of good husbandmen: For as they do make provision of such tooles as pertaine to Agriculture and husbandry, not only to keep them in their possession but also to use them accordingly: so this reckoning ought to be made, that the instruments and furniture of knowledge and learning be good books if they be read and perused: For from thence as from a fountaine they may be sure to maintaine the same.

And here we are not to forget the diligence that is to be employed in the bodily exercise of children: but to remember that they be sent into the Schooles of those Masters who make profession of such feats, there to be trained and exercised sufficiently, as well for the swift and decent growth, as for the ability and strength of their bodies: For the fast knitting and strong complexion of the body in children is a good foundation to make them another day decent and personable old men. And like as in time of a calme and faire season, they that are at sea ought to make provision of necessary meanes to withstand foule weather and a tempest: even so, very meet it is, that tender age be furnished with temperance, sobriety, and continency, and even betimes reprove and lay up such voyage-provision for the better sustentation of old age. Howbeit in such order ought this labour and travell of children to be dispensed, that their bodies be not exhausted and dried up, and so by that means they themselves be over-wearied, and made either unmeet, or unwilling, to follow their book studies, and take their learning: For as Plato said very well, Sleep and lassitude be enemies to learning. But why do I stand hereupon so much, being in comparison so small a matter?

Proceed I will therefore and make haste to that which is of greatest importance, and passeth all the rest that hath been said before: For this I say, that youth ought to be trained to military feats, namely, in launching darts and javelins, in drawing a bow and shooting arrows, in chasing also and hunting wild beasts. Forasmuch as all the goods of those who are vanquished in fight be exposed as a prey and booty to the conquerours: neither are they fit for warfare, and to beare armes, whose bodies having been daintily brought up in the shade, and within house, are corpulent, and of a soft and delicate constitution.

*The lean and dry, the raw bone souldier fierce,  
Who train'd hath been in armes and warlike toyle,  
In field whole ranks of enemies will pierce,  
And in the lists all his concurrent toyle.*

But what may some men say unto me? Sir, you have made promise to give us examples and precepts,

precepts, concerning the education of all children free borne, and of honest parentage: and now, me thinks, you neglect the education of commoners and poore mens children, and deliver no instructions but such as are for gentlemen; and be suitable to the rich and wealthy only. To which objection it is no hard matter to make answer. For mine owne part, my desire especially is, that this instruction of mine might serve albut in case there be some, who for want of meanes cannot make that use and profit, which I could wish let them lay the weight upon fortune, and not blame him who hath given them his advice and counsell in these points. And yet for poore men such much will I say. Let them endeavour and straine themselves to the utmost of their power to bring up their children in the best manner: and if they cannot reach unto that, yet must they aime thereat, and come as neare as their ability will give them leave.

I have been willing to infer these points by the way into this present argument, and to charge my discourse over and above therewith, that I might prosecute other precepts remaining behind, which concerne the education of young men. Thus much therefore I say moreover: that children must be trained and brought to their duty in all lenity, by faire words, gentle exhortations, and mild remonstrance, and in no wise (pardon me) by stripes and blows: For this course of whipping and beating seemeth meet for bondslaves, rather than persons of free condition. And to say a truth, by this meanes they become dull and senselesse, nay, they have all study and labour afterwards in hatred and horror: partly for the smart and paine which they abide by such correction, and in part by the contumely and reproach that they sustain thereby. Praise and dispraise be far better and more profitable to children free borne, than all the whips, rods, and boxes in the world: the one for to drive them forwards to well-doing, the other to draw them back from doing ill: but both the one and the other are to be used in alternative course. One while they would be commended; another while blamed and rebuked: and namely, if at any time they be too jocond and insolent they ought to be snubbed a little and taken down, yea, and put to some light shame: but soon after raised up againe by giving them their due praises. And herein we might imitate good nurses, who when they have fed their infants a crying give them the breast for to still them againe. Howbeit, a measure would be kept, and great heed taken that they be not too highly commended, for feare lest they grow proud and presume overmuch of themselves: For when they be praised exceedingly they waxe careless, dissolute and enervate: neither will they be willing afterwards to take more paines. Moreover, I have known certaine fathers, who through excessive love of their children have hated them afterwards. But what is my meaning by this speech? Surely I will declare my mind, and make my words plain anon by an evident example and demonstration. Some fathers (I say) there be, who upon a hot and hasty desire to have their children come soon forward, and to be the foremost in every thing, put them to immoderate travell and excessive paines: in such sort, that they either sinke under the weight of the burden, and so fall into grievous maladies, or else finding themselves thus furcharged and overladen, they are not willing to learne that which is taught them. And it fareth with them as it doth with young herbs and plants in a garden, which so long as they be watered moderately, are nourished and thrive very well: but if they be over-much drenched with water, they take harme thereby and are drowned: Even so we must allow unto children a breathing time between their continual labours: considering and making this account, That all the life of man is divided into labour and rest: and for this cause Nature hath so ordained, that as there is a time to be awake, so we find a time also to sleep. One while there is war, and another while peace: It is not alwaies winter and foule weather, but summer likewise and a faire season. There be appointed not only worke daies to toyle in, but also festivall holidays to loose and disport our selves. In summe, rest and repose is (as it were) the sauce unto our travell, and this we may observe as well in senselesse and livelesse things, as in living and sensible creatures. For we unbend our bowes, and let slack the strings of Lutes, Harpes, and such musickall instruments, to the end that we may bend and stretch the same againe. And in one word, as the body is preserved and maintained by repletion and evacuation successively: so the mind likewise by repose and travell in their turnes.

Furthermore, there be other fathers vvorthy of rebuke and blame, who after they have once baken their children to Masters, Tutors, and Governours, never deigne afterwards themselves, either to see or heare them, vvhether they might know how they learne: vvherein they do faile very much in their duty. For they ought in proper person to make triall howv they profit, they should ever and anon (after some few daies passed between) see into their progresse and proceeding, and not to repose their hope and rest altogether upon the discretion and disposition of a mercenary Master. And verily this careful regard of the fathers, vvi I vvorke also greater diligence in the Masters themselves, seeing that by this meanes they are called etoones, as it were, to account and examined how much they pierce their scholars, and how they profit under their hands. To this purpose may be well applied a pretty word spoken sometimes by a wile estuary of a stable Nothing (quoth he) feedeth the steed so far as doth the Masters eye.

But above all things the memory of children ought daily to be exercised: for that it is, as a man would say, the Treasury and Storehouse of all learning. Which was the cause that the ancient Poets have feigned, That Lady *Mnemosyne*, that is to say, *Memory*, was the mother of the Muses: Whereby they would seeme under an enigmaticall and darke speech to give us to understand, that nothing availeth lo much either to breed, or to feed and nourish learning, as Memory.

And



And therefore great diligence would be used in the exercise thereof every way: whether the children be by nature good of remembrance and retentive: or otherwise, we shall confine and give to oblivion. For the gift of nature in the one by exercise we shall confine and augment: and the imperfection or default in the other, by diligence supply and correct: in such sort, that as they shall become better than others: so these shall prove better than themselves. For very wisely to this purpose said the Poet *Hesiodus*:

*If little skill to little thou dost add,  
A heape at length and mickle will be had.*

Over and besides, I would not have fathers to be ignorant of another point also, as touching this memorative part and faculty of the mind: namely, that it serveth much not only to get learning and literature, but also is a means that carrieth not the least stroke in worldly affairs: For the remembrance of matters past furnisheth men with examples sufficient to guide and direct them in their consultations of future things.

Furthermore, this care would be had of young children, that they be kept from filthy and unseemly speeches: For words (as *Democritus* saith) are the shadows of deeds. Trained also they must be to be courteous, affable, and fair spoken, as well in entertainment of talk with every one, as in saluting and greeting whomsoever they meet: For there is nothing in the world so odious as to be coy and surly of speech: to make it strange and to disdain for to speake with men. Again, young students shall make themselves more lovely and amiable to those with whom they converse, in case they be not so opinative and stiff, that they will not relent nor give place one jot in disputations, if they have once taken a pitch against others. For a commendable and goodly matter it is for a man to know, not only how to overcome, but also to suffer himselfe: otherwhiles to be overcome: especially in such things wherein the victory bringeth hurt and damage. For verily such a conquest may well and truly be called, according to the common Proverbe, A *Canaan* victory, that is to say, which turneth to the detriment and losse of the winner. In confirmation whereof I may well alledge the testimony of the wise Poet *Hesiodus*, who in one of his Tragedies hath these verses:

*When one of twaine, that argue and dispute,  
Grows into heat of words and will not rest:  
I hold him much the wiser who is mute*

*And saies his tongue, that he do not contest.*

Now come I to other points wherein youth is to be instructed, and those of no less importance, nay, rather I may be bold to say, of greater consequence than all those whereof I have dispatched hitherto: And what be they? Namely, that young men be not riotous, and given to superfluity of expence: That they hold their tongue: That they master their anger: And finally, That they keep their hands pure and cleane. But let us consider these precepts particularly, what each of them in severall doth import: and more easily may they be understood, if we illustrate the same by lively examples. To begin then first with the last: There have been known great personages, who being once permitted to put forth their hands for to take bribes and money unjustly, lost all the honour which they had: won the rest of their life time: As for example, \* *Gylippus* the *Lacedemonian*, who having once opened those bags or coffers of money by turning their bottoms upwards, and taken forth what pleased him, was shamefully banished out of *Sparta*, and lived obscurely in exile. As touching the gift of bridling choler, and not to be angry at all, it is a singular virtue, and perfect wise men they are indeed who can so do: Such as *Socrates* was, who being greatly abused by an insolent, audacious, and gracelesse youth, that spared him not, but had turned and kicked him with his heeles, seeing those about him to be very angry and out of patience, stamping and faring as though they would run after the party, to be avenged of such animosity: How now my Masters, (quoth he) what if an ass had flung out, and given me a rap with his heeles, would you have had me to have yarked out and kicked him again? Howbeit, this ungracious impenitent nor cleave away with impunity: for being rated for his insolence and lewd demeanour and reproached by every man with the termes of Wining aile, Kicking colt, and such like nick-names, he fell into such a fit of melanchollie, that he strangled himselfe in a halter. Also when *Aristophanes* the Poet exhibited the Comedie called *Cloudes*, wherein he let flye and discharged upon *Socrates* all manner of flanders and contumelies that he could devise, in somuch as one of them who were present at the very time when he railed thus licentiouslie, demanded of him, and said, Art thou not nettled, O *Socrates*, to heare and see thy selfe thus blasphemed and noted in publicke place? Not a whit (quoth he againe) for vvell I wot, that I am in a Theatre, where I make sport, and am laughed at, no other while than at some great feast and glad I am that I can make the audience to merrie. The like for all the world is reported of *Arcybius*, the *Tarentine*, and *Plato* the one being returned home from the war, wherein he was L. General, found his land forsake, neglected and untilld: whereupon he sent for his Bailife of husbandrie, who had the charge thereof: and when he was come before him, Were I not exceeding angry (quoth he) I would make thee feele my fingers, and give thee thy desert. And *Plato* being upon a time displeased with a servant of his, who had a licentious tooth, and had done some ungracious pranks, called unto him *Speusippus* his discipson, and said, Go your wayes, take me this knave aside, and fvinge him vvell: for I my selfe am verie angry. But some men perhaps

\* Vide *Plut.*  
lib. 1.  
Vide *Isid.*

will say unto me, These be hard matters to do and imitate. True it is, I wot well: howbeit, endeavour we must and strive with our selves what we can, according to the example of these worthy men, to cut off somewhat of our impatience, and to curb out excessive anger: for we may not look to be equal and comparable in any respect to them, either in experience and skill or in vertue. Howbeit, let us nevertheless, like the Priests and Torch-bearers (if I may so say) of the gods, ordained to give light, and shew unto men the reliques of their wisdom and learning, no lesse than if they were very gods, assay to follow them, and tread in their steps, endeavouring as much as lieth in us, to be furnished with their examples for our better instruction. As for the rule and government of the tongue (for of it, according to my promise, I am to discourse) if there be any man, who thinketh it to be no great matter, but a small and frivolous matter, he is very wide and far out of the right way. For a point it is of great wisdom, to know in time and place to keep silence, and far better by many degrees than any speech whatsoever. And for this cause (I suppose) it was, that our Ancestors in times past instituted those pious ceremonies of sacred mysteries, to the end that being tied to hold our peace by that means, we might transfer that fear which we learned in the service of the gods, to the fidelity and secrecy which we are to observe in mens affairs: and verily never was there man that repented for holding his tongue, but many a one hath often beshrewed himselfe for speaking. Again, that word which a man hath held in at one time he may easily utter at another well enough: but a word once passed out of the mouth, he cannot possibly recall it againe. I remember that I have heard of an infinite number of men, who by occasion of an intemperate tongue of their own have fallen headlong into exceeding great calamities, among whom I will select one or two by way of example, to illustrate the theme that I have in hand, and overpass the rest. *Prothamus* King of *Aegypt*, him I meane who was surnamed *Philadelphus*, espoused his own sister *Arionne*, and married her: at what time one *Sotades* came unto him and said, You put your agler, Sir, thorough the oyle that is not made for it: For this one word he was cast into prison, where he remained a long time in misery and routed in the end, suffering condigne punishment due for his lavish tongue and foolish words: and for that he thought to make other men laugh, himselfe wept for it a long time after. The like, and in a manner the same, both did and suffer another, named *Theocritus* the Sophister, sayeth that the punishment which he abid was much more grievous. For when King *Alexander* the Great had by his letters intive given commandment that the Greeks should provide Robes of purple against his returne, became upon his coming home he minded to celebrate a solemn sacrifice unto the gods, in token of thanksgiving, for that he had achieved a victory over the Barbarians: by reason of which commandment the States and Cities of *Greece* were enjoyned to contribute money by the poll. Then this *Theocritus*, I have ever to this day (quoth he) doubted what *Homer* meant by this word Purple death: but now I know full well that this is the purple death which he speaketh of. By which words he incurred the high displeasure of King *Alexander*, and made him his heavy friend ever after. The same *Theocritus* another time provoked himselfe the deadly hatred of *Antigonus* King of the Macedonians, by reproaching him in way of mockerie with his deformity and defect, for that he had but one eye. For the King being advanced *Eurypion* his Master Cook to a place of high calling and command, thought him meet to be sent unto *Theocritus*, as well to give account unto him, as also to take account of him reciprocally. *Eurypion* gave him to understand so much from the King, and about this businesse repaired often unto him. In the end, I know well (quoth *Theocritus*) thou wilt never have done untill thou have made a dith of meat of me, and serve me up to the table before this Cyclops to be eaten: twitting the King with his one eye and *Eurypion* with his cookery. But *Eurypion* came upon him againe presently, and said, Thou shalt be then without a head first. For I will make thee pay for thy prating and foolish tongue, and with that he went immediately to the King, and reported what he had said, who made no more ado but sent his writ and caused his head to be smitten off.

Over and besides all these precepts before rehearsed, children ought to be inured from their very infancy in one thing which is most holy and becoming religious education, and that is, to speake the truth: For surely lying is a bale and servile vice, detestable and hateful among all men, and not pardonable so much as to meane slaves, such as have little or no good in them. Now as touching all that which I have delivered and advised hitherto, which concerneth the honest behaviour, modesty and temperance of young children I have delivered the same frankly, resolutely, and making no doubt thereof. Mary, for one point which now I am to touch and handle, I am not so well resolved, but much distracted in my mind hanging to and fro, as it were, in unequal balance, and know not which way to encline, whether to the one side or to another: In somuch as I am in great perplexity and feare: neither wote I whether I were better to go forward and utter it, or to turne back and hold my peace. And yet I will take heart, and boldly declare what it is. The question to be debated is this, Whether we ought to permit those that love young boyes, to converse with them and haunt their company, or contrariwise, keep them away and debar them that they neither come neare nor have any speech with them: For when I behold and consider the sullen nature and severity of some fathers, who for fear that their sons should be abused, will in no wise abide that those who love them should in any sort keep company, or take with them, but thinke it intollerable, I am afraid either to bring up such an order, or to approve and maintain

maintaine the fame. But when on the other fide I propound before mine eyes the exampls of *Socrates, Plato, Xenophon, Alcibiades, Cebes*, and all the iute and fort of thoe worthy men in times past, who allowed the manner of loving young boyes, and by that means brought rich youths to learne good sciences, to skill of government and State-matters, and to frame their manners to the rule and square of vertue, I am turned quite and altogether of another mind, yea, and incited wholly to imitate and follow those great perionages, who have the testimony of the Poet *Enripides* on their fide, saying in one place after this manner,

*All loves do not the flesh grossly respect:  
One love there is which doth the soule affect,  
One love that beautifies and agnifies,  
With justice becometh and equity,  
With innocence likewise and chastity.*

Neither ought we to surpasse one laying of *Plato*, which he delivereth between mirth and good earnest in this wise, Good reason it is, quoth he, that they who have done worthy service and achieved great prowesse and victory in a battell, be privileged to kill whom it pleaseth them among their captives. And for those who desire nothing but the beauty and fresh floure of the body, mine opinion is they should be put back and kept away: but such in one word as love the beauty of the mind are to be chozen and admitted unto them. Also I hold, that such kind love is to be avoided and forbidden, which they practice in *Thebes* and *Elis*, as also that which in *Candy* they call Ravishment: but that which is used in *Athens* and *Lacedaemon*, we ought to receive and allow, even in young and faire boyes. Howbeit concerning this matter every man may for me opine what he thinketh good, and do as he seeth cause and can find in his heart.

Moreover, having sufficiently treated of the good nurture and modest behaviour of children, I purpose to proceed unto the age of young men: but first I will peakemy mind briefly once for all as touching one point. For many a time I have complained of those who have brought up divers ill customs, and this above the rest, namely, to provide for their children whiles they be very young and little, masters, teachers, and governors: but after they are grown once to some years, they give them head, and suffer them to be carried away with the violent heat of youth: whereas contrariwise it were meet and needfull, to have a more careful eye unto them, and to hold a freighter hand over them at that time, than during their infancy and childhood. For who knoweth not that the faults of young children are but small, light and easie to be amended, as for example, some shrewdnesse and little disobedience to their tutors and governors, or haply some negligence and default in not giving care to their teachers, and not doing as their Masters appoint them: But contrariwise the offences that yonkers commit are many times outrageous and hainous, as gormandize and lussetting, robbing of their fathers, dice play in masks and mummeries, excess in feasting, banqueting, quaffing and carousing, wanton love of young maidens, adulteries committed upon married wives, and thereby the overthrow of houses, and confusion of families. In regard of which enormities it behoveth parents to repress and bridle their wild and untamed affections with great care and vigilance: For this flower of age having no forecast of thirt, but set altogether upon spending, and given to delights and pleasures, wineth and flingeth out like a skittish and frampoll horse, in such sort that it had need of a sharpe bit and short curb: And therefore they that endeavour not, but with all good means forcibly to hold in and restrain this age, but give young men liberty and suffer them to do after their own mind, plunge them ere they be aware into a licentious course of life and all manner of wickednesse. Wherefore good and wise fathers ought in this age especially to be vigilant and watchfull over their sons, they ought, I say, to keep them down and inure them to widome and vertue, by teaching by threatning, by intreaty and prayers, by advice and remontrances, by perivasion and counsell, by faire promises, by setting before their eyes the exampls of some who being abandoned to their pleasures and all sensuality have fallen headlong into great calamities, and wofull miseries: and contrariwise of others who by mastering their lusts, and conquering their delights, have won honour and glorious renowe. For surely these be the two Elements and foundations of vertue, Hope of reward and feare of punishment: For, as hope inciteth and setteth them forward to enterprize the best and most commendable acts, so feare puckereth them back, that they dare not enter upon lewd and wicked pranks. In summe, Fathers ought with great care to divert their children from frequenting ill company, for otherwise they shall be sure to catch infection and carry away the contagion of their lewdnesse. This is that *Pythagoras* expressly forbiddeth in his *Ænigmaticall* precepts under covert and darke words, which because they are of so small efficacy to the attaining of vertue, I will briefly let down by the way, and open their meaning. Taste not (quoth he) of the blacke tailed fishes, *Melanurus*, which is as much to say, as, Keep not company with infamous persons, and such as for their naughty life are noted (as it were) with a blacke coale. Passe not over a ballance. That is, we ought to make the greatest account of equity and justice, and in no case to transgresse the same. Sit not upon the measure *Chauxis*. That is to say, we are to fly sloath and idleness, that we may forecalt to make provision of things necessary to this life. Give not every man thy right hand, which is all one with this, Make no contracts and bargaines indifferently with all persons. Weare not a ring freight upon thy finger, i.e. Live in freedom and at liberty: neither intangle and clog thy life with troubles with gyes. Dig not nor rake into the fire with a sword: whereby he giveth us a caveat, not to provoke farther a man that

\* *Chauxis* contained two letters, or after some a flexer and half, which was diminutivum quondam. P. de cas. Rbr. dig. 4. 16. cap. 17. antiqua.

that is angry, for that is not meet and expedient: but rather to give place unto those that are in heat of choller. Eate not thy heart, that is to say, offend not thine own soule, nor hurt and consume it with penive cares. Abtaine from beanes, i.e. Intermeddle not with the affaires of State and government: for that in old time men were wont to passe their voyces by beanes, and so proceeded to the election of Magistrates: Put not vields in a chamber-port: whereby he signifieth, that we should not commit good and civill words to a wicked mind: because speech is the nutriment of the understanding, which becometh polluted by the lewdnesse of men. Returne not back from the limits and confines when thou comest unto them, that is to say, If we perceive death approaching, and that we are come to the uttermost bounds of our life, we ought to beare our death patiently, and not bediscouraged thereat.

But now it is time to return again to my matter which I propoed before in the beginning, namely, as I have already laid, we are to withdraw our children from the society and companie of lewd persons, and flatterers especiallie: for that which many a time and often I have laid to divers and sundry fathers, I will now repeat once againe, namely, That there is not a more mischievous and pestilent kind of men, or who do greater hurt to youth, and sooner overthrow them, then these flatterers, who are the undoing both of fathers and sons, causing the old age of the one, and the youth of the other, wretched and miserable, presenting with their lewd and wicked counsels an inevitable bait, to wit, Pleasure, wherewith they are lure to be caught. Fathers exhort their sons that be wealthy to sobriety: and these incite them to drunkenness. Fathers give them counsell to live chaste and continent: these provoke them to lust and loosefence drift. Fathers bid them to save, spare, and be thrifty: these will them to spend, scatter, and be wasteful. Fathers advise their children to labour and travel: these flatterers give them counsell to play or sit still and do nothing. What? all our life, say they is no more but a moment and minute of time, to speake of: we must live therefore, and enjoy our own, whiles we have it: we must not live beside our selves, and languish. What need you regard and care for the menaces of a father, an old doing foole carrying death in his face, and having one foot in the grave, we shall see him one of these daies turne up his heels, and then will we soon have him forth, and carry him aloft bravely to his grave. You shall have one of these come, and bring unto a youth some common harlot out of the linking stwres, having borne him in hand before, that she is some brave dame and citizens wife, for to furnish whom, he must rob his father, there is no remedy. Thus fathers, good men, in one houre are bereaved and spoyled of that which they had saved many a yeare for the maintenance of their old age. To be short, a wretched and curd generation they be: hypocrites, pretending friendship, but they cannot skill of plaine dealing and franke speech. Rich men they claw, looth up and flatter: the poore they conteme and despise. It seemeth they have learned the Art of linging to the Harps, for to seduce young men: for when their young masters, who maintaine and feed them, begin to laugh, then they let up by and by a loud laughter, then they yawn and shew all their teeth: counterfeite cranks, fained and suppoed men: balfard members of mankind and this life: who compose themselves, and live to the will and pleasure of rich men: and notwithstanding their fortune is to be free borne, and of franke condition, yet they choole voluntarily to be slaves: who thinke they have great injury done unto them if they may not live in all fulnesse and superfluitie, to be kept delicately, and do nothing that good is. And therefore all fathers that have any care of their childrens good education and well-doing, ought of necessity to chafe and drive away from them these gracelesse imps, and shamelesse beasts: they shall do well also to keep from them such kitchin-scolles as be to be unhappy and given to do shrewd turnes: for such as they are enough to corrupt and marre the best natures in the world.

All these rules and lessons which hitherto I have delivered, do concerne honesty, vertue and profit: but those that now remaine behind, pertaine rather to humanity, and are more agreeable to mans nature. For in no case would I have fathers to be very hard, sharp, and rigorous to their children: but I could rather wish and desire that they winke at some faults of a young man, yea, and pardon the same when they clyp them, remembering that they themselves were sometimes young. For like as Physicians mingling and tempering otherwise some sweet juyce or liquor with bitter drugs and medicines, have devised that pleasure and delight should be the meates and way to their patients good: Even so, fathers ought to delay their eager reprehensions and cutting rebukes with kindnesse and clemency: one while letting the fiddle oole and giving head a litle to the youth till desires of their children: another while againe reining them short, and holding them in as hard: but above all, with patience gently to beare with their faults. But if so be fathers cannot otherwise do, but be soone angry: then they must asoone have done and be quickly pacified. For I had rather that a father should be lusty with his children, so he be appeased anon, than flow to anger, and as hard to be pleased again. For when a father is so hard-hearted, that he will not be reconciled but carrieth still in mind the offence that is done, it is a great signe that he hateth his children. And I hold it good that fathers sometime take not knowledge of their childrens faults, and in this case make some use of hard hearing and dimme sight, which old age bringeth ordinarily along with it, as if by reason of the e's infirmities they neither saw whome what when they see well enough, nor heard that which they heare plainly. We beare with the faults of friends: what strange matter is it then to tolerate the imperfections of our own children? Many a time when our servants have over-drunke themselves, and (suffered

therewith, we search not too narrowly into them, nor rebuke them sharply: therefore keep thy son one while short, be frank another while, and give him money to spend freely. Thou hast been highly offended, and angry with him once, pardon him another time for it. Hath he practised discreetly with any one of thy household servants, and beguiled thee? Dissemble the matter and bridle thine ire. Hath he been at one of thy farms, met with a good yoke of oxen and made money thereof? Commend him in the morning to do his duty and bid thee good morrow, belching foure, and smelling strongly of wine, which the day before he drunk at the tavern with companions like himself: seem to know nothing. Sentech he of sweet perfumes, & costly pomanders? Hold thy peace and say nothing. These are the means to tame and break a wild and coltish youth. True it is, that such as naturally be subject to wantonness or carnall lust, and will not be reclaimed from it, nor give care to those that rebuke them, ought to have wives of their own, and to be yoked in marriage: for surely this is the best and surest meanes to bridle those affections, and to keep them in order. And when fathers are resolved upon this point, what wives are they to seeke for them? Surely those, that are neither in blood much more noble, nor in state far wealthier than they: For an old saying it is and a wife, Take a wife according to thy selfe. As for those that wed women far higher in degree, or much wealthier than themselves, I cannot say they be husbands unto their wives, but rather slaves unto their wives goods.

I have yet a few short lessons to annex unto those above rehearsed, which when I have set down, I will conclude, and knit up these precepts of mine. Above all things fathers are to take heed, that they neither commit any grosse fault, nor remit any one part of their own duty: to the end they may be as lively examples to their own children; who looking into their life as into a cleare mirror, may by the precedents by them given, forbear to do or speake any thing that is unseemly and dishonest: For such fathers who reprove their children for those parts which they play themselves, see not how under the name of their children they condemne their own selves. But surely, all those generally who are ill liveries, have not the heart to rebuke so much as their own servants; much lesse dare they find fault with their children. And that which is worst of all, in living ill themselves, they teach and counsell their servants and children to do the same: For looke where old folke be flamed, there must young people of necessity be most gracelesse and impudent. Endeavour therefore we ought for the reformation of our children, to do our selves all that our duty requireth: and herein to imitate that noble Lady Eurydice, who being a Slaviconian born, and most barbarous, yet for the reformation of her own children she took paines to leame good letters when she was well flexed in years. And how kind a mother she was to her children, this Epigram which she her selfe made and dedicated to the Muses, doth sufficiently testifie and declare:

*This Cupid here of honest love a true Memoriall is,  
Which whilom Dame Eurydice of Hierapolis  
To Muses nine did dedicate: whereby in soule and mind  
Conceiv'd she was in latter daies, and brought forth fruit in kind.  
For when her children were well grown; good ancient Lady she,  
And carefull mother took, the paines to learne the A.B.C.  
And in good letters did so far proceed, that in the end  
She taught them those sage lessons all, which they might comprehend.*

But now to conclude this Treatise, To be able to observe and keep all these precepts and rules together which I have before set down, is a thing happily that I may wish for, rather than give advice and exhort unto. Howbeit, to affect and follow the greater part of them, although it require a rare felicity and singular diligence; yet it is a thing that man by nature is capable of, and may attaine unto.

## How a Young Man ought to beare Poets, and how he may take profit by reading Poems.

### The Summary.

Forasmuch as young Students are ordinarily allured as with a bait by reading of Poets, in such sort, as willingly they employ their time therein, considering that Poeticke hath I wot not what Sympathy with the first heats of this age: therefore by good right this present discourse is placed next unto the former. And albeit, to speake properly, it pertaineth unto those only who read ancient Poets, as well Greeke as Latine, to take heed and beware how they take an impression of dangerous opinions, in regard either of religion or manners: yet a man may comprehend likewise under it all other profane authors, out of which a mind that is not corrupt may gather profit, so they be handled wisely, and with discretion. To which effect Plutarch delivereth in this treatise good precepts: And after he hath shewed generally,

generally, that in Poesie there is delight and danger withall: he refresheth briefly those who stately commend it: Then, as he proceedeth to advertise that this ground and foundation is to be laid, namely, that Poets are liars: he describeth what their fictions be, how they ought to be confidered, and what the scope and mark is whereto Poets doth aime and boot: Afterwards he adviseth to weigh and ponder well the intention of Poets, unto which they address and accommodate their verses: to beware of their repugnances and contradictions: and to the end that we be not so soon damned by any dangerous points which they deliver one after another, to oppose against them the opinions and counsels of other persons of better mark. Which done, he addeth moreover, and saith, That the sentences intermingled here and there in Poets, deeply sufficiently against the evill doctrine that they may seeme to teach elsewhere: also, in taking heed to the diverse significations of words to be rid and freed from great encombrances and difficulties: discouraging moreover how a man may make use of their descriptions of vices and virtues: also, of the words and deeds of those personages whom they bring in: searching unto the reasons and causes of such speeches and discourses: thereunto to draw in the end a deeper sense and higher meaning, reaching even to Morall Philosophy, and the gentle framing of the mind unto the love of vertue. And for that there be some hard and difficult places, which like unto forked waies, may leave the minds of the Readers doubtfull and in suspence: he sheweth that it is an easie matter to apply the same well, and that withall a man may reforme those sentences ill placed, and accommodate them to many things. And in conclusion, framing this discourse to his principall intention, he treateth how the praises and dispraises which Poets attribute unto persons are to be considered: and that we ought to confirme all that which we find good in such authors by testimony taken out of Philosophy, the only scope wherunto young men must tend in reading of Poets.

## Reading and bearing of Poems and Poets.

That which the Poet Philoxenus said of flesh, that the sweetest is that which is least flesh: of fish likewise that the most favorite is that which is least fish, let us, O Marcus Sedarus, leave to be decided and judged by those, who, as Caro said, had their palls more quick and sensible than their hearts. But, that young men take more pleasure in those Philosophicall discourses, which favour least of Philosophy, and seeme rather spoken in mirth than in earnest, and are more willing to give ear thereto, and suffer themselves more easily to be led and directed thereby, is a thing to us notorious and evident. For we see that in reading not only *Æsop's* fables, and the fictions of Poets, but also the book of *Heraclides*, entitled *Abantis*, and that of *Ariston*, named *Lyca*; wherein the opinions of Philosophers, as touching the soule, are mingled with tales and feigned narrations devised for pleasure, they be ravished, as one would say, with great contentment and delight. And therefore such youths ought not only to keep their bodies sober and temperate in the pleasures of meat and drinke, but also much more to accustom their minds to a moderate delight in those things which they heare and read, using the same temperately as a pleasant and delectable sauce, to give a better and more favourable taste to that which is healthful, wholesome and profitable therein. For neither those gates that be shut in a City do guard the same and secure it for being forced and won, if there be but one it standing open to receive and let in the enemies: nor the temperance and continency in the pleasures of other senses preserve a young man for being corrupted and perverted, if for want of forecalt and heed-taking he give himselfe to the pleasure only of the eare. But for that the hearing approacheth nearer to the proper seat of reason and understanding (which is the braine) so much the more hurt it doth unto him that receiveth delectation thereby, if it be neglected, and not better heed taken thereto. Novv so far much happily, as it is neither possible nor profitable to refrain from the reading and hearing of Poems, such young men as are of the age either of my son *Sedarus*, or of your *Cleander*, let us, I pray you, have a carefull eye unto them, as standing more in need of a guide novv to direct them in their readings, than they did in times past to stay and dade them when they leared to go. This is the reason, that methought in duty I was bound to fend unto you in writing, that which not long since I discoursed of by mouth, as touching the writings of Poets: to the end that you may read it your selfe, and if you find that the reasons therein delivered be of no lesse vertue and efficacy than the stones called *Amethysts*, which some take before and hang about their necks, to keep them from drunkenness as they sit at banquets, drinking wine merrily; you may imprint and communicate the same to your son *Cleander*, to pre-occupate and prevent his nature which being not dull and heavy in any thing, but every way quick, lively and pregnant, is more apt and easie to be led by such allurements.

In Polypes head there is to be had,

One thing that good is, and another as bad,

for that the flesh thereof is pleasant and favour enough in taste to him that feedeth thereupon: but (as they say) it causeth trouble some dreames in the sleep, and imprinteth in the fantasie strange and monstrous visions. Semblably, there is in Poeticke much delectation and pleasure, enought to entertaine and feed the understanding and spirit of a young man: yet nevertheless, he shall meet with that there which will trouble and carry away his mind into errors, if his hearing be not well guided and conducted by sage direction. For very well and fitly it may be said not only of the land of *Ægypt*, but also of Poetry;

*Mixed drugs plenty, as well good as bad,  
Medicines and poisons are there to be had,  
which it bringeth forth and yeeldeth to as many as converse therein. Likewise:*

*Therein sweet love and wantonnesse,  
with dalliance you shall find;  
And sugered words, which do beguile  
the best and wisest mind.*

For that which is so deceitfull and dangerous therein, toucheth not at all those that be wit-  
lessefolles, foolles, and grosse of conceit. Like as *Simonides* answered upon a time to one, who de-  
manded of him, Why he did not beguile and circumvent the Theſſalians as well as all other  
Greeks; Because, quoth he, they are too sottish for me to deale withall, and for such, that I cannot  
skill of deceiving them. *Gorgias* also the Leontine was wont to say of a Tragedy, That it was a  
kind of deceit, whereby he that deceived became more juſt than he who deceived not; and he  
that was deceived wiser than another who was not deceived. What is then to be done? Shall we  
conſtraine our youth to go aboard into the Brigantine or Barke of *Epicurus*, to faile away and  
ſlie from Poetry, by plaſting and flopping their eares with hard and ſtrong waxe, as *Myſſus*; some-  
times ſerved thoſe of *Iſthaca*? Or rather by environing and defending their judgement with ſome  
diſcouſe of true reaſon, as with a defensive band about it, to keep and guard them, that they  
be not carried away with the allurements of pleaſure unto that which might hurt them: Shall  
we reforme and preſerve them?

*For ſure, Lycurgus, though he was  
The valiant ſon of ſlow Dryas,*

ſhewed himſelfe not wiſe nor well in his wits, when he went throughout his whole Realme, and  
cauled all the vines to be cut down and deſtroyed, becauſe he ſaw many of his ſubjects troubled  
in their braines, and drunken with wine: whereas he ſhould rather have brought the nymphs  
(which are the ſpring waters) nearer, and keep in order that fooliſh, furious, and outrageous god  
*Bacchus*, as *Plato* ſaith, with another goddeſſe that was wiſe and ſober. For themingling of wa-  
ter with wine delayeth and taketh away the hurtfull force thereof: but killeth not withall the  
wholome vertue that it hath: Even fo we ought not to cut off, nor abolish Poetry, which is a  
part and member of the Muſes and good literature: But when as the ſtrange fables and Theatrical  
fictions therein, by reaſon of the exceeding pleaſure and ſingular delight that they yeeld in  
reading them, do ſpread and ſwell unmeaſurably, ready to enter forcibly into our conceit ſo far as  
to imprint therein ſome corrupt opinions: then let us beware, put forth our hands before us,  
keep them back and ſlay their courſe. But where there is a Grace and Muſe met together, that  
is to ſay, delight conjoynd with ſome knowledge and learning: where, I ſay, the attractive  
pleaſure and ſweetneſſe of ſpeech is not without ſome fruit, nor void of utility, there let us bring  
in withall the reaſon of Philoſophy, and make a good medly of pleaſure and profit together. For  
as the herb *Mandrages* growing neere unto a Vine doth by inuſion tranſmit her medicinable  
vertue into the wine that cometh of it, and procureth in them that drinke afterwards thereof,  
a more mild deſire and inclination to ſleep ſoundly: Even ſo, a Poem receiving reaſons and argu-  
ments out of Philoſophy, and intermingling the ſame with fables and fictions, maketh the learn-  
ing and knowledge therein contained to be right amiable unto young men, and ſoon to be con-  
ceived. Which being ſo, they that would be learned and Philoſophers indeed, ought not to re-  
ject and cōdemne the works of Poetry, but rather ſearch for Philoſophy in the writings of Po-  
ets: or rather therein to praſtice Philoſophy, by uſing to ſeek profit in pleaſure, and to love the  
ſame: otherwiſe if they can find no goodneſſe therein, to be diſpleaſed and diſcontented, and to  
fall out therewith. And truly, this is the very beginning of knowledge and learning: for according  
to the Poet *Sophocles*,

*Lay well thy ground, whatever thou intend:  
For a good beginning makes an happy end.*

Fiſt and formeſt therefore, the young man whom we would induct and traine to the reading  
of Poetrie, ought to have nothing in his heart ſo well imprinted, nor ſo ready at hand, as this com-  
mon ſaying,

*Poets all to ſay a ſooth  
Are Liars, ſlow, and ſpeake untruth.*

And verily as Poets ſometimes lye willfully, or otherwiſes they do it againſt their wils: wil-  
fully and of purpoſe, for that being deſirous to tickle and pleaſe the eares, a thing which moſt  
Readers deſire and ſeek after, they thinke that ſimple and plaine verity is more unliker for that  
purpoſe then leiſing: For truth recounting a thing as it was done, keepeth to it ſtill, and albeit the  
iſſue and the end thereof happily be unpleaſant, yet nevertheleſſe the goeth not aide but re-  
poreth it outright: whereas a tale or lye deviſed for delight, quickly diverteth out of the way, and  
ſoon turneth from a thing which grieveth, unto that which is more delightfull. For there is no  
foam in time and metre, no trope or figurative ſpeech, no loſty ſtile, no metaphor ſo ſilly bor-  
rowed, no harmony, no compoſition of words, how ſmoothly ſoever they run, that carrieth the  
like grace and is either to attractive or retentive, as a fabulous narration well couched, artificially  
entangled, and aptly delivered. But as in a picture drawn to the life, the colour is more effectual

all to move and affect our ſenſe, then the ſimple partraying and fiſt draught, by reaſon of a cer-  
taine reſemblance it hath to the perſonage of man or woman, which deceiveth our judgement:  
Even ſo in Poems, a lie intermingled with ſome probability and likelihood of a truth doth ex-  
cite and ſtir more, yea, and pleaſe better by far, than all the art and ſtudy that a man is able to em-  
ploy either in compoſing excellent verities, or ending any poliſhed proſe, without entertaining  
fables and fictions Poeticall. Whereupon it came to paſſe, that *Socrates*, who all his lifetime  
made great profeſſion to be a defender and maintainer of the truth, being minded upon a time to  
take in hand Poetry, by occaſion of certaine dramas and viſions appearing unto him in his ſleep:  
in the enterprize whereof finding himſelfe to have no aptneſſe nor grace at all in deviſing lies, did  
into verſe certaine fables of *Æſop*, ſuppoſing verily there could be no Poetrie where there were  
no lies. Many ſacrifices we know to have been celebrated without piping and dancing. But never  
was there known any Poetry but it was grounded upon ſome vaine fables and loud leiſing.  
The verſes of *Empedocles* and *Parmenides*, the book of *Nicander*, entituled *Theriacs*, where he  
treateth of the biting and ſtinging of venomous ſerpents, and of their remedies. The morall ſen-  
ſences of *Theognis* are writings which borrow of Poetry their loſtineſſe of ſtile and meaſure of  
ſyllables, to beare them up mounted on high to avoid the baſe foot-paſſe (as it were) of proſe.  
When as we read therefore in Poeticall compoſitions, any ſtrange & abſurd thing as touching the  
gods, demy-gods, or vertue, ſpoken by ſome worthy perſonage of great renowne, he that belee-  
veth ſuch a ſpeech, and receiveth it as an undoubted truth, wandereth in error, and is corrupted  
in opinion: but he that ever and anon remembereth and ſetteth before his eyes the charmes and  
illuſions that Poetry ordinarily uſeth in the invention of lying fables, and can eſtimate beſſe him-  
ſelfe, and ſay thus thereto,

*O quaint device, O ſie and crafty gin,  
More changeable than ſpotted Onions ſkin:  
Why jſteſt thou and yet thy brow doſt knit?  
Deceiving me, yet ſeem'ſt to teach me wit.*

He, I ſay, ſhall never take harme, nor admit into his underſtanding any evill impreſſion, but repre-  
hend and reprove himſelfe when he ſearcheth *Nepheus*, and ſtandeth in dread, left he ſhake, cleave,  
and open the earth, and ſo diſcover hell: he will rebuke alſo himſelfe when he is offended and  
angry with *Apollo*, for the principall \* man of all the Greekes, of whom *Thetis* complaineth thus \* *Achilles*  
in the Poet *Æſchylus*, as touching *Achilles* her ſon,

*Himſelfe did ſing and ſay all good of me:  
Himſelfe alſo at wedding preſent was:  
Yet for all this himſelfe and none but he,  
Hath ſonne and done to death my ſon, ſaid.*

He will likewiſe repreſſe the teares of *Achilles* now departed, and of *Agamemnon* being in hell,  
who in their deſire to revive, and for the love of this life, ſtretch forth their impotent and feeble  
hands. And if it chance at any time that he be troubled with paſſions, and ſurpriſed with their  
enchancements and forcery, he will not ſtick nor feare to ſay thus unto himſelfe,

*Make haſte and ſpeed, without delay,  
Recover ſoone the light of day:  
Beare well in mind what thou ſeeſt here,  
And all report to thy bed-chamber.*

*Homer* ſpake this in mirth and pleaſantly, fitting indeed the diſcouſe, wherein he deſcribeth hell  
as being in regard of the fiction a tale fit for the eares of women and none elie: Theſe be the ſa-  
bles that Poets do feigne voluntarily. But more in number there are which they neither deviſe  
nor counterfeit, but as they are perſwaded and do beleeve themſelves, ſo they would beare us in  
hand, and infect us with the ſame untruths, as namely, when *Homer* writeth thus of *Jupiter*,

*Two loſt then of long ſleeping death, he did in ballance put,  
One for Achilles hardy knight, and one for Hector ſlow:  
But when he paſſ'd it juſt in mid, behold, for Hector death  
Weigh'd down to aunto hell beneath: Then Phœbus ſtop his breath,*

To this fiction *Æſchylus* the Poet hath aptly fitted one entire Tragedy, whi h he intituled  
*Psychraſta*, that is to ſay the weighing of Soule, or Ghoſts in ballance. Wherein he deviſeth to  
ſtand at theſe ſcales of *Jupiter*, *Thetis* of the one ſide, and *Aurora* of the other, praying each the  
other forth their ſons as they fight. But there is not a man who ſeech not clearly, that this is but a  
made tale and mere fable deviſed by *Homer*, either to content and delight the Reader, or to bring  
him into ſome great admiration and aſtoniſhment. Likewiſe in this place:

*'Tis Jupiter that moveth war:  
He is the cauſe that men do ſar.*

As alſo this of another Poet:

*When God above ſome houſe will overthrow,  
He makes dole, it twice mortall men below.*

Theſe and ſuch like ſpeeches are delivered by Poets, according to the very conceit and belief  
which they have. whereby the error and ignorance which themſelves are in as touching the  
nature of the gods they derive and communicate unto us. Seemably, the ſtrange wonders and

marvels of Hell; The descriptions by them made which they depaint unto us by fearefull and terrible termes, representing unto us the fantastick apprehensions and imaginations of burning and flaming rivers, of hideous places and horrible torments: there are not many men but wot well enough that therein be tales and lies good store: no otherwise than in meats and viands, you shall find mixed otherwhiles hurtfull poyson, or medicinable drugs. For neither *Homer* nor *Pindarus*, nor *Sophocles*, have writtten thus of Hell, believing certainly that there were any such things there:

*From whence the dormant rivers dead  
Of black and shady night,  
Cast up huge mists and clouds full dark,  
that over-whelme the light:  
Likewise,  
The Ocean coast they sailed still along,  
Fast by the cliffs of *Leucas* rock among.  
As also,  
Here boiling waves of gulfes so deep do swell,  
Where lies the way and down-fall into hell.*

And as many of them as bewailed and lamented for death as a most pitious and wofull thing, or feared want of sepulture as a miserable and wretched case, uttered their plaints and griefes in these and such like words:

*For sake me not unburied so,  
Nor unburied when you go.  
Sensibly,  
And then the soule from body flew,  
and as to hell she went;  
She did her death, her losse of strength  
and youthfull yeares lament.  
Likewise,  
Do not me kill before my time,  
for why? to see this light  
Is sweet: force me not under earth,  
where nothing is but night.*

These are the voices, I say, of passionate persons, captivate before to error and false opinions. And therefore they touch us more nearly, and trouble us so much the rather, when they find us likewise possessed of such passions and feebleness of spirit, from whence they proceed. In which regard we ought to be prepared betimes, and provided alwaies before hand to encounter and withstand such illusions, having this intent: creadly evermore retounding in our eares, as it were, from a trunke or pipe, That Poetry is fabulous, and maketh small reckoning of truth. As for the truth indeed of these things, it is exceeding hard to be conceived and comprehended even by those who travell in no other business, but to search out the knowledge and understanding of the thing, as they themselves do confesse. And for this purpose the verses of *Empedocles* would be alwaies ready at hand, who saith that the depth of such things as these

*No eye of man is able to perceive;  
No eare to heare, nor spirit to conceive,  
Like as these alio of *Xenophanes*.  
Never was man, nor ever will be,  
Able to sound the verity  
Of those things which of God I write,  
Or of the world I do endite.*

And I assure you, The very words of *Socrates* in *Plato* imply no lesse, who protesteth and bindeth it with an oath, that he cannot attaine to the knowledge of these matters. And this will be a good motive to induce young men to give lesse credit unto Poets, as touching their certaine knowledge in these points, wherein they perceive the Philosophers themselves to doubtfull and perplexed, yea, and therewith so much troubled.

Alfo the better shall we stay the mind of a young man and caule him to be more wary, if at his first entrance into the reading of Poets, we describe Poetry unto him: giving him to understand that it is an art of Imitation, and a science correspondent every way to the feat of painting: and not only must he be acquainted with the hearing of that vulgar speech so common in every mans mouth, that Poetrie is a speaking picture, and picture a dumbe Poetrie: but also we ought to teach him, that when we behold a Lizard or an Ape well painted, or the face of *Therites* lively drawn, we take pleasure therein, and praise the same wonderfully; not for any beauty in the one or in the other, but because they are so naturally counterfeited. For that which is foule of it selfe and ill-favoured in its own nature, cannot be made faire and seemly: but the skill of resembling a thing well, be the same faire, or be it foule, is alwaies commended: whereas contrariwise, he that takes in hand to puttray an ill-favoured body, and makes thereof a faire and beautiful image, shall exhibite a sight neither seemly nor decent. Some painters you shall have to delight in painting

cing of strange, foolish, and absurd actions: as for example, *Timomachus* represented in a table the picture of *Medea*, killing her own children: *Theopaint Orestes* murdering his own mother: *Parrhasius* described with his penill the counterfeite rage and raddnelle of *Ulysses*, and *Charephanes* puttrayed the wanton dalliance and dealing of men and women together uncleanly. With which arguments, and such like, a young man is to be made acquainted, that he may learn thereby how the thing it selfe is not praise-worthy, whereof he seeth the expresse resemblance, but the art and cunning of the workman who could so artificially draw the same to the life. Seemably, forasmuch as Poetrie representeth many times, by way of imitation, filthy actions, lewd affections, and vicious manners: it is the part of a young man to know thus much, That the thing which is admired therein and found to be singular, he ought not either to receive as true, or approve as good, but to praise it so far forth only as it is besetting the person, or appropriate to the subject matter. For like as when we heare the grunting of a swine, the creaking of a cart wheele, or pulley, the whistling noise of the wind, or the roaring of the sea, we take no pleasure therein, but are troubled and discontented: but contrariwise, if a merry fellow or jeaster can prettily counterfeite the same, as one *Parmeno* could grunt like a swine, and *Theodorus* creake like the said wheeles, we are delighted therewith. Alfo, as we shun a diseased person, and a Lazar full of filthy ulcers, as an unpleasant and hideous spectacle to behold: but when we look upon *Philaster* puttrayed by *Aristophanes*: and *Queen Iocasta* by *Silvanus*: namely, how they be described to pine away and ready to yeeld up the Ghost, we receive no small contentment thereby: even so a young man when he shall read what the ridiculous jester *Thersites*, or the amorous and wanton spoyler of maidens, *Sisyphus*, or the beately bad *Petrochus*, is brought in by Poets to say or do; let him be adverted and instructed to praise the art and sufficiency of the Poet, who knew how to paint the same so lively and naturally: but withall to blame, reject, and detest the acts and conditions, which are thus represented. For there is a great difference between resembling a thing well, and a thing that is simply good: for when I say well, I meane aptly, decently, and properly: and so acts filthy and dishonest, are fit and becomming for lewd and dishonest persons. For the shoes of that lame creepie *Demonides*, which he prayed to God might serve his feet that had stolen them from him, were in themselves misshapen and ill-favoured; howbeit, proper and fit for him: As for this speech,

*If laws of right and equity  
In any case may broken be,  
What man alive would not begin  
To do all wrong, a Crown to win?  
And this:  
Put on thy face, I thee advise,  
Of him that is just and right wise;  
But see no deeds thou do forelet,  
Whereby thou maist some profit get.  
Alfo:  
Wullesse I may my talent gaine  
As cleare as gift, I am in paine.  
Likewise:  
How shall I live or take repose,  
In case this talent I do lose?  
Nay, sleep I will and feare no hell,  
Nor torments there, but think all well,  
What wrong I do, what plott I set,  
My silver talent far to get.*

Wicked words they be all and most false: howbeit, becomming such as *Eteocles* and *Ision* were, and becomming well and old fluriers. If therefore we would advertise young men, that Poets write thus, not as if they praised and allowed such speeches, but as they know full well that they be lewd and naughty; so they do attribute them unto as wicked and godlesse persons, they should never take harme by any evil impressions from Poets: but contrariwise, the prejudicate opinion insinuated first of such and such a man, will presently breed a suspicion both of word and deed to be bad, as spoken and done by a bad and vicious person. Such an example is that of *Paris* in *Homer*, who flying out of the battell, went presently to bed to faire *Helena*. For seeing that the Poet reporteth of no man else, but only of this unchaite adulterous *Paris*, that he lay with his wife in the day-time: it is an evident proofe that he reputed and judged such incontinency to be reproachfull, and therefore made report thereof to his blame and shame both. In these cases alio it would be well considered, whether the Poet himselfe do not give some plaine demonstrations implying thus much, that he misliketh such speeches, and is offended therewith, as *Menander* did in the Prologue of that Comedy, which he intituled *Thais*.

*O lady Maie now help me to endite  
Of this so bold and unshamefaced queane,  
Tis beautifull: who also hath a spite  
Per swaive; and with words can carry cleane*

*The wrongs that she unto her lovers all  
Doth offer: whom she smuteth out of dores,  
And yet for gifts she still of them doth call,  
And picks their purple, which is the calf of whores?  
She none doth love, and yet she semblance makes  
That she the will, poore heart, for all their sakes.*

And verily in this kind *Homer*, among all other Poets, doth excell, and useth such advertisement with best discretion: for it is ordinary with him both to premise some reprehension and blame of evil speeches, and also to recommend the good. And for an instance hereof, in this wile he giveth commendation of a good speech,

*And then anon, this speech right commendable  
He spake, which was both sweet and profitable.*

Again,

*Approaching then, he stood unto him neare,  
And staied him soone with words that gentle were.*

Sensibly on the other side reproving bad and lewd speeches, he in a manner doth protest that he him self misliketh of them, and therewith denounceth likewise, and doth intimate unto the readers thus much in effect, That they should make no use thereof, nor take regard, otherwise than of wicked things and dangerous examples: as namely, when he purposed to describe the rude and grosse termes that *Agamemnon* gave unto the Priest of *Apollo*, when he abused him un-reverently he premised this before:

*This nothing pleased Atreus son, K. Agamemnon high;  
But him he badly did intreat, and use with all despite.*

By this word Badly, he meaneth rudely, proudly, disdainfully, without regard of duty or decency. As for *Achilles*, he attributeth unto him their rash and outrageous speeches,

*Thou drunken fir, and dogs face that thou art,  
Thou courage haist, too more then fearefull Hart.*

But he inferred withall his own judgement as touching those words in this manner,

*Achilles then fir Peleus son, still boyling in his blood,  
Gave Agamemnon words again unseemly and not good.*

For it is not like that any thing could be well and decently spoken proceeding from such anger and bitter choler. He observeth the same not in words only, but also in deeds. For thus he saith,

*No sooner had he spoketh the word, but presently he meant  
To worthy Hector much disgrace, whose body up he bent,  
He stript and spoiled it full soon, and then hard by the bed  
Of fir Patroclus he it laid, and groveling there it bred.*

He useth also fitly to the purpose pretty reprehensions after things be done, delivering his own sentence, as it were, by way of a voice given, touching that which was either done or said a little before: As for example, after the narration of the adultery between *Mars* and *Venus*, he reporteth that the gods spake in this sort:

*Lewd Ails do never better speed: Lo how the slow and lame  
Can overtake him who for strength and swiftness hath the name!*

And in another place, upon the audacious presumption and proud vaunting of *Heitor*, thus he saith,

*These words he spake in bravery and swelling pride of heart,  
But Lady Juno was displeas'd, and tooketh them in ill part.*

Likewise as touching the arrow that *Pandarus* shot,

*No sooner Pallas said he words, but foolish minded man,  
He was persuaded, and therewith freight waies to shoot began.*

And these be the sententious speeches, and opinions of Poets, by them expressly uttered, which any man may soon find and easily discern, if he will but take heed and give regard unto them. But yet over and besides these testimonies, they furnish us also with other instructions by their own deeds: For thus it is reported of *Euripides*, that when upon a time some reviled *Ixion*, and reproached him by the termes of Godlesse, Wicked, and Accursed: he answered, True indeed, quoth he, and therefore I would not suffer him to be brought from the Stage, before I had let him fall upon the wheele, and broken both his armes and legs. True it is, that this kind of Doctrine in *Homer* is after a sort mute and not delivered in plaine and expresse termes: but if a man will consider more nearly, even those fables and fictions in him, which are most blamed and found fault withall, there may be found therein a profitable instruction, and correct operation: And yet some thereof who wrest and twist forcibly the said fables another way by their Allegories, (for so they call in these daies those speeche wherein one thing is spoken and another meant, whereas in times past they were termed *Hypera*. for the hidden meaning couched under them) whereby they would make us believe that the fiction as touching the adultery of *Mars* & *Venus* signifieth thus much: that when the Planet of *Mars* is in conjunction with that of *Venus* in some Herofopes and Nativities. in her persons then borne shall be inclined to adulteries: but if the Ser do then arise, passe, and overtake them, then such adulteries are in danger to be discovered

and.

discovered and the parties to be taken in the very act. Now as touching *Juno*, how she embellisheth and adorneth her selfe before *Jupiter*, as also the fiction and forcery about the needle-work girdle and Tissue which she borrowed of *Venus*, they would have it to signifie a certain purging and clearing of the aire, as it approacheth neare to the fire: as if the Poet him selfe gave not the interpretation and exposition of such doubts: For in the tale of the adultery of *Venus*, he meaneth nothing else, but to teach them that gave care thereto, how wanton muficke, lascivious songs, and speeches grounded upon evil arguments, and containing naughty matters, corrupt our manners, induce us to a luxurious, loose, and effeminate life, and cause men to be subject unto pleasures, delights, leniuality, and lust, and given over to the love of women: as also,

*To change of spoons their beds of costly price,  
Their rich array, hot baines, and each device.*

And therefore the same *Homer* bringeth in *Ulysses*, commanding the Musician, who sung to the Harpe, in this wile,

*Digresse, good fir, from such lewd songs, and ballads waine as these,  
Sing rather of the Trojan horses: you shall us therein please:*

Giving us thereby a good instruction, that Ministers, Musicians, and Poets should receive the matter and argument of their compositions from wilemen, sober, sage, and virtuous. And as touching that fable of *Juno*, he shewed how the love, favour, and acquaintance which women win of men by charmes, sorceries, and enchantments with fraud and deceit, is a thing not only transitory and of small continuance, unsure, and whereof a man hath soon enough, and is quickly weary, but also that which many times turneth to hatred, anger, and enmity, so soon as the present pleasure is once past: For thus threatneth *Jupiter*, and saith,

*Thou shalt then know that wanton love and dalliance in bed,  
Whereby thou erst hast me deceived, shall serve thee in small bed.*

For the shew and representation of wicked deeds, if there be propounded withall the shame and losse which befalleth unto them that have committed the same, doth no hurt at all, but rather much good unto the hearers. As for Philosophers verily, they use examples taken out of histories, to admonish and instruct the readers, even by such things as be at hand, and either are or have been really so: but Poets do indeed the same, and in effect, howbeit they devise and invent matter of their own heads, their feignables, if say, fitting their purpose. Certes, like as *Melancthus* said, between bond and good earnest, that the City of *Athen* stood upright on foot, and was preferred by means of the division, discord, and trouble which was among Orators and Politicians: for that all the Citizens leaned not altogether to a side, nor bare levelly upon one and the same wall, and so by reason of the variance which reigned among the States men, there was evermore some one counterpoise or other, weighing even against that which endangered the common-weale: even so the contradictions that are found in the writings of Poets, which draw the assent and belief of the readers reciprocally to and fro, and leave matters ambiguous and doubtful, are a cause that they be not of so great moment and weight, as to endanger or endanger much. When as therefore we meet with such repugnant places among them, which being laid neare together do imply evident contrarieties, we ought to incline to the safer side and favour the better part. As namely in these verities,

*The Gods in many things, my son,  
Have men deceived and them undone.*

But contrariwise, what faith the son againe?

*Sir, that's soon said: mens faults excuse,  
Nothing more ready, than Gods' accuse.*

Likewise in one place:

*In store of gold thou shouldst have joy:  
And count all knowledge but a toy.*

But elsewhere:

*Alas it is in goods to Row,  
And no good thing besides to know.*

Moreover when we read:

*How then? should I for Gods cause die?*

We must be ready with this,

*What else? for Love of God I judge  
We ought no service for to grudge.*

These and such like diversities of doubtful sentences, are soon assayed and dissolved, in case, as I have before said, we direct the judgement of young men to adhere unto the better part. But say, we light upon some wicked and ungodly place, without any answer adjoynd thereto for to rectify the same presently: what then is to be done? Surely we must confute it, by opposing contrary sentences of the same author in other places: neither are we to be angry or offended with the Poet in this case: but rather thinke they be words either merrily spoken, or only to reprehend the nature of some person, and with him only to be displeased. Moreover, against these fictions in *Homer*, when he reporteth how the gods fall together by the cares, and throw one another down: or that they be wounded in some battell by the hands of mortall men: also that they be

at

at variance and debate: you may if you will by and by oppose that which he himselfe speaketh in another place, and to beat him with his own rod: saying thus unto him,

*You know sir, if you list, wis  
To tell us better tales than this.*

And verily you both utter better words, and thinke of better matters otherwise in these places:

*The Gods in heaven do live at ease:  
They know no trouble nor dis ease.*

*Alfo:  
Whereas the Gods in blisse and joy  
Do ever live without annoy.*

*Likewile:  
The Gods themselves are void of care:  
Sadnesse and sorrow mens lot they are.*

For these are the true and safe conceptions which we ought to have as touching the Gods: And for all other fabulous fictions and attributes given unto them, they have been devised only to give contentment to the readers, or to move their affections. In like case whereas Euripides saith:

*Gods over men, having power and mastery,  
Abuse and deceive them with wiles and sophistry.*

It were not amisse to alledge and infer that which he writeth better and more truly in another place:

*If Gods do harme, or what doth not be seeme,  
No Gods in truth we are them for to deeme.*

Also when Pindarus speaketh very bitterly and eagerly in one place, tending altogether to revenge:

*All meanes and plots we may addresse,  
To worke and compass our foes disresse.  
The joy we gaine by fraud and treachery,  
Turnes in the end to woe and misery.*

Moreover, when we heare Sophocles in this long:

*Lucre almes full pleasant is and sweet,  
Although it come by false meanes and unmeet,  
Deceitfull lies and false language,  
Bring forth no fruit that will beare age.*

Reply we ought and say thus: We have heard you sing in another tune:

*Powerfull is riches to win forts steepe and high,  
As well as places most plaine and accessible,  
Whereas those pleasures which ready be and nigh  
To hold and enjoy, far more is impossible.  
And why? a tongue that smooth and filed is,  
Will cause a man foule and unpersonable,  
Of no regard, whose parts be all amisse.*

The Reader may alledge many opposite sentences of Sophocles, and these among the rest:

*I see no cause, but men in poverty,  
May be advanc'd to place of dignity.*

*Alfo:  
A man is not the worse for his poverty,  
In case he hath both wisdom and honesty.*

*Likewile:  
What joy, what grace can come of worldly pelfe,  
If first by shifts a man to it attaine:  
And then with restless cares torment himselfe?*

And Menander verily in one place hath highly praised and extolled sensual lutt and concupiscence, whereby he set them forward who are of an hot nature, and of themselves prone to voluptuousnesse, namely, in these and such like amorous words:

*What creatures sorer do live and see  
The sun light joy, that common treasure,  
Are all, have been, and ever shall be  
Subject and hallow to fleshly pleasure.*

Howbeit, in another the same Poet hath turned us about, and forcibly drawn us unto honesty, repressing and bridling the insolent fury of a loose and luxurious life, saying in this wise:

*A filthy life, thou pleasant for the while,  
Worthless at last, doth all delights defile.*

These sayings are in some sort contrary to the former, but far better and more profitable every way. And therefore the setting together and consideration of such contradictory sentences will bring forth one of these two effects: for either it will draw young men to the better way, or at leastwise derogate the credit of the worse.

But if peradventure it come to passe that the Poets themselves do not solve and solve those strange and absurd sayings, which they seem to set abroad: it were not amisse to oppose against them the contrary sentences of other famous authors: and when we have weighed and compared them in ballance, to make proofe thereby which are the better. As for example, if happily Alexis the Poet hath prevailed with some by these verses of his:

*If men be wise, above all they will chuse  
By all meanes their pleasures to compass and use,  
Whereof there be three most pow'full and rise,  
Which wholly possess and accomplish our life,  
To eat, to drinke, to follow venery:  
As for the rest, I hold necessary.*

We must call to mind and remember, that the sage Socrates was of another opinion and spoke the contrary: for he was wont to say, that the wicked lived for to eat and drinke: but the virtuous did both eat and drinke to live. Semblably, to meet with this verse of the Poet who ever it was that wrote thus:

*To make thy part good with a person lewd,  
Fight with him lewdnesse, and be thou as shrewd.*

Bidding us in some sort to accommodate and frame our selves like to the lewd and wicked: we may be ready with that notable Apophthegme of Diogenes, who being asked how a man might be revenged bett of his enemy, answered thus, If (quoth he) thou fiew thy selfe a good and honest man. The wildome also of the said Diogenes, we must set against the Poet Sophocles, who troubled the minds and consciences of many thousands with distrust and despaire, by writing these verses as touching the religion and confraternity in the Myteries of Ceres:

*How happy men, and brice happy are they  
Whose fortune it is, the secrets to see  
Of Myseries so sacred: and straight-way  
Down into hell, for to descend with glee:  
For they alone in blisse shall live for ay:  
The rest in bale, must suffer paine alway.*

How now, quoth Diogenes, when he heard such verses read: Saist thou so indeed? And shall Patience the notorious thiefe be in better state after this life when he is once departed, only because he was entred and professed in the orders of this confraternity, than good Epimondas? As for Timotheus, when upon a time in the audience of a full Theatre, he chanted a Poem which he had compiled in the honour of Diana, wherein he tilted her with the Attributes and Epithets of Menas, Thyrsus, Phobus, and Lyssa, which signifie Furious, Enraged, Possessed and starke Mad: Cinnethas presently cried aloud unto him, I would thou hadst a daughter of thine own with such qualities. The like elegant answer Bion is reported to have made unto Theognis, For when Theognis came out with these verses,

*A man held down with poverty  
Can nothing do or say:  
For why? his tongue wants liberty,  
And somewhat doth it stay.*

Bion hearing them, How commeth it then to passe, quoth he, that thou thy selfe being but a beggar keepst such a prating as thou dost, and with thy vaine babling and garrulity troublest our eares?

Moreover, we must not in any wise omit and let passe the occasions which are ministred out of the words and sentences either adjoyning, or intermingled with those speeches, for to reforme and correct the same: But like as Phylitians are of opinion, that notwithstanding the Greene Flies *Cantarides* be of themselves venomous and a deadly poyson; yet their wings and feet are helpfull and wholsome: yea, and of vertue to frustrate and kill the malice of the said flies: even so in the Poems and writings of Poets, if there be one Noun or Verbe hanging to a sentence that we feare will do harme, which Noun or Verbe may in some sort weaken the said hurtfull force, we are to take hold thereof, and to stand upon the signification of such words more at large, as some do in these verses,

*This honour due to wretched men we keep,  
Our haire to cut, and over them to weep.  
As also in these,  
We men, alas most miserable, live  
In paine and griefe; this lot the gods do give.*

For the Poet doth not simply affirme that the gods have predestinate all men simply to live in woe



woe and sorrow, but this he speaketh of foolish and wise folk, who being ordinarily lewd and naughty, and therefore miserable and wretched for their wickedness, he is wont to call *δωδε* and *βίβλος*.

Another way there is besides, to turn the doubtful and suspected sentences in poetical writings to the better sense, which otherwise might be continued in the worse part: namely, by interpreting words to the signification wherein they are usually taken: wherein it were better to exercise a young man than in the interpretations of obscure terms, which we call Glosses. And verily a point this is favouring of great learning, and full besides of decoration: as for example, To know how the word *μνηστήρ* in Poets signifieth, is as much to say, as ill death, or a bad end: for that the Macedonians use to call death *μνήσθαι*. Likewise the *Ελλαντες* do term victory which is achieved by long suffering, continual perseverance and abiding, *καμνισθαι*. Also, among the *Δυοπιαν*, those be named *τιμωδοι*, who with other are called *Δαμονες*, i.e. Saints or Heavenly Wights. Furthermore, it is not only expedient, but necessary also, if we would receive good, and not harm, by the reading of Poets: to know certainly, how and in what signification they take the proper names of gods; as also the appellative words of good and evil things. Likewise what they mean by the vocables *Φυλα*, i.e. the fowle; or *μοῖρα*, i.e. fatal destiny. Namely, whether these terms be taken by them in one sense, or have many significations. The same is to be said of many other words besides: for example sake, this Noun *δῖος* sometimes signifieth an edifice or dwelling house, as when *Homer* saith,

*δῖος ἐστὶν οὗτος οἶκος*, To the house built with an high roof.

Otherwhiles it betokeneth goods and substance: as in this pece of a verse,

*δῖοι καὶ μοῖρα δῖος*, My house is eaten, i.e. My goods are wasted and consumed.

Also this word *δῖος* is taken in one place for life; as namely in these verses;

*δῖον ἦν ὅταν  
κλυαυχέσθαι ποσειδάων στήθεσσι μύθηται.  
God Neptune with his bare so blacke,  
envying him long life,  
Despightfully biddes cut short,  
and ended all the strife.*

But in another for goods and riches: to wit,

*δῖον δὲ οὐ λαοὶ μύθοι*, Mean while do others spend my goods.

Sensibly the Verbe *ἀλόνει*, you shall find put for to fret, be discontented and ill apayed: as the Poet writeth thus;

*ὅς φασ' ἴδ' Ἀλόνει ἀπὸ βήσας, τμήτω  
δ' αἰδοῖ,  
Which said, she seemed male-content,  
And wounded so, away she went.*

And yet it is used sometime for to joy and vaunt: as namely in the same Poet;

*ἢ δαῖτες ὅτι ἴσθ' ἔννεας τὸν ἀλόνει,  
And do you brag and boast so much indeed,  
Poore Trust that you beate in beggers weed,*

In like sort the verbe *θοάζειν*, signifieth either to move or stir with great violence: as in *Ευριπίδης*. *Κῆτος θοάζον ἔξ ἀτλῶντι καὶ ἄλως*.

*A whale out o' th' Atlanticke sea, we might desery from land  
Most forcibly to swim, and then to shut himselfe on land.*

Or to sit down and take repose: as for example, when *Sophocles* saith thus,

*τίνας πρὸς εἶρας τὰς δὲ μοῖρας θοάζεις,  
ἰκτελοῖς καὶ δαῖταιν ἔξαισμιμοῖς.  
My friends, what meane you in this wise so strangely for to sit,  
With branches light about your heads, which suppliants do beseech?*

Moreover, it is very pretty and commendable, when a man meeteth with words of divers acceptations, to make use thereof accordingly, and to accommodate them to the present occasions and subject matters: like as the Grammarians teach us to do in vocables that admit sundry senses: as for example,

*τὴν ἀλγυλῶντιν, μετὰ δὲ ἰνιστοῖα θῆξ,  
Τοῦ μὲν well praise a little bark or barge,  
But see with water a mighty bulke you charge.*

Here the Verbe *ἀνίστημι*, i.e. to praise: and yet now in this place (to praise) is as much to say, as to refuse and reject: Like as in our common and daily speech we use to say, *καλῶς ἔχει*, i.e. This well: or when we bid *χαίρειν*, i.e. Farewell it meaning by these termes that we like not of a thing, or will none of it, nor accept thereof. And hereupon it is that some say, *Προσπρίνα* is called *ἔκαστος*, which is as much to say as a goddesse blamed and to be found fault with. This difference then, & distinction in the significations of words, is principally to be observed in matters that be more serious and of greater consequence, to wit, in the names of gods. To begin therefore with them let us advertise and teach young men, that Poets in using the names of gods, sometimes meane thereby their very nature and essence: otherwhiles they attribute the homo-

nymy

nymy of the same names, to the powers and vertues which the gods do give, and whereof they be the authors. And here there presenteth himselfe unto me the Poet *Archilochus*, when in his prayer he saith thus;

*Καὶ δὲ δὲ θεῶν ἡρώων, &c.  
O Vulcan king be gracious unto me,  
And heare my prayer, thus kneeling on my knee  
Devoutly: Grant, I say, this my request,  
As thou art wont, to whom thou lovest best.*

It is very cleare and evident that he doth invoke the god *Vulcan* himselfe, and calleth him by his proper name. But when he bewaileth his sisters husband, who perished and was drowned in the sea, by which accident he want his due sepulture, he saith, that he could have borne this calamity and misfortune the better,

*If that his head and lovely limbs  
In pure white cloathis clad,  
As doth becom a faire dead corps,  
Vulcan consumed had.*

By which word *Vulcan*, he meaneth fire, and not the god himselfe. Again, when *Ευριπίδης* in his oath useth these words,

*By Jove I sweare, and bloody Mars him by,  
Who beare great sway among the stars inky,*

Certaine it is that he speaketh of the very gods *Jupiter* and *Mars*: But when *Sophocles* saith:

*Full blind is Mars, sure Dances (I say) and nothing he doth see,  
But like wild bore he hawck makes, and works all misery.*

You must understand that he speaketh of war: Like as in these verses of *Homer*:

*Whose blood along Scamanders streams so deeply died in red,  
That black againe it is therewith, now Trenchant Mars hath shed.*

It is meant the edge of the sword and other weapons made of brasse and Steele: which being so, and considering that there be many other words of double and divers significations, we ought to learne and beare in mind, that the very names of *Διὸς* and *Ζωὸς*, which signifie *Jupiter*, in one place they attribute to the god himselfe, in another to Fortune, and oftentimes to Destiny and Fatall necessity. For when they say,

*Ζεὺ πάρις ἰδὲ δὴν μῦθον,  
O Jupiter who from Ida hill  
Dost reigne as King and worke thy will.  
Allo:*

*ὁ Ζεὺς τις ἀναισθητὸν οὐκ ἐκέρταται.  
O Jupiter who dare avow  
That he can wiser be than thou.*

Plaine it is that they meane nothing else but the god *Jupiter* himselfe. But when they give the Denomination, *Διὸς*, to the causes whereupon all things depend, and do say in this wise:

*And many a stout and valiant knight who fought in pitched field,  
Before due time there lost their lives and vitall breath did yield,  
Διὸς δ' ἐτακτο βολά.*

i.e. This was the will of mighty Jove,  
Who wrought all this from heaven above.

Surely we must understand by *Jove* fatall destiny: For we must not imagine that the Poet thinketh God to devise and practice any evil against men: but he giveth us to understand by the way as touching the fatall necessity of all humane affaires, that Cities, Armies, and General Capitaines are predestined to fortunate successe and victory over their enemies, if they be wise and govern their affections well. But contrariwise, if they be passionate and fall into errors and misdemeanours, growing to quarrels and debates one against another, as these did, of whom the Poet spake, it cannot be avoided but they shall commit many outrages, breed troubles and confusion, and at the last come to an unhappy end:

*For by Fateall necessity,  
And Destiny inevitable:  
Bad counsell of iniquity  
Bring forth fruits thereto answerable.*

Now whereas the Poet *Hesiodus* bringeth in *Prometheus*, perfwading his brother *Epimetheus*

*To take no gift in any wise  
Which Jupiter from heaven hath sent:  
But them alwaies for to despise  
And send them back as discontent.*

Hesith the name of *Jupiter* for the puissance of Fortune: for by the gifts of that god, he meaneth the goods of Fortune, to wit, Riches, Mariages, States, and Dignities, and generally all outward blessings: the possession whereof is unprofitable unto those that know not how to use them well. Esteeming therefore no better of *Epi* than of a lewd and foolish fellow, he

suppo-



suppoeth that he ought to take heed, and beware of prosperity, whereby he was like to receive hurt and loys: yea, and to come unto a mischief in the end. Semblably, when the same Poet saith:

*Reproach no man while thou art free  
With poverty which gods do give.*

He understandeth hereby the gift of the gods, a thing meer casuall and coming by Fortune: implying thus much, that those men are not to be blamed and accused, who by some misfortune are become poore: but rather, that poverty proceeding by occasion of sloath, idlenesse, ease, delicate wantonnesse, wastefull and foolish expences, is shame-worthy and reprochable. For Poets and others being not acquainted with the word Fortune, which as yet was not in use, and knowing full well, that the power of this variable and inconstant cause, ranging disorderly as it did without any certaine purpose and determinate end, was mighty, and could not possibly be avoided by any humane wit, reason and policy, they expressed the same by the names of the gods: much like as we in our dayly speech and ordinary language, are wont commonly to give unto divers actions and affaires, to the conditions, natures, and manners of sundry perions: to speeches and orations; yea, and (beleeve me) to men themselves, the termes of Heavenly and Divine. Well, a very good and expedient mean this is whereby we are to reforme and correct many sentences and verses, which seeme at the first sight to carry with them any absurdity and incongruity, as touching Jupiter: as namely these,

*Two thurs within the entry stand  
Of Iove his house with lots both full:  
One hath successe and winning hand,  
The other losset forrowfull.*

Allo:  
*As Iudge aloft sat Jupiter without regard of oath  
Or covenant: and shewed signes of mischief to them both.*

Likewile:  
*And then began the mischieses all of Greeke and Trojans both,  
For Jupiter his pleasure wrought, and with each side was wroth.*

All this we must interpret either of Fatale destiny or of Fortune, potent causes both, which neither are comprehensible within our understanding, nor yet evitable within the compass of our power. But where we read of anything attributed unto Jupiter, which is conformable to reason, hath semblance of truth, and is becomming his person, there we are to think that the said name signifieth the god himselfe: as for example,

*Sir Hector then advanc'd himselfe, and all the ranks beside  
Of Greeks did brave expelling who his challenge would abide.  
Only the son of Telamon, Ajax that worthy knight,  
He did avoid: for Jupiter unto him had a sight.*

Allo:  
*Such great affaires of mortall men  
Are manag'd aye by Jupiter:  
But smaller matters now and then  
To petty-gods he doth refer.*

Furthermore, we ought to have a diligent eye to other words, which may be turned and transferred to many things, and are taken in divers senses by Poets, Of which sort is the name of *Αρετή*, i.e. Vertue. For by reason that vertue not only causeth men to be wise, prudent, just, and honest both in word and deed: but also purchaseth ordinarily unto them honour, glory, authority, and reputation in the world: therefore they give the name of Vertue unto renowne, power, and might: like as the Olive fruit, they call by the name *ελαια*, i.e. Olive tree, and the Beech-matt they terme also *πυρρ*, as well as the Beech tree. Our young man then, as he readeth in a Poet,

*The gods before vertue have set  
Labour, travail, and painfull sweate.*

Or thus:  
*The Greeks by vertue then down bare  
Their Squadron thick and battell square.*

Likewile,  
*If diene we must, most glorious is death:  
For vertue when we spend our vitall breath,*

presently ought to conceive thus much, That all is spoken of the best, most excellent, and divinent habitude in us, which we understand to be the very rectitude and rule of reason and judgement, the height and perfection of our reasonable humane nature, yea, and the disposition of the soule, accordant with it selfe. But when he readeth againe these other verses there,

*Vertue in men Iove causeth for to grow  
And fade: by him it doth both ebbe and flow.*

As allo,  
*Where worldly wealth and riches are,  
Vertue and fame follow not far.*

let him not by and by set him down, and by occasion of these words have the rich in wonderfull great admiration, as if they could anon buy vertue for money, and with their wealth have it at command: let him not thinke, I say, that it lieth in the power of Fortune, either to augment, or to diminish vertue: but rather deeme thus, and make this construction, that the Poet under the name vertue, signifieth Worship, Authority, Power, Prosperity, or some such matter. For so the word *κακότης* is sometimes taken by them in the native and proper signification, for a naughty and wicked disposition of the mind, as when *Hesiodus* writeth thus,

*Of wickednesse a man may evermore  
Have joyson great and pteusous store.*

But otherwhiles it is used for some other evill calamity or infortunacy, as by *Homer*,

*Men quickly age and waxen old,  
In κακότητι, with hunger and cold, &c.*

And much were he deceived, who should periwade himselfe that Poets take beatitude and blessednesse, which in Greeke is called *ευδαιμονία*, so precisely as Philosphers do: who understand thereby, an absolute habitude, and entire possession of all good things, or rather an accomplished perfection of this life, holding on a prosperous course according to nature: for many times Poets abuse this word, calling a man blessed and happy, who is rich in worldly goods: and giving the terme of felicity and happinesse unto great power, fame, and renowne. As for *Homer*, he useth verily these termes aright and properly in this verse,

*Although much wealth I do hold and enjoy,  
Yet in my heart I take no blessed joy.*

So doth *Menander*, when he writeth thus,

*Of goods I have, and money great store,  
And all men call me rich therefore:  
But yet how rich forever I seeme,  
Happy and blest none doth me deeme.*

*Empidides* maketh great disorder and confusion when he writeth in this sort:

*I would not have that blessed life  
Wherein I find much paine and griefe.*

Allo in another place:  
*Why dost thou honour tyranny,  
Happy injustice and villany?*

Unless a man, as I said before, take these termes as spoken metaphorically, or by the figure *κατὰ ὁμοίαν*, i.e. the abusion of them, otherwise than in their proper sense. And thus much may serve as touching this point.

Now for this that remaineth behind, young men would be put in remembrance and admonished not once, but oftentimes, that Poetrie, having for her proper subject an argument to be expressed by imitation: howsoever she useth the ornaments and beautifull furniture of figurative speeches, in setting out and describing those matters and actions which are presented unto her, yet nevertheless she doth not forgo the resemblance and likelihood of truth. For that imitation indeed delighteth the Reader to long only as it carrieth some shew of probability. And therefore that imitation which seemeth not altogether to square and depart from the rule of verity, doth expresse the signes of vertues and vices both at once, entermingled one with another in actions. Such is the Poem and composition written by *Homer*, which relecth not in the strange opinions and paradoxes of the Stoicks, who hold, That neither any evill at all can sort with vertue: ne yet one jot of goodnesse with vice: but he hath bidden farewell to such precise positions: namely, That a foolish and lewd person, in all his actions, when and wheresoever, doth offend and sin: and semblably, the wise and virtuous man, at all times, and in all places, cannot chide but do every thing well. These are the principles which the Stoicks schooles refuse with all. Howbeit, in the affaires of this world, and in our dayly life and conversation, as *Empidides* saith,

*It cannot be in every point,  
That good and bad should be disjunct:  
But in all actions we daily see,  
One with another mixed will be.*

But the art of Poetry, setting apart the truth indeed, mixeth most of all variety and sundry formes of phrases. For the divers imitations are they that give to fables: that vertue to move affections and passions in the readers: these are they that worke strange events in them, even contrary to their opinion and expectation: upon which ensueth the greatest wonder and astonishment, wherein lieth the chiefe grace, and from whence proceedeth the most delight and pleasure, whereas, contrariwise, that which is simple and uniforme, is not pathetically, nor hath in it any fiction. Hereupon it is that Poets bring not in the same persons alwaies winners, alwaies happy and doing well: and that which more is, when they feigne that the gods themselves meddle in mens affaires, they describe them not without their passions, nor yet exempt from errors and fautes, for feare lest that part of their Poetrie which stirreth up the affection, and holdeth in suspence and admiration the minds of men, should become idle and dull, for want of some danger

and adversary as it were to excite and quicken it: which being so, let us bring a young man to the reading of Poets works, not foretold and possessed before with such an opinion as touching those great and magnificent names of ancient worthies, as if they had been wise and just men, or virtuous Princes in the highest degree of perfection, & as a man would say, the very Canon rule, and patterne of all vertue, uprightness, and integrity: Otherwise he should receive great damage thereby, in case, I say, he were of this mind to approve and have in admiration all that they did or said as singular: and to be offended at nothing that he heareth from them: neither would he allow of him, who blameth and findeth fault with them when they either do or say such things as these.

*O father Jove, O Phœbus bright, O Pallas maiden pure:  
That you would all bring this about, and make us twaine secure,  
That not one Trojan might escape, nor Greeke remaine alive  
But we two Knights: That we (I say) and none but we b'live  
May win the honor of this war, and only reap the joy  
Of victory, to raze the walls and stately tow'rs of Troy.*

Allo,

*I heard the voice most pittious of Priams daughter bright,  
Castandra faire, a virgin chaste: whom me for to despight,  
My wife dame Clytemnestra flew by cruell treachery,  
Because of us she jealous was for sin of lechery.*

Likewise,

*With concubine of Father mine she counsel'd me to lie,  
The old mans curse that I might have: persuaded, so did I.*

And in another place,

*O Jupiter, whom men do father call,  
Thou art a God most mischievous of all.*

Let not a young man in any wise be accustomed to praise such speeches: neither let him seeke any colourable pretences to cloake and excuse wicked and infamous acts: he must not be studious and cunning in such inventions, to shew therein his subtilty and promptnesse of wit. But rather he is to thinke thus, that Poetrie is the very imitation of manners, conditions, and lives, yea, and of men, such as are not altogether perfect, pure, and irreprehensible, but in whom passions, false opinions, and ignorance beare some sway, yet so, as many times by the dexterity and goodness of nature they be reformed and disposed to better waies. When a young man then is thus prepared, and his understanding so framed, that when things are well done and said, his heart is moved and affected therewith as by some heavenly instinct: and contrariwise, not well pleased with lewd words or deeds, but highly offended thereat, certes, such instruction of his judgement will be a meane that he shall both heare and read any Poems without hurt and danger. But he that admireth all, and applieth himselfe so, that he embraceth every thing, he, I say, that commeth with a judgement devoted and enthralled to those magnificent and heroic names, like unto those disciples who counterfeited to be crump-shouldred, & bunch-back like their Master Plato, or would needs stut, stammer, and muffle as Aristotle did: surely such a one will take no great heed, but soone apprehend and entertaine many evil things. Moreover, this young beginner of ours ought not to be affected after a timorous and superstitious manner, as they are who being in a temple, feare and dread every thing, and are ready to worship and adore whatsoever they see or heare: but boldly and confidently to pronounce and say, as occasion serveth, This is ill done, or not decently spoken: no lesse than to give his acclamation and consent to that which is well and seemely either said or done. As for example, Achilles seeing the souldiers how they fell sick daily in the Campe, and not well appaid that the war was thus drawn out in length, especially to the hinderance of his own honour, being a martiall man, of great prowesse and renowne in the field, assembled a Councell of war, and called the Greekes together. But, (as he was a man otherwise well seen in the skill of Physick) perceiving by the ninth day past, (which commonly is criticall, and doth determine of maladies one way or other by courte of nature) that it was no ordinary disease, nor proceeding from usual causes, stood up to make a speech, not framing himselfe to please and gratifie the common people, but to give counsell unto the King himselfe in this manner:

*I thinke we must when all is done, O Agamemnon Liege,  
Returne againe without effect to Greece, and leave our Siege.*

This was well and wisely said: these were modell and temperate words becomming his person: But when the Prophet or soothsayer said, that he feared much the wrath and indignation of the mightiest man and soveraign Commander of all the Greekes, he answered then never a wile or tober word; for having sworne a great oath, that no man should be so hardy as to lay hands on the said prophet so long as he remained alive, he added moreover and said full unteimely,

*No, if it should last both meane and name  
King Agamemnon, I vow the same.*

Shewing plainly by these words what little account he made of his Prince, and how he contemned soveraigne authority: nay, he over-passed himselfe more yet, and proceeded farther in heat of choler,

choler, to lay hand upon his sword, yea, and to draw it forth, with a full purpose to kill the King: which was done of him neither well for his own honour, nor wisely for the good of the State. But repenting himselfe immediately,

*Into the scabbard then anon he put his dauntles sword:  
Minerva gave him that advice, and he obey'd her word.*

Herein againe he did well and honestly: for having not the power to extinguish and quench his choler quite, yet he delayed it well and repelled it, yea, and brought it under the obedience of reason, before it brake out into an excessive outrage, which hath been remediless. Semblably Agamemnon himselfe, for that which he did and said in the assembly of Councell, he was worthy to be scorned and laughed at. But in the matter concerning the Damocell Chryseis, he shewed more gravity and princely Majesty, than in like case Achilles did: for he, when the faire Briseis was taken from him and led away:

*Sat weeping in great agony,  
Retir'd apart from company.*

But Agamemnon himselfe in person conducting her as far as to the ship, delivering up and sending away to her own father, the woman whom a little before he said that he loved more dearly than his own coupled wife, did nothing unfitting himselfe or like a passionate lover. Againe, Phoenix being curbed by his father, and betaken to all the hellish fiends for lying with his concubine, breaketh out into these words,

*I minded once with sword of mine my fathers blood to shed:  
But that some god my rage repress, and put this in my head:  
How men would cry much shame on me, and namely Gracians all  
With one voice me a parricide or father-killen call.*

Which verses in Homer, Aristarchus was afraid to let stand, and therefore dashed them out. But verily, they serve in that place fitly for the purpose, namely, when Phoenix instructeth Achilles, what a violent passion anger is, and how there is no outrage, but men will dare and do in the heat of choler, when they will not be guided with reason, or directed by the counsell of those that would appeale them. For he bringeth in Melanerges also, who was angry with his Citizens, howbeit afterwards pacified: In which example, as wisely blameth and reproveth such passions: so he praiseth and commendeth as a good and expedient thing, not to be led and carried away therewith, but to resist and conquest them, and to take up betime and repent. True it is, that hitherto in these places already cited, there is a manifest difference to be observed: but where there is some obscurity as touching the true sense and meaning of a sentence, we must teach a young man to stay himselfe there and pause upon the point, that he may be able to distinguish in this manner: If Naupliæ upon the first sight of Myrtes, a meere stranger, falling into the same passion of love with him, as Calypso did, and seeking nothing but wanton pleasure, as one living daintily, and being now ripe and ready for marriage, unto foolishly these and such like words, and that before her waiting-maids:

*O that it were my hap so brave  
A Knight to wed who hat to my heart!  
O that he would with me vouchsafe  
For to remaine and not depart!*

Her boldnesse and incontinency is to be reproved: but if by his speech and talke she perceiveth that he was a man of wit and wile behaviour & thereupon wished in her heart to be his wedded wife and to dwell with him rather than with one of her own country, who could skill of nothing else but to dance, or be a marriner, I cannot blame her, but thinke her praise-worthy. In like case, if when Penelope devileth and talketh curiously with her wooers, who sued unto her for marriage and thereupon they court her againe and bestow upon her gay cloaths, rich jewels, and other goodly ornaments fit for a Lady, Myrtes her husband rejoices

*That she was well content to take  
Their gifts, and did to them love make,  
As though she would be kind againe,  
And yet her shew were all but vaine.*

If, I say, he joyed in that his wife received their courtesies and tokens, and so made a game of them, surely he surpasseth Polinger the notorious Bawd, playing his part in the Comedies, of whom there goeth this by-word:

*Bawd Polinger happy man he,  
That keeps at home in house a she:  
A heavenly quite whose influence,  
Brings in riches with affluence.*

But if he did it to have them by that meane under his hand, whilst they upon hopes of obtaining their suite, little thought of him how he watched them a shewy turne: then his joy and confident assurance was grounded well and upon good reason. Semblably in the counting that he made of those good: which the Phoenix had landed when they had let him on shore: and having so done, spread sail and departed back againe: if being thus left solitary alone, and finding himselfe forlorne, he doubted of his estate, and what should become of him, and yet his mind was so set upon his goods that he feared,

*Left part thereof they took away,  
Whiles that on shore asleep he lay.*

His avarice were lamentable, say, it were abominable, I assure you: But if as some do thinke and say, being not sure whether he were in the *Ithaca* or no, he supposed that the safety of his gods and money was a certaine proofe and demonstration of the *Phaicians* loyalty and fidelity, (for never would they have transported him into a strange land but for lucre, nor when they left him and departed would have forborne his goods) he used herein no foolish argument, and his providence in so doing is commendable. Some there be who find fault with this very landing of him upon the shore, in case the *Phaicians* did it whiles he was asleep indeed: and they say, that it appeareth by a certaine Chronicle or History among the *Turcanes* which they keep by them, that *Myfles* was given by nature to be very drouzie: which was the cause that to many he was not affable, and men oftentimes might hardly speake with him. Now if this was no sleep in very truth, but that being both ashamed to fend away the *Phaicians* who had conducted him over sea, without leaving them and giving them presents and rewards for their kindeesse: and also in feare lest if they were seen there fill upon the coast, whiles he entertained them so kindly, himself might be discovered by his enemies, he used this pretence of feigned sleep to cover and hide the perplexity wherein he was, or to shift off this difficulty wherein he stood in this case, they allow and commend him for it. In giving therefore to young men such advetisements as these, we shall never suffer them to run on fill to the corruption of their manners, but rather imprint in them presently a fervent zeale and hearty desire to chuse better things, namely, if we proceed directly to praise this, and to dispraise that. And this would be done especially in Tragedies, those I meane, wherein fine words and affected speeches be oftentimes framed to cloake dishonest and villanous deeds. For that which *Sophocles* saith in one place is not alwaies true:

*If that it be a naughty deed,  
Of it good words cannot proceed.*

For even himselfe is wont many times to palliat wicked conditions, yea, and naughty acts with pleasant speeches, and familiar apparent reasons, which carry a probability of sufficient excuse. And even so playeth *Euripides* his companion, who shewed himselfe upon the same stage: for see you not how he bringeth in *Phadra* to begin vvith her husband *Thesius*? First, laying all the blame on him; as if forsooth the vvronges and abuses that he offered unto her, were the cause that he was enamoured upon *Hyppolitus*? The like audacious and bold speech he putteth in *Helenas* mouth against queen *Hecuba*, in that Tragedy vvhich is entituled *Troades*, objecting unto her, and saying, That she vvvas rather to be punished for bearing such a son as *Alexander Paris*, vvho committed the adultery vvith her. A young man then ought not to accustom himselfe to thinke any such inventions as these to be pretty gallant, and vvirtue, yet laugh at such subtill and fine devices: but to abhorre and detest as much, or rather more, vvanton and filthy vvords, than loose and dishonest deeds.

Moreover, it vvould be expedient in all speeches to search the cause vvherupon they do proceed: after the example of *Cato* vvhen he vvvas a little boy: For, do he vvould vvhatsoever his Master or Tutor bad; but ever and anon he vvould be inquisitive and questioning vvith him the reason of his commandments. And yet we are not to beleieve and obey Poets, as vv we ought either Schoole-masters or Law-givers, unless the matter by them propofed have reason for the ground: and grounded then it shall be thought upon reason, if it be good and honest: for if it be vvicked, it ought to seeme foolish and vvaine. But many of these men there be, vvho are very sharp and curious in searching and demanding vvhat *Hesiodus* should meane in this verse,

*Whiles men are drinking, do not set  
The flagon over the wine goblet.*

As also vvhat sense may be made of these verses in *Homer*:

*Another chariot who mounted is,  
When from his own he is alight,  
Must not his speare and javelin misse,  
But trust thereto, and therewith fight.*

But other sentences, in vv, of greater importance and danger, they admit soone, and give credit thereto, vvithout further enquiry and examination: as for example, at these verses they stick not,

*The privy to fathers vice,  
Or mothers fault reproachable,  
Will him debate, vvho otherwise,  
Is hardy, stout, and commendable.*

No more than they do at this,

*Upon a man, if fortune frowne,  
His heart therewith must be cast down.*

And yet such sayings as these come neare unto us, and touch the quick, troubling our manner and behaviour in this life, imprinting in us perversie judgements, base and unmanly opinions, unless we acquaint our selves to contradict each of them in every point, after this manner. And vvherfore ought he to beare an abject mind, vvho is crossed vvith adverse fortune? Why rather should not he make head againe, and vvrestle vvith her, bearing himselfe so much the more aloft, and

and never endure to be trodden down and depressed by her? What reason is there, that my heart should be down, for that my father vvvas vicious and foolish, in case I be a vvile and honest man myselfe? Is there greater cause that the ignorance and imperfection of my father should keep me down and discourage me, that I dare not looke up, than mine own knowledge and valour make me take heart and put myselfe forth? He that vvill thus encounter, vvith stand, and not give vvay to every speech, turning aside, as it vvwere, to every puffe of vvind, but rather esteeme that sentence of *Heraclitus* to be vvell and truly spoken,

*A foolish and vvildesse man is he,  
VVith every vvord vvho stricken vvill be.*

Such a one, I say, shall be able to put by and repell many sayings of Poets, that are neither true nor profitable. And thus much as touching those observations vvvhich may serve a young mans turne, that he may read and heare Poets lawfully vvithout any danger.

But forasmuch as it falleth out, that as in vvines many times the grapes lie hidden among the leaves and branches, and cannot be seen by reason that they are covered and shadowed therewith: so also in poeticall verses, under tables and fictions there be covertly couched many profitable and vvholesome lessons, vvvhich a young man cannot eiepy by himselfe, and therefore he misse that commodity and fruit vvvhich is to be reaped out thereof. Hovvbeit, vv we must not suffer this, nor let him turne avay, and give over: he ought not (I say) to vvander aside, but stick close and fast to those matters especially, vvvhich lead unto vvirtue, and make any thing for the framing or reforming of manners. In vvvhich regard, I shall not do amisse, if I treat also of this matter briefly: making, as it vvwere, a first draught only, and touching summarily the principall points; leaving long discourses, by vvay of narration, confirmation, and a multitude of examples, to those that vvrite of purpose for more shew and ostentation. First and foremost therefore, vvhen a young man knoweth throughly the persons of men and vvomen, their natures also and manners both good and bad, let him then regard and consider vvell the sayings and doings vvvhich the Poet doth attribute vvayly unto either of them. As for example, *Achilles* saith unto *Agamemnon* these vvords, although he speaketh them in choler,

*For never shall I honor have,  
Nor equall recompence to you,  
When populous Troy, that city brave,  
The Greeks shall force, as they do vow.*

But *Thersites* reviling the selfelame *Agamemnon*, useth these termes;

*Much brazen vessell thus hast vvow in many a goodly tent,  
Of captive vvomen eke like choise, in beauty teeming,  
In thy pavilion: vvhom we Greeks, as to our Sovereigne  
Do give, so soon as any vvow by martiall force we gaine.*

Againe *Achilles* in another place hath this humble speech,

*If Jupiter will be so good, as to fulfill our joy,  
And grant that vvone day vvay vvill vvwin the stately City Troy.*

But *Thersites* commeth out vvith this proud vvord,

*Whom either I, or in my stead,  
Some Greeks shall bound as captive lead.*

Semblably in another place, vvhen in the reviev of the armie, *Agamemnon*, passing along the bands, rebuked and taunted *Diomedes*, he answered not againe, nor gave him one croffe vvord:

*For vvwhy he feared in modesty  
The checks of his dread Majesty.*

But *Sthenelus*, of vvhom no man made any reckoning, vvvas so bold as to reply, and say,

*Sir Agamemnon, Atreus Son, vvfor vvbear thus far to vvyes,  
You can say that you vvlist vvwith me report a truth: for vvwhy?  
Pronounce I vvare, and it vvavon, vvwe better vvwarriors be  
In these vvdaies than our fathers vvwere, by many a vvdegree.*

The difference vvvhich is in these personages, if it be vvell marked, vvill teach a young man thus much: That to be modest, temperate, vvvoid of pride, and humble, is a most civill and excellent vvirtue: and contrarivvvise it vvill advettise him to take heed of pride and overvvveeming: to be vvware also of boasting and vvvaunting much of himselfe, as a detestable vice. And here in this place, expedient it is and unprofitable to observe the action of *Agamemnon*: He passed by *Sthenelus*, and vvould not stay to speake unto him: As for *Myfles*, vvho found himselfe grieved, him he neglected not, but shaped him an answer: For as *Homer* vvriteth,

*No vvsooner he perceived him offended for to be,  
But presently he vvspoke again, and thus vvreplied he.*

For as it is a base and servile thing, and not beleeving the Majesty of a Prince to answer every one, and by vvay of Apology to vvjustifie a thing done or said; so to despise and vvdiidaine all men, is meere pride and extreme folly. As for *Diomedes*, he did passing vvell to hold his peace during the time of the battell, vvhen he vvvas rebuked and reviled by the King, but after the fight vvvas ended, he vvspoke his mind freely and boldly in this vvwise:

*You are the first of all the Greeks, vvwho in vvreproach full vvwise  
Have charged me for my vvfalse heart, and vvfearefull vvcowardise.*

Good alio it is, to see the difference between a wife man indeed and a vaine foorth-sayer, who loved to be seen, and to hear him selfe speake among the multitude. For Calchas without all respect of chusing his time and a fit opportunity, bashed not in publicke place, and before all the people to challenge King Agamemnon imputing directly unto him, and to no other, the cause of the pestilence which reigned in the campe. But Nestor, contrariwise, intending to make a motion as touching the reconciliation and pacifying of Achilles, and to speake directly unto that point, because he would not seem to blame and accuse the King in the audience of the people; namely, that he had passed himselfe in choler, and done amisse, adviceth him in this manner, saying:

*To supper bid the ancient peers: this duty your performe;  
And when they are togather met, in order as they sit  
Let them opine, Heare their advice, and looke who speaketh best,  
His counsell take freed, and then therein see that you rest.*

And after supper he sent forth the Embassadors accordingly. This was the only way to correct a fault, and amend that was amisse: whereas the other had been a very injurious accusation, and a contumelious reproofe to his no small disgrace. Furthermore, there would be noted and considered the diversity that is in sundry nations, and that after this manner: The Trojans give the charge in battell to their enemies with great shouts, out-cries, and exceeding violence: whereas the Greeks

*The onset give with all silence,  
To Leaders having reverence.*

For Souldiers to dread and feare their captaines and commanders, at what time as they be ready to joine battell with the enemy, is a signe both of valour and alio of obedience and military Discipline. Which is the reason that Plato would inure us to be afraid of rebukes, reproofes, and filthy acts, more than of any travels and dangers. Cato likewise was wont to say, That he loved those better who blushed and looked red, than the pale-faced. As for promises, there is a proper worke alio in them, whereby a man may discern whether they be true or tookeith. For Dolon promitteth in this manner:

*The campe of Greeks I enter will and passe on still ontright,  
Untill to Agamemmons ship I come shere for to fight.*

Contrariwise, Diomedes promitteth nothing of himselfe, only this he saith: That he should feare the lesse, if he were sent with some other to beare him company. Whereby you may see that Prudence Discretion, and Forecast be civill vertues becoming the Greeks; but audacious rashnesse is naught, and fit for Barbarians. The one therefore we must embrace and imitate, the other reject and cast behind us. Moreover it was a speculation not unprofitable to marke the affections that befall unto the Trojans, and to Hector at what time as he was ready to enter into combat and single fight with Ajax. Achilles being upon a time in place to behold the combats at the Isthmian games, it fell out to that one of the champions was hurt and wounded in the very face, whereupon the people that looked on set up a great cry and shouted aloud; Sec, quoth he, what use and exercise is! the Beholders cry out, but the man himselfe that is hurt saith never a word. In like manner, when Homer the Poet saith, that Ajax was no sooner seen in his bright compleat harness, and armed at all pieces, but the Greeks rejoiced: whereas

*The Trojans all for feare did quake, and tremble every joynt,  
Hector himselfe did feele his heart to beat even at this point.*

Who would not wonder to see this difference? The party himselfe who was in danger, felt his heart only to leape, as if he had been (I assure you) to wrestle for the best game, or to run a race for the prize: but they that saw him trembled and shaked all their body over for feare of the perill wherein their Prince was, and for kind affection that they bare unto him. It is worth the noting alio what odds and difference there is between the most resolute or valiant Captaine, and the greatest coward: For it is said of Therpites, that

*Achilles of all that were in the Host  
And also Ulysses he hated most.*

Whereas Ajax was he alwayes loved Achilles, so he giveth an honourable testimony thereof, when he spake unto Hector in this wise,

*In single fight with me alone what worthy knight we have  
In Grecian host, thou mayst not see besides Achilles braves:  
Achilles be the Paragon of Prowesse whom we count,  
Whose Lions heart undaunted yett all others doth surmount.*

This is a singular commendation of Achilles particularly: but that which followeth afterwards, is is pty spoken to the praise of all in general:

*It is well that many of us there be  
In Campe that dare and can  
Make head, and maintain fight with thee  
In combat man to man.*

Marke, how he praiseth not himselfe to be the man alone, or the most valourous of all other, but is content to be ranged with many more as sufficient men to make their part good against him.

Thus

Thus much may serve as touching the diversity of persons, unless we will adde this moreover, That of Trojans we read there were many taken prisoners alive by their enemies, but of the Greeks not one: as alio that divers of them became humble suppliants to their enemies, and fell down at their feet; namely, Adrastus, the sons of Antimachus and Lycanor: yea, and Hector himselfe besought Achilles to vouchsafe him buriall: whereas, there was not one of them that did the like: As if thus much were implied thereby, that it is the manner of Barbarians in fight, to make supplication, to submit, to kneele and lie prostrate before the enemy: but of Grecians, either to win the victory by maine fight, or to dye for it.

Moreover, like as in pasturage and feeding, the Bee feedeth upon flowers: the goate searcheth after green leaves and brouseth young buds: the Swine leeketh for roots, and other beasts for the feed and fruit: Even so in reading Poems, one gathereth the flower of the History: another cleaveth to the elegancy of phrase and furniture of words, as Aristophanes was wont to say of Euripides,

*His tongue so round doth please my mind,  
In stile so smooth, content I find.*

Others there be who affect morall sentences aptly fitted to the reformation of manners. Those therefore with whom now we have to deale, and to whom we direct our speech, we are to admonish that it were a shame and unworthy thing, if either he who setteth his mind upon fables should marke well the witty narrations, and singular fine inventions therein: or he that delighteth in eloquence should note diligently the pure and elegant phrase, the artificiall rhetoricke alio, as he readeth: whilst he, that would seeme to affect honour, to study honesty, and to take Poets in hand not for delights, pleasure, and pastime, but for the insight of learning, and for the treature of knowledge, readeth and heareth carelesly and without fruits, those sentences which are penned and delivered by them to the recommendation of fortitude, temperance and justice: For as concerning valour and vertue you shall find these verities;

*What is befalne sir Diomedes,  
That we forget to fight?  
How is it that our hearts be done?  
Where is our Marriall might?  
Come neere, stand close unto my side,  
Great shame it were for us,  
If Hector now should board our ship,  
And force our navy thus.*

For to see a most wise and prudent Captaine who was in danger to perishe, and to be overthrown together with the whole army, not to be afraid of death, but to feare reproach and shamefull disgrace, the same no doubt will cause a young man to be wonderfully affectionate to vertue and prowess.

For wisdom and justice these verses serve:

*Minerva then took great delight  
To see the man wife and upright.*

Such a sentence as this will give occasion to a young schollar thus to reason and discourse: The Poet here hath devised, that the goddesse joyed not in a rich man, in one that was faire, well-favoured and personable, or mighty in bodily strength: but in him that was prudent and just withall. And in another place where the same goddesse saith, that she will not neglect nor forsake Ulysses and leave him destitute:

*For tongue he hath and wit at will:  
He is both wise and full of skill.*

The Poet sheweth plainly: That there is nothing in us but vertue only that is divine and beloved of the gods: if this be true that like will to like, and Naturally every thing delighteth in the Semblable. Now so far as it seemeth to be a great matter and rare perfection, as in truth it is no lesse, to be able to master and bridle anger: certes a greater vertue it is, and a quite more singular to prevent and wisely to forecast, that we fall not into choler, nor suffer ourselves to be surprised therewith: And therefore the readers of Poets ought to be advertised in these points, not coldly, but in good earnest: as namely, how Achilles, a man by nature nothing meeke, mild and patient, giveth warning unto Priamus to be quiet, and not to provoke him, in these words:

*Take heed old father I thee need,  
How thou my choler move:  
I minded am thy son to yeeld:  
For why? from Jove above  
A messenger hath warn'd me so:  
Beware gray-beard, I say,  
Lest that my tent will not thee save,  
But forthwith I thee slay:  
Although in humble wise thou come,  
With suppliant's habit dight,  
And so I do transgresse Joves will,  
And break the laws of right.*

Who

Who also after he had washed the corps of *Hector*, and wound it within Funerall cloaths, bestowed the same with his own hands in the chariot, before that *Priamus* his father should see it, so misused as it was,

*For feare lest when he saw  
His son so mangled and beraid  
In griefe of heart, old father he,  
Should not himselfe be staids  
But with hot words Achilles move  
In him to sheath his sword,  
Without regard of Jupiter, his gifts,  
His will and word.*

For when a man is apt and prone to anger, as being of nature hot, tough and cholerick, to know himselfe so given, and therewith to prevent, decline, and avoid all occasions of ire, and by the guidance of reason to hold off in such sort, that even, as it were, against his will, he shall not fall into any passionate fits, is a point of great wildome and singular providence. After the same manner ought he that is given to wine to be armed against drunkenness: he also that is by nature amorous, should thus withstand wanton love: Like as *Agelamus*, who would not abide to be kissed of a beautifull young boy comming toward him: and *Cyrus*, who durst not so much as let his eye upon faire *Panthea*. Whereas contrariwise, those that be ill nurtured and badly brought up, seeke all meanes and occasions to kindle and enflame their foolish affections, ministering matter thereto, as fewell unto fire: casting themselves headlong, and that wilfully, into those vices, wherunto they are most prone and ready to fall by nature. But *Mysses* not only bridled and repressed his own choler when he was chafed, but also perceiving some words of *Telemachus* his son, that he was angry and hatefully bent against lewd persons, he laboured to appeale and mitigate his mood: he dealt with him before-hand, willing and commanding him to be quiet, to forbear and have patience,

*My son, if that by word or deed  
In mine own house they me abuse,  
Bite in thine anger, I thee reede,  
See thou indure and patience use:  
Nay, if they draw me by the foot,  
And out of doores me drag anon,  
Or their sharpe arrows at me shoot,  
See all, say nought, what ever is done.*

For like as men use not to bridle their hories when they be running in a race, but before they begin their course: even so they that hardly can digest indignities, and upon occasion offered are quickly angry, ought first to be pre-occupied with reason: and being thus prepared before-hand, to bring them to the combat.

Over and besides, a young man must not negligently passe over the bare words as he readeth. And yet I speake not this, as though I would have him play upon them, as *Cleomachus* did, who making semblance to interpret and expound words, would otherwhiles cavill and make sport. For whereas we read in *Homer*,

*Σαῖς μαρτίῃ ἰδὼν δὲ μάχην, ὁ Σαῖς ἄρα ἀδωδὺν αἶσιν,*

He would have us to read these two last words in one, by way of *ὑπόψιν*, thus, *Σαῖς ἀδωδὺν αἶσιν*, as if forsooth, the aire which by exhalation is elevated, and doth rise from the earth, should therefore be called *ἀδωδὺν αἶσιν*. *Chryssippus* likewise many times comes in with his bald reasons, without all grace: and this he doth not in jest and meriment, but he would seeme to devise reasons foolishly: and so forceth divers words imperitently: as namely, when he wresteth these words, *εὐτόμα καὶ γὰρ Νῆα*, to this sense, as if *εὐτόμα* should signifie one that was eager and quick in disputation or argument, surpassing others in force of eloquence. It were better for us to leave these nice subtilties of words and syllables unto Grammarians for to be scanned, and to consider more nearly other observations, which, as they yield greater profit, so they carry with them more probability and likelihood of truth: and namely, to pick some good out of these verses:

*Most crosse unto my mind it is,  
For taught I am proveesse in it.*

Alto,

*Fullwell he knew to every night  
To shew himselfe a curious knight.*

For hereby he declareth evidently, that valour and fortitude is gotten by teaching: as also, he is of opinion, That to be mild, affable and kind to every man, is a gracious vertue, proceeding from science and reason: wherupon he shortheth us, not to be carelesse of our selves, but to learne good and honest things by giving care unto our teachers: for that cowardise, folly, and perversety incivility, be the defects of learning, and are meere ignorance indeed. Here to accordeth very well that which the same Poet *Homer* saith of *Jupiter* and *Nepeneus*:

*Behold, one father both they had,  
And country one them bred:*

*But Jupiter was former borne,  
And had the wifer head.*

He declareth hereby that wildome is a most divine and princely quality: wherein he placeth the sovereignty and highest excellency of *Jupiter*, as esteeming all other good parts to accompany that sovereignty and heavenly vertue. We are likewise to acquaint a young man to heare, and that with no heavy and dull care, but attentively and with a vigilant mind, these other verses:

*Pight wifer he is, and not you well,  
A tie for no good will he tell.*

Alto,

*Antilochus, reputed aye for wifer, you are to blame  
My steeds to hurt, waine honour eke thus for to stain with shame.*

Likewise,

*Ton, a worthy knight, to speake so foolishly!  
I would have said you had sin wit, past all men verily.*

These sentences import thus much: That wife men will never speake untruths: neither will they in battell behave themselves as cowards, and use deceit in fight, ne yet charge unjust imputations upon others without reason. Also when the Poet saith, that he through his folly suffered himselfe to be induced and perwaded to break the true and league, he sheweth plainly, That he thinketh a wife man will in no wise commit unrighteousnesse. The like may of a young man be taught, as touching continency and chastity, especially, if he consider well these verses,

*K. Proetus wifer, Dame Antea, him lov'd and wooed soon  
For to embrace her secretly, and lie with her anon:  
But never would he yield thereto, Belleryphon was wifer,  
And in his heart he never let such thoughts for to arise.*

As also these,

*Dame Clytemnestra first was chaste, and wanton tricks rejected  
All while she was by reason led, and wisdoms love directed.*

In these places we see, that the Poet attributeth the cause of continency and pudicity unto wildome. Furtherward in those exhortations whereby Capitaines use to encourage theirouldiers to fight, when the Poet estoones inferreth these, and such like speeches,

*Eye, eye for shame O Lycians,  
You are now light of foot,  
To run away thus as you do,  
Twix it will not boot.*

Alto,

*A consistt sharpe is toward, Sirs,  
Wherefore let every one  
Set shame and just revenge in light,  
Else all, I doubt, is gone.*

By which words the Poet seemeth to ascribeth fortitude unto shamefastnesse and modesty: For that those who are bashfull and ashamed to commit filchinesse, are able likewise not only to overcome voluptuous pleasures: but also to undergo all dangerous adventures. By occasion wherof *Timotheus* alio in his Poem entituled *Perse* was moved nor unaply to encourage the Greeks to fight, saying thus:

*Have honest shame in reverence,  
And honour her, I you advise.  
She helpeth Provelse, and from hence  
The victory doth oft arise.*

*Æschylus* alio repute it a point of wildome, not to be vaine-glorious, nor desirous to be seen of the multitude, ne yet to be lifted up with the puffs of popular prail, when he describeth *Amphiarus* in this wise:

*He seeketh not to seeme the very best,  
But for to be the best in word and deed:  
He sowed bath within his worthy breast,  
In furrow deep, all good and virtuous seed,  
Which yeeld both lease and fruit in season due,  
I meane sage counsel joy'd with honour true.*

For the part it is of a wife man and of good conceit, to stand upon his own bottom, that is to say, to rest in himselfe, and to thinke highly of his own resolutions and courtes as the very best. Thus you see how all good things being reduced unto prudence, there is no kind of vertue but it cometh to a man afterwards, and is acquired by learning and discipline.

Moreover, like as Bees have this property by nature, to find and suck the mildest and best honey, out of the sharpest and most eager flowers: yea, and from among the roughest and most prickly thornes: even so children and young men, if they be well nurtured and orderly inured in the reading of Poems, will learne after a sort to draw alwaies some wholesome and profitable doctine or other, even out of those places which move suspicion of lewd and absurd sense. At

the

\* Ecbolatus

the first fight Agamemnon may seem suspected of avarice and bribery, in that he exempted from warfare that rich \* man in regard of the faire mare *Xibia*, which he gave unto him as a gift and gratuity:

*That unto Troy that stately towne,  
He might not with him go  
To serve in armes: but stay at home,  
And rest there far from woe:  
Where he might live in solace much,  
Enjoying all his own:  
For Jupiter in measure great  
Had wealth on him bestowed.*

Howbeit, as *Aristotle* saith, he did very well in preferring a good mare before a man no better than he was: For I assure you a coward and hartlesse man, flowing in abundance of riches, wallowing in pleasures and delight, and thereby made effeminate, is not in price comparable either to a dog or an asse. Semblably, it may seeme that *Thetis* did exceeding badly to incite her son to pleasures, and to put him in mind of the fleshy delights of *Venus*: But even there the continency of *Achilles* is worthy to be considered: who notwithstanding that he had been enamoured of *Briseis*, and saw that he was returned againe unto him, yea, and knew then he had not long to live, but that his end was neare: yet neither made he haste to enjoy his pleasures while he might, nor as many men use to do, bewailed the death of his friend, sitting idly the while, doing nothing at all, and neglecting the duties of his calling: but as in sorrow and griefe of heart he forbore his delights and pleasures: so in action and conduct of his regiment he shewed himselfe a martiall and valourous man. In like mannèr *Archilochus* is not commended for this, that being to mourne and lament for the losse of his brother in law who married his sister, and was perished in the sea, he would seem to conquer his sorrow with drinking wine and making good cheere: yet nevertheless he alledgeth a cause of his doing so, which carrieth some appearance of reason in these words:

*For neither can my plaints and teares restore his life and heale:  
Ne yet my mirth and pleasant sports will harme him ever a deale.*

And if he were of this mind, and had reason to thinke, that in following his delights, merriments, pastimes and bankets, he could not empaire the state of his brother departed: how should our present condition be the worse, and our affaires go backward, by the study and practice of Philosophy, by managing the government of publike weales, by frequenting the common hall and Courts of pleas, by going down to the Academy and schooles of learning, or by following Agriculture and husbandry?

And therefore the corrections of some poeticall verses by changing certain words, which practice *Cleanthes* and *Amphisthenes* were wont to use, are not amisse. For one of them upon a time when the *Athenians* in full Theatre took offence and made a great stirre at this verse:

*Τὴν δ' ἀσχετὸν εἰ μὴ τοῖσι γυναικῶσι δοκῇ,  
What filthy thing can be that breedeth shame?  
Unless they think it so that use the same?*

Quieted all the trouble presently by changing it and pronouncing another in this wise,

*ἀσχετὸν τὰ γ' ἀσχετὰ καὶ δόξ' καὶ μὴ δόξ',  
A filthy thing is foule and filthy still:  
Thinks it, or thinks it not, that doth not skill.*

As for *Cleanthes* when he read these verses as touching riches:

*φίλους τὰ δῖναυ σέβας\* εἰς νόμους πάλαι  
δανείας αἰδύας,  
Among good friends for to bestow, and spend upon your selfe  
Your sickly body to preserve: thus use your worldly pelfe.*

He altered them in this manner, and wrote thus:

*πρόβας τὰ δῖναυ σέβας\* εἰς νόμους πάλαι  
δανείας δαρτέϊ-λαί,  
That you may it to harlots give, and pampring much your selfe:  
A crasse body overbrow, abusing worldly pelfe.*

Semblably *Zeno* reading these verses of *Sophocles*,

*ὅτις δὲ πρὸς τυράννῳ εἰσπορεύσθαι,  
κὺν βεῖ δῖλ' & καὶ ἐλπίδες & μολῇ.  
Who once in court of Tyrant serve, become  
His flaver anon, though free they thither come.*

Turned the same, and wrote this againe,

*ὃς ἐστὶ δῖλος, ἀνὴρ ἐλπίδες & μολῇ.  
His flaver is: he cannot be,  
If he at first came thither free.*

But you must not understand that he meaneth here by a free man, one that is timorous, but, fearless, magnanimous, and whose heart is not easie to be daunted, What should hinder us then, but

but that we also by such suggestions and corrections as these may reclaim and withdraw young men from the worse to the better. Whereas therefore we shall meet with these verses,

*τὸ δ' αἶν τὸ ἐκλήρωτο ἀνθρώποις, ὅτι  
τίζον μάχης εἰς δὲ βέλτερον πτόν.  
The thing that men are for to wish and most desire is this,  
That when they shoot at their delights, the arrow may not misse.*

Not so, but rather thus,

*τίζον μάχης εἰς δὲ σφετέρῳ πτόν.  
That when they aime at their profit,  
The arrow may be sure to hit.*

For to reach unto those things which a man ought not to desire, yea, and to obtaine, and have the fame is pitifull and lamentable, and in no wight to be wished for. Likewise, when we read in *Homer* thus,

*Thy part of weale and woe thou must, O Agamemnon, have,  
For Atreus did not thee beget, almighties to win or save.*

We verily are thus to say rather,

*Thou art to joy, and never for to grieve,  
But in a meane estate delight to live.  
For Athens did not Agamemnon get  
The world at will to have, and find no let.*

Again when we meet with this verse,

*Αἴας what mischief sent to men,  
Is this from gods above,  
That they should see what thing is good,  
And it not use nor love?*

Sent from gods above? Nay rather, it is a brutish, unreasonable, yea, a wofull and lamentable thing, that a man seeing that which is better, should for all that be carried away and transported to the worse, by reason of intemperance, sloath, and effeminate softnesse of the mind, Also, if we light upon this sentence,

*Behaviour 'tis, and good carriage,  
That do persuade, and not language.*

Not so wis but manners and words together are perswasive: or rather the manners by means of speech, like as the horse is ruled by the bit and bridle, and as the Pilot guideth the ship by the rudder or helme. For surely vertue is furnished with no instrument or means so gracious with men and so familiar, as speech is. Moreover, when you encounter these verses;

*For wanton love, how stands his mind,  
To male more or to female kind?*

Answer,

*For hands are right, with him, where beauty is,  
Neither of twaine to him can come amiss.*

Nay, rather thus he should have answered:

*Where vertue is seated, and continence,  
Both hands are like, there is no difference.*

And to speake truly, and more plainly, in equal balance poysed he is indeed, inclining neither the one way nor the other: Whereas contrariwise, he that with pleasure and beauty swayeth to and fro, is altogether left-handed, inconsistent, and incontinent. Read you at any time this verse?

*ὁδὸς τὰ δῖνα τοῖσι δόξασι βροτῶν.  
Religion true, and right his godlinesse,  
Make wise men fearefull alwaies, more or lesse.*

In no wise admit thereof, but say thus:

*ὁδὸς τὰ δῖνα τοῖσι δόξασι βροτῶν,  
Religion true, and right godlinesse,  
Make wise men bold, and hardy, more or lesse.*

For in truth, feare and despaire, by the means of religion, ariseth in the hearts of none but of fooles, unthankfull and senselesse persons, who have in supition and do dread that divine power which is the first cause of all good things, as hurtfull unto them. Thus much concerning correction of sentences.

There is besides an amplification of that which we read, whereby a sentence may be stretched farther than the bare words import. And thus *Chrysippus* hath rightly taught us how to transfer and apply that which was spoken of one only thing, to many of the like kind, and so to make a profitable use thereof: for after this manner when *Hesiodus* saith,

*An ox or cow a man shall never lesse,  
If neighbour his be not malicious.*

He meaneth by ox or cow his dog likewise and asse, yea, and all things else that may perill. Semblably, whereas *Empirides* saith thus,

*A slave indeed, whom may we justly call?  
Even him, of death who thinketh not at all.*

We must understand that he meant and spake, as well of labour, affliction and sickness, as of death. And verily, as physicians finding the virtue and operations of a medicine applied and fitted to one malady, by the knowledge thereof can skill how to accommodate the same to all others of the like nature, and use it accordingly: even so, when we meet with a sentence that is common, and whereof the profit may serve to many purposes, we ought not to overlook and neglect the manifold use thereof, and leave it as appropriate to one only matter: but to handle the same so, that it may be applied to all of like sort: and herein we must inquire and exercise young men, to see and know readily this communion, and with a quick conceit to transfer that which they find apt and proper in many, and by examples to be practised and made prompt therein, so as they be able to make at the first hearing the semblable: To the end that when they come to read in *Alexander* this verse,

*A happy man we may him call,  
Who hath much wealth, and wit with all.*

They may very well think that in naming wealth, he meant and included Honour, Authority, and Eloquence. Also, that the imputation which *Ulysses* charged upon *Achilles*, sitting idly in the Island *Seyros*, among the young maidens and damocels, in these words,

*You sir, whose father was a knight,*

*The best that ever drew*

*His sword, of all the Greeks in fight,*

*And many a captain slew:*

*Sit you here carding like a wench,*

*And spinning wool on rocks,*

*Thereby the glorious lights to quench*

*Of your most noble stocks?*

May be aptly said unto any idle liver and voluptuous wretch, unto a covetous and wretched miser, unto an idle huske, an untaught or ignorant bozell, as for example, in lieu of this verse in the fore said imputation,

*Εἰς τινα δέσμιον παρὰ τοῦτο ἔλθωμεν ἄνθρωποι.*

*What, what, good sir? are you become a prisoner for need,  
Whose father was of all the Greeks a knight of doughtiest deed.*

A man may read, and not unjustly, thus:

*Ἄνθρωπος δέσμιος, ὄχι.*

*Can you callouse so lustily, and tesse the pot so round,*

*Whose father knew to shake a spear, and stoutly stand his ground?*

Or after this manner,

*καὶ δέσμιος ὄχι.*

*Thou courage servest to hazard all at casting of three dies,*

*Thou fathers heart was tried in war and martiall jeopardies.*

Either thus,

*ἔστιν ὁ καὶ δέσμιος, ὄχι.*

*You cunning are to play at quilles & the game,*

*Whereas your sire, by prowess won much fame.*

Or in this wise,

*καὶ δέσμιος ὄχι, ὄχι.*

*Are you become indeed a Tweller name,*

*Whose father was a worthy governour?*

Or lastly thus,

*τοσοῦτος δέσμιος, ὄχι.*

*In hundred ten, you can full well call for as such a day,*

*Thou father tent and hundreds knew to range in battell day.*

And in one word, so well as you are defended there is no goodnesse nor great thing in you worthy the noble parentage. Moreover, where you happen upon these verses,

*What tell you me of Pluto and his chieftaine,*

*For such a god as he with all his puissance*

*I worship not: since that the lowliest wretch*

*Is all the world to wealth may quickly reach.*

A man may say as much of glory, of outward beauty, of the rich mantles of a Captaine generall, of a Bishops Mitre, and the sacred coronet of a Priest, which we see the wickedest wretches in the world may attaine unto. Again, whereas the words of another verse import thus much only:

*Τῶν τέκνων γένειον ἐν κωδοῖς.*

*Be foule, and whose whom men do blame.*

The same verily do imply also, that intemperance, Superditiion, Envy, and all other vices and maladies of the mind, bring forth no better off-spring. Now whereas *Homer* said excellent well in one place:

*Paris a coward thou art forsooth,  
For all thy face so faire and smooth,  
And in another,*

*Sir Hector in the prime of age,  
With lovely looks and faire visage.*

(For by these termes and epithetes he sheweth covertly that a man deserveth blame and reproach, who is endued with no better grace and gift than beauty) we may well and fitly apply this reprehension to such like things: namely, to pluck down their peacocks plumes, who vaunt and glorifie themselves for matters of no moment and value: teaching young men thereby, that such praises as these be no better than countermelies and reproaches: As for example, when a man is saluted in this manner: O most excellent for keeping a bountifull table, for many scrivers: right excellent for singular good teames of draught oxen, capes and mules, for stables of steeds and great horses: yea, or thus moreover to the rest: O surpassing Orator and of wonderfull eloquence: for to speake a truth, a man is to aime at excellency and preference before others in good and honest things, that in the chiefe and principall he may be the highest and foremost: as also in great matters the greatest: for the reputation that groweth from small and base things is dishonourable, illiberable, vile, and of no worth. And verily this example is alledged, putteth us straightwaies in mind, to consider better the reprehensions and praises which offer themselves especially in the Poems of *Homer*: For certes, they give us expressly to understand one notable instruction, to wit, not highly to esteeme the gifts either of body or of fortune. For first and foremost (in those riddles which they give one to another in reciprocal greetings) when they meet and shake hands, the manner is not to salute by the name of Beautiful, Rich, or Strong, but they use such commendations as these:

*Ulysses, O most noble knight, from Jupiters sit descended,  
Laertes son for wisdom, and much wit, yet most commended.*

Also,

*O Hector, son of Priamus king,*

*Equal to Joye in wisdom and cunning.*

Likewise,

*Achilles O of Peleus the most adoubted,*

*Chiefe glory of the worthy Greeks, their light and shining sun.*

And againe,

*Patroclus O son of Menætius,*

*Most lovely in my heart and gracious.*

Seemably, when they are disposed to revile and taunt, they twit not one another with any defects and imperfections of the body, but touch them expressly with the vices of the mind, after this manner,

*Thou drunken sot, as shamelesse as the dog that use to barks,  
Thou coward base, as heartlesse as the stag that runneth in parks.*

And thus,

*Thou wrangling Ajax of Barroter chiefe*

*Droiving waight but evill and mischief.*

Seemably,

*Idomeneus in frappling prompt,*

*What meanst thou thus to prate?*

*This babling little thee becomes,*

*Such clattering men do hate.*

As also,

*O Ajax sic for shame: how far out of the way*

*Speake you, so bold and malapart? you bring too much I say.*

To conclude, *Ulysses* revileth not *Thersites* with these termes: Thou halting and lame squire, thou bald-pate, thou copnack, thou that art camell-backt, or crump-shouldered: but rather reproacheth him with his vaine babling and indiscreet language. But rather, on the contrary side, the mother of *Vulcan*, when she speaketh unto her son lovingly and in great kindness of heart, beginneth first with his lameness in this manner,

*Come hither my son, come to me, come sweet heart,*

*My poore limping crepple, come crooke-legd as thou art.*

By this it may appeare plainly that *Homer* derideth those who thinke it a shame to be halt, blind, or otherwise impotent. He is of opinion that nothing is blame-worthy which is not dishonest: nor any thing dishonest and shameful, which came not by our own selves, but proceeded from fortune. And therefore these two great and singular commodities, they are sure to find, who be exercised in reading and hearing of Poets: the one tending to moderation and modesty: in that they learne to reproach no man odiously, bitterly, and foolishly with his fortune: the other unto magnanimity: for that they be taught themselves to make use of their own fortune: not to be cast down and troubled for any adverse calamity that may happen: but meekly and patiently to abide the frumps, scoffs, and reproachfull termes that are given them; yea, and the laughter that

arise thereupon, And verily evermore this sentence of *Philemon* ought to be ready at hand and resound in their eares:

*Nothing there is more pleasant and musfull  
Then him to abide who doth thee mis-call.*

Howbeit, if any of these mockers deserve to be rebuked and taunted againe, vantage would be taken of the vices and imperfections of their mind, and those are to be objected against them; for to *Adrastus* in a tragedy, when *Alcemon* provoked him with these words,

*Alc. A sister thou hast (I tell thee true)  
Who in husbands blood her hands did embroile.  
Adr. But thou thy selfe (I might tell plaine)  
Thy mother that bare thee hast cruelly slain.*

For like as they who whip and scourge garments, touch hot the body at all: even so they that upbraid a man with infortunity, or reproach him for some default or blemish in his parentage, do like vaine fooles beat those things that are without, but never come neare the quick, nor touch the foulness yet any thing which truly deserveth correction, blame, or biding.

Over and besides, as we shewed and taught before, how to impeach and derogate the credit of those lewd sentences and dangerous speeches, which otherwhiles we meet with in Poetical books, namely, by opposing against the same the good and grave saws of worthy persons, renowned as well for their learning as politick government: even so, if we find any civill, honest, and profitable matter in Poetry, we ought (as it were) to nourish, confirme, and strengthen the same by demonstrations and testimonies Philosophicall: and evermore to remember that we ascribe the first invention of such sentences to sage Philosophers: For a just, requisite, and commendous thing it is, that their credit should be in that manner fortified and authorized: namely, when the Poems which are pronounced upon the Stage in a theater, or sung to the harp, or taught unto children in schooles, do accord with the sententious counsels of *Pythagoras*, the instructions of *Plato*, and the precepts of *Chilon*: when, I say, the rules of *Bias*, shall tend to the same end and effect as do those lessons that children are to read and learne. And therefore we are to teach and instruct them thus much, not slightly and by the way, but carefully and of purpose, that these places of Poets,

*Faire daughter mine, thou wert not borne  
To manage wars and armes so dead:  
Mind thou lover sports, and think no scorn  
To joyne young folks in marriage bed.  
Likewile;*

*For Jupiter displeased is with thee,  
If thou in fight thou overmatchest her.*

Nothing at all differ from this notable sentence, *Τὸ κατὰ τὴν ψυχὴν*. i. e. Know thy selfe: but carry the very same sense and meaning.

Also these verses,

*Like fooles, they do not know, iwis,  
That halfe than whole much better is.  
Likewile,  
Evill counsels hurt no man so much,  
As him that author is of such.*

Are all one in effect with the opinions and discourses of *Plato* in his dialogue *Gorgias*, and in his books of *Commonweale*: to wit, that more dangerous it is to do wrong than to suffer injury; and more damage cometh by giving than by receiving an abuse.

Also to this verse of *Aeschylus*,

*Be of good cheare: Excessive paine  
Cannot endure, nor long remaine:  
When wofull bide is at the highest,  
Then blessed boote (be sure) is nighest.*

We must say, that they be the very same with that divulged sentence so often repeated by *Epicurus*, and so highly admired by his followers, namely, *That as great paines are not durable, so long griefes are tolerable*. And as the former member of this sentence was evidently expressed by *Aeschylus*, so the other is a consequent thereof, and implied therein. For if a griefe that is sore and vehement endureth not: surely that which continueth cannot be violent or intolerable.

Sensibly this sentence of *Theopis* the Poet in verse,

*Thou seest how Jove all other gods  
For this doth far excell,  
Because that lies he doth abhor,  
And pride of heart expell.  
He is not want to laugh and scorn,  
To frowne he doth disclaime:  
He only cannot skil of lust  
And pleasures which be vaine.*

is varied by *Plato* in prose, when he saith, that the divine power is seated far from pleasure and paine, As for these verses of *Bacchylides*,

*We hold it true, and ever will maintaine,  
That glory sound and vertue doth endure,  
Great wealth and fore we take to be vaine,  
And may befall to vile men and impure.*

As also these of *Enripides* to the like sense:

*Sage temperance I hold; we ought  
To honour most in heart;  
For with good men it doth remaine,  
And never will depart.*

As also these,

*When honour and worldly wealth you have,  
To furnish your selves with vertue take care,  
Without her, if riches you get and save,  
Though blessed you seeme, unhappy you are.*

Containe they not an evident prooffe and demonstration of that which the Philosophers teach as touching riches and externall goods: which without vertue profit not those at all, who are possessed of them? And verily thus to reduce, and fitly to accommodate the sentences of Poets unto the precepts and principles delivered by Philosophers, will soon disprove Poetry from fables, and pluck from it the maske wherewith it is disguised: it will give, I say, unto them an effectual power, that being profitably spoken, they may be thought serious and perfwative: yea, and besides, will make an overture and way unto the mind of a young lad, that it may encline the rather to Philosophicall reasons and discourses: namely, when he having gotten some smatch and taste already thereof, and being not void altogether of hearing good things, he shall not come altogether without judgement: replenished only with foolish conceits and opinions which he hath evermore heard from his mothers and nurses mouth, yea, and otherwhiles (beleeve me) from his father, turtour, and schoole-master: who will not stick in his hearing to repute for blessed and happy, yea, and with great reverence to give the worship to those who are rich: but as for death, paine, and labour, to stand in feare and horrour thereof: and contrariwise, to make no reckoning and account of vertue, but to despise the same, and thinke it as good as nothing, without to heare the deductions, reasons, and arguments of Philosophers, flat contrary to such opinions, they will at first be much astonished, troubled, and disquieted in their minds: and no more able to admire of the same, and to endure such doctrine, than they who having a long time been pent in, and kept in darke, can abide the glittering raies of the Sun-shine: unless they were acquainted before by little and little with some false and bastard light, not altogether so lively and cleare as it is. And even so, I say, young men must be accustom'd before-hand, yea, and from the very first day, to the light of the truth, entermingled somewhat with fables: among, that they may the better endure the full light and sight of the cleare truth, without any paine and offence at all. For when they have either heard or read before in Poems these sentences:

*Lament we ought for infants at their birth,  
Entering a world of cares that they shall have:  
Whereas the dead we should with joy and mirth  
Accompany, and bring them so to grave.*

Also,

*Of worldly things we need no more but twaine,  
For bread to eat, the earth doth yield us graine:  
And for to quench our thirst, the river cleere  
Affords us drinke, the water faire and sheere.*

Likewile,

*O Tyranny so lo'd, and inrevect  
With barbarous, but hateful to the rest.*

Lastly,

*The highest pitch of mans felicity,  
To feele the least part of adversity.*

Lesse troubled they are and grieved in spirits, when they shall heare in the Philosophers schooles, That we are to make no account of death as a thing touching us: That the Riches of nature are definite and limited: That felicity and soveraigne happiness of man, lieth not in great sums of money, ne yet in the pride of managing State-affaires, nor in dignities and great authority, but in a quiet life free from paine and sorrow: in moderating all passions, and in a disposition of the mind kept within the compasse of Nature. To conclude in regard hereof, as also for other reasons before alledged. A young man had need to be well guided and directed in reading of Poets, to the end that he may be sent to the study of Philosophy not foretalled with sinister fumes: but rather sufficiently instructed before and prepared, yea, and made friendly and familiar thereto by the means of Poetry.



## Of Hearing

## The Summary.

**B**y good right, this present discourse was next unto the former treatise. For seeing we are not borne into this world learned; but before we can speak our selves sensibly or any thing to reason, we ought to have heard men who are able to deliver their minds with judgement to the end, that by their aid and help we may be better framed and fitted to the way of virtue: register it is, that after the imbibition of good nurture in childhood, and some liberty and license given to travel in the writings of Poets, according to the rules above declared: young men that are students should advance forward, and mount up into higher schools. Now, for that in the time when this *Ambrosius Plutarch*, lived, besides many good books, there were a great number of professors in the liberal Sciences, and namely into those Cities, into which *Barbarisme* crept afterwards: the propheet and Jeweth down those precepts now which they are to follow and observe that go to hear publick Lectures, Orations, and Disputations, thereby to know how to behave themselves there; which training happily may reach to all that which we shall hence be spoken of here: and is materiall to make us more learned and better mannered. In the first place therefore he sheweth that at what time as we grow to yeares of discretion we should have a feeling of our ignorance, the end that we may be desirous to learne, and afterwards heave willingly. For to encrease our infection, he toucheth those dangers into which they fall, who will neglect by teachers: before they be taught themselves: adjoining hereto those vices and inconveniences which a young man is to take heed of in hearing, and above all others to beware of envy: as also on the other side what he ought to study. Now, for that impossible it is, that teachers should be perfect and fully accomplished in all things, he proceedeth to declare with what mind and spirit we should take knowledge, and consider of their imperfections: giving withall an advertisement how to avoid another extremity, to wit, an excessive admiration of him that speaketh, namely, to leave the principall substance of doctrine: the which will be to much more accepted, in case it be commended and adorned with eloquence. He committeth afterwards to treat of those problems and questions which may be propounded in companies and meetings: into of the pleasure that we ought to take when we are told the truth: in such sort, that as we are not to envy them for their excellency, who speak anything to raise and set us aloft: so, on the contrary side we ought to carry with us neither a spirit favourable, gracious, well prepared, having flattery, loving reprehensions, patient, void of that rusticall businesse which we see in over-blown and dull natures, neither presumptuous nor yet discouraged, but keeping a good measure and meane between vaine curiosity and that spirit of flight and idleness, which is in the most part of those that be heaverly. To conclude, he would have him that hath diligently heard a certaine time, and with discretion, to exercise himself in devising and inventing something of his own in such sort that he may put the same forth, so as the outward part may discover well what goodnesse there lieth inclosed within.

## Of Hearing.

**T**his little Treatise (my friend *Nicander*) which being gathered and compiled by starts, as my leisure would serve, As touching the manner of hearing, I lately put in writing, and send here unto you, To the end that you being delivered now from the subjection of Masters, who were wont to command you, and having put on your virile robe and grown to mans estate, may know how to hear him that giveth you good counsell. For this licentious easement and delivery from all government, which some young men for default of good nurture and education do untruly terme *Liberty*, setteth over them more rough Lords and harder Masters by far than were those teachers, tutors, and governors, under whom they were creaked in their childhood to wit, their own irregular lusts, and unordained appetites, which now be (as it were) dischained and let loose. For, like as a woman (to use the words of *Herodotus*) no sooner doth off her smock or inner vesture, but therewithall the casteth off all shamefastnesse and modesty: even so, some young men there be, who together with the garments of infancy and childhood lay by all grace, shame, and feare: so that being once divested of that habit and apparel which became them so well, and gave them a modest and sober countenance, they are straightwaies full of stubbornnesse and disobedience. As for your selfe, who have oftentimes heard, that *To follow God*, and to obey Reason is all one, you ought to thinke, that the wiser fort, and such as have wit indeed, repune not the passage and change from childhood to mans estate, an absolute deliverance and freedom from commandment and subjection, but an exchange only of the commander: for that their life instead either of a mercenary hireling, or some Master bought with a peece of money, who was wont to governe it in their nonage and minority, raker then a divine and heavenly guide to conduct it, even Reason: unto which they that yield themselves obedient, are to be reputed only free and at liberty. For they alone live as they would, who have

have learned to will that which they should: whereas if our actions and affections both be disordinate and not ruled by reason, the liberty of our free-will is small, slender and feeble, yea, and intermingled for the most part with much repentance. Like as therefore among new *Burgovies* (who lately are enrolled Free Denizens to enjoy the Franchises and privileges of some City) they that were mere aliens before, and strangers now come from far and remote parts, find themselves grieved at the first with many things that are done, yea, and complain thereof: but such as had been inhabitants there long time before they were made Citizens, who partly by education were inured, and partly by custome and conversing familiarly acquainted with the laws and customes of the place, never thinke much, but can brooke well enough; and under go with patience all charges and impositions laid upon them: So it behooveth that a young man should a long time have been bred up and (as it were) halfe nursed in Philosophy, accustomed (I say) he ought to have been from the beginning with intermingling all that he learneth or heareth in his tender yeares, with Philosophicall reasons, that being thus made tractable, gentle, and familiar before hand, he might now betake him self wholly and in good earnest to Philosophy: which alone is able to array and adorn young men with those robes and ornaments of reason which are man-like indeed, and every way perfect. Moreover, I suppose you will be well pleased and content to give eare unto that which *Theophrastus* hath written of hearing; which of all the five senses given us by nature, presenteth both the most and also the greatest passions unto the mind. For there is no object of the eye, nothing that we taste or touch that causeth such extasies, so violent troubles or sudden frights, as those which enter and pierce into the soule by the meanes of some noises, sounds and voices, incident to our hearing. And albeit this sense lieth thus open and exposed to passions, yet is it more fit to admit reason than such affections: for many places thereof and parts of the body that make way and give entrance unto vices to passe unto the soule: but the only handle (as I may so say) wherewith vertue may take hold of young men are their eares: provided alwaies, that they were kept cleane and neat at the first from all flattery, and defended against corrupt and lewd speeches that they touch them not.

Good reason therefore had *Xenocrates* to give order that children should have certaine auncients or holsters devised to hang about their eares for their defence, rather than fencers and sword-players: for that there are in danger only to have their eares spoiled with knocks or cuts by weapons: but the other, to have their manners corrupted and tainted with naughty speeches. Neither was it any part of *Xenocrates* his meaning, to deprive them altogether of hearing, and to commend deafnesse: but to admonish and exhort them so long to forbear the hearing of evil words, and to take heed, untill other good daydings, entertained and nourished there, in long continuance of time by Philosophy, had filled the place, and were well fitted in that part which is most easie to be moved and perverted by speech: where being once lodged, they might as good fencibles and guards preserve and defend the same. *Bias* verily, that ancient Sage, being commanded by King *Amasis* to send unto him the best and worst piece of a beast killed for sacrifice, plucked forth the tongue only, and sent it him: giving him thus much thereby to understand, That speech is the cause both of most good, and also of greatest harme. Many there be also, who ordinarily when they kilke little children both touch their eares withall, and also bid them do the like: insinuating thus much covertly, by way of mirth and sport, That they are to love those who profit them and do them good by their eares. For this is certaine and evident that a young man deprived and debarred of hearing, being able to taste and conceive reason, will not only become barren altogether of fruit, and put not so much as any buds and flowers at all, which may give some hope of vertue: but also contrariwise, will soon turne to vice, and send forth of his corrupt mind many wild and savage shoots, like as a ground neglected and untilld, beareth nothing but briars, brambles, and hurtfull weeds. For the motions and inclinations unto pleasures, and the sinister conceits and suspicions of paines and travells (which are no strangers to us wits, entering in directly from without forth by themselves, or else let in by evil suggestions, but inbred with us, and the naturall sources of infinite vices and malades) if a man suffer to run on end with the reins at large, whither by nature they would go, and not cut them off by sage remonfrances, or divert them another way, and thereby reforme the default of nature: surely there were not upon the face of the earth any wild beast but would be more rame and gentle than man. Forasmuch as therefore the sense of hearing bringeth unto young men to great profit, and no lesse perill with it, I suppose it were well done, if a man would effitones both devile with himselfe, and also discourse with others, as touching the order and manner of hearing. Forasmuch as we do see most men in this point to offend and erre, in that they exercise themselves in speaking before they were used to heare: supposing that good speech requirith a kind of discipline, meditation, and practice ere it be learned: as for hearing, though mentulic without any art it makes no matter how, yet they may receive profit thereby as they thinke. And verily, albeit at Tennis play they that practice the feat thereof, learne to take the ball as it cometh, and also to strike and send it from them againe, both at once, yet in the use of speech it is otherwise: For to receive it well goeth before the utterance and delivery thereof: like as conception and retention of the feed, doth precede birth of the infant. It is said, That the egges laid by fowles, called wind-egges, as they proceed of imperfect and false conceptions, so they are the rudiments and beginnings of such furies as never will quieten and have life: even so, The speeches that young men let fall, such



*A foolish man is oftened in anone  
As will he hearers, or teach done.*

As for the praises therefore of him that speaketh, we ought favourably and of course without great affectation to praise them out of our mouths: in giving credit unto their reasons and arguments we are to be more wary and circumspect: and as touching the phrase, utterance, and action of those that exercise to make speeches, we must both see and hear the same with a single heart and a kind affection: As for the utility and truth of those matters which are delivered, we should examine and weigh the same exactly and with more severity of judgement. Thus we who be hearers shall avoid the suspicions of evil will and hatred, and they again that are speakers shall do us no harm. For oftentimes it falleth out that upon a special faulce and good liking unto those that preach unto us, we take lesse heed to our selves, and by our credulity admit and embrace from their lips many false and erroneous opinions. The Lacedaemonian rulers and Lords of the Councell of State, upon a time liking well of the good advice and opinion of a person who was an ill liver, caused the same to be delivered openly by another of approved life and good reputation: wherein they did very wisely, and as prudent politicians, to accustom the people for to affect the behaviour and honest carriage of their counsellors, rather than to respect their words only. But in Philosophy it is otherwise: For we must lay aside the reputation of the man who hath in public place spoken his mind: and examine the matter apart by it selfe: For that, like as in war (we say) there be many false alarms: so also in an auditory there passe as many vanities: The goodly gray beard and hoary head of the speaker, his solemne gesture and composing of his countenance, his grave eye-brows, his glorious words in behalfe of himselfe: but above all, the acclamations, the applause and clapping of hands, the leaping and shouting of the standers by and those that are present in place, are enough otherwhiles to trouble and astonish the spirits of a young hearer, who is not well acquainted with such matters, and carry him away perforce as it were with a streame: Over and besides, there is in the very stile and speech it selfe a secret power able to beguile and deceive a young novice: namely, if it run round away, smooth, and pleasant, and if it will there be a certaine affected gravity, and artificial port and loftinesse, to set out and grace the matter. And even as they that play upon the pipe, be it cornet, recorder or fife, fault many times in musicke, and are not perceived by the hearers: so a brave and elegant tongue, a copious and gallant oration, dazzleth the wits of the hearer, so as he cannot judge soundly of the matter in hand. *Melancthus* being demanded upon a time, what he thought of a Tragedy of *Dionysius*: I could not see it (quoth he) for so many words wherewith it was choaked up. But the Orations and declamations for the most part of these Sophisters, who make shew of their eloquence, not only have their sentences covered (as it were) with vailles and curtains of words, but that which more is, they themselves do dulce their voice by the means of (I wot not what) devised notes, soft founds, exquisite and musically accents in their pronunciation, so as they ravish the wits of the hearers, and transport them beside themselves: leading and carrying them which way they list: and thus for a certaine little vaine pleasure that they give, receive againe applause and glory much more vaine: In so much, as that befalleth properly unto them which by report *Dionysius* answered upon a time: who seemed to promise unto a famous minstrell for his excellent play in an open Theatre to reward him with great gifts, gave him in the end just nothing, but said he had recompensed him sufficiently already: For look (quoth he) how much pleasure I have received from thee by thy song and minstrelley, so much contentment and joy thou hast had from me by hoping for some great reward. And verily such recompence as this have those Sophisters and great Oratours at their hearers hands: For admired they are so long as they sit in their chaire, and give delight unto their auditory: No sooner is their speech ended, but gone is the pleasure of the one and the glory of the other. Thus the Auditors spend their time, and the speakers employ their whole life in vaine. For this cause it becometh a young hearer to sequester and let aside the ranke superfluity of words, and to seeke after the fruit it selfe: and herein not to imitate women that plait and make garlands of flowers, but to follow the Bees: For those women laying for and choosing faire flowers and odoriferous herbs, twilt, plat, and compose them so, as they make thereof a peece of worke (I must needs say) pleasant to the senses: but fruitlesse altogether, and not lasting above one day: whereas the Bees flying oftentimes over and over the meadows full of violets, Roses and Crowtoes, light at length upon Thyme, an hearbe of a moist strong sent, and quick taste, and there tettele.

*Intending thus great paines to take  
The yellow honey for to make.*

And when they have gathered from them some profitable juyce or liquor to serve their turne, they flye away unto their proper worke and businesse: Semblably ought an auditor who is studious of skill and knowledge, and hath his mind and understanding free from passions, to let passe affected, flourishing, and superfluous words, yea, and such matters also as be fit for the Stage and Theatre, reputing them to befood meet for drone Bees (I meane Sophisters) and nothing good for honey: and rather with diligence and attentive heed to found the very depth and profound intention of the speaker, for to draw that which is good and profitable: remembering also, that he is not come thither as to a Theatre, either to see sports and pastimes, or to hear musicke and Poeticall fables, but into a schoole and auditory, for to learne how to amend and reforme his life by the rule

of

of reason. And therefore he must enter into his own heart and examine himselfe when he is alone, how he was moved and affected with the Lecture or sermon that he heard: consider (I say) and reason he ought with himselfe whether he find any turbulent passions of his mind thereby dulced and appeased: whether any griefe or heavinesse that trouble him be mitigated and allwaged: whether his courage and confidence of heart be more resolute and better confirmed: and in one word, whether he seele any instant unto vertue and honesty, to be more kindled and enflamed. When we rise out of the Barbers chaire, we thinke it meet presently to consult with a mirror or looking-glasse, we stroke our head to see whether he hath polled and notted it well: we consider and peruse our beard and every haire whether we have the right cut, and be trimmed as we ought: a shame it were then to depart from a Schoole, or a Lecture, and not immediately to retire apart and view our mind well, whether it have laid away any foolish thought that troubled it: whether it be eased of superfluous and wandering thoughts that clogged it: and be thereby more lightsome and pleasant. For neither a Baine and Stuphe, as *Ariston* saith, nor a Sermon doth any good, if the one do not scoure the skin, and the other cleanse the heart.

A young man therefore is to take joy and delight if he have made profit by a Lecture, or be better edified by hearing a sermon. And yet I write not this, as if this pleasure should be the final end that he propoeth to himselfe when he goeth to such a Lecture or Sermon, neither would I have him thinke that he should depart out of the Philosophers schoole with a merry notesinging jocundly or with a fresh and cheerefull countenance: ne yet to use means, to be perfumed with sweet odours and oynments, whereas he hath more need of Embrocations, Fomentations, and Cataplasmes: but to take it well and be thankfull, if haply by some sharpe words and cutting speeches, any man hath cleansed and purified his heart full of cloudy mists and palpable darknesse, like as mendrive Bee-hives and rid away Bees with smoake. For albeit, he that preacheth unto others ought not to be altogether careless and negligent in his stile, but that it may carry with it some pleasure, delectation and grace, as well as probability and reason: yet a young man when he cometh to heare should not stand so much thereupon, but have least regard thereto, especially at the first: marry afterwards (I will not say) but he may well enough have an eye unto it also. For like as those that drinke, after they have once quenched their thirst, have lesse to peruse the cups and turne them about every way, to view and consider the worke engraven or imprinted upon them: even so, when a young student or auditor is well replenished and furnished with doctrine, after he hath breathed and paused a while, may be permitted to consider farther of the speech, namely, what elegant and copious phrases it hath. As for him, who at the very beginning attendeth not, nor cleaveth unto the matter and substance, but hunteth after the language only, desiring that it should be pure Atticke, fine, and smooth: I can liken such a one to him, who being empoyoned will not drinke any Antidote or counterpoison, unless the pot or cup wherein it is made of Colian earth in *Attica*: or who in the cold of winter will not weare a garment, except it were made of the wooll that came from the Attick sheeps back: but had rather sit still idle doing nothing and stirring not, with some thin mantle and overworne garberdine cast over him, such as be the orations of *Lyfias* his penning. The errors committed in this kind have been the cause why there is found so little wit and understanding, and contrariwise so much tongue and bibble-babble, such vaine chattering about words in young men throughout the Schooles: who never observe the life, the deeds, the carriage and demeanour in State-government of a Philosopher, but give all praise and commendation to his fine termes and elegant words, only teting out his eloquence, action and ready delivery of his oration, but will not in any wise learne or enquire whether the matter so uttered be profitable or unprofitable, necessary or vaine and superfluous.

Next to these precepts, how we should heare a Philosopher to discourse at large and with a continued speech, there followeth in good consequence a rule and advertisement as touching short questions and problems. A man that cometh as a bidden guest unto a great supper, ought to be content with that which is set before him upon the table, and neither to call for any viands else, nor to find fault with those that are present: He also that is invited to a Philosophicall feast or banquet (as I may say) of discourses, in case they be matters and questions certaine and choisen long before for to be handled, ought to do nothing else but heare with patience and silence him that speaketh: for they that distract and hale him away to other theames, interposing interrogations and demands, or otherwise move doubts or make oppositions as he speaketh, are troublesome and unfortunate hearers, such as be uniofiable and accord not with an auditory: who besides that they receive no profit themselves, disturbe both the speaker and the speech also. But in case the party that standeth ad opposite, do of himselfe will and pray his auditors to aske him questions, and to propoale what they will: then they ought to propoale such demands as be either necessary or profitable. *Ulysses* verily in *Homer* was mocked by the widders of his wife, because

*He call'd for breeces of bread to eat,  
And not for swords or candours nest.*

For it was reputed as a sign of magnanimity to demand, as well as to give things of great price and value. Much more then might man denide and laugh at the auditor, who will move unto a Master or Doctor of the Chaire, trifling frivolous, and fruitlesse questions, as otherwhiles some

of

of these young men do: who taking pleasure to vaunt themselves, and to shew what great scholars they are in Logic and the Mathematicks, are wont to put forth questions as touching the sections of things indefinite; also, what be laterall motions or diametrical? Unto whom man may very well answer as *Philosim* the Physician did unto one that had a suppuration in his chitt, and by reason of an inward ulcer of his lungs was in a consumption, who comming to him for counsell, desired that he would give him a medicine for a little whit-flow growing about the root of his naile: but *Philosim* perceiving by his colour and shortness of wind in what case he was; my good friend (quoth he) you have no such need of a cure for your whit-flow; you may hold your peace well enough at this time for any danger there: Even so it may be said unto one of these young men; There is no time now to thinke or dispute upon such questions, but rather by what means you may be freed from presumptuous overweening of your selfe, from pride and arrogance, from wanton love and foolish toys: that you may be led in a sound state of life, devoid of vanity. Moreover, this young man is to have a good eye and regard unto the sufficiency of the speaker, whether it be by naturall inclination, or gotten by experience and practice, and accordingly to frame and direct his questions in those points wherein he is most excellent: and in no wise to force him who is well read and studied in Morall Philosophy, to answer unto Physicall or Mathematicall questions: or him that is better seen in Natural Philosophy to draw unto Logic, for to give his judgement of Hypotheticall propositions, and to resolve them: or to undoe the knots and make solution of false Syllogismes, Elenses, sophisticall, and such fallacies. For like as one that would go about to cleave wood with a key, or unlock a door with an axe, seemeth not so much to do hurt unto those instruments, as to deprive himselfe of the proper use and commodity as well of the one as the other: Even so, they that require of a Speaker that which he is not apt unto by nature, or wherein he is not well practised, and will not reape, gather, and take that which willingly cometh from him, and wherewith he is able to furnish them, are not only hurt therein, but incur the name and blame of a peevish, forward, and malicious nature. Furthermore, this heed would be taken, not to over-lay him with many questions, nor oftentimes to urge him therewith. For this bewrayeth one, that in some sort loveth to heare himselfe speake, and would be seen: whereas, when another doth propoie a question to give attentive care, and that with mildnesse and patience, is a signe of a studious person, and one that knoweth well how to behave himselfe in company, and can abide that others should learne as well as he: unless perhaps some private and particular occurrent do urge the contrary, or some passion do hinder, which had need to be staied and repressed, or else some malady and imperfection which requireth remedy. For peradventure as *Heracitus* saith, it were not good for one to hide and conceal his own ignorance, but to let it appeare and be known, and so to cure it. But say, that some fit of choler, some assault of scrupulous superstition, or some violent quarrell and jar with one household and kinsfolke, or some furious passion proceeding from wanton lust,

*Which doth the secret heart-frings move,  
That erst were never stirr'd with love,*

Trouble our understandings, and put it out of tune, we ought not for the avoiding of a reproche to flie for refuge to other matters, and interrupt the discourse begun, but be desirous to heare of such things, even in open places of exercises: and after the exercise or Lecture done, to take the Philosophers or Readers aside, and conferre with them to be further informed: not as many do, who are well enough contented to heare Philosophers speake of others, and have them therefore in great admiration: but if it chance that a Philosopher leave other men, and turne his speech to them apart, to tell them freely and boldly what he thinketh, admonishing and putting them in mind of such things as do concerne them, then they are in a chafe, then they faye, he speaks besides the text, and more than needs. For of this opinion are these men, That we are to heare Philosophers in Schooles for pastime, as players of tragedies in a Theatre upon the Stage: As for other matters out of the Schoole, they hold them no better men than themselves: and to lay a truth good reason have they so to deeme of Sophisters, who are no sooner out of their chaires, or come down from off the pulpit, and when their books and petty introductions are laid out of their hands, but in other serious actions and parts of this life to be discoursed of, a man shall find them as raw as other, and nothing better skilled than the vulgar sort. But to come unto those Philosophers indeed, who worthily are so to be called and esteemed, ignorant are such persons above reheared, that their words (be they spoken in earnest or in game) their becks, their nods, their countenance, whether it be composed to smiling, or to frowning, but principally their words directed privately to every one apart, be all significant, and carry some fruit commodious to those that with patience will give them leave to speake, and are willing and used to hearken unto them.

As concerning the praises which we are to attribute unto them for their eloquence and well speaking, there would in this duty some wile caution and meane be used: for that in this case neither over-much nor too little is commendable and honest. And verily that scholar, who seemeth not to be moved or touched with any thing that he heareth, is a heavy and unapproachable auditor, full of a secret presumptuous opinion of himselfe, concealed inwardly of his own sufficiency, of an inbred selfe-love and aptnesse to speake much of his own doings, shewing evidently that he thinketh he can speake better than that which hath been delivered: In regard whereof he

never

never stirs brow any way decently, he uttereth not a word to tellife that he heareth willingly and with contentment: but by a certaine forced silence, affected gravity, and countereit countenance, would purchase and win unto himselfe the reputation of a staied man, of a profound and deep Clarke: and is as spary of his praises, as of his puse and money in it, imagining that they bid him losse, who would have him part with any one jot thereof, as if he robbed himselfe of so much as he imparted to another. For many there be who misconster and interpret in ill sense the sentence of *Pythagoras*, when he saith, That he had gotten this fruit by the study of Philosophy, namely, to have nothing in admiration. And these men are of this opinion, that because they are not to admire, praise, and honour others, therefore they must despise and dispraise them, and by the disdain and contempt of others they thinke themselves to seeme grave and venerable. For reason Philosophicall, although it rejecteth that wonder and admiration which proceedeth of doubt or ignorance, for that she knoweth the cause of every thing, and is able to discourse thereof; yet for all that it condemneth not courtesie, magnanimity, and humanity. For certes unto such as truly and certainly are good, a right great honour it is to honour those that are worthy of honour: also for a man to adorne another is an excellent ornament proceeding from a superabundance (as it were) of glory and honour which is in himselfe, void of all envy and malice. Whereas those that be niggards in praising of another, seeme to be poore and bare themselves that way, and bewray how hungry they be after their own praises. Now on the contrary side, he who without all judgement and discretion at every word and syllable (in a manner) is ready to rise up and give acclamation, offendeth as much another way, being a man of levity and inconstancy, oftentimes displeaseth, even them that be the speakers, but alwaies offensive and troublesome to other assistants about him, causing them to rise up oftentimes and lift up themselves against their wills, drawing them perforce to do as they seech him do, and even for very shame and modesty to set up some cries and acclamations with him for company. Now after that he hath reaped no fruit nor edification by the oration that he hath heard, for that he had so troubled and disquieted the auditory by his unseasonable praises, he returneth from thence with one of these three additions to his stile: namely, either a Mocker, a Flatterer, or a Blockhead, who understood not what was said. A Judge, I must needs say, when he sitteth upon the seat of Justice to heare and determine causes, ought to give care unto both parties without hatred or favour, void of all affection, and respective only to right and equity. But in the auditories where learned men are met together, there is neither law nor oath hindereth us, but that we may heare him with favour and benevolence who doth speak and discourse unto us. And even our ancients in old time were wont to place and let *Mercury* in their temples near unto the Graces giving us thereby to know that above all things a speech publicly delivered requireth a gracious and friendly audience: for they never thought that the speaker would be such an out-cast, or so far short and insufficient; but if he were not able either to say somewhat of his own invention praise-worthy, or to report from ancients that which is memorable, or to deliver the subject matter of his speech together with his drift and intention, so as it deserved applause: yet at leastwise, his eloquence and disposition of every part might be commendable: for according to the old proverb,

*With Colthrop: shuffles rough and keen,  
With prick y Rest-harrow,  
Close Scions fair and white are seen  
With soft walk-flowers to grow.*

For if some to shew their wit have taken upon them the praise of vomiting, others of fever, and some iwis of a pot or caudron, and yet have not failed of favour and approbation: how can it otherwise be, but that the oration composed by a grave personage, who in some sort is reputed, or at leastwise called a Philosopher, should minister unto benevolent, gracious, and courteous Auditors some repite and opportunity of time for to praise and commend the same? All those that are in the flower and prime of their age, such *Plato*, one way or other, do affect and move him that is enamoured on them: in much as if they be white of colour, he calleth them the children of the gods: if black of hew, he termes them manly and magnanimous: be one hawk-nosed, such he nameth Royall and of a Kingly Race: is he camoie or flat nosed, him he will have to be gentle, pleasing, and gracious: and to conclude, looketh one pale and yellow, then to cover and mollifie in some sort that ill colour, he useth to call him Honey-face: and every one of these defects, he loveth and embraceth as several beauties: For in love is no lack, and of this nature it is to claspe and cleave unto every thing that it can reach or meet withall, in manner of Ivy; much more then will be that is a studious scholar and a diligent hearer, find alwaies one thing or other for which he may seem worthy to praise any one that mounteth up into the chaire for to declaime or discourse. For even *Plato* himselfe, who in the oration of *Lisias* commended not the invention; and as for the disposition thereof, utterly found fault therewith as disorderly and confused; yet he praised his stile and eloquence, and gave this attribute unto it, that every word was perspicuous and lightsome, and withall ran round, as if they all had been artificially wrought with the Turners instrument. A man that were to be disposed, may seeme in reason to reprove in *Archilocho* the argument and subject matter: in *Parmenides* the composition of his verses: in *Phocylides* the meane and homely matter: the loquacity of *Euripides*, and the inequality or uneven stile of *Sophocles*: After which sort, you shall have among Orators and Rhetoricians,

E

cians one who cannot expresse the natural disposition of a man, another who hath no power in resembling passions and affections, and another againe who faileth in grace: and yet each one of them commendable enough for some particular and especiall gift, either to move or to delight. In which regard the hearers also may find sufficient matter and pleasure enough to gratifie and content if they list those that speake and make orations to them. For some of them it sufficeth, although we do not reliefe our good liking of them by lively and open voice, to give them a favourable regard of the eye, to shew them a mild and gentle visage, a cheerefull looke, an amiable disposition of the countenance, without any signe of sadnesse and heavinesse. And verily, these things are grown now to be so common and ordinary, that we can afford them even to those who speake but so, and to no purpose at all: in so much, as every auditory can skill thereof: But to sit still modestly in his place without any token of disdain: to heare the body upright, leaning neither one way nor other: to fixe their wittily upon him that speaketh: to shew a forward getture, as if one gave great attention and marked every word seriously: to set and dispoyle the countenance plaine, pure, and simple, without any signification at all, not only of contempt or discontentment, but also of all other cares and thoughts whatsoever, be evident tokens of approbation, and tend all thereto. For, as in every thing else, beauty and favour is compoiled and framed (as it were) of many numbers meeting and concurring in one, and all together at the same time, and that by a certaine symmetry, consonance, and harmony: but that which is foule and ill-favoured, is bred immediately by the least thing in the world, that either is wanting, or added and put to absurdly, otherwife than it should: even so we may notably observe in this action of hearing, not only the knitting and bending of the brows, or the heavy cheere of the visage, a crooked aspect and wandering cast of the eye, a writhing away or turning about of the body, an undecient change of the thighs crosse one over another: but a very nod of the head, or winke of the eye alone, the whispering or rounding one of another in the eare, a bare smile, gapings, and drowie yawnings, as if a man were ready for to drop asleep: finally, the hanging down of the head, and whatsoever gettures of that sort, we are countable for as fault-worthy, and they would be carefully taken heed of. Howbeit, there be some of this opinion, that the speaker indeed ought to looke unto himselfe and his behaviour when he is aloft: but the hearers beneath need not. They would (I say) have him who is to make a speech in public place, to come well prepared, and with diligent premeditation of that which he ought to say: but as for the hearers, they have no more to do but to take their places, without any fore-thinking of the matter, without any care and regard at all of duty and demeanour after they be set, as if they were come to a very supper, and nothing else, there to take their repast or ease themselves, whilst others take paine and travell. And yet a guest that goeth to sup with another hath something to do and observe when he sits at table: if he would be thought civil and mannerly: how much more then, in all reason, is an auditor bound so to do, who is to heare another speake. For he is partaker with him of his speech, yea, and by right a coadjutor of him: he ought not then to examine rigorously his faults escaped; he is not to sit narrowly, and weigh in severe balance each word of his, and every gesture: whilst he himselfe (exempt from censure and controulement, and without feare of being espied and searched into) committeth many enormities, uncleanly parts, and incongruities in hearing. For like as at Tennis play, he that receiveth the ball, ought in the stirring and motion of his body to accommodate himselfe handily and in order to his fellow that smit it: even so between the speaker and the hearer, if both of them observe their duty and decency, there would be a mutual and reciprocal proportion. Now in yielding praises unto the Reader or Speaker, we must not inconsiderately use all manner of termes and exclamations without discretion: For *Epicurus* himselfe is not well liked, but odious, when he saith, That upon the reading of any letters missive from his friends unto him, they that were about him did set up excessive outcries and applauses, with troublesome clapping of their hands: And verily those who bring in now adates into the auditory uncouth and strange noises by way of acclamation; they also who have brought up these termes, O heavenly and divine speech! The voice of God and not of man, uttered by his mouth; and, Who is able to come neerer unto him? As though it were not sufficient, simply thus to say: O well said, Wisely spoken, or Truly delivered: (which were the testimonies and signes of praise which *Plato*, *Socrates*, and *Hyperides* used in old time) such men, I say, do highly offend, and passe the bounds of decency exceeding much: nay, they do traduce and abuse the speakers themselves, as though they did hunt after, and lay forth excessive and proud commendations. Those also be odious and unpleasant, who as if they were in some judiciall Court, depose and give formal testimony as touching the honour of the speakers, and binde the same with an oath: neither be they in lesse fault, who without regard of the quality of persons do accommodate unto them their titles of praise befit all decorum: As for example, when they be ready to cry aloud unto a Philosopher, O quick and witty saying! and unto an old man, O what a brave and jolly speech is this! transferring and applying unto Philosophers those words and termes that ordinarily are used or attributed to players, or such as exercise and shew themselves in scholasticall declamations: and to a serious and sober oration giving a praise more befitting a light and wanton curleian: which is as much, as if upon the head of a victorious Champion, they should set a garland of lillies or roses, and not of the lawrell or wild olive tree. *Euripides* scily, the Poet, when one over-heard him as he prompted and ended unto the actors

of

or persons in the *Chorus*, a certaine song set to musick harmony, and therewith laughed heartily whilst he instructed them in singing the same: If thou wert not (quoth he) some blockish and senselesse dolt, thou wouldest never laugh when I sing a heavy mist-Lydian tune, or a note to a dumpe or dolefull ditty. Semblably, a grave Philosopher, and a man exercised in managing State-affaires, might very well in mine advice, cut off, and repress the delicate insolvency of some auditor, over-wantonly disposed to mirth and jollity, by saying thus unto him: Thou seemest unto me a brain-sick fellow, and untaught: for otherwhiles whilst I am teaching, preaching, and improving vices, discouraging and reading of policy and the administration of Common-weale, of the nature of the gods, or the duty of a Magistrate, thou wouldest neither dance and sing as thou dost. For consider with me in truth what a disorder is this, That when a Philosopher is in the Schoole at his Lecture reading, they within should keep a crying and howling, and make such noyes, as they that be without cannot tell whether it be some piper, harper, or dancer that they thus do praise, such a confused brute they make within. Moreover, we ought not to heare the reprehensions, rebukes, and corrections of Philosophers, reachlesly without sense of griefe and displeasure, nor yet unmanly: for they that can so well abide to be reproved or blamed by a Philosopher, and make nothing adoe at it, in so much as when they be found fault withall they fall a laughing, or can find in their hearts to praise those that do reprehend them, much like unto these flattering Parasites, who are content to extoll and commend their good Masters that give them their meat and drinke, notwithstanding they be reviled and taunted by them: these fellows (I say) of all others be most rash, audacious, and bold, shewing thereby their shamelesse impudency, which is no good nor true argument of courage and fortitude. As for a pretty scoffe pleasantly delivered, and in mirth, without any wrong meant, or touch of credit, if a man know how to take it well, and be not moved thereby to choler and displeasure, but laugh it out, it doth arguently bafe mind, nor want of wit and understanding, but it is a liberrall and gentleman-like quality, favouring much of the ingenuous manner of the Lacedaemonians. But to heare a sharpe check that toucheth the very quick, and a reprehension to reforme manners, decried in cutting and tart words, much like unto an eager and biting medicine, and therewith not to be cast down, and shrinke together for feare, nor to run all into a sweat, or be ready to reele and stagger with a dizziness in the head, for very shame that hath left the heart on fire, but to inferme flexible and nothing thereat moved, smiling in some sort, and drily scoffing after a dissembling manner, is a notable sign of a most dissolute and illiberrall nature, past all grace, and that bafeth for nothing, being so long wonted and inured to evil doing; in such sort as the heart and conscience is hardened and over-grown with a certaine brawne and thick skin, so you shall never receive the marke or wale of any lash, be it never so smart. And as there be many such, so you shall meet with other youths of another nature meere contrary unto them: who if they happen but once to be checked and to heare ill, are soone gone, and will not turne againe, but quit the Philosophers schooles forever. These being ended by nature with the good rudiments and beginnings of vertue tending unto felicity another day to wit, Shamefastnesse and Abashment, lose the benefit thereof, in that by reason of their over-much delicacy and effeminate minds they cannot abide reprooves, nor with generosity endure corrections, but turne away their itching eares, to heare rather the pleasant and smooth tales of some flatterers or soplifiers, which yeeld them no fruit nor profit at all in the end. For as he, who after incision made, or the feare of dimembering performed by the Chyrurgion, runneth away from him, and will not tarry to have his wound bound up or feared, sustaineth all the paine of the cure, but misseth the good that might ensue thereot: even so he, who unto that speech of the Philosopher which hath wounded and lanced his folly and untowardnesse, will not give leisure to heale the same up, and bring it to a perfect and confirmed skin againe, goeth his waies with the painful bit and dolorous sting, but wanteth all the help and benefit of Philosophy. For not only the hurt that *Telephus* received, as *Euclid* saith,

*By scales of rust both ease and remedy found,*

*But from the speare, that first did make the wound.*

But also the pricke inflicted upon a cowardly young man by Philosophy, is healed by the same words that did the hurt. And therefore when he findeth himselfe checked and blamed, feele he must and suffer some smart, abide (I say) he ought to be bitten, but not to be scorched and confounded therewith, nor to be discouraged and dimaied for ever. Thus he is to thinke of himselfe being now indicted in Philosophy, as if he were a novice newly intituled and professed in some religious orders and sacred mysteries: namely, that after he hath patiently endured awhile the first expiatory purifications and troubles, he may hope at the end thereof to see and find some sweet and goodly fruit of consolation, after this present disquietnesse and agony. Say also that he were wrongfully and without cause thus inbued and rebuked by the Philosopher, yet he shall do well to have patience and sit out the end. And after the speech finished he may address an Apology unto him and iustifie himselfe, praying him to reserve this liberty of speech and clemency of reproofe which he now used, for to reprove and redresse some other fault which he shall indeed have committed. Moreover, like as in Grammar, the learning to spell letters and to read: in Musick also to play upon the Lute or Harpe; yea, and in bodily exercise, the feate of wrestling and other activities at the beginning be painful, cumbersome, and exceeding hard, but after that one be well enured and have made some progresse therein, by little and little continuall

E 2

ut

use and custome (much after the manner of conversing and acquaintance among men) maketh mally, engendreth further knowledge, and then every thing that was strange and difficult before proveth familiar and easie enough both to say and do: Even so it fareth in Philosophy, whereat the first there seemeth no doubt to be some strangeness, obscurity, and I wot not what barrenness, as well in the termes and words, as in the matters therein contained: Howbeit, for all that a young man must not for want of heart be afionied at the first entrance into it, nor yet for faintness be discouraged and give over: but make proove and trial of every thing, persevere and continue in diligence, desirous ever to passe on still and proceed further, and as it were, to draw well before, waiting and attending the time which may make the knowledge thereof familiar by use and custome, the only means which every thing that is of it selfe good and honest, to bealto sweet and pleasant in the end. And verily this familiarity will come on apace, bringing with it a great clearness and light of learning: it doth ingenerate also an ardent love and affection to vertue, without which love a man were most wretched or timorous, if he should apply himselfe to follow another course of life, having once given over for want of heart the study of Philosophy. But peradventure it may fall out so, that young men not well experienced may find at the beginning such difficulties in some matters that hardly or unneth at all they shall be able to comprehend them. Howbeit, they are themselves partly the cause that they do incur this obscurity and ignorance: who being of divers and contrary natures, yet fall into one and the selfe same inconvenience. For some upon a certaine respectuous reverence which they bare unto their Reader and Doctor, or because they would seeme to spare him, are afraid to aske questions, and to be confirmed and resolved in doubts arising from the doctrine which he delivereth: and so give signes by nodding their heads that they approve all, as if they understood every thing very well. Others againe, by reason of a certaine importune ambition and vaine emulation of others, for to shew the quickness and promptitude of their wit, and their ready capacity, giving out that they fully understand that which they never conceived, by that means attaine to nothing. And thus it cometh to passe, that those bashfull ones, who for modesty and shame their silents are silent, and dare not aske that whereof they are ignorant, after they be departed out of the auditory are in heaviness and doubtfull perplexity, untill at last they be driven of necessity with greater shame to trouble those who have once already delivered their doctrine, to runne (I say) unto them back againe and move questions anew. And as for these ambitious, bold and presumptuous persons, they be forced to palliate, cover, and disguise their ignorance and blindness which abideth with them for ever. Therefore casting behind us, and rejecting all such stupidity and vanity; let us take paines and endeavour how, over we do to learn and thoroughly to comprehend all profitable discourses that shall be taught unto us: and for to effect this, let us be content gently to beare the scoffs and derisions of others, that thinke themselves quicker of conceit than our selves: according to the example of *Cleanthes* and *Xenocrates*, who being somewhat more grosse and dull of capacity than others their school-fellows, ran not therefore away from schoole, nor were any whit discouraged, but the first that scoffed and made sport with themselves, saying, they were like unto narrow-mouthed vessels, and brazen tables, for that they hardly conceived any thing that was taught them, but they retained and kept the same safe and surely when they had it once: for not only as *Phocylides* saith,

*Who seeks in th' end for goodnesse and for praise,*

*Maine while must be deceived many waies.*

But also to suffer himselfe to be mocked oftentimes, and to endure much reproach, to abide broad jests and scurrilous scoffes: expelling ignorance with all his might and maine; yea, and conquering the same.

Moreover, we must be carefull to avoid one fault more, which many commit on the contrary side: who for that they be somewhat slow of apprehension and idle withall, are very troublesome unto their teachers, and importune them over-much: when they be apart by themselves, they will not take any paines nor labour to understand that which they have heard; but they put their Masters to new travell who reade unto them: asking and enquiring of them ever and anon concerning one and the same thing, resembling herein young callow birds which are not yet feathered and fledg'd, but alwaies gaping toward the bill of the damme, and so by their good wills would have nothing given them but that which hath been chewed and prepared already. Now there be others yet, who desirous beyond all reason to be counted quick of wit and attentive hearers, wearie their Masters, even as they are reading unto them, with much prattle, interrupting them every foot in their lectures, demanding of them one thing or other that is needles and impertinent, calling for proofes and demonstrations of things where no need is:

*Thus they much paines for little takes,*

*And of short way long journey make.*

According as *Sapienter* said making much work, not only for themselves, but also for others: For playing their teacher thus as they do every foot with their vaine and superfluous questions, as if they were walking together upon the way, they hinder the course of the Lecture, being so often interrupted and broken off. These fellows then according to the saying of *Hieron*, in this doing are much like to cowardly and balfardly cur-dogs, which, when they be at home within house, will bite the hides and skins of wild beasts, and lie tugging at their shagged haire: but they dare

not

not touch them abroad in the field. Furthermore, I would give those others, who are but soft spirited and slow withall, this counsell, that retaining the principall points of every matter, they supply the rest apart by themselves, exercising their memory, and, as it were, leading it by the hand to all that dependeth thereto: to the end that when they have conceived in their spirit the words of others, as it were the elementary beginning and the very feed, they might nourish and augment the same: For that the mind and understanding of man is not of the nature of a vessel that requirith to be filled up: but it hath need only of some match (if I may so say) to kindle and set it on fire (like as the matter standeth ever in need of the efficient cause) which may ingender in it a certaine inventive motion, and an affection to find out the truth. Well then, like as if a man going to his neighbour for to fetch fire, and finding there good store, and the same burning light in the chimney, should sit him down by it and warme himselfe continually thereat, and never make care to take some of it home with him, you would take him to be unwise: even so he, that cometh to another for to learne, and thinketh not that he ought to kindle his own fire within, and make light in his own mind, but taketh pleasure in hearing only, and there sitteth by his Master still, and joyneth only in this contentment: he may well get himselfe a kind of opinion by the words of another, like a fresh and red colour by sitting by the fire side: but as for the mosse or ruff of his mind within, he shall never scour it out, nor disperse the darkness by the light of Philosophy.

Now if there be need yet of one precept more to achieve the duty of a good auditor, it is this, That we ought to remember estoones that which now I have to say: namely, That we exercise our wit and understanding by our selves, to invent something of our own, as well as to comprehend that which we heare of others: to the end that we may acquire within our selves a certaine habitude, not sophistical nor historical, that is to say, apparent only, and able to recite barely that which we have been taught by others, but more inwardly imprinted and philosophical, making this account, that the very beginning of a good life is to heare well and as we ought,

## Of Morall Vertue.

### The Summary.

**B**Efore he entere into the discourse of vertues and vices, he treateth of Morall vertue in general: propounding in the first place the diversity of opinions of Philosophers as touching this point: to the which he disjuncteth and examineth: Wherein after that he had begun to dispute concerning the composition of the soule, he adjoyneth his own opinion touching that property, which Morall vertue hath particularly by it selfe, as also wherein it differeth from contemplative Philosophy. Then having defined the Mediocrity of this vertue, and declared the difference between Continence and Temperance, he sheweth of the impression of reason in the soule. And by this means addresseth himselfe against the Stoicks, and disputeth concerning the affections of the soule: proving the inequality therein, with such a refutation of the contrary objections, that after he had taught how the reasonles part of the soule ought to be managed, he discovereth by diverse similitudes and reasons the absurdities of the said Stoick Philosophers, who instead of well-governing and ruling the soule of man, have, as much as lieth in them, extinguished and abolished the same.

## Of Morall Vertue.

**M**Y purpose is to treat of that vertue which is both called and reputed Morall, and namely, wherein it differeth especially from vertue contemplative: as having for the subject matter thereof, the passions of the mind, and for the forme, Reason: Likewise, of what nature and substance it is: as also, how it doth subsist and hath the being to wit, whether that part of the soule which is capable of the said vertue be endued and adorned with reason as appropriate and peculiar unto it; or whether it borrow it from other parts, and so receiving it, be like unto things mingled, and adhering to the better: or rather, for that being under the government and rule of another, it be said to participate the power and puissance of that which commendeth it? For, that vertue also may subsist and have an essential being, without any subject matter and mixture at all, I suppose it is very evident and apparent. But first and foremost, I hold it very expedient, briefly to run through the opinions of other Philosophers, not so much by way of an Historical narration and to an end, as that when they be once shewed and laid abroad, our opinion may both appeare more plainly, and also be held more surely.

Mencemus then, who was borne in the City *Erria*, abolished all plurality and difference of vertues, supposing that there was but one only vertue, and the same known by sundry names:

E 2

For



For he said, that it was but one and the same thing, which men called Temperance, Fortitude, and Justice: like as if one should say, A Reasonable creature and a man, he meaneth the self-same thing. As for *Ariston* the Chian, he was of opinion likewise, that in substance there was no more but one vertue, which he termed by the name of Health: many, in some divers respects there were many vertues, and those different one from another: as namely for example, if a man should call our eye-sight, when it beholdeth white things, *Leucochea*: when it seeth black, *Melanthis*: and so likewise in other matters. For vertue, (quoth he) which concerneth and considereth what we ought either to do or not to do, beareth the name of prudence: when it ruleth and ordereth our lust or concupiscence, limiting out a certaine measure, and lawfull proportion of time unto pleasures, it is called Temperance: if it intermeddle with the commerce, contracts, and negotiation between man and man, then it is named Justice: like as (to make it more plaine) a knife is the same still, although it cut now one thing, and then another: and the fire notwithstanding it worketh upon sundry matters, yet it remaineth alwaies of one and the same nature. It seemeth also, that *Zeno* the Citician inclined in some sort to this opinion, who in defining Prudence, saith, that when it doth distribute to every man his own, it ought to be called Justice: when it is occupied in objects either to be chosen or avoided, then it is Temperance: and in bearing or suffering, it should be named Fortitude. Now, they that defend and maintain this opinion of *Zeno*, affirme, that by Prudence he understandeth Science or Knowledge. But *Chrysippus*, who was of this mind, that each vertue had a peculiar quality, and according to it, ought to be defined and set down, writt not how (ere he was aware) he brought into Philosophy, and as *Plato* saith, raised a swarme of vertues never known before, and wherewith the schooles had not been acquainted. For like as of Valiant he derived Valour, of Just Justice, of Clement Clemency: so also of Gracious he comes in with Gratiuity, of Good Goodnesse, of Great Greatnesse, of Honest Honesty, and all other such like Dexterities, affabilitie, and courtesies he merited by the name of vertues, and so pestered Philosophy with new, strange, and absurd words, more wis than was needfull.

Now these Philosophers agree joyntly all in this, that they set down vertue to be a certaine disposition and power of the principall part of the soule, acquired by reason: or rather, that it is reason it selfe: and this they suppose as a truth confessed, certaine, firme, and irrefragable. They hold also, that the part of the soule, subject to passions, sensuall, brutish, and unreasonable, differeth not from reason by any essentiall difference, or by nature: but they imagine, that the very part and substance of the soule which they call understanding, reason, and the principall part, being wholly turned and changed, as well in hidden passions, as alterations by habitude and disposition, becometh either vice or vertue, and in it selfe hath no brutishnesse at all: but is named only unreasonable, according as the motion of the appetite and lust is so powerful, that it becometh Mistresse, and by that means she is driven and carried forcibly to some dishonest and absurd course, contrary to the judgment of reason: For they would have that very motion or passion it selfe set to reason, howbeit depraved and naught, as taking her force and strength from false and perverse judgement. Howbeit, all these (as it may seeme) were ignorant of this one point: namely, that each one of us (to speake truly) is double and compound: And as for one of these duplicities they never thoroughly saw: that only which is of the twaine more evident, to wit, the mixture or composition of the soule and body they acknowledge. And yet, that there is besides a certaine duplicity in the soule it selfe, which consisteth of two divers and different natures: and namely, that the brutish and reasonlesse part, in manner of another body, is combined and knit into reason by a certaine naturall linke of necessity: It seemeth that *Pythagoras* himselfe was not ignorant: And this we may undoubtedly gather and conjecture by his great diligence which he employed in that Musicke and Harmony which he inferred for the dulcifying, taming, and appeasing of the soule: as knowing full well, that all the parts thereof were not obedient and subiect to instruction, learning, and discipline, yet such as might by reason be altered and trained from vice to vertue: but required some other kind of perswasive power co-operative with it, for to frame the same and make it gentle and tractable: for otherwise it would be hardly or never conquered by Philosophy, and brought within the compass of obedience: so obstinate and rebellious it is. And *Plato* verily was of this opinion, (which he professed openly, and held as a firme and undoubted truth) that the soule of this universall world is not simple, uniforme, and uncompounded, but mixed (as it were) of a certaine power of Identity and of Diversity. For after one sort it is governed and turned about continually in an uniforme manner, by means of one and the same order, which is powerfull and predominant over all: and after another sort againe, it is divided into circles, spheres, and motions, wandering and contrary in manner to the other: whereupon dependeth the beginning of diversity in generation of all things in the earth. Sensibly (quoth he) the soule of man being a part and portion of that universall soule of the world, composed likewise of proportions and numbers answerable to the other, is not simple and of one nature or affection, but one part thereof is more spirituall, intelligible, and reasonable, which ought of right and according to nature have the sovereignty and command in man: the other is brutish, sensuall, erroneous and disorderly of it selfe, requiring the direction and guidance of another. Now, this is subdivided againe into other two parts: whereof the one is alwaies called Corporall or Vegetative: the other Thymocides, as one would say, Irascible and Con-

See The same.

Concupiscible: which one while doth adhere and stick close to the forsaide grosse and corporall portion: and otherwhiles to the more pure and spirituall part, which is the discourse of reason: unto which according as it doth frame and apply it selfe, it giveth strength and vigour thereunto. Now the difference between the one and the other may be known principally by the fight and resistance that oftentimes is between understanding and reason on the one side, and the concupiscence and wrathfull part on the other: which sheweth that these other faculties are often disobedient and repugnant to the best part. And verily *Aristotle* used these principles and grounds especially above all others at the first, as appeareth by his writings: but afterwards, he attributed the irascible part unto the concupiscible, confounding them both together in one, as if it were a concupiscence or desire of revenge. Howbeit, this he alwaies held to the very end. That the brutish and sensuall part, which is subject unto passions, was wholly and ever distinct from the intellectuall part, which is the same that reason: not that it is fully deprived of reason, as is that corporall and grosse part of the soule, to wit, whereby we have sense only common with beasts, and whereby we are nourished as plants. But whereas this being furd and deafe, and altogether incapable of reason, doth after a sort proceed and spring from the flesh, and alwaies cleave unto the body: the other sensuall part which is so subject unto passions, although it be in it selfe destitute of reason, as a thing proper unto it: yet nevertheless apt and fit it is to heare and obey the understanding and discoursing part of the mind: in so much as it will turne unto it, suffer it selfe to be ranged and ordered according to the rules and precepts thereof: unless it be utterly spoiled and corrupted, either by blind and foolish pleasure, or else by a loose and intemperate course of life. As for them that make a wonder at this, and do not conceive how that part being in some sort brutish and unreasonable, may yet be obedient unto reason, they seeme unto me as if they did not well comprehend the might and power of reason: namely, how great it is, and forcible, or how far forth it may pierce and passe in command, guidance, and direction: not by way of rough, churlish, violent, and irregular courses, but by faire and formal means, which are able to do more by gentle inducements and perswasions, than all the necessary constraints and imforcements in the world. That this is so, it appeareth by the breath, spirits, sinews, bones, and other parts of the body, which be altogether void of reason: howbeit, so soone as there ariseth any motion of the will, which shaketh (as it were) the reins of reason never so little, all of them keep their order, they agree together, and yeeld obedience. As for example, if the mind and will be disposed to run, the feet are quickly stretched out and ready for a course: the hands likewise tattle to their businesse if there be a motion of the mind either to throw or take hold of any thing. And verily, the Poet *Homer* most excellently expretheth the sympathy and conformity of this brutish part of the soule unto reason in the following verses:

*Thus wept the chafte Penelope,  
And drencht her lovely face  
With dreary teares, which from her eyes  
Ran trickling down apace:  
For tender heart, bewailing sore  
The losse of husband deare,  
Ulysses bright, who was in place  
Set by her side full neare,  
And he himselfe in soule, no lesse,  
Did pity for to see  
His best beloved thus to weep:  
But wise and crafty he  
Kept in his teares: for why?  
His eyes within the lids were set  
As stiff as iron and sturdy horn:  
One drop would they not shed.*

In such obedience to the judgement of reason he had his breath, spirits, his blood, and his teares: An evident proofe hereof is to be seen in those, whose flesh doth rise upon the first sight of faire and beautifull persons: for no sooner doth reason or law forbid to come neare and touch them, but presently the same falleth, lieth down, and is quier againe without any stirring or panting at all. A thing very ordinary and most commonly perceived in those, who be enamoured upon faire women, not knowing at first who they were: For so soon as they perceive afterwards that they be their own sisters or daughters, their lust presently cooleth, by means of reason that toucheth it, and interposeth it selfe between: so that the body keepeth all the members thereof decently in order and obedient to the judgment of the said reason. Moreover, it falleth out oftentimes, that we eate with a good stomach and great pleasure certaine meats and viands before we know what they are: but after we understand and perceive once that we have taken either that which was uncleane or unlawfull and forbidden: not only in our judgement and understanding we find trouble and offence thereby: but also our bodily faculties, agreeing to our opinion, are dismayed thereat: so that anon there enlue vomits, sick qualmes, and overturnings of the stomach, which disquiet all the whole frame. And were it not that I greatly feared to be thought of purpose to gather and insert in my discourse such pleasant and youthfull inducements, I could inter in this place

place Psalteries, Lutes, Harpes, Pipes, Flutes, and other like muscical instruments, how they are deviled by art, for to accord and frame with humane passions: for notwithstanding they be altogether without life, yet they cease not to apply themselves unto us, and the judgement of our minds, lamenting, singing, & wantonly disporting together with us, resembling both the turbulent passions, and also the mild affections and dispositions of those that play upon them. And yet verily it is reported also of *Zeno* himselfe, that he went one day to the Theatre for to heare the Musician *Zalmoxis*, who sung unto the Harpe: saying unto his scholars, Let us go Sirs and learne what harmony and musick, the entralls of beasts, their sinews and bones make: Let us see (I say) what resonance and melody bare wood may yeeld, being disposed by numbers, proportions, and order. But leaving these examples, I would gladly demaund and aske of them, if when they see dogs, horses, and birds, which we nourish and keep in our houses, brought to that passe by use, feeding, and teaching, that they learne to render sensible words, to performe certaine motions, gestures, and divers feats, both pleasant and profitable unto us: and likewise, when they read in *Homer*, how *Achilles* encouraged to battell both horse and man; they do marvell fillly, and make doubt, whether that part and faculty in us, whereby we are angry, do lust, joy, or grieve, be of that nature that it can well obey reason, and be so affected and disposed thereby that it may give assent thereto: considering especially, that it is not feated or lodged without, nor separated from us, ne yet framed by anything which is not in us: no, nor shapen by forcible meanes and constraint to wit, by mold, stroke of hammer, or any such thing: but as it is fitted and forged by nature, so it keepeth to her, is conversant with her, and finally perfected and accomplished by custome and continuance. Which is the reason that very properly Manners be called in Greeke by the name *ἦθος*, to give us to understand, that they are nothing else (to speake plainly and after a grosse manner) but a certaine quality imprinted by long continuance of time in that part of the soule which of it selfe is unreasonable: and is named *ἦθος*, for that the said reasonlesse part, framed by reason, taketh this quality or difference (call it whether you will) by the meane of long time and custome which they terme *ἦθος*. For reason is not willing to root out quite all passions (which were neither possible nor expedient) but only it doth limit them within certaine bounds; and setteth down a kind of order: and thus after a sort causeth Morall vertues not to be impossibilities, but rather mediocrities and regularities, or moderations of our affections: and this it doth by the meanes of prudence and wisdom, which reduceth the power of this sensuall and pathetical part unto a civil and honest habitude. For these three things (they say) are in the soule of man, to wit, a natural puiissance or faculty, a passion or motion, and also an habitude. Now the said faculty or power is the very beginning, and (as a man would say) the matter of passions, to wit, the power or aptnesse to be angry, to be ashamed, or to be confident and bold. The passion is the actual moving of the said power: namely, anger, is felicitie, shame, confidence, or boldnesse. The habitude is a settled and confirmed strength established in the sensuall or unreasonable part by continual use and custome: which if the passions be ill-governed by reason, becometh to be a vice: and contrariwise, a vertue: in case the same be well ordered and directed thereby. Moreover, so much as Philosophers do not hold and affirme, that every vertue is a mediocrity: nor call it Morall: to the end therefore, that we may the better declare and shew the difference, we had need to fetch the beginning of this discourse farther off.

Of all things then that be in the world, some have their essence and being of themselves absolutely and simply: others respectively and in relation to us. Absolutely have their being the earth, the heaven, the stars, and the sea: Respectively, and in regard of us, Good, evil, profitable, hurtfull, pleasant, and displeasing. Now it being so, that reason doth contemplate and behold the one sort as well as the other: the former ranke of those things which are simply and absolutely so pertaine unto Science and speculation as their proper objects: the second kind of those things which are understood by reference and regard unto us pertaine properly unto consultation and action. And as the vertue of the former sort is called Sapience: so the vertue of the other is named Prudence. For difference there is a between Prudence and Sapience: in this, that Prudence consisteth in a certaine relation and application of the contemplative faculty of the soule unto action, and unto the regiment of the sensuall part according to reason: by which occasion Prudence had need of the assistance of Fortitude: whereas Sapience hath nothing to do with it, no more than it hath need of consultation for to attaine and reach unto the end it aimeth at. For that indeed it concerneth such things as be ever one and alwaies of the same sort. And like as the Geometrician never consulteth as touching a triangle, to wit, whether it hath three angles equall to twaine that be right, or no? Because he knoweth assuredly that it hath (for all consultations are concerning things that alter and vary sometime after one sort, and otherwhies after another, and never medleth with those that be firme, stable, and immutable) even so the understanding and contemplative faculty of the mind, exercising her functions in those first and principal things which be permanent, and have evermore the same nature, nor capable of change and mutation, is sequestered and exempt altogether from consultation. But Prudence which descendeth to things full of variety, error, trouble, and confusion, full of necessity, efforce, intermedle, with casualties, and me deliberation in things more doubtfull and uncertaine: yea, and after it hath consulted to proceed unto action, calling and drawing unto it the reasonlesse part also to be assistant and present, as drawn unto the judgement of things to be executed. For neede those

actions

actions have a certaine instinct and motion to set them forward, which this Morall habitude doth make in each passion, and the same instinct requirith likewise the assistance of reason to limit it that it may be moderate, to the end that it neither exceed the meane, nor come short and be defective: for that it cannot be choien but this brutish and pallible part hath motions in it: some over-vehement, quick, and sudden, others as slow againe, and more slack than is meet. Which is the reason that our actions cannot be good but after one manner: whereas, they may be evil after divers sorts: like as a man cannot hit the marke but one way: many he may misse sundry waies, either by over-shooting or coming short. The part and duty then of that active faculty of reason according to nature, is to cut off and take away all those excessive or defective passions, and to reduce them unto a mediocrity. For whereas the said instinct or motion, either by infirmity, effeminate delicacy, feare, or sloathfulness, doth faile and come short of the duty and the end required, there active reason is present ready to rouse, excite, and stir up the same. Again on the other side, when it runneth on end beyond all measure, after a disolute and disorderly manner, there reason is present, to abridge that which is too much, and to repress and stay the same: thus ruling and restraining these pathetical motions, it breedeth in man these Morall vertues whereof we speake, imprinting them in that reasonlesse part of the mind: and no other they are than a meane between excess and defect. Neither must we thinke, That all vertues do consist in a mediocrity: for Sapience or Wisdom, which stand in no need at all of the brutish and unreasonable part, and consist only in the pure and sincere intelligence and discourse of understanding, and not subject to all passions, is the very height and excellency of reason, perfect and absolute of it selfe: a full and accomplished power (I say) wherein is engendered that most divine, heavenly, and happy knowledge. But Morall vertue which favourth somewhat of the instrumentall ministry of the pathetical part, for to worke and performe her operations, being in no wise the corruption or abolition of the sensuall and unreasonable part of the soule, but rather the order, moderation, and embellishment thereof, is the extremity and height of excellency in respect of the facultie and quality: but considering the quantity is rather a mediocrity, taking away the excess on the one side, and the defect on the other.

But now, so far as much as this terme of Meane or Mediocrity may be understood diverse waies, we are to set down what kind of meane this Morall vertue is, first and forme it therefore, whereas there is one meane compounded of two simple extremes, as a russet or brown colour between white and black: also that which containeth and is contained must needs be the midt between the thing that doth containe and is contained, as for example, the number of 8 is just between 2 and 4, like as that, which taketh no part at all of either extreme, as namely, those things which we call *Adiaphora*, Indifferent, and do partake neither good nor ill: In none of these significations or senses can this vertue be called a meane or mediocrity. For surely it may not be in any wile a composition or mixture of two vices which be both worke: neither doth it comprehend the lesse and defective: or is comprehended of that which is over-much above decency, and excessive, ne yet is it altogether void of passions and perturbations, subject to excess and defect, to more and lesse than is meet. But this morall vertue of ours, as it is in deed, so also it is called a Meane, especially in respect of that mediocrity which is observed in the Harmony and accord of sounds. For like as in Musicke there is a note or found called the Meane, for that it is the midt between the base and treble, which in Greeke be called *Hypate* and *Mete*, and lieth just betwixt the height and loudnesse of the one, and the lownesse or basenesse of the other: Even so, morall vertue being a motion and faculty about the unreasonable part of the soule, tempereth the remission and intention: and in one word, taketh away the excess and defect of the passions, reducing eabh of them to a certaine Mediocrity and moderation that faileth not on any side.

Now, to begin with Fortitude, they say it is the meane between Cowardise and Lath Audacity, of which twaine, the one is a defect, the other an excess of the irrefull passion. Liberty, between Niggardie and Prodigality, Clemency and Mildnesse, between senselesse Indolence and Cruelty: Justice, the meane of giving more or lesse than due, in contracts and affaires between men: Like as Temperance, a mediocrity between the blockish stupidity of the mind moved with no touch of pleasure, and an unbridled loosenesse whereby it is abandoned to all sensuality. Wherein especially and most clearly is given us to understand and see the difference between the brutish and the reasonable part of the soule: and thereby evident it is that wandring passions be one thing, and reason another: for otherwise we should not discern Continency from Temperance, nor Incontinency from Intemperance, if pleasure and lusts, if that faculty of the mind whereby we judge, and that whereby we covet and desire were all one and the same: but now, Temperance is, when reason is able to manage, handle, and govern the sensuall and passionate part (as if it were a beast brought up by hand and made tame and gentle, so it will be ready to obey it in all desires and lusts, yea, and willing to receive the bit) whereas Continency is when reason doth rule and command and concupiscence, as being the stronger, and leadeth it, but not without some paines and trouble thereof, for that it is not willing to shew obedience, but strive, singeth out seldom, and goeth crossed, in so much as it hath enough to do for to matter it with stripes of the cudgell, and with hard bits of the bridle to hold it in and restrain it, whiles it resisteth



fieth all that ever it may, and putteth reason to much agony, trouble and travail: which *Plato* doth lively represent unto us by a proper similitude, saying, that there betwixt draght beats which draw the chariot of our soules, whereof the worst doth both winde and strive against the other fellow in the same yoke, and also troubleth the coach-man or charioteer, who hath the conduct of them: putting him to his shifts, that he isaine alwaies to pull in and hold his head hard, otherwhiles glad to let him slack and give him the head for feare, as *Simonides* saith,

*Left that his purple reines full loose  
Out of his hands should slip anon,*

Thus you see what the reason is, why they do not vouchsafe Continency, the name of a perfect vertue in it selfe, but thinke it to be lesse than vertue. For there is not in it a certaine mediocrity arising from the Symphony and accord of the worlde with the better: neither is the exccesse of passion cut away, ne yet doth the appetite yeeld it selfe obedient and agreeable to reason: but doth trouble and vex, and is troubled and vexed reciprocally, being kept down perforce and by constraint, like as in a seditious state, both parties at discord intending mischief and war one against another, dwell together within the precinct of one wall: inasmuch as the soule of a continent person for the fight and variance between reason and appetite, may aptly be compared as *Sophocles* saith unto a city,

*Which at one time is full of innocent sweet,  
Resounding mirth with loud triumphant song,  
And yet the same doth yeeldan every street  
All signes of griefe, with plaints and groanes among.*

And hereupon it is also, that they hold Incontinency to be lesse than vice: mary, Intemperance they will have to be a full and compleat vice indeed: For that in it as the affection is ill, so the reason also is corrupt and depraved: and as by the one it is incited and led to the appetite of filthinesse and dishonesty, so by the other through perverse judgement it is induced to give consent unto dishonest lulls, and withall growth to be senselesse, and hath no feeling at all of fins and faults which it committeth: whereas Incontinency retaineth still a right and found judgement by means of reason: Howbeit through the vehement and violent passion which is stronger than reason, it is carried away against the owne judgement. Moreover, in these respects, it differeth from Intemperance: For that the reason of the incontinent person is over-matched with passion: but of the other, it doth not so much as enter combat therewith. He albeit he contradicth, gainsay, and strives a while, yet in the end yeeldeth unto lulls & followeth them; but the Intemperate man is led thereby, and at the first gifteth consent, and approveth thereof. Again, the Intemperate person is well content, and taketh joy in having sinned: whereas the other is presently grieved thereat. Again, he runneth willingly and of his own accord to commit sin and villany: but the incontinent man, mangle and full against his mind doth abandon himselfe. And as there is this distinct difference plainly seen in their deeds and actions, so there is no lesse to be observed in their words and speeches. For the sayings ordinarily of the Intemperate person be these and such like,

*What mirth in life what pleasure, what delight,  
Without content in sports of Venus bright?  
Were those joys past, and I for them unmeet,  
Ring out my knell, bring forth my winding sheet.*

*Another saith,  
To cate, to drinke, to wench, are principalls;  
All pleasures else, I Accessories call.*

As if with all his heart and soule he were wholly given to a voluptuous life, yea, and overwhelmed therewith. And no lesse than those, he also who hath these words in his mouth,

*Now suffer me to perish by and by;  
It plebeth, nay, it booteth me to dy.*

Speaketh as one whose appetite and judgement both were out of order and diseased. But the speeches of Incontinent persons be in another key and far different: For one saith,

*My mind is good and shal her doth sway,  
My nature bad, and puts it away.*

*Another,  
Alas alas, To see, how Gods above  
Have sent to men on earth this misery  
To know their Good, and that which they should love,  
Yet wanting grace, do the contrary!*

*And a third,  
Now plucke, now bale, of deadly ire a fire:  
But surely, hold my reason can no more:  
Than anchor broke (say) ship from being split,  
When grounded 'tis on sands neare to the shore.*

He nameth not unproperly and without good grace the flouke of an anchor resting lightly upon the loose sand, to signifie the feeble hold that reason hath, which is not resolute and firmly seated, but

but through the weaknesse and delicacy of the soule, rejecteth and forsaketh judgement: And not much unlike hereunto is this comparison also that another maketh in a contrary sense;

*Much like a ship which fastned is to land,  
With cordage strong, whereof we may be bold,  
The winds do blow, and yet the doth withstand,  
And check them all her cables take (such hold,*

He termed the judgement of reason, when it resisteth a dishonest act, by the name of Cable and Cordage; which notwithstanding afterwards may be broken by the violence of some passion (as it were) with the continuall gales of a blustering wind. For to say a very truth, the intemperate person is by his lulls and desires carried with full saile to his pleasures; he giveth himselfe thereto, and thither directeth his whole course: But the incontinent person tendeth thither also: howbeit (as a man would say) crookedly and not directly, as one desirous and endeavouring to withdraw himselfe, and to repell the passion that draweth and moveth him to it, yet in the end he also slideth and falleth into some foule and dishonest act: Like as *Timon* by way of biting scoffed, traduced and reproved *Anaxarchus* in this wise,

*Here (shewst) thy selfe the dogged force of Anaxarchus self,  
So stubborn and so permanent, when once he took a spitch:  
And yet as wise as he would seeme, a wretch (I heard folks tell)  
He judg'd was, for that to vice and pleasures overmuch  
By nature prone he was: a thing that Sages must dislure,  
Which brought him back, out of the way, and made him dote anon.*

For neither is a wise Sage properly called continent, but temperate: not a foole incontinent, but intemperate: because the one taketh pleasure and delight in good and honest things; and the other is not offended nor displeased with foule and dishonest actions. And therefore incontinency resembleth properly a mind (as I may so say) Sophistical, which hath some use of reason, but the same so weak, that it is not able to perlevere and continue firme in that which it hath once known and judged to be right. Thus you may see the difference between Intemperance and Incontinence: As for Continency and Temperance, they differ also in certaine respects correspondent in some proportion unto those on the contrary side. For remorse, sorrow, displeasure and indignation, do not as yet abandon and quit continence: whereas in the mind of a temperate person, all lieth plaine and even on every side: nothing there but quietnesse and integrity; in such sort, as whosoever seeth the great obedience and the marvellous tranquillity whereby the reasonlesse part is united and incorporate together with the reasonable, might well say,

*And then anon the winds were down,  
A calme ensued straight way:  
Now waves were seen, some power divine  
The sea asleepe did lay.*

Namely, when reason had once extinguished the excessive, furious, and raging motions of the lulls and desires. And yet these affections and passions, which of necessity nature hath need of, the same hath reason made agreeable, so obedient, so friendly and co-operative, yea, and ready to second all good intentions and purposes ready to be executed: that they neither run before it, nor come dragging behind; ne yet behave themselves disorderly, no, nor shew the least disobedience: so as each appetite is ruled by reason, and willingly accompanieth it,

*Like as the sucking foole doth go  
And run with dam, both to and fro.*

The which confirmeth the saying of *Xenocrates*, touching those who earnestly study Philosophy, and practice it: For they only (quoth he) do that willingly, which others do perforce, and for dread of the Law: who forbear indeed to satisfie their pleasures, and turne back as if they were scared from them for feare of being bitten of some curst mastive or shrewd cat, regarding nothing else but danger that may enlure thereupon. Now, that there is in the soule a sense and perceivance of that strength, firmity, and resolution to encounter in full lulls and desires, as if it had a power to strive and make head againe, it is very plaine and evident: howbeit, some there be, who hold it and maintaine, That Passion is nothing different from Reason: neither (by their saying) is there in the mind a dissension or feditio (as it were) of two divers faculties: but all the trouble that we feele is no more but an alteration or change of one and the selfe-same thing, to wit, reason both waies; which we our selves are not able to perceive, for that forthwith it changeth suddenly and with such celerity: never considering all the while, that the same faculty of the mind is framed by nature to concupiscence and repentance both: to be angry and to feare: inclined to commit some foule and dishonest act by the allurements of pleasure, and contrariwise refrained from the same for feare of paine. As for lust, feare, and all such like passions, they are no other (say they) but perverse opinions and corrupt judgements not arising and engendered in any one part of the soule by it selfe, but spread over that which is the chiefe and principall, to wit, reason and understanding: whereof they be the inclinations, affections, motions, and in one word, certaine operations, which in the turning of a hand be apt to change and passe from one to another: much like unto the suddin braids, starts, and runnings to and fro of little children, which how violently

soevert they be and vehement, yet by reason of their weaknesse are but slippery, unstedfast and unconstant.

But these assertions and oppositions of theirs are checked and reluted by apparent evidence and common sense: For what man is he that ever felt in himselfe a change of his lust and concupiscence into judgement: and contrariwise an alteration of his judgement into lust: neither doth the wanton looser cease to love when he doth reason with himselfe and conclude, That such love is to be repressed, and that he ought to strive and fight against it: neither doth he then give over reasoning and judging, when being overcome through weaknesse, he yeeldeth himselfe prisoner and thrall to lust: but like as when by advertisement of reason he doth resist in some sort a passion arising, yet the same doth still tempt him: so likewise when he is conquered and overcome therewith by the light of the same reason that that very instant he seeth and knoweth that he sinneth and doth amisse: so, that neither by those perturbations is reason lost and abolished: nor yet by reason is he freed and delivered from them: but whiles he is tossed thus to and fro, he remaineth a neuter in the midst, or rather participating in common of them both. As for those who are of opinion, that one while the principal part of our soule is lust and concupiscence: and then anon that it doth resist and stand against the same, are much like unto them, who imagine and say, that the hunter and the wild beast be not twaine, but one body, changing it selfe, one while into the forme of an hunter, and another time taking the shape of a savage beast: For both they in a manifest and apparent matter should seeme to be blind and see nothing: and also these beare witness and depole against their own sense, considering that they find and feelee in themselves really not a mutation or change of one only thing, but a sensible strife and fight of two things together within them. But here they come upon us againe and object in this wise, How cometh it to passe then (say they) that the power and faculty in man which doth deliberate and consult is not likewise double (being oftentimes distracted, carried, and drawn to contrary opinions, as it is, namely, touching that which is profitable and expedient) but is one still and the same? True, we must confesse, that divided it seemeth to be: But this comparison doth not hold, neither is the event and effect alike: for that part of our soule wherein prudence and reason is seated fighteth not with it selfe, but using the help of one and the same faculty, it handleth divers arguments, or rather being but one power of discouraging it is employed in sundry subjects and matters different: which is the reason that there is no dolour and griefe at one end of those reasonings and discourages which are without passion: neither are they that confute, forced (as it were) to hold one of those contrary parts against their mind and judgement: unless peradventure it fall out, that some affection lieth close to one part or other, as if a man should secretly and under-hand lay somewhat besides in one of the balances or scales, against reason for to weigh it downe. A thing (I assure you) that many times falleth out: and then it is not reason that is poyed against reason: but either ambition, emulation, favour, jealousy, feare, or some secret passion, making semblance as if in shew of speeches, two reasons were at variance and differed one from another. As may appear by these verses in *Homer*:

*They thought it shame the combat to reject,  
And yet for feare they durst not it accept.*

Likewise in another Poet:

*To suffer death is dolorous  
Though with venom it meet:  
Death to avoid is cowardise:  
But yet our life is sweet.*

And verily in determining of controversies between man and man in their contracts and suits of Law, these passions coming between, are they that make the longest delays, and be the greatest enemies of expedition and dispatch: like as in the counsels of Kings and Princes, they that speak in favour of one party and for to win grace, do not upon any reason of two sentences incline to the one, but they accommodate themselves to their affections, even against the regard of utility and profit. And this is the cause that in those states which be called Aristocracies, that is to say, governed by a Senate or Councell of the greatest men: the Magistrates who sit in judgement will not suffer Oratours and Advocates at the Bar to move affections in all their Pleas: for in Truth, let not the discourse of reason be impeached and hindered by some passion, it will of it selfe tend directly to that which is good and just. But in case there do arise a passion between to cross the same, then you shall see pleasure and displeasure to raise a combat and dissention, to encounter that which by consultation would have been judged and determined. For otherwise, how cometh it to passe that in Philosophicall discourses and disputations a man shall never see it otherwise: but that without any dolour and griefe some are turned and drawn oftentimes by others into their opinions, and subscribe thereto willingly? Nay, even *Aristotle* himselfe. *Democritus* also, and *Chrysippus* have been known to retract and recant some points, which before time they held, and that without any trouble of mind, without griefe and remorse, but rather with pleasure and contentment of heart: because in that speculative or contemplative part of the soule which is given to knowledge and learning only, there reign no passions to make resistance, inasmuch as the brutish part being quiet and at repose loveth not curiously to entremedle in these and such like matters: By which meanes it hapneth, that the reason hath no sooner a fight

of truth, but willingly it inclineth thereto, and doth reject untruth and falsity: for that there lieth in it, and in no other part else, that power and faculty to beleeve and give assent one way, as also to be persuaded for to alter opinion and go another way. Whereas contrariwise, the counsels and deliberations of worldly affaires, judgements also, and arbitraments, being for the most part full of passions, make the way somewhat difficult for reason to passe, and put her to much trouble. For in these cases, the sensual and unreasonable part of the soule is ready to stay and stop her course: yea, and to fright her from going forward, meeting her either with the object of pleasure: or else casting in her way stumbling blocks of feare, of paine, of lusts and desires. And verily the deciding and judgement of this disputation lieth in the sense, which feelee as well the one as the other, and is touched with them both: For say, that the one doth surmount and hath the victory, it doth not therefore defeat utterly and destroy the other: but drawn it is thereto to persevere, and making resistance the while. As for example, the wanton and amorous person, when he checketh and reprovet himselfe therefore, with the discourse of reason against the laid passion of his: yet so as having them both actually subsisting together in the soule: much like as if with his hand he repressed and kept down the one part, enflamed with an hot fit of passion, and yet feeling within himselfe both parts, and those actually in combat one against the other, Contrariwise in those consultations, disputes, and inquisitions which are not passionate, and wherein those motions of the brutish part have nothing to do, in h I meane as those be especially of the contemplative part of the soule: if they be equal and lo continue, there enueth no determinate judgement and resolution: but a doubt remaineth, as if it were a certaine pause or stay of the understanding, not able to proceed farther, but abiding in suspense between two contrary opinions. Now if it chance to incline unto one of them, it is because the mightier hath over-weighted the other and annulled it, yet so, as it is not displeased or discontent, no nor contenteth obstinately afterwards against the received opinion. To be short, and to conclude all in one general word: where it seemeth that one discourse and reason is contrary unto another: it argueth not by and by a consent of two divers subjects, but one alone in sundry apprehensions and imaginations. Howbeit, whensoever the brutish and sensual part is in conflict with reason, and the same such that it can neither vanquish, nor be vanquished without some sense of grievance: then incontinently this battell divideth the soule in twaine, so as the war is evident and sensible. And not only by this fight a man may know how the foure and beginning of these passions differeth from that fountaine of reason: but no lesse also by the consequence that followeth thereupon. For seeing that possible it is for a man to love one child that is ingenuous and towardsly disposed to vertue: as also affect another as well, who is illegitimate and dissolute: considering also that one may use anger unjustly against his own children or parents: and another contrariwise justly in the defence of children or parents against enemies and tyrants. Like as in the one there is perceived a manifest combat and resistance of passion against reason: so in the other, there may be seen as evident a yeelding and obediency thereof, suffering it selfe to be directed thereby, yea, and willingly running and offering her assistance and helping hand. To illustrate this by a familiar example it hapneth otherwise, that an honest man epouseth a wife according to the laws, with this intention only to cherish and keep her tenderly, yea, and to company with her duly, and according to the laws of chastity and honesty: howbeit afterwards in tract of time, and by long continuance and conversing together, which hath bred in his heart the affection of love, he perceiveth by discourse of reason, and findeth in himselfe that he loveth her more deeply and entirely than he purposed at first. Specially, young Scholars having met with gentle and kind Masters, at the beginning, follow and affect them in a kind of zeale, for the benefit only that they reape by them. Howbeit afterwards in proceesse of time they fall to love them: and so instead of familiar and dayly disciples they become their lovers, and are so called. The same is usually to be seen in the behaviour and carriage of men toward good Magistrates in Cities, neighbours also, kinsfolke and allies: For they begin acquaintance one with another, after a civil sort only, by way of duty, or necessity and use: but afterwards by little and little are they be aware they grow into an affectionate love of them, namely, when reason doth concur, perceiving and drawing unto it that part of the mind which is the seat of passions and affections. As for that Poet, whatsoever he was, that first wrote this sentence,

*Two sorts there be of falsenesses,  
The one we cannot blame,  
The other troubleth many an house,  
And doth decay the same.*

Doth he not plainly shew that he hath found in himselfe by experience oftentimes, that even this affection by means of lingering delay, and putting off from time to time, hath put him by the benefit of good opportunities, and hindred the execution of many brave affaires: Unto these proofes and allegations precedent, the Stoicks being forced to yield, in regard they be so cleare and evident: yet for to make some way of evasion and escape they call shame, baseness, pleasure, joy, and feare, wantonnesse or circumpection. And I assure you, no man could justly find fault with these distinctions of odious things with honest termes: if so be they would attribute unto these passions the said names when they be ranged under the rule of reason, and give them their own hatefull termes indeed, when they strive with reason and violently make resistance. But when convinced by the teares which they shed, by trembling and quaking of their joynts yea, by change of colour going and coming: instead of naming Dolour and Feare directly, come in with (I wot not what) pretty devised

deviled termes of Mortuities, Contractions, or Conturbations: also when they would cloake and extenuate the imperfection of other passions, by calling but a promptitude or forwardnesse to a thing: it seemeth, that by a flourish of fine words they devile shifts, evasions, and justifications, not philosophical but sophistical. And yet verily they themselves againe do terme those joys, those promptitudes of the will, and wary circumspections by the name of *Eupathies*, i.e. good affections, and not of *Apathies*, that is to say, Impassibilities: wherein they use the words aright and as they ought. For then is it truly called *Eupathie*: i.e. a good affection, when reason doth not utterly abolish the passion, but guideth and ordereth the same well in such as be discreet and temperate. But what befalleth unto vicious and dissolute persons? Surely, when they have set down in their judgement and resolution to love father and mother as tenderly as one lover may another, yet they are not able to performe so much. Mary say, that they determine to affect a curtezan or a flatterer, presently they can find in their hearts to love such most dearly. Moreover, if it were so, that passion and judgement were both one, it could not otherwise be, so soone as one had determined that he ought to love or hate, but that presently love or hate would follow thereupon. But now it falleth out cleane contrary: for that the passion as it accordeth well with some judgements and obeyeth: so it repugneth with others, and is obstinate and disobedient: whereupon it is, that themselves enforce there-to by the truth of the thing, do affirme and pronounce that every judgement is not a passion, but that only which stirreth up and moveth a strong and vehement appetite to a thing: confessing thereby, no doubt, that one thing it is in us which judgeth, and another thing that lieth there, that is to say, which receiveth passions: like as that which moveth, and that which is moved be divers. Certes, even *Chrysippus* himselfe, defining in many places what is Patience and what is Contingency, doth avouch, That they be habitudes, apt and fit to obey and follow the choice of reason: whereby he sheweth evidently that by the force of truth he was driven to confesse and avow, That there is one thing in us which doth obey and yeeld, and another which being obeyed is yeelded unto, and not obeyed is resisted.

Furthermore as touching the Stoicks, who hold, That all sins and faults be equal, neither will this place, nor the time now serve to argue against them, whether in other points they swerve from the truth: howbeit, thus much by the way I dare be bold to say, That in most things they will be found to repugne reason, even against apparent and manifest evidence. For according to their opinion, every passion or perturbation is a fault, and whosoever grieves, fears, or lusts do sin: but in those passions great difference there is seen according to more or lesse: for who would ever be so grosse, as to say, that *Dolours* were equal to the feare of *Ajax*? who as *Homer* writeth,

*As he went out of field disarmed  
And look behind full oft:  
With knee before knee decently,  
And so retired soft.*

Or compare the sorrow of King *Alexander*, who would needs have killed himselfe for the death of *Clytus*, to that of *Plato* for the death of *Socrates*? For dolours and griefes increase exceedingly when they grow upon occasion of that which hath befides all reason: like as any accident which falleth out beyond our expectation is more grievous, and breedeth greater anguish than that whereof a reason may be rendered, and which a man might suspect to follow. As for example, if he who ever expected to see his son advanced to honour, and living in great reputation among men, should heare say that he were in prison, and put to all manner of torture, as *Parmeno* was advertised of his son *Phileas*, And who will ever say, that the anger of *Nicocreon* against *Anaxarchus*, was to be compared with that of *Magus* against *Philemon*, which arose upon the same occasion, for that they both were spitefully reviled by them in reproachfull termes: for *Nicocreon* caused *Anaxarchus* to be braid in a mortar with iron pestles: whereas *Magus* commanded the Executioner to lay a sharpe naked sword upon the neck of *Philemon*, and so to let him go without doing him any more harme. And therefore it is, that *Plato* named anger the finewest of the soules, giving us thereby to understand that they might be stretched by bitterness, and later slack by mildnesse. But the Stoicks, for to avoid and put back these objections, and such like, deny that these stretchings and vehement fits of passions be according to judgement, for that it may faile and erre many waies: saying, they be certaine pricks or stings, contractions, diffusions, or dilatations, which in proportion, and according to reason, may be greater or lesse. Certes, what variety there is in judgement, it is plaine and evident. For some there be that deeme poverty not to be ill: others hold, that it is very ill: and there are againe, who account it the worst thing in the world: in such as to avoid it, they could be content to throw themselves headlong from high rocks into the sea. Also you shall have those, who reckon death to be evil, in that only it depriveth us of the fruition of many good things: others there be, who think and say as much, but it is in regard of the eternal torments and horrible punishments that be under the ground in hell. As for bodily health, some love it no otherwise than a thing agreeable to nature, and profitable withall: others take it to be the soveraigne good in the world, as without which they make no reckoning of riches, of children,

*Ne yet of crowns and regall dignity,  
Which men do match even with divinity.*

Nay, they let not in the end to thinke and say, That vertue it selfe serveth in no stead, and availerh nought, unless it be accompanied with good health: whereby it appeareth, that as touching judgement

ment, some erre more, some lesse. But my meaning is not now to dispute against this evasion of theirs. Thus much only I purpose to take for mine advantage, out of their own confession, in that themselves do grant, That the brutish and insensall part, according to which, they say that passions be greater and more violent, is different from judgement: and howsoever they may seeme to content and cavill about words and names, they grant the substance and the thing it selfe in question, joyning with those who maintain that the reasonles part of the soule which entertaineth passions, is altogether different from that which is able to discourse, reason, and judge. And verily *Chrysippus* in those Books which he entitled, Of Anomology, after he had written and taught, that anger is blind, and many times will not permit a man to see those things which be plaine and apparent, and as often casteth a dark mist over (quoth he) the passions which arise, drive out and chase forth all discountie of reason, and such things as were judged and determined otherwise against them, urging it still by force unto contrary actions. Then he uttereth the testimony of *Menander* the Poet, who in one place writeth thus, by way of exclamation:

*Worth the times, wretch that I am,  
How was my mind distraught  
In body mine? where were my wits?  
Some folly (sure), me caught;  
What time I felt this, For why?  
Thereof I made no choice,  
Far better things they were, wits,  
Which had my former voice.*

The same *Chrysippus* also going on still: It being to (quoth he) that a reasonable creature is by nature borne and given to use the reason in all things, and to be governed thereby: yet notwithstanding we reject and call it behind us, being over-ruled by another more violent motion that carrieth between affection and reason? For it were a meer ridiculous mockery indeed, as *Plato* saith, selfe, and anon ready to be mastered by himselfe, and how were it possible that the same man should be better and worse than himselfe, and at once both master and servant, unless every one were naturally in some sort double, and had in him somewhat better and somewhat worse? And verily he is better than himselfe: whereas he that suffereth the brutish and unreasonable part of his soule to command and go before, so as the better and more noble part doth follow, and is servicable unto it, he no doubt is worse than himselfe: he is (I say) incontinent, or rather impotent, and hath no power over himselfe, but disposed contrary to nature. For according to the course and ordinance of nature, meet and fit it is that reason being divine and heavenly should command and rule that which is sensall and void of reason: which as it doth arise and spring out of the very body, so it remembereth it, as participating the properties and passions thereof, yea, and naturally is full of them, as being deeply concorporate and thoroughly mixed therewith: As it may appear by all the motions which it hath, tending to no other things but those that be materiall and corporall, as receiving their augmentations and diminutions from thence, (or to say more properly) being stretched out and let slack more or lesse, according to the mutations of the body. Which is the cause that young persons are quick, prompt, and audacious: rash, also, for that they be full of bloud, and the same hot, their lusts and appetites are likewise fiery, violent, and furious: whereas contrariwise in old folke, because the source of concupiscence seated about the liver is after a sort quenched, yea, and become weake and feeble, reason is more vigorous and predominant in them, as much as the sensall and passionate part doth languish and decay together with the body. And verily this is that which doth frame and dispose the nature of wail befalls to divers passions: For it is not long of any opinions good or bad, which arise in them, that some of them are strong, venturous, and fearlesse, yea, and ready to withstand any perils presented before them: others againe be so surprised with feare and fright, that they dare not stir or do any thing: but the force and power which lieth in the bloud, in the spirits, and in the whole body, is that which causeth this diversity of passions, by reason that the passible part growing out of the flesh as from a root, doth bud forth and bring with it a quality & pronensse resembling. But in man that there is a sympathy and fellow moving of the body together with the motions of the passions, may be proved by the pale colour, the red flushing of the face, the trembling of the joints, and panting and leaping of the heart in feare and anger: And againe on the contrary side, by the dilatations of the arteries, heart, and colour, in hope and expectation of some pleasures. But which as the divine spirit and understanding of man doth move of it selfe alone, without any passion, then the body is at repose and remaineth quiet, not communicating nor participating any whit with the operation of the mind and intentment, no more than it being disposed to assistance of the unreasonable part: By which it is manifest, that there be two distinct parts in us, (as they themselves affirme, and evident experience doth convince) are governed and ordered, some by a certaine habitude, others by nature: some by a sensall and unreasonable soule: others by that which hath reason and understanding. Of all which man hath his part at once, yea, and was borne



as contrariwise, vice causeth those things which otherwise seemed great, honourable, and magnificent, to be odious, loathsome, and unwelcome to those that have them, if (I say) it be mingled therewith, according to the testimony of these vulgar verses:

*This man who whiles he walks abroad in street  
Or marks place, is ever happy thought:  
No sooner sets within his own house feet,  
Thrice wretched but he is, and not for nought.  
His wife (as master) hath of all the power,  
She bids, commands, she chides and fights each houre.*

And yet one may with ease be rid and divorced from such a curst and threwd wife, if he be a man indeed, and not a bond-slave: but for thine owne vice, no means will serve to exempt thee from it. It is not enough to command it to be gone, by sending a little script or bill of divorcement, and to thinke thereby to be delivered from troubles, and so to live alone in quiet and repose. For it cleaveth close within the ribs, it sticketh fast in the very bowels, it dwelleth there both night and day,

*It burneth thee, yet fire-brand none is seen,  
And hasteth age apace before thee ween.*

A troublesome companion it is upon the way, by reason of arrogancy and presumption: a costly and sumptuous guest at the table for gluttony and gourmandise: an unpleasant and comberfome bed-fellow in the night, in regard of thoughts, cares, and jealousies, which break the sleep or trouble the while with fantasies. For whiles men lie asleep the body is at rest and repose: but the mind all the while is disquieted and affrighted with fearful dreames, and tumultuous visions, by reason of superstitious feare of the gods,

*If thou I sleep when sorrows me surprise,  
Then fearefull dreames me kill before I rise.*

faith one. And even so do other vices serve men: to wit, Envy, Feare, Wrath, Wanton love, and Unbridled lust. For in the day time, vice looking out, and composing it selfe somewhat unto others abroad, is somewhat ashamed of her selfe, and covereth her passions; she giveth not her selfe wholly to her motions and perturbations, but many times doth strive againe and make resistance: but in sleep, being without the danger of laws and the opinion of the world, being irremov'd (as it were) from feare and shame: then it leteth all lulls awoke, then it quickneth and raiseth up all lewdnesse, and then it displayeth all lascivious wantonnesse. It tempteth (as *Plato* saith) a man to have carnall dealing with his own mother, and to eate of forbidden and unlawfull meats: there is no villany that it forbeareth: executing (so far forth as it is able) all abomination, and hath the invention thereof, if it be but by illusions and fantasticall dreames, which end not in any pleasure, nor accomplishment of concupiscence, but are powerfull only to excite, stir, and provoke still the fits of secret passions and maladies of a corrupt heart. Wherein lieth then the pleasure and delight of sin, if it be so, that in no place, nor at any time, it be void of penitencie, care and griefe? If it never have contentment, but alwaies in molestation and trouble, without repose? As for carnall delights and fleshly pleasures, the good complexion and sound constitution of a healthfull body, giveth thereto meane place, opportunity and breeding. But in the soule it is not possible that there should be engendred any mirth, joy, and contentment, unless the first foundation be laid in peace of conscience, and tranquillity of spirit, void of feare, and enjoying a settled calme in all assurance and confidence, without any shew of tempest toward. For otherwise, suppose that some hope do smile upon a man: or say that delight tickle a little: the same anon is troubled, and all the sport is marr'd by some careful cogitation breaking forth like as the object and concurrence of one rock troubleth and overthroweth all, though the water and weather both be never to calme.

Now gather gold and spare not by heaps, take and scrape together masses of silver, build faire gallant and nately walking places, replenish all thy house with slaves, and a whole City with debtors: unless withall thou dost allay the passions of thy mind; unless thou stay and appeale thy insatiable lust and desire: unless thou free and deliver thy selfe from all feare and carking cares: thou dost as much as freine wine, or make *Ipcoras* for one that is sick of a leaver, give honey to a cholericke person diseased with the raging motion of choler, offer meats and viands to those that be sick of a stomachicall flux, continuall ask, ulceration of the guts, and bloody flux, who neither take pleasure therein, nor are the better but the worse rather a great deale for them. See you not how sick folkes are offended, and their stomacks rise at the most fine, colly, and daintiest meats that be offered unto them? How they spit them forth againe, and will none, though they be forced upon them? And yet afterwards, when the body is reduced againe into good temperature: when pure spirits and good fresh blood is engendred, and when the naturall heat is restored and become familiar and kind: then they rise up on their feet to their meat, then their stomacks serve to eate full favour of course bread with cheefe or cresses, and therein they take great pleasure and contentment: The like disposition in the mind doth reason worke. Then and never before shalt thou be pleased and at peace with thy selfe, when thou hast once learned what is good and honest indeed: In poverty thou shalt live deliciously like a King: or in a private and quiet sequestered from civil and publike affaires, thou shalt live as well as they who have the conduct of great armies, and governe the common-weale. When thou hast studied Philology and profited therein, thou shalt never lead a life in discontentment, but shalt

learn

learn how to away with any estate and course of life, and therein find no small joy and hearts ease. Thy riches thou wilt rejoyce in, because thou shalt have better means to do good unto all men: In poverty likewise thou wilt take joy in regard that thou shalt have fewer cares to trouble thee: Closely will turne to thy solace, when thou shalt see thy selfe so honoured: and thy low estate and obscure condition will be no lesse comfort, for that thou shalt be safe and secured from envy.

## That Vertue may be taught and learned.

### The Summary.

**P**lutarck refusing here the error of those, who are of opinion, That by good and diligent instruction a man cannot become the better; recommendeth sufficiently the study of Vertue. And to prove this assertion of his, he sheweth that the apprenticeship of that, which is of small consequence in this world, witnesseth enough that a man ought to be trained from day to day to the knowledge of things that are becomming and worthy his person: Afterwards, he declareth that as much travell should be employed to make him comprehend such things as be far distant from the capacity and excellency of his spirit: In which discourse he setteth covertly these vaine and giddy heads, who (as they say) run after their own shadow, whereas they should stay and rest upon that which is firme and permanent.

## That Vertue may be taught and learned.

**V**E dispute of Vertue, and put in question, whether Prudence, Justice, Loyalty, and Honesty may be taught or no? And do we admire then the works of Orators, Sailors, and Ship-masters, Architects, Husbandmen, and an infinite number of other such which be extant? Whereas of good men we have nothing but their bare and simple names, as if they were *Hippo-Centaures*, *Gyants* or *Cyclops*: and marvel we that of virtuous actions which be entire, perfect, and unblameable, none can be found: ne yet any manners so composed according to duty, but that they be tainted with some passions and vicious perturbations? Yea, and if it happen that nature of her selfe bring forth some good and honest actions, the same straightwaies are darkened, corrupted, and in a manner marred by certaine strange mixtures of contrary matters that creep into them: like as when among good come there grow up weeds and wild bushes that choake the same: or when some kind and gentle fruit is cleane altered by savage nourishment. Men learne to sing, to dance, to read and write, to till the ground, and to ride horses, they learne likewise to shew themselves, to shoo on their apparrell decently: they are taught to wait at cup and trencher, to give drinke at the table, to season and dresse meat: and none of all this can they skill to performe and do handsomely, if they be not trained thereto: and yet shall that, for which they and such like qualities they learne, to wit, good life and honest conversation be reckoned a meere casual thing, coming by chance and fortune, and which can neither be taught nor learned? Oh good Sirs, what a thing is this? In saying, That Vertue cannot be taught, we deny withall that it is, or hath any being. For if it be true that the learning of it is the generation and breeding thereof, ceres he that hindereth the one disannulleth the other: and in denying that it may be taught, we grant that no such thing thereto is at all: And yet as *Plato* saith, for the neck of a Lute not made in proportion to the rest of the body, there was never known one brother go to war with another, nor a friend to quarrell with his friend ne yet two neighbour cities to fall out and maintaine deadly feud, to the interchangeable working and suffering of those miseries and calamities which follow open war. Neither can any man come forth and say, that by occasion of an accident (as for example, whether the word *Talchines* should be pronounced with the accent over the second syllable or no) there arose editions and dissension in any city; or debate in a house between man and wife about the warpe and woofe of any webbe: Howbeit never may yet would take in hand to weave a peece of cloath nor handle a book, nor play upon the lute or harpe, unless he had learned before: for albeit he were not like to sustaine any great losse and notall damage thereby, yet he would feare to be mocked and laughed to scorn for his labour, in which case as *Hesiodus* saith, it were better for a man to conceal his own ignorance: and may such an one thinke then, that he could order a house well, rule a wife, and behave himselfe as it becometh in marriage, beare magistracy, or governe a common-weale as he ought, being never bound and brought up to it? *Diogenes* cyping upon a time a boy eating greedily, and unmanly, gave his Maister or Tutor a good cuffe on the eare: and good reason he had to do, as imputing the fault rather to him, who had not taught, than to the boy, who had not learned better manners. And is it to indeed? Ought they of necessity, who would be manly at the table, both in putting hand to a dish of meat, and taking the cup with a good grace, or

as *Aristophanes* saith,

At

*At board not feeding greedily,  
Nor laughing much undecently,  
Nor crossing feet full wantonly.*

to be taught even from their infancy. And it is possible that the same should know how to behave themselves in wedlock, how to manage the affairs of State, how to converse among men, how to behave office without touch and blame, unless they have learned first how to carry themselves one toward another? *Arifippus* answered upon a time, when one said unto him, And are you fire every where? I should (quoth he, laughing merrily) call away the fare for ferrriage, which I pay unto the martiner, if I were every where. And why might not a man say likewise, If children be nor the better for their teaching, the salary is lost which men bestow upon their Masters and Teachers. But we see that they taking them into their governance presently from their nurseries, like as they did former their limbs and joints fealty with their hands, do prepare and frame their manners accordingly, and let them in the right way to vertue. And to this purpose answered very wisely a Laconian School-master to one who demanded of him, what good he did to the child of whom he had the charge? Mary (quoth he) I make him to take joy and pleasure in those things that be honest. And to say a truth, these teachers and governors instruct children to hold up their heads straight as they go in the street, and not to beare it forward: also, not to dip into sauce, but with one finger: not to take bread or fish but with twaine: to rub or scratch after this or that manner: and thus and thus to trusse and hold up their cloaths. What shall we say then to him, who would make us beleeve that the Art of Physick professeth to scour the morpew, or heale a whit-flaw: but not to cure a plene-rine, leaver, or the pphen? And what differeth he from them, who hold that there be schooles and rules to teach pettes and little children how to be mannerly, and demean themselves in small matters: but as for great, important, and absolute things, it must be nothing else but use and custom, or else chance and fortune that doth effect them? For like as he were ridiculous, and worthy to be laughed at, who should say, that no man ought to lay hand upon theore for to row, but he that hath been prentic to it: but if at the same and guid the helme he may who was never taught it: even so, he, who maintaineth, that in some inferior arts there is required apprenticeship, but for the attaining of vertue none at all, deserveth likewise to be mocked. And verily, he should do contrary unto the Skytybians: For they, as *Herodorus* writeth, use to put out the eyes of their slaves only, to the end that being blind they might turne round about with their milke, and so stir and shake it. But feloniously putteth the eye of reason into these base and inferior arts, which are better than legions waiting upon others: but plucketh it from vertue. *Sphierates* answered contrariwise, being demanded of *Callias* the son of *Chubrias*, by way of contempt and derision, in this wise, What are you fit for? An Archer? A Targetiere? a man at armes? Or a light armed Soldier? I am none (quoth he) of all these, but rather one of those who commandeth them all. Well, ridiculous then is he, and very absurd, who would say, There were an art to be taught, of drawing a bow and shooting, of fighting close at hand, being armed at all pieces, of discharging bullets with a sling, or offitting and riding an horse; but forsooth to lead and conduct an army, there was none at all: as who would say, that that were a thing not learned, but coming by chance, I know not how. And yet I must needs say, more foolish and foolish werelike, who should hold and affirme that Prudence only could not be taught, without which no other Arts and Sciences be worth ought, or avails any whit. That this is true, and that she is alone the guide which leadeth and guideth all other Sciences, Arts, and Vertues, giving them every one their due place and honour, and making them profitable to mankind, a man may know by this, if there were nothing else, That there would be no grace at a feast, though the meat were never so well dressed and served up by skillfull Cooks, though there were proper Ekers or Shewers to set the dishes upon the board, Carvers, Tasters, Skinners, and other Servers and waitors enough, unless there be some good order observed among the said Ministers, to place and dispose every thing as it ought.

### How a man may discern a Flatterer from a Friend.

#### The Summary.

**T**he traveller hath great occasion and cause to rejoyce, if in his journey he go with a good companion, whereby his pleasant and profitable discourses may make him forget the tedious difficulty of the way: even so in this life, happy is the man who can find and meet with those to beare him company, by whom he may both easily passe through the occurrent dangers that are presented unto him, and also advance forward cheerfully unto vertue. In which regard, our Author *Plutarch* having discoursed as touching the Nature, Education, and Instruction of youth, at also of Vice and Vertue in generals, by good order, and in great reason, sheweth in this Treatise, what sort of people we ought carefully to avoid, and with whom to joine and be acquainted. And as he was a man well experienced and practised in the affaires of this world, he affirmeth and proveth by very sound and firme reasons, That there is nothing whereof we are to be more wary

wary and heedfull than false friendship, which he calleth Flattery. Moreover, this being a matter of so great importances, as every wise man may well thinke and perceive, he dwelleth on this present discourse in length: and for that his purpose is to instruct us in those meanes whereby we may be able to distinguish between a flatterer and a true friend: he sheweth in the first place, That the only principall remedy to stop up the entry against all flatterers, is to know our selves well: for otherwise, we shall have such array and ornaments hanged upon us, that we shall not easily perceive and discern the who we are. And contrariwise hath oftentimes, that we esteeme them to be our perfect friends: so skillfull are they in counterfeiting: and withall, when they find us disposed to entertaine such company, our own indiscretion depriveth us of that true insight and view, which our soule ought to have in discerning a false friend from a true. Being willing therefore to aide and help us in this point, he describeth a crafty and sly flatterer, he discovereth his cunning casts, and depainteth him in his colours, shewing the very drams and lineaments which may direct us to the knowledge of him; to wit, I but he doth conforme and frame himselfe to the humour and nature of those whose company he haunteth: how he is unconstant and mutable, changing and turning into many and sundry fashions, without any right and sincere affection, applying himselfe alittle while to every thing but vertue, willing to be reputed otherwise more lewd and vicious than those whom he flattereth: without regard of doing them good any way, or seeking their profit: he only aimeth at this, to please them and follow their weine in all things by custome and use, bringing him that will give care unto his words to this pass, That he shall thinke vice to be vertue: working covertly and under-hand for to deceive more cleanly, pates, That he shall thinke vice to be vertue: working covertly and under-hand for to deceive more cleanly, transforming vertue into vice, and making it nothing else but a name, so that he may be able to do the more mischief afterwards to another: then he flattereth most when he maketh no semblance or show at all that he misdeed any such thing, and exalteth up to the skye those that be most vicious, and dooill of all others, so they will give him entertainment. Likewise, for that flatterers shew themselves otherwise very forward and bold to speake their minds and to find faults, which is one of the best and surest marks of true friendships, he teacheth consequently of this liberty and freedome of speeche, and how a man may know whether there be any flattery therein or no. He declareth therefore, how flatterers use his frange reprehension in voice and frivolous things, and never in those sins and grosse faults which are indeed blame-worthy: so that this manner of reprehension is a kind of soothing them up, and lulling men asleep in their notorious vices: or else they charge them with faults: cleane contrary. Now after he hath shewed how a man should take heed and beware of them, he discourses of those services which may make flatterers, and wherein the same differ from the offices and duties of friends, and in pursuing and prosecuting this Antithesis, he proveth that a flatterer is prest and ready to do us pleasure in shamefull matters, whereas a friend sheweth his goodwill in those that be honest: also that a flatterer is envious, and so is not a friend. And for that our nature is proud and blind withall, having need of good friends to guide and direct it by the describeth with what manner of eye and care we ought to see and heave those that procure our goods, albeit they may seeme to carry with them a kind of severity. At came while he exhortheth friends to be temper and qualifie their liberty in reprehensions, that all impudency and importunator be far from it. But forasmuch as this is (as it were) the principall thing in amity, he sheweth, That first we must cut away selfe-love in all our reprehensions: and secondly all envious, bitter, and biting speeches: then he adjoyneth moreover in what persons, and upon what occurrences a man ought to reprove and say his mind frankly: and with what dexterity he is to proceed: that is to say, that sometimes, yea, and more often, he ought to reuke his friend apart, or under the person of another: wherein he is to take unto his, That he cleave all vainglory, and season his reprehensions with some praise among, so make them more acceptable and better taken. Consequently, he teacheth us, how we must receive the advertisements, admonitions, and reprehensions of a true friend: and returning to the very point indeed of amity and friendship, he sheweth what meane a man should keep for to avert and turne away the neighbour vice, and to urge our friends forward to their devoir: adding moreover, That all remonstrance and admonition ought to be tempered with mildnesse and lenity: wherein he concludeth this whole Treatise, which I assure you is to be well read and marked in these dates of all persons: but those especially, who are advanced above others in worldly wealth or honourable place.

### How a man may discern a Flatterer from a Friend.

**P**lato writeth (O *Antiochus Philopappus*) that no mendo willingly pardon him, who professeth, That he loveth himselfe best: Howbeit thereby (quoth he) is ingendered in us this inconvenience among many others the greatest: for that by this meane no man can be a just judge of himselfe, but partiall and favourable. The for the lover is ordinarily blinded in the thing that he loveth, unless he have been taught, yea, and accustomed long before to affect and esteeme things honestly above those that be his own property, or inbred and familiar to him. This is it that giveth unto a flatterer that large field under pretence of friendship, where he hath aloft (as it were) commodiously seated, and with the vantage to assaile and endamage us, and that is, Self-love: whereby every man being the first and greatest flatterer of himselfe, he can be very well content to admit a stranger to come neere and flatter him, namely, when he thinketh and is well willing withall to wretchedness with him, and to confirme that good felicitie, conceit, and opinion of his own. For even he, who is justly reproached to be a lover of Flatterers, loveth himselfe notwithstanding exceeding well: and for that good affection that he hath, is both very willing, yea, and fully perfwaded also, that all good things are in himselfe: and the desire whereof is not simply bad, and unlawful: but the perswasion



is it that is dangerous and slippery, having need to be restrained with great heed and carefulness. Now if truth be an heavenly thing, and the very four yeelding all good things (as *Plato* saith) as well to the gods as to men: we ought thus to judge. That a flatterer is an enemy to the gods, and principally to *Apollon*: For opposite he is always and contrary to this precept of his, *Know thyself*: causing a man to be abused and deceived by his own selfe, yea, and to be ignorant of the good and evil things that be in him; in making the good gifts which are in him to be defective and imperfect: but the evil parts incorrigible and such as cannot be reformed. Now if it were so, that flattery (as for the most part of other vices) touched either only, or especially, base, meane, and abject persons, it were perhaps neither so hurtfull, nor so hard to be avoided as it is. But like as wormes breed most of all and soonest in stinme tender, and sweet wood: even so, for the most part the generous and gentle natures, and those minds that are more ingenious, honest, amiable, and mild than others, are readiest to receive and nourish the flatterer that hangeth upon him. Moreover, as *Simonides* was wont to say, that the keeping of an ecurio or stable of horses, followeth not the lampe or oyle cruet, but the rich corne fields: that is, it is not for poore men to entertaine great horses; but those rather who are landed men, and with their revenues able to maintaine them: Even so, we see it ordinary, that flattery keepeth not company nor forth with poore folke or such persons as live obscurely, and are of no ability: but commonly it is the ruine and decay of great houses, and a malady incident to mighty states; which oftentimes undoeth and overthroweth whole Monarchies, Realms, and great Seigniories. In which regard it is no small matter, nor a thing that requirith little or no forecast and providence to seake and consider the nature thereof: left being so active and busy as it is, and ready to meddle in every place (nothing so much) it do no hurt unto friendships, nor bring it into obloquy and discredit. For these flatterers resemble lice for all the world: And why? These vermine we see never haunt those that be dead, but leave and forsake the corps so soon as ever the blood (whereof they were wont to feed) is extinct or deprived of vitall spirit: Semblably, a man shall never see flatterers so much as approach unto such persons as are in decay, whose estate is crackt, and credit waxeth coole: but looke where there is the glory of the world, where there is authority and power, thither they flock, and there they grow: no sooner is there a change of fortune, but they inkeane and flinke away, and are no more seen. But we ought not to attend so long and stay for this trial, being unprofitable, or rather hurtfull, and not without some danger: For it goeth very hard with a man, if at the very instant and not before, even when he hath most need of friendship, to perceive those to be no friends whom he took to be, and namely, when he hath not wish him at hand a good and faithfull friend, to exchange for him that is untrueth, disloyall, and counterfeite. For if a man did well, he should be provided before-hand of an approved and tried friend ere he have need to employ him, as well as of current and lawfull money: and not then to materiall of him and find him faulty when he is in greatest necessity, and standeth in most need: For we ought not to make proofe with our losse, and find him to be false to our cost and detriment: but contrariwise, to be skillful in the meanes of smelling out a flatterer, that we receive no damage by him: For otherwise that might befall us which happeneth unto those who, for to know the force of deadly poysons, take the assay, and taste first themselves thereof: well may they come to the judgement thereof: but this skill is dearly bought when they are fure to die for it. And like as we do not commend such: no more can we praise and approve of those who measure friendship only by honesty and profit: thinking withall, That such as converse and company with them pleasantly are straightwaies to be attained as flatterers, no lesse than if they were taken in the very act of flattery: For surely a friend should not be unpleasant and unallow, without any reasoning (as it were) of delightome qualities: neither is friendship to be accounted venerable in this respect, that it is austere or bitter: but even that very beauty and gravity that it hath is sweet and desirable, and as the Poet saith,

About her always fested be  
Delightome Love and Graces three.

And not he only who is in calamity,

Doth great content and comfort find  
To see the face of trusty friend.

According as *Euripides* saith, but true amity addeth no lesse grace, pleasure, and joy unto those that be in prosperity, than it causeth them of sorrow and griefe who are in adversity. *Evmenus* was wont to say, that of all pleasant fauce, fire was the best and most effectuall: And even so God having mingled friendship with this life of ours hath made all things joyous, sweet, pleasant, and acceptable, where a friend is present and enjoyeth his part. For otherwise a man cannot devise nor expresse, how, and in what sort a flatterer could insinuate himselfe and creep into favour, under the colour of pleasure, if he saw that friendship in the own nature never admitted any thing that was pleasant and delectable. But like as false and counterfeite peeces of gold which will not abide the touch repleint only the lustre and bright glittering of the gold: So a flatterer, resembling the sweet and pleasant behaviour of a friend, sheweth himselfe always joyous merry, and delightome, without crossing at any time. And therefore we ought not presently to suspect all them to be flatterers who are given to praise others: for otherwhiles to commend a man, so it be done in time and place convenient, is a property no lesse befitting a friend than to blame and reprehend: Nay contrariwise, there is nothing so adverse and repugnant to amity and society than selfeblinde, thwarting, complaining, and evermore fault-

fault-finding: whereas, if a man knoweth the good will of his friend to be ever prest and ready to yeeld due praises, and those in full measure to things well done, he will bear more patiently and in better part another time, his free reprehensions and reproof for that which is done amisse: for that he is verily perswaded of him, that as he was willing enough to praise, he was as loth to dispraise, and therefore taketh all in good woorth. A difficult matter then it is, will come one day, to discern a flatterer from a friend, seeing there is no difference between them, either in doing pleasure, or yeelding praise: for otherwise, we see oftentimes, that in many services, countreies and kindredes besides, a flatterer is more ready and forward than a friend. True it is indeed, we must needs say: a right hard matter it is to know the one from the other; especially if we speak of a right flatterer indeed, who is his own crafts-master, and can skill how to handle the matter artificially, and with great cunning and dexterity if (I say) we make no reckoning of them for flatterers, as the common people do, who are these ordinary imbell-faits, and as ready as flies to light in every dith: these parasites (I say) whose tongue (as one said very well) will be walking to foomas men have washed their hands, and be ready to sit down to meat, cogging and soothing up their good matters at every word, who have no honesty at all in them, and whose civillitie, profane, and irreligious impurity, a man shall soon finde with one dith of meat and cup of wine. For surely there was no great need to detect and convince the flattery of *Melambius* the Parasite and Jester of *Alexander Pheroes* the Tyrant, who being asked upon a time how *Alexander* his good Lord and Master was murthered, Mary with a thrust (quoth he) of a sword, which went in at his side, and ranne as far as into my belly: neither of such as a man shall never see to fail, but where there is a good house and plentiful table kept, they will be fure to gather round about it, in such sort as there is no fire nor iron grates, or braile gates, can keep them back, but they will be ready to put their foot under the boord, no nor of those women who in times past were called in *Cyprus*, *Colacides*, i.e. Flatterers; but after they were come to *Syria*, men named them, *Climacides*, as one would say, *Ladderers*, for that they used to lie along, and to make their backs stepping stools or ladders as it were for Queens and Great mens wives to get upon when they would mount unto their coaches. What kinde of flatterer then is it so hard and yet needfull to beware of? Forsooth, even of him who seemeth none such, and professeth nothing lesse than to flatter: whom a man shall never finde about the kitchen where the good meat is dressed, nor take measuring of shadows to know how the dayes goe, and when it is dinner or supper time: ne yet free drunken and lying along the ground untowardly, and full like a beast: But for the most part (sober he is enough: he loveth to be a curious Polypragmon; he will have an oar in every boat, and thinks he is to intermeddle in all matters: he hath a mind to be privy and party in all deep secrets; and in one word he carrieth himselfe like a grave Tragedian, and not as a Comical or Satyrical player; and under that valour and habit he counterfeith a friend. For according to the saying of *Plato*, it is the greatest and most extreme injustice for a man to make semblance of being just when he is not, even to we are to think, that flattery of all others to be most dangerous, which is covert and not open, or professed: which is serious (I say) and not practised by way of jest and sport. And verily such glozing and flattery as this, causeth men oftentimes to mistrust true friendship indeed, and doth derogate much from the credit thereof: for that in many things it jumpeth so even therewith, unless a man take very good heed and look narrowly into it. True it is, that *Gobrias* being runne into a dark and secret room, together with one of the usurping Tyrants of *Persea*, called *Magi*, whom he pursued hard, and at handy gripes (strugling, and grappling, and wrestling close together, cried out unto *Darius* coming into the place with a naked sword, and doubting to thrust at the Usurper, for fear he should runne *Gobrias* thorough also: Thrust hardly and spare not (quoth he) though you dispatch us both at once. But we who in no wise can allow of that common saying, Let a friend perish, so he take an enemy with him: but are desirous to pluck and part a flatterer from a friend, with whom he is coupled and interlaced by means of so many resemblances: we (I say) have great cause to fear and beware, that we do not cast and reject from us the good with the bad: or least in pardoning and accepting that which is agreeable and familiar unto us, we fall upon that which is hurtful and dangerous. For like as amongst wild feedes of another kind, those that being of the same form, fashion, and bigness with the grains of wheat are intermingled therewith, a man shall hardly trie out from the rest, for that they will not passe thorough the holes of sieve, riddle or trey, if they be narrow; and in case they be large and wide, out goeth the good corn together with them: even so it is passing hard to separate flattery from friendship, being so intermeddled therewith in all accidents, motions, affairs, dealings, employment and conversation as it is. For considering that a flatterer seeth well enough, that there is nothing in the world so pleasurable as friendship, nor yeeldeth more contentment unto man than it doth: He windeth himselfe in favour by means of pleasure, and wholly is imploied to procure mirth and delight. Also for that grace and commoditie, doth alwaies accompany amity; in which regard the common Proverbe saith, that a friend is more necessarie than either aire or water. Therefore a flatterer is ready to put himselfe forward, and offereth his service with all double diligence, striving in all occasions and busineses to be ever prompt and officious. And because the principal thing that linketh and bindeth friendship fure at the beginning, is the conformity and likeness of manners, studies, endeavours and inclinations, and in one word, seeing that to be like affected, and to shew pleasure or displeasure in the same things, is the chief matter that knitteth amity and both combineth, and also keepeth men together, by a certain mutual correspondencie in natural affections: the flatterer knowing so much, compoeth his nature (as it were) some uniformed matter ready

ready to receive all sorts of impressions, studying to frame and accommodate himself wholly to all those things that he taketh in hand; yea, and to resemble those persons just by way of imitation, whom he meaneth to set upon and deceive, as being supple, soft, and pliable, to represent them lively in every point, so as a man may say of him after this manner,

*Achilles some think you he is?*

*Nay, even Achilles himself was.*

But the craftiest cast of all other, that he hath, is this, That seeing (as he doth) libertie of speech, (both in truth, and also according to the opinion and speech of the whole world) to be the proper voice of friendship (as a man would say) of some living creature; in such, as where there is not this freedom of speaking frankly, there is no true friendship nor generosity in deed. In this point also, he will not seem to come forth, nor leave it behind for want of imitation; but after the fashion of fine and excellent cooks, who use to serve up tart, bitter and sharpe sauces together with sweet and pleasant meats, for to divert and take away the fatiety and fulnesse which too followeth them. These flatterers also use a certain kind of plain and free speech: howbeit neither sincere and natural is it, nor profitable, but (as we commonly say) from teeth outward, or (as it were) beckning and winking slightly with the eye under the browes, not touching the quick, but tickling aloft onely, to no purpose. Well, in these respects above specified, hardly and with much ado, is a flatterer discovered, and taken in the manner: much like unto those beasts, who by nature have this propertie, To change their colour, and in hue to resemble that bodily matter or place whereon they settle, and which they touch. Seeing then it is so, that he is so apt to deceive folk, and lieth hidden under the likeness of a friend: our part it is, by unfolding the differences that are so hidden, to turn him out of his masking habit, and being depoyled of those colours and habiliments that he borroweth of others, for want of his own (as Plato saith) to lay him naked and open to the eye: let us therefore enter into this discourse, and fetch it from the very first beginning.

We have already said, that the original of friendship among men (for the most part) is our consociation of nature and inclination, embracing the same customs and manners, loving the same exercises, affecting the same studies, and delighting in the same actions and employments: concerning which, these verses well and fitly runne:

*Old folks love best with aged folks to talk,*

*And with their feeser young children to disport:*

*Women once met, do let their tongues to talk;*

*With sick likewile sick persons best do sort:*

*The wretched man his miseries best lament*

*With those, whose fates like fortunes do torment.*

The flatterer then, being well aware that it is a thing naturally inbred in us, to delight in those that are like our selves, to converse with them, and to use and love them above all others, endeavoureth first and foremost to draw and to approach, yea, and to lodge near unto him whom he meaneth to enslave and compass, even as if he went about in some great pasture to make toward one beast, whom he purposeth to tame and bring to hand, by little and little joyning close unto him, as it were, to be incorporated in the same studies and exercises, in the same affections, employments and course of life: and this he doth so long, until the party whom he layeth for, have given him some advantage to take holde by, as suffering himself gently to be touched, clawed, handled and stroked, during which time, he letteth slip no opportunity to blame those persons, to reprove those things, and courses of life, which he perceiveth the other to hate: contrariwise, to praise and approve all that which he knoweth him to take delight in: and this he doeth not after an ordinary manner and in a mean, but excessively and beyond all measure, with a kinde of admiration and wonder: confirming this love and hatred of his, to a thing, not as if he had received the impressions from some sudden passion, but upon a staied and settled judgement. Which being so: how, and by what different marks shall he be known and convinced, that he is not the like or the same indeed, but only a counterfeite of the like and of the same? First, a man must consider well, whether there be an uniform equalitie in all his intentions and actions or no? whether he continue and persist still taking pleasure in the same things, and praising the same at all times: whether he compose and direct his life according to one and the same mold and patern? like as it becometh a man who is an ingenious lover of that friendship and conversation which is ever after one manner, and alwayes like it self: for such a one indeed is a true friend. But a flatterer contrariwise is one who hath not one permanent feat in his manners and behaviour, nor hath made choice of any life for his own content, but onely to please another, as framing and applying his actions wholly to the humor of another, is never simple, uniform, nor like himself, but variable and changing alwayes from one form to another, much like as water which is poured out of one vessel into another, even as it runneth forth, taketh the form and fashion of that vessel which receiveth it. And herein he is clean contrary to the ape: for the ape as it should seem, thinking to counterfeite a man, by turning, hopping and dancing as he doth, is quickly caught: but the flatterer, whiles he doth imitate and counterfeite others, doth entice and draw them, as it were, with a pipe or call into his net, and so beguileth them. And this he doeth not alwayes after one manner: for with one he danceth and singeth; with another he will seem to wrestle, or otherwife to exercise the bodie in feats of activity: like chance to meet with a man that loveth to hunt, and to keep hounds, him he will follow hard

hard at heels, letting out a throat as loud in a manner as Hippolitus in the Tragedie Phœdra, crying,

*So ho, this is my joy and onely good,*

*With crye to live, with roting horn to winde,*

*By leave of gods: to bring into the wood*

*My bound, to rouse and chase the dapple Hinde.*

And yet hath he nothing to do at all with the wild beasts of the forest, but it is the hunter himself whom he laeth for to take within his net and coil. And, say that he light upon a young man that is a Student and given to learning, then you shall see him also as deep poring upon his book, and alwayes in his Studie: you shall have him let his beard grow down to his foot like a grave Philosopher: who but he then, in his fide three-bare Students cloak, after the Greek fashion, as if he had no care of himself, nor joy of any things in the world: not a word then in mouth, but of the Numbers, Orthangles and Triangles of Plato. If peradventure there fall into his hands an idle do-nothing, who is rich withal, and a good fellow, one that loveth to eat and drink and make good cheer,

*That wily Fox Ulysses! ho*

*His ragged garments will off do.*

off goes then his bare and overworn studying gown, his beard he caueth to be cut and shorn as neer as a new mowne field in harvest, when all the corn is gone: no talk then but of flagons, bottles, pots, and cooling pans to keep the wine cold: nothing now but merry conceits to move laughter in every walking place and gallerie of pleasure: Now he letteth his frumpes and scoffes against Schollers and such as study Philosophie. Thus by report it fell out upon a time at Syracuse: For when Plato there arrived, and Demys (as on a sodain was let upon a furious fit of love to Philosophie, his palace and whole court was full of dust and sand, by reason of the great recourte thither of Students in Geometrie, who did nothing but draw figures therein. But no sooner had Plato incurred his displeasure and was out of favor so sooner had Demys the tyrant bidden Philosophie farewell, and given himself again to belly-cheer, to wine, vanities, wantonnesse, and all loosenie of life: but all at once, it seemed the whole court was transformed likewise, (as it were by the force and enchantment of Cyrces) into hatred and detestation of good letters: so as they forgat all goodnesse, and betook themselves to folly and sottishnesse. To this purpose it was not amisse for to alledge as testimonies, the fashions and acts of some notorious flatterers, such I mean as have governed Common-wealths, and affected popularitie. Among whom the greatest of all other was Alcibiades, who all the while he was at Athens used to scoffe, and had a good grace in merry conceits and pleasant jests: he kept great horses, and lived in jollitie, mock gallantly, with the love and favor of all men: when he so journeyed in Sparta, he went alwayes shaven to the bare skin, in an overworn cloke, or else the same very coure, and never washed his body but in cold water. Afterwards being in Thrace, he became a Souldier, and would carouse and drink lustily with the best. He came no sooner to Tisaphernes in Asia, but he gave himself to voluptuousnesse and pleasure, to riot, wantonnesse, and superfluous delights: Thus throughout the whole course of his life, he wan the love all men, by framing himself to their humors and fashions wheresoever he came. Such were not Epaminondas and Agesilaus: For albeit they converted with many fouts of people, travailed divers cities, and saw sundry fashions and manners of strange nations: yet they never changed their behavior, they were the same men still, retaining evermore a decent poise which became them, in their apparel, speech, diet, and their whole carriage and demeanour. Plato likewise was no changing, but the same man at Syracuse, that he was in the Academie or Collegiate Athens: and look what his carriage was before Dion, the same it was and no other in Demys his court.

But that man may very easily finde out the variable changes of a flatterer, as of the fish called the Pourtelle, who will but strain a little and take the pains to play the dissembler himself, making new as if he likewise were transformed into divers and sundry fashions, namely in milking the course of his former life, and sodainly seeming to embrace those things which he rejected before, whether it be in diet, action or speech: For then he shall soon see the flatterer also to be inconsistent, and not a man of himself, taking love or hatred to this or that, joying or grieving at a thing, upon any affection of his own that leadeth him thereto, for that he receiveth alwayes as a mirror, the images of the passions, motions and lives of other men. If you chance to blame one of your friends before him, what will he say by and by? Ah well, You have found him out. I see now at last thought I were long first with I liked him not, a great while ago: Contrariwise, if your mind alter, so that you happen to fall a praising of him, &c. Very well done will he say, and binde it with an oath: I saw you thank for that: I am very glad for the mans sake, and I believe no lesse of him. Do you break with him about the alteration of your life, and bear him in hand that you mean to take another course, for example, to give over State affaires, to betake your self to a more private and quiet life, &c. Yea, marie (quoth he) and then you do well, it is more than high time so to do: for long since we should have been disburdened of these troubles so full of envie and peril. Make him believe on each you will change your copie, and that you are about to shake off this idle life, and to betake your self unto the Common-wealth, both to rule and also to speak in publicke place: you shall have him to sooth you: up, and second your song, with these and such like responses: A brave mind (believe me) and becoming a man of your worth and good parts: For to say a truth, this idle and private life, though it be



pleasant, and have ease enough, yet it is but base, abject, and dishonourable: when you finde him there once, muffle his noise immediately with this poise,

*Good for me thinks you soon do turn your stile,  
You seem much changed from him you were ere while.*

I have no need of such a friend, that will alter as I do, and follow me every way (for my shadow can do that much better) I had rather have one that with me will follow the truth, and judge according to it and not otherwise. *Avenit* therefore, I will have nought to do with thee, Thus you see one way to discover a flatterer.

A second difference we ought to observe in his imitations and resemblances, for a true friend doth not imitate all that he seeth him whom he loveth to do; neither is he forward in praising every thing, but that only which is best: For according to *Sophocles*,

*In love he would his fellow be,  
But not in hate and enmity.*

And verily one friend is ready and willing to assist another in well doing and in honest life, and never will yield to companionship in lewdness, or help him to commit any wicked and heinous fact; unless peradventure through the ordinary conversation, and continual acquaintance together, he be tainted with infection of some ill quality and vicious condition, even against his will and ere he be well aware much like as they who by contagion catch rheumaticke and bleered eyes; or as the familiar friends and Schollers (by report) of *Plato* did imitate him in stooping forward: and those of *Aristotle* in his stammering and maffling speech; and the Courtiers of *Alexander the Great*, in bending of his neck, and rough voice when he spake. For even so, some there be who receive impression of their manners and conditions at unawares and against their wills. But contrariwise, it fareth with a flatterer even as with the *Chameleon*: For as he can take upon him any colour he have only white; semblably, a flatterer cannot possibly frame himself to any thing that good is and of importance: but there is no naughtiness and badness in the world which he will not quickly imitate. And well I may compare such fellows to ill painters, who when through insufficiency in their art they are not able to draw to the life, the beauty and favour of a good face, will be sure yet to expresse the rivels, warts, moles, freckles, scars, and such like deformities. For even so a flatterer can imitate every passing well. Incontinencie, foolish superstition, haughtines and choler, bitterness towards household servants, distrust and diffidence in friends and kinsfolke, yea, and treachery against them: for that by nature he is always inclined to the worse; and besides, so far he would be thought from blaming vice, that he undertaketh to imitate the same. For those that seek for amendment of life and reformation of manners are ever suspected: such (I say) as shew themselves disaffected and offended at the faults and misdemeanors of their friends. And this was it that made *Dion* odious to *Demys* the Tyrant, *Santius* to *Philip*, and *Cleomenes* to *Ptolomaeus*, and in the end was their ruine and overthrow. The flatterer who desireth to be both pleasant and faithful at once, or at leastwise so to be reputed, for excessive love and friendship that he pretendeth, will not seem to be offended with his friend for any lewd parts, but in all things would be thought to carry the same affection, and to be in manner of the same nature and incorporate into him: whereupon it cometh to passe also, that even in casual things and the occurrences of this life, which happen without our will and counsel, he will needs have a part: there is no remedie. Thus if he be disposed to flatter sick persons, he will make as though he were sick also of the same disease for company; and if he have to do with such as be dim-sighted or hard of hearing, he will be thought neither to see nor hear well for fellowship. Thus the flatterers about *Demys* the Tyrant, when he had an impediment in his eyes that he could not see clearly, imagined that themselves likewise were halblind, and to make it good, hit one upon another at the board, and overthrow the dishes upon the Table as they ate at supper. Others there be that proceed farther than so, and because they would appear more touched with a fellow-feeling of affections, will enter as far as to the very inward secrets that are not to be revealed. For if they can perceive that they whom they do flatter, be not fortunate in their marriages; or that they are growne into distrust, jealousy, and sinister opinion, either of their own children, or their near kinsfolke and familiars: they spare not themselves but begin to complain, and that with grief of heart and sorrow of their own wives and children, of their kindred and friends, laying abroad and revealed, minons marcers, which were better (wis) to be concealed and smothered, than uttered and revealed. And this resemblance and kinneship that they take upon themselves, causeth them to seem more affectionate and fuller of compassion. The other then, thus flattered, thinking that by this means they have received from them a sufficient pawn and assurance of their fidelity, stick not to let from their mouth some matter of scurrile also: and when they have once committed it unto them, then they are ever after bound to use them, yea, and be afraid to mistrust them in any thing. I myself know one who seemed to put away his own wedded wife, because his friend whom he flattered had divorced his before: and when he had so done, was known to go secretly unto her, and messengers there were who passed to and fro between them under hand: which the divorced wife of the other perceived and found out well enough. Certes little knew he what a flatterer was, and he had no experience of him who thought these Iambick verses to expresse the Sea-crab better than him,

*A beast whose body and belly are meet,  
The eye doth serve each way to see:*

With

*With teeth it creeps, they stand for feet,  
A readnow what creature this may be?*

For this is the very portraiture and image of a parasite, who keeps about the frying-pan (as *Eupolis* saith) of his good friends, and waiteth where the cloth is laid. But as touching these things, let us refer them to their proper places for to be discoursed more at large. Howbeit, for the present let us not leave behinde us one notable devile and cunning cast, that a flatterer hath in his imitations: to wit, that if he do counterfeit some good quality that is in him whom he doth flatter, yet he giveth him always the upper hand: For among those that be true friends, there is no emulation at all, no jealousy or envy between one and another: but whether they be equal in well doing or come behinde, they take all in good part and never grieve at the matter. But the flatterer bearing well in minde that he in every place, is to play the second part, yeeldeth always in his imitation the equality from himself, and doth affect to counterfeit another so, as he will be the inferior, giving the superiority unto the other in all things but those which are naught, for therein he challengeth to himself the victory over his friend. If he be somewhat male-content and hard to be pleased, then will the flatterer profess himself to be stark melancholike: if his friend be somewhat too religious or superstitious, then will he make semblance as though he were rapt and transported altogether with the fear of the gods: If the other be amorous, he will be in love; furious: when the other saith I laughed a good while; but I (will he say againe) I lugged until I was well near dead. But in good things it is clean contrarie: for when he speaketh of good footmanship he will say, I runne swiftly indeed; but you fly away. Again, I fit a horse and ride reasonable well; but what is that to this Hippo-Centaur here for good horsemanship? Alas, I have a prettie gift in Poetrie (I must needs say) and am not the worst verifiers in the worlds but

*To thunder verses I have no skill,  
To Jupiter there leaveth that I will.*

in these and such like speeches two things at once he doth: for first he seemeth to approve the enterprise of the other as singular good, because he doth imitate him; and secondly, he sheweth that his sufficiency therein is incomparable and not to be matched, in that he confesseth himself to come short of him. And thus much of the different marks between a flatterer and a friend as touching their resemblances.

Now, forasmuch as there is a communie of delectation and pleasure in them both (as I have said before) for that an honest man taketh no lesse joy and comfort in his friends, than a lewd person in flatterers; let us consider likewise the distinction between them in this behalf. The only way to distinguish them stander in this point, is the marke, the diffirent and end of the delectation both in the one and the other: which a man may see more clearly by this example: There is a sweet ointment an odoriferous smell; so is there also in an Antidote or medicine; but herein lieth the difference, for that in the ointment above said, there is a reference to pleasure only, and to nothing else; but in the Antidote, beside the delectation that the odor yeeldeth, there is a respect also of some medicinable vertue, namely either to purge and cleanse the bodie, or to heat and chafe it, or else to incarnate and make new flesh to come. Again, Painters do grinde and mix fresh colours and lively tinctures; so the Apothecary hath drugs and medicines of a beautiful and pleasant colour to the eye, that it would do a man good to look upon them. But wherein is the difference? Is there any man so grosse that conceiveth not readily, that the odds lieth in the use or end, for which both the one and the other be ordained? Semblably the mutual offices and kindneses that passe from friend to friend, beside the honesty and profit that they have, bring with them also that which is pleasing and delectable, as if some dainty and lively flowers grew thereupon: For sometime friends use plaies and pastimes one with another: they invite one another, they eat and drink together: yea, and otherwhiles (believe me) you shall have them make themselves merry and laugh heartily, jesting, gauding, and disposing one with another: all which serve as pleasant sauces to season their other serious and honest affaires of great weight and consequence. And to this purpose serve well these verses:

*With pleasant discourses from one to another  
They made themselves merry, being met together.*

*Alas,  
And nothing else disjoined our amity,  
Nor parted our pleasures and mutual jollity.*

But the whole work of a flatterer, and the only marke that he shooteth at, is alwayes to devise, prepare and contrive, as it were, some play or sport, some action and speech, with pleasure and to do pleasure. And to knit up all briefly in one word, he is of opinion that he ought to do all for to be pleasant: whereas the true friend doing alwayes that which his duty requirith, many times pleaseth, and as often again he is displeased: not that his intention is to displease at any time; howbeit if the fee it expedient and better for to do, he will not stick to be a little harsh and unpleasant. For like as a Physician when need requirith, putteth in some Saffron or Spiknard into his medicine; yea and otherwhile permitte his patient a delicate bath, or liberal and dainty diet to his full contentment: but sometimes for it again, leaving out all sweet odors, casteth in *Calostemum*.

*Or Polium which strong sent doth field,  
And strikes most of all herbs in field,*

or else he bruiseeth and stampeth some Ellebore, and forceth his patient to drink of that potion: not

G 2

pro

proposing either in the former medicine pleasure, nor in the latter displeasure for the end: but both by the one and the other, training the sick person under his hand to one and the same effect of his cure to wit, his good and the health of his body: even so it is with a true friend: one while with praises and gracious words he extollet and cheereth up his friend, inciting him thereby alwaies to that which is good and honest, as hein *Homer*,

*Deer heart Sir Teucer worthy sonne  
of Telamon that Knight,  
Come Prince and flow of valiant knights,  
Shoot thou your arrows light.  
And another,  
How can I ever put out of minde  
Heavenly Ulysses a Prince so kinde?*

Contrariwise, another while where there is need of Chastisement and correction, he will not spare but the sharp and biting words: yea, and that free speech which carrieth with it an affection careful to do good, and such as indeed becometh a tutor and governour, much alter this manner:

*What Mendamus! how ever thou  
from Jupiter you descend:  
You play the fool, for folly such  
I cannot you commend.*

It falleth out so likewise, that sometime the addeed deeds to words. And thus *Mendamus* shut the door against the son of *Asclepiades* his friend, and would not deigne once to salute him, because he was a riotous youth, and lived dissolutely and out of all order by which means he was reclaimed from a loose life, and became an honest man. *Arceflans* in like manner excluded *Battus* out of his school and would not suffer him to enter, because in a Comedie that he composed, he had made one verse against *Cleantes*; but afterwards *Battus* repenting of that he had done, and making satisfaction unto *Cleantes*, was pardoned and received again into his favor. For a man may offend his friend with intention to do him good; but he must not proceed so farre in displeasing him, that thereby he break or undo the knot of friendship: he ought (I say) to use a sharp rebuke, as a Physician doth some bitter or tart medicine to save or preserve the life of his patient. And a good friend is to play the part of musician, who to bring his instrument into tune, and so to keep it, letteth up these strings and letteth down those: and so ought a friend to exchange profit with pleasure, and use one with another, as occasion serveth, observing till this rule, oftentimes to be pleasing unto his friend, but alwaies profitable: whereas the flatterer being used evermore to sing one note, and to play upon the same string, that is to say, To please and in all his words and deeds, to aime at nothing else but the contentment of him whom he flattereth, cannot skill either in act to resist, or in speech to reprove and offend him; but goeth on still in following his humor, according alwaies with him in one tune, and keeping the same note juft with him.

Now, as *Xenophon* writeth of King *Agellus*, that he was well apaid to be commended of them who he knew also would blame him, if there were cause; so we are to think well of friendship when it is pleasant, delightfome and cheerful, if otherwhiles also it can displease and crosse again; but to have in suspicion the conversation and acquaintance of such, as never do or say anything but that which is pleasing, continually keeping one course without change, never rubbing where the gall is, nor touching the sore, without reproof and contradiction. We ought (I say) to have ready alwaies in remembrance the saying of an ancient Laconian, who hearing king *Charilus* so highly praised and extolled; And how possibly (quoth he) can he be good, who is never sharp or severe unto the wicked? The gad-flie (as they say) which lieth to plague bulles and oxen, setteth about their eares, and doth the tickle deal by dogges: after the same manner, flatterers take hold of ambitious mens eares, and possesse them with praises; and being once set fast there, hardly are they to be removed and chased away. And heremost needfull is, that our judgement be watchful and observant, and do discern whether these praises be attributed to the thing or the person: we shall perceive that the thing itself is praised; if they commend men rather abent than in place: also if they desire and affect that themselves, which they do like and approve in others: again, if they praise not us alone, but all others, for the semblable qualities likewise, if they neither say nor do one thing now, and another time the contrary. But the principal thing of all other, is this, If we our selves know in our own secret confidence, that we neither repent nor be ashamed of that, for which they so commend us: we yet wish in our hearts, that we had said or done the contrary: for the inward judgement of our mind and soul bearing witness against such praises, and not admitting thereof, is void of affections and passions, whereby it neither can be touched nor corrupted and surprised by a flatterer. Howbeit, I know not how it cometh about, that the most part of men cannot abide nor receive the consolations which be ministred unto them in their adversities, but rather take delight and comfort in those that weep, lament and mourn with them; and yet the fainemen having offended or being delinquent in any dutie, if one come and find fault or touch them to the quick therefore, do strike and imprint into their hearts remorse and repentance, they take him for no better than an accuser and an enemy: contrariwise, let one highly commend and magnifie that which they have done, him they salute and embrace, him they account their well-willer and friend indeed. Now, whosoever they be that are ready to praise and extol with applause and clapping of hands

hands, that which one hath done or said, were it in earnest or in gamesuch (I say) are dangerous and hurtful for the present only, and in those things which are next hand: but those, who with their praises pierce as farre as to the manners within, and with their flatteries proceed to corrupt their inward natures and dispositions, I can liken unto those slaves or household servants, who rob their masters, nor only of that corn which is in the heap and liech in the garners, but also of the very feed: for the inclination and towardness of a man, are the feed that bring forth all his actions, and the habitude of conditions and manners, are the very fourne and head from whom runneth the course of our whole life, which they pervert in giving to vices the names of virtues. *Theocides* in his Story writeth: That during civil editions and warres, men transferred the accustomed significations of words unto other things, for to justify their deeds: for desperate rafines without all reason, was required valour, and called Love-friend: provident delay and temporizing, was taken for decent cowardie: Modestie and temperance, was thought to be a cloke of effeminate unmanliness: a prudent and wary circumspection in all things, was held for a general sloth and idleness. According to which precedent, we are to consider and observe in flatterers, how they term prodigality by the name of liberality: cowardie is nothing with them but heedful warinesse: brainficknesse they entitle promptitude, quicknesse, and celeritie: bale and mechanicall wardie, they account temperate frugality. Is there one full of love and given to be amorous? him they call good fellow, a boon-companion, a man of a kinde and good nature. See they one hasty, wrathful, and proud withall? him they will have to be hardy, valiant and magnanimous: contrariwise, one of a base minde and abject spirit, they will grace with the attribute of fellow-like, and full of humanity. Much like to that which *Plato* hath written in one place: That the amorous lover is a flatterer of the whom he loveth. For if they be flat nosed like a shooping horn, such they call lovely and gracious: he they hawk-nosed like a griffin, Oh, that is a kingly sight say they: those that be black of colour, are manly: white of complexion, be Gods children. And as for the term *Melichrius*, that is Hony-coloured, it is alwaies (verily) a flattering word, devised by a Lover, to mitigate and diminish the odiousnesse of a pale hue, which he seemeth by that sweet name, not to mislike, but to take in the best part. And verily if he that is foul and ill-favoured, be born in hand that he is fair and beautiful, or one of small and low stature made believe that he is goodly and tall: he neither continueth long in this his error, neither is the damage that he sustaineth thereby grievous and great, nor unrevocable: but the praises which induce and inure a man to believe, That vice is vertue, in so much that he is nothing at all discontented in his sin and grieved therefore, but rather taketh pleasure therein: those also which take away from us all shame and abashment to commit faults; such were they that brought the Sicilians to ruine, and gave them occasion to beautifie or colour the tyranny and cruelty of *Dionys* and *Phalaris*, with the goodly names of Justice and Hatred of wickednesse: These were the overthry of *Ergys*, in cloaking the effeminate wantonnesse, the furious superstition, the yelling noises after a fanatical manner of King *Pholomachus*, together with the marks that he carried of Lillies and Tabours in his bodie, with the glorious names of Devotion, Religion, and the service of the gods. And this was it that at the same time went very neer, and had like to have corrupted and spoiled for ever the manners and fashions of the Romanes, which before were so highly reputed, to wit, naming the riotousness of *Antoine*, his loosenesse, his superfluous delights, his lumptuous shewes and publike feasts, with the profusion and wasting of so much money, by smooth and gentle termes of courtesies, and merriments full of humanity, by which disguisements and pretexts, his fault was mollified or diminished in abusing so excessively the grandeur of his puissance and fortune. And what was it else that made *Pholomachus* to put on the maile or muske (as it were) of a piper, and to hang about him pipes and flutes? What was it that caused *Nero* to mount up the Stage to act Tragedies, with a vizour over his face, and buskins on his legs? was it not the praise of such flatterers as these? And are not most of our kings being when they ing small and fine after a puling manner, saluted *Apollus* for their musick: and if they drink until they be drunk, honoured with the name of *Bacchus* the god of wine: and when they seem a little to wrefle or trie some feats of activity, stiled by and by with the glorious addition of *Hercules*, brought (think you) to exceeding dishonour and shame by this grosse flattery, taking such pleasures as they do in these gallant fumes, And therefore we had most need to beware of a flatterer in the praises which he giveth, which himself is not ignorant of but being careful and very subtil in avoiding all suspicion, if haply he meet with one of these fustfools, and delicate minions, well set out in gay apparel: or some rustical thick-skinn, carrying on his back a good leather pilchore (as they say) one that feedeth grossly: such he will not spare but abuse with broad flattery, and make common laughing stocks of them: Like as *Struthias*, making a very ass of *Bias*, and riding him up and down, yea, and insulting upon him for his foolishnesse with praises that he would seem to hang upon him: Thou hast (quoth he) drunk more than king *Alexander* the Great, and with that turning to *Cyprius* laughed as hard as ever he could till he was ready to sink again. But if a flatterer chance to deal with them that be more civil and elegant and do perceive that they have a special eye unto him in this point, namely, that they stand well upon their guard in this place, for fear lest they be surprised by him: then he goes not to work directly in praising of them, but he keepeth aloof, he fetcheth about many compasses a great way off at first, afterwards by little and little he winneth some ground and approacheth neerer and neerer, making no noise until he can touch and handle them. much after the manner of those that come about wild beasts affaying how to bring them to hand and make them tame and gentle. For one while he will report to such a one

the praises that some other give out of him; imitating herein the Rhetoricians, who many times in their orations speak in the third person, and after this manner he will begin: I was not long since (quoth he) in the market place, where I had some talk with certain strangers, and other ancient personages of good worth, whom I was glad at the heart to hear, how they recounted all the good in the world of you, and spake wonderfully in your commendation. Otherwhiles he will devile and fetch out of his own fingers ends some light imputations against him, yet all forged and false, agreeable to his person and condition, making semblance as if he had heard others what they said of him, and very cunningly will he clothe with him, and bear him in hand that he is come in all haste to know of him, whether ever he said or did so as was reported of him: And if the other do deny it, (as it is no other like but he will) thereupon he takes occasion to enter into the praise and commendation of the man in this wise: I marvel truly how that you should abuse and speak ill of any of your familiars, and friends, who were never wont to much as mislike or say otherwise than well of your very enemies; or how it possibly could be, that you should be ready to gape after other men's goods, who use to be so liberal and bountiful of your own. Other flatterers there be who like as Painters to set up their colours and to give them more beautiful light and lustre unto them, lay near unto them others that be more dark and shadowie: they inflaming, reproving, reproaching, traducing and deriding the contrarie virtues to those vices which are in them whom they mean to flatter, covertly and underhand do praise and approve those faults and imperfections that they have, and so in praising & allowing, do feed and cherish the same: As for example, if they be among prodigal ding-thrills and wasters, riotous persons, covetous misers, malicious wretches, and such as have raked and scraped goods together by hook and crook, and by all indirect means, they care not how: before them they will speak bawlely of Temperance and Abstinence, calling it rusticity: and as for those that live jutely and with a good conscience, contenting themselves with their estate, and therein reposing suffiance, those they will nickname, as heartlesse and base minded folk, altogether insufficient to do or dare any thing. If it fall out, that they converse and be in company with such as be idle larks, and love to sit still at home and do nothing, forbearing to meddle with ordinary affairs abroad in the world: they will not bask to finde fault with policy & civil government, calling the managing of State matters and common weal, a thanklesse intermeddling in other mens affairs, with much travail and no profit. And as for the minde and desire to be a magistrate and to sit in place of authority, they will not let to say it is vain glory and ambition, altogether fruitlesse. For to flatter and claw an Oratour, they will reprove in his presence a Philosopher. Among light hussives that be wantonly given, they win the prize, and are very well accepted, if they call honest matrons and chaste dames (who content themselves with their own husbands, and cheme love alone) rude and rusticall women, untaught, ill-bred, unlovely and have no grace with them. But herein is the very height of wickednesse, that these flatterers for advantage will not spare their own selves: For like as wretches debate their own bodies, and stoop down low otherwhiles, for to overthrow their fellows that wrestle with them, and to lay them along on the ground: so in blaming and finding many faults with themselves, they winde in, and creep closely to the praise and admiration of others: I am (quoth one of them) a very coward, and no better then a very slave at sea: I can away with no labour and travel in the world: I am all in a heat of choler, and raging mad, if I hear that one hath given me any bad termes; many as for this man (meaning him whom he flattereth) he catcheth doubts at no peril and danger, all is one with him, sea or land, he can endure all hardships, and he counteth nothing painful, no hurt there is in him, a singular man he is, and hath not his fellow, he is angry at nothing, he beareth all with patience. But say he meet with one at adventure, which standeth upon his own bottom, and hath some great opinion of his own sufficiency for wit and understanding, who hath a desire to be authere, and not to depend upon the conceits of others, but retheth in his own judgement; and upon a certain uprightnesse in himself, elsomones hath these verses in his mouth:

*Sir Diomedes, do not me praise  
So much to me as I deserve,  
Nor out of measure me dispraise,  
I love not such excesses.*

This flatterer then, who is his own crafts-master and hath thoroughly learned his trade, goeth not the old way to work in setting upon him, but he hath another engine and device in flattery to assail such a grim fir withal. He will make an errand to him for counsel in his own affairs, as being the man whom he esteemeth to have more wit and wisdom then himself. There be divers others (quoth he) with whom I have better acquaintance and familiarity than with your self: Howbeit, sir, I am forced of necessity to make bold and to importune you a little: For whether else should we ingram men repair, that have need of advice? and to whom are we to have recourse in matters of trust and secrecie. And then after he had heard once what he will say, and it makes no matter what it be: he will take his leave, saying, that he hath received no counsel from a man, but an oracle from some god. Now before he departeth, if haply he perceive that he taketh upon him good skill and insight in literature, he will present unto him some compositions of his own penning, praying him withal to peruse them, yea and correct the same. *Mithridates* the King affected and loved the art of Physick very well: by reason whereof some of his familiar friends asked him, came and offered themselves to be cut and cauterized by him: which was a meer flattery indeed

and

and not in word. For it seemed that they gave great testimony of his skill, in that they put their lives into his hands.

*Of subtil spirits, whom you may see,  
That many formes and shapes they be.*

But this kind of disguised praises, requiring greater and more wary circumspection to be taken heed of, if man would detect and convince, he ought of purpose when he is tempted and assailed with such flattery, to obtrude and propound unto the flatterer absurd counsell, if he seeme to demand and aske it: advertisements also, and precepts of the same kind, yea, and corrections without all sense and to no purpose, when he shall offer his labours to be read and perused: In doing, if he perceive the party suspected to be a flatterer, doth not gain say nor contradict any thing, but alloweth all said, and receiveth the same; yea, and more than that, when he shall to every point cry out and say, Oh well and sufficiently: O excellent wit: be sure, then he is caught in a trap: then, I say, it will be found plainly according to the common by-word,

*That when he did a watch-word crave,  
Some other thing he sought to have:  
Or as we say (in Proverbs old)*

*Draffe was his errand, but drinke he would.*

That is to say, he waited for some occasion and opportunity, by praising to puffe him up with vanity and overweening of himselfe. Moreover, like as some have defined painting to be a mute Poetic; even so praising is a kind of silent and secret flattery. Hunters (we see) then soonest deceive the poore beasts, when they seeme to do nothing lesse than to hunt, making semblance as though they either travelled like way-faring men, or tended their flocks, or else tilled the ground: Semblably flatterers touch those whom they flatter neerest, and enter to the very quick by praising, when they make no shew thereof, but seeme to do nothing lesse than praise. For he that give the chaire and lead to another coming in place, or as he is making an oration either in publick place before the people, or in Councell house to the Senate, breaketh off his own speech, and yeeldeth unto him his room, giving him leave to speake or to opine, and remaineth silent himselfe: by this his silence sheweth, that he doth repute the other a better man, and of more sufficiency for wisdom and knowledge than himselfe, much more than if he should pronounce and ring it out aloud to the whole audience. And hereupon it is that this sort of people who make profession of flattery, take up ordinarily the first and highest seats, as well at sermons and publick orations, whether men flock to heare, as at the Theaters and shew places, not that they thinke themselves worthy of shew places, but because they may rise and make room for better and richer persons as they come, and thereby flatter their kindly. This we see also, that in solemne assemblies, and great meetings, or auditories, they are by their good wilshes first that put themselves forth, and make offer to begin speech; but it is for nothing else, but that afterward they would seem to quit the place and give assent to their betters, some retracting their own opinions, when they heare a mighty man, a rich or noble personage in wary, that we may evict them of this, That all this courting, this giving place, this yielding of the victory and reverence made unto others, is not for any more sufficiency that they acknowledge in them, for their knowledge, experience, and vertues: ne yet for their worthinesse in regard of elder age, but only for their wealth, riches, credit, and reputation in the world. \* *Megabyses*, a great Lord belonging to the Kings court of *Perfia*, came upon a time to visit *Apelles* the painter: and sitting by him in his shop to see him worke, began of his own accord to discourse I wot not what, of lines, shadows, and other matters belonging to his art: *Apelles* hearing him, could not hold but said unto him: See you not fir these little prentie boys here that grind Oker and other colours? So long as you fat fill, and laid never a word, they advised you well, and their eye was never off, wondering to see your rich purple robes your chaines and jewels of gold, no sooner began you to speake, but they fell to teighping, and now they laugh you to scorn, talking thus as you do of those things which you never learned. And *Solon* being demanded once by *Craesus* King of *Lydia*, what men he had seen whom he reputed most happy in this world? named unto him one *Tellus*, none of the great men of *Athenis*, but a good plaine and meane Citizen, *Cleobis* and *Biron*: and these he said were of all others most fortunate. But these flatterers will affirme that Kings and Princes, rich men and rulers are not only blessed, happy, and fortunate: but also excell all others in wisdom, knowledge and vertue. There is not one of them that can endure so much as to heare the Stoicks, who hold, that the sage and wise man (such a one as they depaite unto us) ought all at once to be called rich, fair, noble, yea and a King: whereas our flatterers will have the rich men only, whom they are disposed to flatter to be an Oratour and a Poet; yea, and if he will himselfe, a painter, a good piper, passing light of foot and strong of limmes; in sum, such as who ever wrestleth with him, shall be sure to take the foil and lye along; and whomsoever he runneth with in the race, he shall come behind him a fair deal, but how? Surely even as *Crispin* the Himerzan lagged for the nonce behind King *Alexander* the Great, when he ran with him for the best game: for which the King was highly displeased and wroth at him, when he once perceived it. *Carnedades* was wont to say, that the sons of Kings and great rich men, learned to do nothing well and right, but only to sit and ride an horse. For that their matters are wont to flatter and praise them in all their schooles wher they be taught: for if they be at the exercise of wrestling, you shall have him that wrestleth with them,

\* Plinius saith  
that this  
of *C. Alexander*,  
and not  
of *Megaby-*  
tes.

of

of purpose to take a fall and lie under them: Mary, the horie not knowing nor having therofon to discern a private mans son from a prince: nor whether he be poore or rich thanks upon his back, will be sure to call him over his head and lay him along, whoeoever he be, that cannot skill how to hold and rule him. *Bion* therefore was but a very lobb and foole in saying thus: If I wilt that with praising a peece of ground I could make it good, rich, and fertile, it should want for no praises: and rather would I commend it than toyle and moile in digging, tilling, and doing worke about it. And yet I will not say, that a man is too blame and doth amisse in praising: if so be, that those who are praised be the better and more fruitful in all good things for it. Howbeit to come againe into the ground before said: a field being praised never lo much is not the worse nor less fertile: therefore: but I assure you they that commend folke falsely, and beyond their desert and due, puffe them full of wind and vanity, and worke their overthrow in the end. But now having discouraged sufficiently upon this article and point of praises, let us proceed forward to treat of frankeless and liberty of speech.

And verily meet and reason it had been, that as *Patroclus* when he put on the armour of *Achilles*, and brought forth his hories of service to battell, durst not meddle with his speare *Pelias*, but left it only untouched: so a flatterer also, although he maske and disguise himselfe with other habits, ornaments, and enignes of a friend, should let this liberty only of speech alone, and not once go about to touch or counterfeite it, as being indeed

*A baggon of such posse and weight,  
So big with halfe stiff and right.*

That of all others it belongeth only to friendship for to be carried and wielded by it. But forasmuch as our flatterers now adies are afraid to be detected in laughing in their cups, in their jests, scoffes, and gamefome mirth: therefore to avoid such discovery, they have learned forsooth to knit and bend the brows, they can skill, iwis, to flatter, and yet looke with a frowning face and crabbed countenance, they have the call to temper with their glavering gloses some rough reprehensions, and chiding checks among: let us not over-passe this point untouched, but consider and examine the same likewise. For mine own part I am of this mind: That as in a Comedy of *Menander* there comes in a counterfeit *Hercules* to play, his part upon the stage with a club on his shoulder, that is (you may be sure) nothing massie, heavy, stiffe, and strong, but some device and gawd, hollow and empty within, made of brown paper, or such like stuffe: Even so, that plaine and free speech which a flatterer useth will be found light, soft, and without any strength at all to give a blow: much like (so say truly) unto the soft bed pillows that women lie on, which seeming full and plump to rest and beare out against their heads, yeeld and sinke under the same too much the more: For after the same manner this counterfeit free speech of theirs puffed up full of wind, or else stuffed with some deceitfull light matter, seemeth to rise up, to swell, and beare out hard and stiffe, to the end that being pressed down once (and both sides as it were coming together) it might receive, enlap and enfold him that chanceth to fall thereupon, and so carry him away with it. Whereas the true and friendly liberty of speech indeed taketh hold of those that are delinquent and do offend, bringing with it a kind of paine for the time, which notwithstanding is wholesome and healthfull: resembling hercin the nature of honey, which being applied to a sore or ulcerous place, at the first doth smart and sting: but it doth cleanse and mundifie withall, and otherwise is profitable, sweet, and pleasant. But as touching this plaine dealing and franke speech, I will write a part of purpose in place convenient. As for the flatterer he maketh shew at the first, that he is rough, violent, and inexorable in all dealings with others: For over his servants he carrieth a hard hand, and is not pleased for their service, with his familiars, acquaintance, and kinsfolke he is sharpe and eager, ready to find fault with every thing: he maketh no reckoning nor account of any man but himselfe: he despiseth and disdaineth all the world besides: there is not a man living that he will pardon and forgive: he blameth and accuseth every one: and his whole study is to win the name and reputation of a man that hateth vice, and in that regard careth not whom he doth provoke, and whose displeasure he incur: as who, for no good in the world would be hired to hold his tongue, nor willingly forbear to speake plainly the truth: who with his good will would never speake or do any thing, to sooth up and please another: Then will he make remembrance as though he neither saw nor took knowledge of any great and grosse sins indeed: but if peradventure there be some light and small outward fault, he will make foule ado therat, he will keep a wondering and crying out upon them: then shall you have him in good earnest exclaime and reprove the delinquent with a loud and sounding voice: As for example, if he chanceth to spie the implements, or any thing else about the house lie out of order: if a man be not well and neatly lodged: if his beard be not of the right cut, or his haire grow out of fashion: if a garment fit not handsomely about him, or if a horie or hound be not so carefully tended as his wife should be. But say that a man forgotten by his parents, neglect his own children, misuse his wife, disdain and despise his kindred, spend and consume his goods: none of all these enormities touch and move him: Here he is mute and liath not a word to say: he dares not reprove these abuses: much like as if a Master of the wrestling Schoole, who suffereth a wrestler that is under his hand to be a drunkard and a whoremonger, should chide and rebuke him sharply about an oyle cruse or curry-combe: or as if a Grammarian should find fault with his schollar and chide him for his writing tables or his pen, letting him go away cleare with folclicimes, incongruities, and barbarismes, as if he heard them not. Alas I can iken a flatterer to him,

who

who will not blame an ill author, or ridiculous Rhetorician in any thing as touching his oration itselfe: but rather reproveth him for his utterance, and sharply taketh him up for that by drinking of cold water he hath hurt his wind-pipe, and so marred his voice: or to one who being bidden to read over and peruse a poore silly Epigram or other writing which is nothing worth, taketh on and faresth againe the paper wherein it is written, for being thick, course, or rugged: or against the writer, for negligent, slovenly, or impure otherwise. Thus the claw-backs and flatterers about King *Ptolemius*, who would seeme to love good letters, and to be desirous of learning, used ordinarily to draw out their disputations and conferences at length, even to midnight, debating about some glois or signification of a word, about a verie, or touching some history: but all the while there was not one, amonge many of them, that would tell him of his cruelty, of his wrongs and oppressions, ne yet of his drumming, tabouring, and other enormous indignities, under the colour of religion: and seeke to reforme him. Certes a foolish fellow were he, who coming to a man diseased with tumors, swellings, imposthumes, or hollow ulcers, called *Fistulas*, should with a Chirurgions launce, or Barbers razor, fall to cut his haire, or pare his nailes: even so it fareth with these flatterers, who apply their liberty of speech to such things as neither are in paine, nor yet do any hurt. Moreover some others there be of them, who being more cunning and crafty than their fellows, use this plainnesse of language and reprehension of theirs, for to please and make sport withall. Thus *Agas the Argive*, seeing how *Alexander the Great* gave very great rewards and gifts to a pleasant and odd fellow that was a jester, cried out in very envy and dolour of heart: O great abuse and monstrous absurdity: The King hearing it, turned about to him in great displeasure and indignation, demanding of him what he had to say? I confesse (quoth he) indeed, that I am grieved, and I think it a great indignity, when I see all you that are descended from *Jupiter* and his sons, to take pleasure in flatterers and jesters about you, for to make you merry. For even so *Hercules* tooke a delight to have in his company certaine ridiculous *Cereopes*, and *Bacchus* had ever in his traine the *Silenes*. In your court likewise, a man may see such to be in credit and highly esteemed. When *Tiberius Caesar* the Emperour upon a certaine day was come into the Senate house of Rome, one of the Senators who knew how to flatter, arose and stood up, and with a good loud voice, Meet it is (quoth he) O *Cesar*, that men free borne, should likewise have the liberty of speech, and speake their minds frankly, without distilling or concealing any thing which they know to be good and profitable: with this speech of his he stirred up the attention of the whole house, so as they gave good eare unto him, and *Tiberius* himselfe listened what he would say. Now when all was still and in great silence: *Hearken*, (quoth he) O *Cesar*, what it is that we all accuse and blame you for, but no man dare be so bold as to speake it out: You neglect yourselfe, and have no regard of your own person: you consume and spolie your body with continuall cares and travells for our sake, taking no rest nor repose either day or night. Now when he had drawn out a long traine of words to this purpose, *Cassius Severus* a Rhetorician stood up, and by report said thus: Such liberty of speech as this will be the undoing of this man. But these flatteries are of the lighter sort, and do lesse hurt: there be other more dangerous, which worke the mischief and corruption of those who are not wise and take no heed unto them: namely, when flatterers set in hand to reprove them whom they flatter, for the contrary vices to those that be in them. Thus *Himerius* the flatterer reproached a certaine rich man of *Athenes*, the veriest pinching miser, and the most covetous withall, that was in the whole City, with the imputations of prodigality, and negligence about his own profit and gain: charging him that one day he would smart for it, and both he and his children be hunger-starved for want wherewith to sustaine themselves, if he looked no better to his thrift: or when they object miserable niggardize and beggary unto those that are known to be prodigall spenders, and consume all. After which manner *Titus Petronius* reproved *Nero*. Again, if they come to Princes and great Lords, who deale cruelly and hardly with their subjects and tenants, saying unto them, That they must lay away this over-much lenity and foolish pity of theirs, which neither is seemly for their persons, nor yet profitable for their state. And very like to this is he who maketh semblance to him who is a very senselesse sot and foolish foole, that he stands in great feare and doubt of him, lest he should be circumvented by him, as if he were some cautious, crafty, and cunning person. He also, that doth rebuke another, who is an ordinary slanderer, who taketh pleasure (upon spite and envy) to be ever railing on all men, and back-biting them, if he chance any one time to breake out into the praise of some worthy and excellent personage, saying in this manner unto him, This is a great fault that you have, and a disease that followeth you, thus to praise men of no worth: What is he (I pray you) whom you thus commend? What good parts be in him? Hath he at any time done any doubtful deed, or delivered any singular speech that might deserve such praises? But in amatoria and love matters they passe: there you shall have them moit of all to come over those whom they flatter and lay on load: to them they will joyne close, and set them on a flaming fire. For if they see brethren at some variance: or setting nought by their parents, or else to deale unkindly with their own wives, and to set no store by them, or to be jealous and suspicious of them: they never admonish, chastise, or rebuke them for it, that they may amend: but rather they will kindle more oales between, and encrease their anger and discontentment on both sides: Nay, it is no great matter (will they say) it is even well enough: you will never see and know who you are: you are the cause of all this your own self and selfe do, selfe have: you evermore have born your selves so pilable, lubmisse, and lovly toward them, that you are but rightly served. But say there

be

be some itching heat of love, or smart anger upon jealousy, in regard of a courtizan or married wiffe, whom the party is amorous of; then shall you see a flatterer ready at hand to display his cunning openly, and to speak his mind freely unto him, putting fire to fire and feeding his love: you shall have him to lay the law upon this lover, accusing, and entering proceesse against him in these termes: you have broken the lawes of love; you have done and said many things not so kindly as becometh a true lover, but rather dealt hardly with your love, and enough to lose her heart; and incurre her hatred for ever:

*Such a thankfull person that thou art,  
For kisses so many of thy sweet hart.*

Thus the flattering friends of *Antinous*, when heburned in love of the Egyptian queen *Cleopatra*, would perswade and make him believe, that she it was who was enamoured upon him, and by way of opprobrious imputation they would tell him to his face, that he was proud, disdainful, hard hearted, and void of all kind affection. This noble queen (would they say) forsaking so mighty and wealthy a Kingdome, to many pleasant places, and stately houles of blessed abode, such meanes and opportunities of happinesse, for the love of you pineth away, and consumeth herself, trudging after your camp to and fro, for to do your Honour content and pleasure with the habit and title of your Concubine,

*Whiles you in brest do carry an hart  
Which will not be wrought by any art.*

neglecting her (good lady) and suffering her to perish for sorrow and hearts grief. Whereupon he being well enough pleased to hear himself thus charged with wrong doing to her, and taking more pleasure in these accusations of theirs, than if they had directly praised him, was so blinde that he could not see how they that seemed thus to admonish him of his duty, perverted and corrupted him thereby so much the more. For this counterteit liberty of plain dealing and plain speech, may be very well likened to the wanton pinches and bitings of luxurious women, who tickle and stirre up the lust and pleasure of men by that which might seem to cause their pain. For like as pure wine, which otherwise of it self is a sure remedy against the poison of hemlock, if a man do mingle it with the juice of the said hemlocke, doth mightily enforce the poison thereof, and make it irremediable for by that means of the heat it conveyeth the same more speedily unto the heart: even so these lewd and mischievous flatterers, knowing full well that frank speech is a singular help and remedy against flattery, abuse it to flatter withal. And therefore it seemeth that *Bias* answered not so well as he might have done, to one that asked of him, which was the shrewdest and most hurtful beast of all the other: If (quoth he) your question be of wild and savage, a Tyrant is worse: if of tame and gentle, a flatterer. For he might have said more truly; that of flatterers some be of a tame kinde, such (I mean) as these parasites are who haunt the bairns and rounches; those also that follow good cheer and keep about the table. As for him, who (like as the Porcuttle fish stretcheth out his claws like branches) reacheth as far as to the secret chambers and cabinets of women, with his buisie intermeddling, with his calumniasions and malicious demeanors, such a one is savage, fell, intractable and dangerous to be approached.

Now one of the meanes to beware of this flatterie, is to know and remember alwayes that our soul consisteth of two parts, whereof the one is addicted to the truth loving honesty and reason: the other more brutish, of its owne nature unreasonable, given to untruth and withall passionate. A true friend assisteth evermore the better part, ingiving counsel and comfort, even as an expert and skilful Physitian, who hath an eye that aimeth alwayes at the maintenance and encrease of health: but the flatterer doth apply himself, and setteth to that part which is void of reason and full of passions: this he catcheth, this he tickleth continually, this he stroketh and handleth in such sort, by devising some vicious and dishonest pleasures, that he withdraweth and turneth it away quite from the rule and guidance of reason. Moreover, as there be some kind of viands, which if a man eat, they neither turn unto blood, nor ingender spirits, ne yet adde vigor and strength to the nerves and the marrow: but all the good they do, is happily to cause the flesh or genital parts to rise, to stirre and to oile the belly, or to breed some foggie, fannom and half rotten flesh, which is neither fast nor sound to the life: even so if a man look needrely and have good regard unto a flatterer he shall never find that all the words he useth minister or procure one jot of good to him that is wise and governed by reason; but feed fools with the pleasant delights of love: kindle and augment the fire of inconsiderate anger: provoke them unto envie: breed in them an odious and vain presumption of their own wits: increase their sorrow and grief, with moaning them; and lamenting with them for companie: set on work and exasperate their inbred naughtinesse and lewd disposition: their illiberal minde and covetous nature: their diffidence and distrustfulness of others: their base and servile timidity, making them alwayes worse, and apt to conceive ill more fearful, jealous and suspicious, by the means of some new accusation, false surmises and conjectural suggestions, which they be ready to put into their heads. For evermore it getteth closely into some vicious passion and affection of the minde, and there lurketh: the same it nourisheth and feedeth fat, but anon it appeareth like a borch, rising etkones upon the corrupt diseased or inflamed parts of the soul. Art thou angry with one? punish him (saith he): Hast thou a minde to a thing? buy it, and make no more ado: Art thou never so little afraid? let us sic and be gone: Suspectest thou this or that? believe it confidently (saith he.) But if per adventure, he can hardly be seen and discovered about these passions, for

for that they be so mighty and violent, that oftentimes they chase and expell all use of reason, he will give some vantage to be looner taken in others than he nor to strong and vehement, where we shall find him alwayes the same and like himself. For say, a man do suspect that he hath taken a flatterer, either by over-liberal feeding or drinking headie wine, and upon that occasion make some doubt to bathe his bodie, or to eat presently again and lay gorge upon gorge (as they say): A true friend will advise him to forbear and abstain; he will admonish him to take heed to himself and look to his health: In comes a flatterer, and he will draw him to the bairn in all haste: he will bid him to call for some novelty or other to be set upon the board, willing him to fall fresh to it again, and not to punish his body and do himself injurie, by fasting and refusing his meat and drink: Alfo if he see him not disposed to take a journey by land or voyage by sea, or to go out about any enterprise whatsoever, if he slowly and with an ill will, he will say unto him: either that there is no such great need, or the time is not so convenient, but it may be put off to a farther day, or it will serve the turn well enough to send others about it. Now if it fall out so, that he having made promise to some familiar friend, either to lend or let him have the use of some more, or to give him it freely, do change his minde and repent of his promise: but yet be somewhat abashed and ashamed thus to break his word; the flatterer by and by will put himself to the worse and lighter end of the balance, and make it weigh down on the purse side, soon excludng and cutting off all shame for the matter: What man! (will he say) Spare your purse and save your silver: you are at great charge; you keep a great house, and have many about you which must be maintained and have sufficient in such sort, that if we be not altogether ignorant of our selves, and wilfully blinde, nor seeing that we be covetous, shamelesse, timorous and base minded, we cannot choise but (that and finde out a flatterer: neither is it possible that he should escape us. For surely he will evermore defend and maintain these imperfections, and frankly will he speak his minde in favour thereof, if he perceive us to over-passe our selves therein, But thus much may suffice as touching these matters.

Let us come now to the uses and services that a flatterer is employed in: For in such offices he doth confound, trouble, & darken much the difference between him and a true friend: shewing himself in appearance, alwayes diligent, ready and prompt in all occurrences, without seeking any colourable pretences of shuffling off, and a refusing to do any thing. As for a faithful friend, his whole carriage and behaviour is simple, like as betwix words of truth, as saith *Enripides*, without welts and gards, plain without plaits, and nothing counterfeited: whereas the conditions of a flatterer to say a truth,

*By nature are diseased much,  
And medicines needfull are for such,*

not only with wilddome to be mislited and applied, but also many in number, and those (I assure you) of a more exquisite making and composition than any other. And verily as friends many times when they meet one another in the street, passe by without good-morrow or god-speed, or any word at all between them: only by some lightome look, cheerful smile, or amiable regard of the eye reciprocally given and taken, without any other tokens, there is testified the good-will and mutual affection of the heart within: whereas the flatterer runneth toward his friend to meet him, followeth apace at his heels, spreadeth forth both his armes abroad, and that as farre off, to embrace him: & if it chance that he be saluted & spoken to first, because the other had an eye on him before, he will with brave words excuse himself, yea, and many times call for witnesses, and bind it with great oaths good store, that he saw him nor. Even so likewise in their affairs and negotiations abroad in the world, friends omit and overlip many small and light things, not searching narrowly into matters, not offering or expecting again any exquisite service: nothing curious and buisie in each thing, ne yet putting themselves forward to every kinde of ministry: but the flatterer is herein double diligent, he will be continually employed, and never rest, without seeming at any time to be weary, no place no space nor opportunity will he give the other to do any service: he looketh to be called unto and commanded, and if he be not bidden, he will take it ill and be displeased: nay, you shall have him then out of heart and discouraged, complaining of his ill fortune, and protesting before God and man, as if he had some great wrong done unto him. These be evident marks and undoubted arguments to such as have wit and understanding, not of a friendship sound, sober and honest, but rather smelling of wanton & whorish love, which is more ready to embrace and clip, than is decent and seemly. Howbeit, to examine the same more particularly, let us consider what difference there is between a flatterer and a friend, as touching the offers and promises that they make. They who have written of this theam before us, say very well, that a friends promise goeth in this sort,

*If that I can, or if it may be done,  
Fulfil I will your mind, and that right soon*

but the offer of a flatterer runneth in this manner,

*What would you have? say but the words to me,  
Without all doubt, effected it shall be.*

For such frank promisers and braggers as these, the Poets also use to bring unto the Stage in their Comedies after this sort:

*Now of all loves, Nicomachus, this I crave,  
Set me against this souldier here so brave,*

*I will*

*I will fo swing his coat, you fhall it fee,  
That like a pompion his felf fhall tender be:  
His face, his head I fhall much fofter make,  
Than is the fponge that growes in fea or lake.*

Moreover, you fhall not fee a friend offer his helping hand or aide in any action, unleffe he were called before to counfel, and his opinion asked of the enterprife, or that he have approved and fet down the fame upon good adviement, to be either honeft or profitable: whereas the flatterer, if a man fhould do him fo much credit, as to require his confent and approbation, or otherwife request him to deliver his opinion of the thing, he, not onely upon a defire to yeeld unto others, and to gratifie them; but alfo for fear to give any fupltion that he would feem to draw back and avoid to fet his hand to any work or bufineffe whatsoever, is ready with the formoft to applie himfelf to the appetite and inclination of another, yea, and withal, pricketh and inciteth him forward to enter upon it. And yet lightly you fhall find even of rich men and kings, but few or none, who can or will come forth with thefe words,

*Would God fome one that needy is and poor,  
Yea, worfe than he that begg from door to door,  
Would come to me (fo that he were my friend)  
Without all fear, and foke to me his mind.*

But now adays it is farre otherwife; for they are like many unto compofers of Tragedies, who will be provided of a quire or dance of their friends to fing with them, or defire to have a Theatre of purpofe to give applaufe and clap their hands unto them. And verily whereas *Meropé* in a certain Tragedie giveth thefe large and wife advertiements;

*Take thofe for friends! need, and hold them fo,  
Whofe fpeech is fownd, and waves not to and fro:  
But thofe that pleafe thy mind in word and deed,  
Count lewds, and fuch lock forth of door with fpeed.*

Our Potentates and Grand Seigneurs do clean contrary; for fuch as will not follow their humors, and looth them up at every word, but gain-fay their courfes, in making remonftrance of that which is more profitable and expedient: fuch they diddain and will not vouchafe them a good look. But for thofe wicked wretches, bale minded varlets, and colening impoftors, who can curry favor, they not onely fet their doores wide open for fuch, and receive them into their houfes, but they admit them alfo to confidences with their inward affections and the very fecrets of their heart. Among whom you fhall have one more plain perhaps and fimple than the reft, who will fay, that it is not for him, neither is he worthy to deliberate and confult of fo great affairs: may he could be content, and would take upon him, to be a poor fervitor and minifter, to execute whatever were concluded and enjoined him to do: another more crafty and cunning than his fellows, is willing enough to be ufed in counfel, where he will hear all doubts and perils that be caft: his eye brows fhall fpeak if they will, his head and eyes fhall nod and make fignes, but his tongue fhall not fpeake a word: Say that the party whom he minded to flatter, do utter his minde and what he thinketh good to do: then he will cry out aloud and fay, *By Hercules* I fwear, it was at my tongues end to have faid as much, had you not prevented me and taken the word out of my mouth, I would have given you the very fame counfel. For like as the Mathematicians do affirm, that the fuperficial and outward extremities, the lines alfo of the Mathematical bodies, do of themfelves and in their own nature, neither bend nor ftrech, ne yet move at all: for that they be intellectual onely or imaginary, and not corporal, but according as the bodies do bow, reach or ftirre, fo do they: fo you fhall ever finde that a flatterer, will pronounce, opine, think and be moved to anger, according as he feeth another before him. And therefore in this kind, moft eafe it is to obferve the difference between a flatterer and a friend. But yet more evident you fhall fee it in the manner of offering fervice. For the offices and kindneffes which come from a friend, are ever beft, and (as living creatures) have their moft proper vertues inwardly, carrying leaft in fhew, and having no outward oftentation of glorious pompe. And as it falleth out many times a Phyfician cureth his patient, and fayeth little or nothing at all unto him, but doth the deed ere he be aware: even fo, a good friend whether he be prefent or departed from his friend, doth him good ftill, and taketh care for him when he full little knoweth of it. Such a one was *Arcefilas* the Philofopher, who befide many other kind parts which he fhewed unto his friend *Apelles*, the painter of *Chios*, coming one day to vifite him when he was fick, and perceiving how poor he was, went his way for that time: and when he returned again, brought twenty good drachmes with him: and then fitting clofe unto *Apelles* by his beds fide: Here is nothing here (quoth he) I fee well, but thefe four bare Elements that *Empedocles* writeth of,

*Hot Fire, cold Water, fheer and foft:  
Groffe Earth, pure Aire: but fpreeds aloft.*

But me thinkes you lie not at your eafe; and with that he removed the pillow or bolfter under his head, and fo couching underneath it privily, the fmall pieces of coin aforefaid. The old woman his nurfe and keeper, when he made the bed, found this money: whereat fhe marvelled not a little, and told *Apelles* thereof, who laughing therat: This is (quoth he) one of *Arcefilas* his theevifh cafts. And for that it is a Maxime in Philofophie, that children are born like their parents, one *Lacydes* a fhollar of *Arcefilas* aforefaid, being affiftant with many other to a friend of his named *Cephi-*

*crates*

*crates*, when he came to trial in a cafe of treafon againft the ftate: in pleading of wch caufe, the accufer his adversary called for *Cephiocrates* his ring, a pregnant evidence that made againft him, which he had cleanly flipt from his finger and let it fall to the ground: whereof the faid *Lacydes* being adviſed, let his foot preſently over it, and fo kept it out of fight: that the main proof of the matter in queſtion lay upon that ring. Now after ſentence paſſed on *Cephiocrates* his ſide, and that he was clearly acquit of the crime, he went privately to every one of the Judges for to give them thanks: One of them who (as it ſhould ſeem) had ſeen what was done, willed him to thank *Lacydes*; and with that told how the cafe ſtood, and how it went with him as he ſaid: but all this while *Lacydes* himſelf had not ſaid a word to any creature. Thus I think verily, that the gods themſelves beſtow many benefits and favours upon men ſecretly, and whereof they be not aware: being of this nature to take joy and pleaſure in bountifullneſſe and doing good. Contrariwiſe, the office of a flatterer ſeemeth to perform ſhath nothing in it that is juſt, nothing true, nothing ſimple, nothing liberal: onely you ſhall ſee him ſwear at it; you ſhall have him runne up and down; keep a loud crying and a great ado, and let his countenance upon the matter, ſo as that he maketh right good ſemblance and ſhew that he doth heſpial ſervice, taketh much care and pains about his buſineſſe, and maketh halt to diſpatch it: and much like are all his doings to a curious picture, which with ſtrange colours, with broken plaits, wrinkles and angles, affecteth and ſtriveth (as it were) to ſhew ſomelively reſemblance. Moreover, much ado he maketh, and is troubleſome in telling how he went to and fro, wandering here and there about the matter: alio what a deal of care he took therein ſhow he incurred the evil will and diſpleaſure of others: and a thouſand hinderances, troubles and dangers, as beſides he reckoneth up; in ſomuch as a man that heareth, would fay; All that ever he did was not worth ſo much as the twittle twattle that he maketh. For ſurely a good turn that is upbraided in that wife, becometh burthenſome, odious, and not thankfully accepted, but intolerable. In all the offices and ſervices of a flatterer, you ſhall find theſe upbraidings and ſhameful reports, that would make one bluſh to hear them, and thoſe not onely alter the deed done, but at the very inſtant when he is about it. But inſtead hereof, a true friend, if it fall out ſo, that he be forced and urged to relate what is done, maketh a plain report and narration in modeſt manner, but of himſelf he will never lay a word. After which forth did the Lacedaemonians in times paſt, when they had ſent corn to the Smyrnaes, which, in their extreme neceſſity they craved at their hands: For at what time as themen of *Smyrna* magnified, and wondrously extolled this liberality of theirs, they returned this answer again: This is not fo great a matter that it ſhould deſerve ſo highly to be praized or wondered at: for (ſay they) gathered we have thus much, and made this ſupply of your neceſſities, onely by cutting our ſelves and our labouring beaſts ſhort of one daies pittance and allowance. Bounty in this wife performed, is not onely gentleman-like and liberal indeed, but alio more welcome and acceptable to the receivers: in as much as they think it was no great damage, nor much out of their way that did it. Furthermore, not onely this odious faſhion of doing any ſervice with ſuch pain and trouble, or the readineſſe to make offer and promiſe fo quickly, doth principally bewray the nature of a flatterer: but herein alio much more he may be diſcovered, doth principally bewray the nature of a flatterer: but herein alio much more he may be diſcovered: for that a friend is willingly employed in honeſt cauſes: but a flatterer in ſhameful and diſhoneſt: as alio in the divers ends that they purpoſe: for the one ſecketh to profit his friend, the other to pleaſe onely. A friend, as *Gorgias* was wont to ſay, will never require that his friend ſhould do him a pleaſure, but in juſt things onely: whiles a flatterer ſerveth his turn in many things that are unjuſt: For why?

*To do good deeds friends ſhould be joyns  
But not to ſinne in any point.*

whereas he ſhould endeavour to avert and withdraw him from that which is not decent, or ſeemly: Now if it happen that the other will not be perſwaded by him, then were it not amiſſe to ſay unto him as *Antipater* once answered *Phocion*: You cannot have me to be a friend and flatterer too (that is to ſay) a friend, and no friend. For one friend is to ſtand to another, and to aſſiſt him in doing, and not in midding, in conſulting, and not in complotting and conſpiring, in bearing witneſſe with him of the truth, & not in circumventing any one by falſhood, yea and to take part with him in ſuffring calamity, and not to bear him company in doing injurie: For ſay that we may chance to be privy unto ſome ſhameful and reprochful deeds of our friend; yet we ought not to be party unto them therein, nor willing to aide them in any unbecoming action. For like as the Lacedaemonians being deſtayed in battell by king *Antipater*, and treating with him about the capitulations and articles of peace, made requiſt unto him. That he would impole upon them what conditions he would themſelves, were they never ſo chargeable and diſadvantageous unto them, but in no wiſe join them to do any ſhamefull indignity: even ſo a faithful friend ought to be ſo diſpoſed, that if his friends occasions do require any matter of expence danger or travail he ſhew himſelf at the firſt call and holding up of his finger, ready to come, and cheerfully to take his part and undergo the ſame, without any ſhifting off, or allegation of any excuſe whatsoever: may, if there be never ſo little ſhame or diſhonor that may accrue thereby, he ſhall then reſuſe and pray him to hold him excuſed: he ſhall requiſt pardon and deſire to have leave for to be diſmiſſed and depart in peace. The flatterer is quite contrary: for in painfull, diſſiculte and dangerous affairs, which require his help and aſſiſtance, he draweth back, and is ready to pluck his neck out of the collar: if (I ſay) in this caſe you ſeem for trial ſake to knock (as it were upon a pot) to ſee whether he be right, he will not ring clear: but you ſhall ſee by the

H



the dead found of his pretended and forged excuses, that he is full of cracks, and flaws; contrariwise, in dishonest, vile, base and shameful ministries, I am for you, (will he say) I am yours to command: do with me what you will, tread me under your foot, abuse me at your pleasure: be short, he will think nothing to be an ignominious indignity unto him. See you not the ape? good he is not to keep the house & to give warning of thieves, as dogs do; carry upon his back any burdens he cannot, like the horse: neither yet is he fit to draw or to plough the ground, as the ox doth: and therefore he beareth all kind of abuse and mistreating, all wrongs, all unhappy sports and tricks that can be devised, serving obsequiously as an instrument of mockery, and a meer laughing stock. Even so it fareth with a flatterer, being not meet to plead at the barre for a friend, to assist him in council, to lay his hand to his purse and supply his wants that way, nor to fight as his champion in maintenance of his quarrel, as one that can away with no labour, no pains taking, or serious employment; and in one word, fit for nothing that good is: many in such affaires as may be done under the arm, that is to say, which be close, secret and filthy services, he is the forwardest man in the world, and makes no excuses. A trusty carrier he is between, in love matters, in finding favour with a Bawd, and bringing a wench or harlot to your bed, he is excellent, and hath a marvellous gift; to make the short, and clear the reckoning of any sumptuous feast or banquet he is ready and perfect, in providing for a great dinner or supper, and setting the same forth accordingly, he is nothing slow, but nimble enough. To give entertainment unto coxcombes, he is very handsome, obsequious and servicable: if one bid him to speak audaciously and maleparly against a father in law, a guardian, tutor, or any such, or to put away his true espoused wife, like as he seeth, his good matter do before him, he is without all shame and mercy: so that even herein also it is no hard matter to see what kinde of man he is, and how much he differeth from a true friend: For command him to commit what villanie and wickednesse you will, ready he is to execute the same, and so he may gratifie and pleasure you that let him on work, he careth not to do any injurie to himself.

There is moreover another means not of the least consequence, whereby a man may know how much a flatterer differeth from a friend indeed, namely, by his disposition and behaviour towards his other friends: for a true friend findeth contentment in nothing so much as to love many, and likewise to be loved of many; and herein he laboureth especially with his friend to procure himself many others to love and honor him: for being of this opinion, that among good friends all things are common, he thinketh that nothing ought to be more common than friends themselves. But the supposed, false and counterfeit friend, being privy to his own conscience, that he doth great injurie to true amitie and friendship, which he doth corrupt in manner of a base piece of money: as he is by nature envious, so he exerciseth that envie of his, upon such as be like himself, striving with a kinde of emulation to surpass him in courteous speech, giving of taunts and garmities; but before such as he knoweth better than himself, he trembleth and is afraid, and in truth dares not come neerer nor shew his face to such an one, no more (I assure you) than a footman to go and keep pace (according to the Proverb) with a Lydian chariot, or rather (as *Simonides* saith,

*Laid to fine gold tried cleave from dross,*

*He hath not so much as lead so grosse,*

Being compared with true, sound and grave friendship, which (as they say) will endure the hammer, he cannot choise but finde himself to be but light, falsified and deceitful: seeing then that he must needs be detected and knowne, for such an one as he is, what doth he think you? Surely he playeth like an unskilful painter, who had painted certain cockes, but very badly: For like as he gave commendamento to his boy for to keep away natural and living cockes indeed, farre enough off from his pictures: so a flatterer will do what he can to chafe away true friends, and not suffer them to approach neere: or if he be not able so to do, than openly and in public place, he will seem to carry favor with them, to honor and admire them, as farre better than himself, but secretly under hand, and behind their backs, he will not let to raise some privy calumniation, and some slanderous reports tending to their discredit: but if he see that by such privy girds and pinches which will fret and gall the fore, he cannot at the first bring his purpose about: yet he remembereth full and well, and observeth the saying of *Medius*. This *Medius* was the chief captain of the troupe, or the master rather of the quire (if I may so say) of all those flatterers that used the court of King *Alexander* the Great, and came about his person: the principal Sophister also that opposed himself and banded against all good men, and never rested to slander and backbite them: This rule and lesson he taught his scholars and quisters that were under his hand, To cast out slanders boldly, and not spare, therewith to bite others: For (quoth he) although the fore may heal up again, yet the scarre will remain and be ever seen. By these cicatrices and scars of false imputations, or (to speak more properly and truly) by such gangrenes and cankerous ulcers as these, *Alexander* the King being corrupted and eaten, did to death *Cassius*, *Parmenion*, and *Philotas*, his fast and faithful friends: but to such as *Agnon*, *Bagoas*, *Agelius* and *Demetrius* were, he abandoned and gave himself wholly to be supplanted and overthrowne at their pleasure, whiles he was by them adored, adorned, arrayed gorgeously with rich robes, and let out like a Barbarian image, statue or idoll. Lo what is the force and power of flattery to win grace and favor; and namely in those, who would be reputed the mightiest monarches and greatest potentates of the world, it beareth most sway: For

such

such are periwaded, and desirous also, that the best things should be in themselves; and this is it, that giveth both credit and also boldnesse unto a flatterer. True it is I must confesse, that the highest places and fests situate upon the loftiest mounes, are least accessible, and most hard to be gained by those who would surprize and force them; but whereere is an high spirit and haughty minde by nature, not guided by the sound judgement of reason, but lifted up with the favors of fortune, or nobility of birth, it is the easiest matter in the world even for most base and vile persons to conquer such; and the avenues to them lie ready and open, to give the vantage of easiest entrance. And therefore as in the beginning of this Treatise I gave warning; so now I admonish the Readers again in this place: That every man would labour and strive with himself to root out that self-love and overweening that they have of their own good parts and worthinesse: For this is it that doth flatter us within & possesseth our minds before-hand, whereby we are exposed, and lie more open unto flatterers than are without, finding us thus prepared alreadie for to work upon. But if we would obey the god *Apollo*, and by acknowledging how much in all things we ought to esteeme that oracle of his, which commandeth us, To know ourselves, search into our own nature, and examine with all our nurture and education; when we finde therein an infinite number of defects, and many varieties, imperfections and faults, mixed untowardly in our words, deeds, thoughts and passions, we would not so easily suffer these flatterers to tread us under their feet, and make a bridge of us as they do at their pleasure. King *Alexander* the Great was wont to say, that two things there were especially which moved him to have lesse belief in them, who saluted and greeted him by the name of a god: The one was sleep, and the other the use of *Venus*: in both which he found that he was worse than himself that is to say, subject to infirmities and passions more than in anything else: But if we would look into ourselves, and ever and anon consider, how many grosse vices, troublesome passions, imperfections and defects we have, surely we shall finde that we stood in great need, not of a false friend to flatter us in our follies, and to praise and extoll us; but rather of one that would frankly finde fault with our doings, and reprove us in those vices that each one privately and in particular doth commit. But very few there be among many others, who dare freely and plainly speak unto their friends but rather sooth them up and seek to please them in every thing: And even in those, as few as they be, hardly shall you find any that know how to do it well, but for the most part they think that they speak freely, when they do nothing but reprove, reproach and rail. Howbeit, this liberty of speech, whereof I speak, is of the nature of a medicine, which if it be not given in time convenient, & as it ought to be, besides that it doth no good at all, it troubleth the body, worketh grievance, and instead of a remedy proveth to be a mischief: For even so, he that doth reprehend and find fault untearably, bringeth forth the like effect with pain, as a flatterer doth with pleasure. For men are apt to receive hurt and damage, not only by overmuch praise; but also by inordinate blame when it is out of due time: for it is the only thing that of all others maketh them insooth to turne unto flatterers, and to be most easily surprized by them: namely, when from those things that stand most opposite and highest against them, they turn aside like water, and run down those wayes that be more low, easie, and hollow. In which regard it behoveth that this liberty in fault finding, be tempered with a certain amiable affection, and accompanied with the judgement of reason, which may take away the excessive velenemy and force of sharp words, like the over-bright shining of some glittering light, and for fear lest their friends being dazzled as it were and blinded with the flashing beames of their rebukes, seeing themselves so reprovod for each thing, and blamed every while, may take such a grief and thought thereupon, that for sorrow they be ready to slide unto the shadow of some flatterer, and turn toward that which will not trouble them at all. For we must avoid all vice, (*O Philoppon*) and seek to correct the same by the means of vertue (and not by another vice contrary unto it) as some do; who for to shun foolish and rusticall baseness, grow to be overbold and impudent: for to eschew rude incivility, fall to be ridiculous jesters and pleants; and then they think to be farthest off from cowardise and effeminate tendernes, when they come neerer to extreme audacity and boasting bravery. Others there be, who to prove themselves not to be superstitious, become meer Atheists; and because they would not be thought and reputed idiots and fooles, prove artificiall conny-catchers. And surely in redressing the enormities of their manners, they do as much as those, who for want of knowledge and skill to set a peece of wood straight that twinneth and lyeth crooked one way, do curb and bend it as much another way. But the most shameful means to avoid, and shun the suspicion of a flatterer, is to make a mans self odious and troublesome without profit: and a very rude and rusticall fashion this is of seeking to win favor, and that with favour of no learning, skill, and civility, to become unpleasing, harsh, and fowre to a friend for to shunne that other extreme, which in friendship seemeth to be base and servile: which is as much as, if a freed slave newly franchised, should in a Comedie think that he could not use and enjoy his liberty of speech, unless he might be allowed licence to accuse another without controulment. Considering then, that it is a foul thing to fall to flattery, in studying to please, as also for the avoiding of flattery, by immoderate liberty of speech, to corrupt and marre the grace of amity and winning love, as the care of remedying and reforming that which is amisse: and seeing that we ought to avoid both the one and the other: and as in all things else, to free speaking, is to have the perfection from a mean and mediocrity: reason would, and by order it were requisite, that toward the end of this Treatise, we should adde somewhat in manner of a corollary and complement, as touching that point,

H 2

Foral-



Forasmuch as therefore we see that this liberty of language and reprehension hath many vices following it, which do much hurtlet us assay to take them away one after another, & begin first with blind self-love and private regards: where we ought especially to take heed that we be not seen to do any thing for our own interest, and in respect of our selves; and namely, that we seem not, for wrong that we have received our selves, or upon any grief of our own, to reproch, upbraid, or revile other men: for they will never take it as done for any love or good will that we bear unto them, but rather upon some discontentment and heart-burning that we have, when they see that our speech tendeth unto a matter wherein we are interested our selves; neither will they repute our words spoken by way of admonition unto them, but rather interpret them as a complaint of them. For surely the liberty of speech whereof we treat, as it respecteth the welfare of our friend, so it is grave and venerable; whereas complaints favour rather of self-love and a bale minde. Hereupon it is that we reverence, honour and admire those who for our good deliver their minds frankly unto us; contrariwise, we are so bold as to accuse, challenge and charge reciprocally, yea, and contemne those that make complaints of us. Thus we read in *Homer*, That *Agamemnon*, who could not bear and endure *Achilles*, when he seemed to tell him his minde after a moderate manner; but he was well enough content to abide and suffer *Ulysses*, who touched him neerer, and bitterly rebuked him in this wise:

*Alh wretch, would God some abject host  
Beside us by your hand  
Conducted were; for that in field  
You did not see command.*

As sharp a check as this was, yet being delivered by a wise man, proceeding from a careful minde, and tendering the good of the Common-weal, he gave place thereto, and kicked not again: for this *Ulysses* had no private matter, nor particular quarrell against him, but spake frankly for the benefit of all *Greece*: whereas *Achilles* seemed to be offended and displeased with him principally, for some private matter betwene them twain. And even *Achilles* also himselfe, although he was never known for to be a man of a gentle nature and of a mild spirit,

*But rather of a stomack full,  
And one who would accuse  
A guiltlesse person for no cause,  
And him full soon abuse,*

endured *Patroclus* patiently, and gave him not a word again, notwithstanding he taunted and took him up in this wise:

*Thou mercilesse and cruel wretch,  
For Peleus son a knight  
Was never (swe) thy father true,  
Ne yet dame Thetis bright  
Thy mother kind: but sea so green,  
Or rocks so steep and hard  
Thou barest (thy heart of pity hath  
So small or no regard.)*

For like as *Hyperides* the Orator required the Athenians (who complained that his orations were bitter) to consider of him, not only whether he were sharpe and eager simply, but whether he were so upon no cause, nor taking any fee; even so the admonition and reprehension of a friend, being sincere and cleansed pure from all private affection, ought to be revered: it carrieth (I say) authority with it, and no exceptions can well be taken, nor a man dare lift up an eye against it: in such sort, as if it appeare that he who chideth freely, and blameth his friend, doth let pale and reject all those faults which he hath committed against him, and maketh no mention thereof, but toucheth those errors and misdemeanours only which concerne others, and then, spare him not, but pierce and bite to the quick: the vehemency of such free speech is invincible, and cannot be challenged, for the mildnesse and good will of the chastiter doth fortifie the austerity and bitterness of the chastisement. Well therefore it was said in old time, That whensoever we are angry, or at some jar and variance with our friends, then most of all we ought to have an eye unto their good, and to study how to do somewhat that is either profitable unto them, or honourable for them. And no lesse material is this also to the maintenance of friendship, if they that thinke themselves to be despised and not well regarded of their friends, do put them in mind, and tell them frankly of others who are neglected by them, and not accounted of as they should be. Thus dealt *Plato* with *Dionys*, at what time he was in disgrace, and saw how he made no reckoning at all of him: For he came unto the Tyrant upon a time, and requested that he might have a day of audience and leave to confer with him: *Dionys* granted his request, supposing verily that *Plato* had a purpose to complaine and expostulate with him in his own behalfe, and thereupon to discourse with him at large: But *Plato* reasoned and debated the matter with him in this manner: Sir (quoth he) O *Dionys*, if you were advertised and knew that some enemy or evil willer of yours were arrived and landed in *Sicily*, with a full intention to do you some displeasure, although he had no opportunity or means to execute and effect the same, would you let him faile away againe and depart from *Sicily* with impunity, and be fore he were talked withall? I to no, O *Plato*, (quoth *Dionys*) but I would looke to him well enough

enough for that: For we ought to hate and punish not the actions only, but the very purposes and intentions also of enemies. But how and if (quoth *Plato* againe) on the contrary (i.e., some other being expressly and of purpose come for meere love and affection that he beareth unto you, and fully minded to do you some pleasure, or to adve. you for your good, you will give him neither time nor opportunity therefore; is it meet (think you) that he should be thus unthankfully dealt withall, or hardly entreated at your hands? With that *Dionysus* was somewhat moved, and demanded who that might be? *Aeschines* (quoth *Plato*) is he, a main faire conditioned, and of as honest carriage and behaviour, as any one that ever came out of *Sicily*; of a cheerful, or daily and familiarly conversed with him; sufficient and able by his eloquence and pithy speech to reforme the manners of those with whom he keepeth company: This *Aeschines* (I say) having taken a long voyage over sea and arrived here, intending for to confer with you philosophically is nothing regarded, nor let by at all. These words touched *Dionys* so to the very quicke, that presently he not only took *Plato* in his armes embracing him most lovingly, and yielding him great thanks for that kinnesse and highly admiring his magnanimity; but also from that time forward entreated *Aeschines* right courteously, and did him all the honour that he could.

Secondly, this liberty of speech, which now is in hand, we ought to cleare and purge cleane from all contumelious and injurious words, from laughter, scoffes, and ironic taunts, which are the hurtfull and unwholesome sauces (as I may say) wherewith many use to season their free language. For like as a Chirurgion, when he maketh incision and cutteth the flesh of his patient, had need to use great dexterity, to have a nimble hand and an even; yea, and every thing neat and fine belonging to this worke and operation of his: as for all dancing, gettulations besides of his fingers, toyst motions, and superfluous agitation thereof, to shew the agility of his hand, he is to forbear for that time: So this liberty of speech unto a friend: doth admit well a certaine kind of elegancy and civility, provided always, that the grace thereof retaineth its decent and comely gravity, whereas if it chance to have audacious bravery, saucy impurity, and insolency, to the hurt or hinderance of credit it is utterly marred and loseth all authority. And therefore it was not an upproper and unseemly speech; wherewith a musician upon a time stopped King *Philip*: mouth that he had not a word to lay againe: For when he was about to have disputed and contested against the said minstrell, as touching good fingering, and the sound of the severall strings of his instrument: Oh sir (quoth he) God forbid that ever you should fall to follow an estate, as to be more cunning in these matters than I. But contrariwise, *Epicharmus* spake not so aptly and to the purpose in this behalfe: For when King *Hiero*, who a little before had put to death some of his familiar acquaintance, invited him many daies after to supper. Yea many sir, but the other day when you sacrificed, you bad not your friends to the feast. And as badly answered *Antiphon*, who upon a time when there was some question before *Dionys* the Tyrant, what was the best kind of brad: Mary that (quoth he) wherof the Athenians made the Statues of *Harmodius* and *Aristogiton*. Sir, his pee beses these are rare, and biting, and no good can come thereof, neither hath that kurrillity and offing manner any delight: but a kind of intemperance it is of the tongue, mingled with a certaine maliciousnesse of mind, implying a wil to do hurt, and injury and shewing paine enmity, which as many as use, worke their own mischief and destruction dancing (as the Proverbe saith) a dance unwortwardly about a pits brinke, or jelling with edged tooles. For surely it is, off *Antiphon* his life, who was put to death by the said *Dionys*. And *Imagines* looke for ever the favour and friendship of *Augustus Caesar*, not for any ranke speech and broad language that ever he used against him: but only because he had taken up a foolish fashion, to every feast or banquet, wherunto the Emperour invited him, and whensoever he walked with him, etc. (ones, and to no purpose he would come out with these verities in *Homer*,

*For might else but to make some sport  
Among the Greeks he did resort.*

pretending that the cause of this favour which he had with the Emperour, was the grace and gift that he had in flouting and reviling others: and even the very comical Poets in old time exhibited and presented to the Theaters many grave, austere, and serious remonstrances, and those pertaining to policy and government of State: but there he curile speech, bes intermingled among, for to move laughter, which (as one unflavoury dish of meat among many other good viands) marre all their liberty of speech and the benefit thereof; so as it is vaine and doth no good at all: And even so the Authors and Actors of such broad jests get nothing thereby, but an opinion and imputation of a malicious disposition and impure kurrillity: and to the hearers there accreth no good nor profit at all. At other times, and in other places, I hold well with it, and grant, that to jest with friends and move laughter is tolerable enough: but surely the liberty of speech then ought to be serious and modest, shewing a good intention without any purpose to gallow or sting. And if it do concerne weighty affaires indeed, let the words be so let and couched, the affection so appeare, the countenance be composed and the gesture so ordered, and the voice so tuned, that all concurring together may win credit to the speech, and be effectually to move. But as in all things else, fit opportunity ever slipeth and neglected doth much hurt: so especially it is the occasion that the fruit of free speech is utterly lost, in case it be omitted and forgotten. Moreover this is evident, that we must take heed how we speake broad at a table where friends be met together to drinke wine liberally, and to make good chere: for he that amidst pleasant discourses and merry talke moveth a speech that causeth bending and knitting of brows, or others, maketh men to frown and be frowning,

\* Some read  
Lydius.

ing, he doth as much as overcast faire weather with a black and darke cloud: opposing himselfe unto that god \* *Lyamus*, who by good right hath that name, as *Pindarus* the Poet saith,

For that the cord he doth untie  
Of cares that breed anxiety.

Besides, this neglect of opportunity bringeth with it great danger: for that our minds and spirits, kindled once with wine, are easie enflamed with choler: yea, and oftentimes it falleth out, that a man after he hath taken his drinke well, when he thinketh but to use his freedom of tongue for to give some wholesome advertisement and admonition, misinterpreteth occasion of great enmity. And to say all in few words, it is not the part of a generous, confident, and resolute heart, but rather of a craven kind and unmanly, to forbear plaine speech when men are lobber, and to keep a barking at the boord, like unto those cowardly cur-dogs who never snarle but about a bone under the table. And now of this point needlesse it is to discusse any longer.

But forasmuch as many men heither will nor dare controll and reforme their friends when they do amisse, so long as they be in prosperity; as being of opinion that such admonition cannot have access nor reach unto a fortunate state that standeth upright: and yet the same persons when men are falling, are ready to lay them along, and being once down, to make a football of them, or tread them under feet, or else keep them so when they be once under the hatches, giving their liberty of speech full scope to run over them all at once: as a brooke-water, which having been kept up perforce against the nature and contrarie thereof, is now let go, and the flood-gates drawn up: rejoicing at his change and infortunat of them, in regard as well of their pride and arrogancy: who before did disdain and despise them: as also of themselves, who are but in meane and low estate: it were not impertinent to this place forto discusse a little of this matter, and to answer that verse of *Eu-ripides*,

When fortune doth upon men smile,  
What need have they of friends the while?

Namely, that even then when as they seem to have fortune at their command they stand in most necessity, and ought to have their friends about them to pluck down their plumes and bring under their haughtinesse of heart, occasioned by prosperity: for few there be who with their outward felicity continue wile and sober in mind, breaking not forth into insolence: yea, and many there are who have need of wit discretion, and reason to be put into them from without to abate and depreess them, being set a-gog and pushed up with the favours of fortune. But say, that the divine power do change and turne about, and overthrow their state, or clip their wings and diminish their greatness, and authority, then these calamities of themselves are souldges sufficent, putting them in mind of their errors, and working repentance: and then in such distresse there is no use at all either of friends to speake unto them frankly, or of pinching and biting speeches, to molest and trouble them, but to say a truth, in these mutations,

It greatly doth content our minds  
To see the face of pleasant friends.

Who may yeeld consolation, comfort, and strength to a distressed heart, like as *Xenophon* doth write, that in battels and the greatest extremities of danger, the amiable visage and chearefull countenance of *Clearchus* being on eie of the souldiers, encouraged them much more to play the men, and fight lustily: whereas he that useth unto a man distressed such plaine speech as may gall and bite him more, doth as much as one who unto a troubled and inflamed eye applyeth some quicke eye-salve or sharpe drug that is proper forto cleare the sight: by which meane he curth not the infirmity before-said, neither doth he mitigate or allay the paine, but unto sorrow and griefe of mind already addeth anger moreover, and doth exasperate a wounded heart. And verily so long as a man is in the latitude of health he is not so testy, iroward and impatient, but that he will in some sort give care unto his friend, and thinke him neither rough, nor altogether rude and uncivil, in case he tell him of his loosenesse of life, how he is given too much either unto women or wine: or if he find fault with his idleness and sitting still, or contrariwise, his excessive exercise: if he reprove him for haunting to often the baines or hot-houses, and never lying out of them, or blame him for gormandise and belly cheere, or eating at undue houres. But if he be once sick, then it is a death unto him, and a grieue unsupportable, which doth aggravate his malady, to have one at his bed-side sounding ever in his eares, See what comes of your drunkennesse, your idleness, your sitting and gluttony, your wenching and leachery, these are the causes of your disease. But what will the sick man say againe: Away good sir with these unseasonable words of yours: you trouble me much, and do me no good, I wis: I am about making my last will and testament: my Physicians are busie preparing and tempering a potion of *Scammony*, or a drinke of *Caustoreum* for me: and you come preaching unto me with your Philosophicall reasons and admonitions to chastise me: I have no need of them now, nor of such friends as you, Semblably it fareth with those who are fallen to decay & be down the winds: for capable they be not of sententious saws: they have no need as the case now stands of free reprehensions: then lenity and gentle usage, aide, aide and comfort are more meet for them. For even so kind nurses when their little babes and infants have caught a fall, run not by and by to rate or chide them, but to take them up wash and make them cleane where they were bewrayed, and to still them by all meanes that they can: afterwards, they rebuke and chastise them for looking no better to their fear. It is reported of *Demetrius* the Phalerean, when being banished out of his country, he lived

lived at *Thebes* in meane estate and very obscurely, that at the first he was not well pleased to see *Crates* the Philosopher, who came to visit him, as looking ever when he would begin with some rough words unto him, according to that liberty of speech which those Cynick Philosophers then used: but when he heard *Crates* once speake kindly unto him, and discouraging after a mild manner, of the state of his banishment; namely, That there was no misery fallen unto him by that meane, nor any calamity at all, for which he should vex and torment himselfe: but rather that he had cause to rejoyce, in that he was sequestred and delivered from the charge and management of such affairs as were ticklish, mutable, and dangerous: and withall exhorting him to pluck up his heart, and be of good cheere, yea, and repose all his comfort in his own selfe and a cleare conscience. Then *Demetrius* being more lightome, and taking better courage, turned to his friends and said, Shame take those affairs and busineses: out upon those troubleome and reflexe occupations, which have kept me from the knowledge and acquaintance of such a worthy man: For

If men be in distresse and griefe,  
Sweet words of friends do bring reliefe:  
But foolish fits in all their actions,  
Have need of sharp corrections.

And verily this is the manner of generous and gentle friends; but other base minded and abject fellows, who flatter and fawne whiles fortune doth smiles like unto old raptures, spaines, and cramps (as *Demosthenes* saith) do then stir and fiew themselves, when any new accident hath befallen unto the body, so they also stick closter every change and alteration of fortune, as being glad thereof, and taking pleasure and contentment therein. For, say that a man afflicted were to be put in mind of his fault and misgovernment of himselfe, by reason that he hath taken lewd courses and followed ill counsell, and to fallen into this or that inconvenience, it were sufficient to say thus unto him,

You never took by my advice this course,  
Against the same how oft did I discourse?

In what cases and occurrences then ought a friend to be earnest and vehement? And when is he to use his liberty of speech, and extend it to the full? Even then, when occasion is offered, and the time serveth best to repress excessive pleasure, to refrain embripled choler, to refrain intolerable pride and insolency, to stay insatiable avarice, or to stand against any foolish habitude and inconsiderate motion. Thus *Solon* spake freely unto *King Croesus*, when he saw how he was cleane corrupted, and grown beyond all measure arrogant upon the opinion that he had of his felicity in this world, which was uncertaine, advertising him to look unto the end. Thus *Socrates* clipped the wings of *Alcibiades*, and by convincing his vice and errour, caused him to weep bitterly, and altered quite the disposition of his heart. Such were the remonstrances and admonitions of *Cyrus* to *Cyriaces*, and of *Plato* to *Dion*, even when he was in his greatest ruffin, in the very height of his glory: when (I say) all mens eyes were upon him for his worthy acts and great successe in all affairs, willing him even then to take heed and beware of arrogancy and selfe-conceit, as being the vice that dwelleth in the same house together with folitude, (that is to say) which maketh a man to live apart from the whole world. And to the same effect wrote *Senephon* also unto him, when he bad him looke to himselfe and not take a pride and preluime much upon this: That there was no talke among women and children, but of him: rather that he should have a care to adorne *Sicily* with religion and piety towards the gods, with justice and good laws in regard of men, that the schoole of the Academy might have honour and credit by him. Contrariwise, *Euclaus* and *Euclem*, two minions and favourites of *King Persus*, who followed his vice and pleased his humour in all things, like other courtiers of his, all the while that he flourished, and so long as the world went on his side: but after he had lost the field in a battell against the Romans, fought neare the City *Pydna*, and was fled, they let fly at him grosse termes and reproachfull speeches, bitterly laying to his charge all the middlemeasures and faults that he had before committed, casting in his dish those persons whom he had evil entreated or despised: which they ceased not to do so long, until the man (partly for sorrow, and partly for anger) was so moved, that he bettaded them both with his dagger, and slew them in the place. Thus much in generall may suffice to determine and define as touching the opportunity of free speech to friends: meane while a faithfull and careful friend must not reject such occasions as many times are represented unto him by them, but to take hold thereof quickly, and make good use of them: for otherwhiles it falleth out, that a demand or question asked, a narration related, a reprehension or commendation of like things in other persons, open the doore and make way for us to enter, and give us leave to speake frankly. After this manner it is said, that *Demetrius* took his vantage to utter his mind freely: who coming upon a time from *Corinth* to *Aacedon*, when as *King Philip* was in some termes of disension with his wife and son, was friendly received by *Philip*, and bidden kindly welcome. Now after salutations and other complements passed between: the King asked him whether the Greeks were at accord and unity one with another? *Demetrius*, as he was a friend very inward with him, and one that loved him heartily, answered thus: It becommeth you well indeed sir to enquire of the concord and agreement between the Athenians and the Peloponnesians, when in the meane while you suffer your own house to be full of domestical quarrels and debates. Well did *Diogenes* likewise, when being come into the campe of *King Philip*, when he had an expedition or journey against the Greeks, was taken and brought before the King, who not knowing what he was, demanded of him, If he were not a spie:

Yes

Yes, marry (quoth he) and come I am to spie out your inconsiderate folly (O *Philop*) and want of fore-sight, who being not urged nor compelled by any man, are come thus far to hazard in one hour the estate of your kingdom and your own life, and to lay all upon the chance and cast of a die. But some men per- dunture will say, This was speeche somewhat with the sharpest, and too much biting. Moreover another time and occasion there is of admonition, when those whom we mind to reprove having been reproached and taunted already by others for some faults which they committed, are become humble and cast down to our hands. Which opportunity a wife and skilfull friend will not omit, but make especiall good use of: namely, by seeming in open place to check those that thus have slandered them, yea, and to repulse and put back such opprobrious imputations; but privately he will take his friend apart by himselfe, and put him in mind to live more warily, and give no such offence, if for no other thing else; yet because his enemies should not take vantage, and beare themselves insolently against him: For how shall they be able to open their mouths against you and what mis-word can they have to say unto you, if you would leave these things and call them behind you, for which you heare ill and are grown to some obloquy? In this sort if the matter be handled, all the offence that was taken shall light upon the head of the first slanderer, and the profit shall be attributed unto the other that gave the friendly advertisement, and he shall go away with all the thanks.

Some there be moreover, who after a more cleanly and fine manner in speaking of others, admonish their own familiar friends: for they will accuse strangers in their hearing for those faults which they know them to commit, and by this means reclaim them from their shame. Thus *Ammonius* our master perceiving when he gave lecture in the afternoon, that some of his scholars had taken a larger dinner and ate more than was fit for students, commanded a servant of his a franchised, to take up his own ion and to beat him, and why so? He cannot forsooth make his dinner (quoth he) but he must have some vinegar to his meat. And in saying so he cast his eye upon us, in such sort, that as many as were culpable took themselves to be rebuked, and thought that we meant them. Furthermore, this good regard would be observed, that we never use this fashion of free speech, and reproving our friend in the presence of many persons, but we must remember that which befall upon *Plato*; for when upon a time *Socrates*, in a disputation held at the table, in eight or nine words too lightly against one of his familiars before them all: had it not been better (quoth *Plato*) to have told him of this privately, but thus to shame him before all this company? But *Socrates* taking him presently therewith; And you also might have done better to have said this to my selfe when you had found me alone. *Pythagoras* by report gave such hard termes by way of reprove to one of his scholars and acquaintance in the hearing of many, that the young man for very griefe of heart was weary of his life and hanged himselfe. But never would *Pythagoras* after to his dying day reprove or admonish any man if another were in place. And to say a truth, as well the detection as the correction of a sin ought to be secret, and not in publicke place, like as the discovery and cure also of some sickness, and foule disease: it must not, I say, be done in the view of the world (as if some shew or pompe were to be exhibited unto the people) with calling witnesses or spectators thereto. For it is not the part of a friend, but a trick of some Sophister, to seeke for glory in other mens faults, and affect outward shew and vaine ostentation in the presence of others: much like to these Mountebanke Chirurgions, who for to have the greater practise, make shew of their cunning casts, and operations of their art in publicke Theaters, with many gesticulations of their handy-worke. Moreover, besides that there should no infamy grow to him that is reprov'd, (which indeed is not to be allowed in any cure or remedy) there ought also to be some regard had of the nature of vice and sin, which for the most part of it selfe is opinionative, contentious, stubborn, and apt to stand to it, and make means of defence. For as *Empirides* saith,

*We doily see, not only wanton love  
Doth presse the more, when one doth it reprove.*

But any vice whatsoever be, and every imperfection, if a man do reprove it in publicke place before many and spare not at all, putteth on the nature of impudence, and turneth to be shamelesse: like as therefore *Plato* giveth a precept, that elder folke, if they would imprint shame and grace in their young children, ought themselves first to shew shamefull behaviour among them: even so, the modest and bashfull liberty of speech which one friend useth, doth strike also a great shame in another. Also to come and approach by little and little unto one that offendeth, and after a doubting manner with a kind of feare to touch him, is the next way to undermine the vice that he is prone and given unto: whiles he cannot chooseth but be modestly dispoised, who is so modestly and gently entreated. And therefore it would be alwaies very good in those reprehensions to observe what he did, who in like case reproveth a friend,

*Held head full close unto his eares,  
That no man else but he might heare.*

But lesse seemly and convenient it is for to discover the fault of the husband before his wife; or of a father in the presence of his sons: or of a lover before his love; or of a schoolmaster in the hearing of his scholars: that were enough to put them beside their right wits for anger and griefe when they shall see themselves checked and discredited before those of whom they desire to be best esteemed. And verily of this mind I am, that it was not the wisest manner that set King *Alexander* in such a chafe and rage against *Chiris* when he reprov'd him, as for that he did it in the presence and hearing

of

of so many. *Aristomenes* also, the master and tutor of King *Prothemus*, so that in the sight of an em- bassador he awaked him out of a sleep, and willed him to give eare unto the embassage that was delivered ministred unto his ill-willers and the flatterers about the court great vantage, who thereupon tooke occasion to seeme discontented in the Kings behalte, and thus to say: What if after I many travels that your Majesty doth undergo, and your long watching for our sakes, some sleep do overtake you otherwhiles; our part it were to tell you of it privately, and not thus rudely to lay hand as it were upon your person in the presence of so many men. Whereupon *Prothemus* being moved at these forgettings, sent unto the man a cup of poison, with commandement that he should drinke it off. *Aristophanes* also calleth this in *Cleon* his teetly,

*For that when strangers were in place  
The town with termes he did disgrace.*

And thereby provoke the Athenians and bring their high displeasure upon him. And therefore this regard would be had especially above all others, that when we would use our liberty of speech, we do it not by way of ostentation in a vaine glory to be popular, and to get applause, but only with an intention to profit and do good, yea, and to cure some infirmity thereby. Over and besides that, which *Thucydides* reporteth of the *Corinthians*, how they gave out of themselves, and not untruly, that it belonged unto them, and meet men they were to reprove others: the same ought they to have in them that will take upon them to be correctors of other persons. For like as *Lysander* answered to a certaine Megarian who put himselfe forward in an assembly of associates and allies to speake frankly for the liberty of *Greece*: These words of yours (my friend) would seeme to have been spoken by some puissant State or City; even so it may be said to every one that will seeme freely to reprehend another, that he had need himselfe to be in manners well reformed. And this most truly ought to be inferred upon all those that will seeme to chastise and correct others, namely, to be wiser and of better government than the rest: for this *Plato* protesteth that he reformed *Stenippus* by example of his own life: and *Xenocrates* likewise casting but his eye upon *Polemion*, who was come into his schoole like a Russian, by his very looke only reclaimed him from his loose life: whereas on the contrary side, if a light and lewd person, one that is full of bad conditions himselfe, would seeme to find fault with others and be busy with his tongue, he must be sure alwaies to heare this on both sides of his eares,

*Himselfe full of foies impure  
Will others seeme to chide and cure.*

Howbeit, so far as oftentimes the case standeth so, that by occasion of some affaires we be driven to chastise those with whom we converse, when we our selves are culpable and no better than they: the most cleanly and least offensive way to do it, is this, To acknowledge in some sort that we be likewise faulty and to include and comprehend our own persons together with them: after which manner is that reprove in *Homer*,

*Sir Diomedes what aileth me?  
How is it come about?  
That we should thus forget to fight,  
Who earst were thought so stout?*

Also in another place:  
*And now we all unworthy are  
With Hector only to compare.*

Thus *Socrates* mildly and gently would seeme to reprove young men, making semblance as if himselfe were not void of ignorance, but had need also to be instructed in vertue, and professing that he had need with them to search for the knowledge of truth; for such commonly do win love and credit, yea, and sooner shall be beleev'd, who are thought subject to the same faults, and seeme willing to correct their friends like as they do their own selves; whereas he who spreadeth and displaith his own wings in clipping other mens, justifying himselfe as if he were pure, sincere, faultlesse, and without all affections and infirmities, unless he be much elder than we, or in regard of some notable and approved vertue in far higher place of authority, and in greater reputation than our selves, he shall gaine no profit nor do any good, but be reputed a buse body and troublesome person. And therefore it was not without just cause that good *Phaon* in speaking to *Achilles* alleged his own misfortunes, and namely, how in a fit of choler he had like one day to have killed his own father, but that suddenly he bethought himselfe and changed his mind,

*Left that among the Greeks I should be nam'd  
A parricide and ever after brand.*

Which he did no doubt to this end, because he would not seeme in chiding him to arrogate this praise unto himselfe, that he was not subject to anger nor had ever done amiss by occasion of that infirmity and passion. Certes such admonitions as these enter and pierce more effectually into the heart, for that they are thought to proceed from a tender compassion; and more willing are we to yeeld unto such as seem to have suffered the like, than to those that despise and contemne us. But forasmuch as neither the eye when it is enflamed can abide any cleare and shining light, nor a passionate mind endure frank speech, or a plaine and bare reprehension, one of the best and most profitable helps in this case, is to intermingle therewith a little praise, as we read thus in *Homer*,

*Now*

*Now (sure) me thinks you do not well,  
Thou for to leave the field,  
Who all are known for doughty knights,  
And best with spear and shield,  
A coward if I saw thee,  
Him would I not reprove:  
But such as you thus for to shrink,  
My heart doth greatly move.  
Likewise,*

*O Pandar, where is now thy bow,  
Where are thine arrows flight?  
Where is that honour in which none  
With thee dare strive in fight?*

And verily such oblique reprehensions also as these are most effectual and wonderful in reclaiming those that be ready to run on end, and fall to some grosse enormities: for example,

*What is become of wife Oedipus,  
In riddles arreading who was so famous.*

*Allo,*

*And Hercules, who hath endur'd such paine,  
Speakes he these words: so foolish and so vaine?*

For this kind of dealing doth not only assuage and mitigate the roughness and commanding power that is in a reprehension and rebuke, but also breedeth in the party in such sort reprov'd a certain emulation of himselfe, causing him to be ashamed and ashamed for any follies and dishonest pranks, when he remembereth and calleth to mind his other good parts and commendable acts, which by this means he setteth before his eyes, as examples, and so taketh himselfe for a pattern and precedent of better things: But when we make comparison between him and others, to wit, his equals in age his fellow-citizens, or kinsfolks: then his vice, which in the own nature is stubborn, and opinionative enough, becommeth by that means more forward and exasperate, and oftentimes he will not stick in a fume and chafe to fling away, and grumble in this wise, *Why go you not then to those that are so much better than I? Why can you not let me alone but thus trouble me as you do?* And therefore we must take heed especially, that whilst we purpose to tell one plainly of his faults, we do not praise others, unless haply they be his parents: as *Agamemnon* did unto *Diomedes*,

*A son (was) for Tydus left behind,  
Unlike himselfe, and much grown out of kind.*

And *Ulysses* in the Tragedy entituled *Seyrit*,

*You for whose father was a knight,  
The best that ever drew  
A sword, of all the Greeks, in field,  
And many a Captaine slew,  
Sit you here carding like a wench,  
And spinning wool on rock,  
Thereby the glorious light to quench  
Of your most noble stock?*

But most unseemly it were and undecent of all other, if when one is admonished by his friend, he should fall to admonish him againe: and being told freely of his fault, serve him the like, and quit him with as much: for this is the next way to kindle coales, and to make variance and discord; and in one word verily, such a rejecting and spurning againe as this may seeme in effect to bewray, not a reciprocal liberty of rendering one for another, but rather a peevish mind that can abeno manner of reproofe. Better therefore it is, to endure patiently for the time a friend that telleth us plainly of our faults; and if himself afterwards chance to offend and have need of the like reprehension, this after a sort giveth free liberty unto him that was rebuked afore, to use the same liberty of speech againe unto the other: For calling to minde by this occasion, without any remembrance of old grudge and former injury, that himself also was wont not to neglect his friends when they did amisse and forgot themselves, but took pains to reprove, redresse, and teach them how to amend, he will the sooner yeeld a fault, and receive that chastisement and correction, which he shal perceive to be a retribution of like love and kindness, and not a requital of complaint & anger. Moreover, like as *Thucydides* saith, That the man is wife and well advised, who incurth the envie of men for matters of greatest weight and importance: even so we say, That if a friend will adventure the danger and heavy load and all will for blaming his friends, he must make choice of such matters as be of great moment and much consequence: for if he will take exceptions at every trifle and little thing indifferent, he will seeme evermore to be finding fault, and carry himself not like a kind and affectionate friend, but a precise, severe and imperious School-master, to speake all faults, and correct every point and tittle, certes he shall finde afterwards, that his admonitions even for the greatest offences, shall not be regarded, nor any whit effectual: for that he hath used already to no purpose, his frank reprehension (the foveraign remedie for grosse and main faults) in many others that are but slight, and of worthy reproof: much like unto a Physician, who hath employed and spent a medicine that is strong and

bitter,

bitter, howbeit necessary and costly, in small infirmities, and of no reckoning to speak of. A friend therefore is to looke unto this: That it be not an ordinary matter with him to be always quarrelsome, and desirous to finde one fault or other. And if peradventure he meet with such a companion as is apt to learne narrowly into all light matters, to cavill and wrangle for every thing, and ready to raise calumnies like a petty Sycophant for toys and trifles, he may take the better advantage and occasion thereby for to reprove him again, in case he chance to fall in greater and more grosse faults.

*Philamir* the Physician answered prettily unto one, who having an impossible growne to supuration about his liver, shewed unto him a finger that was sore, and troubled with some blister as of whitelaw, and desired his counsell for the same: My good friend (quoth he) the disease that you are to looke unto, is not a whitelaw nor about your nail-root; even so, there may be occasion and opportunity offered unto a friend, to lay unto one that ever and anon is finding fault, and finding small errors not worth the noting, to wit, sports and pastimes, feasting and merry meeting, or such like trifling tricks of youth: Good sir, let us find the meanes rather, that this man whom you thus blame may cast off the harlot that he keeps, or give over his dice playing; for otherwise, he is a winked at, yea, and pardoned in small matters, will not be unwilling, that a friend should use his liberty in reprovng his greater vices: whereas he that is evermore urgent upon one, pressing and lying hard unto him all wayes bitter and unpleasant, prying and looking in every corner, and taking knowledge in all things: such an one (I say) there is neither child nor brother will endure; nay, he is intolerable to his very servants: But like as *Euripides* saith,

*All is not naught that old age brings,  
We may in it finde some good thing.*

No more is the folly of friends to bad but that we may pick some goodnesse out of them: we ought therefore to observe diligently, not onely when they do amisse, but also when they do well; and verily at the first to be willing and most ready to praise: but afterwards we must do as the *Sooths* who temper yron: For when they have given it a fire, and made it by that means soft, pliable, and they then h and dip it in cold water, whereby it becometh compact and hard, taking thereby the (as it were) by hearing themselves praised by us, then we may come upon them by little and little time to speak unto a friend thus: How say you, are these pranks worthy to be compared, with those the duties and offices which are becoming your person: for these hath nature made and framed you, As for those lewd verses, lie upon them,

*Send such away, confine them fure,  
unto the mountain wild,  
Or into roaring sea, from land  
let them be quite exil'd.*

For like as an honest minded and discreet Physician, will chooe rather to cure the malady of his Patient by rest and sleep, or by good nutriment and diet, than by *Castrocum* or *Scammonium*: even so, a kinde and courteous friend, a good father and gentle schoolmaster, taketh pleasure and joyeth more to reprove than to reprove, in the reformation of manners. For there is nothing that maketh the man, who boldly findeth fault with his friends to be so little offensive unto them, or to do more good and cure them better, than to be void of anger, and to seeme after a mild sort in all love and affectionate good will to addresse himself unto them, when they do amisse. And therefore neither ought he to urge them overmuch, and seeme too eagerly to convince them if they deny the thing, ney to debarre them of liberty to make their answer and cleere themselves: but rather to help them out, and after a sort to minister unto them some honest and colourable pretences, to excuse and justify their faults: and when a man seeth them do amisse by reason of some worse cause indeed, to lay the fault upon another occasion that is more tolerable: As *Hector* when he said unto *Paris*,

*Uhh, ppy man, alas, you do not well  
To be so in brief a heart so fell.*

As if his brothers retire out of battell and refusal to combat with *Meneleus*, had not been a meer flight and running away, but very anger and a curst stomack. Likewise *Nestor* unto *Agamemnon*,

*Be, you gave place unto your haggish mind:  
And feed these fits which come to you by kind.*

For in mine advice a more mild reprehension is this than to have said: This was injuriously done of you, or this was a shameful and villanous part of yours: As also to lay unto one, You could not tell what you did; you thought not of it: or you were altogether ignorant what would come thereof; is better and more civil, than bluntly to charge him and say: This was a meer wrong, and a wicked act of yours. Also thus do not conceit and quarrell in this wise with your brother, is lesse offensive then to say: Deal not thus enviously and spitefully against your brother: Likewise it were a more gentle manner of reproof to lay unto a man: Avoid this woman that spoileth and abuseth you; than thus: Give over this woman, spoil and abuse her no more. Thus you see what means

meanes are to be used in this liberty of speech, when a friend would cure a malady. But for to prevent the same, there would be practised a clean contrary course: for when it behoved to avert and turn our friends from committing a fault, whereto they are prone and inclined; or to withstand some violent and disorderly passion, which carrieth them a clean contrary way; or when we are desirous to incite and stir them forward unto good things, being of themselves slow and backward: when, I say, we would give an edge unto them, who are otherwise dull, and heat them being cold, we ought to transfere the thing or act in hand to some absurd causes, and those that be unseemly and undecent. Thus *Achilles* is prickd on *Achilles* in a certain Tragedie of *Sophocles*, when he said thus unto him: It is not for a supper *Achilles* that you are so angry, but

*For that you have already seen*

*The walls of Troy, your few fall seen.*

And when upon these words *Achilles* took great indignation, and chafed more and more, saying that he would not fall forward but be gone back again, he came upon him a second time with this rejoinder:

*I wrote well why you gladly would depart:*

*'Tis not because as checks or taunts you chafe,*

*But Hector is not far, he kills your harts*

*For dread of him to stay it is not safe.*

By this meanes when we fear a valiant and hardly man with the opinion of cowardise; an honest, chaste and civill person, with the note of being reputed loose and incontinent; also a liberrall and sumptuous *Magnifico*, with the fear to be accounted a niggard or a mechanically micherive do mightily incite them to well doing, and chafe them from bad wayes. And like as when a thing is done and past, and where there is no remedie, there should be born a modelt and temperate hand, in such sort that in our liberty of speech we seem to shew more commiseration, pity and fellow-grief of minde for the fault of a friend, than eager reprehension; so contrariwise where it stands upon this point that he should not fault, where (I say) our drift is to fight against the motion of his passions, there we ought to be vehement, inexorable, and never to give over nor yeeld one jot unto them. And this is the very time when we are to shew that love of ours and good will which is constant and settled, and sure, and to use our true liberty of speech to the full. For to reprove faults already committed, we see it is an ordinary thing among arrant enemies. To which purpose said *Dionysius* very well: That a man who would be an honest man ought to have either very good friends, or most shrewd and bitter enemies: for as they do teach and instruct; so these are ready to finde fault and reprove. Now far better it is for one to abstain from evil doing, in beleiving and following the found counsell of his friends, than to repent afterwards of ill doing, when he seeth himself blamed and accused by his enemies. And therefore if it were for nothing else but this, great discretion and circumspection would be used in making remonstrations and speaking freely unto friends: and so much the rather, by how much it is the greater and stronger remedie that friendship can use, and hath more need to be used in time and place convenient, and more wisely to be tempered with a mean and mediocrity. Now forasmuch as I have said sundry times already, that all reprehensions whatsoever are dolorous unto him that receiveth them; we ought in this case to imitate good Physicians and Chirurgians: for when they have made incision or cut any member, they leave not the place in pain and torment still, but use certain fomentations and lenitive infusions to mitigate the anguish: No more do they that after a civil manner have chid or rebuked, run away presently so soon as they have bitten and prickd the party, but by changing their manner of speech, entertain their friends thus galled and wounded, with other more mild and pleasant discourses: to assuage their grief and reiteth their hart again that is cast down and discomforted: and I may well compare them to these cutters and carvers of images, who after they have rough heve and scabbled over certain peeces of stone for to make their statues of do polish and smoothe them fair yea and give them a lightome lustre. But if a man besting and nipped once, or touched to the quick by some oburgatory reprehension, and so left rough, uneven, disquieted, swelling and puffing for anger, he is ever after hardly quieted or reclaimed, and no consolation will serve the turn to appease and comfort him again. And therefore they who reprove and admonish their friends, ought to observe this rule above all others: Not to forsake them immediately when they have so done, nor to break off their conference ordinarily, or to conclude their speech with any word that might grieve and provoke them.

## Of Meekness, or how a Man should refrain Choler.

### A Treatise in manner of a Dialogue.

The persons that be the Speakers: SYLLA and FUNDANUS.

#### The Summarie of the Dialogue.

After we are taught how to discern a flatterer from a friend, it seemeth that this Treatise, as touching mildnesse and how we ought to bridle anger, was set here in this proper place. For like as we may soon erre grossly in those whom we are willing and well content to have about us, and in that respect are to be circumspect, and to stand upon our guard: so we have no lesse cause to consider how we should converse among our neighbours. Now of all those vices and imperfections which defame mans life, and cause there a confuseth thereof to be difficult and wondrous painfull to passe, anger is one of those which are to be ranged in the first rank; in such sort, that it becometh not to be provided of good friends, if this furious humor get the mastery over us: like as contrariwise flatterers and such other pestilent plagues have not so easie entrance in us, nor such ready means to be possessed of us, so long as we be accompanied with a certain wise and prudent mildnesse. In this discourse then, our Author doing the part of an expert Physician, laboureth to purge our mindes from all choler, and would train them to modesty and humanity, so far forth as Philosophie morall is able to perform. And for to attain unto so great a benefit, he sheweth in the first place, that we ought to procure our friends for to observe and mark our imperfections, that by long continuance of time we may accustom our selves to holde in your judgement by the bit of reason. After certain proper similitudes serving for this purpose, and a description of the inconveniences, and harmes that come by wrath, he proveth, that it is an easie matter to restrain and repress the same: to which purpose he setteth down divers means, upon which he discourseth after his usuall manner, that is to say, with reasons and inductions enriched with notable similitudes and examples, afterwards, having spoken of the time and manner of chastising and correcting those who are under our power and governance, he proposeth severall remedies to cure choler, as preservatives to keep us from relapse into it again: Which done he representeth irreverently, as in a painted able, to the end that those who suffer themselves to be surprised therewith, may be abashed and ashamed for their unhappinesse: and therewith he giveth five notable advertisements for to attain thereto, which be as it were preservatives: by means whereof we would not feel our selves attaint any more with this malady.

## Of Meekness, or how a man should refrain Choler.

### A Treatise in Manner of a Dialogue.

SYLLA.

After we are taught how to discern a flatterer from a friend, it seemeth that this Treatise, as touching mildnesse and how we ought to bridle anger, was set here in this proper place. For like as we may soon erre grossly in those whom we are willing and well content to have about us, and in that respect are to be circumspect, and to stand upon our guard: so we have no lesse cause to consider how we should converse among our neighbours. Now of all those vices and imperfections which defame mans life, and cause there a confuseth thereof to be difficult and wondrous painfull to passe, anger is one of those which are to be ranged in the first rank; in such sort, that it becometh not to be provided of good friends, if this furious humor get the mastery over us: like as contrariwise flatterers and such other pestilent plagues have not so easie entrance in us, nor such ready means to be possessed of us, so long as we be accompanied with a certain wise and prudent mildnesse. In this discourse then, our Author doing the part of an expert Physician, laboureth to purge our mindes from all choler, and would train them to modesty and humanity, so far forth as Philosophie morall is able to perform. And for to attain unto so great a benefit, he sheweth in the first place, that we ought to procure our friends for to observe and mark our imperfections, that by long continuance of time we may accustom our selves to holde in your judgement by the bit of reason. After certain proper similitudes serving for this purpose, and a description of the inconveniences, and harmes that come by wrath, he proveth, that it is an easie matter to restrain and repress the same: to which purpose he setteth down divers means, upon which he discourseth after his usuall manner, that is to say, with reasons and inductions enriched with notable similitudes and examples, afterwards, having spoken of the time and manner of chastising and correcting those who are under our power and governance, he proposeth severall remedies to cure choler, as preservatives to keep us from relapse into it again: Which done he representeth irreverently, as in a painted able, to the end that those who suffer themselves to be surprised therewith, may be abashed and ashamed for their unhappinesse: and therewith he giveth five notable advertisements for to attain thereto, which be as it were preservatives: by means whereof we would not feel our selves attaint any more with this malady.

fo gentle and tractable, it cometh into my minde to say thereunto, that which I read in *Homer*,

*O what a wondrous change is here?*

*Much milder are you than you were.*

And verily this gentleness and meekness of yours is not turned into a certain sloth, and generall dissolution of our vigour but like as a peece of ground well tilled, lieth light and even, and besides more hollow than before, which maketh much for the fertility thereof; even so, your nature hath gotten in stead of that violent disposition and sudden propension unto choler, a certain equality and profundity, serving greatly to the management of affairs, whereby also it appeareth plainly that is is not long of the decaying strength of the body, by reason of declining age; neither yet of the own accord, that your haughty and cholerick passion is thus faded, but rather by means of good reasons and instructions well cured. And yet verily (for unto you I will be bold to say the truth) at the first I suspected and could not well believe *Eros* our familiar friend, when he made this report of you unto me; as doubting that he was ready to give this testimony of you in regard of affection and good will, bearing me in hand of those things which were not indeed in you, but ought to be in good and honest men: and yet (as you know well enough) he is not such a man, as for favour of any person, and for to please can easily be periwaded and brought to say otherwise than he thinketh. But now as he is freed and acquit from the crime of false witness to you (since this journey and travel upon the way affordeth you good leisure) will I (I doubt not) at my request, declare and recount unto us the order how you did this cure upon yourself: and namely, what medicines and remedies you used, to make that cholerick nature of yours, to gentle, to tractable, to soft and supple, to obedient (I say) and subject wholly to the rule of reason?

#### FUNDANUS.

But why do ye not your self (O *Sylla*) my dearest and most affectionate friend, take heed, that for the amity and good will which you beart unto me, you be not deceived, and see one thing in me for another? As for *Eros*, who for his own part hath not always his anger steadfastly stayed with the Cable and Anchor of *Homer's Peisa* (that is, obedient and abiding firm in one place) but otherwhiles much moved and out of quiet, for the hatred that he hath of vice and vicious men; may very well be, and like it is that unto him I seem more mild and gentle than before: like as we see in changing and altering the notes of Prick-song, or Gam-bit in Musick, certain Notes or Notes which are Trebles in one 8. being compared with other Notes more high and small become Hypata, i. e. the Basses.

#### SYLLA.

It is neither so nor fo (O *Fundanus*) but of all loves, do as I desire you for my sake.

#### FUNDANUS.

Since it is so (*Sylla*) among many good aduertements of *Musonius* which come to my minde, this is one: That whosoever would live laie and in health, ought all their life time to look to themselves, and be as it were in continual Phytick. For I am not of this minde, neither do I think it convenient that like as *Elleborus*, after it hath done the deed within a sick mans bodie and wrought a cure, is cast up again together with the maladies: so reason also should be sent out after the passion which it hath cured, but it ought to remain still in the mind for to keep and preserve the judgement. For why? reason is not to be compared with medicines and purgative drugs, but rather to wholesome and nourishing meats, engendering mildly in the mindes of them unto whom it is made familiar, a good complexion and a fast habit together with some perfect health: whereas admonitions and corrections applied or ministred unto passions when they swell and rage, and be in the height of their heat and inflammation hardly and with much ado work any effect at all, and if they do, it is with much pain. Neither differ they in operation from those strong odors which well may raise out of a fit those who are fallen and be subject to the *Epilepsy* or falling sickness: but they cure not the disease, nor cure the patient for falling again: True it is that all other passions of the minde, if taken in hand at the very point and instant when they are in highest fury, do yield in some sort, and they admit reason coming from without into the minde for to help and succour, but anger not only as *Melancthus* saith,

*Commits lowd parts, and reason doth displease*

*Out of her seat, a proper rising place.*

but also turneth her clean out of house and home, thrusteth and locketh her out of doors for altogether may it fireth for all the world like to those who set the house on fire over their own heads, and burn themselves and it together: it fireth all within full of trouble, smoke & confused noises, in such sort that it hath neither eye to see, nor ear to listen unto those that would, and might assist and give aid: and therefore sooner will a Ship abandoned of her Master in the mid of the sea, and there hulling dangerously in a storm and tempest receive a Pilot from other Ship without; than a man tossed with the waves of fury and anger, admit the reason and remonstrance of a stranger: unless his own reason at home were before-hand well prepared: But like as they who look for no other but have their City besegged, gather together and lay up for their own store and provision, and all things that might serve their turn, not knowing nor respecting any aid or relief abroad during the siege: even so ought we to have our remedies ready and provided long before, and the same gathered out of all parts of Philosophie and conceived into the mind for to withstand the rage of choler: as being assured

assured of this, that when need and necessity requireth to use them, we shall not easily admit the same, and suffer them to have entrance into us. For surely at such a time of extremity the soul heareth not a word that is said unto it without: for the trouble and confusion within, unlesse her own reason be assistant, ready both to receive and understand quickly every commandment and precept, and also prompt the same accordingly unto her. And say that the doth hear: look what is said unto her after a milde, calm, and gentle manner, that she despiseth; again, if any be more instant, and do ungeher somewhat roughly, with those she is displeased, and the worse for their admonitions: for wrath being of the own nature proud, audacious, unruly, and hardly suffering it felt to be handled or stirred by another: much like unto a tyrant attended with a strong guard about his person, ought to have something of the own which is dometical, familiar, and (as it were) in-bred together with it, for to overthrow and dissolve the same. Now the continual custom of anger and the ordinary or often falling into a chafe, breedeth in the minde an ill habit called wrathfulness, which in the end groweth to this passe, that it maketh a man cholerick and haughty, apt to be moved at everything; and besides, it engendrech a bitter humor of revenge, and a tedious implacable, or hardly to be appeased: namely when the mind is exacerate once taking offence at every small occasion, quarrelling and complaining for toys and trifles, much like unto a thin or a fine edge that entrench with the least force that the graver putteth it to. But the judgement of reason opposing it self straightwayes against such motions and fits of choler, and ready to suppress and keep them down, is not only a remedy for the present mischief, but also for the time to come doth strengthen and fortifie the mind, causing it to be more firm and strong to resist such passions when they arise. And now to give some instance of myself: The same hapned unto me after I had twice or thrice made head against choler, as befall sometimes to the Thebanes: who having once repelled and put to flight the Lacedaemonians (warriors thought in those dayes invincible) were never in any one battel afterward defeated by them. For from that time forward I took heart and courage, as seeing in ill well, that conquered it might be with the discourse of reason. I perceived moreover, that anger would not only be quenched with cold water poured and cast upon it, as *Asiathale* hath reported unto us, but also that it would goe out and be extinguished, were it never so light a fire before, by presenting neer unto it some object of fear: nay (I assure you) by a sudden joy coming upon it unlooked for in many a man, according as *Homer* saith, choler hath melted, dissolved and evaporated away. And therefore this resolution I made, that anger was a passion not incurable, if men were willing to be cured: for in the occasions and beginnings thereof are not always great and for able but we see that a little off some sport, some laughter, a wink of the eye, or nod of the head, and such small matters, hath let many in a peiting chafe: even as *Lady Helena* laying no more but thus unto her neece or brothers daughter at the first meeting,

*Elestra Virgin, long time since I you saw, &c.*

drewe her in such a fit of choler, that therewith she was provoked to break off her speech with this answer,

*Wise now at last, though all too late,  
you are I may well say,  
Who whilom left your husbands house,  
and ran with shame away.*

Likewise *Colliphenes* mightily offended *Alexander* with one word, who when a great boule of wine went round about the table, refused it as it came to his turn, saying: I wil not (I trow) drink (so to your health *Alexander*, that I shal have need thereby of *Asclepius* (i. e. a Physician). A fire that newly hath caught a flame with hares, or conies hair, drie leaves, hurds and light straw, stubble and rakings, it is an easie matter to put out & quench; but if it have once taken to found jewell & such matter as hath solidity, substance and thickness in it, soon it burneth and consumeth as *Aeschylus* saith:

*By climbing up and mounting hie  
The steele works of Carpentrie.*

Seemably, he that will take heed unto choler at the beginning, when he seeth it once to smoke or flame out by occasion of some merry speech, flouting scoffes, and foolish words of no moment, needs not to strive much about the quenching of it: for many times if he do no more but hold his peace or make himself account or none at all of such matters: it is enough to extinguish and make it go out. For he that ministrereth not fuel to fire, putteth it out: and whosoever feedeth not his anger, at the first, and bloweth not the coals himself, doth cool and repress the same. And therefore *Hieronymus* the Philosopher, although otherwise he have taught us many good lessons and instructions; yet in this point he hath not pleased and satisfied me, when he saith: That a man is not able to perceive in himself the breeding of anger, (so quick and sudden it is) but only when it is bred, then it may be felt: for surely, there is no vice or passion in us, that giveth such warning, or hath either so evident a generation or so manifest an augment whilst it is stirred and moved, as anger, according as *Homer* himself right skilfully, and as a man of good experience, giveth us to understand, who bringeth in *Achilles* sore moved to sorrow and grief of heart, even with a word, and at the very instant, when he heard the speeches of *Agamemnon*: for thus reporteth the Poet of him:

*Out of his king his sovereigns mouth,  
the word was so exprest,  
But straight a black and misty cloud  
of fire him overcast.*



But of *Agamemnon* himselfe he saith, that it was long ere he was angry: namely, after he had been kindled with many hard speeches, that were deale to and fro, which if any third person stepping between, would have staid or turned away, ceres their quarrell and debate had not grown to such termes of extremity as it did. And therefore *Socrates* so often as he felt himselfe somewhat declining and more moved than he should, against any one of his friends, and avoiding as it were a rock in the sea, before the tempest came and the blowes arole, would let fall his voice, shew a smiling countenance, and compose his look and visage to mirth and lenity, and thus by bending and drawing another way to that whereunto his affection inclined, and opposing himselfe to a contrary passion, he kept upright on his feet, so that he was not nor was overthrown. For there is (my good friend) a tyrannical rule and dominion, that is to say not to obey at the first, not to give eare and be ruled by her commandement, when she shall bid thee to speake and cry out aloud, or to look with a terrible countenance on to knock or beat thy selfe; but to be still and quiet, and not to re-encore and encrease the passion, as men do exasperate a sickness with struggling, striving, tossing, and roaring out aloud. For those things which ordinary lovers and amorous young men practice, that is to say to go in a wanton and merry maske, to sing and dance at the doores of their sweet-hearts and mistresses, to bedeck their windows with coronets and flower-garlands, bring some ease and alleviation (such as it is) of their passions, and the same not altogether their undecent and uncivill, according to that which we read in the Poet:

*And when I came, aloud I cried not,  
And a kild who the was, or daughter whose?  
But kist my love full sweetly, as at I not:  
If this be sin? but sin I cannot choose.*

Also that which we permit those to do who are in sorrow, namely, to mourne, to lament and weep for losses or mishaps: certainly with their sighs which they utter, and teares that they shed, they do send out and discharge a good part of their griefe and anguish. But it is not to with the passion of anger: for surely, the more that they stir and speake who are surprised therewith, the more hot it is, and the flame burneth out the rather; and therefore the best way is, for a man to be quiet, to stie and keep him out of the way, or else to retire himselfe into some haven of surety and repole, when he perceiveth that there is aint of anger toward, as if he felt an access of the falling evil comming. This (I say) we ought to do, forsaere left we fall down, or rather run and rush upon some one or other. But who be they that we run upon? Surely our very friends, for the greatest part, and those we wrong most. As for our affection of love, it standeth not to all things indifferently: neither do we hate, nor yet feare we every thing alike; But what is it that ireteth not upon? Nothing is there but it doth assaile and lay hands on: we are angry with our enemies: we chafe with our friends; with children, with parents are we wroth: nay, the very gods themselves we forbore not in our cholerick mood: we flie upon dumbe and brute beasts; we spare not so much as our unteuill vessels and implements which have neither sense nor life at all, if they stand in our way, we fare like *Thamyris* the Musician,

*Who brake his cornet, finely bound  
And tript with gold: his lute he bent,  
Well strung and tuned to pleasant sound,  
And it answer toasters went.*

Thus did *Pandarus* also, who cursed, and betooke himselfe to all the fiends in hell, if he did not burst his bow and arrows with his own hands, and throw them into the fire when he had so done. As for *Xerxes*, he stuck not to whip, to lash and scourge the sea, and to the mountaine *Athos* he sent his minatory letters in this forme: *Thou wretched and unwicked Athos, that bea'st up thy head aloft into the skie's see thou bring forth no great craggy stones, I advise thee for my works, and such as be hard to be cut and wrought: otherwise, if thou do, I shall cut thee through and tumble thee into the maine sea.* Many fearful and terrible things there be that are done in anger, and as many for them againe, as foolish and ridiculous, and therefore of all passions that trouble the mind, it is both hated and despised most. In which regards expedient it were, to consider diligently as well of the one as of the other: for mine own part, whether I did well or ill, I know not: but surely, when I began my cure of choler in my selfe, I did as in old time the Lacedaemonians were wont to do by their flotes, men of bafe and servile condition: For as they taught their children what a foule vice drunkenness was, by their example when they were drunke, so I learned by observing others what anger was, and what beastly effects it wrought. First and foremost therefore, like as that malady, according to *Hippocrates*, is of all others worst and most dangerous, wherein the visage of the sick person is most disfigured and made unlikeliest selfe: so, I feeling those that were possessed of choler, and (as it were) beside themselves thereby, how their faces were changed, their colour, their countenance, their gate and their voice quite altered. I imagined thereupon unto my selfe a certaine forme and image of this malady, as being mightily displeased in my mind, if happily at any time I should be seen of my friends, my wife, and the little girls my daughters, so terrible, and so far moved and transported beside my selfe: not only fearful and hideous to behold, and far otherwise than I was wont, but also unpleasant to be heard; my voice being rough, rude, and churlish: like as it was my hap to see some of my familiar friends in that case, who by reason of anger could not reiteine and keep their ordinary fashions

and behaviour, their forme of visage, nor their grace in speech, ne yet that affability and pleasantness in company and talke as they were wont.

This was the reason that *Caius Gracchus* the Orator, a man by nature blunt, rude in behaviour, and withall over-earnest and violent in his manner of pleading, had a little flute or pipe made for the nonce, such as Musicians are wont to guide and rule the voice gently by little and little up and down, between bafe and treble, according to every note as they would themselves, teaching their scholars thereby to have a tunable voice. Now when *Gracchus* pleaded at the bar at any time, he had one of his servants standing with such a pipe behind him: who observing when his Matter was a little out of tune, would sound a more mild and pleasant note unto him, whereby he reclaimed and called him back from that loud exclaiming, and so taking down that rough and irvvelling accent of his voice,

*Like as the Neat-herds pipes so thrill  
Made of the marri sh reeds so light;  
The joints whereof with waxe they fill,  
Resound a tune for their delight:  
Which while the herd in field they keep,  
Brings them at length to pleasant sleep.*

dulced and allayed the cholerick passion of the Orator. Certes my selfe, if I had a pretty page to attend upon me, who were diligent, necessary and handsome about me, would not be offended, but very vvell content, that when he saw me angry he should by and by present a mirror or looking glass unto me, such a one as they use to bring and shew unto some that newly are come out of the baine, although no good or profit at all they have thereby. But certainly for man to see himselfe at such a time, how disquieted he is, how far out of the vway, and beside the course of nature, it were no small meanes to check this passion, and to set him in hatred therewith for ever after. They who are delighted in tales & fables, do report by way of merry speech and pastime, that once when *Minerva* was a piping there came a Satyr and admonished her, that it was not for her to play upon a flute: but for the time took no heed to that advertisement of his, notwithstanding he spake thus unto her:

*This forme of face becomes you not,  
Lay up your pipes, take armes in hand:  
But first this would not be forgot,  
Your cheeks to lay, that puff now stand.*

But afterwards when he had seen her face in a certaine river, what a paire of cheekes he had gotten with her piping, she was displeased with her selfe, and flung away her pipes: And yet this art and skill of playing well upon the pipe yieldeth some comfort, and maketh amends for the deformity of a disguised visage, with the melodious tune and harmony that it affordeth: yea, and afterwards, *Marsyas* the Mintrell (as it is thought) devised first with a certaine hood and muzzle fastned round about the mouth, as well to refrain and keep down the violence of the blast enclosed thus by force, as also to correct and hide the deformity and undecent inequality of the visage:

*With glittering gold both cheeks as far  
As temples he did bind:  
The tender mouth with thongs likewise,  
Fast knit the neck behind.*

But anger contrariwise, as it doth puffe up and stretch out the visage after an unseemly manner, so much more it tendeth out undecent and unpleasant voice,

*And first the strings at secret root of heart,  
Which touched should not be, but he apart.*

The feaverily, when being troubled and disquieted with blustering winds, it casteth up mosse, teies, and such like weeds; (they say) it is leant and purged thereby: but the discoloure, bitter, scurrile, and foolish speeches which anger sendeth out of the mind when it is turned upside down, first pollute and defile the speakers themselves, and fill them full of infamy, for that they be thought to have their hearts full of such ordure and filthiness at all times: but the same lurketh there, untill that choler dit overeth it: And therefore, they pay most deerely for their speech, the lightest matter of all others (as *Plautus* saith) in that they suffer this heavy and grievous punishment, to be held and reputed for malicious enemies, curled speakers, and ill-conditioned persons. Which I feeling and observing well enough, it falleth out that I reason with my selfe, and alwaies call to mind what a good thing it is in a feaver, but much better in a fit of choler, to have a tongue faire, even, and smooth: For in them that be sick of an ague, if the tongue be not such as naturally it ought to be, an ill signe it is: but not a cause of any harme or indisposition within. Howbeit if their tongues, who are angry, be once rough, foule, and running discolourely at randome to absurd speeches, it casteth forth outrageous and contumelious language, the very mother and work-mistress of irreconcilable enmity, and bewrayeth an hidden and secret maliciousness. As for wine, if a man drinke it, of it selfe undelayed with water, it putteth forth no such wantonness, no disordinate and lewd speeches, like to those that proceed of ire. For drunken talke serveth to make mirth, and to procure laughter rather than anything else: but words of choler are tempered with bitter gall and ran, or. Moreover, he that



streeth silent at the table when others drink merrily is odious unto the company, and a trouble: whereas in choler there is nothing more decent and becoming gravity, than to be quiet and say nothing: according as *Sappho* doth admonish,

*When furious choler once is up,  
Disperst and spread in brist,  
To keep the tongue then apt to bark,  
And let it be a rest.*

The consideration of these things collected thus together, serveth not only to take heed alwaies unto them that are subject to ire and therewith possessed, but also besides to know thoroughly the nature of anger: how it is neither generous or manly, nor yet hath any thing in it that favourerth of wisdom and magnanimity. Howbeit the common people interpret the turbulent nature thereof to be active and meet for action; the threats and menaces thereof, hardiness and confidence, the peevish and froward unruleinesse to be fortitude and strength. Nay, some there be who would have the cruelty in it to be a disposition and dexterity to achieve great matters; the implacable malice thereof to be constancy and firme resolution: the morosity and difficulty to be pleased, to be the hatred of sin and vice; howbeit herein they do not well, but are much deceived, for surely the very actions, motions, gestures, and countenance of cholerick persons do argue and bewray much baseness and imbecility: which we may perceive not only in these brain-sick fits that they fall upon little children, and then pluck, twitch, and misuse; flie upon poore silly women, and thinke that they ought to punish and beat their horses, hounds, and mules, like unto *Ctesiphon* that famous wrestler and professed champion, who stuck not to spurne and kick his mule; but also in their tyrannical and bloody murders, wherein their cruelty and bitterness which declareth their pusillanimity and base mind; their actions which shew their passions and their doings to others, bewraying a suffering in themselves, may be compared to the stings and bitings of those venomous serpents which be very angry, exceeding dolorous, and burne out themselves when they do inflict the greatest inflammation upon the patients, and put them to most paine: For like as swelling is a symptome or accident following upon a great wound or hurt in the flesh: even so it is in the tenderest and softest minds, the more they give place and yeeld unto dolour and passion, the more plenty of choler and anger they utter forth as proceeding from the greater weaknesse. By this you may see the reason why women ordinarily be more wrathful, crust and throw than men: sick folk more teelly than those that are in health: old people more wayward and froward than those that be in the flower and vigour of their yeares; and finally, such as be in adversity, and upon whom fortune frowneth, more ready to anger than those who prosper and have the world smiling upon them. The covetous miser and punching penny-father is alwaies most angry with his steward that layeth forth his money; the glutton is ever more displeased with his cook and caterer; the jealous husband quickly felleth out and brawleth with his wife; the vain-glorious foole is soonest offended with them that speake any thing amisse of him; but the most bitter and intolerable of all others are ambitious persons in a city, who lay for high places and dignities, such also as are the heads of a faction in a sedition: which is a trouble and mischief (as *Pindarus* saith) conspicuous and honourable. Lo, how from that part of the mind which is wounded, grieved, suffereth most and especially upon infirmity and weaknesse, ariseth anger, which passion resembeth not (as one would have it) the finew of the foule, but is like rather to their stretching spines and spasmatick convulsions, when it streineth and striveth overmuch in following revenge.

Well, the examples of evill things yeeld no pleasant sight at all, only they be necessary and profitable, and for mine owne part supposing the precedents given by those who have carried themselves gently and mildly in their occasions of anger, are most delectable, not only to behold, but also heare: I begin to contemne and despise those that say thus:

*To man thou hast done wrong: be sure  
At mine hand wrong for to endure.*

Likewile,

*Down to the ground with him, spare not his ears;  
Spurne him, and set thy foot upon his throat.*

And other such words which serve to provoke wrath, and whet choler; by which some go about to remove anger out of the nursery, and womens chamber into the hall where men do fit and keepe; but herein they do not well: For provewell and fortitude according in all other things with justice, and going follow-like with her, me thinks is at strife and debate with her about meeknesse and mildnesse, only as if the rather became her, and by right appertained unto her: For otherwhiles it hath been known, that the worst men have gone beyond and surmounted the better. But for a man to erect a Trophæe, and set up a triumphall monument in his own soule against ire (with which as *Heracles* saith, the confidencie is hard and dangerous: for what a man would have he buyeth with his life) it is an act of rare valour and victorious puiſſance, as having in truth the judgement of reason, for sinews, tendons, and muscles to encounter and resist passions. Which is the cause that I study, and am desirous alwaies to read and gather the sayings and doings, not only of learned clarkes and Philosophers: who as our Sages and wise men say, have no gall in them, but also and much rather of Kings, Princes, Tyrants and Potentates: As for example, such as that was of *Antigonus*, who hearing his souldiers upon a time revile him behind his pavilion, thinking that he heard them not, put

put forth his staffe from under the cloth unto them and said: A whorion knaves, could you not go a little farther off when you meant thus to raile upon us. Likewise when one *Alexander* an *Argive* or *Achaean* never gave over reviling of King *Philip*, and abusing him in most reproachfull termes, yet, and to give him warning

*So far to flie, until hee thither came*

*Where no man knew nor heard of Philips name.*

And afterwards the man was seen (I know not how) in Macedonia: the friends and courtiers of King *Philip* were in hand with him to have him punished, and that in any wife he should not let him go and escape: *Philip* contrariwise, having him on 'en his hands, spake gently unto him, used him courteously, lending unto him in his lodging gails and presents, and so sent him away. And after a certaine time he commanded those courtiers of purpose to enquire what words he gave out of him unto the Greeks: but when every one made report againe, and testified that he was become another man, and ceased not to speake wonderful things in the praise of him: Lo (quoth *Philip*) then unto them: Am not I a better Physician than all you, and can I not skill how to cure a fowle-tongued fellow? Another time at the great solemnity of the Olympian games, when the Greeks abused him with very bad language, his familiar friends about him said they deserved to be sharply chastised and punished for so misallacking and reviling him, who had been to good a benefactor of theirs: what would they do and say then (quoth he) if I should deale hardly by them and do them shrewd wrongs? Semblably, notable and excellent was the carriage of *Pisistratus* to *Therapylus*: of King *Porus* to *Mutius*, and of *Magas* to *Philemon*, who in a publike and frequent Theatre, had mocked and scoffed at him in this manner:

*Magas, there are some letters come  
Unto you from a King,  
But letter Magas none can read,  
Nor write for any thing.*

Now it chanced afterwards that by a tempest at sea he was cast upon the Port-towne *Paratonium*, whereof *Magas* was governour, and so fell into his hands, who did him no other harme, but commanded one of his guard or officers about him, only with his naked sword to touch his bare neck, and to gently to go his waies and do no more to him: many afterwards, he sent unto him little bones for cock-all, and a pretty ball to play withall, as if he had been a child that had no wit nor discretion, and so sent him home againe in peace. King *Prodomus* upon a time getting and scoffing at a simple and unlearned Grammarian, asked him, who was the father of *Peleus*: I will answer you sir (quoth he) if you tell me first who was the father of *Lagus*: This was a dry flout, and touched King *Prodomus* very neere, in regard of the meane parentage from whence he was descended: whereat, all about the King weremightily offended, and thought it was too broad a jest and frumpie intolerable: But *Prodomus*, if it be not seemly for a King to take and put up a come: surely, as little decent it is for his person to give a come.\*

*Alexander* the great was more bitter and cruel (than otherwise his ordinary manner was to others) towards *Callisthenes* and *Clytus*. But King *Porus* being taken prisoner by him in a battell, besought that he would use him royally, or like a King. And when King *Alexander* demanded moreover what he had more to say, and what he would have else? No more (quoth he) for under this word Royally is comprised all. And therefore I suppose it is, that the Greeks call the King of the gods by the name of *Melichius*, that is to say, Mild and sweet as honey. And the Athenians named him *Mumalters*, which is as much as, Ready to help and succour: For to punish and torment pertaineth to devils and the furious fiends of hell: there is no celestiall, divine, and heavenly thing in it. And like as one said of King *Philip*, when he had raled and destroyed the City *Olympus*: Yea marry, but he is not able to let up such another City in the place: Even so, a man may well say unto Anger: Thou cant overthrow, demolish, marre, and pull down: but to reare and erect againe, to save, to pardon, and to endure, be the properties of meeknesse, demency, mildnesse patience, and moderation: they be the parts (say) of *Camillus*, *Metellus*, *Aristides*, and *Socrates*: whereas to stick close unto the flesh, to pinch, prick, and bite, are the qualities of pines, flies, and mice. Moreover and besides, when I look unto Revenge, and the manner thereof, I find for the most part, that if men proceed by way of choler, they misse of their purpose: for commonly all the heat and desire of revenge is spent in biting of lips, gnawing and grating of teeth, vaine running to and fro, in railing words with foolish threats and menaces among, that favour of no wit at all: By which meanes it fareth with them afterwards, as with little children in running of a race, who for feeblesse being not able to hold out, fall down before they come unto the goale, wherunto they made such ridiculous and foolish haste. And therefore in my conceit it was not an improper answer which a certaine *Rhodian* made unto one of the Liclours and Officers of a Roman Generall or Lord Praetor, who with vaine mouth bawled at him, and made a glorious bragging and boasting. I passe not (quoth he) one whit what thou saiest: I care rather for that which he thinketh there, that saith nothing. In like manner. *Sophocles*, when he had brought in *Eurypius* and *Neopolemus* all armed, speaketh bravely in their commendation thus,

*They dealt no threats in vaine, no svaunts  
They made, nor boasting words:  
But to's they went, and on their shields  
They laid on load with swords.*

\* It seemeth  
that here is  
somewhat  
wanting.

And

And verily, some barbarous nations there are who use to poison their swords, and other weapons of iron: but valour hath no need at all of the venom of choler, for dipped it is in reason and judgment: whereas whatsoever is corrupted with ire and fury, is brittle, rotten, and easie to be broken into peeces. Which is the reason that the Lacedæmonians do allay the choler of their souldiers, when they are fighting, with the melodious sounds of flutes and pipes: whose manner is also before they go to battell to sacrifice unto the Muses, to the end that their reason and right wits may remaine in them still, and that they may have use thereof: yea, and when they have put their enemies to flight, they never pursue after nor follow the chace, but reclaime and hold their furious anger within compasse, which they are able to weild and manage as they list; no lesse than these daggers or courtlaces which are of a meane size and reasonable length. Contrariwise, anger hath been the cause that many thousands have come short of the execution of vengeance, and miscarried by the way. As for example, *Cyrus* and *Pelopidas* the Thebane among the rest. But *Agathocles* endured patiently to heare himselfe reproached and reviled by those whom he besieged: and when one of them said: You Potter there? Heare you? Where will you have silver to pay your mercenary souldiers and strangers their wages? He laughed againe, and made answer: Even out of this City when I have once forced it. Some there were also that mocked and scorned *Antigonus* from the very wals, and twitted him with his deformity and ill-favoured face. But he said no more than thus, Why! And I took my selfe before to have been very faire and well favoured. Now when he had won the towne he fold in open port-fale those that had so flouted him, protestting withall unto them, that if from that time forward they mocked him any more, he would tell their masters of them, and call them to account.

Moreover, I do see that hunters, yea, and orators also commit many faults in their choler. And *Aristotle* doth report, that the friends of *Satyrus* the Orator, in one cause that he had to plead for him, stopped his eares with waxe, for feare lest that he, when he heard his adversaries to raile upon him in their pleas, should mar all in his anger. And do not (I pray you) we our selves many times misse of punishing our servants by this means when they have done some faults: for when they heare us to threaten, and give out in our anger that we will do thus and thus unto them, they be so frightened that they run away far enough off from us. Like as Nurses therefore are wont to lay unto their little children, Cry not, and you shall have this: or thus if we shall do very well to speake unto your choler in this wise: make no such faile, soft and faire, keep not such a crying, make no loud noise, be not so eager and urgent upon the point: so shall you see every thing that you would have, sooner done and much better. And thus a father, when he seeth his child going about to cut or cleave any thing with a knife or edge-toole, taketh the toole or knife out of his hand, and doth it himselfe: even so he that doth take revenge one of the hands of choler, punisheth not himselfe, but him that deserueth it: and thus he doth surely, putting his own person in no danger, without damage and losse, nay, with great profit and commodity. Now, whereas all passions whatsoever of the mind had need of use and custome to tame (as it were) and vanquish by exercise that which in them is unruly, rebellious, and disobedient to reason: certes, in no one point besides had we need to be more exercised, (I meane as touching those dealings that we have with our household servants) than in anger: for there is no envy and emulation that ariseth in us toward them, there is no care that we need to have of them, neither any ambition that troubleth or pricketh us against them: but ordinary and continuall fits of anger we have every day with them, which breed much offence and many errors, causing us to tread awry, to slip and do amisse sundry waies, by reason of that licentious liberty unto which we give our selves all the whiles that there is none to controll, none to stay, none to forbid and hinder us: and therefore being in so ticklish a place, and none to sustaine and hold us up, soone we catch a fall, and come down at once. And a hard matter it is (I may say to you) when we are not bound to render an account to any one, in such a passion as this, to keep our selves upright, and not to offend: unless we take order before-hand to refrain and empale (as it were) round about to greata liberty with meeknesse and clemency, unless (I say) we be well inured and acquainted to beare and endure many shrewd and unhappy words of our wives, much unkind language of friends and familiars, vvhich many times do challenge us for being too remisse, over-gentle, yea, and altogether careless and negligent in this behalfe. And this in truth hath been the principall cause that I have been quick and sharpe unto my servants, for feare lest they might prove the worse for not being chastised. But at the last, though late it were, I perceived; First, that better it was by long-sufferance and indulgence to make them somewhat worse, than in seeking to reforme and amend others, to disorder and spoile my selfe with bitterness and choler: Secondly, when I saw many of them oftentimes, even because they were not so punished, feare and shame to do evill, and how pardon and forgiveness was the beginning of their repentance and conversion, rather than rigour and punishment: and that I assure you they would serve some more willingly with a nod or vvinke of the eye, and without a word spoken, than others with all their beating and whipping: I was at last perswaded in my mind and resolved, that reason was more worthy to command and rule as a master than ire and vvrath. For true it is not that the Poet saith:

Where ever is feare,  
Shame also is there:

But cleane contrary: Look vvhich are bashfull and ashamed: in them there is imprinted a certaine feare that holdeth them in good order: whereas continuall beating and laying on without mercy, breedeth

breedeth not repentance in servants for evill doing, but rather a kind of forecast and providence, how they should not be helped nor taken in their evill doing. Thirdly, calling to remembrance, and considering evermore with my selfe, that he who taught us to shoot forbade us not to draw a bow, orto shoot an arrow, but to misse the mark: no more will this be any let or hindrance, but that we may chastise and punish our servants, if we be taught to do it in time and place, with moderation and measure profitably, and decently, as it appertaineth. And verily I do enforce my selfe, and strive to master my choler and subdue it principally, not denying unto them who are to be punished, the liberty and means: to justifie themselves, but in hearing them to speake what they can for their excuse. For as time and space doth in the meane time find the passion occupied another way, and withall bring a certaine delay, which doth slack and let down (as it were) the vehemency and violence thereof: so judgement of reason, all the while meeteth both with a decent manner, and also with a convenient meane and measure of doing punishment accordingly. And besides, this course and manner of proceeding, leaveth him that is punished, no cause, occasion, or pretence at all to re-fist and strive againe, considering that he is chastised and corrected not in choler and anger, but being first convinced, that he had well deserved his correction: and (which were yet worse than all the rest) the servant shall not have vantage to speake more justly and to better reason than his master. Well then, like as *Phocion* after the death of *Alexander* the Great, having a care not to suffer the Athenians to rise over-foene, or make any insurrection before due time, ne yet to give credit rashly unto the news of his death: My Masters of *Athen* (quoth he) if he be dead to day, he will be dead to morrow also, and three daies hence too: even so should a man (in my opinion) who by the impulsion and intigilation of anger maketh haste to take punishment, thus suggest and secretly say to himselfe: If this servant of mine hath made a fault to day, it will be as true to morrow, and the next day after that he hath done a fault: neither will there be any harme or danger at all come of it, if he chanceth to be punished with the latest: but believe me, if he be punished over-foene, it will be alwaies thought that he had wrong, and did not offend: a thing that I have known to happen full often. For which of us all is so swift and cruell, as to punish and scourge a servant for burning the roast five or ten daies ago? Or for that so long before he chanced to overthrow the teaball? Or was (some) that with the slowest in making answer to his Master? Or did his errand or other businessse not so soon as he should? And yet we see these and such like be the ordinary causes for which (whiles they be fresh and new done) we take on, we flame and stare, we chafe, we frowne, we are implacable and will heare of no pardon: And no marvel, for like as any bodies seeme bigger through a mist: even so every thing appeareth greater than it is through anger. And therefore at these and such like faults we should vvinke for the time, and make as though we saw them not, and yet thinke them not neverthelesse, and beare them in mind. But afterwards when the storme is well overblown, we are without passion, and do not suspect our selves, then we may do well to consider thereof: and then if upon mature deliberation, when our mind is staid and our senses settled, the thing appeare to be naughty, we are to hate and abhor it, and in no wile either to for-let and put off, or altogether to omit and forbeare correction, like as they refuse meats who have no stomach nor appetite to eat. For certainly it is not a thing so much to be blamed for to punish one in anger, as not to punish when anger is past and allayed, and so to be careless and discoloure: doing as idle mariners, who so long as the sea is calme, and the weather faire loyter within the harbour or haven but afterwards when a tempest is up, spread sailes and put themselves into danger. For even so we, condemning and neglecting the remission and calmenesse of reason in case of punishment, make haste to execute the same during the heat of choler, which no doubt is a blustering and turbulent wind. As for meat he calleth for it indeed, and taketh it naturally who is hungry: but surely he executeth punishment best, who neither hungereth nor thirsteth after it: neither hath he need to use choler as a sauce or dainty dish for to get him a stomach and appetite to correct: but even when he is farthest off from desire of revenge, then of necessity he is to make use of reason and wisdom to direct him: for we ought not to do as *Aristotle* writeth in his timetie manner was in *Tuslane*: To whip servants with found of flutes and hautboies; namely, to make a sport and pastime of punishing men and to solace our selves with their punishment for pleasures sake, and then afterwards when we have done repent us of it: for as the one is brutish and beast-like: so the other is womanish and unmanly: but without griefe and pleasure both, at what time as reason and judgement is in force, we ought to let justice take punishment, and leave no occasion at all for choler to get advantage. But peradventure some one will say, that this is not properly the way to remedy or cure anger: but rather a putting by our precaution that we should not commit any of those faults which ordinarily follow that passion: Unto whom I answer thus: That the swelling of the Spleene is not the cause, but a symptome or accident of a fever: howbeit if the said humour be fallen, and the pain mitigated the fever will be much eased, according as *Hieronymus* saith. Also, when I consider by what means choler is engendred: I see that one falleth into it upon this cause, another upon that: but in all of them it seemeth this generally opinion there is, that they thinke themselves to be despised and naught set by. And therefore we ought to meet with such as seem to defend and maintaine themselves, as being angry for just cause, and to cure them after this manner; namely, by diverting and removing from them as far as ever we can, all suspicion of contempt and contumacy in those that have offended them and moved their anger: in laying the fault upon inconsiderate folly, necessity, sickness, infirmity and misery, as *Sophocles* did in these verses,



foyre and in one word, by reason of that kinde, meek and gentle quality, it overcometh anger and all waiward retinence whatsoever. Thus it is reported of *Euclides* in a quarrell or variance between him and his brother: For when his brother had contended and said unto him: I would I might die, if I be not revenged of thee: he inferred again: Nay, let me die for it, if I perwade thee not otherwise before I have done; by which one word he presently won his brothers heart, so that he changed his mind and they parted friends. *Polemon* likewise, at a certain time, when one who loved precious stones, and was sick for fair and costly rings and such like curious jewels, did rail at him outrageously: answered not a word again, but looked very wittily upon one of the signets that the other had, and well considered the fashion and workmanship thereof: which when the party perceived, taking as it should seem no small contentment, and being very well pleased that he so perused his jewel: Not so *Polemon* (quoth he again) but look upon it thus, between you and the light, and then you will think it much more beautiful. *Arifippus* fell out upon a time (I know not how) with *Aschines*, and was in a great choler and fit of anger: How now *Arifippus* (quoth one who heard him so high and at such hot words) where is your amity and friendship all this while? *Mary*, asleep (quoth he) but I will waken it anon. With that he stepped close to *Aschines*, and said: Think you me to unhappy every way and incurable, that I deserved not one admonishment at your hands? No marvel (quoth *Aschines* again) if I thought you (who for natural wit and all things else excellente) to see better in this case alo than I, what is meer and expedient to be done. For true it is that the Poet saith;

*The bear to witte whose neck, with bristles strong  
Is thick beset, the tender hand and soft  
Of woman nice, yea, and of infant young,  
By stroking farre, shall bend and turn (full oft)  
Much sooner farre, and that with greater ease  
Than wrestlers strong with all their force and pelfe.*

And we our selves can skill how to tame wilde beaſts, we know how to make young wolves gentle, yea and lions whelps other-whiles we carry about with us in our armes; but see, how we again afterwards in a raging fit of choler, be ready to fling from us and cast out of our fight, our own children, our friends and familiars, and all our household servants, and our fellow-citizens and neighbours, we let loose our ire like some savage and furious beaſt, and this rage of ours we disguise and cloak forth with a colourable and false name, calling it Hatred of vice. But herein (I suppose) we do no other-while than in the rest of our passions and diseases of the minde: teaching one, Providence and fore-cast; another Liberty; and a third Piety and religion; and yet for all these pretences of goodly names, we cannot be cured of the vices which they palliate; to wit, Timor of himselfe, Prodigality and superstition.

And verily, like as our naturall feed (as *Zeno* said) is a certain mixture and composition, derived and extracted from all the powers and faculties of the soule: even so, in mine opinion, a man may say that choler is a miscellane feed (as it were) and a dredge, made of all the passions of the mind: for plucked it is from pain, pleasure and inolent violence: Of envie it hath this quality to joy in the harmes of other men: it standeth much upon murder, but worse it is simply than murder: for the wrathfull person striveth and laboureth not to defend and save himself from taking harm; but to be may mischief and overthrow another, he careth not to come by a hurt and shewd turn himself. It holdeth likewise of concupiscence and lust, and taketh of it the worse and more unpleasing part, in case it be (as it is indeed) a desire and appetite to grieve, vex, and harm another. And therefore when we approach and come neere to the house of luxurious and riotous persons, we hear betimes in the morning a minstrel-wench, founding and playing the Morrow-watch by break of day: we see the muddy-grounds and dregs (as one was wont to say) of the wine, to wit, the vomits of those who cast up their stomachs: we behold the pieces and fragments of broken garlands and chaplets: and at the dore we find the lackies and pages of them who are within, drunken and heavy in the head with tipping strong wine. But the signes that tell where haſty, cholerick, and angry persons dwell, appear in the faces of their servants, in the marks and weales remaining after their whipping, and in their clogs, yrons, and fetters about their feet. For in the houses of haſty and angry men, a man shall never hear but one kind of mutter: that is to say, the heavy note of wailing groans, and piteous plaints; whereas either the stewards within are whipped and scourged, or the maidens racked and put to torture, in such sort that you would pity to see the dolours and pains of yew which the suffereth in those things that the lusteth after and taketh pleasure in. And yet as many of us as happen to be truly and justly surprised with choler oftentimes, for the hatred and detestation that we have of vices, ought to cut off that which is excessive therein and beyond measure together with our over-light belief and credulity of reports concerning such as converse with us: For this is one of the causes that most of all doth engender and augment choler: when either he whom we took for an honest man proveth dishonest, and is detected for some naughtinesse, or whom we reputed our friend is fallen into some quarrel and variance with us: as for my self, you know my nature and disposition, what small occasions make me both to love men effectually, and also to trust them confidently, and therefore (just as it falleth out with them who go over a false floor where the ground is not fast, but hollow under their feet) where I lean most and put my greatest trust for the love that I beare, there I stand most and soonest catch a fall: there (I say) am I grieved most also, when I see

how

how I was deceived: As for that exceeding inclination and forwardness of mind, thus to love and affect a man, could I never yet to this day wean myself from, so inbred it is and settled in me: may I so flay myself from giving credit over-haſtily and too much, I may peradventure use that bridle which *Plato* speaketh of, to wit, wary circumspection: for in recommending the Mathematician *Hecleus*, I praise him (quoth he) for a man, that is much to say, as a creature by nature mutable & apt to change. And even those who have been well brought up in a city, to wit, in *Athens*, he saith that he is afraid likewise of them, lest being men, and coming from the seed of man, they do not one time or other bewray the weaknesse and infirmity of humane nature: and *Sophocles* when he speaketh thus,

*Who list to search through all deeds of mankind*

*More bad then good he shall be sure to find.*

seemeth to clip our wings, and disable us wonderfully. Howbeit this difficulty and caution in judging of men and pleading ourselves in the choice of friends, will cause us to be more tractable and moderate in our anger: for whatsoever cometh suddenly and unexpected, the time soon transporteth us beside our selves. We ought moreover as *Panatus* teacheth us in one place to practise the example of *Anaxagoras*, and like as he said when newes came of his sons deaths: I know well (quoth he) that I begat him a mortal man: so in every fault of our servants or others that shall whetted our choler, each one may say this note to himself: I knew well that when I bought this slave, he was not a wise Philosopher: I witt also that I had gotten for my friend not one altogether void of affections and passions: neither was I ignorant when I took a wife, that I wedded a woman. Now if withall a man would evermore when he seeth others do amisse, adde this more unto the ditty as *Plato* teacheth us, and sing thus: Am not I also such an other? turning the diction of his judgement from things abroad, to those which are within himself, and among his complaints and reprehensions of other men, come in with a certain caveat of his own, and lear to be reproved himself in the like: he would not haply be so quick and forward in the hatred and detestation of other mens vices, feeling that himself hath so much need of pardon. But on the contrary side, every one of us, when he is in the heat of choler and punisheth another, hath these words of severer *Aristides* and precise *Cato* ready enough in his mouth: Steal not Sirrah: Make no more lies: Why art thou so idle then? &c. To conclude (that which of all others is most unfeeling and absurd) we reprove in anger others for being angry: and such faults as were committed in choler, those our selves will punish in choler: not verily as the Physicians use to do, who

*A bitter medicine in the body pour,*

*When bitter choler they mean to purge and scow.*

But we rather do encrease the same with our bitterness, and make more trouble than it were before. And therefore when I think and discourse with my self of these matters, I endeavour withall and assay to cut off somewhat from needlesse curiosity. For surely this narrow searching and freight looking into every thing, for to spie and find out a fault: as for example to sift thy servant and call him into question for all his idle hours: to prie into every action of thy friend: to see where about thy sonne goeth, and how he spendeth all his time; to listen what whispering there is between thy wife and another, be the very means to breed much anger, daily brauls, and continual jarres, which grow in the end to the height of curtnesse and forwardnesse, hard to be pleased with any thing whatsoever. For according as *Empirides* saith in one place, we ought in some sort to do:

*All great affairs God ay himself directeth,*

*But matters small to Fortune he committeth.*

Formine own part, I do not think it good to commit any business to Fortune: neither would I have a man of understanding to be retchlesse in his own occasions: But with some things to put his wife in trust: others to make over unto servants, and in some matters to use his friends. Herein to bear himself like a Prince and great Commander, having under him his Deputies, Governours, Receivers, Auditors, and Procurators: relying unto himself and to the disposition of his own judgement, the principall affairs, and those of greatest importance. For like as little letters or a small print do more offend and trouble the eyes then greater, for that the eyes be very inventive upon them even so, small matters do quickly move choler, which thereupon soon getteth an ill custome in weightier matters. But aboveall, I ever reckon that laying of *Empedocles* to be a divine precept and heavenly oracle, which admonisheth us *To fift from sin*. I commended also these points and observances, as being right honest, commendable, and becomming him, that maketh profession of widome and philosophie, which we use to vow unto the gods in our prayers: Namely, *To forbear both Wine and Women*, and so to live sober and chaste a whole year together, and in the mean while to serve God with a pure and undefiled heart: Also, so limit and set out a certain time, wherein we would not make a lie, observing precisely not to speak any vain and idle words, either in earnest or in bowd. With these and such like observations also, I acquainted and furnished my soul, as being no lesse affected to religion and godlines than fludious of learning and philosophie: Namely, first enjoyed my self to passe a certain few Holy-dayes without being angry, or offended upon any occasion whatsoever: no lesse than I would have vowed to forbear drunkennesse, and abstain altogether from wine, as if I sacrificed at the feast *Nephelin* [wherein no wine was pent] or celebrated the solemnity *Metisphod*, [in which Honey onely was used.] Thus having made an entrance: I tried afterwards a month or

K

two

two by little and little what I could do, and ever I gained more and more time, exercising my self still to forbear (since with all my power and might. Thus I proceeded and went forward daily, blessing my self with good words and striving to be mild, quiet and void of malice, pure and clean from evil speeches and lewd deeds: but principally from that passion which for a little pleasure, and the same not very lovely, bringeth with it great troubles and shameful repentance in the end. Thus with the grace of God, affilting me somewhat (as I take it) in this good resolution and course of mine, experience it self approved and confirmed my first intent and judgement, whereby I was taught, That this mildnesse, clemency, and debonaire humanity, is to none of our familiars who live and converse daily with us, so sweet, so pleasant, and agreeable, as to our selves who have these virtues and good qualities within us.

## Of Curiosity.

### The Summary.

THE former Treatise hath shewed unto us, how many mischiefs and inconveniences Anger causeth, teaching us the means how to beware of it. Now Plutarch doleth with another vice, no less dangerous than it, which bendeth to the opposite extremity. For whereas we doh so because a man of the use of reason during the access and fit thereof, that the cholerick and furious persons differ not one from another, but in the space of time. This curiosity which is now in hand, being marked under the name of wisdom and hability of spirit, is (to say a truth) a covert and hidden fury which carrieth the minds of the curious person past himself, for to gather and heap from all parts the ordure and filthinesse of another, and afterwards to bring the same into himself, and to make thereof a very store-house, for to infect his own self with, and then others, according as the malignity and malice, the follies, backbiting, and slanders of these curious folk do sufficiently declare. To the end therefore that every man who loveth virtue, should divert from such a malice, our Author sheweth that the principall remedie for to preserve us from it, is to turn this curiosity to our own selves; namely, to examine our own persons more diligently than others. Which point he amplifieth by setting down the contrary side, the blindness of those who are over-busy and curious. Then cometh he to declare, why a curious person goeth forth alwayes out of his own house for to enter into another mans; to wit, because of his own filthinesse, which by that means he cannot smell and perceive; but whiles he will needs go to stirre and rake into the life of others, he snareth and entangleth himself and so perissheth in his own folly and indiscretion. Afterwards proceeding to prescribe the remedies for the cure of curiosity, when he had deciphered the villanies and indignities thereof, together with the nature of curious persons, and the enormous vices which accompany them, he requirerth at our hands, that we should not be desirous to know things which be vile, base, lewd or unprofitable; that we should hold in our eyes, and not cast them at random and adventure within the house of another, that we should not seek after the bruit and rumours that are spread in meetings and companies; that we otherwise should forbear even such things, whereof the use is lawfull and permitted: also to take heed that we do not enter nor sound too deep into our own affairs; Finally, not to be rash and heady in those things that we do, be they never so small. All these points premised, he adorneth with inductions, similitudes and choise examples, and setteth up all with one conclusion, which proveth, that curious folk ought to be ranged among the most mischievous and dangerous in the world.

## Of Curiosity.

THE best way haply it were altogether to avoid an house and not therein at all to dwell, which is close without fresh air, dark, standing bleak & cold, or otherwise unhealthful. Howbeit, if a man by reason that he hath been long used to such an house, delight in that feat, and will there abide, he may either by altering the prospects and removing the lights, or by changing the stairs into another place, or else by opening the dores of one side, and shutting them upon another, make the house more lightsome, better exposed to the wind for to receive fresh air, and in one word more wholesome than before. And verily some have much amended whole cities by the like alterations: as for example, men say that one Cheron in times past turned my native City and Place of nativity *Chalcedon* to lie Eastward, which before looked toward the Western wind *Zephyrus*, and received the Sunne setting from the mount *Parasus*, And *Empedocles* the natural Philosopher, by topping up the mouth or deep chink of a certain mountain between two rocks, which breathed out a noisome and pestilent southern wind upon all the champion country and plain underneath, was thought to have put by the plague, which by occasion of that wind reigned ordina-

ordina-

ordinarily before in that Country. Now forasmuch as there be certain hurtfull and pestiferous passions, which fend up into our soul tempestuous troubles and darkness, it were to be wished, that they were chased our quite, and throwne down to the very ground; whereby we might give our selves a free prospect, and open and clear light, a fresh and pure air; or if we be not so happy, yet at least with endeavour, we ought by all means possible to change, alter, translate, transpole and turn them so about, as they may be found more fit and commodious to serve our turnes. As for example, and to go no farther for the matter, Curiosity, which I take to be a desire to know the faults and imperfections in other men, is a vice or disease which seemeth not clear of envie and maliciousnesse: And unto him that is infected therewith may very well be said,

*Most spitefull and envious man,  
why dost thou ever finde  
With piercing eyes thy neighbours faults,  
and in thine own art blinde?*

avert thine eyes a little from things without, and turn thy much meddling and curiosity to those that be within. If thou take to great a pleasure and delight to deal in the Knowledge and Historie of evil matters, thou shalt work enough wile at home, thou shalt finde plenty thereof within to occupy thy self;

*For looke what water runs along  
an Isthm or Iste we see,  
Or leaves lie spread about the Oke,  
which numbred cannot be;*

Such a multitude shalt thou finde of finnes in thy life, of passions in thy soul, and of oversights in thy duties. For like as *Xenophon* saith, That good stewards of an household have one proper room byt self for those utensils or implements which serve for sacrifice; another for vessels that come to the table; in one place he layeth up the instruments and tools for tillage and husbandry, and in another apart from the rest, he bestoweth weapons, armour, and furniture for the wars: even so shalt thou see within thy self a number of manifold vices how they are digested: some proceeding from envie, others from jealousy; some from idleness, others from nigardie; take account of these (I advise thee) survey and pursue them over well: shut all the dores and windowes that yeeld prospect unto thy neighbours: stop up the avenues that give access and passage to Curiosity: But let open all other doors that lead into thine own bed-chamber, and other lodgings for men, into thy wives chamber and the nursery, into the rooms where thy servants keep; there shalt thou meet wherewith to amuse and busie thy self: there may curiosity and desire to know every thing be employed in exercises, neither unprofitable nor malicious: nay, in such as be commodious, whollome and tending to salvation: namely, whiles every one calleth himself to account, saying thus,

*Where have I been, what good I have done,  
or what have I misdone?  
Where have I slip, what duty begun  
is left by me undone?*

But now according as fables make report: that *Lamia* the Witch whiles she is at home is stark blind, and doth nothing but sing, having her eyes shut up close within a little boxe; but when she means to go abroad, she takes them forth, and setteth them in their right place, and seeth well enough with them: even so, every one of us when we go forth, set unto that evil meaning and intention which we have to others, an eye to look into them, and that is curiosity and overmuch meddling; but in our own errors, faults and trespasses we stumble and fall through ignorance, as having neither eyes to see, nor light about them whereby they may be seen. And therefore it is that a busie fellow and curious meddler doth more good to his enemies than to himself: for their faults he discovereth and bringeth to light, to them he sheweth what they ought to beware of, and what they are to amend: but all this while he over-seeth, or rather seeth not the most things that are done at home, so deeply amuled he is and busie in spying what is a mile abroad. Howbeit wife *Ulysses* would not abide to speak and confer with his own mother, before he had enquired of the Prophet those things for which he went down into hell: and when he had once heard them, then he turned to his mother and other women also, asking what was *Tyros*? what was *Chloris*? and what was the occasion and cause that *Eperestes* came by her death?

*Who kept her neck within a deadly string,  
And so from beam of life y house did king,*

But we quite contrary, sitting still in supine idleness and ignorance, neglecting and never regarding that which concerneth our selves, go to search into the genealogie and pedigrees of others; and we can tell readily, that our neighbours grandfather was no better than a base and servile Syrian; that his nurse came out of barbarous *Thracia*; that such an one is in debt, and oweth three talents, and is behind hand besides. and in arrears for non-payment of interest for the use thereof. Inquisitive also we are in such matters as these: From whence came such a mans wife? what it was that such a one and such a one spake when they were alone together in an odde corner? *Socrates* was clean of another quality; he would go up and down enquiring and calling about what

were the reasons wherewith *Pythagoras* perswaded men to his opinion. *Arifippu* likewise, at the solemnity of the Olympian games, falling into the company of *Iſchomachus*, asked of him, what were the persuasions that *Socrates* used to young folk, whereby they became so affectionate unto him: and after he had received from him some small feeds (as it were) and a few samples of those reasons and arguments, he was so moved and passionate therewith, that presently his body fell away, he looked pale, poor and lean, untill he having laid to *Athenis* in this wonderful thirst and ardent heat, had drunk his fill at the fountain and well-head it self, known the man, heard his discourses and learned his Philoſophie: the summe and effect whereof was this: That a man should first know his own maladies, and then the means to be cured and delivered of them. But (some there be, who of all things cannot abide to see their own life, as being unto them the most unpleasant sight of all others: neither love they to bend and turn their reason as a light to their own selves: but their minde being full of all sorts of evil, fearing and ready to quake for to behold what things are within, leapeth forth (as one would say) out of doors, and goeth wandering to and fro, searching into the deeds and words of other men, and by this means feedeth and fatteneth (as it were) her own malicious naughtinesse. For like as a hen many times having meat enough within house let before her, loveth to go into some corner, and there keepeth a pecking and scraping of the ground,

*To finde perhaps one silly barley corn  
As she was wont and dung hill heretofore;*

even so these busie Polypragmons, passing by those ordinary speeches and matters which are exposed and open for every man: not regarding (I say) the reports and narrations which are free for each one to discourse of, and which neither any man hath to do, to forbid and warn them for to ask and enquire of, nor will be displeased if peradventure he should be demanded and asked the question of them, go up and down in the mean time to gather and learn all the secret and hidden evils of every house. Certes, a prety answer it was of an Egyptian, and pertinent to the purpose, who whenone asked him, what it was that he carried covered all over, and so enwrapped within a cloth: *Mary* (quoth he) covered it is even for this cause, that thou shouldst not know what it is: And thoulikewise, that art so busie, why dost thou intermeddle in that which is concealed? Be sure, that if there were no evil therein, kept close it should not be. And verily, it is not the manner and custome for any body to enter boldly into the house of another man, without knocking at the door, for which purpose we use porters in these dayes: whereas in old time there were rings and hammers which served the turn, and by rapping at the gates gave warning to those within, to the end that no stranger might meet the mistresses at unawares in the hall or mids of the house: or come suddenly upon a virgin or yong damoſel her daughter, and find her out of her chambers: or take some of the servants a beating, or the wenches and chambermaids chiding and scolding aloud: whereas a busie fellow loveth a like to step secretly into a house, for to see and hear such disorders: and you shall never know him willingly to come and see an honest house and well governed (though one should call and pray him never so fair), but ready he is to discover and let abroad in the view of the whole world such things, for which we use locks, keies, bolts, barres, portals and gate houſes. Those windes (saith *Arifſton*) are we most troubled and offended with, which drive open our cloaks and garments that cover us, or blow and whisk them over our heads: but busie Polypragmons do lay abroad and display not the cloaks of their neighbours nor their coats; but discover their walls, let wide open their doors, and like a wind, pierce, creepe and enter so farre, as to the tender bodied and soft skinned maiden, searching and inquiring in every backchamber, in all dancings, waking and night feasts, for some matter to raise flanders of her. And as one *Cleon* was noted by an old Comical Poet upon the Stage,

*Whose hands were both in Exotie,  
But heart and minde in Clodipie;*

Even of the spirit of a curious and busie person, is at one time in the stately palace of rich and mighty men, in the little houses of mean and poor folk in Kings Courts, and in the bed-chamber of new wedded wives: it is inquisitive in all matters, searching aivell the affaires of strangers and travellers, as negotiations of Lords and Rulers, and other while not without danger of his own person. For much like as if a man upon a kinde of wanton curiosity, will needs be tasting of *Aconite* or *Lihard-bain*, to know (forsooth) the quality of it, cometh by a mischief, and dieth off it before he can know any thing thereof: so they that love to be prying into the faules of greater persons, many times overthrow themselves before they come to any knowledge. For such as cannot be content with the abundant raies and radiant beams of the Sunne which are spread so clear over all things, but will needs strive and force themselves impudently to look full upon the circle of his body, and audaciously will presume and venture to pierce his brightnesse, and enter into the very mids of his inward light, commonly dazzle their eyes, and become stark blind. And therefore well and properly answered *Philippides* the Writer of Comedies upon a time when King *Lysimachus* spake thus unto him: What wouldst thou have me to impart unto thee of my goods, *Philippides*? Whatst pleaseth your Majesty (quoth he) so it be nothing of your secrets. For to say a truth, the most pleasant and beautiful things simply, which belong to the estate of Kings, do shew without, and are exposed to the view and sight of every man: to wit, their sumptuous feasts, their wealth and riches their magnificent port and pomp in publick places, their bountifull favours, and liball gifts: but is there any thing secret and hidden within. Take heed I advise thee how thou approach and come neere, beware (I say) that thou do not stir and meddle therein. The

The joy and mirth of a Prince in prosperity cannot be concealed; he cannot laugh when he is disposed to play and be merry but it is seen: neither when he mudgeth and doth prepare to shew some gracious favour or to be bountifull unto any is his purpose hidden: but mark what thing he keepeth close and secret, the same is terrible, heavy, feare, unpleasant, yea, miniftring no access nor cause of laughter: namely, the treasure-house (as it were) of some ranker and lettered anger: a deep designe or project of revenge: Jealousie of his wife, some suspicion of his own omnes; or diffidence and distrust in some of his minions, favorites and friends. Fie from this black cloud that gathereth so thick: for whensoever that which is now hidden shall break forth, thou shalt see what cracks of thunder and flashes of lightning wil ensue thereupon. But what be the means to avoid it? *Mary* (even as I said before) to turn and to withdraw thy curiosity another way; and principally to let thy minde upon matters that are more honest and delectable: Advise thy self and consider curiously upon the creatures in heaven, in earth, in the air, and in the sea. Art thou delighted in the contemplation of great or small things? if thou take pleasure to behold the greater, busie thy self about the Sunne; seek where he goeth down, and from whence he riseth: Search into the cause of the mutations in the Moon, why it should it to change and alter as it doth, like a man or woman? what the reason is that the loſeth so conspicuous a light? and how it cometh to passe that she recovereth it again?

*How is it, when she hath been out of sight  
That fresh she seems a d d doth appear with light?  
First young and fair whilst she is but new  
Till round and full we see her lovely biew:  
No sooner is her beauty at this height  
But fade she doth anon, whom so bright;  
And by degrees she doth decay and wain  
Untill at length she comes to naught again.*

And these truly are the secrets of nature, neither is the offended and displeased with those who can find them out. Distrustest thou thy self to attain unto these great things? then search into smaller matters, to wit, what might the reason be that among trees and other plants, some be alwaies fresh and green, why they flourish at all times, and be clad in their gay clothes, shewing their riches in every season of the year: why others again be one while like unto them in this their pride and glory, but afterward you shall have them again like unto an ill husband in his house: namely, laying out all at once, and spending their whole wealth and substance at one time, untill they be poor, naked, and beggerly for it? Also what is the cause that some bring forth their fruit long while, others cornered, and others round or circular? But peradventure thou hast no great mind to busie thy self and meddle in these matters, because there is no hurt nor danger at all in them. Now if there be no remedie, but that curiosity should ever apply it self to search into evil things, after the manner of some venomous serpent, which loveth to feed, to live and converse in peticulous woods, let us lead and direct it to the reading of histories, and pretend unto it abundance and store of all wicked acts, lewd and sinfull deeds. There shall Curiosity finde the ruines of men, the waiting and consuming of their state, the spoils of wives and other women, the decifull traines of servants to beguile their misters, the calumnies and slanderous surmises raised by friends, poisoning cats envie, jealousie, shipwrack and overthrow of houses, calamities and utter undoing of Princes and great rulers: Satisfie thy self herewith to the full, and take thy pleasure therein as much as thou wilt: never shalt thou trouble or grieve any of thy friends and acquaintance in so doing. But it should seem that curiosity delighteth not in such naughty things that be very old and long since done; but in those which be fresh, fire new, hot and lately committed, as joying more to behold new Tragedies. As for Comedies and matters of mirth, she is not greatly desirous to be acquainted with such. And therefore, if a man do make report of a marriage, discourse of a solemn sacrifice, or of a goodly shew or pompe that was set forth, the curious busie-body (whom we speak of) will take small regard thereto, and hear it but coldly and negligently. He will say that the most part of all this he heard already by others, and bid him who relateth such narrations to passe them over, or be brief, and cut off many circumstances. *Mary* if one that sits by him chance to set a tale on end, and begin to tell him there was a maiden deflowered, or a wife abused in adultery: if he recount of some proceſſe of law or action commenced, of discord and variance between two brethren; you shall see him then not to yawn and gape as though he had slept, you shall not perceive him to nod: he will make no excuse at all that his leisure will not serve to hear out the tale.

*But bids say on, and tell us more:  
And close he holds his ear the fore.*

So that this sentence,

*How soever much are ill newes understood,  
And heard by men (alas) than tidings good!*

is well and truly verified of these curious Polypragmons. For like as cupping glasses, boxes, and ventoses, draw the worst matter out of the flesh; even so, the ears of curious and busie folk, are willing to receive and admit the most lewd and naughtiest speeches that are: or rather, to speak more properly, as Towns and Cities have certain curied and unlucky gates, at which they send out malefactors to execution, carry and throw forth their dung, ordure, filthinesse, and cleanliness whatsover;



but never cometh in or goeth out that way, any thing that pure is and holy: semblably, the ears of these curious intermediers be of the same nature: for there entreth and passeth into them nothing that is honest, civil and lovely; but the bruit and rumours of cruel murders have access unto them, and there make abroad, bringing therewith wicked, abominable, profane and cursed reports: and as one said:

*The only bird that in my house doth ever chant and sing  
Both night and day is dolefull noon, much sorrow and wailing.*

So this is the *Muse, Syrene*, and *Mere-maid* alone, that Bute folk have: neither is there any thing that they hearken to more willingly: for Curiosity is an itching desire to hear secrets and hidden matters: and yet you wot that no man will lightly conceal any good thing that he hath: considering that many times we make semblance of good parts that be not in us, And therefore the buse intermedier who is so desirous to know and hear of evils, is subject to that which the Greeks call *εὐρυπαραξία*, a vice, chosen germain or sister rather to envie and eye-biting. Forasmuch as envie is nothing else, but the grief for another mans good: and the fore said *εὐρυπαραξία*, the joy for his harm: and verily both these infirmities proceed from an untoward root, even another unname'd vice and savage disposition, to wit, malignity or malice. And this we know well, that for irksome and odious it is to every man for to bewray and reveal the secrets evils and vices which he hath, that many men have chosen to die, rather than to discover and open unto Physicians any of their hidden maladies, which they carry about them. Now suppose that *Heracles* or *Erasistratus* the Physicians say *Asclepius* himself whilst he was a mortall man should come to an house furnished with drugs, medicines and instruments requisite for the cure of diseases, and ask whether any man there had a Fittula in *Aro*, that is, an hollow and hidden ulcer within his fundament: Or if she be a woman, whether she have a cancerous sore within her matrix: (albeit in this art such inquisitive curiosity is a special means making for the good & health of the sick) each one I suppose would be ready to hunt & chafe away from the house such a Physician, who unless for, and before any need required, came upon his own accord and motion in a bravery to enquire and learn other folks maladies. What shall we say then to these buse medlers, who enquire of another the self-same infirmities and worse too? Not of any minde at all to cure and heal the same, but only to detect and set them abroad: in which respect they are by good right the most odious persons in the world. For we hardly can abide Publicanes, Customers, and Tol-gatherers, but are mightily offended with them, nor when they exact of us, and cause us to pay roll for any commodities or wares that are openly brought in: but when they keep a searching and searching for such things as be hidden, & meddle with the wares and arranges of other men: notwithstanding that law granteth and publick authority alloweth them so to do: yea, and if they do it not, they sustain losse and dammage themselves. But contrariwise, these curious fellows let their own buse passion loose, and passe not which end goes forward, caring not to hinder themselves, whilst they be intrusive to the affairs of other men. Seldome do they into the Country, for that they cannot endure the quietness and still silence of the wild and solitary fields. But if haply after a long time they make a fairer thicker, they cast an eye to their neighbours vines, rather than to their own: they enquire how many beeves or oxen of his died? or what quantity of wine sowed under his hand? and no sooner are they full of these news, but into the City they trudge and make haste again. As for the good farmer and painfull husbandman indeed, he is not very willing to give ear unto these news, which without his hearkning after come from the City of the own accord, and are brought unto him, for his saying is:

*My ditcher will anon both tell and talk  
Upon what points concluded was the peace,  
For now the knowers about such news doth walk,  
And buse be, to listen doth not cease.*

But in truth, these buse-bodies, avoiding country-life and husbandry, as a vain trade and foolish occupation, a cold manner of living, which bringeth forth no great and tragical matter, intrude and thrust themselves into the high Courts of Justice, the Tribunal-seats, the Market-place and Publick pulpits where speech is made unto the people, great assemblies, and the most frequented quarter of the Haven where the Ships ride at Anchor, what? No news? saith one of them. How now? Were you not this morning at the Market or in the Common-place? What then? How think you, is not the City mightily changed & transformed within these three houres? Now if it chanced that some one or other make an overture, and have something to say as touching those points, down he alights on foot from his horse, he embraceth the man, kisseth him, and there stands attending and giving ear unto him. But say that the party whom he thus encountreth and meeteth upon the way tell him that he hath no news to report: what saist thou? (will he inferre again, and that in displeasure and discontentment) Wert not thou in the Market-place of late? Didst not thou passe by the Princes court? Hadst thou no talk or conference at all with those that came out of Italy? In regard of such therefore as these, I hold well with the Magistrates of the City *Lacri*, and commend a law of theirs: That if any Citizen had been abroad in the Country, and upon his return home demanded what news? he should have a fine set on his head, and as upon his for nothing, but good store of selings to kill for the Kitchen, and Fishmongers plenty of fishes: even for curious and buse people with for a world of troubles and a number of affairs, great news, alterations and changes of State: to the end that they might evermore be provided of gain, to chafe

and

and hunt after yea, and to kill. Well and wisely therefore did the law-giver of the Thuriars, which he gave order and forbad expressly, That no Citizen should be taxed, noted by name, or coffered at upon the Stage in any Comedie, save only adulterers and these buse persons. For surely adultery may be compared well to a kinde of curiosity, lear. hing into the pleasures of another: seeking (I say) and enquiring into those matters which are kept secret, and concealed from the view of the whole world. And as for curiosity, it seemeth to be a resolution of loveliness, like a palfe of corruption, a detection of secrets and laying them naked. For it is an ordinary thing with those who be inquisitive and desirous of many newes for to be blabs all of their tongues, and to be prating abroad: which is therefore that *Pythagoras* enjoyned young men five yeeres silence, which he called *Echemychia*, Abstinence from all speech, or holding of their tongue.

Moreover, it cannot otherwise be chosen but that foul and cursed language also should accompany curiosity: for look what thing soever buse bodies hear willingly, the same they love to tell and blurt out as quickly and such things as with desire and care they gather from one, they utter to another with joy: Whereupon it cometh to passe, that over and above other inconveniences which this vice minneth unto them that are given to it, an impediment it is to their own appetite. For as they desire to know much, to every man observeth them is beware of them, and endeavoureth to conceal all from them. Neither are they willing to do anything in their fight, nor delighted to speak ought in their hearings: but if there be any question in hand to be debated, or business to be considered and consulted of, all men are content to put off the conclusion and resolution unto another time: namely, untill the curious and buse person be out of the way. And say, that whilst men are in sad and leet conference, or about some serious business, there chance one of these buse bodies to come in place, presently all is hush, and every thing is removed aside and hidden: no other-wise than folk are wont to set out of the way vicuals where a cat doth haunt; or when they see her ready to run by: inasmuch as many times those things which other men may both hear and see safely, the same may not be done or said by them only. Therefore also it followeth by good consequence that a buse and curious person is commonly so farr out of credit, that no man is willing to trust him for any thing: in such sort, that we commit our letters missive and signe manually, sooner to our servants and meer strangers, than to our friends and familiars, if we perceive them given to this humor of much meddling. But that worthy Knight *Bellerophon* was so farr from this, that he forbore to break open those letters which he carried, though they were written against himself, but forbore to touch the Kings epistle, no lesse than he abstained from the Queen his wife even by one and the same virtue of Continuance. For surely, curiosity is a kinde of incontinency, as well as is adultery; and this moreover it hath besides, that joyned there is with it, much folly and extravagant want of wit: For were it not a part (think you) of exceeding blockish senselesse yea, and middeled in the highest degree, to passe by so many women that be common, and every where to be had: and then to make means with great cost and expence, to some one kept under lock and key, and besides sumptions: notwithstanding it fall out many times that such one is as ill-favored as she is foul? Semblably, and even the same do our curious folk: they omit and cast behind them many fair and goodly things to behold, many excellent lectures worth the hearing, many disquisitions, discourses, honest exercises and pastimes: but in other mens letters they keep a puddering they open and read them, they stand like eaves droppers under their neighbours walles, hearkening what is done or said within, they are ready to intrude themselves to listen what whispering there is between servants of the house: what secret talk there is amongstilly women when they be in some odd corner, &c; as many times they are by this means not free from danger: for always they meet with shame & infamy. And therefore very expedient it were for such curious folk, if they would shift off and put by this vice of theirs, estoons to call to mind (as much as they can) what they have either known or heard by such inquisition: for if (as *Simonides* was wont to say) that when he came (after some time between) to open his desks and coffers, he found one which was appointed for gifts and rewards always full, the other ordained for thanks and thegraces void and empty: for, a man after a good time past, let open the store-house of curiosity, and look into it what is therein, and see it toppe full of many unprofitable, vain and unpleasant things: peradventure the very outward sight and face thereof will discontent and offend him, appearing in every respect to lovelesse and toyfull as it is. Go to then: if one should set in hand to turn over leaf by leaf the Books of ancient Writers; and when he hath picked forth and gathered out the worst, make one Volume of altogether: or wit of those headlesse & imperfect verses of *Homer*, which happily begin with a short syllable, and therefore be called *ἀσπαρτοι*: or of the solecisms & incongruities which be found in Tragedies: or of the undecent and intemperate speeches which *Archibolus* framed against women, whereby he defamed and shamed himself: were he not (I pray you) worthy of this Tragical curie:

*A Foul-illdaneke thou lowd wretch,  
that lov'st to collect  
The faults of mortall men now dead;  
the living so infect.*

but to let these maledictions alone, certes this treasuring and scoring up by him of other mens errors and middeled, is both unseemly and also unprofitable: much like unto that City which *Philopollis* of purpose, and peopled it with the most wicked, gracelesse, and incorrigible persons that were in his time,



time, calling it *Poneropolis* when he had so done. And therefore these curious meddlers in collecting and gathering together on all sides the err ours, imperfections, defaults, and solecisms (as I may so say) not of verses or Poems, but of other mens lives, make of their memory a most unpleasant Archive or Register, and uncivil Record, which they ever carry about them. And like as at *Rome*, some there be who never cast eye toward any fine pictures, or goodly statues, no nor so much as make any account to cheapen beautiful boies and faire wenches which there stand to be sold, but rather go up and down the market where monsters in nature are to be bought, seeking and learning out where be any that want legs, whole armes and elbows turne the contrary way like unto cats; or who have three eyes spee in their heads, or beheaded like unto the *Ostrich*: taking pleasure (I say) to see if there be borne

*A mungrell mixt of divers sorts,  
False births, unkind, or strange aborts.*

But if a man should bring them to see such sights as these ordinarily, the very thing it selfe would soone give them enough, yea, and breed a loathing in them of such ugly monsters: even to it fareth with those who buse themselves and meddle in teaching narrowly into the imperfections of other mens lives, there reproaches of their stocks and kindred, the faults, errors, and troubles that have happened in other houses: if they call to mind what like defects they have found and known before time, they shall soon find that their former observations have done them small pleasure, or wrought them as little profit.

But the greatest meanes to divert this vicious passion is use and custome: namely, if we begin a great way off, and long before to exercise and acquaint our selves in a kind of concynacy in this behalfe, and so learne to temper and rule our selves: for surely use it was and custome that caused this vice to get such an head, encreasing daily by little and little, and growing from worse to worse: But how and after what manner we should be inured to this purpose, we shall see and understand as we treat of Exercise withall.

Pride and formost therefore, begin we will at the smallest and most slender things, and which most quickly may be effected. For what matter of difficulty is it for a man in the way as he travelleth, not to amule and buse his head in reading Epitaphs or inscriptions of Sepulchers? Or what paine is it for us as we walk along the galleries, to passe over with our eyes the writings upon the walls: supposing thus much secretly within our selves, as a maxime or generall rule: That there is no goodnesse, no pleasure, nor profit at all in such writings: For there you may read, That some one doth remember another, and make mention of him by way of hearty commendations in good part: or such an one is the best friend that I have, and many other such like mottoes are there to be leen and read, full of toises and vanities, which at first seem not to do any hurt if one read them, but in such secretly they do much harme, in that they breed in us a custome and desire to seek after needlesse and impertinent matters. For like as hunters suffer not their hounds to range out of order, nor to follow every sent, but keep them up and hold them in by their collars, referring by that meanes their smelling pure and neat, altogether for their proper worke, to the end that they should be more eager and hot to trace the footing of their game, and as the Poet saith,

*With scent most quick, of noses bridle after kind,  
The traits of beasts so wild, in chase to find:*

Even so, we ought to cut off these excursions and foolish traines that curious folke make to heare and see every thing: to keep them short (I say) and turne them another way to the seeing and hearing only of that which is good and profitable. Also, as we observe in Eagles and Lions, That whiles they go upon the ground they draw their talons and claws inward, for feare lest they should dull the sharpe edge and weare the points thereof: so considering that curiosity hath a certain quick conceit and fine edge (as it were) apt to apprehend and know many things, let us take heed that we do not employ and blunt the same in the worst and vilest of all others.

Secondly, we are to accustom our selves as we passe by another mans doore, not to looke in, nor to cast our eyes to any thing whatsoever that there is: for that the eye is one of the hands that curiosity useth. But let us alwaies have in readiness and thinke upon the Apophthegme of *Xenocrates*, who was wont to say, That it skilled not, but was all one, whether we set our eyes or eyes within the house of another man. For it is neither meet and just, nor an honest and pleasant sight, according to the old verie,

*My friend or stranger, whatever you be,  
Thou shalt within all things deformed see.*

And what be those for the most part which are seen in houses? Dishes, trenchers, and such like utensils and small vessels lying on the bare ground, or one upon another disorderly: the wenches set and doing just nothing: and lightly a man shall not find ordinarily ought of importance or delight. Now the very cast of the eye upon such things doth therewith turne away the mind: the incontinent looking thereupon is unseemly, and the using thereof (saith *Plutarch*) verily upon a time seeing *Dioxippus*, when he entered in his triumphal chariot into the city for winning the best prize at the Olympian games, how as he rode he could not chuse but set his eye upon a certaine faire damozell, who was in place to behold this pompe and solemne entrance of his, but evermore his eye followed her, whether she were before or behind him: Behold (quoth he) our victorious and triumphant champion, how a young wench hath him sure enough by the neck, and doth write

him which way the list! Semblably, see you not how these curious folke have their necks bended aside at every foolish sight, and how they turne about with each vanity that they heare and see, after once they have gotten an habit or custome, to looke every way and to carry a roning eye in their heads? But in mine opinion, it is not meet that our senses should gad and wander abroad, like a wild and untaught girle, but when reason hath sent it forth to some business; after it hath been there employed and done the errand about which it was sent, to returne speedily againe unto her mistress the soule, and make report how she hath sped, and what she hath done? And then afterwards to stay at home decently like a modest waiting-maiden, giving attendance upon reason, and ready alwaies at her command. But now hapneth that which *Sophocles* saith,

*The head-strong jades that will no bit abide,  
Hate him perforce who should them reine and guide.*

The senses having not met with good instructions (as I said before) nor been trained to right waies, run before reason upon their own accord, and draw with them many times the understanding, and send it headlong after such things as are not seemly and decent. And therefore falle is that which is commonly reported of *Democritus* the Philosopher: namely, that willingly he dimmed and quenched (as it were) his own sight, by fixing his eyes fast upon a fiery and ardent mirror, to take the reverberation of the light from thence, to the end that they should not disturb the mind, by calling out of themselves the inward intelligence, but suffer it to keep house within, and to be employed in objects intellectuall, as if the windows that regard the street and high way were shut up. Howbeit most true it is, that those who for the most part occupy their understanding, have least use of their senses: it is the reason that in old time they both builded the temples of the Muses, that is to say, houses ordained for students, which they named *Musae*, as far as they could from Cities and great towns: and also called the night *Euphrosyne*, as one would say, a friend to lase advice and counsel: as supposing that quiet rest, repose, and himselfe from all disturbance make very much for contemplation, and invention of those things that we study and seek for.

Moreover, no harder matter is it, nor of greater difficulty than the rest, when in the open marketplace or common hall, men are at high words, reproaching and reviling one another, not to approach and come neere unto them. Also if there be any great concourse and running of people together upon some occasion, not to stir at all but sit still, or if thou art notable to containe and rule thy selfe, to rise up and go thy waies. For surely gaine thou shalt no good at all by intermeddling with such buse and troublefome perions; but contrariwise, much fruit maist thou reape by turning away thine curiosity, in repressing the same and containing it by use and custome to obey reason. Having made this good entrance and beginning, to proceed now unto farther and stronger exercise, it were very good, whensoever there is any play exhibited upon the Stage in a frequent Theatre, where there is assembled a great audience to heare and see some worthy matter for to passe by it, and to back thy friends who sollicite thee to go thither with them, for to see either one dance excellent well, or to act a Comedy: nor so much as to turne back when thou hearest some great hour and out-cry, either from out of the race or the grand-cirque, where the horie running is held for the prize. For like as *Socrates* gave counsell to forbear those meats which provoke men to eate when they are not hungry, and those drinks which incite folke to drinke when they have no thirst: even so, we ought to avoid and beware how we either see or heare any thing whatsoever, which may either draw or hold us thereto, when there is no need at all thereof. The noble prince *Cyrus* would not so much as see faire Lady *Panthea*, and when *Araspes* one of his courtiers and minions made report unto him, that she was a woman of incomparable beauty, and therefore worthy to be looked on: Nay, rather (quoth he) for that cause I ought to forbear the sight of her: for if by your persuasion I should yield to go and see her, it may peradventure fall out to that she her selfe might tempt and induce me againe to repaire unto her: even then haply when I shall not have such leisure, yea, and sit by her, and keep her company, neglecting in the meane time the weighty affairs of State. In like manner *Alexander* the Great would not come within the sight of *King Darius* his wife, notwithstanding that she was reported unto him for to be a most gallant and beautiful Lady: For mother an ancient Dame and elderly matron he did not like to visite, but the young gentlewoman her daughter (fresh, faire, and young) he could not be brought so much as once to see. As for us, we can cast a wanton eye secretly into the coaches and horie-litters of wives and women as they ride, we can look out of our windows, and hang with our bodies halfe forth, to take the full view of them as they passe by: and all this while we think we commit no fault, suffering our curious eye and wandering mind to slide and ran to every thing.

Moreover, it is meet and expedient for the exercise of justice, otherwhiles to omit that which well and justly might be done: to the end that by that means a man may acquaint himselfe to keep far off from doing or taking any thing unjustly. Like as it maketh much for temperance and chastity, to abstaine otherwhiles from the use of a mans own wife, that thereby he might be never moved to lust after the wife of his neighbour: taking this counsell likewise against curiosity, strive and endeavour sometimes to make semblance as though thou didst neither heare nor see those things that properly concerne thy selfe: And if a man come and bring thee a tale of matters concerning thine own household, let it passe, and put it over, yea, and those words which seeme to have been spoken as touching thine own person, cast them behind, and give no care thereto. For default of this discretion, it was the inquisitive curiosity of King *Oedipus*, which intangled and enwrapped him in exceeding

ding great calamities and miseries: for when he would needs know who himselfe was, as if he had been not a Corinthian, but a stranger, and would needs go therefore to the Oracle to be relieved, he met with *Lais* his own father by the way, whom he slew, and so espoused his own mother, by whole means he came to be King of *Thebes*: and even then when he seemed to be a most happy man, he could not so stay, but proceeded further to enquire concerning himselfe, notwithstanding his wife did what the possibly could to dissuade him from it: but the more earnest he was with him that way, the more instant was he with an old man who was privy to all, using all means to enforce him for to bewray that secret: at length when the thing it selfe was so pregnant, that it brought him into farther suspicion, and withall when the said old man cried out in this manner,

*Alas, how am I at the point perforce*

*To utter that which will cause great remorse?*

The King surpris'd still with his humour of curiosity, notwithstanding he was vexed at the very heart, answered,

*And I likewise for my part am as near*

*To be as much, but yet I must to heare.*

So bitter-sweet is that itching-smart humour of curiosity, like unto an ulcer or sore, which the more it is rubbed and scratched, the more it bleedeth and bloudtheth it selfe. Howbeit he that is delivered from this disease, and besides of nature mild and gentle, so long as he is ignorant and knoweth not any evil accident, may thus say,

*O blessed Saint, when evils are past and gone,*

*How sage and wise art thou oblivion.*

And therefore we must by little and little accustom our selves to this, that when there be any letters brought unto us, we do not open them presently and in great haste, as many do, who if their hands be not quick enough to do the feat, set their teeth to, and gnaw in funder the threads that sewed them up fast. Alas if there be a messenger coming toward us from a place with any tidings, that we run not to meet him, nor so much as once rise and stir for the matter; and if a friend come unto thee saying, I have some news to tell you of: yea marry (must you say againe) but I had rather that you brought me something indeed that were profitable, fruitful, and commodious, I remember upon a time when I declaimed and read a lecture at *Rome*, that Orator *Rustius*, whom afterwards *Domitian* put to death for envy that he bare to his glory, happened to be there to hear me: Now in the midst of my Lecture there came into the place a souldier with letters from the Emperour, which he delivered to *Rustius* afore said, whereupon there was great silence in the choule, and I my selfe made some pause whiles he might read the letter, but he would not read it then nor to much as brake it open before, I had made an end of my discourse, and dismissed the auditory: for which all the company there present highly praised and admired the gravity of the man. Now if one do feed and nourish all that he can, (be it but unlawfull and allowable things) this veine and humour of curiosity, so as thereby it cometh in the end mighty and violent, it will not be an easie matter to restrain and hold it in when it shall break out and run on end to such things as be unlawfull and forbidden, by reason that it is so used already to intermeddle and be doing. But such men as these break open and unseale letters (as I said) intrude themselves into the secret counsels of their friends: they will needs discover and see those sacred mysteries which it is not lawfull for to see: in place whereunto there is no lawfull access, they love to be walking; enquire they do into the secret deeds and words of Kings and Princes; and notwithstanding there be nothing in the world that causeth tyrants, who must of necessity know all so odious as this kind of people, who be called their eares; (promoters, I meane, and spies) who heare all and bring all unto their eares. The first that ever had about him these Oracons (as a man would say, Princes eares) was *Darius* the yonger; a Prince disdaining himselfe, suspecting all and tearing all men. As for those which were called *Protagoras*, that is to say, Courtiers, Spies and Informers, the *Dionysii*, tyrants of *Sicily*, intermingled such among the Syracusians: whereupon, when the State was altered, those were the first that the Syracusians apprehended and massacred. Alas those whom we call Sycophants are of the conformity, house, and lineage of these curious persons, save only this difference there is, that Sycophants enquire what evil any man hath either designed or committed; whereas our Polypragmons hearken after and discover the very calamities and misadventures of their neighbours, which happen even against their will and purpose: and when they have so done, set them abroad to the view of the whole world. Furthermore, it is said, that the name *Alterius* came up first by occasion of this over-much meddling, called Curiosity. For when there was (by all likelihood) a great famine at *Athenes*, they that had come kept it in and would not bring it abroad to the market, but privily and in the night ground the same into meale within their houses: Now these fellows, named *Alterii*, would go up and down closely hearkening where the querne or mill went, and thereupon rooke the said name. Semblably, as it is reported, the name of Sycophants arose upon the like occasion: for when there was a law made, forbidding that any figne should be carried forth out of the land, such promoters as bewrayed the delinquents, and gave information against those that conveyed figne away, were also thereupon called Sycophants. To conclude therefore, it were not unprofitable for these curious Polypragmons (of whom we have discoursed all this while) to know thus much: That they might be ashamed in themselves to be noted for manners and profession to be like unto those who are accounted the most odious and hateful persons in the world.

of

## Of the tranquillity and contentment of mind.

### The Summary.

**I**N this Treatise a man may see the excellent discourses and most sound arguments of Morall Philosophy; the scope whereof is to make scholars and students therein resolute, and to keep them from wavering and tottering to and fro: notwithstanding that either the skie were ready to fall upon their heads, or the earth to shake and open under their feet. True it is, that in this place *Plutarch* sheweth sufficiently what blindness there is in humane wisdom, when the question is to pronounce and speake precisely, wherein consisteth true repose and assured felicity? For to teach a man whom he calleth virtuous, to search for contentment and quiet rest in his own reason, were as much as to fetch light out of darkness, and life out of death it selfe. And therefore (for this time) needlesse it is to treat long upon this point, considering that we mind not to dispute or declare how sufficient humane learning and Philosophy is in comparison of true Divinity and Theology. For the present this may suffice, that seeing he was no better than a pagan who hath disputed of this theme, let us receive both this discourse and other such, wherein he endeavoureth to withhold us from vice, and bring us unto vertue, as written and penned by a man, guided and conducted by a div and dark light: in which notwithstanding appears certaine sparks of the truth, which as they are not able to show the way sufficiently so they give them to understand, who be far remote from the true light, how miserable and wretched they are every way. Proved he had before, that Flattery, Choler, and Curiosity are vices that overthrow the soule up-side down, and transport it so far off, that it is not at home, nor mistress of her selfe: and after he had taught how a man might reclaim and reduce her againe to her own house, he treateth now of those means whereby she may be kept quiet, peaceable, joyous, and contented within him. For the effecting hereof, at the very entry of this Treatise, he propoeth one expedient meane to attaine thereto, requiring it as a man should fortifie and defend his mind with reasons against the evils and dangers to come: then he consultieth the Epicureans, who for to set a man in peace would make him blockish, senselesse, and good for nothing: he answereth likewise to those who are of opinion, that a man may find a certaine kind of vacation and impossibility without all trouble and molestiation: which done, he sheweth that reason well ruled and ordered is the foundation and ground of our tranquillity: and all in one and the same traine, he teacheth how a man may be furnished and assisted with this reason. Having thus sufficiently in generall terms discoursed of these premises, he doth particularise and decipher the same point by point, giving satisfaction to all complaints, whereby a man may attaine to this contentment and repose of Spirit: the which we have distinguished particularly, and shewed in each one the substance of them, which I thought not good to insert in this place, because the Summary should not exceed over-much. Furthermore, he sheweth how the said counsels be enriched with notable examples, similitudes and sentences: which (no doubt) would have been much more forcible and effectually, if the principle indeed had been joyned therewith, to wit, true piety and religion: which hath been cleave omitted by the Author, who indeed never knew what was the only true and perfect tranquillity of the soule. Howbeit wonderfull it is, how he should proceed so far as he doth, having no other help and meane but his own selfe: which may so much the better serve our turnes, considering that we have aid and guides far more excellent to bring us so far, as to make entry, and take assured possession of that sovereign good and felicity, whereof he here speaketh.

## Of the tranquillity and contentment of mind.

*PLUTARCH to PACCUS sendeth greeting:*

**O**Ver-late it was before I received your letter, wherein you requested me to write somewhat as touching the Tranquillity of the Soule, and withall of certaine places in *Plato's* Dialogue *Timaeus*, which seeme to require more exact exposition: but so it happened, that at the very same time, your friend and mine *Eros*, had occasion to faile with speed to *Rome*, upon the receipt of certaine letters from that right worshipfull Gentleman *Endamius*, by vertue whereof he was to depart suddenly and to repaire unto him with all expedition. By which occasion having not sufficient time and leisure to performe your request in such manner as I purposed, and yet unwilling that the man, coming from me should be feen of you empty-handed: I have collected certain notes, chosen out of those commentaries, which for mine own memory and private use I had compiled long before, concerning this argument, to wit, The Tranquillity and contentment of spirit: supposing that you also demand this present discourse, not for any pleasure that you take to read a treatise penned curiously, and affecting or hunting after fine phrases and exquisite words: but only in regard of some doctrine that may serve your turne and help you to the framing of your life as you ought: knowing withall full well (for the which I do congratulate and rejoyce heartily on your behalfe) that notwithstanding your inward acquaintance, friendship, and favour with the

be it

best and principall persons of the City, and that for eloquence you come behind none that plead causes at the bar in open court, but are reputed a singular Oratour, yet for all that you do not as that Tragical *Merope*, suffer your selfe foolishly and beyond the course of nature to be carried away as he was with the vaine-glory and applause of the multitude, when they do admire and account you happy therefore; but till you keep in memory that which oftentimes you have heard from us; That it is neither a rich Patricians shooe that cureth the gout in the feet, nor a colly and precious ring that healeth the whitlaw or felon in the fingers; nor yet a princely diadem that ease the headache. For what use is there at all of goods and riches to deliver the soule from griefe and sorrow, or to lead a life in rest and repose without cares and troubles? What good is there of great honours, promotions, and credit in court? Unlesse they that have them know how to use the same well and honestly; and likewise if they be without them, can skill how to find no misse of them, but be always accompanied with contentment; never coveting that which is not? And what is this else but reason accustomed and exercised before-hand, quickly to retrain, and oftentimes to reprehend the passionate and unreasonable part of the soule, which is given oftentimes to breake out of her bounds; and not to suffer her to range and vague at her pleasures, and to be transported by the objects represented unto her? Like as therefore *Xenophon* giveth us good counsell: Alwaies to remember the gods, and most of all to worship and honour them when we are in prosperity, to the end that whensoever we stand in need we may more boldly invoke and call upon them, with full assurance that they will supply our necessities, being thus before-hand made propitious and gracious unto us; even so, wise men, and such as are of good conceit, ought alwaies to be furnished and well provided of reasons sufficient to serve their turne for to encounter their passions before they arise, to the end that being once laid upon (store they may do most good when time serveth. For as curst and angry natives by nature, which at every noise that they heare keep an eager baying and barking as if they were affrighted, become quiet and appeased by one only voice which is familiar unto them, and wherewith they have been acquainted; so it is no small paine and trouble to still and compoile the passions of the mind (skittish as they be and grown wild) unlesse a man have ready at hand proper and familiar reasons to repress the same so soone as ever they begin to stir and grow out of order.

Now as touching those who affirme that if a man would live in tranquillity and rest, he ought not to meddle nor deale in many affaires, either in publique or private: First and foremost thus I say, that they would make us pay deare for tranquillity of mind, when they would have us buy it with idleness and doing nothing; which were as much as if they advised each one to do as *Electra* did to her nick brother *Orestes*, when she said unto him,

*Lie still poore wretch and keep thy bed,  
Stir not from thence, and have no dread,*

But surely as this were untoward Physick for the body, to prescribe for the allaying of paine a medicine that would benumme and stupifie the senses; so verily he were no better Physician for the soule, who to deliver her from trouble and griefe, ordained that she should be made idle, sluggish, soft, and tender, which in one word is as much, as to forget all duty, and to betray friends, kinsfolke, and country. Moreover a false position it is: That they enjoy tranquillity of life, who intermeddle not in much businesse: for if that were true, women would live in more repose and quietnesse of mind than men, forasmuch as they keep home and sit still within doores for the most part, and seldom go abroad: but now although it cannot be denied but that the Poet *Hesiodus* saith,

*Cold Boreas a wind that blows  
From Northern pole full oft,  
Doth never pierce the tender skin  
Of damzell smooth and soft.*

Yet many hearts-griefes, troubles, perturbations, discontentments, and cares arising upon jealousy, superstition, pride, ambition, foolish and vaine opinions, (which are so many as hardly a man is able to number them) find way and entrance even to the secret chambers and cabinets of our fine and dainty dames: And *Laertes* who lived apart for the space of twenty years in the country,

*With one old woman and no more,  
Who meat and drinke set him before,*

far from his native country, his own home, from court and kingdome; yet nevertheless he had alwaies dwelling with him sadness of heart, accompanied with languishing, idleness, and heavy silence. And more than that, this non-employment in affairs is that which many times hath cast some men into a dumpeish melancholy and heavinesse of spirit, like to him of whom *Homer* thus writeth,

*Here sae Achilles swift of foot, by him descended right  
From Jupiter, though some he were of Peleus worthy knight,  
And stir'd not from his seat in rage, but in an agryfe  
Would neither fight in open field, nor yet in counsell sit:  
Thus idle he abode so long untill his heart within  
Consum'd, and nothing wist he more, than battail to begin,*

Where-

wherupon being in a passionate humor, and thinking it a great indignity thus to wear away and do nothing, he breaketh forth himself afterwards into this speech:

*But heark sit I close many ships, from action more and lesse*

*And idle look to looke the each by sea and land: but confesse,*

*Inform us has Epictetus himself that great patron and maintainer of pleasure, would not advise nor thinketh meet that those who by nature are of an ambitious and aspiring minde, or desirous of glory, should take their ease and sit still, but by the guidance and direction of their natural inclination, to manage the weighty affaires of State and govern the common weal: saying, that men born for action would be more troubled and discontented in minde with doing nothing, namely when they see how they misse and fail of that which so greatly they desired. Howbeit I must note the absolute folly of the man and his want of judgement in that he seemeth to call and exhort unto the rule of weal-publique not those who are able and sufficient; but such only as cannot away with a private life and sitting still: neither ought we to measure and determine either the tranquillity or trouble of the spirit, by the paucity or multitude of affairs. But rather by their honesty or dishonesty, for as we have already said: no lesse discontentment and trouble, groweth to the minde by neglecting and omitting things honest, than by affecting and committing things dishonest. As for those who have determinately set by one special kind of life, as void of all grief and trouble to wit, some making choice to live as husbandmen in tillage of the grounds; others to lead a single and unmarried life; and some again have esteemed a Kings-life to be it: to such *Alexander* answereth prettily in these verses:*

*I thought one while that rich and married men,  
O Phantas, who were not hard bested  
To pass for life in every hundredtenn,  
Do either groan nor sigh all night in bed:  
Nor as they turn from top to toe  
Effoones, who is me, alas, what shall I do?  
Breake out from heart full penitence and oppresse,  
But sweetly take repose and lie in rest.*

And coming more neerly unto the point, when he perceived that rich men were as restless, and as much disquieted as the poor, he concludeth thus:

*But now, I wot, that life and penitence pain  
Are neer of kin and cousin germain twins,  
Who live in wealth, I see, feel grief of hart,  
And men in honour, of sorrows have their part  
Not lesse than those, whose want and penurie  
Doth aggr with them, and keep them companie.*

And the case is all one as with those that be either timorous of stomach-sick at sea, when they be under sail: for supposing that they shall be better at ease, they go out of a bark into a brigandine, and out of it into a galley: but they finde no good thereby, for that they carry about them still choler and a felle heart, which are the cause of this their distemperance; even so, effoones to change from one course of life unto another, is not the means to deliver the mind from troubles and perturbations, which hinder the repose and quietnes thereof. And what be the troubles? even want of experience in affaires; inconsiderate rashnesse, and default of discretion; insufficiency and want of knowledge, how to live and accommodate things aright to the present occasions. These be they that molest and vex alwaies the rich as the poor: these torment and hurt single persons no lesse than married folk. In regard hereto, some have ingidded the court and civil affaires farewell yet soon after again could not away with a private and quiet life. And for no other cause but this many make all the means they can to be advanced to high places, and to insinuate themselves into Princes courts; and when they have attained thereto, anon repent them and mislike of that course: But true it is the Poet *Phaenias* saith,

*He that hath sick is hard to please,  
He waxes adre that should him ease.*

For his wife is a trouble unto him; the Physician he findeth fault with, and the bed is not to his minde; besides,

*A Friend comes to visit, he welcomes him not he;  
And when he departs, he kindles his thought.*

But afterwards as the disease beginneth to break away or decline, and the former temperance of the body to returne health cometh again which maketh every thing pleasant and agreeable inasmuch as he who the day before was ready upon a peevishnesse of stomach to cast up dainty egges, fine dishes and march-pain, and the fairest-cooked man: that is, will be content the morrow after, yea, and glad with all his heart, to feed savonly and with a good stomach of down right household bread, of some Olives or Cresses; such a contentment and alteration worketh judgement of reason in every kind and course of life. It is reported that King *Alexander* the Great, hearing *Anaxarchus* the Philosopher discoursing and maintaining this Position: That there were worlds innumerable, fell a weeping: & when his friends and familiars about him asked what he ailed, Have I not quoth he good cause to weep, that being as there are an infinite number of worlds, I am not yet the Lord of one?

I.

sonet. Whereas *Crates* having no more than a wallet at his neck, and a poor threadbare cloke upon his back, spent his whole life in mirth and joy, laughing always full merrily as if it had been always a festival holiday. As for *Agamemnon* he complained in these words, and thought it an intolerable burden to be a King and Commander of so great a People.

Woe well you see *Atræus* his fate,  
King *Agamemnon* his;  
Whom *Jupiter* clogs more with cares,  
Than any mortal weight.

Considerwise *Diogenes*, when he was to be bought and sold among other slaves in open market, looked at the Crier who made sale; and lying along the ground, would not so much as rise when he was bidden to stand up, but cavilled with him after a mocking and jesting manner, with his fellows and followers as touching Philosophy, even when he was in prison. Whereas *Phaeton*, notwithstanding he was mounted up into heaven, wept for anger and despatch that no man would give him the rule and regiment over the chariot-reeds belonging to the sunne his father. And as a shoe is wreathed and turned according to the fashion of a crooked or play-foot, but never doth the foot waike to the form of a foeseven so it is for all the dispositions of mens minds; they frame their lives and make them like thereto. For it is not use and custom that causeth the best life to be pleasant also unto them that have made choice thereof, as some one haply is of opinion; but wisdom rather and discretion maketh that life which is best to be also sweetest and most pleasant. Since that therefore the source and fountain of all tranquillity and contentment of spirit is in our selves, let us cleanse and purifie the lame springs as clean as possibly we can, that all outward and casual occurrenses whatsoever may be made familiar and agreeable unto us, knowing once how to use them well.

If things go croffe, we ought not, wis  
To fret; for why? such choler will not boot:  
But he that know's when ought is done amisse,  
To set all straight, shall chide full well, I wot.

*Plato* therefore compared our life to a game of Tables; wherein the plaier is to wifh for the luckiest cast of the dice, but whatsoever his chance is, he must be sure to play it well, and make the best of it. Now of these two points, the former, to wit a good throw, is not in our power and choice; but the other relecth in us, namely, whatsoever our lot is, to take in good worth, and to dispose every thing in that place where it may profit most if it be fortunate well; and contrariwise, if it fell out croffe, where it may do least harm. This (I say) is our part and duty to perform, if we be as wise as we should be. As for brain-fick fooles, and such as know not to carry themselves in this life (like unto those that have crasse and diseased bodies, who neither can abide burning heat nor chilling colde) as in prosperity they spread and let up their tails too high, so in adversity they strike them as low. Troubled they are mightily with both extremities; or to speak more truly, with themselves, as much in the one as the other, and none in that state which yieldeth those things that we call and repute goods. *Theodorus* that infamous Philosopher, who for his profane opinion was named *Athesi*, that is to say, the Atheist, was wont to say: That he delivered his speeches with the right hand to his auditors and scholars; but they took the same with their left: even so ignorant and untaught persons many times when fortune presenteth her self unto them on the right hand, receive her awkly, turning to the left side underemly, and by that means commit many unwarlike and lewd parts. But those that be wise do farre better: for as *Thyme* yieldeth unto Bees the quickest and driest honey; even so they out of the most unfortunate accidents that be, can skill often-times to get somewhat which is agreeable and commodious unto themselves. This is then the first and principall point, wherein a man ought to be trained and exercised, upon this most he study and meditate. And like as that fellow, when he flung a stone at a curst bitch, missed her, and chanced to hit his step-mother, saying whichall: It makes no matter; for it hath not light amisse; even so we, may turn all our own fortune to our own purpose, and make the best use of it, in case things fall out otherwiew than we would or meant. *Diogenes* his hap was to be banished and driven out of his own Country; yet this exile of his proved not ill to him; for by that means and thereupon he began to study and profess Philosophy. *Zeno* the Cittizian had but one Frigate or Flie-boat left him, and hearing newes that both it and all therein was cast away, drowned and perished in the mids of the Sea. O Fortune (quoth he) thou hast done well, to drive us again to put on our poor and simple clothes, and to send us to our gallerie and school of Philosophy. What should hinder us then, but that we may follow the examples of these men, Arathon deprived and put out of office publicke office or magistracy which thou didst exercise? Go and live in the Country: there follow thine own business, and please thy private affairs. Hast thou made sute and great means to be entertained in the Court, and to winde unto special favour with some Prince and Potentate, and after all thy travell suffered repulse? Well, thou shalt live privately at home, without danger, without trouble. Again, Art thou entered into action, and dost thou manage State-affaires, wherein thou hast cares enough, and no time to breathe thy self?

The philosopher waters his hot braine  
Do you so much delay your paine?

And

And if our limmes be dull or sick,  
Refresh the same and make them quick;  
As when a man himself doth see  
Advanc't to honour and high degree;  
His glory, care and pain doth ease,  
No travell then will him displese.

as *Pindarus* saith very well: Art thou in some disgrace, and cast out of favour with reproch, by reason of some slanderous calumination or envie? Thou hast a gale offore-wind at the Poop, which will soon bring thee directly to the Mules and to the Academie: that is to say, to follow thy book, and study Philosophy: for this was *Plato's* help, when he was in disavow with *Derys* the Tyrant. And therefore one means this is (of no small importance) to work contentment in a mans mind; namely, to look back unto the state of famous and renowned persons, and to see whether they (haply) have not suffered the like at any times: as for example: Art thou discontented with thy childlesse estate, for that thy wife hath brought thee no children? Do but mark the Kings of *Rome*, how there was not one of them that left the crown unto his son. Is it poverty that pincheth thee, so as thou art not able to endure it? Tell me which of all the *Beotians* wouldst thou chuse to resemble, sooner than *Epaminondas*? or what *Romane* wouldst thou be like unto, rather than *Fabius*? But say thy wife hath plaid false by thee, and made thee wear horns? Didst thou never read that Epigram of King *Agis* at *Delphos*?

Ἄγιστος ὁ \* περὶ τῶν βασιλέων Ἀγίς ἦ ἀνδρῶν.  
Agis, of sea and land a crowned king,  
Gave me sometime a sacred offering.

And yet as mighty a Prince as he was, you have heard (I am sure) that *Alcibiades* lay with his wife *Tisane*, and she would not bath to call the ionne that she had by him in adultery. *Alcibiades*, especially amongst her women and waiting-maidens, whispering and speeking as much softly unto them: But what of all that? This crooked croffe was no bar unto *K. Agis*, but that he proved the greatest and most renowned personage of all the Greeks in his time. No more was it any hindrance to *Stilpo*, but that he lived all the dayes of his life most merrily, and no Philosopher like to him in those dayes, notwithstanding he had a daughter that plaid the harlot; and when *Metrocles* the Cynick reproched him therewith; Is this (quoth he) my fault or hers? To which when *Metrocles* answered again: The fault is indeed hers, but the infortunity and mishap is yours: What now (replied *Stilpo* again) how can that be? Are not (I pray you) all faults rightly named Slips or Falses? Yes truly, said the other: And are not falses (quoth *Stilpo*) mischances or misfortunes? *Metrocles* could not deny it: Why then (inferred *Stilpo* at last) what are mischances or misfortunes, other than infortunities and mishaps to them whose mischances they are. By this milde kind of *Socrates* and Philosophical reasoning thus from point to point, he shewed that the reprochfull language of this Cynick *Metrocles*, was nothing else, but a vain and foolish baying and barking of a cur-dogge. But on the contrary side, the most part of men are provoked and troubled not only for the vices of their friends, familiars, and kinsfolk, but also of their very enemies. For reprochfull taunts anger envie, malice, and spitefull jealousies, are the mischiefes and plagues (I must needs say) of such especially that have themselves beene most vexed and vexed those also that are wisest and without distrustion no otherwise than the harty and cholerick fies of our neighbours, the peevish and froward dispositions of our familiar acquaintance, and some shrewd demoneons of our servants in that they go about with which we think you also troubling and disquieting your self as much as with any thing else, like unto those Physicians of whom *Sophocles* thus writeth:

Who bitter choler cleanse and frowne  
With drugs as bitter and as frowne.

do uneemly and not wisely for the credit of your person, thus to chide and fret at their passions and imperfections beyond all reason, and shew your self as passionate as they. For surely the affairs and negotiations wherewith you are put in truit, and which be managed by your direction, are not executed ordinarily by the ministry of such persons whose dealings be plain, simple and direct as instruments most meet and fit for such a purpose; but for the most part by crooked round and crabbed pieces. To reform and amend these enormities, I would not have you think that it is either your work and duty or an enterprise otherwise easily performed. But if you making use of these, being fitch by nature as the Chirurgians do of tooth-drawing pinners and those instruments wherewith they bring the edges of a wound together; will shew your self mild, moderate, and tractable in every respect, according as the present occasion will give leave: surely you shall not recieve so much discontentment and displeasure at the untoward and unhappy dealings of others, as joy in the confidence of your own good disposition, as making this account, that such ministry of yours do but their kind like as dogs when they bark: But if you feed and cherish this pusillanimity and weakness of yours, you shall be sure to heap up many troubles and follies of other men ere you be aware; which will be ready to fall and run as into some low ground and hollow trench, unto that weaknesse of yours. For what should I say, that some Philosophers reprove the pity and commiseration which we have for them that are in distress and misery, acknowledging that it is a good and charitable deed to help and succor such as be in calamity, but not commending that condolence and fellow-feeling with our neighbours, as if we yielded with them unto Fortune? And more than fo, the same Philo-

\* Not Tisane  
Tisane, as  
it is commonly  
printed and according  
to which Bodley  
which has transcribed  
and made no  
sense at all  
in Latin, but  
in Homer the  
same name  
is used  
in the  
republick &  
of Socrates  
in the  
lower Latin  
and Sca.

Philosophers will not permit and give us leave, in case we be subject to some vice and ill disposed, for to be seen and known for to grieve and sorrow therefore but rather to correct and amend what is amiss, without any shew at all of sad cheer and heaviness; which being so, consider then how little reason and small cause we have, nay how absurd it were, that we should suffer our selves to be troubled, vexed and angry, in case of all those who commerce and converse with us, deal not so well and kindly as they should? But above all things my good friend *Paccius*, let us see to this, that our self-love deceive and seduce us no less as we beware (I say) that we do not so much than in hatred and detestation of wickedness and sinne in generalis bewray some private and particular regard of our own, in that we seem to abhorre and dread the naughtiness of those that have to do with us. For to be exceeding much moved and beyond all measure affectionate at some time to such and such affairs; to covet (I say) and pursue the same over-hotly, and otherwise than in meet and becoming or contrariwise, to loath, despise, and abhor the same, must needs breed discontentments, suspitions, and offences in those persons by whom we seem either to have been prevented and disappointed of some things, or to have run and fallen too soon upon other: But he that is used to carry himself cheerfully and with moderation in his affaires, (fall out as they will) and can frame to their events; he will soon learn to negotiate and converse with any man in all dexterity and gentle behaviour. Well then, let us see in what again to discourse of those matters which we have intermitted for a while for like as in a few all things that we taste seem at the first bitter & unfavoury; but when we see others take without any shew and signification of dislike the same which we spit out, then we blame no more either meats or drinks. But lay the fault upon our disease; even so, when we perceive that other men have entered upon and gone through the same affairs with great alacrity, and without any pain at all, whereof we complained and made much adolet us for shame cease to find fault and be offended so much at the things. And therefore if at any time there shall befall unto us some adverse and crooked accident against our wills, it will be very good for the working of our contentment in mind, not to pass over but to regard such things as at other times have happened to our minds and as we could wish them; but to confere them together, and by a good medly of them both to darken and dor the worst with laying the better to. But now, whereas we are wont when our eyes be dazzled and offended with beholding that which is too bright and glittering to refresh and comfort our sight again with looking upon pleasant colours of flowers, and green grass; herein contrariwise we direct our minds and cogitations upon heavy and dolorous objects, and violently force our thoughts to be amazed upon the remembrance of calamities and adverse fortunes, plucking them perforce as it were from the consideration of better. And herein in this place methinks I may very fitly apply that sentence to our present purpose, which was said to a buse and curious person,

*As his full minde and most envious heart  
Why other faults do'st thou so quickly spie  
With eagles sight, but in thine own thou art  
Stark blind, or else do'st swim with turtles eye?*

Even so good sir, How is it that you regard and advise to witly your own miserie and calamitie, making it always apparent and fresh in remembrance, but upon your present prosperity you set not minde? And like as ventoses, cupping glasses or boxes draw the most corrupt humors to them out of the flesh; even so you gather against your self the worst thing you have, being no better than the merchant of *Chio*, who when he sold to others a great quantity of the best wine, bought up and down tasting every vessel until he met with that of his own dinner, which began to fower and was little better than sturk naught. This man had a servant who ranne away; who being demanded what his master had done unto him for which he should shew him a pair of heels? Because (quoth he) when he had plenty of that which was good, he would needs seek for naught. And most men verily are of the same nature, who passing by good and desiderable things, which be (as a man would say) the pleasant and potable liquors that they have, betake themselves to that be the harsh, bad, and unfavoury. But *Aristippus* was of another humour; for like a wife man and one that knew his own good, he was always disposed to make the best of every occurrence, railing and liting up himself to that end of the ballance which mounted aloft, and notto that which went downward. It fortuned one day that he lost a fair Mannor or Lordship of his own, & when one of his friends above the rest made most semblance to lament with him, and to beangry with fortune in his behalf: Hear you (quoth he) know you not that your self have but one little alarm in the whole world, and that I have yet three houses more left, with good lands lying to them? Yes mariedo I (quoth the other): Why then (quoth *Aristippus* again) wherefore do we not rather pittie your care, and condole with you? For it is meer madnesse to grieve and sorrow for those things that are lost and gone, and not to rejoyce for that which is saved. And like as little children, if a man chance to take from them but one of their gaunds, among many other toies that they play withall, throw away the rest for very curst-heart, and then fall a puling, weeping and crying, our aright semblably, as much folly and childishnesse it were, if when fortune thwarteth us in one thing, we be so farre out of the way and disquieted therewith, that with our plaints and moans we make all her other favours unprofitable unto us. But will some one say, What is it that we have? Nay, What is it that we have not might be rather say: One man is in honour, another hath a fair and goodly house; one hath a wife to his mind, and another a trusty friend.

*Antipater of Tarzus* the Philosopher, when he drew toward his end and the hour of his death, in recount-

recounting and reckoning up all the good and happy dayes that ever he saw in his life time, left not out of his roll so much as the Bon-voiage that he had when he sailed from *Chio* to *Athens*. And yet we must not forget nor omit those blessings and comforts of this life which we enjoy in common with many more, but to make some reckoning and account of them and namely to joy in this, that we live: that we have our health; that we behold the light of the Sunne; that we have neither warre abroad nor civil sedition and dissension at home; but that the land yeldeth it self arable and to be tilled, and the sea navigable to every one that will, without fear of danger; that it is lawfull for us to speak, and keep silence at our pleasures; that we have liberty to negotiate and deal in affairs, or to rest and be at our repose. And verily the enjoying of these good things present, will breed the greater contentment in our spirit, if we would but imagine within our selves that they were absent; namely, by calling to mind estoons, what a misse and desire those persons have of health, who be sick and diseased? How they wish for peace, who are afflicted with warres? How acceptable it is either to a stranger or a mean person and unknown, for to be advanced unto honour, or to be friended in some famous and puissant City? And contrariwise, what a great griel is this to forgo these things when a man once hath them? And surely a thing cannot be greater nor precious when we have lost it, and the fame of no value and account all the while we have and enjoy it: for the not being thereof, addeth no price and worth thereto. Neither ought we to hold these things right great and excellent, whiles we stand alwayes in fear and trembling to think that we shall be deprived and bereft of them, as if they were some worthy things; and yet all the time that they be sure and safe in our possession, neglect and little regard them, as if they were common and of no importance. But we ought to make use of them whiles they be ours, and that with joy, in this respect especially, that the losse of them, if it shall so fall out, we may bear more meekly and with greater patience. Howbeit, most men are of this opinion (as *Arcelaus* was wont to say) that they ought to follow diligently with their eye and cogitation the Poemes, Pictures, and Statues of others, and come close unto them for to behold and peruse exactly each of them; yea, and consider every part and point therein from one end to the other: whiles in the mean time they neglect and let alone their own lives and manners, notwithstanding there be many unpleasant sights to be spied and observed therein, looking evermore without, and admiring the advancements, welfare and fortunes of others: much like as adulterers who have an eye after their neighbours wives, but loath and fed naught by their own. And verily this one point also is of great consequence, for the setting of a mans minde in sure repose; namely, to consider principally himself, his owne estate and condition; or at least wile (if he do not so) yet to look back unto those that be his inferiours and under him; and not as the most fool do, who love alwayes to look forward and to compare themselves with their betters and superiours. As for example, slaves that are bound in prison and lie in irons, repute them happy who are abroad at liberty; such as be abroad, think their estate blessed who be manumitted and made free; being once franchised, they account themselves to be in very good case if they were Citizens; and being Citizens they esteeme rich men most happy; the rich imagine it a gay matter to be Lords and Princes; Lords and Princes having a long desire to be Kings and Monarchs: Kings and Monarchs aspire still higher and would be Gods; and yet they rest not so, unless they may have the power to flash lightnings and shoot thunder-bolts, alive, as *Jupiter*. Thus whies they evermore come short of that which is above them, and covet still after it, they enjoy no pleasure at all of those things that they have, nor be thankfull therefore.

*The Treasures great I care not for  
Of Gyges King so rich in gold;  
Such a wance I do abhor,  
Nor money will I touch untold.  
I never long'd with Gods above,  
In their high works for to compare:  
Great Seignories I do not love,  
Far from mine eyes all such things are.*

A Thracian he was that protested thus. But some other, that were a Chian, a Cilician or a Bithynian (I dare warrant you) not contenting himself with his part of honor, credit and authority in his own country and among his neighbours and fellow-citizens, would be ready to weep and expostulate the matter with tears, if he might not also wear the habit and ornaments of a Partician or Senator of *Rome*. And say it were granted and allowed him to be a noble Senator, he would not be quiet until he were a Roman Lord Prator: Be he Lord Prator he will aspire to a Consulship; and when he is created Consul, whine he will and crie if he were not nominated and pronounced the former of the evain, but elected in the second place. And I pray you what is all this? What doeth a man herein but gather pretended exules of ingratitude to Fortune, in punishing and chastizing himself after this manner? But the man who is wile and of a sound judgement, in case some one or two among to infinite thousands of us mortall men,

*Whom Sunne from heaven so daily doth behold,  
Who feed on fruits of earth so manifold,*

be either more honoured or richer than himself, will not therefore be cast down straightway, and sit mourning and lamenting for sorrow: but rather in the way as he goeth, and whensoever he cometh abroad, salute and blese with praise and thanksgiving, that good fortune of his and blessed





be employed in any affairs. Contrariwise, policy and managing of the State and weale-publike, the favours of Princes and Potentates are not compassed without much ado; neither can a man be idle at any time, who either is employed in the service of his country, or attendant in the Court. Much feeding upon flesh, and libellal drinking of wine, maketh (I must needs say) the body able and strong, but the mind feeble and weak. Likewise, the continuall and excessive care both in getting and keeping goods, may well augment riches and increase our substance: but surely it is the contempt and despicement of worldly wealth, that is a great help and meane to learning and Philosophy. And therefore we may well conclude; that every man is not fitter for every thing; but herein each one must be ruled by the sage sentence of *Pythius Apollo*, and first learne, To know himselfe; then marke and observe to what one thing he is most framed and inclined: and thereto both apply and employ his wits; and not to offer violence to nature, and draw her perforce, as it were, against the haire, to this or that course of life which she liketh not.

*The horse serves best in chariot at the till;  
The ox at plough, the ground to care and till;  
Ships under the dolphins when they fly;  
Most swiftly then do swim their sides fast by;  
Who would in wood the wild boar chase and slay,  
Must bring with him the hardy hound away.*

Now if there be one that shall be angry with himselfe and displeased, that he is not at once both a savage of the forest, bold and venturous of his own strength, and withall a dainty fine puppy of *Mahra*, cherished and fostered in the lap and bosome of some delicate dame and rich widow; commend me to him for a fenielesse foole of all fooles, and to say a sooth, I hold him also as very an asse and doltish fop, who will needs be such a one as *Empedocles*, *Plato*, and *Democritus*; namely, to write of the world of the nature and true essence of all things therein, and withall, to keep a rich old trot and sleep with her every night, as *Euphorion* did; or else like unto those who kept company with *Alexander* the great, in drinking and gaming (as one *Medius* did) and yet thinke it a great abuse and indignity (forsooth) if he may not be as much admired for his wealth as *Ismenias*, and esteemed no lesse for his vertue than *Epaminondas*. We see that the runners in a race be not discontented at all if they were not the garlands and coronets of wrestlers, but rest pleased with their own rewards, and therein delight and joyce. It is an old saying, and a common proverb: *Sparta* is thy lot and Province, look well to it, and adorne the same: For it is a saying also of wise *Solon*,

*And yet we will not change our boon  
With them for all their wealth and gold:  
Goods passe from maine man full soone,  
Ours vertue is a sure free-hold.*

*Strato* the naturall Philosopher, when he heard that *Menedemus* his Concurrent had many more scholars by far than he: What marvel is that (quoth he) if there be more that desire to be washed and bathed than are willing to be anointed and rubbed. *Aristotle* writing to *Antipater*: It is not meet (quoth he) that *Alexander* alone should thinke highly of himselfe, in that he is able to command so many men; but they also have good cause to be as well conceited of themselves, who have the grace to believe of the gods as they ought. For surely, they that thus can make the best use of their own estate shall never be vexed, nor at their neighbours welfare pine away for very envy. Which of us now doth require or thinke it fit, that the vine-tree should beare figges, or the olive grapes? And yet we our selves, if we may not have all at once, to wit, the superiority and preeminence among rich men, among eloquent orators and learned clerks, both at home and abroad, in the schooles among Philosophers, in the field among warriors; as well among flattering claw-backs as plaine-spoken, and tell-troth friends; to conclude, unless we may go before all pinching penny-fathers in frugality; yea, and surpass all spend-thrifts in riot and prodigality; we are out of our little wits; we accuse our selves daily like lycophants; we are unthankfull; we repine and grumble as if we lived in penury and want. Over and besides, do we not see that Nature her selfe doth reach us sufficiently in this point? For like as she hath provided for sundry kinds of bruite and wild beastes, divers sorts of food: for all feed not upon flesh, all peck not upon seeds and grains of plants, neither do all live upon roots which they worke for under the ground: even so the hath bestowed upon mankind many means to get their living, while some live by grafting and feeding of cattell, others by tillage, some be Fishers, others Fishers: and therefore ought every man to chuse that course of life which forthest best with his own nature, and wholly to apply and set his mind thereto; leaving unto others that which pertaineth to them, and not to reprove and convince *Hesiodus* when he thus speaketh, although not to the full and sufficiently to the point:

*The Potter to Potter doth beare envy,  
One Carpenter to another hath a spitefull eye.*

For jealous we are not only of those who exercise the same art, and follow that course of life which we do; but the rich also do envy the learned and eloquent, noble men the rich, advocates and lawyers capions and litigious sophisters; yea, and (that which more is) gentlemen free-borne, and descended from noble and ancient houses, envy Comedians when they have acted well and with a good grace upon the stage in great Theaters; dancers also and jesters in the court, whom they see

to be in favour and credit with Kings and Princes; and whiles they do admire these, and thinke them happy for their good speed and successe in comparison of their own doings, they fret and grieve, and out of measure torment themselves. Now, that every one of us hath within himselfe treasures laid up of contentment and discontentment, and certaine turns of good things and evil: is not bestowed as *Homer* said, Upon the doore-sill and entry of *Japetus* house; but placed in each of our own minds, the divers passions whereunto we are subject do sufficiently prove and shew. For such as are foolish and undisciplined, do neglect and let go the very good things that presently they have, and never care to enjoy them, to intentive and earnestly bent are their minds and spirits always to that which is coming, and future expectation: whereas wise men on the contrary side, call to their first remembrance those things that are past, so as they seem to enjoy the same as if they were present, yea, and to make that which is no more to be as beneficiall unto them, as if they were ready at hand. For surely that which is present, yielding it selfe to be touched by both the least moment of time that is, and immediately passing our senses, seemeth unto fooles to be none of ours, nor any more to concern us. But like as the Roper which is painted in the Temple of *Pluto*, or description of Hell, suffereth an asse behind him to gnaw and cate as fast as he twisteth it of the Spart-broome; even so the unthankfull and fenielesse oblivion of many ready to cate and devour all good things as they passe by, yea, and to dissipate and cause to vanish away every honest and notable action, all vertuous deeds, duties, delectable recreations and pleasant pastimes, all good fellowship and mutual society, and all amiable conversation one with another, will not permit that the life be one and the same, linked (as it were) and chained by the copulation of things passed and present; but dividing yesterday from to day, and this day from the morrow, as if they were sundry parts of our life, bringeth in such a forgetfulness, as if things once past had never been. As for those verry who in their disputations and Philosophical discourses admit no augmentation of bodies, affirming that every substance continually fadeth and vanisheth, would make us believe in word, that each one of us every houre altereth from himselfe, and no man is the same to day that he was yesterday; but these for fault of memory not able to retaine and keep those things which are done and past, so not to apprehend and esteeme call them againe to mind, but suffer every thing to passe away and run as it were through a sieve, do not in word, but in deed and effect, make themselves void and empty every day more than other, depending only upon the morrow, as if those things which were done the yere past, of late, and yesterday, nothing appertained unto them, nor ever were at all. This is therefore one thing that hindereth and troubleth that equanimity and repose of spirit which we seek for: and yet there is another that doth it more, and that is this: Like as flies creeping upon the smooth places of glasses or mirrors, cannot hold their feet but must fall down, but contrariwise they take hold where they meet with any roughnesse, and stick fast to rugged flaws, that they can find; even so these mengliding and gaining over all delectable and pleasant occurrences, take hold of any adverse and heavy calamities, those they leave unto and remember very well; or rather as (by report) there is about the City *Olynthus* a certaine place, into which any flies called *Beele* enter in once, they cannot get forth againe, but after they have kept a turning about, and fetching compasses round to no purpose a long time, they die in the end, whereupon it tooke the name of *Cantharolesthon*; semblably, men after they fall to the reckoning up and commemoration of their harmes and calamities past, are not willing to retire back, nor to leech themselves and give over multiplying thereupon still. And yet contrariwise, they ought to do after the manner of Painters, who when they do paint a table, do lay upon the ground, or by a course of dead and doltish colours such as be fresh, gay, and gallant, for to palliate and in some sort to hide the unpleasantnesse of the other, they ought (I say) to smother and keep down the heavinesse of the heart occasioned by some grosse mishaps, with those that have fallen out to their mind: for, to obliterate and wipe them out of their mind quite, and to be freed from them cleane it is not possible: and surely the harmonie of this world is reciprocal and variable, compounded (as it were) of contraries, like as we do see in a harp or bow; neither is any earthly thing under the ope of heaven pure, simple and sincere without mixture. But as Musick doth consist of base and treble founds; and Grammar of letters, which be partly vocal, and partly mute, to wit, vowels and consonants, and as it is not to be counted a Grammarian and Musician, who is offended and displeased with either of those contrarie elements of the Art, but he that affecteth the one as well as the other, and knoweth how to use and mixe both together with skill for to serve his purpose: even so considering that in the occurrences of mans life there be so many contraries, and one weigheth against another in manner of counterpoise: for (according to *Euclid*)

*It cannot stand with our affairs,  
That good from bad should parted be:  
A medley then of mixed pairs  
Doth well, and serves in each degree.*

It is not meet that we should let our hearts fall and be discouraged with the one sort whensoever it happeneth, but we ought according to the rules of harmony in Musick, to stop the point alwaies of the worst with strokes of better, and by overcasting misfortunes (as it were) with a vaile and curtaine of good haps, or by setting one to the other, to make a good composition and a pleasant accord in our life, fitting and sorting our own turns. For it is not as *Alexander* said,



Each man so soon as he is born,  
One spirit good or angel hath,  
Which him afflicts both even and morn,  
And guides his steps in every path.

But rather according to Empedocles: No sooner are we come into the world, but each one of us hath two angels, called *Dæmones* (I say) are allotted unto us, for to take the charge and government of our life, unto which he attributeth divers and sundry names,

Here Clithonic was, downward look, that hath,  
Heliope eke, who turneth to the sun,  
And Deris, she, that loves in blind to bath,  
Harmonie smiles ever and anon,  
Calisto faire, and Eiche foule among,  
Thoofoa swift, Dinza stout and strong,  
Nemertes who is lovely white and pure,  
But Alaphie with fruit black and obscure.

Insomuch, as our Nativitie receiving the seeds of each of all these passions blended and confuted together, and by reason thereof the course of our life not being uniforme, but full of disordered and unequal depollitions, a man of good and found judgement ought to wish and desire at Gods hand the better, to expect and look for the worse, and to make an use of them both, namely, by abridging and cutting off that which is excessive and too much: For not he only (as *Epicurus* was wont to say) shall come with most delight and pleasure to see the morrow-sun, who made least account thereof on the even; but riches also, glory, authority, and rule doth most rejoyce their hearts who least feared the contrary: for the vehement and ardent desire that a man hath to any of these things, doth imprint likewise an exceeding feare of forgoing and losing the same, and thereby maketh the delight enjoying them to be feeble and nothing firme and constant; even as the blaine and flame of the fire whil he is blown and driven to and fro with the wind. But the man who is so much afflicted with reason, that he is able without feare and trembling to say unto Fortune:

ἡδὺ μὲν ἄρτι φίλος, δάριον δ' ἄγος ἦν ἀνέλεστος.  
Welcome to me, if good thou bringest ought,  
And if thou faile, I will take little thought.

Or thus:

Will ma'st thou take from me some joy of mind,  
But little grife, thou shalt me leave behind.

Hath this benefit by his confidence and resolution: that as he taketh most joy of his good fortunes when they are present; so he never feareth the losse of them, as if it were a calamity insupportable. And herein we may as well imitate the disposition and affection of *Anaxagoras*, who when he heard the news of his sons death, I knew full well (quoth he) when I begot him that die he must: and after his example, whensoever any infortunitie hapneth, to be ready with these and such like speeches: I know that riches were not permanent, but transitory and for a day: I never thought other, but that they who conferred these dignities upon me both might and could deprive me of them: I witt, that I had a good wife and virtuous dame, but withall a woman and no more: I was not ignorant that my friend was a man (that is to say) a living creature by nature mutable, as *Plato* used to say. And verily, such preparations and dispositions of our affections as these, if peradventure there shall befall unto us: any thing against our intent and mind, but not contrary to our expectation as they will never admit such passionate words as these, (I never thought it would have fallen out so, I was in great hope of other matters, and little looked I for this) so they shall be able to rid us of all sudden paintings and leppings of the heart, of unquiet and disorderly beating of the pulis, and of soon faying and litle the furious and troublesome motions of impatience. *Carnaeides* was wont in time of greatest prosperity to put men in mind of a change; for that the thing which hapneth contrary to our hope and expectation is that which altogether and wholly doth breed sorrow and griefe. The kingdom of the Macedonians was not an handful to the Roman Empire and dominion; and yet King *Perseus*, when he had lost *Macedonia*, did not only himself lament his own infortune most piteously, but in the eyes also of the whole world he was reputed a most unfortunate and miserable man. But behold *Pullus Aemilius*, whose hap it was to vanquish the said *Perseus*, when he departed out of that Province and made over into the hands of another his whole army, with great command both of land and sea, was crowned with a chaplet of flowers, and so did sacrifice unto the gods with joy and thanksgiving in the judgement of all men, worthily extolled and reputed as happy. For why? when he received first that high Commission and mighty power withall, he knew full well, that he was to give it over and resigne it up when his time was expired; whereas *Perseus* on the contrary fide, lost that which he never made account to lose. Certes even the Poet *Homer* hath given us very well to understand how forible that is which hapneth besides hope and unlooked for: when he bringeth in *Ulysses* upon his returne, weeping for the death of his dog; but when he teate by his own wife, who shed teares plentifully, wept not at all; for that he had long before at his leisure, against this coming home of his prevented and brought into subjection (as it were) by the rule of reason, that passion which otherwise he knew well enough would have broken out; whereas looking for nothing lesse than the death of his dog, he fell suddenly into it, as having had

had no time before to repress the same. In sum, of all those accidents which light upon us contrary to our will: some grieve and vex us by the course and instinct of nature: others (and those be the greater part) we are wont to be offended and discontented with, upon a corrupt opinion and foolish custome that we have taken: and therefore we should do very well, against such temptations as these, to be ready with that sentence of *Alexander*:

No harme nor losse, thou dost sustaine:  
But that thou list so far to faile.

And how (quoth he) can it concerne thee?

For if no flesh without it wound,  
Nor soule within, then all is found.

As for example, the base parentage and birth of thy father, the adultery of thy wife, the losse or repulse of any honour dignity, or preeminence: for what should let notwithstanding all these crosses, but that thy body and mind both may be in right good plight and excellent estate? And against those accidents which seem naturally to grieve and trouble us, to wit, maladies, paines, and travells: death of deare friends, and toward children, we may oppose another saying of *Empiricus* the Poet:

Alas, alas, a day well-a-day,  
But why alas, and well away?  
Nought to me hath yet been dead,  
But that which daily men have felt.

For no remembrance nor reason is so effectfull to restrain and stay this passionate and sensuall part of our mind, when it is ready to slip and be carried headlong away with our affections, as that which caleb to remembrance the common and naturall necessity; by means whereof a man, in regard of his body, being mixed and compounded, doth expole and offer this handle (as it were) and vantage whereby fortune is to take hold when she wrestleth against him; for otherwise, in the greatest and most principall things he abideth fast and sure. King *Demetrius* having forced and won the city *Milagras*, demanded of *Scilpathe* the wife *Philosopher*, whether he had lost any goods in the sackage and pillage thereof? Sir (quoth he) I saw not so much as one man carrying any thing of mine away; semblably, when fortune hath made what spoile she can, and taken from us all other things, yet somewhat there remaineth still within our selves,

Which Greeke do what they can or may,  
Shall neither drive nor beare away.

In which regard we ought altogether to depresse, debate, and throw down our humane nature, as if it had nothing firme, stable and permanent, nothing above the reach and power of fortune: but contrariwise, knowing that it is the least and worst part of man, and the same fragile, brittle, and subject to death, which maketh us to lie open unto fortune and her assaults; wheres in respect of the better part we are masters over her, and have her at command, when there being feared and founded most surely the best and greatest things that we have, to wit, sound and honest Opinions, Arts, and Sciences, good discourses tending to vertue, which beall of a substance incorruptible, and whereof we cannot be robbed: we (I say) knowing thus much, ought in the confidence of our selves to carry a mind invincible and secure against whatsoever shall happen, and be able to say that to the face of Fortune, which *Socrates*, addressing his speech indeed covertly to the Judges, seemed to speake against his two accusers, *Anitus* and *Melitus*: Well may *Anitus* and *Melitus* bring me to my death, but hurt or harme me they shall never be able. And even so Fortune hath power to bring a disease or sickness upon a man his goods she can take away, raise she may a slander of him to tyrant, prince, or people, and bring him out of grace and favour; but him that is virtuous, honest, valiant, and magnanimous she cannot make wicked dishonest, base-minded, malicious, and envious: and in one word, she hath not power to take from him a good habitude, settled upon wisdom and discretion, which wheresoever it is always present, doth more good unto a man for to guide him how to live, than the pilot at sea for to direct a ship in her course; for surely the pilot be he never so skillfull, knoweth not how to still the rough and furling billows when he would, he cannot allay the violence of a tempest or blustering wind, neither put into a safe harbor and haven, or gaine a commodious bay to anchor in at all times, and in every coast, would he never so faire, nor resolutely without feare and trembling, when he is in a tempest, abide the danger and undergoe all: thus far forth only his art serveth so long as he is in no despaire, but that his skill may take place:

To strike main-sail, and down the lee  
To let ship ball, until he see  
The foot of mast no more above  
The sea: while he doth not remove,  
But with one hand in other fist  
Quaith and paneth all agast.

But the disposition and staid mind of a prudent man, over and besides that it bringeth the body into a quiet and calme estate, by dissipating and dispatching for the most part the occasions and propensities of diseases, and that by continent life, sober diet, moderate exercises, and travels in measure: if happily there chance some little beginning or indisposition to a passion, upon which the mind is ready to run it selfe, as a ship, upon some blind rock under the water, it can quickly

CURSE

turne about his nimble and light cross-faile yards, as *Asclepiades* was wont to say, and so avoid the danger.

But say there come upon us some great and extraordinary accident, such as neither we looked for, nor be able by all the power we have, either to overcome or endure: the haven is neare at hand, we may swim safely thither out of the body, (as it were) out of a vessell that leaketh and taketh water, and will no longer hold a passenger: for as foolish folke, it is the feare of death, and not the love of life that causeth them to cling and stick so close to the body, hanging and clapping thereunto no otherwise than *Myfse* to the wild fig tree, when he feared with great horror the gulph *Charibides* roaring under him;

*Whereas the winds would not permit to stay,*

*Nor suffer him to row or saile away:*

Displeased infinitely, in the one, and dreading fearfully the other. But he that in some measure (be it never so little) knoweth the nature of the soule, and casteth this with himselfe: That by death there is a passage out of this life either to a better state, or at leastwise not to a worle: Certes, he is furnished with no meane wayfaring provision to bring him to the security of mind in this life. I meane the fearelesse contempt of death: for he that may (so long as vertue and the better part of the soule (which indeed is proper unto man) is predominant) live pleasantly; and when the contrary passions, which are enemies to nature, do prevaile, depart resolutely and without feare, laying thus unto himselfe:

*God will me suffer to be gone,*

*When that I will my selfe, avow,*

What can we imagine to happen unto a man of this resolution, that should encumber, trouble, or terrifie him? For whosoever he was that said, I have prevented thee (O Fortune) I have stopped up all thy avenues, I have intercepted and choaked all the waies of access and entry: surely he tormented himselfe not with bars and barricados not with locks and keyes, ne yet with mures and walls, but with Philosophicall and sage lesions, with sententious laws, and with discourses of reason, whereof all men that are willing be capable. Neither ought a man to discredit the truth of these and such like things which are committed in writings, and give no beliefe unto them, but rather to admire, and with an affectionate ravishment of spirit embrace and imitate them: yea, and withall to make a triall and experiment of himselfe: first in smaller matters, proceeding afterwards to greater, untill he reach unto the height, and in no wise to shake off such medications, nor to shitt off and leek to avoid the exercise of the mind in this kind, and in to doing he shall happily find no such difficulty as he thinketh. For as the effeminate delicacy and nicenesse of our mind, amuled alwaies and joying to be occupied in the most easie objects, and retiring it selfe from the cogitation of those things that fall out crosse, unto such as stand unto greatest pleasure, causeth it to be soft and tender, and imprinteth a certaine daintynesse, not able to abide any exercise: so if the same mind would by custome learne and exercise it selfe in apprehending the imagination of a malady, of paine, travell, and of banishment, and enforce it selfe by reason to withstand and strive against each of these accidents, it will be found and seen by experience, that such things which through an erroneous opinion were thought painefull, grievous hard, and terrible, are for the most part but vaine indeed, deceitfull, and contemptible; like as reason will shew the same if a man would consider them each one in particular. Howbeit, the most part mightily feare and have in horror that verse of *Menander*,

*No man alive can safely say,*

*This case shal never move me off,*

As not knowing how materiall it is to the exempting and freeing of a man from all griefe and sorrow, to meditate before-hand, and to be able to looke open-eyed full against fortune, and not to make those apprehensions and imaginations in himselfe soft and effeminate, as if he were fostered and nourished in the shadow under many foolish hopes which ever yeeld to the contrary, and be not able to resist so much as any one. But to come againe unto *Menander*, we have to answer unto him in this manner: True it is indeede, there is no man living able to say, This or this shall never happen unto me; howbeit, thus much may a man that is alive say and affirme: So long as I live I will not do this, so wit, I will not lie; I will never be a couzenor nor circumvent any man; I will not defraud any one of his own: neither will I fore-lay and surprize any man by a wile. This lieth in our power to promise and performe and this is no small matter, but a great meanes to procure tranquillity and contentment of mind. Whereas contrariwise, the remorse of conscience when as a man is privy to himselfe, and must needs confesse and say: These and these wicked parts I have committed, seetheth in the soule like an ulcer and sore in the flesh, and leaveth behind it repentance in the soule, which fretteth, galleth, gnaweth, and seetheth in a bleeding flesh continually. For whereas all other sorrows, griefes, and anguishes, reason doth take away; repentance only it doth breed and engender, which together with shame biteth and punisheth it selfe: for likes they who quiver and shake in the feavers called *Epiols*: or contrariwise burne by occasion of other agues, are more afflicted and more at ease than those who suffer the same accidents by exterior causes, to wit, winters cold or summers heat; even so all mischances and casual calamities, bring with them lighter dolors and paines as comming from without. But when a man is forced thus to confesse,

*Myself I may well thank for this,*  
*None else for it I blame worthy is.*

which is an ordinary speech of them who lamentably bewail their sins from the bottom of their hearts, it causeth grief and sorrow to be so much more heavy, and it is joynt with shame and infamy; whereupon it cometh to passe, that neither houle richly and finely furnished, nor heaps of gold and silvers; no parentage or nobility of birth, no dignity of estate and authority how high soever, no grace in speech; no force and power of eloquence: can yeeld unto a mans life such a calm (as it were) and peaceable tranquillity: as a foul and conscience cleare from wicked deeds, (in still cogitations and leaud designs, which having the source and fountain of life (I meane the inward disposition of the heart) not troubled and polluted, but clear and clemid; from whence all good and laudable actions do flow and proceed, and the same do give a lively, cheertull, and effectual operation, even by some divine instinct and heavenly inspiration, together with a bold courage and laughtie mind, and withall yield the remembrance of a virtuous and well led life, more sweet, pleasant, firm and permanent, than is that hope whereof *Pindarus* writeth, the muric and iostrefle of old age: for we must not think, that (as *Carnedes* was wont to say) the Centners or pernuming pannes wherein sweet incense is burned, retain and render the pleasant odour a long time after they be empty, and that the virtuous deeds of a wife and honest man should not alwayes leave behind them in the soul an amiable, delightfull, and fresh remembrance thereof by means whereof, that inward joy being watered, is ever green, buddeth and flourisheth still, despising the shamefull error of those who with their plaints, moans, and wailings, defame this life of ours; laying: It is a very hell and place of torments, or else a region of confined and exiled soules, into which they were sent away and banished of heaven. And here I cannot choose but highly commend that memorable saying of *Diogenes*, who seeing once a certain stranger at *Lacedaemon* dressing and trimming himselfe very curiously against a feastivall and high day: What means all this (quoth he) my good friend? to a good and honest man is not every day in the year a feast and holy day; yea verily, and if we be wile we should think all dayes double feasts, and most solemn gaudy dayes: for surely this world is a right sacred and holy temple, yea, and most divine, becoming the Majesty of God unto which him: n is inducted and admitted at his nativity, not to gaze and look at statues and images cut and made by mans hand, and such as have no motion of their own, but to behold those works and creatures which that divine spirit and almighty power in wonderfull wisdom and providence hath made, and shewed unto us sensible; and yet (as *Plato* saith) representing and resembling intelligible powers, from whence proceed the beginnings of life and moving, namely, the Sunne, the Moon, the Starres; what should I speak of the Rivers which continually send out fresh water still; and the earth which bringeth forth nourishment for all living creatures, and yeeldeth nutriment likewise to every plant? Now if our life be the imitation of sacred myteries, and (as it were) a profession and entrance into so holy a religion of all others most perfect, we must needs esteeme it to be full of contentment and continual joy: neither ought we (as the common multitude doth) attend and wait for the feasts of *Saturnus*, *Bacchus*, or *Mizera*, and such other high dayes wherein they may solace themselves, make merry and laugh buying their mirth and joy for money, giving unto players, jesters, dancers, and such like their hire and reward for to make them laugh. In which feasts and solemnities, we need to fit with great contentment of mind, arraied decently according to our degree and calling. (for no man rich to mourn and lament, when he is possessed in the myteries of *Ceres*, and received into that confraternity; no man sorroweth when he doth behold the goodly fights of the *Pythia*; games; no man hungrith or fallest during the *Saturnals*;) what an indignity and shame is it then that in those feasts which God himselfe hath instituted, and wherein (as a man would say) he leadech the dance, or is personally himselfe to give institution and induction, men should contaminate, pollute and profane as they do, dishonoring their life for the most part with weeping, wailing, sighing and groaning; or at the leastwise in deep thoughts and pensive cares. But the greatest shame of all other is this, that we take pleasure to hear the Organs and instruments of musick found pleasantly: we delight to hear birds singing sweetly; we behold with right good will, beasts playing, sporting, dancing, and skipping fealty; and contrariwise we are offended when they howl, roar, frantic, and gnash their teeth, as also when they shew a fierce, fierie, and hideous look; and all this while seeing our own lives heavy, sad, travailed and oppressed with most unpleasant passions, most intricate and inexplicable affairs, and overwhelmed with infinite and endless cares; yet we will not afford our selves some rest and breathing time; nay, (that which more is) we will not admit the speech and remonstrances of our friends and familiars, whom if we would give ear unto, we might without fault-finding receive the present, remember with joy and thanksgiving that which is past and without distrust, suspicion and fear, expect with joyfull lightome hope that which is to come.

\* O. R. se.  
more banks  
after they be  
cut down, and  
left void, as  
some ex-  
pound.

## Of unseemly and naughty Bashfulness.

## The Summary.

**A**lthough it be needlesse to stand curiously upon the concatenation and coherence of these matters handled by Plutarch, how they be knit and linked together, considering that he penned these discourses of this at sundry times; and both they who have reduced them into one Volume; and those also who have translated them out of Greek into other languages, have not all followed one order: yet I think verily that this present Treatise, as concerning Naughty Bashfulness, is fitly joyned next to the former, as touching the purpose and tranquillity of the spirit. For one of the greatest shocking cracks that our soul can receive in her tranquillity, is, when she is secretly and by stealth may be lifted from her seat, for to drive a man to those things which may trouble him immediately, and much more afterwards. Now this evill bashfulness hath his vicious and dangerous quality, to know how to seduce and draw us; by fair semblant, and nevertheless to trouble and confound after a strange fashion the contentment of our spirits, as appeareth plainly in this little book, which deserveth to be well perused and considered by all sorts of people. Now after he hath shewed what this evill bashfulness is; he declareth that it is no lesse pernicious and hurtfull then impudency; adding moreover that we ought to take good heed, lest in avoiding it, we fall into contrary extremes, as they do who are envious, shamelesse, obstinate, idle and dissolute. Then he proceedeth to teach us that the first and principall preferative against this poison is, to hold it for to be most dangerous and deadly, which he doth verifie and prove by notable examples. Which done, he prescribeth particularly, and from point to point, the incommunities, perils, and misfortunes that come by naughty bashfulness, applying thereto good and proper remedies, giving with all many sage and wise counsels, drawn out of Philosophy, tending to this scope and mark; that neither the regard of our friends, kinsfolke and familiars, nor yet the respect of any thing else besides, ought to draw from our thoughts, our mouth or hands, any thing contrary to the duty of an honest man: which both for the present, and also all the rest of our life may leave in our souls, civility or shew of repentance, sorrow and heaviness. In conclusion, to the end that we should not commit those deeds in haste, which afterwards we may repent at leisure; he sheweth that we ought to have before our eyes the hurt and inconveniences caused before by evill bashfulness; that the consideration thereof might keep us from falling into fresh and new faults.

## Of unseemly and naughty Bashfulness.

**A**mong those plants which the earth bringeth forth, some there are which not only by their own nature be wilde and savage, and withall bearing no fruit at all; but (that which worke is) in their growth do hurt unto good seeds and fruitful plants; and yet skillfull gardeners and husbandmen, judge them to be arguments and signes not of bad ground, but rather of a kinde and fat soil: semblably the passions and affections of the mind, simply and in themselves are not good, howbeit they spring as buds and flowers from a towardly nature, and such as gently can yeeld it self to be wrought, framed, and brought into order by reason. In this kinde I may range that which the Greeks call *Αἰσχυρία*, which is as much to say, as a foolish and rustical shamesfastness; no evill signe in it self, howbeit the cause of evill and naughtyne. For they that begiven to bash and shame over-much and when they should not, commit many times the same fault that they do, who are shamelesse and impudent: here only is the difference, that they, when they trespasse and do amisse, are displeased with themselves and grieve for the matters; whereas these take delight and pleasure therein: for he that is gracelesse and past shame, hath no sense or feeling of grief when he hath committed any foul or dishonest act; contrariwise, whosoever be apt to bash and be ashamed quickly, are soon moved and troubled anon, even at those things which seem only dishonest, although they be not indeed. Now, lest the equivocation of the word might breed any doubt, I mean by *Δυσέπαις*, an immoderate bashfulness, whereby one blusheth for shame exceedingly and for every thing, whereupon such an one is called in Greek *Δυσέπαις*, for that his visage and countenance together with his mind chanceth fallesth and is called down for like as *Κατὰρῆς* in Greek is defined to be a sad heaviness, which causeth a down look: even so, that shame and dimaiednesse which maketh us that we dare not look a man in the face as we should and when we ought, they call *Αἰσχυρία*. And hereupon it was that the great Orator Demosthenes said of an impudent fellow, that he had in his eyes not *καρὰ*, but *προσὰς*, i.e. harlots playing prettily upon the ambiguity of the word *καρὰ*, which signifieth both the round apple in the eyes, and also a maiden or virgin: but contrariwise the over-bashfull person (whom we speak of) sheweth in his countenance a mind too soft, delicate and effeminate, and yet he flattereth himself herein, and calleth that fault (wherein the impudent person surpasseth him) Shamefastnesse. Now *Cato* was wont to say, That he loved to see young folk rather to look bluish than to look pale; as having good reason to acquaint and teach youth to dread

shame

shame, and reproch more than blame and reproof; yea, and insuspicion or obloquie, rather than perill or danger.

Howbeit, we must abridge and cut off the excesse and over-much, which is in such timidity and fear of reproch; for that often-times it cometh to passe in some, who dreading no lesse to hear ill and be accused, than to be chastised or punished: for false hearts are frighted from doing their duty, and in no wise can abide to have an hard word spoken of them. But as we are not to neglect these that are so tender, nor ought to feed them in their feebleness of heart; so again, we must not praise their disposition who are stiff and inflexible: such as the Poet describeth, when he saith:

*Who farlesse is, and bachelr not  
all men just to behold;  
In whom appears the dogged force  
of Anaxarchus bold:*

but we ought to compound a good mixture and temperate medley of both extremities, which may take away this excessive obtinacy which is impudence, and that immoderate modesty which is meer childishnesse and imbecillity. True it is that the cure of these two maladies is difficult; neither can this excesse both in the one and the other be cut off without danger. For like as the skillfull husbandman when he would rid the ground of some wild bushes and fruitlesse plants, he layeth at them mainly with his grubbing hook or mattock, until he have fetched them up by the roots; or else let fire unto them and to burne them; but when he comes to point or cut a vine, an apple-tree, or an olive, he carrieth his hand lightly for fear of wounding any of the sound wood, in fetching of the superfluous and rank branches, and so kil the heart thereof; even so the Philosopher, intending to pluck out the mind of a young man, either envie, an unkind and savage plant, which hardly or uneth at all may be made gentle and brought to any good use; or the uncalonable and excessive greedinesse of gathering good or dissolute and disordained lust, he never seareth at all in the cutting thereof, to draw blood, to pricke and pierce hard to the bottom, yea, and make a large wound and deep scar. But when he seeth to the keen-edge of remembrance and speech, to the tender and delicate part of the soul, for to cut away that which is excessive or over-much, to wit, wherein is seated this unmeasurable and sheepish bashfulness, he hath a great care and regard, lest here he be aware he cut away therewith that ingenuous and honest shamesfastnesse that is so good and commendable. For we see that even nurses themselves when they think to wipe away the filth of their little infants, and to make them clean; if they rub any thing hard, otherwhiles fetch off the skin withall; make the flesh raw and put them to pain. And therefore we must take heed, that in seeking by all means to do out this excessive bashfulness utterly in young people, we make them not braver-faced, such as are not what is said unto them, and blush thereat no more then a black dog, and in one word standing still in any thing that they do; but rather we ought to do, as they, who demolish and pull down the dwelling-houses that be near unto the temples of the gods; who for fear of touching any thing that is holy or sacred, suffer those ends of the edifices and buildings to stand still, which are next and joyned close thereto; yea, and those they underprop and stay up, that they should not fall down of themselves; even so (I say) beware & fear we must, whiles we be tempering about this immoderate shamesfastnesse for to remove it, that we draw not away with it grace & modesty, gentleness and debonary, which be adjacents and lie close unto it; under which qualities lyeth lurking and sticketh close to, the foresaid naughty bashfulness, flattering him that is possessed therewith, as if he were full of humanity, courtesy, civility and common sense; not opinionative, severe, inflexible and untractable: which is the reason, that the Stoick Philosophers, when they dispute of this matter, have distinguished by several names, this aptnesse to blush or over-much bashfulness, from modesty and shamesfastnesse indeed: for fear lest the equivocation and ambiguity of one common word, might give some occasion and vantage to the vicious passion it self to do some hurt. As for us, they must give us leave to use the terms without calumination, or rather permit us to distinguish according to *Homer*, when he saith,

*Shame is a thing that doth not mickle harm, and passeth as much.*

neither without good cause is it, that in the former place he putteth down the harm and discomfort thereof; for sure 'tis not profitable but by the means of reason, which cutteth off that which is superfluous, and leaveth a mean behind.

To come then unto the remedies thereof; if behoved them first & foremost, who are given to blushing at every small matter, to believe and be persuaded; that he is possessed with such an hurtfull passion: (now there is nothing hurtfull, which is good and honest) neither ought he to take pleasure and delight therein, he shall be pickled in the ear with praises and commendations, when he shall hear him called gentle, jolly and courteous, instead of grave, magnanimous and just; neither let him do as *Pegasus* the horse in *Euripides*, who

*When mount his back Bellerophon's should,  
With trembling stepp'd more than his own self would,*

that is to say, give place and yeeld after a base manner to the demands and requests of every man; or object himself to their will and pleasure, for fear (forsooth) lest one should say of him *Lo, what a hard man is this!* See how inexorable he is. It is reported of *Bocchorus* a King of *Egypt*, that being rough, fell & austere; the goddess *Isis* sent the serpent called *Apis*, for to wind and wreath about this head, & so to cast a shadow over him from above, to the end that he might be put in mind to judge

M 2

right:

aright: but this excessive shamefastness which always overpreadeth and covereth them, who are not manly but faint-hearted and effeminate, not suffering them once to dare, to deny, or gaining any thing, surely, would avert and withdraw judges from doing justice, close up their mouths, shut in counsels and consultations should deliver their opinion frankly; yea and cause them both to say and do many things inconsiderately against their mind, which otherwhiles they would not. For look whosoever is most unreasonable and importunate, he will ever tyrannize and domineer over such an one, forcing by his impudency the bashfulness of the other: by which means, it cometh to passe that this excessive shame like unto a low piece of soft ground which is ready to receive all the water that comes, and apt to be overflowed and drowned, having no power to withstand and repulse any encounter, nor say a word to the contrary whatsoever is proposed, yeeldeth access to lewdest designs, acts and passions that be. An evil gardian and keeper of childhood and young age, is this excessive bashfulness, as *Brutus* well said, who was of this mind, that neither he nor she could well and honestly passe the flower of their fresh youth, who had not the heart and face to refuse and deny any thing; even so likewise, a bad governess it is of the bride-bed and women's chamber, according to that which she said in *Sophocles* to the adulterer, who repented of the fact,

*Thy flattering words have me seduced,  
And so perforce, I am abused.*

In such sort as this bashfulness, over and besides, that it is vicious and faulty in self, spoileth and marreth clean the intemperate and incontinent person, by making no resistance to his appetites and demands, but letting all lie unfortified, unbarred, and unlockt, yeelding easie access and entrance to those that will make assault and give the attempt, who may by great gifts and large offers catch and compass the wickedest natures that be: but surely by persuasions and inductions, and by the means withall of this excessive bashfulness, they oftentimes conquer and get the mastery even of such as are of honest and gentle disposition. Here I passe by the detriments and damages that this bashfulness hath been the cause of, in many matters, and that of profit and commoditie namely, how many men having not the heart to say nay, have put forth and lent their money even to those whose credit they distrust: have been sureties for such as otherwise they would have been loath and unwilling to engage themselves for, who can approve and commend this golden sentence (written upon the temple of *Apollo*) Be surety thou maist, but make account then to pay: howbeit, they have not the power to do themselves good by that warning, when they come to deal in the world. And how many have come unto their end and died by the means of this foolish quality, it were hard to reckon. For *Creon* in *Euripides* when he spake thus unto *Midea*,

*For me Madame, it were much better now  
By this denyall your minds to discontent,  
Than having once thus yeelded you  
Sigh afterwards full sore, and ay repent.*

gave a very good lesson for others to follow: but himself overcome at length through his foolish bashfulness, granting one day longer of delay at her request, overthrew his own state, and his whole house. Some there were also who doubting and suspecting that there were laid for, to be bloodily murdered, or made away by poison, yet upon a foolish modesty not refusing to go into the place of danger, came to their death and were soon destroyed. Thus died *Dion*; who notwithstanding he knew well enough that *Callippus* laid wait for him to take away his life, yet (forsooth) abashed he was to distrust his friend and host, and so to stand upon his guard. Thus was *Antipater* the son of *Cassander* massacred; who having first invited *Demetrius* to supper, was bidden the morrow after to his house likewise, and for that he was abashed to mistrust *Demetrius*, who the day before had trusted him, refused not to go, but after supper he was murdered for his labour. Moreover, when *Polyperchon* had undertaken and promised unto *Cassander* for the summe of one hundred talents to kill *Hercules* (a bafe son of King *Alexander* by lady *Barsine*) he sent & requested the said *Hercules* to sup with him in his lodging, the young gentleman had no liking at all to such bidding, but mistrusting and fearing his curfew, alleged for his excuse that he was not well at ease: whereupon *Polyperchon* came himself in person unto him, and in this manner began to perfwade: Above all things my good child (quoth he) study and endeavour to imitate the humanity and sociable nature of your noble father, unless haply you have me in jealousie and suspition, as if I went about to compass your death. The youth was abashed to hear him say so, and went with him: well, supper was no sooner ended, but they made an end of the young gentleman also, and strangled him outright: that it is so ridiculous and foolish advertisement (as some let not to say) but a wife and sage advice of *Hesiodus* when he saith;

*Thy friend and lover to supper do invite,  
Thy foe leave out, for he will thee requite.*

Be not in any wife bashfull and ashamed to refuse to refuse his offer whom thou knowest to hate thee: but never leave out and reject him once who seemeth to put his trust and confidence in thee: for if thou do invite, thou shalt be invited again; and if thou be bidden to a supper & go, thou canst not choose but bid again; if thou abandon once thy distrust and diffidence, which is the gard of thy safety, and so matre that good tincture and temperance by a foolish shame that thou hast, when thou darst not refuse.

Seeing

Seeing then that this infirmity and malady of the mind, is the cause of many inconveniences, assay we must to chafe it away with all the might we have by exercise, beginning at the first like as men do in other exercises, with things that are not very difficult, nor such as a man may boldly have the face to deny: as for example, if at a dinner one chance to drink unto thee, when thou hast drunk sufficiently already; be not abashed to refuse for to pledge him, neither for thy self, but take the cup at his hand and set it down again on the board; again, there is another perchance that amidst his cups challenge thee to hazzard or to play at dice: be not ashamed to say him nay, neither fear thou although thou receive a flout and scoff at his hands for deniall: but rather do as *Xenophon* did, when one *Lajus* the sonne of *Hermion*, called him coward, because he would not play at dice with him: I confesse (quoth he) I am a very dastard in those things that be lewd and naught, and I dare do nothing at all: moreover, say thou fall into the hands of a prattling and talkative bawle body, who catcheth hold on thee, hangeh upon thee and will not let thee go: be not sheepish and bashfull, but interrupt and cut his tale short, shake him off I say, but go thou forward and make an end of thy business whereabout thou wentest: for such refusals, such repulses, shifts and evasions in small matters, for which men cannot greatly complain of us exercising us not to blush and be ashamed when there is no cause, do inure and frame us well before-hand unto other occasions of greater importance. And here in this place, it were not amisse to call unto remembrance a speech of *Demosthenes*: for yvhen the Athenians being solicited and moved to send aid unto *Harpalus*, were to forward in the action that they had put themselves in armes against King *Alexander*, all on a sudden they did covered upon their own coasts *Philoxenus*, the Lieutenant-general of the Kings forces, and chief Admiral of his Armado at Sea: now when the people were to be aunted upon this unexpected occurrence, that they had not a word to say for very fear: What will these men do (quoth *Demosthenes*) when they shall see the Sun who are so afraid that they dare not look against a little Lamp: even so I say to thee that art given much to blush and be abashed: What wilt thou be able to do in weighty affairs, namely, when thou shalt be encountered by a King: or if the body of some peop or state be earnest with thee to obtain ought at thy hand that is unreasonable: when thou hast not the heart to refuse for to pledge a familiar friend if he chance to drink unto thee and offer thee a cup of wine? or if thou canst not find means to escape and wind thy self out of the company of a babbling bawle body, that hath fastened and taken hold of thee, but utter such a vain prattling tale as this to walk and lead thee at his pleasure up and down, having not so much power as to say thus unto him: I will see you again hereafter at some other time, now I have no leisure to talk with you.

Over and besides, the exercise and use of breaking your selves of this bashfulness in praising others for small and light matters, will not be unprofitable unto you: as for example, say that when you are at a feast of your friends, the harper or minstrell do either play or sing out of tune: or haply an Actor of a Comedie, dearly hired for good piece of money, by his ill grace in acting, marreth the play and disgrace the Author himself *Menander*, & yet nevertheless, the vulgar sort do applaud, clap their hands, and highly commend and admire him for his deed: in mine advice it would be no great pain or difficulty for thee to give him the hearing with patience and silence, without praising him after a servile and flattering manner, otherwise than you think it meet and reason: for if in such things as these you be not master of your self, how will you be able to hold, when time dear friend of yours shall read unto you either some foolish rime of bad poetie that him self hath composed? if he shall spiew unto you some oration of his own foolish and ridiculous penning? you will fall a praising of him, will you? you will keep a clapping of your hands, with other flattering jakes? I would not els. And if you do so, how can you reprove him when he shall commit some gross fault in greater matters? how shall you be able to admonish him, if he chance to forget himself in the administration of some magistracy, or in his carriage in wedlock, or in politick government? And verily for mine own part, I do not greatly allow and like of that answer of *Pierius*, who being requested by a friend to bear false witness in his behalf, and to binde the same with an oath, whereby he should be forsworn: I am your friend (quoth he) as far as the altar: as if he should have said: Saving my conscience and duty to the gods: for surely he was come too neer already unto him. But he who hath accustomed himself long before, neither to praise against his own mind, one who hath made an oath; nor to appaude unto him who hath sung, nor to laugh heartily at him: who came out with some stale or poor jest which had no grace: he will (I trow) never suffer his friend and familiar to proceed so farre, as to demand such a request of him, or once be so bold as to move him (who before had refused in smaller trifles to satisfy his desire) in this manner: Be perjured for me: bear false witness for my sake: or pronounce an unjust sentence for the love of me.

After the same manner we ought to be prepared and provided before-hand against those that be instant to borrow money of us: namely, if we have been used to deny them in matters that neither be of great moment nor hard to be refused. There was one upon a time, who being of this mind, that there was nothing so honest as to crave and receive, begged of *Archelem* the King of *Macedonia* (as he saith at supper) the cup of gold whereout he drank himself: the King called unto his page that waited at his trencher, and commanded him to give the said cup unto *Euripides*, who saith at the board and withall, casting his eye wistly upon the party who craved it: As for you sir (quoth he) worthy you are for your asking to go without; but *Euripides* delivereth to have, though he do not

crave. A worthy speech, importing thus much, that the judgement of reason ought to be the best master and guide to direct us in our gifts and free liberality, and not bashfulness and shame to deny. But we contrariwise, neglecting and despising many times those that be honest and modest persons, yea, our very familiar friends, who have need of our help, and seem to request the same, are ready to bestow our bounty upon such as incessantly importune us with their impudent craving, nor any affection that we have to pleasure them, but because we can not finde in our heart to say them nay. Thus did King *Antigonus* the elder to *Bias*, after he had been a long time an importunate begger: Give this *Bias* (quoth he) a talent, for me thinks he will have it performe: and yet this *Antigonus*, of all Princes and Kings that ever were, had the best grace and most dexterity to put by, and shift off such unreasonable beggers: for when a beggerly Cynicall Philosopher craved once at his hands a drachm: It is not for a King (quoth he) to give a drachm: Why then (quoth the other again) give me a talent: Neither is it meet (quoth the King) for a Cynick to receive a talent. *Diogenes* as he walked otherwhiles along the *Cerameicus* (that is, a street in *Athens*, where stood erected the statues of worthy personages) would ask alms of those images: & when some marvelled at him therefore: I do it (quoth he) to learn how to take a repulse & denial. Semblably, we ought first to be trained in small matters, and to exercise our selves in denying slight requests unto such as would seem to demand and have at our hands that which is not fit and requisite, to the end that we may not be to seek for an answer when we would deny them in matters of greater importance: for as *Demophilus* was wont to say: He who hath spent and bestowed that which he had otherwise than he should, will never employ those things which he hath, nor as he ought, if peradventure he should be furnished again therewith. And look how often we do fail, and be wanting in honest things, and yet abound in superfluities, it is a signe that we are in great fault, and many wayes shame groweth to us by that means.

Moreover, so it is, that this excessive bashfulness is not only a bad and undirect steward to dispense and disperse our money, but also to dispose of our serious affairs and those of great consequence, wherein it will not admit the advice and counsel that reason giveth: for oftentimes it falleth out, that when we be sick, we lend not for the best and most expert Physicians, in respect of some friend, whom we favour and reverence so, as we are loth to do otherwise: when he would advise us: likewise we chuse for masters and teachers of our children, not those alwayes who are best and meetest, but such as make suite and means unto us for to be entertained; yea, and many times, when we have a cause to be tried in the law, we chuse not alwayes the most sufficient and expert Advocates or Barristers for our counsel to plead for us: but for to gratifie a some of some familiar friend or kinsman of our own, we commit the cause to him for to practise and learn to plead in Court to our great cost and losse. To conclude we may see many of those that make profession of Philosophy, to wit, Epicureans, Stoicks, and others, how they follow this or that sect, not upon their own judgement and election: but for that they were importuned by some of their kinsfolk, or friends thereto, whom they were loth to denie. Come on then, let us long before be exercised against such grosse faults in vulgar, small and common occasions of this lifes as for example, let us break our selves from using either a barber to trim us, or a painter to draw our picture, for to satiate the appetite of our foolish shamefacednesse: from lodging also in some bad Inne or Hostellie where there is a better nece at hand, because haply our host the Goodman of the house hath oftentimes saluted us kindly; but rather make we a custome of it, (although there be but small difference and odds between one and another) alwayes to chuse the better: and like as the Pythagoreans observed evermore precisely not to crosse the right legge with the left, neither to take an odde number for an even, though otherwise all things else were equal and indifferent; even so are we to draw this into an ordinary practise, that when we celebrate any solemn sacrifice, or make a wedding dinner, or some great feast, we invite not him, who is wont with reverence to give us the gentle greeting and good-morrow, or who seing us a great way off useth to runne unto us, rather than him whom we know to be an honest man and a well-willer of ours; for whosoever is thus inured and exercised long before, shall be hardly caught and surpris'd, nay rather he shall never be once assailed and set upon in weighty matters. And thus much may suffice as touching exercise and custome.

Moreover to come into other profitable instructions which we have gathered for this purpose, the principall in mine advice is this, which sheweth and teacheth us, that all the passions and maladies of the minde be ordinarily accompanied with those inconveniences which we would seem to avoid by their means: as for example, ambition and desire of honor hath commonly attending upon it dishonor: pain usually followeth the love of pleasures; labour and travell enuseth upon ease and delicacy: repulse, overthrowes, and condemnations are the ends that ensue daily upon those that are given to be litigious, contentious and desirous to cast, foil, and conquer others; semblably it hapneth unto excessive bashfulness, which seeming to flee and shun the smoke of blame, casteth it self into the very fire and flame of infamie. For those who be abashed to gain-say and denie them, who importune them unreasonably, and will take no nay in things unjust, are constrained afterwards to bear both shame and blame at their hands, who justly call them to their answer, and accuse them worthily: and whiles they fear some light check or private rebuke, many times they are faine to picture and sustain open disgrace and reproch: for being abashed to denie a friend who craveth to borrow money, as being loth to say they have none; within a while after (with shame enough) they blush,

γρησύν,  
Εκδιδασκί-  
σμεν το  
γρησύν,  
Ι.ε.α. Παιδί.

when they shall be convinced to have had none; and having promised to assit and stand to some who have suit in law, by that meanes are forced to contend with others, and afterwards being ashamed thereof, are driven to hide their heads and flee out of the way. Also there be many whom this foolish modesty hath caused to enter into some disadvantageous promise as touching the marriage either of daughter or sister, and being entangled therewith have been constrained afterwards upon change of mind to breake their word and faile in their promise: as for him who said in old time, that all the inhabitants of *Asia* served as slaves unto one man; for that they knew not how to pronounce one only negative syllable, that is, No: he spake not in earnest, but by way of bound, and was disposed to jest: but surely these bashfull persons may if they list without one word spoken, by knitting and bending their brows only, or nodding downward to the ground, avoid and escape many offices and absurd inconveniences, which oftentimes they do unwillingly and only upon importunity. For as *Enripides* said very well,

*Wise men do know how things to take:  
And of silence an answer to make.*

And happily we have more cause to take that course with such as be senselesse and unreasonable: for to those who be honest, sensible, and of more humanity, we need not feare to make excuse and satisfie them by word of mouth. And for this purpose it were not amiss to be furnished with answers and notable apophthegmes of great and famous persons in times past; and to have them ready at hand to alledge against such importunate and impudent fellows. Such was that saying of *Phocion* to *Antipater*: You cannot have me to be your friend and a flatterer too: likewise the answer which he made unto the Athenians, who were earnest with him to contribute and give somewhat toward the charges of solemnizing a great feast, and withall applauded and clapped their hands: It were a shame (quoth he) that I should give any thing over and above unto you, and not to pay that which I owe to him yonder, pointing therewith to *Callicles* the ulner: for as *Thucydides* said; It is no shame to confesse and acknowledge poverty: but more shamefull it is indeed not to avoid and eschew it. But he who by reason of a faint, feeble, and delicate heart dare not for foolish shame answer thus unto one that demandeth to borrow money,

*My friends, I have in house or purse  
No silver white for to distribute.*

And then suffereth to passe out of his mouth a promise (as it were) an earnest penny or pawne of assurance,

*Is tied by foot with fetters not of brass  
Nor iron wrought; but shame, and cannot passe.*

But *Persius*, when he lent forth a summe of money to one of his familiar friends and acquaintance, went into the open market place to passe the contract at the very banke or table of exchangers and ulners; being mindful of that rule and precept of the Poet *Hesiodus*, which teacheth us in these words,

*However thou laugh with brother more or lesse,  
With him make no contract without witness.*

Now when his friend marvelled hereat and said, How now *Persius*, so formally and according to law? Yea, (quoth he) because I would receive my money againe of you friendly, and not require it by course and suit of law. For many there be who at the first upon a kind of foolish modesty are abashed to call for assurance and security, but afterward be forced to proceed by order of law, and so make their friends their enemies. Again, *Cato* (sending commendatory letters unto *Denis* the Tyrant in the behalf and favour of one *Helicon* Cyzicene, as of a kind, modest, and courteous person subscribed in manner of a post-date under his letter thus: That which you read above, take it as written in the commendation of a man, that is to say, of a living creature by nature mutable, Contrariwise *Xenocrates*, although he were otherwise in his behaviour austere, yet being overcome and yeelding to a kind of foolish modesty of his own, recommended in his letters unto *Polyperchon*, a man of no worth or quality, as it proved afterwards by the sequell: Now when as that Macedonian Lord bade the party welcome, and friendly gave him his hand, and withall used some words of courte and complement, demanding whether he had need of ought, and bidding him call for what he would: he made no more ado but craved a whole talent of silver at his hand; which *Polyperchon* caused presently indeed to be weighed out unto him; but he dispatched his letters withall unto *Xenocrates* to this effect: That from thenceforth he should be more circumspect, and consider better whom he recommended unto him: and verily, herein only was the error of *Xenocrates*, for that he knew not the man for whom he wrote: but we oftentimes knowing well enough that they be lewd and naughty persons, yet are very forward with our commendatory letters; yea, and that which more is, our purse is open unto them; we are ready to put money into their hands to our own hinderance and damage: not with any pleasure that we take nor upon affection unto them, as they do, who bestow their silver upon cuterans, pleafants, and flatterers to gratifie them: but as displeased and discontented with their impudency, which over-turnd their reason upside down, and forceth us to do against our own judgement, in such sort, that if ever there were cause besides, we may with good reason say unto these bold and shamelesse beggers, that thus take vantage of our bashfulness:

*I see that I must for your sakes,  
Lend converse ever undertake.*

Namely, in bearing false witness, in pronouncing wrong judgement; in giving my voice at any election for an unworthy and unmeet person; or in putting my money into his hands, whom I know insufficient, and who will never repay it. And therefore of all passions, this lewd and excessive modesty is that which is accompanied presently with repentance, and hath it not following afterwards as the rest: for at the very instant when we give away our money, we grieve: when we bear such witness, we blush; when we assist them and yet to our helping hand, we incur infamy; and if we furnish them not with that which they require, we are convinced as though we were not able. And so much as our weakness is such, that we cannot deny them simply that which they would have; we undertake and promise many times unto those who do importune and lye upon us uncessantly, even those things that we are not able to compass and make good; as namely, our commendatory letters for to find favour in Princes courts; to be mediators for them unto great rulers and governors, and to take with them about their causes; as being neither willing, nor so hardy as thus to say, The King knoweth not us, he regardeth others more, and you were better go to him and such. After this manner, when *Lysander* had offended King *Agesslam*, and incurred his heavy displeasure, and yet was thought worthy to be chief in credit above all those that were about him, in regard of the great opinion and reputation that men had of him for his noble acts, he never bashful to repel and put back those luters that came unto him, making excuse, and bidding them to goe unto others, and assay them, who were in greater credit with the King than himselfe. For it is no shame not to be able to effect all things, but for a man to be driven upon a foolish modesty to enterprize such matters as he is neither able to compass nor meet to manage; besides that it is shameful, I hold also a right great corrosive to the heart.

But now to go unto another principle, we ought willingly and with a ready heart to do pleasure unto those that request at our hands such things as be meet and reasonable; not as forced thereby by a ridiculous feare of shame, but as yielding unto reason and equity. Contrariwise, if their demands be hurtfull, absurd, and without all reason, we ought evermore to have the laying of *Zeno* in readiness, who meeting with a young man one of his acquaintance, walking close under the towne wall to rely as if he would not be seen; asked of him the cause of his being there and understanding by him that it was because he would avoid one of his friends, who had been earnest with him to beare false witness in his behalfe: What saiest thou (quoth *Zeno*) for that thou art? Was thy friend so bold and shamelesse to require that of thee which is unreasonable, unjust, and hurtfull unto thee? And dairest thou not stand against him in that which is just and honest? For whose ever he was that said,

*A crooked wedge is fit to cleave  
A knotted knurrie tree,  
It will becomen against lewd folke  
With lewdnesse armed to be.*

Teacheth us an ill lesson, to learne to be naught on our selves when we would be revenged of naughtinesse. But such as repulse those who importunately and with a shamelesse face do molest and trouble them, not suffering themselves to be overcome with shamefacednesse, but rather frame to grant unto shamelesse beggers those things that be shamefull, are wise men and well advised doing herein that which is right and just. Now as touching those importunate and shamelesse persons, who otherwise are but odious, bale and of no worth: it is of no great matter to resist them when they be troublesome unto us. And some there be who make no more ado but shuff them off with laughter or a scoff: like as *Theocritus* served twaine who would seeme to borrow of him his rubber or currying combe in the very baine: of which two, the one was a meere stranger unto him; the other he knew well enough for a notorious thiefe: I know not you (quoth he) to the one; and to the other, I know what you are well enough; and so he sent them both away with a meere frump. *Lysimache* the Priestesse of *Minerva* in *Athen*, surnamed *Potias*, that is, the Patronesse of the City: when certaine Muletters who brought sacrifices unto the temple, called unto her for to powere them out drinke freely: No (quoth she) my good friends, I may not do so, for feare you will make a custome of it.

*Antigonus* had under him in his retinue a young gentleman, whose father in times past had been a good warrior, and led a band or company of fouldiers, but himselfe was a very coward, and of no service; and when he sued unto him (in regard of his birth) to be advanced unto the place of his fathers late deceased: Young man (quoth he) my manner is to recompence and honour the prowess and manhood of my fouldiers, and not their good parentage. But if the party who assaileth our modesty be not a nobleman of might and authority (and such kind of persons of all other will most hardly endure a repulse and be put off with a denial or excuse, and namely, in the case of giving fence, or award in matter of judgement, or in a voice at the election of Magistrates) peradventure it may be thought neither easie nor necessary to do that which *Cato* sometimes did, being then but of young yeares, unto *Cornelius*; Now this *Cornelius* was a man of exceeding great authority among the Romans and for that time bare the Consulship, who came unto *Cato* (then Lord High Treasurer of Rome that yeare) as a mediator and intercessor for one who had been condemned before by *Cato* in a round fine, pressing and importuning him so hard with earnest prayer and entreaty, that in the end

and *Cato* seeing how urgent and unreasonable he was, and not able to endure him any longer, was forced to say thus unto him: You would thinke it a foule disgrace and shame for you *Cornelius*, to see you as you are, since you will not receive an answer and begone, if my seruants and officers here should take you by the head and shoulders and send you away with that *Cornelius*, being ashamed and ashamed, departed in great anger and discontentment. But consider rather and see, whether the answer of *Agesslam* and that which *Themistocles* made were not more modest, and favoured of greater humanity: for *Agesslam*, when his own father would him to give sentence in a certaine cause that was brought before him, against all right and directly contrary to the laws: Father (quoth he) your selfe have taught me from my very childhood to obey the laws; I will be therefore obedient full to your good precepts, and passe no judgement against law. As for *Themistocles*, when as *Simo-*  
*nides* seemed to request of him somewhat that was unjust and unlawful: Neither were you *Simo-*  
*nides* (quoth he) a good Poet, if you should keep time and number in your song, nor I a good Magistrate if I should judge against the law. And yet (as *Plato* was wont to say) it is not for want of due proportion between the neck and body of the Lute, that one City is at variance with another City, and friends fall out and be at difference, doing what mischief they can one to another, and suffering the like againe; but for this rather, that they offend and faile in that which concerneth law and justice. Howbeit, you shall have some, who themselves observing the precise rules most exactly according to art in Musick, in Grammaticall Orthography, and in the poetical quantity of syllables and measures of feet, can be in hand with others, and request them to neglect and forget that which they ought to do in the administration of government, in passing of judgements, and in their other actions. And therefore with such as these be, I would have you take this counsell which I will now tell you: Is there an Advocate or Rhetorician that doth importune you sitting as judge upon the bench? Or is there an Oratour that troubleth you with an unreasonable sute as you sit in counsell? Grant them both that which they request, upon condition that the one in the entry of his plea will commit a solecisme or incongruity, and the other in the beginning of his narration come out with some barbarisme: but it is all to nothing, that they will never do so, it would be thought such a shame; and in very truth, we see that some of them are so fine eared that they cannot abide in a speech or sentence that two vowels should come together: againe, is he one of the nobility, or a man of honour and authority, that troubleth you with some unhoneft sute? Will him likewise for your sake to passe thorow the market place hopping and dancing, making mowes, and writhing his mouth; but if he deny so to do, then have you good occasion and fit opportunity to come upon him with this revy, and demand of him, whether of the twaine be more dishonest? To make incongruity in speech, and to make mowes, and set the mouth awry, or to break the lawes, commit perjury, and beside all right, equity, and conscience, to award and adjudge more unto the lewd and wicked, than to good and honest persons. Moreover, like as *Nicomachus* the *Argive* answered unto *Archidamus*, who solicited him with a good sum of money (promising him besides in marriage what Lady he would himselfe chuse in all *Lacedaemon*) to betray and render up by treason the Town *Cromnum*: I see well (quoth he) O *Archidamus*, that you are not descended from the race of *Heracles*, for that he travelled thorow the world, killing wicked persons whom he had vanquished, but your study is to make them wicked who are good and honest; even so we ought to lay unto him who would be thought a man of worth and good marke, and yet commit to presse and force us to commit those deeds which are not befitting, that he doth that which becometh not his nobility or opinion of vertue.

Now if they be meane and bale persons to account, who shall thus tempt you, go thus to worke with such: if he be a covetous milke, and one that loveth his money too well: see and try whether you can induce and perswade him by all importunity to credit you with a talent of silver upon your bare word, without schedule, obligation, or pecuniary for his security: or if he be an ambitious and vain-glorious person, try if you can prevail with him so much, as to give you the upper-hand or higher seat in publicke place: or if he be one that desireth to beare rule and office, assay him, whether he will give over his possibility that he hath to such a Magistracy, especially when he is in the ready way to obtaine it? Certes, we may well thinke it a very strange and absurd thing, that such as they in their vices and passions should stand and continue so stiffe, so resolute, and so hard to be removed; and yet vvhpo professe and would be reputed honest men, lovers of vertue, justice, and equity, cannot be masters of our selves, but suffer vertue to be subverted, and cast it at our heeles. For if they, who by their impunity urge our modesty, do either for their own reputation, or their authority, if vvere absurd and beside the purpose for us to augment the honour, credit, and authority of another, and to dishonour, discredit, and disgrace our selves; like unto those who be in an ill name, and incur the obloquie of the world, vvhoe either in publicke and solemne games defraud those of the prizes and rewards vvhoe have achieved victory, or vvhoe at the election of Magistrates deprive those of their right of suffrages and voices to whom it doth belong, for to gratifie others that deserve it not, thereby to procure to the one sort the honour of sitting in high places, and to the other the glory of wearing coronets, and so by doing pleasure unto others, falsifie their own faith, defame themselves, and lose the opinion and reputation they had of honesty and good conscience. Now if we see that it is for his own lucre and gain that any one unregard beyond all reason do a thing; how is it that we do not presently consider, that it is absurd and without all sense to hazard and put to comprimise (as it were) our own reputation and vertue for another



man, to the end that the purfe of some one (I know not vvhho) should thereby be more vveighty and heavy?

But certainly many there be unto vvhom such considerations as these are presented, and vvhoe are not ignorant that they tread aside and do amisse; much like to them, vvhoe being challenged to drink off great bowls full of vvine, take pains to pledge them vvvith much ado, even to long till their eyes be ready to start out of their heads, changing their countenance, and panting for vvant of vvind, and all to pleasure those that put them to it. But surely this feebleness of mind and faint heart of theirs resembbeth the weak constitution and temperature of the body, which cannot away either with scorching heat, or chilling cold. For be they praised by those who set upon them thus impudently, they are ready to leape up of their skins for joy; and say they doubt for to be accused, checked, rebuked, or suspected, if happily they deny, then they are ready to die for woe and feare. But we ought to be well defended and fortified against the one and the other, that we yeeld neither to them that terrifie us, nor to those that flatter us. *Thugdides* verily supposing it impossible for one to be great or in high place and not envied, faith, That the manis well advised and led by good counsell who chooseth at the greatest and highest affairs, if he must be subject unto envy. For mine own part, thinking as I do, that it is no hard matter to escape envy, but to avoid all complaints, and to keep our selves from being molested by some one or other that converse with us and keep our company, a thing impossible: I suppose it good counsell for us, and the best thing we can do for our own safety, to incur rather the ill-will and displeasure of lewd, importunate, and unreasonable people, than of those who have just cause to blame and accuse us, it against all right and justice we satisfie their minds, and be ready to do them service and pleasure: as for the praises and commendations which proceed from such lewd and shamelesse persons, being as they are in every respect counterfeite and loathsome, we ought to beware and take heed of; neither must we suffer our selves as faine to be rubbed, scratched or tickled, and all the vvholes stand still and gently, letting them do with us what they will, untill they may with ease lay us all along, when we have once yeilded to be so handled, at their pleasure: for surely they that give care to flatterers, differ in no respect from those who let out their legs of purpose to be supplant and to have their heeles tripped up from under them; I ave only in this, that those are worse foiled and catch the more shamefull fall, I meane as well, such as remit punishment to naughty persons, because forsooth they loveto be called mercifull, mild, and gentle: as those on the contrary side, who being perfwaded by such as praise them, do submit themselves to enmities and accusations needlesse, but yet perilous: as being born in hand and made believe that they were the only men, and such alone as stood invincible against all flattery, yea, and those whom they tick not to terme their very mouths and voices; and therefore *Bion* likened them most aptly to vessels that had two eares, for that they might be carried so easily by the eares which way a man would: like as it is reported of one *Alexinus* a Sophister, who upon a time as he walked with others in the gallery *Peripatos*, spake all that naught was of *Stilpo* the *Megarian*: and when one of the company said unto him, what meane you by this, considering that of late, and no longer since than the other day, he gave out of you all the good that may be: I wot well (quoth he) for he is a right honest gentleman, and the most curious person in the world. Contrariwise, *Menecemus* when he heard that *Alexinus* had praised him many a time; But I (quoth he) do never speake well of *Alexinus*; and therefore a bad man he must needs be, that either praiseth a naughty person, or is dispraised of an honest man: So hard it was to turne or catch him by any such meanes, as making use and practising that precept which *Hercules Antisthenes* taught his children, when he admonished and warned them that they should never con those thanke who praised them: and this was nothing else, but not to suffer a mans felie to be overcome by foolish modesty, nor to flatter them againe who praised him: For this may suffice, in my opinion, which *Pindarus* answered unto a timero one who said unto him: That in every place, and to all men he never ceased to commend him: Grand mercy (quoth he) and I will do this favour unto you againe that you may be a true man of your word and be thought to have spoken nothing but the truth.

To conclude, that which is good and expedient against all other affections and passions, they ought surely to remember who are easily overcome by this hurtfull modesty, whensoever they giving place soone to the violence of this passion do commit a fault and tread awry against their mind: namely, to call to remembrance the marks and prints of remorse and repentance flicking fast in their mind, and to repeat effoones and keep the fame a long time. For like as waifaring men, after they have once stumbled upon a stone, or pilpots at sea when they have once sliped their ship upon a rock and suffered shipwrack, if they call those accidents to remembrance, for ever after do feare and take heed not only of the fame, but of suchlike; even so they that set before their eyes continually the dishonours and damages which they have received by this hurtfull and excessive modesty, and represent the same to their mind once wounded and bitten with remorse and repentance, will in the like afterwards reclaim themselves, and not so easily another time be perverted and seduced out of the right way.

## Of Brotherly Love or Amity.

## The Summary.

A Man should have professed but badly in the schoole of vertue, if endeavouring to carry himselfe honestly toward his friends and familiars, yea, and his very enemies, he continue still in cold demeanour with his own brethren, unto whom he is joynd naturally by the straightest line and links that can be devised. But for that ever since the beginning of the world, this proverbiall sentence from time to time hath been currant and found true; that the Unity of Brethren is a rare thing: Plutarch after he had complained in the very entrance of this little book, that such a malady as this reigned mightily in his time, goeth about afterwards to apply a remedy thereto. And to this effect he sheweth, that since brotherly amity is taught and precribed by nature, those who love not their brethren be blackish, unnatural, enemies to their own selves; yea, and the greatest Atheists that may be found. And albeit the obligation wherein we are bound to our parents amounteth to so high a sum as we are never able fully to discharge; he proveth notwithstanding, that brotherly love may stand for one very good payment toward that debt: whereupon he concludeth, that hatred between brethren ought to be banished: For that if it once creeps in and get between, it will be a very hard matter to rejoyne and reconcile them againe. Afterwards he teacheth a ready and compendious way, how a man ought to manage and use a brother ill-disposed. In what manner brethren should carry themselves one to another, both during the life of their father, and also after his decease: discoursing at large upon the duty of those who are the elder, or higher advanced in other respects; as also, what they should do who are the younger; namely, that as they are not equal to their other brethren in years, so they be their inferiours in place of honour and in wealth; likewise what meanes as well the one as the other are to follow for to avoid envy and jealousy. Which done, he teacheth brethren who in age come very neare, their natural duty and kinnesse that they ought to shew one unto another; to which purpose he produceth proper examples of brotherly amity among the Pagans: In the end, since he cannot possibly effect thus much, that brethren should evermore accord well together, he setteth down what course they are to take in their differences and disagreements: and how their friends ought to be common between them: And for a small conclusion, he treateth of the honest care and respect we regard one of another that they ought to have, and especially of their kinsfolke, which he enricheth with two other notable examples.

## Of Brotherly Love and Amity.

Those ancient statues representing the two brethren *Cassor* and *Pollux*, the inhabitants of the City *Sparta*, were wont in their language to call *Δωδεκα*. And two paralel pieces of timber they are of an equal distance asunder, united and joynd together by other peeces overthwart: now it should seeme, that this was a device fitting very well and agreeable to the brotherly amity of the said two gods, for to shew that undivisible union which was between them; and even so, I also do offer and dedicate unto you, O *Nigrinus* and *Quintus*, this little treatise as touching the amity of brethren, a gift common unto you both as those who are worthy of the fame: for seeing, that of your own accord you practice that already, which it teacheth and exhorteth unto, you shall be thought not so much to be admonished thereby, as by your example to confirme and testifie the fame which therein is delivered: and the joy which you shall conceive to see that approved and commended which yourielves do, shall give unto your judgement a further assurance to continue therein; as if your actions were allowed and praised by vertuous and honest beholders of the fame.

*Antisthenes* verily, the father of *Theodoret*, scoffing at the great number of those Sophisters or of counterite sages in his daies, said: That in old time hardly could be found even wise men throughout the world; but in our daies (quoth he) much ado there is to find so many foolcs or ignorant persons. But I may very well and truly say: That I see, in this age wherein we live, the amity of Brethren to be as rare, as their hatred was in times past. The examples whereof, being so few as they were among our ancients, were thought, by men in those daies living, notable arguments to furnish Tragedies and Theaters with, as matters very strange, and in a manner fabulous. But contrariwise, all they that live in this age, if happily they meet with two brethren that be good and kind one to another, wonder and marvel thereat as much as if they saw those *Molionides* (of whom *Homers* speaketh) whose bodies seemed to grow together in one: and as incredible and marvellous do they thinke it, that brethren should live in common the patrimony, goods, friend, and slaves, which their fathers left behind unto them as if one and the same fable alone ruled the feet, hands, and eyes of two bodies. And yet Nature her selfe hath set down a lively example of that mutual behaviour and carriage that ought to be among brethren and the same not far off, but even within our own bodies, wherein she hath framed and devised for the most part those members double, and as a man would



would say, brethren-like and twins, which be necessary, to wit, two hands, two feet, two eyes, two ears, and two nostrils: shewing thereby, that the hath thus distinguished them all, not only for their naturall health and safety, but also for a mutuall and reciprocall help, and not for to quarrell and fight one with another. As for the hands, when they parted them into many fingers, and those of unequal length and bignesse, the hath made them of all other organick parts, the most proper, artificious, and workman-like instruments: inasmuch as that ancient Philosopher *Anaxagoras* ascribed the very cause of mans wisdom and understanding unto the hands. Howbeit, the contrary unto this should seem rather to be true; for man was not the wisest of all other living creatures in regard of his hands, but because by nature being endued with reason, given to be witty, and capable of Arts & Sciences, he was likewise naturally furnished with such instruments as these. Moreover, this is well known unto every man, that Nature hath formed of one and the same seed, as of one principle of life, two, three, and more brethren; not to the end that they should be at debate and variance, but that being apart and asunder they might the better and more commodiously help one another. For those men with three bodies and a hundred armes apiece, which the Poets describe unto us (if ever there were any such) being joyned and grown together in all their parts, were not able to do any thing at all when they were parted asunder, or as it were, without themselves: which brethren can do well enough, namely, dwell and keep within house and go abroad together, meddle in affaires of State, exercise husbandry and tillage one with another, in case they prelerve and keep well that principle of amity and benevolence which nature hath given them. For otherwise they should (I suppose) nothing differ from those feet which are ready to trip or supplant one another, and cause them to catch a fall: or they should resemble those hands and fingers which enfolded and claime one another untowardly against the course of nature. But rather according as in one and the same body, the cold, the hot, the dry, and the moist, participating likewise in one and the same nature and nourishment, if they do accord and agree well together, engender an excellent temperature and most pleasant harmony, to wit, the health of body, without which, neither all the wealth of the world, as men say,

*Nor power of royal Majesty,  
Which equals to deity,*

have any pleasure, grace, or profit: but in case these principall elements of our life, covet to have more than their just proportion, and thereupon breake out into a kind of civil sedition, seeking one to surcrease and over-grow another, some there ensueth a filthy corruption and confusion which overthroweth the state of the body and the creature it selfe; semblably, by the concord of brethren, the whole care and house is in good case and flourisheth, the friends and familiars belonging to them (like a melodious quire of musicians) make a sweet content and harmony: for neither they do, nor say, nor thinke any thing that jarreth or is contrary one to the other,

*Whereas in discord such, and taking part,  
The worst offences do speed, whilst better smart.*

To wit, some ill-tongued varlet, and pick-thanke carry tale within the house, or some flattering claw-back comming between, and entering into the house, or else some envious and malicious neighbour in the City. For like as diseases do ingender in those bodies which neither receive nor stand well affected to their proper and familiar nourishment, many appetites of strange and hurtfull meats; even so, a slanderous calumination of jealousy being gotten once among those of a blood and kindred, doth draw and bring withall evill words and naughty speeches, which from without are allwaies ready enough to run thither, whereas a breach lieth open, and where there is some fault already. That divine Master and footsayer of *Arcadie*, of whom *Herodotus* writeth, when he had lost one of his own naturall feet, was forced upon necessity to make himselfe another of wood: but a brother being fallen out and at war with a brother, and constrained to get some stranger to be his companion, either out of the market place and common hall of the City as he walketh there, or from the publicke place of exercise, where he useth to behold the wrestlers and others; in my conceit doth nothing else but willingly cut off a part or limbe of his own body made of flesh, & engraffed fast unto him, for to set another in the place, which is of another kind and altogether a stranger. For even necessity it selfe which doth entertaine, approve, and seeke for friendship and mutuall acquaintance, teacheth us to honour, cherish, and prelerve that which is of the same nature and kind: for that without friends, society, and fellowship we are not able to live solitary and alone as most savage beasts, neither will our nature endure it: and therefore in *Menander* he saith very well and wisely:

*By jolly cheer and lunkes day by day,  
Think we to finde (O father) trusty friends;  
To whom our selves and life commit we may?  
No speciall thing for cost to make amends,  
I found he hath, who by that means hath met  
With shade of friends: for such I count no bet.*

For to say a truth, most of our friendships be but shadowes, semblances and images of that first amity, which nature hath imprinted and engraffed the children toward their parents, in brethren toward their brethren: and he who doth not reverence nor honor it, how can he perswade and make strangers believe that he beareth sound and faithfull good will unto strangers. Or what man is he who

who in his familiar greetings and salutations, or in his letters will call his friend and companion Brother, and cannot find in his heart so much as to go with his brother in the same way? For as it were a point of great folly and madnesse, to adorn the statue of a brother, and in the mean time to beat and maim his body: even so to reverence and honor the name of a brother in others, & withal to shun, hate and disdain a brother indeed, were the case of one that were out of his wits, and who never conceived in his heart and minde, that Nature is the most fadred and holy thing, in the world. And here in this place, I cannot choose but call to minde, how at *Rome* upon a time I took upon me to be umpire between two brethren, of whom the one seemed to make profession of Philoophie; but he was (as after it appeared) not only untruly entituled by the name of a Brother; but also as falsely called a Philosopher: when I requested of him that he should carry him self as a Philosopher toward his Brother, and such a Brother as altogether was unlettered and ignorant: In that you say (ignorant) (quoth he) I hold well with you, and I avow it a truth: but as for Brother, I take it for you say great and venerable matter, to have sprung from the same loins, or to have come forth of one womb. Well (said I again) It appears that you make no great account to issue out of the same naturall members; but all men else besides you, if they do not think and imagine so in their hearts; yet I am sure they do both sing and say that Nature first, and then Law (which doth prelerve and maintain Nature) have given the chief place of reverence and honor next after the gods, unto father and mother: neither can men perform any service more acceptable unto the gods than to pay willingly, readily and affectionately unto parents who begat and brought them forth, unto nurses and fosters that reared them up, the innerest and uttmost for the old thanks, besides the new which are due unto them. And on the other side again, there is not a more certain sign and mark of a very Atheist: than either to neglect parents, or to be any wayes ungracious or defective in duty unto them; and therefore whereas we are forbidden in expresse terms by the Law to do wrong or hurt unto other men: if one do not behave himselfe to father and mother both in word and deed, so as they may have (I do not say discontentment and displeasure, but) joy & comfort thereby, men esteem him to be profane, godlesse and irreligious. Tell me now, what action, what grace, what disposition of children towards their parents, can be more agreeable and yield them greater contentment, than to see good will, kinde affection, faith and assured love between brethren? the which a man may easily gather by the contrarie in other smaller matters. For seeing that fathers and mothers be displeased otherwise with their sonnes, if they misbehave or hardly intreat some home-borne slave whom they for much store by: if I say they be vexed and angry, when they see them to be more reckoning and care of their words and grounds wherein they took some joy and delight: considering also that the good kind-hearted old folk of a gentle and loving affection that they have be offended if some hound or dog bred up within house, or an horne be not well tended and looked unto: last of all, if they grievewhen they perceive their children to mock, find fault with, or despite the lectures, narrations, sports, fights, wrestlers, and others that exercise feats of activity, which themselves sometime highly esteemed: Is there any likelihood that they in any measure can indure to see their children hate one another? to entertain brailes and quarrels continually? to be ever snarling, railing and reviling one another? and in all enterprises and actions alwayes crossing, thwarting and upplanning one another? I suppose there is no man will so say. Then on the contrary side, if brethren love together and be ready one to do for another; if they draw in one line and carry the like affection with them; follow the same studies and take the same courses; and how much nature hath divided & separated them in body, so much to joyn for it again in mind; lending one another their helping hands in all their negotiations and affairs; following the same exercises; repairing to the same disputations, and frequenting the same plaies, games and pastimes, so as they agree and communicate in all things: certainly this great love and amity among brethren, must needs yeeld sweet joy and happy comfort to their father and mother in their old age: and therefore parents take nothing so much pleasure, when their children prove eloquent orators, wealthy men, or advanced to promotions and high places of dignity: as loving and kind one to another; like as a man shall never see a father so desirous of eloquence, of riches, or of honor, as he is loving to his own children. It is reported of *Queen Apollonia the Cyzicene*, mother to *King Eumenes*, and to three other Princes, to wit, *Attalus*, *Phileteus* and *Antiochus*, that she reputed and reported her self to be right happy, and rendered thanks unto the immortall gods, not for her riches, nor royall port and majesty; but that it was her good fortune to see those three younger sonnes of hers, serving as Pensioners and Equires of the body to *Eumenes* their elder brother, and himself living fearlesse and in security in the midst of them, standing about his person with their pollaxes, halberds, and partisans in their hands, and girded with swords by their sides. On the other side, *King Xerxes* perceiving, that his sonne *Ochus* set an ambush and laid trains to murder his brethren, died for very sorrow and anguish of heart. Terrible and grievous are the warres, said *Enripides*, between brethren; but unto their parents above all others most grievous: for that whosoever hateth his own brother, and may not vouchsafe him a good eye and kind look, cannot choose but in his heart blame the father that begat him, and the mother that bare him. We read that *Pisistratus* married his second wife, when his sons whom he had by the former were now men grown, saying, That since he saw them prove so good and towardsly, he gladly would be the father of many more that might grow up like them: even so, good and loyal children will not only affect and love one another for their parents sakes, but also love their parents so much the more, in regard of their mutuall kindnesse, as making this account, thinking also and saying thus,

to themselves; That they are obliged and bounden unto them in many respects, but principally for their brethren, as being the most precious heritage, the sweetest and most pleasant possession that they inherit by them. And therefore *Homer* did very well, when he brought in *Ictemachus* among other calamities of his, reckoning this for one, that he had no brother at all; and saying thus:

*For Jupiter my fathers race in me alone,  
Now ended hath, and given me brother none.*

As for *Hesiodus* he did not well to wish and give advice to have an only begotten sonne, to be the full heir and universal inheritor of a patrimonie; even that *Hesiodus* who was the disciple of those Muses, whom men have named *Muses*, as it were *you muses*, for that by reason of their mutual affection and sister-like love they keep always together. Certes, the amity of brethren is so respective to parents, that it is both a certain demonstration that they love father and mother, and also such an example and lesson unto their children to love together, as there is none other like unto it, but contrariwise, they take an ill precedent to hate their own brethren from the first original of their father; for he that liveth continually and waxeth old in suits of law, in quarrels and dissensions with his own brethren, and afterward shall seem to preach unto his children for to live friendly and lovingly together, doth as much as he, who according to the common proverb:

*The sores of others will seem to heal and cure,  
And is himself full of ulcers full impure.*

and so by his own deeds doth weaken the efficacy of his words. If then *Eteocles* the Theban, when he had once laid unto his brother *Polymices*, in *Euripides*,

*To Stars about Sunne-rising would I mount,  
And under earth descend as farre again,  
By these attempts, if I might make account  
This sovereign rivalry of gods to gain.*

should come afterwards again unto his sonnes, and admonish them

*For to maintain and honour equall states,  
Which knit friends ay in perfect unity,  
And keeps these links who are confederates,  
Preserving cities in league and amity:  
For nothing more procures security,  
In all the world, than doth equality.*

who would not mock him and despise his admonition? And what kinde of man would *Atreus* have been reputed, if after he had let such a supper as he did before his brother, he should in this manner have spoken sentences and given instruction to his own children?

*When great misfortune and crosse calamity  
Upon a man is fallen suddenly,  
The onely meed is found by amity  
Of those whom blood hath joyned perfectly.*

Banish therefore we must, and rid away clean, all hatred from among brethren, as a thing which is a bad nurse to parents in their old age, and a worse sottrefesse to children in their youth; besides, it giveth occasion of slander, calumination and obloquie among their fellow-citizens and neighbours, for thus do men conceive and deem of it: That brethren having been nourished and brought up together so familiarly from their very cradle, it cannot be that they should fall out and grow to such terms of enmity and hostility, unless they were privy one to another of some wicked plots and most mischievous practices. For great causes they must be, that are able to undo great friendship and amity, by means whereof hardly or unmet afterwards they can be reconciled and surely knit again. For like as sundry pieces which have been once artificially joyned together by the means of glue or solder, if the joynt be loose or open, may be rejoined or soldered again; but if an entire body that naturally is united and grown in one, chance to be broken or cut and lit asunder, it will be an hard piece of work to find any glew or solder so strong as to reunite the same and make it whole and found, even to those mutual amities which either for profit or upon some need were first knit between men, happen to cleave and part in twain; it is an easie matter to reduce them close together; but brethren if they be once alienated and estranged, so as that the naturall bond of love cannot hold them together, hardly will they piece again or agree ever after: and say they be made friends and brought to attonement, certainly such reconciliation maketh in the former rent or breach an ill-favoured and filthy scar, as being always full of jealousy, distrust, and suspicion. True it is, that all jars and enmities between man and man, entering into the heart, together with those passions which be most troublesome and dangerous of all others, to wit a peevish humor of contention, choler, envie and remembrance of injuries done and paid, do breed grief, pain, and vexation; but surely that which is fallen between brother and brother, who of necessity are to communicate together in all sacrifices & religious ceremonies belonging to their fathers house, who are to be interred another day in one and the same sepulchre, and live in the mean time otherwhiles under one roof, and dwell in the same house, and enjoy possessions, lands, and tenements confining one upon another, doth continually present unto the eye that which tormenteth the heart; it putteth them in

mind

mind daily and howlerly of their folly and madness; for by means thereof that face and countenance which should be most sweet, best known, and of all other likest, is become most strange, hideous, and unpleasant to the eye: that voice which was wont to be even from the cradlefriendly and familiar, is now become most fearful and terrible to the ear; and whereas they see many other brethren cohabit together in one house, sit at one table to take their repast, occupy the same lands, and use the same servants, without dividing them: what a grief is it, that they thus fallen out, should part their friends, their hosts and guests, and in one word, make all things that be common among other brethren private, and whatsoever should be familiar and acceptable, to become contrarie and odious? Over and besides, here is another inconvenience and mischief, which there is no man so simple, but he must needs conceive and understand: That ordinary friends and table companions may be gotten and stollen (as it were) from others; alliance and acquaintance there may be had new, if the former be lost, even as armour, weapons and tools may be repaired, if they be worn, or new made, if the first be gone; but to recover a brother that is lost, it is not possible, no more than to make a new hand, if one be cut away, or to set another eye in the place of that which is plucked out of the head: and therefore well said that Persian Lady, when she chose rather to save the life of her brethren than of her children: For children (quoth she) I may have more, but since my father and mother be both dead, brother shall I never have.

But what is to be done, will some man say, in case one be matched with a bad brother? First, this we ought evermore to remember, that in all sorts of families there is to be found some badnesse; and most truis that saying of *Sophocles*:

*Who list to search throughout mankind,  
More bad than good is sure to find.*

No kindred there is, no society, no fellowship, no amity and love, that can be found sincere, found pure and clear from all faults. The Lacedæmonian who had married a wife of little stature: We must (quoth he) of evils chuse ever the least, even so in mine advice, a man may very well and wisely give counsell unto brethren, to bear rather with the most domestical imperfections and the infirmities of their own blood, than to trie those of strangers; for as the one is blamelesse, because it is necessary, so the other is blame-worthy, for that it is voluntary: for neither table-friend and fellow-gamster, nor play-fere of the same age, ne yet hoast or guest

*Is bound with links of brass by hand not wrought,  
Which shame by kind hath forged, and cost us naught.*

but rather that friend, who is the same blood, who had his nourishment and bringing up with us, begotten of one father, and who lay in the same mothers womb; unto whom it seemeth that Vertue her self doth allow connivency and pardon of some faults, so as a man may say unto a brother when he doth a fault,

*Wilt thou, stark naught, yea, wretched though thou be,  
Yet can I not forsake and cast off thee.*

I might seem in my hatred towards thee, for to punish sharply, cruelly, and unnaturally in thy person, some infirmity or vice of mine own father or mother, instilled into thee by their deed. As for strangers and such as are not of our blood, we ought not to love first, and afterwards make triall and judgement of them; but first we must trie and then trust and love them afterwards; whereas contrariwise, nature hath not given unto proof and experience the precedence and prerogative to go before love, neither doth the expect according to that common proverb; That a man should eat a \*bull's head of two or fight with one whom he minded to love and make his friend; but even from our nativity hath bred in us and with us the very principle and cause of amity, in which regard we ought not to be bitter unto such, nor to search too deeply into their faults and infirmities.

But what will you say now if contrariwise some there be, who if meer aliens and strangers otherwife, yet if they take a foolish love and like unto them, either at the tavern or at some game and pastime, or fall acquainted with them at the wrestling or fencing school, can be content to wink at their faults, be ready to excuse and justify them, yea, and take delight and pleasure therein; but if their brethren do amisse, they be exceeding rigorous unto them and inexorable nay, you shall have many such, who can abide to love churlish dogs, and skittish hories, yea, and finde in their hearts to feed and make much of fell ounces, threwed cats, curst unplayful apes, and terrible lions; but they cannot endure the halty and choleric humor, the error & ignorance, or some little ambitious humor of a brother. Others again there be, who unto their concubines and barbers will not flit to assigne over and passe away goodly houles and fair lands lying thereto; but with their brethren they will wrangle and go to law, nay, they will be ready to enter the lists and combat for a plot of ground whereupon a house standeth, about some corner of a messuage or end of a little tenement, and afterwards attributing unto this their hatred of brethren, the colourable name of hating sin and wickednesse, they go up and down cursing, detesting and reproaching them for their vices, whiles in others they are never offended nor discontented therewith, but are willing enough daily to frequent and haunt their company. Thus much in generall terms by way of preamble or proeme of this whole treatise.

It remaineth now that I should enter into the doctrine and instructions thereto belonging wherein I would not begin as others have done at the partition of their heritage or patrimonie; but

\* i. e. Mistrust. Ody's v. 331.

\* Medonius is a creature containing 6 moduli, which is a best & perks with us.

at the naughty emulation, heart-burning and jealousy which arise between them during the life of their parents. *Agamemnon* King of *Lacedamon* was wont always to send as a present unto each one of the ancients of the City, even as they were created Senators, a good ox, in testimony that he honored their virtue: at length the lords called *Ephori*, who were the censurers and overseers of each mans behaviour, condemned him for this in a fine to be paid unto the State, subscribing and adding a reason withall; for that by these gifts and largesses he went about to steal away their hearts and favors to himself alone, which ought indifferently to regard the whole body of the City: even so a man may do well to give this counsel unto a sonne, in such wise to respect and honour his father and mother, that he seek not thereby to gain their whole love, nor seem to turn away their favour and affection from other children wholly unto himself; by which practise many do prevent, undermine and supplant their brethren, and thus under a colourable and honest pretence in shew, but indeed unjust and unequal, cloke and cover their avarice and covetous desires for after a cautelous and subtill manner they insinuate themselves and get between them and home, and so defraud and cousten them ungentlemanly of their parents love, which is the greatest and fairest portion of their inheritance, who eysing their time, and taking the opportunity and vantage when their brethren be otherwise employed, and least doubt of their practises, then they besitt them most, and shew themselves in best order, obsequious, double-diligent, sober and modest, and namely, in such things as their other brethren do either fail or seem to be slack and forgetfull. But brethren ought to do clean contrary, for if they perceive their father to be angry and displeased with one of them, they should interpose themselves and undergo some part of the heavy load, they ought to ease their brother, and by bearing a part, help to make the burden lighter: then (I say) must they by their service and ministry gratifie their brother so much, as to bring him in some sort in grace and favour against their father, and when he hath failed so far forth in neglecting the opportunity of time, or omitting some other business which hardly will afford excuse, they lay the fault and blame upon his very nature and disposition, as being more meet and fitt for other matters. And hereto accordeth well that speech of *Agamemnon* in *Homer*,

*He faulted not through idleness,  
nor yet for want of wit,  
But looked on me, and did expect  
my motive unto it.*

even so one good brother may excuse another and say; He thought I should have done it, and lest this duty for me to do neither are fathers themselves (I said) but willingly enough to admit such translations and gentle inversions of names as these; they can be content to believe their children, when they term the supine negligence of their brethren plain simplicity, their stupidity and blockishness, upright dealing and a good conscience; their quarrelous and litigious nature, a mind loth to be troden under-foot and utterly despised. In this manner he that will proceed with an intent only to appease his fathers wrath, shall gain thus much moreover; That not only his fathers choler will thereby be much diminished toward his brother, but his love also much more encreased unto himself howbeit, afterwards when he hath thus made all well, and satisfied his father to his good contentment: then must he turn and address himself to his brother apart, touch him to the quick, spare him never a whit, but with all liberty of language tell him roundly of his fault, and rebuke him for this trespass, for surely it is not good to use indulgency and connivency to a brother, no more than to insult over him too much, and tread him under foot if he have done amiss, (for as this bewraeth a joy that one taketh at his fall: so that imphly a guiltiness with him in the same transgression: but in this rebuke and reproof, such measure would be kept, that it may reftitute a care to do him good, and yet a displeasure for his fault: for commonly he that hath been a most earnest advocate and affectionate intercessor for him to his father and mother, will be his sharpest accuser afterwards when he hath him alone by himself. But put the case, that a brother having not all offended, be blamed notwithstanding, and accused to father and mother, howsoever in other things, it is the part of humanity and dutiful kinnesse to sustain and bear all anger and forward displeasure of parents; yet in this case, the allegations and defences of one brother in the justification of an other, when he is innocent, unjustly traduced, or hardly need or wronged by his parents, are not to be blamed, but allowable and grounded upon honesty: neither need a brother lear to hear that reproch in *Sophocles*:

*Thou gracelesse imp, so farre grown out of kind,  
As with thy Sire, counter plea to find.*

when frankly and freely he speaketh in the behalf of his brother, seeming to be unjustly condemned and oppressed. For surely by this manner of proceffe and pleading, they that are convicted take more joy in being overthrown, than if they had gathered the victory and better hand.

Now after that a father is deceased, it is well befitting and fit, that brethren should more affectionally love than before, and stick more close together: for then presently their natural love unto their father which is common to them all, ought to appear indifferently in mourning together and lamenting for his death: then are they to reject and cast behind them all suspitions furnished or buzzed into their heads by varlets and servants, all slanderous calumniation and false reports, brought unto them by pick-thanks and carry-rales on both sides, who would gladly sow some dissension be-

tween

tween them: then are they to give ear unto that which fables do report of the reciprocal love of *Cassio* and *Pollux*; and namely, how it is said, That *Pollux* killed one with his fist for rounding him in the ear, and whispering a tale against his brother *Cassio*. Afterwards, when they shall come to the parting of their patrimonie and fathers goods among them, they ought not (as it were) to give defiance and denounce war one against another, as many there be who come prepared for that purpose ready to encounter, singing this note,

*O Alas! Alas! now broken and come fight,  
Who art of warre so felt, the daughter right.*

But that very day of all others they ought to regard and observe most, as being the time which to them is the beginning either of mortall warre and enmity irreconcilable, or else of perfect friendship and amity perdurable: at which instant they ought among themselves to divide their portions if it be possible; if not, then to do it in the presence of one indifferent and common friend between them, who may be a witness to their whole order and proceeding; and so when after a loving and kind manner, and as becometh honest and well disposed persons, they have by casting lots gotten each one that which is his right: by which course (as *Plato* said) they ought to think that this is given and received that which is meet and agreeable for every one, and so to hold themselves therewith contented: this done, I say they are to make account that the ordering, managing, and administration of the goods and heritage is parted and divided; but the enjoying, use and possession of all remaineth yet whole in common between them. But thereafter in this partition and distribution of goods, pluck one from another the knives that gave them hurt, or such youths as were fostered and brought up together with them of infants, and with whom always they had lived and loved familiarly; well may they prevail so farre forth with eager pursuing their wishfulness, as to go away with the gain of a slave, perhaps of greater price: but in stead thereof, they lose the greatest and most precious things in all their patrimonie and inheritance, and utterly betray the love of a brother, and the confidence that otherwise they might have had in him. Some also we have known, who upon a peevish willfulness only, and a quarrelous humour, and without any gain at all, have in the partition of their fathers goods, carried themselves no better nor with greater modesty and respect than if it had been some booty or pillage gotten in war. Such were *Charicles* and *Amiochus*, of the City *Opius*, two brethren, who ever as they met with a piece of silver plate, made no more ado, but cut it quite thorough the mids, and if there came a garment into their hands, in two pieces it went, slit as neerer (as they could aim) just in the middle, and so they went either of them away with his part, dividing (as it were) upon some tragicall curse and execration.

*Their house and all the goods therein  
By edge of sword to shun p. a.aken.*

Others there be who make their boast and report with joy unto others, how in the partition of their patrimony they have by cunning call-conny-catched their brethren, and over-wrought them so by their cautelous circumvention, fine wit and slye policies, as that they have gone away with the better part by odds: whereas indeed they should rejoyce rather and please themselves, in this modesty, courtesy, kindnesse, and yielding of their own right they had surpassed and gone beyond their brethren. In which regard *Athenodorus* deserveceth to be remembered in this place; and indeed there is not one here in these parts but remembereth him well enough. This *Athenodorus* had one brother elder than himself named *Zenon*, who having taken upon him the management of the patrimonie, left unto them both by their father, had imbezeld and made away a good part of it: and in the end, for that by force he had carried away a woman and married her, was condemned for a rape, and lost all his own and his brothers goods, which by order of law was forfeit and confiscated to the Exchequer of the Emperor: now was *Athenodorus* above said, a very beardlesse boy still, without any hair on his face; and when by equity and the Court of conscience, his portion out of his fathers goods was awarded and redressed unto him, he forsook not his brother, but brought all abroad and parted the one half thereof with him again; and notwithstanding that he knew well enough that his brother had used no fair play, but cunningly defrauded him of much in the division thereof, yet was he never angry with him nor repented of his kindnesse, but mildly, cheerfully, and patiently endured that unthankfulness and folly of his brother, so much divulged and talked of throughout all *Greece*. As for *Solon* when he pronounced sentence and determined in this manner as touching the government of the weal-publick: That equality never bred sedition; seemed very conformed y<sup>e</sup> to being in the proportion Arithmetical which is popular in place of that other fair and good proportion called Geometrical. But he that in an house or family would advise brethren (as *Plato* did the Citizens of his Common-wealth above said) if possible it were to take away these words, *Mine and Thine*; *Mine* and not *Minor*; at leastwise (if that may not be) to stand contented with unequal portions, and to maintain and preserve equality: certes, he should lay a notable and singular foundation of amity, concord and peace, and always build thereupon the famous examples of most noble and renowned personages, such as *Pittacus* was, who when the King of *Lyd* demanded of him whether he had money and goods enough? may have (quoth he) more by one half if I would, by occasion of my brothers death whose heir I am.

But forasmuch as not only in the possession, augmentation and diminishing of goods, the lesse is evermore set as an adverse and crossie enemy to the more, but also (as *Plato* said) simply and universally there is always motion and stirring in equality, but rest and repose in equality: and to all un-

N 3

even

even dealing and unequal partition is dangerous for breeding dissension among brethren: and impossible it is, that in all respects they should be even and equal; for that either Nature at first from their very nativity, or Fortune afterwards, hath not divided with even hand their several graces and favours among them, whereupon proceed envie and jealousie, which are pernicious maladies and deadly plagues, as well to houses & families as also to states and Cities: in these regards (I say) therefore, a great regard and heed would be taken, both to prevent and also to remedie such mischiefs with all speed, when they begin first to ingender. As for him who is indued with better gifts, and hath the vantage over his other brethren; it were not amiss to give him counsell, first to communicate unto them those gifts wherein he seemeth to excell and go beyond them; namely, in gracing and honouring them as well as himself by his credit and reputation, in advancing them by the means of his great friends, and drawing them unto their acquaintance; and in case he be more eloquent than they to offer them the use thereof, which although it be employed (as it were) in common, is yet nevertheless his own still: then let him not shew any signe of pride and arrogancy, as though he did disdain them, but rather in some measure by abasing, submitting and yielding a little to them in his behaviour, to preserve himself from envie, unto which his excellent parts do lie open; and in one word, to reduce that inequality which fortune hath made, unto some equality, as far forth as possible it is to do, by the moderate carriage of his mind. Lucullus verily would never daine to accept of any dignity or place of rule, before his brother, notwithstanding he was his elder; but letting his own time slip, expecting the turn & course of his brother, Neither would Pollux take upon him to be a god alone by himself, but chose rather with his brother Castor to be a demy-god, and for to communicate unto him his own immortality, thought it no disgrace to participate with his mortal condition: and even so may a man say unto one whom he would admonish: My good friend, it lies in you without diminishing one whit of those good things which you have at this present, to make your brother equal unto your self, and to joyne him in honour with you, giving him leave to enjoy (as it were) your greatnesse, your glory, your vertue, and your fortune: like as Plato did in times past, who by putting down in writings, the names of his brethren, and bringing them in as persons speaking in his most noble and excellent Treatises, caused them by that means to be famous and renowned in the World. Thus he graced Glaucon and Adamantus in his books of Policy: thus he honoured Antiphon the youngest of them all, in his Dialogue named Parmenides.

Moreover, as it is an ordinary thing to observe great difference and oddes in the natures and fortunes of brethren: so it is in manner impossible, that in all things and in every respect any one of them should excell the rest. For true it is, that the four elements, which they were created of one and the same matter, have powers and qualities altogether contrary; but surely it was never yet seen, that of two brethren by one father and mother, the one should be like unto that wise man, whom the Stoicks do faine and imagine, to wit, fair, lovely, bountifull, honourable, rich, eloquent, studious, civil and courteous; and the other, foul, ill-favoured, contemptible, illiberal, needy, not able to speak and deliver his mind, untaught, ignorant, uncivil and unfociable. But even in those that are more obscure, base and abject than others, there is after a sort some spark of grace, of favour, of aptnesse and inclination to one good thing or other: for as the common proverb goeth;

*With Calibrap thistles, rough and keen, with Pricklyrest-harrow,  
Close Sions fair and soft, yea, White-wallflowers are seen to grow.*

These good parts therefore, bethey more or lesse in others, if he that seemeth to have them in faire better and in greater measure, do not debate, smother, hide and hinder them, nor deject his brother (as in some solemnity of games for the prize) from all the principall honours, but rather yeeld reciprocally unto him in some points, and acknowledge openly that in many things he is more excellent, and hath a greater dexterity than himself, withdrawing always closely all occasions and matter of envie, as it were fewell from the fire, shall either quench all debate, or rather not suffer it at all to breed or grow to any head and substance. Now he that always taketh his brother as a colleague, counsellor and coadjutor with him, in those causes wherein himself is taken to be his superior: as for example: If he be a professed Rhetorician & Orator, using his brother to plead causes; if he be a Politician, asking his advice in government: if a man greatly friended, employing him in actions and affairs abroad: and in one word, in no matter of consequence and which may win credit and reputation, leaving not his brother out, but making him his fellow and companion in all great and honorable occasions, and so giving out of him, taking his counsell if he be present, and expecting his presence if he be absent; and generally, making it known that he is a man not of lesse execution than himself, but one rather that loveth not much to put himself forth, nor stands so much upon winning reputation in the world, and seeking to be advanced in credit: by this means he shall lose nothing of his own, but gain much unto his brother. These be the precepts and advertisements that a man may give unto him that is the better and superiour.

To come now to him who is the inferior, he ought thus to think in his mind: That his brother is not alone that hath no fellow, nor the onely man in the world who is richer, better learned, or more renowned and glorious than himself, but that often-times he also is inferior to a great number, yea, and to many millions of us men,

*Who on the earth so large do breed,  
Upon her fruits who live and feed,*

but if he be such in one as either goeth up and down, bearing envie unto all the world; or if he be

of

of so ill a nature, as that among so many men that are fortunate, he alone and none but he troubleth him, who ought of all other to be dearest, and is most neetly joynd unto him by the obligation of blood, a man may well say of him: That he is unhappy in the highest degree, and hath not left unto another man living, any means to go beyond him in Wretchednesse. As *Mithras* therefore thought that the Romans were bound to render thanks unto the gods in heaven, for that *Scipio* so noble and brave a man was born in *Rome*, & not in any other City; so every man is to wish and pray unto the gods, that himself may flourish all in prosperity, if not, yet that he might have a brother at least, who to attain unto that power and authority so much desired; but some there be so unfortunate and unlikely by nature, in respect of any goodnesse in them, that they can not joyce and take a great glory in this, to have their friends advanced unto high places of honor, or to see their friends and guests abroad, princes, rulers, rich and mighty men, but the resplendent glory of their brethren they think doth eclipse and darken their own renown; they delight and joy to hear the fortunate exploits of their fathers recounted, or how their great grandfathers long ago had the conduct of armies, and were lord prynces and generals in the fields, wherein they themselves had never any part, nor received thereby either honor or profit; but if there have fallen unto their brethren any great heritages or possessions, if they have risen unto high estate and achieved honorable dignities; if they are advanced by rich and noble marriages, then they are cast down and their hearts be done. And yet it had behaved and right meet it were in the first place, to be envious to no man at all; but if that may not be, the next way were to turn their envie outward, and eye-bite strangers, and to shew our spite unto aliens who are abroad, after the manner of those who to rid themselves from civil seditions at home, turn the same upon their enemies without, and set them together by the ears, and like as *Diomedes* in *Homer* said unto *Glaucon*,

*Of Trojans and their allies both,  
Who aide them for good will  
Right many are beside your selfe  
For me in fight to kill:  
And you likewise have Greeks enough  
With whom in bloody field  
You may your prowess try, and not  
Meet me with speare and shield.*

Even so it may be said unto them: There be a number besides of concurrents upon whom they may exercise their envy and jealousie, and not with their naturall brethren: for a brother ought not to be like unto one of the ballance-scales, which doth alwaies contrary unto his fellow, for as one riseth the other falleth; but as small numbers do multiply the greater, and serve to make both them bigger, and their selves too; even so an inferior brother by multiplying the state of his brother who is his superior, shall both augment him and also increase and grow himself together with him in all good things: marke the fingers of your hand, that which holdeth not the pen in writing, or striketh the string of a lute in playing (for that it is notable so to do, nor disposed & made naturall for those uses) is never a whit the worse for all that, nor serveth lesse otherwise, but they all stir & move together, yea, and in some sort they help one another in their actions, as being framed for the nonce, unequall and one bigger and longer than another, that by their opposition and meeting (as it were) round together, they might comprehend, clasp, and hold any thing more force, strong, and fast. Thus *Craterus* being the naturall brother of King *Antigonus* who reigned and swaid the scepter: Thus *Perillus* also the brother of *Cassander* who wore the Crown, gave their minds to be brave warriors, and to lead armies under their brethren, or else applied themselves to govern the houses at home in their absence; whereas on the contrary side the *Aniachi* and *Seleuci*, also certain *Cyri* and *Ciziceni*, and such others, having not learned to beare a lower saile than their brethren, and who could not content themselves to sing a lower note, nor to rest in a second place, but aspiring to the ensignes and ornaments of royall dignitie, to wit, the purple mantle of estate with Crowne, Diadem, and Scepter, filled themselves also one another with many calamities, yea, and heaped as many troubles upon all *Asia* throughout. Now forasmuch as those especially who by nature are ambitious and disposed to thirst after glory, be for the most part envious and jealous toward those who are more honoured and renowned than they; it were very expedient for brethren, if they would avoid this inconvenience, not to seek for to attaine either honour or authority, and credit, all by the same means, but some by one thing, and some by another: for we see by daily experience it is an ordinary matter that wild beafts do fight and war one with another, namely, when they feed in one and the same pasture; and among Champions, and such as strive for the mastery in feats of activity, we count those for their adventures and concurrents only, who profess and practise the same kind of game or exercise: for that they that go to it with fists and buffers are commonly friends good enough to such sword-fencers as fight at sharpe to the utterance, and well-willers to the champions called *Pancratists*: likewise the runners in a race agree full well with wrestlers: these I say, are ready to aid, assist, and favour one another, which is the reason, that of the two sons of *Tyndarus*, *Pollux* wait the prize alwaies at buffers, but *Castor* his brother went away with the victory in the race, and *Homer* very well in his Poem feigned that *Theuer* was an excellent archer, and became famous thereby, but his brother *Ajax* was best at close fight and hand-strokes, standing to it heavily armed at all peeces,

And

And with his shield so bright and wide,  
His brother Teucer he did bide.

And thus it is with them that govern a State and Common-wealth; those that be men of armes, and manage martiall affaires, never lightly do envy them much who deale in civill causes and use to make speeches unto the people; likewise among those that profess Rhetoricke and eloquence, advocates who plead at bar, never fall out with those Sophisters that read lectures of oratory; among professors of Physick, they that cure by diet envy not the Chirurgeions who worke by hand; whereas they who endeavour and seek to win credit and estimation by the same art, or by their faculty and sufficiency in any one thing, do as much (especially if they be badly minded wicall) as those rivals who loving one militis, would be better welcome, and find more grace and favour at her hands one than another. True it is I must needs confesse, that they who go divers waies do no good one to another; but surely such as choose lundry courses of life do not only avoid the occasions of envy, but also by that meanes the rather have mutuall help one by the other: thus Demofthenes and Chares sorred well together; Alcibiades likewise and Eubulus accorded; Hyperides also and Laesthenes were lovers and friends; in every which couple the former employed themselves in pleading and speaking before the people, and were writers and pen-men, whereas the other conducted armies, were warriors and men of adion. Brethren therefore who cannot communicate in glory and credit together without envy, ought to set their desires and ambitious minds as far remote one from another, and turne them full as contrary as they can, if they would find comfort, and not receive displeasure by the prosperity and happy successe one of another: but above all, a principall care and regard they must have of their kindred and alliance; yea, and otherwhiles of their very wives, and namely, when they be ready with their perillous speeches many times to blow more coales, and thereby enkindle their ambitious humour. Your brother (quoth one) doth wonders; he carrieth all before him; he beareth the way; no talke there is but of him; he is admired, and every man maketh court to him: whereas, there is no resort to you; no man cometh toward you; nothing is there in you that men regard or set by. When these suggestions shall be thus whispered, a brother that is wise and well minded may well say thus againe: I have a brother indeed whose name is up and carrieth a great de; and verily the greatest part of his credit and authority is mine, and at my commandement. For Socrates was wont to say that he would choose rather to have Demus his friend than his \*Darius. And a brother who is of found and good judgement will thinke that he hath no lesse benefit when his brother is placed in great estate of government, blessed with riches, or advanced to credit and reputation by his gift of eloquence, than if himselfe were ruler, wealthy, armed, and eloquent. Thus you may see the belt and readiest meanes that are to qualifie and mitigate this inequality between brethren. Now there be other disagreements besides, that grow quickly between, especially if they want good bringing up, and are not well taught, and namely, in regard of their age. For commonly the elder, who thinke that by good right they ought to have the command, rule, and government of their younger brethren in every thing, and who hold it great reason that they should be honoured, and have power and authority a wayes above them, commonly do use them hardly, and are nothing kind and light some unto them: the younger againe being stubborn, wilfull, and unruly ready also to shake off the bridle, are wont to make no reckoning of their elder brethrens prerogative, but set them at naught and despise them; whereby it cometh to passe, that as the younger of one side envied are held down with envy, and kept under a wayes by their elder brethren, and so thin their rebukes, and for one their admonitions; so those on the other side detest to hold their own, and maintaine their preeminence and sovereignty over them, stand alwaies in dread lest their younger brethren should grow too much, as if the rising of them were their fall. But like as the calfe standeth in a benefit or good time that is done, men say it meet that the receiver should esteeme the thing greater than it is, and the giver make the least of it; even so, he that can persuade the elder, that the time whereby he hath the vantage of his other brethren is no great thing; and likewise the younger, that he should reckon the same birthright for no small matter he shall do a good deed between them, in delivering the one from disdain, contempt, and spight, and the other from irreverence and negligence. Now forasmuch as it is meet that the elder should take care and charge, teach and instruct, admonish and reprove the younger; and as it is likewise the younger should honour, imitate, and follow the elder: I could wish that the sollicitude and care of the elder favoured rather of a companion and fellow, than of a father that himselfe also would seeme too much to command and to persuade, and to be more prompt and ready to joy for his younger brothers well doing, and to praise him for it, than in any wise take pleasure in reprehending and blaming him if happily he have forgotten his duty; and in one word, to do the one not only more willingly, but also with greater humanity than the other. Moreover, the zeale and emulation in the younger ought rather to be of the nature of an imitation than either of jealousy or contention; for that imitation presupposeth an opinion of admiration, whereas jealousy and contention impleth envy, which is the reason that they affect and love those who endeavour to resemble, and be like unto them; but contrariwise, they are offended at those and keep them down who strive to be their equals. Now among many honours, which it becometh the younger to render unto his elder, obedience is that which delivereth most commendation and worketh the more assured and hearty affection, accompanied with a certaine reverence, which causeth the elder reciprocally, and by way of requital, to yeeld the like, and to give place unto him. Thus Cato,

having

having from his infancy honoured and revered his elder brother Capon; by all manner of obedience and silence before him, in the end gained thus much by it, that when they were both men grown, he had to won him and filled him (as it were) with so great a respect and reverence of him, that he would neither say nor do ought without his privy and knowledge. For it is reported, that when Capon had one day signed and sealed with his own finger a certaine letter testimoniall, Cato his brother coming afterwards would not let to his seale; which when Capon understood, he called for the fore said testimoniall and plucked away his own seale, before he had once demanded for what occasion his brother would not believe the deed, but suspected his testimony. It seemeth likewise, that the brethren of Epicurus shewed great respect and reverence unto him, in regard of the love and carefull good-will that he bare unto them; which appeared in this, that as to all other things else of his, so his Philosophy especially they were so wedded, as if they had been inspired therewith. For albeit they were leduced and deceived in their opinion, giving out, and holding otherwise (as they did) from their infancy that never was any man so deep a larkie, nor so great a Philosopher as their brother Epicurus: yet it was wonderfull to consider as well him that could so frame and dispose them, as themselves also for being so disposed and affectionate unto him. And verily, even among the more moderne Philosophers of latter time, Apollonius the Peripateticke, had convinced him of untruth (whoever he was) that laid Lordship and glory could like no fellowship, for he made his brother Saton more famous and renowned than himselfe. For mine own part, to say somewhat of my selfe: albeit that fortune hath done me many favours, in regard whereof I am bound to render unto her much thanks; there is not any one for which I take my selfe so much obliged and beholding unto her, as for the love that my brother Timon hath alwaies shewed and doth yet shew unto me: a thing that no man is able to deny, who hath never to little been in our company, and you least of all others doubt who have conversed so familiarly with us.

Now there be other occasions of trouble which ought to be taken heed of among those brethren which are of like age or somewhat neare in years; small passions (I wot well) they be, but many they are, and those ordinary and continuall; by means whereof they bring with them an evill custome of vexing, fretting and angering one another ever and anon for small things, which in the end turne into hatred and enmity irreconcilable: for when they have begun to quarrell one with another at their games and pastimes, about the feeding and fighting of some little creatures that they keep, to wit, quails or cocks, and afterwards about the wrestling of their boies and pages at the schoole, or the hunting of their hounds in the chace, or the caparison of their horses; they cannot more hold and refrain (when as they be men) their contentious yeine and ambition in matters of more importance: thus the greatest and mightiest men among the Greeks in our time, banding at the first one against another in taking parts with their dancers, and then in siding with their minstrels, afterwards by comparing one with another who had the better ponds or bathing pools in the territory of *Edaphus*, who had the fairer galleries and walking places, the statelier halls and places of pleasure, evermore changing and exchanging, and fighting (as it were) for the vantage of a place, striving still by way of odious comparison, cutting and diverting another way the conduct pipes of fountaines, are become so much exasperate one against another, that in the meane time they are utterly undone; for the tyrant is come, and hath taken all from them; banished they are out of their own native country; they wander as poore vagabonds thorow the world, and I may be bold (well neare) to say they are so far changed from that they were before, that they be others quite, this only excepted, that they be the same still in hatred one to another. Thus it appeareth evidently, that brethren ought not a little to resist the jealousie and contentions which breed among them upon small trifles, even in the very beginning, and that by accustoming themselves to yeeld and give place reciprocally one to another, suffering themselves to be overcome and take the foile; and joyning rather to pleasure and content one another, than to win the better hand one of another: for the victory which in old time they called the Cadmean victory, was nothing else but that victory between brethren about the City of *Thebes*, which is of all other the most wicked and malicious.

What shall we say moreover? Do not the affaires of this life minister many occasions of disagreement and debate even among those brethren which are most kind and loving of all other? Yes verily. But even therein also we must be careful to let the laid affaires to combat alone by themselves, and not to put thereto any passion of contention or anger as an anchor or hook to catch hold of the parties; and pull them together for to quarrell and enter into debate; but as it were in a balance to look joyndly together, on whether side right and equity doth encline and bend, and so soon as ever we can, to put matters in question to the arbitrement and judgement of some good and indifferent persons, to purge and make cleare all, before they are grown so far as that they have gotten a staine or tincture of cankered malice, which afterwards will never be washed or scoured out; which done, we are to imitate the Pythagoreans, who being neither joynd in kindred or consanguinity, nor yet allied by affinity, but the scholars in one schoole, and the fellows of one and the same discipline, if peradventure at any time they were so far carried away with choler, that they fell to interchange reproachfull and reviling taunts, yet before the sun was gone down they would to interchange reproachfull and reviling taunts, yet before the sun was gone down they would shake hands, kisse, and embrace one another, be reconciled, and become good friends againe. For like as if there be a fever, occasioned by a botch or rising in the share, there is no danger thereof, like if when the laid botch is gone the fever still continue, then it seemeth to be a malady proceeding

\* An ancient piece of coin, with his image, and with a helmet, and a spear, and a Terminus, and a stick.

ding from some more inward, secret, and deeper cause; even so the variance between two brethren, when it ceaseth together with the deciding of a business, we must thinke dependeth upon the same business and upon nothing else, but if the difference remaine till when the controversie is ended, surely then it was but a colourable pretence thereof, and there was within some root of secret malice which caused it. And here in this place it would serve our purpose very well to heare the manner of proceeding in the decision of a controversie between two brethren of a barbarous nation, and the same not for some little parcell of land, nor about poore slaves or silly sheepe, but for no lesse than the kingdom of *Persia*: for after the death of *Darius* some of the Persians would have had *Ariamenes* to succeede and weare the Crown, as being the eldest son of the King late deceased; others againe stood earnestly for *Xerxes*, as well for that he had to his mother *Atossa* the daughter of that great *Cyrus*, as because he was begotten by *Darius* when he was a crowned King. *Ariamenes* then came down out of *Media* to claime his right, not in armes, as one that minded to make war; but simply and peaceably attended only with his ordinary traine and retinue, minding to enter upon the Kingdom by justice and order of law. *Xerxes* in the meane while, and before his brother came, being present in place, ruled as King, and exercised all those functions that appertained thereto: his brother was no sooner arrived, but he took willingly the diadem or royal front from his head, and the Princely chaplet or coronet which the Persian Kings are wont to weare upright, he laid down; and went toward his brother to meet him upon the way, and with kind greeting embraced him: he lent also certaine presents unto him, with commandment unto those that carried them to say thus: *Xerxes*, thy brother honoureth thee now with these presents here, but if by the sentence and judgement of the Peeres and Lords of *Persia* he shall be declared King, his will and pleasure is, that thou shalt be the second person in the Realme, and next unto him. *Ariamenes* answered the message in this wise: These presents I receive kindly from my brother, but I am perswaded that the Kingdom of *Persia* by right belongeth unto me; as for my brethren, I will relieve that honour which is meet and due unto them next after my selfe, and *Xerxes* shall be the first & chiefe of them all. Now when the great day of judgement was at hand, when this weighty matter should be determined, the Persians by one general and common consent declared *Artabanes*, the brother of *Darius* late departed, to be the umpire and competent judge for to decide and end this cause. *Xerxes* was unwilling to stand to his award, being but one man, as who reposed more trust and confidence in the number of the Princes and Nobles of the Realme; but his mother *Atossa* reproving him for it: Tell me (quoth she) my son, wherefore resistest thou *Artabanes* to be thy judge, who is your uncle, and besides the best man of all the Persians? And why dost thou feare so much the issue of his judgement, considering that if thou misse, yet the second place is most honourable, namely, to be called the Kings brother of *Persia*? Then *Xerxes*, perswaded by his mother, yielded; and after many allegations brought and pleaded on both sides judicially, *Artabanes* at length pronounced definitely that the Kingdom of *Persia* appertained unto *Xerxes*: with that *Ariamenes* incontinently leapt from his seat, went and did homage unto his brother, and taking him by the right hand enthronized and entailed him King: from which time forward he was always the greatest person next unto his brother, and shewed himselfe so loving and affectionate unto him, that in his quarrel he fought most valiantly in the navall battell before *Salaminus*; where, in his service, and for his honour, he lost his life. This example may serve for an original patternne of true benevolence and magnanimity, so pure and uncorrupt, as it cannot in any one point be blamed or stained. As for *Antiochus*, as a man may reprehend in him his ambitious mind and excessive desire of rule: so he may as well wonder that, considering his vaine-glorious spirit, all brotherly love was not in him utterly extinct; for being himselfe the younger, he waged war with *Selenus* for the crown, and kept his mother here enough for to side with him and take his part: now it happened that during this war, and when it was at the hottet, *Selenus* struck a battell with the *Galatians*, lost the field, and was himselfe not to be found, but supposed certainly to have been slaine and cut in peeces; together with his whole army, which by the Barbarians were put to the sword and massacred; when news came unto *Antiochus* of this defeat, he laid away his purple robes, put on black, caused the court gates to be shut, and mourned heavily for his brother, as if he had been dead: but being afterwards advertised that he was alive, safe, and found, and that he went about to gather new forces and make head againe, he came abroad, sacrificed with thanksgiving unto the gods, and commanded all those cities and states which were under his dominion to keep holiday to sacrifice and weare chaplets of flowers upon their heads in token of public joy. The Athenians when they had devised an absurd and ridiculous fable as touching the quarrel between *Nephtine* and *Minerva*, intermeddled withall another invention which foundeth to some reason, tending to the correction of the same, and as it were to make amends for that absurdity, for they suppose alwaies the second of *Augustus*, upon which day happened (by their saying) that debate aforesaid between *Nephtine* and *Minerva*. What should let and hinder us likewise, if it chance that we enter into any quarrel or debate with our allies and kinsfolke in blood, to condemne that day to perpetual oblivion, and to repute and reckon it among the curied and dimm daies: but in no wise by occasion of one such unhappy day to forget so many other good and joyfull daies wherein we have lived and been brought up together: for either it is for nothing and in vaine that nature hath endued us with meeknesse, and harmlesse long-sufferance, or patience the daughter of modesty and mediocrity, or else surely we ought to use these vertues and good gifts of other principally to her allies and kinsfolke: and verily to crave and receive

par-

pardon of them when we our selves have offended and done amisse, declareth no lesse love and naturall affection than to forgive them if they have trespassed against us. And therefore we ought not to neglect them if they be angry and displeased; nor to be straight laced and stiffly stand against them when they come to justify or excuse themselves; but rather both when our selves have sinned, oftentimes to prevent their anger by excuse, making or asking forgiveness, and also by pardoning them before they come to excuse if we have been wronged by them. And therefore *Euclides* that great Scholar of *Socrates* is much renowned and famous in all schooles of Philology, for that when he heard his brother breake out into these beately and wicked words against him, The foule ill take me if I be not revenged and meet with thee: and a mischiefe come to me also (quoth he againe) if I appeale not thine anger, and perswade thee to love me well as ever thou didst. But King *Eumenes* not in word, but in deed and effect surpassed all others in meeknesse and patience: for *Perseus* King of the Macedonians being his mortall enemy, had secretly addressed an ambush, and set certainemen of purpose to murder him about *Delfos*, clyping their time when they saw him going from the seaside to the said town for to consult with the oracle of *Apollo*: now when he was gone a little past the ambush, they began to assaile him from behind, tumbling down and throwing mighty stones upon his head and neck, wherewith he was so astonishd that his sight failed, and he fell withall, in that manner as he was taken for dead: now the rumour hereof ran into all parts, insomuch as certaine of his servitors and friends made speed to the city *Pergamus*, reporting the tidings of this occurrence, as if they had been present and seen all done; wherupon *Attalus* the eldest brother next unto himselfe, an honest and kind hearted man, one who alwaies had carried himselfe most faithfully and loyally unto *Eumenes*, was not only declared King, and crowned with the royall diadem; but that which more is, espoused and married Queen *Stratonice* his said brothers wife, and lay with her. But afterwards when counter-news came that *Eumenes* was alive and coming homeward againe, *Attalus* laid aside his diadem, and taking a partizan or javelin in his hand (as his manner before time was) with other pensioners and squires of the body he went to meet his brother: King *Eumenes* received him right graciously, tooke him lovingly by the hand, embraced the Queen with all honour, and of a princely and magnanimous spirit put up all; yea, and when he had lived a long time after without any complaint, suspicion, and jealousy at all, in the end at his death made over and assigned both the Crown and the Queen his wife unto his brother the aforesaid *Attalus*: and what did *Attalus* now after his brothers decease? He would not fostering bring up (as heire apparent) so much as one child that he had by *Stratonice* his wife, although the bare nut to him may; but benourished and carefully cherished the son of his brother departed, until he was come to full age, and then himselfe in his life-time with his own hands set the imperiall Diadem and royall Crown upon his head, and proclaimed him King. But *Caulpse* the kingdome wrought upon a vaine dreame which he had, that his brother was come to usurpe the Kingdom of *Asia*, without expecting any proofe or presumption thereof, put him to death for it; by occasion whereof the succession in the Empire went out of the race of *Cyrus* upon his decease, and was devolved upon the line of *Darius* who reigned after him; a Prince who knew how to communicate the government of his affairs, and his regall authority, not only with his brethren, but also with his friends.

Moreover, this one point more is to be remembered and observed diligently in all variances and debates that are risen between brethren: namely, then especially, and more than at any time else, to converse and keep company with their friends; and on the other side to avoid their enemies and evil-willers; and not to be willing so much as to vouchsafe them any speech or entertainment. Following herein the fashion of the Candioes, who being oftentimes fallen out and in civil dissension amongst themselves, yea, and warring hot one with another, no sooner heare news of forreine enemies coming against them, but they ranke themselves, biding jointly together against them; and this combination is that which thereupon is called *Syncretismos*. For some there be that (like as water runneth alwaies to the lower ground, and to places that chinke or cleave asunder) are ready to side with those brethren or friends that be fallen out, and by their suggestions buzze into their eares faineate and overthrow all acquaintance, kindred and amity, hating indeed both parties, but seeming to beare rather upon the weaker side, and to settle upon him, who of imbecillity soone yeeldeth and giveth place. And verily those that be simple and harmlesse friends, iust as commonly young folke are, apply themselves commonly to him that affecteth a brother, helping and reinforcing that love what he may: but the most malicious enemies are they, who clyping when one brother is angry or fallen out with another, seeme to be angry and offended together with him for company; and these do most hurt of all others. Like as the hen therefore in *Esop* answered unto the cat, making semblance as though he heard her say she was sick, and therefore in kindness and love asking how she did? I am well enough (quoth shee) I thanke you, so that you were farther off: even so unto such a man as is inquisitive and entrench into talke as touching the debate of brethren to found and search into some secrets between them, one ought to answer thus: Surely there would be no quarrell between my brother and me, if neither I nor he would give ear to carry tales and pick-thanks between us. Burne it commeth to passe (I say not how) that when our eyes be sore and in paine, we turne away our sight unto those bodies and colours which make no reversion or repercussion back againe upon it; but when we have some complaint and quarrell, or conceive anger or suspicion against our brethren, we take pleasure to heare those that make all worse, and are apt enough to take any colour and infection, presented to us by them, where it were more needfull and expedient



expedient at such time to avoid their enemies and ill-willers, and to keep our selves out of the way from them; and contrariwise to converse with their allies, familiars, and friends; and with them to bear company especially, yea, and to enter into their own houses for to complain and blame them before their very wives frankly and with liberty of speech. And yet it is a common saying, That brethren when they walke together should not so much as let a stone to be betwixt them: nay, they are discontented and displeased in mind in case a dog chance to run overthwart them; and a number of such other things they feare, whereof there is not one able to make any breach or division between brethren; but in the mean while, they perceive not how they receive into the midst of them, and suffer to traverle and crosse them, men of a curish and dogged nature, who can do nothing else but bark between, and low talic rumors and calumniationes between one and another, for to provoke them to jar and fall together by the eares; and therefore to great reason and very well to this purpose said *Theophrastus*, That if all things (according to the old proverb) should be common among friends, then most of all they ought to entertain friends in common; for private familiarities and acquaintances apart one from another are great means to disjoyn and turn away their hearts; for if they fall to love others, and make choice of other familiar friends, it must needs follow by consequence to take pleasure and delight in other companies, to esteeme and affect others, yea, and to suffer themselves to be ruled and led by others. For friendships and amities frame the natures and dispositions of men; neither is there a more certain and assured sign of different humors and divers natures than the choice and election of different friends, in such sort as neither to eat and drink, nor to play, nor to pass and spend whole daies together in good fellowship and company is so effectually to hold and maintain the concord and good will of brethren, as to hate and love the same persons; to joy in the same acquaintance; and contrariwise to abhor and shun the same company; for when brethren have friends common between them, the said friends will never suffer any injuries, calumniationes and quarrels to grow between; and say that peradventure there do arise some sudden heat of choler or grudging fit of complaint, presently it is cooled, quenched, and suppressed by the mediation of common friends, for ready they will be to take up the quarrell and scatter it so as it shall vanish away to nothing if they be indifferently affectionate to them both, and that their love incline no more to the one side than to the other: for like as tin-fodder doth knit and rejoyne a crackt peece of brasie, in rouching and taking hold of both sides and edges of the broken peeces, for that it agreeth and forth as well to the one as to the other, and suffereth from them both alike; even so ought a friend to be fitted and fittable indifferently unto both brethren, if he would knit surely, and confirme strongly their mutual benevolence and good will. But such as are unequal, and cannot intermeddle and goe between the one as well as the other, make a separation and disjunction, and not a sound joynt, like as certaine notes or discords in musick. And therefore it may well be doubted and question made whether *Hesiodus* did well or no when he said,

*Make not a ferele I thee advise  
Thy brothers peece in any wife,*

For a discreet and sober companion common to both (as I said) before, or rather incorporate (as it were) into them, shall ever be a sure knot to fasten brotherly love. But *Hesiodus* (as it should seem) meant and feared this in the ordinary and vulgar sort of men, who are many of them taught, by reason that so customably they be given to jealousie and suspicion, yea, and to selfe-love, which it we consider and observe, it is well; but with this regard alwaies, that although a man yeeld equal good will unto a friend as unto a brother; yet nevertheless in case of concurrence, he ought to releeve ever the preeminence and first place for his brother, whether it be in preferring him in any election of Magistrates, or to the manning of State-affaires; or in bidding and inviting him to a solemne feast, or publike assembly to consult and debate of weighty causes; or in recommending him to Princes and great Lords. For in such cases which in the common opinion of the world are reputed matters of honour and credit, a man ought to render the dignity, honour, and reward, which is befitting and due to blood by the course of nature. For in these things the advantage and prerogative will not purchase so much glory and reputation to a friend, as the repulse and putting by bring disgrace, discredit, and dishonour unto a brother. Well, as touching this old saying and sentence of *Hesiodus*, I have treated more at large elsewhere; but the intention of saying of *Menander* full wisely set down in these words:

*No man who loves another shall you see  
Well pleased, himselfe neglected for to be,*

putteth us in mind and teacheth us to have good regard and care of our brethren, and not to presume so much upon the obligation of nature, as to despise them. For the horse is a beast by nature loving to a man, and the dog loves his master; but in case you never thinke upon them, nor see unto them (as you ought) they will forgo that kind affection, estrange themselves and take no knowledge of you. The body also is more nearly knit and united to the soule by the greatest bond of nature that can be; but in case it be neglected and condemned by her, or not cherished so tenderly as it looketh to be, unwilling shall you see it to help and assist her, nay, full unthankfully will it execute, or rather give over it will altogether every action. Now to come more neere and to particularize upon this point, honesty and good is that care and diligence which is employed and shewed to thy brethren themselves alone; but better it would be far, if thy love and kind affections be extended as far as to their wives fathers and daughters husbands; by carrying a friendly mind and ready will to please

sure them likewise, and to do for them in all their occasions; if they be courteous and affable in favouring their servants, such especially as they love and favour; thankful and beholding to their Physicians who had them in cure during sickness and were diligent about them; acknowledging themselves bound unto their faithful and trusty friends, or to such as were willing and forward to take such part as they did in any long voyage and expedition, or to bear them company in warfare. And as for the wedded wife of a brother whom he is to reverence, repute and honor no lesse than a most sacred and holy relique or monument, if at any time he happen to see her, it will become him to speak all honour and good of her husband before her; or to be offended and complain (as well as the) of her husband, if he let not that store by her as he ought, and when she is angered to appease and still her. Say also that she have done some light fault, and offended her husband, to reconcile him again unto her and entreat him to be content and to pardon her; and likewise if there be some particular and private cause of difference between him and his brother, to acquaint the wife therewith, and by her means to complain thereof, that she may take up the matter by composition and end the quarrell.

Lives thy brother a batcheler and hath no children? thou oughtest in good earnest to be angry with him for it, to sollicite him to marriage, yea with chiding, rating, and by all means urge him to leave this single life, and by entering into wedlock to be linked in lawful alliance and affinity: hath he children? then you are to shew your good will and affection more manifestly, as well toward him as his wife, in honouring him more than ever before, in loving his children as if they were your own, yea, and shewing yourself more indulgent, kinde and affable unto them; that if it chance they do faine and shewd turns, (as little ones are wont) they run not away, nor retire into some blind and solitary corner for fear of father and mother, or by that means light into some light, unhappy and ungracious company, but may have recourse and reigne unto their uncle, where they may be admonished lovingly, and find an intercessor to make their excuse and get their pardon. Thus *Plato* reclaimed his brothers son or nephew *Speusippus*, from his loose life and dissolute riot, without doing any harm or giving him foul words, but by winning him with fair and gentle language (whereas his father and mother did nothing but rate and crie out upon him continually, which caused him to runne way and keep out of their sight) he imprinted in his heart a great reverence of him, and a fervent zeal to imitate him, and to set his mind to the study of Philosophie, notwithstanding many of his friends thought hardly of him and blamed him not a little, for that he took not a course with the untoward youth, namely, to rebuke, check, and chastise him sharply; but this was evermore his answer unto them: That he reproved and took him down sufficiently, by shewing unto him by his own life and carriage, what difference there was between vice and vertue, between things honest and dishonest. *Alenus* sometime King of *Thestia*, was hardly used and overawed by his father, for that he was insolent proud, and violent withal; but contrariwise, his uncle by the fathers side, would give him entertainment, bear him out and make much of him; Now when upon a time the *Thestians* sent unto *Delphos* certain lots, to know by the oracle of god *Apollo* who should be their King? The foretold uncle of *Alenus* unwitting to his brother, put in one for him; Then *Pythia* the Prophetesse gave answer from *Apollo* and pronounced, That *Alenus* should be King: The father of *Alenus* denied, and said that he had cast in no lot for him; and it seemed unto every man that there was some error in writing of those billes or names for the lottery; whereupon new messengers were dispatched to the oracle for to clear this doubt; and then *Pythia* in confirmation of the former choice answered:

*I mean that youth with reddish hair,  
Whom dame Archidice in womb did bear.*

Thus *Alenus* declared and elected King of *Thestia*, by the oracle of *Apollo*, and by the means withal of his fathers brother, both proved himself afterward a most noble prince, excelling all his progenitors and predecessors, and also raised the whole Nation and his Countrey a great name and mighty puissance.

Furthermore, it is seemly and convenient by joying and taking a glory in the advancement, prosperity, honours and dignities of brothers children, to augment the same, and to encourage and animate them to vertue, and when they do well, to praise them to the full. Happily it might be thought an odious and unseemly thing for a man to commend much his own sonne, but surely to praise a brothers sonne is an honourable thing, and since it proceedeth not from the love of a mans self, it cannot be thought but right, honest and (in truth) divine: for surely he thinks the very name itself (of Uncle) is sufficient to draw brethren to affect and love dearly one another, and so consequently their nephewes: and thus we ought to propole unto ourselves, for to imitate the better sort, and such as have been immortalized and desired in times past: for so *Hercules* notwithstanding he had 70 sonnes within twain of his own, yet he loved *Iolans* his brothers sonne no lesse than any of them; inasmuch as even at this day in most places there is but one altar erected for him and his said nephew together, and men pray joyntly unto *Hercules* and *Iolans*. Also when his brother *Iphiclus* was slain in that famous batell which was fought near *Lacedaemon*, he was so exceedingly displeased and took such indignation thereat, that he departed out of *Peloponnesus*, & left the whole Countrey. As for *Leucothea*, when her sister was dead, she nourished and brought up her child and together with her, ranged it among the Heavenly Saints: whereupon the *Romane* dames even at this day, when they celebrate the feast of *Leucothea* (whom they name *Mamma*) carry in their arms and cherish tenderly their sisters children, and not their own;

\* So signifies  
divine and  
an uncle.





\* *Trajanus*  
*brevi* (st) with rage and madnesse; and drunkennesse doth lodge and dwell with her, or rather is \*madnesse itself, only in circumstance of time it may be counted lesse, for that it continueth lesse while, but surely in regard of cause it is greater, for that it is voluntary, and we run wilfully into it, and without any constraint. Now there is no one thing for which drunkennesse is so much blamed and accused as for intemperate speech and talk without end: for as the Poet saith,

*Wine makes a man who is both wise and grave  
 To sing and chant, to laugh full wantonly,  
 It causeth him to dance, and eke to rave,  
 And many things to do unadvisedly.*

for the greatest and worst matter that ensueth thereupon is not singing, laughing, and dancing; there is another inconvenience in comparison whereof all these are nothing, and that is,

*To blurt abroad, and those words to reveal,  
 Which better were within for to conceal.*

This is (I say) the mischiefmost dangerous of all the rest: and it may be that the Poet covertly would assail that question which the Philosophers have propounded and disputed upon; namely, what difference there might be between libellal drinking of wine, and stark drunkennesse? in attributing to the former mirth and jocundnesse extraordinary, and to the latter much babbling and foolish prattle: for according to the common proverb, that which is seated in the heart and thought of a sober person, lieth aloft in the mouth and tongue of a drunkard. And therefore wisely answered the Philosopher *Bia* unto one of these jangling and prating companions: for when he seemed to mock him for sitting still, and saying nothing at a feast, inasmuch as he gave him the lob and fool for it: And how is it possible (quoth he) that a fool should hold his peace at the table? There was upon a time a Citizen of *Athen* who feasted the Embassadors of the King of *Persia*, and for that he perceived that these great Lords would take delight in the company of learned men and Philosophers, upon a brave mind that he carried, invited they were all and met there together: now when all the rest began to discourse in general, and every man seemed to put in some vie for himself, and to hold and maintain one theme or other, *Zeno* who late among them was only silent and spake not a word: whereupon the said Embassadors and Strangers of *Persia* began to be merry with him and to drink unto him round, saying in the end: And what shall we report of you Sir *Zeno* unto the King our master *Marie* (quoth he) no more but this, that there is an ancient man at *Athen*, who can sit at the board and say nothing. Thus you see that silence argueth deep and profound wisdom: it implieth sobriety, and is a mystical secret and divine virtue: whereas drunkennesse is talkative, full of words, void of sense and reason: and indeed thereupon multiplieth so many words, and is ever jangling. And in truth the Philosophers themselves when they define drunkennesse say: That it is a kind of raving and speaking idly at the table upon drinking too much wine: whereby it is evident, that they do not simply condemn drinking, so that a man keep himself within the bounds of modesty and silence: but it is excessive and foolish talk, that of drinking wine maketh drunkennesse. Thus the drunkard raveth and talketh idly when he is cup-shotten at the board; but the prater and man of many words doth it alwayes and in every place, in the market and common hall, at the theatre, in the publick galleries and walking places by day and by night. If he be a Physician and visit his patient, certes he is more grievous, and doth more hurt in his cure than the maladict self: if he be a passenger with others in a ship, all the company had rather be sea-sick than hear him prate: if he set to praise thee, thou wert better to be dispraised by another: and in a word, a man shall have more pleasure and delight to converse and commune with lewd persons, for they be discreet in their speech than with others that be bule-talkers, though otherwise they be good honest men. True it is indeed that old *Nessus* in a Tragedy of *Sophocles* speaking unto *Ajax* (who overshot himself in some hot and hasty words) for to appeale and pacifie him, saith thus after a mild and gracious manner,

*I blame not you Sir Ajax for your speech,  
 Naught though it be, your deeds are working leech.*

But surely we are not so well affected unto a vain-prating fellow: for his importunate and unseparable words, marre all his good works, and make them to lose their grace. *Lysias* upon a time, at the request of one who had a cause to plead unto at the barre, penned an oration for his purpose and gave it him. The party after he had read and read it over again, came unto *Lysias* heavy and ill-appeyed, saying: The first time that I perused your oration, me thought it was excellently well written, and I wondered at it: but when I took it a second and third time in hand, it seemed very simply erdred and carried no forcible and effectfull stile with it: Why (quoth *Lysias*, and smiled withall) know you not that you are to pronounce it but once before the judges? and yet fee and mark withall the perfluative eloquence and sweet grace that is in the writing of *Lysias*, for I may be bold to say and affirm of him, that

*The Muses with their broidred violet hair,  
 Grace'd him with favour much and beauty fair,*

And among those singular commendations that are given out of any Poet: most true it is that *Homer* is he alone of all that ever were, who overcame all satiety of the reader: seeming evermore new and fresh, flourishing alwayes in the prime of lovely grace, and appearing young still and amiable to win favour: howbeit in speaking and professing thus much of himself,

If

*It grieves me much for to rehearse again  
 A tale that once delivered hath been plain.*

He sheweth sufficiently that he avoweth what he can, and feareth that tedious satiety which followeth hard at heels, and layeth wait (as it were) unto all long trains of speech: in which regard he leadeeth the reader and hearer of his Poemes from one discourse and narration to another, and evermore with novelties doth so refresh and recreate him, that he thinketh he hath never enough: whereas our long-tongued charterers do after a sort wound and weary the ears of their hearers by their tautologies and vain repetitions of the same things, as they that toil and flury writing tables when they be fair courted and clement: and therefore let us let this fruit and formost before their eyes, that like as they who force men to drink wine out of measure and undelaid with water, are the cause that the good blessing which was given us to rejoyce our hearts and make us pleasant and merry driveth some into ladnesse and others into drunkennesse and violence: even so they that beyond all reason and to no purpose use their speech (which is a thing otherwise counted the most delightfull and amiable means of conference and society that men have together) caused to be inhumane and unfociable, displeasing those whom they thought to please, making them to be mocked at their hands, of whom they looked to be well esteemed, and to have their evil will and displeasure, whose love and amity they make reckoning of. And even as he be by good right may be esteemed uncourteous and altogether uncivil who with the girdle and titule of *Venus*, wherein are all sorts of kind and amiable allurements, should repell and drive from him as many as desire his company: so he that with his speech maketh others heavy and himself hateful, may well be held and reputed for a graceless man and of no bringing up in the world. As for other passions and maladies of the mind, some are dangerous, others odious, and some again ridiculous and exposed to mockery: but Garrulity is subject unto all these inconveniences at once. For such folk as are noted for their lavish tongue, are a meer laughing stock, and in every common and ordinary report of theirs, they minister occasion of laughter: hated they be for their relation of ill newes, and in danger they are because they cannot conceal and keep close their own secrets: hereupon *Anacarsis* being invited one day and feasted by *Solon*, was reputed wise, for that being asleep he was found and seen holding his right hand to his mouth, and his left upon his privies and natural parts: for good reason he had to think, that the tongue required and needed the stronger bridle and bit to refrain it: and in very truth it were a hard matter to reckon so many persons undone & overthrowen by their intemperate & loose life, as there have been Cities and mighty States ruinated and subverted utterly by the revealing and opening of some secrets. It fortuned that whiles *Sylla* did inleaguer before the City of *Athen*, and had not leisure to stay there long and continue the siege, by reason of other affairs and troubles pressed him sore, for of one side King *Mithridates* invaded and harried *Asia*, and on the other side the faction of *Marius* gathered strength: & having gotten head, prevailed much within *Rome*: certain old fellows being met in a Barbars shop within the City of *Athen*, who were blabs of their tongues, clattered it out in their talk together, that a certain quarter of the City named *Hepiscallion* was not sufficiently guarded, and therefore the Town in danger to be surpris'd by that part: which talk of theirs was overheard by certain spies, who advertised *Sylla* so much: whereupon immediately he brought all his forces to that side, and about midnight gave an hot assault, made entry & went within a very little of forcing the City, and being master of it all, for he filled the whole street called *Ceranicum* with slaughter and dead carcases, inasmuch as the channels ran down with blood. Now was he cruelly bent against the Athenians more for their hard language which they gave him, than for any offence or injury otherwise that they did unto him: for they had flouted and mocked *Sylla*, together with his wife *Metella*, and for that purpose they would get upon the walls and say, *Sylla*, is a Sycamore or Mulberry, bestrewed all over with dusty-meal: besides many other such foolish jibes and taunts: and so for the lightest thing in the world (as *Plato* saith) to wit, words which are but wind, they brought upon their heads a most heavy and grievous penalty. The garrulity and over-much talk of one man, was the only hinderance that the City of *Rome* was not set free and delivered from the tyranny of *Nero*. For there was but one night between the time that *Nero* should have been murdered on the morrow, and all things were ready and prepared for the purpose: but he who had undertaken the execution of that feat, as he went toward the Theatre, espied one of those persons who were condemned to die, bound and pinnioned at the prison door, and ready to be led and brought before *Nero*: who hearing him to make piteous moan and lamenting his miserable fortune, steps to him and rounding him softly in the ear: Pray to God poor man (quoth he) that this one day may passe over thy head, and that thou die not to day, for to morrow thou shalt come thanks. The poor prisoner taking hold presently of this enigmatical and dark speech, and thinking (as I suppose) that one bird in hand is better than two in bush, and according to the common saying, that

*A fool is he who leaving that  
 which ready is and sure,  
 Doth follow after things that be  
 unready and unsure.*

made choice of saving his life by the surer way, rather than by the juster means: for he discovered unto *Nero* that which the man had whispered secretly unto him: whereupon presently the party was apprehended and carried away to the place of torture, where by racking, scorching and scourging,

he was urged miserable wretch, to confesse and speak out that perforce, which of himself he had revealed without any strait at all. *Zeno* the Philosopher fearing that when his body was put to dolorous and horrible torments, he should be forced even against his will to bewray and disclose some secret plot: bit off his tongue with his own teeth and spit it in the Tyrants face. Notable is the example of *Leana*, and the reward which she had for containing and ruling her tongue is singular. An harlot she was and very familiar with *Harmodius* and *Aristogiton*: by means of which inward acquaintance privy she was, and partly as farre forth as a woman might be to that conspiracy which they had comploted against the usurping Tyrants of *Athens*, and the hopes that they builded upon (*Drunk* she had out of that fair cup of Love, and thereby vowed never to reveal the secrets of god *Cupid*.) Now after that these two paramours and lovers of her had failed of their enterprise and were put to death: she was called into question and put to torture, and therewith commanded to declare the rest of the complices in that conspiracy, who as yet were unknown and not brought to light: but so constant and resolute she was, that she would not detect so much as one, but endures all pains and extremities whatsoever: whereby she shewed that those two young gentlemen had done nothing unfitting their persons, and nobility in making choise to be enamoured of her. In regard of which rare secrecy others, the Athenians caused a Lionesse to be made of brass without a tongue, and the same in memorial of her to be erected and set up at the very gate and entry of their Citadell: giving posterity to understand by the generosity of that beast, what an undaunted and invincible heart she had; and likewise of what taciturnity and trust in keeping secrets, by taking it tonguelesse: and to say a truth, never any word spoken served to so good stead as many concealed and held in, have profited. For why? A man may one time or other utter that which he once kept in: but being spoken, it cannot possibly be recalled and unlaid, for out it is gone already and spread abroad sundry ways. And hereupon it is (*Tiuppoie*) that we have mento teach us for to speak, but we learn of the gods to hold our peace. For in sacrifices, religious myteries, and ceremonies of divine service we receive by tradition, a custom to keep silence. And even so, the Poet *Homer* feigned *Ulysses* (whose eloquence otherwise was so sweet) to be of all men most silent and of fewest words: his son likewise, his wife and nurie, whom you may hear thus speaking:

*As soon shall flock of sturdy oak it tell,  
Or on so strong, as I will it reveal.*

And *Ulysses* himself sitting by *Penelope*, before he would be known unto her who he was,  
Grieved in his mind, and pined to behold  
His wife by art to shew what heart did feel,  
But all the while his eyes he stiff did hold,  
Which shew no more than horn of sturdy steel;

so full was his tongue of patience, and his lips of continence. For why? reason had all the parts of his body to obedient and ready at command, that it gave order to the eyes not to feed tears; to the tongue not to utter a word; to heart not to pant or tremble, nor so much as to loob or sigh:

*Thus unto reason obedient was his heart,  
Persuaded all to take in better part.*

yea his reason had gotten the mastery of those inward and secret motions which are void and incapable of reason, as having under her hand the very blood and vitall spirits in all obedience: his people also and train about him were for the most part of that disposition: for that wanted this of constancy and loyalty to their lord in the highest degree, to suffer themselves to be pulled and haled, to be tugged and toiled, yea and dashed against the hard ground under foot by the gyant *Cyclops*, rather than to utter one word against *Ulysses*, or to bewray that lodg of wood which was burnt at the one end and an instrument made ready for to put out his only eye that he had; may they endured rather to be eaten and devoured raw by him, than to disclose any of *Ulysses* his secrets. *Pittacus* therefore did not a misle, who when the King of *Egypt* had sent unto him a beast for sacrifice, and willed him withal to take out and lay apart the best and worst piece thereof, plucked out the tongue and sent it unto him, as being the organ of many good things, and no lesse instrument of the worst that be in the world. And Lady *Lo* in *Euripides* speaking freely of her self, saith that she knew the time,

*When as she ought her tongue to hold,  
And when to speak she might be bold.*

For certainly those who have had noble and princely bringing up indeed, learn first to keep silence, and afterwards how to speak. And therefore king *Antigonus* the Great, when his sonne upon time asked him, When they should dislodge and break up the camp: What sonne (quoth he) art thou alone afraid, that when the time comes thou shalt not hear the Trumpet found the remove? Lo, how he would not trust him with a word of secrecy, unto whom he was to leave his Kingdom in succession: teaching him thereby, that he also another day should in such cases be wary and spare his speech. Old *Metellus* likewise, being asked such another secret as touching the army and setting forward of some expedition: If I wist (quoth he) that my shirt which is next to my skinn, knew this inward intent and secret purpose, I would put it off and fling it into the fire. King *Euromenes* being advertised that *Craterus* was coming against him with his forces kept to himself, and would not acquaint any of his neerest friends therewith, but made semblance and gave it out (though

(though untruly) that it was *Neoptolemus* who had the leading of that power: for him did his soldiers contemne and make no reckoning of, whereas the glory and renown of *Craterus* they had in admiration, and loved his virtue and valour: now when no man else but himself knew of *Craterus* his being in the field, they gave him battell, vanquished him, slew him before they were aware, neither took they knowledge of him before they found him dead on the ground. See how by a stratagem of secrecy and silence the victory was achieved, only by concealing so hardy and terrible an enemy: inasmuch, as his very friends about him admitted more his wisdom in keeping this secret from them, than complained of his diffidence and distrust of them. And say that a man should complain of thee in such a case, better it were yet to be challenged and blamed for distrusting, all the while thou remainest safe and obtaine a victory by that means, than to be justly accused after an overthrow, for being too open and trusting too easily. Moreover, how careful thou shouldst be and boldly blame and reprove another for not keeping that secret, which thou thy self hast revealed? For if it was behoovefull and expedient that it should not be known, why hast thou told it to another? But in case when thou hast let lie a secret from thy selfe unto aman, thou wouldst have him to hold it in, and not blurt it out, surely it cannot be but thou hast better confidence in another than thy selfe: now if he be like thy selfe, who will pity thee: thou come by a mischief? Is he better, and so by that means savest thee harmless beyond all reason and ordinary course: then hast thou met with one more faithfull to thee than thou art thy selfe: but haply thou wilt say, He is my very good friend: so hath he another friend (be sure) whom he will do much for, and disclose the same secret unto, and that friend (no doubt) hath another. Thus one word will get more till, it will grow and multiply by a suite and sequenel linked and hanging to an intemperate tongue: for like as unity, so long as the passeth not her bounds, but continueth and remaineth still in her selfe is one and no more, in which respect she is called in Greek, *Monas*, that is to say, Alone; whereas the number of twaine is the beginning of a diversity (as it were) and difference, and therefore indefinite; for straightwayes is Unity passed forth of it selfe by doubling, and so turneth to a plurality: even so a word or speech, all the while it abideth enclosed in him who first knew it, is truly and properly called a Secret, but after it is once gotten forth, and for a going, so that it is come unto another it beginneth to take the name of a common brute and rumour: for as the Poet very well saith, *Words ave wings*. A bird, if he be let flye once out of our hands it is much ado to catch againe, and even so, when a word hath passed out of a mans mouth, hardly or unmet may we wish hold or recover: for it flieeth amaine, it flapeth her mighty wings, fetcheth many a round compass, and spredeth every way from one quarter to another: well may mariners say a ship with cables and anchors when the violence of the wind is ready to drive and carry her away, or at least while they may moderate her swift and flight course; but if a word be bluffed out of the mouth, as out of her haven, and have gotten sea-room, there is no bay nor harbour to ride in, there is no calling of an hor will serve the turne, away she goes with a mighty noise and hurry, untill in the end she runs upon some rock and is split, or else into a great and deep gulph, to the preient danger of him who let her forth:

*For in small time, and with a little sparke  
Of fire, a man may burne the Forrest tall  
Of Ida mount: ev'n so (who list to marke)  
All town will beare, a word to one let fall.*

The Senate of *Rome* upon a time fate in sad and serious counsell many daies together, about a matter of great secrecy: now the thing being so much the more suspected and heartened after as it was lesse apparent and known abroad: a certaine Romaine dame, otherwise a good liver and wife matron (howbeit a woman) importuned her husband and instantly besought him, of all loves to tell her what this secret matter might be upon which they did sit so close in consultation? protesting with many an oath and execrable curse to keep silence, and not to utter it to any creature in the world; you must thinke also, that she had reares at command, lamenting and complaining with all, what an unhappy woman she was in case her husband would not trust her so much as with a word: the Roman Senator her husband minding to try and reprove her folly: Thou halt overcome me (sweet heart, quoth he) and through time impotunity, thou shalt heare of a strange and terrible occurrence that troubleth us all. So it is, that we are advertised by our Priests that there hath been a lark of late seen flying in the aire with a golden ore or crest on her head in manner of an helmet, and withall bearing a javelin: hereupon we do confer and consult with our Soothsayers and Diviners, desirous to be certified out of their learning whether this prodigious token portend good or hurt to the Common-wealth? But keep it to thy selfe (as thou lovest me) and tell it no body. When he had thus said, he went forth toward the Common Hall and Market-place: his wife incontinently had no sooner spied one of her waiting-maids coming into the roome, but she drew her apart, began to beat and knock her own brest, to rent and teare the haire off her head, and therewith: Ah, woe is me (quoth she) for my poore husband, my sweet native country: alas and wellday, what shall we do, and what will become of us all; as if she taught her maid and were desirous that she should say thus unto her againe: Why, what is the matter Mittris? Now when the maiden thereupon asked her, What news? she set late an end and told all the marry the forgate not the common and ordinary burden or clause, that all blabs of their tongue use to come in with: But in any case (quoth she) say nothing, but keep it to thy selfe. Scarce was she gone out of her Mittris sight: but

iceing

seeing one of her fellows whom she found most at leisure, and doing little or nothing, to her self imparted all. That when he again made no more ado, but to her lover she goes, who haply then was come to visit her, and telleth him as much. By this means the tale was bruited abroad, and passed roundly from one to another: in such as the rumour thereof was run into the market place, and there went current before the first author and deviser thereof himselfe was gotten thither. For there meets with him one of his familiars and friends: How now (quoth he) are you come but now directly from your house to the market place? No (quoth he againe) I am but newly come: Why then belike (saith the other) you have heard no news? News (quoth he) what news should I hear? And what tidings can you tell me of? Why man (answered he againe) there hath been of late a Larke (seen with a golden cop or crest on her head, and carrying beside a javelin: and the Consul with other Magistrates are ready to call a Senate house for to sit upon this strange occurrent. With that the Senator beforelaid, turning aside and smiling, thus said to himselfe: Well done wife, I conceive thanks for thy quicknesse and celerity, thou hast quit thy selfe well indeed, that the word which erewhile I uttered unto thee is gotten before me into the market-place. Well, the first thing that he did was this, To the Magistrates he went straightwaies, signified unto them the occasion of this speeche, and freed them from all feare and trouble: but when he was come home to his own house he fell in hand to chastise his wife: How now Dame (quoth he) how is this come to passe? You have undone me for ever: for it is found and known for a truth, that this secret and matter of counsell which I imparted to you is divulged and published abroad, and that out of my house: and thus your unbridled tongue is the cause that I must abandon and flie my cuntry, and forthwith depart into exile. Now when at the first she would have denied the thing stoutly, and alledged for her excuse and defence saying, Are not there three hundred Senators besides your selfe, who heard it as well as you? No marvel then if it be known abroad. What tell you me of three hundred (quoth he?) Upon your importunate instance I devised it of mine own head, in mirth to try your silence; and whether you could keep counsell. Certes, this Senator was a wise man, and went lately and warily to worke, who to make proofe of his wife, whom he took to be no foundener nor surer than a crackt and rotten vessell, would not poure into it either wine or oyle, but water only, to see if it would leake and run out. But *Fulvius*, one of the favorites and minions of *Augustus* the Emperour, when he was now well stepped in yeares, having heard him toward his latter daies, lamenting and bewailing the desolate estate of his house, in that he had no children of his own body begotten, and that of his three nephews or sisters children two were dead, and *Posthumus* (who only remained alive) upon an imputation charged upon him confined, and living in banishment, whereupon he was enforced to bring in his wives son, and declared him here apparant to succeed him in the Empire: notwithstanding upon a tender compassion he was otherwhiles in deliberation with himselfe, and minded to recall his forelaid sisters son from exile, and the place whereunto he was confined, *Fulvius* (I say) being privy to these moanes and desires of his, went home and told his wife all that he had heard. She could not hold but goes to the Emperesse *Livia*, wife of *Augustus*, and reported what her husband *Fulvius* had told her. Whereupon *Livia* taking great indignation, sharply did censure and expostulate with *Caesar* in these termes: That seeing it is so (quoth she) that you had so long before projected and determined such a thing, as to call home againe your Nephew aforelaid, why sent you not for him at the first, but exposted me to hatred, enmity, and war with him, who another day should weare the Diadem and be Emperour after your decease? Well the next morning betimes, when *Fulvius* came, as his manner was, to salute *Caesar*, and give him good morning, after he had said unto him *salve Kaisar*: that is, God save you *Caesar*. He reassured him no otherwise but this *ὁ θεὸς ἐποίησεν*; that is God make you wife *Fulvius*. *Fulvius* soone found him and conceived presently what he meant thereby: whereupon he retired home to his house with all speed: and called for his wife: unto whom, *Caesar* (quoth he) is come to the knowledge that I have not kept his counsell nor concealed his secrets: and therefore I am resolved to make my selfe away with mine own hands. And well worthy (quoth she) for justly you have deserved death, who having lived so long with me knew not the incontinence of my tongue all this while, nor would take heed and beware of it; but yet suffer me first to dye upon your sword: and with that catching hold thereof, killed her selfe before her husband. And therefore *Philippides* the Comedian, did very wisely in his answer to King *Lysimachus*, who by way of all courtie making much of him, and minding to do him honour, demanded of him thus: What wouldst thou have me to impart unto thee of all other treasure and riches that I have? What it shall please your Majesty (quoth he) my gracious Lord, so it be none of your secrets.

Moreover, there is adjoynded ordinarily unto Garrulity, another vice no lesse than it: namely, Butie intermeddling and Curiosity, for men desire to heare and know much news, because they may report and blaze the same abroad, and especially if they be secrets. Thus go they up and down listening, enquiring, and searching if they can find and discover some close and hidden speeches, adding as it were some oyle of furburage of odious matters to their roies and fooleries: which maketh them afterwards to be like unto little boies, who neither can hold yce in their hands, nor yet will let it go: or to say more truly, they claspe and containe in their bolomes secret speeches, resembling serpents, which they are not able to hold and keep long, but are eaten and gnawed by them. It is said that certaine fishes called the Sea-needles, yea, and the vipers do cleave and burst when they bring forth their young: and even so, secrets when they be let fall out of their mouths who cannot containe them, undo

undo and overthrow those that reveale them. King *Seleucus* (him I meane who was turnamed *Callinicus*, that is, the victorious Conquerour) in one battell against the Galatians, was defeated he and his whole power: whereupon he took from his head the Diadem or Royall band that he ware, and rode away on the spur on horseback with three or foure in his company, wandering through deairs and by waies unknowne so long, untill both horse and man were done, and ready to faint for wearinesse: at length he came unto a country kearnes or peasants cottage: and finding (by good fortune) the good man of the house within, asked for bread and water: which the said peasant or cottier gave unto him: and not that only, but look what the field would afford else besides, he imparted unto him and his company with a willing heart and in great plenty, making them the best chere that he could devise: in the end he knew the Kings face, whereupon he took such joy, in that his hap was to entertaine the King in his necessity, that he could not containe himselfe, nor second the King in dissembling his knowledge, who desired nothing more than to be unknown: when he had therefore brought the King onward on his way, and was to take his leave of him: Adieu (quoth he) King *Seleucus*: with that the King reached forth his hand, and drew him toward him, as if he would have kissed him, and withall beckned to one of his followers, and gave him a secret token to take his sword and make the man shorter by the head.

*Thus whiles he spake (I do not what his head*

*Off goes, and lies in dust when he was dead,*

Whereas, if he could have held his tongue a little while longer, and mastered himselfe, when the King afterwards had better fortune and recovered his greatnesse and puissance, he should in my conceit have gotten more thanks at his hands, and been better rewarded for keeping silence, than for all the courtie and hospitality that he shewed. And yet this fellow had in some sort a colourable excuse for this intemperate tongue of his, to wit, his own hopes and the good will that he bare unto the King: but the most part of these praters undo themselves without any cause or pretence at all of reason: like as it befell unto *Dennis* the tyrants barber: for when (upon a time) there were some talking in his shop as touching his tyrannical government and estate, how assured it was, and as hard to be ruined or overthrowne, as it is to break the Diamond: the said barber laughing thereat: I marvel (quoth he) that you should say so of *Dennis*, who is so often under my hands, and at whose throat in a manner every day I hold my razor: these words were soon carried to the tyrant *Dennis*, who faire crucified this barber and hanged him for his foolish words. And to say a truth, all the sort of these barbers be commonly busie fellows with their tongue: and no marvel, for lightly the greatlest praters and idolest persons in a country frequent the barbers shop, and sit in his chaire, where they keep such chat, that it cannot be but by hearing them prate so customably, his tongue also must walke with them. And therefore King *Archelaus* answered very pleasantly unto a barber of his, that was aman of no few words, who when he had calt his linnen cloath about his shoulders, said unto him: Sir, may it please your Highnesse to tell me how I shall cut or shave you: Marry (quoth he) holding thy tongue, and laying not a word. A barber it was who first reported in the City of *Athenes* the news of that great discomfiture and overthrow which the Athenians received in *Sicily*: for keeping his shop (as he did) in that end of the suburbs called *Pnyx*, he had no sooner heard the said unlucky news of a certaine slave who fled from thence out of the field, when it was lost, but leaving shop and all at sixe and seven, ran directly into the city, and never rested to bring the said tidings whiles they were fresh and fire-new,

*For faine some else might all the honour win,*

*And he too late or second, should come in.*

Now upon the broaching of these unwelcome tidings a man may well thinke (and not without good cause) that there was a great stir within the City: in such as the people assembled together into the Market-place or Common hall, and search was made for the author of this rumour: hereupon the said barber was hailed and brought before the body of the people, and examined: who knew not so much as the name of the party of whom he heard this news: But well assured I am (quoth he) that one said so, marry who it was, or what his name might be I cannot tell. Thus it was taken for an headlesse tale, and the whole Theatre or Assembly was so moved to anger, that they cried out with one voice: Away with the villaine, have the varlet to the rack, let the knave upon the wheele, he it is only that hath made all on his own fingers ends, this hath he, and none but he, devised: for who else hath heard it, or who besides him hath beleevied it? Well, the wheele was brought, and upon it was the barber stretched: meane while, and even as the poore wretch was hoyle thereupon, behold there arrived and came to the City those who brought certaine news indeed of the said de-feature, even they who made a shift to escape out of that unfortunate field: then brake up the assembly, and every man departed and retired home to his own house for to bewaile his own private losse and calamity, leaving the fully barber lying along bound to the wheele, and racked out to the length, and there remained he untill it was very late in the evening, at what time he was let loose: & no sooner was he at liberty but he must needs enquire news of the executioner, & namely, what they heard abroad of the General himselfe *Nicias*: & in what sort he was slain: So inexpressible and incorrigible a vice is this, gotten by custome of much talke, that a man cannot leave it: though he were going to the gallows, nor keep in those tidings which no man is willing to heare: for certes, like as they who have dranke bitter potions, or unfavoury medicines, cannot away with the very cups wherein they were: even so, they that bring evil and heavy tidings, are ordinarily hated and detested

detested of those unto whom they report the same, And therefore *Sophocles* the Poet hath very finely distinguished upon this point in these verses:—

Messenger.  
Is it your heart, or else your ear,  
That this offence which you do heare?  
Creon.

And why dost thou search my disguise  
To know what griefe doth me displease?  
Messenger.

His deeds (I see) offend your heart,  
But my words cause your eares to smart.

Well then, those who tell us any foolish news be as odious as they who work our woe; and yet for all that there is no restraint and bridling of an intemperate tongue that is given to walke and over-reach. It fortuned one day at *Lacedæmon*, that the temple of *Juno*, called there *Chalcicæos*, was robbed, and within it was found a certaine empty flagon or stone bottle for wine: great running there was and concourse of the people thither, and men could not tell what to make of that flagon: at last one of them that stood by: My matters (quoth he) if you will give me leave, I shall tell you what my conceits of that flagon, for my mind gives me (saith he) that these Church-robbers who projected to execute so perilous an enterprise, had first drank the juyce of hemlock before they entered into the action, and afterwards brought wine with them in this bottle, to the end that if they were not surprised nor taken in the manner, they might save their lives by drinking each of them a good draught of meere wine: the nature and vertue wherof (as you know well enough) is to quench as it were and dissolve the vigour and strength of that poyson, and so go their waies safe enough, but if it chance that they were taken in the deed doing, then they by means of that hemlock which they had drank die an easy death, and without any great paine and torment before that they were put to torture by the Magistrate. He had no sooner delivered this speech, but the whole company who heard his words thought verily that such a contrived device, and so deep a reach as this never came from one that suspected in such a matter, but rather knew that it was so indeed: whereupon they flocked round about, and hemmed him in, and on every side each one had a saying unto him: And what art thou (quoth one?) From whence art thou, saith another? Here comes one and asketh, who knew him? There sets upon him another, saying, And how comest thou by the light of all this that thou hast delivered? To be short, they handled the matter so well that they forced him to bewray himselfe in the end, and to confesse that he was one of them that committed the sacrilege. Were not they also who murdered the Poet *Ibycus*, discovered and taken after the same manner? It hapned that the said murderers were set at a Theatre to behold the plaies and paltines which were exhibited; and seeing a flight of Cranes over their heads, they whispered one to another: Lo! these be they that will revenge the death of *Ibycus*. Now had not *Ibycus* been a long time before seen, and much feare was made after him, because he was out of the way and missed; whereupon they that sate next unto these men, over-hearing those words of theirs, and well noting the speech, went directly to the Magistrates and Justices to give intelligence and information of their words. Then were they attached and examined; and thus being convicted suffered punishment in the end, not by means of those Cranes that they talked of, but surely by their own blab-tongues: as if some hellish fury had forced them to disclose that murder which they had committed. For like as in our bodies the members diseased and in paine draw humours continually unto them, and all the corruption of the parts neare unto them flow thither; even so, the tongue of a babling fellow, being never without an inflammation and a feverous pulse, draweth alwaies and gathereth to it one secret and hidden thing or other. In which regard it ought to be well fenced with a rampart, and the bulwarke of reason should be evermore set against it, which like unto a bar may stay and stop that overflowing and incontinent lubricity which it hath; that we be not more undiscereet and foolish beasts than geese are, who when they be to take a flight into *Calicut* over the mountaine *Tamus*, which is full of eagles, take up every one in their bill a good big stone, which serveth them instead of a lock or bridle to retraineth their gaggling; by which device they may passe all night long without any noise, and not be heard at all, or detected by the said eagles.

Now if one should demand and aske of me, what perion of all others is most mischievous and dangerous? I beleave very well there is no man would name any other but a traitour. And yet *Euthykrates* (as saith *Demosthenes*) by his treason covered his own house with a rooke made of timber that he had out of *Macedonia*. *Philocrates* also lived richly and gallant of that great masse of gold and silver which he had of King *Philip* for betraying his country, and therewith furnished himselfe with brave chariots, gallant concubines, and dainty fishes. *Euphorbus* also and *Philagrus*, who betrayed *Eraria* were endowed by the King with faire lands and possessions: but a prater is a traitor voluntary and for nothing he demandeth no hire at all, neither looketh he to be solicited, but offereth himselfe and his service; nor betrayeth unto the enemies either forties or walls, but revealeth hidden secrets, and discloseth speeches which are to be concealed: whether it be in judiciall matters of law, or in seditious discords, or in managing of State-affaires. It makes no matter, and no man connecth him thanks; nay, he will thinke himselfe beholding to others if they will vouchsafe to give him audience. And therefore, that which is commonly said to a prodigall person, who foolishly

ly mispendeth and vainly wasteth his substance he cares not how to gratifie every man: Thou art not liberrall, this is no custellie; a vice it is rather that thou art disposed unto, thus to take pleasure in nothing, but giving and giving still. The same rebuke and reprehension serveth very fitly for a babler: Thou art no friend nor well-willer of mine, thus to come and discove their things unto me; this is thy fault, and a disease which thou art sick of, that lovest to be clattering, and hast no mind but of chatting.

Now would I have the Reader to thinke that I write not all this so much to accuse and blame the vice and malady of garrulity, as to cure and heale the same. For by judgement and exercise we surmount and overcome the vices and passions of the mind; but judgement, that is to say, knowledge must go before: for no man accutemeth himselfe to void, and (as it were) to weed them out of the soule, unless he hate and detest them first. Now then, and never before, begin we to take an hatred to vices, when by the light of reason we consider and weigh the shame and losse that cometh unto us by them; as for example, we know and see that these great praters, whilst they desire to win love, gaine hatred; thinking to do a pleasure, they displeas; looking to be wellescemed, are mocked and derided; they lay for lucre, and get nothing; they hurt their friends, aide their enemies, and undo themselves.

So then, let this be the first receipt and medicine for to cure this malady; even the consideration and reckoning up of the shameful infamies and painefull inconveniences that proceed and ensue thereof. The second remedy is, to take a survey of the contrary; that is to say, to heare alwaies, to remember and have ready at hand the praises and commendations of silence: the majesty (I say) the mytical gravity and holinesse of taciturnity, to represent alwaies unto our mind and understanding how much more admired, how much more loved, and how far wiser they are reputed, who speake roundly at once, and in few words, their mind pithily; who in a short and compendious speech comprehend more good matter and substance a great deale than these great talkers, whose tongues are unbridled and run at randome. Those (I say) be they whom *Plato* so highly esteemeth, comparing them to skillfull and well practised Archers and Darters, who have the feat of shooting arrows and launching darts; for they know how and when to speake graciously, and bitterly, foundly, pithily, and compactly. And verily, wise *Lycurgus* framed and exercised his Citizens immediately from their childhood by keeping them down at the first with silence to this short and sententious kind of speech, whereby they spake alwaies compendiously, and knit up much in a little. For like as they of *Babylon* or *Calistria* do make their Steele of iron, by entering it and letting it lie first within the ground, and then by purging and refining it from the grosse, terrene, and earthly substance that it hath; even so the Lacedæmonians speech hath no outward barke (as a man would say) or crust upon it, but when all the superfluity thereof is taken away, it is steeld (as it were) and tempered, yea, and hath an edge upon it fit for to worke withall and to pierce: and verily that apophthegmaticall and powerful speech of theirs, that grace which they had to answer sententionally and with flux gravity, together with a quick and ready gift to meet at every turne with all objections, they attained unto by nothing else but by their much silence. Wherefore it was very expedient to set ever before the eyes of these great praters those short and witty speeches, that they may see what grace and gravity both they have: as for example, The Lacedæmonians unto *Philip* greeting: *Dionysius* in *Corinth*: Also another time, when *Philip* had written unto them to this effect: If I enter once into the confines of *Laconia*, I will destroy you utterly that you shall never rise againe. They returned this answer againe in writing, *Alexa*: that is, If, Likewise when King *Demetrius* in great displeasure and indignation cried out aloud in these words: The Lacedæmonians have sent me an embassador alone, and who hath no fellow: Meaning that there came but one: the said embassador nothing daunted at his words, answered readily: One for one. Certes, they that used to speake short and sententionally were highly esteemed long ago with our ancients and forefathers. And hereupon it was that the *Amblythones*, that is to say, the Deputies or States for the generall councill of all Greece, gave order, that there should be written over the doore of the Temple of *Apollo Pythius*, not the *Odysses* or *Iliads* of *Homer*; ne yet the Canticles or Psalms of *Pindarus*; but these briefe sentences: *Ἐνὶ αὐτοῖς*; that is, Know thy selfe. *Μὴδὲν ἄγαν*; that is, Too much of nothing. *Ἄλλο εὔροια, ἄλλα δ' ἄρα*: That is, Be surety and make account to pay: so highly esteemed they a plaine, simple, and round manner of speaking, which comprised in few words much matter, and a sentence masse and found: and no marvel for *Apollo* himselfe loveth brevity, and is in his oracles very succinct and pithy; wherefore else is he surnamed *Laxius*? But because he chooseth rather to avoid plurality than obscurity of words, They also who without word uttered at all signify the conceptions of their mind by certaine symbolicall devices, and after that manner deliver good lessons unto us: are they not sundry waies commended and admired exceedingly? Thus *Heraclitus* in times past, being requested by his neighbours and fellow-citizens to make a sententious speech unto them, and deliver his opinion as touching civill unity and concord, mounted up into the pulpit, and taking a cup of cold water in his hand, bespiced it (as it were) with some meale, and with a spig or two of the herbe *Pennirovall*, shook all together: which done he drank it off, and so came down and went his way: giving them by this demonstration thus much to understand; that if men would take up with a little, and be content with things at hand, without desiring costly superfluities, it were the next way to keep and preserve Cities in peace and concord.

*Seythrus* a King of the Scythians left behind him fourscore sons; and when the houre of his death

death drew neare, he called for a bundle of darts, or a sheafe of arrows to be brought unto him, which he put into his childrens hands one after another, and willed each one to breake and butt the same in peeces, bound as it was entire and whole together: which when they had assayed to do, and putting all their strength unto it, could not burge over: himselfe tooke out of the sheafe or knitch the darts afore said one by one, and knapt them in twaine single as they were with facility: declaring by this devile, that so long as they held together their union and agreement would be strong and invincible; but their discord and diuision would make them feeble, and be an occasion that they should not long continue. He then that continually shall have these and such like precedents in his mouth, and ordinarily repeat and remember the same, will peradventure take no great pleasure and delight in idle and superfluous words. For mine own part, I surely I am abashed mightily at the example of that domestical servant at *Rome*, when I consider with my selfe what a great matter it is to be well advised before a man speaketh, and constantly to hold and maintaine the resolution of any purpose. *Publius Piso* the great Oratour and Rhetorician, because he would provide that his people and seruitors about him should not trouble his head with much prattle, gave order and commandement unto them, that they should make answer unto his demands only, and no more: now being minded one day to entertaine *Clodius* the chiefe ruler of the City at his house, he bad him to supper, and caused him to be sent for and called at the time accordingly: for a stately and royall feast he had provided, by all likelihood, and as any man would think no lesse: now when supper time was come, the rest of the invited guests were present, *Clodius* only they stayed & looked for: meane while, *Piso* had sent out oftentimes unto him one of his seruitors who was wont ordinarily to bid his guests for to see whether he were coming or would come to supper or no? But when it grew late in the evening, so that there was no hope now that he would be there: Now fraith (quoth *Piso* to his man afore said) didst thou not inuite and bid him? Yes iwis Sir: Why then comes he not said the make master againe? Forsooth (quoth he) because he denied to come: And why toldest thou not me this immediately? Because sir you neuer asked me the question. Well this was a Roman seruitor: but an Athenian servant I trow whiles he is digging and delving, will tell his master news, and namely, what be the articles and capitulations in the treaty and composition of peace. So powerful and forcible is use and custome in all things, whereof I purpose now to treat; for that there is no bit nor bridle that is able to repress, tame, and keep in a talkative tongue, but it is custome that must do the deed, and conquer this malady.

First and formost therefore, when in company there shall be any question propounded by them that are about thee, frame and use thy selfe to hold thy tongue and be silent, untill thou see that every man else reineth to speake and make answer: for according to *Sophocles*,

To counsell and to run a course in race  
Have not both twaine one end, to haue apace.

No more verily doth a voice and an answer shoot at the same marke that running aimeth at: for there, to wit, in a race, he winneth the prize that getteth to be formost; but here, if another man have delivered a sufficient answer, it will be well enough, by praising and approving his speech, to gaine the opinion and reputation of a courteous person: if not, then will it not be thought impertinent neither can envy or hatred come of it, in case a man do gently shew and open that wherein the other was ignorant, and so alter a mild and civil manner supply the defect of the former answer: but above all, this regard would be had: That when a question or demand is addressed and directed unto another, we take it not upon our selves; and so anticipate and prevent his answer; and peradventure, neither in this nor in any thing els is it decent and commendable to offer and put forth our selves too forward before we be required; and in this case, when another man is asked a question, our own intrusion, with the putting by of him is not seemly; for we may be thought (in so doing) both to injure and discredit the party demanded, as if he were not able to performe that which was put upon him, and also to reproach the demandant, as though he had little skill and direction to aske a thing of him who could not give the same: and that which more is, such malapert boldnesse and heady haughtinesse in rash answerings importeth (most of all) exceeding arrogancy and presumption; for it seemeth, that he who taketh the answer out of his mouth of whom the question is demanded, would say thus much in effect: What need have we of him? What can he say unto it? What skill or knowledge hath he? When I am in place no man ought to aske any other of these matters but my selfe only. And yet many times we propole questions unto some, not of any great desire that we have to heare their answers, but only because we would find talke, and minister occasion of discourse, seeking thereby to dravv from them some words that may yield matter of mirth and pleasant conference: after which sort, *Socrates* used to provoke *Theaetetus* and *Charmides*. To prevent therefore the answer of another, to turne away mens eares, to divert their eyes, and dravv their cogitations from him to our selves, is as much as if we should run before and make haste to kisse one first, who was minded to be kised of another, or to enforce him to looke upon us, whose eyes were set and fixed upon another; considering, that although the party unto whom the demand was made be either not able nor willing to make answer, it were befitting for a man, after some little pause made, to present himselfe in all modesty and reverence, and then to frame and accommodate his speech as neare unto that as may be, which he thinketh will content the mind of him that made the demand, and so answer (as it were) in the name of the other: for if they who are demanded a question make no good and sufficient answer, great reason they have to be pardoned and

held excused; but he who intrudeth himself, and taking the words out of anothers mouth, is ready to speake before he be spoken unto, by good right is odious, although he answer otherwise sufficiently: but if he fail, and make no good answer, certes he maketh himselfe ridiculous, and a very laughing stock to the whole company.

The second point of exercise and meditation, is in a mans own particular answers, wherein he ought especially to be careful and take heed who is given to over-much talk, to the end that they who would provoke him to speake, and all to make themselves merry and to laugh at him, may well know that he answereth not he knows not what inconsiderately, but with good advide and seriously to the point: for such there be in the world, who for no need at all, but only for to passe time in mirth, devise certain questions for the nonce, and in that manner propound them to such persons for no other end, but to provoke them to prattle: and therefore they ought to have a good eye and regard before them, not to leap out and run all on a sudden hastily to their answer, as if they were well pleased and beholden unto them for to have such an occasion of speech; but with mature deliberation to consider the nature and behaviour of him that putteth out the question, together with the necessity thereof, and the profit that may ensue thereby; and if it appear indeed, that the party be in good earnest, and desirous to learn and be instructed, then he must accustome himselfe to repress his tongue and take some pause, allowing a competent space of time between the demand and the answer during which silence, both the demander may have while to bethink himself and add somewhat thereto, if he list, and also the demandant time to think of an answer, and not let his tongue run before his wit, and so huddle upon a confused answer before the question be fully propounded: for oftentimes it falleth out, that for very haste they take no heed of those things which were demanded; but answer him kam, and one thing for another. True it is (I must needs say) that *Pythia* the priestesse of *Apollo's* Temple, is wont to give answer by oracle at the same instant that the question is demanded, yea, and oftentimes before it be asked: for why? the god whom she serveth

Doth understand the dumb, who cannot speak.

And knowes ones mind, before the tongue is breake.

but among men, he that would wisely and to purpose answer, ought to stay untill he conceive the thoughts, and fully understand the intent of him that propoeth a question, lest that befall unto him which is said in the common proverb:

About an book, I question made,

And they gave answer of a spade.

and otherwise also, if that inconvenience were not, yet are we to bridle this lavish and hasty tongue of ours, and restrain the inordinate and hungry appetite which we have to be talking; lest it be thought that we had a flux (as it were) of humors gathered a long time about the tongue, and grown into an impostume, which we are very well content should be let out and have issue made by a question tendered unto us, and so by that means be discharged thereof. *Socrates* was wont in this manner to restrain and repress his thirst, after that he had enchaufed his body and set himselfe into an heat, either by wrestling, or running, or such like exercises; he would not permit himself to drink before he had powred out the first bucket of water that he had drawn out of the *Pir* or *Well*, acquainting this his sensuall appetite to attend the fit and convenient time that reason appointed.

Moreover, this would be noted, that there be three kinds of answers unto interrogations: the first necessary, the second civil, and the third needlesse and superfluous: as for example; If one should ask whether *Socrates* be within or no; he that is unwilling and not ready and forward with his tongue, would make answer and say: He is not within, but if he disposed to laconize a little, and speake more brief, he would leave out the word (within) and say: He is not: yet more short than so, pronouncing only the negative Adverb, and saying no more but No. Thus the Lacedaemonians dealt once by *Philip*; for when he had dispatched his letters unto them to this effect; To know whether they would receive him into their City or no: they wrote back again, in fair great capital letters, within a sheet of paper, no more but O Y, that is to say, No: and so sent it unto him: but he that would make answer to the former question of *Socrates* a little more civilly and courteously, would say thus: He is not within fir, for he is gone to the Bank or Exchange; and to give yet a somewhat better measure, he might perhaps adde moreover and say: He looketh there for certain strangers and friends of his. But a vain prating fellow, and one that loves many words, especially if his hap hath been to read the book of *Animachus* the Colophonian, will make answer to the demand afore said in this wise: He is not within fir gone he is to the Burs or Exchange, for there he expecteth certain strangers out of *Ionia*, of whom and in whose behalf *Alcibiades* wrote unto him, who now maketh his abode within the City of *Miletus*, so journeyth with *Tissaphernes*, one of the Lieutenants general of the great King of *Persia*; who before time was in league with the Lacedaemonians, to lood their friend, and sent them aid; but not for the love of *Alcibiades*, he is turned from them and is sided with the Athenians: for *Alcibiades* being desirous to return into his own Country, hath prevailed so much that he hath altered *Tissaphernes* his mind, and drawn him away from our part: and thus shall you have him rehearse in good earnest the whole eight book (in manner) of *Thucydides* his story, untill he have overwhelmed a man with a multitude of narrations, and made him believe that in *Miletus* there is some great edition; that it is ready to be lost, and *Alcibiades* to be banished a second time. Herein then ought a man principally to set his foot and stay his overmuch language, so as the center and circumference of the answer be that, which he who maketh the demand desireth and



*M. H. is  
ther as  
some read.*

hath need to know. *Carnaeades* before he had any great name, dispired one day in the publick Schools and places appointed for exercise: Unto whom the Master or President of the place lent before hand, and gave him warning to moderate his voice (for he spake naturally exceeding big and loud, so as the Schools rung again therewith.) Give me then (quoth he) a gage and measure for my voice: upon whom the said Master replied thus not improperly: Let him that disputeth with thee be the measure and rule to moderate thy voice by; even so a man may in this case say: The measure that he ought to keep who answereth, is the very will and mind of him that propoeth the question. Moreover, like as *Socrates* forbade those meats which drew men on to eat when they are not hungry; and likewise those drinks which caused them to drink who are not athirst, even so should a man who is given to much prattle, be afraid of those discourses wherein he delighteth most, and which he is wont to use and take greatest pleasure in; and in case he perceive them to run willingly upon him for to withstand the same, and not give them intertainment. As for example, martiall men and warriours love to discourse and tell of battells; which is the reason that the Poet *Homer* bringeth in *Nestor* esteems recounting his own prowesse and feats of armes: and ordinary it is with them who in judiciall trials have had the upper hand of their adversaries, or who beyond the hope and opinion of every man have obtained grace and favour with Kings and Princes, to be subject unto this malady that evermore followeth them, namely, to report and recount discourses the manner how they came in place; after what sort they were brought in the order of their pleading; how they argued the case; how they convinced their accusers, and overthrew their adversaries; last of all, how they were praised and commended: for to say a truth, joy and mirth is much more talkative than that old *Aegyptina* which the Poets do feign and devise in their comedies: for it rougheth and stirreth up, it reneweth and refresheth it self ever and anon, with many discourses and narrations; whereupon ready they are to fall into such speeches upon every light and colourable occasion: for not onely is it true which the common proverb saith:

*Loe, where a man doth feel his pain and grief,  
His hand will soon be there to yeeld relief.*

but also joy and contentment draweth unto it the voice, it leadeeth the tongue alwayes about with it; and is evermore willing to be remembered and related. Thus we see that amorous lovers passe the greater part of their time in rehearsing certain words which may renew the remembrance of their loves in much that if they cannot meet with one person or other to relate the same unto, they will devise and talk of them with such things as have neither sense nor life: like as we read of one who brake forth into these words:

*O dainty bed, most sweet and pleasant couch,  
O blessed lamp, O happy candle light,  
No less than God doth Bacchus you avouch  
may God you all the mightiest in her fight.*

And verily a busie prater is altogether (as one would say) a white line or stroke in regard of all words to wit, without discretion he speaketh indifferently of all matters: howbeit if he be beaunted more to himself than to others, he ought to take heed thereof, and abstain from them: he is (I say) to withdraw & write himself from thence; for that by reason of the contentment which he may therein take, and the pleasure that he receiveth thereby, they may lead him wide and carry him every while very farre out of the way: the same inclination to overshoot themselves in prating, they finde also when they discourse of those matters wherein they suppose themselves to have better experience, and a more excellent habit than others: such an one I say being a self-lover and ambitious with-  
all,

*Most part of all the day in this doth spend,  
Himself to passe, and others to transcend.*

As for example, in histories if he hath read much, in artificiall stile and couching of his words, he that is a Grammarian; in relation of strange reports and news, who hath been a great Traveller and wandred through many barren Countreies: hereof therefore great heed would be taken; for garulity being therein fished and baited, willingly runneth to the old and usuall haunt, like as every beaſt seeketh out the ordinary and accustomed pasture. And in this point was the young Prince *Cyrus* of a wonderfull and excellent nature, who would never challenge his play-fellows and consorts in age unto any exercise wherein he knew himself to be superiour, and to surpass, but alwayes to such feats wherein he was lesse practised than they; which he did awell because he would not give their hearts in winning the prize from them, as also for that he would profit thereby, and learn to do that wherein he was more raw and unready than they. But a talkative fellow contrariwise, if there be a matter propoſed whereby he may hear and learn somewhat that he knew not before; rejecteth and refuseth it: he cannot for his life hold his tongue and keep silence a little while, to gain thereby some hire and reward; but casting and rolling his thought round about he never rests untill he light upon some old ragged raploides and overworn discourses, which he hath patched and tacked together a thousand times. Such a one there was among us, who hapned by chance to have perused two or three books of *Ephorus*; whereby he took himself to be toge: a Clerk, and so well read, that he wearied every mans ears who heard him talk; there was no assembly nor feast unto which he came, but he would force the company to arise and depart with his unmeasurable prating of the battell of *Lenters*, and the occurrences that ensued thereupon, inasmuch as he got himselfe by name,  
and

and every man called him *Epaminondas*. But this is the least inconvenience of all others that followeth this infirmity of much babbling: and surely one good means it is to the cure thereof: To turn the same from other matters to such as these: for thereby shall their tongue be lesse troublesome and offensive, when it passeth the bounds in the realms onely of literature.

Over and besides, for the remedy of this their disease, they shall do well to inure and accustom themselves to write somewhat, and to dispute of questions apart. Thus did *Antipater* the Stoick, who as it may be thought, being not able nor willing to hold out in disputation hand to hand with *Carnaeades*, who with a violent stream (as it were) of his forcible wit and eloquence refuted the feet of the Stoicks; answered the said *Carnaeades* by writing, and filled whole books with contradictorie assertions and arguments against him: inasmuch as thereupon he was furnished *C. Limboas*, which is as much to say, as the luty Crier with his pen: and so by all likelihood this manner of fighting with a shadow and lowd exclaiming in secret, and apart by themselves, training these stout praters every day by little and little from the frequency and multitude of people, may make them in the end more sociable and fitter for company. Thus curst cures after they have spent and discharged their choler and anger upon the cudgels or stones which have been thrown at them, become thereby more gentle and tractable to men. But above all, it were very expedient and profitable for them to be alwayes neer unto personages for years elder, and in authority greater than themselves, and with those to converse: for the reverent regard and fear that they have in respect of their dignity and gravity, may induce and direct them in time and by custom to keep silence; and evermore among those exercises heretofore by us specified, this advice would be mingled and interceded: That when we are about to speak, and that words be ready to runne out of our mouth, we lay thus unto ourselves by way of reasoning: What manner of speech is this that is so urgent and presseth so hard to be gone? What ails my tongue, that it is so willing to be walking? What good may come by the utterance thereof? What harm may ensue by concealing it in and holding my peace? For we must not think that our words be like an heavy burden over-loading us, and whereof we should think our selves well eased when we are discharged of them; for speech remaineth still as well when it is uttered as before: but men ought to speak, either in the behalf of themselves when they stand in need of some thing, or to benefit others, or else to pleasure and recreate one another by pleasant devices and discourses, (as it were) with salt to mitigate the painfull travels in actions and wordly affairs, or rather to make the same more savory whilst we are employed therein. Now if a speech be neither profitable to him that delivereth it, nor necessary for him that heareth it, ney carry thereby any grace or pleasure; what need is there that it should be uttered? For surely a man may as soon speak a word in vain, as do a thing to no purpose. But above and after all other good advices, in this case, we ought alwayes to have in readinesse and remembrance this wise saying of *Symonides*: A man (quoth he) may repent many a time for words spoken, but never for a word kept in: this also we must think: That exercise is all inall: and a matter of that moment and efficacy, that it is able to master and conquer every thing: considering that men will take great pains and be careful; yea they will endure much sorrow for to be rid of an old cough; to chase away the troublesome yex or hicket. Besides, Taciturnity hath not onely this one fair property and good vertue, that (as *Hippocrates* saith) it never breedeth thirst; but also that it engendreth no pain, no grief nor displeasure, neither is any man bound to render an account thereof.

## Of Avarice or Covetousnesse.

### The Summary.

If there be any excess in the World that troubleth the repose and tranquillity of the spirit, causing our life to be wretched and miserable, it is Avarice; against which the Sages and wise men of all ages from time to time have framed sharp and terrible invectives, which in sum and effect do shew thus much: That this Covetousnesse and greedy desire of gathering goods is (as it were) the capital City and Seat-town of all wickednesse: the very sink of sinne and receptacle of all vices. Now albeit all men with one voice, yea, and the most covetous persons of all others do confesse as much; yet the heart of man is so affectionate a friend to the earth, that needfull it is to propose and set down divers instructions for to avert the same from thence, and to cause it to range and sort with other occupations and affairs, more becoming it self than the over curious searching after transitory and corruptible things. This is the reason, that those Philosophers who have handled the doctrine as touching man's manners are employed herein: and *Plutarch* among the rest, who teacheth us here in few words, with what considerations we ought to be furnished and fortified, that we do not permit such a pestilent plague as this to seize upon our souls, and therewith he sheweth the miseries that befall unto Avarice: whereof this is the first and principall: That in stead of giving contentment, it maketh her slave most wretched, and putteth him to the greatest pain and torture in the world. And  
here-



hereupon he interlatcheth and inserteth a description of three sorts of Covetous persons. First, of those who covet things rare and dangerous, whereat they should seek after necessities. Secondly, of such as spending, have much, and yet desire more and more; and these be dejected in all their colours. Thirdly, of them that be niggards and base minded pinch-pennies, which done, he discovereth the second misery of Covetous wretches, to wit: That Avarice doth tyrannize over her captive and slave, not suffering him to use that which she commended him to winne and get. The third is this: That it causeth him to gather and heap up riches, for some promoter or catch-pole, or else for a tyrant, or else for some wicked and gracelesse heir, whose nature and properties he doth represent and describe very lively. Afterwards having concluded that Covetous persons are herein especially miserable: for that the one sort of them use not their goods at all, and other abuse the same: he prescribeth three remedies against this mischievous maladie. The first: That these who greedily gape after riches, have no more in effect than they who stand contented with that which is necessary for nature. The second: That we are not to count them happy, who be richly furnished with things unprofitable. And the last: That it is virtue, wherein we ought to ground and seek for contentment; for there it is to be found and not in riches.

### Of Avarice or Covetousnesse.

**H**ippomachus, a great master of wrestling and such exercises of the body, hearing some to praise a certain tall man, high of stature, and having long arms and hands, commending him for a singular champion, and fit to fight at buffets: A proper fellow he were (quoth he) if the garland or prize of the victory were hung on high, for to be reached with the hand; seemably it may be said unto them who esteem so highly and repute it a great felicity to be possessed of much fair lands, to have many great and stately houses, to be furnished with mighty masses and summes of money, in case felicity were to be bought and sold for coin. And yet a man shall see many in the world, chuse rather to be rich and wretched withall, than to give their silver for to be happy and blessed: but surely it is not silver nor gold that can purchase either repose of spirit void of grief and anguish, or magnanimity, nor yet settled constancy and resolution, confidence and suffiance, or contentment with our own estate. Be a man never so rich, he cannot still thereby to content riches, no more than the possession of more than enough worketh this in us: That we want not still, and desire even things that be superfluous. What other evil and malady then doth our wealth and riches rid us from, if it delivereth us not from avarice? By drink men quench their thirst by meat they slake their hunger, And he that said:

*Give Hippomachus a cloak to keep him warm,  
For cold extremes I shake, and may take harm.*

if there were many clothes hung or cast upon him, would be offended therewith and fling them from him; but this their strong desire and love of money, it is neither silver nor gold that is able to quench: and let a man have never so much, yet he coveteth nevertheless to have more still. And well it may be verified of riches which one said sometime to an ignorant and deceitfull Physician:

*Your drugs and salves augment my sore,  
They make me sicker than before.*

For riches verily, after that men have once met therewith, (whereas before they stood in need of bread, of a competent house to put in their heads, of mean raiment and any viands that come next hand) fill them now with an impatient desire of gold, silver, ivory, emeralds, horses and hounds, changing and transporting their natural appetite of things needfull and necessary, into a disordinate lust to things dangerous, rare, hard to be gotten, and unprofitable when they to be had. For never is any man poor in regard of such things as suffice nature; never doth he take up money upon misery, for to buy himself meat, cheese, bread or olives; but one indebtreth himself for to build a sumptuous and stately house; another runnes in debt, because he would purchase a grove of olives: that joyneth to his own land; one is engaged deeply in the usurers books, by laying corn-grounds and wheat-fields to his own demains, another, because he would be possessed of fruitful vineyards: some are indebted with buying mules of *Galatia*, and others, because they would be matters:

*Of lusty steeds, to win the prize  
by running in a race,  
With rattling noise of empty coach,  
When it is d. away againe.*

have cast themselves into the bottomlesse gulf of obligations, conditions, covenants, interests, statutes, real gages and pawns: and afterwards it cometh to passe, that like as they who drink when they be not drie, and eat without a stomach, many times cast up by vomit, even that which they did eat & drink when they were hungry and thirstie: even so, when they will needs have such things as be superfluous and to no use, do not enjoy the benefit of those things that are needfull and necessary indeed. Lo what kind of people these be!

As for those who are at no cost, nor will lay out any thing, and notwithstanding they have much, yet ever covet more: a man may rather marvel and wonder at them, if he would but remember that which *Aristippus* was wont to say: He that eateth much (quoth he) and drinketh likewise much, and is never satisfied nor full, goeth to the Physicians, asketh their opinion what his disease and strange indisposition of the body might be, and withall craveth their counsell for the cure and remedie thereof: but if one who hath five fair beddies already with the furniture thereto belonging, & seeketh to make them ten; and having ten Tables with their cupboards of plate, will needs buy ten more; and for all that he is possessed of fair manours and goodly lands, have his bags and coffers full of money, is never the better satisfied, but still gaped after more, breaketh his sleepes, devising and casting as he lyeth awake, how to compass the same; and when he hath all, yet is he not full: such an one (I say) never thinks that he hath need of a Physician to cure his malady or to discourse unto him from what cause all this doth proceed. And verily a man may look: that of those who are thirstie ordinarily, he that hath not drunk, will be delivered of his thirst so soon as he meeteth with drink; but in case such an one as evermore drinketh and powreth in still, never giving over, yet nevertheless continueth dry and thirstie, we judge him to have no need of repletion, but rather of purging and evacuation: him (I say) we appoint for to vomit, is being not troubled and discompered upon any want, but with some extraordinary heat or unkind acrimony of humours that be with him; even so it is with those that seek to get and gather goods: he that is bare and poor indeed, will haply give over seeking so soon as he hath got him an house to dwell in, or found some treasure, or met with a good friend to help him to a sum of money to make clear with the usurer, and to be croised out of his book: but he that hath already more than enough and sufficient, and yet craveth more, surely it is neither gold nor silver, that will cure him, neither horses, nor sheep, nor yet beeves will serve his turn: need had, he of purgation and evacuation, for poverty is not his disease, but covetousnesse and an unsatiable desire of riches, proceeding from false judgement and a corrupt opinion that he hath, which if a man doth not rid away out of his mind, as a winding gulf or whirl-pool, that is crossed and overthwart in their way, they will never cease to hunt after superfluities, and seem to stand in need thereof (that is to say) to covet those things which they know not what to do with. When a Physician cometh into the chamber of a Patient, whom he findeth lying along in his bed groaning, and refusing all food, he taketh him by the hand, feelth his pulse, asketh him certain questions, and finding that he hath no ague: This is a disease (quoth he) of the mind, and so goeth his way; even so, when we see a worldly minded man altogether set upon his gets and gains, pining away, and even consumed with the greedy worm of gathering goods, weeping, whining and sighing at expenses, and when any money is to go out of his purse, sticking at no pain and trouble, spiring for no indignity, no unhoneest and indirect means whatsoever, nor caring which way he goes to work, whether it be by hook or crook, so that he may gain and profit thereby: having choice of houses and tenements, lands lying in every Countrey, droves, herds and flocks of cattell, a number of slaves, wardrobes of apparell and clothes of all sorts: what shall we say that this man is sick of, unless it be the poverty of the soul? As for want of money and goods, one friend (as *Menander* saith) may cure and help with his bountifull hand; but that penny and needfulness of the soul all the men in the world, that either live at this day, or ever were before time, are not able to satisfy and suffice: and therefore of such *Solon* said very well,

*No limit set, nor certain bound, men have  
Of their desire to goods, but still they are aw.*

For, those who are wise and of sound judgement are content with that measure and portion which nature hath set down and assigned for them: such men know an end, and keep themselves within the center and circumference of their need and necessity only. But this is a peculiar property that avarice hath by it self. For a covetous desire it is, even repugnant to satiety, and hindereth it self that it never can have sufficient, whereas all other desires and lusts are aiding and helpful thereto. For no man (I throw) that is a glutton, forbeareth to eat a good morcel of meat for gormandise, nor drunkard abstaineth from drinking wine upon an appetite and love that he hath to wine, as these covetous wretches do, who spare their money and will not touch it, through a desire only that they have of money. And how can we otherwise think, but it were a piteous and lamentable case, yea, and disease next cousin to meer madness, if a man should therefore spare the wearing of a garment, because he is ready to chill and quake for cold, or forbear to touch bread, for that he is almost hunger-starved: and even so not to handle his goods because he loveth them: certes, such a one is in the same plight and piteous perplexity that *Thrasionides* was, who in a certain comedie described his own miseries:

*At home it is within my power,  
I may enjoy it every hower:  
I wish a thing as if I were  
In raging love, yet I forbear:  
When I have lockt and seal'd it up all,  
Or else put forth by count and tale,  
My coin to brokers for the use,  
Or other factours whom I chuse;*

I plod and plonder still for more;  
I hunt, I seek so teich in store,  
I bidde and buy with servants mine;  
The husbandman and kege the thine  
I bring to courts and then anon  
My debtors all I call upon:  
By Dan Apollo now I swear,  
Was any man that earth did bear,  
Whom thou hast ever known or seen,  
In love more wretched to have been

*Sophocles* being on a time demanded familiarly by one of his friends, whether he could yet keep company with a woman if need were: *God blefseme* (quoth he) my good friend, talk no more of that I pray you, I am free from those matters long since, and by the benefit of mine old age, I have escaped the servitude of such violent and furious mistresses. And verily it is a good and gracious gift, that our lusts and appetites should end together with our strength and ability, especially in those delights and pleasures, which as *Alcibiades* saith neither man nor woman can well avoid. But this is not to be found in avarice and desire of riches; for the like a curst, sharp and shrewd quean, forceth indeed a man to get and gather, but she forbiddeth him withall to use and enjoy the same: she stirreth up and provoketh his lusts, but she denieth him all pleasure. I remember that in old time *Syracusanus* taxed and mocked the *Rhodians* for their wastfull and superfluous expences in this manner: They build sumptuously (quoth he) as if they were immortal and should never die; but they fare at their board as though they had but a small while to live. But these covetous misers gather wealth together like mighty magnificoes, but they spend like beggerly mechanicals; they endure the pain and travell of getting, and taste no pleasure of the enjoying.

*Demades* the Orator came one day to visit *Phocion*, and found him at dinner; but seeing but a little meat before him upon the Table, and the same nothing fine and dainty, but coarie and simple: I marvel (quoth he) *O Phocion* how you can take up with so short a dinner and so small a pittance, considering the pains you do endure in managing the affairs of State and Common-wealth. As for *Demades* he dealt indeed with government, and was a great man in the City with the people, but it was all for his belly, and to furnish a plentiful board, inasmuch as supposing that the City of *Athen* could not yield him revenue & provision sufficient for to maintain his excessive gormandise, he laid for carres and viaticals out of *Macedon*, whereupon *Antipater* when he saw him an old man with a wrinkled and withered face, said pleasantly: That he had nothing left now but his paunch and his tongue, much like unto a Sheep, or some other beast killed for a sacrifice when all is eaten besides. But thou mult unhappy and wretched miser, who would not make a wonder at thee, considering that thou canst lead so bale and beggerly a life, without society of men or courtesie to thy neighbours, nor giving ought to any person, shewing no kindnesse to thy friends, no bounty nor magnificence to the common-wealth, yet still dost afflict thy poor self, lie awake all the night long, toil and moil like a drudge and hireling thy self, hire other labourers for day-wages, lie in the wind for inheritances, speake men fair in hope to be their heir, and debaite thy self to all the world, and care not to whom thou cap and knee for gain, having I say sufficient means otherwise to live at ease (to wit, thy niggardie and pinching parsimonie) whereby thou maist be dispensed for doing just nothing. It is reported of a certain *Bizantine*, who finding an adulterer in bed with his wife, who though she were but foul, yet was it favoured enough, said unto him: O miserable catie, what necessity hath driven thee thus to do? what needs *Sapphoras* dowry? well, go to: thou takest great pains poor wretch, thou fillest & stirrest the lead, thou kindlest the fire also underneath it. Necessary it is in some sort, that Kings and Princes should seek for wealth and riches, that these Governours also and Deputies under them should be great gatherers, yea, and those also who reach at the highest places and aspire to rule and sovereign dignities in great States and Cities: all these (I say) have need perforce to heap up grosse sums of money, to the end that for their ambition, their proud port, pomp, and vain-glorious humour, they might make sumptuous feasts, give largesses, retain a guard about their persons, send presents abroad to other States, maintain and wage whole armies, buy slaves to combat and fight at sharp to the outtrance: but thou makest thy self so much ado, thou troublest and tormentest both body and mind, living like an Oyster or a shell-snail, and for to pinch and spare, art content to undergo and endure all pain and travell, taking no pleasure nor delight in the world afterwards, no more than the Bain-keepers poor Ass which carrying billets and fagots of drie brush and sticks to kindle fire and to heat the fowls, is evermore full of smock, foot, aches, and finders; but hath no benefit at all of the bain, and is never bathed, washed, warmed, rubbed, scoured, and made cleane. Thus much I speake in reproch and disdain of this miserable ass-like avarice, this bale raving and scraping together in manner of ants or pillmice.

Now there is another kind of covetousnesse more savage and beast-like, which they profess who backbite and slander, raise malicious imputations, forge false wils and testaments, lie in wait for heritages, cog and cozen, and inxermeddle in all matters, will be seen in every thing, know all mens states, busie themselves with many cares and troubles, count upon their fingers how many friends they have yet living, and when they have all done, receive no fruition or benefit by all the goods which they

have

have gotten together from all parts with their cunning casts and subtil shifts. And therefore like as we have in greater hatred and detestation vipers, the venomous flies *Cantharides*, and the stinging spiders called *Philangia* and *Tarantale*, than either beares or lions, for that they kill folke and sting them to death: but receive no good or benefit at all by them when they are dead; even so be these wretches more odious and worthy to be hated of us, who by their miserable parsimony and pinching do mischief, than those who by their riot and wastefullnesse be hurtfull to a Common-wealth, because they take and catch from others that which they themselves neither will nor know how to use. Whereupon it is that such as these when they have gotten abundance, and are in manner full, sell them for a while, and do no more violence as it were in time of truce and surcease of hostility; much after the manner as *Demagones* said unto them who thought that *Demades* had given over all his lawnesse and knavery: O (quoth he) you see him now full as lions are, who when they have filled their bellies, prey no more for the life until they be hungry again: but such covetous wretches as be employed in government of civill affaires, and that for no profit nor pleasure at all which they intend, those I say never rest nor make holiday, they allow themselves no truce nor cessation from gathering and heaping more together still, as being evermore empty, and have alwaies need of all things though they have all. But some man perhaps will say: These men (I assure you) do save and lay up goods in store for their children and heirs after their death, unto whom whiles they live they will part with nothing: If that be so, I can compare them very well to those mice and cats in gold mines, which feed upon the gold-ore, and lick up the golden sand that the mines yeeld, so that men cannot come by the gold there, before they be dead & cut up all in manner of anatomies. But tell me (I pray you) wherefore are these so willing to treasure up so much money, and so great substance, and leave the same to their children, inheritors, and successors after them? I verily beleeve to this end, that those children and heirs also of theirs should keep the same still for others likewise, and so to passe from hand to hand by descent of many degrees; like as earthen conduit-pipes by which water is conveyed into some citierne, withhold and retaine none of all the water that passeth through them, but do transmit and send all away from them, each one to that which is next, and reserve none to themselves: thus do they until some arise from without, a meere stranger to the houle, one that is a scyphont or very tyrant, who shall cut off this keeper of that great stock and treasure: and when he hath dispatched and made a hand of him, drive and turne the course of all this wealth and riches out of the usual channell another way; or at leastwise until it fall into the hands (as commonly men say it doth) of the most wicked and ungracious imposter of that race, who will disperse and scatter that which others have gathered, who will consume and devour all unthriflily, which his predecessors have gotten and spared wickedly: for not only as *Euripides* saith,

These children waste full grown and bad,  
Who serve slaves for parents had,

but also covetous carles and pinching penny-fathers leave children behind them that be loose and riotous and spend-thrifts; like as *Diogenes* by way of mockery said upon a time: That it were better to be a *Megarian* than his son; for wherein they would seeme to instruct and informe their children, they spoile and mar them cleane, ingrafting into their hearts a desire and love of money, teaching them to be covetous and bale-minded pinch-pennies, laying the foundation (as it were) in their heirs of some strong place or fort, wherein they may surely guard and keep their inheritance. And what good lessons and precepts be these which they teach them? Gain and spare, my son, get and save: thinke with this selfe and make thine account that thou shalt be esteemed in the world according to thy wealth & not otherwise. But surely this is not to instruct a child, but rather to knit up fold or low up the mouth of a purse that it may hold and keep the better what ever is put into it. This only only is the difference that a purse or money-bag becommeth foule, fullied, and ill-favouring after that silver is put into it; but the children of covetous persons before they receive their patrimony or attaine to any riches, are filled already even by their fathers with avarice, and a hungry desire after their substance; and verily such children thus nurtured reward their parents again for their schooling with a condignie salary and recompence, in that they love them not because they shall receive much one day by them, but hate them rather for that they have nothing from them in present possession already, for having learned this lesson of them: To esteeme nothing in the world in comparison of wealth and riches, and to aime at nought else in the whole course of their life, but together a deale of goods together, they repute the lives of their parents to be a block in their way, they with in their hearts that their heads were well laid, they do what they can to shorten their lives, making this reckoning: That how much time is added to their old age, so much they lole of their youthfull yeares. And this is the reason, why, during the life of their fathers, secretly and understanding they steale (after a sort, by snatches) their pleasure and enjoy the same: They will make semblance as if it came from other, when they give away money and distribute it among their friends, or otherwise spend it in their delights; whiles they catch it privily from under the very wing of their parents, and when they go to heare and take out their lessons, they will be sure to pick their purses if they can before they go away: but after their parents be dead and gone, when they have gotten into their hands the keys of their coffers and signets of their bags, then the case is altered and they enter into another course and fashion of life: you shall have my young masters then put on a grave and austere countenance, they will not seeme to laugh, nor be spoken to or acquainted with any body; there is no talk now of annointing the body for any exercise, the racket is cast aside, the tennis court

court no more haunted, no wrestling practised, no going to the schooles either of the Academy or *Lyceum*: to heare the lectures and disputations of Professors and Philosophers. But now the officers and servants be called to an audit and account; now they are examined what they have under their hands; now the writings, bills, obligations, and deeds are fought up and perused; now they fall to argue and reason with their receivers, stewards, factors, and debtors; so sharpe-set they are to their negotiations and affaires; so full of cares and businesse, that they have no leisure to take their dinners or noon-meales; and if they sup they cannot intend to go into the baine or hot-house before it be late in the night; the bodily exercises wherein they were brought up and trained in be laid down; no swimming nor bathing any more in the river *Diree*: all such matters be cast behind and cleane forgotten. Now if a man say to one of these: Will you go and heare such a Philosopher read a lecture, or make a sermon: How can I go? (will he say againe) I have no while since my fathers death. O miserable and wretched man, what hath he left unto thee of all his goods, comparable to that which he hath bereaved thee of, to wit, Repose and Liberty: but is it not thy father so much, as his riches flowing round about thee, that environeth and compasseth thee so, as it hath gotten the mastery over thee? this hath set foot upon thy throat, this hath conquered thee; like unto that shrewd wit in *Hesiodus*,

*Who burnes a man without a match  
Or brand of scorching fire,  
And driveth him to gray-old age  
Before that time require.*

Caulding thy soule (as it were) to be full of trivels and hoary haire before time, bringing with it carrying cares and tedious travels proceeding from the love of money, and a world of affaires without any repose, whereby that alacrity, cheerfulness, worship and sociable courtesie which ought to be in a man are decayed and faded cleane to nothing.

But what meane you sir by all this? (will some one haply say unto me) See you not how there be some that bestow their wealth liberally with credit and reputation? Unto whom I answer thus: Have you never heard what *Aristotle* said: That as some there are who have no use at all of their goods, so there be others who abuse the same; as if he should say? Neither the one nor other was seemly and as it ought to be: for as those get neither profit nor honour by their riches, so these sustain losse and shame thereby. But let us consider a little what is the use of these riches which are thus much esteemed. Is it not (I pray you) to have those things which are necessary for nature? But these who are so rich and wealthy above the rest, what have they more to content nature than those who live in a meane and competent estate? Certes riches (as *Theophrastus* saith) is not so great a matter that we should love and admire it to much, if it be true that *Callius* the wealthiest person in all *Athens* and *Isomenas* the richest citizen of *Thebes*, use the same things that *Socrates* and *Epaminondas* did. For like as *Agathon* banished the flute, cornet, and such other pipes from the solemn feasts of men, and sent them to women in their solemnities, supposing that the discourses of men who are present at the table are sufficient to entertaine mirth; even so may he as well rid away out of houses hangings, coverlets and carpets of purple, costly and sumptuous tables, and all such superfluities, who seeeth that the great rich worldlings use the very same that poorer men do. I would not as *Hesiodus* saith;

*That plough or helme should hang in smokes to drie,  
Or painfull tillage now be laid aside,  
Nor works of oxen and mule for ever die,  
Who serve our turnes to drave, to till, to ride;*

But rather that these goldsmiths, turners, gravers, perfumers, and cooks would be chafed and sent away, forasmuch as this were indeed an honest and civill banishment of unprofitable artificers, as reformers, that may be spared out of a city. Now if it be so, that things requisite for the necessity of nature be common as well to the poore as rich, and that riches do vaunt and stand so much upon nothing else but superfluities, and that *Scopas* the Thebanian is worthily commended in this: That being requested to give away and part with somewhat of his household stuffe which he might spare and have no need of: Why (quoth he) in what things else consisteth the felicity of those who are reputed happy and fortunate in this world above other men, but in these superfluities that you seem to aske at my hands, and not in such as be necessary and requisite? If it be so I say, see that you be not like unto him that praiseth a pompe and solemn shew of plaies and games more than life indeed, which standeth upon things necessary. The procession and solemnity of the *Bacchanals* which was exhibited in our country, was wont in old time to be performed after a plaine and homely manner, merrily, and with great joy: You should have seen there one carrying a little barrell of wine, another a branch of a vine tree; after him comes one drawing and plucking after him a goat: then followeth another with a basket of dried figs; and last of all one that bare in shew *Plutus*, that is to say, the resemblance of the gentill member of a man: but now adaeas all these ceremonies are de-piled, neglected, and in a manner not at all to be seene, such a traine there is of those that carry vessels of gold and silver, so many sumptuous and costly robes, such stately chariots, richly set out, are driven and drawn with brave steeds most gallantly dight, besides the pageants, dumb-shews, and masks, that they hide and obscure the ancient and true pompe according to the first institution; and even so it is in riches; the things that be necessary and serve for use and profit are overwhelmed

overwhelmed and covered with needlesse toies and superfluous vanities, and I assure you the most part of us be like unto young *Telemachus*, who for want of knowledge and experience, or rather indeed for default of judgement and discretion when he beheld *Nestors* house furnished with beds, tables, hangings, tapitry, apparell, and well provided also of sweet and pleasant wines, never reckoned the matter of the house happy for having such good provision of such necessary and profitable things: but being in *Alexandria* his house, and seeing there store of Ivory, gold, and silver, and the metall *Electrum*, he was ravished and in an extasie with admiration thereof, and brake out in these words:

*Like unto this, the palace all  
Within I judge to be,  
Of Jupiter that mighty god  
Who dwells in a more like:  
How rich, how faire, how is finite  
Are all things which I see!  
My heart, as I do them behold,  
Is awild and woundrfully.*

But *Socrates* and *Diogenes* would have said thus rather:  
How many wretched things are here?  
How needlesse all and vaine?  
When I them view, I laugh thereon,  
Of them I am not faine.

And what saiest thou foolish and vaine for as thou art? Whereas thou shouldst have taken from thy very wife her purple, her jewels and gaudy ornaments, to the end that she might no more long for such superfluity, nor run a madding after foraine vanities, far fetched and deare bought; I dost thou contrariwise embellish and adorne thy house like a theatre, scaffold, and stage to make a goodly light for those that come into the shew-place? Loce wherein lieth the felicity and happinesse that riches bringeth, making a trim shew before those, who gaze upon them, and to testifie and report to others what they have seen: set this aside (that they be not shewed to all the world) there is nothing at all therein to reckon. But it is not so with temperance, with philosophy, with the true knowledge of the gods, so far forth as is meet and behoovefull to be known, for these are the same still and all one, although every man attaine not thereto, but all others be ignorant thereof. This piety (I say) and religion hath alwaies a great light of her own, and resplendent beames proper to it selfe, wherewith it doth shine in the soule, evermore accompanied with a certaine joy that never ceaseth to take contentment in her own good within, whether any one see it or no, whether it be unknown to gods and men or no, it skilleth not. Of this kind and nature is vertue indeed, and truth, the beauty also of the Mathematicall sciences, to wit, Geometry, and Astrology; unto which who will thinke that the gorgeous trappings and caparisons, the brooches, collars, and carkans of riches are any waies comparable, which (to say a truth) are no better than jewels and ornaments good to trim young brides, and set out maidens forth to be seen and looked at? For riches, if no man do regard, behold, and set their eyes on them (to say a truth) is a blind thing of it selfe, and sendeth no light at all nor raies from it: for certainly say: That a rich man die and sup privately alone, or with his wife and some inward and familiar friends, he troubleth not himselfe about furnishing of his table with many services, dainty dishes, and festivall fare; he stands not so much upon his golden cups and goblets, but useth those things which be ordinary, which go about every day and come next hand, as well vessels as viands; his wife sits by his side and beares him company, not decked and hung with jewels and spangles of gold, not arrayed in purple, but in plaine attire and simply clad; but when he makes a feast (that is to say) sets out a theater, wherein the pompes and shews are to meet and make a jangling noise together, when the plaies are to be represented of his riches, and the solemn traine thereof to be brought in place; then comes abroad his brave furniture indeed; then he fetcheth out of the ship his faire chaires and goodly pots; then bringeth he forth his rich three-footed tables; then come abroad the Lampes, Candlesticks, and Branches of silver; the lights are disposed in order about the cups; the cup-bearers, skinkers, and tasters are changed; all places are newly dight and covered; all things are then stirred and removed that saw no sun long before; the silver plate, the golden vessels, and those that be set and enriched with precious stones; to conclude, now there is no shew else but of riches; at such a time they will confesse themselves and be known wealthy. But all this while whether a rich man sup alone, or make a feast, temperance is away and true contentment.

## Of the naturall Love or Kindnesse of Parents to their Children.

## The Summary.

VV<sup>As</sup>ely said one, (whoever it was) That to banish amity and friendship from among men, were a great hurt to the society of mankind, as to deprive them of the light and heat of the Sun: which being verified and found true in the whole course of this life, and in the maintenance of all estates; not without great cause Nature hath cast and sprinkled the seed thereof in the generation and nourishment of a race and lineage, wherof she giveth evident testimonies in brute beasts, the better to move and incite us to our duty. That we may see therefore this precious seed and graine of amity, how it doth flower and fructifie in the world, we must begin at the love and naturall kindnesse of fathers and mothers to their children: For if this be well kept and maintained, there proceed from it an infinite number of contentments which do much assuage and ease the inconveniences and discommodities of our life. And Plutarch entering into this matter, sheweth first in generality: That men learne (as it were) in the schools of brute beasts, with what affection they should beget, nourish, and bring up their children: afterwards he doth particularly thereof, and enrich the same argument by divers examples. But for that he would not have us to seeke that he extolled dumbe beasts above man and woman, he observeth and setteth down very well the difference that is of amities, discouraging in good and modest termes as touching the generation and nurture of children, and briefly by the way representeth unto us the miserable entrance of man into this race upon earth, where he is to run his course. Which done, he proveth that the nourishing of infants hath no other cause and reason but the love of fathers and mothers; he discovereth the source of this affection; and for a conclusion, sheweth that what defect and fault soever may come between and be medled among, yet it cannot altogether abolish the same.

## Of the naturall Love or Kindnesse of Parents to their Children.

T<sup>H</sup>at which moved the Greeks at first to put over the decision of their controversies to foreign judges, and to bring into their country strangers to be their Umpires, was the distrust and diffidence that they had one in another, as if they confessed thereby that justice was indeed a thing necessary for mans life, but it grew not among them: And is not the case even so as touching certaine questions disputable in Philolophy? For the determining whereof, Philolophers (by reason of the sundry and divers opinions which are among them) have appealed to the nature of brute beasts, as it were into a strange city, and remitted the deciding thereof to their properties and affections, according to kind, as being neither subject to partial favour, nor yet corrupt, depraved, and polluted. Now surely, a common reproach this must needs be to mans naughty nature and lewd behaviour: That when we are in doubtfull questions concerning the greatest and most necessary points pertaining to this present life of ours, we should go and search into the nature of hories, dogs, and birds for resolution; namely, how we ought to make our marriages, how to get children, and how to reare and nourish them after they be born and as if there were no signe (in a manner) or token of nature imprinted in our selves, we must be faine to alledge the passions, properties and affections of brute beasts, and to produce them for witnesses, to argue and prove how much in our life we transgresse and go aside from the rule of nature, when at our first beginning and entrance into this world we find such trouble, disorder, and confusion: for in those dumbe beasts before said, nature doth retaine and keep that which is her own and proper, simple, entire, without corruption or alteration by any strange mixture; whereas contrariwise, it seemeth that the nature of man by discourse of their reason and custome together, is mingled and confused with many extravagant opinions & judgements, set from all parts abroad (much like unto oyle, that commeth into perfumers hands) that thereby it is become manifold variable, and in every one severall and particular, and doth not retaine that which is its own indeed proper and peculiar to itself: neither ought we to thinke it a strange matter and a wonderfull that brute beasts, void of reason, should come nearer unto nature, and follow her steps better, than men endued with the gift of reason: for surely, the very senseless plants herein surpassle those beasts before said, and observe better the instinct of nature: for considering that they neither conceive any thing by imagination nor have any motion, affection, or inclination at all; so verily their appetite (such as it is) varieth not, nor stirreth to and fro out of the compasse of nature. By means whereof, they continue and abide as if they were kept in and bound within close-prison, holding on still in one and the same course, and not stepping once out of that way wherein nature doth lead and conduct them: as for beasts, they have not any such great

portion of reason to temper and mollifie their naturall properties, neither any great subtilty of sense and conceit, nor much desire of liberty; but having many instincts, inclinations, and appetites, not ruled by reason, they breake out by the means thereof otherwhiles, wandering astray, and running up and down, to and fro, howbeit, for the most part, not very far out of order, but they take sure hold of nature: much like a ship which lieth in the rode at anchor, well may she dance and be rocked up and down, but she is not carried away into the deep at the pleasure of the winds and waves; or much alter the manner of an ass or hackney, travelling with bit and bridle, which go not out of the right and straight way, wherein the matter or rider guideth them; whereas in man, even reason her selfe, the mistress that ruleth and commandeth all, findeth out new cuts (as it were) and by waies, making many starts and excursions at her pleasure to and fro, now here, now there; wherupon it is that she leaveth no paine and apparant print of natures tracts and footing.

Consider I pray you in the first place the marriages (if I may so terme them) of dumbe beasts and reasonlesse creatures; and namely, how therein they follow precisely the rule and direction of nature. To begin withal, they stand not upon those laws that provide against such as marry not, but lead a single life: neither make they reckoning of the ads which lay a penalty upon thole that be later ere they enter into wedlock, like as the citizens under *Lycurgus* and *Solon*, who stood in awe of the said statutes: they feare not to incur the infamy which followed thole persons that were barren and never had children; neither do they regard and seeke after the honours and prerogatives which they attained, who were fathers of three children, like as many of the Romans do at this day, who enter into the state of matrimony, wed wives, and beget children, not to the end that they might have heires to inherit their lands and goods, but that they might themselves be inheritors and capable of dignities and immunities. But to proceed unto more particulars, the male doth afterwards deale with the female in the act of generation not at all times: for that the end of their conjunction and going together is not grosse pleasure so much, as the engendering of young and the propagation of their kind: and therefore at a certaine season of the year, to wit, the very prime of the spring, when as the pleasant winds lo apt for generation do gently blow, and the temperature of the aire is friendly unto breeders, commeth the female full lovingly and kindly toward her fellow the male, even of her own accord and motion (as it were) trained by the hand of that sexer instinct and desire in nature; and for her own part, she doth what she can to wooe and sollicite him to regard her, as well by the sweet scent of her flesh, as also by a speciall and peculiar ornament and beauty of her body, shewing her selfe fresh and cheerefull, full of dew and verdure of greene herbes, pure and neat I warrant you; in this manner doth she present her selfe unto the male and courteth him: now when she perceives once that she is sed and hath conceived by him, she leaveth him and retirith apart in good sort full decently; and then her whole care is to provide for that which the goeth withal, forecasting how to be delivered of it in due time, and bethinking how to save, preserve, and reare it when it is fallen and brought forth. And certes it is not possible to expresse sufficiently and worthily the particulars that are done by these dumbe creatures (but only this, that every thing proceedeth from the tender love and affection which they have to their young ones) in providence, in patience, in abstinence.

We all acknowledge the Bee to be wife, we call her so, we celebrate her name for producing and working so diligently that yellow honey, yea, and we flatter in praising her, feeling as we do the sweetnesse of the said honey, how it tickleth and contenteth our tongue and taste; and all this while what one is there of us that maketh any account of the wildome, wit, and artificiall subtilty that other creatures shew, as well in the bringing forth their young, as the fostering and nurture of them? For first and foremost do but consider the sea-bird called *Alycon*, no sooner doth she perceive her selfe to be knit with egges, but she falleth presently to build her nest, she gathereth together the chine-bones of a certaine sea-fish, which the Greeks call *basin*, that is to say, the sea-needle, these she coucheth, plaiteth, windeth, and interlatheth one within another, so artificially working the same and weaving them close together in a round and large forme, after the manner of a fishers leppe or weele net; and when she hath knit and fortified the same exactly with many courses of the said bones driven and united joyntly together in good order, the expoleth it full againe inundation and dashing of the sea-waves, to the end that the superficiall out-side of the worke beaten upon gently and by little and little with the water, being thickened and iced thereby might be more foild and firme, and so it proveth indeed; for so hard it groweth by this means that scarcely any stone can crush it, or edged instrument of iron cleave it; but that which is yet more wonderfull, the mouth and entry of the said nest is compoled and wrought proportionably jult to the measure and bignesse of the bird *Alycon* afore said, so as no creature bigger or lesse than her selfe, no nor the very sea (as men say) nor the least thing in the world can get into it. And will you see moreover what kindnesse and naturall affection the sea-weefils or sea-dogs do shew unto their little ones? They breed their young whelpes or kildings alive within their bellies, and when they list let them forth and suffer them to run abroad for reliefe and to get their food, and afterwards receive them into their bodies againe, enclosing them whilst they be asleep themselves, cherishing them 'ouched in their bowels and wombe. The she-beare, a most fell, savage, and cruel beast, bringeth forth her young whelps, without forme or fashion, unknight and unjoynted, having no distinct limbs or members to be seen; howbeit with her tongue, as it were with a toole and instrument for the purpose she keepeth such a licking of them, she formeth and fashioneth thole membranes wherein they were lapped in her

wombe in such sort, that she seemeth not only to have brought forth her young, but also to have wrought them afterwards workman-like to their shape and proportion. As for that lion which Homer describeth in this wise,

*Who leading forth his tender whelps  
To seek abroad for prey  
In forest wide; no sooner meets  
With hunters in the way,  
But looking sterne with bended brows  
Which cover both his eyes,  
He makes a stand, and them affronts  
In fierce and threatening wise.*

Thinke you not by this description that he remembreth one who is bent to capitulate and stand upon termes of composition with the hunters for to save the life of his little ones? To speake in a word, this tender love and affection of beaſts toward their young, maketh them that otherwise be timorous, hardy, and bold; those that be slow and idle by nature, laborious, and painfull; and such as of themselves are greedy and ravenous, to be spare and temperate in their feeding, like as the bird whereof the same Homer speaketh,

*Which brings in mouth unto her nest,  
Such food as she abroad  
Could get to feed her naked young,  
And doth her selfe defraud.*

For content she is even with her own hunger to nourish her little ones, and the same food or bait that she hath for them, being to neerer as it is unto her own craw and gizzard, she holdeth close and fast in her bill, for feare lest she might swallow it down the throat ere she were aware;

*Or like the birch running about  
Her young whelps at the sight  
Of strangers, bays and barks apace,  
And ready is to fight.*

No doubt the feare which she hath lest her little ones should take harm redoubleth her courage, and maketh her more hardy and angry than before: as for the partridges which they are said for by the fowler, together with their cove of young birds, they suffer them to flie away as well as they can, and make shift to save themselves, but the old rowsen full subtilly seeme to wait the coming of the fowls, abiding until they approach neere unto them, and by keeping about their feet, traile them still away after them ready ever as it were to be caught; now when the fowler shall seeme to reach unto them with his hand, they will run a little, or take a short flight from him, and then they flie againe, putting him in new hope of his prey and booty, which every foot he thinketh to take with his hand: thus they play mock-holiday with the fowlers, and yet with some danger to themselves for the safety of their young, until they have trained them a great way off who fought for their lives. Our hens, which we keep about our houses so ordinarily, and have daily in our eyes, how carefully do they look unto their young chickens while they receive some under their wings, which they spread and hold open for the nonce that they may creep in: others they suffer to mount upon their backs, gently giving them leave to climbe and get up on every side, and they do not without great joy and contentment, which they testify by a kind of clocking and speciall noise that they make at such a time; if when they be alone without their chickens, and have no feare but for themselves a dog or a serpent come in their way, they flie from them; let their brood be about them when such danger is presented, it is wonderful how ready they will be to defend the same, yea, and to fight for them, even above their power. Do we thinke now that nature hath imprinted such affections and passions in their living creatures, for the great care that she hath to maintaine the race and posterity (as it were) of hens, dogs, or beaſts; or do we not rather make this construction of it, that she shameth, pricketh, and woundeth men thereby when we reason and discourse thus within our selves, that these things be good examples for as many as follow them, and the reproaches of those that have no sense or feeling of naturall affection; by which no doubt they do blame and accuse the nature of man only, as if the alone were not affectionate without some hire and reward, nor could skill of love but for gaine and profit? for admired he was in the theaters that thus spake first:

*For hope of gaine one man will love another,  
Take it away, what one will love his brother?*

This is the reason according to the opinion and doctrine of *Epicurus* that the father affecteth his son the mother is tender over her child, and children likewise are kind unto their parents: but set case that brute beaſts could both speake and understand language in some open theater, and that one called to meet together a sufficient assembly of beaſtes, horses, dogs, and fowles, certes if their voices were demanded upon this point now in question, he would set down in writings, and openly pronounce, that neither bitches loved their whelps, nor mares their foals, hens their chickens, and other fowles their little birds in respect of any reward but freely & by the instinct of nature: and this would be found a true verdict of his, justified and verified by all whole passions and affections which are observed in them: and what a shame and infamy unto mankind is this to grant and avouch,

that the act of generation in brute beaſts, their conception, their breeding, their painfull delivery of their young, and the careful feeding and cherishing of them be natures works meely, and duties of gratuity; and contrariwise that in men they be pawns given them for security of interest, hires, wages, and earnest pennies respective to some profit and gain which they draw after them: But surely as this project is not true, so it is not worth the hearing, for nature verily as in savage plants and trees, to wit, wild vines, wild figge-trees, and wild olives she doth ingenerate certain raw and unperfected rudiments, (such as they be) of good and kind fruits: so she hath created in brute beaſts a naturall love and affection to their young, though the same be not absolute nor fully answerable to the rule of justice, ne yet able to passe farther than the bonds and limits of necessity. As for man, a living creature, endued and adorned with reason, created and made for a civil society, whom she hath brought into the world for to observe lawes and justice, to serve, honour and worship the gods, to found Cities and govern Common-wealths, and therein to exercise and perform all offices of bounty: him she hath bestowed upon noble, generous, fair and fruitful seeds of all these things, to wit, a kind love and tender affection toward his children; and these she followeth still, and perniteth therein, in which she infused together with the first principles and elements that went to the frame of his body and soul: for nature being every way perfect and exquisite, and namely in this inbred love toward infants, wherein there wanteth nothing that is necessary, neither from it is ought to be taken away as superfluous: It hath nothing (as *Erasmus* was wont to say) vain, frivolous and unprofitable, nothing inconstant, and shaking to and fro, inclining now one way, and then another. For in the first place, as touching the generation of man, who is able to expresse her prudence sufficiently? neither haply may it stand with the rule of decent modesty to be over-curious and exquisite in delivering the proper names and terms thereto belonging: for those naturall parts serving in that act of generation and conception secret as they be and hidden, so they neither can well, nor would willingly be named, but the composition and framing thereof, so apply made for the purpose, the disposition and situation likewise to convenient, we ought rather to conceive in our mind than utter in speech.

Leaving therefore those privy members to our private thoughts, passe we to the conception, disposition and distribution of the milk, which is sufficient to shew most evidently her providence, industry and diligence for the superfluous portion of blood which remaineth in a womans body, over and above that which serveth for the use whereunto it is ordained, sloping up and down within her afterwards, for defect or feebleness of spirits wandereth (as it were) to and fro, and is a burden to her body: but at certain set-times and dayes, to wit, in every monthly revolution, nature is careful and diligent to open certain il-luces and conduits, by which the said superfluous blood doth void and passe away; whereupon she doth not only purge and lighten all the body besides, but also cleareth the matrice, and maketh it like of a piece of ground brought in order and temper, apt to receive the plough, & desirous of the seed after it in due season: now when it hath once conceived and retained the said seed, so as the same take root and be knit presently it draweth it selfe tight and close together round, and holdeth the conception within it; for the navill (as *Democritus* saith) being the first thing framed within the matrice, & serving in stead of an anchor, against the waving and wandering of it to and fro; holdeth sure the fruit conceived, which both now groweth and hereafter is to be delivered (as it were) by a sure cable and strong bough, then also it stoppeth and shutteth up the said rivulets and passages of those monthly purgations; and taking the foresaid blood, which otherwise would runne and void by those pipes and conduits, it makes use thereof for to nourish, and (as it were) to water the infant, which beginneth by this time to take some consistence and receive shape and form, so long, until a certain number of dayes which are necessary for the full growth the reof without inquired; at which time it hath need to remove from thence for a kind of nutriment else where in another place; and then diverting the said course of blood with all dexterity and a skillfull hand (no gardener nor fountainer in drawing of his trenches and channels with all his cunning, so artificial) and employing it from one place to another, shee hath certain cisterns (as it were) or fountain-heads, prepared of purpose from a running source most ready to receive that liquor of blood quickly, and not without some sense of pleasure and contentment: but withall, when it is received, they have power and faculty, by a mild heat of the naturall spirits within them, and with a delicate and feminine tenderness, to concoct, digest, change and convert it into another nature and quality, for that the paps have within them naturally, the like temperature and disposition answerable unto it: now these teares which spout out milk from the cocks of a conduit, are so framed and disposed, that it floweth not forth all at once, neither do they lend it away suddenly: but nature hath so placed the ducts, that as it endeth one way in a spongy kind of flesh full of small pipes, and made of purpose to transmit the milk, and let it distill gently by many little pores and lesser passages, so it yieldeth a nipple in manner of a tuncet, very fit and ready for the little babes mouth about which to nuzzle and mugel with it pretty lips it taketh pleasure, & loveth to be tugging & lipping of it; but to no purpose and without any fruit of profit at all, had nature provided such tools and instruments for to engender and bring forth a child: to no end (I say) had she taken for good order, used to great industry, diligence and foresight, if withall she had not imprinted in the heart of mothers a wonderful love and affection, yea, and an extraordinary care over the fruit of their womb, when it is born into the world: for

*Of creatures all which breath and walk  
upon the earth in fight,  
None is there wretched more than man  
new born into this light.*

And whoe'er saith thus of a young infant newly coming forth of the mothers womb, maketh no lie at all, but speaketh truth; for nothing is there so imperfect, so indigent and poor, so naked, so deformed, so foul and impure, than is man to see presently upon his birth, considering that to him (in manner alone) nature hath not given so much as a clean passage and way into his light; so furred he is all over and polluted with blood, so full of filth and ordure, when he entrench into the world resembling rather a creature fresh killed and slain, than newly born: that no body is willing to touch, to take up, to handle, dandle, kisse and clip it, but such as by nature are lead to love it; and therefore, whereas in all other living creatures, nature hath provided that their udders and paps should be set beneath unto their bellies, in a woman onely, she hath seated them aloft in her breasts, as a very proper and convenient place, where she may more readily kisse, embrace, coll and huggle her babe while it sucketh; willing thereby to let us understand, that the end of breeding, bearing and rearing children, is not gain and profit, but pure love and meer affection. Now, if you would see this more plainly proved unto you, propose (if you please) and call to remembrance the women and men both in the old world, whose law was either first to bear children, or to see an infant newly born: there was no law then to command and compell them to nourish and bring up their young babes; no hope at all of reciprocall pleasure or thanks at their hands that induced them: no expectation of reward and recompence another day to be payed from them, as due debt for their care, pains and cost about them: nay, if you go to that, I might say rather: That mothers had some reason to deal hardly with their young infants, and to bear in minde the injuries that they have done them, in that they endured such dangers and so great pains for them:

*As namely when the painfull thrones  
as sharp as any dart,  
Intravell pinch a woman neer,  
and pierce her to the heart:  
Which midwives, Junoes daughters then,  
do put her to, poor wretch,  
With many a pang, when with their hand  
they make her body stretch.*

But our women say: It was never *Hamervu* (sirely) who wrote this; but *Homeru* rather: that is to say, some Poetesse or woman of his Poetical vein, who had been her self at such a business, and felt the dolorous pangs of child-birth, or else was even then in labour, and upon the point to be delivered, feeling a mixture of bitter and sharp throws in her back, belly and flanks, when she poured out these verses; but yet, for all the sorrow and dear bargain that a mother hath of it, this kind and natural love doth still so bend, incline and lead her, that notwithstanding she be in a heat still upon her travell, full of pains and after-throws, panting, trembling and shaking for very anguish, yet she neglecteth not her sweet babe, nor windeth or shrinketh away from it; but she turneth toward it, she maketh to it, she smileth and laugheth upon it, she taketh it into her arms, she huggeth it in her bosome, and kisseth it full kindly: neither all this whiles gathereth she any fruits or pleasure or profit, but painfully (God wot) and carefully

*She tapps it then in raggs full soft,  
With swaddling bands she wraps it oft,  
By turns she cools and keeps it warm;  
Loth is she that it should take harm:  
And thus aswell by night as day,  
Pains after pains she taketh ay.*

Now tell me (I pray you) what reward, recompence and profit do women reap for all this trouble and painfull hand about their little ones? None at all (sirely) for the present, and as little in future expectation another day, considering their hopes are so farre off, and the same so uncertain. The husbandman that diggeth and laboureth about his vine at the Equinox in the Spring, presseth grapes out of it and maketh his vintage at the Equinox of the Autumne. He that soweth his corn when the starres called *Pleiades*, do couch and go down, reapeth and hath his harvest afterwards when they rise and appear again: kine calve, mares foal, hennies hatch, and soon after there cometh profit of their calves, their colts and their chickens: but the rearing and education of a man is laborious, his growth is very slow and late; and whereas long it is ere he cometh to proof and make any shew of vertue, commonly most fathers die before that day. *Nepes* lived not to see the noble victorie before *Salamis* that *Themistocles* his sonne achieved: neither saw *Miltiades* the happy day wherein *Cimon* his sonne won the field at the famous battell near the river *Emrynidon*: *Xantippus* was not so happy as to hear *Pericles* his sonne, out of the Pulpit preaching and making orations to the people; neither was it the good fortune of *Arifon* to be at any of his sonne *Plato's* lectures and disputations in Philosophie: the fathers of *Euripides* and *Sophocles*, two renowned Poets, never knew of the victories which they obtained, for pronouncing and rehearsing their Tragedies in open Theater,

ter, they might hear them peradventure when they were little ones to stammer, to lisper, to spel and put syllables together, or to speak broken Greek, and that was all. But ordinary it is that men live to see, hear, and know when their children fall to gaming, revelling, masking, and banquetting, to drunkennesse, wanton love, whoring, and such like misdemeanors. So as in this regard this one Mot of *Euenus* in an Epigram of his, deserveth to be praised and remembered.

*See how great pains all fathers undergo,  
What daily griefs their children put them to,*

And yet for all this, fathers cease not still to nourish and bring up children, and such most of all who stand least in need of their children another day: for a meer mockery it were, and a ridiculous thing if a man should suppose; that rich and wealthy men do sacrifice unto the gods, and make great joy at the nativity and birth of their children, because that one day they shall feed and sustain them in their old age, and interre them after they be dead; unlesse perhaps it may be said, they rejoyce thus and be so glad to have and bring up children, for that otherwise they should leave none heirs behind them; as who would say, it were too hard a matter to find out and meet with those that would be willing to inherit the lands and goods of strangers. Certes the sands of the sea, the little mores in the sunne raised of dust, the feathers of birds, together with their variable notes, be not so many in number, as there be men that gape after heritages, and be ready to succeed others in their livings. *Danaus* (who as they say was the father of 50 daughters) if his fortune had been to be childlesse, I doubt not but he should have had more heirs than so to have parted his goods and state among them, and those verily after another sort than the heirs of his own body. For children yield their parents no thanks at all for being their inheritours; neither in regard thereof do they any service, duty, or honour unto them: for why? they expect and look for the inheritance as a thing due of right belonging unto them: but contrariwise you hear how those strangers that hang and hunt about a man who hath no children, much like to those in the Comedies singing this song,

*O sir, no wight shall do you any harm,  
I will revenge your wrongs and quarrells ay:  
Hold here's three-half-pence good to keep you warm;  
Purse it, drink it, sing so and care away.*

As for that which *Euripides* saith,

*The worldly goods procure men's friends to chuse,  
And credit most; who then will them respect?*

It is not simply and generally true, unlesse it be to those that have no children; for such indeed are sure to be invited and feasted by the rich lords and rulers will make court and be serviceable to such, for them great Oratours and Advocates will plead at the bar without fee, and give their counsell gratis,

*How mighty is a rich man with each one,  
So long as his next heir is known to none!*

whereas you shall see many in the world, who before time having a number of friends and honour enough, and no sooner had a little child born unto them, but they lost all their friends, credit, and reputation at once, so that by this reckoning the having of children maketh nothing at all to the authority of their parents, so that in regard thereof, it is not that they do so love their children; but surely the cause of this their kindnesse & affection proceedeth altogether from nature and appeareth no lesse in mankind than in wild beasts: Howbeit otherwhiles this natural love aswell as many other good qualities in men, are blemished and obscured by occasion of vice that buddeth up afterwards; like as we see wilde briars, bushes and brambles to spring up and grow among good kind feeds; for otherwise we might aswell collect and say, that men love not themselves because many cut their own throats, or willingly fall down head-long from steep rocks and high places. For *Oedipus*

*With bloody hands his own eye-lids did force,  
And plucked out his eyes upon remorse,*

*Hegesias* disputing and discouraging upon a time of abstinence, caused many of his auditors and scholars to pine themselves to death.

*Such accidents of many sorts there be,  
Permitted by the gods we daily see.*

But all of them like as those other passions and maladies of the mind before named, transport a man out of his own nature, and put him beside himself, so as they testifie against themselves, that this is true, and that they do amisse herein: for if a Sow having farrowed a little Pigge, devour it when she hath done, or a Bitch chance to tear in pieces a Puppy or whelp of her own litter, presently men are amazed at the sight thereof, and wonderfully affrighted, whereupon they sacrifice unto the gods certain expiatory sacrifices, for to divert the smither prelates thereof, as taking it to be a prodigious wonder; confessing thereby, that it is a property given to all living creatures, even by the instinct and institution of nature: To love, foster and cherish the fruit of their own bodies: so farre is it from them to destroy the same. And yet, notwithstanding her corruption and depravation in this behalfe like as in mines, the gold (although it be mixed with much clay, and furred all over with earth)



shineth and glittereth throw the same, and is to be seen as fire offends to nature amid the most delicate private manners and corrupt passions that we have, sheweth a certain love and tender affection to little ones. To conclude, whereas the poor many times make no care at all to nourish and rear up their children, it is for nothing else but because they fear, lest having nothing good bringing up to so civil education as they ought, they should prove servile in behaviour, untaught, unmanly, rude, and void of all good passions and judging (as they do) poverty to be the extremity of all miseries that can befall to man, their heart will not serve them to leave unto their children this hereditary calamity, as a most grievous and dangerous disease.

## Of the Plurality of Friends.

### The Summary.

IN certain discourses going before, it appeareth what a benefit and good thing friendship is. And now Plutarch addeth thereto a certain correction very necessary, in regard of our nature which is given always to bind unto extremities, and not able long to hold the golden mean. Like as therefore it bewaileth a miserable, wretched, and cursed mind, to be desirous for to lead a life without acquaintance and familiarity with any person: even so to make friends (as they say) laid over head, and upon every occasion is peradventure impossible, but surely not expedient. Our Author therefore, willing to reforme this disorderly affection that is in many, who because they could have a number of friends, oftentimes have not one assured, sheweth that it is farre better for a man to get one fast and fast full friend, than a great multitude of whom he cannot make any certain account: propounding as a remedy for this covetous mind of entertaining such a plurality of friends, the examples of those who are contented with few, and by that means think their estate more sure and steadfast. After this, he treateth of the choice of friends, but especially of one. Then discourseth he of that which is requisite in true friendship, an exhortation to many proper and apt similitudes, which represent as well the benefit that sincere affection bringeth, as the hurt which cometh of fained and counterfeit amity. This done, he proveth, that to entertaine a number of friends is a very hard matter, yea, and impossible for that a man is not able to converse with them, nor to frame a due sort with them all, but that he shall procure himselfe enemies in all sides: and when he hath enriched and adorned the same with notable examples, he proceedeth to describe what a man is to make of friendships, and with what sort and condition of men he ought to enjoye in amity: but this is the conclusion: That a honest and vertuous man cannot quit himselfe well, and performe his devoute unto many friends at once.

## Of the Plurality of Friends.

Socrates upon a time demanded of Menon the Thessalian, who was esteemed very sufficient all literature, and a great school-man, exercised in long practice of disputation, and named to be one (as Empedocles faith) who had attained to the very height and perfection of wisdom and learning, what virtue was: and when he had answered readily and boldly enough, in this wise: There is a virtue (quoth he) of a young child, and of an old gray beard: of a man, and of a woman: of a magistrate, and of a private person: of a master, and of a servant: I cony you thank (quoth Socrates againe, replying unto him) you have done it very well: I asked you but of one virtue, and you have railed and let flie a whole swarme (as it were) of virtues, guessing and collecting not amiss by such an answer, that this deep clarke, who had named thus many virtues, knew noth so much as one. And might not a man seem to scorn and mock us well enough, who having not yet gotten one friendship and amity certaine, are afraid (forthwith) lest ere we be aware, we fall into a multitude and plurality of friends: for this were even as much as if one that is maimed and stark blind, should faine to become either Briareus the giant, with an hundred armes and hands, or Argus, who had eyes all over his body. And yet we praise and commend excessively and beyond all measure the young man in Menander, when he saith:

Of all the goods which I do hold,  
To thinke each one (I would be bold)  
Right wonderfull, if I might find  
The shadow only of a friend.

But certainly this is one cause among many others, and the same not the least, that we cannot be possessed of any one assured amity, because we cover to have so many much like unto these common flatterers and harlots, who for that they prostitute their bodies so often and to so many men, cannot make any reckoning to hold and retain any one paramour or lover fast and sure unto them: for that the first comers seeing themselves neglected and cast off by the entertainment of new, retire and fall

away

away from them, and seeke elsewhere; or rather much after the manner of that \* foster-child of La-  
dy Hippolyte,

Who being set in meadow Greene  
With pleasant flowers all faire beset,  
One after other croppt them still,  
Hunting this game with right good will:  
For why, his heart took great content  
In their gay blew and sweet sent:  
So little wit and small discretion  
The infant had; and no repletion.

Even so every one of us for the desire of novelty, and upon a satiety and fullness of that which is present and at hand, suffereth himselfe ever to be carried away with a new-come friend that is fresh and flowing: which fickle and inconstant affection causeth us to change often, and to begin many friendships and finish none; to enter still into new amities and bring none to perfection; and for the love of the new which we pursue and seeke after, we passe by that which we held already and let it go. To begin then first and formost at antiquity (as it were) from the goddesses *Vesta* (according to the old proverbe) let us examine and consider the common fame of mans life, which hath been delivered unto us from hand time out of mind, by the succession and progresse of so many ages from the old world unto this day, and take the fame for a witness and counsellor both in this matter, we shall find in all the yeares past these only couples and paires of renowned friends to wit, *Theseus* and *Pirithous*; *Achilles* and *Patroclus*; *Orestes* and *Pylades*; *Pythias* and *Damon*; *Epaminondas* and *Pelopidas*. For friendship is indeed (as I may so say) one of these cartell that love company and desire to feed and pasture with fellows; and it cannot abide herds and droves, it may not away with these great flocks, as jayes, dawes, and coughts do. And whereas it is commonly said and thought, that a friend is another own selfe, and men give unto him the name of *ἑαυτοῦ* or *ἐμῶ* in Greeke, as if a man should say, *ἑαυτοῦ*, that is, such another: what implieth all this, but that friendship should be reduced within the measure and compass of the duall number, that is, of twaine. Well, this is certaine, we can buy neither many slaves nor purchase many friends with a small piece of coine: but what may be this piece of money that will fetch friends? Surely, kind affection or good will, and a lovely grace joyined with vertue, things I may tell you rare, as look thou wilt the world, and the whole course of nature, you shall find nothing more geafon. No marvel then, if it be impossible either to love many, or to be loved of many perfectly and in the height of affection. But like as great rivers, if they be divided into many channels, and cut into sundry rivulets, carry but an ebbe water, and run with no strong streame; even so a vehement and affectionate love planted in the mind, if it be parted many and diverts waies becometh enervate and feeble, and cometh in manner to nothing. This is the reason in nature, that those creatures which bring forth but one and no more, love their young more tenderly and entirely than others do theirs. *Homer* also when he would signifie a child most dearly beloved, calleth it *ἄνθρωπον τιμωμένον*, that is to say, only begotten and toward old age, to wit, when the parents have no more between them, nor ever are like or do looketo have another: for mine own part, I would not desire to have that *μυόν*, that is to say, one friend, no more: but surely, I could wish that with other he were *τιμωμένον*, yea, and *ἐμῶ*, that is to say, long and late first ere he be gotten, like as a son which is borne toward the latter daies of his parents, yea, and such a one, as (who according to that proverbe so common in every mans mouth) hath eaten with me a measure of salt. And are not many now adays called friends? What else? If they have but drunke once together at the taverne, or met in the tennis court, or did turne into a tabling house, and played at dice and hazard one with the other, or haply light in company at one hothelty and lodged together, and in one word, they do contract and gather friends in this manner out of common lynes, wrestling places, and ordinary walks in the markets or publike galleries. And verily, the common sort, when they see every morning in the houses of rich men and mighty rulers a great multitude and concourse of people, with much ado and hurry giving attendance there to salute them and bid them good morrow, kissing their right hands, and glad if they may touch them accompanying them in manner of a guard when they go out of their lodging; Oh, they imagine and repute such potentates wondrous happy, as being furnished with such numbers of friends; and yet surely, as many as they be, they shall see more flies ordinarily in their kitchens: and to say a truth, like as these flies will be gone if no caties and viands be stirring; so these friends will carry no longer than gaine and profit is to be gotten.

Certes, true and perfect friendship requireth these three things especially: Vertue, as being honest and commendable; Society, which is pleasant and delectable; and Profit, which is needfull and necessary: for a man must admit and receive a friend upon judgement, and afterward made he ought to delight and joy in his company, and he is to make use of him as occasion serveth: all which three are contrary unto plurality of friends, but especially that which is principally, to wit, judgement upon a triall: and to prove this to be true, fee first and formost whether it be possible in a small time to make prooffe and triall of singing-men and querifiers, that they may keep a good content and harmony together in their long; or to make choise of oare-men, who shall agree in their rowing, to rise and fall with their oares just together; or of household servants such as we purpose to make the bailiffs and stewards of our goods, or the governors and bringers up of our children?



children? Much more unlikely than is it, that we should have proofe of many friends in a little space, who will be ready to enter the triall with us of all manner of fortune, and of whom every one will be prett and willing

*Of his welfare to yield even part to thee,  
And beare like part of thy calamity.*

For neither is a ship shot or haled into the sea against so many stormes and tempests: nor men do set and pitch so many stakes in a palliade for the defence of any place; or in havens raise banks, and oppoe dams, against the like dangers, or in fear of so many perils, as friendship promisseth succour and refuge for, if it befounded surely and aright upon good proofe and sufficient experience. As for such as before triall and experiment made do intruce themselves comming and going for friends, such when they be put to the triall and touch indeed, and then found like evil money, counterfeit or light, they that go without them beglad in their minds, and as many as have them, with will all their hearts, and pray to God for to be rid of them. But surely this is a troublefome and combersome thing, neither is it an easie matter to void and cast off such a friendship as this, so displeasent and offensive: for like as if some kind of bad meat do trouble and offend the stomack, a man can neither retaine and hold it still, but it will put him to paine and breed hurt and corruption, nor yet put it off and send it out in such sort as it went in, but all filthy and loathsome, as being furred over with slime, and mixed consiliately with other humours, and wholly altered from the former state; even so an ill friend either tarrish with us till to his own griefe and ours both, or else away he goeth perforce with ill-will, malice and enmity like bitter choler that is vomited out of the stomack. It is not good therefore to receive and admit of friends over-lightly and over-soone, nor to set our minds and knit our affections to those that come next hand, and present themselves first, ne yet love those incontinently that seeke to us and follow us; but rather to seek after them and follow them our selves that are worthy of friendship: for we must not always chosse that which is easie to be had, and willing to be gotten: for we put by gorie and fuzen bushes; we tread under foot briars and brambles though they catch hold of us, and bring unto us as we walke whether we will or no; whereas we go forward to the olive tree and the vine, and even so it is not always decent and good to entertaine into our familiarity one that is ready to embrace and hang about us; but rather such ought we our selves affectionately to embrace whom we have tried to be profitable unto us, and who deserve that we should love and make account of them. And like as *Xenxis* the painter answered sometime to those who found fault with him for his slow hand in painting: I confesse indeed (quoth he) that I am long in drawing a picture, for I purpose that my worke should continue long; and even so that friendship and familiarity is like to last and be preferred long which was a good while in proofe and triall. Is it then no easie matter to make triall and chioice of many friends together? And is it no hard thing to converse and keep company with many at once, or rather is this also impossible? For surely it is conversation and fellowship, whereby we enjoy the benefit of friendship, and the most sweet and pleasant fruit of amity consisteth in keeping continuall society, and daily frequenting one anothers company, like unto those who uttered these words,

*For during life we will not sit  
In counsell from our friends,  
Nor yet resolve of doubtful points  
Before we know their minds.*

As *Homer* reporteth in one place: and in another *Memellus* speaking of *Myfies*, saith thus,  
*Nought else us traines our mutual love,  
And pleasures shall depart,  
Untill death close up both our eyes  
And strike us to the heart.*

But this plurality of friends whereof we now speake, seemeth to do cleane contrary: for whereas the simple amity of twain draweth us together, holdeth and uniteth us by frequent and continuall conversation, fellowship, and duties of kinneship,

*Much like as when the fig tree juices,  
You put white milke among,  
It curdles, knits, and binds the same,  
No lesse it than rennet strong.*

According to the words of *Empedocles*; and surely desirous it is to make the semblable union and concorporation: this friendship of many separateth, distracteth, and diverteth us. calling and transporting us sundry waies, not permitting the commixture and fodering (as it were) of good will and kind affection to grow into one, and make a perfect joyn by familiar conversation, enclosing and fastening every part together. But the same anon bringeth withall a great inequality in offices and reciprocal services meet for friends, and breedeth a certaine foolish bashfulness and straining of curtesie in the performance thereof, for by occasion of many friends those parts in amity, which otherwise are easie and commodious, become difficult and incommodious: And why?

*All men do not agree in humour one,  
Their thought their cares bend diversly each one.*

And no marvel, for our very natures do not all incline in affection the same way: neither are we at all times conversant and acquainted with the like fortunes and adventures. To say nothing of their sundry

sundry occasions and occurrences which serve not indifferently for all our actions: but like as the winds unto sailors, they are with some and against others; sometimes on our backs and other whiles full in our face. And say that it may fall out so, that all our friends at once do stand in need, and be desirous of one and the same help and ministry at our hands, it were very hard to fit all their turnes and satisfie them to their content: whether it be in taking our advice and counsell in any negotiation, or in treating about State matters, or in suit after dignities, places of government, or in feasting and entertaining strangers in their houses: But suppose that at one and the same instant, our friends being diversly affected and troubled with sundry affaires, request all of them together our helping hand; as for example, one that is going to sea for to have our company in that voyage; another who being defendant and to answer for himselfe in the law to assit him in the court; and a third that is a plaintife, to second him in his plea; a fourth who either is to buy or sell, for to help him to make his markets; a fifth who is to marry, for to sacrifice with him, and be at his wedding dinner; and a sixth, who is to interre a dead corps, for to mourne and solemnize the funerals with him: in such a medley and confusion as this, as if according to *Sophocles*:

*A city smock'd with miserie sweet,  
Andring with songs for mirth to meet,  
With plaints also and groanes resound,  
And all in one and selfe some found.*

Certes having so many friends to assit and gratifie them all were impossible, to pleasure more were absurd, and in serving ones turne to reject many others, were offensive and hurtfull: for this is a rule:

*Who to his friend is well affected,  
Loves not himselfe to be neglected.*

And yet commonly such negligences and forgetfull defaults of friends, we take with more patience, and put up with lesse anger and displeasure, when they shall come to excuse themselves by oblivion, making these and such like answers. Surely, you were but forgotten: it was out of my head, and I never thought of it: but he that shall alledge thus and say: I was not your assistant in the court, nor flood to you in your cause, by reason that I attended another friend of mine in a triall of his; or I came not to visite you whiles you had an ague, for that I was busily employed at a feast, that such a one made to one of his friends; excusing his negligence to one friend, by his diligence to others; surely he maketh no satisfaction for the offence already taken, but in reateh the same and maketh it worse than before. by reason of jealousie added thereto; howbeit most men as it should seeme aime at nothing else but at the profit and commodity which friendship bringeth and yeeldeth from without, and never regard what care it doth imprint and worke within; neither remember they that the whose turne hath been served by many friends must likewise reciprocally be ready to help them as their need requireth. Like as therefore the giant *Briareus* with his 100 hands feeding 50 bellies, had no more sustenance for his whole body than we, who with two hands furnish and fill one belly: even so the commodity that we have by many friends bringeth this discommodity withall, that we are to be employed also to many, in taking part with them of their griefes and passions, in travelling and in being troubled together with them in all their negotiations and affaires: for we are not to give care unto *Enripides* the Poet when he saith thus,

*In mutuall love men ought a care to keep,  
That it touch not heart nor narrow deep,  
Affections for to change it well befit,  
To rise and fall, now hot, now coole, by fit.*

Giving us to understand that friendship is to be used according as need requireth more or lesse, like to the helme of a ship, which both holdeth it hard, and also giveth head, or the tackling which spread and draw, hoise and strike aile, as occasion serveth. But contrariwise, rather (good *Enripides*) we may turne this speech of yours to enmity, and admonish men that their quarrels and contentions be moderate and enter not to the heart and inward marrow (as it were) of the soule, that hatred (I say) and malice, that anger, offences, defiances, and suspitions, be so entertained as that they may be soone appeased, laid down and forgotten. A better precept is that yet of *Pythagoras*, when he teacheth us not to give our right hand to many; that is to say, not to make many men our friends, nor to affect that popular amity common to all, and exposed or offered to every one that cometh, which no doubt cannot chule but bring many passions with it into the heart, among which, to be disgusted for a friend, to condole or grieve with him, to enter into troubles, and to plunge ones selfe into perils for his sake, are not very easie matters to be borne by those that carry an ingenious mind with them, and be kind-hearted: but the saying of wile *Chilon*, a professor of Philosophy, is most true, who answering unto a man that vaunted how he had no an enemy; It should seeme then (quoth he) that thou hast never a friend: for certainly enmities ensue presently upon amities, nay, they are both interlaced together; neither is it the part of a friend not to seele the injuries done unto a friend, nor to participate with him in all iniquities, hatred, and quarrels that he incurreth; and one enemy evermore will be sure to suspect the friend of another, yea, and be ready to malice him; as for friends, oftentimes they envy their own friends, they have them in jealousie, and traduce them every way. The oracle answered unto *Timefias* when he consulted about the planting and peopling of a new colony in this wise:

*Thou*

*Thou think'st to lead a swarme of bees full kind,  
But angry wasps thou shalt them shortly find.*

Semblably they that teeke after a bee-hive (as it were) of friends, light ere they be aware upon a waspes nest of enemies: where there is a great ods and difference even in this, that the revenging remembrance of an enemy for wrong done, over-weigheth much the thankfull memory of a friend for a benefit received: and whether this be true or no, consider in what manner *Alexander the Great* entreated the friends of *Philotas* and *Parmenio*: how *Dionysius* the tyrant used the familiars of *Dion* after what *fort Nervo* the Emperour dealt by the acquaintance of *Plautus*; or *Tiberius Caesar* by the well-willers of *Sejanus*, whom they caused all to be racked, tortured, and put to death in the end. And like as the costly jewels of gold, and the rich apparell of King *Cyren*s daughter, served him in no stead at all, but the fire that tooke hold thereof, flaming light out suddenly, burned him when he ran unto her to take her in his armes, and so confumed father and daughter together; even so you shall have some, who having never received any benefit at all by the prosperity of their friends, are entangled notwithstanding in their calamities, and perishe together with them for company: a thing that ordinarily and most of all they are subject unto, who be men of profession, great clarkes, and honourable perfonages. Thus *Theseus*, when *Perithous* his friend was punished and lay bound in prison

*With fetters sure to him tied was  
Far stronger than of iron or brasse.*

*Thucydides* also writeth: That in the great petulance at *Athens*, the best men and such as made greatest profession of vertue, were they who died most with their friends that lay sick of the plague: for that they never spared themselves, but went to visite and look to all those whom they loved and were familiarly acquainted with. And therefore it is not meet to make so little regard and reckoning of vertue, as to hang and fasten it upon others, without respect, and (as they say) hand over head, but to reserve the communication thereof to those who be worthy; that is to say, unto such who are able to love reciprocally, and know how to impart the like againe. And verily, this is the greatest contrariety and opposition which croseth plurality of friends, in that amity indeed is bred by similitude and conformity: for considering that the very brute beasts not ended with reason, if a man would have to ingender with those that are of divers kinds, are brought to it by force, and thereto compelled, in as much, as they shrink, they couch down upon their knees, and be ready to flee one from another; whereas contrariwise, they take pleasure and delight to be coupled with their like, and of the same kind, receiving willingly, and entertaining their company in the act of generation with gentleness and good contentment: how is it possible that any found and perfect friendship should grow between those who are in behaviour quite different, in affections divers, in conditions opposite, and whose course of life tendeth to contrary or sundry ends? True it is, that the harmony of musick, whether it be in long or instrument, hath symphony by antiphony (that is to say) the accord ariseth from discord, and of contrary notes is composed a sweet tune, so as the treble and the base concur, after a sort (I wot not how) and meet together, bringing forth by their agreement that found which pleaseth the eare: but in this consonance and harmony of friendship there ought to be no part unlike or unequal, nothing obscure and doubtfull, but the same should be composed of all things agreeable, to wit, the same will, the same opinion, the same counsell, the same affection, as if one soule were parted into many bodies. And what man is he, so laborious, so mutable, so variable, and apt to take every fashion and forme? Who is able to frame unto all patters, and accommodate himselfe to so many natures, and will not rather be ready to laugh at the Poet *Theognis*, who giveth this lesson:

*Put on a mind (I thee do wish)  
As varia le as Polype fish,  
Who are resemble wilt to rocks,  
To which he neerly doth adhere.*

And yet this change and transmutation of the said polype or poutcuttle fish entrench not deeply in, but appeareth superficially in the skin, which by the clevenesse or laxity thereof, as he draws it in or lets it out, receiveth the defluxions of the colours from those bodies that are near unto it; whereas amities do require that the manners, natures, passions, speeches, studies, desires, and inclinations may be conformable; for otherwise to do, were the propertie of a *Proteus*, who was neither fortunate, nor yet very good and honest, but who by enchantment and sorcery could often times transforme himselfe from one shape to another in one and the same instant; and even so he that entertaineth many friends must of necessity be conformable to them all; namely, with the learned and studious, to be ever reading; with professors of wrestling, to bestrew his body with dust (as they do for to wrestle); with hunters, to hunt; with drunkards, to quaffe and carouse; with ambitious citizens, to sue and munge for offices, without any settled mansion (as it were) of his own nature for his conditions to make abode in. And like as naturall Philosophers do hold: That the substance or matter that hath neither forme nor any colour, which they call *Materia prima*, is a subject capable of all formes, and of its own nature so apt to alter and change, that sometimes it is ardent and burning, otherwhiles it is liquid and moist; now rare and of an airy substance, and afterwards againe grosse and thick, resembling the nature of earth; even so must the mind, applied to this multiplicity of friends, be subject to many passions, sundry conditions, divers affections, pliable, variable, and apt

to change from one fashion to another. Contrariwise, simple friendship and amity between twaine requireth a staid mind, a firme and constant nature, permanent and abiding alwaies in one place; and retaining (till the same fashions; which is the reason that a fast and assured friend is very gealon and hard to be found.

## Of Fortune.

## The Summary.

**L**ong time hath this Proverbe been currant, That there is nothing in this world but good fortune and misfortune. Some have expounded and taken it thus; as if all things were carried by meere chance and adventure, or moved and driven by inconstant fortune, an idoll forged in their brayes, for that they were ignorant in the providence of this True God, who conducteth ordinarily all things in this world by second causes and subalterne meanes, yea, the very motion, will, and work of men, for the execution of his ordinance and purpose. Now Plurality not able to arise and reach up to his divine and heavenly wisdom hidden from his knowledge, stayeth below, and yet poore Pagan and Ethnickes though he were, he confuteth that dangerous opinion of Fortune; shewing that it taketh away all distinction of good and evil, quencherh and putteth out the light of mans life, blending and confounding vice and vertue together. Afterwards he proveth that prudence and wisdom over-ruleth this blind fortune, by considering the mastery and dominion that man hath above beasts: the Arts also and Sciences whereof he maketh profession, together with his judgement and will directly opposite and contrary to all casualties and changes.

## Of Fortune.

**B**ind fortune rules mans life alway, Sage counsell therein beares no sway, Said one (whoever it was) that thought all humane actions depended upon meere casuality, and were not guided by wiidome. What? And hath justice and equity no place at all in this world? Can temperance and modesty do nothing in the direction and managing of our affaires; Came it from fortune, and was it indeed by meere chance that *Aristides* made choise to continue in poverty, when it was in his power to make himselfe a Lord of much wealth and many goods? Or that *Scipio* when he had forced *Carthage*, took not to himself, nor so much as saw any part of all that pillage? and was it long of Fortune, or by casuality, that *Philocrates* having received of King *Philip* a great sum of gold bought therewith harlots and dainty fishes? Or that *Lasphenes* and *Eumbycrates* betrayed the City *Olynthus*, measuring soveraigne good and felicity of man by belly-cheere, and those pleasures which of all other be most dishonest and infamous? And shall we say it was a work of Fortune that *Alexander*, son of *Philip*, not only himselfe forbaret to touch the bodies of the captive women taken in war, but also punished all such as offered them violence and injury? And contrariwise, came it by ill-luck and unhappy fortune that another *Alexander* the son of King *Priamus*, slept and lay with his friends wife, when he lodged and entertained him in his house, and not only so, but carried her away with him, and by that occasion brought all manner of calamity upon two maine parts of the Continent, to wit, *Europe*, and *Asia*, and filled them both with those mileries that follow wars?

If we grant that all these occurrences came by Fortune, what should let us, but we might as well say, that Cats, Goats, and Apes be likewise by fortune given to be alwaies li kor us, lecherous, fi rewd, and lawcy? But in case it be true (as true it is) that the world hath in it temperance, justice, and fortitude; what reason is there to say, that there is no prudence and wiidome therein? Now if it be yielded that the world is not void of prudence: how can it be maintained that there should not be in it sage counsell? For temperance (as some say) is a kind of prudence; and most certaine it is, that justice should be assisted by prudence; or to say more truly, ought to have it prefront with her continually. Certes, sage counsell and wiidome in the good use of pleasures and delights, whereby we continue honest, we ordinarily do call continence and temperance; the same in dangers and travells, we terme loyalty, patience, and fortitude; in contrabts and managemnt of State-affaires, we give the name of loyalty, equity, and justice; whereby it cometh to pass, that if we will attribute the effects of counsell and wiidome unto fortune, we must likewise ascribe unto her the works of justice and temperance. And lo (beleeve me) to rob, and steale, to cut prires, and to keep whores, must proceed from fortune; which if it be so let us abandon all discourse of our reason, and betake ourselves wholly to fortune, to be driven and carried to and fro at her pleasure like to dust, chaffe, or sweepings of the floore, by the puffs of some great wind. Take away sage and discreet counsell; farewell then all consultations as touching affaires, away with deliberation, consideration, and inquisition

inquisition into that which is behovefull and expedient: for surely then *Sophocles* talked idly, and knew not what he spake in saying thus:

*Seek, and be sure to find with diligence,  
But life, what you for-let by negligence.*

And in another place where dividing the affaires of man he saith in this wife:

*What may be taught, I strive to learne;  
What may likewise be found*

*I seek, for wiles all I pray,  
And would to God he found.*

Now would I gladly know, what is it that men may find, and what can they learne, in case all things in the world be directed by fortune? What Senate house of City would not be dissolved and abolished? What Councell chamber of Prince should not be overthrown and put down, if all were at the disposition of Fortune? We do her wrong in reproaching her for blindness, when we run upon her as we do, blind, and debasing our selves unto her: for how can we chuse but stumble upon her indeed, if we pluck out our own eyes, to wit, our wisdom and dexterity of counsell, and take a blind guide to lead us by the hand in the course of this our life? Certes, this were even as much, as if some one of us should say, the action of those that see is fortune, and not sight of eyes, which *Plato* calleth *goregia*, that is, Light-bearers: the action likewise of them that heare is nothing else but fortune, and not a natural power and faculty to receive the stroke or repercussion of the aire, carried by the eare to the braine. But better it were (I trow) and so will every wise body thinke to take heed how to discredit our senses to, as to submit them to fortune: For why? Nature hath bestowed upon us sight, hearing, taste, and smelling, with all the parts of the body endued with the rest of their powers and faculties, as ministers of counsell and wisdom. For it is the soule that seeth, it is the soule and under standing that heareth, all the rest are deafe and blind: and like as if there were no sun at all, we should (for all the stars besides) live in perpetual night, as *Heraclitus* saith; even so, if man had not reason and intelligence, notwithstanding all his other senses, he should not differ in the whole race of his life from brute and wild beasts: but now in that we excell and rule them all, it is not by chance and fortune: but *Prometheus* (that is to say) the ule and discourse of reason is the very cause that hath given us in recompence

*Both horse and asse, with breed of beests so strong  
To carry us, and ease our labour long.*

According as we read in *Æschylus* the Poet. Forasmuch as otherwise fortune and nature both have been more favourable, and beneficial to most of the brute beasts in their entrance into this life, than unto man: for armed they be with hornes, tusks, spurs, and stings; moreover as *Empedocles* saith,

*The Urchin strikes with many a pricke,  
Which grow on backs both sharpe and thicke.*

Again, there be many beasts clad and covered with scales and shag haire: shod also with claws and hard hooves: only man, as *Plato* saith, is abandoned and forsaken by nature, all naked, unarmed, unshod, and without any vesture whatsoever,

*But by one gift which she hath given,  
Amend she makes, and all is even.*

And that is the ule of reason, industry, and providence.

*For strength of mortall man is small,  
His limbs, but weak and sinews all:  
Yet by his wit and quick conceits,  
By cunning casts and subtle sleights,  
No beast in sea, or mount, so fell,  
So wild, or ste, but he doth quell.*

What beast more nimble, more light and swift than is the horse: but for man it is that he runneth in the race: the dog is courageous and eager in fight, but it is in the defence of man: fishes yield a most delicate and sweet meat, and swine be full of good flesh, but both of them serve for viands for the food and nourishment of man: what creature is bigger or more terrible to see than is the elephant? howbeit he maketh man sport and pastime, he is shewed as a goodly fight in festive solemnities where people be assembled. he is taught to friske and dance his measures, to fall upon his knees likewise and do reverence: and verily these and such like sleights and examples are exhibited not in vaine, nor without good profit. but to this end, that thereby we may know how far forth reason and wisdom doth advance and lift up a man above what things it maketh him surmount, and how by means thereof he ruleth all, and surpasseth all:

*At fight with fists we are not good,  
Nor yet in tripping feet,  
In wrestling we may well be blam'd,  
Our running is not fleet.*

But in all these feats we are inferior to brute beasts, howbeit for experience, memory, wisdom, and artificial sleights (as *Anaxagoras* said) we go beyond them all, and thereby we have the mastery and ule of them, making them to serve our turnes: we straine honey out of the combs of bees: we

preste

preste milke out of beafts udders: we rob and spoile them, we drive and carry them away and whatsoever they have, in so much as in all this there is nothing that can be justly attributed to fortune, but all proceeds from counsell and foresight.

Furthermore, the works of carpenters are done by hand of man, so are they also of smiths and brayers, of malons, builders, grave-diggers, and imagers: in all which there is nothing to be seen that a man can say is done by chance or fortune, at leastwise when it is wrought absolutely and as it should be. And say that it may fall out otherwhiles that a good artisan, whether he be a cutter in brasse or a malon, a smith, or a carpenter, may meet with fortune and do some little thing by chance: yet the greatest peeces of worke, and the most number are wrought and finished respectively by their arts, which a certaine Poet hath given us secretly to understand by these verses,

*March on your way each artisan  
Who live upon your handy-craft,  
On forth I say in comely traine,  
Your sacred panniers beare aloft;  
You that Ergane dread and feare  
The daughter grim of Jupiter.*

For this *Ergane* (that is to say *Minerva*) all artisans and artificers acknowledge and honour for their patronesse, and not fortune. True it is that the report goes of a certaine painter; who drawing the picture of an horse, had done very well in all respects, both in portraiture and also colours, save only that he pleased not himselfe in painting the fume and swelling froth which useth to gather about the bit as he champeth upon the same, and so fallesth from his mouth when he snuffeth and bloweth: this I say he liked not, neither thought he it workmanly done, in so much as he wiped it out many times and began it anew; but never was it to his mind; at last in a pelling chafe, because it would frame no better, he takes me his sponge full as it was of colours, and flung it against the table wherein he wrought; but see the wonderful chance: this sponge lighting as it did upon the right place, gave such a print, and dashed fo, as that it represented the froth that he so much desired most lively: and to my remembrance there is not in any history set down an artificial thing but this that fortune ever did.

Artificers use altogether in every peice of worke, their squares, their rules, their lines and levels: they go by measures and numbers, to the end that in all their works there should not be anything found done either rashly or at adventure. And verily these arts are petty kinds of Prudence and so called: or rills and rivulets flowing from Prudence, or certaine parcels rather of it, sprinkled and dispersed among the necessities of this life: and this much is covertly signified by the fable of the fire that *Prometheus* divided by sparkles, which flew some here, some there: for semblably, the small parcels and fragments of wisdom, being cut into sundry portions, are ranged into their several ranks and become arts. A wonderful thing how these arts and sciences should have no dealing with Fortune, nor need her help, for to attaine unto their proper ends: and yet Prudence which is the greatest soveraigne and most perfect of them all, yea, and the very height of all the glory, reputation, and goodnesse of man, should be just nothing. In the winding up and letting down of the strings of an instrument, there is one kind of wisdom, and that is called *Musick*; in the dressing and ordering of meats and viands there is another, which they name *Cookery*: in washing and scouring of cloaths and garments there is a third, to wit, the fullers craft. As for our little children, we teach them to draw on their shooes, to make them ready and dresse themselves in their cloaths decently, to take meat in their right hand, and to hold bread in the left: an evident argument and proofe, that even such small matters as these depend not of chance and fortune, but require skill and heed-taking. Shall we say then that the greatest and most principall things that are, even those that be most materiall and necessary for mans felicity, yule not wisdom, nor participate one whit with providence and the judgement of reason? There is no man so blockish and void of understanding, that after he hath tempered clay and water together, lets it alone and goeth his way when he hath so done, looking that of its own accord, or by fortune there will be bricks or tiles made thereof: neither is any one such a lot, as when he hath bought wooll and leather, sits him down and prices unto fortune, that thereof he may have garments or shooes: and is there any man so foolish, thinke you? who having gathered together a great masse of gold and silver, gotten about him a mighty retinue of slaves and servants, and being possessed of divers faire and dately houses with many a doore within and without, and those surely locked on every side, having before him in his eye-sight a sort of sumptuous beds with their rich and costly furniture, and of tables most precious, will repose-forainge felicity therein, or thinke that all this can make him to live happily, without paine, without griefe, secure of change and alteration if he have not wisdom withall?

There was one that cavilled upon a time with Captaine *Iphicrates*, and by way of reproach and minding to prove that he was of no reckoning, demanded what he was? For (quoth he) you are not a man at armes, nor archer, nor yet targetter: I am not indeed I confesse (quoth *Iphicrates*) but I am he who command all these, and employ them as occasion serveth: even so wisdom is neither gold nor silver, it is not glory nor riches, it is not health, it is not strength, it is not beauty: What is it then? Surely even that which can skill how to use all these, and by means whereof each of these things is pleasant, honourable, and profitable: and contrariwise, without which they are displeasing, hurtfull and dangerous, working his destruction and dishonour who possesseth them. And there-



Seemably, aduities may well stay envy and cause it cease, but enmity and hatred they do not abolish; for men never give over to despise their enemies, no when they are brought low and oppressed with calamities; whereas you shall not see one in misery envied. But most true is that saying found of a certain Iophiltier or great professor in our dayes: That envious persons of all other be ever pitifull and delight most in commiseration: so that herein lyeth one of the greatest differences between the two passions: that hatred departeth not from those persons of whom it hath once taken hold, neither in the prosperity nor adversity of those whom they hate; whereas envie doth avoid and vanish away to nothing upon extremity awell of the one as the other.

Over and besides we may the better discover the difference also of them by the contraries: for hatred, enmity, and malice cease presently so soon as a man is periwaded that he hath caught no harm nor sustained injury by the party; or when he hath conceived an opinion that such as he hated for their lewdnesse are reformed and become honest men: of thirdly, if he have received some pleasure of good turn at their hand: for evermore the last favor that is shewed (as *Thucydides* saith) though it be lesse than many others, yet if it come in season and a good time, is able to do out a greater offence taken before. Now of these three causes before specified, the first doth not wash away envy; for say that men were periwaded at the first that they received no wrong at all; yet they give not over for all that to bear envy still: and as for the two later they do irritate and provoke it the rather for such as they esteem men of quality and good worth; those they do eye-bite more than before, as having virtue the greatest good that is; and notwithstanding that they do reap commodity and find favour at their hands, who prosper more than they; yet they grieve and vex thereat, envying them still both for their good mind to benefit them, and for their might and ability to perform the same; for that the one proceedeth from virtue, and the other from an happy estate, both which are good things.

We may therefore conclude, that envy is a passion farre different from hatred, since it is so that wherewith the one is appeased and mollified, the other is made more exasperate and grievous. But let us consider a little in the end the scope and intention alwell of the one as the other: Certes the man that is malicious, purpoeeth fully to do him a mischief whom he hateth: so that this passion is defined to be a disposition and forward will to spie out an occasion and opportunity to wait another a shrewd turn; but surely this is not in envy: for many there be who have an envious eye to their kinsfolk and companions, whom they would not for all the good in the world see either to perish, or to fall into any grievous calamity; only they are grieved to see them in such prosperity, and would impeach what they can their power, and eclipse the brightness of their glory; many they would not procure nor desire they utter overthrow, nor any distress remediless or extreme miseries; but it would content and suffice them to take down their height, and as it were the upmost garret or turret of an high house which overlooketh them.

## How a Man may receive Profit by his Enemies.

### The Summary.

**A**mong the dangerous effects of envy and hatred, this is not the least nor one of the last, that they shoot (as it were) from within our adversaries, for to slide and enter into us and take possession in our hearts, making us believe that we shall impeach one evil by another; which is as much as to desire to cleanse one ordure by a new, and to quench a great fire by putting into it plenty of oil. As for hatred it hath another effect nothing lesse pernicious, in that it maketh us blind, and causeth us that we cannot tell as which end or turning to take our enemies, nor know our selves how to re-enter into the way of virtue. Plutarch willing to cut off such effects by the help of morall Philosophie, taketh occasion to begin this discourse with a sentence of Xenophon; and prooveth in the first place by divers similitudes: That a man may take profit by his enemies; and this he doth abroad in particulars, shewing that their ambushes and inquisitions serve us in very great stead. After this, he teacheth us the true way how to be revenged of those that hate us, and what we ought to consider in blaming another. Now forasmuch as our life is subject to many injuries and calamities, he instructeth us how a man may turn all to his own commodity: which done, be presenteth four remedies and expedient means against their slanderous language, and how we should confound our enemies: The first is, To contain our own tongues, without rendring evil for evil: the second is, To do them good, so love and praise their virtues: the third, To out-go them in well-doing; and the last, To provide that vertue remain always on our side, in such sort that if our enemies be vicious, yet we persist in doing goods; and if they carry some shew and appearance of goodness, we endeavour to be indeed and without all comparison better than they.

How

## How a Man may receive Profit by his Enemies.

**I** see that you have chosen by your self (O *Cornelius Puleher*) the meekest course that may be in the government of a common-wealth; wherein having a principal regard unto the weal-publick: you shew yourself most gracious and courteous in private to all those that have access and repair unto you. Now forasmuch as a man may well find some country in the world, wherein there is no venomous beast, as it is written of *Cadia*, but the management and administration of State affairs was never known yet to this day clear from envie, jealousy, emulation and contention, passions of all other most apt to engender and breed enmities, unto which it is subjects for that if there were nothing else, even amity and friendship it self is enough to entangle and encumber us with enmities; which wife *Chilon* the Sage knowing well enough, demanded upon a time of one (who vaunted that he had no enemies) whether he had not a friend. In regard hereof a man of State and policy, in mine opinion (among many other things wherein he ought to be well studied) should also thoroughly know what belongeth to the having of enemies and give good ear unto the saying of *Xenophon*, namely, That a man of wit and understanding is to make his profit and benefit by his enemies. And therefore having gathered into a pretty Treatise, that which came into my mind of late to discourse and dispute upon this matter, I have lent unto you written and penned in the very same terms as they were delivered, having this eye and regard as much as possible I could, not to repeat any thing of that which heretofore I had written touching the politick precepts of governing the weal-publick, for that I see that you have that book often in your hand.

Our fore-fathers in the old world contented themselves in this: That they might not be wounded or hurt by strange and savage beasts brought from foreign countreys; and this was the end of it. I those combats that they had against such wild beasts: but those who came after, have learned more-over how to make use of them, not only to take order to keep themselves from receiving any harm or damage by them; but (that which more is) have the skill to draw some commodity from them, feeding of their flesh, clothing their bodies with their wool and hair, curing and healing their maladies with their gall and rennet, arming themselves with their hide, and skinnes; inasmuch as now from henceforth, it is to be feared (and not without good cause) lest if beasts should fail, and that there were none to be found of men, their life should be one brutish, poor, needy and savage. And since it is so, that whereas other men think it sufficient not to be offended or wronged by their enemies, *Xenophon* writeth: That the wise reap commodity by their adversaries: we have no reason to derogate any thing from his credit, but to believe him in so saying, yea, and we ought to learn his method and art to attain and reach unto that benefit, as many of us (at least wile) as cannot possibly live in this world without enemies. The husbandman is not able with all his skill to make all sort of trees to cast off their wild nature, and become gentle and domestically. The hunter cannot with all his cunning, make tame and tractable all the savage beasts, of the forests; and therefore they have sought and devised other means and uses to make the best of them: the one finding good in barren and fruitlesse plants, the other in wild and savage beasts. The water of the sea is not potable, but brackish and hurtfull unto us, howbeit, fishes are nourished therewith, and it serveth mans turn also to transport passengers (as in a waggon) into all parts, and carry whatsoever a man will. When the Sature would have killed and embraced fire the first time that ever he saw it, *Prometheus* admonished him and said:

*Thou wilt bewail thy goats-bard soon,*

*If thou it touch, 'twill burn anon,*

but it yeeldeth light and heat, and is an instrument serving all arts, so as many as do know how to use it well; seemably, let us consider and see whether an enemy being otherwise harmfull and intractable, or at least wile hard to be handled, may not in some sort yeeld as it were a handle to take hold by, for to touch and use him so as he may serve our turn and minister unto us some commodity. For many things there are besides, which be odious, troublesome, cumbersome, hurtfull and contrary unto those that have them or come near unto them; and yet you see that the very maladies of the body give good occasion unto some for to live at rest and repose: I mean I speak of those that are abroad, and the travails presented unto others by fortune, have so exercised them, that they are become thereby strong and hardy: and to lay more yet, banishment and losse of goods, hath been the occasion unto divers, yea, and singular means to give themselves to their quiet study and to Philosophie: like as *Diogenes* and *Craes* did in times past. *Zeno* himself when newes came unto him that his ship wherein he did venture and traffick was split and cast away: Thou hast done well by me fortune (quoth he) to drive me again to my scholars weed. For like as those living creatures which are of a moist found and healthfull constitution and have besides strong stomachs, are able to concoct and digest the serpents and scorpions which they devour; nay, some of them there be which are nourished of stones, scales, and shels, converting the same into their nutriment by the strength and vehement heat of their spirits: whereas such as be delicate, tender, soft, and crasse, are ready to cast and vomit if they taste a little bread onely, or do but sip of wine; even so foolish folk do marre

R 2

and corrupt even friendship and amity; but those that are wise can skill how to use enmities to their commodity, and make them serve their turns. First and foremost therefore in my conceit, that which in enmity is most hurtfull, may turn to be most profitable unto such as be weary and can take good heed: and what is that you will say? Thine enemy as thou knowest well enough watcheth continually, spying and prying into all thine actions, he goeth about viewing thy whole life, to see where he may finde any vantage to take hold of thee, and where thou liest open that he may assaile and turpild thee; his sight is so quick that it pierceth not only through an oke, as *Lycurus* did, or stones and shiels; but also it goeth quite through thy friend, thy domestical servants, yea, and every familiar of thine with whom thou daily dost converse, so to discover to much as possibly he can what thou doest or goest about; he foundeth and leareth by undermining and secret ways what thy designs and purposes be. As for our friends, it chanceth many times that they fall extreme sick, yea, and die thereupon before we know of it, whiles we defer and put off from day to day, to go and visit them, or make small reckoning of them; but as touching our enemies, we are so observant, that we curiously enquire and hearken even after their very dreames: the diseases, the debts, the hard usage of men to their own wives, and the untoward life between them, are many times more unknown unto those whom they touch and concern than unto their enemy; but above all, he sticketh close unto thy faults, inquisitive he is after them, and those he traceth especially, and like as the geirars vultures fly unto the stinking sent of dead carions and putrified carcases, but they have no smell or sent at all of bodies sound and whole: even so those parts of our life which are diseased, naught, and ill affected, be they that may be an enemy to thee, leap they in great haste who are our ill willers, these they seize upon, and are ready to worry and pluck in pieces; and this it is that profiteth us most, in that it compelleth us to live orderly, to look unto our steps that we tread not awry, that we neither do or say ought inconsiderately or rashly; but always keep our life unblameable, as if we observed a most strict and exact diet: and cry this heedfull caution repressing the violent passions of our mind in this sort, and keeping reason at home within doores, engendreth a certain studious desire, an intention and will to live uprightly and without touch for like as those Cities by ordinary wars with their neighbour Cities, and by continual expeditions and voiajes, learning to be wise, take a love at length unto good lawes and sound government of state; even so they that by occasion of enmity be forced to live soberly, to save themselves from the imputation of idleness and negligence, yea, and to do every thing with discretion and to a good and profitable end, through use and custome shall be brought by little and little (ere they be aware) unto a certain settled habit that they cannot lightly trip and do amiss, having their manners framed in passing good order, with the least helping hand of reason and knowledge beside; for they who have evermore ready before their eyes this sentence:

*This were alone for Priamus,  
and his sonnes likewise all,  
Oh how would they joyce at hearts,  
in case this should befall.*

certainly would quickly be diverted, turned and withdrawn from such things, whereat their enemies are wont to joy and laugh a good: see we not many times stage players, chancers, musicians and such artificers in open theaters, who serve for the celebration of any solemnity unto *Bacchus* or other gods, to play their parts carelessly, to come unprovided, and to carry themselves I know not how negligently, nothing forward to shew their cunning and do their best, when they are by themselves alone and no other of their own profession in place? but if it chance that there be emulation and contention between them and other concurrents who shall do best; then you shall see them not only to come better prepared themselves, but also with their instruments in very good order; then shall you perceive how they will bestir themselves in trying their strings, in tuning their instruments more exactly, and in fitting every thing about their flutes and pipes, and assaying them. He then who knoweth that he hath an enemy ready and provided to be the concurrent in his life, and the rival of his honour and reputation, will look better to his wayes and stand upon his own guards, he will (I say) sit fast and look circumspectly about him to all matters, ordering his life and behaviour in better sort: for this is one of the properties of vice, that when we have offended and trespassed, we have more reverence and stand rather in awe of our enemies left we be shamed by them than of our friends. And therefore *Scipio Nasica* when some there were that both thought and gave out that the Romane estate was now seised and in safety, considering that the Carthaginians who were wont to make head against them and keep them occupied, were now vanquished and defeated, the Athenians likewise subdued and brought under subjection: Nay many (quoth he) for it is clean contrary and even now are we in greatest danger, being at this passe that we have left our selves none to fear, none to reverence.

And hereto moreover, accordeth well the answer that *Diogenes* made, like a Philosopher and a man of State indeed: One asked him how he should be revenged of his enemy: *Marie* (quoth he) by being a virtuous and honest man thy self. Men seeing the horres of their enemies highly accounted of, or their bounds praised and commended do grieve thereat if they perceive also their land well tilled and husbanded, or their gardens in good order fresh and flowing, they fetch a sigh and sorrow for the matter. What (think you then) will your enemy do? how will he fare, when you shall be seen a just man, wise and prudent, honest and sober, in words well advised and commendable, in deeds pure and clean, in diet neat and decent?

Reap

*Reaping the fruit of wisdom and prudence,  
Sowne in deep furrow of heart and conscience,  
From whence there spring and bud continually  
Consists full sage, with fruit abundantly.*

*Pindarus* the Poet said: That those who are vanquished and put to foil, are so tongue-tied, that they cannot say a word: howbeit, this is not simply true, nor holdeth in all, but in such as perceive themselves overcome by their enemies, in diligence, goodness, magnanimity, humanity, bounty and beneficence: for these be the things (as *Demosthenes* saith) which flect the tongue, close up the mouth, stop the wind-pipes and the breath, and in one word, cause men to be silent and dumb.

*Resemble not lowd folks, but them out-go  
In vertuous deeds, for this is both must well do.*

Wouldst thou do thine enemy who hateth thee a great displeasure indeed? Never call him by way of reproch, buggerer, wanton, lascivious, ruffian, scurrile, coffer, or covetous miche: but take order with thy self to be an honest man every way; chaste, continent, true indeed & word, courteous and just, to all those that deal with thee: but if thou be driven to let fall an opprobrious speech, and to revile thine enemy, then take thou great heed afterwards that thou come not near in any wise to those vices which thou reprochest him with, enter into thy self, and examine thine own conscience, search all the corners thereof, look that there be not in thy soul some putrified matter and rotten corruption, for fear lest thine own vice within may hit thee home, and require thee again with this verse out of the tragical Poet:

*A leech he is, others to cure,  
Pestred himself with sores impure.*

If thou chance to upbraid thine enemy with ignorance, and call him unlearned, take thou greater pains at thy book, love thou thy study better, and get more learning; if thou twit him with cowardice, and name him dastard, stirre up the vigour of thine own courage the rather, and shew thy self a man some what the more: hast thou given him the teares of beaulye woe, misdeed or lascivious lecher, wipe out of thy heart the least taint and spot that remaineth hidden therein of concupiscence and sensuality: for nothing is there more shamefull or caught greater grief of heart, than an opprobrious and reprochfull speech returned justly upon the author thereof. And as it seemeth that the reverberation of a light doth more offence unto the feeble eyes; even so those reproches which are retorted and sent back again by the truth, upon a man that blazed them before, are more offensive: for no lesse than the North-east wind *Cacias* doth gather unto it clouds; doth a bad life draw unto it opprobrious speeches; which *Plato* knowing well enough, whensoever he was present in place, and saw other men do any unseemly or dishonest thing, was wont to retire apart, and say thus secretly unto himself: *Do not I also labour other-while of this disease?* Moreover, he that hath blamed and reproched the life of another, if presently withall he would go and examine his own reforming the same accordingly, redressing and amending all that he findes amiss, until he have brought it to a better state, shall receive some profit by that reproving and reviling of his; otherwise it may both seem (as it is no lesse indeed) a vain and unprofitable thing. Commonly men cannot choose but laugh when they see either a bald-pate or a bunch-back, to taunt and scoff at others for the same defects or deformities; and so in truth, it were a ridiculous thing and a meer mockery to blame or reproch another in that, for which he may be mocked and reproched himself. Thus *Leo* the Byzantine cut one home that was crumpled-shoulder'd and bunch-back, when he leamed to hit him in the teeth with his dim and feeble eye-sight: Doest thou twit me (quoth he) by any imperfection of nature incident unto a man, when as thy self art marked from heaven, and carriest the divine vengeance upon thy back? Never then reprove thou an adulterer, if thy self be an un-leant woman with boys; nor leem thou to upbraid one with prodigality, if thou be a covetous miser thy self. *Alexander* reviled *Adrastus* (upon a time) in this wise: Thou

*A sister lost by parents twain,  
Whose hands her husband deare have slain,*

But what answered *Adrastus*? He objected not unto him the crime of another, but payeth him homewich his own, after this manner:

*But thou thy self hast murdered  
Thine own kinde mother, who thee bred.*

In like sort, when *Domitius* (upon a time) seemed to reproch *Craesus*, saying: Is it not true that when your lamprey was dead which was kept full daintily for you in a stew, you wept therefore? *Craesus* presently came upon him again with this bitter reply: And is it not true that you when you followed three wives of yours one after another to their funeral fire, never shed tear for the matter? It is not for requit or necessary iwis (as the vulgar sort do think) that he who checketh and rebuketh another, should have a ready wit of his own, and a natural gift in doing it, or a loud and big voice, or an audacious and bold face; no, but such an one he ought to be, that cannot be noted and taxed with any vice: for it should seem that *Apollo* addressed this precept of his [*Know thy self*] to no person so much as to him who would blame and find fault with another; for fear lest such men, in speaking to others what they would, hear that again which they would not. For it happeneth ordinarily as *Sophocles* saith: That such an one



*Who lets his tongue run softly,  
In noting others bitterly,  
Shall hear himself (unwillingly)  
The words he gave so wilfully.*

Lo what commodity and profit cometh upon reproching an enemy.

Neither cometh there lesse good and advantage unto a man by being reproched by another, and hearing himself reviled by his enemies: and therefore it was very well and truly said of *Anisphenes*, that such men as would be saved and become honest another day, ought of necessity to have either good friends, or most spitefull and bitter enemies: for as they with their kind remonstrances and admonitions: so these with their reprochfull teares were like to reform their sinful life. But forasmuch as amity and friendship now adays speaketh with a small and low voice when faults should freely be reprov'd, and is very audible and full of words in flattering, altogether mute and dumb in rebukes and chastisements; and but what remaineth now but that we should hear the truth from the mouth of our enemies? much like unto *Telephus*, who for default of a Physician that was a friend to cure him, was forced to commit his wound or ulcer to the iron head of his enemies: I fear for to be healed: and even so those that have no well-willers that dare freely reprove their faults, must perforce endure with patience the stinging tongue of their enemy and evil-willer in chastizing and rebuking their vices, not regarding so much the intent & meaning of the ill-speaker, as the thing it self, and the matter that he speaketh; and look how he who enterprised the killing of *Prometheus* the Thessalian, ran him so deep with his word into the imposture or swelling botch which he had about him, that he let forth the corruption, and saved his life by the breaking and issue thereof; even so for all the world it falleth out many times, that a reprochfull speech delivered in anger or upon evil will is the cause of healing some malady of the soul, either hidden or unknown altogether, or else neglected: but the most part of those who are in this manner reproched, never consider whether the vice wherewith they are touched be in them or no, but they look rather if they can finde some other vice to object unto him, who hath thus challenged them: and much like unto wretches, they never wipe away their own dust, that is to say the reproches that be fastned upon themselves, and wherewith they be defamed, but they bestrew one another with dust, and afterwards trip up one anothers heels, and tumble down one upon another, weltering in the same, and soiling one another therewith: whereas indeed it behoved rather that a man when he findeth himself tainted by his enemy, to endeavour for to do away that vice wherewith he is noted and defamed, much rather than to fetch out any spot or stain out of his garment, which hath been shewed him: and although there be charged upon us some slanderous imputation that is not true; yet nevertheless we are to search into the occasion whereupon such an opprobrious speech might arise and proceed, yea, and take heed we must and fear, lest ere we be aware we commit the like or come near unto that which hath been objected unto us. Thus for example sake *Lacedæus* King of the Argives, for that he did wear his hair curiously set, in manner of a peruke, and because his gate or manner of going, seemed more delicate and nice than ordinary, grew into an ill name and obloquie of effeminate wantonnes, And *Pompeius* the great could not avoid the like suspicion, because he used otherwhiles to scratch his head with one finger onely, and yet otherwhise he was so farr from feminine wantonneffe and incontinence as any man in the world. *Cassius* was accused for to have had carnal company with one of the religious nuns or votaries of *Vesta*, for that being desirous to purchase of her a fair piece of land and house of pleasure which he had, he resorted oftentimes privately unto her, spake with her apart, and perhaps made court unto her for to have her good will in that respect onely. *Posthumus* likewise another vestall virgin, for that she was much given to laugh upon a small occasion, and whichall would not stick to entertain talk with men, more boldly peradventure than became a maiden of her profession, was so deeply suspected of incontinence, that she was brought judicially into question about it, howbeit found unguilty, and acquit she was: but when *Spiritus Minus* the high-priest for the time being, a spoiled her and pronounced the sentence of her abolition, minding to dismise her of the Court, he gave her a gentle admonition by the way, that from thence forward she should forbear to use any words lesse modest and chaste then the carriage of her life was. *Themistocles* likewise, notwithstanding he was most innocent indeed, was called into question for treason, because he entertained amity with *Pausanias*, sent and wrote oftentimes unto him, and so by that means gave suspicion that he minded to betray all *Greece*. When as therefore thou art charged with a false crimination by thine enemy, thou must not neglect it and make full account thereof, because it is not true, but rather look about thee and examine what hath been done or said, either by thee or any one of those who affect and love thee, or converse with thee, founding and tending any way to that imputation which might give occasion or likelihood thereof, and carefully to beware and avoid the same: for if by aduerse and heavy fortune whereunto others have inconsiderately fallen, they are dearly taught what is good for them, as *Merops* saith in one Tragédie:

*Fortune hath taken for her salary,  
My dearest goods of which I am bereft,  
But me she taught by that great misery  
For to be wise, and so she hath me left.*

What should let or hinder us, but that we may learn by a master that costeth us nought, nor taketh nothing

nothing for his teaching (even our enemy) to profit and learne somewhat that we knew not before? for an enemy perceiveth and findeth in us many things more than a friend, by reason that (as *Plato* saith) That which loveth is alwaies blind in the thing that is loved: whereas he who hateth us, as besides that he is very curious and inquisitive into our imperfections, he is not meale-mouthed (as they say) nor will not spare to speake, but is ready enough to divulge and blaze all abroad. King *Hiero* chanced upon a time, being at words with one of his enemies, to be told in reprochfull manner by him of this stinking breath: whereupon being somewhat daunted in himselfe, he was no longer returned home to his own house but he chid his wife: How comes this to passe (quoth he?) What say you to it? How hapneth it that you never told me of it? The woman being a simple, chaste, and harmlesse dame: Six (saith she) I thought all mens breath had smelled so. Thus it is plain: that such faults as be object and evident to senses, grosse, and corporall, or otherwise notorious to the world, we know by our enemies sooner than by our friends and familiars.

Over and besides, as touching the continence and holding of the tongue, which is not the least point of vertue, it is not possible for a man to rule it alwaies, and bring it within the compass and obedience of reason, unless by use and exercise, by long custom, and painfull labour he have tamed and mastered the worst passions of the soule, such as anger is: for a word that hath escaped us against our wils, which we would gladly have kept in: of which *Homer* saith thus:

*Out of the mouth a word did fly  
For all the rage of teeth & of by.*

And a speech that we let at adventure (a thing hapning often-times, and especially unto those whose spirits are not well exercised, and who want experience, who run out, as it were, and breake forth into passions) this (I say) is ordinary with such as be hasty and cholerick, whose judgement is not settled and staied, or who are given to a licentious course of life: for such a word, being (as *divine Plato* saith) the lightest thing in the world, both gods and men have many a time payed a most grievous and heavy penalty: whereas Silence is not only (as *Hippocrates* saith) good against thirst, but also is never called to account, nor amerced to pay any fine: and that which more is, in the bearing and putting up of taunts and reproaches, there is observed in it a kind of gravity becoming the person of *Socrates*, or rather the magnanimity of *Hercules*, if it be true that the Poet said of him:

*Of bitter words he lesse account did make  
Than doth the flie, which no regard doth take.*

Neither verily is there a thing of greater gravity, or simply better, than to heare a malicious enemy to revile, and yet not to be moved nor grow into passions therewith,

*But to passe by a man that loves to raile,  
As rock in sea, by which we swim or saile.*

Moreover, a greater effect will ensue upon this exercise of patience, if thou canst accustom thy selfe to heare with silence thine enemy whiles he doth revile, for being acquainted therewith, thou shalt the better endure the violent fits of a curst and shrewd wischiding at home; to heare also without trouble the sharpe words of friend or brother; and if it chance that father or mother let fly bitter rebukes at thee, or beat thee, thou wilt suffer all, and never shew thy selfe displeased and angry with them. For *Socrates* was wont to abide at home *Xantippe* his wife, a perillous shrewd woman and hard to be pleased, to the end that he might with more ease converse with others, being used to endure her curtnesse. But much better it were for a man to come with a mind prepared and exercised before-hand with hearing the scoffes, railing language, angry taunts, outrageous and foule words of enemies and strangers; and that without anger and shew of disquietnesse, than of his domestical people within his own house. Thus you see how a man may shew his meeknesse and patience in enemies; and as for simplicity, magnanimity, and a good nature indeed, it is more scarce then in friendship: for it is not to honest and commendable to do good unto a friend, as dishonest, not to succour him when he standeth in need and requesteth it.

Moreover, to forbear to be avenged of an enemy if opportunity and occasion is offered, and to let him go when he is in thy hands, is a point of great humanity and curtesie; but him that hath compassion of him when he is fallen into adversity, succoureth him in distresse, at his request is ready for to shew good will to his children and an affection to sustaine the state of his house and family being in affliction: whosoever doth not love for this kindnesse, nor praise the goodnesse of his nature,

*Of colour black (no doubt) and tincture sweet,  
Wrought of stiff Steele or iron he hath an heart,  
Or rather forg'd out of the Diamond,  
Which will not stir bare at nor once relent.*

*Caesar* commanded that the statues erected in the honour of *Pompeius*, which had been beaten down and overthrowen, should be set up againe; for which act *Cicero* laid thus unto him: In rearing the images of *Pompeius*, O *Caesar*, thou hast pitched and erected thine owne. And therefore we ought not to be fary of praise & honour in the behalfe of an enemy especially when he deserveth the same; for by this means the party that praileth shall win the greater praise himselfe; and besides, if it happen againe that he blame the said enemy, his accusation shall be the better taken, and carry the more credit, for that he shall be thought not so much to hate the person as disallow and mislike his action.

But

But the most profitable and goodliest matter of all, is this: That he who is accustomed to praise his enemies, and neither to grieve or envy at their well-fare, shall the better abide the prosperity of his friend, and be further off from envying his familiars in any good success or honour that by well-doing they have achieved. And is there any other exercise in the world that can bring greater profit unto our souls, or work a better disposition and habit in them, than that which rideth us of emulation and the humour of envy? For like as in a City, wherein there be many things necessary, though otherwise simply evil, after they have once taken sure footing, and are by custom established in manner of a law, men shall hardly remove and abolish, although they have been hurt and endamaged thereby; even so enmity, together with hatred and malice, bringeth in envy, jealousy, contentment and pleasure in the harme of an enemy, remembrance of wrongs received, and offences passed, which it leaveth behind in the soule, when it selfe is gone; over and besides, cunning practices, fraud, guile, deceit, and secret forlayings or ambushes, which seeme against our enemies nothing ill at all, nor unjustly used, after they be once settled and have taken root in our hearts, remaine there fast, and hardly, or uneth: are removed; in so much as if men take not heed how they use them against enemies, they shall be so inured to them, that they will be ready afterwards to practice the same with their very friends. If therefore *Pythagoras* did well and wisely in acquainting his Scholars to forbear cruelty and injustice, even as farre as to dumbe and brute beasts; whereupon he miliked fowlers, and would request them to let those birds flye againe which they had caught; yea, and buy of fishers whole drafts of fishes, and give order unto his disciples to put them alive into the water againe, in so much as he expressly forbade the killing of any tame beast whatsoever; certes it is much more grave and decent, that in quarrels, debates, and contentions among men; an enemy that is of a generous mind, just, true, and nothing treacherous, should reprove, keepe down, and hold underfoot the wicked, malicious, cautelous, base, and ungentleman-like passions: to the end that afterwards in all contracts and dealings with his friend they breake not out; but that his heart being cleare of them, he may abstaine from all mischievous practices. *Scarrus* was a professed enemy and an accuser of *Domitius* judicially; now there was a domesticall servant belonging to the said *Domitius*, who before the day of tryall and judgement, came unto *Scarrus*, saying, That he would dit over unto him a thing that he knew not of, that which might serve him in good stead when he should plead against his matters; but *Scarrus* would not so much as give him the hearing; yea, he laid hold on the party, and sent him away bound unto his Lord and Master. *Cato* (the younger) charged *Muræus*, and indicted him in open Court for popularity and ambition, and declaring against him that he sought indirectly to gaine the peoples favour and their voices to be chosen Consul; now as he went up and downe to collect arguments and proofes thereof, and according to the manner and custome of the Romans, was attended upon by certain persons who followed him in the behalfe of the defendant, to observe what was done for his better instruction in the proceffe and suit commenced: these fellows would oftentimes be in hand with him and aske whether he would to day search for ought, or negotiate any thing in the matter and cause concerning *Muræus*? If he said, No; such credit and trust they reposed in the man that they would rest in that answer, and go their waies; a singular argument this was of all other to prove his reputation, and what opinion men conceived of him for his justice; but sure a farre greater testimony is this, and that passeth all the rest, to prove that if we be accustomed to deale justly by our very enemies, we shall never shew our selves unjust, cautelous, and deceitfull with our friends. But forasmuch as every lark (as *Simonides* was wont to say) must needs have a cop or crest growing upon their head; and so likewise all men by nature do carry in their head I wot not what jealousy, emulation, and envy, which is if I may use the words of *Pindarus*,

*A man a fellow (to be plaine)  
Of brain-sick fooles and persons waine.*

A man should not reape a small benefit and commodity by discharging these passions upon his enemies, to purge and cleanse himselfe quite thereof, and as it were by certaine gutters or channels, to derive and dreine them as far as possibly he can from his friends and familiar acquaintance; whereof I suppose *Onomastodorus* a great Politician, and wise States-man in the life *Chios* was well advised, who in a civill dissention being sided to that faction which was superiour, and had gotten the head of the other; counselled the rest of his part not to chafe and banish out of the City all their adversaries, but to leave some of them still behind: For feare (quoth he) left having no enemies to quarrell withall, we our selves begin to fall out and go together by the eares; semably if we spend these vicious passions of ours upon our enemies, the lesse are they like to trouble and molest our friends: for it ought not thus to be as *Hesiodus* saith, That the potter should envy the potter; or one Minstrell or Musician spite another; neither is it necessary that one neighbour should be in jealousy of another; or couzens and brethren be concurrents and have emulation one at another, either striving to be rich or speeding better in their affaires: for if there be no other way or means to be delivered wholly from contentions, envies, jealousies, and emulations, acquaint thy selfe at leastwise to be stung and bitten at the good success of thine enemies; whet the edge and sharpen the point (as it were) of thy quarrellous and contentious humour, and turne it upon them and spare not: for like as the most skilfull and best gardeners are of this opinion, that they shall have the sweeter roses and more pleasant violets, if they set garlick or fow onions neare unto them,

for

for that all the strong and stinking favour in the joyce that feedeth and nourisheth the said flowers is purged away and goeth to the said garlick and onions; even so an enemy drawing unto himselfe and receiving all our envy and malice, will cause us to be better affected to our friends in their prosperity, and lesse offended if they out-go us in their estate; and therefore in this regard we must contend and strive with our enemies about honour, dignities, government, and lawfull means of advancing our own estates, and not only to be grieved and vexed to see them have the better and the vantage of us, but also to marke and observe every thing whereby they become our superiours, and so to straine and endeavour by careful diligence, by labour and travel, by parsimony, temperance, and looking nearly to our selves, to surpass and go beyond them; like as *Themistocles* was wont to say: That the victory which *Miltiades* achieved in the Plaine of *Marathon* brake his sleepe, and would not let him take his nights rest: for he who thinketh that his enemy surmounteth him in dignities, in patronage of high matters and pleading of great causes, in management of state affaires, or in credit and authority with mighty men and grand Signiors, and instead of striving to enterprize and do some great matter by way of emulation, betaketh himselfe to envy only, and so is still doing nothing, and loseth all his courage, surely he bewrayeth that he is possessed with naught else but an idle, vaine, and enervate kind of envy. But he that is not blinded with the regard and sight of him whom he hateth, but with a right and just eye doth behould and consider all his life, his manners, designs, words, and deeds, shall soone perceive and find that the most part of those things which he envieth were achieved and gotten by such as have them, with their diligence, wisdom, foresight, and virtuous deeds: he thereupon bending all his spirits and whole mind thereto, will exercise (I trow) and sharpen his own desire of honour, glory, and honestly, yea, and cut off contrariwise that yawning drowynesse and idleness that is in his heart. Set case moreover, that our enemies by flattery, by cautelous shifts and cunning practices, by pleading of cases at the bar, or by their mercenary and illiberal service in unhoneft and foule matters, seeme to have gotten some power, either with Princes in courts, or with the people in States and Cities; let the same never trouble us, but contrariwise cheere up our hearts and make us glad in regard of our own liberty, the pureness of our life and innocency unrepurchable, which we may oppose against those indirect courses and unlawfull means. For all the gold that is either above ground or underneath (according as *Plato* saith) is not able to weigh against vertue. And evermore this sentence of *Solon* we ought to have in readinesse:

*Many a wicked man is rich,  
And virtuous men are many poore:  
But change we never will with sich  
Nor give our goodnesse for their store,  
And why? vertue is durable,  
Whereas their wealth is mutable.*

Much lesse then, will we exchange the acclamations and shouts of a popular multitude in theaters, which are won with a feast; nor the honours and prerogatives to sit uppermost at a table neare unto the chamberlaines, minions, favorites, concubines, or lieutenant generall of Kings and Princes. For nothing is defrable, nothing to be affected, nothing indeed honest that proceedeth from an unhoneft cause: But he that loveth (according as *Plato* saith) is always blinded by the thing which is loved, and sooner do we perceive and marke any unseemely thing that our enemies do. Howbeit to conclude, neither our joy and contentment conceived by observing them to do amisse, nor our griefe and displeasure in seeing them do well, ought to be idle and unprofitable unto us; but this reckoning and account we are to make of both; that in taking heed how we fall into their faults, we may become better, and in imitating their good parts not worse than they.

## How a man may perceive his own proceeding and going forward in Vertue.

### The Summary.

**H**ardly can it be defined, whether of these two extremities is more to be feared, to wit, blackish stupidity, or vaine presumption, considering the dangerous effects proceeding as well from the one as the other: And contrariwise, an excellent matter it is to be able for to teach men the means to avoid both extremes, and to hold the meane between. And this is the very thing that our Author doth in this present Treatise: for as he labourerth to disrobe, as it were, the lovers of vertue, and turne them out of their habit of perverse ignorance, wherewith most part of the world is alwaies clad: so he is desirous to keep them from putting on the habiliments and garments of pride and vaine ostentation, that they might be arrayed with the apparel of vertues in such sort, that in taking knowledge of that good whereof they have already some part, they might endeavour and do what they can to get a greater portion from day to day, untill they come unto an assured contentment wherein they may rest. Then teacheth he how to know what a man hath profited in the schoole and exercise of vertue, shewing that he ought to consider first, whether he recule from vice by little and little: wherein he consulteth the opinion of the Stoicks, who imagined that no man was good, unlesse he became vertuous all at once. This done, he adjoyneth foure rules to know the said profit and progresse in vertue, to wit: When we perceiue our heart to tend unto good without any intermission: When our affection redreth and regaineth the time that is lost, growing so much the more as it was before stained and hindered: When we begin to take our whole pleasure and delight therein: Lastly, When we surmount nad overcome all impeachments that might turne us aside out of the way of vertue. After all this he enueth into the matter more specially, and sheweth how a man is to employ himselfe in the study of wisdom: what vices he ought to flie: wherein his mind and spirits should be occupied: and the profit that heist reape and gather from Philosophers, Poets, and Historians. Item, with what affection we ought to speake in the presence of our neighbours, whether it be publicly, or in private: of what sort our actions should be: and to what end and scope we are to adresse and direct them, giving a lustre unto all these discourses by excellent similitudes: taxing and reproving the faults committed ordinarily by them who make a certaine semblance and outward shew of aspiring unto vertue. Having thus discoursed of these points afore said, he propoeth and setteth down againe diuerse rules which may reioyce us in this advancement and proceeding forward of ours in goodnesse, namely, That we ought to love reprehensions: to take heed to our own dreames: to examine our passions, and so to hope well, if we perceiue that they waxe mild and gentle to imitate good things: in no wise to heare any speech of euill: to take example by the best persons, to reioyce and be glad, to haue witnesses and beholders of our goodwill and intention: and not to esteeme any sin or trespasses small but to avoid and shun them all: last of all, he closeth up his treatise with an elegant similitude, wherein he discovereth and layeth open the nature as well of the vicious as the vertuous, thereby to make the meanes of aspiring and attaining unto vertue, so much the more amiable to each person.

## How a man may perceive his own proceeding and going forward in Vertue.

**I**T is not possible (my good friend *Sossius Senecio*) that a man by any meanes should haue a feeling in himselfe, and a conscience of his own amendment and progresse in vertue, if those good proceedings do not daily make some diminution of his folly, but that the vice in him weighing in equall balance against them all, do hold him down.

*Like as the lead plucks down the net,  
Which for to catch the fish was set.*

For so verily in the art of Musick or Grammar, a man shall neuer know how far he is proceeded, so long as in the studying and learning thereof, he diminish no part of his ignorance in those arts, but still findeth himselfe as unmusical and unlettered as he was before; neither the cure which the Physician employeth about his patient, if it worke no amendment at all, nor alleviation of the disease seeming in some sort to yield unto medicines and to slake, can procure any sensible difference and change unto a better state, before that the contrary disposition and habit be restored perfectly to the former health, and the body made found and strong againe. But certainly, as in these cases there is no amendment to be accounted of, if those that seeme to amend do not perceive the change by the diminution and remission of that which weighed them down, and find themselves to encline and bend (as it were) in a balance to the contrary: even so it fareth with those that make profession of philo-

philosophy: it cannot be granted that there is any progresse or sence at all of profiting, so long as the soule cast not off by little and little, and purge away her folly, but untill such time as she can attaine (forsooth) unto the soveraign and perfect good, continueth in the meane while fully possessed of vice and sin in the highest degree: for by this meanes it would follow, if at one instant and moment of time a wife man should passe from extreme wickednesse unto the supreme and highest disposition of vertue: That he had all at once and in the minute of an houres fled vice and cast it from him fully, whereof in a long time before he was not able to be rid of one little portion. But you know full well already, that those who hold such extravagant opinions as these, make themselves worke enough, and raise great doubts and questions about this point, namely, How a man should not perceive and feeble himselfe when he is become wise, and be either ignorant or doubtful that this growth and increase cometh in long processe of time by little and a little, partly by addition of some thing, and partly by subtraction of other, untill one arriveth gently unto vertue, before he can perceive that he is going toward it. Now if there were so quick and sudden a mutation, as that he who was to day morning most vicious, should become in the evening as vertuous; and if there ever were known to happen unto any man such a change, that going to bed a very foole, and so sleeping, should awake and rise a wife man, and taking his leave of yesterdaies follies, errors, and deceits, lay unto them:

*My lying dreames so vaine, ad v, ad y,*

*Nought worth you were, I now bath see and fur.*

Is it possible that such a one (I say) should be ignorant of this sudden change, and not perceive how great a difference in himselfe, nor feeble how wisdom all at once hath thus lightened and illuminated his soule: For mine own part, I would rather thinke that one upon earnest prayer transformed by the power of the gods from a woman to a man (as the tale goes of *Ceanus*) should be ignorant of this Metamorphosis, than he who of a coward, a foole & a dissolute or loose person become hardy, wise, sober and temperate: or being transported from a sensual and beastly life unto a divine and heavenly life, should not mark the very instant wherein such a change did befall. But well it was laid in old time: That the stone is to be applied and framed unto the rule, and not the rule or square unto the stone. And they (the Stoicks I meane) who are not willing to accommodare their opinions unto her things indeed, but wrest and force against the course of nature things unto their own conceits and suppositions, have filled all philosophy with great difficulties and doubtful ambiguities: of which this is the greatest: In that they will seeme to compell all men, excepting him only whom they imagine perfect, under one and the same vice in general: which strange supposition of theirs hath caused that this progresse and proceeding to vertue, called *ἡμετέριον*, seemeth to be a darke and obscure riddle unto them, or a meer fiction little wanting of extreme folly: and those who by the means of this amendment be delivered from all passions and vices that be, are held thereby to be in no better state, nor less wretched and miserable, than those who are not freed from any one of the most enormous vices in the world: and yet they repute and condemne their own selves: for in the disputations which they hold in their schooles, they set the injustice of *Aristides* in equal balance to that of *Phalaris*: they make the cowardice and feare of *Brasidas*, all one with that of *Dolon*; yea, and compare the folly or error of *Melinus* and *Plato* together, as in no respect different: howbeit, in the whole course of their life, and management of their affaires, they decline and avoid those as implacable and intractable: but these they use and trust in their most important businesses, as persons of great worth and regard: but we who know and see that in every kind of sin or vice, but principally in the inordinate and consulted state of the soule there be degrees according to more or lesse: and that herein differ our proceedings and amendments, according as reason by little and little doth illuminate, purge, and cleanse the soule in abating and diminishing evermore the viciofity thereof, which is the shadow that darkneth it, are likewise fully perswaded that it is not without reason to be assured, that men may have an evident sence and perceivance of this mutation, but as if they were raised out of some deep and darke pit, that the same amendment may be reckoned by degrees in what order it goeth forward. In which computation we may go first and forme it directly after this manner, and consider, whether like as they who under saile set their course in the maine and vaste ocean, by observing together with the length and space of time, the force of the wind that driveth them, do cast and measure how far they have gone forward in their voyage, namely, by a probable conjecture how much in such a time, and with such a gale of wind it is like that they may passe: so also in philosophy a man may give a guesse and conjecture of his proceeding and going forward, namely, what he may gaine by continual marching on still, without stay or intermission otherwhiles in the midst of the way, and then beginning afresh again to leap forward, but alwaies keeping one pace gaining and getting ground till by the guidance of reason. For this rule,

*If little still to little thou do add,*

*A heape at length, and wickle well be had.*

Was not given respectively to the increase of sums of money alone, and in that point truly spoken, but it may likewise extend and reach to other things, and namely, to the augmentation of vertue, to wit, when with reason and doctrine continuall use and custom is joyned, which maketh matter and is effectual to bring any work to end and perfection: whereas these intermissions at times without order and equality, and these coole affections of those that stupy philosophy, make

not only many staies and lets in proceeding forward (as it were) in a journey, but that which is worse, cause going backward, by reason that vice which evermore lies in wait to set upon a man that idly standeth still never so little haleth him a contrary way. True it is that the Mathematicians do call the Planets Stationarie, and say they stand still, while they cease to move forward: but in our progresse and proceeding in Philosophy, that is to say, in the correction of our life and manners, there can be admitted no intervall, no pause or cessation, for that our wit naturally being in perpetual motion in manner of a balance, alwayes calseth with the least thing that is, one way or other, willing of it selfe either to encline with the better, or else is forcibly carried by the contrary to the worse. If then according to the oracle delivered unto the inhabitants of *Cyrrus*, which willed them if they minded afterwards to live in peace, they should make war both night and day without intermission: thou find in thy selfe and thine own conscience, that thou hast fought continually with vice as well by nights as by day, or at least wile that thou hast not often left thy ward, and abandoned thy station in the garison, nor continually admitted the heralds or messengers between, coming from far (as it were) to parly and compound, to wit, pleasures, delights, negligences, and amusements upon other matters; by all likelihood thou maiest with confidence and alacrity be assured to go forward and make an end of thy course behind.

Moreover, say that there fall out some interruptions and staies between, that thou live not altogether canonically and like a philosopher: yet if thy latter proceedings be more constant than the former, and the fresh courses that thou takest longer than the other, it is no bad sign, but it testifieth, that by labour and exercise idleness is conquered, and sloath utterly chased away: whereas the contrary is a very ill sign, to wit, if by reason of many cessations, and those coming thick one after another, the heat of the former affection be cooled, languish, and weareth to nothing: for like as the shoot of a cane or reed, which hath the full strength and greatest force, putteth forth the first stem reaching out in length, straight, even, smooth, and united in the beginning, admitting few knots in great distances between, to stay and put back the growth and rising thereof in height: but afterwards as if it were checked to mount up aloft by reason of short wind and failing of the breath, it is held down by many knots, and those neare one to another, as if the spirit therein which coveerth upward found some impediment by the way, limiting it back, and causing it as it were to pant and tremble: even so as many as at firstooke long courses and made haft unto Philosophy or amendment of life, and then afterwards meete stonnes with stumbling blocks, continually turning them out of the direct way, or other means to distract and pluck them aside, finding no proceeding at all to better them, in the end are weary, give over, and come short of their journeyes end: whereas the other above-laid hath his wings growing still to help his flight, and by reason of the fruit which he findeth in his course goeth on apace, cutteth off all pretences of excuse, breaketh through all lets, (which stand as a multitude in the way to hinder his passage) which he doth by fine force and with an industrious affection to attaine unto the end of his enterprise. And like as to joy and delight in beholding of beauty present is not a sign of love beginning, for a vulgar and common thing this is, but rather to be grieved and vexed when the same is gone or taken away: even so many there be who conceive pleasure in philosophy, and make semblance as if they had a fervent desire to the study thereof: but if it chance that they be a little retired from it by occasion of other business and affairs, that first affection which they tooke unto it vanisheth away, and they can well abide to be without Philosophy:

*But he who feels indeed the prick,  
Of love that pierceth neare the quick,*

as one Poet saith: will seeme unto thee moderate and nothing hot in frequenting the philosophicall: he draweth and conferring together with thee about Philosophy: but let him be plucked from it, and hauled apart from thee, thou shalt see him enslaved in the love thereof, impatient, and weary of all other affairs and occupations: thou shalt perceive him even to forget his own friends, such a passionate desire he will have to philosophy. For we ought not so much to delight in learning and philosophy while we are in place, as we do in sweet odours, perfumes, and ointments, and when we are away and separated therefro, never grieve thereat, nor seeke after it any more: but it must imprint in our hearts a certaine passion like to hunger and thirst when it is taken from us, if we will profit in good earnest and perceive our own progresse and amendment: whether it be that marriage, riches, some friendship, expedition or warfare come between, that may drive him away and make separation, for the greater that the fruit is which he gathered by Philosophy, so much the more will the griebe be to leave and forgo it. To this first signe of progresse in Philosophy may be added another of great antiquity out of *Hesiodus*: which is it be not the very fame, certes it cometh neare unto it, and this he describeth after this sort, namely, When a man findeth the way no more difficult, rough and craggy, nor exceeding steep and upright, but easie, plaine, with a gentle descent, as being indeed laid even and smooth by exercise, and wherein now there begins light clearly to appeare and shine out of darkness, instead of doubts, ambiguities, errors, and those repentances and changes of mind incident unto those who first beake themselves to the study of Philosophy: after the manner of them who having left behind them a land which they know well enough, are troubled while they cannot descry and discover that for which they set saile and bend their course: for even so it is with these persons, who when they have abandoned these common and familiar studies

whereof

whereto they were inured before they came, to learne, apprehend, and enjoy better, oftentimes in the very middle of their course are carried round about, and driven to returne back againe the same way they came. Like as it is reported of *Sexius* a nobleman of *Rome*, who having given over the honourable offices and magistracies in the City, for love of Philosophy, afterwards finding himselfe much troubled in that study, and not able at the beginning to brooke and digest the reasons and discourses thereof, was so perplexed, that he went very neare to have thrown himselfe into the sea out of a Galley.

The fembable example we read in histories, of *Diogenes* the Sinopian, when he first went to the study and profession of Philosophy: for when about the same time it chanced that the Athenians celebrated a publicke solemnity with great feasting and sumptuous fare, with theatricall plaies and pastimes, meeting in companies and assemblies to make merry one with another with revels and dances all night long, himselfe in an odde corner of the market place lay lapped round in his cloaths, purposing to take a nap and sleep: where and when he fell into certaine fantasticall imaginations which did not a little trouble and trouble his braines, yea, and brake his heart, discouering thus in his head: That he upon no constraint or necessity, should thus willfully betake himselfe to a laborious and strange course of painfull life, sitting thus by himselfe moping, sequestered from all the world, and deprived of all earthly goods: In which thoughts and conceits of this heelped (as the report goeth) a little mouse creeping and running towards the crums that were fallen from his loafe of bread, and was very busie about them, whereupon he tooke heart againe, reproved and blamed his own feeble courage, saying thus to himselfe: What saide thou *Diogenes*? Seest thou not this silly creature what good cheare it maketh with thy leavings? How merry she is whiles she feedeth thereupon? And thou (like a trim man indeed as thou art) dost waile, weepe, and lament, that thou drinkest not thy selfe drunk as those do yonder: nor lie in soft and delicate beds richly let out with gay and costly furniture. Now when such temptations and distractions as these be, returne not often, but the rule and discourse of reason presently riseth up against them, maketh head, turneth upon them suddenly againe (as it were) in the chafe, and pursued in the rout by enemies, and so quickly discomfitteth and dispatheeth the anxiety and despaire of the mind, then a man may be assured that he hath profited indeed in the schoole of Philosophy, and is well settled and confirmed therein. But forasmuch as the occasions which do thus shake men that are given to Philosophy, yea, and otherwile plucke them a contrary way, do not only proceed from themselves by reason of their own infirmity and to fother strength; but the sad and serious counsels also of friends, together with the reprooves and contradictory assaults made upon them by adversaries, between good earnest and game, do mollifie their tender hearts, and make them to bow, bend, and yield, which otherwile have been able in the end to drive some altogether from Philosophy, who were well entered therein: It may be thought no small signe of good proceeding, if one can endure the same meekely without being moved with such temptations, or any waies troubled and pinched when he shall heare the names and surnames of such and such companions and equals otherwise of his, who are come to great credit and wealth in Princes Courts; or be advanced by marriages; matching with wives who brought them good dowries and portions; or who are wont to go into the Common Hall of a City, attended upon and accompanied with a traine and troupe of the multitude, either to attaine unto some place of government, or to plead some notable cause of great consequence: for he that is not disquieted, astonished, or overcome with such assaults; certaine it is, and we may be bold to conclude that he is arrested (as it were) and held sure as he ought to be by Philosophy. For it is not possible for any to cease affecting and loving those things, which the multitude do so highly honour and adore, unless they be such as admire nothing else in the world but vertue. For to brave it out, to contest, and make head against men, is a thing incident unto some by occasion of choler, unto others by reason of folly; but to contemne and despise that which others esteeme with admiration, no man is able to performe, without a great measure of true and resolute magnanimity: In which respect such persons comparing their state with others magnifie themselves, as *Solon* did in these words:

*Many a wicked man is rich,  
And good men there be many poore:  
But we will not exchange with fish,  
Nor give our goodnesse for their store,  
For vertue eye is durable,  
Whereas riches be mutable.*

And *Diogenes* compared his peregrination and sitting from the City of *Corinth* to *Athen*, and againe his removing from *Thebes* to *Corinth*, unto the progresse and changes of abode that the great King of *Persia* was wont to make; who in the Spring season held his Court at *Susa*; in Winter, kept house at *Babylon*; and during Summer, passed the time and sojourned in *Media*. *Agesilaus* hearing upon a time the said King of *Persia* to be named, The Great King: And why (quoth he) is he greater than my selfe? Unless it be that he is more iust and righteous. And *Aristotle* writing unto *Antipater* as touching *Alexander* the Great, said, That it became not him only to vaunt much and glorifie himselfe for that his dominions were so great, but also any man else hath no lesse cause who is instructed in the true knowledge of the gods. And *Zeno* seeing *Theophrastus* in great admiration, because he had many scholars: Indeed (quoth he) his auditory or quire is greater than mine,

but mine accordeth better and makes sweeter harmony than his. When as therefore thou hast grounded and established in thine heart that affection unto Vertue, which is able to encounter and stand against all external things, when thou hast voided out of thy soule all enuies, jealousies, and what affections (soever are wont either to tickle or to fret, or otherwise to depresse and cast downe the minds of many that have begun to professe Philosophy: this may serue for a great argument and token that thou art well advanced forward, and hast profited much: neither is it a small signe thereof, if thou perceivest thy language to be changed from that it was wont to be: for all those who are newly entered into the schoole of Philosophy (to speake generally) affect a kind of speech or stile which aimeth at glory and vaine ostentation: some you shall heare crowling aloud like cocks, and mounting up aloft by reason of their levity and haughty humour, unto the sublimity and splendor of physical things or secrets in nature: others take pleasure (after the manner of wanton whelps, as *Plato* saith) in tugging and tearing evermore whatsoever they can catch or light upon: they love to be doing with litigious questions, they go directly to darke problemes and fophtifical subtilties, and most of them being once plunged in the quillsters and quiddities of Logick, make that (as it were) a meanes or preparative to flesh themselves for Sophistry: Mary there be, who go all about collecting and gathering together sententious sayings and histories of ancient times: and as *Anacharsis* was wont to say: That he knew no other use that the Greeks had of their coyned peeces of money, but to tell and number them, or else to cast account and reckon therewith: even so do they nothing else but count and measure their notable sentences and sayings, without drawing any profit or commodity out of them: and the same betteth unto them which one of *Plato's* familiars applied unto his scholars by way of allusion to a speech of *Antiphanes*: this *Antiphanes* was wont to say in merriment: There was a City in the world, whereas the words so soone as ever they were out of his mouth, and pronounced, became frozen in the aire, by reason of the coldnesse of the place, and so when the heat of Summer came to thaw and melt the same, the inhabitants might heare the talke which had been uttered and delivered in Winter: even so (quoth he) it is with many of those which come to heare *Plato* when they be young: for whatsoever he speaketh and readeth unto them, it is very long ere they understand the same, and hardly when they become old men: and even after the same sort it fareth with them also be old, who stand thus affected universally unto Philosophy, until their judgement being well settled and grown to found resolution, begin to apprehend those things which may deeply imprint in the mind a morall affection and passion of love, yea, and to search and trace those speeches, whereof the trades (as *Aristop* was wont to say) lead rather in, than out. For like as *Sophocles* said merrily upon a time, by way of derision: That he would faine cut off the haughty and lately invention of *Æschylus*, and then abridge his affected, curious, and artificial disposition, and in the third place change the manner and forme of his elocution, which is most excellent, and full of sweet affections: even so, the students in Philosophy, when they shall perceive that they passe from orations exquisitely penned and framed for ostentation in frequent and solemne assemblies, unto morall speeches, and those that touch the quick, as well the mild and gentle motions, as the hot and violent passions of the mind, then begin they indeed to lay downe all pride and vanity, and profit truly in the schoole of Philosophy.

Consider then, not only in reading the works of Philosophers, or in hearing their lectures, first and foremost, whether thou art not more attentive to the words than to the matter: or whether thou be not carried with a greater affection to those who deliver a more subtil and curious composition of sentences, than such as compile profitable, commodious, substantial and fleshy matters (if I may so say) but also in perusing Poems, or taking in hand any history observe well and take heed, that there escape thee not any one good sentence tending properly to the reformation of manners, or the alleviation of passions: for like as (according to *Simondez*) the Bee setteth upon flowers for to suck out of it the yellow honey, whereas others love only their colour or pleasant sent, and neither care nor seeke for any thing else therout: even so, when other men be conversant in Poems for pleasure only and pastime, thou finding and gathering somewhat out thereof worth the noting, shall seeme at the first sight to have some knowledge already thereof by a certaine custome and acquaintance with it, and a love taken unto it as a good thing and familiar unto thee. As for those that read the books of *Plato* and *Xenophon*, in no other regard but for the beauty of their gallant stile, seeking for nought else but for the purity of speech, and the very natural Atticke language, as if they went to gather the thin dew or tender mosse or downe of herbs: What will you say of such? But that they love physick drugs, which have either a lovely colour, or a pleasant smell only: but otherwise the medicinable vertues thereof and properties either to purge the body or mitigate any paines, they neither desire to know nor are willing to use.

Moreover, such as are proceeded farther, yet profited more, have the skill and knowledge how to reape fruit not only out of words spoken or books written, but also to receive profit out of all sights, spectacles, and whatsoever things they see, gathering from thence whatsoever is fit and commodious for their purpose: as it is reported of *Æschylus* and other such as he: For *Æschylus* being upon a time at the Isthmian games, beheld the fight of the sword-fencers that fought at sharpe, and when one of the said champions had received a grievous wound, whereupon the whole theater set up a cry, he jogging one that was by him (named *Iohn of Chios*) See you not (quoth he) what use and exercise is able to do? The party himselfe that is hurt saith never a word, but the lookers on cry out,

*Brafides*

*Brafides* chanced among drie figs to light upon a silly mouse that bit him by the finger, and when he had shaken her off and let her go, laid thus to himself: See how there is nothing so little and so feeble, but it is able to make shift and save its life, if it dare only defend it self. *Digenes* when he saw one make meane to drink out of the ball of his hand, cast away the dish or cup that he carried in his budget. Lo, how attentive taking heed and continuall exercise maketh men ready & apt to mark, observe and learn from all things that make any way for their good. And this they may rather do when they joyn words and deeds together, not only in that sort (as *Thucydides* speaketh of) by meditating and exercising themselves with the experience of present perils, but also against pleasures, quarrels, and alterations in judgements about defences of causes and magistracies: as making proof thereby of the opinions that they hold, or rather by carriage of themselves, teaching others what opinions they are to hold. For such as yet be learners, and notwithstanding that, intermeddle in affairs like pragmatical persons, spying how they may catch any thing out of Philosophy, and go therewith incontinent y in manner of jugglers with their boxe, either into the common place and market, or into the school which young men frequent, or else to Princes tables, there to set them abroad: are not to think them Philosophers: nor more than those to be Physicians, who only sell medicinable spices, drugs or compound confections: or to speak more properly, such a sophister or counterite philosopher as this, resembleth the bird that *Homer* describeth, which forthwith, so soon as he hath gotten any thing, carrieth it to his Scholars (as the said bird doth in her mouth convey meat to her naked young ones that cannot flie.)

And so him self he doth beguile

And thereby take much harm the while.

converting and distributing naught of all that which he hath gotten to his own nourishment: nor so much as concocting and digesting the same: and therefore we ought of necessity to regard and consider well whether we use any discourse and place our words so, that for our selves they may do good: and in regard of others, make no shew of vain-glory nor ambitious desire to be known abroad, but only of an intention rather to hear, or else to teach.

But principally we are to observe whether our wrangling humour and desire to be cavilling about questions disputable, be allayed in us or no, as also whether we have yet given over to devillish reasons and arguments to assail others: like as champions armed like hircubats of tough leather about their arms and bals in their hands, to annoy their concurrents, taking more pleasure and delight to tell and astonish with one rap our adversary, and so to lay him along on the earth, than to learn or teach him: for surely modesty, mildnesse and courtesie in this kind will do well: and when a man is not willing to enter into any conference or disputation, with a purpose to put down and vanquish another, nor to break out into fits of choler, nor having excited his adversary to be ready as they say to tread and trample him under foot, nor to feel deceived and discontent if himself have the foil and be put to the worst, be all good signes of one that hath sufficiently profited. And this shewed *Aristippus* very well upon a time when he was so hardly pressed and overlaid into a certain disputation, that he knew not what answer to make presently unto his adversary, a jolly bold and audacious sophister, but otherwise a brain-sick fool and without all judgement: for *Aristippus* seeing him to vaunt himself puffed up with vain glory, that he had put him to a non plus: Wel (quoth he) I see that for this time I go away with the worse, but surely when I am gone I will sleep more soundly and quietly than you that have gotten the better. Moreover we may also prove and sound our selves, whether we have profited or no, even whiles we speak in publick place: namely, if neither upon the sight of a greater audience than we looked for, we shrink nor for fear and false heart, nor contrariwise be discouraged to see fewer come to hear our exercises than we hoped for: ne yet when we are to make a speech to the people, or before a great magistrate, we seeke the opportunity thereof, for that we have not well premeditated thereof before, nor come provided of apt words to declare our mind, a thing that by report befell unto *Demosthenes* and *Alcibiades*: for *Alcibiades* he was passing ingenious and inventive of matter, so he wanted audacity, and was not so ready as some other to utter the same, but troubled effusions in his pleading and delivery of it, inasmuch as many times in the very mids of his oration he would be out and to seek for a proper and fit term to expresse the conception of his mind, or else to recover that word again which was slipped and escaped out of his memory. As for *Homer*, he had such an opinion of his own perfection, and his poetical vein in the rest of all his work, that he stuck not to set down the very first vertice of his poeme defective in measure, and not answerable to the rules of versifying. So much the rather therefore likely it is, that they who set nothing before their eyes, nor aim at ought else but vertue only and honesty, will make use of the present occasion and the occurrence of affaires, fall out as they will, without regard of applause, hissing or any other noise whatsoever in token of liking or disliking their speech.

Now every man ought to consider not only his own speeches, but also his actions, namely, whether they carry with them more profit and found truth, than vain pomp and ostentation: for if the true love indeed of yong folk, man or woman, requireth no witnesses, but resteth in the private contentment and enjoying of the sweet delights, although the same were performed, and their desires fully accomplished secretly between them without the privy of any person: how much more credible is it, that that he who is enamoured of honesty and wisdom, using the company and fellowship familiarly of vertue by his actions, & enjoying the same, shall find in himself without saying one word

an exceeding great contentment, and demand no other hearers or beholders but his own confidence? For like as he was but a vainfool who called unto his maid in the house and cryed with a loud voyce; *Dionysius*, come and see I am not proud and vain-glorious now as I was wont to be; even so he that hath done some virtuous and commendable act, and then goes forth to tell it abroad & spread the fruit thereof in every place, certain it is that such an one regards (in outward vanities, and is carried with a covetous desire of vain-glory, neither hath he ever had as yet a true sight indeed and perfect vision of vertue, but only a fantastical dream of her, imagining as he lies asleep, that he seeth some wandering shadow and image thereof, and then afterward representeth thus unto his view that which he hath done, as a painted Table to look upon. Well then, it is the property of him that proceedeth in vertue, not onely when he hath bestowed some thing upon his friend, or done a good turn unto one of his familiars, for to make no words thereof; but also when he hath given his voyce justly, or delivered his opinion truly, among many others that are unjust and untrue; or when he hath flatly denied the dishonest request, or stoutly crossed a bad motion of some rich Man, great Lord or mighty Magistrate; or refused gifts and bribes; or proceeded so farre that being athirst in the night he hath not drunk at all; or hath refused to kisse a beautiful boy or fair maiden, and turned away from them coming toward him as *Agessilaus* did; to keep all this to himself and say nothing. For such a one is content to be proved and tryed by his own self, not letting light by that trial and judgement, but joying and taking delight in his conscience, as being a sufficient witness and beholder, both of good things, and commendable actions; sheweth that reason hath turned in, to lodge and keep residence with him, that it hath taken deep root there: and as *Democritus* saith: That he is well framed, and by custome brought to rejoyce & take pleasure in himself. And like as Husbandmen are more glad and willing to see the ears of corn hang down their heads, and bend toward the earth, than those who for their lightness stand straight, upright, and staring aloft; for that they suppose such ears are empty, or have little or nothing in them, for all their fair shew; even so, among young men, students in Philoophie, they that have least in them of any weight, & be most void, be those that are at the very first most confident, set the greatest countenance, carry the biggest port in their gate, and have the boldest face, shewing therein how full they are of pride in themselves, contempt of all others, and sparing of none: but afterwards as they begin to grow on and burnish, furnishing and filling themselves with the fruits indeed of reason and learning, then and never before, they lay away these proud looks, then down goes this vain pride and outward ostentation. And like as we see in vessels, whereinto men use to pour in liquor, according to the quantity & measure of the said liquor that goeth in, the air which was there before flieth out; even so to the proportion of those good things which are certain and true indeed, where with men are replenished, their vanity giveth place, all their hypocricie vaniseth away, their swelling and puffing pride doth abate and fall, and giving over them to stand upon their goodly long beards and side robes, they transmute the exercise of outward things into the mind and soul within, using the sharp bit of bitter reprehension principally against themselves. And as for others, they can finde in their hearts to devile, converse, and talk with them more graciously and with greater countenance, the manner of Philoophie, and reputation of Philosophers, they do not usurp nor take upon them, neither do they use it as their addition in former time; and if haply one of them by some other be called by that name, he will not answer to it; but if he be a young gentleman indeed, after a smiling and pleasant manner, yea, and blushing withall for shame, he will say thus out of the Poet *Homer*:

*I am no God nor heavenly sight:  
Why dost thou give to me their right?*

For true it is as *Eschylus* saith:

*A darts'ell young if she have known,  
And tasted man once carnally;  
Her eye doth it bewray anon,  
It sparkles fire suspiciously.*

But a young man having truly tasted the profit and proceeding in Philoophie, hath these signes following him, which the Poetesse *Sappho* setteth down in these verses:

*When I you see, what do I ail?  
First suddenly my voice doth fail,  
And then like fire a colour red,  
Under my skin doth run and spread.*

It would so you good to view his settled and stayed countenance, to behold the pleasant and sweet regard of his eye, and to hear him when he speaketh: for like as those who are professed in any confraternity of holy mysteries, at their first assembly and meeting together, hurry in tumultuous sort with great noise, in such as they thrust and throng one another; but when they come to celebrate the divine service thereto belonging, and that the sacred reliques and ornaments are once shewed, they are very attentive with reverent fear and devout silence; so, at the beginning of the study of Philoophie, and in the very entry (as it were) of the gate that leadeth unto it, a man shall see much ado, a loud stirre, great audaciousness, insolency and jangling words more than enough; for that some there be, who would intrude themselves rudely, and thrust into the place violently, for the greedy desire they have to winne reputation and credit: but he that is on the within and seeth the great light

as if the sanctuaries and sacred cabinets or tabernacles were set open, anon he putteth on another habit, and a divers countenance with silence and astonishment, he becometh humble, pliable and modest, ready to follow the discourse of reason and doctrine, no less than the direction of some god. To such as these, me thinks, I may do very well to accommodate that speech which *Menedemus* sometime in mirth spake pleasantly: Many there be that fall to *Athenes* (quoth he) for to go to school there, who when they come first thither seem \* *Sophi*, that is bewile, and afterwards prove \* *Philosophi*, that is, lovers of wisdom: then of Philosophers they become \* *Sophisters*, that is, Professors and Readers; until in process of time they grow to be \* *Idiot*s, that is to say, ignorant and fools to see to: for the neerer that they approach to the use of reason and to learning indeed, the more do they abridge the opinion that they have of themselves, and lay down their presumption. Among those that have need of physick, some that are troubled with the tooth-ach, or have a felon or whitelaw on their finger, go themselves to the Physician for to have remedy: others who are sick of an ague send for the Physician home to their houses, and desire to be eased and cured by him; but those that are fallen either into a fit of melancholy, or phrensie, or otherwise be distracted in their brains and out of their right wits, otherwhiles will not admit or receive the Physicians, although they came of themselves uncalled, but either drive them out of doors, or else hide themselves out of their sight, and so farre gone they be and dangerously sick, that they feel not their own sickness; semblably of those who sinne and do amiss, such be in their horrible and unfixable, who are grievously offended and angry, yea, and immortal hatred with those who seem to admonish and reprove them for their mis-behaviour: but such as will abide them, and are content to receive and entertain them, be in better state and in a readier way to recover their health: may he that yeeldeth himself to such as rebuke him, confessing unto them his errors, discovering of his own accord his poverty and nakednesse, unwilling that anything as touching his state should be hidden, not loving to be unknown and secret, but acknowledging and avowing all that he is charged with, yea, and who prayeth a man to check, to reprove, to touch him to the quick, and to crave help for help: certainly herein he sheweth no small sign of good progresse and amendment: according to that which *Diogenes* was wont to say: He that would be saved (that is to say) become an honest man, had need to seek either a good friend or a sharp and bitter enemy, to the end that either by gentle reproof and admonition, or else by a rigorous cure of correction, he may be delivered from his vices. But how much sooner a man in a glorious bravery sheweth to those that be abroad either a foul and thred-bare coat, or a steined garment, or a rent shoo, or in a kind of presumptuous humility mocketh himself, in that peradventure he is of a very low stature, crooked or bunch-backed, and thinketh herein that he doth a worthy and doughty deed: but in the mean while covereth and hideth the ordures and filthinesse of his vile life, cloaketh the villanous enormities of his manners, his envy, maliciousnesse, avarice, sensual voluptuousnesse, as if they were deadly botches or ugly ulcers, suffering no body to touch them, nay, nor so much as to see them, and all for fear of reproof and rebuke, certes, such a one hath profited but a little, or to speak more truly, never a whit at all, but he that is ready to encounter and set upon these vices; and either is willing and able (which is the chief and principall) to chastise and condemn, yea, and put himself to sorrow for his faults; or if not so, yet in the second place at the least can endure patiently, that another man by his reprehensions and remonstrances should cleanse and purge him: certes evident it is, that such an one hateth and detesteth wickednesse indeed, and is in the right way to shake it off and verily, we ought to avoyd the very name and appearance onely thereof, and to be ashamed if to be thought and reputed wicked: but he that grieveth more at the substance of vice it self, than the infamy that cometh thereof, will never be afraid, but can very well abide both to speak hardly of himself, and to hear ill by others, so he may be the better thereby. To this purpose may very well be applied a pretty speech of *Diogenes* unto a certain yokner, who perceiving that *Diogenes* had an eye on him within a Tavern or Tipling-house, withdrew himself quickly more inward, for to be out of his sight: Never do so (quoth he) for the farther thou fliest backward, the more shalt thou be still in the Tavern; even so a man may say of those that be given to vice, for the more that any of them seemeth to deny his fault, the farther is he engaged, and the deeper funk in it; likeas poor men, the greater shew that they make of riches, the poorer they be, by reason of their vanity & bragging of that which they have not. But he that professeth indeed, hath for a good precedent & example, to follow that famous Physician *Hippocrates*, who both openly confessed and also put down in writing, that he was ignorant in the Anatomie of a mans head, and namely, as touching the eares or futures thereof; and this account will he make, that it were an unworthy indignity: if (when such a man as *Hippocrates* thought not much to publish his own error and ignorance, for fear that at others might fall into the like) he who is willing to save himself from perdition, cannot endure to be reproved, nor acknowledge his own ignorance and folly. As for those rules and precepts which are delivered by *Pyrro* and *Bion* in this case are not in my conceit the signes of amendment and progresse so much, as of some other more perfect and absolute habit rather of the mind; for *Bion* would and required his scholars and familiars that conversed with him, to think (and never before) that they had proceeded and profited in Philoophie, when they could wish as good a while to abide to hear men revile and rail at them, as if they spake unto them in this manner:



Good fir, you seem no person lewd,  
nor foolish for, twis;  
All hail, Fair chieue you and adieu,  
God send you alwayes blif.

And *Pyrrho* (as it is reported) being upon a time at Sea, and in danger to be cast away in a tempest, shewed unto the rest of his fellow passengers a porke feeding hard upon barley cast before him on Ship-board. Lo, my matters (quoth he) we ought by reason and exercise in Philosophie, to frame our selves to this paffe, and to attain unto such an impassibility, as to be moved and troubled with the accidents of fortune no more than this pig.

But consider furthermore, what was the conceit and opinion of *Zeno* in this point: for he was of mind that every man might and ought to know whether he profited or no in the School of vertue, even by his very dreams; namely, if he took no pleasure to see in his sleep any filthy or dishonest thing, nor delighted to imagine that he either intended, did or approved any lewd, unjust or outrageous action; but rather did behold (as in a settled calm, without wind, weather and wave, in the clear bottom of the water) both the imaginative and also the passive faculty of the soul, wholly overspread and lightened with the bright beams of reason: which *Plato* before him (as it should seem) knowing well enough, hath prefigured and represented unto us, what fantastical motions they be that proceed in sleep from the imaginative and sensual part of the soul given by nature to tyrannize and overrule the guidance of reason: namely, if a man dream that he seeketh to have carnall company with his own mother, or that he hath a great mind and appetite to eat all strange, unlawful and forbidden meats; as if then the said Tyrant gave himself wholly to all those sensualities and concupiscences, as being let loose at such a time, which by day the law either by fear or shame doth repress and keep down. Like as therefore beasts which serve for draught or saddle, if they be well taught and trained, albeit their Governors and Rulers let the Reins loose and give them the head, fling not our nor go aside from the right way, but either draw or make pace forward still, and as they were wont ordinarily keep the same train and hold on in one course and order, even so they whose sensual part of the soul is made trainable and obedient, tame, and well-schooled by the discipline of reason, will neither in dreams nor sicknesses easily suffer the lusts and concupiscences of the flesh, to rage or break out unto any enormities punishable by law; but will observe and keep still in memorie that good discipline and custome which doth ingenerate a certain power and efficacy unto diligence, whereby they shall and will take heed unto themselves; for if the mind hath been used by exercise to resist passions and temptations, to hold the body and all the members thereof as it were with bit and bridle under subjection, in such sort that it hath at command the eyes, not to shed tears for pity; the heart likewise not to leap and pant in fear: the naturall parts not to rise nor stirre but to be still and quiet without any trouble at all upon the sight of any fair and beautiful person, man or woman; how can it otherwise be but that there should be more likelihood that exercise having seized upon the sensual part of the soul and tamed it, should polish, lay even, reform, and bring unto good order all the imaginations and motions thereof, even as farre as to the very dreams and fantasies in sleep: as it is reported of *Scipio* the Philosopher, who dreamed that he saw *Neptune* expostulating with him in anger, because he had not killed a beef to sacrifice unto him as the manner was of other priests to do, and that himself nothing astonished or dismay'd at the said vision should answer thus again: What is that thou saist O *Neptune*? comest thou to complain indeed like a child (who pules and cries for not having a piece big enough) that I take not up some money at interest, and put my self in debt, to fill the whole City with the lent and favor of oyle and burnt, but have sacrificed unto thee such as I had at home according to my ability and in a mean? whereupon *Neptune* (as he thought) should merrily smile and reach forth unto him his right hand, promising that for his sake and for the love of him he would that year feed the Megarians great store of rain and good foison of sea-loaches or filthes called *Aphysa* by that means coming unto them by whole fouldes. Such then, as while they lie asleep have no illusions arising in their brains to trouble them, but those dreams or visions only as be joyous, pleasant, plain and evident, not painful, nor terrible, nothing rough, maligne, tortious and crooked; may boldly say that these fantasies and apparitions be no other then the reflexions and ryes of that light which rebound from the good proceedings in Philosophie: whereas contrariwise the furious pricks of lust, timorous frights, unmanly and base flights, childish and excessive joyes, dolorous sorrowes, and dolefull mones by reason of some piteous illusions, strange and absurd visions appearing in dreams, may be well compared unto the broken waves and billowes of the Sea beating upon the rocks and craggy banks of the shore; for that the soul having not as yet that settled perfection in it self which should keep it in good order, but holdeth on a course still according to good lawes only and sage opinions, from which when it is farthest sequestred and most remote, to wit, in sleep it suffereth it self to return again to the old wont and to be let loose and abandoned to her passions: But whether these things may be ascribed unto that profit and amendment whereof we treat, or rather to some other habitude, having now gathered more strength and firm constancy, not subject by means of reasons and good instruction to shaking, I leave that to your own consideration and mine together.

But now forasmuch as this total impassibility (if I may so speak) of the mind, to wit, a state so perfect that it is void of all affections, is a great & divine thing; & seeing that this profit and proceeding whereof

whereof we write consisteth in a kind of remission and mildnesse of the said passions, we ought both to consider each of them apart, and also compare them one with another, thereby to examine and judge the difference: conferre we shall every passion by it selfe, by observing whether our lusts and desires be more calme and lesse violent than in former time, by marking likewise our fits of feare and anger, whether they be now abated in comparison of thole before, or whether when they be up and enflamed, we can quickly with the help of reason remove or quench that which was wont to set them on worke or a fire: compare we shall them together, in case we examine our selves whether we have now a greater portion of grace and shame in us than of feare; whether we find in our selves emulation and not envy; whether we covet honour rather than worldly goods; and in one word, whether after the manner of musicians we offend rather in the extremity and excesse of harmony called *Dorian*, which is grave, solemne, and devout, than the *Lydian*, which is light and galliard-like, that is to say, inclining rather in the whole manner of our life to hardnesse and severity, than to effeminate softnesse; whether in the enterprise of any actions we shew timidity and slacknesse, rather than temerity and rashnesse, and last of all whether we offend rather in admiring too highly the sayings of men and the persons themselves, than in despising and debating them too low: for like as we say in physick, it is a good signe of health when distiles are not diverted and translated into the noble members and principall parts of the body; even so it seemeth that when the vices of such as are in the way of reformation and amendment of life change into passions that are more mild and moderate, it is a good beginning of ridding them away cleane by little and little.

The Lacedemonian *Ephori*, which were the high controllers of that whole State, demanded of the Musician *Phrynis*, when he had let up two stringes more to his seven stringed instrument, whether he would have them to cut in (under the trebles of the bases, the highest or the lowest)? but as for us, we had need to have our affections cut both above and beneath, if we desire to reduce our actions to a meane and mediocrity. And surely this progresse or proceeding of ours to perfection, profiteth rather to let down the lightest first, to cut off the extremity of passions in excesse, and to abate the acrimony of affections before we do any thing else, in which as saith *Sophocles*:

Folke foolish and incontinent,  
Most furious be and violent.

As for this one point, namely, that we ought to transfer our judgement to action, and not to suffer our words to remaine bare and naked words still in the aire, but reduce them to effect, we have already said, that is the chiefe property belonging to our progresse and going forward: now the principall arguments and signes thereof be these; if we have a zeale and fervent affection to imitate those things which we praise; if we be forward and ready to execute that which we so much admire, and contrariwise will not admit nor abide to heare of such things as we in our opinion dispraise and condemne. Probable it is and standeth with great likelihood that the Athenians all in general praised and highly esteemed the valour and prowesse of *Miltiades*; but when *Themistocles* said; that the victory and Trophee of *Miltiades* would not give him leave to sleep, but awakened him in the night, plain it is and evident that he not only praised and admired, but had a desire also to imitate him, and do as much himselfe; feebly, we are to make this reckoning, that our progresse and proceeding in vertue is but small, when it reacheth no farther than to praise only, and have in admiration that which good men have worthily done, without any motion and inclination of our will to imitate the same and effect the like. For neither is the carnall love of the body effectual, unless some little jealousie be mixed withall, nor the praise of vertue fervent and active, which doth not touch the quick, and prick the heart with an ardent zeale instead of envy, unto good and commendable things, and the same desirous to performe and accomplish the same fully. For it is not sufficient that the heart should be turned upside down only, as *Alcibiades* was wont to say by the words and precepts of the Philosopher reading out of his chaire, even until the teares gush out of the eyes: but he that truly doth profit and go forward, ought by comparing himselfe with the works and actions of good men, and those that be perfectly vertuous, to feele withall in his own heart, as well a displeasure with himselfe, and a grieft in conscience for that wherein he is short and defective, as also a joy and contentment in his spirit upon a hope and desire to be equal unto them, as being full of an affection and motion that never resteth and lieth still, but resembleth for all the world (according to the similitude of *Simonides*):

The sucking fawle that keeps just pace,  
And runs with dam in every place.

Affecting and desiring nothing more than to be wholly united and concreate with a good man, by imitation. For surely this is the passion peculiar and proper unto him that truly taketh profit by the study of Philosophie; To love and cherish tenderly the disposition and conditions of him whose deeds he doth imitate and desire to expresse, with a certaine good will to render alwaies in words, due honour unto them for their vertue, and assay how how to fashion and conforme himselfe like unto them. But in whomsoever there is inflord or infused (I wor not what) contentious humour, envy, and contestation against such as be his betters, let him know that all this proceedeth from an heart ulcerated with jealousie for some authority, might, and reputation, and not upon any love, honour, or admiration of their vertues. Now when as we begin to love good men in such sort, that (as *Plato* saith) we esteeme not only the man himselfe happy who is temperate; or thole blef-

fed who be the ordinary hearers of such excellent discourses which daily come out of his mouth; but also that we do affect and admire his countenance, his port, his gait, the cast and regard of his eye, his smile and manner of laughter, inasmuch as we are willing, as one would say, to be joyed, lodged, and glued unto him: then we may be assured certainly that we profit in vertue; yea, and so much the rather, if we have in admiration good and virtuous men, not only in their prosperity, but also (like as amorous folke are well enough pleased with the liping or flammering tongue; yea, and do like the pale colour of these whom for the flower of their youth and beauty they love and think it becometh them, as we read of *Lady Panthea*, who by her teares and sad silence, all heavy, afflicted and blubbered as she was, for the dolor and sorrow that the losse of her husband, seized *Araspe* so as he was enamoured upon her) in their adversity, so as we never flatter back for feare, nor dread the banishment of *Aristides*, the imprisonment of *Anaxagoras*, the poverty of *Socrates*, or the condemnation of *Phocion*, but repute their vertue, defensible, lovely, and amiable, even with all these calamities, and run directly toward her for to kisse and embrace her by our imitation, having alwaies in our mouth at every one of these crosse accidents this notable speech of *Euripides*:

*Oh how each thing doth well become,  
Such generous hearts both all and same!*

For we are never to feare or doubt that any good or honest thing shall ever be able to avert from vertue this heavenly inspiration and divine infinit of affection, which not only is not grieved and troubled at those things which seeme unto men most full of misery and calamity, but also admireth and desireth to imitate them. Hereupon also it followeth by good consequence, that they who have once received so deep an impression in their hearts, take this course with themselves: That when they begin any enterprise, or enter into the administration of government, or when any sinister accident is presented unto them, they let before their eyes the examples of those who either presently are, or heretofore have been, worthy persons, discoursing in this manner: What is it that *Plato* would have done in this case? What would have *Epaminondas* laid to this? How would *Lycurgus* or *Agesilaus* have behaved themselves herein? After this sort (I say) will they labour to frame, compose, reforme, and adorne their manners, as it were, before a mirror or looking-glasse, to wit, in correcting any unbecomely speech that they have let fall, or repressing any passion that hath risen in them. They that have learned the names of the demi-gods called *Idæ Dætyli*, know how to use them as counter-harmonies, or preservatives against sudden frights, pronouncing the same one after another readily and ceremoniously; but the remembrance and thinking upon great and worthy men represented suddenly unto those who are in the way of perfection, and taking hold of them in all passions and complexions which shall encounter them, holdeth them up and keepeth them upright, that they cannot fall; and therefore this also may goe for one argument and token of proceeding in vertue.

Over and besides, not to be so much troubled with any occurrent, nor to blush exceedingly for shame as before-time, nor to seeke to hide or otherwise to alter our countenance or any thing else about us, upon the sudden coming in place of a great or sage personage unexpected, but to persist resolute, to go directly toward him with bare and open face, are tokens that a man seeth his conscience settled and assured. Thus *Alexander the Great* seeing a messenger running toward him apace with a pleasant and smiling countenance, and stretching forth his hand as if to him: How now good fellow (quoth he) what good news canst thou bring me more, unless it be tidings that *Homer* is risen againe? Esteeming in truth that his worthy acts and noble deeds already achieved wanted nothing else, nor could be made greater than they were, but only by being consecrated unto immortality by the writings of some noble spirit; even so a young man that groweth better and better every day and hath reformed his manners, loving nothing more than to make himselfe known what he is unto men of worth and honour: to shew unto them his whole houle and the order thereof, his table, his wife and children, his studies and intents: to acquaint them with his sayings and writings; inasmuch as otherwise he is grieved in his heart to thinke and remember, either that his father naturall that begat him, or his master that taught him, are departed out of this life, for that they be not alive to see in what good estate he is in and to joy therewith; neither would he wish or pray to the gods for any thing so much, as that they might revive and come againe above ground, for to be spectators and eye-witnesses of his life and all his actions. Contrariwise, those that have neglected themselves and not endeavoured to do well, but are corrupt in their manners, cannot without feare and trembling abide to see those that belong unto them, no nor so much as to dreame of them. Add moreover if you please, unto that which hath been already said, thus much also for a good token of progresse in vertue: When a man thinketh no sin or trespass small, but is very careful and wary to avoid and shun them all. For like as they who despaire ever to be rich, make no account at all of saving a little expence; for thus they think: That the sparing of a small matter can add no great thing unto their stock to heap it up; but contrariwise, hope when a man sees that he wanteth but a little of the marke which he footeeth at, causeth that the nearer he cometh thereto, his covetousnesse is the more; even so it is in those matters that pertaine to vertue: he who giveth not place much, nor proceedeth to these speeches: Well, and what shall we have after this? Be it so now: It will be better againe for it another time, and such like: but alwaies taketh heed to himselfe in every thing; and whensoever vice insinuating it selfe into the least sin and fault that is, seemeth to tend

tend and suggest some colourable excuses for to crave pardon, is much discontented and displeased; he (I say) giveth hereby good evidence and proove that he hath a houle within cleane and neat, and that he cannot endure the least impurity and ordure in the world to defile the same: For (as *Achylus* saith) an opinion conceived once, that nothing that we have is great and to be esteemed and reckoned of, causeth us to be careless and negligent in small matters. They that make a palisado rampier, or rough mud wall, are not much to put into their work any wood that cometh next hand, neither is it greatly materiall to take thereto any rubbish or stone that they can meet with, or sit cometh into their eye, yea, and if it were a pillar fallen from a monument or sepulchre; sensibly do wicked and leud folke, who gather, thrumbe, and heape up together all sorts of gaine, all actions that be in their way, it makes no matter what; but such as profit in vertue, who are already planted, and whose golden foundation of a good life is laid (as it were) for some sacred temple or royall palace, will not take hand over head, any stuffe to build thereupon, neither will they worke by aime, but every thing shall be couched, laid, and ranged by line and level, that is to say, by the square and rule of reason: which is the cause (as we thinke) that *Polyclerus* the famous imager was wont to say: That the hardest peece of all the worke remained then to do, when the clay and the stile met together; signifying thus much: That the chiefe point of cunning and perfection was in the up-shot and end of all.

## Of Superstition.

### The Summary.

It should seeme that *Plutarch* composed this book in mockery and derision of the Jews whom he toucheth and girdeeth at in one place, and whose religion he minglet with the superstition of Pagans; to as much purpose (I wis) as that which he delivereth in a discourse at the table, where he comparreth the feast of the Tabernacles ordained by the eternal and almighty God, with the *Bacchanales* and such stinking ordures of idolaters; thinking verily that *Bacchus* was the god of the Jews. This slander of his and fustle calumniation ought to be imputed unto that ignorance of the true God, wherein *Plutarch* did remaine invincibly: yet is not he the man alone who hath derided and flouted the religion of the Jews; but such Coresses and derisions of the sages and wise men of this world, especially and above all when they are addressed against God, fall upon the head of the authors and devisers thereof, to their utter confusion. Moreover as touching this point, that some have thought this present discourse wherein he endeavourerth and labourerth to prove superstition to be more perillous than *Atheisme* is dangerous to be read, and containeth false doctrine; for that superstition of the twaine is not so bad: I say that in regard of the foolish devotion of *Plutarch*, and such as himselfe, which in no wise deserueth the name of religion, but is indeed a deviation and profanation of true piety and godlinesse, it were not amisse to asseme that superstition is more wretched and miserable than *Atheisme*, considering that lesse hurtfull and dangerous it is for a man not to have his mind and soule troubled at all and disgraced with a fantastical illusion of idolls and Chimeras in the aire, than to feare, honour, and serve them in such sort as justice and humanity should in manner be abolished by such superstitious idolaters. To be short, that it were better to defeat and overthrow at once all false gods, than to lodge any one in his head, for to languish thereby in perpetuall misery. Concerning true religion and the extremities thereof, the case is otherwise, and the question disputable, which we leave to Divines and Theologians to scan upon, to discombe and determine, since our intention and purpose werght us not at this time to discourse hereupon.

But to returne unto our author, considering that which we come to touch: *Atheists* cannot find how to prevale and maintaine their opinion: for sufficient proesse and accusation against themselves they carry every minute of an houre in their canterized and seared conscience; but he sheweth that to worship and serve many idols, is a thing without comparison more deplorable than to disavow and disclaime them all. But to prove this, after he had discovered the course of superstition and *Atheism*, and declared the difference of these two extremities, he saith in the first place, that superstition is the most unworthy and unbecomely of all the passions of the soule, proving the same by divers reasons, to wit, That the superstitious man is in continuall perplexity, he doerth to his own idoll no less than a cruel tyrant, and imagineth a thousand evils even after his death. After this he taketh a view of the *Atheist*, and opposeth him against the superstitious, respecting upon this point: that the superstitious person is more miserable of the twaine, as well in adversity as prosperity, and to confirme and satisfie his assertion, he sheweth down many arguments and notable examples. Moreover he sheweth that the superstitious person is an enemy to all duty or goodhead, he putteth cleane out of his heart, and doerth under foot all humanity and right conscience for to please his idols; and in one word, that he is the most wretched caitife in the world. And for a conclusion he exhorteth us for to flee superstition; that we hold our selves from falling into *Atheism*, keeping in the middle betweenes of which point every good man ought to consider and thinke upon well, and in good earnest, in these latter times of the world, albeit he who advertiseth us thereof in this place never knew what was true religion.

## Of Superstition.

**T**He ignorance and want of true knowledge, as touching the gods, divided even from the beginning into two branches, meeting on the one side with stubborn and obdurate natures, as it were, with a churlish peece of ground, hath in them engendered Impiety and Atheisme; and on the other side, lighting upon gentle and tender spirits like a moist and soft soile, hath bred and imprinted therein superstition: now as all error in opinion and judgment, and namely in these matters, is hurtfull and dangerous enough; so if it be accompanied with some passion of the mind it is most pernicious. For this we must thinke, that every one of these passions resembleth a deception that is feverous and inflamed; and like as the dislocations of any joyous in a mans body out of their place joyed with a wound be worse than others to be cured; even so the distortions and errors of the mind meeting with some passion are more difficult to be reformed. As for example, set case that one do thinke that the little mores and indivisible bodies called *Atomi*, together with voidnesse and emptinesse, be the first elements and principles whereof all things are made; certainly this is an erroneous and false opinion of his; howbeit the same breedeth no ulcer, no fever causing disordinate pulle in the arteries, nor yet any pricking and trouble some paine. Doth some one hold that riches is the soveraign good of man? This error and false opinion hath a rust, or canker, and a worne that eateth into the soule and transporteth the same besides it selfe, it suffereth it not to take any repose, it tingeth, it pricketh it and letteth it gadding, it throweth it down headlong (as it were) from high rocks, it stifeth and strangeth it, and in one word it bereaveth it of all liberty and franke speech. Again, are there some periwaded, that vertue and vice be substances corporall and materiall? This haply is a grosse ignorance and a foule error, howbeit not lamentable nor worthy to be deplored: but there be other judgements and opinions like unto this:

*O vertue wretched and miserable,  
Nought else but words and wind variables  
Thou serv'st I daily with all reverence,  
As if thou hadst been some real essence:  
Whereas injustice neglected I have,  
Which would have made me a man rich and brave;  
Intemperance she have I cast behind,  
Of pleasures all the number deare and kind.*

Such as these verily we ought to pity, yea, and withall to be offended at, because in whose minds they are once entered and seled they engender many maladies and passions like unto wormes and such filthy vermine. But now to come unto those which at this present are in question: Impiety or Atheisme, being a false perswasion and lewd belief, that there is no soveraign Nature most happy and incorruptible, seemeth by incredulity of a God-head to bring miscreants to a certaine stupidity, bereaving them of all sense and feeling, considering that the end of this mis-belief that therein no God is to be void altogether of feare: As for superstition according as the nature of the Greek word (which signifieth *Fear of the Gods*) doth imply, is a passionate opinion and turbulent imagination, imprinting in the heart of man a certain fearefulness, which doth abate his courage and humble him down to the very ground, whiles he is perswaded that they be gods indeed, but such as be noyome, hurtfull, and doing mischief unto men: In such sort, that the impious Atheist having no motion at all as touching the Deity and Divine power, and the superstitious person moved and affected thereto after a pervertie sort, and otherwise than he should, are both out of the right way. For ignorance as it doth ingenerate in the one an unbelief of that soveraign Nature which is the cause of all goodnesse; so it imprinteth in the other a misbelief of the Deity, as being the cause of evil: so that as it should seeme, Impiety or Atheisme is a false judgement and opinion of the Godhead; and superstition a passion proceeding from an erroneous perswasion. True it is, that all maladies of the soule are foule, and the passions naught; howbeit in some of them, there is a kind of (I wot not what) alacrity, haughtinesse, and jollity, proceeding from the lightnesse of the mind; and to say in a word, there is in a manner not one of them all, destitute of an active motion or other, serving for action: but a common imputation this is, and a blame laid generally upon all passions, that with their violent pricks (as it were) they incite, provoke, urge, compell, and force reason; only feare, which being no lesse void of audacity and boldnesse, than of reason; carrieth with it a certaine blockishnesse or stupidity, destitute of action, perplexed, idle, dead, without any exploit or effect whatsoever; whereupon it is named in Greeke *δωρα*, that is to say, a Bond, and *τάβη*, that is to say, Trouble, for that it both bindeth and also troubleth the mind. But of all sorts of feare, there is none so full of perplexity, none so unfit for action as that of superstition. The man who faileth not is not afraid of the sea: neither feareth he the wars who followeth not warfare; no more than he who keepeth home and stirreth not out of doores is afraid of thieves that rob by the high way side; or the poore man who hath nought to lose of the Sycophant or promotor; nor he that liveth in mean estate of envy; no more (I say) than he that is in *Galatia* feareth earth-quake, or in *Libania* thunder and lightning: but the superstitious man that stands in feare of the gods, feareth all things,

things, the land, the sea, the aire, the skie, darknesse, light, silence, and his very dreames. Servants whiles they be asleep, forget the rigour and hardnesse of their masters. Sleep eateth the chaines gives and fetters of those that lye by the heeles bound in prison; dolorous inflammations, smart wounds, painfull ulcers, and mortals that eate and consume the flesh, yeeld some ease and alleviation unto patients whiles they be asleep, according as he saith in the Tragedy:

*O sweet repose, O sleepe so gracious,  
Thou dost allay our maladies,  
How welcome art thou unto us,  
Bringing in season remedies?*

Thus said he: But superstition will not give man leave thus to say: For it alone maketh no truce during sleep; it permitreth not the soule at any time to breathe and take rest, no nor suffereth it to pluck up her spirits and take heart againe by removing out of her the unpleasant, tate and troublesome opinions as touching the divine power; but as if the sleep of superstitious folke were a very hell and place of damned persons, it doth present unto them terrible visions and monstrous fancies; it is filled with devils, fiends, and furies; which torment the poore and miserable soule; it driveth her out of her quiet repose by her own fearefull dreames, wherewith the whippeth, scourgeth, and punisheth her selfe (as if it were) by some other, whose cruell and unreasonable commandments she doth obey; and yet here is not all; for, that which worse is; such superstitious persons after they be awakened out of their sleep and risen, do not as other men, despise their dreames, and either laugh thereat or take pleasure therein, for that they see there is nothing true in all their visions and illusions which should trouble and terrifie them; but being escaped out of the shadow of those false illusions, wherein there is no harme or hurt at all, they deceive and trouble themselves in good earnest, spending their substance and goods infinitely upon magicians, jugglers, enchanters, and such like deceivers whom they light upon, who beare a man in hand and thus say unto him:

*If frighted thou be with fantasies in sleep,  
Or haunted with Meacates that beneath doth keep.*

Call for an old tree that tends thy backhouse, and plungeth selfe in the sea-water, and sit a whole day upon the ground;

*O Greeks, you that would counted be most wise,  
Thou barbarous and wicked soies devise.*

Namely, upon a vaine and foolish superstition, enjoying men to begrime and bewray themselves with dirt, to lie and wallow in the mire, to observe Sabbaths and cease from worke, to lie prostrate and groveling upon the earth with the face downward, to sit upon the ground in open place, and to make many strange and extravagant adorations. In times past the manner was, among those especially who would entertaine and observe lawfull musicke, to command those that began to play upon the harpe or citterne, to sing thereto with a just mouth, to the end they should speake no dishonest thing; and even we require and thinke it meet to pray unto the gods with a just and right mouth, and not to pry in the beast sacrificed, to look into the entrails, to observe whether the tongue thereof be pure and cleane; and in the meantime perverting and polluting our own tongues with strange and absurd names, infecting and defiling the same with barbarous tearmes, offending thereby the gods, and violating the dignity of that religion which is received from our ancestors, and authorized in our own Countrey. The Comical Poet said pleasantly in one Comedy, speaking of those who laid their beddies thick with gold and silver: Why do you make your sleep deare and costly unto your selves, which is the only gift that the gods have given us freely? Even so may a man very well say (and with great reason) unto those that are superstitious: Seeing that the gods have bestowed upon us sleep, for the oblivion and repose of our miseries, why maketh thou it a very hell and place of continuall and dolorous torment to thy poore soule, which cannot flye nor have recourse unto any other sleep but that which is troublesome unto thee? *Heracitus* was wont to say: That men all the whiles they were awake, enjoyed the benefit of no other world, but that which was common unto all; but when they slept every one had a world by himselfe: but surely, the superstitious person hath not so much as any part of the common world: for neither whiles he is awake leaured he the true use of reason and wisdom, nor when he sleepeth is he delivered from feare and feare; but one thing or other troubleth him still: his reason is asleep, his feare is always awake: so that neither can he avoid his own harme quite nor find any means to put it by, and turne it off: *Polyarches* the tyrant was dread and terrible in *Samos*; *Periander* in *Corinth*, but no man feared either the one or the other, who withdrew himselfe into any free city or popular State; as for him who standeth in dread and feare of the imperial power of the gods, as of some rigorous and inexorable tyranny; whether shall he retire and withdraw himselfe? Whether shall he flye? Where shall he finde a land, where shall he meet with sea, without a god? Into what secret part of the world (poore man) wilt thou beak ally selfe, where in thou mayest lye close and hidden, and be assured that thou art without the puissance and reach of the gods? There is a law that provideth for miserable slaves, who being so hardly intreated by their masters, are out of all hope that they shall be enfranchised and made free; namely, that they may demand to be sold againe, and to change their master, if haply they may by that means come by a better and more easie servitude under another: but this superstition alloweth us not that liberty to change our gods for the better; nay, there is not a god to be found

found in the world, whom a superstitious person doth not dread, considering that he feareth the tutelargods of his native country, and the very gods protectors of his nativity: he quaketh even before those gods which are known to be favours propitious and gracious; he trembleth for feare when he thinketh of them at whose hands we crave riches, abundance of goods, concord, peace, and the happy successe of the best words and deeds that we have. Now if these thinke that bondage is a great calamity, saying thus:

*O heavy crosse and weofull misery,  
Man and woman to be in thrall-estate:  
And namely, if their slavery  
Be under Lords unfortunate.*

How much more grievous, thinke you, is their servitude which they endure, who cannot flye, who cannot run away and escape, who cannot change and turne to another. Altars there be unto which bad servants may flye for succour; many sanctuaries there be and privileged Churches for thieves and robbers, from whence no man is so hardy as to pluck and pull them out. Enemies after they are defeated and put to flight, if in the very rout and chase they can take hold of some image of the gods, or recover some temple and get it over their heads once, are secured and assured of their lives; whereas the superstitious person is most affrighted, scared, and put in feare by that, wherein all others who be afraid of extremest evils that can happen to man repose their hope and trust. Never go about to put perforce a superstitious man out of sacred temples, for in them he is most afflicted and tormented. What needs many words? In all men death is the end of life; but it is not so in superstition, for it extendeth and reacheth farther than the limits and uttermost bounds thereof, making feare longer than this life, and adjoyning unto death an imagination of immortall miseries; and even then, when there seemeth to be an end and cessation of all sorrows and travells, be superstitious men perswaded that they must enter into others which be endless and everlasting: they dreame of (I wot not what) deep gates of a certaine *Pluto* or infernall God of hell, which open for to receive them; of fiery rivers alwaies burning; of hollow pulps and founts of *Stryx* to gape for them; of ugly and hideous darknesse to over-spread them, full of sundry apparitions; of gally ghosts and sorrowfull spirits, representing unto them grisly and horrible shapes to see, and as fearful and lamentable voices to heare: what should I speake of judges, of tormentors, of bottomless pits, and gaving caves, full of all sorts of torture and infinite miseries. Thus unhappy and wretched superstition, by feareing overmuch and without reason, that which it imagineth to be nought, never taketh heed how it submitteth it selfe to all miseries; and for want of knowledge how to avoid this passionate trouble, occasioned by the feare of the gods, forgeth and deviseth to it selfe an expectation of inevitable evils even after death. The impiety of an Atheist hath none of all this geere; most true it is, that his ignorance is unhappy, and that a great calamity and misery it is unto the soules, either to see amiss, or wholly to be blinded, in so great and worthy things, as having of manyes the principall and clearest of all, to wit, the knowledge of God extinct and put out; but surely (as I said before) this passionate feare, this ulcer and sore of conscience, this trouble of spirit, this servile abjection is not in his conceit; these go alwaies with the other, who have such a superstitious opinion of the gods. *Plato* saith that musick was given unto men by the gods, as a singular mean, to make them more modest and gracious, yea, and to bring them, as it were, into tune, and cause them to be better conditioned, and not for delight and pleasure, nor to tickle the eares; for falling out as it doth many times, that for default and want of the Muses and Graces, there is a great confusion and disorder in the periods and harmonies, the accords and consonances of the mind, which breaketh out other whiles outrageously by means of intemperance and negligence; musick is of that power that it setteth every thing againe in good order and their due place; for according as the Poet *Pindarus* saith:

*To what favour from above,  
God Juxiter doth cast us love,  
To that the voice melodious  
Of Muses seemeth adove.*

Insomuch as they fall into fits of rage therewith, and be very fell and angry; like as it is reported of tygers, who if they heare the found of drums or tabors round about them, will grow furious and starke mad, untill in the end they reare themselves in peeces: so that there cometh lesse harme unto them who by reason of deafnesse or hard hearing, have no sense at all of musick, and are nothing moved and affected therewith: a great infirmity this was of blind *Tiresias*, that he could not see his children and friends, but much more unfortunate and unhappy were *Athenus* and *Agave*, who seeing their children, thought they saw lions and tigers. And no doubt when *Hercules* fell to be enraged and mad, better it had been and more expedient for him, that he had not seennor known his own children, than so to deale with those who were most deare unto him, and whom he loved more than all the world besides, as if they had been his mortall enemies. Thinke you not then that there is the same difference between the passions of Atheists and superstitious folke? Atheists have no sight nor knowledge of the gods at all, and the superstitious thinke there are gods, though they be perswaded of them amiss; Atheists neglect them altogether as if they were none; but the superstitious esteeme that to be terrible, which is gracious and amiable; cruel and tyrant-like, which is kind and father-like; hurtfull and dammageable unto us, which is most careful of our good and pro-

fitrough, rigorous, savage and fell of nature, which is void of choler and without passion. And hereupon it is that they beleeve brasie-founders, cutters in stones, imagers, graveurs and workers in wax, who shape, and represent unto them the gods with bodies to likeness of mortall men, for such they imagine them to be, such they adorn, adore and worship, whiles in the mean time they despise Philosophers and grave personages of State and Government, who do teach and shew that the Majesty of God is accompanied with bounty, magnanimity, love and carefull regard of our good: so that as in the one sort we may perceive a certain senseless stupidity & want of belief in those causes from whence proceed all goodnesse; so in the other we may observe a distrustfull doubt and feare of those which cannot otherwise be than profitable and gracious. In sum, impiety and Atheism is nothing else but a meere want of feeling and sense of a deity or divine power, for default of understanding and knowing the sovereign good; and superstition is a heap of divers passions, suspecting and supposing that which is good by nature to be bad; for superstitious persons feare the gods, and yet they have recourse unto them; they flatter them, and yet blaspheme and reproach them; they pray unto them, and yet complain of them. A common thing this is unto all men, not to be alwaies fortunate, whereas the gods are void of sicknesse, not subject to old age, neither taste they of labour or pain at any time: and as *Pindarus* saith,

*Escape they do the passage of the first  
Of roaring Acheron, and live away in mirth,*

but the passions and affairs of men be intermedd with divers accidents and adventures which run as well one way as another. Now consider with me first and forme the Atheist in those things which happen against his mind, and learn his disposition and affection in such occurrences: if in other respects he be temperate and modest man, bear he will his fortune patiently without saying a word; seeke for aid he will and comfort by what means he can; but if he be of nature violent, and take his misfortune impatiently, then he directeth and opposeth all his plaints and lamentations against fortune and casualty: then he crieth out that there is nothing in the world governed either by justice or with providence, but that all the affairs of man run continually head-long to destruction: but the fashion of the superstitious is otherwise; for let there never so small an accident or mishap befall unto him, he sits him down sorrowing, and thereto he multiplieth and addeth other great and grievous afflictions, such as hardly be removed: he imagineth sundry terrors, fears, suspicions, and troublefome errors, giving himself to all kind of wailing, groaning, and dolefull lamentation: for he accuseth not any man, fortune, occasion, or his own self; but he blameth God as the cause of all, giving out in plain terms, that from thence it is that there falleth and runneth over him such a celestiall influence of all calamity and misery, contending in this wise, that an unhappy or unlucky man he is not, but one hated of the gods, worthily punished and afflicted, yea, and suffering all deservedly by that divine power and providence: now if the godlesse Atheist be sick, he discourtieth with himself and callet to mind his replections and full feedings, his surfeiting upon drinking wine, his disorders in diet, his immoderate travell and pains taken, yea, and his unusual and absurd change of eate, from that which was familiar, unto that which is strange and unnatural: moreover, if it chance that he have offended in any matter of government touching the State, incurred disgrace and an evil opinion of the People and Country wherein he liveth, or been falsely accused and slandered before the Prince or sovereign Ruler, he goeth no farther than so himself and those about him, imputing the cause of all thereto and to nothing else, and thus he reasoneth:

*Where have I been? what good have I done? and what have I not done?  
Where have I sinned? what duty begun, is left by me undone?*

whereas the superstitious person will think and say, that every disease and infirmity of his body, all his losses, the death of his children, his evil successe and infortunity in managing civill affairs of State, and his repulses and disgraces, are so many plagues inflicted upon him by the ire of the gods, and the very assaults of the divine justice; in somuch as he dare not go about to seek for help and succour, nor avert his own calamity; he will not presume to seek for remedie, nor oppose himself against the invasion of adverse fortune, for feare (forsooth) lest he might seem to fight against the gods, or to resist their power and will when they punish him: thus when he lieth sick in bed, he driveth his Physician out of the chamber, when he is come to visit him, when he is in sorrow, he thrusteth and locketh his door upon the Philosopher, that cometh to comfort him and giveth him good counsell; Let me alone (will he say) and give me leave to suffer punishment as I have deserved, wicked and profane creature that I am, accursed, hated of all the gods, demi-gods, and saints in heaven. Whereas if a man (who doth not believe nor is perswaded that there is a God) be otherwise in exceeding grief & sorrow, it is an ordinary thing with him to wipe away the tears as they gush out of his eyes, and trickle down the cheeks, to cause his hair to be cut, and to take away his mourning weed. As for a superstitious person: how should one speak unto him, or which way succour and help him? without the doors he sits clad in sackcloth, or else girded about his loines with patched clothes and tattered rags; oftentimes he will welter and wallow in the mire, confessing and declaring (I wot not) what finnes and offences he hath committed; to wit, that he hath eaten or drunk this or that, which his god would not permit; that he hath walked or gone some where whether against the will and leave of the divine power. Now, say he be of the best sort of these superstitious people, and that he labour but of the milder superstition; yet will he at least will fit within house, having about him a number of all kinds of sacrifices and sacred aspersions; ye shall have old witches come and bring

bring all the charmes, spels, and forceries they can come by, and hang them about his neck or other parts of his body (as it were) upon a stake, as *Bion* was wont to lay.

It is reported that *Tyribasus*, when he should have been apprehended by the Persians, drew his Cymiter, and (as he was valiant man of his hands) defended himself valiantly; but so loone as they that came to lay hands on him cried out and protested that they were to attack him in the Kings name, and by commission from his Majesty, he laid down his weapon aforesaid immediately, and offered both his hands to be bound and pinnioned. And is not this whereof we treat the memorable case? Whereas others withstand their adversity, repell and put back their afflictions, and work all the means they can for to avoid, escape, and turne away that which they would not have to come upon them. A superstitious person will heare no man, but speake in this wise to himselfe: Wretched man that thou art, all this thou sufferest at the hands of God, and this is befallen unto thee by his commandment, and the divine providence; all hope he rejecteth, he doth abandon and betray himselfe, and looke whosoever cometh to succour and help him, those he shunneth and repelleth from him. Many crosses there be and calamities in the world, otherwise moderate and tolerable, which superstition maketh mischievous and incurable.

That ancient King *Midas* in old time being troubled and disquieted much in his mind (as it should seeme) with certaine dreames and visions, in the end fell into, such a melancholy and despaire, that willingly he made himselfe away by drinking buls blood. And *Arifodemus* King of *Medians*, in that war which he waged against the *Lacedemonians*, when it hapned that the dogs yelled and howled like wolves, and that there grew about the altar of his house the herbe called *Dent de Chien*, or Dogs grass, whereupon the wilfards and soothsayers were afraid (as of some cruell prefiging evil) conceived such an inward griefe, and tooke to deep a thought, that he fell into desperation and killed himselfe. As for *Nicias* the Generall of the Athenian Army, haply it had been far better that by the examples of *Midas* and *Arifodemus* he had been delivered and rid from his superstition, than for feare of the shadow occasioned by the eclipse of the moone to have sitten still as he did and do nothing, untill the enemies environed and enclosed him round about; and after that forty thousand of Athenians were either put to the sword or taken prisoners to come alive into the hands of his enemies, and lose his life with shame and dishonour: for in the darknesse occasioned by the opposition of the earth just in the middle, between the sun and the moon, whereby her body was shadowed and deprived of light, there was nothing for him to feare, and namely at such a time, when there was cause for him to have stood upon his feet and served valiantly in the field; but the darknesse of blind superstition was dangerous to trouble and confound the judgement of a man who was possessed therewith, at the very instant, when his occasions required most the use of his wit and understanding:

*The sea already troubled is  
With billows blew within the sound,  
Up to the capes and cliffs arise  
Thick misty clouds which gather round  
About their tops, where they do fear,  
Fore-shewing shortly tempests great.*

A good and skilful Pilot seeing this, doth well to pray unto the gods, for to escape the imminent danger, and to invoke and call upon those Sainrs for help, which they after call Saviours: but all the while that he is thus at his devout prayers, he holdeth the helme hard, he jetteth down the crowe saile-yard,

*Thus having struck the maine saile down the mast,  
He escapes the sea, with darknesse overcast.*

*Hesiodus* giveth the husbandman a precept, before he begin to drive the plough or sow his seed:

*To Ceres chaste his vows to make,  
To Jove likewise god of his land,  
Forgetting not the while to take  
The end of his plough-taile in hand.*

And *Homer* bringeth in *Ajax* being at the point to enter into combat with *Hector*, willing the *Greeks* to pray for him unto the gods; but whiles they prayed, he forgot not to arme himselfe at all pieces. Semblably, *Agamemnon* after he had given commandment to his souldiers who were to fight,

*Each one his lance and spear to whet,  
His shield likewise fity to set.*

Then, and not before, prayeth unto *Jupiter* in this wise:

*O Jupiter vouchsafe me of thy graces  
Thy safely hall of Priamustance.*

For God is the hope of vertue and valour, not the pretence of sloth and cowardise. But the Jews were so superstitious, that on their Sabbath (sitting still even whiles the enemies reared their scaling ladders and gained the wals of their City) they never stirred foot, nor rose for the matter, but remained fast tied and inwrappd in their superstition as it were in a net. Thus you see what superstition is in those occurrences of times and affaires which succeed not to our mind, but contrary to our will

will (that is to say) in adversity: and as for times and occasions of mirth, when all things fall out to a mans desire, it is no better than impiety or atheisme: and nothing is so joyous unto man, as the solemnity of feastivall holidays, great feasts, and sacrifices before the temples of the gods, the mytical, and sacred rites performed when we are purified and cleaned from our sins, the ceremonial service of the gods when we worship and adore them; in which all, a superstitious man is no better than the Atheist: for make an Atheist in all these, he will laugh at them untill he be ready to go beside himselfe: these toys will let him (I lay) into a fit of Sardonian laughings, when he shall see their vanities; and otherwise he will not stick to lay softly in the care of some familiar friend about him: What mad folke be these? How are they out of their right wits, and enraged, who suppose that such things as these do please the gods? Setting this aside, there is no blame at all in him: As for the superstitious person, willing he is, but not able, to joy and take pleasure: for his heart is much like unto that City which *Sophocles* describeth in these verses:

*Which at one time is full of incense sweet,  
Rejoicing mirth with loud triumphant song,  
And yet the same doth show in every street  
All signes of griefe, with plumes and groanes among.*

He looketh with a pale face, under his chaplet of flowers upon his head; he sacrificeth, and yet quaketh for feare: he maketh his prayers with a trembling voice; he putteth incense into the fire, and his hand shaketh withall: to be short, he maketh the speech or sentence of *Pythagoras* to be vaine and foolish, who was wont to say: That we are then in best case when we approach unto the gods and worship them. For verily even then it is when superstitious people are most wretched and miserable, to wit, when they enter into the temples and sanctuaries of the gods, as if they went into the dens of beares, holes of serpents and dragons, or caves of whales and such monsters of the sea. I marvel much therefore at them, who call the miscreance and sin of Atheists, Impiety, and give not that name rather to superstition. And yet *Anaxagoras* was accused of impiety: for that he held and said that the sun was a stone: whereas never man yet called the *Cimmerians* impious or godlesse, because they suppose and beleve there is no Sun at all. What say you then? Shall he who thinketh that there be no gods at all be taken for a profane person and excommunicate? And shall not he who beleeveth them to be such as superstitious folke imagine them, be thought infected with more impious and wicked opinions? For mine own part, I would be better pleased and content, if men should say of me thus: There neither is nor ever was in the world a man named *Plutarch*, than to give out of me and say: *Plutarch* is an unconstant man, variable, cholericke, full of revenge for the least occasion that is, or displeased or given to grieve for a small matter; who if when you invite others to supper he be left out and not bidden, or if upon some businesse you be let and hindered, so that you come not to his doore for to visit him, or otherwise do not salute and speake unto him friendly, will be ready to eat your heart with salt, to set upon you with his fangs, and bite you, will not stick to catch up one of your little babes and worry him, or will keep some mischievous wild beast of purpose to put into your come-fields, your vineyards or orchards, for to devour and spoile all your fruits. When *Timotheus* the musician one day in an open Theater at *Athenes* chanted the praises of *Diana*, giving unto her in his song the attributes of *Thyas*, *Phaebus*, *Manus*, and *Lysias*, that is to say, Furious, Possessed, Enraged, and Starke mad; as Poets are wont to do. *Cineas* another minstrell or musician, rose up from out of the whole audience, and said thus aloud unto him: Would God thou hadst a daughter of those qualities. And yet these superstitious folke thinke the fame of *Diana*, yea, and worke to: neither have they a better opinion of *Apollo*, *Juno*, and *Venus*; for all of them they feare and tremble at. And yet what blasphemy uttered *Niobe* against *Latona*, like unto that which superstition hath perswaded foolish people to beleve of that goddesse? to wit, that the being displeased with the reproachfull worde that *Niobe* gave her, killed with her arrows all the children of that filly woman,

*Even daughters sixe, and sons as many just;  
Of ripe yeares all, no hit but dye they must.*

so insatiable was she of the calamities of another, so implacable was her anger. For grant it were so, that this goddesse was full of gall and choler: say, that she tooke an hatred to lewd and wicked persons, or grieved and could not endure to heare her selfe reproached, or to laugh at humane folly and ignorance; certes she should have been offended and angry, yea, and discharged her arrows upon these, who untruly impute and ascribe unto her that bitterness and exceeding cruelty, and stick not both to deliver in words, and also to set down in writing such things of her. We charge *Hecuba* with beastly and barbarous immanity, for saying thus in the last booke of *Homers* liads,

*O thus I could his liver get  
Amids his corpe, to bite and eat.*

As for the Syrian goddesse, superstitious folke are perswaded, that if any one do eat *Enchoises* of such little fish as *Aphyas*, she will likewise gnaw their legs, fill their bodies with ulcers, and putrifie or rot their liver. To conclude therefore, it is impiously done to blaspHEME the gods and speake badly of them: and is it not impious to thinke and imagine the same, considering that it is the opinion and conceit of the blasphemous and foule-mouthed, profane person which maketh his speech

speech to be reputed naught and wicked? For even we our selves detest and abhor foule language, for nothing so much as because it is a signe of a malicious mind; and those we take for to be our enemies who give out bad words of us, in this respect, that we suppose them to be faithlesse and not to be trusted, but rather ill affected unto us, and thinking badly of us. Thus you see what judgement superstition folke have of the gods, when they imagine them to be dull and blockish, treacherous and disloyal, variable and fickle minded, full of revenge, cruel, melancholick, and apt to fret at every little matter: whereupon it must needs follow, that the superstitious man doth both hate and also dread the gods: for how canst otherwise be, considering that he is perswaded that all the greatest calamities which either he hath endured in times past, or is like to suffer hereafter proceed from them: now whosoever hateth and feareth the gods he is no doubt their enemy: neither is it to be wondered at for all this, that although he stand in dread of them, yet he adoreth and worshippeth them, he prayeth and sacrificeth unto them, frequenteth duly and devoutly their temples, and is not willingly out of them: for do we not see it ordinarily that reverence is done unto tyrants, that men make court unto them, and cry, God save your grace: yea, and erect golden statues to the honour of them? howbeit as great devotion and divine honour as they do unto them in outward appearance, they hate and abhor them secretly to the heart. *Hermolau* courted *Alexander*, and was serviceable about him: *Pausanias* was one of the squires of the body to King *Philip*, and so was *Chereus* to *Caligula* the Emperour: but there was not of these but even when he served them said thus in his heart,

*Certes in case it did now lie in me,  
Of thee (thoutyran) revenged would I be.*

Thus you see the Atheist thinketh there be no gods: but the superstitious person witheth that there were none: yet he beleevev even against his will that there be, nay, he dare not otherwise do for feare of death. Now if he could (like as *Tantalus* desired to go from under the stone that hung over his head) be discharged of this feare which no lesse doth presse him down, surely he would embrace, yea, and thinke the disposition and condition of an Atheist to be happy, as the state of freedome and liberty: but now the Atheist hath no sparke at all of superstition, whereas the superstitious person is in will and affection a meer Atheist, howbeit weaker than to believe and shew in opinion that of the gods which he would and is in his mind. Moreover, the Atheist in no wise giveth any cause, or ministere occasion that superstition should arise: but superstition not only was the first beginning of impiety and Atheisme, but also when it is sprung up and grown doth patronize and excuse it, although not truly and honestly, yet not without some colourable pretence: for the Sages and wise men in times past grew not into this opinion, that the world was wholly void of a divine power and deity, because they beheld and considered any thing to be found fault withall in the heaven, some negligence and disorder to be marked, some confusion to be observed in the starres, in the times and seasons of the yeare, in the revolutions thereof, in the course and motions of the sun round about the earth; which is the cause of night and day, or in the nurture and food of beasts or in the yeerely generation and encrease of the fruits upon the earth: but the ridiculous works and deeds of superstition, their passions, worthy to be mocked and laughed at, their words, their motions and gestures, their charms, soxeries, enchantments, and magical illusions, their runnings up and down, their beating of drums and tabours, their impure purifications, their filthy caflimonies and beastly sanctifications, their barbarous and unlawfull corrections and chastisements, their inhumane and shamefull indignities practiced even in temples: these things (I say) gave occasion first unto some for to say, that better it were there had been no gods at all, than to admit such for gods who received and approved these abuses, yea, and tooke pleasure therein, or that they should be so outrageous, proud, and injurious, so base, and pinching, so easie to fall into choler upon a small cause, and so hard to be pleased againe. Had it not been far better for those Galatians, Scythians, or Tartarians in old time to have had no thought, no imagination, no mention at all delivered unto them in histories of gods: than to thinke there were gods delighting in the bloudshed of men, and to believe that the most holy and accomplished sacrifice and service of the gods was to cut mens throats, and to spill their blood: and had it not been more expedient for the Carthaginians by having at the first for their law-givers either *Critias* or *Diagoras*, to have been perswaded that there was neither God in heaven, or devil in hell, than to sacrifice for as they did to *Saturne*, who not (as *Empedocles* said) reprovng and taxing those that killed living creatures in sacrifice:

*The fire lifts up his deere beloved son,  
Who first some other forme and shape did take:  
He doth him say, and sacrifice anon,  
And thereunto vows and foolish prayers doth make.*

But writing and knowing killed their own children indeed for sacrifices: and looke who had no issue of their own, would buy poore mens children, as if they were lambs, young calves, or kids, for the said purpose. At which sacrifice the mother that bare them in her wombe would stand by without any shew at all of being moved, without weeping or fighting for pity and compassion: for otherwise if the either fetched a sigh or shed a teare, she must lose the price of her child, and yet notwithstanding suffer it to be flaine and sacrificed. Moreover, before and all about the Image or Idol to which the sacrifice was made, the place surrounded and rung againe with the noise of

flutes and hautboies, with the sound also of drums and timbrels, to the end that the pitifull cry of the poore infants should not be heard. Now if any *Tyrphones* or other such like giants, having chafed and driven out the gods, should usurpe the Empire of the world and rule over us: what other sacrifices would they delight in, or what offerings else and service besides could they require at mens hands? *Ameletus* the wife of the great Monarch *Xerxes*, buried quick in the ground twelve persons, and offered them for the prolonging of her own life unto *Pluto*; which god (as *Plato* faith) was named *Pluto*, *Dia*, and *Hades*, for that being full of humanity unto mankind, wife and rich besides, he was able to entertaine the soules of men with persuasive speeches and reasonable remonstrances.

*Xenophanes* the Naturalist, seeing the Egyptians at their solemne feasts knocking their breasts, and lamenting pitiouly admonished them very fitly in this wise: My good friends, if these (quoth he) be gods whom you honour thus, lament not for them: and if they be men, sacrifice not unto them. But there is nothing in the world so full of errors, no malady of the mind so passionate and mingled with more contrary and repugnant opinions, as this of superstition: in regard whereof, we ought to shun and avoid the same, but not as many who whilst they seek to of hew the assaults of thees by the high-way side, or the invasion of wild beasts out of the Forrest, or the danger of fire, are so transported and carried away with feare, that they look not about them, nor see what they do, or whether they go, and by that means light upon by-waies, or rather places having no way at all, but instead thereof bottomlesse pits and gulphs, or else steep down-falls most perilous; even so, there be dividers that seeking to avoid superstition, fall headlong upon the craggy rock of perverse and flitte-necked Impiety and Atheisme, leaping over true religion which is seated just in the midt between both.

## Of Exile or Banishment.

### The Summary.

There is not a man, how well soever framed to the world and seiled therein, who can promise unto himselfe any peaceable and assured state, throughout the course of his whole life: but according as it seemeth good to the eternall and wise providence of the Almighty (which governeth all things) to chastise our faults, or to try our constancy in faith: he ought intime of a calme to prepare himselfe for a tempest, and not to attend the midst of a danger, before he provide for his safety, but betimes and long before to fortifie and furnish himselfe with that whereof he may have need another day in all occurrences and accidents whatsoever. Our Author therefore in this Treatise writing to comfort and encourage one of his friends, cast down with anguish occasioned by his banishment, sheweth throughout all his discourse, that vertue it is which maketh us happy in every place, and that there is nothing but vice that can hurt and endamage us. Now as touching his particularising of this point, in the first place he treateth what kind of friends we have need of in our affliction, and how we ought then to serve our turns with them: and in regard of exile more particularly he adjoyneth this advertisement above all other things, to see unto those goods which we may enjoy during the same, and to oppose them against the present griefe and sorrow. Afterwards he proveth by sundry and divers reasons that banishment is not in it selfe simply naughty: he discovereth and layeth open the folly and misery of those who are too much addicted unto one country, shewing by notable examples that a wise man may live at ease and contentment in all places: that the habitation in a strange region, and the same limited and confined straightly within certain precincts, doth much more good ordinarily than lame: that a large country lying out far every way, maketh a manner as with the more happy: whereas contrariwise to be enclosed and pent up bringeth many commodities with it, declaring that this is the only life: and that it is no life at all to be evermore sitting to and fro from place to place. Now when he hath beautified this theme above said with many faire similitudes and proper inductions, he comforteth those who are banished and excluded from any City or Province: refusing with very good and sound arguments certain persons who held banishment for a note of infamy: shewing withall, that it is nothing else but sin and vice which bringeth a man into a lamentable state and condition: concluding by the examples of *Anaxagoras* and *Socrates*, that neither imprisonment, nor death can enthral or make miserable the man who loveth vertue. And contrariwise, he giveth us to understand by the examples of *Phaeton* and *Icarus*, that vicious and sinful persons fall daily and continually one way or other into most grievous calamities through their own audaciousness and folly.



## Of Exile or Banishment.

**S** Emblable is the case of wise sentences, and of good friends; the best, and most, and assured, be those reputed, which are present with us in our calamities, not in vaine, and for a shew, but to aid and succour us: for many there be who will not stick to present themselves, yea, and be ready to conferre and talke with their friends in time of adversity; howbeit, to no good purpose at all, but rather with some danger to themselves, like as unskilfull Divers, when they go about to helpe those that are at point to be drowned, being claipe about the body, sinke together with them for company. Now the speeches and discourses which come from friends, and such as would seeme to be helpers, ought to tend unto the consolation of the party afflicted, and not to the defence and iustificacion of the thing that afflieth: for hee that is afflicted, neede have more of the

that which they have at home in peace, without trouble and molestation. Like as therefore in a certaine Comady, there was one who exhorted his friend being fallen into some adversity, to take a good heart, and fight against fortune; who when he demanded of him againe how he should combat with her, made answer: Mary after a Philosophicall manner; even to let us also maintaine battell, and be revenged of adversity, by following the rule of Philosophy, and being armed with patience as becommeth wise men. For after what sort do we defend our selves against raine? Or how be we revenged of the North wind? Mary we seeke for fire, we go into a flouph, we make provision of cloaths, and we get an house over our heads; neither do we fit us down in the raine, untill we be thorowly wet to the skin, and then weep our fill; and even so have you also in those things which are presently about you good meanes, yea, and better than any other, to revive, refresh, and warme this part of your life which seemeth to be frozen and benumbed with cold, as having no need at all of any other helps and succours so long as you will use the foresaid means, according to the nature of the thing that afflieth. For example, that the ventres or cupping-plaies that Phyl-

out, under one and the selfe same order and conduct; the solstice and tropick of summer in the north; the solstice and tropick of winter in the south: the æquinoxes both of spring and fall, the stars *Pleides* and *Arcturus*; the seasons of seedtime, the times of planting; one King, and the same prince of all, even God, who hath in his hand the beginning, the midt, and the end of the whole and universal world: who by his influence goeth according to nature, directly through and round about all things, attended upon with righteousness and justice, to take vengeance and punishment of those who transgress any point of divine Law: which all we likewise that are men do exercise and use by the guidance and direction of nature against all others, as our citizens and subjects. Now say that thou dost not dwell and live in *Sardis*, what matter is that? Surely it is just nothing: No more do all the Athenians inhabit in the burroughs or tribe *Calytus*; nor the Corinthians in the street *Cranium*; ne yet the Lacedæmonians in the village *Pyrae*: are those Athenians then to be counted strangers, and not inhabitants of the City, who have removed out of *Melite* into *Diomea*: considering that, even there they do solemnize yet the month of their transmigration, named thereupon *Metageionion*; yea, and do celebrate a festivall holiday and sacrifice, which in memoriall of that removing they call *Metageinia*, for that this passage of theirs into another neighbourhood, they received and entertained right willingly with joy and much contentment? I suppose you will never say so. Now tell me what part of this earth habitable, or rather of the whole globe and compass thereof, can be said far distant or remote one from the other, seeing that the Mathematicians are able to prove and make demonstration by reason, that the whole in comparison and respect of heaven or the firmament is no more than a very prick which hath no dimension at all? But we, like unto pilgrims, driven out of our hole; or, in manner of bees, dispossessed of our hive, are cast down and discomforted by and by, and take our selves to be foreigners and strangers; for that we know not how to esteeme and make all things: our own, familiar and proper unto us, as they be. And yet we laugh at the folly of him who said: That the moon at *Athens* was better than at *Corinth*: being in the meane while after a sort in the same error of judgement, as if when we are gone a journey from the place of our habitation, we should mistake the earth, the sea, the aire, and theskie, as if they were others and far different from those which we are accustomed unto: for Nature hath permitted us to go and walke through the world loose and at liberty: but we for our parts imprison our selves, and we may thank our selves that we are pent up in freight rooms, that we be housed and kept within wals; thus of our own accord we leap into close and narrow places: and notwithstanding that we do thus by our selves, yet we mock the Persian Kings, for that (it is true which is reported of them) they drink all of the water only of the river *Chonaspes*, by which meanes they make all the continent besides waterlesse, for any good they have by it: whereas, even we also, when we travell and remove into other countries, have a long desire after the river *Cephissus* or *Ilissus*; yea, and a mind unto the mountain *Tageus*, or the hill *Parnassus*; whereby upon a most vaine and foolish opinion, all the world besides is not only void of water, but also like a desert without city, and altogether inhabitable unto us. Contrariwise, certaine Egyptians by occasion of some wrath and excessive oppressing of their King, minding to remove into *Ethiopia*, when as their kinsfolke and friends requested them to turne back againe, and not to forsake their wives and children, after a shamelesse manner shewing unto them their geniall members, answered them: That they would neither want wives nor children, so long as they carried those about them. But surely a man may avouch more honestly, and with greater modesty and gravity; that he who in what place soever feeleth no want or misse of those things which be necessary for this life, cannot complaine and say: That he is there out of his own country without city, without his own house and habitation, or a stranger at all; so as he only have as he ought, his eye and understanding bent hereunto, for to stay and governe him in manner of a sure anchor, that he may be able to make benefit and use of any haven or harbour whatsoever he arriveth unto. For when a man hath lost his goods, it is not so easie a matter to recover them soon againe; but surely every city is straightwaies as good a native country unto him, who knoweth and hath learned how to use it: to him (I say) who hath such roots as will live, be nourished and grow in every place, and by any meanes, such as *Themistocles* was furnished with; and such as *Demetrius* the Phalerian was not without: who being banished from *Athens*, became a principall person in the Court of King *Ptolomeus* in *Alexandria*, where he not only himselfe lived in great abundance of all things, but also sent unto the Athenians from thence rich gifts and presents. As for *Themistocles* living in the estate of a Prince, through the bountifull allowance and liberality of the King of *Perfia*, he was wont (by report) to say unto his wife and children: We had been utterly undone for ever, if we had not been undone. And therefore *Diogenes* surnamed the *Dog*, when one brought him word and said, the Sinopians have condemned thee to be exiled out of the Kingdom of *Pontus*: And I (quoth he) have confined them within the country of *Pontus* with this charge,

*That they shall never passe the utmost bounds*

*Of Euxine sea that bends them with her frowde.*

*Stratonius*, being in the Isle *Scrippos*, which was a very little one, demanded of his host, for what crimes the punishment of exile was ordained in that country; and when he heard and understood by him, that they used to banish such as were convicted of falsehood and untruth: Why then (quoth he againe) hast not thou committed some false and leud act, to the end that thou mightest depart out of this straight place and be enlarged? Where, as one Comick Poet said: A man might gather and make a yintage (as it were) of figs with flings, and poison of all commodities might be had, which

an

an Island wanted. For if one would weigh and consider the truth indeed, setting aside all vain opinion and foolish conceits, he that is affected unto one city alone is a very pilgrim and stranger in all others; for it seemeth neither meet, honest, nor reasonable, that a man should abandon his own for to inhabit those of others. *Sparta* is fallen to thy lot (saith the proverbe) to adorne and honour it, for thou art bound to do; be it that it is of small or no account: say that it is located in an unwholesome aire, and subject to many diseases, or be plagued with civil dissensions, or otherwise troubled with turbulent affaires. But whatsoever he be whom fortune hath deprived of his own native country: certes she hath granted and allowed him to make choice of that which may please and content him. And verily the precept of the Pythagoreans serveth to right good effect in this case to be practised: Choose (say they) the best life; use and custome will make it pleasant enough unto thee. To this purpose also it may be wisely and with great profit said: Make choice of the best and most pleasant city; time will cause it to be thy native country, and such a native country as shall not distract and trouble thee with any businesse, nor impose upon thee these and such like exactions: Make payment and contribute to this levy of money: Go in embassy to *Rome*: Receive such a captaine or ruler into thine house; or take such a charge upon thee at thine own expence. Now he that calleth these things to remembrance, if he have any wit in his head, and be not overblind every way in his own opinion and selfe conceit, will with and choose, if he be banished out of his own country, to inhabit the very Isle *Gyaros*, or the rough and barren Island *Cnarus*, where trees or plants do hardly grow; without complaining with griefe of heart, without lamenting and breaking out into these plaints and womanly moines; reported by the Poet *Simonides* in these words:

*The roaring noise of purple seas,*

*Resounding all about;*

*Dost fright me much and so inclose,*

*That I cannot get out.*

But rather he will beare in mind and discourse with himselfe the speech that *Philip* King of *Macedonia* sometime delivered: for when his hap was in the wrestling place to fall backward and lye alone on the ground; after he was up againe upon his feet, and saw the whole proportion and print of his body in the dust of the floor: O *Hercules* (quoth he) what a small deale of the earth is our portion by the appointment of nature, and yet see how we will not rest, but covet to conquer the whole world that is habitable! You have seen (I suppose) the Isle *Naxos*; if not, yet at leastwise the Island *Thuria* neare by; of which twaine, this was in old time the habitation of *Orion*; but in the other there dwelt *Ephialtes* and *Otrus*: as for *Alcmaeon*, he made his abode and residence upon the muddy banks, which the river *Achelous* had newly gathered and cast up, after it was a little dried and compact together, to avoid the pursuit (as the Poets say) of the Furies; but in my conceit rather because he would decline the offices of State, civil Magistracies, tedious broiles, and biting calumniationes for offences in hell, he chose such a straight and narrow place to inhabit, where he might lead a life in quietnesse and repose, secured from all such busie affaires. And *Tiberius Cæsar* in his latter daies, lived seven yeares (even untill his death) in the little Island *Caprea*, in such wise, as the very temple and imperial throne of the whole world retired and drawn in (as it were) into the heart, for all that time never went out from thence; and yet for his part, the ordinary cares incident unto the Empire, which were brought from all parts and came upon him to amuse his head continually, on every side, would not permit him to enjoy clearly without turbulent anguish of mind, that intended rest and quietnesse of his in the said Island. But even that man, who may by his departure into some little Island be freed and delivered from no small troubles and calamities, is notwithstanding miserable, if he do not fitlyones say unto himselfe when he is apart, yea, and chant ofentimes these verses of *Pindarus*:

*Love well the place where Cypros trees do grow,*

*But thin and small. The forest great let go*

*Of Candy Isle about the Ida hill:*

*As for myselfe, small lands I hold and till,*

*By fortune given, and those without an oak:*

*My heart likewise no griefes nor cares do wake.*

Exempt I am from civil tumults and seditions; I am not subject to the command of Princes and Governours; my hand is not in the charge and administration of State affaires, nor in any publique ministries or services, which hardly admit excuse or refusal. For considering that *Callimachus* seemeth not unwisely in one place to say thus: Measure not wildome by the Persian Scheme: why then should we (meeting felicity with *Schæner* and *Parasanges*) complaine, lament, and torment our selves, as if we were unhappy, if our fortune be to dwell in a little Isle which is not in circuit above two hundred furlongs, and nothing neare foure daies sailing about, as *Sicily* is? For what good can a spacious and large region do, for to procure felicity, or make a man to lead a quiet and peaceable life? Heate you not how *Tantalus* in the Tragedy crieth out, and saith thus?

*The spacious land and country large,*

*Call'd Berecyntian plains,*

*Daies journeys twelve right out, I sow*

*Yearly with corne and graine.*

And

60. Stadia.  
30.

And a little after he proceedeth to this speech :

*But now my soules, sometime an heavenly power,  
Defended thence into this earthly lower,  
Speake thus to me; Learne, and beimes take heed,  
Love not this world too much; I do thee read.*

And *Nauphius* leaving the wide and large country *Hyperia*, for that the *Cyclopes* were so near neighbours unto it, and departing into an Island far remote from other men, where he lived alone by himselfe without conversing with any people:

*From other mortal men apart,*

*Of surging sea within the heart*

provided for his citizens and subjects a most pleasant life. As for the Islands called *Cyclades*, they were at first (by report) inhabited by the children of *Admos*, and afterwards the off-spring of *Codemus* and *Nelus* held the same, into which foolish persons now adies thinke themselves fore punished and undone for ever, if they be confined. And yet, what Island is there destined and appointed for exiled and banished people, but it is larger than the territory *Scyllonia*, wherein *Xenophon* after that renowned expedition and voyage of his into *Persia*, passed his old age in elegancy and much happinesse? Semblably, the *Academy*, a little piece or plot of ground, the purchase whereof cost not above three thousand drachmes, was the habitation of *Plato*, *Xenocrates*, and *Polamon*, wherein they kept their schooles, and lived at repose all their life-time: and yet I must needs except one day every year, upon which, *Xenocrates* was wont to go down to the City, for to see the plaies and pastimes exhibited with new Tragedies at the feast called *Bacchanales*, only to honour (as folke said) and countenance that solemnity with his personall presence. Alio, *Theocritus* of *Chios* challenged and reproached *Aristotle* many times, for that to live in the Court of *Philip* and *Alexander*,

*Upon the mouth of Borborus to dwell  
He chose, and Academy had forewell,*

Now was this *Borborus* a river so called by the *Macedonians*, which ran along the City of *Pella* in *Macedonie*. As for Islands, *Homer* the Poet doth of purpose and expressly recommend unto us, and celebrate them with heavenly and divine praises, in this wise:

*At Lemnos he arrived then,  
Whereas the City stood,  
In which sometime that prince divine,  
King Thoas made abode:  
And what sever Lesbos Isle,  
The palace and the seat  
Of gods above contains enclosed  
Within her port was great.*

*Alio,  
When won he had the stately Isle,  
Which Scyros sometime bright,  
The native place and town of Maïs,  
The god of armes and fight.*

*Likewise,  
And those came from Dulichium,  
And eke the sacred Isles,  
Against Elis, Echinades,  
Within sea many miles,*

Moreover it is said, that of famous and renowned men, devout *Aeolus*, and best beloved of the gods, dwelt in one Isle; the most prudent and wise *Myser* in another; *Asax* likewise, that right valiant and hardy warriour; and *Alcinous* the most courteous prince for hospitality and entertainment of strangers were Islanders. *Zeno* the Philosopher, when news was brought unto him, That the ship of his which remained alone of all the rest was drowned in the sea with all the freight and merchandise therein: Thou hast done well O fortune (quoth he) to drive us to our studying gown and Philosophers life againe; even so, in my opinion, there is no reason that a man (unlesse he be very much befouled and transported with the vaine wind of popularity) when he is confined and inclosed within an Island, should complaine of fortune therefore, but rather praise her, for that she hath rid him of much anguish of spirit and trouble of his head, delivered him from tedious travell and wandring pilgrimages up and down in the world from place to place; freed him from the perillous sea, removed him from the tumultuous stirrs of the multitude in judiciall courts and publique assemblies of the City; and reduced him to a sedled and staied life, full of rest and tranquillity, not distracted with any superfluous and needlesse occupations, wherein he may live indeed properly to himselfe, being ranged within the center and circumference of those things which are required only for necessity. For what Island is there that hath not houles, walking places, Roupes and baines, or that is without fishes or hares, if a man be disposed to passe the time in fishing or hunting; and that which is the greatest matter of all, you may oftentimes there enjoy fully your rest and repose, which others do so much thirst and hunger after; for whereas when we are haply playing at dice, or otherwise

wile

wile keeping close at home, there will be some of these sycophants or buse priers and curious searchers into all our actions, ready to draw us out of our houies of pleasure in the suburbs, or out of our delightfull gardens, to make our appearance judicially in the common place, or to perform our service or give attendance in the court: there will be none such about to sige into the Island where thou art confined for to trouble thee; none will come to thee to demand or crave any thing, to borrow money, to request thy friendship, or thy assistance for to second him in the sute of any office and magistracy: unlesse peradventure some of thy best friends only and nearest kinsfolke, of meere love and affectionate desire to see thee, saile over for thy sake; for the rest of thy life besides is permitted to be as free and safe as a sanctuary, not subject to any spoile, trouble, or molestation, if thou be willing and canst skill to use thy liberty and repose. As for him who thinketh those to be happy who ridges up and down in the world abroad, spending most part of their time out of their own houies, either in common iuries and hostilities, or else in terrifying from place to place, he is much like unto him that supposeth the wandering Planets to be in a better state than the other stars which be fixed in the firmament and remove not: and yet there is not one of the said planets but is carried round in a peculiar and proper sphere of its own, as it were in a certaine stile, keeping alwaies a iust order in their revolution: for according as *Heracles* saith: The very sun himselfe will never passe beyond his bounds; and if he do, the furies which are the ministers of iustice will find him out and be ready to encounter him. But these and all such like reasonings, my good friend, we are to alledge unto them and sing in their eares, who being sent away and confined to some one Isle, cannot possibly change for another country, nor have commerce and dealing in any place else whatsoever, these I say,

*Whom surging waves of sea both night and day  
Enclose perforce, and cuse them thereto stay.*

As for you unto whom no certaine place is limited and assigned for to inhabit, but who are debarred and excluded only out of one, are thus to thinke, that the exclusion out of one City alone, is an overture and ready way made unto all others.

Now if any man will object and say: In this case of exile and banishment we are disabled for bearing rule and office of State, we sit not at Councell table in the Senate house; we are not presidents in the publique plaies and solemnities, &c. You may answer and reply againe in this manner; neither are we troubled with factions and civill diffentions; we are not called upon, nor charged with payments in publique levies and exactions; neither be we bound to make count unto great governors, and to give attendance at their gates; nor to take care and regard whether he who is chosen to succeed us in the government of our Province, be either hasty and cholericke, or otherwise given to oppression and hard dealing: but as *Archilochus*, making no account at all of the fruitfull come-fields and plenteous vineyards in *Thalos*, despised and contemned the whole Isle, because of some other rough, and uneven places in it, giving out thereof in these termes,

*This Island like an asse backe doth sticke,  
All overspread with woods so wild and thicke.*

Even so we casting our eyes and fixing them upon that part only of exile which is the worst and vilest of the rest, do contemne and make no reckoning of the reple from businesse, the liberty also and leisure which it doth afford. And yet the Kings of *Persia* be reputed happy, in that they passe their winter time in *Babylon*, the summer in *Media*, and the most sweet and pleasant part of the spring at *Susa*. May not he likewise who is departed out of his own native country, during the solemnity of the mysteries of *Ceres*, make his abode within the city *Elenus*; all the time of the *Bacchanals*, celebrate that feast in *Argos*; and when the Pythian games and plaies are exhibited, go to *Delfos*; as also when the Isthmian pastimes be represented, make a journey likewise to *Corinth*: In case he be a man who taketh pleasure in the diversity of shewes and publique spectacles, if not then either sit still and rest, or else walke up and down, read somewhat, or take a nap of sweet sleep without molestation or interruption of any man: and according as *Diogenes* was wont to say, *Aristotle* dineth when it pleaseth King *Philip*; but *Diogenes* taketh his dinner when *Diogenes* thinketh it good himselfe, without any businesse and affaires to distract him, and no Magistrate, Ruler, or Captain there was to interrupt his ordinary time and manner of diet. This is the reason why very few of the wise and most prudent men that ever were, have been buried in the countries where they were borne; but the most part of them without any constraint or necessity to enforce them, have willingly weighed anchor, and of their own accord failed to another rode or haven to harbour in, and there to lead their life: for some of them have departed to *Athens*, others have forsaken *Athens* and gone to other places: for what man ever gave out such a commendation of his own native country, as did *Empirides* in these verses, in the person of a woman:

*Our people all, at first not strangers were,  
From forraigne parts who hither did arrive;  
Time out of mind those that inhabit here,  
Were borne in place, and foreman'd alive.  
All Cities else and Nations at one word  
With aliens people be, who like to men  
At table play, or else upon chesse-board  
Removed have, and left some now, some then,*

if

If women we may be allow'd to grace  
Our native soyle, and with proud words exalts,  
Presume we dare to say that in this place,  
A temperate aire we have without default,  
Where neither heat nor cold excessive is;  
If ought there be that noble Greece doth yield,  
Or Alarich, of best commodities,  
And daintiest fruits, by river or by field,  
We have it here, in joyfull plenty full.

To hunt, to catch, to reape, to crop and pull,

And yet even he who hath set such goodly praises upon his native country, left the same, went into Macedonia, and there lived in the court of King Archelaws. You have heard likewise (I suppose) this little Epigram in verse:

Entered and entomb'd lieth here,  
Euphorion son the Poet Elchylus  
(In Athens countenough born sometime he were)  
To Gelas nere, in corne so plenteous.

For he also abandoned his own country, and went to dwell in Sicily, like as Simonides did before him. And whereas this title or inscription is commonly read (This is the History written by Herodotus the Halicarnassian) many there be who correct it and write in this manner; Herodotus the Thurian, for that he removed out of the country wherein he was borne, became an inhabitant among the Thuriens, and enjoyed the freedome of that colony. As for that heavenly and divine spirit in the knowledge of Muses and Poetry,

Homerus, who with wondrous pen,  
Set forth the battels Phrygian.

What was it that caused so many Cities to debate about the place of his nativity, challenging every one unto themselves, but only this; that he seemed not to praise and extoll any one City above the rest? Moreover, to Jupiter turn'd *Hospitalis*, know we not that there be many, and thofe right great honours done. Now if any one shall say unto me, that these personages were all of them ambitious, aspiring to great honour and glory, do no more, but have recourse unto the Sages, and thofe wife schooles and learned colleges of Athens; call to mind and consider the renowned clarkes and famous Philosphers, either in *Lycæum* or the Academy: go to the gallery *Stoa*, the learned schoole *Palladium*, or the Musick-schoole *Odeum*. If you affect, love, and admire above all other the sort of Peripateticks, *Aristotle* the Prince thereof was borne in *Stagira*, a City of Macedonia; *Theophrastus* in *Erebus*; *Strato* came from *Lampsacus*; *Glycon* from *Trois*; *Arifon* from *Chios*; and *Criolaus* from *Phocæus*. If your mind stand more to praise the Stoicks, *Cleanthes* was of *Assi*; *Zeno* was a Citeian; *Chrysippus* came from *Soli*; *Diogenes* from *Babylon*; and *Antipater* from *Tharus*; and *Archidamus*, being an Athenian borne, went to dwell among the Parthians and left behind him at *Babylon* in succession the Stoick discipline and Philosophy. Who was it that chased and drove these men out of their native countries? Certes none, but even of their own accord and voluntary motion they fought all abroad for their contentment and repose, which hardly or not at all can they enjoy at home in their own houses who are in any authority and reputation: so that as they have taught us very well out of their books other good sciences which they profess'd; so this one point of living in quietnesse and rest they have shewed unto us by practise and example. And even in these daies also, the most renowned and approved clarkes, yea, and greatest men of marke and name live in strange countries, far remote from their own habitations; nor transported by others, but of themselves removing thither: nor banished, sent away, and confined, but willing to flie and avoid the troublesome affaires, negotiations, and businesse which their native countries amule them with. That this is true it may appear by the most approved, excellent, and commendable works and compositions which ancient writers have left unto posterity: for the absolute finishing whereof it seemeth that the Muses did the help and means of their exile. Thus *Thucydides* the Athenian penn'd the war between the Peloponnesians and the Athenians whiles he was in *Thracia*, and namely, nere unto a place called the *Forest of the Eagle*. *Xenophon* compiled his story at *Scillus* in *Etes*; *Philop* wrote in *Epirus*; *Timæus* who was borne at *Tauronimium* in *Sicily*, became a writer in Athens; *Andronic* the Athenian at *Megara*; and *Bacchylides* the Poet in *Peloponnesus*; who all and many others besides, being banished out of their countries, were never discouraged nor cast down, but shewed the vivacity and vigour of their good spirits, and took their exile at fortunes hands as a good maintenance and provision of their journey; by means whereof they live infame and renown now after their death: whereas on the other side there remaineth no memorie at all of those by whose factions and sidings they were driven out and exiled. And therefore he deserveth to be well mocked, who thinketh that banishment carrieth with it some note of infamy and reproach, as necessarily adherent thereto. For what say you to this? Is *Diogenes* to be counted infamous, whom when King *Alexander* saw sitting in the sun, he approached nere, and standing by him, demanded whether he stood in need of any thing or no? He had no other answer from him but this, that he had need of nothing else, but that he should stand a little out of the sun-shine, and not shadow him as he did; whereupon *Alexander* wondering at his magnanimity and haughty courage, said presently unto those friends

that

that were about him; If I were not *Alexander* I would be *Diogenes*. And was *Camillus* disgraced any way for being banished out of *Rome*, considering that even at this day he is reputed and taken for the second founder thereof? Neither lost *Themistocles* the glory which he had won among the Greeks by his exile, but rather acquired thereto great honour and estimation with the Barbarians. And no man is there so base minded and careless of honour and credit, but he would choose rather to be *Themistocles* banished as he was, than *Leobates* his accuser, and the cause of his banishment; yea, and to be *Cicero* who was exiled, than *Clodius* who chased him out of *Rome*; or *Timotheus*, who was constrained to abandon and forsake his native country, than *Arsippon* who entred him and caused him to leave the same. But for that the authority of *Enripides*, who seemeth mightily to defame and condemne banishment, moveth many men; let us consider what be his several questions and answers to this point:

Jocasta.

How then is it a great calamity  
To lose the place of our nativity?

Polynices.

The greatest cross I hold it is doublet,  
And more indeed than my tongue can expresse.

Jocasta.

The manner would I gladly understand,  
And what doth grieve man that from native land?

Polynices.

This one thing first, the sorest grieve must be,  
That of their speech they have not liberty.

Jocasta.

A sight it is no doubt, and that of servile kind,  
For men to be debarr'd to speak their mind.

Polynices.

Besides, they must endure the foolishness,  
And ignorance of ravles, more or lesse.

But herein I cannot allow of his sentence and opinion as well and truly delivered. For first and foremost, nor to speake what a man thinketh, is not the point of a slavish and base person, but rather he is to be counted a wife and prudent man who can hold his tongue at those times, and in such occasions as require taciturnity and silence; which the same Poet hath taught us in another place more wisely, when he saith,

Silence is good when that it doth avails,  
Likewise to speake in time and not to faine.

And as for the folly and ignorance of great and mighty persons, we must abide no lesse when we tarry at home than in exile; nay, it falleth out many times, that men at home feare much more the calumnies and violence of those who unjustly are in high places of authority within Cities, than if they were abroad and out of their own Countries. Again, this also is most false and absurd, that the said Poet depriveth banished persons of their liberty and franke speech. Certes, this were a wonderfull matter that *Theodorus* wanted his freedome of tongue, considering that, when King *Lysimachus* laid unto him: And hath thy Countrey chased and cast thee out, being to great a person among them? Yea, (quoth he againe) for that it was no more able to beare me, than *Semele* to beare *Dionysus*; neither was he daunted and afraid, nor withstanding that the King shew'd unto him *Telsphorus* enclosed within an iron cage, whose eyes he had caused before to be pulled out of his head, his nose and eares to be cropt, and his tongue to be cut, adding withall these words: See how I handle those that displease and abuse my person. And what shall we say of *Diogenes*? Wanted he (think you) his liberty of speech? Who being come into the Campe of King *Philip*, at what time as he made an expedition against the Grecians, invaded their country, and was ready to give them battell, was apprehended and brought before the King as a spie, and charged therewith: I am indeed (quoth he) come hither to spie your insatiable avarice, ambition, and folly, who are about now to hazard in one houre (as it were) with the cast of a die, not only your crown and dignity, but also your life and person's semblably, what think you of *Antibal* the Carthaginian? Was he tongue-tied before *Antiochus*, banished though himselfe were, and the offer a mighty Monarch? For when he advised *Antiochus* to take the opportunity presented unto him, and to give battell unto the Romans his enemies, and the King having sacrificed unto the gods answered againe that the entrailes of the beast killed for sacrifice, would not permit, but forbid him so to do: Why then (quoth he by way of reproofe and rebuke) you will do that belike which a peece of dead flesh biddeth you, and not that which a man of wisdom and understanding counsellet you unto. But neither Geometricians, nor those that use lineary demonstrationis, if haply they be banished, are deprived of their liberty, but that they may discourse and speake frankly of their art, and science of such things as they have learned and known: how then should good, honest, and honourable persons be debarr'd of that freedome in case they be exiled? But in truth, it is cowardise and baseness of mind, which alwaies stoppeth the voice, tieth the tongue, stiflenth the wind-pipe, and causeth men to be speechlesse. But proceed we to that which followeth afterwards in *Enripides*:

ii

Jocasta.

Jocasta.

But thus we say, those that are banished  
With hopes always of better daies be fed.  
Polynices.

Good eyes they have, afar off they do see,  
Straying for things that most uncertaine be.

Certainly, these words imply rather a blame and reprehension of folly, than of exile. For they be not those who have learned and do know how to apply themselves unto things present, and to use their estate such as it is, but such as continually depend upon the expectation of future fortunes, and cover even more that which is absent and wanting, who are tossed to and fro with hope as in a little punt or boat floating upon the water: yea, although they were never in their lifetime without the walls of the City wherein they were borne: moreover, whereas we read in the same Euripides,

Jocasta.

Thy fathers friends and allies, have not they  
Been kind and helpfull to thee, as they may?

Polynices.

Look to thy selfe, from ironbles God thee blesse,  
Friends help is nought, if one be in distress.

Jocasta.

Thy noble blood, from whence thou art descended:  
Hath it not thee advanc'd and much amended?

Polynices.

I hold it ill to be in want and need,  
For parentage and birth do not men feed.

These speeches of Polynices are not only untrue, but also bewray his unthankfulness, when he seemeth thus to blame his want of honour and due regard for his nobility, and to complain that he was destitute of friends by occasion of his exile, considering that in respect of his noble birth, banished though he were yet so highly honoured he was that he was thought worthy to be matched in marriage with a Kings daughter, and as for friends, allies, and confederates, he was able to gather a puissant army of them, by whose aide and power he returned into his own country by force of arms, as himselfe testifieth a little after in these words:

Many a Lord and Captaine brave here stands  
With me in field, both from Mycenæ bright,  
And Cities more of Greece, whose helping hands  
(Though loath) I must needs use in claims of right.

Much like also be the speeches of his mother lamenting in this wise:

No nuptial torch at all lighted have  
To thee, as doth a wedding feast become,  
No marriage song was sung nor thee to love  
Was water brought from faire Ilmenus stream.

Whom it had become and behaved rather to rejoyce and be glad in heart, when she heard that her son was so highly advanced and married into so royall an house: but in taking griefe and sorrow her selfe that there was no wedding torch lighted, and that the river *Ilmenus* affordeth no water to bathe in at his wedding: as if new married bridegrooms could not be furnished either with fire or water in the City *Argos*: she attributeth unto exile, the inconveniences which more truly proceed from vanity and folly.

But some man will say unto me: That to be banished is a note of ignominy and reproach: true it is indeed, but among fooles only, who thinke likewise that it is a shame to be poore, to be bald, to be small of stature, yea, and to be a stranger forsooth, a tenant, inmate, or alien inhabitant: For these, such as will not suffer themselves to be carried away with these vaine persuasions, nor do subscribe thereto, esteeme and have in admiration good and honest persons, never respecting whether they be poore, strangers, and banished or no: Do we not see that all the world doth honour and reverence the temple of *Thesus* as well as *Parthenon* and *Elenisium*, Temples dedicated to *Minerva*, *Ceres*, and *Proserpina*? And yet was *Thesus* banished from *Athenis*; even that *Thesus* by whose meanes the same City was first peopled, and is at this day inhabited: and that City lost he which he held not from another, but founded first himselfe. As for *Elenis*, what beauty at all would remaine in it? If we dishonour *Eumolpus*, and be ashamed of him, who removing out of *Thracia* instituted at first among the Greeks the religion of sacred mysteries, which continueth in force and is observed at this day: what shall we say of *Codrus* who became King of *Athenis*? Whole I pray you was he? Was not *Melinthus* his father a banished man from *Messina*. Can you chuse but commend the answer of *Anisphenes* to one who said unto him: My mother is a Phrygian. So was (quoth he) the mother of the gods: why answer you not likewise when you are reproached with your banishment? Even so was the father of that victorious conquerour *Hercules*: the grand-fire likewise of *Bacchus*, who being sent out for to seek *Lady Europa*, never returned backe into his own native Country:

For

For being a Phasian borne,  
At Thebes he after did arrive,  
Far from his native soile before,  
And there began a sonnes love,  
Who *Bacchus* did engender tho,  
That moves to surly women, bright  
Mad *Bacchus* running to and fro,  
In service, such is his delight.

As for that which the Poet *Æschylus* would seeme covertly by these darke words to insinuate, or rather to shew a far off, when he saith thus:

And chaste *Apollo* sacred though he were,  
Yet banished a time, heavens did forbeare,

I am content to passe over in silence, and will forbear to utter according as *Herodotus* saith: and whereas *Empedocles* in the very beginning of his Philoophy maketh this preface:

An ancient law there stands in force,  
Decreed by gods above,  
Grounded upon necessity,  
And never to remove:  
That after man hath stein'd his hands  
In bloodshed horrible,  
And in remorse of sinis vex  
With horror terrible.

The long-lov'd angels which attend  
In heaven, shall chafe him quites  
For many thousand yeares from view  
Of every blessed sight:

By vertue of this law, am I  
From gods exiled now,  
And wander here and there through hont  
The world I know not how.

This he meaneth not of himselfe alone, but of all us after him, whom he declareth and sheweth by these words to be meere strangers, passengers, forreiners, and banished persons in this world. For it is not bloud (quoth he) O men, nor vital spirit contemperate together, that hath given unto us the substance of our soule and beginning of our life; but hereof is the body only compoled and framed, which is earthly and mortall; but the generation of the soule which cometh another way, and descendeth hither into these parts beneath, he doth mitigate and seeme to disguise by the most gentle and mild name that he could devise, calling it a kinde of pilgrimage from the naturall place; but to use the right terme indeed, and to speake according to the very truth, the doth vague and wander as banished, chased, and driven by the divine laws and statutes to and fro, until such time as it seeth to a body, as an oyster or shell fish, to one rocke or other in an Island beaten and dashed upon with many winds and waves of the sea round about, (as *Plato* saith) for that it doth not remember nor call to mind from what height of honour, and from how blessed an estate it is translated, nor changing, as a man would say, *Sardis* for *Athenis*, nor *Corinth* for *Lemnos* or *Seyros*, but her reliance in the very heaven and about the moone, with the abode upon earth, and with a terrestrial life: whereas it thinketh it strange and as much discontented here for that it hath made exchange of one place for another not farre distant; much like unto a poore plant that by removing doth degenerate and begin to wither away: and yet wee see, that for certaine plants some soyle is more commodious and portable than another, wherein they will like, thrive, and prosper better: whereas contrariwise there is no place that taketh from a man his felicity, no more than it doth his vertue, fortitude, or wisdom: for *Anaxagoras* during the time that he was in prison wrote his *Quadrangle* of the Circle, and *Socrates*, even when he dranke poyson, discoursed as a Philosopher, exhorting his friends and familiars to the study of Philoophy, and was by them reputed happy; but contrariwise *Phaeton* and *Icarus*, who (as the Poets do report) would needs mount up into heaven, through their owne folly and inconsiderate rashnesse, fell into most grievous and woollfull calamities.

U 3

That

*That we ought not to take up Money upon Usury.*

### The Summary.

**T**He covetous desire of earthly goods is a passion incurable, but especially after that it hath gotten the mastery of the soule, in such sort, as the advertisements which are made in regard of covetous men be not proposed for any thing else but forsoke profit and benefit of these persons who are to keep themselves from the nets and snares of these enemies of humane society. Now among all those who have need of good counsels in this behalfe, we must range them that take up money upon interest, who serving as a prey and booty to these greedy and hungry hunters, sought so much the rather to looke unto their own preservation, if they would not be cruelly devoured. And as this infortunaty hath been in the world ever since the entry of sin, that alwaies some or other yea, and great numbers have endeavored to make their commodity and gaine by the losse and damage of their neighbours: so we may see here, that in Plutarchs time things were grown to a wonderfull confusion, the which is nothing diminished since, but contrariwise it seemeth that in these our daies it is come to the very height. And so to apply some remedy hereto, our Author leaveth usurers altogether as persons gracelesse, reprobate, and incapable of all remembrance, addressing himselfe unto borrowers to the end that he might discover and lay open unto them the snares and nettles to which they plunge themselves: and this he doth without specifying or particularizing over-neare of usury, because there is no meane or measure limited, nor any end of this furious desire of gathering and heaping up things corruptible. Considering then that covetous folke have neither nerve nor veine that reacheth or tendeth to the pity of their neighbours, meet it is and good reason that borrowers should have some mercy and compassion of themselves to weigh and ponder well the grave discourses of this Author, and to apply the same unto the right use. He saith therefore, that the principall meane to keepe and save themselves from the teeth of usury, is to make the best of their own, and best with those things that they have selves from the teeth of usury, is to make the best of their own, and best with those things that they have about them, before they approach unto the denne of this hungry and greedy beast, and that men ought to make an hand and quick dispatch of that which is not very necessary, before they come thither: where he taxeth those who had lever lay to gage and pawn their goods, and remaine under the burden of usury, than to sell up all and digresse themselves at once. After this, he presenteth the true remedy of this mischief, namely, to spare and spend in measure: and to cause us to be more wary and better advised, in proposing the lively image of this horrible monster, whom we call an Usurer, describing him in his colour with all his practices and passions. Which done, he sheweth the source of borrowing money upon interest, and the way to stop the same: he directeth his pen particularly first unto the poore, giving them a goodly lesson, and then unto the richer sort, teaching the one as well as the other, how they are to demean and carry themselves, that they be not exposed to the clutches of usurers. And for a conclusion, he exhorteth them to behold the example of certain Philosophers by name, who chose rather to abandone and forsake all their goods, than to unde themselves in the possession and holding thereof.

*That we ought not to take up Money upon Usury.*

**P**Lato in his books of Lawes, permitteeth not one neighbour to make bold with anothers water, before he have digged and sunke a pit to deep in his own ground, that he is come to a veine of clay or potters earth: untill (I say) he have founded thorowly, and found that the plot of ground is not apt to ingender water, or yeld a spring: [ for the said potters clay being by nature fatty, solid, and strong, retaineth that moisture which it hath once received, and will not let it soake or passe thorow: ] but allowed they are, and ought to furnish themselves with water from others, when they have no meanes to find any of their own, forasmuch as the Law intendeth to provide for mens necessity, and not to favour their idleness: even so there ought to be an ordinance and act for touching money: That it might not be lawful for those to borrow upon usury, nor to go into other mens purses (as it were) to draw water at their wells or pits, before they have cast about all meanes at home, searched every way, and gathered (as it were) from every gutter and spring, trying and assaying how to draw and come by that which may serve their own turns, and supply their present necessities. But now it falleth out contrariwise, that many there be, who to furnish their foolish and riotous expences, or else to accomplish their superfluous and chargeable delights, never serve their own turns, nor make use of those things which they have, but are ready to seeke unto others, even to their great cost, though they stand in no need at all:

for

for an undoubted and certaine prooffe hereof, marke how Usurers do not ordinarily put forth their money unto those who are in necessity and distresse, but to such as be desirous to purchase and get that which is superfluous, and whereof they stand not in need; inasmuch as that which is credited out and delivered unto him that borroweth, is a good prooffe and sufficient testimony, that he hath somewhat to take to of his own; whereas indeed he ought (since he hath wherewith) to looke unto it, that he take not upon interest, and contrariwise, not to be credited, nor to be in the usurers book, is an argument that such an one is needy.

Why dost thou repaire and make court (as it were) obsequiously to a banker or merchant: goethy waies and borrow of thine owne banke, make a friend of thine owne locke: flaggons thou hast, and pots, chargers, balons, and dishes all of silver plate: imploy the lame about thy necessities, for to supply thy wants, and when thou hast dismished thy table and cup-board, the gentle town *Antis*, or else the Isle *Tenedos*, will make up all again with faire vessels of earth and pottery, which is much more neat and pure than thoe of silver: for these carry not the strong smell, nor unpleasant sent of usury, which like rust or canker, every day more and more, sullieth, fretteth, and eateth into thy costly magnificence: these will not put thee in mind daily of the callends and new moones, which being in it selfe the most sacred and holy day of the month, is by means of the usurers, become odious and accursed. For as touching thoe, who choose rather to lay their goods to gage, and to pawn them for to borrow money thereupon and pay for that, than to sell them right out, I am verily perswaded that god *Jupiter* himselfe imagined *Crepitus*, that is, Possellor, cannot fave them from beggary. Abashed they are to receive the price and value of their goods to the worth; but they be not ashamed to pay interest for the lome of money. And yet that wife and politicke *Pericles* caused the costly robe and attire of the statue of *Minerva*, weighing forty talents in fine gold, to be made in such sort, that he might take it off and put it on as he would at his pleasure; To the end (quoth he) that when we stand in need of money for maintenance of warre, we may setve our turnes therewith for the time, and afterwards put in the place againe another of no lesse weight and worth; even so we likewise in our occasions and affaires, like as in the besieging of a City, ought never to admit the garrison of an Usurer or enemy, nor to endure to see before our eyes our own goods delivered out for to continue in perpetual servitude, but rather to cut off from our Table all that is neither profitable nor necessary: likewise from our beds, from our couches, and our ordinary expens in diet whatsoever is needlesse, thereby to maintaine and keepe our selves free, in hope and with full intent to supply and make amends againe for it, if fortune afterwards smite upon us. Certes, the Roman dames in times past were willing to part with their jewels and ornaments of gold, yea, and give them away as an offering of first fruits to *Apollo Pythius*, whereof was made a golden cup, and the same sent to the City of *Delphi*. And the Matrons of *Carthage* shored the haire of their heads, to make thereof twisted cords for to wind up and bend their engines and instruments of artillery in the defence of their country, when the City was besieged. But we, as if we were ashamed of our owne sufficiency, and to stand upon our owne bottomes, seeke to enthrall our selves by gages and obligations; whereas it behooved us much more by retraining our selves, and reducing all to such things only as be profitable and good for us, of thoe needlesse, unprofitable, and superfluous vessels which we have, after they be either melted, broken in peeces, or sold, to build a priviledge chappell of liberty, for our selves, our wives and children. For the goddesse *Diana* in *Ephesus* yielded sanctuary, franchise, and safeguard unto all debtors against their creditors, who fled for succour into her temple. But the sanctuary indeed of parsimony, frugality, and moderate expence, into which no usurers can make entry, for to hale and pull out of it any debtor prisoner, standeth alwaies open for those that are wise, and affordeth unto them a large space of joyous and honourable repose. For like as that Prophete made which gave oracles in the temple of *Pythius Apollo*, about the time of the Medians warre, made answer unto the Athenian Embassadors: That God gave unto them their safety a wall of wood; wherupon they leaving their lands and possessions, abandoning their City, and forsaking their houses and all the goods therein, had recourse unto their ships for to save their liberty; even so, God giveth unto us wooden tables, earthen vessels, and garments of couerle cloth, if we would live in freedom:

*Set not thy mind upon seeds of great price,  
And charlats brave in silver harness light,  
With clasps, with hooks, and buds by fine device  
Timpourth, in race to shew a goodly sight.*

For how swift soever they be, these usurers will soone overtake them and run beyond. But rather get upon the next ass thou meetest with, or the first pack-horse that cometh in thy way, to flee from the usurer, a cruell enemy and meere tyrant, who demandeth not at thy hands fire and water, as sometimes did that barbarous King of *Media*: but that which worke is, toucheth thy liberty, woundingeth thee honour and credit by proscriptions, writs, and open proclamations. If thou pay him not to his content, he is ready to trouble thee; if thou have wherewith to satisfie him, he will not receive thy payment unless he list: if thou prize and sell thy goods, he will have them under their worth; art thou not disposed to make a sale of them? he will force thee to it: dost thou sue him for his extreame dealing, he will seem to offer parley of agreement; if thou sweare unto him that

thou



thou wilt make payment, he will impose upon thee hard conditions, and have thee at command; if thou go to his house for to speake and conferre with him, he will lock the gates against thee: and if thou stay at home and keep house thou shalt have him tapping at thy doore: he will not away but take up his lodging there with thee. For in what head served the law of *Solon* in *Athenes*, wherein it was ordained, that among the *Athenians* mens bodie should not be obliged for any civill debt? Considering that they be in bondage and slavery to all banquers and usurers, who force men to keep in their heads; and that which more is, not to them alone (for that were not such a great matter) but even to their very slaves, being proud, insolent, barbarous, and outrageous, such as *Plato* describeth the devils and fiery executioners in hell to be, who torment the soules of wicked and godlesse persons. For surely these cursed usurers make thy hall and iudiciall place of justice no better than a very hell and place of torment to their poore debtors, where after the manner of greedy geirs and hungry griffons, they flay, mangle, and eate them to the very bones,

*And of their beaks and talons keene,  
The marks within their flesh be seene.*

And some of them they stand continually over, not suffering them to touch and taste their own proper goods, when they have done their vintage and gathered in their corne and other fruits of the earth, making them last and pine away like unto *Tantalus*. And like as King *Darius* sent against the City of *Athenes* his Lieutenants *Generalis Darius* and *Artaphernes* with chains, cords, and halters in their hands, therewith to bind the prisoners which they should take; semblably these usurers bring into Greece with them their boxes and caskets full of schedules, bills, hand-writings, and contracts obligatory, which be as good as so many irons and fetters to hang upon their poore debtors; and thus they go up and down leaping from City to City, where they sow not as they passe along good and profitable seed, as *Hippocritus* did in old time; but plant their roots of debts, which bring forth infinite troubles and intolerable usuries, whereof there is no end, which eating as they go and spreading their spurs round about, in the end cause whole Cities to roope and sinke, yea, and to be ready to suffocate and strangle them. It is reported of hares, that at one time they lacke young leverets and be ready to kinne other hares that be in their bellies, and yit shall to conceive affeet: but the debts of these barbarous, wicked, and cruel usurers do bring forth before they conceive. For in putting out their money they demand it presently: in laying it down they take it up, they deliver that againe for interest which they received and took in consideration for lone and use. It is said of the *Messenians* City,

*Gate after gate a man shall here find,  
And yet one gate there's always behind.*

But it may better be said of usurers:

*Usury here upon usury doth grow,  
And eathereth up never shall know.*

And here withall in some sort they laugh at natural Philosophers, who hold this Axiome, That of nothing can be ingendred nothing: for with them usury is bred of that which neither is, nor ever was; of that, I say, which never had subsistence nor being. Howbeit these men thinke it a shame and reproach to be a publicane and take to farme for a rent the publicke revenues, notwithstanding the laws do permit and allow that calling, whereas themselves against all the laws of the world exact a rent and custome for that which they put forth to usury: or rather to speake a truth, in lending their money they defraud their debtors as bankrupts do their creditors. For the poore debtor who receiveth lesse than he hath let down in his obligation, is most falsely couzened, deceived, and cut short of that which he ought to have. And verily the Persians repute lying to be a sin, but in a second degree: for in the first place they reckon to owe money and be indebted; inasmuch as leasing followeth commonly those that be in debt. But yet usurers lye more than they, neither are there any that practise more falshood and deceit in their day debt-books wherein they write, that to such a one they have delivered to much, whereas indeed it is far lesse: and so the motive of their lying is faire avarice, and neither indigence nor poverty, but even a miserable covetousnesse and desire ever to have more and more: the end whereof turneth neither to pleasure nor profit unto themselves, but to the losse and ruine of those whom they wrong and wrong: for neither till they those grounds which they take away from their debtors, nor dwell in the houses out of which they turne them, nor eate their meat upon those tables which they have from them, nor yet clad themselves with their apparell of which they spoile them; but first one is destroyed, then a second followeth after, and is assured as a prey by the other. And this is much like to wild-fire, which still consumeth, and yet encreaseth alwaies by the utter decay and destruction of all that it burneth into it, and devourth one thing after another. And the usurer which maintaineth this fire, blowing and kindling it with the ruine of so many people, gaineth thereby no more fruit than this, that after a certaine time he taketh his booke of accounts in hand, and there readeth what a number of debtors he hath bought out of house and home, how many he hath dispossessed of their land and living, from whence he hath come and whither he hath gone in turning; winding, and heaping up his silver. Now I would not that thou shouldst thus thinke of me, that I speake all this upon any deadly hate and enmity that I have sworn against usurers,

*For God be praised! they neither hurt mine  
Have driven any, nor oxen, nor yet kine.*

But

But only to shew unto them who are so ready to take up money upon usury, what a villanous, shamefull, and base thing there is in it, and how this proceedeth from nothing else but extreme folly and similitude of heate. If thou have therewith to weild the world, never come into the usurers book, considering thou hast no need to borrow. Hast thou not wherewith, yet take no money up and pay not interest? Because thou shalt have no intent to make payment. But let us consider the one and the other apart by it selfe. Old *Cato* said unto a certaine aged man, who behaved himselfe very badly: My friend (quoth he) considering that old age of it leaue hath so many evils, how cometh it to passe that you adde thereto moreover the reproach and shame of lewdnesse and middlemeane? Even so may we say, seeing that poverty of it selfe hath so many and so great miseries do you not over and above go and heape therupon the troubles and anguishes that come of borrowing and being in debt; neither take thou from penury that only good thing wherein it excelleth riches, to wit, the want of caking and penive cares; for otherwise thou shalt be subject unto the mockery implied by this common proverbe:

*Age is alone when beare much I may,  
An ox upon my shoulder you do lay.*

Semblably you being not able to sustaine poverty alone, do discharge your selfe with an usurer, a burden hardly supportable even for a rich and wealthy man. How then would you have me to live? Happy some man will say: And dost thou indeed askest this question, having hands and feet of thine own? Having the gift of speech, voice, and being a man, unto whom it is given both to love and to be loved; as well to do a pleasure, as to receive a cuttise with thanksgiving. Thine maist teach *Grammatick*, bring up young children, be a porter or doore-keeper; thou maist be a sailer or mariner; thou maist row in a barge or galley: for none of all these trades is more reproachfull, odious, or trouble some, than to heare one say unto thee: Pay me thine own, or discharge the debt that thou owest me. *Rutilius* that rich Roman coming upon a time at *Rome* to *Misimus* the Philosopher, said unto him thus in his eare: *Misimus*, Jupiter himselfe *Saviour*, whom you and such other Philosophers as you are, make profession to imitate and follow, take up no money at interest: but *Misimus* smiling againe, returned him this present answer: No more doth he put forth any money for use.

Now this *Rutilius*, who was an usurer, reproached the other for taking money at interest, which was a foolish arrogant humour of a Stoick: for what need hadst thou *Rutilius* to meddle with *Jupiter Saviour*, and alledge his name, considering that a man may report the best fame by those very things which are familiar and apparent? The swallows are not in the usurers book the pituites pay not for use of money, and yet to them hath not nature given either hands or reason, or any art and mystery; whereas the hath endued man with such abundance of understanding, and aptnesse to learne and practise, that he can skill not only to nourish himselfe, but also to keep heriours, hounds, partridges, hares, and jays; why dost thou then disable and condemne thy selfe, as if thou wert lesse docible and sensible than a jay, more mute than a partridge, more idle than a dog, in that thou canst make no means to have good of a man, neither by double diligence, by making court, by observance and service, by maintaining his quartrell, and entering into combat in his defence? Seest thou not how the earth doth bring forth many things, and how the sea affordeth as many for the use of man? And verily at *Crist* faith:

*I saw my Pease how Myclas would did care?  
And how with him his wife she rolls did steere:  
Thus during war, when times were extream hard,  
Both joyntly wrought, to keep them from famine.*

King *Antigonus* when he had not of a long time seen *Cleantes* the Philosopher, meeting him one day in *Athenes*, spake unto him and said: How now *Cleantes*, dost thou grind at the mill, and turne the quene, none still? Yea sir (quoth *Cleantes* againe) grind yet, and I do it for to eame my living; howbeit for all that, I give not over my profession of Philosophy. O the admirable courage and high spirit of this man, who coming from the mill, with that very hand which turned about the stone, ground the meale and kneaded the dough, wrote of the nature of the gods, of the moon, of the stars, and the sun! But we do thinke all these to be base and servile works; and yet verily, because we would be free (God woe) we are not to thrust our selves into debts, we pay for the use of money, we suffer vile and base persons, we give them presents, we invite and feast them, we yeeld (as if we would tribute under-hand unto them; and thus we do not in regard of poverty, (for no man can so put forth his money into a poore mans hand) but even upon a superstitious and riotous expense of our own: for if we could content our selves with those things that are necessary for the life of man, there would not be an usurer in the world, no more than there are Centaures and monstrous Gorgones. But excessive it is and daintie which hath ingendred usurers: like as the same hath bred gold-smiths, silver-smiths, confectioners, perfumers, and dicke of gallant colours. We come in debt to bakers and vintners for our bread and wine; but we owe rather for the price and purchase of faire houses and lands for a great number and regiment of slaves, of fine mules, of sumptuous halls and dining chambers, of rich tables, and the costly furniture belonging thereto; besides other costly and excessive expenses, which we oftentimes are at, when we exhibit plaies and solemn games into whose cities for to game and do pleasure unto the people; and that upon a vaine ambition and desire of popular favour; and many times we receive no other fruit of all our cost and labour,

hour, but ingratitude. Now he that is once enwrapp'd in debt, remaineth a debtor still all the daies of his life; and he fareth like to an horse, who after he hath once received the bit into his mouth, changeth his rider effeones, and is never unriden, but one or other is alwaies on his back. No way and means there is to avoid from thence, and to recover those faire pastures and pleasant meadows, out of which those indebted perions are turned; but they wander astray to and fro, like to those cursed fiends and malign spirits, whom *Empedocles* writeth to have been driven by the gods out of heaven:

*For such the heavenly power first chas'd down to the sea beneath;  
The sea againe, up to the earth did cast them by and by;  
Then asfer ards, the earth them did unto the beames bequeath  
Of refllesse sun, and then at last sent them to starry skie.*

\* Or Corinthis againe.

Thus fall they into the hands of uisers or bankers, one after another; now of a Corinthian, then of a Patrian, and after of an Athenian; so long, untill when all of them have had a fling at him, he become in the end wast'd, eaten out, and consumed with usury upon usury: for like as he that is stepped into a quavemire must either at first gett forth of it, or else continue still there, and not remove at all out of one place; so he that striveth, turneth and windeth every way, not only doth wet and drench his body, but mireth it all over, and bewrayeth himselfe more than he was at first with filthy dirt; even to they that do nothing but charge one banke for another, making a transcript of their name out of one uisers booke into anothers, loading their shoulders effeones with new and fresh usuries, become alwaies overcharg'd more and more; and they reiemble for all the world those persons who are diseased with the cholerick passion or fluxe, who will not admit of any perfect cure to purge it at once, but continually taking away a certaine portion of the humour make room for more and more still to gather and engender in the place; for even so these are not willing to be rid and clean'd at once, but with dolours, grieie, and anguish pay usury every season and quarter of the yeare; and no sooner have they discharged one, but another distilleth and runneth down after it, which gathereth to an head; and so by that means they are griev'd with the head-ache and paine of the head; whereas it behoved that they should make quick dispatch, and give order to be cleare and free once for all; for now I direct my speech unto those of the better sort, who have wherewith above their fellows, and yet be nicer than they should be; and those commonly come in with such like words and excuses as these: How then, would you have me unfurnished of slaves and servants? To live without fire, without an house and abiding place? Which is all one as if he that were in a droppe and swolne as big as a tun should say unto his Physician: What will you do? Would you have me to be leane, lanke, spare bodied and empty; and why not? Or what shouldst not thou be contented to be, lo thou maiest recover thy health and be whole againe? And even so may it be said unto thee: better it were for to be without slaves than to be a slave thyselfe; and so remaine without heritage and possessions, that thou maiest not be possessed by another. Hearken a litle to the talke that was between two geires or vultures as the tale goes; when one of them digorged so strongly, that he said withall, I thinke verily that I shall cast up my very bowels: the other being by, answered in this wise: What harme will come of thy vomiting, so long as thou shalt not cast up thine own entrailles, but those only of some dead prey which we tare and devour'd together but the other day? Semblably every one that is indebted selleth not his own land, nor his own house; but indeed the uisers house and land of whom he hath taken money for interest, considering that by the law the debtor hath made him lord of him and all. Yea, many will helpe an; but my father hath left me this peece of land for mine inheritance: I wot well and beleve it; so hath thy father left unto thee freedom, good name and reputation, whereof thou oughtest to make much more account than of land and living. He that begat thee made thy hand and thy foot, and yet if it chance that one of them be mortified he will give a good fee or reward to a Chirurgian for to cut it off. Lady *Cephisodora* with a vesture and robe fenc'ing sweet like balme, yielding an odour of a body immortal, which she presented unto him as a gift and memoriall of the love that she bare unto him; and this he did weare for her sake; but after that he suffered shipwrack and was ready to sink being hardly able to float above water, by reason that the said robe was all drenched, and so heavy that it held him down, he did it off and threw it away; and then girding his naked breast underneath with a certaine broad filer or swathing band he saved himselfe by swimming, and recovered the banke: now when he was past this danger, and seemed to be landed, he seemed to want neither raiment nor nutriment: and what say you to this? May not this be counted a very tempest, when as the usurer after a certaine time shall come to assaile the poore debtors, and say unto them? Pay,

*Which word once said, shew with the clouds above,  
He gathereth thicke, and sea with waves doth move;  
For why, the winds avon at once from east,  
From south, from west do blow and give no rest.*

And what be these winds and waves? Even usuries upon usuries, puffing, blowing and rolling one after another; and he that is overwhelmed therewith and kept under with their heavy weight, is not able to swim forth and escape, but in the end is driven down and sinketh to the very bottom, where he is drowned and perished together with his friends, who entred into bonds, and became sureties and pledges for him.

[Crast

*Crast* the Philosopher of *Thebes* therefore did very well, who being in danger and debt to no man, only wearied with the cares and troubles of house-keeping, and the pensive thoughts how to hold his own, let all, and gave over his estate and patrimony which amounted to the value of eight talents: tooke himselfe to his bag and wallet, to his simple robe and cloake of course cloth, and fled into the sanctuary and liberties of Philosophy and Poverty. As for *Anaxagoras* he tooke his fair into the sanctuary and piteous pastures: but what need I to alledge these examples? Considering that *Philochemus* the Musician being sent with other to people and possesse a new Colony in *Cicily*, and having befallen to his lot a goodly house and living to it, enjoying (I say) for his part a good portion thereof he might have lived in fulnesse and plenty; when he law once that delights, pleasures, and idleness, without any exercise at all of good letters reigned in those parts; *Pax die* (quoth he) these goods here shall never spoile and undo me, but I will rather (I trow) make a hand and havock of them; leaving therefore unto others his portion that fell unto him by lot, he rooke sea againe and sailed away to *Athens*. Contrariwise those that be in debt are evermore sued in the law become tributaries and very slaves, bearing and enduring all indignities, like unto those varlets that dig in fil-trines, nourishing and maintaining as *Phineus* did the ravenous winged harpies: for surely these uisers alwaies flie upon them and be ready to snatch and carry away the very food and sustenance; neither have they patience to stay and attend times and seasons; for they buy up their debtors corn before it be ripe for the harvest; they make their markets of oyle before the olives fall from the tree, and likewise of wine: For I will have it at this price (quoth the uiser;) and withall the debtor giveth him presently a bill of his hand for such a bargain; meane while the grapes hang full upon the vine, waiting for the month of September, when the star *Arcturus* riseth and sheweth the time of vintage.

*That a Philosopher ought to converse especially with Princes and great Rulers, and with them to discourse.*

### The Summary.

If there be any in the world who have need of good company, they are Princes and great Lords; for that their affaires being of such consequence as every man knoweth the feebleness of bodie and insufficiency of spirit, not able to furnish them thoroughly; great reason they have to see by the eyes, and to work with the hands of others. Now in this case, three sorts of men there be who fault very much: In the first place, Princes and Rulers themselves, who instead of drawing and training neare unto their persons such as can aide and assist them, give access rather unto flatterers and other like pestilent members, who are ready to corrupt and ruinate their estates: Secondly, those (whose number at all times hath been very small) whom we call Philosophers, (that is to say) men of authority, wise, sage, learned, friends to vertue, lovers of the good of Princes and their subjects; who being of great power and able to do much, yet notwithstanding reule and draw backe, or being advanced to high places, have not alwaies that respect and consideration, nor such courage as appertaineth; suffering themselves otherwise to be carried away to the entertainment and maintenance of the greatest opinion, and mingling a litle too much of worldly wisdom with the apprehension of their true duty, whereof their conscience being lightened in sundry sorts advertiseth them sufficiently. The last, (and those as pernicious as the others) ignorant teachers, and profane school-masters and professors, mockers, scornors, jesters, flatterers; in sum, all the ministers of vanities and filthy pleasures, who do insinuate and intrude themselves by most low and wicked meanes into the service of Princes; and in recompence of the honour and rich gifts which they receive at their hands, do deceive and undo their simple lords and masters, according as an infinite number of examples in Histories do verifie and give evidence unto us: Plutarch therefore in consideration of these inconveniences, is desirous in this treatise to encourage those who wish that all things were well and in good order; and exhorteth them to approach neare unto Princes. But so much as ignorance and lewdnesse causeth men to become shamelesse, whereas wisdom and honesty maketh us modest and considerate in all our actions; he sheweth in the first place, that it is no point of ambition for a wise and learned man to joyne himselfe unto Grand seigneurs and to sort with them; but that it is their duty so to do, considering that such receive honour, pleasure, and profit by him. And this he proveth by reasons, similitudes, examples, all singular and notable. Afterwards he condemneth those who enter into Prince Courts, only because they would be great and powerful, shewing that wise men indeed do aime cleane at another marke. And for the last point of all, he treateth of the contentment which they receive, who by their service to one alone, help by that meanes an infinite number of others; who remaine bound and oblig'd unto them for so great a benefite.

That

*That a Philosopher ought to converse especially with Princes and great Rulers, and with them to discourse.*

**T**O embrace a common love, to find out, accept, entertaine and maintaine that amity which may be profitable and commodious to many in particular, and yet to more in general, is the part of honest men, politike, wise, and affectionate to the publicke good; and not as some thinke, of those that be ambitious and vaine-glorious. But contrariwise, he is to be reputed vaine-glorious, or rather timorous and wanting courage, who doth shun and is afraid to heare himselfe called a follower, waiter, and servant to those that are in highest place. For what faith one of these personages, who, having need to be cured, is desirous to learn and to be acquainted with some Philosopher? O that I were *Simon* the Souter, or *Dionysius* the Pedante, instead of *Pericles* or *Cato*, that a Philosopher might discourse and dispute with me, that he might fit by his side, as *Socrates* did sometime by those. And verily *Ariston* of *Chios* being reproved and blamed by the Sophisters in his time; for that he used to devise and discourse with all those that were disposed to heare him: I could wish (quoth he) in my heart, that the very beasts themselves were able to give eare and understand those discourses that do excite and move unto vertue. Do we then avoid the meanes and occasions to converse and conferre familiarly with great personages and mighty men, as if they were wild and savage persons? The doctrine of Philosophy is not like unto an imager who cattereth dumbe and deafe idoll statues, without any sense, only for to stand upon a base as *Pindarus* was wont to say, but is willing to make whatsoever it toucheth active, operative, and lively: it imprinteth therein affections and motions, judgements also inciting and leading to things profitable; intentions desirous of all honesty, haughty courage alio and magnanimity, joyed with meeknesse, reioiution, and assurance; by means of which good parts men of State and Policy, are more ready and forward to converse and devise with persons of great puissance and authority, and not without good cause: for an honest and gentle physician will take alwayes more pleasure to heale anye that teeth for many, and which doth guard and looke to many; and even to a Philosopher will be more affectionate to take care for that soule and spirit which he seeth to be vigilant for many, and which ought to be wise, prudent, and just for many: for such an one if he were skillfull and cunning in the art of finding, gathering, and conbunding of waters (as we read in Histories that *Hercules* and many other in old time were) would not take delight to goe into some desert corner, faire remote from the frequency of men, and to dig or sinke pits there, near to the Ravens rock (as the Poet saith) and to open that Swine-heards marsh *Aethusa*, but would study rather to discover the lively sources and ever-running springs of a river, to serve some great City or Campe, or to water the Orchards, Gardens and Groves of Kings. According as we heare that *Homer* called *Mixos*, *Jupiter Oaxifer*, which is as much to say, (as *Plato* himselfe doth interpret the word) his Familiar and Disciple: for he never meant that the disciples of the goos were private persons, home-keepers, and such as meddle in nothing but house matters. keeping in and living idely without any action: but Princes and Kings who being wise, just, debonaire and magnanimous, as many as be under their government and command shall live in blisse and happinesse.

An herbe there is called *Eryngium* or Sea-holly, which hath this property, that no sooner one goat taketh it in his mouth, but she herselfe first, and afterwards all the rest of the flock will stand still, untill such time as the goat-heard come and take away out of the flock which he will: in like manner, the desfluxions which proceed from persons of great power and authority, have the same swiftnesse and celerity, which doth dilate and spread it selfe in one moment, and in manner of fire seisseth upon whatsoever is neare thereto on every side. And verily the speech and remembrance of a Philosopher, if it be addressed and directed unto a private man, and that loveth to live in repose, and who doth limit and circumscribe himselfe, as within a center and circumference geometrical, with the necessities of his own body, the same speech is not distributed and divided unto others, but after it hath in that one man alone composed and wrought a great tranquillity and calme of all perturbations, it fadeth, vanisheth away, and so doth end incontinently: but on the contrary side, if the said remembrance meet with a man of State and Government, a Magistrate, a Politician and one that dealeth in great affaires, and by the effectuall vertue thereof, replenish him with goodnesse and honesty, by the means of that one person, the benefit will be imparted unto many. In this wise *Anaxagoras* kept company with *Pericles*: *Plato* conversed with *Diogenes*, and *Pythagoras* did associate himselfe to the Princes and Lords of *Italie*: and as for *Cato* he departed alone from the Campe, and failed to *Athenodorus*: *Scipio* likewise laid for *Panætius*, and sought after him, at what time as the Senate sent him forth with commission for to go in vilitation (as it were) and survey, to see what right and wrong, what justice and injustice reigned in the world, according as *Pollidius* maketh report. What then ought *Panætius* for to say? If you were either *Cassius* or *Pollux*, or some other private person, desirous to flye and avoid the frequency of great Cities, and retire your selfe into some corner of a schoole apart, there at your leisure and full repose to fold and unfold, to resolve and compound the syllogismes of Philosophers, I would willingly accept your proffer, and be desirous to converse and stay with you; but seeing you are the son of *Paulus Æmilius*, who had been twice

Confull,

Confull, and the nephew of *Scipio Africanus*, who defeated *Annibal* the Captaine of the Carthaginians, I will not reason and dispute with you. Moreover, to say that speech is twofold: the one interior or inward, the gift of *Mercury* Iurnamed *Hegemon*, that is, Guide: the other pronounced and uttered forth, which is instrumentall, and a very interpreter to give notice of our conceitions, is a mere vaine and stale position, and may well be compited under this old proverbe: Thus much I knew before *Theognis* was borne. But let not this distinction trouble or impeach us in that which we are about to say; for as well of that which is contained within the secret mind, as of the other which is pronounced and uttered, the end is all one: to wit, Love or amity of this, in respect of a mans own selfe, and of that, in regard of others: for that speech which by the precepts of Philosophy, bendeth unto vertue, and there doth end, maketh a man in tune and accordant with himselfe; never repining and complaining of ought, full of peace, full of love and contentment:

*In all his limbes is no sedition,  
No strife, no war, no strange dissensions,*

No passion rebellious and disobedient to reason, no combat of will or appetite against will and appetite, no repugnancy and contrariety of reason against reason; there is no unpleasant bitterness or turbulent disorder mixed with joyes and pleasures, as it falleth out in the confines of desire, repentance and sorrow; but all things there be uniforme, delightome, and amiable, which causeth each one to content himselfe, and joy as in abundance of all goods. As for the other kind of speech that is pronounced, *Pindarus* saith: That the Mule thereof was never in old time covetous, greedy of gaine, or mercer mercenary; neither beleve I that it is so at this day: but rather, through the ignorance and negligence of men who be carelesse of their own good and honour. *Mercury*, who before was free and common, is now become an occupier and merchant, willing to do nothing without a fee and reward. For it is not likely or probable, that *Venus* in times past was so deadly offended and angry with the daughters of *Prospitus*, because they desired first to fow hatred and enmity among young folke, and that *Urania*, *Clio* and *Callypso* take pleasure in them who debate the dignity of speech and literature, by taking silver; but in mine opinion, the workes and gifts of the Mules ought to be more amiable than those of *Venus*: for fame and honour, which some propole for the end of their speech and learning, hath been held deare and highly beloved, for that it is the very beginning and seminary of friendship: and that which more is, the common sort of people measure honour by good-will & benevolence, esteeming that we ought to praise those only whom we affect and love; but certainly these men fare like unto *Ision*, who in love following after the goddess *Juno*, fell upon a cloud: for even so they, instead of amity embrace a vaine image of popularity, deceitfull, pompous, wandering, and uncertaine: howbeit, a man of good conceit and judgement, if he manage State-affaires, or intermeddle in government of the common-weale, will seeke for honour and reputation so far forth only, as to maintaine his authority and credit in all his actions, for the better management of publicke affaires: for it is no pleasure, neither is it easie, to do them good who are not willing to profit and receive good; and the disposition of the will proceedeth from beleife and confidence. Like as the light doth more good unto them that see, than to those who are seene: even so is honour more profitable unto them who perceive and seele the same, than to such as are neglected and contemned. But he who dealeth not in affaires of State, who liveth to himselfe and letteth down his felicity in such a life, apart from others, in rest and repose, saluteth a far off vaine-glory and popularity, which others joy in, who be conversant in the view and sight of people, and in frequent assemblies and theaters, much like unto *Hippolytus*, who living chaste, saluteth the goddess *Venus* a great way off, but as for the other glory which proceedeth from men of worth and honour, he neither refuseth nor disdaineth it. Now when as the question is of amity, we are not to seek for it and to contract friendship only with such as be wealthy, have the glory, credit, and authority of great Lords, no more than we ought to avoid these qualities, if the same be joyed with a gentle nature, which is of faire and honest conditions. The Philosopher seeketh not after beautiful and well-favoured young men, but such as be docible, tractable, well disposed, and desirous of knowledge: but if withall they be endued with beautiful visage, with a good grace, and are in the flower of youth, this ought not to fright him from thence, neither must the lovely casts of their countenance and amiable aspects drive him from coming neere unto those, nor chase him away if he see them worthy paines taking and for to be regarded. Thus when power, riches, and princely authority shall be found in men of good nature, who be moderate and civill: the Philosopher will not forbear to love and cherish such, neither be afraid to be called a courtier or follower of great personages:

*They that strive most dame Venus to eschew,  
Do fault as much, as they who her pursue.*

Even so it is with the amity of Princes and great Potentates: and therefore the contemplative Philosopher who will not deale at all in affaires of vaine-publicke, must not avoid and shun such; but the civill Philosopher who is busied in managing of the common weale, ought to seeke for them and find them out, not forcing them after a troublesome manner to heare him, nor charging their eares with reports and discourses that be unseasonable and topicall; but framing himselfe willingly to joy in their company; to discourse, to passe the time with them when they are willing and so disposed:

*Tristram*

Twelve journey long are Berecintian plains,  
And hols I sow yearly with sundry graines.

He that said this, if he had loved men as well as he affected husbandry and tillage, would more willingly have ploughed and sowed that ground which is able to maintaine and feed to many men, than that little cloie or pindle of *Anisibenes*, which hardly was sufficient to find himselfe alone.

Certes *Epicurus*, who placed the foveraigne good and felicity of man in most sound rest and deep repose, as in a sure harbour or haven, defended and covered from all winds and surging waves of the world: faith, That to do good unto another, is not only more honest and honourable, than to receive a benefit at anothers hand, but also more pleasant and delectable; for there is nothing that begetteth so much joy as doth beneficence, which the Greeks terme by the name of *εὐεργεσία*, that is to say, Grace. Well advised he was therefore and of wise judgement who imposed their names upon the three Graces, *Aglais*, *Euphrosyne*, and *Thalia*: for without all question, the joy and contentment is far greater and more pure in him who doth a good turne and deserveth a thanks, than the party who receiveth the fame: and therefore it is that many times men do blush for shame when a good turne is done unto them, whereas alwaies they rejoyce when they conferre a benefit or favour upon another. Now do they a benefit unto a whole multitude or nation, who are the meanes to make those good, whom the people and multitude cannot misse but have need of: whereas contrariwise, they that corrupt and spoile Princes, Kings, and great Rulers (as do those flatterers, false sycophants, and slanderous promoters) are abominable unto all, are chafed out and punished by all: like unto those that cast deadly poyson, not into one cup of wine, but into a fountaine or spring that runneth for to serve in publique, and whereof they see all persons use to drinke. Like as therefore (according to *Eupolis*) it is laid only by way of mockery concerning those flatterers and comical parasites who haunted the table of rich *Callias*, that there was neither fire, brasse, nor steels, that could keep them out, but they would come to sup with him: but as for the minions and favourites of tyrant *Apollodorus*, *Phalaris*, or *Dionysius*, after the decalle of their Lords and Masters, the people fell upon them, did beat them with cudgels, torture upon the rack, burne at a stake, and range them with the accursed and damned crew; for that they before named did wrong to one alone, but they did injury unto many by the meane of corrupting one who was their Ruler: even so those Philosophers that converse and keepe company with private persons, do caule them to be well contented, pleasant, gracious, and harmlesse to their own selves and no more: but whosoever reformeth some evil conditions in a great Ruler or foveraigne Magistrate, framing and directing his will and intention to that which he ought: this man, I say, after a sort is a Philosopher to the publique State, in that he doth correct the mould and amend the patterne to which all the subjects be compoiled, and according to it governed. The Cities and States which be well ruled, decree and yeeld honour and reverence to their Priests: for that they do pray unto the gods for good things, not in regard of themselves, nor of their kinsfolke and friends alone, but universally in the behalle of all the citizens and yet these Priests do not make the gods good, nor the givers of good things, but being such ready of themselves, to them they powre their prayers and make invocations. But Philosophers who live and converse with Princes and great Lords, caule them to be more just and righteous, more moderate and better affected to well-doing: by meanes whereof it is like that they receive more joy and contentment. And if I should speake my conceit, it seemeth unto me that the harp-maker wrought and made his harpe more cheerfully and with greater pleasure, when he knew that the matter and owner of the said harpe should build the walls about the City *Thebes*, as *Amphion* did, or to stay and appeale the great civil edition of the Lacedaemonians by singing to the said harp and by sweet exhortations, as sometimes *Thales* did: seemingly the carpenter or shipwright, who maketh the helme to a ship of galley, will joy more when he shall know that the said helme shall serve to guide and rule the admirals ship, within which *Themistocles* shall fight against the Persians in the defence of the liberty and freedome of Greece: or that of *Pompeius*, with which in a navall battell at sea he defeated and vanquished the army of the pirats. What suppose you then will a Philosopher thinke of his own speech and doctrine, when he shall come to discourse with himselfe: that he who shall receive the fame, being a man of authority, a Prince or great Lord, shall thereby do good unto the Common-weale in muniting right and justice indifferently to every man: shall punish the wicked, and advance those that be good and vertuous. I am verily periwaded (for my part) that a good and gentle ship-wright will more willingly make an helme, when he shall know that must serve to rule the great ship *Argo*, renowned throughout the world: likewise a carpenter or wheele-wright will not with so good a will lay his hand to make a plough, or a chariot, as he would to frame those tables or boards in which he wish that *Solon* was to engrave his laws. And (I assure you) the discourses and reasons delivered by Philosophers, if once they be well and fully imprinted in the hearts of great personages, who have in their hands the government of States, if they once get sure footing and take good root in them, they become as forcible and effectual as positive laws. Hereupon it was that *Plato* failed into *Sicily*, in hope that the grave sentences and principles of his Philosophy would be as good as laws, and worke whollome and profitable effects in the affaires of *Dionysius*. But he found that *Dionysius* was like writing tables all rained, and full of blurs and blot, and that he could not leave off the tincture and deepe die of tyranny, being so fully set on, and having by continuance of time entrenched and pierced deepe, so that it could not be washed out: whereas it behooved that those who are to make their profit by good advertiements and regelections should still be in motion and so continue.

## As touching a Prince or Ruler unlearned.

### The Summary.

AS in the former discourse he solicited Sages and Philosophers to joyn themselves in acquaintance with Princes: so in this he desireth one point, whereof he dares not assure himselfe, to compass the same, by reason of some difficulties therein observed. For requiring in Princes much such that they should be well instructed; for to be capable of good counsell: he sheweth withall that it is a very hard thing to bring them thereto; and to range them in that order for certaine materiall and pertinent reasons which he setteth downe. Nevertheles he passeth on still, and proceedeth further: proving that those (and lively reason ought to command Kings and Princes: and for to cause them to condescend thereto, he declareth unto them, that the thing which they wish for and desire so ardently to procure; namely, to maintain their states in happy estate, and to make their name immortal, lieth in vertue: when he pointeth out with his fingers some impeachments: and hinderances that divert and turne away Princes from so just and necessary a consideration. Which done, for to enrich this speech and treatise of his, and the better yet to draw great personages to procure unto reason, he letteth them see and understand the difference between a good Prince and a Tyrant: also how dangerous a wicked Prince is: concluding by the benefit which cometh by equity, and the hurt by injustice: that right and justice ought to serve as a counterpoise against the greatness and puissance of Princes.

## As touching a Prince or Ruler unlearned.

THE inhabitants of the City *Cyrene*, requested *Plato* on a time to leave unto them by writing certaine good laws: and withall to set them down an order in the government of their State, which he refused to do, saying: That it was a very hard matter to give lawes unto the *Cyrenians* being so rich and wealthy as they were: for there is nothing so proud and insolent, so rough and intractable, so savage and hard to be tamed, as a man periwaded well of his fortunate estate. This is the cause, that it is no easie enterprise to give counsaill unto Princes and Rulers, and to advise them as touching their government. For they be afraid to receive and admit reason as a matter to command them: for feare it should take away and abridge them of that, which they esteeme to be the only good of their grandeur and puissance, in case they were subjected once to their duty. Which is the cause also that they cannot skill to heare the discourses of *Theopompus* King of *Sparta*, who was the first that brought into that City the *Ephors*, and mingled their authority with the government of the Kings. For when his wife reproached him for leaving unto his children the royall power and dignity, lesse than he received of his predecessors: Nay, many (saith he) but rather far greater, in that it shall be more firme and assured: for in remitting and letting down a little that which in absolute royalty was over-lisse, straight, and rigorous, he avoided by that very meane all envy and perill. And verily *Theopompus* deriving unto others from his owne authority, as from a great river, a little rill or rivulet: looke how much he gave unto the *Ephors*, so much he cut off from himselfe: but the reason and remembrance of Philosophy, being mingled (as it were) with the Prince himselfe, for to assist him and preferre his personage from this puissance, as in a full-plight and plerhoric constitution of the body, that which is selective and over-much, leaveth that behind which is found and healthfull. But the most part of Kings, Princes, and foveraigne Rulers, who are not wise and of good understanding, resemble unskilfull cutters in Rome and imagers, who are of opinion that the enormous and huge flannes, called *Colosses*, which they cut, will seeme more yale and mighty, if they frame them striding with their legs, with their armes spread abroad and stretched forth, as also with their mouths gaping wide open: for even so, these Princes and Rulers by their big commanding voice, their grim and frowne visage, strange looks, and regard of their eye; their odious behaviour, and lying apart without society of any other person, weepe and suppose to counterfeite a kind of gravity, greatness, and majesty that is required in a mighty Potentate: but they differ nothing from the fabled *Colosses* which with our due represent the forme of some god or demi-god: but all within are stuffed full of earth, stones, rubbish, and lead: this only is the difference, that the weight and heaviness of those monstrous statues, counterpoiseth and keepeth them standing in some sort upright, stedfast, and not inclining one way or other: but ignorant and unlearned Princes, Rulers, and general Captains, by reason of their ignorance which is within them, oftentimes do wag and totter to and fro, yea, and be over-turned and laid along: for coming to build their puissance and licentious power aloft upon a bale that is not laid directly to the plumb, they reele and tumble down withall. But like as a rule or square, being of it selfe even, straight, and level, not turning or twining any way,

doth direct and set streight all other things, and make them like it selfe, by being laid thereto; even so ought a Prince, when he hath first established in himselfe his principallity and power, that is to say, composed his own life and manners, to accommodate and frame his subjects accordingly, and to make them sensible that he is their King, who is ready to humble and fall himselfe, to sustaine and keep up another, nor he who is ignorant and knoweth nothing, is fit to be a teacher, no more than he who is disorderly, meet to redresse and reforme, or who is irregular, able to range and set in order, or who knoweth not how to obey, able to command. But the most part of men are herein deceived, and thinke not aright, who suppose that the first and principall good in commanding and ruling is not to be ruled and commanded. And thus the King of the *Perfians* imagined all his subjects to be slaves, unless it were his wife alone, of whom especially above all other, he should have the mastery and Lordship.

Who is it then, that shall command a King or Prince; even the law, which is the Lady and Queen of all, as well mortall men as immortal gods, according as *Pindarus* saith: I meane not, the written law in books or upon tables of wood, but the lively reason imprinted in his own heart, remaining alwaies with him, his continual resident-keeper, and never leaving his soule abandoned and forsome without conduct and government: And verily the *Perfian* King had evermore about him, one of his Chamberlaines ordained for this office; namely, to say unto him every morning as he entered into his Chamber: *Arise my Lord, and have regard to those affairs for which Metormoides* (that is to say, The Great God) would have you to provide. But if a Prince be wise and well-instructed, he hath alwaies within him this monitor and remembrance, to refound the same into his eares, and put him in mind of his duty. *Polemon* was wont to say: That love was a ministry of the gods in young persons, such as they had care of, and were minded to preserve: but more truly a man might say: That Princes be the Ministers of the gods, to provide for the affaires and safety of men: to the end that of those good things which God hath bestowed upon them, they should distribute some, and preserve other:

*But feast thou this havy firmament,  
So high above and infinitely vast,  
Inosome moist of water element,  
The earth beneath how it insofeth fast?*

for this is it, that by influence sendeth down the principles of those seeds which be fit and convenient, which afterwards the earth produeth and yeeldeth forth, whereof some grow by showers of wine, others by winds: some all together warm and heate by the stars and the moone, but it is the sun who ruleth and governeth all, he imprints and infuseth into them from himselfe, the gracious influence of love. Now, all the goods and gifts (both small and to great) which the gods endow men withall, there is no meanes to enjoy and use aright, without Law, without Justice, without a Prince or Ruler: Justice is the end of Law, Law is the work of a Prince, and the Prince is the image of God, Governor of all things: and this Prince or soveraigne Majesty hath no need either of *Philosophy*, or of *Polytety* and *Myran*, to counsel or forme him; but himselfe it is, who doth frame his own person to the pattern and similitude of God, and by meanes of vertue, worketh and setteth up the most pleasant, excellent, and tymer statue, that may be seen: and like as God hath placed in heaven (as a most beautifull image of himselfe and his divinity) the sun and the moone; even such a representation and light is in a City and Realme, as a Prince or Magistrate, so long as he hath in his heart imprinted the feare of God, and the observation of Justice: that is to say, all while he hath divine reason, which is understanding; doth as a sepper in his hand, nor a thunder-bolt and lightning, or a three-forked mace as some foolish Princes cause themselves to be portrayed and painted, making their folly odious; in affecting that which they never can attaine unto: for God sendeth hatred and punisheth those who will seeme to imitate thunder, lightning, sun-beams, and fire: but contrariwise, those that be zealous followers of his vertue, and who endeavour to compare themselves to his bounty, goodness, and clemency, he loveth and advanceth, to them he willingly doth impart his own equity, loyalty, justice, verity, and clemency. These qualities are such as there is nothing in the world more divine and heavenly, nor fire nor light, nor the controule of the sunne, neither the sunne or apparitions; nor the settings and occultations of the Stars, nor eternitie in selfe, and immortality: for God is not counted happy and blessed in regard of long life, but for that he is the Prince of all vertue: and as this is divinity indeed, so it is true beauty to be ruled thereby. *Alexander* for to give comfort and consolation unto *Alexander*, who was cast downe and in despair, for the bloody murder which he had committed upon the person of *Clitus*, said unto him: That the goddesses *Dice* and *Themis* (that is to say) Justice and Equity, far as assistants to *Jupiter*, to shew (quoth he) that whatsoever is done by a Prince, is to be thought just and righteous; but he offended herein grossly, and faulted much, to the hurt of *Alexander*, in that he went about to remedy the sorrow and griefe which this Prince conceived in remorse of conscience and repentance for his heinous sin, by giving him heart and assurance to commit the like againe: And if it be meet and lawfull in this case to project our conjectures; *Jupiter* hath not equity and justice for his actions, but himselfe is justice and equity; he (I say) is the most ancient and perfect Law that is: this heake, write and teach all ancient authors: That even *Jupiter* himselfe cannot well command and rule without justice, which is the virgin (as *Hesiodus* saith), nor couched and decked; but pure and immaculate, lodged alwaies with shamefastnesse, modesty,

\* Or as  
some read  
To Clitus.

modesty, and civility. Hereupon it is, that men ordinarily give this addition unto Kings and Princes, calling them *discrete*, that is to say, Reverend and venerable: for meet and convenient it is, that those who feare least should have most majesty and honour. And verily a Prince and Ruler ought to be afraid much more to do ill, than to receive and sustaine harme, forasmuch as the one is the cause of the other. And this is a civil and generous feare, proper and peculiar to a good Prince, namely, to be afraid lest his subjects should (ere he be aware) take wrong or be hurt any way;

*Much like as dogs that be of gentle kind,  
Who watchfully about the folds attend,  
In case they once by subtil hearing find  
A savage beast approach, and thither tend,*

Feare not for themselves, but in regard of the cattell which they keep. In like manner, *Epaninordas*, when the Thebans fell disloyally to drinke and make good cheare at a certaine festivall time, himselfe went all alone to survey the armour and wails of the City, saying: That he would faine watch, that all the rest might quaffe the while, and sleep with more security. *Cato* likewise at *Thica* proclaimed by sound of Trumpet, to send away by sea all those who escaped alive upon the overthrow which there happened; and when he had embarked them all, and made his praier unto the gods to vouchsafe them a boon voyage, he returned into his own lodging and killed himselfe; shewing by this example what a Prince or Commander ought to feare, and what he should contemne and despise. Contrariwise, *Clearchus* the tyrant of *Pontus*, shutting himselfe within a chest, slept there as a serpent within her hole: and *Arfodamus* the tyrant of *Argos* went up into a hanging chamber aloft, which had a trap doore, whereupon he cauled a little bed or pallet to be set, and there he slept and lay with his Concubine and harlot which he kept, and when he was gotten up thither, the mother of the said Concubine came ordinarily to take downe the ladder, and brought it thither againe every morning. How thinke you, did this Tyrant tremble for feare, when he was in a frequent theater in the Palace, in Councill house and Court of Justice, or at a feast, considering that he made a prison of his bed-chamber? To say a very truth, good Princes are afraid for their subjects sake, but Tyrants feare their Subjects; and therefore as they augment their puissance, so do they encrease their own feare: for the more persons that they command and rule over, the greater number they stand in dread of: for it is neither profitable nor seemely as some Philosophers affirme: That God is invisibly subsistent and mixed within the first and principall matter, which suffereth all things, receiveth a thousand constraints and adventures, yea, and is subject to innumerable changes and alterations: but he sitteth in regard of us above, and there is reiant continually in a nature alwaies one, and ever in the same estate, seated upon holy foundations (as *Plato* saith) where he infuseth his power, and goeth through all, working and finishing that which is right according to nature: and like as the sun in heaven, the most goodly and beautifull image of him, is to be seen by the reflection of a mirrour, by those who otherwise cannot endure to behold himselfe as he is: even so God ordaineth in Cities and Societies of men, another image of his, and that is the light of Justice and reason accompanying the same; which wise and blessed men describe and depaint out of sentences philosophical, conforming and framing themselves to that which is the fairest and most beautifull thing in the world; and nothing is there that doth imprint in the soules and spirits of men such a disposition, as reason drawn and leamed out of Philosophy, to the end that the same should not befall unto us which King *Alexander* the Great did: who having seen in *Corinth* *Dionenes* how generous he was, esteemed highly and admired the haughty courage and magnanimity of the man, inso much as he brake forth into these words: Were not *Alexander* surely I would be *Dionenes*: which was all one in manner as if he should have said: That he was troubled and incumbered with his wealth, riches, glory, and puissance, as impeachments and hinderances of vertue, and bare an envious and jealous eye to the homely coultre cloake of the Philosopher, to his bag and wallet, as if by them alone *Dionenes* was invincible and impregnable, and not (as himselfe) by the meanes of armes, harnes, horles, speares, and pikes: for surely he might with governing himselfe by true philosophical reason have been of the disposition and affection of *Dionenes*, and yet continue neverthelesse in the state and fortune of *Alexander*; and so much the rather be *Dionenes* because he was *Alexander*; as having need against great fortune, (like a tempest raised with boyfetter winds, and full of surging waves) of a stronger cable and anchor, of a greater helme aloft, and a better pilot: for in meane persons who are of a low estate, and whose puissance is small, such as private men be, folly is himselfe: and foolish though such be, yet they do no great hurt, because their might is not answerable thereto: like as it falleth out in foolish and vaine dreames: there is a certaine griefe (I wot not what) which troubleth and disordereth the mind, being not able to compass and bring about the execution of her desires and lusts: but where might and malice meet together, there power addeth folly unto passions and affections; and most true it is that speech of *Demetrius* the tyrant, who was wont to say: That the greatest pleasure and contentment which he enjoyed by his tyranny was this, that whatsoever he would was quickly done, and presently executed; according to that verse in *Homer*:

*No sooner out of mouth the word was gone,  
But presently withall, the thing was done,  
X 2*

A dangerous matter it is for a man to will and desire that which he ought not, being not able to performe that which he willett and desireth: whereas malicious mischief making a swift course through the race of pusillan e and might, driveth and thrusteth forward every violent passion to the extremity, making choler and anger to turne to murder, love to prove adultery, and avarice to grow into confiscation of goods: for no sooner is the word spoken, but the party once in fulsion is undone for ever, and presently upon the least surmise and imputation ensueth death. But as the naturall philosophers do hold, that the lightning is shot out of the cloud after the clap of thunder (like as bloud issueth after the wound is given and incision made) and yet the said lightning is seen before, for that the eare receiveth the found or crack by degrees, whereas the eye meeteth at once with the flash: even so in these great rulers and commanders, punishments oftentimes go before accusations, and sentences of condemnation before evident proofes:

*For wrath in such may not long time endure,  
No more than floske of anchor can assure  
A ship in forme, which taketh slender hold  
On sand by shores, whereof none may be bold.*

Unlessie the weight of reason do repressle and keep down licentious power, whiles a Prince or great Lord doth after the manner of the sun, who at what time as he is most high mounted in the septentrionall or northerne parts, seemeth least to move, and by his slow motion maketh his race the more stedfast and assured. For impossible it is that vices in great persons should remaine covert and hidden: but like as those who are subject to the falling sicknesse, so soone as ever they be surprisid with outward cold, or turne round never so little, presently fall into a dimnesse of sight, grow to be dizzy in the head and ready to stagger, which passions do bewray and deteech their malady: even so ignorant persons and such as want instruction and good bringing up, no sooner are lifted up by fortunes favour to wealth and riches, to dignities, promotions, and places of high authority, but presently the sheweth them their own fall and ruine: or rather to make the thing more plaine and familiar: like as a man can hardly know whether vessels be sound or faulty, so long as they be empty, but in case you powre into them any liquor, it appeareth whether they leake and run or no; even to, the foules of men that be putrid and corrupt, cannot containe and hold fast their might and authority, but run out by means of their lusts and desires, their cholerick fits, their vanities and absurd demeanors, but what need we draw forth the discourse hereof more at large? Considering that great men and noble personages are expoled to calumniation and reproaches for the least delinquency and fault that they commit. *Cimon* was blamed for his good wine; *Scipio* for his sleep, and because he loved his bed well; and *Lucullus* grew into an ill name in regard of his bountifull table and liberall fare that he kept.

## That Vice alone is sufficient to make a man wretched.

### The Summary.

**A**lthough this Treatise be so defective both in the beginning and the end, that to this present we know not how to guesse and conjecture, which way to redresse and supply the same: yet the very title and fragments remaining thereof, sufficiently discover the intention of the Author. And like as by the ruins of some ancient royall palace, here is in some sort represented to our thought and conceit the beauty thereof while it stood entire and upright: even so, this remnant which is left unto us, sheweth sufficiently what we have lost. But albeit the malice and injury of the time hath deprived us of so great a benefit, and of many others semblably: yet notwithstanding, that which remaineth may profit us, maimed and imperfect as it is, and suffice to range and containe us in our duty. In the beginning, our Author discomfeth of the misery of a covetous person, and one that followeth the Court. Then he addeth according to his principall designe and purpose: That vice is the absolute work-mistress of wretchednesse and infelicity, having need of no other ministers or instruments to cause a man to be miserable: whereupon he doth collect and gather, that there is no danger nor calamity, but we ought to choose rather than be fivell and vicious. Afterwards he answereth those objections which are made to the contrary, and concludeth, that adversity cannot prejudice or hurt us any thing, so long as it is not accompanied with vice.

## That Vice alone is sufficient to make a man wretched.

**H**E abideth much who hath his body sold for a dowry (as *Euripides* saith) to wit, small availes he hath thereby, and those very uncertain. But unto him who passeth not through much ashes, but a royall fire (as one would say) wherewith he is scorched and burnt round about, who continually draweth his wind thick and short, and is full of feare and sweat by treading over-sea for gaine, the giveth in the end a certaine Tantalian riches, (that is to say) such as he is not able to enjoy by reason of the continuall occupations wherewith he is embred. For very wisely did that *Sicyonian* who bred and kept a race of horses, when he gave unto *Agamemnon* the King of the Achæans as a present, a notable swift mare for a courier, because he might be dispensed with, for going in warlike to *Troy*:

*That unto Troy that stately towne,  
He might not with him go  
To serve in armes; but stay at home,  
And rest there far from woe;  
Where he might live in solace much,  
Enjoying all his own;  
For Jupiter in measure great,  
Had wealth on him bestowed.*

To the end, that he staying behind at home, might roule and welter at ease in a depth of riches, and give himselfe much time and leisure for assured repose void of all paine and trouble. Howbeit our courtiers at this day, who would be esteemed men of action and great affaires, never expect untill they be called, but of themselves intrude and thrust their heads into Princes Courts and stately Palaces, where they must watch, waite, and give attendance in all dutifull service, with much paine and travell, to gaine thereby at last, a great horse, a faire chaine, or some such blessed favour.

*Mean while the wife is left alone behind  
In Phylace, and thinks he is unkind  
To leave her so: her face the vents and leaves;  
The house remains halfe built, when he is reares.*

*Horace de  
Proterio.*

And the husband is carried here and there wandering in the world, drawn on with certaine hopes which oftentimes in the end deceive him and worke his shame. But if peradventure he obtaine something that his heart desired, after a certaine time that he hath been turned round about the wheele of fortune, so long untill his head be dizzy, and mounted on high in the aire, he wiseth and seeketh nothing more than evasion and meanes to escape, deeming and calling those happy, who lead a private life, without exposing themselves to such perils: and they againe repute him blessed and fortunate, seeing him so highly advanced above themselves. Thus in one word you see how vice doth dispose men unto all sorts of infelicity, being of it selfe a perfect artisan of infortunity, and needs none instruments and ministers besides. As for other tyrants, who study nothing more, than to make those most wretched and miserable whom they punish, to maintaine executioners and tormentors, devise red-hot fearing irons to burne, and invent racks and other instruments for to put the reasonlesse soule to extreame torture; but vice without any such preparation of engins, so soone as it selleth upon the soule, presently overturneth and bringeth it to ruine and destruction, filleth a man with dolour and griefe, with lamentations, sorrows, and repentance. For a certaine proofe hereof, you shall see many endure to have their flesh mangled and cut, without saying one word; abide to be whipped and scourged patiently; who being put to the racke and other tortures by their cruell masters or tyrants, will not give one creeke or cry, so long as the soule repressing the voice by reason, as with the hand keepeth it downe, and containeth it from breaking out: whereas contrariwise, a man shall hardly or never command either anger to stay and be quiet, or dolour to be silent, no nor periwade him that is surprisid with sudden feare to rest still, or one who is lving with remorse and repentance to forbear crying out, to hold his hands from tearing his haire and imiting his thighs: of such force and violence is vice and sinne, above either the heat of fire or the edge of the sword. Moreover, Cities and states, when they publish their purpose to put forth to making any ships or huge statues called *Coleffi*, give care willingly to the workmen disputing one against the other, as touching the workmanship, heare their reasons, and see their models and platformes which they bring, and afterwards make choice of him to go in hand with that piece of worke, who with lesse coit and charges will do the deed as well, or rather better, and more speedily. Now put the case that we publish by proclamation to make a man infortunate, or cause a life to be wretched and miserable, and that there present unto us for to enterprize this, fortune on the one side, and vice on the other: the one (to wit, fortune) is full of her tooles and instruments of all sorts, and provided of furniture costly and chargeable, for to make a life unhappy and miserable; as for example, brigandie and robberies, bloody warres, inhumane cruelty of tyrants, and tempests at sea; the draweth after her flashes of lightning out of the aire, the mixeth and dresseth a poisoned cup of deadly hemlock, the bringeth sharpe edged



swords to do the business, she stirreth slanders, and raiseth false surmises and calumniation, she kindleth burning agues, and hot feavers, she commeth with fetters, manacles, and other irons jingling finally, she buildeth cages and prisons for this purpose; and yet the most part of all this geere proceedeth rather from vice than fortune: but suppose that all came from fortune, and that vice standing by all naked, and having need of no other thing in the world without it selfe to affaile a man, should demand of fortune, how she could make a man unfortunate and heartlesse in these tearmes? What fortune, dost thou menace poverty? *Marcellus* will be ready to laugh thee to scorn, who in winter-time used to sleep among sheep, and in Summer season took his repose in Cloisters and Church-porches; and so challenged for his felicity the King of *Perfus*, who was wont to winter in *Babylon*, and passe the Summer in *Media*: threatneth thou servitude and bondage? Bringest thou chains, and irons, or the woeful condition to be sold in open market as a slave? *Diogenes* will despise thee for all that, who being exposed and offered to sale by the rovers and thieves that tooke him, cried and proclaimed himselfe aloud: Who will buy a master, who? Dost thou temper or brew a cup of poyson? Why didst not thou before offer such a cup to *Socrates* for to drinke? But he full meekly, with all mildnesse and patience, without trembling for feare, and changing either countenance or colour for the matter, dranke it off roundly; and after he was dead, those that survived judged him happy, as one who in the other world made account to live an heavenly and blessed life: presentest thou fire to burne withall? Loe, how *Decius* a Roman Capitaine hath prevented thee; who when there was a fire made in the middest between two armies for to consume him, voluntarily and witha formal prayer offered himselfe as an holocaust or burnt offering unto *Saturne*, according to his vow made for the safety of the Roman Empire. The honest and chaste dames of the Indians, such as entirely love their husbands, flive and be ready to fight one with another about the funeral fire; and as for her who obtaineth the victory, and is burned therein together with the dead corps of her husband, all there do deeme right happy, and testifie so much in their hymnes and songs. As for the Sages and wise Philosophers of those parts, there is not one of them all reputed a holy man or blessed, if he do not whiles he is alive in perfect health, and sound sense and understanding, separate his own soule from the body by the means of fire, and after he hath cleansed and consumed all that was mortall depart out of the flesh all cleane and pure: but (forsooth) from abundance of wealth and riches, from an house sumptuously built and furnished, from a costly and dainty table full of fine and delicate viands, thou wilt bring me to a poore thred-bare cloake, to a bag and wallet, and to begging of my daily bread from doore to doore; well, even these things were the cause of *Diogenes* felicity: these won unto *Craes* freedom and glory; but thou wilt crucifie me or cause me to be hanged upon a Gibbet, or stick my body thorow with a shapere stake? And what cared *Theodorus* whether his corps rotted above ground or under the earth? These were the happy sepulchres of Tartarians, and of the Hircanians, to be eaten and devoured of dogs; as for the Bactrians, by the laws of the country those were thought to have had the most blessed end, whom the fowles of the aire did eate after they were dead; Who then are they whom these and such accidents do make unhappy? Even such as are false-hearted, base-minded, senselesse, and void of understanding, untaught, and not exercised in affaires of the world, and in one word, such as retain still the opinions which were imprinted in them from their infancy. Thus you see how fortune alone is not a sufficient work-mistress of unhappines and infelicity, in case she have not sin and vice to aide and help her: for like as a thred is able to divide and sawe (as it were) thorow a bone which hath lye soaking long before in ashes and vinegar; and as workemen can bend, bow, and bring into what fashion they will Ivory, after it hath been infused and mollified in ale or beere, and otherwise not; even so fortune coming upon that which is already of it selfe crazy and corrupt, or hath been sustained by vice, is of power to pierce, wound, and hollow the fame.

Moreover, like as the poyson *Pharicum*, otherwise called *Napellus* or *Aconitum*, being hurtfull to no other person, nor doing harme to those who handle and beare it about them; but if it touch never so little one that is wounded, presently killeth him by means of the fore or wound which receiveth the infusion and venom thereof; even so he whose soule is like to be destroyed and overthrowen by fortune, ought to have within himselfe and in his own flesh some ulcer, some impostume or malady for to make those accidents which befall outwardly, wretched, pittifull, and lamentable. What, is vice then of that nature that it had need of fortunes helping-hand to worke wretchednesse and infelicity? From what coast I pray you doth not fortune raise tempests upon the sea, and trouble the water with surging billows? Environeth not she and bestrereth the foot of desart mountaines, with the ambushes and fore-layings of thieves and robbers? Powreth not she down with great violence formes of haile-stones out of the clouds upon the fertile cleane-fields? Was it not vice and malice that stirred up *Mitrus*, *Angustus*, and *Callicenus* to be scyphants and false accusers? Is it not she that bereaved folke of their goods, impeacheth and disableneth men for being Commanders and leaders of armies, and all to make them unhappy? Nay, he it is that maketh them rich and plentifull; she beareth upon them heritages and possessions; she accompanieth them as they are; she is alwaies close unto them and neare at hand; she causeth them to consume and pine with lulls and drefses; she enflameth and fereth them on fire with choler and anger; she troubleth their minds with vaine superfluities, and draweth them away after the lulls of their eyes.

How

## How a Man may praise himselfe without incurring Envy and Blame.

### The Summary.

Impossible it is during the time that we sojourne in this life, that our spirit which knoweth not how to be still and at rest, should not strive and move the tongue to speake of the actions either of other men, or of our own; whereby we cannot chuse but incur marvellous dangers of flattery, slander, or else of selfe-praise; insomuch as not without good cause that man hath been called puffell, who knoweth well to moderate this little member, which is as it were the bit and bridle of the whole body of man; and the very helme and sterne of that ship or vessel in which we row and hulk to and fro in the sea of this world. Requiste it is therefore, that morall Philosophy should speake, to the end that it may teach us for to speake. We have seen before in many discourses the duty of every one towards his neighbours, as well in words as in deeds; but in this Treatise Plutarch sheweth the carriage of a man towards himselfe, and above all in that way which is most slippery, to wit, in the question of our own praises: than after he hath laid this for a ground and foundation; That it is an unseemly thing for a man to make himselfe seeme great by vaine bubble, and allowed the reasons wherefore, he setteth down one generall exception; to wit, that a vertuous man may praise himselfe in certaine cases and occurrences; the which (after he hath taxed the ambition of those who set up a note of their own praises to be chaunted aloud by others) he particularizeth upon these points; to wit, if he be driven to answer unto some false slanderer; if a man be in any distress and adversity, or if he be blamed for the best deeds that he hath done. After this, he interlaceth certaine advertisements or corrections; to wit, that a man ought to mingle his own praises with those of other men; that he ascribe not the whole honour of a worthy deed to his own selfe; that he utter only those things which be chiefe and principall, and stand upon that which is most commendable; and that he give a certaine lustre thereto, by the fault of confest his own imperfections: which done, he proceedeth to declare what kind of men they ought to be who are allowed to praise themselves; to what this praise ought to be reserved; and have respect; and wherefore they should enter into it; moreover at what time, and for what occasion he ought to make head unto a third, who would do sufficiently; and for a small conclusion, he propoeth an excellent means to avoid the troubles and inconveniences that might arise from importunate praise, willing that the party who speaketh of his own good parts should sit all ambition, not please himselfe in rehearsing and recital of his own exploits; take heed how in selfe-praising he feigne praises, and never be lesse in blaming his neighbours to be content for to be praised of another, without putting himselfe between and speaking in his own behalf. In sum, since there is nothing so odious as to see and have a man speake exceeding much of himselfe, he concludeth; that in no wise a man ought so to do, unless there accrue thereby great profit and commodity to the hearers.

## How a Man may praise himselfe without incurring Envy and Blame.

To speake much of ones selfe in praise, either what he is in person, or of what valour and power among others; there is no man (friend *Herenianus*) but by word of mouth will professe it is most odious, and unbecoming a person well borne and of good bringing up; but in very deed few there be who can take heed and beware of falling into the inconvenience and enormity thereof, no not even those who otherwise do blame and condemne the same; as for *Euripides* when he saith,

If words were costly men among,  
For to be bought and sold,  
No man to praise and magnifie  
Himselfe would be so bold:  
But now (since that each one may take  
Out of the aire so large,  
As much as will his mind suffice,  
Without his cost and charge)  
Well pleas'd are all men of themselves  
To speake what comes in thought;  
As well untruth as what is true,  
For speech them costeth nought.

Doth use a most odious and importune vanity, especially in this, that he would seeme to interlace amongst the passionate accidents and affaires of Tragical matters, the speech of a mans selfe,

which

which is not besetting nor pertinent unto the subject argument; seemably *Pindarus*, having laid in one place,

*To brag and vaunt unseasonably,  
Sounds much of rash and vaine folly,*

ceaseth not nevertheless to magnifie his own sufficiency in the gift of poetry, as being (in truth) worthy of right great praise, as no man can deny. But those who are crowned with garlands in those sacred plaies and games, are declared victors and conquerors by the voice of others, who thereby ease them of that odious displeasure that self-praise carrieth with it. And in very deed our heart riseth against that vaine-glory of *Timotheus*, in that he wrote himselfe (as touching the victory which he achieved against *Phryis*) O happy man thou *Timotheus*! at what time as the herald proclaimed with a loud voice these words: *Timotheus* the Milesian hath conquered *Isonampus* that son of *Carbo*: for surely this carrieth with it no grace at all, but is a meere absurdity and against all good fashion, for a man to be the trumpeter of his own victory: for true it is according to *Xenophon*; That the most pleasant voice that a man can heare, is his own praise delivered by another, but the most odious thing unto others, is a man commending himselfe: for first and foremost, we esteeme them to be impudent who praise themselves, considering that they ought rather to blush and be ashamed even when others fall to praise them in their presence: secondly, we repute them unjust herein, for that they give and attribute that to themselves which they should receive at the hands of others: thirdly, either if we keep silence when we heare one to praise himselfe, it seemeth we are discontented or do beare envy unto him, or if we feare that, compelled we are our selves to confirme and approve those praises, and to give testimony thereof against our own mind: a thing more besetting vile and base flattery than true honour, namely, if we can abide to praise any in presence. Howbeit, although this be most true, and that the case standeth so, such occurrences may fall out, that an honorable person who manageth the politick affairs of a common-wealth, may hazard and venture boldly to speake of himselfe and in his own behalfe for his advantage, not in regard of any glory, grace, or pleasure to gaine thereby, but for that the occasion or action that is presented, requirith that he should speake and give testimony of himselfe, as he would and might do of any other matter of truth, especially when the deeds by him achieved, or the parts that be in him be good and honest, then he is not to forbear or spare to speake loudly, that he hath done so or else much like: for surely such a praise as this bringeth forth good fruit, and out of it, as from a fruitful graine or seed, there proceed many other praises, and those far greater. And certes, a civil and politick man doth not desire and love honour as a salary, solace, or recompence for his vertuous actions; but for that to have the credit and reputation among others of a truly and faithfull person, in whom men may repose their trust and confidence, doth afford him good meanes and occasions to performe many other greater and more goodlier actions: for a pleasant and easie matter it is to benefit them who love thee and put their trust in thee; whereas on the contrary side, exceeding hard it is, or rather impossible, to make use of vertue, and to employ it to the good of those who have thee in suspicion, or be ready to raise false calumnies against thee, and so to force them who do avoid the meanes of receiving any good and pleasure at thy hands.

Moreover, it would be considered, what other occasions there may be for which a man of honour and honesty may praise himselfe: to the end that by taking good heed and avoiding of that which in self-praise is to vaine and odious, we faile not to serve our selves with the profit and commodity that may come thereby. Now of all others, most foolish is their praise who commend themselves to this end, that they would be praised of others: and such praise as this we hold most contemptible, for that it seemeth to proceed from ambition and an unseasonable appetite of vaine-glory only: forlike as those who have no other food to feed upon, be constrained to eat the flesh of their own bodies against nature, which is the very extremity and end of famine; even so those that hunger after honour and praise, if they cannot meet with others to praise them, fall to praise themselves: wherein their behaviour is unbecomly and shameful, for that upon a love of vaine-glory they are desirous to make a supply and sufficiency from their own selves; but yet when as they go not simply to worke, nor seeke to be praised by themselves, but upon a certaine emulation and jealousy of other mens praises, they come to compare and oppose their own deeds for to dim and darken the actions of others; then over and besides their vanity, they adde thereto envy and malice: for according to the common proverb: He is curious and ridiculous, who setteth his foot in another mans dune: but upon envy and jealousy to thrust a mans selfe between the praises of others, and to interrupt the same with his own self-praise, is a thing that we ought to beware of: and not only so, but also to take heed that we suffer not others at such a time to praise us, but gently to yeeld honour unto those who are worthy to be praised and honoured; and if peradventure, they be unworthy and deserve not the same, yet ought not we to deprive them of the praises which are given unto them, by interposing our own, but rather stand up against them, convince them openly, and prove by evident and pregnant reasons that there is no cause why they should be reputed so great, and be so highly honoured. As touching this point therefore, plaine and evident it is, that we ought not so to doe, howbeit, a man may praise himselfe without blame: first and foremost, if he do it by way of his owne defence in answering to a slander raised, or an imputation charged upon him: like as *Pericles* did in *Thucydides*, where he uttereth these words: And yet you my Masters of *Athenes* are angry with me, who may vaunt of my selfe to be such an one as need

need not to give place unto any whatsoever, either in foresight and knowledge of that which is be-hovefull to the common-wealth, or in eloquence and delivery thereof, or in love to the State, or in sincere integrity, free from all corruption, bribery and avarice, against which I stand invincible: for in speaking thus magnificently of himselfe in such a case, he did not only avoid the blame and reproach of vanity, or arrogance and presumptuous ambition, but also that which more is, he shewed with all his wisdom and greatness, yea, and the magnanimity of vertue, which was so far from being humbled and dejected, that it rather conquered and held under-hand envy: inasmuch as others hearing such men speake in this wise, proceed not any farther, nor be willing to judge and censure them, but are carried away and ravished with a certaine joy, yea, and inspired (as it were) from heaven to heare such brave vanities; namely, if the persons be content, and the reports which they make true, according as the effects which follow do testifie. The Thebanes verily (at what time as their captives were accused, for that when the terme of their government and magistracy, called *Boetarchia*, was expired, they returned not incontinently home, but made an invasion and entred in armes into *Laconia*, and dealt in the administration of affaires about the City of *Messene*) hardly and with much ado assailed and quic *Pelopidas*, when he humbled himselfe and became a suppliant unto them for pardon: but contrariwise, when *Epanonondas* came and recounted in magnificent words those brave exploits which he had achieved in that voyage and at the same time, protesting in the end that he was prest and ready to take his death, so that they would confesse and acknowledge, that despite their minds and against their wills he had pill'd and spoiled *Laconia*, repopled *Messene*, and reduced into a league and amity with them all the Cities of *Arcadia*, they had not the heart so much as to give their voices and suffrages in any sentence of condemnation against him, but departed out of the assembly, admiring the haughty courage of the man, and rejoicing with mirth and laughter to heare him plead his cause with resolution. And therefore the speech of *Sthenelus* in *Homer* is not simply and altogether to be reproved, when he saith:

*Pronounce I dare, and it avails,  
We better warriors be  
In these duties than our fathers were  
By many a degree.*

If we call to mind and remember the precedent words a little before:

*Thou son of noble Tydeus  
A wife and hardy knight  
How is it that thy heart doth pant,  
For feare when thou shouldst fight?  
Why dost thou cast thine eye about,  
And looke on every side?  
How thou maist out of battell scape,  
And dost not field abide.*

For it was not *Sthenelus* himselfe unto whom this sharpe and bitter speech was addressed, but he replied thus in the behalfe of his friend whom he had thus reproached, and therefore so just a cause, and so fit an occasion gave him liberty to speake thus bravely and boldly of himselfe. As for the Citizens of *Rome*, they were offended and displeased much with *Cicero* praising himselfe so much as he did and namely relating so often the worthy deeds by him done against *Carilines*: but contrariwise, when *Scipio* said before them all in a publike assembly: That it was not meet and seemly for them to sit as judges upon *Scipio*, considering that by his meanes they were grown to that grandee as to judge all the world: they put chaplets of flowers upon their heads, and in this wise is adorned, mounted up together with him into the temple of the Capitoll, for to sacrifice and render thanks unto *Jupiter*: and good reason both of the one and the other: for *Cicero* rehearsed his own praise-worthy deeds so many times without any need enforcing him thereto, only to glorifie himselfe; but the present perill wherein the other stood, freed him from all hatred and envy, notwithstanding he spake his own praise. Moreover, this vanity and glorious boasting of a mans selfe, is not besetting those only who are accused, or in trouble and danger of the law, but to as many also as begin adversity rather than in prosperity: for that it seemeth that these reach and catch (as it were) at glory and take pleasure and joy therein, only to gaine and content therein their own ambitious humour: whereas the other by reason of the quality of the time, being far from all suspicion of vaine-glory and ambition do pick up, and erect themselves upright against fortune, sustaining and upholding what they can the generosity of their minds, avoiding as much as lieth in them that base conceit, to be thought for to beg commiseration and crave pity, as if they would be moaned for their misadventures and thereby bewray their abject hearts. For like as we take them for foolcs and vaine-glorious fellows, who as they walke ordinarily, lift up themselves, and beare their heads and necks aloft: but contrariwise, we praise and commend those who erect their bodies, and do all they can to put forth themselves, either in fight at sharpe, or in bustring with fists; even so, a man who being overthrowen by adverse fortune, raiseth himselfe up againe upon his feet, and addresseth his whole might to shake head,

*Like as the champion doth arise,  
Upon his hands to win a prize.*

And instead of shewing himselfe humble, suppliant and pittifull, by glorious words maketh a shew

of bravery and haughty courage, seemeth not thereby proud and presumptuous, but contrariwise great, magnanimous, and invincible. Thus in one place the Poet *Homer* depainteth *Patroclus* modest, and nothing at all subject to envy, when he had done any exploit fortunately and with valour; but at his death when he was ready to yield the ghost, he described him to speake bravely in this wise:

*If twenty such with all their might,  
Had met with me in open fight, &c.*

And *Phocion* who otherwise was alwaies meek and modest, after that he saw himselfe condemned, gave all the world to understand his magnanimity, as in many other things, so especially in this point that he said unto one of those that were to suffer death with him, who made a pitious moane and great lamentation: How now man, what is that thou saiest? Doth it not thee good at the heart to thinke that thou shalt die with *Phocion*? And verily, no lesse, but rather much more it is permitted to a man of State, who is injuriously dealt withall for to speake somewhat frankly of himselfe, namely, unto those who seeme to be oblivious and unthankfull. Thus *Achilles* at other times rendred the glory of fortunate success in his affaires to the heavenly power of God, and spake modestly in this manner:

*That Jupiter would give us power and strength,  
Troy City strongly wold it win at length.*

But otherwise when indignities were offered unto him, and he unjustly wronged and abused, heing another note, and displaid his tongue at large in anger, breaking out into theise haughty and brave words:

*With ships of mine well mann'd with soldiers brave,  
By force of armes twelve Cities won I have,  
Allo,*

*For why? approach they dare not neare to me,  
The brightnesse of my morion for to see.*

For liberty of franke speech, being a part of justification and defence in law, is allowed to use great words for plea. And verily *Themistocles* according to this rule, who all the while that he performed the exploits of noblesse in his own countrey, never did or said ought that favoured of odious pride: yet when he once saw that the Athenians were full of him, and that they made account of him no more, forbare not to say unto them thus: What mean you my Masters of *Athen* thus to disdain and be weary of those at whose hands you receive so oftentimes benefites? In time of storme and tempest you flee to them for refuge, and shroud your selves in their protection as under the labour and covert of a spreading tree; no sooner is the storme overblowne, and the weather fairegaine, but you are ready to give a twitch at them, and every one to pull and breake a branch thereof as you passe by. Thus you see how these men perceiving themselves otherwise injured, in their discontentments stick not to rehearse their service and good deeds past and call them in their teeth who are forgetfull thereof. But he that is blamed and suffereth a reproach for things well done, is altogether for to be excused and unblameable, in case he set in hand to praise his own deeds, forasmuch as he seemeth not to reproach and upbraid any, but to answer only in his own defence, and to justifie himselfe. Certes, this it was that gave unto *Demosthenes* an honest and laudable liberty to speak for his own behoove; and he avoided thereby all tedious satiety of his own praises, which he used throughout that whole oration, intituled *Of the Crown*, wherein he gloried and vaunted of that which was imputed unto him as reproachable, to wit, the embassages in which he went, and the decrees which he had procured as touching the war. Moreover, not far from these points above rehearsed, the reversing of an objection by way of *Antithesis* may be placed, and carrieth with it a good grace; to wit, when the defendant doth prove and shew that the contrary to that wherewith he is charged and accused, is wicked and dishonest: After which manner the Orator *Lycurgus* at *Athen* in his plea, and answer to those who laid to his charge that he had given a peece of money to a sycophant for to stop his mouth and appease him: What kind of Citizen (quoth he) do you take me for to be? who all this long time that I have dealt in the government and managing of State-affaires among you, am challenged before you rather to have given than taken silver unjustly. Likewise *Cicero*, when *Metellus* laid unto him that he had undone and brought to confusion more men by his testimony, than saved by his patronage and eloquence; And what man is there (quoth he) who will not say by this, that there is more fidelity in me, than force of utterance. Also these places in *Demosthenes*: And who would not justly have condemned me to die, if I had but once gone about in bare word to contaminate the honours and glorious titles that this City hath? Again, And what (thinke ye) would these wicked persons have said, if whiles I discoursed particularity of these points, the Cities had fallen away and revolted: In sum, that whole oration throughout concerning the Crowne, most finely and wittily interteth his own praises among those oppositions and solutions which he alledged. Over and besides, it is worth the noting and learning, as a most profitable point, how cunningly in the said Oration, and how artificially he intermeddeth with the speeches that he gave out of himselfe, the commendations also of the hearers, and thereby freed himselfe from the taint of envy, hatred, and selfe-love; namely, in avowing how good and gracious the Athenians were to those of *Euboea*; how worthily they demeaned themselves toward the Thebanes; what good turnes they had done to the Byzantines, as also how beneficiall they had been to the Inhabitants of *Cherchomus* lying withall, that himselfe was but their minister.

For

For I assure you by this meanes the hearer himselfe being secretly won and gained ere he is aware by his own praises, entertaineth more willingly and with greater pleasure the speech of the Orator; well contented he is, and pleased to heare the good deeds related by another which he hath done; and upon this joy of his there influeth incontinently an admiration and love of those, by whose meanes he hath achieved those acts. Hereupon *Epaminondas* one day in open place, when *Menechides*, one of his envious and malicious adversaries mocked him for that he magnified and thought better of himselfe than ever did King *Agamemnon*; Grand mercy, you my matters of *Thebes* (quoth he) with whom alone I overthrew in one day and subverted the whole dominion of the *Lacedaemonians*. Now forasmuch as the most part of men ordinarily mislike in their hearts, and are ungraciously offended with one that praiseth himselfe, but are not to against him that commendeth another; may, many times they are well pleased therewith, and ready to confirme such praises by their own testimonies: some are wont to have this devile, namely, in taking their time and opportunity to commend those who love, chaste, and do the selfe-same things, and briefly who are of the like conditions, and given to the same humour with themselves, do wind and insinuate into the grace and favour of the hearer, and by such an occasion draw his heart unto them; for straightwaies he doth acknowledge in the speaker, although he speaketh of another, the resemblance and similitude of the like vertue which deserveth the same praises: for like as he who reproacheth another man for those vices wherof himselfe is guilty, doth hurt his own person more than the party whom he seemeth to touch; even so good and honest men in yielding honour to those persons who are good, do as much as make mention of themselves to such as are privy to their vertues, and know them well enough; inasmuch as presently they are ready to follow and second them with theise and such like acclamations: And are not you also the same in every respect? After this sort *Alexander* in honouring *Hercules*; and *Andropagus* likewise in honouring *Alexander*, procured to themselves each one due honour from the semblable. Contrariwise *Dionysius* by mocking *Gelon*, and laying by allusion to his name; that he was *Gelos* indeed (that is to say) the Laughter and mockery of *Sicily* perceived not how before he was aware, by the envy that he drew upon him himselfe, he overthrew the greatness and dignity of his own puissance and leignity. A man of State therefore, and a Politician, ought to learne, observe, and practice these rules even in other cases also. And as for those who otherwise are enforced to praise themselves, they shall cause this selfe-praise of theirs to be more tolerable and lesse subject to envy and hard conceit, in case they take not all to themselves and attribute the whole to their own worthinesse; but as if glory were some heavy and weighty burden, discharge one part thereof upon fortune, and another upon God; and therefore wisely said *Achilles* in *Homer*:

*Since that thy almighty Gods have given me grace,  
By force of armes I will mine enemy to overthrow in place.*

Wherewith also *Timoleon* at *Sacrausa*, who upon his valiant and noble exploits dedicated an altar to *Blowdowne*, and likewise consecrated an house to his good Angell. But best of all and most wisely did that *Platon* the *Athen*, who being arrived at *Athen* after he had murdered King *Cotys*, when the Orators lived a vie one with another, who should extoll and set forth his praises most unto the people, and perceiving some to carry an envious eye unto him, and be highly displeased with him; as he passed by brake forth into these words: It was some God (quoth he) O ye Athenians that did this deed, as for my selfe, I did but lend my helping hand. Semblably, *Sylla* exempted his own acts from envy, in giving alwaies the praises to his good fortune; inasmuch as in the end, he turned himselfe *Ennagis*, that is, lovely, fortunate, or *Venus* darling. For all men in manner would seeme to be vanquished rather by fortune, than conquered by vertue: for that they thinke the one to be a good, not pertinent to the conqueror, and the other a proper defect and imperfection of their wounded wisdom, and good fortune from themselves: which is the reason by report, that the *Laws* of *Zaleucus* wondrously pleased the *Locians*; for that he put into their heads and bare them in hand, that the goddesse *Minerva* appeared and came many times unto him; that she endited and taught him those laws which he framed and gave unto them: finally, that there was not one of them proceeding from his head, counsell and invention. Peradventure therefore necessary it is to devise theise and such like remedies, and lenitive medicines to meet with those persons, who are by nature fierce and envious; but to such as be of the better sort, and of a modest and temperate disposition, it would not be impertinent and absurd to use certaine corrections of praises in this case: as for example; If onechapel in our presence fall to praise us for being eloquent, learned, rich, or in great reputation, to pray him not to give such reports of us, but rather for to commend us if we be good and bountifull, hurtfull to none, and profitable to many; for in so doing, we seeme not to confer praises upon our selves, but to transfer them; not to take pleasure in them that praise us, but rather to be grieved and displeased, that we are not praised for such things as we ought, nor as we should; as also to hide the worse qualities under the better, not so much willing and desirous to be praised, as to testify how it is meet to praise; for this manner of speech (neither with stone nor bricke walls fortified, and walled this City, but if you will needs know how I have lent it, you shall find) that I have furnished it with armours, horses, confederates, and allies) seemeth to come neare and neerer to us, as a shield; and the saying of *Pericles* toucheth it neerer: for when the houre of death was upon us, we approached and that he was to go out of this world, his kinsfolke and familiar friends beseeching, wailing, and grieving thereat (as good reason was) called to mind and rehearsed the

armies

Armies that he had conducted, the expeditions which he had made, his puissance that he had borne, as also how many victories he had achieved, what Trophies he had erected, what Townes and Cities he had conquered, and laid to the seigniorie of the Athenians; all which he now should leave behind him: but he lifting up himselfe a little, reprov'd and blamed them greatly for relating and allelding those praises which were common to many, and whereof some were more due to fortune than to vertue; whyles they omitted and let passe the greatest and most beautifull commendation of all others, and that which truly and indeed properly belonged unto him: namely, that for his sake there was never any Athenian that put on black, or wore a mourning gowne: this example of his giveth both unto an Orator if he be praised for his singular eloquence, meanes, and occasion to transfer the praise unto his life and manners: and also to a warrior and generall Capitaine, who is had in admiration for his marriall prowesse, experience, or fortunat success in wars, to stand rather upon his clemency and justice, and thereof freely to discourse. And contrariwise againe, when a man hath excessive praises heaped upon him (as the manner commonly of many is, by way of flattery to give those commendations which move envy) meet it is to use such a speech as this:

*With gods in heaven above I have no share,  
To them therefore why dost thou me compare?*

But if thou know'st me aright, and take'st me truly for such an one as I am, praise these good parts in me; that I am uncorrupt and not overtaken with gifts and bribery; that I am sober and temperate; that I am sensible, reasonable, full of equity and humanity. For the nature of envy is willingly to yield unto them that reuseth the greater praises those that be lesse and more modest: neither depriveth she of true commendation those who will not admit and receive false and vaine praises, and therefore men thinke not much to honour those Kings and Princes who are unwilling to be belied gods, or the children of gods, but rather to be intituled either *Philadelphus*, that is, Kind to others and sisters; or *Philotomus*, that is, Loving to their mothers; or *Euergetes*, that is, Benefactor, or else *Theophilus*, that is, Dearly beloved of the gods; which are goodly and beautifull denominations, meet for men and good Princes: like as againe, those who hardly will endure them, either in writing or speaking, attribute unto them the name of *Sophi*, that is, Sages or wise men, as well abide to hear those who name them *Philosophi*, that is, Lovers of wisdom; or such as of them, that they profit in the study of wisdom, or give them such like attribute as is modest and not subject to envy; whereas these ambitious Rhetoricians and vaine-glorious Sophisters, who in their orations (to shew their learning) expect these and such like acclamations from their auditors. O divine and angel-like speech! O heavenly and magnificently spoken! I see withall this commendation, as to be laid for to have delivered their mind modestly, curiously, and as becometh civil men. Certes, like as they who be loath and take heed to offend and hurt them that be blaz'd or otherwise given to the paine and inflammation of them, do mingle among the gallant and lively colours, some dusky shadows; even so, some there be, who in rehearsing their own praises, are together repend and cleare without any mixture at all, but intermedd with some imperfections, defects, and light faults among, by that meanes discharge themselves of the heavy load of envy and hatred. Thus *Epicurus* in *Homer*, giving out glorious words of his wrestling and buffet-fight, vaunting bravely of his valour,

*As if he would his teene and anger wreak  
Upon him, and with fists his bones all break.*

Said withall,

*It's not enough that herein I do vaunt  
For other skill in combat I do want.*

But haply this man is worthy to be mocked and laughed at, who for to excuse his arrogant bravery of a wrestler and champion, bewrayed and confessed that otherwife he was but a fearfull coward, whereas contrariwise that man is of judgement, civil also and gracious besides, who alledgeth against himselfe some oblivion or ignorance, some ambitions spirit, or else a desire to heare and learne Sciences and other knowledge, like as *Myces* when he said:

*But for my mind desirous was  
To hearken and give eare,  
I will'd my makes me to unlesse,  
That I might go more neare.*

And againe in another place:

*Although much better it had beene,  
Yet would I not believe:  
But see his person, and then try  
If gifts he would me give.*

To be short, all sorts of faults, so they be not altogether dishonest and over-bare, if they be set unto praises, rid them of all envy and hatred; and many other there be, who interposing a confession of poverty, want of experience, yea, and (beleeve me) their base parentage, among their praises, cast them thereby to be lesse odious and envied. Thus *Agathocles*, as he late drinking unto young men, our of gold and silver plate right curiously wrought, commanded other vessels of stone, earthen

and potters worke to be set upon the table, saying unto them: Lo (quoth he) what it is to perforce in travell, to take paines, and adventure valiantly? for we in times past made those pots, (pointing to the earthen vessels) but see, now we make these, (shewing the plate of gold and silver;) and verily it seemed that *Agathocles* (by reason of his base birth and poverty) was brought up in some potters forge, who afterward became the absolute Monarch (almost) of all *Sicily*. Thus it appeareth what remedies may be applied outwardly, to avoid envy, if a man be forced to speak of himselfe: other means there be besides, inherent (after a sort) even in them who be in this wise praised: and such *Cato* made use of, when he said, that he was envied because he neglected his own affairs, and sate up watching whole nights for the good safety of his countrie. Like to which is this speech:

*What wisdome thinke you was in me,  
who cleane exempt from care,  
From charge and travell, like some one,  
who in the army were;  
A plaine and common souldier  
might enjoy within the host  
My fortune with the wisest of  
them all that middle most?*

As also this other:

*I doubt and feare, that of my labours past,  
The thanks is gone, and carried with a blast;  
And yet those paines that now presented be  
Afford, reject uneth I will from me.*

For men ordinarily beare envy unto those who seem to acquire glory gratis, without any cost, and to come by vertue easily, like as if they purchased house or land for a little or nothing; whereas seldome or never they envy such as have bought the same very dear, with many travells and great dangers. And forasmuch as we ought in praising of our selves to effect not only this; that we offend not the hearers thereby nor procure their envy, but endeavour also to profit them, and do them good, as if we seemed not to aim at our self-praise, but to shew at some other thing: in so doing consider first and forme out when a man is in a vein of praising himselfe, whether he may do it by way of exhortation to kindle a zeal, and exercise a kind of emulation, and strive for glory in the hearers: after the example of *Nestor*, who in recounting his own prowesse and valiant service, encouraged *Patroclus* and the other nine gallants and brave Knights, to enter combat and single fight with *Hector*: for an exhortation which hath word and deed to meet together, carrying with it example, with a familiar zeal and imitation, is wonderfull quick and lively, it pricketh, provoketh and stirreth exceedingly, and together with a resolute courage and ardent affection, it carrieth with it the hope of compassing things very accessible and in no wise impossible: and therefore of the three renowned dances and quires in *Lacedemon*, one which consisted of old men, chanted thus:

*The time was, when we gallants were,  
Toughfull and hardy, void of feare.*

Another of children, sung in this wise:

*And we one day shall be both tall and strong,  
And farre surpass, if that we live so long.*

The third, namely of young men, had this ditty:

*But we are come to proove, and now at best,  
Try who that will, to fight we are now prest.*

Wherein the law-giver who instituted these dances, did wisely and politickly, to propose unto young men such familiar examples and at hand, even by those things that were done and executed. Yet nevertheless, it were not amiss, otherwhiles to vaunt and to speak highly and magnificently of ones self, for to daunt, bear down, repress and keep (as it were) under hand, a bragging and audacious fellow like as *Nestor* himselfe did again in another place:

*Convers'd have I in my daies  
with men of better deed  
Than you in us, and yet disdain  
they never would my reed.*

Sensibly said *Aristotle* unto King *Alexander*: That lawfull it was and becoming not only for those to have an haughty mind, who had many subjects under them at their command; but such also as held true opinions as touching the gods. And verily these points are commodious for us otherwhiles, even in regard of our enemies, foes, and evil willers, according to that verse in *Homer*:

*Children they are of wretched fire,  
and born to misadventure,  
Whose lucke it is my force of armes  
in battell to encounter.*

*Agamemnon* also, having speech upon a time as touching the King of *Persia* who usually was called the Great Monarch: And wherein (quoth he) is that King greater than my selfe, if hee be not more just and righteous. *Egaminondas* likewise replied upon the *Lacedemonians*, who had framed a long accusation against the Thebans: Well it is (quoth he) and a good turne that we yet have

have made you give over your accustomed short speech, Thus much of those rules which concerne either our private and particular evil willers, or our publique enemies.

As for our friends and fellow-Citizens, we may likewise by using fitly in time and place, and as the case requireth haughty language, not only take down and cause those to vaile bonnet, who are over-proud and audacious; but also on the other side raise up and encourage such, as are dimmed, astonished, and beyond measure timorous. For *Cyrus* also in the midst of battell and dangers in war, was wont to speak bravely, but else-where not. And *Antigonus* the younger, or second of that name, who otherwise was in words sober, modest, and nothing proud; yet in a battell at sea which he fought near the *Ile Cos*; when one of his friends about him said a little before the medley began: See you not, Sir, how many ships our enemies have more then we? Why (quoth he) for how many ships dost thou reckon me? And it should seem that *Homer* was of the same mind, and meant so much, when he feigneth that *Ulysses* seeing his people affrighted with the hideous noise and fearful tempest that issued out of the gulph *Charybdis*, called to their remembrance his subtil engine and singular valour in laying thus unto them:

*My friends and mates, this accident  
is not so dangerous,  
As when that monstrous Cyclops he,  
a giant furious,  
Us turn'd and court with mighty force  
about his hollow caves,  
Yet thence we chas'd him by my wit,  
advice, and proved brave.*

For this manner of praising proceedeth not from a glozing and vaine-glorious Orator, nor a vanishing Sophister, nor from one that seeketh applause, and clapping of hands; but becometh a personage who pawneeth unto his friends, as a gage of assurance and confidence, his own vertue and sufficiency. For a matter this is of great importance and consequence tending to safety in dangerous times, to wit, the opinion, reputation and assistance, that we may have of a man in authority, and the experienced prowess of a Captain. Now albeit I have sufficiently shewed before, that it is neither convenient nor seemly for a man of State and honour to oppose himself against the glory and praise of another; yet nevertheless when the case so standeth, that a false and perverse commendation doth bring hurt and damage, and by example intereth a dangerous imitation of evil things, together with a wicked purpose and lewd intention in matters of great moment, it were not amiss to repulse the same back, or rather to divert and turn away the hearer unto better things, and open unto him the difference: for in mine advice, a man may well take content and delight, to see that men obtain willingly from vice, when they perceive it to be blamed and reprov'd; but in lieu of condemning it, if they hear it commended, and if over and besides the pleasure and profit that commonly it seemeth to bring with it; it be held also in honour and reputation, there is not a nature so happy and blessed, nor so strong and stout withall, but he is able to conquer it: and therefore a man of policy and government ought to make war and fight, not so much against the praises of persons, as of things, in case they be corrupt and naught: for these they be that spill and marre our manners, by reason that with such praises there entereth commonly a will to imitate and follow such dishonest and foule actions, as if they were good and seemly: but then most of all are they detected what they be, and do appear in their colours, when they are compared in opposition with true praises indeed. Thus it is reported, that *Theodorus* the Tragedian actor, said upon a time unto *Satyrus* a Comical Player: That it was no great marvel to make the spectators to laugh, but rather a matter of wonder to cause them for to weep and cry: but (I suppose) a sage and wise Philosopher may well say thus unto the same *Theodorus*: Nay (good Sir) it is not so great a matter to set men a weeping and wailing, but rather to still and stay their sorrow and lamentation, were an admirable thing: for if a man praise himself in this sort, he profiteth the hearer, and changeth his judgement. Thus did *Zeno* speak of the great number of *Theophrastus* his scholars, who resorted unto his school: His quire (quoth he) is greater then mine, but yet mine accordeth better, and maketh the sweeter harmony. *Phocion* likewise, when as *Leosthenes* still flourished and bare a great name, being demanded by the Rhetoricians who used to make solemn orations, what good himselfe had ever done to the weal-publique, answered them in this manner: None other (quoth he) but this, that all the while I was Lord General, and had the conduct of an army, none of you all made ever any funeral oration, but interred all your Citizens who departed this life, in the sepulchers and monuments of your ancestors. As for *Craut* when he read these verses containing the Epitaph of *Sardanapalus*:

*What hath gone down my throat I have,  
my wanton sports remaine,  
Which Lady Venus did vouchsafe,  
All else I count but vaine.  
Wrote thus againe very wittily and in a pleasant conceit:  
What during life I studied have  
and learned, is my gaine,  
The skill which muses then me gave,  
and naught else I retain.*

For such manner of praise as this, is excellent, honest and profitable, teaching men to love, esteeme and admire such things as be commodious and expedient, and not those that are vaine and superfluous; and therefore this advertisement ought to be ranged with the rest before specified, as touching the subject argument now in question.

It remaineth now by order and course according as the present theam in hand requireth, and our discourse admonisheth us, to declare how every man may avoid this importunate and unseasonable self-praise: for surely to speak of a mans selfe, having selfe-love as a commodious sort from whence it issueth, seemeth many times to lay wait and give the assault even unto them who are of all others most modest and farthest from vain-glory. And like as one precept of health there is, to sleepe and shunne altogether unwholesome traits and contagious, or at leastwise to take heed of them most carefully if a man be in them; even so there be certaine dangerous times and dippery places, which one shall slide and fall into upon the least occasion in the world, by rashly speaking of himselfe. For first and foremost, those who are by nature ambitious, when they hear another man praised, commonly (as it hath been said before) advance forward to talk of themselves, and then anon this humour of self-praise being once provoked and tickled (as it were) with an itch, a certaine desire and furious appetite of glory which hardly can be held in, taketh hold of them, especially if the party who is praised before them be but equal or inferior to them in merit: for like as they who are hungry have the greater appetite, and are provoked more to eat, when they see others fall to their meat before them; even so the praise of another inflameth the jealousy of those who be given to the greedy desire of honour and glory. Secondly, the recital and discourse of those things which have been haply executed, and to a mans minde, drive many men into a brave vanishing, for the joy that they conceive in relating the fame: for after they bee once fallen into a narration of their victories achieved in warre, or the enterprises which they have fortunately managed in their sovereign government of State, or their actions and affaires performed under other chiefe Rulers and Commanders, or of the speeches which they have made to great purpose, and good successe and commendation, they cannot contain and hold themselves: to which kind of vanishing and speaking of ones selfe, we see those are most subject who are warriours and serve especially at sea: likewise this hapneth usually unto such who are come from the Courts of mighty Princes, or from those places where there hath been exploited some great service: for in making mention of Princes and grand Seigneurs, they cannot chuse but enterlace ordinarily among, some speeches which those Potentates have delivered to their commendation; and therein they do not think that they praise themselves, but recite onely the commendable testimonies that others have given out of them: and verily such as these, be of opinion that the hearers perceive them not, when they recount the embracements, greetings, salutations, and favours which Kings, Emperours, and such great Potentates have bestowed upon them; as if forthwith they rehearsed not their own selfe-praises, but the courtesies and demonstrations of the bounty and humanity of others: whereof every one of us ought most fully and waitly to look unto our selves when we praise any one, that the said praises be pure and sincere, void of supstition, that we do not respect and aim at an oblique selfe-love, and speech of our own selves, for feare lest we make the commendation of *Paroculus*, as it is in *Homer*, a covert, colour and pretence of our own praise, and by commending others cunningly, praise our own selves. Moreover, all the sorts of blames and reprehensions of others, are otherwhiles very dangerous, causing those to go out of the way and stumble, who are never so little sick of vaine glory; into which malady old folkem many times incur, and namely, when they breake out into the reproofe of their youngers, finding fault with their lewd manners and fashions, for then in blaming others, they fall to magnifying themselves, as if in times past they had done wonders, in comparison of those things which now they condemn: and verily such as they be we ought to give place unto, in case they be not only for age, but also in regard of their vertue and reputation venerable: for this manner of rebuke is not unprofitable, but breedeth in those who are chastised by them, a great desire and emulation withall to attain unto the like place of honour and dignity. But as for our selves, we ought to take heed and beware how we trip or tread awry in this case: for the manner of blaming our neighbors, being as it is otherwise very odious and almost intolerable, and which hath need of great caution and warinesse: he that minds his proper praise with the blame of another, and seeketh glory by his infamy, cannot chuse but be exceeding hateful and unprofitable, as if he hunted after renown and honour by the reproachfull and dishonourable parts of his neighbours. Furthermore, as they who naturally are inclined and disposed to laughter, are to avoid and decline the ticklings and loof handling in those parts of the body that are most smooth, sleeck and tender, which foon yielding and relenting to those light touches, stirre up and provoke immediately that passion of laughing; even so this caveat and advertisement would be given unto such as passionately be given to this desire of glory, that they abstain from praising themselves, at what time as they be applauded by others: for a man that heareth himselfe praised, ought indeed to blush for shame, and not with a bold and shamelesse face to hearken thereto, nay, he should do well to reprove those that report some great matter of him, rather then to finde fault for saying too little, and not praising him sufficiently: a thing iwis that many mendo, who are ready of themselves to prompt and suggest, yea and to interre other magnanimous facts and prowesses, so far forth that they marre all, as well the praise that they give themselves, as the laudable testimoniall of others, And I assure you many there be who flattering themselves, tickle and

puffe up their own conceits with nothing else but wind; others again upon a malicious intent, laying some petty praise as it were a bait for them to bite at, draw them on thereby to fall into their own commendation: some also you shall have who to that purpose will keep a questioning with them, and propose certaine demands for the nonce to train them within their toile, and all to have the more matter that they might soon after laugh at. Thus in *Menander* the glorious souldier made good sport, being demanded of one,

DEMAND. *Good Sir how came you by this wound and scar?*  
 SOUL DIER. *By dint of javelin lanced from a far.*  
 DEMAND. *But how? for Gods sake how? let us all know:*  
 SOUL DIER. *As I a wall did scale I caught this blow.*  
*But well I see whiles that I do my best*  
*This to relate, these make of me a jest.*

And therefore in all these cases, a man ought to be as wary as possibly he can, that he neither himselfe break out in his own praises, nor yet bewray his weaknesse and folly by such interrogatories: and that he may in the best and most absolute manner take heed thereto, and save himselfe from such inconveniences, the readiest way is to observe others neerly that love to be praisers of themselves; namely, to call to mind and repent unto their own remembrance, how displeasing and odious a thing it is to all the world, and that there is or can be no other speech to unfavour, tedious & irksome to heare: for suppose that we are not able to say that we suffer any other harme at their hands, who praise themselves, yet we doe all that we can to avoid such speech; we make shift to be delivered from it, and happen all that we may to breath our selves, as if it were a heavy burden, which offit selfe and the own nature overcharge us, inasmuch as it is troublesome and intolerable unto flatterers, parasites, and needy imel-seasts in that necessity and indigence of theirs, to hear a rich man, a Prince, a Governour, or a King to praise himselfe: may, they give out that they pay the greatest portion of the shot, when they must have patience to give care to such vanities; like to that *Jefferin Menander*, who breaketh out into these words,

*Hee killt me when at his board I sit,*  
*And with his cheer I fatter am no whit,*  
*But rather pine away, you may be sure,*  
*When such bald jests to heare I must endure.*  
*And yet as wife and warlike as they seem,*  
*A bragging fool and lewd foole them deem.*

For considering that we are wont to say thus, not onely against souldiers and glorious upstarts newly enriched, whose manner is to make much of their painted sheaths, pouring out brave and proud discourses; but also against Sophisters, Rhetoricians and Philosphers, yea and great Captains, puffing up with arrogancy and presumption, and speaking big words of themselves: If we would call to remembrance that a mans own proper praises be accompanied alwaies with the dispraises of others, and that the end commonly of such vaine glory is shame and infamy also, that tediousnesse unto the hearers, is (as *Demosthenes* saith) the reward, and not any opinion to be reputed such as they say, we would be more sparing and forbear to speak so much of our selves, unless some greater profit and advantage might afterwards grow either to us, or to the hearers in place.

## What Passions and Maladies be worse, those of the Soule, or those of the Body?

### The Summary.

**T**His present question upon which *Plutarch* hath framed this declamation, whereof there remaineth extant in our hands but one little parcell, hath been of long time discussed and debated among men the greater is our damage and detriment, that we have here no decision, nor a more ample resolution of it by so excellent a Philosopher as he was: but seeing that this losse cannot be recovered, let us seeke for the clearing of all this matter in other authors; but principally in those, who search deeply to the very bottom, for to discover the source of all the maladies of the soule; instead of such writers who have treated of moral Philosophy, according to the doctrine and light of nature, onely accompanied with precepts out of her schools, and have not touched the point but superficially, as being ignorant what is originall and hereditary corruption: what is sinne; how it entred first into the world; what are the greatest impressions, assaults, assaults, assaults, and what is the end and reward thereof. But to come unto this fragment, our Author after he had shewed that man of all living creatures is most miserable, declareth wherein these humane miseries ought to be considered, and proveth withall, that the diseases of the soule are more dangerous than those of the body, for that they be more in number, and the same exceeding different, hard to be known and incurable, as evidently it is to be seen in effect, that those who are afflicted with such Maladies, have their judgement depraved and overturned, refusing remedy with the losse of rest and repose, and a singular pleasure which they take to discover their unquietnes, anxiety and misery.

What

## What Passions and Maladies are worse, those of the Soule, or those of the Body.

**H**OMER having viewed and considered very well the sundry sorts of living creatures more tall, compared also one kind with another, as well in the continuance as the conversation and manner of their life, concluded in the end with this exclamation,

*Lo how of creatures, all one earth*  
*which walk and draw their wind,*  
*More miserable none there are,*  
*nor wretcheder than mankind.*

Attributing unto man this unhappy sovereignty, that he hath the superiority in all miseries whatsoever: but we setting this down for a supposition granted already, that man carrieth the victory, and surpasseth all others for his infortunity, and is already declared and pronounced the most unhappy wretch of all living creatures, will set in hand to compare him with his own selfe, in a certaine conference of his proper calamities that follow him; and that by dividing him, not in vain and unfruitfully, but very pertinently, and to good purpose, into the soule and the body, to the end that we may learn and know thereby, whether we live more miserably in regard of our soules, or ourselves, that is to say, our bodies: for a disease in our body is engendered by nature; but vice and sinne in the soule is first an action, but afterwards becommeth a passion thereof: so that it is no small consolation, but maketh much for the contentment of our mind, to know that the worse is curable, and the lighter is that which cannot be avoided.

The Fox in *Aesop* pleading upon a time against the Leopard, as touching the variety of colours in their skins, after that the Leopard had shewed her body, which to the eye and in outward appearance was well marked and beset with faire spots, whereas the Foxes skin was tawny, a roue and ill-favoured to see to: But you (quoth he) sir Judge, if you look within, shall find me more spotted and divers coloured, then that Leopard there; meaning the craft and subtilty which hee had to turn and change himselfe in divers sorts, as need required; after the same manner let us say within our selves: O man, thy body breedeth and bringeth forth many maladies and passions naturally of it selfe, many also it receiveth and entertaineth coming from without, but if thou wilt anatomize and open thy selfe, thou shalt find within, a fave, an ambry, nay, a store-house and treasure (as *Democritus* saith) of many evils and maladies, and those of divers and sundry sorts, not entering and running in from abroad, but having their originall sources springing out of the ground, and home-bred, the which vice abundant, rich and plenteous in passing-ore putteth forth. Now, whereas the diseases that possess the body and the flesh, are discovered and known by their inflammations and red colour, by pulses also or beating of the arteries, and namely, when the visage is more red or pale than customably it is, or when some extraordinary heat of lassitude, without apparent cause, bewraileth them: contrariwise, the infirmities and maladies of the soule are hidden many times unto those that have them, who never thinke that they be sicke and ill at ease; and in this regard worse they be, for that they deprive the patients of the sense and feeling of their sicknesse: for the discourse of reason, whiles it is sound and whole, seetheth the maladies of the body: but as for the diseases of the soule, whiles reason her selfe is sick, she hath no judgement at all of that which shee suffereth, for the selfe same that should judge is diseased; and we are to deem and esteeme, that the principall and greatest malady of the soule is folly, by reason whereof vice, being remediless and incurable in many, is cohabitant to them, liveth and dieth with them: for the first degree and very beginning of a cure, is the knowledge of a disease, which leadeth and directeth the patient to seek for help: but he who will not believe of a disease, which leadeth and directeth the patient to seek for help: but he who will not believe that he is amiss or sick, nor knowing what he hath need of, although a present remedy were offered unto him, will refuse and reject the same. And verily, among those diseases which afflict the body, those are counted worst which take a man with a privation of sense: as lethargies, interleare Head-ach, or Phrenies, Epilepsies or Falling evils, Apoplexies and Feavers; ardent; for these burning Agues many times augment their heat so much, that they bring a man to the losse of his right wits, and to trouble the senses, as it were in a musical instrument, that

*They stirre the strings at secret roote of heart,*  
*Which touched should not be, but lie apart.*

Which is the reason that practitioners in physick desire and wish in the first place, that a man were not sick at all, but if he be sick, that hee bee not ignorant and senseless altogether of his disease: a thing that ordinarily befallteth to all those who be sick in mind: for neither wiseleefe fools, nor diffolute and loose persons. ne yet those who be unjust and deale wrongfully, think that they do amiss and sinne; nay, some of them are periwaded that they do right well. Never was there man yet, who esteemed an ague to be health, nor the phthisick or consumption to be a good sight and habit of the body, nor that the gout in the feet was good footmanhip, ne yet that to be ruddy and pale or yellow, was all one, yet you shall have many who are diseased in minde, to call halfe sinne and cholet valiance: wanton love, amity: envy, emulation; and cowardice, wary prudence. Moreover, they that be bodily sick, send for the physicians (because they know whereof they stand in need) for to heal

their



their diseases; whereas the other avoid and shun the sage Philosophers; for they thinke verily, that they do well when they fault most. Upon this reason we hold, that the ophthalmie, that is to say, the inflammation of bloud-shotten eyes, is a lesse malady, than *Mania*, that is to say, rage and furious madness; and that the gout in the feet is nothing so bad as the phrenie, which is an inflammation or impostume bred in the brain; for the one of these patients finding himself diseased, crieth out for pain, and calleth for the physician, and no sooner is he come, but he sheweth him his diseased eyes for to dresse and anoint, he holdeth forth his veine for to be opened, and yieldeth unto him his head to be cored; whereas you shall heare Lady *Agave* in the Tragedies, so farre transported out of all sense and understanding (by reason of her raging fit) that she knew not those persons which were most deare and entire unto her; for thus she saith:

*This little one here newly kill'd,  
And cut in pieces in the field,  
From hils we bring to dwelling place,  
How happy, O, hath been our chiefe!*

As for him who is sick in body, presently yieldeth thereto, he laies him down upon his pallet, or teth his naked bed, he caleteth himselfe all that he can, and is content and quiet all the while that the physician hath him in cure; but peradventure if he tumble and tosse in his bed, fling and cast off his clothes, by reason that his body is tormented with some grievous hot fit, no sooner stirreth he never to little, but one or other that standeth or sitteth by to tend him, is ready to say gently unto him:

*Poore soul be quiet, feare none ill,  
Deare heart in bed, see thou lie still.*

He saith and keepeth him down, that he shall not start and leap out of his bed: but contrariwise, that he be surprised with the passions of the soule, at such a time be most busie, then they be least in repose and quiet; for their violent motions be the causes moving their actions, and their passions are the vehement fits of such motions: this is the cause that they will not let the soule to be at rest, but but even then when as a man hath most need of patience, silence and quiet, they draw him most of all abroad into the open aire; then are discovered soonest his cholerick passions, his opinionative and contentious humours, his wanton love and his grievous sorrows, enforcing him to commit many enormities against the lawes, and to speak many words unreasonably, and not besting the time.

Like as therefore much more perilous is the tempest at sea, which impeacheth and putterh back a ship, that it cannot come into the harbour to ride at anchor, than that which will not suffer it to get out of the haven, and make saile in open sea; even so those tempestuous passions of the soule are more dangerous which will not permit to be at rest, nor to settle his discourse of reason once troubled, but overturneth it upside down, as being disurnished of Pilots and cables, nor wel ballasted in the storm, wandring to and fro without a guide and steers-man, carried mauge into rash and dangerous courses, so long until in the end it falleth into some shipwrack, and where it overthroweth the whole life, in such sort that in regard of these reasons and others sensible, I conclude, that worse it is to be foul-sick, than diseased in body; for the bodies being sick, suffer only, but the soules if they be sick, both suffer and do also amisse. To prove this, what need we further to particularize and alledge for examples many other passions, considering that the occasion of this present time is sufficient to admonish us thereof, and to refresh our memorie? See you not this great multitude and presse of people thrusting and thronging here about the Tribunal and common place of the City; they are not all assembled hither to sacrifice to the Tutelargods, Protectors of their native Countrey, nor to participate in common the same Religion, and sacred ceremonies of divine service; they are not all met here together for to offer an oblation unto *Jupiter Astræus*, out of the first fruits of *Lydia*, and to celebrate and solemnize in the honour of *Bacchus*, during these holy nights, his festivall revels with dances, masks and mummeries accustomed: but like as by yearly accesse and anniverfarie revolutions, the forcible vigour of the pestilence returneth for to irritate and provoke all *Asia*; so they resort hither to entertain their suits and processes in law to follow their pleas; and a world here is of affairs, like to many brooks and rivulets which run all at once into one channell and main stream: so they are met in the same place, which is pestered and filled with an infinite multitude of people, to hurt themselves and others. From what Fevers or cold, ague-fits, proceed these effects? from what tensions or remissions, augmentations or diminutions? from what distemperature of heat, or overspreading of cold humours comes all this? If you ask of every severall cause here in suite, as if they were men and able to answer you from whence it arose, how it grew, and whereupon it came and first began; you shall find that one matter was engendered, by some willfull and proud anger; another proceeded from a troublesome and litigious spirit; and a third was caused by some unjust desire and unlawfull lust.

The

## The Precepts of Wedlocke.

## The Summary.

**W**E have here a mixture and medley of rules for married folke, who in the persons of Pollianus and Eurydice, are taught their mutual duty: upon which argument needlesse it is to discourse at large, considering that the whole matter is set out particularly, and tenderly to this point: That both at the beginning, in the sequel also and continuation of marriages, man and wife ought to assist, support, and love one another with a single heart and affection, farre removed from disdainfull pride, violence, vanity, and fittiness; the which is specified and comprised in 45. Articles; howbeit in such sort, that there be some of those precepts, which favour of the corruption of those times, bewraying the insufficiency of humane wisdomes, unless it be lightened with Gods truth. We see also in this Treatise, more particular advertisements appropriate to both parties, touching their devoir as well at home as abroad; and all enriched with notable similitudes and excellent examples. In summe, if these precepts following be well weighed and practised, they are able to make mans life much more easie and commodious than it is. But Plutarch sheweth sufficiently by the biethrit rule, how hard a matter it is to attaine each one in their severall duty; and that in manner all do regard and looke upon things with another eye, than they ought. However it be, those persons whom vertue hath linked and joined together in matrimony, may finde here whereby to profit; and so much the more, for that they have one lesson, which naturall equity and conscience putteth them in mind of every day, if they will enter never so little into themselves, which being joined with the commandments of the heavenly wisdomes, it cannot be but husband and wife shall live in contentment and blessed estate.

## The Precepts of Wedlocke.

## PLUTARCH to POLLIANUS and EURYDICE, sendeth greeting.

**A**fter the accustomed ceremoniall link of marriage in this country, which the Priestests of *Ceres* hath put upon you, in coupling you both together in one bed-chamber, I suppose that this discourse of mine, coming as it doth to favourize and second this bond and conjunction of yours, in furnishing you with good lessons and nuptiall wife advertisements, will not be unprofitable, but found, very fitting and conformable to the customarie wedding song observed in these parts. The musicians among other tunes that they had with the haut-boies, used one kind of note which they called *Hippobatos*, which is as much to say as Leap-mare; having this opinion that it stirred and provoked stallions to cover mares. But of many beautiful and good discourses which Philosophie affordeth unto us, one there is which deserveth no lesse to be esteemed than any other, by which these seeming to enchant and charm those who are come together to live all the daies of their life in mutuall society, maketh them to be more busome, kinde, tractable, and pliable one to the other. Therefore I have made a certain collection of such rules and precepts which your selves have heard already oftentimes, being both of you trained up and nourished in the study of Philosophie; and reduced them all in few words to certain principall heads and articles, to the end that they might be more easily remembered: the which I lend as a common present to you both, beseeching withall the Muses, that they would vouchsafe in your behalfe, and for your owne sake to assist and accompany the goddesse *Venus*; forasmuch as their office is to make a good consonance and accord in marriage and house-keeping, by the meanes of reason and harmonie Philosophicall, no lesse than to set in tune a lute or harp, or any musicall instrument.

1 And to begin withall: This is the reason that our ancients ordeined, that the image of *Venus* should be placed jointly with that of *Mercury*, as giving us thereby to understand, that the delight and pleasure of marriage, had need, especially to be maintained with good language and wise speeches: they used to set also with these two images, the Graces, and Goddesse of Eloquence, Lady *Pithe*, that is, Persuasion, intending thereby, that those folke whom the bond of matrimony had linked together, might obtain what they desired one at the others hand gently and by faire means, not by debate, chiding and brawles.

2 *Solo* gave order and commanded that the new-wedded bride should eat of a Quince before that she came in bed with her bridegroom; signifying covertly in mine opinion by this dark ceremony, that first and above all, the grace proceeding from the mouth, to wit, the breath and the voice ought to be sweet, pleasant, and agreeable in every respect.

3 In the Countrey of *Bavaria*, the custome was upon the wedding day when the nuptiall vaile was put over the bride, for to fterallo upon her head a chaplet made of wild preckie Spirach branches, for that this plant out of a most sharp and pricking thorn, putteth forth a most pleasant and delectable fruit; even so, the wedded wife in case her husband do not reject and fise her company, for the first difficulties and troublefome inconveniences incident to marriage, shall bring unto him afterwards, a sweet and amiable society; but they that cannot endure at first the jarres and quarrels of their young wives, whom they married virgins, may for all the world be resembled to those who give away ripe grapes from themselves to others; because they be sowre before they are ripe; semblably, many new wedded wives, who take a disdain to their husbands by reason of some debates and encounters at the first, do much like unto those who having abidden the sting of the Bee, cast away the honey-comb out of their hands. It behooveth therefore new-married folk, to take heed especially in the beginning, that they avoid all occasions of diffention and offence giving; considering this with themselves, and seeing daily that the pieces of wooden vessels which are newly joined and glued together, at the first are soon disjoined, and go asunder again upon the least occasion in the world, but after that in continuance of time the joint is strongly seled, and soundly confirmed, a man shall hardly part and separate one piece from another, with fire, or iron edged tool.

4 And like as fire kindleth soon and catcheth a flame if it meet with light stubble, chaffe, or the haire of an hare, but it quickly goeth out again, if there be not put thereto some matter or fellow anon, which may both hold in and also maintaine and feed the flame; even so, we are to think that the love of young wedded persons, which is enflamed and set on fire by youth, and the beauty of the body onely, is not firm and durable, unless it be surely founded upon the conformity of good and honest manners, and take hold of wisdom, whereby it may engender a lively affection and reciprocal disposition onetoward the other.

5 Fishes are soon caught and taken up by baits made of empoisoned paste, or such like medicines; but their meat is naught and dangerous to be eaten; semblably, those women who compound certain love-drinks, or device other charms and forceries for to give their husbands, and think by such allurements of pleasure, to have the hand and command over them, it is all to nothing, that afterwards in their life together, they shall find them to be blockish, foolish, and senseless companions. Those men whom *Circe* the famous sorceresse enchanted with her witchcraft, did her no pleasure, neither served they her in any stead, being transformed as they were into Swine and Asies; whereas the loved and affected entirely and exceedingly *Myfser*, an ingenious man, and who conversed wisely with her; but such wives as had rather be mistresses and over-rule their doltish husbands, than obey them that be wife and men of understanding, may very properly be compared unto them, who chuse rather to lead and conduct the blind, than to be guided by those that see, and to follow them that have knowledge. These women will never believe that *Paphia* being a Kings wife loved a Bull, notwithstanding they see some wives that cannot endure their husbands, if they be any thing austere, grave, sober and honest, but they abandon and give themselves over more willingly to accompany with such as be composed altogether of luxurious loosenesse, of filthy lust and voluptuousnesse, like as if they were dogs or goats.

6 Some men there be so tender, feeble, and effeminate, that being not able to mount up their horse-backs as they stand, reach them to stoop and rest upon their knees, that they may get upon them; and even so you shall find divers husbands, who having espoused rich wives, and descended of noble Houles, never study to make them better, but keep down their wives, and hold them under, being persuaded that they shall rule them the better when they are thus humbled and brought low; whereas indeed they should as well maintain the dignity of their wives, as regard and keep the just stature and height of their horses, as well in the one as the other, make use of the bridle.

7 We see that the Moon, the farther that shee is from the Sun, the brighter shee shineth, and is more clear, & when she approacheth neer unto his raies and beams, she loseth her light and is darkened; but a chaste, honest and wise woman must do clean contrary, for she ought to be most seen with her husband, and if he be away, to keep close and hold herselfe within house.

8 It was not well said of *Herodorus*: That a woman casteth off her pudicity, when the putteth off her smock or inner garment; for clean contrary it is in a chaste and sober matron, for in stead of the putteth on shamefastnesse and honesty; and the greatest signe of all other that married folk do love reciprocally is this, when they have most reverence and shamefast regard one to the other.

9 Like as if one take two founds that accord together, the base is alwaies more heard, and the song is ascribed to it; even so in an house well ordered and governed, all goes well which is done by the consent of both parties; but evident it is and apparent, that the conduct, counsell and direction of the husband is that which effecteth it.

10 The Sunne upon a time (as the fable goeth) had the victory over the northern winde; for when the said wind blew forcibly upon a man, and with the violence of its blasts, did what it could to drive his cloake or upper garment from off his shoulders, the man strived so much the more to hold it on and keep it close about him; but when the Sun came to be hot after the said wind was laid, and see the man in exceeding heat by his beams, he was glad to throw off his said cloake; yea and feeling himself to burn with heat, put off his coat, shirt and all; and even semblably do the most part

of women, for when they perceive that their husbands by their authority, and perforce will take from them their superfluous delights and vain pleasures, they strive again and make resistance, and are offended and discontented therewith; but when as contrariwise they come unto them with gentle remonstrances and mild persuasions, then of themselves they will be content peaceably to lay them aside, and endure all with patience.

11 *Cato* deprived a Senator of *Rome* of his honourable place, so that in the presence of his own daughter, he killed his wife. I cannot simply commend this act of his, for it favoured peradventure too much of severity and rigour; but if it be (as no doubt it is) an uncleanly fight for man and wife to kill, clip, embrace and vie dalliance together in the presence of others; how can it chuse but be more shamefull, and uncleanly to chide, brawle, and taunt one another before strangers? and when a man hath plaied, ipo red, and used love delights in secret with his wife, afterwards in open place to check, rebuke, nip and gird at her with spitefull speeches in the face of the world?

12 Like as a mirror or looking glasse garnished with gold and precious stones, serveth to no purpose, if it do not represent to the life, the face of him or her that looketh into it; no more is a woman worth ought (be she otherwise never so rich) unless she conform and frame her selfe, her life, her manners and conditions futable in all respects to her husband. A false mirror it is, and good for nothing, that sheweth a sad and heavy countenance to him who is merry and jocund, and contrariwise, which resembleth a glad and smiling visage, to one who is melancholike, angry, and discontent; even so a bad woman is she, and a very untoward piece, who when her husband is desirous to solace himselfe and be merry in disporting with her, frowneeth and looketh doggedly under the browes, and on the other side, when she seeth him amused in serious matters, and in a deep study about his affaires, is set on a merry pin, and given to mirth and laughter; for as the one is a sign of a lowre plumme and unpleasant yoke-fellow, so the other bewraith a woman that setteth light by the affections of her husband; whereas indeed bestirring it were, that as (by the saying of Geometricians) the lines and superficies move not at all of themselves, but according to the motions of the bodies; even so a wife should have no proper passion or peculiar affection of her own, but be a partaker of the sports, serious affaires, sad countenance, deep thoughts, and smiling looks of her husband.

13 They that take no pleasure, nor cannot away that their wives do eat and drink freely with them at the table in their right, doe as much as teach them how to cram themselves and fill their gorge; as when they be alone; even so they that will not vouchsafe to live merrily and be pleasant with their wives, nor can abide to disport and laugh privately with them, teach them the ready way to seek their pleasures and their delights by themselves.

14 The Kings of *Perfia* at their ordinary meals have their Queens or espoused wives to sit by them at the board, but when they list to be merrie indeed, and carroule lightly until they be drunk, they lend them away to their chambers, and call for their concubines, singing wenches, and musick to entertaine their place; I can commend them yet for so doing, in that they would not have their own lawfull wives to be partakers of their drunkennesse and contentious loosenesse. If therefore it chance that some private person abandoned to his own pleasures, untaught, and given to lewd conditions, chance to do a fault in abusing himselfe, either with his Paramour, or his wives chamber-maid, his wife must not be angry for the matter, and frown at him for it but rather thus to think with herself, and make this construction, that her husband being both and afraid to offend her with his drunkennesse, unbridled lust and intemperance, turned another way for that purpose.

15 Kings, if they love Musick, cause many good Musicians to be in their Kingdom; if they set their minds upon their book, they make many learned Clerks; if they be given to jeats of activity, and exercise of the body, many of their subjects (by that example) will prove champions and tall men of their hands; even so a husband that loveth to trim and pamper his body, causeth his wife (by that means) to study nothing else but the tricking and pruning of her selfe; he that followeth his pleasures and wanton delights, maketh her alfo to be lascivious and to play the harlots; but who that embraceth honesty, and enueth vertue and good things, by his example shall have an honest, virtuous, and wise wife of her.

16 A young woman of *Sparta* being asked a question by one, whether she had medled or lien yet with her husband: Nor I (quoth she) but he hath with me. And in very truth, in this manner (by mine advice) it would become an honest matron and huswife to behave herselfe toward her husband, that the neither reject and disdain dalliance and love-sports with him, if he begin with her; nor yet her selfe offer such temptations first unto him: for as this is a trick of a wanton and unshame-faced trumpet, so the other bewraith a proud woman, and one who is nothing lovely nor amiable.

17 A woman ought to have no peculiar friends by herselfe, but to vie her husbands friends, and take them as her own. Considering then, that the gods challenge the first and principall place in friendship, the wife is to acknowledge and worship the same gods (and none else but those) whom her husband honoureth, serveth, and reputed gods; moreover, she ought to shut and lock the gate against all curious and new inventions of religions; and not to entertaine any strange and forfeinful perfittions for I assure you, to none of the Gods can those divine services and sacrifices be acceptable which a woman will seem to celebrate by feaith, and without the knowledge and privy of her husband.

\* Plutarch  
describes the  
corruption in  
his time: for  
a Christian  
dame & household  
matron, will not abide  
to put up  
such an injury,  
nor will  
either husband  
tolerate in that case,

\* Herein also  
Plutarch describes  
the duties of  
religion in his

18 *Plato* writeth, that the City is blessed and happy, wherein a man shall never hear these words: *This is mine*, and *this is not mine*: for that the inhabitants thereof have all things there especially, if they be of any worth and importance as neer as possibly they can, common among them: but these words ought rather to be banished out of the State of Matrimony, unless it be (as the Physicians hold) that the blowes or wound which are given on the left side of the body, are felt on the right: even so a wife ought to have a fellow-feeling (by way of sympathy and compassion) of her husbands calamities, and the husband of his wives, much more; to the end, that like as those knots are much more fast and strong, when the ends of the cords are knit and interlaced one within another, even so the bond of marriage is more firm and sure, when both parties (the one as well as the other) bring with them a mutuall affection and reciprocal benevolence, whereby the fellowship and communion between them is maintained jointly by them both: for nature her selfe hath made a mixture of us, of two bodies, to the end that by taking part of one, and part of another, and mixing all together, she might make that which cometh thereof, common to both, in such sort, as neither of the twaine can differ and distinguish what is proper to the one, or peculiar to the other. This communion of goods especially, ought principally to be among those who are linked in wedlock, for that they should put in common, and have all their havoir incorporate into one substance, in such wise, as they repute not this part proper to one, and that part peculiar to another, but the whole proper to themselves, and nothing to another: and likewise in one cup where there is more water than wine, yet we say nevertheless that the whole is like: even so the goods and the house ought to bear the name of the husband, although peradventure the wife brought with her the bigger portion,

19 *Helene* was covetous, and *Paris* lascivious; contrariwise, *Myfles* was reputed wise, and *Penelope* chaste; and therefore the marriage of these last named, was blessed, happy and beloved: but the conjunction of those two before, infortunate, bringing upon the Greeks and Barbarians both, a whole *Ilind*, that is to say, an infinite masse of miseries and calamities.

20 A gentleman of *Rome*, who espoused an honest, rich, faire, and young Lady, put her away, and was divorced from her: whereupon being reproved and sharply rebuked by all his friends, he put forth his foot unto them, and shewed them his shoe: What find you (quoth he) in this shoe of mine? am I new it is and fair to see to; howbeit there is not one of you all, knoweth where it wingeth me, but I wot well where the fault is, and feel the inconvenience thereof. A wife therefore is not to stand so much upon her goods, and the dowry she brings; nor in the nobility of her race and parentage, ne yet in her beauty, as in those points which touch her husband most, and come nearest to his heart; namely, her conversation and fellowship, her manners, her carriage and demeanour, in all respects so disposed, that they be all not harsh, nor troublesome from day to day unto her husband, but pleasant, lovely, obsequious, and agreeable to his humour: for like as Physicians feare those feavers which are engendered of secret and hidden causes within the body, gathering in long continuance of time by little and little, more then such as proceed from evident and apparent causes without; even so there fall out otherwhiles petty jars, daily and continuall quarrels between man and wife, which they see and know full little that be abroad; and these they bewitch breed separation, and cause them to part sooner than any thing else, these marre the pleasure of their cohabitation, more then any other cause whatsoever.

21 King *Philip* was enamoured with a Thessalonian woman, who was supposed and charged, by her forceries and charms to have enchanted him to love her: whereupon Queen *Olympias* his wife wrought so, (that she got the woman into her hands; now when she had well viewed her person, and considered her beautifull visage, her amiable favour, her comely grace, and how her speech shewed well that she was a woman of some noble house, and had good bringing up: Out upon these slanderous surmises (quoth she) and false imputations: for I see well, that the charms and forceries which thou usest are in thy selfe. In like manner we must think, that an espoused and legitimate wife, is as one would say, a fort inextinguishable, namely, such an one, as (in her selfe reposeing and placing all these things, to wit her dowrie, nobility, charms, and love-drinks, yea, and the very titill or girdle of *Venus*, by her study and endeavour, by her gentle behaviour, her good grace and vertue) is able to win the affectionate love of her husband for ever.

22 Another time, the same Queen *Olympias* hearing that a certain young gentleman of the Court had married a Lady who though she were fair and well-favoured, yet had not altogether the best name: This man (quoth she) hath no wit at all in his head, for otherwise he would never have married according to the counsell and appetite of his eyes only. And in truth we ought not to go about for to contract marriage by the eye or the fingers, as some do who count with their fingers how much money, or what goods a wife bringeth with her, never casting and making computation of her demeanour and conditions, whether she be so well qualified, as that they may have a good life with her.

23 *Socrates* was wont to counsell young men who used to see their faces, and look upon themselves in mirrors, if they were foule or ill-favoured, to correct that deformity by vertue; if they were faire, not to soile and staine their beauty with vice; semblably, it were very well that the mistress of an house having in her hand a looking glasse, should say thus unto her selfe: I see thee be foule and deformed: What a one should I be, if I were naught or lewd withal? if faire and well-favoured, how highly shall I be esteemed, if I be honest and wife besides? for if an  
hard

hard-favoured woman be loved for her faire and gentle conditions, she hath more honour thereby, than if the wan lovely beauty only.

24 The tyrant of *Sicily* (*Dionysius*) sent upon a time unto the daughters of *Lysander*, certaine rich robes, costly wreaths, and precious jewels as presents: but *Lysander* would not receive these gifts, saying: These presents would bring more shame then honour to my daughters. And the Poet *Sophocles*, before *Lysander's* time, wrote to the like effect in these verses:

*This will (O wretch) to thee none honour bring,  
But may be thought a foule and shamefull thing;  
It doth bewray a fop and fool in kind,  
And one who bears a most lascivious minde.*

For (according as the Philosopher *Crates* said) That is an ornament which doth adorn; and that adorneth a wife, which maketh her more comely and decent: this are not jewels of gold able to do, nor emeralds and other precious stones, nor purple and skarlet robes, but that only which causeth her to be reputed grave, sober, lowly and modest.

25 Those that sacrificed to *Juno* (surnamed *Gemeita*, that is, Nuptiall) offered not the gall with the rest of the beast that was killed, but plucked it out of the body, cast it aside, and laid it by, about the altar: by which ceremony, he whoeover he was that first instituted it, would give us to understand; that in matrimony there ought to be no gall, that is to say, no bitter choler and anger at all: he meant not thereby that a woman should not be grave, for a wife and matron that is mistress of an house, must carry an austere countenance in some sort, but this austerity or tartness ought to be like that verdure which is in wine, that is to say, wholesome and pleasant, not bitter or eager in any wise as is *Aloe Succovine*, nor resembling any such purgative drugs.

26 *Plato* perceiving *Xenocrates* the Philosopher (a man otherwise vertuous and well disposed) to be given a little to over-much severity, admonished him to sacrifice unto the Graces: even so I suppose, that a vertuous dame hath need also of the Graces help, as much as of any thing else, when she converseth with her husband, so the end that she may live in joy with him (as *Metrodorus* saith) and not move him to anger and displeasure, for all she be an honest and chaste matron, and so repent another day of her pudicity: for neither must a frugal huswife and saving dame neglect to be clean and neat, nor she that loveth her husband entirely, cease to offer kindnesse unto him, and deal with him after an amiable and loving sort: for surely the fowre conversation of a woman maketh all her honesty to be but odious, like as flattery also causeth all her frugality and thrift to be hateful and displeasing: inasmuch as she who is afraid to look pleasantly, and smile upon her husband, or to shew some such like love-tricks, because forsooth she would not be thought bold and wanton, is much like unto her, who because she would not seem to have her head beinched with precious perumes, forbearth also to be anointed with oile, and for that folke should not think that the paintner her face, will not so much as wash the same. Poets we see and Orators, as many of them as would avoid a bafe, illiberal, and ill-affected kind of stile, without good grace, which breedeth tediousnesse in the reader and hearer, study and endeavour with all the wit they have, to entertain and move both the one and the other, by their fine invention, good dispose, and natural representation of the manners of each person: and even so an honest dame and huswife shall do wel to avoid and reject all superfluity, all curiosity, and in one word whatsoever favour of a whore, or such an one as loveth to shew her selfe abroad in pompous manner, and rather employ all her wit, her art and industry in the pleasant and amiable carriage of her selfe, in her affability and lovely conversation with her husband, daily and hourly acquainting and accustoming him to honesty and decency with pleasure and delight. Howbeit, if it fall out so, that some one woman be so austere of nature, that by no means which the husband useth, he can make her pleasant and sociable, in this case he must be content and bear his own cross as like as *Phocion* answered to *Antipater*, who required him to do a dishonest act, and little becoming his estate: Sir, (quoth he) you cannot have me to be your friend and a flatterer too: even so must he say to himselfe of such a wife, who is fowre and unpleasant, but yet honest: It is not meet that I should look to converse with her as a true espoused wife, and a light harlot also.

27 The Egyptian wives by the ancient custome of their Countrey, weare no shoes at all on their feet, to the end that this fashion of going might put them in mind to keepe home: but far otherwise it is with our dames for the most part, from whom if you take their gilded pantofles, their carkanets, their bracelets, their fine garters, their purple garments and pearles, they will never go once out of their houses.

28 *Theano*, as the one day dressed her selfe, and put on her raiment, chanced to shew her arme a good way bare, and when one that stood by perceived it, and laid withall: Oh there is a fair elbow: True (quoth she) but it is not for every man; and even so, nor the arme onely of a chaste and honest dame ought not to be common, but also not so much as her very speech: for she is as well in manner to take heed and beware how she open her mouth and speake much, as to discover and lay her body naked before strangers, for that her manners, actions, and conditions which shee hath, she openeth unto others when she speaketh.

29 *Phidias*, when hee made the image of *Venus* for the *Elans* devised that shee should tread with her feet upon a tortoise shell, signifying thereby that a woman ought to keepe home and not goe forth of doors, but stay within house with silence: for surely a wife is to speake either  
unto

unto her husband onely, or else by the means of her husband; neither must she think much and be offended, if like the mintrell that Ioudett the hautboies, she utter a lower and bigger voice then her own, by the tongue of another.

30 Great men and rich, Princes also and Kings, in honouring Philosophers, do grace both them and their own selves; but Philosophers in making court and doing service unto those rich and mighty personages, adde thereby no reputation unto them, but make themselves more honoured and bettered accepted; seemably it fareth with wives, for when they be subject to their husbands, they winne praise and commendation; but when they will needs be matters, they get greater shame by it, and do more undecently, than those whom they have the mastery of. For by good right, the husband ought to rule over the wife; nor as the Lord over his slave, or that which he possesseth; but after the same manner as the soul governeth the body, by a certaine mutuall love and reciprocal affection, wherewith he is linked unto her: for as the soule may well have care of the body, without subiecting it selfe to the pleasures and disordinate lusts thereof; even so, may a husband have the sovereignty over his wife, and withall exercise the same nevertheless in all kinde, and be ready to gratifie and please her.

31 Philosophers doe hold opinion that of bodies some consist of parts disjoined and distinct and separate one from another, as a fleet of ships or an army of men; others of pieces joined together and touching cloie one another, as an house or a ship; and some againe be composed of parts united and incorporate into one nature living and growing together, as the bodies of living creatures. Much like to these compositions is wedlock: for the conjunction of those in matrimony, who love entirely one another, and for pure love be linked in marriage, resembleth a body, the parts whereof are naturally united together: that copulation of those who marry forrich dowries, wealth, or procreation of children, may be compared to that body which standeth of pieces, that touch onely and meet together in a joint: but such a marriage as respecteth nothing but carnall company in bed together, is like unto those bodies, the parts whereof stand asunder, and neither be united in one, nor touch one the other. But like as the natural Philosophers affirm, that liquid bodies or humours be those which are apt to be mingled wholly one with another in every part; even so, it becometh that of those who are joined together in matrimony, the bodies, goods, friends and familiar, be totally intermingled together: which is the reason that the law-giver infecting down the Roman Lawes, forbade expressly such as were entered into the bond of wedlock, to give and receive any gifts interchangeably, or to make mutuall donation: not intending thereby that they should participate in nothing, but that they should repute all things in common between them.

32 A custome there was in *Leptis*, a City situate in *Libya*, that the new-wedded bride the morrow after her marriage, should lend unto the bridegrooms mother, for to borrow a braile pot or kettle to hang over the fire; but his mother-in-law must deny it, and say, she hath none for her: to the end that this young wife being at the first acquainted with the fashions of her mother-in-law, favouring somewhat of a crooked step-dame, might not think it strange or be much grieved if chance afterward that she deal more hardly with her. A wife knowing thus much, ought betimes to meet with all occasions of such ordinary offences which proceed from nothing else, but a jealousy that a step-mother hath over her for the love that she beareth unto her sonne: The only remedy of which passion is this, that the new wedded wife endeavour to winne the affection of her husband, that she do not withall diminish nor withdraw that affection of his, which a son ought to bear unto his natural mother.

33 It seemeth that mothers ordinarily love their sonnes better then the daughters, as at whole hands they hope for more succour another day; and fathers contrariwise affect their daughters more, as who have more need of their helping hand; and peradventure it may be, that in regard of the honour the one beareth to the other, either of them would seem to carry greater affection to that which is more proper and familiar to the other; and yet happily this holdeth not alwaies, but there may be some difference therein: but certainly a civill part it is, and very well befitting a wife, to shew her selfe to have a better inclination to honour, and make much of her husbands parents than her own; yea, and if at any time she be offended or grieved at ought, to conceal her grief from her own father and mother, and to lay the same open, and make her moane unto his; for in declaring that, she hath the better affiance and trust in them, she gaineth more confidence at their hands, and by seeming to love them better, she is rather beloved of them againe.

34 The Captaine under *Cyrus* gave commandment to their souldiers, that when the enemies gave the charge upon them with greater out-cries, they should receive them with silence; and contrariwise, if they came to assaile and set upon them in silence, they should encounter them with mighty shouts; even so, women that are wife and of good understanding, when they perceive their husbands in choler, and thereupon growing to high words, use to hold their tongues; and on the other side, if their husbands go up and down and say nothing, although they be angry, ought to move speech unto them, and by faire language to appeale and mitigate their mood. Wisely did the Poet *Enripides* in reproving those that called for the harp and other mintrells at feasts where they drank wine liberally: For it behoved rather (quoth he) to have muck, when as men be in fits either of choler or melancholie, to delay their anger and heavinesse, than to enervate them yet more, who are in their meriments and pleasures enfeebled already; seemably you must

must think that you do a fault, if you go to bed and company together for to please one another, and when you be at some debate and difference, you part beds and lie asunder; not calling at such a time for the aid of *Lady Venus*, who knoweth best, and is wont in such cases to remedy all; which the Poet *Homer* in one place teacheth us very well, where he bringeth in *Dame Juno* speaking in this wise:

*Their long debates I will soon end,  
and bitter brawls compose,  
By bringing them to bed both twain  
to sport and take repose.*

Certes a wife ought at all times, and in every place to avoid the occasion of quarrels with her husband, and the husband likewise with the wife; but especially they must beware how they fall out when they are in one bed, for to solace one another, and to sleep together. A good wife there was, who when she was in travel, and ready to cry out, as feeling the throws coming thick upon her, and not able to endure them, when the women about her would have laid her upon a bed: And how can (quoth she) this bed ease the pains of this my malady, seeing I gat it first upon the smeebe; and even so verily the quarrels, brawls, shrewd words, and angry fits which arise in bed, hardly can be taken up and ended at any other time, or else where than in bed.

35 It seemeth that *Lady Hermione* spake truly, when in a Tragedy of *Enripides* she said thus:  
*Lead women, who to my house did resort,  
Have me undone, and aid a bedreport.*

Howbeit this is not simply true, neither falleth it out alwaies for when such use to come into an house, but only at those times when the quarrellous brawls and jealous fits of a wife with her husband openeth not the doors only of the house, but her ears also to such gossip. At such a time therefore a wife woman ought to stop her ears, and take heed of their whispering and prattling fugitations, for fear lest she (for new coales, or put fire to fire, and to have in readinesse the saying of *King Philip of Macedon*: for we read of him, that when his friends incited him to anger against the Greeks, who (notwithstanding he was so gracious unto them, and had received many favours at his hands) ceased not to backbite and slander him, made them this answer: What think you will they do then, if I should work them a shrewd turn? seemably when make bare women shall come twining and say: How doth your husband misuse you, loving him, and making so much of him as you do in all duty and loyalty? your answer must be: What will become of me then if I should begin to hate him and do him injury.

36 A certain matter there was upon a time who espied a slave of his that was long before run away, and when he had set his eye upon him, ran apace for to take hold of him; the poor slave fled still, and gat at length a mill-houle over his head: That's happy (quoth the master to himself) I would not wish to meet with him in a better place; even so a woman who upon jealousy is upon the point to be divorced and depart from her husband, and being ill appaid in her mind for being driven to this hard exigent, should thus speak unto her selfe: What is it that my concurrent who is the cause of this my jealousy can with in her heart to content her better then to see me do this whereabout I am? namely, to vex and torment my selfe thus as I do, to be so far out, and in such terms with my husband, abandoning his house, and forsaking our marriage bed.

37 The Athenians observe and celebrate three seasons of sacred feednesse in the year: the first in the life *Seyra*, in memorial of the first invention of tillage and sowing in that countrey; the second in a place called *Raria*; and the third, under their own City walls, which they call *Buzigian*, in remembrance of yoking Oxen to the Plough; but the Nuptial Tillage (as I may so say) which is employed for issue and procreation of Children, and to maintain our race and posterity, is the most sacred of all other, and ought to be observed with all holinesse. And therefore *Sophocles* well and wisely gave this attribute unto *Cythera* or *Venus*, when he named her *Eucarpus*, that is, Fertile, or Fruitful: in which regard man and wife lawfully joined in Matrimony, are to use the same religiously, and with all precisenesse, absteining wholly from all incestuous, illegitimate, and forbidden conjunctions, and not plowing or sowing there, whereas they are not willing to reap, or if chance that there come up any fruit, they are ashamed thereof, and willing to hide and conceal it.

38 *Gorgias* the Orator, in a great assembly at the Olympian games, made a solemn Oration to the Greeks, who were met there from all parts, exhorting them to live in peace, unity, and concord one with another: at which speech of his, one *Melambion* there present: This man (quoth he) telleth us a tale of unity, and exhorteth us all to concord here in publicke, who cannot perlive in his private house at home, himselfe, his own wife and her chamber maid to agree and live peaceably together, being but three in all, and no more: for it should seem that *Gorgias* cast a fancy to the said wench, and his wife was jealous of her: and therefore his house and family ought to be in good order, who will busie himselfe and intermeddle in ordering of publick affairs, or composing of matters among friends: for commonly it falleth out that the faults which we commit against our wives, be more divulged abroad in the world, then the misdemeanours of our wives.

39 Cats are much offended (they say) with the odour and sent of sweet perfumes, inasmuch as they will runne mad therewith: if it chance likewise, that a woman cannot away with such perfumes, but that her braines be thereby troubled, and ready to overturne, her husband were

of a very strange nature and should deal hardly with her, in case he would not forbear to use sweet ointments or strong fensing odors, but for a little pleasure of his own, to suffer her for to fall into to great inconvenience, and to neglect her contentment. Now it is befo, that such accidents as brain-sickneffe happen unto women, not when their husbands be perfumed, but when they are given to keep Queens and love Harlots, it were meet injustice in them, for a small pleasure of their own to offend and disquiet their wives, and not to do so much for their fake as those who come among Bees, who for that purpose will not touch their own wives for the time, because Bees (as it is said) hate such, and are ready to sting them above all others, but carry so bad a mind with them, as to come and lie by their own wives side, being polluted and defiled with the filthy company of other firmpeps.

40. They that have the government of Elephants, never put on white raiment when they come about them, no more do they wear red cloaths who approach neer unto Bulls; for that these beasts before named are afraid of such colours especially, and grow fierce and wood therewith. It is said moreover, that Tygers when they hear the found of Drums, or Tabours about them, become enraged, and in a furious madnesse all to tear themselves. Seeing it is: so therefore, that there be some men who cannot abide, but are highly displeased to see their Wives in their Scarlet and Purple Robes; and others again, who cannot away with the found of Cymbals or Tabours; what harm is it, if their Wives will forbear both the one and the other, for fear of provoking and offending their husbands, and live with them without unquiet brawls and janglings in all repose and patience?

41. A certain young woman, when King Philip plucked and haled her unto him against her will: Hand off good fir (quoth she) and let me go, all Cats begay in the dark; and when the candle is out all women are alike. It is not amiss to say so (I confesse) unto dissolute persons and adulterers; but an honest married dame ought (especially when the light is gone) not to be all one with other common naughty persons, but even then when as her body cannot be seen; to let her chastity, honesty, and pure love to her husband appear most, that it may be well seen that she keepeth her selfe for him alone.

42. Plato exhorted elder folk to behave themselves more modestly before young persons, than any other, that so they might learn alio to reverence their elders, and be respectuous of them; for where old people be shamelesse, it is not possible to imprint any shame or grace in the younger. Now ought an husband evermore to carry in remembrance this precept: To have none in the world in better respect and more reverence, then his own wife, forasmuch as the bed-chamber is unto her a school-house either of chastity and pudicity, or elie of loosenesse and incontinence; for the husband that followeth those pleasures himselfe which he debarreth his wife of, doth as much as bid his wife to fight with those enemies unto whom he hath already yielded himself prisoner.

43. Moreover, as touching the love and desire to go trim, and to deck and adorn the body, I would with you (O Eurydice) to endeavour for to call to your remembrance those rules which you have read in the Treatise that Timoxenus wrote unto Aristilla concerning that argument. And as for you (O Polianus) never think that your wife will obtain from such curiosity, and lay away those delights and superfluities, so long as the perceptive that you despise not, nor reject the like vanity in other things, but that you take pleasure both to see and have your cups and goblets gilt, your cabinets curiously and costly painted, your Mules and Horses set out with rich caparisons, sumptuous trappings, and costly furniture; for an hard matter it is to chafe away and banish such delicate superfluities out of the nursery and womens chamber, so long as they see the same to reign in the mens parlour, and where they have to do.

44. Furthermore you Polianus being now of ripe years to study those Sciences which are grounded upon reason, and proceed by undoubted demonstration, adorn from hence forward, your manners by frequenting the company of such persons, and conversing with them, who may serve you in good stead, and farther you that way: and as for your wife, see you do the part of a studious and industrious Bee, in gathering for her and to her hand from all parts good things which you think may benefit and profit her, likewise bring the same home with you, impart them unto her, devide and commune with her about them apart, and by that means make familiar and pleasant unto her the best books, and the best discourses that you can meet with all.

For why; to her you are in stead,  
of fire and brother kind;  
A mother deer from henceforth now  
to her she must you find.

like as in Homer, Andromache said of her husband Hector. And verily in mine opinion it were no lesse honourable for a man to hear his wife say thus unto him: My husband, you are my teacher, my regent, my master, and instructor in Philofophy, and in the knowledge of the most divine and excellent literature; for these Sciences and liberal Arts do above all other things divert and withdraw the minds of women from other unworthy and unseemly exercises. A Matron, or Dame who hath studied Geometry, will be ashamed to make profession of dancing the measures; and she that is already enchanted and charmed (as it were) with the singular discourses of Plato and Xenophon, will never like of the charmes and enchantments of Witches, and Sorcerers; and if any

enchantresse

enchantresse should come unto her, and make promise to draw down the moon from heaven, she would mock those women, and laugh at their grosse ignorance, who suffer themselves to be periwaded for to beleve the same, as having learned somewhat in Astrology, and heard that Aganice the daughter of Hegesor, a great Lord in Thebes, knowing the reason of the Eclipses of the moon when she is at the full, and observing the very time when the body of the moon will meet right with the shadow of the earth, abused other women of that country, and made them beleve that it was her selfe who fetched down the moon out of the skie.

45. It was never heard yet that a woman by course of nature should conceive, and bring forth a child of her selfe alone, without the company of man: marry some there be who have been known to gather in their womb a rude masse or lump, without the true form of a reasonable creature, resembling rather a piece of flesh engendered, and growing to a consistence by means of some corruption, which some call a Mole. Great heed therefore would be taken that the like befall not to the foule and mind of women; for if they receive not from others the feeds of good matters and instructions, that is to say, if their husbands help them not to conceive good doctrine and sound knowledge, they will of themselves fall a breeding and be delivered of many strange conceits, absurd opinions, and extravagant passions. But mine advice unto you Eurydice, is to be studious always in the notable sayings and sentences moral of sage, wife, and approved men: have always in your mouth the good words, which heretofore when you were a young maiden you heard and learned of us; to the end that you may be a joy to your husband, and be praised and commended by other women, when they shall see you so honourably adorned and beautified without any cost: I bestowed upon brooches, tablets, and jewels: for you cannot possibly come by the precious pearls of this or that rich and wealthy woman, nor have the silken gowns and velvet robes of such a Lady of a strange country, for to array, or trim your selfe withal, but you must buy them at an exceeding high and dear price: but the ornaments and attire of Theano, of Cleobulina, of Gorgo the wife of King Leonidas, of Timoclea the sister of Theagenes, of Clodia the ancient Roman Lady, of dame Cornelia, the sister of Scipio, and of other Ladies and Gentlewomen so much renowned and bruited heretofore for their rare vertues, you may have gratis, freely and without a penny cost: wherewith if you deck and adorn your selfe, you shall live both happily, and alio with honor and glory. For if Sappho for her sufficiency in Poetry, and the skill that she had in verifying, stuck not to write thus to a certain rich and wealthy dame in her time.

All dead; thou shalt one day entombed be,  
There shall remain of thee no memory,  
For that no part of roses came to thee  
That flower upon the mountain Pietrie.

Why shouldst not thou think better of thy selfe, and take more joy and contentment in thine heart, considering thou hast thy part not only of the roses and flowers, but alio of the fruits which the Muses bring forth and yield to those who love good letters, and highly esteem of Philofophy?

## The Banquet of the seven Sages.

### The Summary.

Whether it were that the persons named in this discourse following were at a banquet indeed, and there discoursed of such matters as are here by Plutarch handled; or that himselfe had collected and gathered the Apophthegmes and histories of his time; or howsoever it was; we may see by this present Treatise what was the custome of Sages, and wise men in ancient time at their feasts, namely, to invite one another courteously, to solace themselves, and make merry heartily, without many ceremonies and complements: to shew sincere amity, and without excessive cost and expence to keep good cheer after a plaine, open, and simple manner. The principal part of which meetings and frequentings of the table, being employed in devising sadly, and with select mind both during their repast, and a pretty while after of matters honest, pleasant, and tending to good instruction and edification; as this book and the Symposiakes, or Table-discourses, whereof we shall see more hereafter do plainly shew. This manner and custome deserteth to be opposed partly against the solitary life, and biggerly niggardise of base misers, covetous penny-fathers; and such like enemies of humane society, and in part against the excessive pomp, unmeasurable sumptuousness, dissolute riots and foolish vanity and gormandise of those that love nothing but their pance, and know no other god to worship but their belly; as also against the fond laughter, bragging vanities, impudent facings, scurrile mockeries, and dogged backbitings, that senselesse, and peevish persons are given unto: and finally against the enormities, violences, and outrages, of such as are wholly abandoned and given over to sin and wickednesse. Moreover, to come more particularly to this book following, Plutarch bringeth in one named Diocles, who recounteth unto him Nearchus, all that was said and done at Corinth in a certaine Banquet, at which were these persons, namely, Pectandret the sovereign Lord of that City, and the host who had all the guests, to wit, Solon, Bias, Thales, Cleobulus,

Cleobulus, Pittacus, and Chilon, named in those days, The seven Sages or wise men of Greece; Item, Anacharhis, Ætæpe, Niloxenus, Cleodemus and certain others. But before that he entereth into any speech of that which passed during the banquet and afterwards, he rehearseth the communication held between Thales, and those of his company upon the way of Corinth, where they talk of matters handle more at large afterwards: then consequently he treateth of that which a guest ought to do who is invited to a banquet, and describeth what happened among some of the guests: proceeding a little forward, he declareth what was the manner of the entrance, the first and end of the banquet, to wit, modest, and seasoned with pleasant speeches (and those most honest and civil) of the host and his family, which done, he contributeth to the recital of the talk that was held after the supper, or banquet: of which the beginning grew from the musick of Flutes, and by a certain comparison devised with a good grace, he causeth audience to be given unto Niloxenus a stranger: by occasion whereof, Bias doth expound the riddle, or dark question sent by a King of Æthiopia unto the King of Egypt, which in the same train inferreth an excellent occasion to speak of the duty and office of Kings: of which argument, all the foresaid Sages deliver their minds summarily, together with the proper riddles, and enigmatical questions from the King of Egypt to the King of Æthiopia. Now after the deciphering and solving of the said riddles, the former Sages fall into a discourse, as touching the government popular and economical, upon which point they do opine and speak their minds in order: comming afterwards to conference together of certain particularities of house-keeping, to wit, of drinking and other pleasures: of the quantity of goods that may suffice a man: of the frugality, thrift, and sobriety of men in old time: of the necessity and delight of drinking and eating: and finally, of the discommodities, inconveniences, and miseries incident to mans life in this behalfe. And for a conclusion, bringeth in one Gorgias, who being arrived unlodged for, and comming suddenly in place, relateth the strange accident of Ation saved by the means of a Dolphin: which report draweth on the Company to other like narrations and tales: at the end whereof, after grace said, and thanksgiving according to the accustomed manner of that people, the guests retire themselves and depart.

## The Banquet of the seven Sages.

### DIOCLES.

Certes, the long proceesse and continuance of time (my good friend *Nicarchus*) cannot chide but breed and bring much darkness, obscurity and incertitude of mens actions and affairs: when as now in matters so fresh, so new, and so lately passed, you have met with certain false reports, which notwithstanding are beleaved and received for true: for there were not only those seven guests at the table in this feast, as you have heard and are born in hand, but more then twice so many of whom my selfe made one, being familiar and inward with *Periander*, by reason of mine art and profession, and the host besides to *Thales*: (for by the commandment of *Periander*, he lodged in mine house) neither hath he (whosoever he was that related the thing unto you, borne well in mind, and remembered what the speeches and discourses were, which they held: which maketh me verily to think that he was not himselfe one of them who were at the banquet. But seeing we are now at good leisure (and for that old age is no surety sufficient to give good warrantie for to defer and put off this report unto a farther time, and because you are so desirous to know the truth) I will rehearse unto you all in order, even from the very beginning.

Fifth and last of the feast was prepared by *Periander*, not within the City, but about the portor haven *Lechaon*, in a fair great hall or dining chamber neer to the Temple of *Venus*, unto whom there was also a sacrifice offered: for since the infortunate love of his mother, who voluntarily made her selfe away, having sacrificed unto *Venus*, this was the first time that he was moved thereto, as being incited by certain dreams of *Melissa* to worship and adore the said goddess. Now to every one of the guests invited to this banquet, there was a coach brought, richly appointed and set out accordingly, for to convey and conduct them to the place appointed, for that it was the Summer season, and all the port way from the City, as far as to the sea side, was full of dust, and resounded with great noise, by reason of a number of chariots, and a world of people going to and fro between. As for *Thales*, seeing at my gates a coach standing, and ready to carry him, he leapt in and laughing, and so sent it back again: he and I then put our selves in our way, and went faire and softly together on foot over the fields: and a third there was, who bare us company to wit, *Niloxenus* of *Nauratua*, a man of good worth, and one who had been familiarly acquainted with *Solon* and *Thales* before-time in Egypt, and as then was he sent the second time unto *Bias*, but wherefore himselfe knew not, unless (as he suspected) it were to bring unto him a second question inclosed and sealed within a packet: for this charge and commandment he had: That if *Bias* refused and would not take upon him to asseiole and expound the same, he should shew it to the wisest Sages of the Greeks. Then began *Niloxenus*: An happy feast (quoth he) is this to me (my masters) and unexpected, wherein I shall find you all together, for I carry with me thither a packet as you see, and with that he shewed it unto us: then (quoth *Thales* smiling) if you have therein any hard and untoward question to be dissolved, carry it again to *Pyrene*, for *Bias* will declare the meaning thereof, like as hee asseioled the former: What former question was that (quoth I): Marry (quoth hee againe) he

he sent unto him a sheep for sacrifice, commanding that he should take out of it the best and worst piece thereof, and so to send the said flesh unto him: he therefore well and wisely plucked forth the tongue, and sent it unto him: for which he was (by good right) well praised, highly esteemed, and held in great admiration. It was not therefore only (quoth *Niloxenus*) that he came to so great a name, but also for that he refused not the amity of Princes and Kings as you do: for *Amasis* admired many more things in you, and namely among others, when you took the measure of the height of the *Piramis* in Egypt, he wondered exceedingly, and made high account of your conceit, for that without any great hand labour, and the fame requiring no instrument at all, by setting up a staffe only plumb upright, at the very point and end of the shadow which the said *Piramis* cast, and by two Triangles which the beams of the Sun caused, you made demonstration, that what proportion there was between the length of both shadows to wit, of the *Piramis* and the staffe, the same was between the height of the one and the other. But as I said before, you were accited unto the same King *Amasis*, for bearing no good will unto Kings and their estate, which was the cause of your disgrace and disfavour with him: besides, there were brought unto him and presented many slanderous speeches, and contumelious answers of yours, as touching tyrants: as for example; when *Malpagoras* a great Lord of *Ion* demanded upon a time of you what strange thing you had in your time seen? you answered: A tyrant living to be an old man! Again, at a certain banquet there being some speech moved, as touching beasts, which was the worst, and did most harm? you made answer, that, Of wild beasts a Tyrant, and of tame beasts a flatterer was most dangerous: For I may tell you, Kings howsoever they say that they differ from Tyrants, yet take they no pleasure at such Apophthegmes as those. That answer (quoth *Thales* again) was none of mine, but *Pittacus* it was, who made it one day in scoffing merrily to *Myrsilus*: for mine own part, I do not so much marvel at an aged Tyrant, as I do wonder to see an old Pilot: howbeit, as touching this transposition, and taking over for another, I am of the same mind, and am willing to say, as that young man did who flung a stone at a dog, and missing the dog, hit his own step-mother and deluded her withal: whereat: It makes no matter (quoth he) for even so, the stone hath not light amiss. And in truth I my selfe alwayes esteemed *Solo*, a right wife man, for that he refused to be the Tyrant of his own country: and even so *Pittacus* if he had never come to take upon him a Monarchy, would not have delivered this speech: How hard a thing is it to be a good man? And it should seem that *Periander* being seized upon (as a man would say) by the same tyranny, as an hereditary disease from his father, did not amisse to endeavour what he could to free himselfe and get out of it, by conversing with shebet men, and frequenting their company, as he hath done to this day, and training unto him the society of Sages and Philosophers, and being ruled and advised by them, not approving nor admitting the perilous and unhappy counsel of my country man *Thersibolus*, perfwading him to cut the chief men shorter by the heads: For a tyrant who chuseth to command and rule slaves and vassals rather then free men indeed, nothing differeth from the husbandman, who had rather gather locusts and catch fowles, then reap and bring in good grain of Wheat and Barley: for these foreign dominions and principalities bring with them this only good thing in stead and recompence of many evils: to wit, a kind of honour and glory: if men be so happy as in ruling over good men, they be better themselves, and in commanding great persons become greater themselves: as for such as in their government and place of command, aime at nothing but their security, without respect of honor and honesty, deserve to be set over a number of sheep, horses, or beasts, and not of men: but this good gentleman stranger here, hath (I wot not how) cast us upon such discourses which are nothing convenient for our present purpose, omitting both to speak and also to demand those matters that best becometh those who go to feast: for I think you not that the guest who is bidden, ought not to go prepared as well as the very master himselfe to make preparation? For the Sybarites (as it should seem) solemnly invite their dames to their feasts, and seem to bid them a whole year before, of purpose that they might have time enough to trim themselves at their good leisure with rich array and jewels of gold: against they go to a feast: and for mine own part, I assure you of this mind I am, that the right preparative of one who is to go unto a great dinner as he should, would require a longer time then so: by how much harder it is to finde fit and decent ornament for the manners of the minde, then to provide for the superfluous, needlesse, and unprofitable setting out of the body: for a wife man who hath wit and understanding, goeth not to a feast carrying with him his body as a vessel to be filled, but he goes thither with an intention to passe the time either in serious discourses, or pleasant and merry talk: to speak: I say, and hear according as the time shall give occasion to the company; if they meane with joy and mirth to converse together one with another. A man that is come to a feast may if he like not a dish of meat, or if it be naught refuse it: or if the wine be not good, have recourse unto the Nymphs: but a troublesome guest, a talkative busy-body, and an unmannerly, or untaught neighbour sitting at the boord, marreth all the grace of the viands, be they otherwise never so dainty, he corrupteth the wine, yea and all the sweetness of the musick, how melodious soever it be. Neither may a man when he list vomit and cast up readily against this trouble and vexation once received: but in some, a mutual discontentment and offence taken at the Table one with another, sticketh by them and continueth as long as they have a day to live, inasmuch as they cannot endure the interview one of another again: but like an old fustier, arisen of wrong done, or of anger conceived by drinking wine, the spite remaineth festering and



corrupting in the stomach and never will be digested. In mine opinion therefore did *Chilon* very well and wisely, who being invited as it were yesterday to a feast, would never promise to come before he knew what other guests he should meet with there, even every one of them; for this was his saying: That a man must endure will he will he if he be once at sea, a rude companion and uncivil fellow-passenger in the same ship where he is embarked; as also in warfare a troublesome mate in the same pavilion, for that he is forced of necessity to syl with the one and encamp with the other but for a man to fort himself indifferently and without discretion with all kinds of men at a banquet, bewaileth one that is void of all wit and judgement. As for the fashion and manners of the Egyptians, namely to bring in place ordinarily at their feasts a Sceleton, that is to say, a dry and withered anatomy of a dead man, and thereto shew it before all the guests at the board, to put them in mind of death, and that within a while they all should become such; although I must needs say that such an one were an unwelcome guest, and came very unseasonably among them; yet it cannot be denied but there is some good use thereof; for although he cheer nor up the guests there to drink freely and to make merry, yet he inviteth and stirreth them up to carry mutual love and affection one to the other, in admonishing them to remember that their life being of it selfe short, they should not seek to make it long and tedious by troublesome business and affairs.

This spent we the time by the way, until at length we were come to the banquetting house. And as for *Thales*, he refused to wash or go into a baine: For that (quoth he) I am annoienced already; but in the mean time that the rest were bathing, he went walking up and down to see the pleasant races, the wrestling places, and the fair grove which along the Sea was very well planted and kept accordingly; not because he wondered at the sight of any of all these delights, but for that he would not seem to despise *Periander*, or disdain his magnificence in anything. As for the others, according as any of them were washed or annoienced, the fervours were ready to conduct them into the hall, or dining place, appointed for men, and that through a porch, or gallery, within which fate *Anacharsis*, and before him stood a Damofel plaiting and combing the hair of his head with her hands whom (as the rantoward *Thales*) most willingly and courteously) most willingly and courteously he kissed, and after a smiling manner: Well done (quoth he) make that stranger, who of himselfe is the mildest and gentlest man in the world, to have a pleasant and fair countenance, that he look not upon us fearful and hideous to see to. I enquired then what pretty maiden this was: Why (quoth *Thales*) know you not that wife Damofel, so famous and so much renowned, *Eumoid* for that is the name that her father gave her, howsoever the people call her after her fathers name *Cleobuline*. You praise this Virgin (quoth *Niloxenus*, do you not) for her quick spirit in propounding, and her subtle wit and wisdom in answering riddles and dark questions, such as be called *Acnigmes*? For by report there be some of her enigmatical questions, which are gone as far as *Egypt*: No marry (quoth *Thales* again) I say not so for the weth them but as dice or cock-ball bones, when the list to disport her selfe and pass away the time with those that encounter her, and are disposed to enter into contention with her; but of a wonderful courage and haughty mind she is; a politick head she hath of her own worthy to govern a State; of a courteous nature she is beside, and of sweet behaviour: in regard of which her carriage, she maketh her Father to seem more mild and popular ruler among his Citizens and Subjects. It may well be so (quoth *Niloxenus*) for surely the seemeth no lesse, if a man behold her homely apparel, and how simply she goes; but how cometh this inward affection and kindnesse to *Anacharsis*, that so lovingly the dresseth and trimmeth her? Because (quoth *Thales*) he is a temperate and sober man, and besides a great Scholar, and a learned Clark, and for that he hath willingly and at large recounted unto her the manner of the Tartarians life, and namely, how they use to charm the maladies of those that are sick; and I verily beleave that even now whiles she maketh so much of the man, stroking his head, plaiting and broiding his hair, she learneth somewhat of him, or discourseth with him about some point of learning. Now when we drew near to the hall, or dining chamber above said, who should meet us but *Alexidemus* the Milesian, a battard son of *Thrasibulus* the Tyrant; who was newly come forth from thence in a great heat, distemperd and troubled, and saying (I wot not what) to himselfe in a pelting chafe: for understand we could not plainly what his words were, he spake them so huddle: he had no sooner his eye upon *Thales*, but he seemed to reclaim himselfe, and so stayed a little, breaking out into these audible terms: *Periander* (quoth he) hath offered me abuse, and done me great wrong, in that he would not give me leave to depart, when I was willing and ready to embark, but by his enreaty hath importuned me to stay supper: and now, forsooth, that I am come, he hath set me at the table, in a place most dishonourable for my person, and hath preferred the *Æolians*, the *Islanders*, and other base companions, and indeed whom not, before *Thrasibulus*: for apparent it is, that he despiseth my Father who sent me, and meaneth that the disgrace offered unto me should redound upon him. How now (quoth *Thales*) is it so indeed? and are you afraid that like as the Egyptians hold opinion and say, That the stars in making their ordinary revolutions, are one while elevated on high, and another while afterwards falling as low, and according to their heights, or baseness of the place, become either better or worse then they were? to you in regard of the place that is given you, should be advanced, or debased more or lesse? for by this means you are worse and more base minded then the Laconian, who being by the master of the ceremonies set in the lowest place of the Quire, or Dance, was no more moved thereat, but said: Well done of you, I see you can skill of the means how to make this place

place more honourable: for when we be set at a table, we ought not to look and regard, either beneath whom we sit, or after whom we are placed, but rather how we may accommodate and frame ourselves to fort and agree with those next to whom we sit: shewing presently at the very first that we have in our selves the beginning and handle (as a man would say) of amity, in that we can finde in our hearts not to be offended with the place that is given us, but to praise our fortune in that we are matched with so good company: for he that is angry about a place or seat, is more offended with him to whom he sitteth next, then with the matter of the feast that bade him, and he maketh himselfe odious as well to the one as the other. Tush (quoth *Alexidemus*) these are but words; for in very deed I have observed, that even you who would be counted Sages and wise men, lay for means enough to make your selves honoured; and with that he passed by us, and went his way. Now as we mused and wondered much at this strange fashion and behaviour of the man: *Thales* turning unto us: This man (quoth he) is a brain-sick foole, and of a monstrous nature, as you may well know by one trick that he played when he was a very youth: for when there was brought unto *Thrasibulus* his Father, a most excellent, sweet and precious ointment, he poured it out all into a great boll, or standing cup, and wine likewise upon it, and when he had so done, drunk it up himselfe every drop, working by this means enmity in stead of friendship to *Thrasibulus*. Immediately after this there comes to me a fervor with these words: *Periander* requesteth you to take *Thales* and this other stranger with you, and to come and see a thing that is newly presented and brought unto him, for to know your opinion, whether he is to take it as an occurrent happened by meer chance, or rather a prodigy that doth preface and prognosticate some strange event, for he himselfe is much troubled in mind thereat, and mightily feareth that it become pollution or stain to this his festival sacrifice; he had no sooner said this, but he brought us into one of the houses that stood upon the garden, where we found a young lad, seeming unto us to be some herd-man, he had not yet an hair on his face, and otherwise (beleieve me) he was fair enough and well-favoured, who opening a leather poke, or bag that he had, shewed unto us a young monstrous babe, which as he said was born of a Mare in the upper parts about the neck and arms shaped like a man, but all the rest resembling an horse; howbeit, crying and wrawling, as like as possibly might be to an Infant new come into the world: at which sight *Niloxenus* turning his face at one side, cried out, God blesse us, and turn away his displeasure from us. But *Thales* after he had looked wistly a good while upon the young lad aforesaid, smiled at the matter (as his manner was to play and make good game with me about mine art:): Are you not minded (quoth he) O *Diocles* to go about some expiatory sacrifice for this prodigious sight, and to set on work those gods whose care and charge it is to divert such imminent perils and misfortunes, this being as it is so fearful a prodigy and unlucky accident? How else? (quoth I again) for I assure you this is a token prefiging discord and sedition; and I much feare lest this matter proceed as far as to marriages, and the act of generation, even to the prejudice of posterity, considering that the Goddesse before the expiation and satisfaction of her former anger, threatneth thus the second time, as you see, *Thales* answered never a word to this, but departed laughing. And when *Periander* met us at the very hall door, and enquired what we thought of this strange occurrent which we went to see: *Thales* left me, and taking him by the hand: As touching that (quoth he) which *Diocles* will perswade you unto, do you as he willeth you at your best leisure: for mine own part, mine advice and counsel unto you is, that you entertain no more such youths as this to keep your Mares, or at leastwise, that you give them wres to wred. At the hearing of which words, it seemed unto me that *Periander* was exceeding well pleased: for he laughed agood, and after he had embraced *Thales*, kissed him. Then *Thales* turning unto me: I suppose verily (quoth he) O *Diocles* that this prodigious token hath wrought the effect, and is come to an end already; for see you not what an evil accident is befallen unto us, in that *Alexidemus* will not dine with us? Well, when we were come within the hall, *Thales* beginning to speak with a loud voice: And where is the place (quoth he) wherein this honest man thought com, and took such smut to be set: which when it was shewed unto him, he turned about, and went to sit there himselfe, and so took us with him; saying withal, I would (for mine own part) have given any money (rather then failed) to sit at the same board with *Ardalus*. Now was this *Ardalus* a Trezenian, by profession a Piper, and a Priest serving the Ardalian Muses, whose images ancient *Ardalus* the Trezenian had erected and dedicated. Then *Ælope*, who not long before had been sent by King *Croesus*, as well to *Periander* as to the Oracle of *Apollo* in the City of *Delfos*, being set upon a low fettle near to *Solon*, who sat above him, came in with his fable, and thus said: A Mule (quoth he) of *Lydia* having beheld the form and shape of his own body within a river, and wondering much at the beauty and goodly stature thereof, began to run with full carriere, to fling and shake his head and his maine, like a lusty brave horse; but within a while, remembering that he was an asses foame, and foaled by an ass, he staid his swift course all on a sudden, and laid away his pride and insolent bravery. At these words, *Chilo* briefly in his Lacomian language: Thou hast told (quoth he) a tale by thine own selfe, who being a low-back like an ass, will needs run as the said mule. After this entered in dame *Melissa*, and took her place close unto *Periander*: *Eumetistillo* sat down to supper with them: Then *Thales* addressed his speech unto me who sat next above *Bias*, and said: My friend *Diocles*, how hapned it that you tell not *Bias*, that your friend and guest *Niloxenus* of *Naucratia* is come from beyond fea the second time, sent from his Lord the King, unto him with new questions and riddles for to assaile, to the end that

that he may take knowledge of them while he is sober, and in case for to study and think upon their solutions? Then *Bias* taking the word out of his mouth: It hath bene (quoth he) his old fashions of long time, for to seem to fright and astonish me with such admonitions and advertisements as these as for me I know full well that as *Diogenes* otherwise is a wise and powerful god, so in regard of his wisdom he is furnished *Lysius*, which is as much to say, as unfolding and undoing the knots of all difficulties; which is the cause that I have no fear at all, but if I be full of him, I shall be selfe hearty and able to maintain the combat when I come to it, and am put to dispute. These and such like pleasant speeches passed to and fro in merriment, as they sat at meat. Now when I saw the letting out, and provision of this supper more frugal and spary then ordinary, I thought in my minde that to make a feast and give entertainment to wife and good men, putteth a man to no greater cost and expences, but rather eateth him of some charges: for that it abridgeth all curiosity of dainty viands, exquisite cates, costly perfumes, pretious ointments, confections and march-pains brought from foreign and far countries, yea and fine and delicate wines, wherewith *Periander* being served daily at his ordinary, according to the magnificence of his princely estate, riches, affairs, and occasions, yet at such a time he took a glory among these Sages and wise men, in sobriety, frugality, and slender provision: for not in other things only he cut off and concealed all superfluity and needlesse furniture which was usual in his house-keeping, but also in his wives attire and ornaments, whom he shewed to his friends and guests nothing costly arrayed, nor keeping state, but meanly free and adorned. Now when the tables were taken away, and that *Melissa* had given and dealt chaplets of flowers unto us round about, we rendered thanks and laid grace unto the gods, in pouring out unto them devoutly a little wine: and the minstrell women having sung a while after our grace, and according to our vows, departed out of the room.

Then *Ardalus* calling unto *Anacharsis* by name, demanded of him whether among the Scythians there were any such singing women and minstrell wenches that could play upon wind instruments? unto which demand he answered *ex tempore* and without studying for the matter: No (quoth he) nor so much as vines; and as *Ardalus* replied again: But yet there are some gods among them, are there not? Yes iwis (quoth he) that there be, and those who understand the speech and language of men; but yet the Scythians are not of the same mind that the Greeks, who although they think themselves to speak more freely and elegantly then the Scythians, yet they hold opinion that the gods take more pleasure to hear the sound of bones and wood, whereof their flutes and hautboies are made, then the voice of man. But my good friend (quoth *Espe* then) what would you say, if you knew what these pipe makers do now a days, who cast away the bones of young hind-calves and fawnes, and chose before them asses bones, saying, forsooth, that they make a better found: whereupon *Cleobulus* made one of her *Enigmes* or riddles touching a Phrygian flute,

Of braying asse  
when he dead was,  
The long flank-bone.

Did force the ear  
with sound so clear  
Upright anon.

Of mighty flag  
with horns so brag  
As hard as stone.

in such sort, that it is a wonder how an Ass, which is otherwise a most blockish and absurd beast, of any other most remote from all sweet harmony of musick, should yield a bone so slick, so smooth, and proper, to make thereof a most musical instrument. Certes, (quoth *Niloxenus* then) this is the reason that the inhabitants of the City *Bafiris*, reproach all us of *Numerata*, for that we likewise have already taken two ass-bones for the making of our pipes: and as for them, it is not lawfull to hear so much as the sound of a trumpet, because it somewhat doth resemble the braying of an Ass; and you all know that the ass is infamous and odious with the Egyptians, because of *Typhon*. Upon this every man held his peace for a while; and when *Periander* perceived that *Niloxenus* had a good mind to speak, but yet durst not begin or broach any speech; My Masters (quoth he) I do like very well of the custom of Cities and head Magistrates, in that they give audience and dispatch unto all strangers, before their own Citizens; and therefore methinks it were well that for a time both you and we forbear our speeches which are so familiar, and as it were native and home-born among us in our own country, to give access and audience, as it were in a solemn council and assembly of estate, unto those questions and demands which our good friend here hath brought out of Egypt; and namely such as are moved from the King to *Bias*, and *Bias* I doubt not will confer with you about the same. Then *Bias* seconding this motion of his; And in what place (quoth he) or with what company would a man with rather for to hazard and try his skill then in this, for to make answers accordingly and give solutions, if he be put unto it and need require; especially, seeing that the King himself hath given express commandment, that in proposing this question he should first begin with me, and afterwards go round about the rest and preicnt the same unto you all? Hereupon *Niloxenus* delivered unto him the Kings letter, desiring him to break it open, and to read the same with an audible and loud voice before all the company. Now the substance or tenor of the said letter ran in this form. *Amasis*, the King of the Egyptians, unto *Bias* the wisest Sage of all the Greeks sendeth greeting. So it is, that the King of the Ethiopians is entered into contestation and contention with me, as touching wisdom: and being in all other propositions put down by me, and found my inferiour, in the end after all, he hath imposed upon me a commandment very strange, wonderful, and hard to be performed, willing mee, forsooth, to drink up the whole sea. Now if I may compass the solution of this riddle and dark question, I shall gain thereby many towns, villages, and cities of his: but in case I cannot assolve the same,

Imitt

I must yield unto him all my Cities within the country *Elephantine*. These are therefore to request of you, that after you have well considered of the premises, you send back unto me *Niloxenus* incontinently with the interpretation thereof. And if either your selfe or any of your Citizens and country-men have occasion to use me in your affairs and occasions, be sure you shall not faile of me wherein I may lead you. Farewell.

This letter being read, *Bias* made no long stay, but after some little pause and meditation with himselfe, he rounded *Cleobulus* in the eare, who sat close unto him: And then, what is that you say (my friend of *Naucratia*) will your Master and Lord King *Amasis* (who commandeth to great a multitude of men, and possesseth so large, so fair and plentiful a country) drink all the sea, for to get thereby, I wot not what poor towns and villages of no importance? Then *Niloxenus* laughing at the matter: I pray you (quoth he) consider upon the point what is possible to be done, even as you will your selfe. Marry then (quoth he) let him lend word to the Ethiopian King, and enioya him to stay the course of all rivers that discharge themselves into the sea, until he have drunk up in the mean time all the water in the sea that is now at this present: for of that only, his demand and commandment is to be understood, and not of the sea that shall be hereafter. These words were no sooner spoken, but *Niloxenus* took to great a contentment therein, that he could not hold, but needs he must embrace and kiss him immediately for it; yea, and all the rest commended and approved likewise his speech: but *Chilo* laughing heartily: O my friend (quoth he) of *Naucratia*, I beseech you before all the sea be dry and clean spent, faile home with all speed, and do the King your matter to understand, that he shall not need to travel and busie his brains in searching how he may consume so great a quantity of salt water, but rather how he may make his regiment and royale (now brackish and unpleasant) to be sweet and potable unto his subjects; for in these feats *Bias* is a most cunning workman, and a singular master, which when King *Amasis* hath well and thoroughly learned of him, he shall not have any use of that golden Basin to wash his feet in, and for to contain the Egyptians in awe and obedience, but they shall leave him all willingly, and love him affectionately, when they shall see him become a good Prince, although he were a thousand times more odious unto them then he seems now to be. Certes (quoth *Periander*) then it would be worthily done of us all to contribute unto King *Amasis* such like sweet suits and presents *ἀντίκας*, as *Homer* speaketh, that is to say, every one of us by the poll, and one after another in order; for by this means the accessory haply an addition will arise to a greater matter, and be more worth unto him then the principal, or stock of the negotiation wherefore this voyage was undertaken, and besides there will accrue unto each of us also some great profit. Meet it were then (quoth *Chilo*) that *Solon* should begin the speech: not only for that he is of all our ancient, and hath the highest place of the table, but also because he beareth the greatest and most absolute office, being the man who ordained and established the Laws of *Athens*. *Niloxenus* then turning toward me, and speaking softly in mine ear: I beleieve verily (quoth he) O *Dioctes*, that many things go for current, and are beleev'd, although they be untruths, and many men there be who are delighted with false rumours, and sinister reports, that go of great and wilken men, both which themselves do devise, and also which they receive readily from others; as namely, those be which are brought unto us as far as into Egypt, of *Chilon*, namely, that he should renounce all amity and hospitality with *Solon* for maintaining this: That all Laws were mutable. A foolish and ridiculous report is this (quoth I); for if it were so, *Chilon* should have fallen out with *Lycurgus*, and condemned him, who together with his Laws, altered and changed the whole State of the Lacedemonians. Then *Solon*, alter a little pause made, began to speak in this wise: For mine own part, I am of this mind, that a King, or Sovereign Prince can find no means to make himselfe more glorious, then by turning his Monarchy or absolute government into a Democracy, or popular state, in communicating his authority foreign indifferently to his Subjects. In the second place spake *Bias*, and said: That a Prince could not do better for his own honour, than to be the first man that submitted himselfe to the positive lawes of this country. After him opined *Thales*: I repute (quoth he) that prince and sovereign ruler happy, who lived to old age, and dieth by a natural death. *Anacharsis* inferred thus much more in the fourth place; If he be only wife, With that said *Cleobulus* in his turn: If he repose no confidence in any one about his person. Sixthly came *Pittacus* with his opinion, saying: If a Prince could so nurture and school his subjects, that they should not fear him, but for his sake. And after him, in the last place, delivered *Chilo* this speech: That a Prince ought to amuse his mind about no mortal and transitory things, but meditate onely upon that which was eternal and immortal. Now when every one of these Sages had given out his mot, we requested of *Periander*, that hee also would say somewhat for his part: but he with a countenance nothing merry and cheerful, but composed to sadnesse and severity; I will tell you (quoth he) what I think of all these sentences thus delivered by these my Lords; that they all in a manner be enough to fright a man who is of judgement and understanding, from all foreign rule and government. Then *Espe* as one who ever loved to be cross'd and finding faults: It were meet therefore (quoth he) that every one of us should deal in this point apart and severally, left in pretending to be counsellours unto Princes, and make profession of friendship unto them, we become their accusers. Then *Solan* laying his hand upon his head, and smiling withal: Think you not (quoth he) O *Espe*, that he maketh a ruler more reasonable, and a tyrant more gracious and inclined to clemency, who perswadeth him that it is simply better, not to rule, then to rule? And who is he (quoth *Espe* again)

again) that will believe you in this, rather than the very god himselfe who delivered unto you this sentence, by way of Oracle:

\* Crie.

*I hold that City happy alone,  
Where voice is heard of Sergeant one.*

Why (quoth *Solon*) Is there any man heareth at *Athens* now any more voices then of one Sergeant, and one sole Magistrate, which is the Law? notwithstanding, the City hold of a popular State, but you *Æsop* are so deeply seen in hearing and understanding the voices of Crows and Jayes, that you hear not well and perfectly in the mean time your own speech and language: for you that thinke according to the Oracle of *Apollo*, that City most happy which heareth the voice but of one, suppose notwithstanding that it is the grace of a fealt, when all the guests therein met, may reason and discourse, yea and of every matter. True it is (quoth *Æsop*) for you have not yetter down a Law, that household servants should not be allowed wherewith to be drunk: like as you have made one at *Athens*, forbidding servants to make love, or to be annointed dry, that is, without the baine, *Solon* began to laugh at this reply of his: and *Cleodemus* the Physician interred thereupon: In mine opinion (quoth he) it is all one to annoint (as you say) dry, and to talk freely when a man is well whited and drenched with wine, for most delectable and pleasant is both the one and the other. *Chilo* taking hold of this speech: Why then (quoth he) so much the rather it behoveth to abstain from it, *Æsop* rejoined again: and verily *Thales* seemed to say: that it is a means whereby a man shall very quickly age and look old. Hereat *Periander* began to take up a laughter and said: Now truly *Æsop*, we are well enough served, and are worthily punished according to our desert, in that we have suffered our selves to be carried away into other discourses and disputations, before we have heard out all the rest of the contents in King *Amasis* letters, according as we purposed in the beginning: and therefore good fir *Niloxenus* go on with that which followeth in your letters misseive, and make use of these peronages here assembled, whiles they be all in place together. Now truly (quoth *Niloxenus*) in my conceit that demand of the *Æthiopian*, a man may well and properly say to bee nothing else (but if I may use the words of *Archibolchu*) a tewed or bruited whip: but King *Amasis* your host, in propounding of such questions is more gentle and civil: for he propounded unto him these demands to be answered: What thing in the whole world is eldest, or most ancient? What is the fairest? What the greatest? What most wife? What most common? Over and besides, What most profitable? What is most hurtful? What most pusillat? and What most easie? What (quoth *Periander*) did the *Æthiopian* Prince answer to these demands, and affoile them all? Will you judge (quoth *Niloxenus*) then what answers he made? and after you have heard his answers, be you yode whether he satisfied them or no? for the King my Master hath proceeded therein so sincerely, that he would not for anything in the World, be justly thought to cavil, and carp like a Sympochant at the answers of another, and yet his care and endeavour is, not to fail in reproving that wherein one hath erred and is deceived: but I will from point to point recite unto you his answers. What is most ancient? Time (quoth he.) What most wife? Truth. What most beautiful? The light. What most common? Death. What most profitable? God. What most hurtful? The Devil. What most mighty? Fortune. What most easie? The thing that pleaseth. When these answers were read (*O Nicharchus*) they all remained silent for a time: and then *Thales* asked of *Niloxenus*, whether King *Amasis* approved these solutions or no: *Niloxenus* answered, that some of them he allowed; but with others of them he rested not well contented: And yet (quoth *Thales* again) there is not one of them all but deserveth great reprehension, for they do every one bewray much error and grosse ignorance: and to begin withal: How can it be held and maintained, that Time should be the eldest thing that is, considering that one part thereof is passed already; another present; and a third yet to come? for the future time which is to follow us, cannot chuse but by all reason be esteemed younger then all men, or all things which are present. Again, to think that verity were wisdom, in my judgement is as much as if a man should say, that the eye and the light is all one. Furthermore, if he reputed the light to be a fair thing (as no doubt it is) how happeneth it that he forget the Sun? Moreover, as touching his answers of God and the Devils, they are very audacious and dangerous. But concerning Fortune, there is no probability, or likelihood of truth therein: for she were so powerful and pusillat (as he saith) how cometh it about that she turneth and changeth so easily as the doth? Neither is death the commonest thing in the world: for common it is not to the living. But because it shall not be thought, that we can skill of naught, but reproving and correcting others: let us confer a little our particular opinions and sentences in this behalfe with his: and if *Niloxenus* think to good, I am content to offer my selfe first, to answer unto these demands before said, one after another. Now will I therefore declare unto you (*Nicharchus*) in order the interrogatories and answers, according as they were propounded and delivered. What is most ancient? God (quoth *Thales*) for he never had beginning nor nativity. What is greatest? Place. For as the world containeth all things else, so Place containeth it. What is fairest? The world. And why? because whatsoever is disposed in lively order, is a part thereof. What is wisest? Time: for it hath found all things already devised, and will find out all inventions hereafter. What is most common? Hope: for it remaineth still with them who have nothing else. What most profitable? Vertue: in that it maketh all things commodious, according as they be used. What is most hurtful? Vice: for it marreth all good things besides, wherefore it is. What is most mighty? Necessity: for that only is invincible. What is most easie? That which agreeth to nature: for

even

even pleases many times we do abandon and forsake. Now when all the company had approved and consented highly the answers of *Thales*: These be questions indeed (quoth *Cleodemus* unto *Niloxenus*) meet for Kings and Princes, both to propose, and also to affoile: as for that barba-rous King of *Æthiopia*, who enjoined King *Amasis* to drink up the Sea, deserveth as; short an answer: that was which *Pittacus* made to King *Ahyatis*, who when he demanded somewhat of the *Lesbians* by his arrogant and proud letters, had no other answer returned him from *Pittacus* but this: That he should eat Onions and hot bread. Upon which words *Periander* interred and said: I assure you *Cleodemus*, it hath been the manner in old time among the ancient Greeks, to propose one unto another such questions as these. For we have heard by report, that in times past, the most skillful and excellent Poets which were in thole days, met at the Funerals and Obsequies of *Archibolchu* within the City of *Cholcis*: Now had this *Amphidamas* been a man of great honour in government of the Common-weale in his Country: who having put the *Eretrians* to much trouble in thole Wars which they waged against thole of *Cholcis*, in the quarrel of *Lilabete*, hapned to lose his life at the last in a battell. And for that the curious verses which the said Poets provided and brought to be cannod of, were intricate and hard to be judged of by thole who were chosen as Judges of the doubtful victory: and besides the glory of two renowned concurrents, *Homer* and *Hesiodus* the Judges in great perplexity, and fame to give their sentences, as touching two famous peronages, they grew to such as these questions in the end: and propounded one to another, as *Lesches* saith after this manner.

*Now help me Musc: for to endite  
what things have never been,  
Nor henceforth whiles the world endures  
for ever shall be seen?*  
Unto which demand, *Hesiodus* answered readily and ex tempore in this wise.  
*When steeds to win the prize, with sound  
offset shall run amaine,  
And at the tomb of Jupiter,  
their charriots break in twaine:*

For which cause especially it is reported he was so highly admired, that thereby hee won the free-ree of Gold. And what difference (quoth *Cleodemus*) is there between these questions and the riddles put forth by *Æmetus*? which haply are no more unlesly for her to devise in sport and mirth, and when she hath (as it were) twitted them, to propose unto dames like herselfe, then for other women to delight for their patience, to busie their heads in, and working girdles of tuffe, or knitting net-work Coifes and Cawls: but certainly that men of wisdom and understanding should make any account thereof, were very ridiculous and a meer mockery. At which speech of his it seemed that *Æmetus* was willing enough to have replied, and said somewhat unto him again, but that maidenly modesty stayed her; for her blood was up, and blushed as red as skarlet all her face over: But *Æsop* taking her part, as it were, to revenge her quarrel: Nay were it not (quoth he) more ridiculous farre, not to be able to solve such questions? and namely such a riddle as this, which she put forth unto us a little before supper.

*A man I saw, with help of fire,  
who set a peece of brass,  
Fast to a man, so as it seem'd  
to him it fastned was.*

Now tell me, can you with all your cunning say what this should be? No iwis (quoth *Cleodemus*, neither mean I to beat my brains about the knowledge of it: And yet there is no man (quoth he) knoweth this thing better, nor useth it more then you: and if you deny it, I will call to witness your ventoses and cupping boxes. Hereat *Cleodemus* could not chuse but laugh: for there was not a Physician in thole days that used cupping and boxing so much as he, and in regard that he practised it so much, this remedy or device in Physick was in no small request and reputation. But *Mnesiphilus* the Athenian a familiar friend and zealous follower of *Solon*, began to speak in this wise unto *Periander*: Sir, if I might be so bold, I think it good, and my desire is, that the speeches and discourses of this good company, may not be dealt among the rich and noble persons only who are here in place, but parted equally and indifferently among them all, and go round like a cup of wine, as the manner is in democracy or state of a City, governed by the people: This I speak, for that we who live in a popular Common-wealth, participate in nothing of all that which you have right now delivered, as touching sovereign rule of Prince and King: we think it reason therefore that you would enter every one of you into a discourse of popular government, and deliver your several opinions upon the point, beginning first again at *Solon*. To this motion they all agreed: whereupon *Solon* thus began to speak: As for you (*O Mnesiphilus*) like as all the other inhabitants of *Athens*, you have heard heretofore what mine opinion is concerning the government of a Weal publick: and yet if you please to hear me now also I say again, that in my judgement that City is right well governed, and maintaineth best the popular estate and liberty, wherein thole very persons who have not been wronged and oppressed, do prosecute the law upon an oppressor and wrong doer, yea and seek to punish him, no lesse then the party himselfe who hath sustained the injury

jury and outrage. After him *Bias* opined thus: That the popular government was best, in which all the inhabitants feared the law as much as a rigorous Tyrant. Then *Thales* followed in this manner: That he reputed such a Common-wealth best ordered which had in it neither too wealthy, nor yet over-poor Citizens. Next to him took *Anacharsis* his turn, and delivered his mind in these words: That in his conceit that City was right well governed, wherein all other things being equally determined among the inhabitants, the better condition was measured by virtue, and the worse by vice. In the fifth place *Cleobulus* affirmed: That the policy of that popular City was simply best, the Citizens whereof did more dread dishonour than the Law. Then *Chilo* when his turn came, pronounced: That policy to excel all others when as the people gave greatest ear unto the Lawes, and least hearkened unto Orators. After them all *Periander* in the last place gave his judgement, saying: That he reckoned that popular estate seemed to be best, which came nearest unto an aristocracy, or regiment of wife and noble Senate.

Now when this disputation was ended, I requested them to proceed farther, and to instruct us as touching economy, or a household, how it ought to be ordered: for that few men were called unto the government of Cities and Realms, but every one of us had an house and family of his own to be governed: Not so (quoth *Esop*), and therewith he laughed if you reckon *Anacharsis* in the number of us; for no house hath he of his own, and (forsooth) hegieth therein, that none he hath, saying: That he maketh his abode in a chariot, as (men say) the Sun doth, who is carried round about the world in his chaire, and one while goeth to this quarter, and another while to that quarter of the heaven: And even in this respect (quoth *Anacharsis*) the Sun only is free, or at least-wise more at liberty, and at his own dispose, than any other of all the gods, commanding all, and not commanded of any; and therefore he reigneth indeed, and having the reins in his own hand, condueth his own chariot himselfe: but me thinks you never conceived and comprized the grandeur and beauty of the Sun, how excellent and admirable his chariot is; for other-wise you would never in bound, and by way of merry jest have compared it to ours: furthermore, it seemeth that you take an house to be these cloisters covered with tile, and walled with clay, or earth; which is as much to say, that a Tortoise is the shell, and not the living creature which is therein; and therefore I nothing wonder that you mocked *Solon* upon a time, for that he having viewed the palace of King *Cresus*, so richly furnished and sumptuously adorned, deemed not by and by the owner and Lord thereof to be stately and happily lodged; but desired first to see and behold the good parts, that were within him, rather than the goods which were about him; and herein seemeth unto me, that you have forgotten your own tale of the Fox, who being come to contend and debate with the Leopard, whether of the twain were beset with more colours and divers spots, required of the judge between them, that he would not regard and consider so much the outward painting of the skin, as the variety of the spirit and soul within, for that he should find the fame be-dight with a world of divers spots; but you look only to the workmanship of cutters in stone, and of Masons, esteeming that only to be the house, and not that which is domestical and within, to wit, Children, Wife, Friends, and Servitors, unto whom (being wife, sober, and of good conditions) the father of the family, and householder, communicating and imparting that which he hath (say he were within a Birds nest, or in an Emnets hole) may avouch that he dwelleth in a good and blessed house. Lo what mine answer is to *Esop*, as also for my part, what collation and dole I contribute unto *Diocetes*: now for the rest of you, let every man confer (as reason is) to it, what he thinketh good, and utter his mind. Then *Solon*: That house (in my opinion) is best, the goods wherein, were neither gotten by unjust and indirect means, nor bred any fear, suspicion and doubt for the keeping, nor yet drew repentance for the spending of them. After him *Bias* opened: That he held the family best, the master whereof was of himselfe the same man within, as (for fear of the law) abroad. Then *Thales*: Wherein the master may live at most ease and greatest leisure. And *Cleobulus*: Wherein there be more persons that love, than fear the master. Next delivered *Pittacus* his mind, and said: That he took that to be the best house, wherein there was no desire of superfluities nor miss of necessities. After him came *Chilo* with his sentence: That an house ought as much as is possible, to resemble a City or State governed by the absolute commandment of a King; adding moreover, that which *Lyngus* answered sometimes unto one who advised him to establish in the City *Sparta* the popular government: Begin (quoth he) first thy selfe to ordain in thine owne house a popular estate, where every one may be as great a Lord and Master as another. After this speech all finished, *Eumetris* and *Melissa* went forth. Then *Periander* taking a great cup in his hand, drank to *Chilon*, and *Chilon* likewise in order to *Bias*. Then *Aradus* stood up, and addressing his speech unto *Esop*: Will not you neither (quoth he) let the cup come unto us, seeing that they therefore find it round about from hand to hand among them, as if it were the Can of *Babylones*, and will not impart and let it passe to others? Then (quoth *Solon*) neither is this cup (so far as I see) any whit popular, standing as it hath done a long time before *Solon* only. Whereat *Pittacus* calling unto *Mnesiphilus* by name: What is the reason (quoth he) that *Solon* drinketh not, but goeth against his own Poems, wherein himselfe hath written these verses:

*The sports of Venus Lusty bringt,  
And Bacchus, now are my delight;*

*In musickes eke I pleasure take,  
For why? these three, mens joles do make.*

Then *Anacharsis* helped him out, and spake in his behalfe, saying: He doth it *Pittacus* for feare of you, and that levere and rigorous law of yours, by which you have ordeined, that whosoever by occasion of drunkennesse chanceth to commit a fault, what ever it be, shall incur a double penalty, and be fined twiceas much as if he had done it whiles he was sober. Then *Pittacus*: Yet nevertheless (quoth he) you carry your selfe so proudly and disdainfull in mockage of this my flatterelle (quoth he) that both the last yeer, and not long since, being at my brother *Lybis* his house, when you were drunke you demanded to have the prize thereof, and called for the garland and crown. And why not (quoth *Anacharsis*) considering there was propoed a reward for the victory to him that drunke most? and if I were overcharged with wine and drunk with the first, should not I challenge by right the prize and reward of victory? or else tell me what other end is there of drinking lustily, than to be drunke? *Pittacus* hereat began to laugh; and then *Esop* told such a tale as this: The wolfe (quoth he) perceiving upon a time the shepherds to eat a mutton within their cottage, approached unto them, and said: Oh what a stirre and outcry would you have made at us if I had done that which you do? Hereat *Chilon*: *Esop* (quoth hee) hath well revenged himselfe now (whose mouth ere-while was stopped that he had not a word to say) seeing at this present as he doth, that others had taken the answer out of *Mnesiphilus* his mouth, and not given him liberty to speake, being demanded the question why *Solon* dranke not? and like it was that he should have answered in his behalfe. Then *Mnesiphilus* rendered this reason and said: That he wist well *Solon* was of this opinion, that the proper worke of every art and faculty, as well divine as humane, was rather the effect and thing by it wrought, than that whereby it was effected; and the end thereof rather than the means tending thereto: for so I suppose that a weaver will say, that his worke is to make a web for a mantle, a coat, or such a robe, and not to spoole, winde quills, lay his warp, shoot oufe, or raise and let fall the weights and stones hanging to the loom: Also that the worke of a smith is to foder iron, or to give the temper of steel for the edge of an axe head rather than any other thing needfull to such an effect, to wit, the kindling of coles and setting them on fire, or the preparing of any stone-girt serving for the former purpose. Semblably, a carpenter or mason employed in architecture, would much more complaine and finde fault with us, if wee should say that neither a ship nor an house were their worke, but the boaring of holes in timber with an auger or the tempering of mortar. In like manner would the muses take exceeding great indignation, and not without good cause, if we should think that their works were either harps, lutes, pipes, and such instruments of musick: and not the reforming and institution of folks manners, the dulcing and appeasing of other passions who delight in song, harmony, and musickall accord. And even so we must confesse that the worke of *Venus* is not carnall company and meddling of two bodies; nor of *Bacchus*, wine-bibbing and drunkennesse, but rather mirth and solace, affectionate love, mutuall amity, conversation, and familiarity one with another, which are procured unto us thereby: for the be the works indeed which *Plato* calleth divine and heavenly: For I assure you *Venus* is the work-mistresse of mutuall concord, solace and benevolence between men and women, mingling and melting (as it were) together with the bodies, their soules also, by the means of pleasure: *Bacchus* likewise in many who before had no great familiarity together, nor any knowledge and acquaintance to speak of, by softning and moistning the hardnesse of their manners, and that by the means of wine (like as fire worketh iron to be gentle and pliable) hath engendered a beginning of commixtion and incorporation one with another. True it is I must needs say, that when such personages are met and assembled together, as *Periander* hath hither invited, there is no need either of cup or flagon for to bring them acquainted: for the muses setting in mids before them a cup of sobriety, to wit, their conference and speech, wherein there is not only store of pleasure and delight, but also of erudition, learning, and serious matter, do excite, drench, enlarge and spread abroad by the means of discourse and talk, the amiable joy of such guests, suffering for the most part the wine, pot or flagon to stand still above the cup or goblet: a thing that *Hesiodus* forbade expressly among such as could skill better to carouse than to discourse. And whereas we read thus in *Homer*:

*For howsoever other Greeks  
that weare their haire so long,  
Doe drinke about their measure just  
allowed them among:  
Your cup I see stands ever full,  
no gage to you is set;  
But hasty draughts you may carouse,  
no man there is to let.*

Methinks I heare and understand hereby, that our ancients called this manner of drinking one to another by way of challenge and provocation *ααργος*, according to thereafter that *Homer* giveth it, and so every man drank a certaine measure in order: yea, and afterwards (like as *Alex* did) each one divided portions of flesh to his next fellow sitting at the board. Now when *Mnesiphilus* had thus said: *Cheridas* the Poet, whom lately *Periander* had quit of certaine imputations charged upon him, and who was newly returned into his favour at the earnest request of *Chilon*:

I would gladly know (quoth he) whether *Jupiter* gage the rest of the gods with a certaine measure and stint of drinking, (for that they use to drink one to another when they dine and sup with him) like as *Agamemnon* dealt by the Princes of the Greeks, when they were at his table. Then *Cleodemus*: If it be true (quoth he) friend *Cherfus* as you and other Poets do say, that certaine doves flying hardily and with great difficulty over the rocks called *Plania*, bring unto *Jupiter* that celestiall meat named *Ambrosia*: think you not likewise that he had much ado to get the heavenly drink *Nectar*, and that he had but small store thereof, whereby he could not chule but make spare and give of it to every one according to measure? Yes verily (quoth *Cherfus*) and peradventure they had it distributed equally among them: but since we are fallen againe into a fresh discourse of house-keeping, which of you will go on and finish the rest which remaineth to be said thereof? Then *Cleobulus* inferred this speech and said: As for wise men indeed, the law (quoth he) hath given them a prescript measure: but as touching fools, I will tell you a tale which I heard my mother once relate unto a brother of mine: The time was (quoth he) that the Moon praised her mother to make her a petticoat fit and proportionable for her body: Why, how is it possible (quoth her mother) that I should knit or weave one to fit well about thee, considering that I see thee one while full, another while croissant or in the waime, and pointed with tips of horns, and sometime againe half round? Even so (friend *Cherfus*) a man is not able to set down a definite and just proportion of substance and goods to maintain an house unto a foolish or naughty person: for such a one hath need one while of this thing, and another while of that, according to his divers desires and variable events and occasions, much like to *AEsop* dog, who as he saith, in the winter season shrinking together, and lying round for cold, whereby he is ready to be frozen and starved, is of mind to build himselfe an house: but in summer when he lies sleeping stretched out at length, he thinks himselfe to be very great, and supposeth it a needlesse thing to build an house, and besides no small peece of work to let up a frame bigge and large enough to receive his body. See you not likewise O *Cherfus*, that these kinde of folke will be thought now but small and little, and refraineth themselves into a narrow compasse, proposing forthwith a straight and laconical manner of life: but anon all at once they will bee aloft, and if they may not have all that they see, and possesse not only the estate of private persons, but also of Kings and Princes, they are undone for ever, and complaine as if they were pined and ready to dye for hunger: at which words *Cherfus* held his peace. But *Cleodemus* then began and said: Howbeit, we all see (quoth he) that you my masters your selves who are sage and wise, have your goods and possessions unequally dealt among you, if a man would go about to measure and count them. True indeed my good friend (answered *Cleobulus* againe) and this is because the law (like unto a good weaver or knitter) hath given unto every one of us that which is fit, suitable and convenient for us: and even so you your selves, Sir, in your direction for diet, nourishment and purging of your patients by reason, after the prescription (as it were) of law, do not set them down receipts and orders all alike, but such as are agreeable and meet for every one. Upon this speech *Ardalus* replied, saying: How then? Is there a law that commandeth *Epimenides* here our familiar friend, and *Solon*'s hoste to forbear all other viands, and by taking onely in his mouth a little of the composition called *Alimos*, which hath vertue to put-by hunger (which pleasant electuary or confection hee maketh himselfe) to continue a whole day without meat and drink, without dinner and supper. This speech moved attention and silence in the whole company there in place: onely *Thales* alter a jocund and merry manner answered: That *Epimenides* did well and wisely not to buse and trouble himselfe about grinding corn, baking meale, or dressing his own meats (as *Pittacus* did:) for my selfe (quoth he) whiles I was in the Isle *Leibos*, heard a wench of a forreine Country, as she turned the quern about, sing thus, Grind mill, Grind for even *Pittacus* the King of Great *Mitylena*, is a miller and grindeth. But *Solon* said: I wonder much *Ardalus*, that you never read in *Hesiodus* his Poem, the recite of the regiment of that mans diet: for he was the first who gave unto *Epimenides* the seeds of this nourishment, and taught him to search:

In Mallows and in *Asphodels*,  
which grow on every ground:  
What use and profits manifold,  
for man there may be found.

Why? think you (quoth *Periander*) that *Hesiodus* had any such meaning in that verse: and not rather (as he is alwaies a great praiser of sparing and frugality) that he exhorted us unto the simplest viands, as to those which were most pleasant: for surely the Mallow is good to eat, and the *Asphodel* Rem very sweet in taste: as for those which the Physicians name *Alima* and *Adipsa*, that is to say, putting-by hunger and thirst: I heare say and understand, that they be medicines and not meats, and that among other ingredients that go to their making, they receive honie and a certain barbarous kind of cheefe, besides many other seeds which are easie enough to come by: for how else should not as (as we read in *Hesiodus*)

The plow beam hang aloft in smotherie smoke,  
The ox and mule cease both to draw in yoke,

if need there were of so great provition? But I marvel much *Solon*, at your hoste, that having but lately celebrated a solemn feast of Purification among the *Delians*, hee observed not how they themselves brought with great ceremony into their Temple, the ensignes and monuments of

of the ancient and primitive nourishment of mankind: and namely, among other things very common, and which grow of themselves without mans hand: the Mallow and the *Asphodel*: which two herbs (it is very probable and like) that *Hesiodus* also recommended unto us for their simplicity and profit. Now in those regards onely (quoth *Anacharsis*) but for that they both, the one as well as the other, are commended as speciall herbs for the health of man: True (quoth *Cleodemus*) and great reason you have so to say: for *Hesiodus* was well teen in physics, as may appear by that which he hath written so exactly and skillfully of diet, and the regiment of our feeding: of the manner of tempering wine, of the vertue and goodnesse of water, the use of baines, baths, and women, of the time of keeping company with them, and of the posture of infants in the wombe, and when they should be born. But to judge aright, *AEsop* had more reason than *Epimenides* to avow himselfe the disciple of *Hesiodus*, for the talk which the hauke had with the nightingale unto *AEsop*, the first beginning of this faire, variable, and many-tongued learning of his. But willing I am to heare *Solon*: for very like it is, that he having lived and conversed so familiarly many years together with *Epimenides* at *Athens*, asked of him oftentimes, and knew full well upon what accident or occasion, and for what purpose he chose and followed this strait course of life, and what need was there (quoth *Solon*) to demand that of him? for all the world knoweth, and most evident it is, that as the greatest and most sovereign good of man, is to have no need at all of nourance: so the next unto it is to require the least nourishment that is: Not so (quoth *Cleodemus*) if I may be so bold as to speake my mind: For I do not think that the sovereign good of man is to get nothing, especially when the table is laid and furnished with meat: for to take away the viands left thereupon, is as much as to subvert the Altar, and sacrifice unto the gods, and to overthrow the amity and hospitality among men. And like as *Thales* saith: That if the earth were taken out of the world, there mult of necessity ensue a general confusion of all things: even so we may say, put down the board, you do as much as to ruinate the whole house: for with it you abolish fire which keepeth the house: the tutelar deity of *Vesta*: the amiable custome of drinking together out of one bowl and cup: the laudable manner of feasting of friends: the kind fashion of entertaining strangers, and all reciprocal hospitality, and mutual usage of guests: which be the principal and most courteous conversations that can be devised among men one with another: and to speake the summe more truly: farewell then, all the sweetnesse of humane life and society, in case there be allowed any retreat at all, solace and passion apart from businesse and affairs: whereof the need of sustenance and the preparation thereto belonging, yieldeth most matter, and disfordeth the greatest part. Moreover, the mischief hereof would reach as farre as to agriculture, and that were great pity, considering that if husbandry were laid down with the decay and ruine thereof, there would ensue againe a rude and deformed face of the whole earth, as being neglected, and not cleared from fruitlesse trees, bushes and weeds, and overflowed with the inundation of waters and rivers running out of their channels and so without order, for want of good husbandry, and the diligent hand of man: over and besides, perith there shall with it, all arts and handi-crafts, which the table maintaineth and keepeth in traine, giving unto them their foundation and matter, in such sort as they will come all to nothing, if you take it away: nay more than that: What will become of religion and worship done to the gods? for surely, men will exhibit but little or none honour at all unto the Sunne, and much lesse unto the Moon, as having nought else from them but their light and heat only: and who will ever caule an altar to be reared and furnished as it ought to be to *Jupiter*, for sending down seasonable rain, or to *Ceres* the patronesse of agriculture, or to *Neptune* the protector of trees and plants: who will ever after offer any sacrifices unto them? how shall *Bacchus* be the author of joy and mirth, if we have no more any need of that pleasant liquor of wine which he giveth? what shall we sacrifice? what shall we poure upon the altars? what oblations shall we offer unto the gods? and whereof shall we present any fitt fruits? In one word, this abuse would bring with it a totall subversion, and general confusion of the best and chiefeest things. True it is, that to follow all kinde of pleasures, and in every manner, were brutishness; and even so to flye them all, and in no wise to embrace them, were no lesse folly and foolishnesse. The soul may well enough enjoy other pleasures and delights, which are better and more noble: but the body can find none at all more harmlesse and honest, so content it selfe with, than to eat and drink, whereby it is fed and nourished: a thing that there is no man but he both knoweth and acknowledgeth: in regard whereof, men use to set and spread their tables in publike and open places, for to eat and drink together in the broad day light: whereas to take the pleasure of *Venus*, they wait for the night, and seek all the darknesse they can, supposing it to be as beastly and nameles to do the one in publike and common, as not at all to do the other, but forbear it altogether. When *Cleodemus* herewith brake off and ended his speech, I followed in the same traine, and seconded his words in this wise: But you overpaste one thing besides, namely, that by this means, together with our food and nourishment, we banish and drive away all sleep: now if there be no sleep, there will be no dreams, and so by consequence, we may bid farewell to a most ancient kinde of oracle and divination which we have by them. Over and besides, our life will be alwaies after one fashion, and to no purpose, but in waime shall the soul be clad (as a man would say) within the body, seeing that the greatest number, and the principall parts of the said body were made and framed by nature for to receive instruments of nourishment: as for example, the tongue, the teeth, the stomack and the liver, &c. for there is nothing in the whole structure and composition of mans body, that either lieth still and idle, or is

ordained for any other use; inasmuch as whosoever hath no need of food, needeth not the body also; which is as much to say, as that he standeth in no need of himselfe; for every one of us doth consist as well of body as soule. Thus much may I serve for my part, to have spoken in the defence of the belly; now if *Solon* or any other have ought to say and object against it, by way of accusation, ready we are and disposed to give him the hearing. Yes many (quoth *Solon*) unless we were bereft of selfe judgement and understanding then the Egyptians, who ripping open the belly of a dead body, threw it unto the Sunne, and cast away the guts and entrailles together with the paunch, into a running river; but afterwards, when they have thus rid away the garbage, and cleansed the corps, the rest they imbalm and be careful of: for to say a truth, these inward parts, be the very pollution and iniquation of the flesh, and to speake properly, the very hell of our body; for so they say, that the place of the damned is full of (I wot not what) horrible rivers and winds consufled together with fire and dead carcasses. For no creature living is nourished with any food that liveth; but we (in killing those creatures which have soules, or in destroying plants, herbs and fruits which participate likewise of life, inasmuch as we see them to be nourished and grow) do evilly, and sinne very grievously, forasmuch as whatsoever is transfused and turned into another, loeth that nature which it had before, and wholly is corrupted, for to become nourishment to another. As for abstinence from eating of flesh, as (by report) *Orpheus* did in old time, is rather a subtil shift of Sophistry, than any perfect humoring or forbearing of those finnes which are committed in delicious fares, and superfluous gormandize; but the only way to avoid enormity in this behalte, and the meanes to keep a mans selfe perfectly pure and undefiled, according to the absolute rule of justice, is to be content with that which is within himselfe, and to live without desire of any thing without, whatsoever: but he that is by God framed to that nature and condition, that without the damage and hurt of another, he cannot possibly preserve his own being and safety; unto him he hath given a nature which will continually move him to injustice, and to commit wrong. Were it not then (my good friend *Diocles*) very meet and requisite to cut off together with injustice and sinfulness, the belly, stomach, and liver, yea, and all other such parts which give unto us the appetite of nothing in the world that is honest, but resemble partly the instruments of a cook, and vessels of the kitchen, to wit, chopping-knives, cawdrons, pots and kettles, and in part are like unto the utensils of a mill, of a chimney, oven or furnace, or such tools as serve eitherto dig pits, or be used in bake-house or paffry? for to say a truth, you may plainly see and perceive that the soule in many men lieth hidden within the body, as it were in a certain mill-house, turning round continually (as one would say) about a quern, in pursuit after the necessities thereof, even as we here ere-while perceived by experience in our own selves, when we neither saw nor heard, nor regarded one another; but every one of us inclining forward and stooping down to covetousness, served our own need and looked to our food, but now when the tables be taken up, as you see, having chaplets or flowers on our heads, we take delight in devising together, and holding honest discourses, we rejoice in fellowship and good company, we pass the time away in ease and repose, being once come to that point, that we have no more any desire or need of nourishment: If then we could hold us so still, and continue while we live in this present state, so that we neither feared want and poverty, nor yet knew what was covetousness and desire of riches, should we not lead (think you) a blessed and easie life, as having leisure to converse together, and joy in our mutual society? For know well this, that looking after the needlesse superfluities immediately enureth upon the appetite and desire of things necessary. But whereas *Cleobulus* is of this opinion, that needs there must be meat and food, to the end that there might be tables, and standing cups upon them, that men may drink one to another: also that they might sacrifice to dame *Ceres* and her daughter *Proserpina*: another man may as well, and truly say: There ought to be warres and battles, to the end that we may have wals and fortifications for our Cities, Arsenals for our navies, and armories also, that for the killing of an hundred enemies, wee might in thanksgiving to the gods, offer sacrifices thereupon, called *Hecatomphoria*, according as they say: there is a statute importing so much among the Meslians. Or all one it were as if some other should be angry or offended with health, saying: It were great pity, if because there are none fish any more, there should be no use of eatebeds, fine linnen sheets, soft pillowes and coverings, nor any need to sacrifice unto *Esculapius* or other gods, to divert and turne away our maladies; and so the art of physick, with all the tools, instruments, drugs and medicines belonging thereto, and so the art and neglected without honour and regard, For what odds is there between the one and the other, considering that wee received food as a medicine to cure our hunger? Besides, all they that keep a certaine diet, are said to cure themselves, using this remedy, not as a pleasure delightfull and desirable, but as meanes to content and satiate nature. For surely we may reckon more paines than pleasures, that come unto a man by his feeding; or to speake more truly, the pleasure of eating hath but a little place, and continueth as small a while in mans body; but the trouble and difficulty which it hath in providing and preparing, with how many shamefull inconveniences and painefull travels it pestereth us, what should I relate unto you? For I suppose, that in regard of all these vexations, *Homer* took upon him to prove, that the gods died not, by this argument, that they received no food:

For neither eat they bread in heaven,  
nor pleasat wine doe drinke:

Thus

Thus bloodlesse since they be, we them  
immortal name and think.

As if by these verses he would give us to understand, that our eating and drinking is not only the meanes of our life, but also the cause of our death: for thereupon a number of diseases take hold of our bodies, which are gathered within the fame, and proceed no lesse from fulnesse than emptinesse, and many times we have more adoe to concoct, consume, and dissipate our food, than we had to get and provide it. And much like as if the daughters of *Danaus* were in doubt what to do, and what life to lead, or how to be employed, after they were delivered and freed once from their servile taskes imposed upon them, for to fill their tunne-board full of holes; even so doubt we (in case we were come to this paffe, as to cease from stuffing and cramming this unsatiable flesh of ours, which will never lay Ho, with all sorts of viands that land or sea may afford) what we should do? and all because for want of experience and knowledge what things be good and honest, we love all our life time to seek for to be provided of necessaries: and like as they who have been slaves a long time, after they come once to be delivered from servitude, do of themselves, and for themselves the very same services, which they were wont to perform for their masters, when they were bound; even so, the soule taketh now great paines and travell to feed the body, but if once she might be dispatched and discharged from this yoke of bondage, no sooner shall she finde her selfe free and at liberty, but she will nourish and regard her selfe, she will have aerie then to the knowledge of the truth, and nothing shall pluck her away, or divert and withdraw her from it. Thus much *O Niciasarchus* as touching those points which were then delivered concerning nourishment. But before that *Solon* had fully finished his speech, *Gorgias* the brother of *Periander* entered into the place, being newly returned from *Tanarus*, whether he had been sent before by occasion of (I wot not what) oracles, for to carry thither certaine oblations unto *Neptune*, and to doe sacrifice unto him; we all saluted him and welcomed him home; but *Periander* his brother coming toward, kissed him, causing him afterwards to sit down by himselfe upon the bed side, where he made relation unto him alone of certaine newes. *Periander* gave good eare unto his brother, and shewed by his countenance that he was diversely affected, and very passionate upon that which he heard him to report; and by his visage it seemed one while that he sorrowed and grieved, another while that he was angry and offended; he made semblant for a time, as if he distrustful and would not give credit unto him, and anon againe he seemed as much to wonder and stand in admiration: in the end he laughed, and said unto us: Very gladly would I out of hand recount unto you, the tidings which my brother hath told me, but hardly dare I, neither will I be over-hasty so to do, for fear of *Thales*, whom I have heard otherwise to say: That well we might make report of newes that be probable, and like to be true; but touching things impossible, we ought altogether to hold our peace. Hereupon *Bias*: But as wise a saying (quoth he) was this of *Thales*: That as we ought not to beleve our enemies in things that be credible, so we are not to discredit our friends even in those things that are incredible. For mine own part, I think verily by this speech of his, that he took those for his enemies who were lewd and foolish, and reputed for friends such as were good and wise. I would advise you therefore (*O Gorgias*) that either you would declare your newes here before all this company, or rather reduce that narration which you come withal to pronounce aloud unto us, into those new kind of verses which are called *Dithyrambes*. Then *Gorgias* set tale on end, and began to speake in this manner: After we had sacrificed for the space of three daies together, and the last day performed in a generall assembly all the night a festivall solemnity, with piaies and dances along the fironde by the sea side, as the moon shoon at full upon the sea, without any wind in the world stirring at all, so as there was a gentle generall calme, and every thing still and quiet; behold we might discover afarre off a certainemotion or trouble in the sea, bending toward a promontory or Cape, and as it approached neerer thereto, raised withall a little hum, and that with a great noise by reason of the agitation of the water and waves that it made in such sort, as that all the company of us wondered what it might be, and ran toward the place whereunto it seemed to make way and bend the course for to arrive; but before that we could by any conjecture guesse what it was, (the swiftnesse thereof was such) we might evidently descry with our eie a number of Dolphins, some swimming round about it thicke together, others directing the whole troop toward the easiest and gentlest landing-place of the bank, and some there were again, that followed behind as it were in the rereward: now in the mids of all this troop, there appeared above the water I wot not what lump or masse of a body floating aloft, which we could neither discern nor devie what it was, until such time as the said Dolphins all clofe together, and shooting themselves into the shore, landed upon the bank a man both alive and aloft moving; which done they returned toward the rock or promontory afore said, leaping and dancing wantonly as it should seem for very joy more then they did before: which the greatest part of our company (quoth *Gorgias*) seeing, were so greatly afraid, that they fled from the sea againe all amased: My selfe with some few others, took better heart and approached near, where we found that it was *Ariele* the harper, who of himselfe told to us his name, and easie he was otherwise to be known, for that he had the same apparell which hee was wont to wear when he played in publike place upon his harp: So we took him up incontinently and brought him into a tent (for harm he had none in the world, save only that by reason of the swiftnesse and violent force of his carriage he was weary and seemed ready to faint) where we heard from his mouth a strange tale, and to all men incredible,



unless it were to us who saw the end and issue thereof. For this *Arion* reported unto us, that having been of long time resolved to returne out of *Italy*, and so much the rather, because *Periander* had written unto him for to make haste and come away upon the first opportunity presented to him of a Corinthian Carrick that made faile from thence, he presently embarked, but no sooner were they come into the broad and open sea, and that with a gentle gale of wind, but he perceived that the Mariners conspired together for to take away his life, whereof the pilot himselfe also of the same ship gave him advertisement secretly, namely, that they intended to put the thing in execution that night. *Arion* thus finding himselfe destitute of all succour, and not knowing what to do: it came into his mind as it were by a certaine heavenly and divine inspiration (whiles he had yet some time to live) for to adorn his body with those ornaments which he accustomed to put on when he was to play upon his harp for a prize in some festive Theatre; to the end that the same habit might serve him for his funerall weed now at his death; and withall to sing a dolefull song and lamentable ditty before his departure out of this life, and not to shew himselfe in this case lesse generous then the *Iwans*: being therefore thus arrayed and decked accordingly, and doing the mariners to wit before hand, that he had a wonderfull desire to chant a sonnet or hymn unto *Apollo Pythius*, for the safety of himselfe, the ship and all those fellow-passengers who were within it, he stood upright on his feet in the poop clove to the ship side, & after he had founded a certain invocation or prayers to the sea-gods, he chanted the canticle before said, and as he was in the mids of his song, the sunne went down and seemed to settle within the sea, and with that they began to discover *Peloponnesus*. Then the Mariners who could no longer stay nor tarry for the dark night, came toward for to kill him: when he saw their naked swords drawne, and beheld the foresaid Pilot how he covered his face, because he would not see so villainous a spectacle, he cast himselfe over ship-board, and leapt as farre into the sea from the ships he could: but before that his whole body was under the water, the Dolphins made haste, and from beneath were ready to bear him up for sinking. Full of fear and perturbation of spirit he was at first, inasmuch as being astonished thereat, he wist not what it might be: but within a while after, perceiving that he was carried at ease, and seeing a great floc of Dolphins environing gently round about him, and that they succeeded and seconded one another by turnes, for to take the charge of carrying him, as it had been a service imposed upon them all, and whereunto they were necessarily obliged: and seeing besides that the Carricke was a good way behind (by which he gathered that he went away, and was a carried away with great celerity): he was not (quoth *Gorgias*) so fearfull of death, or desirous otherwise to live, as he had an ambitious desire to arrive once at the haven of safety, to the end that the world might know that he stood in the grace and favour of the gods, and that he reposed an assured belief and firme affiance in them, beholding as hee did the skie full of flames, the Moone arising pure and cleere with exceeding brightnesse, and the whole sea about him smooth and calme; but that the course of these Dolphins traced out a certaine way and path, so that he thought thus within himselfe, that the divine justice had not one cie alone, but as many cies as there were starres in the heaven, and that God beheld all about whatsoever was done both by sea and land: Which cogitations and thoughts of mind (quoth he) mightily strengthened and sustained my body, which otherwise was ready to faint and yield with travell and wearinesse: finally, when the Dolphins were come as farre as to the great promontory of *Tenarus*, so high and steep, they were very wary and careful that they ran not upon it, but turned gently at one side, and swam behind it along the coast, as if they would have conducted a bark safe and sound to a sure bay and landing place, whereby he perceived evidently that carried he was thus by the guidance of the divine providence. After that *Arion* (said *Gorgias*) had made all this discourse unto us, I enquired of him where he thought that the ship above said intended to arrive. At *Corinth* (quoth he) without all doubt, but it will be very late first, for it being toward evening when I leapt into the sea, I suppose that it was carried upon the Dolphins backs no lesse then a course of five hundred furlongs, and no sooner was I from ship-board, but there ensued presently a great calme at sea. Moreover, *Gorgias* said: That he having learned the names afwell of the ship-maister, as of the Pilot, and withall known what badge or ensigne the ship carried, made out certaine pinnaces, and those manned with soldiers, for to observe what Creeks, commodious Bays, and landing-places there were upon the faile coast; but as for *Arion*, *Gorgias* conveyed him secretly with him, for (said he) the Mariners should have had any advertisement of his delivery and safety, they might life away and escape: But as God would have it, every thing fell out so, as we might see (quoth *Gorgias*) the very immediate hand of the divine power: for at one and the same instant that I arrived here, I had intelligence also that the faile ship was fallen into the hands of those soldiers whom I set out; and so the Mariners and passengers within it were taken all prisoners. Hereupon *Periander* commanded *Gorgias* presently to arise to apprehend them, and lay them up fast in close prison, where no person might have access unto them, or certify them that *Arion* was alive and safe. Then *Esop*: Mock on now (quoth he) at my jayes and crows that talk and tell tales, when you see that Dolphins also can in this wise play their youthfull pranks, and achieve such provesses. Nay (quoth I then) we are able to report, *Esop*: another narration like to this, which hath been set down in writing, and received for current and good these thousand yeeres passed and more, even from the daies of *Ius* and *Athamius*. Then *Solon* taking occasion of speech by these words: yea, but these matters, O *Dioclet* (quoth he) concerne the gods more neerly, and surpass our puissance: but as for that which

beell

beell to *Hefodus*, was a meer humane accident, and not impertinent unto us, for I suppose you have heard the history told. No I assure you (quoth I): But worth it is the hearing (quoth *Solon* againe.) And thus by report it was. A certaine *Milesian* with whom as it should seem *Hefodus* had familiar acquaintance, inasmuch as they lodged, eat and drunke together ordinarily in the City of *Loeris*, kept their holts daughter, and abused her body, so as in the end he was taken with the manner. Now was *Hefodus* suspected to have been privy to him of this villany from the very beginning; yea, and to have kept the door and assisted him in concealing the same, whereas indeed he was in no fault at all, nor culpable any way; howbeit, by means of false suspicions and sinister surmises of people, hee incurred much anger, and was hardly thought of, neither could he avoid the unjust imputations of the world: for the brethren of the young damoelle lay in ambush for him neer unto a wood about *Loeris*, set upon and slew him outright, together with his servant or page, *Troilus*, who tended upon him. Alter this murder committed, and their bodies cast into the sea, it chanced that the corps of *Troilus* being carried forth into the river *Daphnus*, reft upon a rock environed and dashed round about with the water, and the same not farre from the sea, which rock thereupon took his name, and is so called at this day. But the dead body of *Hefodus*, immediately from the land was received by a float or troop of Dolphins, and by them carried as farre as to the Capes *Rhion* and *Molychris*. It happened at the very same time that the Citizens of *Loeris*, held a solemn assembly, and celebrated festival sacrifices, called *Rhion*, which they perform even at this day also in the very same place with great magnificence and state: this corps being elyped floating toward them, (you may well think) caused all the company there to marvell not a little, who thereupon ranne all to the shoare, and taking knowledge that it was the corps of *Hefodus*, because it seemed fresh killd, they laid all other buisnesse apart, and with all speed, sent about and made inquisition of this murder, by reason of the great renown and name that went of *Hefodus*: and this they followed with such diligence, that quickly they found out the murderers, whom after they were apprehended, they threw alive headlong presently into the sea, drowned them and razed their house. Now was the Corps of *Hefodus* entered neer unto the Temple *Nemeius*: howbeit, few strangers there be that know of this his Sepulcher, for concealed of purpose it is, by reason of the Orthonenians who made search for it (by report) and were desirous by the appointment of certaine Oracles to take up his reliques, and bury them in their Country. If then the Dolphins be so kind and lovingly affected to the dead, much more probable it is, that they be willing and ready to help those who are alive, especially if they be drawne and allure by the sound of the pipes, flutes or other harmonies for who is there of us all that knoweth not how these creatures are delighted in songs, following and swimming along those vessels where they hear musicke, as taking great pleasure in the songs and musical instruments of those passengers, who doe sing or play in a faire and calm season: also they are not a little pleased to see young children swimming, and they joy and strive to be dousing, badling, and diving together with them: and therefore provided it is by an unwritten law, as touching their security, that they should not be hurt; by vertue whereof none doe fish for them, nor doe they any harm, unless haply when they chanced to be taken in any nets, they hinder the taking of other fishes, or otherwise hurt them, and then beaten they are, and corrected gently for it, like as little children who have done amiss and made a fault, And here I call to mind what I have heard recounted for certainty of the inhabitants of *Lesbos*, that in times past within their Countrey, there was a young maiden saved by a Dolphin, from perill of being drowned in the sea: but for that *Pittachus* should know this much better, it were more reason that he himselfe reported it. True it is indeed (quoth *Pittachus*) the tale is very notorious, and related by many. For there was an answer given by oracle to those founders, who first peopled *Lesbos*; that when in sailing upon the sea they arrived at a rock called *Melissoean*, that is to say, *Medisseyan*, where they should cast into the sea for *Nepune*, a bull, but for dame *Amphirrie*, and the Nymphs *Nereides*, a virgin a live. Now seven principall Conductors and Kings there were of that company which were to inhabit there, and *Echelaus* made the eight, expressly named by the oracle for the planting of a colony, and he as yet a bachelor and unmarried. Now when the other seven, who had daughters marriageable, and yet unwedded, cast lots among themselves, whose daughter should be offered (as is before said) it fell out so, that the lot light upon the daughter of *Smimbens*: her therefore they arrayed with rich robes, and adorned with costly jewels of gold for that purpose, and being come to the place appointed after they had made their prayers and oraisons accordingly, as in such a case, and were now at the very point to throw her into the sea: a certain young man, one of the passengers in the ship, of a gentle nature and good disposition (as it appeared) whose name was *Enalus*, being enamoured of the said young damoelle, entered presently into a resolution to succour her in this extremity, although he saw well that it was in manner impossible, and embracing her fast about the middle, hee cast himselfe and her together into the sea: and even then there ran a rumour, although without any certaine ground or author, howbeit believed by many of the army, that both of them were carried to land and saved alive: but afterwards (by report) the said *Enalus* was seen in the Isle *Lesbos*, who made relation, that he and shee both were mounted upon Dolphins backs and so carried safe to the firm land without any danger. I could rehearse other strange narrations belonging hereto, more marvelous than these, able as well to ravish with admiration, as to affect with delectation, the minds of any that shall heare them: but hard it is to averre them all for true, and to bring proofe thereof, namely: That when there arose a mighty huge billow of water about the

Island

Island like a rock, so as no men durst approach neer unto the sea, *Enalus* only came thither, and a number of Polype fishes, or poulpes followed after her, and accompanied him to the Temple of *Neptune*, where the biggest of them brought unto *Enalus* a stone which he took and dedicated there in memorial of this miracle, which stone we call *Es* to this day. But in summe (quoth he) if a man knew well the difference between impossible and unusual, and could distinguish between that which is contrary to the order or course of nature, and the common opinion of men, in not believing too rashly, nor discrediting a thing too easily, he might observe well from time to time, your rule *O Chilon*. [Nothing overmuch] which you ordain to be kept. After him spake *Anaxarxis*, saying: That it is not to be wondered at, that the goodliest and greatest matters in the world were done by the will and providence of God, considering that according to the good and wise opinion of *Thales*, there is in all the chiefe and principall matters thereof a certaine soule: for as the organ and instrument of the soule is the body; so the instrument of God is the soule: and like as the body hath many motions of the owne, but the greater part of them, and namely those which are most noble, proceed from the soule; even so the soule likewise doth worke some of her operations by her own intinct, but in others she yeeldeth her selfe to be ordered, turned, managed and directed by God, as it pleaseth him to use her, being indeed of all instruments the most meet and handsome: for it were a very strange and absurd thing, that wind, water, clouds and raine, should be Gods instruments, by means whereof the nourishment and maintenance many creatures, and whereby he destroyeth and overthroweth as many; and that hee should use the ministry of no living creatures in any worke of his: Reason it is yet and probable, that seeing such creatures depend wholly upon the puissance and omnipotency of God, that they should serve all his motions, yea, and obey his wills, and second his purposes, more than howes are accommodate to the Scythians, and harps or hautboies to the Greeks. After this speech the Poet *Cherfus* made mention of many others who had been miraculously, and beyond all hope and expectation saved from death, and among the rest he gave instance of *Cypselus* the father of *Periander*, whom, being but a young babe, and infant new born, certaine bloody murderers were sent to kill him, and upon the sight of him, for very pity turned away, and forbore to commit to bloody a fact; but afterwards bethinking themselves, and repenting such toothill compassion, they returned back againe to seek him out, but could not find him, for that his mother had hidden him within a little corn flasker or twiggen hamper, called in Greek *Cypselus*: in remembrance whereof, *Cypselus* afterwards when he was a man dedicated a chappell within the Temple of *Apollo* in *Delfos*, as believing how at that time hee had been miraculously preserved, and by the hand of God kept from crying, which might have bewraight him to the murderers. Then *Pittacus* addressing his speech to *Periander*, said thus: *Cherfus* hath done me a great pleasure to mention this Chappell or Cell: for many a time desirous I was to know of you what should be the meaning of thole frogs which are seen grown round about the foot of the palm tree therein; and what they did concerne either the said god *Apollo*, or the man himselfe who built and dedicated the said house. And when *Periander* willed him to ask *Cherfus* that question, who wist well enough what it was, for that it was with *Cypselus* at the dedication thereof; *Cherfus* smiled and said: I will not expound the myserie thereof, unlesse I may know first of them that bee here, what is meant by these old said sayes: *Nothing too much; Know thy selfe*; and that other mor, (which hath caused some to continue single and unmarried, others to forbear furety-ships, and many to be distrustfull, to be mute and silent) to wit, *Give thy word and pay: Be surety, and be sure of a shrewd turne*. And what needs there quoth *Pittacus*, that we should interpret and declare these sentences, considering you do greatly praise the fables that *Æsop* hath composed, which shew the substance of every one? *Æsop* answered: So faith *Cherfus* indeed when he is disposed to jest and be merry with me: but when he speaketh in good earnest, he affirmeth that *Homer* was the first author of these sentences, saying that *Hector* knew himselfe well enough, who advancing forward to set upon other captains of the Greeks,

*Refused well and wisely for to fight  
With Ajax, sonne of Telamon that Knight.*

He faith moreover, that *Wylis* approved and commended this sentence, *Nothing too much*; when he admonished *Diomedes* in these terms:

*Sir Diomedes, praise not me overmuch,  
Ne yet dispraise, I love no doing such.*

And as for surety-ships, others are of opinion that he condemneth it as a lewd, naughty, and dangerous thing in these words:

*Who Sureties are for men distrust,  
And in calamity,  
Tall oftentimes for their kind heart  
much infortunaty.*

But this Poet *Cherfus* here faith: That the fiend *Ace*, which is as much to say as Plague or Infortunaty, was by *Jupiter* flung down from heaven to earth, for that she was present at the caution or warrantie which he interposed as touching the nativity of *Hercules*, whereby *Jupiter* was circumvented and overtaken. Then *Solon*, Seeing it is so (quoth he) I am of this mind, that we should give care and credit to the most wise Poet *Homer*, whose counsell is this:

Since

*Since that the night comes on a pace,  
And hitherto surprised us,  
Full meet it is her to obey,  
And end our speeches thus.*

After we have therefore given thanks in pouring out wine and offering it to the Muses, *Neptune* and *Amphibius*, let us (if you think so good) and this our assembly and banquet: Thus *Nicarchus*, this our merry meeting brake up, and was for that time dissolved.

## Instructions for them that manage affairs of State.

### The Summary.

*I* Travay in any publicke government, be it of Prince, Signorie or people, as it is dangerous and detestable, so we are no lesse to feare anarchy, and the horrible confusion of those States where every one is a Lord and Master. The wise man said very well: That a people or City destitute of government, is nere to ruine; and publique affairs prosper well, when there be store of good Counsellors: And on the other side, experience sheweth, that humane society cannot stand without Magistrats, the maintainers of lawes and good order, which be the nerves or sinewes, the cords and props of our life and conversation one with another. But if there be any way in the world slippery, it is that of the management of State-affairs, by reason of the levdenesse of some, whom I may call stage fools, who run by heaps after publicke offices, not suffering men of honour to enter into them, as fearing to be afterwards ranged and ordered by reason. Since then that ambition is a mortall plague in the mind and understanding of him who would advance himselfe by crooked and indirect means, it behooveth he be not discouraged, although other whiles they be kept under and put downe by such persons as by good right ought to serve, and not command. To hold therefore some means in this case, between mounting up unto vain glory and falling into cowardise, Plutarch setteth content and satisfise a friend of his, growth good instructions to every man that entreteth into the managing of State-affairs: and in the first place hee requirith at his hands a good will, free from covinity and lightnesse, void of avarice, and delivered from ambition and envy: afterwards, his advantage is, that he endeavour to know those wills, whom he must govern, for to acquit him well in his own duty, in case he be inducted unto any high degree, in reforming himselfe, and being furnished with a good confidence, knowledge and eloquence, proper instruments for to gethrow all difficulties. This done, he teacheth a States-man to manage well his own words, alow what way he ought to take for the entrance into the conduct of his weighty affairs; what friends he is to chuse, and how he is to demean himselfe as well with them as his enemies: afterwards he discusseth and handleth this question, to wit, Whether such a person as he whom he hath represented, ought to intermeddle and deal in all offices, and resolve that he ought to manage none but that which is of greatest importance. From this he proceedeth to speake of that discretion which is requisite for the ranging and bringing into order of standers and enemies; and with all with what manner of affaires a politician should busie and employ himselfe, and whereto his spirit and mind is to tend: wishing above all, that he should entertaine the amity of other Lords and Rulers, who are able to further and advance the publicke good; and in the mean time to be well advised that he do not go about to save, or ruinate rather, his owne Country by forreign means. Hereupon he discusseth of thole maladies whereunto Common wealthe be subject, and holdeth this: That if there do arise any mischief, it ought to be repressed, kept down and cured at home. Consequently, he sheweth unto a Magistrate the manner of conversing with his companions or colleagues in office: and after he had commended those who walk singly, and goe roundly and plainly to worke, he entreath very prettily into a discourse arising from the precedents, namely, as touching policy and good government, declaring wherein it doth consist: And so toucheth in a word, the duty of good subjects in a State well ruled. Which done, he returneth to his former purpose, and maketh mention of certain cases, wherein a Magistrate may accommodate and frame himselfe to his own people: also what persons be ought to use and employ for assistance in the execution of important affairs, and from what vices he is to keep himselfe pure and clean; how he ought to esteem and regard true honour, standing upon two points: the one, that he do trust and rely upon himselfe: the other, that he be well beloved of the people, unto whom he ought to shew himselfe liberal. To this above said, there is joined a certain discretion to be used in the largesse of Magistrates to their subjects (a thing much practised in old time, and in these daies turned cleane against the haire) proposing all in one traine, the true and most expedite way how to gaine the hearts of men, to which no Prince nor Governour shall ever attaine, unlesse he be such an one as our author doth describe: and representing on the other side the ridiculous and unhappy condition of ambitious persons, and other such as thirst after shamefull glory, whose name serveth for nought else but to play with the least parties in a Common-wealth. And for a small conclusion, he treateth of seditions and civil wars; namely, how a good Magistrate ought to carry himselfe therein, what care he should have to quench with all speed such fire, and keep his subjects in good unity and concord, and how he should easily come thereto, which is the very closing up of the

the books, enriched with notable arguments, sentences, similitudes, and examples, for those especially who have the command of others, and yet are besides, to appear before the shew of their sovereigns the examination, trial and fearful judgement of whom, they cannot avoid.

### Instructions for them that manage affaires of State.

**I**n there be any speech in the world, Sir Menemachus, unto which a man may properly apply these verses of the Poet Homer:

*Of all the Greeks there is no man  
Who blame these words or gainsay can  
But yet forsooth you say not all,  
Nor come are to the finish.*

Certes, it is in the case of those Philosophers, who exhort sufficiently in general termes, to undertake the affairs of State and publicke government; but they teach us not how, nor give us precepts and directions thereto: who (methinks) may well be resembled to those, who inuile and draw out the wick of a lampe, but they poure no oile into it. Seeing then that you have upon very good reason deliberated and resolved to meddle in the State-affaires of your countrey, and desire according to the nobility of your house and native countrey, from whence you are descended,

*To frame your speech with firmly grace,  
And deeds performe, meet for your place.*

And considering that you are not yet come to that maturity of yeeres, as to have seen evidently the life of a wise man and true Philosopher in matters of government, or view'd his carriage and demeanour in State-affairs: ye yet to be a spectator of worthy and goodly examples practised in deed and effect, and not discouered upon in word only: in which regards you have requested me earnestly to give unto you certaine rules, precepts, and advertisements for your better knowledge and instruction, how you ought to behave your selfe in this behalfe: me thought I could not with any hope deny your request: but my desire and wish rather is, that whatsoever I have collected to this purpose, may be answerable both to the ardent zeal of your intention, and also to the willing forwardness of mine affection: and verily to gratifie your minde, I have accompanied these precepts with many faire and beautiful examples.

First and foremost therefore, let this be laid for a sure ground and strong foundation, That whatsoever mindeth to be a States-man, and to manage affaires of policy, bring with him a good intent, moved by reason and judgement, and in no wise arising upon any blind passion, or desire of vainglory, or jealousy and emulation of another, or finally upon default of other occupations: for like as there be some who spend most of their time in the common hall or marketplace, although they have nothing there to do, because they have no good thing at home to be employed about; even so, you shall have divers men that thrust themselves into civil and publicke affaires, for that they have no private businesse of their owne, worth tending, and so they use policy as a counte of life, or rather pastime and recreation. Others there be againe, who being, by some fortune or chance arrived, or rather cast upon the management of Commonweale, and having thereof enough and as it were, their bellies full, cannot with any ease withdraw and retire themselves, when they are once in, resembling those for all the world, who being embarked in some vessell, take the way, only to be rocked and shaken therein a little for their exercise; but after they be carried by a gale of winds into the deep, when their heads once begin to turn, and their stomacks sick and ready to cast, they look out back toward the land, but for all that, forced they be to tarry still on ship-board, and to frame themselves to their present fortune.

*Their lovely joys and pleasures are then gone,  
To walke upon the barches gaily dight,  
With rowers seats in foist or gallion,  
Whiles seas be calme and weather faire and light:  
Which yields prospect most pleasant to their sight,  
And hearts content, to cut the waves aright.*

And these are they, who as much as any, or rather most of all, discredit the thing, in that they repent and be much discontented with their choice: namely, when in stead of glory, which they promised themselves they fall into infamy, and whereas they looked to be feared of others by the means of their great credit and authority, they be carried into a world of affaires full of troubles and dangers. But he who cometh to the government of weale publicke, and beginneth to enter upon it by sound judgement and true discourse of reason, as a most honest vocation in it selfe, and most agreeable to his estate and quality, will no whit be discouraged or dismayed at any of these accidents, nor ever change his resolution. For a man is not to take upon him the management of State-affairs, with intent to negotiate and traffick there, or to make a gainefull trade and occupation thereof to himselfe. Like as in times past at Athens, *Stratocles* and *Dramoclidus* with those about them, for to go unto their golden harvest (for so by way of jest and merry speech they called the Tribunal seat, and publicke pulpit where orations were made unto the people) no nor upon any fit of a sudden passion that

that cometh upon him, as *Cajus Gracchus* did at Rome sometime; who at the very time when his brothers troubles were hot, and his death fresh and new, retired for a while out of the way, and betook himselfe to a private course of life, farre remote from the Commonwealth affaires; but afterwards, being suddenly enkindled and enflamed againe with choler, upon certaine outrageous dealings and opprobrious words given him by some, would needs in all the haile upon a spleen, rush into the government of State, and quickly had his hands full of businesse, and his ambitious humour was soon fed and satished: but then when as he would with all his heart have withdrawn himselfe, changed his life, and taken his repose, he could not by any means lay downe his authority and puissance (to such greatness it was growne) but was killed before he could bring that about. As for these who compass and dresse themselves as players for to act upon the scaffold in some great Theater, and champions to contend with other concurrents, or else aime at vainglory; it cannot be but they must needs repent of that which they have done, especially when they once see that they must serve those whom they thought they were worthy to rule, or that they cannot chuse but displease them, whom they were desirous to gratifie and content. And verily this is my conceit of such, that they run headlong upon policy and State matters, like unto those who by some misadventure, and sooner then they looked for, be fallen into a pit; for it cannot otherwise be, but they be wonderously disquitted, seeing the depth thereof, and with they had never come there, but were out againe, whereas they, who considerately, and upon good deliberation go down into the said pit, carry themselves soberly with quietnesse and contentment of spirit, they are vexed, offended and dismayed at nothing, as who at their first entry, put on a resolute minde, proposing unto themselves vertue and their duty only, and intending no other thing for to be the scope and end of all their actions.

Thus when men have well grounded their choice in themselves, untill it be so fully settled and confirmed, that uneth it hardly can be altered or changed: then they ought to bend all their wits to the consideration and knowledge of the nature of their Citizens and Subjects, whose charge they have undertaken, or at leastwise of that disposition, which being compounded (as it were) of themall, appeareth most, and carrieth greatest sway among them. For at the very first and all at once, go about a change, and to order and to reforme the nature of a whole Commonalty, were an enterprise, neither easie to be effected, nor safe to be practised: as being a thing that requirith long time, and great authority and power. But do they must, as wine doth in our bodies; which at the beginning is moistened (as it were) and overcome by the nature of him who drunk it, but afterwards by gentle warming his stomack, and by little and little entering into his veins, it becometh of strength to affect the drinker, and make a change and alteration in him: semblably, a wise politician and governour, untill such time as he hath wonne by the confidence reposed in him, and the good reputation that he hath gotten, so much authority among the people that he is now able to rule and lead them at his pleasure, will accommodate and apply himselfe to their manners and fashions such as he findeth them, and thereby conjecture and consider their humours, untill hee know wherein they take pleasure, whereto they are inclined, and what it is, wherewith they will soonest be lead and carried away. As for example, the Athenians as they are given to be hasty and choleick; so they be as soon turned to pity and mercy; more willing to entertaine suspicion quickly, than to have patience, and at the same time to be informed, and take certaine knowledge of a thing; and as they be more inclined and ready to succour base persons, and of low condition; so they love, embrace, and esteeme merry words and pleasant conceits, delivered in game and laughter, more then sage and serious sentences: they are best pleased when they heare themselves praised, and least offended againe with those that flout and mock them; terrible they are and dread, to their very Rulers and Magistrates, and yet courteous and mild enough, even to the pardoning of their professed enemies. The nature of the Carthaginian people is farre otherwise, bitter, fell, fierce, iteme and full of revenge; obsequious to their betters and superiours; churlish and imperious over their inferiours and underlings; in feare most base and cowardly; in anger most cruel; firm and constant in their resolution, and where they have taken a pitch; hard to be moved with any sports, pastimes, and jollity; and in one word rough and untractable. You should not have seen these fellows, if *Cleon* had requested them sitting in counsell (forasmuch as he had sacrificed unto the gods, and was minded to feast some strangers that were his friends, and come to visit him) to put off their assembly to another day; to arise laughing, and clapping their hands for joy; nor, if while *Alcibiades* was a making unto them a tolemon oration, a quail should have escaped from under his gowne, and gotten away, would they have run after her away to catch her, and given her to him againe? nay, they would have fallen all upon him; they would have killed them both in the place, as if they had contemned them, and made fools of them: considering that the banished Captaine *Hanno*, because in the Camp and Army when he marched, he used a Lion as a sumpter horse to carrie some of his baggage; saying, that this favoured strongly of a man that affected tyranny. Neither do I think that the Thebans could ever have contained themselves, but have opened the letters of their enemies, if they had come into their hands: like as the Athenians did, who having surprized King *Philip* posts and carriers, would never suffer one of their letters mislaid, nor discover the love-secrets and merry conceits passing from an husband being absent in another Country, and writing to his wife. Neither do I think, that the Athenians on the other side, would have endured

and borne with patience the proud spirit and scornfull contempt of *Epaminondas*, who would not make answer to an imputation charged against him, before the body of the people of *Thebes*, but arose out of the Theater where the people were assembled, and thorow them all went his way, and departed into the place of publick exercises. The Lacedaemonians likewise would never have put up the insolent behaviour and mockery of *Syracoles*, who having periwaded the Athenians to sacrifice unto the gods, in token of thanksgiving for a victory, as if they had been conquerors, and afterwards upon the certaine newes of a defeature and overthrow received, when hee saw the people highly offended and displeased with him, demanded of them what injury he had done them, if by his meanes they had been merry and feasted three daies together?

As for the flatterers that belong to Princes Courts, they play by their Lords and Masters, as those fowlers doe, who catch their birds by a pipe counterfeiting their voices: for even so they, to winde and insinuate themselves into the favour of Kings and princes, doe resemble them for all the world, and by this device entrap and deceive them. But for a good governour of a State, it is not meet and convenient that he should imitate the nature and the manners of the people under his government; but to know them and to make use of those meanes to every particular person, by which he knoweth that he may best win and gaine them to him: for the ignorance and want of skill in this behalte, namely, how to handle men according to their humours, bringeth with it all disorders, and is the cause of irregular enormities, as well in popular governments, as among minions and favorites of Princes. Now after that a Ruler hath gotten authority and credit one among the people, then ought he to strive and labour, for to reforme their nature and condition: if they be faulty; then is he by little and little to lead them gently (as it were) by hand unto that which is better: for a most painefull and difficult thing it is to change and alter a multitude all at once: and to bring this about the better, he ought first to begin with himselfe, and to amend the middlemeasures and disorders in his owne life and manners, knowing that he is to live from thenceforth (as it were) in open Theater, where he may be seen and viewed on every side. Now if haply it be an hard matter for a man to free his own mind from all sorts of vices at once, yet a leafwile he is to cut off, and put away those that be most apparent and notorious to the eyes of the world. For you have heard (I am sure) how *Themistocles* when hee minded to enter upon the managing of State-matters, weaned himselfe from such company wherein hee did nothing but drinke, dance, revell and make good cheere; and when he fell to sitting up late and watching at his booke, to fasting and studying hard, he was wont to say to his familiars, that the *Trophae of Miltiades* would not suffer him to sleep and take his rest. *Pericles* in like case altered his fashions in the whole course and manner of his life, in his person, in his sober and grave going, in his affable and courteous speech, shewing alwaies a staied and settled countenance, holding his hand ever more under his robe, and never putting it forth, and not going abroad to any place in the City, but only to the Tribunal and pulpit and publick orations, or else to the Councell house. For it is not an easie matter to weld and manage a multitude of people, neither are they to be caught of every one, and taken with their safety in the catching; but a gracious and gainefull piece of worke it were, if a man may bring it thus much about, that like unto suspitious and crafty wild beafts, they be not affrighted nor let a madding at that which they heare and see, but gently suffer themselves to be handled, and beapt to receive instruction; and therefore this would not in any wife be neglected, neither are such to have a small regard to their owne life and manners, but they ought to study and labour as much as possibly they can, that the same be without all touch and reproach: for that they who take in hand the government of publick affairs, are not to give account, nor to answer for that onely which they either say or do in publick, but they are searched narrowly into, and many a curious eye there is upon them at their boord: much listning after that which passeth in their beds; great sitting and fanning of their marriages, and their behaviour in wedlock, and in one word, all that ever they doe privately, whether it bee in jest or in good earnest. For what need we write of *Alcibiades*, who being a man of action and execution, as famous and renowned a Capitaine, as any one in his time, and having borne himselfe alwaies invincible and inferior to none in the managing of the publick State, yet notwithstanding ended his daies wretchedly, by meanes of his dissolute loosefense and outrageous demeanour, in his private life and conversation at home, inasmuch as he bereft his owne Country of the benefit they might have had by his other good parts, and commendable qualities, even by his intemperance and sumptuous superflinity in expence? Those of *Athens* found fault with *Cimon*, because he had a care to have good wine: and the Romans finding no other thing in *Scipio* to reprove, blamed him for that hee loved his bed too well: the ill-willers of *Pompey* the Great, having observed in him that otherwhiles hee scratched his head with one finger, reproached him for it. For like as a little freckle, mole or pendant were in the face of man or woman, is more offensive, than black and blew marks, than scars or maimes in all the rest of the body; even so, small and light faults otherwise of themselves, shew great in the lives of Princes, and those who have the government of the weale-publicke in their hands, and that in regard of an opinion imprinted in the minds of men touching the estate of governours and magistrats, esteeming it agreeat thing, and that it ought to be pure and clear from all faults and imperfections. And therefore delivered *Julius Drusus*, a noble Senatour and great Ruler in *Rome* to be highly praised, in that when one of his workmen promised him (if he so would) to devise and contrive his house so, that whereas his neighbors overlooked him, & saw into many parts thereof,

they

they should have no place therein exposed to their view and discovery, and that this translating and alteration thereof should cost him but five talents: Nay (quoth he) thou shalt have ten talents, and make mine house so that it may be seen into on every side, to the end that all the City may both see and know how I live; for in truth he was a grave, wise, honest and comely personage. But peradventure it is not so necessary that a house lie so open as to be looked into on all sides: for the people have eyes to pierce and enter into the very bottome of governours manners, of their counsels, actions, and lives, which a man would thinke to be most covert and secret, and no lesse quick-sighted are they in their private carriage, as in that which they see them do, and heare them speake in publick: loving some with a kind of admiration, and having others in disdainfull and contemptuous manner. What? will some one say, do not some Cities otherwhiles love to be ruled by governours, whom they know to be dissolute and disordinate in their manner of life? Yes, I believe it very well. And so forth, we see some women, when they are with child, long many times to eatre grit of stones, and they who are stomack-sick, and have a peevish appetite, desire salt-fish, and such other naughty meats: but within a while after, when the fit is once past, they reject, refuse, and loath the same: even so many States and Common-wealths oftentimes upon an insolvency, wantonnesse and disordinate desire, or for default of better governours, are served with those that come first, and they care not with whom, notwithstanding they have them in contempt and detestation, but afterwards they are very well content when such speeches go of them, as *Plato* a comical Poet in one of his Comedies inferreth to be spoken by the people themselves:

*Take me by hand, take hold and that right soons,  
Aggryus else hee captaine chuse anon.*

And againe in another place, hee bringeth in the people calling for a baion and a feather for to provoke vomit, saying thus:

*At my tribunall seat most eminent,  
Her selfe to me Mantle doth present.*

And a little after,

*A sinking head it keeps and feedeth now,  
A malady most foule, I do avow.*

And the people of *Rome*, at what time as *Carbo* avouched a thing, and bound it by a great oath, yea, and the same with a curse and execration, if it were not so; yet for all that, all with one voice sware aloud to the contrary, and protested that they would not beleieve him. Also at *Lacedamony*, when one *Demofthenes*, a wicked and dissolute person, had delivered his opinion and advice, very well fitting and benevolent to the matter in question, the people rejected it; but the *Ephori* having chosen one of their Ancients and honourable Councillors of Estate, willed him to speake to the same point and the like effect: which was as much as if they had taken it out of one foule and filthy vessel, and put the same into another that was faire and cleane, and all to please and content the people and multitude: so effectually is for the government of an Estate, the assured periwasion of the honesty of a personage, and as forcible likewise is the contrary. I write not thus to this end, that we should neglect the grace of eloquence, and the powerfull skill of well-speaking, as if all should lie upon vertue, and nothing else, but that we are to thinke, that Rhetoricall speech and brave utterance is not the thing alone which periwadeth the people, but that it is a good help, and doth co-operate in periwasion, so that we may in some sort correct and amend the sentences of *Menander*:

*The honest life of him thus speaks in places,  
And not his tongue doth his credit win and grace.*

For life and language both ought to concur, unless haply one would say, That it is the Pilot only that governeth the ship, and not the helme; and the rider alone turneth the horse head and not the reines or bridle: semably, that the science of policy and government of weale-publicke useth manners and not eloquence, as an helme or bridle, to manage, direct and governe a whole City, which is (according to *Plato*) a creature (as one would say) most easie to be turned, so that it be conducted and guided as it were, in the poope: for seeing that those great Kings, the sons of *Jupiter* (as *Homer* calleth them) let out and puffe up their magnificent port, with long robes of purple, with scepters in their hands, with a guard of squires and pensioners about their persons, with whom they were environed on every side, yea, and with the oracles of the gods in their favour, subjecting unto their obedience (by this outward venerable shew) the common sort, and imprinting an opinion that they are in greater state than men; and yet for all this, were desirous to learne how to speake wisely; and not careless and negligent to win grace by good speeches:

*And eloquence, whereby more perfect they  
In warlike feats might be another day.*

not recommending themselves to *Jupiter* only the Councillor, nor to bloudy *Mars* and warlike *Minerva*, but invoking likewise the Mule *Calliop*,

*Who doth upon great Kings attend,  
And makes them more reverend.*

with her periwasive grace and vertue dulcing and appeasing the violent mood and fiercenesse of the people. Seeing (I say) that mighty Princes be furnished with so many helps and meanes: it is possible that a private person, with a simple robe and popular habit, taking upon him to wield and rule a whole City or State, should ever be able to effect his purpose, namely, to tame and range into

B b

order

order an unruly multitude, unless he have eloquence to aide him in this buisness, for to perswade and bring them to the bent of his bow? For mine own part, I thinke no. As for the Masters and Captaines of galleys and other ships, they have other officers under them, as their boat-swaines, to give knowledge what they would have to be done; but a good governour of State ought to have within himselfe the skill and knowledge of the steeres-man to sit at sterne and guide the helme, and besides that, good speeche also to make known his will and pleasure, to the end that he need not at all the voice of another, nor to be forced to say as *Phocion* did when he was overcome and braved out by the eloquent words of *Ariflophan*: My adversaries playe a better than mine, but surely my play is much better than theirs: and that he have not need oftentimes to have in his mouth these verses of *Enripides*:

*Would God the seed and race of mortall men  
Were speechlesse cleane, for could not speake words ten.*

As also of these:

*Oh God, that mens affaires and causes all  
Required no words, and for no speech did call,  
That Orators, whose tongues do plead so hard,  
Were not employ'd nor in so good regard.*

For these sentences perhaps might give leave to some Alcarnenes, Nestors, and Idones, or such manner of people, who live by their handy worke, get their living by the sweat of their brows, and are past all hope to attaine unto any perfection of eloquence, to flie thereto: as it is reported of two Architects or great Macons at *Athen* sometimes, who came in question for their skill, whether of the twaine was more sufficient to make a great fabricke and publike piece of worke: the one, who could speake very well and expresse his mind with variety and elegancy of words, pronounced a premeditated oration as touching the frame and building thereof; which he did so well, that he moved the whole assembly therewith; the other, who was more skillfull in Architecture, and the better workman by far, but one that could not deliver his mind so eloquently, when he came before the people, said no more but thus: My Masters of *Athen*, that which this man here hath said, I will do. And verily such good fellows as these, acknowledge no other goddesse or patronesse than *Minerva* the Artizan, surnamed *Argane*, and who as *Sophocles* saith:

*Upon the missive avoule rams,  
With weighty strokes of hammer strong,  
A livelesse bar of iron and frame  
Obeisant to their labours long.*

But the Minister or Prophet to *Minerva* *Pallas*, that is to say, the protectresse of Cities, and to *Themis* or Justice the Protectresse of counsel:

*Who of mens counsel president,  
Disposes, or holds them resident.*

He (I say) having but one instrument to use and occupie, which is his speech, by forming and fashioning some things to his own mould, and others which he findeth untoward and not pliable to the design of his worke (as if they were knots and knits in timber, or flaws and risings in iron) by polishing, polishing, and making plaine and smooth, embellisheth in the end a whole City. By this means the Common-wealth of *Pericles*, in name and outward appearance being popular, was in truth and effect a principality and regal State, governed by one man the principall person of the City: and what was it that did the deed? Surely the force and power of his eloquence: for at the same time, there lived *Cimon*, a good man, *Ephialtes* also and *Thucydides*, who being one day demanded by *Archidamus* the King of the Lacedaemonians, whether he or *Pericles* wrestled better: That were, (quoth he) very hard to say: for when in wrestling I beate him down to the ground, he is by his words able to perswade the standers-by and beholders, that he is not fallen, and so getteth cleare away with it. And verily, this gift of his brought not only to him honour and glory, but also safety to the whole City: which being by him ruled and perswaded, preserved, and maintained full well the wealth and estate which it had of her own, and to bare to desire the conquest of any other; whereas poore *Nicias*, although he had the same good meaning and intentions, yet because he wanted that perswasive faculty with his smooth tongue and eloquent speech, like unto a gentle bit, when he went about to bridle and restrain the covetous desire of the people, could not compass it, but maugre and in spite of his heart was overruled, carried away, and haled by the very necke into *Sicily*: such was the violence of the people. An old saying is, and a true proverb: That it is not good holding of a wolfe by the eares; but surely if a City or State, a man must principally take hold by the eares; and not as some do, who are not sufficiently exercised, nor well versed in the use of eloquence, search other absurd and foolish handles to catch hold by, for to winne and draw the people unto them: for divers you shall have, who thinke to draw and lead the multitude by the belly, in making great feasts and banqueting them: others by the purse, in giving them largesses of silver; some by the eye, in exhibiting unto them goodly sights of plaies, games, warlike dances, and combats of fencers at the utterance; which devices are not to draw and lead the people gently, but to catch them rather cunningly: for the drawing or leading of a multitude, is properly to perswade them by force of eloquence: whereas the other allurements and enticements resemble very well the baits that are laid for to take brute and wild beafts,

or of the foder that herd-men use to feed them with. Since then it is so, that the chiefe instrument of a wise and sage governour, is his speech, this principall care would be had, that the same be not too much painted and set out, as if he were some young gallant that desired to shew his eloquence in a Theater and frequent assembly of a great faire or market, composing his oration as a chaplet of flowers with the most beautifull, sweet, and pleasant phrases or termes that he can chule; neither ought the same to be so painfully studied and premeditated as that oration of *Demosthenes* was, which *Pythias* said (by way of reproach) that it smelled of lampe-oyle; nor full of over-much philosophical curiosity of enthymemes and arguments too witty and subtle; nor yet with clauses and periods exactly measured to the rule and compass. But like as Musicians are desirous that in touching and stroking of their strings there should appeare a sweeter and kind affection, and not a rude beating; even so in the speech of a sage Ruler, whether it be in giving counsell or decreeing any thing, there ought not to be seen the artificial cunning of an Orator, nor any curious affectation: neither must it in any wise tend to his own praise, as if he had spoken learnedly, formally, subtilly, wittily, and with precise respect and distinctions: let it be full rather of naturall affection without art, of true heart and magnanimity, of franke and fatherly remonstrance, as may become the father of his country, full of foresight and providence, of a good mind and understanding, careful of the common-wealth, having together with honest and comely dignity a lovely grace that is attractive, consisting of grave termes, pertinent reasonings, and proper sentences, and the same significant and perswasive. For in truth the oration and stile of a States-man and governour admitteth in comparison of a lawyer or advocate pleading at the bar in court, more sententious speeches, histories, fables, and metaphors, which do then move and affect the multitude most, when the speaker knoweth how to use them with measure, in time and place convenient; like as he did, who said, My masters, see that you make not *Greece* one-eyed: (speaking of the City of *Athen*, when they were about to destroy it) and according as *Demades* also did, when he said, that he fate at sterne to govern, not a ship, but the shipwrack of a City and common wealth: Semblably *Archibolus* in saying,

*Let not the stone of Tantalus  
This Isle always hang over thys.*

Likewise *Pericles* when he gave advice, and commanded to take away that eye-sore of the haven *Piræus*, meaning thereby the little Isle *Agina*. In the same manner *Phocion* (speaking of the victory achieved by Generall *Leofthanes*) said thus: The *Stadium* or short race of this war is good, but I feare (quoth he) the *dolichus* thereof: that is to say, the after-claps and length thereof. In sum, a speech standing somewhat of haughtinesse, gravity, and greatnesse, is more befitting a governour of State: and for example hereof, go no further than to the orations of *Demosthenes* penned against King *Philip*, and among other speeches, set down by *Thucydides*, that which was delivered by the *Ephorus Sthenelidas*: also that of King *Archidamus*, in the City *Plata*: likewise the oration of *Pericles* after that great pestilence at *Athen*. As for those long sermons, carrying a great traine of sentences and continued periods after them, which *Theopompus*, *Ephorus*, and *Anaksimenes*, bring in to be pronounced by captaines unto their souldiers when they be armed and stand arranged in battell-ray, a man may say of such as the Poet did:

*What fooler would speake thus many words,  
So neare to edge and dint of swords.*

Over and besides: true it is that a man of government may otherwise give a taunt and skipping scoffe, he may cast out also a merry jest to move laughter, and namely, if it be to rebuke, chastise, yea, and to quippe one and take him up for his good, after a modest manner, and not to touch him too neere, and wound him in honour and credit to his disgrace, with a kind of scurrility. But above all it may befitting him thus to do when he is provoked thereunto, and is driven to reply and give one for another by way of exchange: for to begin first in that sort, and to come prepared with such premeditated stuffe, is more befitting a pleasant or common jester, who would make the company laugh, besides that, it carrieth also an opinion of a malicious and spitefull mind: and such are the biting frumpes and broad jests of *Cicero* and *Cato* the elder; likewise of one *Euxitheus*, a familiar and disciple of *Arifloste*: for these many times began first to scoffe and taunt; but when a man never doth it but by way of reply or rejoinder, the sudden occasion giveth him pardon to be revenged, and withall such requitals carry the greater grace with them. Thus dealt *Demosthenes* by one who was deeply suspected to be a theefe: for when he would seeme to twit *Demosthenes* by his washing and sitting up all night at his booke for to endite and write: I wot well (quoth *Demosthenes*) that I trouble and hinder thee very much with keeping my candle or lampe burning all night long. Also when he answered *Demades*, who cried out aloud: *Demosthenes* would correct me (as much to say forsooth) as if according to the common proverb, the low should reach *Minerva*: *Minerva* (quoth he, taking that word out of his mouth) what is that you say? *Minerva* was surprized not long since in adultery. Semblably it was with no ill grace that *Xenetus* answered his country-men and fellow citizens, who cast in his teeth and upbraided him, for that being their leader and captaine he fled out of the field: With you (quoth he) my loving and deare friends; I ran away for company. But great regard and heed would be taken, that in this kind he overpast not himselfe, nor go beyond the bonds of mediocrity in such ridiculous jests, for feare that either he offend and displease the hearers unseasonably, or debate and abject himselfe too grossly, by giving out such ridiculous speeches: which was the fault of one *Democritus*, who mounting one day up

into the pulpit or publike place of audience, said openly to the people there assembled: That himselfe was like unto their City, for that he had small force, and yet was putt up with much wind. Another time also, and namely, when the great field was lost before *Chereena*, he presented himselfe to speake unto the people in this manner: I would not for any thing that the common-wealth were driven to such calamitie and to hard an exigent, that you should have patience to heare me; and need to take counsell at my hands: for as in the one he shewed himselfe a base and vile person, so in the other he played the brain-fick foole and senselesse asse: but for a man of State, neither is the one nor the other decent and agreeable. Furthermore, *Phocion* is had in admiration for his brevity of speeche, inasmuch as *Polydorus* giving his judgement of him, said, *Demosthenes* indeed is the greatest Oratour, and the most famous Rhetorician, but *Phocion*, beleeve me, is the best speaker: for that his pithy speeche is so couched, that in few words it contained much ubundance and good matter. And even *Demosthenes* himselfe, howsoever he made no reckoning of all other Oratours in his time, yet if *Phocion* rose up to deliver a speeche after him, would say: Lo here standeth up now the hatchet or pruning knife of my words. Well then, endeavour you as much as possibly you can, when you are to make a speeche before the multitude to speake considerately and with great circumspection directing your words so, as they may tend to safety and securitie, and not in any case to use vain and frivolous language: knowing well that *Pericles* himselfe, that great governour, was wont to make his prayer unto the gods before he entred into his oration in publike audience: That he might let fall no word out of his mouth impertinent to the matter which he was to handle: and yet for all this, you must be well exercised nevertheless, and practised in the knowledge how to be able to answer and replie readily: for many occasions passe in a momene, and bring with them as many sudden cases and occurrences, especially in matters of government: In which regard, *Demosthenes* was (by report) reputed inferior to many others in his time, for that otherwhiles he would withdraw himselfe and not be seene when occasion was offered, if he had not well premeditated and studied aforehand of that which he had to say. *Theophrastus* also writeth of *Alcibiades*, that being desirous to speake, not only that which was convenient, but also in manner and forme as it was meet: many a time in the midst of his oration would make a stay, and be at a *non plus*, whiles he fought and studied for some proper termes, and laboured to couch and compose them fitting for his purpose: but he who taketh occasion to stand up for to make a speeche of sudden occurrences, and respective to the occasions and times presented unto him, such a one I say of all others doth most move and astonish a multitude. He, I say, is able to lead them as he list and dispose of them at his pleasure. After this manner plaied *Leon* the Bizantine, who was sent upon a time from those of *Constantinople* unto the Athenians, being at civill debate and disention among themselves, for to make remontrances unto them of pacification and agreement: for a very little man was he of stature, and when the people law him mounted up into the place of audience, every one began to teigh, tittle, and laugh at him: which he perceiving well enough: And what would you do and say then (quoth he) if you saw my wife, whose crown of her head will hardly reach up to high as my knee? At which word they took up a greater fit of laughter than before throughout the whole assembly: And yet (quoth he againe) as little as we both be, if we chance to be at variance and debate one with another, the whole City of *Constantinople* is not big enough for us, nor able to hold us twaine. *Pyrtheas* likewise, the Orator, at what time as he spake against the honours which were decreed for King *Alexander*, when one said unto him: How now sir, dare you presume to speake of so great matters, being as you are, so young a man? And why not (quoth he) for *Alexander* whom you made a god among you by your decrees, is younger than my selfe.

Furthermore, over and besides a ready tongue and well exercised, he ought to bring with him a strong voice, a good breath, and a long breath, to this combate of State government: which I assure you is not lightly to be accounted of, but wherein the champion is to be provided for all sort of matters or fight: for feare leaif it it chance that his voice faile or be weary and faint, he be overcome and supplanted by some one.

*Catchpoll, Crier, and of that ranke,  
Wide-mouth'd Juggler or mount-banke.*

And yet *Cato* the younger, when he suspected that either the Senate or the people were foretold by *Crates*, labouring for voices, and such like prevention, so as he had no hope to perwade and compass such matters as he went about, would rise up and hold them all a day long with an oration: which he did to drive away the time, that at leastwise upon such a day there should be nothing done or passe against his mind. But as touching the speeche of a governour, how powerful and effectfull it is, and how it ought to be prepared, we have this already insufficiently treated, especially for such an one as is able of himselfe to devise all the rest, which consequently followeth hereupon.

Moreover two avenues (as it were) or waies there be to come unto the credit of government: the one short and compendious, yeelding an honourable course to win glory and reputation; but it is not without some danger: the other longer and more base and obscure, howbeit alwaies safe and sure. For some there be, who making faile and letting their course (as a man would say) from some high rock mount in the maine sea, have ventured at the first upon some great and worthy enterprise, which required valour and hardinesse: and so at the very beginning entred into the midst of State affairs, supposing that the Poet *Pindarus* laid true in these his verses:

*A worthy worke who will begin,  
Must when he enters first therein,  
Set out a gay fore-front to view  
Which may far off the lustre shew.*

For certainly the multitude and common sort being satisfied and full already of those governours whom they have been used to a long time, receive more willingly all beginners and new-comers, much like as the spectators and beholders of plaies or games have better affection a great deale to see a new champion entering fresh into the lists. And verily all those honours, dignities, and powerful authorities which have a sudden beginning and glorious encrease, do ordinarily astonish and daunt all envy: for neither doth the fire (as *Aristophanes* saith) make a smoke which is quickly kindled, and made to burne out of a light flame nor glory breed envy when it is gotten at once and speedily; but such as grow up by little and little, at leisure, those be they that are caught therewith, some one way and some another. And this is the cause that before they come to flower (as it were) and grow to any credit of government, fade and become dead and withered about the publike place of audience. But whereas it falleth out according to the Epigram of the carrier or runner *Ladas*,

*No sooner came the sound of whip to ears,  
But he was at the end of his career;  
And then withall in one and selfe same trice  
He crowned was with laurell for his price.*

that some one hath at first performed an embassage honourably, rode in triumph gloriously, or conducted an army valiantly, neither envious persons nor spitefull ill-willers have like power against such as against others. Thus came *Aratus* into credit the very first day, for that he had defeated and overthrowen the tyrant *Nicoctes*. Thus *Alcibiades* won the purs, when he practised and wrought the alliance between the Mantineans and the Athenians against the Lacedaemonians. And when *Pompey* the great would have entred the City of *Rome* in triumph, before he had shewed himselfe unto the Senate, and was withstood by *Sylla*, who meant to impeach him, he fustuck not to say unto him, More men there be sir, who worship the Sun rising, than the Sun setting: which when *Sylla* heard, he gave place and yeelded unto him without one word replying to the contrary. And when as the people of *Rome* chose and declared *Cornelius Scipio* Consul all on a sudden, and that against the ordinary course of law, when as himselfe stood only to the *Edile*, it was upon some vulgar beginning and ordinary entrance into affaires of state, but for the great admiration they had of his rare and singular prowess, in that being but a very youth, he had maintained single fight and combe hand to hand with his enemy in *Spain*, and vanquished him: yea, and within a while after, in the neck of it had achieved many worthy exploits against the Carthaginians, being but a military Tribune or Colonell of a thousand foot: for which brave acts and services of his, *Cato* the elder as he returned out of the campe cried out with a loud voice of him:

*Right wife and sage indeed alone is he,  
Therest to him but fitting shadows be.*

But now sir, seeing that the Cities and States of *Greece* are brought to such termes, that they have no more armies to conduct, nor tyrants to be put down, nor yet alliances to be treated and made, what noble and brave enterprise would you have a young gentleman performe at his beginning and entrance into government? Many, there are left for him publike causes to plead, ambassages to negotiate unto the Emperours, or some soveraigne potentate: which occasions do ordinarily require a man of action, hardy and ardent at the first enterprise, wise and wary in the final execution. Besides, there be many good and honest customes of ancient time, either for let or grown out of kind by negligence, which may be set on foot, renewed, and reformed againe: many abuses also by ill custome are crept into Cities, where they have taken deep root, and been settled to the great dishonour and damage of the Common-wealth: which may be redressed by his meanes. It falleth out many times, that a great controversy judged and decided aright: the trial likewise and proofe of faithfull trust and diligence in a poore mans cause maintained and defended frankly and boldly against the oppression of some great and mighty adversary: also a plaine and stout speeche delivered in the behalfe of right and justice, against some grand Seigneur who is unjust and injurious, have afforded honourable entries unto the management of State-affaires. And many there be, who have put forth themselves, made their parts known, and come up, by entertaining quarrels and enmities with those personages, whose authority was odious, envied, and terrible to the people: for we alwaies see that pretently the puissiance and power of him that is put down and overthrowen, doth accrue unto him who had the upper hand, with greater reputation: which I speake not as if I did approve and thought it good for one to oppose himselfe by way of envy unto a man of honour and good respect, and who by his vertue holdeth the chiefe place of credit in his country, thereby to undermine his estate, like as *Simmias* dealt by *Pericles*, *Alcmaon* by *Themistocles*, *Clodius* by *Pompeius*, and *Meneclides* the Oratour by *Epaninondas*; for this course is neither good nor honourable, and besides, lesse gainfull and profitable: for (say that the people in a sudden fit of furious cholere commit some outrage and abuse upon a man of worth: afterwards, when they repent at leisure (being coole) that which they did hastily in their heat of blood, they thinke there is no readier nor juster means to excuse themselves to him, than to deface, yea, and undo the said party who first moved and induced them to those proceedings. And verily, to set upon a wicked person



who either by his audacious and inconsiderate rashness, or by his fine and cautelous devices hath gotten the head over a whole City, or brought a State to his devotion, such as were in old time *Cleon* and *Clitophon* at *Athens*; to let upon thole (I say) to bring them under, yea, and utterly to destroy them out of the way, were notable preamble (as it were) to the Comedy for the government that is mounted upon the stage of a Common-wealth, and newly entered into the government thereof. I am not ignorant likewise, that some by clipping the wings, or paring the nailes (as a man would say) of an imperious Senate and Lordly Signiory, taking upon them too much, and tyrannizing by vertue of their absolute sovereignty, which was the practice of one *Ephialtes* at *Athens*; and another in the City *Eliu*, whose name was *Phormio*, have acquired honour and reputation in their country: but I hold this to be a dangerous beginning for to be enterprised by them that would come to the managing of State-affaires. And it seemeth that *Solon* made choise of a better entrance than so for the City of *Athens* being divided into three parts or regions; the first, of thole that did inhabit the hill; the second, of them who dwelt upon the plaine; and the third, of such as kept by the water-side; he would not seem to side with any one of these three parts, but carried himself indifferent unto them all, saying and doing what he could to reconcile and re-unite them together; by which meanes chosen he was, by the general consent of them all, the Lord Reformer, to draw new laws and conditions of pacification among them; and by this practice he established and confirmed the State of *Athens*. Thus you see how a man may enter into the government of the Common-wealth by honourable and glorious commencements: and this may suffice for the former avenue of the tyrane aforesaid unto the affaires of State.

As for the other way, which as it giveth more sure access, so it is not so expedite and short; there have been many notable men who in old time made choice thereof, and loved it better: and by name, *Arctides*, *Phocio*, *Pammetes* the Theban, *Lucullus* in *Rome*, *Cato* and *Agessilaus* at *Lacedaemon*: for like as the Ivy windeth about trees stronger than it selfe, and riseth up aloft together with them; even so each one of these before-named, being yet young novices and unknown, joyning and coupling themselves with other ancient personages who were already in credit by rising leisurely under the wing and shadow of others, and growing with them, grounded themselves and tooke good roo-anch at the time that they undertooke the government of State. Thus *Cliffenes* raised *Arctides*; *Chabrias* advanced *Phocio*; by *Sylla* *Lucullus* rose; *Cato* by *Fab*, *Maximus*; *Epanimondas* came up by *Pammetes*; and *Agessilaus* by *Lysander*; but this man named last, upon a certaine inordinate ambition and importune jealousie did wrong unto his own reputation, by casting and rejecting behind him a worthy personage, who guided and directed him in all his actions: but all the rest widely and honestly revered, acknowledged, yea, and aided with all their power, even to the very end, the authors of their rising and advancement; much like unto those bodies which are opposed full against the sun, in returning and sending back the light that shineth upon them, do augment and illustrate the same so much the more. Thus when evil tongues perony, who envied and malignd the glory *Scipio* gave out that he was but the player and actor only of thole worthy feats of armes which he executed; for the author thereof was *Lutius* his familiar friend; yet *Lutius* for all these speeches was never moved nor altered in his purpose, but continued still the same man to promote and second the glory and vertue of *Scipio*. As for *Africanus* the friend of *Pompeius*, notwithstanding he was but of base and low degree, yet being upon termes to be chosen Consul, when he understood that *Pompeius* favoured others, gave over his lute, and let fall the possibility that he had; saying withall: That would not be so honourable unto him for to be promoted unto that dignity of Consulate, as grievous and troublesome to obtaine the same against the good-will, and without the favour and assistance of *Pompeius*; and so in deterring and putting off the matter but one year longer, he had not there-while when the time came, and therewith he kept his friend still, and enjoyed his favour. And by this means it cometh to passe, that thole who are thus led by the hand of others, and trained to the way of preferment and glory in gratifying one, do gratifie many withall; and besides, if any inconvenient chance to ensue, the lesse odious they be and hatefull for it: which was the reason that *Philip* King of *Macedonie* earnestly exhorted and admonished his son *Alexander*, that he should provide himselfe of many friends and servitors, whiles he might, and had leisure, even during the reign of *Anabasis*, carefully by converting and conferring graciously with every one, and by cheerful behaviour and amability to all for to win their love and favour; but when he was once involved in the kingdom, to witte of his guide and conductor in the managing of State-affaires, not simply him who is of most credit and greatest reputation, but rather the man who is such an one by his desert and vertue: for like as every tree will not admit a vine to wind about the trunk and body thereof; for some there be that do choole and utterly mar the growth of it; even so in the government of Cities and States, thole who are not truly honest and lovers of vertue, but ambitious and desirous of honour and love, rarely only afford not unto young men the means and occasions of worthy enterprises and noble acts. But upon envy and jealousie hold them under and put them back as far as they can, and thus make them to consume and languish, as if they detained from them their glory, and cut them short of that which is their only food and nourishment. Thus did *Marius* in *Africa* first, and afterwards in *Gallia* by *Sylla*, by whose meanes he had performed much good service; and in the end would not use him at all, but cast him off: forthat in truth, he was vexed at the heart to see him grow up as he did, and to wisme to great reputation under him, howsoever he would have seemed to colour the matter, and make the finger in the colet of his Ring which he sealed withall,

the preence and cloake thereof. For *Sylla* being Treasurer in *Africa*, under *Marius* the Lord General, was sent by him unto King *Bocchus*, and brought with him *Jugurtha* prisoner: and being a young gentleman as he was, and beginning to taste the sweetnesse of glory, he could not carry himselfe modestly in this good fortune of his, but must needs wear upon his finger a faire Seale Ring, wherein he caused to be engraven the history of this exploit, and namely, how *Bocchus* delivered into his hands *Jugurtha* prisoner: hereat *Marius* tooke exceptions, laid this to his charge, and made it a colourable occasion of rejecting and putting him out of his place: but he joyning himselfe with *Catalus* and *Metellus*, good men both, and the adversaries of *Marius*, soon after chased *Marius*, and turned him out of all in a civil war, which was well neare the ruine and overthrow of the Roman Empire. *Sylla* dealt not so with *Pompeius*, for he evermore advanced and graced him from his very youth, he would arise out of his chaire, and vaile bonnet unto him when he came in place: seembly he carried himselfe toward other young gentlemen and gallants of *Rome*, imparting unto some the meanes of doing the exploits of captaines and commanders: yea, quickning and putting others forward who were unwilling of themselves; and in so doing he filled all his Armies with zeale, emulation, and desire of honour, striving who should do better, and by this meanes became himselfe superiour evermore, and ruled all; at length desirous to be not the only man, but the first and the greatest among many that were likewise great. These be the men therefore with whom a young States-man ought to joyne; to these he ought to cleave, and in them, as it were, to be incorporate: not as that Cockatrice or Basiliske in *Aesops* fables, who being carried aloft on the shoulders of the Eagle, no sooner came neare to the sun beames, but suddenly tooke his flight, and came to the place before the Eagle: and after that manner to rob them of their honour, and secretly to catch their glory from them: but contrariwise to receive it of them with their content and good favour, and to give them to understand that they had never known how to rule unless they had learned first of them to obey well, as *Plato* saith.

Next after this followeth the election and choise that they ought to make of their friends: In which point they are not to take example either by *Themistocles* or *Cleon*: As for *Cleon*, when he knew that he was to undertake the government upon him, assembled all his friends together, and declared unto them that he renounced all their amity, saying; That friendship was oftentimes a cause that disabled men, and withdrew them from their right intention in affaires of State; but it had beenar better done of him to have exiled and chased out of his mind all avarice and contentious humours, to have cleansed his heart from envy and malice: for the government of Cities hath not need of thole who are friendlesse and delitute of familiar companions, but of such as be wife and honest: but when he had banished and put away his friends, he entertained round about him a sort of flatterers, who daily stroaked and licked him, as the comical Poets use to say. He became rough and severe to good and civill men, but instead thereof he debased himselfe to court flatter, and pleate the multitude, doing and saying all things to content them, and taking reward: at every mans hand, combining and sorting himselfe with the worst and most low people in the whole City, by their meanes to make head and set against the best and most honourable persons. *Themistocles* yet tooke another course, who when one said unto him: You shall do the part of a good Ruler and Magistrate, in case you make your selfe equal unto every one alike; answered thus, I pray God I may never finish such a throne or seat, wherein my friends may not prevail more with me, than they that are not my friends. But herein he did not well, no more than the other, this to promise any part and authority of his government unto thole with whom he had amity, and to submit the publike affaires unto his private and particular affections: howbeit, for all this, he answered very well unto *Simonides*, requelling somewhat at his hand that was not just: Neither were he a good Musician or Poet, (quoth he) who should sing against measures: nor the Magistrate righteous who in favour of any person doth ought against the laws. For in truth a shamefull thing it were, and a great indignity; that in a ship the matter or owner thereof should give order to be provided by a good Pilot and Sterefman: that the Pilot also should chuse good boat-swaines and other Mariners,

Who can't be helmsman in the sterne below,

And hoist up saile above when winds do blow.

Also that an architect or mason-builder knoweth how to chuse thole workmen and labourers under him, who will in no case hurt his worke, but set it forward, and take paines with him for his best behoofe: and a States-man or governour who as *Pradams* saith well;

Of justice is the architect,

And polycy ought to direct.

Not know at the very first to chuse friends of the lame zeale and affection that he is himselfe, to second and assist him in his enterprises, and to be as it were the spirits to inspire him with desire of well-doing; but to suffer himselfe to be bent and made pliable unjustly and violently: now to gratifie the will of one; and anon to serve the humour and appetite of another: For such a man resembleth properly a carpenter or mason, who by error, ignorance, and want of experience, useth his squares, his plumbes, levels and rules so, that they make his worke to rise crooked and out of square in the end. For certainly friends be the very lively tooles, and sensible Instruments of governours; and in case they do amisse and worke without the right line, the Rulers themselves are not to slip and go away with them for company, but to have a carefull eye unto this, that unwitting to them they do not erre and commit a fault. For this it was that wrought *Solon* dishonour, and caused him

him to be reproached and accused by his own Citizens, for that having an intention to ease many grievous debts, and to bring in that which at Athens they called *Sisachbia*, as if one would lay, an alleviation of some heavy burden, which was a pleasing and plausible name, importing a general striking out of all debts, and a cancelling of bonds: he imparted this designe and purpose of his to some of his friends, who did him a shrewd turne, and most unjustly wrought him much mischief: for upon this inkling given unto them, they made haste to take up and borrow all the money they could, as far as their credit would extend: not long after when this edict or proclamation aforesaid concerning the annulling of all debts was come forth and brought to light: these friends of his were found to have purchased goodly houses, and faire lands, with the monies which they had levied. Thus *Solon* was charged with the imputation of doing this wrong, together with them, when as himselfe indeed was wronged and abused by them. *Agamemnon* also shewed himselfe in the occasions and lutes of his friends most weak and feeble-minded, more ivy than in any thing else, resembling the horse *Pegasus* in *Euripides*,

*Whose shanks full low and yielded what he could  
His back to mount, more than the rider would.*

And helping his familiar friends in all their distresses more affectionately and willingly than was meet and reason: for whensoever they were called into question in justice for any transgressions, he would seeme to be privy and party with them in the same. Thus he saved one *Phaedrus*, who was accused to have surprised secretly the Cattle of *Thebes* called *Cadmus*, without commission and warrant, alleging in his defence, that such enterprises ought to be executed by his own proper motive without attending any other commandment. Moreover, he wrought to with his countenance and favour, that one *Sphodrias*, who was attaint for an unawfull and heinous act, and namely, forrenting by force and armes with a power into the country of *Attica*, what time as the Athenians were allied and confederate in amity with the Lacedaemonians, escaped judgement, and was found unpunished; which he did, being wrought thereto and mollified (as it were) by the amorous prayers of his son. Likewise, there is a mislive of his found, and goeth abroad to be seen, which he wrote unto a certain great Lord or Potentate in these termes: If *Nicias* have not trespassed, deliver him for justice sake; if he have transgressed, deliver him for my sake; but howsoever it be, deliver him and let him go. But *Phocion* contrariwise would not so much as assist in judgement *Charillus* his own son in law, who had married his daughter, when he was called into question and indited for corruption and taking money of *Harpalus*, but left him and departed, saying: In all causes just and reasonable I have made you my ally, and will embrace your affinity: in other cases you shall pardon me. *Timoleon* also the Corinthian, after that he dealt what possibly he could with his brother by remonstrance, by prayers and intreaty to reclaime and disswade him from being a tyrant: seeing that he could do no good on him, turned the edge of his sword against him, and joynted with those that murdered him in the end: for a Magistrate ought to friend a man, and stand with him not only with this gage, as far as to the a star, that is to say, until it come to the point of being forsworne for him, according as *Pericles* one day answered to a friend of his, but also thus far forth only, as not to do for his sake any thing contrary to the laws, against right, or prejudiciall to the common-weale: which rule being neglected and not precisely observed, is the cause that bringeth great losse and ruine to a state; as may appear by the example of *Phaedrus* and *Sphodrias*, who being not punished according to their deserts, were not the least causes that brought upon *Sparta* the unfortunate war and battell at *Leuttra*. True it is, that the office of a good ruler and administrator of the weale publike, doth not require precisely and force us to use severity, and to punish every slight and small transgression of our friends; but it permitte us after we have looked to the maine chance, and secured the State, then as it were of a surplussage to succour our friends, to assist and help them in their affairs, and take part with them. Moreover, there are certaine favours which may be done without envy and offence; as namely, to stand with a friend rather than another, for the getting of a good office: to bring into his hand some honourable commission, or an ease and kind embassage, as namely, to be sent unto a Prince or Potentate in the behalfe of a City or State, only to salute him and do him honour: or to give intelligence unto another City of important matters, in regard of amity, league, and mutual society; or in case there fall out some businesse of trouble, difficulty and great importance, when a Magistrate hath taken upon himselfe first the principal charge thereof. he may chuse unto him for his adjunct or assistant in the commission some special friend, as *Diomedes* did in *Homer*:

*To chuse mine own companion,  
Since that you will me let,  
Ulysses that renowned knight,  
How can I then forget?*

*Ulysses* Likewise as kindly rendereth unto him the like praise againe:

*These com'st thou brave, concerning which  
Of me you do demand,  
O aged sire arrived here  
Of late from Thracian land  
Are hither come, and there were bred:  
Their Lord, them lost in fight,*

Whom

*Whom Italian Diomedes flew  
By force of armes onrigh,  
And whose friends more and doughty knights,  
A horse did ride,  
Were with him slain for company,  
And lay dead by his side.*

This modest kind of yielding and submission to gratie and pleasure friends, is no lesse honourable to the parties than the parties praised: whereas contrariwise, arrogancy and selfe-love (as *Plato* saith) dwell with solitude, which is as much to say, as it is forsaken and abandoned of all the world. Furthermore, in these honest favours and kind civilities which we may bestow upon our friends, we ought to associate other friends besides, that they may be in some sort interested therein also: and to admit such those who receive such pleasures at our hands, for to praise and thank them; yea, and to take themselves beholding unto them, as having been the cause of their preterment and those who counselled and perwaded thereto: but if peradventure they move us in any unbecom, dishonest, and unreasonable lutes, we must flatly deny them; howbeit, not after a rude, bitter, and churlish sort; but mildly and gently by way of remonstrance, and to comfort them withall, shewing unto them that such requests were not becomming their good reputation and the opinion of their vertue: And this could *Egaminondas* do of all men in the world best, and suit them off after the cleanliest manner: for when he refused at the instant lute of *Pelopides*, to deliver out of prison a certain Tavernor, and within a while after, let the same party go at liberty at the request of his leman or harlot whom he loved, he said unto him: *Pelopides*, such graces and favours as these we doe to grant unto our paramours and concubines, add not unto such great Capitaines as your selfe. But *Cato* after a more fiery and boisterous sort, in the like case answered unto *Cathus*, one of his inward and most familiar friends. This *Cathus* being Centour, moved *Cato*, who then was but Queatour or Treasurer, that for his sake he would dismise and let free one of his clerks of the Finances under him, against whom he had commenced suite and cured proccesse in law: That were a great shame indeed (quoth he) for you; who are the Centour, that is to say, the corrector and reformer of our manners, and who ought to be able and instructed that be of the younger sort, thus to pursue of your countie by our under officers and ministers: for he might well enough have denied to comendance unto his request in deed and effect, without such sharpe and biting words, and namely, by giving him to understand that this displease that he did him in refusing to do the thing, was against his will, and that he could neither will nor chuse, being forced thereto by justice and the law.

Over and besides, a man in government hath good meanes with honesty and honour to help his poore friends, that they may advantage themselves and reape benefit by him from the common-weale. Thus did *Themistocles* alter the battell at *Marathon*: for seeing one of them that lay dead in the field to have hanging at his neck, chaines, and collars, with other bracelets of gold about his armes, passed by, and would not seeme for his own part to meddle with them, but turning back to a familiar friend of his, one of his followers: Here (quoth he) off with these ornaments and take them to yourselfe, for you are not yet come to be such an one as *Themistocles*. Moreover, the affaires and occurrences daily incident in the world, do present unto a Magistrate and great Ruler such like occasions; whereby he may be able to benefit and enrich his friends: for all men cannot be wealthy nor like you *O Menemachus*. Give then unto one friend a good and just cause to plead unto and defend, which he may gaine well by and fill his purse: unto another, recommend the affaires and businesse of some great and rich personage, who hath need of a man that knoweth how to manage and order the same better than himselfe: for another, harken out where there is a good bargain to be made, as namely, in the undertaking of some publike work, or help him to the taking of a good farme at a reasonable rent, whereby he may be a gainer. *Egaminondas* would do more than this: for upon a time he saw one of his friends who was but poore unto a rich Burgesse of *Thebes*, to demand a whole talent of money freely to be given unto him, and to say, that *Egaminondas* commanded him to deliver so much: The Burgesse wondering at such a message, came unto *Egaminondas*, to know the cause why he should part with a talent of silver unto him: many (quoth he) this is the reason: The man whom I lent is honest, but poore, and you by robbing the common-weale are become rich. And by report of *Menophon*, *Agamemnon* took no small joy and glory in this, that he had enriched his friends; whilst himselfe made no account at all of money.

But forasmuch according to the saying of *Simonides*, as all larks ought to have a cop or crest upon the head: so every government of State bringeth with it enmities, envies, and litigious jealousies: this is a point wherein a man of estate and affaires ought to be well informed and instructed. To begin therefore to treat of this argument, many there be who highly praise *Themistocles* and *Aristides*, for that whensoever they were to go out of the territory of *Attica*, either in embassage or to manage wars together: they had no sooner their charge and commission, but they presently laid downe all the quarrels and enmities between even in the very confines and frontiers of their country, and afterwards when they were returned, tooke up and entertained them againe. Some also there are who be wonderful well pleased with the practice and fashion of *Cretinas* the Magnesian. This *Cretinas* had for his concurrent an adversary in the government of State, a nobleman of the same City named *Hermias*, who although he were not very rich, yet ambici-

ambitious he was, and carried a brave and haughty mind. *Cretinus*, in the time of the war that *Mithridates* made for the conquest of *Asia*, seeing the City in danger, went unto the said *Hermias*, and made an offer unto him to take the charge of captain generall for the defence of the City, and in the mean while himself would go forth and retire to some other place: or otherwise, if he thought better, that himself should take upon him the charge of the war, then he would depart out of the City into the country for the time, for feare lest if they tarried both behind and hindered one another as they were wont to do by their ambitious minds, they should undo the State of the City: This motion liked *Hermias* very well, who, confenting that *Cretinus* was a more expert warrior than himself, departed with his wife and children out of the City: Now *Cretinus* made means to send him out before with a convoy, putting into his hands his own money, as being more profitable to them who were without their houles and fled abroad, than to such as lay besieged within the City, which being at the point to be lost, was by this means preferred beyond all hope and expectation: for if this be a noble and generous speech proceeding from a magnanimous heart, to lay thus with a loud voice:

*My children well I love, but of my heart,*

*My native sole by far hath greater part.*

Why should not they have this speech readier in their mouths, to say unto every one I hate this or that man, and willing I would be to do him a displeasure: but my native country I love so much the more: For not to desire to be at variance and debate still with an enemy, in such causes as for which we ought to abandon and cast off our friend, were the part of a most fell, savage, and barbarous nature: yet did *Phocius* and *Cato* better in mine opinion, who entertained not any enmity with their Citizens in regard of difference and variance between them about bearing rule and government: but became implacable and irreconcilable only in publick causes. When question was of abandoning or hurting the weale publique: for otherwise in private matters, they carried themselves kindly enough, without any rankor or malice even toward them, against whom they had contended in open place, as touching the State: for we ought not to esteeme or repute any citizen an enemy, unless such an one be bred amongst them as *Arifion*, or *Nabur*, or *Cassius*, who are to be reckoned bitches rather, and pestilent maladies of a City than Citizens: for of all others if haply they be at a jar or discord, a good Magistrate ought to bring them into tune and good accord again, by gently letting up and letting down, as a skilfull Musician would do by the strings of his instrument: and not in anger to come upon those that are delinquents, roughly and after an outrageous manner, even to their detriment and disgrace: but after a more mild and civil sort, as *Homer* speaketh in one place:

*Certes, faire friend, I would have held;*

*That others for your wit you had exceld.*

As also in another:

*You know, if that you list (this)*

*To tell a better tale than this.*

Yea, and when they shall either say or do that which is good and convenient, not to shew himselfe to grieve and grudge at their credit and reputation which they win thereby, nor to be sparing in affording them honourable words to their commendation and advantage: for in so doing, thus much will be gained, that the blame which shall be laid upon them another time when they deserve it, will be better taken, and more credit given to it: and besides, by how much more we shall exalt their virtues, so much the more we may beat down and depreesse their vices when they do amisse, by making comparison of them both, and shewing how much the one is more worthy and becoming than the other: for mine own part, I hold it meet and good, that a man of government should give testimony in the behalfe of his adversaries in righteous and just causes; also assist and help them out of troubles, in case they be brought into question by some lewd sycophants, yea, and discredit and dislike the imputations charged upon them, namely, when he seeth that such matters for which they are molested, be far from their intention and meaning. Thus *Nero*, a cruell tyrant though he was, little before he put *Thraseus* to death, whom he hated and feared most of all men in the world, notwithstanding one laied to his charge before him that he had given a wrong doome or unjust sentence: I would (quoth he) that I could be assured that *Thraseus* loved me so well as I am sure he is a most upright and just Judge. Neither were it amisse for the astonishing and daunting of others, who be of a naughty nature, when they do commit any grosse faults, to make mention otherwhiles of some adversary of theirs, who is of a more modest behaviour and civil carriage, by saying: such an one (I warrant you) would never have said or done thus. Moreover, it were not impertinent to put some who do offend, in mind of their fathers and ancestors, that have been good and honest, like as *Homer* did:

*A son (wits) Sir Tydeus left behind*

*Unlike himselfe, and much grown out of kind.*

And *Appius Claudius* being the concurrent to *Scipio Africanus*, when they stood both for one Magistracy, said unto him as he met him in the street: O *Paulus Emilius*, how deeply wouldst thou fight for griefe and sorrow, in case thou wert advertised that one *Philonicus* a Publicane or Banker or no better, accompanied and guarded thy sonthorow the City, going down toward the assembly of *Cemices* for to be chosen Censor? This manner of reprehension, as it admonisheth the offender, so it doth honour unto the admonisher. *Nestor* likewise in a Tragedy of *Sophocles* answereth a politickly unto *Ajax*, when he reproached him, saying:

*I blame not you, sir Ajax, for your speech,*

*Naught though it be; your words are nothing liech.*

Sensibly, *Cato* who had contended against *Pompey*, for that being combined and in league with *Julius Caesar*, he assaulted and forced the City of *Rome*, when as afterwards they were grown to open war one against the other, opined and gave his advice to confer the chaltege and regiment of the common-weale upon *Pompeius*, saying withall: That they who could do most mischief, were the fittest men to lay the blame: for thus a blame or reproof mingled with a praise and commendation, especially, if the same grow to no opprobrious termes, but be contained within the compasse of a frank and free remonitance, working not a spigheitt stomach, but a remorie of conscience and repentance, seemeth kind and dutifull: whereas deipiteous reproaches are never seemely and decent in the mouth of a Magistrate and man of honour. Marke the opprobrious termes and taunts that *Demosthenes* let lie against *Eschines*, those also that *Eschines* gave him: likewise the bitter humps which *Hyperides* wrote against *Demades*: and see if *Silov* ever delivered such, or if there came the like out of the mouth of *Pericles*, of *Lycurgus* the Lacedaemonian, or of *Pittacus* the Lesbian: and as for *Demosthenes*, he forbore such sharpe and cutting termes otherwise, and never uttered them but in pleading against some criminall causes: for his orations against *Philip* are cleare and void of all nips, flouts, and kesses whatsoever: and in truth such manner of dealing defameth the speaker more, than those against whom they be spoken: they bring confusion in all affaires; they trouble assemblies both in Councell House and also in Common Hall: in which regard, *Phocion* yeelding upon a time to one that was given to raile, brake off his oration, held his peace for a while and came down: but after, the other with much ado held his tongue and gave over his tongue language, he mounted up into the place of audience againe, and going off in his former speech which was interrupted and discontinued, said thus: Now that I have already my matters spoken sufficiently of horsemen, men of armes, and souldiers heavily armed at all peeces, it remaineth to discourse of light footmen, and argueriers nimble appointed.

But forasmuch as this is an hard matter unto many, to beare with such broad language, and to containe, and oftentimes these taunting scoffers meet with their matches, and have their mouths stopped, and are put to silence by some pretty replies: I would wish that the same were short, pithy, and delivered in very few words, not shewing any heat of anger and choler, but a kind of sweet mildnesse, after the manner of a grave laughter, yet withall somewhat tart and biting: and such ordinarily be those that are returned sely in the same kind against them that first began: for like as those darts which are recharged upon them that flung them first, seeme to be driven with good will, and sent back againe with great force and firme strength of him who was stricken with them: even so it seemeth that a sharpe and biting speech retored against him who first spake it, cometh forceable and with a power of wit and understanding from the party who received it: such was the reply of *Epinondas* unto *Callistratus*, who reproached and upbraided the Thebanes and Argives with the Paricides of *Oedipus* and *Orestes*, for that the one being borne in Thebes slew his own father, and the other *Argos* killed his mother: true indeed quoth *Epinondas*, and therefore we banished them out of our Cities, but you receive them into yours. Semblable was the answer of *Amalcidas* a Lacedaemonian unto an Athenian, who said unto him after a boasting and vaunting manner: We have driven you oftentimes from the river *Cephassus*: but we (quoth he) never yet drove you from the river *Eurotas*: In like sort replied *Phocion* pleasantly upon *Demades* when he cried aloud, The Athenians will put thee to death if they enter once into their raging fits: But they (quoth he) will do the same by thee, if they were in their right wits: and *Cicero* the oratour when *Domitius* demanded this question of him: When the Lampry which you kept and fed in your poole was dead, did you never weep for it, and say true? Came upon him quickly againe in this wise: And you yet when you had buried three of your wives one after another, did you ever shed teare for the matter, and tell truth? And verily these rules are not only to be practised in matters of State-affaires, but they have their use also in other parts of mans life.

Moreover, some there be who will intrude and thrust themselves into all sorts of publick affaires, as *Cato* did: and these are of opinion, that a good Citizen should not refuse any charge or publicke administration so far forth as his power will extend: who highly commend *Epinondas*: for that when his adversaries and ill willers upon envy had caused him to be chosen a baylie and receiver of the Citie revenues, thereby to do him a spite and shrewd time; he did not despise and thinke basely of the said office: but saying, that not only Magistracy sheweth what manner of man one is, but also a man sheweth what the Magistracy is, he brought that office into great dignity and reputation, which before was in no credit and account at all, as having the charge of nothing else but of keeping the streets cleane, of dung-farming and carrying dung forth out of the narrow lapes and blind allies, and turning water courses. And even I *Plutarch* my selfe doubt not, but I make good sport and game unto many who passe through our City, when they see me in the open streets otherwhiles busied and occupied about the like matters: but to meet with such, I might help my selfe with that which I have found written of *Amphibenes*: for when some there were that marvelled much at him for carrying openly in his hands through the market place a peece of salt-fish, or stock-fish which he had bought: It is for mine own selfe (quoth he aloud) that I carry it; but contrariwise mine answer is to such, as reprove me when they find me in proper person prentice, at the measuring and counting of bricks and tiles, or to see the stones, sand, and lime laid downe,

which

which is brought into the City; it is not for my selfe that I build, but for the City and Commonwealth, for many other things there be, which if a man exercise or manage in his own person and for himselfe, he may be thought base minded and mechanical; but in case he do it for the Commonwealth and the State, and for the country and place where he liveth, it cannot be accounted a vile or ungentleman-like service, but a great credit even to be serviceable, ready, and diligent to execute the mainest functions that be. Others there are, who thinke the fashion that *Pericles* used to be more stately, grave, and decent, and namely, *Critolaus* the Peripatetic among the rest, who was of this mind, that as the two great gallies to wit, *Salaminia* at *Athens*, and *Paralos* were not shot or lanced into the sea for every small matter, but only upon urgent and necessary occasions; even so a man of government should be employed in the chiefe and greatest affaires, like as the soveraigne and King of the world, according to the Poet *Enripides*,

*Τὸν αὐτὸν γὰρ διατάττει.*

For God himselfe doth manage and dispence.

Things of most weight, by his sole government;

But matters light, and of small consequence,

He doth refer to fortunes regiment.

For we cannot commend the excessive ambition, the aspiring and contentious spirit of *Theagenes*, who contented not himselfe to have gone through all the ordinary games with victory, and to have won the prizes in many other extraordinary matters and feats of activity, to wit, not only in that generall exercise *Paneration*, wherein hand and foot both is put to the uttermost at once, but also at buffers, and at running a course in the long race: Finally, being one day at a solemn anniversary feast or yeares-maund in the memoriall of a certaine demi-god (as the manner was) when he was set, and the meate served up to the board, he would needs rise from the table for to performe another generall *Paneration*: as if forsooth it had belonged to no man in the world to achieve the victory in such feats but himselfe, if he were present in place: by which profession he had gotten together as good as twelve hundred Coronets, as prizes at such combats, of which the most part were of small or no value at all; a man would say they had been chaffe, or such refuse and ruffage. Like unto him for all the world be those, who are ready (as a man would say) at all hours to cast off all their cloaths to their very single waistcoat or shirt, for to undertake all affairs that shall be presented; by which means, the people have enough and too much of them: they become odious and irksome unto them: in such sort that if they chance to do well and prosper, they envy them; if they do otherwise than well and miscarry, they rejoyce and beglad at heart thereto. Again, that which is admired in them at their first entrance into government, turneth in the end to a jest and meere mockery, much after this order: *Metiochus* is the generall Capitaine; *Metiochus* looketh to the high waies; *Metiochus* bakes our bread; *Metiochus* grinds our meale; *Metiochus* doth every thing, and is all in all; finally, *Metiochus* shall pay for this one day, and cry, woe is me in the end. Now was this *Metiochus* one of *Pericles* his followers and favorites, who making use of his authority out of measure and compasse, by the countenance thereof, would employ himselfe in all publique charges and commissions whatsoever, untill at the last he became contemptible and despised. For in truth a man of government ought to carry himselfe, as that the people should evermore have a longing appetite unto him, be in love with him, and always desirous to see him againe, if he be absent. This policy did *Scipio Africanus* wisely practise, who abode the most part of the time in the country; by this means both easing himselfe of the heavy load of envy, and also giving those the while, good leisure to take breath, who seemed to be kept down by his glory. *Timotheus* the Clazomenian was otherwise a good man and a sufficient Politician, howbeit little wit he how he was envied in the City, because he would seeme to do every thing by himselfe, untill such time as there befell unto him such an accident as this. These chances to be playing in the midst of a street, as he passed by, a company of boies, and their game was, who could drive with a cudgell a certaine cockall bone out of an hole. Some boies there were who held, that the bone lay still within; but he who had smitten it, maintained the contrary (and said withall) I would I had as well dashed out *Timotheus* braines out of his head, as I am sure this bone was stricken out of the hole: *Timotheus* overheard this word, and knowing thereby what envie and malice all the people bare unto him, returning home presently to his house, and told his wife the whole matter, commanding her to trusse and pack up all both bag and baggage, and to follow after him; who immediately went out of doores, and departed for ever out of the City *Clazomenes*. It should seeme also that *Timotheus* was almost in the same plight, and wanted but a little of the like shrewd turne from the *Athenians*, when he was driven thus to lay unto them: Ah my good friends and neighbours, why are you weary and thinke much to receive so great good at my hands? But as touching these persons above said, some words of theirs were well placed, and others not. For a wise States-man, in care, affection, and foresight, ought not to repute any publique charge whatsoever, but to take paines in having an eye to all, and to understand and know every particular; and not to reserve himselfe close, as it were, some holy anchor or sacred tackling laid up in some secret cabin of a ship, and not to attend only upon extremities, and to tarry untill he be employed upon occasions of great necessity and imminent danger. But likewise good Patrons or Masters of a ship, lay their own hands to some business, but others they performe fitting themselves a far off by the means of their tooles and instruments, and by the hands of other servants.

turning about, stretching and winding up, or letting down, and slackning the ropes as they see cause, employing the mariners, some to row, others to attend and be occupied in the proo and foreship; and others again to cry unto their fellows to ply their work; and some of them they call many times into the poop, and putting the helm into their hands, set them to steer and guide the stern; even so ought a wise Governour of the Commonwealth to yeeld now and then unto others the honour of command, and otherwhiles to call them after a gracious and courteous sort to the Pulpit, or publick place of audience, to make orations to the people, and not to move all matters belonging to the State by his own personal speeches, nor by his decrees, sentences, and acts, (as it were) with his own hands execute every thing; but to have about him faithful and trusty persons to be his Ministers, who might second and assist him; and those he should employ, some in this charge, and others in that, according as he seeth them to be sufficient, meet, and fit for employment. After this manner did *Pericles* use *Menippus* for his expeditions and conduct of war affairs: thus by the means of *Ephialtes* he took down and abridged the authority of the high Court *Areopagus*. *Charinus* he employed in compassing and contriving the Law or Decree that passed against the *Megarians*; and *Lampon* he sent with a Colony for to people the City of *Thurni*. And in this doing, he not only diminished the envy of the people against himselfe, in that it seemed that his power and authority was thus divided and parted among many; but also he managed the affairs of the State better and more commodiously by far. For like as the division of the hand into fingers enableth nor the force of the whole hand, but maketh it more fit for use, to handle all tooles and instruments, or to work any thing more artificially; even so, he that in matters of government doth communicate part of the management of the publick affairs with his friends, causeth by this participation all things to be better done, and with more expedition; whereas that man, who upon an unfatiable desire to show himselfe, to have credit and to win name and authority, layeth all the weight of the State upon his own shoulders, and will be doing of every thing; undertaking oftentimes that charge, whereunto he is neither framed by nature, nor fitted by exercise; as *Cleon* did in leading an Army; *Phlopermenes* in conducting a Navie; and *Annibal* in making Orations to the people, maketh himselfe inexcusable, if haply ought fall out otherwise then well. To such an one may well be applied a verse out of *Enripides*:

*You work not in timber, but in other matter,*

*Being your selfe but only a Carpenter.*

even so, you not able to deliver an eloquent speech, have undertaken an embassage; being idle and given to take your ease, you will needs have the charge of a Steward, and govern an house; not skilful and ready in calling accounts, you will needs be a Treasurer, or Receiver: being aged and sickly, you are become a Commander and General of an Army. *Pericles* did far better then so; for he parted the government with *Cimon*; and retaining to himselfe the whole power of ruling within the City, he left unto *Cimon* full Commission and Authority to man the *Armado*, and in the mean while to make war upon the Barbarians, because he knew his own selfe more fit for civil regiment at home, and the other more meet for war-like command abroad. In this respect *Eubulus* the *Aphaphytian* is highly commended, who, notwithstanding the people had a great affiance and trust in him, yea, and gave him as much credit as no man more, yet could he never be brought to deal in the foreign affairs of *Greece*, nor to take upon him the conduct of an Army: but resolving with himselfe ever from the beginning to attend and be employed in many matters, he mightily encreased the revenues of the City, and enriched the State exceedingly. But *Iphicrates* for exercising and practising to make declamations at home in his own house in the presence of many others, made a fool of himselfe, and was laughed to scorn for his labour; for say that he had proved no bad Orator, but a most excellent speaker; yet should he have stood contented with the reputation that he had won of a good warrior, by feats of arms, and have left the Schools of Rhetoric, for Sophisters, Orators, and such professors.

But forasmuch as all common people are by nature malignant, especially to those who are in place of authority, taking pleasure to quarrel and find fault with them; and inspecting ordinarily that many profitable Acts and Ordinances by them let down, unlesse they be debated by factions and with some contradiction, are contrived by secret intelligence under hand, and by way of conspiracy; even this is the thing that most of all bringeth the private amities and societies of States-men and Governours into an ill name and obloquy: howbeit, for all this, we are not to admit, or grant unto them any true enmity in deed or discord, as did sometimes a popular man, and a Governour of *Rhens*, named *Onomadocus*, who after he had in a certain seditious tumult gotten the upper hand of his adversaries, would not banish out of the City all those who had taken part against him; For fear lest that (quoth he) we fall out with our friends, when we have no more enemies: for surely this were meer folly. But whensoever the people shall suspect any Ordinance or Act proposed which is of great consequence, and tending to their good; if behoveth not at such a time, that all (as it were) of one complot should deliver one and the same sentence; but that two or three opposing themselves without violence, should contradict their friend, and afterwards being convinced and overweighed by sound reasons, change their mind, and range themselves to his opinion; for by this means they draw the people with them, namely, when they seem themselves to be brought thereto in regard of a publick benefit and commodity. And verily in trifling matters and of no great importance, it were not amiss to suffer our very friends in good earnest to differ and disagree

disagree with you, and to let every one take his way and follow his own mind, to the end that when some main points and principal matters of greatest moment shall come in question, and be debated, it might not be thought that they have conspired together, and so grown to a point and accord about the best.

Moreover, we are thus to think: That a wife man and a politician is by nature always the Governor and chief Magistrate of a City, like as the King among the Bees; and upon this persuasion he ought to have evermore the reins in his hand, and to sway the affairs of State: howbeit he is not very often, nor too hourly for to seek after and pursue the offices and dignities which the people do nominate and chuse by their free voices: for this office-managing, and desire to be always in place of authority, is neither venerable for his person, nor yet plausible to the people; and yet must not here reject the same, in case the people call him lawfully to it, and confer the same upon him: but to accept thereof, although peradventure they be offices somewhat inferior to the reputation that he hath already, yea, and to employ himself therein willingly and with good affection; for reason it is and equity, that as we ourselves have been honoured already by places of great dignity, so reciprocally we should grace and countenance those which be of meaner quality; and whensoever we shall be chosen to supreme Magistracies, to wit, unto the state of Lord Governor and general Captain in the City of Athens, or the Prytanyship in Rhodes, or Bæotary which is here in Boeotia, it may become us very well in modesty to yield and rebate a little of the sovereign power in our part, and with moderation to exercise the same; but contrariwise unto meaner rooms to add more dignity, and shew greater countenance, to the end that we be not envied in the one or despised in the other.

Now for a man that entrench newly into any office whatsoever it be; he ought not only to call to remembrance, and use the speeches that *Pericles* made the first time that he took upon him the rule of State, and was to shew himself in open place: namely, Look to thy self *Pericles*, thou rulest free men and not bond-slaves; thou governest Greeks, and not Barbarians; nay, thou art the head Magistrate of the Citizens of Athens; but also he is to reason and say thus to himself: Thou art a Commander and yet a Subject withal; thou art the Ruler of a City under Roman Proconsuls, or else the Procurators, Lieutenants and Deputies of *Cæsar*. Here are not the plains (as he said) of *Lydia*, for to run with the lance, nor the ancient City *Sardis*, nor yet the puissance of the Lydians which was in times past. The robe must not be made so large, it must be worn more strait; your eye must be always from the Emperours pavilion unto the Tribunal seat of justice; and you are not to take so great pride, nor trust so much unto a Crown standing upon the head, seeing how humbled shoes of the Roman Senators are above the same: but herein you ought to imitate the Actors and Players in Tragedies, who add somewhat of their own to the Roll or written part that they do play, to wit, their passionate affection, gesture, accent and countenance, which is fit and agreeable to the person that they do represent; and yet withal, they forget not to have any eye, and ear both to the prompters. This (I say) we must do, for fear lest we pass those bounds and exceed the measures of that liberty which is given us by those who have the power to command us: for I assure you, to go beyond those precincts and limits, bringeth with it danger; I say not to be hissed from off the stage, and be laughed out of our coats; but many there have been,

*Upon whose necks for punishment,  
The edge of trenchant axe and glave  
Hath fallen, to end all their torment,  
And head from body soon did reave.*

as it befall to *Pardalus* your countryman, with those about him, for stepping a little at one side without their limits. And such another also there was, who being confined unto a certain desert Isle, became (as *Solon* saith)

*A Sicilian or Phœgeandrian,  
Who born sometime was an Athenian.*

We laugh heartily at little Children, to see how otherwhiles they go about to put their Fathers shoes upon their own feet, or to set Crowns upon their heads in sport; and Governors of Cities relating foolishly offences unto the people, the worthy acts of their predecessors; their noble courage and brave minds, their notable enterprises achieved, far different and disproportioned to the present times and proceedings in their dayes, and exhorting them to follow the same, set the multitude aloft; but as they do ridiculously, so afterwards (believe me) they suffer not that which deserveth to be laughed at, unless haply they be so faine minded, that for their baseness there is no account made of them. For many other Histories there be of ancient Greece, which afford examples to be recounted unto men living in this age, for to instruct and reforme their manners; as namely, those at Athens which put the people in remembrance, not of the prowess of their Ancestors in martiall affaires, but for example to decree of that general abolition and oblivion of all quarrels and matters past, which sometimes was concluded there, after that the City was delivered and freed from their captivity under the thirty Tyrants, as also another act, by virtue whereof they condemned in a grievous fine the Poet *Phrynichus*, for that he represented in a Tragedy the winning and razing of the City *Miletus*. Likewise, how by publick ordinance, every man wore chaplets of flowers upon their heads, when they heard say that *Cassander* re-edified *Thebes*; and how, when intelligence came of the cruel execution and bloody massacre committed in *Argos*, wherein

wherein the Argives caused to be put to death 1500: of their own Citizens, they caused in a solemn procession, and general assembly of the whole City, an expiatory sacrifice to be carried about, that it might please the gods to avert and turn away such cruel thoughts from the hearts of the Athenians; fembably, how at what time as there was a general search made throughout the City in every house, for those who banded with *Harpalus*, they paid by one house only of a man newly married, and would not suffer it to be feared. For in these precedents and such like, they might well enough in these dayes imitate and resemble their ancient forefathers. But as for the battle of *Marathon*: the field fought near the River *Euryedon*, and the noble fight at *Platæa*, with other such examples which do nothing else but blow and puff up a multitude with vanity, they should leave such stories for the Schools of Sophisters and Masters of Rhetorick.

Well, we ought in our several governments to have a due regard not only to maintain our selves and our Cities so wisely, that our sovereigns have no occasion to complain; but we must take order also to have one great Signior or other, who hath most authority at *Rome*, and in the Court of the Emperor, to be our fast and special friend; who may serve us instead of a Rampier to back us, and to defend all our actions and proceedings in the government of our Countries: for such Lords and great men of *Rome* stand ordinarily passing well affected to those affairs, which their dependants and favorites do follow, and the fruit which may be reaped by the amity and favour of such grand Signiors, it were not good and honest to convert into the advancement and enriching of ourselves, and our particular private friends; but to employ the same as *Publius* did sometime and *Pandatus*, who by the means of the good grace of *Scipio* wherein they stood, did benefit and advantage their country exceeding much: in which number may be ranged *Arius*, for when *Cæsar Augustus* had forced the City *Alexandria*, he entered into it, holding *Arius* by the hand, and desiring with him alone of all his other friends what was to be done more: afterwards when the Alexandrians looked for no other but sackage, and all extremities, and yet besought him to pardon them; I pardon you (quoth he) and receive you into my grace and favour; first in regard of the nobility and beauty of your City; secondly for *Alexander* the great his sake, the founder thereof; and thirdly for the love of this my friend *Arius* your Citizen. May a man with any reason compare with this gracious favour, the most large and gainfull commissions of ruling and governing Provinces, which many make so great suit for at the Court, and that with such abject servitude and base subjection, that some of them have even waxed old in giving attendance thereabout, at other mens gates: leaving in the mean while their own home affairs at six and seven? were it not well to correct and amend a little the sentence in *Enripides*, singing and saying it thus: If it be honest and lawful to watch and make Court at the gates of another, and to be subject to the fute of some great Signior: surely most commendable and behoveful it were so to do, for the love and benefit of a mans country, in all other cases to seek and embrace amities, under just and equal conditions.

Moreover, a governor in yielding and reducing his country unto the obedience of mighty Sovereigns abroad, ought to take good heed that he bring it not into servile subjection, lest when it is once tied by the leg, he suffer it to be bound also by the neck: for some there be who reporting all things both little and great unto these Potentates, make this their servitude reproachable; or to speak more truly, they deprive their country of all policy and form of government, making it so fearful, timorous, and fit for no authority and command at all; and like as they who tie themselves to live so physically, that they can neither dine nor sup, nor yet bath without their Physician, havenot so much benefit of health as nature it selfe doth afford them: even so those Cities and States which for every decree and resolution of their counsel, for all grace and favour, yea, and for the smallest administration of publick affairs, must needs adjoin the consent, judgement, and good liking of those Signiors and good Masters of theirs, they even compel the laid great Lords to be more powerful and absolute over them then they would themselves. The causes hereof commonly be these: to wit, the avarice, jealousy, and emulation of the chiefe and principal Citizens in a State; for that being desirous otherwhiles to oppress and keep under those who be their inferiours, they constrain them to abandon their own Cities, or else being at some debate and difference with other Citizens their equals, and unwilling to take the soile one at anothers hand in their own City; they have recourse unto other superior Lords, and so bring in forrainers who are their betters. Hereupon it cometh to passe, that the Senate, People, Judiciall Courts, and all that little authority and power which they had is utterly lost. A good governour therefore ought to remedy this mischief, by appealing such Burgeses as be private and meane Citizens, by equality, and those who are great and mighty, by reciprocal yielding one to another: and so by this course to keep all affairs within the compasse of the City, to compose all quarrels, and determine all controversies at home, curing and healing such inconveniences as secret maladies of a common-wealth, with a civil and politick medicine: that is to say, to chuse rather for his owne part for to be vanquished and overthrown among fellow Citizens, then to vanquish and win the Victory by forraigne power, and not to offer wrong unto his natural country, and be a cause to overthrow the rights and privileges thereof; as for all others, he is to beseech them, yea, and to persuade with them particularly one by another, by good reasons and demonstrations of how many calamities peevish obstinacy is the cause; and how, because they would not each one in his turne and course frame and accommodate themselves at home to their fellow-Citizens, who

many times be of one mind and linage to their neighbors and companions in charges and offices, and, that with honour and good labour, they are come to this paffe, as to detect and lay open the secret diffentions and debates of their own City, at the gates of their advocates, and to put their causes into the hands of pragmaticall Lawyers (at Rome) with no lesse shame and ignominy, then loss and damage.

Physicians are wont when they cannot expel and fully exclude out of the body inwardly some kind of maladies, to turn and drive the same without forth to the superficial parts; but contrariwise, a man of government, if he be not able to keep a City altogether in peace and concord, but that some troubles will arise, yet at leastwise he must endeavour to contain that within the City which is the cause thereof, and nurieth the sedition, and in keeping it close to labour for to heal and remedy it: to this end, that if it be possible he have no need either of Physician or Physick from forraign parts; for the intentions of a man of State and government ought to be these, namely, to proceed in his affairs surely, and to flee the violent and furious motions of vain-glory, as hath been said already, howbeit in his resolution,

*A courage bold, and full of confidence  
Undaunted heart, and fearlesse he must have,  
Which will not quail for any consequence,  
But see the end: much like to soldiers brave,  
Infield themselves who manly do behave,  
And hazard lims and life for to defend  
Their country deere, and enemies to offend.*

and not onely to oppose himselfe against enemies, but also to be armed against perillous troubles and dangerous tumults, that he may be ready to resist and make head: for he ought not in any case himselfe to move tempests and raise commotions, nor when he seeth boisterous storms coming, forsake and leave his country in time of need. He must not (I say) drive his City under his charge upon apparent danger, but so soon as ever it once begin to be tossed, and to float in jeopardy, then is it his part to come to succour, by calling out from himselfe (as it were) a sacred Anchor, that is to say, to use his boldnesse and liberty of speech, considering that now the main point of all lieth bleeding, even the safety of his country. Such were the dangers that hapned unto Pergamus in Neros time, and of late days to the Rhodians, during the Empire of Domitian, as also before unto the Thessalians, while Augustus was Emperor, by occasion that they had burned Peram quick. In these and such like occurrences, a man of State and government, especially if he be worthy of that name,

*Never shall you see  
Sleepy for to be,*

nor drawing his foot back for fear, nor not to blame and lay the fault on others, nor yet to make shift for one, and put himselfe out of the medly of danger, but either going in embassage, or embarked in some ship at sea: or else ready to speak first, and to say not only thus,

*We, we Apollo, have this murder done,  
From these our coasts avert this plague upon,*

but although himselfe be not culpable at all with the multitude, yet will he put his person into danger for them. For surely this is an act right honest, and besides the honesty in it selfe, it hapneth divers times, that the vertue and noble courage of such a man hath been so highly admired, that it hath daunted the anger conceived against a whole multitude, and dispatched all the fiercenesse and fury of a bitter menace: like as it befel unto a King of Persia in regard of Bulis and Sperthis two Gentlemen of Sparta: and as it was seen in Pompey to his host and friend Sthenon: for when he was fully determined to chastise the Mamertines sharply, and to proceed against them in all rigor, for that they had rebelled, the said Sthenon stepped unto him, and thus frankly spake: That he should do either well nor justly, in case he did to death a number of innocents, for one man who alone was faulty; for it is I my selfe (quoth he) who caused the whole City to revolt and take Arms, inducing my friends for love, and forcing mine enemies for fear. These words of his went so neer unto the heart of Pompey, that he pardoned the City, and most courteously entreated Sthenon; temblably the host of Sylla, having shewed the like valour and vertue, although it were not to the like person, died a noble death: for when Sylla had won the City Praeneste by assault, he meant to put all the inhabitants thereof to the sword, excepting only one host of his, whom in regard of old hospitality he pardoned and pardoned: but this host and friend fled fastly unto him, that he would never remain alive to see that bloody massacre, nor hold his life by the murderer of his country; and so cast himselfe into the troop of his fellow Citizens in the heat of execution, and was killed with them. Well say unto the gods we ought, to preserve and keep us that we fall not into such calamities and troublesome times: to hope also and look for better days.

Moreover, we are to esteem of every publick magistracy, and of him who exerciseth it, as of a great and sacred thing, and in that regard to honour the same above all. Now the honour which is due unto Authority, is the mutual accord and love of those who are set in place to exercise the same together: and verily this honour is much more worth, then either all those Crowns and Diadems which they bear upon their heads, or their stately Mantles and Robes of Purple, wherewith they bearrayed. Howbeit, they that laid the first ground and beginning of Amity, their

their service in Wars, when they were fellow Soldiers, or the passing of their youthful yeares together; and contrariwise, take this a cause now of enmity, that they either are joined Captaines in commission for the conduct of an Army, or have the charge of the Common-weale together; it cannot be avoided, but that they must incurre one of these three mischiefs. For either if they esteem their fellows and companions in government to be their equals, they begin themselves first to grow into terms of diffention; or if they take them to be their betters, they fall to be envious; or else in case they hold them to be inferiour unto them in good parts, they despise and contemne them. Whereas they should indeed make Court unto the greater, honor and adorn their equals, and advance their inferiours, and in one word, to love and embrace all, as having an amity and love engendered among themselves, not because they have eaten at one table, drunk of the same cup, or met together at one feast, but by a certain common band and publick obligation, as having in them a certain fatherly benevolence, contracted and grown upon the common affection unto their Country. Certes, one reason why Scipio was not so well thought of at Rome was this; that having invited all his friends to a solemn feast at the dedication of his temple to Hercules, he left out Mummius his colleague, or fellow in office: for say that otherwise they took not one another for so good friends; yet so it is, that at such a time, and upon such occasions, they ought to have honoured and made much one of the other, by reason of their common magistracy. If then Scipio, a noble personage otherwise, and a man of wonderful regard, incurred the imputation and note of infidelity and presumption, because he forgot, or omitted to make a demonstration and token of humanity: how can it be, that he who goeth about to impair the dignity and credit of his companions in government, or discrediteth and disgraceth him in those actions, especially which proceed from honour and bounty, or upon an arrogant humor of his own, will seem to do all, and attribute the whole to himselfe alone, how can such an one (I say) be reputed, either modest or reasonable? I remember my selfe, that when I was but of young years, I was sent with another, in embassage to the Proconful; and for that my companion stayed about (I wot not what behind) I went alone and did that which we had in commission to do together: alter my return, when I was to give an account unto the State, and to report the effect of my charge and message back again; my father arose, and taking me apart, willed me in no wise to speak in the singular number, and say, I departed or went, but We departed: Item, not I said, or (quoth I) but We said; and in the whole recital of the rest to joyne always my companion, as if he had been associate, and at one hand with me in that which I did alone. And verily this is not only decent, convenient, and civil, but that which more is, it taketh from glory that which is offensive, to wit, envy, which is the cause that great Captains attribute and ascribe their noble acts to fortune and their good angel, as did Timoleon, even he who overthrew the Tyrannies established in Sicily; who founded and erected a Temple to Good-Fortune, Python also when he was highly praised and commended at Athens for having slain King Cerys with his own hand; it was God (quoth he) who for to do the deed used my hand. And Theopompus King of the Lacedemonians, when one laid unto him that Sparta was loved and stood upright, for that their Kings know how to rule well; Nay, rather (quoth he) because the people know how to obey well, and to say a truth, both these depend one upon the other: howbeit, most men are of this opinion, and so they give out: that the better part of policy or knowledge belonging to civil government lieth in this, to fit men, and frame them meet to be well ruled and commanded; for in every City there is always a greater number of Subject then Rulers, and each one in his turn (especially in a popular state) is governor but a while, and so it, afterwards continueth governed all the rest of his life, in such sort, that it is a most honest and profitable apprenticeship (as it were) to learn to obey those who have authority to command, although haply they have meaner parts otherwise, and be of lesse credit and power then our selves: for a meer absurdity it were, that (whereas a principal, or excellent Actor in a Tragedy, such as Theodorus was, or Pelus, for his waiteth oftentimes upon another mercenary Player who hath not above three words in his part to say, and speaketh unto him in all humility and reverence, because peradventure he hath the royal band of a Diademe about his head, and a Scepter in his hand) in the true and unfeigned actions of our life, and in case of policy and government, a rich and mighty person should despise and feel light by a magistrate for that he is a simple man otherwise, and peradventure poor and of mean estate, yea, and proceed to wrong, violate and impair the publick dignity wherein he is placed, yea, and to offer violence thereby unto the authority of a State; whereas he ought rather with his own credit and puissance, help out the defect and weakness of such a man, & by his greatness, countenance his authority: for thus in the City of Lacedemon, the Kings were wont to rise up out of their Thrones before the Ephors, and whosoever else was summoned and called by them, came not in ordinary foot pace, or fair and softly, but running in great haste, in token of obedience; and to shew unto other Citizens how obedient they were, taking a great joy and glory in this, that they honour their Magistrates, not as some vain-glorious and ungracious fops, void of all civility and manners, wanting judgement and discretion, who to shew, forthwith, their exceeding power upon which they stand much and pride themselves, will not letto offer aske unto the Judges and Wardens of the publick games, combats, and paltimes, or to give reproachful terms to those that lead the Dance, or let out the Plaies in the Bacchanal feast, yea, and mock Captaines, and laugh at the Presidents and Wardens of the publick exercises for youth, who have not the wit to know that to give honour is oftentimes more honourable then to be honoured: for surely to an honourable per-



person who beareth a great sway, and carrieth a mighty port with him in a City, it is a greater ornament and grace to accompany a Magistrate, and as it were to guard and squire him, then if the said Magistrate should put him before, or seem to wait upon him in his train; and to say a truth, as this were the way to work him displeasure and procure him envy from the hearts of as many as see it; so the other would win him true glory which proceedeth of love and benevolence: And yet when such a man is seen otherwise in the Magistrates house, when he saluteth or greeteth him first, and either giveth him the upper hand, or the middle place, as they walk together, he addeth an ornament to the dignity of the City, and loseth thereby none of his own. Moreover, it is a popular thing, and that which gaineth the hearts of the multitude, if such a person can bear patiently the hard terms of a Magistrate whilst he is in place, and endure his cholerick fits: for then he may with *Diomedes* in *Homer* say thus to himselfe:

*How ever now I little do say,  
It will be mine honor another day.*

Or as one said of *Demosthenes*: Well he is not now *Demosthenes* only, but he is a law-giver, he is president of the sacred plaies and solemngames, and a crown he hath upon his head, &c. and therefore it is good to put up all now, and to defer vengeance untill another time: for either we shall come upon him when he is out of his office, or at leastwise we shall gain thus much by delay, that choler will be well cooled and allayed by that time.

Moreover, in any government, or magistracy whatsoever, a good subject ought to strive (as it were) a vie with the rulers, especially if they be persons of good fort, and gracious behaviour, in diligence, care, and fore-cast for the benefit of the State: namely, in going to them, to give notice and intelligence of whatsoever is meet to be done, in putting into their hands for to be executed that which he hath with mature deliberation rightly resolved upon, in giving means unto them for to win themselves honour, and that by the benefit of the Common-weale: But if such persons they be, as either for fear and false heart, or upon a froward peevishnesse and disposition given over to such motions, and are not willing to put that in execution which is presented unto them; then it is his part himselfe person to go and declare the same in publick place to the body of the people, and in no wise to neglect, disdain, or passe with connivance any thing that concerneth the weal-publick, and never to pretend any colourable excuse, by saying, it appertained unto none other but the head Magistrate, thus to deal curiously and be busily occupied in meddling with the affairs of State: for a general Law there is which giveth always the first and principal place of rule in a Common-wealth unto him who dealeth justly, practiseth righteounesse, and knoweth what is expedient and profitable, as we may see by the example of *Xenophon*, who in one place writeth thus of himselfe: There was in the army (quoth he) one named *Xenophon*, who was neither Lord General, nor Lieutenant: but for skill and knowledge of that which was to be done, and for resolution to enterprize and execute the same, put himselfe forward, and gave charge unto others, wherein he behaved himselfe that he saved the Greeks. And the most glorious feat of arms that ever *Philopomen* achieved was this, that when he heard news how King *Agis* had surprized the City of *Meffene*, and that the General of the Achæans would not go with aid and rescue, but drew back for fear: he with a troop of the most forward and resolute gallants, without warrant, or commission from the State delivered the said City from out of the hands of *Agis*: which I write not as if I allowed of innovations, or such new enterprizes and extraordinary attempts upon every small and light occasion, but only either in time of need and extremity, as *Philopomen* did then, or for honest occasions, as *Epaninondas*, who continued in his Beorarchy four months longer then was ordinary by the Laws of the Country, during which time he put on arms, and entred into *Laconia*, re-edified *Meffene*, and peopled it, to the end that if afterwards there should ensue any complaint, or imputation, we may answer with credit, and either alledge for excuse, necessity, or set against it the peril to which we exposed our selves, the braveweele of the exploit, and the service so well performed, to make amends and recompence.

There is reported a sentence of *Japh* who long since was the Tyrant or Monarch of *Sicily*, which he had often in his mouth, and always repeated so often as he did violence or outrages to any of his subjects, that they cannot chuse but commit unjustice in small matters, who would do justice in great causes: as if a man would say, that necessary it is for him to offer wrong in details who mindeth to do right in the grosse. But as touching this sentence. a man may soon perceive at the first sight, that it is a speech meet for him that intendeth to make himselfe an absolute Lord, and to usurp tyranny. Yet is this rule more civil and politick, that a governour to gratifie the people, is to pass by small matters, and to wink at them, that he may in greater things stand against them, and stay them from breaking out too far. For he that in every thing will be peevish and looking too narrowly, without any yielding, or relaxation, but is always severe, rigorous and inexorable, doth by his example trim and accustom the people likewise to be quarrellsome and contentious with him, yet and to be ready upon all occasions to take offence and discontentment.

*But softly for to strike the saile  
Or slack the helms doth much avail  
With violence when billows great  
Arise, and on the ship do beat.*

and even so a governour ought in some things to yeeld, and not to be so precise and strait laced himself,

himselfe, but to sport as it were, and take his pastimes graciously with his people, as namely to celebrate festive sacrifices, behold solemne plaies, games, and combats, and to sit in the Theaters with them, partly in making semblant, as though he neither saw nor heard many things, like as we wont to do by the faults at home of our little children: to the end that the authority of reprovng them roundly, and admonishing them frankly, like unto the vertue of a medicine not dull and enervate with much use, but remaining still in full vigor and strength, may be more effectual, carry the greater credit, touch the quick indeed, and titing in matters of greater consequence. *Alexander* the great when he heard that his sister had been too familiarly acquainted with a luttie young gentleman and a beautiful, was nothing displeased therewith, but said: We must give her also a little leave to enjoy somewhat the pleasure and prerogative of a Prince: which was neither well done of him to allow such things in her, nor yet with good respect of his own honour and dignity: for we ought not to think this the fruition, but the ruine and dishonour rather of a princely State. And therefore a wise governor will not permit as much as possibly lieth in him, that the body of the people shall do in jury unto any particular inhabitants, as namely in confiscation of other mens goods, or in distribution, and parting among themselves the mony of the common stock: but to resist such courses with all his power, and with remonstrances, periwastions, threats, and menaces withstand the inordinate desires of a multitude: contrary to the practise of *Cleon* and his followers at *Athens*, who feeding and fostering such foolish appetites and corrupt humors of the people, caused many drone Bees (as *Plato* saith) to breed in the City, who did no other good but sting and prick one or other. But if the people at any time take occasion by tolemning some festive day, according to the custom of the Country, or by the honor of some god or goddess, to set out any goodly shew, play, or stately spectacle, or to distribute some small dole, or to exhibit a pleasant gratuity, honest courtship, or publick magnificence: lawfull it is and reasonable, that they should in such cases enjoy in some sort the fruit both of their liberty, and also of their wealth and prosperity. For in the governments of *Pericles* and *Demetrius Phalerus*, there be many examples extant of the like nature: as for *Cimon* he beautified the market place of *Athens* with rows of palm trees, planted directly, and ranged by him, with pleasant walks, and air allies. And *Cato* seeing about the time of *Catiline* conspiracy, that the Commons of *Rome* were in a commotion and hurlyburly by the faction of *Julius Caesar*, and grown in manner to these terms, for to bring in a change and alteration of the whole State: persuaded the Senate to ordain, that there should be some petty dole of money given among the poor Commoners: which coming in so good and fit a time, appeased the tumult, and repressed the sedition and insurrection that was like to grow. For like as a learned and expert Physician, after he hath taken away a great quantity of corrupt blood from his patient, giveth him anon some little nourishment that is good and wholesome: even so a discreet and well advised ruler of a popular State, when he hath put the people by some great matter which tended to their shame and losse, will again by some light gratuity and pleasure which he is content to grant, cheer, and recomfort them, yet and allay their mood when they be ready to whine and complain. And other whiles, good policy it is, of purpose to withdraw them from some foolery, unto which without all sense and reason their mind and affection standeth, to draw and lead them unto other things that be good and profitable: like as *Demades* his practise was, at what time as he had the receipt of all the revenues of the City under his hands: for when the people of *Athens* were fully bent to send forth certain Gallies, for to succor those who had taken arms and rebelled against *Alexander* the great, and to that effect commanded him to disburse money for the charges, he made this speech unto them: My Masters, there is money ready for you, for I have provided so, as I purpose to deale among you at this feast of *Bacchales*, that every one of you may have halfe a Mna of Silver: now if you list to employ the same money to the setting out of a fleet, you may do what pleaseth you with your own, use it, or abuse it at your pleasure, it is all one to me: by this cunning device, having turned them from the rigging and manning of the Armado which they purposed to set out, and all for fear they should lose the benefit of the foresaid dole, or largesse which he promised and pretended, he stayed then from offending King *Alexander*, that he had no cause to finde himselfe grieved with them. Many such fits and humors are the people given unto, both hurtfull and damnable unto them: which it were impossible to break them of, going directly to work: but a man must go about with them, and by turnings and windings compass them to his mind: like as *Phaon* did upon a time when the Athenians would have had him in all haste to make a roade and invade the country of *Bœotia*: for he cauled incontinently proclamation to be made by found of trumpet: That all Citizens from fourteen years of age upward unto threethree, should shew themselves in arms and follow him: upon which proclamation, when there arose a great noise and stir among the elder sort, who began to mutine, for that he would force them at those years to the Warres: What a strange matter first is this (quoth he) I myselfe am fourscore yeares of age, and you shall have me with you for your Captainie. By this means a politick Governour may put by and break the rank of many unreasonable and needlesse embassages: namely, by joining many of them in commission together, and those whom he seeth to be unfit altogether for such voyages: thus may he stay the enterprizes of going in hand with many great buildings unnecessary and to no purpose, in commanding them at such times to contribute money thereto out of their own purses: also hinder the proceesse of many unconvincible and undecent suites, namely, by assigning one and the same time for appearance in Court, and for to be employed in soliciting

ring causes abroad in forraign parts : and for to bring these things about, he must draw and associate unto him those principal officers who have drawn out in writing any such bills to be proposed, or have incited the people, and put those matters in their heads ; and to them he shall intimate those crosses coulties aboveaid ; for either if they start back and keep out of the way, they shall seem themselves to break that which they proposed ; or if they accept thereof and be present, they shall be sure to take part of the trouble and pains that is imposed upon them. Now when there shall be question of any exploit to be done of great consequence, and tending much to the good of the State, which requireth no small travel, industry, and diligence ; then have a special regard and endeavour, I advise you, to chuse those friends of yours who are of most sufficiency, and of greatest authority, and those among the rest which are of the mildest and best nature ; for such you may be sure will cross you least, and assist you most ; so long as they have wit at will, and be without void of jealousy and contention. And herein it behoveth a man to know well his own nature, and finding that whereunto he is leste apt than another : to chuse for his adjuncts those rather whom he perceiveth to be better able to go through with the business in hand, than such as otherwise be like unto himselfe ; for so *Dionides* being deputed to go in espial for to view the Camp of the enemies, chuse for his companion the warriest and best advised person of all the Greeks, and let passe the most valiant souldiers. By this means all actions shall be counterpoised best, and lesse jealousy and emulation will grow between them who are desirous to have their good parts and valour seem in different in vertues and qualities. If you have a cause to plead, or be to go in embassage ; chuse for your companion and assistant (if you find your selfe not meet to speak) some man that is eloquent, like as *Pelopides* in the like case chuse *Epaminondas*. If you think your selfe unmeet to entertaine the common people with courtesie and affability, and of too high and lofty a mind for to debate your selfe, and make court unto them, as *Gallistratis* the Captain of the Lacedemonians was : take one unto you who is gracious, and can skill to court it and give entertainment. If your body be weak or feeble, and not able to endure much pains ; have one with you who hath a stronger body, and who can away with travel, as *Nicias* did *Lamachus* for this is the reason that *Geryones* was to wonderfull, because that having many legs, many arms, many eyes, yet he with all them was ruled and governed by one soul. But wise governors if they accord and agree well, may confer and lay together not only their bodies and goods, but also their fortunes, their credits, and their vertues, and make use of them all in one affair, in such sort that they shall compass and execute fully whatsoever they enterprise, much better then any other whosoever : and not as the Argonauts did, who after they had left *Hercules*, were constrained to have recourse unto the charms, sorceries, and enchantments of women for to save themselves, and to steal away the golden fleece.

Certain Temples there be, into which whosoever did enter, must leave without doors all thegold that they had about them, and as for iron they might not presume to go withal into any one whatsoever. Considering therefore that the tribunall and judicial seat of justice is the Temple of *Jupiter*, furnished the Counsellor and Patron of Cities, of *Themis* also and *Dice*, that is to say, equity and justice : before you set foot to mount up into it, presently rid and cleare thy soul of all avarice and covetousnesse of money, as if it were iron, and a very malady full of rust, and throw it far from thee into the Merchants Hall, into the Shops of Tradesmen, Occupiers, Banquers and Usurers.

As for thy selfe,  
Free from such pelfe.

Shun it I say, as far off as you can, and make this reckoning, that whosoever enticheth himselfe by the managing of the Common-weale, is a Church-robber, committing sacrilege in the highest degree, robbing Temples, stealing out of the Sepulchres of the dead, picking the Coffers of his friends : making himselfe rich by treachery, treason, and false-witness ; think him to be an untrusty and faithlesse Counsellor, a perjured Judge, a corrupt Magistrate, and full of bribery ; in one word polluted and defiled with all wickednesse, and not cleare of any sin whatsoever that may be committed : and therefore I shall not need to speak more of this point.

As for ambition, although it carry with it a fairer hee then avarice, yet nevertheless it bringeth after it a traine of mischiefs and plagues, no lesse dangerous and pernicious unto the government of a Common-weale : for accompanied it is ordinarily with audacious rashnesse more then it is as much as it useth not to breed in safe minds, or in natures feeble and idle, but principally in valiant, active, and vigorous spirits ; and the voice of the people, who by their praises lift it up many times and drive it forward, maketh the violence thereof more hard to be restrained, managed, and ruled. Like as therefore *Plato* writeth, that we ought to accustom young Boys, even from their very infancy to have this sentence resounding in their ears : That it is not lawfull for them neither to carry gold about their bodies as an outward ornament, nor so much as to have it in their purses, for that they have other gold as a proper chaffer of their own, and the same incorporate in their hearts : giving us to understand by their enigmatical and covert speeches (as I take it) the vertue derived from their Ancestors, by descent and continuation of their race : even so we may in some sort cure and remedy this desire of glory, by making remonstration unto ambitious spirits, that they have themselves gold, that cannot corrupt, be wasted, or contaminated by envy, no nor by *Momus* himselfe the reprover of the gods, to wit, Honour, the which we always encrease and augment, the more we discourse, consider, meditate, and thinke upon those things which have been performed and accomplished by us in the government of the Common-weale : and therefore they have no need

need of those other honours, which are either cast in moulds by founders, or cut and graven in brasie by mans hand, considering that all such glory cometh from without forth, and is rather in others then in them, for whom they were made. For the statue of a Trumpeter which *Polyeleus* made, as also that other of an halbarder are commended in regard of the maker, and not of those whom they do represent, and for whose sake they were made. Certes, *Cato* at what time as the City of *Rome* began to be well replenished with images and statues, would not suffer any one to be made for himselfe, saying : That he had rather men would ask, why there was no image set up for him, than why it was ? For surely such things bring envy, and the common people think themselves embred with ill, and beholden unto those, upon whom they have not bestowed such vanities ; and contrariwise, such as receive them at their hands are odious and troublesome unto them, as if they had sought to have the publick affairs of the State in their hands, in hope to receive such a reward and salary from them again. Like as therefore he that hath failed without danger along the *Gulfie Syrie*, if afterwards he chance to be cast away and drowned in the mouth of the Haven, hath done no such doughty deed, nor performed any special matter of praise in his voyage and navigation ; even so, he that hath escaped the common Treasury, and done well enough and saved himselfe, from the publick revenues, cuttomes, and commodities of the State : that is to say, hath not defiled his hands, either with robbing the City money, or dealt under-hand with the Farmers & undertakers of the Cities lands, revenues, &c. and then shall suffer himselfe to be overtaken and surprized with a desire to be a President and sit highest, or to be the head man and chiefe in Councell of a City, is not indeed upon an high rock that reacheth up aloft, but drenched he is over the ears, and as like to sink as the rest, nevertheless. In best case he is therefore, who neither seeketh nor desireth any of these honours, but rejecteth and refuseth them altogether. Howbeit, if peradventure he be no easi-femeter to put back a grace and favour, or some token of love, that the people otherwise desires to shew unto them who are entered into combat, as it were in the field of government, not in a game and matter for a silver prize, or for rich presents, but in the game indeed which is holy and sacred, yea, and worthy to be crowned, it may suffice and content a man to have some honourable inscription, or title, in a tablet, some publick act, or decree, some branch of Lawrell, or the Olive : like as *Epimenides*, who received one branch of the sacred Olive, growing in the Cattle of *Athens*, because he had cleansed and purified the City : and *Anaxagoras* refusing all other honours which the people would have ordained for him, demanded only, that upon the day of his death the Children might have leave to play, and not go to school all that day long. The seven gallant Gentlemen of *Persia*, who killed the Tyrants, called *Magi*, were honoured only with this privilege, that both they and their posterity might wear the Persian pointed Cap, or \* Turbant, bending forward on their heads ; for this was the signal which they were agreed upon among themselves when they went to execute the false enterprise. Likewise the honour which *Pittacus* received, did shew some modesty and civility ; for when his Citizens had permitted and granted unto him to have and enjoy those Lands which he had conquered from the enemy, as much as he would himselfe ; hee stood contented with so much, and no more as lay within one fling, or foot of the javelin which belanced himselfe. And *Cecilius* the Roman took so much ground only as he in his own person could eare with a plow in one day, being as he was a lame and maimed man. For a civil honour ought not to be in the nature of a salary for a virtuous act performed, but a token rather, and a memorial that the remembrance thereof might continue long, as theirs did whom erewhiles we named : whereas in those three hundred statues of *Demetrius Phalerus* there gathered not so much as rust, canker, or any ordure, or filth whatsoever, but were all of them ere himselfe died, pulled down and broken. And as for the images of *Demades*, melted they were every one, and of the mettall were made Pipors and Basins for clofe stools : yea, and many such honours have been defaced, as being displeasing and odious to the world, not in regard only of the wickednesse of the receiver, but also of the greatnesse and richnesse of the thing given and received : and therefore the goodliest and surest safeguard of honour, that it may endure and last longest, is, the least costliness, and price bestowed thereupon : for such as be excessive massive and immeasurable in greatnesse, may be well compared unto huge Colosses, or Statues not well balanced and counterpoised, nor proportionably made, which soon fall down to the ground of themselves. And here in this place I call Honours, these exterior things which the common people (so far as belongeth them, according to the saying of *Empedocles*) so call. Howbeit I also affirm as well as others, that a wise Governour and man of State ought not to despise true honour, which consisteth in the benevolence and good affection of those who have in remembrance the services and benefits that they have received : neither ought he altogether to contemn glory, as one who forbore to please his neighbours among whom he liveth, as *Democritus* would have him : for, neither ought he to keepers, or Equires of the stable, reject the affection of their hortes lovingly making toward them ; nor hunters the fawning of their hounds and spaniels ; but rather seek to win and keep the fame, for that it is both a profitable, and also a pleasant thing, to be able for to imprint in those creatures who are familiar, and do live and converse with us, such an affection to us as *Lysimachus* his dog shewed towards his master ; and which the Poet *Homer* reporteth that *Achilles* hortes shewed to *Patroclus*. For mine own part I am of this mind, that Bees would be better entreated and escape better, in case they would make much of those, and suffer them gently to come toward them, who nourish them and have the care and charge of them, rather then to sting and provoke them to anger as they

they do; whereas now, men are driven to punish them and chase them away with smock: allso to break and tame their frampold and unruly horses with hard bits and bridles, yea, and curst dogs which are given to run away, they are faine to lead perforce in collars, or tie up and hamper with clogs. But verily there is nothing in the world that maketh one man willingly obedient and subject to another, more then the affiance that he hath in him for the love which he beareth, and the opinion conceived of his goodnesse, honesty and justice; which is the reason that *Demofthenes* said very well: That free Cities have no better means to keep and preserve themselves from Tyrants, then to distrust them: for that part of the foule whereby we beleeve, is it, which is most easie to be taken captive. Like as therefore the gift of prophesie which *Cassandra* had, stood her country men and fellow Citizens in no stead, because they would never give credit, or believe unto her: for thus she speaketh of herselfe,

*God would not have my voice propheticall  
When I foretelt of things, to take effect;  
Nor do my country any good at all:  
For why? always they do my words reject;  
In their distress, and woes, they would correct  
Their folly past, then am I wife and sage;  
Before it come, they say I do but rage.*

even so, on the other side, the trust and confidence that the Citizens reposed in *Archias*, the good will and benevolence which they bare unto *Battus*, served them in right good stead: for that they used and followed their counsel, by reason of the good opinion which they conceived of them.

This is then the first and principal good which lieth in the reputation of States-men, and those who are in government, namely, the trust and confidence which is in them: for it maketh an overture, and openeth the door to the enterprise, and execution of all good actions. The second, is the love and affection of the people, which to good Governours is to them a buckler and armour of defence against envious and wicked persons:

*Much like unto a mother kind,  
who keeps away the flies;  
From tender babe, whilst sweetly it  
A sleep in cradle lies.*

putting back envy that might arise against them; and in regard of might and credit, making equal a man meely born, and of base parentage, with those who are nobly defended, the poor with the rich, and the private person with the magistrates: and to be brief, when virtue and verity are joined together with this popular benevolence, it is as mighty as a strong and steady gale of a forewind at the poop, and driveth men forward to the managing and effecting of all publicke affairs whatsoever. Consider now and see what contrary effects the disposition of peoples hearts, doth produce and bring forth by these examples following. For even they of *Italy*, when they had in their hands the wife and Children of *Demys* the Tyrant, after they had villanously abused, and shamefully forced their bodies, did them to death, and when they had burnt them to ashes, threw and scattered the same out of a ship into the Sea. Whereas one *Alexander* who reigned graciously over the *Bactrians*, in the end, when he had lost his life in the wars, was honourably interred: for the Cities under his abeiance joined altogether, and by a common accord solemnized his funerals and obsequies with great mourning and lamentation; but as touching the place where his reliques should be bestowed, they grew into a great strife and contention one with another, which at the last with much ado was pacified upon this condition and composition, that his ashes should be parted and divided equally among them all, and that every City should have one Sepulcher and Monument of him by it selfe. Again, the *Agrentines* after they were delivered from the Tyrant *Phalaris*, enacted an Ordinance: That from thence forth, it should not be lawfull for any person whatsoever, to wear a robe of blew colour, for that the Guard and Pensioners attending about the said Tyrant, had blew caffocks for their Liveries. But the *Perians* took such a love to their Prince *Cyrus*, that because he was Hawk-moted, they ever after, and even to this day, affect those who have such noses, and take them to be best favoured. And verily all loves, this is the most divine, holy, and puissant, which Cities and States do bear unto a man for his vertue: as for other honors so falsely called, and bearing no true engins indeed to testifie love; which the people bestow upon them who have builded Theaters, and shew-places, given them largesses, congies, and other doles, or exhibited combats of sword-fencers at the sharp: these wrong entitled honours do resemble the glosing flatteries of Harlots and Strumpets, who smile upon their Lovers, so long only as they give them any thing, or gratifie them in any pleasure; and such a glory as this lasteth not long, but after a day or two passeth away and is gone.

He whofoever he was, that said first; That he who began to give money by way of largesse unto the people, taught the very high way to overthrow a popular State, knew very well, that the people lose their authority, when they make themselves subject and inferior by taking such gifts: and even they also who are the givers must know this much: That they overthrow themselves in buying their reputation so costly, and at so high a price: and by that means they make the multitude more haughty and arrogant, because thereby the people do presume, that it is in their power to give, or take away so great a thing. I write not this, as though I would have a man of

either

estate in his lawfull expenses, and allowable liberalities, to shew himselfe too neer and mechanical, especially when his State will bear and maintain the same: for that, in truth, the people carry a greater hatred to a rich man, who will not part with any of his goods among them, then a poor man who robbeth the common chest: for they suppose the one to proceed from pride and contempt of them, and the other from meer need and necessity. I would with therefore that first and principally these largesses should come by way of gratuity, and for nothing, for that in such a sort, they make the authors thereof better esteemed and admired, and besides they bind and oblige the receivers so much the more. Secondly, I would that they were done upon a good, honest, and laudable occasion, as namely, for the honour of some god: a thing that draweth on the people more and more to devotion and religion, because withal, it imprinteth in the hearts of the people a vehement opinion, and strong apprehension that the Majesty of the gods, must needs be a great and venerable thing, when they see those who honor them, and whom they repute for so worthy and noble personages, so affectionate unto them, as for their service and worship to be at such cost, and spend so liberally. Like as therefore *Plato* forbade young men who went to the Musick Schoole, that they should not learn either the Lydian and Phrygian harmony; for that the one stirred up in our hearts all lamentable, doleful, and dumpish affections, the other encreased the inclination to pleasure, riot, and voluptuous sensuality: even so, as touching these largesses and publick expenses, bawdy and chaste out of your City as much as you can, those which provoke in our hearts beauly, barbarous, and bloody affections, or such as feed loosenesse and furrility: or if you be not able to rid them out clean, yet do your endeavour at leastwise to hold off and contend against the people, to your uttermost power, who call upon you for such spectacles: and order the matter so always, that the subject matter of your dispenie may be honest and chaste, the end and intention good and necessary, or at least wise that the pleasure and mirth be without wrong and hurt to any person. But if peradventure your State be but mean, and that the center and circumference of your goods contain and comprehend no more then to serve and supply necessities, know well this: that it argueth neither a base mind nor an illiberal and ungentleman-like heart to be known of your poverty, and so to give place unto other, who have therewith to defray such ambitious expenses and liberalities, and by endeavouring and engaging your selfe in the Usurers Books, to be a spectacle both to be pitied and laughed at, for such publick ministeries; so far much as they whofoever they be that so do, cannot go to work so secretly, but it will be thought and known how they enterprize above their ability, be driven to trouble and make bold with their friends in borrowing of them, or else to flatter and court Usurers to take up money at interest, in such sort as that they shall win no honour and credit, but rather shame and contempt by such expenses; in which regard, good it were in these cases to let always before your eyes the examples of *Lamachus* and *Phocion*. For *Phocion* one day when the Athenians at a solemn sacrifice called instantly upon him to contribute some money toward the charges: I would be ashamed (quoth he) to give you any thing, and in the mean while not be able to keep my credit, and pay that I owe to this man here, and withal he pointed unto *Calicles* the Usurer, unto whom he was then indebted. As for *Lamachus* in his accounts of charges whiles he was Lord General of an Army under the Athenians in any expedition, put in always, Thus much for a pair of shoes or pantofles for himselfe; Item, so much for a garment. The Thessalians ordained and allowed unto *Hermion* who refused to be their Captain General, because he was poor, a flagon, or little runlet of Wine monthly, and a measure, or bushel and halfe of meale every four days: whereby you see it is no shame for a man to confesse his poverty: neither have poor men less means to win credit and authority in the government of Cities, then they who lay out and spend much in making feasts or exhibiting publick shewes and spectacles, for to gain the good will and favour of the people: provided always, that by their vertue they have gotten reputation and liberty to speake their minds frankly and freely unto them. And therefore a good Governour ought wicely to master and rule himself in these cases: he must not (I say) enter into the plain and champion ground on foot for to encounter with horse men; nor being poor, to be seen in the race and shew place for to set our games, or upon the Scaffold and Theater to represent Playes, or in great Halls full set with Table to make feasts, and all to contend with rich men about glory and magnificence; but he is to study how to manage the people by vertue, by gentleness, by wit and understanding joyned always with wise words, wherein there is not only honesty and a venerable port, but also a kind of grace more amiable, attractive, and desirable.

*Then Cræsus coin of silver and gold,  
Or all the money that can be sold,*

For to a good man it is not necessary to have a surly, coy, and presumptuous look; neither is it required that a wife and sober person should carry a stern and rigorous countenance.

*Who as he walks along the streets,  
in city or in town,  
Doth cast a sharp and hideous eyes  
and on his neighbours frown.*

But contrariwise, a good man is first and foremost affable and lightsome of language, of easie access, and ready to be spoken withal whofoever comes, having his house open always, (as it were) an Haven, or Harbour of refuge, to as many as have occasion to use him. Neither is this debonairity and care of his, seen onely in the businesse and affaires of such as employ him, but also

also in this; that he will as well rejoyce with them who have had any fortunate and happy success, as condole and grieve with those unto whom there is befallen any calamity, or misfortune; never will he be known to be troublesome, and look for double diligence of a number of servitors and verlets to waite upon him to the baines, or touphees; nor to keepe a thirre for taking up and keeping of places for him and his traine at the Theaters where Playes and pastimes are to be scene, nor yet desire to be conspicuous, and of great make above others in any outward signes of excessive delights, and sumptuous superfluities; but shew himselfe to be equal, like, and fit, able to others in apparel, in his fare and furniture at the table, in the education and nurture of his Children, in the keeping of his Wife for her state and array, and in one word, be willing to carry and demean himselfe in all things, as an ordinary and plain Citizen, bearing no greater port and shew then others of the common multitude; moreover, at hand to give advice and counsel friendly to every man in his affairs, ready to entertaine, defend, and follow their causes as an Advocate, freely, and without taking fee, or any consideration whatsoever; to reconcile man and wife when they be at odds, to make love dayes and peace between friends; not spending one little peece of the day for a shew at the Tribunal seat, or in the Hall of audience for the commonwealth, and then afterwards all the day, and the rest of his life, drawing unto himselfe all dealings, all negotiations and affairs from every side for his own particular behoofe and profit, like unto the North East Wind *Cecias*, which evermore gathereth the clouds unto it: but continually bending his minde and occupying his head in careful study for the Weale-publick, and in effect making it appear unto the World, that the life of a States-man and a Governour, is not as the common sort think it, easie and idle, but a continual action and publick function; by which falsities and semblable courtes that he taketh, he gaineth and winneth unto him the hearts of the people, who in the end come to know, that all the flattering devises and enticements of others be nothing else but false baits and bastard allurements, in comparison of his prudence and careful diligence. The flatterers about *Demetrius* vouchsafed not to call any other Princes and Potentates of his time, Kings, but would have *Selenus* to be named the Commander of the Elephants; *Lyfima-bus* the keeper of the Treasury; *Ptolomus* the Admiral of the Sea; and *Agathocles* the Governour of the Islands. But the people although peradventure at the first they reject a good wife and sage person among them; yet in the end after they have seen his truth, and known his disposition and kind nature, they will repute him only to be popular, politick, and worthy to be a Magistrate indeed, and as for the rest, they will both repute and call one, the Warden and setter out of the Playes; another the great Feaster; and a third, the President of Games, Combats, and publick exercises. Moreover, like as at the feasts and banquets that *Callias*, or *Archades* were at the cost to make, none but *Socrates* was heard to speake, and all mens eyes were cast upon *Socrates*; even so in Cities and States governed aright, will may *Ismenius* deal largesse; *Licharmus* feasts, and *Niceratus* defray the charges of Playes, but *Epaminondas*, *Aristides*, *Lisander*, and such as they, are those which beare the Magistracy, they govern at home, they command and conduct Armies abroad. Which being well and duly considered, there is no cause why you should be discouraged, or dismayed at the reputation and credit that they win among the people, who have for them builded Theaters, and erected shew-playes, founded Halls of great receipt, and purchased for them common places of Sepulture, for to bury their dead: all which glory lasteth but awhile, neither hath it any great matter, or venerable substance in it, but vanisheth away like smoke, and is gone even as soon as either the Playes in such Theaters, or Games in shew-places are done and ended.

They that have skill and experience of keeping and feeding Bees, doe hold opinion and say, that those Hives wherein the Bees yield the biggest found, make most humming and greatest fruit which, like best, are most found, healthful, and yield most store of honey; but he upon whom God hath laid the charge and care of the reasonable swarm (as I may say) and civil society of men, will judge the happinesse and blessed state thereof most of all by the quietnesse and peace therein, and in all other things he will approve the ordinances and statutes of *Solon*, endeavouring to follow and observe the same to his full power; but doubt he will and marvel what he should mean by this, when he writeth: that he who in a civil sedition would not range himselfe to a side, and take part with one or other faction, was to be noted with infamy: for in a natural body that is sick, the beginning of change toward the recovery of health, cometh not from the diseased parts, but rather, when the temperature of the sound and healthy members is so puissant, that it chafeth and expelleth that which in the rest of the body was unkind and contrary to nature; even so in a City or State where the people are up in a tumult and sedition, so it be not dangerous and mortal, but such as is like to be appeased and ended, there had need to be a far greater part of those who are found and not infected, for to remain and co-habit still; for to it there cometh and hath recourse that which is natural and familiar, from the wife and discreet within, and the same entrench into the other infected part and cureth it: but such Cities as be in an universal uproar and hurly-burly, utterly perisht and come to confusion, if they have not some constraint from without, and a chastisement which may force them to be wise and agree among themselves. Neither is my meaning, that I would have you a politick person, and States man in such a sedition and civil discord to sit still, inensible, and without any passion or feeling of the publick calamity, to sing and chaunt your own repole and tranquillity of blessed and happy life, and whilst others be together by the ears, rejoyce at their folly;

folly; for at such a time especially you are to put on the buskin of *Theramenes*, which served as well the one leg as the other; then are you to parley and commune with both parties, without joining your selfe to one more than to the other; by which means, neither you shall be thought an adversary, because you are not ready to offend either part, but indifferent to both, in aiding as well the one as the other, and envy shall you incur none, as bearing part in their misery, in case you seem to be a fellow-feeling and compassion equally with them all: but the best way to provide aid and forecast, that they never break out to tearms of open sedition: and this you are to think for to be the principall point, and the height of all policy and civil government: for evident it is, and you may easily see, that (of those greatest blessings which Citizens can desire, to wit, peace, liberty, and freedom, plenty and fertility, multitude of people, and unity and concord) as touching peace, Cities have no great need in these daies of wife governours, for to procure or maintaine the same, for that all wars both against the Greeks, and also the Barbarians, are chased away and gone out of sight; as for liberty, the people hath as much as it pleaseth their Sovereigns and Princes to give them, and peradventure if they had more, it would be worse for them: for the fertility of the earth, and the abundance of all fruits, the kind disposition and temperature of all seasons of the year,

*That mothers in due time their babes  
into the world may beare,*

*Resembling in all prints their fires,  
to wit, their fathers deare,*

and that children so born, may live and be live-like; every good and wise man, will crave at Gods hands in the behalfe of his own fellow-Citizens. Now there remaineth for a States-man and politick governour, of all those works propoised one only, and that is nothing inferior to the rest of the blessings above-named, to wit the unity and concord of Citizens that alwaies dwell together, and the banishing out of a City all quarrels, all jarres and malice, as the manner is in composing the differences and debates of friends; namely, by dealing first with those parties which seem to be most offended, and to have taken the greatest wrong, in seeming to be injured as well as they, and to have no lesse cause of displeasure and discontent then they; afterwards by little and little to seek for to pacifie and appeale them, by declaring and giving them to understand, that they who can be content to strike saile a little, doe ordinarily go beyond those who think to gaine all by force; surmount them I say not only in mildnesse and good nature, but also in courage and magnanimity, who in yielding and giving place a little in small matters, are masters in the end and conquerours in the best and greatest; which done, his part is to make remembrance both particularly to every one, and generally to them all, declaring unto them the feeble and weak estate of *Greece*, and that it is very expedient for men of sound and good judgement to enjoy the fruit and benefit which they may have in this weaknesse and imbecillity of theirs, living in peace and concord one with another as they do; considering that fortune hath not left them in the midst any prize to win or to strive for. For what glory, what authority, what power or preeminence will remaine unto them that haply should have the better hand in the end, and be masters over their adversaries, but a proconfull with one commandment of his, will be able to overthrow it, and transport it unto the other side, as often and whensoever it pleaseth him; but say that it should continue still, yet is it not worth all this labour and travell about it. But like as scare-fires many times begin not at stately Temples, and publike edifices, but they may come by some candle in a private and little house, which was neglected or not well looked unto, and so fell down and took hold thereof, or haply straw or rushes and such like stuffe might catch fire and suddenly flame, and so thereupon might ensue much losse, and a publike waiting of many faire buildings; even so it is not alwaies by means of contention and variance about affairs of State, that seditions in Cities be kindled, but many times braules and riots arising upon particular causes, and so proceeding to a publike tumult and quarrel, have been the overthrow and utter subversion of a whole City. In regard whereof, it pertaineth unto a politick man, as much as any one thing else, to foresee and prevent, or else to remedy the same, to see (I say) that such seditions do not arise at all, or if they be on foot to keep them down from growing farther and taking head, or at leastwise that they touch not the State, but rest still among whom it began: considering this with himselfe and giving others to understand, that private debates are in the end causes of publike, and, small of great, when they be neglected at first, and no convenient remedies used at the very beginning. Like as by report the greatest civil dissention that ever happened in the City of *Delphos*, arose by the means of one *Crates*, whose daughter *Orgilus* the sonne of *Phutis*, was at the point to wed: now it hapned by meer chance, that the cup out of which they were to make an essay or effusion of wine in the honour of the gods first, and then afterwards to drinke one to another, according to the nuptiall ceremonies of that place, broke in pieces of it selfe, which *Orgilus* taking to be an evil presage, forsook his espoused bride, and went away with his father, without finishing the complements of marriage. Some few daies after when they were sacrificing to the gods: *Crates* conceived covertly or underhand a certaine vessell of gold, one of those which were sacred and dedicated to the Temple, unto them, and so made no more ado, but calfed *Orgilus* and his brother, as manifest Church-robbers, to be pitched down headlong from the top of the rock at *Delphos*, without any judgement or form and processe of law: yea, and more then that, killed some of their kinsfolke and friends, notwithstanding they intreated hard, and pleaded the liberties and immunity of *Minerva's* Temple, surnamed *Provident*, into which they were



is a faire Sepulcher for him, to be buried honourably therein, and to bestow in his death the glory of his life: for this is the last thing (as *Simonides* laid) that descendeth and goeth under the earth; unlesse we speake of them whose honour, bounty and vertue dieth first, and in whom the zeale of performing their duty doth faile and cease before that the covetous desire of things necessary to this life giveth over: as if the divine parts of our soules, and those which direct our actions were more fraile and died sooner then the sensuall and corporeall; which neither were honesty to lay nor good to beleve, no more than to give credit unto those who affirme that in getting and gaining only, we are never weary: but rather we are to bring that saying of *Thucydides* to a better purpose, and not to beleve him who was of minde, that not ambition alone and desire of glory, aged in a man, but also (and that much rather) localitie or willingness to live and converse with company, and civility and affection to policy and manning publike affairs: a thing that doth persevere and continue alwaies to the very end, even in Ants and Bees: for never was it known, that a Bee with age became a Drone; as some there be who would have those who all their life time were employed in the State, after the vigor and strength of their age is past, to fit still and keep the house, doing nothing else but eat and feed as if they were mued up, suffering their active vertue, through ease and idleness to be quenched and marred, even like as iron is eaten and consumed with rust and canker, for want of occupying. For *Cato* laid very wisely: That since old age had of it selfe miseries enough of the one, they ought not to add moreover therunto the shame that proceedeth from vice, for to mend the matter. Now among many vices that be, there is not one that more shameth and defameth an old man, than reitiveness, sloth, delicacy and voluptuousnesse: namely when he is seen to come down from the Hall and Courts of Justice, or out of the counsell chamber and such publike places, for to go and keep himself close in a corner of his house like a woman, or to retire into some farm in the Countrey to oversee his mowers, reapers, and harvest-folke, of whom it may well be said, as weread in *Sophocles*:

*Who is become of wife Oedipus,*

*Invidious a-reeking, who was so famous?*

For to begin to meddle in affaires of State in old age, and not before (as it is reported that one *Epimenides* laid him down to sleep when he was very young, and wakened an old man fifty years after) and ere he have shaken off and laid aside so long repose and rest that hath stucke so close unto him by use and custome, to go and put himselfe all at once upon a sudden into such travells and laborious negotiations, being nothing trained nor inured therein, not framed nor exercised thereto in any measure without conversing at all beforehand with men experienced in matters of estate, nor having practised worldly affairs might peradventure give good occasion to one that were disposed to reprove and find fault, for to say that which the Prophetesse *Pythias* answered once to one who consulted with the oracle of *Apollon* about the like case:

*For government and rule of City state,*

*Who ever thou be, thou comest too late:*

*An hour is this is undecent and past date,*

*Thou for to knock at Court or Palace-gate,*

like an unmanly guest who cometh to a feast; or a rude traveller, who seeketh for lodging when it is dark night; for even to thou wouldst remove not to a place, nor to a region, but to a life whereof thou hast no proofe and triall. As for this sentence and verbe of *Simonides*:

*The City can instrin't a man.*

True it is, if it be meant of them who have sufficient time to be taught and to learne any science, which is not gotten but hardly and with much ado after great study, long travell, continuall exercise and practice: provided also, that meet with a nature painfull and laborious, patient, and able to undergo all adversities of fortune. These reasons a man may seem very well, and to the purpose to alledge against those who begin when they be well stricken in years to deale in publike affaires of the State. And yet we see the contrary how men of great wisdom and judgement divert children and young men from the government of Common-wealth, who also have the testimony of the lawes on their side, by ordinance whereof at *Athen* the publike Crier or Beadle calleth and summoneth to the pulpit or place of audience, not such as young *Alcibiades* or *Pythias*, for to stand up first and speake before the assembly of the people, but those that be above fifty years of age; and such they exhort both to make orations, and also to deliver their minds, and counsell what is most expedient to be done.

And *Cato* being accused when he was fourescore years old and upward, in pleading of his own cause, thus answered for himselfe: It is an harder matter my matters (quoth he) for a man to render an account of his life, and to justify the same before other men than those with whom he hath lived. And no man there is, but he will confesse that the acts which *Cesar Augustus* achieved a little before his death in defeating *Antoninus*, were much more roial and profitable to the weal-publike, than any others that ever he performed all his life time before: and himselfe in restraining and reforming secretly by good customes and ordinances, the dissolute riots of young men, and namely, when they mutined, laid no more but thus unto them: Listen young men, and heare an old man speake, whom old men gave eare unto when he was but young. The government also of *Pericles* was at the height and of greatest power and authority in his old age, at what time as he persuaded the Athenians to enter upon the Peloponnesack warre: but when they would needs in all haste, and out of season, set forward with their power to encounter with 60000 men all armed

and well appointed, who foraged and wasted their territory, he withstood them, and hindered their designed enterprise, and that in manner by holding sure the amour of the people out of their hands, and (as one would say) by keeping the gates of the City fast locked and sealed up. But as touching that which *Xenophon* hath written of *Agesilau*, it is worthy to be delivered word for word, as he setheth it down in these tearmes: Whayouth (quoth he) was ever so gallant, but his age surpassed it? what man was there ever in the flower and very best of all his time, more dread and terrible to his enemies, than *Agesilau* was in the very latter end of his daies? whose death at any time was more joyfull to the enemies than that of *Agesilau*, although he was very old when he died? what was he that emboldened allies and confederates, making them assured and confident, if *Agesilau* did not, notwithstanding he was now at the very pits brink, and had in manner one foot already in his grave? what young man was ever more misdeed among his friends, and lamented more bitterly when he was dead, than *Agesilau*, how old so ever he was when he departed this life? The long time that these noble personages lived, was no impediment unto them in achieving such noble and honourable services; but we in these daies play the delicate wantons in government of Cities, where there is neither tyranny to suppress, nor war to conduct, nor sieges to be raised, and being leured from troubles of war, we sit still with one hand in another, being troubled only with civil debates among Citizens, and some emulations, which for the most part are voided and brought to an end by vertue of the lawes and justice only with words. We forbeare (I say) and draw back from dealing in these publike affairs for feare, confessing our selves herein to be more cowardly and false-hearted (I will not say) then the ancient Captains and Governours of the people in old time, but even worse than Poets, Sophists and Plaiers in Tragedies and Comedies of those daies. If it be true, as it is, that *Simonides* in his old age won the prize for ending ditties, and setting songs in quires and dances, according to the epigram made of him, which testifieth no lesse in the laite verbes thereof, running in this manner.

*Fourescore years old was Simonides*

*The Poet, and soine of Treoprepes,*

*When for his carrols and musickall waime,*

*The prize he won and honour did gaine.*

It is reported also of *Sophocles*, that when he was accused judicially for dotage by his own children, who laid to his charge that he was become a child againe, unfitting for governing his house, and had need therefore of a guardian being convented before the Judges, he reheard in open Court the entrance of the *Chorus*, belonging to the Tragedy of his, entituled *Oedipus in Colono*, which beginneth in this wise:

*Welcome stranger at thy entry,*

*To villages best of this Countrey,*

*Renowned for good steeds in fight,*

*The Tribe of faire Colonus bright;*

*Where nightingale doth oft resort,*

*Her dolefull moanes for to report:*

*Amid green bowers which she doth haunt,*

*Her sundry notes and lutes to chant,*

*With voice so shrill as in no ground,*

*Elsewhere her songs so much resound, &c.*

And for that this canticle or sonnet wonderfully pleased the Judges and the rest of the company, they all arose from the bench, went out of the Court, and accompanied him home to his house with great acclamations for joy, and clapping of hands in his honour, as they would have done in their departure from the Theater where the Tragedy had been lively acted indeed. Also it is confessed for certaine, that an epigram also was made of *Sophocles* to this effect:

*When Sophocles this sonnet wrote*

*To grace and honour Herodote,*

*His daies of life by just account,*

*To fiftie five years did amount.*

*Philemon* and *Alexis*, both comickall Poets, chanced to be arrested and surprized with death even as they played their Comedy upon the stage for the prize, and were about to be crowned with garlands for the victory. As for *Paulus* [or *Polus*] the actour of Tragedies, *Erasosthenes*, and *Philochorus* do report, That when he was threescore years old and ten, he acted eight Tragedies within the space of foure daies, a little before his death. Is it not then a right great shame, that old men who have made profession either to speake unto the people from the tribunall seat, or to sit upon the bench for to minister justice, should shew lesse generosity and magnanimity than those who play their parts upon a scaffold or stage? and namely, in giving over those sacred games and combats indeed, to cast off the person of a politician and man of honour, and to put on another (I wot not what) instead thereof, for I assure you, to lay down the roial dignity of a King, for to take up the performance of an husbandman, were very base and mechanically and considering that *Demosthenes* said how the sacred game *Paralus* was unworthily and shamefully misused, when it was put and employed to bring home for *Meidius*, wood and timber, slates and tiles, fed mutcons or such like fatlings: if a man of honour and estate should at any time give up and resigne his dignity of superintendency over the publike feasts of *Banquets*, or government over *Bastia*, of presidentship in that great Councell or assembly of estates called *Amphyctions*, and then afterwards be seen



occupied in measuring and selling meale, or the refuse and cakes either of grapes and olives after they be pressed, or to weigh fleeces of wooll, or to make merchandise of their felds: were not this as much altogether, as (according to the old proverb) to put on the age of an old horse without constraint of any person? Moreover, to go to any base and vile occupation or handicraft, or to traffick in merchandise, after one hath borne office of government in the Common-wealth, were all one as to turne a gentle-woman well defended, or a sober matron, out of all her fair and decent apparell, for to give her an apron only or single petticoat to cover her shame, and so to set her forth to keep in some tavern or victualling house; for even so, all the dignity, majesty and continuance of vertue politick is quite lost, when it is debased to any such vile ministeries and trades, smelling onely of lucre and gaine. But in case (which is the only point remaining behind) they call this a sweet and healthfull life, and the true enjoying and use of goods, to be given over to delicacies and pleasures, and to invite and exhort a politician or man of State, in aging therein, and spending his old yeares so, to wait and consume by little and little to nothing: I wot not well unto which of these two pictures, dishonest and shameful both twaine, this life of his were better to be likened; whether to that of the Mariners, who would solemnize the feast of *Venus* all their life time, being not yet arrived with their ship into the haven or harbor, but leaving it still under saile in the open sea; or to the painted table of *Hercules*, whom some painters merrily and in sport, but not seemly and with reverence, depict how he was in the roiall Palace and Court of the Lydian Queen *Omphale*, in a yellow coat like a wench, making wind with a fanne, and setting his mind with other Lydian damofels and waiting-maids, to broid his haire and trick up himselfe: even so we depoyling a man of estate of his lions skin, that is to say, of his magnanimous courage, and a minde to be always profiting the Common-wealth, and setting him to take his ease at the table, will make him good cheer continually, and delight his eares with pleasant songs, with sound of flutes, and other musickall instruments: being nothing at all ashamed to heare that speech which sometime *Pompeius Magnus* gave unto *Lucullus*, who (after his wars and conducts of armies, giving over all regiment of State, wholly was addicted to banes and stoupes, to feasting, to wantonnesse and company with women in the day time, to all dissolute life and superfluous delights, even so much, as to build sumptuous edifices, befitting rather men of younger yeares) reproved *Pompeius* for his ambition and desire of government above that which became his age: for *Pompeius* answered unto him, and said: It is more unlesionable for an aged man to live loosely and in superfluity, than to govern and beare rule. Again, the same *Pompeius* being one day fallen sick, when his Physician had prescribed him a black-bird for to eat, which was at that time out of season, and could not be had in the market for any money, and one made answer that *Lucullus* had good store of them, for he kept and fed them in mure all the yeare long: he would neither send to him for one, nor receive any from him, saying withall: What? unless *Lucullus* be a belly-god and glutton, cannot *Pompeius* tell how to recover and live? For say that nature seeketh by all means possible to take her pleasure and delight, yet surely the disabill the body of old folke, and denieth it the fruition of all pleasures, unless it be in some few necessities of this life:

For why? not *Venus* onely is  
Offended with old folke wis.

As *Euripides* the Poet saith, but also their appetite to eat and drink is for the most part dull and overthrowen with mofe, and as one would say toothles, in such sort as they do but mumble, touch their victuals a little aloft, and hardly and with much adoe enter and pierce inwardly into the same. In which regard they ought to be furnished and provided of pleasures of the mind, not such as are base, alliberal, and vile as *Simonides* said unto those who reproached him for his avarice; for being bereft of all other fleshy and corporall pleasures by reason of his yeeres, he entertained on still which fed and maintained his old age, and that was the delight which he took in getting money, and gathering goods: but the life politick of those who mannage affairs, hath many pleasures, and those right great and honest, in which onely or principally it should seem that the gods themselves take joy and contentment: and these be they that proceed from beneficence, or doing good unto many, and the glory of some worthy and noble act. For if the painter *Nicias* pleased his owne mind to well in his workmanship, and was so affectionate to the operation of his art, that oftentimes he forgot himselfe, and would aske his servants whether he had washed, and whether he had dined. or no: If *Archimedes* also was so bent and intentive unto the table before him, in which he drew his figures geometrical, that his servitors were faine to pluck him from it by force, for to wash and annoint him, and yet in the mean time that they were annointing of him, he would be drawing and describing of new figures upon his owne body: If *Camus* likewise the plaier of the fluit (a man whom you know well enough) was wont to say: That men wist not how much more mirth hee made unto himselfe in his playing, than he did unto those that heard him found; and that they that came to heare his musick, ought rather to receive a reward of him, than bestow any money upon him. Do we not conceive and imagine in our selves, what great pleasures vertues do yield unto those who effect any commendable action tending to the good of their Country, and turning to the profit of the Common-wealth? they tickle not they itch not, neither do they after a stroking manner give contentment, as do these sweet motions, and gentle pricks of the flesh: for such bring with them a certaine impatientitch, an unconstant tickling mingled with a furious heat and inflammation; but those pleasures which come from notable and praise-worthy deeds, such as they

they be, whereof the ordinary workman and author is he, who governeth a Common-wealth aright; and as it apperaineth unto him for to do, lift and raise the soule to a greatnesse and haughtinesse of courage accompanied with joy, not with gilded plumes (as *Euripides* saith) but with celestiall wings (as *Plato* was wont to say) And that the truth hereof may the better appear, call to your remembrance your selfe, that which oftentimes you have heard concerning *Epaminondas*, who being asked upon a time what was the greatest pleasure that ever hee felt in all his life? answered thus: Mary even this (quoth he) that it was my fortune to win the field at the battell of *Leutres*, my father and mother both being yet living. And *Sylla*, the first time that he came to *Rome*, after he had cleared *Italy* from civil and domestical wars, could not sleep one wink, nor lay his eyes together a whole night, for exceeding great joy and contentment wherewith his spirit was ravished; as if it had been with a mighty and violent wind: and thus much he wrote of himselfe in his own Commentaries. I can therefore hold well with *Xenophorus* in that he saith: That there is no found or speech more delectable to a mans eare, than the hearing of his own praises; and even so it must be confessed: That there is no spectacle, no sight, no report and memoriall, no cogitation, nor thought in the world; that bringeth so great pleasure and delectation to the minde, as doth the contemplation and beholding of those good and laudable deeds, which a man hath performed whilst hee was employed in the administration of State, and in bearing offices, as being conspicuous, eminent, and publicke places to be seen afar off. True it is moreover, that the amiable grace and favour thereby gotten, accompanying alwaies vertuous acts, and bearing witness thereto: is the commendation also of the people who strive a vie and contend who can give out greatest praise; and speak most good (the very guide which leadeth the way of just and due benevolence) doth add a gloss and lustre (as it were) unto the joy proceeding from vertue, for to polish and beautifie the same: Neither ought a man by negligence to suffer for to fade and wither in old age, the glory of his good deeds, like unto a coronet or garland of green leaves, which was won at some games of prize: but evermore to bring forth some fresh and new demerits, to stirre up and awaken (as a man would say) the grace of the old deeds precedent, and thereby to make the same both greater, and also more permanent and durable. For like as the carpenters and shipwrights who had the charge to mainteine the ship called the *Gallion of Delos*, evermore made supply of new pieces of timber, as any of the old began to decay, keeping it in continuall reparation by putting in one rib and plank for another, and so preserved it alwaies entire and whole, as it was the very first day when it was built; even so a man is to doe by his reputation and credit. And no harder matter is it for to mainteine glory once up and on foot, than to keep a fire continually flaming which is once kindled, by putting cleafones fresh fwell under (bee it never so little) for to feed the same: but if they bee once out and thoroughly quenched indeed, then it is no small matter to set either the one or the other a burning againe. And like as *Lampoon* the rich merchant, and ship-master, being demanded how he got his goods: Mary (quoth he) my greatest wealth I gained soore and with ease, but my smaller estate with exceeding much paine and slowly; even so it is no easie matter at the beginning to acquire reputation, or to winne credit and authority in the manning of civil affairs, but to augment it after the foundation is laid, or to preserve and uphold the same, when it is once come to greatnesse, is nor so hard, for every little thing, and the smallest meanes will do it. And so wee see that a friend when he is once had, requireth not many great pleasures and offices of kindnesse and friendship for to be kept and continued a friend still, but petty tokens and small signes of courtlesse, passing continually from time to time between, are sufficient to preserve mutuall love and amity. Semblably the good will and affection of the people, their trust and confidence which they have conceived towards a man, although he be not able evermore to give largesses among them, although hee doe not alwaies defend and mainteine their causes, nor sit continually in place of magistracy and office, yet nevertheless it holdeth still, if hee do but shew himselfe only to carry a good heart unto them, and not to cease for to take paines and care for the common good, nor refuse any service in that behalf: for even the very expeditions and voyages in warre, have not alwaies battels arranged, nor fields fought and bloody skirmishes, ne yet besieging and beleaguering of Cities; but they afford between whiles, festivall sacrifices, parties and entertaines, some leisure also and time of rest, to follow games, disports and pastimes. How then commeth it, that an old man should be afraid to meddle in State-affaires, as if it were a charge unsupportable, full of infinite and innumerable travells, without any comfort and consolation at all? considering that there be allowed at times, variety of plaies and games, goodly fights and shewes, solem processions, and stately pomps, publicke doles and largesses, dances, musick and feasts: and ever anon the honourable service and worship of one god or other, which are able to unknite the frownes and unbend the browes, to dispatch and dissipate the cloudy cares and austerity of the Judges in Court-Hall, and of Senators also in Councell chamber, yielding unto them much more pleasure and contentment in proportion to their travells and paines belonging to their place. As for the greatest mischief which is most to be feared in such administrations of the Common-wealth to wit, envy, it (seleth and catcheth least hold upon old age of any other; for like as *Heracles* was wont to say: That dogs do bay and bark at those whom they know not; even so envy assaileth him who beginneth to govern, just at the door as it were, and the entry of the tribunal and throne of estate, seeking to impeach his access and passage thither; but after it is accustomed and acquainted once with the glory of a man, and when it

hath

hath been nourished and fed therewith, it is not so troublesome and churlish, but becometh more kinde and gentle: and this is the reason that some have likened envy unto a smock, which at the first when the fire beginneth to kindle, ariseth grosse and thick, but after that it burneth light and clear, vanisheth away and is gone. In all other preeminences and superiorities, men are wont ordinarily to debate and quarrell, namely about vertue, nobility of blood and honour, as being of opinion, that the more they yield unto others, the more they doe abridge from themselves; but the prerogative or precedence of time, which properly is called *Presbeion*, as if a man would say; the honour of age, or Time-right is void of all jealousy and emulation, and there is no man but will willingly yield it to his companion: neither is there any kind of honour whereunto so well fortheth this quality, namely, to grace him more who giveth the honour, than the party who is honoured, as to the prerogative which is given to old men. Moreover, all men doe not hope nor expect to have credit one time or other by their riches, by their eloquence or wisdom; whereas you shall not see so much as one of those that rule in Common-wealth, to despaire of comming one day to that authority and reverence which old age bringeth men unto. He therefore who after he hath wrestled long against envy, retireth in the end from the administration of the Common-wealth, at what time as it is well appeased, and at the point to be extinguished or laid along, should doe like unto that pilot, who in a tempest having winde and waves contrary, spreadeth saile, and roweth in great danger, but afterwards when the weather is faire, and a gentle gale of forewinde serveth, doth goe about to strike saile and ride at anchor in the pleasant Junne-shine; he should lay in his doing, abandon together with his publike affairs, the society, fellowship, alliance and intelligences, which he had with his good friends: for the more time that hee had, the more friends by good reason he ought to have gotten, for to stand with him and take his part, whom hee neither cannot all at once lead forth with him, like as a master of carols his whole quire of singing men; nor meet it is and reason, that hee should leave and forsake them all: but as it is not an easie peece of worke to stock up by the root old trees, no more is it a thing soon done to extirp all government in the Common-wealth, as having many great roots, and those entangled and enwrapped one within another, by reason of sundry and weighty affaires, the which no doubt must needs worke more trouble and vexation to those that retire and depart from it, than to those that tarry (still by it); and say there remained yet behind for old men some reliques of envy, emulation, and contention, which grew in the time of their government: it were faine better to extinguish and quench the same by power and authority, than to turn both side and back unto them, all naked and disarmed: for envious persons and evil willers never do assaile them so much with despite, who make head againe and stand their ground, as they do by contempt those who yield back and retire: and to this accordance whith which in times past that great *Epaminondas* said unto the Thebans. For when the Arcadians had made offer unto them, yea, and requested them to enter into their Cities, during the winter season, and there to lodge and abide under covert; he would not permit them to do so, nor to accept of their courtesie: For now (quoth he) all the while that they behold you exercising and wrestling in your armour, they have you in great admiration, as valiant and hardy men; but if they should see you once by the fire side punning and stamping beanes, they would take you to bee no better than themselves: even so I would make my application, and inferre hereupon: that it is a venerable and goodly sight to behold a grave and ancient personage speaking to the people, dispatching affaires of State, and generally to be honoured of every man; but he who all the day long sits not out of his warm bed, or if he be up, sitteth still in some corner of a gallery, prating and talking vainly, or else reaching, haucking, spitting, or wiping his nose that drops for cold: such an one I say is exposed to contempt. *Homer* verily himselfe hath taught us this lesson, if we will make and give good ear to that which he hath written. For old *Nestor* being at the war before *Troy*, was had in honour and reputation; whereas contrariwise *Peleus* and *Laertes* who tarried behind at home, were set little by and despised. For the habitude of wisdom doth not continue the same, nor is any thing like it selfe, in those who give themselves to ease, and doe not practice the same; but through idleness and negligence it diminisheth, and is dissolved by little and little, as having need always of some exercise of the cogitation and thought which may awaken the spirit, clear the discourse of reason, and lighten the operative part of the mind to the dealing in affairs.

*Like as tosh iron and brasse is bright and cleare,  
All while mans hand the same doth use and weare:  
Whereas the house wherein none dwells at all,  
Intraile of time must needs decay and fall.*

Neither is the infirmity and feebleness of the body so great an hinderance unto the government of State, in those who above the strength of their age, seem either to mount into the tribunall, or to the bench, or to the generals pavilion and place of audience within the camp, as otherwise their years bring good with them, to wit, considerate circumspection, and staied wisdom: as also not to be troubled or driven to a non plus in the managing of any business, or to commit an absurdity and error, partly for want of experience, in part upon vaine-glory, and so to draw the multitude therewith and do mischief to the Common-wealth all at once; like unto a sea tossed with winds; but to treat and negotiate gently, mildly, and with a settled judgement, with those who come unto them for advice, or have any affairs, or to do with them. And hereupon it is, that Cities after they have suffered some great shake or adverse calamitie, or when they have been affrighted, desire straightwaies to

be ruled by ancient men, and those well experienced; in which cases they have many times drawn perforce an old man out of his house in the Country, for to govern them, who thought or desired nothing lesse; they have compelled him to lay his hand upon the helme, for to set all straight and upright againe in security, rejecting in the meane while green-headed generals of armies, eloquent Orators also, who knew well enough how to speake aloud and to pronounce long clauses and periods with one breath, and never fetching their wind; yea, and beleve me brave warriors and worthy Captains indeed, who had been able and sufficient to have affronted their enemies, and fought valiantly in the field. Like as upon a time at *Athens*, the Orators there shewing before *Timachus* and *Iphicrates*, who were farre steep in yeares, one named *Chares* the sonne of *Theobares*, who was a lusty young man, in the flower of his age and mighty of body, stripped out of his apparel, desired that he who was to be Captaine General of the Athenians, wretch an one as he for yeares and for person: God forbid (quoth *Timachus*) but rather I could wish the generals were to be such an one, who is to carry after him his bed and the furniture thereto belonging, as for the Commander and leader of an Army, he ought to be a man that knoweth how to see into the State both before and behind, and who will not suffer his counsels and resolutions for the weal publike to be troubled and disordered by any passion whatsoever: for *Sophocles* when he was now become aged: I am well appaid (quoth he) that I am now cleaved from wanton love, and the delights of *Venus*; as being delivered from the subjection of a furious Lord and raging Master. But in the administration of the Common-wealth, a man is not to avoid and flye one sort of Masters; to wit, the love of boies and wenches, but many others which be more outrageous than it, and namely emulation and a contentious spirit, desire of vaine glory, and a longing to be always, and in every thing the first and the greatest: a vice that engendereth most of any other, envy, jealousies, conspiracies, and factions: of which old age doth let slack some, and dull their edge, others it cooleth and extinguisheth cleane, neither diminisheth and impaireth it the inclination and affection to well-doing so much, as it represseth and cutteth off the passions which are too violent and over-hot, to the end that it may apply unto the care and study about affairs, the discourse of reason, sober staied, and well settled: howbeit in very truth, and in the judgement of the readers, let this speech of the Poet

*Let still poor wretch and keep thy bed,  
Sicke nor from thence and bode badred,*

be alledged and spoken for to dissuade and distrust him, who would with his grised beard and gray head begin now to be young and play the youth, as also to tax and reprove an old grand-fire, who after long repose in his house, out of which he hath not stirred, no more than in the time of a long lasting disease, will needs start up now on a sudden, and all at once belittle his old bones to be a Captaine forthwith in all haste, to lead an army, or else to take upon him the charge of governing a City. But hee that would call away and reclaim one, who hath been trained and employed all the daies of his life in politicke affaires, and thoroughly beaten to the world, and the administration of the Common-wealth, not suffering him to runne forward in that course of life until he have attained the goal, nor until he have gained the prize of his victory, but will seem to turn him off his long journey for to take another way: he (I say) is altogether senselesse and unreasonable, and nothing resembling the man we speak of. Like as he who to divert an old man being let out like a youth, with a chaplet of fresh flowers upon his head, perfumed with sweet odours, and ready to be married, would alledge those verses which in a Tragedy were sometime said unto *Philoctetes*:

*What maiden young, what fresh and lusty bride  
Will marry thee, to live close by thy side?  
Alas, poor man for pitys at this age  
Thus for to venture upon marriage?*

were nothing absurd nor out of the way, and beside the purpose; for even old folk themselves, when they are disposed to be merry, have many such jells as these passe current among them:

*I marry old, how faire I am beset  
Well now I, for my neighbour I do wed.*

But hee that would perfwade a man already married, to leave his wife with whom he hath lived so long in wedlock and dwelt together in one house without quarrels and complaints, supposing that because he is now grown in yeares with her, he should forsake her, and live either a single life, apart by himselfe, or else keep a lemon or concubine instead of his lawfull wedded wife, in my conceit were a very absurd for in the highest degree; even so it standeth to good reason, for to deale with an old man who having one foot already in his grave, or with one *Clidon* who had been an husbandman all his life time: or with one *Lampont* the Merchant adventurer, who hath done nothing all his daies, but used shipping and traffick beyond seas: or with some of these Philosophers out of *Epicurus* his orchard who love a life to sit still and do nothing, to admonish and dissuade them from approaching unto the publike affairs of the people, and to counsell them to hold them still to their former accustomed course of life, farre from troubles and busie dealings in Common-wealth: marry, he that took such an one as *Phacion Caro* or *Pericles* by the hand, and said: My friend of *Athens* or *Rome*, whoever you are now that you be arrived to withered old age, make a divorce with the Common-wealth, quit from this day forward all publike administration, all cares and affairs, as well of council as of war; abandon both the tribunall seat in the City, and also the pretory or pavilion of State in the camp, retire your selfe into an house in the Country, and live the rest of your life there with

one maid-servant to attend upon you ; follow your husbandry, or else employ your selfe in your private household, to take accounts and reckonings of your receivers and factours ; surely he should perswade him to unjust things, and exact of a State-man and politician that which neither pleasure nor yet befitteth him. How then ? will some man say unto me, never heard we the old loudier how he speaketh thus in the Comedy ?

*My hoary hairs from warfare set me free,  
That from henceforth enroll'd I shall not be.*

Yes forsooth good Sir, it is very true; for requirite it is, and fit, that the Iquires and ferventous of *Mars* should be in the flower and full strength of their age, as those who make profession of ware, and the painfull services belonging thereto, whose gray haire, although the head-piece and morion do hide and cover, yet inwardly their limmes are heavy and decayed by yeers, and their strength is not to their good will, nor their hand answerable to their heart. But of the miniters of *Jupiter*, surnamed Counsellor, Oratour, and Patron of Cities, we require not the works of feet nor of hands, but of counsell, forecast and eloquence; and yet not such eloquence I meane, as should make a stir, or raise a noise; out-cry and shout among the people, but that which is full of ripe understanding, of considerate wisdom, and of good directions and plots well and surely laid. In which persons, the white head and gray beard (which lomelagh and make good gameat) the crow-foot about the eies, the furrowes in the forehead, the rivels and wrinkles in the face besides appearing, beare witness of long experience, and add unto them a reputation and authority, which help much to perswade and to draw the minds of the hearers unto their will and purpose. For to speak truly, youth is made (as it were) to follow and obey, but age to guide and command: and that City or State is preferred, wherein the sage counsels of the Elders, and the martiall prowesse of the younger, beare favour together. And for this cause highly and wonderfully are these verities following praised in *Homer*, and namely in the first place:

Then to begin, a goodly sort  
Of ancient capitaines bold,  
Assembled he in Nestors ship,  
A counsell there to hold.

Upon the same reason also that counsel of the wisest and principall men affiant unto the Kings of *Lacedaemon* for the better government of the State, the Oracle of *Apollio Pythius* first called *Πυθιοὶ* *ἄνδρες*, i. Elders; and *Λύκωιο* afterwards directly and plainly termed *ἄνδρες*, i. Old men; and even at this very day, the Councell of *Elate* in *Rome* is named a Senate, that is to say, an assembly of ancient persons. And like as the law and custome, time out of minde, hath allowed unto Kings and Princes the diadem, that is to say, a royall band or frontlet, the crown alio to stand upon their heads, as honourable marks and ensignes of their regall dignity and soveraign authority; even so hath nature given unto old men the white head and hoary beard as honourable tokens of their right to command, and of their preeminence above others. And for mine own part, I verily thinke that this Noun in Greek, *ἄγος*, which signifieth a prize or reward of honour, as alio the Verb *ἄγειν*, which is as much to say, as to honour, continue fill in use, as respective to the honour due unto old men (who in Greek are called *ἄγιστοι*) not for that they bath in hot waters, or sleep in softer beds; but because in Cities well and wisely governed, they are ranged with Kings for their prudence; the proper and perfect goodnesse wherof, as of some tree which yieldeth winter fruit which is not ripe before the latter end of the year, nature bringeth forth late and hardly in old age; and therefore there was not one of those martiall and brave courageous Captains of the Greeks, who should fault fault that great King of Kings, *Agamemnon*, forming such a prayer as this unto the gods:

*That of the Grecian host which stood  
of many worthy men,  
Such counsellors as Nestor was,  
they would vouchsafe him ten.*

but they all agreed with him, and by their silence confessed, That not only in policy and civill government, but also in warre, old age carieth a mighty great stroak: for according as the ancient proverb beareth witnesse:

*One head that knowes full wisely for to reed,  
Out-goes ten hands, and maketh better speed.*

One advice likewise, and fentence grounded upon reason, and delivered with perfwasive grace, feetheth the greateſt and braveſt exploits in a whole State. Well, ſayth that age hath many difficulties and Commodities attending upon it, yet is not the ſame therefore to be rejected: for the abſolute rule of King, being the greateſt and moſt perfect eſtate of all governments in the world, hath exceeding many cares, travels and troubles; inſomuch as it is written of King *Selenus*, that he would oftentimes ſay, if the people with how laborious and painfull it were to read and write only many letters as he did, they would not deir to take up his diadem, if they found it thrownt into the very way as they go. And *Philip* being at the point to pitch his camp in a fair ground, when he was advertiſed that the place would not afford forage for his labouring beaſts: *O Hercules* (quoth he) what a liſe is this ours, that we muſt live (forſooth) and care to ſerve the neceſſity of our Allies? Why, then be like it were high time to perfwade a King when he is aged, for to lay down his diadem,

to cast off his robes of purple, to clad himself in simple array: to take a crooked staffe in hand, and to goe a mile in the Country, for fear lett if he with his gray hairs reigned till, he should seeme to do many iupurious and impudent things, and to direct matters out of season? Now if it were unseemly and a meet indignity to deal with *Aegleus*, with *Numa* and *Darius*, all Kings and monarchs, after this sort; unmeet likewise it is, that we should remove and displace *Solos* out of the Councell of *Areopagus*, or depose *Cato* from his place in the Romane Senate, because of their old age. Why should we then go about to perfwade such a one as *Pericles* to give over and resigne his government in a popular State? for over and besides, there were no sence at all that if one have left gathered into the tribunall seat or chaire of elataine his young yeers, and afterwards discharged upon the people and Common-wealth those his violent passions of ambition and other furious fits, where his age is now come, which is wont to bring with it discretion and much wisdom gathered by experience, to abandon and put away (as it were) his lawfull wife, the government which he hath so long time abused. The iox in *Aesop's* fables, would not suffer the urchin to take off the tiques that were fetled upon her body: For if it (quoth thee) thou take away these that be already full, there will come other hungry ones in their place; and even so, if a State rejected evermore from administration of the Common-wealth those governours that begin one to be old, it must needs be quickly full of a sort of young Rulers; that be hungry and thisty both after glory, and altogether void of politick wit and reason to govern: for how can it otherwise be? and where should they get knowledge, if they have not been disciples to learn, nor speculators to follow and imitate some ancient Magistrate that manneth State-affairs? The Cards at sea which they steale the fite of sailing and ruling ships, cannot make good sea-men nor skillfull Pilots, if they have not been themselves many times at the steern in the poop, to see the manner of it, and the conflicts against the waves, the winds, the black fowms and dark tempests,

What time in great perplexity,  
The Mariner doth wish to see  
Castor and Pollux, twins full bright,  
Presaging safety with their light.

How then possibly can a young man govern and direct a City well, perfwade the people aright, and deliver wise counsell in the Senate, having but read one little book treating of policy, or haply written an exercise or declamation in the School *Luciani* touching that argument? un lesse besides he have stood clove unto the reinnes, or hard by the helme many a time, and by marking both City rulers, and martiall Captaines, how they have been put to their triall, and according to the sundry experiences and accidents of fortunes, enclinning now to the one side and then to the other, after many dangers and great affairs, have gotten sufficient knowledge and instruction before hand? I cannot see how it can be: but if there were no other thing at all besides; yet surely an ancient manis to maintaine still the affairs of State, and it were but to traine and teach the younger, that be to come up after him: for like as they who teach children musick, or to read do themselves *Sol, fit,* and sing the note, they finger and strike the key or string, they read and spell the letters before them, and all so shew how they should do; even so the ancient politician doth traine and direct a young man, not onely by reading unto him, by discouraging and advertising him without footstoe; but also in the very manning and administration of affaires, fashioning, forming and calting him (as it were) lively in a mould, as well by operation and example, as by words and prece; tis. For he thar is schooled and exercisid herein, not in the Schools of the Sophisters that can speake in number and measure, as in the wrestling hall wher the body is annoiued with a composition of oile and was together, against exercises performed without any danger at all: but (as it were) at the very publick games indeed; in the view of the whole world, such as the Olympicks and Pyrricks were: he (say) followeth the tracks and footsteps of his Matter and teacher, as faith *Symonides*:

*As sucking foale that keeps just pace,  
And runs with dam in every place.*

Thus did *Arifides* under *Callyphenes Cimon* under *Arifides*, *Phocion* under *Chabrias*, *Cato* under *Fabius Maximus*, *Pompeius* under *Sylla*, and *Polybius* under *Philopemen*. For all these personages when they were young, drew neerer and joined themselves with others that were ancient, and having taken root close by them, grew up together with them in their actions and administrations, whereby they got experience, and were inured to the managing of the State with honour and reputation. *Aschines* the Academicke Philosopher, when certain envious Sophisters of his time charged him and said: That he made a lamentable and shew, that he had beene the Disciple and hearer of *Crimaeides*, whereas he never was, I say unto you (quoth he) that I heard the man, when as his speech abounding the braine apple and tumultuous noise of the people by reason of his old age was thus up close and howled (as it were) for to doo good more familiarly in private conference. And even so it is with the government of an aged person, when as not only his words, but also his deeds be farre more from affected pomp and outward shewes, and all vaine glory. Much like as it is reported of the blacke *Sphinx*, called *Thius*, who by that time that (he is become old hath exhaled and breathed forth all that strong and finking savour which he had, and beginneth to yield a sweet and aromaticall smell: even so there is no counsell nor opinion in old men, vain, turbulent or inconsistent, but all grave, quiet, and settled. And therefore in any wise (as I said before) if it were but for young mens sake onely and no more, elder persons are to weld the affaires of State: to the end that they

Plato speaking of wine mingled with water, said that it was to make the furious god wife by chastifying him with another that was sober and temperate: the staied wisdom of old age tempered with youth, welling and boiling before the people, and transported with the greedy desire of honour, and with ambition, might cut off that which is furious, raging and over-violent.

But over and besides all that hath been said before, they who think, that to be employed in the manning of publick affaires, is all one as to faile for traffick, or to go forth to warre in some expedition, are much deceived: for both navigation and alfo warre, men undertake for a certaine end, and no looner have they attained thereto but they cease: but the manning of State-affaires is not a commission or office pretending or intending any profit and commodity for the scope that it shooth at: but it is the life and profession of a living creature, which is gentle, tame, civil, and sociable, born to live so long as it pleaseth nature, civilly, honestly, and for the publick good of humane society. This is the reason, that of a man it should be said, that he still is occupied in such affairs of Common-weal, and not that he hath been employed: like as to be true, and not to have been true: to be just, and not to have been just; to love his Countrey and Citizens, and not to have loved them, is his duty and profession. For even nature her selfe directeth us hereto, and singeth this lesson in our eares (I speak to those who are not altogether corrupted and marred with sloth and idleness)

*Thy father thee a man hath once begot:*

*To profit men alive in this or that.*

*Againe:*

*Let us not cease nor any end finde*

*To do all good unto mankind.*

As touching them who pretend and alledge for excuse, feebleness or impotency, they do acknowledge sicknesse and the maimed indisposition of the body rather than age. For you shall see many young men sick and feeble, and as many old folke lusty and strong: so we are not to remove aged persons simply from the administration of the Common-weale, but the impotent onely and unusefull; nor to call unto that vocation young men, but such as be able to undergo the charge: for *Ardus* was young enough, and *Antigonus* in yeeres; and yet this man as old as he was, went within a little of conquering all *Asia*; but the other had never but the bare name onely of a King, like as in a dumb shew upon a stage, making a countenance onely with a guard of partizans and halberds about him, without speaking one word; and so he was a ridiculous pageant and laughing stock among his Nobles and Peeres, who were awaies his Rulers, and led him as they list. And even as he who would perfwade *Prodicus* the Sophister, or *Phileas* the Poet (young men both, howbeit lean, feeble, sickly, and for the most part of the time bed-ridden) to go to meddle with government of State, were a very foole and senselesse asse: so he were no whit better, who should debarre such old men as *Phocion*, as *Masanissa* the African, or *Cato* the Romane, from exercising publick magistracy in the City, or taking the charge of a Lord General in the field: for *Phocion* one day when the Athenians all in the haffe, would needs have gone forth to warre at an unreasonable time, commanded by Proclamation that as many as were not above threecore yeeres of age, should arme and follow him. Now when they were offended and wroth hereat: Why? my masters (quoth he) what cause have you to complain? I will go with you my selfe and be your Captaine, who carry already above fourecore yeeres on my back. And of *Masanissa*, *Polybius* writeth in his story, that he died when he was fourecore and ten yeeres old, and left behind him at his death a sonne of his owne body begotten, but foure yeeres old: also that a little before his dying day, he overthrew the Chagimians in a ranged battell, and the morrow after was seen eating favourly at his very tent doors a piece of brown bread: and when some marvelled at him why he so did, hee answered thus out of the Poet *Sophocles*:

*For iron and brasse be bright and cleare  
All while mans hand the same doth weare,  
But the house wherein none dwells at all  
In time must needs decay and fall.*

And even as much may be said, of the lustre, glossie and replendent light of the minde, by which we discourse, we remember, conceive and understand. And therefore it is generally held and said, that Kings become much better in wars and military expeditions, than they be all the whiles they sit still quietly at home. In such sort, that it is reported of King *Attalus*, the brother of *Eumenes*, how being enervate by long peace and rest, *Philopamen* one of his favourites led him up and downe as he list by the nose, and indeed being fed as fat as a beast, he might do with him what he would: so as the Romans were wont to aske by way of mockery ever and anon, as any failed out of *Asia*, whether the King were in grace and favour with *Philopamen*, and might do any thing with him? There could not easily be found many Roman Captains more sufficient warriours in all kinde of service than was *Lucullus*, so long as he was in action, and maintained his wit and understanding entire; but after that he gave himselfe over once to an idle life, and fate mised up (as it were) like an house-bird at home, and medled no more in the affairs of the Common-weal, he became very dull, blockish and benumbed much like to sea-sponges after a long calm, when the salt water doth not dash and drench them: so that afterwards he committed his old age to be dieted, cured and ordered into one of his affranchised bond-slaves, named *Callisthenes*, by whom it was thought he was

medicid-

medicined with amatorious drinks, and bewitched with other charmes and forceries, untill such time as his brother *Marchus* displaced this servitor from about him, and would needs have the government and disposition of his person the rest of his life, which was very long. But *Darius* the father of *Xerxes* was wont to say, That in perillous times and dangerous troubles, he became the better and much wiser than himselfe. \* *Elcas* a King of *Scythia* said, that he thought himselfe no better than his horse-keeper, when he was idle. *Dionysius* the elder being demanded upon a time, whether he were at leisure and had nought to do? God defend (quoth he) that ever it should be so with me: for a bow (as they say) if it be over-bent will breake, but the mind if it be over-lack, for the very Musicians themselves, if they discontinue overlong the hearing of their accords; the Geometricians likewise, to prove and resolve their conclusions; the Arithmeticians also to exercise continually their accounts and reckonings, together with the very actions do impair by long time and age the habitudes that they had gotten before in their severall arts, albeit they be not so much practise as speculative sciences: but the politike habitude, which is Prudence, Discretion, Sagacity, and Justice, and besides all these, Experience which can skill in all occurrences how to make choice of opportunities and the very point of occasions, as also a sufficiency to be able with good words to perwade that which is meet; this habitude (I say) and knowledge cannot be preserved and maintained, but by speaking often in publick place, by doing affaires, by discoursing and by judgement: and a hard case (it were) if by discontinuing and leaving off thesedoing exercises, it should neglect and suffer to void out of the mind so many faire and laudable vertues: for very like like it is, than in lo doing all humanity, sociable courtesie, and gratitude in time, for want of use and practice would decay and fade away, which indeed should never cease nor have an end. Now if you had *Tibonius* for your father, who indeed was immortal, howbeit by reason of extreme age standing in need continually of great help and attendance, would you avoid all good means? Would you deny or be weary of doing him dutifull service, namely, to wait upon him, to speake unto him, to find talke with him, and to succour him every way, under a colour and pretence that you had mired into him long enough? I trow you would not. Our Countrey then, resembling our father, or our mother rather according to the terme *Materis*, which the Candiots gave it, which is more aged, and hath many more merits over us and straighter obligations of us, than hath either father or mother, how durable and long lived forever it be, yet notwithstanding subject it is to age, and is not sufficient of it selfe, but hath alwaies need of some careful eye and good regard over it, and requieth much succour and vigilance: she (I say) plucketh unto her a man of honour and policy, she takes her hold and will not let him go.

*She catcheth him by skirt of robe behind,*

*And holds him fast, lest that he from her wind.*

You know well that there be many Pythiades, that is to say, five yeares termes gone over my head, since I began first to Minister as Priest unto *Apollo Pythius*: but yet (I suppose) you would not say thus unto me: *Plutarch*, you have sacrificed enough now: you have gone in procession often enough, already, or you have lead a sufficient number of dances in the honour and worship of your god; how you are grown in yeares and become aged: it were time now, that you laid off the coronet which you wear on your head in token of your Priesthood, and give over the Oracle by reason of your old age. Neither would I have you think that it is lawful for you, notwithstanding you be farthest in yeares, to relinquish and resigne up your holy service of *Jupiter* the tutor and patron of Cities, the president of civil assemblies and counsels; you (I say) who are the sovereign high Priest and the great Prophet of the ceremonies of Religion politike, wherein you thus long time have been entred and professed.

But laying aside, if you think good, these arguments that may distract and pull an old man from the administration of the State: let us discourse philosophically, and consider a little upon the point: namely, that we do not impose upon old age any enterprize and travel, which is either too grievous or unbecoming, considering that in the universall government of the common-weal, there be many parts befitting well enough and agreeable to that age, wherunto both you and I at this present be arrived. For like as if of duty we were commanded to continue singing all our life long, we are not bound after that we be grown to great age for to reach unto the highest, lowest, and most shrill notes considering that there be in musick many divers tunes and different intentions of the voice, which the Musicians call harmonies; but reason would that we make choice of that which is easiest for our yeares, and most suitable to our nature and disposition; even so since that to speake and manage affaires is to men more naturall during their whole life, than singing to (wannes even unto their hour of death, we must not abandon that affection of saying and doing, as if we should fling away an harpe too high let, but we ought to let the same down by little and little, talking in hand those charges and offices which be left painful, more moderate, and better according to the strength and manners of old folke: for even our very bodies, we that are aged, do not suffer to rest still without all exercise, and allow them no motion at all, because we can no more handle the spade to dig the ground, nor weld the plummetts of lead in the exercise of dancing, nor pitch the bar, fling the hammer, cast the coit, or throw a stone far from us, or fight and skirmish in our armour, or handle sword and buckler as we could have done in those daies; yet we can abide to swing and hang at a rope for to stretch our limbes, we can away with shaking of our bodies moderately in a pendant ship, coach, or easie horse-litter: we like well enough of

E e

wal king

walking gently, and devising one with another upon the way, and maintaining pleasant discourses, wakening and reviving our vitall spirits, and blowing as it were the coldest to kindle our natural heat: and therefore let us not suffer our selves to grow over cold, nor stiffe and starke as if we were frozen and congealed through our sloath and idleness; neither on the other side over-charge ourselves with all offices, nor be ready to lay our hand to all ministeries and functions, nor enforce our old age convinced of impotency to come at length to theie or such like words,

*Altho good right hand, how gladly wouldst thou take  
The lance to couch, and pike in skirmish shake:  
But now alas, this forward will to fight,  
Thy feeble nesse doth check, and worke thee flight.*

For neither is the man himselfe, who is able enough and in the flower of his yeares, commended if he should undergo and lay upon his shoulders all the affaires of the Common-wealth, and not suffer any man else with him to take some part (like as the Stoicks affirme that *Jupiter* is content to do but engaging himselfe in all things, and meddling in every matter, either upon an insatiable desire of glory, or for envy that he beareth to those, who in some measure would have their part of honour and authority in the Common-wealth. But unto an ancient person I assure you, (although you should call him of infamy in this behaile) yet it were a painful ambition, and a most laborious desire of rule to be present personally at all elections of Magistrats; yea, and a miserable curiosity to wait and attend every houre of judgement in Court, and all meetings and assemblies in councill; also an intolerable humour of vaine-glory to stand at receit and catch every occasion of embassage, or know every verdict of our Grand-jury, or undertake the patronage of all publique causes whatsoever; and call that all this might be performed with the favour and love of every man, yet grievous it is, and above the ordinary strength of that age. But what will you say if they meet with the cleane contrary? For to young men they be odious, because they let nothing passe their own hands, but intercept from them all occasion and meanes of action, not giving them leave to arise and put themselves forth; as for their equals, this covetous desire of theirs to hold the highest place in all things, and to have the sole authority every where is no lesse hated of them, and accounted infamous, than either avarice or loose life, and voluptuousnesse in other old folke. And therefore like as (by report) King *Alexander the Great*, not willing to overcharge his horse *Bucephalus* when he grew in age, used to mount other couriers before the fight began, for to ride up and down to review his Army, and all the quarters and Regiments thereof, but after he had ranged it in array, and set his Squadrons and Companies in ordinance of battell, and given the signal, he would alight and get upon his horse againe as he was wont, and presently march directly affront his enemies, give the Charge, and hazard the fortune of the field; even to a politique man of State, if he be wise and of sound judgement, will favour his strength a little, when he feeleth himselfe aged, as he holdeth the reins in his own hand, he will forbear to deale in those charges which are not altogether so necessary, and suffer younger men to mannage matters of lesse importance; but in weighty affaires of great consequence, he will lay to both his own hands in good earnest, contrary unto the practise of the Champions in publique games and combats of prize, who carefully looke unto their bodies without troubling at all any necessary workes, and all to employ and use them in needlesse, unprofitable, and superfluous feats: but we contrariwise letting passe by the petty and sleight charges are to refuse our selves whole and entire unto those that be serious and of moment indeed; for a young man as *Homer* saith, all things becomme indifferently and alike, all the world smilith on him, every body loveth him; if he enterprise small matters, and many in number, they say he is a good Common-wealths man, he is popular; if he undertake great workes and honourable actions, he hath the name of generous, noble, and magnanimous; yea, and divers occasions there be, wherein rashnesse it selfe and a contentious humour of emulation have a kind of grace. And become gayly well such as be fresh and gallant youths; but for a man of yeares, who during the administration of the Common-wealth, undertaketh these and such like ministeries and commissions; namely, the letting to farme the customes and revenues of the City, the charge of maintaining a haven, or keeping of the Market-place and Common Hall in order and reparation; or over and besides, the embassies and voyages in foraine parts to Princes and Potentates, or the riding in post thither, to treat about no matter of necessity nor weighty affaires of any importance, but only to salute them or make court unto them, or performe some offices of courtesie and civility: In my conceit, and be it spoken unto you my good friend, he isto be pitied for it, and his case is rather lamentable than commendable. To others haply it may seeme an odious trouble and a burdensome matter for him so to be employed; for surely this is not an age wherein a man should be encumbered with any offices, but such as wherein there is dignity, grandeur, and reputation, such as that, which your selfe at this time do execute in *Athenes*, to wit, the presidence of the councill or senate called *Areopagus*, and verily of that kind also is that dignity of being one of that honourable councill and assembly of the States, called *Amphictiones* which your countrey hath conferred upon you by patent to hold all your life time, the labour belonging whereto is pleasant, the paines easie, and the travel tollerable. Howbeit I would not have an ancient person to range and hunt after these offices, nor to accept them as demanding the same, but to receive them by way of refusal, so as he may seeme to take them *volens nolens*, not as meanes for to be himselfe in honour, but as one that meant by his acceptance to grace and honour them. For it is no shame

as *Thiberius Caesar* was wont to say, for men above threecore yeares of age to reach forth their hand to a Physician for to have their pulse felt; but rather to stretch out their hands to the people, in praying them to give their voices or suffrages with them at the election of Magistrats; for this is a very vile and base thing; as contrariwise there is in this a certaine venerable Majesty, and a dignity right honourable; that when the countrey hath elected one to be a Magistrate, when they call upon him and give attendance at his doore, he should then come down unto them out of his house, with a kind of reciprocal honour of his part, a cheerful countenance and courteous behaviour to the people againe, to salute embrace, welcome, and accept this their present, worthy indeed and becoming honourable old age. Semblably also in some sort, an ancient man ought to use his speech in the congregation and assembly of the people, not running ever and anon and leaping up into the pulpit or place of audience to make an oration unto the people, nor ready alwaies like as a cock croweth againe when he heareth others, to counterchaunt (as it were) to all those that make any speech, nor in saluting upon them, and striving to take hold and vantage of their words, to unbridle the reverence that young men beare toward him, nor to breed in them by that meanes matter to execute and accustom themselves in disobedience and unwillingnesse to hear him: but he must otherwise seeme to passe by, and make semblance as though he saw and heard nothing, and give them leave a little to brave it, to sing out, and call up the head like a wanton young horse, neither to be present among, nor to search curiously into every thing that is done or said, especially when the danger is not great, nor a matter touching the safety of the Common-wealth, nor any honour and reputation; for there in such cases he ought not to stay until he be called, but to put forth himselfe and to run even above the ordinary strength of his age, or else if he be not able, to yeeld his body to be led by hand and suiteined up by folks armes, yea, and to be carried in a chaire; as the history doth report of *Appius Claudius*, who having heard that the Senate of *Rome* after a great foughten field which King *Pyrrhus* had won of the Romans, inclined to accept of articles and capitulations tending to a composition and to peace, could not endure that indignity, nor containe himselfe, (blind though he were of both his eyes) but would needs be carried through the common place, even to the Senate house; and being entred in upon his feet he stood in the midst of them all and said, My Masters, hitherto I have been grieved for the losse of mine eye-sight, in that I could not see; but now I wish that I had lost the use also of mine eares, and that I might not heare the shameful counsels and counsels that you take, besides the lewd expolice that you performe: then partly by reproving them sharply, and in part by his effectual reasons and remonstrations exciting them he wrought so, that perswaded they were presently to resume armes for to fight with *Pyrrhus*, for the signiory and Empire of *Italy*. And *Solan* at what time as the flatterers of *Pisistratus* where with he abused the people of *Athenes*, were openly detected and discovered, and that it appeared once that he aimed at nothing else but to usurpe tyranny over them, and when no man durst make head against him and empeach or crosse his designs, himselfe alone bringing forth armour out of his house, and laying the same in the street before his very doores, cried with a loud voice unto the Citizens for to aide him; which when *Pisistratus* heard, he sent unto him for to demand and know upon what assurance that he had, he durst be so bold as thus to do? Mary (quoth he) I presume upon mine old age. Such occurrences as these so necessary, do re-kinde and set on fire againe old men, who were in manner extinct and cleane dead before, provided, that there remained in them any sparke or breath at all: but in other smaller occasions, an ancient personage shall do well and wisely to excuse himselfe otherwhiles, and reluse base or vile ministeries, wherein greater toile and paines groweth unto them that be employed therein, than profit and commodity doth accrue unto the parties for whose sake they be undertaken. It falleth out also sometimes, that if he stay until he be called and fought unto until he be desired, and that they tend to seek for him at his house, he shall win more credit and authority among his Citizens by coming among them in the end at their request: and say that he be present in place, he shall be silent himselfe for the most part and suffer younger men to speake, as being the judge of civil contention and emulation among them, provided alwaies that the same exceed not a certaine meane: for then he shall reprove them mildly, after a kind and loving sort, out off all opinionative debates, all head-strong opinions, all opprobrious termes and heat of choler. Now in the advices and opinions delivered of any matter in question his part is to comfort & encourage him that commeth short of the point, not reproving and blaming him at all, but rather teaching him how to do better against another time, yea and to praise him boldly who hath done well, and suffer his own selfe willingly to take the worke and be overcome giving the place to some many times, & not to disdain to be over-matched and perswaded by reason to the end that they may take the better heart and be more bold, and ready to help out and supply others in their defects, and that with good words and faire language, likeas that old *Nestor* did in *Homer*:

*Of all the Grekes there is no man,  
Who blame these words or gaine say can:  
But yet forsooth you say not all,  
Nor come are to the finalle.  
For why? you seeme but young by your visage,  
And well my son you may be for your age.*

Moreover, this were more civilly done, not to reprove and checke them openly nor in public place, although it be without any great biting and nipping, which is enough to abate and cast down the courage of young men; but rather apart and privately, especially such as be well framed and disposed by nature to government of State another day: instructing and leading them gently into the right way, setting before their eyes some excellent sayings, examples, and inventions tending to policy, and inciting them alwaies to good and honest enterprises, heartening and emboldning them by that means, that they may shew a lively and lightome spirit, and even at the beginning, making the people cast a liking and love unto them, and be more gentle and tractable afterwards: like as it is the manner of those, who when they teach young men to sit and ride on horse, bring them first one that is gentle and easie to be mounted upon; now if peradventure one of them at his first entrance do faile and catch a fall, he must not let him lie alone, and do breake the heart of a youth for ever, but lift him up and set him on his feet againe, yea, and give him comfortable and gracious words. Thus did *Aristides* in times past by *Cimon*, and *Alcibiades* by *Themistocles*, whom the people at the first could not abide and brooke, as having but a bad name in the City for their audaciousness and loose life; and yet these good men stood their friends, brought them into credit, and mightily encouraged them. It is reported also even of *Demosthenes* himselfe, that the first time he came to the barre, he suffered a disgrace, and was rejected by the people, which he tooke to heart, and was wondrously dismayed, untill such time as an ancient and fatherly Citizen, one who had sometime heard *Pericles* making orations to the people, tooke him by the hand, and that he did himselfe great wrong upon such an occasion to be faint-hearted and cast downe. Semblably, *Euripides* alter the same manner emboldned *Timotheus* the Musician, who at his first coming upon the stage was hissed out by the people, as one that by his novelties which he brought up, seemed to violate and breake the laws of Musick; but he willed him to be of good cheare for all that, saying, It would not be long after but he should be able to draw and lead the whole Theater after him as he would, and have the people at his devotion. To be brieft, like as the terme of time limited and appointed for the vestall Virgins or Nuns votaries at *Rome*, was divided into three parts: The first, to learne that which pertained to the Religion; the second, to practise; and the third, to teach the younger. And likewise, as in the City of *Ephesus* every one of the old maidens vowed to the service of *Diana*, was at the beginning called *Meliere*, which is as much to say, as a Novice to be a Priestesse hereafter; then *Hiere*, that is to say, a full Priestesse indeed; and last of all, *Pariete*, which significeth one that had power to initiate and professe others in the same orders: even so, he that is a perfect Politician and States-man at the first is but a learner and a questionist (as it were) to do his acts, and so to commence in that profession; but in the end, heretaceth others, he is a regent over novices, and sheweth them the secrets of policy. For to be a president and overler of others that try matters or combats, is not to be a fencer or champion himselfe; but he that instructeth and traineth a young man to publicke affaires and matters of State, framing and fitting him for his country another day, in shewing him how

To frame his words with comely grace,  
And deeds performe meet for his place.

is a good and profitable member of the Common-wealth, not in a small and base kind of service, but in a ministry of great consequence; and to which especially and principally, *Lycorgus* having given himselfe and aimed at, accustomed young men even from their infancy to obey and do reverence to every elder, no lesse than to a ruler and law-giver. For in what regard else, and to what other purpose said *Lysander*? That there was no place in the world, where it was so honourable to be old, as in *Lacedaemon*. Was it because it was permitted and lawfull there for elder persons more than for any other to till the ground, to put out money to usury, to play at dice, being let together, and to keepe good fellowship, drinke merrily as they are close at their game, and playing hard at hazard? I suppose neither you nor any man else will so say. But it was because all such, being after a sort in place of rulers, of fatherly governors and tutors over youth, have not a vigilant eye over the publicke affaires only, but a particular regard also alwaies to every action of young men, enquiring and learning not slightly, and as it were passing by their whole demeanour, namely, how they exercise their bodies in publicke place; how they play and disport themselves; what their diet is, and how they converse and live together, shewing themselves dread and terrible to those that do ill, but venerable and defensible to the good: for in truth young folk alwaies observe and looke after them, and to such they make court: for that ancient persons do labour for to make them better, and augment the generosity of their mind, without all envy. For this passion, as it becometh not time of mans age, howsoever in young men it is entituled with a number of faire and honest names, to wit, emulation, zeale, and desire of honour: so in old men it is altogether unseasonable, absurd, rude, savage, unmanly, and base. And therefore a man of yeares, who is a politician, must be very far off from this humour of envy, and not like unto old runt-trees or doddles, which repining as it were at others, do manifestly hinder and take away the spring and growth of young poles and plants which come up under them, or grow neare about them: but contrariwise, he ought to admit and receive them kindly, yea, and to offer himselfe lovingly unto those that make toward him, and be glad to fort and converse with him; such he ought to enforce, to direct, to daide and lead by

the hand, yea, and to cherish and nourish them, not only with good instructions, sage counsels and wise admonitions, but also in yeelding unto them the place and means to exercise some functions of government, whereby they may grow unto some them honour & glory, in preferring them to those charges and commissions which be not hurtfull to the State, but pleasing and acceptable to the common people. As for others, which at the first entry be untoward and shew some resistance, be difficult, dangerous and hard to be achieved (like unto some medicines and potions which presently dog downe and wring the belly, or make the stomack sick) and whereof the honour and profit cometh long after; it is not good to put such into young mens hands, nor to help them to such hard bargaines, ne yet to expole them raw as they be and unacquainted, to the mutinous exclamations and obloquies of the rude multitude, which is hard to be pleased; but rather he himselfe is to undergoe the displeasure and ill-will of the people for the weale-publike: for this will cause the younger sort to be more affectionate unto him, and better willing a great deale to enterprise all other services. But over and besides all that hath been delivered already, this would be well remembered, that to administer and governe the Common-wealth, lieth not only in bearing an office, or going in Ambassage, or in crying with a loud voice to an assembly, or in the Pulpit or Tribunal for publicke Orations, so far as if he were mad and out of his wits, in vehement preaching to the multitude, or in penning a number of Decrees, Acts, and Edicts, wherein the common sort suppose that all policy and government doth consist, like as they imagine also; that to be a Philosopher, is nothing else, but to discorde and dispute in the schooles at certaine times of philosophical points about in a chaire, and read lectures at their houres out of their books; and in the meane while be ignorant of that civill administration and philosophy which is continually seen in works and daily actions. For this were all one, according to *Democritus*, as if one should say, that they only walked, who fetched many turnes up and down in galleries, and not they, who went into the country on horse, or visited their friends. But we must thinke, that to governe a Common-wealth, is very like unto the profession of Philosophy: for *Socrates* was not to be thought a Philosopher only, when he caused stooles and formes for to be made ready to sit upon, against a conference, or when he fate him down himselfe in a chaire, or when he observed precisely the houres of lecture, or of disputation, or of walking in the schooles, which were appointed for his disciples and familiar followers; but also otherwhiles, when he was at his game and play, as it fell out, when he dranke and eat, when he was in warfare or in the campe with some, bargaining, buying and selling with others; and finally, when he was in prison, and even then, when as he dranke that cup of hemlock for his poison; having taught and proved plainly before, that mans life at all times, in all parts, in every occasion and accident, and generally in all affaires admitteth the use of Philosophy. And even so, we are to make account of civill government; namely, to thinke that fooles or lewd persons do not administer the Common-wealth, either when they be Generals of Armies, or E. L. Chancellors; or when they seem to lead the people after them with their eloquent tongue; but rather raile tumult and sedition among them, or flatter and insinuate into their favour, or declame for ostentation, or else execute some charge and office, and do that which they do compelled by force. Whereas contrariwise, a good and true politician indeed, who affecteth his Citizens, loveth his Country, hath a care and heedfull regard of the weale-publike, although he never be clad in his rich coat of armes, nor have the royall mantle of estate upon him, yet he is daily and hourly employed in the administration of publicke affaires, inciting and exhorting to vertue, those that are sufficient; instructing such as be unskillfull and wanting, assisting as many as come to him for counsell, reclaiming them who are ill-given and about to practice muchiefe, confirming and encouraging those who be well minded, and shewing evidently in effect, and not for forme and fashion, that he is amused and wholly bent upon the good of the State: not because there is to grow, thereby any intert to him or his, or in regard that he is called by name to goe first into the Theater; or to be the principall and first man in the Assembly of counsell or otherwise by way of recreation, as if he came thither to see plaies and games, or to heare some pleasant musick when he is there; but contrariwise, when he cannot be present personally, yet to be there in spirit and advice; and after he hath intelligence of the proceedings there, to approve of the things well done, and to shew himselfe displeased in other things. For neither *Aristides* the Athenian, nor *Cato* the Roman, were in place many times of chiefe government, yet they cared not for all that, during their whole life, to be in action for the good and service of their Countries. And *Epaminondas* achieved (I must needs say) many noble acts and valiant exploits; whilst he was Captaine General for *Thebes*. Howbeit, one act there is reported of his, which he was neither General, nor in any office at all, which he exploited in *Thebes*, not inferior to any one of his other worthy deeds: for at what time as the Captaines of *Thebes* had engaged a battallion of their regiment so far into a difficult place, and a ground of much disadvantage, whereby the enemies charged sore upon them so violently, that they were in great affright, and ready to be defeated, he being in the fore-front among the footmen heavily armed, was called back and at his first coming appeased all the trouble and affright of the army, and put them in assured hope with his very presence: afterwards he set in order and arranged in battell-ray, that squadron which had broken their ranks and were in confusion, delivered them easily out of this streight and difficult passage; and made head againe upon the enemies, who hereupon were so daunted, that they changed their minds and retired. Also when *Agis* the King of the *Lacedaemonians* led his Army in ordinance of battell ready to fight with his enemies in *Aradiaz*, there was one ancient Spartan cried aloud unto him,



him, and said, My Lord, you thinke to remedy one mischief by another: (giving him thereby to understand, that his meaning was, by this present and unseasonable forwardnes of his, in giving battle unto the enemy, for to save and cure (as it were) his former speedy retreat and departure from the siege before the City *Argos*, according as *Thucydides* reporteth in his story) which when *Agis* heard, he gave credit unto the man, retired presently, but afterwards he had the victory. This *Agis* caused his chaire of estate to be set every day before his palace gate, and many times the *Ephori* would rise from their Confitory, and repair unto him thither, for to aske his advice, and consult with him about the affaires of greatest importance; for he seemed to be a man of great reach, and is renowned in the histories for a most wise and sage Prince. And therefore upon a time, after that the strength of his body was utterly decayed, in such sort as for the most part of the day he kept his bed and stirred not forth: when the *Ephori* sent unto him and requested that he would give them meeting in the Common Hall of the City, he arose out of his bed, and strained himself to walk thither; but when he was gone a pretty way with much paine and difficulty, he chanced to meet with certain little boies in the street, and demanded of them, whether they knew any thing more powerful then the necessity to obey their master? and when they answered No, he made this account, that his impotency ought to be the end and limit of his obedience, and so returned back immediately to his own house. For surely, ones good will ought not to shrink before his power; but when might faileth, the good will would not be forced further. Certes, it is reported that *Scipio* both in war abroad, and also in civill affaires at home, used the counsell of *Caius Laelius*, inasmuch as some there were, who gave out & said, that of all those noble exploits *Scipio* was the actor, but *Laelius* the author. And *Cicero* himselfe confesseth, that in the bravest and most honourable counsels which he exploited during his consulship, by the means whereof he saved his country, he consulted with *Publius Nigidius* the Philosopher. So that we may conclude, that in many kinds of government and publick functions, there is nothing that impeacheth and hindereth old men, but that they may well enough shew their service to the Common-wealth, if not in the best simply, yet in good words, sage counsell, liberty, and authority of franke speech, and careful regard, according as the Poets say: for they be not our feet, nor our hands, nor yet our whole body and the strength thereof, which are the members and goods only of the Common-wealth: but first and principally, the soule and the beauties thereof, to wit, justice, temperance, and prudence: which if they come slowly and late to their perfection, it were absurd and to no purpose, that men should enjoy house, land, and all other goods and heritages, and should not themselves procure some profit and commodity to their common Country, by reason of their long time which beareth them not so much of strength able to execute outward ministeries, as it addeth sufficiency of those faculties which are requisite for rule and command. Lo, what the reason was, that they portrayed those *Hermes*, that is to say, the likenesses of *Mercury*, in years without either hands or feet; howbeit, having their naturall palls plumped and stiffe; giving us thereby covertly to understand, that we have least need of old men's bodies and corporall travell, so that their words be active, and their speeches full of seed and fruitful, as it is meet and convenient.

### The Apophthegmes or notable Sayings of Kings, Princes, and Great Captaines.

#### The Summary.

THE speech be the true and lively picture of the mind, as it is indeed, a man may judge by these Apophthegmes, or notable Sayings, and collected here together, how excellent in feats of armes, in politic government, or otherwise, particularly these personages were, who are here represented unto us: like as some speciall artists enlivened among their sayings do also shew. Two sorts of people there be who abuse the fruit that good men might draw out of the observation and reading of these discourses. The one be certaine glorious persons, who upon a vain desire of reputation shew, and as be seem, and for no other intent, following *Elopes* example, trim themselves with the garb and feather of others: these have gotten together a heap and storehouse, as it were, of wise sayings of the ancients in old times, whereby they might be conspicuous, and seem to be of some valour and reputation among those who have not wit enough to see into them, and know what they are. The other are hypocrites, who having a loathsome stinke and bitter gall in the heart, pretend sweetness and honey at the end of their tongue, and all in seduce their neighbours, or rather to deceive their own selves, so that they have never any regard of their own duty.

But here in this discourse there is no he seen nothing effected, nothing borrowed from others, nor far fetched, where it is represented unto us a certaine open, simple, and admirable nature in this diversity of grave, pleasant, and learned speeches, wherein sweetness is mingled with profit, for to fit all persons, and to be applyed unto their manners and behaviour, of what calling and degree soever they be in the world. Item, benevolence is represented, the proceeding from great wit, deep reach, and high conceits of valour, of equity, modesty, good dispositions, and singular carriage in the whole course and management of mans life: the which

are proposed and manifested unto us to this end, that the wisdom and bounty of the Almighty might so much the better appear, in that he hath vouchsafed such ornaments to publick States, for to maintaine and uphold mans life amidst those confusions which were brought into the world by occasion of sin. Moreover, this first collection may well be divided into five principall parts, whereof, The first containeth the notable sayings and deeds of the Kings of Persia, and other strange nations. The second of the governors and protectors of Sicily. The third of the Macedonian Kings, and namely, of Alexander the Great and his successors. The fourth of the great Lords and Captaines of Greece, to wit, Athenians, Lacedemonians, and Thebans. The fifth and last of the ancient Cyprians and Consuls, together with the two first Emperours of Rome.

As touching the profit that all sorts of persons may gather hereout, it is insimilable, by reason of the goodly instructions that these acts and words do contain, and for their brevity so easie to be remembered, do afford the substance whereof it is to reclaim us from vice, and to bring us into the way of vertue: the which might so much the more to love and esteeme, in this great light which is presented unto us in these last daies, when as we do see that those persons who were overwhelmed in such ignorance of the soveraign good indeed, have neverthelesse, done so well, and spoken to the purpose amidst that darkness, and at random, I do not deny but there be some traits favouring of ambition and other passions, as extravagant as it, sowed here and there amongst these gatherings: but in case matter it will be to discern them, yet, and to make use of them also, as well as of the rest, referring all to their right usage: namely, to be furnished with such speeches without vaine estimation, for the good of our neighbours, and to follow that which is therein commendable in divers sorts, and all to frame and fashion us more and more to every good duty. I have therein in the margin some part of the artificiall framing of such sentences, not generally throughout; for words there be that many times have divers senses; but endeavoured I have to set the Reader in a certaine course and traine, that he may be able to find the matter to the very bottom, and in this collection to apply that fitly to his own use and purpose which he findeth meet for his own instruction.

### The Apophthegmes or notable Sayings of Kings, Princes, and great Captaines.

**A**LEXANDER King of Persia (O most mighty Emperour *Cesar Trajanus*) seemed it an act of no lesse magnanimity and royall bounty to take in good worth, and to receive with gracious countenance, small presents, than to give great rewards: and therefore upon a time as he passed by the way in progresse, when a poore and simple man who got his living by the sweat of his brows, and his hand-labour, having nothing else to give, offered him water which he had laden out of the running river with both his hands, he curteously accepted it with a lightome and smiling countenance, measuring the grace of the gift, not according to the value and worth of the thing, but the good will of the giver. And to the like purpose *Lycurgus* ordained in the City of *Sparta*, sacrifices of the least cost that might be: To the end (quoth he) that the Citizens might have means at all times, and in every place, to honour the gods readily and at ease, with such things as they had at hand. And therefore since that (most gracious Prince) with the like mind and intention I render unto your Highnesse these small presents and tokens, even the most common first fruits (as I may to say) gathered from Philosophy, I beseech you to receive together with my good affection the profit and use of these worthy and memorable sayings which I have collected for your sake: for that they may serve you in good stead, to know the nature, disposition and manners of great personages who lived in times past, considering that oftentimes they appear better and are discovered more clearly by their words than by their deeds. True it is that in another worke I have compiled the lives of the most noble and famous personages, as well for feats of armes, as for counsell, to wit, Captaines, Law-givers, Kings, and Emperours, that ever were among the Romans and the Greeks: but in the greater parts of their acts, Fortune is intermingled among, and hath her place: whereas in the speeches and sentences which they have delivered, and the answers by them made at the very time of their acts, their passions, their accidents and occurrences of Fortune, a man may perceive most purely (as it were) in so many mirours, what their thoughts were, and how the hearts of every one stood affected. And verily one *Sirammes* a Gentleman of Persia, when some marvelled at him that his enterprises fared no better, and had no more fortunate success, considering that his speeches were so wise, answered unto them in this manner: Because (quoth he) I am my selfe master of my words, but of my actions, Fortune, and the King together. Now in that other Volume of *Lives* aforesaid, the excellent sayings of those renowned persons be joynted with the narration of their deeds written at large, so that they require a man of great leisure, and one that will take pleasure in reading and hearing the same: but as for this booke, wherein their words are gathered and comprehended together by themselves, as the very scantillions (as I may to say) and seeds extracted apart from their lives, and yet testifying of the same: the reading thereof, in my conceit, will not hinder the rest of your affaires, nor take up any time due thereto, considering that in few words you shall there see the nature of many memorable persons lively described and depainted.

The Persians love them most who are hawked-nosed, and esteeme them to be best favoured; and

and why? Because *Cyrus*, one of their Kings whom they affected most, had a nose of that fashion. This noble King *Cyrus* was wont to say, (a) That they who would not do good unto themselves, were constrained to benefit others. It was a speech of his also, (b) That it appertained to none by right for to command and rule, unless they were better than those whom they ruled. Again, when the Persians were minded to change their country, being hard, rough, and hilly, and to inhabit another that was mild, plaine, and champaine, he would not permit them to do (c) laying. That like as the seeds of plants, so the lives of men became suitable to the places and regions, where the one were loved, and the other lived.

*Darius* the father of *Xerxes* in praise of himselfe, used to say, (d) That in battels and perils of war he became evermore wiser. And one year having taxed and fed down certain payments and subsidies which he would have to be levied of his subjects, he sent for the principal men of every Province under his dominions, and demanded of them, if those tributes which he imposed were any thing grievous unto the people or no? And when they answered, that they bore the same but indifferently; (e) he gave order that none should be charged but with the one halfe of the foresaid exactions. One day when he had opened a Pomgranate, which was (in truth) a very faire and goodly great apple; one of those who were about him asked him, What thing it was whereof he deduced have as many as were kernels in the said Pomgranate; (f) *Mary* (quoth he) of such men as *Zopyrus*. Now this *Zopyrus* was a brave man of war and a faithful friend, who having himselfe whipped his own body and mangled it with many stripes, and besides cut off his own nose, and cropped his own eares, by this device and stratagem to beguile and overthrow the Babylonians, that they committed unto him the government of their City, which afterwards he betrayed and delivered into the hands of *Darius*: whereupon many a time afterwards he gave out and said, That he would choofter later to have *Zopyrus* whole and found of all his limbs, than win a hundred rich Cities as *Babylon*. Queen *Semiramis* having caused her own Sepulchre to be made, gave order that this Inscription should be engraven upon it: *What King forever hath need of money, let him demolish this monument, and he shall find within it treasure as much as he desireth*. Now this *Darius* having opened the said Sepulchre, could meet neither with silver nor gold there; but instead thereof he light upon other letters written to this effect: (g) *If thou hast not been a wicked man and of insatiable avarice, thou wouldst never have stirred and disguised the graves and monuments of the dead*.

*Arioner*, brother of *Xerxes* the son of *Darius*, making claime to the Kingdom of *Perfia* against his brother: came down out of the Province *Bactriana*, where he had kept his residence; and unto him his brother sent before certain presents to meet him upon the way. Willing the messengers who should tender them unto him to deliver these words withall: (h) *Thy brother Xerxes honoureth thee for this time with these presents; but he assurth thee, that if he be once declared and proclaimed King, thou shalt be the greatest man in the whole Realme next under him*. And in very truth when as *Xerxes* was adjudged to be King, *Arioner* was the first who did homage unto him, and put the royall Diadem about his head; and flemably the King his brother made him the second person in honour and authority, and next to him in the Realme. This Prince *Xerxes* before named, being great displeasure and indignation against the Babylonians, for that they were revolted and did rebel; after he had subdued them againe, and brought them under his obedience; (i) forbad them expressly to beare armes any more; but he commanded them to dance, to sing, to play upon the flute and hautbois to keep harlots, to haunt taverns, and to wear their garments loose, fitting full, and spreading large. When there were brought him certain dried figs out of the country of *Assitica* to be sold, he said, (k) That he would not eat any of them until he had conquered the land which bare them. Having surprized and apprehended certaine spies of the Greeke nation within his Camp, he did them no hurt or displeasure at all; but after he had caused them to see in what security his army and campe stood, he permitted them to returne and go their waies in peace.

*Astaxerxes* the son of *Xerxes*, he who was furnished *Longhairs*, because he had one hand longer than the other, used to say, That it was a more princely (m) and royall property to put to than to take away: he was the first that gave the leave who hunted with him, to strike a wild beast (n) first, if they could and were disposed; he it was also who ordained for those his Nobles and Lords who had offended and broken their allegiance this punishment: that (whereas before the time manner was to scourge their bodies) now they should be stripped indeed out of their apparel, (o) and their cloaths be beaten and whipped for them; and whereas before they were wont to have the waies of their heads plucked up by the roots, now their turbans or cropped caps only which they haire should be taken from them, and so to stand bare-headed for a time. A chamberlaine he had, named *Sathibaranes*, who sued unto him for a thing which was neither just nor reasonable to be granted; and being advertized that he followed this suite in the behalfe and favour of another, who had promised him 30000. Persian Crowns, called *Dariques*, he commanded his Treasurer to bring him thirty thousand *Dariques*, and when he gave them unto the said chamberlaine: (p) Here (quoth he) *Sathibaranes*, take this money at my hand. for the departure from so much treasure will not make me poorer, but if I granted thy request I should be more unjust.

*Cyrus* the younger, for to move and sollicite the Lacedaemonians to enter into a league and make alliance with him, said of himselfe: (q) That he had an heart more weighty and substantiall than his brother King *Astaxerxes*; that he drank more strong wine pure without water, and bare it better than he: as for him when he rode a hunting, he could hardly hold himselfe upon his horse-backe,

and

and in time of danger could not well fit upon his throne; and to draw them on, for to send unto him auxiliary souldiers; he promised to as many as came on foot for to bellow horses upon them; and to those who had horses, for to mount them upon chariots, to those who were possessed of lands and tenements, he promised to give villages; and them who had villages of their own, he would make Lords of Cities: and as for gold and silver they should have it at his hands by weight and measure, and not by tale and number.

*Astaxerxes* the brother of this younger *Cyrus*, and who for his singular memory was furnished with him, not only gave free access and audience to all futers and those who had any thing to do with him, but (r) that (which is more) commanded his lawfull wedded wife to take away the rich hangings and curtains that covered her chariot, to the end that whosoever would, might have the full sight both of him and her, and speake with them upon the way. When a poore peasant of the country presented unto him a faire apple or corlard of exceeding bignesse, he received it with a cheerful countenance, and said, (s) By *Mithra*, i.e. the sun that shineth, (and that was the Persians oath) this man (I suppose verily) if he might be put in trust, were able to make a great City of a small. Upon a time when he was put to flight, and all his baggage raniacked, and provision lost, inasmuch as for want of other viands, he was faine to eat a few dry figs and barley bread: (t) Oh what a deale of pleasure have I missed heretofore, and never to much as once tasted.

*Parfais* the mother of *Cyrus* the younger, and *Astaxerxes* used commonly to say, That whosoever would speake freely and make remonstrances unto a King, (u) ought to use spoken words, that is to say, the sweetest and most pleasant that could be found.

*Orontes*, son in law to King *Astaxerxes*, by marriage with his daughter, being upon the Kings wrathfull displeasure condemned, and deprived of his estate, said, That the (x) minions of Kings and Princes resembled very properly the fingers of those that counted by Arithmetick: for like as they make a finger sometime to stand for one, and another while for ten thousand; even so those who be about Princes at one time can do all at once, and another time againe as little, or rather just nothing.

*Memnon*, a certaine great Captaine, who under *Darius* warred against *Alexander* the Great, when one of his mercenary souldiers came unto his presence and spake all the villainous and opprobrious words that he could devise in most reviling manner against King *Alexander*: smote him on the head with his lance, and said, (y) Sirrah, I pay thee thy wages for to fight against *Alexander*, and not to revile and miscall him.

The Kings of *Egypt* according to an ancient law and ordinance of their country, caused the Judges to be sworn when they were entailed in their offices: (z) that, howsoever the King commanded them to do injustice, yet they should not do it for all their commandment.

During the time of the Trojan war, there was a King of *Thrace* named *Polys*, unto whom as well the Greeks as the Trojans sent Embassadors to have audience from him: (a) unto whom he answered that his advice was, That *Paris* would render and deliver *Helen*, and that instead of her alone, they should have of him two faire Ladies.

*Ters* the father of (b) *Sitalces* used to say, That whensoever he was at rest and made no wars, he thought himselfe to differ nothing at all from his horse-keepers and equires of the stable.

*Cory* unto one who had presented him with a Libard, gave a Lion for it. This Prince being by nature hasty and angry, and ready to punish his household servants extremely, if they did amiss and faulted in their service: when a friend of his in his whole house he lodged, had bestowed a present upon him of many earthen vessels exceeding fine thin, and easie to be burst, but singularly well and artificially made, with divers prints embossed and wrought upon them most daintily, he gave againe unto this host of his other rich gifts of great prize: (c) but all the said earthen plate he brake every piece into shivers presently, for fear left upon sudden fits of chollier he should chastise his servants too sore whensoever it happened that they brake any of them.

*Dathysus* a King of the Tatarsians, against whom King *Darius* led his Army, perswaded with the Lords and Potentates of the Pontonians to breake down that bridge which *Darius* had caused to be made over the river *Donon* for to passe into their country, to the end that by so doing they might be delivered from all servitude; which when they would not do in regard of their fealty unto *Darius* which they resolved to observe and keep, (d) he called them, kind and good flaves, who had not the mind and heart to be delivered and let free from bondage.

*Atica* a King of the Scythians wrote thus unto *Philip* King of *Macedony*: Thou reult over the Macedonians who can skill only to fight and conquer men, (e) but I command the Scythians who know how to vanquish both hunger and thirst. And as he was (f) rubbing and currying his horse with his owne hands, he asked the Embassadors of King *Philip* whether their Lord and Master did so at home? Having in a certaine skirnish taken prisoner *Imentas* that excellent Minstrell, he commanded him to play on the flute before him: now when all that were present wondered at his singular musicke, he sware a great oath that he took more pleasure to heare a horse neigh, than him play.

*Scilarus* leaving fourefore children all males behind him; when he was at the point of death, caused a bundle of Javelins or sheaf of darts to be brought unto him, and to every one of his children one after another presented it, commanding them to do their best for to breake it: now when each of them had put his strength to it in vaine, and could not do the deed, himselfe took every dart or javelin apart one by one, and so burst them with facility: (g) teaching them by this similitude, that

that in holding jointly together they should continue strong and invincible; but if they were divided and entered into quarrels one against another, they should find themselves feeble and easie to be overcome.

*The Tyrant of Sicily.* G<sup>o</sup> the Tyrant, after he had defeated the Carthaginians near to the City *Himera*, when he made peace with them, capitulated among other articles of treaty: That they should no more sacrifice any infants to *Saturne*. He led the Syracusians oftentimes into the fields, as well for to (b) ease the ground, low, and plant, as to warfare, to the end that their lands being tilled, should be of more value, and they them selves for want of worke and travell might not grow worie and worie. Upon a time he exacted certain fums of money of the Citizens, and when they began to mutine about the payment of it, he said unto them, that his intent was to repay it back againe; and so in truth after the war was ended (c) he satisfied every penny thereof. At a certaine feast there was an harp brought and given to all the guests one after another as they fate at the table, for to play thereupon and sing unto it according to the custome of the place: now when every one besides had taken in hand as it came round about, and had framed themselves to play and sing in their turne, he alone commanded (d) that his horie should be bought unto him, and then he mourned and vaulted upon him easily, and with nimblenesse.

*Hiero* who was the Tyrant or Sovereigne Ruler of *Saracof* next after *Gelon*, commonly said, That those who spake unto him their minds (e) frankly and freely, troubled and importuned him never a whit; but who so ever revealed any speech of his that he had delivered unto them in secret, did wrong not to him only, (f) but to thole also unto whom they uttered the same: for that ordinarily we hate both the reporters, as also the hearers of that which we would not have to be known. There was one upon a time reproached him for his stinking breath, whereupon he chid his wife, because he had never told him of that infirmity: but he answered the matter thus and said: (g) I had thought that all mens breath had so stunked. *Xenophanes* a Colophonian borne, complained unto him of his poverty saying, That his state was so meane that he was not able to maintaine and find two household servants under him: why (quoth he) *Homer* whom you reprove & find fault withall, dead as he is, nourisheth more than ten thousand. He fet a round line upon (h) *Epicharmus* the comicall Poets head, for that in the presence of his wife, he had spoken certaine unseemely and dishonest words.

*Dionysius* the elder, when as he with other Oratours were to make orations unto the people, cast lots for certaine letters: to know in what order they should speake, and the letter which fell him was M, one that stood by said, This letter *Dionysius* standeth for *μωρολογίς*, which significth as much as, Thou shalt prate and talke like a foole: Nay rather (quoth he) it importeth (i) *μνησμός* I shall be a Monarch: and verily he had no sooner made his speech, but the people of *Syracusa* chose him for the Captaine General. Now when at the beginning of his Tyranny or dominion, the Syracusians in an insurrection, held him besieged within his Castle, his friends perswaded with him that voluntarily he would resigne up and give over this violent and Lordly rule over the people, unlesse he minded to be taken captive, and so dye afterwards an ignominious and shameful death: but he seeing by chance a Beele knocked down by a butcher, and observing, that at the first blow the beast fell presently stark dead: (p) Now surely (quoth he) were it not a great displeasure, that for the feare of death which is so quickly done and dispatched, I should forgoe so goodly and so great a feignory? Being advertised that his own Ion, unto whom he was to leave his dominion, had forced and abused a certaine Burgesse wife of that City, he demanded of him in great choller, and said, What art halt thou ever seen me do like unto it? The young man answered Sir, may it please you to consider, that you never had a tyrant to your father: (q) No more (quoth he) againe readily unto him, that thou ever have a son to be tyrant after thee, if you mend not these manners, and give not overfall in lewd courtes. Another time being gone to visit his Ion at his house, and seeing there faire cupboards of plate richly furnished with many cups and bowles both of gold and silver, he said aloud unto him, There is no joy in thee of an absolute Lord or Prince, (r) who do offend great quantity of silver and golden peeces which thou hast received of me, haft not yet made one iure friend to thy selfe. He required of the Syracusians upon a time a certaine fume of money, wherewith they murmured and complained, befecching him to spare them, and hold them excused, laying moreover that they had it not: whereupon he exacted of them as much more againe, and so proceeded unto a third levy, and this he practised twice or thrice one after another: now when he had continued thus laying more taxes still upon them, he might understand and heare, that they made no more reckoning of him any longer, but laughed and scoffed at him openly as they walked up and down in the market place: then he gave commandment to his officers and receivers to presse them no further with new impositions: (f) For it is a sign (quoth he) that now they have nothing indeed, when they make no more account of us. His mother being now far spent in years and past the ordinary time of marriage, would nevertheless in all the haste be wedded to a certaine proper and well-favoured young man: whereupon *Dionysius* came unto her, and said (g) Well may it be in our power mother to violate the Laws of the City *Syracusa*, but to breake the Laws of nature we may not. Whereas all other malefactors and transgressors he used to punish with severity and rigour, he would evermore (h) spare and pardon these night-walkers, and who used to felle folk, and strip them out of their apparell whom they light upon in the streets: which he did to this end; that the Syracusians by this meanes should give over feasting, retreating one to another and keeping

keeping company by night-time. There was once a stranger who promised unto him with aloud voice, that he would teach him apart and in secret how he might come before had to the knowledge of those who meant to conspire or plot and practice against him: *Dionysius* was very earnest with the man, and desired him to tell him how? The other coming toward him spake softly, and said, Give me a talent of silver, to the end that it may appear unto thole of *Syracusa*, that you have learned of me the markes and signes whereby to discover thole who shall hereafter conspire against you; and which he did indeed, and (x) gave him so much money, making semblance: unto the people that he was sufficiently taught and instructed by him in the meanes of detecting traitors; but withall, he commended the fellow highly for his subtil device that he had invented to draw money so cleanly from him. Another asked him one day, if he were not otherwhiles at leisure and idle? (y) God forbid (quoth he) that ever it should befall unto me, Being given to understand that two young men of the City drinking together had given out in their cups many villanous and opprobrious slanders against him and his tyrannical rule he invited them both to sup with him: and seeing that the one of them when the wine had a little turned up into his head, began both to speake and do foolishly, and contrariwise that the other held his own and dranke warily: he pardoned and let go the one, who (z) seemed by nature given to drunkenness and infoleny, as if he had spoken ill of him when he was cup-shotten; but the other he put to death, as one who was maliciously bent unto him in his heart, and his very enemy of deliberate purpose. Some of his familiar friends reproved him for that he honoured and advanced a naughty person, and one who was generally hated of the Syracusians: but he answered unto them, (a) I would it were come to that pass, that there were in all *Syracusa* any one more odious than my selfe. Upon a time he sent preits to certaine Embassadors of *Corinth* who were come unto him; but they refused the same by reason of a Law of theirs which expressly forbade all Embassadors to receive gifts from any Prince or Potentate whatsoever: hereat he was male-content and much offended, laying unto them, That they did very ill to take away the only good thing that is in tyranny: namely, to give rewards, and to teach men, that even (b) to receive a benefit from tyrants, is a thing to be feared. Being advertised that one of the inhabitants of *Syracusa* had hidden certaine treasure within his house under the ground, he commanded him for to bring the said treasure forth before him, which the man did in part, but not all: for he detained and reserved to himselfe some small portion, with which he went and removed into another City, where he bought himselfe a peece of land with it: which when *Dionysius* understood, he sent for him, and gave him againe all his gold and silver afore said. (c) For now (quoth he) thou knowest what to do with thy riches, and makest not that to lie dead and unprofitable, which is given for the use and benefit of man. Thus much of *Dionysius* the father.

His son who was called *Dionysius* the younger, used to say, That he kept and maintained many learned men, not because he did esteeme them so much, but for that he desired to be esteemed for his selfe. Among which Clerks, one *Polyxenx* a Logician being in hot disputation with him said, (d) Now fir I have caught you and hold you convinced: Yea, mary (quoth he) againe in words only; but I convince and overcome thee indeed; for thou leaving thy house and all that thou hast art come to serve me in my Court. After he was deposed from his royall dignity and banished, when one minded of him, and said, Now what good hath *Plato* done you and all his philosophy: Mary (quoth he) (e) this benefit I have thereby, that I beare with patience this change and alteration of my fortune. There was one asked him, How it came about that his father being but a meane private person and poore, could attaine unto the rule and feignory of *Syracusa*; and he him selfe unto whom his father had left it wholly gotten to his hands, being the son of so mighty a tyrant, should be turned out of his estate and lose all? (f) Because (quoth he) my father came then to minnage the affaires of the Common-weale, when as the popular government was hated and I succeeded him at such a time when tyranny was envied. At another time, to another that demanded the same question he answered thus, (g) My father might well leave unto me the inheritance of his tyranny, but not of his fortune.

*Athaboles* had been the son of a clay-potter, and being made Lord of *Sicily*, and declared King thereof; his manner was to be served at the table with earthen vessels among other rich plate of gold, which he would use to shew unto young men, and say, Lo, (h) what pots and cups I made at first, pointing unto thole of earth and clay; but now I am a maker of the (i) (shewing the other of gold) through mine understanding, travell, and valiance. As he lay at the siege before a certaine City, certaine of the inhabitants there were, who from the wall in opprobrious and taunting wise cried unto him: Ho (fir potter) where will you have to pay your souldiers wages? Who seeming not to be moved therewith at all, smiled, and mildly answered, Mary out of the pillage of this City, when I have once won it, And in very truth, after he had forced it by assault, and was Master of it, he sold all the inhabitants whom he tooke prisoners in port-fales as slaves, and laid more over unto them: (j) If ever from henceforth I take you abusing your tongues and railing againe at me, I will tell your Masters of you. When the Islanders of *Ithaca* came unto him with open mouth, complaining: That his mariners or men at sea made rodes into their Island, and had taken from them a certaine botty of fat muttuns: he answered them in this wise: And why then did your King beforetime enter into *Sicily*, and not only drive away our sheep, but also (which was worse) put our the eyes of the shepheard himselfe, and departed when he had so done?

*Dion*, who deprived *Dionysius* of his tyrannical dignity, and drove him out of his Kingdome, being told

g The meaning of an Ambition buildeth Castles in the air.

g The highest dia are overthrown by adulteries, rage, and such like outrages.

g Nigardie and sparing begetteth not Princes, who have need of truly friends and servants.

f When subjects have no more to reffe, tyrants fall: them to be ruins.

f The laws of nature are, or ought to be, inviolable.

f Tyrants approved of make and difforder, for it serve to maintain their estate.

x Tyrants pursue what they give or take: so they may uphold their usurped power. i Idleness is detestable.

z Malicious by nature are those who are detested that thole who break out upon some infirmity.

a Tyrants would gladly be thrust and covered under the shadow of thole who are worst than themselves.

b Gifts ofty, are to be dangerous and pernicious.

c Thole that know how to rule their riches are to be commended.

d Counting philosophers are found to be ignorant fools.

e Philosophy and science are men in adversity.

f By what means great states are overturned.

g Without a city and a fortune, the generals of men is a large house.

h Diligence and valour can make of earth gold.

i Scorns and mockes are, unto befecching thole who have to deale with enemies that be weak and wily.

told that *Calippus* (in whom he reposed more trust and confidence than in any other friend or host of his) laid wait for to take away his life, had never the heart to charge him therewith, nor would abide to call him in question for it, saying: That it were better for him to die than to live in such pain, as to stand in feare, and to be ware not only of his enemies, but also of his friends.

Macedonian  
Kings.

k Sheweth  
cruels  
desire  
to have  
full death.

I An excuse  
made  
to  
be  
wary  
of  
the  
times.

m Patient  
in  
be-  
com-  
ing  
great  
prince.

a Have  
Cup  
and  
Com-  
mander  
is  
hard  
to  
be  
found.  
o Great  
pro-  
sperity  
is  
to  
be  
sug-  
gested  
and  
fear-  
ed.  
p Clemency  
becom-  
eth  
Princes  
more  
than  
sever-  
ity.  
q The way  
to  
fly  
thro-  
ugh  
con-  
flict  
is  
patience  
to  
endure  
them.

g The flau-  
lours  
calu-  
mnia-  
tions  
of  
our  
enem-  
ies,  
should  
serve  
to  
make  
us  
better.

*Archelaus* King of *Macedonia*, as he fate one day at the table drinking, a certain familiar friend of his, one that knew little good manners, requested him to bestow upon him a golden cup which was upon the board: but the King gave order to one of his servants for to give it freely unto the Poor *Euripides*; the other man marvelled thereat; but *Archelaus* Never think it to be strange (quoth he) (k) for thou deservest to aske and go without: but he is worthy to have, although he craved not. When his barber (a prattling and talkative fellow, coming to trim him) would needs know in what manner he should cut his haire: *Mary* (saith he) by holding thy peace, and laying never a word. And as *Euripides* upon a time sitting at a banquet, was seen openly of all the company to embrace and kisse faire *Agathon*, when as now he was past the prime of his youth, and ready to have a beard. Never (l) marvel at the man (quoth he to his friends about him) for they that be faire keep their beauty till, even after Autumne and the latter season of the year. When *Timotheus* the harper, who hoped that the King would have bestowed a good reward upon him, received far less from him than he expected, and (sneering himself discontented therewith, sung to his harpe a piece of a ditty, going in these words:

*Silver bred within the earth  
Thou praisest as a thing much worth,  
Making sign with his head, that he meant the King: He came upon him againe presently in this wise  
And thou wouldst faine that silver have,  
I see full well, and dost it crave.*

As he went along the street upon a time, one chanced to dash and cast water upon him: whereupon those that were about him, said, That he should do very well to punish him that did it: And (m) why so? (quoth he) for he hath not wet & dashed me with water, but him whom he took me for. *Philip* King of *Macedonia*, and father of *Alexander* the Great (as *Theophrastus* beareth witness) was the worthiest Prince of all the Macedonian Kings before him, not only for Majesty and propriety of fortune, but also in regard of his good carriage and moderation: he seemed to repute the Athenians very happy in this especially, that they could find the means every yeare to chuse for Captaine in their City: for he in many yeares could meet but with one, (n) and that was *Parmenon*. When tidings came unto him of many worthy exploits and prosperous, achieved all together in one and the same day, he cried out, O Fortune, worke me but some ill (o) displeasure, I beseech thee, for these many and blessed good turnes. After that he had vanquished the Greeks, some gave him counsell to plant strong garisons in their Cities for more surety to curbe and bridle them; but he answered, (p) I had rather be called a long time a debonaire and gracious Prince, than a little while a foveraigne Lord. And when his familiar friends perswaded him to drive out of his Court, a lewd and foule-mouthed fellow, who did nothing but abuse his tongue in slandering and backbiting him: No (quoth he) in any wise, (q) for feare he go into many other places, and there raise against me. There was one *Smicrythus* who oftentimes accused *Nicanor* unto him, saying, that he ceased not continually to speake ill of him; inasmuch as some of his familiars were of advice, that he should convert him preemtorily, and chastise him severely according to his deserts: What (quoth he) *Nicanor*! why! he is of himselfe one of the best men in all *Macedonia*; looke rather, if there be not some fault in us, that should make him to breake out into these termes? and in truth, when the matter was diligently searched into, and namely, from whence this discontentment of *Nicanor* arose, it was found that he was not regarded by him, but suffered to fall into extreme poverty, so as he had not means to live and supply his very necessities: whereupon he commanded incontinently, that there should be carried unto him a good gift and present from him: after this, when the said *Smicrythus* made report unto the King, that *Nicanor* spake all the good that might be of him, and highly extolled his in every place: Lo (quoth *Philip* then) how itlyeth much in our own power that men speake well or ill of us. He was wont likewise to say, that he tooke himselfe much beholding and bound unto the Athenian Orators: for that by whetting their tongues and giving out opprobrious words against him, they were the means to make him a better man both in word and deed: (r) For I strive my selfe (quoth he) and do my best every day as well in my sayings as doings to prove them liars. He dismissed and set at large without paying of any ranome all the Athenians who had been taken prisoners in the battell before *Cheronea*: but they required over and above to have their bedding, apparell, and other baggage, and besides made grievous complaints of the Macedonians: which when *Philip* heard, he tooke up a great laughter, and said to those about him, How say you, doth it not seeme in your conceits that the Athenians thinke they have but lost unto us a game at the Cockall-game? It is found, that in a certaine battell his cannell bone was broken which knitteth the two shoulders together in the forepart, and is called in the Greeke tongue *κλίσς*, that is, the Key: now when the Chirurgian who had him in cure, demanded every day some money for his fees: *Philip* said unto him pleasantly: Take what you will, and be your own carver: for you have the key in your own hands, and may go to the money at your pleasure. There were in his Court two brethren, one named *Hecateros*, that is, one of the twaine; and the other *Amphoteros*, that is, both twaine

he seeing *Hecateros* to be an indolent, wife and considerate man: and contrariwise *Amphoteros* to be an idle rechelesse fool: I perceive (quoth he) that *Hecateros* is become *Amphoteros*, that is, being but one, he may go for two: and *Amphoteros* that is proved to be *Quateros*, that is, neither one nor other, and indeed good for nothing. Semblably, he used to say: That those that advised him to use the Athenians hardly, and to carry an heavy hand against them, were men of a bad and absurd judgement, and of no direction: thus for to perfwade a Prince, who did and suffered all for glory, to destroy the Theater of his glory (q) such as the City of *Athenas* was in regard of the learning therein professed. Sitting upon a time as judge between two wicked and naughty parties, he awarded that the one should flee out of *Macedonia*, and the other follow after him in chaire as fast as he could run. He was minded one day to pitch his camp, and lodge in a very faire and pleasant ground, but hearing that there was no forage near at hand for his beasts, he was forced to remove and dislodge, saying: What a life is this of ours, since we are forced to live according to our very Affes will give us leave, and not otherwise? Being very desirous to force and win a certaine Castle, before which he meant to lye in siege, he sent certaine avantcouriers to view the place how it was feared: these, who were sent, brought word back unto him, that there was unto it as difficult access on all sides, as possibly there could be none more, inasmuch as they did it was impracticable: then he demanded of them if it were to be unaccessible as that a little (r) Affe laden with gold might not approach and come unto the wals, *Lusthenes* the Olynthian: and those of his crew, who assisted *Philip* in surprising the City *Olynthus*, complained unto him and said: That there were some of his minions about his person, who called them traitours: Be content (quoth *Philip*) you must beare with the Macedonians, for they are men by nature rude, plain and rusticall, they (s) use to call a spade a spade. He was wont to give counsell unto *Alexander* his sonne, that he should speake graciously and courteously unto the Macedonians, to win the good will of the people betimes, and to make himselfe strong, namely, whilst he might be affable and gracious, that is to say, during the reign of another: as if he would give him thus much to understand: That when he was once a King, he ought to carry the gravity and majesty of a Lord, and do justice uprightly. Hee advised him also to endeavour for to purchase the love and amity of those who were of credit and authority in great Towns and Cities, even the bad as well as the good, that hee might afterwards use the one and abuse the other. *Philo* a Theban Gentleman had done him many pleasures during the time that he remained as Hostage within the City of *Thebes*: for hee was lodged in his house: neither would the said *Philo* ever at any time afterwards receive gifts or presents from him: whereupon *Philip* took occasion to say thus unto him: Take not from me this title in my file, of *Unwinable*; in suffering myselfe thus to bee vanquished and overcome by you, in courtesy and liberality. Hee had in one battell taken a mighty number of prisoners, and was himselfe in person to see them sold in port-sale, sitting in a chaire; with his clothes turned or tuckt up higher than was seemly and decent: now one of the prisoners among the rest, when he should be sold cried unto him with a loud voice: Good my Lord, I beseech you pardon me, and let me not be sold in any cafe, for I am a friend of yours; and so was I your fathers before you: Why good fellow (quoth *Philip*) whence grew this great friendship between us? and how is it come about? Sir (quoth the prisoner againe) I would gladly tell it you close in your eare: then *Philip* commanded that hee should be brought unto him: being come neer unto his person, hee spake softly unto him; and rounded him in the eare: Sir, I pray you let down your mantle a little lower before, for sitting thus as you doe, you shew that which were more meet to be unseen: hereat *Philip* spake aloud unto his officers: (t) Let him go (quoth he) at liberty for in truth he is one of our good friends, and wisheth us well, but I wilt not looeth before, or had forgotten it. A friend and host of his had invited him to his house upon a time to supper and thither he went, but by the way he met with divers of his acquaintance, whom he drew with him along to the place: whereat he perceived well that his foresaid host was exceedingly troubled, and could not tell how to do, because he was not sufficiently provided for to entertaine so many guests: *Philip* (I say) being aware hereof, secretly unto every one of them as they late at the board, and caused them to be told in their eares that they should keep their stomachs and reserve one corner in fit for a dainty durt or marchpane, who thinking that he meant in good earnest, did so, and looking for the said durt, made spare and did forbear to eat of many other dishes before them: by which means he pleased all parts, and so there was sufficient. When he heard of the death of *Hipparchus* an *Euboean* born, it appeared well that he took it heavily; and to ope about him, who said that the man had lived long enough, and died in a good time: Yea mary (quoth he) in regard of himselfe, but for me he died too soon; for dead he is before he hath received at my hands any condigne recompence for the love which he bare unto me. Being advertised that his son *Alexander* was male-content, and complained of him for having children by many wives, hee said unto him: Seeing that you shall have after my death many occurrents and competitors for the Kingdome, endeavour you to be a good and honest man every way to the end that you may attain to the Crown, not so much by meed right of inheritance, as by your selfe for your own worthinesse. Hee admonished him to give care unto *Aristo*, and to study Philosophy under him: And why so? Because (quoth he) you may forbear to do many things which I have done, and for the which I do now repent. Hee had bestowed the dignity of a judge upon one: who was recommended unto him by *Antipater*, but after hee heard once that hee used to colour or dye his beard and hoires of his head, hee displaced him, saying:

F f

He

v Effumace  
and delicate  
persons are  
sometmes for  
affairs of  
State.

z A good  
Prince will  
reuerſe in ef-  
fect his un-  
juſt ſentence  
of judgement

y Great per-  
ſonages are  
not to be  
ſeen in ſmall  
matters.

z Princes  
ought to do  
juſtice as  
well to poor  
as to the rich

a Great  
heart and  
minde will  
not be hid-  
den.

b Rare con-  
tinency in  
Princes.

He that will be faſe unto his owne haire, is not worthy to be truſted in weighty affairs. There was one *Maechas* pleaded his cauſe before him when he was very ſleepy, in ſuch ſort that for default of well conceiving and understanding the matter, he condemned him wrongfully: whereupon *Maechas* cried aloud; I appeale: *Philip* moved hereat and taking great indignation, demanded preſently of him unto whom he would appeale? even unto your ſelfe (quoth he) my good Lord, when you are thoroughly awake, and will give better attention unto my cauſe: *Philip* touched with theſe words, aroſe up on his feet, and comming better to himſelfe, knew very well that he had done *Maechas* manifeſt injury by giving ſentence againſt him: howbeit, revoke he would not, nor reuerſe the judgement once paſſed: may he (x) was content to pay out of his own purſe, as much as the coſt and damages came to of the ſuit in which he was caſt. *Hepſalus* had a kinſman and friend named *Crates*, attaint and convict of great crimes, who beſought *King Philip* that the man might make payment of the fine and penalty; but in po. wife that the ſentence of condemnation ſhould be pronounced againſt him, for avoiding of ſhame and diſcredit belonging thereto; but *Philip* answered againe: It were better for himſelfe to beare the diſhonour for his own fault and treſpaſſe, than that I ſhould runne into obliquy and ill name for him. His familiar friends were highly offended and angry, that the Peloponneſians, who had received ſo many benefites at his hands; hiſſed fo at him, as they did at their feſtival Olympian games: What would they do then (quoth he) if we ſhould offer to do them any diſpleaſure? Lying in the camp upon a time, he ſlept one morning longer then his accuſtomed manner was; and being awakened in the end, he got up and ſaid: I might ſleep well enough in ſecurity, ſo long as *Antipater* is awake. Another time when he ſlept in the day time, inſomuch as the Greeks who thronged about his pavilion doors, and gave long attendance, were diſpleaſed and complained of him for it: *Parmenio* ſpake unto them in his behalf ſaying: Marvell not my maſters if he now take his reſt; for many times when you are aſt aſleep, he lieth broad awake. A certaine miſtrell or muſician had played before him on a time aſhe late at ſupper, and the King would ſeem to correct him in ſome points, yea, and begin to reaſon and enter into ſad diſputation with him about the ſtroke and true fingering of certaine inſtruments: Now (y) God forbid (quoth he) O King, that you ſhould come to ſo low an ebbe and hard fortune, as to be more ſkillfull in theſe matters than I am. He was fallen out upon a time with his wife *Olympias*, and his ſonne *Alexander*, during which jarre and difference, *Demetrius* a noble man of *Corinth* came to viſit him: and *Philip* asked him in what terms the Greeks found one with another? You do very well indeed O *Philip* (quoth *Demetrius*) to take care of the union and concord of the Greeks, when thoſe perſons that touch you neereſt, and whom you ought to hold moſt dear can agree no better with you. Theſe words of his wrought ſo with him, that he began to thinke better of the matter, appeaſed his wrath, and was reconciled unto them. A poor old woman there was, who beſought him to hear her cauſe and be her judge; and he importuned him ſo long, that at length he answered her ſhort, and ſaid: He had no leiſure, nor could not have time to attend it: whereupon the old woman cried out aloud unto him: Why (z) then ſir be no longer a King; at which ſpeech of hers he being touched to the quick and affrighted; gave care not only to her, but to other ſuters alſo at their ſuit comming.

*Alexander* [the Great] being yet a child, was nothing well pleaſed and glad, when he heard the report that went of his father how he won and conquered all, whereſoever he came: but ſaid unto thoſe noble mens children who were his play-felows, and brought up with him: My father I ſee well will leave me nothing to do, nor to win: What need you care for that? ſaid they againe, conſidering that it is for you that he maketh theſe conquiſts: What will it do me good (quoth he) (a) to have much, and to do nothing for it? He was wonderfully nimble and deliver of body both in footmanſhip ſpecially he excelled: inſomuch as his father was in hand with him one time to runne a courſe in the race, for the prize in the Olympick games. I could be very well content and willing (quoth *Alexander*) ſo to doe, in caſe I might have Kings to bee my concurrents, and to run with me. One evening when it was very late, there was brought unto him a young wench for to be his bedfellow: and when he demanded of her the cauſe why he came ſo late? ſhe answered, that ſhee carried untill her husband was in bed: whereupon hee chid and rebuked the pages and grooms of his chamber ſaying: (b) I went within a very little of committing adultery, and all by your means. When he ſacrificed on a time to the gods, he ſpared for no ſweet perfumes and odours, but would run oftentimes to the frankincenſe, and take whole handfulls thereof to caſt into the fire: which his government and ſchool-maſter *Leontides* being preſent, marked well enough and reprov'd him ſor it, laying: When you have conquered that Province which yeeldeth this incenſe, then you may burn as much as you will of it. And therefore afterwards when he had made conqueſt of *Arabia*, he wrote unto *Antipater* a letter to this effect: I ſend unto you 500. quincals or talents weight of frankincenſe and of caſſia: to the end that you may no more hereafter be a niggard in offering ſweet odours unto the gods: for I doe you underſtand that now we are Lords of that Province which bringeth forth theſe aromaticall ſpices. The day before that he fought the famous field before *Granicum*, hee willed the Macedonians to make good cheere and be merry at ſupper over-night; yea, and to ſpend all the proviſion of viſuals, which they had; for that the next morrow they ſhould ſup at their enemies charges. One named *Perillus* a friend of his, asked money of him for to give with his daughters in marriage; and he cauſed to be delivered unto him fifty talents; but the other ſaid that ten only would content him; whereupon *Alexander* replied again and ſaid;

If

If ſo much be enough for theeto receive, yet it is not enough for me to give. He commanded like- wiſe his treaſurers to give unto *Anaxarchus* the Philoſopher whatſoever he demanded: his treaſurers brought him word, that he craved an exceſſive ſumme, to wit, 100. talents; unto whom he answered thus: The man doth very well, knowing as he doth that he hath ſuch a friend of mine, as both can and will beſtow ſo much upon him. In the City of *Miletus*, he beheld many goodly great ſtatues of worthy champions, who in old time had won their prizes at the ſolemne games, as well Olympick as Pythick. But where were theſe ſtout Champions (quoth hee) to the Mileſians, when the Barbarians beſieged, aſſaulted, and won your City? The Queen of *Caria*, named *Ada*, was evermore ſending unto him many dainty Cates, and exquisite Marchpanes and Junclets curiouſly wrought by moſt excellent Cooks, Confectioners, and workmen in paltry, which ſhe did of a brave mind, and to ſhew her magnificence: But *Alexander* ſent word againe unto her, that he had farre better Cooks and paſte-makers more ſingular then ſhe had any; to wit, for to dreſſe his dinner, early riſing in a morning, and travelling in the night before day light, and to prepare his ſupper, a ſpary dinner. When his army ſtood arranged and ready to give *Darius* battell, his Captains came unto him to know his pleaſure, and what he had elſe to command them? Nothing (quoth he) but to have the Macedonians beards; and when *Parmenio* among the reſt marvelled at this commandment: Why (quoth *Alexander*) knoweſt not thou that in the conflict and medley, there is no better hold than by the beard to catch an enemy faſt? When *Darius* made offer unto him of ten thouſand talents, and beſides to part all *Aſia* equally with him, inſomuch as *Parmenio* ſaid; Sir, I would accept of this offer if I were *Alexander*: And ſo would I too (quoth *Alexander*) if I were *Parmenio*; but unto *Darius* hee made this answer: (d) That neither the earth could abide two Sunnes, nor *Aſia* endure two Kings: when he was at the very point to ſtrike that laſt battell with him, which was to try the fortune of the maine chance, and which was to try the iſſue, and decide all, neer unto the village *Arbelus*, and to fight againſt the Perſians, being ten hundred thouſand men ſtrong, and well armed, there came unto him certaine of his minions with tales and accuſations of his ſouldiers; for that they were heard in their tents to whiſper and conſpire together, yea, and to give out, that they would bring no part of the pillage into the Kings pavilion, but keep all for themſelves: *Alexander* hereat laughed a good, and ſaid unto them: I heare of no harm; (e) there are very good tidings that you report unto me; for ſurely they be the ſpeeches of reſolute men, who are determined to winne the day, and not to run away. Many of the ſouldiers themſelves reſorted unto him and ſaid: Sir, be of good cheer, and feare not the exceeding number of our enemies, for they will never be able to abide ſo much as the ſcent or ſinking ſmell of our ammu- nitions. But as hee was ſetting his army in order of battell, he perceived one ſouldier above the reſt, buſie in mending the loop of his javelin or dart, by which he was to fling it from him; him he caught preſently and (f) chafed from among the other bands, as being a naughty ſouldier, and not worthy to have place in any company, who would be froliſhing and trimming his weapons at the very inſtant when there was more need to uſe them. One time as hee was reading certaine letters miſſive from his mother *Olympias*, conceining divers ſecrets, and namely many imputations where- with the charged *Antipater*; *Hepheſtius* his familiar friend drew neer and joined with him to read the ſaid letters, as his accuſtomed manner was to do; *Alexander* debarred him not; but after that *Hepheſtius* had peruſed the letter and read it out to the very end: he took the ſignet from his own finger, and let it (g) cloſe to his lips. Being in the Temple of god *Hammon*, he was entiauled and titled by the high prieſt of that place, *Jupiters* ſonne: wherto he answered: This is no marvell nor ſtrange thing, for *Jupiter* by nature is the father of all, but he adopteth and avoweth thoſe particularly for his ſonnes indeed, who are the beſt and moſt valiant men. In a certaine ſkirmiſh he chanced to be ſhot in the leg with an arrow, and no ſooner was he hurt, but there came quickly running and flocking about him a number of thoſe who in flattery were wont to call him God: unto whom with a ſmiling countenance hee ſaid as he ſhewed unto them his wound bleeding: Behold (h) this is very blood indeed, as yee may plainly ſee,

And not that humour ſay all what you will,  
Which from the gods moſt bleſſed doth diſtill.

When ſome there were who much praized unto him the plainneſſe and homely ſimplicity of *Antipater*, ſaying that he lived on a auſtere and hard life, without all ſuperfluities and delicious pleaſures whatſoever: Well (quoth he) *Antipater* weares (i) in outward ſhew his apparel with a plaine white wele or guard, but he is within all purple (I warrant you) and as red as ſcarlet. A certain friend of his ſeaſed him upon a time at his houſe in the midſt of winter, when the weather was extreame cold, and brought into the dining room a little fire pan, with a ſmal deal of fire (god woe) in it, which when *Alexander* ſaw: Either bring (quoth he) good ſtore of wood, or elſe ſome frankincenſe. *Antipater* was cauſed to be brought into the place where he was ſeaſed, a proper fair young wench who could both play and ſing exceeding well, inſomuch as *Alexander* at the firſt ſight, ſeemed to caſt a glance and affection toward her, but before hee ſet his mind fully upon her, he asked *Antipater* where- ther he was not himſelfe in love with her, and when he confeſſed that he was: Thou curſed villain that thou art (quoth he) (k) away with her, and that quickly out of my ſight I adviſe thee. Another time (l) *Caffander* forced him even againſt his will to kiſs a young baggage or Calamite, named *Pythion*, upon whom *Enius* the excellent muſician was enamoured; and *Alexander* perceiving that *Enius* was offended thereat, roſe up in great anger, and flew upon *Caffander*, crying out and ſaying,

F f 2

He that is  
liberal as he  
pleaſeth him

d Lordſhip  
loves no ſel-  
lowſhip. Ambition  
will have all or  
none.

e A wife chief-  
tains will bear  
with his fooli-  
ſhneſſe, fo they  
be reſolute.

f He that  
thinks more of  
hiſ day, but  
as the very  
youth & time  
of neceſſity, is  
worthy to be  
rejected.

g Secrecy is  
commenda-  
ble in ſeet  
minded.

h Inſinuations  
of the body  
be away that  
men are  
mortal.

i A man is  
not to be jud-  
ged by his  
exterior ha-  
bit and ſhew.

k The rare  
continency  
of *Alexander*  
a mighty mo-  
nach.  
I Theſus  
diſcovered  
the unnatural  
finiſhes of  
the Greeks  
in theſe diſci-



what: Shall none love where they live, for us and our pride. As he discharged his camp of those who were sick, impotent and maimed, and sent them back to the sea for to be conveyed and conducted home to their own houses, word came unto him that one named *Antigenes* caused him to be written in the bill or roule of the diseased and impotent persons, whereas he was neither the one, nor the other; whereupon hee sent for the said *Antigenes* to come before him; the souldier was no sooner charged herewith, but hee confessed at the first that hee feigned him selfe sick, and was not, which hee did by reason of the love that he bare unto a young woman named *Telchippa*, who was about to return toward the sea side: then *Alexander* demanded of him, to whom hee would have him to speak, for to cause her to stay behind; but when he heard that she was no man's slave, but a woman of free condition: (m) Why then (quoth hee unto them) let us assay by all good and gentle means to winne her, that she may be content to tarry with us still; for to deteine perforce a free born woman, I will never yield nor grant. After a battell which he had won against King *Darius*, when divers Greeks were come into his hands and his prisoners, who had served his enemy and received pay; as many as were Athenians he commanded to be kept in irons, for that having good means to live and be maintained in the state wherein they lived, yet they would needs take wages of Barbarians; the Thessalians (n) likewise he so served, because they having a rich and fertile Countrey of their own, would not stay at home to till and husband it, but chuse rather to serve a barbarous nation; but as for the Thebans, he commanded that they should be set free, and have liberty to go whither they would; and why (so) because (quoth hee) we have left them neither City to inhabit, nor ground to occupy and labour in. Having taken prisoner a certaine Indian, who had the name of an excellent Archer, and was no lesse indeed, for that he would never flie, but shoot an arrow within the compass of a little hoop or small ring, he commanded him to shoot in his presence, that he might see a proove of his skills the Indian refused to do so; whereat *Alexander* in great indignation gave order presently, that he should be put to death: but as hee was going to execution, hee said unto those who had the leading of him: That he had not for many daies past practised nor exercised his hand, and in that regard he was afraid that he should faile, and therefore denied to shoot: which when the King understood, he wondered at the man, charged expressly that he should be let go, yea, and sent unto him a reward, for that he had shewed herein his (o) magnanimity, and chuse rather to suffer death, than to be disgraced and found unworthy of the fame that went of him. *Taxiles*, one of the Indian Kings, met *Alexander* upon the way as he marched, and praised him that they might not warre one against another: But let us grow (quoth he) to this composition: If you be inferiour unto mee, receive favours and good turns at my hand; but if you be greater then my selfe, I will take thee of you. To this motion of his, *Alexander* made answer thus: Be it so (quoth hee); yet we must fight first, even about this point, to know whether of us bee the superiour, and able to do more good to the other? Being advertised of a certaine fort situate upon a rock in *India*, called *Aorne*, and namely, that it was impregnable in it selfe, howbeit, the Captaine who had the keeping of it was but a coward: (p) Why then (quoth hee) the place is easie to be won, Another who held a Castle which was likewise thought inexpugnable, rendered up the same unto him, and yielded both his own person, and the peece also into his hands. Then *Alexander* put him againe unto that fort, and willed him to hold it as hee did before: hee laied unto it also more lands, which he bestowed likewise freely upon him, saying withall: This man hath done well and wisely, to repose more trust in the vertue of a Prince, than in a place of strength. After the winning of the strong hold *Aorne* aforesaid, one of his flattering favourites and minions came unto him, saying, that he had surmounted *Hercules* in glorious deeds: unto whom he answered: You may say your pleasure, and so forth; but for mine own part, I do not esteem all mine acts with my whole Empire and Dominion, to bee compared unto one word of saying of *Hercules*. Having intelligence that some of his familiar friends liked to play at dice not moderately for sport and pastime, but excessively, even to the utter undoing of themselves; he set a good round fine upon their heads. Of all those that came about him and nearest unto his person, hee honoured *Craterus* most, but he affected *Hephestian* best: For *Craterus* (quoth he) loveth the King, and *Hephestian* loveth *Alexander*; meaning that *Craterus* a wife and valiant man, loved the greatness of his Lord and Master, but *Hephestian*, a good and kinde companion, embraced rather the person of his Prince. Hee sent upon a time fifty talents as a gift unto the Philosopher *Xenocrates*, who refused the same, and would take nothing at all; saying that he had no need thereof. This was reported unto *Alexander*, who demanded againe: What! had *Xenocrates* never a friend to bestow that money upon, if he stood himselfe in no need thereof? I assure you for mine own part, all the chievance and revenues of King *Darius* hardly served my turn for to deal among my friends, *Porus*, one of the Kings of *India*, was taken prisoner by him in a battell; and afterwards *Alexander* came unto him, and said: How would you have me to entreat you? Mary (quoth *Porus*) roially; and being asked the second time: If he would nothing else: No (quoth he) for in this one word, Roially, is comprised all, *Alexander* admiring awell the wit as the valour of the man, not onely gave unto him his Kingdome again, but also did joine thereto more lands and territories. Word was brought unto him one day, that there was a certaine fellow at a feast, who did nothing else but misall and revile him; he made answer againe: That it was a roiall and Kingly act, patiently to suffer blame for well doing. When he lay at the point of death, looking upon his familiar friends about him, he said, I see well that my Epitaph and funerals will be very great; meaning, the troubles that would ensue upon the death

of so mighty a Prince. After he was departed this life, *Demades* an oratour of *Athens* seeing the army of the Macedonians left without an head that should rule and command it, said: That in his conceit it resembled the Giant *Polyphemus* or *Cyclops*, after that *Ulysses* had put out that only eye which he had.

*Plutarchus* the sonne of *Lagus* [King of *Egypte*] both supped and also took his bed for the most part in his friends houses: and if at any time hee had them to supper, he used their furniture: for he would lend unto them to borrow their vessels, their boards, carpets and table-clothes, for that hee had never about him any more than was sufficient for the service of his own person: and hee was wont to say: That to enrich others, seemed more regall than to enrich himselfe.

*Antigonus* levied great summes of money of his subjects, and exacted the same with no lesse rigor; by occasion whereof, one said unto him: King *Alexander* the great never did so by us: And no marvel (quoth hee againe), for hee had the reaping of *Asia*, whereas I doe but come after and glean, or rather rake the stubble. He espied upon a time within his camp, certaine common souldiers playing at the ball and bowling, having their corslets on their backs, and their morions upon their heads, hee took a great pleasure therein and called for their Captaines, intending for to praise them for it: but when he understood that they were in a tipping house or taverna drinking, hee (g) cashiered them and discharged them of their companies, giving their places unto the foreaid souldiers. Being grown aged, hee began to shew himselfe more mild and gracious to every one, than he was wont to be, yea, and carried himselfe with greater courtisie and humanity in all matters, whereof all men wondered, and desired to know the cause; unto whom he answered thus: Herebefore (quoth he) I fought to make my selfe great, and had need of might and puissance; but now that I have attained thereto, I stand more in need of glory and benevolence. A sonne of his, named *Philip*, asked of him one day in the presence and hearing of many: When shall we break up the camp and dislodge? unto whom he answered: (r) Why? art thou afraid that thou alone shalt not hear the trumpet found the remove? The selfe same sonne had (being a very youthful gentleman) one time procured, that he should have his lodging within an ancient widows house, who had three faire maidens to her daughters: the King his father being told thereof, sent for the marshall or chiefe ranger for providing of lodgings, and said unto him (s) Will you not remove my sonne out of that straight lodging? Hee lay like a long time of a lingering dileafe; and afterwards, when he was recovered, and well againe: We have gotten no harm (quoth he) by this long sicknesse, for this hath taught me not to be so proud, by putting mee in mind that I am but mortall.

*Hermodotus* the Poet in certain Poems which he wrote, called him the sonne of the Sunne: but hee to check that speech of his: He that useth (quoth he) to empty my clofe (stool), knoweth as well as I that it is nothing so. There was one who in his presence said: That all things were honest and just with Kings; True indeed (quoth hee) it is so with Kings of barbarous nations, but unto us, that is only honest and just, which is so by nature and in it selfe. *Maefias* his brother had a cause or controversy that came before him, and he desired instantly that it might be pleaded, debated, and judged privately within his house: Nay mary (quoth he) but it shall be heard and tried in the open place of the Court, and in the sight of the whole world, (t) if we meane to do no man wrong. He was once in winter time driven to encamp in a place destitute of all commodities necessary for the life of man; by occasion whereof, certaine souldiers not knowing that he was so nigh unto them, spake very badly of him, and reviled him; but he opening the cloth or curtain of his pavilion with his walking staffe: If you go not farther off (quoth he) to raile upon me, I will make you to repent it. It was supposed that *Arifodamus* one of his familiars, was the sonne of a Cook, or Clark of a kitchen, in regard whereof, when he dealt with the King to cut off some expences of his ordinarie, and not to be so free of gift: Thy words (quoth he) O *Arifodamus*, smell strongly of a Cooks apron. The Athenians had enfranchised and endowed with the Bourgeoisie of their City a slave of his, supposing him to be a free man, and all to doe him honour; but hee said unto them: I would not that any one Athenian should be scourged by me. A certain young man there was, one of *Antigonus* the Rhetoricians Schollars, who pronounced by heart before him an oration composed long before with great premeditation; after he had made an end, the King asked him a question, as being desirous to learn somewhat of him: the young man who knew not what answer to make, stood still and had not a word to say; whereupon the King: What failest thou (quoth he) is there nothing in thee, but all in those writing tables there? Another Rhetorician like unto the same, made an Oration before him, and when he came to these words: The snowy spring hath caused the graffe in the field to be very short: he could no longer hold, but brake off his speech and say: What sirrah, can you make no end, but speake unto me as you would doe to the ignorant multitude? *Thraffylus* the Cynick Philosopher craved one day that hee would give him a single drachme: A drachme (quoth *Antigonus*, that is not a gift for a King to give: Why then (quoth the Philosopher) bestow upon me a whole talent of silver: Neither is that (quoth the King) a reward for a dog or Cynick to receive. When he sent *Demetrius*, his sonne into *Greece* with a puissant Armada, and a great power of men for to deliver the Greeks from servitude, he made a reason thereof and said: That his glory would from *Greece* shine out into all continents and hairele parts of the earth, no lesse than a burning light from some high watch-tower. The Poet *Amagoras* being in his camp upon a time, was seeking of a conger, and himselfe with his owne hand stirred the kettle or pan wherein it boiled: *Antigonus* behind his back, seeing him to doe:

mA commander ought to beate out his souldiers no further than in honest and just causes.

n Mercenary souldiers, taking pay in war, were in they have nothing to do, as to be hardly treated.

o Honour is more dear in men of haughty minds; and such ought to be of good reposed with Princes.

p A strong hold keeps by a coward, is pregnable.

The success of Alexander.

q An example of wastefulness.

r Against curiosity.

t The occasion of fine is to be removed.

u He that preacheth ill, hatcheth the light.



doe: What! *Antagoras*, dost thou think that *Homer* thy master when he described the noble acts of King *Agamemnon*, was amused upon feeding a conger? *Antagoras* returned this upon him againe, saying: And think you, Sir, that King *Agamemnon* when he achieved those worthy exploits which *Homer* did describe, (u) busied himselfe thus, and went up and down his Camp peering and spying whether any one were feeding of a conger? (x) He dream'd one night that he saw *Myrtilides* reaping corn that bare golden eares, whereupon he resolved to put the said *Myrtilides* to death; but he did communicate this designe of his unto *Demetrius* his sonne, forcing him to sweare that he would keep counsell and say nothing: howbeit *Demetrius* drawing *Myrtilides* apart, and training him along the sea side with him, as he walked upon the shore wrote with the end of his javelin within the land these words; *Eile Myrtilides*. *Myrtilides* conceiving presently what his meaning was, fled inconspicuously over sea, into the realme of *Pontus*, where afterwards he reigned King all the daies of his life.

*Demetrius* whiles he laid siege unto the City of *Rhodes*, found in one of the villages or suburbs neer that City, the table of the famous Painter *Protogenes*, wherein he painted *Jahsus*. The *Rhodians* sent unto him an herald of arms, and besought him to spare that excellent picture, and not to deface it: who returned this answer unto them: That hee would sooner destroy the portraits and images of his own father, than that picture, After he had compounded with the *Rhodians*, and was growne to agreement, he left behind him unto them that mighty fabrick of battery called *Helipolis*, that is as much to say, as an engine to force Cities, which he did, to testify unto posterity the grandeur of his works, and the valour of his courage. When the Athenians rebelled against him, he won by assault their City, which before was much distressed for default of corn: but being master of the Town, he caused immediately the whole body of the City to be assembled before him, unto whom he declared that he bestowed upon them freely and in gift a great quantity of grain: but in this speech of his unto the people, he chanced to commit an incongruity in grammars then presently one of the Citizens who was set there by to hear him, rose up, and with an audible and loud voice, pronounced that word aright, which he should have done: For the correction of this one sole-cisme (quoth he then) I give unto you over and above my former gift, 5000. medimns more of come.

*Antigonis*, the second of that name, when *Demetrius* his father being taken prisoner, had sent him word by one of his trusty and familiar friends, that whatsoever he wrote unto him, he should take no heed thereof, and neither give credit thereto, nor do any thing that was contained in his letters, if haply he should be forced to it by *Selenus*: who held him prisoner, and in no wile to render any Cities which he then was seized of into his hands, any thing in his letters to the contrary notwithstanding; but he contrariwise (y) wrote unto *Selenus* to this effect: That he would yield unto him all the Lords under his obedience, yea, and deliver his owne person as hostage for security, upon condition that he would dismiss his father in safety. At the very point when he was ready to give battell at sea, unto the lieutenants and Captains of *Protonotus*, the Pilot of his own gally came unto him and said: That their enemies had a greater number of ships by farre then they: But being here in proper person (quoth he) (z) as I am, how many ships dost thou reckon me. As he retired upon a time before his enemies who advanced forward to charge upon him, he said: That he fled not, but pursued and followed after the utility and vantage which was behinde him. When certaine young man who had to his father a valiant warrior, but otherwise himselfe was taken for no great good souldier, made earnest sure, and besought him that he might have his fathers pay: Know you (quoth he) good young man, that my manner is to give wages and liberal gifts to such as are themselves valiant, and not to those (a) who are but the sons of valiant men. When *Zenote the Citharian*, whom of all other Philosophers he esteemed best, was departed this life: he said: That the Theater of his noble acts was taken away; (b) as the only man whom for his own glories sake he desired to be the spectator and approver of his deeds above any other.

*Lysimachus* being surprized in the Country of *Thracia* by King *Dromichetes*, within a certaine freight, where for very extreme thirst he was driven to yeeld himselfe and all his army to the mercy of his enemy; after he had drunk, being now a prisoner: O God (quoth he) (c) for how little pleasure am I become a slave, who ere-whiles was a King? As he deviled and talked upon a time with *Philippides* the comical Poet, a friend and familiar of his, he said unto him: What wouldst thou have me impart unto thee of all that mine is? Even what it shall please you, Sir, (answered the Poet) (d) so it be none of your secrets.

*Antipater* having heard the newes of *Parmenio*, how *Alexander* the King had put him to death, wondered thereat, and said: If *Parmenio* had wist to take away the life of *Alexander*, whom may a Prince trust? If not, what should a man do? Of *Demades* the Orator being now grown in years, he was wont to say, That he was like unto a sacrifice burnt and consumed upon the Altar; for that he had nothing left but the belly and the tongue.

*Antigonis* the third, wrote unto all the Cities and States under his obedience to this effect: That if peradventure he should command them by his letters to do any thing contrary to the lawes, they should not obey his commandement; but take such letters dispatched, as if he wrote hee wist not what or lent without his privity and knowledge. Seeing one day a religious votary or Priestesse of *Dianae*, seeking faire and beautiful: he presently dislodged and departed from *Ephesus* (e) forsooke lest he might be overtaken with wanton love, and so forced to commit against his will some unlawfull and ungodly act.

*Antiochus*

*Antiochus* turnamed *Hierax*, that is, a \* Sacre, warred upon his brother *Selenus*, even for the title of the Crown, and to try who should be King: and yet after that *Selenus* was vanquished in a battell by the Galatians, and supposed to be himselfe hew'd in pieces in the heat of the execution, (for that he was not to be found nor seen) *Antiochus* (f) laid off his robes of purple, and put on black: but within a while after when tidings came that his brother was alive and safe, he sacrificed unto the gods in token of thanksgiving for this good tidings; and commanded all the Cities under his dominion to keep holiday, and wear chaplets of flowers upon their heads for joy.

*Eumenes* hapned to be entrapped in an ambush which King *Perseus* had laid for him, whereupon there ran a rumour incontintently, that he was dead: in such sort, that upon the newes thereof, being reported in the City of *Pergamus*: *Attalus* his brother forthwith took the roiall frontall called a diadem, and did it about his own head, yea, and more then so, epouled his brothers wife, and reigned as King in his stead: but not long after having more certaine intelligence that *Eumenes* was living in safety, and upon his return home, he (g) he went forth to meet him upon the way, with other of the Squires and guard of the Kings body, bearing himselfe a partizan or javelin in his hand, as he was wont to doe before: and *Eumenes* for his part saluted and embraced him very amiably, howbeit rounding him in his eare and saying thus:

Make hast no more my wife to wed,

Before you know that I am dead,

and never as yet his dying day, either did or said ought unto him that might argue suspition of distrust: but when hee died, he recommended unto his laid brother, both his wife, and also the Kingdome. And he againe for his part in recompence of that kindeesse, would never nourish and bring up any of his owne children for to inherit the Kingdome, although hee had many by her, but during his life made over the Realme unto his brother *Eumenes* sonne, so soon as he was come to full age and able to govern.

*Pyrrhus* King of the *Epirotes*, had many sons; who being yet very children, asked of their father upon a time, unto which of them he would leave the Crown after his deceale: Mary unto him (quoth hee) who shall have the sharpest sword. He was demanded the question one day, which was in his opinion the better minstrell of the twaine to play upon the flute, *Pyrrhon* or *Cephisus*? (h) *Polysperchon* (quoth he) the Generall is the best Capitaine. Having defeated the Romans in two battels, but with great losse of his best leaders, and most (i) trusty friends and servitors: One such another victory over the Romans as these were (quoth he) will undoe us for ever. When hee took sea and was embarked for to depart out of *Sicily*, because he was paitt howe ever to win and keep it, he returned back to his friends behind and said: Oh what a goodly wrestling place have we left for the Romans and the Carthaginians, to skuffle in and cope together! His souldiers furnished him the *Aegle*, unto whom he would say: And why not! considering that your armes and weapons are the very flight-wing, and by which (k) I mount up toward Heaven? Being let to understand that certaine young men as they late drinking together at a table, gave out vile and opprobrious speeches against him, he commanded them all to be convened before him the next morrow: when they were all come into his presence, he demanded of the foremost of them, whether it was true that they had such uncleanly talke of him or no? True it is my liege Lord (quoth he) but wee had said a great deal more than we did, if the (l) wine would have held out longer.

*Antiochus* [the Great] he who made two great expeditions among the Parthians, having in a certaine chase or pursuit after his game as he was a hunting, engaged himselfe so farre in the wild forrest, that he had lost himselfe, and the company of all his friends and servitors, was driven to take up his lodging for one night in a cottage of a certain poor peasant, unto whom he was altogether unknown: where, as he fate at supper, he moved some talke as touching the King, to know what the common voice and opinion of the people concerning him: and they gave out: That the King was held to be a good Prince in many respects, only in this he came short of his Kingly duty, that he would not himselfe in person take paines to manage the affairs of State, but refer most matters to his minions and Courtiers who were men of no worth, and so passed them over in great negligence: so much given he was unto his hunting. To their reports he answered not a word for the present; but the next morrow by break of day, when his guard and pensioners were come to this cottage where hee had been lodged; he discovered himselfe and would be known, by putting on his roiall habit of purple, and setting the regall frontall or diadem to his head; and then (m) he used this speech unto them: From the very first day that I entertained you into my service, I never heard until yesterday night so much as one true word and report that went of me. During the time that he lay in fege before the City of *Hierusalem*, the Jewes requested a truce and surreale from armes for a sevennight space, that they might without trouble solemnize their greatesse feast: which he not only granted, but also provided a great number of buls with gull horns, and a mighty quantity of sweet odours and aromaticall spices for incense, the which he conducted himselfe in person with a goodly pompe and procession to the very gate of the City, and delivered them for a sacrifice into the hands of their Priests and returned againe into his camp. The Jewes wondering at his bounty, (n) presently after the said feast was ended, yielded themselves to his devotion.

*Themistocles* in his youthfull daies did nothing but follow drunkenness and whoredome: but after that *Miltiades* the Capitaine Generall of the Athenians had vanquished the Barbarians upon the plaine of *Marathon*, hee was never known to commit any riot or disorder. And when some

u Needless curiosity in trilling matters before men not a Prince.  
x Great Potentates cannot abide too much to dream of any equal to them

y Notable piety and kindness of a son to his father.

z The presence of a wife Caprain avails more than a number of souldiers.

a Virtue enobleth a man, and not parentage.  
b The death of learned men is a great loss to Princes.  
c One playface hath a traine of many followers.

d The secrets of Princes ought not to be searched into.

e Occasions of evil are to be avoided.

\* A kind of hawk.

f Variance between brothers ought not to soil the laws of nature.

g Hieroclid, busy army of crocodons.

h A man into judge of that wherein he hath skill.  
i A dear victory which costeth the life of the best souldiers

k Valiant men lift up their Princes aloft.

l Wine is a dangerous counsellor.

m Princes becom be more unfortun than others.

n Liberality and kindnesse oftentimes avails more than force.

o Of what power simulation is.

p To do well is better than to say well.

q Spare for no cost to preserve thy country.

r All means are to be attempted to the safety of the country.

s Better late than never to learn wisdom.

t A good neighbour is a great treasure.

u An ill wind that bloweth nothing to good. And adversity turneth to the good of some.

some marvelled to see in him so great a change said he: (o) that the Trophée or monument of *Miltiades* his victory, would not give him leave to sleep or take repose. The question was put unto him upon a time, whether hee would chuse rather to be *Achilles* or *Homer*? Tell me first (quoth he) unto the party that moved the question, whether thy selfe hadst leithen be the Champion who won the prize in (p) the Olympick games, or the cryer who with sound of trumpet proclaimed the victors? When *King Xerxes* arrived in *Greece* with so puissant an Armada, *Miltiades* leaving left *Epidicus* the Oratour, who was in great account with the people for his eloquence, but otherwise a coward in the field, and noted for avarice, should so far prevail, as by their voices to be chosen general in this warre for *Athens*, and so hazard the losse of the City and State: (q) he so wrought with money, that he was put besides that honour and had the repulse. *Admetus* the general of the Athenian Army, had not the heart to joine battell at sea: and *Miltiades* did what he could to move the Greeks thereto, inasmuch as the other said unto him in open Council: O *Themistocles*, they who arise before their turne, cometh to enter into combat in the public games, are evermore wont to be whipped for it: True (quoth *Themistocles*) and even so, they that tarry last and lag behind, are never crowned. *Eurybiades* thereat lift up the balton or flatterer had in his hand, offering to strike him: *Strike hardy Eurybiades* (quoth he) if thou wilt, so thou hear me. But when he could not perfwade *Eurybiades* the General to give battell within the channell or Straights of *Salamis*; he lent secretly and underhand unto the King of the Barbarians, exhorting him in any wise not to (r) be afraid of the Greeks, nor to let them escape, for that they were minded to flye: Unto which intelligence of his, the King giving care, bad them battell, in which he had the overthrow, for that he fought in a long and narrow arm of the sea, which was greatly to the Greeks advantage: whereupon he sent a courier again unto the King, and willed him to flye in all haste to the Straights of *Hellspont*, for that the Greeks were fully minded to break the bridge which he had made for passage over that arme of the sea. In thus saving the Greeks, he made semblant that he did all for his safety. An inhabitant of the little Isle *Scriphos*, said upon a time unto him by way of cōm and reproach, that he was so famous, not for himselfe, but in regard of the City of *Athens* whereof he was a Citizen: Thou saiest even true indeed (quoth *Themistocles*) to him; for neither I if I were a Seriphian, nor thou if thou wert an Athenian could ever be renowned. *Antiphanes* that faire boy, at the first did disdain and avoided *Themistocles*, being enamoured upon him; but afterwards when he perceived that he grew to great credit and reputation, he came to seek him out, he flattered and flattered upon him; unto whom *Themistocles* said: (s) My good youth, we have now more wit, and are become wiser both of us. I throw, although it be late first, *Simonides* the Poet, requested him to give judgement of his side in an unlawful and unjust cause unto whom he made this answer: Neither were you, O *Simonides*, a good Poet or musician, in case you sing against the rules of measures: Nor I a good Magistrate if I should judge against the lawes. He was wont to say unto a sonne that he had, who could make his mother do what him list, and whom she made a wanton, that he was the mightiest person of all the Greeks: For why? (quoth he) the Athenians command all *Greece* besides; I command the Athenians; thy mother me, and thou thy mother. Two sisters there were who wooed his daughter by way of marriage, and made means unto him for his good will; but he preferred the more honest man before the richer; for he said: Give me a man that wanteth goods, rather then goods that want a man. He was to sell a piece of land that he had and gave order to the Crier who proclaimed the sale, to put in this and cry: That it had besides, good (t) neighbors neare unto it. When the Athenians being full of him, took pleasure to raise flanders and contumelious reproaches of him, he said unto them: Why are you weary of receiving so many good turns and services of the same persons? He was wont to say unto them: That he was like to theie great and broad plane trees, under the boughes whereof men are wont to raine and shroud themselves, when they are overtaken with a shower of raine or a tempest; but if the weather be faire, they use to crop and bring the branch thereof, yea and revile it. He said unto the Eretrians in mockage, that they resembled the two d-fishes; for howsoever they had blades and weapons enough, yet hearts they had none. Being banished out of *Athens* first, and afterwards out of all *Greece*, he retired himselfe to the great King of *Perfia*, where having audience given him to speak he said: That a mans speech might very well be likened unto clothes of tapestry, wrought with imagery and story-work, for both the one and the other, if they be folded or rolled up, all the portraictures be hidden, and to no purpose: he requested therefore the rearm of a certain time, in which space he might learn the Persian language, to the end that from thenceforward he might be able to declare and deliver his own mind unto the King by himselfe, and not by a truch-man or interpreter. The King most honourably had belowed upon him many rich presents; whereupon he quickly became exceeding wealthy, inasmuch as he would say unto his servants about him: (u) My sonnes, we had been utterly undone for ever, if we had not been undone.

*Myronides* a Captaine general of the Athenians, put himselfe into the field, purposing to make war upon the Beotians, having given commandment to thole of *Athens* for to follow him with their armies: but at the very point when they were ready to joine battell, certaine Centinels came and brought him word that their men were not yet all come: Tush (quoth he) all thole that are minded to fight are come already, and to leading thole only who were forward and resolute to serve, he encountered his enemies and won the honour of the day.

*Arifides*,

*Arifides* surnamed the Just, came to bear office and alwaies managed the affairs of policy and State by himselfe, who of set purpose avoided all banding, siding, and parts-taking of friends, as being of opinion that authority (r) and credit gotten so, by the juggling practises and packing of friends, did incite and move men in place of government to many bad courses and unjust proceedings. When the Athenians were assembled together in the general Council, and hotly set to proceed unto that banishment which they called *Ostracisme*: there was a certaine rude and rusticall peasant, one that knew never a letter of the book, and could neither write nor read, came with a shell in his hand (as the manner was) unto *Arifides*, and desired him to write within it the name of *Arifides*: Why (quoth he) knowest thou *Arifides*? Nay in good feath (quoth the clownish sort) I ken him not, but ich am grieved to hear him called Just: *Arifides* answered him never a word, but wrote his own name within the shell, and gave it him againe. Being an enemy unto *Themistocles*, and sent by the State together with him in embassage under one commission: when they were gone as farre on their way, as to the uttermost confines of *Attica* Now (quoth he) to *Themistocles*, are you content that even hereupon the very limits of our country, we lay down and leave all our enemy: (u) and when we have performed our embassage and returned hither, we will take it up againe, if you think to good? After he had fed down a certaine taxe to belevied out of all *Greece*, and imposed upon every City what they should pay, he (x) returned home poorer then he went, by how much the charges came to by the way in his journey. *Aeschylus* the Poet had before time written these verses in a certaine Tragedy as touching *Amphiaraus*:

He seeketh not to seem the very best,  
But for to be the best in word and deed,  
He sowed both within his worthy breast,  
In furrow deep all good and virtuous seed,  
Which yield both leave and fruit in *Jason* due,  
I meane figne counsell joined with honour true.

which when they were rehearsed and pronounced in the open Theatre, all the assistance and audience, cast their eyes upon *Arifides*.

*Pericles* whensoever hee was chosen Captaine General, so often as hee put on his rich coat of arms, was wont to say unto himselfe: *Pericles* take heed and look well about thee: thou goest forth now to command men of free condition, and thole Greeks; yea, and that which is more, Athenians. A friend of his requested him, for his sake to beare false witness, where he was to bind the same also with an oath: You shall pardon me (quoth *Pericles*) I am your friend indeed: but (y) lo far on lyes the Altar, that is to say, saving my conscience, and that I do not offend the gods. He perfwaded the Athenians to take away the life of *Agina*, which was a very eie-fore that troubled their Port of *Haven Piræum*, Lying at the point of death, and ready to yield up the ghost, he was heard to say these last words: That he reputed himselfe happy, in that by his meanes there was never any one Athenian did weare black or mourning weeds.

*Alcibiades* being yet a yong boy, chanced in wrestling to give another the vantage, to take such sure hold of him, that he could not well shift from him, and make the party leave his hold, inasmuch as he made no more ado, but let his teeth in his hand that held him: whereat the other cried: This is foule play, *Alcibiades*: bittest thou indeed as women do? No (said he, but rather as lions do. Having a most beautifull and faire dog every way, which cost him seven hundred drachmes, he cut off his taile quite: To the end (quoth he) that the Athenians may have matter to talke of mee for my curtailed dog, and not otherwise busie themselves to search curiously into my doings any further. He entred upon a time into a Grammar-school, and called unto the School-master for the *Illads* of *Homer*: Who said unto him that he had none of *Homer*'s works: with that he gave him a box of the ear, and so passed by him and went his way. One day he knocked at *Pericles* his doore, and when answer was made him that he was not at leisure to be spoken with, for that he studied and was amused how to render up his accounts to the Athenians of their money: And were it not better for him (quoth he) to occupy his wits and cast about, not to yield them any account at all? Being called out of *Sicily* by the Athenians, and cited peremptorily to appeare and make his answer judicially in a criminal matter, as much as his life was worth, he hid himselfe and kept out of the way, saying: That he was a simple fool that would seek to quit himselfe of a capitall crime, if he could otherwise avoid the tryall. And when one said unto him, what and will you not trust your own Countrey, and put yourselfe upon them, to be judged by them? No (quoth he) nor my own mother, for feare lest she be aware, she should upon an error cast in a black beane for a white, and chance to say guilty, for unguiltly. Being advertised that himselfe, together with his complices and adherents, were condemned by the Athenians to dye: Let us shew our selves (quoth he) unto them that wee bee yet alive; and so he fled and banded with the Lacedemonians, and raised that war against the Athenians, which was called the Decelick warre.

*Lamachus*, rebuked and checked a certaine Captaine of footmen, for some fault committed in his charge; and when the other said for himselfe: That he would do no more so; he replied againe: Yea, but you must not (x) fault twice in warre.

*Phibias* became despised, for that he was taken to be a shoe-makers or carriers son: but the first reputation that hee won for valour and prowess, was upon this, that when hee was himselfe wounded in fight, he seized upon his enemies body, and brought him perforce armed as hee was alive,

He that can use into public government by unlawful and indirect means is like to do more harm than good.

He most re-nounce and lay downe particular and private quarrels, who would be in the traine of doing good to the Common wealth, a Good magistrates will not be incited by the public weal.

How farre forth friendship may extend.

O. Mine.

From committed in war hee is irreparable.

alive, out of his galley into his own. Being encamped in the land of his friends and confederates, yet nevertheless he fortified his camp with a deep trench and high rampart round about very carefully; and when one said unto him, what needs all this? and whom are we to feare? The worst speech (quoth he) that can come out of a Captaines mouth is this: Had I wit, or I never looked for such a thing. As he was putting his army in array, for to give battell unto the Barbarians; he said that he feared nothing at all, but that they should not take knowledge of *Iphicrates*, whose very name and presence was enough to affright all their enemies. Being accused of a capitall crime, he said unto the Sycophant who had enformed and drawn a bill of indictment against him: Canst thou tell what thou dost good fellow? when the City is environed with warre on every side, thou perishest the people to consult about me, and not to take counsell with me. *Harmodius* (who was defended from the race of that ancient and noble *Harmodius*) reproached him one day for his meane parentage, as being come from an house of base degree: The noblenesse (quoth hee) of my line begetteth in me, but thine endeth in thee. An Oratour making a solemne speech in the assembly of the people, grew to these tearmes with him before them all: And what are you, Sir, if we may be so bold as to know, that you beare your selfe too bigge, and think too well of your selfe, are you a man at armes? are you an archer, a pike-man, or a foot-man? or what are you? I am not indeede (quoth he) any of these; but he I am, who knows how to command and direct all these?

*Timotheus* had the name to be a fortunate Captaine, rather then otherwise a speciall warrior; and some who envied his good estate, shewed him a picture, wherein certaine Cities were entraped, and of themselves fallen into the compasse of net and toiles, whiles he lay asleep; whereupon he said unto them: Consider now, if I can catch and take such Cities lying asleep, what shall I be able to do when I am awake? When one of these venturous and too forward Captaines, shewed upon a glorious bravery unto the Athenians, what a wound he had received upon his body: But I (quoth he) my selfe was (a) greatly abashed and ashamed one day, being your Captaine General before the City of *Samos*, that a shot discharged from the walls, light but neer unto me. When the Oratours highly praised and recommended *Captaine Chares*, saying: Lo what a brave man is here to make the Generall of the Athenians, shewing his goodly personage. *Timotheus* answered againe with a loud voice: Never say Generall, but rather a good stout groom to carry the trulle of a Captaines bedding after him.

*Chabrias* was wont to say, that they were the best Captaines who had most intelligences of their enemies designs and proceedings. Being accused together with *Iphicrates* of treason, he gave not over for all that, to frequent the publike place of exercises, and to take his dinner at his accustomed houses; and when *Iphicrates* rebuked him for being so retchlesse, standing in such danger as he did; he answered him in this manner: In case the Athenians proceed against us otherwise than well, they shall put you to death, all foule and fasting, but me full and faire clean washed, anointed, and having well dined. This was his ordinary speech: That an army of flags and hindes having a lion for their leader, was better an army of lions led by a flag.

*Hegeippus* surnamed *Grobulus*, solicited and incited the Athenians to take armes against King *Philip*: and when one spake unto him aloud from out of the assembly: What, Sir, will you that we draw upon us war? Yea, verily (quoth he) and bring (b) in among us mourning robes, solemne and publike obsequies, yea, and funeral orations too, if we desire to live free still, and not to be servile and subject to the Athenians.

*Pytheas* being but yet very young, presented himselfe one day in open place to crois and contradict the publike decrees which had passed by the peoples voices, in the honour of King *Alexander*; what saith one unto him: Dare you presume, so young as you are to speak of these so weighty matters? And why not (quoth he) seeing that *Alexander* whom you will needs make a god by your suffrages is younger than my selfe?

*Phocion* the Athenian was a man of so staied and constant behaviour, that hee was never seene any person, either to laugh or weep. Upon a time in a great assembly of the City, one said unto him: You are very sad and pensive *Phocion*, it seemeth you are in a deep study. Guesse againe (quoth hee) and guesse worie: for I am indeed studying and devising with my selfe, how I may cutt off somewhat of that which I have to speake unto the Athenians. The Athenians understood by an oracle that they had one man among them in the City, who was thwart and contrary to the opinion and advice of all others. Now when they caused diligent search and enquiry to be made for these fellow, and cried out upon him in great fury whosoever he was: *Phocion* stood up, and with a loud voice, I am the man (quoth he) seek no further: for I am he (c) alone, who am nothing, at all pleased with whatsoever the people either doth or say. One day when he had delivered his advice in a frequent assembly of the people, he pleaded the whole audience very well, and seeing that his ally with one accord approved his speech, hee was abashed thereat, and turning towards his friends: What (quoth he) have I let fall and escaped some words that are not good, and otherwise than I meant? The Athenians were minded upon a time to solemnize a great and festive sacrifice; and for the better furnishing of this solemnity, they demanded of every man a contribution of money toward it: all others gave liberally, only *Phocion* after he had been called upon by name sundry times to do the like, in the end said thus unto them: (d) I would bee abashed to give any thing (I trow) unto you, and not be able to pay him there, pointing with his finger to an utterer, unto whom hee was indebted. When *Demades* said unto him: The Athenians will one of these daies kill thee, if they

a It is no commendable part in a Captaine to expose himselfe with out great hazards.

b Love of liberty callith no doubts and careth not for dangers.

c Witte men and fowles hardly fort together.

d Poverty is no shame to a vertuous man.

fall once into their furious fits: True indeede (quoth he) they will kill me in their mad mood, but they will put to death when they be come againe into their right wits. *Ariflogion* the Syco-phant or false promoter, being condemned to death for troubling men with wrongfull imputations, and at the point to be executed within the prison, went unto *Phocion*, requesting him to come and speak with him: but *Phocion*'s friends would not let him go to talk with such a lewd and wicked wretch: Why (quoth hee unto them) in what place may I honest men more willingly and better speake with *Ariflogion*? When the Athenians were highly offended and angry with the *Bizantines*, for that they would not receive into their City *Captaine Chares*, whom they had sent with a power to aid them against King *Philip*, *Phocion*, came among them, and said: That they were not to bee displeased with their confederates for being mistrustful, nor rather with such Captaines as they mistrusted: upon which remonitance of his, he was himselfe immediately chosen *Captaine*: who being admitted and well trusted by the *Bizantines*, defended them so valiantly against King *Philip*, that he forced him to raise his siege, and retire from thence without effect. King *Alexander* the Great sent unto him a present of one hundred talents; but he demanded of the messengers that brought it, why the King their master sent him alone, considering there were so many Athenians beside himselfe; they answered: It was because he esteemed him to be the only honest and vertuous man among them all: Why then (quoth he) could not he let me both to seem and also to be a good man (still)? *Alexander* upon a time demanded of the Athenians certain gallies; whereupon the people called unto *Phocion* by name, for to give his advice, and to counsell them what was best to be done in this case: then he stood up and said: My counsell unto you is this: That you make means either to be your selves the (e) strongest in armes, or else at the least well friended by them who are mightier then you. When a brute was blazed abroad without any certaine authority, that King *Alexander* the Great was deceased, the Oratours at *Athens* mounted the Pulpits by and by, and strive aye who could perfwade the people most, even in all hate to put themselves in armes and rebell: (f) but *Phocion* was of a contrary minde to them all; and his opinion was: That they should stay and rest quiet, untill more assured newes came of his death: For (saith he) if he be dead to day, he will be so to morrow, yea, and afterwards also. When *Leptienus* had set the City all upon warre, feeding the peoples hearts with great hopes of recovering their freedom and the sovereignty of all *Greece*, *Phocion* compared these projects of theirs (g) unto the *Cypres* trees: For they (quoth he) be faire, freight and tall, but not a whit of steele do they have: howbeit, when the Athenians at the first fed well in lundry battels and wan the field, whereupon the City made sacrifices unto the gods for the good newes thereof, some would come unto him, and say: How now *Phocion*, are you not pleased herewith? and would you with all this undone againe? I am (h) contented very well (quoth he) that it hath so fallen out, but yet I repent never a whit of my former counsell. The Macedonians immediately after this, made rodes into the Countrey of *Asia*, and began to over-run, harry and spoile all the sea coasts: for remedy whereof, he caused all the lusty men of the City, who were of age to beare armes, to enter into the field; and when many of them came running unto him, some calling upon him to seize such an hill, others as infant with him to put his men in battel-ray in such a place: O *Hercules* (quoth he) what a number of Captaines do I see, and how few good souldiers? howbeit, he gave the enemies battell, wan the victory, and slew *Nicion* the Captaine General of the Macedonians in the place. Notlong after, the Athenians being vanquished in warre, were restrained to receive a garrison from *Antipater* and *Menilius* Captaine of the said garrison sent unto him in free gift, certaine money: wherewith he being offended, said: That neither *Menilius* was better then *Alexander*, nor the cause so good, for which he should take any gift at this present, considering that he refused the like from *Alexander*. Moreover, *Antipater* was wont to say: That he had two friends at *Athens*, the one of whom, to wit, *Phocion*, he could never perfwade to take any thing; and the other, who was *Demades*, he could not satisfie whatsoever he gave him. When *Antipater* was in hand with him to do a thing that was not just: (i) You cannot (quoth he) O *Antipater*, have me to be your friend and a flatterer too. After the death of *Antipater*, when the Athenians had recovered their liberty and free state or popular government, concluded it was, and pronounced in a general assembly and counsell of the people, that *Phocion* together with his friends and associates, must suffer death: for the rest they went weeping and lamenting as they were led to execution, but *Phocion* marched gravely, and gave not a word: now as he was going upon the way, one of his enemies met him and per upon his face; whereupon he turned back to the Magistrates and said: Is there no man here to repress the insolency and villany of this wretched varlet? one of them who were to suffer with him, took on and comforted himselfe exceedingly: What (quoth he to him) O *Euipides*, (k) doth it not thee good that thou goest to take thy death with *Phocion*? And when the deadly blow was presented to him to drink his last draught of hemlock he was asked the question, whether he had any more to say, or no: then addressing his speech unto his sonne, I charge thee (quoth he) and beseech thee, not to carry any rancor and malice in thy heart to the Athenians for my death.

*Pyrrhus*, a Tyrant of the Athenians, being advertised that some of his friends having revolted and conspired against him, had seized upon the Fort called *Phyle*, went towards them carrying himselfe about at his back, a bundle of his bedding and the furniture thereto belonging; whereupon they demanded of him what hee would? I come (quoth hee) with an intent either to perfwade you to returne with mee, or else with a resolution to carry here with you my selfe; and therefore

e To warre must lay to be strongest, or friended by the strongest.

f To make lustie matters of great consequence, and when there is no joy by delay, it dangerous.

g Frowlous Orations be like to fruitlesse trees.

h A wife man will not repress of his good counsel, although the issue and voice be unfavorable thereto.

i True friendship and flattery will not face well together.

k It is an honour to dye with good men.

therefore have I brought my baggage with me. He was advertised that his mother loved a young man, who secretly kept her and uled to lie with her; howbeit in great fear, and refusing her company many times; whereupon he invited the man to supper; and after supper he asked him how he did, and how he liked his entertainment: Gaily well (quoth he) Thou shalt (quoth *Pisistratus*) find no worse every day to thou content and please my mother. *Thrasylus* cast a good liking and fancy to his daughter; and as he met her one time upon the way, bestowed a kisse upon her; whereat her mother was offended, so as she exasperated her husband against him for it: but he mildly answered her in this wise: Why woman, if we set our selves against them that love us and grow to malice them, what shall we do to those who hate us; and to hegrave the maiden in marriage to *Thrasylus*. Certaine lusty yonkers, after they had taken their cups well, went in a maske and played the fools through the City, and chancing to meet with his wife, abused her both in word and deed very unseemly and dishonestly; but the morrow after they came weeping before *Pisistratus*, acknowledging their fault, and craving pardon: who made them this answer: As for you, endeavour to be more wife and sober from hence forth: (me) but I assure you, my wife yesterday went no whither abroad, nor stirred out of her doors. When he was about to marry a second wife, the children whom he had by the former, demanded of him, whether he were in any respect discontented with them, that he should in despite of them epousie another: No, (quoth he) that is the least of my thoughts; but clean contrary it is, because I like and love you so well, I would willingly have more children to resemble you.

I A speech  
unbecomming  
Pisistratus.

As a wife  
man will have  
the honour &  
credit of his  
wife what he  
may.

Of Lacedæ-  
monians.

*Demetrius*, (named *Phalerus*), counselled King *Protophantus* to buy and read those books which treated of policy and government of Kingdomes and Seigniories; for that which Courtiers and minions durst not say unto their Princes, was written within those books.

*Lycurgus* who did set down and establish the lawes of the Lacedæmonians, accustomed his Citizens to wear their haire long: For that (saith he) side haire maketh those who are faire, seem more faire and amiable; but those who were foule, more hideous and terrible. In the reformation of the Lacedæmonians State, some one there was who perswaded him to erect the popular government called Democracy, wherein every one in his countre hath as much authority as another: unto whom he answered: Begin thou first to set up this government in thine own house, he ordained that in building of houses there should be uled nothing but the saw and the axe: For that (quoth he) it were a shame to bring into houses so simply builded, any plate of silver and gold, rich hangings, carpets and furniture of beds, or costly and sumptuous tables. He forbade his Citizens fight at buffers, or to enter combat in that generall exercise of hand, foot, teeth, and all together, called *Pancratium*, to the end that they should not accustom themselves to much as in sport and game to faint, give over, or yeeld themselves overcome. Likewise hee debarr'd them from countering often with their very enemies; forsaith they should make them more warlike and better fouldiers: Whereupon afterwards when King *Agesslaus* was brought out of the battell very grievously wounded; one *Antalcidas* said unto him: You have met with a faire reward at the Thebans hand, and no lesse than you well deserve for schooling and teaching them to fight wither they will or no.

*Charillus* the King, being asked the question why *Lycurgus* made so few lawes? answered thus: That they who used few words, had no need of many lawes. One of those slaves whom they call Elotes, had behaved himselfe somewhat too insolently and knavishly against him: Now I went by the two twins (quoth he) *Castor* and *Pollux*, were I not angry, I would do thee to death out of hand. Unto one, who demanded the reason why the Lacedæmonians wear long haire: It is (quoth he) because of all trimming and ornaments of the body, it costeth least.

*Teleschus* King of Lacedæmon answered unto a brother of his, who complained unto him of the Citizens of *Sparta*, saying: They use me more unkindly and uncourteously, than they do you: It is for nothing else (quoth he) but because you know not how to endure and put up any wrongs.

*Theopompus* being in a certain City, was shewed by one of the inhabitants the walls, and demanded whether he thought them not to be faire and high: Faire (quoth he) no in very truth, yet though they beby none but women.

*Arabisidamus* during the time of the Peloponnesian warre, when as the allies and confederates of Lacedæmon requested him to set them down a certain tax and rate which they were to contribute toward the charges thereof; answered them in this manner: War knoweth not how to be gaged and feed within the tedar.

*Brafidamus* chanced to finde a mouse among certaine dried figs, which bit him so, as he was glad to let her go; and thereupon said to those about him: See how there is nothing so little, but is able to make a shift and save the own life, if it have but the heart to defend it selfe against those who assault it. In a certain skirmish his hap was to be hurt with the head of a partisan, or javelin, which went through his shield; and when he had drawn it out of his wound, with the very blade and felle of it, he flew his enemy: now when one asked him how it came to passe that he was thus wounded? Forsooth because my shield deceived and betrayed me. His fortune was afterwards to dye in the Countrey of *Thrace*, whither he had been sent to deliver and set free the Greeks who inhabited those marches; and the embassadors who were sent from the said parts to Lacedæmon, went to visit his mother: who at the first asked them whether *Brafidas* her sonne did valiantly and like a man? the embassadors highly praised him, in so much as they said: That there would never be his like

again.

again: Oh, you are mightily deceived (quoth she) true it is that *Brafidas* was a brave and valiant man, but *Lacedæmon* hath many better men then he by far.

King *Agesslaus* was wont to say, that the Lacedæmonians ufed not to ask how many their enemies were, but in what place they were. At *Manus* he was forbidden to strike a batrel, because the enemies were many in number to one: It must needs be (quoth he) that whosoever would rule and command many, should likewise fight with many. Unto them who greatly commended the Elites for observing such good order and formality at the Olympick games: What great marvels it (quoth he) if the Elites in four years space use justice one day? but when they continued still in their praise and commendations: What wonder is it (quoth he) if the Elites use a good thing well, to wit, justice. A naughty fellow there was and a troublesome, who importuned him exceeding much, by asking him oftentimes, who was the best man of all the Spartans? Marry even he (quoth he) that is most unlike to thee. To another who questioned with him and would needs know how many the Lacedæmonians were in number: Enough (quoth he) to drive out all wile and wicked perions: And when another asked him the same question, he answered; Thou wouldst say they were a great number if thou sawest them fight.

*Thrasylus* would not accept of the rich and sumptuous robes, which *Dionysius* the Tyrant sent unto his daughters, saying: I am afraid that these garments will make them look the fouler. Some there were who reproved and blamed him, for that he, exploited the most part of his acts by craft and policy; as if it were an unworthy thing for one who vaunted himselfe to be of the race of *Hercules*; unto whom he answered: That where the Lyons skin would not serve, it were good to sew thereto a little piece of a Foxes case. There was some difference and debate between the Argives and Lacedæmonians about their confines; and it seemed that the Argives alleged better reasons, and brought forth more probable evidences, for the land in question: but he drawing out his sword: They (quoth he) who fight the better men at handling this, are those who plead the better for the bounds of their Territory. The Lacedæmonians found much difficulty in assaulting the walls of *Corinth*; and when he saw them draw back and go unwillingly about that service, he chanced to epy at the very same time an Eagle to start from within the trench and town ditch; whereupon he took occasion thus to say: Why make you doubt to give the assault unto the walls of those men, who are so idle as to suffer Hares to sleep within the very precinct of their walls? There was a certain Megarian, who in the general assembly of all the States of *Greece*, spake unto him his mind freely and boldly: unto whom he answered thus: They (n) words have need of a City, that is to say, that *Megara*, whereof he was a Citizen, was not able to make good and maintain his words.

*Agesslaus* used to say: That the inhabitants of *Asia* (to speak of free men) were but bad, and namely so long as they enjoyed liberty: marry they be passing good slaves (quoth he). These *Asians* being Custom to call the King of *Persia* the Great King: And why (quoth *Agesslaus*) is hee a greater King then I, if he be not more just and temperate? Being demanded his opinion as touching Fortitude, and Justice, whether of them was the better vertue: we have no need or use (quoth he) of Fortitude if we were all Just. Being enforced to break up his Camp, and dislodge one night in great hate out of his enemies Country, and seeing a boy whom he loved well, weeping and all blubbered with tears, for that he was left behind, and could not follow by reason of weakness: It is (quoth he) an hard matter to be pitiful and wile both at once. *Meneceates* the Physician who would entitle himselfe with the name of *Jupiter*, wrote a leeter unto him with this superscription: *Meneceates Jupiter* unto King *Agesslaus* long life, &c. Unto whom he returned this answer: King *Agesslaus* unto *Meneceates* better health: meaning indeed that he was brain-sick. The Lacedæmonians having defeated those of *Athen* with their allies and confederates neer unto the City of *Corinth*: when he heard what a number of enemies lay dead in the field: O unhappy and unfortunate *Greece* (quoth he) that hath destroyed so many men of her own, as had been able to have subdued all the Barbarians in the world. Having received an answer from the Oracle of *Jupiter* at *Olympia*, according to his mind; the great Lords Controllers, called *Ephori*, willed him also to consult with the Oracle of *Apollus* as touching the same: when he was therefore at *Delphos*, he demanded of the said god: whether he were not of the same mind as his father was? When he asked for the deliverance of a friend of his who was taken prisoner, and in the hands of *Idrieus* a Prince of *Caria*, he wrote unto him about in this manner: If *Nicias* have not treafured, deliver him for justice sake: if he have treafured, deliver him for my sake: but howsoever it be, in any wise deliver him. He was requested one day to hear a man sing, who could marvellous lively and naturally counterfeit the voice of a Nightingale: I have heard (quoth he) the Nightingale her selfe many a time. After the overthrow at the battell of *Leuctres*, the law ordained that as many as saved themselves by their good shoomanship, should be noted with infamy: but the *Ephori* fore-seeing that in so doing the City would be dispeopled and empty, were willing to abrogate and disanul this ignominy, and for this purpose declared *Agesslaus* for Law-giver; who going into the market place, and mounting up into the Pulpit, ordained that from the next morrow forward, the Laws should remain in their ancient force and vertue. Sent he was upon time to aide the King of *Egypt*: where he together with the King was besieged by the enemies who were many more in number then they: and had begun to cast a great trench about their camp, and so beleaguered them that they could not escape: Now when the King commanded him to make a fallie upon them, and to keep

n Brave  
words without  
out means to  
effect matters,  
are worth  
naught.

Oracles

G g

keep

keep them battel: I will not (quoth he) ematch our enemies, but that they may (as I see them go about it) willingly fight with us so many to so many: and finding that their trench wanted but a little of both ends meeting and joining together: in that very distance and space between, he let his souldiers in battel array, and fo coming to encounter on even hand, he defeated his enemies. When he died, he charged his friends to make no Image nor Statue of him: For if I have (quoth he) done any thing in my life worthy of remembrance, that will be a sufficient monument and memorial for me after my death: if not, all the Statues and Images in the world shall never be able to perpetuate my memory.

• Verue immortalizeth a man and not works in stone, wood, or brass.

• The invention of war like engines burlieth valour.

*Archidamus* the first time that ever he saw the shot discharged out of an engine, or battering piece which had been newly brought out of *Sicily*, cried out aloud: (y) *Hercules* the prowess and valour of man I see well now is gone for ever.

When *Demades* mocking at the Lacedemonian Courtlaffes, said merrily: That they were so little and short, as that the jugglers and players at leger-demons were able to swallow them down whole as they be. *Agis* the younger answered very fity and said: Yea as short as they be, the Lacedemonians can reach their enemies very well with them. The *Ephori* charged him upon a time to deliver up his souldiers into the hands of a Traitor: I will beware I trow (quoth he) to commit another mans souldiers to him who betrayed his own.

*Cleomenes* when one promised to give him certain cocks of the game, so courageous, that they would with fighting die in the place and never give over: Give me not (quoth he) those that will die themselves, but such rather as in fight will make others to die.

*Padareus* missing the place to be chosen one of the great Council consisting of three hundred, returned from the assembly very jocond, merry, and smiling: I am well appoyed (quoth he) that in the City of *Sparta* there be found three hundred better men and more sufficient then my selfe.

*Damonides* being by the Master of the Revels set in the last place of the Dance: Well fare thy heart (quoth he) thou hast devised a good means to make this place honourable.

*Nicostratus* Captain of the Argives, being solicited by *Archidamus* to take a good found summe of money for to deliver up unto him by treason, a place whereof he had the keeping, with a promise also, that he should espouse and wed what *Damofel* he would himselfe chuse in all *Sparta*, excepting those of the Blood-Royal, made him this answer: You are not (quoth he) of the race of *Hercules*; for that *Hercules* went thorow the world, punishing, and putting to death in all places, malefactors, and wicked persons: but you go about to make those naught and lewd who are good and honest.

• Or Endemis das thier.

*Eydanonidas* seeing in the great School Academy, *Xenocrates* an ancient man among other young Scholars, Students in Philophy, and understanding that he sought for verue: And when will he see verue (quoth he) if he have not yet found it? Another time hearing a Philosopher maintain this Paradox: That a learned Sage was only a good Captain: Brave words (quoth he) a marvellous position: but the belis, he that holdeth it, never in his life heard (y) the found of a trumpet in the camp.

• It becometh not a clerk to speak of arms.

*Antiochus*, one of those controllers in *Sparta*, named *Ephori*, being advertized that King *Philip* had given unto the Messenians their Territory: Due hath he withal (quoth he) given them the means to vanquish in battel when they shall be put to it, for to defend the same?

*Antaleides* answered unto an Athenian who termed the Lacedemonians ignorant persons: Indeed (quoth he) it may well be so, for we are the only men who have learned of you no evil. Another Athenian contested with him and said: We have driven you many a time from the River *Cephissus*, which is in *Attica*: but he replied again and said: And we never yet chased you from the River *Enoritis* which is near *Lacedemon*. There was a certain Rhetorician who needs rehearse an Oration which he had made concerning the praise of *Hercules*: Why (quoth he) was there ever any man that blamed, or despised him?

So long as *Epaminondas* was Captain-General of the Thebans, there was never seen in his Camp any of these luffen foolish frights, without any certain cause, which they call *Panique Terrore*. He was wont to say, that no death was so honourable as to die in the wars: Also that a man of armor warriour ought to keep his body not exercised after the manner of Champions, for to be fair and full: but rather hardened with travel, and made lank as becometh good souldiers. He loved therefore to fight with those enemies who were corpulent: and such souldiers as he found in his owne battles greffe and fat, he would be sure to caphire and displace them, if it were for nothing else: For he wote to say of them, that three or four bucklers would hardly cover their grand-pance, which bare out so big that they could not see for it their privy parts. Moreover, so strict and precise he was in his living: and hated so much all exesse and superfluity, that one time above the rest he bidden to supper by one of his neighbors, when he lay in the house great provision of viands, carres, juncquers, confitures and sweet perfumes, he said unto him: I had thought you made a sacrifice, and not an expence of superfluity, and so went his way and would not stay supper. When the head Cook or Clerk of the Kitchen gave up his account unto him, and other his companions in government, of their ordinary charges for certain dayes: he mistaked nothing in his Bill but the great quantity of Oyle that was spent: and when his Collegues wondered that hee should care so much for Oyle that was spent: That it was not the cost and expence that hee stood upon, but only this, that so much Oyle should go down mens throats. The City of *Thebes* upon a time made

made a great publick feast, and besides, privately they were all in their banquets, inviting one another, and meeting in companies to make merry together: he contrariwise all this while, without being either annoiued with oyl and sweet perfumes, or clad in his belt cloaths, all penive and sad, walked alone thorow the City: and when one of his familiar friends who met him, wondered thereat, and would needs know why he went so alone and out of order and formality: *Marty* (quoth he) that you all might in security follow your drinking and good cheer, and not to be troubled with thinking of any other cares. He had caused a mean man and of bale condition to be put in prison for some light trespasse that he had committed, and *Pelopidas* requested him for to let him at large, but he denied him flatly: howbeit afterwards a woman whom he loved, intreated him, and at her suit he granted his liberty, saying: That in such petty favours and curtesies as these it became him to gratifie Concubines and Harlots: but not Generals and great Warriours. When the Lacedemonians came with a puissant power to make cruel war upon the Thebans, there were brought Oracles unto the Thebans from sundry parts, some promising the victory, others menacing an overthrow: he went up therefore into the tribunal seat and commanded, that the Oracles of Victory should be set upon the right hand, and those of discomfiture on the left: when they were thus disposed and bettowed, he stood up, and in this wise spake unto the Thebans: If you will be directed by your Captains, then obedience to them, and withall, put on a resolution and good heart to encounter your enemies: these here, (shewing the good Oracles on the right hand) be yours: but if you want of courage you call doubts and start back for fear of perils, those there (pointing to the bad Oracles on the left hand) are for you. Afterwards as he led the Army into the field, for to meet with the Lacedemonians, it began to thunder: whereat they that were nearest unto him asked, what he thought this might preface and signifie: Surely (quoth he) it berokeneth thus much: that God hath astonishd our enemies, and put their brains out of temper, who having such contigious places near unto them for to encamp in, have pitched here where they are, Of all the honourable and happy fortunes that ever befell unto him, he said: This was mozt to his hearts joy and contentment: that he had defeated the Lacedemonians in the battel at *Leuctres*, whilst his own father that begat him, and mother who bare him were both alive. Being a man who otherwise all his life time used to be seen abroad, fine, neat, and well annoiued, with a cheerful and merry countenance: alio: the morrow after the said battel, he came forth into the publick Place, all founl, sullied, heavy and penive: whereupon his friends by and by were in hand with him to know, whether any sinister accident was come unto him: None (quoth he) but I perceived yesterday that for the joy of my victory, my heart was lifted up more then it ought, and therefore to day I do abate and correct that which was the day before too excessive and out of order: knowing full well that the Spartans used to cover and hide as much as they could such misfortunes, and being desirous to make them see and acknowledge the great losse and overthrow which they had sustained, he would not in any wise permit them to gather their dead all together, and pile them up in one entire heape: but to every City hee gave leave one after another to enterre them: by which it appeared, that there were more of the Lacedemonians slain by a thousand. *Jafon* a Prince and Monarch of *Thessalia*, being allied and confederate with the Thebans, came one day in to the City of *Thebes*, and sent to *Epaminondas* a present of two thousand pieces of Gold, knowing that indeed he was exceeding poor: this Gold would not he receive at his hands: but the first time after that he saw *Jafon*, he came unto him and said: You begun twice to offer me injury; and in the mean while he borrowed of a certain Burgeffe of the City fifty drams of Silver, for to defray the charges of a journey, or expedition which he intended: and therewith entred in Arms and invaded *Peloponnesus*. After this, when the great King of *Persia* sent him thirty thousand pieces of Gold called *Dariques*, he was displeased highly with *Dionides*, and sharply checked him, asking him if he had undertaken so great a voyage, thinking to bribe and corrupt *Epaminondas*: and with that commanded him to deliver this message back unto the King his Master: That so far forth as he intended and procured good unto the Thebans, he should make reckoning of him to be his friend without any penny cost: but if he wrought or practised any losse or displeasure unto them, he would be his enemy. When the Argives were entred into league and amity with the Thebans, those of *Athenes* sent their Embassadors into *Arcadie*, to assay if they could draw the Arcadians to side with them: So these Embassadors began to charge and accuse unto them, as well the Argives as the Thebans, in somuch, as *Calistratus* the Orator, who was their speaker, upbraided both Cities, and hit them in the teeth with *Orestes* and *Odipus*: then *Epaminondas* who sat in this assembly of Council, rose up and said: We confesse indeed (my masters) that in times past there was in our City one parricide who killed his own Father, like as another in *Argos* who murdered his own Mother: but when we had chafed and banished them for committing these facts, the Athenians received them both. And when the Spartans had charged the Thebans with many great and grievous imputations: Why my Masters of *Sparta* (quoth *Epaminondas*) these Thebans, if they have done nothing else, yet thus much they have effected, that you have forgotten your manner of speech and using few words. The Athenians had contracted alliance and amity with *Alexander* the Tyrant of *Pheres* in *Thessalia*, a mortal enemy of the Thebans, and who promised to the Athenians for to serve them flesh in the market at halfe an obolus a pound weight: And wee (quoth *Epaminondas*) will furnish the Athenians with wood enough for nothing, to roast and seeth the said flesh: for if they begin bully to intermeddle more then we like of, wee will

• Excessive joy in prosperity ought to be abated.



will fell and cut down all the trees growing in that Country. Knowing well enough that the Beroians were left for idleness, he determined and advised to keep them continually in exercise of arms: now when the time approached for the election of Governors, and that they were minded to chuse him their *Basarches*, that is to say, the Ruler of *Basilia*: Be well advised my Masters (quoth he) what ye do, whilst I lie in your hands: for if you elect me your Captain General, make this reckoning, that to war you shall. He was wont to call the country of *Basilia*, because it lieth plaine and open, the stage and scaffold of war, saying that it was impossible for the inhabitants to keep and hold it, so long as they had not one hand within their shield, and the other on their sword. *Charon* the Captain of the Athenians having put to foile and defeated some few Thebans about *Corinth* (who for heat of fight had run disbanded and out of array) made a bravado: for which exploit, as if he had won some great field, he caused a Trophée to be erected in memorial of this victory: whereas *Epaninondas* scoffed and said: That he should not have fet up a trophæum there, but rather an *hecatesium*, that is to say, the Statue of *Proserpina*, for that in times past, it was an ordinary way to fet up the image of *Proserpina* in manner of a crosse, at the first carrefour or meeting of crosse-ways which was found neerer unto the gate of a City. When one brought him word that the Athenians had sent an Army into *Peloponnese* bravely fet out and appointed with new armour: Now surely (quoth he) *Antigenidas* will weep and sigh when he knoweth oncert that *Teliks* hath gotten him new flutes and pipes to play upon: now this *Teliks* was a bad minstrel, and *Antigenidas* an excellent musician: He perceived upon a time that his Esquire or shield-bearer had received a good peece of money for the ransom of a prisoner, which was in his hands: whereupon he said unto him: Give me my shield, but go thou thy wayes and buy thee a Tavern or Victualling house, wherein thou mayest lead the rest of thy life, for I see well, that thou wilt no more expose thy selfe to the dangers of war as before-time, since thou art now become one of these rich and happy men of the world. He was once demanded the question, whom he reputed to be the best Captain, himselfe, *Cabrias*, or *Iphicrates*, his answer was: It is hard to judge, so long as we all (*ff*) be alive. At his return out of the Country of *Laconia*, he was judicially accused for a capitoll Crime, together with other Captains joined in Commission with him, for holding their charge longer by four months than the Laws allowed: as for his Companions and Collegues above said, he willed them to derive all the fault from themselves, and lay it upon him, as if he had forced them so to do; but in his own defence he pleaded thus: (*r*) Albeit I cannot deliver better words then I have performed deeds, yet if I be compelled (as I see I am) to say somewhat for my selfe before the Judges, I request thus much at their hands, that if they be determined to put me to death, they would command to be engraven upon the square column or pillar of my sepulchre, my condemnation and the cause thereof, to the end that all the Greeks might know how *Epaninondas* was condemned to dye: for that he had forced the Thebans against their wills, to waste and burn the Country of *Laconia*, which in five hundred years before had never been forraged nor spoiled: also that he had reoppled the City of *Messene* two hundred and thirty years after it had been destroyed and left deserte by the *Lacedemonians*; Item, that he had reunited, incorporated and brought into one league all the States & Cities of *Arcadia*: and last of all, that he had recovered and restored unto the Greeks their liberty: I pray these acts have been achieved by us in this voyage: The Judges when they heard this speech of his, rose from the bench, and went out of the Court laughing heartily: neither would they so much as receive the voices or verdicts to be given up against him. After the last battel that ever he fought, wherein he was wounded to death: being brought into his Tent, he called first for *Diophrastus*, and after him for *Solidas*, but when he heard that they were both slain, he advised the Thebans to compound and grow to an (*n*) agreement with their enemies, as if they had not one Captain more that knew how to lead them to the War: and in truth, the event did verifie his words, and bare witness with him that he knew his Citizens best of any man.

*Pelopidas* joint Captain with *Epaninondas* in the charge of *Basilia*, when his friends found fault with his neglect in one thing right necessary, to wit, the gathering of a masse of money together: Money indeed (quoth he) is necessary, but for such an one as this *Nicomedes* here, shewing a poor cripple, maimed, lame and impotent in hand and foot. When he departed from *Thebes* upon a time to a battel, his wife prayed him to have a regard unto his own safety: This is (quoth he) an advertisement fit for others: as for a Captain who hath the place of command, he is to be put in mind for to save those under his charge, and not himselfe. To one of his souldiers, who said unto him: We are fallen among our Enemies: And why (quoth he) are we fallen among them more then they among us. Moreover, being treacherously held prisoner, and kept in irons during a Truce, against the law of Arms, by *Alexander* tyrant of the Phereans, he grew to heat, and gave him some hard words, calling him perjured Traitor: whereupon the Tyrant asked him if he made so great haste to die: Yea (quoth he) to the end that the Thebans may be more provoked against thee, and that so much the sooner thou mayest be punished for thy disloyalty. *Thebes* the Tyrants wife came to visit him in prison, and seeing him, said that she marvelled how he could be so jocund, being as he was, a prisoner and bound with chains: Yea, but I rather wonder at you, that being as you are, at liberty and not bound, you can endure such a wicked wretch as *Alexander*. When *Epaninondas* had delivered him out of prison, he said that he took himselfe much beholden to *Alexander*: For now (quoth he) by his means I have made a trial of my selfe and my resolution, more then ever before, and namely, how my heart is settled notwithstanding the fear of war only, but also of death.

Marius

*Marius Curius*, when one of his souldiers complained, that of the lands conquered from the Romanes enemies, he had given to every souldier very little, but had incorporated in the Common-weale the greatest part of the said demaines: I would it were Gods will (quoth he) that there were not a Roman who thought that land but little, which is sufficient to nourish and maintain one man. The Samnites, after that he had vanquished them in a battel, sent unto him as a present, a good fum of gold: him they found sitting by the fire side, tending the pot, wherein he boiled certain Raperoos: and when the Samnite Embassadors tendered unto him the said present, he made them this answer: That he who could content himselfe with such a supper, had no need at all of gold: also that hee thought it more honourable to command them who had the gold, then to have gold himselfe.

*C. Fabricius* hearing of the overthrow that King *Pyrhus* had given the Romans, said: That *Pyrhus* had over come *Lacinius*, and not the Epirotes vanquished the Romans. Being sent unto *Pyrhus* to treat for the deliverance of certain Roman taken prisoners, the King offered him a great fum of gold, but he would not receive it: the next morrow *Pyrhus* commanded that the greatest Elephant which he had, should be brought and set juft behind *Fabricius* without his knowledge, and that suddenly he should be forced to bray, which was done accordingly: whereat *Fabricius* turning him about, and looking behind him, began to smile and say: Neither thy gold yesterday, nor this beast thy Elephant to day, hath once attonied me. *Pyrhus* thought to have perwaded him to take his part and lay with him, with promise that he should have all the authority in managing of the affairs next unto himselfe: but he answered him in this sort: This would not be good and expedient for you: and why? when the Epirotes shall know us both well, they will rather have me then you to be their King. When *Fabricius* was created Consul of Rome, King *Pyrhus* his Physician wrote unto him a Letter, wherein he made promise unto him for to kill the King his Master with poyson if he would. *Fabricius* sent the very same letter incontinently unto King *Pyrhus*, willing him to see by that, how his judgment served not him well to discern and to make choice of his enemies and his friends. When this ambush was discovered and directed thus unto *Pyrhus*, which was laid for his life, he caused the said Physician to be apprehended, and sent back those Romans whom he had prisoners, unto *Fabricius* without any ransom paid: howbeit *Fabricius* would not receive them from him as in free gift: for he returned likewise as many of his men who remained prisoners with him: which he did, for that he would not be thought to take any thing at his hands by way of reward, or recompense for disclosing the foresaid Treason: for hee did innot so much to gratifie King *Pyrhus* and do him a pleasure, as for feare it should be thought that the Romans praised his death by treachery: whom they could not vanquish by vertue.

*Fabius Maximus* not willing to fight a set battel with *Annibal*, but by tract of time to spend his Army; which by that means grew to a great default of victuals and money: went alwayes as though he dogged and followed him, keeping the rough places and hilly grounds, coasting him otherwhiles, but evermore having him in his eye; for which manner of service many mocked him, and called him the Pedagogue of *Annibals*: but hee nothing at all regarding such words, persisted still continually in his designs and counsels particular to himselfe, saying thus to his friends, That he who could not abide a scoffe, but feared frumps and reviling words, was a greater coward then he who fled before his enemy. When his Colleague, or Brother in office *Mimnius*, had discomfited certain of his enemies, in such sort, as there was no talk of him any more, but every man gave out of *Mimnius*, that he indeed was a man worthy of Rome; he said: That he feared more the prosperity than the adversity of *Mimnius*: and within a while after, when *Mimnius* was fallen into the danger of an ambush that *Annibal* had set for him, so as he and all his men had like to have left their bodies dead behind them, *Fabius* came speedily to his rescue, and not only delivered him out of this peril, but also slew a number of his enemies: whereupon *Annibal* said then unto his familiars about him: Did not I foretell you many times, seeing as I did this cloud hovering upon the tops of the mountains, how it would one time or other pour down a good shoure upon our heads? After the overthrow at *Canna*, when he was chosen Consul of Rome, together with *Claudius Marcellus*, a valiant and courageous man, who desired nothing more then ever to bee fighting with *Annibal*: he was of a contrary mind, and hoped, that if he were not fought with, his Army within a while by delays onely and holding off, would of it selfe come to nothing: so as *Annibal* would oftentimes say: That he feared more *Fabius* that fought not, then he did *Marcellus* who was ever fighting. It was told him that he had in his Camp a Lucane, who was wont to steal out by night, forth of the Camp, for the love of a woman whom he used to visit, but otherwise he heard say, that the man was a right good souldier and wonderful hardy in arms: whereupon he gave commandment that the woman upon whom this souldier was so enamoured, should be secretly and without the mans knowledge attached and brought unto him: now when she was come, he sent for the souldier aforesaid: I am advertised (quoth he) that thou against the Laws of military discipline, wast many times to lie out of the Camp; and I understand likewise full well, that seeing that I have said, thou art a souldier good enough; well, in regard of thy good services, I am content to pardon all that is past, but from henceforth thou shalt abide and tarry with me, for I have a good pawn and surety within that thou shalt not start: and with that he caused the Woman to come forth and appear, and so he gave her into his hands to be his wedded Wife. *Annibal* held all the City of *Tarentum* with a strong garrison, saving only the Castle, but *Marcellus* by a wile

G g 3

and

f The end  
of the  
messwork.t A good  
conscience  
is a  
brass  
wall.u They that  
are not able  
to maintain  
war, must live  
for peace.



and subtle stratageme, trained him as far as he could from thence, and then returning with all expedition, was matter of the whole town, and facked it: in the execution of which service his Scribe or Chancellor asked him what should be done with the sacred images of the gods among the rest of the pillage: Marry let us leave (quoth he) unto the Tarentines their gods, being thus angry as they are with them. When *M. Livius*, who had the keeping of the Cattle, vaunted and boasted that by his means the City was won, all the rest who heard him, laughed and mocked him; but *Fabius* answered: Thou faiest truth indeed, for it thou hadst not lost it once, I had never recovered it again. After he was stepped far in years, his Son was chosen Consul, and as he was giving audience in open place, and dispatching certain publick affairs in the presence of many, *Fabius* his Father being mounted on horseback, came toward him: but the Son sent one of his Lictors, or Hushees before, to command him to alight from his horse: whereat all the rest there present were abashed, and thought it a great shame and unseemly sight: but the old man dismounting quickly from his horse, came toward his Son as fast as his years would give him leave, embraced him and said: Thou hast well done my Son, to know whom thou dost govern, and to shew that thou art not ignorant what the greatness is of that charge which thou hast undertaken.

*Scipio* the elder, whensoever he was at any leisure, and repose either from military affairs, or publick government, employed all that time in his private study at his book: whereupon he was wont to say: That when he was alone, he had the most company; and when he was at leisure, he had the greatest business. After he had won by assault the City of *New Carthage* in Spain, some of his soldiers brought a most beautiful Damocel taken prisoner, and her they offered unto him: I will none of her, Lying at siege before a certain City situated in a low place, and over which might be seen the Temple of *Venus*, he gave order unto them, that by virtue of Writs were to make appearance in Court, that they should come and plead before him within the said Temple, wherethey should have audience the third day after: which he made good, for before that day he had forced the City. When one demanded of him being in *Sicily*, ready to embark and passe over to *Africa*, upon what confidence he presumed so much to crosse the Seas with his Armado against *Carthage*: See you not here (quoth he) yoo, men how they disport and exercise themselves armed with military fears of Arms, along an high Tower situate upon the Sea side? Tell you, there is not one of all this number, but if I bid him, will run up to the top of this Tower, and cast himselfe down from thence with the head forward. Being passed over Sea, and soon after Master of the field: when he had burnt the Camps of his Enemies, the Carthaginians sent immediately unto him an Embassage to treat of peace: in which Treaty it was concluded, that they should quit all their vessels at Sea, abandon their Elephants, and besides pay a good grosse sum of money: But so soon as *Annibal* was retired out of *Italy* into *Africa*, they repented themselves of these capitulations and conditions, for the trust which they had in the forces and person of *Annibal*: whereof *Scipio* being advertised, said unto them: That although they would perform the Articles of the foresaid agreement, yet the accord should not stand for good, unless over and above they paid 5000. Talents, because they had sent for *Annibal* to come over. Now after that the Carthaginians had been vanquished by him in open battel, they sent new Embassadors for to treat of peace again; but he commanded them presently to depart, for that he would never give them audience, unless they brought back unto him *L. Terentius*, a Knight of *Rome*, and a man of worth and honour, who by the fortune of War was taken prisoner, and fallen into the hands of the Carthaginians: now when they had brought *Terentius*, he caused him to sit close by his side in the Council, and then gave audience to the foresaid Embassadors, and granted them peace. Afterwards when he entered *Rome* in triumph for this victory: the said *Terentius* followed hard after his triumphant Chariot, wearing a Cap of Liberty on his Head, like an enfranchised slave, and avowing that he held his freedom by him; and when *Scipio* was dead, unto all those that accompanied his corps when it was carried forth to Sepulture, *Terentius* allowed to drinke a certain kind of Meade, made of Wine and Honey: and for all other complements belonging to an honourable Funeral, hee took order with great diligence: but this was performed afterwards. Moreover, when King *Antiochus* saw that the Romans were passed over into *Asia*, with a puissant Army to make war upon him, he sent his Embassadors to *Scipio*, for to enter into a Treaty of peace, unto whom he answered: This you should have done before, and not at this present, now that your King and Master hath already received the bit of the bridle in his mouth, and the saddle with the rider upon his back. The Senate had granted our a Commission unto him that he should take forth certain money out of the publick chest and chamber of the City: but when the Treasurers would not suffer him that day to open the Treasury, for to be furnished from thence: he said, He would be so bold as open it himselfe: Which (quoth he) I may well do, considering that by my means it was kept fast shut and locked fast, for the great quantity of gold and silver which I have caused to be brought into it. *Peitius* and *Quintus*, two Tribunes of the Commons, accused him before the people, and laid many grievous matters to his charges: but he in stead of pleading his own cause, and justifying himselfe, said thus: My Masters of *Rome*, upon such a day as this, I defeated in battel the Carthaginians and *Annibal*, and therefore will I go my selfe directly from hence with a chaplet of flowers upon my head, up into the Capitol: to sacrifice and give thanks unto *Jupiter* for my victory: mean while, whosoever will give his voice either for or against me, let him do as he thinketh good: and having thus said,

\* Or named  
Balthazar, in  
Fome credit  
as a town  
in Spain

he went out of the Court, and all the people followed after him, leaving his accusers to plead there their fill to the bare walls.

*T. Quintus*, immediately upon his coming to the management of State affairs, grew to such reputation and renown, that before he had been *Ædile*, *Prætor*, or Tribune of the common-weale, he was chosen Consul of *Rome*, who being sent as Captain and Lieutenant General for the people of *Rome*, to war against *Philip* King of *Macedonia*, was counselled and persuaded to a parle and personal conference first with him: *Philip* for the better security of his own person, demanded of him hostages: Because (quoth he) the Romans have here many captives besides you, but the Macedonians have none but my selfe: No marvel indeed (quoth *Quintus*) that you are hereby your selfe alone, for you have done to death all your kinsfolk and friends. After that he had vanquished in battel King *Philip*, he caused proclamation to be made in the solemnity of the Ithmian games: That he restored all the Greeks to their ancient liberties and full freedom, to live from that day forward according to their own Laws; and thereupon the Greeks caused all the Romans to be sought out throughout all *Greece*, who had been sold thither for slaves during the wars with *Antiochus*, and having redeemed and bought them again out of their masters hands for 500. drams apoll, they presented them unto him as a free gift: these followed him in his triumph, with Caps upon their heads, as the custom was of such slaves as were newly enfranchised and ended with liberty. The Achæans were minded and fully purposed to enterprize the conquest of the Isle *Zacynthus*: But he admonished them not to go forth of *Peloponnesus*, unless they would put themselves into evident danger, like unto the Tortoises, when they stretch forth their heads out of their shells. When the brute was blown over all *Greece* that King *Antiochus* came with a mighty power, inso much as all men wondered and were afraid to hear what numbers there were of soldiers and fighting men, and what diversity of Armors they brought with them: he made such a speech as this in the general Council of the Achæans: It was my chance (quoth he) upon a time to be lodged in the house of an old host and friend of mine within the City of *Chalcis*, and as I sat with him at supper, I marvelled how possibly he could come by so many forts of Venison which I saw served up to the board before me: at last mine host answered that all was but Swines flesh, and the same altered by sundry kinds of sauces and variety of dressing: Semblably (quoth he) be you not dismayed and troubled at this great Army of King *Antiochus* whom you hear named, his men at Arms, and horsemen armed at all pieces, his light Horse, his Petronels and Archers on horseback, and his footmen, for all these be no more but poor Syrians, men born to servitude and slavery, and no better, differing one from another only in diversity of harness and weapons. *Philopamon* was at that time Captain General of the Achæans, who had a number sufficient both of horse and foot, but he wanted money for their pay: whereat *Quintus* merrily scoffing: *Philopamon* (quoth he) hath hands and feet enough, but he wants a belly; which jest was indeed the more pleasant, for that *Philopamon* body was in truth naturally so shapen and made so flat, as if he had no belly at all.

*C. Domitius*, he whom *Scipio* the great left in his place, next after his brother *L. Scipio* in the war against King *Antiochus*; when he had viewed the Army of his enemies standing in battel-array, the Roman Captains who were about him, counselled him with all expedition to give them battel, but he answered them thus: That they had not day enough to massacre and hew in peeces so many millions of men; to spoil also and make pillage of their rents and baggage, and then to return when all was done into the Camp for to refresh and look to themselves: so the morrow after hee charged upon them and slew fifty thousand enemies.

*P. Licinius*, a Consul of *Rome*, in one battel of horsemen was vanquished by King *Perseus*, and lost about two thousand and eight hundred men, partly slain, and partly taken prisoners in the field: after which victory, *Perseus* sent unto the said Consul Embassadors to treat of peace and attornment in which Treaty the condition which the vanquished propoed unto the conqueror was: That he should submit himself wholly and his whole estate unto the Romans, for to do with them according to their will and discretion.

*Paulus Emilius* making suit for his second Consulship, was rejected and took repulse: but afterward when it was seen that the war against King *Perseus* was drawn out in length, and like to hold long through the ignorance, sloth and idleness of those Captains which were sent with the Army: the Romans chose him Consul for the second time; but he said unto them, I can you no thank as all now, for that you have not elected me for to gratify my selfe (because I fought for no office at this time) but in regard that your selves stand in need of a Captain. Being returned from the common Place into his own house, he found a little daughter that he had, named *Tertia*, weeping and all blubbered with tears. What is the matter (quoth he) that my pretty Girl cryeth and weepeth thus: with that the Child; O Father (quoth she) our *Perseus* is dead: (now a little Puppy the had of that name.) In good hour be it spoken my sweet daughter (quoth he) I take it for a good ome and preface of happy fortune. When he was arrived and came into the Camp, he found much buble-bubble there, and vaunting bravery on every hand of those soldiers, who would busily intermeddle in the affairs properly pertaining to the Captain, and in more matters then concerned them: he willed (x) them to be quiet and still, not to be dealing in such things, but only to look well to their swords. whether they were sharp-edged and well pointed: As for the rest (quoth he) I will provide thereore. Those that kept the night sentinels, he commanded neither to beare Lance, nor weare Sword, to the end that knowing they had no means to fight, in case

x Captains  
are to direct  
Soldiers to  
obey and ex-  
cute.

case they should be surprized by the enemy, they should be the more vigilant and careful to withstand sleep. After that he had passed over the mountains in Macedonia, and was newly entered into the Camp, he found his enemies ready ranged in battel-array before him: whereupon Scipio Nasica advised him to charge out of hand: If I were (quoth he) as young as you, I should be of the same mind that you are: but now long experience forbiddeth me to advance forward, all weary as I am, upon any journey against mine enemies, being set strongly in ordinance of battel, after he had fully defeated Perseus in making feasts to his Allies and Confederates, for joy of victory, he said: That it belonged to one and the same skill and experience to know how to range a terrible battel against enemies, and to set out an acceptable feast for friends. Perseus being his prisoner, made earnest suit, and humble supplication unto him, that he might not be led in his triumph: That lies (quoth he) in your own power O Perseus: by which words he gave him good leave to make himselfe away. Among the treasures of this King, there was found an infinite masse of Gold and Silver, whereof he touched not one jot for his own proper use: only to Tubero his Son-in-law, who had married his Daughter, in honour of his vertue he gave one Silver Bowl, weighing five \* Lytres: where (by the way) this is to be noted, that (by report) this was the first piece of Silver plate that ever came into the house of the *Æmylii*. Of our Children-males that be had, two of the eldest he had given away before from himselfe to be adopted into other noble families of Rome, and of the two youngest which remained behind in his own house and name: the one (being fourteen years of age) died five dayes before his triumph: the other (twelve years old) changed his life five dayes after: whereat the people sorrowed, and took it very heavily, bewailing and pitying his desolate estate: but he himselfe went into the common Place to comfort them, saying: That now from hence forth, he thought to be out of all fear and danger in the behalfe of the Common-wealth, hoping that no infortunity would befall unto it: for that himselfe for them all, bare the heavy load of the envy attending upon so great prosperities which he had achieved for the weal publick, (y) in that fortune had derived and cast all despite upon his family alone.

\* Or pounds

y Great prosperity is to be suspected to abate our pride, therefore God doth delay it with some crookes.

z No man is himselfe wife men so much as themselves.

a Honour attends upon vertue, and is there rewarded thereof.

Cato the elder, in a solemne speech before the people of Rome, reproving sharply their intemperance, riot, and superfluous delicacies: I know full (quoth he) that it is an bad matter to speak unto the belly which hath no ears. He said also, that he wondered how such a City could long stand, wherein a fish was sold dearer then an ox. Also inveighing against the overmuch liberty and power, which was generally given to women: All other men (quoth he) do rule their wives, we rule all men, and our wives rule us. It was a speech likewise of his: That he had rather receive favour and grace when he had done any good service, then not be punished when he had committed a fault: I pardon moreover (quoth he) all those, who upon error or ignorance have trespassed, (z) but I except my selfe. Furthermore, in soliciting and moving the Magistrates to chastise those who offended the Laws, he plainly said: That whosoever had rule and authority sufficient to repress Malefactors, if they did not execute the same, were themselves the authors and commanders of evil. He delivered these words moreover: That young men who blushed when they were reprov'd, pleased him better then those that looked pale: and that he could not abide that Souldier, who in his way he walked, waggeth his hands: in fight stirreth his feet: and when he sleepeeth forth his lower then he holloweth, as he encountereth his enemy. Item, that he was a bad ruler, who knew not how to rule himselfe. He was of opinion, that every one ought to have more reverence of himselfe, then of any other person whatsoever: for no man was ever from himselfe. Perceiving that many there were who made sure that their statues might be erected: I had rather (quoth he) that men should ask another day, why there was no image set up for Cato, then why he had any. He counselled them who had power to do what they would, to spare and make much thereof, to the end that their liberty might last with them for ever. They who depite vertue (a) of honour, take away vertue (quoth he) from youth. He was of advice that no man ought to entreat a Magistrate, or Judge in good and just causes to maintain them, nor sue unto them in bad and unright, as matters to passe-by or wink at them. His saying was: That injustice and wrong-doing, if it brought no peril to him that committed it, yet it was dangerous to all others. He admonished old folk not to add unto their age the foulness of vice: for that they had decrements enough besides. His opinion was, that anger and fury differed in nothing, but that the one endured longer then the other. He was wont to say that they were not lightly envied, who knew how to use their fortune wisely and with moderation: For that (quoth he) it is not our person that is envied, but that which is about us. Also they who are earnest in ridiculous matters, make themselves laughing stocks in serious affairs. Over and besides, this was one of his Sage Sawes: That fair and commendable actions ought to meet with faire and laudable words to set them forth, to the end that they never be without the glory to them belonging. He reprehended the Citizens of Rome, for giving always their voices to one and the same person, at the elections of their Magistrates: For it should seeme (quoth he) in so doing, that either you do not much esteem the honour of Magistracies, or else that in your judgement you have not men sufficient enough and worthy to bear them. He made semblant upon a time, that he had in great admiration the strength of one who sold and made away his lands that lay along by the sea coast, as being a man more mighty and puissant then the very sea: For (quoth he) that which the sea undermineth, eateth, and wasteth by little and little, this good fellow hath swallowed and devoured all at once. When he stood to be chosen Censor, and saw that other of his competitors and concurrents

crudged

crudged up and down, glaving, glofing, and flattering to the people for to insinuate themselves into their good favour and grace: he contrariwise went crying out: That the State and people had need of a rigorous, and hard-hearted Physician, both to dismember and cut off some part, and also to give them a strong purgation: and therefore they were not to chuse one who was most gracious, but him that was most severe: thus whiles he made these remonstrances, he was himselfe chosen before all the rest. In teaching young men for to fight valiantly and with resolution, he said: That a word oftentimes frighted the enemy more then the sword, the tongue also more then the hand, and caused him to take his heeles and run away. Whiles he warred in Spain against those who inhabit along the River *Bætis*, he was in great danger, by reason of a great multitude of enemies who were in arms against him, neither could he be provided of aids upon a sudden, but from the Celtiberians, who for to succour him demanded two hundred Talents: now the other Roman Captaines would not yeeld that he should make promise unto those barbarous Nations of this money for their hire, and tallary: but Cato said: They were much deceived and out of the way: for if we win (quoth he) we shall be able to pay them, not of our own, but of our enemies goods: if we lose the day, there will be none left either to be payed, or to call for pay. Having won more towns in Spain, then he had been dayes there (according as he said himselfe) he relieved of all that spoile and pillage for his own use, no more then he did eat and drink: but he divided and dealt to every one of his souldiers a pound weight of silver, saying: That it were better that many should return home out of war with silver in their purses, then a few with gold: for that Rulers and Captains ought not to glory rich themselves by their Provinces and places of government in any thing but in honour and glory. In that expedition or voyage of his, he had with him in his train five of his own servants: of whom one there was who bought three prisoners taken in war: but when he knew that his master had intelligence thereof, before that ever he came in his sight he hung and strangled himselfe. Scipio, named *Africanus*, prayed him to favour the causes of the banished and fugitive Acheans, and to be good unto them, namely, that they might be recalled and restored again to their own country: but he made semblance as though he took no great heed and regard to such affairs: and when he saw that the matter was followed hotly in the Senate, and that there grew much speech and debate about it, he stood up and said: Here is a great fire indeed; and as though we had nothing else to do, we sit here and spend all the long day disputing about these old gray beard Greeks, and all fortooth, to know whether they shall be carried forth to their burial by our Porters and Coarse-bearers here, or by those there. *Posthumius Albius* wrote certain Histories in Greek, in the Preface and Proeme whereof, he prayed the Readers and Hearers to pardon him, if he had committed any solecism or incongruity in that language: but Cato by way of a mock, scoffed at him, and said: That he deserved indeed to be pardoned for writing false Greek, in case that by the (b) ordinance and Commandment of the High Commiſſion of the Amphictyons, who were the chiefe Estates of all Greece, he had been compelled against his will, to enterprife and go in hand with the said Histories.

b Selfe do, selfe have.

Scipio the younger, in four and fifty years (for so long he lived) neither bought nor sold, nor yet built: and it is for certain reported, that in so great an house and habitation as his might seem to be, there was never found but three and thirty pound weight of silver plate, and two of gold, notwithstanding the City of Great Carthage was in his hand, and he had enriched his souldiers more then ever any Captaine did before him. Observing well the precept which *Polybius* gave, he hardly and without much ado would not return out of the Market place, before he had assaied to make in some sort one new friend and familiar or other, of those whom he met withal, being but yet young he was of such reputation for his valour and wisdom, that Cato the elder being demanded his opinion as touching others that were in the Camp before Carthage, among whom he was one, delivered this commendation of him.

Right wife and sage indeed alone is he,  
The rest to him but fitting shadows be.

whereupon after his return to Rome from the Camp, they that remained behind, called for him again, not so much by way of gratification, and to do him a pleasure, but because they hoped by his means more speedily and with greater facility to win Carthage: now when he was entered to the very walls, and yet the Carthaginians fought from the Cattle, *Polybius* gave counsel to scatter in the Sea between (which was not very deep between his Camp, and the said Cattle) certain colthrops of iron, or else planks betwixt with nail points, to overcast and spread the shallow shelves with sticking upon them: for fear lest that the enemies passing that arme or firth of the Sea, might come to assaile their ramparts: but he said: It was a meer mockery, considering that they had already gained the walls, and were within the City of their enemies, to make means not to fight with them. Finding the City full of Statues and painted Tables which were brought out of Sicily, he made proclamation, that the Sicilians from all their Cities should come for to own and carry away whatsoever had been theirs: but of all the pillage he would not allow any one, either slave, or newly enfranchised of his own train, to seize upon, nor so much as buy ought, notwithstanding that there was driving and carrying away otherwise on all hands. The greatest and most familiar friend that he had, *Lelutius* used to be Consul of Rome: him he favoured and set forward his suit in all that he could: by which occasion he demanded of one *Pompeius*, who was thought to make labour for the same dignity, whether it were true that he was a Competitor or no? now it was supposed that this *Pompeius* was a minimalist

minstrels (on that used to play on the flute; who made answer again, that he stood not for the Consulship: and that which was more, he promised to assist *Lalius*, and to get all the voices that he could for him: thus while they believed his words, and expected his helping hand, they were deceived in the end; for they were given to understand for certain, that this *Pompeius* was in the common Hall labouring hard for himself, going about unto every Citizen one after another, requesting their voices in his own behalf: whereas, when all others took stomach and were offended, *Scipio* laughed apace, and said: We are even well enough served for our great folly, thus to stay and wait all this while upon a fluter and piper, as it we had been to pray and invoke not men, but the gods, *Appian Claudius* was in election and concurrence against him for the office of Consulship, saying in a bravery: That he used to salute all the Romans by name and by surname upon his own knowledge of them, without the help of a prompter, whereas *Scipio* scarce knew one of them all: Thou sayest truth (quoth *Scipio*) for I have been always careful not to know many, but rather not to be unknown of any. He gave counsel unto the Roman Citizens, at what time as they warred against the Cethebians, for to send both him and his competitor together into the camp, in quality either of Lieutenants, or of Colonels over a thousand foot, to the end that they might have the testimony of other Captains and expert warriors indeed, whether of them twain performed his service and devoir better. Being created Censor, he deprived a young Gallant of his horse, for that being given excessively to feast and make good cheer, whiles the City of *Carthage* was besieged, he had caused a certain marchpaine to be made by palfry-work in form of a City, and called it *Carthage*, and when hee had done, let it upon the board to be spoiled and sacked (forsooth) by his companions; and when this youth would needs know of him why he was thus disgraced and degraded, as to lose his horse of service, which was allowed him from the State: Because (quoth he) you will needs ridle and pill *Carthage* before me. During the time that he was Censor, he seeing one day *C. Licinius* as hee passed by: Now surely I knew this man (quoth he) for a perjured person, but for that there is none to accuse him, I will not be both his Judge and a Witness also to give evidence against him, Being sent by the Senate a third Commissioner with other Triumvirs, according as *Cicero* much said:

*Mens manners to observe and oversee  
Where they do well, and where they faulty be:*

to visit also and look into the States of Cities, Nations, and Kings: When he was arrived at *Alexandria*, and disembarked, as he came first to land, he went hooded, as it were, with his robe to cover his head: but the Alexandrians running from all parts of the City to see him, requested him to discover his head, that his face might be the better seen; and he had no sooner uncovered his visage, but they all cried out with great acclamations, applauding and clapping their hands in signe of joy. And when the King himselfe of *Alexandria* strained and strived with great pain, to graffe (to idle, and delicate he was otherwise) to keep pace with him and the other commissioners, as they walked, *Scipio* rounded *Panatus* softly in the ear and said: The Alexandrians have reaped already the fruit, and enjoyed the benefit of my voyage, for that by our means they have seen their King to walk and go afoot. There accompanied him in this voyage a friend of his and a Philosopher named *Panatus*, and five servitors besides to wait upon him, and when one of these five happened to die in this journey, he would not buy another in a forraign country for to supply his place, but sent for one to *Rome*, to serve in his turne. It seemed to the people of *Rome* that the Numantines were invincible and inexpugnable, for that they had vanquished and defeated so many Captains and leaders of the Romans: whereupon they chose this *Scipio* Consul the second time for to manage this war: now when many a lusty young Gallant made means and prepared to follow him in this service, the Senate empeached them, alleging colourably, that *Italy* thereby should be left destitute of men for the defence of the Countrey, what need soever should be: so they would not suffer him to take that money out of the Treasury which was prest and ready for him, but assigned and ordained certain money from the Publicans and Farmers of the Cities customes and revenues to furnish him, whole dayes of payment were not yet come: As for money (quoth *Scipio*) I stand not in such need thereof, that I should stay therefore, for out of mine own and my friends purses I shall have sufficient to defray my charges, but I complain rather that I may not be allowed to leve and lead forth my fouldiers such as I would, and be willing to serve, considering that it is dangerous war which we are to wage; for if it be in regard of our enemies valour, that our people have to often been beaten and spoiled by them, then we shall find it a hopecpee of service and a hard, to encounter such; but if it be long of our own mens cowardize, no lesse difficult will it be, because we are to fight with the slender help of such. When he was newly arrived at the camp, hee found there great disorder, much loosenesse, superstition, and wastfull superfluity in all things: so he banished presently all Diviners, Prophets, and Tellers of Fortune; he rid out of the way all sacrificing Priests, all Bauds likewise that kept Brothel-houses he chased forth: and he gave streight charge that every man should send away all manner of Vessels and Utensils, save only a pot or kettle to seeth his meat in, a spic to roast, and a drinking jug of earth: and as for silver plate, he allowed no man more in all then weighed two pounds: he put down all baines and troups, but if any were disposed to be annoiued, he gave order that every man should take pain to rub himselfe; for he said that beasts who had no hands of their own, needed another for to rub and curry them: he ordained that his fouldiers should take their dinner standing, and eat their meat not hot and without

without fire, but at supper, they might sit down who that list, and feed upon bread or single grewe and plaine pottage, together with one simple dish of flesh, either boiled or roast: as for himselfe he wore a pallade, or fouldiers coat all black, butted close, or buckled before, saying: That hee scorned for the shame of his Army. He met with certain Carraons and labouring beasts belonging to some *Alexandrian*, a Colonel of a thousand man, carrying drinking cups, and other plate enriched with precious stones, and wrought curiously by the hands of *Thericles*; whereupon he said unto him: Thou shalt make thyselfe unfit to serve me and thy Countrey for these thirty dayes, being such an one as shew art, and wisely being given to these luperflinities, thou art disabled for doing thy selfe good all the dayes of thy life. Another there was, who shewed him what a trim shield, or target he had, finely adorned, and richly adorned; Here is a fair and goodly shield indeed (quoth he) my young man, but I tell thee, a Roman fouldier ought to trust his right hand better then his left: There was one who carrying upon his shoulder a bunch of pales, or burden of stakes for to pitch in the camp, complained that he was overladen; Thou art but well enough served (quoth he) in that thou reposest more confidence in these stakes then in thy sword. Seeing his enemies the Numantines how they shew rash, desperate, and foolishly bent, he would not in that fit charge upon them and give batel, but held off still, saying: That with tract of time he would buy the shyness and feyness of his Affairs: For a good Captain (quoth he) ought to do like a wise Physician, who will never proceed to the cutting or diminishing of a part, but upon extremity, namely, when all other means of Physick do faile: howbeit when hee spied a good occasion and fit opportunity, hee pulled the Numantines and overthrew them: which when the old beaten fouldiers or officers of the Numantines saw, they rebuked and railed upon their own men thus defeated, asking them why they ran away and suffered themselves to be beaten by those whom they had joiled to when before: but one of the Numantines answered: Because the sheep be the very game that they were in times past: marry they have changed their shepherd. After he had forced the City of *Numance* by assault, and entered now the second time with triumph into *Rome*, he fell into some variance and debate with *C. Gracchus*, in the behalfe of the Senate and certain allies and confederates: whereupon the common people taking a spleen and displeasure against him, made such clamours at him upon the *Bastia*, when he was purposed to speak and give remonstrances unto them, that thereupon hee altered this speech: There was never yet any outcries and alarms of whole camps, nor shouts of armed men ready to give batel, that could astonish and daunt me: no more shall the rude cry of a confused multitude trouble me, who know assuredly that *Italy* is not their Mother, but their step-Daughter. And when *Gracchus* with his comforts and adherents cried out aloud: Kill the Tyrant there, kill him: A Great reason (quoth he) have they to take away my life, who war against their own Country: for they know so long as *Scipio* is on foot, *Rome* cannot fall, nor *Scipio* stand when *Rome* is laid along.

So hee made use of his sword, devining and calling about how to make sure his reproaches and avenues to assault strong fort, when a Centurion came unto him and said: With the losse but of ten men you may be Master of the piece: Wilt thou then (quoth he) be one of those ten? And when another who was a Colonel and a young man, demanded of him what service he intended to do? If I will (quoth he) that my waist-coat or shirt were privy to my mind, I would put it off presently and take in the fire. He was a great enemy to *Scipio*, so long as *Scipio* lived; but when he was once dead hee took it very heavily, and commanded his own sons to go under the beere, and carry him upon their own shoulders to buriall, saying withal: That he gave the gods hearty thanks that *Scipio* was born at *Rome*: and in no place else.

*C. C. Marcius*, being risen from a base degree by birth unto the government of State, and all by the means of Arms, fited for the greater Edification, called curule; but perceiving that he could not compass it, made sure the very same day for the lesse: and notwithstanding that he went besides both the one and the other, yet he said: That he doubted not one day to be the greatest man of all the Romans: Being troubled with the swelling of the veins, called *Varices*, in both his legs: he suffered the Chirurgian to cut those of the one leg, without being bound or tyed for the matter, ordering the operation of his hand, and never gave one groan, or so much as bent his browes all the whiles; but when the Chirurgian would have gone to the other leg, Nay stay there (quoth he) for the cure of such a Malady as this, is not worth the grievous pains that belongeth thereto, Hee had a Nephew, or Sisters Son named *Lufius*, who in the time that his Uncle was second time Consul, would have forced and abused a youth in the prime of his years, named *Trebonius*, who began but then, amidst his charge to bearmars: this young sprigall made no more ado but slew him outright: and when many there were who charged and accused him for this murder, he denied not the facts, but confessed plainly that he had killed his Captain, and withal declared the cause publicly: *Marius* himselfe being advertised hereof, caused to be brought unto him a Coronet, such as usually was given unto those who had performed in war some worthy exploit, and (e) with his own hand let it upon the head of this youth *Trebonius*. Being encamped very neer to the Camp of the Tentones, in a plot of ground where there was but little water; when his fouldiers complained that they were loit for water, and ready to dye for very thirst, he shewed them a River not far off, running along the enemies Camp; Yonder (quoth he) there is water enough for to be bought with the price of your blood: Then lead us to it quickly, answered his fouldiers, whiles our blood is liquid and will run, and never let us stay so long till it be clutered and dried up quite with drought.

It is good to lie off and temporise, when enemies are desperate.

A Example of singularity justice.

\* Or Caesar.

\* The son of Sylla.

drought. During the time of the Cimbrians war, he endured at once with the right of the Burgeois of Rome, a thousand men all \* Cambrines, in consideration of their good service in that war; a thing that was contrary to Law: now when some blamed him for transgressing the Laws, he answered and said: That he could not hear what the Laws said, for the great rustling and clattering that harness and armor made. In this time of the Civil War, seeing himself enclosed round about with trenches and ramparts, and streight beleaguered, he endured all, and waited his best opportunity, and when *Papilius* \* *Silo* Captain General of the enemies said unto him: *Marius* if thou be so great a Warriour as the name goeth of thee, come forth of the Camp, and combat with me hand to hand: Nay, said he, and if thou art so brave a Captain as thou wouldst be taken, force me to combat if thou canst.

*Carulus Lucatius* in the forefald Cimbrian war, lay encamped along the River *Acheftis*, and when the Romans law that the Barbarians were about to passe over the water, and to set upon them, retired and dislodged presently, what reasons and persuasions foever their Captain could use to the contrary: but when he saw he could do no good, nor cause them to stay, himself ran away with the foremost, to the end that it should not seem that they fled cowardly before their enemies, but dutifully followed their Captain.

*Sylla*, surnamed *Felix*, i. e. Happy, among other prosperities, counted these two for the greatest: the one, that he lived in love and amity with *Metellus Pius*; the other, that he had now destroyed the City of *Athenis*, but saved it from being razed.

*C. Popilius*, was sent unto King *Antiochus* with a letter from the Senate of Rome, the tenour whereof was this: That they commanded him to withdraw his forces out of *Egypt*, and not to usurp the Kingdom which appertained to the Children of *Ptolomaeus*, being Orphans. The King seeing *Popilius* coming toward him through his Camp, saluted him a far off very courteously: but *Popilius* without any salutations, or greeting again, delivered him the letter; which *Antiochus* read, and after he had read it, answered him that he would think upon the matter that the Senate willed him to do, and then give him his dispatch; whereupon *Popilius* drew a circle round about the King, with a vine rod that he had in his hand, saying: Resolve I advise you sir, before you pass forth of this compasse, and give me my answer: all that were present wondered, and were astonished at the boldness and resolution of this man: but *Antiochus* presently answered him: That he would do whatsoever pleased the Romans; then *Popilius* saluted him most lovingly and embraced him.

*Lucullus* in *Armenia* went with ten thousand footmen, and one thousand horse, to meet with King *Tigranes*, who was an hundred and fifty thousand strong, for to give him battell: the first day it was of October, and the very day of the month upon which before time the Roman Army under the conduct of one of the *Scipios* had been defeated by the Cimbrians: and when one said unto him: That the Romans fear that day exceedingly, as being dismal and unfortunate: Why (quoth he) even therefore ought we this very day to fight courageously and valiantly, to the end that we may make this day to be joyful and happy, which the Romans hold as cursed and unhappy: Now when the Romans did most dread the men at arms of *Armenia*, seeing them in their compleat harness, armed at all pieces, and mounted on bard horses, he bade them be of good cheer and not to fear: For (said he) you shall find more ado to dispoil and disarm them, then you shall have in killing them: himself mounting first up to the top of a certain little hill, after he had well viewed and considered the Barbarians how they moved and wayed to and fro: he cried out with a loud voice unto his souldiers: My good friends and companions, the day is ours; and in very truth, they were put to flight all at once of their own selves, without any onset or charge given them: and in such sort *Lucullus* followed the chase, that he killed in the very rout, above one hundred thousand, and lost not of his own but five men only.

*Cneus Pompeius*, surnamed *Magnus*, i. e. the Great, was as well beloved of the Romans as his Father before him was hated: who being yet very young, he sided to the faction of *Sylla*: and notwithstanding that he had no office of State, nor was so much as one of the Senate; yet he levied a mighty power of armed men from all parts of *Italy*: now when *Sylla* called him unto him, he said: That he would not make shew of his souldiers unto his Sovereign and General, before they had made some spoil, and drawn blood of their enemies: and in very deed he came not unto him with his power, before that he had defeated in many battels sundry Captains of his enemies. Afterwards being sent by *Sylla* with commission of a Commander into *Scilly*, understanding that his souldiers as they marched brake out of order and rank, and would go forth to rob and spoil, and commit many riots by the way, he put to death all the country as without licence, departed from their Colours, and went running up and down the country: and as for such as he sent abroad with warrant about any Commission or business of his, he scaled up their swords within the scabbards with his own signet. He was at the very point to have put all the Mamertines to the sword, for that they banded against *Sylla*; but *Sthenis* one of the inhabitants, an Orator, and a man that could do much with the people and lead them with his persuasive Orations, said unto him: That it were not well, that for one mans fault he should cause so many innocents to die: for I (quoth he) am the only man culpable, and the cause of all this mischief, having by my persuasions induced my friends, and with threats forced mine enemies to take part with *Marius* and follow his standard: *Pompeius* wondering at this resolute remembrance of his, said: That he was content to pardon the Mamertines, who suffered themselves to be led and perverted by such a personage, as held the safety of his owne

Country.

Country more deare than his own life: for he forgave the whole City and *Sthenis* himselfe. After this being passed over sea into *Africa* against *Domitius*, and having won the field in a great battell, when his souldiers saluted him by the name of Emperour or Sovereign Captain generally, he said unto them: That he would not accept of that honourable title, so long as the rampart about his enemies campe stood; he had no sooner said the word, but they ran all at once to this service, notwithstanding it was a great shew of raine, plucked down the palliads, mounted over the rampart, entered the campe and sacked it. At his returne home, *Sylla* made exceeding much of him otherwise, and did him great honour, but among many other, he was the first man that filled him with the surname of *the African*: howbeit, when he minded to enter triumph into Rome, *Sylla* would have hindered him, alledging for his reason, That he was not as yet admitted and sworn a Senator: whereat *Pompeius* turning to those that were present: It seemeth (quoth he) that *Sylla* is ignorant how much he is indebted to those that worship the sun rising than letting: (which words when *Sylla* heard, he cried out with a loud voice, Let him triumph a Gods name, for I see well he will have it and yet for all that, *Servilius* a man of the senators degree, withstood his triumph, and took great indignation against him; and many of his own souldiers let themselves against him and dashed it quite, so that they might not have certain gifts and rewards; which they pretended were due unto them: but *Pompeius* said with a cleare and audible voice, That he would sooner leave triumph and all, than to be looked upon as to flatter and make court unto his souldiers: at which words *Servilius* said unto him: By this now I see well (O *Pompeius*) that thou art truly named *Magnus*, i. e. Great and worthy indeed to triumph. There was a suttome at Rome, that the Knights or Gentlemen, after they had served in the wars the compleat time set down and limited by the laws, should present their horses in the market place before the two reformers of manners, called Censours, and there openly receive and relate unto them in what wars or battels they had fought, and the Captains under whom they had borne armes, to the end that according to their demerits they might receive condigne praise or blame. It fell out that *Pompeius* being Consul, himselfe led his own horse of service by the bridle, and presented him before *Gellius* and *Lentulus*, Censours for the time being; and when they according to the order and manner in that behalf, demanded of him whether he had served in the wars so many yeares as the Law required: Even all (quoth he) fully, and that under my selfe, the soveraign Commander at all times. Being in *Spain*, he light upon certain papers and writings of *Sertorius*, wherein were many letters misliffe sent from the principall Senators of Rome, and namely such as solicited and called *Sertorius* to Rome, for to raise some innovations, and make a change in the State: these letters he flung all into the fire, giving them occasion and opportunity by this means, who intended mischief and were ill bent, to change their minds, repent and amend. *Phraates* King of the Parthians sent unto him certaine Embassadors to request him that he would not passe over the river *Euphrates*, but to make it the middle frontier and bound between them; both: Nay rather (quoth *Pompeius*) let justice be the indifferent limit between the Parthians and the Romans. *L. Lucullus*, after he was returned from his wars and conquests, gave himselfe over excessively to all pleasures, and to live most sumptuously, reproving *Pompeius* for this: That he desired always from time to time more and more, great charges and employments even above his age, and unfitting those yeares of his: unto whom *Pompeius* made this answer: That it was a thing more unbefitting old yeares, for a man to abandon himselfe to delights and pleasures, than to attend the weighty affaires of the Common weale. Upon a time when he was sick, the Physicians prescribed that he should eate of a black-bird: great laying there was in many places for that bird, but none could be found, for that it was not their season nor the time of the yeare; but one there was, who said that if he would send to *Lucullus*, he might have of them, for he kept them in mure all the yeare long: And what needs that (quoth he) cannot *Pompeius* recover and live, if *Lucullus* were not a waster and a delicat given to belly-chere? And so leaving the Physicians prescription, he compoiled and framed himselfe to eate that which was ordinary and might be found in every place. In regard of a great famine and scarcity of corne and victuals at Rome, he was ordained in outward shew of words, the grand purveyor or general superintendent and over-seeer for victuals, but in effect and authority, Lord indeed both of sea and land: by which occasion he made voyages into *Africa*, *Sardinia* and *Sicily*, where, after he had provided a mighty deale of corne, he intended presently to have returned with all speed to Rome; but there arose a terrible tempest, informed much as the Pilots and Mariners themselves made no haste to go to sea and set saile; but he in his own person embarked first, and when he was on ship-board, he commanded to weigh anchor, saying with a loud voice, Saile we needs must, there is no remedy, but to live there is not such necessity. When the quarrell between him and *Cesar* was broken out and fully discovered, there was one *Marcellinus*, (a man that before time had been advanced by him, and yet afterwards turned to the adverse part and faction of *Cesar*) who in a frequent assembly of the Senate, charged and challenged him to his face for many things, and spake spitefull words against him: *Pompeius* could not hold, but answered him thus: Bassest not thou *Marcellinus*, in this open place to miscall and rale upon me, who have made thee eloquent, whereas before thou couldst not speake at all? Who have fed thee full, even untill thou be ready to cast up thy stomack, where before thou wert hungry and ready to pine for famine? Unto *Cato*, who chid and reproved him sharply for that he would never believe his words, when he foretold him many times, that the puissance and increase of *Cesars* State, unto whom he lent his hand, would one day greatly prejudice

H h

and

and hurt the weale publike, he answered, Your counsell indeed was wiser, but mine more loving and friendly. In speaking of himselfe freely, he said, That all offices of State, he both enioyed sooner upon than he looked himselfe, and also forwent them before it was expected that he would. After the battell of *Pharsalia* when he fled into *Egypt*, and was to passe out of his gally into a little barke or fisher-boat, which the King had sent unto him for to bring him to land, he turning unto his wife and son, said no more but this verse out of *Euripides*:

*Whom since in court of Tyrant forces, became*

*His slaves anon, though free they thither come.*

Being passed over in this barke, after he had received one blow with a sword, he gave only a sigh and groane, and without saying one word, he covered his own face with his garment, and yielded himselfe to be killed.

*Cicero* the great Orator was mocked of some for that surname of his which alludeth unto a Cich-pease; inasmuch as his friends gave him counsell to change his name: but he contrariwise said, that he would make the name of the *Ciceroes* more noble and renowned than the *Ciceros*; the *Caules*, or the *Scauri*. He offered unto the gods a goodly faire vessel of silver, in which he caused to be engraven his two fore-names, *Marcus* and *Tullius* in letters; but for the third, to wit, *Cicero* his surname, he commanded to be embossed or chased the forme of a Cich-pease. He said that those Orators who used to straine their voices, and cry aloud in the Pulpit, were privy to their own weakness and insufficiency otherwise, and had recourse to this one help, like as creepies and lame-folke to their horses for to mount upon. *Verrus* had a son defamed for the abuse of his body in the stature of his youth; and yet the said *Verrus* stuck not to slander *Cicero* and saile upon him, even to these broad and foule tearmes, as to call him a filthy wanton and a buggerer: whereto *Cicero* answered thus: Thou dost not know that it were more seemely to rebuke thy children for this within-doors in some few set part of thy house close shut. *Marcus* one day in debating and contending with him, said, Thou hast brought more to their death by thy testimonies and depositions, than thou hast saved with all thy good pleading: I confesse as much (quoth *Cicero* againe) for I have more truth and fidelity in me by far than eloquence. The same *Metellus* demanded of him who was his father, reproaching him (as it were) thereby that he was a new upstart, and a gentleman of the first head: Unto whom readily, Thy mother (quoth he) hath made this question more hard on thy part to be answered: now was *Metellus* his mother thought to be an unchaste woman and naught of her body; and *Metellus* himselfe was counted a waine braine-sicke and slippery fellow, given over to his wanton lulls and desires. This *Metellus* had caused to be set upon the sepulchre of one *Diadromus*, who had been his Master sometime to teach him Rhetorick, the pourtraiture of a Crow in stone: wherupon *Cicero* took occasion to come upon him in this wise: A just recompence indeed and fit for him, because he hath taught this man to lye and not to speake. \* *Vatinius* was a lewd man, and his adversary: how a rumour abroad that he was dead: but afterwards when he found it to be a false brumpe: A mischief take him for me (quoth *Cicero*) that made this lie first. There was one supposed to be an *African* borne, who said unto him: That he heard him not when he spake: I marvel at that (quoth *Cicero*) considering thine (f) eares be bored as they are and have holes in them; \* *C. Popilius* would have been taken and reputed for a great lawyer although he had no law in the world in him, and was besides a man of very grosse capacity: this man was served with a writ to appeare in the court for to beare witness of a truth-touching a certain fact in question; but he answered, That he knew nothing at all: True (quoth *Cicero*) for peradventure you meane of the Law, and thinke that you are asked the question of it. *Hortensius* the Orator, who pleaded the cause of *Verrus*, had received of him for a fee or a gentle reward a Jewell with the pourtraiture of *Sphinx* in \* silver: it fell out so, that *Cicero* chanced to give out certain dark and ambiguous speech: As for me (quoth *Hortensius*) I cannot tell what to make of your words; for I am not one that useth to solve riddles and enigmatical speeches: Why man (quoth *Cicero*) and yet you have *Sphinx* in your house. He met upon a time with *Vopiscus* and his three daughters, the foulest that ever looked out of a paire of eyes: at which object he spake softly to his friends about him:

*This man (I weene) his children hath begot*

*In spite of Phœbus, and when he would it not.*

*Fausus* the son of *Sylla* was in the end so far indebted, that he exposed his goods to be sold in open sale and caused bills to be set up on posts in every quarter for to notify the same: Yea many (quoth *Cicero*) I like these bills and (g) \* proscriptions better than those that his father published before him. When *Caesar* and *Pompeius* were entered into open war one against another: I know full well (quoth *Cicero*) whom to flie, but I wot not unto whom to flie. He found great fault with *Pompeius* in that he left the City of *Rome*, and that he chose rather in this case to imitate the policy of *Themistocles* than of *Pericles*, saying, That the present state of the world resembled rather the time of *Pericles*, than of *Themistocles*. He drew at first to *Pompeius* side, and being with him, repented thereof. When *Pompeius* asked him wherhe had left *Pisus* his son-in-law; he answered readily: Even with your good father-in-law; meaning *Caesar*. There was one who departed out of *Caesar* Campe unto *Pompeius* and said, That he had made such haste, that he left his horse behind him; Thou canst skill (I perceive) better to save thy horses life than thine owne. Unto another, who brought word that the friends of *Caesar* looked foule and unpleasant: Thou saiest (quoth he) as much as I

they

they thought not well of his proceedings. After the battell of *Pharsalia* was lost, and that *Pompeius* was already fled, there was one *Nanius* who came unto him, and willed him not to despair, but be of good cheare, for that they had yet seven eagles left, (which were the standards of the legions: 7) Seven eagles (quoth he) that were somewhat indeed, if we had to war against jakes and jackdaws. After that *Caesar*, upon his victory, being Lord of all, had caused the statues of *Pompeius*, which were cast downe to be set up againe with honour: *Cicero* laid of *Caesar* in setting up the statues of *Pompeius*, he hath pitched his owne more surely. He so highly esteemed the gift of eloquence and grace of well speaking, yea, and he tooke so great paines with ardent affection, for to performe the thing, that having to plead a cause only before the Centumvirs or hundred judges, and the day set down being neare at hand for the hearing and trial thereof; when one of his servants *Erastus*, brought him word that the cause was put off to the next day, (h) he was so well contented and pleased therewith, that incontinently he gave him his freedom for that news.

*Calpurnius Caesar*, at what time as he being yet a young man, fled and avoided the fury of *Sylla*, fell into the hands of certain pirates or rovers, who at the first demanded of him no great sum of money for his rancome, wherat he mocked and laughed at them, as not knowing what manner of person they had gotten; and so of himselfe promised to pay them twice as much as they asked; and being by them guarded and attended upon very diligently, all the while that he sent for to gather the said sum of money which he was to deliver them, he willed them to keepe silence and make no noise, but he might sleep and take his repose: during which time that it was in their coltidge, he exercised himselfe in writing as well verse as prose and read the same to them when they were composed; and if he saw that they would not praise and commend those Poems and Critiques sufficiently to his contentment, he would call them senseless foolls and barbarous, yea, and after a laughing manner, threaten to hang them: and to say a truth, within a while after, he did as much for them: for when his rancome was come, and he delivered once out of their hands, he leaved together a power of men and ships from out of the coasts of *Asia* for to pursue the said rovers, spoiled them and crucified them. Being returned to *Rome*, and having enterprised a lute for the sovereign Sacerdottall dignity against *Caecilius*, who was then a principall man at *Rome*; when as his foreign acquaintance accompanied him as far as to the utmost gates of his house, when he went into Mars field where the election was held, he took his leave of her and said: Mother you shall have this day your son to be chief Pontifice and high Priest, or else be banished from the City of *Rome*. He put away his wife *Pompeia* upon an ill name that went of her, as if he had been naught with *Clodius*: wherupon when *Clodius* afterwards was called into question judicially for the fact, and *Caesar* likewise convented into the court, peremptorily for to beare witness of the truth; being examined upon his oath, he swore that he never knew any ill at all by his wife: and when he was urged and replied upon againe, wherefore he had put her away? He answered, That the wife of *Caesar* ought not only to be innocent and cleare of crime, but also of all suspicion of crime. In reading the noble acts of *Alexander* the great, the teares tricked down his cheeks; and when his friends desired to know the reason why he wept: At my age (quoth he) *Alexander* had vanquished and subdued *Darius*, and I have yet done nothing. As he passed along through a little poor town circuite within the Alps; his familiar friends about him merrily asked one another whether there were any factions and contentions in that burrough about superiority, and namely, who should be the chiefe? wherupon he staid suddenly; and after he had studied and amused awhile within himselfe: I had rather (quoth he) be the first here, than the second in *Rome*. As for haughty and adventurous enterprizes, he was wont to say, They should be executed and not consulted upon: verily when he passed over the river *Raicon*, which divideth the province of *Gaul* from *Italy*, for to lead his power against *Pompeius*: Let the Die (quoth he) be thrown for all: as if he would say, This call for it, there is but one chance to lole all. When *Pompeius* was fled from *Rome* to the sea side, and *Metellus* the superintendent of the publike treasury, would have hindered him for taking forth any money from thence, keeping the treasure house fast shut, he threatened to kill him; wherat *Metellus* seeming to be amazed at his audacious words: Tush, tush, (quoth he) good young man, I would thou shouldst know that it is harder for me to speake the word than to do the deed. And for that his souldiers staid long ere they were transported over unto him from *Brundisium*, to *Dyrhachium*, he embarked himselfe alone into a small vessel, without the knowledge of any man who he was, purposing to passe the seas alone without his company; but it hapned so, that he was like to have been cast away in a gulf, and drowned with the waves of the sea: wherupon he made himselfe knowne unto the Pilot, and spake unto him aloud: Assure thy selfe and rest confident in fortune, for wot well thou hast *Caesar* a ship-board: howbeit for that time he was impeached that he could not crosse the seas, as well in regard of the tempest which grew more violent, as also of his souldiers who ran unto him from all sides, and complained unto him for griefe of heart, saying, That he offered them great wrong to attend upon other forces, as if he distrusted them. Not long after this he fought a great battell, wherein *Pompeius* had the upper hand for a time, but for that he followed not the traine of his good fortune, he retired into his campe; which when *Caesar* saw, he said, The victory was once this day our enemies, but their head and Captaine knew not so much. Upon the Plains of *Pharsalia*, the very day of the battell. *Pompeius* having arranged his army in array, commanded his souldiers to stand their ground, and not to advance forward, but to expect their enemies, and receive the charge; wherein *Caesar* afterwards said: He did amisse and grossly

H h 2

A man of honour can not be too careful for to quit him well in his calling and vocation.

\* Or thus, I have put it upon the dice, once and all of it.

g It is a pleasure to see the ruin and overthrow of such enterprizes and covetous houses.

\* Or Varius.

f Noting that by condition he was a slave.

\* Or gold.



failed, for that thereby he let slack as it were the vigour and vehemency of his souldiers, which is miltitured unto them by the violence of the first onfet, and abated that heat allof discouragement which the said charge would have brought with it. When he had defeated at his very first encounter, *Pharaces* King of *Pontus*; he wrote thus unto his friends: I came, I saw, I vanquished. After that *Scipio* and thole under his conduct were difcomfited and put to flight in *Africk*; when he heard that *Cato* had killed himself, he said, I envy thy death *O Cato*, for that thou hast envied me the honour of saving thy life. Some there were who had *Antony* and *Dolabella* in jealousie and suspition, and when they came unto him and said, That he was to look unto himself, and stand upon his good guard, she made them this answer, That he had no distrust nor feare of them wholed an idle life, be well coloured, and in fo good liking as they: but I feare (quoth he) these pale and leane fellows, pointing unto *Brutus* and *Cassius*. One day as he fate at the table when speech was moved, and the question asked, what kind of death was best? Even that (quoth he) which is sudden and least looked for.

\* 1-10. Millions of Souldiers.  
\* 1-10. Millions of Souldiers.  
\* 1-10. Millions of Souldiers.

*Cesar*, him I meane who first was named *Augustus*, being as yet in his youth, required and claimed of *Antony* as much money as mounted to two thousand and five hundred *Myriades*, which he had transported out of *Julius Cesar's* house after he was murdered, and gotten into his owne hands for that he intended to pay the Romans that which the said *Cesar* had bequeathed unto them by his last will and testament: for he had left by legacy unto every Citizen of *Rome* 75. \* drams of silver; but *Antony* detained the said sum of money to himselfe, and answered young *Cesar*, that if he were wife he should desist from demanding any such monies of him: which when the other heard, he proclaimed open port sale of all the goods that came to him by his patrimony, and indeed sold the same; and with the money raised thereof he satisfied the fore said legacies unto the Romans: in which doing he won all the hearts of the Citizens of *Rome* to himselfe, and brought their ill will and hatred upon *Antony*. Afterwards *Rymetaces* King of *Thracia* left the part of *Antony*, and returned to his side; but he overthrew himselfe so much at the table, being in his cups, and namely, in that he could talke of nothing else, but of this great good service, and calling in his teeth this worthy alliance and confederacy of his: so as he became odious therefore; in so much as one time at supper *Cesar* taking the cup, drank to one of the other Kings who late at the boord, jaying with a loud voice, Treason I love well, but traitors I hate. The Alexandrians after their City was won, looked for no better than to suffer all the extremities and calamities that might follow upon the forcing of a City by assault: but this *Cesar* mounting up into the publike place to make a speech unto the Citizens, having neare by unto him a familiar friend or his; to wit, *Arius*, an Alexandrian borne; pronounced openly a generall pardon, saying that he forgave the City: first, in the regard of the greatness and heauy thereof; secondly, in respect of King *Alexander* the Great their first founder: and thirdly, for *Arius* his sake, who was his loving friend. Understanding that one of his Procurators named *Eros*, who did negotiate for him in *Aegypt*, had bought a quail of the game, which inight would beat all other quailles, and was never conquered himselfe but continued still invincible: which quail notwithstanding, the said slave had caused to be roasted and so present: heient for him: and examined him thereupon whether it was true or no? And when he confessed Yea, he commanded him presently to be crucified and nailed to the mast of his ship. He placed *Arius* in *Sicily* for his agent and procurator, instead of one *Theodorus*; and when one presented unto him a little booke or bill, wherein were written these words, *Theodorus of Tharsis*: \* the bald is a thiefe, how thinke you is he not? when he had read this bill, he did nothing else but subscribe underneath: I thinke no lesse. He received yearly upon his birth day from *Mecenas*, (one of his familiar friends who conversed daily with him) a cup for a present. *Athenodorus* the Philosopher being of great yeares, craved license with his good favour to retire unto his own house from the court, by reason of his old age; and leave he gave him, but at his farewell *Athenodorus* said unto him, Sir, when you perceive yourselfe to be moved with choler, neither say nor do ought before you have repeated to your selfe all the 24. letters in the Alphabet: *Cesar* hearing this advertisement, took him by the hand: I have need still (quoth he) of your company and preference, and so retained him for one yeare longer, jaying withall this verse,

The hire of silence, now I see  
Is out of prill and jeopardy.

Having heard that King *Alexander* the Great at the age of two and thirty yeares, having performed most part of his conquests was in doubt with himselfe and perplexed what to do and how to be employed afterwards: I wonder (quoth he) that *Alexander* thought it not a more difficult matter to governe and preserve a great Empire after it is once gotten, than to win and conquer it at first. When he had enacted the law *Julia* as touching adultery, wherein is set down determinately the manner of processe against thole that be attaint of that crime, and how such are to be punished who be convicted thereof: it hapned that through impatience and heat of choler, he fell upon a young gentleman, who was accused to have committed adultery with his daughter *Julia*, in so much as he buffeted him well and thorowly with his owne fists: the young man thereupon cried unto him: Your selfe have made a law, *Cesar*, which ordaineth the order and forme of proceeding against adulteries: whereat he was so dismayed and abashed, yea, and so repented himselfe of this miscarriage, that he would not that day eat any supper. When he sent his nephew or daughters sonne *Caius* into *Armenia*, he praised unto the gods to accompany him with that good will of all men which *Pompey* had, with the valiantnesse of *Alexander* the Great, and with his

\* Or read  
there, that  
the bold or  
the thiefe,  
according to  
some Greek  
Copies.

own good fortune. He said, that he left unto the Romans for to succeed him in the Empire, one who never in his life had consulted twise of one thing, meaning *Tiberius*. Minding to appeare certain young Romane Gentlemen of honour and authority, who made a great noise and stirre in his presence; when he saw that for all his first admonitions he could do no good, he said unto them: Young Gentlemen give care unto me an old man, whom when I was young as you are, ancient men would give care unto. The people of *Athen* had offended and done him some displeasure, unto whom he wrote in this wise: You are not ignorant (I suppose) that I am displeased with you, for otherwise I would not have wintered in this little Isle *Egins*; and more than thus, he neither did nor laid afterwards unto them. When one of *Eurycles* his accusers had at large with all liberty and licentiousnesse of speech uttered against him (without any respect) what he would, he let him run on till, until he came to these words: And if these matters *Cesar* seeme not unto you notorious and hainous, command him to be executed unto me the seventh book of *Thucydides*. *Cesar* offended now at his audacious impudency, commanded him to be had away and led to prison; but being advertised that he was the only man left of the race and line of Captaine *Brasidas*, he sent for him, and after he had given him some few good admonitions, let him go. *Piso* had built him a most stately and magnificent house, even from the foundation to the rooffe thereof, which when *Cesar* saw, he said, I rejoyceth my heart exceedingly to see thee build thus, as if *Rome* should continue world without end.

### Laconick Apophthegmes, or the notable Sayings of Lacedæmonians.

#### The Summary.

*Plutarch* had in the collection precedent among the *Apophthegmes* of renowned Greeks, mingled certaine notable sayings of King *Agessilaus* and other *Lacedæmonians*: but now he exhibiteth unto us a Treatise by it selfe of the said *Lacedæmonians*, who deserve no doubt to be registered apart by themselves, as being a people, who (of all other nations destitute of the true knowledge of God) least abused their tongue. In which regard also he maketh a more ample description of their *Apophthegmes*, shewing sufficiently by so many pleasant speeches and lively re-encounters, that it was no marvel if so small a State (as Sparta was) flourish'd so long, being governed and peopled by men of such dexterity, and so well qualified in the parts both of body and mind, and yet who knew better to do than to say. Moreover, this Catalogue here is distinguished into four principall portions: whereof the first representeth the worthy speeches of Kings, General Captains, Lords and men of name in *Lacedæmon*; the second containeth the *Apophthegmes* of such *Lacedæmonians*, whose names are unknown: the third describeth briefly the customes and ordinances which were for the maintenance of their state; and the fourth compriseth certaine sayings of some of their women, wherein may be seen so much the more the valour and magnanimity of that Nation. As touching the profit that a man may draw out of these *Apophthegmes* it is very great in every respect: neither is there any person of what age or condition forever, but he may learne herein very much, and namely, how to speake little, to say well, and to carry himselfe very modestly, as the reading thereof will make proofe. We have noted also and observed somewhat at in the Margin, not particularizing upon every point; but only to give a taste and appetite unto the Reader for to meditate better thereof, and to apply unto his own use, both is and all the rest which he may there comprehend and understand.

### Laconick Apophthegmes, or the notable Sayings of Lacedæmonians.

*Agessilaus* a King of the *Lacedæmonians*, by nature given to heare and desirous to learne; when one of his familiar friends said unto him: I wonder fir since you take so great pleasure otherwise to heare men speake well and eloquently, that you do not entertaine the famous Sophister or Rhetorician *Philopanes* for to teach you? made him this answer: It is because I desire (a) to be their Scholer, whose follo I am, that is, among whom I am borne. And to another who demanded of him, how a Prince could raigin in laicity, not having about him his guards for the surety of his person; *Mary* (quoth he) if he rule his subjects as a good father governeth his children.

*Agessilaus* the Great, being at a certaine feast, was by lot chosen the Master of the said feast; and to him it appertained to set down a certaine law, both in what manner and how much every one ought to drink: now when the butler or skinker asked him how much he should poure out for every one, he answered: If thou be well provided and have good store of wine, fill out as much as every man list to call for; but (b) if thou have no great plenty of it, let every guest have alike. There was a malefactor, who being in prison endured constantly before him all manner of torments (which when he saw: that a cursed wretch is this & wicked in the highest degree, who doth employ this (c) patience and resolute fortune in the maintenance of his shamefull and mischievous parts, as he hath committed! One highly praised in his presence a certaine Master of Rhetorick, for that he could by his

H h 3

eloquent

a A Prince  
is to honor  
his native  
Country.

b Expenses  
proportion-  
able to the  
estate.  
c Patient  
ill employ-  
ed is ex-  
treme wis-  
kednesse.



eloquent tongue amplifie small matters, making them seeme great, whereupon he said: I take him not to be a good thoomaker, who putteth on a big shoe upon a little foot. When one in reasoning and debating a matter upon a time challenged him, and said, Sir, you gave your consent once unto it; and eftsionnes iterating the same words, charged him with his grant and promise: True indeed (quoth he) if the canie were just, I approved it in good earnest and gave my promise: but if not, I quoth he barely say the word and no more; but as the other replied again and said, Yea, but Kings ought to accomplish and performe whatsoever they seeme once to grant, and it be but with the nod of the head: Nay, (said he again) they are no more bound thereto, than those that come unto them are tied for to speake and demand all things just and reasonable, yea, and to observe the opportunity, and that which fitteth and forthwell with Kings. When he heard any men either to praise or dispraise others, he said: That it behoved to know the nature, disposition, and behaviour no lesse of those who lo spake, than of the parties of whom they did speak. Being whiles he was very young, at a certain publicke and festivall solemnity, wherein young boies daunced (as the manner was) all naked, the warden or overseer of the said shew and dance, appointed him a place for to behold that sight, which was not very honourable: wherewith notwithstanding he stood well contented, albeit he was known to be heire apparant to the Crown, and already declared King; and withall said: I is very well for I will shew, that it is not the place which crediteth the person, but the person that giveth credit and honour to the place. A certain Physician had ordained for him in one sickness that he had a course of Physick to cure his malady, which was nothing easie and simple, but very exquisite, curious, and withall painfull: By *Cyffor* and *Pollux* (quoth he) my destiny be not to live, I shall not recover though I take all the drugs and medicines in the world. Standing one day at the altar of *Minerva*, surnamed *Chalcocron*, where he sacrificed an ox, there chanced a louse to bite him; and he was nothing dimaied and abashed to take the said louse, but before them all who were present, killed her, and swore by the gods, saying, That it would do him good at the heart to serve them all so who should treacherously lay wait to assaile him, yea, though it were at the very altar. Another time, when he saw a little boy drawing a mouse which he had caught out of a window, and that the said mouse turned upon the boy and bit him by the hand, inasmuch as she made him leave his hold, and so escaped: he shewed the sight unto those that were present about him, and said: Lo, (d) if so little a beast and silly creature as this hath the heart to revenge upon those that do it injury, what think you is meet and reason that men should do? Being desirous to make war upon the King of *Persia*, for the deliverance and freedom of those Greeks who did inhabit *Asia*; he went to consult with the Oracle of *Jupiter* within the forest *Delphos*, as touching this design of his; and when the Oracle had made answer according to his mind, namely, That if it pleased him, he should enterprize that expedition: he communicated the same to the controllers of State called *Ephors*: who willed him also to go forward, and aske the counsell likewise of *Apollo* in the City of *Delphos*; and being there, he entered into the Chappell from whence the Oracles were delivered, and said thus: O *Apollo*, art thou also of the same mind that thy father is? And when he answered, yea; thereupon he was chosen for the general to conduct this war, and set forth in his voyage accordingly. *Tissaphernes*, lieutenant under the King of *Persia* in *Asia*, being astonished at his arrivall, made a composition and accord with him at the very first; in which treaty he capitulated and promised to leave unto his behoofe all the Towns and Cities of the Greeks which are in *Asia*, free and at liberty to be governed according to their own laws: meane while he dispatched messengers in post to the King his Master, who sent unto him a strong and puissant Army: upon the confidence of which forces he gave defiance, and denounced war, unless he departed with all speed out of *Asia*: *Agefilans* being well enough pleased with this treacherous breach of the agreement, made semblant as though he would go first into *Caria*; and when *Tissaphernes* gathered his forces into those parts to make head against him, all on a sudden he invaded *Phrygia*, where he won many Cities, and raised rich booties from thence, saying unto his friends: That to break faith and promise unjustly made unto a friend was impiety; but to abuse and deceive an enemy, was not only just, but also pleasant and profitable. Finding himselfe weak in cavalry, he returned to the City *Ephesus*, where he intimated thus much unto the rich men, who were willing to be exempt from going in person unto the wars, that they should every one set forth one horse and a man: by which means within few daies he levied a great number both of horse, and also of men able for service, instead of those that were rich and cowards; wherein he said, That he did imitate *Agamemnon*, who dispensed with a rich man who was but a dastard and durst not go to the war, for one faire and goodly mare. When he sold those prisoners for slaves, whom he had taken in the wars, the officers for this sale, by his appointment, made money of their cloaths and other furniture apart, but of their bodies, all naked by themselves: now many chapmen there were, who willingly bought their apparell, but few or none had any mind to the persons themselves, for that their bodies were soot and white, as having been delicately nourished and choicely kept within house and under covert, and seemed for no use at all, and good for nothing: *Agefilans* standing by: Behold my matters (quoth he) this is that for which you fight, shewing their spoiles; but these be they against whom you fight, pointing to the men. Having given *Tissaphernes* an overthrow in battell within the Countrey of *Lydias*, and slaine a great number of his men, he over-ran and harried all the Kings Provinces: and when he sent unto him presents of gold and silver, praying him to come to some agreement of peace, *Agefilans* made this answer: As touching the treaty of peace, it was in the City of *Lacedaemon* power to do what they would; but otherwise, for his own part he tooke greater pleasure

d Natural  
it is for-  
very thing  
to defend  
it selfe.

to enrich his souldiers than to be made rich himselfe: as for the Greeks, they reputed it an honour not to receive gifts from their enemies, but to be Masters of their spoiles. *Megalates* the young son of *Spiradates*, who was of visage most faire and beautiful, came toward him as it were to embrace and kisse him, for that he thought (as he was right amiable) to be exceedingly beloved of him; but *Agefilans* turned his face away, inasmuch as the youth desired and would no more offer himselfe unto him; whereupon *Agefilans* demanded the reason thereof, and seemed to call for him; unto whom his friends made answer: That himselfe was the only cause, being afraid to kisse to faire a boy; but if he would not seeme to feare, the youth would returne and repaire unto him in place right willingly: upon this he stood musing to himselfe a good while, and said never a word; but then at length he brake forth into this speech: Let him even alone, neither is there any need now that you should say any thing to persuade him; for mine own part I account it a greater matter to be the conquerour, and have the better hand of such, than to win by force the strongest hold, or the most puissant and populous City of mine enemies: for I take it better for a man to preserve and save his own liberty to himselfe, than to take it from others. Moreover, he was in all other things a most precise observer in every point of whatsoever the laws commanded, but in the affaires and businesse of his friends, he said, That straightly to keep the rigour of justice, was a very cloake, and colourable pretence, under which they covered themselves who were not willing to do for their friends: to which purpose there is a little letter of his found written unto *Idrieus* a Prince of *Caria*, for the enlarging and deliverance of a friend of his, in these words: If *Nicias* have not transgressed, deliver him; if he have, deliver him for the love of me; but howsoever yet deliver him; and verily thus affected stood *Agefilans* in the greatest part of his friends occasions; howbeit, there fell out some cases, when he respected more the publicke utility, and used his opportunity therefore, according as he shewed good proofe. Upon a time, at the dislodging of his campe in great haste and hurrying, inasmuch as he was forced to leave a boy whom he loved full well behind him, for that he lay sick; when the party called instantly upon him by name, and besought him not to forsake him now at his departure, *Agefilans* turning back said: Oh how hard is it to be pitifull and wife both at once. Furthermore, as touching his diet and the cherishing of his body, he would not be served with more nor better than those of his traine and company. He never did eate untill he was fatished, nor tooke his drinke untill he was drunke, and as for his sleepe, it never had the command and mastery over him, but he tooke it only as his occasions and affaires would permit: for cold and heat he was so fitted and disposed, that in all seasons of the yeare he used to wear but one and the same sort of garment: his pavilion was alwaies pitched in the midst of his souldiers, neither had he a bed to lie in, better than any other of the meanest: for he was wont to lay, That he who had the charge and conduct of others, ought to surmount those private persons, who were under his leading, not in daintinesse and delicacy, but in suffrance of paine and travell, and in fortitude of heart and courage. When one asked the question in his presence: What it was wherein the laws of *Lycargus* had made the City of *Sparta* better? he answered, That this benefit it found by them; to make no reckoning at all of pleasures. And to another who marvelled to see so great simplicity and plainnesse, as well in feeding as apparell both of him, and also of other *Lacedaemonians*, he said, The fruit (my good friend) which we reape by this straight manner of life, is liberty and freedom. There was one who exhorted him to eate and remit a little this straight and austere manner of living: For that (quoth he) it would not be used but in regard of the incertitude of fortune; and because there may fall out such an occasion and time as might force a man so to do: Yea, but I (said *Agefilans*) do willingly accuse my selfe hereto, that in no mutation and change of fortune, I should not seeke for change of my life. And in very truth, when he grew to be aged, he did not for all his yeares give over and leave his hardnes of life: and therefore when one asked him, Why (considering the extreme cold winter, and his old age besides) he went without an upper coat or gaberdine? he made this answer, Because young men might learne to do as much, having for an example before their eyes, the eldest in their Countrey, and such also as were their governours. We read of him, that when he passed with his Army into the Thasians countrey, they lent unto him for his refectiion meale of all sorts geese and other fowles, comfitures, and pastry workes, fine cakes, marchpanes and sugar-meats, with all manner of exquisite viands, and drinke most delicate and costly: but of all this provision, he received none but the meale aforesaid: commanding those that brought the same to carry them all away with them, as things whereof he stood in no need, and which he knew not what to do with: In the end after they had been very urgent, and importuned him so much as possibly they could to take that curtesie at their hands, he willed them to deale all of it among the flots, which were indeed the slaves that followed the Campe: whereupon when they demanded the cause thereof, he said unto them: That it was not meet for those who professed valour and prowess to receive such dainties: Neither can that (quoth he) which serveth instead of a bait to allure and draw men to a servile nature, agree well with those who are of a bold and free courage. Over and besides, these Thasians having received many favours and benefits at his hands, in regard whereof they tooke themselves much bound and beholding unto him, dedicated Temples to his honour, and decreed divine worship unto him, no lesse than unto a very god, and hereupon sent an embassage to declare unto him this their resolution: when he had read their letters and understood what honour they minded to do unto him, he asked this one question of the Embassadors; whether their State and Countrey was able to deife men? And when they answered, Yea: Then (quoth he) begin to make your selves gods first, and

and when you have done so, I will believe that you also can make me a god. When the Greeke Colonies in *Asia*, had at their Parliaments ordained in all their chiefe and principall Cities to erect their statues; he wrote back unto them in this manner: I will not that you make for me any statue or image whatsoever, neither painted nor cast in mould, nor wrought in clay, ne yet cut and engraven any way. Seeing whilst he was in *Asia*, the house of a friend or host of his, covered over with an embowed rooffe of planks, beames, and spars foure-quayre; he asked him whether the trees in those parts grew so square? And when he answered, No, but they grew round: How then (quoth he) if they had grown naturally foure cornered, would you have made them round? He was asked the question upon a time, how far forth the marches and confines of *Lacedæmon* did extend: then he shaking a javelin which he held in his hand: Even as far (quoth he) as this is able to go. One demanded of him, why the City of *Sparta* was not walled about? See you not (quoth he) the walls of the *Lacedæmonians*; and therewith shewed him the Citizens armed. Another asked him the like question, and he made him this answer: That Cities ought not to be fortified with stones, with wood and timber, but with the prowesse and valiance of the Inhabitants. He used ordinarily to admonish his friends, not to seeke for to be rich in money, but in valour and vertue. And whensoever he would have a worke to be finished, or service to be performed speedily by his souldiers; his manner was, to begin himselfe first to lay hand unto it in the face of all. He stood upon this and would glory in it; that he travelled as much as any man in his company: but he vaunted of this; that he could rule and command himselfe more than his being a King. Unto one who wondering to see a *Lacedæmonian* maimed and lame, go to war, said unto the party: Thou shouldst yet at leastwise have called for an horse to serve upon: Knowest thou (quoth he) that in war we have no need of those that will flee away, but of such as will make good and keep their ground? It was demanded of him, how he won so great honour and reputation? In despising death (quoth he.) And being likewise asked why the Spartans used the sound of flutes when they fought? To the end (said he) that when in battell they march according to the measures, it may be known who be valiant, and who be cowards. One there was who reputed the King of *Perfia* happy, for that he attained very young to so high and puissant a State: Why so (quoth he) for *Permus* at his age was not unhappy nor unfortunate. Having conquered the greater part of *Asia*, he purposed with himselfe to make war upon the King himselfe, as well forth to break his long repose, as also to hinder him otherwise and stop his course, who minded with money to bribe and corrupt the Governours of the Greeke-Cities, and the Oratours that lead the people: but amidst this designe and deliberation of his he was called home by the *Ephori*, by reason of a dangerous war raised by the Greeke-States, against the City of *Sparta*, and that by means of great sums of money which the King of *Perfia* had sent thither; by occasion whereof forced he was to depart out of *Asia*, saying, That a good Prince ought to suffer himselfe to be commanded by the laws; and he left behind him much sorrow, and a longing desire after him among the Greeke-Inhabitants in *Asia* after his departure: and for that on the Persian peeces of coine, there was stamped or imprinted the image of an Archer: he said when he brake up his Campe, that the King of *Perfia* had chased him out of *Asia* with thirty thousand Archers: for so many golden Dariques had been carried by one *Timocrates* unto *Thebes* and *Athen*, which were divided among the Oratours and Governours of those two Cities, by means whereof they were solicited and stirred to begin war upon the Spartans: so he wrote a letter missive unto the *Ephori*, the tenour whereof was this: *Agefilaus* unto the *Ephori*, greeting. "We have inbued the greatest part of *Asia*, and driven the Barbarians from thence: also in *Ionia* we have made many armours; but since you command me to reape home by a day appointed: Know ye that I will follow hard after this letter, or peradventure prevent it: for the authority of command which I have, I hold not for my selfe, but for my native Country and confederates: and then in truth doth a Magistrate rule according to right and justice, when he obeyeth the laws of his Country and the *Ephori*, or such like as be in place of government within the City. Having crossed the straights of *Hellepont*, he entered into the Country of *Thrace*, where he requested of no Prince nor State of the Barbarians passage; but sent unto every one of them, demanding whether he should passe as through the land of friends or enemies? And verily all others received him friendly, and accompanied him honourably as he journeyed through their Countries: only those whom they call *Troadians*, (unto them as the report goeth, *Xerxes* himselfe gave presents, to have leave for to passe,) demanded of him for licence of quiet passage, a hundred Talents of silver, and as many women: but *Agefilaus* after a scoffing manner asked those who brought this message: And why do not they themselves come with you for to receive the money and women? So he led his Army forward; but in the way he encountered them well appointed, gaveth battell, overthrew them, and put many of them to the sword. which done, he marched farther. And of the Macedonian King he demanded the same question as before: who made him this answer, That he would consult thereupon: Let him consult (quoth he) what he will, meane while we will march on: the King wondering at his hardinesse, stood in great feare of him, and sent him word to passe in peaceable and friendly manner. The Thebians at the same time were confederate with his enemies: whereupon he foraged and spoiled their Countries as he went, and sent to the City of *Larissa* two friends of his, *Nemelos* and *Sciths*, to found them and see if they could practise effectually for to draw them to the league and amity of the *Lacedæmonians*, but thole of *Larissa* arrested thole Agents, and kept them in prison where-

where.

whereupon all the rest taking great indignation, were of this mind, that *Agefilaus* could do no lesse, but presently encampe himselfe and beleaguer the City *Larissa* round about: but he said that for to conquer all *Thestale*, he would not leese one of thole twaine: so upon composition and agreement, he recovered and got them againe. Being given to understand that there was a battell fought neare to *Corinth*, in which very few *Lacedæmonians* were slaine, but of Athenians, Argives, Corinthians, and their Allies, a great number: he was not once seene to have taken any joy or contentment at the news of the victory; but sighed deeply from the bottom of his heart, saying, Alas for unhappy *Greece*, who hath her selfe destroyed so many men of her own, as had been sufficient in one battell to have defeated all the Barbarians at once. But when the Pharlaians came to set upon the taile of his Army in his march, and to do them mischief and damage: with a force of five hundred horse, he charged and overthrew them; for which lucky hand he caused a Trophæe to be erected under the mountains called *Narthacii*; and this victory of all others pleased him most, for that with so small a troupe and corner of his owne horsemen which himselfe put out and addressed against them, he had given thole the overthrow, who at all times vaunted themselves to be the best men at armes in the world. Thither came *Diphridas*, one of the *Ephori*, unto him, being sent expressly from *Sparta*, with a commendement unto him, that incontinently he should with force and armes invade the countrey of *Tæntia*; and he yet thought he might disobey thole great Lords of the State, but sent for two Regiments of one thousand speere, drawn out of thole who served about *Corinth*, and with them made a rode into *Basilia*, and gave battell before *Coronae* unto the Thebans, Athenians, Argives, and Corinthians, where he won the field: which, as witnesseth *Xenophon*, was the greatest and most bloody battell that had been fought in his time: but true it is, that he himselfe was in many places of his body fore wounded, and then being returned home, notwithstanding to many victories and happy fortunes, he never altered any jot in his own person, either for diet or otherwise for the manner of his life. Seeing some of his Citizens to vaunt and boast of themselves, as if they were more than other men in regard that they nourished and kept horses of the game to run in therace for the prize: he persuaded his sifter, named *Cynisca*, to mount into her Chariot, and to go unto that solemnity of the Olympick games, there to runne a course with her horses for the best prize; by which, his purpose was to let the Greekes know, that all this running of theirs was no matter of valour, but a thing of cost and expence, to shew their wealth only. He had about him *Xenophon* the Philosopher, whom he loved and highly esteemed; him he requested to send for his sons to be brought up in *Lacedæmon*, and there to learne the most excellent and singular discipline in the world, namely, the knowledge how to obey and to rule well. Being otherwise demanded, whether he esteemed the *Lacedæmonians* more happy than other nations: It is (quoth he) because they profess and exercise above all men in the world, the skill of obeying and governing: After the death of *Lysander*, finding within the City of *Sparta* great factions and much fiding, which the said *Lysander*, incontinently after he was returned out of *Asia*, had raised and stirred up against him, he purposed and went about to drect his levynesse, and make it appeare unto the inhabitants of *Sparta*, what a dangerous medler he had been whilst he lived: and to this purpose having read an oration, found after his decease among his papers, which *Creon* viceroy the *Halicarnassian* had composed; but *Lysander* meant to pronounce before the people in a general Assembly of the City, tending to the alteration of the State, and bringing in of many novelties; he was fully minded to have divulged it abroad: but when one of the ancient Senators had read the said oration, and doubted the sequell thereof, considering it was so well penned, and grounded upon such effectuall and perivative reasons, he gave *Agefilaus* counsell not to digge up *Lysander* againe, and rake him as it were out of his grave, but let the oration lie buried with him: whose advice he followed, and so rested quiet and made no more ado: and as for thole who underhand crossed him and were his adversaries, he did not counte them openly, but praifed and made meanes to send some of them forth as Captaines into certaine forraigne expeditions, and unto others to commit certaine publicke Offices: in which charges they carried themselves so, as they were discovered for covetous and wicked persons, and afterwards when they were called into question judicially, he shewed himselfe contrary to mens expectation to help them out of trouble, and succour them so, as that he gat their love and good wils, inasmuch as in the end there was not one of them his adversarie. One there was who requested him to write in his favour to his hosts and friends which he had in *Asia*, letters of recommendation, that they would defend and maintaine him in his rightfull cause: My friends (quoth he) use to do that which is equity and just, although I should write never a word unto them. Another shewed him the walls of a City how wonderful strong they were and magnificently built, asking of him whether he thought them not stately and faire: Faire (quoth he) yes no doubt, for women to lodge and dwell in, but not for men. A Megarian there was who magnified and highly extolled before him the City *Megara*: Young man (quoth he) and my good friend, your brave words require some great puissance. Such things as other men had in great admiration, he would not seeme so much as to take knowledge of. Upon a time one *Callipides* an excellent player in Tragedies, who was in great name and reputation among the Greekes, inasmuch as all sorts of men made no small account of him, when he chanced to meet him upon the way, saluted

A good man  
rejoiceth not  
in the victory  
obtained in  
civil wars.

ted him first, and afterwards presumptuously thrust himself forward to walke among others, with him, in hope that the King would begin to shew some lightsome countenance, and grace him; but in the end, seeing that it would not be, he was so bold as to advance himselfe, and say unto him: Sir King, know you not me? And have you not heard who I am? *Agefilus* looking wistly upon his face: Art not thou (quoth he) *Callipides Deicelitus*? (for so the Lacedæmonians use to call a jester or player.) He was invited one day to come and heare a man who could counterfeit most lively and naturally the voice of the Nightingale; but he refused to go, saying: I have heard the Nightingales themselves to sing many a time. *Menecrates* the Physician had a lucky hand in divers desperate cures; whereupon some there were who furnished him *Jupiter*, and he himselfe would over arrogantly take that name upon him, in so much as he presumed in one letter of his, which he sent unto him, to set this superscription: *Menecrates Jupiter*, unto King *Agefilus* witheth long life: but *Agefilus* wrote unto him in this wise: *Agefilus to Menecrates witheth (s) good health*. When *Pharnabazus* and *Canon* the high-admirals of the Armada under the Persian King, were so far forth Lords of the sea, that they pillaged and spoiled all the coasts of *Laconia*; and besides, the walls of *Athens* were rebuilt with the money that *Pharnabazus* furnished the Athenians withall: the Lords of the Councill of *Lacedæmon* were of advice, that the best policy was, to conclude peace with the King of *Persia*; and to this effect sent *Antalcidas* one of their Citizens to *Tiribazus*, with Commission treacherously to betray and deliver into the barbarous Kings hands, the Greeks inhabiting *Asia*; for whose liberty *Agefilus* before had made wars: by which occasion *Agefilus* was thought to have had his hand in this shamefull and infamous practice: for *Antalcidas*, who was his mortal enemy, wrought by all means possible to effect peace, because he saw that war continually augmented the credit of *Agefilus*, and made him most mighty and honourable; yet nevertheless he answered unto one that reproached him with the Lacedæmonians, saying, That they were Medised, or turned Medians: Nay rather (quoth he) the Medians are Laconified and become Laconians. The question was propounded upon him for a time, whether of these two vertues in his judgement was the better, Fortitude or Justice? And he answered: That where Justice reigned, Fortitude bare no sway, and was nothing worth; for if we were all righteous and honest men, there would be no need at all of Fortitude. The people of *Greece* dwelling in *Asia*, had a custome to call the King of *Persia*, The Great King: And wherefore (quoth he) is he greater than I, unless he be more temperate and righteous? Semblably he said, That the inhabitants of *Asia* were good slaves, but naughty freemen, Being asked how a man might win himselfe the greatest name and reputation among men, he answered thus: If he say well, and yet do better. This was a speech of his: That a good Captaine ought to shew unto his enemies valour and hardinesse; but unto those that be under his charge, love, and benevolence. Another demanded of him, what children should learne in their youth? That (quoth he) which they are to do and practice when they be men grown. He was judge in a cause, where the plaintife had pleaded well, but the defendant very badly; who eticoones and at every sentence did nothing but repeat these words: O *Agefilus*, a King ought to protect and help the laws: unto whom *Agefilus* answered in this wise: If one had (g) undermined thy house, or robbed thee of thy raiment, wouldst thou thinke and looke that a carpenter or mason were bound to repaire thy house, and the weaver or tailor for to supply thy want of cloath? The King of *Persia* had writ unto him a letter misliffe after a general peace concluded; which letter was brought by a Gentleman of *Persia*, who came with *Callius* the Lacedæmonian, and the contents thereof was to this effect: That the King of *Persia* desired to enter into some more especiall amity and fraternity with him; but he would not accept thereof, saying unto the messenger: Thou shalt deliver this answer from me unto the King thy Master; that he needed not to write any such particular letters unto me, concerning private friendship; for if he friend the Lacedæmonians in general, and shew himselfe to love the Greeks, and desire their good, I also reciprocally will be his friend to the utmost of my power; but if I may find that he practiseth treachery, and attempteth ought prejudiciall to the state of *Greece*, well may he write Epistle upon Epistle, and I accept from him one letter after another, but let him trust to this: I will never be his friend. He loved very tenderly his own children when they were little ones, in so much as he would play with them up and down the house, yea, and put a long cane between his legs, and ride upon it like an hobby horse with them for company; and if it chanced that any of his friends spied him so doing, he would pray them to say nothing unto any man thereof, until they had babes and children of their own. But during the continuall wars that he had with the Thebans, he fortuned in one battell to be grievously wounded; which when *Antalcidas* saw, he said unto him, Certes you have received of the Thebans the due salary and reward that you deserved, for teaching them as you have done, even against their wills how to fight, which they neither could nor ever would have learned to do: for in truth it is reported, that the Thebans then became more martiall and warlike than ever before time, as being inured and exercised in armes by the continuall roads and invasions that the Lacedæmonians made: which was the reason that ancient *Lycurgus* in those laws of his which he called *Rhetra*, expressly forbade his people to make warre often upon one and the same nation, for feare lest in so doing their enemies should learne to be good soldiers. Whence heard, that the Allies and Confederates of *Lacedæmon* were offered and tooke this continuall warfare, complaining that they were never in manner out of armes, but carried their harness continually upon their backs; and besides, being many more in number, they followed yet the

Lacedæ-

*Lacedæmonians*, who were but an handful to all them: he being minded to convince them in this, and to shew how many they were, commanded all his said Confederates to assemble together, and to sit down pell-mell one with another; the Lacedæmonians likewise to take their place over against them apart by themselves; which done, he caused an herald to cry aloud in the hearing of all: That all the porters should rise first; and when those were risen, that the brick-layers and masons should stand up; then the carpenters; after them the masons; and so all other Artizans and handy-crafts men, one after another; by which means all the Confederates well-heare were sitting, and none in manner left sitting; but all this while not a Lacedæmonian stirred off his seat, nor that forbidden they were all to learne or exercise any mechanicall craft: then *Agefilus* took up a halbert, and said, Lo, my masters and friends, how many more soldiers are we able to send into the warre than you can make? If that bloody battell fought at *Leuctra*, many Lacedæmonians there were that ran but of the field and fled, who by the laws and ordinances of the country were in their life time noted with infamy; howbeit, the *Ephori* seeing that the City by this means would be dispeopled of Citizens and lie desart, in that very time when as it had more need than ever before of soldiers, were desirous to devise a policy how to deliver them of this ignominy, and yet notwithstanding preserve the laws in their entire and full force; therefore to bring this about, they elected *Agefilus* for their law-giver, to enact new Laws; who being come before the open audience of the City, spake unto them in this manner: Ye men of *Lacedæmon*, I am not willing in any wile to be the author and inventor of new Laws; and as for those which you have already: I mind not to put any thing thereto, to take it, or otherwise to alter and change them, and therefore me thinkes it is meet and reasonable, that from to Morrow forward, those which you have should stand in their full vigour, strength, and vertue accultomed. Moreover, as few as there remained in the City; (when *Epinomondas* was about to assault it with a great fleet and a violent tempest (as it were) of Thebans and their Confederates, pushed up with pride for the late victory at *Leuctra* in the Plain of *Teatras*) with those few (I say) he put him and his forces back; and caused them to returne without effect: but in the battell of *Manina*, he admonished and advised the Lacedæmonians to take no regard at all of other Thebans, but to bend their whole forces against *Epinomondas* only, saying, That wife and prudent men alone, and none but they, were valiant and the sole cause of victory; and therefore if they could vanquish him, they might easily subdue all the rest; as being bio-kill fooles and men ended of no valour; and so in truth it proved: for when as the victory now enclined wholly unto *Epinomondas*, and the Lacedæmonians were at the very point to be disbanded, discomfited, and put to flight: as the said *Epinomondas* turned for to call his own men together to follow the rout, a Lacedæmonian chanced to give him a mortal wound, wherewith he fell to the ground, and the Lacedæmonians who were with *Agefilus* called themselves, made head againe, and put the victory into doubtfull ballance: for now the Thebans abated much their courage, and the Lacedæmonians took the better hearts. Moreover, when the City of *Sparta* was neare driven and at a low ebbe for money to wage war, as being constrained to entertaine mercenary soldiers for pay, who were mere strangers; *Agefilus* went into *Egypt*, being sent for by the King of *Egypt* to serve as his pensioner: but for that he was freely and simply apparelled, the inhabitants of the Countrey despised him, for they looked to have seen the King of *Sparta* richly arrayed and set out gallantly, and all gorgeously to be seen in his person like unto the Persian King; so foolish a conceit had they of Kings: but *Agefilus* shewed them within a while, that the magnificence and Majesty of Kings was to be acquired by wit, wisdom, and valour: for perceiving that those who were to fight with him and to make head against the enemy, were frighted with the imminent perill, by reason of the great number of enemies, who were two hundred thousand fighting men, and the small company of their own side; he devised with himselfe before the battell began, by some stratagem to encourage his own men, and to embolden their hearts: which policy of his he would not communicate unto any person; and this it was: He caused upon the inside of his left hand to be written this word, Victory, backward; which done he tooke at the Priests or Soothsayers hand, who was at sacrifice, the liver of the beast which was killed & put it into the said left hand thus written within and so held it a good while, making semblance as if he mused deeply of some doubt, and seeming to stand in suspence and in great perplexity, untill the characters of the soe said letters had a sufficient time to give a print and leave their mark in the superficies of the liver: then shewed he it unto those who were to fight on his side, and gave them to understand that by those characters the gods promised victory, who supposing verily that there was in it a certaine signe and preface of good fortune, ventured boldly upon the hazard of a battell. And when the enemies had invested and beleaguered his Campe round about: so that a mighty number there were of them, and besides had begun to cast a trench on every side thereof, King *Nectanebus* (for whose aid he was thither come) solicited and intreated him to make a sally and charge upon them before the said trench was fully finished, and both ends brought together, he answered. That he would never impeach the designe and purpose of the enemies, who went (no doubt) to give him means to be equal unto them, and to fight so many to so many: so he stayed until they wanted but a very little of both ends meeting; and then in that space between he ranged his battell; by which device they encountered and fought with even fronts; and on equall hand for number: so he put the enemies to flight, and with those few soldiers which he had he made a great carnage of them; but of the spoile and booty which he won,

O. Nectanebus.

of Signifying  
that he was  
caustick, and  
to break out  
of temper.

g He that  
hath done the  
injury is to  
make amends.

won he raised a good round masse of money, and sent it all to *Spacia*. Being now ready to embarke for to depart out of *Egypt*, and upon the point of returne home, he died: and at his death expressly charged those who were about him, that they should make no Image or Statue whatsoever representing the similitude of his personage: For that (quoth he) if I have done any vertuous act in my life time, that will be a monument sufficient to eternize my memory: If not, all the Images, statues and figures in the world will not serve the turne, since they be the works only of mechanical artificers, which are of no worth and estimation.

*Agesipolis* the son of *Cleombrotus*, when one related in his presence that *Philip King of Macedon* had in few daies demolished and razed the City *Olinthos*: *Par di* (quoth he) *Philip* will not be able in many more daies to build the like to it. Another said unto him by way of reproach, that himselfe (King as he was, and another Citizens men grown of middle age) were delivered as hostages, and neither their children nor wives: Good reason (quoth he) and so it ought to be according to justice, that we our selves, and no others, should beare the blame and paine of our faults. And when he was minded to lend for certain dog-whelps from home; one said unto him; that there might not be suffered any of them to go out of the Countrey: No more was it permitted heretofore (quoth he) for men be to lead forth, but now it is allowed well enough.

*Agesipolis* the son of *Paulanias* (when as the Athenians said to him, that they were content to report themselves to the judgement of the Megarians as touching certain variances and differences between them, and complaints which they made one against another.) spake thus unto them: Why my Masters of *Athenes*, this were a great shame indeed, that they who are the chiefe and the very leaders of all other Greeks, should lesse skill what is just than the Megarians.

*Agis* the son of *Archidamus*, at what time as the *Ephoroi* spake thus unto him: Take with you the young and able men of this City, and go into the countrey of such an one, for he will conduct you his own selfe, as far as to the very Cattle of this City: And what reason is it (quoth he) my Masters, you that be *Ephoroi*, to commit the lives of so many lusty gallants into his hands, who is a traitor to his native country? One demanded of him what science was principally exercised in the City of *Spacia*: *Mary* (quoth he) the knowledge how to obey and how to rule. He was wont to say, that the Lacedaemonians never asked, how many their enemies were? but where they were. Being forbidden to fight with his enemies at the battell of *Manitinea*, because they were far more in number: He must needs fight (quoth he) with many that would have the command and rule of many. Unto another who asked what number there might be in all of the Lacedaemonians: As many (quoth he) as are enough to chase and drive away wicked persons. In passing along the walls of *Corinth*, when he saw them so high, so well built, and so large in extent: What (in manner of women (quoth he) bethey that inhabit within: To a great Master of Rhetorick, who, praising his own skill and profession, chanced to conclude with these words: when all is done, there is nothing so puissant as the speech of man: Why then belike (quoth he) so long as you hold your peace you are of no worth. The *Argives* having been once already beaten and defeated, returned nevertheless into the field and shewed themselves in a bravado more gallantly than before, and prest for a new battell: and when thereupon he saw his auxiliaries and confederates to be somewhat troubled and frighted: Be of good cheere (quoth he) my masters and friends, for if we, who have given them the foile be affraid, what thinke you are they themselves. A certaine Embassadour from the City *Abdera*, came to *Spacia*, who made a long speech as touching his message, and after he had done and held his tongue a little, he demanded at last a dispatch, and said unto him: Sir, what answer would you that I should carry back to our Citizens: You shall lay unto them (quoth *Agis*) that I have suffered you to speak all that you would, and as long as you list: And that I lent you mine eare all the while without giving you one word againe. Some there were who commended the *Eliens* formost just men and precise in observing the solemnity of the Olympick games: And is that so great a matter and such a wonder (quoth he) if in five yeares space they exercise justice one day? Some buzzed into his eares that those of the other royall house envied him: Then (quoth he) do they suffer a double paine; for first and formost their own evils will vex and trouble themselves; then in the second place, the good things in me and my friends will torment them. Some one there was of advice, that he should give way and passage to his enemies when they were put to flight: Yea, but marke this (quoth he) if we let them upon them who run away for cowardise, how shall we fight against them that stay and make good their ground by valour? One there was who propounded a meanes for the maintenance of the Greekes liberty; which (no doubt) was a generous and magnanimous counsell, howbeit very hard to execute; unto whom he answered thus: My good friend, your words require great store of money, and much strength. When another said that King *Philip* would watch them well enough that they should not let forth within other parts of *Greece*: My friend (quoth he) it shall content us to remaine and continue in our own country. There was another Embassadour from the City *Perinthus* came to *Lacedamon*, who having likewise made a long oration, in the end demanded of *Agis* what answer he should deliver back to the Perinthians: *Mary* what other but this (quoth he) that thou couldest hardly find the way to make an end of speaking, and I held my peace all the while. He went upon a time sole Embassadour to King *Philip*, who said unto him, You are an Embassadour alone indeed: True (quoth he) and good enough to one alone as you are. An ancient Citizen of *Spacia* said unto him one day, being himselfe aged alway, and far steep in yeares: Since that the old Lawes and Customes went every day to ruine and were neglected, seeing also that others far worse were

h. High walls  
b. a fortress  
for women.

brought

brought in and stood in their place, all in the end would be naught and run to confusion; unto whom he answered merrily thus: Then is it as it should be, and the world goes well enough if it be so as you say: For I remember when I was a little boy, I heard my father say, that every thing then was turned upside down, and that in his remembrance all went kim kam; and he also would report of his father that he had been so much in his dayes; so marvell therefore if things grow worse and worse: In ore wonder it were if they should one while be better, and another while continue still in the same plight. Being asked on a time how a man might continue free all his life time: he answered: By despising death.

*Agis* the younger, when *Demades* the orator said unto him: That the Lacedaemonians swords were so short that these jugglers and those that play legerdemon, could swallow them down all at once, made him this answer: As short as they be the Lacedaemonians can reach their enemies with them well enough. A certain leud fellow and a troublefome, never linned asking him, who was the best man in *Spacia*: *Mary* (quoth *Agis*) even he who is unlikest thy selfe.

*Agis*, the last king of the Lacedaemonians, being forelaid and imprised by trechery, so that he was condemned by the *Ephoroi* to die; as he was led without forme of law and justice to the place of execution for to be strangled with a rope, perceiving one of his servants and ministers to shed teares; said thus unto him: Weepe not for my death; for in dying thus unjustly and against the order of law, I am in better case than those that put me to death; and having said these words, he willingly put his neck within the halter.

*Agriatus*, when as his own father and mother requested his helping hand for to effect a thing contrary to reason and justice, staid their suit for a time: but seeing that they importuned him still and were very insistent with him: in the end he said unto them: So long as I was under your hands, I had no knowledge nor fence at all of justice; but after that you had betaken me to the common weale, to my countrey, and to the lawes thereof, and by that means informed and instructed me in what you could in righteousness and honesty, I will endeavour and strain my selfe to follow the said instruction and not you; and for that I know full well that you would have me do that which is good, and considering that those things be best (both for a private person, and much more for him who is in authority and a chiefe magistrate) which are just: sure I will do what you would have me, and relieve that which you lay unto me.

*Alcamenes* the son of *Telesus*, when one would needs know of him, by what meanes a man might preserve a kingdom best, made this answer: Even by making no account at all of lucre and gain. Another demanded of him wherefore he would never accept and receive the gifts of the *Messenians*: Forsooth (quoth he) because if I had taken them, I should never have had peace with the lawes. And when a third person said: That he marvelled much how he could live so straight and neere to himselfe, considering he had wherewith and enough: It is (quoth he) a commendable thing, when a man having sufficient and plenty can nevertheless live within the compass of reason, and not according to the large reach of his appetite.

*Alexandridas* the son of *Leon*, seeing one to torment himselfe, and taking on desperately because he was banished out of his native country: My friend (quoth he) never fare so for the matter nor vex thy heart so much, for being constrained to remove so far from thy country, but rather let being so remote from justice. Unto another who in selecting good mates unto the *Ephoroi* and to very great purpose, but in more words a great deale than need was: My friend (quoth he) thou speakest indeed that which becometh, but otherwise than is becomming. One asked him why the Lacedaemonians committed the charge of all their sins unto the *Ephoroi* their slaves, and did not husband and tend them their own selves: Because (quoth he) we conquered and purchased them, for that we would look to our selves, and not tend them. Unto another who held that it was nothing but desire of credit and reputation that undid men, and who ever could be delivered from the care thereof were happy: he replied thus again: If it be true that you say, we must confesse and grant that wicked men, who do wrong unto others are happy: for how can a church-robber or thief who spoileth other men of their goods be desirous of honour and glory? When another demanded of him, how it came to pass that the Lacedaemonians were so hardy and resolute in all occurrences and dangers of war, he rendered this reason: Because (quoth he) we study and endeavour to have a reverend regard of our lives, and not to entertain the fear of our lives, as others do. It was demanded of him, wherefore the Seniors or Elders far many dayes in deciding and judging criminall causes? and why albeit the accused party were by them acquit, yet he continued nevertheless in the state of a guilty and accused person? As for the Seniors (quoth he) they be long in deciding capitall matters, where men are brought in question for their life: because those judges who have committed an error in condemning a man to die, can never rectify and amend that sentence: and as to the party absolved and enlarged, he must remain always liable and subject to the law; because they might ever after enquire and judge better of his fact according to the law.

*Alexander* the son of *Euterates*, being asked the question why he and such other did not gather money and lay it up in the publick treasury, made this answer: For fear lest we being keepers thereof, should be corrupted and perverted thereby.

*Axanias*, unto one who marvelled why the *Ephoroi* rose not up and made abeifance to the kings; considering that by the kings they were ordained and put into that place: gave this reason: Even,

i. A man ought to  
flee more for  
c. committing sin,  
than for being corrected.

Even because they are created *Ephori*, that is to say, overseers and controllers of them.

*Androclidas* the Laconian, being maimed and lame of a leg, would nevertheless be enrolled in the number of those who were to serve in the wars; and when some withstood him because he was impotent of that leg: Why my masters (quoth he) they be not the men of good footmanning, who can run away, but such as stand their ground, that must fight with enemies.

*Amalcidas* making means to be admitted into the confraternity of the Samothracian religion, when the priest his confessor, in hounding and thriving him, demanded which was the greatest sin that ever he had committed in all his life? If (quoth he) I have committed any sin all my life time, the gods know the same well enough themselves. When a certain Athenian misalled the Lacedæmonians, terming them ignorant and unlearned fots: Indeed (quoth he) we only of all the Grecians, are the men which have not learned of you to do ill. And when another Athenian bragged, and said: We have chased you many times from the river *Cepisus*: But we (quoth he) never yet drove you from the river *Eurotas*. Unto another, who was desirous to know how one might please men best, he shaped this answer: In case he speak always that which pleaseth, and do that which profiteth them. A certain great master and professor of Rhetorick, would needs one day rehearse and pronounce before him an oration composed in the praise of *Hercules*: And who ever (quoth he) dispraised him? And unto *Agefilas*, being sore wounded in a battel by the Thebans: Nay (quoth he) you are well enough served and receive a due Minervall for your choolage at the Thebans hands, whom you have taught even against their wills that which they knew not, nor were willing to learn, to wit, for to fight: for in truth, by means of the continual incursions and expections that *Agefilas* made against them, they became valiant warriors. Himselfe was wont to say: That the walles of *Sparta*, were their young men; and their confines, the heads of their pikes. Unto another, who demanded why the Lacedæmonians fought with such short cutlasses: To the end (quoth he) that we might cope and close more neerly to our enemies.

*Antiochus* being one of the *Ephori*, heard say that king *Philip* had bestowed upon the Messenians certain lands for their territory: But hath *Philip* (quoth he) given them withall, forces to be able for to defend the same?

*Arigens*, when some there were that highly commended certain dames, not their own wives, but wedded to other men: By the gods (quoth he) of good, honest, and faire women, there ought no vaine speeches to be made, for that indeed they are not known of any other but their husbands who live ordinarily with them. As he passed once through the city *Selinus* in *Sicily*, he chanced to read this epitaph engraven upon a sepulcher or tomb;

*Thes men before Selinus gates  
were slain in bloody fight,  
As whilom they sought for to quench  
the lawles tyrants might.*

And well deserved you (quoth he) to die, for seeking to extinguish tyranny when it burneth out of a light fire; for clean contrariwise, you should have kept it from burning altogether.

*Arifon* hearing one praise and discourse of a sentence that king *Cleomenes* was wont to use, at what time as the question was asked: What was the office of a good king? Mary even to good unto his friends and hurt unto his enemies: But how much better (answered *Arifon*) my good friend, were it to benefit friends indeed, and of enemies to make good friends? but of this notable sentence, no doubt, *Socrates* was the authour, and upon him it is rightly fathered. Also when one demanded of him how many in number the Lacedæmonians were: As many (quoth he) as be sufficient to chase away their enemies. A certain Athenian pronounced a funeral oration which he had penned in the praise of their own citizens, who had been defeated and were slain by the Lacedæmonians in a battel: If your countrymen (quoth he) were so valiant as you say, what think you then of ours, who vanquished them? When one praised *Choridans* upon a time, for that he shewed himselfe courteous indifferently to all men, And how can he deserve (quoth *Arifon*) to be commended, who is kind and friendly to wicked persons? Another reproved *Hecataeus* a professor in Rhetorick, who being invited to eat with them at their feasts which they call *Systisia*, spake never a word all dinner time: unto whom he made this answer: It seemeth that you are ignorant, that he who knoweth how to speak well, can skill likewise of the time when it is good to speak and when to keep silence.

*Archidamus* the son of *Zeuxidamus*, when one asked him who they were that governed the city *Sparta*? answered: The lawes first, and then the magistrates, who ruled according to those lawes. When he heard one praising exceedingly a player on the harp, and for his skill in musick having him in singular admiration: My friend (quoth he) what honourable reward shall they have at your hands, who be men of powerfull and valour, when you commend so highly an harper? Another recommended unto him a musician and said: Oh, what an excellent chanter is there? This is (quoth he) even as much as a good cooke or maker of pottage among us: meaning that there was no difference at all between giving pleasure by found of voice or instruments, and the dressing of viands or seasoning sewes. One promised to give him wine that was very sweet and pleasant: And to what purpose? (quoth he) considering that it serveth but for to draw on more wine, and to make folk drink the rather: and besides, to cause men to be less valiant and unfit for any good things. Lying at siege before the city of *Corinth*, he marked how there were hares started even close under the

the walls thereof; upon which sight he said thus to those that served with him: Our enemies are easie to be surprisid and caught, when they are so lazie and idle, as to suffer hares to lie and harbour hard under their city walls, even within the trench and town-ditch. He had been chosen an umpire between two parties who were at variance, for to make them friends; and he led them both into the temple of *Diana* surnamed *Chalcasos*, where he willed them both to promise and swear, laying their hands upon the altar of that goddess, that they would both twaine observe from point to point whatsoever he should award: which they undertooke to do, and bound it with an oath accordingly: I judge them (quoth he) that neither of you both shall depart out of this temple, before you have made an attonement, and pacified all quarrels between you. *Dionysius* the tyrant of *Sicily*, had sent unto his daughters certain rich robes to wear, but he refused them, and said: I greatly fear that when they have this raiment upon them, they will seem more foule and illfavoured than now they do. Seeing his own son in a battel, fighting desperately against the Athenians: Either (quoth he) augment thy strength, or abate thy courage.

*Archidamus* the son of *Agefilas*, when king *Philip* after the battel which he had won against the Greeks, neer unto *Cheronas*, wrote unto him a rough and sharp letter: returned unto him back again this answer in writing: If you take measure now of your own shadow, you shall finde it no bigger than it was before in victory. Being demanded the question upon a time, how far the territory of the Lacedæmonians did extend? he answered: Even as far as they can reach with their javelins. *Periander* the Physician was a sufficient man in his art, and esteemed with the best and most excellent, howbeit he wrote in verse, but with a bad grace: unto whom he said one day thus: I marvel much *Periander* whether you would be named an ill poet, or to be a good physician? In the war which the Lacedæmonians made against king *Philip*, some gave him counsell to be well advised where he fought, and to joine battel as far as he could from his own country, unto whom he replied again: This is not the thing (quoth he) that we ought to regard, but rather to consider and think upon this, how we may quit our selves so well in fight, that we be winners in the end. And to those who praised him for that he had won a field of the Arcadians, he made this answer: It had been better that we had overcome them rather in widome and prudence than in might and force. About the time that he entred by force and armes into the country of *Arcadia*, being advertised that the Eleans sent aid and incurr unto the Arcadians, he wrote unto them in this sort: *Archidamus* to the Eleans, greeting: A blessed thing it is to be quiet and at repose. When the confederate and allied nations in the Peloponnesiack war demanded how much money would serve for the defraying of the charges to the said war belonging? and requested him to tax each one how much they should contribute: War (quoth he) knoweth no sum, and is not waged at any certain rate. Seeing a shot which was levelled from an engine of battery newly brought out of *Sicily*: O *Hercules* (quoth he) now is mans prowesse gone for ever. And for that the Greeks would not give credit and be periwaded by him, to performe those conditions of peace which had been made with *Antigonus* and *Craterus*, two Macedonians, for to live in their ancient liberty: alledging that the Lacedæmonians would be lords more rigorous and insupportable than the Macedonians: the sheep (quoth he) hath always one and the same voice: but man changeth it oftentimes in divers sorts, until he have brought about and finished his desires.

*Asteridas*, when one said, after that king *Agis* had lost the field to *Antigonus*, about the city *Megale*: O poore Lacedæmonians, what will you do now? will you become slaves to the Macedonians? answered thus: And why so? Can *Antigonus* forbid and let us, but we will die in fight for *Sparta*? \* or Antipater.

*Bias* being surprisid by an ambush, which was laid for him by *Iphicrates* captain of the Athenians, when his fouldiers said: Now captain what is to be done? What elie (quoth he) but to advise you to save your selves, and to relolve my selfe to die in fight.

*Brasidas* found among dried figs a mouse that bit him by the hand, so as he was glad to let her go, whereupon he said unto those that were present: Lo, how there is not the least creature that may be, but it is able to make shift and save it's life in case it have but the heart to defend it selfe against those who assaile it. In a certain skirmish he was wounded with a javelin through his buckler, and when he had drawn the head out of his body, with the very same weapon he slew his enemy who had hurt him: and to those who asked him, how he came so wounded? he answered thus? Because my buckler deceived me. When he put himselfe into his journey to the warres, he wrote thus unto the *Ephori*: All that is requisite for this war as touching the war, do I will to my power or die for it. After he had lost his life in the quarrell of delivering the Greeks out of servitude who inhabit in *Thracia*, the embassadours which were sent from those parts to give thanks unto the Lacedæmonians, went to visite his mother *Argileonis*: of whom the demanded first, whether her son *Brasidas* died manfully or no? And when the Thracian embassadours highly praised him in so much as they said, that he had not left his fellow behind him: Oh (quoth he) you are much deceived my friends: *Brasidas* was indeed a valiant and hardy man, but there be in *Sparta* many more far better than he.

*Damodius* hapned to be placed last in the dance by him who was the master chorister; whereat he was no otherwise displeased, but said thus unto him: Well done for thou hast found the means to make this place honourable, which heretofore was but base and infamous.

*Damis*, when letters had been written unto him as touching *Alexander* the great, namely,

I i 2 how



how *Alexander* by their suffrages was declared a god; wrot back in this wise: We grant that *Alexander* should be called a god since he will needs have it so.

*Damidas*, when king *Philip* was entred with a main army unto *Peloponnesus*, whereupon one said unto him: The *Lacedæmonians* are in danger to suffer many calamities, unless they can make means to agree and compound with him: Thou womanish-man (quoth he) how can he bring us to suffer any miseries, considering that we make no reckoning at all of death.

*Dercilidas* was sent embassadour unto king *Pyrrhus*, what time as he had his army encamped upon the very confines of *Sparta*: and *Pyrrhus* enjoyed the *Lacedæmonians* to receive again their king *Clonimus* whom they had banished, or else he would make them to understand, that they were no more valiant than other men; upon whom *Dercilidas* thus replied: If you be a god we feare you not, because we have no way offended you, but if you be a man, know you that you are no whit better than we.

*Demaratus* talked and communed one day with *Orontes*, who gave him blunt speeches and hard words; when one who heard their talk, said afterwards: *Orontes* is very bold with you, and useth you but homely O *Demaratus*: Nay (quoth he) he hath nothing faulted to me; ward; for those who glorie and flatter in all their speech, be they who do most harme, and not such as speak upon ill will and malice. One seemed to demand of him, wherefore at *Sparta* those were noted with infamy, who in a discomfiture threw away their bucklers, and not they who cast from them their morrions, cuirasses or breast-plates: Because (quoth he) these armours and head-pieces, serve only for those who wear them; but their shields and bucklers, have their use also for the common strength of the whole batallion. When he heard a certain musician sing: Believe me (quoth he) the fellow plaies the fool very well. He was upon a time in a great company and assembly, where he continued a long while and spake never a word: by occasion whereof one said unto him: Is it for folly and want of matter to talk of, that you are so silent? How can it be folly (quoth he) for a fool can never hold his peace? One asked of him what was the cause he was banished out of *Sparta*, being king thereof? Because (quoth he) the lawes there be mistresses and command all. A certain Persian by continual gifts had inveigled and gotten from him in the end a young boy whom he loved, and afterwards in manner of a scorn said unto him: I have so well hunted, that at last I have caught your love: Not so (quoth he) I wear by the gods, but rather you have bought it. A certain gentleman of *Perfia* there was, who had rebelled against the king of *Perfia*; but *Demaratus* by reasons and remonstrances fo wrought with him, that he perswaded him to yield and returne again to his allegiance; the king incontinently minded to put this Persian to death; but *Demaratus* diverted him and said: Sir, this was an utter shame for you, if when you could not punish him for rebellion being your enemy you should proceed to his execution now, when he is become again your servitor and friend. There was a certain jeller and parasite who used to play his part at the kings table: and gave unto *Demaratus* estoones, biting quips, and taunts by way of reproach for his exile; but he answered him and said: Good fellow, I am not disposed to fight with thee now at this time, being put as I am out of my bias and the range of my life, and having lost my standing.

*Emeropes* the *Ephorus*, cut two strings of the nine with an hatches, in *Phrynis* his harp, saying withall: Then marre not musick.

*Epanetus* was wont to say: That liars were the cause of all offences and crimes in the world.

*Enboidas* hearing some to praise another mans wife, reprov'd him for it, and said: That strangers who were not of the house, ought not in any respect to speak of the behaviour and manners of any dame.

*Eudemidas* the son of *Archidamus* and brother to *Agis*, having espied *Xenocrates*, a man well stricken in years, studying philosophy hard with other young schollers in the *Academie*, demanded what old man that might be: one standing by, answered, that he was a wife man and a great clerk, one of those who fought after vertue: If he be still seeking of it (quoth he) when will he use and practise it? Having heard a Philosopher dispute and discourse upon his paradox: That there was no good captain in war, but the great clerk and learned Sage only: This is (quoth he) a strange proposition and a wonderfull, but the best is, he that maintaineth it, is in no wise to be credited, for his years were never yet acquainted so much as with the sound of a trumpet. He came one day into the open school or auditory to hear *Xenocrates* discourse at large upon some questions; but it fell out so, that he had new done when he entred into the place: then one of his company began to say, Sure y, to soone as we were present, he became silent: He did well (quoth *Eudemidas*) if he had made an end of that which he had to say; but when the other replied: It were not amiss yet that you heard him & that he would set to it again: If we (quoth *Eudemidas*) should go to visit a man in his house who had supped already before we came, were it well done of us to pray him to go to a new supper for the love of us? It was once demanded of him why he alone would seem to approve rest, quietnesse and peace, considering that all his fellow-citizens with one consent were of opinion to take armes and make war upon the *Macedonians*? It is (quoth he) because I neither need nor am desirous to convince them of their error and lying. Another for to animate him to this war, alleged the provesses and worthy exploits achieved by them at other times against the *Perfians*: Me thinks (quoth he) you know not what you say, namely, that because we have overcome a thousand sicep, we should therefore set upon fifty wolves. He

He was upon a time in place to hear a musician sing, who did his part very well; and one asked him, how he liked the man, and what he thought of him? Mary (quoth he) I take him to be a great ampler of men in a small matter. When another highly extolled the city of *Athens* in his presence: And who can justly and duly (quoth he) praise that city which no man ever loved, for being made better in it? When *Alexander* the great had called upon proclamation to be made in the great assembly at the Olympick games: That all banished persons might returne unto their own countries, except the *Thebans*: Behold (quoth *Eudemidas*) here is a wittol proclamation for you that be *Thebans*; howbeit honourable withall, for it is a signe that *Alexander* seareth none but you in all *Greece*. A certain citizen of *Argos* said one day in his hearing: That the *Lacedæmonians* after they be gone once out of their own country, and from the obedience of their lawes, prove worse for their travelling abroad in the world: But it is contrary with you that be *Argives* and other *Greeks* (quoth he) for being come once into our city *Sparta*, you are not the worse, but prove the better by that means. It was demanded of him what the reason might be, wherefore they used to sacrifice unto the Muses before they did hazard a battell: To the end (quoth he) that our valiant acts might be well and worthily written.

*Eurycratidas* the son of *Alexandrides*, when one asked him why the *Ephori* sat every day to decide and judge of contracts between men: for that (quoth he) we should learn to keep our faith and truth even among our enemies.

*Zenocrimus* likewise answered unto one who demanded of him why the statutes and ordinances of prowles and martiall fortitude, were not reduced into a book, and given in writing unto young men for to read? Because (quoth he) we would have them to be acquainted with deeds and not with writings. A certain *Adelian* said: That war was better than peace, unto those who were desirous to shew themselves valorous men: And not war only (quoth he) for by the gods, in that respect better is death than life.

*Herodas* chanced to be at *Athens*, what time as one of the citizens was apprehended, arraigned, and condemned for his idleness, judicially and by forme of law; which when he understood, and heard a brute and noise about him, he requested one to shew him the party that was condemned for a gentlemen's life.

*Thearidas* whetted his sword upon a time, and when one asked him if it were sharp, he answered: Yea, sharper than a slanderous calumination.

*Themistias* being a prophet or fouthsayer, foretold unto king *Leonidas* the discomfiture that should happen within the passe or freights of *Thermopyle*, with the losse both of himselfe and also of his whole army: whereupon being sent away by *Leonidas* unto *Lacedæmon*, under a colour and pretence to informe them of these future accidents: but in truth, to the end that he should not miscarry and die there with the rest; he would not to do, neither could he forbear but say unto *Leonidas*: I was sent hither for a warrior to fight, and not as an ordinary countrey and messenger to carry newes between.

*Theopompus* when one demanded of him how a king might preserve his kingdome and roiall estate in safety? said thus: By giving his friends liberty to speake the truth, and with all his power by keeping his subjects from oppression. Unto a stranger who told him that in his own country and among his citizens he was commonly surnamed *Philolacon*, that is to say, a lover of the *Laconians*: It were better (quoth he) that you were called *Philopolites* than *Philolacon*. Another Embassadour came from *Elis*, who said: That he was sent from his fellow-citizens, because he only of all that city loved and followed the *Laconick* manner of life: of him *Theopompus* demanded: And whether is thine or the other citizens life the better? he answered, Mine. Why then (quoth he) how is it possible that a city should continue safe, in which there being to great a number of inhabitants, there is but one good man? There was one said before him, that the city of *Sparta* maintained the state thereof entire, for that the kings there knew how to govern well: Nay (quoth he) not much more therefore, as because the citizens there can skill how to obey well. The inhabitants of the city *Pyle*, decreed for him in their generall councill exceeding great honours: unto whom he wrote back again: That moderate honours time is wont to augment, but immoderate to diminish and wear away.

*Thercion* returning from the city *Delphos*, found king *Philip* encamped within the freight of *Peloponnesus*, where he had gained the narrow passage called *Isthmus*, upon which the city of *Corinth* is seated: whereupon he said, *Peloponnesus* hath but bad porters and warders of you, *Corinthians*.

*Thelamenes*, being by the *Ephori* condemned to death, went from the judgement place smiling away: and when one that was present asked him, if he despised the lawes and judiciall proceedings of *Sparta*? No wis (quoth he) but I rejoice herat, that they have condemned me in that fine which I am able to pay and discharge fully, without borrowing of any friend, or taking up money at interest.

*Hippodamus*, as *Agis* was with *Archidamus* in the camp, being sent with *Agis* by the king unto *Sparta*, for to provide for the affaires of weale publick and to looke unto the State, refused to go, saying: I cannot die a more honourable death, than in fighting valiantly for the defence of *Sparta*: now was he fourscore years old and upward, and took armes. where he ranged himselfe on the right hand of the king, and there, fighting by his side right manfully, was slain.

*Hippocratidas*, when a certain prince or great lord of *Caria* had written unto him, that he



had in his hands a Lacedæmonian, who having been privy unto a conspiracy and treason intended against his person, revealed not the same: demanding withall, his counsell what he should do with him: wrote back again in this wise: if you have heretofore done him any great pleasure and good turne, put him to death hardly and make him away: if not, expell him out of your country, considering he is a base fellow incapable altogether of vertue. He chanced to encounter upon the way a young boy, after whom followed one who loved him: and the boy blushed for shame; whereupon he said unto him: Thou oughtest to go in their company my boy with whom thou being seen, needest not to change colour for the matter.

*Callitarchus* being admiral of a fleet, when the friends of *Lysander* requested him to pleasure them in killing some of their enemies; & in consideration thereof he should receive of them fifty talents; notwithstanding he stood then in very great need of money for to buy victuals for the mariners, yet would not he grant their request: and when *Cleander*, one of his counsell, said unto him: I would (I trow, if I were in your place) take the offer: So would I also (quoth he) if I were in yours. Being come to *Sardis* unto *Cyrus* the younger, who at that time was an alie and confederate of the Lacedæmonians, to see if he could speed himselfe of him with money for to entertain mariners and maintain the armada: the first day he gave him to understand that he was thither come to speak with him: but answer was made: That the king was at the table drinking: Well (quoth he) I will give attendance until he have made an end of his beaver: after he had waited a long time, and saw that it was impossible to have audience that day, he departed out of the court for that time, being thought very rude and uncivill in so doing: the morrow after, when likewise he was given to understand that he was drinking again, and that he would not come abroad that day: he made no more ado, but returned to *Ephesus*, from whence he came, saying withall, That he ought not so far forth to take pains to be provided of money, as to do any thing unbecoming *Sparta*: and besides, he fell a cursing those who were the first that endure such indignity, as to subject themselves unto the insolency of Barbarians, and who taught them to abuse their riches, and thereby to shew themselves so proud and disdainfull, as to insult over others: yea, and he sware a great oath in the presence of those who were in his company, that as soone as he was returned to *Sparta* he would labour with all his might and main, to reconcile the Greek nations one unto another: the end that they might be more dread and terrible unto the Barbarians, when they stood in need of their former forces to wage war one upon another. It was demanded of him, what kind of men the Ionians were? Good slaves they are (quoth he) but bad free-men. When *Cyrus* in the end had sent money for to pay the souldiers wages, and besides some gifts and presents particularly to himselfe; he received only the fore said pay, but as for the gifts, he sent them back again, saying: That he had no need of any private or particular amity with *Cyrus*, so common friendship which he had with all the Lacedæmonians pertained also unto him. A litle before he gave the batell at sea, near unto *Arginusæ*, his Pilot said unto him: That it was best for him to fall away, for that the gallics of the Athenians were far more in number than theirs: And what of all that (quoth he) is it now a shamefull infamy, and hurtfull besides to *Sparta*, for to flee simply, best it is to tary by it, and either to win, or die for it, being at the point to encounter and joyn medley: & having sacrificed unto the gods, the fourth day shewed unto him that the entrails of that beast signified and promised assured victory unto the army, but death unto the Captain; where as he was nothing danted nor affrighted, but said: The state of *Sparta* lieth not in one man, for when I am dead my country will be never the less: but if I should reule now, and yield unto the enemies, she will be much impaired, and lose her reputation. Thus having substituted *Cleander* in his place, if ought should happen otherwise than well, he gave the charge, and stroke a navi batell, wherein fighting valiantly he ended his life.

*Cleombrotus* the son of *Pausanias*, when a certain friend a stranger, debated and reasoned with his father about vertue, he said unto him: In this point at least wife is my father before you, for that he hath already begotten a son, and you none.

*Cleomenes* the son of *Anaxandrides*, was wont to say, That *Homer* was the Poet of the Lacedæmonians, because he taught how to make war: but *Hesiodus* the Poet of the Ilots, for that he wrot of agriculture and husbandry. He had made truce for seven dayes with the Argives; and the third night after it began, perceiving that the Argives upon the assurance and confidence of the said truce were suddenly asleep, he charged upon them, slew some, and tooke others prisoners: and when he was reproached therefore, and namely that he had broken his oath: he answered: That he never sware to observe truce in the night season, but in the day-time only; and besides, what an assurance sould a man did unto his enemies (in what sort it made no matter) he was to think that before God and man it was a point above justice, and in no wise liable and subject unto it: howbeit, for this perjury of his and breaking of covenant, he was disappointed and frustrated of his hope and designe, which was to surpris the city of *Argos*, for that indeed the very women took those armes which in memorial of ancient victories were hung and set up fast in their temples, with which they repelled them from the wallles: in so much as he took a knife, and slit his body from the very ancles up to the principle and noble vitall parts, and so laughing and scoffing, he left his life. His very fourthayer would have diswaived and diverted him from leading his forces against *Argos*, saying: That his return from thence would be dishonourable and infamous: and when he presented his power before the city, he found the gates fast shut against them, and the women in

armes

armes upon the wallles: How think you (quoth he) now, do you suppose this a dishonourable returne, when as the women, after all the men are dead are faine to keep the gates fast locked? When the Argives abused him with reproachfull teares, calling him a perjured and godlesse person: Well (quoth he) it is in you to miscall me and raile upon me as you do, in word; but it is in me to plague and mischief you indeed. Unto the ambassadors of *Samos*, who came to move and sollicit him for to war upon the tyrant *Polycrates*, and to that effect, w'd long speeches and persuasions, he answered thus: As touching that point which you spake of in the beginning of your oration, it is out of my head now, and I remember it not; in which regard also I do not well conceive the middle part of your speech: but as for that which you delivered in the latter end, I mislike it altogether. There was in time of late he was intercepted and taken: now being examined and demanded why he robbed in this sort? I had not wherewith (quoth he) to maintain and keep my souldiers about me, and therefore I came to those who had it, and knowing that they would give me nothing freely and by fair means, I assaied to get somewhat from them by force and strong hand: Naughtiness I see well (quoth he) goeth the needest way to work. There was a lewd villain, who did nothing butreile and misall him: Thouldersmeit (quoth he) to go up and down railing upon every man, to the end that being annied how to answer those thy flanders and imputations, we might have no time nor leisure to charge thee with thy wickedness and lay open thy vices. When one of his subjets said unto him: That a good king ought always and in every thing to be mild and gracious: Not so (quoth he) lett the grow thereby despised and contemptible. Being fore handled with a long and tedious malady, and not knowing what to do, he put himselfe at last into the hands of a long and tedious hanters, wifidors and iacifiers, unto whom he was wont never to give any credit before; whereat when one of his familiar friends, marvelled much, he said unto him: wherefore wonder you at the matter? for I am not the man that heretofore I was, but much changed by sickness: and as I am not the same, so I do not like and allow of things which I did in times past. There was a great professor of Rhetorick, who took upon him in his presence to discourse at large of prowess and valour, whereat he began to laugh a good: and when the party said unto him: Why laugh you to hear a manspeak of valiance, especially being as you are a king? My good friend (quoth he) because it is swallow should talke as you have done, I would do as you do; may if you had been an eagle. I should have been silent haply and held my peace. The Argives made their boast and vaunted that in a second batell, they had recovered the loss which they sustained in a former: I wonder much at that (quoth he) if by the addition\* of two syllables only, you are proved better men now than earlt you were, When one reproached him in ioule teares, saying: You are a great spender *Cleomenes* and a voluptuous person: Better it is yet (quoth he) to be so, than unjust as you are, who being wealthy enough, are yet covetous, and get your goods by undue and indirect means. There was one who recommended a musician unto him, and in truth praised the man in many respects: but among the rest of his excellent voices, saying: he was the best finger in all Greece: but *Cleomenes* pointing with his finger to one hard by: Lo (quoth he) here is a passing good cock of mine, and namely at making of broth he hath no fellow. *Menander* the Tyrant of *Samos*, upon the coming and invasion of the Perians, fled into the city of *Sparta*, where he shewed unto *Cleomenes* all the gold and silver which he had brought with him, praying him to take what he would of it: none would he receive at his hand, but fearing lest he would lessen some of that treasure upon other citizens, to the *Ephori* he went and said thus unto them: It were better for *Sparta*, if this Samian guest of mine were sent out of *Peloponnese*, for feare he induce and mixled some one of the Spartans to be naught: the *Ephori* no sooner heard this advertisement of his, but the very same day by open proclamation banished him out of the country. One demanded of him upon a time, and said: Why having so often vanquished the Argives warring upon you, have ye not rooted them out clean? Neither will we ever so doe (quoth he) for we would have our young men always to be kept occupied and in exercise: and when another asked him why the Spartans never consecrated unto the gods the armour which they had despoiled their enemies of? Because (quoth he) they be the spoiles of cowards; for those armes which have been taken from such as held them cowardly, it is not meet either to shew unto young men, or to dedicate unto the gods.

*Cleomenes* the son of *Cleombrotus*, when one gave him certain cocks of game which were very eager and hot in fight, saying: That they would in combat for a victory, die in the very place: Nay (quoth he) give me those rather that kill them; for surely such must needs be better than these.

*Labrus* unto one who made a long discourse before him he said: To what purpose maketh thou him great preambles and prologues for so small a matter? words I tell thee must be content to the things.

*Leontichides* the first of that name, when one hit him in the teeth that he was inconstant and mutable: If I change (quoth he) it is in regard of the times which do alter and be divers: and not as you do, who alter ever and anon upon your own naughtiness. Unto another who asked him how a man might best keep his goods that presently he enjoyed: he answered: By not committing them all at once unto fortune. It was demanded of him once, what it was that young gentlemen of noble houses ought to learn: Even that (quoth he) which will do them good another day, when

when they be men gorwn. Lastly, when one would needs know of him the reason why the Spartans drank to luttie: Because (quoth he) others should not consult of us, but we of others.

*Leocybius* the son of *Arifson*, when one brought him word that the sonnes of *Demaratus* gave out very hard speeches of him: By the gods (quoth he) I nothing marvel thereat; for there is not one of them all that can afford any man a good word; which claiped round about the key or bolt of the gate next unto him; which fight the touchstones pronounc'd to be prodigious and a great wonder: Why (quoth he) this seemeth not to me any monstrous or strange thing, that a serpent should winde about a key or bolt; but surely it were a marvelous matter indeed, if the key or bolt should be wound about the serpent. There was a sacrificer or priest named *Philippus*, who inducted & professed men in the ceremoniall religion of *Olympus*; and to extreame poor he was that he begged for his living; howbeit he went about and said: That those who by his hand were admitted unto those ceremonies, should be happy after their death: Fool that thou art (quoth he) why dost not thou thy selfe die quickly, to the end that thou mayest cease to lament and bewail thine own misery and poverty.

*Leon* the son of *Eucratidas*, being asked in what city a man might dwell most safely? answered thus: Even in that, whereof the inhabitants are not richer or poorer one than another; and where in justice doth prevail, and injustice is of no force. When he saw certain runners prepare to run a course for the prize in the race at the solemn Olympick games, and marked how they chased all means possible to catch and win some advantage of their concurrens: See (quoth he) how much more studious these runners are of wisdome than of righteousness. And when one hapned to discourse out of time and place, of things very good and profitable: My good friend (quoth he) unto him, your matter is honest and seemly; but your manner of handling it is bad and unbecomely.

*Leonidas* the son of *Anaxandridas*, and brother to *Cleomenes*; when one said unto him: There was no difference between you and us before you were a king: Yes I wis good sir (quoth he) for if I had not been better than you, I had never been king. When his wife, named *Gorgo*, at what time as he took his leave of her and went forth to fight with the Persians in the palls of *Thermopylae*, asked of him whether he had ought else to command her? Nothing (quoth he) but this, that thou be wedded again unto honest men and bring them good children. When the *Ephori* said unto him, that he led a small number forth with him to the foresaid straights of *Thermopylae*: True (quoth he) but yet enough for that service which we go for. And when they enquired of him again, and said: Why sir, intend you any other designe and enterprise? In outward shew (quoth he) and appearance, I give out in words that I go to impeach the passage of the Barbarians; but in very truth to lay down my life for the Greeks. When he was come to the very entrance of the said palls, he said unto his souldiers: It is reported unto us by our scouts, that our Barbarous enemies beat hand; therefore we are to lolo no more time, for now we are brought to this issue, that we must either defeat them, or else die for it. When one said unto him, for exceeding number of their arrowes we are not able to see the Sun: So much the better (quoth he) for us, that we may fight under the shade. To another who said: Lo they be even hard and close to us: And so are we (quoth he) hard by them. Another used their words unto him: You are come *Leonidas* with a very small troupe, for to hazard your selfe against to great a multitude: unto whom he answered: If you regard number, all *Greece* assembled together is not able to furnish us, for it would but answer one portion or canton of their multitude: but if you stand upon valor and prowess of men, certes this number is sufficient. Another there was who said as much to him: Buryer I bring (quoth he) men enough, considering we are hereto leave our lives. *Xerxes* wrote unto him to this effect: You need not unless you list be so perverse and obdurate as to fight against the gods; but by siding and combining with me, make your selfe a monarch over all *Greece*: unto whom he wrote back in this wise: If you knew wherein consisted the foreveigne good of mans life, you would not covet that which is another mans; for mine own part, I had rather lose my life for the safety of *Greece*, than to be the commander of all those of mine own nation. Another time *Xerxes* wrote thus: Send me thy armour; unto whom he wrote back: Come your selfe and fetch it. At the very point when he was to charge upon his enemies, the marshalls of the army came unto him, and protested that they must needs hold off and tarry untill the other allies and confederates were come together: Why (quoth he) think you not that as many as be minded to fight are come already? or know you not that they only who dread and reverence their kings be they that fight against enemies? this said, he commanded his souldiers to take their dinners for suppe shall (said he) in the other world. Being demanded why the best and bravest men preferre an honourable death before a shamefull life: Because (quoth he) they esteeme the one proper to nature only; but to die well they think it peculiar to themselves. A great desire he had to have those young men of his troupe and regiment, who were not yet married, and knowing well that if he dealt with them directly and openly, they would not abide it; he gave unto them one after another two brevers or letters to carry unto the *Ephori*, and so sent them away: he meant also to save three of those who were married: but they having an inkling thereof, would receive no brevers or millives at all: for one said, I have followed you hither to fight, and not to be a carrier of newes; the second also: By staying here I shall quit my selfe the better man; and the third: I will not be behind the rest, but the foremost in fight.

*Lechagrus* the father of *Polyandrus* and *Syrus*, when newes was brought unto him that one of his children was dead: I knew long since (quoth he) that he must needs die.

*Lycargus*

*Lycargus* the law-giver, minding to reduce his citizens from their old manner of life, unto a more sober and temperate course, and to make them more vertuous and honest (for before time they had been dissolute and over delicate in their manners and behaviour) nourished two whelps which came from the fame dog and bitch, and the one he kept alwayes within houle, and used it to lick in every dith and to be greedy after meat; the other he would lead forth abroad into the fields and acquaint it with hunting: afterwards he brought them both into an open and frequent assembly of the people, and set before him in the midst, certain bones, fols and craps; he put out also at the same time an hare before them; now both the one and the other took incontinently to that whereto they had been acquainted, and ran apace, the one to the mets of fops, and the other after the hare and caught it: hereupon *Lycargus* tooke occasion to infer this speech: You see here my matters and citizens (quoth he) how these two dogs having one hie and one dam to them both, are become far different the one from the other, by reason of their divers education, and bringing up: whereby it is evident how much more powerfull nurture and exercise is to the breeding of vertuous manners, than kinde and nature: howbeit some there be who say, that these two dogs or whelps which he brought out, were not of one & the same dog and bitch; but the one came from thoe curres that used to keepe the houle, & the other from thoe hounds that were kept to hunting; and afterwards that he acquainted the whelp that was of the worle kind only to the chafe, and that which came of the better race, to flap, lick, and do nothing else but raven; whereupon either of them made their chioice & ran quickly to that whereto they were accustomed; and thereby he made it appear evidently how education, traying, and bringing up is available both for good and bad conditions, for thus he spake unto them: By this example you may know my friends that nobility of blood, how highly over it is esteemed with the common sort, is to no purpose, no though we be defended from the race of *Hercules*, if we doe not practise those deeds: whereby he became the most renowned and glorious knight in the world, learning and exercising all our life time thoe things which are honest and vertuous. Having made a division of the whole territory, and distributed to every citizen an equal portion: it is reported that a good while after, being returned from a long voyage which he had, into the said territory about harvest time, when the corn was newly reaped and cut down, seeing the flocks and sheaves, cocks and fitches ranged even and orderly, and the same one to another; he rejoiced in his heart, and smiling said to thoe about him: That the whole territory of *Laconia* looked like unto the inheritance and patrimony of many brethren who had lately parted and divided their portions together equally. When he had brought in the cutting off and abolition of debts, he went in hand with the division of all utensils also and moveable goods within houle into even shares, to the end that there might be no imparity nor inequality at all among his citizens; but perceiving that if he went directly and plainly to work they would hardly bear and brook that any thing should be abridged and taken from them: he discredited first and foremost all sorts of gold, and silver coin, giving commandment that there should be no money used but made of iron: and taxed a certain rate, and limitation of what summe each mans state should amount; according to the estimation of the said money by way of exchange; which done, all wrongs and unjust dealings were chased clean out of *Lacedemon*: for now by this means there could no man rob nor steal, there was no bribing nor corruption by gifts, no man might defraud in contracts and bargains, nor embazzell any more, considering that they might neither conceale and hide that which was unjustly gotten nor any man joyed in possessing ought, nor could possibly use and occupy the same without perill: yet carry to and fro in safety and security and withall by the same means, he banished out of *Lacedemon* all superfluities, whereby there were no more any merchants, nor pleading sophisters, no wifards and fortune tellers, no coggung mount-banks and jurglers, no ingenious devisers of new fabricks and buildings that haunted *Sparta* any more: for why, he would not permit any money there which was current in other places, but only this iron coin was in request, and passed from one to another: as for the price thereof it weighed an Aegineticke pound; but the worth and valour, it went but for four *Chelci*. Moreover, having a purpose to root out delicate and superfluous pleasures, and to cut off clean all covetous desire of riches, he instituted and brought up thoe meetings which they call *Systiria*: i. eating at publicke meals and making merry together: and when some demanded of him what he meant to devise the same, and also why he ordained that his citizens should be divided by little tables when they sat together in armes? To the end (quoth he) that they might be in more readines to receive commandment from their inferiors: as also if peradventure there should be some practise among them of change and alteration, the fault might be in some few and in recover that there should be equality in eating and drinking, and neither in their dishes of meat nor cups of drink, nor in their beds nor apparell, nor so much as in the utensils and implements of the houle, or in any thing whatsoever, the rich should have any vantage over the poor: by this policy having brought to pass that riches was not let by and desired, considering that such order was taken, that neither men had much occasion to use it, nor any joy and pleasure to shew it, he would thus say unto his familiars: My good friends, what a gay and goodly matter it is, to make it known by effect indeed, that *Pluto*, that is to say, the god of riches, is in truth blinde, according as he is named to be. Furthermore carefull he was and had a speciall regard that his people should not first dine at home in their own houles, and after that, go to their publick halles and meetings aforesaid, being full of other viands and drinks; for others would

reproach and speak badly of a man, who did not eat among men with a good appetite, as being a glutton, or one who for dainties and delicacy disdain'd this common and vulgar manner of diet; but if any such happened to be seen and known, he was sure to be condemned in a good round fine. Hereupon it was, that a long time after, king *Agis* (after his returne from an expedition or voyage in war, wherein he had subdued the Athenians) willing one day to sup privately by himselfe with his wife at home, sent into the kitchen for his part or allowance of meat; but the marshalls of the army would lend him none; and the morrow after, when the matter came to the knowledge of the *Ephoroi*, he had a fine set on his head for it: but by reason of these new ordinances, aviers of the richer sort took snuff, and in great indignation rose up against him, abused him with hard terms, threw stones and would have brained him; but he seeing himselfe thus furiously purged, made shift by good footmanship, and escaped out of the common market place, and put himselfe within the sanctuary of *Minerva*'s temple, called *Chalcæos*, before the other could overtake him, only *Alexander* was so neere unto him, that when he cast his eye behind to see who followed after, he caught him a rap with his balton, and strake one of his eyes out of his head: but *Alexander* afterwards by the common sentence of the whole city, was put into his hands for to do exemplary justice upon him, according as he thought good, howbeit, he wrought him no mischief nor disfigure at all; and that which more is, he never so much as complained of any wrong or abuse that he had offered and done unto him; but having him to be a domestical guest and to live with him, he did this good to him: That he blazed in every place where he came, his commendable parts, and namely, the orderly diet and manner of life, that he had learned by conversing with him; and in one word, shewed himselfe highly to affect that discipline in which *Lycurgus* had trained him: afterwards, for a memoriall of this accident which befell unto him, he caused within the temple of *Minerva Chalcæos*, a chappell to be built unto *Minerva*, surnamed *Opisletis*; for that the Dorians inhabiting those parts, do call in their language, *Eies, Opeli*. It was demanded of him upon a time why he had not established any written positive lawes: Because (quoth he) they that are well brought up and initiated in that discipline as it appertaineth, know well how to judge that which the time requireth. Some asked him why he had ordained that the roofes of houses should be made with timber rough heven with the axe, and the doors of waven plank or board only, without work of any other tools or instruments at all? unto whom he answered: Because our citizens should be moderate in all things that they bring into their houses, and have no furniture therein that might for other mens teeth on water, or which other men do so much affect. From this custome by report it came, that king *Leopichides* the first of that name, being at supper in a friends house of his, when he saw the roofe over his head richly feeded with embowed arch-work, demanded of his host whether the trees in that country grew square or no? When he was asked why he forbade to make war often against the same enemies: for fear (quoth he) that being forced to stand upon their own guard and put themselves in defence, they should in the end become well experienced in the warres: in which regard *Agessilaus* afterwards was greatly blamed for being the cause by his continuall expeditions and invasions into *Boeotia*, that the Thebans were quall in armes unto the Lacedæmonians. Another asked also of him, why he enjoined maidens marriageable to exercise their bodies in running, wrestling, pitching the bar, slinging coits and lancing of darts? For this purpose (quoth he) that the first rooting of their children which they are to breed, taking fast and sure hold in able bodies well set and strongly knit, might spring and thrive the better within them, and they also themselves being more firme and vigorous, beare children afterwards the better, be prepared and exercised (as it were) to endure the paines, and travells of child-birth easily and stoutly, over and besides, if need required, be able to fight in defence of themselves, their children and country. Some there were who found fault with the custome that he brought in, that the maidens of the city at certain festivall daies should dance naked in solemn shewes and pomps that there were set, demanding the cause thereof, to whom he rendered this reason: That they performing the same exercises which men do, might be no less enabled than they, either in strength and health of body, or in vertue and generosity of mind, and by that means check and despise the opinion that the vulgar sort had of them. And from hence it came, that *Gorgo* the wife of *Leonidas*, as we finde written, when a certain dame and lady of a forren countrey said unto her: There be no other women but you Lacomian wives, that have men at command: answered in this wise: For why? we only are the women that bear men. Moreover, he debarr'd and kept those men who remained unmarried, from the sight of those shewes where the young virgins aforesaid danced naked; and that which more is, set upon them the note of infamy, in depriving them expressly of that honour and service which younger folk are bound to yeeld unto their elders: in which doing, he had a great foresight and providence to move his citizens to marriage and for to beget children: by occasion whereof, there was never any man yet who misliked and complained of that which was said unto *Democritus*, by way of reproach; though otherwise he was a right good and valiant captain: for when he came upon a time into a place, one of the younger sort there was, who would not deigne to rise up unto him, nor give him any reverence; and this reason he gave: Because (quoth he) as yet you have not begotten a child to rise up and do his duty likewise unto me. Another asked of him, wherefore he had ordained that daughters should be married without a dowry or portion given with them? Because (quoth he) for default and marriage-mony none of them might stay long ere they were wedded, nor be harkened after for their goods; but that every man regarding only the

the manners and conditions of a young damosell, might make choise of her whom he meaneth to epoulee, for her vertue only: which is the reason also that he banished out of *Sparta* all manner of painting, trimming, and artificiall embellishments to procure a superficiall beauty and complexion. Having also prefixed and set down a certain time, within the which as well maidens as young men might marry: one would needs know of him why he limited forth such a definite terme? unto whom he answered: Because their children might be (strong and lusty, as being begotten and conceived of such persons as be already come to their full growth. Some wondered why he would not allow that the new married bridegroom should lie with his epoulee; but expressly gave order that the most part of the day he should converse with his companions, yea, and all the nights long, but whensoever he went to keep company with his new wedded wife, it should be secretly and with great heed and care that he be not surpris'd or found with her? This (quoth he) is done to this end that they may be always more strong and in better plight of body: also that by not enjoying their delights and pleasures to the full, their love might be ever fresh, and their infants between them more hardy and stout: furthermore, he removed out of the city all precious and sweet perfumes, saying That they were no better than the very marring and corruption of the good natural oile; the art also of dying and tincture, which he said was nothing else but the flattery of the senses: to be brieve, he made the city *Sparta* inaccessible (as I may say) for all jewellers and fine workmen, who profess to set out and adorn the body: giving out, that such by their leud artificiall devices do deprave and mar the good arts and mysteries indeed. In those dayes the honesty and pudicity of dames was such, and so far off were they from that traitable felicity and easie access unto their love: which was afterwards, that adultery among them was held for an impossible and incredible thing. And to this purpose may well be remembered the narration of one *Gorandus*, an ancient Spartan, of whom a stranger asked the question: What punishment adulterers were to suffer in the city of *Sparta*? for that, he saw, *Lycurgus* had set down no expresse law in that behalfe: Why (quoth he) there is no adultery among us: but when the other replied again: Yea, but what if there were? even the same answer made *Gorandus*, and none other: For how (quoth he) can there be an adulterer in *Sparta*, wherein all riches, all superfluous delights and dainties, all outward trickings and embellishments of the body are despised and dishonoured? and where shame of doing ill, honesty, reverence and obedience to superiors carry away all the credit and authority? One put himselfe forward, and was in hand with him to let up and establish the popular State of government in *Sparta*; unto whom he answered: Begin it thy selfe first within thine own house. And unto another who demanded of him, why he ordained the sacrifices in *Lacedæmon* so simple and of small cost? To the end (quoth he) that we should never cease and give over to worship and honour the gods. Also when he permitted his citizens to practise those exercises of the body only, wherein they never stretched forth their hands; he was required by one to yeeld a reason thereof: Because (quoth he) none of us should in taking paines be accustomed to be weary or to faint, and give over at any time. Likewise being asked the reason why he gave order oftentimes to change the camp, and not in one place to lie long encamped? To the end (quoth he) that we might do the greater damage to our enemies, and hurt more of them. Another was desirous to know of him, why he forbade to give the assault unto any walles: unto whom he answered: For fear that the best men might not be killed, by a woman, a childe, or some such like person. Certain Thebans craved his advice and opinion touching the sacrifice, divine service, and dolefull moan which was solemnly made in the honour of *Leucothea*; unto whom he answered thus: If you take her for a goddes, weepe not for her as if she were a woman; if you suppose her to be a woman, sacrifice not unto her as to a goddes. Unto his citizens who demanded of him, how they might put back and repulse the invasions of their enemies? *Mary* (quoth he) if you continue poor, and none of you do covet to have more than another. Again, when they would needs know why he would not have their city to be walled about: Because (saith he) that city is never without a wall, which is environed and compassed about with valiant men, and not with brick or stone. The Spartans also were very curious in trimming the hair of their heads, alledging for their warrant a certain speech of *Lycurgus* as touching that point, who was wont to say: That side-hair made them who were faire more beautifull, and those that were foue, more hideous and terrible. Likewise he gave commandment, that in their wars, when they had discomfited their enemies and put them to flight, to follow the chase so hardly, untill they were fully assured of the victory, and then to retire with all speed, saying: That it was no act of a generous spirit, nor becoming the brave mind of the Greekish nation, to massacre and execute those who had quitted the place and were gone; besides, this also would be safe and commodious for themselves, forasmuch as the enemies who knew once their custome, namely, to put those to the sword who obstinately resist and make head, and to spare those & let them escape who lie before them, should by that means that flight is better than to stand to fight. A certain man asked him, for what cause he would not suffer the souldiers to rifle and spoile the bodies of their enemies as they fell dead: For fear (quoth he) lest while they busie themselves, and stoupe forward to gather the spoiles, they should neglect their fight in the meane time, but rather intend only with their poverty and want to keep their range.

The Tyrant of *Sicily Dionysius* had sent unto *Lyfander* two lutes of womens robes, that he might choise whether of them he liked better, to carry unto his daughter; but he said unto him: That he herselfe knew best which to choise, and what was fittest for her selfe, and so heooke both

both away with him. This *Lysander* was a very crafty and subtle fox, who ordered and managed most part of his affairs by cunning calts and deceitfull devices, esteeming justice only by utility and honesty by profit; conferring in word that truth was better than falsehood; but measuring indeed the worth and price as well of the one as the other by commodity. To them who reproved and blamed him for conducting the most part of his enterprises by fraud and guile, and not by plain direct force, a thing unworthy the magnanimity of *Hercules*, he would laugh and answer: That where he could not achieve a thing by the lions skin, he must needs low thereto a piece of the foxes caile. And when others charged and accused him mightily for that he had violated and broken his oath, which he had made in the city *Miletum*, he used to say: That children were to be deceived with cock-all-bones, but men with oaths: Having defeated the Athenians in a battell by means of an ambush, in a certain place called the Goats-rivers, and afterwards pressed them so fore with famine, that he forced them to yeeld the city unto his mercy, he wrote unto the *Ephori* thus: *Athenia* won. The *Lacedæmonians* in his time were at some difference with the *Argives* about their confines; and it seemed that the *Argives* alleged better reasons, and brought forth more direct evidences for themselves than the other; whereupon he came among them and drew his sword, saying: They that are the mightier with this, plead best for their confines. Seeing the *Beotians* as he passed thorow their country, hanging in equal balance, and yet not resolved and certain to which side for to range themselves, he sent one unto them for to know whether they would chuse, that he marched thorow their lands with speares and pikes upright, or bending downward and trailing. In a certain assembly of the estates of *Greece*, there was a *Megarian* who spake bravely and audaciously unto him: Thy words my friend (quoth he) have need of a city; meaning thereby, that he was of too weak and small a city, as to give such glorious words. The *Corinthians* rebelled upon a time, whereupon he advanced with his forces against their walles, which the *Lacedæmonians* seemed to assaile very coldly: but at the very instant there was elyped an hare, running cros over the town-ditch: whereupon he took occasion to say: Are yee not ashamed in deed O yee *Spartans*, to fear such enemies, who are so idle and stir so little abroad, that hares can sleepe quietly, even unto their very wales. When he was at *Samothrace* to consult with the oracle there: the priest was in hand with him to confesse what was the most wicked and enormous act that ever he did in all his life time: whereupon he asked the priest again: Whether is it your selfe or the gods that would know this much and impoerth this confession upon me? The gods (quoth the priest) would have it so: Why then (quoth he) retire you aside out of my sight, and if they demand the same of me, I will answer them. A certain *Perian* asked him what kinde of government he liked best and praised most: Even that (quoth he) which ordaineth for cowards and hardy men that reward and hire which is meet for them. Another said unto him: That in every place where he came he was ready to commend and defend him: I have (quoth he again) in my grounds two oxen, and neither of them speaks a word; howbeit, I know for all that, which is good of deed, and which is idle and lazy at his vvvork. There was one who let flie at him divers odious and reproachfull words: Speak on good fellow (quoth he) out with it hardly and spare not, vomit up all and leave nothing behind, if haply thou canst rid and purge thy heart of all the wicked venom wherewith thou seemest so fvvell. Sometime after, vvhen he vvvas dead, there arose variance between the allies of *Sparta* as touching certain matters, and for to know the truth and settle all causes among them, *Agessilaus* went to *Lysander*'s house, for to search certain papers that might give light & evidence to the thing in controversy; and among their writings he chanced to light upon an oration or pamphlet penned by him as touching policy and the State; wherein he seemed to perswade the *Spartans* to take the royalty and regall dignity from the houses of the *Eurytionide* and *Agiae*, and to bring it to a free election of the citizens, that they might chuse for their kings out of all the city those who were approved & known for the worthiest men, & not to be obliged for to take and admit of necessity one of *Hercules*'s line: so as the crown and regall state might be conferred as a reward and honour upon him who in vertue resembled *Hercules* most, considering that it was by the means thereof, that unto him were assigned the honours due unto the gods: now was *Agessilaus* fully bent to have published this oration before all the citizens, to the end that they might take knowledge how *Lysander* was another kinde of man than he had been taken for, withall to traduce those that were his friends, and bring them into obloquie, suspicion and trouble: but by report *Lacratidas* the principal man, and president of the *Ephori*, fearing lest if this oration were once divulged and openly read, it might take effect, and perswade that in deed which it pretended; said: *Agessilaus* and kept him from doing so, saying: That he should not now rake *Lysander* out of his grave, but rather enterre and bury the oration together with him, so wittily and artificially compoed it was, and so effectually to perswade. Certain gentlemen there were of the city, who during his life were suiters to his daughters in marriage; but after his death when his estate was known to be but poore, they desisted and cast them off, whereupon the *Ephori* condemned them in great fines, for that they made court unto them, so long as they esteemed him wealthy; but afterwards when they found by his poore estate that he was a righteous and just man, they made no more reckoning of his daughters but disdained them.

*Nemertes* being sent as embassadour into a forren country, there chanced to be one of those

parts

parts who said unto him: That he held and reputed him for an happy man, because he had so many friends: unto whom he replied and asked: Whether he knew the true proof whereby a man might be assured that he had many friends? the other answered: No, but I pray you tell me: Why then (quoth he) is 's adversity.

*Nicander*, when one brought him word that the *Argives* spake ill of him: It makes no matter (quoth he) are they not sufficiently chastised and punished for railing upon good men? One asked of him wherefore the *Lacedæmonians* wore their hair long of their heads, and suffered likewise their beards to grow idle; unto whom he answered: Because a mans own proper ornament is of all other the fairest, and costeth least. A certain *Athenian* being in communication with him, cast out this word: All you *Lacedæmonians* (*Nicander*) love your ease well, and are idle: You say true indeed (quoth he) but we buye not our selves as you do in every trifling matter.

*Pantodotus*, being sent in embassage into *Affrica*, was shewed by the people of those parts a certain strong City well fortified with high and goodly walls: Now by the gods (quoth he) my friends, this seems to be a trim Cloister to enue up women in. In the School of *Academy* the Philosophers discoursed and disputed as touching many good themes, and after they had made anend, they said unto him: Now good Sir O *Pantodotus*, how like you these discourses? What should I think of them else (quoth he) but that they are goodly and honest in shew, but surely profitable they are not, nor edifie at all, so long as you selves do not live accordingly.

*Pausanias* the son of *Clombrotus*, when the inhabitants of the Isle *Delos* were at debate, and pleaded for the propriety of the said Isle against the *Athenians*, alleging for themselves that by an old law (time out of mind, observed among them, there might none of their women bear children within the said Island, nor any of their dead be buried there: How then (quoth he) can this Isle be yours, if none of you were ever born or buried there? When certain exiled persons from *Athens* solicited him to lead his Army against the *Athenians*, and for to provoke him rather thereto, said: That they were the only men who hisled and whistled at the naming of him, when he was declared victor in the solemnity of the Olympick games: But what think you (quoth he) will they do when we have wrought them some shrewd turn, since they flick not to hiss at us being their benefactors? Another asked of him, wherefore the *Lacedæmonians* had enfranchized the Poet: *Tyrtæus* their Deviser? Because (quoth he) we never would be thought to have a stranger or alien our leader and governor. There was a very weak and feeble man of body, who nevertheless seemed very earnest and intant to make war upon the enemies, and to give them battel both on sea and land: Will you (quoth he) strip your selfe out of your cloaths, that we may see what a goodly man of person you are, to move and perswade us for to fight? Some there were who seeing the spoils that were taken from the dead bodies of the Barbarians after they were slain in the field, marvelled much at their sumptuous and costly cloaths: It had been better (quoth he) that themselves had been of more valour, and their habiliments of lesse value. After the victory which the *Greeks* won of the *Perians* before the City *Plataea*, he commanded those about him to serve him up to the table that supper which the *Perians* had provided for themselves, which being wonderful excessive and superfluous: Now *Pantodotus* (quoth he) the *Perians* are great gourmands and greedy gluttons, who having so great store of viands come hither among us, for to eat up our browne bread and course bisket.

*Pausanias* the son of *Plistonax*, unto one who asked him, why it was not lawful in their country to alter any of their ancient Statutes, made this answer: Because Laws ought to be mistresses of men, and not men masters of the Laws. Being exiled from *Sparta*, and making his abode within the City *Tegæra*, he highly praised the *Lacedæmonians*: one of the standers by said unto him: And why then staidst thou not at *Sparta*, if there be to good men there? why I say, fled you from thence? Because (quoth he) Physicians do not use to keep where folk be found and whole, but where they are sick and diseased. One came to him and said: How shall we be able to defeat and conquer the *Thracians*? Marry (quoth he) if we chuse the valiantest man for our Captain. A certain Physician advised and looked upon him very wittily, and after he had well considered his person, said: Thou ailest nothing, neither is there any evil in thee: I think so (quoth he) because I use none of thy counsel and physick. His friends reproved him for speaking ill of a physician, of whom he had no proof nor experience, and at whole hands he had received no harm: True indeed (quoth he) I have made no trial of him: for if I had, surely I should not have been a lives-man at this day. When a Physician said unto him: You are now become old Sir: Thou sayst truth (quoth he) because I have not entertained thee for to minister physick unto me. He was wont also to say: That he was the best Physician, who would not let his patients rot above ground, but dispatch them at once, and send them quickly to their graves.

*Pedareus*, when one said unto him: There is a great number of our enemies: Then (quoth he) shall we win greater honour for kill we may the more of them. Seeing one who by nature was a very dastard and coward, howbeit, commended otherwise by his fellow Citizens for his modesty and mildness: I would not have men (quoth he) praised for being like women, nor women for resembling men, unless peradventure a woman be driven upon some occasion of extremity to play the man. Having the repulse upon a time when he should have been chosen into the council of the three hundred, which was the most honourable degree of State in all the City, he departed from the assembly all joynd merry and smiling; and when the *Ephori* called him back again, and demanded of him why he

K k

laughed

laughed? Because (quoth he) I joy in the behalfe of the City, that it hath in it three hundred better and more sufficient Citizens then my selfe.

*Pistarcus* the son of *Leonidas*, when one enquired of him the cause why they carried not the denomination of their families from the names of their first Kings, but of the latter? Because (quoth he) those in the old time \* chose rather to be Leaders then Kings; but their successors not, there was a certain Advocate at the bar, who in pleading for his Client, was full of his jests and frumps, never ceasing to scoff and move laughter: My friend (quoth he unto him) do you not consider and regard, that in seeming to make others for to laugh, you will cause your selfe to be ridiculous and a laughing stock? even as those who by wrestling out become good wrestlers? Report there was made unto him one day of a certain foul tongued fellow, who used to slander and back-bite all men, and yet spake all good of him: I wonder much (quoth he) if no man told him that I was dead; for surely he cannot for his life afford any man living one good word.

*Plistonax* the son of *Panfanias*, when a certain Athenian Orator called the Lacedemonians, unlettered and ignorant persons: Thop sayest true (quoth he) for we alone of all other Greeks, are the men who have learned no naughtinesse of you.

*Polydorus* the son of *Alcibemes*, said unto one who ordinarily did nothing else but menace his enemies: Dost thou not perceive how thou spendest the most part of thy revenge in these threats? He led upon a time the Army from Lacedemon against the City of *Messene*; and one demanded of him, whether his heart would serve to fight against brethren? No (quoth he) but I can find infinite heart to march into that inheritance which is not yet set out and parted by lots. The Argives, after the discomfiture of their three hundred men who fought against to many of the Lacedemonians, were defeated a second time, all in a ranged battell; by reason whereof, the allies and confederates of the Lacedemonians were earnest with *Polydorus* not to let slip so good an opportunity, but to follow the train of victory, and to go directly to the oppugnation of their City walls, and to win it by force; which he might effect right easily, considering that all the men were killed up in the field, and none but women left alive within, to defend the City; unto whom he answered: I am well appayed, and take this for my great honour and glory, that I have vanquished mine enemies in battell, fighting on even hand to many to so many; but being to determine the quarrel by dint of sword for our confines only, and having exploited that, to proceed forward, and covet assault and win their City, I hold it not to be just and equal: for come I am to recover those lands of ours which they occupied, and not to seize upon their home-Italies. Being demanded why the Lacedemonians exposed themselves so manfully to the hazard of war? It is (quoth he) because they have learned to reverence, and not to fear their Rulers and Captains.

*Polycratus* being sent with others, in Embassage to the Lieutenants of the King of *Persia*, when they demanded of him and the rest, whether they were come of their own proper motion, or sent by commission from the State? If we speed of that (quoth he) which we demand, then are we come in the behalfe of the Common-weale; but if we misse, we come of our own heads.

*Phaedrus* immediately before the battell of *Leutres*, when some gave out, and said: This day will try and shew who is a good man? Such a day (quoth he) is much worth indeed, it is able to shew a good man.

*Sons*, as it is reported (being upon a time straightly besieged by the Clitorians, in a place which was very rough and without water) made offer to render unto their hands all those Lands which he had conquered from them, in case that he and all his company might drink at a certain fountain which was neer at hand: the Clitorians accorded thereto, and this covenant was concluded and confirmed by Oath between them: so he assembled all his men together, and declared unto them; That if there were any amongst them who would abstain from drink, he would resign up into his hands all his sovereign power and royalty; but there was not one of all his troop who could contain and forbear, to exceeding thirst they were all; but every man drunk heartily, himselfe only excepted, who went last down to the spring, where he did nothing else but cool and besprinkle his body without, in the presence of his very enemies, not taking one drop inwardly; by which evasion, he would not afterwards yield up the foresaid lands, but alleged that they had not all drunk.

*Telerus*, when one came unto him and said: That his own father gave him always hard words; made him this answer: Surely, if there were not cause to use such speeches, he would never speak so. His brother also was discontented, and complained in this wise: The Citizens do not bear me such favour and kindnesse as they shew in your behalfe; notwithstanding we are the sons of one father and mother; but they misse me most injuriously: The reason is (quoth he) because you know not how to put up a wrong as I do. Being demanded why the custom was in their country, that young men should rise up from their places where they were set, and do reverence unto their elders? It is (quoth he) to this end, that in doing this honour unto those, who nothing belonged unto them, they might learn to much the more to honour their Parents, Unto another that asked him of what wealth he was, and how much goods he had? he answered: I have no more then will suffice.

*Charillus* being asked the question why *Lycorgus* had given them so few laws? Because (quoth he) they have no need at all of many laws who speak but little. Another demanded of him the cause, why at *Sparta* they suffered to go forth into publick place, virgins with their faces open, but wives veiled and covered: For that (quoth he) maidens might find them out husbands to be wedded unto, and

and wives keep those whom they have married already. One of the slaves (called *Ilotes*) behaved himselfe upon a time over boldly and malapertly with him; unto whom he said: Were I not angry, I would kill thee at my foot. One asked him what kind of government he esteemed best? Even that (quoth he) wherein most men, in managing of publick affairs without quarrels and sedition, strive yet who shall be most vertuous. And unto another who would needs know the reason, why at *Sparta* the images and statues of the gods were made in armour? he shaped this answer: To the end that the reproaches which are fastned upon men for cowardize, might not take hold of them; also that young men should never without their arms make their prayers unto the gods.

The Samiens had sent certain embassadors unto *Sparta*, who after audience given, were very long and somewhat tedious in their Orations; but when they had found the way to make an end, *The Lords of Sparta* made them this answer: The beginning of your speech we have forgotten, and we conceived not the rest because the beginning was out of our remembrance. The Thebans upon a time had contested bravely, and contradicted them stoutly in certain points in question, unto whom they answered thus: Either lesse hearts, or more pusillance. There was one asked a Lacedemonian upon a time why he let his beard grow so long: Because (quoth he) whensoever I see my hoary and gray hairs, I might be put in mind to do nothing unbecoming them. When another highly praised certain men for most valiant: a Lacedemonian heard him and said: Oh, such were some-time at *Great Troy*. Another of them hearing it spoken, that in certain Cities men were forced to drink after supper: And do they not (quoth he) compel them also to eat? The Poet *Pindarus* in one of his Canticles nameth the City of *Athen* the prop of *Greece*: Then will *Greece* quickly come tumbling down (quoth a Laconian) if it beir butt upon so sleight a pillar. Another beheld a painted table, wherein was the portraiture of the Lacedemonians, how they were killed by the Athenians, and when one that stood by said: Now surely these Athenians be valiant men: Yea marry (quoth he) in a picture. There was one seemed to take pleasure in hearing certain approbrious and slanderous words ventrily given out against a Laconian, and to beleve the same; but the party thus misused said: Cease to lend your ear against me. Another, when he was punished, went crying: If I have done amiss it is against my will: Why then (answered a Laconian) let it be against thy will also that thou art punished: Another seeing men going forth of the Country, set at their call within Coaches: (God forbid (quoth he) that I should sit there where I cannot rise up to do my duty to him that is elder then my selfe. Certain Chians there were, who being come to see the City of *Sparta*, chanced to be well whittled and stark drunk, who after supper went to see also the consistory of the *Ephori*, where they call up their gorges, yea, and that which moris, both vomited and discharged their guts, even upon the very chairs where the *Ephori* were wont to sit: the morrow after, the Lacedemonians made great fear, and diligent enquiry at the first, who they were that thus had plaid the slovens and beasts, and namely, whether they were any of their own City or no: but when they understood that they were these strangers and travellers from *Chios*, they made open proclamation with sound of Trumpet; that they gave the Chians leave thus filthily to abuse themselves. Another Laconian seeing hard Almonds sold at the double price: What (quoth he) are stones so gealous here? Another having plucked all the feathers off from a Nightingale, and seeing what a little body it had: Surely (quoth he) thou art all voice and nothing else. There was likewise a Lacedemonian, who seeing the Cynick Philosopher *Diogenes* in the midst of winter when it was extreme cold, embracing and clipping a brazen statue very devoutly, asked him if he chilled not for cold? and when the other answered, No: Why then (quoth he) what great matter do you? A certain Laconian reproached upon a time one born in *Metapontium*, saying: They were all cowards and false-hearted like women: If it be so (quoth the Metapontian) how is it that we hold to much of other mens lands as we do? Why then (replied the Laconian) I see that you are not cowards only, but unjust also. A traveller being come to *Sparta* for to see the City, stood upright a long while upon one foot only, and said unto a Laconian, I do not think thou canst stand so long of one leg as I do: Not indeed (quoth the other) but therein is not a goose but can do as much. There was one vaunted greatly what a Rhetorician he was, and namely, that he was able to periwade what he would; now by *Callio* and *Pollux* I swear (quoth a Laconian) there never was, nor never will be any Art indeed without verity. A certain Argive boasted much, that there were in their city many graves and Tombs of the Lacedemonians: And contrariwise (quoth a Laconian) there is not among us one Sepulcher of the Argives: giving him thus much to understand, that the Lacedemonians had many times entred with a puissant Army into the Countrey of *Argos*, but the Argives never into the Territory of *Sparta*. A Laconian being taken prisoner in War (when he should be sold in port sale, as the Crier began with a loud voice to pronounce: Who will buy a Laconian, who) put his hand to the Criers mouth and said: Cry for Gods sake who will buy a prisoner: One of those mercenary Soldiers whom King *Lysimachus* waged, being demanded of him this question: Art thou one of these Lacedemonian *Ilots*? Why think you (quoth the other) that a Lacedemonian will deigne to come and serve for foure Obols by the day? After that the Thebans had defeated the Lacedemonians at the battell of *Leutres*, they invaded the Countrey of *Laconia*, so farre as to the very River *Enotus*: and one of them in boasting and glorious manner, began to say: And where be now these brave Laconians? what is become of them? a Laconian who was a Captive among them, straight-ways made this answer: They are no where now indeed, for if they were, you would never have come thus far as you do. At what time as the Athenians delivered up their

Apophthegmes of  
Spartans and  
Laconians,  
whose names  
are not ex-  
pressed.

own City into the hands of the Lacedemonians, for to be at their discretion, they requested that at leastwise they would leave them the Isle *Samos*: unto whom the Laconians made this answer: When you are not masters of your own, do you demand that which is other mens: hereupon arose the common proverb throughout all Greece:

*Who cannot that which was his own save,  
The Isle of Samos would yet faine have.*

The Lacedemonians forced upon a time a certain City, and won it by assault: which the *Ephori* being advertised of, said thus: Now is the exercise of our young men cleane gone, now shall they have no more concurrents to keep them occupied. When one of their Kings made promise unto them for to raze another City and destroy it utterly (if they so would) which oftentimes before had put those of *Lacedemon* to much trouble: the said *Ephori* would not permit him, saying thus unto him: Do not demolish and take away quite the whetstone that giveth an edge to the hearts of our youth. The same *Ephori* would never allow that there should be any professed Masters, to teach their young men for to wrestle and exercise other feats of activity: To this end (say they) that there might be jealousie and emulation among them, not inartificial slight, but in force and verue. And therefore when one demanded of *Lysander*, how *Charon* had in wrestling overcome him, and laid him along on the plaine ground: Even by slight and cunning (quoth he) and not by pure strength. *Philip* King of *Macedonia*, before he made entry into their Countrey, wrote unto them to this effect: Whether he had rather that heented as a Friend, or as an Enemy: unto whom they returned this answer: Neither one nor the other. When they had sent an Embassadour to *Demetrius* the Sonne of *Antigonus*, having intelligence that the said Embassadour in parley with him, elsdoones gave him the name of King, they condemned him to pay a fine when he was returned home, notwithstanding that he brought as a present and gratuity from the said *Demetrius*, in time of extreame famine, a certaine measure of Corne called *Medimnus*, for every poll throughout the whole City. It happened that a lewd and wicked man delivered in a certain consultation a very good Counsel: this advice of his they approved right well, howbeit receive it they would not coming out of his mouth, but caused it to be pronounced by another, who was known to be a man of good life. Two brethren there were at variance, and in suite of law together: the *Ephori* set a good fine upon their Fathers head, for that he neglected his sons, and suffered them to maintain quarrel and debate one against another. A certaine Musician who was a stranger and a traveller, they likewise condemned to pay a summe of money, for that he struck the strings of his Harp with his fingers. Two boyes fought together, and one gave the other a mortal wound with a sickle or reaping hook: and when the boy that was hurt lay at the point of death, and was ready to yield up the ghost, other companions of his promised to be revenged for his death, and to kill the other, who thus deadly had wounded him: Do not so I beseech you (quoth he) as you love the Gods, for that were injustice: and even I myselfe had done as much for him, if I had been ought, and could have raght him first. There was another young lad, unto whom certaine mates and fellows of his (in that season wherein young lads were permitted freely to fitch whatsoever they could handsomely come by, but reputed it was a shameful and infamous thing for them to be surprized and taken in the manner) brought a young Cub or little Fox to keep alive, which they had stolen: those who had lost the said Cub came to make search: now had this lad hidden it close under his cloathes, and the unhappy beast being angry, gnawed and bit him in the flanks, as far as to his very bowels, which he endured resolutely, and never quencheth at it. For fear he should be discovered: but after all others were gone and the search past, when his companions saw what a shrewd turn the curst cub had done him: they chid him for it, saying That it had been far better to have brought forth the Cub and shewed him, rather then to hide him thus with danger of death: Nay I wis (quoth he) for I had rather die with all the dolorous torments in the world, then for to lavy my life shamefully to be detested for, for want of a good heart. Some there were who encountered certaine Laconians upon the way in the Countrey, unto whom they said: Happy are you that can come now this way, for the thieves are but newly gone from hence: Nay forsooth (by god *Mars* we swear) we are never the happier therefore: but they rather, because they are not fallen into our hands. One demanded of a Laconian upon a time, what he knew and was skilful in? Marry in this, to be free. A young lad of *Sparta* being taken prisoner by King *Antigonus*, and sold among other Captives, obeyed him who had bought him in all things that he thought meet for to be done by a freeman: but when he commanded to bring him an Urinal or Chamber-pot to pisse in: he would not endure that indignity, but said: Fetch it your selfe for me, I am no servant for you in such ministeries: now when his Master urged him thereto and pressed hard upon him, he ran up to the ridge, or roof of the house, and said: You shall see what an one you have bought: and with that cast himselfe down with his head forward, and brake his own neck. Another there was to be sold: and when the party who was about him, said thus: Wilt thou be good and profitable if I do buy thee? Yea, that I will (quoth he) though you never buy me. Another there was likewise upon sale in open market, and when the Crier proclaimed aloud: Here is a slave, who buyes him, who? A flame take thee (quoth he) couldst not thou say, a Captive or Prisoner, but a slave. A Laconian had for the badge or ensign of his Buckler a Flie painted and the same no bigger then one is naturally: whereupon some mocked him and said: That he had made choice of this ensign because he would not be known by it: Nay rather

(quoth

(quoth he) I did it, because I would be the better marked: for I mean to approach mine enemies to see, that they may know how great or little my cogitance is. Another there was, who when there was a banquet, and he had the end of a Banquet, the Harpers play upon according to the custom of Greece, raised up and said: The Laconians have not yet learned to play the fools. One asked a Spartan once, if the way that led to *Sparta*, were safe or no? by the answerd thus: Even according as a man doth go down thither, for they who go thither as Lyons, be hardly entreated and meet their coming: but Hares we hunt from under the shade of their boroughs. In wrestling it chanced that a Laconian was caught hold on by the neck, and notwithstanding that he strive what he could to make the other leave his hold: yet he forced him and made him stoop groveling downward to the ground: the Laconian seeing himselfe feeble in the reins of the back, and at the point to be laid along by the others arm, who held him hard, whereupon he began to cry: What thou Laconian, dost thou bite like women? No (quoth he) but bite as Lyons use to do. A certain Laconian who was named and lame of his leg, went to warres, whereupon some mocked him: but he said unto them: It is not for those to go into the wars who are good of footman ships, and can run away apace: but such as are able to make good their ground, and keep well their rank. Another Laconian being shot through the body with an arrow, when he was at the point to yield up his vital breath, said thus: It never grieves me to lose my life, but to die by the hand of an effeminate carshier, before I came to hand strokes, that is if it troubleth me. Another being come to an Hostelry, or Inn to be lodged in, gave his host that kept the Inn, a piece of flesh to dress for his supper: but he called for cheese besides and oyl: And what needs that (quoth the Laconian) if I had cheese, do you think that I would desire to have any viands more? Another hearing the Merchant named *Lampus*, born in *Aegina*, highly praised and esteemed happy, for that he was exceeding rich, and had many great ships going at sea: I never (quoth he) make reckoning of that felicity, which hangeth by ropes and cords. Another likewise answered unto one who said unto him: Thou yest Laconian! And why not (quoth he) we are free, as for others that happen to speak untruths, they are well punished for it and cry out, alas. There was a Laconian who laboured hard to make a dead body stand upright upon his feet, but when he saw that he could not bring his purpose to effect, do what he could: Now by *Tynnichus* (quoth he) there wanteth somewhat that should be within. *Tynnichus* the Laconian, when his son *Thrasylus* was slain in the war, took his death very well, and like a man, whereupon was this Epigram made:

*The body was upon the field  
O Thrasylus brought  
All braublesse to the armed troops:  
From place wherethon hadst fought:  
Seven deadly wounds at Argives hands  
Thou didst receive in fights,  
And on the forepart of thy corps,  
Thou shewdest them all in fight.  
Thy Father old Sir Tynnichus  
Is rook with blood besid,  
And putting it in funeral fire,  
With good cheer thus he said:  
Let upwards weep and wail thy death's  
But I thy Father kinde,  
Will shed no tears, nor semblance make  
Of sad and grieved mind:  
But thee, intyre (my son) as doth  
Beseech thy Fathers child,  
And as true Laconian,  
Who loves to die in field.*

The Master of the baine where *Alcibiades* the Athenian was wont to bath and wash himselfe, poured great store of water upon his body more then ordinarily upon others: a Laconian being then by said: It seemeth that he is not cleane and neat, but that he is exceeding foule and filthy: that hee belongeth to much water upon him. When King *Philip* of *Macedonia* entred with a main Army into *Laconia*, at what time as it was thought all the Lacedemonians were killed up and dead, he said unto one of the Spartans: O poor Laconians, what will you do now? what else (quoth the Laconian) but die valiantly like men: for we alone of all other Greeks have been taught to live free and not to serve in bondage under any others. After that King *Agus* was vanquished, *Antipater* the King demanded of the Lacedemonians for hostages, fifty children of theirs: *Ereclus* one of the *Ephori* for the time being, returned this answer: That he would not deliver into his hands any of their children, for fear they would learn ill manners and lewd conditions: for that they should not be brought up and nurtured in the discipline of their own country, and wanting it they would not prove so good Citizens: but if he would be so content, he should receive for pledges women or old men, twise as many. And when he menaced hereupon and said: That he would work him all the despite that possibly he could: they answered all with one accord: If thou impose upon us those conditions, which are more grievous then death, we shall die with so much the better will. One old

\* Othenoit  
thus: Vve go  
forth to chide  
Lyons, but  
Hares we  
hunt in their  
harboroughs



manded him to fight the combats at the Olympick games; could not get a room to sit in, but passed along by every place, and no man would make him room, but fell to laugh and make good game at him; much he came, although to that quarter of the whole Theater; whereas the Lacedæmonians were few; and these all the Children, yea and many of the men rose up unto him, and offered him their place; all the whole assembly of the Greeks observed well this behaviour of theirs, and with great applause and clapping of hands, approved and praised the same: then the good old Father

*Shaking his head with hairs all grey,  
His beard all white as they;*

and weeping wisth: Ah, God help (quoth he) what a world is this; that Greeks should all of them know well enough what is good and honest; but the Lacedæmonians only practice it! Some write, that the same happened in Athens also, at the festival solemnity called *Panathenæa*; where those of Athens displayed mock-holiday, and made themselves merry with a poor old man, who they seemed to call him to them (as I saw) to give him a place among them; but after he was come to them, no room he could make with them; but was well-mocked and humped for his labour: howbeit when he had passed along by all the rest, at length he came to a place where certain Embassadors of Lacedæmon were set, and they made him room; and set him among them: the people there assembled, taking great pleasure to see this act, clapped their hands loud, with great acclamation, in token that they approved it; then said one of the Spartans, who there was: By the two twin-gods, *Cæstor* and *Pollux* (quoth he) I swear, these Athenians know what is good and honest; but they do not according to their knowledge. A beggar upon a time craved alms of a Lacedæmon, who answered him thus, But if I should give thee any thing, thou wouldst make an occupation of it, and beg still for much more: for verily, whosoever he was that first bestowed alms upon thee, was the cause of this villainous life which thou leadst now, and hath made thee to vagrant and idle as thou art. Another Lacedæmonian seeing a Collector going about, and gathering mens' donations for the gods, said thus: I will now make no more reckoning of the gods; so long as they be poorer than my self. A certain Spartan having taken an Adulterer in bed with his Wife, a fair and flavoured woman; Wretched man that thou art (quoth he) what necessity hath driven thee to this? Another having heard an Orator making long Periods, and drawing out his sentence in length: Now by *Cæstor* and *Pollux*, what a valiant man is here? how he rolleth and roundly turneth his tongue about, and all to no purpose. A traveller passing thorow Lacedæmon, marked among other things, what great honour and reverence young folk did to their elders: I perceive (quoth he) there is no place to *Sparta*, for an old man to live in. A Spartan was upon a time asked the question, what manner of Poet *Tyrtaeus* was? A good Poet beleeve me (quoth he) to what and sharpen the courages of young men to war. Another having very bad and diseased eyes, would needs go to warfare; and when others said unto him: Wilt thou go indeed in that case as thou art in? what deed thinkest thou to do there? Why (quoth he) if I do no other good else, I will be sure to dull the brightnesse of mine enemies' whorls. *Buris* and *Spartis*, two Lacedæmonians, voluntarily departed out of their country, and went to *Xerxes* King of *Persia*, offering themselves to suffer that pain and punishment, which the Lacedæmonians had deserved by the sentence of the Oracle of the gods, for killing those He-ralds which the King had sent unto them; who being come before him, were desirous that he should put them to death in what manner he would himself, for to acquiesce the Lacedæmonians: the King wondering at this resolution of theirs, not only pardoned the fault, but earnestly requested them to stay with him, promising them liberal entertainment: And how can we (say they) live here, abandoning our native soil, our laws, and those kind of men, for whose sake to die we have so willingly undertaken this long voyage? and when a great Captain under the King, named *Indarates*, interested them still very instantly, assuring them upon his word, that they should be kindly used, and in equal degree of credit and honour, with those who were in highest favour with the King, and most advanced by him, they said unto him: It seemeth unto us Sir, that you full little know what liberty and freedom: for he that with what a Jewel were, if he be in his right wits, would not change the same for the whole Realm of *Persia*. A certain Lacedæmonian as he way-fared, came unto a place where there dwelt an old friend an host of his, who the first day, of purpose avoided him, and was out of the way, because he was not minded to lodge him; but the morrow after, when he had either hired or borrowed fair bedding, coverings and carpets, received him very gladly; but this Lacedæmonian coming up to his beds, trampled and stamped the fair and rich coverlets under his feet, saying wisth: I have thrown these fine beds and trim furniture, for they were the cause that yesterday I had not so much as a mat to lie upon, when I should sleep and take my rest. Another of them, being invited at the City of *Athens*, and seeing there the Athenians going up and down the City, some crying false to fall, others flesh and such like wiauds: some like Publicans, sitting at the receipt of customs; other professing the trade of keeping brothel-houses, and exercising many such vile and base occupations, esteeming nothing at all foul and dishonest: after he was returned home into his own country, when his neighbours and fellow Citizens asked him, what news at *Athens*, and how all things stood there: Passing well (quoth he) and it is the best place that ever I came in (which he spake by way of mockery and derision) everything there is good and honest; giving them to understand, that all means of gain and lustre, were held lawful and honest at *Athens*, and nothing there was counted villainous and dishonest. Another Lacedæmonian being asked a question, answered

\* κακοῦ  
Some inter-  
pret cleane  
contrary,  
and read  
καλῶν,  
or καλλί-  
ων, i. d.  
to allure,  
to dillec,  
gently  
handle, or  
adorn the  
mind.

red: No; and when the party who moved the question said, Thou liest; the Lacedæmonian replied again, and said: See what a fool thou art, to ask me that which thou knowest well enough thy self. Certain Lacedæmonians were sent upon a time, Embassadors to *Lydus* the Tyrant, who put them off from day to day, and filled with them so, as he gave them no audience; at the last, it was told them, that at all times he was weak and ill at ease, and not in case to be conferred with: the Embassadors thereupon laid unto him who brought this word unto them: Tell him from us, that we are not come to wrestle, but to parle only with him. A certain Priest induced a Lacedæmonian into the orders and ceremonies of some holy Religion; but before that he would fully receive and admit him, he demanded of him what was the most grievous sin that ever he committed; and which lay heaviest upon his conscience? The gods know that best (quoth the Lacedæmonian) but when the Priest pressed hard upon him, and was very importunate, protesting that there was no remedy, but he must needs utter and confesse it: Unto whom (quoth the Lacedæmonian) must I tell it, unto you, or to the God whom you serve? Unto God (quoth the other): Why then turn you behind mee (quoth he) or retire aside out of hearing: Another Lacedæmonian chanced in the night to go over a Church-yard by a Tomb or Monument, and imagined that he saw a spirit standing before him; whereupon he advanced forward directly upon it with his javelin; and as he ran full upon it, and as he thought, struck thorow it, he said wisth: Whither fliest thou from me, ghost that thou art, now twice dead? Another having vowed to fling himself headlong from the high Promontory *Licida*, down into the Sea, mounted up the top thereof, but when he saw what an huge dowfall it was, he gently came down again on his feet: now when one twisted and reproached him thereto: I wilt not (quoth he) that this vow of mine had need of another greater than it. Another Lacedæmonian there was, who in a barrel and hot medly, being fully minded to kill his enemy who was under him, and so that purpose had liked up his sword back, to give him a deadly wound; so soon as ever he heard the trumpet sound the retreat, presently stayed his hand, and would no more follow his streak: now when one asked him, why he slew not his enemy whom he had in his hands? Because (quoth he) it is better to obey a Captain, than to kill an enemy. There was a Lacedæmonian took the foil in wrestling at the Olympick games; and when one cried aloud: Thy concurrent is better than thou, Lacedæmonian: Better (quoth he) not so, but indeed he can skill better than I of supplanting and tripping.

### The Customes and Ordinances amongst the Lacedæmonians.

THE manner and custome was at Lacedæmon, that when they entred into their publick Halls where they took their meats and meals together; the eldest man of the whole company should first shew the doors unto every one as they came, and lay unto them: At these doors there goeth not forth so much as one word. The most exquisite dish among them was a messe of broth, which they called Black portage; inasmuch as when that was served up to the table, the elder folk would not care for any flesh meats, but leave all the same for the younger fort. And (as it is reported) *Dionys* the Tyrant of *Sicily*, for this purpose bought a Cook from Lacedæmon, and commanded him to make him such portage, and spare for no cost; but after he had a little tasted thereof, he found it so bad that he cast up all that he had taken of it: but his Cook laid unto him: Sir, if you would find the goodness of this broth, you must be exercised first after the Lacedæmonian manner, all naked, and be well washed in the River *Eurotas*. Now after the Lacedæmonians have eat and drunk soberly at their ordinaries, they return home to their houses without torch, or any light before them; for it is not lawful for any man at Lacedæmon, to go either from thence, or to any place else with a light carried before him in the night; because they should be accustomed to keep their way, and go confidently without fear, all night long in the dark without any light at all. To write and read they learned for necessity only: as for all other foreign Sciences and Literature they banished them quite out of their coasts, like as they did all strangers and aliens; and in very truth their whole study was to learn how to obey their superiours, to endure patiently all travels, to vanquish in fight, or to die for it in the place. All the year long they went in one single gaberdine without their coat at all under it; and ordinarily they were foul and sullied; as those who used not the floups and baines, nor yet anointed themselves for the most part. Their boies and young men commonly slept together in one dormer, by bands and troops, upon pallets and couche beds, which they themselves gathered, breaking and tearing with their own hands without any edged tooles, the heads of canes and reeds which grew along the banks of the River *Eurotas*; and in winter time they strowed and mingled among a certain kind of Thistle-down, which they call *Lycophanes*; for they are of opinion, that such stuff bath in it (I wot not what) which doth heat them. It was lawful and permitted among them to love young boies for their good minds and virtuous natures; but to abuse their persons wantonly and fleshly, was reputed a most infamous thing, as if such were lovers of the body and not of the mind: in such sort, as whosoever was accused and attaint thereof, became noted with infamy, and shame followed him wheresoever he went all his lifetime. The custome was that

elder folk when and where soever they met with younger, should demand whether and whereabout they went? yea and check and chide them; if they went to seek of a good answer, or if they were apt to devise plausible excuses, and whosever he was that did not reprove him that did a fault in his presence, incurred the same reprehension and blame as he did who transgressed; yea and if he blam'd and rebuk'd himselfe discontented, when he was reprov'd, he sustained reproach, disgrace and discredit thereby. If peradventure one were surprised and taken tardy in some fault; he must be brought to a certain Altar within the City, and there forced to go round about it singing a song made of purpose for his own reproofs, and containing naught else, but the blame and accusation of himselfe. Moreover, young folk were not only to honour their own Fathers, and to be obedient unto them; but also to shew reverence unto all other elder persons; namely, in yielding them the better hand, in turning out of their way when they meet them, and giving them the wall, in rising up from their seats before them when they came in place, and in standing still when they passed by: and therefore every man had a certain hand of government, and dispose, not only (as in other Cities) over their own children, their proper servants and goods; but also they had a regard of their neighbours children, servants and goods, as well as if they had been their own: they made use also of them as of things common to the end, that to each one every thing might be (as it were) his own in propriety. Whereupon, if it fortuned that a child having been chastised by another man, went to complain thereof to his own Father: it was a shame for the said Father, if he gave him not his payment again: for by the ordinary course of discipline in that country, they were assured, that their neighbours would impose nothing upon their children, but that which was good and honest. Young lads were used to fitch and steal whatsoever they could come by; for their food and victuals; yea and they learned from their very infancy, to forelay and lie prettily in ambush, for to surprise those who were asleep; and stood not well upon their guards: but say that one was taken in the manner when he stealeth: this was his punishment, namely, to be whipped and to fast from meat: expressly therefore and of very purpose they were allowed very little to eat, to the end that they might be driven upon very extreme necessity to make shifts and expose themselves venou- rously into any danger, yea and to devise always some cunning craft or other to steal more cleanly: but generally the reason and effect of this their frugal diet was, that they should long before accustom their bodies never to be full, but able to endure hunger; for that indeed they were of opinion, that they should be the meetest for soldiery, if they could take pains and travel without food: yea and that it was a good means to be more continent, sober and thrifty, if they were taught and inured to continue a long time with small food and expence: to be brief, persuaded they were: That to abstain eating of flesh or fish defiled in the kitchen, or to feed favourily of bread, or any other viands that came next to hand, made mens bodies more healthy, and caused them to burnish and grow up for that the natural spirits not pressed nor over-charged with a great quantity of meat, and so by that means not kept and depressed downward, but dispersed and spread in largeness and breadth, gave liberty for the bodies to shoot up, wax tall, and personable; yea and made them more fair and beautiful: for that the habitudes and complexions which be slender, lank and empty, are more ob- sequent unto that natural vertue and faculty which giveth form and fashion to the limbs; whereas those who be corpulent, grosse, full, and given to much feeding, by reason of weight and heaviness resist the same. They set their minds also to compose and make proper ditties and ballads, yea, and no less studious are they to sing the same, having always in these their compositions, a certain prick or sting (as it were) to stir up and provoke their courage and stomach, to empire also into the hearts of the hearers a considerate resolution, and an ardent zeal and affection to do some brave deed: the ditties were plain, simple, and without all affectation; containing in manner nothing else, but the praises of those who had lived virtuously, and died valiantly in the Wars for the defence of *Sparta*, as being of all others most happy; as also the blame and reproach of such as for cowardice and faint heart were afraid to die, whom they accounted to live a wretched and miserable life. Moreover they stood much upon promises of future prowess, or vanteries of present valour, according to the diversity of their ages who chanted the said songs: for always in their solemn and public feasts, three quiers or dances there were: one of all folk, and the foreburthen of their Canticle was this:

*The time was when we gallant were,  
Youthful and hardy, void of fear.*

Next to it came in place a Dance of men in their best age and full strength, who answered them in this wise:

*But we are come to proof, and now at best;  
Try who that list, to fight we are now prest.*

And a third follow'd after of Children, who chanted thus:

*And we one day shall be both tall and strong,  
Surpassing far, if that we live so long.*

Now their very notes and tunes to the measures and numbers whereto they danced and marched in battell against their enemies after the found of the flute, were appropriate and fitted to incite their hearts to valour, confident security, and contempt of death: for *Lycurgus* did study and endeavour to join the exercise and praise of military discipline with the pleasure of musick, to the end, that year-like and vehement motions being mingled and delayed with sweet melody, might be tempered with

with a delectable accord and harmony; and therefore in battels before the charge and first shock of the conflict, their King was wont to sacrifice unto the Muses, for this intent; that the soldiery in fight might hate the grace to perform some glorious and memorable exploits. But if any man passed one point beyond this ancient musick, they would endure him, inasmuch as the *Ephori* set a fine upon the head of *Terpander* (though otherwise he loved antiquity well enough, and was the best harper in his time, yea and took greatest delight to praise the heroic acts of the renowned worthies in times past) and more then that: they hung up his harp upon a stake or post, only because he had set it to one string more then ordinary, whereby he might vary his voice the better with more lundry notes: for they allowed no songs nor sonnets, but such as were plain and simple; and when *Timotheus* at the first *Carnia* played upon the Harp for to win the prize, one of the *Ephori* taking a skin or knife in his hand, asked him, on whether side, above or beneath, he would rather have him to cut a two the strings which were more then ten. Moreover, *Lycurgus* took from them all vain and superstitious fears, as touching sepulchres, permitting them to bury their dead within the City, and to rear their Monuments and Tombs round about the Temples of their gods: he cut off likewise all pollutions of mortuaries, and would not give them leave to enter any thing with the Corps, but only to enwrap the same within a winding sheet of red cloth, together with Olive leaves strewn among, and the same indifferently to all bodies, no more to one then another; seemingly he put down all Epitaphs and superfluous upon graves, unless it were for such as lost their lives in battel: forbidding all mourning and doleful lamentations. Furthermore it was unlawful for them to make voyages into strange Countries, for fear they should learn forsaigh fashions, and uncivil manners, favouring of no good bringing up; and for the same reason, *Lycurgus* banished aliens out of the City, lest if they should thither retire, by reason of their consuetude, they might teach and shew the Citizens their vices, And as for Citizens born, if any of them would not suffer their Children to be brought up according to the discipline and institution of the City, they might not enjoy the rights and privileges of free burgeoisie. Some say also that *Lycurgus* ordained: That a very alien would yield to the observation of his discipline, and be ranged under the policy of the State, he might enjoy one of those portions which from the beginning was set out and appointed; but he was not allowed to sell the same. The manner and custome was in *Lacedæmon*, to make use of their neighbours servants, even as well as of their own, whenever they had any business, or occasion to employ them; as also to make bold with their Horses and Hounds, unless the Owners themselves and Masters had present need of them. In the country also and territory of *Laconia*, if they stood in need of any thing that was in their neighbours house, they would go boldly and ask no leave, to their cupboards, presses, coffers, and such places where the thing was, make no more ado but open them, take out and carry away whatsoever they thought good, so he made fast and shut again the room out of which they had taken ought. To warfare they went in red liveries, both for that they thought this colour more decent for a man, as also because it resembled blood, it struck the greater fear into those who were not used thereto; besides, there was good use and profit thereof in this respect, that if any of them happened to be wounded, the enemy could not perceive it, because that colour looked so like unto blood. Whenever they had vanquished their enemies by some stratagem that their Captains used, their manner was to sacrifice an Ox unto *Mars*; but if they got a victory by fine force and open manhood, they sacrificed a Cock, by which means, they accustomed their leaders to be not only valiant, but also politic warriors. Among other prayers that they made unto the gods, this was ever one: That they might have the power and grace to bear wrongs; but the sum of all their supplications was this: That the gods would vouchsafe them honour for well doing, and no more. They worshipped the goddess *Venus* in her compleat armor, and made all the images of their gods, as well female as male, with lances and javelins in their hands, as if they all had military and martial vertue in them. Also they used this saying as a common proverb,

*Call upon fortune in each enterprise,  
With hand stretch forth, not otherwise.*

As if they would say, that we ought, when we invoke the gods, to enterprise somewhat our selves; and lay our hands to work, or else not to call upon them. They used to let their children see the laces when they were drunk, to keep them by their example from drinking much wine. They never knocked and rapped at their neighbours doors, but stood without, and called aloud to those within. The currys-combs that they occupied were not of iron, but of canes and reeds. They never heard any Comedies or Tragedies acted, because neither in earnest nor in game they would not hear those that any wise contradicted the Laws. When *Archilochus* the Poet was come to *Sparta*, they drove him out the very same hour that he came, for that they knew he had made these verses, wherein he delivered: That it was better to sling away weapons then to die in the field:

*A fool he is, who trusting in his shield,  
Dare venture life and limb in bloody field:  
As for mine own, I leave it slung me fro,  
And left behind in bushes thick that grow.*

Others translate it thus.

*Some say an now, in that my doughty shield,  
Dare take great joy, which flying out of field,*

Though

*Though full against my mind, I flang me fro  
And left behind in bulbes thick it at grow.  
Although it were right good, yet would not I  
Presume to fight with it, and so to die:  
Farewel my shield, though thou be left and gone,  
Another day as good I shall buy one.*

All their sacred and holy ceremonies were common, as well for their daughters as their sons. The Ephori condemned one *Sirpidas* to pay a sum of money, for that he suffered himselfe to take wrong and abuse at many mens hands. They auaied one to be put to death for playing the Hypocrite, and wearing sackcloth like a publick penitent. for that the said sackcloth was purified with a border of purple. They rebuked and checked a young man as he came from the ordinary place of exercise, for that he frequented it still, knowing as he did the way to *Pylæa*, where was held the assembly of the States of Greece. They chased out of the City a Rhetorician named *Cephisophon*, because he made his boast: That he could speak if it were a whole day of any Theam propoed unto him; for they said: That speech ought to be proportionable to the subject matter. Their Children would endure to be lashed and whipped all the day long yea, and many times unto death, upon the Altar of *Diana*, surnamed *Orthia*, taking joy and pleasure therein, striving a vie for the victory who could hold out longest; and look who was able to abide most beating, he was best esteemed, and carried away the greatest praise: this strife and emulation among them was called the *Wlippado*; and once every year they observed such an exercise. But one of the best and most commendable and blessed things that *Lycurgus* provided for his Citizens: was the plenty and abundance that they had of rest and leisure: for they were not allowed at all to meddle with any mechanical arts; and to traffick and negotiate painfully for to gather and heap up goods, was in no wise permitted: for he had frowned, that riches among them was neither honoured nor desired. The Hores were they that ploughed and tilled their ground for them. yielding them as much as in old time was let down and ordained; and execrable they esteemed it to exact more of any of them, to the end that those Hores for the sweetnesse of gaine which they found thereby, might serve them more willingly, and themselves covet to have no more then the old rate. Forbidden likewise were the Lacedemonians to be mariners, or to fight at sea; yet afterwards for all that, they fought naval battels, and became Lords of the Sea; howbeit they forgave that over, when they once saw that the manners and behavior of their Citizens were thereby corrupted and depraved; but they changed afterwards againe, and were mutable, as well in this as in all other things: for the fift that gathered and hoarded up money for the Lacedemonians, were condemned to death, by reason that there was an ancient Oracle, which delivered this answer unto *Alcimeus* and *Isopomus*, two of their Kings.

*Avarice one day (who, ver lives to see)  
Of Sparta City will the ruine bee.*

And yet *Lysander*, after he had won the City of *Athens*, brought into *Sparta* a great masse of Gold and Silver, which the Citizens received willingly, and did great honour unto the man himselfe for his good service. True it is, that so long as the City of *Sparta* observed the Laws of *Lycurgus*, and kept the Oaths which it was sworn by, she was a Paragon, yea, and the Sovereign of all Greece, in good government and glory for the space of 300. years: but when they came once to transgresse the said Laws and brake their Oaths, avarice and covetousnesse crept in among them by little and little, and they with all their puissiance and authority decreased, yea and their allies and confederates hereupon began to be ill affected unto them: and yet being as they were in this declining estate, after that King *Philip of Macedonia* had won the battell at *Cheronea* when all other Cities and States of Greece, by a general consent, and with one accord had chosen him the general Captain of all the Greeks, as well for Land as Sea, yea, and after him his Son *Alexander the Great*, upon the destruction of the City *Thebes*, only the Lacedemonians, notwithstanding their City lay all open, without any wall about it, and themselves were brought to a very small number, by occasion of their continual wars, which had wasted and consumed them, whereby they were become very feeble, and by consequence more easie to be defeated then ever before, yet for that they had retained still some little reliques of the government established by *Lycurgus*, they would never yeeld to serve under those two mighty Monarchs, no nor other Kings of *Macedonia* their successors, neither would they be present at the general diets and common assemblies of other States, nor contribute any money with the rest, untill they having utterly cast aside and rejected the Laws of *Lycurgus*, they were held under and yoked with the tyranny of their own Citizens; namely, when they retained no part of the ancient discipline, whereby they grew like unto other nations, and utterly lost their old reputation, glory and liberty of frank speech, so as in the end they were brought into servitude, and even at this day be subject unto the Roman Empire, as well as other Cities and States of Greece.

*The*

### The Apophthegmes, that is to say, the noble Sayings and Answers of Lacedemonian Dames.

*Agileonis* the mother of *Brasidas*; (after that her son was slaine, when certain Embassadors from the City *Amphipolis* came to *Sparta*, and visited her;) demanded of them, whether her son died like a valiant man, and as became a Spartan; now when they praised him exceedingly, saying that he was the bravest man in arms in all *Lacedemon*; she said againe unto them: My son was indeed a Knight of valour and honour (my good friends;) but *Lacedemon* hath many others yet more valiant then he was.

*Gergo*, the daughter of King *Cleomenes*, when *Aristagoras* the Milesian was come to *Sparta*, for to solicit *Cleomenes* to make war upon the King of *Perfia* in the defence of the Ionians freedom; and in consideration hereof promised him a good round sum of money; and the more that he contradicted and denied the motion, the more he still augmented the sum of money which he promised: Father (quoth she) this stranger here will corrupt you, if you send him not the sooner out of your house. Also when her father willed her one day to deliver certain corn unto a man, by way of a reward and recompence, laying withal: For this is he who hath taught me how to make wine good: How now, good father (quoth she) shall there be more wine drunk still, considering that they who drink thereof become more delicate and lesse valorous? When she saw how *Aristagoras* had one of his men to put on his shoes: Father (quoth she) here is a stranger that hath no hands. When she saw a forrainger coming toward her who was wont to go softly and delicately, she thrust him from her and said: Avaunt idle lusk as thou art, and get thee gone, for thou art not to good of deed as a woman.

*Gynias*, when *Aceratus* her Nephew of Daughters Son, (from out of a braule and fray that was between him and other yonkers his companions) was brought home with many a wound, incommuch as no man looked for life; seeing his familiar friends, and those of his acquaintance, waile and take on pitteously: What (quoth she) let be this weeping and lamentation, for now hath he shewed of what blood he is defended: neither ought we to cry out and bewaile for the hurts of valiant men, but rather to go about their cure and salve them, if haply we may save their lives. When a messenger coming out of *Canada*, where he served in the wars, brought news that the said *Aceratus* was slain in fight: Why (quoth she) what else should he do, being once gone forth to war, but either die himselfe, or else kill his enemies? yet had I rather hear, and it doth me much more good that he died worthy my selfe, worthy his native country and progenitors, then that he should live as long as possibly a man could, like a coward, and man of no worth.

*Demetria* hearing that her son proved a dastard, and indeed not worthy to be her son, so soon as ever he was returned from the wars, she killed him with her own hands; whereupon was made this Epigram of her:

*By mothers hand was slain one Demetria,  
For that he brake the laws of chivalrie,  
No marvel, she a noble Spartan dame  
Disclaimed her Son, unworthy of it as name.*

Another woman of *Lacedemon* being given to understand, that her son had abandoned his rank, made him likewise away, as unworthy of that country wherein he was born, saying: That he was no son of hers: And thereupon this Epigram also was compoied of her:

*A mischief take thee wicked imp,  
begone in devils name  
Through baleful darkness: Hured is  
too good, and earthly blame:  
For cowards such of craven kind  
like hinds are not to drink,  
Nor walk in fair Eurotas stream  
their bodies, as I think,  
Avaunt thou cur-dog-whelp to hell,  
thou devils limb numm'd,  
Unworthy Sparta soile thou art,  
for thee I never graced.*

Another, hearing that her son was faved and had escaped out of the hands of his enemies, wrote thus unto him: There runneth a naughty rumor of thee: either stop the course thereof, or else live nor. There was another likewise, whose children had fled out of the battell, and when they came home unto her, she welcomed them in this manner: Whither go you running lewd loves and cowardly slaves as you are; think you to enter hither again from whence you first came? and there-with plucked up her cloaths, and shewed them her bare belly. Also another, elysing her son new returned from the Wars, and coming toward her: What news (quoth she) how goeth the world with our Country and Common-wealth? and when he answered: We have lost the field, and all

our

our men be slain; she took up an earthen pot, let it fly at his head and killed him outright, saying: And have they sent thee to bring us the newes? There was one brother recounted unto his mother what a noble death his brother died, unto whom his mother answered: And wert thou not ashamed that thou didst not accompany him in so fair a journey? Another there was who had sent her sons (and five they were in number) to the wars, and the flood waiting at the towns end, about the suburbs and hamlets neer unto them, for to hearken what was the issue of the battell; and of the first man she encountered from the camp, she asked what news, and who had the day; he told her that her sons were slain all five: Thou ledest varlet (quoth she) and basest slave as thou art, I did not demand that question of thee; but in what state the affairs of the Common-wealth stood: The victory (quoth he) is ours: Then am I well appayed (saith she) and contented with the losse of my children. Another there was, unto whom as she buried her son slain in the wars, there came a filly old woman and moaned her, saying: Ah good woman what fortune is this? Why good (quoth she?) by *Castor* and *Pollux* I swear; for I bare him into this world for nothing else, but that he should spend his life for *Sparta*; and loe this is now happened. A Lady there was of *Ionia*, who bare her self very proud of a work in Tapestry which she her self had made, most costely and curiously: but a Lacedæmonian dame shewed unto her, four children, all very well given and honestly brought up: Such as these (quoth she) ought to be the works of a Lady of honour, and herein should a noble woman indeed, make her boast and vaunt her selfe. Another there was, who heard news, that a son of hers behaved himselfe not well in a strange country where he was, unto whom she wrote a letter in this wise: There is blown a bad brute of thee in their parts, either prove it false or else die, I advise thee: Certain fugitives, or exiled persons from *Chios*, came to *Sparta*, who accused *Pedaneus*, and laid many crimes to his charge: his mother *Telenia* hearing thereof, let for them to come unto her; at whose mouthes when she heard the several points of their imputations; and judging in her selfe that he was in fault, and had done great wrongs, she sent a letter unto him in this form: Either do better or tarry there still, and never think to save thy selfe here. In like manner another wrote unto her son accused of an heinous crime, in these terms: My ionique thy selfe of this imputation, or else quit thy life. Another accompanying a lame son of hers upon the way when he went to battell, said unto him: Son remember every foot that thou steppst thy vertue and prowess, and fight like a man. Another whole ion returned out of the field wounded in the foot: and complaining unto her of the great pain which he endured: Son (quoth she) if thou wouldst remember vertue and valour, thou shouldst never think of thy paine. A certain Lacedæmonian chanced so grievously to be wounded in a skirmish, that he had much ado to stand upon his legs, so that he was faine to go with crutches (as it were) upon four feet: now when he was abashed to see some laugh at him for it, his mother said: Greater cause thou halt (my son) to rejoice for this testimony of thy valour and prowess, then to be dismayed at their fond and senselesse laughter. Another woman when she gave unto her ion a shield, admonished him to use it well, and do his devoir like a man, and these words she used unto him: My sonne either bring this shield home again, or let it bring thee dead upon it. Another likewise giving a target to her sonne when he took his leave of her to go to warre, said unto him: Thy father kept this target well from time to time; see thou (for thy part) keep it as well, or else die with it. Another when her ionne found fault with his short sword, said unto him: Then set foot neerer to thine enemy. A woman hearing that her son died valiantly in battell: No marvel (quoth she) for he was my sonne. Contrariwise. another when she heard that her sonne took him to his heeles, and escaped by good footmanship: He was never (quoth she) a sonne of mine. But another hearing that her son was slain fighting in the very place where his Captain had set him: Remove him then (quoth she) from thence, and let his brother step into his place. A Lacedæmonian woman being in a solemn and publick procession, with a chaplet of flowers upon her head, understood that her sonne had won a field, but was so grievously wounded, that ready he was to yeeld up his breath: without putting off her chaplet of flowers from her head, but glorying (as it were) in these newes: Oh my friends (quoth she) how much more glorious and honourable is it for a soldier to die with victory in battell, then for a Champion to survive after he hath won the prize in the Olympick games. A brother reported unto his sister, how valiant her ion died in battell, unto whom she answered again: Look how much I joy and take pleasure to hear this of him: so much I am displeased and discontented at you, brother, for that you would not bear him company in so vertuous a voyage, but tarry behind him. When one sent unto a Lacedæmonian woman to sollicite and found her, whether she would consent unto him, she made this answer: When I was a maiden, I learned to obey my father, and so I did evermore: and when I was a wife, I did like like unto my husband; if then that which he demanded of me be honest and just, let him acquaint my husband with it first. A poor maiden being asked the question what dowry she would bring her husband? The pudicity (quoth she) and honesty of thy country. Another Lacedæmonian woman being demanded, whether she had yet been with her husband? Not I (quoth she) but hee hath been with me. Also another young woman chanced secretly to be deflowred and to lose her maiden-head: now when by some mishap she fell unto untimely labour, and to slip an abortive fruit: she endured the paines and travel thereto belonging so patiently, without one cry or groane, that neither her father, nor any one about her, perceived any thing at all that she was delivered: for shame and honesty fighting together, overcame all the vehemency of her paines. A Lacedæmonian woman

being

being fold in the market for a slave, was asked what she could do? I can skill (quoth she) to be true and faithful. Another likewise being a captive and demanded the like question, answered, that she could keep the house well. Another likewise when she was asked by one whether she would prove good if he bought her, made answer thus: Yea that I will, although you never buy me. Last of all, a Lacedæmonian woman when she was to be fold in port-sale, the crier demanded of her what she had skill in? answered, to be free. Now when he that bought her commanded her to do some things able becoming a free person: You will repent (quoth she) that you envied your selfe to no noble a possession: and so he killed her selfe.

## The vertuous Deeds of Women.

## The Summary.

Vertue alwaies deserveth praise wheresoever it is found, but especially when it proceedeth from feeble instruments; and those of small shew; for by that mean the excellency thereof is so much better seen: our Author therefore in that regard hath made here a Collection of Histories, relating the worthy demeanours of many women who have shewed manly courage in sundry dangers: the consideration whereof, is able greatly to move and affect the Reader. In the Preface of this discourse after he had refuted the opinion of *Thucydides*, who would confine women (as it were) into a perpetuall hermitage, he proueth by divers reasons, that vertue being alwaies the selfe-same, notwithstanding that it hath objects and subjects differing, is never more injury and too much iniquity, either to forget or to despise those women who for their honour have deserved; that their name and example should continue: to the end that the same might be imitated on occasion requireth in many sorts, not only by other women, but also by the most part of men. Which done, he describeth the notable exploits of some in general: and then he commeth to speake of certaine in particular, noting and observing in them divers graces and commendable parts, but especially an extreme hatred of tyranny and servitude, an ardent love and affection toward their country, a singular affection to their husbands, rare honesty, pudicity, chastity joyned with a generous nature, which hath caused them, both to enterprise and also to execute heroick acts, and well deserving that praise, which hath been preserved entire for such women, after so many years until this day, by the means of this present historical fragment: the which containeth goodly instructions for men and women of name and mark, to induce them to govern themselves in such sort, that in the midst of the greatest confusions they might take a good courage, and lay their hands to that which their vocation requireth: and to hold this for certayne, that enterprises lawfull and necessary, will sooner or later have good issue, to the shame and ruine of the wicked, but to the repose and quietness of all persons who desire, seek, and procure that which is good.

## The vertuous Deeds of Women.

I Am not of *Thucydides* mind (dame *Clea*) touching the vertue of women; for he is of this opinion: That she is the best and most vertuous, of whom there is least speech abroad, as well to her praise as her dispraise; thinking that the name of a woman of honour ought to be shut up and kept fast within, like as her body, that it never may go forth. *Gorgias* yet (me thinks) was more reasonable, who would have the renown and fame, but not the face and visage of a woman, to be known unto men: and it seemeth unto me that it was an excellent law and custome among the Romans, which importeth thus much: That women as well as men, after their death might be honoured publicly at their funerals, with such praises as they had deserved: and therefore immediately after the decease of the most vertuous Lady *Leontie*, I discoursed with you at large upon this matter: which discourse (in my conceit) was not without some consolation founded upon reason and Philosophy: and now also (according to your request at that time) I lend you in writing the rest of our speech and communication, tending to this point: That the vertue of man and woman is all one and the very fame: which appeareth by the proole and testimony of many and sundry examples drawn out of ancient histories, collected by me, not upon any intention to please the ear: but if the nature of an example be such, as alwaies, to the perceptive power that it hath to prove, there is joyned also a lively vertue to delight. This Treatise of mine rejecteth not the grace of that pleasure, which doth second and favour the efficacy of a proove: neither is it ashamed to joyne Graces with Muses; which (as *Euripides* saith) is the best conjunction in the world, inducing the mind most easily to give care and credit unto good reasons, by means of the delectation which it there findeth. For if to prove, that it is all one art to paint and draw to the life men and women, I should produce and bring forth such pictures of women as *Apelles*, *Zenzis*, or *Nicomachus* have left behind them; hath any man reason to find fault and to charge me, that I aime and intend to delight the eye and content the mind, rather than to verifie my assertion? I suppose that no man will do so: semably, if otherwise to shew, that the art of Poetry, or skill to represent in verse, all things whatsoever,

Ll

is

is the same in women and men, and nothing different one from the other. I should confer the Odes and verses of *Sappho*, with those of *Anacreon*, or the Oracles penned by the *Sybil*, with those which are set down by *Bacchis*; is there any man that could justly blame such a demonstration, for that it dissweth the hearer to believe, with some pleasure and content? No man (I trow) would ever so say; and yet there were no better way to know either the resemblance, or the difference in the vertue of man and woman, than in comparing lives with lives, and deeds with deeds: as if we should lay together the works of some noble kienice, and consider them one by another; even so likewise, to see whether the magnificence of Queen *Semiramis* hath all one forme and figure with that of King *Sesithris*; and the wisdom of queen *Tanquil* with that of King *Servius*; or the magnanimity of Lady *Perceia* with that of *Brutus*; or of dame *Timoclea* with that of *Polopidas*; namely, in that quality which is most principally, and wherein lieth the chiefest point and force of these vertues: for vertue admitteth certaine other differences as proper and pertinent colours, according to divers natures, and is in some sort conformable to the manners and conditions of those subjects wherein they be, and to the temperatures of their bodies, or to the very nutriments and divers diets and fashions of their life. For *Achilles* was after one sort valiant, and *Ajax* after another; the wisdom of *Ulysses* was not like unto *Nestors*; neither were *Cato* and *Agagilus* just alike; *Irene* loved not her husband in that manner as *Alcexis* loved hers; nor *Cornelia* and *Olympias* were alike magnanimous; and yet for all this, we lay not, that there be many and divers kinds of fortitude, iudry sorts of prudence and wisdom, nor different justices, in regard of the dissimilitude and variety which ariseth particularly in each one person. so as the said peculiar differences do not exclude any one vertue from the proper definition thereof. As for such examples as are most divulged and published abroad (of which I presume you have already sufficient knowledge, and timely remember their history, by that which you have read in ancient books) I will passe them over at this present; unless haply there be some acts worthy of remembrance, which they were ignorant of, who before our time have written the common histories and vulgar Chronicles. But for that the women in times past, as well in common as particular, have performed many memorable deeds; it will not be amiss in the first place to set down briefly what some of them have done in society and company together.

#### The Trojan Dames.

Of those Trojans who escaped after the winning and destruction of *Troy*, the most part went to seek their fortune, and by force of tempest (the rather for that they had no skill in navigation, and were not acquainted with the seas) were cast upon the coast of *Iudry*; where putting into such bays, ports, and creeks as they could meet with in that very place (whence the river *Tyber* dischargeth it self into the sea) with much ado and great difficulty they landed, and the men went wandering up and down the country, for to see if they could light upon those that might direct them in their voyage, and give them some light and intelligence of those coasts. Meane while the women communed and devised thus among themselves: That since they had been the most fortunate and happy nation in the world; it were better for them to settle in any one certaine place whatsoever, than still to wander uncertainly upon the seas, and to make that their country and seat of habitation, since they were not able to recover that native soile which they had lost; to which motion after they had all with one accord agreed, they set fire on their ships, and the first ring-leader in this action was a Lady (by report) named *Roma*; which done, they went farther up into the Continent to meet with the men aforesaid, who now by this time were coming apace to the seashore to succour their ships on fire, and fearing their furious anger, they fell to embrace and kiss them very kindly, some their husbands, others their kinsfolk, and by this means appeased their wrath. Hereupon arose that custome, which at this day continueth at this day among the Romans, that women should salute their kinsfolke, and those that be joynd in blood to them, by kissing their lips: for the Trojan men seeing (as it should seeme) in what necessity they stood, were well enough content; and without finding the inhabitants of the sea-coasts courteous and ready to receive and entertaine them friendly, approved that which the women had done, and so remained and dwelt in the same part of *Iudry* among the Latines.

#### The Dames of PHOCIS.

The worthy act of the dames of *Phocis*, whereof we now meane to make mention, no Historiographer of name hath yet recorded and set down in writing: howbeit there was never a more memorable deed of vertue wrought by women, and the same testified by the great sacrifices, which the Phocians do celebrate even at this day, near unto the City *Hyampolis*; and that according to the ancient decrees of the country. Now is the total history of this whole action from point to point particularly recorded in the life of *Diaphantus*; as for that which the said women did, this stood the case. There was an irreconcilable and mortal war between the Thessalians and those of *Phocis*; for that the Phocians upon a certaine fore-fet day killed all the Magistrates and Rulers of the Thessalians, who exercised tyranny in the Cities of *Phocis*; and they againe of *Thessalia* had beaten and brui- ded to death two hundred and fifty hostages of the Phocians, whom they had in custody; and after that, with all their puissance entred and invaded their country by the way of the Locrians;

having

having before-hand concluded this resolution in their generall councill, not to pardon nor spare any one that was of age sufficient to beare armes, and as for their wives and children, to lead them away captives as slaves: whereupon *Diaphantus* the son of *Bathyllus*, one of the three sovereign governments of *Phocis*, moved and periwaded the Phocians (as many as were of yeares to fight) for to go forth and encounter the Thessalians; but their wives and children, to assemble all together unto a certaine place in *Phocis*, and environ the whole pouprifre and precinct thereof with a huge quantity of wood, and there to let certaine guards to watch and ward; whom he gave in charge, that so soone as ever they heard how their countrey-men were defeated, they should let the wood on fire, and burne all the bodies within the compass thereof: which designe when all others had approved, there was own one man among them stood up, and said, It were just and meet that they had the content also of the women as touching this matter; and if they would not approve and allow of this councill, to leave it unexecuted, and not to force them thereto: this consultation being come to the eares of the said women, they held a councill together apart by themselves as touching this intended action, where other resolved to follow the advice of *Diaphantus*, and that with so great alacrity and contentment, that they crowned *Diaphantus* with a chaplet of flowers, as having given the best councill that could be devised for *Phocis*. It is reported also, that their very children late in councill hereabout by themselves, and concluded the same: but it turned so, that the Phocians having given the Thessalians battell neare unto a village, called *Cleonea*, in the marches or territory of *Hyampolis*, defeated them. This resolution of the Phocians, was afterwards by the Greeks named *Apocatastis*; that is, A desperate designe; and in memoriall of this said victory, all the people of *Phocis* to this day do celebrate in *Hyampolis* the greatest and most solemne feast that they have to the honour of *Diana*, and call it *Elaphetolia*.

#### The Women of CHIOS.

The men of *Chios* inhabited sometime the Colony *Leuconia*, upon such an occasion as this. A Gentleman, one of the best houses in *Chios*, chanced to contract a marriage: and when the bride was to be brought home to his house in a coach, King *Hippocleus* being a familiar friend unto the bridegroom, and one who was present with others at the eipouals and wedding, after he had taken his wine well, being let upon a merry pin, and disposed to make sport, leapt up into the Coach where the new wedded wife was; not with any intent to offer violence or villany, but only to dally, royl and make pastime in a merriment, as the manner was at such a feast: howbeit the friends of the bridegroom took it not so, but fell upon him and killed him outright in the place: upon which murder there appeared unto those of *Chios* many evident tokens and signes of gods anger; yea, and when they understood by the Oracle of *Apollo*, that for to appease their wrath, they should put all those to death who had murdered *Hippocleus*; they made answer, That they all were guilty of the fact: and when the god *Apollo* commanded them, that if they were all tainted with the said murder, they should all depart out of the City *Chios*, they sent away (as many as either were parties and principals, or accessaries and privy to the said blood-shed; yea, and whosoever approved and praised the fact, and those were neither few in number, nor men of mean quality and power) as far as to *Leuconia*; which City the Chians first conquered from the Coroneans, and possessed by the help of the Erythreans: but afterwards when there was war between the said Chians and the Erythreans (who in those daies were the mightiest people in all *Ionia*) in somuch as the Erythreans came against *Leuconia*, with a power intending to assault it: the Chians being not able to resist, grew to make a composition: in which capitulation it was agreed, that they should quit the City, and depart every person with one coat and callock only, without taking any thing else with them. The women understanding of this agreement, gave them foule words, and bitterly reproached them for being so bale minded as to lay off their armour, and thus to go naked thorow the midst of their enemies: but when their husbands alleged that they had sworn & taken a corporal oath so to do, they gave them counsell in any wise not to leave their armes and weapons behind them, but to lay, that a javelin was a coat, and a shield the callock of a valiant and hardy man. The Chians periwaded hereto spake boldly to the Erythreans to that effect, and shewed them their armes, in somuch as the Erythreans were affraid to see their resolute boldnesse, and there was not one of them so hardy as to come neare for to impeach them, but were very well content that they abandoned the place, and were gone in that sort. Thus you may see how these men having learned of their wives to be courageous and confident, saved their honours and their lives. Long after this, the wives of the Chians achieved another act nothing inferior to this in verue and prowesse. At what time as *Philip* the son of *Demetrius*, holding their City besieged, caused this barbarous Edict, and proud Proclamation to be published: That all the Slaves of the City should rebell against their Masters, and come to him: for that he would make them all free, and give them liberty to espouse and marry their Mistresses, even the wives of their former Masters. The Dames conceived hereof so great choler and indignation in their hearts (together with the slaves themselves, who were provoked likewise to anger as well as they, and ready to assist their Mistresses) that they took heart to mount upon the walls of the City, and to carry thither stones, darts, and all manner of shot, beseeching their husbands to fight lustily and with good courage, and estoones admonishing and encouraging them to quit themselves like men, and do their devoir; which they did so effectually both in word and deed, that

in the end they repulsed the enemy, and constrained *Philp* to raise his siege from before the City without effecting his purpose, and there was not so much as one slave that revolted from his Master unto him.

The Women of ARGOS.

THE exploit of the *Argive* dames against *Cleomenes* King of *Lacedamon*, in defence of the City *Argos*, which they enterprised under the conduct & by the perswasion of *Telephilla* the Poetress, is not lesse glorious and renowned, than any action that ever was achieved by a crew of women. This dame *Telephilla* (as the same poetess) was defended of a noble and famous house, howbeit in body she was very weak and sickly: by occasion whereof she sent out to the Oracle for to know how she might recover her health: answer was made, that she should serve, honour, and worship the Muses: she yielding obedience to this revelation of the god, and giving her selfe to learne Poetrie, and likewise vocall musick, and skill in song, in short time was delivered from her malady, and became most renowned and highly esteemed among women for her Poeticall veine, and musickall knowledge in this kind: in proesse of time it fortuned that *Cleomenes* the King of the Spartans, having in a battell slaine a great number indeed of *Argives*, but not as some fabulous writers have precisely set down (seven thousand, seven hundred, seventy and seven) advanced directly to the City of *Argos*, hoping to find and surprize the same void of inhabitants: but the women, as many as were of age sufficient (as it were) by some heavenly and divine instinct) put on a resolute mind, and extraordinary courage, to do their best for to beat back their enemies that they should not enter the City: and in very truth under the leading of *Telephilla*, they put on armes, tooke weapon in hand, and mounting up the walls stood round the battlements thereof, and environed them on every side, defending the City right manfully, to the great wonder and admiration of the enemies: thus they gave *Cleomenes* the repulse, with the losse and carnage of a great number of his men. Yea, and they chased *Democrates* another King of *Lacedamon* out of that City, as *Socrates* saith, who had misdeceivance before, and seized that quarter which is called *Pamphyliacum*: when the City was thus saved by the prowess of these women, ordained it was, that as many of them as chanced in this service to be slaine, should be honourably entred, upon the great Causeway or high-way, called *Argos*: and unto them who remained alive, granted it was for a perpetual monument and memoriall of their prowess, to dedicate and consecrate one statue unto *Mars*. This combat and fight (as some have written) was the seventh day, or (as others say) the first of that month which at *Argos* in old time they called *Tetartus*, but now *Hermes*, on which day the *Argives* do celebrate even in this age, a solemne sacrifice and feast, which they call *Hybristica* (as one would say) reproachfull and infamous: wherein the custome is, that women went clad in fouldiers coats and mantles, but men were arrayed and attired in womens petticoats, frocks, and veils. Now to replenish and repeople the City againe, for default of men who died in the wars, they did not (as writeth) use this policy, to marry their slaves to their widows, but they granted free burgeoisie of their City, unto the better sort of men who were their neighbours and borderers, and granted unto them for to affiance and epouse the said widows: but it should seeme that these wives did disdain and despise (in some sort) these husbands of theirs, as not comparable to their former: for they made a Law, that these wives should have counterfeit beards set to their chins whensoever they slept and lay with their husbands.

The Persian Women.

CYRUS (having caused the Persians to rebell against King *Astages* and the Medes) hapned to be discomfited and vanquished together, with the Persians: now when the Persians fled auncie toward the City, and their enemies followed hard at their heeles, ready to enter pell-mell with them: the women issued out of the gates, met them even before the City, and plucking up their cloaths before, from beneath, to their waste, cried unto them: Whither away, and whither do you flie, the most beastly cowards that ever were? For run as fast as you will there is no re-entrance here for you into that place, out of which you came first into the world: the Persians being ashamed as well to see such a fight, as to heare those words, blamed and rebuked themselves: whereupon they turned againe, and made head at their enemies, fought freshly, and put them to flight: from which time forward there was a Law established; That whensoever the King returneth from some far voyage, and entereth into the City, every woman should receive of him a peece of gold, and that by the ordinance of King *Cyrus*, who first enacted it. But it is reported, that King *Ochus* one of his successors (who being bad enough otherwise) was the most covetous Prince that ever reigned over them, turned alwaies out of the way, passed besides the City, and never would come into it after such a journey: whereby the women alwaies were disappointed of that gratuity and gift which they ought to have had: but King *Alexander* contrariwise entered the City twice, and gave to every woman with child, double so much, that is to say, two such peeces of gold.

The

The Women of GAULE.

BEFORE that the Gaules passed over the mountains called *Alpes*, and held that part of *Italy* which now they do inhabit: there arose a great discord and dangerous sedition among them, which grew in the end to a civil war: but when both armies stood embattailed and arrayed, ready to fight, their wives put themselves in the very midst between the armed troupes, tooke the matter of difference and controvercie into their hands, brought them to accord and unity, and judged the quarrell with such indifferent equity, and so to the contentment of both parts, that there ensued a wonderful amity, and reciprocal good will, not only from City to City, but also between house and house: inasmuch that ever after they continued their custome in all their consultations, as well of war as peace, to take the counsell and advice of their wives: yea, to compose and pacifie all debates and braules with their neighbours and allies, by the mediation of them: and therefore in that composition and accord which they made with *Anniball*, at what time as he passed through their City, among other articles this went for one: That in case the Gaules complained of any wrongs done unto them by the Carthaginians, the Carthaginian Captaines and Governour which were in *Spain* should be the judges between them: but contrariwise, if the Carthaginians pretended that the Gaules had wronged them, the Gaule dames should decide the quarrell.

The Women of MELOS.

THE Melians purposing to seek for another land to inhabit, more large and fertile than their own, chose for the Captaine and Leader of that troupe or Colony which was sent forth, a young gentleman of singular beauty, named *Nymphæus*: but first they had consulted with the Oracle, where they received this answer: That they should take the seas and saile: and looke in what place soever they happened to lose their porters and carriers, there they should rest and inhabit: now it hapned as they coasted along *Caria*, and were let aland, their ships were lost in a tempest and perished: and then the inhabitants of the City *Cryssa* in *Caria*, (were it that they had pity of their necessity, or feared their hardiness and valour) requested, them to make their abode with them, and granted them a part of their territory to hold and occupy: but afterwards the *Carians* seeing, that in a small time the Melians mightily increased and waxed great, they comploted and laid ambushes for to murder them all at a certaine solemne feast and supper which they prepared for them: but it fell out so, that a young Damocell of *Caria*, named *Cophene* (who secretly was in love and enamoured upon *Nymphæus* above all said, and could not endure that her love *Nymphæus* should be treacherously murdered) discovered the said plot and intended designe of her countrymen: now when the *Cryssians* came to call them to the feast above said, *Nymphæus* made them this answer, That the custome of the Greeks was not to go unto any great suppers or feasts, unless they had their wives with them: which when the *Carians* heard, they said, Bring your wives with you and spare not, they shall be welcome: thus when he had advertised his countymen the Melians, what had passed between him and the *Carians*, he gave order that they should themselves come unarmed in their plain apparell, but every one of their wives should bring with them a skaine or dagger under their cloaths, and so each of them fit clove unto her husband: now in the midst of supper, when the signal was given to the *Carians* for to go in hand with the execution of their designe, the Greeks knew thereby incontinently, that the time was now come to execute this feat: and then the women all at once opened their bosoms, and their husbands caught the skaines aforesaid, ran upon the barbarous *Carians*, and massacred all in the place, inasmuch as not one of them escaped with life: and thus being Masters of the Countrey, they razed the City, and built another, which they called *New Cryssa*: *Cophene* then was married to *Nymphæus*, and won much honour and favor, which she right well had deserved for the great good service that she did: but in my conceit, the principall matter in this whole action, and that which is most to be commended, was the silence and secrecie of these dames, that being so many as they were, there was not one whose heart fainted in the execution of this enterprize, nor perforce and for feare against her will failed in her duty.

The Tuscan Women.

THERE were in times past certaine Tyrrhenian Tuscanes, who seized upon the Isles of *Lemnos*, and *Imbros*: yea, and ravished certaine Athenian wives out of *Brannon*, and begat children of them: but afterwards, the Athenians chaled that generation out of the said Isles, as being mungrels and halfe Barbarians, who fortuning to arrive at the cape or head of *Tanarus*, did very good service under the Spartans in their wars against the Ilots: and for this cause obtained their freedome and burgeoisie in *Sparta*, yea, and were allowed to take wives and marry among them: only they were not capable of any office of State or Magistracy, nor admitted into the Councill of the City: howbeit, suspected they were in the end, that they conspired and went about a change and alteration in the government: whereupon the Spartans apprehended their bodies, and cast them in prison, where they kept them very straight, as close prisoners, to see if they could convince them by some proofes and undoubted evidence. Meane-while, the wives of these prisoners came to the goales, and by their earnest prayers and importunate sute, wrought so with their keepers, that they suffered them to have access unto their husbands, only to visite, salute, and speake unto them: they were no sooner entred in, but they advised and pertruded their husbands with all speed to

L I 3

put



put off their own cloaths, and do on their apparell, and so to get away with their faces veiled and covered; which presently was put in execution, and themselves remained fast shut up in the said prison, prepared, and resolute to abide all the miseries and tortures that might be done unto them: thus the goales let out their husbands, taking them to be their wives. No sooner were they at liberty, but immediately they went and seized the mountain *Targeta*, & solicited withall the Ilots to take armes and rebell: which the men of *Sparta* much fearing, sent unto them an herald with a trumpet, by whose entercouise they agreed upon these articles of composition. Imprimis, to deliver them their wives. Item, to restore unto them their money and all their goods. Item, to furnish them with ships to passe upon the seas for to seek their adventure: and when they had found a commodious land, in one place or other, were provided of a Citie to inhabit; that they should be named and reputed kinsfolke to the Lacedæmonians, and a Colony derived and descended from them. The same did the Pelagians, who tooke for their Captaines in this voyage *Pollis*, *Adelphus*, and *Crastides*, all three Lacedæmonians; for when one part of them staid in the Isle *Melos*, the greater troupe under the conduct of *Pollis* arrived in *Candy*, attending and expecting if those signes which had been foretold them by the oracles would happen; for answer was given them by oracle: That whensoever they had lost their anchor and goddesse, then they were at an end of their voyage and should build them a Citie: being come therefore unto the demy Island *Cherfoneus*, and their ship lying at anchor in the harbour; there hapned in the night a sudden feare and fright among them without any apparant cause, such as they call Panique Frights, wherewith being wonderfully troubled and feared, they went a shipboord without all order, and in a tumultuous manner, leaving behind them for haile the image of *Diana* upon the land, which had remained a long time among them, and had passed by descent from father to son, and by their forefathers had been first brought unto them from *Brauron* unto the Isle *Lemnos*, and which they carried with them from thence into all places wheresoever they came: after this sudden fright and tumult was passed, as they failed in the open sea they missed the same Image, and withall *Pollis* also was advertised, that a flouke of an anchor was wanting and lost: for that when they came to weigh anchor by great force (as common-lyt hapneth in such places where it taketh hold of the ground among rocks) it brake and was left behind in the bottome of the sea: whereupon he said that the Oracles were now fulfilled which foretold them of these signes, and therewith gave signal for the whole fleet to retire back, and so he entred upon that region to his own use: and after he had in many skirmishes vanquished those who were up in armes against him, he lodged at length in the City *Lytus*, and wan many more to it. Thus you see how at this day they call themselves the kinsfolke of the Athenians by the mothers side; but indeed by the father they are a Colony drawn from *Lacedæmon*.

#### The Lycian Women

That which is reported to have been done in *Lycia*, was a meere fable and tale devised of pleasure, yet nevertheless testified by a constant fameth runneth very current. For *Amsidarus* (as they say) whom the Lycians name *Istus*, came from about the marches of *Zela*, a Colony of the Lycians, with a great fleet of rovers and men of war, whose Captaine or Admirall was one *Chimarus*, a famous arch-pirate, a warlike man, but exceeding cruell, savage, and inhumane) who had for the badges and ensignes of his own ship in the prow a Lion, and at the poope a Dragon: much hurt he did upon all the coasts of *Lycia*; inasmuch as it was not possible either to saile upon the sea, or to inhabit the maritime Cities and Townes, neare unto the sea side for him. This man of war or arch-rover, *Bellerophon* had slaine who followed him hard in chase with his swift pinnace (*Pegasus*) as he fled, untill he had overtaken him, and withall had chaled the Amazones out of *Lycia*; yet for all this, he only received no worthy recompence for his good service, at the hands of *Jokates* King of *Lycia*; but also which was worse, sustained much wrong by him: by occasion whereof *Bellerophon* taking it as a great indignity, went to sea againe, where he praied against him unto *Nephtus*, that he would cause his land to be barren and unfruitfull; which done, he returned back againe: but behold a strange and fearefull spectacle, for the sea swelled and overflowed all the country, following him every where as he went, and covering after him the face of the earth: and for that the men of those parts, who did what possibly they could to entreat him for to stay this inundation of the sea, could not obtaine so much at his hands, the women tooke up their petticoats before and went to meet him, and shewed their nakednesse: whereupon for very shame he returned back, and the sea likewise (by report) retired with him into the former place. But some there be (who more civilly avoiding the fabulosity of this tale) say: That it was not by prayers and imprecations that he drew after him the sea, but because that part of *Lycia* which was most fertile, being low and flat, lay under the level of the sea: there was a banke raised along the sea side which kept it in; and *Bellerophon* cut a breach thorow it, and so it came to passe that the sea with great violence centred that way, and drowned the flat part of the country: whereupon the men did what they could by way of prayers and intreaty with him, in hope to appease his mood, but could not prevail: howbeit, the women environing him round about by great troupes and companies, pressed him so on all sides, that he could not for very shame deny them, and to in favour of them, laid down his anger. Others ascribe that *Chimarus* was an high mountaine, directly opposite to the sun at noon-tide, which caused great reflections and reverberations of the sun beames, and by consequence,

quence, ardent heats in manner of a fire, in the said mountaine, which coming to be spread and dispersed over the champion ground, caused all the fruits of the earth to dry, fade, and wither away: whereof *Bellerophon* (a man of great roach and deep conceit) knowing the cause in nature, caused in many places, the superficies of the said rock or mountaine to be cloven and cut in two, which before was most smooth and even, and by that reason consequently, did send back the beames of the sun, and caused the excessive heat in the country adjoining: now for that he was not well considered and regarded by the inhabitants, according to his demerit, in despite he meant to be revenged of the Lycians; but the women wrought him so, that they allayed his fury. But surely that cause which *Nymphus* alleageth in his fourth booke as touching *Heracles*, is not fabulous nor devised to delight the Reader: for he saith, That this *Bellerophon* having killed a wild bore that destroyed all the fruits of the earth, and all other beasts within the Xanthiens country, had no recompence therefore: whereupon, when he had powred out grievous imprecations against those unthankfull Xanthiens, unto *Nephtus*, he brought salt-water all over the land, which marred all, and made all become bitter, untill such time as he (being won by the prayers and supplications of the women) besought *Nephtus* to let fall his wrath. Lo, whereupon the custome arose and continueth still in the Xanthiens country: That men in all their affaires negotiate not in the name of their fathers, but of their mothers, and be called after their names.

#### The Women of S A L M A T I C A.

*Annibal* of the house of *Bacca*, before that he went into *Italy* to make war with the Romans, laid siege unto a great City in *Spain*, named *Salmatica*; the besieged were at the first affraid, and promised to do whatsoever *Annibal* would command them: yea, and to pay him three hundred talents of silver; for security of which capitulation to be performed, they put into his hands three hundred hostages: but so soone as *Annibal* had raised his siege, they repented of this agreement which they had concluded with him, and would do nothing according to the conditions of the accord; whereupon he returned againe for to besiege them afresh: and to encourage his souldiers the better to give the assault, he said, That he would give unto them the sackage and pillage of the Towne: whereupon the Citizens within were wonderfully affraid, and yielded themselves to his devotion, upon this condition: That the Barbarians would permit as many as were of free condition, to go forth, every man in his single garment, leaving behind them their armes, goods, money, slaves, and the City. Now the dames and wives of the Town, fearing lest the enemies would search and fiske their husbands as they went forth of the gates, and not once touch and meddle with them, tooke unto them short curtellases or skaines, hid them under their cloaths, and so went forth together with their husbands. When they were all out of Town, *Annibal* (having let a guard of *Macedonians* to attend them) staid them at the end of the suburbs: meane while the rest of his Army, without all order put themselves within the City, and fell to the spoile and sackage of it: which when the *Macedonians* perceived, they grew out of all patience, and could not containe themselves, nor look well unto their prisoners: but were wondrous angry, and in the end meant for to have as good a part and share as the rest of the spoile: hereupon the women tooke up a cry, and gave unto their husbands the swords which they had brought with them, yea, and some of them fell upon the guard or garrison, inasmuch as one of them was so bold, as to take from *Bann* (the Truchman or interpreter) the speare which he had, and thrust at him with it, but he had on a good corps of a cuirasse which saved him: but their husbands having wounded some of them, and put the rest to flight, escaped by this meanes away, together in a troupe with their wives; which when *Annibal* understood, he set out immediately after them, and surprized those who were left behind; whilst the rest got away and saved themselves for the present, by recovering the mountaines adjoining; but after they sent unto *Annibal* and craved pardon, who graciously granted it; yea, and permitted them to returne in safety and reinhabit their own City.

#### The Milesian Women.

The Milesian maidens upon a time were surprized with a very strong passionate fit of a fearful melancholick humour, without any apparant cause that could be rendered thereof, unless it were (as men most conjectured) that the aire was infected and empoisoned, which might cause that alienation of the mind, and worke a disemperature in their braines, to the overthrow of their right wits: for all on a sudden every one had a great desire to dye, and namely, in a furious rage would needs hang themselves: and in truth many of them secretly knit their necks in halters, and sowerly strangled: no reasons and remonstrances, no teares of father and mother, no persuasions and comfortable speeches of their friends would serve the turne: but look what keepers soever they had, and how carefully soever they looked unto them, they could find meanes of evasion to avoid and go beyond all their devices and inventions: in such sort, that it was thought to be some plague and punishment sent from the gods above; and such as no humane provision could remedy, untill such time as by the advice of a sage and wise Citizen, there went forth a certaine edict, and the same enacted by the counsell of the City: That if any one more hapned to hang her selfe, she should be carried stark naked as ever she was borne thorow the market-place in the view of the whole

whole world : this proclamation being thus ratified by the Common-council of the City, did not only repress for a while, but also staid for altogether, this furious rage of the maidens and their inordinate desire to make themselves away. Thus we may see, that the feare of dishonour, shame, and infamy, is a great signe and infallible token of good nature and vertue; considering that they feared neither death nor paine, which are the most horrible accidents that man can endure; howbeit they could not abide the imagination of villany, shame, and dishonour, though it hapned not unto them, untill they were dead and gone.

#### The Women of CIO.

The manner and custome was for the young Virgins of *Cio*, to go altogether unto their publick Temples and Churches, and so to passe the time all the long day there, one with another: where their lovers who wooed them for marriage, might behold them disport and dance: and in the evening they went home to each of their houses, in order, where they waited upon their fathers and mothers, yea, and the brethren, one of another, even to the very washing of their feet. Now it hapned sometimes that many young men were enamoured of one and the same maid: but their love was so modest, good and honest, that so soone as a maiden was affianced and betrothed unto one, all the rest would give over sure, and to cease to make any more love unto her: In sum, the good order and carriage of these women of *Cio* might be known in this: that in the space of seven hundred years, it was never known nor appeared upon record, that any wise committed adultery, nor maiden unmarried lost her virginity.

#### The Women of PHOCIS.

The Tyrants of *Phocis*, surprized upon a time and seized the City of *Delphos*; by occasion whereof, the Thebans made that war upon them, which was called the Holy war; at which time it befell, that the religious women consecrated unto *Bacchus*, named *Thyades*, being brought and out of their right wits, ran wandering like vagrants up and down in the night, and knew not whither, untill ere they were aware, they ran unto the City *Amphissa*, where being weary (but yet not come again to their senses) they lay along in the midst of the marketplace, & couched themselves scattering here and there to take their sleep: the wives of *Amphissa* being advertised hereof, and seeing left their bodies should be abused by the foundlers of the Tyrants (whereof there lay a Garrison within the City for that *Amphissa* was of the league, & confederate with the Phocians) ran all thither to the place, standing round about them with silence, and not saying one word, and so long as they slept troubled them not; but so soon as they wakened of themselves, and were gotten up, they took the charge of them, gave them meat, and each of them looked to one; yea, and afterwards having gotten leave of their husbands, they conveyed and accompanied them in safety, so far as to the mountaines and marches of their own territoire.

#### VALERIA and CLOELIA.

The outrage committed upon the person of, a Roman Lady, named *Lucretia*, and her vertue together, were the cause that *Tarquinius Superbus* (the seventh King of the Romans after *Romulus*) was deprived of his royall estate, and driven out of *Rome*: This dame being married unto a great personage, defended of the blood royall, was abused and forced by one of the sons of the said King *Tarquinius*, who was entertained and friendly lodged in her house: by occasion of which villainous fact she called all her kinsfolke and friends together about her; unto whom when she had declared and given them to understand the shameful dishonour that he had done upon her body, she stabbed her selfe in the place before them: and *Tarquinius* the father (for this cause being depoeled from his Princely dignity, and chased out of his Kingdome) levied many wars against the Romans, thinking thereby to recover his state; and among the rest in the end wrought so effectually with *Porfena* King of the Tuscans, that he perswaded him to lay siege to the City of *Rome*, and to besiege it with a puissant power: Now over and besides this hostility, the Romans within, were afflicted also and fore pressed with famine; but hearing that the said *Porfena* was not only a valiant Captain in armes, but withall a good and righteous Prince, they were willing to make him the indifferent umpire and judge between them and *Tarquinius*: but *Tarquinius* standing stiff in his own opinion, and highly conceited of himselfe, giving out also, that *Porfena* if he continued not a fast and constant ally, he would not afterwards be a just and equal judge: whereupon *Porfena* forsaking him, and leaving his alliance, capitulated and promised to depart in good tearmes of amity and peace with the Romans, upon condition to recover of them all those lands which they had occupied in *Tuscany*, and to have away with him those prisoners whom they had taken in those wars: now for the better assurance of this composition so concluded, there were delivered into his hands as hostages, ten boyes, and as many young maidens; among whom *Valeria* the daughter of *Poplicola* the Consul was one: which done, presently he brake up his campe and dislodged, yea, and gave over preparation of further war; notwithstanding that all the articles of the said capitulation were not yet accomplished. These young virgins before said, being in his Campe, went down as it were to bath and wash themselves,

themselves unto the river side, which ran a good way from the Campe; and by the motion and infatigation of one among the rest, named *Cloelia*: after they had wreathed their cloaths fast about their heads; theyooke the river which ran with a very strong streame and swift current, and by swimming crosse over it, helping one another what they could amid the deep channell, and surging whirlpools thereof, untill with much travell they hardly recovered the banke on the other side. Some report, that this damoiselle *Cloelia*, made meane to get an horse, mounted his back and gentry by little and little passed overthwart the river, shewing the way unto the rest of her fellows, encouraging, yea, and supporting them as they swam on each side and round about her: but what the reason is of this their conjecture, I will shew anon: when the Romans saw that they were gotten over in safety, they wondered at their boldnesse and rare vertue; howbeit they were nothing well pleased with their returne, neither could they endure to be challenged and reproached: that in fidelity and worth, they all should be inferiour to one man, and therefore gave a commandment that these virgins should returne from whence they came, and sent with them a guard to conduct them; but when they were passed over the river *Tybris* againe, they escaped very hardly of being surprized by an ambush that *Tarquinius* had laid for them by the way: as for *Valeria* the Consul's daughter, she fled at first with three servants into the Campe of *Porfena*: and the rest, *Arms* the son of *King Porfena*, who ran presently to the rescue, recovered out of the hands of the enemies: now when they were all presented and brought before the King; he demanded which of them it was, who had encouraged her companions to swim over the river, and given them counsell to do so: all the rest fearing lest the King should do *Cloelia* some harme, would not speake a word; but the her selfe confessed all: *Porfena* highly esteeming her valour and vertue, caused one of the fairest horses to be fetched out of his stable, richly trapped and set out with costly furniture, which he bestowed upon her, yea, and that which more is (for her sake, and to grace her) courteously and kindly dismissed all her fellows, and sent them home. This is the guesse (I say) by which some thinke that *Cloelia* passed over the river on horse-back: but others lay no; who deliver the story thus. That the King marveling at this valour and extraordinary hardnesse, above the proportion of that sex, thought her worthy of a present, which is wont to be given unto a valiant man at armes and a brave warrior: but how ever it was for a memoriall of this act, there is to be seen her statue at this day, to wit, a maiden sitting on horse-backe, and it standeth in the street called *Via sacra*, which some lay, representeth *Cloelia*, others *Valeria*.

#### MICCA and MEGISTO.

*Aristotimus* having usurped tyranny and violent dominion over the Elians, bearing himselfe much upon the favour and connivance of King *Antigonus*, established the same; but so cruelly and excessively he abused this power and authority under him, that in nothing he was tolerable; for over and besides that, he was a man by nature given to violence (by reason that he stood in some servile feare, and was glad to please the guard that he had about him of mixt Barbarians, whom he had gotten together from divers parts, for the defence of his state and person) he suffered them also to commit many insolent parts and cruell outrages upon his subjects; and among the rest, that unhappy indignity which befall to *Philodemus*, who had a faire damoiselle to his daughter, named *Micca*, unto whom one of the Capitaines of the said tyrant, named *Lucius*, seemed to make court, not for any true love and hearty affection that he bare unto her, but upon a wanton lust to abuse and dishonour her body: so he sent for this maiden to come and speake with him: her parents seeing, that whether they would or no, constrained they should be to let her go, gave her leave; but the damoiselle herselfe of a generous spirit and magnanimous heart clasped them about and hung upon them, fell down at their feet, and humbly besought them, all that ever she could, rather to kill her out of hand, than to suffer her thus shamefully to be betrayed, and villanously to be depoeled of her maidenhead: but for that she staid longer than was the good liking of the fore said *Lucius*, (who burned all this whiles in lust, and had withall taken his wine liberally) he rose from the table in great choler, and went himselfe toward her: when he came to the house, he found *Micca* with her head upon her fathers knees, and her he commanded to follow him; which she refused to do; whereupon he rent her cloaths from her body, and whipped her stark naked; and she, without giving one word againe, endured for her part with patience and silence all the smart and paine: but her father and mother, seeing, that with all their piteous prayers and tender teares, they could not prevail nor boot anything with this wretch, turned to call and implore the help both of God and man, crying with a loud voice: Out upon such injurious indignity and intolerable villany: whereupon this barbarous villaine (grown now to be furious and enraged, partly with choler, and in part with drunkennesse) killed this silly poore girl, even as she couched her face in the very lap and bosome of her father: howbeit, for all this and such like wicked pranks played, the tyrant was nothing at all moved to pity and compassion, but many Citizens he murdered, and more he banished and caused to leave their country: in such sort, that (as the speech went) no fewer than eight hundred fled to the *Ætolians*, craving at their hands to make meane unto the tyrant, that they might have away their wives and little children also. Nor long after, the Tyrant of his own accord caused proclamation to be made by sound of trumpet: that as many women as were willing to go unto their husbands, should make them ready and depart, yea, and carry with them as much

of their goods as they would: now when he understood, that they all with great joy of this proclamation thus published, and that they were assembled together with much contentment of mind, to the number of five hundred, he commanded that they should depart, and put themselves in their journey all together on a certain day by him prefixed, making semblant against that time, to provide a good convoy for their better security: when the time appointed was come, they flocked thicke to the gates of the City, having brought with them their trusses and fardles of such goods as they meant to have away with them, carrying some of their little babes in their armes, taking order for others for to be brought in waggons: and so they staid there, and attended one another coming: but suddenly many of the fouldiers and those of the tyrants guard, came running toward them, and crying aloud afar off, Stay, stay: now when they approached neare, all the women they commanded to go back againe, but the waines and waggons they turned together with the horses full upon them and drave them amaine thorow the midd of the troupe and throng of the women, not suffering them either to follow, or to stay or succour their poore little infants, whom they saw to dye before their faces: for some of them perished with falling out of the chariots to the ground, others were destroyed and trampled under the horses feet: and all this while, these penioners of the guard, with loud out-cries and with whipping, drave the women before them, like as they had been for many sheepe, and thronged them so hard, that one tumbled upon another; and thus they chafed them, untill such time as they had cast them all into prison: but all their bag and baggage was seized upon, and brought unto *Arifotimus*. Now when the men of *Elis* were herewith mightily offended: the religious women consecrated to the service of *Bacchus*, whom they call the *Silenee* (carrying in their hands boughs of Olive trees, like supplants, and chaplets of vine branches about their heads, which they tooke from the god whom they served) went to meet with *Arifotimus* about the Market-place of the City: his squire and penioners about him for the guard of his body, made a lane for them, and seemed (upon some reverence) to give them way that they might come neare: and the women at first kept silence, doing nought else but in most humble and devout manner tender unto him their branches, like supplants: but after that the tyrant understood that it was for the *Eliens* wives that they came thus to make supplication, and namely, that he would take some commiseration of them: being wroth and displeased with his guard, he cried out upon them for suffering the said women to approach so neare unto his person; and thereupon commanded them to drive some, and to beat others, untill they were all chafed out of the Market-place: and more than all this, he condemned these religious votaries in a fine of two talents a peece. During these occurrences, there was within the City one of the Burgessees, named *Hellanicus*, a man very farstept in age, who was the author of a conspiracy and insurrection against the tyrant: one that of all others he least distrusted, and whom he never thought likely to practise against him, both for that he was very aged, and also because but a little before he had buried two of his children: and it fortune at the very same time, that from *Æolia* the exiles before named pased into the territory of *Elis*, and seized upon a place called *Amymon*, situate in a very commodious place for to maintaine war: where they received and entertained many other inhabitants of the City, who immediately resorted thither, and ran apace: upon these tydings, the tyrant *Arifotimus* much fearing the sequel hereof, went unto their wives in prison: and thinking to compass his desires better by feare than favour and love, he commanded them to send unto their husbands, and to write unto them for to abandon their hold and depart out of the countrey, menacing the poore women, that if they did not so, he would cause their children first to be mangled with whips, and so killed before their face, and then put themselves also to death: all of them were silent a good while, and notwithstanding he importuned them a long time, and urged them to speake at once whether they would do it or no? They looked one upon another without saying a word, giving him thereby to understand, that they stood in no feare, and were not altoned for all his threats: at the last, one of them, named *Megisto*, wife to *Timoleon*, and a woman whom the rest regarded and held as their captainnesse, as well in respect of her husbands honour, as her own vertue, deigned not to rise up from her seat her selfe, nor suffered any of therest to stand up: but sitting still in her place, thus said, If thou wert a wise man thou wouldest not deale thus as thou dost between women and their husbands, but rather fend unto them, as to those who have the power and authority over their wives, and to deliver unto them better speeches than such, whereby thou hast deceived us: now if (being past hope to perswade them) thou thinkest to circumvent and delude them by the means of us, never looke that thou shalt abuse us any more, nor thinke that they will be so ill advised, or so bale minded, as that for to spare their wives and little children they will abandon and lose the liberty of their countrey: for surely the losse of us will not be to them so much, considering that they now enjoy us not, as the gaine and benefit, in delivering their countrey and fellow-citizens from such outrageous cruelty. Whiles *Megisto* entertained *Arifotimus* with these speeches, he could no longer endure, but commanded her little son to be brought before him, for to murder him before her eyes: and when the penioners about the tyrant searched for him among other little boyes that were playing and wrestling together, his mother called unto him by name, saying, Come hither to me my boy, that thou mayest be delivered from the cruelty of this tyrant before thou hast any sense or understanding to know what tyranny is: for a greater griefe it would be unto me another day to see thee for to serve like a slave unworthily, than to dye here presently: hereat *Arifotimus* through impatience of furious anger, drew his sword upon the woman her selfe, meaning to run her thro-

row:

row; but one of his familiar friends, named *Cylon* (who made semblant to be true and faithfull unto him, but hated him secretly in his heart, and indeed was of the complices in that conspiracy of *Hellanicus*) stepped before him, and by his effectual prayers turned his hand, making remembrance unto him: that it was no generous and manly deed, but a womanish act: neither favoured it of a Prince, or such a personage as knew how to manage great affaires of State, to deale in that sort, which he forced and pressed so instantly that hardly and with much ado though it were, *Arifotimus* was of a better mind, bethought himselfe and went his way. Now there befell unto him a strange accident, which preaged what mischief was toward him: for about high noone it was, when being in his bed-chamber, and reposing himselfe with his wife, whiles his dinner was now ready to be served up, some of his household might perceive an eagle soaring round over his house: and shet full a big stone directly upon the very place of the roofof the said chamber where he lay, as if upon deliberate purpose she had aimed and levelled as it were so to do, himselfe hearing the noise and rap that the stone gave upon the house top over his head, and wichall, the outcry beneath of those who beheld the foule, was mightily afrighted, and demanded what the matter might be? when he understood what it was: he sent presently for the wizard or soothsayer, whom he was wont to use in such cases, and all troubled and perplexed in spirit, asked him what this signe might prelage? The soothsayer comforted him, and willed him to be of good cheare, saying unto himselfe: That it was *Jupiter* who wakened him, and shewed how willing he was to assist and succour him; but unto other Citizens whom he might trust, he expounded it otherwise, and assured them that it was the vengeance of God; which speedily would light upon the tyrants head: whereupon *Hellanicus* and his adherents were resolved to defer the execution of their designs no longer, but to set upon the enterprise the next morrow: in the night that came between, *Hellanicus* as he slept, dreamed, and in that vision he thought, that one of his sons, late deceased, stood before him, and said, Father, what meane you to lie asleep, considering that once to morrow you must be Capaine General and soveraign Governour of this City: *Hellanicus* wonderfully encouraged by this vision, started up, and went to sollicite the rest of his Complices and companions in the said conspiracy. By this time was *Arifotimus* adverted that *Cyrenus* was coming to aide him with a puissant Army, and lay encamped neare to *Olympia*: in the assurance and confidence whereof, he presently tooke *Cylon* with him, and went forth without any guard about his person: *Hellanicus* seeing the opportunity now offered, and taking the vantage thereof, gave not the signall and watchword which was agreed upon, with those who first were to set to the execution of their intended enterprise: but stretching forth both his hands with a loud voice cried out: Now, now, my Masters and valiant men, what stay you for? Can you desire a fairer theater to shew your valour in, than to fight for the defence of your liberty, in the very heart of your native Countrey? At which words *Cylon* drew his sword first, and smote one of them that followed and accompanied *Arifotimus*; but *Thraibulus* and *Lampis* came afront, and ran upon the tyrant himselfe, who preventing the venue of their stroke, fled for refuge and sanctuary into the temple of *Jupiter*, where they slew him out-right, and drew his dead corps into the Market-place: and then assembled all the Citizens thither for to recover their freedom: but many of the people could not prevent the women; for they ran out with the first in great alacrity, weeping and crying out for very joy, and environing their husbands round about, crowned them, and set chaplets of flowers upon their heads: then the multitude of the common people set upon the tyrants house, and assaulted it: his wife having shut her selfe within her chamber, there hung her selfe, and whereas she had two daughters, virgins as yet, but in the prime and flower of their yeares, ready for marriage: those they tooke, and by force haled them out of the house, with full intent to kill them: in the end after they had abused their bodies first, and then perpetrated all the villany and shame they could devise unto them; which no doubt they would have put in execution, but that *Megisto*, with other honest matrons of the City, opposed themselves and came between, who cried aloud unto them; that in so doing they should commit an indignity unbeseeming them, if considering, that now being in the very true and high-way of recovering their liberty, for to live from henceforth in a popular government, they should perpetrate as violent outrages, as the most bloody and cruell tyrants are used to commit: the people in good respect and reverence to the honour and authority of this virtuous and honest dame, who spake her mind so frankly unto them with teares gushing out of her eyes, were reclaimed and advised to offer no abuse nor villany unto their persons; but to put unto their word what death they would dye? and when they had brought them both back againe into the house, and intimated unto them, that there was no other remedy but dye they must, and that presently: the elder of the twaine, named *Myro*, untied her girdle from about her waite, and with a running noose did it about her own neck in manner of an halter: then kissing and embracing her younger sister, she praised her to marke what she did, and according to her example to do thereafter: To the end (quoth she) that we may not die basely, unworthy the place from whence we are come and descended: but the younger desired againe, that she might dye first, caught hold of the girdle and snatched it from her: then the elder, Well sister (quoth she) I never yet refused to do any thing that you desired at my hands: and even now content I am to do so much for you as to endure and suffer that which will be more grievous unto me than death it selfe, namely, to see my most deare and best beloved sister to die before me; which said, she her selfe taught her how to fit the said girdle to her neck, and to knit it for the purpose, and when she perceived once that the life was out of her body, she tooke her down and covered her breath-

breathlesse corps: then addressing her speech unto dame *Megisto* her selfe, she besought her, that she would not suffer her body after she was dead, to lye shamefully above the ground; and not interred: she fight hereof, and the words withall were so patheticall, that there was not one pretence to hard hearted, or so spitefully and maliciously bent against the Tyrant, but deplored their willfull estate, and pitied the generosity and magnanimity of these two young Ladies. Now albeit there be infinite preidents of noble deeds, that in old time, women have done in companies together; yet me thinks these few examples which I have already delivered may suffice: for from henceforth therefore I will rehearse the particular virtuous acts of severall women by themselves, as they come scattering into my remembrance: for I suppose that such narrations and histories as these, do not require of necessity the precise order and consequence of the times.

## PIERIA.

Of those Ionians who were come to dwell in the City of *Miletum*, some chanced to be at variance and debate with the children of *Nelus*: by occasion whereof in the end they thought the City too hot for them, and constrained they were to remove and retire themselves into the City *Myus*, where they made their abode and habitation: and yet even there also, much molested they were and troubled by the Milesians, who warred upon them, for their revolt and apostasy: howbeit this war was not so bloody and mortall, but that they used to send one unto another, yea, and to communicate and negotiate reciprocally in divers things: for even upon certaine solemn and festival daies the wives and women of *Myus* would repaire boldly unto *Miletum*: now among these Myuntines, there was a Nobleman and of great name, one *Pythes*, who had to wife a Lady called *Jaggie*, by whom he was father of a faire daughter, cleped *Pieria*: when as therefore the great feast unto *Diana* and a solemn sacrifice called *Nelus*, was celebrated by the Milesians: *Pythes* lent thither unto this solemnity, his wife and daughter aforesaid, for they had requested leave of him to be partakers of the feast. It fortuned while they were there, that one of the sons of *Nelus* (a man of most credite and greatest authority in the City) named *Phrygius*, cast a fancy to *Pieria*: and in courting her after the manner of lovers, desired to know of her what it might be wherein he might gratifie her most, and best content her; unto whom she answered, If Sir you will so bring about, that I my selfe with many more may oftentimes resort hither, you shall do me the greatest pleasure that that you can devise: *Phrygius* (conceiving presently what her meaning was, namely, that there might be continuall peace and amity between those two Cities) wrought so, that he compoled the war on both sides: in regard hereof *Pieria* was highly esteemed and honoured in both Cities: in such wise, that unto this day the Milesian dares meddle with ordinarily and pray unto the gods, that they may be well beloved, as *Pieria* was of *Phrygius*.

## POLYCRITE.

There was in times past war between the Naxians and the Milesians, about *Neara* the wife of *Hyphicreon*, and the same arose upon this occasion. This *Neara* was enamoured upon *Promedon*, a Naxian, inasmuch as he would embarke, take the sea, and saile with him: for why? An ordinary guest he was of *Hyphicreons*, and used to lodge in his house whensoever he came to *Miletum*: yea, and secretly he had him to lye with her, she loved him so well: but in proces of time when she feared that her husband perceived it, he faire tooke her cleane away with him to *Naxos*, where he ordained, that she should be a suppliant of *Vesta*. *Hyphicreon* sent for her againe; but when the Naxians in favour of *Promedon* refused to render her, alleging for a colourable pretence of their excuse the privilege and franchises of suppliants: hereupon the war began between them; in which quarrell the Erythraians favoured the Milesians very affectionately, and sided with them, inasmuch as it grew to a long and lingering war, and many miseries and calamities that follow wars, it drew withall, as well to the one part as the other: untill at last the quarrell was finally ended by the vertue of one woman, like as it began first by the vice and wickednesse of another. For *Diogenus* the Captaine General of the Erythraians, (unto whom was committed the charge of keeping a fortification upon a very commodious place to annoy and endamage the Naxians) made roads and incursions into their territory, wherewith many other huge booties that he drave and carried away he took and led as his prisoners many maidens and wives of good houles and parentage: among whom there was one named *Polycrite*, whom himselfe fancied and fell in love with; her he kept and entertained not like a captive or prisoner, but as if she had been his espoused wife: now it fortuned that the day was come when the Milesians lying in campe, were to solemnize a great feast: by reason whereof they fell to drinking freely and making good cheare, inviting one another as the manner was: then *Polycrite* asked Captaine *Diogenus*, whether he would be offended if she should send certaine Tarts, Pies, and Cakes, provided for that feast, unto her brethren? who answered: that he not only permitted, but also willed her so to do: the taking the opportunity of good occasion, put within one of these Tarts a little thin plate of lead which was written upon; charging him expressly who had the carriage thereof, to say unto her brethren, that in any case none but they should taste of the said cakes or tarts: this message was done accordingly, and when they came to eate the tarts, they found within one a writing of their sisters: whereby she advertised and advised them

them not to fall, but that very night to come and assaile their enemies, for that they should finde them in great disorder, without sentinell and *oppre-guard*, without any watch and ward at all, for that they were all drunk by occasion of the good cheere that they had made at that feast: having this intelligence, they presently acquainted the Captaine General of the Naxians army therewith, praying them to enterprize this service by their direction and with them: thus were the Erythraians dislodged of their strong hold, and a great number of them withint, put to the sword: but *Polycrite* craved *Diogenus* of her fellow Citizens, and by that means saved his life: now when she approached near unto the gates of *Naxos*, seeing all the inhabitants coming forth to meet her with exceedingly great joy and mirth, putting garlands of flowers upon her head, and chaunting songs of her praises, her heart was not able to endure so great joy; for she died at the very gate of the City, where afterwards she was entered and entombed; and her monument was called, the Sepulcher of Envy, as if there had been some envious fortune, which had grudged unto *Polycrite*, the fruition of foreign glory and honour. Thus the Historiographers of *Naxos* have delivered this narration: howbeit (*Aristotle* saith) that *Polycrite* was never taken prisoner: but *Diogenus* having had a sight of her by some other means, became enamoured upon her so far, that he was ready to give up to her, and to do for the love of her, whatsoever she would: also that she promised to go with him, in case he would agree and grant one thing, and (as the said Philosopher telleth the tale) thereupon she required of him an obligation of his oath: and after he had faithfully sworn unto her, she demanded that he should deliver unto her the Castle *Delio*: for that was the name of the fort or piece whereof she had the charge, otherwise she said that it would never come in bed with him; whereupon he (as well for the great desire that he had to enjoy her love, as in regard of his forefaid oath, by which he was bound and obliged) quitted the place and rendered it into the hands of *Polycrite*, who presently delivered it up unto her country men and fellow Citizens; by which means they being now able once againe to make their parts good with the Milesians, made an accord and concluded peace, under what conditions they desired themselves.

## LAMPSACE.

In the City *Phocaea*, there were sometimes two brethren twins, of the house and family of the *Codrides*: the one named *Phobus*, the other *Blepsus*; of which twain, *Phobus* was the first that (according as *Charon* the Chronicler of *Lampsacum* doth record) cast himselfe from the high rocks and chieffes of *Leucas* into the sea. This *Phobus* being of great puiſſance and royall authority in his country, hapned to have some private affair and negotiation of his own in the Isle of *Paros*, and thither he went: where he contracted amity, alliance and hospitality with *Mandron* King of the *Bebrycians*, furnished *Pitycles*: and by vertue of this new league he aided them, and in their behalfe made war with them, against other barbarous people their neighbours, who did them wrong and wrought them much damage: afterwards (when he was upon his departure and return home) *Mandron* among many other courtesies and tokens of kinneship which he bestowed upon him, now ready to embark and take the sea, offered him the one moiety of his Countrey and City, if he would come and dwell in the City *Pityassus*, with some part of the *Phocaeans*, for to people the place: whereupon *Phobus* after he was come home againe to *Phocaea*, proposed this matter unto the *Phocaeans* his Citizens: and having perswaded them to accept of the offer, he sent his own brother, as leader and Captaine to conduct this Colony of new inhabitants: who upon their first arrival and coming thither, found themselves as well entreated, and as courteously entertained as they could with or look for at *Mandron* his hands: but in tract of time, after that they had gotten many advantages at the Barbarians hands, their neighbours and borderers, won divers booties from them, and gained much pillage and spoile: they began to be envied first, and afterwards to be dread and feared of the *Bebrycians*: who being desirous for to be rid and delivered of such guests, did not advertise themselves unto *Mandron*, whom they knew to be an honest and just man, for to perswade him to practice any disloyalty or treachery, against men of the Greek nation: but clying a time when he was absent and out of the Countrey, they conspired and prepared to surprize the *Phocaeans* by a wile, and so to dispatch them all at once out of the way: but *Lampsace* (the daughter of *Mandron*, a maiden yet unmarried, having some fore-inkling and intelligence of this forelayd amaine labour and deale, first with her familiar friends to divert them from so wicked an enterprize, shewing and proving unto them, that it was a damnable act before God, and abominable among men, to proceed so treacherously against their allies & confederates, who had been ready at all times to aid and assist them in their need against their enemies, and besides, were now incorporate with them, and their fellow-Citizens: but when the law that there would no good be done, and that there could nor disswade them from it, she acquainted the Greeks under-hand with this treason, which was waiteing against them, and advised them to look unto themselves, and stand upon their own guard: so the *Phocaeans* made a solemn sacrifice and a publick feast, invited the *Pitycles* to come out of the City into the suburbs to take part thereof: and themselves they divided into two troops, whereof the one seized the walls of the City, whiles the inhabitants were at the feast, mean time the other were busied in massacring the guests that were bidden to it: and by this means they became masters of the whole City, and sent for *Mandron*, whom they desired to participate with them in their counsels and affairs: as for *Lampsace* his daughter, who fortuned to die of sicknesse, they incinerated

magnificently, and in memorial of that good which she did unto them, called the City after her name *Lampricus*: howbeit *Mandron* because he would not be suspected to have been a Traitor unto his own people, would not consent to dwell among them, but required to have of them, the Wives and Children of them who were dead: whom they sent unto him with all speed and diligence, without doing any harm or displeasure at all unto them: as for *Lampricus* unto whom before they had ordained heroic honours: they decreed for ever to sacrifice unto her as unto a goddess, and even to this day they do continue and observe the same divine worship unto her.

## ARETAPHILA.

**A**retaphila of Cyrene, was none of them that lived in ancient time, but lately in the dayes of King *Mithridates*; but she shewed vertue, and performed an act comparable to the magnanimous counsels and designs of the most antick demi-goddesses that ever were: daughter she was to *Eglmor*, and wiseto *Phadimus*, both noble men and great personages; fair and beautiful of visage, of deep conceit and high reach, and namely, in matters of estate, and affairs of government well experienced: the public calamities of her country did illustrate her name, and caused her to be well known and voiced in the world: for *Nicoerates* having usurped the tyranny of Cyrene, put to death many of the chiefe and principal men of the City, and among the rest, one *Melanippus* the high Priest of *Apollo*, whom he slew with his own hands, for to enjoy his Priesthood: he did to death also *Phadimus* the husband of *Aretaphila*, and not content therewith, married her person, and against her will: this tyrant over and above an infinite number of other cruelties which he daily committed, set certain warders at every gate of the City; who when there was carried forth any dead corpse to buriall out of the City, abused the same, with digging into the soles of their feet, with the points of their daggers and poniards, or else with searing them with red hot irons; for fear that any of the inhabitants should be conveyed alive out of the City, under colour of being borne to the grave as dead: private and particular crosses had *Aretaphila* no doubt, which were grievous unto her, and hardly to be endured, although the tyrant was otherwise kind enough unto her, and led her a faire life, letting her have her own will, for the love he bare unto her: in much as the tyrant suffered her to enjoy a great part of his puissance and regal power: for love had enthralled and subdued him unto her, and not one there was but the alone who knew how to use and handle him; for to all the others he was untractable, inflexible, and savage beyond all measure: but it grieved her most of all, to see her native country so miserably abused, and so unworthily entreated by this tyrant: for there was not one day went over his head, but he caused to be executed one Citizen or other, neither was there to be seen any hope of revenge or deliverance out of these calamities on any side: for that the exiled persons and such as fled, being weak and feeble every way, and altogether heartlesse and fearful, were scattered some in this place, others in that. *Aretaphila* therefore (building upon her selfe alone the only hope of recovering and raising the state of the Common-weale, and proposing the magnanimous and renowned acts of *Thebe*, the wife of the tyrant of *Phera*, as examples to imitate; but wanting and destitute altogether of faithful friends and trusty kinsfolk for to help and second her in any enterprise, such as the present times and affairs did afford unto the other) assayed to make away the tyrant by some poyson; but as she was about the provision hereof, and assayed to make proof of the forces of many strong poysons, she could not carry her designe so secretly but it came forth, and was discovered: now when the thing was avetred and evidently proved by strong presumptions: *Calbia* the mother of *Nicoerates* (a bloody woman, and of nature implacable) thought to have her put to many exquisite torments, and then to bring her soon after to her death: but the affection that *Nicoerates* bare unto her wrought some delay in revenge, and dulled the edge of his anger, and withal *Aretaphila*, (who constantly and resolutely offered her selfe to answer all imputations that were laid unto her charges) gave some colourable excuse unto the passionate affection of the tyrant: but in the end feeling that she was convinced by certain proofs and evidences, which she knew not how to answer, neither could she deny that she had some drugs in her closet, and did temper certain medicines; but confessed that indeed she had prepared certain drugs, yet such as were neither deadly nor dangerous: But my good Lord/quoth she unto her husband the tyrant, I am much perplexed and troubled with many things of great consequence, and namely how to preserve the good opinion which you have of me, the kind affection also which of your gracions favour you bear unto me, by means whereof, I have this honor, as to enjoy a good part of your power and authority jointly with you; this maketh me to be envied of wicked women, at whose hands I (fearing forceries, charms, enchantments, and other cunning diavellish casts, by which they would go about to withdraw, and distract you from the love that you beare me) resolved at the length with my self for to seek means how to meet, encounter, and prevent their devices: foolish peradventure they may be (as indeed the very inventions of a woman, but in no wife worthy of death) unless haply, Sir (in your judgment) it be just and reasonable to put your wife to death, for that she smeth to give you some love drinks, and amatorious cups, or deviseth some charms, as desirous to be more loved of you then haply it is your pleasure for to love her. *Nicoerates*, having heard these excuses alleged by *Aretaphila*, thought good & resolved to put her to torture, whereat *Calbia* her mother was present, who never relented nor seemed to be touched with her dolorous toments, but remained inexorable

DOW

now when she was laid upon the rack, and askedundry questions, she yielded not unto the pains that she sustained, but continued invincible, and confessed no fault in the height of all extremities; until at length *Calbia* her selfe, even against her will was forced to give over tormenting her any longer: and *Nicoerates* let her go, being now fully perswaded, that the excuses alleged by her were true and to be credited, repenting that he had put her to such pain as he did: and it was not long after (so deeply was the passion of love imprinted in his heart) that he returned to her and assayed to win her grace and good will again, by all honours, favours, courtesies and kindeffe that possibly he could shew unto her: but she, who had the power and strenght to resist all torments and yield unto no pains, would not be overcome with all his flatteries; but joining now unto her former desire of doing some vertuous deed, the animosity for to be revenged and to effect her purpose, assayed other means. One daughter she had marriageable, and beautiful she was besides: her selfe suborned and set as an alluring bait to entrap and catch the tyrants brother, a young Gentleman, easie to be caught with the pleasures and delight of youth: and many are of opinion, that she used certain charms and amatorious potions, as well as the object of her daughters beauty, whereby the enchanted and bewitched the wits and senses of this young man, whom they called *Leander*: when he was once enamoured with the love of this young damoelle, he prevailed so much by prayers and entreaties with his brother, that he permitted him to wed her; no sooner was he married but his fresh spouse (having instructions before hand from her mother) began to be in hand with him, and to perswade him for to enterprize the recovery of freedom unto the City, shewing by good remembrance, that himselfe enjoyed not liberty, so long as he lived under tyranny, neither had he power of himselfe, either to wed a wife, or to keep her when he had her, it pleased not the tyrant: on the other side, his friends and other of his familiar acquaintance, for to gratifie *Aretaphila* and to do her pleasure, repaired unto him continually, forging some new matter of quarrels and suspitions against his brother the tyrant: when he perceived that *Aretaphila* was also of the same mind, and had her hand therein, he resolved to execute the enterprise; and thereupon he set one *Diphnis*, a servant of his own, in hand with the business, by whole means he killed *Nicoerates*: but after he was thus murdered, *Leander* would no more be advised by *Aretaphila*, nor follow her counsel in the rest; but shewed incontinently by his deportments and carriage in all actions, that a brother indeed he had murdered, but not killed a tyrant: for in his own government, he behare himselfe like a foole, and ruled insolently and furiously: howbeit, unto *Aretaphila* he shewed always some honour and reverence, conferring upon her some part of his authority in management of State affairs: for that she made no semblant at all of discontentment, nor directly and in open manner seemed to warre against him, but privily practised, and cunningly disposed all: for first and foremost, he raised warre upon him out of *Lybia*, by the means of a Prince there, named *Anabus*, betweene whom and her there passed secret intelligence: him she solicited and perswaded to invade his Country, and with a puissant Army to approach the City *Cyrene*: then she buzzed into *Leanders* head, certain surmizes and suspitions of disloyalty in his Peers, his Friends and Captaines: giving him to understand, that their hearts stood not to this warre, but that they loved peace and quietnesse rather; Which (quoth she) to say a truth, as things now stand, were better for you and for the establishment of your royal State and Dominion, in case you would rise indeed, hold under, and keep in aw, your Subjects and Citizens: and for mine own part. I hold it good policy for you to make means for a Treaty of peace, which I will labour to effect: and for that purpose bring you and *Anabus* together, to an interview and parly (if you think to good) before that you grow to farther terms of hostility and open war, which may breed a mischief, that afterwards will admit no cure nor remedy. This motion she handled and followed with such dexterity, that *Leander* condescended thereto: and she her selfe in person went to confer with the *Lybian* Prince, whom she requested, that so soon as ever they were met together to treat of this pretended accord, he should arrest the tyrant as his prisoner: and to do this eat, she promised him great gifts and presents, besides a good reward in money: the *Lybian* soon accorded hereto: now *Leander* made some doubt at first to goe into this parly, and stayed a while, but afterwards (for the good respect that he had unto *Aretaphila*, who promised in his behalf, that he should come to conference) he set forward, naked without Armes and without his guards: when he approached the place appointed for this interview, and had a sight once of *Anabus*, his heart misgave him again; and being much troubled and perplexed, he would not go on, but said, he would stay for his guard: howbeit, *Aretaphila*, who was there present, partly encouraged him, and in part rebuked and checked him, saying: That he would be taken and reputed for a base minded coward, and disloyal person, who made no account of his word, if he should now flinch and start back: at the last, when they were at point to meet: she layed hold upon him, plucked him forward by the hand, and with great boldnesse & resolution haled him, until she had delivered him into the hands of the barbarous Prince: then immediately was he apprehended, and his body attached by the *Lybians* who kept him bound as a prisoner, and set a strait guard about him, until such time as the friends of *Aretaphila* with other Citizens of *Cyrene*, were come to the camp, and brought the money and gifts unto her which she had promised unto *Anabus*. For so soon as it was known in the City that *Leander* was taken prisoner and in sure hold, a number also of the multitude ran forth to the place appointed of conference: and so soon as they had set an eye on *Aretaphila*, they went within a litle off, forgetting all their anger and malice which they bare unto the tyrant, thinking that the revenge and exemplary

Mm 2

exemplary

exemplary punishment of him was but accessary and by-matter; as being now wholly amused upon another thing, and supposing the principal fruition of their liberty consisting in saluting and greeting her most kindly, and with so great joy, that the tears ran down their cheeks, inasmuch as they were ready to kneel, yea, and call themselves down prostrate at her feet, no less then before the sacred image and statue of a goddess: thus they flocked unto her, by troops out of the City one after another, all day long, inasmuch as it was well in the evening before they could advise with themselves to seize upon the person of *Leander*, and hardly before dark night did they bring him with them into the City. Now after they were well satisfied with giving all manner of praises, and doing what honour they could devise unto *Arctaphila*, in the end they turned to consultation what was best to be done with the tyrants; so they proceeded to burn *Calbia* quick; and as for *Leander*, they put him in a leather poke and sewed it up close, and then cast it into the sea. Then ordained and decreed it was, that *Arctaphila* should have the charge and administration of the Weale-publick, with some other of the principal personages of the City joined in commission with her: but she (as one who had played many lundry parts already upon the stage so well, that she had gotten the garland and crown of victory) when she saw that her country and City was now fully free, and at liberty, immediately betook her selfe to her own private house, as it were cloistred up with women only, and would no more intermeddle in the affairs of State abroad; but the rest of her life she passed in peace and repose with her kinsfolk and friends, without setting her selfe to any businesse, save only to her wheele, her web, and such womens works.

## C A M M A.

There were in times past, two most puissant Lords and Tetrarchs of *Galatia*, who also were in blood of kin one to the other, *Sinatus* and *Synoris*. *Sinatus* had espoused a young virgin named *Camma*, and made her his wife; a Lady highly esteemed of as many as knew her, as well for the beauty of her person, as the flower of her age; but admired much more in regard of her vertue and honesty: for she had not only a tender respect of her own good name and honour, carried an affectionate love and true heart unto her husband; but also, she was wise, magnanimous, and passing well beloved of all her Subjects and Tenants, in regard of her gentle nature, and her debonaire and bounteous disposition: and that which made her better reputed and more renowned, was this: that she was a most religious Priestesse of *Diana* (a goddess whom the Galatians most devoutly honour and worship) and also in every solemn procession and publick sacrifice, she would always be seen abroad most humbly set out, and stately adorned. It fortuned so, that *Synoris* was enamoured of this brave dame, but being not able to bring about his purpose and to enjoy her, neither by faire means nor foul, perswade her, or menace what he could, so long as her husband lived: the devil put in his head, to commit a most heinous and detestable fact: for he laid wait for *Sinatus*, and treacherously murdered him: he stayed not long after, but he fell to wooing of *Camma*, and courting her by way of marriage; she made her abode within the temple at that time, and took the infamous act committed by *Synoris*, not pitiously, and as one cast down and dejected therewith, but with a stout heart and a stomach moved to anger, and yet considerably, waiting the time and opportunity of revenge: On the other side, *Synoris* followed his lute very earnestly, solliciting and entreating importunately: neither seemed he to alledge vain and frivolous reasons, but such as carried some colourable pretence of honesty: namely, that he had alwayes shewed himselfe a man of more valour and worth then *Sinatus*; and whereas he took away his life, induced he was thereto for the exceeding love that he bare to *Camma*. and not moved thereto by any malice otherwise. This young dame at the first seemed to deny him, but yet her denials were not very churlish, and such, as he might take for his final answer; for daily by little and little, she made semblant that she relented and inclined unto him, for that divers kinsfolk and friends also of hers, joined with him to second his lute, who (for to gratifie and do pleasure unto *Synoris*, a man of the greatest credit and authority in his country) perswaded, yea and forced her to yeeld unto this match: To be short, in the end she gave her consent, and *Synoris* was sent for to come unto her, where she kept her residence: that in the presence of the said goddess, the contract of marriage might passe, and the espousals be solemnized: when he was come, she received and welcomed him with an amiable and gracious countenance, lead him unto the very Altar of *Diana*, where religiously and with great ceremony she poured forth before the goddess, a little of a potion which she had prepared, out of a bowle: the one part thereof she drinke her selfe, and the other she gave unto *Synoris* for to drinke: now this potion was made mingled with rank poison: when she saw that he had taken his draught she fetched a loud and evident groan, doing reverence also unto the goddess: I protest and call thee to witnesse (quoth she) most powerfull and honourable goddess, that I have not survived *Sinatus*; for any other cause in the world, but only in regard of hope that one day I might be revenged off his death, which seeing that now I have effected, I go most gladly and joyfully unto that sweet husband of mine; and as for thee (thou most accursed and wicked wretch in the world) give order to thy kinsfolk and friends, in stead of a nuptial bed, to provide a grave for thy buriall: the Galatians (hearing these words: and beginning wihal to feelee the operation of the poison, and how it wrought & troubled him within his bowels, & all parts of his body,) mounted presently his chariot,

ho-

hoping that by the jogging and agitation thereof, he might vomit and cast up the poison: but immediately he alighted againe, and put himselfe into an easie litter: but did he what he could, dead he was that very evening: as for *Camma*, she continued all the night languishing, and when she heard for certainty that he was deceased, she also with joy and mirth departed out of this world.

## STRATONICE.

The selfe same province of *Galatia* afforded two other dames worthy of eternal memory, to wit, *Stratonice* the Wife of King *Deiotarus*, and *Chiomara* the Wife of *Ortiagon*: as for *Stratonice*, she (knowing that the King her Husband was desirous to have children lawfully begotten; for to leave to be his successors and inheritors of the Crown, and yet could have none by her) prayed and intreated him to try another woman, and beget a Child of her body, yea, and permitted that it should be put unto her, and she would take it upon her as her own: *Deiotarus* wondered much at this resolution of hers, and was content to do all things according to her mind: whereupon shee chose (among other captives taken prisoner in the wars) a proper fair maiden named *Electra*, whom she brought unto *Deiotarus* bed Chamber, and shut them in both together: and all the Children which this Concubine bare unto him, his wife reared and brought up with as kind an affection, and as Prince-like, as if she had borne them her selfe.

## CHIO M A R A.

At what time as the Romans, under the conduct of *Cn. Scipio*, defeated the Galatians that inhabited in *Asia*; it beel that *Chiomara* the wife of *Ortiagon*, was taken prisoner with other Galatian women: the Captain whole captive she was, made use of his fortune. did like a fowler, and shod her body, who as he was a man given unto his fleshly pleasure, so he looked also as much, or rather more unto his profit and filthy lucre; but so it fell out, that overtaken he was and entrapped by his own avarice: for (being promised by the woman a good round quantity of gold, for to deliver her out of thraldome and set her at liberty) he brought her to the place which she had appointed for to render her and set her free; which was at a certain bank by the river side, where the Galatians should passe over: render him the said money, and receive *Chiomara*: but she winked with her eye, and thereby gave a signal to one of her own company for to kill the said Roman Captain, at what time as he should take his leave of her with a kisse and friendly farewell: which the party did with his sword, and at one stroke stretched off his head: the head she her selfe took up, and wrapped it in the lap of her gown before, and to goe her away alone homeward: when she was come to her husbands house, down she cast his head at his feet: whereat he being astonished, Ah my sweet wife (quoth he) it is a good thing to keep faithful promise: True (quoth she) but it is better, that but one man alive should have my company. *Polybius* writeth of the same woman, that himselfe talked with her afterwards in the City of *Sardis*, and that he found her then to be a woman of an high mind and of wonderful deep wit. But since I am fallen to the mention of the Galatians, I will rehearse yet one story more of them.

## A Woman of PERGA M U S.

King *Mithridates* sent upon a time for three or four of the principal Lords of *Galatia*, to repair unto him upon trust and safe conduct as friends, into the City *Pergamus*: whom being come at his request, he entertained with proud and imperious speeches, whereat they all took great scorn and indignation, inasmuch as one of them named *Toradrix* (a strong and tall man of his hands, and besides wonderful courageous, Tetrarch of the Topplesian country) undertook one day this enterprise, to set upon *Mithridates*, at what time as he sat in judgement, and gave audience from the tribunal seat in the publick place of exercise, and both him and seat together to tumble down headlong into the pit underneath: but it fortuned that the King that day came not abroad as his manner was, up into that place of open exercise, but commanded all those Galatian Lords, to come and speak with him at his house: *Toradrix* exhorted them to be bold and confident, and when they were altogether in his presence, to run upon him from every side, to tear him in pieces and make an end of him: this plot was not projected so closely, but it came to *Mithridates* ears, who caused them all to be apprehended, and sent to chop off all their heads one after another: but immediately after, he called to remembrance that there was one young Gentleman among the rest, for the flower of his years, for beauty also, and feature of body, the goodliest person that he had set eye on in his days; whom he took pity of, and repented that he had condemned him to die with his fellows, shewing evidently in his countenance, that hee was mightily grieved and disquieted in his mind, as thinking verily that he was executed already with the first: howbeit, at a very venture hee sent in all haste a countermand, that if he were yet alive, hee should be spared and let go: this young mans name was *Bepolitanus*; and verily his fortune was most strange and wonderful: for had away hee was to the place of execution in that habit wherein he was attached, and the time was a very faire and rich lute of apparel, which because the butcherly executioner desired to reserve clean and unsprent with blood, he was somewhat long about the stripping of him out

Mm 3

of



of it; and whilst he was so doing he might perceive the Kings men come running apace toward him, and with aloud voice naming *Bepolianns*. See how covetousness, which had been the death of many a thousand, was the means beyond all expectation, to save the life of this young gentleman: as for *Toradoris*, after he was cruelly mangled with many a chop and hack, his body was cast forth unburi'd to the dogs; neither durst any of his friends come near to enter it: one woman only of *Peramus*, whom this Galatian in his life time had known, in regard of her fresh youth and beauty, was so hardy as to hazard the taking of his dead corps away, and to bury it; which when the warders and watchmen perceived, they attacked her, and brought her to the King: and it is reported that *Mithridates* at the very first sight of her, had compassion for that she seem'd to be a young and a simple harmless wench every way; but when he understood withal that love was the very cause thereof, his heart melted so much the rather; whereupon he gave her leave to take up the body, and commit it to the earth, allowing her for that purpose funeral cloaths, and furnishing her at his own charges, with all other things meet for comely and decent burial.

## TIMOCLEIA.

**T**heban, carried the like mind and purpose for the defence of his country and the common-wealth, as sometimes *Epaminondas*, *Polopidas*, and the bravest men in the world had done; but his fortune was to fall in that common ruine of *Greece*, when as the *Greeks* lost that unfortunate battel before *Charonea*; and yet for his own part he was a victor, and followed them in chafe, whom he had disarrayed and put to flight; for he it was who when one of them that fled cried out unto him: How far wilt thou pursue and follow us; answered: Even as far as into *Macedonia*; but when he was dead, a sister of his who survived him, gave good testimony, that in regard as well of his ancestors virtue, as his own natural disposition, he had been a worthy personage, and worthy to be reckoned and renowned amongst the most valiant Knights in his dayes; for some fruit received and reaped the fruit of vertue, which helped her to bear and endure patiently as much of the common miseries of her country as touched her; for after that *Alexander the Great* had won the City of *Thebes* by assault, and the souldiers ran to and fro into all parts of the town, pilling and ransacking whatsoever they could come by; it chanced that one seized upon the house of *Timocleia*, a man who knew not what belonged to honour, honesty, or common courtesie and civility, but was altogether violent, furious, and out of reason: a Captain he was of a Coronet of Thracian light horsemen; and carried the name of King *Alexander* his Lord and Master, but nothing like he was unto him in conditions; for having filled himself with wine after supper, and good cheer, without any respect unto the race and lineage of this noble dame, without regard of her estate and calling; he was in hand with her to be his bed-fellow all that night, neither was this all; for he would needs learn and know of her, where she had laid up and hoarded any gold or silver, one while threatening to kill her, unless she would bring him to it, another while bearing her in hand that he would make her his wife, if she would yeeld unto him: she taking vantage of this occasion which him self offered and presented unto her: It might have pleased the gods (quoth she) that I had died before this night, rather then remain alive; for though I had lost all besides, yet my body had been undefiled and saved from all violence and villany; but since it is my fortune, that hereafter I must repute you for my Lord, my Master, and my Husband, and seeing it is Gods will to give you this puissance and sovereignty over me, I will not deprive and disappoint you of that which is yours, and as for my selfe, I see well, that my condition from henceforth must be such as you will; I was wont indeed to have about me, costly jewels and ornaments for my body; I had silver in plate, yea, and some gold in good coin and other ready money; but when I saw that the City was lost, I willed my women and maid servants about me to get all together, and so I cast it away, or rather indeed to say a truth, I bestowed it, and reserved it in safety within a dry pit, wherein no water is, an odd blind corner I may say to you, that few or none do know: for that there is a great fount leith over the mouth of it, and many of trees grow round about to shade and cover the same; as for you, this treasure will make you a man, yea, and a rich man for ever, when you have it once in your possession: and for my part, it may serve for a good testimony and sufficient proof, to shew how noble and wealthy our house was before time. When the *Macedonian* heard these words, his teeth so watred after this treasure, that he could not stay until the morrow, and attend the day light; but would needs out of hand be conducted by *Timocleia*, and her maidens to the place; but he commanded his wife to shut fast and lock the fore-yard-gate after them, that no man might see and know; and so he went down in his shirt into the foresaid pit: but cursed and hideous *Clotus* was his Mistress and guide, who would punish and be revenged of his notorious wickedness by the hands of *Timocleia*, who stood above; for when she perceived by his voice that he was now at the very bottom, she herself threw down a number of stones upon him, and her women also rumbled down many others, and those very big ones and heavy after him, until they had brained him, overwhelmed him, and in manner filled the pit up: which when the *Macedonians* heard of, they made means to draw up his dead body, and for that there was a proclamation published before by sound of trumpet throughout the City, that they should not massacre one *Theban* more, they apprehended *Timocleia*, and brought her before King *Alexander*, whom they had already acquainted from point to point in particular, with that audacious act which he had committed: the

King

King judging (by her settled and confident countenance, by her stayed gate also and portly pace) that she could not chafe but be of some great and noble house; demanded of her, first, what shee was? and she with rare boldness and resolution, without shewing any sign that she was daunted and astounded; I had (quoth she) a brother named *Theagines*, who being Captain General of the *Thebans*, against you, in the battel of *Charonea*, lost his life fighting manfully in the defence of the liberty of *Greece*, to the end that we might not fall into that wofull misery, into which we are at this present fallen; but seeing it is so that we have suffered those outrages and indignities which be unworthy the place from whence we are descended, for my selfe I refuse not to die, and peradventure it were no expedient for me to live any longer, and try such another night as the last was, unless you selfe impeach and debate such demeanors: at these words, the noblest and most honourable persons who were present, could not forbear but weep; as for *Alexander*, he thought that the haughty mind and courage of this dame, was greater then to move pity and compassion: and therefore highly praising her vertue and commending her speech which she marked, and pondered well enough of a straight charge and commandment unto his Captains, to have a good eye, and careful regard, yea, and to take order presently, that there should no more such abuses be offered in any house of honour and nobility: and as touching *Timocleia*, he ordained immediately, that she should be let at full liberty, both her selfe, and also all those who were known and found any way to be of her blood and kinred,

## ERYXO.

**B**attus who was surnamed *Damon*, that is to say, Happy, had a son whose name was *Arceflaus*, in nothing at all resembling the manners and conditions of his father; for even during his fathers life (for raising of battlements and pinnacles round about the walls of his own house,) he was condemned by his father himselfe in a fine of one whole talent; and after his death, being of a crooked, rough, and trouble some spirit, (according as his very name, *Catepos*, implied) and for that he was governed altogether by the counsel of a minion and favourite of his own, named *Laarchus*, a man of no worth nor respect, he proved a tyrant in stead of a King. And this *Laarchus* aspiring likewise to be tyrant, either chafed and banished out of the City, or else caused to be put to death, the best and principal Citizens of a *Cyrene*; but when he had so done, he derived from himselfe all the blame and imputation upon *Arceflaus*; and in the end gave him to drink a cup of poyson, to wit, a sea-hare, whereupon he fell into a lingering and anguishing disease, whereby he pined away, and died at the last; by which means himselfe usurped the feignory and rule of the City, under a colour of keeping it as a Tutor and Lord Protector, for the behoofe and use of *Battus* the son of *Arceflaus*: for a very child he was, and lame withall; so that in regard as well of his monage and minority, as the defect and imperfection of his body, he was despised of the people; but many there were, who drew and ranged themselves unto his mother, and were willing to obey and honour her, for that she was a wise Lady, and of a mild and courteous nature: besides, most of the mightiest men in those parts were knit to her either in blood and kindred, or else by bond of friendship; by means whereof, *Laarchus* made court to her, yea, and sued unto her for her good will by way of marriage, offering unto her (if she would be affianced and wedded unto him) to adopt *Battus* for his own son, and make him partaker of his feignory and dominion: but *Eryxo* (for that was the name of this noble Lady) being advised and conmielled thereto before hand by her brethren, willed *Laarchus* to impart the matter unto them, for that upon conference with them (if they thought well of this marriage) she would be content and consent thereto: *Laarchus* failed not so to do, but went and brake the thing unto her brethren accordingly; and they (as it was complotted before) drew the matter out in length, and drave him off from day to day; but *Eryxo* sent unto him secretly one of her waiting maidens, to give him notice from her, that her brethren indeed for the present did contradict her mind and crossed her will, but were the knot since knit and consummate in bed together, they would consent and haile no longer, but be willing enough to like and approve thereof as a convenient match: and therefore she advised him (if he thought so good) to repair by night unto her: for if the thing were once well begun the rest no doubt would speed accordingly; this message pleased *Laarchus*, and fired his humour piffing well: being therefore transported wholly besides himselfe with these lovely and sugred words of this dame, he promised to attend her at what hour soever the would appoint. Now was this devie complotted and laid by the counsel of her eldest brother *Polarchus*; and after that she had let down the jilt time when they should meet and another company together again that very instant, he took order that the laid brother should secretly be conveyed into her chamber who brought with him two lusty tall young men well appointed with good swords, and who desired nothing more then to revenge their fathers blood, whom lately *Laarchus* had caused to be put to death: when all things were now in readinesse, he sent for *Laarchus*, willing him to come alone without any of his guard about him; no sooner was he entered into the chamber, but these two young men charged upon him with their swords, wounded him in many parts of his body that he died in the place: his dead corpse they cast over the walls of the house; which done, they brought the young Prince *Battus* abroad into the publick place, declared and proclaimed him King after the manner and custom of the City. Thus *Polarchus* rendered unto the *Cyrenians* their ancient government which they had from the beginning. Now there happened to be at the same time in *Cyrene* many souldiers of *Amasis* the King of *Egypt*, in whom *Laarchus* reposed

reposed his confidence, and found them fast and trusty unto him: by whose means he became dread and terrible to the Cyrenians: these sent in post with all speed unto King *Amassi*, messengers of purpose, to charge and accuse *Eryxo* and *Polyarchus* for this murder: whereat the King was wroth, and in great indignation intended out of hand to make sharp war upon the Cyrenians: but as he prepared to set forward this expedition, it fortuned that his mother departed this life: while therefore he was busie about her funeral, news came to *Cyrene*, how this King was highly displeased and resolved to levie war against them: whereupon *Polyarchus* thought good to address himselfe in person to the laid King, and to render a reason unto him of this late fact committed upon the body of *Laurebus*: neither would his sister *Eryxo* tarry behind, but follow him, and expoie her own person to the same peril that he entred into: yea, and the mother of them both, named *Critola* (very aged though she was) was right willing to go, and accompanied her son and daughter in this journey: now was she a great Lady, and most highly esteemed in this regard especially, that she was the sister in the whole blood to *Battus* the first of that name, surnamed the Happy. When they were arrived in *Egypt*, all other Lords and noble men of the Court approved well of that which they had done in this case: and *Amassi* him selfe infinitely commended the pudicity and magnanimity of dame *Eryxo*; and after he had honoured them with rich presents, and royally entertained them, he lent them all back (*Polyarchus* I mean, and the two Ladies) with his good grace and favour, to *Cyrene*.

## XENOCRITE.

*Xenocrite* a Lady of the City *Cumes*, deserveth no lesse to be praised and admired, for that which she practised against *Aristodemus* they rant, whom some think to have been surnamed *Malaco*, that is to say Soft and effeminate, in regard of his loose and dissolute carriage: but they are deceived and ignorant in the true originall and occasion of his name; for the Barbarians gave him this addition *Malaco*, which in their language signifieth a Yonker: because being a very youth, with other companions of equal age, as yet wearing their hair long, whom in old time they termed *Cromiste*, (of their black locks as it should seem) he above the rest, in the wars against the Barbarians, bare himselfe so bravely: (for he was not onely hardy and courageous in spirit, stout also, and tall of his hands, but withal full of wit, discretion and foresight, and so far excelled all others in singularity) that he became right famous and renowned: whereupon he grew into such credit and admiration among his country men and fellow Citizens, that incontinently promoted he was, and advanced by them to the greatest offices of State and highest dignities in Common-weale: inso much as when the *Tuskans* made war upon the *Romans* in the right and quarrel of *Tarquinius Superbus*, and namely, to restore him again to his Crown and Kingdom, from which he was deposed: the *Cumans* made him Captain General of those forces which they sent to aid the *Romans*: in which expedition and warfare that continued long, he carried himselfe so bravely among his Citizens (which were in the camp under his charge, and gave them so much the head to do what they would, winning their hearts by courtesies and flattery, rather than commanding them as their General) that he put into their heads, and perswaded them (upon their return home) to run upon the Senate, and to join with him in expelling and banishing the mightiest persons and best men of the City, By which practice he set up himselfe as an absolute tyrant: and as he seemed wicked and violent otherwise in all kind of oppression and extortion; so most of all he was outrageous, and went beyond himselfe in all

but such as were of any noble spirit and courage, it galled and pricked for very shame, yea, and gave them an edge to set in hand and enterprize some many act for to recover their freedom: which when *Xenocrite* heard, she said by report, that she would rather her selfe carry earth in a basket upon her own shoulders as others did, for her father, if he were there present, then participate in all delights and pleasures, yea, and enjoy great power and authority with *Aristodemus*. These and such like speeches caft out by her, confirmed those who were conspired and ready to rise against the Tyrant, of whom the Chieftaine and principal Leaders, was one *Themistocles*: unto these, conspirators *Xenocrite* gave free access and ready entry unto *Aristodemus*; who finding him alone, unarmed and unguarded, fell many at once upon him, and so quickly dispatched him out of the way. So how the City of *Cumes* was delivered from tyranny by two vertues of one woman: by the one she first gave the Citizens an affection, mind and heart, to begin and enterprize: and by the other she manifested unto them, means to execute and perform the same: for which good service of *Xenocrite*, those of the City offered unto her many honours, prerogatives, and presents: but she refused them all, only she requested this favour at their hands, that she might create the corps of *Aristodemus*, which they granted, and more then so, they choise her for to be a religious Priestresse unto *Ceres*, supposing that this dignity would be no lesse acceptable and pleasing unto the goddesse, then becoming and fitting the person of this Lady.

## The Wife of PYTHES.

It is reported moreover, that the wife of rich *Pythes*, in the days of *Xerxes* when he warred upon *Greece*, was a vertuous and wife dame: for this *Pythes* having (as it should seem) found certain mines of gold, and setting his mind thereon, not in measure, but excessively, and uncharitably, for the great sweetness and infinite gains that arose thereby: both himselfe in person bestowed his whole time therein, and also he employed all his Subjects and Citizens indifferently without respect of any person, to dig and delve, to carry, to purge, and cleanse the said gold Oare: not suffering them to follow any other trade, or exercise any occupation else in the world: upon which unmeasurable and incessant toile, many died, and all were weary, and grumbled thereat, inso much as at last their wives came with olive branches, like humble suppliants to the gate of this Lady his Wife, for to move pity, and beseech her for redresse and succor in this case: she having heard their supplication, sent them away home to their houses with very good and gracious words, willing them not to distrust and be discomfited: meane while she sent secretly for gold-smiths, goldsmiths, and other workmen in gold, such as she reposed most confidence in, and shurt them up close within a certain place, willing them to make loaves, pies, tarts, cakes, pastry works, and junks of all sorts, sweet meats, fruits, all manner of meats and viands, such as she knew her husband *Pythes* loved best, of cleane gold: afterwards, when all were made, and he returned home to his house (for as then he was abroad in a foreign country:) so soon as he called for supper, his wife set before him a table furnished with all kinds of counterfeite viands made of gold, without any thing at all, either good to be eaten or drunken, but all gold. and nothing but gold: great pleasure at the first took *Pythes* for to see so rich a sight, and so glorious a banquet, wherein art had so lively expressed nature: but after he had fed his eyes sufficiently with beholding these goodly golden works, he called unto her in good earnest for somewhat to eat: but she still whatsoever his mind stood to, brought it him in gold: so that in the end he waxed angry, and cried out, that he was ready to famish: Why sit (saith she) are not mine

the said river, in such fort, that as it passed, the stream might glide upon this monument of his which being prepared and done accordingly he went down quick and alive into the same (scilicet, having resigned over unto his wives hands, the City, and the whole seigniorie thereof: enjoining her thus much; that she should not approach her selfe unto this Tomb or Monument, but only every day once fend unto him, his supper in a little punt or boat down the riveret, and to continue this so long until the saw, that the said punt went beyond the monument, having in it all his vicualls whole and untouched: for then the said punt need not to fend him any more, but take this for an assured sign, that he was dead. Thus lived Pythias the rest of his dayes; but his wife governed and managed the State prudently, and wrought a great change and alteration in the toillome life of her people.

### A Consolatory Oration sent unto Apollonius upon the death of his Sonne.

#### The Summary.

Howsoever Plutarch in this Treatise hath displayed his eloquence and all the skill and helps that he had by the means of Philosophy, yet we see that the same is not sufficient to set the mind and spirit of man in true repose: and that such consolations are (as they say) but palliative cures and no better: wherein is discovered the want and default of light in the reason and wisdom of man: yet notwithstanding, take this withal, that such discourses do recommend and shew unto us so much the better, the excellency of celestial wisdom, which furnissheth us with true and assured remedies: and in stead of leaving the heart afflicted amid humane thoughts and considerations, raiseth and lifteth it up unto the justice, wisdom and bounty of the true God and Heavenly Father: it causeth it to see the estate of eternal life: it assureth of the soules immortality, of the resurrection of the body, (points of learning, wherein the Pagans were altogether ignorant) and of the permanent and everlasting joyes above, in the Kingdom of Heaven. Now albeit as this truth of God (revealed unto us in his sacred word) hath instructed and resolved us sufficiently, it will not be amiss, and impertinent, to learn of our Author and such others, those things which themselves did not well and thoroughly understand, neither in life, nor yet in death: for that the foundation failed them, and they missed the ground work indeed, and in cleaving and leaning to (I wot not what) fortune and sad destiny, they caused man to rest and stay himself upon a vain shadow of vertue, and willed him (in one word) to seek for consolation, where there was nothing but desolation for happinesse in misery, and for life in death. As touching the argument and contents of this Treatise: it is adorned it is with notable reasons, similitudes, examples and testimonies, the substance whereof is this: That Apollonius (unto whom it is addressed) ought not to be over pensive and heavy for the death of his son, deceased in the flower of his age. To meet and persuade him thereto, Plutarch after he had excused himself in that he wrote no sooner unto him, and shewed that space of time coming between, doth better prepare mens hearts, which sorrow and be in anguish, to receive comfort: he condemneth as well blockish and senselesse folk, as also those that be weaklings and over-tender in adversity. Which done, he entrencheth into a general review of the remedies which are appropriate to cure the miseries and afflictions of man: namely, that he ought to hold a meane, and to continue always like himselfe: to cast his eye and have regard upon the divers accidents of our life, and in enjoying the blessings thereof: to think upon future crosses and calamities: to be armed with reason for to bear all changes: to remember and carefully to thinke upon the estate of this mortal and transitory life: to consider the evils and miseries of the same: to endure patiently that which cannot be avoided and prevented with all the cares and lamentations that be: and to compare our own adversities with other mens. Then he proceedeth unto the particular consolations of those who are heavy and sorrowful for the death of their children, kindfolk, or friends: to wit: That there is no harm nor evil at all in death, but rather that it is a good thing, that the hour of it being uncertain, it is a comfort unto those whom it summoneth: who doubt would be cast down and overthrow with the apprehension of miseries to come, in case they had any foresight thereof. After this, he proveth at large by three inductions and arguments of Socrates that there is not any evil in death: which he confirmeth by divers examples: and then returning into his consolations, he maintaineth and holdeth: That whosoever die young, are most happy: that the consideration of Gods providence ought to retain and stay us: that we are not to mourn and lament for the dead, neither in regard of them nor of our selves: that since over-long heaviness and sorrow maketh a man miserable, it were very good for him to be rid and dispatched of that pain quickly. Having finished this point, he resolveth and assueth certain difficulties which are presented in these matters: and then taking in hand his purpose again, he reth and refrmeth the afflictions of the living, toward them that are departed: he reclaimeth them from persisting, and continuing obstinately in bewailing their absence, willing them rather to bewail the case of those who are living: and by many reasons doth prove and conclude, that they who die bein have one marvellous advantage above those that remain alive in the world. Then he teacheth a man to maintain and carry himselfe as he ought, in all affairs: to rejoyce those who can abide no pain and trouble: and

knitting

knitting up all the premises in few words: he adjoineth certain necessary and profitable counsel in such accidents: and before that he concludeth the whole treatise, he describeth the felicity of those whom death catcheth off in the prime of their years, having a special regard herein, to Apollonius the party unto whom he writeth, and assuring him by the recital of the good parts and vertues which were in his son lately departed, that he was without all question, in that place of repose and rest which the Poets do imagine. Upon which occasion betreath of the immortality of the soul, according to the doctrine of Plato and his followers, which is the very end and closing up of all that had been delivered before.

### A consolatory Oration sent unto Apollonius upon the death of his Sonne.

It is not newly come upon me now at this present and not before, to pity your case and lament in your behalle (O Apollonius) having heard long since (as I did) the heavy newes concerning the untimely death of your son, a young Gentleman singularly well beloved of us all, as who in that youth and tender years of his, shewed rare examples of wile carriage, stayed and modest behaviour, together with precise observance of those devout duties and just offices, which either pertained to the religious service of the gods, or were respective unto his parents and friends: for even from that time have I condoled with you, & had a fellow-feeling of your sorrow: but forme to have come then, and visited you immediately upon his decease and departure out of this world, to present you with an exhortation to bear patiently and as becometh a man, that unfortunate accident, had been an unfeeling part of mine and inconvenient, considering how in that very instant your mind and body both (overcharged with the insupportable burden of so strange and unexpected a calamity) were brought low and much imbeebled: and my selfe besides, much needs have needed you, felt part of your griefe, and forrowed with you for company: for even the best and most skilful Physicians, when they meet with violent rheumes and catarrhs, which suddenly surprize any part of the body, do not proceed at the first to a rough cure by purgative medicines, but permit this rage and hot impression of inflamed humours to grow of it selfe to maturity by application onely of supple oyles, mild liniments, and gentle fomentations. But now, that since your said misfortune, some time (which wile to ripen all things) is passed between, and given good opportunity, considering also, that the present disposition and state of your person seemeth to require the help and comfort of your friends, I thought it meet and requisite to impart unto you certain reasons and discourses consolatory, if happily by that means I may ease your anguish, mitigate your pensiveness, and stay your needlesse mourning and bootlesse lamentation: for why?

If mind be sick, what physick it be.  
But reasons fit for each disease?  
A wise man knoweth best season when  
To use those meanes, the heart to ease.

And according as the wile Poet Euripides saith:

Each grief of mind, each malady  
Doth crave a severall remedy:  
If restless sorrow the heart torment,  
Kind words of friends work much content:  
Where folly sways in every action,  
Great need there is of sharp correction.

For verily among so many passions and infirmities incident to the soul of man, dolor and heaviness be most irksome and goe neereft into it. By occasion of anguish many a one (they say) hath run mad and fallen into maladies incurable: yea, and for thought and hearts-grief, some have been driven to make away themselves. Now to sorrow and be touched to the quick for the losse of a son, is a passion that ariseth from a natural cause, and it is not in our power to avoid: which being so, I cannot (for my part) hold with them, who so highly praise and extol, I wot not what brutish, hard, and blockish indolence and stupidity, which if it were possible for a man to entertain, is not any way commodious and available. Certes, the same would bereave us of that mutual benevolence and sweet comfort which we find in the reciprocal interchange of loving others and being loved again: which (of all earthly blessings) we had most need to preserve and maintain. Yet do I not allow that a man should suffer himselfe to be transported and carried away beyond all compasse and measure, making no end of sorrow: for even that also is likewise unnatural, and proceedeth from a contempt and erroneous opinion that we have: and therefore, as we ought to abandon this excess as simply naught, hurtful, and not befitting virtuous and honest minded men: so in no wile must we disallow that mean and moderation in our passions, following in this point sage Crantor the Academicke Philosopher: I could wish (quoth he) that we might be never sick: howbeit, if we chance to fall into some disease, God send us yet some sense and feeling, in case any part of our body be either cut, plucked away, or dismembered in the cure. And I assure you, that senselesse impossibility is never incident unto a man, without some great mischief and inconvenience ensuing: for

lightly

lightly it falleth out, that when the body is in this case without feeling, the soule soon after will become as insensible: reason would therefore, that wise men in these and such like crosses, carry themselves, neither void of affections altogether, nor yet out of measure passionate: for as the one bewrayeth a fell and hard heart, resembling a cruel beast: so the other discovereth a soft and effeminate nature, becomming a tender woman: but best advised is he, who knoweth to keep a mean, and being guided by the rule of reason, hath the gift to bear wisely and indifferently, as well the flattering favours, as the frowning frowns of fortune, which are so ordinarily current in this life: having his forecast with himselfe: That like as in a free State, and popular government of a Common-wealth, where the election of sovereign magistrates passeth by lots: the one whole hap is to be chosen, must be a ruler and a commander: but the other who miseth, ought patiently to take his fortune, and bear the repulse: even so in the disposition and course of all our worldly affairs, we are to be content with our portion allotted unto us, and without grudging and complaint, gently to yeeld ourselves obedient: for surely they that cannot so do, would never be able with wisdom and moderation to wield any great prosperity: for of many wise speeches and well said sayes, this sentence may go for one:

*However fortune smile and look full fair,  
Be thou not proud nor bear a lofty mind:  
Ne yet cast down and plunge'd in deep despair,  
If that she frown or show her selfe unkind;  
But always one and quid same let man thus find,  
Constant and firm retain thy nature still,  
As gold in fire, which alter never will.*

For this is the property of a wise man and well brought up, both for any apparent shew of prosperity to be no changing, but to bear himselfe always in one sort; and also in adversity, with a generous and noble mind, to maintain that which is decent and becomming his own person: for the office of true wisdom and considerate discretion is, either to prevent and avoid a mischief comming, or to correct and reduce it to the least and narrowest compass when it is once come, or else to be prepared and ready to bear the same manfully, and with all magnanimity. For prudence, as touching that which we call good, is kept and employed four manner of ways: to-wit, in getting, in keeping, in augmenting, or in well and right using the same: these be the rules as well of prudence, as of other vertues, which we are to make use and benefit of in both fortunes, as well the one as the other: for according to the old Proverb,

*No man there is on earth above,  
In every thing well aged he shrieve;  
And verily*

*By course of nature, wretched it wrong in may be,  
That ought should check, fatal necessity:*

And as it falleth out in trees and other plants, that some yeares they bear their burden, and yeeld great store of fruit, whereas in others they bring forth none at all: also living creatures one whiles fruitful and breed many young, other whiles again, they be as barren for it: and in the sea it is now tempest, and then calme: semblably in this life there happen many circumstances and accidents, which wind and turn us into the chances of contrary fortunes: in regard of which variety, a man may by good right and reason, say thus:

*O Agamemnon, thy Father Atreus bee,  
Always to prosper hath not begotten thee:  
For in this life thou must have one day joy,  
Another, grief and wealth, mixt with annoy.  
And why? thou art by mortal nature fraille,  
Thy will against this cannot prove avayle:  
For so it is the plague of all the gods,  
To make this change, and work in man such odds.*

As also that which to the same effect the Poet Menander wrote in this wise:

*Sir, Trophimus, if you the only night  
Of women born, were brought into this light  
With priviledge, to have the world at will,  
To after no more, but prosper always still?  
Or if some god had made you such behest,  
To live in joy, in solace and in rest?  
To have just cause to save thus as you do,  
And chuse for that he from his word doth go,  
And hath done what he cannot justifie.  
But if so be, as truth will testifie:  
If dar one law this publick vintaire,  
You draw with us, your breath for to repair:  
I saye you (gravely in tragick stile)  
You ought to be more patient the while:  
To take all this in better words (I say)*

*Let reason rule, and stand for final pay,  
And to knit up in few words: Trophimus  
Of this discourse the sum: Treason thus:  
A man you are, that is as much to say)  
A creature more prompt and subject ay  
To sudden change, and from the pitch of blisse,  
To lie in pit, where eale and sorrow is,  
Than others all: and not unworthily:  
For why, most weak by his own nature, he  
Will needs himselfe in highest matters wrap,  
Above his reach, secure of after-clap:  
And then anon, he falling from on high,  
Bears down with him all good things: but were nigh:  
But as for you, the goods which heretofore  
O Trophimus you lost, exceeded not so more  
Than those mishaps which you this day sustaine  
Excessive be, but keep with him a meane:  
Henceforth therefore, you ought to beare the rest  
Indifferently, and you shall find it best.*

Howbeit, although the condition and estate of mens affaires stand in these rearmes, yet some there be, who for want of sound judgement and good discretion are grown to that blockish stupidity, or vaine over-weening of themselves, that after they be once a little raised up, and advanced, either in regard of excessive wealth, and store of gold and silver under their hands, or by reason of some great office, or for other previdence and preminence of high place which they hold in the Common-wealth: or else by occasion of honours and glorious titles which they have acquired, do menace, wrong and insult over their inferiours, never considering the uncertainty and inconstance of mutable fortune, nor how quickly that which was aloft may be flung down: and contrariwise, how soon that which lieth below on the ground may be extolled and lifted up on high by the sudden mutations and changes of fortune: to seeke for any certainty therefore in that which is by nature uncertaine and variable, is the part of those that judge not aright of things:

*For as the wheele doth turne, one part we see  
Off falls, high and low in course to bee.*

But to attaine unto this tranquillity of spirit, void of all griefe and anguish, the most soveraigne, powerful, and effectuall medicine, is reason: and by the means thereof, a prepared estate and resolution against all the changes and alterations of this life: neither is it sufficient for a man only to acknowledge himselfe to be by nature borne mortall: but also that he is allotted unto a mortall and transitory life, and tied as it were unto such affaires as soon do change from their present estate unto the contrary: for this also is most certaine, that as mens bodies be mortall and fraille, for their fortunes also, their passions and affections be flitting and momentary, yea, and in one word, all that belongeth unto them is transitory: which is not possible for him to avoid and escape, who is himselfe by nature mortall: but as Pindarus said:

*With masse weights of strong necessity,  
Of hell so dark to botome forc'd are we.*

Very well therefore said Demetrius Phalerus, whereas Euripides the Poet wrote thus:

*No worldly wealth is firme and sure,  
But for a day it doth endure.*

Also:

*How small things may our state quite overthrow!  
It falleth out (as every man doth know)  
That even one day is able down to cast*

All the rest (quoth he) was excellently by him written, but far better it had been, if he had named, not one day, but the minute, moment, and very point of an houre:

*For caribb fruits, and mortal mens estate,  
Turne round about in one and selfe same rate,  
Some live, some strong, and prosper day by day,  
While others are cast down and fade away.*

And Pindarus in another place:

*What is it for to be but one?  
Nay what is it to be just none?*

*And verily a man is made  
To be the dreame even of a shade.*

hath declared the vanity of mans life by using an Hyperbole or excessive manner of an over-reaching speech, both passing wittily, and also to the purpose most significantly. For what is there more weak and feeble than a shadow? but to come in with the fantastical dream of a shadow: surely it is not possible that any other man should expresse the thing that he meant, more lively and in fitter

tearmes. And verily, *Crant* or in good correspondence hereunto, when he comforteth *Hippocles* for the uncinely death of his children, useth these words among the rest: These are the rules (quoth he) that all the schoole throughout of ancient Philoſophy doth deliver and teach: wherein, if there be any point besides that we can admit and approve, yet this at leastwise is most undoubted true; that mans life is exceeding laborious and painfull: for say that in the own nature it be not such; so it is, that by our own selves it is brought to that corruption: besides, this uncertaine fortune haun- teth and attendeth upon us afar off, and even from our very cradle and swadling bands, yea, and ever since our first entrance into this life accompanieth us, for no good in the world.

To say nothing, how in all things whatsoever that breed and bud, there is evermore some por- tion more or lesse of naughtinesse inbred and mingled therewith; for the very naturall feed (which at the first, when it is at best, is mortall) doth participate this primitive cause, whereupon proceed the untoward inclination and disposition of the mind, maladies, cares, and sorrows; and from thence there creepe and grow upon us, all those fatall calamities that befall to mortall men. But what is the reason that we are digressed hitherto? forsooth, to this end, that we may know that it is no newes for any man to taste of miseries and calamities, but rather that we are all subject to the same: for (as *Theophrastus* saith) fortune never aimeth or levelleth at any certaine mark, but shooteth at random; taking much pleasure, and being very powerful to turne a man out of that which he hath painfully gotten before, and to overthrow a supposed and reputed felicity, without regard of anyone let and prefixed time to worke this feat. These reasons, and many other such like, every one of us may easi- ly consider and ponder within himselfe; yea, and besides, lay thereto the sage speeches (which he is ay to heare and learne) of ancient and wise men: among whom the chiefe and principall is that heavenly and divine Poet *Homer*, who saith us:

*More weak than man, there is no creature  
That from the earth receiveth nurture:  
So long as limbs with strength he can advance,  
And while the gods do lend him puissance,  
He thinks no harme will ever him befall,  
He casts no doubt, but hopes to ongo all:  
But let them once from heaven some sorrows send,  
Maugre the smart, he beares unto the end.*

Also:  
*Such minds have men, who here on earth do live,  
As Jupiter from heaven doth daily give,  
And in another place:  
Why aske you of my blood and parentage?  
Sir Tydeus son, a knight magnanimous,  
To leaves of trees much like is mans lineage:  
Leaves some blown down by wind outrageous  
Lie shed on ground, and others, numerous,  
Bud fresh in wood, when pleasant spring doth call:  
Mens houses so, some rise and others fall.*

Now that this similitude or comparison of tree-leaves fitly exprest and represented the transito- ry vanity of mans life, it appeareth evidently by those verses which he wrote in another place:

*You would not say that I were wise if I did armour take  
To fight with you, in wr etched mens behalfe, and for their sake,  
Who much resemble leaves at first, faire in their fresh verdure,  
So long as they of earthly fruits do feed for nurture:  
And afterward be like to them, withered and dead againe,  
When humour radieall is spent, and no strength doth remaine.*

*Simonides*, the Lyricall Poet, when as *Pausanias* King of *Lacedamon* (bearing himselfe high, and vaunting of his brave exploits) bad him (upon a time by way of mockery) to give unto him some sage precept and good advertisement: (knowing full well the pride and over-weening spirit of the said Prince) counselled him only to call to mind, and remember, That he was but a man. *Philip* likewise, King of *Macedon*, hearing news in one and the same day, of three severall happy successles: the first, That he had won the prize, at the great running of chariots drawn with horses, in the solemnity of the Olympick games; the second, How his Lieutenant General, *Parmenio*, had defeated the *Dardaniens* in battell; and the third, That his wife *Olympias* was delivered safe of a jolly son: lifted up his hands towards heaven, and said, O fortune, I beseech thee to send unto me in counter- change, some moderate adversity: as knowing full well, that she bare spite and envy alwayes to great felicities. Semblably, *Theramenes* one of the thirty tyrants of *Athens*, at what time as the house wherein he supped with many others fell down, and he alone escaped safe out of that danger- ous ruine, when all others reputed him an happy man, cried out with a loud voice: O fortune, for what occasion of misfortune reservest thou me? And verily within few daies after, it hapned that his owne companions in government cast him in prison, and after much torture, put him to death. Moreover, it seemeth unto me, that the Poet *Homer* deserveth singular praise in this mat- ter of consolation, when he bringeth in *Achilles* speaking of King *Priamus* (being come unto him

in for to ransom and redeeme the corps of his son *Hektor*) in this wise: *How should I then be glad to see thee  
Come on therefore and here sit down, by me upon this throne,  
Let be all plaints, forbear we thus to weep, to sigh and grone,  
And though our griefes be heavy, be much better in the same represses,  
For why? no teares will on us prevail, nor help us in distress:  
To live in paines and sorrows great men are predestinate,  
By gods above, and they alone dwell ay in blessed state,  
Exempt from cares and discontents, for in the envie-fill  
Of Jove his house in heaven abides, so true are standing still,  
Whereout he doth among men deale such gifts as they containe,  
In one good blessinges are bestowed, in the other curse and paine:  
Now he to whom great Jupiter vouchsafes of both to give,  
Sometime in joy, and otherwhiles in heaviness he shall live:  
But if a man be only from that cursed vefall freed,  
With shame, with want, and penury he is full ill beset,  
He shall be sure upon the earth to wander and to stray,  
In much disgrace with God and man until his dying day.*

The Poet who came after him both in order of time, and also in credit and reputation, *Hesiodus*, al- though he taketh upon himselfe the honour to have been a disciple of the Muses, having as well as the other included the miseries and calamities of mankind within one tune; writeth that *Pandora* in open- ing it, let them abroad in great quantity, and spred them over all lands and seas, saying in this man- ner:

*No sooner then this woman took, the great lid from her tun,  
With both her hands, but all abroad she scattered anon,  
A world of plagues and miseries: thus mischiefs manifold  
She wrought thereby to mortall men on earth both young and old:  
Hope only did remaine behind, and flew not all abroad,  
But underneath the upmost brim and edge it still abode,  
For why, before it could get forth she lid she clopt to fast:  
When other evils infinite were flown from first to last:  
Full was the earth of sundry plagues, full was the sea likewise,  
Discaſes then and maladies from day to day did rise  
Among mankind, and those by night do walke and creep by stealth,  
All suddenly without cause known, and do impeach mans health,  
Uncall'd they come, in silence deep they make not any noise,  
For Jupiter in wisdom great, bereft them all of voice.*

To these sayings and sentences the comick Poet according well, as touching those who torment themselves by occasion of such misfortunes when they happen, writeth thus:

*If teares could cure and heale all our discaſes,  
Or weeping stay at once our paines and griefes,  
We would our gold exchange for teares, to ease  
Our maladies, and so procure reliefe:  
But (Moffer) now teares with them beare no sway,  
Nor ought prevail, for weep we, or weep not,  
They hold their course, and still keep on their way,  
So that we see by plaints nothing is got:  
What gainst we then? nought, sir, yet give me care,  
Griefe brings forth teares, we weep their fruit do beare.*

And *Distich* when he comforted *Danae*, who sorrowed overmuch for the death of her son, spake uni- to her in this manner:

*Think you that Pluto doth your teares regard,  
And will for sighs and grones your son back send?  
No, no, cease you to sob and weep so hard,  
Your neighbours case make rather and intend:  
Heart's ease will come, if that you call to mind,  
How many men have died in danger deep?  
Or waxen old bereft of childrens kind,  
Or princely state and port who could not keep,  
But fell to base degrees: consider this,  
And make right use, it will you help with.*

He giveth her counsell to consider the examples of those who have been more or lesse unfortunate than her selfe, as if the comparing of their condition might serve her turne very well, the better to endure her own calamity. And hereto may a man very pertinently draw and apply the saying of *Socrates*, who was of opinion: that if we laid forth all our adversities and misfortunes in one com- mon heap with this condition, that each one should carry out of it an equal portion: most men would wish and be glad to take up their own and go away with all. The Poet *Antimachus* also used the like induction, after that his wife whom he loved so entirely, was departed; for whereas her name

was Lyde, he for his own consolation in that sorrow of his, composed an Elegy or lamentable ditty, which he called *Lyde*, wherein he collected all the calamities and misfortunes which hapned in old time to great Princes and Kings, making his own dolour and griefe the lesse, by comparing it with other miseries more grievous: whereby it is apparant, that he who comforteth another, whose heart is afflicted with sorrow and anguish, (giving him to understand that his infortunity is common to more besides him, by laying before his face the fensible accidents which have befallen to others,) changeth in him the sense and opinion of his own grievance, and imprinteth in him a certaine letted perswasion, that his misfortune is nothing so great as he deemed it to be before.

*Æschylus* likewise seemeth with very great reason to reprove those who imagine that death is naught, saying in this wise:

*How wrongfully have men death in disdain,  
Of many evils the remedy foreraign;*

For in imitation of him, right well said he whoesoever was the author of this sentence:

*Come death to cure my painfull malady,  
The only leech that bringeth remedy;  
For hell is th' haven for worlds calamity,  
And barbour sure in all extremity.*

And verily, a great matter it is, to be able for to say boldly and with confidence:

*How can he be a slave justly,  
Who careth not at all to die?*

As also:

*If death me help in my hard plight,  
No spirits nor ghosts shall me affright.*

For what hurt is there in death? And what is it that should to trouble and molest us when we die? A strange case this is, and I cannot see how it cometh to passe, that being so well known, so ordinarily, familiar, and naturall unto us as it is, yet it should seeme so painfull and dolorous unto us. For what wonder is it, if that be lit or cut, which naturall is given to cleave? If that melt, which is apt to be molten? If that burne, which is subject to take fire? or if that perishe and rot, which by nature is corruptible? and when is it that death is not in our selves? for according as *Heraclitus* saith, quick and dead is all one; to awake and to sleep is the same; in young and old there is no difference: considering that these things turne one into another, and as one passeth, the other cometh in place: much after the manner of an image or potter, who of one masse of clay is able to give the forme and shape of living creatures, and to turne the same into a rude lump, as it was before; he can fashion it at his pleasure, and confound all together, as he list: thus it lyeth in his power to do and undo, to make and mar, as often as he will, one after another, incessantly; fensibly, nature of the selfe-same matter framed in times past our ancestors and grandfathers, and consequently, afterwards brought forth our fathers; then the made us; and in processe of time will of us ingender others; and so proceed still to further posterity: in such sort, that as the current (as it were) of our generation will never stay, so the stream also of our corruption will run on still, and be perpetuall; whether it be the river *Acheron* or *Coxytus*, as the Poets call them; whereof the one signifieth privation of joy, and the other betokeneth lamentation. And even so, that first and principall cause which made us to live and see the light of the sun, the same bringeth us to death and to the darknesse of hell. And hereof we may see an evident demonstration and resemblance, by the very aire that compasseth us round about: which in alternative course and by turnes representeth unto us the day, and afterwards the night: it induceth us to a similitude of life and death, of waking and sleeping; and therefore, by good right is life called a fatall debt, which we must duly satisfie, and be acquit of: for our forefathers entred into it first; and we are to repay it willingly, without grumbling, fighting, and quarrelling, whensoever the creditor calleth for it: unless we would be reputed unthankfull and unjust. And verily, I believe that nature seeing the uncertainty and shortnesse of our life, would that the end thereof and the presthed houre of death should be hidden from us, for that she knew it good and expedient for us to be: for if it had been fore-known of us, some (no doubt) would have languished and fallen away before with griefe and sorrow: dead they would have been before their death came. Consider now the troubles and sorrows of this life; how many cares and crosses it is subject unto: Certes, if we went about to reckon and number them, we would condemne it as most unhappy, yea, we would verifie and approve that strong opinion which some have held: That it were far better for a man to die than to live; and therefore said the Poet *Simmides*:

*Full feeble is all humane puissance:  
Vaine is our care and painfull vigilance:*

*And life is even a short passage:  
Made upon paine is his arravage.*

*And then comes death to his parting home,  
So fierce, so cruel, without pardon:*

*Over our heads it doth depend,  
And threats alike, that do spend*

*Their yeares in vaine and goodnessse,  
As in all sin and wickednesse.*

Likewise

Likewise *Pindarus*:

*For blessing one which men obtaine,  
The gods ordaine them curses twaine,  
And those they cannot wisely beare,  
Fooler as they be, and will not beare.*

Or thus:

*They cannot reach to life immortal,  
Nor yet endure that which is mortall,*

And *Sophocles*:

*Of mortall men when one is dead,  
Dost thine heart groan, and eye teares shed;  
Not knowing once what future gaine  
May come to him devoid of paine?*

As for *Euripides*, thus he saith:

*In all thy knowledge canst thou find  
The true condition of mankind?  
I thinke well, No: For whence should come  
Such knowledge deep, to all or some?  
Give care, and thou shalt learne of me  
The skill thereof, in verity:  
All men ordain dare once to die,  
The debt is due, and paid must be:  
But no man know's if morrow next,  
Unto his daies shall be annex:  
And whither fortune bends her way,  
Who can fore-see, and justly say?*

If be so then, that the condition of mans life is such indeed as these great clerks have delivered and described unto us: is it not more reason to repute them blessed and happy, who are freed from that servitude which they were subject to therein, than to deplore and lament their estate, as the most part of men do, through folly and ignorance? Wife *Socrates* said, that death resembled for all the world, either a most deep and sound sleep, or a voyage far remote into forraine parts, in which a man is long absent from his native Countrey: or else thirdly, an utter abolition and final dissolution both of soule and body. Now take which of these three you will, according to him, there is no harme at all in death: for thus he discourseth through them well, and beginning at the first, in this wife he reasoneth: If death (quoth he) be a kind of sleep, and those that sleepe be no ill; we must needs confesse likewise, that the dead have no sense at all of harme: neither is it necessary to go in hand to prove, that the deepest sleep is also the sweetest, and most pleasurable; for the thing it selfe is plaine and evident to all the world. To say nothing of *Homer's* testimony, who speaking of sleepe writeth thus:

*Most sweetly doth a man sleep in his bed,  
When leif he wakes, and seems most to be dead.*

The same he iterateth in many places; and namely, once in this wise:

*With pleasance sleep she there did meet,  
Deaths brother german upon may meet.*

And againe:

*Death and sleep are sister and brothers;  
Both twins resembling one another.*

Where by the way he lively declareth their similitude, and calling them twins; for that brothers and sisters twins for the most part be very like; and in another place besides, he calleth death a brazen sleep: giving us thereby to understand, how senselesse death is: neither seemeth he unelegantly and besides the purpose, whoesoever he was, to have expressed as much in this verse, when he said:

*That sleep (who doth them well advise)  
Of death are petty mysteries.*

And in very deed, sleep doth represent (as it were) a pteambel, inducement, or first profession toward death: in like manner also the cynick Philosopher *Diogenes* said very wisely to this point, for being surpris'd and overtaken with a dead sleep, a little before he yeelded up the ghost, when the Physician wakned him, and demanded what extraordinary symptome or grievous accident was befallen unto him? None (quoth he) only one brother is come before another, to wit, sleep before death: and thus much of the first resemblance.

Now if death be like unto a far journey or long pilgrimage, yet even so, there is no evil at all therein, but rather good, which is clean contrary: for to be in servitude no longer unto the flesh, nor enthrall'd to the passions thereof; which seizing upon the soule, do impeach the same, and fill it with all follies and mortall vanities, is no doubt a great blessednesse and felicity: for as *Plato* saith: The body bringeth upon us an infinite number of troubles and hinderances about the necessary maintenance of it selfe; and in case there be any maladies besides, they divert and turne us cleane away from the inquisition and contemplation of the truth; and instead thereof, pester and stuffe



us full of wanton loves, of lusts, fears, foolish fancies, imaginations, and vanities of all sorts: in much, as it is most true which is commonly said: That from the body there cometh no good, neither nor wisdom at all. For what else bringeth upon us wars, seditions, battels and fights, but the body and the greedy appetites and lusts proceeding from it: for to say a truth, from whence arise all wars, but from the covetous desire of money, and having more goods: neither are we driven to purchase and gather still; but only for to entertaine the body, and serve the turn thereof: and whiles we are amused and employed thereabout, we have no time to study Philosophy: finally (which is the worst and very extremity of all) in case we find some leisure to follow our book, and enter into the study and contemplation of things, this body of ours at all times and in every place is ready to interrupt and put us out: it troubleth, it impeacheth, and so disquieteth us, that impossible it is to attaine unto the perfect sight and knowledge of the truth: whereby it is apparant and manifest, that if ever we would clearly and purely know any thing, we ought to be sequestred and delivered from this body: and by the eyes only of the mind, contemplate and view things as they be: then shall we have that which we desire and wish: then shall we attaine to that which we say we love, to wit, wisdom. even when we are dead, as reason teacheth us, and not so long as we remaine alive: for if it cannot be, that together with the body we should know any thing purely: one of these two things must of necessity eniue, that either never at all, or else after death we should attaine unto that knowledge: for then and not before the soule shall be apart, and separate from the body: and during our life time, so much nearer shall we be unto this knowledge, by how much lesse we participate with the body, and have little or nothing to do therewith, no more than very necessity doth require: nor be filled with the corrupt nature thereof, but pure and neat from all such contagion, untill such time as God himselfe free us quite from it: and then being fully cleared and delivered from all fleshly and bodily follies, we shall converse with them and such like pure intelligences, seeing evidently of our selves all that which is pure and sincere, to wit, truth it selfe: for unawfull it is and not allowable that a pure thing should be infected or once touched by that which is impure: and therefore say that death seeme to translate men into some other place, yet is it nothing ill in that respect, but good rather, as *Plato* hath very well proved by demonstration in which regard, *Socrates* in my conceit spake most heavenly and divinely unto the Judges, when he said: My Lords, to be afraid of death is nothing else but to seeme wise when a man is nothing lesse, and it is as much as to make semblance of knowing that which he is most ignorant of: for who wotteth certainly what is death? Or whether it be the greatest felicity that may happen to a man? Yet men do feare and dread it, as if they knew for certainty, that it is the greatest evil in the world. To these sage sentences he accordeth well who said thus,

*Let no man stand in doubt and feare of death,  
Since from all travells in him d liuereth.*

And not from travells only, but also from the greatest miseries in the world: whereunto it seemeth, that the very gods themselves give testimony: for we read that many men in recompence of their religion and devotion have received death, as a singular gift and favour of the gods. But to avoid tedious prolixity, I will forbear to write of others, and content my selfe with making mention of those only who are most renowned and voiced by every mans mouth: and in the first place rehearse I will the history of those two young Gentlemen of *Argos*, namely, *Cleobis* and *Biton*: of whom there goeth this report: That their mother being Priestesse to *Juno*, when the time was come that she should present her selfe in the Temple, and the Mules that were to draw her coach thither, not in readinesse, but making stay behind: they seeing her driven to that exigent, and fearing lest the houre should passe, underwent themselves the yoke, and drew their mother in the Coach to the said temple: she being much pleased, and taking exceeding joy to see so great piety and kindnes in her children, prayed unto the goddesse, that she would vouchsafe to give them the best gift that could befall man: and they the same night following, being gone to bed for to sleep, never rose againe: for that the goddesse sent unto them death, as the only recompence and reward of their godlinesse. *Pindarus* also writeth as touching *Agamedes* and *Trochonus*, That after they had built the Temple of *Apollo* in *Delfos*, they demanded of that god their hire and reward: who promised to pay them fully at the seven-nights end: meane while he had them be merry and make good cheere: who did as he enjoyed them: so upon the seventh-night following they took their sleep, but the next morning they were found dead in bed. Moreover it is reported, that when *Pindarus* himselfe gave order unto the Commissioners that were sent from the State of *Baotia* unto the Oracle of *Apollon* to demand what was best for man? this answer was returned from the Prophetesse: That he who enjoyed them that errand, was not ignorant thereof, in case the history of *Agamedes* and *Trochonus* (whereof he was author) were true: but if he were disposed to make further triall, he should himselfe see shortly an evident prooffe thereof: *Pindarus* when he heard this answer, began to think of death, and to prepare himselfe to dye: and in truth, withina little while after changed his life. The like narration is related of one *Euthynus* an Italian, who was son to *Elysus* of *Terina*, for vertue, wealth, and reputation, a principall man in that City, namely, that he died suddenly, without any apparent cause that could be given thereof: his father *Elysus*, incontinently thereupon, began to grow into some doubt (as any other man besides would have done) whether it might not be, that he died of poyson, for that he was the only child he had, and heire apparant to all his riches: and not knowing otherwise how to found the truth, he went out to a certaine Oracle, which used to give answer by the conjuration and calling forth of spirits or ghosts of men departed: where (after

he had performed sacrifices and other ceremoniall devotions according as the Law required) he layed him down to sleep in the place, where he dreamed, and saw this vision: There appeared unto him (as he thought) his own father, whom when he saw, he discouered unto him what had fortune to his son, requestling and beseeching him to be assitant with him to find out the truth, and the cause indeed of his sudden death: his father then should answer thus: And even therefore am I come hither: here therefore receive at this mans hands that certificate which I have brought unto thee, for thereby shalt thou know all the cause of thy griefe and sorrow: now the party whom his father shewed and presented unto him, was a young man that followed after him, who for all the world in stature and yeares resembled his son *Euthynus*: who being demanded by him, what he was (Made this answer: I am the ghost or angel of your son: and with that offered unto him a little rowle or letter: which when *Elysus* had unfolded, he found written within it these three verses:

*Ἦσαν φησὶς ἡρώδης ἑβρας ἀνδρῶν.  
Εὐθύνης ὁ κείρας ποσειδῶν δαδρῶν.  
\*Οὐκ τὴν γὰρ ζώντων ἀντὶ καλῶν ἔτι γονεῶν.*

Which may be done into English thus:

*Elysus I thou foolish man, aske Ioving Sages read,  
Euthynus by fate all cause of a sinners life is dead:  
For longer life would neither him nor parents stand in stead.*

And thus much may suffice you, both as touching the ancient histories written of this matter, and also of the second point of the forelaid question.

But to come unto the third branch of *Socrates* his conjecture: admit it were true, that death is the utter abolition and destruction as well of soules body: yet even so, it cannot be reckoned simply ill: for by that reckoning there should follow a privation of all sense, and a generall deliverance from paine, anxiety, and anguish: and like as there cometh no good thereby, even so, no harme at all can eniue upon it: forasmuch as good and evil have no being, but in that thing only which hath essence and subsistence, and the same reason there is of the one as of the other: so as in that which is not, but utterly becometh void, annulled, and taken quite out of the world, there cannot be imagined either the one or the other. Now this is certaine, that by this reason the dead returne to the same estate and condition wherein they were before their nativity: like as therefore, when we were unborn, we had no sense at all of good or evil: no more shall we have after our departure out of this life: and as those things which preceded our time, nothing concerned us: so whatsoever hapneth after our death shall touch us as little.

*No paine feele they that out of world be gone:  
To dye, and not be borne, I hold all one.*

For the same state and condition is after death, which was before birth. And do you thinke that there is any difference between, Never to have been, and to cease from being? Surely they differ no more than either an house, or a garment, in respect of us and our use thereof after the one is ruined or fallen down, and the other all rent and torn, from that benefit which we had by them before they were begun to be built or made: and if you say, there is no difference in them in these regards: as little there is be you sure between our estate after death, and our condition before our nativity: a very pretty and elegant speech therefore it was of *Arceflaus* the Philosopher when he said: This death (quoth he) which every man reameth evil, hath one peculiar property by it selfe, of all other things that be accounted ill: in that when it is present, it never harmeth any man: only whiles it is absent and in expectation it hurteth folk. And in very truth, many men through their folly and weakness, and upon certaine slanderous calumniationes and false surmises conceived against death, suffer themselves to die, because (forsooth) they would not die. Very well therefore and aptly wrote the Poet *Epicharmus* in these words:

*That which was knit and joynd fast,  
Is loosed and dissolv'd at last:  
Each thing returns into the same,  
Earth into earth, from whence it came:  
The spirit up to heaven anon:  
Wherefore what harme herein? just none.*

And as for that which *Cresphontes* in one place of *Euripides*, speaking of *Hercules* said:

*If under globe of earth, with those he dwelt,  
Being none have left, laid once in grave:  
A man of him might say, and that right well,  
That puissance and strength be none can have.*

By altering it a little in the end, you may thus infer:

*If under globe of earth with those he dwell,  
Who being none, have left, laid once in grave:  
A man of him might say, and that right well,  
That sense at all of paine, he can none have.*

Agenerous and noble saying also was that of the *Lacedaemonians*:

*Now are we in our gallant prime,  
Before as others had their time,*

*These verses be imperfect, and it seemeth that Cicero, Tullius, in translating this little verse, read it thus: Ἦσαν ἑβρας ἡρώδης ἀνδρῶν.*

And as for us shall others flower,  
But we shall never see that hour.  
As also this:

Now dead are they who never thought,  
That life or death were simple ought:  
But all their care was for to dy  
And live as they should, honestly.

Right excellent also are those verses of Euripides, as touching them who endure long maladies:

I hate all those by meat and drink,  
Who to prolong their dates do think:  
By Magick art and sorcery,  
The course of death who turne away.  
Whereas they should be glad and faine,  
When at they see it is but vaine  
Of earth to live upon the face,  
For younger than to quit the place.

As for *Merope* in pronouncing these manlike and magnanimous words, she moveth the whole theatre to this consideration of her speeches, when she saith;

I am not th' only mother left,  
Who of faire children am bereft:  
Nor yet a widow am I alone,  
Who my deare husband have forgone:  
For others infinite there be,  
Who have felt like calamities.

Unto this, a man may very aptly adjoine these verses also:

What is become of that magnificence?  
Where is King Cæsus with his opulence?  
Or Xerxes, he whose monstrous works it was,  
By bridge, the firm of Hellespont to pass?  
To Pluto now they are for ever gone,  
To houses of most deep oblivion.

Their goods, and their wealth, together with their bodies are perished; howbeit, believe me, some will say: many are moved perforce to weep and lament, when they see a young person die before due time; and yet I assure you, this hasty and untimely death admitteth so ready consolation, that even the meanest and most vulgar comical Poets have seen into the thing, and devised good means, and effectual reasons of comfort: for consider what one of them saith in this case, to him that mourned and lamented for the untimely and unseasonable death of a friend of his, in these words:

If thou hadst known for certain, that thy friend  
Who now is dead, should have been blessed ay,  
Throughout that course of life which was behind,  
In case the gods had said his dying day,  
His death had been untimely, I would say:  
But if long life, should bring him griefs incurable,  
To him haply was death, than thou more favourable.

Seeing then uncertaine it is whether the issue and end of this life will be expedient unto a man; and whether he shall be delivered and excused thereby from greater evils, or no; we ought not to take ones death so heavily, as if we had utterly lost all those things which we hoped for, and promised our selves by his life to enjoy; and therefore methinks that *Amphiaras* in a certaine Tragedy of a Poet, did not impertinently and without good purpose comfort the mother of *Archemorus*, who took it to the heart, and grieved exceedingly, that her son a young infant died so long before the ordinary time: for thus he saith unto her:

No man there is of womans body born,  
But in his dates much travell he hath borne:  
Children some die the parents long before,  
And are by them entred: then they reare  
And get young babes, for those that buried were:  
Lestly, themselves into the graves do fall,  
This is the course, this is the end of all,  
Yet men for them do weep and sorrow make,  
Whose bodies they on biers to earth do take,  
Although in truth a way direct they take,  
As eares of corn full ripe, which downward bend,  
As some begin, so others make an end,  
Why should men grieve and sigh at natures love?  
What must I shall be thinking it not hard therefore.

In sum, every man ought both in meditation within himselfe, and in earnest discourse also with others,

others, to hold this for certaine; that the longest life is not best, but rather the most vertuous: for neither he that plaith most upon a lute or citerne, is commended for the cunningest musician; no more than he who pleadeth longest, is held the most eloquent Orator; nor he that sitteth continually at the helme is praised for the best Pilot; but they that do best, deserve the greatest commendation: for we are not to measure goodnesse by the length of time, but by vertue, by convenient proportion and measure of all words and deeds: for this is that amiable beauty which is esteemed happy in this world, and pleasing to the gods: which is the reason that the Poets have left unto us in writing that the most excellent worthies or demy gods, and such (as by their laying) were begotten by gods, changed this their mortall life, and departed before they were old: for even he

Who was of mighty Jupiter, and Phœbus loved best,  
Permitted was not long to live, and in old age to rest.

For this we alwaies see, that ordinarily the maturity of yeares, and the same well employed, is preferred before old age and long life: for thus we repute those trees and plants best, which in least time beare most fruit: as also those living creatures which in little space yeeld greatest profit and commodity to mans life: furthermore, little difference you shall find between short time and long, in companion of eternity: for that a thousand, yea, and ten thousand yeares according to *Simonides*, are no more than a very prick, or rather the smallest indivisible portion of a prick, in respect of that which is infinite. We read in histories that there be certaine living creatures about the land of *Pontus*, whose life is comprized within the compass of one day; for in the morning they are bred, by noone they are in their vigour and at beitt, and in the evening they are old, and end their lives: would not these creatures thinke you, if they had the soule of man, and that use of reason which we have, feeble the very same passions that we do, if the like accidents befell unto them? Certes, those that died before noone, would minister occasion of mourning and weeping: but such as continued all day long should be reputed happy. Well, our life should be measured by vertue, and not by continuance of time; so that we are to esteeme such exclamations as these, foolish, and full of vanity: Oh, great great pittie, that he was taken away so young; it ought not to have been that he should dye yet: and who is he that dare say: This or that ought? But many things else have beene, and shall be done hereafter, which some man might say, ought not to have beene done: howbeit, come we are not into this life for to prescribe Laws, but rather to obey those Laws which are decreed and set down already by the gods, who governe the world, and the ordinances of destiny and divine providence.

But to proceed, those who so much deplore and lament the dead, do they it for love of themselves, or for their sake who are departed? If in regard of their own selves, for that they find how they are deprived of some pleasure or profit, or else disappointed of support in their old age, which they hoped to receive by those who are departed? Surely this were but a small occasion, and no honest pretence of lamentation; for that it seemeth they bewaile not the dead persons, but the losse of those commodities which they expected from them: but in case they grieve in the behalfe of those that be gone out of this world, soon will they shake off their sorrow, if they be perswaded and beleve, that after death they feele no ill: and obey they will that ancient and wise sentence, which teacheth us to extend as much as we can all good things, but to draw in and restraime those that be ill: now if sorrow is to be counted good, we ought to augment and encrease the same as much as possibly we can: but if we acknowledge it (as it is indeed) to be naught, we are to shorten and diminish it, as much as we may, yea and to abolish it quite, if it lie in our power: and that this may be easily effected, it appeareth by the precedent of such a consolation as this: We read that a certaine ancient Philosopher went upon a time to visit Queen *Arfine*, who mourned and lamented much for a son of hers lately departed this life: and to her he used these or such like words: Madam, at what time as *Jupiter* dealt among the petty gods, goddesses, and other heavenly wights, certaine honours and dignities, it chanced that dame *Sorrow* was not present among the rest: but after that the distribution and dole was made, the also came in place and presented her selfe, craving of *Jupiter* her part of honour as well as the other: *Jupiter* being thus driven to his shifts, for that he had divided and given away all before, not having any thing else to bestow, gave unto her the honour which is done unto those that be departed this life, to wit, teares, plaints, and lamentations: as other petty gods and goddesses therefore, love those who honour them, and none else; even so (good Lady) *Sorrow* (if you make not much of her, and give her divine honour) will not come neare unto you: but in case you worship and honour her dutifully with those prerogatives which he allotted unto her, to wit, weeping, wailing, and lamentations, she will affect and love you, she will haunt you, yea, she will always minister matter unto you, that she may be continually honoured by you. This device of the Philosopher wonderfully wrought with the woman, and perswaded her in such sort, as she staid her plaints, gave over her weeping, and cast off all her sorrow.

In one word a man may deale in this wise with one that is in sorrow, and demand of him: Whether art thou minded one day to cease this mourning, and make an end of pitious lamentation? or to persist still in afflicting and tormenting thy selfe as long as thou livest? For if thou continue all thy life time in this dolorous anguish, thou wilt procure and bring upon thy selfe perfect misery and infelicity in the highest degree, through thy effeminate softnesse and feeblenesse of heart: but if thou meanest at the length to change this fit, and to lay all mourning aside, why dost not thou begin betimes, and resolve out of hand, to be delivered from this misery at once? for look what reasons

and

and meane thou art to use hereafter, for to be freed from these paines and perplexities; by the help of the same thou maist presently be quit of this unhappy plight and state wherein thou art. And as it faileth in our bodies, the sooner that we rid away the crasse indispositions and maladies thereof, the better it is for us; even so it is in the diseases and passions of the soule; that therefore, which thou art minded and disposed to yeeld unto long time, give forthwith unto reason, unto literature and knowledge; discharge thy selfe (I say, and that with speed) of these calamities which now environ and compass thee round about. But haply you will say, I never thought that this would have befallen unto me, neither did I so much as doubt any such thing: yea, but you ought to call doubts afore-hand; you should long time before have considered and meditated of the vanity, weaknesse and instability of mans affaires; by which meane you had not been surprised as you are, nor taken to unprovided, as by some sudden incursion of enemies. Very well and wisely therefore it seemeth, that noble *Theſeus* in *Euclid*: was prepared and armed against all such accidents of fortune, when he thus said:

*According as a wise man once me taught,  
I did in mind all miseries fore-cast;  
And namely, how I might be over-caught  
With bitter sighs; and not to sit so fast  
In native soile, but fore-doe fly at last:  
Untimely death of wife, of child, of friend,  
How soone might hap, full crosse unto my mind.  
In sum, I did misfortunes manifold  
Ere I some people and set before mine eyes,  
To be end that I acquainted thus of old  
With such fore-casts, might some learne to despise,  
And sit nought by adverse calamities:  
For no mischance, or fortune overthwart,  
Could now be strange, and nip me to the heart.*

But those who are effeminate, base-minded, and not exercised before-hand in such premeditations, never pluck up their spirits, nor let their minds to deliberate and consult as touching any honest or profitable course; but suffer themselves to breake out into extremities and meries remediless, afflicting and punishing their harmelesse bodies, and as *Alceus* was wont to say, forcing them to be sick with them for company, which ailed nought before. And therefore *Plato* (in my conceit) gave a very wise admonition: That in such casualties and mischances as these, we should be quiet; as well for that it is uncertain whether it be good or ill for them whose death we seeme to lament; as also, because there can no good ensue unto us by such penitence and sorrow: for this is certain, That as sage consultation in a mans selfe (as touching that which is hapned already) doth move sorrow; so griefe impeacheth wile counsell, which would have a man to employ and accommodate all his affaires and occurrences the best way he can; like as in playing at the tables, to dispute so of his cast and chance whatsoever, as may most serve to win the game.

If it be our hap therefore, to stumble and catch a fall, by the crooked aspect of adverse fortune, we must not do as little children, who laying their hands upon that part which is hurt, fall a pulling or setting up a cry; but apply our minds presently to seek for remedy; to set that upright, which is fallen; to rectifie that which is out of frame, by help of good medicines; and in one word, to put away all moanes and lamentations.

Certes, it is reported, that he (whosever he was) that set downe Laws and Statutes to the Lycians ordained expressly; That whensoever they were disposed to mourne and lament, they should be araid in womens apparell; as giving them thereby to understand, that to weepe and wale, was but a feminine and feeble passion, nothing at all befitting grave persons, well defended, or honestly brought up: for (to say a truth) to weep and wale thus, is meerer womankind, and bewraith a bale and a baet mind: and like as women ordinarily be more prone and forward thereto than men; so Barbarians rather than Greeks; and the worse sort of people are given thereto more than the better also; if you go thorow all barbarous nations, you shall not find those who are most haughty-minded and magnanimous, or carry any generosity of spirit in them, such as be the Germans or Gauls addicted herunto; but Egyptians, Syrians, Lydians, and such other: for soine of theie (by report) use to go down into hollow caves within the ground, and there hide themselves for many daies together, and not so much as see the light of the sun, because (forsooth) the dead party whom they mourne for is deprived thereof. In which regard, for the Tragical Poet having (as it should seeme) heard of such fooleries bringeth in upon the stage a woman speaking in this wise:

*Come forth am I now at the last,  
Your nurse and childrens governess,  
Out of deep caves, where some daies past,  
I kept in bale full bewitchings.*

Others there be also of these Barbarians, who cut away some parts, and dismember themselves, slit their own noses, stop their eares, mangle and disfigure the rest of their bodies, thinking to gratifie the dead in doing thus, if they seeme to exceed all measure, and that moderation which is according to nature. There are besides, who reply upon us, and say, That they thinke we ought not to wale and

and lament for every kind of death, but only in regard of those that die before their time; for that they have not as yet tasted of those things which are esteemed blessings in this life, to wit, the joyes of marriage, the benefit of literature and learning, the perfection of yeares, the managment of Common-weale, honours, and dignities; for these be the points that they stand upon, and grieve most who lose their friends or children by untimely death, for that they be disappointed and frustrate of their hopes before the time; ignorant altogether that this hasty and overpeedy death, in regard of humane nature, differeth nothing at all from others: for like as in the returne to our common native Countrey, which is necessarily imposed upon all, and from which no man is exempted, some match before, others follow after, and all at length meet at one and the same place; even so in travelling this journey of fatall destiny, those that arrive late thereto, gaine no more advantage than they who are thither come betime: now if any untimely or hasty death were naught simply, that of little babes and infants that suck the breast, and cannot speake, or rather such as be newly born were worst; and yet their death we beare very well and patiently, whereas we take their departure more heavily, and to the heart, who are grown to some good yeares, and all through the vanity of our foolish hopes; whereby we imagine and promise to our selves assuredly, that those who have proceeded thus far, be past the world, and are like to continue thus, in a good and certaine estate. If then the prefixed terme of mans life were the end of twenty yeares, certes, him that came to be fifteen yeares old we would not judge unripe for death, but thinke that he had attained to a competent age; and as for him who had accomplished the full time of twenty yeares, or approached neare thereto we would account him absolute happy, as having performed a most blessed and perfect life: but if the course of our life reached out to two hundred yeares, he who chanced to dye at one hundred yeares end, would be thought by us to have died too soone; and no doubt his untimely death we would bewaile and lament. By these reasons therefore, and those which heretofore we have alleged, it is apparant, that even the death which we call untimely, soome admitteth consolation, and a man may beare it patiently; for this is certaine, that *Troilus* would have wept lesse; yea even *Priamus* himselfe should have shed fewer teares, in case he had died sooner; at what time as the Kingdom of *Troy* flourished, or whilst himselfe was in that wealthy estate; for which he lamented so much; which a man may evidently gather by the words which he gave to his son *Hector*, when he admonished & exhorted him to retire from the combat which he had with *Achilles* in these verses:

*Returne my son within these walls, that thou from death maist save  
The Troj men and women both, lest not Achilles have  
Of thee that honour, as thy life so sweet to take away,  
By victory in single fight, and haste thy dying day,  
Have pity yet my son of me, thy wofull aged fire,  
Ere that my wits and senses faile, whom Jupiter in ire  
Will else one day at the end of this my old and wretched yeares,  
Consume with miserable death, out-worne and spent with teares.  
As having many objects scene of sorrow and hearts griefe;  
My soule at short by edge of sword, who should be my reliefe;  
My daughters strow'd by haire of head, and ravish'd in my sight;  
My Pallace raz'd, their chambers sackt, wherein I took delight;  
And sucking babes from mothers breast pluckt, whereon I look'd about  
Against the stones of pavement hard, lie sprawling all about:  
When enemy with sword in hand, in heat of bloody heart  
Slai't havock make; and then my selfe at last must play my part;  
Whom when some one by dint of sword, or lance of dart from fur,  
Hath quite bereft of vitall breath, the hungry dogges shall erre  
About my corps, and at my gates hale it and drag along,  
Gnawing the flesh of heavy head, and gristled chin among,  
Mangling besides the privy parts of a man so old,  
Unkindly flaine, a spectacle most pittious to behold,  
Thus spake the aged father though, and pluckt from head above  
His haire milk-white, but all these words did Hector nothing move.*

Seeing then, so many examples of this matter presented unto your eyes, you are to think and consider with your selfe, that death doth deliver and preserve many men from great and grievous calamities, into which without all doubt they should have fallen, if they had lived longer: But for to avoid prolixity, I will omit the rest, and satisfy my selfe with those that are related already, as being sufficient to prove and shew, that we ought not to breake out beside nature, and beyond measure into vain sorrows and needlesse lamentations, which bewray nothing else but base and feeble minds. *Craner* the Philosopher was wont to say That to suffer adversity causelesse, was no small easement to all sinister accidents of fortune: But I would rather say, That innocency is the greatest and most sovereign medicine to take away the sense of all dolour in adversity: Moreover, the love and affection that we beare unto one who is departed, consisteth not in afflicting and punishing our selves; but in doing good unto him so beloved of us: now the profit and pleasure that we are able to performe for them who are gone out of the world, is the honour that we give unto them by celebrating their good memorials; for no good man deserveth to be mourned and bewailed; but rather to be celebrated

brated with praise and commendation: He is not worthy of sorrow and lamentation, but of an honourable and glorious remembrance: he requireth not teares as testimonials of griefe and dolor; but honest offerings and civill oblations: if it be true, that he who is gone out of this world, doth partake a more divine and heavenly condition of life, as being delivered from the servitude of this body, and the infinite cares, perplexities, and calamities which they must needs endure, who abide in this mortall life, untill such time as they have run their race, and performed the prefixed course of this life, which nature hath not granted unto us for to be perpetuall, but according to the Laws of tall destiny hath given to every one in severall proportion. Such therefore as be wife and well minded, ought not in sorrow and griefe for their friends departed, to passe beyond the bounds and limits of nature, and in vaine plaints and barbarous lamentations forget a meane, and never know to make an end: expecting that which hath befallen to many before them, who have been to far gone in heaviness and melan: holy, that before they had done lamenting, they have finished their daies, and ere they could lay off the mourning habit for the funerals of others, they have been ready themselves to be carried forth to their unhappy sepulchre: inasmuch as the sorrows which they entertained for the death of another, and the calamities proceeding from their own folly, have been buried together with them: so as a man might very well and truly say of them as Homer did:

*Whiles they their plaints and sorrows made,  
Darke night over-spread them with her shade.*

And therefore in such case we are eloquentes thus to speake unto our selves, and reason in this manner: What? shall we make an end once? or rather never cease so long as we live? but still keep weeping and wailing as we do? For I assure you, to thinke that sorrow should never end, were a point of extreme folly, considering that oftentimes we see even those, who of all others take on and faine most impatiently in their fits of griefe and heaviness, become (in proceesse of time) so well appeased, that even at those tomes and monuments where they pitiouly cried out and knockt their breasts, they met afterwards solemnly to make magnificent feasts, with musick, minstrelle, and all the meanes of mirth that might be devised. It is the property therefore of a mad man, and one bereft of his wits, to resolve and set down with himselfe to dwell evermore in sorrow, and not to give it over: but if men thinke and reckon, that it will cease at length and passe away, by occasion of something that may occur, let them cast this withall, that space of time will (after a sort) do it: for that which once is done, cannot by God himselfe be undone: and therefore that which now is happened contrary to our hope and expectation, is a sufficient prooffe and demonstration of that which is wont to befall unto many others by the same meanes. How then? Is not this a thing that we are able to comprehend by learning and discouerie of reason in nature? to wit:

*The earth is full, and sea full likewise,  
Of sundry evils and miseries;*

As also:

*Such mischances aye, and strange calamities,  
Are daily one after another sent  
To mortall men by fittall destinies;  
The skie it selfe is not thereof exempt.*

For not only in these daies, but time out of mind, many men (and those of the wiser sort) have deplored the miseries of mankind, repining life it selfe to be nothing else but punishment; and the very beginning of mans birth and nativity to be no better than woe and misery. And Aristotle saith, That even *Silenus*, when he was caught and taken captive, pronounced as much unto King *Midas*. But so far as this matter maketh so well to our purpose, it were best to let down the very words of the said Philosopher; for in his book entituled, *Eudemus*, or *Of the soule*, thus he saith, Therefore quoth he, O right excellent and of all men most fortunate, as we esteeme the dead to be blessed and happy, so we thinke that to make a lie or speake evill of them is meere impiety, and an intolerable abuse offered unto them, as being now translated into a far better and more excellent condition than before: which opinion and custome in our Countrey is so ancient and of such antiquity, that no man living knoweth either the time when it first began, or the first author thereof, who brought it in but from all eternity this custome hath been among us observed for a Law. Moreover, you know full well the old saying, that from time to time hath run current in every mans mouth: And what is that? quoth he: then the other presently interred this answer, and said, That simply it was best, not to be born at all, and to die better than to live: and hereto have accorded and given testimony the very gods themselves, and namely, unto King *Midas*, who having in chafe and hunting (upon a time) taken *Silenus*, demanded of him, what was best for man? and what it was that a man should wish for & chuse above all things in the world? At the first he would make no answer, but kept silence, and gave not so much as a word, untill such time as *Midas* importuned and urged him by all means: so as at length (seeing himselfe compelled even against his will) he brake out into this speech, and said unto him, O generation of small continuance! O seed of laborious and painfull destiny! O issue of fortune, wretched and miserable! Why force you me to say that unto you, which it were better for you to be ignorant of? For that your life is full of dolorous and irksome, when it hath no knowledge at all of her own calamities: but so it is, that men by no means can have that which simply is best, nor be partakers of that which is most excellent: for best it had been for all men and women both, never to have been borne at all; the next to it, and indeed the principal

cial and chief of all those things that may be effected, (however in order it falleth out to be second) is to die immediately after one is born. So that it appeareth plainly, that *Silenus* judged and pronounced the condition of the dead to be better then of the living. For the proof of which conclusion, ten thousand sentences and examples there be, and ten thousand more upon the head of them, which may be alledged: but needlesse it were, to discouffe farther of this point, and make more words thereof. Well then: we ought not to lament the death of young folk, in this regard, that they be deprived of those blessings and benefits which men do enjoy by long life: for uncertain it is (as we have shewed often times before) whether they be deprived of good things, or delivered from bad; considering that in mans life there be far more sorrows then joys; and those (as few as they be) we get with much pains, great travel, and many cares; whereas calamities and evils come easily unto us; inasmuch (as some men say) they be round and untied close, and following aptly one upon another; whereas good things be separated and disjointed, inasmuch as hardly they meet together at the very end of mans life: and therefore it seemeth that we forget our selves: for as *Enripides* saith;

*Not only worldly goods are not  
Proper to men when they are got.*

but not any thing else whatsoever; and therefore oft such things we are thus to say:

*The gods have all in rightful properties,  
And under them, at will we tenants be,  
To hold and use the same, some more some lesse,  
Untill they please us quite to dispossesse.*

We ought not therefore to be grieved and discontented, if they redemand of us that which they have lent and put into our hands, only for a little while; for even the banquets themselves (as we were wont oftentimes to say) are not displeased or offended when they be called unto, or constrained to render and give up those stocks of money that have been committed unto them, if they be honest men, and well minded: for a man may by good right say unto those who are unwilling to redeliver the same: Hail thou forgotten that thou didst receive these moneys to repay again? And the very same may be applied unto all mortal men: for we have our life at Gods hands, who upon a fatal necessity, have lent and left the same unto us: neither is there any time fore-set or prefixed, within which we ought to yield the same; no more then the fore-said banquets are limited to some appointed day, on which they are bound to deliver up those stocks of money which be put into their hands; but unknown and uncertain it is when they shall be called unto, for to render the same to the owners. He therefore who is exceeding much displeased and angry, when he perceiveth himselfe ready to die; or when his children have changed this life; is it not evident that he hath forgotten, both that himselfe is a man, and also that he begot children mortal? for surely it is no part of a man whose understanding is clear and entire, to be ignorant in this point, namely that a man is a mortal creature, or that he is born upon this condition, once to die: and therefore if dame *Niebs*, according as fables recount unto us, had been always furnished with this opinion and settled resolution: That

*The flower of age she should not aie  
Enjoy, nor children see away  
About her fresh, in number many,  
To keep her ever company:  
Nor sweet sunshine continually  
Behold, untill that she must die.*

she would never have fared so, and fallen into such despair, as to desire to be out of the world, for the unsupportable burden of her calamity, and even to conjure the gods to fetch her away, and plunge her into most horrible destructions. Two rules and precepts there are written in the Temple of *Apollo*, at *Delfos*, which of all others be most necessary for mans life: the one is: Know thy selfe: and the other: Too much of nothing: for of these twain depend all other lessons, and these two accord and found very well together: for it seemeth that the one doth declare the other, and containe the force and efficacy one of the other: for in this rule, Know thy selfe, is comprised; Nothing too much: likewise in this, a man doth comprehend the knowledge of himselfe: and therefore *Ion* the Poet speaking of these sentences, saith thus:

*Know thy selfe: a word but short,  
Implies a work not quickly done,  
Of all the gods and heavenly sort  
None skills thereof but Jove alone,*

And *Rindarus* writteth in this wise:

*This sentence brief: Nothing excessively,  
Wise men have prais'd always exceedingly.*

Whoever therefore setteth always before the eyes of his mind these two precepts, and holdeth them in such reverence as the Oracles of *Apollo* deserve, he shall be able to apply them easily unto all the affairs and occurrences of humane life, and to bear all things modestly as it becometh, both having a regard to his own nature, and also endeavouring neither to mount up too high with pride and vain-glory, for any happy fortune that may befall, nor yet be dejected and cast down beyond measure, to mourning and lamentation upon infirmity of fortune, or rather of the mind, or by reason of that inbred fear of death imprinted deeply in our hearts for want of knowledge and good

consideration of that which is ordinary, and customably happed in mans life, either through necessity, or according to the decree of fatal destiny. Notable is that precept of the Pythagoreans:

*What part thou hast of griefe and wo, which unto man is sent,  
By hand of God, take well in worth, and shew no discontent.*

And the tragical Poet. *Æschylus* said very well:

*Wise men and vertuous in all wo and distresse,  
Against God will not murmur more or lesse.*

As also *Enripides*:

*The man who yeelds unto necessity,  
Well skilled is in true divinity:  
And such we count, and not unworthily  
To bear themselves among men most wisely.*

And in another place:

*Who knowes the way, whatever doth befall  
With patience meekly to suffer all;  
In my conceit, he may be thought right well,  
In vertue and wisdom all men to exceed.*

But contrariwise, most men in the world complain and grumble at every thing; and whatsoever falleth out crosse and contrary to their hope and expectation; they imagine the same to proceed always from the malignity of fortune and the gods; which is the

and for others again, when they are in their flower, and grown to the very height and vigor of their age: all which sorts of death, in what manner soever they come, men are to take in good part, knowing that whatsover proceedeth from fatal destiny, cannot possibly be avoided; and besides reason would, that being well taught and instructed, they should consider, and premeditate with themselves, how those whom we think to have been deprived of their life before their full maturity, go before us but a little while; for even the longest life that is, can be esteemed but short; and no more then the very minute and point of time, in comparison of infinite eternitie: also, that many of them who mourned and lamented most, within a while have gone after those whom they bewailed, and gained nothing by their long sorrow: soely they have in vain afflicted and comforted themselves: whereas, seeing the time of our pilgrimage here in this life is so exceeding short, we should not consume our selves with heavinesse and sadness, nor in most unhappy sorrow and miserable paines, even to the punishing of our poor bodies with injurious misusage; but endeavour and strive to take a better and more humane course of life, in conversing civilly with those persons who are not ready to be pensive with us, and fit to stir up our sorrow and griefe after a flattering sort: but rather which such as are willing and meet to take away, or diminish our heavinesse, with some generous and brave kind of consolation: and we ought to have ever in mind these verses in *Horace*, which *Horatius* by way of comfort delivered unto his wife *Julia* when he was in banishment, in this wise:

*Unhappy might he, do not my heart over-whelme still;  
For no man shorten shall my dayes, before the heavenly will:  
And thus I live, Andronicke, my dear wife still.*

Athenians, and incited them to war. Semblably *Xenophon* one of the followers and familiars of *Socrates*; when he offered sacrifice one day unto the gods, being advertised by certain messengers returned from the battle, that his son *Gryllus* was slain in fight; presently put off the garland which was upon his head, and demanded of them the manner of his death: and when they related unto him that he bare himself valiantly in the field, and fighting manfully lost his life, after he had the killing of many enemies; he took no longer pause to repress the passion of his mind by the discourse of reason, but after a little while, let the Coronet of flowers again upon his head, and performed the solemnity of sacrifice, laying unto those who had brought those tidings: I never prayed unto the gods that my son should be either immortal, or long lived, for who knoweth whether this might be expedient or no? but this rather was my prayer, that they would vouchsafe him the grace to be a good man, and to love and serve his country well, the which is now come to passe accordingly. *Dion* likewise the Syracusan, when he was let one day in consultation, and devising with his friends, hearing a great noise within his house, and a loud outcry, demanded what it was; and when he heard the mischance that happened; to wit, that a son of his was fallen from the top of the house, and dead with the fall: without any shew or sign at all of astonishment or trouble of mind, he commanded that the breathlesse corps should be delivered unto women, for to be interred according to the manner of the Country; and as for himself, he held on and continued the speech that he had begun unto his friends. *Demosthenes* also the Orator is reported to have followed his steps: after he had buried his onely and entirely beloved daughter, concerning whom, *Æschines* thinking in reproachful wise to challenge her father, said thus: This man within a seven-night after his daughter was departed, before that he had mourned, or performed the due obsequies according to the accustomed manner: being crowned with a chaplet of flowers, and putting on white robes, sacrificed an Ox unto the Gods, and thus unnaturally he made no reckoning of her that was dead, his only daughter, and the that first called him father, wicked wretch that he is: This Rhetorician thus intending to accuse and reproach *Demosthenes*, used this manner of speech, never thinking that in blaming him after this manner he praised him, namely, in that he rejected and cast behind him all mourning, and shewed that he regarded the love unto his native country, more then the natural affection and compassion to those of his own blood. As for King *Antigonus*, when he heard of the death of his son *Alcyonius*, who was slain in a battle, he beheld the messengers of these wofull tidings, with a constant and undaunted countenance; but after he had mused a while with silence, and held down his head, he uttered these words: O *Alcyonius*, thou hast lost thy life later then I looked for, venturing thy self so resolutely as thou hast done among thine enemies, without any care of thine own safety, or respect of my admonitions. These noble personages, there is no man but doth admire, and highly regard for their constancy and magnanimity; but when it cometh to the point and trial indeed, they cannot imitate them through the weaknesse and inbecillity of mind, which proceedeth from ignorance, and want of good instructions: howbeit, there be many examples of those who have right nobly and virtuously carried themselves in the death and losse of their friends and near kinsmen, which we may read in Histories, as well Greek as Latine; but those that I have heard already may suffice (I suppose) to move you for to lay away this most irksome mourning, and vain sorrow that you take, which booteth not, nor can serve to any good: for that young men of excellent vertue, who die in their youth, are in the grace and favour of the gods, for being taken away in their best time, I have already shewed heretofore, and now also will I addresse myselfe in this place as briefly, as possibly I can to discourse, giving testimony of the truth to this notable wisdome of *Menander*.

To whom the gods vouchsafe their love and grace,  
He lives not long, but soon hath run his race.

But peradventure (my most loving and right dear friend) you may reply in this manner upon me: Namely, that young *Apollonius*, your son, enjoyed the world at will, and had all things to his hearts desire; yea, and more bestifing it was, that you should have departed out of this life, and been entered by him, who was now in the flower of his age, which had been more answerable to our nature, and according to the course of humanity. True it is I confesse, but haply not agreeable to that heavenly providence and government of this universal world: and verily in regard of him who is now in a blessed estate, it was not natural for him to remain in this life longer then the term prefixed and limited unto him; but after he had honestly performed the course of his time, it was needfull and requisite for him to take the way for to return upon his destiny that called for him to come unto her: but you will say, that he died an untimely death; true, and so much the happier he is, in that he hath felt no more miseries of this life: for as *Euripides* said very well:

That which by name of life we call,  
Indeed is travel continuall.

Certes, this son of yours (I must needs say) is soon gone, and in the very best of his years and flower of his age, a young man in all points entire and perfect, a fresh Bachelor, affected, esteemed and wel reputed of all those that kept him company, loving to his father, kind to his mother, affectionate to his kinsfolks and friends, studious of good literature, and (to say all in a word) a lover of all men, respecting with reverence (no less then fathers) those friends, who were elder then himselfe, making much of his equals and familiars, honouring those who were his teachers: to strangers as well as to Citizens most civil and courteous, gracious and pleasant to all; generally beloved, as well for his

well

sweet attractive countenance, as his lovely affability. All this (I confesse) is most true; but you ought to consider and take this withal: That he is translated before us in very good time out of this mortal and transitory life into everlasting eternitie, carrying with him the general praise and blessed acclamation of all men for his piety and observance toward you, as also for your fatherly regard of him; and departed he is as from some banquer, before he is fallen into drunkenness and folly, which he could not have eschewed, but it would have ensued upon old age: and if the saying of ancient Poets and Philosophers be true, as it seemeth verily to be, namely: That good men and those that devoutly serve God, whensoever they die, have honour and preferment in the other world, and a place allotted them apart, where their souls abide and converse: surely you are greatly to hope very well, that your son is canonized and placed in the number of those blessed Saints concerning the state of which happy wights deceased, *Pindarus*, the Lyick Poet, writeth in his Canticles after this manner.

When we have here the shady night,  
The shining sun to them gives light:  
The meadows by their City side  
With reffered are beautified,  
Shade with trees which please the sense,  
With golden fruits and sweet incense:  
Some horses ride for exercise,  
Disporting in most comely wise:  
Others delights in harmonie,  
In musick and in symphonie,  
They live where plenty every hour  
Of all delights doth freshly flow:  
Where all the gods do dwell  
In every coast, with sweet perfume  
Of odors all most redolent,  
Burning in fire far resplendent,  
Which is maintain'd continually:  
Thus they converse right pleasantly.

And a little after he proceedeth to another lamentable ditty, wherein speaking of the soul, he useth these words:

Happy is their condition,  
VVhom death from all vexation  
Exempted hath: all bodies do  
Perforce, there is no remedie:  
The soul, of perpetuity  
The image, from divinity  
Only deriv'd, doth live alway,  
And is not known for to decay:  
VVhiles limbs to maky and work are prest,  
She takes her sleep and quiet rest,  
And doth by many dreams present  
To those who sleep, her own judgement,  
As well of things which her displeas,  
As of such as do her well pleas.

Or thus:

\* the due judgement,  
As well for vertuous deeds well done,  
As for foul faults which be misdone.

And as for that divine Philosopher *Plato*, he had disputed much, and alledged many reasons in his *Treatise* of the soul, as touching the immortality thereof, like as in his books of *Policy* in the Dialogue intituled *Menon*, in that also which beareth the name of *Gorgias*, and in divers places of many of *Plato's* there: But as concerning those discourses which he hath expressly made in his Dialogue, I will give you an extract thereof apart by it selfe, according to your request: and for this pretext I will deliver those points which are to the purpose, and expedient to the matter in hand, to wit, what *Socrates* said to *Callicles* the Athenian, a familiar friend and scholar of *Gorgias* the Rhetorician, Thus therefore saith *Socrates* in *Plato's* Give ear then, and listen unto a most elegant speech, which you (I suppose) will think to be a meer fable or tale, but I esteem an undoubted truth, and as a true report I will relate it unto you: So it was, that (according to the narration of *Plato's* *Isidore*, *Neptunus* and *Pluto* parted between themselves the empire which fell unto them from their father: now this law there was concerning men, during the reign of *Ævum* (which also stood in force time out of minde, and remaineth even at this day among the gods) That look what man soever lead a just and holy life, after his death he should take his way directly to certain fortunate Islands, there to remain in bliss and happiness, freed from all misery and infelicity: but contrariwise, he that lived unjustly, without fear and reverence of the gods, should go to a certain prison of justice and punishment, named *Tartarus*, that is to say, Hell now the Judges who sit judicially, and gave their doom of such persons,



As well in *Parthian* dayes, as in the beginning also of the reign of *Jupiter*, were those men alive, who gave sentence and judgement of other men living, even upon that very day wherein they were to depart this life: by reason whereof there passed many judgements, not good, until such time as *Plato* and other procurators or superintendents of those fortunate Isles came and made report unto *Jupiter*; that there were thither sent such persons as were not worthy. Unto whom *Jupiter* made this answer: I will take order from henceforth, and provide that it shall be no more: for the cause of this disorder and abuse in judgement is this: that they who are to be tried, concerned and arrayed unto the bar, for to receive their doom, whilst they are yet living; yea, and many of them having filthy soules, are appalled (as it were) with fair and beautiful bodies, with nobility of birth and parentage, yea, and adorned with riches: and whilst they stand before the tribunal to be judged, many there be who come to depole and give testimony in their behaile, that they need well: the Judges therefore (being dazzled and amazed with these witnesss and depositions, being themselves also likewise arrayed) to give sentence, having before, their minds, their eyes, their ears, and whole body covered; no marvel therefore if these be impediments to impeach sound and sincere judgement, to wit, as well their own vesture, as the raiment of the Judges. First and foremost therefore, good heed would be had, that men may know no more before hand the hour of their death; for now they foresee the term and end of life; whereupon let *Prometheus* have first in charge, that from henceforth men may have no fore-knowledge of their dying day; and then all judgements hereafter shall passe indifferently of them that be all naked. For which purpose it were requisite that they be all first dead, as well the parties in question, as the Judges themselves: so that they come to hear causes and sit in judgement with their soules only, upon the soules likewise of those who are departed: even so soon as they are separated from the bodies, being defilute now and forlorn of all kinsfolk and friends to assist them, as having left behind them upon earth, all the vesture and ornaments which they were wont to have; by which means, the judgement of them may passe more just and right: which I knowing well enough, before you were acquainted therewith, have ordained mine own sons to be Judges; namely, for *Asia* two, *Mino* and *Rhadamanthus*; and one for *Europe*, to wit, *Æacus*: These therefore after they be dead, shall sit in judgement within a meadow, at a quarrefour or crosse way, whereof the one leadeth to the fortunate Isles, the other to Hell: *Rhadamanthus* shall determine of them in *Asia*; *Æacus* of those in *Europe*; and as for *Mino*, I will grant unto him a preeminence in judgement above the rest: in case there happen some matter unknown to one of the other two, and escape their censure, he may upon weighing and examining their opinions, give his definitive sentence, and so it shall be determined by a third sentence and just doom, whether way each one shall go. This is that, *O Callicles*, which I have heard, and believe to be most true; whereout I gather this conclusion in the end; that death is no other thing then the separation of the soul from the body. Thus you see, *O Apollonius*, my most dear friend, what I have collected with great care and diligence, to compose for you sake a Consolatory Oration, or Discourse, which I take to be most necessary for you, as well to assuage and rid away your present grief, to appeale likewise, and cause to cease this heaviness and mourning that you make, which of all things is most unpleasant and troublesome; as also to comprize within it that praise and honour which (me thought) I owed as due unto the memorial of your son *Apollonius*, of all others exceedingly beloved of the gods: which honour in my conceit is a thing most convenient and acceptable unto those, who by happy memory, and everlasting glory are consecrated to immortality. You shall do you part therefore, and very wisely, if you obey those reasons which are therein contained: you shall gratifie your son likewise, and do him a great pleasure, in case you take up in time, and return from this vain affliction (wherewith you punish and undo both body and mind) unto your accustomed, ordinary and natural course of life: for like as whilst he lived with us he was nothing well appayed, and took no contentment to see either father or mother sad and desolate; even so now, when he converseth and solaceth himselfe in all joy with the gods, doubtlesse he cannot like well of this state wherein you are. Therefore knock up your heart, and take courage like a man of worth, of magnanimity, and one that loveth his children well: rebuke your selfe but, and then the mother of the young Gentlemen together with his kinsfolk and friends from this kind of misery, and take to a more quiet and peaceable manner of life, which will be both to your son departed, and to all of us (who have regard of your person) as it becometh us more agreeable.

### A consolatory Letter or Discourse sent unto his own Wife, as touching the death of her and his Daughter.

#### The Summary.

*Plutarch* being from home, and far absent, received never concerning the death of a little daughter of his, as yet above two years old, named *Timoclea*, a child of gentle nature, and of great hope: his fearing this misfortune would apprehend such a loss, so dear unto his heart: he comforteth her in this letter.

being dead by giving testimony unto her of virtue and constancy shewed at the death of other children, of his own former days ago when she was: he exhorteth her likewise to patience and moderation in this new grievance and trial of her: condemning by sundry reasons the excessive sorrow, and unworthy passion of *Democritus* and *Crates*, shewing withall the inconveniences, that such excessive heaviness draweth after it, *Timoclea* continuing his consolation of her, he declareth with what eye we ought to regard infants and children as both before, as during and after life; how happy they be, who can content themselves and rest in the will and pleasure of God: that the blessings past, ought to suffice and mitigate the calamities present, to stay us from being provoked so to that degree and height of infortuny, as to make account only of the misadventures and discomforts hapning in this our life. Which done, he sheweth to certain objections which his wife might propound (and set on foot): and therewith delivereth his own advice as touching the incorruption and immortality of mans soul (after he had made a meely of divers opinions which the ancient Philosophers hold touching that point): and in the end concludeth: That it is better and more expedient to die betimes, then live: which position of his, he confirmeth by an ordinance precisely observed in his own country, which expressly forbade to mourn and lament for those who departed this life in their childhood.

### A consolatory Letter, or Discourse, sent unto his own Wife, as touching the death of her and his daughter.

#### PLUTARCH unto his Wife: Greeting.

THE messenger whom you sent of purpose, to bring me word as touching the death of our little daughter, went out of his way (as I suppose) and so mislaid of me, as he journeyed toward *Athens*: howbeit, when I was arrived at *Tanagra*, I heard that he had changed this life. Now, as concerning the funerals and entering of her, I am verily perswaded, that you have already taken sufficient order, to so that the thing is not to do; and I pray God, that you have performed that duty in such sort, that neither for the present, nor the time to come, it work you any grievance and displeasure: but if haply you have put off any such complements (which you are willing enough of your selfe to accomplish) until you knew my mind and pleasure, thinking that you, let the same be performed without all curiosity and superstition; and yet I must needs say, you are as little given that way as any woman that I know: this only I would admonish you, (deare heart) that in this case, you shew (both in regard of your selfe and also of me) a constancy and tranquillity of mind; for mine own part, I conceive and measure in mine own heart, this losse, according to the nature and greatness thereof, and so I esteem of it accordingly; but if I should finde, that you took it impatiently, this would be much more grievous unto me, and wound my heart more, then the calamity it selfe that causeth it; and yet am I not begotten and born either of an Oak or a Rock; whereof you can bare me good witness, knowing that we both together have reared many of our children at home in house, even with our own hands; and how I loved this girl most tenderly, both for that you were very desirous (after four sons, one after another in a row) to bear a daughter, as also for that in regard of that fancy, I took occasion to give her your name: now, besides that natural fatherly affection, which commonly men have toward little babes, there was one particular property that gave an edge thereto, and caused me to love her above the rest and that was a special grace that she had, to make joy and pleasure, and the same without any mixture at all of churlishness or forwardness, and nothing given to whining and complaints: for she was of a wonderful kind and gentle nature, loving the was again to those that loved her, and marvellous desirous to gratifie and pleasure others; in which regards, she both delighted me, and also yielded no small testimony of rare debonairty that nature had endued her withal: for she would make prery meanes to be merry, and seem (as it were) to entreat her to give the breast or pap, not onely to other infants, like her selfe, but play-keepers, but also to little babies and puppets, and such like gawds as little children are joyn to, and wherewith they use to play: as if upon a singular civility and humanity she could find in her heart to communicate and distribute from her own table even the best things that she had, among them that did her any pleasure. But I see no reason (sweet wife) why these lovely qualities and such like, wherein we took contentment and joy in her life-time, should disquiet and trouble us now, after her death, when we either think or make relation of them: and I fear again, that by our dolour and grief, we abandon and put clean away all the remembrance thereof, like as *Clytemnestra* did to do, when she said:

*I have the bow so light of consideration:*

*Allexercesse a bow, farewell for me.*

Remembering alwayes and trembling at the remembrance and commemoration of her son, which did no other good but set on her grief and dolour: for naturally we seek to flee all that troubleth and oppresseth us. We ought therefore to torment our selves, that as whilst she lived, we had nothing in the world more sweet to embrace, more pleasant to see, or delectable to hear then our daughter: in the cognition of which, may still abide and live with us all our lifetime, having by many degrees our

our joy multiplied more then our heaviness augmented; if it be meet and fit that the reasons and arguments which we have often times delivered to others, should profit us when time and occasion requireth, and not lie still and idle for any good we have by them, nor challenge and accuse us, for that in stead of joyes past, we bring upon ourselves many more griefs by far. They that have come unto us, report thus much of you, and that with great admiration of your vertue, that you never put on mourning weed, nor much as changed your robe, and that by no means you could be brought to disfigure your selfe, or any of your waiting maidens and women about you, nor offer any outrage or injury to them in this behalfe: neither did you fet out her funerals with any sumptuous pageerical pomp, as if it had been some solemn feast, but performed every thing modestly and civilly, after a still manner, accompanied only with our kinsfolk and friends. But my selfe verily made no great wonder (that you who never took pride and pleasure to be seen, either in Theater or in publick profession, but rather always esteemed all such magnificence so vain, and sumptuous superfluous, even in those things that tended to delight) have observed the most safe way of plainnesse and simplicity, in these occasions of sorrow and sadness. For a vertuous and chaste Matron ought not onely to keep her selfe pure and inviolate in Bacchanal feasts; but also to think thus with her selfe, that the turbulent storms of sorrow, and passionate motions of anguish had no lesse need of continency to resist and withstand, nor the natural love and affection of mothers to their children, as many think, but intemperance of the mind. For we allow and graunt unto this natural kindnesse, a certain affection to bewaile, to reverence, to wish for, to long after, and to beare in mind those that are departed: but the excessive and insatiable desire of lamentations, which forsooth men and women to loud out-cries, to knock, beat, and mangle their own bodies, is no lesse unseemly and shamefull, then incontinence in pleasures: howbeit, it seemeth by good right to deserve excuse and pardon, for that in this undecency, there is grief & bitterness of sorrow adjoynd, whereas in the other, pleasure and delight: for what is more absurd and senselesse, then to seem for to take away excess of laughter and mirth: but contrariwise to give head unto streams of tears which proceed from one fountain, and to suffer folk to give themselves over to weeping and lamentation as much as they will; as also that which some use to do, namely, to chide and rebuke their wives for some sweet perfumes, odorous pomanders, or purple garments, which they are desirous to have; and in the mean while permit them, to tear their hair in time of mourning, to have their heads, to put on black, to sit unseemly upon the bare ground, or in ashes, and in most painful manner to cry our upon God and man; yea, and that which of all others is worst, when their wives chastise themselves, or punish unjustly their servants, to come between and stay their hands; but when they rigorously and cruelly torment themselves, to let them alone and neglect them in those cruell accidents, which contrariwise had need of facility and humanity? But between us twain, sweet heart, there was never any need of such fray or combat, and I suppose there will never be. For to speak of that fringality which is seen in plain and simple apparel, or of sobriety in ordinary dyet, and feeding of the body: never was there any Philosopher yet conversing with us in our house, whom you put not down and struck into an extraordinary amaze, nor so much as a Citizen whom you caused not to admire (as a strange and wonderful sight, whether it were in publick sacrifices, or in frequent theaters, and solemn processions) your rare simplicity: semblably, heretofore you shewed great constancy upon the like conflict and accident at the death of your eldest son; and again when that gentle and beautiful *Charon* departed from us untimely, in the prime of his years; and I remember very well that certain strangers who journeyed with me along from the sea side, (at what time as word was brought of my sons death) came home with others from the sea side, (at what things there settled, nothing out of order, but all silent and quiet (as they themselves afterward made report) began to think that the said news was false, and no such calamity had happened; so wisely had you composed all matters within your house, when as I wis, there was good occasion given that might have excited some disorder and confusion: and yet this son you were nurse unto your selfe, and gave it suck at your own pap; yea, and endured the painful incision of your breast, by reason of a cancerous hard tumor that came by a confusion. Oh, the generosity of a vertuous dame, and behold the kindnesse of a mother toward her children! whereas you shall see many other mothers to receive their young babes at the hands of their nurses, to dandle and play withal, forsooth, in mirth and pastime: but afterwards the false women (if their infants chance to die) give themselves over to all vain mourning, and bootlesse sorrow, which proceedeth, not doubtlesse, from good will indeed; (for surely hearty affection is reasonable, honest and considerate) but rather from a foolish opinion mingled with a little natural kindnesse; and this is it that engendereth savage, furious, and implacable sorrows. And verily *Elope* (as it should seem) was not ignorant hereof, for she reprehendeth this narration: That when *Jupiter* made a dole or distribution of honors among the gods and goddesses; *Sorrow* came afterwards and made suit likewise to be honoured, and so he bestowed upon her, tears, plaints, lamentations; but for them only who are willing thereto, and ready to give her entertainment. And I assure you, that they commonly do at the very beginning; for everyone of his own accord bringeth in, and admitteth sorrow unto him, who (after he is once entertained, and in process of time well settled, so that he is become domestical and familiar) will not be driven out of doors nor be gone, if a man would never to faile; and therefore resistance must be made against her, even at the very gate, neither ought we to abandon our hold, and quit the fort, renting our garments, rearing or flustering our hairs, or doing other such things, as ordinarily happen every day;

day; causing a man to be confused, shameful, and discouraged, making his heart base, abject, and shut up, that he cannot enlarge it, but remain poor and timorous; bringing him to this pass, that he dare not be merry, supposing it altogether unlawful to laugh, to come abroad and see the sunne, light, to converse with men, or to eat or drink in company: into such a captivity is he brought, through sorrow and melancholy: upon this inconvenience after it hath once gotten head, the soul is lowen the neglect of the body, no care of annointing or bathing, and generally a reticence of the mind and conceits of all things belonging to this life; whereas contrariwise and by good reason, when the mind is sick or amisse, it should be helped and sustained by the strength of an able and cheerefull body: for a great part of the souls grief is allayed, and the edge thereof as it were dulled, when the body is fresh and disposed to alacrity, like as the waves of the sea be laid even, during a calme and fair weather: but contrariwise, if by reason that the body be evil entreated, and not regarded with good diet and choice keeping, it is become dried, rough and hard, in such sort, as to have there breath no sweet and comfortable exhalations unto the soul, but all smoaky and bitter vapours of sorrow, griefe, and sadness annoy her; then is it no easie matter for men (they never so willing and desirous) to recover themselves, but that their souls being thus seized upon by so grievous passions, will be afflicted and tormented still. But that which is most dangerous and dreadful in this case, I never feared in your behalfe (to wit) That foolish women should come and visit you, and then fall a weeping, lamenting, and crying with you; a thing (I may say to you) that is enough to vex the spirit, and awaken it if it were asleep, not suffering it either by itselfe, or by means of help and succor from another, to passe, fade, and vanish away; for I know very well what ado you had and in to what a conflict you entred about the sister of *Theon*, when you would have assisted her, and resisted other women who came in to her with great cries and loud lamentations, as if they brought fire with them, in all haste to maintain and encrease that which was kindled already. True it is indeed, that when a friends or neighbours house is seen on fire, every man runneth as fast as he can to help for to quench the flame: but when they see their souls burning in griefe and sorrow, they contrariwise bring more fuel and matter still to augment, or keep the said fire: also if a man be diseased in his eyes, he is not permitted to handle, or touch them with his hands, especially if they be blood-shot, and possessed with any inflammation; whereas he who sits mourning and forrowing at home in his house, offereth and presenteth himselfe to the first commer, and to every one that is willing to visit him, and provoketh his passion (as it were a flood or stream that is let out, and let a running) in such sort, as where before the grievance did but itch or smart a little, it now begins to smart, to ache, to be felt and angry, so that it becometh a great and dangerous malady in the end: but I am verily persuaded (I say) that you know how to preserve your selfe from these extremities. Now over and besides, endeavour to reduce and call again to mind the time when as we had not this daughter; namely, when she was as yet unborn: how we had no cause then to complain of fortune, then as you *Jeha* (as it were with one tenon) this present, with that which is past, letting the case as it were returned again to the same state wherein we were before: for it will appear (my good wife) that we are discontented that ever she was born, in case we make shew that we were in better condition before her birth, then afterwards; not that I wish we should abolish out of our remembrance the two years space between her nativity and decease; but rather count and reckon it among other our pleasures and blessings, as during which time, we had the fruition of joy, mirth, and pastime; and not to esteeme that good which was but little and endured a small while, our great infirmity; nor yet seem unthankful to fortune, for the favour which she hath done unto us, because she added not thereto that length of life which we hoped and expected. Certes to rest contented always with the gods; to think and speak of them reverently as it becometh; not to complain of fortune; but to take in good worth whatsoever it pleaseth her to send, bringing us evermore a fresh and pleasant fruit: but he who in these cases, putteth out of remembrance the good things that he hath, transporting and turning his thoughts and cogitations from obscure and troublesome occurrences, unto those which be clear and resplendent; if he do not by this means utterly extinguish his sorrow; yet at leastwise by mingling and tempering it with the contrary, he shall be able to diminish or else make it more feeble: for like as a sweet odour and fragrant ointment delighteth and refresheth always the sense of smelling, and besides is a remedy against thinking of any even so the cogitation of these benefits which men have otherwise received, serveth as a most necessary and present succour in time of adversity unto as many as refuse not to remember and call to mind their joyes past, and who never as all for any accident whatsoever complain of fortune; which we ought not to do in reason and honesty, unless we would seem to accuse and blame this life which we enjoy for some cruell or accidental; as if we cast away a book as it have but one blur or blot upon it, being otherwise written throughout most clean and fair; for you have heard it oftentimes said, that the beatitude of those who are departed, dependeth upon the tight and sound discourses of good understanding; and the same holding to one constant disposition; as also, that the changes and alterations of fortune bear no great sway, to temper much declination or casualty in our life: but if we also as the common sort, must be ruled and governed by external things without us; if we reckon and count the chances and casualties of fortune, and admit for judges of our felicity or misery, the bale and vulgar sort of people; yet take you no heed to those tears, plaints, and moans that men or women make who come to visit you at this present, who also (upon a foolish custom, and as it were of course) have them ready at command for every one; but rather consider this with your selfe, how happy you are reputed, even by those who

whom thou seest you who would gladly and with all their hearts be like unto you, in regard of those children whom you have, the house and family which you keep, and the life that you lead: for it were an envious thing, to see others desire to be in your estate and condition for all the sorrow which you suffer, and yet your self in the mean time complaining and taking in all part the same, and noting their happy and blessed, as to find and feel (even by this cross that now pineth you, for the loss of this one child) what joy you should take, and how thankful you ought to be for those who remain alive with you: for herein you should resemble very well those Critics, who collect and gather together all the lame and defective parts of *Homer*, which are but few in numbers and in the mean time, passe over and ascribe all the good parts, which were by him most excellently made. In this manner (I say) you did, if you would feast in avarice, and examine every particular mishap in this life, and find fault therein; but all good blessings in prose, let go by, and never once respect the same; which to do, were much like unto the practice of those covetous milks, and perillous robbers, who stark and care, punish both body and mind, until they have gathered a great deal of goods together, and then enjoy no benefit or use thereof: but if they chance to forgo any of it, they begin a piteous wailing and woful lamentation.

Nay, I happily you have compassion and pity of the poor child, in that she went out of this world a maid unmarried, and before that she bare any children: you ought rather on the contrary side, to rejoice and take delight in your self above others, for that you have not failed of these blessings, nor been disappointed either of the one or the other: for who would hold and maintain: that these things should be great to those who be deprived of them: and but small to them, who have and enjoy them? As for the Child, who doubtless is gone into a place where she feeleth no pain, surely she requireth not our hands that we should afflict and grieve our selves for her sake: for what harm is there befallen unto us by her, if she her self now feel no hurt? And as for the losses of great things indeed, surely they yield no sense at all of dolor, when they are once come to this point; that there is no more need of them, or care made for them. But verily, thy daughter *Timon* was a child, not of great matters, but of small things: for in truth, she had no knowledge at all but of such, and other delighted she in any, but in such: seeing then, that she had no perceivance nor thought of these things, how can she properly and truly be said to be deprived thereof?

Moreover, as touching that which you heard of others, who are wont to persuade many of the vulgar sort, saying, That the soul once separated from the body, is dissolved, and feeleth no pain or discomfort at all: I am assured, that you yield no credit and believe to such positions: as well in regard of those reasons and instructions which you have received by tradition from our Ancestors, as also of those sacred and symbolical mysteries of *Bacchus*, which we know well enough, who are of that religion, to be true, and professed therein. Being grounded therefore in this principle, and holding it firmly for an undoubted truth: That our soul is incorruptible and immortal: you are to think that it should with us, as it doth with little birds that are caught by the Fowler alive, and come unto mans hands: for if it have been kept and nourished faintly, along time within the body, so that it beinward to be gentle and familiar unto this life, to wit, by the management of sundry affairs and long continuance; it remaineth still the same, and re-enters at a second time (after many generations) in the body again, never leaveth rest nor ceaseth, but is wrapped within the affections of the flesh, and entangled with the adventures of the world, and calamities incident to our nature: for I would not have you to think that old age is to be blamed and reproached for fowls and wrinkles, nor in regard of many white haies, nor yet for the infirmity and feebleness of the body: but the worth and advantage of thing in it, is this: That it cansteth the soul to take corruption by the remembrance of those things whereof it had experience whilst it layd therein, and was too much addicted and affectionate unto it, whereby it bendeth and boweth, yea, and retaineth that form or figure which it took in the body, by being so long deposed thereon: whereas that which is taken away in youth, pretendeth a better estate and condition, as being framed to a gentler habit, more soft, tractable and less compact, putting on now a natural rectitude, much like as fire, which being quenched, if it be kindled again, burneth out, & recovereth his vigor incontinently: which is the cause that it is far better

to live with a burden, than to be without it.

And so to pass the great affliction,

before that the soul have taken too deep an imbibition, or liking of terrene things here below, and ere it be made soft and tender with the love of the body, and (as it were) by certain medicines and forcible charms united and incorporated to it. The truth hereof may appear yet better, by the fashions and ancient customs of this Country: for our Citizens (when their children die young) becher offer mortuaries, but perform any sacrifices and ceremonies for them, as others are wont to do for the dead: the reason is, because they have no part of earth nor earthly affections: neither do they keep about their tombs and sepulchres: nor lay forth the dead corpse abroad to be seen of men, nor keep near unto their bodies: for our laws and statutes do not permit and suffer any imburiall of all those that so depart in their minority, as being a custome not holy and religious: for that we are to think they passe into a better place and happier condition: Which ordinances and customs, since it is more dangerous to give credit unto, then believe, let us carry and demene our selves according as they command, for outward order: as for within, all ought to be more pure, lively and incorrupt.

## How it cometh that the Divine Justice deferreth other whiles the punishment of wicked persons.

### The Summary.

Forasmuch as the order of all considerate justice importeth and requireth, that good men should be maintained and cherished, but contrariwise, wicked persons repressed and punished for their lewd acts: the Epicureans (drunken and intoxicated with false supjals, seeing in the conduct of this worlds affairs, some that be honest and virtuous, distressed and oppressed by divers devices and practices: whereas others again, who be naughty and vicious, continue in repose, without any chastisement at all for their misdemeanors) would needs take from God the dispose and government of humane affairs, holding and maintaining this point: That all things roll and run at adventure, and that there is no other cause of the good and evil accidents of this life, but either fortune, or else the will of man. Now among other arguments which they have to confirm themselves in this unhappy and impious opinion, the patience and long suffering of the Divine Justice, is one of the principal: concluding thereby very fondly, that considering Malefactors are thus supported and seen to escape all chastisement: there is no Deity or Godhead at all, which regardeth men, either to reward them for virtue, or to punish and do vengeance for their iniquity and transgression. Plutarch therefore, having to deal in his time with such dangerous spirits, consuteth them in this Treatise, which of all others is most excellent, and deserveth to be read and praised over again in these wretched days, wherein Epicurisme beareth up the head as high as at any time ever before. That it is (I confess) that Theology and Divinity is able to furnish us with reasons and aswers more firm and effectual (without comparison) then all the Philosophy of Pagans whatsoever: howbeit, for all that, there is here sufficient to be found (as touching this point) for to stop the mouths of those who have any remnant of shame, honesty, or conscience behind in them. This present Treatise may very well be dividd into principal parts: in the former, Epicurus being brought in to dispute against Divine Providence, and so departing without stay for answer, other Philosophers deliberate to herself of this point in his absence: and before that they refute his objection, two of them do amplify and exaggerate the same at large: which done, our author taketh the question in hand, and by seven forcible arguments, or firm answers, refuteth the blasphemy of the Epicureans, proving by sundry argument, enriched with similitudes, sentences, examples and notable histories, that wicked persons never continue unpunished, but that the vengeance of God accompanieth quickly and continually their misdeeds. In the second part, they debate a certain question depending of the precedent objection, to wit, Wherefore children be chastised for the sins of their fathers and ancestors? and there was a certain Philosopher named Timon, who handled this matter, taxing after an oblique manner, the justice of God, which Plutarch maintaineth and defendeth: shewing by divers reasons, that whatsoever Timon had alledged, was meer false: and that God did no injury at all unto these children, in withdrawing his grace and favour from them, and chastising them so together with their Parents, finding themselves culpable for their part. But in this place, our author answereth not sufficiently and to the purpose: as being ignorant of original sin, and the universal corruption of Adams children, which emvareth them all in the same condemnation, although some are farther gone in sinfull life, according as they be grown to more years, and so augment their punishment: inasmuch as we may well marvel at this, that a poor Pagan hath so far proceeded in this point of Theology: and Christians have so much greater occasion to look unto themselves, in the midst of this light which directeth them, considering how this man could see so clear in darkness, which appeareth sufficiently in the end of this discourse: where he entermedleth certain fables as touching the fate of our souls after they be parted from the bodies.

## How it cometh that the Divine Justice deferreth other whiles the punishment of wicked persons.

After that Epicurus had made this speech (O *Cynius*) and before that any one of us had answered him, by that time that we were come to the end of the gallery or walking place, he went his way out of our sight, and so departed: and we wondering much at this strange fashion of the man, stood still a pretty while in silence, looking one upon another, and so we betook our selves to our walking again, as before: then *Patroclus* began first to move speech and conference, saying in this manner: How now my Masters! if you think fit good, let us discuss this question, and make answer in his absence, to those reasons which he hath alledged, as well as if he were present in place: hereupon *Timon* took occasion to speak, and said: Certes it were not well done of us, to let him escape to without revenge, who hath left his part sticking in us: for a Captain *Crasidius* as it appeareth in the Chronicles, being wounded with the shot of a javelin, drew it out of his body his own self, and therewith smote his enemy who had hurt him, so as he killed him out right: as for us, we need not so greatly to be revenged of those who have let lie among us, some rash, foolish and false speeches: for it will be sufficient, to shake the same off, and send them back again, before our opinion take hold thereof. And what was it, I pray you (quoth I) of all that which he delivered, that moved you most? for the man handled many things confusedly together, and



then by the example and imitation of his good and decent qualities, to become honest and virtuous; wherefore if we perceive him to proceed slowly, and in tract of time to lay his heavy hand upon the wicked, and to punish them, it is not for any doubt or fear that he should do amiss, or repent afterward if he chastise them sooner, but by weaning us from all beastly violence, and hastiness in our punishments, to teach us not immediately to lie upon those who have offended us, at what time as our blood is most up, and our choler set on a light fire,

*When furious ire in heart foales and boiles,*

*That wit and reason bear no sway the whiles,*

making haste as it were to satisfy some great hunger, or quench exceeding thirst, but (by imitating his clemency, and his manner of prolonging and making delay) to endeavor to execute justice in all order, at good leisure, and with most careful regard: taking to counsel Time, which seldom or never is accompanied with repentance: for as *Socrates* was wont to say: Less harm and danger there is, if a man meet with a troubled and muddy water, and intemperately take and drink thereof, then whiles his reason is confounded, corrupt, and full of choler and furious rage, to be set altogether upon revenge, and run hastily upon the punishment of another body, even one who is of his own kind and nature, before the same reason be settled again, cleared and fully purified. For it is nothing to us *Thucydides* writeth: That vengeance the nearer it is unto the offence, the more it is in the own kind: but clean contrary, the farther off it is, and longer delayed, the better it apprehendeth and judgeth of that which is fit and decent. For according as *Melambius* saith:

*When anger once did lodge both the wit,*

*Fool work it makes, and outrage doth commit,*

even so reason performeth all just and honest actions, when it hath chased and removed out of the way, ire and wrath: and therefore men are mollified, appeased, and become gentle by examples of men, when they hear it reported, how *Plato*, when he lifted up his staff against his Page, (to do a good while, and forbore to strike; which he did (as he said) for to repress his choler. And *Archimedes*, when he found some great negligence and disorder at his farm-house in the country, in his household servants, perceiving himself moved and disquieted therewith, inasmuch as he was exceeding angry, and ready to fly upon them, proceeded to no act, but only turning away and going from them, said thus: It is happy for you, that I am thus angry with you. If then it be so, that such memorable speeches of ancient men, and worthy acts reported by them, are effectual to repress the bitterness and violence of choler: much more probable it is, that we (seeing how God himself, although he standeth not in fear of any person, nor repenteth of any thing that he doth, yet putteth off his chastisements, and layeth them up a long time) should be more wary and considerate in such things, and esteem that clemency, long suffering and patience is a divine part of virtue that God doth shew and teach us, which by punishment doth chastise and correct a few, but by proceeding thereto slowly, doth instruct, admonish, and profit many. In the second place, let us consider, that judicial and exemplary process of justice practiced by men, intendeth and aimeth only at counterchange of pain and grief, resting in this point: That he who hath done evil, might suffer likewise: proceeding no farther at all: and therefore braying and barking (as it were) like dogs at mens taunts and trespasses, they follow upon them, and pursue after all actions by tract and footing: but God (as it should seem, by all likelihood) when he setteth in hand in justice to correct a sinful and diseased soul, regardeth principally the vicious passions thereof, if haply they may be bent and wrought so, as they will incline and turn to repentance: in which respect he slayeth long before that he inflict any punishment upon delinquents, who are not altogether past grace incorrigible: for considering withall, and knowing as he doth, what portion of virtue, foules have drawn from him in their creation, at what time as they were created first and came into the world, as also how powerful and forcible is the generosity thereof, and nothing weak and feeble in it self: but that it is clean contrary to their proper nature, to bring forth vices, which are engendered either by ill education, or else by the contagious haunt of lewd company; and how afterward, when they be well cured and medicined (as it falleth out in some persons) they soon return unto their own natural habitude, and become good again: by reason hereof, God doth not make haste to punish all men alike, but look what he knoweth to be incurable: that he quickly ridderth away out of this life and cureth it off, as a very hurtful member to others, but yet most harmful to it self, if it should vermoe converse with wickedness: but to such persons in whom (by all likelihood) vices bred and engendered, rather through ignorance of goodness, then upon any purpose and will to chafe mightiness, he giveth time and respite for to change and amend: howbeit, if they persist still, and continue in their lewd ways, he payeth them home likewise in the end, and never teacheth that they shall escape his hands one time or other, but suffer condign punishment for their delicts. That this is true, consider what great alterations there happen in the life and behaviour of men, and how many have been reclaimed and turned from their lewdness: which is the reason that in Greek our behaviour and conversation is called *parenesis*: that is to say, A correction; and in part *paides*: the one, because mens manners be subject to change and mutation: the other for that they be ingendered by art or custom: and the impression thereof being once taken, they remain firm and sure: that is the cause also (as I suppose) that our ancients in old time attributed unto King *Cercops* his own nature and form, calling him Double: not for that (as some said, of good clemency, and virtuous Prince, he became a rigorous, fell and cruel tyrant, like a dragon; but contrariwise,

because

because (having been at the first perverse, crooked and terrible) he proved afterward, a mild and gentle Lord: and if we make any doubt hereof in him, yet we may be sure (at leastwise) that *Gelon* and *Hiero* in *Sicily*, yea, and *Pisistratus* the son of *Hippocrates*, all usurpers (who attained to their tyrannical dominion by violent and indirect means) used the same virtuously: and howsoever they came unto their sovereign rule by unlawful and unjust means, yet they grew in time to be good governors loving and profitable to the common-weale, and likewise beloved and dear unto their subjects; for some of them having brought in and established most excellent laws in the country, and caused their Citizens and Subjects to be industrious and painful in tilling the ground; made them to be civil, sober and discreet, whereas before, they were given to be ridiculous, as noted for their laughter and lavish tongues: to be true labourers also, and painful, who had been idle and playful. And as for *Gelon*, after he had most valiantly warred against the Carthaginians, and defeated them in a great battle: when they craved peace, would never grant it unto them, unless this might be comprised among the Articles and Capitulations: That they should no more sacrifice their Children unto *Saturn*. In the city also of *Megalopolis* there was a tyrant named *Lydiades*, who in the midst of his usurped dominion repented of his tyranny, and made a conscience thereof, detesting that wrongful oppression wherein he held his subjects, in such sort, as he reformed his Citizens to their ancient Laws and Liberties, yea, and afterwards died manfully in the field fighting against his enemies in the defence of his country. Now if any one had killed *Mitridates* at the first, whiles he exercised tyranny in *Chersonesus*: or if any other had called judicially into question *Cimon*, ending him for keeping his own sister, and so being condemned of incest, had caused him to be put to death: or disfranchised and banished *Themistocles* out of the City, for his loose wantonness and licentious insolency shewed publicly in the Common place, as *Alcibiades* afterwards was served and prokribed, for the like excess and riot committed in his youth:

*Where had been then that famous victory*

*Attained on the plains of Marathon?*

*Where had been that renowned chivalry*

*Performed near the stream Eurymedon?*

*Or at the mount, fair Artemision?*

*Where Athens youth (as Poet Pindare said)*

*Of freedom first, the glorious ground-work laid*

For so it is, that great natures and high minds can bring forth no mean matters; nor the vehement force of action which is in them remain idle, so lively and subtle it is, but they waver to and fro continually, as if they were tossed by tempest and wind upon the sea, until such time as they come to be settled in a constant, firm, and permanent habitude of manners: like as therefore, he who is altogether unskillful of husbandry and tillage, maketh no reckoning at all of a ground which he seeth full of rough bushes and thickets, beset with savage trees, and overpread with rank weeds: wherein although there be many wild beasts, many rivers, and by consequence, a great store of mud and mire: but contrariwise, an expert husband, and one who hath good judgement, and can discern the difference of things, knoweth these and all such signs, to betoken a fertile and plentiful soile: even so great wits and haughty spirits do produce and put forth at the first, many strange, absurd, and lewd pranks, which were not able to endure, think that the roughness and offensive pricks thereof, ought immediately to be cropped off and cut away: but he who can judge better (considering what proceedeth from thence good and generous) attendeth and expecteth with patience the age and season, which is cooperative with virtue and reason, against which time, the strong nature in such, is for to bring forth and yield her proper and peculiar fruit. And thus much may suffice of this matter.

But to proceed forward: think you not that some of the Greeks have done well and wisely, to make a transcript of a Law in *Egypt*, which commandeth that in case a woman who is attaint and convicted of a Capital crime, for which in justice she ought to die, be with Child, she should be kept in prison until she were delivered? Yes verily, they all answered? Well then (quoth I) See care there be some one who hath no children conceived in his womb to bring forth, but breedeth some good counsel in his head, he conceiveth a great enterprise in his mind, which he is to bring to light, and effect in time, either by discovering an hidden mischief, or setting abroad an expedient and profitable counsel, or inventing some matter of necessary consequence: Think you not that he did better, who deferred the execution of such an ones punishment and stay until the utility that might grow by him were seen, than he who inconsiderately, and in all haste proceedeth to take revenge, and prevent the opportunity of such a benefit? Certes, for mine own part, I am fully of that mind: and even we no less, answered *Parocleus*. Well then (quoth I) it must needs be so: for mark thus much: If *Dionysius* had been punished for his usurped rule, in the beginning of his tyranny: there should not one Grecian have remained inhabitant in *Sicily*, for the Carthaginians would have held the same and driven them all out: like as it must needs have befallen to the City *Apollonia*, to *Anactorium*, and the *Chersonese* or demi Island *Leucadia*, if *Periander* had suffered punishment at first, and not a long time after, as he did. And I suppose verily that the punishment and revenge of *Cassander* was put off and prolonged of purpose, until by that means the City of *Thebes* was fully re-edified and peopled again. And many of those mercenary soldiers and strangers, who seized and held this Temple wherein we are, during the time of the sacred war,



passed under the conduct of *Timoleon* into *Steily*, who after they had defeated in battel, the Carthaginians, and withall suppressed and abolished sundry tyrannies, they came to a wretched end, wicked wretches as they were. For God in great wilddome and providence, other whiles maketh use of some wicked persons, as of butchers and common executioners, to torment and punish others, as wicked as they or worse, whom afterwards he destroyeth; and thus in mine opinion he dealeth with most part of tyrants. For like as the gall of the wild beast *Hyana*, and the rendles or remnet of the Sea-Calf, as also other parts of venomous beasts and serpents, have one medicinable property or other, good to heale sundry maladies of men; even so God seeing some people to have need of bit and bridle, and to be chastised for their enormities, sendeth unto them some inhumane tyrant, or a rigorous and inexorable Lord to whip and scourge them, and never giveth over to afflict and vex them, until he have purged and cleared them of that malady wherewith they were infected. Thus was *Phalaris* the tyrant a medicine to the Agrigentines: thus *Marcius* was sent as a remedy to cure the Romans; as for the Sicyonians, even god himselfe *Apollon* foretold them by Oracle: That their City had need of certain Officers to whippe and scourge them, at what time as they would perforce take from the Cleoneans, a certaine young boy named *Telesias*, who was crowned in the Solemnity of the Pythian games, pretending that he was their Citizen, and born among them, whom they hailed and pulled in such fort, as they dismembred him: But these Sicyonians met afterwards with *Orthagoras* that tyrannized over them; and when hee was gone, they were plagued also with *Myron* and *Clisphenes*, and their favorites, who held them in so short, that they kept them from all outrages, and stayed their inblent follies: whereas the Cleoneans, who had not the like purgative medicine to cure them, were subverted, and through their mildemeanor come to nothing. Mark well therefore that which *Homer* in one place saith:

*His son he was, And in all kind of valour did surmount  
His father firs who was (to say a truth) of base account.*

And yet this son of *Copreus* never performed (in all his life) any memorable act, becomming a man of worth and honour: whereas the off-spring of *Sisyphus*, the race of *Antiochus*, and the posterity of *Phlegyas* flourished in glory, and all manner of vertue among great Kings and Princes. At *Athen* likewise, *Pericles* defended from an home communicate and accused: And so at *Rome* *Pompey* surnamed *Magnus*, that is, the Great, had for his father one *Strabo*, a man whom the people of *Rome* so hated, that when he was dead, they threw his corps out of the bier whereinto it was carried forth to burial, and trampled it under their feet. What absurdity then were it, if as the husband man never cutteth up, or hocketh the thorn or bush, before he hath gathered the tender sprouts and buds thereof: nor they of *Libya* burn the boughs of the plant *Ledrom*, until they have gotten the aromaticall gum or liquor out of it called *Ladanum*; even so God never plucketh up by the root, the race of any noble and royal family (wicked and wretched though they be) before it hath yielded some good and profitable fruit: for it had been far better and more expedient for the men of *Phocis*, that ten thousand Bees, and as many Hories of *Iphitus* had died; that the Delphians likewise had lost much more Gold and Silver by far, then that either *Ulysses* or *Aesculapius* should not have been borm; or others in like case, whose parents being wicked and vicious, were themselves honest and very profitable to the Common-wealth. Are we not then to think, that it were far better to punish in due time and manner convenient, then to proceed unto revenge hastily and out of hand? like as that was of *Callippus* the Athenian, who making semblance of friendship unto *Dion*, stabbed him at once with his dagger, and was himselfe afterwards killed with the same, by his friends: as also that other of *Mitius* the Argive, who was murdered in a certaine commotion and civil broil: for it hapned so, that in a frequent assembly of the people, gathered together in the market place, for to behold a solemn shew, a statue of brasse fell upon the murderer of *Mitius*, and killed him outright. And you have heard (I am sure) *O Patroclus* (have you not?) what befell unto *Bellus* the Pconian, and *Arifon* the Cretian, two Colonels of mercenary and foreign souldiers? No verily (quoth he) but I would gladly know: This *Arifon* (quoth I) having stolen and carried away out of this Temple, certain jewels and costly furniture of Queen *Eriphyle*, which of long time had there been kept safe, by the grant and permission of the tyrants who ruled this City, carried them as a pretent to his wife; but his son being on a time (upon some occasion) displeased and angry with his mother, set fire on the house, and burnt it with all that was within it. As for *Bellus*, who had murdered his own father, he continued a good while not detected, until such time, as being one day at supper with certain of his friends that were strangers, with the head of his spear he pierced and cast down a swallows nest, and so killed the young birds within it: and when thosethat stood by, seemed (as good reason there was) to say unto him: How cometh this to passe, good sir and what aile you, that you have committed so lewd and horrible an act? Why (quoth he again) do these birds cry aloud and bear false witness against me, testifying that I have murdered mine own Father? he had no sooner let fall this word, but those who were present rook hold thereof, and wondering much thereat, went directly to the King, and gave information of him; who made lo diligent inquisition, that the thing upon examination was discovered, and *Bellus* (for his part) punished accordingly for a Parricide. Thus much (I say) have we related, that it may be held as a confessed truth and supposition, that wicked men other whiles have some delay of their punishment: as for the rest, you are to think that you ought to hearken unto *Hesiodus* the Poet, who saith not as

*Plas*

*Plato* did, that the punishment of sin doth follow sin hard at the heels, but is of the same time and age, as born and bred in one place with it, and springing out of the very same root and stock: for these be his words in one place:

*Had counsel who deviseth first,  
Unto him selfe shall find it worst.*

And in another:

*Who doth for others mischief frame,  
To his own heart contrives the same.*

The venomous flies *Cantharides* are said to contain in themselves a certain remedy, made and compounded by a contrariety or antipathy in nature, which serveth for their own counter-poison: but wickednesse ingendering within it selfe (I wot not what) dispeasure and punishment, not after a sinful act is committed, but even at the very instant of committing, it begetteth to suffer the pain due to the offence: neither is there a malefactor, but when he keth others like himselfe punished in their bodies, bear forthwith his own crosse: whereas mischievous wickednesse rameth other (elie, the engines of her own torment, as being a wonderful artizan of a miserable life, which (together with shame and reproach) hath in it lamentable calamities, many terrible fighes, fearful perturbations and passions of the spirit, remorse of conscience, desperate repentance, and continual troubles and uneasinesse. But some men there be, who for all the world resemble little children, that beholding many times in the Theatre, lewd and naughty persons arrayed in cloath of gold, rich mantles, and robes of purple, adorned also with Crowns upon their heads, when they either dance or play their parts upon the stage, have them in great admiration, as reputed them right happy, until such time as they see them how they be either pricked and pierced with goads, or tending flames of fire out of those gorgeous, costly and sumptuous vestments. For to say a truth, many wicked persons, who dwell in latey houses, are defended from noble parentage, sit in high places of authority, bear great dignities and glorious titles, are not known (for the most part) what plagues and punishments they sustain, before they be seen to have their throats cut, or their necks broken, by being cast down headlong from on high; which a man is not to term punishments simply, but rather the final end and accomplishment thereof. For like as *Heracles* of *Sclambria*, being fallen in to an incurable phthisick or consumption, by the nicker of the lunger, was the last man (as *Plato* saith) who in the cure of the said disease, joyned with other Physick bodily exercise, and in so doing, drew out and prolonged death, both to himselfe and all others who were likewise infected with that malady: even so may we say, that wicked persons (as many as seem to have escaped a present plague, and the stroke of punishment out of hand) suffer in truth, the pain due for their sinful acts not in the end only and a great time after, but sustain the same a longer time: so that the vengeance taken for their sinful life is nothing slower, but much more produced and drawn out to the length: neither be they punished at the last in their old age, but they was old rather in punishment, which they have endured all their life. Now when I speak of long time, I mean it in regard of our selves: for in respect of the gods, the whole race of mans life (how long soever it be thought) is a matter of nothing, or no more then the very moment and point of the instant. For say, that a malefactor should suffer the space of thirty yeares for some heinous fact that he hath committed, it is all one, as if a man should stretch him upon the rack, or hang him upon a gibbet in the evening toward night, and not in the morning betimes; especially, seeing that such an one (all the while that he liveth) remaineth close and laid shut up (as it were) in a strong prison or cage, out of which he hath no means to make an escape and get away. Now if in the mean while they make many casts, mannage sundry matters, and enterprize divers things: if they give presents and largesses abroad; and if they give themselves to their disports and pleasures: it is even as much, and ail one as when malefactors (during the time they be in prison) should play at dice or ockall game, having continually over head the rope hanging, which must strangle them: for otherwise, we might as well say, that prisoners condemned to die, suffer no punishment at all the whiles they lie in hard and cold irons, nor until the executioner come and strike the head from the shoulders: or that he who by sentence of the Judges hath drunk the deadly potion of hemlock, is not punished, because he walketh still, and goeth up and down alive, waiting until his legs become heavy, before the general cold and congelation trippe him, and extinguish both lenie and vital spirits, in case it were so, that we esteem and call by the name of punishment, nothing but the last point and extremity thereof: letting passe and making no reckoning at all of the passions, fears, painful pangs, expectance of death, pricks and sorrows of a penitent conscience, wherewith every wicked person is troubled and tormented: for this were as much as to say, that the fish which hath swallowed down the hook, is not caught, until wee see the said fish cut in pieces, or broiled, roasted and tiddied by the Cook. Certes, every naughty person is presently become prisoner unto justice, so soon as he hath once committed a sinful act, and swallowed the hook together with the bait of sweetnesse and pleasure, which he taketh in lewdnesse and wrongful doing; but when the remorse of conscience imprinted in him, doth prick, he feelth the very torments of hell, and cannot rest;

*But as in sea the Tunny fish doth swiftly crosse the waves,  
And trawlers still while tempest lasts, so he with anguish roaves.*

For this audacious rashnesse and violent insolence (proper unto vice) is very puissant, forward and ready

P p 3



ready at hand, to the effecting and execution of sinful acts; but afterwards, when the passion (like unto a wind) is layed, and begins to faile, it becometh weak, baile, and feeble, fubject to an infinite number of fears and fuperftitions; in fuch fort, as that *Stefichorus* the Poet feemeth to have devifed the dream of queen *Clytemneftira*, very conformable to the truth, and anfwerable to our daily experience, when he bringeth her in, fpeaking in this manner:

*Metoughts I faw a dragon come apace,  
Whofe creft aloft on head \* with blood was fteind;  
With that anon here did appear in place  
Plithenides the King, who that time reign'd.*

\* edg.  
\* fteind  
\* key.  
which fone  
interpret:  
Having a  
man's head.

For the vifions by night in dreams, the fanfatical apparitions in the day time, the answers of Oracles, the prodigious figns from heaven, and in one word, whatsoever men think to be done immediately by the will and finger of God, are wont to ftrike great troubles and horrors into fuch perfons fo affected, and whole confciences are burdened with the guilt and privy of fin. Thus the report goeth of *Apollodorus*, that he dreamed upon a time, how he faw himfelfe firft flayed by the Scythians, then cut as fmall as flefh to the pot, and fo boyled; he thought alfo, that his heart fpoke foily from out of the Cauldron, and uttered thefe words: I am the caule of all thefe thy evils: againe, hee imagined in his fleep, that his own daughters, all burning on a light flaming fire, ran round about him in a Circle. Semblably *Hipparchus* the fon of *Pifistratus*, a little before his death, dreamed that *Venus* out of certain vail fpinkled blood upon his face. The familiar friends likewife of King *Ptolemus*, furnamed *Ceraneus*, that is to fay, Lightning, thought verily in a dream that they faw *Selenus* accufe and endite him judicially before wild Wolves, and greedy Geirs that were his Judges, where he dealt and diftributed a great quantity of flefh among his enemies. *Pausanias* alfo at *Bizantium*, fent for *Cleoneia*, a Virgin and Gentlewoman free born, of a worfhipfull houfe; intending perforce to lie with her all night, and abufe her body; but being halfe afleep when he came to his bed, he awaked in a fright, and fufpecting that fome enemies were about to furprize him, killed her outright; whereupon ever after he dreamt ordinarily, that he faw her, and heard her pronounce this fpeech:

*To judgement feat, approach thou neer I fay,  
Wrong dealing is to men moft hurtful ay.*

Now when this vifion as it fhould feem ceafed not to appear unto him night by night; he embarked and failed up, *Heraclia*, to a place where the fpirits and ghofts of thofe that are departed be raifed and called up, where after he had offered certain propitiatory fuffrages, and poured forth funeral effufions, which they ufe to caft upon the Tombs of the dead; he wrought fo effectually, that the ghof of *Cleoneia* appeared; and then he faid unto him, that fo foon as he was arrived at *Lacedaemon*, hee fhould have repofe and end of all his troubles: and fo in very truth, no fooner was he thither come, but he ended his life and died. If therefore the foul had no fenfe after it is departed out of the body, but cometh to nothing; and that death were the final end and expiration as well of thankfull recompens, as of painful punishments, a man might fay of wicked perfons who are quickly punifhed, and die foon after that they have committed any mifdeeds; that God dealeth very gently and mildly with them: For if continuance of time, and long life bringeth to wicked perfons no other harm; yet a man may at leaft wife fay thus much of them, that having known by proof, and found by experience, that in juftice is an unfruitfull, barren, and thankleffe thing, bringing forth no good thing at all, nor ought that deferreth to be eftemed after many travels and much pains taken with it; yet the very feeling and remorse of confcience for their fins, difquieteth and troubleth the mind, and turneth it upfide down. Thus we read of King *Lysimachus*, that being forced through extreame thirft, he delivered his own perfon, and his whole army into the hands of the *Getes*; and when being their prifoner, he had drunk and quenched his thirft, he faid thus: O what a mifery is this, and wretched caufe of mine, that for fo fhort and tranfitory a pleasure, I have deprived my felfe of fo great a Kingdom, and all my royaletate. True it is, that of all things it is an exceeding hard matter to refift the neceffity of a natural paffion; but when as a man for covetoufneffe of money, or defire of glory, authority, and credit among his country-men and fellow Citizens, or for flefhly pleasures, faileth to commit a foul, wicked, and execrable fact, and then afterwards in time, when as the ardent thirft and furious heat of his paffion is paff, feeing that there abide and continue with him, the filthy, shameful, and perilous perturbations only of injuftice and finfulneffe; but nothing at all that is profitable, neceffary, or delightfome; is it not very likely and probable, that he fhall flickefones, and oftentimes recal into this thought, and confideration? how being feducd and carried away by the means of vain glory, or difhoneft pleasures (things bale, vile, and illiberal) he hath perverted and overthrowen the moft beautiful and excellent gifts that men have, to wit, right, equity, juftice, and piety; and in ftead thereof, hath filed and polluted his life with shame, trouble, and danger? For like as *Simondeis* was wont to fay in mirth: That he found one coffer of filver and money alwayes full; but that other of favours, thanks, and benefits, evermore empty; even fo wicked men, when they come to examine and perufe aright the vice that is in themfelves, they find it prefently (for one pleasure which is accompanied with a little vain and glofing delight) void altogether and detiaue of hope; but fully replenifhed with fears, cares, anxieties, the unpleasant remembrance of mifdeemours paff, fufpicion of future events, and diftruff for the prefent: much after the manner as wee doe hear Lady *Ino* in the Theatres, repenting of thofe foul facts which fhe had committed, and fpeaking thefe words upon the ftage:

*How fhould I now, my friends, and Ladies deer  
Begin to keep the houfe of Athamas;  
Since that all whiles that I have lived here,  
Naught hath been done by me that decent was?*

Or thus:

*How may I keep, O Ladies deer alas,  
The houfe again of my Lord Athamas,  
As who therein had not committed ought  
Of thofe lewd parts which I have done and wrought.*

For feemably it is meet that the mind and foul of every finfull and wicked perfon fhould ruminare and difcours of this point in it felfe after this manner: After what fort fhould I forget and put out of remembrance the unjuft and lewd parts which I have committed? how fhould I caft off the remors of confcience from me? and from henceforth begin to turn over a new leafe, and lead another life: for furely with thofe in whom wickedneffe beareth fway, and is predominant, there is nothing affured, nothing firm and conftant, nothing fincere and found, unleffe haply we will fay and maintain; that wicked perfons and unjuft were fome Sages and wife Philofophers. But we are to think, that where avarice reigneth and excefive concupifcence, and love of pleasure, or where extreame envy dwelleth, accompanied with fpite and malice; there if you mark and look well about, you fhall find fuperftition lying hidden among, floth and unwillingneffe to labour, fear of death, lighneffe and finifperitition lying in changing of mind and affection, together with vain-glory proceeding of arrogance; thofe who blame them, they fear, fuch as praife them, they dread and fufpect; as knowing well how they are injured and wronged by their deceitfull femblance, and yet be the greateft enemies of the wicked, for that they commend fo readily, and with affection, thofe whom they fufpect, and take to be honeft: for in vice and fin (like as in bad iron) the hardneffe is but weak and rotten, and the fuffineffe alfo brittle and eafie to be broken: and therefore wicked men (learning in proceffe of time, better to know themfelves what they are) after they come once to the full confideration thereof, are difpleafed, and discontented, they hate themfelves, and detest their own lewd life: for it is not likely that it a naughty perfon otherwife (though not in the higheft degree, who hath regard to deliver again a pawn or price of money left in his hands to keep; who is ready to be furely for his familiar friend, and upona bravery and glorious mind, hath given largelfes, and is preft to maintain and defend his country, yea, and to augment and advance the good estate thereof) foon repent and immediately be grieved for that which he hath done, by reafon that his mind is fo mutable, or his will fo apt to be feducd by an opinion or conceit of his: confidering that even fome of thofe who have had the honor to be received by the whole body of the people in open theater, with great applaufe and clapping of hands, incontinently fall to fight to themfelves, and groan again, fo foon as avarice returneth fecretly, in place of glorious ambition: thofe that kill and facifice men to uturp and fet up their tyrannies, or to maintain and compaffe fome confpiracies, as *Apollodorus* did; circumvent and defraud their friends of their goods and moneys, which was the practice of *Glaucon* the fon of *Epiccydes*, fhould never repent their mifdeeds, nor grow into a detestation of themfelves, nor yet be difpleafed with that they have done: For mine own part. I am of this opinion (if it be lawful fo to fay) That all thofe who commit fuch impieties and mildemeanors, have no need either of God or man to punifh them: for their own life only being fo corrupt, and wholly depraved and troubled with all kind of wickedneffe, is fufficient to plague and torment them to the full: But confider (quoth I) whether this difcours feem not already to proceed further, and be drawn out longer then the time will permit. Then *Timon* answered: It may well fo be, if peradventure we regard the length and prolixity of that which followeth and remaineth to be difcuffed: as for my felf, I am now ready to rife as it were out of an ambuifh, and to come as a frefh and new Champion with my left doubt and queftion, fo far as much as me thinks, we have debated enough already upon the former; for this would I have you to think, that although we are fient and fay nothing, yet we complain as *Emripides* did, who boldly challenged and reproached the gods for that

*The parents fin, and their iniquity  
They turn on children and pofterity.*

For faye no more need to chafte thofe, who have committed a fault, were punifhed, then is there no more need to chafte others, who have not offended, confidering it were no reafon at alito punifh twice for one fault: the delinquents themfelves: or be it fo, that through negligence they having omitted the punifhment of wicked perfons and offenders, they would long after make them to pay forie who are innocent; furely they do not well, by this injuftice to make amends for the faid negligence. Like as is reported of *Alope*, who in times paff came hither to this City, being fent from King *Craffus* as it is a great fum of Gold, for to facifice unto god *Apollin* in magnificent wife, yea, and to diftribute among all the Citizens of *Delphos*, four pounds a piece: but it fortuned fo, that he fell out with the inhabitants of the City upon fome occafion, and was exceeding angry with them, in fomuch as hee performed indeed the facifice accordingly, but the reft of the money which hee fhould have dealt among the people, hee fent back again to the City of *Sardis*, as if the *Delphians* had not been worthy to enjoy the Kings liberality; whereupon they taking great indignation, laid facrilege unto his charge, for detaining (in fuch fort) that facred money; and in truth after that had condemned him thereof, they pitched him down headlong from that high rock they call *Hyampis*, for which act of theirs

\* *Mimis*  
\* *theocritus*



on was invented that manner of Sophisters arguing, which they call the Croissant argument; for thus they reason: He that long since borrowed or took up money, now oweth it not, because he is no more himselfe, but become another: and he that yesterday was invited to a feast, commeth this day as an unbidden guest, considering that he is now another man. And verily, divers ages make greater difference in each one of us; then they do commonly in Cities and States: for he that had seen the City of *Athens* thirty years agoe, and came to visit it at this day, would know it to be altogether the very same that then it was: inasmuch as the manners, customs, motions, games, pastimes, serious affaires, favours of the people, their pleasures, displeasures and anger at this present, resemble wholly those in ancient time: whereas if a man be any long time out of sight, hardly his very familiar friend shall be able to know him, his countenance will be so much changed; and as touching his manners and behaviour, which alter and change so soone upon every occasion, by reason of all sorts of labour, travell, accidents and lawes, there is such variety and so great alteration, that even he who is ordinarily acquainted and conversant with him, would marvel to see the strangeness and novelty thereof: and yet the man is held and reputed still the same; from his nativity unto his dying day: and in like case, a City remaineth always one and the selfe same; in which respect we deem it great reason, that it should participate awhile the blame and reproch of unclesons, as enjoy their glory and puissance, unless we make no care to call all things in the river of *Hercules*, into which (by report) no one thing entrench twile, for that it hath a property to alter all things and change their nature. Now if it be so, that a City is an united and continued thing in it selfe, we are to think no less of a race and progeny, which dependeth upon one and the same stock, producing and bringing forth a certain power and communication of qualities, and the same doth reach and extend to all those who descend from it: neither is the thing engendered of the same nature that a piece of worke is, wrought by art, which incontinently is separate from the workman, for that it is made by him, and not of him: whereas contrariwise, that which is naturally engendered, is formed of the very substance of that which engendered it, in such sort as it doth carry about it some part thereof, which by good right deferreth either to be punished or to be honoured even in it selfe. And were it not, that I might be thought to jest and speak in game and not in good earnest, I would avow and pronounce assuredly, that the Athenians offered more wrong and abuse unto the fallen flame of *Cassander*, which they caused to be defaced and melted; and likewise the dead corpe of *Dionysius* suffered more injury at the hands of the Syracusians, which after his death they caused to be carried out of their confines, then if they had proceeded in rigor of justice against their offspring and posterity; for the said image of *Cassander* did not participate one whit of his nature; and the soule of *Dionysius* was departed a good while before out of his body: whereas *Nisus*, *Apollonares*, *Antipater*, *Philip* and all such other, descended from vicious and wicked parents, retained still the chief and principal part which is in them inbred, and remaineth not quiet, idle and doing nothing, but such as whereby they live and are nourished, whereby they negotiate, reason and discourse: neither ought it to seem strange and incredible, that being of their issue, they should likewise retain their qualities and inclinations. In some, I say and asseme, that like as in Physick, whatsoever is hol-some and profitable, the same is also just; and worthy where to be laughed at and mocked, that calleth him unjust, who for the *Sciatia* or disease of the huckle-bone, would cauterize the thumbe; or when the liver is impostumate, scarifie the belly; and if kine or oxen be tender and soft in clees, anoint the extremities and tips of their hornes: even so he deferreth to be scorned and reproved as a man of a shallow conceit, who in chastisement of vice, esteemeth any other thing just, than that which may cure and heale the same; or who is offended and angry if the medicine be applied, or a course of Physick used into some parts for curing others; as they do who open a veine for to heale the inflammation of the eyes: such an one (I say) seemeth to see and perceive no further then his owne outward senses lead him, and remembereth not well, that a schoolmaster often times in whipping one of his scholars, keepeth all the rest in awe and good order: and a great captain and generall of the field, in putting to death for exemplary justice, one souldier in every ten, reformeth all besides, and reduceth them to their duty: and even so there happen not only to one part by another, but also one soul by another, certaine dispositions, as well to worke and impairing, as to better and amendment, yea, and much more than to one body by the means of another: for that there to wit, in a body, there mult (by all likelihood) be one impression and the same alteration; but here, the soule, which oftentimes is led and carried away by imagination, either to be confident, or distrustfull and timorous, fareth better or worke accordingly. And as I was going forward to speake, *Olympicus* interrupting my speech: By the words of yours (quoth he) you seem to set down as a supposal, a subject matter of great consequence and discourse, to wit, the immortality of the soule, as it remained (till after the separation from the body) Yea may (quoth he) and even this have I inferred by that which you do now grant, or rather have granted therefore: for our discourse hath been from the beginning profecuted to this presupposed point: That God dealeth and distributeth to every of us according as we have deserved. And how (quoth he) doth this follow necessarily, that in case God doth behold all human affaires, and dispoise of every particular thing here upon earth, the soules should become either immortal and incorruptible, or else continue in their entire estate long after death? O good sir (quoth I) be content, is God (think you) to be so minded, or employed in so smal and trifling matters, and having so little to do, that (when we have no divine thing in us, nor ought that in any sort resembleth him, or is firm and durable,

but

but that continually decay, fade and perish like unto leaves of trees (as *Homer* saith) and that in a small time) he should all on a sudden make so great account of us (like to those women, who cherish and keep their gardens (as they say) of *Adonis* within brittle pots and pans of earthen) as to make our souls, for one day to flourish and looke green within our fleshly body, which is not capable of any strong root of life, and then within a while after, suffer them to be extinguished and to dy upon the least occasion in the world? But if you please, let us passe other gods, and consider woe a little this our God only, him I mean, who is honoured and advocated in this place, namely whether he (knowing that the soules of the dead are presently exhaled and vanished away to nothing, like unto a vapour or smoak, breathing forth of our bodies) doth ordein incontinently obligations to be offered, and propitiatory sacrifices to be made for the departed? and whether he demand not great honours, worship and veneration in the memorial of the dead? or whether he doth it to abuse and deceive those that beleeve accordingly? For I assure you, for my part, I will never grant that the soul dieth, but remaineth still after death, unless some one or other (as by report *Hercules* did in old time) come first and take away the propheticall flook or trelect of *Pythias*, and destroy the oracle for ever rendring any more answers, as it hath delivered even unto these our dayes, such as by report was given in old time to *Corax* the Naxian in these words:

*Impiety great it is for to beleve,*

*That soules do die, and not for ever live.*

Then *Procles*: What prophesie (quoth he) was this? and who wast this *Corax*? for surely the thing it selfe, and and that very name, be both of them strange and unknown to me: That cannot be (quoth I) but think better of the matter: for it is long of me who have used this surname in stead of his proper name; for I mean him who slew *Archilochus* in battell, whose name indeed was *Cal-laudon*, but men furnished him *Corax*: This man was at the first rejected by the prophetess *Pythias*, as a murderer who had killed a worthy personage consecrated & devoted unto the Muses; but afterwards having used certain prayers and requests, together with divers allegations of excuse, pretending to justify his fact in the end he was enjoyed by the oracle, to go to the house and habitation of *Archilochus*, and there by certain expiatory sacrifices & oblations, to appease and pacifie the ghost of *Archilochus*: now this house of *Tetrix* was the cape of promontory *Tanarus*; for it is said, *Tetrix* the Candian, arriving with his fleet in time past, at the head of *Tanarus*, there built a City, and inhabited it, near unto the place where the manner was to conjure Spirits, and raise the ghosts of those that were departed: The flemable answer being made to those of *Sparta*, namely, that they should make means to pacifie the soule of *Pausanias*, they sent as far as into Italy for sacrificers exorcists, who had the skill to conjure Spirits, and they with their sacrifices chased his ghost out of the Temple: This is one reason therefore (quoth I) that doth confirme and prove, that both the world is governed by the providence of God, and also, that the soules of men do continue after death: neither is it possible that we should admit the one, and deny the other: if it be so then that the soule of man hath a substance and being after death: it is more probable and soundeth to greater reason, that it should then either tast of paine or punishment, or enjoy honour or reward: for during here upon earth, it is in continual combat in manner of a champion; but after all combats performed and finished, then the receiveth according to her deserts. Now as touching those honours and punishments which receiveth in that other world, being alone by her selfe, and separate from the body, the same concerne and touch us nothing at all, who remaine alive: for either we know them not, or give no be-lieve thereto; but such as be either conferred or inflicted upon their children and posterity, for that they be apparent and evident to the world, those do containe and curb wicked men, that they do not execute their malicious designs: And considering that there is no punishment more ignominious, or that commeth neerer the quick, and toucheth the heart more, then for men to see their offspring, or those that depend upon them, afflicted for their sake and punished for their faults; and that the soul of a wicked person, enemy to God and to all good lawes, seeth after his death, not his images and Statues, or any enignes of honour overthrow, but his owne children, his friends, and kindred ruinate, undone and persecuted with great miseries and tribulations, suffering grievous punishment for it: there is no man I think, but would chuse rather to forgoe all the honours of *Jupiter*, if he might have them, then to become againe either unjust or intemperate and lascivious: And for the better testimony and truth thereof, I could relate unto you a narration which was delivered unto me no long since but that I am afraid you will take it for a fabulous tale, devised to make sport: In regard whereof I hold it better to alledge unto you nothing but substantiall reason, and arguments grounded upon very good likelihood and probability. Not so (quoth *Olympicus*) in any case; but rehearse unto us the narration which you speake of: And when others also requested the same at my hands: Suffer me yet first (quoth I) to set abroad those reasons which carry some good shew of truth, and then afterwards, if you think well off, I will recite the fable also: if it be as fable: As for *Bian*, when he saith, that God in punishing the children of wicked men and sinners for their fathers, is much more ridiculous than the Physician, who for the malady of father or grandfather, giveth about to minister medicine unto the children or nephews: surely this comparison faulteth therein: that things be partly flemable, and in part divers and unlike; for if one be cured of a disease by medicinable means, this doth not by and by heal the malady or disposition of another: For never was there man yet being sick of a fever, or troubled with bleed and impostumate eyes, became cured by seeing an oynment applied, or a salve laid unto another: But contrarywise, the punishment

or

or execution of justice upon malefactors; is for this cause done publicly before all the world, that justice being manifest with reason and discretion, should effect thus much, namely, to keep in hand and retain some by the chastisement and correction of others: But that point wherein the foresaid comparison of *Bion* answereth to our matter in question; himselfe never understood; for many times it falleth out, that a man being fallen sick of a dangerous disease, howbeit not incurable, yet through his intemperance and disorder afterwards, suffereth his body to grow into greater weakness and decay, untill at last he dyeth: whereupon his son after him being not actually surprised with the same disease, but onely disposed thereto, a learned physician, some trusty friend, or an expert annoier, and master of exercises, perceiving so much, or rather indeed a kind friend and gentle master and governor, who hath a carefull eye over him, taketh him in hand, bringeth him to an exquisite manner of austere diet, cutteth off all superfluity of viands, dainty cates, & banqueting dishes, debarreth him of unseasonable drinkings, and the company of women; purgeth him continually with foveraigne medicines, keepeth his body down by ordinary labour and exercise, & so doth dissipate and dispatch the first beginning and small inclination to a dangerous disease, in not permitting it to have head and to grow forward to any greatness: And is not this an usual practise among us to admonish those who are borne of sickly and diseased parents, to take good heed unto themselves, and not to neglect their indisposition, but sometimes even at the very first to endeavor for to remove and rid away the root of such inbred maladies, which they bring with them into the world? for sure it is an easie matter to expell and drive out, yea, and to conquer and overcome the same, by prevention in due time: Yes verily answered they all. Well then (quoth I) we commit no absurdity, nor do any ridiculous thing, but that which is right, necessary and profitable, when we ordeine and prescribe for the children of those who are subject to the falling sickness, to madnesse, phrenesie and the gout, exercises of the body, diets, regiments of life, and medicines appropriate for those maladies, not when they are sick thereof, but by way of precaution, to prevent that they should not fall into them: for the body indangered of a corrupt and diseased body, neither needeth nor deseriveth any punishment, but physick rather by good medicines and careful attendance; which diligence and heedfull regard, if any one upon wantonnesse, nicety and delicacy do all chastisement, because it depriveth a man of pleasures and delights, or happily inferreth some sort of paine, let him go as he is; we paise not for him. Now if it be expedient to cure and medicine carefully one body illued and defended from another that is corrupt, is it meet and convenient to let go the resemblance of an hereditary vice, which begetteth to bud and sprout in a young man, so stay and suffer it (I say) to grow on still, burgen and spread into all affections, untill it appear in the view of the whole world? for as *Pindarus* saith:

*The foolish heart doth bring forth from within  
Her hidden fruit, corrupt and full of sin.*

And think you not that in this point God is wiser than the Poet *Hesiodus*, who admonisheth us and giveth counsell in this wise:

*No children get, if thou be newly come  
From dolefull grave or heavy funerall:  
But spare not when thou art returned home  
From solemn feast of Gods celestiall.*

as if he would induce men to beget their children, when they be jocund, fresh and merry, for that the generation of them received the impression, not of vertue and vice onely, but also of joy, sadness, and all other qualities: howbeit, this is not a work of humane wildome (as *Hesiodus* supposed) but of God himselfe, to discern and foreknow perfectly either the conformities or the diversities of mens natures, drawn from their progenitors, before such times as they break forth into some great enormities, whereby their passions and affections be discovered: what they are: for the young whelps of beares, wolves, apes and such like creatures, shew presently their naturall inclination, even whilst they be very young, because it is not disguised or masked with any thing; but the nature of man casting it selfe, and setting upon manners, customs, opinions and lawes, concealeth often times the ill that it hath, but doth imitate and counterfeit that which is good and honest in such sort as it may be thought either to have done away clean all the staine, blemish & imperfection of vices inbred with it; or else to have hidden it a long time, being covered with the vail of craft and subtilty, so as we are not able, or at least wile have much ado to perceive their malice: by the fling, lie and prick of every severall vice. And to say a truth, herein are we mightily deceived, that we think men are become unjust then only and not before, when they do injury; or disolute, when they play some insolent and loose part; cowardly minded, when they run out of the field; as if a man should have the conceit, that the sting in a scorpion was then bred and not before, when he gave the first prick; or the poison in vipers was ingendered only, when they bit or stung; which surely were great simplicity and meer childishnesse: for a wicked person becommeth not then such an one, even when he appeareth so, and not before; but he hath the rudiments and beginnings of vice and naughtinesse imprinted in himselfe, but he stetheth and useth the same, when he hath means, fit occasion, good opportunity, and might answerable to his mind; like as the thief spieth his time to rob, and the tyrant to violate and break the lawes. But God, who is not ignorant of the nature and inclination of every one, as who searcheth more into the secrets of the heart and minde then into the body, never waiteth and stayeth untill violence be performed by strength

strength of hand; impudencie bewraied by malepart speech; or intemperance and wantonnesse perpetrated by the naturall members and privy parts, ere he punish: for he is not revenged of an unwearied man, for any harm and wrong that he hath received by him; nor angry with a thief or robber for any forcible violence which he hath done unto him: ne yet hateth an adulterer, because he hath suffered injury by his meanes; but many times he chastiseth by way of medicine, a person that committeth adultery, a covetous wretch & a breaker of the laws; whereby otherwise he rideth them of their vice; and preventeth in them (as it were) the falling sickness before the fit surpriseth them. We were erewhile offended and displeased, that wicked persons were over-late and too slowly punished: and now discontented we are, and complain, for that God doth expresse and chastise the evil habit and vicious disposition of some, before the act committed; never considering and knowing, that full often a further mischief is worse and more to be feared, then the present; and that which is secret and hidden, more dangerous then that which is open and apparent. Neither are we able to comprehend and conceive by reason, the causes wherefore it is better otherwise to tolerate and suffer some persons to be quiet, who have offended and transgressed already; and to prevent, or stay others, before they have executed that which they intend: like as (in very truth) we know not the reason, why medicines and physick drugs (being not meet for some who are sick) be good and wholesome for others, though they are not actually diseased, yet happily in a more dangerous estate than the former. Hereupon it is that the god, turne not upon the children and posterity, all the faults of their fathers and ancestors: for if it happen, that of a bad father there descend a good son, like as a sickly and craze man may beget a sound, strong and healthful child, such an one is exempt from the pain and punishment of the whole house and race, as being translated out of a vicious family, and adopted into another: but that a young son (who shall conform himself to the hereditary vice of his parents) is liable to the punishment of their sinfull life, as well as he is bound to pay their debts by right of succession and inheritance. For *Antigenes* was not punished for the sinnes of his father *Demetrius*; nor to speak (of lewd persons) *Philes* for *Angus*, ne yet *Nestor* for *Nelus* his sake; how albeit they were defended from most wicked fathers, yet they proved themselves right honest: but all such, as whose nature loved, embraced and practised that which came unto them by descent and parentage, in these (I say) divine justice is wont to persecute and punish that which resembelth vice and sin: for like as the warts, black moles, spots and freckles of fathers, not appearing at all upon their own childrens skin, begin afterwards to put forth and shew themselves in their nephews, to wit, the children of their sons and daughters: And there was a *Grecian* woman, who having brought forth a black infant, and being troubled therefore, and judiciously accused for adultery, as if shee had been conceived by a black-moor, (shee pleaded and was found to be her selfe defended from an Ethiopian, in the fourth degree removed: As also it is known for certain, that of the children of *Pythoon* the Nisibian who was defended from the race and line of those old Spartans, who were their lords and founders of *Thebes*, the youngest, and he that died not long since, had upon his body the print and forme of a leopard, the very true and naturall mark of that ancient line; so long and after the revolution of many years, there sprang and came up again as it were out of the deep, this resemblance and stock and kinde: even so it falleth out many times, that the first generations and descendents, do hide and after a sort drowne those qualities and affections of the mind which are affected and appropriat to some kindred; but afterwards, at one time or other, put them forth, and drive them outward to appear in those that follow, and the same do repretent that which is proper to each race, as well in vertue as in vice. Now when I had finished this speech, I held my peace: and with that *Olympicus* smiled and said: We would not have you to think (quoth he) that we commend you, as having sufficiently proved your discourse by demonstration, lest we might seem to have forgotten or to neglect the tale or narration which you promised to relate unto us: Many then will we give you our sentence and opinion therof, when we shall likewise have heard the same. Thus therefore I began againe to enter into speech, and follow my intended purpose. There was one *Thespheus*, of the City *Sali* in *Cilicia*, a great friend and familiar of *Protagoras*, who sometime here conversed with us, who having led his youthfull dayes very loosely, within a small time had wasted and consumed all his goods, whereby he was fallen for a certain space into extreme want & necessity, which brought him also to a leud life, inasmuch as he proved a very bad man; and repenting his former follies and dilpence, began to make shifts, and seek all means to recover his state againe; much like unto those loose and lascivious persons, who make no account of their lawfull and espoused wives, nor caring at all for them whilst they have them: afterwards, when they have cast them off, and put them away, seeing them wedded unto others, solicite them to yield their bodies, and give the attempt to force & corrupt them most wickedly: Thus he forbore no leud, indirect, and shameful practices, so they turned to his gaine and profit, and within a litle while, he gat together not great store of goods, but procured himselfe a bad name of wicked dealing, much shame and infamy: But the thing that made him famous, and much spoken of: was the answer delivered unto him by the oracle of *Amphibolus*, for thither had he sent, as it should seem, to know whether he should live the rest of his life better then he had done before. Now the oracle returned this answer: That it would be better with him after he was dead; which in some sort happened unto him not long after: For being fallen from an high place with his head forward, without any limbe broken, or wound made: only with the fall, the breath went out of his body, and there he lay for dead: and three dayes after, preparation being made for his funerals, carried forth

he was to be buried; but behold all on a sudden, he revived and quickly came to himselfe againe: whereupon there ensued such a change and alteration in his life, that it was wonderfull: for by the report and testimony of all the people of *Cilicia*, they never knew man of better conscience in all his affaires and dealings, whiles he did negotiate and dwell amongst them: none more devout and religious to God-ward, none more fast and sure to his friends, none bitterer to his enemies in so much, as they who were most inward with him, and had kept his company familiarly a long time, were very desirous and earnest with him, to know the cause of so strange and sudden alteration: as being perswaded that so great amendment of life (so loose and dissolute as it was before) could not come by meer chance and casualty, (as in truth it did) according as himselfe made relation unto the said *Proteogenes*, and other such familiar friends of his men of good worth and reputations: for thus he reported unto them & said: That when the spirit was out of his body, he feared at the first (as he thought himself) like unto a pilot, flung out of his ship, and plunged into the bottom of the sea (so wonderfully was he astonished at this change: but afterwards when as by little and little he was raised up again and recovered, so that he was aware that he drew his breath fully, & at liberty, he looked round about him, for his soul seemed as if it had been one eye fully open; but he beheld nothing that he was wont to view, only he thought that he saw planets and other stars of a huge bignesse, distant an infinite way off, and yet for multitude innumerable, casting from them a wonderful light, with a colour admirable, and the same glittering and shining most replenished, with a power and force incredible, in such sort, as the said soul being gently and easily carried, as in a chariot, with this splendor and radiant light, as it were upon the sea in a calme, went quickly whether soever she would: but letting passe a great number of things worthy there to be seen, he said that he beheld how the foules of the heath were departed this life, as they rose up and ascended, resembled certaine small fire bubbles, and the aire gave way and place unto them as they mounted on high: but anon when these bubbles by little and little brast in sunder, the foules came forth of them, and appeared in the forme and shape of men and women, very light and nimble, as discharged from all poise to beare them down: howbeit, they did not move and bestir themselves all alike and after one sort: for some leaped with a wonderful agility, and mounted directly and plumb upright; others turned round about together like unto bobins or spindles, one while up and another while down, so as their motion was mixed and confused, and tolked together, that unteeth for a good while and with much ado, they could be staied and severed asunder. As for these foules and spirits, many of them he knew not (as he said) who they were: but taking knowledge of two or three among them who had been of his old acquaintance, he pressed forward to approach neere to speake to them: but they never heard him speak, nor indeed were in their right senses; but being after a sort attoned and beside themselves, refused on ce to be either seen or felt, wandering and flying to and fro apart at the first; but afterwards, encountering and meeting with a number of others disposed like unto themselves, they closed and clung unto them, and thus linked and coupled together, they moved here and there disorderly without discretion, and were carried every way to no purpose, uttering I wot now what voices, after a manner of yelling or a blacke-lantern, not significant nor distinct, but as if they were cries mingled with lamentable plaints and dreadful feare. Yet there were others to be seen aloft in the upmost region of the aire, jocund, gay and pleasant, to kind also and courteous, that often times they would seem to approach neere one unto another, turning away from thos: other that were tumultuous and disorderly; and as it should seem, they shewed some discontentment, when they were thronged and huddled close together; but well appeased and much pleased, when they were enlarged and severed at their liberty. Among these (by his owne saying) he had a sight of a soul belonging unto a kinsman and familiar friend of his, and yet he knew him not certainly, for that he died whiles himselfe was a very child; howbeit, he said full coming toward him, saluted him in these termes: God save you *Thespheus*: whereat the marvelled much, and said unto him: I am not *Thespheus*, but my name is *Ardeus*: True indeed (quoth the other) before-time you were so called, but from henceforth \* *Thespheus* shall be your name: for dead you are not yet, but by the providence of God and permission of destiny, you are hither come, with the intellectual part of the soule: and as for all the rest, you have left it behind, sticking fast as an anchor to your body: and that you may now know this and evermore hereafter, take this for a certain rule and token: That the spirits of those who are departed and dead indeed, yield no shadow from them: they neither wink nor open their eyes, *Thespheus* hearing these words, began to pluck up his spirits so much the more, for to consider & discourse with himselfe, looking therefore every way about him, he might perceive that there accompanied with him a certain shadowy and dark lineature, whereas the other souls shone round about, and were clear and transparent within forth, howbeit, not all alike: for some yielded from them pure colour, uniforme and equal, as doth the full moon when she is at the clearest; others had (as it were) scales or cicatrices, dispersed here and there by certaine distant spaces betweene some againe, were wonderful hideous and strange to see unto, all to be specked with black spots, like unto serpents skins: and others had light scarifications and obscure risings upon their visage. Now this kinsman of *Thespheus* (for there is no danger at all to terme foules by the names which men had whiles they were living) discoursed feverally of each thing, saying: That *Adrastia* the daughter of *Apur* and *Necessitie*, was placed highest and above the rest, to punish and to be revenged of all sorts of crimes and heinous sins; and that of sinful wretches, there was not one (great or small) who either by force or cunning could ever save him-

\* That is to say, Divine

himselfe and escape punishment: but one kinde of paine and punishment (for three sorts there be in all) belonging to this gaoler or executioner, and another to that: for there is one which is quick and speedy, called *death* that is, penalty, and this raked in hand the execution and chastisement of those, who immediately in this life (whiles they are in their bodies) be punished by the body, after a mild and gentle manner, leaving unpunished many light faults, which require only some petty penance: but such as require more ado to have their vices and finnes cured, God committeth them to be punished after death to a second torment, named *Dice*, that is to say, Revenge: many those who are so laden with finnes, that they be altogether incurable, when *Dice* hath given over and thrust them from her, the third ministresse of *Adrastia*, which of all other is most cruel, and named *Erinyes*, sunneth after, chasing and pursuing them as they wander and run up and down: these (say) the courteth and hunteth with great misery and much dolor, until such time as she have overtaken them all and plunged them into a bottomless pit of darknes inenarrable and invisible. Now of these three sorts of punishments, the first which is executed by *Paine* in this life, I remembreth that which is used in some barbarous nations: for in *Perfis*, when they are by order of law and judicially to be punished, they take from them their copped caps or high-pointed turbanes, and other robes, which they pluck and pull hair by hair, yea, and whip them before their faces, and they themselves shedding teares and weeping, cry out piteously and beseech the officers to cease and give over: semblably, the punishments, inflicted in this life in body or goods, are not exceeding sharp nor come very neere to the quick, neither do they pierce and reach unto the vice and sin it selfe, but the most part of them are imposed according to a bare opinion only, and the judgement of an outward naturall sense. But if it chance (quoth he) that any one escape hither unpunished, and who hath not been well purged there before, him *Dice* taketh in hand all bare and naked as he is, with his soule discovered and open, as having nothing to hide, palliate and mask his wickednesse, but lying bare and exposed to the view throughout, and on every side, the presenteth and sheweth him first to his parents, good and honest persons (if happily they were such) declaring how abominable he is, how degenerate and unworthy of his parentage: but if they also were wicked, both he and they fastene to much more grievous punishment, whiles he is tormented in seeing them, and they likewise in beholding him how he is punished a long time, even until every one of his crimes and finnes be disparched and rid away with dolorous and painful toments, surpassing in sharpnesse and greatness, all corporal griefs, by how much a true vision indeed is more powerfull and effectual than a vaine dream or fantastical illusion: whereupon, the wailes, marks, scars and cicatrices of sinne and vice remaine to be seen, in some more, in others less. But observe well (quoth he) and consider the divers colours of these foules of all sorts: for this blackish and foule dusky hue, is properly the tincture of avarice and nigardise: that which is deep red and fiery, betokeneth cruelty and malice: whereas, if it stand much upon blew, it is a signe that their inemperance and looseness in the use of pleasure, hath remained a long time, and will be hardly scowred off: for that it is a vile vice: but the violet colour and fyerish withall, proceedeth from envy, a venomous and poisoned colour, resembling the ink that cometh from the cuttle fish, for this hue, when the faile is altered and changed by passions, and withall doth turne the body, putteth forth sundry colours: but here it is a signe that the purification of the soule is fully finished, when as all these tinctures are done away againe, whereby the soul may appear in her native hew, all fresh, neere, cleare and light some: for so long as any one of these colours remaineth, there will be evermore some recidivation and returne of passions and affections, bringing certaine tremblings, beatings as it were of the pulse, and a panting in some but weak and feeble, which quickly staeth, and is loone extinguished: and in other more strong quick and vehement. Now of these foules, some there be which after they have been well and thoroughly chastised, and that sundry times, recover in the end a decent habitude and disposition: but others again are such, as the vehemence of their ignorance, and the flattering shew of pleasures and lustfull desire, transporteth them into the bodies of brute beasts: for the feebleness and defect of their understanding, and their sloth and slacknes to contemplate and discourse by reason, maketh them to incline and creep to the active part of generation: but then they find and perceive themselves destitute of a laicivious organ or instrument, whereby they may be able to execute and have the fruition of their appetite, and therefore desire by the meanes of the body to enjoy the same: forasmuch as here there is nothing at all but a bare shadow, & as one would say a vaine dream of pleasure, which never cometh to perfection and fullness. When he had said this, he brought and led me away, most swiftly, an infinite way: howbeit, with ease, and gently, upon the raies of the light, as if they had been wings, unto a certaine place, where there was a huge wide chinke, tending downward still, and thither being come, he perceived that he was forlone and forsaken of that powerfull spirit that conducted and brought him thither: where he saw that other foules also were in the same case: for being gathered and flocked together like a sort of birds, they fly downward round about this gaping chawne, but enter into it directly they durst not: now the said chink resembled for all the world within the caves of *Bacchus*, so tapissied and adorned they were with the verdure of great leaves and branches, together with all variety of gay flowers, from whence arose and breathed forth a sweet and mild exhalation, which yielded a delectable and pleasant savour, wonderfull odoriferous, with a most temperate aire, which no els affected them that smelled thereof: thus the sent of wine contenteth those who love to drink: in such sort as the foules feed and feast themselves with these fragrant odours, were very cheerful, jocund, and merry: so as

round about the said place, there was nothing but pastime, joy, solace, mirth, laughing and singing much after the manner of men that rejoice one with another, and take all the pleasure and delight that possibly they can. And he said moreover, that *Bacchus* by the way mounted up into the society of the gods, and afterwards conducted *Semele*; and withall, that it was called the place of *Lethe*, so to say, Oblivion: Whereupon he would not let *Thespeus*, though he were exceeding desirous, to stay there, but drew him away perforce, instructing him thus much, and giving him to understand, the reason and the intelligible part of the mind is dissolved, and as it were melted and moistened by this pleasure; but the unreasonable part which savoureth of the body, being watered and incarnate therewith, reviveth the memory of the body, and upon his remembrance, there groweth and riseth a lust and concupiscence, which haleth and draweth unto generation (for so called it) to wit, a consent of the soule thereto, weighed down and aggravated with overmuch moisture: Having therefore traversed another way aslong as the other, he was aware he saw a mighty standing boll, into which divers rivers seemed to fall and discharge themselves, whereas one was whiter than the fume of the Sea, or driven inow, another of purple hew or scarlet colour, like to that which appeareth in the raine-bow; as for others, they seemed a farr off to have every one of them their distinct lustre & severall tincture. But when they approached neer unto them, the fore-said boll, after that the air about was diffused and vanished away, and the different colours of those rivers no more seen, left no more flourishing colour, except only the white: Then he saw three Dæmons or Angels, sitting together in triangular forme, medling and mixing the rivers together, with certaine measures. And this guide of *Thespeus* soule said moreover, that *Orpheus* came to so late when he went after his wife; but for that he kept not well in mind, that which he there saw, he had sown one false tale among men; to wit: That the oracle at *Delphe* was common to *Apollo*, and the night, (for there was no commerce or fellowship at all between the night and *Apollo*) But this oracle (quoth he) is common to the moon and the night, which hath no determinate and certaine place upon the earth, but is alwayes errant and wandering among men, by dremes and apparitions: which is the reason that dremes compounded and mingled as you see, of falsehood and truth, of variety and simplicity, are spread and scattered over the world. But as for the oracle of *Apello*, neither have you seen it (quoth he) nor ever shall be able to see: for the terrene substance or earthly part of the soule, is not permitted to arise and mount up on high, but bendeth downward, being fastened unto the body: And with that he approached at once neerer, endeavouring to show him the shining light of the three-foot or three-footed stoole, which (as he said) from the bosom of the goddess *Thetis*, reached as far as to the mount *Parnassus*; and having a great desire to see the same, yet he could not his eyes were so dazzled with the brightness thereof: howbeit, as he passed by, a loud and shrill voice he heard of a woman, who, among other things delivered in meter, uttered also as it should seem by way of prophesie, the very time of his death: And the Dæmon said, it was the voice of *Sigilia*, for the being carried round in the globe and face of the moon, did foretell and sing what was to come: but being desirous to hear more, he was repelled and driven by the violence of the moons it were with certaine whistle-puffs, a clean contrary way; so he could heare and understand but few things, and those very thert; namely, the accident about the hill \* *Vesuvius*, and how *Demarchia* should be consumed and burnt by casual fire, as also a clause or peece of a verse, as touching the emperor, who then reigned, to this effect:

*Agracious prince he is, but yet must die,  
And empire leave by force of maladie*

After this they passed on forward to see the paines and torments of those who were punished; and there at first they beheld all things most piteous and horrible to see to: for *Thespeus* who doubted nothing lesse, met in the place with many of his friends, kinsfolks, and familiar companions, who were in torment, and suffering dolorous paines, and infamous punishment, they moaned themselves, lamenting, calling and crying unto him; at the last he had a sight of his own father, rising out of a deep pit, full he was of pricks, gashes, and wounds, and stretching forth his hands unto him, was (mauger his heart) forced to break silence, yea, and compelled by those who had the charge and superintendence of the said punishments, to confesse with a loud and audible voice, that he had been a wicked murderer of certaine strangers, and guests whom he had lodged in his house; for perceiving that they had silver and gold about them, he had wrought their death by the means of poison: and albeit he had not bene-reckoned thereof in his life time, whiles he was upon earth, yet here was he convicted and had instructed already part of his punishment, and expected to endure the rest afterwards. Now *Thespeus* durst not make sure nor interceded for his father, so affrighted he was and astounded; but desirous to withdraw himselfe and be gone, he left the sight of that courteous and kind guide of his, which all this while had conducted him, and he saw him no more: but he might perceive other horrible and hideous spirits, who enforced and constrained him to passe farther, as if it were necessary that it should traverse still more ground: so he saw those who were notorious malefactors, in the view of every man (or who in this world had been chastised) how their shadow was here tormented with lesse paine, and nothing like to others, as having been feeble and imperfect in the reasonlesse part of the soule, and therefore subject to passions and affections; but such as were disguised and cloaked with an outward appearance and reputation of vertue abroad, and yet had lived covertly and secretly at home in wickedness, certaine that were

about

about them, forced some of them to turne the inside outward, and with much pain and griefe to lay themselves upon, to bend and bow, and discover their hypocritical hearts within, even against their own nature, like unto the scolopendras of the sea, when they have swallowed down an hook, are wroth to turne themselves outward: but others they flayed and displayed, discovering plainly and openly, how faulty, perverse and wicked they had been within, as whose principal parts of the reasonable soule, vice had possessed. He said moreover, that he saw other iouls wounded and interlaced one within another, two, three and more together, like to vipers and other serpents, and those not forgetting their old grudge and malicious ranker one against another, or upon remembrance of losses and wrongs sustained by others, fell to gnawing and devouring each other. Also, that there were three parallel lakes ranged in equall distance one from the other; the one seething and boiling with gold, another of lead exceeding cold, and a third, most rough, con-fiding of iron: and that there were certain spirits called Dæmons, which had the overlooking and charge of them; and these, like unto metall-founders, or smiths, with certain instruments either plunged in, or else drew out, souls. As for those who were given to filthy lucre, and by reason of insatiable avarice, committed wicked parts, those they let down into the lake of melted gold, and when they were once set on a light fire, and made transparent by the strength of those flames within the said lake, then plunged they were into the other of lead; where after they were congealed and hardened in manner of haile, they transported them anew into the third lake of iron, where they became exceeding black and horrible, and being crackt and broken, by reason of their dinnesse and hardnesse, they changed their forme, and then at last (by his saying) they were thrown againe into the foresaid lake of gold, suffering by the means of these changes and mutations, intolerable paines. But those iouls (quoth he) who made the greatest moane unto him, and seemed most miserably (of all others) to be tormented, were they, who thinking they were escaped and past their punishment, as who had suffered sufficiently for their delicts at the hands of vengeance, were taken again, and put to fresh torments; and those they were, for whose finnes their children and others of their posterity suffered punishment: for whensoever one of the souls of these children or nephews in lineall descent, either met with them, or were brought unto them, the same fell into a fit of anger, crying out upon them, shewing the marks of the torments and paines that it sustained, reproaching and hitting them in the teeth therefore; but the other making haft to fly and hide themselves, yet were not able so to doe: for incontinently the tormentors followed after and pursued them, who brought them back again to their punishment, crying out, and lamenting for nothing so much, as that they did force the torment which they were to suffer, as having experience thereof already. Furthermore he said that he saw some, and those in number many, either children or nephews, hanging together fast, like bees or bats, murmuring and grumbling for anger, when they remembered and called to mind, what sorrowes and calamities they sustained for their lake. But the last thing that he saw, were the soules of such as entred into a second life and new nativity, as being turned and transformed forcibly into other creatures of all sorts, by certain workmen appointed therefore, who with tools for the purpose and many a stroke, forged and framed some of their parts new, bent and wrested others, tooke away and abolished a third sort; and all that they might sort and be suitable to other conditions and lives: among which he espied the soul of *Nero* afflicted already grievously enough otherwise, with many calamities, pierced through every part with spikes and nailes red hot with fire: and when the artificers abroad took it in hand to transforme it into the shape of a viper, of which kind (as *Pindarus* saith) the young ones gnaweth through the bowels of the dam to come into the world, and to devour it, he said that all on a sudden there shone forth a great light, out of which there was heard a voice giving commendament that they should metamorphose and transfigure it into the forme of another kinde of beast, more tame and gentle, forging a water-creature of it, chancing about standing lakes and marshes; for that he had been in some sort punished already for the fins which he had committed, and besides, some good turne is due unto him from the gods, in that of all his subjects, he had exempted from tax, tallage and tribute, the best nation and most beloved of the gods, to wit, the Greeks. Thus far forth, he said, he was only a spectator of these matters; but when he was upon his returne, he abid all the paines in the world, for very feare that he had; for there was a certaine woman, for vilage and stately bigness, admirable, who took hold on him, and said: Come hither, that thou maiest keep in memory all that thou hast seen, the better: wherewith she put forth unto him a little rod or wand all fiery, such as painters or enamellers use, but there was another that staied her; and then he might perceive himselfe to be blown by a strong and violent wind with a trunk or pipe, so that in the turning of an hand he was within his owne body againe, and so began to look up with his eyes in manner, out of his grave and sepulcher.

Q 9

That



## That brute beasts have use of Reason.

### A discourse in manner of a Dialogue, named *Gryllus*.

#### The Summary.

They who have given out that man is a living creature endued with reason, have in few words expressed that which every one of us ought principally to consider in him: But for want of declaring what this word Reason doth import, themselves for the most part have not well understood this definition: but as much as in them it, reduced the condition of men to a worse estate, than that of brute beasts: For albeit man's body moved and governed by his immortal soul, hath many excellent advantages above beasts; yet if reason be the guide of the soul, have no other help then of her self: Certes, it may be well and truly said: that man is the most miserable creature in the world: and herein it is, that Philosophers destitute of the light of God's Word, are become and foremain far short, as being ignorant of Adams fall, original sin, and the hereditary source and spring of so many defects and imperfections which proceed from the understanding and the wills so much depraved and corrupt in us by sin, that when we are to range and reduce reason, to her true deovir and duty indeed is namely, to know and serve God, according as the commandeth, she is stark blind, yea and a very enemy her self to that good grace which is offered unto her, By reason therefore, which maketh the difference between us and brute beasts, we are to understand the true knowledge of God, for to serve and glorify him according to the tenour of his word all the dayes of our life: this is called true religion, of which if man be a sinner, according to the sentence of our Saviour: It becometh not him to have gained the whole world, if he lose his own soul: as also, That it were better for a scandalous man, and him by whom offence cometh, never to have been born, or at leastwise soon exterminate and rooted out: Likewise, that whosoever is proud of himselfe, and forgetteth his God, is no more a man, but resembleth brute beasts, whose soul perisheth together with the body. But to enter no further into this Theological discourse, we see in this present Dialogue somewhat thereof, and that the intention of Plutarch was to shew, that the intelligence and cognition of God, is the only true privilege prerogative and advantage which men have above beasts: howbeit, left he hath this work imperfect, even in that very point, which of all other is hardest, and impossible to be proved by him or his like: for what sound understanding, apprehension, or conceit could they have of God, who knew not at all the true God? So then, it may be said, that this parcel or remnant of the disputation, containeth a form of processe against all Pagans and Atheists, to prove that brute beasts excell them, and be in more happy estate then they. Attouching the discourse itselfe, to the end that it might not be odious, in case he had handled it at his own invention, he helpeth himselfe with the fabulous tale of Circe, who transformed into beasts the companions of Ulysses: By which allegory, the Philosophers and Poets imply and teach thus much, that worldly pleasure doth make all persons brutish, save only the wise, who use and enjoy goods, honours, and delights, with a stayed mind and spirit settled, and which never misseth, nor cometh short or wide of the mark that it shooteth at: He bringeth in therefore Ulysses, conferring by the leave and permission of Circe, with a Greek named Gryllus, transformed and turned into a swine: and the chiefe point of their disputation is this: Whether the life of man is better to be esteemed then that of beasts? Gryllus for to uphold and maintain his cause, treateth of four points principally: First, of the vertue in general secondly of the valour and fortitude; in the third place of the temperance; and last of all, the wisdom of beasts: proving against Ulysses, and that by divers arguments set out and marked in order, that beasts have the start and vantage of men in all these points: and leaving the Reader to make the conclusion; he sheweth sufficiently, that if men have no other approach to rest upon, then a natural habitude of an earthly vertue, and can assure the repose of their consciences upon nothing but upon humane valiance, temperance, and wisdom, they do but go in the company of beasts, or rather come behind them. Thus you see why our Author maketh Ulysses to enter into a discourse touching the knowledge of God: but whether it were that his other affairs and occupations, or the inquiry of time hath deprived us of thereof, this Treatise or Dialogue hath been cut off in that very place, where it deserved and required to be more thoroughly and lively prosecuted: And this which remaineth and is come unto our hands, may serve all men in good stead for their instruction and learning, not to glory and vaunt themselves but in the mercy of him, who calleth them to a better life, wherein brute beasts (created only for our use, and for the present life, with which they perish for ever) have no part nor portion at all.

## That brute beasts have use of Reason.

### The Personages that discourse in this Dialogue,

*Ulysses, Circe, Gryllus.*

*Ulysses.*

ME thinks dame Circe that I have sufficiently conceived, and firmly imprinted these matters in my memory. Now would I gladly ask the question, and know of you, whether among those men which be transformed into Wolves and Lyons, you have any Greeks or no? *Circe.*

## That brute beasts have use of Reason.

*Circe.*

Yes marry have I, and those very many, dear heart Ulysses; but wherefore demand you this question?

*Ulysses.*

Because I am perswaded, it will be greatly for mine honour among the Greeks, if by your gracious favour I may obtain thus much, as at your hands to receive them men again, and save them; though they be, as well as my companions; nor so neglect their state, as to suffer them against nature to rage, and wax old in the bodies of wild beasts, leading a life so miserable, ignominious, and infamous.

*Circe.*

See the simplicity of this man: he would through his folly, that his ambitious mind should procure damage and calamity, not to himselfe only and his friends, but also to those who are mere aliens, and nothing belonging unto him?

*Ulysses.*

I receive very well (O Circe) that you are about the tempering and brewing of another cup and portion of words, to bewitch me: for certainly you should make a very beast of me indeed, if I would suffer my self to be perswaded, that it were a detriment or loss to become a man again of a brute beast.

*Circe.*

Why have you not already done worse for your self then so, and committed greater absurdities? considering that letting go a life immortal, and not subject to old age, which you might enjoy if you would make your abode and dwell with me; you would needs go in all the haste to a woman mortal, and (as I dare well say) very aged by this time, and that through ten thousand dangers, which yet you must endure, promising your selfe, that you shall thereby be better regarded, more honoured and renowned from henceforth, then now you are: and in the mean while you consider not that you seek after a vain felicity, and the image or shadow only for the thing indeed.

*Ulysses.*

Well Circe, I am content that it be so as you say: for why should we so often contest and debate about the same still? But I pray you of all loves, unbind and let loose these poor men for my sake, and give them me.

*Circe.*

Nay, that I will not, I swear by *Hecate*: You shall not come so easily by them: for I tell you they be no mean persons, and of the common sort: But you were best to ask them first if they themselves be willing thereto or no? And if they answer may? then like a noble valiant gentleman as you are, deal with them effectually, and induce them thereto: But in case you cannot with all your reason bring them to it, and that they be able to convince you by force of argument, let it suffice you that you have advised your selfe and your friends but badly.

*Ulysses.*

Is it indeed good Lady? and are you about to mock and make a fool of me? For how can they either yield or receive reason in conference, so long as they be Ases, Swine, and Lyons, as they are.

*Circe.*

Go to sir, most ambitious man that you are, let that never trouble you: for I will uphold them, sufficient both to hear and understand whatsoever you shall allege unto them, yea, and able to reason and discourse with you: Or rather, I passe not much if one of them for all his fellows shall both demand and answer: Lo here is one, deal with him as it pleaseth you.

*Ulysses.*

And by what name shall we call him, *Circe*? or who might he be, when he was a man?

*Circe.*

What matters that? and what maketh it to the disputation and question in hand? Howbeit, name him if you think good, *Gryllus*: And to the end that you should not think, that for to gratify or do me pleasure, he may seem to reason crossly and against your mind, I will for the time retire my selfe out of the place.

*Gryllus.*

God save you *Ulysses*.

*Ulysses.*

And you also gentle *Gryllus*.

*Gryllus.*

What is your will with me, and what would you demand of me?

*Ulysses.*

I woe well that you and the rest were sometimes men, and therefore I have great ruth and pity to see you all in this estate, but as good reason is, it grieveth me most for the Greeks, that they are fallen into this calamity: But so it is, that even now I requested *Circe*, to loose as many of you as be willing thereto, and after she hath restored them to their ancient shape, to give them leave to go with me.

*Gryllus.*

Peace *Ulysses*, and say not a word more I beseech you; for we all have you in contempt now, seeing

feeling that you have been taken and named all this whiles for a singular man, and seemed far to surpass all others in wisdom, whereas there is little or no cause thereof; in that you have been afraid even of this, to change from the worse to the better; and never considered, that as Children abhor the medicines and drugs that Physicians ordain, and refuse to learn those Sciences and Disciplines, which of sickly, diseased and foolish, might make them more healthy, sound and wise; even so you have rejected and cast behind you this opportunity to be transformed and changed from one to another, and even still you tremble and dare not venture to keep company and lie with *Ceres*, for dread and fear, lest ere you be aware, she should make of you either a Swine, or a Wolfe; and you would persuade us, that whereas we live now in abundance, and enjoy the affluence of all good things, we should quit the fame, and withal, abandon, and forsake her who hath procured us this happiness, and all to go away with you, when we are become men again; that is to say, the most wretched creatures in the world.

*Myfse.*

It seemeth *Gryllus* that the potion which you drank at *Circes* hands, hath not only marred the form and fashion of your body, but also spoiled your wit and understanding; having intoxicated your brain, and filled your head with corrupt, strange, and monstrous opinions for ever, or else some pleasure that you have taken by acquaintance of this body so long, hath clean bewitched you.

*Gryllus.*

Nay I wis, good Sir, it is neither so nor so, if it please you O King of the Cephallenians; but if you be disposed to argue with reason, rather then to wrangle with opprobrious terms, we will soon bring you to another opinion, and prove by sound arguments, upon the experience which we have of the one life and the other, that there is great reason why we should love and embrace this present fate above the former.

*Myfse.*

For mine own part I am ready to give you the hearing.

*Gryllus.*

And I as willing likewise to deliver my mind: But first and foremost, begin I will to speak overtures, upon which I see you stand so much, and in regard whereof, you wondrously please yourself, as who would be thought in justice, in wisdom, in magnanimity and other virtues, to excel and far surpass all brute beasts: Answer me therefore I beseech you, the wisest man of all other, to this point: For I have heard say, that upon a time you made relation unto *Circé* of the Cyclopes country, how the Goile there is naturally good and fertile, that without plowing, sowing, or planting at all, it bringeth forth of it selfe all sorts of fruit: Tell me I say, whether you esteem better of it (so fruitful as it is) or of *Ithaca* a rough and mountain region, good onely for to breed Goats in, and which hardly and with great labour yieldeth unto those that till it, small store (God wot) of poor and lean fruits, which will not quit for the cost and pains? But take heed it grieves you not to answer contrary to your mind, for the love that you bear unto your native country.

*Myfse.*

I love verily (for I must not lye) yea, and I embrace and hold most dear, mine own country and place of civility: howbeit, I praise and admire that other region of theirs.

*Gryllus.*

Why then belike, the case stands thus, and this we are to say, that the wisest man is of opinion, that there be some things which are to praise and commend, and other things to chuse and love: and verily, I think that your judgement is the same of the soul; for the like reason there is of land and a land or plot of ground, namely, that the soul is better, which without any travel or labour, bringeth forth virtue, as a fruit springing and growing of it selfe.

*Myfse.*

Well: be it so as you say.

*Gryllus.*

You grant then and confesse already, That the soul of brute beasts is by nature more kind, more perfect and better disposed to yield virtue, considering that without compulsion, without commandment, or any teaching, which is as much to say, as without tillage and sowing it bringeth forth and nourisheth that virtue which is meet and convenient for every one.

*Myfse.*

And what virtue is that (my good friend *Gryllus*) whereof beasts be capable?

*Gryllus.*

Nay, what virtue are they not capable of? yea, and more then the wisest man that is. But first, consider we (if you please) valour and fortitude, whereupon you bear yourself and vaunt so highly, neither are you abashed and hide your selfe for fear, but are very well pleased when as men (surname you Hardy, Bold, and a Winner of Cities: whereas you have (most wicked wretch that you are) circumvented and deceived men, who know no other way of making war, but that which is plain & generous, and who were altogether unskillful of fraud, guile and leasing, by your wily shifts and subtle pranks, attributing the name of virtue unto cunning casts, the which indeed knoweth not what deceit and fraud meaneth. But you see the combats of beasts as well against men as when they fight one against another: how they are performed without any craftiness, or sleight, only by plain hardihood and cleane strength, and as it were upon a native magnanimity, they defend themselves,

and

and be revenged of their enemies: and neither by enforcement of Laws, nor for fear to be judicially reproved and punished for cowardize, but only through instinct of nature avoiding the shame and disgrace to be conquered, they endure and hold out fight to the very extremity, and all to keep themselves invincible: for, say they be in body the weaker, yet they yield not for all that, nor are faint-hearted and give over, but chuse to die in fight: and many of them there be, whose courage and generosity, even when they are ready to die, being retired into some corner of their body, and there gathering it selfe, resisteth the killer, it leapeth and fretteth still, until such time as, like a flame of fire, it be quenched and put out once for all: they cannot skill of praying and intreating their enemy, they crave no pardon and mercy; and it were strange in any of them, to confesse that they are overcome: neither was it ever seen that a Lyon become a slave unto a Lyon, or one horse unto another in regard of fortitude, like as one man to another, contenting himselfe and willingly embracing servitude as next cousin and a surname appropriate unto cowardize. And as for those beasts which men have surprized and caught by snares, traps, subtle sleights and devices of engines, such if they be come to their growth and perfect age, reject all food, refuse nourishment, yea, and endure thirst, to such extremity, that they chuse to die and seek to procure their own death, rather then to live in servitude; but to their young ones and whelps, which for their tender age be tractable, pliable, and easie to be led which way one will, they offer so many deceitful baits to entice and allure them with their sweetness, that they have no sooner tasted thereof, but they become enchanted and bewitched therewith: for these pleasures, and this delicate life, contrary to their nature, in tract of time cauleth them to be soft and weak, receiving that degeneration (as it were) and effeminate habit of their courage, which folk call tameness, and indeed but baseness and defect of their natural generosity: whereby it appeareth, that beasts by nature are bred and passing well disposed to be audacious and hardy: whereas contrariwise, it is not kindly for men to be so much as bold of speech and resolute in speaking their minds. And thus you may (good *Myfse*) learn and know especially by this one argument: for in all brute beasts, nature swayeth indifferently and equally of their side, as touching courage and boldness, neither is the female in that point inferior to the male, whether it be in suffering pain and travel for getting of their living, or in fight for defence of their little ones. And I am sure you heard of a certain Cromyonian Iwine, what foul work she made, being a beast of the female Sex, for *Thelus*, and how she troubled him: as also of that monstrous Sphinx, which kept upon the rock *Pelion*, and held in awe all that traist underneath and about it: for surely all her craft and subtlety in devising riddles, and propounding dark questions, had bootied her nothing, in case she had not been withal, of greater force and courage then all the Cadmeians. In the very same quarters (by report) the Fox of *Telmessus*, a wily and crafty beast. And it is given out, that near unto the said place, was also the fell dragon which fought in single fight hand to hand with *Apollo*, the Seignior of the Oracle at *Delphi*. And even your great King *Agamemnon*, took that brave Mare *Xerxes*, as a gift, of an inhabitant of *Sycion*, for his dispensation and immunity; that he might not be preyed to the wars: wherein he did well and wisely in mine opinion, to prefer a good and courageous beast, before a coward and dastardly man: and you your own self (*Myfse*) have seen many times Lyonesses, and the Leopards, how they give no place at all to their males in courage and hardihood, as your Lady *Penelope* doth, who gives you leave to be abroad in warfare, whilst the first at home close to the hearth, and by the fire side, and dares not do so much as the very swallows, in repelling those back who come to destroy her and her house, for all she is a Laconian woman born: What should I tell you of the Carian women? for by this that hath been said already, it is plain and evident, that men naturally are not endued with prowess, for if they were, then should women likewise have their part with them in virtue and valour: And thereupon I infer and conclude that you and such as you are, exercise a kind of valiance (I must needs say) which is not voluntary nor natural, but constrained by force of Laws, subject and servile to (I wot not what) customs and reprehensions: and you meditate, I say, and practise for vain-glorious opinion, fortitude, gayness and shew: and you let your eyes be dazzled with trim words; you sustain travels and perils, not for that you let light by them, nor for any hardihood and confidence in your selves, but because you are afraid lest others should goe before you, and be esteemed greater then you. And like as here among your Mates at Sea, hee that first riseth to his business of rowing, layeth hand and seizeth upon the lightest Oare that hee can meet with, doth it not, for that he despiseth it, but because he avoideth and is afraid to handle one that is heavier: and he that endureth the knock of a balston or cudgel, because he would not receive any wound by the sword: as also, he that resisteth an enemy, for to avoid some ignominious infamy of death, is not to be said valiant in respect of the one, but coward in regard of the other: even so the valour in you, is nothing else but a wile and wary cowardise, and your prowess and boldness, is no better then timorousness, accompanied with skill and knowledge how to decline one danger by another. To be briefe, if you think your selves to be more hardy and valiant then beasts, how cometh it, that your Poets term those who fight manfully against their enemies, *λυσσέμενος*, that is, Wolves for courage: *δυσκέραιος*, that is, Lyon-hearted: and *αὐτοδίδακτος*, that is, self-taught: that is, valiant as a man: or a wild Boar, *αὐτοδίδακτος*, that is, comparable to a man in courage and strength. Yet I wot well, when they would speak excessively in comparison, their manner is, to call men that are swift in running, *ποδωκίμους*, that is, light footed like the wind: and those who be fair and beautiful, *αὐτοκόμοις*, that is, angelical, or to see to, like unto angels: and

and even so, they compare and resemble brave warriors in the highest degree, unto beasts, who in case are much more excellent than men: the reason is this, for that choler and heat of courage is (as it were) the steel, the file, yea, the very whetstone that giveth the edge unto fortitude; and this do brute beasts bring with them pure and simple unto fight; whereas in you, it being always mingled and tempered with some discourse of reason, as if wine were delayed with a little water, is gone and to seek in the greatest dangers, and faith at the very point of opportunity, when it is most to be used. And some of you are of opinion, and stick not to say, that in battle and fight there is no need at all of anger, but that layeth aside all choler, we are to employ sober and stayed reason; wherein they speak not amiss, and I hold well with them, when the question is of defence only, and the securing of a mans own life: but surely, if the case be so, that we are to offend, to annoy and defeat our enemy, they talk most shamefully. Is it not a very absurd thing, that ye should reprove and blame nature, for that she hath not set unto your bodies any stings or pricks, nor given you tusks and teeth to revenge your selves with, nor yet armed you with hooked claws and talons to offend your enemies; and in the mean while your own selves take, spoil, and bereave the souls of that natural weapon which is inbred with it, or at leastwise cut the same short and disable it?

*Myself.*

What *Gryllus*! you seem (as faras I gueſs) to have been heretofore some witty and great Orator; who now grunting out of your stile or frank, have so pithily argued the case, and discount of the matter in hand: but why have you not in the same train disputed likewise of temperance?

*Gryllus.*

Because, forsooth, I thought that you would first have refused that which hath already been spoken; but I see well you desire to hear me speak of temperance, because you are the husband of a most chaste wife, and you think besides, that your selfe have shewed good proofe of your owne continency, in that you have rejected the love and wanton company of *Circæ*; but even herein you are not more perfect, I mean in continence, than any one beast, for even they also lust not at all to company or engender with those that are of more excellent kinde than their owne, but take their pleasure with those, and make love to such as be of the same sort, and therefore no marvel, that as the Mendean bucke goate in *Egypt*, when he was shut up with many fair and beautiful women, never for all that made to any of them, but abhorred to meddle with them; whereas he was raging wood in heat of lust after the Does or female Goats: So you, taking delight in your ordinary love, have no desire at all, being a man, to sleep or lead carnally with an immortal goddess: And as for the chastity and continence of your own Lady *Penelope*, I tell you there be ten thousand Crowses in the world, that after their manner, caing and crooking as they do, will make a meere mock of it, and shew that it is no such matter to be accounted of: for there is not one of them, but if the male or cock chance to die, remaineth a widow without seeking after a mate, nor for a little while, but even for the space of nine ages and lives of a man; so that in this respect, your fair *Penelope* cometh behind the poorest Crow or Raven that is, and deserveth not the ninth part of her honor for chastity: But seeing you are aware that I am so eloquent an Orator, I care not much if I observe a methodical order in this discourse of mine, and like a Clerk indeed, begin first with the definition of temperance, and then proceed to the division of appetites and lusts, according to their several distinct kinds right formally. Temperance therefore is a certain restraint, abridgement, or regularity of lusts, and desires, a restraint I say, and abating of such as are forraign, strange, and superfluous, to wit, unnecessary, and a regularity which by election and choise of time and temperature of a meane, doth moderate those that be natural and necessary; for you see that in lusts and desires, there be infinite differences: As for example, the appetite to drink, besides that it is natural, is also necessary; But the lust of the flesh, or concupiscence, although nature hath given the beginning thereof; yet so it is, that we may live commodiously without it so as well it may be called natural, but in no wise necessary. Now there is another sort of desires, that beneither natural nor necessary, but accidental, and infused from without by a vain opinion, and upon ignorance of that which is good; and there be such a number of them, that they go very neer to chafe away and thrust out all your natural appetites much like as when the aliens and strangers that swarm in a City, drive out and expel the natural inhabitants: whereas brute beasts give no entrance nor any communication and fellowship to forraign affections for to settle in their souls, but in their whole life, and all their actions bear remote from vain-glory, self-conceit, and fond opinions, as if they abode without the mediterranean parts, distant from the sea: True it is, that in their port and carriage, they be not so elegant, so fine and curious as men: howbeit otherwise, for temperance and good government of their affections, which be not many in number, either domestical, or strange and forraign, they are more precise and wonderful exact in the observing of them than they: for the proof & truth hereof, the time was once, when I myself no less doated and was besotted upon gold then you are now, thinking verily that there was no good nor possession in the world comparable to it; I was in love also of silver and ivory, and he that had most store hereof, my thoughts was a right happy man, and most highly in grace and favour with the gods, whether he were Phrygian or Carian it skiled not, more bare minded then *Dolon*, or infornate otherwile then *Priamus*: inso much as being linked fast and tied to these desires, I reaped and received no pleasure nor any contentment at all from all other blessings; for notwithstanding I was sufficiently furnished with them, yet I took myself leit needy and destitute of those which I accounted the greatest; and therefore I well remember, when

when I saw you upon a time stately arrayed, with a rich robe in *Caudæ*, I wished not to have your wildom and vertue, but your beautiful cassock to daintily and finely wrought, your mantle I say of purple, so delicate and soft, the beauty whereof I beheld with such admiration, that I was even ravished and transported with the sight thereof, as for the button or clasp, all of pure gold, belonging thereto, it had in it a singularity by it selfe, and an excellent workman he was no doubt, who took delight in the turning and graving thereof; and verily for mine own part, I followed after you for to see it, as if I had been enchanted or bewitched; as women that be amorous of their Lovers: But how being delivered from these vain and foolish opinions, and having my brain purged from such fantastical conceits, I passe over gold and silver, and make no more account of them, then I doe of sapphirall stones; your goodly habiliments, your fine embroidered garments of needle work and rapistry, I set to light by, that I make more reckoning I assure you, of a good deep puddle of filth and dirt to walter and wallow in at mine ease, and for to sleep when my belly is full, then of them: neither is there any of these appetites coming from without, that hath place in our soul, but our life for the most part we passe in desires and pleasures necessary; and even those which are meet natural only, and not altogether so necessary, we use them neither disorderly, nor yet unreasonably: And of them let us first discourse: As for that familiar pleasure which proceedeth from sweet odours, and such things, as by their sent doe affect the smelling, over and besides the sweet delight that it yeeldeth, which doth naught, it bringeth therewith a certaine profit and commodity, for to discern nourishment, and make choise of food; for the tongue is named, as it is indeed, the judge of sweet, of sharp, eager and lowre flavours, namely, when as the juices of those things which are tasted, come to be mingled and incorporate with the discretive faculty, and not before: But our sense of smelling, before we once taste those juices or vapours, judgeth, and not before: But our sense of feeling, yea, and leaeneth them much more exquisitely then all the others: that give essay before Kings and Princes: As for that which is familiar and agreeable unto us, as it receiveth inwardly, but whatsoever is strange and offensive, it rejecteth and sendeth forth, neither will it suffer the same once to touch us, or to offend our taste: but it leaweyeth, accuſeth, and condemneth the evil and noisome quality thereof, before it doth us any harm, and otherwise it troubleth us not at all, as it doth you, whom it so fetch to mix and compound together for perfumes: cinnamon, mard, ipike, lavender, and camomill, malabathum, and the aromaticall plants, or cane of *Arabia*, medling and Perumer, forcing drugs and ipices of divers natures to be blended and confounded together, and buying for great summes of money one pleasure, which is not delishous and contented together, but rather fit for fine wenches and dainty damocels, and nothing at all profitable: And yet being thus corrupt as it is, it marreth not only all women, but also the most part of you that are men, inso much as you will not otherwise live with your own espoused wives, unless they be perfumed and bemereared all over with sweet oyls and oynments, or else bedressed with odiferous powders, when they come to company with you: Whereas contrariwise among us, the Sow allureth the Boar, the Doe or she Goate draweth unto her the Buck, and other Females the Males of their kind, by their own sent and smell, casting from them the pure and neat favour of the meadows, and the verdure of the fields, and do coming together as in marriage for generation, with a kind of mutual love and reciprocal pleasure: neither do the Females hold off and make it dainty, disguising and covering (as it were) their own lust as harlots do, with looking strange and coy at the matter, pretending colourable excuses, or making semblance of refusal, and all to entice, entile, and draw on the rather; nor the Males when they come unto them, being pricked with the furious instinct of lust to generation, do buy either for money, or for great pain and travail, or for long subjection and servitude, the act of generation; but they perform the same unfeignedly, and without deceit in due time and season, without any cost, when as nature in the spring stirreth up and provoketh the generative concupiscence of all living Creatures, even as it putteth forth the buds and sprouts of plants, and anon delayeth as it were and quencheth the same: for neither the female after she is once sped and hath conceived, seeketh after the male, nor the male wooeth her any more, nor followeth after her: of so little regard and final price is this pleasure among us; but nature is all in all, and nothing do we against it: Hereof also it is, that there hath not been known unto this day, any lust so far to transport brute beasts, as that males should joyne in this act with males, or females with females; whereas among you, there be many such examples, even of such as otherwise were accounted great and worthy personages, for I let those pale who were of no worth or note to speak of: Even *Agamemnon* went through all *Beotia*, chasing and hunting after *Argemnon*, who fled secretly from him: mean while he pretended colourable, yet false excuses of his abode there, to wit, the sea, and the winds, and afterwards this fair and goodly fille excuses of his abode there, to wit, the sea, and the winds, as it were there to quench the heat of his love, Knight, bathed himselfe gently in the pool of *Copais*, as it were there to quench the heat of his love, and to deliver himselfe from this furious lust. Semblably *Heracles* pursuing after a young beardsleepe *Ganymede* whom he loved, was left behind the other Gallants and brave Knights that enterprised the voyage for the golden fleece, and so not embarking with them, betrayed the Fleet. Likewise upon a faction of the lower or vaulted rooſe of *Apollos* Temple, surnamed *Proims*, there was one of you, who secretly wrote this Inſcription: *Achilles* the fair: even after that *Achilles* himselfe had begotten a son: and I hear say, that these letters remain there to be seen even at this day: Now if it chance that a dunghill Cock tread another Cock, when there is no Hen at hand; he is burnt

*Or Argemnon.*

burnt quick, for that some Wizzard, Soothlayer, or Interpreter of such strange prodigies, will pronounce that it is ominous, and prelageth some evil luck: Thus you see, how men themselves are forced to confesse, that beasts are more continent then they, and that to satiate and fulfil their lusts, they never violate nor abate nature; whereas in you it is otherwise: for nature (albeit shee have the help and aid of the law) is not able to keep your intemperance within the limits and bounds of reason; but like unto a violent stream which runneth forcibly, oftentimes, and in many places it worketh outrage, causing great disorder, scandal and confusion against nature, in this point of carnal love and fleshly lust: for there have been men who attempted to meddle and deale with shee Goats, with Sows and Mares: as also women who have been as wood, and raging mad after certain beasts of the male kind: and verily, of such copulations as these, are come your Minotaures and Ægipanes; yea, and as I verily think, those Sphinxes and Centaures in time past, have been bred by the same means. True it is (I confesse) that otherwhiles, upon necessity and extreme famine, a dog hath been known to have devoured a man or a woman; yea, and some fowle hath tasted of their flesh, and begun to eat it: but there was never found yet any brute beast to have lusted after man or woman, to engender with them; whereas men both in this lust and in many other pleasures, have oftentimes perpetrated outrage upon beasts. Now if they be so unbridled, fodiordinate and incontinent in these appetites, much more dissolve they are known to be then beasts in other desires and lusts that be necessary, to wit, in meats and drinks, whereof we never take pleasure, but it is with some profit; but you that seek after the tickling pleasure and delight in drinking and eating, rather then the needfull nourishment to content and satiate nature, are afterwards well punished for it by many grievous and long maladies, which proceed all from one source, to wit, surfeit and repletion, namely, when you stuff and fill your bodies with all sorts of flatulent humours and vanities, which hardly are purged and excluded forth: for first and foremost, each sort of beasts hath several food and peculiar kind of nourishment: some feed upon grasse, others upon roots, and some there be again which live by fruits: as for those that devour flesh, they never touch any other kind of pasture, neither come they to take from the weaker and more feeble kind, their proper nourture, but suffer them to graze and feed quietly. Thus we see that the Lyon permitteth the Stag and Hind to graze: and the Wolfe likewise the Sheep, according to natures ordinance and appointment: but man (being through his disordinate appetite of pleasures, and by his gluttony, provoked to all things, tasting and assaying whatsoever he can meet with or hear of, as knowing indeed no proper and natural food of his own) is of all creatures living, he alone that eateth and devoureth all things: for first, he feedeth upon flesh, without any need or necessity enforcing him thereto, considering that he may always gather, presse, cut and reap from plants, vines and seeds, all sort of fruits, one after another in due and convenient seasons, until he be weary again, for the great quantity thereof; and yet for to content his delicate tooth, and upon a loathsome fulness of necessary sustenance, he seeketh after other victuals, neither needfull nor meet for him, nor yet pure and clean, in killing living creatures, much more cruelly then those savage beasts that live of ravin: for blood and carnage of murdered carcasses is the proper and familiar food for a Kite, a Wolfe, or a Dragon: but unto man it serveth in stead of his dainty dish: and more then so, man in the use of all sorts of beasts, doth not like other creatures that live of prey, which abstain from the moist part, and ware with some small number, even for very necessity of food: for there is neither fowle flying in the air, nor (in manner) any fish swimming in the sea, nor (to speak in one word) any beast feeding upon the face of the earth, that can escape those tables of yours, which you call gentle, kind and hospital. But you will say, that all this standeth in stead of sauce to season your food: be it so: why then doe you kill the same for that purpose, and for to furnish those your mild and courteous tables?

But the wisdom of beasts, far different: for it giveth place to no art whatsoever, that is vain and needlesse; and as for those that be necessary, it entertaineth them not as coming from others, nor as taught by mercenary masters for hire and money: neither is it required, that it should have any exercise to glue (as it were, and join after slender manner) each rule, principle and proposition, one to another; but all at once of it selfe, it yeeldeth them as native and inbred therewith. We hear say, that all the Egyptians be Physicians; but surely every beast hath in it selfe not only the art and skill to cure and heale it selfe when it is sick, but also is sufficiently instructed how to feed and nourish it selfe, how to use her own strength, how to fight, how to hunt, how to stand at defence, yea, and in very musick they are skilful, each one in that measure as is requisite and befitting the own nature: for of whom have we learned, finding our selves ill at ease, to go into the rivers for to seek for Crabs and Crawfishes? who hath taught the Tortoises, when they have eaten a Viper, to seek out the herb *Organ* for to feed upon? who hath shewed unto the Goats of *Candie*, when they be shot into the body with arrows, to find out the herb *Dillamnus*, for to feed on it, and thereby to cause the arrow head to come forth and fall from them? For if you say (as the truth is) that nature is the school-Mistresse, teaching them all this, you refer and reduce the wisdom and intelligence of dumb beasts unto the sagest and most perfect cause or principle that is; which if you think you may not call reason, nor prudence, ye ought then to seek out some other name for it, that is better and more honourable: and to say a truth, by effects shee sheweth her puissance to be greater and more admirable, as being neither ignorant nor ill taught, but having learned rather of it selfe, not by imbecillity and feebleness of nature, but contrariwise, through the force and perfection of natural verne, letting go, and nothing at all esteeming that beggerly prudence which is gotten from

other

gotten from other by way of apprenticeship. Nevertheless, all those things which men either for delicacy or in mirth and pastime, do present unto them for to learne and to exercise their conceit and wit withall, howsoever they be against the natural inclination of the bodies yet such is their capacity and the excellency of their spirit, that they will reach thereto and compels the same, throughly. I say nothing how whelps follow and trace beasts by the foot, or how colts practise to their leet forward in their pace by measures: but how crows and ravens will talke and traile, how dogs will leap and dance upon wheeles as they trune round about: also horses and oxen we see in the theaters, how they being taught to couch and to ly down, to dance, to stand upright on their hinder feet, so wonderfully, that men themselves have enough to doe to performe the like dangerous gestures, and yet this they doe: after they have once learned it from others, yea, and remember the feat thereof, only for a proof, if there were nothing else, that docible they be and apt to learne whatsoever a man would have them. Since that all this serveth for nothing else in the whole world. Now if you be hard of beliefe, and will not be persuaded that we learne the arts, I will say more than so; namely, that we can teach the same: for the old rowen partridges teach their young ones how to run away from before the fowler, and to escape by lying upon their backs, and holding up with their fore feet a clod of earth to hide themselves under it; and see we not daily upon the tops of our houses, how the old flocks standing by their little ones, traine and teach them how to fly; semblably the nightingals instruct their young birds in song, in as much as those which be taken unfledge out of the nest, and are nourished by mans hand, never afterwards sing so well, because they be had away before their time from schoole, and want their matter of musick. For mine own part, after that I was entered into this body I marvelled much at those reason and discourses of sophisters, who maintained and persuaded me before time, that all living creatures besides man were without reason and understanding.

Myselfe,

You are indeed *Gryllus* much changed, and you can shew unto us by found demonstrations, that a sheep is reasonable, and an ass hath wit, can you not?

Gryllus,

Yes I wis, good *Myselfe*, for even by these very arguments, a man may principally collect and gather, that the nature of the beasts is not altogether void of the use of reason and intelligence: Like as therefore among trees, there is not one more (less destitute of soul, or I mean that which is sensitive) than another, but they be all indifferently and equally void thereof, and not one of them is one jot endued therewith: even so in sensible beasts, there would not be one found more slow and unapt to learne things of wit and understanding than another; if they were not all partakers of reason and intelligence, although some have the same in more or less measure than others; and say there be some very blockish and exceeding dull of conceit, consider withall, how the wily sleights & crafty conceits of others may be put in balance against the same, namely, when you shall compare the fox, and woorle, or the bees with the sheep and the ass: is it all one as if you should set *Polphemus* to your selfe; or that *Homer of Corinth* to your grandfather *Antolycus*: And yet I think verily, that there is not for great difference and distance between beast and beast, as there be odds in the matter of wisdom, discourse of reason, and use of memory between man and man.

Myselfe,

But take heed of one thing *Gryllus*, that it be not a strange and absurd position, founding of no probability at all, to attribute any use of reason unto those who have no sense or knowledge at all of God.

Gryllus,

What *Myselfe*, shall we not say that you being excellent as you are, were defended from the rage of *Sisyphus*, &c.?

Whether it be lawfull to eat flesh or no.

The former Oration or Treatise.

The Summary.

Eloquence was highly esteemed in times past among Greeks and Romans, and therefore their children were trained and framed betimes in the schooles to discourse well, in good tearmes, and proper phrases, yea, and with pregnant and found reasons of divers matters: to the end that when they were come to more years, they might make proof of their sufficiency in courts and publick assemblies of Cities, in private consultations and familiar conferences, as it appeareth very plainly by the histories of all ages. Now after that young children had learned of their schoole-masters the rules and precepts named *Progymasmata*, or the first exercises, they were brought into the auditory of some great professor in Rhetorick: where there were proposed unto them certaine themes gathered out of poets, historians, or phi-

R r

phi-

Knowledge of  
reason.

philosophers, upon which they exercised their stile to write pro and contra, in the defence or confutation of this or that opinion, according to the measure of their spirit and capacities, more or less: Those who were more forward, and farther proceeded than the rest, could by heart that which they had penned, and pronounced the same afterwards in the presence of those that came to hear them: Some of them who were grown to a great measure of knowledge, and as it were in the bighest forme of such exercises, were wont to stand forth and answer all questions propounded, disputing and discoursing in praise or dispraise of one and the same thing, as Gorgias, Carneades, and an infinite number of others, are able to make good and verifie. This manner of exercise, named declamations, was practised in Plutarch's time, as may be collected out of divers places of his works: and as these two treatises immediately following, do sufficiently declare, the which are maimed and imperfect at the very beginning, in the mids toward the end especially the second: for it may be easily seen that they are fragments of certain declamations which he wrote for his own exercise when he was a young man. Now albeit they be so corrupt and defective in manner, althorowit, yet the remnant which is left unto us, doth sufficiently discover the honest occupation and employment of learned men in those dayes, and the careful industrie that they had to examine and discuss all things thorowly, to the end that by a diligent conference thereof, the truth might the better appear and be knowne. And if otherwhiles they maintained certain paradoxes and strange opinions, it was not upon any craftie and litigious spirit to defend obtusely all that came into their fantasticall brains, but for to augment and increase in themselves an earnest desire to apprehend and understand things better. And howsoever our author seemeth to be of mind for to defend the opinion of Pythagoras, as touching the transmigration of souls, and the prohibition to eat flesh; yet by other treatises written with more deliberate, mature and stand judgements, he giveth us to understand, that he is of a contrary opinion: but his principall purpose he sheweth at seemeth to be acutting off and abridging of the great excess and superfluitie in purveying, burning, and spending of viands, which in his time began to grow out of all measure: a disorder and enormity which afterwards increased much more. For to gain, and compass this point, he would seem to persuade men to the opinion of Pythagoras, which mightily enteth the wings of all riot and wastfull dissolutiō. Moreover, this ought not to be taken so, as if it favoured and seconded the error of certain fantastical persons who have condemned the use of Gods good creatures: for in the school of Christ we are taught good lessons, which refute sufficiently the drames of the Pythagoreans, and resolve assuredly the good conscience of all those that make use of all creatures meet for the sustentation of his life: soberly & with thanksgiving, as knowing them to be good, and their use clean and pure unto those whom the spirit of regeneration hath sanctified, for to make them partakers of that realme which is not shut up and inclosed in meat and drink. As touching this present tract for the maintenance of Pythagoras his paradox, he allegeth five reasons: to wit, That the eating of flesh, is a testimonie and signe of inhumanitie: That we ought to sympathize it, considering we are not driven upon necessity to feed thereupon: That it is an unnaturall and wicked: That it hurteth soul and body: and for a conclusion: That men will never carry themselves due and converse modestly together, if they learn not first to be pitifull and kinde even to the very dumb beasts.

Whether it be lawfull to eat flesh or no.

The former Oration or Treatise.

But you demand of me, for what cause Pythagoras abstained from eating flesh? And I again do marvel, what affection, what manner of courage, or what motive or reason had that man, who first approached with his mouth unto a faine creature, who durst with his lips once touch the flesh of a beast either killed or dead: or how he could finde in his heart to be served at his table with the dead bodies, and as a man may say, very idolls, to make his food and nourishment of those parts and members which a little before died beat, low, bellow, walke and feed. How could his eyes endure to behold such murder and slaughter, whiles the poore beasts were either sticke or had the throats cut, were slayed and dismembred? how could his nose abide the smell and sent that came from them? how came it that his tast was not cleane marred and overthrowen with horrour, when he came to handle those uncouth sores and ulcers, or receive the blood and humours, issuing out of the deadly wounds.

The skins now staid, upon the ground did sprout,

The flesh on spurs did bellow still and low:

Roost, sod and raw, did cry aswell as cranes,

And yield a voice of living ox or cow.

But this, you will say, is a loud lie, and a meer poetical fiction; howbeit, this was certainly strange and monstrous supping, that any man should hunger after those beasts, and desire to eat them whiles they still keepe a owing: to prescribe also, and teach men how they should feed of those creatures which live and rie still: to ordeine likewise, how they ought to be dressed, boiled, or roasted, and served upon the board.

But he who first invented these monstrousities, ought to be inquired after, and not he who last gave over & rejected the same. Or a man may well say, that those who at the first began to eat flesh, had all just causes to do, in regard of their want and necessitie: for surely, it was not by reason of dis-

diordinate and enormous appetite which they used a long time, nor upon plenty and abundance of necessary things, that they grew to this insulency, to seeke after strange pleasures, and those contrary to nature. But verily, if they could recover their senses and speech again, they might well say now, O how happy and well beloved of the gods are you, who live in these dayes in what a world and age are you born! what affluence of all sorts of good things do you enjoy! what harvests, what flocks of fruits yeeldeth the earth unto you! how commodious are the vintages! and what riches do the fields bring unto you! what a number of trees and plants do furnish you with delights and pleasures, which you may gather and receive, when you think good! you may live (if you list) in all manner of delicacy, without once fouling your hands for the matter; whereas our hap was to be born in the hardest time and most terrible age of the world, when as we could not chiole but inborn by reason of the new creation of all things a great want and streight indigence of many necessaries: the face of the heaven and skie was still covered with the aire, the stars were dusked with troubled and intiable humors, together with fire and tempestuous winds: the Sun was not yet settled and established, having a constant and certaine race to hold his courie in,

From East to West, to make both even and morne

Distinct, nor by returne from Tropiques twaine:

The seasons chang'd from those that were before,

Beright with leaves, with flowers, with fruits and graine.

The earth suffered wrong by the inordinate streames and inundations of rivers, which had neither certain chanel nor banks: much of it lay wast and desolom, with loughs, marshes, and deepe bogs: much also remained savage, being over-spred with wild woods and fruitles forrests, it brought forth no fruits ripe and pleasant: neither were there any tools and instruments belonging to any art: nor for much as any invention of a witty head, Hunger never gave us ease or time of repose: neither was there any expectation or waiting for the yearly seasons of seednes, for there was no sowing at all. No marvel therefore, if we did eat the flesh of beasts and living creatures even contrary to nature, considering that then the very mors and bark of trees served for food: and well was he who could finde any green grais or quick colic, or so much as the root of the herb, *Phlox*: but whensoever men could meet with acorns and mast to tast and feed upon, they would dance and hop for joy about an oak or beech tree: & in their rusticall songs call the earth their bountifull mother & their kind nurse: and live a day as that onely they accounted festive: all their life besides was full of vexation, sorrow and heaviness. But now, what rage, what fury and madnes inciteth you to commit such murders and carnage, seeing you have such food and plenty of all things necessary for your life? why belieue you the earth, and most unthankfully dishonour her, as if she could not suffice and nourish you? why do you violate the divine power of *Ceres* the inventress of sowed lawes, and flame sweet and gracious *Bacchus*, as if these two deities gave you not sufficient whereupon you might live? what are you not ashamed to mingle at your tables pleasant fruits with bloody murder? You call lions and libards savage beasts: mean while your selves are steined with bloodshed, giving no placeto them in cruelty, for where as they do worry & kill other beasts it is for very necessity and need of food: but you do it for dainty fare: them when we have slain either lions or wolves in defence of our selves we eat them not but let them lie: But they be the innocent the harmless, the gentle and tame creatures, which have neither teeth to bite, nor prick to sting withall, which we take and kill, although nature seemeth to have created them, onely for beauty and delight: Much like as if a man seeing *Nilus* overflowing his banks, and filling all the country about with running water, which is generative & fruitful, would not praise with admiration the property of that river, causing to spring and grow so many fair and goodly fruits, and the same to be necessary for mans life: but if he chance to spy a crocodill swimming, or an allipick creeping and gliding down, or some venomous fish, hurtfull and noisome beasts all, blameh the said river upon that occasion, and faith that they be cause sufficient, that of necessity he must complaine of the thing: Or verily, when one seeing this land and champaign country overspread with good and beautiful fruits, charged also and replenished with ears of corn, should perceive calling hisie over those pleasant corn fields, here and there a ear of dandel choke-errill or some such unhappy weed among, should thereupon forbear to reape and tary in the said corn, and forgoe the benefit of a plentiful harvest and finde fault therewith: Semblably in the said case when one seeth the plea of an orator in any cause or action, who with a full and oribie streame of eloquence, endeavoureth to save his client out of the danger of death, or otherwise to prove and verifie the charges and imputations of certaine crimes: this oration (I say) or eloquent speech of his running not simply and nakedly, but carrying with it many and sundry affections of all sorts which he imprinteth in the minds and hearts of the hearers or judges, which being many also and those divers and different, he is to turn, to bend and change, or otherwise, to dulce appeale and flay: if he I say should anon pass over and not consider the principall issue, and main point of the cause, and but be himselfe in gathering some by-peeches besides the purposes, or haply some phrases improper and impertinent, which the oration of some advocate with the flowing comie thereof hath carried down with it, lighting thereupon, and falling with the rest of his speech, [But we are nothing moved either with the faire and beautiful colour, or the sweet and tunable voice, or the quickness and subtilty of spirit, or the neat and clean life, or the vivacity of wit and understanding of these poore silly creatures: and for a little peece of flesh we take away their life, we bereave them of the sun and sight, cutting short that race of life which nature had limited

\* *Phlox* NOT  
knowne to  
Plutarch  
I take it to be  
Red mace  
Cary-tail.

\* I see not  
how this that  
is precluded  
within these  
marks!  
Agrippa with  
this place, or  
matter in  
hand: I suppose  
therefore it  
is here  
inserted  
without  
Judgement,  
& taken out  
of some  
other booke.

and prefixed for them; and more than so, those lamentable and trembling voices which they utter for fear, we suppose to be intricate, or unignificant sounds, and nothing less than pitiful prayers, supplications, pleas and justifications of these poor innocent creatures, who in their languages, every one of them cry in this manner: If thou be forced upon necessity, I beseech thee not to take my life: but if disordained lust move thee thereunto, spare me: in case thou halt a mind simply to eat on my flesh, kill me: but if it be for that thou wouldst feed more delicately, hold thy hand and let me live. O monstrous cruelty! It is a horrible sight to see the table of rich men once hand served and furnished with viands set out by cooks and victuallers that dress the flesh of dead bodies; but most horrible it is to see the same taken up, for that the rich and broken meats remaining be far more than that which is eaten: To what purpose then were those filly beasts slain? Now there be others, who making spare of the viand served to the table, will in no hand that they should be cut or sliced; sparing them when as they be nothing but bare flesh; whereas they spared them not whilst they were living beasts: But forasmuch as we have heard that the same men hold and say: That nature hath directed them to the eating flesh; it is plain and evident, that this cannot accord with mans nature: And first and foremost this appeareth by the fabrick and composition of his body: for it resembleth none of those creatures whom nature hath made to feed on flesh, considering they have neither hooked bill, no hawk-pointed tallants, they have no sharp and rough teeth, nor stomach so strong, or so hot breath and spirit, as to be able to concoct and digest the heavy masse of raw flesh: And if there were naught else to be alledged, nature herself by the closeness and united equality of our teeth, by our small mouth, our soft tongue, the imbecility of natural heart, and spirits serving for concoction, sheweth sufficiently that the provoveth not of mans usage to eat flesh, but disfavoreth and disclaimeth the same: And if you obstinately maintain and defend, that nature hath made you for to eat such viands: then, that which you mind to eat first, kill your selfe, even your own selfe (I say) without using any blade, knife, bar, club, axe, or hatchet: And even as beares, lions, and wolves, slay a beast according as they mean to eat it; even so kill thou a beefe, by the bit of thy teeth; slay me a swine with the help of thy mouth and jawes: scarce in peeces a lambe or an hare with thy nailes; and when thou halt to don, eat it up while it is alive, like as beatts do: but if thou stailest until they be dead ere thou eat them, and art abashed to chafe with thy teeth the life that presently is in the flesh which thou eatest; why dost thou against nature eat that which had life? and yet, when it is deprived of life, and fully dead, there is no man that the heart to eat the same as it is; but they cause it to be boiled, and to be roasted: they alter it with fire, and many drugges and spices, changing, disguising, and quenching (as it were) the horror of the murder, with a thousand devices of seasoning: to the end that the sense of raising being beguiled and deceived by a number of sweet sauces and pleasant condiments, might admit and receive that which it abhorreth, and is contrary unto it. Certes it was a pretty conceit which was reported by a Laconian, who having bought in his Inn or hostelry, a little fish, gave it, as it should seem, to the Innkeeper for to be dressed: but when he called unto him for vinegar, cheele, and oyle to do it withall: If (quoth the Laconian) I had that which thou demandest of me, I would never have bought this fish. But we contrariwise, for to please our delicate tooth, are so delighted in slaughter and carnage, the flesh we call our viands; and yet then we have need of other viands for the very dressing of flesh itselfe: mixing and adding thereto, oyle, wine, hony, the prickles or sauce *garum* and vinegar, embalming (as it were) and burying a dead corps with Syriack spices and Arabian sauces. And verily, when our flesh meats after this manner be mortified, made tender, and in some sort purified, our natural heat hath much adoe to concoct the same, and being not able indeed to digest them perfectly, it ingendereth in us dangerous heaviness and crudities apt to breed diseases. *Dispute* upon a time was so rash, that he durst eat a polype or porcupine fish all raw, because he would have taken away the uie and help of fire in dressing such meats: and there being certain priests and many other men standing about him, when he covered his head with his cloak, and put the flesh of the said polype into his mouth, he laid unto them all: For your sake it is that I hazard my selfe thus as I doe, and adventure this jeopardy. Now by *Jupiter*, this was a proper perill in deed, and a dony danger, was it not? or this Philosopher here exposed not himselfe to any perillous hazard, as *Pelops* did, for recovery of the Thebans liberty; nor as *Armedius* and *Arifogion*, for the freedom of *Athenes*; who thus wrestled with a raw polype fish in his stomach, and all to make the life of man more beaflike and savage. Well then, plain it is that the eating of flesh is not only unnatural in regard of the body, but also by repletion, fullness and fatietie, it maketh the soul fat and groile: for the drinking of wine and feeding upon flesh meats to the full, howsoever it may seem to cause the body to be more able and strong, yet surely the mind it doth enfeeble and weaken. And lest I should be thought a domesticall enemy to those who practise the exercise of the body named Athletics, I will use the domestick examples of mine own country: for the inhabitants of *Africa* do reame us of *Bacris*, fat-backs, groile and senselesse, yea, and blockish fots, principally for our ranke and large feeding; like as one said:

Of truth these men, in judgement mine,  
Be nothing else but franked swine.

And as *Menander* wrote in one place:

With fat their cheeks be puffed and swollen;  
See, see, their chaps how they be blown.

As

As also *Pindarus*:

They ply their jawes, they feed amaine,  
That even their cheeks do shine againe.

But according to *Heraclitus*, the dry soul seemeth to be wisest: for know thus much moreover; that empty tunnes, pipes, or barrels, re SOUND when they be knocked upon; whereas if they be full, they answer not again to the knocks or strokes given them: brasse pannes or coppers which be thin and slender, render sounds, and ring all about untill such time as one come and with his hand seem to stop and dull the stroak that otherwise went round about: The eye filled with superfluous humidity, becometh dim and dark, neither hath it the full strength and power to performe his office. When we behold the sun through a moist aire, and a number of thick mists, and groile undigested vapors, we see him not in his own nature pure, cleer, and bright; but as it were in the bottom of a cloud, all dusky, and casting forth thick wandring and dispersed beames: And even so through a body troubled with vapors, full fed, overcharged with nutriments, of unkind and strange viands, it cannot chuse but all the light and shining brightness of the soul which is natural, should become dusky and troubled, having no radiant feeded splendour, able to peirce thoroughly to the ends and extremities of subtile and fine objects, hardly to be discerned, but the same is wandering, unsteady, and dispersed.

But setting all these matters aside, is it not, think you, a right commendable thing to be acquainted and accustomed to humanity? for who would everinde in his heart to abuse and wrong a man, who is affectionate, gentle, and milde, to the very beasts which are of a strange kind from us, and have no communication of reason with us? Three dayes agoe, I alledged and cited in my disputation a testimony of *Xenocrates* to this purpose; and namely: How the Athenians condemned him to pay a round fine, who had slayed a quick Ram: And in very truth, he that tormenteth and putteth to pain one that is living, is not in my conceit worse than he that taketh the life away and killeth him: Howbeit, as far as I can see, more sense and feeling we have of such things as are unuseful and against customes than unnatural and contrary unto kind: But those reasons which I then delivered, smell haply of some grossness, and were too trivial; for I fear and am loath to touch and set abroad in these my discourses, that great and high principle, that deep and mysticall cause of this our position: That we ought not to eat flesh; for that I lay the hidden secret and original thereof is so inexcusable to bale and timorous persons, as *Plato* saith, and to such as favour of nothing but of earthly & mortall matters; and herein I fear much like the Pilot and master of the ship, who in a tempest is afraid to put his ship to sea: or unto a Poet, who darest not set up his fabrick or origin in the theater, all while the stage or pageant is turned and carried round about: And yet peradventure it were not amiss in this place to recount and pronounce aloud those verses of *Empedocles*, \*\*\*. For under covert rearmes he doth alledge and give us to understand; that the souls here, are tied and fastened to mortall bodies, by way of punishment, for that they have been murderers, have eaten flesh, devoured one another, and been fed by mutual slaughter and carnage: And yet this seemeth to be an opinion more ancient than *Empedocles*: for those fictions of Poets as touching the dismembering of *Pachus* and the outrageous attempts of the Tyrants against him, and how they taste of flesh murdered, as also of their punishment, and tendeth to that renovation with lightning, they be mere fables: the hidden metelogie whercof, tendeth to that renovation of birth or resurrection: for surely that brutish and senselesse part of our soul which is violent, disordered, and not divine, but devilish and demoniac, the ancient philosophers called Titans; and this is that which is tormented, and suffereth judicial punishment.

## Of eating Flesh.

### The second Declamation.

#### The Summary.

Our author pursuing in this second Treatise his matter and proposition, which he broached and began in the former declamation; and acknowledging how cowardly, gluttonous, and evill custome be dangerous counsellors; yet grumeth and agreeth in the end, that a man may eat flesh; upon certain conditions which he doth specify, condemning withall the cruell excess and riot of many in their fare. After this having shewed by the example of *Lycurgus*, that we ought to cut off the first occasions of all superfluities, he conferreth the opinions of *Pythagoras* and *Empedocles*, with those of other philosophers; and therewith setteth down his own conceit and advice. Afterwards when he had in one word touched, from whence, and whereupon men become so bold and hardy to eat flesh, he declareth a fresh and proveth, that this manner of feeding doth wonderfully prejudice both body and soul. And in conclusion, he commendeth the Stoicks, opposite enemies to the doctrine of *Pythagoras*; leaving this refutation imperfect, were it that himselfe never finished it, or that the malice and iniquity of the time hath deprived us thereof: Like as many other fragments missing in these words.

R r 3

Of



## Of eating Flesh.

## The second Declamation.

**R**eason would, that we should be fresh disposed, and ready in will, in mind, and thought, to hear the discourse against this misty and unfavoury custome of eating flesh: For hard it is, as *Cato* was wont to say, to preach upon the belly that hath no ears; and besides we have all drunk of the cup of custome, resembling that of *Circe*, which

*Compounded is of dolours, griefes and paines,  
Of sorrowes, woes, and of deceitfull traines.*

Neither is it any easie matter for them to cast up againe the hooke of the appetite to eat flesh, who have swallowed it down into their entrails, and are transported and full of the love of pleasures and delights: But well and happy it were for us, if, as the manner is of the *Aegyptians*, so soon as men are dead, to pounce them, and when their belly and bowels be taken forth, to mangle, cut and slice the same against the sun, and then to fling them away as being the cause of all finnes that they have committed: so we would flit cut away from our selves all our gourmandise, gluttony, and murdering of innocent creatures, that we might afterwards lead the rest of our life pure and holy: considering that it is not the belly it selfe that by murder defileth us; but polluted it is by our intemperance. But say, it is not in our power to effect thus much, or be it, that upon an inveterate custome, we are ashamed in this point to be innocent and faultles; yet let us at leastwise commit sinne in measure, and transgress with reason: Let us I say eat flesh, but so, as we be driven thereto for very hunger, and not drawn to it by a licentious tooth, to satisfie our necessity, and not to feed our greedy and delicate humour: kill we a beast, howbeit with some griefe of heart, with some commiseration and pity: and not of a proud and insolent spirit, ne yet of a murderous mind, as men do now adayes, after many and divers sorts: For some in killing of swine or porkers, thrust them in with red-hot spits; to the end that the blood being shed and quenched as it were by the tincture of the fiery iron, running through the body, might cause the flesh forsooth to be more tender and delicate: ye shall have others leape upon the adders and paps of the poore sowes ready to farrow, and trample upon their bellies and teats with their feet, that the blood, the milk, and the congealed bag of the young pigges, knit within the dammes womb, being all jumbled, continued and blended together, even amidst the painfull pang of farrowing (O *Jupiter Placularis*) they might make (I would not mismeane) a most dainty dish of meat, and devour the most corrupt and putrified part of the poore beast: many there are who have a device to flitch and sow up the eyes of cranes and swannes, and when they have so don, to mew them up in a darke place, and to feed them, crooming them with strange compositions and pastes made of dried figgs; but wot you why? because their flesh should be more dainty and pleasant: whereby it appeareth evidently, that it is not for need of nourishment, nor for want and necessity; but even for sallery, wantonness, sumptuous curiosity, and superfluous excess, that of horrible injustice and wickedness, they make their pleasure and delight: and like as the filthy lecherous person, who is unsatiable in the pleasure of women, after he hath assaid many, runneth on headlong still, roving and ranging every way, and yet his unbridled and untamed lust is not yet satisfied, but he falleth to perpetrate such horrible villanies as are not once to be named; even so intemperance in meats, when it hath passed once the bounds of nature, and limits of necessity, proceedeth to outrage and cruelty, searching all means how to vary and change the disordinate appetite: for the organs and instruments of our senses, by a fellow-feeling and contagion of maladies, are affected one by another, yea, and run into disorder and sinne together, through intemperance, when they rest not contented with the measure assigned them by nature: Thus the hearing being out of frame and sick, or not guided by reason, marreth much: the feeling when it is degenerate into an effeminate delicacy, seeketh filitily after wanton ticklings, touchings, frictions and handling of women: the same vice of intemperance hath taught the eyesight not to be contented with beholding morisks, pirrnick, or warlike dances, nor other laudable and decent gestures, ne yet to see and view faire pictures and goodly statues, but to esteeme the death and murder of men, their mortall wounds, bloody fights, and deadly combats, to be the best sights and spectacles that can be devised. And hereupon it is, that upon such excessive fare and superfluity at the table, there ensue ordinarily wanton loves; upon lechery and filthy venery, there followeth beastly rage; these bawdy ballads and stinking tales, be accompanied commonly with hideous fights, and monstrous shewes: lastly, these horrible spectacles have attending upon them, cruelty, and humane impassibility, even in the cases to very mankind. Hereupon it was, that *Lycurus* the divine law-giver, in those three ordinances of his which he called *Rhetra*, commanded that the doores, routes and finis of houses, should be madewith the saw and the ax onely, and no other instrument besides there employed; which he did not, I assure you, for any hatred at all that he conceived against augers, wimbles, twibils, or other tools for joyners or carvers work; but he knew well enough, that a man would never bring among such simple frames a guided beadstead, nor venture to carry into an house

to

so plainly built, silver tables, hangings, carpets and coverings of rich tapestrie died with purple, or any precious stones; and he witt full well, that with such an house, with such beadstids, tables and cups, a frugal supper and a simple dinner would agree and fort belt. For to say a truth, upon the beginning and foundation of a disordinate diet, and superfluous kind of life; all manner of delicacy and costly curiosity useth to follow:

*Like as the sucking foale, always  
Runnes with the damme, and doth not stay.*

What supper then, is not to be counted sumptuous, for which there is evermore killed some living creature or other: or do we think little of the dispence of a foul, and suppose we, that the loss of life is not costly? I do not say, that it was peradventure the soul of a mother, a father, some friend, or a sonne, as *Empedocles* gave out: but surely a soul endued with sense, with seeing, hearing, apprehension, understanding, wit and discretion, such as nature hath given to each living creature, sufficient to seeke and get that which is good for it, and likewise to avoid and shun whatsoever is hurtfull and contrary to it. Consider now a little, whether those philosophers that teach and will us to eat our children, our friends, our fathers and wives when they are dead, do make us more gentle and fuller of humanity, than *Pythagoras* and *Empedocles*, who accustom and acquaint us to be kind and just, even to other creatures. Well, you mock and laugh at him that maketh conscience to eat of a mutton; and shall not we (say they) laugh a good and make sport when we see one cutting and chopping pieces of his father or mother being dead, and lending away some thereof to his friends who are ablent, and inviting such as be present and neer at hand, to come & make merry with the rest, causing light joints and pieces of flesh to be served up to the table, without any spare at all? But it may be, that we offend now, and commit some fault in handling these books, having not beforehand cleaned out our hands, muddied our eyes, purified our feet, and purged our ears; unless perhaps this by their cleansing and expiation, to devise and discourse of such things with sweet and pleasant words, which as *Plato* saith, wash away all salt and brackish hearing: but if a man should see these books and arguments in parallel opposition or comparison one with another; he would judge that some of them were the Philosophy of the *Scythians*, *Tartarians*, *Sagidians*, and *Melanchemians*, of whom when *Herodotus* writeth, he is taken for a liar; and as for the sentences and opinions of *Pythagoras* and *Empedocles*, they were the very lawes, ordinances, statutes, and judgements of the ancient Greeks, according to which they framed their lives, to wit: That there were between us and brute beasts certaine common rights: who were they then, that afterwards otherwise ordered?

*Even they who first of iron and steel,  
mischievous swords did forge;  
And of poore labouring ox at plough,  
began to cut the gorge.*

For even thus also began tyrants to commit murders: like as at the first in old time, they killed at *Athen* one notorious and most wicked lycophant, named *Epicteides*; so they did by a second, and likewise third: now the Athenians being thus acquainted to see men put to death; saw afterwards *Niceratus* the sonne of *Nicias* murdered: *Theramenes* also the great commander and capitaine generally yea and *Polemarchus* the philosopher. Semblably men began at first to eat the flesh of some generally yea and *Polemarchus* the philosopher. Semblably men began at first to eat the flesh of some large and hurtfull beast, then some fowls and fish were snared and caught with nets, and consequently cruelty (being fleshed as it were, exercised and inured in those and such like slaughters) proceeded even to the poor labouring ox, to the silly sheepe that doth clad and trim our bodies, yea, and to the house-cock: and thus men by little and little augmenting their insatiable greediness, never staid untill they came to man-slaughter, to murder, yea, and to bloody battels. But if a man cannot prove nor make demonstration by sound reasons, that souls in their reiterations and new reasonies meet with common bodies; so as that which now is reasonable, becometh afterwards reasonles, and likewise that which at this present is wild and savage, cometh to be by another birth and regeneration, tame and gentle againe; and that nature transmuteth and translateth all bodies, dislodging and replacing the soul of one in another,

*And cladde them with robes unknown,  
Of other flesh, as with their own.*

Are not these reasons yet at leastwise sufficient to reclaim and divert men from this unbridled intemperance of murdering dumb beasts? namely, that it breedeth maladies, crudities, heaviness, and indigestion in the body, that it marreth and corrupteth the soul, which naturally is given to the contemplation of high and heavenly things? to wit, when we have taken up a wont and custome, not to feast a friend or stranger who cometh to visit us, unless we have committed committing murder, a marriage dinner or make merry with our neighbours and friends without committing murder? And albeit the said proof and argument of the transmigration of soules into sundry bodies, be not sufficiently declared, so as it may deserve to be credited and believed; yet surely the consent and opinion thereof, ought to worke some scruple and feare in our hearts, and in some sort hold us in and stay our hands. For like as when two armies encounter one another in a night battles, if one chance to light upon a man fallen upon the ground, whose body is all covered and hidden with armour, and present his sword to cut his throat, or run him through, & there with heare another crying unto him that he knoweth not certainly but thinketh and suppoeth that the party lying along is his brother, his son, his father, or tent-fellow; whether were it better, that he giving care & credit to

this







might annoy and offend her; and thus hath *Metrodorus* written in his treatise against Sophists: so that according to their doctrine, we are to make this definition of sovereign good, even the avoidance of evil: for how can one lodge any joy, or place the said good, but only there, from whence pain and evil hath been dislodged and removed: To the same effect writeth *Epicurus* also, to wit: That the nature of a good thing is ingendered and ariseth from the eschewing and shunning of evil: as also that it proceedeth from the remembrance, cogitation, and joy which one conceiveth, in that such a thing hapned unto him. For surely it is an inestimable and incomparable pleasure (by his saying) to wit, the knowledge alone that one hath escaped some notable hurt or great danger: And this (quoth he) is certainly the nature and essence of the sovereign good, if thou wilt directly apply thy selfe thereto, as it is meet, and then anon rest and stay therein, without wandering to and fro, here and there, prating and babbling I wot not what concerning the definition of the said sovereign good. O the great felicity and goodly pleasure which these men enjoy, rejoycing as they do in this, that they endure none evil, feele no pain, nor suffer sorrow! Have they not (think you) great cause to glorifie, and to say as they do, calling themselves immortal, and gods fellows? Have they not reason for these their grandeurs, and exceeding sublimites of their blessings, to cry out with open mouth, and as if they were possessed with the frantick fury of *Bacchus* Priests, to break forth into loud exclamation for joy, that surpassing all other men in wisdom and quicknesse of wit, they only have found out the sovereign, celestial, and divine good, and that which hath no mixture at all of evil? So that now their beatitude and felicity is nothing inferior to that of swine and sheep, in that they repose their happiness in the good and sufficient estate of the flesh principally, and of the flesh likewise in regard of the flesh; of hogs I say and sheep; for to speak of other beasts which are of a more civil, gentle, and gallant nature: the height and perfection of their good, standeth not upon the avoiding of evil, considering that when they are full, and have stored their crawes, some fall to singing and crowing, others to swimming; some give themselves to sleepe, others to counterfeite all kinds of notes and sounds, disporting for joy of heart and the pleasure that they take: they use to play together, they make pastime, they hope, leap, skip, and dance one with another, shewing thereby, that after they have escaped some evil, nature inciteth and stirreth them to seek forward, and look after that which is good, or rather indeed that they reject and cast from them, all that which is odorous and contrary to their pasture, as if it stood in their way, and hindered them in the pursuit of that which is better, more proper and natural unto them: for that which is necessary is not (straight ways) imply good; but surely the thing that in truth is desirable and worthy to be choicet above the rest, is situate farther, and reacheth beyond the avoidance of evil: I mean that which is indeed pleasant, and familiar to nature, as *Plato* said: who forbade expressly to call or once to esteeme the deliverance from pain and sorrow, either pleasure or joy, but to take them as it were for the rude S. iography or first draught of a Painter, or a mixture of that which is proper and strange, familiar and unnatural, like as of black and white. But some there be, who mounting from the bottom to the midit, for want of knowledge, what is the lowest and the middest, take the middest for the top and the highest pitch, as *Epicurus* and *Metrodorus* have done, who defined the essential nature and substance of the sovereign good, to be the deliverance and riddance from evil, contenting themselves with the joy of slaves and captives, who are enlarged and delivered out of prison, or eased of their irons, who take it to be a great pleasure done unto them in case they be gently washed, bathed, and annointed after their whipping, cheer, and when their flesh hath been some with scourges: mean while they have no taste at all of knowledge of pure, true, and liberal joyes: indeed, such as be sincere, clean and not blemished with any fears, or cicatrices, for those they never saw, nor came where they grew: for say that the curf, scab, and maligne of the flesh, say that the bleedrednes or gummy watering of rheumatick eyes, be troublesome infirmities, and (such as nature cannot away withall, it followeth not hereupon that the scratching and scraping of the skin: or the rubbing and cleansing of the eyes should be such wonderfull matters, as to be counted felicities: neither if we admit that the superstitious fear of the gods, and the grievous anguish and trouble arising from that which is reported of the Devils in hell be evil: we are not to infer by and by that to be exempt and delivered therefro, is happinesse, felicity, and that which is to be so greatly wished and desired: certes, they assign a very straight row and narrow place for their joy, wherein to turn, to walk, to roome and tumble at ease, so far forth only, as not to be terrified or dismayed with the apprehension of the pains and torments described in hell, the only thing that they desire, I so, how their opinion which so far passeth the common sort of people, setteth down for the final end of their singular wisdom, a thing, which it seemeth the very brut beasts hate even of themselves: for as touching that firm constitution and indolence of the body, it makes no matter, whether of self or by nature, it be void of pain and sickness: no more in the tranquillity and repose of the soul, skilleth it much, whether by the own industry or benefit of nature, it be delivered from fear and terror: and yet verily a man may well say, and with great reason, that the disposition is more firm and strong, which naturally admitteth nothing to trouble and torment it: then that which with judgement and by the light and guidance of learning doth avoid it: But for the case, that the one were as effectual and powerful as the other: then verily it will appear at leastwise, that in this behalfe, they have no advantage and pre-eminence above brut beasts: to wit, in that they feel no anguish nor trouble of spirit: for those things which are reported either of the Devils in Hell, or the Gods in Heaven; nor feare at all pains and torments, expecting when they shall

shall have an end. That this is true, *Epicurus* verily himselfe hath put down in writing: If (quoth he) the suspitions and imaginations of the meteors and impressions which both are and doth appear in the aire and sky above, did not trouble us; nor yet thole of death and the pangs thereof: we should have no need at all to have recourse unto the natural causes of all those things, no more than those dumb beasts who entertaine no evil suspitions or surmises of the gods, nor any opinions to torment them, as touching that which shall befall them after death: for they neither believe and know, nor so much as once think of any harme at all in such things. Furthermore, if in the opinion that thereby the world was governed, they might have been thought wise men as they are, to have gone beyond brute beasts for the attaining of a pleasant and joyfull life in regard of their good hopes; but seeing all their doctrine as touching the gods tendeth to this end, namely, to feare no god, and otherwise to be fearless and careless altogether, I am persuaded verily that this is more firmly settled in those, having no sense and knowledge at all of God, than in those who say they know God, but have not learned to acknowledge him for a punishing God, and one that can punish and can do harme: for thole are not delivered from superstition; and why? they never fell into it, neither have they laid away that fearfull conceit and opinion of the gods; and no marvel, for they never had any such: the fame may be said as touching hell and the infernall spirits: for neither the one nor the other have any hope to receive good from thence: marie, suspect, feare and doubt what shall betide them after death, those must needs, lesse, who have no fore-conceit at all of death, than they in whom this persuasion is imprinted beforehand, that death cometh us not: and yet thus far forth it toucheth them, and that they discusse, dispute, and consider thereupon: whereas brute beasts are altogether freed from the thought and care of such things as do nothing pertaine unto them: true it is, that they shun strokes, wounds and laughter; and thus much (I say) of death they feare, which also even to these men is dreadfull and terrible. Thus you see what good things wisdom (by their own saying) hath furnished them withall: but let us now take a sight and survey of those which they exclude themselves fro and are deprived of. As touching those diffusions of the soul, when it dilateth and spreadeth it selfe over the flesh, and for the pleasure that the flesh feelth, if the same be small or mean, there is no great matter therein, nor that which is of any consequence to speak of; but if they pass mediocrity, then (besides that they be vain, deceitfull and uncerteine) they are found to be combersome and odious, such as a man ought rather to rather, to tearme not spiritual joyes and delights of the soul, but rather (sensuall and grosse pleasures of the body, fawning, flattering and smiling upon the soul, to draw and entice her to the participation of such vanities: as for such contentments of the mind which deserve indeed and are worthy to be called joyes and delights, they be purified clean from the contrary, they have no mixture at all of troubleome motions, no sting that pricketh them, nor repentance that followeth them, but their pleasure is spiritual, proper and natural to the soul; neither is the good therein borrowed abroad, and brought in from without, nor absurd and void of reason, but most agreeable and fitting thereto, proceeding from that part of the mind which is given unto contemplation of the truth, and desirous of knowledge, or at leastwise from that, which applieth it selfe to do and execute great and honourable things: now the delights and joyes as well of the one as the other, he that went about to number, and would strain and force himselfe to descourse how great and excellent they be, he never was able to make an end: but in briefe and few words, to help our memory a little as touching this point: Histories minister an infinite number of goodly and notable examples, which yield unto us a singular delight and recreation to pass the time away, never breeding in us a tedious laticie, but leaving always the appetite that our soul hath to the truth, insatiable and desirous. Still of more pleasure and contentment; in regard thereof, untruths and very lies therein delivered, are not without their grace: for even in fables and fictions poetical, although we give no credit unto them, there is some effectfull force to delight and persuade: for think (I pray you) with your selfe, with what heat of delight and affection we read the book of *Plato* intituled *Atlantius*, or the last books of *Homers Iliad*: Consider also with what grief of heart we misse and want the residue of the tale behind, as if we were kept out of some beautifull temples, or faire theaters, thus fast against us? for surely the knowledge of truth in all things, is so lovely and amiable, that it seemeth, our life and very being, dependeth most upon knowledge and learning; whereas the most unpleasant, odious and horrible things in death, be oblivion, ignorance and darknesse: which is the reason (I assure you) that all men in a manner fight and war against thole who would bereave the dead of all sense, giving us thereby to understand, that they do measure the whole life, the being also, and joy of man, by the sense onely and knowledge of his mind; in such sort, that even thole very things that are odious and offensive otherwise, we heare otherwhiles with pleasure: and often times it falleth out, that though men be troubled with the thing they hear, so as the water standeth in their eyes, and they be ready to weep and cry out for grief, yet they desire thole that relate the same to say on and speak all: as for example, *Oedipus* in *Sophocles*.

The Messenger.

Alas, my Lord, I see that now I shall  
Relieve the thing which is the worst of all.

Oedipus.

Woe is me likewise: to hear it I am prest,  
There is no help: say on, and tell the rest.

But peradventure this may be a current and stream of intemperate pleasure and delight, proceeding from a curiosity of the mind and will, too forward to hear and know all things, yea, and to offset violence unto the judgement and discourse of reason: howbeit, when as a narration or history containing in it no hurtful and offensive matter, besides the subject argument, which consisteth of brave adventures and worthy exploits, is penned and couched in a sweet stile, with a grace and powerful force of eloquence; such as is the history of *Hecataeus* as touching the Greek affaires, or of *Xenophon* concerning the Persian acts, as also that which *Homer* with an heavenly spirit hath ended and delivered in his verses, or *Eudoxus* in his peregrinations and description of the world, or *Aristotle* in his Treatise of the founding of Cities and Governments of State, or *Aristoxenus* who hath left in writing, the lives of famous and renowned persons; in such (I say) there is not only much delight and contentment, but also there enueth thereupon no displeasure nor repentance. And what man is he, who being hungry, would more willingly eat the good and delicate meats? or a thirst, desire and chuse to drink the dainty and pleasant wines of the Phœaciens, rather then read that fiction and discourse of the voyage and pilgrimage of *Ulysses*? and who would take more pleasure to lie with a most fair and beautiful woman, then to sit up all night, reading either that which *Xenophon* hath written of *Lady Panthea*, or *Aristobulus* of dame *Timoclea*, or *Theopompus* of fair *Thetis*? These be the pleasures and joys indeed of the mind: but our Epicureans reject likewise, all those delights which proceed from the fine inventions of the Mathematical Sciences: and to say a truth, a History runneth plain, even simple and uniform: whereas the delectation that we have in Geometry, Astronomy and Musick, have besides (I wot not what) forcible bait of variety so attractive, that it seemeth men are charmed and enchanted by them: so forcibly they allure, and so mightily they hold men with their delineations and descriptions, as if they were so many forceries, spells and incantations: so that whosoever hath once tasted thereof, so he be practised and exercised therein, he may go all about well enough, chanting these verses of *Sophocles*.

The furious love of Muses mine  
Hath beart and mind possessed mine:  
Thus ravished, fitt I me be  
To crest and cape of mount ain bie:  
Melodious songs, and sound withall  
Of pleasant harp, me forth doth call.

Certes, *Thamyris* exercised his poetical head about nothing else; no more verily did *Eudoxus*, *Aristarchus* and *Archimedes*. For seeing that studious, and industrious Painters took to great pleasure in the excellency of their works, that *Nicias* when he was painting *Homer's Necyia* (that is to say, the calling forth and raising the ghosts of folk departed) being so affectionate to it, forgot himselfe and asked his servitors eithones about him, whether he had dined or no: and when *Ptolemy* King of *Egypt* sent unto him threecore Talents for the said picture after it was finished, he refused the same, and would never sell, or part with his handy work. What pleasure reaped (think you) and how great delight took *Euclides* in Geometry and Astrology, when he wrote the propositions of Perspective; and *Philop* when he composed the demonstrations of the divers forms and shapes appearing in the Moon? *Archimedes* also, when by the Angle called *Gonia*, he found out, that the Diameter of the Sun is just so big a part of the greatest Circle, as the Angle is of four right lines; *Apollonius* likewise and *Aristarchus*, who were the inventors of the like propositions; the contemplation and knowledge whereof, even at this day, bringeth exceeding pleasure and wonderful generosity and magnanimity unto those who can intend to study upon them. And verily those base and abject pleasures of the kirchin and brothel house, we ought not so much as to compare with these, and thereby to contaminate and disgrace the sacred Muses and their mountain *Helicon*,

Where shepherd none doth tend his flock,  
On hill above or vale below:  
Nor edged tool was known to flock,  
Or cut on tree that there do grow.

But these pleasures are indeed the intemperate and undesired pastures of the gentle Bees; whereas those other resemble properly the itching lusts of swine and goats, which over and besides the body, fill with their filthy ordure the sensual part of the soul, subject to all passions and perturbations. True it is that lust and desire to enjoy pleasures, is a passion adventurous and hardly enough to enterprize many and sundry matters; yet was there never man found so amorous, who for joy that he had embraced his paramour, sacrificed a beef; nor ever was there known so notorious a glutton who withined in his heart and desired, so he might first fill his belly with delicate viands and princely banqueting dishes, to die presently: and yet *Eudoxus* made this prayer, that he might stand neer unto the Sun, for to learn the form, the magnitude and the beauty of that Planet, upon condition to be burnt presently, as *Phaeton* was, with the beams thereof. *Pythagoras* for the proof one proposition or figure which he had invented, sacrificed an Ox, as *Apollodorus* hath recorded in this Dysticon:

No sooner had Pythagoras this noble figure found,  
But solemnly he sacrific'd an Ox, even in that sound.

Whether it were that slope line in Geometry, called *Hypotenuse*, which answering directly to the right Angle of a Triangle, is as much in effect as the other two that comprehend and make the said Angle; or rather that lineary demonstration or proposition, whereby he measured the plot in a parab-  
bolic

bolic section of a Cone or round pyramidal figure. As for *Archimedes*, he was so intemperate and bittie in drawing his Geometrical figures, that his servants were faine by force to pull him away to be washed and anointed; and even then he would with the strigil or bathcombe (which served to cure and rub his skin) draw figures even upon his very belly: and one day above the rest, having found out whilst he was a bathing, the way to know how much gold the goldsmith had robbed in the fashion of that crown which King *Hero* had put forth to making, he ran forth suddenly out of the baine, as if he had been frantick, or inspired with some fanatical spirit, crying out, *Heureka, Heureka*; that is to say, I have found it, I have found it, iterating the same many times all the way as he went. But we never heard of any Glutton so given to gourmandise and belly-cheer, who went up and down crying *Bebeca*, that is to say, I have eaten, I have eaten; nor of a wanton and amorous person, who having enjoyed his love, would set up this note, *Epiphila*, that is to say, I have kist, I have kist. Notwithstanding there have been and are at this day, a thousand millions, even an infinite number of lascivious and loose persons: But contrariwise, we detest and abhor those who upon an affection, bravery and pride, make rehearsal what feasts they have been at, as persons who highly account of so base and unworthy pleasures, which men ought indeed to have in contempt. Whereas in reading the works of *Eudoxus*, *Archimedes*, and *Hipparchus*, we are ravished and transported as it were with some heavenly and divine delight: believing that saying of *Plato*, to be true, who writeth: That the Mathematical Arts, howsoever they be contemned, by those that be ignorant, and for default of knowledge and understanding neglected; yet for the grace and delight that they yield, be more and more in request, even in despite of those blind and blockish persons: All which pleasures to great and so many in number, running alwayes as a river; these men here do turn and drive another way, for to empeach and hinder those who approach unto them; and give care unto their doctrine, that they should not once taste thereof, but command them to set up and spread all their main sayles, and flee away as fast as they can. Yea, and that which more is, all those of this sect, both men and women, pray and request *Pythocles* (for *Epicurus* sake) not to make any account of those arts which we name liberal: And in praising our *Apelles*, among other singular qualities, that they attribute unto him, they set down this for one: That from his first beginning he had forsborne the study of the Mathematicks, and by that means kept himselfe unimpeded and undisturbed: As for Histories (to say nothing, how of all other Sciences they have neither heard nor seen any) I will cite only the words of *Metrodorus* writing of Poets: Tully (quoth he) be not abashed nor think it shame to confesse that thou knowest not, of whether side *Hector* was, of the Greeks part or of the Trojans? neither think it a great matter if thou be ignorant what were the first verses of *Homer's* Poem, and regard thou as little those in the midst.

Now so far as much as *Epicurus* will well enough, that the pleasures of the body (like unto the annivertary Etetan minds) do blow over and passe away, yea, and after the flower of mans age is once gone, decay sensibly, and cease altogether; therefore he moveth a question: Whether a wife man, being now far steep in years, and not able any more to keep company with a woman, take pleasure still in wanton touching, feeling or handling of fair and beautiful persons: Wherein verily he is far from the mind and opinion of *Sophocles*; who rejoiced and thanked God, that he had escaped from this voluptuous and fleshly love, as from the yoke, chain, or clog of some violent and furious master. Yet rather ought these sensual and voluptuous persons, seeing that many delights and pleasures corporal, do fade and decay in old age,

And that with aged folk in this,  
Dame Venus much offended is.

(as saith *Euripides*) to make provision then most all, of other spiritual pleasures, and to be stored before hand, as it were against some long siege, with such dry victuals as are not subject to putrefaction and corruption: Then I say should they hold their solemn feasts of *Venus*, and goodly merriments, to passe the time away by reading some pleasant Histories, delectable Poems, or pretty speculations of Musick or Geometry: And verily they would not so much as think any more of those blind feelings and bootlesse handlings (as I may tearm them) which indeed are no more but the pricks and provocations of dead wantonnesse, if they had learned no more but as *Aristotle*, *Herastides*, and *Dicaearchus* did, to write of *Homer* and *Euripides*: But they being never careful and provident to purvey such victuals, and seeing all the rest of their life otherwise to be unpleasant, and as dry as a kee (as themselves are wont to say of vertue) yet willing to enjoy till their pleasures continually, and finding their bodies to say nay, and not able to perform the same to their contentment, they bewray their corruption in committing foul and dishonest acts out of season, enforcing themselves (even by their own confessions) to awaken, stir up, and renew the memory of their former pleasures in times pale, and for want of refresh and new delights, making a shift to relieve their turn with the old and it is said, as if they had been long kept in salt pickle, or compost, until their goodness and life were gone: desirous they are to stir, kindle, and quicken others that lie extinct in their flesh, as it were raked up in dead and cold ashes long before, clean against the course of nature; and all for default that they were not provided before of some sweet thing laid up in their soule, proper unto her, and delightful according to her worthinesse: As for other spiritual pleasures wee have spoken of them already, as they came into our mind: but as touching Musick, which bringing with it so many contentments, and so great delights, men yet reject and flie from, no man I trow would willingly passe it over in silence, considering the absurd and impertinent speeches that *Epicurus* giveth out:



our: for in his questions he maintaineth: That a wife man is a great lover of shews and spectacles, delighting above all others to hear and see the pastimes, sports and fights, exhibited in Theaters during the feast of *Pachia*; yet will he not admit any musical problems, any disputations or witty discourses of Critics in points of humanity and learning, so much as at the very table, in dinner and supper time; but giveth counsel unto Kings and Princes that be lovers and favourers of literature, to abide rather the reading and hearing of military narrations, and stratagems at their feasts and banquets, yea, and scurril talk of buffons, pleasers and jesters, then any questions propounded or discussed, as touching Mufick or Poetry: for thus much hath he delivered in his book entituled: *Of Royalty*: as if he had written the same to *Sardanapalus* or *Nacurus*, who was in times past a great Portgate and Lord of *Babylon*. Certes, neither *Hiero* nor *Attalus*, nor yet *Archelaus* would ever have been persuaded to remove and displace from their tables such as *Empiricus*, *Simonides*, *Melampus*, *Crates*, or *Diodorus*, nor to set in their rooms *Cardax*, *Ariantes*, and *Callias*, known jesters and notorious ribaids; or some parasitical *Thralofides* and *Thralofeons*, who could skill of nothing else but how to maketolk laugh, in counterfeiting lamentable yellings, groans, howlings, and all to move applause and clapping of hands. If King *Ptolemus* the first of that name, who also fitted a liberty, and founded a college of learned men, had light upon these goodly rules and royal precepts of his putting down, would not he have exclaimed and laid unto the Samians:

O Musesfair, O Ladies dear,  
What envy, and what pigbe is here!

For, beeming it is not any Athenian thus maliciously to be bent unto the Muses, and beat wate with them: but according to *Pindarus*:

Whom Jupiter doth not vouchsafe  
His love and favour far to have,  
Amaz'd they stand and quake for fear,  
When they the voice of Muses hear.

What say you, *Epicurus*? you go early in the morning by break of day unto the Theater, to heare musicians playing upon the Harp and Lute, or sounding shawmes and hautboies: if then it fortune at the table, in time of a banquet, that *Theophrastus* discouseth of Symphonies and musical accords; or *Aristophanes*, of changes and alteration of tunes? or *Aristophanes* of *Homer's* works, will you stop your ears with both hands, because you would not hear, for that you so abhor and detest them? Surely there was more civility yet and honesty (by report) in that barbarous King of *Scythia*, *Atax*, who when that excellent minstrel *Ismenias*, being his Captive, taken prisoner in the wars, played upon the flute before him as he sat at dinner, award a great oath, that he took more pleasure to hear his horse neigh. Do not these men (think you) confesse and grant (when they be well charged) that they have given defence to vertue, and honestly proclaiming mortal and irreconcilable war, without all hope of Truce, Parley, Composition and Peace? for surely, letting pleasure only aside, what other thing is there in the world (be it never so pure, holy and venerable) that they embrace and love? Had it not been more reason, for the leading of a joyfull life, to be offended with sweet perfumes, and to reject odoriferous oyls and ointments, as beetles, jesses and vultures do, then to abhor, detest and shun the talk and discourses of Humanitians, Critics, Grammarians, and Musicians? for, what manner of flute, or hautboies, what harp or lute how well soever set, tuned, and fitted for song,

What quire resounding loud and shrill  
From pleasant mouth and breath so sweet,  
A song in parts, set with great skill,  
When cunning men in musick meet?

so greatly delighted *Epicurus* and *Metrodorus*, as the discourses, the rules and precepts of Quires and Carols, the questions and propositions concerning flutes and hautboies, touching proportions, consonances and harmonical accords would affect *Aristotle*, *Theophrastus*, *Hieronymus* and *Dicaearchus*? As for example, what is the reason, that of two pipes or flutes (otherwise even and equal) that which hath the straighter and narrower mouth, yeeldeth the bigger and more base sound? also, what might be the cause, that the same pipe when it is lifted and set upward, becometh loud in all the tones that it maketh, but hold it downward once, it foundeth as low? to doth one pipe alone when it is set close unto another, give a base sound; but contrariwise, if it is disjoined and put asunder, it foundeth higher and more shrill. As also how it cometh to passe, that if a man low chauff, or cast dust thick upon the stage or scaffold in a Theater, the people there assembled be deaf and cannot hear the Players or Minstrels? Semblably, when King *Alexander* the Great was minded to have made in the city of *Pella* the forefront of the stage in the Theater all of brass: what moved his workman or Architect not to permit him so to do, for fear it would drown and dull the voice of the Players? Finally, why among sundry kinds of musick, that which is called Chromatical, delighteth, enlargeth and joyeth the heart, whereas the Harmonical contrarieth and draweth it in making it sad and dampish? Moreover, the manners and natures of men which Poets represent in their writings, their witty fictions, the difference and variety of their stile, the solution of dark doubts and quaint questions, which (besides a delight some grace and beautiful elegance) carry with them a familiar and perswasive power, whereout each one may reap profit; inasmuch as they are able (as *Xenophon* saith) to make a man forget even love it selfe, so effectual is this pleasure and delight. Howbeit, the Epicureans here have

no feeling and experience; nay, which is worse, they desire to have none, as they say themselves: blit employing the whole contemplative part of the soul, in thinking upon nothing else but the body, and plucking it downward together with sensual and carnal lusts, as fishers nets with little rolls and plummetts of lead: they differ nothing at all from horsekeepers, or shepherds and other herdmen, who lay before their beasts, hay, straw, or some kind of grasse and herbs, as the proper fodder and forrage for the cattell which they have in charge: for do they not even to intend to feed the soule (when they frunk up swine) with bodily pleasures? in that they would have her to be glad for the fact that the body shall shortly enjoy some pleasure, or else in the remembrance of those which it hath enjoyed in times past? as for any proper delight or particular pleasure of her owne, they suffer her to receive none from her selfe, nor so much as to seek thereafter.

And verily can there be any thing more absurd and beside all appearance and shew of reason, then (whereas there be two parts whereof man is compounded, to wit, soul and body; of which the soul is more worth, and placed in the higher degree) to say and affirm, that there is in the body some good thing, proper, peculiar, familiar, and natural unto it, and none in the soule; but that the fles still delighteth the body, and looking only to it? that the smilth upon the passions and affections thereof, joying and taking contentment with it only; having of her selfe originally no motion, no election, no choice, no desire nor pleasure at all? Now surely they should either by putting off their mask and discovering themselves, have gone roundly to work, making man flesh, and nothing else but flesh; as some there be who flatly deny, that there is any spirital substance in him: or else leaving in us two different natures, they ought to have let either of them alone by it selfe, with their severall good and evil: that I say which is familiar or contrary unto it: like as among the five senses, every one is destined and appropriate to one object sensible, although all of them by a certain wonderful sympathy be affected one to the other. Now the proper sensitive organ or instrument of the soule is the understanding; and to say that the same hath no peculiar subject to work upon, no proper spectacle to behold, no familiar motion, no natural and inbred passion or affection, in the situation whereof it should take pleasure and delight, is the greatest absurdity of all others: And verily this is the saying of these men; unless haply some there be, who ere they be aware, charge upon them some slanderous and false imputations. Hereat began I to speak and lay unto him: not to sir, if we may be Judges; but I pray you let be, all action of inquiry, and proceed hardly to finish and make an end of your discourse. And why (quoth he) should not *Aristodemus* succeed after me, if you haply refuse flatly, or be loath to speak? You say true indeed (quoth *Aristodemus*) but that shall not be until you be weary of speech, as this man is; and for the present, since you are yet fresh and in heart, I beseech you my good friend, spare not your selfe, but use your faculty, left you be thought for very sloath and idleness to draw back and goe out of the lists. Certes (quoth *Theon* then) it is but a small matter, and the same very easie which is behind; for there remaineth no more but to shew and recount how many joyes and pleasures there be in active life, and that part of the soule which is given to action? First and foremost, even they themselves in some place grant and confesse: that it is a greater pleasure to do good, and to benefit others, then to receive a benefit from another; as for good turns; a man I confesse may do them in bare words and sayings: but surely the most and greatest are performed by acts and deeds, and thus much doth the very word of benefit or welding import; and even they themselves tellise no lesse: For but a while since, we heard this man report, what words and speeches *Epicurus* delivered; what letters he wrote and sent unto his friends, in extolling, praising, and magnifying *Metrodorus*; how bravely and valiantly he went down from the City of *Athenes* to the Port *Piræum*, for to aid and succour *Mythis* the Syrian, albeit *Metrodorus* did no service at all in that fall: What manner of pleasures then, and how great ought we to esteem those which *Plato* enjoyed, when *Dion* a Scholar of his, and one of his bringing up, rose up to put down the tyrant *Dionysius*, and to deliver the state of *Sicily* from servitude? what contentment might *Aristotle* find, when he cauled the City of his Nativity, which was ruinat and razed to the ground to be re-edified, and his country-men and fellow-Citizens to be nominate and razed to the ground to be re-edified, and his country-men and fellow-Citizens to be called home who were banished? what delights and joyes were those of *Theophrastus* and *Phidias*, who deposed and overthrew those tyrants who usurped the Lordly dominion of their country? and for private persons in particular, how many they relieved, not in lending unto them a stike or a bushel of corn and meale, as *Epicurus* sent unto some; but in working and effecting, that those who were exiled out of their native country, driven from their own houses, and turned out of all their goods, might return home again and re-enter upon all: that such as had been prisoners and lien in irons, might be delivered and set at large; as many also were put from their wives and children, might recover and enjoy them again: What need I make rehearsal unto you, who know all this too well enough? But surely the impudence and absurdity of this man, I cannot (though I would) passe over with silence, who debasing and casting under foot the acts of *Theistocles* and *Alcibiades* as he did, wrote of himselfe to certain of his friends in this sort: Right nobly, valiantly, and magnificently, have you shewed your endeavour and care of us, in provision of Corne to furnish us withal; and again, you have declared by notorious signs, which mount up into Heaven, the singular love and good will which you bear unto me. And if a man observe the manner of this stile and writing, he shall find, that it herake out of the mysteries of this great Philosopher, that which concerneth a little Corne, all the words besides are so curiously couched and penned, as if the Epistle had been written purposely, as a thanksgiving for the safety of all *Greece*, or at least

wife, for delivering, setting free, and preserving the whole City and People of Athens.  
 What should I buse my head to shew unto you, that for the delights of the body, nature had need to be at great cost and expence; neither doth the chiefe pleasure which they seek after, consist in course bisket-bread, in pease-pottage, or lentile broth: but the appetites of these voluptuous persons, call for exquisite and dainty viands, for sweet and delicate wines, such as those be of *Thapsos*, for sweet odours, pleasant perumes, and precious ointments, for curious junkets and banqueting dishes, for rarts, cake-bread, marchpans, and other pastry works, well wrought, beaten and tempered with the sweet liquor gathered by the yellow winged Bee: over and besides all this, their mind stands also to fair and beautiful young damosels, they must have some pretty *Leontium*, some fine *Boisjans*, some sweet *Hedra*, or dainty *Nicetion*, whom they keep and nourish of purpose within their gardens of pleasure, to be ready at hand. As for the delights and joyes of the mind, there is no man but will confesse and say: That founded they ought to be upon the greatnesse of some noble actions, and the beauty of worthy and memorable works, if we would have them to bee not vaine, base and childish: but contrariwise, reputed grave, generous, magnificent and man-like, whereas to vaunt and glory of being let loose to a dissolute course of life and the fruition of pleasures and delights, after the manner of Saylor and Mariners when they celebrate the feast of *Venus*; to boast also and please himselfe in this: That being desperately sick of that kind of dropic which the Physicians call *Asiter*, he forbore not to feast his friends still, and keep good company, neither spared to adde and gather more moisture and waterish humours still unto his dropic: and remembering the last words that his brother *Necetes* spake upon his death-bed, melted and consumed with special joy and pleasure of his own, tempered with tears: there is no man (I trow) of sound judgement and in his right wits, who would rearm these foolish follies, either sound joyes, or perfect delights; but surely, if there be any Sardonian laughter (as they call it) belonging also to the soul, it is feared (in my conceit) even in such joyes and mirths mingled with tears as these, which do violence unto nature: but if any man shall say, that these be solaces, let him compare them with others, and see how far these excel and go beyond them which are expressed by these verses:

*By sage advice I have effected this,  
 That Spartacus martial fame eclipsed is.*

Allo:

*This man, O friend and stranger both,  
 was while beliv'd here,*

*The great and glorious Star of Rome,  
 his native City deare.*

Likewise:

*I was not what I should you call,  
 An heavenly God and man mortall.*

And when I set before mine eyes the noble and worthy acts of *Thrasylbulus* and *Pelopidas*; or behold the victories either of *Aristides* in that journey of *Plataea*, or of *Miltiades* at the battell of *Marathon*, I am even ravished and transported besides my selfe, and forced to say with *Herodotus*, and deliver this sentence: That in this active life, there is more sweetnesse and delectation, then glory and honor: and that this is so, *Epinomondas* will bear me witness, who (by report) gave out this speech, that the greatest contentment which ever he had during his life, was this: That his father and mother were both alive to see that noble Trophoe of his, for the victory that he wan at *Leutres*, being general of the Thebans against the Lacedemonians: Compare we now with this mother of *Epinomondas*, *Epicurus* his mother, who took to great joy to see her son keeping close in a dainty garden and orchard of pleasure, where he and his familiar friend *Polyenus* gat children in common, upon a tull and courtian of *Cyzicum*: for, that both mother and sister of *Metrodorus* were exceeding glad of his marriage, may appear by his letters mostively written unto his brother, which are extant in his books: and yet they go up and down every where crying with open mouth: That they have lived in joy, doing naught else but extoll and magnifie their delicate life, faring much like unto slaves when they acknowledge the feast of *Saturn*, supping and making of good cheer together, or celebrate the Bacchanales, running about the fields: so as a man may hardly abide to hear the uras and yelling noise they make, when upon the insolent joy of their hearts, they break out into many fooleries, and utter they care not unto whom, as vain and fond speeches, in this manner:

*Why sit'st thou still, thou wretched low,  
 Come let us drink and quaff about:  
 The meats upon the board set are,  
 Be merry man and make no pause:  
 No sooner are these words let sit,  
 But all at once they bout and crie:  
 The port then walk, one fills one wine,  
 Another brings a garland fine  
 Of flowers: full fresh, his head to crown,  
 And decks the cup, whilest wine goes down:  
 And then the minstrel, Phobus knight,  
 With fair green branch of Laurel doth,*

Set

*Sett out his rude and rusty throat,  
 And sing: a filthy tune, lest he note:  
 With that one thrust the pipe him fro,  
 And sounds his vrench and teddello.*

Do not (think you) the letters of *Metrodorus* resemble these vanities, which he wrote unto his brother in these terms? "There is no need at all, *Timocrates*, neither ought a man to expose himself, into danger for the safety of Greece; or to strain and buse his head to win a Coronet among them, in testimony of his wisdom; but he is to eat, and drink wine merrily, so as the body may enjoy all pleasure, & sustain no harm. And again, in another place of the same letters he hath these words: "Oh how joyful was I, and glad at heart! Oh what contentment of spirit found I, when I had learned once of *Epicurus*, to make much of my belly, & to gratifie it: I ought! For to say a truth to you, O *Timocrates*, that Art a Naturalist: The sovereign good of a man lieth about the belly.

In summe, these men do limit, set out and circumscribe the greatnesse of humane pleasure within the compasse of the belly, as it were within center and circumference: but surely impossible it is, that they should ever have their part of any great, royal and magnifical joy, such as indeed causeth magnanimity and hautesse of courage, bringeth glorious honour abroad, or tranquillity of spirit at home, who have made choice of a close and private life within doors, never shewing themselves in the world, nor meddling with the publick affairs of Common-weale: a life (I say) sequestered from all offices of humanity, far removed from any insin of honour, or desire to gratifie others, thereby to deserve thanks, or win favour: for the soul (I may tell you) is no base and small thing, it is not vile and libillar, extending her desires onely to that which is good to be eaten, as do these poulps or porcuttle filthes which stretch their cleaves as far as to their meat and no farther: for such appetites as these, are mozt quickly cut off with satiety, and filled in a moment: but when the motions and desires of the mind tending to vertue and honesty, to honour also and contentment of conscience, upon virtuous deeds and well doing, are once grown to their vigour and perfection, they have not for their limit, the length and tearm only of mans life: but surely, the desire of honour, and the affection to profit the society of men, comprehending all eternity, striveth still to go forward in such actions and beneficial deeds as yeeld infinite pleasures that cannot be expresse: which joies, great peronages and men of worth cannot shake off and avoid though they would: for fie they from them what they can, yet they environ them about on every side, they are ready to meet them wherever they go, when as by their beneficence and good deeds they have once refreshed and cheered many other: for of such persons may well this verse be verified:

*To town when that he comes, or there doth walk:  
 Men him behold as God, and so do talk.*

For when a man hath so affected and disposed others, that they are glad and leap for joy to see him, that they have a longing desire to touch, salute, and speak unto him: who seeth not (though otherwise he were blind) that he findeth great joies in himself, and enjoyeth most sweet contentment: this is the cause that such men are never weary of well doing, nor think it a trouble to be employed to the good of others: for we shall evermore hear from their mouths these and such like speeches:

*Thy father thee began and brought to light,  
 That thou one day might'st profit many a wight.*

Again,

*Let us not cease, but shew a mind,  
 Of doing good to all mankind.*

What need I to speak here of those that be excellent men, and good in the highest degree? for if to any one of those who are not extremely wicked, at the very point and instant of death; he in whose hands lieth his life, be he a god, or some King, should grant one hours respite, and permit him to employ himselfe at his own choice, either to execute some memorable act, or else to take his pleasure for the while, so that immediately after that hour past, he should go to his death: How many think you would chuse rather during this small time, to lie with that courtian and famous Strumpet *Lais*, or drink liberally of good Ariulian wine, then to kill the tyrant *Archias*, for to deliver the City of *Thebes*, from tyrannical servitude? for mine own part verily, I suppose, that there is not one: for this I observe in those sword-fencers, who fight at sharp a combat to the utterance, such I mean as are not altogether brutish and savage, but of the Greekish nation, when they are to enter in place for to perform their devoir, notwithstanding there be presented unto them many dainty dishes and costly cakes, chuse rather at this very time to recommend unto their friends, their wives and children, to manumite and enfranchise their slaves, then to serve their bellies and content their sensual appetites: But admit that these bodily pleasures be great matters, and highly to be accounted of, the same are common also unto those that lead an active life, and mannage affairs of State: For as the Poet saith:

*Wine muscadell they drink, and likewise eat  
 Fine manchet bread, made of the whitest wheat.*

They banquet also, and feast with their friends, yea, and much more merrily (in my conceit, after they be returned from bloody battels, or other great exploits and important services: likeas *Alexander* be returned from bloody battels, or other great exploits and important services: likeas *Alexander* and *Agesilaus*; *Phocion* also and *Epinomondas* were wont to do) then these who are appointed against the fire, or carried easily in their litters: and yet such as they mock and scorn those, who indeed





or that he is flung or fallen out of it) beareth himself upon some little hope, that he shall (by one good fortune or other) reach unto the shore and swim to land; whereas by their mens Philosophy there is no evasion for the foule:

*To any place without the sea  
With frothing some all hoar and gray.*

For that immediately he is dissolved, periseth and dieth before the body; in somuch as the feeble excessive joy, by having learned and received this most wife and divine doctrine: That the end of all her adventures and miseries, is to perish for ever, to corrupt and come to nothing. But it were (quoth he, casting his eye upon me) a great folly to speak any more of this matter, (considering that long since we have heard you discourse in ample manner) against those who hold, that the reasons and arguments of Epicurus make us better disposed and ready to die, then all that Plato hath written in his treatise concerning the soul, What of that? (quoth Zenixippus) Shall this present discourse be left unperfected and unfinished because of it? and fear we to alledge the oracle of the gods, when we dispute against the Epicureans? No (quoth I again) in any wise, for according to the sentence of Empedocles:

*A good tale twice a man may tell,  
And hear it told as oft well.*

And therefore we must entreat Theon againe; for I suppose he was present at the said disputation, and being (as he is) a young man, he need not fear that young men will charge him for Obsession, or default of memory. Then Theon seeming as if he had been forced and overcome by constraint: Well (quoth he) since there is no other remedy, I will not do as you Aristodemus did? you were afraid to repeat that which this man had delivered; but I will not tick to make use of that which you have said: for in mine opinion you have done very well, in dividing men into three sorts: the first, of those, who are lewd and wicked; the second of them that be simple, ignorant, and the common people; the third, of such as be wise, honest, and of good worth. As for those who be wicked and naughty persons (in fearing the pains and punishments proposed in general unto all) they will be afraid to commit any more, and by this means not breaking out, but restraining themselves, they shall live in more joy, and with lesse trouble and disquietness. For Epicurus thinketh, that there is no other means to divert men from evil doing, then fear of punishment: and therefore he thinketh it good policy, to imprint in them the frights occasioned by superstition, to masker them with the terrors of heaven and earth, together with fearful earthquakes, deep chinks, and openings of the ground, and generally all sorts of fears and suspicions: that being terrified thereby, they might live in better order, and carry themselves more modestly; for more expedient it is for them, not to commit any heinous fact for fear of torments which they were to suffer after their death, then to transgress and break the laws, and thereby, live all their life time in danger, and exceeding perplexity and distrust: As touching the mean people and ignorant multitude (to lay no down of the fear of that which such men believe to be in hell) the hope of eternity, whereof the Poets make so great promises, and the desire to live always (which of all other desires is the most ancient and greatest) surpasseth in pleasure and sweet contentment, all childish fear of hell: in somuch as forgoing and losing their children, their wives and friends, yet they wish rather they should still be somewhere, and continue (though they endured otherwise all manner of pains and calamities) then wholly to be taken out of the universal world, and brought to nothing: yea, and willing they are, and take pleasure to hear this spoken of one that is dead: How he is departed out of this world into another, or gone to God: with other such like manner of speeches, importing, that death is no more but only a change or alteration, but not a total and entire abolition of the soul, And thus they use to speak:

*Then shall I call even there to mind,  
The sweet acquaintance of my friend,  
Alas:*

*What shall I say from you to Hector bold?  
Or husband yours, right deer, who liv'd so old?*

And hereof proceeded and prevailed this error: that men supposed they are well eased of their sorrow, and better appayed when they have interred with the dead, the arms, weapons, instruments and garments which they were wont to use ordinarily in their life time: like as *Minos* buried together with *Glaucon*:

*His Candied pipes, made of the long-shank bones  
Of a pple Doer Hinds, that lived once.*

And if they be perswaded, that the dead either desire or demand any thing, glad they are and willing to lend or bestow the same upon them. And thus did *Periander*, who burnt in the funeral fire together with his wife, her apparel, habitments, and jewels, for that thought she called for them, and complained that she lay a cold. And such as these are not greatly afraid of any judge *Aacus*, of *Aeschylus* or of the river *Acheron*: considering that they attribute unto them d. n. es, theatrical plaies, and all kinde of musick, as if they took delight and pleasure therein: and yet there is not one of them all but is ready to quake for fear, to see that face of death so terrible, so unpleasant, so grim and grisly, deprived of all sense, and grown to Oblivion and ignorance of all things: they tremble for very horror when they hear any of these words: He is dead, he is periseth, he is gone, and no more to be seen: grievously displeased and offended they be, when these and such like speeches are given out:

*Within*

*Within the earth as deep as trees do stand,  
His hap shall be to rot and turn to sand:  
No sense he shall frequent nor hear the late  
And happy, ne yet the sound of pleasant fate.*

Again,

*When once the ghost of man from corps is fled  
And pass'd the ranks of teeth set thick in dead;  
All means to catch and fetch her are but vain,  
No hope there is of her return again.*

*But they kill them none dead, who lay thus unto them,  
We mortal men have been once born for all,  
No second birth we are for to expect,  
Vv'e must not look for life that is eternal,  
Such thoughts, as dreams, we ought for to reject.*

For, casting and considering with themselves, that this present life is a small matter, or rather indeed a thing of nought, in comparison of eternity; they regard it not, nor make any account to enjoy the benefit thereof; whereupon they neglect all vertue and the honourable exploits of action, as being utterly discouraged and disoriented in themselves, for the shortness of their life to uncertain and without assurance; and in one word, because they take themselves unfit and unworthy to perform any great things. For, to say that a dead man is deprived of all sense, because (having been before compounded) that composition is now broken and dissolved: to give out also, that a thing once dissolved, hath no Being at all; and in that regard toucheth us not: howsoever they seem to be goodly reasons, yet they rid us not from the fear of death, but contrariwise, they do more confirm and enforce the same: for this is it indeed which nature abhorreth, when it shall be said, according to the Poet *Homer's* words:

*But as for you both, all and some,  
Soon may you earth and water become.*

meaning thereby, the resolution of the soul into a thing that hath neither intelligence nor any sense at all, which *Epicurus* holding to be a dissipation thereof into (I wot not what) emptiness, or voidness and small indivisible bodies, which he termeth *Atomy*, by that means cutteth off (so much the rather) all hope of immortality: for which (I dare well say) that all folk living, men and women both, would willingly be bitten quite thorow and gnawen by the Hell-Dog *Cerberus*, or carry water away in vessels full of holes in the bottom, like as the *Danides* did; so they might only have a Being, and not perish utterly for ever, and be reduced to nothing. And yet verily, there be not many men who fear these matters, taking them to be Poetical fictions and tales devised for pleasure, or rather being-bears that mothers and nurses use to fright their children with: and even they also who stand in fear of them, are provided of certain ceremonies and expiatory purgations, to help themselves withal: by which (if they be once cleaned and purified) they are of opinion, that they shall go into another world to places of pleasure, where there is nothing but playing and dancing continually among those who have the air clear, the wind mild and pure, the light gracious, and their voice intelligible: whereas the privation of life troubleth both young and old; for we all (even every one of us) are sick for love, and exceeding desirous

*To see the beauty of sunnlight,  
VVhich on the earth doth shine so bright,  
As Empirides saith: neither willing are we, but much displeased to hear this;  
And as he speaks, that great immortal eye  
Which giveth light throughout the fabrick wide  
Of this round world, made haste and flit did die  
With chariot swift, clean out of sight to ride.*

Thus together with the persuasion and opinion of immortality, they beleave the common people of the greatest and sweetest hopes they have. What think we then of those men who are of the better sort, and such as have lived justly and devoutly in this life? Surely, they look for no evil at all in another world, but hope and expect there the greatest and most heavenly blessings that be: for first and foremost, champions or runners in a race, are never crowned so long as they be in combat or in their course; but after the combat ended and the victory achieved; even so when these persons are privated that the prize of the victory in this world is due unto them after the course of this life, wonderful it is, and it cannot be spoken how great contentment they find in their hearts for the brevity and conscience of their vertue, and for those hopes which assure them, that they one day shall see those (who now abuse their good gifts insolently, who commit outrage by the means of their might, riches, and authority, and who scorn and foolishly mock such as are better then themselves) pay for their doers, and suffer worthily for their pride and insolency. And forasmuch as never any of them who are enamoured of pleasing, could satisfy (so the full) his desire, as touching the knowledge of the truth, and the contemplation of the universal nature of this world; for that indeed they see as it were through a dark cloud and a thick mist; to wit, by the Organs and Instruments of this body, and have no other life of reason, but as it is charged with the humours of the flesh, weak also and troubled, yea, and wonderfully hindered; therefore having an eye







*Even to the Prince of darkness and of night  
The Lord of idle dreams deceiving sight.*

And I suppose that our ancestors in old time called man *Phos*, of light, for that there is in every one of us, a vehement desire and love to know and be known one of another, by reason of the confanguinity between us. And some Philosophers there be, who think verily, that even the soul in her substance is a very light, whereunto they are led as well by other signs and arguments, as by this, that there is nothing in the world that the soul hateth so much as ignorance, rejecting all that is obscure and unlightsome; troubled also when she is entered into dark places, for that they fill her with fear and suspicion: but contrariwise, the light is so sweet and delectable unto her, that she taketh no joy and delight in any thing; otherwise lovely and desirable by nature, without light or in darkness: for that is it which causeth all pleasures, sports, pastimes, and recreations to be more joyous, amiable, and to mans nature agreeable: like as a common sauce that seasoneth and commendeth all viands wherewith it is mingled: whereas he that hath cast himself into ignorance, and is enveloped within the clouds of misty blindness, making his life a representation of death, and burying it as it were in darkness, seemeth that he is weary even of being, and thinketh life a very trouble unto him: and yet they are of opinion, that the nature of glory and essence, is the place assigned for the souls of godly, religious, and virtuous folk:

*To whom the sun shines always bright  
When here with us it is dark night:  
The meadows there, both fair and wide,  
With roses red are beautified:  
The fields all round about them dight  
With verdure, yield a pleasant sight:  
All tapiss'd with flowers full gay,  
Of fruitfull trees, that blow from May.  
Amidst this place the rivers clear*

*Run soft and still, some there, some here.*

Wherein they passe the time away, in calling to remembrance and recounting that which is past, in discoursing also of things present, accompanying one another, and conversing together. Now there is a third way, of those who have lived ill, and be wicked persons, the which sendeth their souls headlong into a dark gulf and bottomlesse pit:

*Where, from the dormant rivers bleak  
Of shady night, thick mists do reek,  
As black as pitch continually,  
And those all round about do lie.*

enfoldng, whelming, and covering those ignorance and forgetfulness, who are tormented there and punished: for they be not greedy Caters or Vultures, that evermore eat and gnaw the liver of wicked persons laid in the earth: and why? the flame already is either burned or rotted: neither be there certain heavy fardels, or weighty burdens that presse down and overcharge the bodies of such as be punished:

*For such thing ghosts and fibres small,  
Have neither flesh nor bone at all.*

Ne yet are the reliques of their bodies who be departed, such as be capable of punishment, for that belongeth properly to a body that is solid and able to resist; but the only way and true manner of chastising and punishing those, who have lived badly in this world, is infamy, ignorance, an entire abolition, and total redgement to nothing, which bringeth them from the river *Lethe*, that is to say, Oblivion, into another mournfull river, where there is no mirth, no joy, nor cheerfulness, and from thence plungeth them into a vast Sea, which hath neither shore nor bottom, even idleness and unaptnesse to all good, which can do naught else but draw after it a general forgetfulness and burial (as it were) in all ignorance and infamous obscurity.

## Rules and Precepts of Health in manner of a Dialogue.

### The Summary.

**T**he conjunction of the soul with the body being so straight, as every man knows it is; I cannot see how it is possible that the one should commit any disorder or excess, but the other must needs be grieved therewith immediately: And if there be any thing that ought to be deplored and lamented, it is the loss of time, especially and above all, when the same is occasioned by our own intemperance: for that at such times when as we should attend upon our duty, we become and continue unprofitable, hurting many times both our selves, and many others. Now for that the study of good literature requireth a soul well composed and governed in a sound, healthful, and vigorous body; it is without good cause, that Plutarch intermingleth among Philosophical discourse, certain rules and precepts touching health. For in truth a vain endeavour and enterprize this were, and hardly could a man have his mind disposed to good things, in case the body be

it affected and misgoverned: But fearing lest it would be thought, that he who made profession of Philosophy only, proceeded farther then in reason he ought, and brake the limits and bounds of Sciences, in meddling with Physick here: Before that he entrench into the Dialogue, when he had touched the occasion of this conversation and talk; he sheweth, that the study of Physick is agreeable to Philosophy: which done, he representeth certain questions proposed by a third person, which serve in stead of a Preface to those Precepts and Lessons, by him let down afterwards; not following herein any exact or exquisite method, but making choice of that which he thought to be most meet for the time, and suiting best to those persons, for whose sake this Dialogue was written. He speaketh first therefore of the use of meats, especially such as are sweet and pleasing to the touch: also what a man is to take heed of in this behalf: Then he treateth of the pleasures of the body, declaring of those who love to keep good cheer, and maintain dainty fare. Consequently hereupon, he sheweth us to use bodily pleasures, unless we be in good and perfect health: condemneth fulness and overmuch repletion, which is the cause of most diseases that are incident to mans body: and thus he exhorteth and amonesteth by another proper similitude. He is desirous also that maladies were foreseen and prevented, setting down a special remedy therefore, and proving, that the body cannot enjoy any delight whatsoever, either in eating or drinking, in case it be not healthy. From this he proceedeth to make mention of divers, and of the Prognosticks of diseases breeding and towards them, item, how, and where, with the malidities of divers, ought to be served and read us: adding thus much moreover, that for the better maintenance and preservation of the body, a man is not to feed to satiety; that he ought to travel and not spare himself; also, that he is to save his natural seed: upon this he discourseth of the exercise and amusement of students and scholars, deciphering particularly whatsoever in this point is most worth the noting and observation, and so enlargeth this question: namely, whether it be wholesome for the body to dispute at the table, or presently upon meat: After all this, he treateth of walking, of sleep, of vomiting of purgations of the belly, of diets over exquisite and precise: condemning expressly idleness, as being contrary to the good disposition of the body. Furthermore, he sheweth when a man ought to be at quiet and rest: as also the time that he may give himself to pleasure: but above all, he requireth of every man, that he learn to know his own nature and inclination, as also the meats and drinks that be agreeable unto his stomach: exhorting in the end all students to spare their bodies, to look unto them, and make much of them, that they may have the better means to proceed a good forward in the knowledge of good letters: whereby they might another day be profitable members of the commonwealth, and do more good to the society of men.

## Rules and Precepts of Health in manner of a Dialogue.

### The Personages speaking in this Dialogue,

*Moschion and Zeuxippus.*

*Moschion.*

And did you then indeed (my friend *Zeuxippus*) turn away *Glaucus* the Physician yesterday, who was desirous to confer with us in Philosophy?

*Zeuxippus.*

No I wis (good *Moschion*) neither did I put him away, nor desirous was he to do as you say: But this was it that I avoided and feared, namely: To give him any advantage or occasion to listen upon me, and take hold on me, knowing him as I do to be litigious and quarrellsome: for in Physick, if I may use the words of *Homer*:

*He may well stand for many a one,*

*Although he be but one alone.*

As for Philosophy, he is not well affected thereto, but always provided of some shrewd and bitter terms against her in all his disputations, and as then especially: for I observed how he came directly against us, crying out upon us afar off with a loud voice, and charging us that we had to enterprize a great matter, and the same not very civil and honest, and in that we had broken the bounds, and a pluckt up (as a man would say) the very limit marks of Sciences, laying all common, and making a confusion of them, in disputing as we did of wholome diet, and of the manner how to live in good health. For the confines and frontiers (quoth he) of Physicians and Philosophers, are (as we use to say in the vulgar Proverb, as touching Myrians and Phrygians) far different, and removed a funder: Moreover, he had readily in his mouth certain speeches and sentences of ours, which we delivered by way of pastime only, and yet for all that, were not impertinent or unprofitable, and those he would seem to controule, reprove, and scorn.

*Moschion.*

But I for my part (O *Zeuxippus*) could be very well content yea, and most desirous to hear, even those speeches that he mockt and as others beside, which ye had concerning this matter, if so be it might stand with your pleasure to rehearse the same.

*Zeuxippus.*

I think no lesse (O *Moschion*) for that you are enclined naturally to Philosophy, and think not well of that Philosopher who is not well affected to Physick, but are displeased and offended with him; in



unto *Socrates* himselfe, dancing was no unpleasant exercise; even so he who maketh his whole temper of meale of junkets and banquetting dishes, catcheth less harm thereby: but when a man hath taken already as much as is sufficient to content nature, and wherewith heis well satisfied, he ought to beware as much as in any thing else, how he pisseth forth his hands to any such dainties. And we are to sic and avoid in these things, folly and ambition, no less then friandise or gluttony: for these two vices induce us likewise offences to eat something when we are not hungry, and to drink also when we be not athirst; yea, and they suggest and minister unto us certain baile and extravagant imaginations, to wit, that it were great simplicity, and a very absurd thing, not to feed liberally of a rare, deer and geason dish, if it may be had; as for example: That which is made of a Sowes paps when she is newly farrowed, Italian Musrooms, Samian Cakes, or Snow out of *Egypt*; for these toys and imaginations (intelling somewhat of vain-glory, as the sent of meat coming out of a Kitchen, many times set our teeth a watering and our stomach on edge to use them, forcing the body (which otherwise would not seek after them) to participate thereof, only because they be much spoken of and hard to come by: to the end that we make our report and recount unto others, what we have done, and be reputed by them right happy and fortunate; for that we have enjoyed things, so deere, so singular and so geason. The like affection they carry to women also of great name and reputation: for it falleth out, that having their own wives in bed with them, and those fair and beautiful dames, such also as love them dearly, they lie still and stir not, but if they meet with any courtesan, such as *Phryne* or *Lais* was, unto whom they have payed good silver out of their purse, though otherwise their bodies be unable, dull and heavy in performing the work of *Venus*, yet doing they will be, what they can, and strain themselves upon a vain-glorious ambition, to provoke and stir up their lascivious lust unto fleshy pleasure: whereupon *Phryne* her selfe, being now old and decayed, was wont to say: That she sold her leas and dregs the dearer, by reason of her reputation.

A great thing it is and wonderful, that if we receive into our bodies as many pleasures as nature doth require or can well bear; or rather, if upon divers occasions and businesses, we resist her appetites, and put her off unto another time, and that we be loth and hardly brought to yeeld unto her necessities, or (according as *Plato* saith) give place, after that she hath by fine force pricked and urged us thereto, we should not suffer for all that, any harm thereby, but go away freely without any losse or detriment: but on the other side, if we abandon our selves to the desires that delect from the soul to the body, so far forth as they force us to minister unto the passions thereof, and tie up together with them, impossible it is, but that they should leave behind them exceeding great losses and damages, in stead of a few pleasures; and those feeble and small in appearance, which they have given unto us: and this above all things would be considered, that we take heed how we provoke the body to pleasures, by the lust of the mind: for the beginning thereof is against nature. For like as the tickling under the armholes, procureth unto the soul a laughter, which is not proper, mild and gentle, but rather troublesome & resembling some spasm or convulsion; even so all the pleasures which the body receiveth when it is pricked and provoked by the soul, be violent, forced, turbulent, furious and unnatural. Whensoever therefore any occasion shall present it selfe to enjoy such rare and notable delights, it were better for us to take a glory in the abstinence, rather then in the fruition thereof, calling to mind that which *Simonides* was wont to say: That he never repented any less of this, but oftentimes he bespewed himselfe for his speech: And even so we never repent that we have refused any viands, or drunk water instead of good Falerne wine. And therefore we ought not only, not to force nature, but if otherwise we be served with such Cates and meats as the craveth, we are to divert our appetite from the same, and to reduce it to the use of simple and ordinary things many times, even for to lustme and exercise:

If right and law may broken be,  
for any earthly thing,  
The best pretence is for to win  
a crown, and be a King.

So said *Eteocles* the Theban, though truly: but we may better say: If we must be ambitious and desirous of glory in such things as these, it were most honest and commendable to use continence and temperance for the preservation of health. Howbeit, some there be, who upon an illiberal pinching, and mechanical sparing, can refrain and keep down their appetites when they be at home in their own houses: but if it chance they be bidden forth to others, they gorge and fill their bellies with these exquisite and costly viands: much like to those, who in time of war and hostility, raise booties and prey upon the lands of their enemies, what they can; and when they have so done, they goe from thence ill at ease, carrying away with them for the morrow (upon this their fullness and unlabourable repletion) crudity of stomach and indigestion. *Crates* therefore, the Philosopher thinking; that civil wars and tyrannies arise and grow up in Cities, as well by reason of superfluity and excess in dainty fare, as upon any other cause whatsoever, was wont by way of mirth, to give admonition in these terms: Take heed you bring us not into a civil sedition, by augmenting the platter always before the Lentil: that is to say, by depending more then your revenues will bear. But indeed, every man ought to have this command and rule of himselfe, as to say: Augment not evermore the platter before the Lentil, nor at any time pass beyond the Cressets & the Olive, even to fine tartars and delicate fishes, lest you bring your body into a domestical dissention afterwards with it selfe,

namely,

namely, to painfull colicks, laskes, and fluxes of the belly, by over-much fullness and excess of feeding: for simple viands and ordinary, containe the appetite within the bounds and compasse of nature; but the artificiall devices of cookes and cunning fellows in pattry, with their curious cates of all sorts, with their exquisite sauces and pickles (as the comical Poet saith) set out and extend alwayes the limits of pleasure, encroaching still beyond the bounds of utility and profit. And I wot not verily, how it comes about, that considering we so much detest and abhor those women, who give us lewdrinks, and can skill of charmes and forceries to bewitch and enchant men with, we beate thus as we do; unto mercenary hirelings or slaves, our meats and viands, to be medicined (as it were) and no better than poisoned for to enchant and bewitch us. And admit, that the saying of *Arcelamus* the Philosopher against adulterers and other lascivious persons, may seem somewhat with the bitterness; namely, that it made no great matter, which way one went about that beastly work, whether before or behind, for that the one was as bad as the other; yet impertinent it is not, nor beside the subject matter which we have in hand. For to say a truth, what difference is there between eating of Ragwort, Rogket, and such hot herbs, for to stir up the lust of the flesh, and to provoke the taste and appetite to meat by smells and sauces? like as many and itching places have alwayes need of rubbing and scratching. But peradventure it would be better to reserve unto another place, our discourse against dishonest fleshy pleasures, and to shew how honest and venerable a thing in it selfe is continence: for our purpose at this present is to debar many great pleasures, otherwise in their own nature honest: for I assure you, our diseases do not put us by so many actions, so many hopes, voyages, or pastimes as they deprive us of our pleasures, yea, and mar them quite: and therefore they who love their delights and pleasures most had need of any men in the world, to neglect their health. For many there be, who for all that they be sick have meanes to study philosophy, and discourse thereof: neither doth their sickness greatly hinder them, but that they may be generals in the field to lead armies, yea, and Kings (believe me) to govern whole Realmes.

But of bodily pleasures and fleshy delights, some there be which during a malady will never breed; and such as are bred already yeeld but a small joy, and short contentment, which is proper and naturall unto them, and the same not pure and sincere, but confused, depraved and corrupted with much strange fuffe, yea, and disguised and blemished as it were with some storme and tempest: for the act of *Venus* is not to any purpose performed upon gürmandise, and a full belly, but rather when the body is calme, and the flesh in great tranquillity: for that the end of *Venus* is pleasure, like as of eating also and of drinking; and health unto pleasures is as much as their faire weather and kind season, which giveth them secure and gentle breeding, much like as the calme time in winter against the sea-fowles called *Alecyons*, a life cooing, sitting and hatching of their eggs. *Prodicus* is commended for this pretty speech: That fire was the best sauce: and a man may most truly say, That health is of all sauces most divine, heavenly, and pleasant: for our viands how delicate soever they be boiled, roasted, baked, or stewed, do no pleasure at all unto us, so long as we are diseased, drunken, full of surfeit, or queasie of stomach, as they be who are sea-sick; whereas a pure and cleane appetite causeth all things to be sweet, pleasant, and agreeable unto found bodies; yea, and such as they will be ready to snatch at, as *Homer* saith. But like as *Demades* the Oratour, seeing the Athenians without all reason, desirous of armes and war, said unto them, That they never treated and agreed of peace, but in their black robes, after the losse of kinsfolke and friends; even so we never remember to keep a sary and sober diet, but when we come to be cauterized, or to have cataplasmes and plasters about us: we are no sooner fallen to those extremities, but then we are ready to condonne our faults, calling to mind what errors we have committed in times past; for until then we blame one while the aire as most men do; another while the region or country, as unfound and unwholesome; we find fault that we are out of our native soile, and are wonderful loath to accuse our own intemperance and disordinate appetites. And as King *Lysimachus* being constrained and enforced within the Country of the *Gretes* for very thirst to yeeld himselfe prisoner, and all his army captivate unto his enemies: after he had taken a draught of cold water, said, Good-God, what a great facility have I for-gone and lost for a momentary and transitory pleasure! even so we may make use thereof, and apply the same unto ourselves when we are sick, saying thus, How many delights have we missed quite? How many good actions have we fore-let? What honest pastimes have we lost? and all by our drinking of cold water, or bathing unseasonably, or else for that we have overdrunk our selves for good fellowship: for the bite and sting of such thoughts as these toucheth our remembrance to the quick, in such sort as the scarre remaineth still behind after that we are recovered, and maketh us in time of our health more staid, circumspect, and sober in our diet: for a body that is exceeding found and healthy never bringeth forth vehement desires, and disordinate appetites, hardly to be tamed or withstood; but we ought to make head against them when they begin to breake forth and sling out for to enjoy the pleasures which they are affected unto; for such lusts, some complaine, pule, and cry for a little, as wanton children do, and no sooner is the table taken away, but they be quiet and still; neither find they fault and make complaint of any wrong or injury offered unto them: but contrariwise, they be pure, jocular, and lightsome, not continuing heavy, nor ready to heave and cast, the next day to an end: like as by report, Captaine *Tymotheus*, (having upon a time been at a sober and frugall scholars supper, in the Academy with *Plato*) said, That they who supped with *Plato* were merry and well appointed the next day after. It is reported also, that King *Alexander* the Great when he turned back

to

those

those cooks which queene *Adasent* unto him, said, That he had about him all the yeare long better of his own, namely, for his breakfast or dinner, rising betimes, and marching before day light; and for his supper, eating little at dinner. I am not ignorant that men otherwhiles are very apt to fall into an ague upon extreme travell, upon excessive heats also and colds: but like as the odours and scents of flowers be weak and feeble of themselves; whereas if they be mixed with some oyle, they take force and vigour: even so ourselves and reputation is the ground, which given (as a man would say) body and substance unto the outward causes and occasions of maladies: and of a great quantity of superfluous humours there is no danger, because all such indispositions and crudities are soon dissolved, diffipated, and dissolved, when some fine or subtill blood, when some pure spirit (I say) receiveth their motion: but where there is a great repletion indeed, and abundance of superfluities, (as it were a deep and miry puddle all troubled and stirred) then there arise from thence many malignant accidents, such as be dangerous and hard to cure: and therefore we are not to do like some good masters of ships, who never thinke their vessels be fully fraught and charged thoroughly; and when they have taken in all that ever they can, do nothing else but work at the pumpe, void the sinke, and call out the sea water which is gotten in; even so when we have well filled and stuffed our bodies, fall to purge and cleanse them with medicines and clisters: but we ought rather to keep the bodie alwaies neat, nimble, and light, to the end, that if it chance otherwise at any time to be pressed and held down, it might be seen above for lightnesse like unto a peece of corke floating aloft upon the water: but principally we are to beware of the very precedent indispositions, which are fore-runners of maladies: for all diseases walke not (as *Hesiodus* saith) in silence and say nothing when they come,

*At whom wife Jupiter hath bereft  
Of voice, and tongue to them none left.*

But the most part of them have their vane-courts as it were, their messengers, and trumpets; namely, crudities of stomack, wearinesse, and heavinesse over all the body. According to the Aphorisme of *Hippocrates*: lassitudes and laborious heavinesse of the body, coming of themselves without any evident cause, prognosticate and fore-signe diseases: for that as it should seeme, the spirits that should passe unto the nerves and sinews are obstructed, stopped, and excluded, by the great repletion of humours: and albeit the body it self tendeth as it were to the contrary, and pulleth us to our bed and repose, yet some there be, who for very gluttony and disordinate lust, put themselves into baines and hot-houses, making halfe from thence to drinking square with good fellows, as if they would make provision before-hand of victuals against some long siege of a City, or feare that the seaver should surprize them fasting, or before they had taken their full dinner: others somewhat more honestly, yea, and civilly than they, are not this way faulty, but being ashamed (tooles they are) to confesse that they have eaten or drunke over-much that they feele any heavinesse in head or crudity in stomack, loath also to be known for to keep their chamber all the day long in their night-gowns, whiles their companions go to tennis and other bodily exercises abroad in publicke place, and call them forth to beare them company, rise up and makethem ready to go with them, call off their cloaths to their naked skin, with others, and put themselves to do all that men in perfect health are to performe. But the most part of these (induced and drawn on, by hope periwaded) are bold to arise, and to do hardly after their wonted manner, assisted by a certaine hope, grounded upon a proverb: as an advocate to defend goodman die, and wanton life, which adviceth them that they should expell wine with wine; drive or digest one surfeit with another. Howbeit, against all such hope, we are to oppose the wary and considerate caution, that *Cato* speaketh of (which as that wise man saith) doth diminish and lessen great things; and as for small matters it reduceth them to nothing: also that it were better to endure want of meat, and to keep the body empty and in quiet, than to be hazzard it, by entring into a baine, or run to an high Ordinary to dine and sup: for if there be some disposition to sicknesse, hurtfull it will be that we have not taken heed, nor contained our selves, but been secure: if none, dangerous it will not be that we have held in and restrained our selves, and by that restraint made our body too much more pure and cleare. But that childish foole whosoever he be, that is afraid to let his friends and those of his own house know that he is amill or ill at ease, for that he hath eaten overmuch, or surfeited with strong drinke, as being ashamed to confesse this day his indigestion, shall be forced to morrow even against his will, to bewray either an inordinate catarrh and fluxe, or an ague, or else some wrings and torments of the belly: thought-keft if for a great shame to be known that thou didst want or were hungry: but far greater shame it is, to avow crudity and rawnesse, to bewray heavinesse, proceeding from full diet, and upon repletion of the body to be drawn nevertheless into a baine, as if some rotten vessell or leaking ship, that would not keep out water, should be shot into the sea. Certes such persons as these resemble some failers or sea-faring men, who in the tempestuous time of winter be ashamed to be seen upon the shore, doing nothing: but when they have once weighed anchor, spread saile, and launched into the deepe, and open sea, they are very ill appaied, crying out pitiously, and ready to cast up their gorge: even so, they that doubt some sicknesse, or find a disposition of the body ready to fall into it, thinke it a great shame and discredit to stand upon their guard one day, to keep their beds and forebare their ordinary trade and accustomed diet: but afterwards with more shame, they are faine to lie by many daies together, whiles they be driven to take purgations, to apply many cataplasmes, to speake the physicians faire, and fawn upon them, when they would have

have leave of them to drinke wine or cold water; being so base minded, as to do absurdly, and to speake many words impertinently, feeling their hearts to faile, and be ready to faint, for the paine they endure already, and the feare they are to abide more. Howbeit, very good it were to teach and admonish such persons (as otherwise cannot rule & contain themselves, but either yeeld, or be transported and carried away by their lusts) that their pleasures take the most and best part of the body for their share. And like as the Lacedemonians after that they had given vinegar and salt to the cook, would him to seek for the rest in the beast sacrificed: even so in a body which one would nourish, the best sauces for the meat are these, which are presented unto it, when it is found in health and clean: For that a dish of meat is sweet or deare is a thing by it selfe, without the body of him who taketh it, and eateth thereof: but for the pleasantnesse or contentment thereof, we ought to have regard unto the body that receiveth it: also for to delight therein, it should be so disposed as nature doth require: for otherwise, if the body be troubled, ill-affected, or over-charged with wine; the best devices and sauces in the world will lose their grace, and all their goodnesse whatsoever: and therefore it would not be so much looked unto, whether the fish be new taken, the bread made of pure and fine flower, the bath hot, or the harlot faire and beautiful: as considered precisely, whether the man himselfe have not a loathing stomack, apt to heave and vomit, be not full of crudities, errors, vanity, and trouble: else it will come to passe, that it shall incur the same fault and absurdity that they do, who after they are drunken, will needs go in a maske, to play and dance in an house, where they all mourne for the death of the master thereof lately deceased: for indeed of making sport and mirth, this were enough to set all the house upon weeping and pitious wailing. For even so, the sports of love or *Venus*, exquisite viands, pleasant baines, and good wines, in a body ill disposed and not according to nature, do no other good, but stir, trouble, steame, and choler in them, who have no letted and compact constitution, and yet be not altogether corrupt: as also they trouble the body, and put it out of tune more than any thing else yeelding no joy that we may make any reckoning of, nor that contentment which we hoped and expected. True it is, that an exquisite diet observed strictly and precisely according to rule, and missing not one jot, causeth not only the body to be thin, hollow, and in danger to fall into many diseases: but also dulseth all the vigour, and daunteth the chearefulness of the very mind, in such sort, as that the suspecteth all things, and feareth continually to stay long as well in delights and pleasures, as in travels and paines; yea, and generally in every action enterprizing nothing assuredly and with confidence: whereas we ought to deale by our body, as with the saile of a ship: that is to say) neither to draw it in and keep it down too straight in time of calme and faire weather, nor to spread and let it out over-flack and negligently, when there is presented some suspicion of a tempest: but as occasion shall require, to pare it, and give some ease and remission, that afterwards it may be fresh and light some, as hath been said already, and not to slack the time, and stay until we sensibly feele crudities, like, inflammations: or contrariwise, rapidities and mortifications of members, by which signs (being as it were messengers, and ushers going before a seaver, which is hard at the doore) hardly will some be so much moved, as to keep in, and restrain themselves, (no when the very accesse and fit is ready to surprize them) but rather long before to be provident, and to prevent a tempest:

*So soone as from some rock we find  
The puffing gales of northern wind.*

For absurd it is, and to no purpose, to give such careful heed unto the crying wide throats of crows, or to the crawing and cackling of hens, or to swine, when in a rage they tosse and sling straw about them (as *Democritus* saith) thereby to gather prelates, and prognostications of wind, raine, and stormes; and in the meane time not to observe the motions, troubles, and fiering indispositions of our bodie, nor prevent the same, ne yet to gather undoubted signes of a tempest ready to rise and grow even out thereof. And therefore we ought not only to have an eye unto the body, for meat and drinke, and for bodily exercises, in observing whether we fall unto them more lazily and unwillingly than our manner was before time: or contrariwise whether our hunger and thirst be more than ordinary; but also we are to suspect and feare, if our sleeps be not mild, and continued, but broken and interrupted: we must besides regard our very dreames: namely, whether they be strange and unusual: for if there be represented extraordinary fancies and imaginations, they tell us and shew a repletion of grosse, viscous, or slimy humours, and a great perturbation of the spirits within. Otherwhiles also it hapneth that the motions of the soule it self do fore-signe unto us that the body is in some near danger of disease: for many times men are surprized with timorous fits of melancholy, and heartlesse distrusts without any reason or evident cause, the which suddenly extinguish all their hopes: you shall have some upon every small occasion apt to fall into choleric passions of anger: they become eager and hasty, troubled, pensive, and offended with a little thing, in so much as they will be ready to weep and run all to teares, yea, and languish for griefe and sorrow: And all this cometh when evil vapours, lowre and bitter fumes ingendred within, do arise and steame up, and do (as *Plato* saith) be intermingled in the waies and passages of the soule. Those persons therefore who are subject to such things ought to thinke and consider with themselves, that if there be no spirittual cause thereof, it cannot chuse but some corporall matter had need either of evacuation, alteration, or suppression.

Expedient also it is and very profitable for us, when we visit our friends that be sick, to enquire diligently

diligently the causes of their maladies, not upon a cavelling curiosity or vaine ostentation, (to dispute sophistically, and discourse thereof only, or to make a shew of our eloquence, in talking of the instances, the injuries, the intercidences, communities of diseases, and all to shew what books we have read, and that we know the words and tearmes of physick; but to make search and enquiry in good earnest, and not slightly or by the way, as touching these slight common and vulgar points, namely, whether the sick party be full or empty? Whether he over-travelled himselfe before, or no? and whether he slept well or ill? but principally, what diet he kept, and what order of life he followed, when he fell (for examples sake) into the ague? then (according as *Plato* was wont to say unto himselfe, whensoever he returned from hearing and seeing the faults that other men committed:) Am not I also such an one? So you must compole and frame your selfe to learne by the harmes and excesses of neighbours about you, for to looke well unto your own health, and by calling them to mind, to be so wary and provident, that you fall not into the same inconveniences, and forced to keep your bed, and there extoll and commend health, withing and desiring (when it is too late) for to enjoy so precious a treasure; but rather (seeing another to have caught a disease) to marke and consider well, yea, and to entertaine this deep impression in your heart: how deare the said health ought to be unto us, how carefull we should be to preserve, and chary to spare the same. Moreover, it would not be amiss for a man afterwards to compare his own life with that of the forelaide patient: for if it fall out so, that (notwithstanding we have used over-liberal diet both in drinks and meats, or laboured extremely, or otherwise committed error in any excessive and disorder) our bodies minister unto nature no suspicion, nor threaten any signe of sickness toward; yet ought we nevertheless, to take heed and prevent the harme that may ensue: namely, if we have committed any disorder in the pleasures of *Venus*, and love-delights; or otherwise been over-travelled, to repose our selves and take our quiet rest; after drunkennesse or carrowing wine round for good fellowship, to make amends and recompence with drinking as much cold water for a time; but especially, upon a surfeit taken with eating heavy and grosse meats, and namely, of flesh, or else feeding upon sundry and divers dishes, to fast or use a spary diet, so as there be leit no superfluity in the body; for even these things, as of themselves alone (if there were no more) be enough to breed diseases; so unto other causes they add matter and minister more strength. Full wisely therefore was it said by our ancients in old time, that for to maintaine our health, these three points were most expedient: *To feed without surfeit; To labour with alacrity; and To preserve and make fast of naturall heat.* For surely lascivious intemperance in venery of all things, much decayeth and enfeebleth the strength that naturall heat, whereby our meat and food which we receive is concocted, and so consequently is the cause of many excrements and superfluities engendred, whereupon corrupt humours are engendered and gathered within the body.

To begin therefore to speake againe of every of these points: let us consider first the exercises meet and agreeable to students or men of learning: for like as he who first said, That he wrote nothing of Teeth to those that inhabited the sea coasts, taught them (in so saying) the use of them: even so a man may say unto scholars and men of learning, That he writeth nothing unto them as touching bodily exercises; for that the daily practice of the voice by speech and pronunciation is an exercise wonderfull effectfull, not only for health, but also for strength. I mean not such as is procured to wrestlers and champions by art, which breedeth brawny carnosity, and causeth the skin to be firme and fast without forth (like unto an house which to the outward shew is rough-cast or thick coated with lime or plaster;) but that which maketh a rough constitution and a vigorous trimdude and strength indeed in the noblest parts within, and the principall instruments of our life. Now, that the spirits augment and confirme the powers of our body, the annoieters of mens bodies in the place of publike exercise know full well, when they give order and command the wrestlers, and such like, when their limbs are rubbed, to withstand such frictions in some sort, inhaling their wind, observing precisely, and having an eye to each part of the body that is handled or rubbed. The voice, therefore (being a motion of the spirit (fortified, not superficially and by starts, but even in the proper fountains and springs which are about the vitall bowels) encrease the naturall heat) doth subtilize the blond, cleareth the veines, openeth all the arteries, not suffering any obstruction, oppilation, or stopping by superfluous humours to grow upon us, or remaine behind (like unto dregs or grounds) in the bottome of those vessels which receive and concoct those viands whereof we are nourished: by reason whereof they have need to use ordinarily this exercise, and make it familiar unto them by speaking in publike place, and discoursing continually. But if haply they doubt that their bodies be but weak, and not able to support and endure so much travell, yet at leastwise they are to read with a loud voice; for look what proportion there is between gestation or carriage of the body, and the exercise thereof upon the very ground, the same is between simple reading and discoursing, or open disputation: for this reading doth gently (fir and mildly) carry the voice by the chariot (as it were) and litter of another mans speech; but disputation addeth thereto a certaine heat and forcible vehemence; for that the mind and the body conspire and congregate together in that action: howbeit, in this exercise we must beware of over-loud vociferations and clamours; for such violent firzings of the voice, and unequall extensions and intensions of the wind, many times cause some rupture of veines, or inward spasmes and convulsions. Now when a student hath either read or discoursed in this manner, good it is for him before he walke abroad, to use some unctions, warme, and gentle frictions; to handle and rub the skin and flesh

altes

after a soft and mild manner; yea, and as much as he can to reach into the very bowels within, that the spirits may be spread and distributed equally throughout, even to the very extremities of the body. In these rubbings and frictions this gage and measure would be observed, that he continue them so long, and so often as he findeth them to agree sensibly with his body, and bring no offence with them. He that in this wise hath appeased and settled the trouble or tenion of the spirits in the center of the body, if haply there should remaine some superfluity behind; it would do him no great harme: for say, that he should forbear walking for want of leisure, or by occasion of sudden business, it is all one, and it maketh no matter; for why, nature hath had already that which is sufficient, and standeth satisfied therewith. And therefore a man is not to pretend colourably for to excuse his silence, or forbearance of reading either navigation, when he is accompanied with other passengers at sea in one ship, or his abode and sojourning in an holier or common inne, although all the company there should mock him for it: for as it was no shame nor dishonest thing to eate before them all, no more unseemly is it to exercise himselfe in their presence by reading. But rather more undecent it were to be afraid or stand in awe of murriners, muliters, or inne-keepers, when they laugh at you, not for playing at ball alone, or fighting with your own shadow, but for speaking before them in your speech, either teaching, or discoursing, or else learning by rote, and rehearsing some good thing for your exercise. *Socrates* was wont to say, That for him who would move and stir his body by way of dancing, a little room (that would receive even steeles or leas) was sufficient and big enough; but him that minded to exercise his body either by singing or laying, every place will serve, whether he stand, lie, or sit. Only this must we take heed of, that we traine not our voice, nor set out an open throat, when we are privy to our selves that we have eaten or drunk liberally, yet yet presently alter the company of a woman, or any other wearisome travell whatsoever, as many of our Orators and great Masters of Rhetoricke use to do; who enforce and give themselves to declaim and pronounce their Orations too loud, even above the strength of their body: some for vain-glory and ambition, because they would put forth themselves: others for reward, and to get a fee, or else upon emulation to their concurrents. Thus did *Niger*, (a friend of ours) who professed Rhetoric in *Galatia*: this man having swallowed down a fish-bone which stuck still in his throat (when another Rhetorician, travelling that way, chanced to make a publike Oracion: for that he was ashamed to be thought his inferior, and yet durst not deal with him in that faculty) would needs shew himselfe in open place, and declaim, whilst the said bone remained still in his throat: but by this means there ensued a dangerous and painful inflammation; and being no longer able to endure the dolorous anguish thereof, he suffered himselfe to be launched without forth, and to have a deep incision and a wide orifice made, whereby the bone indeed was plucked out, but the was loquacious, and oppressed beside with a deficient and deluxion of rheumatick humours thither, that he died thereof. But haply, better to the purpose it were to speake of this hereafter. Well, after exercise to go presently into the bath, and to wash in cold water, were the part of a lusty wild-brain and a giddy-headed youth, who will needs in a bravery shew what he can do, rather than wholesome any way: for all the good that such cold baths bring is this, that they seeme to harden the body, and confirme it so as it is leffe subject to take offence by the qualities of the aire without; but surely they do more harme within by a great deale; for that they enclose and shut up the pores of the body, causing the humours and fumes which would evaporate and breath forth continually to become thick and grosse. Furthermore, needfull it is for them that love to bath thus in cold water to fall into the subjection of that over-straight and exquisite diet, (which we would avoid) having evermore an eye upon this, not to breake the same in any point whatsoever, for that the least fault and smallest error in the world is presently chastised and coldest full deare: whereas contrariwise to enter into the bain, and wash in hot water pardoneth us, and holdeth us excused for many things; for it doth not so much diminish the strength and force of the body, as it bringeth profit another way for the health thereof; framing and applying most gently and kindly the humours to concoction: and in case there be some which cannot well and perfectly be digested, (so they be not altogether crude and raw, nor float aloft in the mouth of the stomach) it causeth them to dissolve and exhale without any lesse of paine: yea, and withall, it doth mitigate and cause to vanish and passe away the secret labours of the mucousulous fibres. And yet as good as banes be, if we perceive the body to be in the naturall state and disposition, firme and strong enough, better it were to intermit and for-let the use of baths; and instead thereof I hold it wholliomer to annoy and rub the body before a good fire, namely, if it have need to be chafed and set in a heat: for by this means there is dispersed into it as much heat as is requisite, and no more; which cannot be against the sun: for of his heat a man cannot take more or lesse at his own discretion, but according as he affecteth or tempereth the aire, so he affordeth his life. And thus much may serve for the exercise of students.

To come now unto their food and nurture: if the reasons and instructions before delivered, by which we learne to retrain, repress, and mitigate our appetites, have done any good, time it were to proceed forward to other advertisements; but in case they be so violent, so unruly and untamed, as if they were newly broken out of prison, that it is an hard peece of work to rank them within the compasse of reason; and if it be a difficult peece of worke to wrestle with the belly, which (as *Cato* was wont to say) have no ears; we must work another fear and leave with it: namely, by observing the equality of the viands, to make the quantity more light and lesse offensive; and if they be such as be solid and nourish much; as for example, grosse flesh meats, cheese, dry figgs, and hard eggs,

ll u 3

they



they must feed of them as little as they can; for to refuse and forbear them altogether were very hard; but they may be more bold to eat heartily of those that be thin and light, such as are the moit part of worts, or pot-herbs, birds, and fishes, that be not fat and oyleous: for in eating of such meats a man may at once both gratifie his appetite, and also never overcharge his body: but above all, take heed they must of crudities and surfeits, proceeding from libell eating of flesh-meats; for besides that they load the stomack presently as they are taken, there remain afterwards behind naughty reliques: and therefore it were very well, that they accustomed their bodies never to call for flesh, considering that the earth it self bringeth forth other kinds of food, sufficiently not only for the necessity of nourishment, but also for pleasure and the contentment of the appetite; for some of them are ready to be eaten without any dressing, or the help of mans hand, others be mingled and compounded after divers sorts to makethem more savory and toothsome. But forasmuch as (some after a sort) is a second nature, or at least will not contrary to nature: we must not accustom our selves to feed on flesh, for to fulfill our appetites after the manner of wolves, and lions, but use it only as the foundation and ground of other viands; which being once laid, we are to make our principall nourishment of other cates and dishes, which as they are more appropriate to our bodies, and suitable to nature, so they do incrassate and dull lesse the vigour and subtilty of the spirit, and the discouraging reasonable part of the soule, which is kindled, maintained, and set to burne cleare, by a more delicate and light matter. As touching liquid things, they must use milke, not as an ordinary drinke, but as a strong meat that nourisheth exceeding much: but for wine, we are to say to us, as *Epipides* did to *Venus*:

*Welcome to me in measure and in mean;  
Too much is naught: yet do not leave me cleare.*

For of all drinks it is most profitable, of medicines most pleasant, and of dainty viands most harmless: provided alwaies that it be well delayed and tempered with opportunity of the times, rather than with water. And verily water (not that only wherewith wine is mingled, but also which is drunke between whites, apart by it selfe) teacheth the wine tempered therewith to do the lesse harm: in regard whereof, a student ought to use himselfe to drinke twice or thrice every day a draught of freere water; for that it will enfeeble the headineffe of the wine, and make the usuall drinking of pure water more familiar to the stomack: and this I would have to be done, to this end, that if they be driven perforce to drinke faire water, they might not thinke it strange, nor be ready to refuse it. For many there be, who oftentimes have recourse to wine, when it is, they had more need to run to the water; and namely, when they be over-heated with the sun: yea, and contrariwise, when they be stiff-frozen with cold, or have strained themselves to speake much, or studied and stutted hard at their book; and generally, after that they have travelled fore, till they be weary, or have performed some vehement exploit, or violent exercise: then (I say) they thinke, that they ought to drinke wine; as if nature her selfe required and called for some contentment and refreshing of the body, and some change and alteration after travels: but nature verily is not desirous to have any good done to her in this sort, if you call such pleasure a doing of good; but the demandeth only a redreiment to a meane between labour and rest: and therefore such persons as these are to be cut short and abridged of their victuals and either to be debarred quite of all wine, or else enjoyned to drinke it well delayed with water: for wine being of it selfe of a violent and stirring nature, argueth and maketh more unquiet the stormy perturbations arising within the body, it doth irritate and distemper more and more the parts therein already offended and troubled: the which bid much more need to be appeased and dulced: to which purpose water serveth passing well: for if we otherwise being not athirst, drinke hot water after we have laboured, or done some painful exercise, in the exceeding heats of the summer: we find a notable cooling, refreshing, and easement in our inward bowels: the reason is, because the humidity of water is kind and mild, procuring no debate or disquietnesse at all; whereas the moisture of wine hath a vehement force, which never is at quiet and repose, but maketh a deep impression, nothing agreeable nor fit to appease the indispositions that are a breeding. Now if one do feare the foure and sharpe acrimones, and the bitter taltes which (by the saying of some) hunger and want of food engender in our bodies, or as little children use to do, thinke much not to fit at the table for to eat, a little before the fit of anger, or when he suspecteth it coming: the drinking of water is as it were a confine and ironer between both, very fit to remedy the one and the other: and many times we offer unto *Bacchus* himselfe certaine sacrifices called *Nephelia*, for that there is no wine used therein: accustoming our selves wisely thereby not to be alwaies desirous for to drinke wine. *Minos* tooke away from sacrifices, the flute, and the chapters used to be worne on mens heads, in regard of griefe and sorrow: and yet we know full well, that the heavy and sorrowfull mind is neither by flutes nor flowers pained; whereas there is not the body of a man, (how strong and stout soever he be) but if it be stirred, troubled, and enflamed, will take more harm and offence by wine if it be taken or poured into it. It is recorded in the Chronicles, that the Lydians in time of a great dearth and famine did eate but once in two daies, and spent the time between at dice-play, and other such games and pastimes: and even so it were well beleeving a student & lover of the Muses and his book: at such a time as he had need to make a late and short supper, to have before him the figure serving for some Geometrical proportion, or some little book, some harpe or lute: this will not suffer him to be led as prisoner to his own belly, but by diverting and turning ordinarily his mind from the boord, to these honest pri-  
tmes

times and recreations: will chase away from the Muses the greedy appetite of eating and drinking, as if they were so many ravenous fowles and harpies: For a shame it were that a Scythian whilst he is drinking should effusions take his bow in hand ready bent, and twang the string, and by the sound thereof awaken and quicken his courage, which otherwise would become drowsie, loose, and dully by wine: and that a Grecian should be ashamed or afraid of a flout or mock, in saying gently to refrain and bridle an unreasonable, violent, and greedy appetite, by the means of books and writings: for much after the same manner in a comedy of *Menander*, when there was a bawd, who for to tempt certaine young men sitting at supper together, brought in amongst them certaine pretty young wenches, very faire, and richly arrayed; every one of the said young men (because they were afraid and unwilling to look those beautiful damocles in the face) made no more ado, but as he saith:

*C. st down the head, and like good merry mates,  
Fall to their junks hard, and dainty cates.*

Moreover, men that are addicted to their study, and to learning, have many other proper and pleasant means to turne away their eyes, and divert their minds, if otherwise they be not able to looke off; and to stay or hold in this violent and dog-like greedy appetite, when the meat standeth before them upon the board. For as touching the speeches of some matters of wrestlers, or the words of certaine schoole-masters, who go up and down, saying, That to reason, argue, and discourse at the table upon points of learning, cansteth the meat to corrupt within the stomack, and breedeth head-ach, or heaviness of the braine: we may indeed learne somewhat; if we will needs (while we be at our repast) fall to relieve such a sophistical argument, as the Logicians call *Indos*: or if we be disposed to reason and dispute about the masterfull sophisme, named *Kyrraton*: It is said, that the crown or upmost tuft growing upon the date tree, called the braine thereof, is exceeding sweet and pleasant to the taste, yet hurtfull to the head: howbeit, these prickly and intricate disputations in Logick at supper time; are no pleasant banquetting dishes, but offensive to the braine, tedious, and irksome, nothing more. But if those men will not permit us to discourse, to heare, read, or talke of other matters in supper time, which together with honesty and profit, have an attractive pleasure and sweetness joyned therewith: we will desire them to let us alone, and not trouble us, but to arise from the table, and go their waies into their galleries and halls for wrestling, and there to hold and maintaine such positions among their scholars and champions, whom they withdraw and turne away from the study of good letters; and accustoming them to spend their time all the day long in idleness and scurrile speeches, they make them in the end (as gentle *Arifon* said) as witless, and without sense (yet glib and well graced) as the stone pillars which support those galleries, and places of exercise where they use to converse and keep schoole. But we contrariwise being ruled by the Physicians, who advise us alwaies to interpose some competent time between sleep and sleep, are not presently to go unto it, after we have filled our bellies with viands, and stuffed our spirits, even whilst the moriells of meat be all raw or beginning now to be concocted thereby to hinder and stay digestion: but give some space and breathing-time between, untill the meat be well settled in the stomack. And as they who give us counsell to move and stir the body after meals, will, us not to run our selves out of breath, nor to exercise ourselves so, as that we put all the parts of our body to the triall, after the manner of the *Pancratiasts*: but either to walke faire and softly, or to dance after a gentle and easie manner; semblably, we are to thinke that we ought to exercise our wits and minds after a dinner or supper, not about any affaires of deep thught, and profound meditation, nor in sophistical disputes, tending to the obtention of a quick and lively spirit, nor which be litigious, and breed contention; but there be many questions besides of natural Philosophy, pleasant to be discussed, and easie to be decided: many pretty tales and narrations there are, out of which a man may draw good considerations and wise instructions, for to traine and frame our manners; and these containe that grace and facility in them, which the Poet *Homer* calleth *Mnemonicks*, that is to say, yielding to anger, and in no wise croffe and resistant: Hereupon it is, that some do pleasantly take this exercise of moving, propounding, and resolving historical or poetical questions; the second course or the service of banquetting dishes for students and learned men. Moreover, there be other sorts of pleasant talke besides these, and namely, to heare and recite fables, devised for mirth and pleasure; discourses of playing upon the flute, harpe, or lute, which many times give more contentment and delight, than to heare the flute, harpe, or lute it selfe played upon. Now the very precise time measured as it were, and marked out to be most proper and meet for such recreations: is when we feele that our meat is gently gone down, and ferled quietly in the bottom of the stomack: shewing some signe of concoction, and that natural heat is strong, and hath gotten the upper hand.

Now forasmuch as *Arifon* is of opinion, that walking after supper doth stir up and kindle (as one would say) our natural heat: and to sleep immediately after a man hath supped, doth dull and quench it: considering also, that others be of a contrary mind, and hold, that rest and repose is better for concoction; that motion too soon after a troubleth and impeacheth the digestion and distribution of the meats, which is the cause that some use to walke after supper, others sit still and take their ease: me thinke a man may reconcile and fause very well after a foretelle two opinions; who cherishing and keeping his body close and still after supper, letteth his mind a walking, awaketh it, suffering it not to be heavy and idle at once by and by: but sharpneth and quickneth his spirits,

*ἰχθυό-  
αν 75 94-  
Vix G.  
V which some  
interpret the  
business of the  
bird Phœbus,  
but this bird  
being so rare,  
as that it is  
thought to  
be a fabulous  
thing, I feare  
not how his  
property  
should be ob-  
served in the  
braines there-  
of.*

spirits, as it before said, by little and little, in discoursing, or hearing discourses of pleasant matters and delectable, such as not be biting in any wise, nor offensive and odious.

Moreover, as touching vomits or purgations of the belly by laxative medicines, which are the curied and detestable elements and remedies of fulness and repletion: surely they would never be used but upon right great and urgent necessity: a contrary course to many men, who fill their gorges and bodies with an intent to void them soon after; or otherwise, who purge and empty the same sort to fill them againe, even against nature: who are no lesse troubled, nay, much more offended ordinarily, by being fed and full, then fasting and empty: inasmuch as such repletion is a hinderance to the contentment and satisfying of their appetites and lusts: by occasion whereof they take order alwaies, that their body may be evermore emptied: as if this voidance were the proper peace and seat of their pleasures. But the hurt and damage that may grow upon these ordinary purgations and vomits is very evident: for that both the one and the other put the body to exceeding great straines and violent disturbances. As for vomiting, it bringeth with it one inconvenience, by it lesse, more than the former, in that it procureth and augmenteth an insatiable greedinesse to meat: for ingendered there is by that means a violent and turbulent hunger (like as when the course of the frame of a river hath been for a while stopped and staid) / snatching or greedy at meat, which is evermore offensive, and not a kind of appetite indeed, when as nature hath need of meat: but resembling rather the inflammations occasioned by medicines or cataplasmes. Hereupon it is that the pleasures proceeding from thence passe and slip away incontinently, as abortive and imperfect, accompanied with inordinate pantings and beatings of the pulse, great wrings in the enjoying of them, and afterwards ensue dolorous tensions, violent oppressions or stoppings of the conduits and pores, and the reliques or retentions of ventosities: which may not for naturall ejections and evacuations, but run up and down all over our bodies, like as if they were ships lurching, having more need to be eased of their burden, than fill to be laden with more excrements. As for the troublesome motions of the belly and guts, occasioned by purgative drugs, they corrupt, spill, and resolve the naturall strength of the solid parts, so that they engender more superfluities within than they thrust out and expell. And this is for all the world like as if a man, being discontented to see within his native City a multitude of naturall Greeks inhabitants, should for to drive them out fill the same with Scythians or Arabian strangers. For even so, some there be, who (greatly miscounting and deceiving themselves) for to send forth of their bodies the superfluous humours which are in some sort domesticall and familiar unto them, put into them I wot not what, Cnidian graines, Scammony, and other strange drugs fet from far Countries, such as have no familiar reference to the body, but are meer wild and savage, and in truth have more need to be purged and chased out of the body themselves, than power and vertue to void away and expell that wherewith nature is choaked and overcharged. The best way therefore is, by sobriety and regular diet to keep the body alwaies in that moderate measure of evacuation and repletion, that it may be able by proportionable temperature to maintain it selfe without any outward help. But if it fall out otherwhiles, that there be some necessity of the one or the other, vomits would be provoked without the help of strange physicall drugs, and not with much ado and curiosity that they disquiet and trouble no parts within, but only for to avoid crudity and indigestion, reject & cast up that gently which is too much, and cannot be prepared and made meet for concoction. For like as linnen cloaths that be scoured and made cleane with sopes, ashes, lees, and other absterive matters, wear more and fret out sooner than such as be washed simply in faire water: even so, vomits provoked by medicines offend the body much more, and mar the complexion. But say, the belly be bound and cōstive, there is not a drug that ease it to nill, or provoketh it to the heege so easily, as do certaine meats, whereof the experience is familiar unto us, and the use nothing dolorous and offensive. Now in case the body be so hard that such kind viands will not worke and cause it to be soluble, then a man ought for many daies together to drinke thin and cold water, or use to fast, or else take some clitter, rather than purgative medicines, such as disquiet the body, and overthrow the temperature thereof. And yet many there be, who ever and anon are ready to run unto them: much like unto those lewd and light wanton women who use certaine medicines to cause abortion, or to send away the fruit which they have newly conceived: to the end that they might conceive loon againe, and have more pleasure in that fleshly action. Now it is time to lay no more, but to let them go that perfwade full evacuations.

As for those on the contrary side, who interject certaine exact, precise, and critical fastings, observed too faithfully according to just periods and circuits of daies: surely they teach nature, (wherein they do not well) to use affliction before it have need: and acquaint her with a necessary abstinence of food, which in it selfe is not necessary, even at a prefixed time, which calleth for that then whereto it is accustomed. Better yet it were for a man to use these chastisements of his body freely and at his own liberty, without any fore-knowledge or suspicion: and as for other diet, as hath been said before, to order it so, that it may frame and be obsequent to all manner of occurrences and changes that shall come between, and not be tied and bound to one forme and manner of life, exactly to keep certaine daies, just numbers, and set circuits, without failing or missing in any jot. For this course is neither free, nor easy: it is not civill, nor yet agreeable to humanity: it resembleth rather the life of an oyster, or some flock of a tree: to captivate himselfe, and be so subject and thrall, that he cannot change or alter his viands: he may not once vary in his fastings and abstinencies,

abstinencies, in his motions or repose, but continue alwaies close and covert in a shady kind of life, idle, private to himselfe, without conversing with friends, without participation of honours, far more from the administration of weale publike, which were to shut himselfe up as it were a close prisoner: a life I assure you which I cannot like nor allow: for we cannot buy our health with idleness and doing naught: which two are the principall inconveniences incident unto diseases: and all one thing, as if a man would think to preferre his eyes by not employing them to see; or his voice, by speaking not at all: thus to be perfwaded, that for the preservation of health it were necessary to have continual repose, without doing ought: for a man in health, cannot do better for to maintain the same, than to be employed in many good duties, and commendable offices of humanity. An absurd error therefore it is, to thinke idleness to be either healthy or wholesome, considering that it destroyeth the very end of health, which is employment: neither is it true, that the lesse men do, the more healthfull they be. For Xenocrates had not his health better than Phocion: nor Theophrastus than Demetrius: and as for Epicurus and all the crew of his sectaries, they had no benefit at all for the attaining of that contentment and tranquillity of the body which they make so great reckoning of, and prate to highly; by flying and avoiding all State affaires, and meddling in no publike and honourable office. Othermeanes therefore and provision would be made to entertaine and keepe that disposition and habitude of the body, which is according to nature: for this is certaine, that all sorts of life be capable, as well of sickness as of health. Howbeit, Politicians (quoth he) and States-men are to be admonished to do cleane contrary unto that which Plato advertised his young scholars to do, for Plato ever as he went out of the Schoole was wont thus to say unto them: Come to my sons, see you employ that leisure which you have in some honest sports and pastimes. But we may exhort and put in mind those who deal in the administration of Commonwealth, to bestow their labour and travell in honest and necessary things, and not to overtoyle and spend their bodies in small matters of little or no consequence: as the manner is of most men, who trouble and torment themselves about just nothing, overwatching, running to and fro, here and there, up and down about things which many times are neither good nor honest: but only because they would disgrace and shame others, either upon envy that they beare unto them, or upon obstinate and wilfull selfe-conceit, or else to puttie and maintaine some vain and foolish opinions that they have taken. For I thinke verily it was in regard of such persons especially, that Democritus said. If the body should call the soule judicially into question upon an action of injury or wrong done, and for to make satisfaction of losse and damage: the were not able to answer it, but must needs confesse the action, and be condemned. And Theophrastus peradventure said well and truly, when speaking by a metaphor or allegory: he affirmed, that the soule paid a deare rent for her dwelling within the body. For (I assure you) the body may thinke the soule for many harmes that it sustaineth: when as the use it not with reason, nor in temperance: according as it is meet and convenient: and looke when she hath any proper and peculiar passions of her owne, or some enterprizes and actions to be performed, she maketh no spare of the poore body. As for the tyrant Xajon, he was wont (I wot not upon what reason or ground) to say. The ought to deale unjustly in small matters, who would be just in the great affaires: and even so, we may well advise a man of State and Government, to make no reckoning of trifling things, but disport, play, and solace himselfe in repose with them: if he would not have his body over-spent, dull, or lazy, against the time that he should employ it in great and important causes: much like to an old shippe which hath been drawn up to land, for to be newly calked and trimmed, after it hath rested a time, is fit to do new service at sea: for even so, the body upon repose and ease, whensoever the soule shall put it to any affaires, will be ready to follow.

*And run with her, as sucking sole doth go  
Held by the dam, and never parts her fro.*

And therefore when occasions will permit and give leave, we are to refresh and recreate our selves, not envying the bodies naturall sleep, or usuall repose and refection of dinner, ne yet easement and recreation, which is of a middle nature between pleasure and paine, nor observing a strict rule; which many men do keep, and in keeping it, spill and spend the body by sudden mutations: like as iron that is often made hot and quenched againe: for whensoever the body is soiled and tired with travells, then they will even melt and dissolve it in excessive and unmeasurable pleasures: and all upon the sudden againe, when it is weakened and enfeebled with the delights of Venus, or by drinking out of course they will draw and drive it presently to the serious travells of the Common Hall or the Court, to the soliciting and following of some affaires of great importance, which requireth earnest attendance and hot pursuit. Herodotus the Philosopher, being fallen into a dropie, willed his Physician to make drought of great raine. But most men ordinarily do fault herein exceeding much: now when they be wearied, toyled, and soiled with painful labours and wants, yeeld their bodies to be metted and spent quite with voluptuous pleasures: and afterwards againe, wreat and straine them as it were upon the reiters, immediately upon the fruition of some pleasures. For nature verily neither liketh nor requirith these alterations and sudden changes by turns: but it is the incontinency and all therall lativiousnesse of the soule, and nothing else, that abandoneth her selfe inordinate unto pleasures and delights, so loone as it is out of laborious exercises: like as mariners and sailors do at sea. And contrariwise, immediately after sports and pleasures, betaketh it selfe to the eager

enger pursuit of gain, and to the manning of great affairs; giving no time and space of rest to nature to enjoy repose and quiet tranquillity, whereof it hath need, but setteth it out of frame, and distempereth it mightily, by reason of this inequality. But wife and discreet persons are very wary and careful in this behalf: never presenting such pleasures to their bodies when they be out-wearied with labour and travell, for need thereof they have none at all; and besides, they do not regard nor thinke upon them, having their minds continually intentive upon the honesty and decency of the action or thing whereabout they are; dulling or dimming as well the joy as the earnest solicitude and care of their mind, by the means of other desires and appetites: as it is written of *Epinemidas*, that he should say in game and merriment, of a certaine valiant man, who about the time of the Leuctrique war died of sickness in his bed: *O Hercules*, how had this man any leisure to dye amidst so many important affaires! even so it may be said truly and in good earnest of a great personage, who hath in his hand the manning of some weighty affaires in matter of government, or treatie of Philosophy: How should such a man as he have time either to be drunken, or to surfeit with gluttony, or given himselfe to fleshly pleasures of the body? But wise men indeed, when they be freed from important matters of action can find a time to rest and repose their bodies, discharging them of needlesse and unprofitable travells, but much more of superfluous and unnecessary pleasures, lying and slumming them as enemies and contrary to nature.

I remember that upon a time I heard, how *Tiberius Cæsar* was wont to say, That a man being once above threecore years of age deserveth to be mocked and derided if he put forth his hand unto the Physician for to have his pulse felt. For mine own part, I take this speech of his to be somewhat too proud and insolent; but me thinks this should be true, That every man ought to know the particularities and properties of his own pulse, for there be many diversities and differences in each one of us: also that it behoveth no man to be ignorant in the severall complexion of his own body, as well in heat as in drieinesse: also to be skilfull what things be good for him, and what be hurtfull, when he useth them: for he that would learne these particularities of any other than of himselfe, or goeth to a Physician to know of him, whether he be better in health in summer time than in winter, or whether he stand better affected in taking dry things rather than moist; also whether naturally he were a strong pulse or a weak, a quick or a slow; surely hath no sense or feeling of himselfe, but is as it were deafe and blind, a stranger he is dwelling in a borrowed body, and none of his owne for such points as those are good to be known and easie to be learned; for that we may make prooff thereof every houre, as having the body with us continually.

Also meet it is, among meats and drinks, to know those rather which be good and wholesome for the stomack, than such as be pleasant to the tooth; and to have experience of that which doth the stomack good, more than of that which is offensive thereto; as also of those things that do not trouble and hinder concoction, than which content and tickle the taste. For to demand of a Physician what is easie of digestion, and what not; what doth loose, and what bindeth the belly; me thinks is no lesse shamefull than to aske him, what is sweet, what bitter, what lowre, tart, or aulter. But now we shall have many folk that know well how to find fault with their cooks and dressers of meat, for seasoning their broths, or making fauce to their viands, being able to discern which is sweeter than it ought to be; which is over-tart or too much salted: and yet they themselves are not able to say, whether that which is put into the body and united therewith be light or no; and whether it be harmlesse, not offensive, or profitable. Hercupon it is, that their portage misleth not often the right seasoning: whereas contrariwise, for want of well seasoning their owne selves, but daily faulting therein they make much worke for Physicians: for they esteeme not that portage best which is the sweetest, but they mingle therewith many sharp joyces and soure herbs, to make it somewhat rare withall: but contrariwise, they send into the body all manner of sweet and pleasant things, even untill it cry, Ho; partly being ignorant, and in part not calling to mind and remembrance, that nature adjoyneth alwaies unto things that be good and wholesome, a pleasure not mingled with displeasure and repentance. Moreover, we are likewise to remember and beare in mind all those things that be fit and agreeable to the body; or contrariwise, in the changes of the seasons in the yeare in the qualities and properties of the airc, and other circumstances, to know how to accommodate and apply our diet accordingly: for as touching all the offences proceeding from niggardie, avaricie, and pinching, which the common sort do incur about the painfull innings and laborious bestowing or laying up of their corn and fruits; who by their long watchings, by their running and trudging to and fro, discover and bewray what is within the body, rotten, faulty, and ulcerous: we are not to feare, that such accidents will befall to learned persons or students, ne yet to States-men and Politicians, unto whom principally I have addrest this discourse; but they ought to beware and eschew another kind of more eager covetousnesse, and illiberall niggardie in matter of study and literature, forcing them to neglect and not regard their owne poore bodies, which oftentimes being so travelled and out-wearied, that they can do them no more service, yet they spare them never the more, nor give them leave to be refreshed and gather up their crums again; but force that which is fragile and mortall, to labour a vie with the soule which is immortal: that (I say) which is earthly, to hold out with the spirit that is heavenly. Well the Ox said unto the Camel his fellow-servant, who would not catch him a little of his burden? Thou wilt not help me now to beare somewhat of my charge; but shortly thou shalt carry all that I carry, and me besides, which fell out so indeed when the Ox died under his burden; shamefully it hapneth to the soule, which will not allow the silly body (wearied and tired) some

little

little time of rest and repose: for soon after comes a fever, head-ach, dizziness of the brain, with a dimmesse of the sight, which will compell her to lay aside all books, to abandon all good letters, disputations and study; and in the end is driven to languish and lie sick in bed together with it for company. And therefore *Plato* wisely admonisheth us not to move and exercise the body without the soule, nor the soule without the body, but to drive them both together equally, as if they were two steeds drawing at one spire of a chariot; and especially at such a time, when as the body is busied with the soule, and laboureth together with her, we ought to have the most care of it, and to allow it that attendance and cherishment which is meet and requisite, to the end that thereby we may require it with good and desirable health: esteeming this to be the greatest benefit and most singular gift that proceedeth thereupon, in that neither the one nor the other (for default of good disposition) is impeached or hindered in the knowledge of vertue and the practise thereof, as well in literature as in the actions of mans life.

## Of the Romans Fortune.

### The Summary.

If ever there were any State politique in the rising, growth, and declination whereof we are to see and acknowledge the admirable providence of God, together with the strength and wisdom of man, certes the Roman Empire ought to be set in the foremost vantage. The causes of the foundation and advancement of this great Monarchy, are otherwise considered by those whom the heavenly truth (revealed in the holy Scriptures) doth illuminate, than by the Pagans and Sages of this world, guided only by the discourse of their reason, corrupted with sin and ignorance of the true God. For when the question is, as touching the government of the universall world, although the sovereign Lord thereof use oftentimes the spiritual and corporall power both of mortall men for to execute his will; yet we may behold above it, and before any explicit visible instruments, this great and incomprehensible wisdom of his; who having decreed in himselfe all things, executeth every moment his deliberations; so that in regard of him there is nothing casual, but all keeps course according to his determinate and resolute will: but in respect of us many things be accidentally for that the counsels of that eternall and immutable wisdom are hidden from us, and appear not but by little and little. If devils and miscreants, who are not able to comprehend this secret, have imagined and set down for governers of mans life, Fortune and vertue; meaning by Fortune, that which the common saying compriseth in these few words: In this world there is nothing else but good luck and bad; but so, as if any man could skill how to manage his own fortune, he might make it of bad good and commodious: and this they meant by the word Vertue, which is an habitude or disposition of the mind and body; by the means whereof he that is induced therewith, might prevent and overthrow quite all the assaults of Fortune. Some there be, who ascribe the word Fortune, for to abate the providence of God; and others have attributed so much unto Vertue, that they have set man out of those limits, in which his own proper nature, and above all the divine truth placed him. Others againe, have ascribed something unto Fortune, and yet they neither understand nor declare what it importeth, but have given out (although very irresolutely) that Fortune cannot give the check to a virtuous man. If we had this Treatise following entire and perfect, all the ancient philosophy and learning, as touching this question, had been manifestly discovered unto us. But the principal part of this discourse is left, in such sort, as *Plutarch* (having brought in Fortune and Vertue disputing upon this point: Whether of them should have the honour of the foundation and maintenance of the Roman Empire?) hath left unto us nothing but the plea of Fortune; who by divers reasons and proofes holdeth forth the wisdom and wisdom of the people of Rome, was not the cause of their grandeur; but Fortune that it is so; (as he expressly sheweth in one place) like guidance and help of God, who hath so raised his estate for many others, and for to hold one good part of the world jointly in one body, under such a chiefe and soveraigne. Concerning the reasons alleged in the favour and maintenance of Fortune, they be marked in order, and drawn out well at large: whereas those of Vertue are omitted, or peradventure referred to the judgement and discretion of the Reader, for to invent, devise, and apply them by himselfe, and of them left to collect and gather one conclusion, tending to this, for to shew the great wonders of Gods providence in sustaining the Roman Empire, and the notable aide of an infinite number of instruments, which the said divine providence employed in planting, raising up, and pulling down so mighty and renowned dominions.

## Of the Romans Fortune.

Vertue and Fortune have fought many great combates, and those oftentimes one against the other: but that which presenteth it selfe unto us at this time is the greatest of all the rest; to wit, the debate and plea which they had together as touching the Empire of Rome, namely: whether of them twaine wrought that worke? and which of them brought forth so mighty a puissance? For this will be no small testimony on her side who shall gaine the victory, or rather

rather a great apology against the imputation charged upon the one and the other. For *Virtue* is accused, in that she is honest, but unprofitable: and *Fortune*, that she is uncertaine, but yet good: and it is commonly said, that as the former is fruitlesse for all her paines; so the other is faithlesse and untruely in all her gifts. For who will not say, if the greatnesse of *Rome* be adjudged and awarded to one of them, that either *Virtue* is most profitable, in case she could do so much for good and honest men: or *Fortune* most firme and constant, if she have preserved and kept so long that which the once hath given? In the Poet in those works of his which he composed with our verse, and in prose, faith, That *Fortune* and *Wildome* (two most different things, and as unlike one to the other) produce nevertheless most like and semblable effects: both the one and the other indifferently make men great and honourable; they advance them in dignity, puissance, estate, and authority. And what need I (to draw out this matter at length) rehearse and reckon up a number of those whom they have preferred, considering that even nature her selfe who hath borne us, and brought forth all things; some take to be *Fortune*, and others *Wildome*. This present discourse therefore, addeth unto the City of *Rome* a great and admirable dignity, in case we dispute of her as our manner is of the earth, the sea, the heaven and the stars, namely, whether it were by *Fortune* or by *Providence*, that she was first founded and had her being? For mine own part I am of this opinion, that howsoever *Fortune* and *Virtue* have alwaies had many quarrels and debates otherwise, yet to the framing and composition of so great an Empire and puissance, it is very like they had made truce and were at accord; that by one joint consent allo they wrought both together, and finished the goodliest peece of worke that ever was in the world. Neither think I that I am deceived in this conjecture of mine; but am perswaded, that like as (according to the saying of *Plato*) the whole world was not made at first, of fire and earth, as the two principal and necessary elements, to the end that it might be visible and palpable, considering that as the earth gave massinesse, poise, and firmitude; so fire conferred thereunto colour, forme, and motion. Besides, the other two natures and elements which are between these two extremes (to wit, aie and water, by softning, melting, tempering, and quenching (as it were) the great dissimilitude and dissimilitude of the said extremes) have drawn together, incorporate, and united by the means of them, the first matter; even so, time and God together, intending such a stately peece of worke as *Rome*, tooke *Virtue* and *Fortune*, and those they tempered and coupled in one, as yoke-fellows: to the end, that of the thing which is proper both to the one and the other, they might found, build, and reare a sacred Temple indeed, an edifice beneficiall and profitable unally, a strong Cattle seated upon a firm ground worke, and an eternall element, which might serve instead of a maine pillar to sustaine the decaying state of the world, ready to reele and unke downward; and finally, as a sure anchor-hold against turbulent tempests, and wandering waves of the surging seas, (as *Democritus* was wont to say.) For like as some of the naturall Philosophers hold, That the world at the first was not the world, and that the bodies would not joyne and mingle themselves together, for to give unto nature a common forme, composed of them all: but when the said bodies, (such as yet were small and scattered here and there) slid away, made means to escape and flee for fear they should be caught and interlaced with others: such also as were more strong, firme, and compact, even then strove mainly one against another, and kept a foule coile and stir together, in such manner, as there arose a violent tempest, a dangerous ghuft, and troublesome agitation, filling all with ruine, error, and shipwrack, untill such time as the earth had to greatnesse by the tumultuary concourse of those bodies that grew together, whereby the her selfe began first to gather a firme consistance: and afterwards yielded in her selfe, and all about her a sure seat and resting place for all other. Semblably, when the greatest Empires and Potentacies among men, were driven and carried to and fro, according to their fortunes, and ran one against another, by reason that there was not one of that grandeur and puissance as might command all the rest, and yet they all desired that sovereignty; there was a wonderfull confusion, a general destruction, a strange huribury, a tumultuary wandering, and an universal mutation and change throughout the world, untill such time as *Rome* grew to some strength and bignesse, partly by laying and uniting to her selfe the neighbour nations and cities neare about her; and in part, by conquering the Seigniories, Realmes, and Dominions of Princes far off, and strangers beyond sea; by which means the greatest and principal things in the world began to rest, and be settled as it were a firme foundation and for ever, by reason that a generall peace was brought into the world, and the maine Empire thereof reduced to one round circle, so firme as it could not be checked or impeached: for that indeed all vertues were seated in those who were the founders and builders of this mighty State; and besides, *Fortune* also was ready with her favour to second and accompany them; as it shall (more plainly) appear and be shewed in this discourse ensuing. And now methinks I see from this project, as it were from some high rock and watchtower; *Virtue* and *Fortune* marching toward the pleading of their cause, and to the judgement and decision of the forsaide question propounded: but *virtue* in her pace and manner of going seemeth to be mild and gentle, in the carriage also of her eye, staid and composed; the earnest care likewise and desire she hath to maintaine and defend her honour in this contention, maketh her colour a little to rise in her face, albeit she be far behind *Fortune*, who cometh apace, and maketh all the haste she can: now there condueth her, and attend upon her round about in manner of a guard, a goodly traine and troupe

Of

Of worthies brave, who martial captains were,

In bloody wars, and bloody armours leave.

All wounded in the fore part of their bodies, dropping with blood and sweat mingled together, leaning up the truncheons of the lances and pikes halfe broken, which they had won from their enemies, but would you have us to demand and ask who they might be? They say, that they be the *Fabrics*, the *Camills*, the *Lucii* surnamed *Cincinatti*, the *Fabii Maximi*, the *Claudii Marcelli*, and the two *Scipios*: I see also *C. Marius* all angry, and chafing at *Fortune*, *Musius Scaevola* likewise amongst them, who sheweth the stump of his burnt hand, crying aloud withal: And will you ascribe this hand also to *Fortune*? And *Marcus Horatius Cocles* that valiant Knight, who fought so bravely upon the bridge, covered all over with the shot of Tuscan Darts, and shewing his lame thigh, seemeth to brag from out of the deep whirle-pit of the River into which he leapt) these words: And wait by chance and *Fortune* that my leg became broken, and I lame upon it? Lo, what a company come with *Virtue* to the trial of this controvercie and matter in question!

All warriors stout in compleat armour dight:

Expert in feats of arms, and prest to fight.

But on the other side, the gate and going of *Fortune* seems quick and fast, her spirit great, and courage proud, her hopes high and haughty: the over-goth *Virtue*, and approacheth neer at hand already; not mounting and lifting up her selfe now with her light and flight wings, nor standing a peece upon a round ball or boue, commeth the wavering and doubtful; and then goeth her way altogether in discontentment and displeasure: but like as the Spartians describe *Penus*, laying, That after she had passed the river *Eurotas*, she laid by her mirrors and looking glasse, cast aside her daintie jewels, and other wanton ornaments, and threw away that tuffe and lovely girdle of hers; and taking up a buckler and shield in hand, sheweth her selfe thus prepared and set out, unto *Lycurgus*: even so *Fortune* having abandoned the Perians and Afrians, flew quickly over *Macedonia*, and soon shook off *Alexander* the Great: then travelled she a while through *Egypt* and *Syria*, carrying after her Kingdoms as she went: and so having ruined and overthrowne the Carthaginians state, which with much variety and change she had oftentimes upheld: she approached in the end to mount *Pallene*, and when she had passed over the river *Tiber*, even there (as it should seem) she cast off her wings; then she put off her flying patins, her boue to incessant turning and rolling to and fro in the forlooke, and so entered *Rome* as to make her stay and abide there: and in this guise and manner sheweth the her selfe now, and maketh her appearance for to hear justice, and have this quarrel decided: not as a baie, unknown, and obscure person (as *Pindarus* saith) nor guiding and wrestling with her hand two helms: but rather as the sister of *Eunomia*, that is to say *Justice*: and of *Pisitho*, that is to say *Persuasion*: and the daughter of *Promethia*, that is to say *Providence*, according as *Alcan* the Poet deriveth her Genealogy and Pedigree. Moreover she holdeth between her hands that plentiful Horn of all abundance, so much celebrated and renowned, and the same filled, not with store of fruits always fresh and verdant which Autumn yeeldeth, but bima full of all those precious and exquisite commodities

Which any land or sea doth breed,

or out of rivers spring:

Which in deep mines by delfe are found,

or havens by vessels bring.

And those powreth the forth abundantly, and giveth abroad in great largesse. There are about her also to be seen in her train, a number of most noble and right excellent personages, to wit, *Numa*, *Pamphilus* descended from the Sabines: *Tarquinius Priscus* from the City *Tarquini*: whom being aliens and meer strangers she entailed Kings, and enthronized in the Royal seat of *Romulus*. Allo *Paulus Emilius*, who brought back his army safe and found from the defeature of *Perseus* and the *Macedonians*, where he achieved so fortunate a victory, that there was not een one Roman with a weeping eye, for the losse of any friend in that war: and when he returned in triumph magnified *Fortune*. Even so did that good old Knight *Caelius Metellus*, surnamed *Macedonicus*, as well in regard of his brave victories, as of this rare felicity of his, that he was carried unto his Sepulchre by four of his own sons, who had been all Consuls: namely, *Quintus Balcarinus*, *Lucius Dialemanus*, *Marcus Metellus*, and *Cains C. prarius*: there attended allo upon his corps, two sons in law of his, that married his daughters, both consular men, and as many Nephews, his daughters children: men of mark and name all, both for great prowess in feats of arms, and also for their high place which they held in government of State and Common-weale. *Amulius Scaurus* likewise (who being of a low degree and condition of life, yet came from a stock more base then it, a new upstart and of the first head) was raised and advanced by her, and by the means of her favour, made a great Lord and Prince of that high Court and honourable council, called the Senate. *Comelius Sylla* likewise, whom she took out of the lap and bosome of *Nico polis* a Courtisan, for to exalt him above all the *Cambrick Trophies* and Laureat Triumphs: yea, and the seven Consulships of *Marius*, to raise him to that high pitch and sovereign degree of an absolute Monarch in the world, and a Dictator: he (I say) openly and directly gave him selfe (as it were) by way of adoption unto *Fortune*, and attributed his whole estate and all his actions to her favour, crying with a loud voice with *Oedipus* in *Sophocles*

To Fortunes court I ow all suite,

And her good son my selfe I repute.

X x

Ii









which was to good and favourable unto him, that it carried him over, and let him gently upon the bank on the other side of the river, without any danger at all; where he was no sooner landed, but he went directly toward that place which he saw was without a light, conjecturing by the darkness and silence withal, that he should not light upon any of the watch or ward there: thus he began to climb up the steep rock, whereas he could find any way to let sure footing upon the stones that stuck out, or wheresoever he found a place to yield better access and ascent then another: to fetch a compass, and catching hold with his hand upon the rough crags, and bearing himself as well as possibly he could, he made such shift, that in the end he crawled up to the top thereof; and there those Romans that kept watch and ward, and were foremost of the *Corps-de-garde*, having espied him, helped to pull him up: then declared he unto those within the place, what had befallen down and agreed upon by them who were without, from whom he had no sooner received their assent and approbation of the foresaid ordinance concluded, but the very same night he made his return the way that he came, unto *Camillus*: the next morning one of the barbarous enemies, as he walked about that place, thinking of no such thing, perceiving by very chance, partly the print of a mans footsteps, together with the marks of unsteady footing, and partly the graffe and weeds crushed and broken, which grew here and there in such places, where they had some little earth to maintain them: as also the tracks and traces where he had leaned and wrestled with his body, either in clambering up, or striving overthwart; went forth ways and related unto his fellow soldiers what he had seen: who taking it thus, that the enemies themselves shewed them the way, and led it out before them, assayed presently to do the like, and to gain the top of the rock. In the night time therefore having observed where the place was most solitary, and void of watchmen, they mounted up, without being decried and discovered, not only by the men who were in guard and sentinell, but not so much as by the dogs, which were set afire before, for to assist the watch, so sleepy they were all, both the one and the other. Howbeit, the good Fortune of *Rome* wanted no voice to betray so imminent a danger, and to give warning thereof; for there were within the Capitol certain Geese consecrated unto the goddess *Juno*, kept at the Cities charges, in the honour of her, close under her Temple: now is this creature of all others by nature very timorous, and at every little noise that is made, ready to be affrighted; and at that time especially, by reason that there was within the place great scarcity of victuals, they were neglected, and for that they were kept somewhat hungry, slept not so soundly as they were wont to do; by reason whereof, at the first being aware of the enemies coming, even to soon as they had gotten over the battlements of the walls, they came full butt upon them, and being affrighted besides to see their bright armour, set up such a gagling noise after their manner, that all the court of the Castle rung with their violent and dissonant noise: whereat the Romans were awakened, and suspecting deeply what the matter was, ran incontinently to the wall, gave the enemies the repulse, and turned them down with their heads forward: in memorial of which accidents and occurrences, Fortune goeth as it were in triumph even at this day. For at *Rome* they are wont upon a certain set day of the year in a solemn procession, to have a Dog carried in a shew crucified; and a Goose borne in a gorgeous litter upon a rich cushion, most sumptuously dight and set out: which spectacle representeth and sheweth unto us the pusillance of Fortune, and the great means that she hath to effect all those things with ease and facility, which in mans reason seem impossible; considering that she giveth a kind of witty perceivance and understanding, to brute beasts, otherwise foolish and void of reason; yea, and insinuateth bold courage and strength to those which by nature are fearful, weak, and cowardly. For what man is there, unless he be altogether deprived of natural sense and affection, who would not be attended and ravished again with a wonderful admiration, to consider and discourse after a sort with himself, comparing the heavy cheer and mournful condition of this City in those days, with the felicity and flattery port thereof at this present; to look up (I say) to the Capitol, and behold the riches there, the sumptuousness and magnificence of the monuments and oblations there to be seen: the excellent pieces of work wrought by most cunning artificers, striving who might do best: the presents of Cities, contending who should be most bounteous and liberal: the Crowns sent by Kings and Princes, and what precious things (o'er the earth, the sea, the islands, the firm lands of the continent, the rivers, trees, beasts, champion fields, mountains and metal mines, do afford; and in one word, the first fruits and choice parcels of all things in the world, which seem all to strive one with another, to embellish, grace, adorn, enrich and beautify this only place? and withal, to look back unto those times past, and consider how it went within a very little, that all this should never have been, or at least wile not extant at this day; seeing that all being within the power of mercilesse, fearful darkness of the milk night, cruel and barbarous swords, and most bloody minds and inhumane hearts of these Gauls; the poor contemptible beasts, foolish, reasonlesse and timorous, made the overture to save all, and were the principal instruments of preservation; also, how those brave gallants; valorous Knights, and great Captains and Commanders, the *Manlius*, the *Servius*, the *Posthumii* and *Papirii*, the ancestors and progenitors of so many noble houses afterwards, were very near and at the point to have been undone for ever, and come to nothing; had not their silly Geese awakened and started up to fight for their country, and to defend the god, Patron and Protector of the City. And if it be true, that *Polibius* writeth in the second book of his History, as touching those Gauls, who at that time surprised the City, and were Lords of *Rome*: That when news came suddenly unto them, how certain of their barbarous neighbours near at hand, were entered

in arms within their own country, and won all before them as they went: they had returned in haste back, and made peace with *Camillus*, certes, without all doubt, Fortune even then had been the cause also of the Cities safety in distracting the enemies, or rather in withdrawing them another way, contrary to all hope and expectation of man: But what need we to stand thus upon these old Histories, wherein there is no certainty to build upon delivered: considering that the state of *Rome* was then ruinate, and all their Annals, Records, Registers, and Memorials, either perished or confounded, according as *Livy* himself hath left in writing; seeing that the affairs of the Romans which happened afterward, and carry more light and perspicuity with them, declare and testify sufficiently the love and indulgence of Fortune? For mine own part, I count this for one singular favour of hers, to wit, the death of *Alexander* the Great, a Prince of incomparable courage, and spirit invincible, who being lifted up by many great prosperities, glorious conquests, and happy victories, launched himself in manner of a Star Volant in the Air, leaping out of the East into the West, and beginning now to shoot the flaming beams and flashing rays of his armour as far as into *Italy*: having for a presence and colourable cause of this enterprise and expedition of his, the death of his kinsman *Alexander* the Molonian, who together with his army, was by the Brutians and Lucanians (near unto the City *Pandasia*) put to the sword and cut in pieces: although (in truth) that which carried him thus against all nations, was nothing else but a desire of glory and sovereignty, having propoled this unto himself upon a spirit of zeal and emulation, to surpass the acts of *Bacchus* and *Hercules*, and to go with his army beyond the force and valour of the Romans, to be as it were a gad of itself, to lead say, that he should find the force and valour of the Romans, to be as it were a gad of itself, to give edge unto the sword of *Italy*; and he knew well enough (by the general voice and report abroad in the world, which was brought unto him) that famous warriors they were, and of greatest renown, as being exercised and hardened like stout champions in wars and combats innumerable,

And verily, as I do ween,

A bloody fight there would have been,

if the undaunted and unconquered hearts of the Romans, had encountered in the field with the invincible armies of the Macedonians: for surely the Citizens of *Rome* were no fewer at that time in number, by just computation, then a hundred and thirty thousand fighting men, able all to bear arms, and hardy withal:

Who expert were on horseback for to fight,

And when they saw their time, on foot to fight.

The rest of this Discourse is lost, wherein we miss the reasons and arguments that *Virtue* alledgeth for her self in her plea.



# THE MORALLS,

OR

Miscellaneous Works of *PLUTARCH*.

The Second Tome.

The Symposiakes, or Table-Questions.

The First Book.

The Summary.

1. **V**Whether we may discourse of Learning or Philosophy at the table?
2. Whether the master of the feast ought himselfe to place his guests, or suffer them to sit and take their places at their own discretion?
3. What is the cause that the place at the board, called Consular, is held to be most honourable?
4. What manner of person the Symposiarch or master of the feast ought to be?
5. What is meant by this usual speech: Love teacheth us Poetry or Music?
6. Whether *Alexander* the Great were a great drinker?
7. How it is, that old folk commonly love to drink meer wine undelayed?
8. What is the cause, that elder persons read better afar off then hard by?
9. What might the reason be, that claustrs are washed better in fresh and potable water then in sea water?
10. Why at Athens, the dance of the tribe or lineage *Acantis*, is never adjudged to the last place.

The











to all the rest, that for this present they drinke at their own discretion, and as it pleaseth themselves: as for *Crato* and *Theon*, who were the first that let this matter on foot, I will by vertue of my office and place enioyne them humbly and in few words, to declare here before us what manner of person ought to be chosen for the president, and Master of such a feast, and what he must aime at when he is elected; as also how he is to carry himselfe towards those who have made choice of him; and this charge I lay upon them two, permitting them to divide it between them, and to handle it according to their good discretion. At the first, they made some semblance of refusal, praying me to hold them excused; howbeit when they saw the whole company crying upon them for to obey the President: *Crato* began first, and said, That as the Captaine of the guard or watch ought himselfe especially to be a most diligent and vigilant warder, according to the saying of *Plato*; even so should he who hath the command of guests met together for to make merry, be himselfe of all other a right good fellow, and a cheerful companion; and such an one he shall begin with he be neither one that will quickly be cup-shotten, and over-seen with wine; nor yet outward and unwilling to drinke liberally; much like as *Cyrus* wrote sometime unto the Lacedaemonians: That as in all other points he was more worthy to be a King than his brother; so in this respect especially, that he would take his wine in greater measure, and beare the same better than he: for he that will be soon drunke groweth insolent, unseemly, and outrageous in his drunkenness: and he again, who is too too sober, and abstinent altogether, becometh unpleasant and unfociable, meete indeed to be a schoole-master, and to have the bringing up of boies, than a President of a feast to order guests, *Pericles*, so oft as he was chosen Captaine Generall of the Athenians, no sooner put on his mantle of estate, and was ready to set forward, but before any thing else, used thus to say unto himselfe, as it were to refresh his memory by way of admonition: Look about thee now *Pericles*, thou hast the command of free men: thou commandest now the Greeks; nay, thou art commander of the Athenians; even so should our Master of a feast reason thus within himselfe: Thou hast the rule now of friends: to the end that he neither permit them to do any unseemly or dishonest thing; nor bereave them of their delights and pleasures; for as he ought to be friendly affected unto them in their serious occasions, so he must be no enemy to their sports and pastimes, but framed indifferently, and as it were well tempered for the one and the other: and yet by his natural disposition he should, like good wine, be somewhat more inclined unto a kind of hardnesse or austerity: for by this means the wine which he drinketh will reduce his manners and behaviour to a meane or mediocrity, by moistning, as it were, and softning it, that it may be more gentle and pliable: nor as *Xenophon* said, That the sad cheere, heavy and rustical severitie otherwise of *Clearchus*, seemed to be more lightome and pleasant in battell and conflict, by reason of his resolute confidence; even so, he who is by nature not bitter nor crabbed, but only grave and severe, by drinking, becometh more remisse, and not so straight-laced; and by that means more lovely and amiable also. And thus much of his own person.

Moreover, he ought above all things to know by experience every one of the guests: what alteration there is wrought in them by drinking? Into what accidents or passions they be ready to fall and how they can beare strong wine? For we are not to thinke, but if there be a proper temperature and severall mixture with water fit for every sort of wine; which Kings tastiers and cup-bearers know well enough, and in that regard can discern and distinguish, when they are to use more lesse water to the delaying of wines: there is more reason that there should be a temperature likewise of man and wine, which our Master or President of a feast ought to know, and when he knoweth it, to observe; that like an expert Musician, by stretching as it were and setting up one a note higher, in making him to drinke largely, and letting down another by causing him as much to spare, he may bring and reduce different natures unto an uniforme equality and consonance, not measuring the same by weight and measure, pints or quarts, nor by so many cups or glasses, but going by a certaine rule of time and age, as also by the strength of the body, giving to each one that which is meet and convenient. Now if peradventure thus seeme an hard peece of worke, namely, to know all these particularities, yet meet it is at leastwise that he should be skillfull in generality, as touching severall complexions and ages: as for example, that old folke are sooner and more easily made drunke than young persons; those that be stirring and in continuall motion, rather than such as be in repose and rest; sad, heavy, pensive, and melancholick men, more than those who are jocund and merry; lastly, those who are chaste, or use women modestly, much more than such as be dissolute or excessively given that way. He that is thus far forth acquainted with these circumstances, may be a meetier and fitter person a great deale to maintain decency, order, and agreement at a feast, than he who is ignorant therein. Furthermore, what is he who knoweth not very well, that the master of a feast ought to be well affected, and to carry a loving mind unto all those who are invited to a feast: to carry neither open malice, nor secret grudge to any one of them: for otherwise, if he commandeth ought, it will not be well taken: if he distribute and deale amongst them, he shall not be thought equall and indifferent: last of all, if he be disposed to mirth and jollity, he shall hardly escape a rebuke and blame. Lo, *Theon*, what manner of President and Master (quoth *Crato*) I have framed unto you by words, as if he were wrought out of waxe, and him I deliver into your hands. Then answered *Theon*: And I receive him from you so much the rather, as one shaped and fashioned indeed for a right governour of a feast, and a good companion besides: but whether I shall use him or no, or whether in so doing I shall shame my selfe, I wot not: howbeit, this I am assured of,

of, that if he be such an one as you have described, he will know how to order and governe a feast, and not suffer that one while it seeme a solemne assembly of a City, another while a schoole of Rhetorick, now a knot of dice-players or cheaters met together, and anon a scaffold forsooth for dancers and fingers, or a stage for players and comedians: this I say, for that you fee ordinarily some making orations, and pleading at the table, as it were in the Court, or at the bar before judges; others exercising themselves how to speake in publike, or else rehearsing and reading certaine of their own compositions; and others againe taking upon them like judges of dancers and stage-players, who do beitt for to win the prize: and yet this is not the worst: for *Alcibiades* and *Theodorus* made of *Politics* least, a very place of divine mysteries, representing there the solemne carrying of torches and other ceremonies, at the shewing of some sacred reliques: which I would not have a good Master and President of a feast to be so careless as to abide; but to allow place and time for such talke, such spectacles, fights, plaies, and pastimes only, which tend to that end for which feasts be made: that is to say, to breed and augment amity between them that are present, by the means of the delight they take in eating together: for that in truth a feast is nothing else but a pleasant recreation at the table, aiming at this marke, to contract friendship by the entercourse of mutual drinking one to the other.

But forasmuch as in all things variety is very pleasing, and nature joyneth in nothing more than diversity and change; but contrariwise, a simple uniformity alwaies, one and the same, is hurtfull, and bringeth tediousnesse with it incontinently: whereas the mixture of divers things applied in time and place with measure, taketh that away which is offensive to pleasure, and hurtfull to profit: therefore the Master of a feast must devise for his guests, and exhibit unto them some mixed sport to pass away the time whiles they be drinking. I have heard many men say, that to walk by the sea side, as also to saile along the shore is most pleasant; and even so a man must joyne alwaies sport with serious affaires, and profit with pleasure, to the end that those who play may in some sort be in good earnest; and likewise, when they be busie in serious matters, find some recreation; like as those who are sea-sick, and ready ever and anon to cast up their stomack, recover their spirits and are revived, when they see how they be neare the land: even so a man may profit in mirth and laughter; he may likewise laugh and be merry in profit, and make his serious affaires pleasant enough; for as the old proverbe goeth:

*With caltrop and bistles, and among the prickly rest-harrow,  
The violets and soft wall-flowers are alwaies won to grow.*

But as for all other sports and plaies, which without any profit at all leap impudently into feasts, he shall command his guests expressly to forbear, lest ere they be aware they become outrageous and furious, like as those who have taken the joyce of hennie: they also abuse their power, and go too far in their commandements, (for so they be called at the wine) who enioyne flutters, flammerers, and maffers to sing, or bald-pates to keme their heads: for lame creeples to go upright on their feet without halting. Thus upon a time at a certain merry meeting and feast, where *Agamemnon* the Academick Philosopher was, who had a withered leg, and nothing left thereof but skin and bone, all the company (by way of mockery) insulted upon him, and made a Law among themselves, that they should stand all upon their right leg, and every one drinke his boule of wine, or else pay a certaine peece of money, as a forfeiture: now when it came to *Agamemnon* turne by right to command, he charged them all to drinke in that sort and manner as they saw him to drinke: then called he for an empty earthen pitcher with a narrow mouth to be brought into the place; into which when he had thrust his poore contumel leg afore said, he dranke up his cup of wine; and when all the rest had assailed, and found they could not do as he did, were all forced to pay the forfeit. Herein was *Agamemnon* to be commended: for after his manner the Master of a feast ought to be revenged in a kind of mirth and gentle sort: also to accustom himselfe to such commandements, as tend to pleasure and profit both, charging each one to do those things which be proper, possible, and easie for him, and yet may commend the doer: as for example, to impose upon them who have good voices, and be professed Musicians, to sing: Orators and Rhetoricians, to declaim: Philosophers, to solve dark questions, and cleare ambiguities; and Poets, to pronounce some of their verses; for every one of theise joyne and taketh pleasure to be put to that

*Wherein he knows he can do well,  
And other men far doth excell.*

There was sometime a King of the Assyrians, who by voice of heralds, and sound of trumpet, proclaimed a great prize and reward to him that could devise a new kind of pleasure: but the King and Governour of a feast should do very well to propose an honourable reward unto him that could invent an honest game or pastime, wherein were no infoleny, some delight or disport profitable, and procure laughter not accompanied with wanton reproofe and scornfull reproach, but such as carrieth a grace and pleasure with it: for this is it wherein most part of feasts flourish shipwrack, namely, when they are misgoverned, or not ordered as they ought to be. But the part it is of a wife and prudent man, to know how to avoid enmity and anger in the market-place, gotten by avarice; in the publick halls of bodily exercises, by contention and emulation; in bearing offices, and suing for them, by ambition and vain-glory; and last of all, in feasts and banquets, by such plaies and pastimes.

## THE FIFTH QUESTION.

What is meant by this common proverb: *Love teacheth musick and poetry.*

THE question was moved one day in *Sossius Senerius* house, after certaine verses of *Sappho* were chanted, how this saying of *Enripides* should be understood:

*Love teacheth musick, mark when you will,*

*Though one before thereof had no skill.*

Considering that the Poet *Philostratus* reporteth, how *Cyclops Polyphemus* the giant cured his love by the sweet tongue of Muses? Whereupon it was alledged, that Love is of great power to move a man for to be bold, hardy, and adventurous, yea, and ministereth a readinesse to attempt all novelties, according as *Plato* named it, the enterprizer of all things: for it maketh him talkative and full of words, who before was silent: it causeth the bashfull and modest person to court it, and put himselfe forward in all manner of service; it is the meanes that an idle careless lubber, and a negligent, becometh diligent and industrious; and that which a man would most marvel at, a mitching hard-head and mechanical penni-father, if he fall once to love, doth relent and waxe soft as iron in the fire, and so proveth more liberall, courteous, and kind, than ever before: so that this pleasant and merry proverb, seemeth not to be altogether ridiculous and impertinent, namely, that Loves purple is tied and knit up with a leake or porrer blade. Moreover, it was there spoken, That Love resembled drunkennesse, for that the one as well as the other doth set folke in a heat; it maketh them cheerefull, merry, and joyous; and when as men be once come to that, they fall soon to sleep, to rime, and make verses. And it is said, that the Poet *Æschylus* composed his Tragedies, when he had well drunken, and was heat with wine. I had a Grandfather also my selfe, named *Lumpius*, who seemed alwaies more learned, witty, and fuller of inventions, yea, and to surpass himselfe in that kind, when he had taken his cups liberally; and he was wont to say, That at such a time he was like unto incense, which being set on fire, rendreth the sweet odour that it hath. Moreover, they that take exceeding great pleasure to see their loves, are no lesse affected with joy when they do praise them, than in looking upon them: for love, as it is in every thing a great prater, and full of words: so especially and most of all, in praises: inasmuch, as lovers would willingly persuade others to that, wherein they are themselves perswaded first; namely, that they love nothing but that which is perfect in goodnesse and beauty; and others they would have to be witnesses with them of it. This was it that induced the Lydian King *Candaules*, to draw and traine Gygis into his bed-chamber, for to see the beauty of his wife naked: for why? such are willing to have the testimony of others. Loe, what thereon is, that if they write the praises of that which they love, they embellish and adorne the same with verses, songs, and meeter, like as images with gold: to the end that the said praises might be heard more willingly, and remembered better by more people: for they bestow a fighting-cock, an horse, or any other thing whatsoever, upon those whom they love, their mind is principally, that this their present should be faire and beautiful in it selfe; afterwards, that it be most gallantly and in best manner set out; but above all, in case they be disposed to flatter them in words or writings, their chiefe care is, that the same run roundly and pleasantly, that they be also glorious and beautified with fine figures, such as is ordinarily the stile of Poets. Then *Sossius* approving well of these reasons, said moreover, That it were well if some would take in hand to draw and gather arguments out of that which *Theophrastus* left in writing as touching Musick: For long it is not (quoth he) since I read over that book; wherein he delivereth thus much after a divine manner: That three principall causes or roots there be of Musick, to wit, paine, or griefe, pleasure, or joy, and the ravishment of the spirit; of which three every one doth bend and turne the voice a little out of the ordinary tune: for griefes and sorrows usually bring with them moanes and plaints, which quickly run into song; which is the reason that we see Orators in the perorations or conclusions of their speeches, the actors also in tragedies, when they come to make their dolefull lamentations, bring their voices down gently to a kind of melody, and by little and little turne them (as it were) thereto. Also the great and vehement joyes of the mind do lift up all the body of them especially who are any thing lightsome by nature, yea, and provoke the same to leaps, skips, and clap their hands, observing a kind of motion according to number and measure, if they cannot dance:

*And otherwise in furious sort,*

*Like franticke folke they do disport;*

*They shake, they wag, they set out throat,*

*And send out many a foolish note.*

According as *Pindarus* saith, But in case they be somewhat more grave and staied than others, when they find themselves moved with such a passion of joy, they let their voice only go at liberty, speaking aloud and singing sonnets. But above all, the ravishment of the spirit, or that divine inspiration, which is called *Enthusiasmus*, causeth body, mind, voice, and all, far beyond the ordinary habit, which is the cause, that the furious and raging Priests of *Bacchus*, called *Baccae*, use rime and meeter, those also, who by a propheticall spirit give answers by Oracle, deliver the same in verses; and few persons shall a man see sturke mad, but among their raving speeches, they sing and say some verses. This being

being so, if you would now display love, and view it well, being unfolded and laid open abroad, hardly shall you meet with another passion, which hath either sharper colours, or joyes more violent or greater extasies and ravishments of the spirit, lying (as it were) in a trance, for that a man may discover in amorous persons, a foule much like unto that City which *Sophocles* describeth:

*Full of songs and incense sweet,*

*Of sighs and groanes in every street.*

No marvel is it therefore, nor a strange thing, if Love (containing and comprehending in it selfe all those primitive causes of musick, to wit, colour, joy, and ravishment of spirit,) be likewise in all other things diligent, indoltrious, talkative, and namely, inclined to making of verses and chanting songs as much or rather more than any other passion which can enter into the heart of man.

## THE SIXTH QUESTION.

Whether King Alexander of Macedony were a great drinker.

THERE was some speech upon a time, as touching King *Alexander* the Great, to this effect: That he dranke not to much, as far long at his meat, and passed the time away in deviling and talking with his friends: but *Philinus* shewed by certaine Crowles, papers, and day-books of the said Kings house, that they who held that opinion knew not well what they said, for that this particular instance was ordinarily found in thole records, That such a day the King slept all day long upon his littell drinking of wine; yea, and otherwhiles it appeareth, that he slept the morrow after likewise: which is the reason that he was not so forward in venereous matters, nor given much to women, though otherwile he was halty, quick and courageous; great arguments of an inward heat of body: and it is to be seen upon record, That his flesh yielded from it, and breathed a passing sweet smell; inasmuch as his shirts and other cloaths were full of an aromatically sent and savour, as if they had been perfumed; which seemeth also to be an argument and signe of heat. For we see, that thole be the hottest and driest countries which bring forth *Cynamon* and *Frankincense*, according as *Theophrastus* saith, That a sweet odour proceedeth of perfect concoction and digestion of humours; namely, when by natural heat all superfluous moisture is quite chased and expelled. And by all likelihood this was the principall cause, that *Callisthenes* grew into disgrace, and lost the Kings favour; for that he was unwilling to sup with him, in regard that he would impose upon him to drinke too much. For it is reported, that upon a time the great bounle or goblet, furnished, *Alexander* double, having passed round about the table throughout, untill it came to *Callisthenes*, he refused it, and put it back: saying withall, I will not drinke in *Alexander* for to have need of *Æsculapius*. And thus much was said then concerning King *Alexander* much wine-bibbing.

Moreover, King *Mithridates*, he who warred against the Romans, among other games or prize which he exhibited, ordained one for those who could drinke best and eat most; and by mens saying himselfe performed them both so well, that he won the prize in the one and the other: for he could eat and drinke more than any man living in his time: by occasion whereof he was commonly furnished *Dionysus*, that is to say, *Bacchus*. But as touching the reason of this surname, we say it is an opinion rashly received: for when he was a very infant lying in the cradle, the lightning caught the swaddling cloaths, and set them on fire, but never touched or hurt his body, save only that there remained a little mark of the fire upon his forehead, which notwithstanding the haire did cover that it was not greatly seen so long as he was a child: againe, when he was a man grown, it chanced that the lightning pierced into the bed-chamber where he lay asleep; and for his own person it was not much as it need there-with; but it blasted a quiver of arrows that hung at his bed-side, went through it, and burnt the arrows within; which (as the soothsayers and wile men out of their learning did interpret) signified, that one day he should be puissant in archers and light armed men. But most men affirme, that he got his surname of *Bacchus*, or *Dionysus*, in regard of the resemblance and likeness of such accidents of lightning and blasting as many times befall.

After these words passed they entred into a speech as touching great drinkers; among whom was reckoned also one *Heracles*, famous wrestler, or champion, whom the men of *Alexandria* in our fathers times pleasantly called little *Hercules*. This good fellow when he could not meet with a companion able to set foot to his, and drinke with him continually; used to invite some to breake their fast with him in a morning; others to beare him company at dinter: some he would bid to supper; and intreat others last of all to sit with him at his collation or banquet after supper: now when the first were gone, came in the second immediately: then you should have the third succeed in his place; and no sooner were they departed, but in steps the fourth crue, without any interruption; and he himselfe set it out still, and making no intermission, was able to hold out with all, and beare those foure repasts and refections one after another. Among those who were familiarly acquainted with *Dionysus*, the Emperour *Tiberius*, a Physician there was, who in drinking would challenge and defie all the world: but observed it was by some that spied and looked near unto him, That to prevent drunkennesse, he used to take alwaies five or six bitter Almonds before every cup that he dranke; and when he was once debauched of them, and not suffered to do so, he was not able to beare his drinke, nor resist the least headinesse and strength thereof. And verily some there were who

who say, that these Almonds have an astringent property to bite, to cleanse and scour the flesh, in such sort, as that they will take away the spots and freckles of the visage; by reason of which quality, when they be taken afore drinke, with their bitterness they fret the pores of the skin, and leave the impression of a certaine biting behind them, by means whereof, there enethen a certaine revolution downward from the head of those vapours which flie upthither, and so evaporate away through the said pores. But for mine own part, I am of this opinion rather, that their bitterness hath a vertue to dry up and spend humours: which is the reason that all vapours the bitter is most unpleasant and disagreeable to the taste: for that indeed as *Plato* saith, consuming moisture (as it doth) by means of the drinnesse which it hath, it doth unnaturally bind & draw in the little veins of the tongue, which of themselves be soft, and spongy: for the same manner men use to reffraine such wounds or ulcers which be moist with medicines, or salves composed of bitter drugs, according as the Poet *Homer* testifieth in these verses:

*A bitter root he bruis'd with hands,  
And laid upon the sore,  
To take the anguish cleane away,  
That it might ake no more:  
And loe, applied when it was,  
All paines were soon allaid,  
The running ulcer dried anon,  
And flux of blood was staid.*

He said well and truly of that which is in taste bitter: That it hath a vertue and property to dry. And it should seem also, that the powders which women strew upon their bodies for to repress disphoreticall and extraordinary sweets, be by nature bitter and astringent: so forcible is their bitterness to bind and reffraine; which being so, great reason there is, (I say) that bitter Almonds should have power to withstand the strength of mere wine, considering they dry the body within, and will not permit the veins to be full, upon the tention and commotion whereof (they say) drunkenness doth proceed: and for evident proofe of this, there may be a good argument gathered from that which befalleth foxes: who having eaten bitter Almonds, if they drinke not presently upon them, die therewith, by reason that all their humours suddenly are spent and consumed.

#### THE SEVENTH QUESTION.

*What is the cause that old folke take greater delight in pure and strong wine than others.*

**T**HERE arose a question about old persons, what the reasons might be, that they loved better to drinke wine with water, or at the leastwise delayed but a little? Some alledged the habit of their bodies, being cold, and hard to be set into an heat; in regard whereof, the strength of wine was meet and agreeable to their temperature: a reason very common and ready at hand: but surely, neither sufficient for to be the cause of such an effect, nor yet simply true; for the same hapneth to their other senses, as being hard to be moved and affected; yea, and nothing easie to be stirred, for to apprehend the qualities thereto belonging, unless the same be passing strong and vehement; whereof the true cause indeed is this: that their temperature being weaker, dull, and feeble, loveth to be put in mind by knocking upon; and this is the cause, that for their taste they delight in such flavours as be biting; their smelling likewise standeth even so to odours that be strong, for affected it is with more pleasure in such as be not tempered nor delayed: as for the sense of touching, they feele no great paine of ulcers and sores; and if it happen that they be wounded, their hurt and harmeis not so great: the same befalleth to their hearing, for their eares be in manner deafe; and hereupon it is that Musicians as they grow in yeares and waxe aged, straine and raise their voice in singing so much the higher and louder, as if they stirred up the organs of hearing by the vehement force of the sound; for look what is Steele to the edge and temper of iron for cutting; the same is spirit to the body, for sense and feeling: and when it begins to slack, faile, and decay, the sense likewise and the instruments thereof become dull, heavy, and earthly, having need of some such quick thing to prick it in good earnest as strong wine is.

#### THE EIGHTH QUESTION.

*How it comes to passe, that old folke read better at far off than neare at hand.*

**A**GAING those reasons which we devised and alledged upon the subject matter and point in hand, it seemed that there might be opposed to the eye-sight; for that elder persons, for to read any thing the better, remove the letters farther from their eyes; and in truth cannot well read neare at hand: which the Poet *Æschylus* seemeth covertly to imply, and shew unto us in these verses:

*Know him thou canst not, if neare he stand to thee,  
A good old scribe thou maist much sooner be.*

And

And *Sophocles* more plainly testifieth as much, when he writeth of old folke in this wise:

*The voice to them arrives not readily,  
And hardly thorow their eares the way can find,  
Their eyes do see far off confusedly,  
But neare at hand, they all be very blind.*

When it be so, that the senses of aged persons, and the instruments serving thereto, are not willingly obedient to their proper objects, unless the same be strong and vehement; what should the cause be, that in reading they cannot endure the reverberation of the light from letters, if they be neare? but seeing the book farther off from their eyes, they do by that means enfeeble (as it were) that light, for that it is spread and dissipate in the aire, like as the strength of wine when it is tempered with water? To this problem some answered thus: That they remove books and letters far from their eye-sight; not because they would make the said light more mild or lesse radiant; but contrariwise, for that they are desirous to catch and gather more splendour, and to fill the meane intervall (which is between the eye and the letter) with lightome and shining aire. Others accorded with those who hold that the eyes do send out of them certaine rayes; for by reason that as well from the one eye as the other a pyramidd beame doth issue, the point whereof is the sight of the eye, and the basis doth comprehend the object that is seen; probable it is, that both these pyramids go forward apart one from the other a good space and distance, but after they be a great way off, and come to encounter one another, and be confounded together, they make but one entire light: and this is the reason that albeit the eyes are twaine, yet every thing that we see appeareth one, and not two; for that (in truth) the meeting and shining together of those two pyramids in common, do make of two lights but one. This being presupposed and set down, old men approaching neare to letters, comprehend the same more keenly, in regard that the pyramidd beames of their eyes are not yet joyined and met together, but each of them reach to the objects apart; but if they be farther off, so that the said pyramids may be inremingled, they see more perfectly; much like to them, who with both hands can clasp and hold that, which they are not able to do with one alone.

Then my brother *Lamprias* opposed himselfe against all this; and as one who had not read the book of *Hieronymus*, but even upon the pregnancy and quicknesse of his wit seemed to render another reason; namely, That we see by the means of certaine images arising from the objects or visible things, which at the first be big, and for that cause trouble the sight of old folk, when they regard them neare and hard by, being indeed but hard and slow of motion: but when the said images be advanced and spread farther into the aire, and have gained some good distance, the grosse and terrestrial parts of them breake and fall down; but the more subtile portions reach as far as to the eyes, without any paine or offence unto them, and do infinuate and accomodate themselves equally and smoothly into their concavities: so that the eyes being lesse troubled, apprehend and receive them better. And even so it is with the odours of flowers, which are very sweet to smell unto a good way off; whereas if a man come over-neare unto them, they yeeld nothing so kind and pleasant a sent: the reason is, because that together with the favour there goeth from the flower much earthly matter, grosse, and thick, which corrupteth and marreth the fragrant sweetnesse of the odour: it is smelled to very neare; but in case the same be a pretty way off, that terrestrial evaporation is disperied round about, and so falleth away, but the pure and hot part thereof, continueth behind, and pierceth forward still, by reason of the subtilty that it hath, until it be presented unto the nostrils. But we, receiving and admitting the principle of *Plato*, affirme and hold, That there passeth from the eyes an illuminate spirit, which intermingleth it selfe with the clearnesse and light that is about the bodies of visible objects: by which means there ariseth an united composition from them twaine, according in every point one with another, but incorporate they be by measure and proportion; for neither the one nor the other ought to perish, as being surmouned by his fellow, but of twaine contempered together in just proportion, there is made one puissance and meane faculty between. Seeing then, that the thing which passeth thorow the eye-sight of those persons who be far steep in yeares, be it some fluxion, lightome spirit, or bright beame, (call it what you will) is in them weak and feeble, there cannot be a mixture and composition of it with the shining aire abroad, but rather an extinction and suffocation, unless they remove the letters a pretty way off from their eyes. And by that means temper and resolve the exceeding brightnesse of the light, so as the same hit not upon their sight, so long as it is too radiant and resplendent, but measured and proportioned to the feeblenesse of their eyes. This also is the cause of that which befalleth to those living creatures which see best in the darke, and feed themselves by night; for their eye-sight being naturally weak is obfuscated and darkened by the great light of the day; for that such weak rayes proceeding from so tender a source or fountaine, will not well fort and agree with so strong and forcible light; but their eyes do send forth beames sufficient and proportionable, to be mingled with a light more dim and dusky, like as the light of a star in the night season appeareth best: and thus being incorporate with it, it is cooperative to the performance of sense.

THE

## THE NINTH QUESTION.

What is the cause that cloaths be better washed in fresh water than that of the sea?

**T**Heon the Grammarian, upon a time when we were feasted by *Mecivus Florus*, demanded of *Themistocles* the Philosopher, how it came to passe that *Chryssippus* having made mention in many places of strange positions and paradoxes, which seemed to go against all reason; as for example: That salt flesh, or powdered flesh, if it be watered or washed in sea-water, becometh more sweet: also fleeces of wooll are lesse pliable, if they be plucked forcibly, than if they be gently handled, tooled and drawn in funder. Item, that they who have fasted long, chew their meat, and eat more slowly at the first, than after they have eaten a little: I rendreth no reason of the one nor the other: Unto whom *Themistocles* answered, That *Chryssippus* propoed them by the way only, and as it were for example sake to admonish us; for that we are ready to beleve even without all reason, any thing that carrieth with it some small likelihood and probability, and contrariwise to discredit that which at the first sight seemeth unlikely: But what reason I pray you (quoth he) my good friend have you to search and enquire into these matters? For if you be so contemplative and inquisitive in finding out the causes of natural things, you need not to go far from that which belongeth to your profession: but tell me why *Homer* bringeth in *Nausicaa* washing her cloaths in the river, and not in the sea which was so neare unto her; notwithstanding that salt sea-water being hotter, more transparent, and abtective than fresh water of the river, seemeth by all appearance better for to wash withall? As touching this proble (quoth *Theon*) long since *Aristotle* resolved it, referring all to the terrefrity of the seas; for that in sea water there is mingled much earthly substance, which causeth it to be so salt, by reason whereof it beareth them up better who swim therein; also it carrieth a greater and heavier burden than fresh water, the which yieldeth and giveth way, as it is more subtil, lighter, and feebler, as being more simple and pure: in which regard it pierceth sooner, and by this penetrative faculty it scoureth and cleanseth away all filaines and spots better than sea-water: and thinke you not that this reason of *Aristotle* carrieth great appearance of truth? Yes verily, (quoth I) there is appearance and probability indeed thereof, but no truth at all: for this I see ordinarily that the manner is to incrustate fresh water with ashes or gravel stones; or if there be none to be had, even with very dunt, as if the roughnesse of terreftriall substance were more meet and apt to cleanse all filthinesse, which simple and cleare water cannot do so well, by reason of the thin subtilty thereof, and because it is very weak: and therefore it is not well and truly said, that the thicknesse of the sea-water hindereth its effect. But the true cause is, for that it is penetrant and piercing; for this acrimony doth unbind and open the small pores, and do draweth forth the ordure outwardly: whereas contrariwise, that which is grosse and thick is never good and meet for to wash withall, but rather it maketh spots and flaines: now is the sea fatty and oyleous, which may be a principall cause why it is not good to wash withall: and, that sea-water is unduous, *Aristotle* himselfe beareth witnesse; for even salt it selfe hath a certaine fatnesse and unduousness in it: by reason whereof it causeth those lumps to burne more clearly wherein it is put: yea, and sea-water if it be sprinkled or dropped upon the flame, will likewise be of alight fire and burn withall: neither is there any water that burneth so much as that of the sea; and in this regard I am of opinion, that it is of all other water hottest: howbeit there may be another reason yielded: for considering that the end and consummation of washing, is to dry those things we hold most neat and cleane which are drest; and therefore the moisture that doth wash must go away together with the ordure; like as the root of *Elleboro* is sent out of the body with the melancholick humour: as for the humidity which is sweet and fresh by reason of the lightnesse thereof, the sun draweth it up very quickly: whereas the saltnesse of the sea-water sticketh fast to the small pores, and by reason of the alperity thereof is hard to be dried. Then *Theon*: This that you say (quoth he) is nothing but very false: for *Aristotle* in the same book affirmeth, that those who wash in the sea are sooner dry than they that wash in fresh water, if they stand in the sun. He saith so indeed (quoth I) but I thought that you would sooner beleve *Homer*, who holdeth the contrary. For *Ulysses* after he had suffered shipwrack met with *Lady Nausicaa*:

Al terrible and ferefull to be seen  
For it as in sea all plunged he had been.  
Yea, and himselfe said unto her women and waiting maidens:  
Retire aside and stand you far from mee,  
Faire damosels, untill such time you see,  
That I have washd from off my shoulders twaine  
The filth of sea, that now my skin doth staine.

And when he had thus said, he went down into the river,  
And there anon he scow'd & cleane away  
The salt sea-fome, upon his head that lay.

In which place, the Poet hath marvellous well observed and exprest that which ordinarily happeneth in such a case: for that when they who come forth of the sea stand drying them in the sun; his heat doth presently dissipare the most subtil and lightest substance of the humidity, and then that which is most soule and filthie remained behind, sticketh to, is baked and felted to the skin in manner of a salt crust, untill it be washed off with fresh and potable water.

THE

## THE TENTH QUESTION.

What is the cause that at Athens they never judged nor pronounced the daunce of the tribe Aeanis to be the best?

**A**T the solemn feast which *Serapion* made for the victory of the daunce, which the tribe or lineage *Aeanis* obtained, by his leading and conduct: to which least we were bidden, as being of that tribe; for that the people had endued us with the priviledge and right of bourgeoisie in the same: much talk there was occasioned by the great emulation and strife which had been for the honour of that present daunce: and indeed followed it was with much zeal and heat of affection, by reason that king *Philopappus* himselfe in person, was most honourable and magnificent present hereof, having defraied the charges belonging to the daunces of every tribe: who being present also with us, invited guests to this stately supper (as he was a prince no les courteous and full of humanity, than studious and desirous of knowledge) had both the propounding and also hearing of many antiquities. Now there was propounded and put to discourse, such a matter as this, by *Marcus* the Grammarian, namely: that *Neantes* the Cyzicene wrote in his famous narrations of this city, that the tribe *Aeanis* had by elpe all honour, this especiall priviledge above the rest, that their daunce was never adjudged to the last place. That writer (quoth the king) is not sufficient to authorize a history; but supposing that this were true, let us make it the subject matter of our discourse at this present, and search the cause thereof. But admit (quoth our friend *Mis*) that this were a false tale. What then? (quoth king *Philopappus*) there were no great matter in it, it is like betail unto us for love of learning, as sometime did to the wife philosopher *Democritus*; who feeding one day (as it should seem) upon a cucumber, when he perceived the juice and liquor thereof to be very sweet, and to tast of honey: demanded of his maid-servant who attended upon him, where she bought it: who named a certain garden: whereupon he rose from the board, and would needs have her to bring him thither, and to shew him the very place where it grew: but the wench wondering at his matter, and asking him the reason what he meant to be gone in such haste: Why (quoth he) I must needs find out the cause of this extraordinary sweetness, and finde it I shall, when I have well viewed and considered the place: hereat the maiden smiling: (fit you still good Sir (quoth she) and let this thing trouble your head no farther: for the truth is this: I chanced before I was aware, to put this cucumber into a vessel that had honey in it. Then *Democritus* seeming to be offended and displeased with her: Thou angerst me to the heart with thy prittle-prattle, I will (I tell thee) go forward in this my intended purpose, and search in to the cause hereof, as if this sweetness were naturall and came of the cucumber it selfe; and even so we will not pretend this readinesse and facility of *Neantes* in delivering some matters incredible: as an evasion or excuse, to avoid this present disputation: for if none other good will come of our discourse, yet I am sure it will serve well to whet and exercise our wits the while. Then all the company at once with one accord, fell to praise the laud tribe *Aeanis*, relating and collecting what commendable acts (soever and glorious feats of armes had been performed by that tribe. And here they failed not to rehearse the famous battell of *Marathon*, which is a State belonging to the tribe *Aeanis*. They forgot not to alledge likewise, how *Harmodius* and *Aristogiton* were *Rantides*, born in *Aphidnae*, a town of that tribe. Also *Glaucias* the orator affirmed, that the right wing or point of that battell of *Marathon* was assigned to them of that tribe, proving the same by the Elegies or verses which the poet *Aeschylus* had composed in the praise of their good service, having himselfe in person fought valiantly in the said conflict. Moreover, he shewed that *Callimachus* the high marshall of the field, being one of that lineage, both bare himselfe right bravely that day, and was one of the principall authors (after captain *Miltiades*) of that fought field, gave his voice with him, and perswaded to strike this battell. Unto this allegation of *Glaucias*, I myselfe added moreover, and said: That the decree or commission, by vertue whereof *Miltiades* led forth the Athenian army with banner displayed, into the field, was concluded at what time as the tribe *Aeanis* was president of the council at Athens; as also that the same tribe in the battell of *Platea*, carried away the praise and prize for their brave service above the rest: and hereupon it is, that this tribe of *Aeanis* solemnizeth every year a stately sacrifice, for that victory, as being commended and appointed so to do by the oracle of *Apollon*, upon the mount *Citharon*, and the same performed by nymphs or maidens: *Sphagrides* for the celebration of which solemnity, the city furnisheth them with beasts and other things needfull for the same sacrifice. But yet you see (quoth I) that all the rest of the tribes may as well alledge for themselves many valiant acts by them achieved: and namely *Leontis*; from which my selfe am descended, which in glorious renown given place to none whatsoever. Consider therefore my matters, whether it be not very like and more probable, that this was attributed unto it, for to appease and comfort that worthy person who gave the name unto this tribe: I mean *Ajax* the son of *Telamon*, who had not the patience to endure the overthrow in judgement, and loss of *Achilles* armour, but was so far inflamed with envy, emulation, and wrath that he spared nothing nor cared for the ruine of all: to the end therefore that he might not fall into another fit of fury, and be incapable, though good it was to ease him of the thing which might of all things offend and vex him most in that dishonour and dejection to vie: That the tribe which beareth his name, should never be thrust down into the lowest and last place.

Z z

THE

\* Scitificers.

## The Second Book Of Symposiaques.

The Summary, or severall Chapters thereof.

- 1 **VV**hat be those things which Xenophon saith, that men are better contented to be asked of at the table, yea, and to be scoffed at for, than otherwise no?
- 2 What is the reason that we have better stomachs to our meat, and eat more in Autumne, than in any other season of the year?
- 3 Whether the hen was before the egge, or the egge before the hen?
- 4 Whether wrestling was of all the sacred exercises and games of prize, most ancient?
- 5 Why Homer among all the combats of prize, putteth evermore in the first place, the fight at buffets; next to it, wrestling; and last of all, running the race?
- 6 What is the cause that the pine, sapine or pitch tree, yielding rosin, cannot be grafted by way of inoculation or the scutifaw?
- 7 Of the stay-ship fish Remora.
- 8 How it cometh to pass, that the horses of Lycospades are said to be more courageous and better spirited than any others?
- 9 How is it, that the sheepe worried by wolves, yield flesh more tender, but wooll more subject to beed lice than others?
- 10 Whether our ancestors did better in old time, to eat every man his own part divided by himselfe the board, or the men now living, who feed in common, of viands set before them all together?

## The Second Book Of Symposiaques.

### THE FIRST QUESTION.

What be the things whereof Xenophon saith: That men love better to be asked and to be scoffed at for, when they sit at the board, than otherwise no?

The Preface.

**O**F those things (O *Sossius Senecio*) which are provided to furnish and set out feasts and banquets, some are to be ranged as altogether necessary; namely, bread, wine, viands, meats, both flesh and fish, benches, stools, tables; and others be but accessories and may be spared, devised only for pleasure, and not upon any urgent necessity; as plates, shewes, and pastimes brought in, either to be heard or seen: some pleasant buffon or merry jester to make folk laugh, such an one as *Philip in Kallias* his house, which disports men are delighted in otherwhiles, if they be presented, and if they be not, they are not greatly missed, nor much cared for, neither is the feast thought defective for want thereof. The same may be said of table-talk: for one kind there is which modest and civil men do embrace and entertaine, in regard of their proper use fitting and agreeable for meals and meat indeed; another sort they admit, and allow, as containing some gentle speculation, and the same becometh rather the time employed in hearing musick, of flute, hautboies, lute and viall. And of both these, our first book contained certain miscellane examples one with the other; as namely, of the first sort were these questions: whether it be good and commendable, to treat and dispute of philosophical matters at the table or no? Also, whether it be better, that the master of the feast himselfe place his guests, at the board, or permit them to sit at their own discretion? Of the second kind be these: whereupon arose this common saying: That love teacheth musick or poetry; as also the question concerning the tribe *Aeanes* and such like. For mine own part, I would call the former *Symposiaca*, as properly belonging to a feast: the other by the generall name *Symposiaca*, as becoming rather a banquet after the feast is done: howbeit set down they are by me pell-mell, and not distinctly, but according as every one of them came into my mind and remembrance: neither must the readers marvell if I collect and gather certaine speeches for to dedicate unto you, which have been happily held heretofore by others, or by our own selves: for albeit our learning is not always a calling to remembrance, yet oftentimes it falleth out, that to remember & to learne, conurre and meet together in one subject matter. Moreover, having digested in every booke ten questions, the first of this second is one, that *Xenophon* a disciple of *Socrates*, hath in some sort propounded unto us, when he writeth: That *Gobryas* being upon a time at supper with *Cyrus*, as he praised many other fashions of the Persians so he commended them especially in this: That they demanded one of another such questions, wherewith they stood better pleased than if they had not been asked at all; and between whiles, let them pleasant scoffs and jests, as that the parties lofsted at, liked thereof better, than otherwise if they had been let alone. For if it be so, that other men, even with their praises many times offend us, why should we not greatly admire the seemly grace and witty conceit of thole, whose scoffs and

jest, yield pleasure and contentment to thole who seem to be mocked therewith? This is the reason why *Sopater* having one day invited us to a feast at *Paras*, moved this talke and said: Gladly would I know what kind of questions and interrogatories, they were? of that nature, & what the manner of them was? For no small part it is (quoth he) of our entercurie and naturall communication one with another, to have the dexterity & skill, both to know and also to observe the decency and congruity in such pleasant demands and facetie jests. Nay, (quoth I again) a great matter it is: but mark, if *Xenophon* himselfe was well in the *Symposium* or banquet of *Socrates*, as in thole of the Persians, giveth notus so understand what was the order thereof: and if you think good that we enter into this discourse, and that I should adde some-what of mine own. First and formost this is mine opinion: That men are well enough pleased to be asked those questions, to which they are able easily to answer, and namely, of such things, as they have best skill and experience of: for if one should demand of them, matters that they know not, either they be offended and grieved if they can say nothing unto them (like as thole who are called upon to pay debts which they are not able to discharge) or if they bring out crofs, impertinent, and untoward reasons, they are much troubled, dilmaied, and perplexed: whereas if their answers be not only ready and easie, but also witty and exquisite, so much the more pleasant and agreeable it is to the answers: now thole I count witty and exquisite, which carry somewhat with them, that the common multitude knoweth not, or which few men have heard of: such as be the points of astrology or logicke, especially if they be well seen therein, and have as it were the habit of them: for every man is well pleased and appaied, not only in practising and spending his time, as *Enripides* saith:

Whereby he may quit himself well,

That even himselfe he may excell:

but also in reasoning and discoursing of that wherein he hath best skill and knowledge. For men love great contentment when they be asked questions of that which they have an insight in, and knowing so much by themselves as they do, loth they be to have their cunning hidden, and to be thought of others ignorant therein: therefore thole who have been great travellers, and failed in many voiajes, cannot be better pleased than when others enquire of them as touching late countries, strange seas, the manners, fashions, and customs of barbarous nations; and you bring them to bed (as they say) when you put them to discourse of such matters; as being most willing to describe and draw upon a table the coasts, places, straights, and gulfs by which, and through which they have passed, reputing it to be no small fruit of all their travells, and an easement of the pains which they have endured: in one word, looke whatsoever we of our selves are wont, without the demand and intreaty of others to recount and relate willingly: the same are we desirous that men should ask us questions of, and howsoever we seem to do pleasure to the company, yet indeed we have much ado to hold, and with great paine forbore to utter the same. This is a very malady incident to sailors and seamen above all other. As for thole that be of a more modest and civil nature, they are desirous to be asked those things, which they are willing enough to utter, but that they be asbashed, and in reverent regard of them that be present, pass over in silence thole exploits which they have performed happily and with great honour: and therefore good old *Nestor* in *Homer* did very wisely, who knowing well the ambitious humour and desire of glory which was in *Ulysses*, spake unto him:

Ulysses, flower of noble chevallry,  
Renowned knight, and all the Greeks glory,  
To tell us now, I pray (good sir) begin,  
How ye both twain did those great battles win.

For unwilling men are to hear thole who praise themselves, or recount their own worthy acts, if thereto one or other of the company that is urgent with them to do so, or unless they be in manner forced unto it: and therefore they are glad, when they be asked concerning the ambassages wherein they have been employed; of their acts during the time of their government of State, especially, if they have performed some great and honourable service therein: and withall perceive that it is not for envy nor malice, that such demands be made: for otherwise, such as be envious or malicious, weepe at thole reports, and be ready to put them by, not willing to give place unto any narrations, nor to minister occasion or matter of talke, that may turne to the honour and commendation of him that delivereth the same. Moreover, this is another meane to gratifie thole who are to answer; namely, to move question of such things as they wot well enough, that their enemies and ill-willers are loth to hear. And verily, *Ulysses* said to *Alecinous* in this wise:

A mind you have, to hear metell  
my wofull misery;  
That I might still sigh, grone and wail  
for my bad destiny.

Even so *Oedipus* in *Sophocles* answered thus to the company of the Chorus:

A woe it is (my friend) to raise and wake  
A grief that long hath slept and rest doth

But contrariwise, *Enripides* wrote after this sort:

How sweet is it to one for to remember  
The pain now past, which sometime he did suffer!

Z. 2. 2.

True

Take it is, but not to those who fill wander, and (being tossed in trouble some seas) do yet meet with many misfortunes and calamities. But to return again to our former purpose: we ought to beware how we demaske ourselves for men: for men are grieved at the heart, to make report either how they have been cast and condemned in any suite, or that they have buried their children, as also, how unfortunate they have been in their trafficke either by sea or land: contrariwise, they are all well pleased to rehearse and repeat often times if they be asked the question how they have had good audience given them from the publique place of making orations, and obtained whatsoever they there demanded; how they have been flattered and honourably entreated by some king and potentate; and how, when other passengers and travellers with them, have been plunged into dangers of tempest, or thieves, they onely escaped the perill; and for that in the bare relation, they seem (as it were) to enjoy the thing itselfe, they cannot be satisfied with the discourse and remembrance thereof. Also men rejoyce and take delight, when they be asked as touching their friends, who are fortunate and do prosper in the world, or of their own children that profit well in learning and good literature; or have sped well in pleading causes, or otherwise are of credit in the court and with princes: Semblably, they be very well content and pleased, to be moved for to relate, and so are more willing to make report of the losses, or shamefull disgraces of their enemies and ill-willers, whom either they have overthrown at the bar and caused to be condemned, or who otherwise are fallen into any disastrous calamity; for of themselves, loath they are, unless they be required thereto, to recount such things, lest they might be reputed malicious, and glad to hear of other mens harmes. A humer loveth very well to have speech and question moved unto him as touching hounds: so doth a champion, and one that delighteth in bodily exercises, to be trained to talke of gymnasticall pastimes and feats of activity, like as an amorous lover, of such persons as be faire and beautifull, a devout and religious man discoureteth ordinarily of dreams and visions that he seeth, and what good successe he hath had in his affaires, by observing the direction of oracles, the prefiges of augurage and omens, by doing sacrifice, and generally, by the grate and especiall favour of the gods: and such be well pleased for to be asked questions as concerning these matters. As for old folke, you shall do them a high pleasure, if you put them to it, for to make any discourse whatsoever: for although the narration concern them nothing at all, nor be to any purpose, yet if one ask them questions, be they lesse them in the right veine, and scratcheth them (as they say) where it itcheth. This appeareth by these verses out of Homer.

O Nestor, sonne of Neleus,  
tell me in civility,  
How Agamemnon, elder sonne  
of Atreus, did die?  
Where was his younger brother then,  
for Menelaus' high?  
Lives he or no, in Achaea,  
at Argos city bright?

Here you see *Telemachus* asketh him many questions at once, giving him occasion and matter of much speech, not as some do, who restraining old folke to answer to the point onely which is necessary, and driving them within a narrow compasse, bereave them of that which is their greatest pleasure. In sum, they that would rather please and delight, than displease and trouble, propose such questions, the answers whereunto, draw with them, not the blame and reproche, but the praise and commendation: not the hatred and spite, but the amity and good will of the hearers. And thus much may serve for interrogatories and demands.

As touching scoffs and merry jests, he that knoweth not how to use and handle them with decency, good discretion and skill, according to time and place convenient, I would advise him altogether to forbear them. For like as if men be in a slippery or ticklish ground, they that touch them never so little in running by, are able to overturne and lay them along; even so at the table, when we are drinking, in danger we be upon every small occasion in the world offered (by a word not well placed, or untowardly delivered) to fall into choler; yea, and many times, more moved we are with a scoff or pleasant gibe, than with a reproachfull taunt and meer slander: for that ordinarily it is seen, that a reproachfull word proceedeth from a violent fit & sudden passion of anger, even against his will that giveth it; but we take more to the heart, a mock or scornfull flow, as coming from a preprepared malice, and a voluntary mind set upon mischief, without any necessity at all enforcing thereto; and to be brief, we are in generally more offended with those that can give a dryump in good sadness, than such as cast forth words at random. And this we hold for certain, that every one of such frumps bitteth sore, and seemeth to be an artificiall kind of reproach devised and thought upon a purpose before-hand: as for example, if one call another false fish-monger, by that word he gives him openly a plain reproach; but if he say, we remember well, that you are wont to wipe or snuffe your nose upon your sleeve, he mocks him covertly, and calls him as much by craft. The like frump it was, that *Cicero* said to one *Oppianus*, who supposed to be an African born: for when he seemed to excuse himselfe that he heard not what *Cicero* spake: and that is a great wonder (quoth *Cicero* again) considering that you have a hole bored through your ear. And *Menelaus* being flouted and made a mocking stock by a contedy-maker: You have (quoth he) given me a reward that I never deserved, and paid me that which you owed me not: such gibes therefore

therefore and mocks as these, do prick worie, and much like to arrowes with barded heads, slicke longer by them who are thus flouted; and for their witness more delight those who are present, than for any other pleasure elie, seem to win credit unto him that utteth them. For to speak a truth altho' or mock is nothing elie but a covert and dissimuled reproach for some fault, according to *Telemachus* as he that standeth by and heareth it, can make contriution thereof, and guess how to adde more unto it, as knowing and believing all the reit behind to be true. For no doubt he that laugheth heartily as if he were tickled, when he heareth the answer of *Telemachus* to one, who being named for a common stripper of men out of their garments as they went late in the streets, altho' being named for it he went forth to supper? Yes may I (quoth he) but I mean to lie there all night: such a kind if he went forth to supper? as being glad that he is thus derided or reproached. But in that noble city *Lacedaemon*, among their good disciplines in times past there taught, men learned also to jest at others without bittings, and not to count themselves nipped, when themselves were jelled with: and if peradventure a man shewed himselfe discontented with some broad jest, and could not beare it well, the other party presently gave over and was quiet. How then can it chule but be an hard matter, to finde that kinde of kiff or taunt which may content and please the party mocked? considering that it is a point of no small art, nor meane experience and dexterity to be able to discern and judge, what it is that in the feat of mockery which is not offensive. Howbeit to open a little the means thereto: First and foremost it seemeth, that as these jests touch and sting them most who know themselves to be guilty of those vices for which they be mocked: so the same frumps if they note men for such faults of which they be most cleere, mult needs in some sort be pleasant and acceptable unto them upon whom they be discharged. Thus *Xenophon* jelling pleasantly with that foule and livavoured fellow above all others, all harty, and as rough as a bear; said: He was the minion and love of *Sambulus*. You may call to mind also *Quintus* a good friend of ours, who when he lay sick in bed, complained that his hands were cold: But you brought them warme enough not long since (quoth *Aulus Modestus*). When you returned out of the province: which *Quippe* being banded upon him, an honest and upright Prator, ministred occasion of mirth, contentment, and laughter; the same it had light upon a proconsull that had used extortion or oppression, would have been a giding and nipping reproach. This is the reason that when *Socrates*, challenged *Critobolus* the fairest young man then living, to compare their beauries, jested merrily with him, but scorned and derided him not. And *Alcibiades* himselfe was pleasantly disposed with *Socrates*, when he said: that jealous he was of faire *Agathon*. And even kings & great princes verily otherwhies joy & take pleasure when they be spoken of, as if they were poore or private persons: like as one of these pleants or pastoral jelliers, when king *Phalaris* seemed to gird and scoff at him, returned upon him againe this word: What sir, know you not who I am, do not I keepe and mainteine you? For in reproaching persons with such vices and defects as are not in them, they do after an oblique manner give them to understand and do make known the vertues and perfections which they have. But here we mult take heed and be sure in any wise, that such good parts they be ended withal in deed, and without all doubt; otherwise that which is spoken to the contrary, buzzeth in their heads, & breedeth a doubtfull suspition in themselves: for he that saith unto a rich and great monied man, that he will be his broker, and help him to some usurers of whom he may take up money at interest; or unto a sober person, who drinketh nothing but water, that he is a drunkard, or hath taken his own too liberally: or he that calleth a liberal man, well known to spend magnificently, and ready to pleasure all men, a base mechanicall *Kymbix*, and a pinching penny-father; or he who threatneth a famous advocate or councillor at the barre, who hath a great name for law and eloquence in all courts of plea, and besides for policy and government is in high authority, that he will bring him to a non-suit, or overthrow him judicially, he (I say) ministreth matter of good spirit and laughter unto the party whome he seemeth so to challenge or menace. After this manner king *Cyrus* became very loving and gracious, by his singular curtesie, in that he would seem to provoke his familiars for to performe those feats, wherein he knew himselfe inferior to them: and when *Ismenias* the famous musician plaied one day upon his flute, during the time of sacrifice, but so, as for all his musicke there appeared no good prognosticks and signes, in the beast sacrificed, testifying that the gods were propice and well pleased: another mercenary minstrell, taking the advantage in his hand, kept a foolish and ridiculous tooting full untowardly, and when all the company there in place reproved him for it: To found an instrument (quoth he) to the contentment of the gods, is an heavenly gift: whereas *Ismenias* laughed a good, and made this answer: You take the matter amis (quoth he) and cleane contrary, for whiles I plaied, the gods tooke so great pleasure in my musicke, that they intended it onely and had no while to accept of the sacrifice; but when thou beganst to meddle with the pipes, they received it immediately, and made hatt to be ridde and delivered of thy absurd piping. Moreover they who call such things as be simply good, by odious and opprobrious names, and that in mirth, if they do the same with a good grace; please more than those who directly praise the same: like as they do nip and bite more shrewdly, who give reproaches under faire and lovely termes, as for example: such as called wicked persons, *Arifides*, or base cowards, *Achilles*: after the manner of *Oedipus* in *Sophocles*, when he said: *Creon*



Creon who had been always kind,  
And even first her faithful friend,

Another kinde there seems to be of ironical praise, opposite unto the former; namely, when semblant is made of blame and reproof: which manner of praise, *Socrates* often used; as for example, when he called the industrious means that *Antisthenes* practised to reconcile men and make them friends, as also to gaine good will and favour, broagage, bauds-crait, enticement and allurements; also for that the Philosopher *Crates*, had a good grace with him wheresoever he went, and because he was always welcome, honourably received, and kindly entertained into what house he came, he was commonly named *Thyrepanetes*, as one would say: The door opener. Furthermore, that mockery is pleasing, which goeth in manner of a complaint, and yet carrieth with it a kinde of gratitude and thankfulness. Thus *Drogenes* speaking of his matter & teacher *Antisthenes*,

Who clad me in a cloake three-d-bar,  
And made me ragged cloaths to wear;  
Who forced me to beg my food,  
And houselesse for to walke abroad,

For nothing so good a grace it would have had, in case he had used these words: He who made me wife, contented, and happy. Also a certaine Laconian, who making a shew, that he blamed the warden of the publicke stoupes and halles of exercise, for giving him wood so dry, that he blamed the warden not so much as smoke, said thus of him: Here is one, by whose means we cannot be suffered to shed a tear. Semblably, if a man should call him who kept a bountifull table, and feasted him every day, a tyrant and taker of men perforce, saying withall, that he would not suffer him to exult in meales at home, nor to see so much as once his own table in so many years space: like as if one should complain of the king, for making him, of a poor man, rich and wealthy, in these terms: That he had laid wait for him to do him a shrewd turne in taking from him his repose and leisure, and bereaving him of his sleepe and naturall rest: or as if some man having gathered plenty of good wine, turning againe upon the gods *Cuberi* in *Aeschilus*, should censure them, for that they had caused him to have scant of vinegar in his house, as they themselves in board and mirth had mended to do. For these kindes of covert, secret and dissimuled praises, after father, carrying with them a greater grace and more effectually by farre, in such sort, as they who in this wise perceive themselves to be commended, are nothing offended thereat, nor take it in ill part.

Over and besides, it becometh him who would give a frump or scuff with a grace and dexterity, to know also the difference of a defect and imperfection, from studies and recreations whereunto men are given: as namely, to distinguish between avarice or a contentions humour, and the love of musick or of hunting: for as men cannot abide to be twit by those, to they are very well contented to be scoffed at for these; as *Demonsthenes* the Mitylenæan plaied in this kinde pleasantly upon time: for when he went to visit a familiar friend of his, who loved musick passing well, and was much addicted to play upon the harp; after that he had knocked at the doo, and the other hearing that it was he, willed him to come in: But first (quoth he) I would have you tie up your harp. But the parasite all buffon of king *Lysimachus*, contrariwise rejoined in this sort as rudely and uncivilly: for when the king had throwne a counterfeited scorpion made of wood, upon his coat, whereat he first started and was afraid; but when he perceived once that the king was merrily disposed, and did but make sport, came upon him againe: And I will fright you, sir king, as well (quoth he) Come on and give me a talent from you. The like regard ought to be had, and the same difference made, as touching the defects or imperfections of the body, at leastwise in many of them: for if men be jested at, for that they be long-nosed and hawked, or otherwise have short snout-noises, they will but laugh thereat. Thus one of the minions of *Cassander*, was nothing offended with *Theophrastus*, when he said: I wonder at your eyes, that they fall, nor a singing, and make good musick, considering your nose is set and hidden within them: meaning that he had a nose so flat and sunk in to his head. And *Cyrus* seeing one with a long nose and hawked withall, willed him to marry a wife with a flat and short nose: For when (quoth he) you would match well, and make a good medley between you. But in case we jest and make game at those whose nostrils stink, or who have a strong and unfavory breath, they take it not well at our hands but are displeased. On the other side, if they be played upon for their bald eyes, they can abide it well enough, and put it up; but say a man mock them for having but one eye, or being blinde, they will not endure it. Indeed king *Antigonus* would jest pleasantly with himselfe for the loss of one eye: as namely, when there was presented unto him a supplication written in great capitall letters: Why (quoth he) a man may see this, if he were starke blinde, and had never an eye in his head: but *Theocritus* of *Chios* his prisoner, he put to death, for that, when one to comfort him, came and said: That if the kings eyes once had a sight of him, he would be pardoned, and save his life: Why then (quoth he) God have mercy upon me: for impossible it is for me to escape death: which he said, because king *Antigonus* had but one eye. *Leo* the Bizantine, when *Pasquades* objected unto him his bleered eyes, saying: Mine eyes be sore with looking upon yours: Goe to (quoth he) you twit and reproach me, for a bodily infirmity that I have, and never look your selfe upon a sonne of your own, who carrieth the vengeance of God upon his shoulders: now this *Pasquades* had a sonne, who was crumpe-shouldered and bunched-backed. Likewise *Archippus*, who in his time bare a great way in *Athen*, as being one of the orators who led the people, and ruled the State, was very angry with *Melambius*, who alluding to this

bunch-

bunch-backe, and scoffing thereat, used these terms: That he did not stand manfully upright in the defence of the city, but \* itouped and bended forward, as if he had found it likewise to lean, reele, and sink downward. And yet some there be, who can carry these broad jests patiently, and with good moderation: as one of the minions of king *Antigonus*, who having craved a talent in free gift, and seeing that he was denied it, required at the kings hands, that he would allow him a strong guard to accompany him: for feare (quoth he) that I be forelaid by the way, and rifed by him, who enjoyed me to carry a talent of silver at my back. See, how men are diversely affected in these externall things, by reason of the inequality of their maiimes, some after one sort, and some after another. *Epanonandus* sitting at a feast with his companions and colleagues in government, drank wine as sharpe as vinegar, and when they asked him why he did so, and whether it made for his health? I know not (quoth he) but well I wor this, that good it is to put me in minde of my home diet. And therefore in calling out jests and pleasant taunts, regard would be had of mens natures and dispositions, for that some have broader backs to beare scoffs than others: and endeavour we must so to converse with men both in bound and earnest, that we offend no person, but be acceptable unto all.

Astor love, a passion cry divers it is, and passing variable, as in all other things, so in jests and gibes especially: for that some will take offence and be soone angry, others will be merry and laugh it out, if they be touched in that point; and therefore above all things the opportunity of the time would be well observed: nor like as when a fire is newly kindled and but weak at the first: the wisde will put it quite out, but when it hath gotten strenght and somewhat firm it maintaineth, feedeth, and augmenteth the flame: so in love, when it is a breeding, and whilst it lieth secret, and sheweth not it selfe, quickly taketh displeasure and often against those that discover it: but when it is once broken forth, and is made apparent and known to all, then nourished it is, and taketh delight to be blown (as it were) and enflamed and more with scoffs and merry jests: and that which pleaseth lovers best is this, when they be jested with, in the presence of those whom they love, and namely in love matters, otherwise not; and if the case stand so that they be wonderfully enamoured upon their own wedded wives, or young lads by the way of honest and virtuous love, then they joy exceedingly, they glory and take a pride, in being scoffed at for the love of them. Hereupon *Arcepholus* being upon a time in his school: when one of these professed lovers and amorous persons, chanced in communication, to give him these words: Methinks that you have said toucheth none of this company: replied thus and said: No more then you are touched and moved: and withall, shewed him a faire & well favoured youth in the prime of his years sitting by him. Furthermore, good regard and consideration would be had, who they be that are present, and in place, for otherwhiles, men are disposed to take a laughter at merry words which they hear among friends and familiars, who would not take it well, but be offended thereat, if the same were delivered before wife, father, or school-master, unless it were some thing that agreed very well with their humour: as for example, if one should mock a companion of this before a Philosopher, for going bare-footed, or sitting up at his book all night long, studying and writing: or in the presence of his father for being thrifty, and spending little: or in the hearing of his own wife, that he cannot skill of courting and loving other dames, but is altogether devoted and serviceable unto her alone: thus *Tigraeus* in *Xenophon*, was mocked by *Cyrus*, in these terms, What and if your wife, should hear say that you made a page of your selfe, and carried your bedding and other stuffe upon your own neck? she shall not (quoth he) hear it, but be an eye witness thereof, and see it in her presence. Furthermore, when they who give out such merry taunts as these, be partakers therein, and in some sort do include themselves withall, selfe-blame worthy they are, and nothing so much to be reproved, as for example when a poor man glanneth against poverty, or a new upstart and gentleman of the first head, against mean parentage, or an amorous person, girdeth at the wantonnes of another lover; for it may seem thereby, that there was no meaning and intent to offend or offer wrong, but that all was merrily spoken, seeing they participate in the like defects, for otherwise it might nip very much, and go too neer to the quick. Thus one of the affianched or freed men of the emperour, grown upon a sudden to be exceeding rich, bare himselfe very proud, and did disdain to divers Philosphers, who sat at the table and supped together with him, insulting very insolently over them, and in the end coming out with this foolish question: How it came to pass that the broth or porrage made of beanes, whether they were black or white, looked green alike? *Arides* one of the Philosphers there in place, asked him presently again, what the reason was, that the wailes or marks of stripes and lashes, were all red indifferently, whether the whippes were made of white or black leather thongs? at which reply, the other was daunted, and disquieted, that he arose from the table in a peking chafe, and would not tarry. But *Amphius* of *Tarzi* (supposed to be no better than a gardeners sonne) having by way of scorn scoffed at one of the familiar friends of the lord depute, there, for his mean birth, taking himselfe immediately with the manner: but why say I so? for wee (quoth he) are come of no better feeds: made the party and all the company to laugh heartily. Semblably, there was a minstrell, or professed musician, who kindly and with a grace repressed the presumptuous curiositie and unskillfulness of king *Philips*, who forgot himselfe so much, that he would needs read a lecture as it were unto minstrell, how he should finger and strike; finding fault with him in certaine accords of musick: Ah, God forbid, (quoth he) my good liege lord that it should go so hard with your grace, as to be more skillfull in this art than my selfe: for thus whiles he seemed

to

to mock himselfe, he told the king of his fault without offence: and this seemeth to be a device that comical poets otherwise practise, to allay the bitter gall of their quibs and taunts; namely, to set off at themselves, as *Aristophanes* used to make sport with his own bald pate: and *Cratinus* noted himselfe, that he loved wine too well, in that comedie which he entituled *Pytines*, that is to say, a bottle or flaggon of wine: but above all, this regard and consideration would be had, that all such scoffs and merry jests, come from a man *ex tempore*, and readily, either by way of answer to a present demand, or occasioned upon some other sudden off, and in no wise to seem far fetched, as a thing premeditated and studied on before: for like as men beare and endure with more patience, the anger and debates among themselves, arising now & then at the table, whilst they be in the midst of their ups; but if another stranger should come in place, and offer abuse to any of the guests, and so trouble the company, he should be reputed an enemy, and for very hatred they would thrust him out of doors by head and shoulders: even so, we can finde in our hearts, easily to pardon a scoff, a frump or broad jest: if it proceed from some matter, at the present delivery, or seem to come naturally, unforced and without all art; but in case it be not occasioned presently, nor respect to the purpose, but drawn (as one would say) violently by the haire of the head from elsewhere; when it resembleth some ambush fore-laid afar off, for to wrong and do injurie to one person or other; like to that jest of *Timagenes*, which he discharged upon the husband of a woman, who was wont ordinarily to call up her gorge, in this manner:

*With miske had you do begins,  
Thus vomiting to bring her in.*

As also the demand propofed unto the philosopher *Athenodorus*, wherein the love of parents to their children, be muficall. For surely, such unseasonable cuts and taunts as these, not accommodate to time and place, nor fitted to the present occasion, do betray a malicious minde, and a deliberate purpose, to offer wrong and abuse: and therefore such persons as delight in these biting girds, many times for a word, which is the lightest thing in the world, as *Plato* saith, have paid a most heavy and grievous price: whereas contrariwise, they that know to place their words in due time, in meet place, and aptly to the purpose, do verifie the testimony of the same *Plato*, who saith: That it is an assured signe of a mans good bringing up, and the point of liberrall nurture and instruction, to know how to jest with a decent grace, and without the offence of any person,

## THE SECOND QUESTION.

*Why men be more hungry, and eat better in Autumne, than in any other quarter of the year?*

**I**N the borough *Eleusine*, after the ceremonies of sacred mysteries were performed, whenas the solemnity (celebrated with so frequent concourse of people) was at the height, we were feasted by *Glaucius* the orator in his house: where when others had made an end of supper, *Xenocles* his brother, began after his manner, to cavill and scoff at my brother *Lamprias*, twisting him with his large feeding, and indeed hitting in his teeth and reproaching him with the voracity of the Boeotians, who are taken to be good trencher men: whereupon, I in the defence of my brother, and to be revenged of *Xenocles* tooke occasion out of the doctrine of *Epicurus*, and said unto him: What (good sir) all men do not define and determine the utmost point and perfection of pleasure, to be indolence or the privation of paine, as your good master *Epicurus* doth: and besides, my brother *Lamprias*, who honoureth and esteemeth more the walking galleries of the Peripatetics, and the school of the Stoicks, called *Lyceum*, than hedoth the garden of *Epicurus*, must of necessity and in effect, beare witness to *Aristotle*, who affirmeth: That there is no man, but he eateth more in Autumne, than in any other season of the year: and a reason he giveth thereof, although it be now out of my head. So much the better (quoth *Glaucius*) for we our selves will see if we can finde it out after supper is done. Now when the tables were taken away, *Glaucius* and *Xenocles* both, imputed the cause thereof to the sundry fruits of that season; and that after a divers sort. For one said, that new fruits do make the belly soluble, and so by evacuation of the body, engender always fresh appetites them to meat. The other, to wit, *Xenocles*, affirmed, that these fruits (for the most part) carry with them a certaine piercing and mordant quality, yet pleasant withall, whereby they provoke and quicken the stomach to appetite, more than any viands or sauces whatsoever; inasmuch as those who be sickly, and have lost their stomachs, recover the same many times, by eating some of those fruits new gathered. But *Lamprias* alledged, that our familiar and natural heat, by which we are nourished in Summer time, is dispersed, and becometh more feeble and relaxed: but contrariwise, upon the entrance of Autumne, it gathereth to it selfe inwardly againe, and is fortified by the means of the cold ambient aire, which knitteth, constringeth, and closeth up the pores of the body. Then I (because it should not be thought that I would be one to participate in this conference without contributing somewhat of mine own, when my counte

came

came to speak declared, that in Summer time, by reason of the excessive heat of the weather, we are more thirsty, and in regard of the same heat and drought, take in more moisture and liquid nourishment: Now therefore nature (quoth I) by reason of the change of the aire and the season, seeking (as her manner is) for the contrary, causeth us to be more hungry in Autumne, than at other times; and for the temperature of the body, tendereth unto it as much drie food, as it had taken moisture in summer time: and yet a man cannot well say, that the cause of this effect dependeth nothing at all of the viands which we eat, confisting much of new and fresh fruits, nor only thick gruels and porrage, but also of pulle, wheat-bread, and flesh reared the same year, which being more luscious than those of the years past, do by consequence provoke those that use to feed upon them, for to eat better.

## THE THIRD QUESTION.

*Whether was before, The hen or the egge?*

**T**HIS long time I abstained from eating eggs, by reason of a certaine dream which I had, being desirous to make that experience in an egge, which is made in an heart, by occasion of a vision which hath evidently appeared unto me many times in my sleepe. And thereupon, when I was one day at a feast which *Sofinus Seneca* made unto us, the company conceived an opinion or suspition of me, that there were entered into my head, the fantasies and superstitions of *Orpheus* and *Pythagoras*, and that I laboured to eat an egge, like as many do forebear the heart and the braine of a living creature, for that I believed it to be the principle and fountain of generation: inasmuch as *Alexander* the Epicurean by way of a jest, and to move laughter, alledged these verses:

*I count all one, to make of \* beans, our meat,  
As if the heads of parents we did eat.*

As who would say, that the Epicureans by this word *xudges*, that is to say, beans, meant enigmatically and covertly, eggs: because that the breeding of young, or conception, in Greeke, is called *xians*, as if there were no difference at all, but they thought it all one to eat eggs and the living creatures which lay them. Now if I had alledged my dream unto them, for my defence, as the very cause of mine abstinence, certes, mine answer would have seemed more absurd and ridiculous than the dream it selfe, especially, to this Epicurean: and therefore I stood not greatly upon excusing myselfe unto the said *Alexander*, playing upon me so merrily, but suffered him to feed and maintain that opinion conceived of me: for surely, a pleasant man he was, honest, civil, and well learned. Howbeit, he tooke occasion hereupon, to set on foot that doubtfull question of the egge and the bird, which had busied and amuzed the heads so much of great naturallists, and searchers into the causes of naturall works, and namely to know, whether of the twain was before: Whereas *Sylla* our familiar friend said: That with this little question of the hen and the egge, as with a small lever, krew, or such like engine, we shaked the great frame and weighty tabricke of the generation of the whole world, and therefore willed him to surcease and proceed no farther, to speak thereof. But when *Alexander* laughed at it, and made no more reckoning of it, than of a ridiculous question of no importance, nor consequence at all depending thereof, my sonne in law *Firmus* began in this wise: I must here borrow (quoth he) the indivisible elements of *Epicurus*, and make use of those elements or atomy of his: for if it be true which he supposeth and laith for a ground: That small principles should afford beginning to great bodies: it followeth by all likelihood to great reason, that the egge was before the hen: for as far forth as by our senses we are able to judge, it is more simple, whereas the hen is a body mixt and compounded: and to speake in generality, the principle or element is ever first: the seed is a principle, and the egge full of seed, and less than the chick or living creature that is hatched of it: for like as the progeny and proceeding unto vertue is of a middle nature, between the first disposition and the final habit and perfection thereof; even so it should seem, that the egge is a certaine progresse and advancement forward of nature, tending to make a living creature of the seed disposed thereto: moreover, as in a beast or such a living creature it is commonly said and received, that the arteries and veins be formed first; sensibly, good reason there is to hold, that the egge was before the bird, as the continent before the thing contained within: for so it is with very arts, which make the first draught of their works grossly without forme and fashion; but afterwards give distinct figure and shape to every part thereof, according to that which *Polyclerus* the famous imager was wont to say: That their workmanship in poetry was then most difficult and hard, when the clay and the finger ruled met together: that is to say, when the worke was at the point to be finished: and therefore it standeth well to good reason, that the matter yeelding and obeying but slowly unto nature at the beginning, when the moveth and frameth by little and little, produceth at the first, rude lumps and masses, not as yet brought into shape and fashion, such as eggs be; but as the same grow to receive the impression of some forme there is afterwards wrought out and framed a living creature within: for like as there is engendered first a grub, which in time growing hard by reason of driness cleaveth and openeth in the end, and putteth forth another little winged flye, which we call *Nympha*, before it is a perfect bee; after the same manner, the egge here is [the first] subsistent matter of generation: for

\* xudges

for necessary it is, that in every change and transmutation, that must precede and have a beginning first which is to be altered & turned into another: see you not how cankers & caterpillars are bred in trees, and worms in wood, either by the putrefaction, or concoction of humidity? and will any man deny that the said moisture went before: and that by order of nature, that which ingendereth is more ancient than that which is ingenerated? for as *Plato* saith: The matter in all things that breed, serveth in stead of mother or nurse: and that is to be counted the matter, whereof the thing is composed and consisteth which is bred. And now for that which remaineth (quoth he, and therewith he laughed) I will sing unto those that be skillful and of understanding, one holy and sacred sentence, taken out of the deepe secrets of *Orpheus*, which not only importeth thus much, that the egge was before the hen, but also attributeth and adjecth unto it, the right of eldership and priority of all things in the world: as for the rest, let them remain unspoken of in silence (as *Herodotus* saith) for that they be exceeding divine and mystical: this only I will speak by the way: That the world containing as it doth, so many sorts and sundry kinds of living creatures, there is not in manner one I dare well say, exempt from being ingenerated of an egge, for the egge bringeth forth birds and fowles that flie; fishes an infinite number that swim; land creatures, as lizards; such as live both on land and water, as crocodiles; those that be two footed, as the bird; such as are footless, as the serpent; and last of all, them which have many feet, as the unwinged locust. Not without great reason therefore is it consecrated to the sacred ceremonies and mysteries of *Bacchus*, as representing that nature which produceth and comprehendeth in it selfe all things.

When *Firmus* had discoursed in this wise, *Seneca* opposed himselfe and said: That the last similitude and comparison which he brought, was that, which first and principally made against him: For you mark not O *Firmus* (quoth he) how ere you were aware, you opened the world like a gate, as the proverb saith, even upon your selfe: for that the world was before all other things, as being most perfect, and reason would, that whatsoever is perfect, should precede the imperfect: the entire and found go before that which is wanting and defective: and the whole before the part, for that there can be no part, but the whole thereof went before: for no man useth to speak thus: The seeds-man, or the eggs hen; but contrariwise we say: The mans seed, and the hens egge, as if both generative seed and egge did succeed and follow them, taking their own generation in them first, and afterwards paying again (as it were a debt unto nature) a successive generation from them: for need they have of that which is proper and familiar unto them, and thereupon are endued with a naturall desire and inclination, to produce such another thing as that was from whence they came: and hereupon it is, that seed is thus defined, to be a geniture or thing bred, having need and desire of new generation. Now there is nothing that either standeth in need or hath an appetite to that which is not, or hath no being: and we may plainly see, that eggs have their totall essence and substance, from that compact knot & composition which is gathered within the body of a living creature, & faith herein only, that it hath not such organs, instruments, and vessels as they have: which is the reason that you shall never finde written in any history, that an egge was engendered immediately of the earth; for even the poets themselves do say: That the egge out of which sprang *Castor* and *Pollux*, fell from heaven: whereas the earth even at this day produceth many complex and perfect creatures: as for example, mice in *Aegypt*, and in many other places, serpents, frogs, and grasshoppers, by reason that the principle and puissance generative, is infused and inserted into it from without. In *Sicily* during the time of the Servile war, much carnage there was & a great quantity of blood shed and spilt upon the earth, many dead bodies corrupted and putrified above the ground, lying unburied; by occasion whereof, an infinite number of locusts were engendered, which being spread over the face of the whole island, spoiled and destroyed all the corn in the country: all these creatures therefore are bred and fed of the earth: and of their nourishment they yeeld a generall superfluity, apt to ingender the same kind, and that is called, feed; and for to be discharged thereof, by means of a certain mutuall pleasure, the male and the female match and couple together: and so come according to their nature, breed and lay eggs; others bring forth young ones alive; whereby it is evidently seen, that the primitive generation came first and immediately from the earth, but afterwards, by a certain conjunction of with another, in a second sort, they breed their young. In summe, to say that the egge was before the hen, is as much as if the matrice was before the woman; for looke what relation there is between the said matrice and the egge, the semblable hath the egge unto the chicken that is ingenerated and hatched within it. So that, to demand how birds were made when there were no eggs, is all one, as to aske how men and women were created, before the naturall parts and generall members of the one sex and the other were made? And verily the members for the most part, have their subsistence and being together with the whole; but the powers and faculties come after those members: the functions succeed the faculties, and consequently, the effects or complements follow upon the said functions and operation: now the accomplished work or perfection of that generative faculty in the naturall parts, is the seed or the egge: so that we must of necessity confesse, that they be, after the generation of the whole. Consider moreover, that as it is not possible that there should be concoction of meats or any nourishment, before the living creature be fully made and compleat, no more can there be any seed or egge; for that both the one and the other, is made by certain concoctions and alterations: neither is it seen, how before the full perfection of a living creature, there should be any thing that hath the nature of the superfluity or excrement of nutrition; and yet I must

needs

needs say, that naturall feed otherwise, in some sort, may go for the principle and beginning of life; whereas the egge in no proportion answereth to such a principle, for that it hath not a subsistence, nor any reason or nature of the whole, because it is imperfect. And hereupon it is, that we never say, that a living creature had any being or subsistence, without an elementary beginning; but we affirm, that there was a principle of generation, to wit, the power or faculty generative, by which the matter was transmuted, and wherein there was imprinted a generall temperature; and that the egge afterwards, is as it were a certaine supergeneration, much like unto the bloud and milk of a living creature, after nourishment and concoction for never shall you see an egge engendered of mud; for that an egge hath a generation and concretion within the body only of a living creature; whereas there be an innumerable sort of creatures procreated and bred of mud and within mud. And to seeke no further for allegation of other examples to prove this, there be taken every day an infinite number of eeles, and yet never saw any man one eele, either milke or spawner, or that had any row link. And more than that, if one let out all the water from out of the poole, and cleane it from all mud and mire, yet after the water is returned thither again into the place, there will be eeles: soone ingendered. And therefore we may conclude necessarily, that whatsoever in generation hath need of another, can not chuse but be after it; and that which otherwise may be of it selfe, and without the other, must of necessity precede and go before in generation: for this is that priority whereof I speak. To prove this, mark how birds do build and make their nests before they lay eggs; women also provide cradles, clouts, beds, and swaddling-cloths for their little babes, before they cry out, or be delivered; and yet you will not say (I trow) that either the nest was before the egge, or the swaddling-cloth before the infant. For as *Plato* saith) the earth doth not imitate a woman, but a woman the earth; and consequently, all other femals. And very like it is, that the first procreation out of the earth, was performed intire, and accomplished by the absolute vertue and perfection of the Creator, without need of such instruments, vessels, or secondines, which nature deviseh now and frameth in parents, by reason of their imbecillity and weakness.

## THE FOURTH QUESTION.

Whether Wrestling were of all the exercises and games of prize, most ancient or no?

WE made a treat in the honour of *Soficles* the Coronar, for joy of the victory which he obtained at the Pythick games, over all other Poets. And when the time drew neer at hand, wherein the Gymnick matters and feats of vanity, wereto be performed; the greatest talk was at the table, as touching the wrestlers; for that many of them resorted thither, and those the most renowned champions of all Greece. In our company was *Lyfimeachus*, one of the agents or procurators of the high commissioners, called *Amphitryon*, who moved speech, and said, how not long before, he heard a Grammarian say: That wrestling was the most ancient combat of all those exercises that were named Gymnick, for that they were performed by men naked; and he added moreover, That the very name thereof in Greek imported no less: for *παλιν*, alldreth neer unto *παλιν*, which is as much as [of old] or [in times past.] And it may seem (quoth he) that ordinarily, the things that be moderne and newly devised, borrow the names imposed upon those that be of more antiquity: for so we say that *αυλα*, that is to say, the fluit or hautboies, is turned, borrowing the tearm of *αυλα*, which is a plautery or stringed instrument: and we call even at this day *αυλα*, i. e. the playing upon the pipe or hautboies, by the name of *αυλα*, that is to say striking with the fingers, which no doubt is a tearme leached from the harp or lute. And even so, the very place where they do exercise, who performe all feats and activity naked is named *παλας* of *παλιν*, that is to say, wrestling; which (no doubt) was a denomination given to it at the birth, and time out of mind, whosoever it be retained still, and extendeth to other exercises invented since, and taken up along after. Then began I, and said: That this argument and testimony, was not sufficient to conclude thereupon: For admit (quoth I) that *Παλιν* was derived of *παλιν*, which signifieth wrestling, yet it was not because of all others it was most ancient, but for that it is the only exercise that requireth cleay, called *παλιν*, dust also and *ceroma*, which is a composition of oile and wax, wherewith wrestlers be anointed. For surely, in these places, called *Παλιν*, there is practised neither running a race, nor fist-fight or combat with buffets, but only wrestling, called *παλιν*, and *Pancration*, wherein they go to it with hand and foot, yea, and by the very teeth and all: for that in these two exercises, the champions lie along other-whiles, and wallow in the dust and mire, named *παλιν*. And evident it is, that *Pancration* is a mixt exercise of wrestling and fist-fight. Again: What likelihood or reason is there (quoth I) that wrestling, which of all combats is most witty and artificiall, should likewise be of greatest antiquity? for need and necessity produceth that first, which is simple, plaine, and without art; performed rather by fine force and maine violence, than by rule and method. When I had thus delivered my conceit, *Soficles* seconding my words: True it is (quoth he) that you say, and the better to confirme your opinion; it seemeth unto me, that *παλιν* is derived of the verbe *παλιν*, that is to say, to overthrow or lay one along by craft and deceit. Nay rather (quoth *Philinus*) it tooke the name of *παλιν*; that is to say, the flat palme of the hand, because this part especially of both the hands is most employed by them that wrestle: like as those, who go to buffets, use their two fists or hands clutched together; wherupon, that manner of fight is call'd *παλιν*, that

that signifieth a fitts and the other, *gymnasion*, that is to say, the broad palme of the hand. Howbeit, forasmuch as the poets use this verbe *παλαιοι*, for *εινδαυ*, and *νανδαυ* that is, to strew and sprinkle dust, which we see wrestlers for to practise more than any other champions, it may be very well, that the word *παλαι*, was derived from *παλαιου*. Consider yet moreover (quoth he) how the carriers or runners in a race, do all that lies in them, to leave their concurrents a great way behind, & be as far before them as possibly they can: though also that fight at buffets, though other-whiles they be very desirous to buckle and close together, yet the wardens and judges of the games will not permit them once to catch hold: but we see that wrestlers only do clasp about, and embrace one another with their armes; and the most part of their striving one against another, whether it be performed by taking hold either directly or indirectly, by tripping, by coping and tuggings, do all bring them together, and entangle them: so that it is not unlike, that by reason they approach so as they do, and be neerer one to another, their wrestling was first called *παλαι*, or *παλαι*, which signifieth neer at hand.

## THE FIFTH QUESTION.

*What is the reason that Homer among the combats of prizes, setteth always in the first place, The fight at buffets: in the second, wrestling: and last of all, running the race?*

**VV**hen these words had passed to and fro, and after that we had commended *Philinus*, *Lysimachus* began again, saying: And which of all the games of prize should a man say was first performed? The race, or carriere, as at the Olympique solemnities: for here at the Psychique games, the manner is to bring in certaine champions at every severall game or play: first boies to writtle, and after them men-wrestlers also: then those that performe fist-fight, one after another; and likewise the champions called *Paneraustis*: but there, after that children have achieved all their combats, the men grown were called in. Mary, this I would have you to consider well (quoth he) whether *Homer* hath not done very exprely to shew the order which was observed in his time: for alwayes in his poems the fight with nil among all the Gymnick combats, (tandeth first): wrestling second; and the running of a course last: Hereat *Crates* the Thessalian, wondering (as if he had been amazed) O *Hercules* (quoth he) what a number of things are we ignorant of! But I beseech you, that if you have readily under your hand any of his verses, you would not think much to call them to our remembrance, and recite them: Why (quoth *Timon* then) it is well known in manner to all the world, and none there but his ears resound again with this: that in the honourable funerals of *Patroclus*, the same order of combats was precisely observed; and the poet keeping the same order still, and never missing it, hath brought in *Achilles* speaking unto good *Nestor* in this manner:

*Here father old, I give to thee  
This gift of meer gratitude:  
For now with fist thou maist not fight:  
To wrestle still thou hast no might:  
Thou canst no more the javelin lance,  
Nor in the race thy selfe advance.*

And anon he inferreth the aged grey-beard, answering with a long traine of words, as the manner is of these old folke, after this sort:

*The time was when at buffet fight,  
the prize I won in field,  
And with my fist made Chitomede  
for Oenops son, to yeeld:  
Ancæus the Pleuronien  
in wrestling gave me place,  
And Iphiclus by foot-man-shipp,  
I over-ran in race.*

Afterwards in another place he speaketh of *Myces*, challenging the Phæocians to combat in this wise

*At buffets dry with good hard-clutched fist,  
At wrestling, or at running, if you list.*

But of *Alcinous* making a kinde of excuse, and in a sort condemning himselfe, in these words:

*At buffets hard we fight not well,  
Ne yet in wrestling do excell:  
But swift of foot, and light we are,  
And run a course with youve dare.*

Thus you may see his order, he changeth not upon any occasion or occurrence presented, neither rashly, and as it came into his head, now in one sort, and then in another: but following from point to point, as it were by a certaine rule and prescript, what was the use in those dayes, and what was done then: he keepeth himselfe to the same method, according as they likewise observe still in the said ancient order. After that my brother had finished his speech, I said: That in mine advice he had spoken very well and truly to the point: but yet for all that, I could not conceive the reason of the said order: and some other were there present, who thought it unlikely, and were

not persuaded that in case of combat and achieving feats of activity for victory, either fighting with fists, or wrestling, should go before running: and therefore they requested me to search farther into the matter, and to seth the reason thereof from the very original: whereupon I set in hand presently, and *ex tempore*, spake to this effect: That I thought all these combats to be the very representations and exercises of warfare: for proofe whereof, the custome was and is at this day, after that these combats be performed, to bring into the place a foot man in compleat harness, and armed at all pieces, as it were to witness, that this is the end whereunto tend all these exercises of the body: the contentions also and emulations, for to gain the prize, and the privileges granted to the victors when they retuned with triumph to those Cities where they were born: namely, to make some breach in the walls, and to throw down some part thereof: the mystery and meaning whereof is thus much: that the walls of a City serve in small stead, if there be no men in it who are able to fight, & know how to win the victory. In *Lacedæmon* they that once had gained the prize at these sacred and crowned games, by a special privilege of honour, were allowed a certain place in the battell, to be ranged neer unto the Kings person, and there to fight: and of all living creatures, there is none but the horse only that can obtain the crown in such games: for that he alone of all beasts, is by nature framed, and by discipline trained to accompany men in battels, and with them to fight: now if this be true, and to the purpose: We observe moreover (quoth I) that the first and principal work of those who fight in the field, is to strike the enemy, and to ward his blows: the second is, when they be come to close and to grapple with hand-gripes, to thrust and assay how to overcome and lay one another under foot: which by report was the vantage, that our country-men being well practised in the feat of wrestling, had over the Spartans, at the battell of *Leuctres*, whereby they overthrew them, and bare them to the ground: this also was the cause that *Æschylus* the Poet in one place, speaking of a valiant warrior, nameth him:

*A wrestler stout, and tried in field,  
To fight it out with sword and shield.*

And *Sophocles* in one of his Tragedies speaking likewise of the Trojans, reporteth thus much of them in these tearms:

*They love great horses for to sit,  
As valiant men at arms:  
Bows horned at both ends they bend,  
and draw with strength of arms:  
They fight so close, they catch such hold,  
and gripe fast with hands twain,  
That in their wrestling, all their shields  
resound and ring again.*

The third is this, when all is done, either to flie and run away apace, if they be vanquished, or else to follow hard in chase, if they be conquerors. By good right therefore, the fight with fists goeth first: wrestling followeth in the second place: and running cometh in the last: for that buffeting repelleth the charging of the enemy, and the avoiding of this recharge: wrestling may be compared with the violent buckling and conflict pell-mell in the medly: and by running they learn how to pursue, or to escape by good footman-shipp.

## THE SIXTH QUESTION.

*Why the Rose, Sapine, or Pitch tree, and such other as yeeld Resin, will not abide to be grafted in the same chinn, or by way of inoculation.*

*Socrates* teasing us upon a time within his Orchards, which were well watered, and environed all about with the river *Cephissus*, shewed unto us trees carrying arms and branches of sundry sorts, after a very strange manner, and all by the means of a kind of grafting in the bud, called inoculation: for there I saw we Olive boughs growing out of Lentisk or Mattick trees; Pomgranats out of Myrles; Oaks there were which put forth fair Pirries or Pear trees: and Plane trees that adorned and adorned Apple trees: Fig trees also which were grafted with Mulberry, Imps, and Cions: other mixtures there were besides of wild plants, so tamed and made gentle, that they bare fruit: whereupon some other of the guests began to jest and be merry with *Socrates*, saying, That he honoured certain kinds of beasts, more monstrous then the fabulous Spinghes or Chimæraes of the Poets. But *Creon* proposed this question: What the cause might be, that those trees onely which be Oily and full of Resin, admit not any such mixtures and compositions? For never shall you see Pine tree that beareth the Nuts, Cypress tree, Pitch tree, or Sapine, to maintain or feed the graft of a tree different in kind. Then *Philo*, there is (quoth he) one maxime or principle held among the learned, and the same confirmed by the experience of husbandmen: That oyl is an enemy to all plants: and there is not a readier way to kill what tree soever a man will, then to rub or besmeare plants: and there is oyl like as Bees also by that means are soon destroyed: so it is therefore, that all those trees which have been named, are of a fatty substance, and have a soft and unctuous nature, inso-much as there distilleth & droppeth from them Pitch and Resin: and if a man make a gash or incision in any of them, they yeeld from within, a certain bloody liquor or gum, yea, and there issueth from the











the own nature, and was planted in a moldfar hotter then it selfe, which hindered it for taking root: for this is a general and perpetual rule: that all excessive enormities, of any object, destroy the force and powers of the subject: in which regard, they desire rather their contraries: in such sort, as that a plant of cold temperature requireth an hot place to grow in: and that which is hot demandeth likewise a cold ground: and this is the reason, that high mountain countries, windy, and covered with snow, bear ordinarily trees that yield torch-wood and pitch, as Pines, Cone trees, and such like: And were it not so, my good friend *Tryphon*, yet this is certain, that trees, which by nature are chill and cold, shed their leaves every year: for that the small heat which they have, for very penny retireth inwardly, and leaveth the outward parts naked and destitute: whereas contrariwise, heat and unctuous fattnesse, which appeareth in the Olive: Laurel and Cypress trees, keep themselves always green, and hold their leaves, like as the Ivy also doth for her part. And therefore good father *Bacchus* hath not brought into use and request the Ivy, as a preervative and present help against the encounter of drunkennesse, nor as an enemy to wine, who directly calleth Wine *μυθo*, and turneth himselfe *μυθωμω* thereupon: but in mine opinion, like as they who love Wine, if they cannot meet with the liquor of the grape, use a counterfeit wine, or barley broth, called Beer and Ale. or else a certain drink made of Apples, named Cydres, or else Dru-wines: even so, he that gladly would in winter season wear a chaplet of vine-branches, seeing it altogether naked and bare of leaves, is glad of the Ivy that resembleth it: for the body or wood thereof is likewise writhed and crooked, and never groweth upright, but shutteth out here and there, to and fro at a venture: the soft fatty leaves also after the same manner grow dispersed about the branches, without all order: and besides all this, the very berries of the Ivy growing thick and clustered together like unto green grapes, when they begin to turn, do represent the native form of the vine: and yet albeit the same yieldeth some help and remedy against drunkennesse: we say, it is by occasion of heat, in opening the pores and small passages in the body, for to let out the humors of Wine, and suffer them to evaporate and breath forth, or rather by her heat helpeth to concoct and digest it, that for your sake (good *Tryphon*) *Bacchus* may still continue a Physician. At these words, *Tryphon* stayed a while, and made no answer, as thinking with himself, and studying how to reply upon him. But *Eraton* calling earnestly upon every one of us that were of the younger sort, spurred us forward to aid and assist *Tryphon* our Advocate, and the Patron of our flower-chaplets, or else to punish them from our heads, and wear them no longer. And *Ammonius* assured us (for his part) that if any one of us would take upon him to answer, he would not recharge again, nor come upon him with a rejoinder. Then *Tryphon* himselfe moved us to say somewhat to the question. Whereupon I began to speak and said: That it belonged not to me, but rather unto *Tryphon*, for to prove that Ivy was cold, considering that he used it much in Physick to cool and binde, as being an astringent medicine: but as touching that which ere-while was alleged: namely, that the Ivy berry doth inebriate, if it be steeped in Wine: it is not found to be true: and the accident which it worketh in those who drink it in that manner, cannot well be called drunkennesse, but rather an alienation of the mind and trouble of the spirit: liketo that effect which Henbane worketh, and many other plants, which mightily disquiet the brain, and transport our senses and understanding. As for the tortuosity of the body and branches, it maketh nothing to the purpose and point in hand: for the works and effects against nature cannot proceed from faculties and powers natural: and pieces of wood do twine and bend crooked, because fire (being near unto them) draweth and drieth up forcibly, all the native and kindly humour: whereas the inward and natural heat, would rather ferment, entertaine and augment it. But consider better upon the matter and mark rather, whether this writhed-bunching of the Ivy wood (as it groweth) and the balenefic bearing (slid downward and tending to the ground, be not an argument rather of weaknesse, and bewray the coldnesse of the body, being glad (as it were) to make many rests and stayes: like unto a Pilgrim, or wayfaring Traveller, who for weariness and faintnesse stretch him down and repose himselfe many times in his way, and ever and anon refresh again, and beginneth to set forward: in regard of which feeblenesse, the Ivy hath always need of some prop or other to stay it selfe by, to take hold of, to clasp about and to cling unto, being not able of her own power to rise: for want of natural heat, whose nature is to mount aloft, as rising Snow, that it thaweth and passeth away to soon. the cause is, the moisture and softnesse of the Ivy leaf: for so we see that water disparteth and dissolveth presently, the laxity and spongyous rarity thereof, being (as it is) nothing else but gathering and heaping of a number of small bubbles couched, and thrust together: and hereof cometh, that in over-moist places, fobbed and soaked with water, snow melteth as soon as in places expoid to the sun. Now for that it hath leaves always upon it, and the same (as *Empedocles* saith) firm and fast, this proceedeth not of heat, no more then the fall and shedding of leaves every year, is occasioned by cold. And this appeareth by the Myrtle tree and the herb *Adiantum*, that is to say, Maiden-hair, which being not hot plants, but cold acalwayes leaved and green withall: and therefore some are of opinion, that the holding of the leaves, is to be attributed unto an equality of temperature: but *Empedocles* (over and besides) attributeth it to a certain proportion of the pores, thorow which the sap and nourishment doth passe and pierce equally into the leaves: in such sort, as it runneth sufficiently far to maintain them: which not so in those trees which lose their leaves, by reason of the laxity or largenesse of the said pores and holes above, and the straitnesse of them beneath: whereby, as these do not send any nourishment at all, so the other can hold and retain none, but that little which they received, they let go all at once: like

as we may observe in certain Canals or Trenches, devised for to water Gardens and Orchards, if they be not proportionable and equal: for where they be well watered and have continual nourishment, and the same in competent proportion, then the trees hold their own, and remain firm, always green, and never die. But the Ivy tree, planted in *Babylon*, would never grow, and refused there to live. Certes, it was well done of her, and she shewed great generosity, that being (as the was) a devoted vassalle to the god of *Babylonia*, and living (as it were) at his table, she would not go out of her own country, to dwell among those Barbarians: the followed not the steps of King *Alexander*, who entered alliance, and made his abode with those strange and forraign nations, but avoided their acquaintance all that ever she could, and withstood that transmigration from her native place: but the cause thereof, was not heat, but cold rather: because she could not endure the temperature of the air, so contrary to her own: for that which is temblable and familiar, never killeth any thing, but receiveth, nourisheth and beareth it, like as dry ground the herb Thyme, how hot soever the soil be. Now for the Province about *Babylon*, they say, the air in all that tract is so foully hot, so stuffing, so grosse, and apt to stifle and stop the breath, that many inhabitants of the wealthier sort, cause certain bits or bags of leather to be filled with water, upon which, as upon featherbeds, they lie to sleep and cool their bodies.

## THE THIRD QUESTION.

What the cause is, that women hardly are made drunke, but old men very soon?

Flawzone day seemed to marvel, that *Aristotle* having in his Treatise of drunkennesse, set down this position: That old men are soon surprized and overcome with Wine, but contrariwise, women, hardly and very seldom; rendered no reason thereof, considering that his manner otherwise, was not to propose any such difficulties, but he doth decide and clear the same. And when he had made this overture, he moved the company to enquire into the cause thereof, and a supper it was, where familiar friends were met together. Then *Sylla* said: That the one was declared by the other, for if we comprehend the cause aright, as touching women, it were no hard matter to find out a reason for old men: considering that their natures and constitutions be most opposite and contrary, in regard of moisture and driness, roughnesse and smoothnesse, softnesse and hardnesse: for first and foremost, suppose this of women undoubtedly, that their natural temperature is very moist, which causeth their flesh to be so tender, soft, smooth, fliske and shining: to say nothing of their natural purgations every month: when as therefore wine meeteth with so great humidity being overcome by the predominancy thereof, it loseth the edge and tincture (as it were) together with the force that it had, so as it becometh dull, every way discoloured and waterlike. And verily to this purpose, somewhat may be gathered out of the words of *Aristotle*: for he saith: That those who make no long draught when they take their wine, nor drink leasurly, but pour it down at once (which manner of drinking they call *εὐκλείαν*) are not so subject to drunkennesse as others: for that the wine maketh no long stay within their bodies, but being forcibly thrust forth, soon passeth through: and ordinarily we may observe, that women drink in this manner: and very probable it is, that their bodies by reason of continual attraction of humours downward, to the neither parts for their monthly terms, is full of many conduits and passages, as if they were divided into channels, pipes, and trenches, to draw forth the said humours: into which the wine no sooner falleth, but away it passeth apace, that it cannot settle nor rest upon the noble and principal parts, which if they be once troubled and possessed, drunkennesse doth soon ensue. Contrariwise, that old men want natural humidity, their very name in Greek seemeth to imply sufficiently, for called they are *γῆρας*, not because they are *γῆρας* εἰς γῆ, that is to say, inclining and stooping downward to the earth, but because they are already in their habitude of body *γῆρας* and *γῆρας*: that is to say, earthly: Moreover, their stiffnesse and unpleasing disposition, the roughnesse also of their skin, argueth their dry nature and complexion: it standeth therefore to good reason, that when they liberally take their wine, their bodies which are rare and impugious within, it worketh up into the head, causeth the which be solid and hard, washing them only aloft, and making no mire and dirt: but if the ground be light and hollow they enter and soke farther in: even so wine being soon caught, and drawne by the driness of old mens bodies, stayeth there the longer time: and were not this so, yet we may observe that the very nature of old men admitteth the same symptoms and accidents which drunkennesse maketh. Now these accidents occasioned by drunkennesse, are very apparent, to wit, the trembling and shaking of their limbs, faltering in their tongue, and speaking fumble, immoderate and lavish speech, pettishnesse and aptnesse to choler, forgetfulness and alienation of the mind and understanding, the most part whereof being incident to old men, even when they are best in health & are most sober, a little thing God, wot will set them clean out, and any small agitation whatsoever will do the deed: so that drunkennesse in an old man engendereth not new accidents, but setteth on foot and augmenteth those which be already common and ordinary with them. To conclude, there is not a more evident argument to prove and confirm the same then this: that nothing in the world resembleth an old man more, then a young man when he is drunk.

## THE FOURTH QUESTION.

Whether Women by their naturall complexion be colder or hotter then men?

When Sylla had delivered his mind to that effect; *Apollonides* an expert professor and well known in ranging a battell in array, seemed by his words to approve well of that which had been acknowledged as touching old men: but he thought, that in the discourse of women, the only cause was left out and overslipped, to wit, the coldness of their constitution, by means whereof, the hottest wine is quenched, and forgoeth that fiery flame which lieth up to the head, and troubleth the brains; and this was received as a very probable and sufficient reason, by all the company therein placed. But *Athyriatus* the Physician, a Thasian born, interjected some stay of farther searching into this cause: For that (quoth he) some are of opinion that women are not cold, but hotter then men; yea, and others there be (and that is a greater matter) who hold, that wine is not hot at all but cold, *Florus* wondering, and amazed hereat: This discourse and disputation (quoth he) as touching wine I refer to him there: and with that pointed at me: for that not many days before we had disputed together about that argument: But as for women (quoth *Athyriatus*) that they be rather hot then cold, they argue thus: First and foremost, they are smooth, and not hairy on their face and body, which testifieth their heat, which spendeth and consumeth the excrement and superfluity that engendereth hair. Secondly, they prove it by their abundance of blood, which seemeth to be the fountain of heat in the body: and of blood women have such store, that they are ready to be inflamed, yea, to frye and burn withal, if they have not many purgations, and those quickly returning in their course to discharge and deliver them thereof. Thirdly, they bring in the experience observed at funerals, which sheweth evidently, that womens bodies be far hotter then mens: for they that have the charge of burning and interring of dead corpses, do ordinarily put into the funeral fire one dead body of a woman to ten of men: For that one corpse (say they) helpeth to burn and consume the rest: by reason that a womans flesh containeth in it I wot not what unctuous or oyleous matter, which quickly taketh fire, and will burn as light as a torch, so that it serveth in stead of dry sticks to kindle the fire, and set all a burning. Moreover, if this be admitted for a truth, that whatsoever is more fruitful and apter for generation, is also more hot: certain it is, that young maidens be ripe betimes, readier for marriage, yea, and their flesh pricketh sooner to the act of generation, then boyes of their age; neither is this a small and feeble argument of their heat, but for a greater and more pregnant proofe thereof, mark how they endure very well any chilling cold, and the injury of winter season, for the most part of them lesse quake for cold then men do, and generally need not so many cloaths to warme.

Hereat *Florus* began to argue against him and said: In my conceit, these very arguments will serve well to confute the said opinion; for to begin with the last first, the reason why they withstand cold better then men, is because every thing is lesse offended with the like: besides, their seed is not apt for generation, in regard of their coldness, but serveth in stead of matter onely, and yeeldeth nourishment unto the naturall seed of man. Moreover, women sooner give over to conceive and cease child-bearing, then men to beget children: and as for the burning of their dead bodies, they catch fire sooner I confesse, but that is by reason that commonly they be fatter then men; and who knoweth not, that fat and greasie is the colder part of the body? which is the cause that young men, and those that use much bodily exercise, are least fat of all others: neither is their monthly sickness and violence of blood, a sign of the great quantity and abundance, but rather of the corruption and badness thereof: for the crude and unconcocted part of their blood being superfluous, and finding no place to settle and rest, nor to gather consistence within the body by reason of weakness, passeth away, as being heavy and troubled, altogether for default and imbecility of heat to overcome it: and this appeareth manifestly by this, that ordinarily when their monthly sickness is upon them, they are very chill, and shake for cold, for that the blood which then is stirred and in motion, ready to be discharged out of the body, is so raw and cold. To come now unto the smoothness of their skin, and that is not hairy: who would ever say that this was an effect of heat? considering that we see the hottest parts of mans body to be covered with hair: for surely all superfluities and excrements are sent out by heat, which also maketh way, boaring, as it were, holes through the skin, and opening the passages in the superficies thereof. But contrariwise we may reason, that the sleekness of womens skin is occasioned by coldness, which doth congregate and close the pores thereof. Now that womens skin is more soft and close then mens; you may learn and understand by one (friend *Athyriatus*) who use to lie in bed with women, that annoient their bodies with sweet oyls, or odoriferous compositions: for even with sleeping in the same bed with them, although they came not so near as to touch the women, they find themselves all perfumed, by reason that their own bodies which be hot, rare, and open, do draw the said oyments or oyls in them: Well, by this means (quoth he) this question as touching women hath been debated and contrarily by opposite arguments right manifestly.

## THE FIFTH QUESTION.

Whether wine be naturally cold of operation?

But I would now gladly know, (quoth *Florus* still) whereupon your conjecture and suspicion should arise, that wine is cold of nature? why? And do you thinke (quoth I) that this is an opinion of mine? Whose then (quoth the other?) I remember (quoth I) that not of late, but long ago, I light upon a discourse of *Aristotle* as touching this Problem: and *Epicurus* himselfe in his *Symposium* or banquet hath discussed the question at large: the sum of which disputation (as I take it) is thus much: For he saith that wine is not simply of it selfe hot, but that it containeth in it certain atomes or indivisible moles causing heat, and others likewise that engender cold: of which some it catcheth off and loseth when it is entered into the body, others it taketh unto it, from the very body it selfe wherein it is: according as the same petty bodies be of nature and temperature, fitted and agreeable unto us: in such sort, as some when they be drunke with wine are well heat: others againe contrariwise be as cold. These reasons (replied *Florus*) directly bring us by *Protagoras* into the temple of *Pyrrho*, where we shall meet with nothing but in certitude, and bestill to seeke, and as wife as we were before: for plaine it is, that in speaking of oyle, milke, honey, and likewise of all other things, we shall never grow to any particular resolution of them, what nature they be of, but still have some evasion or other, saying, That they become such and such, according as each of them is mixed and tempered one with another: But what be the arguments that your selfe alledge, to prove that wine is cold? Thus I see well (quoth I) that there be two of you at once, who preface and urge me to deliver my mind *ex tempore*, and of a sudden: the first reason then that cometh into my head is this, which I see ordinarily practised by Physicians upon those who have weak stomachs: for when they are to corroborate and fortifie that part, they prescribe not anything that is hot: but if they give them wine they have present ease and help thereby; seemingly, they repress the fires of the belly, yea, and when the body runneth all to diaphoreticall sweats, which they effect by the means of wine, no lesse, nay, much more than by applying snow, confirming and strengthening thereby the habit of the body, which otherwise was ready to melt away and resolve: now if it had a nature and faculty to heat, it were all one to apply meere wine unto the region of the heart, as fire unto snow: furthermore, most Physicians do hold that sleep is procured by cooling; and the most part of opioriferous medicines which provoke sleep be cold: as for example, *Mandragoras* and poppy joyce: but these I must needs confesse, with great force and violence do compresse, and (as it were) congeale the braine to worke that effect: whereas wine cooling the same gently, with ease and pleasure represseth and slaieth the motion thereof: so that the difference only between it and the other, is but in degree, according to more and lesse. Over and besides, whatsoever is hot is also generative and apt to engender seed: for howsoever humidity giveth it an aptitude to run and flow, it is spirit, by the means of heat, that endueth it with vigour and strength, yea, and an appetite to generation: now they that drinke much wine, especially, if it be pure of it selfe, and not delayed, are more dull and slow to the act of generation, and the seed which they sow, is not effectually, nor of any force and vigour to ingender; their medling also and conjunction with women is vaine, and doth no good at all by reason that their seed is cold and feeble: furthermore, all the accidents and passions which cold worketh do befall unto those that be drunke: for they tremble and shake, they are heavy and dull of motion, and look pale: the spirit in their joynts and members is unquiet, and moveth disorderly: their tongues falter, stut, and be double; last of all, their sinews in the extremities of the body, are drawn up in manner of a crampe, and benumbed; yea, and in many, drunkenness endeth in a dead palse or generall resolution of all parts: namely, after that the wine hath utterly extinguished and mortified their natural heat. Physicians also are wont to cure these symptoms and inconveniences procured by excessive drinke and surfeit, by laying the patients presently in bed, and covering them well with cloaths, for to bring them to an heat; the next morrow they put them into the baine or hot-boule, and rub them well with oyle: they nourish them with meats which do not trouble the masse of the body: and thus by this cherishing, they gently fetch againe and recover the heat which wine had dissipated and driven out of the body. And forasmuch as (quoth I) in things apparent and evident to the eye, we search for the like faculties which lie hidden and secret, how can we doubt what drunkenness is, and with what it may be compared? for according as I have before said. drunken folk resemble (for all the world) old men: and therefore it is, that great drunkards soone waxe old, many of them become bald before their time, and grow to be grey and hoary ere they be aged: all which accidents seeme to surprize a man for defect of heat.

Moreover, vinegar (in some sort) resembleth the nature and property of wine: now of all things that are powerfull to quench, there is none so repugnant and contrary to fire as vinegar is; and nothing so much as it, by the excessive coldness that it hath, overcometh and represseth a flame. Again, we see how Physicians use those fruits to coole withall, which of all others be most vinous, or represent the liquor of wine: as for example, pomegranates and other orchard apples. As for honey, do they not mixe the substance thereof with raine-water and snow, for to make thereof a kind of wine, by reason that the cold doth convert the sweetness for the affinity that is between them,

Bbb

into

THE

into austerity, when it is predominant and more puffed? what should I say more? have not our ancients in old time, among serpents, dedicated the dragon? and of all plants, consecrated Ivy to *Bacchus*, for this cause, that they be both of a certaine cold and congealing nature? Now if any do object for proofe that wine is hot; how for them that have drunke the juyce of hemlocke: the love-lye remedy and counterpoyle of all other is to take a great draught of strong wine upon it: I will reply to the contrary, and turn the same argument upon them; namely, that wine and the juyce of hemlocke mingled together is a poison incurable, and presently killeth those who drinke it, remediless. So that there is no more reason to prove it hot, for resisting hemlocke, than cold, for helping the operation of it: or else we must say, that it is not coldnesse whereby hemlocke killeth those that drinke it so presently, but rather some other hidden quality and property that it hath.

### THE SIXTH QUESTION.

*Of the convenient time for a man to know his wife carnally.*

**C**ertaine young men, who were new students, and had lately tasted of the learning contained in ancient books, were ready to reare *Epicurus* in pieces, and inveighed mightily against him as an impudent person, for proposing and moving speech which was neither seemly nor necessary, in his *symposium* or banquet, as touching the time of medling with a woman: for that an ancient man, well steeped in yeares as he was, should make mention and begin talke of venerous matters, and namely, at a banquet, where many young men were in place to particularize and make question in this sort: Whether it were better for a man to have the use of his wife, before supper or after: seemed to proceed from a lascivious mind, and incontinent in the highest degree. Against which some there were, who alledged the example of \* *Xenophon*, who alter his supper or banquet brought his guests (not on foot, but on horse-back, riding a gallop away home) to lie with their wives. But *Zopirus* the physician, who was very well seen and conversant in the books of *Epicurus*, said, That they had not read diligently and with adveitment, his book called *Symposium*, that is to say, The banquet: For he took not this question (quoth he) to treat of at the beginning, as a theme or subject matter expressly chosen and of purpose, whereto all their talke should be directed, and in nothing else to be determined and ended: but having caused those young men to rise from the table for to walk after supper, he entered into a discourse, for to induce them to continence and temperance, and to withdraw them from disolute lust of the flesh, as being at all times, a thing dangerous, and ready to plunge a man into mischief, but yet more hurtfull unto those who use it upon a full stomack, after they have eat and drunke well, and made good cheere at some great feast. And (quoth *Zopirus*) he had taken for the principall subject, the discourse of this point: is it pertinent and becoming a Philosopher, not to treat and consider at all of the time and houre proper and meet for men to embrace their espoused wives? or much better for to do in due season and with discretion? and is it (I pray you) not commendable to dispute thereof elsewhere and at other times; and altogether dishonest to handle that question at the table, or at a feast? for mine own part, I think cleane contrary; namely, that we may with good reason reprove and blame a Philosopher, who openly in the day time should dispute in publicke schooles, of this matter, before all comers, and in the hearing of all sorts of people; but at the table where there is a standing up betwixt familiars and friends, and where otherwhiles it is expedient to vary and change our talke, which otherwise would be but lukewarme or starke cold for all the wine, how can it be unseemly or dishonest, either to speake or heare ought that is wholsome and good for men, as touching the lawfull company with their wives in the secret of marriage? for mine own part, I protest unto you, I could wish with all my heart, that those Partitions of *Zeno* had been couched in some book entitled, *A banquet or pleasant Treatise*, rather than bestowed (as they are) in a composition to grave and serious, as are the books of policy and government of State. The young men at these words were cut over the thumbs; and being abashed, held their tongues, and sate them down quietly. Now when others of the company requested *Zopirus* to rehearse the words and reasons of *Epicurus*, as touching this point, I am not able (quoth he) in particular, to decipher, and precisely to set them down as he delivered them; but I suppose the Philosopher feared those violent concussions and motions, which are felt in the time of that conjunction; for that our bodies by that means be wonderfully stirred and disquieted, in regard especially of the wine, which being of it selfe stirring and causing much turbulent agitation, it killeth the body ordinarily out of quiet repose: if then the still masse thereof being in such an agitation, meet not with a settled calme and rest, by sleep, but runneth on still headlong to other troubleome motions, caused by the sports of *Venus*, so that the cords and ligaments, which are wont to hold our bodies entire, and maintain them firme and strong be slackened and loosed, great danger there is, that the foundation being thus shaken the whole edifice will fall to the ground: for surely at such a time, the very genitall seed is not to apt and ready to passe away with ease, being so pent and confitiate (as it is) by reason of repletion; so that it must be fetched away perforce, all troubled and confused. In which regard (quoth *Epicurus*) a man is to go about this businesse, when the body is at quiet and well settled; namely, after that the concoction and digestion both of our food is perfectly finished, which all that time runneth to and fro, and willingly avoideth all such disquietnesse; untill (I say) the body have need of new nourishment, And

\* See *Xenophon* in the end of his *Symposium* or banquet.

for to confirme this opinion of *Epicurus*, a man may adjoyne a reason out of Physick, namely, That the opportunity of the morrow-morning, when the concoction is thorowly performed is most safe and sure; whereas to struggle and meddle with a woman immediately after supper is never without danger: for who can tell (before the meat be well concocted) whether after the paining agitation by the act of *Venus*, there will not ensue another crudity and indigestion, so as a double inconvenience and surer upon surer may follow thereupon? Then *Olympicus* taking his turne to speake and opine: As for me, I am (quoth he) infinitely well pleased with that sentence of *Climachus* the Pythagorean: who being demanded the question, when the time was best to embrace a woman? *Mary* (quoth he) when thou art minded to do thy selfe most harme: For, that is ancient, which *Zopirus* laid even now of the fit time, and carrieth some reason with it: and as for the other, it hath (I see well) many and sundry difficulties and inconveniences, and is altogether unseasonable for its purpose. Like as therefore, *Thales* the wise, being importuned by his mother (who pressed hard upon him) to marry; prettily put her off, shifiting and avoiding her cunningly with words: for at the first time, when she was in hand with him, he laid unto her: Mother, it is too soon, and it is not yet time: afterwards, when he had passed the flower of his age, and that she set upon him the second time, and was very intant: *Alas* mother, it is now too late, and the time is past; even so, it were good for every man to carry and governe himselfe in these amorous games of *Venus*, that when he goes to bed at night, he lay to himselfe: it is not yet time: and when he riseth in the morning, *Now* there is no time left. Hereupon *Soclarus*: There be indeed (quoth he) *Olympicus*, the parts of champions, and require such as would enter combat for to win a prize at the sacred games: these matters (I say) altogether are for those to performe who can drinke wine freely, and make a game of it, reare, and eateth as lustily: but surely, this speech of yours little befitteth this time and place; for here are a sort of fresh and lusty young men newly married,

*By whom, not well the works, in some degree,  
Of love and Venus, must performed be.*

Neither is dame *Venus* as yet retired and fled altogether from us, for we still in chanting hymnes unto the gods, pray devoutly otherwhiles unto her, in this wise:

*O Venus, lady deere, and goddesse faire,  
Hold back old age, keep from us heavy haire.*

But let us consider now (if you thinke it good) whether *Epicurus* hath done well and decently, as he ought to do, in taking away *Venus* from the night season: or whether he hath not rather offended against all right and reason in so doing; considering that *Alexander*, a man well seen in love-matters; said, That she is acquainted with her above all other gods and goddesses: for in mine opinion, well ordained was this vaile and shade of darkenesse to cover those that are minded to performe these acts, and in some sort to hide the pleasure from them, and not to come unto this game by daylight, thereby to chaife from out of their eye-sight all flame, and to give meanes unto lascivious wantonnesse, for to be bold and confident; and finally, to imprint the memory of the act so lively, that it may remaine long after in the mind for to kindle and revive still new lusts and fleshly desires: For the eye-sight (as *Plato* saith) passeth most swiftly thorow the fleshly affections of the body in us, that is to say, into our soule, and evermore awakeneth and raiseth fresh and new concupiscence, representing with great force and vehemency, the images of pleasure and putting us in mind to pursue the same: whereas contrariwise, the night taking away the greatest part of such acts as be most furious, lulleth nature asleep, and bringeth her (as it were) to be, in such sort, as it doth not exorbitate or brake forth by meanes of the fight into lascivious loosenesse. But over and besides all this, what reason or sense is there in this, that a married man, returning all jolly, fresh and merry, from a festiual supper, and peradventure with a gay chaplet of flowers upon his head, yea, and perfumed with sweet and odoriferous oyles, should come home, go to bed, turne his back unto his wife, pull the doaths about him round, and so lie to sleep all night; and the morrow after, in broad day-light, and in the midst of household occasions and other affairs, send for his wife out of the nursery or womens room, for to come unto him about such a matter: or in the morning turne unto her and embrace her in his armes at such a time as the cock treads his hens? for the even-tide (my good friend *Olympicus*) is the end and repose of all our day-labours past, and the morning is the beginning of new travels. Of the evening god *Bacchus* is the superintendant and president, who is furnished *Lysius* or *Liber*, for that he treeth us from all paines-taking; and accompanied he is in this presidency of his with the Muses, to wit, faire *Terpsichore*, who loveth dances, and pleasant *Thalia*, who delighteth in feasts and banquets; whereas the morning riseth betimes by the break of day to do service unto *Minerva*, furnished *Ergane*, the work-mistress or patronesse of artizans; to *Mercury* likewise, the master of Merchants and occupiers; and therefore upon the evening attend songs, merricks, minstrelles, plaies, dances, weddings,

*Maskes, mummeries, feasts, and banquets,  
Noise of hamboies, flutes, and cornets.*

In the morning a man shall heare nothing but the thumping sounds of the smiths hammer and sledges, beating and knocking upon the anvil; the grashing noise of saws; the morrow-watch of Publicans, Customers, and Toll-gatherers, crying after that choire that come in or go forth; the journeymen of Serjants and criers, calling for apparence in the court before the judges; publications of edicts and proclamations; summons to attend and be ready to make court, and to do duty unto some

Prince, great Lord or Governour of State; at which time all pleasures begone and out of the way.

*Of Venus then there is no talk,  
The slaves of Bacchus do not walke  
With laydigh: the game some sport  
Of gallant youths is all-a-mori:  
For why? as day grows on apace,  
Cares and troubles come in place.*

Moreover, you shall never read, that the Poet *Homer* reporteth of any worthy Prince and demigod that in the day-time he lay either with wife or concubine; only he saith, that *Paris*, when he fled out of the battell, went and couched himselfe in the bosome and lap of his *Helena*; giving us thereby to understand, that it is not the part of an honest minded husband, but the act of seditious and wanon-given adulterer, to follow such pleasures in the day-time. Neither doth it follow (as *Epicurus* saith) that the body takes more harme by performing this duty of marriage after supper than in the morning, unless a man be so drunke or over-charged with meats, that his belly is ready to crack; for certainly, in such a case it were very hurtfull and dangerous indeed: but if one have taken his meate and drinke sufficiently, be well in health, and in some measure cheerefull; if his body be apt and able, his mind well disposed thereto; if he interpose some reasonable time between, and then fall to clip and embrace his wife; he shall not thereby incur any great agitation that night, nor feare the heavy load and repletion of meat: neither will this action worke any damage, or coole him too much, nor yet disquiet and remove out of their place the atomies (as *Epicurus* saith,) but if he compose himselfe afterwards to sleep and repose, he shall soone supply againe that which was voided, and replenish the vessels with a new afflux of spirits, which were emptied by the laid evacuation. But of all things, especial heed would be taken not to play at this game of *Venus* in the day-time: for feare lest the body and mind both, being troubled already with the cares and travells of sundry affaires, be by this meanes more exasperate and inflamed, considering that nature hath not a sufficient and competent time between to repose and refresh her selfe. For all men (my good friend) have not that great leisure which *Epicurus* had, neither are they provided for their whole life-time, of that rest and tranquillity, which he saith, that he got by good letters and the study of Philosophy: nay, there is not one in manner, but every day he finds himselfe amuled and employed about many affaires and businesses of this life which hold him occupied; to which it were neither good nor expedient for a man to expose his body so resolved, enfeebled, and weakened with the furious exploit of concupiscence. Leaving him therefore to his foolish opinion of the gods, that being immortal and happy they take no care of our affaires, nor busie themselves therewith, let us obey the laws manners, and customes of our own countrey, as every honest man ought to do: namely, to be sure in the morning to go into the temple and to lay our hands upon the sacrifice, if happily last night before we have done such a deed. For in truth, well it were, that interposing the night and our sleep between, after a sufficient time and competent space, we should come to present our selves pure and cleane, as if we were risen new men with the new day, and purposing to lead a new life, as *Democritus* was wont to say.

#### THE SEVENTH QUESTION.

*What is the cause that Must or new wine doth not inebriate or make folks drunke?*

The manner was in *Athens* to give the assay, and to taste new wines the eleventh day of the month [February] which day they named *Pithagis*: and verily in old time they observed this ceremony, to powre out the first drawing thereof unto the gods before they dranke of it, making their prayers devoutly, that the use of this medicinal drink might be wholesome and healthfull, not noisome nor hurtfull unto them. But in our Countrey this month is called *Nequarhous*, the sixth day of which month the manner was to pierce their vessels first, and taste new wines after they had sacrificed to good Fortune, and good *Damon*, and that the westerne wind *Zephyrus* had done blowing; for of all winds this is that most troubleth, disquieteth, and turneth wine: and looke what wine may escape this season, great hope there is that it will hold and continue good all the yeare after: according to which custome my father upon a time sacrificed as his manner was; and after supper finding that his wine was good and commendable, he proposed this question unto certaine young men that were students with me in Philosophy: How it came to passe that new wine would not make a man drunke: the thing seemed at the first unto many a very strange and incredible paradox: But *Agras* said, That this new sweet wine was every way offensive unto the stomacke, and quickly gluted it; by reason whereof a man could hardly drinke so much of Must as was sufficient to overcome his braines: for that the appetite is quickly dulled and wearied for the small pleasure that it taketh, so soon as it feeleth no more thirst. Now that there is a difference between sweet and pleasant, the Poet *Homer* knew well enough, and gave us so much to understand, when he said:

*With cheefe and honey that is sweet:*

*With pleasant wine, a drinke most meet.*

For in truth wine at the first is to be counted sweet, but in the end it becommeth pleasant, namely, after

after it hath age, and by the meanes of working, ebullition and concoction, passed to a certaine harshness and aulterity. But *Aristotellus* of *Nicalia* said, That he well remembered how he had read in a certaine place in some books: That Must mingled with wine (saith) and represseth drunkenness; he added moreover, and said, That there were Physicians who ordained for them that had over-drunke themselves, to take when they went to bed a piece of bread dipped in honey, and to eat it: If then it be so, that sweet things do mitigate and dull the force of wine: good reason it is, that new wine should not inebriate, untill the sweetness thereof be turned into pleasantness. We approved greatly the discourse of these two young men, for that they fell not upon triviall and common reason, but had devised new: for these be they that are alledged by every man, and ready at hand, to wit, the heaviness of Must or new wine. As *Aristotellus* saith, which maketh the belly soluble, and so it breaketh thorow the quantity of flatulent and muddy spirits that abide therein: together with the watery substance, of which the venosities directly get forth, as expelled by force; but the aquosity by the own nature enfeebeth the strength of the wine: like as contrariwise age augmenteth the power thereof, for that the watry substance is now gone; by reason whereof, as the quantity of wine is diminished, so the equality and vertue is increased.

#### THE EIGHTH QUESTION.

*What the reason is, that men who be thoroughly drunke are lesse brain-sick than those who are but in the way of drunkenness.*

Being then (quoth my father) that we have begun already to disquiet the ghost of *Aristotellus*, it shall not be amiss to try what we can say of our selves, as touching those whom we call *drunken*; that is to say, who are well heat with wine, but not yet (saith) drunke; for howsoever *Aristotellus* was ordinarily very quick and subtil in resolving such questions, yet in mine opinion he hath not sufficiently and exactly delivered the reason thereof; for as far as I can gather out of his words (he saith) That the discourse of reason in a man which is sober, judgeth aright and according to the truth of things as they be: contrariwise, his sense and understanding who is cleane gone, and as they say dead drunke, is done and oppressed altogether: as for the apprehension and imagination of him who hath taken his wine well and is but halfe drunke, is yet found, may his reason and judgement be troubled already and crackt: and therefore such judge indeed but they judge amiss, for that they follow their phantasies only: but what thinke you of this? For mine own part (quoth I) when I consider with my selfe his reason it seemeth sufficiently to have rendered a cause of this effect: but if you would have us to search farther into the thing, and devise some speciall new matter: Marke first, whether this difference which he maketh between them, ought not to be referred to the body: for in these that have well drunke there is nothing but the discourse of reason only troubled: because the body being not yet thoroughly drenched and drowned in wine is able to do service unto the will and appetite; but if it be once off the hooks, (as they say) or utterly oppressed, it forsaketh and betrayeth the appetites, and breaketh day with the affections, being so far shaken and out of joynt, that it can serve no more, nor execute the will: whereas the other having the body still at command, and ready to exorbitate together with the will, and to sin with it for company are more seen and discovered, not for that they be more foolish, and have lesse use of reason, but because they have greater meanes to shew their folly. But if we should reason from another principle, and go another way to worke (quoth I) he that will consider well the force of wine shall find no let, but that in regard of the quantity, it altereth and becommeth divers, much like unto the fire, which if it be moderate, hardeneth and baketh the tile or por of clay; but in case it be very strong, and the heat excessive, it melteth and dissolveth the same: and on the other side, the spring or summer season at the beginning breedeth feavers, and setteth them on fire, which in the progress and midst thereof being grown to their heighths decline and cease altogether. What should hinder then, but the mind and understanding which naturally is disquieted and troubled with wine, after it is once off the wheeles, and cleane overturned by the excessive quantity thereof should come into the order againe, and be settled as it was before? Much like therefore as Elebor, at the beginning his operation to purge, by over-turning the stomack, and disquieting the whole masse of the body; and if it be given in a lesse dosse or quantity than it should be; well it may trouble, but purge it will not: also as we see some, who take medicines for to provoke sleep, under the just and iull quantity which is prescribed, instead of sleep and repose find themselves more vexed and tormented than before; and others againe, if they take more, sleep soundly: even so it standeth to good reason, that the brain-sickness of him who is halfe drunke, after it is grown once to the highest strength and vigour, doth diminish and decay: to which purpose, new wine serveth very well, and helpeth much: for being powred into the body with great abundance, it burneth and consumeth that spire of madnesse which troubleth the mind and use of reason; much after the manner of that dolefull song, together with the heavy found of hautboies in the funerals of dead folke, which at the first moveth compassion, and setteth the eyes a weeping, but after it hath drawn the soule to torpity and compassion, it proceedeth further, and by little and little it spendeth and rideth away: the sense of dolour and sorrow; semblably a man shall observe, that after the wine hath mightily troubled, disquieted the vigorous and courageous part of the soule, men quickly come to them-

\* Hereupon  
happily may  
rise a pro-  
verb, That a  
man may  
drinke him-  
selfe sober.



themselves, and their minds be settled in such sort as they become quiet, and take their repose when wine and drunkenness hath passed as far as it can.

## THE NINTH QUESTION.

*What is the meaning of the common proverb: Drink either five, or three, but not four?*

**V**hen I had thus said, *Arifon* crying out aloud, as his manner was: I see well now (quoth he) that there is opened a re-entrance, and returne againe of meales into feasts and banquets, by vertue of the most iust and popular decree: which meales by means of (I wot not what) sober feason, as by a tyrant have been this long time banished from thence: for like as they who profess a canonically harmonie in founding of the harpe do hold and say, That the proportion Hemiolios or Sequialterall, produceth the lymphony or muscical accord Diapenta, or the duple proportion aritheth that Diapason: but as for the musick or accord called Diatessaron, which of all others is most obscure and dull, it consisteth in the proportion Epitritos; even so, they that make profession of skill in the harmonies of *Bacchus* have observed, that three symphonies or accords there are between wine and water, namely, Diapenta, Diatriton, and Diatessaron, singing and laying after this manner: Drinke five, or three, but not four; for the fifth standeth upon the proportion Hemiolios, or Sequialterall, to wit, when three parts or meales of water be mingled with two of wine; and the third containe the duple proportion; namely, when two parts of water be put to one of wine; but the fourth answered to the proportion of three parts of water powred into one of wine: and verily this meale or proportion Epitritos may fit some grave and wise Senators sitting in Parliament: or the *Archontes* in the Councill Chamber *Prytanæum* for to dispatch weighty affaires of great consequence: and it may befeme well enough some Logician; that pull up their brows when they are busie in reducing, unfolding, and altering their Syllogismes; for surely it is a mixture or temperature sober and weak enough: as for the other twain, that medly which carrieth the proportion of two for one bringeth in that turbulent tone of the Acrothoraces before-laid; to wit, of such as are somewhat cup-throten and halfe drunke:

*Which stirs the strings, and cords of secret heart,  
That moved should not be, but rest apart.*

For it neither suffereth a man to be fully sober, nor yet to drench himselfe so deep in wine, that he be altogether witlesse and past his fence; but the other standing upon the proportion of two to three, is of all other the most muscical accord, causing a man to sleep peaceably, and to forget all cares resembling that good and fertile corne-field which *Hesiodus* speaketh of,

*That doth from man all cares and curses drive,  
And children cause to rest, to feed, and thrive.*

It appeareth and filleth all proud, violent, and disordered passions arising within our hearts, inducing in the head of them a peaceable calme and tranquillity. These speeches of *Arifon* no man there would crosse or contradict; for that it was well known he spake merrily: but I willed him to take the cup in hand, and as if he held the harpe or lute, to tune and set the same to that accord and consonance which he so highly praised, and thought so good. Then came a boy cloie unto him, and powred out strong wine; which he refused, saying, (and that with a laughter) That his musick consisted in reason and speculation, and not in the practice of the instrument. But my father added thus much moreover to that which had been said: That as he thought, the ancient Poets also had to great reason feigned; that whereas *Jupiter* had two nurses nuries, to wit, *Ida* and *Adrastia*; *Juno* one, namely, *Euboea*; *Apollo* likewise twaine, that is to say, *Alcibia* and *Corymbia*; *Bacchus* had many more; for he was suckled and nursed by many nymphs, because this god forsooth had need of more meales of water, signified by the nymphs to make him more tame, gentle, witty, and wile.

## THE TENTH QUESTION.

*What is the reason that any killed fish will be naught and corrupt sooner under the raies of the moon, than in the sun?*

**E**nhydæmus of *Sinnium*, feasteth us upon a time at his house, and set before us a wild bore, of such bignesse that all we at the table wondered thereat; but he told us that there was another brought unto him far greater; many naught it was, and corrupted in the carriage by the beams of the moon-shine: whereof he made great doubt and question how it should come to passe; for that he could not conceive nor see any reason, but that the sun should rather corrupt flesh, being as it were, far hotter than the moon. Then *Satyrus*: This is not the thing (quoth he) whereas a man should marvel much in this case; but rather at that which hunters practice; for when they have stricken down either a wild bore, or a stag, and are to send it far into the City, they use to drive a spike or great nail of brasse into the body, as a preservative against putrefaction. Now when supper was done, *Enhydæmus*, calling to mind his former question, was in hand withal againe, and let it now on foot: And then *Meschion* the physician shewed unto them, that the putrefaction of flesh was a kind of eliquation and running all to moisture; for that corruption bringeth it unto a certaine humidity

midity, so as whatsoever is lappy or corrupted, becommeth more moist than it was before: Now it is well known (quoth he) that all heat which is mild and gentle, doth stir, dilate, and spread the humours in the flesh: but contrariwise, if the same be ardent, fiery, and burning, it doth attenuate and retraineth them: by which appeareth evidently the cause of that which is in question; for the moone gently warming bodies, doth by consequence moisten the same; whereas the sun by his extreme heat catcheth up and consumeth rather that humidity which was in them: unto which *Archilochus* the Poet alludeth like a naturall Philosopher when he said:

*I hope, the dog star Sirius,  
In fiery heat so furious  
With raies most ardent will them smite,  
And numbers of them dry up quite.*

And *Homer* more plainly spake of *Hector*, over whose body lying along dead: *Apollo* (quoth he) displayed and spread a darke and shadowy cloud:

*For feare lest that the scorching beames,  
Of sun aloft in skye,  
Should on his corps have power, the flesh  
And nerves to parch and dry.*

Contrariwise, that the moon casteth weaker and more feeble raies; the Poet *Ian* sheweth, saying:

*The grapes do find no help by thee,  
To ripen on the vine,  
And never change their colour black,  
That they might make good wine.*

These words thus passed: And then all the rest (quoth I) is very well said, and I approve thereof; but that all the matter should lie in the quantity of heat, more or lesse considering the season. I see not how it should stand: for this we find that the sun doth heat lesse in winter, and corrupteth more in summer: whereas we should see contrary effects, if putrefactions were occasioned by the imbecility of heat; but now it is far otherwise, for the more that the suns heat is augmented, the sooner doth it putrefie and corrupt any flesh killed; and therefore we may well infer, that it is not for default of heat, not by any imbecility thereof: that the moon causeth dead bodies to putrefie, but we are to refer that effect to some secret property of the influence proceeding from her: for that all kinds of heat have but one quality, and the same differing only in degree, according to more or lesse: that the very fire also hath many divers faculties, and shole not resembling one another, appeareth by daily and ordinary experiences: for goldsmiths melt and worke their gold with the flame of light straw and chaffe: Physicians do gently warme (as it were) in *Culneo* thole drugs, and medicines which they are to boile together most all with a fire made of vine cuttings; for the melting, working, blowing, and forming of glasse, it seemeth that a fire made of Tamarisk is more meet than of any other matter whatsoever: the heat caused by olive-tree wood ferveth well in dry stoups or hot-houses and dispotheth mens bodies to sweat; but the same is most hurtfull to baines and baths; for if it be burned under a furnace, it hurteth the boord-floores and feelings; it marcheth also the very foundations and ground-works: whereupon it cometh that *Ædiles* for the State, such as have any skill and understanding, when they let to ferme the publike baines unto Publicans and Farmegs, except ordinarily olive-tree wood, forbidding expressly, those that rent them at their hands, not to use the same; as also not to cast into the furnace or fire with which they give an heat unto them the feed of *Dumell*: for that the smoaks and fumes which ariseth from such matters, ingender head-ach and heaviness of the braine, together with a dizziness and swimming in the head, in as many as wash or bath in them. And therefore, no marvel it is, that there should be such a difference between the heat of the sun and of the moone, considering that the one by his influence doth drie, and the other by her power dissolveth humours, and in some bodies (by that meanes) causeth rheumes; and therefore discreet and carefull nurses take great heed how they expose their sucking babes against the raies of the moone, for that such infants being full of moisture, like to lippy green wood (as it were) warpe, twine, and cast at one side by that meanes. And an ordinary thing it is to be seen, that whosoever sleep in the moon-shine, be hardly awakened, as if their senses were stupefied, benumbed and stoned: for surely, the humours (being dissolved and dilated by the influence of the moone) do make bodies heavy. Moreover, it is said, that the full-moone (by relaxing and resolving humours in this wise) helpeth women in travell of child-bearing, to ease deliverance. Whereupon, in my judgement, *Diana*, which is nothing else but the very moone, is called *Lochia* or *Lithia*, as having a special hand in the birth of children; which *Timotheus* directly testifieth in these verses:

*I have azure skie, with stars beset,  
By moon that groweth speed  
Of child birth, and doth ease the paine  
Of women, in their need.*

Moreover, the moone sheweth her power most evidently even in those bodies, which have neither sense nor lively breath; for carpenters reject the timber of trees fallen in the full moone, as being soft and tender, subject also to the worme and putrefaction. And that quickly, by reason of excessive moisture; husbandmen likewise, make haste to gather up their wheat and other graine from the threshing

\* *Diana*,  
pluvis,  
or halfe-  
moon, as  
some inter-  
pret it.

threshing floore, in the wane of the moone, and toward the end of the month, that being hardned thus with dinneth, the heap in the garner may keep the better from being fulty, and continue the longer; whereas on which is inned and laid up at the full of the moone, by reason of the softnesse and over-much moisture, of all other, doth most crack and burst. It is commonly said also, that it leaven be laid in the full-moone, the paste will rise and take leaven better; for although it have but a little leaven, and lesse in quantity than ordinary, yet it faileth not by the sharpnesse thereof (by means of rarefaction) to make the whole masse and lump of dow to swell and be leavened.

To returne now unto flesh that is caught, and beginneth to putrifie, it is occasioned by nothing else but this, that the spirit which maintaineth and knitteth the same fast, turneth into moisture, and so by that meanes it becommeth over-tender, loose, and apt to run to water: an accident which we may observe in the very aire, which resolvethe more in the full of the moone, than at any other time, yea, and yeldeth greater store of dewes: which the Poet *Aleman* signifieth enigamatically and covertly unto us, when he saith in one place, that dew is the daughter of the aire and the moone; for theie be his words:

*What things on earth, the dew as nurse doth feed,  
Whom Jupiter and moone bewixt them breed.*

Thusevident testimonies we have from all parts, that the light of the moone is waterish, and hath a certaine property to liquifie, and by consequence, to corrupt and putrifie.

As for the brazen spike or naile above mentioned, if it be true (as some hold & say) that being driven into the body it preserveth the flesh for a time from rottenhead and putrification: it seemeth to work this effect by a certaine (strange quality and vertue that it hath; for the flower of brasse called *Verde-gris* Physicians do use in their astringent medicines; and by report, those that frequent mines, out of which brasse-ore is digged find much help thereby for bleared and rheumatick eyes; yea, and some thereby have recovered the haire of their eye-lids, after they were shed and fallen off: for the small scales or fine powder in manner of flower, which commeth and falleth from the brasse-flower *Chalcitis*, getting closely into the eye-lids, stayeth the rheume, and representeth the flux of weeping and watery eyes: and thereupon it is said, that the Poet *Homer* hath given these attributes and epithetes unto brasse, calling it *twinega* and *vaigora*. Besides, *Aristotle* saith, that the wounds inflicted by speares and lances with brazen heads, by words also made of brasse, are lesse painfull, and be sooner healed, than those which are given by the same weapons of iron and Steele; for that brasse hath a kind of medicinable vertue in it, which the said weapons do leave behind them immediately in the wounds. Moreover, that astringent things be contrary unto those that putrifie; and that preservative or healing matters, have an opposite faculty to such as cause corruption. It is very plain and evident: so that the reason is manifest of the said operation: unless haply some one will alledge, that the brazen spike or naile in piercing thorow the flesh, draweth unto it the humours thereof, considering that there is evermore a flux in that part which is hurt and wronged. Over and besides it is said, that there appeareth a waies some marke or spot, black and blew, about that very place of the flesh, bewraying (as it were) some mortification; a probable argument, that all the rest remaineth found and entire, when the corruption runneth and floweth thither as it doth.

\* I suppose  
Homer used  
the words in  
a far other  
sense, by Mo-  
chion leave  
be it spoken,  
who was a  
better Physi-  
cian, than a  
Grammarian,  
as it should  
seeme.

## The Fourth Book

### Of Sympoiaques, or Banquet-Questions.

The Contents, or Chapters thereof.

1. Whether the food consisting of many and sundry viands is easier of digestion than the simple?
2. Why it is thought that Multitrones are ingendred by thunder; wherein also the question is made, wherefore it is a received opinion, that those who lie asleep are not smitten with lightning?
3. What is the reason that to a wedding supper many guests were invited?
4. Whether the viands which the sea affordeth be more delicate than those of the land?
5. Whether the Jews in a religious reverence that they have of swine, or upon an abomination and abhorring of them forbore to eat their flesh?
6. What god the Jews worship?
7. Why the daies of the week bearing the names of the seven planets, are not disposed and reckoned according to the order of the said planets, but rather cleane contrary; where, by the way, there is a discourse as touching the order of nailes?
8. What is the cause that rings and signets were worn especially upon the fourth finger, or that next from the middle?
9. Whether we ought to carry in our seal-rings, the images of the gods engraven, or of wise personages?
10. What is the reason that women never ate the middle part of a Lectuc?

THE

## The Fourth Book

### Of Sympoiaques or Banquet-questions.

The Proem.

**P**olybius in times past (O *Sossius Senecio*) gave unto *Scipio Africanus* this good advertisement: Never to depart out of the market or common place, where Citizens daily assembled about their affaires, until he had gotten one new friend or other, more than he had before. Where you must understand this name of friend, not precisely as the Stoicks do, nor after the subtle acceptance of the word, according to curious Sophisters; namely, for him that continueth firme for ever, and immutable; but after a civil and vulgar manner for a well-willer, as *Dicaearchus* meant, when he said, That we ought to make all men our well-willers, but honest men only our friends: for surely, this true friendship and amity cannot be gotten and purchased, but in long time, and by vertue; whereas that good-will of civil persons may be gained by affaires and dealings one with another, by conference and convering, and otherwhiles, by playing and gaming together; namely, when opportunity of time and place meeteth therewith, which helpeth not a little to the winning of humane affection and favour among men. But consider now, whether that lesson and precept of *Polybius* may be fitted, not only to the market and common place aforesaid, but also to a feast or banquet; namely, That a man ought never to rise from the table, nor to depart from the company met at a feast before he know that he hath acquired the love and good affection of some one of those there assembled: and so much the rather, because men repair ordinarily to the publicke place of the City about other negotiations and business; but to a feast or dinner and discreet persons come as much to get new friends, as to do pleasure unto those whom they have already: and therefore, as it were, a bare, absurd, and illiberal part to seeme to carry away from a feast or banquet any thing whatsoever: so to go from thence with more friends than he brought thither at his entrance, is a delectable, honest and honourable thing: like as on the contrary side, he that is negligent and careless in this behalte, maketh that meeting and fellowship unpleasant and unprofitable unto himselfe, and so he goes his way as one that had supped with his belly, and not with his mind and spirit; for he that commeth as a guest to supper among others, commeth not on y to take his part with them, of bread, wine, meats, and junks, but to communicate also in their discourses in their learnings, yea, and their pleasant cures, tending all in the end to good will and amity. For wretches to catch and take fast hold one of another, had need of disfigured upon their hands; but wine at the table, especially when it is accompanied with good talk, is that which giveth meanes to lay hold upon friends, and to knit them together. For speech doth transule and derive by discourse and communication, as it were, by conduits and pipes, civility and humanity, from the body to the mind: for otherwise dispersed it is, and wandreth all over the body, and doth no other good at all, but only fill and satiate the same. And like as marle taketh from iron red-hot the fluxible moisture by cooling it, and maketh that softnesse to become hard and stiffe, whereby it is more apt to retain the impression of any forme received; even so honest discourse and talke at the table, suffereth not the guests that are eating and drinking together, to run endlong still, and be carried away with the strength of wine; but stayeth them, and causeth their mirth and jollity (proceeding from their liberal drinking) to be well tempered, lovely, well becomming, yea, and apt to be lealed (as it were) with the signet of amity and friendship, if a man know with dexterity, how to handle and manage men, when they are thus made soft and tender, yea, and capable of any impression, through kind heat, by the meanes of wine and good cheer.

\* *Lucydes*,  
rather  
divers wine.

### THE FIRST QUESTION.

Whether the food consisting of sundry sorts of viands be easier of digestion than the simple?

**T**HE first question then of this fourth Decade of Table-discourses, shall be concerning diversification of meats: for by occasion of the iolemn feast \* *Elapholia*, for the celebration whereof we went to the City *Hyampolis*. *Philon* the Physician invited us, who (as it should seem) had made the great preparation of good cheer to entertaine us magnificently; and seeing with *Philinus* a young Scythian, had his lion feeding heartily upon dry bread without calling for any other meat to it, took occasion to breake out into this admiration: O *Hercules*, now surely here is the common Proverb verified indeed!

*They fought in place all full of stone,  
But from the earth could lift up none.*

And therewith he leapt forth, and ran into the kitchen to fetch some good victuals for them: and after he had staied a pretty while away, he came againe and brought nothing with him but a few dry figs and some cheese; which when I saw, This is (quoth I) the ordinary fashion of those, who having made provision of rare and exquisite things, which also be costly and sumptuous, do neglect those which

\* That is to  
say, The  
great  
ling.

\* Of Zeno  
Pres.

which be good and necessary, whereof afterwards, they find a misse and want, I never remembered (quoth *Philo*) that our *Philinus* here seemeth to feed after the manner of \* *Sofrinas*, who never (by report) did eate or drinke any thing, all his life time, but only milke: but as for him, very like it is, that upon some change of mind be began this manner of diet, and that he had not alwaies lived so; but this *Philinus* here, like another *Chiron*, feedeth his son like as *Achilles* was brought up from his very infancy) with such meats as have no blood in them, that is to say, of the fruits of the earth. And think you not, that by this certaine demonstration, he verifieth that which is written of the *griothoppers*; namely, that they live of the aire and dew? I never thought upon a supper (quoth *Philo*) of a feast of an hundred beasts killed for sacrifice, as they were when *Arifomus* feasted his friends: or otherwise, I would have come from home well provided before-hand of simple viands, which be wholesome and healthfull, as preservatives hanging about our necks, against these luscious, surfeits and feverous feasts; for that I have heard many times Physicians say, That simple viands are easier of digestion then variety of meats, like as they be also readier at hand, and sooner provided. Then *Marcion* directing his speech unto *Philo*: This *Philinus* here (quoth he) mars all your provision of good cheere, frightening as he doth your guests, and (what lies in him) withdrawing them from eating thereof: but if you will request me, I shall answer in your behalfe, I will pawn my judgement and be their warrant, yea, and prove unto them afterwards, that the diversity of meats is more eadie to be concocted and digested than their simplicity and uniformity, to the end that they may in the meane time be the bolder and better assured to fall into their viuals, and make merry with that plentiful fare that you have obtained for us: Then *Philo* entreated *Marcion* to do so.

Now after that we had supped, we called upon *Philinus* to let in hand with the accusation of this multiplicity of sundry and divers viands: Why (quoth he againe) I am not the author of this position; neither is it I that have said so; but this good host of ours *Philo* here, who evermore telleth us: First and formost, that those beasts which feed upon a simple kind of meat, and the same alwaies one, live more healthy than men: whereas they that be kept up and crammed in coupes, cages, mews, and battons, or otherwise franked and fatted, are in greater danger to fall into dicates, and more subject to crudities, for that their meat is set before them mingled, compounded, and in some sort delicately condred. Secondly, there was never yet any Physician so bold and venturesome in making new experiments, who durst offer unto his patient sick of an ague any meat or nourishment compounded of divers sorts: but ordained there is for them alwaies the simplest that can be had, and least smelling of the kitchen and cooks crafts: as that which is most eadie to be concocted in the stomach: for in truth our meats shoul differ alteration, and be wrought by the naturall faculties within us: and like as the colours which are most simple do strike the deepest die, and give the best tincture: and among oyles that which hath no sent at all taketh best the aromatical drugs; and odors of the perfumes, and sooner turneth or changeth than any other: even so the simplest nourishment is that which most easily is altered and concocted by the vertue digestive: whereas if there be many and lundry qualities, and those of a contrary operation, they corrupt soonely, for that they fight and run one against the other, and so hinder concoction: much like as in a City, the confused multitude of many nations huddled together from all parts hardly will ever grow to any agreement, and consistence well united and accordant: for that each party leaneeth to their own rites, striveth to draw all to their own commodity, and followeth their private affections against others, hardly or never agreeing and framing well with strangers. Moreover, we may have a most evident and infallible argument of this by the familiar example of wine, for nothing there is that so doth inebriate, as variety and change of wines; and it seemeth that drunkenness is nothing else but the indigestion of wine: and therefore our great professed drinkers avoid all that ever they can, mixt and brewed wines; yea, and they that are the brewers and minglers thereof, do it as secretly as it is possible: like to those that lie in ambush: for surely every change brings with it inequality, and a kind of extasie, putting all out of frame; which is the cause likewise that Musicians are very wary how they stir or strike many strings together, and yet there is no other harme at all to be suspected but the mixture and variety. This I dare be bold to affirme, that a man will sooner beleve and consent to a thing where contrary reasons be alledged, than make good concoction, and digestion of divers and lundry faculties; but because I would not be thought to speake in jest, leaving these proofes, I will come to the reasons of *Philo*: for we have heard him oftentimes say, That it is the quality of the meat that causeth difficulty of digestion, and that the mixture of many things is pernicious, and engendred strange accidents: and therefore we ought to take knowledge by experience, what is friendly and agreeable to nature, that we may use the same, and rest contented therein; and if peradventure there be nothing of the own nature hard to be concocted, but that it is the quantity alone that troubleth and burthens our stomach, and there corrupteth, so much the rather, in mine advice, we ought to forbear divers sorts of viands, wherewith *Philo*ooke exercising his art cleane contrary to his masters, hath even now empoyoned and bewitched us, by diversifying our appetite, and by novelties and change, nor suffering it to be weary, and to refuse any thing, feeding it still with one thing after another, and causing it by this variety to passe the bonds of contentment in reason; much like unto the foster-father of Lady *Hippolyte*:

Who being set in meadow gay,  
Flower after flower did creep away:

And

And yet his mind so childish was,  
And in desire so far did pass,  
That booty none would him content,  
Till all the flowers most part off went.

In this case therefore it were good withall to remember the wise instruction of *Socrates*, who giveth us counsell to take heed and beware of those viands which draw men on to eate, when they are not hungry, wherein his meaning was this and none other; that we should avoid and feare the diversity and plurality of meats: for this is it that causeth us to exceed the bounds of sufficiency, farther than needfull is, and retaineth our pleasure in things that content the eye and the eare, in venereous matters, in plaies, games, and all kinds of sport, being continually refreshed and renewed still with a singularity and superfluity that hath many heads: whereas in simple and uniforme pleasures the attractive delight never exceedeth the necessity of nature. To be short, of this mind I am! That a man would better endure a Musician, who commended a confusion of many strings discordant; or a matter of wretlers who praised the annoying of bodies for exercise with sweet oyles and perfumed oymnts; than a Physician who recommended this multiplicity and variety of viands; for surely such alterations and changes from one dish to another, mult needs force and drive us out of the right way to health.

After that *Philinus* had thus said: I am of this mind (quoth *Marcion*) that not only they who disjoyne and sever profit from honesty, incur the malediction of *Socrates*, but also those who distinguish pleasure and health asunder, as if pleasure (forsooth) were repugnant, or an enemy unto it, and not rather a friend and companion thereof: for seldome and even against our wils (quoth he) do we make any use of paine, as being an instrument too boisterous and violent, whereas no man would be never to faime, and chase pleasures away, and banish them, but they will present themselves alwaies in our feeding, in sleeping, in washing, bathing, sweating, and annoying our bodies; they entertaine, foster, and cherish him that is over-travelled and weary, putting away quite by a certaine familiar property, agreeable unto nature, whatsoever is strange and offensive: for what manner of paine, what want, what poison is there, how strong soever it be, that riddeeth or dispatcheth a malady to soon or so pretently as the bath in due time; or wine given to those that have need, and when their heart doth faint? Our meat going down into the stomach merrily, and with pleasure dissolveth incontinently all wambles, reducing and restoring nature againe into her owne estate: as if faire weather and a calme sea on were come againe; whereas on the contrary side, the succours and remedies which are procured by dolorous and painfull means, by little and little, hardly and with much ado are brought about and effected, even with wrong and injury offered unto nature: let not *Philinus* therefore let himselfe in opposition against us, in case we do not hoile up and spread all our sails, to flie away from pleasures: but endeavour in study we rather to draw delight and health together, for to make a marriage between them, for which we have more reason than some Philosophers, to match pleasure with honesty. For first and formost (*Philinus*) me thinks in the very entrance of your discourse, that you are greatly deceived; setting down this supposal for a ground: That brute beasts feed more simply than men, and in that regard live more healthfully; for neither the one nor the other is true: and as for the former, disproved plainly it is by the testimony of the goats, of whom the Poet *Eupolis* writeth, who highly commend and praise their pasture, as being mingled, and consisting of the variety of all plants and herbs: who sing and say in this manner:

We feed in plenty every where  
Upon the plants which earth doth beare;  
The stately Firre we bark and browse  
The Halme likewise with mighty boughs;  
The tender crops of Arbut tree  
Which beares a fruit like Strawberry,  
Do yield us food, and many more  
Which both on hills and dales do grow:  
As namely sweet tree Trifoly  
On which we love to eate daily;  
The Juniper with fragrant smell,  
The Tough ay-green and leav'd as well;  
Wild Olives and fruitfull Lemick,  
Which yields the wholesome gum Mastick,  
A Fig-tree, Onkes that high do grow,  
Ivy, Lings which creep as low;  
Whins, Tamarix, Gorse and Broome,  
Cheste-tree, Brambles, all and some,  
Mollein, Longwort, Aphadell,  
Ladan shrub that sweet doth smell:  
Beech-trees, with triangled Mast,  
Thyme and Savory, be our repast.

Foreven these trees, shrubs, and herbs, here reckoned up, have no doubt infinite differences in taste,

taste, juyce, flavour, sent, and vertue; and yet there be a number more besides these left out unnamed. And as for the second point, *Homer* reuteth it by an evident experience, shewing that murrins and pestilent contagions seized first upon brute beasts: besides, their short life witnesseth sufficiently how diseased they be, and subject to many accidents and infirmities; for there is not one of them to speake of, that liveth long, unless happily some man will give instance of the raven and the crow, which we know and see to eat much, and to feed of all sorts of victuals. Moreover, me thinks that reasoning from the diet of sick-perions, you have not gone by a right route to discern the meats which be of ease or heavy digestion: for labour and exercise, yea, and to cut and chew the meat well serve much for concoction: but for all that they agree not to those who are in a fever: furthermore, I suppose, that you feare without just occasion the repugnance and contrariety of divers and sundry meats: for set the case that either nature doth out of different and dislike meats, chule and rake that which is agreeable unto it: the divers nourishment transmitting many and sundry qualities into the masse and bulke of the body, distributeth unto every part that which is meet and fit for it: so as that cometh to passe which *Empedocles* delivered in these verses:

*Sweet will to sweet, and therewith loves to joyne;*

*The bitter runs to that which bitter is;*

*Look what is sharp with sharp doth well combine,*

*With saltish parts salt fortheth not amiss.*

This goeth one way, and that another, each one to that which is futable thereto, after that the mixture by the heat which is feared in the spirits is dilated and spread abroad, the like alwaies follow their own kind: for a body mingled and compounded of so many things assembled together as ours is, by all reason doth contract, entertain, and accomplish the temperature thereof by variety of matter, rather than by a simple uniformity thereof; or if it were not so, but that the concoction is called, be it which hath force to alter and change our viands: yet the fame will both sooner and also better be performed in sundry and divers meats, than in that which is one and simple: for never will the like receive any passion or alteration by the like; but contrariety and repugnancy is that which sooner turneth and changeth the qualities being enfeebled by the mixture of their contrary: and if you resolve once (*O Philinus*) to condemn all that which is mixed and compounded; do not reprove, and revile this *Philus* here, for entertaining only his friends at the table with so costly fare and variety of dainty dishes? but also, yea, and so much the rather, whensoever he compoundeth and mixeth those royall concoctions, and those cordiall electuaries that be counter-poisons, which *Erastus* was wont to call: The very hands of the gods; condemn them (*I say*) of vanity, curiosity, and absurdity, who confound and mix together minerals, herbs, theriacall trochits, made of the parts of venomous serpents, for the composition of their treacles; yea, and in one word, whatsoever land or sea affordeth: for by your advice good it were for to abandon all these mixtures, and reduce all physick to plaine pishans, thin barley water, cucumber feeds, all simple, or at the most to oyle and water mingled together: yea, but this plurality and diversity of viands, doth by your laying ravish, transport, and enchant our appetite, as it were, besides it selfe, inasmuch as it hath no more mastery of it selfe: I answer my good friend: That the fame draweth after it purity and neatnesse; it maketh a good stomack; it causeth a sweet breath; and in one word, procureth cheerefulness in us, and a disposition both to eat more, and to drinke better: for otherwise why take we not courtesie instead of the fine flower of meale to thicken our pots? or why dresse we not and prepare cives and golden thistles, as well as we do the tender crops and heads of garden perage? why reject we not this odoriferous, fragrant, and delicate wine of ours, to drinke some savage and hedge drinke; as cyder made of apples, even out of the tub which rebounds with the comfort and musick of gnats and flies round about? for you will say (*I am sure*) that an healthfull diet is not the flying and avoiding of pleasure altogether; but rather a moderation and temperature of pleasures, making use of that appetite which is obedient to profit: for like as Pilots and Masters of ships have many devices and meanes to escape a blustering and violent wind when it is aloft; but when the same is allayed and down, there is no man able to raise and set it up againe: even so to withstand the appetite, and to repress the same when it doth exceed, is not so hard and difficult a matter; but to stir up, to provoke, and corroborate the same when it is loft, and decayed before due time; or to give an edge unto it, being dully and faint, is a mastery indeed, and a piece of work (my friend, I may say unto you) not so easily done: whereby it appears, that the nature of divers viands is better than the simple food, and that which by reason is alwaies of one sort, doth soone satisfie and give one enough, by how much more easie it is to stay nature, when she is too speedy and hasty, than to set her forward, being weary and drawing behind: and whereas some happily there be, who say, that repletion and fullnesse is more to be feared and avoided than inaction and emptinesse, that is not true; but rather the contrary: indeed, if repletion and surfeit grow to corruption, or to some malady, it is hurtfull: but emptinesse (if it bring and breed none other harme else) is of it selfe adverse and contrary to nature. Let these reasons therefore be opposed, as it were, dissonant and founding of a contrary string, against those which you (*Philinus*) have philosophically discouraged: as for others of you here, that for saving money, and to spare cost, take to salt and cumin: you are ignorant for want of experience, that variety is more pleasant, and the more delectable that a thing is the more agreeable it is to the appetite, (provided al-  
waies that you shun excess and gormandise) for surely it cleaveth quickly to the body which

\* *vidua*.

\* *vidua*,  
some read  
*vidua*,  
that is to  
say beanes.

is desirous of it, going, as one would say before, and ready to meet it halfe way for to receive it, having the eye-sight to prepare the way: whereas contrariwise, that which is lothsome or not pleasing to the appetite, floateth and wandereth up and down in the body, and findeth no entertainment in such sort, as either nature rejecteth it quite, or if she receive it, the fame goes against her heart, and she doth it for pure need, and want of other sustentance: now when I speake of diversity & variety of viands, note thus much and remember, that I mean not their curious works of paltistry: exquisite sauces, tartes, and cakes, which go under the name of *Abrutices*, *Candules*, and *Caryca*: which are but superfluous toys and vanities; for otherwise *Plato* himselfe allowed variety of meats at the table, to the great generous and noble Gentlemen his Citizens, whom he describeth in his *Commonwealth*, when he setteth before them, bulbs, scallions, olives, salad herbs, cheele, and all manner of dainties that worth would afford; and over and above all these, he would not deiraud nor cut feasts short of their junkets and banqueting dishes at the end of all.

## THE SECOND QUESTION.

*What is the reason of this opinion so generally received, that Mithromes be engendered of thunder? and that those who lie asleep are not thought to be smitten with lightning?*

A certain fippler, where we were in the City *Elis*, *Agemachus* set before us Mithromes of an exceeding biggenesse: whereat when the company seemed to wonder, one who was there present, smiled and said: Certes, these may be seem well the great thunders that we have lately had within these few days: by which words he seemed pleasantly to scoff at this vulgar opinion: That Mithromes should breed of thunder. Now some were there, who said: That thunder caused the earth to chink and open using the means of the air, as it were a wedge to cleave it, and withal, that they who seek for Mithromes, by those crevices guffe where they are to be found: whereupon arose this common opinion: That they were engendered of thunder, and not shewed thereby; as if a man should imagine that a shewre of rain breedeth snails, and not rather cause them to creep forth and be seen abroad. But *Agemachus* seemed then in good earnest to confirm the said received opinion, by experience, praying the company, not to conclude by and by that a thing was incredible, because it was strange and wonderful: For (quoth he) there be many other effects of thunder, lightning, and other meteors, or celestiall impressions right admirable: whereof it were very hard, if not altogether impossible, to comprehend the causes and the reasons. For this ridiculous round root called the Bulb, which maketh us (o good sport, and is grown into a by-word, little though it be, escapeth not by that means from thunder, but because it hath a property clean contrary unto it: like as the fig tree also, and the skin of the Seale, or Sea-calle, and of the beaſt *Hajana*, with whose skinned, mariners and sailors are wont to cloath the ends of their cross-taile-yards, whereupon they hang their failen-gardens also and good husbandmen, call those showers that fall with thunder, *and aduſa*, that is to say, good to water their grounds, and so they think them to be. In summe, it were great simplicity and meer folly to wonder hereat, considering that, we doe see before our eyes, things more admirable then this, and indeed of all other, most incredible: namely, out of moist clouds, fire to flash, and from the same (soft as they be) so great cracks and horrible claps of thunder: Well, I am (quoth he) in these matters somewhat talkative and full of words, because I would sollicite and move you to be more willing to search into the cause, for that I mean not to deale hardly otherwise with you, and seem to presse you every one to lay down your part toward the payment for these my great Mithromes. Why (quoth I) *Agemachus* himselfe seemeth in some sort to have pointed with his very finger to the reason hereof: for I assure you, at this present I cannot think of any one, more probable then this: namely, that together with the thunder, there falleth down many times a certain genital water, apt to ingender: and the cause thereof, is heat mingled among: for, that pure, light, and piercing substance of the fire, being now converted into lightning, is gone and passed away: but the more weighty, grosse, and stultent part remaining behind, enwrapped within the cloud, altereth and taketh quite the coldnesse away, and drinketh up the moisture, making it more flatuous and windy, in such sort, as by this means especially, the rains gently and mildly enter and pierce into plants, trees, and herbs, upon which they fall, causing them within a while to thrive in biggnes, and insuing within them a particular temperature and a peculiar difference of juſice. As we may observe otherwise, that the dew maketh the grasse to be better seasoned (as it were) and fitter to content the appetite of sheep and other cattel: yea, and those clouds upon which that reflexion is made, which wee call the rain-bow, fill those trees and wood upon which they fall, with a passing sweet and pleasant odour: whereof the Priests of our country be not ignorant, but acknowledge as much, calling the same *trifleeptas*, as if the rain-bow did rest or settle upon them. Much more probable it is, that when these waters and rains together with their ventosities and heats, occasioned by thunders and lightnings, come to pierce deep into the earth, it turneth and rolleth round, and by that means are engendered therein like nodosities and knobs, soft and apt to crumble, which we call Mithromes: like as in our bodies there breed and arise certaine stinuous tumors, named Kernels or Glandules, formed by occasion of I wot not what bloody humors and heats withall: for a Mithrome seemeth not to be a plant, neither without rain & moisture doth it breed, having no root at all, nor any sprout springing from it: it is wholly entire of it selfe found

C c c

about











manner there in place, opened the fame, and were in one song: for they gave this reason and said: Inasmuch as he who counterfeith those pastimes, is better then he who suffereth them indeed: and in regard that he who is not affected himself, excelleth the other: we knowing so much, take pleasure and are delighted: but I, albeit, that I set foot (as men say) in the dance of another, said thus much: That we being naturally framed for to discourse by reason, and to love things that labour of wit, and beautifully done, affect and esteem those who have a dexterity therein, if a thing succeed accordingly: for like as the Bee delighting in sweetnesse, flyeth from flower to flower, seeking busily where she may find any matter that will afford substance for honey: even so a man by nature ingenious, studious also of arts, and elegance, is wont to cherish, love, and embrace every action, and work, where he knoweth there was wit and understanding employed in the finishing of it: it then one come and present unto a young child, a little loaf of bread indeed, and withal tender unto him a pretty puppy or bulkin, or heigher made of palte or dough; you shall see that he will run rather to these counterfeit devices, then to the other: and even so it is also in other things: for if one offer him a piece of silver in the masse unwrought; and another tender unto him a little beast, or a cup made of silver, he will much sooner make choice of that which he seeth to have some artificial workmanship joined with it, and to favour of wit and cunning: and therefore it is, that children at this age take more delight, both to hear such covert speeches as shew one thing and mean another: as also those playes and pastimes which have some witty matters contrived, or ambiguous difficulties interlaced therein: for that which is smoothly polished and curiously wrought, draweth and allureth unto it mans nature of the own accord, as being proper unto it, and familiar, although it be not taught to embrace it. Forasmuch as therefore, he who is angry or grieved in good earnest, sheweth nothing else but common and ordinary passions: but in representing and counterfeiting of the same, there is a certain dexterity and subtilty of wit to be seen, especially if it speed well and take effect: therefore we delight to behold the one, and are displeased to see the other. For the proof hereof, mark how we are affected, fembly in other objects, shews, and fights, presented unto us: for with griefe and sorrow of heart we look upon those who are either dying or lie grievously sick: contrariwise, with joy we behold, yea, and admire either *Philotes* painted in a table: or *Queen Iocaste* portrayed in brasse: upon whose visage it is said, that the workman tempered a little liver with the brasse, to the end that this mixture of metals together, might represent naturally, and to the life indeed, the face and colour of one ready to faint, and yeeld up the ghost: And this (quoth I) my matters, (to you I speak who are Epicureans) is an evident argument on the Cyrenaikes fight against you: to prove that in pastimes and sports, presented to the eye and the eare, the pleasure consisteth not in seeing or hearing, but in the understanding: for an odious and unpleasant thing it is, to hear a Hen kee a creaking or cackling, and a Crow untowardly and unreasonably crying, and yet he that can well and naturally counterfeite either the cackling of an Hen, or the crying of the Crow, pleaser hand contenteth us wonderful well: fembly, to look upon those who are in Pitcock or Consumption, is but a lovelesse sight: and yet we joy and take delight to see the pictures or images of such persons: for that our understanding is pleased and contented with the imitation and resemblance of them, as a thing proper and peculiar unto it: for otherwise, what joy and contentment have men, or what outward occasion have they so much to admire and wonder at *Parmenton* Sow? inasmuch as it is grown to be a common by-word: This *Parmenton* was by report, one that counterfeited passing well, the grunting of an Hog: for which his singular grace and gift therein, his concurrents upon an envious humour, would needs assay to doe as much in despite of him: but men being already forestalled with a prejudicate opinion of him, would say thus: Well done; but nothing to *Parmenton* Hog: and therefore, one of them having gotten a little Porker indeed under his arm, made it for to squeak and cry; but the people hearing the noise of a swine indeed: All this (say they) is nothing to *Parmenton* Hog; whereupon the party let the said live hog run among them all, for to convince them of their corrupt judgement, whereby it appeareth evidently, that one and the same motion of the sense, doth now affect the mind alike, when there is not an opinion, that the action was performed wittily and with artificial dexterity.

### THE SECOND QUESTION.

*That there was in old time a game of prize for Poets.*

At the solemnity of the Pythick games, there was some question and talk upon a time, about the cutting off, and putting down of certain playes and pastimes, joisted in, to the others that were ancient and of the first institution: for whereas at the first, there were but three only that played their prizes: to wit, the Pythian player of flute or pipe, the harper, and the finger to the harp: after they had once admitted the actor of the raggedies, no sooner was this gate (as one would say) let open, but they were not able to resist and keep out an infinite number of other playes and sports: that rushed and thrust themselves in after him: by occasion whereof, there was much variety and frequent concourse at this solemnity, which I must needs say, was no unpleasant sight to behold: but surely it retained not the ancient gravity and dignity becoming the Muses indeed: for by this means

means, the Judges and Umpires were much troubled: besides there grew many quarrels and enmities, which could not otherwise be: for where there are so many contending for the prize, there cannot chuse but be a number of male-contentes, that mislead the garland. But among all others, it was thought good by the judges, to remove and banish from the solemnity, a number of those who penned Orations, and all the sort of Poets that came thither to verifie for the best game, which they did not (I assure you) for any hatred unto learning and good letters, but for that they who present themselves to these learned combats, be ordinarily the most notable persons of all others: the judges before said, revered them, and in some sort, pitied their case, esteeming them all worthy men, and well deserving of good letters, howbeit, not able to gain the victory. Wherefore, being at this council, laboured to dehort those who went about to change and alter setled customs, and who blamed in any of these sacred games, multiplicity and variety, as if they found fault with many strings in an instrument, or a consort of voices in vocal musick. Now, in supper time when we were in *Petrus* his house, who was the president and governor of the said solemnity, and courteously had invited us, the question was revived and set on foot a fresh: and we took upon us to defend the cause of the Muses, shewing, that Poetry was no modern profectio, nor entered but lately among the combats of sacred games, but that of ancient time it had won the victory, and gained the Crown. There were in the company, some who thought by their words of mine, that I meant to alledge old testimonies, and to cite stale and trivial examples for proof of the cause: to wit, the funerals of *Oedipus* the Theffalian, and of *Amphidamas* the Chalcidian, at which, *Homer* and *Hesiodus* made verses one against another for the victory, as stories make mention: but casting by and rejecting all these evidences so much tossed and divulged already by Grammarians: and namely, the funeral obsequies and honours done to *Patroclus* in *Homer*, where they read not *funus*, that is to say, Lancers of Darts, but *epitaphos*, that is to say, makers of Orations and eloquent Orators, as if *Achilles* had proposed rewards and prizes for Orators: leaving (I say) these matters, I affirmed: That when *Aeolus* celebrated the funerals for his Father *Pelias*, he exhibited a combat of Poets for the best game, wherein *Sibylla* went away with the victory. Hereat many stood up, and opposed themselves against me, demanding a real caution at my hands for to make good that which I had averred, for that it seemed unto them a very strange narration and incredible: but as good hap was, I called to remembrance, that I had read so much in the Chronicle of *Lybia*, compiled by *Aesander*, where the story is put down: And this book (quoth I) is not in every mans hand to read: howbeit, I think verily, that the most of you have been careful to peruse those records which *Polemon* the Athenian, a diligent writer and a learned Antiquary, who hath not been idle and idle in seeking out the antiquities and singularities of Greece, hath set down in writing, as concerning the treasures of the City *Delphos*: for there you shall find written, that in the treasury of the Sicyonians, there was a golden book: given and dedicated by *Arifomache* the Poetresse of *Ephesus*, after she had obtained the victory, and gotten the garland at the solemnity of the Isthmick games: Neither have you any reason (quoth I) to esteem *Olympia*, and the games thereof, with such admiration above the rest, as if it were another fatal destiny immutable, and which cannot be changed nor admit alteration in the playes there exhibited: as for the Pythian solemnity, three or four extraordinary games it had, respective unto good letters and the Muses, adjoined and admitted to the rest: the Gymnick exercises and combats performed by men naked, as they were at first ordained, so they continued for the most part still, and hold on at this day: but at the Olympian games, all save only running in the race, were taken up afterwards, and counted as accessories: likewise, there have been many of them which at first were instituted, since put down and abolished: namely, *καλπη*, that is to say, an exercise and feat of activity, when the concurrent mounted on horseback, in the midst of his course leaped down to the ground, took his horse by the bridle, and runneth on foot with him a full gallop: as also another, called *αλβιον*, which was a contest with a chariot drawn by two mules: moreover, there is taken away now, the Coronet ordained for children that achieved the victory in *Pentabulus*, that is to say, five several feats: to be short, much innovation, change and altering there hath been in this festival solemnity, from the first institution: but I fear me, that you will call upon me again for new pledges and cautions, to prove and justify my words, if I should say, that in old time at *Pisa*, there were combats of sword-fencers, fighting at the harp to the utterance, man to man, where they that were vanquished or yeilded themselves died for it: and if my memory failed me that I could not bring out mine author, and name him unto you: I doubt, you would laugh and make a game of mee, as if I had overdrunk my selfe, and taken one cup too many.

### THE THIRD QUESTION.

*What is the cause that the Pitch tree is held consecrated unto Neptune and Bacchus: and that in the beginning the victors at the Isthmian games were crowned with a garland of Pine tree branches, but afterwards with a chaplet of smallage or parsley, and now of late, with the fore said Pitch tree?*

There was a question propounded upon a time: Why the manner was to crowne those with Pine or Pitch tree branches, who gained the prize at the Isthmick games? For so it was, that during the said festival solemnity, *Lucanus* the High Priest made a supper at *Corinth*, at his own house,

\* *πιττα*,  
some take it  
for the pine  
and in truth  
the word  
*πιττα*  
agreeeth to  
both: neither  
marreth it,  
if all this be  
understood of  
the pine.

house, and feasted us: where *Praxiteles* the Geometrician, a great discourter, told us a Poetical tale, and namely: that the body of *Melicerta* was found cast up, and driven upon the body of a Pine tree, by the sea at a full tide; for that there was a place not far from *Megara*, named *Cale Dromis*, thatis to say, the race of the fair Lady: whereas the Megarians do report, that Dame *Leo* carrying her young babe within her arms, ran and cast her (elfe heading into the sea: But it is a common received opinion (quoth he) that the Pine is appropriate for the making of Coronets, in the honour of *Neptune*: whereupon when as *Lucianus* the High Priest added moreover and said: That the said tree being consecrated unto *Bacchus*, it was no marvel nor absurdity if it were dedicated also to the honour of *Melicerta*. Occasion was taken to search into the cause; wherefore the ancients in old time held the said tree sacred unto *Bacchus* and *Neptune* both? For mine own part, I saw no incongruity therein; for that these two gods be the Lords and Rulers over one general principle, or element, to wit, humidity or moisture, considering also that they generally in manner all, sacrifice unto *Neptune*, under the (urname *εὐδαίμων*), as one would say, Protector of Plants; and unto *Bacchus*, likewise, by the name or addition *Δειδύριος*, that is to say, the president over trees; and yet it may be said, that the Pine more particularly appertaineth unto *Neptune*: not as *Apollodorus* is of opinion, because it is a tree that loveth to grow by the sea-side, or for that it delighteth in the windes as the sea doth: (for some there be of this mind) but especially in this regard, that it affordeth good timber, and other stuff for building of ships: for both it, and also other trees, which for their affinity may go for her sisters, to wit, Pitch trees, Larick trees, and Cone trees, furnish us with their wood, most proper to float upon the Sea, and with their Rosin also and Pitch, to calk and caltre, without which composition, be the joints never so good and close, they are to no purpose in the sea: as for *Bacchus* they consecrated the Pitch tree unto him, for that Pitch doth give a pleasant seasoning unto wine: for look where these trees do naturally grow, the Vine there by report yeeldeth pleasant wine; which *Theophrastus* imputeth to the heat of the soile: for commonly the Pitch tree groweth in places of Marle, or white Clay, which by nature is hot, and so by consequence helpeth the concoction of wine: like as such kind of clay yeeldeth water, of all others most light and sweet: besides, if the same be blended with wheat, it maketh the greater heap, for that the heat thereof doth cause it to swell, and become more full and tender: moreover the Vine receiveth many commodities and pleasures more from the Pitch tree, for that it, with those things which be, is good and necessary, both to commend and also to preserve wines: for it is an ordinary thing with all men, to Pitch those vessels into which they put their wines, yea, and some there be who put Rosin even into the wine: as for example, those of *Euboea* in Greece, and *Italy*, the inhabitants by the *Po* side; and that which more is, from out of *Gaul* by *Vienna*, there is brought a certain Pitch-wine, called *Pistifer*, which the Romans set much store by, because it giveth it not only a delectable scent, but also a better length, taking from it a small time the newnesse and the watery substance thereof, by the means of a milde and kind heat. This being said, there was an Orator there, a man of great reading, a singular scholar, and an excellent humanitian, who cryed out in this manner: And is it so indeed? as who would say, it were not very lately, and but the other day, that the Pine tree yeelded garlands and chaplets at the Isthmian games? for heretofore the victors there, were crowned with wreaths and coronets made of Smallich leaves: and this appeareth by that which wee may hear out of a certain Comedy, a covetous Miser speak in this wise:

*I these Isthmick games I gladly would part fro,  
For price that Smallich wreaths in market go.*

And *Timaeus* the Historiographer writeth, that when the Corinthians, marched in battell array under the conduct of *Timoleon* against the Carthaginians, for the defence of *Sicily*, they encountered in the way certain folk, who carried bunches of Smallich: now when many of the souldiers took this occurrence for an ill pretiaige (because Smallich is taken to be an unclucky herb: in so much as when we see one lie extreame sick, and in danger of death, we say: That he hath need of nothing else but Smallich) *Timoleon* willed them to be of good cheer, and put them in minde of the victorious chaplets of Smallich at the Isthmian games, wherewith the Corinthians crowned the winners: Moreover, the admiral Gally of King *Antigonus* was called *Isthmia*, for that without any sowing or setting, there grew Smallich of it selfe about the poupp thereof: of this obscure and enigmatical Epigram under dark and covert words, significth plainly, earthen vessels rusted and stopp'd with Smallich: and in this manner it goeth:

*This Argive earth which ere while was full soft,  
Now baked hard with fire, the blood deep-red  
Of Bacchus hides within, but loe aloft,  
It Isthmick branches bears in mouth and head.*

Certes, they have not read thus much, who vaunt so greatly of the Pitch tree chaplet, as if it were not a modern stranger and new commer, but the ancient, proper, and natural garland, belonging to the Isthmian games. Which words of his, moved the younger fort not a little, as being delivered by a man who had seen and read much: and *Lucianus* the High Priest him selfe, casting his eye upon me, and smiling withal: Now by *Neptune* (quoth he) I swear, what a deal offeinsing is here! howbeit, others there were, who bearing themselves (as it should seem) upon mine ignorance and want of reading, were perwaded of the contrary, and avouched, that the Pitch tree branches were the ancient garlands in the Isthmick solemnity, as natural unto that country: and on the other side, the

the coroner of Smallich was a meer stranger, brought from *Nemea* thither upon an emulation, in regard of *Hercules*, whereby it had indeed the name, for a time, in so much as it supplanted the other, and won the credit from it, as being counted a sacred herb, and ordained for this purpose: but afterwards, the Pine garland flourished again, and recovered the ancient reputation, so at this day it is in great honour, as ever it was. Hereupon I suffered my selfe to be perwaded, and gave to good use, that many testimonies for confirmation of this opinion I learned, yea, and some of them I bare away and remembered: and namely, that out of them, *Emphorion* the Poet, who spake of *Melicerta*, much after this manner:

*The young man dead, they did bewaile,  
And then his corps they laid  
Upon green branches of Pine tree,  
Whereof the crownes were made.  
To have been made, those so, adorned  
With bouque glorious,  
Who at the sacred Isthmick games  
Were deemed victorious:  
For why? as yet the murthering hands,  
Sir Chæron had not slain  
The son of Nemea, woful dame,  
Whereas, with streame again  
Alopus runs; since when, began  
The wreath of Smallich green,  
To bind the head of champions,  
All bravely to be seen.*

Also one of *Callimachus*, who hath expressed this matter more plainly, where he bringeth *Hercules* in speaking after this manner:

*And is, though much inferior,  
And more terrestrial,  
Employ they that in Isthmick games,  
When in memorial  
Of god Aggon they with crowns  
The victors brave do deck,  
According to Nemean rites,  
And thereby give the check  
To chaplets made of Pine tree faire,  
Wherewith the champion  
For victory, some time was dight  
At games Corinthian.*

Over and besides, if I be not deceived, I have light upon a certain commentary of *Procles* writing of the Isthmian solemnity: namely, that at the very first institution thereof, ordained it was: That the victorious coronet should be made of Pitch tree branches: but afterwards, when these games were accounted sacred, they translated thither from the Nemean solemnities, the chaplet of Smallich: now this *Procles* was one of the Scholars in the Academy, what time as *Xenocrates* taught and flourished.

#### THE FOURTH QUESTION.

*What is the meaning of these words in Homer: Ζωστρεὺς ὕδατος?*

Some of the company where I sipped upon a time, thought *Achilles* ridiculous, in that hee Swilled his friend *Patroclus* to fill out purer wine, and lesse delayed, giving a reason withall, saying:

*For now are come to visit me for love,  
My dearest friends, and whom I best approve.*

But *Niceratus* the Macedonian, a familiar friend of ours, opposed him selfe directly, and said: That *Ζωστρεὺς* in this place of *Homer*, significth not meer Wine of it selfe, without water, but hot Wine, as if the primitive word *ζωστής*, were derived *ἀπὸ τοῦ ζῆτος*, that is to say, vial heat & ebullition: and therefore meet it was (quoth he) that (seeing his good friends were in place) there should be filled out for them, a cup of fresh Wine, new drawn, and full of life and sparkling spirits: like as we ourselves use to do, when as we pour out and offer unto the gods, our sacred libations: but, sayeth the Poet, calling to mind, and alledging a sentence of *Empedocles*, whose words be these, speaking of the general mutation of the universal world,

*What thing before most simple was and pure,  
Became now mixt by compound temperature,*

said: That the Philosopher meant by the word *ζωστής*, as much as *mixed*, that is to say, well tempered: Neither see I (quoth he) any thing to the contrary, but that *Achilles* might bid *Patroclus* prepare

\* For to be  
inter-  
preteeth  
*Ζωστρεὺς*  
*ὕδατος*

\* *Ζωστής*

prepare and dresse a cup of wine, so tempered as it should be drunk: neither must you think it a strange phrase or manner of speech, if he said, *ὀφείτω* for *οἶον*; for we are wont likewise, to put *should* in stead of *shou*; as also *δεῖ* for *δεῖον*; for received now it is, by ordinary custome, to use the comparatives of some words for the positives. Then *Antipater*, a friend of ours there present, said: That in old time they were wont to call the year by the name of *ἔτος*, and (as in composition with other words, signifieth as much as the greatness of a thing, so that old wine, that had such many years in this place, *Achilles* called *ὀφείτω*. As for my self, I inferred thus much, and put them in mind: That some think *ὀφείτω* signifieth [hotter] and by hotter they mean quicker, sooner, or with more speed; for in that sense otherwhiles we bid our servants to bestir themselves more hotly about their work, meaning they should make more haste, and dispatch their business. But in the end, I declared unto them, that their dispute and arguing about this point, was but childish, in case they were afraid to confesse, that *ὀφείτω* betokeneth that which was more pure and of it selfe, without tempering or delaying; as if (forsooth) *Achilles* had committed here, some incongruity or absurdity, as *Zoïlus* the Amphipolitan would seem to tax him: who considered not first and foremost: that *Achilles* saw *Phœnix* and *Nestor*, two ancient personages, who took no great pleasure to have much water in their wine, no more then all other old men, who love to drink it meer and pure; in regard of whose age, he gave commandment to delay it selfe for them: again, having been (as he was) the scholar of *Chiron*, and learned of him, the regiment of health, as one not ignorant what diet was meet for mens bodies, he thought thus with himself, that those bodies which are at repose and ease, having before time been used to travel, required a more remisse, soft and tender temperature, as that which is fitter and meetter for them; for so he caused among other forage and provender, his horses to be served with Smallch: for that Steeds standing idle in the stable, and doing nothing, will be troubled with the pains in their feet; for which infirmity this Smallch is a sovereign remedy: neither should ye finde (and read the *Iliad* throughout) that Smallch or any such kind of fodder was given to other Horses then to those who stood still, and laboured not. *Achilles* therefore being well seen in Physick, was both careful about his horses to provide for them, as the time required, and also considerate and respective to his own body, for to ordain the lightest diet, (as most wholesome) for himselfe who took his ease, and was not employed in bodily exercises; whereas he did not in that manner entertain those personages, who all the day had been in the field, and performed martial exploits, and warlike service, but gave order to pour out for them, stronger wine and lesse delayed. Now that *Achilles* otherwise of himselfe greatly loved not wine, for that he was by nature fowre and implacable, appeareth by these verses of the same Poet;

For gentle nature he had none,  
he was not soon appeas'd;  
But ireful, fierce, and violent;  
and once mov'd, hardly pleas'd.  
And in one place, speaking liberally of himselfe, he said:  
That many nights he slept no wink,  
Of sundry matters he did thinke.

Now who knoweth not, that short sleeps agree not to those that drink meer wine, neither will they serve their turn: also when as he contended with *Agamemnon*, and reviled him, at the first word he gave him the term *ἰνολύτης*. Wine-bibber, or Drunkard; as if drunkenness and wine-bibbing were the vice which his heart abhorred most: And therefore to conclude, considering all these circumstances, great reason he had, that seeing right honourable personages were come unto him, and those of good years, he should be well advised to take order, not to temper wine for them, as his manner was for himselfe; because the same had been too small, and not agreeable for their persons.

### THE FIFTH QUESTION.

Of those who invite many guests to supper.

Vpon my return from *Alexandria*, all my friends one after another feasted me, for my welcome home: and to bear me company, they invited with me, as many as they thought, in regard of kindred or friendship, were any way toward me; in such sort, as by reason of the multitude of guests, our meetings were ordinarily more tumultuous, and sooner dissolved then they had wont to be: the disorder therefore of sitting at such feasts, gave us occasion to discourse much of that matter. But *Oneiscrates* the Physician when he feasted me in his turn, as others did; bade not very many, but those only whom he knew to be my special friends, and most familiar with me: whereupon I called to minde a sentence written by *Plato*, as touching a City, and thought with my selfe, that it might very well be applied unto a feast: for like as a City which still groweth and augmenteth, in the end becomes more a City; for that there is a certain bignesse prefixed and limited unto it, which it must not over-grow: even so there is a just proportion in the greatness of a feast, within the which it is still a feast: but if it passe and exceed the same (I mean) in the number and multitude of guests, so as they cannot salute and speak one to another conveniently, they have no means to cheer up and drink one to another reciprocally, nor exercise their mutual knowledge kindly: surely it is

80

no more to be called a feast: for there should not be at a feast, as in a camp, messengers and curriers between: nor after the manner of a great gally, special servants, going from one to another, to cheer them up, and bid them be merry; but the guests ought to speak and talk one with another: for that a feast must be disposed after the manner of a dance, so as he who sits lowest may hear him that is highest. After I had thus much said, my grandfather *Lamprias* began to speak, and that with so loud a voice and so strong, that all the company might hear him: There is then (quoth he) a kinde of mean and moderation, whereof he had need, not only in eating and drinking at a feast, but also in the bidding and inviting of guests: for surely there may be an excess in unmeasurable courteousie and humanity, when it cannot omit nor leave out any of those with whom a man heretofore hath feasted or made merry, but draweth all of them, as if the case were to go for to see a play, behold solemn lights, or to hear musicke; and for mine own part, I think that the good man of the house, or master of a feast, is not so much worthy to be blamed or laughed at, for being at a fault of bread or drink for his guests; as when he hath not room enough to place them: of which he ought to make provision with the largest, not only for those who are formally invited, but also for comers in, and such as bid themselves: for strangers also that pass by: moreover, if there chance to be some want of bread or wine, the fault may be laid upon the servants, as if they had made it away, or played the thieves: but if there be no room left, it cannot chuse but be imputed to the negligence and undirection of him who invited the guests: *Hesiodus* is wonderfully much commended for writing thus:

At first no doubt it was so cast,  
That there might be a Chaos vast.

For in the beginning of the world, requisite it was that there should be a void place sort to receive and comprehend all those things that were to be created: Next (quoth he) as my son yesterday made supper, according to that which *Anaxagoras* said: All things were huddled and jumbled together pell-mell, confusedly: and admit that there be place and room enough, yea, and provision of meat sufficient, yet nevertheless, a multitude would be avoided, as a thing that bringeth confusion, and which maketh a society unlovable and a meeting unmeet and not affable: Certes, lesse harm it were, and more tolerable a great deal, to take from them who are bidden to our table, their Wine, then their Communication and fellowship of talk; and therefore *Theophrastus* called (merrily) *Barbarus* those dry banquets without wine: for the good talk that is between a number of persons sitting tete a tete by another: but they who bring a fort together into one place, thrumbling them one upon another, deprive them of all conference, and discounting reciprocally, or rather indeed they bring it to passe, that but very few can commune and converse together: for by that means they sort themselves apart, two by two, or three by three, for to have home talk: as for those who are set further off, hardly they cannot discern, nor not know them, being distant and removed aunder, as a man would say, the length of an horie race:

Some, where *Achilles* tents are sight  
close for to make their stay;  
And some, where *Ajax* quarter is  
as farr as other way.

Thus you shall see how some rich men hereby, otherwise shew their foolish magnificence to no purpose, in building halls, and dining chambers, containing thirty tables a piece in them, yea, and some of greater capacity then so: and verily this manner of preparation for to make suppers and dinners, is for folk that have no amity nor society one with another, when there is more need of some proof of a field to marshal them, then an usher of an hall to see good order among them: but these men may in some sort well be pardoned for doing so; because they think their riches no riches, but that it is blind, deaf, lame also, or shut up, that cannot get forth, unless it have a number of waiters, like as a Tragedy, many spectators: but as for us, this remedy we have of not assembling too many at once together: namely to bid often, and to make divers suppers, to invite (I say) our friends and well-willers at sundry times, by few at once, and so by this means we may make amends for all, and bring both ends together: for they that feast but seldom, and as they say *ἐπιπαιῶ*, that is to say, by the cart loads, are forced to put in the roll all those that any way belong unto them, either by kindred, friendship or acquaintance whatsoever: whereas they who ordinarily pick out three or four at a time, and do so oft, maketh their feasts, as it were, little barks, to discharge their great hulks, and the same to go light and nimble: moreover, when a man considereth continually with himselfe the cause why he inviteth his friends: it maketh him to observe a difference and choice in that great multitude of them: for like as for every occasion and business that we have, we assemble not all sorts of people, but such only as be meet for each purpose; for if we should have need of good counsel, we call for those who be wise: if we would have a matter pleaded, we fend for eloquent Orators: if a voyage, or journey performed, we seek for such as will take up with short meales, and who have little else to do, and be best at leisure; even so in our invitations and feasts, we must have regard ever and anon to chuse those who are meet, and will sort well together: meet men I call these for example sake: if he be a Prince or great Potentate whom we invite to supper, the fittest persons to bear him company, be the head Officers, the Magistrates and principal men of the City, especially if they be friends, or already acquainted: if we make a marriage supper, or a feast for the birth of a child, those would be bidden who are of kin

D d d 2

dred

dred and affinity; and in one word, as many as are linked together by the bond of *Jupiter Homaginos*, that is to say, the protector of conflagrancy: and in all these feasts and solemnities, we ought evermore to have a carefull eye to bring them together who are friends or well willers unto another: for when we sacrifice unto some one god, we make not our prayers to all others, although they be worshipped in the same Temples, and upon the same Altars: but if there be three cups or bowles brought full unto us, we pour libations out of the first to some, the second we offer to others, and the last we bestow likewise upon a third sort: for there is no envy abideth in the quire or dance of the gods: semblably, the dance and quire of friends is divine, in some sort, if so be a man know how to distribute and deal his courtesie and kindnesse decently among them, and as it were to go round about with them all.

## THE SIXTH QUESTION.

*What is the cause that guests at the beginning of a supper sit close together at the table, but afterwards more at liberty?*

These words thus passed, and then immediately a new question was moved; namely, What the cause might be, that men commonly at the beginning of dinner or supper, sit at the table very straight and close, but toward the end more at large; whereas it should seem by all reason, that they should do clean contrary, for that then their bellies be full? Some of the company attributed this unto the form and posture of their bodies, as they sit: for that ordinary men sit to their meat, directly at their full breadth, groveling forward, and put their right hands straight forth upon the table: but after they have well supped, they turn themselves more to a side, and sit edge-wise, taking up no place now, according to the superficies of the body, not sitting (as a man would say) by the square, but rather by the line and the plumb: like as therefore the cockal-bones occupie lesse room, when they fall upon one of their sides, then if they be couched flat; even so every one of us at the first sitteth bending forward, and fronteth the table with his mouth and eyes directly upon it; but afterwards he changeth that form, from front to flank, and turneth sidelong to the board. Many there were who ascribed the reason of this, to the yeelding of the couch or bed, whereon men sit at their meat: for being pressed down with sitting, is stretched broader and wider, like as our shoes with wearing and going in them, grow more slack and ease for us by little and little, until in the end they be so large, that we may turn our feet in them. Then the good old man spake merrily and said: That one and the same feast had always two Presidents and Governors different one from another: at the beginning hunger, which cannot skill of keeping any good orders toward the end, *Bacchus*, and him all men know very well, and confesse to have been a very sufficient captain, and an excellent leader of an Army: like as therefore *Epaminondas* (when as other Captains by their ignorance and unskillfulnesse had brought the Army of the Thebans into a place so narrow that all was thrust together, and the ranks and files came one upon another, and crushed themselves) took upon him the place of a commander, and not onely delivered it out of those straits, but also reduced it into good order of battell: even so god *Bacchus* surnamed *Lycus*, and *Chorus*, that is to say, a deliverer, and master of dances, finding us at the beginning of supper thrusting one another, and having no elbow room, by reason of hunger that thrumbleneth us together like a sort of dogs, bringeth us again into a decent order, whereby we sit at ease and liberty enough like good fellows.

## THE SEVENTH QUESTION.

*Of those who are said to bewitch with their eyes:*

Here grew some question upon a time, at the table, as touching those who are reported to be eye-biters, or to bewitch with their eyes: and when others (in manner all) passed it over with laughing, as a frivolous and ridiculous thing: *Metrus Florus*, who had invited us to his house, took the matter in hand, and said: That the effects or events rather, which daily we do observe, do make marvellous much to the brute and voice that goeth of the thing; but for want of yeelding a good reason thereof, and setting down the true cause, the report many times of such matters wanteth credit: But unjustly (quoth he) and wrongfully in mine opinion; for an infinite number there be of other matters, that have a real effence, and are notoriously known to be so, although we are ignorant of their cause; and in one word, whosoever seeketh in each thing for a probable reason, overthroweth miracles and wonders in all; for where we fail to give reason of a cause, there begin we to doubt, and make question, and that is as much to say, as to play the Philosophers: so as we may infer consequently: That they discredit things admirable, do in some sort, take away and abolish all Philosophy: but we ought (quoth he) in such things as these, to search \* Why they are so, by reason: and learn \* That they are so, by history and relation: for histories do report unto us many narrations of like examples. Thus we know, that there be men, who by looking wittily and with fixed eyes upon little infants, do hurt them most of all, for that the habit and temperature of their bodies which is moist, tender, and weak, soon receiveth alteration by them, and changeth to the worse  
wheres

whereas lesse subject they be to such accidents, when their bodies are better knit, most strong and compact. And yet *Philarchus* writeth in his History of a certain nation and people inhabiting the Realm of *Pontus* in times past, called *Thybiens*, who were by that means pettiforous and deadly, not only to young babes, but also to men grown; for look how many either their eye, their breath, or their speech could reach unto, they were sure to fall sick, and pine away: and this harm was felt and perceived (as it should seem) by Merchants, who resorted into those parts, and brought from thence, slaves to be sold. But as for these, the example peradventure is not so strange and wonderful, becaute the touching, contagion, and familiar converting together, may yeeld a manifest reason and cause of such accidents; and like as the wings of otherlowies, if they be laid together with those of the Eagle, perill, consume, and come to nothing, for that the plume and down of the feathers fall off and putrifie: even so, there is no reason to the contrary, but that the touching of a man should be partly good and profitable, and in part hurtful and prejudiciall; marry, that folk should take harm by being seen only, and looked on, is an accident which (as I said before) we know to be; but for that the cause thereof is so difficult and hard to be hunted out, the report of it is incredible: Howbeit (quoth I then) you winde the cause already; you have met (in some sort I say) with the traicts and footing thereof, and are in the very way of finding it out, being come already to those defluxions that passe from the bodies; for the scent, the voice, the speech and breath, be certain defluxions and streams (as it were) flowing from the bodies of living creatures, yea, and certain parcels thereof, which move and affect the senses, when as they suffer by the same, lightning and falling upon them: and much more probable it is, that such defluxions proceed from the bodies of living creatures, by the means of heat and motion; namely, when they be enchaufed and stirred; as also that the vital spirits then do beat strongly, and the pulses work space, whereby the body being shaken, casteth from it continually, certain defluxions, as is before said, and great likelihood there is also, that the time should passe from the eyes, more then from any other conduit of the body: for the sight being a sense very swift, active and nimble, doth send forth and disperse from it, a wonderful fiery puissance, together with a spirit that carrieth and directeth it; in such sort, that a man by the means of this eye-sight, both suffereth and doth many notable effects, yea, and receiveth by the objects which he seeth, no small pleasures or displeasures; for love (one of the greatest and most vehement passions of the mind) hath the source and original beginning at the Eye: in somuch, as he or she that is surprised therewith, doth even relolve and melt with beholding the beauty of those persons whom they love, as if they would run and enter into them: and therefore, a man may very well marvel at those, who confessing that we suffer and receive hurt by the eye, think it a strange matter to do harm by the same; for the very aspect and regard of such persons as are in the flower of their beauty, and that which passeth from their eyes, whether it be light or flowing off of the spirits, doth liquifie and consume those who be enamoured on them, with a certain pleasure mingled with pain, which they themselves call Bitter-sweete: for nothing so much as they wounded or affected, either by hearing or seeing, as by seeing and being seen so deep is the penetration, and so (from the inflammation by the eye) which maketh me otherwise to think, that no experience and proof they have ever had what love is, who wonder at the Median *Naphtia* near to *Babylon*, that it should burn and catch a flame, being a great way off from the fire: for even so, the eyes of fair and beautiful creatures, kindle fire within the very hearts and soles of poor Lovers, yea, though they look not upon them but afar off: but we know full well, and have often seen the remedy of those who are troubled with the Jaundice; namely, that if they can have a sight of the bird \* *Charadrius*, they are presently cured: for this bird hath such a nature and temperature, that it draweth to it self, and receiveth the mal-dy passing from the patient, as it were a fluxion, and that by the conduit of the eyes; which is the reason that these birds are never willing to see a person who hath the Jaundice, neither can they endure so to do, but turn aside and avoid it all that ever they can, by closing their eyes together, nor envying (as some think) the cure of that disease by them, but tearing to be hurt and wounded themselves: and of all other maladies, it is well known, that they who converse with them whose eyes be inflamed and bleered, are soonest and most of all infected therewith, so quickly a power and so ready, hath the sight to set upon another, and inflict the contagion of that infirmity. Then *Paroelcus*: True it is that you say (quoth he) in bodily passions and diseases: but as for those which be more spiritual, and concerne the soul, among which I reckon this kind of witching, how can it be, and how is it possible, that the only act and regard of the eye should transmit any noisance or hurt into the body of another? Why? know you not (quoth I) that the soul (according as it is disposed) doth likewise affect and alter the body? the very cogitation of *Venus*, causeth the flesh to rise: the ardent heat in courageous mastiffs and band-dogs, which are put upon wild beasts for to encounter them when they are baited, dimmeth their eye-sight, and oftentimes makes them stark blind: sorrow, avarice, and jealousy, alter the colour and complexion of the face, drie up the habit and constitution of the body; and envy no lesse subtiler then the rest, and piercing directly to the very soul, filtheth the body also with an untoward and bad disposition, which painters lively do represent in those tables which contain the picture of enviousace: when as therefore they who be infected with envy, do cast their eyes upon others, which because they are feared near unto the soul, do catch and draw unto them very easily this vice, and so shoot their venomous raies, like unto poisoned darts upon them: if such chance to be wounded and hurt thereby, whom they look upon, and wittily behold: I see no strange thing, not





greatly, but also, above, or with-out-forth: for in this acception, the head or lintel of a door, we name *ἄνωθεν*, that is to say, above the door: and likewise, an upper room, chamber, or loft, hath, is called *Θύρον*, and the word is tull of juice: so that when it burneth, you shall see it call up a most eager and bitter smoak, and when it is burnt, the ashes make a Leie very strong, and marvelous detestive, because of the acrimony and sharpnesse thereof: yea, and (that which is most admirable) whereas all other trees and plants clad with leaves and bearing fruit, put forth a flowerbe-fore, only the fig tree never shewed blossom: and if it be true which is moreover said; that it is ne-ver blasted, or smitten with lightning, a man may attribute and ascribe it to the bitternesse and evil habitude of the stock: for it should seem that lightning and thunder never rouch any such things, no more then the skin of a sea-calf, or of the beast *Hyana*. Here the good old man (our grandire) tak-king occasion to speak, said: No marvel then, if all the sweetnesse be found in the fruit, the rest of the tree be harsh and bitter: for like as when the cholericke humour is cast into the bag or bladder of the gally, the proper substance of the liver it selfe remaineth very sweet, even so the fig tree having lent all the sweetnesse and farnesse it had into the fruit, remaineth it selfe disurnished of it; for that within the trunk of the said tree there is otherwise some sweetnesse and good juice, though it be but a little: I make an argument from the herb Rue: which they say, if it grow under or neere a figge tree, becometh more pleasant in smell, and in taste more mild, by receiving and enjoying some small sweetnesse from it: whereby that excessive, strong and odious quality of Rue is abated and ex-tinct: unless peradventure a man will reason clean contrary, and say, that the fig tree drawing some-what from Rue, for the own nurture, taketh from that herb some part of the bitternesse and ac-rimony thereof.

## THE TENTH QUESTION.

Who be they who according to the common proverb, are said, *πρὸς ἅλα καὶ κύμινον*, that is to say, about the salt and cumin? and so by the way, why the Poet Homer named salt divine.

**F**LORUS asked us one day when we were at supper in his house, who they were whom we teamed by an usual by-word, to be about the salt and cumin: *Apollophanes* the Grammarian, one of our company, solved the question readily in this manner: They (quoth he) who are such friends and to familiar that they sup together, with salt and cumin, are meant by this common speech. But then we moved a new question, namely: How it came to passe, that salt was so highly honoured? for that *Homer* directly saith:

*And then anon when this was done,  
He stewed salt divine upon.*

And *Plato* affirmeth, that the body and substance of salt by mans laws, is most sacred and holy: The difficulty of this question he enforced still, and augmented the more: for that the Egyptian Priests who live chaste, abstaine altogether from salt, inasmuch as their very bread which they eat is not seasoned with salt: And if it were (quoth he) to divine and holy, why have they it in so great de-tection? Then *Florus* willed us to let the Egyptians goe with their superstitious fashions: and to alledge somewhat of the Greeks as touching this subject argument: Whereupon I began and said: That the Egyptians themselves were not herein contrary to the Greeks: for the sanctimony and profession of chastity, forbiddeth procreation of children, laughing, wine, and such like things: which otherwise be good, and not be rejected: and as for salt, haply those who have vowed to live a chaste and pure life, do forbear it, for that by the heat which it hath, (as some think) it provoketh those who use it, unto lechery: and probable it is besides, that such vota-ries do refuse salt, because of all other meates, it is most delicate; and a man may well say: That it is the viand of viands, and the fauce as it were to season all others: and therefore some there bewho attribute unto these salts, the very tearm of Charites or the Graces: for that they make that which

is necessary for our food, to be pleasant and acceptable unto us: Shall we say then (quoth *Florus*) that salt was called Divine in this respect? And if we did so (quoth I) we have no slender reason to induce us therunto: for men are wont to attribute a kind of divinity unto things which are passing common, and the commodity whereof reacheth far (as for example) to water, light, and the seasons of the year: as for the earth, her above the rest, they repute not only divine, but also to be a god-esse: and there is none of all these things rehearsed, that salt giveth place unto, one jot, in regard of use and profit being, as it is a fortification to our meates within the body, and that which comen-deth them unto our appetite: but yet consider moreover, if this be not a divine property that it hath, namely, to preserve and keep dead bodies free from putrefaction a long while, and by that means to resist death in some sort, for that it suffereth not a mortal body wholly to perish, and come to nothing: but like as the soul being the most divine part of us, is that which maintaineth all the rest alive, and suffereth not the masse and substance of the body to be dissolved, and suffer colliquation: even so, the nature of salt, taking hold of dead bodies, and imitating herein the action of the soule, preserveth the same, holding and staying them that they run not headlong to corruption, giving un-to all the parts an amity, accord and agreement one with the other: and therefore it was elegantly said by some of the Stoicks: That the flesh of an hog was even from the beginning no better then a dead carcase, but that life being diffused within it, as if salt were strewed throughout, kept it sweet, and so preserved it for to last long. Moreover you see that we esteeme lightning, or the fire that cometh by thunder, celestial and divine, for that those bodies which have been smitten therewith, are observed by us to continue a great while unpurified and without corruption: What marvel is it then if our ancients have esteemed salt divine, having the same virtue and nature, that this divine and ce-lestial fire hath? Here I stayed my speech and kept silence. With that, *Philinus* followed on and pursued the same argument: And what think you (quoth he) is not that to be held divine, which is generative, and hath power to ingender, considering that God is thought to be the original author, creator, and father of all things? I avowed no lesse, and said it was so: And it is (quoth he) an opi-nion generally received, that salt availeth not a little in the matter of generation, as you your selfe touched ere-while, speaking of Egyptian Priests: they also, who keep and nourish dogs for the race, when they see them dull to perform that act, and to do their kind, do excite and awaken their lust and vertue generative, that lieth (as it were) asleep, by giving them as well as other hot meats, salt flesh, and fish both, that hath lien in brine and pickle: all those ships and vessels at sea, which ordi-narily are freight with salt, breed commonly an infinite number of Mice and Rats: for that (as some hold) the Females, or Doos of that kind, by licking off salt only, will conceive and be bagged without the company of the Males or Bucks: but more probable it is, that saltneesse doth procure a certain itching in the natural parts of living creatures, and by that means provoketh Males and Fe-males both, to couple together: and peradventure this may be the reason that the beauty of a Wo-man which is not dull and unlovely, but full of favour, attractive, and able to move concupiscence, men please to name *ἀλμυρὴ καὶ δεινή*, that is to say, saltish, or well seasoned: And I suppose that the Po-ets have named *Venus* to have been engendered of the sea, not without some reason: and that this tale, that the should come of salt, was devised for the nonce, to signifie and make known under those covert terms, that there is in salt a generative power: Certes, this is an ordinary and general thing among those Poets, to make all the sea-gods, fathers of many children, and very full of issue; To conclude, you shall not find any land creature, or flying fowle, for fruitfulness, comparable to any kind of fishes bred in the sea: which no doubt this verse of *Empedocles* had respect unto:

*Leading a troop, which senselesse were and rude,  
Even of Sea-fish, a breeding multitude.*

## The Sixth Book

### Of Symposiakes, or Banquet-Questions.

## The Summary.

- V**hat is the reason, that men fasting, be more at thirst then hungry?
- Whether it be want of food that causeth hunger and thirst, or the transformation and change of the pores and conduits of the body, be the cause thereof?
- How cometh it, that they who be hungry, if they drink, are eased of their hunger; but contrariwise, those who are thirsty, if they eat be more thirsty?
- What is the reason, that pit-water, when it is drawn, if it be left all night within the same air of the pit, becometh more cold?
- What is the cause that little stones, and plates or pellets of lead, if they be cast into water, cause it to be colder?
- Why snow is preserved, by covering it with straw, chaff, or garments?
- Whether wine is to run thorow a strainer?
- What is the cause of extraordinary hunger or appetites to meat?

9. Why the Poet Homer, when he speaketh of other liquors, useth proper Epithets, only oyle he calleth most tender.  
10. What is the cause that the flesh of beasts rain for sacrifice, if they be hanged upon a fig tree, quickly become tender.

## The Sixth Book

## Of Symposiaques, or Banquet-Questions.

The Proème.

**P**lato being minded to draw *Timonius* the son of *Conon* (O *Sossius Sinecio*) from sumptuous feasts and superfluous banquets, which great Captains commonly make, invited him one day to a supper in the Academy, which was Philosophical indeed and frugal, where the table was not furnished with those viands which might distemper the body with feverous heats and inflammations, as *Ien* the Poet was wont to say: but such a supper, I say, upon which ordinarily there follow kind and quiet sleeps, such fancies also, and imaginations as ingender sweet dreams, and those short: and in one word, where the sleep doth restifie a great calmness and tranquillity of the body. The morrow after, *Timonius* perceiving the difference between these suppers and the other, said: That they who supped with *Plato* over night, found the pleasure and comfort thereof the next day: and to say a truth, a great help and ready means to a pleasant and blessed life, is the good temperate of the body, not drenched in wine, nor loaden with viands, but light, nimble, and ready, without any fear or distrust to perform all actions and functions of the day time. But there was another commodity no lesse then this, which they had who supped with *Plato*, namely, the diffcult and handling of good and learned questions, which were held at the table in supper time: for the remembrance of the pleasures in eating and drinking, is illiberal and unbecoming men of worth, triftery besides, and soon at an end like unto the odour of a perfume and sweet oymntment, the smell of roaft in a Kitchen a day after: whereas discourses Philosophical, and disputations of learning, when they be remembered afterwards, yield alwayes new pleasure and fresh delight unto those that were at them; yea, and cause them who were absent and left out, in hearing the relation thereof, to have no less part of learning and erudition, then they who were present: for thus we see, that even at this day, students and professors of learning, have the fruition, and enjoy the benefit of *Socrates* his banquets, no lesse then they themselves who were personally present, and had their real part of them at the time: and verily, if corporal matter, as dainty dishes and exquisite fare, had so greatly affected and delighted their minds with pleasure: *Plato* and *Xenophon* should have put down in writing, and left unto us the memorial, not of the discourses there held, nor of the talk which then passed, but rather of the furniture of the table, and have made a note of the delicate viands, pally works, comfitures and junclets served up in *Callias* or *Agathus* houses: whereas now of all such matters there is no mention at all, as if they were of no account, nor worth the naming, notwithstanding very like it is, there was no want of provision, no spare of cost, nor defect of diligence in that behalfe: but on the other side penned the yhave most exactly, and with great diligence the discourses of good letters and Philosophy, which then and there passed merrily; and those they have commended unto posterities, to give us example, that we ought not only to devise and reason together when we are at the board, but also to call to mind afterwards, what good talk had passed, and to keep the same in memory.

## THE FIRST QUESTION.

What is the reason, that those who be fasting are more thirsty then hungry.

**N**ow send I unto you *Sossius Sinecio*, this sixth book of Banquet discourses; whereof the first question is: Why those who be long fasting, are more thirsty then hungry? for that may seem contrary unto all reason: that thirst rather then hunger should ensue much fasting; for that the want of dry food, would seem by course of nature to require a supply of nutriment by the like. Then began I in this manner to argue, before the company there in place: That of all things within us, and whereof we consist, our natural heat either alone or principally, had need of nurture and maintenance: for thus verily we do observe in outward elements, that neither aire, water, nor earth, desire nutriment: neither do they consume whatsoever is near unto them; but it is fire only that requirith the one, and doth the other: which is the reason that all young folk doe eat more then elder persons: for that they be hotter; yea, and old men and women can endure to fast better, because their natural heat is already decayed and feeble in them: like as it is in those living creatures which have but little blood: for small need have they of nurture, for default of natural heat. Moreover, thus much we may observe in every one of our selves, that our bodily exercises, our loud oratories and such like matters, as by motion do augment heat, make us to take more pleasure in our meat, and to have a better appetite to eat: now the principal, most familiar and natural food of heat in mine opinion, is moisture, as we may see by daily experience, that burning flames of fire increase by pouring oyle thereto; and of all things in the world, ashes are the driest, because the whole humidity is burnt up and consumed: but the terrestrial substance destitute of all liquor, remaineth alone: semblably, the nature of fire is to separate and divide bodies, by taking away the moisture which held them together and bound together: when as therefore we fast long, our natural heat draweth forcibly unto it: first, all the humours out of the reliques of our nourishment: which done, the inflammation thereof passeth farther, and setteth upon the very radical humour with-

within our flesh, searching every corner for moisture to feed and nourish it: there being caused therefore a wonderful drienesse in our body, like as in earth or clay that is parched with heat; our flesh by consequence commeth to stand more in need of drink then of meat, until such time as we have taken a good draught; by means whereof our heat being well reftrethed and fortified, worketh and procureth appetite to solid and dry nourishment.

## THE SECOND QUESTION.

Whether it be want of food that causeth hunger and thirst, or rather the transformation and change of the conduits and passages within our bodies?

**T**his discourse being thus ended, *Philo* the Physician went about to impugn and overthrow the first position: maintaining, that thirst proceeded not from default of any nourishment, but was to be imputed unto the change of the form in certain passages of the body: and for demonstration hereof, he allegeded of the one side this experience: That they who be athirst in the night, if they sleep upon it, lose their thirstiness, although they drink never a drop: on the other side, that they who have the Ague, if their fit decline, or be off them, or in case the Feaver be cleane past and gone, presently they are eased of their drought: likewise there be many, who after they have been bathed, yea, and believe me, others when they have vomited, are rid of thirstiness: and yet they get moisture neither by the one nor the other: but they are the pores and petty conduits of the body that suffer mutation, because they be altered and transformed into another state and disposition; and this appeareth more evidently in hunger; for many lick folk there be, who at one time have need of nourishment, and yet want appetite to their meat: some there are again, who let them eat and fill themselves never so much, have never the leas appetite to meat, nay, their greedy hunger encreaseth the more: semblably, you shall have many of those who loathed their meat, to recover their stomach and appetite quickly, by tasting a few Olives or Capers, condite with salt pickle: whereby it appeareth plainly; that hunger is not occasioned by default of nourishment, but through the said alteration or passion of the pores and conduits of the body: for surely such meats as those, although they diminish the want of nourishment, by addition of more food, yet nevertheless cause hunger; and even so the point acrimony of these salt viands, contenting the taste and pleasure to the mouth, by knitting, binding, and strengthening the stomach: or contrariwise, by relaxing, or opening the same, do procure unto it, and breed therein a certain gnawing, and a disposition to the liking of their meat, which we call appetite. The reason of these arguments seemed unto me very wittily devised, and framed prettily, for to carry a good shew of probability: howbeit, to be contrary unto the principal end of nature, to which the appetite doth lead and conduct every living creature, desirous to supply that which is wanting, to fill that which is empty, and pursuing alwayes that which is meet for it and familiar, but yet defective: for to say, that the thing wherein principally a living creature differeth from a lifelesse body, was not given unto us for the tuition, maintenance and preservation of our health and safety, even as it were of our eyes that be so proper and familiar to the body, and to fear such occurrences as be adverse thereto; but to think that the same is only a passion, change, and alteration of the pores occasioned according as the same be made either bigger or smaller: is (to speak plainly) the fashion and part of those who misken reckoning at all of nature. Moreover, to confesse, that to quake for cold, hapneth unto our body for want of heat familiar and natural unto it, and with one breath to deny, that hunger and thirst proceed not from defect of moisture and nourishment, is very absurd: and yet, more unreasonable and monstrous it were to affirm, that nature desireth evacuation, when shee feeleth her selfe charged with fulnesse, and withal, hath a desire to repletion: not because she findeth her selfe over-empty, but upon some other passion comming I know not how, nor which way. Certes, these needs and repletions in the bodies of living creatures, resemble properly the accidents that fall out in agriculture and husbandry: for the earth suffereth many such defects, and requirith as many helps and remedies: against drought, we seek to moisten by watering: for burning with heat, to coole moderately: when things are frozen, to heat them again, and keep them warm, by laying (as it were) many coverings over: and look what is not in our power to doe, we pray unto the gods for help and furnish us therewith: namely, sweet and mild dews, pleasant and comfortable windes: so that nature always seeketh supply of that which is defective, for to preserve her state and temperature. And in my conceit, this word *repleo*, which signifieth nourishment, seemeth to import as much as *πληνν τὸ σῶμα*, that is to say, preserving nature: and preserved it is in plants verily, and trees insensibly (as *Empedocles* said) by the air about them, when they are reftreshed and watered thereby in convenient manner, as need requirith: but as for us, our appetite causeth us to seek and procure that, for default whereof, we have not our kind temperature. But let us consider better, each one of those reasons by it self, which have been delivered, by reason of their acrimony, and moistness, those viands which have a quick, sharp, and pleasing taste, by reason of their acrimony, or procure no appetite at all in those parts, which be capable of nurture, but only a certain biting or gnawing in them, much like unto that itching, when something is applied unto the skin, that standeth to great reason, that by such sharp and quick viands, those matters which causeth fulnesse, com-



when as therefore water is first chafed (as it were) and set in an heat by agitation and stirring within the bucket, whiles it was in drawing, it groweth to be the colder by the air which inwritheth the said vessel round about. This stranger and guest of ours we commended for his confident resolution and perfect memory; but as touching the reason that he alledged, we made some doubt: for if the air in which the vessel hangeth be cold, how doth it inchafe the water? and if it be not, how cooleth it afterwards? for beside all reason it is, that a thing should be affected or suffer contrarily from one and the same cause, unless some difference come between. And when the other held his peace a good space, and stood musing what to say againe: Why (quoth I) there is no doubt to be made of the aire: for our very senses teach us, that cold it is, and especially that which is in the bottome of pits; and therefore impossible it is, that water should be heat by the cold aire: but the truth is this rather, although this cold aire cannot alter all the water of the spring in the bottome of the well, yet if a man draw the same in a little quantity, it will do the deed, and be so much predominant as to coole it exceedingly.

### THE FIFTH QUESTION.

*What is the reason that little stones and small plates or pellets of lead, being cast into water, make it colder?*

**Y**OU remember I am sure (do you not? said I) what *Aristotle* hath written, as touching pibbles stones and flints, which if they be cast into water cause the same to be much colder and more astringent: And you remember (quoth he) as well, that the Philosopher in his Problems hath only said it is so; but let us assay to find out the cause, for it seemeth very difficult to be conceived and imagined: you say true indeed (quoth I); and a marvell it were if we could hit upon it: howbeit, marke and consider what I will say unto it: First to begin withall, do you not thinke that water is sooner made cold by the aire without, if the same may come to enter into it? alio, that the aire is of more force and efficacy, when it beareth against hard flints, pibbles, or whetstones? for they will not suffer it to passe thorow, as vessels either of bras or earth; but by their compact solidity, resisting and standing out against it, they put it by from themselves, and turn it upon the water: whereby the coldnesse may be the stronger and the water thorowout be fully affected therewith: and this is the reason, that in Winter-time running rivers be much colder than the sea; for that the cold aire hath greater power upon them, as being driven back againe from the bottome of the water; whereas in the sea it is dissolved, and passeth away, by reason of the great depth thereof encountering there nothing at all, upon which it may strike and beat: but it seemeth there is another reason, that waters, the thinner and clearer they be, suffer the more from the cold aire: for sooner they be changed and over-come, so weak and feeble they are: now hard whetstones and little pibbles do subtilize and make the water more thin in drawing to the bottome where they be, all the grosse and terrestrial substance that trouble it: in such sort, as the water by that means, being more fine, and consequently weaker, sooner is vanquished and surmounted by the refrigeration of the aire. To come now unto lead: cold of nature it is, and if it be soaked in vinegar, and wrought with it, maketh cerule of all deadly poisons the coldest. As for the stones aforesaid, by reason of their solidity, they have an inward coldnesse conceived deeply within them; for as every stone is a peece of earth gathered together and congealed (as it were) by exceeding cold, so the more compact and massie that it is, the harder is it congealed, and consequently, so much the colder: no marvell therefore it is, if both plummetts of lead and these little hard pibbles aforesaid, by repercussion from themselves, increase the coldnesse of the water.

### THE SIXTH QUESTION.

*What is the reason that men use to keep snow within chaffe, light straw, and cloaths.*

**V**ON these words, that stranger and guest of ours, after he had paused a while: Loters (quoth he) above all things, are desirous to talke with their paramours; or if they cannot do so, yet at leastwise they will be talking of them; and even so it fareth at this time between me and snow: for, because there is none here in place, nor to be had, I will speake of it, and namely, I would gladly know the reason why it is wont to be kept in such things as be very hot; for we use to cover and ivaddle it (as it were) with straw and chaffe, yea, and to lap it within fote cloaths, unshorne rugs, and shaggy frize, and so preserve it a long time in the own kind, without running to water: A wonderfull matter, that the hottest things should preserve those which are extreme cold! And so will I say too (quoth I) if that were true: but it is far otherwise, and we greatly deceive our selves in taking that by and by to be hot it selfe which doth heat another; and namely, considering that we our selves use to say, that one and the selfe-same garment in Winter keeps us warme, and in Summer cooleth us; like as that nurse in the tragedy, which gave suck unto *Niobe* children:

*With mantles covere, and little blankets warme  
She warms and cools her pretty babies, new borne.*

The

The Almaines verily put on garments only for to defend their bodies against the rigour of cold: the Ethiopians wear them not, but to save themselves from sultry heat: we in *Greece* use them for the one purpose and the other; and therefore why should we count them to be hot, because they warme us, rather than cold, for that they coole us? yet of the twaine, if we would be judged by the outward sense, we might repute them rather cold than hot: for when we put on our shirts or inner garments first, our naked skin finds them cold; and so when we go into our beds, we feeble the sheets and other cloaths of themselves as cold; but afterwards they help to heat us; but how? being themselves full of heat, which cometh from us; they hold in our heat, and withall keep off the cold aire from our bodies. Thus you see how they that be sick of the ague, or otherwise, home with heat, change continually their linnens and other cloaths about them, because ever as any fresh thing is laid upon them they feele it cold and take comfort therein: no sooner is it cast over them, and lien a while but it becometh hot, by reason of the ardent heat of their bodies: like as therefore a garment being warmed once by us doth warme us againe; even so, if it be made cold by snow it keepeth it cold reciprocally; but made cold it is by snow, for that therewithin from it a subtil spirit, or vapour which doth it; and the same so long as it abideth within holdeth it together concrete and solid in the own nature: contrariwise, when it is gone, snow melteth and turneth into water; then that white fresh colour vanishest away, which came by the mixture of the said spirit and humidity together, causing a kind of froth: when as snow therefore is lapped within cloaths, both the cold is held in thereby, and the outward aire kept out, that it cannot enter in to thaw and melt the substance of the snow thus gathered and congealed together: now to this purpose they use such cloaths as have not yet come under the fillers hand, nor been dressed, buckled, shorne, and pressed; and that for the length and driness of the shag haire and flocks, which will not suffer the cloath to lie heavy and presse down the snow, and crush it being so spongy and light as it is: and even so the straw and chaffe, lying lightly upon it, and softly touching it, breaketh not the congealed substance thereof; and otherwise besides, the same lieth close and fast together, whereby it is a cause that neither the coldnesse of the snow within can breath forth nor the heat of the aire without enter in. To conclude, that the excretion and issuing out of that spirit, is the thing that causeth the snow to fore-give, to fret, and to melt in the end, is apparant to our outward senses, for that the snow when it thaweth engendreth wind.

### THE SEVENTH QUESTION.

*Whether wine is to run thorough a strainer before it be drunke?*

**N**OW one of our Citizens, left the schooles, having converted but a small while with a most excellent and renowned Philosopher; yet so long as in that time he had not learned any good thing at his hands, but stolen from him, ere he was aware, that, whereby he was offensive and odious unto others; and namely, this bad custome he had gotten of his Master, boldly to reprove and correct in all things those who were in his company: when as therefore we were upon a time with *Ariston* in his house at supper together, he found fault generally with all the provision, as being too sumptuous, curious, and superfluous; and among other things, he flatly denied, That wine ought to passe through a strainer before it be powred forth and filled to the table; but he said, It should be drunke as it came out of the tun, as *Hesiodus* said, whiles it hath the strength and natural force, and as nature hath given it unto us; for this manner of depuration and clarifying of it by a strainer, first doth enervate and cut as it were the sinews of the vigour and vertue, yea, and quench the native heat that it hath; for it cannot chuse but the same will exhale, evaporate, and flie away with the spirit and life thereof, being so often filled and powred out of one vessel into another: Again (quoth he) it bewrayeth a certaine curiosity, delicacy, and wastfull wantonnesse thus to consume and spend he it bewrayeth a certain curiosity, delicacy, and wastfull wantonnesse thus to consume and spend the good and profitable for that which is pleasant only and delectable: for like as to cut cocks for to make them capons, or to geld fowes and make them gualts, that their flesh may be tender dainty, and (against the nature of it) effeminate, was never surely the invention of men, found in judgement, and of honest behaviour, but of wastfull gluttons, and such as were given over to belly chere; even so verily they that thus straine wine, do geld it, they cut the spurs and pare the nailes thereon: if I may be allowed so to speake by way of Metaphor, yea, and do effeminate the same; whiles they are not able either to beare it by reason of their infirmity and weaknesse, nor drinke it in measure, as they should because of their intemperance: but surely this is a sophistical device of theirs, and an artificial trick to help them to drink more, and excuse them for powring it down merrily; for by this means the force of wine they take away, leaving nothing but bare wine; much like unto those who give water boyled unto sick and weak folk, who cannot endure to drinke it cold, and yet beyond measure desire it: for the very edge of wine they take off, and they marre it for ever: this may be a sufficient argument, that wine thus misused will not last the nor continue long in the own nature, but turne quickly to be very dregs; it is soeth (I say) the verdure thereof presently, as if it were cut by the root from the owne mother, which are the lees thereof. Certes, in old time they were wont directly to call wine it *κῆρ τρυγῆς*, that is to say, Lees thereof. Certes, in old time they were wont directly to call wine it *κῆρ τρυγῆς*, that is to say, Lees: like as we use to tearme a man by a diminutive speech, a soule or an head, giving unto him

Rec 2

the

the denomination of those principall parts only; and even at this day we expresse the gathering of vine fruit, by the verbe *πρυγνυς*: Also in one place *Homer* called wine *διαιτρυγος*, and as for wine it selfe, it was an ordinary thing with him, to call it *αἶθρα καὶ ἔρβετος*; that is to say, blackish and red, not pale and wan, by often straining and cleansing, such as *Ariston* here serveth us with: heretofore laughing at the matter: Not for my good friend (quoth he) not pale, bloudlesse, and discoloured: but that which at the very first sheweth it selfe pleasant, mild, and lovely, whereas you would have us to ingurgitate and drench our selves with a wine as black as the night, thick, grosse, and dusky, like a darke cloud: the clarifying and purification thereof you condemn, which in truth is nothing else but the casting up as it were by vomit of all the choler that it had, and the discharging it of that which is heavy, heady, in it, able to make men sick and drunken, to the end that being more light, cheerefull, and lesse cholerick, it might go into our bodies for to be intermingled with us, even such as *Homer* saith: those worthies and demi-gods, at the war of *Troy*, used to drinke: for *Homer* when he named wine *αἶθρα*, meant not blackish and thick, but transparent, neat, and bright: for having before attributed unto brasse these epithites, *ἰωνύς*, and *ῥαγός*, that is to say, meet for men, and resplendent, he would not have called it *αἶθρα* afterwards, if he had meant black and dusky by that attribute. Like as therefore the sage *Anacharsis*, when he reproved some other fashions among the Greeks, commended yet their char-coales, for that leaving the smoke without doores, they brought the fire into the house: even to you my masters, that are wise men and great scholars, may haply blame us in other respects, if you list: but in case when we have rejected and dispatched away that which was turbulent, cholerick, and furious in wine, we make it then looke cleare, and taste pleasant of it selfe, without any sophistication: if we do not (I say) turne or take off the edge quite, and grind our all the Steele (as it were) but rather scouring away rust and canker, furbush, and glaze it, and so present it unto you for to drinke: what heinous fault (I pray you) have we committed? But you will say (forsooth) it hath more strength in it when it is thus clarified with straining: and lo (by your leave, good sir) hath a trunck, lunatick, and mad man, when he is in his fits; but after that he is well purged with Ellebor, or by good regiment in diet, brought to be staied, and reduced into his right mind and senses againe, that violent and extraordinary force is gone, but the true naturall strength of his own, and his seled temperature remaine still in his body, together with his right wits; even so this cleansing and clarifying of wine, by ridding away that headinesse which troubleth the braine, and causeth rage, bringeth it to a mild habite and whollome constitution. Certes, for mine own part, I hold there is a great difference between affected curiosity, and simple neednesse or elegancy: for those women that paint themselves, perfume and besmeare their bodies with costly odours, and balmes or otherwise glitter in their ornaments of gold, and go in their rich purple robes, are by good right thought to be curious, costly, and wanton dames; but if a woman use the bath, wash her skin, anoint her selfe with ordinary oyle, yea, and wear the tresses of her own haire, disposed and bid in order decently, no man will find fault with her for it. This distinction in womens dressing and attire, the Poet *Homer* hath elegantly and properly expressed in the person of *Juno*, when she dressed and trimmed her selfe, in this wise:

With pure Ambrosia first, her corps  
Immortall from a' faile  
And flith she cleansed, then it she did  
Annoint with glibber oile.

Thus far forth, there is nothing to be seen in her, but carefull diligence and matron-like cleanliness: many when she comes to carquans, chaines, borders, and buttons of gold, when she hangs on her pendant eareings most curiously and artificially wrought, and not staying there, proceeds in the end to take in her hand that enchanting tisse and girdle of *Venus*: beleeve me here was superfluous sumptuosity, here was vanity and wantonnesse indeed, not becomming a wife or dame of honour: semblably they that colour their wine with the sweet wood of aloe or cinnamon, and otherwise give it a tincture and pleasant aromatization with laffron, do even as much as those who curiously trick up and set out a woman, for to bring her to a banquet, and to prostitute her as a cutizan: whereas they that do no more but purge out of it the grosse filthinesse, and that which is good for nothing, make it by that means pure, whollome, and medicinable: for otherwise, if you admit not this, you may as well say, that all things that you see here is nothing but needlesse superfluity, and affected curiosity, beginning even at the very house and the furniture thereof: for why is it (will you say) thus purget and laid over with a coat of plaister? why is it open and built with windows on that side especially where it may receive the purest aire and freshest winds, or where it may enjoy the light of the sun sending Westward toward his setting? why are these pots and drinking cups every one of them rubbed and soured on every side, so neat and cleane that they glitter and shine againe, so as a man may see himselfe in them? And ought (good sir) these houses and goblets to be kept cleane without all filth, or sweet without evil sent: and must the wine which we drinke out of them be full of filthy dregs or otherwise stained with any ordure and corruption? but what need I run the rove all the rest? the very workmanship and painfull labour about the wheat whereof our bread here is made: what is it else (I beech you) but cleansing and purging? see you not what a do there is about it before it be brought to this passe? for there must be not only threshing, fanning, winnowing, riddling, grinding, sifting, sowing, and bolting out the bran from the

the flowre, while it is in the nature of corn and meale; but also it requireth to be knead and wrought, that no roughnesse remaine behind in the dough: so that being thus united and con-corporate into a lump of paste it may be made bread fit for our eating: what absurdity then is there in this, if straining and cleansing of wine riddeth it from that feculent & dreggy matter, as if it were coule brans, of grosse grounds, especially seeing the doing of it, is not any wise chargeable nor laborious?

## THE EIGHTH QUESTION.

What is the cause of that extraordinary hunger called *βούλιος*?

Here is a solemne sacrifice used among us, received by tradition from our ancestors, which the provost or chiefe governour of the City for the time being, performeth at the publicke altar, but other private Citizens besides in their own houses: and this solemnity is called, The banishment of *Bulimoi*, that is to say, of hunger or famine: and the manner is at such a time, for every Master of an house to take one of his slaves, and when he hath winged him well with twigs of the withy called Chait-tree, to thrust him out of the doores by the head and shoulders, saying withall: Out with \* *Bulimoi*, but come in wealth and health. Now that year wherein I was provost, many there were at my sacrifice, invited to the feast: and after we had performed all ceremonies and complements thereto belonging, and were set at the table, some question there was moved, sith, as touching the vocable it selfe *βούλιος*, what it should signifie, and afterwards of the words uttered unto the slave when he is driven out: but most of all, of that malady so called, and of the accidents and circumstances thereof. As for the tearme *Bulimoi*, every man in manner was of opinion, that it betokened a great and publicke famine, but especially we Greeks of *Aeolia*, who in our dialect use the letter \* *β* for *β*, for we commonly do not say, *Bulimoi*, but *Pulimoi*, as if it were *Pulimoi* or *Pulimoi*, that is to say, a great famine, or a generall famine thotout the City, and it seemed unto us, that *Bulimoi* was another thing different from it: and namely, by a found argument which we had from the Chronicles penned by *Metodorus*, as touching the acts of *Ionis*, wherein thus much he writeth: That the Smyrneans who in old time were *Aeolians*, use to sacrifice unto *Bubroffis*, a black bull as an holocaust or burnt offering, which they cut into peeces with the hide, and so burne it all together. But so far as much as all manner of hunger resembleth a malady (and principally this called *βούλιος*) which cometh upon a man when his body is affected with some unkind and unnatural indisposition, it seemeth that by great reason, as they oppole wealth to poverty, so they let health against sickness: and like as the heaving and overturning of the stomack, a disease when as men are said *Nautias*, took that name first upon occasion of those who are in a ship, and when they faile or row, fall to be stomack sick, and are apt to cast: but afterwards by custome of speech, whosoever feele the like passion of the stomack, and a disposition to vomit, are said *ναυτιών*, that is to say, to be sea-sick: even so the verbe *βούλιος*, and the noun *βούλιος*, taking the beginning as is before said, there, is come unto us, and signifieth a dogs-appetite or extraordinary hunger. And to this purpose we all spake, and made a contribution as it were of all our reasonings, to make out a common supper or collation: but when we came to touch the cause of this disease: the first doubt that arose among us was this, that they should most be surprized with this malady who travel in great fowes: like as *Brutus* did of aedaeas: who when he marched with his army from *Dyrrhachium* to *Apollonia*, was in danger of his life, by occasion of this infirmity: it was a time when the snow lay very deep: in which march he went such a pace, that none of those who had the carriage of victuals overtook him, or came neer unto him: now when as he fainted for feeblenesse of stomack, that he now swooned, and was ready to give up the ghost: the souldiers were forced to run in haste unto the walls of the City, and to call for a loafe of bread unto their very enemies, warding and keeping the watch upon the walls, which when they had presently gotten, therewith they recovered *Brutus*: whereupon afterwards, when he was master of the Town, he grievously intreated all the inhabitants for the curtesie which he had received from thence. This disease hapneth likewise to hortes and asses, especially when they have either figs or apples a load: but that which of all the rest is most wonderful, there is no manner of food or sustenance in the world, that in such a case foote soon recovereth the strength, not of men only, but of labouring beasts also, as to give them bread, so that if they ate a morsell thereof, be it never so little, they will presently find their teer, and be able to walke.

Hereupon ensued silence for a while; and then I (knowing well enough how much the arguments of ancient writers are able to content and satisfy such as are but dull and slow of conceit: but contrarywise unto those that be studious, ripe of wit, and diligent, the same make an overture and give traine unto those that be studious, ripe of wit, and diligent, the same make an overture and give courage and heart to search and inquire further into the truth) I called to mind and delivered before them all a sentence out of *Aristotle*, who affirmeth, That the stronger the cold is without, the more is the heat within our bodies, and so consequently causeth the greater colligation of the humours in the interior parts. Now if these humours thus resolved take a course unto the legs, they cause lastes and heaviness: if the rheume fall upon the principall fontaines and organs of motion and respiration, it bringeth faintings and feeblenesse. I had no sooner said, but as it is wont in such cases to fall out, some rooke in hand to oppugne these reasonings, and others againe to defend and maintaine the same: and *Sostratus*, for his part: The words (quoth he) in the beginning of your

\* That is to  
say, hunger  
and famine:  
it seemeth by  
that which  
followeth,  
that they put  
poverty also,  
before *Bulimoi*,  
as in oppo-  
sition to health.  
\* for *β*.



speech were very well placed, and the ground surely laid; for in truth the bodies of those who walke in snow are evidently cold without, and exceedingly cloied fast and knit together; but that the inward heat occasioned thereby, should make such a colligation of humours, and that the same should possesse and seize upon the principal parts and instruments of respiration is a bold and rash conceit, and I cannot see how it should stand: Yet rather would I thinke that the heat being thus kept in, and united together, and so by that means fortified, consumeth all the nourishment; which being spent, it cannot chafe but the said heat also must needs languish even as a fire without fuel; and hereupon it is, that such have an exceeding hunger upon them, and when they have eaten never so little, they come presently to themselves againe; for that food is the maintenance of naturall heat: Then *Cleomenes* the Physician. This word *μῆτις*, that is to say, hunger (quoth he) in the compound *βασιλική*, signifieth nothing else, but is crept into the composition of it I know not how, without any reason at all; like as in the verbe *σπινθη*, which betokeneth to devour, or (swallow downe solid meat, *σπινθη*, that is to say, to drinke, hath no lenie or congruity at all; no more than *κρίσις*, that is to say, to bend downward, or fall groveling, hath any thing to do in the verbe *δρακόν*, that signifieth to rise aloft, or to hold up the head as birds do in drinking; for surely *βασιλική* or *βασιλεῖα*, seemeth not unto me to be any hunger, as many have taken it; but it is a passion of the stomack, which concurring indeed with hunger, engendereth a fainting of the heart, and an apnelle to swoone; and even as odours and smells do fetch againe and help those that be in a swoone: to breed doth remedy and recover those who are feeble and faint, by this *Bulimia*, nor for that such have need of sustenance: (for let it be never so little that they take, they are revived and refreshed thereby) but because it fetcheth the spirits againe, and recalleth the power and strength of nature that was going away. Now that this *Bulimia* or *Bulimia*, is a faintness of the heart, and no hunger at all, appeareth evidently by an accident that we observe in those draught-beasts, whereof we spake before, subject to this infirmity; for the smell of figs and apples worketh not in them any defect or want of nourishment; but causeth rather a gnawing in the mouth of the maw, a plucking (I say) and contention in the brim of the stomack. As for me, on the other side, although I thought these reasons indifferently well alledged; yet I was of opinion, that if I went another way to worke, and argued from a contrary principle, I could maintaine a probability, and uphold, that all this might proceed rather by way of condensation, than rarefaction: for the spirit or breath that passeth from the snow in manner of subtile aire, is the most cutting edge, and finest decision or scale, coming from the concretion of that meteor or congealed substance, which I wot not how, is of so keen and piercing a nature, that it will strike thorough, not flesh only, but vessels also of silver and brasse: for we see that they are not able to containe and hold inow in them, but when it commeth to melt, it continueth away, and covereth the outside of such vessels, glazed over with a most subtile moisture, as cleere as yce, which no doubt the said spirit, breath, aire, or edge, (call it what you will) left behind it, when it passed through those insensible pores of the said vessels: this spirit then thus penetrative and quick as a flame, when it smiteth upon their bodies who go in snow, seemeth to scorch and singe the superficiall outside of the skin, in cutting and making way thorough into the flesh in manner of fire; whereupon ensueth a great rarefaction of the body, by means whereof, the inward heat flying forth, meeteth with the cold spirit or aire without in the superficies which doth extinguish and quench it quite, and thereby yeeldeth a kind of small sweat or dew, standing with drops upon the outside, and so the naturall strength of the body is resolved and consumed: now if a man at such a time stir not, but rest still, there is not much naturall heat of the body that passeth thus away; but when motion by walking, or otherwise, doth quickly turne the nutriment of the body into heat, and withall the said heat flieth outward through the skin thus rarified: how can it otherwise be, but all at once there should ensue a great eclipse (as it were) and general defect of the naturall power? And that true it is, that the same doth not alwaies close, knit and bind together the body, but otherwise melt and rarifie the same, it appeareth manifestly by this experience; that in sharpe and nipping winters, many times plates or plummetts of lead are known to sweate and melt: this observation also, that many do fall into this infirmity called *Bulimia*, who are not hungry, doth argue rather a defluxion and dilatation, than a consipation of the body; which no doubt in Winter is rarified by that subtilty of the spirit, whereof I spake, and especially, when travell and stirring doth sharpen and subtilize the heat within the body: for being thus made thin, and wearied besides, it flieth forth in great abundance, and so is disperst thoroughout the body. As for those figs and apples, it is like that they do exhale and evaporate such a spirit, and doth subtilize and dissipate the naturall heat of labouring beasts that carry them: for it standeth by good reason in nature, that as soules be revived and refreshed with one thing, and some with another; so contrariwise, some things do dissipate the spirits in one, and others in another.

## THE NINTH QUESTION.

Why the Poet Homer to other liquors giveth proper epithites and attributes, and oyle only he calleth *μῆτις*?

There was a great question also another time: What might the reason be, that there being so many liquors as there are, the Poet Homer is wont to adorne every one of them with their severall

severall and proper epithites, and namely, to call milke, white, honey, yellow; and wine, red; but oyle alone he ordinarily noteth by an accident common unto them all, and rearmeth it moist; to which this answer was made: That as a thing is named, Moist sweet, which is altogether sweet; and moist white, which is altogether white; (now you must understand, that a thing is said to be moist and such altogether, when there is nothing mixed with it of a contrary name) even so we are to call that moist, which hath not one jot of drinnes mingled among; and such a quality doth properly agree unto oyle: for first and foremost, the polished smoothnesse that it hath, doth shew that the parts thereof be all uniforme and even throughout; and tell it wheresoever you will, you shall find it equal in every respect, and one part accordeth with another, as the whole agreeth to the part, and both mixture and cold: besides, to the eye-sight it yeeldeth a most pure and cleere mixture beheld the face in; for why? there is no roughnesse nor ruggednesse in it, to dissipate the reflection of the light; but by reason of the humidity or moisture thereof of all the light, (how little soever) it doth rebound and returne againe upon the sight: whereas contrariwise, milke alone, of all other liquors, sendeth back none of these images and resemblances, like as a mirror or looking-glass doth, for that it hath a great deale of terrestrial substance in it: moreover, of all liquid matters oyle only maketh the least noise when it is stirred or shaken, for that it is so moist throughout; where as in other liquors, the parts which be hard and earthy in running, flowing, and moving, do encounter, smite and hit one another, and so consequently make a noise, by reason of their weight and solidity; and that which more is, it remaineth simple of it selfe, without admitting any mixture or composition with any other liquor whatsoever, for that it is so firme, compact, or fast; and good reason, for it hath no wandering holes here and there, betweene and hard parts, which might receive any other substance within: moreover, all the parts of oyle, for that they be so like one unto another in a continued union, do joyne passing well together, however they will not fort with other liquors; and by reason of this tenuity and continuity, when oyle doth froath or some, it suffereth no wind or spirit to enter in: furthermore, this humidity of oyle is the cause that it feedeth and nourisheth fire, for maintained it is with nothing that is not moist, and this is the only liquor that may be burned, as we may see evidently in the wood which we daily burne: namely, that the subtilty therein, flie up in smoake; that which is terrestrially, turneth into ashes; and there is nothing but that which is moist or liquid, that flameth out, burneth light, and is consumed cleane for why? fire hath no other sustenance to feed upon; and therefore, water, wine, and other liquors, stand much upon a sculent, muddy and earthly matter, which is the cause that if a man do cast them upon a fire or flame, by their alperity, they disgregate, and by their weight, choke and quench it: but oyle, (for that most properly and sincerely it is moist, and by reason also that it is so subtile) soone receiveth alteration, and being overcome by the fire, is quickly inflamed: but the greatest argument to prove the moisture of oyle, is this, that a little thereof will spread and go a great way: for neither honey, nor water, nor any other liquid thing whatsoever, is spent and gone by occasion can be dilated and drawn so far as oyle, but for the most part they are spent and gone by occasion of their viscosity: and verily, oyle being so pliable and ready to be drawn every way, (oft alone and gibbis apt to run all over the body, when it is annointed, it floweth and spreadeth a great way, by means of the humidity of all parts which are so movable, in such sort, as it continueth a long time, and hardly will be rid away, it sticketh and cleaveth so fast for a garment, if it be dipped and drenched all over in water, will soon be dry againe; but the spots and stains with oyle require no small ado to be scoured out and cleansed, for that it taketh so deep an impression; and all because it is so fine, subtile, and exceeding moist: and *Aristotle* himselfe saith, that even wine also being delayed with water, if it be gotten into a cloath, is hardly fetched out, for that now it is more subtile than before, and pierceth farther within the pores thereof.

## THE TENTH QUESTION.

What is the cause that the flesh of beasts killed for sacrifice, if it be hung upon a fig-tree, becometh more tender within a while?

*Ariston* had a cook commended highly by those who used to sup with his Master for singular skill in his art; and namely, for that amongst all other viands that he handled and dressed passing well, he served up a cock unto the table before us, newly killed and sacrificed unto *Hercules*, the flesh whereof did eate as short and tender as if he had hung by the heels a day or two before: and when *Ariston* said that it was an easie matter so to do; and that there needed no more but presently when his throat was cut to hang him upon a fig-tree, we took occasion thereby to search into the cause of this effect: Ceres, that there passeth from the fig-tree a sharp aire and strong spirit, our very eye-sight will testifie; as also the common speech that goeth of a bull, who if he be tied to a fig-tree, how vild, savage, and fell soever he was before, will soon be meek and quiet, abide to be handled, and in one word, lay down his furious rage, as if it were cleane daunted: But the principall cause hereof was attributed to the acrimony and sharpe quality of the wood, for the tree is more succulent than any other; inasmuch as the very fig it selfe, the wood also, and the leafe, be all full of juyle: also whilst it burneth in the fire, there ariseth from it a bitter biting smoake, very hurtfull to the eyes; and when it is burnt, there is made of the ashes a strong leie, very detestive and scouring, which





these be but toys and ridiculous mockeries to make sport with: but as touching the cause of the other matters above specified, I would not have you to reject the inquisition thereof, as if it were incomprehensible. Well (quoth I), now I have found a medicine and remedy, which if you do use, you shall bring this man with reason to our opinion, that you also your selfe may solve some of these questions propounded: It seemeth unto me therefore that it is cold that causeth this rebellious hardnesse as well in wheat and other corne, as also in pulle; namely, by pressing and driving in their solid substance untill it be hard againe; for heat maketh things soft and easie to be dissolved: and therefore they do not well and truly in alledging against *Homer* this verse:

*Ἐπεὶ γὰρ ἔστιν ἀρούρα.*  
The yeare not field,  
Doth beare and yeeld.

For surely those fields and grounds which are by nature hot, if theaire withall afford a kind and reasonable temperature of the weather, bring forth more tender fruits: and therefore such corne or seed which presently and directly from the husbandmans hands, lighteth upon the ground, entering into it, and there covered, find the benefit both of the heat and moisture of the soile, whereby they soone sprout and come up; whereas those which as they be cast do hit upon the horns of the beasts, they meet not with that direct posture or retidune called *ιὺνυόρουν*, which *Hesiodus* commendeth for the best, but falling down (I wot not how) and missing of their right place, seem rather to have been flung at a venture, than orderly sown; and therefore the cold coming upon them, either murthereth and killeth them outright, or else lighting upon their naked husks, causeth them to bring fruit that proveth hard and churlish, as drie as chips, and such as will not be made tender and soft, without they be steeped in some liquor, as having not been covered but with their own bare coats: for this you may observe ordinarily in stones, that those parts and sides which lie covered deeper within the ground, as if they were of the nature of plants, be more firm and tender; as being preserved by heat, than those outward faces which lie ebbe or above the earth; and therefore skillfull masons dig deeper into the ground for stones which they meane to square, work, and cut, as being mellowed by the heat of the earth; whereas those which lie bare aloft and exposed to theaire, by reason of the cold prove hard and not easie to be wrought or put to any use in building: sensibly, even come, if it continue long in the open aire, and cocked upon the stacks or threshing floors, is more hard and rebellious, than that which is soone taken away and laid up in garners; yea, and oftentimes the very wind which bloweth whiles it is fanned or winnowed, maketh it more tough and flubborne, and all by reason of cold: whereof the experience, by report, is to be seen about *Philippa* a City in *Macedonie*, where the remedy is to let corne lie in the chaffe: and therefore you must not thinke it strange, if you heare husbandmen report, that oft two lands or ridges, running directly one by the side of another, the one should yeeld corne tough and hard; the other soft and tender: and that which more is, beanes lying in one cod, some be of one sort, and some of another, according as they have felt (more or lesse) either of cold or of wind.

### THE THIRD QUESTION.

What is the cause, that the midst of wine, the top of oile, and the bottome of honey, is best?

My wifes father *Alexion*, one day laughed at *Hesiodus*, for giving counsell to drinke wine lustily, when the vessell is either newly pierced or runneth low; but to forbear when it is half drawn: his words are these:

*When vint is full, or when it draweth low,*  
*Drinke hard; but spare to midst when it doth grow.*

For that the wine there is most excellent: For who knoweth not (quoth he) that wine is best in the middle, oyle in the top, and honey in the bottome of the vessell? but *Hesiodus* (forsooth) advieth us to let the midst alone, and to stay untill it change to the worse and be fowre; namely, when it runneth low and little is left in the vessell. Which words being passed, the company there present bad *Hesiodus* farewell, and betook themselves into searching out the cause of this difference and diversity in these liquors. And first, as touching the reason of honey, we were not very much troubled about it, because there is none in manner but knoweth that a thing the more rare or hollow the substance of it is, the lighter it is said to be; as also, that solid, massive, and compact things, by reason of their weight, do settle downward; in such sort, that although you turne a vessell up-side-down; yet within a while after, each part runneth into the own place againe: the heavy sinks down, the light floats above: and even so, there wanted no arguments to yeeld a found reason for the wine also; for first and foremost, the vertue and strength of wine, which is the heat thereof, by good right gathereth about the midst of the vessell, and keepeth that part of all others best; then the bottome for the vicinity unto the lees is naught: lastly, the upper region, for that it is next to the aire, is likewise corrupt: for this we all know, that the wind or the aire is most dangerous unto wine, for that it altereth the nature thereof: and therefore we use to set wine-vessels within the ground, yea, and to stop and cover them with all care and diligence, that the least aire in the world come not to the wine: and that which more is, wine will nothing so soone corrupt when the vessells be full as when it hath been much drawn and groweth low, for the aire entrench in space proportionably to the

the place that is void; the wine taketh wind thereby and so much the sooner changeth; whereas if the vessells be full, the wine is able to maintain it selfe, not admitting from without much of that which is adverse unto it, or can hurt it greatly.

But the consideration of oile put us not to a little debate in arguing: One of the company said: That the bottome of oile was the worst, because it was troubled and muddy with the lees or mother thereof: and as for that which is above, he said: It was nothing better than the rest, but seemed only so, because it was farthest removed from that which might hurt it: Others attributed the cause unto the soliditie thereof, in which regard, it will not well be mingled or incorporate with any other liquor, unless it be broken or divided by force and violence; for so compact it is, that it will not admit the very aire to enter in it, or to be mingled with it, but keepeth it selfe apart, and rejecteth it by reason of the fine smoothnes, and continuity of all the parts, so it lesse altered it is by the aire, as being not predominant over it: nevertheless, it seemeth that *Aristotle* doth contradict and gain say this reason, who had observed (as he saith himselfe) that the oile is sweeter, more odoriferous, and in all respects better, which is kept in vessells not filled up to the brim; and afterwards ascribeth the cause of this mellority or betternes unto the aire: For that (saith he) there cometh more aire into a vessell that is half empty; and hath the more power: Then I wot not well (said I) but what and in regard of one and the same faculty and power, the aire bettereth oile, and impaireth the goodnes of wine? for we know that age is hurtfull to oile, and good for wine: which age the aire taketh from oile, because that which is cooled continueth still young and fresh; contrariwise that which is pent in and stuffed up, as having no aire, soon ageeth and waxeth old: great appearance there is therefore of truth, that the aire approaching neer unto oile, and touching the superficies thereof, keepeth it fresh and young still: And this is the reason, that of wine the upmost part is worst, but of oile the best, because that age worketh in that, a very good disposition, but in this, as bad.

### THE FOURTH QUESTION.

What was the reason that the ancient Romans were very precise, not to suffer the table to be clean voided, and all taken away; or the lamp and candle to be put out?

*Florus* a great lover of antiquity, would never abide, that a table should be taken away empty, but always left some meat or other standing upon it: And I know full well (quoth he) that both my father and my grandfather before him, not only observed this most carefully, but also would not in any case permit the lamp after supper to be put out, because for sparing of oile, and that thereby none should be wasted vainly. But *Enstrophus* the Athenian being upon a time at supper with us, hearing *Florus* making this relation: And what good got they by this (quoth he) unless they had learned the cunning craft of *Epicharmus* our fellow-citizen; who as he said himselfe, having studied a long time how he might keep his boies and servants about him from filching and stealing away his oile, hardly, and with much ado at the last, found this means: for presently after that the lamps were put out, he filled them full again with oile; and then the next morning, he would come and see whether they were still full. This speech made *Florus* to laugh: But seeing (quoth he) this question is so well solved, let us search I pray you into the reason: Why in old times, as it should seem, our\* ancients were so religious and precise, as touching their tables and lamps: first therefore they began with lamps and lights: And *Cæcilius* his son in law said: That those ancients as he thought, took it to be an ominous matter, and a very abomination indeed: that any fire whatsoever should be put out, for the likeness and kindred that it had with that sacred fire which is alwayes kept inextinguible: for two ways there be (as I take it) whereby fire (like swiemen) may die: the one violent, when it is quenched and put out by force: the other naturally when it goeth out: and dieth of it selfe: as for that sacred fire, they remedied both the one and the other in maintaining and looking to it continually with great care and diligence: the other which is common, they neglected and suffered it to go out of it selfe, without any more ado; for so they themselves quenched it not perforce, nor caused it to die, grudging and envying that it should live, as a beast that doth no good, they passed for it no more, nor made any further reckoning. Then *Leleius* the son of *Florus* said: That he liked well of all the rest that was said; but as concerning the sacred fire, he supposed, that our ancestors chose it not to reverence and adore, because they thought it more holy or better than other: but like as among the Aegyptians, some worshipped the whole kind of dogs; others, wolves likewise or crocodiles; but they nourished (with any special respect) but one of every kinde: to wit, some, one dog; others one wolfe, and others again, one crocodile; for that impossible it was to keep them all, even so here in this case, the vigilance and devotion which they employed in saving and keeping the sacred fire, was a signe and solemne testimoniall of the religious observance which they carried respectively to the whole element of fire: the reason was, because there is nothing in the world that more resembleth a living creature, considering that it moveth, stirreth, and feedeth it selfe; yea, and by the shining it lighteth that giveth, (in manner of the soul) layeth all things open, and maketh them, to be seen; but most of all it sheweth and proveth the power that it hath, not to be taken, to be burnt, or principle, in the extinguishing and violent death thereof; without some vital seed, or principle, in the extinguishing and violent death thereof.

\* Romans;



to cover them, or of walls to inviron, enclose, and keep them in, as women are wont to say by other pleasures; but contrariwise, built there are for their delights of the eye and ear, cirques and races, theaters and show-places; and the greater company that is there with us to see or hear any of these, the greater joy we take, and the thing it self is more stately: but this is plain, that delicious we are, not of a number of witnesses to testify our intemperance and naughty pleasure, but we care not how many see our honest exercises and civil sports or recreations.

After that *Callistratus* had ended his speech, *Lamprias* perceiving that those favourers and maintainers of such ear-sports, took better heart, and became more audacious by these words, let in hand to speak now indeed as he meant before, in this manner: This is not the cause, good *Callistratus*, the son of *Leon*; but in mine opinion, our ancient forefathers have not done well, to say that *Bacchus* was the son of *Oblivion*; for they should rather have said, that he was his father; considering, that even now by his means you have forgotten, that of those faults and misdemeanours which are committed by occasion of pleasures, some proceed from intemperance; others from ignorance or negligence; or where the hurt and damage is evident, there men (if they sin) do it because their reason is forced & overcome by intemperance; but look where the hire and reward of incontinence & looseness doth not directly ensue, nor presently upon the committing of a fault, there all their delinquency is to be ascribed unto ignorance, for that such lewd acts, they both approve and perpetrate, because they wist not what hurt would follow: and therefore such as do exorbitate and misgovern themselves in eating and drinking excessively, as also in the immoderate use of women: which enormities be ordinarily accompanied with many maladies, much expence, decay of estate, loss of goods and an ill name besides: we usually call loose, dissolute, and intemperate persons: such an one as that *Theodotus*, who being diseased in his eyes; whensoever he espied his sweet-heart whom he kept as his harlot, would salute her in these terms,

*All hail my sweet and lovely light,  
The only joy of mine eye-sight.*

And such another was *Anaxarchus* of *Abdera*:

*Who (by report) knew well what miseries  
He lived in, but yet his nature was  
Inclined so to pleasure, which men wile,  
And sage dread most; that he was  
Was thereby drawn and carried unto sin,  
Out of that way which judgement set him in.*

But those who hold out manfully, and stand upon their own guards, for fear they be caught and overcome with the grosse pleasure of the belly, and the parts under it, of taste and of smelling; and yet nevertheless suffer themselves to be circumvented and surprized by other delights, which secretly forelay them, and lie in ambush, hidden close within their eyes and ears: these men (I say) although they be nothing less passionate, dissolute, and incontinent than the others, yet we term them not so for all that: and why so? because they know not the danger wherein they stand; they run not headlong through ignorance, thinking they shall be masters over their pleasures, yea, though they tarried at the theater all the long day, from morning to night, to see and hear plays and other pastimes, without bit of bread or drop of drink; as if forsooth an earthen vessel or pitcher should boast it self and stand much upon this, that it is not stirred and taken up by the belly or the bottom, and yet easily removed and carried from place to place by the two ears: & therefore *Arcesilus* was wont to say: That it skilled not which way one committed filthiness, for behind and before, was all one; so that we ought to fear that wantonness and pleasures which tickle us in our ears and eyes both: neither are we to think a city impregnable, which having all other gates fast made with strong locks, fortified also with cross bars, and portcullisses, if the enemies may enter in at one other gate: nor to take our selves to be invincible and unconquered by pleasures, for that we be not caught and taken within the temple of *Venus*; in case wee suffer our selves to be taken in the chappel of the Muses, or else at some theater: For surely such a passion may overtake and captivate our soul as well here as there, yea, and betake it unto pleasures, for to hale and pull, carry and hurry us as they list: and these verily do insult and powre into our spirits, poisons more eager and piercing, yea, and in greater variety: I mean of songs, dances, musickall accords and measures, than all those be, which either cooks, confectioners, or perfumers can devise: by the strength thereof, they lead and carry us whither they will, yea, and corrupt us so, as that we cannot chuse but convince and condemn our selves by our own testimony against us: For as *Pindarus* said very well:

*We cannot charge, nor yet blame-worthy think,  
What every for our present meat and drink  
The sacred earth to us afforded hath,  
Or few, with milder, that is so fell and wrath.*

And to say a truth, there is no dainty cates, no delicate viands, fish or flesh; no north this passing good wine which we drink; that for any pleasure and contentment which they yeeld unto us, causeth us to set up any such noises, like as ere while, the sound and playing of the flutes did, which filled (I say) not this house only, but I believe well, the whole city, with out-cries, utas, clapping of hands, and alarms: and therefore we are to stand in great fear and dread of such pleasures as these,

these: for exceeding forcible they be, and most powerfull they be, as those who stay not there, as those do which affect either taste, feeling, or smelling; to wit, in the unreasonable part of the soul, without passing any farther; but they reach unto the very judgement, and discourse of reason. Moreover, in other delights and pleasures, although reason should faile and not be able to withstand them, but give over in plain field: yet there be other passions a good many which will resist and impeach them: for say there be some dainty and delicate fish to be bought and sold in the market; misardite oftentimes holdeth back a gluttons fingers, from drawing out his purse-strings, who otherwise would be busie and ready enough to help his deinty tooth: covetousness likewise otherwhiles turneth away a wanton leacher and whore-matter from meddling with a dear and costly courtesan, who holds her selfe at an exceeding high price; like as *Menander* in one of his comedies bringeth in a pretty pageant of this matter: for when a certain baud had brought unto a banquet, where divers youths were drinking, and making merrily together, a passing faire wench, young withall, and trimly let out in every point, for to entice and allure them, they

*Cast down their heads, and like good merry mates,  
Fell to their juckers hard, and deinty cates.*

For when it stands upon this point, that a man mult take money up at interest, or else go without his pleasure; certes, it is a shrewd punishment to bridle his lust and incontinence: for we are not always so willing and ready to lay our hand to our purses: now the eyes and ears of such as love musicians and minstrels, and other such gentleman-like sports, and recreations as we call them, busy their furious appetites and affections, in sounding musick, plays and shewes, for nothing without any cost: for why? such pleasures as these, they may be sped with, and enjoy in many places, as the publick and sacred games of prize, in theaters, and at feasts, and all at other men charges; and therefore an easie matter it is, to meet with matter enough for to spoile and undo them quite, who have not reason to govern and direct them. Hereat he made a pause, for there was some silence for a while: And what? would you have (quoth *Callistratus*) this is so, either to do or say for to succour and save us? for sile will not fatten round about our ears, those little cafes or bolsters to cover our ears with, which *Xenocrates* speaketh of, neither will he cause us to rise from the table so soon as we heare a musician to tune his lute or prepare his pipe: No in truth (quoth *Lamprias*) but looke how often soever as we fall into the danger of these pleasures, we ought to call upon the muses for to succour us; we must fite into that mountain *Mithra* of our ancients: for such an one as is enamoured upon a sumptuous and costly trumpet, we cannot tell how to match by and by with a *Penelope*: nor marry unto *Panthea*; but if one take pleasure in bawdy ballads, lascivious songs, and wanton dances, we may soon divert him from thence, by setting him to read *Euripides*, *Pindarus*, or *Menander*; and lo wash a filthy ear, and furred all over with felle (as *Plato* saith) with a sweet and potable lotion of good sayings and wise sentences: for these magicians commanded those who are possessed or haunted with evil spirits, to rehearse and pronounce apart by themselves Ephesian letters, or words of a counter-charme; even so when we are among these vanities, where minstrels play their parts, and morisk dancers their gambols, fetching their frisks and gambols,

*Shaking themselves in furious wise,  
With strange allarmes and hideous cries:  
Wagging and flinging every way  
Their necks and heads all while they play.*

Then call to remembrance the grave, holy and venerable writings of those ancient Sages, and stirring them with these forth, sonnets, ribald rimes, paltry poems, and ridiculous reasons, we shall not be endangered by them, nor turn aside (as they say) and suffer our selves to be carried away with them down the stream.

#### THE SIXTH QUESTION.

*Of such guests as be named shadows; and whether he that is called by the one, may go unto another to supper: if he may, when, and to whom.*

*Answer* in the second book of his *Ilias*, writeth of *Menelaus*, how he came of his own accord to be summoned, to a feast that his brother *Agamemnon* made unto the princes and chief commanders of the army:

*For why? he well conceived in his mind,  
That troubled much, his brother he should find.*

And as he would not neglect and oversee thus much, that either the ignorance or forgetfulness in his brother, should be otherwise seen: so he was less willing to discover it himselfe in failing for to come: as some forward and peevish persons are wont to take hold of such oversights and negligences of their friends, being better content in their hearts thus to be neglected, than honoured, because they would have advantage, and somewhat to complain of. But as touching such as are invited or all to a feast, nor have no formal bidding (whom now a dayes, we call shadows) and yet are brought in by those who are invited, there arose one day a question, how this custome first came up and took beginning. Some were of opinion that *Socrates* began it, who perswaded

F f 3

*Ariz*

\* And therefore might for: get his own brow, then,



*Aristodemus* upon a time, being not bidden to goe with him to a feast at *Agathon's* house, where there fell out a pretty jest and a ridiculous; for *Aristodemus* tooke no heed when he thither came, that he had left *Socrates* by the way behinde him, and so himselfe entred before into the roomes; which is as much as the shadow before the body, and the light coming after: but afterwards, at the feasting and entertainment of friends that are travellers, and pals by as strangers, especially, if they were princes or great governours, because men knew not who were in their traine, and whom they deigned this honour, for to sit at their own table, and to eat and drink with them; the custome was to request themselves, for to bring with them whom they would, but withall, to set down a determinate number; for fear lest they should be so served as one was, who invited to supper, *Philip* king of *Macedonie*, into the country: for he came to his hosts house with a great retinue after him, who had not provided a supper for many guests: *Philip* perceiving that his friend was hereupon in great perplexity, and knew not what to do, sent unto every one of his friends that he brought with him, a servitor of purpose to round them secretly in the ear, that they should so eat of the viands before them, as that they reserved a piece of their stomack for a dainty tax or cake that was to come in: by which means, whiles they looked evermore when the said dish should come to the table, and did eat more sparingly in hope of it, of those meats which stood before them, there was sufficient for them all. But whiles I seemed thus to play upon the point before the company there present, *Florus* thought good that this question ought to be handled in good earnest, and more seriously: namely, as touching those shadowes abovesaid: Whether it might stand with honesty and good manners, to follow or go with them who were bidden? As for *Cesennius* his son in law, he utterly condemned that fashion: For a man ought (quoth he) to obey the counsell of *Hesiodus*, who writeth thus:

*Above all others, to thy feast,  
Invite thy friend who loves thee best.*

If not so, yet be sure at leastwise to bid thy familiars and those of thine acquaintance, for to participate with thee in thy sacred libations and thankgivings to the gods at the table, in discourses there held, in the curtesies passing to and fro: and namely, in drinking one to another: but now adiake it is with men that make feasts, or with those who keep ferry-barges or barks to transport passengers; for when they take in men aboard, they permit them to cast into the vessell what fardles or baggage they have besides: for even so, we making a feast for some especiall persons, give them leave to fill the place with whomsoever they please: whether they be honest men and of worth or no, it makes no matter. And I would marvell much, if a man of quality, and one that knoweth good manners, would come thus bidden (as it were) at the second hand, which is all one as unbidden, being such an one, as many times the master of the feast himselfe knoweth not: and if he be one of his acquaintance and knowledge, and yet unbidden, surely it were more shame now to go to his house, as it were, to upbraid him and cast in his teeth, as if he came unto his feast without his good will, and yet would take his part thereof, even by violence and strong hand. Moreover, to go before or tarry after him, who would seeme to bid one to another mans table, carrieth some shame with it, and would make a modest and honest man dismayed and blank: neither is it a decent thing to have need of witnesses, and a warrant (as it were) between him and the master of the house, to innuendate thus much, that he is come indeed, not as one formerly bidden, as *Florus* saith, but as one that is come of his own accord.

is no easie matter to know, whom a man hath in his company. See then (quoth I) whether they who have given liberty unto them that make a feast, thus to invite guests, that they may take others unto them (as you say) permit not them also whom they would bring, as their shadowes, to obey, and so to come unto a feast; for it standeth not with honesty, to grant and give that, which is not meet for to demand or give; nor in one word to sollicite or exhort one to that, whereunto he would not willingly be solicited, either to do or give his consent: but as for great States and rulers, or strangers travelling by the way, there is no such inviting or choise to be made: for entertained they must be whomsoever they bring with them: but otherwise, when one friend feasteth another, it were a more friendly and courteous part, for himselfe to bid the familiars or kinsfolke of his said friend, knowing them so well as he doth; for by this meanes greater honour he doth unto his friend, yea, and winneth more thanks at his hands again, when the party invited shall know that he loveth them best, that most willingly he desireth to have their company, as taking pleasure that they be honoured and entreated to come as well, for his sake; and yet for all this, it would otherwhiles be wholly reerred unto his discretion that is bidden: like as those who sacrifice unto some one god, do honour likewise and make vows unto those who are partakers of the same temple and altar in common, although they name them not severally by themselves. \* \* For there is neither wine, dainty viands, nor sweet perfumes, that give such contentment and pleasure at a feast, as doth a man whom one loveth and liketh well of, sitting by his side or neer unto him at the table: moreover, to ask and demand of the man himselfe, whom one would feast, what viands or what banqueting dishes or pattry works he loveth best; as also to seek and enquire of the diversitie of wines and pleasant odors he delighted in, were a very unciuill and absurd part: but when a man hath many friends, many kinsfolks and familiars, to request such an one to bring with him, those especially, whose company he liketh best, and in whom he taketh greatest pleasure, is no absurdity at all, nor a thing that can be offensive: for neither to faile in one ship, nor to dwell in the same house, ne yet to plead in the same cause, with those whom we are not affected well unto, is so displeasing and odious, as to sit at a supper with them against whom our heart doth rise; and the contrary is as acceptable: for surely the table is a very communion and lociety of mirth and earnest, of words and deeds; and therefore if men would be merry there, and make good cheer, I see no need, that all manner of persons indifferently should meet, but those only who have some inward friendship, and private familiarity one with another: as for our meats and sauces that come up to the board, who I confesse do make them of all manner of sapours, different as they be, mixing them together, and tempering, harsh, lowre, milde, sweet, sharp, subtil, and biting, one with another: but a supper or feast, is nothing acceptable and contenting, unless it be composed of guests who are of the same humour and disposition: and for that, as the Peripatetick Philosophers do affirm, that there is one *Primum mobile*, above, or principall mover in nature, which moveth only, and is not moved; and another thing beneath, and in the lowest place, which is moved only, and moveth not; but between these two extremities, there is a middle nature, that moveth one and is moved by another; even so, (say I) there is the same proportion among three sorts of men, the first of those who invite another; the second of such as are invited only; and the third of them that do invite others, and are invited themselves: and now because we have spoken already of the first and principall feaster, who inviteth, it were not amiss now to say somewhat of the other two folks: He then

unto such a personage occasion and means, to salute, embrace, and make much of them: whereas he who commeth to a feast with such about him as hath no conformity at all unto the feast-maker, but seem meer aliens and strangers: as namely, with great drunkards, to a sober man house: to a man that is a good husband, wary, and thrifty in his expences, with a sort of dissolute ruffians and swaggering companions: or unto a young gentleman, that loveth to drink heartily, to laugh, to jest, and to be merry, with grim firs, and severe ancients, such as in their talk are grave, and by their long beards, may be taken for sages and profound clerks: such an one (I say) is a very absurd fellow, this to requite the hospitable courtesy of his friend, with such impertinent incongruity: for he that is invited, must be as careful to please first the inviter, as the feast-maker, his guest, and then acceptable shall he be and wellcom indeed, if not himself only, but th'apple, who cometh with him or for the love of him, be of good carriage and lovely behaviour. As for the third person, who remaineth to be spoken of, to wit, who is bidden and brought in by another: if he take pepper in the note, and cannot abide to be called a shadow: certainly he is afraid of his own shadow: but in this case, there would be very great circumspection had; for it is no point of honesty and good manners, to be soon intreated, and ready to follow every one indifferently at his call: considered it would be, and that not slightly, what he is who moveth thee to go with him to such a feast: for if he be not a very familiar friend, but one of these rich magnificoes and portly personages, who would (as it were upon a scaffold) make a shew unto the world of a number of favourites and followers to guard and attend him at his heels: or such an one as would seem to do much for thee, or to grace and honour thee greatly by taking thee in this order with him, thou oughtest flatly to deny him, and refuse such courtesy: well, say that he be a friend and familiar person, yet must not thou by and by for all that, be ready and obey, but then only, when there is some necessary occasion for to commune or speake with the master of the feast or with the other party, and that otherwise thou canst meet with no good opportunity for to do it: or if he be newly returned from some long voyage, when he hath been a great time away, or else about to depart, and so seem (for very good will) detours of thy company at supper: or if it appear that he meaneth not to take with him many, nor those strangers and unknown, but either thy self alone, or some few others of his familiars: or after all these considerations, if thou mayest perceive, that by this occasion and opportunity of thy company, he doth practise to contract some beginning of farther acquaintance, friendship and amity, and namely, if he be reputed an honest man, and worthy to be loved and regarded, who thus is desirous of thy company, and earnest with thee to go with him: for wicked and lewd persons, the more they seem to clasp and take hold, and hang upon us, the more we ought to shake them off as burres, or else to leap over them as briars and brambles: nay, admit that they be honest enough, who would have our company, and bring us to a man that is not honest, we ought not to go with them, lest we chance to take poison with honey, that is to say, get the acquaintance of a naughty man, by the means of an honest minded friend: moreover, absurd it is, to go unto a man's house whom we know not at all, or with whom we never had any manner of dealing and acquaintance, unless he be a personage of great mark for singular virtue, as we have before said, or this this occasion may serve as a foundation or ground-work of some farther love and amity: for if it were not amiss to be easily intreated, and to go willingly without any ceremoniall complexities unto him, under the wing and shadow of another. As for those who be already our familiars, unto such above all others we may be bold to go at the motion of another: for by that means we give reciprocal liberty and leave unto them for to repaire likewise unto us at the request of others. There was one *Philip* indeed, a buffon and scurrile jester, who was wont to say: That to go unto a feast, formally invited, was simply more ridiculous, than to come as a shadow by the bidding of another: but in truth, more honourable and pleasant it is for honest men and good fellows, to resort unto their friends, who be likewise honest and vertuous, in seasonable time (without being invited or expected) with other friends: for thereby they both rejoyce the heart of those that entertain them, and do honour unto such as bring them: but above all, most undecent it is, to go unto princes, rulers rich men and great States, when we are not invited by themselves, but brought by others: for in any case avoid we must, the imputation and note not undesired, of impudency, incivility, want of good manners, or ambitious insolvency.

### THE SEVENTH QUESTION.

Whether it be a lawfull and decent thing, to admit minstrell-wenches to a feast, for to play and sing?

In our city *Cheronea*, there was held a great discourse one day at the table, where *Diogenianus* the *Pergamian* was present, as touching the ear-sports which were to be admitted at a banquet, and much ado we had to defend our selves, and to confute a long bearded philosopher that was there, one of the *Stoicks* sect forsooth, who alledged, against us, *Plato*, blaming and condemning those who brought into their feasts minstrell-wenches, to pipe and sing, &c. to be heard, as if they were not able themselves to entertain good speeches one with another: and yet present there was, a scholar, out of the same school, *Philip* a Prusian, who said: That such personages were not to be named in this question; who are brought in as speakers at *Agathon's* board, for that their speeches sounded more sweetly and melodiously, than all the flutes and cithrons in the world: no marvel it was therefore,

these minstrels had no audience at such a feast, but rather, that the guests sitting there at the table, forgot not altogether to eat and drink, for the great pleasure and contentment which they took in hearing such discourses. And yet *Xenophon* was not ashamed to endure in the presence of *Socrates*, *Anisibion*, and other such personages, a pleasant conceited jester named *Philippos*, no more than *Homier* to reach men: That an onion was a good sauce to draw on wine: And having inserted in manner an interlude or comedy within his Banquet, the speech of *Aristophanes*, as touching love: at the last setting as it were the back doors of the hall wide open, brings in a variety, fuller of variety and vanity than all the rest, to wit, *Alcibiades* little better than a drunk, and armed with chapters and garlands of flowers, and marching in a mask or mummerly: then follow the observations and debates with *Socrates* as touching *Agathon*, and that encomiastical praise of *Socrates*: (O blessed saint *Charrice*!) that even *Apollo* himselfe (were it lawfull so to say) if he were entered in place with his harp ready strung and tuned for to play, the company would have requested him to stay his hand, until the forelaide speech had been finished and brought to an end: And did these personages indeed (quoth he) notwithstanding they had so great grace in their discourses, use nevertheless these pleasant sports and pastimes between, garnishing their feasts with mirth, and all to make the company to laugh and bemery? And shall we being intermingled with persons managing affaires of State, with merchants, occupiers, and with many (it may be fall out) altogether unlettered, and somewhat ritulically, banish out of our feasts and banquets this agreeable delight and pastime: or else rise from the table and be gone, as if we would flee from *Sirenes* as soon as ever we see them coming? It was thought a strange and wonderful matter in *Clitomachus* the champion and profiteour of performing games of prize: that so soon as there was any talk begun of love matters, he would leave the company and depart: and when *Philo*sopher avoideith the sound of the flute, and goeth out of the feast, and as if he were afraid of a minstrell wench, preparing her selfe to found and sing, putteth on his shoes, and calculateth incontinently to his page for to light his torch: shall he not in so doing be thought worthy to be laughed at and laughed of every one, for taking offence, and abhorring these harmless pleasures; as those beetles which flee from perumes and sweet odors? For if there be any time or place allowed for these delights, it is at feasts and banquets principally: Then (I say) and there are we to give our hands to such delights, all the while we sacrifice unto *Bacchus*: For mine own part *Enripides*, I know never otherwise he pleaseeth me very well, doth not satisfie me herein, when he ordaineth touching musick, that transferred it should be from feasts and banquets unto sorowes and pensive times: for in these cases, there would be some good, sober and wise remonstration at hand (like the physician with sick folk) to help all: but otherwise we are to mingle these delights of musick with the gifts of *Bacchus*, in manner of sport and recreation: Certes, a pretty speech it was of a *Lacedemonian*, who being at *Athen*: on a time, when new tragedies were to be acted, and the youths of them to contend for the best game; seeing the sumptuous furniture and provision of those who were the masters of the revels, and such pastimes, together with the painful labour in teaching and prompting of parts, and what ado there was in ordering of the dances and shewes unto belonging: whilst one strived to go beyond another: Oh what a foolish city this is (quoth he) to employ so much travell and serious study in idle pleasures and disports! For to say a truth, when we are at our playes, we must do nothing else but play, and not to buy too dear (with such cost and expences, yea, and with the loss of time, which were better bestowed about other good affaires) an idle sport: many at the table, when our spirit is sequestered from other business, we may take a little of such delights, and in the mean while, consider withall, what profit such solace may

\* For they  
sat upon  
pallets  
and beds  
at meat,  
and did  
off their  
shoes for  
the time,

### THE EIGHTH QUESTION.

What Acroams or Ear-sports, are especially to be used at supper time?

When these words had passed, the sophister above-said, would gladly have replied again: but I for to interrupt and stay his speech, began first and said: Nay rather *Diogenianus*, I think it better to consider upon this point: that seeing there be many ear-delights to content our hearing, which of them is most meet and fit? and if you think too good, let us refer the matter to this gentleman here in place, and request him to give his judgement: for being as he is, inflexible, and not subject to no passions, we shall never need to fear that he will so much trip, as to prefer a thing that is more pleasant, before that which is better. Then he at the request and exhortation of *Diogenianus* and us, without any delay: As for other pastimes (quoth he) at theaters, exhibited upon the stage and scaffold of players and dancers, I reject and banish them all: only I admit one kind of sport to delight the ear, which not long since came to be taken up at *Rome*, in feasts and banquets, and is not yet divulged abroad in every place: For you know well (quoth he) that among the dialogues of *Plato*, some there be which contain a continued narration of a thing done acted, others again consist of certain devised personages talking and discounting together: of these personall dialogues, those that be easiest, children use to learne. And con them without book, together with expressing the gestures agreeable to the quality, manners, and nature of the persons, who are feigned and brought in; a conformation also and framing of the voice, yea, and a countenance

countenance

tenance and disposition every way answerable to the words that they pronounce: this manner of pastime hath been wonderfully well accepted among grave persons, and men of honour: but such as be effeminate, or have dainty and delicate ears, by reason that they are rude, illiterate, and ignorant what is good and honest: and who, as *Aristophanes* was wont to say, will be ready to cat up their gorge, and vomit yellow choler, when they hear any good harmony, mistake them and would not abide the hearing: and I would not marvel verily, if they reject and condemn them utterly, being so possessed with womanish daintiness. *Philip* then perceiving some there in place, not to take these words well: Stay there (quoth he) my good friend, and forbear in this wife to rail upon us, for we were the first, who were offended with this manner and fashion, when it began at *Rome*, yea, and we reproved those who would have *Plato* serve the turne, for to make folk merry at the board, and laboured all they could, that *Plato's* dialogues forthwith should be rehearsed and heard, amidst tarts, marsh-pans, comfitures, and sweet perfumes: considering, that if some verses of *Sappho*, or *Anacreon's* odes should be rehearsed: Me thinks I ought for very shame and reverence, let the cup down out of my hand, if I were about to drink: many more things to this effect I have in my head, which I am afraid to utter for fear I might be thought of purpose to make head, and to dispute against you: and therefore to this friend here of ours, together with the cup as you see, I give the charge, for to wash a saltish ear (as they say) with potable liquor of pleasant speech: then *Diogenianus* receiving the cup at his hand: But (quoth he) I hear no other yet but all good fobber speeches: so that it seemeth that the wine doth not work in our heads, nor overcome our braines: and I feare me, that I my selfe shall be capitulated and articled against: howbeit, if I must speak my mind, I am of opinion, that many of these matters which are presented unto our ears, for to tickle and please them, ought to be cut off; and namely, tragedies above all others, as being a thing (iwis) not very well befitting a feast, for that it speaketh in too grave and base a voice, representing besides, such arguments and acts, as move the hearer to pity and compassion: I reject also, out of our dances, that which is called *Pyldion*, as being over-stately, and too full of pomp, exceeding patheticall besides, and requiring many persons and actors: but if we may admit any of those country kinds, which *Socrates* recounteth, when he speaks of dances, I receive that which is called *Bathyllion*, which of it selfe beareth a lower pace, and soundeth much like to the rustic dance, called *Cordax*, or resembling *Eco's Pan*, or some Satyr dancing amorously and wantonly with *Cupid*: as for the comedy, that which was called *Alca*, that is to say, the ancient kind first used, it forth not well with the table, nor would be admissible when they be drinking and merry, in regard of the inequality thereof: for that earnestness and liberty of speech, used in those glancing digressions, called *ragabulous*, is too free and over-rebment: also, the facility and readines to scoff, flout, and jibe, is too rife and common over-broad and plain besides, full of undecent and unhonest verbs, and as full of filthy and lascivious names. Moreover, like as at the feasts of great princes and potentates, there standeth always, waiting by every one of them that sit at the board, a cup-bearer, to give him drink when he calleth for it; even so there had need to be some Grammarian or other at hand continually, for to expound or set anon, the meaning of divers rearmes used in these comedies, to wit, what signifieth in *English* the poet, this word *Lasmodias*: also, what the poet *Plato* meane by *Cinesias*, by his comedies: and what is meant by *Lampon*, in *Cratinus*: likewise one or other for the purpose, to give the hearers to understand, who they be whom the actors let flie their scurrile scoffs at: so that by this means, our feast must be like a Grammar school, or else all the frumps and mocks that be flung and discharged, will light in vaine, and lose their grace, for want of being understood. But to come unto the new comedy, what should a man say any thing of it but this, that it is so incorporate in feasts and banquets, that a man may better make a supper without wine, than without *Menander*: for why? the phrase or manner of speech in these comedies is sweet, pleasant and familiar, the matter such, as neither can be despised of the sober, nor offensive to the drunken: besides, the verbiage and sententious sayings therein, delivered in simple and plain rearmes, run so smooth, that they are able to soften and make pliable every way the stiffest and hardest natures that be, by the meanes of wine, like as the bars of iron in the fire, and to reduce them to humanity. To be short, the temperance throughout of mirth and gravity together, is such, as it seemeth that this comedy was devised first for nothing else, but both to pleasure & profit, those who had taken their wine liberally & were now well disposed to mirth: moreover, even the amorous objects therein presented, are not without a singular use and benefit, for these who being already set in an heat with wine, are within a while after to go to bed & sleep with their wedded wives: neither shall you find among all his comedies, as many as he hath written, any filthy love of a young fair boy; and as for the deflowing of young maidens & virgins about which there is such adoe in his comedies, they ordinarily do end in marriages & all parties be pleased. As touching the love of harlots & professed courtesans, if they be proud, disdainful and presumptuous queans, certainly our wanton affection that way, is well cooled and daunted, by certain chastishments or repentances of young men, who are represented in these comedies, to come again unto themselves, and acknowledge their follies: but as for those kinde harlots, which are of good natures, and for their parts do answer again in true love, either you shall have in the end their own fathers found, who may provide them husbands, or else there is some measure of time set out for to gage their love, which at the last, after a certain revolution and course run, turneth unto civil and bashfull behaviour, I know well, that all these

these matters and observations, unto those who are otherwise occupied and busied in affaires, be of no importance: but at a table, where men are let of very purpose to be merry and to solace themselves, I would wonder, if their dexterity, delight, and good grace, doth not bring with it some amendment and ornament into the minds and conditions of those who take heed unto them, yea, and imprint a certain zeal and emulation, to frame and conforme themselves unto those that be honest and of the better sort.

At these words, *Diogenianus* paused a while, were it for that he had made an end of his speech, or to take his wind, and breath himselfe a little: and when the sophter began to reply and came upon him again, saying, that in his opinion there should have been some places and verses recited out of *Aristophanes*, *Philip* speaking unto me by name: This man (quoth he) hath his desire satisfied, now that he hath so well recommended his friend *Menander*, in whom he taketh so great delight, and in comparison of whom, he seemeth to have no care nor regard at all of any other: but there remain yet many other matters, which we are wont to hear for our pleasure, which hitherto have not been examined: and yet very willing I am to hear some discourse of them: as for the pretty work of imagers, who cut out and grave small living creatures, if it please this stranger here and *Diogenianus*, we will put over the controvercie and the decision thereof untill to morrow morning, when we are more sober. Then began I to speake, and said: There be yet, other kind of sports and plaies, namely *Mimes* of which, some they call *Hypobithes*, as it were, moralities & representations of histories: others, *Pegnia*, that is to wit, ridiculous fooleries; but neither of them both, do I take me for a baguette, the former, both because they require so long time in the acting, and also, for that they require so costly furniture and preparation; the other, are too full of ribaudry, of filth, and beastly speeches, not well becoming the mouths of pages and lackies, that carry their masters slippers and parrottes after them, especially, if their matters be honest and wife men: and yet many there are, who at their feasts, where their wives sit by their sides, and where their young children be present, cause such foolish acts and speeches to be presented, as trouble the spirits and disorder the passions of the mind more, than any drunkenness whatsoever. But as for the play of the harp, which is of so great antiquity, and ever since before *Homer's* time, hath been a familiar friend and companion with feasts, and alwayes entertained there, it were not meet nor honest for to dissolve that ancient friendship, and so long continuance; but we would request those minstrels that play and sing to the harp, to take out of their songs those dolefull plants, dumps, and sorrowfull lamentations, which be so ordinary in them, and to chaunt pleasant ditties and fresh galliards, meet for those who are met to be merry and jocund. Moreover, as touching the flute and hautboies, they will not be kept out, do what a man will, from the table: for if we do but offer our labors, by pouring our wine in the honour of the gods, we must needs have our pipes, or else all we were married, yea, and chaplets of flowers upon our heads: and it seemeth that the gods themselves do sing thereto and accord: moreover, the sound of the flute doth dulce the spirits, and entrench into the ears with so solide and pleasant a tune, that it carrieth with it a tranquillity and pacification of all motions, even unto the soul, in such sort, that if there did remain in the understanding and mind, any grief, any care or anxiety, which the wine had not dissolved and chased away, by the gracious and amiable noise thereof, and the voice of the musician singing thereto, it quieteth it, and bringeth it all together: provided alwayes, that this instrument keep a mean and mediocrity, so that it move not the soul too much, and make it passionate, with too many tunes and notes that it hath at what time as the said soul is so drenched and wrought soft with wine, that it is ready to be affected therewith: for like as sheep and other cattell, understand not any articulate language of a man, carrying a sense and understanding therewith: howbeit, with certain whistles or chirts, done by lips or hands, or with the sound of some pipe or shell, the shepherds and other heard-men can tell how to raise them, or make them lie down & couch even so, the brutish part of the soul, which hath no understanding, nor is capable of reason, may be appeased, ranged and disposed as it ought to be, by songs and sounds, by measures, tunes and notes, as if it were charmed and enchanted by them: but to speak what I think, this is my conceit, that neither sound of flute, nor lute and harp, is so fit, without mans voice and song to it, can make merry the company met together at a feast, as much as a good speech, well and properly fitted; for so we must accomodate our selves in good company, to take our principall pleasure and delight in speech, and to spend the best part of that time in discourse and communication: as for song and harmony, we are to make (as it were) a sauce to our speech, not to colick them up and swallow them down alone by themselves: for like as no man will reject and refuse the pleasure that cometh by wine, and viands taken for the necessity of our nouriture, and bringing therewith commoditie of our health: but that which entrench by sweet scents and perfumes is not necessary, but superfluous and delicate, *Socrates* sent away (as it were) with a box of the ear: even so we ought not to hear the sound of a flute or psalterie, which striketh and beareth upon our ears only, but if it follow or accompany our speech, which doth feast and exhilarate the reason that is in our soul, we may well admit and receive the same. And verily, for mine own part, I think, that the reason why in old time *Apollo* punished that presumptuous *Marsias*, was this, that when he had clofed up his mouth with his pipe and muzzle together, he presumed to contend and strive (having nothing but the bare sound of the naked flute) against him, who together with the sound of the harp, had the song also and musick of the voice: let us therefore in this one thing especially, beware and take heed, that in the company of those men, who by their

speech

speech and learned discourses are able to delight and pleasure one another, we bring not in any such thing to enter in at their ears, which may be an impeachment or hinderance rather to their delight than a delectation it selfe: for not only they be foolish and ill advised, as *Empirides* saith:

*Who having of their own at home  
enough themselves to save,  
Will seek else where, and from abroad,  
their remedy to have,*

but also, those who being provided sufficiently of means in themselves, to make their recreations of, and to solace their hearts, labour nevertheless all that ever they can, to have their delights from others. For the magnificence of that great king of *Persia*, wherewith he meant to entertain *Andarides* the Lacedaemonian, seemed (I assure you) very grosse, absurd and impertinent, namely, when he dipped and wet a chaplet of roses, saffron, and other odoriferous flowers, intermingled together, in a precious oile, and so sent it unto him, doing injury by that means to the flowers, and utterly quenching and marring that native beauty and fragrant sweetness of their own; slemblably, no les absurdity it were, when a feast hath mirth and mullick enough in it selfe, to go about for to enchain and encharme it with other minitrelsie from abroad, and so for a strange and borrowed delight, to bereave the guests of their own and proper, and as one would say, change the principall for the accessory. I conclude therefore, that the fittest season for such amusements and occupying of the ears is, when the feast beginneth a little to grow turbulent, and to fall into some contentions debate and brawle, by heat of opinionative arguing, for to ally and quench all, that it break not out, to opprobrious teares: or to expresse a disputation, which is like to pain the bounds of reasoning, and to grow unto an unpleasent and sophistical altercation; yea, and to stay all litigious wrangling and vehement invectives, beseeching rather pleas at bar, or the orations in the publick hall of a city, until such time as the banquet be reduced into the former calme and tranquillity.

## THE NINTH QUESTION.

*That to consult at the table, while men are drinking wine, was an ancient custome among the Greeks as well as Persians.*

*Nicostratus* upon a time invited us to a supper; and when we were set, there arose some speech as touching certain matters, upon which the Athenians were the morrow after to sit in council, and to debate in a generall assembly of the city: now, as one of our company cast out this word, and said: This is the Persian fashion, my masters, thus to consult and hold a council at the board, And why Persian rather than Grecian? (quoth *Glaucias*?) for a Grecian I am sure he was, that said:

*Ταπεινὸν ποτὶνός, βουλὴν γὰρ οὐκ ἔχουσιν.*

*That is to say,*

*From belly full, best counsell doth arise,  
And surest plot men in that case devise.*

And Greeks they were, who under the conduct of *Agamemnon* held *Troy* besieged: who as they were eating and drinking together,

*The good old Nestor first began  
Wisely upon the point to scan,*

who also was himselfe the author of this meeting, and advised the king to invite his nobles, and the principall captaines of the army to dinner, for to sit in council in these teares:

*Make now a feast, I you advise my lord,  
And bid your ancient peers, who when at board  
They be all set: make ye who gives counsell best,  
Obey his reed, and see therein your rest.*

And therefore the most nations of Greece which were ruled under the best lawes, and most constantly retained their ancient ordinances and customes, laid the first foundation of their government and council of State upon wine: for those guilds and societies in *Candy*, which they called *Andreia*, as also the *Phiditia* in *Sparta*, were instituted and held for privy councils and assemblies of senators; like unto that, if I be not deceived, which even in this city here of *Athen* goeth under the name of *Prytaneion*, and *Thesmothesion*, and not far different from these, is that night-assembly of the principall personages, and most politick States-men, wherof *Plato* speaketh in his books, unto which he referreth the causes and affaires of most importance, which require greatest consultation: those counsellors of State also in *Homer*:

*Who offer wine to Mercury,  
the last of others all,*

*What time, as now, bed-time it is,  
and them to sleep doth call,*

do not they I pray join wine and words together? when they are about therefore to depart, and retire themselves into their bed-chambers, the first thing that they do, is to make their prayers, and powere out their libations of wine, unto the wisest God of all others, as if he were present with them, and their superintendent to oversee them: but they who were indeed the most ancient of all others, called even *Bacchus* himselfe\* *Enphelus*, as if they had no need at all of *Mercury*, and in regard also of him, they attributed unto night the name of \* *Enphron*.

THE

## THE TENTH QUESTION.

*Whether they did well who sat in consultation at the table?*

*VVhen Glaucias* had spoken these words, we all thought that these turbulent and litigious debates had been well appeased and laid asleep; but to the end that they might so much rather die and be buried in oblivion: *Nicostratus* provided another question, and said: At the first (quoth he) I made no great matter of this custome, nor regarded it much, taking it to be a meer Persian fashion; but now seeing it is discovered to be an order also among the Greeks, requisite and necessary it is to render some reason thereof, so to defend it against an evident absurdity, which at the first sight presenteth it selfe: for that the discourse of reason in manner of the eye, is hardly to be governed by us, and untoward for to be brought to perform her work in a great quantity of moisture, and the same as yet stirring and waving; and besides, all odious griefs, which on every side appear and come forth to wine, like as Snakes, Lizards, and such like Serpents, are brought to fight and shew themselves to the sun, cause the mind to be wavering, inconstant, and irresolute: as therefore a bed or pallet is better then a chair, for them that are disposed to drink and make merry, for that it containeth the body at full, and exempteth it from all manner of motion: even so the best way is, to keep the soul quiet and in repose at a together; and if that may not be, to do by it as men do by children that can rest and stand on no ground, but be evermore stirring; namely, to give unto it not a sword or a javelin, but a rattle or a ball, like as *Bacchus* putteth into the hands of drunken folk the scrotula (talk a most light weapon and instrument either to offend or defend withal) to the end that as they be readiest to strike, so they might be least able for to hurt: for the faults that be committed in drunkenness ought to passe lightly in mirth, and go away with laughter, and not to be lamentable tragical, and bringing with them great calamities. Moreover, that which is the chief and principal thing in consultation of great affairs, to wit, that he who for want of wit and knowledge in the world, should follow the opinion of those who are of great conceit, deepe judgement, and long experience, this means Wine bereaved us of; inasmuch as it seemeth heretofore to have taken the name *Wine* in Greek; because as *Plato* saith, it causeth them that drink it to be *Wine*, that is to say, to have a good conceit and weening of themselves, as if they were very witty and wise: for however they take themselves to be eloquent, fair, or rich, as ordinarily they do all of them; yet they esteem better of their own wit and wisdom, then of any thing else: and this is the reason that Wine is talkative and full of words; it filleth us with lavish speech, and the same unpleasentable; yea, it maketh us to have a marvellous good opinion of our selves in each respect, as if we were worthy to command and prescribe unto others, more meet to be heard then to beare, and fitter to lead and go before, then to follow and come after; But (quoth *Glaucias* then) an easie matter it is for any man to collect and alledge much tending unto this point, considering how evident and plaine the thing is: therefore it were good to hear a discourse to the contrary, happily any person, young or old, will stand up in defence of Wine. Then our brother, full comely and dely, like a crafty Sophister: Why (quoth he) think you that any man is able so presently and upon a sudden to devie and speak unto this question in hand, all that may be said probably thereto? And why (quoth *Nicostratus*) should not I so think, considering so many learned men in place, and those who love Wine well enough? at which word the other smiled and said: Are you indeed sufficient, even in your own conceit, to discourse upon this point before us, and yet indisposed, and altogether unable to consider upon State matters, and affaires of Government, because you have taken your Wine well? and is not this all one, as to think that hee who hath drunk freely, seeth well enough with his eyes, and howsoever he heareth not perfectly with his eares those whom he speaketh and talketh with, yet for all that he hath the perfect hearing of those who either sing or play upon the flute? for as it is likely, and standeth to great reason, that good and profitable things should affect and draw the outward senses more unto them, than those which are gaudy onely and fine; even so no doubt, such matters make the mind also more inventive: and if a man for that he hath plied his drinking overmuch, cannot happily apprehend well the difficult subtilties of some high points in Philosophy, I nothing marvel thereat; but if the question be of matters and affaires of State, great likelihood there is, that if he be called away thereto, he should gather his wits more close together, and be more vigorous; like as *Philip King of Macedonia*, who having played the fool, and made himselfe ridiculous at *Chabones*, after the battle there, both in word and deed, upon his liberal drinking, presently as soon as he felt to treaty of Peace and Articles of agreement, he compoised his countenance to gravity, knit his brows, and cast behind him all vain fooleries, wanton gestures and unseemly behaviour, and so gave unto the Athenians to be stark drunk: such as be so far gone and overten with drink that they know not what they do or say, ought as weethink, to take their beds and sleep; as for those who have taken their Wine indeed too much, and be scarce sober (howbeit, otherwise men of wit and understanding) we shall never need to feare that they will faile in judgement, yea, and forget their experience, considering that we daily see these Dancers, Singers, and Minstrels perform their parts no worse asseits, for all their liberal drinking, than in the publick Theaters: for the skill and knowledge wherof

Ggg

\* *Enphelus*,  
that is, a  
wife and  
prudent  
counsellor.  
\* *Supper*  
that is,  
inveigle  
or con-  
durate.

\* *VVine of weening.*

whereof they have gotten the habit, is evermore so present and ready with them, that it maketh their bodies active and nimble; able to perform those parts and functions directly, yea, and to answer the motions of the mind accordingly with confidence. Many there be also, in whose heads and hearts wine do worketh, that it putteth into them an assured boldnesse and resolution, which helpeth them much to the performance of any great actions, and the same is nothing insolent and outrageous, but mild and gracious. And thus we read of *Eschylus* the Poet, that he ended it and wrote his Tragedies when he was thorowly set in an heat with wine; in such sort, as that they all were conceived by the influence of *Bacchus*, and not as *Gorgias* saith, that one of them, and namely, the greatest (entitled, The seven Princes before *Thebes*) was begotten (as it were) by *Mari*. For wine being of power to enchaite the body and mind both, according as *Plato* saith, causeth the body to be periphrastic, quick and active, opening all the Pores and passages therof, giving way unto the fantasies and imaginations easily to run forth, drawing out together with them, the assurance of reason and boldnesse of speech: for you shall have men, whose invention naturally is good enough, in whom (when they be sober and fasting) the same is cold, timorous, and in manner frozen; let them once be well pleyed with wine, cup after cup, you shall see them evaporate and smok out, like as frankincense doth by the heat of fire. Furthermore, the nature of wine, chalet away all fear, which is as contrary unto those who sit in consultation, as any thing in the world; it queneth also, many other bale and vile passions, such as malice and rancour; it openeth the double plates and folds of the mind, displaying and discovering the whole disposition and nature of a man, by his very words; yea, it hath a vertue to give frank and liberal speech; and consequently, audacity to utter the truth; without which, neither experience nor quicknesse of wit availeth ought; for many there be, who putting in practice, and making use of that which cometh quickly into their heads, speed better, and have greater successe, then those who warily, cautiously, and with much subtilty, seem to coneele and keep in that which pre-enteth it selfe unto them, and be very backward in delivering their opinion: we are not therefore to fear wine in this regard, that it stirreth up the passions of the mind; for it inciteth not the worst, unlesse it be in the wickedest men, whose counsel is at no time sober: but as *Theophrastus* was wont to call Barbarous-shops, dry banquets without wine; even so, there is a kind of winelesse drunkennesse, and the same, fowre and unpleasant, dwelling continually within the minds of men that be vicious and without good bringing up; troubled and vexed always with some anger, with grudge, malice, envy, emulation, contention, or illiberal basenesse; of which vices, wine abating the edge of a great part, rather then sharpening them, maketh men not fortiff fools, and blockish dolts, but ready and apt, and yet circumspect, cautious, and wary; not lupine and negligent in matters concerning their profits; but yet industrious, and making choise of that which is good and honest; but such as teame wily-craftinesse, by the name of fine wit, and take erroneous opinion and mechanical nigardie, for wisdom, may even as well, and with good reason say, that as many as when they be drinking at the table, speake their minds roundly, and utter with liberty what they think, be senselesse fools: but contrariwise, our ancients called *Bacchus*, *ἑσθίους* and *ἡσίους*, which is as much to say, as Deliverer and Freer: being of opinion, that there was to be ascribed unto him, a great part of divination, not for that he was furious, raging and mad, as *Enripides* said, but because he delivered the minde, and freeth it from all servile fear, diffidence and cowardise, giving us freedom and liberty to speake the truth, and use franknesse of speech one to another.

## The Eighth Book

### Of Symposiaques, or Table-Discourses.

#### The Summary.

1. Of those days, upon which were born certain notable and famous persons; and wishal, attending that progeny, which is said to descend from the gods.
2. In what sense *Plato* said, that God always exerciseth Geometry.
3. What is the reason that sounds be more audible in the night, then in the day.
4. What is the cause, that of the sacred games, some have the garland, and others that, but all, the Date tree branch: as also, why the great Dates be call'd *Nicolai*.
5. Wherefore they that sail upon the river *Nilus*, draw up water for their use, before it be day.
6. Of those that come late to supper: and therewith, whereupon came these names of refectious, *ἀσπετος*, *ἄσπρος*, and *ἄσπερος*.
7. Of certain Pythagorean precepts, by which forbidden we are, to entertain swallows within our houses: and when we are newly risen out of our beds, bidden to rustle the cloaths.
8. What might be the motive that induced the Pythagoreans among all other living creatures, to abstain most from fish.
9. Whether it be possible, that by our meats there should be engendered new diseases.
10. What is the cause that we take least heed of our dreams in Autumn.

The

## The Eighth Book

### Of Symposiaques, or Table-Discourses.

#### The Proème.

They that chafe Philosophy out of feasts and banquets (*O Soffus Senecio*) do not the same, but worse far, then those who take away the light from thence: for that when the lamp is gone, such persons as be made temperate and well disposed, will be nothing the worse therefore, making as they do, more account of a reverent regard, then of the mutual fight one of another: whereas, if rudenesse, ignorance and leudnesse be joined with wine, the very golden lamp of *Minerva*, if it were there, could not possibly make the feast or banquet lovely, gracious, modest, and well ordered: for that men should feed and fill themselves together in silence, without a word saying, were the fashion that favoured very much of still swine at their draff, and perhaps a thing impossible: but whosoever reserveth speech in a feast, and withal, admitteth not the wife and profitable use thereof, is more worthy to be laughed at, then he who thinketh verily, that guests should be ever eating and drinking at a supper, but fillet not unto them, wine undelayed, unseasoned, and which is meer of it selfe: or setting before them viands unseasoned, without salt or sauce, and the same not cleanly dressed: for that there is no meat or drink so unfavoury, unpleasant and hurtful, for want of good and orderly handling, as words carried unseemly, and without discretion, at a banquet: which is the reason, that Philosophers when they reprove drunkennesse, call it a dotage: and surely this dotage is no other thing, but raving, or vaine, foolish and undiscereet using of words: now when disordinate babbling and foolish talk, meeteth once with wine in a banquet, it cannot chule but the issue thereof will be reprehensible contumely, insolency, brainisch folly, and villany, which of all others, is a most unpleasant end, and farthest from all Mules and Graces: and therefore it is no foolish ceremony and absurd fashion, which the women in our country observe at their feasts called *Agonia*, where they make semblance for a while, as if they fought for wine: and surely this dotage is no other thing, but afterwards give over feasting, and say that he is gone away, and run to the Mules, and there lurketh, and lieth hidden among them: and anon, when supper is ended, they use to put forth dark riddles, and propose questions one to another, hard to be solved; and the mystery whereof, teacheth us thus much, that both we, ought at the table, to use such speech as doth contain some good learned speculation and erudition: and also, that when those discourses are joined with wine and drunkennesse, then they be the Mules who hide and cover all furious outrageousness and enmity, which also is willing to be detained and kept by them.

#### THE FIRST QUESTION.

Attaching those days which are ennobled by the nativity of some renowned persons: and wishal of that progeny or race which is said to be derived from the gods.

This book then, which is the eighth in order of our Symposiaques or Discourses at the Table, shall contain in the first place, that which not long since we chanced to hear and speake, that day wherein we celebrate the feast of *Plato's* nativity: for having solemnized the birth day of *Socrates* upon the sixth of February: the morrow after, which was the seventh of that month, we did the like by *Plato*: which gave us occasion, and ministred matter first to enter into a discourse, sitting the occurrence of the several nativities: in which *Diogenianus* the Pergamian, began first in this manner: In the Poet (quoth he) said nor amiss of fortune, that being as he was, different from wisdom in many things, yet she brought forth effects not a few like unto her: and as for this, it seemeth that she hath caused it to fall out very well and fitly, and not without some skill, (rash though he be otherwise) not only for that these two birth days jump so meet one unto the other, but also because, that of the maker who was of the twain more ancient, cometh also in order before the other. Whereupon I came into my head also to alledge many examples of occurrences happening likewise at one and the same time: and namely, as touching the birth and death of *Euripides*, the King of *Perseus*, and whole fortune it was to die the same day that *Dionys* the elder Tyrant of *Sicily* was born: as if fortune of purpose (as *Timæus* saith) had taken out of the world a Poet, who repleated Tragical calamities, the very same day that she brought into the world the Actor thereof. Mention also was made of the death of King *Alexander* the Great, which fell out just upon the same day that *Diogenes* the Cynick Philosophier departed this life: and by one general voice accorded it was, that King *Attalus* left his life, the very day that he celebrated the memorial of his nativity: and somewhere were who said, that *Pompey* the Great died in *Egypt* the same day of the year that he was born: though others affirmed that it was one day sooner: semblably, there came into our remembrance at the same time *Pindarus*, who being born during the solemnity of the Pythick games, composed afterwards many hymns in the honour of that god, for whom those games were solemnized: then *Plorus* said, that *Carnades* was not unworthy to be remembered upon the day of *Plato's* nativity, considering he was one of the most famous pillars that supported the School of Academy: and both

Ggg 2

both of them were born at the festival times of *Apollo*; the one in *Athens*, what time as the feast *Thargelia* was holden; and the other, that very day when as the *Cyrenians* solemnized it, which they call *Carnus*; and both of them fell out just upon the seventh day of February; on which day you my masters, who are the Prophets and Priests of *Apollo*, do say that himselfe was born, and therefore you call him *Hepdomagenes*: neither do I think, that they who attribute unto this God, the fatherhood of *Plato* do him any dishonour, in that he hath begotten and provided for us a Physician, who by the means of the doctrine of *Socrates*, even another *Chiron*, cureth and healeth the greater infirmities and more grievous maladies of the soul. Moreover, it was not forgotten, how it was held for certain, that *Apollo* appeared in a vision by night, unto *Ariston* the Father of *Plato*, and a voice besides was heard, forbidding him expressly not to lie with his Wife, nor to touch her for the space of ten months. Hereupon *Tyndares* the Lacedæmonian seconded these words, and said, that by good right we were to sing and say thus of *Plato*:

*He seemed not the son of mortall wight;  
Some god for fire, he may avouch by right.*

Howbeit, for my part, I am afraid, that to begette repugneth no lesse with the immortality of the Deity, then to be begotten: for surely, even the act of generation, implyeth also a mutation and passion: and King *Alexander* the Great signified no lesse one time, when he said, that he knew himselfe principally to be mortal and subject to corruption, by having company with a woman, and by his sleep: for that sleep is occasioned by a relaxation proceeding from feebleness, and as for all generation, performed it is by the passage of some portion of ones selfe into another: and so much therefore is lost and gone from the principal: and yet on the other side, I take heart again, and am confirmed, when I hear *Plato* himselfe to call the eternal God, who never was born nor begotten, Father and Creator of the World, and other things generable; nor that God doth engender after the manner of men, by the means of natural seed; but by another power doth ingenerate and infuse into matter, a vertue generative, and a principle, which altereth, moveth and transmuteth the same:

*For even by winds that female birds inspire,  
Conceive they be, when they to breed desire.*

Neither do I think it any absurdity, that a god accompanying with a woman, not as man, but after another sort of touching and contraction, and by other means, altereth and replenisheth her, being a mortal creature, with divine and heavenly seed: And this is (quoth he) no invention of mine for the Egyptians hold that their *Apis* is in that manner engendered by the light of the Moon, striking upon his dam, whereby she is conceived; and generally they admit thus much, that a god of the male sex, may deale with a mortal woman: but contrariwise, they think not that a mortal man is able to give unto any goddesse the beginning of conception or birth; for they are of opinion, that the substance of these goddesse, consisteth in a certain air, and spirits, yea, and in certain heats and humours.

## THE SECOND QUESTION.

*How Plato is to be understood, when he saith: That God continually is exercised in Geometry.*

AFTER these words, there ensued some silence for a while: and then *Diogenianus* beginning again to speak: How think you Masters (quoth he) are you contented and well pleased, considering that we have had some speech already of the gods, and that on the day wherein we solemnize the nativity of *Plato*, that we make him partaker also of our conference, and take occasion thereby, to consider upon what intention and in what sense he hath said, that God continually practiseth Geometry, at leastwise if we may presuppose and set down, that he it was who was the author of this sentence: Then said I: Written it is not in any place of all his books; howbeit, held to be saying of him, and it savoureth much of his stile and manner of phrase. Whereupon *Tyndares* immediately taking the words out of his mouth; I Think you (quoth he) O *Diogenianus*, that this sentence covertly and in mystical terms, signifyeth any dark subtilty, and not the very same, which *Plato* himselfe hath both said and written in praising and magnifying Geometry, as being the thing which plucketh those away who are fastened unto sensible objects, and averteeth them to the consideration of such natures, as be intelligible and eternal: the contemplation whereof is the very end of Philosophy, even as the view and beholding of secret sacred things, is the end of Religious Myestes: for the nail of pleasure and pain, which fasteneth the soul unto the body, among other mischiefes that it doth unto man, worketh him this displeasure as it should seem above all, that it causeth sensible things to be more evident unto him, then intellectual, and forceth his understanding to judge by passion more then by reason: for being accustomed by the sense and feeling of extreame pain, or exceeding pleasure of the body, to be intensive unto that wandering, uncertaine, and mutable nature of the body, as seeming a thing subsistent, blinded hee is, and loseth altogether the knowledge of that which is essential indeed, and hath a true being, foregoing that light and instrument of the soule, which is better then ten thousand bodily eyes, and by which organ alone, he might see the Deity and Divine Nature: for so it is, that in all other Sciences which we name Mathematical, as in so many mirrors, not twining and warping, but plain, smooth, and even, there appeareth

the very traicts, prints, and images of the truth of things intelligible: But Geometry especially which *Philo* calleth the mother City, and mistress commanding all the rest, doth divert and gently withdraw by little and little, the mind purified and cleaned from the cogitation of sensual things: and this is the reason that *Plato* himselfe reproved *Endoxus*, *Archytas*, and *Menæchmus*, who went about to reduce the duplication of the cube or solid square by mechanical instruments, and artificial engines, as if it had not been possible (if a man would let unto it) by demonstration of reason to find out and comprehend, two middle lines proportional: for he objected unto them: That this was as much as to destroy and overthrow the best thing in Geometry, when by this means they would have her turne back again unto sensible things, and keep her from mounting up aloft, and embracing those eternal and incorporeal images: upon which God being continually intensive, is therefore always God.

After *Tyndares*, *Florus* a familiar friend of his, and one who made semblant always by way of sport and gave it out in word, that he was amorous of him: Well done of you (quoth he) in that you would not have this speech to be your own, but a common saying of every man, and you would seem to argue and prove, that *Plato* sheweth how Geometry is not necessary for the gods, but for men: for God hath no need of Mathematical Science, as an engine or instrument to turn him from things ingenerated, and to bring about and direct his intelligence and understanding unto those that be of an eternal essence: For why? In him, with him, and about him they be all: but take heed rather, and see whether *Plato* hath not covertly under these dark words slipped and signified somewhat that is pertinent and proper unto you, which you have not marked nor observed, in that he joineeth *Lycurgus* with *Socrates*, no lesse then *Pylagoras*, as *Dicaearchus* was of opinion; for *Lycurgus* as you know very well, chased out of Lacedæmon, arithmetical proportion as a popular thing, turbulent and apt to make commotions; but he brought in the Geometrical, as befitting the civil and modest government of some few wise Sages, and a lawfull royalty and regal dominion: for the former giveth equally unto all according to number; and the other unto every one, by reason, and with regard of desert and worthinesse; this proportion (I say) maketh no confusion of all together, but in it there is an apparent discretion and distinction between the good and the bad, dealing always unto every one their own, not by the ballance or lot, but according to the difference of vice and vertue: God therefore useth this proportion, and applieth it unto things; and the same it is (my good friend *Tyndares*) which is called *Dice* and *Nemesi*: teaching us thereby, that we ought to make of justice, equality, and not of equality, justice; for the equality which the common sort seeketh after, and is indeed the greatest injustice that may be, God taketh out of the world, and as much as possibly may be, observeth that which is it and meet for every one according to desert and worthinesse, going herein Geometrically to work, by reason and law defining and distributing accordingly.

When we had praised this exposition and interpretation of his, *Tyndares* said: That he envied such commendation, exhorting *Anobolus* let against *Florus*, to confute him, and correct that which he had delivered. That he refused to do; howbeit, he opposed and brought forth a certain opinion and conceit of his own: Thus it is (quoth he) Geometry is not a speculative skill of mens manners and behaviour, nor yet occupied about any subject matter whatsoever, but the Symptomies, accidents, and passions of those extremities or terms which accomplish bodies: neither hath God by any other means framed and made the world, but only by determining or making finite that matter which was infinite in it selfe, not in regard of quantity, greatnesse, and multitude; but for that being as it was, inconstant, wandering, disorderly, and imperfect, our ancients were wont to call it infinite, that is to say, undetermined and unfinished: for the form and figure is the term or end of every thing that is formed and shapen: the want whereof made it of it selfe to be shapelesse and disfigured: but after that numbers and proportion come to be imprinted upon the rude and formlesse matter, then being tyed and bound (as it were) first with lines, and after, lines, which superflues and profundities, it brought forth the first kinds and differences of bodies, as the foundation and ground-work for the generation of air, earth, water and fire: for impossible it had been, and absurd, that of matter so wandering, so errant, and disorderly, there should arise equalities of sides, and similitudes of Angles, in those solid square bodies, which were called *Octaedra* and *Tetradra*, that is to say, with eight and twenty baces: likewise in pyramids and cubes, unless there had been some workman to limit, ordain, and dispose every thing Geometrically: thus a limit or term being given unto that which was infinite: all things this universal world, compoiled, ordered, and tempered accordingly in excellent manner, were first and made, and are made now every day notwithstanding the said matter striveth and labourth daily to return unto her infinite estate, as very loth and refusing to be thus geometized, that is to say, reduced to some finite and determinate limits: whereas reason on the contrary side, restraineth and comprehendeth her: distributing her into divers Ideas, from which all things which are ingenerated, take their generation and constitution.

He had no sooner thus said, but he requested me to contribute somewhat also of mine own unto this discourse, and question in hand: but I for my part, commended highly their opinions, thus delivered, as being naturally and directly devised by themselves, and their own proper inventions, saying withal: That they carried with them sufficient probability: But for that (quoth I) you should not be displeased and offended with your selves, nor altogether have your eye abroad and look unto others,



others, listen and hear what meaning and interpretation of the said sentence, was most approved unto our masters and teachers: for there is among the propositions, or positions rather, and Theoremes Geometrical, one above the rest, to wit, When two forms or figures are given and put down, to set a third thereto, equal to the one, and semblable to the other; for the invention whereof, it is said, that *Pythagoras* sacrificed unto the gods: for this *Theoreme* without all doubt is more gallant, witty, and learned, than that, by which he did demonstrate, and prove that the slope line *Hypotenuse*, avaleth as much as the two laterales, which make a right angle in a triangle: Well said of you (quoth *Dionysius*) but what serveth this for the matter now in question? You shall understand soon (quoth I) in case you will call to memory that division in *Timaeus*, whereas the Philosopher made a tripartite distribution of those principles, whereby the world had the beginning of generation; of which, the one he called by a most just name, God: the second Matter: and the third Form or Idea: So the matter of all subject things is most disordinate: the Idea of all moulds and patterns most beautiful: but God of all causes simply the best: Thus would not he admit, or leave any thing, as far forth as possibly might otherwise be, infinite and undeterminate: but adorn nature with proportion, measure, and number, making of all subjects one thing, in quantity equal to the matter, and in quality semblable to the form. Setting therefore before him this proposition, having already twain, a third to it he made, which he doth make and preserve for ever, equal to the matter, and semblable to the form, to wit, the world: which being always in regard of that inbred necessity of a body, subject to generation, alteration, and all kinds of passion, is aided and succoured by the Creator and father thereof, who determineth the substance by reason of just proportion, according to the image of his patron, whereby the pourprife and circuit of this universal world is more beautiful, being thus vast and great, then if it had been lesse and competent.

### THE THIRD QUESTION.

*What is the reason that the night is more resonant or resounding then the day?*

As we sat at supper one evening in *Athens* with *Ammonius*, we heard a great tumult and noise which rang all the house over, of people in the street without, crying aloud: Captain, Captain: now was *Ammonius* then the third time Praetor or Captain of the City: He sent forth immediately some of his men about him, to see what the matter was: who presently appeared the hurry, and dismissed those who had raised this outcry: upon which occasion we in the mean while entered into question: Why those who are within house hear them very well that cry without; but they that are abroad hear not so easily those within, crying as loud? *Ammonius* incontinently made answer and said, that this question had already been solved by *Aristotle* in this wise: For that the voice of those within being once gotten forth and flown into a wide place of much air, vanisheth away, and is dissipated immediately: whereas the voice of them without, when it is entered in, doth not like the like, but is retained and kept close, and so by consequence more easie to be heard: But there is another thing (quoth he) which requirith rather to have a reason rendered thereof, namely: Why in the night (scalon all voices do resound greater then in the day time, and besides the greatnesse, are more clear, distinct, articulate, and audible? For mine own part (quoth he) I am of this minde, that the divine providence hath in great wisdom ordained, that our hearing should be more fresh and quick, when as our sight serveth us in little or no stead at all; for seeing that the air of the night which according to *Empedocles*,

*Wandereth alone, and solitary,  
And doth blind eyes about her carry.*

is obscure and dark, look how much defect it maketh in our sight, so much it supplieth and requirith in our eares: but for that of things also which necessarily are done by nature, the causes ought to be sought out, and the proper and peculiar office of a Philosopher and Naturalist, is to busie himselfe in seeking after the material causes, and instrumental principles: which of all you will first come forth with some probable reason, as touching this matter? whereupon there being some pause and silence for a time, *Boethius* said thus: When I was my selfe a young man, and a student, I made use otherwhiles of those principles which are in Geometry, called Positions: and certain propositions I supposed as undoubted truths, without any need of demonstration: but now will I use some of those which heretofore have been proved by *Epicurus*, as for example: Those things which be, are carried in that which is not, nor hath any being: for much vacuity or voidnesse there is stored as it were, and intermingled among those Atomes or indivisible little bodies of the air, which when it is spread abroad in spacious capacity, and by reason of the rarity and thinnesse thereof, runneth to and fro round about: there be a number of small, void, and empty places, among those little motes or parcels scattered here and there, and taking up the whole region: but contrariwise, when they are pent in, and a restraint and compression made of them, being thrust together into a little space: these small bodies being huddled perforce one upon another, leave a large void space, to vague and range abroad: and this doth the night by reason of cold; for heat doth loosen, disgregate, scatter and dissolve all thick things, which is the reason why those bodies which either boil, thaw, or melt, occupie more room: contrariwise, such which gather, congeale, and be frozen, come together close, and be united, leaving an empty place in those vessels wherein they were contained, and from which

which they be retired: The voice therefore coming among, and lighting upon many of these bodies thus scattered & dispersed thick every where, either is drowned altogether at once or disgregated and broken as it were in pieces, or else meeteth with many impeachments to withstand and stay it: but where there is a space void, and wherein there is not a bodie, it having a free and full course, and the same not interrupted, but plain and continued, cometh so much the sooner unto the ear, and together with that (swiftnesse, retaineth still the articulate expresse, and distinct sound of every word in speech: for you see how empty vessels, if a man knock upon them, answer better to every stroak, and carry the sound and noise a great way off: yea, and many times they yeeld a sound that goeth round about, and continueth a good while, redoubling the noise: whereas let a vessel be filled either with solid bodies, or else with some liquor it is altogether deaf and dumb, if I may so say, and yeeldeth no sound again; for that it hath no place nor way to passe thorow. Now among solid bodies, gold and stone, because they be full and massie, have a very small and feeble sound, that will be heard any way, and that little which they do render, is soon gone: contrariwise, brasse is very vocal, resonant, (and as one would say) a blab of the tongue: for that it hath much emptinesse in it, and the substance or masse thereof, is light and thin, not compact of many bodies, huddled together, and thrust one upon another: but hath voidness and plenty of that substance mingled together, which is soft, yeelding, and not resisting the touch or the stroak, which affordeth easinesse unto other motions, and so entertaining the voice gently and willingly sendeth it until it meet something in the way which stoppeth the mouth; for then it stayeth and cealeth to pierce any farther, because of the stoppage that it findeth. And this is it (quoth he, in mine opinion) that causeth the night to be more resonant, and the day lesse: for that the heat in day time which dissolveth the air, causeth the intervals between the Atomes or Motes above said, to be the smaller: this only I would request, that no man here do oppose himselfe to contradict the premises and sett suppositions of mine. Now when as *Ammonius* willed me to say somewhat, and reply against him: As touching your former supposalls, friend *Boethius* (quoth I) about the great emptinesse, let them stand, since you will have it so: but whereas you have let down, that the said emptinesse maketh much for the motion and easie passage of the voice, I like not well of that supposition; for surely, this quality not to be touched, smitten, or made to suffer, is rather proper unto silence and still taciturnity: whereas the voice is the striking and beating upon a sounding body; and a sounding body is that which accordeth and correspondeth to it selfe, moveable, light, uniform, simple, and pliable, like as is our air: for water, earth and fire, be of themselves dumb and speechlesse: but they sound and speak all of them, when any spirit or air is gotten in, then (I say) they make a noise: as for brasse, there is no voidnesse within it: but for that mixed it is with an united and equal spirit, therefore it answereth again to claps and knocks, and therewithal resoundeth: and if we may conjecture by that which our eyes seeth and judgeth, iron seemeth to be spongyous, and as it were worm-eaten within, full of holes, and hollowed in manner of honey-combs: howbeit, a metal it is of all other, that hath the worst voice, and is most mute: there was no need therefore to trouble the night so much in restraining, compressing, and driving in the air thereof to close of the one side, and leaving so many places and spaces void on the other side: as if the air impeached the voice, and corrupted the substance thereof, considering it selfe is the very substance, form and puissance of it: over and besides, it should follow thereupon, that unequal nights, namely those that be foggy and misty, or exceeding cold, were more resonant then those that be fair and clear: for that in such nights, those Atomes are clung close together, and look where they come, they leave a place void of bodies: moreover, (that which is easie and evident to be seen) the cold Winter night ought by this reckoning to be more vocal and fuller of noise, then the hot Summers night: whereof neither the one nor the other is true: and therefore (letting this reason, such as it is, go by) I will produce *Anaxagoras*, who saith: That the sun causeth the air to move and stir after a certain trembling motion, as if it did beat and pant: as it may appear by those little motes and shavings (as it were) in manner of dust, which flutter and fly up and down thorow those holes: whereas the sun-shine passeth, such as some Greeks call *raies*: which (saith he) chimring (as it were) and making a humming in the day time, cause by their noise, any other voice or sound not so easie to be heard: but in the night (scalon, as their motion ceaseth, so consequently their noise also is gone.

After I had thus said, *Ammonius* began in this wise: We may be deemed haply ridiculous (quoth he) to think that we can refute *Democritus*, or to go about forto correct *Anaxagoras*? howbeit, we must of necessity take from these little bodies of *Anaxagoras* his devising, this chimring noise before said, which is neither like to be so, nor any wayes necessary: sufficient it will be to admit the trembling motion and stirring of them, dancing as they do, in the same light, and by that means disgregating and breaking the voice many times, (scatter it to and fro: for the air (as hath been said already) being the very body and substance of the voice, if it be quiet and settled, giveth a direct, united and continued way unto the small parcels and movings of the voice, to passe along a great way: for calm weather and the tranquillity of the air, is resonant, whereas contrariwise, tempestuous weather is dumb and mute: according to which, *Simonides* hath thus written:

*For then, no blasts of wind arose on high,  
Shaking tree-leaves; that men need once to fear  
Lest they might break sweet songs and melody,  
Stopping the sound from passage to their ear.*

For oftentimes the agitation of the aire, permitteth not the full, expresse and articulate form of the voice, to reach into the sense of hearing; howbeit, somewhat it carrieth always thorough from it, if the same be multiplied much and forced aloud: as for the night, in it selfe it hath nothing to stir and trouble the air; whereas the day hath one great cause thereof, to wit, the Sun, as *Anaxagoras* himselfe hath said.

Then *Thrasylus* the son of *Ammonius*, taking his turn to speak: What should we mean by this I pray you in the name of *Jupiter* (quoth he) to attribute this cause unto an invisible motion of the aire; and leave the agitation, tossing and divulsion thereof, which is so manifest and evident to our eyes? for this great ruler and commander in the heaven, *Jupiter*, doth not after an imperceptible manner, nor by little and little, stir the smallest parcels of the air, but all at once, so soon as he vieweth his face, excite and move all things in the world.

*Giving forthwith a signal in such wise,*

*As men thereby unto their works may rise,*

which they no sooner see, but they obey and follow: as if together with the new day, they were regenerate again, and entered into another manner of life, as *Democritus* saith; setting themselves unto their businesse and affairs, not without some noise and effectual cries: in which sense *Ibycus* called not impertinently the morning, or dawning of the day *Clytus*, for that now we begin awake, that is to say, to hear others, yea, and to speak aloud our selves: whereas the air of the night being for the most part calm and still, without any waves and billows, for that every thing is at rest and repose, by all likelihood conveyeth the voice entire and whole unto us, not broken nor diminished one jot. At these words, *Aristodemus* of *Cyprus*, who was one of our company: But take heed *Thrasylus*, (quoth he) that this which you say be not convinced and refuted by the battels and marches of great Armies in the night season, for that upon such an occasion the noise and outcries be no less resounding and clear, how troubled and waving soever the air be, then otherwise; and peradventure there is some cause thereof, proceeding also from our selves; for the most part of that which we speak in the night season, is of this nature, that either we command some body after a turbulent manner, as if a passion urged us thereto, or if we demand or ask ought, we cry as loud as we can; for that the thing which weakeneth and maketh us to rise at such a time (when as we should sleep and take our repose) for to speak or do any thing, is no small matter or peaceable, but great and important, hasting us for the urgent necessity thereof unto our businesse, in such sort, that our words and voices which then we utter, go from us in greater force and vehemency.

#### THE TENTH QUESTION.

*How it came to passe, that of the sacred games of prize some use one manner of chapter, and some another, yet all have the branch of the Date tree? Also why the great Dates be called Nicolai.*

During the solemnity of the Isthmick games, at what time as *Sophs* was the Judge and Director thereof now the second time: other feasts of his I avoided; namely, when as he invited one while many strangers together; and otherwhiles a number of none else but Citizens, and those one with another: but one time above the rest, when as he feasted those only who were his greatest friends, and all men of learning, I my selfe also was a bidden guest, and present among them; now by that time that the first service at the table was taken away, there came one unto the professed Orator and Rhetorician *Herodes*, who brought unto him from a Scholar and familiar of his, who had won the prize, for an encomiastical or laudatory Oration that he had made, a branch of the Date tree, together with a pleated and broided Coroner of flowers: which when he had courteously received, he returned them back to him again, saying withal: that he marvelled why some of these sacred games had for their prize this Crown, and others that; but generally all a branch of Date tree: For mine own part (quoth he) I cannot persuade my selfe that this ariseth upon that cause which some alledge: namely, the equality and uniformity of the leaves, springing and growing out as they do, alwayes even and orderly, one just against another directly, wherein they seem to contend and strive a vie, resembling thereby a kind of combat: and that victory it selfe took the name in Greek *Nictis*, as it were *us Nictis*, that is to say, not yeelding nor giving place: for there be many other plants which as it were by weight and measure, distribute nourishment equally unto their boughs and branches growing opposite in that manner, and herein observe exactly a wonderful order and equality: but in my conceit, more probability and appearance of reason they alledge, who imagine and suppose, that our ancients made choice of this tree, because they took a love to the beauty, tallnesse, and straight growing thereof; and namely *Homer*, who compareth the beauty of *Nausica* the Phaeacian Queen, unto the plant or stem of a fair Date tree: for this you all know very well, that in old time they were wont always to cast upon those victorious champions who had won the prize. Roses, and Rose champion flowers; yea, and some otherwhiles Apples and Pomegranates, thinking by this means to recompence and honour them: but there is nothing else so much in the Date tree, to commend it so evidently above other trees: for in all Greece fruit it beareth none that is good to be eaten, as being unperfect and not ripe enough: and if it beare as it doth in *Syria* and *Egypt*, the Date, which of all fruit it doth the lovely contentment of the eye, is of all sights most delightome, and for the sweetnesse of taste, of all banqueting dishes most pleasant, there

there were not a tree in the world comparable unto it: and verily the great Monarch and Emperor *Augustus* by report, for that he loved singularly well, one *Nicholaus* a Philosopher Peripateticke, in regard that he was of gentle nature and sweet behaviour, tall and slender withal of stature, and besides of a ruddy and purple colour in his visage, called the fairest and greatest Dates; after his name, *Nicholas*, and to this day they bear that denomination.

In this discourse, *Herodes* pleased the company no lesse with the mention of *Nicholaus* the Philosopher, than he did with that which he had spoken to the question: And therefore (quoth *Sophs*) so much the rather ought we every one to be life for to conferre unto this question propounded, whatsoever he is persuaded concerning it: Then I for my part first, brought forth mine opinion as touching the superiority of this Date tree at the sacred games, because the glory of victors and conquerors, ought to endure and continue incorruptible, and as much as possibly may be not age and was old: for the Date tree liveth as long as any plant whatsoever that is longest lived: and this is testified by these verses of *Orpheus*:

*Living as long as plants of Date trees tall,*

*Which in the head be green and spread with all,*

And this is the only tree in manner, which hath that property indeed, which is reported though not so truly, of many others: And what is that? namely, to carry the leaves firm and fast, so as they never fall off: for we do not see, that either the Laurel or Olive tree, nor the Myrtle, nor any other trees which are said to shed no leave, keep always the same leaves still: but as the first fall, others put forth, and by this means they continue always fresh and green, living evermore as Cities and great Towns do: whereas the Date tree never loath any of those leaves which once came forth, but continueth it still clad with the same leaves; and this is that vigor as I take it which men dedicate appropriate especially to the force or strength of victory.

When *Sophs* had made an end of this speech, *Protagenes* the Grammarian calling by name unto *Praxiteles*, the Discourer and Historian: Shall we suffer these Orators and Rhetoricians (quoth he) after their usual manner and profession, to argue thus by conjectures and likely probabilities; and can we alledge nothing out of Histories pertinent directly unto this matter: and verily for mine own part, if my memory fail me not, I have not read long since in the Attique Annals, that *Theseus*, who first set out games of prize in the Isle *Delos*, brake and plucked from the sacred Date tree, a branch, which thereupon was called *Spadix*; and *Praxiteles* laid as much: But some men (quoth he) might ask of *Theseus* himselfe, what reason induced him (when he proposed the prize of victory) to pull a branch from the Date tree, rather than from the Laurel or Olive tree? and what will you say, it is this a Pythick prize? for that the *Amphytriones* honoured first at *Delfos*, the victors with a branch of Date tree and Laurel, in honour of *Pythius Apollo*, considering that the manner was not to consecrate unto that god, the Laurel or Olive only, but also the Date tree: like as *Nicias* did when in the name of the Athenians, he defrayed the charges of games, in *Delos*; and the Athenians at *Delphi*; and before them, *Cypselus* the Corinthian; for otherwise, this god of ours hath evermore loved those games of prize, yea, and was desirous to win the victory, having strove personally himselfe in playing upon the harp, in singing, and flinging the coit of brasie; yea, and as some say, at hand-bats and fist-fight: favouring men also, and taking their part at such combats; as *Homer* seemeth to testify, when he bringeth in *Achilles*, speaking in this wise:

*Two champions now, who simply are  
of all the army best,*

*My pleasure is, shall forth advance;  
and look who is so best,*

*And favoured at busset-fight,  
by god Apollos graces,*

*As for to win the victory,  
and honour in that place,*

Also when he speaketh of archers, he saith expressly, that one of them who invocated upon *Apollo* and prayed unto him for help, had good successe, and carried away the best prize; but the other, who was so proud, and would not call upon the god for his aid, missed the mark and scope whereat he shot. Neither is it likely or credible, that the Athenians dedicated their publick place of exercise unto *Apollo* for nothing, and without good cause; but surely thus they thought, that the same God unto whom we are beholden for our health, giveth us also the force and strong disposition of body, to perform such games and feats of activity. But whereas, some combats there be, sleight and easie: others, hard and grievous: we find in writing, that the Delphians sacrificed unto *Apollo*, by the name of *Pythia*, that is to say, the champion at fist-fight: but the Candians and Lacedaemonians offered sacrifice unto the same god, surnamed the Runner. And seeing as we do, that the manner is to present in his Temple within the City of *Delfos*, the Princes or dedications of the spoiles and bootie gained from the enemies in war, as also to consecrate unto him the Trophies, is not this a great argument and testimony, that in this god it lieth most to give the victory and conquest: And as he went forward, and was minded to say more, *Cephisus* the son of *Tison*, interrupted his speech, saying: These allegations (beleeve me) favour not of Histories, nor of Cosmographical Books: but being fetched immediately out of the middle of those Peripatetical discourses, are handled and argued probably to the purpose: and besides, whiles you take up the fabrick or engine, after the man-

ner of tragedian Players, you intend as it should seem, to affright by intimating the name of *Apollo*; those that contradict and gain say your opinions: and yet (as well becometh his goodnature and bounty) he is indifferent and alike affectionate unto all, in clemency and benignity: but we following the tracks and steps of *Sophists*, who hath led us the way very well, keep our selves to the Date tree, which affordeth us sufficient matter to discourse thereof again: for the Babylonians do chant and sing the praises of this tree; namely, that it bringeth unto them three hundred and threecore sorts of sundry commodities; but we that are Greeks, have little or no profit thereby: howbeit, good Philosophy may be drawn out of it, for the better instructions of champions and such as are to perform combats of prize, in that it beareth no fruit with us: for being a right goodly, fair, and very great tree, by reason of the good habit and disposition thereof, yet is it not here among us, fruitful; but by this strong constitution that it hath, it employeth and spendeth all nurture to feed and fortifie the body, after the manner of champions, by their exercise, so as there remaineth but a little behind, and the same not effectual for seed: over and above all this, one quality it hath, proper and peculiar to it selfe alone, and that which agreeth not to any other tree, the which I intend to shew unto you: For the woody substance of this Date tree aloft, if a man seem to weigh and presse down upon it with any heavy burden, it yeeldeth not, nor stooped under the poile, but curbeth upward arch-wise, as withstanding that, wherewith it is charged and pressed; and even so it is with those combats in sacred games: for such as through feebleness of body, or faintness of heart seem to yeeld, those the said exercises do bend and keep under; but as many as stoutly abide, not only with their strong bodies, but also with magnanimous courage, these be they that are raised up on high, and mount unto honour:

## THE FIFTH QUESTION.

[What is the cause that they who sail upon the river Nilus, draw up water for their use, before day light?

One there was, who demanded upon a time the reason, why the watermen who saile and row upon the river *Nilus*, provided themselves of that water which they drinke, in the night, and not by day. Some said, it was, because they feared the sun, which by enchaunting and heating the water, maketh it more subject to corruption and putrefaction: for whatsoever is warmed or made hot, the same is always more ready and disposed to mutation, and doth soon alter, by relaxation of the proper and native quality that it hath: whereas cold, by restraining, seemeth to contain and keep each thing in the own kind or nature: and water, especially. Now for the truth of this, that the coldness of water hath vertue to preserve, the snow is a sufficient testimony, which keepeth flesh a long time sweet, and without corruption; but contrariwise, heat causeth all things to goe out of their own nature, yea, even honey it selfe; for being once boiled, marred it is; but if continue raw, it not only keepeth it selfe well enough, but helpeth to preserve other things: and for a further proofe of this matter, the water of lakes and pooles is a principal thing to confirm the same: for as potable it is, and as good to drinke in Winter, as any other waters: but in Summer, the same is stark naught, and breedeth diseases: and therefore, since the night answereth to Winter, and the day to Summer, those water-men of *Nilus* above said, are of this opinion: That water will continue longer before it turn and corrupt, if it be drawn in the night season. To these allegations, which of themselves seemed to carry probability enough, reason also inclineth as an evident and iusticial proof to strengthen and confirm the experience and beleefe of these water-men; for they said, that they drew water, whilst the river was yet still and quiet; for in the day time, many men either saile upon it, or otherwise, fetch water from it: many beasts also, passe to and fro in it: whereby it is troubled, thick and muddy; and such water will soon putrifie: for whatsoever is mixed, more easily taketh corruption, than that which is pure and simple, considering that mixture maketh a fight, and fight causeth change and alteration. Now, who knoweth not that putrefaction is a kind of mutation? which is the cause that Painters call the mixtures of their colours, by the name of *symples*, that is to say, corruptions; and the Poet *Homer*, when he speaketh of dying, faith, they did *mixen*, that is to say, stain and infect: the common use also of our speech carrieth it to call that which is unmixt and meer of it selfe, *ἀκαθάρτου* in *ἀκαθάρτου*, that is to say, incorrupt, and sincere: but principally, if earth be mingled with water, it changeth the quality, and marreth the name of it quite for ever, for being potable and good to drinke; and therefore it is, that dormant and dead waters, which stand in hollow holes, are more subject to corruption then others as being full of earthy substance: whereas, running streams escape this mixture, and repell the earth which is brought in to them: good cause therefore, had *Hesiodus* to commend

The water of some lively spring,  
that always runs his course,  
And which no muddy earth among,  
doth trouble and make worse.

For wholesome we hold that which is uncorrupt: and uncorrupt we take that to be, which is all simple, pure and unmixt: and hereto may be adjoined, for to confirm this opinion of theirs, the sundry kinds and differences of earth: for those waters which run thorow hilly and stony grounds, because they carry not with them, much of the earth or soil, are stronger and more firm, then such

as passe along marshes, plains and flats. Now the River *Nilus* keeping his course within a level and soft country; and to speak more truly, being (as it were) blood tempered and mingled with flesh, is sweet doubtlesse, and full of juices that have a strong and nutritive vertue: but ordinarily the same runneth mixed and troubled; and so much the rather, if it be stirred and disquieted: for the moving and agitation thereof, mixeth the terrestrial substance with the liquid humor: but when it is quiet and at repose, the same setteth down to the bottom, by reason of the weight. Thus you see why they draw up their water in the night season: and withal, by that means they prevent the fanning, which always doth catch up and corrupt that which is in all waters most subtle and light.

## THE SIXTH QUESTION.

Of those who come late to supper; where, discoursed it is, from whence be received these names of refection in Greek *ἀκράσιμα*, *δεσπυ*, and *δῆπνον*.

MY younger sons upon a time had staid longer at the Theater, then they should, to see the too lights, and hear the ear-sports which there were exhibited: by occasion whereof, they came too late to supper: whereupon *Theraps* sons called them in mirth and sport *κακὰ κείματα*, and *ζογὰ πῆδες*, as one would say, supper-letting, and night-sipping-lads, with other such like names; but they, to be meet and quit with them again, gave them the term of *ἀκράσιμα*, that is to say, runts to supper. Herewith one of the elder sort there present, said: That he who came late to his supper, ought rather to be called *ἀκράσιμος*, because he maketh more haste with an extraordinary pace, for that he hath seemed to stay too long: to which purpose he related a pretty tyme of *Barnabius*, the buffoon or pleasant jester to *Cesar*, who was wont to call those, *ἀκράσιμα*, that is to say, desirous of suppers, who at any time came tardy: For (quoth he) although they have busynesse to call and keep them away, yet for the love of good cheer and sweet moriells they refuse not to come (late though it be) whensoever they are invited. Here came I in with the testimony of *Polyarchus*, one of the great Orators, who managed the State of *Athenes*: in an Oration of his, where making an Apology of his late unto the people in a frequent assembly, he spake in this wise: Loe, my Masters of *Athenes* how I have lived: but besides many other things which I have already alledged, take this moreover: that whensoever I was bidden to any supper, I never came late, for this seemed to be very popular and plausible: whereas contrariwise, men are wont to hate them as odious, contemptible, and surlly Lords, who came late, and for whom the rest of the company are forced to stay. Then *Secularus* willing to defend the young boys: But *Alcibiades* (quoth he) called not *Pittacus* *Ζηνησιππίδας*, because he supposed late in the night, but for that it was ordinary with him to delight himselfe with other guests, and table companions, but base, vile, and obscure persons: for to eat early or be late, was in old time counted a reproach: and it is said, that this word *ἀκράσιμα*, that is to say, a broken fast, was derived of *ἀκράσιος*, that is to say, intemperance. Then *Theon* interrupting his speech: *Nicolas* (quoth he) but we must give credit rather unto those who report the ancient manner of life in old time: for they say, that men in those days being laborious, painful, and temperate in their living withal, took for their repast early in the morning, a piece of bread dipped in Wine, and no other thing, and therefore they called this breakfast of theirs, *ἀκράσιμα*, of *ἀκράσιος*, which is meet and pure wine: and as for *δεσπυ*, it signifieth those viands which were prepared for repast in the evening: for *δεσπυ*, betokeneth late in the evening, at what time their manner was to sup: namely, after they had dispatched their other affairs. Here occasion was given to demand from whence were derived these words *δεσπυ*, that is to say, supper, and *δεσπυ*, dinner: and thought it was that *Ἀριστοφάνης* and *Ακράσιμα*, signified both one thing: and for proof hereof, they reported them to *Huich*, who said: That *Εὐμύστος* provided *Ἀριστον* by the break of day, as appeareth by this verse:

No sooner did day light appear,  
But they prepared their own dinner.

And it seemeth very probable that this repast *δεσπυ*, took the name of the morn-tide, and is as much to say, as *ἀκράσιμα*, now for the refection called *δεσπυ*, that is to say, supper, it was so called, *ἀπὸ τοῦ δεσπυ*, because it gave repose from their labours; for men used to take their supper after they had done some busynesse, or else in the very time that they were about the same: this also may be shewed by the testimony of *Homer*, who faith:

But what time at the woodman minding rest,  
From hewing trees, his supper soon had wrest.

Unlesse a man will haply say, that *Ἀριστον*, that is to say, a dinner or breakfast, took that name, because folk use to dine or break their fast, with that which first came to their hands, without any labour or dressing thereof in the Kitchen and *δεσπυ*, that is to say, supper, was so called, because there was some labour employed about the dressing thereof: and therefore *δεσπυ*, is as much to say, as *πῆς*, that is to say, very easily, and soon provided: But our brother *Lamprias*, who naturally was given to *πῆς*, done with much pain and travel: Since that (quoth he) we are allowed to great *κοινῶς*, and loved a life to be merry and to laugh: I am able to prove unto you, that the Roman words are ten thousand times more properly devised, and expresse these things better than the Greek:



nor can abide so much as to look upon them: and as for fishes, we are assured that their priests even at this day, abstain from them, and living as they do, chaste and unmarried, they refuse likewise: neither will they endure to eat it as a meat by it selfe, nor any other viands wherein any sea salt commeth; whereof divers men alledge divers and sundry reasons: but there is one true cause indeed, and that is the enmity which they bear unto the sea, as being a savage element, a meer alien, and estranged from us, or to speak more truly, a mortall enemy to mans nature: for the gods are not nourished therewith, as the Stoicks were of opinion: that the stars were fed from thence: but contrariwise, that it in it was lost the father and favour of that country of *Aegypt*, which they call the delux or running out of *Ophi*, and in lamenting his generation on the right hand, and corruption on the left, covertly they gave us to understand, the end and perdition of *Nilus* in the sea: In which consideration, they are of opinion, that lawfull it is not, once to drink of the water, as being not potable: neither do they think, that any thing which it breedeth, bringeth forth, or nourisheth, is clean and meet for man: considering that the same hath not breath and respiration common with us, nor food and pasture agreeable unto ours; for that the very aire which nourisheth and maintaineth all other living creatures, is pernicious and deadly unto them, as if they were engendered first, and lived afterward in this world against the course of nature, and for no use at all: and marvell we must not, if for the hatred they bear unto the sea, they hold the creatures therein, as strangers, and neither meet nor worthy to be intermingled with their bloud or vitall spirits: seeing they will not deigne so much as to salute any pilots or mariners whensoever they meet with them, because they get their living upon the sea.

*Sylla* commending this discourse, added moreover, as touching the Pythagoreans, that when they sacrificed unto the gods, they would especially take of the primitives or parcels of flesh which they had killed: but never was there any fish that they sacrificed or offered unto the gods. Now when they had finished their speech, I came in with mine opinion: As for those *Aegyptians* quoth I, many men there be as well learned, as ignorant, who contradict them, and plead in the behaue and defence of the sea, recounting the manifold commodities thereof, whereby our life is more plentiful, pleasant, and happy: as touching the furcase as it were of the Pythagoreans war, and their forbearing to lay hand upon fishes, because they are such strangers unto us, it is a very absurd & ridiculous device: or to say more truly, it is a cruel and inhumane part, and favoring much of a barbarous *Cyclops*, seeing that to other living creatures they render a reward and recompence for their kindred, confluence and acquaintance, by killing, eating, and consuming them as they do: and truly reported it is of *Pythagoras*, that upon a time he bought of the Fishers a draught of fish: and when he had so done, commanded that they should all be let out of the net into the sea again: surely this was not the act of a man, who either hated or despised fishes as his enemies or strangers: considering that finding them prisoners as he did, he paid for their ransom, & redeemed their liberty, as if they had been his kinsfolk and good friends: & therefore the humanity, equity, and mildness of these men, induceth us to think and imagine clean contrary, that it was rather for some exercise of justice, or to keep themselves in ure and custome thereof, that they spared and pardoned those creatures: for that all others give men cause in some sort to hurt them; whereas poor fishes offend us in no manner: and say their nature and will were so disposed, yet cannot they execute the same: moreover, conceive we may and collect, by the reports, records, and sacrifices of our ancients, that they thought it an horrible and abominable thing, not only to eat, but also to kill any beest that doth no hurt or damage unto us: but seeing in processe of time how much pestered they were, with a number of beasts that grew upon them, and over-spread the face of the earth; and withall being as it is said, commanded by the order of *Apollo* at *Delphos*, to succour the fruits of the earth, which were ready to perish; they began then to kill them for sacrifice unto the gods: yet in so doing they seemed to tremble and fear, as troubled in mind, calling this their action *philo* and *philo*, that is to say, to do or perpetrate, as if they did, and committed some great deed in killing a creature having life: and even still at this day they observe a ceremony with all religious precautions, not to massacre any beest before it hath given a nod with his head, after the libations & effusions of wine upon it, in signe and token of consent: so strict they were and wary to commit no unjust act. Certes, to say nothing of other beasts, if all men had forbore to kill and eat no more, but pullen and conies, within short time they should not have been able to have dwelt within their towns or cities, nor enjoyed any fruits of the earth: and therefore although necessity at the first had brought in the use of eating flesh; a very hard matter it were now, in regard of pleasure, to put down and abolish the same: whereas the whole kind of sea-creatures using neither the same aire and water with us, nor comming neer unto our fruits, but being (as a man would say) comprised within another world, and having distinct bounds and limits of their own, which they cannot pass, but immediately it coeth them their life, for punishment of their trespasses giveth unto our belly none occasion or pretence at all, more or less, to run upon them: so that the whoe hunting, catching, and running after fish is a manifest work of gormandise and dainty feedings which without any just or lawfull cause, troubleth and disquieteth the seas, and descendeth into the very bottom of the deep: for we have no reason at any time to call the red sea-barbel *αἰγάριον*, that is to say, corn-devourer: nor the guilt-head *πυρρηνάρης* that is to say, wine waster, or grape-eater, nor yet any mullets, lubins, or sea-pikes, *οὐρεοφάγος* that is to say, feed-gatherers, as we name divers land beasts, noting them thereby for the harme and annoyance they do unto

us:

us: neither can we impute unto the greatest fish in the sea, the least wrong or shrewd turne, where-  
with we charge, in our exceeding needles and parsimony, some cat or wezill, some mouse, or rat which read  
haunt our houses: in which regard, they precisely containing themselves, not for fear of law only, a lie,  
to do wrong unto men, but also by the very infinit of nature, to offer no injury unto any thing  
in the world that doth them no harme, nor displeasure, use to feed on fish less than on any other  
meat: and admit there were no injustice in the thing, all buisie civility of men in this point, being  
so needles as it is, bewraith great intemperance and wastfull gluttony: and therefore *Homer* in  
his poem devileth this, that not only the Greeks encamping upon the freight of *Hell-spont*, ab-  
stained wholly from eating fish, but also that the delicate and dainty toothed Phaeacians, the wan-  
ton and licentious woers likewise of lady *Penelope*, disoluted though they were otherwise, and all  
islanders, were never served at their tables with any viands or cates from the sea, no the com-  
panions of *Ulysses* in that great and long voyage of theirs which they had at sea, ever laid hook,  
kepe, or weele, or cast net into the sea for fish, so long as they had a bit of bread, or handfull of  
meat left:

But when their ship had vittuals none,  
But all therein was spent and gone,  
even a little before that they laid hands upon the Cowes of the sun, then began they to fish;  
not wis for any dainty dishes, but even for necessary food:  
With bended hooks, for now their gnaw  
Great hunger bit, and guts did gnaw.

So that for extreme need they were forced to eat fish, and to kill the finnes kine: whereby we may perceive that it was a point of sanctimony and chastity, not only among the *Aegyptians* and *Syrians*, but the Greeks also, to forbear feeding upon fish; for that besides the injunctive of the thing, they abhorred as I think, the superfluous curiosity of such food.

Hereupon *Nestor* took occasion to speak: And why (quoth he) is there no reckoning made of my country-men and fellow-citizens, no more than of the Megarians? and yet you have heard me to say often times, that the priests of *Neptune*, whom we call *Hieromonemones*, never eat fish: for this god is furnished *Pytholmas*, that is to say, the President of breeding and generation in the sea: and the race descending from that ancient *Hellen*, sacrificed unto *Neptune*, by the name and addition of *Parageneis*, that is to say, the flock-father and principal Progenitor, being of opinion; that man came of a moilt and liquid substance as also, be the *Syrians*: which is the very cause they worship and adore a fish, as being of the same kind, generation, and nouriture with themselves; a philosphizing and arguing in this point, with more appearance and shew of reason, than *Anaximander* did, who affirmed not, that men and fishes were bred both in the same places: but avoucheth that men were first engendered within fishes themselves, and there nourished like their young frye: but afterwards, when they became sufficient and able to shift and help themselves, they were cast forth, and so took land: like as therefore, the fire eateth the wood, whereby it was kindled, and set a burning, though it were father and mother both, unto it: according as he said, who inferred the marriage of *Ceyx* among the works of *Hesiodus*; even so *Anaximander* in pronouncing, that fish was both father and mother to men, taxeth and condemneth the feeding thereupon.

O. Cyz.

## THE NINTH QUESTION.

Whether it be possible, that new diseases may be engendered by our meats?

*Philo* the physician constantly affirmed, that the leprosie, called *Elephantiasis*, was a disease not known long since: for that none of the ancient physicians made any mention of this malady: whereas they travelled and busied their brains, to treat of other small trifling matters, (I wot not what) and yet such subtilties as the common sort could hardly comprehend. But I produced and alledged unto him for a witness out of philology, *Atbenodorus*, who in the first book of his Epidemiall or popular diseases, writeth, that not only the said leprosie, but also *Hydrophobie*, that is to say, the fear of water, occasioned by the biting of a mad dog, were first discovered in the days of *Aesclepiades*: now as the company there present, marvelled that these maladies should newly then begin, and take their consistance in nature; so they wondered as much on the other side, how so great and grievous diseases could be hidden so long, and unknown to men: howbeit, the greater part inclined to this second and latter opinion, as being more respective and favourable to man: for that they could not be periwaded, that nature in such cases should in mans body (as it were in some city) study novelties, and be evermore inventing & working new matters. As for *Diogenians*, he said, that the tedious & maladies of the soul, held on their common course, and went the customed way and fill of their predecessors: And yet (quoth he) wickedness is very manifold in sundry sorts, and exceeding audacious, to enterprize any thing: and the mind is a mistress of her selfe, and at her own command: having puissance to turne and change easily as the thinketh good, and yet that diordinate confusion of hers, hath so no order in it: keeping a measure in her passions, and containing her selfe within certain bounds, like as the sea, in the flowings and tides: in such sort as that she bringeth forth no new kind of vice, such as hath not been known unto those in old

H h 2

time

time, and of which they have not written : for there being many different sorts of lusts and desires, infinitemotions of fear, as many kinds of pain, and no fewer formes of pleasure ; and which require great labour to reckon up and not to give over.

These neither now nor yesterday  
Began; but all have lived ay:  
And no man knows, nor can say well,  
Since when they first to men befall.

nor yet whereupon any new malady or modern passion hath arisen in our body: considering it hath not of it selfe the beginning of motion properly as the fowl hath; but is knit and joynted with nature by common causes, and compoſed with a certain temperature: the infinite variety thereof, wandring northward within the purpoſe of ſet bounds and limits; like unto a ſwelling fyall at anchor in the ſea, nevertheless doth wave, and is toſſed within a round compaſſe: for neither the ſettled conſtitution of a diſeaſe without ſome cauſe, bringing into the world irregularly and againſt all law of nature, a generation and power from that which hath no being at all, nor an eaſie matter is it for a man to find out a new cauſe, unleſſe which, he do ſet down a new aire, ſtrange water, and ſuch meats as our forefathers never taſted of, imagining, that they are run higher to us and nearer before, out of (I wot not what) other worlds; or imaginary inter-worlds and ſpaces between; for ſick we fall by means of the ſame things whereof we live; and no peculiar and proper cauſes there be of diſeaſes; but the naughtineſſe and corruption of ſuch things whereby we live, in regard unto, and our own faults and errors beſides, about them, are they which trouble and offend nature: theſe troubles have perpetually the ſame diſeaſes, though the ſame may ſometimes take new names; for theſe names are according to the ordinance and cuſtome of men; but the maladies themſelves are the affections of nature: and ſo thoſe diſeaſes of themſelves finite, being varied and diversified by theſe names infinite, have deceived and beguiled us: and as there is not lightly and upon a ſudden, committed in the Grammaticall parts of ſpeech, or in the Syntaxis, and conſtruction thereof, any new barbariſm, ſoleciſm, or incongruity; even ſo the temperatures of men's bodies, have their falls, errors and tranſgreſſions, which be certain and determinate, conſidering that in ſome fort, even thoſe things which are againſt nature, be comprized and included in nature: and this is it, that the witty inventors and deviſers of ſables, would ſigne in ſaying: That when the game made war againſt the gods, there were ingendered certain ſtrange and monſtrous creatures every way, at what time as the moon was turned clean contrary, and arole not as ſhe was wont: and only, their meaning was, that nature produced new maladies, like unto monſters, but whichall, imagine and deviſe a cauſe of ſuch change and alteration, that is neither probable nor incredible: promouging and affirming, that the augmentation more or leſſe of ſome diſeaſes, cauſeth that newnels and diversify in them, which is not well done of them (my good friend *Philop.*) for this intention and ſubjecting may well add thereto frequency and greatneſſe; but ſurely it tranſporteth not the ſubject thing out of the firſt and primitive kind: and ſo I ſuppoſe the leprouſe or *elephantiaſis* to nothing elfe. but the vehemency of theſe ſcurvy and ſcabby infections; as allo the *Hydrophobis*, or vain fear of water, no other augmentation of the paſſions of ſtomack or melancholy: and verily a wonder it were, that we ſhould not know how *Homer* was not ignorant thereof; for this is very certain, that he call'd a dog *λυαιτης*, of this raging accident whereto he is ſubject: and hereupon men alſo, when they are in a rage, be ſaid likewiſe *λυαιται*. When *Diogenianus* had thus diſcour'd, *Philop* himſelfe, both ſeemed ſomewhat to anſwer and reuſe his reaſons: and alſo requell'd unto ſpeak in the behalle of the ancient Phyſicians, who were thus challenged and condemn'd for their ignorance or diſſidence in theſe principall matters, in caſe it were true, that theſe maladies were not of a latter breed and more modern than their age. Firſt therefore, it ſeemed unto me, that *Diogenianus* put not this well down for a good ſuppoſall, that tentions and relaxations according to more or leſſe make no differences, nor remove the ſubject matters out of their kind: for by theſe means we ſhould likewiſe ſay, that vineger differed not from wine that is ſouring, nor bitterneſſe from ſweetiſſe, or ſourneſſe nor dardell from wheat, nor yet garden mints from wilde mints: but evident it is, that theſe do degenerate, yea, and become altered in their very qualities: partly by relaxations, as the things do languiſh and loſe their heart; and in part, by reaſon, as they be reinforced, and take vigor: for otherwiſe, we muſt be forced to ſay, that the flame differed not from a white or clear wind, nor a light from a flame, nor froſt from dew, nor hail from rain; but that all theſe be but the inſormences only and tentions of the ſame thing; and ſo conſtantly we ſhall be driven to ſay ſine, but b'indneſſe and dim light differ not, and inordinate piſſon of vomiting, called *Cholera*, is nothing different from a keekſh ſtomack and a deſire to caſt, but only according to augmentation and diminution, more or leſſe: and all this is nothing to the purpoſe: for if they admit and ſay, that this very tention and augmentation in vehemency, came but now of late, as if this novelty were occaſioned by the quantity and not the quality, yet the abſurdity of the paradox remaineth nevertheleſſe: moreover, ſeeing that *Sophocles* (ſpeaking of thoſe things, which became they had not been in times paſt, men would not believe to be at this preſent) ſaid very well in this wiſe:

*All kind of things both good and bad,  
Once at the first their being had*

This also seemeth very probable and to stand with great reason, that maladies ran not forth all at once

once, at if the barriers had been set open for the race, and they let out together: but some came  
 alwayes successively behind at the taile of others; and each one took the first beginning at a certain  
 time: And a man may well conjecture and guess (quoth I) that such a sort of want and indigence,  
 as I also thote that came of heat and cold: were the first that afflicted our bodies; but reptiles,  
 gluttonies, and delicate pleasures, came afterward together with floth and idleness; which by reason  
 of abundance of victuals, caused great fiores of superfluity and excrements, from whence pro-  
 ceeded sundry sorts of maladies: the complication whereof and intermixture one with another,  
 bringeth evermore some new thing or other: for every natural thing, is orderly, and limited: be-  
 cause that nature is nothing else but order it selfe, or at leastwise the work of order: whereas disorder  
 (like to the fand which *Pindarus* speaketh of) is infinit and cannot be comprised within any cer-  
 tain number; so that whatsoever is unnatural, the same immediately is unlimited and infinit: for  
 the truth we cannot deliver but one way; many to lie, a man may find an infinit number of means,  
 by occasion of innumerable occurrents; all accords muticall and harmonies, stand upon their  
 certain proportions; but the errors that men commit in playing upon the harp or other instrument,  
 in song, and in dancing, who is able to comprehend? although *Phrynicus* the tragedian poet  
 said of himselfe thus:

In dance I find as many sorts  
And formes of gestures and disports,  
As waves in sea, and billowes strong  
Arise by tempest. Unright long.

And *Chrysippus* writeth, that the divers compositions of the teen propositions, which they call *Atomos*, and no more, amount unto the number of ten hundred thousand: but *Hipparchus* reproved this and taught that the affirmative doth contain of connexed propositions, one hundred thousand, and besides, one thousand fourty and nine; but the negative of the same propositions comprehendeth three hundred and ten thousand, with a surplage of nine hundred, thry and two: and *Xenocrates* hath let down, that the number of syllables, which the letters in the alphabet, being coupled and combined together, do afford, amount to the number of one hundred millions. and two hundred thousand over: why should it therefore be thought strange and wonderful, that our bod having in it so many faculties, and gathering still daily, by that which it eateth and drinketh, so many different qualities, considering withall, that it useth motions and mutations, which keep not one time nor the same order alwayes; the complications and mixtures of so many things together, being evermore new & unuall kinds of maladie, such as *Thucydides* wrot, was the pestilence at *Athenes*, conjecturing that this was no ordinary and usual malady, by this especially, for that the beasts of prey, which otherwise did eat of flesh, would not touch a dead body: those also who fell sick about the red sea (as *cabridres* maketh report) were afflicted with strangelysymptomes and accidents, which no man had ever read of seen, and among others, that there crawled from them certain vermin like small serpents, which did eat the calves of their legs and the brawnes of their sides: and look whensoever a man thought to touch them, in they would again and winding about the muskles of the flesh, ingendred inflammations & impoliments with intolerable paine. This pestilent disease, no man ever knew before, neither was it ever seen since by others, but by them alone, like as many other such like accidents: for there was a man who having been a long time tormented with the durtie or difficulty of his urin, delivered in the end by his yard, a barly straw knotted as it was with joints: and we know a friend and guest of ours, a young man, who together with a great quantity of naturall feed, calt forth a little hairy worme or vermin with many feet, and therewith it ran very swiftly: *Arifotle* writeth also, that the nurse of one *Timon of Cilicia*, retired her selfe for two months place every year, and looked in a certain cave all the while, without drink or meat, or giving any other appearance of life, but only that she tooke her breath: certes, recorded in the Melonian books, that it is a certain signe of the liver diseased, when the sick party is very busie in spying, seeking, and chasing the mice and rats about the house: a thing that now adayes is not seeme us not to marvel therefore if a thing be now engendred that never was seen before, and the same afterwards cease as if it had been; for the cause lieth in the nature of the body, which sometimes taketh one temperature, and some while another: but if *Diogenianus* bring a new aire, and a strange water, let him alone, seeing he is so disposed: and yet we know well that the fellows of *Democritus* both say, and write, that by the worlds which runne into this, there arise many times the beginnings of plague and pestilence, yea, and of other ordinary accidents: we will passe over likewise the particular corruptions which happen in divers countries, either by earthquakes, excessive draughts, extreme heats, and unuall ruines, with which it cannot be cholen, but that both winds and rivers, which arise out of the earth, mult needs be likewise infected, diseased, and altered: but howsoever those causes we let go, yet omit we must not, what great alterations be in our bodies, occasioned by our meats and viands, and other diet and usage of our selves: for many things which before time were not wont to be tasted or eaten, are become now most pleasant dainties; as for example: the drink made of hony and wine: as also the delicate dish of a farrowing swines shape or womb; as for the brain of a beast, it is said, that in old time they were wont to reject and cast it from them, yea, and so much to detest and abhorre it, that they would not abide to hear one to name it: and for the cucumber,



the melon or pompon, the pomecitron and pepper, I know many old folk at this day, that cannot away with their taste: credible it is therefore, that our bodies receive a wonderful change and strange alteration by such things in their temperature, acquiring by little and little a divers quality, and superfluity of excrements far different from those before: semblably we are to believe that the change of order in our viands, maketh much hereto: for the services at the board, which in times past were called the cold tables, to wit, of oysters, sea-urchings, green sallads of raw lettuce, and such other herbs, be as it were the light forerunners of the feast, as transferred now by *Plato*, from the rearward to the forefront, and have the first place, whereas before in old time, they came in last: a great matter there is also in those beaver, or fore-drinkings called *Propinats*, for our ancients would not drink to much as water before they did eat: and now a days, when as men are otherwise fasting and have eat nothing, they will be in manner drunk, and after they have well drenched their bodies, they begin to fall unto their meats, and whilst they be yet boiling, they put into the stomach those things that be attenuant, incisive and sharp, for to provoke and stir up the appetite, and till fill themselves up full with other viands: but none of all this hath more power to make mutation in our bodies, nor to breed new maladies, than the variety of sundry fashions, of bathing our flesh: for first and formost it is made soft, liquid, and fluid as iron by the fire, and afterwards it receiveth the temper and tincture of hard steel, by cold water: so that methinks if any one of those who lived a little before us should see the dore of our stoupes and baines open, he might say thus:

*Here into runneth Acheron,  
And firelike burning Phlegethon,*

Whereas in our forefathers dayes, they used their bathes and hot houses, so milde, so kinde, and temperate: that king *Alexander the Great*, being in a fever, lay and slept within them yea, the Gauls wives, bringing thither their pots of portage, and other viands, did eat even there with their children, who bathed together with them: but it seemeth in these dayes, that those who are within the stoupes and baines, be like unto those that are raging mad, and bark as dogs, they puff and blow like led wine, they lay about them and tols every way: the aire that they draw in, as it were clemmed with fire and water, suffereth no piece nor corner of the body in quiet and rest, it shaketh, tasteth, and removeth out of place, the least indivisible parcell thereof, untill such time as we come to quench and allay the same thus inflamed and boiling as they do: There is no need therefore O *Dorogenicus* (quoth I) of forreine and far fetched causes from without, neither of those new worlds and intervals between: for to go no further than to our selves, the very change only of the fashion of our diet, is a sufficient means both to breed, and also to abolish and cause to ease any malady in us.

#### THE TENTH QUESTION.

*What is the reason that we take least heed of dreames in the end of Autumne, and give small credit unto them?*

**F**orm lighting upon physical problems or naturall questions of *Aristotle*, which were brought to *Thermopyle*, for to pass the time away, filled both himselfe with many doubts, as ordinarily men do, who are by nature studious, and also put as many into the heads of others, giving testimony herein to *Aristotle* who saith: that much knowledge breedeth many occasions of doubt: as for other questions, they afforded unto us no unpleasant pastime and recreation, in the day time as we walked in the galleries abroad: but that problem concerning dreams, (namely, that they be uncertain, lying, and false, especially during those months when trees shed their leaves) was less on foot againe (I wot not how) after supper by *Phavorinus*, when he had done with other discourses: As for your familiar companions my children, they were of opinion, that *Aristotle* himselfe had sufficiently solved the question, and there needed no further enquiry into the matter, nor any speech more to be made thereof, but even to attribute the cause, as he did, to the new gathered fruits of that season: for being as they were, fresh and green fill in their strength and full of vigour, they engendered in our bodies many ventosities and bred much trouble, and agitation in the humours: for likely it is not, that new wine alone doth work, boile, and chafe, nor that oile only, being new drawn, and pressed, yeeldeth a noise as it burneth in lamps, by occasion that the heart catcheth the windiness and spirit thereof to evaporate and walm out: but we see also that come newly inured, and all fruits of trees presently upon their gathering, are plump, full, and swelled again, untill such time as they have exhaled forth all that is stannous, and breathed out the crudities thereof: now that there be certain meats that cause troublefome dreams, and engender turbulent visions and fancies in our sleep, they brought in and alledged for their testimony the instance of beans and the head of the poult or pour-cuttle fish, which they are bidden to abstain from, who would divine and foretew things that come by dreams. As for *Phavorinus*, howsoever he was himselfe at all times wonderfully affected and addicted to *Aristotle*, and one who attributed unto the Peripateticks schoole this singular commendation, that their doctrine carried more probability and resemblance of the truth, than other Philosophers whatsoever: yet at this present he came out with an old rusty reason of *Democritus* taken out of the imoak (where it had gathered a deale of thick soot for to turbin, scoure, and make it bright again: for this was the vulgar opinion which *Democritus* put down: for a supposition: That certain images do enter and pierce deep into our bodies through

through the pores, which as they rise again from the bottom, cause those visions which appear unto us as we sleepe: that these came out of all parts wandering, as presented from utensils, habiments, &c. places, but principally from living creatures, for that they move and stir much, and besides are hot, having not only the express similitudes and sundry figures of bodies imprinted in them, as *Epicurus* thinketh (who thus far forth followeth *Democritus*), & leave them there: but also drawing therewith the appearances of the motions of the mind, of counsel, of mutuall misdeceptions as also of vehement passions, wherewith they entering in, do speak as if they were living things, and distinctly carry unto those that receive the same, the opinions, the words, the discourses and affections of such as transmit the same, if in their entrance they retain till the express figures and nothing confused: which they do especially, all whilst that their way and passage through the aire, cleer and unimpeded, is speedy, quick, and not empached by any hinderance: considering then, that at the aire of the Autumne quarter, in the end when as trees do cast their leaves, hath much alperity and inequality, it turneth aside and putteth by diversly those images, causing their evidence to be feeble and transitory, as being darkened by the tradity and flowiness of their pace in the way: whereas contrariwise, when they run forth in great number, and twitly out of those things that swell with fullness, and burn, as it were, with desire to be delivered of them, then as they pass they yee'd their resemblances all fresh and very significant. After this, casting his eye upon *Autobolus*, and smiling withall: Methinks (quoth he) that I perceive you, and those about you, to address your selves alicway for to maintain a kind of fight against these images, and that you meane to fasten with your hands and catch hold of this old opinion, as if it were some rotten picture, to do it some violence: Go to (quoth *Autobolus*) will you never leave these fashions, to play with us in this manner? for we know well enough, I wis, that you hold and approve the opinion of *Aristotle*, and that for to give a little thereto, you have let this of *Democritus* by it as a shadow and foile: that conceit therefore of *Democritus*, we will turn over and put by, and take in hand for to impugn the reason of *Aristotle*, which imputeth all to these new fruits, and unjustly without all reason, blaming and discrediting that which we all love: so well: for both Summer and Autumne will bear witness, that when we eat these fruits, more fresh and green, even at such time as they are most succulent, and verdant: (as *Antinachus* laid) our dreams are less lying and deceitfull: but these months which we name, the Fall of the leaf, pitching their tents as it were, and taking up their standings close to the Winter, have reduced already, both corn of the field, and also the fruits of trees, which remain unwatered by their perfect concoction to this pass that they look slender, and in some sort rived, shaveng lott by this time, that violent, heady, and furious for e while was in them. As touching new wine, they that drink it toowell, do it in the month *Antiochion*, that is to say, February, precisely after winter, add that day upon which they begin to taste it, we in our country call *αὐτὸν τὸν ἡμέραν*, that is to say, the day of good fortune: but the Athenians name it, of opening their tumes of wine vessels, *Πιθηγία*: but so long as the Mutt or new wine is working still, and in the heat, we see, that all men even the very artificers and labourers are afraid to taste it, and to meddle withal: therefore to slander and blame the good gifts of the gods, and go wee rather another way to work for the inquisition of the cause, unto which the very name of the season, and of these windy and vain dreams doth lead us: for this time is called *καλοὶ ἄνεμοι*, that is to say, the fall of the leaf, to wit, the end of Autumne: when by reason of cold, and drinels, trees shed their leaves, unless it be some which are hot and fatty, by nature, as the olive, the lawrell, and the date trees, or very moist, as the ivie and myrtle: for such as these, their temperature helpeth, others not, by reason that this glutinous humour which holdeth the leaves upon the tree, continueth not: because that their natural humidity is congealed with cold, or else dried up, being to feeble and little withall: to flourish therefore, to grow, and to be fresh in plants, and much more in living creatures, cometh of moisture and heat: and contrariwise, cold and drinels are deadly enemies: and therefore *Homer* very properly, is wont to call men who are fresh and lusty *δυσπύκτοι*, that is to say, moist and succulent, as also to joy and be merry, he expresth by the verb *ταῖς τῶν*, that is to say, to be hot, or contrariwise, that which is dolorous and fearfull, he termeth *σπυγδαῖος ἀνθρώπου*, that is to say, dry and stark for cold: a body that is dead, he termeth *αἰδίας*, that is to say, without moisture: *αἰδίας ἀνθρώπου*, that is to say, a very anatomy, dried in the imoak, or against the sun: which are two words devised to traduce and note their extreme drinels: moreover blood which is the thing within us, of principall strength and vertues is both hot and moist, but old age is detritive both of the one and the other: now it seemeth that the latter end of Autumne is the very age of the year, having performed his revolution: for as yet the moisture is not come, but the heat is gone already, or at leastwise is very feeble, and that (which is a great signe of cold and drinels) this season catcheth bodies to be disposed unto diseases. This being laid for a ground necessary it is that the soul should have sympathy & fellow-feeling of the indispositions of the body, & that when the spirits be enfeebled and thickened: the power and faculty of divination or foreseeing future things, must needs be dimmed and dulled, much like as a mirror or looking glass, overlaid with some thick mist, must needs therefore if it send and transmit nothing in prophetic and imaginations, that is plain, express, articulate, evident, and significant, so long as it is rough and unpolished, not smooth and resplendent.

\* Some read November, before written, according to Theodorus Gaza.

## The Ninth Book

## Of Symposiaques, or Banquet-Discourses.

## The summary or principall chapters thereof.

- 1 **O**f verses which have been cited and alledged fity in good season or otherwise?
- 2 What is the cause that the letter Alpha, or A, standeth first in the alphabet, or A, b, c.
- 3 In what proportion hath been composed, and ordained, the number of vowels and semi-vowels?
- 4 Whether hard it was of Venus, that Diomedes wounded?
- 5 What was the reason of Plato, when he said, that the soule of Ajax came in the 20 place to the lot?
- 6 What is covertly signified by the table wherein Neptune is seigned to be vanquished? and why the Athenians put out of their kalender the second day of August?
- 7 What is the reason that the accords in musick are divided into a ternary?
- 8 Wherein differ the intervals, melodious, and accordant, in musick?
- 9 What is it that maketh accord symphony? and what is the reason that when a man striketh strings accordant together, the melody is more base?
- 10 How it cometh to pass that the eclipsick revolutions of sun and moone, being in number equal, yet the moone is seen to be oftener eclipsed than the sun?
- 11 That we continue not always one and the same, for that our substance evermore passeth still away.
- 12 Whether is more probable of the twain, that the stars be in number even or odd?
- 13 A question of contrary lawes and covenant, drawn out of the third book of the Rhapsody of Homers Iliad.
- 14 Of the number of the Muses, certain discourses and reasons, not after a vulgar and common manner delivered.
- 15 That there be three parts in dancing, \* motion, gesture, and shew; and what each of these; also what community there is between the art of poetry, and the skill in dancing.

\* motion,  
gesture,  
shew.

## The Ninth Book

## Of Symposiaques, or Banquet-Discourses.

## The Proem.

**T**His ninth book of Symposiaques (O Solius Senecio) containeth the discourses held at Athens, during the feativall solemnities of the Muses; for that this number of nine, fortheth and agreeth well with the said Muses. Now if the number of questions handled in this book, surmount the ordinary Decade of the former books, you are nothing to marvell thereat, because we ought to render unto the Muses all that appertaineth unto the Muses, without taking away or detaining ought from them, no more than from holy sacrifices; considering that we owe unto them many things besides, and the same more bountifull than this.

## THE FIRST QUESTION.

Of verses cited and pronounced in season and to good purpose, or otherwise.

**A**mmenius being captain of the city of Athens, was desirous in favour of Diogenes, to take view and knowledge, how the young men profited, who were students in Gramma, Geometry, Rhetoric, Musick; whereupon he invited to supper, the most famous regents and masters that were throw out the whole city. There met also with them, and were present, any other learned and studious persons, in great frequency, yea; and in manner all his friends and familiars: As for Achilles, verily, at the funeral games and solemnities of Patroclus, he had only those to sup with him, who had fought hand to hand in single combat to the utterance, with this intent (as it is said) that if happily there had been any choler or heat of revenge inkindled and inflamed between these men, whilst they were in armes, they should now lay down and quit the same, meeting thus at one feast, eating and drinking together at one table: but it hapned clean contrary at this time unto Ammonius; for the jealousie, contention and emulation of these schoolmen and masters of art afore said, became the hotter, and grew to the height amidst their cups: for by this time, they fell to argue, yea, and to challenge and defie one another, reasoning, and disputing without all order or judgement: whereupon, at the first he commanded the musician Eraton, to sing unto the harp; who began his song in this wise, out of the works of Hesiodus:

Of quarrell and contention,  
There were as then, more sorts than one

for

for which I commended him, in that he knew how to apply the ditty of his own song so well unto the present time; which gave afterwards unto Ammonius of this argument; namely, to discourse of verses in season, and to good purpose pronounced: saying, That herein there appeared not only a good grace, but also ensued otherwhiles great commodity thereof. And presently every mans mouth was full of that Rhapsodian poet; who at the marriage of king \* Pedomeus, Philadelphus, when he espoused his own sister, and was thought therein to commit a strange and unlawful act, began this long with these verses out of Homer:

Great Jupiter to Juno then did call,  
His sister dear and wedded wife withall.

as also another, who being to sing after supper before king Demetrius, at what time as he sent unto him his son Philip, being as yet a very infant, came readily forth with these verses:

This child, see that you well bring up  
in vertuous discipline;  
As for the race of Hercules,

And eke a son of mine.

Antarchus likewise, when Alexander at supper time flung apples at him, arose from the board, rehearsing this verse out of Euripides:

Some good one day, in verities  
By mortall hand shall wounded be.

But most excellently of all others, a Corinthian lad, who being led away prisoner, as the city was forced and loth, when Mummius taking a survey of those children who were born, committed as many of them as had any knowledge in literature, for to write before him, wrote extempore these verses:

Thrice and foure times those Greeks were blest, I say,  
Whose hap it was, to die before this day.

And by report Mummius took much ruth and compassion hereat, that he shed tears, and for this youths sake, set at liberty as many as were of his kindred and alliance. There was remembered also, the wife of Theodorus the tragedian, who when the time drew neere, that such poets and actors were to strive for the best game, would not suffer him to live with her; but after he was returned home from the theater, where he had gotten the victory, and gained the prize, when he came toward her, she kissed and welcomed him home with these verses:

O noble son of Agmemnon, now  
To do with me your will, good leave have you.

Sensibly, some there were in place, who hereupon inferred many other verses as unfitly alledged and altogether out of season; for that it was not thought amiss or unprofitable, both to know the time, and to beware thereby; and namely, that which is reported concerning Pompeius Magnus, when he returned from a great expedition and warlike voyage: unto whom his little daughter was presented by her school-master; and for to shew unto him how she had profited in learning, when a book was brought unto her, the said school-master opened it, and turned to this place for her to read, which beginneth thus:

From war thou art returned safe and sound,  
Would God thou hadst been there left dead on ground.

Also, when uncertain newes (without any head or author) was brought unto Cassius Longinus, that his son was dead in a strange countrey, so as he could neither know the truth, nor yet do away the doubtfull suspicion thereof, there came an ancient senatour to visit him and said: What Longinus, will you not condemn and neglect his vaine bruit and headleis rumour, raised (no doubt) by some malicious person? as if you neither had known nor read this sentence:

No publick fame, nor vox populi  
Was ever known in vaine to die.

As for him, who when a gentleman in the isle of Rhod, called for a theam, to vary upon, and to shew thereby his learning before the people in a frequent theater, gave him this verse:

Away out of this isle, I do thee reach,  
Most wicked wretch that lovest, a dish that with speed.

it is hard to say, whether he did of purpose, conumeliouly, to deride this poor Grammarian, or committed an error against his will? But to conclude this discourse of verses inserted apply and otherwise alledged, did very prettily appeale the stir and tumult among the regents and masters of art above said.

## THE SECOND QUESTION, AND THE THIRD.

What is the cause why Alpha, (or A) was ranged first of all other letters? as also, what proportion, the number of vowels and semi-vowels hath been composed and ordained?

**W**heras the use and custome was at Athens, during the fore said feasts in the honour of the Muses, the lots should be carried round about the city, and they that chanced by drawing to be matched together, propounded one unto another questions of learning: Ammonius fearing left

left some professors of one and the same art, should be committed in opposition together, took this order, and ordained, that without any lottery at all, a Geometrician might propose a question unto a Grammarian: the Rhetorician unto a musician, and so reciprocally answer them again by turns: Hereupon *Hermias* the Geometrician put forth first unto *Protagoras* the Grammarian, a question, urging him to tell the cause, why *A* was set foremost of all the letters? who rendered unto him a reason which goeth for current in the schools: For this is certain (quoth he) that vowels may claim by a most just title, the place before all consonants, whether they be mute or semi-vowels: and seeing that of vowels some be long, others short, and a third sort doubtful, and as they lay, of a double time: these of the last kind, ought by good right to be esteemed of greater worth and puissance than the rest; and of them, that is, to have and hold the place of greater worth and in composition and making of a diphthong, goeth alwayes before the other two, and never cometh behind: and that is *Alpha*, which never secondeth *Iota*, or *Upsilon* so, as that it will in such composition, yield or help to make one syllable of thoser twain: but in a kind of anger and indignation, leap back again unto her proper place: contrariwise, let *Alpha* with whether you will of the other two, so as she may go before, the will accord very well, and both together will make one entire syllable, as we may see in these words, *ἀγών, ἀνών*, as also in *ἀλός, ἀλός*, and an infinite number of others: thus in these three respects she hath the victory, and carrieth the prize, like unto those champions who are winners in *Quinquertium*, or the five several games, for she hath the vantage above the multitude of other letters, in that she is a vowel: above vowels, because she hath two times, as being one while long, and another while short, & even of these double timed vowels she hath the preeminence, by reason that she standeth alwayes before, and never followeth or cometh behind others.

When *Protagoras* had made an end of his speech, *Ammonius* called unto me by name and said: How now *Plutarch*, will not you aid *Cadmus*, being (as you are) a Boetian as he was? for it is said, that he placed *Alpha* before all other letters, for that *Alpha* in the Phenician language signifieth a beef, reputed among them, not in the second or third place, according to *Hesiodus*, between the very first and principall of necessary moveables belonging to a man: Not I (quoth he) but I am bound to succour (what I can) mine own grand-father, rather than the very grandfere of *Bacchus*; for my grand-father *Lamprias* was wont to say: That the first distinct and articulate voice which a man pronounceth, is by the power of *Alpha*; seeing that the breath and spirit within the mouth, is formed principally by the motion of the lips, which as they are opened and divided asunder, yield by that simple overture this voice first, which of all other likewise is most simple, and performed with least adoe, calling neither for the tongue to helpit, nor waiting for the use thereof, but issueth forth, even when it lieth still and stirreth not out of the owne place and therefore it is the first voice that infants utter: hereupon also cometh this word *αἶψα*, in Greek, which signifieth as much as to hear any voice, for that alwayes such a sound as *A* is usually heard: yea, and many other like vocables, as *αἶψα*, that is to say, to sing; *αἶψα*, that is to say, to pipe; and *αἶψα*, to cry and hollo; yea, and these words *αἶψα*, to elevate or lift up, and *αἶψα*, that is to say, to open: not without good cause tooke these names upon the deduction and lifting up of the lips, whereby such a sound as *A*, is let forth, and falleth out of the mouth, and therefore the names of other mute consonants, all save one, are helped by this *A*, which serveth as a light to cleer their blindness: for there is but *Pi*, or *P* only, wherein the power of this letter or sound is not employed: as for *Phi* and *Chi*, the one of them is *P*, and the other *K*, pronounced with (*b*) or an aspiration.

Hereunto when *Hermias* said, that he approved well of both reasons: Why do not you then (quoth I) expound and deliver unto us, what is the proportion, if there be any, in the number of letters: for in mine opinion there is, which I collect by this argument, in that the multitude of mute consonants and semi-vowels, in regard one of another, as also in respect of vowels, setteth not so by chance, but according to the first proportion which we call Arithmetically, for there being nine, & eight, it cometh to pass that the middle number between, as it surmounteth one, so it is equally surmounted of the other, and the two extremes being brought together, the greater in respect of the less, beareth the just proportion of the number of mutes, to that of *Alpha*: for nine, is attributed to the mutes, like as seven, to *Apollo*, which being joyned together, make the duple of that which is in the midst, to wit, of eight, and that by good reason: for that the semi-vowel, between both, do participate the power and efficacy of the extremes, to wit, mutes and vowels: according to the figure here represented:

Mutes, Semi-vowels, Vowels.



*Mercury* (quoth he) was the first god who found out letters in Egypt: therefore the Egyptians when they would represent the first letter, do paint *this*, a towle dedicated to *Mercury*: but not well in my judgement, thus to give the precedence and superiority of all other letters unto a beast that uttereth neither voice nor sound at all: Moreover, unto *Mercury* is consecrated of all numbers,

bers, the quarternary especially, and many there be who have written, that borne he was upon the fourth day of the month: now if you multiply four by four, you arise to sixteen, the just number of those first letters which were called Phenician, inented first by *Cadmus*. Of the other letters which afterwards were added to the *Alphabet*, *Palamedes* devised one four; and *Simonides* put thereunto another four: moreover, the first perfect number of all others is three, as having a beginning, a middle, and an end: after it the number of six, because it is known very well to be equal in all the parts thereof: of these now, if six be multiplied by four, and the first quadrat or cube (8) by the first perfect number (3) they bring forth twenty four, the full number of all the letters in the alphabet. Whiles he thus spake still, *Zopyrius* the Grammarian was perceived evidently to laugh at him and mumble somewhat between his teeth secretly: but so soon as he had made an end of speech, he could no longer but out he spake and said: That all this was nothing else but frivolous babbles: For that (quoth *Zopyrius*) there can no sound reason at all be given, but even by adventure and chance it fell out, that so many letters there were, and those placed in such order as they be: Like as (quoth he) that the first verse of *Homerus Iliad*, should contain so many syllables just, as the first of his *Odyssey*: and again, that the last of the one, should answer in number of syllables even to the last of the other, is altogether a casual thing, hapning to by meer fortune and not otherwise.

#### THE FOURTH QUESTION.

Whether hand it was of *Venus* that *Diomedes* wounded?

After this, when *Hermias* addressed himselfe to propose unto *Zopyrius* a question, we inhibited *And* staid him. But *Maximus* the Rhetorician, came with a long sutch a far off out of *Homer*, and demanded of him: Whether hand it was of *Venus* that *Diomedes* wounded? With that *Zopyrius* to quit him again, asked him presently: Of whether leg king *Philip* halted? The case quoth *Maximus* is not all one and the same: for *Demosthenes* hath left unto us no means for to answer this question: but if you confests once that you know not: others there be who will shew you the very place where *Homer* telleth them who have any wit to conceive, which hand of hers was hurt? *Zopyrius* at this speech seemed to be astonished and stand in a maze; whereupon whiles he held his peace, we requested *Maximus*, to point unto us the place aforesaid: First and foremost (quoth *Maximus* then) considering that the verses runne in this wise:

Then leapt aside *Tideus* son,  
and traversing his ground,  
Stept to, and with spear pointed spear,  
her hand also did wound.

It is plain and evident, that if he had meant to have smitten her left hand, he needed not to have leapt at one side, for he had the left hand of *Venus* just opposite unto his own right hand, when he directly affronted her: and more probable it is, and stands to great reason: that his intent was to hurt the stronger hand, and that which held *Aeneas* her son, whom she seemed with violence to carry away, and which being wounded, she might be forced to forgoe her hold, and let his body goe. Secondly, when *Venus* was returned up into heaven, *Minerva* by way of scoffing, laughed at her, and said to *Jupiter* in this wise:

No doubt, fair *Venus* hath suborn'd  
Some Greekish dame to love,  
And follow one of these *Troy* knights,  
whom she affects above  
All other knights: and whiles she strook't  
this lady gently, See,  
Her soft hand met with some cold-clapp,  
and so came rai'd to be.

And verily *Iuppiter*, that even your selfe good sir, an excellent regent and professor as you are, if at any time you would seem to make much of any of your scholars, to stroak and softly to handle him, will not you do it with your left hand, but with the right; and even so, very like it is, that *Venus*, the most gentle and courteous goddess of all others, in this manner dealt with the Grecian ladies, when she perswaded them unto her mind.

#### THE FIFTH QUESTION.

What is the reason that *Plato* said, how the soul of *Ajax* came to the lot, in the 20. place?

This pretty discourse aforesaid, pleased the whole company, and made them all merry, but one Grammarian named *Hylas*, whom *Salsus* a professor in Rhetoric, seeing to sit all silent, sad and heavy, (for that indeed he had sped not very well, whensoever he made proof of his scholars Proceedings) came out with these verses aloud:

*Ajax* s. le, the son of *Telamon*,  
Remained still, and all alone.

and the rest of the verses following, he delivered in an higher note than ordinary, and rehearsed them aloft unto him, in this wise:

But now good sir come hither, that  
my words you may well hear,  
Repress your ire, this anger quench,  
and tame your moody cheer.

But *Hylas* grumbling still in anger, bewraied no less by his crofs and impertinent answer, saying: That the ghost of *Ajax* in hell, took her turn in the twentieth place, and her lot was according to *Plato*, to be transfused into the nature of a lion: But for mine own part (quoth he) I think many times of the old mans saying in the comedy:

Better it were an ass to be  
Indeed, than for a man to see  
Those lives prefer'd in worldly pelf,  
Who are for worth behind himselfe.

Hereat *Sophis* laughing heartily: But I beseech you good *Hylas* (quoth he) meane while that we are turning into asses and taking pack-saddles on our backs (if you regard and respect any thing the honour of *Plato*) declare unto us the reason, why he said: That the soule of *Ajax* (him I meane who was *Telamon* son) came in the twentieth place to have her choice from the lottery? Which when *Hylas* flatly refused to do, (for he thought that they had made a mocking stock of him, because he had but bad success in his former trials:) my brother took the matter in hand: And what say you (quoth he) to this? may it not be for that *Ajax* carried the name alwayes for beauty, greatnesse and valour,

Next after *Peleus* son (*I say*),  
Who was first peer for prowess ay?

And you know that twenty makes up the second decade; and the decade or number of ten, is of all numbers principally and most puissant, like as *Achilles* was among the princes of the Greeks. With that we all set up a laughter: Then *Ammonius*, Well (quoth he) *Lamprias*, you are disposed thus to jest and play with *Hylas*: but since of your own accord, you have under-taken the charge, to deliver the cause thereof, let us intreat you to impart unto us, not by way of sport and merriment, but in good earnest. *Lamprias* was at the first not a little troubled at this challenge, but after he had paused, and thought upon the matter a while, in the end he spake to this effect: It is an ordinary thing (quoth he) with *Iatro*, to play with us many times merrily, by certain devised names that he useth: but whensoever he inserteth some fable in any treatise of the soule, he doth it right soberly, and hath a deep meaning, and profound sense therein: for the intelligent nature of heaven, he calleth, a Chariot volant, to wit, the harmonical motion and revolution of the world: and here in this place whereof we are now in question (to wit, in the end of the tenth book of this Common-wealth) he bringeth in a messenger from hell, to relate newes of that which he had there himselfe seen; and calleth him by the name of *Eras*, a Pamphylian born, and the son of *Armonius*, giving us covertly (by an enigmatical convocation) thus much to understand: That our soules are engendered by harmony, and so joynted to our bodies, but when they are disjoynted, and separate from them, they run together all into aire from every side, and so returne again from thence unto second generations: what should hinder then but this word *εραος*, was put down by him, not to shew a truth whereof he spake, but rather *εραος*, as a probable speech, and conjecturall fiction, or else, a thing spoken (as it should seem) to a dead body, and so uttered vainly and at a venture in the principally understood how fatal destiny is mingled with fortune: and again, how our free wills wont to be joynted with either of them, or is complicate with both: and now in this place before-cited, he sheweth excellently well, what power each of these causes hath in our humane affaires, attributing the choice and election of our life unto free will, (for vertue and vice be free, and at the command of no lord) and tying to the necessity of fatal destiny, a religious life to God-ward in them, who have made a good choice, and contrariwise in those who have made a choice of the world: but the cadences or chance of losse, which being cast at a venture, and lighting here and there, without order, befall to every one of us, bring in fortune, and preoccupe or prevent much of that which is ours, by the fardly educations or governments of common-weale, wherein it hapneth each of us to live: for this I would have every one of you to consider, whether it be not meer folly and without all reason to seek for a cause of that which is done by fortune and casually, for if lot should seem to come by reason, there were to be impured no more to fortune or adventure, but all to some fatal destiny or providence.

Whiles *Lamprias* delivered this speech, *Marcus* the Grammarian, seemed to count and number (I wot not what) upon his fingers to himselfe apart: but when he had made an end, the said *Marcus* named aloud all those soules or spirits which are called out in *Homer* *Necra*: Among which (quoth he) the ghost only of *Elpenor* wandering still in the middle confines, is not reckoned with those beneath in another world, for that his body as yet is not interred and committed to the earth: as for the soule of *Tiresias* also, it seemeth not to be numbered with the rest,

To whom now dead *Proserpina*  
Above the rest did give

This

The gift alone right wife to be,  
Although he did not live.

as also the power to speake with the living, and to understand their state and affaires, even before he had drunke the blood of sacrificed beastes: If then (quoth he) O *Lamprias* you substract these two, and count the rest, you shall find that the soule of *Ajax* was juft the twentieth of those which presented themselves to *Ulysses*; and hereto alluded *Plato*, as it should seeme, by way of mirth, joyning his fable together with that evocation of spirits, otherwise called *Necra* in *Homer* *Odyssea*.

### THE SIXTH QUESTION.

What is covertly meant by the Fable, wherein Neptune is feigned to have been vanquished: as also, why the Athenians take out the second day of the month August.

NOW then the whole company were grown to a certaine uprore, *Menepylus* a Peripateticke Philosopher calling unto *Hylas* by name: You see (quoth he) now, that this question was not propounded by way of mockery and contumelious flouting: but you my good friend (leaving this toward and male-ontented *Ajax*, whose name as *Sophaeles* saith, is ominous, and of ill presage) betake your selfe unto *Neptune*, and side with him awhile; who is wont to recount unto us himselfe, how he hath been oftentimes overcome, to wit, in this City, by *Minerva*; at *Delphi* by *Apollo*; in *Argos*, by *Juno*; in *Agina*, by *Jupiter*; and in *Naxos*, by *Bacchus*: and yet in all his squales, disavours, and infortunities, he bare himselfe alwaies mild and gentle, carrying no rancor or malice in his heart: for proove hereof, there is even in this City a Temple common to him and *Minerva*, in which there standeth also an altar dedicated to Oblivion: Then *Hylas* who seemed by this time more pleasantly disposed: But you have forgotten (quoth he) O *Menepylus*, that we have abolished the second day of the month August, not in regard of the Moon, but because it was thought to be the day upon which *Neptune* & *Minerva* pleaded for the feignory of this territory of *Attica*. Now I assure you (quoth *Lamprias*) *Neptune* was every way much more civill and reasonable than *Thrasibulus*, in case being not a winner as the other, but a loser, he could forget all grudge and malice.

Agree breach and defect there is in the Greeke Original, wherein wanteth the farther handling of this Question, as also five Questions entire following, and a part of the sixth, to wit:

1. Why the accords in Musick are divided into three?
2. Wherin differ the intervals or spaces melodious of musick that be accordant?
3. What cause is it that maketh accord? and what is the reason that when one toucheth two strings accordant together, the melody is ascribed to the base?
4. What is the cause that the eclipseke revolutions of Sun and Moone being in number equall, yet we see the Moone oftener eclipsed than the Sun?
5. That we continue not alwaies one and the same, in regard of the daily flux of our substance.
6. Whether of the twaine is more probable, that the number of stars is even or odd?

Of this twelfth Question thus much remaineth as followeth:

I stander was wont to say, That children are to be deceived with cockall bones, but men with Lethers: Then *Glaucias*, I have heard (quoth he) that this speech was used against *Polycrates* the tyrant: but it may be that it was spoken also to others: But wherby do you demand this of me? *Menepylus* (quoth *Sophis*) I see that children snatch at such bones, and the Academies catch at words: for it seemeth unto me, that these stomacks differ in nothing from them, who holding our teeth clutched fits play at handy dandy, and aske whether they hold in their cloie hand even or odd: Then *Protagoras* aroole, and calling unto me by name: What alle we (quoth he) and what is come unto us that we suffer these Rhetoricians and Orators thus to brave it out, and to mock others, being demanded nothing in the meane time, nor put to it for to contribute their foot and part unto this conference and these discourses? unless peradventure they will come in with this plea, that they have no part of this table talke in drinking wine, as being those who admire and follow *Democritus*, who in all his life time never drank wine: This is not the cause (quoth I) but thereafon is, because we have spard them no questions: but if you have no better thing to aske, I will propole unto them a case of repugnancy in contrary laws or conditions, and the same drawn out of *Homer*.

### THE THIRTEENTH QUESTION.

A question as touching repugnant laws, taken out of the third Rhapsody or book of *Homer* *Ilias*.

AND what is the case, demanded he againe? I will tell you (quoth I) and withall propole it unto these here: and therefore let them give attentive care: *Alexander Paris* in the third book.

of Homers Ilias, giveth defiance to Menelaus, and challengeth him to a single fight, with certaine conditions preteeling in this manner:

*Let us between both armies meet without,  
My selfe I mean, and Menelaus stout:  
To try in single fight upon this plaine  
To which of us by right shall appertaine  
Dame Helene, with her goods: For look, who shall  
Make good his ground, and quit himselfe withall  
So bravely, that the victory he gaine,  
Have he her selfe, and jewels in domaine.*

Heitor againe publishing unto all, and declaring as well to Greeks as Trojans the same challenge and defiance of his brother Paris, wleth in manner the very same words, sayine:

*His meaning is, that Greeks and Trojans all  
Besides, should for the time surcease and quite  
Lay down all arms upon the ground withall,  
Whiles he and Menelaus hardy knights,  
For Helen faire, and all her jewels fight?  
And he that shall the better hand obtaine,  
With him both Lady shall and goods remaine.*

Now when Menelaus had accepted of these conditions, and both sides were sworne to the articles accorded, Agamemnon to ratifie the same by his royall assent, spake in this wise:

*If Alexander in plaine fight  
Shall Menelaus kill:  
Dame Helene he may lead away,  
And her goods at his will:  
But say that Menelaus brave  
Do Alexander slay,  
The woman then and what she hath  
Let him streight have away.*

Now for that Menelaus vanquished Paris indeed, but yet bereft him not of his life; either side had good plea to defend their cause opposite unto their enemies: for the Greeks pretended a right claime unto Helena, for that Paris was overcome: and the Trojans implored and denied to redeliver her, because he was not left dead in the place: how shall this case then be decided and judged right in so great a difference and contrariety? Certes it belongeth not to Philosophers nor Grammarians alone: but it is for Rhetoricians also to determine hereof, who are both learned in Grammar and good letters: and withall, well seen in Philosophy, as you be. Then Sophist gave his opinion, and said, That the cause and plea of the defendant challenged was far better and stronger, as having the Law directly on his side: for the assailant and challenger himselfe denounceth under what conditions the combat should be performed; which seeing the defendant accepted of, and yielded unto, it lieth not in their power any more to adde ought thereto: for the condition comprised in the challenge carried no words implying slaughter or death of any side: but the victory of the one, and the discomfiture of the other; and that with very great reason: for by right the Lady belonged to the better man, and more valiant; and the more valorous man is he who vanquisheth: for otherwise it falleth out many times, that valiant and hardy men are slaine by very cowards; as afterwards Achilles himselfe chanced to be killed by Paris with the shot of an arrow: neither will any man (I trow) say, that Achilles thus slaine was the lesse valiant, or call this the victory; but rather the good fortune of Paris unjustly dealt, whose hap it was to shoot so right; whereas on the other side, Heitor was vanquished by Achilles, before he was slain, for that he would not abide his coming, but for feare abandoned his ground and fled: for he that refuseth combat and runneth away is in plaine tearmies vanquished, and hath no excuse to palliate or cloake his defeature; but flatteringly confesseth his enemy to be his better. And therefore, Iris, coming at first to Helena to give her intelligence of this combat, saith unto her:

*They will in combats fight it out  
With long speares now for thee:  
And look who wins the victory,  
His wife thou namd shalt be.*

And afterwards Jupiter himselfe adjudged the prize of victory unto Menelaus in these words:

*Now plaine it is, the champion bold,  
Sir Menelaus fight,  
Hath quit himselfe a man, and won  
The prize in single fight.*

For it were a ridiculous mockery to say: That Paris had conquered Achilles, because he stood behind a shield and with the shot of an arrow wounded him in the foot who never was ware of him, nor so much as looked for any such thing; and that now when he refused combat, distrustful himselfe and ran out of the field like a coward to shroud and hide himselfe within the boosome, and between the armes of a woman; being, as a man would say, disarmed and de spoiled of his weapons,

even whiles he was alive, his concurrent should not deserve to carry away the victory, shewing himselfe the conquerour in open field; even according to the conditions offered by Paris the challenger. Then Glaucus taking the matter in hand, implored and argued against him thus: First (quoth he) in all Edicts, Decrees, Laws, Covenants, and Contracts, the last are reputed alwaies of greater validity, and do stand more firme than the former: but the second covenants and the last, were they which were declared and published by Agamemnon; in which was comprised, expressly death for the end of the combat, and not the discomfiture or yielding of the party conquered: moreover, the former capitulation of covenants, passed only by parole and bare words; but the other which followed after, was sealed and confirmed with an oath, yea, and a curse and execration was set thereupon, for whosoever should transgresse the same: neither was it approved and ratified by one man alone, but by the whole Army together: in such sort as this latter paction and covenant ought properly and by right to be called: whereas the former was nothing else but the intimation of a challenge and defiance given; in testimony whereof, Priamus also after the articles of combat were sworn upon, departed out of the field, laying:

*Great Jupiter, and other gods,  
Immortal now do know,  
Whose destiny it is to dye  
Upon his overthrow.*

For he wist well enough that the covenants of combat were capitulated and accorded upon this condition: and therefore it was, that a little after Heitor saith:

*God Jupiter aloft in heaven  
Whose sit upon his throne,  
The covenants sworne hath not perform'd  
Which were agreed and sworn.*

For as yet the combat remained unachieved, and imperfect, neither had it a certaine and doubtlesse conclusion, considering neither the one nor the other of the champions was slaine: so that in mine opinion, there is no contrariety here at all, because the former articles and conditions were comprised in the second: for no doubt, he that killeth hath overcome; but it followeth not, that he who vanquisheth hath killed his enemy: but to say a truth, we may well plead thus: That Agamemnon did not reverse or annull the challenge or defiance pronounced by Heitor, but explained and declared it; neither altered he it, but added rather the principall point thereof, setting down expressly him for victor who killed his enemy; for this indeed is a compleat and absolute victory; whereas all others have evasions, pretended excuses, and oppositions, such as this of Menelaus, who wounded not this enemy, nor so much as pursued and followed after him: like as therefore in such cases wherein there is an evident contradiction of laws indeed, the judges are wont to pronounce award and sentence, according to that which is most expressly and clearly let down, leaving that which is doubtful and obscure; even so in this present case now in question; that covenant which hath an evident conclusion, and admitteth no tergiversation at all, we ought to esteem more firme and effectual: furthermore, that which is the chiefe and most principall point of all, even he him selfe who is supposed to be the victor, in that he retired not back, nor gave over seeking for him that fled, but went up and down, to and fro among the troups searching all about;

*If haply of this gallant knight  
Sir Paris he might have a fight,  
telleth plainly, that his victory was imperfect and of no validity; considering that his concurrent was escaped out of his hands, which put him in mind of the words which himselfe a little before had said:*

*The house of death, so whether of us twaine  
Is come, let him lie dead upon the plaine:  
As for the rest see every one apart,  
And that with speed, you home in peace depart.*

And therefore it stood him upon necessarily to seek out Alexander, to the end, that having slaine him, he might accomplish the entire execution of the combat, and gaine the end thereof; whereas, neither killing him out of the way, nor taking him prisoner, without all right he demanded the prize of victory: for in very truth he did not so much as vanquish him, if we may gather presumptions and conjecturall arguments, even out of his own words, complaining as he doth of Jupiter, and lamenting to himselfe, that he missed of his purpose, in these words:

*O Jupiter, in heaven above,  
No God there is againe,  
More sightfull than thy selfe to me;  
Nor cruel to be plaine,  
I made account, and so gave out;  
Of Paris in this place,  
Revenge'd to be for all his wrongs;  
And working my disgrace:  
But now my sword in hand is swift,  
My javelin launch'd in vaine*

With force of armes; hath done no hurt;

Nor wrought him any paine.

For him selfe confesse, that it was to no purpose, that he pierced thorow his enemies shield, and took away his arrow that fell from his head, unless he had wounded him therewith, and slaine him outright.

### THE FOURTEENTH QUESTION.

*As touching the Muses and their number, certaine points not after a vulgar and common manner handled.*

His discourse being thus finished, we performed our oblations and libaments to the Muses; and after we had sung an hymn to *Apollo*, the leader and conductor of the Muses, we chaunced also to the found of an harpe, as *Erato* plaied thereupon, those verses which *Hesiodus* wrote concerning the generation and birth of the Muses: when our song was ended, *Horatius* the Rhetorician began his speech in this wise: Listen lordings (quoth he) you that would distract and pluck from us *Calliope*, they say (forsooth) that the converse with Kings, and not with those who can skill of unfolding syllogismes, or who propound difficult questions to such as speake big, and are of magnificent speech, but those rather who do and effect great matters; the works I mean which concerne Orators, Politicians, and Statesmen: and as for *Chio*, of all the Muses, she admitteth and avoweth the encomiasticall orations, wherein are contained the praises of other artizans; for that in old time our ancestors called praises, *Clea*; and *Polymnia* entertaineth history; which is nothing else but the memoriall or remembrance of many antiquities: and it is reported, that in some places, and namely, in *Chios*, they name all the Muses *proie*, that is to say, memories: as for me, I challenge also to my selfe some part of *Euterpe*, if it beas *Chrysippus* saith, that she it is, who hath allotted unto her the gift to entertaine meetings and conferences with pleasure, delectation, and grace: for an Orator is no lesse affable in familiar conversation, than eloquent in pleading causes at the bar, or in opinion and delivering his mind in consultations at the Court table; considering that the art and profession of an Orator containeth the faculty and lease to win good will, do defend, maintaine, and justice; but principally, and most of all, we employ our greatest skill in praising and ad dispraising: which if we can order artificially and with dexterity, we are able to bring about and effect no small matters and contentiwise; if we do unskillfully, and without art, we faile of the marke: which we shoot at for this commendable title.

*O God, this man how acceptable  
Is he to all, and verie able!*

agreeth in my judgement to Orators, rather than to any other persons, who have the skill to speake well and to persuade: a gift most requisite, fit, and becoming those that are to converse with men. Then *Ammonius*: I were not well done of us (quoth he) *O Herodes*, if we should be offended and angry with you, although you seem to comprehend all the Muses together in your hand: for that among friends all things are common: and therefore it is, that *Jupiter* hath begotten many Muses, that every man might draw abundance from them of all good things, and make no spare: for we have not all of us need of the skill in hunting, of military science, of the art of navigation, nor of the mechanical handicrafts of Artizans; but we all stand in need of learning and crudition,

*As many as on fruits do feed,  
Which for our use the earth doth breed.*

And herenpon it is, that *Jupiter* hath procreated: one *Minerva*, one *Diana*, and one *Vulcan*; but many Muses: now that there should be nine of them in number just, and neither more nor fewer, you will be so good (will you not) as to yeeld us a reason? for I suppose you are well studied in this point, being as you are, so well affected unto them, and so much adorned by their graces. And what great learning (quoth *Herodes* againe) should there be in that? For every man hath in his mouth the number of nine, and there is not a woman but singeth thereof, and is able to say, that as it is the first square arising from the first odde number, so it is unevenly odde it selfe, as being divided into three odde numbers equal oneto the other. Now surely (quoth *Ammonius*, and therewith smiled) this is manfully done of you, and stoutly remembered: but why do you not adde thereto, thus much more, for a corollary and over-measure, that it is a number composed of the two first cubes, considering that it is made of an unity and an octonary: and after another manner likewise of composition, it standeth of two triangled numbers, to wit, a senary, and a ternary, whereof, both the one and the other is a perfect number: but what is the reason, that this novenary or number of nine, agreeth better unto the Muses than to any other gods or goddesses; for nine Muses we have, but not nine *Ceres*, nor nine *Minervaes*, nor yet nine *Dianas*? you are not (I throw) periwaded that the cause hereof is, because the name of their mother *Mnemosyne*, containeth just so many letters? *Herodes* laughed heartily hereat; and after some time of pause and silence, *Ammonius* solicited us to take the matter in hand, and search the cause thereof. With that my brother began, and said: Our ancients in old time knew of no more than three Muses; but to prove so much by way of demonstration, before this company, where there be so many wife men and learned clerks, were a mere unskill and ruttall part, favouring of vanity and ostentation: but I assure you, the reason of this number was not (as some affirme) the three kinds of musick or melody, to wit,

\* Or, *Lian*.  
\* Or, *Tarp*.  
figure.

\* Diato:

\* Diatonicque, \* Chromatique, and \* Harmonique; nor by occasion of the three termes or bounds which make the intervals in an octave or eight of musick harmonically, to wit, *Nete*, *Mese*, and *Hyper*, that is to say, the Treble, the Meane, and the Base: and yet verily, the Delphians (so called the Muses; wherein they did amisse, in my judgement, to retrain that generall name of them all to one science, or rather to one part of a science, to wit, the harmony of musick: but our ancients (knowing well, that all arts and sciences which are practised and performed by reason and speech, are reduced to three principall kinds, Philosophicall, Rhetoricall, and Mathematicall) reputed them to be the gifts and beneficiall graces of three deities or divine powers, which they called Muses: howbeit, afterwards, and about the time wherein *Hesiodus* lived, when the faculties of these general sciences were better revealed and discovered, they perceived that each of them had three differences; and so they subdivided them into three subalternall sorts; namely, the Mathematicks, into Arithmetick, Musick, and Geometry; Philosophy, into Logick, Ethick or Morall, and Physick or Naturall; as for Rhetoric, it had at the beginning for the first part, Demonstrative, which was employed in praises; for the second, Deliberative, occupied in consultations; and for the third, Judiciall, used in pleas and judgements: of all which faculties they thought there was not so much as one, that was invented, or could be learned without some gods or Muses, that is to say, without the conduct and favour of some superiour puissance: and therefore they did not devyde and make so many Muses, but acknowledged and found that so many there were: like as therefore, the number of nine is divided into three ternaries, and every one of them subdivided into as many unities; even so the rectitude of reason in the precellent knowledge of the truth, is one puissance, and the same common: but each of these three kinds is subdivided into three other; and every of them hath their severall Muses, for to dispose and adorne particularly one of these faculties: for I do not thinke, that in this division Poets and Astrologers can of right complaine of us for leaving out their sciences; knowing (as they do) as well as we can tell them, that Astrology is contributed unto Geometry, and Poetry to Musick: Upon this speech *Tryphon* the Physician brake out into these words: But what meane you (I pray you) and how hath our poore art offended you, that it is excluded thus out of the temple and society of the Muses? Then *Dionysius* of *Melitus*, added moreover, and said, Nay, you have provoked many of us besides, to complaine upon our discontentment in the same behalfe: for we that are gardeners and husbandmen employed in agriculture, challenge a right and propriety in Lady *Thalia*, ascribing unto her the care and charge of plants and seeds, that they may come up, grow, flower, increase, and be preserved. But herein (quoth I) you do the man manifest wrong; for you have *Ceres* for your patronesse, furnished *avoutis*, for giving us so many gifts to win the fruits of the earth: yea, and *Bacchus* may go fora patron in this respect, who (as *Pindarus* saith)

*Taking the charge of trees that grow,  
Doth cause them for to bud and blow:  
The verdure fresh and beauty pure,  
Of lovely fruits he doth procure.*

And we know besides, that Physicians have *Aesculapius* for their president and tutelar god, who ordinarily also use *Apollo* as he is surnamed, *Paeon*, that is to say, the appealer of all paines and maladies, but never as he is, *Musegetes*, that is to say, the prince and guide of the Muses: True it is indeed, that according to *Homer*:

*All mortall men of gods have need,  
That they in their affairs may speed.*

Howbeit all men require not the help of all gods: But I wonder much at this, that *Lamprias* should either forget or be ignorant of that common saying of the Delphians, who give out: That among them the Muses beare not the name either of sounds and notes, or of strings; but whereas the whole world is divided into three principall parts or regions; whereof the first is of those natures which be fixed and not erratical; the second, of such as are wandering; and the third of bodies under the sphere of the moon: these are every one distinctly digested, composed, and ordered by harmonical proportions, and each of them (as they say) hath a Muse to their keeper and president: to wit, the first or highest region, *Hypate*; the last or lowest, *Nete*; and as for *Mese* which is in the middle between, she doth both comprehend and alturne about mortall things, (as much as it is possible, considering they come after) with divine and immortal, yea, and earthly natures with heavenly and celestial, according as *Plato* him selfe after a covert and enigmatical manner hath given us to understand, under the names of the three destinies, calling one, *Atrapos*; another, *Lachesis*; and a third, *Clotho*: for as touching the motions and revolutions of the eight heavenly Spheres, he hath attributed as presidents unto them so many Syrens in number, and not Muses.

Then *Menophilus* the Peripatetick comming in with his speech: There is (quoth he) some reason and probability in the Delphians saying; but surely the opinion of *Plato* is absurd, in that unfon to those divine and eternal revolutions of the heavens, he hath assigned instead of Muses the Syrens which are Demons, or powers not very kind and good, nor beneficiall; either leaving out as be doth the Muses altogether, or else calling them by the names of the Destinies, and saying they be the daughters of Necessity: for surely Necessity is a rude thing and violent; whereas *Persephone* is gentle and gracious: by the meanes of Muses amiable, taming what it will, and in my mind,

\* Plain song  
or natural  
musick.  
\* Full of de-  
lights, qua-  
vers, and fi-  
ne and wis-  
dom.  
\* Melodious  
and standing  
much of phi-  
losophy con-  
fusing and accor-



*Defesteth more the duty,  
And force of hard necessity.*

than doth that grace and *Venus* of *Empedocles*. That is true indeed (quoth *Ammonius*) it abhorreth that violent and involuntary cause which is in our selves, enforcing us to do against our wils: but the necessity which is among the gods is nothing intolerable, nor violent, nor hard to be obeyed or perished, but to the wicked, no more than the Law of a City, that unto good men is the best thing that is, and whith they cannot pervert or transgress: not because it is impossible for them to do so, but for that they are not willing to change the same. Moreover, as touching those Syrenes \* of *Hommer*, there is no reason that the fable of them should affright us: for (after an enigmatical and covert sort) even he signifieth very well unto us, that the power of their song and musick is neither inhumane, nor pernicious of mortal; but such as imprinteth in the soules which depart from hence thither, as also to such as wander in that other world after death, a vehement affection to divine and celestiall things, together with a certaine forgetfulness of those that be mortal and earthly, detaining and enchanting them as it were with a pleasure that they give unto them: in such sort as by reason of the joy which they receive from them, they follow after and tume about with them: now of this harmony there is a little echo or obscure resonance commeth hither unto us, by the meanes of certaine discourses, which callethe unto our soule, and putteth into her mind such things as then and there are, whereof the greatest part is enclosed and stopp'd up with the obstructions of the flesh, and passions that are not sincere: howbeit, our soule, by reason of the generosity wherewith it is endued, doth understand, yea, and remember the same, being ravished with so vehement an affection thereof, that the passion may be compared properly unto most ardent and furious fits of love, whilst she still affecteth and desireth to enjoy, but is not able for all that to loosen and free her selfe from the body: howbeit, I do not accord and hold with him altogether in these matters: but it seemeth unto me, that *Plato* as he hath somewhat strangely in this place, called the axes and poles of the world and heavens, by the names of spindles, rocks, and distaves, yea, and rearm'd the stars, wherewith, to the Muses also he hath given an extraordinary denomination of Syrenes, as if they related, and compounded unto the foules and ghosts beneath, divine and celestiall things: like as *Myfles* in *Sophocles* saith, that the Syrenes were come:

*The daughters who of Phorcis were,  
That doth of hell the laws declare.*

As for the Muses they be assigned unto the eight heavenly spheares: and one hath for her portion the place and region next to the earth: those then which have the preferrences and charges of the revolution of those eight spheares, do keep, preserve, and maintain the harmony and consonance, as well between the wandering planets and fixed stars, as also of themselves one to another: and that one which hath the superintendence of that space between the moone and the earth, and converteth with mortal and temporall things, bringeth in and insulseth among them, by the meanes of her speech and song (so far forth as they be capable by nature and apt to receive the same) the perswasive faculty of the Graces, of musickall measures and harmony: which faculty is very cooperative with civill policy and humane sociery, in dulcing and appeasing that which is turbulent, extravagant and wandering in us, reducing it gently into the right way, from blind-paths and errors, and therewith it: but according to *Pindarus*,

*Whom Jupiter from heaven above  
Vouchsafeth nathis gracious loves,  
Amaz'd they be and sit for feare  
When they the voice of Muses heare.*

Wherto when *Ammonius* had given acclamation, alluding (as his manner was) unto the verse of *Xenophanes* in this wise:

*These things do carry good credence  
And to the truth have reverence.*

and withall moved us every one to opine and deliver his advice: I my selfe after some little pause and silence, began thus to say: That as *Plato* himselfe by the etymology of names (as it were by traces) thought to find out the properties and powers of the gods: even so let us likewise place in heaven and over celestiall things, one of the Muses, which seemeth of the heaven to be called *Heania*. Certes, it standeth to great reason, that these heavenly bodies require not much variety of government, for that they have but one simple cause, which is nature: but whereas there be many errors, many enormities and trespasses, thither we must transfer those eight one for to correct one sort of faults and disorders, and another for to amend and reforme another: and for that of our life, one part is bestow'd in serious and grave affaires, and another in sport and game; and throughout the whole course thereof it hath need of a moderate temperature and muscull consent: that which in us is grave and serious shall be ruled and conducted by *Calliope*, *Clio*, and *Thalia*, being our guides in the skill and speculation as touching gods and goddesses: as for the other Muses, their office and charge is to support and hold up that which is inclined and prone to pleasure, play, and disport: not to suffer it through weakness and imbecility to run headlong into loosenesse and bestiality: but to keep in repress, and hold it in good and decent order with dancing, singing, and playing, such as hath their measures, and is tempered with harmony, reason, and proportion: For mine own part, considering that *Plato* admitteth and setteth down in every one two principles and causes of all our actions:

actions: the one inbred and natural; to wit, a desire and inclination to pleasures: the other coming from without forth; to wit, an opinion which covereth the belt; in somuch, as the one he calleth sometimes, Reason, and the other, Passion; and seeing that either of these againe admitteth distinct differences; I see certainly, that both of them require a great government; and in very truth, an heavenly and divine conduct: and first as touching Reason, one part thereof is civil and roiall, namely, that which medleth in politike government, and matters of State: over which is placed, as *Hesiodus* saith, *Calliope*: *Clio* is allotted for her part principally, to advance, collaud, and encourage ambition or desire of honour: *Polymneia* ruleth and preserveth the vertue memorative, and the desire of knowledge and learning, which is in the soule: and hereupon it is, that the Sicyonians of those three Muses which they honour, call one, *Polymathia*; and unto *Euterpe*, who attributeth not the skill and speculation of truth in nature; as acknowledging no delights and recreations more pure, beautiful, and honest than it. To come now unto appetites and affections, that which concerneth eating and drinking, *Thalia* maketh civil, sociable and honest: whereas, otherwise it would be inhumane, beastly, and disordered; which is the reason that we say; those men do *beard* us, when they meet together friendly and merrily to make good cheere: but in no wise such as become drunke, and grow to excess and riotous midsmeanours. As for the accords of love and *Venus*, *Erato* is she that performeth them with her preface; periwading that the action thereof should respect reason and the opportunity of time, cutting off wantonnesse, and quenching the furious heat of lust and pleasure, making it for to determine and rest in faithful love and amity, and not to end in dissolute and lascivious intemperance. There remaineth yet the pleasure of hearing and seeing, whether the same belong to reason or to passion: or rather appertaine in common to both: the other two Muses, to wit, *Melpomene* and *Terpsichore*, are agents over them, which they compoase and order in such sort, that as the one becommeth an honest delight, and not an enchantment of the eares; so the other contenteth the eyes, as much, though it do not bewitch and corrupt the same.

*The whole Chapter following is so defective and faulty in the Originall, that we know not by any conjecture what it meanes to supply or reforme it.*

### THE FIFTEENTH QUESTION.

*That in dancing there be three parts, Motions, Gesture, and Show: what every of them is? also, what community there is between the art of Poetry and the best of dancing.*

After this, there was proposed a tart or cake called *Pyramus*, as the prize of victory for children, who dance best: and for umpires and judges were chosen *Menippus* the schoole-master, and *Lamprias* my brother: for before-time he had danced the waltie moriske very prettily, and was held in the dancing schooles and places of exercise, to have the best grace in gesticulation with his hands when he danced, above all other boies whatsoever: now when as many had danced and shewed therein more affection than elegancy, and more heart than art: some there were of the company, who having chosen two more expert than the rest, and who affected greatly to obliete the rules of art. prayed them to dance *παρὰ παρὰ*, as one would say, motion after motion, or one hour after another. Hereupon *Thralibulus* the son of *Ammonius*, demanded what this tearme *παρὰ*, that is to say, motion, signified in this place, which ministred matter, and gave occasion unto *Ammonius* to discourse more at large concerning the parts of dancing: for he said, That there were three parts thereof, namely, *πορεία*, *σχῆμα*, and *δῆσις*: For that (quoth he) a dance is compounded of motions, gestures, or countenances, like as songs standeth upon founds, and times, or rests between; for pauses and staies are the ends of motions herein: and verily those motions, professors call *πορεία*; but the dispositions and habitudes, *σχῆμα*, unto which the motions do tend, and wherein they rest and end: namely, when in the forme and gesture of their body, they represent *Apollo* or *Pan*, or such the like raging *Bacchos*, as a man at the first sight may acknowledge their part expressly remembred: as for the third part, called *δῆσις*, it is not a feigned imitation, but a lively and true demonstration of the subject matters in the dance: forlike as the Poets when they would plainly and barely name *Achilles*, *Ulysses*, the Earth, or Heaven, use their proper tearmes to expresse them, and even such as the vulgar know them by: but for the greater emphasis and representation as it were to the likey that which they meane to deliver, they use otherwiles words of their own making, and borrowed Metaphors; as namely, when they would signifie the noise of running water, they are wont to say, they do *καταβύλλω*, and *καταβύλλω*: and for to expresse the flight of arrows, they tell us that they flie *καταβύλλω* *χρῆσται* *δῆσις*, that is to say:

*With hot desire, and haste they make,  
Of flesh and blood their flite to take.*

Also to shew a doubtful battell, wherein it is hard to say whether part shall have the better hand; they come with these tearmes:

*ἰσας ὁπλῶν κατὰ ἑξῆς.  
The fight two heads aloft in view,  
Confronting equally did them.*

Likewise

Likewise to expresse that which they would say, they devise and coine many compositions of names in their verses, as for example: *Euripides* speaking of *Perseus*:

*Then Gorgon-slayer mounting his,  
In aire of Jupiter did sit.*

Sensibly *Pindarus* writing of the horse:

*What time as he with courage stout,  
Sparkles his body gave so strong,  
To run a race from bout to bout,  
Upon Alpheus banks along.*

Yea, and *Homer* describing a course at horse-running:

*The chariots with brasse and tin,  
Bedight upon the plaine,  
And drawn by sure swift-footed steeds,  
Were seen to run amaine.*

Even so it is in dancing, for that which they call *gymnastike*, that is to say, gesture, representeth the forme and the visage: *gymnastike*, that is to say, the motion, expresth emphatically some affection, action, or power of the mind; but by the shewes, which they call *choreia*, properly and promptly, the very things themselves: as for example, the earth, the heaven, the assistants or standers by; which being done in order, number, and measure, resemble those proper names which otherwhiles in Poetry are used, running roundly with the ornaments of their attributes and epithets in this manner:

*Themis modest, venerable:  
Uenus black-eyed, amiable:  
Queen Juno with her gold-crown honour'd,  
Fairst Dione and well favour'd.*

*Alto,  
From Hellen came renowned Kings,*

*Of laws protectors grave,*

*Sir Dorus, Xanthus, Æolus,*

*Who joyed in horses brave.*

for otherwise if Poets should not thus do, their stile would be very base, and their verses stilted naught, and without all grace, as if one should pen them in this sort simply without all epithets:

*From an descended Hercules,  
And from another Iphitus,  
This Ladies sire, her husband she,  
And son, were Kings all in their course:  
Her brethren also were the like,  
And so were her progenitors,  
Who list to know what dame she was  
Greece cleaped her Olympias.*

For the like faults and errors are committed at dancing in the foresaid shewes, if they carry not a probable likelihood and a grace with them, and the same accompanied with decency and an unaffected simplicity: in one word, we mayfitly transfer the Apophthegme of *Simonides*, from painting unto dancing, and say thus, That a dance is a mute poeie, and poeie a speaking dance; inasmuch (quoth he) as neither painting dependeth upon poeie, nor poeie of painting, as having no need at all one of the other: whereas between dancing and poetry all things are common, are participating one with another in every thing, and representing, both of them one and the same thing, especially in those songs to dance, which they call *Hyporchemata*, wherein is performed the most effectual and lively resemblance of the one, by gesture, and of the other, by words and names: so that poems seem aptly to be compared unto the lines and poudling in a picture, by which the formes of viages are drawn: inasmuch, as he who hath proceeded well in those *Hyporchemata*, and is become excellent in that feat, sheweth plainly, that these two arts necessarily have need the one of the other: for he who chanteth out this song,

*ἀπλάσας ἵππον ἡνὶα ἀμυκλαῖαν ἄγαντι, &c.  
That is to say:*

*I play the horse of Thefally,  
Or else the fount of Amycly.*

following and pursuing with his foot the measures, and expresth the winding and turning found of the voice; or this other song,

*ὦ ὦ ἀνὰ δόριον, ἀνὰ δόριον πείλεις στίχους  
δανείαν κερύειν ἐνὶ ἡμῶν ἰσχυρῶν  
τὰς δ' ἐν ἀνέμῳ ἐρέουσιν ἔργον ἑκάστα ὑπομονὴν &c.*

declareth thereby, that poems do in manner provoke the disposition and gesture of dancing, drawing with the found of verses, as it were with certain cords, both hands and feet, or the whole body rather, stretching out every member thereof in such sort, as when they be pronounced and chanted forth, there is not one of them that can rest in quiet: by occasion whereof, the party who singeth such songs, is not abashed to praise himselfe no lesse for his sufficiency in the art of dancing, than

\* ἀκνυται  
τον.

\* θεμετα-  
σθλαιοι.  
\* ἐκ-  
χέσθαι.

an place  
is corrupt in  
the original,  
that ought to  
be restored &  
think it boots  
less to go on  
to interpret it.

his accomplished skill in Poetrie: and as he were wrapt with some divine instinct, breaketh out into this note:

*How old forever that I be,  
I can yet foot it merrily.*

And this manner of dancing to the measures they call, the Candiot dance; howbeit, now adays there is nothing so ill taught, so badly practised, and so much depraved and corrupted as is this feat of dancing: and therefore that is befallen unto it, which *Ilycus* the Poet teasing, wrote of himselfe in these verses:

*For honour lost among the gods, I dread,  
With men alone I shall be humbled.*

For having associated her selfe to (I wot not what) triviall and vulgar Poetrie, and being fallen from that which was ancient, divine, and heavenly, she leaveth (way only in foolish and amazed theaters, where like a tyrannesse she hath in subjection a small deale of Musick (God woe) good enough to please and content the vulgar sort; but among wise men and divine indeed, it hath (to say truth) lost all honour and reputation.

These were in manner the last philosophicall discourses (O *Sossius Senecio*) which were held at that time in good *Aminion* his house, during the festival solemnity of the Mules.

## The Opinions of Philosophers.

### The Summary.

INASMUCH as in the Preface to the second tome, containing the Miscellanies or mixt works of *Plutarch*, I spake of these gatherings out of naturall Philosophy, and of the fruit that may be reaped thereout, by discerning true opinions from false; we will not rehearse againe here that which was delivered in that place; but propound to the eyes of the Reader the bare titles of every Chapter thoroughout these five books, whiche the Author hath joyned together, for to shew the Opinions of the ancient Philosophers, according to the opinion of the principall points of naturall Philosophy.

### Chapters of the first Book.

- |  |                                   |
|--|-----------------------------------|
| 1. What is Nature.   | 15. Of Colours.                   |
| 2. What difference there is between a principle, and an element.         | 16. Of the section of bodies.     |
| 3. Touching Principles, what they be.                                    | 17. Of Mixture and Temperatures.  |
| 4. How the world was compoed.  | 18. Of Voidnesse.                 |
| 5. Whether All be One.   | 19. Of Place.                     |
| 6. How it cometh that men have a notion of God.                          | 20. Of Space.                     |
| 7. What is God.  | 21. Of Time.                      |
| 8. Of heavenly intelligences, or powers called Demons, and of Demi-gods. | 22. Of the essence of Time.       |
| 9. Of the first Matter.  | 23. Of Motion.                    |
| 10. Of the Forme called Idea.  | 24. Of Generation and Corruption. |
| 11. Of senses.   | 25. Of Necessity.                 |
| 12. Of Bodies.   | 26. Of the essence of Necessity.  |
| 13. Of the least indivisible bodies or Atomes.                           | 27. Of Destiny.                   |
| 14. Of Figures.  | 28. Of the substance of Destiny.  |
|  | 29. Of Fortune.                   |
|  | 30. Of Nature.                    |

### Chapters of the second Book.

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1. Of the World.   | 11. Of Heaven, and what is the substance thereof.                    |
| 2. Of the figure of the World.   | 12. The division of Heaven, and how many circles it is divided into. |
| 3. Whether the World be endued with soule, and governed by providence. | 13. What is the substance of the Stars, and how they be compoed.     |
| 4. Whether the World be incorruptible.                                 | 14. The figure of the Stars.   |
| 5. Whether the World is nourished.                                     | 15. The order and situation of the Stars.                            |
| 6. With what Element God began to frame the World.                     | 16. The Lution or motions of the Stars.                              |
| 7. The order of the Worlds Fabrick.                                    | 17. Whence the Stars have their light.                               |
| 8. For what cause the World bendeth or copeth.                         | 18. Of the Stars called Diocuris, that is to say, Cator and Pollux.  |
| 9. Whether there be any voidnesse without the World.                   | 19. The significance of Stars: how cometh winter and summer.         |
| 10. Which is the right side of the World, and which is the left.       | 20. The substance of the Sun.  |

22. The greatness of the Sun.
22. The forme of the Sun.
23. The solstices or Sun-steds, or the conversions of the Sun.
24. The eclipse of the Sun.
25. The substance of the Moon.
26. The bignesse of the Moon.
27. The forme of the Moon.
28. The illumination of the Moon.
29. The eclipse of the Moon.
30. The face or apparence of the Moon; and why she seemeth to waxe.
31. The distance that is between Sun and Moon.
32. Of the Year; and how much is the great year; and the revolution of each planet.

## Chapters of the third Book.

1. Of the circle Galaxia, or the milk way.
2. Of Comets or blasing stars of flames that seem to fall from the sky, as also of the fire-lights, or meteors called beames.
3. Of thunder, lightning, flashings, of the burning winds, called Preterites, and Typhons.
4. Of Clouds, Rain, Snow, and Haile.
5. Of the Rainbow.
6. Of frosts or strikes in the skye.
7. Of Winds.
8. Of Winter and Summer.
9. Of the Earth: what is the substance thereof; and how big it is.
10. The forme of the Earth.
11. The posture and situation of the Earth.
12. The bending of the Earth.
13. The Motion of the Earth.
14. The division of the Earth.
15. The Zones and Climates of the Earth, how many and how great they be.
16. Of Earthquakes.
17. Of the Sea: how it is conerct; and how it comes to be bitter.
18. How come the Tides, that is to say, the ebbing and flowing of the sea.
19. Of the circle called Halo.

## Chapters of the fourth Book.

1. Of the rising of Nilus.
2. Of the Soule.
3. Whether the soule be corporall; and what is her substance.
4. The parts of the Soule.
5. Which is the Mistress or principall part of the Soule, and wherein it doth consist.
6. Of the Soules motion.
7. Of the Soules immortality.
8. Of the Senses and sensible things.
9. Whether the Senses and Imaginations be true.
10. How many Senses there be.
11. How sense and notion is performed, as also how reason is ingendred according to disposition.
12. What difference there is between imagination, imaginabile, and imagined.
13. Of Sight, and how we do see.
14. Of the reflexions or resemblances in Mirrors.
15. Whether Darknesse be visible.
16. Of Hearing.
17. Of Smelling.
18. Of Tasting.
19. Of the Voice.
20. Whether the Voice be incorporall: and how cometh the resonance called Echo.
21. How it is that the soule hath sense; and what is the principall and predominant part thereof.
22. Of respiration.
23. Of the Passions of the Body: and whether the Soule have a fellow-feeling with it of paine.

## Chapters of the fifth Book.

1. Of divination or fore-knowledge of future things.
2. How dreames come.
3. What is the substance of naturall seed.
4. Whether naturall seed be a body.
5. Whether females, as well as males, do yeld naturall seed.
6. After what manner Conceptions are.
7. How males and females are ingendred.
8. How Monsters are ingendred.
9. What is the reason, that a woman accompanying oftentimes carnally with a man doth not conceive.
10. How twins, both two and three at once, be occasioned.
11. How cometh the resemblance of parents and progenitors in children.
12. What is the cause that infants be like to some other, and not to the parents.
13. How women prove barren, and men unable to ingender.
14. What is the reason that mules be barren.
15. Whether the fruit within the wombe is to be accounted a living creature or no.
16. How such fruits be nourished within the wombe.
17. What part is first accomplished in the wombe.
18. How it cometh to passe, that Infants borne at seven months end do live, and are lively.
19. Of the generation of living creatures: how they be ingendred, and whether they be corruptible.
20. How many kinds there be of living creatures; whether they all have sense and use of reason.
21. In what time living creatures receive forme within the mothers womb.
22. Of what elements is every generall part in us composed.
23. How cometh sleep and death; whether it is of soule or body.
24. When and how a man becometh to come unto his perfection.

25. Of the

25. Whether it is soule or body that either sleepeeth or dieth.
26. How Plants come to grow, and whether they be living creatures.
27. Of nourishment and growth.
28. From whence proceed appetites, lusts, and pleasures in living creatures.
29. How the fever is ingendred; and whether it be an necessary or symptome to another disease.
30. Of health, sicknesse, and old age.

## The First Book of Philosophers Opinions.

## The Proem.

Being minded to write of naturall Philosophy, we thinke it necessary in the first place, and before all things else to set down the whole disposition of Philosophy, by way of division: to the end that we may know which is naturall, and what part it is of the whole. Now the Stoicks say, that sapience or wisdom is the science of all things, as well divine as humane, and that Philosophy is the profession and exercise of the art expedient thereto, which is the only supreme and soveraigne vertue; and the same divided into three most generall verities: to wit, Naturall, Morall, and Verball: by reason whereof Philosophy also admitteth a threefold distribution; to wit, into Naturall Morall, Rationall, or Verball: the Naturall part is that, when as we enquire and dispute of the world and the things contained therein: Morall, is occupied in intreating of the good and ill that concerneth mans life: Rationall or Verball, handleth that which pertaineth unto the discourse of reason and to speech, which also is named Logick or Dialectique, that is to say, Disputative. But Aristotle and Theophrastus, with the Peripateticks, in manner all, divide Philosophy in this manner: namely, into Contemplative and Active: For necessary it is (say they) that a man (to attaine unto perfection) should be a spectator of all things that are, and an actor of such things as are seemly and decent, and may the better be understood by these examples: The question is demanded, whether the Sun be a living creature, according as it seemeth to the sight to be, or no? He that searcheth and enquireth into the truth of this question, is altogether thereto, or no? He that searcheth no farther than the contemplation of that which is; semblably, in speculative, for he seeketh no farther than the contemplation of that which is; semblably, if the demand be made, whether the World is infinite? or if there be any thing without the periphery of the World? for all these questions be mere contemplative. But on the other side moved may be, How a man ought to live? How he should governe his children? How he is to beare rule and office of State? And lastly, in what manner laws are to be ordained and made? For all these are fought into, in regard of action, and a man conversant therein, is altogether active and practive.

CHAP. I.  
What is Nature?

Since then, our intent and purpose is to consider and treat of naturall Philosophy, I thinke it needful to shew first, what is Nature: for absurd it were to enterprize a discourse of naturall things, and meane-while to be ignorant of Nature and the power thereof. Nature then (according to the opinion of Aristotle) is the beginning of motion and rest, in that thing wherein it is properly and principally, not by accident: for all things to be seen (which are done neither by fortune nor by necessity) are not divine, nor have any such efficient cause) are called Naturall, as having a proper and peculiar nature of their own; as the Earth, Fire, Water, Aire, Plants, and living Creatures. Moreover, those other things which we do see ordinarily engendered, as Raine, Haile, Lightning, Preterites, Winds, and such like; for all these have a certaine beginning; and every one of them was not for ever, and from all eternitie but did proceed from some original: likewise living Creatures and Plants have a beginning of their motion; and this first principle is Nature: the beginning not of motion only, but also of rest and quiet; for whosoever hath had a beginning of motion, the same also may have an end: and for this cause Nature is the beginning as well of rest as of moving.

## CHAP. II.

What difference there is between a principle and an element.

Aristotle and Plato are of opinion, that there is a difference between a Principle and an Element; but Thales Milesius thinketh they be both one: howbeit, there is a great difference between the one and the other; for elements be compounded; whereas we hold that the first principles neither be compounded, nor are any compleat substance: and verily, Earth, Water, Aire, and Fire, were these Elements; but Principles we call other Natures in this respect, that there is nothing preceeding or before them, whereof they are ingendred: for otherwise, if they were not the first they should have an end: and for this cause Nature is to be so called, whereof they be ingendred. Now certain things

things there are precedent, whereof earth and water, &c. be composed; to wit, the first matter, without all forme and shape: as also the first forme it selfe, which we call *Entelechia*; and thirdly, Privation. *Thales* therefore is in error, when he saith, that water was both the Element and Principle or first beginning of all things.

## CHAP. III.

*Of principles or first beginnings, what they be.*

**T**ales the Milesian affirmed, that Water was the first principle of the whole World: and this man seemeth to have been the first author of Philosophy: and of him took the Ionique sect of Philosophers their name (for many families there were successively of Philosophers) who having studied Philosophy in *Egypt* went to *Miletum*, when he was first taught in years, where he maintained this position: That, as all things were made of Water; so all things were to be resolved againe into Water. The reasons of this conjecture of his were these: first, because naturall seed is the principle and beginning of all living creatures, and that is of a moist substance; therefore probable it is, that all other things likewise have humidity for their principle: secondly, for that all sorts of plants be nourished by moisture, which if they want they wither and fade away: thirdly, considering that fire or the sun it selfe, and the stars is nourished and maintained by vapours proceeding from the waters, the whole world also by consequence consisteth of the same: which is the reason, that *Homer* supposing all things to be engendered of water saith thus:

*The ocean sea from whence each thing  
Engendered is, and hath beginning.*

But *Anaximander* the Milesian holdeth: that Infinity is the principle of all: for every thing proceedeth from it, and resolvethe into it againe: and therefore there be engendered infinite worlds, and those vanish againe into that whereof they be engendered: and why is there this Infinity? Because (quoth he) there should never faile any generation, but still have subsistence, howbeit, even he also erreth herein; for that he declareth not what is this Infinity whereof he speaketh, whether it be air, water, or any other body? he saith likewise in this, that he putteth down a subject matter, but overthroweth the efficient cause: for this Infinity whereof he talketh is nothing else but matter; and matter cannot attaine to perfection, nor come into act; unlesse there be some moving and efficient cause. *Anaximenes* the Milesian maintaineth that air is the principle of the world: for that all things come of it, and returne unto it: Likewise (quoth he) our soule which is aire keepeth us alive; even so spirit and aire maintain the Being of the whole world: for spirit and aire be two words signifying both one thing. But this Philosopher is out of the way as well as the rest, in that he thinketh that living creatures be composed of a simple spirit, or uniforme aire: and impossible it is that there should be but one principle of all things, to wit, matter; but there ought withall to be supposed an efficient cause: for it is not enough to be provided of silver or gold, for to make a vessel or piece of plate, if there come not unto it the efficient cause, to wit, the gold-smith: semblably we are to say of brasse, wood, and all other sorts of matter.

*Anaxagoras* the Clazomenian is persuaded, and so teacheth: That the principles of the world, and all that therein is are small like parcels: which he termeth *Homoemerics*; for he thought it altogether absurd and impossible, that any thing should be made of that which is not; or be dissolved into that which hath no being: for howsoever we take our nourishment simple and unmixt; as for example, eate bread of corne, and drinke water, yet with this nutriment are nourished haire, veins, arteries, sinewes, bones, and other parts of the body: which being so, Confesse we must (quoth he) likewise, that in this food which we receive are all things which have their Being: and that all things do grow and encrease of that which hath Being: so that in this nutriment be those parcels which breed blood, sinewes, bones, and other parts of our body, which may be comprehended by discourse of reason: for we are not to reduce all unto the outward sense, to shew and prove that bread and water effect these things: but it may suffice, that in them these parts are conceived by reason: Inasmuch therefore as in nourishment there be parcels semblable unto that which they breed in that regard he called them *Homoemerics*, affirming them to be the principles of all things; and even so he would have these semblable parcels to be the matter of all things; and for efficient cause, he setteth down a mind or understanding that ordereth and disposeth all. And thus beginning he go to worke, and reasoneth in this wise. All things at first were consumed and huddled together pell-mell; but that mind or understanding doth sever, dispose, and set them in order: in this one thing yet he hath done well, and is to be commended, that unto the matter he hath adjoynd a workman.

*Anaxagoras* an Athenian the son of *Apolodorus*, affirmeth, that the principle of all things was the infinite aire, together with the condensation, and rarefaction thereof: of which the one is fire, and the other water: and these Philosophers, following by continuall succession one upon another after *Thales*, made that sect which is called *Ionique*. But from another head. *Pythagoras* the son of *Marsichus*, and a Samian borne, the first author of the name of Philosophy; held that the principle of all things were Numbers, and their symmetries, that is to say the proportions that they have in their correspondency one unto another: which he calleth otherwise Harmonies: and those elements that be composed of them both, are termed by him Geometrical: furthermore, he reckoneth among

among Principles, Unity, and twaine indefinite: of which, the one tendeth and hasteneth to an efficient and speciall cause, to wit, a Mind, and the same is God; the other unto a passive and materiall cause, namely the visible world: Moreover, he thought that the Denarii or ten, was the absolute nature and perfection of numbers; for that all men as well Greeks as Barbarians, count untill Ten, and when they be thither come, they returne back againe unto unity: over and besides he said, That all the power of Ten consisted within foure, and in a quaternary, the reason is this: that if a man begin at one, and reckon on still, numbring upright unto foure, he shall make up ten: surpasse he once the quaternary, he is gone beyond the denarie; as for example, one and two make three, three thereto arise to six, put thereto foure, and you have ten: inasmuch as number collected by unities resteth in ten; but the force and puissance thereof lieth in foure. The *Pythagoreans* therefore were wont to sweare by the quaternary or number of foure, which they held to be the greatest oath that they could take, as appeareth by this Distinction:

*I sweare by this quaternary,  
That yields our soules fountaine,  
Which of natures eternity  
Doth seed and root containe.*

And our soule (as he saith) doth consist of the quaternary number: for there is in it understanding, science, opinion, and sense: from whence proceedeth all manner of art and knowledge, and whereupon we our selves are called reasonable: as for understanding, it is that unity; for that it conceiveth and knoweth not but by unity; as for example, There being many men, they are not every one in particular subject to our senses, but incomprehensible and infinite: many in our understanding we conceive and comprehend this one man alone. unto whom none is like: and in our cogitation we consider one man only; but if he be considered particularly apart, they are infinite: for all these genders and kinds are in unity; and therefore when the question is asked of a particular man, what he is, we yeeld a generall definition, and say, He is a reasonable creature, apt to discourse by reason; and so likewise of this or that horse, we must answer. That he is a living creature, having a property to neigh. Thus you see how understanding is unity, whereby we understand these things: but the binary or number of two is by good right an indefinite science: for all demonstration and proofe of any science, yea, and moreover, all manner of syllogisme or argumentation, doth collect a conclusion which is doubtfull, or certaine premised propositions, confessed as true: whereby it sheweth easily another thing, whereof the comprehension is science; and so it appeareth, that science by a likelihood is the binary number: but opinion by good reason may be said, the ternary number by comprehension: for that opinion is of many, and the ternary number implieth a plurality or multitude, as we may see by the Poet when he saith:

*Thrice happy men  
Those Greeks were then.*

And for this cause *Pythagoras* made no reckoning of three, whose sect bare the name of *Italique*, for that he (not able to endure the tyrannicall dominion of *Polycrates*) departed from *Samos*, his native Country, and went to keep his Schoole in *Italy*.

*Heraclitus* and *Hippasus* the Metapontine, were of opinion, that Fire was the principle and beginning of all: for of fire, say they, all things are made, and in fire they shall have an end: and when it is extinct and quenched, the universall world is in this manner engendered and framed: for first and foremost the grossest part thereof being condensed and thrust together into it selfe, becometh earth, and afterwards, when the same earth is resolved by fire, it turneth to be water; which when it doth evaporate, is converted into aire: againe, the whole world, and all the bodies therein contained, shall be one day consumed by fire in that generall conflagration and burning of all: whereby he concluded, that fire is the beginning of all things, as that whereof all was made, and the end likewise, for that all things are resolved into it.

*Epicurus* the Athenian, son of *Neacles*, following the Philosophy of *Democritus*, saith, That the principles of all things be certaine Atomes, that is to say, little bodies indivisible, and by reason only perceptible, the same solid, admitting no vacuity, nor engendered, immortall, eternally, incomptible, such as neither can be broken, nor receive any forme of the parts, neyther be otherwise altered: These (quoth he) being perceptible and comprehended by reason, move notwithstanding inemptiness, and by emptiness: and as the same voidnesse is infinite, so the said bodies also be in number infinite: howbeit, these three qualities are incident unto them, figure, bignesse, and weight: for *Democritus* allowed them but twaine, to wit, bignesse, and figure, but *Epicurus* added unto them a third, namely, poise or ponderosity. For these bodies (quoth he) must, of necessity move by the permission of the weight: otherwise they could not possibly sit: the figures also of their bodies, (he said) were comprehensible and not infinite: and these were neither looked nor three-looked, he yet found in manner of a ring, for such formes are apt to breake: as for the Atomes themselves, they be impassible and infrangible, having certaine figures, no otherwise perceptible, but by reason; and such a body is called *atomos*, not in this regard, that it is the least of all, but for that it cannot be divided, as being impassible, and admitting no vacuity: and therefore he that nameth an Atome, saith as much, as infrangible, impassible, and without vacuity: now that there is such an indivisible body called *Atomos*, it is apparent, for that there be elements eternall, bodies void, and an unity.

*Empedocles* an Agrigentine, the son of *Meton*, saith, There be foure elements, Fire, Aire, Water, and Earth; also two principall faculties or powers, namely, accord, and discord, or amity and enmity, of which, the one hath puissance to unite, the other to dissolve: and these be his words:

*Four seeds and roots of all things that you see,  
Now listen first, and hearken what they be:  
Lord Jupiter with his ignorance,  
And Lady Junoes vital influence,  
Rich Pluto, and dame Neftis weeping ay,  
Who with her teares on seeds-foures weets away.*

By *Jupiter* he meaneth fiery heat, and ardent skie: by *Junno* giving life, the aire; by *Pluto*, the earth; by *Neftis*, and this humane fountaine of naturall seed, water.

*Socrates* the son of *Sophroniscus*, and *Plato* the son of *Ariston*, both Athenians, (for the opinions of them both, concerning the world and all things therein, be the same) have set down three principles, God, Matter, and Idea, that is to say, *Forme*: God is an universall Spirit or Mind: Matter is the first and principall subject of generation and corruption: *Idea*, an incorporeall substance, residing in the thoughts and cogitations of God; which God is the generall foule and intelligence of the world.

*Aristoteles* of *Stagira*, the son of *Nichomachus*, hath put down for Principles thesethree, to wit, a certaine forme called *Emtelechia*, Matter, and Privation: for elements, foure, and for a fifth Quiescence, the heavenly body which is immutable.

*Zeno*, the son of *Manfetus* a Citeian born, holdeth for two principles, God, and Matter: whereof the one is an active and efficient cause, and the other passive; and besides, foure elements,

### CHAP. IIII.

*How the World was framed.*

THIS world then became composed and formed in a round figure, bending and coping after this manner: those Atomes or indivisible bodies, having an accidentary and inconsiderate motion, stirring continually, and most strictly, happen many of them to encounter one another and meet together: in which regard they differ in figures and magnitudes: now when they are thus gathered and heaped up together in one, the greater sort of them, and such as weremost ponderous, descended altogether downward; as many of them as were small, round, even, smooth, and slippery, those being beaten upon by the encounter of these weighty bodies, were repulsed, driven back, and forced upward: but when that force which drave them aloft began to faile, and gave over once to send them up higher, not being able to fall downward againe; for that they were empeached, they were of necessity enforced to enter into those places which were able to receive them: to wit, such as were round about them: unto which a mighty number of bodies being wound together in an heape, and by means of the repercussion, entleraced one within another, they engendered and brought forth the heaven; and afterwards others of the same nature; yet of divers formes (as hath been said before) being likewise driven up aloft, accomplished the nature of Stars. Moreover, the multitude of those bodies yielding a vapour and exhalation, did beat forward and drive the aire; which by stirring and motion, being converted into wind, and comprising therewith the Stars, turned them about with it; and fo maintaines unto this day, that revolution which they have aloft. Of those bodies then, which settled below, was made the earth; and of such as mounted on high, the heaven, the fire, and the aire: but round about the earth, by occasion that there was much matter yet left, and the fire incalcraft and thickned by the forcible driving of the winds, and the breathing of the stars: all that part thereof which was more subtil, and of a thinner forme and consistence, gathered round together, and engendered the element of water, which being of a liquid and flowing nature, ran downward to hollow places lying low, which were able to receive and hold them: or else the water of it selfe where it staid and rested made concavities and hollow places underneath. Thus you see after what manner the principall parts of the world were first engendered and made,

### CHAP. V.

*Whether All be One.*

THE Stoick Philosophers held opinion that the world was one, which they called *mon*, That is to say, All, and the same of corporeall substance.

*Empedocles* affirmed, that the world indeed was one; but All and the world were not both one: for the world (quoth he) is but a small portion of All: and as for the rest beside, it is but an idle and dull matter.

*Plato* proveth his opinion, that the world is but one, by conjecture; and guesseth All to be one, by three presumptions or probable arguments. First, for that otherwise the world were not perfect and accomplished, if it comprised not All within it selfe. Secondly, it should not be like unto the patterne, if it were not one and uniforme. Thirdly, it would not be incorruptible, in case there were any thing without it. But we are to answer *Plato*, and say against him, that the world is perfect although it comprehend not all things: for man is perfect enough, and yet all things be not comprised

in him. Moreover, there be many examples drawn from one patterne, as we may see in flowers, houses, and pictures: and how is it perfect, if anything may turne without it? Finally, incorruptible neither is it, nor can it be, considering it had a beginning in a kind of Naivuty.

*Meiridorus* saith, That as it were an absurd and impertinent speech to say, that in a great field there grew but one earre of corne: so it were as strange a matter, that in this infinity there should be but one world: and that there be in number infinite, it appeareth by this, that there be causes infinite: for if the world were finite, and all the causes infinite whereof it is made it cannot chooie but of necessity there should be likewise infinite: for where all the causes be, there must needs the effects follow: now the causes of the world be either theie Atomes or the Elements.

### CHAP. VI.

*From whence it came that Men had the notion of God.*

THE Stoick Philosophers define the Essence of God in this wise; namely, To be a spirit full of intelligence, and of a fiery nature, having no forme, but transforming himselfe into whatsoever he will, and resembling all things. The notion and apprehension men had of him, first, by conceiving the beauty of those things which are object to their eyes: for no beautiful thing hath been made by chance, and at adventure, but composed and framed by some ingenious and operative Art: now the heaven is beautifull it appeareth by the forme, colour, and bignesse thereof, by the variety also of the stars disposed therein: moreover, the world is round in manner of a Ball, which figure of all other is principall and most perfect, for it alone resembleth all the parts: for being round it selfe, it hath the parts likewise round. For this cause *Plato* saith, That our mind and reason (the most divine part of man) is lodged and seated in the head, which cometh neere unto a round figure: as for the colour, it is faire and lovely: for it standeth upon the azure or blew, which being more dark than purple hath notwithstanding a bright and resplendent quality, in such sort, as by the exceeding strength of that light some hew, it cutteth and pierceth thorow to great an intervall and spaciousness of the aire, as it may be evidently seen in so mighty a distance: in regard also of the greatness thereof it is right beautifull; for, of all things that be of one and the same kind, that which is most inward and containeth the rest is ever fairest; as we may see in a living creature, and a tree: besides, to consummate and accomplish the beauty of the world there be the celestiall signes which appear unto our eye; for the oblique circle of the Zodiack is embossed with twelve divers and sundry images,

*Wherein the Crab is to be seen,  
The Lion after it,  
The Virgin, and two forked Clees,  
The Scorpion with his bit,  
The Archer and the Capricorne,  
Upon which horned Goat  
There follow with the Waterman  
Two Fishes all erect;  
And after these ensue in course  
The Ram and sturdy Bull,  
But last of all, the double Twins,  
Make up the dozen full.*

Besides an innumerable sort of other configurations of stars, which God hath made in the like arches and roundities of the world; whereupon *Empirides* wrote thus:

*The starry splendour of the skie,  
Which shew some do call,  
The wondrous work, of that most wise  
Creator, Lord of all.*

Thus then we apprehended hereby the notion of God; for the sun, the moor, and other stars, after they have performed the course of their revolutions under the earth come to rise againe all like in colour, equall in bignesse, and retaining alwaies till the same places and times: whereupon they who deliver unto us the manner of Gods service and worship declare the same unto us after three sorts; the first, naturall: the second, fabulous; and the third, civill; that is to say, testified by the statutes and ordinances of every City and State: the naturall is taught by Philosophers; the fabulous, by Poets; the civill and legal, by the Customes of each City: but all this doctrine and manner of teaching is divided into even sorts; the first consisteth in the celestiall bodies, appearing aloft in heaven; for men had an apprehension of God by stars that shew above, seeing how they are the causes of great symphony and accord, and that they keep a certaine constant order of day and night, of Winter and Summer, of rising and setting, yea, and among those living creatures and fruits which the earth beareth bringeth forth: whereupon, it hath been thought, that heaven was the father, and earth the mother to these; for that the pouring down of flowers and raine seemed instead of naturall seeds, and the earth as a mother, to conceive and bring the same forth. Men also, seeing and considering the stars alwaies *Διότρετες*, that is to say, holding on their course, and that they were the cause that we did *Διοτρετες*, that is to say, behold and contemplate: therefore they called the sunne

\* That is to say, *Libra*.

and moone, &c. *Zeus*, that is to say, gods, of the word *Zeus*, that is to say, to run; and *Demeter*, that is to say, to behold. Now they range the gods into a second and third degree; namely, by dividing them into those that be profitable, and such as are hurtfull, calling the good and profitable, *Jupiter*, *Juno*, *Mercury*, and *Ceres*; but the noisome and hurtfull, *Ares*, that is to say, malignant spirits, *Envy*, that is to say, furies; and *Ares*, that is to say, *Mars*, whom they detested as bad and violent, yea, and deviled means to appeale and qualifie their wrath. Moreover, the fourth and fifth place and degree, they attributed unto affaires, passions and affections; namely, love, *Venus*, lust, or desire: and as for affaires, they had hope, justice, good policy, and equity. In the sixth place, be those whom the Poets have fained; for *Hesiodus* being minded to set down a father for the gods begotten and engendred, deviled and brought in such progenitors as these,

*Toutis*, *Jus Ceus* and *Crius*,  
*Hyperion*, and *Japetus*.

whereupon, all this kind is named Fabulous. But in the seventh place, are those who were adorned with divine honours, in regard of the great benefits and good deeds done unto the common life of mankind, although they were begotten and borne after the manner of men; and such were *Hercules*, *Castor*, *Pollux*, and *Bacchus*; and these, they said, had an humane forme: for that as the most noble and excellent nature of all, is that of gods; so of living creatures, the most beautiful is man, adorned with sundry virtues above the rest, and simply the best, considering the constitution of his mind and soule: they thought it therefore meet and reasonable, that those who had done best, and performed most noble acts, resembled that which was the most beautiful and excellent of all other.

#### CHAP. VII. What is God.

Some of the Philosophers, and namely, *Diagoras* of the Isle of *Melos*, *Theodoros* the Cyrenæan, and *Eschymus* of *Tegæ*, held resolutely, that there were no gods. And verily, as touching *Eschymus*, the Poet *Callimachus* of *Cyrene*, writeth covertly in Iambique verses, after this manner:

*All in a troupe, into that Chappell go,  
Without the walls, the City not far fro;  
Whereas sometime that old vain-glorious asse,  
When as he had the image cast in brass,  
Of Jupiter, proceeded for to write  
Those wicked books, which shame was to indite.*

And what books were they? even those, wherein he discomfited that there were no gods at all. And *Enripides* the tragedian Poet, although he durst not discover and set abroad in open termes the same, for feare of that high Court, and Councill of *Areopagus*, yet he signified as much, in this manner: for he brought in *Sisypheus* the principall author of this opinion, and afterwards, favourieth even that sentence of his, himselfe: for thus he saith:

*The time was when the life of man was rude,  
And as wild be-asts, with reason not endued,  
Disordinate, when wrong was done alway,  
As might and force in each one bare the sway.*

But afterwards, these enormities were laid away, and put down, by the bringing in of Laws: howbeit, for that the Law was able to repress injuries and wicked deeds, which were notorious and evidently seen, and yet many men notwithstanding offended and sinned secretly; then some wife man there was, who considered and thought with himselfe, that needfull it was alwaies to blindfold the truth with some deviled and forged lies, yea, and to perfwade men, that

*A god there is, who lives immortally,  
Who heares, who sees, and knows all wondrously.*

For away (quoth he) with vain dreames and poeticall fictions, together with *Callimachus*, who saith:

*If God thou knowst not well, his power divine,  
All things can well performe, and bring to fine.*

For God is not able to effect all things: for say there be a God, let him make snow black, fire cold, him that sitteth or lieth to stand upright: or the contrary at one instant: and even *Plato* himselfe, that speaketh so big, when he saith: That God created and formed the world to his own patterne and likeness, melteth herein very strongly of some old \* dotards foolerie: to speake according to the Poets of the old comedy: For how could he look upon himselfe (quoth he) to frame the world according to his own similitude? or how hath he made it round in manner of a globe, being himselfe lower than a man?

*Anaxagoras* is of opinion that the first bodies in the beginning stood still and stirred not: but then the mind and understanding of God digested and aranged them in order, yea, and effected the generations of all things in the universall world.

*Plato* is of a contrary mind, saying, That those first bodies were not in repose but that they moved confusedly and without order: whereupon God (quoth he) knowing that order was much better than disorder and confusion, disposed all these things: but as well the one as the other have herein faulted in common; for that they imagined and deviled, that God was entangled and encumbered with

\* *Stenagos* -  
says,  
for to *Aristophanes*  
speakech in  
Nab.

with humane affaires; as also that he framed the world in regard of man, and for the care that he had of him: for surely (living (as he doth) happy and immortal, accomplished with all sorts of good things, and wholly exempt from all evils, as being altogether employed and given to prefer and maintain his own beatitude and immortality) he intermeddeth not in the affaires and occasions of men: for so he should be as unhappy and miserable as some artisan, mason, or labouring workman, bearing heavy burdens, travelling and sweating about the fabrick of the world. Again, this god of whom they speake of, necessity either was not before the creation of the world, at what time as those first bodies lay still unmoved, or stirred confusedly: or else if he were before, he either slept or watched: or did neither the one nor the other: but as the former of these we may not admit, for that God is eternall; so the latter we cannot confesse: for if God slept from all eternitie and time out of mind, he was no better than dead: for what is eternall sleepe other than death? but surely God is not subject to death: for the immortality of God, and this vicinity to death are much against himselfe and cannot stand both together: but if we say that God was awake all that while; either he was defective in his blessed state of felicity: or else he enjoyed the same compleat: but in the first condition God is not happy: for whatsoever wanteth ought of felicity cannot be happy: and verily in the second state he is not better: for if he were defective in nothing before, to what purpose burieth he himselfe in such vaine enterprises? moreover, if there be a God, and that by his prudent care mens affaires be governed, how cometh it to passe that wicked men prosper in the world, and find fortune their indulgent mother, but the good and honest suffer the contrary, and feeble hearts be a cruel step-dame? for King *Agamemnon*, as the Poet saith,

*A Prince right good and generous,  
A knight with allmost valourous.*

was by an adulterer and adulteresse surprised and murdered treacherously: and *Hercules* one of his neere kindred, after he had rid and purged the life of man from so many monsters that troubled his repose was poisoned by *Deianira*, and so by indirect means lost his life.

*Thales* saith, that God is the soule of the world.

*Anaximander* is of opinion, that the stars be celestiall gods.

*Democritus* is persuaded that God is a mind of a fiery nature, and the soule of the world.

*Pythagoras* affirmeth, that of the two first principles, Unity was God, and the soveraign good; which is the very nature of one, and is Understanding it selfe: but the indefinite binary, is the devil and evil, about which is the multitudine materiall, and the visible world.

*Socrates* and *Plato* do hold, that he is one and of a simple nature, begotten and borne of himselfe alone, truly good: All which termes and attributes tend unto a Mind: so that this Mind is God, some separate apart, that is to say, neither mingled with any matter, nor entangled and joyined with any thing passible whatsoever.

*Aristotle* supposeth, that this supreme God is an abstract forme seated upon the round sphere of the universall world, which is an heavenly and celestiall body, and therefore termed by him, the fifth body or quintessence: which celestiall body being divided into many spheres coherent by nature, but separate and distinct by reason and understanding, he thinketh each of these spheres to be a kind of animal, composed of body and soule, of which twaine, the body is celestiall, moving circularly: and the soule, reason, unmovable in it selfe, but the cause in effect of motion.

The Stoics reach after a more generall manner, and define God to be a working and artificiall fire proceeding methodically and in order to the generation of the world, which comprehendeth in it selfe all the permatrical proportions and reasons of seed; according to which every thing by fall destiny is produced and cometh forth: also to be a spirit piercing and spreading through the whole world: howbeit, changing his denomination throughout the whole matter, as it passeth by transition from the one to the other: Semblably that the world is God, the stars likewise and the tenth, yea, and the supreme mind above in heaven.

Finally, *Epicurus* conceiveth thus of the gods that they all have the forme of man and yet be perceptible only, by reason and cogitation, in regard of the subtile parts, and fine nature of their imaginative figures: he also affirmeth, that those other four natures in general be incorruptible, to wit, the atomes, vacuity, infinity, and resemblances, which also be called semblable parcels and elements.

#### CHAP. VIII.

Of Demons and demy-gods, otherwise named, Heroes.

To this Treatise of the gods, meet it is to adjoyne a discourse as touching the nature of Demons and Heroes.

*Thales*, *Pythagoras*, *Plato*, and the *Stoicks*, hold that these Demons be spirituall substances: and the Heroes soule separate from their bodies; of which sort, there be good and bad: the good Heroes are the good soules; and the bad Heroes the bad soules: but *Epicurus* admitteth none of all this.



CHAP. IX.  
Of Matter.

**M**atter is the first and principall subject exposed to generation, corruption, and other mutations.

The Sectaries of *Thales* and *Pythagoras*, together with the Stoicks, do say, that this Matter is variable, mutable, alterable, and fluxible, all wholly thorow the universal world.

The disciples and followers of *Democritus* are of opinion, that the first principles be impassible; to wit, the small indivisible body, Atomes, Voidnesse, and Incorporeall.

*Aristotle* and *Plato* do hold, that Matter is corporall, without forme, shape, figure, and quality, in the own nature and property; but when it hath received formes once it becometh (as it were) a nurse, a mold, patterne, and a mother. They who set down for this Matter, water, earth, fire, or aire, do not say, that now it is without forme; but that it is a very body: but such as affirme, that these Atomes and indivisible bodies be the said Matter, make it altogether formelesse.

CHAP. X.  
Of Idea.

**I**dea is a bodilesse substance, which of it selfe hath no subsistence, but giveth figure and forme unto shaplesse matters, and becometh the very cause that bringeth them into shew and evidence. *Socrates* and *Plato* suppose, that these *Ideas* be substances separate and distinct from matter, howbeit, subsisting in the thoughts and imaginations of God, that is to say, of Mind and Understanding.

*Aristotle* admitteth verily these formes and *Ideas*, howbeit, not separate from matter, as being the patters of all that which God hath made.

The Stoicks, such as were the scholars of *Zeno*, have delivered, that our thoughts and conceits were the *Ideas*.

CHAP. XI.  
Of Causes.

**A** Cause is that whereupon dependeth or followeth an effect, or by which any thing hapneth. *Plato* hath set down three kinds of Causes, and those are distinguished by these termes: By which, Of which, and For which; but he taketh the most principall to be that, By which; that is to say, the efficient cause, which is the mind or understanding.

*Pythagoras* and *Aristotle* do hold, that the principall Causes be incorporeall; and as for other Causes, either by participation or by accident, they are of a corporall substance: and so the world is a body.

But the Stoicks are of opinion, that all Causes are corporall, inasmuch as they be spirits.

CHAP. XII.  
Of Bodies.

**A** Body is measurable, and hath three dimensions, length, breadth, and depth, or thicknesse. Or thus: A Body is a masse that resteth, touching naturally of it selfe; or that which occupieth a place.

*Plato* saith, that a Body is neither heavy nor light of it selfe naturally, so long as it abideth in the own proper place; but being once in a strange place, it hath first an inclination, and upon it a motion and impulsion, either to weight or lightnesse.

*Aristotle* is of opinion, that earth simply is most ponderous, and fire lightest: that aire and water be of a middle or doubtfull nature between both, sometime heavy and otherwhiles light.

The Stoicks hold, that of the foure elements two be light, namely, Fire and Aire: other two be heavy; to wit, Water and Earth: for, light is that, which of the own nature, and not by any compulsion or intigation removeth from the proper middle where it is: heavy also is that which naturally tendeth to the said middle; but the middle it selfe, is in no wise heavy.

*Epicurus* saith, that Bodies are not comprehensible: that the first Bodies be simple; but all the compositions of them have their weight and ponderosity: also, that the Atomes do move, some plumb right down; others, at one side; and some againe mount aloft, and that by impulsion and concussion.

CHAP. XIII.  
Of the smallest Bodies.

**E***mpe*doctes is of opinion, that before the foure elements there were certaine small parcels or fragments, as one would say, elements before elements; and those were of semblable parts, and the same all round.

*Heraclitus*

*Heraclitus* commeth in with (I know not what) petty scrapings or shavings, exceeding small, and the same not divisible into parts.

CHAP. XIII.  
Of Figures.

**F**igure is the superficies, circumscription, and accomplished lineament of a body.

The *Pythagoreans* affirme, that the bodies of the foure elements be of a sphaerick or round figure; only the highest of them (to wit, fire) is pyramidal, or sharpe pointed above.

CHAP. XV.  
Of Colours.

**C**olour is the visible quality of a body.

The *Pythagoreans* called Colour, the outward superficies of the body.

*Empedocles* defined it to be that which is fit and agreeable to the waies and passages of the sight. *Plato* saith, it is a flame sent from bodies, having certaine parcels proportionable to the eye-sight.

*Zeno* the Stoick holdeth, that Colours be the first figures of any matter.

The followers of *Pythagoras* affirme these to be the kinds of Colours, White, Black, Red, and Yellow; and that the diversity of Colours ariseth from a certaine mixture of Elements: but in living creatures, the same proceedeth from the variety of their places and sundry aires.

CHAP. XVI.  
Concerning the Section of Bodies.

**T**he Sectaries of *Thales* and *Pythagoras* are of opinion, that bodies be passible and divisible infinitely.

*Democritus* and *Epicurus* hold, that this section staideth either at the Atomes indivisible, or at those small bodies which have no parts, neither doth this division (say they) passe infinitely.

*Aristotle* saith, that divided they be in infinitum, potentially, but actually not.

CHAP. XVII.  
Of Mixture and Temperature.

**T**he ancient Philosophers affirme, that this mixture of Elements is by way of alteration: but *Anaxagoras* and *Democritus* say, it is done by apposition.

*Empedocles* compoeth the elements of smaller masses, which he supposeth to be the least bodies, and as a man would say, the Elements of Elements.

*Plato* would have the three bodies (for he deigneth not them, either to be called, or to be, Elements) to be convertible one into the other, to wit, water, aire, and fire: but as for the earth, it cannot be turned into any one of them.

CHAP. XVIII.  
Of Voidnesse or Vacuity.

**T**he natural Philosophers of *Thales* his schoole, all untill you come unto *Plato*, have generally disavowed and reproved this Vacuity: As for *Empedocles* thus he writeth:

*In all the world so spacious,  
Nought is void or superfluous.*

*Leucippus*, *Democritus*, *Demetrius*, *Metrodorus*, and *Epicurus* hold, that the Atomes be infinite in multitude, and Voidnesse infinite in magnitude.

The Stoicks affirme, that within the world there is no Voidnesse, but without there is infinity.

*Aristotle* is of opinion, that without the world there is no such Voidnesse, as that the heaven by the means thereof may draw breath, for that it is of the nature of fire.

CHAP. XIX.  
Of Place.

**P***lato* saith, that Place is that which is susceptible of formes, one after another, which is by way of Metaphor or translation to expresse the first matter, as a nurse receiving and embracing all. *Aristotle* taketh Place to be the extreme superficies of the continent, conjunct, and contiguous to the content.

CHAP.

CHAP. XX.  
Of Roome, or Space.

**T**he *Stoicks*, and *Epicurus* do hold, that there is a difference between Voidnesse, Place, and Roome: for Voidnesse (say they) is the solitude or vacuity of a body: Place, that which is fully occupied and taken up with a body: but Roome or Space, that which is occupied but in part; as we may see in a fundlet or barrell of wine.

CHAP. XXI.  
Of Time.

**P**ythagoras saith, that Time is the spheare of that utmost heaven that compriseth all. *Plato* thinketh it to be the moveable image of the eternitie, or the intervall of the worlds motion: but *Eratosthenes* affirmeth it to be the course of the sun.

CHAP. XXII.  
Of the Essence of Time.

**P**lato saith, that the Essence of Time is the moving of heaven: but many of the *Stoicks* hold it, to be the moving it selfe; and most of them affirme, that Time had no beginning of generation; *Plato* is of opinion, that engendred it is according to our conceit and capacity.

CHAP. XXIII.  
Of Motion.

**P**ythagoras and *Plato* affirme, that Motion is a certaine difference and alteration in matter. *Aristotle* giveth out, that it is the actual operation of that which is moveable. *Democritus* saith, that there is but one kind of Motion, to wit, that which tendeth obliquely. *Epicurus* maintaineth twaine, the one direct and plumb, the other side-long. *Epicurus* is of opinion, that there is one motion perceptible in reason, and another object to sense naturall.

*Heraclitus* excludeth all station, rest, and repose out of the world: For this (quoth he) belongeth unto the dead, but perpetual Motion agreeth to eternall substances; and perishable Motion to substances corruptible.

CHAP. XXIV.  
Of Generation and Corruption.

**P**armenides, *Melissus*, and *Zeno*, rejected wholly all Generation and Corruption: for they thought the universall world to be unmoveable: but *Empedocles* and *Epicurus*, and all those who held the world to be made of a masse and heap of small bodies huddled together, bring in and admit certaine concretions and dissipations: but in no wise Generations and Corruptions to speake properly, saying, that these come not according to quality by way of alteration, but according to quantity by collection and heaping together.

*Pythagoras*, and as many as suppose matter to be passible, hold, that there is properly indeed Generation and Corruption: for they say that this is done by the alteration, mutation, and resolution of the elements.

CHAP. XXV.  
Of Necessity.

**T**ales saith, that Necessity is most porent and forcible, for it is that which ruleth the whole world.

*Pythagoras* held, that the world was possessed and compassed with Necessity. *Parmenides*, and *Democritus* were of opinion, that all things were made by Necessity, and that destiny, justice, providence, and the Creator of the world, were all one.

CHAP. XXVI.  
Of the Essence of Necessity.

**P**lato referreth some events to providence, and others he attributeth to Necessity. *Empedocles* saith, that the Essence of Necessity is a cause apt to make use of the principles and elements.

*Democritus* affirmeth it to be the resistance, the station, motion, and percussion of the matter.

\* Empedocles,  
some read  
Empedocles,  
that is to  
say corrup-  
tion.

Plato

*Plato* holdeth it to be one while matter it selfe, and another while the habitude of that which is agent to the matter.

CHAP. XXVII.  
Of Destiny.

**H**eraclitus affirmeth, that all things were done by fatall Destiny, and that it and Necessity be both one.

*Plato* admitteth willingly this Destiny in the soules, lives, and actions of men; but he inferreth withall a cause proceeding from ourselves.

The *Stoicks* likewise according with the opinion of *Plato*, do hold, that Necessity is a cause invincible, most violent and enforcing all things: also that Destiny is a connexion of causes interlaced and linked orderly: in which concatenation or chaine, there is comprised also that cause which proceedeth from us; in such sort as some events are destined, and others not.

CHAP. XXVIII.  
Of the substance of Destiny.

**H**eraclitus saith, that the substance of Destiny is the reason that pierceth throughout the substance of the universall world.

*Plato* affirmeth it to be an eternall reason, and a perpetual law of the nature of the whole world.

*Chrysippus* holdeth it to be a certaine puissance spirituall, which by order governeth and administred all things. And again in his book of definitions he writeth thus: Destiny is the reason of the world, or rather the law of all things in the world, administred and governed by providence: or else the reason whereby things past, have been; things present, are, and future things, shall be.

The *Stoicks* are of opinion that it is the chaine of causes, that is to say, an order and connexion, which cannot be surmounted and transgressed.

*Poisonius* supposeth it to be the third after *Jupiter*; for that *Jupiter* is in the first degree; Nature in the second; and fatall Destiny in the third.

CHAP. XXIX.  
Of Fortune.

**P**lato defineth Fortune to be (in things proceeding from mans counsell and election) a cause by accident, and a very casual consequence.

*Aristotle* holdeth it to be an accidentall cause in those things which from some deliberate purpose and impulsion tend to a certaine end, which cause is not apparent, but hidden and uncertaine. And he putteth a difference between Fortune and rash adventure: for that all Fortune in the affaires and actions of this world is adventurous: but every adventure is not by and by Fortune: for that it consisteth in things without action: againe, Fortune is properly in actions of reasonable creatures; but adventure, indifferently in creatures, as well unreasonable as reasonable, yea, and in those bodies which have neither life nor soule.

*Epicurus* saith, that Fortune is a cause which will not stand and accord with persons, times, and manners.

*Anaxagoras* and the *Stoicks* affirme it to be a cause unknown, and hidden to human reason: for that some things come by necessity others by fatall destiny; some by deliberate counsell, others by Fortune, and some againe by causality or adventure.

CHAP. XXX.  
Of Nature.

**E**mpedocles holdeth that Nature is nothing: only that there is a mixture and divulsion, or separation of Elements: for in this manner writeth he in the first book of his *Philicks*:

*This one thing more I will yet say,*

*Of things that be humane*

*And Mortall, nature none there is,*

*And deaths end is but vaine,*

*A mixture and divulsion,*

*Of Elements and of all,*

*Only there is, and this is that,*

*Which men do Nature call.*

Sensibly *Anaxagoras* saith, that Nature is nothing else but a concretion and dissipation: that is to say, generation and corruption.

The

## The Second Book of Philosophers Opinions.

## The Poem.

**H**AVING now finished the Treatise of Principles, Elements, and such other matters linked and concurring with them; I will turne my pen unto the discourse as touching their effects and works composed of them, beginning first at that which is most spacious and capable of all things.

CHAP. I.  
Of the World.

**P**ythagoras was the first who called the Roundle that containeth and comprehendeth all, to wit, the World, *κοσμος*; for the orderly digestion observed therein.

*Thales* and his disciples held, that there is but one World.

*Democritus*, *Epicurus*, and their scholar *Metrodorus* affirme, that there be innumerable Worlds in an infinite space according to all dimensions and circumstances.

*Empedocles* saith, that the course and race of the Sun is the very circumscription of the bounds and limits of the World; and that it is the very confinement thereof.

*Selenus* held the World to be infinite.

*Diogenes* affirmed the universality to be infinite: but the World finite and determinate.

The *Stoicks* put a difference between universall and whole: for they say, that the universall together with voidnesse is infinite: and that the whole without voidnesse is the World: so as these termes, the Whole, and the World, be not both one.

CHAP. II.  
Of the figure and forme of the World.

**T**he *Stoicks* affirme the World to be round: some say it is pointed or pyramidall: others that it is fashioned in manner of an egge; but *Epicurus* holdeth, that his Worlds may be round, and it may be that they are apt besides to receive other formes.

CHAP. III.  
Whether the World be animate, or endued with a soule.

**A**LL other Philosophers agree, that the World is animate, and governed by providence: but *Democritus*, *Epicurus*, and as many as maintaine *Atomes*, and withall bring in *Vacuity*, that it is neither animate, nor governed by providence, but by a certaine nature void of reason.

*Aristotle* holdeth, that it is not animate wholly and throughout all parts; nor sensitive, nor reasonable, nor yet intellectuall or directed by providence: True it is (quoth he) that celestiaall bodies be capable of all these qualities, as being compassed about with sphaeres both animate and vital: whereas bodies terrestriall and approaching neere unto the earth, are endued with none of them: and as for the order and decent composition therein, it came by accident, and not by prepenised reason and counsell.

CHAP. IIII.  
Whether the World be incorruptible and eternall.

**P**ythagoras and *Plato* affirme, that the World was ingendred and made by God: and of the own nature (being corruptible) shall perish: for sensible it is, and therefore corporall; howbeit, in regard of the divine providence, which preserveth and maintaineth it, perish it shall never.

*Epicurus* saith, that it is corruptible, for that it is engendred, like as a living creature or a plant.

*Xenophanes* holdeth the World to be eternall, ingenerable, uncreated and incorruptible.

*Aristotle* is of opinion, that the part of the World under the moone is passible; wherein the bodies also adjacent to the earth be subject to corruption.

CHAP. V.  
Whereof the World is nourished.

**A**ristotle saith, that if the World be nourished, it is likewise corruptible, and will perish: but it is, that it hath no need of nouriture, and so by consequence it is eternall.

*Plato* is of opinion, that the world yeeldeth unto it selfe nouriture of that which perisheth, by way of mutation.

*Philostratus* affirmeth, that there is a twofold corruption: one while by fire falling from heaven, and another while by water of the moon, powred forth by the circumgyration and turning about of the aire; the exhalations whereof become the food of the world.

CHAP.

## CHAP. VI.

At which Element began God the Fabrick of the World.

**T**he Naturalists do hold, that the creation of the world began at earth, as the very center thereof; for that the beginning of a sphaere or ball is the center.

*Pythagoras* saith, that it began at Fire, and the fifth element.

*Empedocles* saith, that the first thing separate apart was the skie or fifth essence, called *Ether*; the second, Fire; after which, the Earth; of which being thrust close and pressed together by the violence of revolution sprang Water, from which Aire did evaporate: also, that heaven was made of that Skie or Quintessence; the Sun, of Fire; and of the other elements were conflate and felted (as it were) terrestriall bodies, and such as be neare the earth.

*Plato* is of opinion, that this visible world was formed to the mold and patterne of the intellectuall: that of the visible world the soule was first made; and after it, that which is corpulent: that of the fire and earth, first; that which standeth of water and aire, second.

*Pythagoras* affirmed, that of the five solid bodies, which are also called Mathematicall; the Cube (that is to say, a square body, with six faces) went to the making of the earth; of the pointed Pyramis, was made fire; of Octoedra or solid body with eight bales, the earth; of Icosiedra with twenty sides, the water; of Dodecaedra with twelve faces, the supreme sphaere of the universall world: and himselfe herein also doth Pythagorize.

## CHAP. VII.

Of the order of the Worlds Fabrick.

**P**armenides imagineth certaine coronets (as it were) interlaced one within another, some of a rare substance, others of a thick, and the same mixed of light and darknesse between; also that the body which containeth them altogether was as firme and solid as a wall.

*Lucretius* and *Democritus* enwrapped the world round about with a tunicle or membrane.

*Epicurus* held, that the extremity of some worlds were rare; of others thick; and that of them, some were movable, others immovable.

*Plato* setteth down Fire first; secondly, the Skie; then Aire; afterwards, Water; and last of all, Earth; but otherwhiles, he conjoyneth the Skie unto Fire.

*Aristotle* rangeth in the first place the impassible Aire, which is a certaine fifth body; and after it, the Elements passible, to wit, Fire, Aire, Water, and the Earth last: of all which unto the celestiaall bodies be attributeth a circular motion; and (of the others situate beneath them) unto the lighter kind, the ascent or rising upward: unto the weightier, descent or settling downward.

*Empedocles* is of opinion, that the places of the elements are not alwaies steady and certaine, but that they all interchange mutually one with another.

## CHAP. VIII.

What is the cause that the World bendeth or creepeth forward.

**D**iogenes and *Anaxagoras* affirme, that after the World was made, and that living creatures were produced out of the Earth, the world bowed (I wot not how) of it selfe, and of the own accord, to the Southerne or Meridionall part thereof: I say by the divine providence for ordering all, that some parts of the world should be habitable, others inhabitable, according to excessive cold, excessive heat, and a meane temperature of both.

*Empedocles* saith, that by reason that the aire gave place to the violence of the Sun, the two Bears or Poles\* bendeth, and inclined: as for those parts which were northerly, they were elevated and moummed aloft: but the southerne coasts were depressed and debased as much; and so accordingly the whole world.

\* Arctick &amp; Antarctic.

## CHAP. IX.

Whether without the world, there be any vacuity.

**T**he schoole of *Pythagoras* holdeth, that there is a voidnesse without the world, to which, and out of which the world doth draw breath: but the *Stoicks* affirm, that into it the infinite world by way of conflagration is resolved.

*Pseudo* admitteth no other infinity, than as much as is sufficient for the dissolution thereof.

In the first booke of vacuity, *Aristotle* saith, there is voidnesse.

*Plato* affirmeth, that there is no emptinesse at all, either without or within the world.

## CHAP. X.

What be the right sides, and which be the left, in regard of the world.

**P**ythagoras, *Plato*, and *Aristotle* do take the East for the right part, and the West for the left.

\* *Empedocles*

*Empedocles* saith, that the right side bendeth toward the summers Tropick; and the left toward the Tropick of winter.

## CHAP. XI.

*Of Heaven, and what is the substance thereof.*

**A** *Naximenes* affirmeth the exterior circumference of heaven to be earthy.  
*Empedocles* saith, that Heaven is solid, being made of aire condensate by fire, after the manner of chrysell; and that it containeth the fiery and airy nature in the one and the other hemisphere.  
*Aristotle* holdeth, that Heaven is compoied of the fifth body above fire, or elie of the mixture of heat and cold.

## CHAP. XII.

*Of the division of Heaven: and namely, into how many circles it is divided.*

**T** *Hales*, and *Pythagoras* with his followers do say, that the sphere of the whole Heaven is parted into five circles, which they call certaine Zones, cindures, or girdles; of which circles, one is called the Arctick, and is alwaies to be seen of us; a second, the summer Tropick; a third, Equinoctiall; and the fourth, winter Tropick; and the fifth, the Antartick circle: which is evermore unseen: as touching the oblique or crooked circle, called the Zodiack, which lieth under the other three middle circles above named, it toucheth them all three as it passeth, and every of them are cut in right angles by the Meridian, which goeth from Pole to Pole.

*Pythagoras* was the first (men say) that observed the obliquity of the Zodiack: whic invention nevertheless *Oenopides* the Chian, ascribeth to himselfe, as if he were the author of it.

## CHAP. XIII.

*What is the substance of the Stars, and how they were made and composed.*

**T** *Hales* affirmeth them to be terrestrial, and nathelesse fiery and ardent.  
*Empedocles* holdeth them to be enflamed by that fire, which the skie containing within it selle do, violently send forth at the first excretion. *Anaxagoras* saith, that the skie which environeth is indeed of the own essence of a fiery nature; but by the violent revolution of it selle (marcheth up stones from the earth, and setting them on fire they become Stars.

*Diogenes* thinketh, that Stars be of the substance of a pumish stone, as being the breathing holes of the world: and againe, the same Philosopher saith, that they be certaine blind-stones not apparent; howbeit, falling often to the earth, are there quenched, as it happeneth in a place called *Δρυος ορυαδις*, that is, so fay, Goats rivers, where there sell sometime a stone-star in forme of fire.

*Empedocles* holdeth, that the fixed Stars which wander not, be fastned to the chrysell skie; but the plants are loose and at liberty.

*Plato* giveth out, that for the most part they be of fire, and yet nevertheless they participate with other elements in manner of glue or fodder.

*Xenophanes* is of opinion, that they consist of clouds inflamed, which notwithstanding are quenched every day, and afterwards againe be fired in the night in manner of coles: as for the rising and setting of Stars, they be nothing else but their catching fire and quenching.

*Heraclides* and the *Pythagoreans* hold, that every Star is a world by it selfe, containing anearth, an aire, and a skie, in an infinite celestiall nature; and these opinions go current in the veues of *Oppidius*, for they make of every Star a world. *Epicurus* reproveth none of all this, but holdeth still that old note of his: It may so be.

## CHAP. XIII.

*The forme and figure of Stars.*

**T** *He Stoicks* say, that the Stars be spherick or round like the world, the sun and moon, *Cleanthes* holdeth them to be pointed and pyramidall, *Anaximenes* saith, they stick fast in the chryselline skie, like a number of nailes. Others imagine, that they be fiery plates, like unto flat pictures.

## CHAP. XV.

*Of the order and situation of Stars.*

**X** *Enocrates* supposeth that the Stars move upon one and the same superficies: but other Stoicks affirme, that there be some afore them in height and depth.

*Democritus* rangeth the fixed Stars first; next the Planets; and after them, the Sun, the Moon, and the day-star *Lucifer*.

*Plato*, after the situation of the fixed Stars, setteth in the first place that which is called *Phaenon*, to wit, the Star of *Saturne*; in the second, *Phaeton*, which is the Star of *Jupiter*; in the third,

*Pyreis*,

*Proeis*, that is to say, fiery or ardent, and it is that of *Mars*; in the fourth *Phosphorus*, and that is *Venus*; in the fifth *Scilbon*, which is *Mercury*; in the sixth, the Sun; and last, in the seventh, the Moon. Of the Mathematicians some accord with *Plato*, others place the Sun in the midst of them all. *Anaximander*, *Metodorus* the Chian, and *Crates* affirm, that the Sun is placed highest of all, next to him the Moon, and under him the fixed Stars and the Planets.

## CHAP. XVI.

*Of the latine and motion of the Stars.*

**A** *Naxagoras*, *Democritus*, and *Clanthes*, do hold, that all Stars do move from east to west. *Alcmaeon* and the Mathematicians say that the Planets hold an opposite course to the fixed stars, and namely from the west to the east.

*Anaximander* saith, they be carried by their spheres and Circles upon which they are fastned.

*Anaximenes* is of opinion, that they roll as well toward the earth, as turn about the earth. *Plato* and the Mathematicians hold, that the course of the Sun, of *Venus*, and of *Mercury*, is the same and equal.

## CHAP. XVII.

*From whence the Stars have their illumination.*

**M** *Metodorus* thinketh, that all the fixed Stars have their light from the Sun.

*Heraclitus*, and the Stoicks say that the Stars be nourished by exhalations arising from the earth.

*Aristotle* opineth, that the celestiall bodies need no nuture, for that they are not corruptible but eternall.

*Plato* and the Stoicks hold, that all the world and the stars likewise be nourished of themselves.

## CHAP. XVIII.

*Of the two stars named Dioscuri, to wit, Castor and Pollux.*

*Vlaphanes* doth maintain that the lights like stars which appear otherwhiles upon ships, are thin and subtle clouds, which after a kind of motion do shine.

*Metodorus* saith, they be certain glittering sparkles glancing and leaping out of their eyes who behold them with fear and astonishment.

## CHAP. XIX.

*Of the signification of Stars, and how cometh Winter and Summer.*

**P** *lato* saith, that the tokens and significations both of Winter and Summer, proceed from the rising and setting of Sun, Moon, and other Stars, as well fixed as wandering.

*Anaximenes* saith, that none of all this is occasioned by the Moon, but by the sun only. *Endoxus* and *Aratus* affirm them to be in common, by means of all the Stars: and *Aratus* sheweth us much in these verses:

*These radiant stars and lights so evident,  
 As signs, God hath set in the firmament,  
 Distinct, in great fore-sight, throughout the year,  
 To shew how all the seasons ordered were.*

## CHAP. XX.

*Of the Suns substance.*

**A** *Naximander* affirmeth, that the Circle of the Sun is eight and twenty times bigger then the Earth; having an hollow apsis about it, like (for all the world) unto a charriot wheele, and the same full of fire: in one certain place whereof, there is a mouth, at which the fire is seen, as out of the hole of a flute, or such like pipe, and the same is the Sun.

*Xenophanes* holdeth, that there is a certain gathering of small fires, which by occasion of moist exhalations, meet together; and they all (being collected) make the body of the Sun, or elie (quoth he) is a cloud set on fire.

*The Stoicks* say, that the sun is an enflamed body intellectual, or hantout inflamed, proceeding out of the Sea.

*Plato* imagineth it to consist of mixt fire.

*Anaxagoras*, *Democritus* and *Metodorus* suppose it to be a masse of iron, or a stone inflamed.

*Aristotle* is of opinion, that it is a sphere out of the fifth body,

LII

*Philolaus*

\* πύριον  
 Of fire  
 after Ioune.

*Philolaus* the Pythagorean, is persuaded that it is in manner of a glasse, receiving the reverberation of the fire in the world, and transmitting the light thereof unto us (as it were) throw a tannile or firamer, in such sort, as that fiery light in heaven resembleth the Sun: then that which proceedeth from it, is in form of a mirror: and thirdly, there is a splendour, which by way of reflexion from that mirror, is spread upon us: and this call we the Sun, as it were the image of an image.

*Empedocles* is of this mind, that there be two Suns, the one an original and primitive fire, which is in the other hemisphere of the world; and the same filling this hemisphere of ours, as being always situate full opposite to the reflexion of the resplendent light thereof: as for this that we see, it is the light in that other hemisphere, replenished with air mixed with heat, and the same is occasioned by refraction from the earth, that is more round, entering into the Sun, which is of a Chrystalline nature, and yet is trained and carried away together with the motion of that fire. But to speak more plainly and succinctly in fewer words, this is as much to say, as the Sun is nothing else, but the reflexion of that light of the fire which is about the earth.

*Epicurus* imagineth the Sun to be a terretial spiffitude of thicknesse, yet spongeous (as it were) and hollow in manner of a pumice stone, and in those holes lightened by fire.

#### CHAP. XXI. Of the Suns magnitude.

*Naximander* is of opinion, that the Sun is equal in bignesse to the earth; but the Circle from which he hath his respiration, and upon which he is carried, is eight and twenty times bigger then the whole earth.

*Anaxagoras* said, it was by many degrees greater then all *Peloponnesus*.

*Heraclitus* held, that it was a mans foot broad.

*Epicurus* again affirmed, that all above said might be; or that it was as big as it appeared to be, at leastwise a little under or over.

#### CHAP. XXII. Of the Suns form.

*Naximander* imagineth that the Sun was flat and broad, like unto a thin plate of metall.

*Heraclitus* supposed it to be made like unto a boat somewhat curbed downward & turning up.

The *Stoicks* suppose it to be round, like unto the whole world and other stars.

*Epicurus* saith, that all this may be well enough.

#### CHAP. XXIII. Of the Sollices or Tropick of the Sun.

*Naximander* thinketh that the Stars are beaten back by the thick air, and the same making resistance.

*Anaxagoras* saith, that they are occasioned by the repulse of the air, about the Beares or Poles, which the Sun himselfe (by thrusting and making thick) causeth to be more powerful.

*Empedocles* attributeth the reason thereof to the sphere, that containeth and impeacheth him from passing farther: as also to the two Tropick Circles.

*Diogenes* imagineth, that the Sun is extinct by the cold, falling opposite upon the head. The *Stoicks* affirm that the Sun passeth thorow the tract and space of his food and pasture lying under him, which is the Ocean sea or the earth, upon the vapours and exhalation whereof he feedeth.

*Plato*, *Pythagoras* and *Ariftole* hold, that this is occasioned by the obliquity of the Zodiac Circle, thorow which the Sun passeth biase; as also by reason of the Tropick Circles, which environ and guard him about: and all this, the very where it falleth doth evidently shew.

#### CHAP. XXIV. Of the Suns Eclipse.

*Hales* was the first who observed the Suns eclipse, and said, that it was occasioned by the Moon; which is of a terretial nature, when as in her rage, she cometh to be juit and plumb under him: which may be plainly seen as in a mirror, by setting a bason of water underneath.

*Anaximander* said, that the Sun became eclipsed, when the mouth or tunnell (at which the heat of his fire cometh forth) is closed up.

*Heraclitus* is of opinion, that this happeneth, when the body of the Sun which is made like a boat, is turned upside down, so as the hollow part thereof is upward, and the keel downward to our sight.

*Xenophanes* affirmeth, that this cometh by extinction of one Sun, and the rising of another again in the east: he addeth moreover, and reporteth, that there is an eclipse of the Sun, during one whole month; as also one entire and universal eclipse, in such manner, as the day seemeth to be night.

Others ascribe the cause thereof, to the thicknesse of clouds, which suddenly and after an hidden manner, overcast the rundle and plate of the Sun.

*Arifarchus* reckoneth the Sun among the fixed Stars, saying, that it is the earth which rolleth and turneth round about the Suns Circle, and according to the inclinations thereof, the Suns lighted body cometh to be darkened by her shade.

*Xenophanes* holdeth, that there be many Suns and Moons, according to the divers Climates, Tracts, Sections, and Zones of the Earth: and at a certain revolution of time, the rundle of the Sun falleth upon some Climate or Section of the Earth, which is not of us inhabited: and so marching (as it were) in some void place, he suffereth eclipse: he also affirmeth, that the Sun goeth infinitely forward still, but by reason of his huge distance and retract from us, seemeth to turn round about.

#### CHAP. XXV. Of the Moons substance.

*Naximander* saith, that the Moon is a Circle, six times bigger then the Earth, and like as that of the Sun, full of fire; that she suffereth eclipse when her wheele turneth: for that he saith, the Circle resembleth the wheele of a charriot, the curvature or felly whereof, is hollow and full of fire; howbeit, there is an hole or tunnel, out of which the fire doth exhale.

*Xenophanes* saith, that the Moon is a thick, compact, and sealed cloud.

The *Stoicks* hold, that she is mixed of fire and air.

*Plato* affirmeth, that she standeth more of fiery substance.

*Anaxagoras* and *Democritus* do hold, that the Moon is a solid and firm body all fiery, containing in it champion grounds, mountains and vallies.

*Heraclitus* is of opinion that it is earth overspread with mists.

*Pythagoras* also thinketh that the body of the Moon is of the nature of fire.

#### CHAP. XXVI. Of the Moons magnitude.

The *Stoicks* pronounce flatly that the Moon is bigger then the earth, like as the Sun also. *Parmenides* affirmeth it to be equal in brightness to the Sun, & that of him she hath her light.

#### CHAP. XXVII. Of the Moons form.

The *Stoicks* say, the Moon is round as a Globe, like as the Sun.

*Empedocles* would have it to resemble a bason or platter.

*Heraclitus* compareth it to a boat; and others to a round cylinder; \* [that she is shaped seven manner of ways: at her first birth as it were she appeareth horned or tipped; then divided or quartered; afterwards growing somewhat together; and soon after full: from which time by little and little she waneeth by degrees: first bending somewhat close, then quartered, and after that tipped and horned, until at the change she appeareth not at all: and they say, this variety of her configurations is occasioned by the earth shadowing her light more or lesse, according as the convexity of the earth cometh between.]

#### CHAP. XXVIII. Of the Moons illumination.

*Naximander* saith, that she hath a light of her own, but the same very rare and thin.

*Anaxiphon* affirmeth, that she shineth with her own light; and whereas she is otherwhiles hidden, it proceedeth from the opposition of the Sun; namely, when a greater fire cometh to darken lesse; a thing incident to other stars.

The *Stoicks* and his followers hold, that the Moon is lightened by the Sun.

*Heraclitus* suppoeth, that the case of the Sun and Moon is all one, for that both of them being formed like a Boat, and receiving moist exhalations, they seem in our sight illuminate: the Sun bright of the twain; for that he goeth in a more clear and pure air, and the Moon in that which is more troubled, which is the reason that she seemeth more dark and muddy.

#### CHAP. XXIX. Of the Moons Eclipse.

*Naximander* saith, that the Moon is Eclipsed, when the mouth or venting hole whereout issueth her fire, is stopped.

*Berofus* is of opinion, that it is when that face and side of hers which is not lightened, turneth towards us.

*Heraclitus* would have it to be, when the convexity or swelling part of the boat which she doth represent, regardeth us directly.

Some of the *Pythagoreans* doe hold the eclipse of the Moone to be partly a reverberation of light

\* *Anaximander*.

\* That which is inferred between these two marks [ ] I find neither in the original Greek, nor in the French, but in the Latin only!

light, and in part an obstruction; the one in regard of the Earth, the other of the Antipodes, who tread opposite unto us. But the modern writers are of opinion, that it is by occasion of the augmentation of the Moons flame, which regularly and by order is lightened by little and little, until it represent unto us the full face of the Moon, and again doth diminish and wane in proportion, until the conjunction, at what time it is altogether extinct.

Plato, Aristotle, the Stoicks, and Mathematicians do all with one accord say, that the occultations of the Moon every month, are occasioned by reason that she falleth in conjunction with the Sun; by whose brightness she becometh dim and darkened: but the Eclipses of the Moon be caused when she cometh within the shadow of the earth, situate directly between both Stars, rather for that the Moon is altogether obstructed therewith.

## CHAP. XXX.

*Of the Moons apparition, and why she seemeth to be earthly.*

The Pythagoreans affirm, that the Moon appeareth terrestrial, for that she is inhabited round about, like as the earth wherein we are, and peopled as it were with the greatest living creatures, and the fair plants; and those creatures within her, be fifteen times stronger and more pulchre than those with us, and the same yeeld forth no excrements, and the day there, is in that proportion so much longer.

\* night,  
some read,  
while,  
that is to  
say, night

Anaxagoras saith, that the inequality which is seen in the face of the Moon, proceedeth from the co-aggregation of cold and terrestriety mixed together, for that there is a certain tenebrosity mixed with the fiery nature thereof; whereupon this star is said to be *Pseudophanes*, that is to say, to have a false light.

The Stoicks are of opinion, that by reason of the diversity of her substance, the composition of her body is not subject to corruption.

## CHAP. XXXI.

*The distance between Sun and Moon.*

*Empedocles* thinketh, that the Moon is twice as far off from the Sun as she is from the Earth.

The Mathematicians say, that the distance is eighteen times as much, *Erastophanes* giveth out, the Sun is from the earth 408. thousand Stadia, ten times told: and the Moon from the earth 78. thousand Stadia, ten times multiplied.

## CHAP. XXXII.

*Of the years; and how much the year of every Planet containeth; the great year.*

The revolution or year of *Saturn* comprehendeth thirty common years: Of *Jupiter* twelve: of *Mars* two: of the Sun, twelve months: those of *Mercury* and *Venus* be all one, for their course is equal: of the Moon thirty days: for this we count a perfect month, to wit, from the apparition to the conjunction. As for the great year; some say, it compriseth eight years: others nineteen, and others again sixty wanting one. *Heracitus* saith it consisteth of 80000 solar years, *Diogenes* of 365. years, such as *Heracitus* speaketh of: and others of 7777.

## The Third Book of Philosophers opinions.

## The Proem.

Having summarily, and after a cursory manner treated in the former books, of celestial bodies, and resting in the confines thereof, which is the Moon, I will address my selfe in this third book, to discourse of Meteors, that is to say, of such impressions as be engendered in the air above, to wit, between the circle of the Moon and the situation of the Earth: the which men hold generally to be instead of the prick or center in that compass of the universal Globe. And heret will I begin.

## CHAP. I.

*Of the milky way, or white Circle Galaxia.*

This *Galaxia* is a cloudy or misty circle, appearing always in the skie; and called it is the Milk way, of the white colour which it doth represent.

Of the Pythagoreans some say, it is the inflammation or burning out of some star removed, and falling out of his proper place, which hath burnt round about all the way as it passed, from the very time of *Phaethon* his conflagration.

Others hold, that in old time the race and course of the Sun was that way. Some are of opinion, that it is a speculary apparition, only occasioned by the reflexion of the Sun beams against the cope of Heaven, even as we observe it to fall out between the rainbow and thick clouds.

*Metedorus*

*Metedorus* affirmeth it to be caused by the passage of the Sun: for that this is the solar circle. *Parmenides* is of opinion that the mixture of that which is thick, with the rare or thin, engendereth this milky colour.

Anaxagoras saith, that the shadow of the earth reflecteth upon this part of heaven, at what time as the Sun being underneath the earth, doth not illuminate all throughout.

*Democritus* is persuaded, that it is the resplendent light of many small stars, and those close together, shining one upon another, and so occasioned by their spissitude and attrition.

*Aristotle* would have it to be an inflammation of a dry exhalation; the same being great in quantity and continued: and so there is an hairy kind of fire under the skie, and beneath the Planets.

*Pissidius* supposeth it to be a consistence of fire, more clear and subtile than a star: and yet thicker, then a splendour or shining light.

## CHAP. II.

*Of Comets, or blazing Stars: of stars seeming to shoot and fall: as also of fiery beams appearing in the air.*

Some of Pythagoras Scholars affirm, that a Comet is a Star of the number of those which appear not always, but at certain prefixed seasons after some periodical revolutions do arise.

Others affirm it to be the reflexion of our light against the Sun, after the manner of those resemblances which shew in mirrors or looking glasses.

Anaxagoras and Democritus say, that it is a concourse of two stars or more meeting with their lights together.

*Aristotle* is of opinion, that it is a consistence of a dry exhalation enflamed.

*Strabo* saith, that it is the light of a star enwrapped within a thick cloud, as we see it ordinarily in our lamps and burning lights.

*Heracides* of Pontus holdeth it to be a cloud heaved and elevated on high, and the same illuminated by some high light also: and the like reason giveth he of the bearded blazing star called *Paganos*. Others (like as all the Peripateticks) affirm, that the beam, the column, and such other meteors or impressions are made after the same manner by divers configurations of clouds in the air.

*Epigenes* supposeth a Comet to be an elevation of spirit or wind mixed with an earthly substance, and set on fire.

*Boethius* imagineth it to be an apparition of the air, let loose as it were, and spread at large.

*Diogenes* is persuaded that Comets be Stars.

Anaxagoras saith, that the Stars which are said to shoot, be as it were sparkles falling from the elementary fire: which is the cause that they are quenched and gone out so quickly.

*Meteorologus* supposeth, that when the Sun striketh violently upon a cloud, the beams or raies thereof do sparkle, and so cause this shooting of stars as they teem it.

*Thales* saith, that all such Meteors and Impressions as these be constitutions or motions of clouds enflamed.

## CHAP. III.

*Of thunders, lightnings, flashes, presters, or fiery blasts, and tempestuous whirlwinds*

*Alexander* supposeth, that all these come by wind: for when it hapneth that it is conceived and enclosed within a thick cloud, then by reason of the subtilty and lightnesse thereof, it breaketh forth with violence: and the rupture of the cloud maketh a crack; and the division or cleaving, by reason of the blacknesse of the cloud, causeth a shining light.

*Metedorus* saith, when a wind chanceth to be enclosed within a cloud gathered thick and close together, the said wind by bursting of the cloud maketh a noise; and by the stroak and breach it sheweth; but by the quick motion catching heat of the Sun, it shooteth forth lightning; but if the said lightning be weak, it turneth into a Prester or burning blase.

Anaxagoras is of opinion, that when ardent heat falleth upon cold, that is to say, when a portion of celestial fire lighteth upon the airy substances by the cracking noise thereof is caused thunders by the colour against the blacknesse of the cloud, a flashing beam; by the plenty and greatnesse of the light, that which we call lightning; and in case the fire be more grosse and corpulent, there ariseth of it a whirlwind; but if the same be of a cloudy nature, it engendereth a burning blatt called Prester.

The Stoicks hold thunder to be a combat, and smiting together of clouds: that a flashing beame, is a fire or inflammation proceeding from their attrition: that lightning is a more violent flashing, and Prester, lesse forcible.

*Aristotle* supposeth, that all these Meteors come likewise of a dry exhalation, which being gotten enclosed within a moist cloud, seeketh means, and striveth forcibly to get forth: now by attrition and breaking together, it causeth the clap of thunder; by inflammation of the dry substance, a flashing beam; but Presters, Typhons, that is to say, burning blasts and whirlwinds, according as the force of matter is, more or lesse, which the one and the other draweth to it; but if the same be hotter, you shall see Prester, if thicker, look for Typhon.



## CHAP. IIII.

Of Clouds, Rain, Snow, and Haile.

**A** *Naximenes* saith that clouds are engendered when the air is most thick, which if they coagulate still more and more, there is expressed from them a shower of rain: but in case this matter as it falleth, do congeale, it turneth to be snow; but say it meet with a cold moist wind and be surprised therewith, it proveth haile.

*Metedorus* suppoeth, that clouds be composed of a waterish evaporation elevated, *Epicturus* of meer vapors: also that as well the drops of rain as haile stones, become round by the long way of their descent.

## CHAP. V.

Of the Rainbow.

**A**mong those Meteors or impressions engendered in the aire, some there be which have a true substance indeed, as rain and haile: others again, have no more but a bare appearance, without any real subsistence, much like as when we are within a ship, we imagine that the continent and firm land doth move: and among those which are in appearance only, we must range the Rainbow, *Plato* saith, that men derive the Genealogy of it from *Thanmaras*, as one would say, from wonders, because they marvelled much to see it: according as *Homer* sheweth in this verse:

*Like as when mighty Jupiter the purple rainbow bends,  
Thereto by mortal men from heaven a wondrous token sends,  
Which either tempests terrible, or woful war portends,*

And hereupon it is, that some have made thereof a fabulous device, and given out, that he having a bulls head, drinketh up the rivers. But how is this Rainbow engendered, and how cometh it so to appear? Certes, we see by lines, either direct and straight, or crooked, or else rebated and broken: which though they be obscure, and appear not evidently, yet are perceived by cogitation and discourse of reason, as being bodiliffe. Now by right lines we behold things, some in the air, and others thorow transparent stones and horns, for that all these consist of very subtile parts: by crooked and curbed lines, we look within the water: for our eye-sight doth bend and turn again perforce, by reason that the matter of the water is more thick: which is the cause, that we see the mariners Oare in the sea far off, as it were crooked. The third manner of seeing, is by refraction, and so we behold objects in mirrors: and of this sort is the Rainbow: for we must consider and understand, that a moist vapour being lifted up aloft, is converted into a cloud: and then within a while by little and little, into small dew drops: when as therefore, the Sun descendeth westward, it cannot chuse, but every Rainbow must needs appear opposite unto it in the contrary part of the skie: and when our sight falleth upon those drops, it is rebated and beaten back: and by that means there is presented unto it a Rainbow: now those drops are not of the form and figure of a bow, but represent a colour only: and verily the first and principal hew that this bow hath, is a light and bright red: the second, a deep vermilion or purple: the third, blew and green: Let us consider then, whether the said red colour appear not, because the brightnesse of the Sun beating upon the cloud, and the sincere light thereof reflected and driven back, maketh a ruddy or light red hew: but the second part more obscure, and rebating the said splendor through those dewy drops, causeth a purple tincture, which is (as it were) an abatement of red: and then as it becometh more muddy still, and darkening that which distinguisheth the light, it turneth into a green: and this is a thing which may be proved by experience: for if a man take water directly against the Sun beams in his mouth, and spit the same forward, in such sort, as the drops receive a repercussion against the said raies of the Sun, he shall find that it will make (as it were) a Rainbow. The like befalleth unto them that are bleer-eyed, when they look upon a lamp or burning light.

*Anaximenes* suppoeth, that the Rainbow is occasioned by the Sun shining full against a grosse, thick and black cloud, in such sort, as his beams be not able to pierce and strike thorow, by reason that they turn again upon it, and become condensate.

*Anaxagoras* holdeth the Rainbow to be the refraction or repercussion of the Suns round light against a thick cloud, which ought always to be opposite full against him, in manner of a mirror: by which reason, in nature it is said, that there appear two Suns in the country of *Pontus*.

*Metedorus* saith, when the Sun shineth thorow clouds, the cloud seemeth blew, but the light looketh red.

## CHAP. VI.

Of Water-galls or streaks like rods, somewhat resembling Rainbows.

**T**he rods and opposite apparitions of Suns, which are seen otherwhiles in the skie, happen through the temperature of a subject matter and illumination: namely, when clouds are seen, not in their natural and proper colour, but by another, caused by a divers irradiation: and in all these, the like passions fall out both naturally, and also are purchased by accident.

CHAP.

## CHAP. VII.

Of Winds.

**A** *Naximander* is of opinion, that the Wind is a fluxion of the aire; when as the most subtile and liquid parts thereof be either stirred, or melted and resolved by the Sun.

The *Stoicks* affirm, that every blast is a fluxion of the aire, and that according to the mutation of regions, they change their names: as for example, that which bloweth from the darknesse of the night and Sun setting, is named *Zephyrus*; from the East and Sun rising, *Apelates*; from the North, *Boreas*; and from the South, *Liber*.

*Metedorus* suppoeth, that a waterish vapour being enchaired by the heat of the Sun, produceth and raiseth these winds: and as for those that be anniversary, named *Etesias*, they blow, when the air about the North pole is thickened and congealed with cold, and so accompany the Sun, and flow (as it were) with him, as he retireth from the Summer Tropicke, after the Aëtival Solstice.

## CHAP. VIII.

Of Winter and Summer.

**T**he *Pythagoreans* and the *Stoicks* do hold, that Winter cometh when the air is predominant in thicknesse, and is forced upward: but Summer, when the fire is in that while predominant, and is driven downward.

Thus having discoursed of the impressions aloft in the aire, we will treat also (by the way) of those which are seen upon and about the earth.

## CHAP. IX.

Of the Earth: the substance and magnitude thereof.

**T**he *Aes* with his followers affirm, there is but one Earth.

*Occes* the *Pythagorean*, maintaineth twain: one here, and another opposite against it, which the *Antipodes* inhabit.

The *Stoicks* say, there is one Earth, and the same finite.

*Xenophanes* holdeth, that beneath it is founded upon an infinite depth: and that compact it is of aire and fire.

*Metedorus* is of opinion, that Earth is the very sediment and ground of the water: like as the Sun is the residence of the air.

## CHAP. X.

The form of the Earth.

**T**he *Hales*, the *Stoicks* and their school affirm the Earth to be round, in manner of a globe or ball. *Anaximander* resembleth the Earth unto a column or pillar of stone, such as are seen upon the superficies thereof.

*Anaximenes* compareth it to a flat table: *Leucippus*, unto a drum or tabour: *Democritus* saith, that it is in form broad, in manner of a platter, hollow in the midst.

## CHAP. XI.

The situation of the Earth.

**T**he disciples of *Thales* maintain, that the Earth is seated in the midst of the world.

*Xenophanes* affirmeth, that it was first founded and rooted as it were to an infinite depth.

*Phidolans* the *Pythagorean* saith, that fire is the middle, as being the hearth of the world, the second place he rangeth the Earth of the *Antipodes*: and in the third, this wherein we inhabit, which lieth opposite unto that counter earth, and turneth about it: which is the reason (quoth he) that those who dwell there, are not seen by the inhabitants here.

*Parmenides* was the first Philosopher, who set out and limited the habitable parts of the Earth, to wit, those which are under the two Zones, unto the Tropicks or Solstitial circles.

## CHAP. XII.

Of the bending of the Earth.

**P**ythagoas is of opinion, that the earth enclineth toward the Meridional parts, by reason of the rarity which is in those South coasts: for that the Septentrional tracts are congealed, and frozen with cold, whereas the opposite regions be inflamed and burnt.

*Democritus* yieldeth this reason: because of the ambient air is weaker toward the South (quoth he) the Earth as it groweth and encreaseth, doth bend to that side: for the North parts be intemperate: whereas contrariwise the Southern parts are temperate: in which regard it weigheth more that way, whereas indeed it is more plentiful in bearing fruits, and thofe growing to greater augmentation.

CHAP.

## CHAP. XIII.

*The motion of the Earth.*

Some hold the earth to be unmoveable and quiet; but *Philolaus* the Pythagorean faith, that it moveth round about the fire, in the oblique circle, according as the Sun and Moon do. *Heraclides of Pontus*, and *Ecpantus* the Pythagorean, would indeed have the Earth to move, howbeit not from place to place, but rather after a turning manner like unto a wheele upon the Excel tree, from West to East, round about her own center. *Democritus* faith that the Earth at first wandered to and fro, by reason as well of smallness as lightness: but waxing in time thick and heavy, it came to rest unmoveable.

## CHAP. XIIIII.

*The division of the Earth, and how many Zones it hath.*

*Pythagoras* faith, that the earth is divided into five Zones proportionably to the sphere of the universal heaven; to wit, the Arctick Circle, the Tropicke of Summer, the Tropicke of Winter, the Equinoctial and the Antartick. Of which the middlemost doth determine and set out the very midst and heart of the earth: and for that cause it is named *Torrida Zona*, that is to say, the burnt climate: but that region is habitable, as being temperate, which lieth in the midst between the summer and the winter Tropicke.

## CHAP. XV.

*Of Earthquakes.*

*Hales* and *Democritus* attribute the cause of Earthquakes unto water. The *Stoicks* thus define and say, Earthquake is the moisture within the earth subtiliated and resolved into the air, and so breaking out perforce.

*Anaximenes* is of opinion, that rarity and drinnesse of the earth together, be the causes of Earthquake: whereof the one is engendered by excessive drought, the other by gluts of rain.

*Anaxagoras* holdeth, that when the air is gotten within the earth, and meeteth with the superficies thereof, which it findeth tough and thick, so as it cannot get forth, it shaketh it in manner of trembling.

*Aristotle* alledgeth, the *Antiperistasis* of the circumstant cold which environeth about on every side, both above and beneath: for heat endeavoureth and maketh haste to mount aloft, as being by nature light. A dry exhalation, therefore finding it selfe enclosed within and stayed, striveth to make way through the cliffs and chinks of the earth, in which businesse it cannot chuse but by turning to and fro up and down disquiet and shake the earth.

*Metedorus* is of mind, that no body being in the own proper and natural place can stir or move, unlesse some one do actually thrust or pull it. The earth therefore (quoth he) being situate in the own place, naturally moveth not: howsoever some places thereof may remove unto others.

*Parmenides* and *Democritus* reason in this wise: for that the earth on every side is of equal distance, and confineth still in one counterpoise, as having no cause wherefore it should incline more to the one side than to the other: therefore well it may shake onely, but not stir or remove for all that.

*Anaximenes* faith, that the earth is carried up and down in the air, for that it is broad and flat. Others say, that it floateth upon the water, like as planks or boards, and that for this cause it moveth.

*Plato* affirmeth, that of all motions there be six sorts of circumstances, above, beneath, on the right hand, on the left, before and behind. Also that the earth cannot possibly move according to any of the six differences: for that on every side it lieth lowest of all things in the world, and by occasion thereof resteth unmoveable, having no cause why it should incline more to one part then to another, but yet some places of her because of their rarity do jog and shake.

*Epicurus* keepeth his old tune, saying it may well be, that the earth being shogged, and as it were rocked and beaten by the air underneath, which is grosse and of the nature of water, therefore moveth and quaketh. As also, it may be (quoth he) that being hollow and full of holes in the parts below, it is for ed to tremble and shake by the air that is gotten within the caves and concavities and there enclosed.

## CHAP. XVI.

*Of the Sea, how it was made and cometh to be bitter.*

*Anaximander* affirmeth, that the Sea is a residue remaining of the primitive humidity, whereof the Sun having burnt up and consumed a great part, the rest behind he altered and turned from the natural kind by his excessive ardent heat.

*Anaxagoras* is of opinion, that the said first humidity being diffused and spread abroad in manner of a poole or great mear, was burnt by the motion of the Sun about it: and when the oilius substance

thereof was exhaled and consumed, the rest settled below, and turned into a brackish and bitter saltness, which is the Sea.

*Empedocles* faith, that the Sea is the sweat of the earth, enchaîned by the sun, being bathed and washed all over aloft.

*Ariston* thinketh it to be the sweat of heat, the moisture whereof which was within, being by much seething and boyling sent out, becommeth salt; a thing ordinary in all sweats.

*Metedorus* supposeth the Sea to be that moisture, which running thorow the earth, retained some part of the density thereof, like as that which passeth through ashes.

The disciples of *Plato* imagine, that so much of the elementary water which is congealed of the air by refrigeration, is sweet and fresh; but whatsoever did evaporate by burning and inflammation, became salt.

## CHAP. XVI.

*Of the Tides, to wit, the ebbing and flowing of the sea, what is the cause thereof?*

*Aristotle* and *Heraclitus* affirme, that it is the sun which doth it, as who stirreth, raiseth, and carrieth about with him the most part of the windes, which coming to blow in; on the Ocean, cause the Atlantick sea to swell, and so make the flux or high water; but when the same are allayed and dead down, the sea falleth low, and so causeth a reflux and ebbe or low water.

*Pythas* of Marseils, referreth the cause of flowing to the full Moon, and ebbing to the Moon in the wane.

*Plato* attributeth all to a certain rising of the waters, saying, There is such an elevation, that through the mouth of a cave carrieth the Ebbe and Flow to and fro, by the means whereof, the seas do rise and flow contrarily.

*Timæus* alledgeth the cause hereof to be the rivers, which falling from the mountains in *Gauls*, enter into the Atlantick sea, which by their violent corruptions, driving before them the water of the sea, causeth the Flow, and by their ceasing and return back by times, the Ebbe.

*Silencus* the Mathematician, who affirmed also, that the earth moved, faith, that the motion thereof is opposite and contrary to that of the Moon: also that the wind being driven to and fro, by these two contrary revolutions, bloweth and beatech upon the Atlantick Ocean, troubleth the sea also (and no marvel) according as it is disquieted it selfe.

## CHAP. XVIII.

*Of the round Circle called Halo.*

This *Halo* is made after this manner: between the body of the Moon, or any other Star, and our eye-sight, there gathereth a grosse and misty air, by which air, anon our sight cometh to be rebuffed and diffused: and afterwards the same incurreth upon the said Star, according to the exterior circumference thereof, and thereupon appeareth a circle round about the star, which being there seen is called *Halo*, for that it seemeth that the apparent impression is close unto that, upon which our sight is enlarged, as is before said, doth fall.

## The Fourth Book of Philosophers Opinions.

*The Proome.*

Having run through the general parts of the world, I will now passe unto the particulars.

## CHAP. I.

*Of the rising and inundation of Nilus.*

*Hales* thinketh that the anniversary winds called *Etesia* blowing directly against *Egypt*, cause the water of *Nilus* to swell; for that the sea being driven by these winds, entereth within the mouth of the said river, and hindereth it, that it cannot discharge it selfe freely into the sea, but is repelled backward.

*Enthymenes* of *Marseils*, supposeth that this river is filled with the water of the Ocean, and the great sea lying without the continent, which he imagineth to be fresh and sweet.

*Anaxagoras* faith, that this hapneth by the snow in *Ethiopia*, which melteth in summer, and is congealed and frozen in winter.

*Democritus* is of opinion, that it is long of the snow in the north parts, which about the *Ætival* Solstice and return of the Sun, being dissolved and dilated, breedeth vapors, and of them be engendered clouds, which being driven by the Etesian winds into *Ethiopia* and *Egypt* toward the south, cause great and violent rains, wherewith both lakes, and the river also *Nilus*, be filled.

*Herodotus* the Historian writeth, that this river hath as much water from his sources and springs, in

in winter as in summer; but to us it seemeth lesse in winter, because the sun being then neer unto Egypt, causeth the said water to evaporate.

Ephorus the Historiographer reporteth, that all Egypt doth relolve and run as it were wholly into sweat in summer time: whereunto Arabia and Libya do confer, and contribute also their waters, for that the earth there is light and sandy.

Endoxus saith, that the Priests of Egypt assign the cause hereof to the great rains and the Antipyrasts, or contrary occure of seasons: for that when it is summer with us, who inhabit within the Zone toward the Summer Tropick, it is Winter with those who dwell in the opposite Zone under the Winter Tropick, whereupon (saith he) proceedeth this great inundation of waters, breaking down unto the river Nilus.

#### CHAP. II. Of the Soul.

**T**Hales was the first that defined the soul to be a nature moving always, or having motion of it self.

Pythagoras saith, it is a certain number moving it self: and this number he taketh for intelligence or understanding.

Plato supposeth it to be an intellectual substance moving it selfe, and that according to harmonical number.

Aristotle is of opinion, that it is the first *Entelechia* or primitive act of a natural and organical body, having life potentially.

Democritus thinketh it to be the harmony and concordance of the four elements.

Asclepiades the Physician defineth it to be an exercise in common of all the senses together.

#### CHAP. III.

*Whether the soule be a body, and what is the substance of it.*

**A**Ll these Philosophers before rehearsed, suppose that the soul is incorporeal, that of the own nature it moveth and is a spiritual substance; and the action of a natural body, composed of many organs or instruments, and which having life.

But the Sectaries of Anaxagoras have given out, that it is of an airy substance, and a very body. The Stoicks would have the soul to be an hot spirit or breath.

Democritus holdeth it to be a certain fiery composition of things perceptible by reason, and the fame having their forms spherical and round, and the puissance of fire, and which to be a body.

Epicurus saith, it is a mixture or temperature of four things, to wit, of a certain fire, of (I wot not what) air, of an odd windy substance, and of another fourth matter: I cannot tell what to name it, and which to him was sensible.

Heraclitus affirmeth the soul of the world to be an evaporation of humors within it: as for the soul of living creatures, it proceedeth (quoth he) as well from an evaporation of humors without, as an exhalation within it selfe, and of the same kind.

#### CHAP. IV. The parts of the Soul.

**P**ythagoras and Plato, according to a more general and remote division, hold, that the soul hath two parts: that is to say, the Reasonable and the unreasonable; but to go more neer and exactly to work, they say it hath three: for they subdivided the unreasonable part into Concupiscible and Irascible.

The Stoicks be of opinion, that composed it is of eight parts, whereof five be the senses natural, to wit, sight, hearing, smelling, tasting, and feeling: the sixth is the voice; the seventh generative, or spermatical, and the eighth, understanding, which guideth and commandeth all the rest by certain proper organs and instruments, like as the Polype fish by her clees and hairy branches.

Democritus and Epicurus set down two parts of the soule: the Reasonable seated in the breast, and the Unreasonable spread and dispersed over all the structure of the body besides.

As for Democritus, he affirmeth, that all things whatsoever, have a certain kind of soul, even the very dead bodies, for that always they do manifestly participate a kind of heat and sensitive faculty, notwithstanding the most part thereof be breathed forth, and yielded up.

#### CHAP. V. Which is the Mistress and commanding part of the Soul, and wherein it is.

**P**lato and Democritus place it in the head throughout: Strato between the two eye-brows: Epicurus in the membrane or kell that enfoldeth the brain, & it he calleth *Epicranion*: Heraclitus within

within the ventricle or concavity of the brain, which also is the basis or foundation of it: Parmenides over all the breast, and with him accordeth Epicurus: the Stoicks all with one voice hold it to be in the whole heart, or else in the spirit about the heart: Diogenes in the cavity of the great Artery of the heart, which is full of vital spirit: Empedocles in the confluence or masse of blood: others in the very neck of the heart: some in the tunic that lappeth the heart: and others againe in the midriff: some of our modern Philosophers hold, that it taketh up and occupieth all the space from the head downward to the Diaphragma or Midriff above said: Pythagoras supposeth that the vital part of the soul is about the heart, but the reason and the intellectual or spiritual part, about the head.

#### CHAP. VI. The motion of the Soul.

**P**lato is of opinion, that the soul moveth continually; but the intelligence or understanding is immovable, in regard of local motion from place to place. Aristotle saith, that the soul it selfe moveth not, although it be the author that rules and directeth all motion; howbeit, that by an accident, it is not devoid of motion, according as divers sorts of bodies do move.

#### CHAP. VII. Of the Soul's immortality.

**P**ythagoras and Plato affirm the soul to be immortal; for in departing out of the body, it retireth to the soul of the universal world, even to the nature which is of the same kind.

The Stoicks hold, that the soul going from the body, if it be feeble and weak, as that is of ignorant persons, felleth downward with the grosse confluence of the body: but if it be more firme and puissant, as that is of wise and learned men, it continueth even unto the conflagration of all.

Democritus and Epicurus say, that it is corruptible, and perisheth together with the body.

Pythagoras and Plato are of opinion, that the reasonable part of the soul is immortal and incorruptible: for that the soul, if it be not God, yet the work it is of eternal God: as for the unreasonable part, it is mortal and subject to corruption.

#### CHAP. VIII. Of the Senses and sensible objects.

**T**he Stoicks thus define Sense: Sense (say they) is the apprehension of the sensitive organ. But Sense is taken many ways; for we understand by it, either an habitude or faculty natural, or a sensible action, or else an imagination apprehensive: which all are performed by the means of an instrument sensitive; yea, and the very eighth part of the soul above named, even that which is principally to wit, the discourse of reason, by which all the rest do consist: Again, the spirits intellectual, are called sensitive instruments, which from the said principal understanding reach unto all the organs.

The Sense (quoth Epicurus) is that parcel of the soul which is the sensitive power it selfe, and the effect which proceedeth from it, so that he taketh Sense in two sorts, for the power, and effect.

Plato defineth Sense to be the society of the body and soul, as touching external objects: for the faculty and power of Sense is proper to the soule, the instrument belongeth to the body: but both the one and the other apprehendeth external things, by the means of the imaginative faculty, or the phantasia.

Leucippus and Democritus do say, that both Sense and intelligence are actuated by the means of certain images represented from without unto us, for that neither the one nor the other, can be performed without the occurrence of some such image.

#### CHAP. IX. Whether Senses and Fancies be true or no?

**T**he Stoicks hold, that the Senses be true; but of Imaginations, as some be true, so others are false.

Epicurus supposeth that all Senses and Imaginations be true: many of opinions, some be true, others false: and as for the Sense, it is deceived one way only, to wit in things intelligible: but imagination after two sorts: for that there is an Imagination as well of sensible things, as of intelligible.

Empedocles and Heraclides say, that particular Senses are effected according to the proportion of their pores and passages; namely, as the proper object of each Sense is well disposed and fitted.

#### CHAP. X. How many Senses there be?

**T**he Stoicks hold, that there be five proper Senses, Sight, Hearing, Smelling, Taste, and Feeling. Aristotle

*Aristotle* saith not, that there is a sixth, howbeit he putteth down one common Sense, which judgeth as touching the compound kinds; whereunto all the other particular and single Senses bring and present their proper imaginations: wherein the transition of the one to the other, as of a figure or motion doth itew.

*Democritus* affirmeth, that there be more Senses in brute beasts; in the gods, and in wise men.

## CHAP. XI.

*After what manner is effected Sense, Nation and Reason, according to disposition or affection.*

*The Stoicks* are of opinion and say, that when a man is engendered, he hath the principal part of his soule, which is the understanding, like for all the world unto a parchment or paper ready to be written in; and therein he doth register and record every several Notion and cogitation of his: for those who have perceived any thing by Sense, as for example sake, have seen a white thing) when the same is gone out of their eye, retain it still in memory: now after they have collected together many semblable memories of the same kind, then they say, they have experience; for experience is nothing else but an heap or multitude of like sorts: but of notions and thoughts, some be natural, which are caused in manner aforesaid, without any artificial means: others come by our study, and by teaching, and such alone properly and indeed are called Notions: the other be numbered rather conceptions or anticipations; and Reason for which we bear the name of Reasonables, is accomplished by the anticipations in the first seven years: and intelligence is the conception in the understanding of a reasonable creature: for phantasie when it lighteth upon the reasonable soul is then called Intelligence. taking the denomination of understanding, which is the cause that these imaginations are not incident unto other creatures; but such as are presented unto gods and us both, those are only and properly imaginations; whereas those which offer themselves unto us, are imaginations in general, and cogitations in special: like as Deniers, Testons, or Crowns being considered apart in themselves, are Deniers, Testons and Crowns; but if you give them for the hire of a ship, then besides that they are Deniers, &c. they be also the fare, for ferry or passage.

## CHAP. XII.

*What difference there is between Imagination, Imaginable, Imaginative, and Imagined.*

*Chrysippus* saith, there is a difference between all these four; and first, as for \* Imagination, it is a passion or impression in the soul, shewing the selfe same thing that made and imprinted it: as for example; when with our eyes we behold a white, it is a passion or affection engendered by the sight in our soul, and we may well say, that the said white is the subject or object that moveth and affecteth us: sensibly in smelling and touching, and this is called Phantasie, a word derived of *φαῖν* or *φαίω*, which signifieth light or clearness: for like as the light sheweth it selfe, and all that is comprised in it, so the Phantasie or imagination representeth it selfe, and that which made it.

\* Imaginable is that which maketh imagination, as white, cold, and whatsoever is able to move or affect the soul, is called imaginable.

\* Phantastick or Imaginative, is a vain attraction: even an affection or passion in the soul, which cometh not from any object imaginable: like as we may observe in him that fighteth with his own shadow, or in vain flingeth forth his hands: for in true phantasie or imagination, there is a subject matter named imaginable: but in this Phantastick or Imaginative there is no such object or subject at all.

\* Phantasie or \* Imagined, is that unto which we are drawn by that vain attraction: a thing visible to those who are either furious, or tormented with the malady of melancholy: for *Oristes* in the Tragedy of *Euripides* when he uttereth these speeches,

*O mother mine, against me raise not this,  
I see beseech, these wench's furious;  
Whom now I see: alas, with bloody eyes,  
And Dragon like, how they against me rise:  
These me beset, and charge on every part,  
These strike on still, these wound me to the heart.*

doth speak them as enraged and in a phantick fit: for he seeth nothing, but onely imagineth and thinketh that he seeth them: and therefore his sister *Electra* replieth thus upon:

*Lie still poor wretch, rest in thy bed, for why?  
Thou seest not that which seems so verily,*

\* *Olyss. v.* toward the end. The same is the case of *Theoclymenus* in \* *Homer*.

## CHAP. XIII.

*Of sight, and how we do see.*

*Democritus* and *Epicurus* supposed, that sight was caused by the intromission of certain images: Others by an insinuation of beams, returning to our eye-sight, after the occurrence of an object.

*Empedocles*

*Empedocles* hath mingled the said images and beames together, calling that which is made thereof, the rays of a compound image. *Hipparchus* holdeth, that the beams sent out and launched from the one eye, and the other coming to be extended, in their ends meet together, and as it were by the touching and clapping of hands, taking hold of external bodies, carry back the apprehension of them unto the visive power.

*Plato* attributeth it to the contradiction or conjunction of light, for that the light of the eyes reacheth a good way within the aire of like nature, and the light likewise issuing from the visible bodies, cutteth the aire between, which of it selfe is liquid and mutable, and so extendeth it together with the fiery power of the eye; and this is it which is called the conjunction light or contradiation of the Platonicks.

## CHAP. XIV.

*Of the Resemblances represented in mirrors.*

*Empedocles* saith, that these apparitions come by the means of certain defluxions, gathered together upon the superficies of the mirror, and accomplished by the fire that ariseth from the said mirror, and which transfigureth the aire that is object before it, into which those defluxions are carried.

*Democritus* and *Epicurus* are of opinion, that these apparences in Mirrors, are caused by the subistence and stay of certain images, which passing from us, gather together upon the Mirror by way of rebounding and refutation.

The Pythagoreans attribute all this to the reflexion of the sight: for that the sight is extended and carried as far as to the Mirror of brass or whatsoever, where resting and staying upon the thick solidity thereof, and beaten back by the polished smoothnesse of the Mirror object against it, the same returneth again upon it selfe; much like as when our hand is stretched out and brought back againe unto the shoulder.

All these points and opinions may serve very well, and be accommodate to that chapter and question, carrying this title: How we do see.

## CHAP. XV.

*Whether Darknesse be visible.*

The *Stoicks* hold, that Darknesse is visible: for that from the sight there is a splendour going forth that compasseth the said Darknesse; neither doth the eye-sight lie and deceive us, for it seeth certainly and in truth that there is Darknesse.

*Chrysippus* saith, that we do see by the tension of the air between, which is pricked by the visual spirit, that passeth from the principal part of the soul into the apple of the eye: and after that it falleth upon the air about it, it extendeth the same in a pyramidal form, namely, when as it meeteth with an aire of the same nature with it: for there flow from out of the eyes certain rays resembling fire, and nothing black or misty, and therefore it is that Darknesse may be seen.

## CHAP. XVI.

*Of Hearing.*

*Empedocles* is of opinion, that Hearing is performed by the means of a spirit or wind gotten within the concavity of the ear, writhed or turned in manner of a vice or screw, which they say is fitted and framed of purpose within the ear, hanging up aloft, and beaten upon in manner of a clock. *Alexander* affirmeth, that we do hear by the void place within the ear: for he saith, that this is it that reboundeth, when the said spirit entrencheth into it: because all empty things do make a sound.

*Diogenes* supposeth, that hearing is caused by the air within the Head, when it cometh to be touched, stirred, and beaten by the voice.

*Plato* and his scholars hold, that the air within the head is smitten, and that it reboundeth and is carried to the principal part of the soul, wherein is reason, and so is formed the sense of Hearing.

## CHAP. XVII.

*Of Smelling.*

*Alexander* affirmeth, that reason, the principal part of the soul, is within the brain, and that by it we smell, drawing in scents and smells by respirations.

*Empedocles* is of this advice, that together with the respiration of the lights, odours also are intromitted and let in: when as then the said respiration is not performed at liberty and ease, but with much adoe, by reason of some asperity in the passage, we smell not at all, like as we observe in them who are troubled with the pox, murr, and such like rheumes.

CHAP. XVIII.  
Of Taste.

**A** Lemmon saith, that by the moisture and warmth in the tongue, together with the softness thereof, all snacks and objects of taste are distinguished.

**Diogenes** attributeth the same to the spongy rarity and softness of the tongue; and for that the veins of the body reach up to it, and are inserted and grafted therein, the flavors are spread abroad and drawn into the sense and principal part of the soul, as it were with a sponge.

CHAP. XIX.  
Of the Voice.

**P**lato defineth the Voice to be a spirit, which by the mouth is brought and directed from the understanding; also a knocking performed by the air, passing through the ears, the brain, and the blood, as far as to the soul; after an improper manner and abusively we attribute Voice to unreasonable Creatures, yea, and to such as have no soul or life at all, namely, to the neighing of horses, and to other sounds; but to speak properly, there is no voice but that which is articulate, and called it is *φωνή* in Greek, for that it declareth that which is in the thought.

**Epicurus** holdeth the Voice to be a fluxion sent forth by such as speak and make a noise, or otherwise do sound; which fluxion breaketh and crumbleth into many fragments of the same forme and figure, as are the things from whence they come; as for example, round to round, and triangles whether they have three equal sides or unequal, to the like triangles: and these broken parcels entering into the ears, make the sense of the Voice, which is hearing; a thing that may be evidently seen in bottles that leak and run out, as also in fullers that blow upon their cloaths.

**Democritus** saith, that the very air breaketh into small fragments of the same figure, that is to say, round to round; and roll together with the fragments of the Voice: for according to the old proverb:

*One chough neer to another chough,  
loves always for to perch,  
And God hath so appointed aie,  
that all their like should search.*

For even upon the shores and sea-sides, stones are evermore found together semblable, to wit, in one place round, in another long; in like manner when as folk do winnow or purge corn with the Van, those grains always are ranged and forced together, which be of one and the same form: in so much as Beans go to one side by themselves, and Cich Pease to another apart by their selves; but against all this it may be alledged and objected: How is it possible that a few fragments of spirit and wind should fill a Theater, that receiveth ten thousand men?

The *Stoicks* say, that the air doth not consist of small fragments, but is continual throughout, and admitteth no voidness at all: howbeit, when it is smitten with spirit or wind, it waveth directly in circles infinitely, until it fill up all the air about, much after the manner as we may perceive in a pond or poole, when there is a stone thrown into it: for like as the water in it moveth in flat circles; so doth the air in roundles like to balls.

**Anaxagoras** saith, that the Voice is formed by the incursion and beating of the Voice against the solid air, which maketh resistance, and returneth the stroke back againe to the ears, which is the manner also of that reduplication of the Voice or resonance called *Echo*.

## CHAP. XX.

*Whether the Voice be incorporall? and how cometh the Echo to be formed?*

**P**ythagoras, Plato, and Aristotle do hold the Voice to be bodiliffe: for that it is not the aire but a form in the aire, and a superficies thereof, and that by a certaine beating which becometh a Voice. Now this is certaine that no superficies hath a body. True it is indeed that it moveth and removeth with the body, but of it selfe without all doubt it hath no body at all: like as in a wand or rod that is bent, the superficies thereof suffereth no alteration, in respect of it selfe, but it is the very matter and substance that is bowed. Howbeit the *Stoicks* are of another opinion & say, that the Voice is a body: for whatsoever is operative and worketh ought, is a body: but certain it is that the Voice is active and doth somewhat: for we do hear and perceive when it beatech upon our ears, and giveth a print, no lesse then a seal upon Wax. Moreover all that moveth or troubleth us, is a body: but who knoweth not that in Music, as good harmony affecteth us; so dissonance and discord doth disquiet us: and that which more is: all that stirreth or moveth is a body: but the voice stirreth and hitreth against smooth and polished solid places, by which it is broken & sent back again

in manner as we do see a tennis ball when it is smitten upon a wall: in so much as in the Pyramides of Egypt, one Voice delivered within them, rendereth foure or five resonances or Echoes for it.

## CHAP. XXI.

*How the Soule cometh to be sensitive: and spirit is the principall and predominant part thereof.*

**T**he *Stoicks* are of opinion, that the supreme and highest part of the Soule is the principall and the guide of the other: to wit, that which maketh imaginations, causeth assents, performeth senses, and moveth appetite: and this is it which they call the discourse of reason. Now of this principall and sovereign part, there be seven others springing from it, and which are spread through the rest of the body, like unto the armes or hairy branches of a poulp fish: of which seven the naturall senses make five; namely, Sight, Smelling, Hearing, Tasting, and Feeling. Of these the Sight is a spirit passing from the chiefest part unto the eyes; Hearing, a spirit reaching from the understanding to the eares; Smelling, a spirit issuing from reason to the nostrils: Tasting, a spirit going from the forelaid principall part unto the tongue: and last of all Feeling, a spirit stretching and extended from the same predominant part, as far as to the sensible superficies of those objects which are easie to be felt and handled. Of the twaine behind, the one is called genital seed, and that is likewise a spirit transmitted from the principall part unto the genitories or members of generation: the other which is the seventh and last of all, *Zēnē* calleth Vocall, and we, Voice: a spirit also, which from the principall part passeth to the wind-pipe, to the tongue, and other instruments appropriate for the voice, And to conclude, that *Mistris* her selfe and Lady of the rest is seated (as it were) in the midst of her own world: Within our round head, and there dwelleth.

## CHAP. XXII.

*Of Respiration.*

**E**mpedocles is of opinion, that the first Respiration of the first living creature was occasioned, when the humidity in young ones within the mothers wombe retired, and the outward aire came to succeed in place thereof, and to enter into the void vessels now open to receive the same: but afterwards the naturall heat driving without forth this airy substance for to evaporate and breath away, caused Expiration: and likewise when the same returned in againe there ensued inspiration, which giveth entrance to that aereous substance. But as touching the respiration that now is, he thinketh it to be when the bloud is carried to the exterior superficies of the body; and by this fluxion doth drive and chafe the airy substance through the nostrils, and cause expiration: and inspiration when the bloud returned inward, and when the aire reentrencheth withall through the rarities which the bloud hath left void and empty. And for to make this better to be understood, he bringeth in the example of a Clespidre or water houre-glaske.

**A**stlepiades maketh the lungs in manner of a tunnell, supposing that the cause of Respiration is the aire, smooth, and of subtill partes which is within the breast, unto which the aire without, being thick and grosse, floweth and runneth; but is repelled back againe: for that the breast is not able to receive any more, nor yet to be cleane without: Now when as there remaineth still behind some little of the subtille aire within the breast, (for it cannot all be cleane driven out) that aire without reacheth againe with equal force upon that within, being able to support and abide the weight thereof: and this compareth he to Physicians ventres, or cupping glasses. Moreover, as touching voluntary Respiration, he maketh this reason, that the smallest holes within the substance of the lungs are drawn together, and their pipes closed up. For these things obey our will.

**Heraclitus** leaveth the motive faculties of the body unto the nerves, arteries, and muscles: for thus he thinketh and saith, that the lungs only have a naturall appetite to dilation, and contraction, that is to say, to draw in and deliver the breath, and so by consequence other parts. For this is the proper action of the lungs, to draw wind from without: wherewith when it is filled there is made another attraction by a second appetite; and the breast deriveth the said wind into it: which being likewise repeate therewith, not able to draw any more, it transmitteth back againe the superfluitie thereof into the lungs, whereby it is sent forth by way of expiration: and thus the parts of the body reciprocally suffer one of another, by way of interchange. For when the lungs are occupied in dilation, the breast is buied in contraction; and thus they make repletion and evacuation by a mutuall participation one with the other: in such sort as we may observe about the lungs foure manner of motions. The first, whereby it receiveth the aire from without; the second, by which it transmitteth into the breast that aire which it drew and received from without; the third, whereby it admitteth againe unto it selfe that which was sent out of the breast; and the fourth, by which it sendeth quite forth that which so returned into it. And of these motions two bedilations, the one occasioned from without, the other from the breast: and the other two, contractions; the one when the breast draweth wind into it: and the other when it doth expell the aire insinuated into it. But in the breast parts there be but two only, the one dilation when it draweth wind from the lungs; the other contraction, when it rendreth it againe.

## CHAP. XXIII.

*Of the Passion of the body; and whether the soule have a fellow-feeling with it, of paine and delour.*

**T**he Stoicks say, that affections are in the passible parts, but senses in the principall part of the soule.

**Epicurus** is of opinion, that both the affections and also the senses, are in the passible places: for that reason which is the principall part of the soule he holdeth to be unpassible.

**Strato** contrariwise affirmeth, that as well the Passions of the soule, as the senses, are in the said principall part, and not in the affected and grieved places; for that in it consisteth patience, which we may observe in terrible and dolorous things, as also in fearefull, and magnanimous persons.

## The Fifth Book of Philosophers Opinions.

## CHAP. I.

*Of Divination.*

**Plato** and the Stoicks bring in a fore-deeming and fore-knowledge of things by inspiration or divine instinct, according to the divinity of the soule; namely, when as it is ravished with a fantastical spirit or revelation by dreames: and these admit and allow many kinds of divination.

**Xenophanes** and **Epicurus** on the contrary side abolish and annul all Divination whatsoever.

**Pythagoras** condemneth that only which is wrought by sacrifices.

**Aristotle** and **Dicæarchus** receive none but that which cometh by Divine inspiration, or by dreames: not supposing the soule to be immortal, but to have some participation of Divinity.

## CHAP. II.

*How Dreames are caused.*

**Democritus** is of opinion, that Dreames come by the representation of images.

**Strato** saith, that our understanding is I wot not how, naturally, and yet by no reason, more sensitive in sleep than otherwise, and therefore solicited the rather by the appetite and desire of knowledge.

**Herophilus** affirmeth, that Dreames divinely inspired come by necessity: but naturall Dreames by this means, that the soule formeth an image and representation of that which is good and commodious unto it, and of that which must enline thereupon: as for such as be of a mixt nature of both, they fall out casually by an accidentall access of images: namely, when we imagine that we see that which we desire; as it falleth out with those who in their sleep thinke they have their paramours in their armes.

## CHAP. III.

*What is the substance of Naturall seed.*

**Aristotle** defineth Seed to be that which hath power to move in it selfe for the effecting of some such thing, as it was from whence it came.

**Pythagoras** taketh it to be the foam of the best and purest bloud, the superfluity and excrement of nouriture: like as bloud and marrow.

**Alcmaeon** saith, it is a portion of the braine.

**Plato** supposeth it to be a decision or deflux of the marrow in the back bone.

**Epicurus** imagineth it to be an abstract of soule and body.

**Democritus** holdeth, that it is the geniture of the fleshy nerves proceeding from the whole body, and the principall parts thereof.

## CHAP. IIII.

*Whether genitall Seed be a body.*

**Leucippus** and **Zeno** take it to be a body; for that it is an abstract parcell of the soule.

**Pythagoras**, **Plato**, and **Aristotle** acknowledge indeed and confesse, that the power and force of Seed is bodilisse: like as the understanding, which is the author of motion; but the matter thereof, say they, which is shed and sent forth, is corporall.

**Strato** and **Democritus** affirme the very puissance thereof to be a body, howbeit spirituall.

## CHAP. V.

*Whether females send forth Seed as well as males.*

**Pythagoras**, **Epicurus**, and **Democritus** hold, that the Female likewise dischargeth Seed: for that it hath seminary vessels turned backward; which is the reason that she hath lust unto the act of generation.

*Aristotle*

**Aristotle** and **Zeno** be of opinion, that the female delivereth from it a moist matter, resembling the sweat which cometh from their bodies, who writtle or exercise together: but they will not have it to be Seed.

**Hippocrates** avoucheth that Females do ejaculate Seed no lesse than Males, howbeit the same is not effectuall for generation, for that it falleth without the matrix: whereupon it cometh to passe that some women, though very few, and widdows especially, do cast from them Seed without the company of men: and he affirmeth, that of the male Seed, are made the bones, and of the female the flesh.

## CHAP. VI.

*The manner of Conception*

**Aristotle** thinketh, that Conceptions come in this manner: when as the matrix drawn before from the naturall purgation, and therewithall the monthly tearmes fetch some part of pure bloud from the whole masse of the body, so that the males genitall may come to it, and so concur to engender: Contrariwise, that which hindereth conception is this, namely, when the matrix is impure or full of ventosities: as it may be by occasion of feare, of sorrow, or weaknesse of women: yea, and by the impuissance and defect in men.

## CHAP. VII.

*How it cometh that Males are engendered, and how Females.*

**Empedocles** supposeth, that Males and Females are begotten by the meanes of heat and cold accordingly: and hereupon recorded it is in Histories, that the first Males in the world, were procreated and borne out of the earth, rather in the East and Southern parts: but Females toward the North.

**Parmenides** maintaineth the contrary, and saith, that Males were bred toward the Northern quarters, for that the aire there is more grosse and thicker than elsewhere: on the other side, Females toward the South, by reason of the rarity and subtilty of the aire.

**Hippocrates** attributeth the cause hereof unto the seed, as it is either more thick or powerfull, or thinner and weaker.

**Anaxagoras** and **Parmenides** hold, that the seed which cometh from the right side of a man, ordinarily is cast into the right side of the matrix: and from the left side likewise into the same side of the matrix: but if this ejection of seed fall out otherwise cleane crosse, then Females be engendered.

**Lophanes**, of whom **Aristotle** maketh mention, affirmeth, that the Males be engendered by the right genitury, and females by the left.

**Leucippus** ascribeth it to the permutation of the naturall parts of generation, for that according to the man hath his yard of one sort, and the woman her matrix of another: more than this he saith nothing.

**Democritus** saith, that the common parts are engendered indifferently by the one and the other, as it hath out; but the peculiar parts that make distinction of sex, of the party which is more prevalent.

**Hippocrates** resolveth thus, that if the seed be predominant, it will be a Male; but if the food and nourishment, a Female.

## CHAP. VIII.

*How Monsters are engendered.*

**Empedocles** affirmeth, that Monsters be engendered either through the abundance of seed, or defect thereof; either through the turbulent perturbation of the moving, or the distraction and division of the seed into sundry parts; or else through the declination thereof out of the right way: and thus he seemeth to have preoccupied in manner all the answers to this question.

**Strato** allegeth for this part addition, or subtraction, transposition or inflation and ventosities: And some Physicists there be, who say, that at such a time as monsters be engendered the matrix full of distortion, for that it is distended with wind.

## CHAP. IX.

*What is the reason that a woman though oftentimes she accompanieth with a man, doth not conceive.*

**Diocles** the Physician rendreth this reason, for that some do send forth no seed at all: or lesse in quantity than is sufficient, or such in quality, which hath no vivificant or quickning power; or else it is for defect of heat, of cold, of moisture, or driness: or last of all, by occasion of the paralytic resolution of the privy parts and members of generation.

The Stoicks lay the cause hereof upon the obliquity or crookednesse of the mans member, by occasion whereof, he cannot shoot forth his seed directly; or else it is by reason of the disproportion of the parts, as namely, when the matrix lieth too far within, that the yard cannot reach unto it.

**Erasthratus** findeth fault in this case with the matrix, when it hath either hard callosities, or too much carnosity; or when it is more rare and spongy, or else smaller then it ought to be.

M m m 3

CHAP.



## CHAP. X.

*How it commeth that two Twins and three Twins are borne.*

**E**mpedocles saith, that two Twins or three, are engendered by occasion either of the abundance, or the division of the feed.

*Alexandri* assigneth it unto the difference of bodies, or the excellence of feed : after which manner wee see how some barley from one root beareth two or three stalks with their eares upon them, according as the feed was most fruitfull and generative.

*Erasistratus* attributeth it unto divers conceptions and superfatations, like as in brute beasts ; for when as the matrix is cleafed, then it commeth soon to conception and superfatation.

The *Stoicks* alledge to this purpose the cels or conceptacles within the matrix ; for as the feed falleth into the first and second, there follow conceptions and superfatations, and after the same sort may three Twins be engendered.

## CHAP. XI.

*How commeth it to passe that children resemble their parents or progenitors before them.*

**E**mpedocles affirmeth, that as similitudes are caused by the exceeding force of the genital feed ; so the dissimilitudes arise from the evaporation of natural heat contained within the same feed.

*Parmenides* is of opinion, that when the feed descendeth out of the right side of the matrix, the children be like unto the fathers, but when it passeth from the left side, unto the mothers.

The *Stoicks* opine thus ; from the whole body and the soule passeth the feed, and so the similitudes do forme of the same kinds, the figures & characters, like as a painter of the like colours draweth the image of that which he seeth before him : also the woman for her part doth confer genital feed, which if it be prevalent, then the infant is like unto the mother ; but if the mans seed be more predominant, it will resemble the father.

## CHAP. XII.

*How it falleth out that children resemble others, and not their fathers and mothers.*

**T**he most part of the Physicians affirme this to happen by chance and adventure, but upon this occasion, that the feed, as well of the man as the woman waxeth cold, for then the infants resemble neither the one nor the other.

*Empedocles* attributeth the forme and resemblance of young babes in the wombe, unto the strong imagination of the woman in time of conception ; for many times it hath been known, that women have been enamoured of painted images and statues, and so delivered of children like unto them.

The *Stoicks* say, that by a sympathy of the mind and understanding, through the insinuation of beams, and not of images, these resemblances are caused.

## CHAP. XIII.

*How it commeth that some women be barren, and men likewise unable to get children.*

**P**hysicians hold, that women be barren by reason that the matrix is either too freight, overrare, or too hard ; or else by occasion of certaine callosities or carnosities ; or for that the women themselves be weaklings and heartlesse, or do not thrive but mislike ; or else because they are fallen into some Cachexia and evil habit of body ; or by reason that they are distorted, or otherwise in a convulsion.

*Diocles* saith, that men in this action of generation are impotent, for that some send forth no seed at all, or at leastwise in quantity lesse than is meet, or such as hath no generative power ; or because their genitals be paralytical or relaxed ; or by reason that the yard is crooked, that it cannot cast the seed forward ; or for that the genital members be disproportioned and not of a competent length, considering the distance of the matrix.

The *Stoicks* lay the fault upon certaine faculties and qualities, discordant in the parties themselves that come together about this buisness ; who being parted one from another, and conjoynd with others uniting well with their complexion, there followeth a temperature according to nature, and a child is gotten between them.

## CHAP. XIII.

*Why Males be barren.*

**A**lexandri is of opinion, that Males, that is to say, male Mules be not able to engender, for that their feed or geniture is of a thin substance which proceedeth from the coldnesse thereof. The Females also, because their shape doth not open wide enough, that is to say, the mouth thereof doth not gape sufficiently ; for these be the very reasons that he useth.

*Empedocles*

*Empedocles* blameth exility or finaltesse, the low posture, and the over-freight conformation of the matrix, being so turned backward and tied unto the belly, that neither feed can be directly cast into the capacity of it, nor if it were carried thither would it receive the same. Unto whom *Diocles* also beareth witness, saying, Many times (quoth he) in the dissection of Anatomies we have seen such matrices of Mules ; and it may be therefore, that in regard of such causes some women also be barren.

## CHAP. XIV.

*Whether the Infant lying yet in the mothers wombe, is to be accounted a living creature or no.*

**P**lato directly pronounceth that such an Infant is a living creature : for that it moveth, and is fed within the belly of the mother.

The *Stoicks* say, it is a part of the wombe, and not an animal by it selfe. For like as fruits be parts of the trees, which when they be ripe do fall ; even so it is with an Infant in the mothers wombe.

*Empedocles* denieth it to be a creature animally, howbeit that it hath life and breath within the belly ; marry the first time that it hath respiration is at the birth ; when the superfluous humidity which is in such unborne fruits is retired and gone, so that the aire from without entrench into the void vessels lying open.

*Dogenes* saith, that such Infants are bred within the matrix inanimate, howbeit in heat, whereupon it commeth that natural heat, so soon as ever the Infant is turned out of the mothers wombe is drawn into the lungs.

*Herophilus* leaveth to unborne babes a moving naturall ; but not a respiration ; of which motion the sinews be the instrumentall cause ; but afterwards they become perfect living animal creatures ; when being come forth of the wombe they take in breath from the aire.

## CHAP. XVI.

*How unborne babes are fed in the Wombe.*

**D**emocritus and *Epicurus* hold, that this imperfect fruit of the wombe receiveth nourishment at the mouth ; and thereupon it commeth, that so soon as ever it is borne it seeketh and muzzel-eth with the mouth for the breast head, or nipple of the pap ; for that within the matrix there be certaine teats, yea, and mouths too, whereby they are nourished.

The *Stoicks* say, that it is fed by the secundine and the navell ; whereupon it is that Midwives presently knit up and ty the navell string fast, but open the Infants mouth ; to the end that it be acquainted with another kind of nourishment.

*Alexandri* affirmeth, that the Infant within the mothers womb feedeth by the whole body throughout ; that it sucketh to it and draweth in manner of a sponge, of all the food, that which is good for nourishment.

## CHAP. XVII.

*What part of the Child is first made perfect within the mothers belly.*

**T**he *Stoicks* are of opinion, that the most parts are framed all at once ; but *Aristotle* saith, the back bone and the loines are first framed, like as the keele in a ship.

*Alexandri* affirmeth, that the head is first made, as being the seat of reason.

*Physicians* will have the heart to be the first, wherein the veins and arteries are.

Some think the great toe is framed first, and others the navel.

## CHAP. XVIII.

*What is the cause that Infants borne at seven months end be livelike.*

**E**mpedocles thinketh, that when mankind was first bred of the earth, one day then, by reason of the slow motion of the Sun was full as long, as (in this age of ours) ten months ; and that in process of time, and by succession it came to be of the length of seven months : And therefore (quoth he) infants borne either at ten or seven months end do ordinarily live : the nature of the world being so accustomed in one day to bring that fruit to maturity after that night, wherein it was committed into the wombe thereof.

*Timaeus* saith, that they be not ten months, but are counted nine, after that the monthly purgation lay upon the first conception : and so it is thought that infants be of seven months which are born ; for that he knew how after conception many women have had their mensstrual flux.

*Polybus*, *Diocles*, and the *Empiricks* know, that the eight months child also is vital ; howbeit in some sort feeble, for that many for feeblenesse have died so borne : in general, and for the most part ordinarily none are willing to reare and feed the children borne at the seventh month ; and yet many have been fo borne and grown to mans estate.

*Aristotle* and *Hippocrates* report, that if in seven months the matrix be grown full, then the Infant seeketh to get forth ; and such commonly live and do well enough ; but if it incline to birth, and be not sufficiently nourished, for that the navel is weaker, then in regard of hard travell, both the mother

mother is in danger, and her fruit becometh too milke and thrive not: but in case it continue nine months within the matrix, then it cometh forth accomplished and perfect.

*Polybus* affirmeth it to be requisite and necessary for the vitality of infants; that there should be 127 daies and a halfe, which is the time of fix months compleat: in which space the sun cometh from one Solstice to Tropick to another: but such children are said to be of seven months, when it falleth out that odd daies left in this month are taken to the seventh month. But he is of opinion, that those of eight months live not; namely, when as the infant hasteneth indeed out of the womb, and breath downward, but for the most part the navell is thereby put to fire and retched, and so cannot feed, as that should, which is the cause of food to the infant.

The *Mathematicians* beare us in hand and say, that eight months be disociable of all generations, but seven are sociable. Now the disociable signes are such as meet with such stars and constellations which be Lords of the house: for if upon any of them falleth the lot of mans life and course of living, it signifieth that such shall be unfortunate and short lived. These disociable signes be reckoned eight in number: namely, *Aries* with *Scorpio* is unfociable; *Taurus* with *Scorpio* is unfociable; *Gemin* with *Capricorne*; *Cancer* with *Aquarius*; *Leo* with *Pisces*; and *Virgo* with *Aries*: And for this cause infants of seven months and ten months be livelike, but those of eight months for the infociable disiffidence of the world, perish and come to naught.

## CHAP. XIX.

*Of the generation of animall creatures: after what manner they be engendered; and whether they be corruptible.*

They who hold that the world was created, are of opinion, that living creatures alive had their creation or beginning, and shall likewise perish and come to an end.

The *Epicurians*, according unto whom Animals had no creation, do suppose that by mutation of one into another, they were first made: for they are the substantiall parts of the world: like as *Anaxagoras* and *Empirides* affirme in these termes: Nothing dieth, but in changing as they do one for another, they shew sundry formes.

*Anaximander* is of opinion, that the first Animals were bred in moisture, and enclosed within prickly and sharpe pointed barks; but as age grew on they became more dry, and in the end, when the said barks burst and clave in sunder round about them, a small while after they survived.

*Empirides* thinketh, that the first generations, as well of living creatures as of plants, were not wholly compleat and perfect in all parts, but disjoynd, by reason that their parts did not cohere and unite together: that the second generations when the parts begun to combine and close together seemed like to images: that the third generations were of parts growing and arising mutually one out of another; and the fourth were no more of semblable, as of earth and water, but one of another, and in some the nourishment was inactivate and made thick, as for others the beauty of women provoked and pricked in them a lust of spermatike motion. Moreover, that the kinds of all living creatures were distinct and divided by certaine temperatures; for such as were more familiarly inclined to water, went into water: others into the aire, for to draw and deliver their breath to and fro, according as they held more of the nature of fire; such as were of a more heavy temperature were bestowed upon the earth; but those, who were of an equall temperature, uttered voice with the whole breaths.

## CHAP. XX.

*How many sorts of living creatures there be, whether they be all sensitive and ended with reason.*

There is a Treatise of *Aristotle* extant, wherein he putteth down foure kinds of Animals, to wit, Terrestriall, Aquaticall, Volatile, and Caelestiall: for you must thinke, that he calleth Heavens, Stars, and the World, Animals; even as well as those that partipate of earth: yea, and God he denieth to be a reasonable Animall and immortal.

*Democritus* and *Epicurus* do say, that heavenly Animals are reasonable.

*Anaxagoras* holdeth, that all Animals are ended with active reason, but want the passive understanding, which is called the interpreter or truncheon of the mind.

*Pythagoras* and *Plato* do affirme, that the soules even of those very Animals which are called unreasonable and brute beasts are ended with reason; howbeit they are not operative with that reason, neither can they actuate it, by reason of the disordered composition of their bodies, and because they have not speech to declare and expound themselves: as for example, apes and dogs which utter a babling voice, but not an expresse language and distinct speech.

*Diogenes* supposeth that they have an intelligence; but partly for the grosse thicknesse of their temperature, and in part for the abundance of moisture, they have neither discourse of reason nor sense, but are like unto those who be furious; for the principall part of the soule, to wit, Reason is defective and impeached.

## CHAP.

## CHAP. XXI.

*Within what time are living creatures formed in the mothers wombe.*

*Empirides* saith, that men begin to take forme after the thirty sixth day; and are finished and knit in their parts within fifty daies wanting one.

*Alexander* saith, that the members of males, because they be more hot, are joynted, and receive shape in the space of 26 daies, and many of them sooner; but are finished and compleat in all limbs within fifty daies; but the females require two months ere they be fashioned, and four before they come to their perfection; for that they want naturall heat. As for the parts of unreasonable creatures, they come to their accomplishment sooner or later, according to the temperature of the elements.

## CHAP. XXII.

*Of how many elements is composed each of the general parts which are in us.*

*Empirides* thinketh, that flesh is engendered of an equall mixture and temperature of the foure elements: the finenes of earth and fire, mingled together in a duple proportion; the nailes and claws living creatures come of the nerves refrigerate and made cold in those places where the aire toucheth them: the bones, of water and earth within: and of these foure medled and con-tempered together sweat and teares proceed.

## CHAP. XXIII.

*When and how doth man begin to come to his perfection.*

*Heraclitus* and the *Stoicks* suppose, that men do enter into their perfection about the second Hermiane of their age, at what time as their naturall feed doth move and run: for even the very trees begin then to grow unto their perfection; namely, when as they begin to engender their seed: for before then unperfect they are, namely, so long as they be unripe and fruitlesse: and therefore a man likewise about that time is perfect: and at this septenary of yeares be beginneth to consider and understand what is good and evil, yea, and to learn the same.

Some thinke that a man is consummate at the end of the third septimane of yeares, what time as he maketh use of his full strength.

\* This I find in the Latine translation.

## CHAP. XXIII.

*In what manner Sleep is occasioned, or death.*

*Alexander* is of this mind, that sleep is caused by the returne of blood into the confluent veines; and Waking is the diffusion and spreading of the said blood abroad: but Death the utter departure thereof.

*Empirides* holdeth that Sleep is occasioned by a moderate cooling of the naturall heat of blood within us: and Death by an extreme coldnesse of the said blood.

*Diogenes* is of opinion, that if blood being diffused and spread throughout, fill the veines, and with all drive back the aire seded thereabout into the breast, and the inferior belly under it, then ensueth Sleep, and the breith with the precordiall parts are hotter thereby: but if that aireous substance in the veines expire altogether, and exhale forth, presently followeth death.

*Plato* and the *Stoicks* affirme, that the cause of sleep is the remission of the spirit sensitive, not by way of relaxation and descent downward, as it were to the earth: but rather by elevation aloft, namely, when it is carried to the interstice or place between the brows, the very seat of reason: but when there is an entire resolution of the spirit sensitive, then of necessity Death doth ensue.

## CHAP. XXV.

*Whether of the twaine it is, that Sleepeth or dieth, the Soule or the Body?*

*Aristotle* verily supposeth that Sleep is common to Body and Soule both: and the cause thereof is a certaine humidity which doth steame and arise in manner of a vapour out of the stomack and the food therein, up into the region of the head, and the naturall heat about the heart cooled thereby. But death he deemeth to be an entire and totall refrigeration; and the same of the Body only, and in no wise of the Soule, for it is immortal.

*Anaxagoras* saith, that Sleep belongeth to corporall action; as being a passion of the Body and not of the Soule: also that there is likewise a certaine death of the Body, to wit, the separation of it and the Body asunder.

*Leucippus* is of opinion, that Sleep pertaineth to the Body only, by concretion of that which was of subtle parts: but the excessive excretion of the animall heat is Death: which both (saith he) be passions of the Body, and not of the Soule.

*Empirides* saith, that Death is a separation of those elements whereof mans Body is compounded: according to which position, Death is common to Soule and Body: and Sleep a certaine diffipation of that which is of the nature of fire.

## CHAP.

## CHAP. XXVI.

*How Plants come to grow; and whether they be animate.*

**P**lato and Empedocles hold, that Plants have life, yea, and be animal creatures which appeareth (say they) by this, that they wag to and fro, and stretch forth their boughs like armes; also, that when they be violently strained and bent, they yeeld; but if they be let loose they returne againe, yea, in their growth are able to overcome weight laid upon them.

*Avicenna* granteth that they be living creatures, but not animall; for that animall creatures have motions and appetites, are sensitive and endued with reason.

The *Stoicks* and the *Epicureans* hold, that they have no soule or life at all: for of animall creatures some have the appetitive and concupiscible soule, others the reasonable: but Plants grow after a sort casually of their own accord, and not by the means of any soule.

*Empedocles* saith, that Trees sprang and grew out of the ground before animall creatures: to wit, ere the Sun displayed his beames, and before that day and night were distinct. Also that according to the proportion of temperature, one came to be named, Male, another, Female; that they shoot up and grow by the power of heat within the earth; in such sort, as they be parts of the earth, like as unborn fruits in the womb be parts of the matrix. As for the fruits of trees, they are the superfluous excrements of water and fire: but such as have defect of that humidity, when it is dried up by the heat of the Summer, lose their leaves: whereas they that have plenty thereof keep their leaves on still; as for example, the Laurell, Olive, and Date tree. Now as touching the difference of their juyces and sapours, it proceedeth from the diversity of that which nourisheth them, as appeareth in Vines: for the difference of Vine trees maketh not the goodness of Vines for to be drunke, but the nutriment that the territory and soile doth afford.

## CHAP. XXVII.

*Of Nourishment and Growth.*

*Empedocles* is of opinion, that animall creatures are nourished by the substance of that which is proper and familiar unto them; that they grow by the presence of natural heat; that they diminish and perish through the default both of the one and the other. And as for men now adies living, in comparison of their ancestors, they be but babes new borne.

## CHAP. XXVIII.

*How Animall creatures came to have appetite and pleasure.*

*Empedocles* supposeth, that Lust and Appetites are incident to animall creatures, through the defect of those elements which went unto the framing of each one: that pleasures arise from humidity: as for the motions of perils and such like, as also troubles and hinderances, &c. \* \* \*

## CHAP. XXIX.

*After what sort a Fever is engendred, and whether it is an accessory to another malady.*

*Rassistratus* defineth a Fever thus: A Fever (quoth he) is the motion of bloud, which is entered into the veines or vessels proper unto the spirits, to wit, the arteries; and that against the will of the patient; for like as the sea when nothing troubleth it lieth still and quiet: but if a boisterous and violent wind be up and bloweth upon it, contrary unto nature it furetheth and riseth up into billows even from the very bottom; so in the body of man, when the bloud is moved, it invadeth the vitall and spirituell vessels, and being set on fire, it enchaeth the whole body. And according to the same physicians opinion, a Fever is an accessory or consequent coming upon another disease.

But *Diocles* affirmeth, that Symptoms apparent without forth, do shew that which lieth hidden within: Now we see that an Ague followeth upon those accidents that outwardly appeare: as for example, wounds, inflammations, impostumes, biles and borches in the shere and other emunctories.

## CHAP. XXX.

*Of Health, Sicknesse, and old age.*

*Alemann* is of opinion that the equall dispensing and distribution of the faculties in the body, to wit, of moisture, heat, drynesse, cold, bitter, sweet, and the rest, is that which holdeth and maintaineth Health; contrariwise, the Monarchy, that is to say, the predominant sovereignty of any of them causeth sicknesse: for the predominance and principality of any one bringeth the corruption of all the other, and is the very cause of maladies: the efficient in regard of excessive heat or cold; and the material in respect of superabundance, or defect of humours; like as in some there is want of blood or braine; whereas health is a proportionable temperature of all these qualities.

*Diocles* supposeth, that most diseases grow by the inequality of the elements, and of the habit and constitution of the body.

*Rassistratus*

*Rassistratus* saith, that sicknesse proceedeth from the exceffe of feeding, from crudities, indigestions, and corruptions of meat: whereas good order and suffiance is Health. The *Stoicks* accord hereunto and hold, that old age cometh for want of natural heat; for they who are most furnished therewith, live longest, and be old a great time.

*Alepiades* reporteth, that the *Ethiopi*ans age quickly, namely, when they be thirty years old; by reason that their bodies be over-heat, and even burnt again with the sun: whereas in *England* and all *Britain*, folk in their age continue 100. years; for that those parts be cold, and in that people the natural heat by that means is united and kept in their bodies: for the bodies of the *Ethiopi*ans are more open and rare, in that they be relaxed and relolved by the suns heat. Contrariwise their bodies who live toward the North Pole, be more compact, knit and fast, and therefore, such are long-lived.

Roman Questions, that is to say, *An enquiry into the causes of many Fashions and Customes in Rome.*

A Treatise fit for them who are conversant in the reading of *Roman Histories and Antiquities*, giving a light to many places otherwise obscure and hard to be understood.

## I.

*What is the reason that new wedded wives are bidden to touch fire and water.*

1. **I**t is because that among the elements and principles, whereof are composed natural bodies, the one of these twain, to wit, fire is the Male, and water the Female, of which, that infuseth the beginning of motion, and this affordeth the property of the subject and matter?

2. Or rather, for that, as the fire purgeth, and water washeth; so a Wife ought to consume pure, chaste, and clean all her life.

3. Or is it in this regard, that as fire without humidity yeeldeth no nourishment, but is dry; and moisture without heat is idle, fruitlesse and barren; even so the Male is feeble, and the Female lifelesse, when they be apart and severed asunder: but the conjunction of two married folk yeeldeth unto both, their cohabitation and perfection of living together.

4. Or last of all, because man and wife ought not to forsake and abandon one another, but to take part of all fortunes; though they had no other good in the world common between them, but fire and water only.

## II.

*How it is, that they use to light at weddings five torches, and neither more nor lesse, which they call Wax-light.*

**W**hether it is as *Varro* saith, because the Prætors or Generals of Armies use three, and the *Ædiles* two: therefore it is not meet that they should have more then the Prætors and *Ædiles* together: considering that new married folk goe unto the *Ædiles* to light their fire?

2. Or, because having use of many numbers, the odd number seemed unto them as in all other respects better, and more perfect then the even: so it was fitter and more agreeable for marriage: for the even number implieth a kind of discord and division, in respect of the equal parts in it, meet for siding, quarrell, and contention: whereas the odd number cannot be divided so just and equally but there will remain somewhat still in common for to be parted. Now among all odd numbers, it seemeth that Cinque is most nuptial, and best befitting marriage: for that Trey is the first odd number, and Deuz the first even: of which twain, five is compounded, as of the Male and the Female.

3. Or is it rather, because light is a sign of being and of life: and a woman may beare at the most five children at one burden: and so they used to carry five tapers or wax candles?

4. Or lastly, for that they thought, that those who were married had need of five gods and goddesses: namely, *Jupiter* \* genial, *Juno* genial, *Venus*, *Shade*, and above all *Diana*: whom (last named) \* Or *Nuptial*, women in their labour and travel of child-birth, are wont to call upon for help.

## III.

*What is the cause that there being many Temples of Diana in Rome, into that only which standeth in the Paucian street, men enter not.*

It is not because of a Tale which is told in this manner: In old time a certain woman being come thither for to adore and worship this goddesse, chanced there to be abused and suffer violence in her honour: and he who forced her, was torn in pieces by Hounds: Upon which accident, ever after, a certain superstitious fear possessed mens heads, that they would not presume to go into the said Temple.

## IV.

*Wherefore is it, that in other Temples of Diana men are wont ordinarily to set up and setten Harts horns: onely in that which is upon mount Aventine: the horns of Oxen and other Beests are to be seen.*

May it not be, that this is respective to the remembrance of an ancient occurrent that sometime beel? For reported it is that long since in the Sabines country, one *Antion Coratius* had a Cow, which grew to be exceeding fair and wonderful big withal above any other: and a certain Wizard or Soothsayer came unto him and said: How predestined it was that the City which sacrificed that Cow unto *Diana* in the mount *Aventine*, should become most puissant and rule all *Italy*: This *Coratius* therefore came to Rome of a deliberate purpose to sacrifice the said Cow accordingly: but a certain household servant that he had, gave notice secretly unto King *Servius Tullius* of this prediction delivered by the above said Soothsayer: whereupon *Servius* acquainted the Priest of *Diana*, *Cornelius*, with the matter: and therefore when *Antion Coratius* presented himselfe for to perform his sacrifice, *Cornelius* advertised him, first to go down into the river, there to wash: for that the custome and manner of those that sacrificed was so to do: now whiles *Antion* was gone to wash himselfe in the river, *Servius* steps into his place, prevented his return, sacrificed the Cow unto the goddesse, and nailed up the horns when he had so done, within her Temple, *Juba* thus relateth this history, and *Varro* likewise, saying that *Varro* expressly setteth not down the name of *Antion*, neither doth he write that it was *Cornelius* the Priest, but the Sexton onely of the Church that thus beguiled the Sabine.

## V.

*Why are they who have been falsely reported dead in a strange Country, although they return home alive, not received nor suffered to enter directly at the doors, but forced to climb up to the tiles of the house, and so to get down from the roof into the house?*

*Varro* tendereth a reason hereof, which I take to be altogether fabulous: for he writeth, that during the Sicilian war, there was a great battell fought upon the sea, and immediately upon it, there ran a rumour of many that they were dead in this fight: who notwithstanding, they returned home safe, died all within a little while after: howbeit, one there was among the rest, who when he would have entred into his own house, found the door of the own accord fast shut against him: and for all the forcible means that was made to open the same, yet it would not prevail: whereupon this man taking up his lodging without, just before his door, as he slept in the night, had a vision which advertised and taught him how he should from the roofe of the house let himselfe down by a rope, and so get in: now when he had so done, he became fortunate ever after, all the rest of his life: and he lived to be a very aged man: and hereof arose the foresaid custome, which always afterwards was kept and observed.

But haply this fashion may seem in some sort to have been derived from the Greeks: for in Greece they thought not those pure and clean who had been carried forth for dead to be entred, or whose sepulture and funerals were solemnised or prepared: neither were such allowed to frequent the company of others, nor suffered to come neer unto their sacrifices. And there goeth a report of a certain man named *Arifinus*, one of those who had been possessed with this superstition, how he sent unto the Oracle of *Apollo* at *Delphos*, for to make supplication and prayer unto the god, for to be delivered out of this perplexed anxiety that troubled him by occasion of the said custome or law then in force: and that the Prophetesse *Pythia* returned this answer:

*Look what soever women do  
in childbed newly laid,  
Unto their babes, which they brought forth,  
the very same I say  
See that be done to thee again:  
and after that be sure,  
Unto the blessed gods with hands  
to sacrifice, most pure.*

Which Oracle thus delivered, *Arifinus* having well pondered and considered, committed himselfe

as an infant new born unto women for to be new washed, to be wrapped in swaddling cloaths, and to be suckled with the breast-head: after which, all such others, whom we call *Hyleropaimous*, that is to say, those whose graves were made, as if they had been dead, did the semblable. Howbeit, some do say, that before *Arifinus* was born, these ceremonies were observed about those *Hyleropaimous*, and that this was a right ancient custome kept in the flemable case: and therefore no marvel it is, that the Romans also thought, that such as were supposed to have been once buried, and ranged with the dead in another world, ought not to enter in the same porch, out of which they goe, when they purpose to sacrifice unto the gods, or at which they re-enter when they return from sacrifice: but would have them from above to descend through the tiles of the roof into the close houles with the aire open over their heads: for all their purifications ordinarily they performed without the house abroad in the air.

## VI.

*Why do women kisse the lips of their kinsfolke?*

It is as most men think, for that women being forbidden to drink wine, the manner was brought up: That whensoever they met their kinsfolk, they should kisse their lips, to the end they might not be unknown, but convicted if they had drunk Wine? or rather for another reason, which *Aristotle* the Philosopher hath alledged? for as touching that occasion, which is so famous and commonly voiced in every mans mouth, yea, and reported of diverts and lundry places: it was no doubt the dearly attempt executed by the dames of *Troy*, and that upon the coasts of *Italy*: for when the men upon their arrival were landed: the women in the mean while set fire upon their ships, for vengeance that they had to lee an end at once, one way or other of their long voyage, and to be delivered from their tedious travel at sea: but fearing the fury of their men, when they should return, they went forth to meet their kinsfolk and friends upon the way, and welcomed them with an amiable embracing and sweet kisses of their lips: by which means having appeased their angry mood, and recovered their favours, they continued ever after, the custome of kind greeting and loving salutation in this manner.

Or was not this a priviledge granted unto women for their greater honour and credit: namely, to be known and seen for to have many of their race and kindred, and those of good worth and reputation?

Or because it was not lawful to espouse women of their blood and kindred, therefore permitted they were to entertain them kindly and familiarly with a kisse, so they proceeded no farther: inso-much as this was the only mark and token left of their consanguinity. For before time, they might marry women of their own blood: no more then in these days their Aunts by the Mothers side, or their Sisters: and long it was ere men were permitted to contract marriage with their Cousen Germans: and that upon such an occasion as this. There was a certain man of poor estate and small living, howbeit otherwise of good and honest carriage, and of all others that managed the publick affairs of State most popular and gracious with the Commons: who was supposed to keep as his espoused wife a kinswoman of his and cousen german, an inheritresse: by whom he had great wealth, and became very rich: for which he was accused judicially before the people: but upon a special favor that they bare unto him, they would not enquire into the cause in question: but not only suppressed his bill of enditement, and let her go as quit of all crime, but also even they, enacted a Statute: by vertue whereof, lawfull it was for all men from that time forward to marry, as far as to their Cousen Germans, but in any higher or neerer degree of consanguinity, they were exprelly forbidden.

## VII.

*Wherefore is it not lawful either for the husband to receive a gift of his wife, or for the wife of the husband.*

May it not be, for that, as *Solon* ordained that the Donations and Bequests, made by those that had a full stand good, unless they be such as a man hath granted upon necessity, or by the inducement and flattery of his wife: in which provilio, he excepted necessity, as forcing and constraining the will: and likewise pleasure, as deceiving the judgement: even so have men suspected the mutuality passing between the husband and the wife, and thought them to be of the same nature.

Or was it not thought, that giving of presents was of all other the least and worst sign of amity and good will (for even strangers and such as bear no love at all life in that sort to be giving) and in that regard they would banish out of marriage such kind of pleasing and currying favour: to the end that the mutual love and affection between the parties should be free and without respect of salary and gain, even for it selfe and nothing else in the world.

Or because women commonly admit and entertain strangers, as corrupted by receiving of presents and gifts at their hands. It was thought to stand more with honour and reputation, that wives should love their own husbands, though they gave them nothing by way of gift.

Or rather, for that it was meet and requisite, that the goods of the husband should be common to the wife, and to the wife likewise of the husband: for the party who receiveth a thing in gift, doth learn to repurchase that which was not given, to be none of his own, but belonging unto another: so that man and wife in giving never so little one to another, depleit and defraud themselves of all that is beside.

## VIII.

\* Daughters here band;  
\* Wives Father.  
\* This may seem to have some reference to the former question.

*What might be the cause that they were forbidden to receive any gift either of \* Son in Law, or \* Father in Law?*

**O**F Son in Law, for fear lest the gift might be thought by the means of the Father to pass about, and return unto the Wife: and of the Father in Law, because it was supposed meet and just, that he who gave not, should nos likewise receive ought.

## IX.

*What should be the Reason that the Romans when they returned from some voyage out of a far and forraign country, or only from their farm into the City: if their wives were at home, used to send a messenger unto them before, for to give warning and advertisement of their coming?*

**E**ither it was because this is a token of one that beleeveeth and is verily perswaded that his Wife intendeth no lewdnesse, nor is otherwise busied then well: whereas to come upon her at unawares and on a sodain, is a kind of forlaying and surprize. Or for that they make haste to send them good news of their coming, as being assured that they have a longing desire, and do expect such tidings.

Or rather because themselves would be glad to hear from them some good news, to wit, whether they shall find them in good health when they come, and attending affectionately and with great devotion, their return.

Or else because women ordinarily, when their husbands be away and from home, have many petty businesse and house affairs: and other whiles there fall out some little jars and quarrels within doors with their servants, men or maidens: to the end therefore all such troubles and inconveniences might be overblown, and that they might give unto their husbands a loving and aimable welcome home, they have intelligence given unto them before hand of their arrival and approach.

## X.

*What is the cause that when they adore and worship the gods, they cover their heads: but contrariwise when they meet with any honourable or worshipfull persons, if their heads haply were then covered with their robes, they discover the same, and are bare-headed.*

**F**or it seemeth that this fashion maketh the former doubt and branch of the question more difficult to be assayed: and if that which is reported of *Aeneas* be true; namely that as *Dionides* paid off by him whiles he sacrificed, he covered his head, and so performed his sacrifice: there is good reason and consequence, that if men be covered before their enemies, they should be bare when they encounter either their friends, or men of worth and honour: for this manner of being covered before the gods, is not properly respective unto them, but occasioned by accident, and hath, since that example of *Aeneas*, been observed and continued.

But if we must say somewhat else beside, consider whether it be not sufficient to enquire only of this point: namely, why they cover their heads when they worship the gods, seeing the other consequently dependeth hereupon: for they stand bare before men of dignity and authority, not to do them any more honor thereby, but contrariwise to diminish their envy, for fear they might be thought to require as much reverence and the same honor as is exhibited to the gods, or suffer themselves, and take pleasure to be observed and revered equally with them: as for the gods, they adored them after this sort: either by way of lowliness and humbling themselves before their majesty, in covering and hiding their heads; or rather because they feared lest as they made their prayers, there should come unto their hearing, from without, any sinister voice or insinuating and ominous offer: and to prevent such an object they drew their hood over their ears: And how true it is, that they had a careful eye and regard to meet with all such accidents, it may appear by this, that when they went to any Oracle for to be resolved by answer from thence upon a scrupulous doubt, they caused a great noise to be made all about them, with ringing of pans or brazen basons.

Or it may well be (as *Castor* saith, comparing in concordance the Roman fashions with the rites of the Pythagoreans) for that the Dæmon or good Angel within us, hath need of the gods help without, and maketh supplication with covering the head, giving thus much covertly to understand thereby, that the soul is likewise covered and hidden by the body.

## XI.

*Why sacrifice they unto Saturn bare-headed.*

**I**s it because *Aeneas* first brought up this fashion of covering the head at sacrifices; and the sacrifice to *Saturnus* is much more ancient then his time?

Or, for that they used to be covered unto the celestial gods: but as for *Saturn* he is reputed a Subterranean or terrestrial god?

Or, in this respect, that there is nothing hidden, covered, or shadowed in Truth? For among the Romans, *Saturn* was held to be the father of Verity,

XII.

## XII.

*Why do they repute Saturn the Father of Truth.*

**I**s it for that (as some Philosophers deem) they are of opinion that \* *Saturn* is \* Time? and Time you know well findeth out and revealeth the Truth.  
Or, because as the Poets Fable, men lived under *Saturnus* reign in the golden age: and if the life of man was then most just and righteous, it followeth consequently that there was much truth in the world.

## XIII.

*What is the reason that they sacrificed likewise unto the god whom they reamed Honor, with bare head? now a man may interpret Honor to be as much as Glory and Reputation.*

**I**t is haply because Honor and Glory is a thing evident, notorious, and exposed to the knowledge of the whole world: and by the same reason that they veil Bonet before men of worship, dignity, and honour, they adore also the Deity that beareth the name of Honor, with the head bare.

## XIV.

*What may be the cause, that Sons carry their Fathers and Mothers forth to be enterr'd, with their heads hooded and covered: but daughters bare-headed, with their hairs detressed and hanging down loose.*

**I**s it for that Fathers ought to be honored as gods by their Male-Children, but lamented and bewailed as dead men by their daughters, and therefore the law having given and granted unto either sex that which is proper, hath of both together made that which is beleeving and convenient?

Or, it is in this regard, that unto sorrow and heaviness, that is best beleeving which is extraordinary and unusual: now more ordinary it is with women to go abroad with their heads veiled and covered: and likewise with men, to be discovered and bare-headed. For even among the Greeks when there is befallen unto them any publick calamity, the manner and custome is, that the women should cut off the hairs of their head, and the men wear them long: for that otherwise it is usual that men should poll their head, and women keep their hair long. And to prove that Sons were wont to be covered; in such a case, and for the said cause, a man may alledge that which *Parrus* hath written: namely, that in the solemnity of funerals, and about the Tombs of their Fathers, they carry themselves with as much reverence and devotion as in the Temples of the gods: in such sort, as when they have burnt the corps in the funeral fire, so soon as ever they meet with a bone, they pronounce that he who is dead, is now become a god. On the contrary side, women were in no wise permitted to vaile and cover their heads. And we find upon record, that the first man who put away and divorced his Wife was *Spirius Carbillius*, because she bare him no children: the second, *Sulpitius Gallus*, for that he saw her to cast a robe over her head: and the third *Publius Sempronius*, for leading to behold the solemnity of the funeral games.

## XV.

*How it cometh to passe, that considering the Romans esteemed Terminus a god, and therefore in honor of him celebrated a feast called hereupon Terminalia, yet they never killed any beast in sacrifice unto him?*

**I**t is because *Romulus* did appoint no bonds and limits of his country, to the end that he might lawfully set out and take in where pleased him, and repute all that land his own so far as (according to that saying of the Lacedæmonian) his spear or javelin would reach: But *Numa Pompilius* a just man and politick withal, one who knew well how to govern, and that by the rule of Philosophy, caused his Territory to be confined between him and his neighbour Nations, and called those frontier bonds by the name of *Terminus*, as the sit, erintendent, overseer and keeper of peace and amity between neighbours: and therefore he supposed, that this *Terminus* ought to be preserved pure and clean from all blood, and impollute with any murder;

## XVI.

*What is the reason that it is not Lawfull for any maid servants to enter into the temple of the goddesse \* *Leucothea*? and the Dames of Rome, bringing in thither one alone and no more with them, fall to cuffing, tussing and boxing her about the ears and cheeks.*

**A**s for the Wench that is thus buffeted, it is a sufficient sign and argument, that such as she, are not permitted to come thither: now for all others they keep them out in regard of a certaine Poetical Fable reported in this wise: that Lady *Ino* being in times past jealous of her husband, and suspecting him with a maid servant of hers, fell mad, and was enraged against her own son: this servant the Greeks lay was an Ætolian born, and had to name \* *Antiphora*: and therefore it is that here among us in the City of *Claremont*, before the Temple or Chappel of *Martha*, the Sexton taking a whip in his hand, crieth with a loud voice: No man servant or maid servant be so hardy as to come in hither: No Ætolian he or she presume to enter into this place.

N n n 2

XVII.

## XVII.

What is the cause that to this goddess, folk pray not for any blessings to their own children, but for their nephews only, to wit, their brothers or sisters children?

**M**ay it not be, for that *I*no was a Lady that loved her Sister wonderful well, in so much as she suckled at her own breast a Son of hers: but was unfortunate in her own children?  
Or rather, because the said custome is otherwise very good and civil, inducing and moving folks hearts to carry love and affection to their kindreds.

## XVIII.

For what cause, were many rich men wont to consecrate and give unto Hercules the Disme or tenth of all their goods?

\* By Propertius, meaning the place where afterwards Rome stood.

**V**Hy may it not be upon this occasion, that Hercules himselfe being upon a time at *Rome*, sacrificed the tenth Cow of all the drove which he had taken from *Geryon*?  
Or for that he freed and delivered the Romans from the tax and tribute of the *Dismes* which they were wont to pay out of their goods unto the *Tuscans*.  
Or in case this may not go current for an authentical history, and worthy of credit; what and if we say that unto Hercules as to some great belly god, and one who loved good cheer, they offered and sacrificed plentifully and in great liberality?

Or rather, for that by this means they would take down and diminish a little their excessive riches which ordinarily is an eye-sore and odious unto the Citizens of a popular state, as if they meant to abate and bring low (as it were) that plethorical plight and compulency of the body, which being grown to the height is dangerous: supposing by such cutting off, and abridging of superfluities, to do honour and service most pleasing unto Hercules, as who joyed highly in frugality: for that in his life time he stood contented with a little, and regarded no delicacy or excessive whatsoever.

## XIX.

Why begin the Romans their year at the month January?

**F**Or in old time the month of March was reckoned first, as a man may collect by many other conjectures, and by this especially, that the fifth month in order after March was called *Quintilis*; and the sixth month *Sextilis*, and all the rest consequently one after another until you come to the last, which they named December, because it was the tenth in number after March: which giveth occasion unto some for to think and say, that the Romans (in those days) determined and accomplished their compleat year, not in twelve Months but in ten; namely, by adding unto every one of those ten months certain days over and above thirty. Others write, that December indeed was the tenth month after March; but January was the eleventh, and February the twelfth: in which month they used certain expiatory and purgatory sacrifices, yea, and offered oblations unto the dead (as it were) to make an end of the year. Howbeit, afterwards they transposed this order, and ranged January in the first place, for that upon the first day thereof, which they call the *Calends* of January; the first Consuls that ever bare rule in *Rome* were entailed, immediately upon the deposition and expulsion of the Kings out of the City. But there seemeth to be more probability and likelihood of truth in their speech, who say, that *Romulus* being a martial Prince, and one that loved war and feats of arms, as being reputed the son of *Mars*, set before all other months, that which carried the name of his father: howbeit *Numa* who succeeded next after him, being a man of peace, and who endeavoured to withdraw the hearts and minds of his subjects and citizens from war to agriculture, gave the prerogative of the first place unto January, and honoured *Janus* most, as one who had been more given to politick government, and to the husbandry of ground, then to the exercise of war and arms.

Consider moreover, whether *Numa* chose not this month for to begin the year withal, as best fitting with nature in regard of us; for otherwise in general, there is no one thing of all those that by nature turn about circularly, that can be said first or last, but according to the several institutions and ordinances of men, some begin the time at this point, others at that. And verily they that make the Winter Solstice or hibernal Tropick the beginning of their year, do the best of all others: for that the Sun ceasing then to passe farther, beginneth to return and take his way again toward us: so it seemeth, that both according to the course of nature, and also in regard of us, this season is most befitting to begin the year: for that it encreaseth unto us the time of the day light, and diminisheth the darknes of night, and causeth that noble star or planet to approach neerer and come toward us, the Lord, Governor and Ruler of all substance transitory and fluxible matter whatsoever.

## XX.

Why do women when they dresse up and adorn the Chappell or Shrine of their feminine goddess whom they call *Bona*, never bring home for that purpose any branches of Myrtle tree: and yet otherwise have a delight to employ all sorts of leaves and flowers?

\* Or Phaulus.

**M**ay it not be, for that, as some fabulous writers tell the tale, there was one *Flavius* a foolish man, who had a wife, who used secretly to drink wine, and when she was surprized and taken in the

madness

manner by her husband, she was well beaten by him with myrtle rods: and for that cause they bring thither no boughs of myrtle: many they offer libations unto this goddess of wine, but forsooth they call it *Milke*.

Or is it not for this cause, that those who are to celebrate the ceremonies of this divine service, ought to be pure and cleane from all pollutions, but especially from that of *Venus* or Jealousy? For not only they put out of the room where the service is performed unto the said goddess *Bona*, all men, but also whatsoever is besides of masculine sex; which is the reason that they do detest the myrtle tree, as being consecrated unto *Venus*, in so much as it should seeme they called in old time that *Venus*, *Myrtia*, which now goeth under the name of *Murcia*.

## XXI.

What is the reason that the Latines do so much honour and reverence the Woodpecker, and forbear altogether to do that bird any harme?

**I**t is for that *Picus* was reported in old time by the enchantments and sorceries of his wife, to have changed his own nature, and to be metamorphosed into a Woodpecker; under which forme he gave out oracles, and delivered answers unto those who propounded unto him any demands?

Or rather, because this seemeth a meere fable, and incredible tale: there is another story reported, which carrieth more probability with it, and soundeth nearer unto truth. That when *Romulus* and *Remus* were cast forth and exposed to death; not only a female wolfe gave them her teats to suck, but also a certaine Woodpecker flew unto them, and brought them food in her bill, and so fed them: and therefore haply it is, that ordinarily in these daies we may see, as *Nig diu* hath well observed, what places soever at the foot of an hill covered and shadowed with oaks or other trees a Woodpecker haunteth, thither customably you shall have a wolfe to repair.

Or peradventure, seeing their manner is to consecrate unto every god one kind of bird or other, they reputed this Woodpecker sacred unto *Mars*, because it is a courageous and hardy bird, having a bill so strong, that he is able to overthrow an oake therewith, after he hath jobbed and pecked in-to it as far as to the very marrow and heart thereof.

## XXII.

How is it that they imagine *Janus* to have had two faces, in which manner they use both to paint and also to cast him in mould?

**I**t is for that being a Græcian borne, came from *Perrhæbia*, as we find written in histories; and passing forward into *Italy*, dwelt in that country among the Barbarous people, who there lived, whose language and manner of life he changed?

Or rather because he taught and periwaded them to live together after a civil and honest sort, in husbandry and tilling the ground; whereas before time their manners were rude, and their fashions huge without law or justice altogether.

## XXIII.

What is the cause that they use to sell at *Rome* all things pertaining to the furniture of Funerals, within the temple of the goddess *Libitina*, supposing her to be *Venus*?

**T**his may seeme to be one of the sage and philosophicall inventions of King *Numa*, to the end that men should learn not to abhor such things, nor to flee from them, as if they did pollute and defile them?

Or else this reason may be rendered, that it serveth for a good record and memoriall, to put us in mind, that whatsoever had a beginning by generation, shall likewise come to an end by death; as if one and the same goddess were superintendent and governess of nativity and death: for even in the City of *Delphos* there is a pretty image of *Venus*, surnamed *Epitymbia*; that is to say, sepulchrell: before which they use to raile and call forth the ghosts of such as are departed, for to receive the libations and sacred liquors poured forth unto them.

## XXIII.

Why have the Romans in every month three beginnings as it were, to wit, certain principall and prefixed or preordained *Ides*, and regard not the same intervall or space of daies between?

\* That is to say, *Calends*, *Nones* and *Ides*.

**I**t is because as *Juba* writeth in his Chronicles, that the chiefe Magistrates were wont upon the first day of the month to call and summon the people; whereupon it took the name of *Calends*: and then to denounce unto them that the *Nones* should be the fifth day after; and as for the *Ides* they held it to be an holy and sacred day?

Or for that they manvring and determining the time according to the differences of the moone, they observed in her every month three principall changes and diversities: the first, when she is altogether hidden, namely, during her conjunction with the sun; the second when she is somewhat removed from the beames of the sun, and beginneth to shew her selfe croissant in the evening toward



toward the West whereas the sun setteth ; the third, when she is at the full : now that occultation and hiding of hers in the first place they named Calends, for that in their tongue what soever is secret and hidden, they say it is [*Clam*] and to hide or keep close, they expresse by this word [*Celare*] ; and the first day of the moons illumination, which we here in Greece tearme *Nocturnia*, that is to say, the new-moone, they called by a most iust name *Nones*, for that which is new and young, they tearme *Nocturnum*, in manner as we do *videt*. As for the *Ides*, they took their name of this word *Ides*, that signifies beauty ; for that the moon being then at the full is in the very perfection of her beauty ; or haply they derived this denomination of *Ides*, as attributing it to *Jupiter* ; but in this we are not to search out exactly the iust number of daies, nor upon a small default to slander and condemne this manner of reckoning, seeing that even at this day, when the science of Astrology is grown to so great an increment, the inequality of the motion, and course of the moone surpasseth all experience of Mathematicians, and cannot be reduced to any certaine rule of reason.

## XXV.

*What is the cause that they repute the mornings after Calends, Nones, and Ides, disastrous or dismall daies, either for to set forward upon any journey or voyage, or to march with an army into the field?*

It is because as many thinke, and as *Titus Livius* hath recorded in his story : the Tribunes military, at what time as they had consular and sovereign authority, went into the field with the Roman army the morrow after the *Ides* of the month *Quintilis*, which was the same that July now is, and were discomfited in a battell by the Gauls, neare unto the river *Albia* : and consequently upon that overthrow lost the very City it selfe of *Rome* : by which occasion the morrow after the *Ides*, being held and reputed for a sinister and unlucky day, superstition entering into mens heads, proceeded farther, (as the lovelv alwaies so to do) and brought in the custome for to hold the morrow after the *Nones*, yea, and the morrow after the *Calends*, as unfortunate, and to be as religiously observed in semblable cases.

But aginst this there may be opposed many objections : for first and foremost, they lost that battell upon another day, and calling it *Allenfis*, by the name of the river *Allia*, where it wasstruck, they have it in abomination for that cause. Again, whereas there be many daies reputed dismall and unfortunate, they do not observe so precisely and with so religious feare, other daies of like denomination in every month, but each day apart only in that month wherein such and such a disaster happened : and that the infortuity of one day should draw a superstitious feare firmly upon all the mornings after *Calends*, *Nones*, and *Ides*, carrieth no congruity at all, nor appearance of reason.

Consider moreover and see, whether, as of months they used to consecrate the first to the gods celestiall ; the second to the terrestriall, or infernall, wherein they performe certaine expiatory ceremonies and sacrifices of purification, and present offerings and services to the dead : so of the daies in the month, those which are chiefe and principall, as hath been said, they would not have to be kept as sacred and festivall holidays ; but such as follow after, as being dedicated unto the spirits, called *Dæmons*, and those that are departed ; they also have esteemed consequently as unhappy, and altogether unmeet either for to execute or to take in hand any businesse : for the Greeks adorning and serving the gods upon their new-moones and first daies of the month, have attributed the second daies unto the demi-gods and *Dæmons* : like as at their feasts also they drinke the second cup unto their demi-gods, and demi-goddesses. In sum, Time is a kind of number, and the beginning of number is (I wot not what) : some divine thing, for it is Unity : and that which commeth next after it is Deuty or two, cleane opposite unto the said beginning, and is the first of all even numbers : as for the even number it is defective, unperfect, and indefinite, whereas contrariwise, the uneven or odd number it selfe is finite, complet, and absolute : and for this cause like as the *Nones* succeed the *Calends* five daies after ; so the *Ides* follow the *Nones* nine daies after them ; for the uneven and odd numbers do determine those beginnings, or principall daies ; but those which presently enue after the said principall daies being even, are neither ranged in any order, nor have power and puissance : and therefore men do not enterprise any great work, nor set forth voyage or journey upon such daies : and hereto we may to good purpose annex that pretty speech of *Themistocles* : For when the morrow (quoth he) upon a time quarrelled with the festivall day which went next before it, saying, that her selfe was busied and took a great deale of paines, preparing and providing with much travell those goods which the feast enjoyed at her ease, with all repose, rest, and leisure : the Festivall day made this answer : Thou saidst true indeed ; but if I were not, where wouldst thou be ? This tale *Themistocles* devised, and delivered unto the Athenian Captaines, who came after him ; giving them thereby to understand, that neither they nor any acts of theirs would ever have been seen, unless he before them had saved the City of *Athens*. Forasmuch then, as every enterprise and voyage of importance hath need of provision, and some preparatives ; and for that the Romans in old time upon their festivall daies, dispensed nothing, nor tooke care for any provision ; being wholly given and devoted at such times to the service and worship of God, doing that, and nothing else : like as even at this day, when the Priests begin to sacrifice, they pronounce with a loud voice before all the company there assembled *Hoc age*, that is to say, Mind this, and do no other thing : very like it is, and standeth of great reason, that they used not to put themselves upon the way for any long voyage, nor tooke in hand any great affaire or businesse presently after a festivall day, but kept within house

all

all the morrow after to thinke upon their occasions, and to provide all things necessary for journey or exploit : or we may conjecture, that as at this very day the Romans after they have adored the gods, and made their prayers unto them within their temples, are wont to stay there a time, and sit them down ; even so they thought it not reasonable to call their great affaires to, as that they should immediately follow upon any of their festivall daies ; but they allowed some respite and time between, as knowing full well that businesse carry with them awaies many troubles and hinderances, beyond the opinion, expectation, and will of those who take them in hand.

## XXVI.

*What is the cause that women at Rome, when they mourne for the dead, put on white robes, and likewise wear white cawles, coses, and kerchiefs upon their heads.*

May it not be that for to oppose themselves against hell and the darknesse thereof, they conforme their raiment and attire to that colour which is cleare and bright ?

Or do they it not rather for this : that like as they clad and bury the dead corps in white cloaths, they suppose, that those who are next of kin, and come nearest about them, ought also to wear their livery ? Now the body they do in this wise deck, because they cannot adorne the soule so ; and it they are willing to accompany as light some pure and neat, as being now at the last delivered and set free, and which hath performed a great and variable combrat.

Or rather, we may guesse thus much thereby : that in such cases, that which is most simple and least costly, is best becoming ; whereas cloaths of any other colour died do com only bewray either superfluity or curiosity : for we may lay even as well of black as of purple : These robes are defective ; these colours also are counterfeit. And as touching that which is of it selfe black, if it have not that tincture by dyes art, surely it is so coloured by nature, as being mixed and compounded with obscurity : and therefore there is no colour else but white, which is pure, unmixt, and not stained and sullied with any tincture, and that which is inimitable : in which regard more meet and agreeable unto those who are interred, considering that the dead is now become simple, pure, exempt from all mixtion, and in very truth, nothing else but delivered from the body, as a staine and infection hardly scoured out and rid away. Semblably, in the City of *Argos*, whensoever they mourned, the manner was to wear white garments, washed (as *Socrates* said) in faire and cleare water.

## XXVII.

*What is the reason that they esteeme all the walls of the City sacred and inviolable, but not the gates.*

Is it (as *Varro* saith) because we ought to thinke the walls holy, to the end that we may fight valiantly, and die generously in the defence of them ? for it seemeth that this was the cause, why *Romulus* killed his own brother *Remus* ; for that he presumed to leape over an holy and inviolable place : whereas contrariwise, it was not possible to consecrate and hallow the gates, thorow which there must needs be transported many things necessary, and namely, the bodies of the dead. And therefore they who begin to found a City, environ and compass first with a plough all that pourtrise and precinct wherein they meant to build, drawing the said plough with an ox and a cow coupled together in one yoke : afterwards, when they have traced out all the said place where the walls should stand, they measure out as much ground as will serve for the gates, but take out the ploughshare, and so passe over that space with the bare plough, as if they meant thereby, that all the furrow which they cast up and eared should be sacred and inviolable.

## XXVIII.

*What is the reason, that when their Children are to be sworn by Hercules, they will not let them do it within doores, but cause them to go forth of the house, and take their oath abroad.*

Is it because (as some would have it) that they thinke *Hercules* is not delighted with keeping close within house and sitting idly, but taketh pleasure to live abroad and lie without ?

Or rather for that of all the gods, *Hercules* is not (as one would say) home-bred, but a stranger, come amongst them from afar ? For even so they would not swear by *Bacchus*, under the roole of the house, but went forth to do it ; because he also is but a stranger among the gods.

Or haply, this is no more but a word in game and sport, given unto children : and besides (to say truth) it may be a meanes to withhold and restrain them from wearing to readily and rashly, as *Phavorinus* saith : for this device causeth a certaine premeditated preparation, and giveth them (whiles they go out of the house) leisure and time to consider better of the matter. And a man may conjecture also with *Phavorinus*, and say with him, That this fashion was not common to other gods, but proper to *Hercules* : for that we find it written, that he was so religious, to respecive and precise in his oath, that in all his life time he never swore but once, and that was only to *Philem* the son of *Amias*, and therefore the prophetesse at *Delphos*, named *Pythia*, answered thus upon a time to the Lacedæmonians :

*When all these oaths you once forsend,  
Your state (be sure) shall daily mend.*

XXIX.

## XXIX.

What should be the reason, that they would not permit the new wedded bride to passe of her selfe over the doore-fill or threshold, when she is brought home to her husbands house, but they that accompany her, must lift her up between them from the ground, and so convey her in?

It is in remembrance of those first wives whom they ravished perforce from the Sabines, who entered not into their houses of themselves with their good will, but were carried in by them, in this manner?

Or is it perhaps, because they would be thought to go against their wills into that place where they were to lose their maidenhead?

Or haply it may be, that a wedded wife ought not to go forth of her doores, & abandon her home, but perforce, like as she went first into it by force. For in our Country of *Bavotia*, the manner is, to burne before the doore where a new married wife is to dwell, the axell tree of that chariot or coach in which the rode when she was brought to her husbands house. By which ceremony, thus much she is given to understand, that will she null the, there the must now tarry, considering that it which brought her hither is now gone quite and consumed.

## XXX.

Wherefore do they at Rome, when they bring a new espoused bride home to the house of her husband, force her to say these words unto her spouse: Where you are *Caius*, I will be *Caius*?

It is to testify by these words, that she entreath immediately to communicate with him in all goods, and to be a governess and commander in the house as well as he? for it implieth as much, as it the should say, where you are Lord and Master, I will be Lady and Mistress. Now these names they used as being common, and such as came first to hand, and for no other reason else: like as the Civil Lawyers use ordinarily these names, *Caius*, *Seius*, *Lucius*, and *Titius*: the Philosophers in their schooles, *Dion* and *Theon*?

Or peradventure it is in regard of *Caia Cecilia* a beautifull and vertuous Lady, who in times past espoused one of the sons of King *Tarquinius*: of which damethere is yet to be seen even at this day one image of brasse within the temple of the god *Sanctus*: and there likewise in old times her picture, her distaffe and spindles laid up for to be seen: the one to signifie that she kept the house well, and went not ordinarily abroad; the other to shew how she busied her selfe at home.

## XXXI.

How cometh it, that they use to chant ordinarily at weddinges, this word so much divulged, *Talassio*?

It is not of *Talassa*, the Greeke word, which signifieth yarne: for the basket wherein women use to put in their rolls of carded wooll they name *Talassio* in Greeke, and *Calathus* in Latine: Certes they that lead the bride home, cause her to sit upon a fleece of wooll, then bringeth she forth a distaffe and a spindle, and with wooll all to hangeth and decketh the doore of her husbands house.

Or rather, if it be true which historians report: There was sometime a certaine young gentleman, very valiant and adive in feats of armes, and otherwise of excellent parts and singular well conditioned, whose name was *Talassius*: and when they ravished and carried away the daughters of the Sabines who were come to Rome, for to behold the solemnity of their festivall games and plaies: certaine meane persons, such yet as belonged to the traine and retinue of *Talassius* afore said, had chosen forth and were carrying away one damoelle above the rest most beautifull of visage, and for their safety and security as they passed along the streets, cried out aloud *Talassio, Talassio*, that is to say, for *Talassius*; for *Talassius*; to the end that no man should be so hardy as to approach neere unto them, nor attempt to have away the maiden from them, giving it out, that they carried her for to be the wife of *Talassius*; and others meeting them upon the way, joynd with them in company for the honour of *Talassius*, and as they followed after, highly praised their good choice which they had made, praying the gods to give both him and her joy of their marriage, and contentment to their hearts desire. Now for that this marriage proved happy and blessed, they were wont ever after in their wedding songs to recant and refound this name, *Talassius*, like as the manner is among the Greeks to sing in such carols, *Hymenaeus*.

## XXXII.

What is the reason that in the month of May, they use at Rome to cast over their wooden bridge into the river certaine images of men, which they call *Argos*?

It is in memoriall of the Barbarians who sometimes inhabited these parts, and did so by the Greeks, murdering them in that manner as many of them as they could take? But *Hercules* who was highly esteemed among them for his vertue, abolished this cruell fashion of killing of strangers, and taught them this custome to counterfeit their ancient superstitions, and to sling these images instead of

of them: now in old time our ancestors used to name all Greeks of what country soever they were, *Argos*: unless haply a man would say, that the Arcadians reputed the Argives to be their enemies, for that they were their neighbour borderers, such as fled with *Evander* out of *Arcadia*, and came to inhabit these quarters, retained till the old hatred and rancor, which time out of mind had taken root, and been setled in their hearts against the said Argives.

## XXXIII.

What is the cause that the Romans in old time never went forth out of their houses to supper, but they carried with them their young sons, even when they were but in their very infancy and childhood.

As not this for the very same reason that *Lycurgus* instituted and ordained, that young children should ordinarily be brought into their halls where they used to eat in publick, called *Phiditia*, to the end that they might be inured and acquainted betimes, not to the pleasures of eating and drinking immoderately, as brutish and ravenous beasts are wont to do; considering that they had their elders to oversee them, yea, and to control their demeanor: and in this regard haply also, that their fathers themselves should in their carriage be more sober, honest, and frugal, in the presence of their children: for look where old folk are shamelesse, there it cannot chule, but (as *Plato* saith) children and youth will be most gracelesse and impudent.

## XXXIV.

Whom might the reason be, that whereas all other Romans made their offerings, ceremonies, and sacrifices for the dead, in the month of February: *Decimus Brutus* as *Cicero* saith, was wont to do the same in the month of December: now this Brutus was he who first invaded the country of Portugal, and with an army passed over the river of *Lethe*, that is to say, *Oblivion*.

May it not be, that as the most part of men used not to perform any such services for the dead, but toward the end of the month, and a little before the sitting in of the evening; even so it seemeth to carry good reason, to honour the dead at the end of the year; and you wot well that December was the last month of all the year.

Or rather, it is because this was the honour exhibited to the Deities terrestrial; and it seemeth that the proper season to reverence and worship these earthly gods, is when the fruits of the earth be gathered and laid up.

Or haply, for that the husbandmen began at this time to break up their grounds against their seedtime: it was meet and requisite to have in remembrance those gods, which are under the ground.

Or haply, because this month is dedicate and consecrated by the Romans to *Saturnus*; for they counted *Saturnus* one of the gods beneath, and none of them above: and withal, considering the greatest and most solemn feast, which they call *Saturnalia*, is holden in this month, at what time as they seem to have their most frequent meeting, and make best cheer, he thought it meet and reasonable that the dead also should enjoy some little portion thereof.

Or it may be said, that it is altogether untrue that *Decimus Brutus* alone sacrificed for the dead in this month: for certain it is that there was a certain divine service performed to *Acca Larentia*, and solemn effusions and libaments of Wine and Milk were poured upon her sepulchre in the month of December.

## XXXV.

Why honoured the Romans this *Acca Larentia* so highly, considering she was no better then a Strumpet, or Courtesan?

For you must think, that the Histories make mention of another *Acca Larentia*, the Nurse of *Romulus*, unto whom they do honour in the month of April: as for this Courtesan *Larentia*, shee was (as men say) furnamed *Fabula*, and came to be so famous and renowned by such an occasion as this. A certain Sexton of *Hercules* his Temple, having little else to do, and living at ease (as commonly such fellows do) used for the most part to spend all the day in playing at Dice and with Cock-bones: and one day above the rest, it fortune, that meeting with none of his Mates and playfellows who were wont to bear him company at such games, and not knowing what to do nor how to passe the time away, he thought with himselfe to challenge the god whose servant he was, to play at Dice with him upon these conditions: That if himselfe won the game, *Hercules* should be a means for him of some good luck and happy fortune; but in case he lost the game, he should provide for *Hercules* a good supper, and withal, a pretty Wench and a fair, to be his bed-fellow: these conditions being agreed upon and set down, he cast the Dice, one chance for himselfe, and another for the god: but his hap was to be the loser: whereupon minding to stand unto his challenge, and to accomplish that which he had promised, he prepared a rich supper for *Hercules* his god, and withall, sent for this *Acca Larentia*, a professed Courtesan and common Harlot, whom he feasted also with him, and after supper bestowed her in a bed within the very Temple, that the doores fast upon, and so went his way. Now the tale goes forthwith, that in the night *Hercules* conversed with her, not after the manner of men, but charged her, that the next morning betimes she should go into the

the market place, and look what man she first met withal, him she should entertain in all kindness, and make her friend especially. Then *Larentia* gat up betimes in the morning accordingly, and chanced to encounter a certain rich man and a stale Batchelor, who was now past his middle age, and his name was *Taruntius*; with him she became so familiarly acquainted, that so long as he lived, she had the command of his whole house; and at his death, was by his last Will and Testament instituted inheritor of all that he had. This *Larentia* likewise afterward departed this life, and left all her riches unto the City of *Rome*; whereupon this honour abovesaid was done unto her.

## XXXVI.

What is the cause that they name one gate of the City *Fenestra*, which is as much to say, as Window; near unto which adjoineth the bed-chamber of Fortune?

**I**S it for that King *Servius* a most fortunate Prince, was thought and named so, with Fortune, who was wont to come unto him by the window? or is this but a devised tale? But in truth, after that King *Tarquinus Priscus* was deceased, his Wife *Tanaquil* being a wise Lady, and endowed with a royal mind, putting forth her head, and bending forward her body out of her chamber window, made a speech unto the people, perswading them to elect *Servius* for their King. And this is the reason that afterwards the place retained this name, *Fenestra*.

## XXXVII.

What is the reason, that of all those things which be dedicated and consecrated to the gods, the customs are at *Rome*; that only the spoils of enemies conquered in the wars, are neglected and suffered to decay in process of time: neither is there any reverence done unto them, nor repaired be they at any time, when they wax old.

**V**Hether is it, because they (supposing their glory to fade and passe away together with these first spoils) seek evermore new means to win some fresh marks and monuments of their virtue, and to leave the fame behind them.

Or rather, for that seeing time doth waste and consume these signs and tokens of the enmity which they had with their enemies, it were an odious thing for them, and very invidious, if they should refresh and renew the remembrance thereof: for even those among the Greeks, who first erected their Trophies or Pillars of brasse and stone, were not commended for so doing.

## XXXVIII.

What is the reason that *Quintus Metellus* the high Priest, and reputed besides a wise man and a politician, forbade to observe auspices, or to take presages by sight of birds, after the month *Sextilis*, now called *August*.

**I**S it for that, as we are wont to attend upon such observations about noon or in the beginning of the day, at the entrance also, and toward the middle of the month: but we take heed and beware of the days' declination, as inappropriate and unmeet for such purposes: even so *Metellus* supposed, that the time after eight months was (as it were) the evening of the year, and the latter end of it, declining now and wearing toward an end.

Or haply, because we are to make use of these birds, and to observe their flight for presages, whiles they are entire, perfect and nothing defective, such as they are before Summer time. But about Autumn some of them moulte, grow to be sickly and weak; others are over-young and too small; and some again appear not at all, but like passengers are gone at such a time into another country.

## XXXIX.

What is the cause, that it was not lawful for them who were not prest Soldiers by oath and enrolled, although upon some other occasions they converted in the camp, to strike or wound an enemy? And verily *Cato* himselfe the elder of that name signified thus much in a letter misstive which he wrote unto his son: wherein he frantically charged him, that if he had accomplished the full time of his service, and that his captain had given him his conge & discharge, he should immediately return: in case he had rather stay still in the camp, that he should obtain of his captain permission and licence to hurt and kill his enemies.

**I**S it because there is nothing else but necessity alone, doth warrantize the killing of a man: and he who unlawfully and without expresse commandment of a superior (uncontrainted) doth it, is a meere homicide and manslayer. And therefore *Cyrus* commended *Chrysuras*, for that being upon the very point of killing his enemy, as having lifted up his Cymiter for to give him a deadly wound, presently upon the sound of the retreat by the Trumpet, let the man go, and would not smite him, as if he had been forbidden to do so.

Or may it not be, for that he who presenteth himselfe to fight with his enemy, in case he shrink and make not good his ground, ought not to go away clear withal: but to be held faulty and to suffer punishment: for he doth nothing to good service that hath either killed or wounded an enemy, as harm and damage. who reuteth back or flieth away: now he who is discharged from warfare, and hath leave to depart, is no more obliged and bound to military law: but he that hath demanded permission to do that service which sworn and enrolled soldiers perform, putteth himselfe again under the subjection of the law and his own Captain.

XL.

## XI.

How is it that the Priest of Jupiter, is not permitted to anoint himselfe abroad in the open air?

**I**S it for that in old time it was not held honest and lawful for children to do off their cloaths before their fathers: nor the son in law in the presence of his wives father: neither used they the stooph or bath together: now is *Jupiter* reputed the Priests or *Flamines* father: and that which is done in the open air, seemeth especially to be in the very eye and sight of *Jupiter*?

Or rather, like as it was thought a great sin and exceeding irreverence, for a man to turn himself out of his apparel naked, in any church, chapel, or religious and sacred place: even so they carried a great respect unto the air and open skie, as being full of gods, demi-gods, and faints. And this is the very cause, why we do many of our necessary buisnesses within doors, encloused and covered with the rooffe of our houses, and so removed from the eyes, as it were, of the Deity. Moreover, some things there be that by law are commanded and enjoyed unto the Priest only: and others again unto all men, by the Priest: as for example, here with us in *Britania*: to be crowned with chaplets of flowers upon the head: to let the hair grow long: to wear a sword, and not to let foot with-in the limits of *Phocis*, pertain all to the office and duty of the captain general and chiefe ruler: but to taste of no new fruits before the Autumnal *Aequinox* be past: nor to cut and prune a vine but before the *Aequinox* of the Spring, be intimated and declared unto all by the said Ruler or Captain General: for those be the very seasons to do both the one and the other. In like case, it should seem in judgement that among the Romans it properly belonged to the Priest: not to mount on horse-back: nor to be above three nights out of the City: nor to put off his cap, whereupon he was called in the Roman Language, *Flamen*. But there be many other offices and duties, notified and declared unto all men by the Priest, among which this is one not to be enuiled or annoined abroad in the open air: For this manner of annoining dry without the bath, the Romans mightily suspected and were afraid of: and even at this day they are of opinion, that there was no such cause in the world that brought the Greeks under the yoke of servitude and bondage, and made them so tender and effeminate, as their hats and publick places where their young men wrestled and exercised their bodies naked: as being the means that brought into their Cities, much losse of time; engendered idleness, bred lazy sloath and ministred occasion and opportunity of lewdnesse and rillity: as namely, to make love unto fair boies, and to spoile and mar the bodies of young men with sleeeping, with walking at a certain measure, with stirring according to motions, keeping artificiall compasse, and with observing rules of exquisite diet. Through which fashions, they fee not, how (efe they be aware) they befallen from exercises of arms, and have clean forgotten all military discipline: loving rather to beheld and esteemed good wrestlers, fine dancers, conceited pleafants, and their minions, then hardy footmen, or valiant men of arms. And verily it is an hard matter to avoid and decline these inconveniences, for them that use to discover their bodies naked before all the world in the broad air: but those who annoint themselves closely within doors, and look to their bodies at home are neither faulty nor offensive.

## XII.

What is the reason that the ancient coin and money in old time, carried the stamp of one side of *Janus* with two faces: and on the other side, the prow or the poop of a boat engraved therein.

**V**As it not as many men do say, for to honour the memory of *Saturn*, who passed into *Italy* by water in such a vessel? But a man may say thus much as well of many others: for *Janus*, *Evander*, and *Aeneas*, came thither likewise by sea; and therefore a man may peradventure quefle with better reason: that whereas some things serve as goodly ornaments, for Cities, others as necessary implements: among those which are decent and seemly ornaments, the principal is good government and discipline, and among such as be necessary, is reckoned plenty and abundance of vitall: now for that *Janus* instituted good government, in ordaining wholesome laws, and reducing their manner of life to civility, which before was rude and brutish, and for that the river being navigable, furnished them with store of all necessary commodities, whereby some were brought thither by Sea, others from the Land: the coin carried for the mark of a Law-giver, the head with two Faces, like as we have already said, because of that change of life which he brought in: and of the river, a ferry boat or barge: and yet there was another kind of money current among them, which had the figure portrayed upon it, of a Beeffe, of a Sheep, and of a Swine: for that their riches they traied especially from such cattel, and all their wealth and substance consisted in them. And hereupon it cometh, that many of their ancient names, were *Ovis*, *B. bovis* and *Porci*, that is to say, Sheep-reeves, and Neat-herds, and Swine-herds according as *Fenestella* doth report.

## XIII.

What is the cause that they make the Temple of *Saturn*, the chamber of the City, for to keep therein the publick treasure of gold and silver: as also their arches, for the custody of all their writings, rolls, contracts, and evidences whatso ever.

**I**S it by occasion of that opinion so commonly received, and the speech so universally current in every mans mouth, that during the reign of *Saturn*, there was no avarice nor injustice in the world: but loyalty, truth, faith, and righteousness carried the whole way among men.

Or,

Or for that he was the god who found out fruits, brought in agriculture, and taught husbandry first; for the hook or sickle in his hand signifieth so much, and not as *Antimachus* wrote following therein and believing *Hesiodus*:

*Rough Saturne with his hairy skin;  
ag air ft' all law and right;  
Of Amohs, son, for Ouranus,  
or Cælus sometime bright;  
Those privy members which him gat,  
with hook a-flant: off-cut  
And then anon in fathers place  
of reign, himselfe did put.*

Now the abundance of the fruits which the earth yeeldeth, and the vent or disposition of them, is the very mother that bringeth forth plenty of money: and therefore it is that the same god they make the author and maintainer of their felicity: in testimony whereof, those assemblies which are holden every ninth day in the common place of the City, called *Nundine*, that is to say, Fairs or Markets, they esteeme consecrated to *Saturn*: for the store and foison of fruits is that which openeth the trade and commerce of buying and selling. Or, because these reasons seem to be very antick; what and if we say that the first man who made (of *Saturn*'s Temple at *Rome*) the treasury or chamber of the City, was *Valerius Poplicola*, after that the Kings were driven out of *Rome*, and it seemeth to stand to good reason that he made choice thereof, because he thought it a safe and secure place, eminent and conspicuous in all mens eyes, and by consequence hard to be surprized and looted.

## XLIII.

*What is the cause that those who come at Embassadors to Rome, from any parts whatsoever, go first into the Temple of Saturn, and there before the Questors or Treasurers of the City, enter their names in their Registers.*

**I**S it for that *Saturn* himselfe was a stranger in *Italy*, and therefore all strangers are welcome unto him?

Or may not this question be solved by the reading of Histories? for in old time these Questors or publick Treasurers, were wont to lend unto Embassadors certain presents, which were called *Lausitia*: and if it turned that such Embassadors were sick, they took the charge of them for their cures; and if they chanced to die, they entered them likewise at the Cities charges. But now in respect of the great reort of Embassadors from out of all countries, they have cut off this expence: howbeit the ancient custome yet remaineth, namely, to present themselves to the said Officers of the treasury, and to be registred in their book.

## XLIV.

*Why is it not lawful for Jupiters Priest to swear?*

**I**S it because an oath ministred unto free born men, is as it were the rack and torture tendered unto them? for certain it is, that the soul as well as the body of the Priest, ought to continue free; and not be forced by any torture whatsoever.

Or, for that it is not meet to distrust or discredit him in small matters, who is beleaved in great and divine things?

Or rather, because every oath endeth with the detestation and malediction of perjury; and considering that all maledictions be odious and abominable; therefore it is not thought good that any others Priests whatsoever, should curse or pronounce any malediction: and in this respect was the Priestesse of *Minerva* in *Athen* highly commended, for that she would never curse *Alcibiades*, notwithstanding the people commanded her so to do: For *I am* (quoth she) ordained a Priestesse to pray for men, and not to curse them.

Or last of all, was it because the peril of perjury would reach in common to the whole Commonwealth, if a wicked, godlesse and forsworn person, should have the charge and superintendence of the prayers, vows, and sacrifices made in the behalf of the City?

## XLV.

*What is the reason that upon the festival day in the honour of Venus, which solemnity they call Veneralis they use to pour forth a great quantity of Wine out of the Temple of Venus.*

**I**S it as some say upon this occasion, that *Mezentius* sometime Captain general of the *Tusans*, sent certain Embassadors unto *Aeneas*, with commission to offer peace unto him, upon this condition, that he might receive all the Wine of that years Vintage. But when *Aeneas* refused to do so, or a certain quantity upon them when he had won the field: but *Aeneas* understanding of this promise of his, consecrated and dedicated all the said Wine unto the gods: and in truth, when he had obtained the victory, all the Wine of that year, when it was gotten and gathered together, he poured forth before the Temple of *Venus*.

Or,

Or, what if one should say, that this doth symbolize thus much: That men ought to be sober upon festival daies, and not to celebrate such solemnities with drunkenness; as if the gods take more pleasure to see them shed wine upon the ground, than to powre overmuch thereof down their throats?

## XLVI.

*What is the cause that in ancient time they kept the temple of the goddesse Horta, open alwaies.*

**V**Hether was it (as *Antistius Labeo* hath left in writing) for that, seeing *Hortari* in the Latine tongue signifieth to exhort, they thought that the goddesse called *Horta*, which stirreth and provoketh men unto the enterprise and execution of good exploits, ought to be evermore in action, not to make delays, nor to be shut up and locked within doores, ne yet to sit still and do nothing?

Or rather, because as they name her now adaies *Hora*, with the former syllable long, who is a certain industrious, vigilant, and busie goddesse, careful in many things: therefore being as she is so circumspect and so watchfull, they thought she should be never idle, nor retchlesse of mans affaires.

Or else, this name *Hora* (as many others besides) is a meere Greeke word, and becometh a deity ordinarie power, that hath an eye to overlooke, to view and controule all things: and therefore since she never sleepeeth, nor layeth her eyes together, but is alwaies broad awake, therefore her Church or Chappell was alwaies standing open.

But if it be so as *Labeo* saith, that this word *Hora* is rightly derived of the Greeke verbe *equari* or *equipari*, which signifieth to incite or provoke; consider better, whether this word *Orator* also, that is to say, one who stirreth up, exhorteth, encourageth, and adviseth the people as a prompt and ready counsellor, be not derived likewise in the same sort, and not of *hora* or *ωρα*, that is to say, prayer and supplication, as some would have it.

## XLVII.

*Wherefore founded Romulus the Temple of Vulcan without the City of Rome?*

**I**S it for that *Vulcan* (which as fables do report) *Vulcan* had of *Mars*, because of his wife *Venus*: and so *Romulus*, being reputed the son of *Mars*, would not vouchsafe him to inhabit and dwell in the same City with him? or is this a meere foolery and senselesse conceit?

But this Temple was built at the first to be a Chamber and Parlour of Privy Councill for him and *Tullus* who reigned with him; to the end that meeting and sitting there in consultation together with the Senators, in a place remote from all troubles and hinderances, they might deliberate as touching the affaires of State with ease and quietnesse.

Or rather, because *Rome* from the very first foundation was subject to fire by casualty, he thought good to honour this god of fire in some sort, but yet to place him without the walls of the City.

## XLVIII.

*What is the reason, that upon their festival day called Confulalia, they adorned with garlands of flowers as well their asses as horses, and gave them rest and repose for the time?*

**I**S it for that this solemnity was holden in the honour of *Neptune* surnamed *Equestris*, that is to say, the horseman? and the ass hath his part of this joyfull feast, for the horses sake?

Or, because that after navigation and transporting of commodities by sea was now found out and shewed to the world, there grew by that meanes (in some sort) better rest and more ease to poore labouring beasts of draught and carriage.

## XLIX.

*How cometh it to passe, that those who stood for any office and magistracy, were wont by an old custome (as Cato hath written) to present themselves unto the people in a single robe or loose gown, without any coat at all under it?*

**V**As it for feare lest they should carry under their robes any money in their boosomes, for to corrupt, bribe, and buy (as it were) the voices and suffrages of the people?

Or was it because they deemed men worthy to beare publicke office and to governe, not by their birth and parentage by their wealth and riches, ne yet by their shew and outward reputation, but by their wounds and scars to be seen upon their bodies. To the end therefore that such scars might be better expost to their sight whom they met or talked withall, they went in this manner down to the place of election without inward coats in their plaine gowns.

Or haply, because they would seeme by this nudity and nakednesse of theirs, in humility to debase themselves, the sooner thereby to curry favour, and win the good grace of the Commons, even as well as by taking them by the right hand, by suppliant craving, and by humble submission on their verities knees.

## L.

*What is the cause that the Flamen or Priest of Jupiter, when his wife was once dead, used to give up his Priesthood or Sacerdotal dignity, according as Ateius hath recorded in his history.*

**V**As it for that he who once had wedded a wife, and afterwards buried her, was more unfortunate, than he who never had any? for the house of him who had married a wife, is entire,

Q o o

and perfect, but his house who once had one, and now hath none, is not only imperfect, but also maimed and lame?

Or might it not be that the Priests wife was consecrated also to divine service together with her husband: for many rites and ceremonies there were, which he alone could not performe if his wife were not present: and to espouse a new wife immediately upon the deceale of the other were not peradventure possible, nor otherwise would well stand with decent and civill honesty: whereupon neither in times past was it lawfull for him, nor at this day as it should seeme, is he permitted to put away his wife: and yet in our age *Domitian* at the request of one, gave licence to do: at this dissolution and breach of wedlock, other Priests were present and assistant, where there passed among them many strange, hideous, horrible, and monstrous ceremonies.

But haply a man would lesse wonder at this, if ever he knew and understood before, that when one of the Censors died, the other of necessity must likewise quit and resigne up his office. Howbeit, when *Livius Drusus* was departed this life, his companion in office *Emilius Scaurus*, would not give over and renounce his place, untill such time as certaine Tribunes of the people, for his contumacy commanded, that he should be had away to prison.

## L I.

*What was the reason that the idols Lares, which otherwise properly be called Præfites, had the images of a dog standing hard by them, and the Lares themselves were portrayed clad in dogs skins?*

It is because this word *Præfites* signifieth as much as *argues*, that is to say, Presidents, or standing before as keepers: and verily such Presidents ought to be good house-keepers, and terrible unto all strangers, like as a dog is; but gentle and loving to those of the house.

Or rather, that which some of the Romans write is true, like as *Chrysippus* also the Philosopher is of opinion; namely, that there be certaine evil spirits which go about walking up and down in the world: and these be the butchers and tormentors that the gods employ to punish unpiet and wicked men: and even so these *Lares* are held to be malignant spirits, and no better than devils, spying into mens lives, and prying into their families: which is the cause that they now be clad in such skins, and a dog they have sitting hard by them, whereby thus much in effect is given to understand, that quick senced they are, and of great power both to hunt out, and also to chastise leud persons.

## L II.

*What is the cause that the Romans sacrifice a dog unto the goddess called Genita-Mana, and will make one prayer unto her, that none borne in the house might ever come to good?*

It is for that this *Genita-Mana* is counted a *Demon* or goddess that hath the procuration and charge both of the generation and also of the birth of things corruptible: for surely the word implieth as much as a certaine fluxion and generation, or rather a generation fluent or fluxible: and like as the Greeks sacrificed unto *Proserpina* a dog, so do the Romans unto that *Genita*, for those who are borne in the house. *Socrates* also saith, that the Argives sacrificed a dog unto *Isthyia*, for the more easie and safe deliverance of child-birth. Furthermore, as touching that Prayer, that nothing borne within the house might ever prove good, it is not haply meant of any persons, man or woman, but of dogs rather which were whelped there: which ought to be, not kind and gentle, but cutt and terrible.

\* *Xenocrus*. Or peradventure, for that they \* that die (after an elegant manner of speech) be named good or quier: under these words they covertly pray, that none borne in the house might die. And this need not to seeme a strange kind of speech: for *Aristotle* writeth, that in a certaine treaty of peace between the Arcadians and Lacedæmonians, this article was comprised in the capitulations: That they should make none \* of the Tegcats good, for the aide they sent, or favour that they bare unto the Lacedæmonians: by which was meant, that they should put none of them to death.

## L III.

*What is the reason, that in a Solemne procession exhibited at the Capitoline plaies, they proclame (even at this day) by the voice of an herald, port-sale of the Sardians? and before all this solemnity and pompe, there is by way of mockery and to make a laughing-stock, an old man led in a shew, with a shagge or brooch pendant about his neck, such as noblemens children are wont to weare, and which they call Bulla.*

It is for that the Veientians, who in times past being a puissant State in Tuscane, made war a long time with *Romulus*: whose City being the last that he won by force, he made sale of many prisoners and captives together with their Kings, mocking him for his stupidity and grosse folly. Now for that the Tuscans in ancient time were descended from the Lydians, and the capitall City of *Lydia* is *Sardis*, therefore they proclamed the sale of the Veientian prisoners under the name of the Sardians; and even to this day in scorn and mockery, they retain the same custome.

## L IIII.

*Whence came it, that they call the Shambles or Butchery at Rome where flesh is to be sold, Macellum?*

It is for that this word *Macellum*, by corruption of language is derived of *Μαγειον*, that in the Greek tongue signifieth a cook? like as many other words by usage and custome are come to be received: for the letter C, hath great affinity with G. in the Roman tongue: and long it was ere they had the use of G, which letter *Spirum Carbilus* first invented. Moreover, they that maffe and flamm in their speech pronounce ordinarily L, instead of R.

Or this question may be resolved better by the knowledge of the Roman history: for we read therein, that there was sometime a violent person and a notorious thiefe at Rome, named *Macellus*, who after he had committed many outrages and robberies, was with much ado in the end taken and punished: and of his goods which were forfeit to the State, there was built a publique shambles or market place to sell flesh-meats in, which of his name was called *Macellum*.

## L V.

*Why upon the Ides of January the Minstrels at Rome, who played upon the hautboies, were permitted to go up and down the City disguised in womens apparel?*

A Rose this fashion upon that occasion which is reported? namely, that King *Numa* had granted unto them many immunities and honourable priviledges in his time, for the great devotion that he had in the service of the gods: and for that afterwards the Tribunes military who governed the City in Consular authority, tooke the same from them, they went their way discontented, and departed quite from the City of Rome: but soone after, the people had a misse of them, and besides, the Priests made it a matter of conscience, for that in all the sacrifices thoroughout the City there was no sound of flute or hautboies. Now when they would not returne againe (being sent for) but made their abode in the City *Tibur*: there was a certaine afranchised bondslave wholely undertook unto the Magistrates, to find some meanes to fetch them home. So he caused a solemn feast to be made, as if he meant to celebrate some solemne sacrifice, and invited to it the pipers and players of the hautboies aforesaid: and at this feast he took order there should be divers women also: and all night long there was nothing but piping, playing, singing and dancing: but all of a sudden this Matter of the feast caused a rumour to be raised that his Lord and Master was come to see him in the manner: whereupon making semblant that he was much troubled and afrighted, he persuaded the Minstrels to mount with all speed unto those coaches covered all over with skins, and to be carried to *Tibur*. But this was a deceitfull practise of his: for he caused the coaches to be turned about another way, and unawares to them; who partly, for the darkness of the night, and in part because they were drowsie and the wine in their heads took no heed of the way, he brought all to Rome betimes in the morning by the breake of day, disguised as they were, many of them in light coloured gowns like women, which (for that they had over-watched and over-drunke themselves) they had put on, and knew not thereof. Then being (by the Magistrates) overcome with faire words, and reconciled againe to the City, they heid ever after this custome every yeare upon such a day, To go up and down the City thus foolishly disguised.

## L VI.

*What is the reason, that it is commonly received, that certaine Matrons of the City first founded and built the Temple of Carmenta, and to this day honour it highly with great reverence?*

For it is said, that upon a time the Senate had forbidden the dames and wives of the City to ride in coaches: whereupon they tooke such a stomack, and were so despitous, that to be revenged of their husbands, they conspired altogether not to be with child by them, nor to bring them any more babes: and in this mind they perswaded still, untill their husbands began to bethinke themselves better of the matter, and let them have their will to ride in their coaches againe as before time: and then they began to breed and beare children a fresh: and those who foonett conceived and bare most and with greatest ease, founded then the temple of *Carmenta*. And as I suppose this *Carmenta* was the mother of *Evander*, who came with him into *Italy*: whose right name indeed was *Themis*, or as some say *Nicostrata*: now for that the rendred propheticall answers and oracles in verse, the Latines thus named her *Carmenta*: for verses in their tongue they call *Carmina*. Others are of opinion, that *Carmenta* was one of the Destinies, which is the cause that such matrons and mothers sacrifice unto her. And the Etymology of this name *Carmenta* is as much as *Circum mente*, that is to say, beside her right wits or best thought, by reason that her senses were so ravished and transported: so that her verses gave her not the name *Carmenta*, but contrariwise, her verses were called *Carmina* of her; because when she was thus ravished and carried beside her selfe, she chanted certaine oracles and prophecies in verse.

## LVII.

What is the cause that women who sacrifice unto the goddess Rumina, do purre and cast store of milke up on their sacrifices, but no wine at all do they bring thither for to be drunke?

It is, for that the Latines in their tongue call a pap, *Rama*? And well it may so be, for that the wild fig tree nere unto which the she-woolfe gave suck with her teats unto *Romulus*, was in that respect called *Ficus Ruminalis*. Like as therefore we name in our Greeke Language those milch nuries that suckle young infants at their breasts, *Thelona*, being a word derived of *Thelē*, which signifieth a pip; even so this goddess *Rumina*, which is as much to say, as Nurse, and one that taketh the care and charge of nourishing and rearing up of Infants, admitteth not in her sacrifices any wine; for that it is hurtfull to the nurture of little babes and sucklings.

## LVIII.

What is the reason that of the Roman Senators, some are called simply, *Patres*; others with an addition, *Patres conscripti*?

It is for that they first, who were instituted and ordained by *Romulus* were named *Patres & Patrii*, that is to say, Gentlemen or Nobly borne, such as we in Greece, terme *Eupatrides*?

Or rather they were so called, because they could avouch and shew their fathers; but such as were adjoynd afterwards by way of supply, and enrolled out of the Commoners houses, were *Patres conscripti* therupon?

## LXIX.

Wherefore was there one Altar common to *Hercules* and the *Muses*?

May it not be, for that *Hercules* taught *Evander* the letters, according as *Julia* writeth? Certes, in those daies it was accounted an honourable office for men to teach their kinsfolke and friends to spell letters, and to read. For a long time after it, and of late daies it was, that they began to teach for hire and for money: and the first that ever was known to keep a publike schoole for reading, was one named *Spartius Carbilus*, the freed servant of that *Carbilus* who first put away his wife.

## LX.

What is the reason, that there being two Altars dedicated unto *Hercules*, women are not partakers of the greater, nor taste one whit of that which is offered or sacrificed thereupon?

It is, because, as the report goes, *Carmenta* came not soone enough to be assistant unto the sacrificer: no more did the family of the *Pinarii*, whereupon they took that name? for in regard that they came early, admitted they were not to the feast with others who made good cheere; and therefore got the name *Pinarii*, as if one would say, pined and famished:

Or rather it may allude unto the tale that goeth of the shirt empoisoned with the blood of *Nessus* the Centaure, which Lady *Deianira* gave unto *Hercules*.

## LXI.

How cometh it to passe, that it is expressly forbidden at Rome, either to name or to demand ought at touching the Tutelar god, who hath in particular recommendation and patronage, the safety and preservation of the City of Rome: nor so much as to enquire whether the said deity be male or female? And surely this prohibition proceedeth from a superstition, because that they have; for that they say that *Valerius Soranus* died an ill death, because he presumed to utter and publish so much.

It is in regard of a certaine reason that some Latine historians do alledge; namely, that there be certaine evocations and enchantings of the gods by spells and charmes, through the power whereof they are of opinion, that they might be able to call forth and draw away the Tutelar gods of their enemies, and to cause them to come and dwell with them: and therefore the Romans be afraid lest they may do as much for them? for like as in times past the Tyrians, as we find upon record, when their City was besieged, enchained the images of their gods to their shrines, for feare they would abandon their City and be gone; and as others demanded pledges and sureties that they should come againe to their place, whensoever they sent them to any bath to be washed, or let them go to any exorcism to be cleansed; even so the Romans thought, that to be altogether unknown and not once named, was the best means, and surest way to keep with them their Tutelar god.

Or rather, as *Homer* very well wrote:

The earth to men all

Is common great and small:

That thereby men should worship all the gods, and honour the earth; seeing the is common to them all: even so the ancient Romans have concealed and suppressed the god or angell which hath the particular guard of their City, to the end that their Citizens should adore, not him alone but all others likewise.

## LXII.

What is the cause that among those Priests, whom they name *Faciales*, signifying as much as in Greek, *ἐπιστάται*, that is to say, Officers: going between to make treaty of peace; or *συνδράσται*, that is to say, Agents for truce and leagues, he whom they call *Pater Patratus* is esteemed the chiefest? Now *Pater Patratus* is he whose father is yet living, who hath children of his own: and in truth this chief *Facial* or *Her* could hath still at this day a certaine prerogative, and speciall credit above the rest. For the Emperours themselves, and generall Captaines, if they have any person about them who in regard of the prime of youth, or of their beautifull bodies had need of a faithfully, diligent, and trusty guard, commit them ordinarily into the hands of such as these for safe custody?

It is not for that these *Patres Patrati*, for reverend feare of their fathers of one side, and for modest names to scandalize or offend their children on the other side, are enforced to be wife and discreet?

Or may it not be, in regard of that cause which their very denomination doth minister and declare: for this word *Pater* as signifieth as much as complete, entire, and accomplished, as if he were one more perfect and absolute every way than the rest, as being so happy as to have his own father living, and be a father also himselfe.

Or is it not, for that the man who hath the superintendence of treaties of peace, and of others, ought to see as *Homer* saith *Δυσσέβω καὶ δόλοιο*, that is to say, before and behind. And in all reason such one is he like to be, who hath a child for whom, and a father with whom he may consult.

## LXIII.

What is the reason that the Officer at Rome, called *Rex sacrorum*, that is to say, the King of sacrifices, is deterred both from exercising any Magistracy, and also to make a speech unto the people in publike place?

It is for that in old time, the Kings themselves in person performed the most part of sacred rites, and those that were the greatest, yea, and together with the Priests offered sacrifices: but by reason that they grew insolent, proud, and arrogant, so as they became intolerable, most of the Greek nations, deprived them of this authority, and left unto them the preheminence only to offer publike sacrifice unto the gods: but the Romans having cleane chafed and expelled their Kings, established in their stead another under Officer whom they called King, unto whom they granted the oversight and charge of sacrifices only, but permitted him not to exercise or execute any office of State, nor to intermeddle in publike affairs; to the end it should be known to the whole world, that they would not suffer any person to reign at Rome, but only over the ceremonies of sacrifices, nor endure the very name of Royalty, but in respect of the gods. And to this purpose upon the very common place nere unto *Comitum*; they use to have a solemne sacrifice for the good estate of the City; which so soone as ever this King hath performed, he taketh his legs and runs out of the place, as fast as ever he can.

## LXIII.

Why suffer not they the table to be taken cleane away, and voided quite, but will have somewhat always remaining upon it?

Give they not hereby covertly to understand, that we ought of that which is present to reserve evermore something for the time to come, and on this day to remember the morrow.

Or thought they it not a point of civill honesty and elegance to repress and keep down their appetite when they have before them enough still to content and satisfie it to the full; for lesse will they desire that which they have not, when they accustome themselves to abstaine from that which they have.

Or is not this a custome of curtesie and humanity to their domestick servants, who are not so well pleased to take their victuals simply, as to partake the same, supposing that by this means in some sort they do participate with their Masters at the table.

Or rather is it not, because we ought to suffer no sacred thing to be empty? and the boord you wot well is held sacred.

## LXV.

What is the reason that the Bridegosome cometh the first time to lye with his new wedded bride, not with any light but in the dark?

It is because he is yet abashed, as taking her to be a stranger and not his own, before he hath communicated carnally with her?

Or for that he would then acquaint himself, to come even unto his own espoused wife with shamefacednesse and modesty?

Or rather, like as *Solon* in his Statutes ordained, that the new married wife should eate of a quince before she enter into the bride bed-chamber, to the end that this first encounter and embracing should not be odious or unpleasant to her husband? even so the Roman Law-giver would hide in the obscurity of darknesse the deformities and imperfections in the person of the bride, if there were any.



Or haply this was instituted to shew how sinfull and damnable all unlawfull company of man and woman together is, seeing that which is lawfull and allowed, is not without some blemish and note of shame.

## LXVI.

*Why is one of the races where horses use to run, called the Cirque of Flaminius?*

It is for that in old time an ancient Roman, named *Flaminius*, gave unto the City a certaine piece of ground, they employed the rent and revenues thereof in runnings of horses, and chariots: and for that there was a surplussage remaining of the said lands, they bestowed the same in paving that high way or cauley, called *Via Flaminia*, that is to say, *Flaminia* street?

## LXVII.

*Why are the Sergeants or Officers who carry the knytches of rods before the Magistrates of Rome, called Licitors?*

It is because these were they who bound Malefactors, and who followed after *Romulus*, as his guard, with cords and leather thongs about them in their bolomes? And verily the common people of Rome when they would say to bind or tie fast, use the word *Alligare*, and such as speake more pure and proper Latine, *Ligare*.

Or is it, for that now the letter C is interjected within this word, which before time was *Litoris*, as one would say *Litoris*, that is to say, Officers of publike charge; for no man there is in a manner, ignorant, that even at this day in many Cities of Greece, the Common-wealth or publike state is written in their laws by the name of *Λίτρον*.

## LXVIII.

*Wherefore do the Luperi at Rome sacrifice a Dog? Now these Luperi are certaine persons who upon a festivall day called Lupercalia, run through the City all naked, save that they have aprons only before their privy parts, carrying leather whips in their hands, wherewith they flap and scourge whomsoever they meet in the streets?*

It is all this ceremoniall action of theirs a purification of the City? whereupon they call the month wherein this is done *Februrarius*, yea, and the very day it selfe *Febraten*, and *Febrarin*, like as the manner of scitching with a leather scourge *Febrare*, which verbe signifieth as much as to purge or purifie?

And verily the Greeks, in manner all, were wont in times past, and so they continue even at this day, in all their expiations, to kill a dog for sacrifice. Unto *Heate* also they bring forth among other expiatory oblations certaine little dogs or whelps: such also as have need of cleaning and purifying, they wipe and scour all over with whelps skins, which manner of purification they tearme *Periscylacismos*.

Or rather is it for that *Lupus* signifieth a wolfe, and *Lupercalia*, or *Lycaea*, is the feast of wolves: now a dog naturally being an enemy to wolves, therefore at such feasts they sacrificed a dog.

Or peradventure, because dogs barke and bay at these *Luperi*, troubling and disquieting them as they run up and down the City in manner aforesaid.

Or else last of all, for that this feast and sacrifice is solemnized in the honour of god *Pan*; who as you wot well is pleased well enough with a dog, in regard of his flocks of goats.

## LXIX.

*What is the cause that in ancient time, at the feast called Septimontium, they observed precisely not to use any coaches drawn with steeds, no more than those do at this day, who are observant of oblations and do not dispise them. Now this Septimontium is a festivall solemnity, celebrated in memoriall of a seventh mountaine, that was adjoynd and taken into the pourprise of Rome City, which by this meane came to have seven hills enclosed within the precinct thereof?*

Whether was it as some Romans do imagine, for that the City was not as yet conjunct and compoed of all her parts? Or if this may seeme an impertinent conjecture, and nothing to the purpose: may it not be in this respect, that they thought they had achieved a great peece of worke when they had thus amplified and enlarged the compasse of the City, thinking that now it needed not to proceed any further in greatnesse and capacity: in consideration whereof they repoed themselves, and caused likewise their labouring beasts of draught and carriage to rest, whole help they had used in finishing of the said enclosure, willing that they also should enjoy in common with them the benefit of that solemne feast.

Or else we may suppose by this, how desirous they were that their Citizens should solemnize and honour with their personall presence all feasts of the City, but especially that which was ordained and instituted for the peopling and augmenting thereof: for which cause they were not permitted upon the day of the dedication, and festivall memoriall of it, to put any horses in geeres or harness for to draw: for that they were not at such a time to ride forth of the City.

LXX.

## LXX.

*Why call they those who are deprehended or taken in theft, pilfering, or such like servile, trespasses, Furciferos, as one would say, Fork bearers?*

It is for this also, an evident argument of the great diligence and carefull regard that was in their ap- pients? For when the Master of the Family had surprised one of his servants or slaves, committing a lewd and wicked prank, he commanded him to take up and carry upon his neck between his shoulders a forked peece of wood, such as they use to put under the spire of a chariot or waine, and to go go withall in the open view of the world throughout the street, yea, and the parish where he dwelt, to the end that every man from thenceforth should take heed of him. This peece of wood we in Greece call *σφύρα*, and the Romans in the Latine tongue *Furca*, that is to say, a forked prop or support: and therefore he that is farsed to carry such an one, is by reproach tearmed *Furcifer*.

## LXXI.

*Wherefore use the Romans to tie a wise of hey unto their harness of kine, and other beasts, that are wont to bark, and be curst with their heads, that by the meanes thereof they might take heed of them, and look thence to themselves when they come in their way?*

It is not for that beestes, hories, asses, yea, and men become therefore insolent, and dangerous, if they be highly kept and pampered to the full? according as *Sophocles* said:

*Like as the colt or jade doth winke and kick,*

*In case he find his provender to pick;*

*Even so doth thou for lo, thy paunch is full,*

*Thy cheeks be puffed, like to some greedy gull.*

And thereupon the Romans gave out, that *Marcus Crassus* carried hey on his horse: for howsoever they would seeme to let sile and carpe at others who deal in the affaires of State, and Government, yet beware they would how they commixed with him, as being a dangerous man, and one who carried a revenging mind to as many as meddled with him. Howbeit it was said afterwards again on the other side, that *Cassius* had plucked the hey from *Crassus* his horse: for he was the first man that opposed himselfe, and made head against him in the managment of the State, and in one word he was drawn by him.

## LXXII.

*What was the cause that they thought those Priests who observed bird-flights, such as in old time they called Augures, and now ad as Augures, ought to have their lanterns and lamps alwayes open, and not to put any lid or cover over them?*

May it not be, that like as the old Pythagorean Philosphers by small matters signified and im- plied things of great consequence, as namely, when they forbad their disciples to sit upon the medow *Chenix*; and to stir fire, or rake the hearth with a sword; even so the ancient Romans used many enigmes, that is to say, outward signes and figures betokening some hidden and secret mysteries: especially with their Priests in holy and sacred things, like as this is of the lampe or lantern, which symbolizeth in some sort the body that containeth our soule. For the soule within resembleth the light, and it behoveth that the intelligent and reasonable part thereof should be alwayes open, ever- more intente and seeing, and at no time en- cloied and shut up, nor blown upon by wind. For look when the winds be aloft lowles in their flight keep no certainty, neither can they yeeld assured pre- tiges, by reason of their variable and wandering instability: and therefore by this ceremoniall cu- stome they teach those who do divine and foretell by the flight of birds, not to go forth for to take their auspices and observations when the wind is up, but when the aire is still, and so calme, that a man may carry a lantern open and uncovered.

## LXXIII.

*Why were these Soothsayers or Augures forbidden to go abroad for to observe the flight of birds, in case they had any sore or ulcer upon their bodies?*

Was not this also a significant token to put them in mind, that they ought not to deal in the divine service of the gods, nor meddle with holy and sacred things if there were any secret matter that gnawed their minds, or so long as any private ulcer or passion itted in their hearts: but to be void of sadness and griefe, to be found and sincere, and not distracted by any trouble whatso- ever?

Or, because it standeth to good reason; that if it be not lawfull nor allowable for them to offer unto the gods for an host or sacrifice any beast that is scabbed, or hath a sore upon it, nor to take pre- sage by the flight of such birds as are mungy, they ought more strictly and precisely to look into their own persons in this behalfe, and not to presume for to observe celestiall prognostications and signes from the gods, unless they be themselves pure and holy, undefiled, and not defective in their own selves: for surely an ulcer seemeth to be in manner of a mutilation and pollution of the body.

LXXIV.

## LXXIV.

Why did King Servius Tullus found and build a temple of little Fortune which they called in Latine Brevis fortuna: what is to say of Short fortune?

**VV** As it not thinke you in respect of his own selfe, who being at the first of a small and base condition, as being borne of a captive woman, by the favour of Fortune grew to so great an estate that he was King of Rome?

Or for that this change in him sheweth rather the might and greatnesse, than the debility and smallnesse of Fortune. We are to say, that this King Servius desired Fortune, and attributed unto her more divine power than any other, as having entituled and imposed her name almost upon every action: for not only he erected Temples unto Fortune, by the name of Puissant, of diverting ill luck, of Sweet, Favourable to the first borne and masculine: but also there is one Temple besides of private or proper Fortune: another of Fortune returned: a third of confident Fortune and hoping well, and a fourth of Fortune the virgin. And what should a man reckon up other surnames of hers, seeing there is a Temple dedicated (forsooth) to glewing Fortune, whom they called *Vesicuta*; as if we were given thereby to understand, that we are caught by her afar off, and even tied (as it were) with bird-lime to businesse and affairs.

But consider this moreover, that he having known by experience what great power she hath in humane things, how little soever she seeme to be, and how often a small matter in hapning or not hapning hath given occasion to some either to misse of great exploits, or to achieve as great enterprises, whether in this respect, he built not a Temple to little Fortune, teaching men thereby to be alwaies studious, careful, and diligent, and not to despise any occurrences how small soever they be.

## LXXV.

What is the cause that they never put forth the light of a lampe, but suffered it to go out of the owne accord?

**VV** As it not (thinke you) upon a certaine reverend devotion that they bare unto that fire as being either cofin germane, or brother unto that inextinguible and immortal fire.

Or rather, was it not for some other secret advertisement, to teach us not to violate or kill any thing whatsoever that hath life, if it hurt not us first: as if fire were a living creature: for need it hath of nourishment and moveth of it selfe: and if a man do quench it, surely it uttereth a kind of voice and shriek, as if a man killed it.

Or certainly this fashion and custome received so usually, sheweth us that we ought not to mar or spoile, either fire or water or any other thing necessary, after we our selves have done with it, and have had sufficient use thereof, but to suffer it to serve other mens turnes who have need, after that we our selves have no employment for it.

## LXXVI.

How cometh it to passe that those who are descended of the most noble and ancient houses of Rome, carry little moones upon their shooes.

**I**s this (as *Caistor* saith) a signe of the habitation which is reported to be within the body of the moone?

Or for that after death our spirits and ghosts shall have the moon under them?

Or rather, because this was a marke or badge proper unto those who were reputed most ancient, as were the Arcadians descended from *Evander*, who upon this occasion were called *Proleseni*, as one would say, borne before the moone?

Or, because this custome as many others admonisheth those who are lifted up too high, and take so great pride in themselves, of the incertitude and intability of this life, and of humane affaires, even by the example of the moone,

Who at the first doth new and young appeare,  
Whereas before she made no shew at all;  
And so her light encreaseth faire and cleare,  
Untill her face be round and full withall:  
But then anon she doth begin to fall,  
And backward wane from all this beauty gay,  
Untill againe she vanish cleane away.

Or was not this a whollome lesson and instruction of obedience to teach and advise men to obey their superiours, and not to think much for to be under others: but like as the moon is willing to give cure (as it were) and apply her selfe to her better, content to be ranged in a second place, and as *Permenides* saith,

Having an eye and due regard  
Alwaies the bright Sun beames toward;

Even so they ought to rest in a second degree, to follow after, and be under the conduct and direction of another, who sitteth in the first place, and of his power, authority, and honour, in some measure to enjoy a part.

LXXVII.

## LXXVII.

Why thinke they the yeares dedicated to Jupiter, and the months to Juno?

**M**ay it not be for that of Gods invisable and who are no otherwise seen but by the eyes of our Understanding: those that reigne as Princes be *Jupiter* and *Juno*; but of the visible, the Sun and Moone? Now the Sun is he who causeth the yeares, and the Moone maketh the month. Neither are we to thinke, that these be only and simply the figures and images of them: but beleve we must, that the materiall Sun which we behold is *Jupiter*, and this materiall Moone *Juno*. And the reason why they call her *Juno*, (which word is as much to say as young or new) is in regard of the course of the Moone: and otherwhiles they furnished her alio *Juno-Lucina*, that is to say; light or shining: being of opinion that she helpeth women in travell of child-birth, like as the Moone doth, according to these verities:

By stars that turne full round in Azure skie:

By Moone who helps child-births right speedily.

For it seemeth that women at the full of the moon be most easily delivered of child-birth.

## LXXVIII.

What is the cause that in observing bird-flight, that which is presented on the \* left hand is reputed lucky and prosperous?

**I**Spot this altogether untrue, and are not many men in an error by ignorance of the equivocation of the word *Sinistrum*, and their manner of Dialect; for that which we in Greeke call *ἀριστερὸν*, that is to say, on the auke or left hand, they say in Latine, *Sinistrum*: and that which signifieth to permit, or let be, they expresse by the verbe *Sinere*, and when they will a man to let a thing alone, they lay unto him, *Sine*: whereupon it may seeme that this word *Sinistrum* is derived. That prelagging bird then, which permitteth and suffereth an action to be done, being as it were *Sinistrum*; the vulgar sort suppose (though not aright) to be *Sinistrum*, that is to say, on the left hand, and so they terme it.

Or may it not be rather as *Dionysius* saith, for that when *Ascanius* the son of *Aeneas* was a field against *Mexentius* as the two armies stood arranged one affronting the other in battell ray, it thundered on his left hand: and because thereupon he obtained the victory, they deemed even then, that this thunder was a token prelagging good, and for that cause observed it ever after so to fall out. Others thinke that this prelage and foretoken of good luck hapned unto *Aeneas*: and verily at the battell of *Leutres*, the Thebans began to breake the ranks of their enemies, and to discomfit them with the left wing of their battell, and thereby in the end achieved a brave victory; whereupon ever after in all their conflicts they gave preference and the honour of leading and giving the first charge to the left wing.

Or rather, is it not as *Juba* writeth, because that when we look toward the sun rising, the North side is on our left hand, and some will say, that the North is the right side and upper part of the whole world.

But consider I pray you, whether the left hand being the weaker of the twaine, the prelagges coming on that side do not fortifie and support the defect of puissance which it hath, and so make it as it were even and equal to the other?

Or rather, considering that earthly and mortall things they supposing to be opposite unto those that be heavenly and immortal, did not imagine consequently, that whatsoever was on the left in regard of us, the gods sent from their right side.

## LXXIX.

Wherefore was it lawfull at Rome, when a noble personage, who sometime had entred triumphant into the City, was dead, and his corps burnt (as the manner was) in a severall fire, to take up the reliques of his bones, to carry the same into the city, and there to strewe them, according as *Pyrtho* the Lypparean hath left in writing.

**W**As not this to honour the memory of the dead? for the like honourable priviledge they had granted unto other valiant warriors and brave captaines; namely, that not only themselves, but also their posterity defending lineally from them, might be entered in their common marketplace of the City, as for example, unto *Valerius* and *Fabritius*: and it is said, that for to continue this prerogative in force, when any of their posterity afterwards were departed this life, and their bodies brought into the market place accordingly, the manner was, to put a burning torch under them, and do no more but presently to take it away againe; by which ceremony they retained still the due honour without envy, and confirmed it only to be lawfull if they would take the benefit thereof.

LXXX.

## LXXX.

*What is the cause that when they stalked at the common charges any general Capitaine who made his entry into the City with triumph, they never admitted the Consuls to the feast; but that which more is, sent unto them before-hand messengers of purpose, requesting them not to come unto the supper?*

**VV**As it for that they thought it meet and convenient to yeeld unto the triumpher both the highest place to sit in, and the most costly cup to drinke out of, as also the honour to be attended upon with a traine home to his house after supper: which prerogatives no other might enjoy but the Consuls only, if they had been present in the place.

## LXXXI.

*Why is it that the Tribunes of the Commons only weareth no embroydered purple robe, considering that all other Magistrates besides do weare the same.*

**I**Sit not, for that they (to speak properly) are no Magistrates? for in truth they have no others or vergers to carry before them the knitches of rods, which are the ensignes of Magistracy: neither sit they in the chaire of estate called *Sella curulis*, to determine causes judicially, or give audience unto the people: nor enter into the administration of their office at the beginning of the year, as all other Magistrates do: neither are they put down and deposed after the election of a Dictator: but whereas the full power and authority of all other Magistrates of State, he transferreth from them upon himselfe: the Tribunes only of the people continue still, and surcease not to execute their function, as having another place and degree by themselves in the Common-wealth: and like as some Orators and Lawyers do hold, that exception in Law is no action, considering it doth cleare contrary to action: for that action intendeth, commenceth, and beginneth a proceesse or sute; but exception or inhibition dissolveth, undoeth, and abolisheth the same: semblably, they thinke also, that the Tribunate was an impeachment, inhibition, and restraint of a Magistracy, rather than a Magistracy it selfe: for all the authority and power of the Tribunes, lay in opposing himselfe, and crossing the jurisdiction of other Magistrates, and in diminishing or repressing their excessive and licentious power.

Or haply all these reasons and such like, are but words, and devised imaginations to maintaine discourse: but to say a truth, this Tribuneship having taken originally the first beginning from the common people is great and mighty in regard that it is popular: and that the Tribunes themselves are not proud nor highly conceited of themselves above others, but equal in apparel, in port, face, and manner of life, to any other Citizens of the common sort: for the dignity of pompe and outward shew appertaineth to a Consul or a Prætor: as for the Tribunes of the people, he ought to be humble and lowly, and as *M. Curius* was wont to say, ready to put his hand under every mans foot: not to carry a lofty grave, and lately countenance, nor to be hard of access, nor strange to be spoken with, or dealt withall by the multitude: but howsoever he behave himselfe to others, he ought to the simple and common people, above the rest, for to be affable, gentle, and tractable: and hereupon the manner is, that the doore of his house should never be kept shut, but stand open both day and night, as a safe harbour, sure haven, and place of refuge, for all those who are distressed and in need: and verily the more submisile that he is in outward appearance, the more growth he and encrease in puissance: for they repute him as a strong hold for common recourse and retreat unto all commoners, no lesse than an altar or privileged sanctuary. Moreover, as touching the honour that he holdeth by his place, they count him holy, sacred, and inviolable, inasmuch as if he do but go forth of his house abroad into the City, and walke in the street, the manner was of all to cleanse and sanctifie the body, as if it were stained and polluted.

## LXXXII.

*What is the reason that before the Prætors, general Capitaines, and head Magistrates there be carried bundles of rods, together with hatchets or axes fastned unto them?*

**I**S it to signifie, that the anger of the Magistrate ought not to be prompt to execution, nor loose and at liberty?

Or, because that to undo and unbind the said bundles, yeeldeth some time and space for cholet to coole, and ire to assuage, which is the cause otherwhiles that they change their minds, and do not proceed to punishment?

Now forasmuch as among the faults that men commit, some are curable, others remediable: the rods are to reforme those who may be amended; but the hatchets to cut them off who are incorrigible.

## LXXXIII.

*What is the cause that the Romans having intelligence given unto them, that the Blestone, an barbarous nation, had sacrificed unto their gods a man: sent for the Magistrates preemtorily, as intending to punish them: but after they once understood, that they had so done according to an ancient Law of their Country, they let them go againe without any hurt done unto them: charging them only, that from thenceforth they should not obey such a Law: and yet they themselves, not many years before, had caused for to be buried quick in the place, called the Beast Market, two men and two women, that it is say, two Greeks, and two Gallo-Greeks or Galatians? For this seemeth to be very absurd, that they themselves should do those things, which they reproved in others as damnable.*

**M**ay it not be that they judged it an execrable superstition to sacrifice a man or woman unto the gods, many unto devils they held it necessary?

Or was it not for that they thought those people, who did it by law or custome, offended highly: but they themselves were directed thereto by expresse commandment out of the books of *Sibylla*. For reported it is, that one of their Votaries or Vestall Nuns named *Helbia*, riding on horse-back, was smitten by a thunderbolt or blast of lightning: and that the horse was found lying along all bare-bellied, and her self likewise naked, with her smock and petticoat turned up above her privy parts, as if he had done it of purpose: her shoes, her rings, her coife and head attire cast here and there apart from other things, and withall lilling the tongue out of her head. This strange occurrence, the soothsayers out of their learning interpreted to signifie, that some great shame did betide the sacred virgins that should be divulged and notoriously known: yea, and that the same infamy should reach also as far as unto some of the degree of Gentlemen or Knights of *Rome*. Upon this there was a servant belonging unto a certaine Barbarian horleman, who detected three Vestall Virgins to have at one time forfeited their honour, and been naughty of their bodies to wit, *Æmilia*, *Leucina*, and *Martia*: and that they had companied too familiarly with men a long time; and one of their names was *Buteus*, a Barbarian Knight, and Master to the said enformer. So these vestall Virgins were punished after they had been convicted by order of Law, and found guilty: but after that this seemed a fearful and horrible accident: ordained it was by the Senate, that the Priests should peruse over the books of *Sibylla's* Prophecies, wherein were found (by report) those very Oracles which denounced and foretold this strange occurrence, and that it portended some great losse and calamity unto the Common-wealth: for the avoiding and diverting whereof, they gave commandment to abandon unto (I wot not what) maligne and devillish strange spirits, two Greeks, and two Galatians likewise: and so by burying them quick in that very place, to procure propitiation at Gods hands.

## LXXXIV.

*Why began they their day at midnight?*

**W**As it not, for that all policy at the first had the beginning of military discipline? and in war, and all expeditions the most part of worthy exploits are enterprised ordinarily in the night before the day appeare?

On because the execution of designs howsoever it begin at the sunrising: yet the preparation thereto is made before day-light: for there had need to be some preparatives before a worke be taken in hand: and not at the very time of execution, according as *Myson* (by report) answered unto *Cleio*, one of the seven sages, when as in the winter-time he was making of a Van.

Or haply, for that like as we see, that many men at noone make an end of their businesse of great importance, and of State-affaires: even so, they supposed that they were to begin the same at midnight. For better prooffe whereof a man may frame an argument hereupon, that the Roman chiefe Ruler never made league, nor concluded any capitulations and covenants of peace after mid-day.

Or rather this may be, because it is not possible to set down determinately the beginning and end of the day, by the rising and setting of the sun: for if we do as the vulgar sort, who distinguish day and night by the sight and view of eye, taking the day then to begin when the sun ariseth: and the night likewise to begin when the sun is gone down, and hidden under our horizon, we shall never have the just Equinox, that is to say, the day and night equal: for even that very night which we have shall esteeme most equal to the day. Will prove shorter than the day, by as much as the body or bignesse of the sun containeth. Again, if we do as the Mathematicians, who to remedy this absurdity and inconvenience, set down the confines and limits of day and night, at the very instant point when the sun seemeth to touch the circle of the horizon with his center: this were to overthrow all allowance: for fall out it will, that while there is a great part of the suns light yet under the earth (although the sun do shine upon us) we will not confesse that it is day, but say, that it is night still. Seeing then it is so hard a matter to make the beginning of day and night, at the rising or going down of the sun, for the absurdities abovesaid, it remaineth that of necessity we take the beginning of the day to be, when the sun is in the miditt of the heaven above head, or under our feet, that is to say, either noon-tide or mid-night. But of twaine, better it is to begin when he is in the middle point under us, which is just midnight, for that he returneth then toward us into the East: Whereas contrariwise after mid-day he goeth from us Westward.

## LXXXV.

*What was the cause that in times past they would not suffer their wives, either to grind corne, or to lay their hands to dresse meat in the kitchen?*

**W**As it in memorial of that accord and league which they made with the Sabines? for after that they had ravished and carried away their daughters, there arose sharpe wars between them: but peace ensued thereupon in the end: in the capitulations whereof this one article was expressly let down, that the Roman husband might not force his wife, either to turn the querul for to grind corne, nor to exercise any point of cookery.

## LXXXVI.

LXXXVI.

*Why did not the Romans marry in the month of May?*

**I**S it for that it cometh between *Aprill* and *June*? whereof the one is consecrated unto *Venus*, and the other to *Junio*, who are both of them the goddesses which have the care and charge of wedding and marriages, and therefore thinke it good either to go somewhat before, or else to lay a while after.

Or it may be that in this month they celebrate the greatest expiatory sacrifice of all others in the year: for even at this day they fling from off the bridge into the river the images and pourtraires of men, whereas in old time they threw down men themselves alive? And this is the reason of the custome now adaies, that the Priestesse of *Junio*, named *Flamina*, should be always clad and heavy, as it were a mourner, and never wash nor dresse and trim her selfe.

Or what and if we say, it is because many of the Latine Nations offered oblations unto the dead in this month: and peradventure they do so, because in this very month they worship *Mercurij*; and in truth it beareth the name of *Maja*, *Mercurij* mother.

But may it not be rather, for that as some do say, this month taketh that name of *Majores*, that is to say, ancients: like as *June* is termed of *Juniores*, that is to say, yongers. Now this is certaine that youth is much meetier for to contract marriage than old age: like as *Enripides* saith very well:

*As for old age it Venus bids farewell,  
And with old folks Venus is not pleas'd well.*

The Romans therefore married not in *May*, but staid for *June* which immediately followeth after *May*.

LXXXVII.

*What is the reason that they divide and part the haire of the new brides heads, with the point of a javelin?*

**I**S not this a very sign, that the first wives whom the Romans espoused, were compelled to marriage, and conquered by force and armes.

Or are not their wives hereby given to understand, that they are espoused to husbands, martial men and souldiers; and therefore they should lay away all delicate, wanton, and costly imbelliment of the body, and acquaint themselves with simple and plaine attire: like as *Lycurgus* for the same reason would that the doores, windows, and roofes of houses should be framed with the saw and the axe only, without use of any other tooke or instrument, intending thereby to chase out of the common-weale all curiosity and wastfull superfluity.

Or doth not this parting of the haire give covertly to understand, a division and separation, as if marriage and the bond of wedlock, were not to be broken but by the sword and warlike force?

Or may not this signifie thus much, that they referred the most part of ceremonies concerning marriage unto *Junio*: now it is plaine that the javelin is consecrated unto *Junio*, inasmuch as most part of her images and statues are pourtraied resting and leaning upon a lance or javelin. And for this cause the goddess is surnamed *Quiritis*, for they called in old time a speare *Quiris*, upon which occasion *Mars* also (as they say) is named *Quiris*.

LXXXVIII.

*What is the reason that the money employed upon plaies and publike shews is called among them, *Lucra*?*

**M**AY it not well be that there were many groves about the City consecrated unto the gods, which they named *Lucos*: the revenues whereof they bettowed upon the setting forth of such solemnities?

LXXXIX.

*Why call they *Quintinalia*, the Feast of fooles?*

**W**HETHER it is because (as *Juba* writeth) they attribute this day unto those who knew not their own linage and tribe: or unto such as have not sacrificed, as others have done according to their tribes, at their feast called *Fornacalia*. Were it that they were hindered by other affairs, or had occasion to be forth of the City, or were altogether ignorant, and therefore this day was assigned for them to performe the said Feast.

XC.

*What is the cause, that when they sacrifice unto Hercules, they name no other God but him, nor suffer a dog to be seen, within the pourtrie and precincts of the place where the sacrifice is celebrated, according as Varro hath left in writing?*

**I**S not this the reason of naming no god in their sacrifice, for that they esteeme him but a denigod; and some there be who hold, that while he lived hereupon the earth, *Evander* erected an altar unto him, and offered sacrifice thereupon. Now of all other beasts he could worst abide a dog, and hated him most: for this creature put him to more trouble all his life time than any other: witness hereof the three headed dog *Cerberus*, and above all others, when *Orcus* the son of *Lycumius* was slaine by a dog, he was enforced by the Hippocoontides to give the battell, in which he lost many of his friends, and among the rest of his own brother *Iphicles*.

XCI.

\* Or about  
a dog by  
the Hippo-  
coontides.

XCII.

*What is the reason that he who saved the life of a Citizen in the wars, was rewarded with a Coronet made of oake branches?*

**I**S it not because in regard of *M. Manlius*, who dwelling there attempted and plotted to be King of Rome, and to usurpe tyranny, in hatred and detestation of whom it is said, that ever after this the house of *Manlius* might not have *Marcus* for their fore-name?

Or rather was not this an old feare, that the Romans had (time out of mind?) For albeir *Valerius Publicola* was a personage very popular and well affected unto the common people; yet never ceased the great and mighty men of the City to suspect and traduce him, nor the meane commoners and multitude to feare him, untill such time as bimileie caused his own house to be demolished and pulled down, because it seemed to over-look and command the common market place of the city.

XCIII.

*What is the reason, that he who saved the life of a Citizen in the wars, was rewarded with a Coronet made of oake branches?*

**V**As it not for that in every place and readily they might meet with an oake, as they marched in their warlike expeditions?

Or rather, because this manner of garland is dedicated unto *Jupiter* and *Junio*, who are reputed protectors of Cities?

Or might not this be an ancient custome proceeding from the Arcadians, who have a kind of consanguinity with oaks, for that they report of themselves, that they were the first men that issued out of the earth, like as the oake of all other trees.

XCIII.

*Why observe they the Vultures or Geirs, most of any other fowles, in taking of presages by bird-flight?*

**I**S it not because at the foundation of Rome there appeared twelve of them unto *Romulus*? Or because, this is no ordinary bird nor familiar; for it is not so easie a matter to meet with an oake of Vultures; but all on a sudden they come out of some strange country, and therefore the sight of them doth prognostick and prelage much.

Or else haply the Romans learned this of *Hercules*, if that be true which *Herodotus* reporteth: namely, that *Hercules* took great contentment, when in the enterprize of any exploit of his, there appeared Vultures unto him: for that he was of opinion, that the Vulture of all birds of prey was the justest: for first and foremost never toucheth he ought that hath life, neither killeth he any living creature, like as eagles, falcons, hawks, and other fowles do, that prey by night, but feedeth upon dead carions: over and besides, he forbearth to set upon his own kind: for never was there man yet, who saw a Vulture eat the flesh of any foule, like as eagles and other birds of prey do, which chase, pursue and pluck in peeces those especially of the same kind, to wit, other foule. And verily as *Æschylus* the Poet writeth:

*How can that bird, which bird doth eat,  
Be counted cleanly, pure, and neat.*

And as for men, it is the most innocent bird, and doth least hurt unto them of all other: for it doth not fruit nor plant whatsoever, neither doth it harme to any tame creature. And if the tale be true that the Egyptians do tell, that all the kind of these birds be females; that they conceive and be with young, by receiving the East-wind blowing upon them, like as some trees by the Westerne wind, it is very profitable that the signes and prognosticks drawn from them, be more sure and certaine than from any others, considering that of all besides, their violence in treading and breeding time, their eagernesse in flight when they pursue their prey; their flying away from some, and chasing of others, must needs cause much trouble and uncertainty in their prognostications.

XCIV.

*Why stands the Temple of *Æsculapius* without the City of Rome?*

**I**S it because they thought the abode without the City more wholesome than that within? For in this regard the Greeks ordinarily build the Temples of *Æsculapius* upon high ground, wherein the aire is more pure and cleare.

Or in this respect, that this god *Æsculapius* was sent for out of the City *Epidaurus*. And true it is that the Epidaurians founded his Temple: not within the walls of their City, but a good way from it.

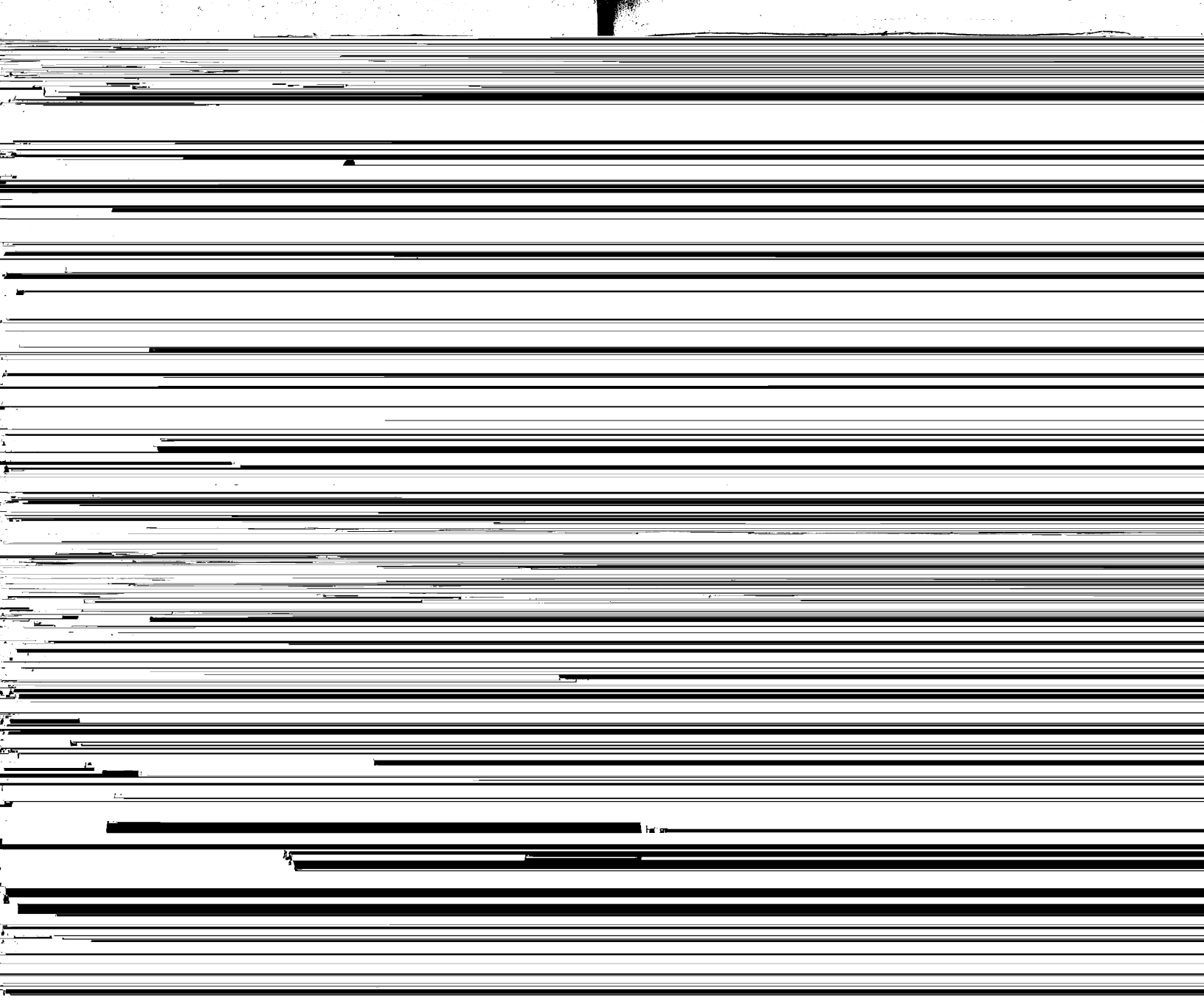
Or lastly, for that the serpent when it was landed out of the galley in the Isle, and then vanished out of sight, seemed thereby to tell them where he would that they should build the place of his abode.

XCV.

*Why doth the Law forbid them that are to live chaste, the eating of pulse?*

**A**S touching beanes, is it not in respect of those very reasons for which it is said: That the Pythagoreans counted them abominable? And as for the cicling and cich pease, whereof the

Ppp



unto their perfection in comparison of males; but as touching those precise dayes, they take them that immediately follow the seventh: for that the seventh day after children be born is very dangerous, as well for other occasions, as in regard of the navill-firing: for that in many it will unkin and be loose again upon the seventh day, and so long as it continueth so resolved and open, an infant resembleth a plant rather than any animal creature?

Or like as the Pythagoreans were of opinion, that of numbers the even were females, and the odd male; for that it is generative, and is more strong than the even number, because it is compound: and if a man divide these numbers into unities, the even number sheweth a void place between, whereas the odde hath the middle always fulfilled with one part thereof: even so in this respect they are of opinion, that the even number eight, resembleth rather the female, and the uneven number nine, the male.

Or rather it is because of all numbers, nine is the first square coming of three, which is an odde and perfect number: and eight the first cubick, to wit four-square on every side like a die proceeding from two, an even number: now a man ought to be quadrat odde (as we say) and singular, yea and perfect: and a woman (on less than a die) sure and stedfast, a keeper of home, and not easily removed. Hereunto we do adjoyne thus much more also, that eight is a number cubick, arising from two as the base and foot: and nine is a square quadrangle having three for the base: and therefore it seemeth, that where women have two names, men have three.

## CIII.

What is the reason, that those children who have no certain father, they were wont to term Spurius?

For we may not think as the Greeks hold, and as orators give out in their pleas, that this word *Spurius*, is derived of *Spore*, that is to say, natural seed, for that such children are begotten by the seed of many men mingled and confounded together.

But surely this *Spurius*, is one of the ordinary fore-names that the Romans take, such as *Sextus*, *Decimus*, and *Caius*. Now these fore-names they never use to write out at full with all their letters, but mark them sometime with one letter alone, as for example, *Titus*, *Lucius*, and *Marcus*, with *T*, *L*, *M*: or with twain, as *Spurius* and *Cneus*, with *Sp*, and *Cn*, or at most with three as *Sextus* and *Servius*, with *Sex*, *Ser*. *Spurius* then is one of their fore-names which is noted with two letters *S*, and *P*, which signifie asmuch, as *Sine Patre*, that is to say without a father: for *S*, standeth for *Sine*, that is to say, without; and *P*, for *Pater*, that is to say, a father. And hereupon grew the error, for that *Sine Patre*, and *Spurius* be written both with the same letters short, *Sp*. And yet I will not stick to give you another reason, though it be somewhat fabulous, and carrieth a greater absurdity with it: forsooth they say that the Sabines in old time named in their language the nature or privities of a woman, *Spurio*: and thereupon afterwards as it were by way of reproach, they called him *Spurius*, who had to his mother a woman unmarried and not lawfully espoused.

## CIV.

Why is Bacchus called with them, Liber Pater?

Is it for that he is the author and father of all liberty unto them who have taken their wine well: for most men become audacious and are full of bold and frank broad speech, when they be drunk or cup-shotten?

Or because he is who ministrerth libations first, that is to say, those effusions and offerings of wine that are given to the gods?

Or rather (as *Alexander* said) because the Greeks called *Bacchus*, *Dionysus Elutheri*, that is to say, *Bacchus* the Deliverer: and they might call him so, of a city in *Bacotia*, named *Eluthera*.

## CV.

Wherefore was it not the custome among the Romans, that maidens should be wedded upon any dayes of publicke their feasts: but widowes might be remarried upon those dayes?

\* Or, feeble paine; alluding haply ad rupturam Hymenis.  
\* Or, celestiall delight and pleasure.

VV As it for that (as *Varro* saith) virgins be \* ill-aped and heavy when they be first wedded; but such as were wives before, be glad and joyfull when they marrie againe? And upon a feastivall holy day there should be nothing done with any ill will or upon constraint.

Or rather, because it is for the credit and honor of young damoels, to be married in the view of the whole world: but for widowes it is a dishonour and shame unto them, to be seen of many for to be wedded a second time: for the first marriage is lovely and desirable; the second odious and abominable: for women, if they proceed to marry with other men whiles their former husbands be living, are ashamed thereof: and if they be dead, they are in mourning state of widowhood: and therefore they chuse rather to be married closely and secretly in all silence, than to be accompanied with a long train and solemnity, and to have much ado and great stirring at their marriage. Now it is well known that feastivall holidays divert and distract the multitude divers wayes, some to this game and pastime, others to that: so as they have no leisure to go and see weddings.

Or last of all, because it was a day of publick solemnity, when they first ravished the Sabines daughters: an attempt that drew upon them, bloody war, and therefore they thought it ominous and prefiging evil, to offer their virgins to wed upon such holidays.

CVI.

## CVI.

Why do the Romans honour and worship fortune, by the name of *Primigenia*, which a man may interpret first begotten or first borne?

Is it for that (as some say) *Servius* being by chance born of a maid-servant and a captive, had Fortune to favourable unto him, that he reigned nobly and gloriously, king at *Rome*? For most Romans are of his opinion.

Or rather, because Fortune gave unto the city of *Rome* her first originall and beginning of so mighty an empire.

Or lieth not herein some deeper cause, which we are to fetch out of the secrets of Nature and Philosophy: namely, that Fortune is the principle of all things, inasmuch, as Nature consisteth by Fortune: namely, when to some things concurring casually and by chance, there is some order and dispose adjoynd.

## CVII.

What is the reason that the Romans call those who act comedies and other theatricall plaies, *Histriones*?

Is it for that cause, which as *Claudius Rufus* hath left in writing? for he reporteth that many years ago, and namely, in those dayes when *Caius Sulpitius* and *Lucius Sicius* were Consuls, there reigned a great pestilence at *Rome*, such a mortality as consumed all the stage-players indifferently one with another. Whereupon at their instant prayer and request, there repaired out of *Tuscan* to *Rome*, many excellent and singular actors in this kind: among whom he who was of greatest reputation, and had carried the name longest in all theaters, for his rare gift and dexterity that way was, called *Hister*; of whose name all other afterward were termed *Histriones*.

## CVIII.

Why espoused not the Romans in marriage those women who were near of kin unto them?

VV As it because they were desirous to amplify, and increase all alliances, and acquire more kinsfolk, by giving their daughters in marriage to others, and by taking to wife others than their own kintred?

Or for that they feared in such wedlock the jares and quarrels of those who be of kin, which are able to extinguish and abolish even the very lawes and rights of nature?

Or else, seeing as they did, how women by reason of their weakness and infirmity stand in need of many helpers, they would not have men to contract in marriage, nor dwell in one house with those who were near in blood to them, to the end, that if the husband should offer wrong and injury to his wife, her kinsfolk might succour and assist her.

## CIX.

Why is it not lawful for Jupiters priest, whom they name *Flamen Dialis* to handle or once touch meal or leaven.

For meal, is it not because it is an unperfect and raw kind of nourishment? for neither continueth it the same that it was, to wit, wheat, &c. nor is that yet which it should be, namely bread: but hath lost that nature which it had before of seed, and withall hath not gotten the life of food and nourishment. And hereupon it is, that the poet calleth meal (by a Metaphor or borrowed speech) *Mal-phaton*, which is as much to say, as killed and marred by the mill in grinding: and as for leaven, both it (else is engendered of a certain corruption of meal, and also corrupteth in a manner) the whole lump of dough, wherein it is mixed: for the said dough becometh his firme and fast then it was before, it hangeth not together; and in one word the leaven of the pulle seemeth to be a very putrefaction and rottenness thereof. And verily if there be too much of the leaven put to the dough, it maketh it so share and four that it cannot be eaten, and in very truth spoileth the meal quite.

## CX.

Wherefore is the said priest likewise forbidden to touch raw flesh?

Is it by this custome to withdraw him far from eating of raw things?

Or is it for the same cause that he abhorreth and detesteth meal? for neither is it any more a living animal, nor come yet to be meat: for by boyling and roasting it groweth to such an alteration, as changeth the very forme thereof: whereas raw flesh and newly killed is neither pure and unpolluted to the eye, but hideous to see to; and besides, it hath (I wot not what) resemblance to an ugly fore or filthy ulcer.

## CXI.

What is the reason that the Romans have expressly commanded the same priest or *Flamen* of *Jupiter*, not only not to touch a dog or cat, but not so much as to name either of them?

To speak of the Goat first is it not for detestation of his excessive lust and leachery: and besides for his rank and filthy favour? or because they are afraid of him, as of a diseased creature and subject

Ppp



subject to maladies? for surely, there seemeth not to be a beast in the world so much given to the falling sickness, as it is: not infecteth so soon those that either eat of the flesh or once touch it, when it is surprised with this evil. The cause thereof some say to be the streightness of those conduits and passages by which the spirits go and come, which often-times happen to be intercepted and stopped. And this they conjecture by the small and slender voice that the beast hath; and the better to confirm the same, we do see ordinarily, that men likewise who be subject to this malady, grow in the end to have such a voice as in some sort resembleth the bleating of goats. Now, for the Dog, true it is aptly that he is not so lecherous, nor smelleth altogether so strong and so rank as doth the Goat; and yet some there be who say, that a Dog might not be permitted to come within the cattle of *Athen*, nor to enter into the isle of *Delos*, because forthwith belineth bitches openly in the sight of every man, as if bulls, bears, and lions had their secret chambers, to do their kind with females, and did not leap and cover them in the broad field and open yard, without being abashed at the matter.

But ignorant they are of the true cause indeed: which is, for that a Dog is by nature fell, and quarrelsome, given to arte and war upon a very small occasion: in which respect men banish them from sanctuaries, holy churches, and privileged places, giving thereby unto poor afflicted supplicants, free access unto them for their safe and sure refuge. And even so very probable it is, that this *Flamen* or priest of *Jupiter*, whom they would have to be as an holy, sacred, and living image to the file unto, should be accessible and able to be approached unto by humble suitors, and such as stand in need of him, without anything in the way to impeach, to put back, or to affright them: which was the cause that he had a little bed or pallet made for him, in the very porch or entry of his house: and that servant or slave, who could find means to come and fall down at his feet, and lay hold on his knees was for that day freed from the whip, and past danger of all other punishment: say he were a prisoner with irons, and bolts at his feet that could make shift to approach near unto this priest, he was let loose, and his givings and fetters were thrown out of the house, not at the door, but flung over the very roof thereof.

But to what purpose served all this, and what good would this have done, that he should shew himself so gentle, so affable, and humane, if he had a curst dog about him to keep his door, and to fright, chase and scare all those away who had recourse unto him for succour. And yet to it is, that our ancients reputed not a dog to be altogether a clean creature: for first and foremost we do not find that he is consecrated or dedicated unto any of the celestiall gods: but being sent unto terrestrial and infernall *Proserpina* into the quarrelles and crofts high ways to make her a supper, he seemeth to serve for an expiatory sacrifice to divert and turn away some calamity, or to cleanse some filthy ordure, rather than otherwise: to say nothing, that in *Lacedaemon* they cut and slit dogs down along the mids, and to sacrifice them to *Mars*: the most bloody god of all others. And the Romans themselves upon the feast *Lupercalia*, which they celebrate in the lustful month of Purification, called February, offer up a dog for a sacrifice: and therefore it is no absurdity to think, that those who have taken upon them to serve the most soveraigne and purest God of all others, were not without good cause forbidden to have a dog with them in the house, nor to be acquainted and familiar with him.

## CXII.

For what cause was not the same priest of *Jupiter* permitted, either to touch an ivie tree, or to pass thorough away covered over head with a vine growing to a tree, and spreading her branches from it?

It is not this like unto those precepts of *Pythagoras*: Eat not your meat from a chair: Sit not upon a measure called *Chenix*: Neither step thion over a broom or \* besom. For surely none of the *Pythagoreans* feared any of these things, or made scruple to do, as these words in outward shew, and in their litterall sense do pretend: but under such speeches they did covertly and figuratively forbid somewhat else: even to this precept: Go not under a vine, is to be referred unto wine, and implieth this much: that is not lawful for the said Priest to drink, for such as over-drink themselves, have the wine above their heads, and under it they are depressed and weighed down, whereas men and priests especially ought to be evermore superiors and commanders of this pleasure, and in no wise to be subject unto it. And thus much of the Vine.

As for the ivie, is it not for that it is a plant that beareth no fruit, nor any thing good for man use, and moreover is so weak, as by reason of that feableness it is not able to sustain it selfe, but had need of other trees to support and bear it up: and besides, with the cool shadow that it yeelds, and the green leaves always to be seen, it dazeleth, and, as it were, bewitcheth the eyes of many that look upon it, for which causes, men thought that they ought not to nourish or entertain it about an house, because it bringeth no profit, nor suffer it to clasp about any thing, considering it is so hurtfull unto plants and admit it to creep upon them, whiles it sticketh fast in the ground: and therefore banished it is from the temples and sacrifices of the celestiall gods, and their priests are debared from using it: neither shall a man ever see in the sacrifices or divine worship of *Juno* at *Athen*, nor of *Venus* at *Thebes*, any wilde ivie brought out of the woods. Mary, at the sacrifices and services of *Bacchus*, which are performed in the night and darkness, it is used.

Or may not this be a covert and figurative prohibition, of such blind dances and fooleries in the night, as the ivie, which are practised by the priests of *Bacchus*: for those women which are trans-

posed

ported with these furious motions of *Bacchus*, run immediately upon the ivie, and catching it in their hands, pluck it in pieces, or else chew in between their teeth: in so much as they speak not altogether absurdly, who say, that this ivie hath in it a certain spirit: that stirreth and moveth to madness, turneth mens minds to fury: driveth them to exalties: troubleth and tormenteth them: and in one word maketh them drunk with wine, and doth great pleasure unto them, who are otherwise disposed and inclined of themselves to such fanaticall ravishments of their wit and understanding.

## CXIII.

What is the reason that these Priests and *Flamins* of *Jupiter* were not allowed, either to take upon them, or to sue for any government of State? but in regard that they be not capable of such dignities, for honour sake and in some sort to make some recompence for that defect, they have an asher or verger before them carrying a knitch of rods, yea, and a carall charr of estate to sit upon?

Isle for the same cause, that as in some cities in *Greece*, the sacerdotal dignity was equivalent to the royall majesty of a King, so they would not chuse for their priests, mean persons and such as came next to hand.

Or rather, because Priests having their functions determinate and certain, and the kings, undeterminate and uncertain, it was not possible, that when the occasions and times of both concurred together at one instant, one and the same person should be sufficient for both: for it could not otherwise be, but many times when both charges pressed upon him and urged him at once, he should pretermitt the one or the other, and by that means one while, offend and fault in religion toward God, and another while do hurt unto citizens and subjects.

Or else, considering that in governments among men, they law that there was otherwhiles no less necessity than authority: and that he who is to rule a people (as *Hippocrates* said) of a Physician, who seeth many evil things, yea, and handieth many also from the harmes of other men, repayeth grief and sorrow of his own: they thought it not in policy good, that any one should sacrifice unto the gods, or have the charge and superintendence of sacred things: who had been either present or president at the judgements and condemnations to death of his own citizens; yea, and otherwhiles of his own kinsfolke and allies, like as it befell sometime to *Brutus*.

## Demands and Questions as touching Greek Affaires:

That is to say,

A collection of the manners, and of divers customes and fashions of certain persons and nations of *Greece*: which may serve their turn very well, who reading old Authors, are desirous to know the particularities of Antiquities.

## I.

Who are they that in the city *Epidaurus* be called *Conipodes* and *Artyni*?

There were an hundred and fourscore men, who had the managing and government of the of the Common-wealth of which number they chose *Senatours*, whom they named *Artyni*: but the most part of the people abode and dwelt in the countrey, and such were termed *Conipodes*, which is as much as to say, as Dusty-feet, for that when they came down to the city (as a man may conjecture) they were known by their dusty-feet.

## II.

What was she, who in the city of *Cumes* they named *Onobatis*?

When there was any woman taken in adultery, they brought her in to the publick market-place, where they set her down upon an eminent stone, to the end that she might be seen of all the people: and after she had stood there a good while, they mounted her upon an Ass, and so let her round about the city: which done, they brought her back again into the market-place, where the mult stand as she did before upon the same stone: and so from that time forward she led an infamous and reproachfull life, called of every one by the name of *Onobatis*, that is to say, she that hath ridden upon the Ass back. But when they had so done, they reputed that stone polluted, and detested it as accursed and abominable.

There was likewise in the same city a certain office of a gaoler, whom they called *Phylaster*: and look who bare this office, had the charge of keeping the prison at all other times: only at a certain assembly and sessions of the Councill in the night season. he went into the Senate, and brought forth the Kings, leading them by the hands, and there held them still during the time that the Senate had made inquisition and decreed whether they had deserved ill and ruled unjustly or not: giving thus their suffrages and voices privily in the dark.

III.

## III.

What is he whom they name in the city of Soli, Hypecaustria?

SO call they the priests of *Minerva*, by reason of certain sacrifices (which she celebrateth) and other divine ceremonies and services, to put by and divert shrewd turnes, which otherwise might happen: the word signifieth as much as a chaufure

## IV.

Who be they in the city Cnidos, whom they call Amnemonēs? as also who is Aphester among them?

There are three score elect men out of the better sort and principall citizens, whom they employed as overseers of mens lives and behaviour, who also were consulted first, and gave their sentence as touching affaires of greatest importance: and *Amnemonēs* they were named, for that they were not, (as a man may very well conjecture) called to any account, nor urged to make answer for any thing that they did: unless haply they were so named, *quasi Polymnemonēs*, because they remembered many things and had to good a memory. As for *Aphester*, he it was who in their consultations demanded their opinions and gathered their voices.

## V.

Who be they, whom the Arcadians and Lacedaemonians tearme, Chrestos?

The Lacedaemonians having concluded a peace with the Tegeates, did set down expressly the articles of agreement in writing, which they caused to be engraven upon a square column, common to them both, the which was erected upon the river *Alpheus*: in which among other covenants this was written: That they might chafe the Messenians out of their countries: howbeit, lawful it should not be to make them *Chrestos*, which *Aristotle* expoundeth thus and faith: That they might kill none of the Tegeates who during the war had taken part with the Lacedaemonians.

\*Vnde supra  
is qualif.  
num.  
ss. where  
this is  
somewhat  
otherwise  
reported.

## VI.

What is he whom the Opuntians call Crithologos.

The greatest part of the Greeks in their most ancient sacrifices use certain barley, which the citizens, of their first fruits did contribute: that officer therefore who had the rule and charge of these sacrifices, and the gathering and bringing in of these first fruits of barley, they named *Crithologos*, as one would say, the collector of the barley. Moreover, two priests they had besides, one in perintendent over the sacrifices and ceremonies for the Gods; another for the divels,

## VII.

Which be the clouds called Ploiades.

Those especially which are waterish and disposed to rain, and withall wandering to and fro, and carried here and there in the aire; *Theophrastus* in the fourth book of *Meteors* or impressions gathered above in the region of the aire, hath put it downe word for word in this manner: Considering that the cloudes *Ploiades* (quoth he) and those which be gathered thick, and are settled unmoveable, and besides very white, shew a certain diversity of matter, which is neither converted into water, nor resolved into wind.

## VIII.

Whom do the Boeotians mean by this word, Platychatas?

Those whose houses joine one to another, or whose lands do border and confine together, in the Aeolicke language they called *fo*, as if they would say, being near neighbours: to which purpose one example among many I will alledge out of our law *Theinophylacium*, &c. \*\*\*

## IX.

What is he who among the Delphians is called Hofiotes, and why name the one of they moneths Bylios.

They name *Hofiotes* that sacrificer who offereth a sacrifice when he is declared *Hofos*, that is to say, holy: and five there be who are all their life time accounted *Hofos*, and those do and execute many things together with their prophets, and joyne with them in divers ceremonies of divine service, and gods worship, inasmuch as they are thought to be descended from *Dæmonion*. And for the moneth called *Bysi*, many have thought it to be as much as *Phyfius*, that is to say, the springing or growing moneth: for that then, the spring beginneth, and many plants at that time do arise out of ground and bud. But the truth is not so: for the Delphians never use *B*, in stead of *Ph*, like as the Macedonians do, who for *Philippus*, *Phalacro*, and *Pheronice*, say, *Bilippus*, *Balecro*, and *Beronice*: indeed they put *B*, for *P*, and it is as ordinary with them, to say *Batein*, for *Patein*, *Bicron*, for *Picron*: and so *Byfius*, is all one with *Pyfius*, that is to say, the moneth in which they consult with their god *Apollo*, and demand of him answers and revelations of their doubts: for this is the custome of the country, because in this moneth they propounded their demand unto the Oracle of *Apollo*, and they supposed the seventh day of the same to be his birth-day, which they

they surmamed also, *Polyphous*, not as many do imagine, because they then do bake many cakes, which are called *Phibos*, but for that it is a day wherein divers do resort unto the Oracle for to be resolved, and many answers are delivered: for it is but of late dayes that folke were permitted to consult with the Oracle when they lit in every moneth: but before time the religious Priests of *Apollo*, named *Pythia*, opened not the Oracle, nor gave answer but at one time in the year, according as *Callistenes* and *Alexandrides* have recorded in writing.

## X.

What signifieth Phyximelon?

Little plants there be, which when they burgeon and shoot out first, the beasts love passing well. Their first buds and sprouts which they put forth: but in brouzing and cropping them, great injury they do unto the plants and hinder their growth: when as therefore they are grown up to that height that beasts graze thereabout, can do them no harme, they be called *Phyximela*, that is as much to say, as having escaped the danger of castell, as witnesseth *Aeschylus*.

## XI.

Who be they that are named Apophthendoneti?

In times past the Eretrians held the Island Corcyra, untill *Chariertes* arrived there with a fleet from Corinth and vanquished them: whereupon the Eretrians took sea again, and returned toward their natural country: whereof their fellow-citizens being advertised, such I say as stirred not but remained quiet, repelled them, and kept them off from landing upon their ground by charging them with shot from slings. Now when they saw they could not win them by any fair language, nor yet compell them by force of armes, being as they were inexorable, and besides many more then they in number, they made saile to the coasts of *Thracia*, where they possessed themselves of a place, where they report, *Methon*, one of the predecessors and progenitors of *Orpheus*, sometime dwelt: and there having built a city, they named it *Methone*; but themselves were surnamed *Apophthendoneti*, which is as much to say, as repelled and driven back by slings.

## XII.

What is that which the Delphians call, Charila?

The citizens of *Delphos* do celebrate continually three *Ennaterides*, that is to say, feasts celebrated every ninth year, one after another successively. Of which, the first they name, *Seperion*; the second, *Herois*; and the third, *Charila*. As touching the first, it seemeth to be a memoriall representing the fight or combat that *Phæbus* had against *Pythos*: and his flight after the conflict, and pursuit after him into the valley of *Tempe*. For as some do report he fled by occasion of a certain man-slaughter and murder that he had committed, for which he sought to be purged: others say that when *Pythos* was wounded, and fled by the way which we call, *Holy*, *Phæbus* made him pursue after him, inasmuch as he went within a little of overtaking him, and finding him at the point of death: (for at his first coming he found that he was newly dead of the wounds which he had received in the forehead fight) also, that he was entered and buried by his son, (who as they say) was named *Aix*: this novenary feast therefore, called *Seperion*, is a representation of this history, or else of some other like unto it. The second named *Herois* containeth (I wot not what) hidden ceremonies and fabulous secrets, which the professed priests (in the divine service of *Bacchus* called *Thyades*) know well enough: but by such other things as are openly done and practised, a man may conjecture, that it should be a certain exaltation or assumption of *Semel*, up into heaven. Moreover, as concerning *Charila*, there goeth such a tale as this. It fortuned upon a time, that after much drought, there followed great famine in the city of *Delphos*, inasmuch as all the inhabitants came with their wives and children to the court gates, crying out unto their King, for the extreme hunger that they endured. The king thereupon caused to be distributed among the better sort of them, a dole of meal, and certain pulse, for that he had not sufficient to give indifferently among them all: and when there came a little young wench, a silly orphan, fatherless and motherless, who instantly besought him to give her also some reliefe: the king smote her with his shoe, and flung it at her face. The girl (poore though she was, forlome and destitute of all worldly succour: howbeit carrying no bale mind with her: but of a noble spirit) departed from his presence, and made no more ado, but undid her girdle from her waist and hanged her self therewith. Well, the famine daily increased more and more, and diseases grew thereupon: by occasion whereof, the king went in person to the Oracle of *Apollo*, supposing to find there some need and remedy: unto whom *Pythia* the Prophetess made this answer: That the ghost of *Charila* should be appealed and pacified, who had dyed a voluntary death. So after long search and diligence enquiry, hardly found in the end it was, that the young maiden whom he had so beaten with his shoe, was named *Charila*: whereupon they offered a certain sacrifice mixed with expiatory oblations, which they celebrate and performe from nine years to nine, even to this day. For at this solemnity, the king sitting in his chair, dealeth certain meal and pulse among all comers, as well strangers as citizens: and the image of *Charila* is thither brought, resembling a young girl: now after that every one hath received part of the dole, the king beatech the said image about theaers with his shoe: and the chief governess of the religious women, called *Thyades*, takes up the image, and carrieth it into a certain place full of deep caves: where after they have hung an halter about the



*Neptune and Melanthis, who was the daughter of Alphus; but afterwards being held and inhabited by Anthos and Hyperes, surnamed it was Ambrosia and Hyperia: for the answer of the oracle, Anthos and Hyperes went in this manner:*

*Drink now thy wine, with lees, with dregs, and all;  
Anthoson you cannot your country call;  
Thou might'st it drink with leese dregs pure and cleere.*

Thus I say writeth Aristotle: but Melanthis saith that Anthos being brother of Hyperes, was lost when he was but a very child: and when his brother Hyperes for to leach him out, travelled and wandered to and fro all about, he came at length to Phereus, unto Acastus or Adalstus, where by good fortune Anthos served in the place of cup-bearer, and had the charge of the wine-kear: now as they sat feasting at the table, the boy Anthos when he offered a cup of wine unto his brother, took knowledge of him, and said softly in his eare:

*Drinks now your wine, with lees, with dregs, and all;  
Anthoson you cannot your country call.*

## XX.

*What is the meaning of this by-word in Priene: Darknesse about the oake?*

The Samians and Prienians warred one against the other, doing and suffering harme reciprocally, but so, as the damages and losses were tolerable, untill such time as in one great battell fought between them, those of Priene put to the sword in one day a thousand Samians: but twelve years after in another conflict which the Prienians had against the Milesians neere unto a place called Aps, that is to say, Oake, they lost the most valiant and principall Citizens they had; which hapned at the very time whenage Byas being sent Embassadour unto Samos, won great honour and reputation: this was a wofull day and a pittifull, and heavy calamity to all the games of Priene in generally; for there was not one of them but this common losse in some measure touched: inasmuch as this by-word was taken up amongst them afterwards, in forme of a cursed malediction or solemn oath, in their greatest affaires to bind them withall, by that darknesse at the oake; for that either their fathers, brethren, husbands, or children were then and there slaine.

## XXI.

*What were they among the Candians, who were called Catacautae?*

It is reported, that certaine Tyrrenians having ravished and carried away by force a number of the Athenians daughters and wives out of Brauron, at what time as they inhabited the islands Imbro and Lemnos, were afterwards chased out of those quarters and landed upon the coast of Laconia, which they inhabited: where they entered into such acquaintance with the women of the Countrey, that they begat children of them; whereupon in the end they grew to be suspected and ill spoken of by the naturall inhabitants, so that they were forced to abandon Laconia, and to returne againe into Candy under the conduct of Pollis and his brother Crataides: where, warring upon them that held the countrey, they left many of their bodies who died in sundry skirmishes lying upon the land neglected and unburied: at the first, because they had no time and leisure to interre them, by reason of the sore war which they maintained continually, and the danger that would have ensued, in case they had gone to take up their bodies: but afterwards, because they abhorred to touch those dead carcases that lay stinking and putrifying with the heat of the sun, for that they had continued so long aboveground: Pollis therefore one of their leaders deviled certaine honours, privileges, exemptions, and immunities, to bestow partly upon the Priests of the gods, and in part upon those who buried the dead; and consecrated solemnly these prerogatives unto some terrestrial deities, to the end they might be more durable and remaine inviolate: afterwards he parted with his brother by lot. Now the one fort were named *Sacrificers*, and the other *Catacautae*: who governed apart, with their own laws and particular discipline: by vertue whereof among other good orders and civill customs, they were not subject to certaine crimes and enormities, whereunto other Candians are commonly given; namely, to rob, pilfer, and spoile one another secretly: for those did no wrong one to another; they neither did steale, nor pilfer, nor carry away other mens goods.

## XXII.

*What meaneth the Sepulcher of children among the Chalcidians?*

*Cothus* and *Aelus* the sons of *Xuthus* arrived at *Euboea*, to seeke them a place of habitation: the which Ile was for the most part posselled and occupied by the Aiolians. Now *Cothus* had a promise by oracle, that he should prosper in the world, and have the upper hand of his enemies, in case he bought or purchased that land: wherefore being come a shore with some few of his men, he found certaine young children playing by the sea-side; with whom he joynd: disported with them, made much of them, shewing unto them many pretty gauds and toys that had not been before time seen in those parts: and when he perceived that the children were in love thereof, and desirous to have them; he said that he would not give them any of his fine things, unless by way of exchange he might receive of them some of their land: the children therefore taking up a little of the mound with both hands, gave the same unto him, and having received from him the foresaid gauds, went their wayes. The Aiolians hearing of this, and withal discovering their enemies under false directing their course thither, and ready to invade them, taking counsel of anger and sorrow together, killed those children: who were entombed along that great high way, by which men go from the City to the straight or strich called *Emipus*. Thus you see wherefore that place was called the Childrens Sepulchre.

to have them; he said that he would not give them any of his fine things, unless by way of exchange he might receive of them some of their land: the children therefore taking up a little of the mound with both hands, gave the same unto him, and having received from him the foresaid gauds, went their wayes. The Aiolians hearing of this, and withal discovering their enemies under false directing their course thither, and ready to invade them, taking counsel of anger and sorrow together, killed those children: who were entombed along that great high way, by which men go from the City to the straight or strich called *Emipus*. Thus you see wherefore that place was called the Childrens Sepulchre.

## XXIII.

*What is he whom in Argosthey call Mixarchagenas? and who be they that are named Elafians?*

As for *Mixarchagenas*, it was the surname of *Cassor* among them: and the Argives beleeve verily that buried he was in their Territory. But *Pollux* his brother they revered and worshipped as one of the heavenly gods.

Moreover, those who are thought to have the gift to divert and put by the fits of the Epilepsie, or falling sicknesse, they name *Elafas*, and they are supposed to be descended from *Alexidus*, the daughter of *Amphiarus*.

## XXIV.

*What is that which the Argives call Encnima?*

Those who have lost any of their neer kinsfolks in blood, or a familiar friend, were wont presently after their mourning was past, to sacrifice unto *Apollo*. and thirty days after unto *Mercury*: for this they thought, that like as the earth receiveth the bodies of the dead, so doth *Mercury* the souls. To the minister of *Apollo* they give barley, and receive of him again in lieu thereof, a piece of flesh of the beast killed for sacrifice. Now after that they have quenched the former fire as polluted and defiled, they go to seek for others elsewhere, which after they have kindled; they roast the said flesh with it, and then they call that flesh, *Encnima*.

## XXV.

*Who is Alastor, Aliterios and Palamneus?*

For we must not believe it is, as some bear us in hand, that they be *Aliterii*, who in time of famine, go prying and spying those who grind corn in their houses, and then carry it away by violence: but we are to think that *Alastor* is he who hath committed acts that be *Alastor*, that is to say, not to be forgotten, and the remembrance whereof will continue a long time after. And *Aliterios* is he who tor his wickednesse deserveth *Alastor*, that is to say, to be shunned and avoided of all men: and of such an one is otherwise called *Palamneus*: and thus much saith *Socrates*, was written in the tables of brass.

## XXVI.

*What should the meaning of this be, that the Virgins who accompanied the men that drive the Bees from Elis, toward the City Cassiopaea, go all the way even unto the very borders chanting this ditty:  
Would God, returne another day,  
To native soil you never may?*

The Aeginians being driven out of their own Countrey by the *Lapithae*, inhabited first about *Alphida*; and afterwards in the Province of *Molossii* neer unto *Cassiopaea*. But seeing by experience that good or none growing unto them out of that countrey, and withal finding the people adjoining to be ill neighbours unto them, they went into the plain of *Cirrhia*, under the leading of their King *Chaelus*: but being surprised there, with a wonderful drought, they sent unto the Oracle of *Apollon* who commanded them to stone their King *Onclusus* to death, which they did: and after that put themselves in their voyage again, to seek out a land where they might settle and make their abode: and so long travelled they until at the last they came into those parts which they inhabit at this day, where the ground is good and fertile, and bringing forth all fruitful commodities. Reason they had therefore you see to wish and pray unto the gods, that they might never return again unto their ancient countrey, but remain there forever in all prosperity.

## XXVII.

*What is therefor that it is not permitted at Rhodes for the Herald or publick Crier, to enter into the Temple of Oecridion?*

It is for that *Oecimus* in times past affianced his daughter *Cydippe* unto *Oecridion*, but *Cercaphus* the brother of *Oechimus* being enamoured of his Niece *Cydippe*, perfwaded the Herald (for in those times the manner was to demand their brides in marriage, by the means of Heralds, and to receive them at their hands) that when he had *Cydippe* once delivered unto him, he should bring her unto him: which was effected accordingly. And this *Cercaphus* being possessed of the maiden fled away with her: but in proesse of time when *Oechimus* was very aged, *Cercaphus* returned home. Upon which occasion the Rhodians enacted a law, that from thence forth, there should never any Herald or Crier within the Temple of *Oecridion*, in regard of this injury done unto him.

XXVIII.

What is the cause that among the Tenedians, it is not lawful for a Piper, or a player of the flute, to come within the Temple of Tenes: neither is it permitted to make any mention there of Achilles?

It is not because when the step-mother of Tenes had accused him, for that he would have layen with her, *Malpus* the minstrel avouched it to be true, and most fallacy bare witness against him: whereupon he was forced to fly with his sister unto *Tenedos*.

Furthermore it is said, that *Thetis* the mother of *Achilles*, gave expresse commandment unto her son, and charged him in any wise not to kill *Tenes*: for that he was highly beloved of *Apollo*. Whereupon the commanded one of his servants to have a careful eye unto him, and estoons to put him in mind of this charge that he had from her: lest haply he might forget himselfe, and at unawares take away his life: but as he overran *Tenedos*, he had a sight of *Tenes* sister, a fair and beautiful Lady and pursued her: but *Tenes* put himselfe between, for to defend and save the honor of his sister: during which conflict he escaped and got away: but her brothers fortune was to be slain: but *Achilles* perceiving that it was *Tenes*, when he lay dead upon the ground, killed his servant outright, for that being present in place during the fray, he did not admonish him according as he was commanded: but *Tenes* he buried in that very place where now his Temple standeth. Lo, what was the cause that neither a Piper is allowed to go into his Temple, nor *Achilles* may be once named there.

XXIX.

Who is that, whom the Epidamnians call *Poletes*.

The Epidamnians being next neighbours unto the Illyrians, perceived that their Citizens who converted, commended, and traded in traffick with them, became naught, and fearing besides some practise for the alteration of State: they chose every year one of the best approved men of their City, who went to and fro to make all contracts, bargains, and exchanges, that those of *Epidamnus* might have the Barbarians, and likewise dealt reciprocally in these affairs and negotiations, that the Illyrians had with them: now this factor that thus bought and sold in their name, was called *Poletes*.

XXX.

What is that, which in Thracia they call *Arani Acta*, that is to say, the Shore of Aranus?

The Andrians and Chalcidians having made a voyage into *Thrace*, for to chuse out a place for to inhabit: surprized jointly together the City *Sana*, which was betrayed and delivered into their hands, And being advertised that the Barbarians had abandoned the town *Achantus*, they sent forth two spies to know the truth thereof: these spies approached the town so neer, that they knew for certain, that the enemies had quit the place and were gone. The party who was for the Chalcidians ran before to take the first possession of it in the name of the Chalcidians: but the other who was for the Andrians, seeing that he could not with good footmanship overtake his fellow: flung his dart or javelin from him which he had in his hand: and when the head thereof stuck in the City gate, he cried out aloud, that he had taken possession thereof in the behalfe of the Andrians, with his javelin head. Hereupon arose some variance and controversie between these two nations, but it brake not out to open war: for they agreed friendly together, that the Erythreans, Samians, and Parians should be the indifferent Judges to arbitrate and determine all their debates and sues depending between them. But for that the Erythreans and Samians awarded on the Andrians side, and the Parians for the Chalcidians: the Andrians in that very place took a solemn oath, and bound the same with imprecations, curses, and maledictions, that they would never either take the daughters of the Parians in marriage, or affiance their own unto them: and for this cause they gave this name unto the place, and called it the Shore or Bank of *Aranus*, where as before it was called, the Port of the Dragon.

XXXI.

Why do the wives of the Eretrians at the solemn feast of Ceres, roast their flesh meat, not at the fire, but against the Sun, and never call upon her by the name of Calligenia?

It is for that the Dames of *Troy* whom the King led away captive, were celebrating this feast in this place: but because the time served to make saile, they were enforced to haste away and leave their sacrifice un, effect and unfinished?

XXXII.

Who be they whom the Milesians call *Ainautae*?

After that the Tyrants *Thoon* and *Damascus* had been defeated, there arose within the City two factions that maintained their several sides: the one named *Plontis* and the other *Chinomachia*. In the end, that of *Plontis* (who were indeed the richest and mightiest persons in the City) prevailed, and having gotten the upper hand, seized the sovereign authority and government: and because when they minded to sit in consultation of their weightiest affairs, they went a ship-board, and lunched into the deep a good way off from the land: and after they had resolved and decreed what to do, returned back again into the haven, therefore they were surnamed *Ainautae*, which is as much to say, as alway sailing.

who

XXXIII.

What is the cause that the Chalcidians name one place about *Pyriophion*: The assembly of lusty gallants?

*Naplius* (as the report goeth) being chased and pursued by the Achaeans, fled for refuge like an humble suppliant to the Chalcidians: where partly he answered to such imputations which were laid against him, and in part by way of recrimination, recharged them with other misdemeanors and outrages: whereupon the Chalcidians being not purposed to deliver him into their hands, and yet fearing lest by treachery and privy practise he should be made away and murdered, allowed him for the guard of his person, the very flower of the lustiest young gallants in all their City, whom they lodged in that quarter where they might always converse and meet together, and so keep *Naplius* out of danger.

XXXIV.

What was he who sacrificed an Ox unto his Benefactor.

There hovered sometime a ship of certain men of war, or rovers, and anchored about the coast of *Libactesia*, within which there was an old man who had the charge of a number of earthen pots, containing Amphors a piece, with pitch in them: now it fortuned that a poor mariner or barge man named *Pyrrhus*, who got his living by ferrying and transporting passengers, approached the said ship, and delivered the old man out of the Rovers hands, and saved his life, not for any gain that he looked for, but only at his earnest request, and for very pure pity and compassion: now in recompence hereof, albeit he expected none, the old man pressed instantly upon him to receive some of those pots or pitchers aforesaid: the Rovers were not so soon retired and departed out of the way, but the old man seeing him at liberty, and secure of danger, brought *Pyrrhus* to these earthen vessels, and shewed unto him a great quantity of Gold and Silver mingled with the Pitch: *Pyrrhus* hereby growing of a sudden to be rich and full of money, entreated the old man very kindly in all respects, otherwise, and besides sacrificed unto him a beeie: and hereupon, as they say, arose this common proverb: No man ever sacrificed an Ox unto his Benefactor but *Pyrrhus*.

XXXV.

What is the cause that it was a custom among the maidens of the Bottians in their dancing, to sing, as it were, the substance of a song: Go we to Athens.

The Candiotis by report upon a vow that they had made, sent the first born of their men unto *Delphos*: but they that were thus sent, seeing they could not find sufficient means there to live in plenty, departed from thence to seek out some convenient place for a Colony to inhabit: and first they settled themselves in *Japigia*, but afterwards arrived to this very place of *Thracia*, where now they are, having certain Athenians mingled among them: for it is not like that *Aminos* had caused those young men to be put to death whom the Athenians had sent unto him by way of tribute, but kept them to do him service: some therefore of their issue, and descended from them, being reputed natural Candiotis, were with them sent unto the City of *Delphos*: which is the reason that the young daughters of the Bottians in remembrance of this their original descent went singing in their festival dances: Go we to Athens.

XXXVI.

What should be the reason that the Eliens wives, when they chant hymns to the honour of Bacchus, pray him to come unto them, *Bōō wōō*, that is to say, with his Bull foot: for the hymn runneth in this form: Praise it thee right worthy Lord Bacchus to come unto this holy maritime Temple of thine, accompanied with the Graces, running I say to this Temple with an Ox or Beeffe foot: then for the substance of the Song, they redouble: O worthy Bull, O worthy Bull?

\* See not

It is for that some name this god, The son, or begotten of a Cow: and others rearm him Bull: or It is the meaning of *Bōō wōō*, with thy great foot, like as *Homer* when he called *Juno* or any other *Boōn*, signifieth her to have a big and large eye, and by the Epithet *Bōyānōn*, meaneth one that braggeth and boasteth of great matters.

Or rather because the foot of a Beeffe doth no harm, howsoever horned beasts otherwise be hurtful and dangerous: therefore they invoke thus upon him, and beseech him to come loving and gracious unto them.

Orally, for that many are perswaded, that this is the god who taught men first to plow the ground and sow corn.

XXXVII.

Why have the Tanagraans a place before the City called *Achilleum*? for it is said, that *Achilles*, in his life time bare more favour than love unto this City, as who ravished and stole away *Stratonice*, the Mother of *Poemander*, and killed *Alector* the Son of *Ephippus*.

*Poemander* the father of *Ephippus*, at what time as the Province of *Tanagra*, was peopled and inhabited by towns and villages only, being by the Achaeans besieged in a place called *Stephon*, for that he would not go forth with them to war, abandoned the said Fort in the night time, and

• Q q q 2

and went to build the City *Pamandria*, which he walled about. The Architeēt or Master builder *Polycritus* was there, who dispraised all his work, and derided it, in so much as in a mockery he leapt over the trench; whereat *Pamander* took such dislike, and was so highly offended, that he meant to fling at his head a great stone, which lay there hidden of old upon the nightly sacrifices of *Bacchus*. But *Pamander* not knowing to much, pulled it up by force, and threw it at him; and missing *Polycritus*, hit his son *Leucippus*, and killed him outright. Hereupon according to the Law and Custom then observed, there was no remedy but needs he must depart out of *Bœotia*, in manner of an exiled man, and so as a poor suppliant and stranger to converse, wandering abroad in another country, which was neither safe nor easie for him to do at that time, considering that the *Achæans* were up in arms and entered into the country of *Tanagra*. He sent therefore his son *Ephippus* unto *Achilles* for to request his favour; who by earnest supplications and prayers prevailed to much, that he entreated both him, and also *Ilepelemus* the son of *Hercules*; yea, and *Penelus* the son of *Hippalemus*, who were all of their kindred: by whose means *Pamander* had safe conduct, and was accompanied as far as the City of *Chalcis*, where he was absolved, absolved and purged by *Elpenor*, for the murder which he had committed. In remembrance of which good turn by those Princes received, he ever after honoured them, and to them all erected Temples; for which that of *Achilles* continueth unto this day, and according to his name is called *Achilleum*.

## XXXVIII.

Who be they, whom the *Bœotians* call *Pilooes*, and who be *Eolies*.

The report goeth that *Leucippe*, *Arctinoe* and *Aletheie*, the daughters of *Minyas*, being enraged and betraight of their right wits, longed exceedingly to eat mans flesh, and cast lots among themselves, which of them should kill their own children for that purpose. So the lot falling upon *Leucippe*, she yielded her son *Hippasus* to be dismembered and cut in pieces; by occasion whereof, their husbands simply arrayed, and in mourning weeds for sorrow and griefe were called *Pilooes*, as one would say, foul and smoaky; and the women *Eolies*, that is to say, distraighted and troubled in their minds, or *Oomloas*: so as even this day the *Or-homenians* call those women who are dekened from them by those names: and every second year during the festival days called *Agtrionis*, the Priest of *Bacchus* runneth after them with a sword drawn in his hand, courting and chiding them: yea, and lawfull it is for him to kill any one of them that he can reach and overtake. And verily in our days *Zoilus* the Priest killed one; but such never come to any good after: for both this *Zoilus* himself upon a certain little Ulcer or sore that he had, fell sick; and after he had a long time pined away and consumed therewith, in the end died thereof: and also the *Or-homenians* being fallen into publick calamities, and held in general for condemned persons, translated the Priesthood from that race and lineage, and conferred it upon the best and most approved person they could chuse.

## XXXIX.

What is the cause that the *Arcadians* stone them to death who willingly & of purpose enter within the pourtrize and precincts of *Lycaum*: but if any come into it of ignorance and unawares, when they send to *Eleuthera*?

As for these, may it not be that they are held free and absolved who do it upon ignorance: and by reason of this their absolution this manner of speech arose to send them to *Eleuthera*, which signifieth Deliverance: much like as when we say thus, *οὐ δὲ ἀπὸ τῆς γῆρας*, that is to say, into the region of the secure; or thus, *ἀπὸ τῆς ἀπορίας*, that is to say, thou shalt go to the Manour of the Pleasant. Or haply it allendeth to the tale that goeth in this wile; that of *Lycaons* sons there were but two only, to wit, *Eleuther* and *Lebadus*, who were not partakers of the horrible crime that their Father committed in the fight of *Jupiter*, but fled into *Bœotia*: in token whereof, the *Lebadians* enjoy still their bourgeoisie in commune with the *Arcadians*: and therefore to *Eleuthera* they send those, who against their wills or unawares are entred within that pourtrise consecrate unto *Jupiter*, into which it is not lawfull for any man to go.

Or rather, as *Archtemnus* writeth in his Chronicles of *Arcadia*, for that there were one who being ingenuely entred into the said place, were delivered and yielded unto the *Philiassians*, who put them over to the *Megarians*, and from the *Megarians* they were carried to *Thebes*; but as they were transported and conveyed thither, they were layed about *Eleuthera*, by means of violent rain terrible thunder, and other prodigious tokens: by occasion whereof, some would have the City to take the name *Eleuthera*.

Moreover, whereas it is said that the shadow of him who cometh within the precinct of *Lycaum*, never falleth upon the ground: it is not true, howbeit it goeth generally currant, and is constantly believed for an undoubted truth. But is it not think you, for that the air turneth presently into dark clouds, and looketh obscure and heavy (as it were) when any enter into it: or because, that whosoever cometh into it incontinently, suffereth death. And you know what the *Pythagoreans* say, namely, that the souls of the dead cast no shadow nor wink at all.

Or rather for that it is the Sun that maketh shadows, and the law of the country bereaveeth him that entereth into it, of the light of the Sun: which covertly, and enigamatically they would give us to understand under these words: For even he who cometh into this place is called *Eliaphis*, that is to say, a Stag; and therefore *Cambarion* the *Arcadian*, who fled unto the *Elians* of his owne accord

accord to fide with them, at what time as they warred upon the *Arcadians*; and as he passed with his booty that he had gotten, went through this sacred place: when after the war was ended, he returned to *Lacedæmon*; was by the *Lacedæmonians* delivered up to the *Arcadians*, by direction and commandment of the Oracle, which enjoined them to render the Stag.

## XL.

What is that *Demi-god* in *Tanagra*, known by the name of *Eunoſtus*? And what is the reason that women may not enter within the Grove dedicated unto him?

This *Eunoſtus* was the son of *Eliens*, the son of *Cephisus* and *Scius*: so named of *Eunoſta* a certain Nymph that nourished and brought him up: who being fair and just withal, was also chaste, continent, and of an antierie life. Howbeit the report goeth, that one of the daughters of *Collonus*, named *Ochyna*, being his Cousen-german became enamoured upon him: but when he had tempted him, and assayed to win his love: *Eunoſtus* repulled and rejected her with reproachfull terms, and went his way intending to accuse her unto her brethren: which the maiden sulping and fearing, prevented him and slandered him first before her brethren *Ochermus*, *Leon*, and *Bacchus*, whom she incited against *Eunoſtus*, that they would kill him, as one who by force had deflowered their sister. These brethren then having lien in ambush for the young man, murdered him treacherously; for which fact *Eliens* cast them in prison: and *Ochyna* herselfe repenting of that which she had done, was much troubled and tormented in mind therefore, being desirous besides to deliver her selfe from the griefe and agony which she endured by reason of her love, and withal pitying her brethren imprisoned for her sake, discovered the whole truth unto *Eliens*; and *Eliens* againe unto *Collonus*: by whose accord and judgement, these brethren of *Ochyna* fled their Country and were banished: but she cast her selfe voluntarily down headlong from an high rock, according as *Myric* the Poetresse hath left in verse. And this is the cause, that both the Temple of *Eunoſtus*, and also the Grave about it remained ever after, inaccessible, and not to be approached by women: in so much as many times when there happen any great Earthquakes, extraordinary droughts, and other fearful and prodigious tokens from Heaven, the *Tanagrians* make diligent search and inquisition, whether there have not been some one woman or other, who secretly hath presumed to come neerer unto the said place. And some have reported (among whom was one *Chidamus* a noble and honorable personage) that they met with *Eunoſtus* upon the way, going to wash and cleanse himselfe in the Sea, for that there was one woman who had been so bold as to enter into his Sanctuary. And verily *Diocles* himselfe in a Treatise that he made of *Demi-gods*, or such worthy men as had been deified, maketh mention of a certain Edict, or Decree of the *Tanagrians*, touching those things which *Chidamus* had related unto them.

## XLI.

How cometh it that in the country of *Bœotia*, the river that runneth by *Eleon*, is called *Scamander*?

*Deimachus* the son of *Eleon*, being a familiar companion with *Hercules*, was with him at the Trojan war: during the time whereof, continuing as it did very long, he entertained the love of *Glancia* the daughter of *Scamander*, who was first enamoured of him, and so well they agreed together, that in the end she was with child by him. Afterwards it happened, so that in skirmish with the *Trojans* he lost his life: and *Glancia* fearing that her belly would tell tales and bewray what she had done, fled for succour unto *Hercules*, and of her own accord declared unto him, how she had been seduced with love, and what familiar acquaintance there had passed between her and *Deimachus*: late deceased. *Hercules* as well in pity of the poor woman, as for his own joy and contentment of mind, that there was like to remain some issue of so valiant a man, and his familiar friend beside, had *Glancia* with him to his ships: and when she was delivered of a fair son, carried her into the country of *Bœotia*, where he delivered her and her son into the hands of *Eleon*. The child then was named *Scamander*, and became afterwards King of that Country: who surnamed the river *Isachus* after his own name *Scamander*, and a little rivulet running thereby, *Glancia*, by the name of his Mother: as for the fountain *Acidusa* it was so called according to his wives name: by whom hee had three daughters, who are even unto this day honoured in that country, and called by the name of the Virgins.

## XLII.

Whereupon arose this proverbial speech, *ἀλλὰ νῦν, ὅτι ἐστὶν ἡμεῖς, ταῦτα πάντα ἔσονται*?

So the Captain General of the *Tarentines*, being a right valiant and hardy warrior, when as the Citizens by their voices and suffrages denied a sentence which he had delivered as the Herald or Crier proclaimed and published with a loud voice that opinion which prevailed, lifting up his own right hand himselfe: Yea, but this (quoth he) shall carry it away when all is done. Thus *Theophrastus* reporteth this narration: but *Apollodorus* relateth moreover in his *Rhymis*, that when the Herald had proclaimed thus *ἀλλὰ νῦν, ὅτι ἐστὶν ἡμεῖς*, that is to say, these be more in number, meaning the voices of the people: Yea, but (quoth he) *ἀλλὰ νῦν, ὅτι ἐστὶν ἡμεῖς*, that is to say, these be better; and in so doing, confirmed the resolution of those who were in number the fewer.



## XLIII.

*Upon what occasion was the City of the Ithacians, named Alalcomene?*

**M**ost writers have recorded, that *Amicla* being yet a Virgin, was forced by *Sisyphus*, and conceived *Myfse*. But *Histe*, of *Alexandria* hath written moreover in his Commentaries, that she being given in marriage unto *Larion*, and brought into the City *Alalcomenium* in *Boeotia*, was delivered there of *Myfse*; and therefore he (to renew the memory of that City where he was born, and which was the head City standing in the heart of the Country) called that in *Ithaca* by the name thereof.

## XLIV.

*What be they in the City Eginet, which are called Monophagi?*

**O**f those Eginets, who served in the Trojan war many died in fight, howbeit more were drowned by means of a tempest in their voyage at sea. But those few who returned were welcomed home, and joyfully received by their kinsfolk and friends: who perceiving all their other fellow Citizens to mourn and be in heaviness, thought this with themselves, they ought not to rejoyce more offer sacrifice unto the gods openly, but in secret: and so, every man apart in his private house, entertained those who were escaped and came home safe with feasts and banquets: and served at the table in their own persons, unto their fathers, their brethren, couzens and friends, with admitting any stranger whatsoever: in imitation whereof they do yet every year sacrifice unto *Neptune* in secret assemblies, which sacrifices they call *Thyafis*; during which solemnity they do feast one another privately for the space of sixteen days together with silence, and there is not servant or slave there present to wait at the board: but afterwards for to make an end of their feasting, they celebrate one solemn sacrifice unto *Venus*. And thus you may see why they be called *Monophagi*, that is to say, Eating alone, or by themselves.

## XLV.

*What is the cause that in the Country of Caria, the image of Jupiter Labradeus is made, holding aloft in his hand an Ax, and neither a Scepter nor a Thunder-bolt, or Lightning?*

**F**or that *Heracles* having slain *Hippotele* the *Amazons*, and among other arms of hers won her battle *Ax*, and gave it as a present unto *Omphale*: this *Ax*, all the Kings that reigned in *Lydia* after *Omphale*, carried as an holy and sacred monument: which they received successively from hand to hand of their next progenitors, until such time as *Candaules* disdain to bear it himself, gave it unto one of his friends to carry, afterwards it chanced that *Gyges* put himself to arms against *Candaules*, and with the help of *Arcelus*, who brought a power of men to aid him out of *Myles*, both defeated him, and also killed that friend of his from whom he took away the said *Ax*, and put the same unto the image of *Jupiter* hand, which he had made. In which respect he surnamed *Jupiter, Labradus*, for that the *Lydians* in their language called an *Ax Labra*.

## XLVI.

*Wherefore do the Trallians call the Pulse Ervil Catharter, that is to say, the Purger: and use it more than any other in their expiatory sacrifices of Purification?*

**I**t is for that the *Minyans* and *Lelegians*, having in old time defiled the said *Trallians* of their Cities and Territories, inhabited and occupied the same themselves: but the *Trallians* made head afterwards, and prevailed against them, inasmuch as those *Lelegians* who were neither slain in battle, nor escaped by flight, but either for feebleness, or want of means otherwise to live, remained still, they made no reckoning of, whether they died or lived: enacting a law, that what *Trallian* forever killed either a *Lelegian* or *Minyan* he should be abolished and held quit, in case he payed unto the next kinsfolk of the dead party, a measure called *Medimnion*, of the said *Ervil*.

## XLVII.

*What is the reason that it goeth for an ordinary by-word among the Elitans to say thus: To suffer more miseries and calamities then Sambicus?*

**T**here was one *Sambicus* of the City *Elis*, who by report having under him many mates and complicates at command, brake and defaced sundry images and statues of brass within the City *Olympia*, and when he had so done, sold the brass and made money of it: in the end he proceeded so far as to rob the Temple of *Diana* surnamed *Episcopus*, that is to say, a vigilant patronesse and superintendant. This Temple standeth within the City *Elis*, and is named *Arifarchium*. After this notorious sacrilege he was immediately apprehended, and put to torture a whole year together, to make him for to bewray and reveal all his companions and confederates: so as in the end he died in these torments, and thereupon arose the said common proverb.

## XLVIII.

*What is the reason that at Lacedaemon the monument of Ulysses, standeth close to the Temple of the Lacedaemonians.*

**H**ercules one of the race descended from *Diomedes*, by the motion and instigation of *Temon* induced, robbed out of *Argos* the renowned image of *Minerva*, called *Palladium*, and that

that with the privy and assistance of *Laeger* in this facilitie: now this *Laeger* was one of the familiars and inward companions of *Temon*: who being fallen out afterwards with *Temon*, in a fit of anger, departed to *Lacedaemon* with the said *Palladium*: which the Kings there received at his hands right joyfully, and placed it neer unto the Temple of the *Lacedaemonians*: but afterwards they sent unto the Oracle at *Delphos*, to know by what means they might keep and preserve the said image in safety: the Oracle made this answer, that they should commit the keeping of it unto one of them who had stolen it away: whereupon they built in the very place a monument in memorial of *Myfse*, whereto they shined *Palladium*: and besides, they had the more reason so to do, because in some sort *Myfse* was allied to their City, by his wives side, *Lady Penelope*.

## XLIX.

*What is the reason that the Chalcidian Dames have a custom among them, that whensoever they meet with any men that be strangers unto them, but especially if they be Rulers or Magistrates, to cover and hide one of their cheeks.*

**T**he men of *Chalcodon* warred sometime against their neighbours the *Bithynians* provoked thereto by all light injuries and wrongs that might minister matter and occasion thereof: inasmuch as the days of King *Zeipatus* who reigned over the *Bithynians* they assembled all their forces and with a puissant power (beside the *Thracians*, who joined to aid them) they invaded their country with fire and sword, spoiling all before them: until in the end King *Zeipatus* gave them battle neer unto a place named *Phalium*, where they lost the day, as well in regard of their presumptuous boldness, as of the disorder among them, inasmuch as there died of them in fight 8000. men, howbeit utterly they were not defeated, for that *Zeipatus* in favour of the *Bizantines*, was contented to grow unto some agreement and composition. Now for that their City was by this means very much dispeopled and naked of men, many women there were among them, who were constrained to be remarried unto their enfranchised servants, others to aliens and strangers coming from other Cities: but some again, chusing rather to continue widow still and never to have husbands, they yielded to such marriages, followed their own causes themselves what matter soever they had to be married or dispatched in open court before the Judges or publick Magistrates: only they withheld one part of their vails, and opened their face on one side; the other wives also who were married again, for modesty and womanhood, following them as better women then themselves, used the same fashion also, and brought it to be an ordinary custome.

## L.

*Wherefore do the Argives drive their Ewes unto the sacred grove of Agenor, when they would have the Ewes to leap them?*

**I**t is not for that *Agenor* whilst he lived, was very expert and skilful about Sheep; and of all the Kings that ever were among them, had the most and fairest flocks of them?

## LI.

*Why do the Argives Children, at a certain festival time that they keep, call one another in play and sport Ballachrades?*

**I**t is because, the first of that nation, who were by *Inachus* brought out of the mountains into the plain and champion country, made their chiefe food (by report) of wild hedge-Pears? Now these dock-Pears, some say, were found in *Peloponnesus*, before they were seen in any other part of *Greece*, even whilst that region was called *Apia*. And hereupon also it came that these wild Pears commonly called *Achrades*, changing their name into *Apia*.

## LII.

*What is the cause that the Eliens, when their Mares be hot after the Horses, lead them out of their own confines to be covered by the Stallions?*

**I**t is for that *Oreionasus* was a Prince, who of all others loved best a good race of Horses, and took greatest pleasure in this kind of beasts; and curfed with all manner of execrations, those Stallions which covered his Mares in *Elis*: and therefore they fearing to fall into any of these maledictions, avoid them by this manner.

## LIII.

*What was the reason of this custom among the Gnosians, that those who took up any money at interest, snatched it and ran away with all.*

**W**As it to this end, that if they should deny the debt, and seem to defraud the Usurers, they might lay an action of felony, and violent wrong upon them: and the other by this means might be more punished?

## LIV.

*What is the cause that in the City of Samos they invoke Venus of Dexicreon.*

**I**t is for that, that when in times past the women of *Samos* were exceedingly given to enormous wantonness and lechery, so that they brake out into many lewd acts: there was one *Dexicreon*, a Mountebank or constringer juggler, who by (I wot not what) ceremonies and expiatory sacrifices, freed them of their unbridled lust?

Or because this, *Dexicreon* being a Merchant-venturer who did traffick and trade by sea, went into the Isle of *Cyprus*; and when he was ready to load or charge his ship with merchandize, *Venus* commanded him to freight it with nothing else but water, and then immediately to hoist up saile: according to which he did, and having put a great quantity of water within his vessel, he let saile and departed. Now by that time they were in the main sea, they were very much becalmed, so as for want of a gale of wind many days together, the rest of the mariners and merchants a ship-board, thought verily they should all die for very thirst: whereupon he told unto them his water which he had aboard, and thereby gat a great quantity of Silver: of which afterwards he cauled to be made an image of *Venus*, which he called after his own name, *Dexicreon* his *Venus*. Now if this be true, it seemeth that the goddesse purposed thereby, not only to enrich one man, but to save also the lives of many.

LV.

How cometh it to passe, that in the Isle of *Samos*, when they sacrifice unto Mercury surnamed *Charidotes*, it is lawfull for whosoever will, to rob and riske all passengers?

Because in times past according to the commandment and direction of a certain Oracle, ancient inhabitants departed out of *Samos* and went into *Alycæ*, where they lived and maintained themselves for ten years space by piracy and depredation at sea: and afterwards being returned again into *Samos*, obtained a brave victory against their enemies.

LVI.

Why is there one place within the Isle *Samos* called *Panæma*?

Is it for that the Amazones to avoid the fury of *Bacchus*, fled out of the Ephesiens country into *Samos* and there saved themselves? But he having cauled ships to be built and rigged, gathered together a great fleet, and gave them battel, where he had the killing of a great number of them about this very place, which for the carnage and quantity of blood-shed there, they who saw it, marvelled thereat, and called it *Panæma*. But of them who were slain in this conflict, there were by the report of some, many that died about *Phlaon*, for their bodies are there to be seen. And there be that say, that *Phlaon* also clave in furdere, and became broken by that occasion; their cry was so loud, and their voice so piercing and forcible.

LVII.

How cometh it that there is a publick hall at *Samos*, called *Pedetes*?

After that *Damoteles* was murdered, and his monarchy overthrown, so that the Nobles or Senators *Geomori*, had the whole government of the State in their hands; the Megarians tooke arms, and made war upon the Perinthians (a Colony drawn & defended from *Samos*) carrying with them into the field, fetters and other irons, to hang upon the feet of their captive prisoners: the said *Geomori* having intelligence thereof, sent them aid with all speed, having ten Captains, manned also and furnished thirty ships of war; whereof twain ready to saile, caught fire by lightning, and so consumed in the very mouth of the Haven: howbeit the foresaid Captains followed on in their voyage with the rest, vanquished the Megarians in battel, and took fix hundred prisoners: Upon which victory, being puffed up with pride, they intended to ruinate the Oligarchy of those noble men at home, called *Geomori*, and to depose them from their government: and verily those rulers themselves ministered unto them occasion, for to set in hand with this their design; namely by writing unto them, that they should lead those Megarians prisoners, fettered with the same gyves which they themselves had brought: for no sooner had they received these letters, but they did impart and shew them secretly unto the said Megarians, perswading them to band and combine with them, for to restore their City unto liberty. And when they devised and consulted together about the execution of this plotted conspiracy: agreed it was between them to knock the rings off or lockers of the fetters open, and so to hang them about the Megarians legs, that with leather thongs they might be fastened also to their girdles about the waste, for fear that being slack, as they were, they should fall off and be ready to drop from their legs as they went. Having in this wise let forth and dressed these men, and given every one of them a sword, they made all the haste they could to *Samos*; where being arrived and set a land, they led the Megarians through the market place to the Senate house, where all the Nobles called *Geomori* were assembled and sat in consultation: hereupon was the signal given, and the Megarians fell upon the Senators, and massacred them every one. Thus having received the freedom of the City, they gave unto as many of the Megarians as would accept thereof, the right of free Burgeoisie: and after that built a fair Town Hall, about which they hung and fastened the said bolts and fetters of irons, calling it upon this occasion *Pedetes*, that is to say, the Hall of Fetters.

LVIII.

What is the reason that in the Isle of *Coos*, within the City *Antimachia*, the Priest of *Hercules* being arrayed in the habit of a woman, with a Miter on his head, beginneth to celebrate the sacrifice?

*Hercules* being departed from *Troy* with six ships, was overtaken with a mighty tempest, and with one ship alone (for that all the other was lost) were cast by the winds upon the Isle of *Coos*.

2p

and landed at a place called *Laceter*: having saved nothing else but his armour and the men that were with him in the ship: when finding a flock of sheep, he desired the shepherd who tended them, to give him a Ram. The shepherds name was *Antagoras*; who being a lusty tall and strong man, would needs challenge *Hercules* to wrestle with him, upon this condition, that if *Hercules* could overthrow him and lay him along on the ground, the Ram should be his. *Hercules* accepted the offer; and when they were close at hand grips, the Meropians, certain inhabitants of the Isle came in to succour *Antagoras*, and the Greeks likewise to aid *Hercules*, in such sort, as there ensued a sharp and cruel fight: wherein *Hercules* finding himselfe to be overlaide and pressed with the multitude of his enemies, retired and fled (as they say) unto a Thracian woman, where for to hide and save his life, he disguised himselfe in womans apparel. But afterwards having gotten the upper hand of those Meropians, and being purged, he espoused the daughter of *Alciopis*, and put on a fair robe and goodly stole. Thus you may see whereupon his Priest sacrificeth in that very place where the battel was fought; and why new married Iponies being arrayed in the habit of women, receive their brides?

L.

Whereof cometh it, that in the City *Megara*, there is a lineage or family named *Hamaxoclysta*?

In the time that the dissolute and insolent popular State of government called *Democratie* (which I ordaind that it might be lawfull to recover and arrest all moneys paid for interest and in consideration of use, out of the Usurers hands, and which permitted sacrifice) bare sway in the City: it happened there were certain pilgrims, named *Theori* of *Peloponnesus*, sent in commission to the Oracle of *Apollo* at *Delfos*, who passed thorow the Province of *Megaris*, and about the City of *Egiri*, sett unto the lake there, lay and tumbled themselves upon their Chariots here and there, together with their wives and children, one with another as it fell out: where certain Megarians, such as were more audacious then the rest, as being thorowly drunk, full of insolent wantonnesse and cruel pride, were so lusty as to overturn the said Chariots, and thrust them into the lake: so as, many of the said *Theori* or Commissioners were drowned therein. Now the Megarians (such was the confusion and disorder in their government in those days) made no reckoning at all to punish this injury and outrage: but the council of the *Amphyctiones*, because the pilgrimage of these *Theori* was religious and sacred, took knowledge thereof and fate upon an Inquisition about it; yea, and chastised those who were found culpable in this impiety: some with death, others with banishment: and hereupon the whole race descending from them, were called afterwards *Hamaxoclysta*.

### The Paralels, or a brief Collation of Roman Narrations; with the semblable reported of the Greeks.

In the Margin of an old Manuscript Copy, these words were found written in Greek: This Book was never of Plutarchs making, who was an excellent and most learned Author; but penned by some odd vulgar writer, altogether ignorant both of \* Poetry, and also of Grammar.

\* O. Learning.

Many do think, that ancient Histories be but Fables and Tales devised for pleasure. For mine own part having found many accidents in our days, semblable unto those occurrents which in times past fell out among the Romans in their age: I have collected some of them together; and to every one of those ancient Narrations, annexed another like unto it, of later time, and therewith alledged the Authors who have put them down in writing.

1. *Darius* Lieutenant General under the King of *Persia*, being come down into the plain of *Marathon* within the country of *Attica*, with a puissant power of three hundred thousand fighting men, there pitched his camp, and proclaimed war upon the inhabitants of those parts. The Athenians making small account of this to great a multitude of Barbarians, sent out nine thousand men, under the conduct of these four Captains; namely, *Cynegyrus*, *Polyzelus*, *Callimachus*, and *Miltiades*. So they struck a battel, during which conflict, *Polyzelus* chanced to see the vision of one represented unto him surpassing mans nature, and thereupon lost his sight and became blind: *Callimachus* wounded through divers parts of his body with many pikes and javelins, dead though he was, stood upon his feet and *Cynegyrus*, as he stayed a Persian ship which was about to retire back, had both his hands smitten off.

*Asdrubal* the King being possessed of *Sicily*, denounced war against the Romans: and *Metellus* being chosen Lord General by the Senate, obtained a victory in a certain battel against him: in which battel *La Glauco* a Noble man of *Rome*, as he held the admiral-ship of *Asdrubal* lost both his hands: as *Aristides* the Milesian writeth in the first Book of the Annals of *Sicily*, of whom *Dionodorus Siculus* hath learned the matter and subject Argument of his History.

2. *Xerxes*

2. *Xerxes* being come to lie at anchor near the Cape *Artemisium* with five hundred thousand fighting men, proclaimed war upon the people of that country: whereat the Athenians being much astounded, sent as a spy (for to view and survey his forces) *Agesilaus* the brother of *Themistocles*: albeit his father *Neocles* had a dream in the night, and thought that he saw his son dismembered of both his hands; who entering the camp of the Barbarians in habit of a Persian, slew *Mordanius* one of the Captains of the Kings corps de garde, supposing he had been *Xerxes* himself: and being apprehended by them that were about him, was brought tied and bound before the King, who was then even ready to offer sacrifice upon the Altar of the Sun: into the fire of which Altar, *Agesilaus* thrust his right hand, and endured the force of the torment, without crying or groaning at all; whereupon the King commanded him to be unbound: and then said *Agesilaus* unto him: Wee Athenians be all of the like mind and resolution, and if you will not believe me, I will put my life hand also into the fire: whereat *Xerxes* being mightily afraid, caused him to be kept safely with a good guard about him. This writeth *Agatharides* the Samian, in his second Book of the Persian Chronicles.

*Porfena* King of the Tuscans, having encamped on the farther side of the river *Tybris*, warred upon the Romans, and by cutting off the victuals and all provision that was wont to be brought to *Rome*, distressed the said Romans with famine: and when the Senate hereupon was wonderfully troubled: *Mutius* a noble man of the City (taking with him four hundred other brave Gentlemen of his own age, by commission from the Consuls, in poor and simple array) passed over the River: and casting his eye upon the Captain of the Kings guard, dealing among other Captains, viculs and other necessaries, supposing he had been *Porfena*, killed him: whereon he was presently taken and brought before the King, who put his right hand likewise into the fire, and enduring the pains thereof whilst it burned, most stoutly, seemed to smile thereat and said: Thou barbarous King, lo how I am loofe and at liberty even against thy will: but note well this besides, that we are four hundred of us within thy camp that have undertaken to take away thy life: with which words *Porfena* was so affrighted, that he made peace with the Romans: according as *Aristides* the Milesian writeth, in the third Book of his Story.

3. The Argives and the Lacedæmonians, being at war one with another about the possession of the country *Therapies*, the *Amphityones* gave sentence that they should put it to a battel, and look whether side won the field, to them should the land in question appertain. The Lacedæmonians therefore chose for their Captain *Othryades*; and the Argives, *Thersander*: when the battel was done, there remained two only alive of the Argives, to wit, *Agenor* and *Chromius*, who carried tidings to the City, of victory. Mean while, when all was quiet, *Othryades* not fully dead, but having some little life remaining in him, bearing himself, and leaning upon the truncheons of broken lances, sought up the targets and shields of the dead, and gathered them together, and having erected a Trophæe, he wrote thereupon with his own blood: To *Jupiter* Victor and Guardian of Trophies. Now when as both those parties maintained still the controversy about the land, the *Amphityones* went in person to the place to be eye-judges of the thing, and adjudged the victory on the Lacedæmonians side: this writeth *Chrysæmus* in the third book of the Peloponnesiack History.

The Romans levying war against the Samnites chose for their chief Commander *Posthumnus Albius*, who being surprized by an ambush within a straight between two mountains, called *Erce Caudina*, a very narrow passe, lost three of his Legions, and being himself deadly wounded, fell and lay for dead: howbeit about midnight, taking breath, was quick again, and somewhat revived, he arose, took the targets from his enemies bodies that lay dead in the place, and erected a Trophæe, and drenching his hand in their blood, wrote in this manner: The Romans to *Jupiter* Victor, Guardian of Trophies, against the Samnites: but *Marius* surnamed *Gurgus*, that is to say, the glutton, being sent thither as general Captain, and viewing upon the very place, the said Trophæe so erected: I take this gladly (quoth he) for a sign and preface of good fortune: and thereupon gave battel unto his enemies and won the victory, took their King prisoner, and sent him to *Rome*, according as *Aristides* writeth in his third Book of the Italian History.

4. The Persians entered Greece with a puissant army of 500000 men: against whom *Leonidas* was sent by the Lacedæmonians with a band of three hundred, to guard the straights of *Thermopylae*, and impeach his passage: in which place as they were merry at their meat, and taking their recreation, the whole main power of the Barbarians came upon them. *Leonidas* seeing his enemies advancing forward, spake unto his own men and said: Sit still first and make an end of your dinner hardly, so as you may take your suppers in another world: for he charged upon the Barbarians and notwithstanding he had many a dart sticking in his body, yet he made a lane through the press of the enemies until he came to the very person of *Xerxes*, from whom he took the Diadem that was upon his head, and so died in the place. The Barbarians King caused his body to be opened when he was dead, and his heart to be taken forth, which was found to be all over-grown with hairs: as writeth *Aristides* in the first Book of the Persian History.

The Romans warring against the Carthaginians, sent a company of three hundred men under the leading of a Captain named *Fabius Maximus*, who had his enemies battel, and lost all his men himself being wounded to death, charged upon *Annibal* with such violence, that he took from him the regal Diadem or Frontal that he had about his head, and so died upon it, as writeth *Aristides* the Milesian.

5. In

5. In the City of *Celene* in *Phrygia*, the earth opened and clave asunder, so as there remained a mighty chink, with a huge quantity of water issuing thereout, which carried away and drew into the bottomlesse pit thereof, a number of houses with all the persons great and small within them. Now *Midus* the King was advertised by an Oracle, that if he cast within the said pit the most precious thing that he had, both sides would close up again, and the earth meet and be firm ground. So he caused to be thrown into it a great quantity of gold and silver: but all would do no good. Then *Antichus* his son, thinking with himselfe, that there was nothing so precious as the life and soul of cast, after he had lovingly embraced his father, and bid him farewell, and withal taken his leave of his wife *Timothea*, mounted on horieback and cast himselfe horse and all into the said chink. And behold, the earth immediately closed up: whereupon *Midus* made a golden Altar, of *Jupiter Idæus*, touching it only with his hand. This Altar about that time, when as the said breach or chink of earth was, became a stone: but after a certain prefixed time passed, it is seen all gold: this writeth *Callisthenes* in his second Book of Transformations.

The river *Tybris* runneth through the midst of the market place at *Rome*, for the anger of *Jupiter* caused an exceeding great chink within the ground, which swallowed up many dwelling houses. Now the Oracle rendered this answer unto the Romans, that this should ease in case they flung into the breach some costly and precious thing: and when they had cast into it both gold and silver, but all in vain: *Curvius* a right noble young Gentleman of the City, pondering well the words of the Oracle, and considering with himselfe that the life of man was more precious then gold, cast himselfe on horieback into the said chink, and so delivered his Citizens and Countmen from their calamity: this hath *Aristides* recorded in his fourth Book of Italian Histories.

6. *Amphiarus* was one of the Princes and Leaders that accompanied *Polynices*: and when one day they were feasting merrily together, an Eagle soaring over his head, chanced to catch up his javelin and carry it up aloft in the air, which afterwards when he had let fall again, stuck fast in the ground and became a lawrel. The morrow after, as they joined battel, in that very place, *Amphiarus* with his chariot was swallowed up within the earth: and there standeth now the City *Harna*, so called of the chariot: as *Trismachus* reporteth in the third book of his Foundations.

During the wars which the Romans waged against *Pyrrhus* King of the Epirotes, *Paulus Æmilius* was promised by the Oracle that he should have the victory, if he would set up an altar in that very place where he should see one Gentleman of quality and good mark, to be swallowed down in the earth, together with his chariot. Three days after *Valerius Maximus*, when in a dream he thought that he saw himselfe adorned with his Priestly Vestments (for skilful he was in the art of divination) led forth the army, and after he had slain many of his enemies, was devoured quick within the ground. Then *Paulus Æmilius* caused an Altar to be reared and won the battel, wherein he took alive an hundred and threecore Elephants carrying Turrets upon their backs, whom he sent to *Rome*. This Altar used to give answer as an Oracle about that time that *Pyrrhus* was defeated: according as *Crispianus* writeth in the third Book of the Epirotick History.

7. *Pyrrachus* King of the Eubceans, whom *Hercules* being yet but a young man vanquished, and tying him between two hories, caused his body to be plucked and torn in pieces: which done, he cut it forth for to lie unburied: now the place where this execution was performed, is called at this day, *Pyrrachus*: his hories, situate upon the River *Heraclius*: and whensoever there be any hories wrenched there, a man shall sensibly hear a noise as if hories neighed: thus we find written in the third book entitled, *Of Rivers*.

*Valerius Hoftidius* King of the Romans, made war upon the Albans, who had for their King *Metellus Sulpicius*: and many times he seemed to retire and lie off, as loth to encounter and join battel: inasmuch as the enemies supposing him to be discomfited, betook themselves to mirth and good cheer: but when they had taken their wine well, he set upon them with so hot a charge that he defeated them: and having taken their King prisoner, he set him fast tied between two fices and dismembered him, as *Alexarchus* writeth in the fourth Book of the Italian Histories.

8. *Philip* intending to force and sack the Cities of *Mekone* and *Olynthus* as he laboured with much ado to passe over the River *Sandanus*, chanced to be shot into the eye with an arrow by an Olynthian, whose name was *Aster*, and in it was this verse written:

*Philip beware, have at shine eye:*

*After this d adly shaft, lett flye.*

Whereupon *Philip* perceiving himselfe to be overmatched, swam back againe unto his own camp, and with the losse of one eye escaped with life, according as *Callisthenes* reporteth in the third Book of the Macedonian Annals.

*Porfena* King of the Tuscans lying encamped on the other side of *Tybris*, warred upon the Romans, and intercepted their victuals, which were wont to be conveyed to *Rome*, whereby he put the City to great distresse in regard of famine: but *Horatius Cocles* being by the common voice of the people chosen Captain, planned himself upon the wooden bridge, which the Barbarians were desirous to gain, and for a good while made the place good, and put back the whole multitude of them pressing upon him to pass over it: in the end finding himself overcharged with the enemies, he commanded those who were ranged in battel-ray behind him, to cut down the bridge: mean while he received the violent charge of them, and impeached their entrance, until such time as he was wounded in the eye with a dart: whereupon he leapt into the river, and swam over unto his fellowsthus *Thyestes* reporteth this narration in the third Book of Italian Histories.

9. There

\* Or Tristis  
quatus.

9. There is a tale told of *Icarus*, by whom *Bacchus* was lodged and entertained, as *Erato* & *Phenice* in *Erigone* hath related in this wife. *Saturn* upon a time was lodged by an husbandman of the country, who had a fair daughter named *Entoria*: her he deflowered and begat of her four sons, *Janus*, *Hymnus*, *Faustus*, and *Folix*; whom he having taught the manner of drinking Wine, and of planting the vine, enjoined them also to impart that knowledge unto their neighbours, which they did accordingly: but they on the other side, having taken upon a time more of this drink then their usual manner was, fell asleep, and slept more then ordinary: when they were awake, imagining that they had drunk some poyson, stoned *Icarus* the husbandman to death: whereat his Nephews or Daughters children took such a thought and conceit, that for very griefe of heart, they knit their necks in halters, and strangled themselves. Now when there was a great pestilence that raigned among the Romans, the Oracle of *Apollo* gave answer, that the mortality would stay, in case they had once appeased the ire of *Saturn*: and likewise pacified their ghosts, who unjustly lost their lives. Then *Lutatius Catulus*, a noble man of *Rome*, built a Temple unto *Saturn*, which standeth necr unto the mount *Tarpeius*, and erected an Altar with four faces: either in remembrance of those four Nephews abovesaid, or respective to the four seasons and quarters of the year: and withall instituted the month January, But *Saturn* turned them all four into Stars, which be called the forerunners of the Vintage: among which that of *Janus* ariseth before others, and appeareth at the seet of *Verge*, as *Crispianus* testifieth in his fourth Book of *Phanomena*, or Apparitions in the Heaven.

10. At what time as the Persians overran *Greece*, and wasted all the Country before them: *Pausanias* general Captain of the Lacedaemonians, having received of *Xerxes* five hundred talents of gold, promised to betray *Sparta*: but his treason being discovered, *Agessilus* his Father pursued him into the Temple of *Minerva*, called *Chalcicocot*, whither he fled for sanctuary: where he cawled the doors of the Temple to be mured up with brick, and so famished him to death. His mother tooke his corse, and cast it forth to dogs, not suffering it to be buried: according to *Chrysostomus*.

11. *Phrygia*: but being denied and rejected, he wan the City, and put it to the sackage. The Lady *Phrygia* flung herself down from an high tower; but through the providence of *Venus*, her habillments were so heaved up with the wind, that they brake the fall, and albeit she light upon the ground, she escaped alive. Then the Captain beforenamed, forced her and abused her body: in regard of which dishonour and villany offered unto her, by a general decree of all the Romans, confined he was into the Isle of *Corfica*, which lieth against *Italy*: as witnessth *Theophilus* in the third Book of his Italian history.

12. The Carthaginians and Sicilians, being entred into league, banded themselves against the Romans, and prepared with their joynt forces to war upon them; whereupon *Metellus* was chosen Captain, who having offered sacrifice unto all other Gods and Goddeses, left out onely the Goddes *Venus*: who thereupon raised a contrary wind to blow against him in his voyage. Then *Caius Julius* the Southfayer said unto him, that the wind would lie, in case, before he embarked and set sail, he offered in sacrifice his own daughter unto *Vesta*. *Metellus* being driven to this hard exigent, was constrained to bring forth his daughter to be sacrificed; but the Goddes taking pity of him and her, instead of the Maiden substituted a yong Heifer, and carried the Virgin to *Lavinium*, where she made her a Religion Priestresse of the Dragon, which they worship and have in great reverence within that City: as writeth *Pythocles* in his third Book of Italian affairs.

13. In like manner is the case of *Iphigenia*, which hapned in *Aulis* a City of *Bantia*: reported by *Meril* in the third Book of Boetian Chronicles.

14. *Brennus* a King of the Galatians or Gallo-Greeks, as he foraged and spoiled *Asia*, came at length to *Ephesus*, where he fell in love with a yong Damself, a Commoners daughter; who promised to lie with him, yea and to betray the City unto him, upon condition that he would give unto her carqueners, bracelets, and other jewels of gold, wherewith Ladies are wont to adorn and set out themselves. Then *Brennus* requested those about his person to cast into the lap of this covetous wench, all

At which ominous accident being astonished, and prefiging some evil to be toward him, he returned to Rome; and seeing the Temple of the Goddess *Vesta* on fire, he ran thither and took away the petty Image of *Pallas*, named *Palladium*, and so likewise suddenly fell blinde; howbeit afterwards being reconciled unto her, he got his sight again: this is the report of *Arifides* in his Chronicle.

18. The Thracians warring against the Athenians, were directed by an Oracle, which promised them victory, in case they saved the person of *Codrus* King of Athens: but he disguising himself in the habit of a poor labourer, and carrying a bill in his hand, went into the camp of the enemies, and killed one, where likewise he was killed by another, and so the Athenians obtained victory: as is writeth in the second Book of Thracian affairs.

*Publius Decius* a Roman, making war against the Albaner, dreamed in the night, and saw a vision which promised him, that if himself dyed, he should add much to the puissance of the Romans: whereupon he charged upon his enemies where they were thickest arranged: and when he had killed a number of them, was himself slain. *Decius* also his son, in the war against the Gauls, by that means saved the Romans; as saith *Arifides* the Milesian.

19. *Cyanippus* a Siracusan wine, sacrificed upon a time unto all other gods, but unto *Bacchus*: whereat the god being offended, haunted him with drunkenness: so as in a dark corner he discoloured forcibly his own daughter, named *Cyane*: but in the time that he dealt with her, she took away the ring off his finger, and gave it unto her nurse to keep, for to testify another day who it was that thus abused her. Afterwards the pestilence reigned fore in those parts: and *Apollo* gave answer by Oracle, that they were to offer in sacrifice unto the gods that turned away calamities, a goddess and incestuous person: All others wist not whom the Oracle meant; but *Cyane* knowing full well the will of *Apollo*, took her father by the haire, and drew him per-force to the altar, and when she had caused him to be killed, sacrificed her self after upon him: as writeth *Dioscorus* in the third Book of the Chronicles of *Cicily*.

While the feast of *Bacchus* called *Bacchanalia* was celebrated at Rome, there was a *Aruntus*, who never in all his life had drunk wine, but water onely, and always despised the power of god *Bacchus*: who to be revenged of him, caused him one time be so drunk, that he forced his own daughter *Medullina*, and abused her body carnally; who having knowledge by his ring, who it was that did the deed, and taking to her a greater heart then one of her age, made her father one day drunk, and after she had a lorned his head with Garlands and chaplets of flowers, led him to a place called the altar of *Vindes*, where with many tears he sacrificed him who had surprized her, and taken away her virginity, as writeth *Arifides* the Milesian in his third Book of Italian Chronicles.

20. *Erechtheus* warring upon *Eumolpus*, was advertised that he should win the victory, if before he went into the field he sacrificed his own daughter unto the gods: who when he had imparted this matter unto his wife *Procrustes*, he offered his daughter in sacrifice before the battel; whereof *Euripides* maketh mention in his Tragedy *Erechtheus*.

*Marius* maintaining war against the Cimbrans, and finding himself too weak, saw a vision in his sleep, that promised him victory, if before he went to battel, he did sacrifice his daughter named *Calpurnia*: who setting the good of the weal publique, and the regard of his Countreymen, before the natural affection to his own blood, did accordingly, and won the field; and even at this day, two Altars there be in Germany, which at the very time and hour that this Sacrifice was offered, yeld the sound of Trumpets, as *Dorotheus* reporteth in the third Book of the Annales of Italy.

21. *Cyanippus* a Thessalian born, used ordinarily to go on hunting; his wife a yong Gentlewoman entertained this fancy of jealousy in her head, that the reason why he went forth so often, and stayed so long in the forests, was because he had the company of some other woman whom he loved: whereupon she determined with her self to lie in espiall: one day therefore she followed and traced *Cyanippus*, and at length lay close within a certain thicket of the forest, waiting and expecting what would fall out and come of it. It chanced that the leaves and branches of the shrubs about her stirred: the hounds imagining that there was some wilde Beast within, seized upon her, and so tare in pieces this yong Dame (that loved her husband so well) as if he had been a savage Beast. *Cyanippus* then seeing before his eyes, that which he never would have imagined or thought in his mind, for very grief of heart killed himself: as *Parthenius* the Poet hath left in writing.

In *Sybaris* a City of Italy, there was sometime a yong Gentleman named *Emilius*, who being a beautiful person, and one who loved passing well the game of hunting, his wife who was yong also, thought him to be enamored of another Lady; and therefore got herself close within a thicket, and chanced to stir the boughs of the shrubs and bushes about her. The hounds thereupon that ranged and hunted thereabout, light upon her, and tare her body in pieces; which when her husband saw, he killed himself upon her: as *Clytonimus* reporteth in his second Book of the Sybaritic History.

22. *Smyrna* the daughter of *Cerynus* having displeased and angered *Venus*, became enamored of her own father, and declared the vehemence of her love unto her nurse. She therefore by a wily device went to work with her Master, and bare him in hand that there was a fair Damzell, a neighbours daughter, that was in love with him, but abashed and ashamed to come unto him openly, or to be seen at all with him: The Master believed this, and lay with her; but one time above the rest, desirous to know who she was with whom he accompanied, called for a light; and so found as he knew

how it was his own daughter, he drew his sword, and followed after this most villainous and incestuous filth, intending to kill her: But by the providence of *Venus*, transformed she was into a Tree, bearing her name, to wit, Myrtle; as *Theodorus* reporteth in his *Metamorphoses* or *Transmutation*.

*Valeria Tusculanaria*, having incurred the displeasure of *Venus*, became amorous of her own father, and communicated this love of hers unto her nurse: who likewise went cunningly about her Master, and made him believe that there was a yong Maiden, a neighbours childe, who was in fancy with him, but would not, in regard of modestie, be known unto him of it, nor be seen when the should frequent his company. Howbeit her father, one night being drunk, called for a candle: but the Nurse prevented him, and in great haste awakened her: who fled thereupon into the Countrey great with childe; where she cast her self down from the pitch of a steep place, yet the fruit of her womb lived: for notwithstanding that fall she did not miscarry, but continued still with her great belly; and when her time was come, delivered the was of a son, such an one as in the Roman language is named *Sylvanus*, and in Greek *Aegipanes*. *Valerius* the father took such a thought thereupon, that for very anguish of minde he threw himself down headlong from a steep rock: as recordeth *Arifides* the Milesian in the third Book of Italian Historians.

23. After the destruction of *Troy*, *Diomedes* by a tempest was cast upon the coast of *Libya*, where reigned a King named *Lycus*: whose manner and custom was to sacrifice unto his own father god *Mars*, all those strangers that arrived, and were cast a land in his Countrey. But *Callirhoe* his daughter casting an affection unto *Diomedes*, betrayed her father, and saved *Diomedes* by delivering him out of Prison. And he again not regarding her accordingly, and had done him too good a turn, departed from her, and sailed away: Which indignity she took so near to the heart, that he changed her self, and so ended her days: This writeth *Juba* in the third Book of the Libyan History.

*Calpurnius Crassus* a Nobleman of Rome, being abroad at the wars together with *Regulus*, was by him sent against the Massilians, for to seize a strong Cattle, and hard to be won, named *Gareion*; but in this service being taken Prisoner, and destined to be killed in sacrifice unto *Saturnus*, it fortuneed that *Sylvia* the Kings daughter fancied him, so as he betrayed her father, and put the victory into her lovers hand; but when this yong Knight was retired and gone, the Damzell for sorrow of heart cut her own throat: as writeth *Hesiodus* in the third Book of the Libyan History.

24. *Priamus* the King of *Troy*, fearing that the City would be lost, sent his yong son *Polydorus* into *Thrace*, to his son in law *Polymeuster*, who married his daughter, with a great quantity of gold: *Polymeuster* for very covetousness, after the destruction of the City, murdered the childe, because he might gain the gold: but *Heube* being come into those parts, under a colour and pretence that she should bestow that gold upon him, together with the help of other Dames Prisoners with her, plucked with her own hands both eyes out of his head: witness *Euripides* the Tragedian Poet.

In the time that *Hannibal* over-ran and wasted the Countrey of *Campania* in Italy; *Lucius Imber* or, beloveth his son *Rufius* for safety, in the hands of a son in law whom he had, named *Valerius Gellius*, *Thymius*, and letted with him a good sum of money. But when this Campanian heard that *Anibal* had won a great victory, for very avarice he brake all laws of nature, and murdered the childe: The father *Thymius* as he travelled in the Countrey, lightning upon the dead corps of his own son, sent for his son in law afore said, as if he meant to shew him some great treasure; who was no sooner come, but he plucked out both his eyes, and afterwards crucified him; as *Arifides* testifieth in the third Book of his Italian Historians.

25. *Ecceus* begat of *Psanatha* one son named *Plocus*, whom he loved very tenderly: but *Telamon* his brother not well content therewith, trained him forth one day into the Forest a hunting, where having roused a wilde Bore, he launched his javelin or Bore-spear against the childe whom he hated, and so killed him: for which fact, his father banished him; as *Dorotheus* telleth the tale, in the first Book of his *Metamorphoses*.

*Cajus Maximus* had two sons, *Similius* and *Rhefus*: of which two, *Rhefus* he begat upon *Ameria*, who upon a time as he hunted in the chafe, killed his brother, and being come home again, he would have persuaded his father that it was by chance, and not upon a premeditated malice that he slew him: but his father when he knew the truth, exiled him: as *Arifide* hath recorded in the third Book of Italian Chronicles.

26. *Mars* had the company of *Alibea*, by whom she was conceived and delivered of *Meleager*: as writeth *Euripides* in his Tragedy *Meleager*.

*Septimius Marcellus*, having married *Sylvia*, was much given to hunting, and ordinarily went unto Chafe: then *Mars* taking his advantage, disguising himself in the habit of a shepherd; forced this new wedded wife, and gat her with childe; which done, he bewrayed unto her who he was, and gave her a lance, or spear, saying unto her, That the generosity and descent of that issue which she should have by him, consisted in that lance: now it hapned that *Septimius* slew *Tusquinus*; and *Manerius* when he sacrificed unto the gods for the good increase of the fruits upon the earth, neglected *Ceres* onely; whereupon the taking displeasure for this contempt, sent a great wilde Bore into his Countrey: Then he assembled a number of Hunters to chafe the said Beast, and killed him; which done, the head and the skin he sent unto his espoused wife: *Scimbrates* and *Muthias* her





The plague was fore in *Faleris*, the contagion thereof being very great, there was given out an Oracle, That the said affliction would stay and give over, if they sacrificed yearly a young maiden unto *Juno*: and this superstition continuing always still, *Valeria Laperca* was by lot called to this sacrifice: now when the sword was ready drawn, there was an eagle came down out of the air, and carried it away: and upon the altar where the fire was burning laid a wand, having at one end in manner of a little mallet: as for the sword, the laid upon a young Heifer, feeding by the Temple side: which when the young *Damfel* perceived, after she had sacrificed the said Heifer, and taken up the mallet, she went from house to house, and gently knocking therewith all those that lay sick, raised them up: and said to every one, Be whole, and receive health: whereupon it cometh that even at this day this myseric is still performed and observed: as *Aristides* hath reported in the 919. Book of his Italian Histories.

36. *Phylomene* the daughter of *Nyctimus* and *Arcadius*, hunted with *Diana*; whose *Mari* disguised like a Shepherd, got with child. She having brought forth two Twins, for fear of her father threw them into the River *Erymanthus*; but they by the providence of the gods, were carried down the stream without harm or danger, and at length the current of the water cast them upon an hollow oak, growing up on the bank side, whereas a she-Woolf having newly kennelled had her den. This Woolf turned out her whelps into the River, and gave suck unto the two Twins above said: which when a shepherd named *Tylphus* once perceived, and had a sight of, he took up the little Infants, and caused them to be nourished as his own children; calling the one *Lycastus*, and the other *Parrastus*, who successively reigned in the Realm of *Arcadia*.

*Anulius* bearing himself insolently and violently like a Tyrant, to his brother *Numeus*: first killed his son *Emilius* as they were hunting; then his daughter *Sylvia* he cloistered up as a religious Nun to serve *Juno*. She conceived by *Mars*; and when she was delivered of two Twins, confessed the truth unto the Tyrant; who standing in fear of them, caused them both to be cast into the River *Tybris*; where they were carried down the water unto one place, whereas a she-Woolf had newly kennelled with her young one: and verily her own whelps she abandoned and cast into the River; but the Babes she suckled. Then *Parastus* the shepherd chancing to spy them, took them up and nourished as his own; calling the one *Remus*, and the other *Romulus*: And these were the founders of *Rome* City: According to *Aristides* the Milesian in his Italian Histories.

37. After the destruction of *Troy*, *Agamemnon*, together with *Cassandra*, was murdered; but *Oristes* who had been reared and brought up with *Strophius*, was revenged of those murderers of his father: as *Pyrander* saith in his four Book of the Peloponnesian History.

*Fabius Fabricianus*, descended lineally from that great *Fabius Maximus*, after he had won and sacked *Tuscanum*, the capital city of the Samnites, sent unto *Rome* the Image of *Venus Victoreis*, which was highly honored and worshipped among the Samnites. His wife *Fabia* had committed adultery with a fair and well favored young man, named *Petrionus Valentinus*, and afterwards treacherously killed her husband. Now had *Fabia* his daughter saved her brother *Fabricianus*, being a very little one, out of danger, and sent him away secretly to be nourished and brought up. This youth when he came to age, killed both his mother and the adulterer also; for which act of his, acquit he was by the doom of the Senate: as *Desibeas* delivereth the story in the third Book of the Italian Chronicles.

38. *Bulvis* the son of *Nepseus*, and *Anippe* daughter of *Nilus*, under the colour of pretended hospitality, and courteous receiving of strangers, used to sacrifice all passengers: but Divine justice met with him in the end, and revenged their death: For *Hercules* set upon him and killed him with his club; as *Agathon* the Samian hath written.

*Hercules* as he drave before him thorow *Italy*, *Geryons* kine, was lodged by King *Faunus* the son of *Mercury*, who used to sacrifice all strangers and guests to his father: but when he means to do so unto *Hercules*, was himself by him slain; as writeth *Dercyllus* in the third Book of the Italian Histories.

39. *Phalaris* the Tyrant of the *Agrigentines* (a mercilese Prince) was wont to torment and put to exquisite pain such as passed by or came unto him: and *Perillus* (who by his profession) was a skilful Braze-founder, had framed an Heifer of braze, which he gave unto this King, that he might burn quick in it the said strangers. And verily in this one thing this Tyrant shew himself just; for he caused the Artificer himself to be put into it: and the said Heifer seemed too low, whiles he was burning within; as it written in the third Book of *Caules*.

In *Tegesta* a City of *Sicilie*, there was sometime a cruel Tyrant, named *Emilius Cerserinus*, whose manner was to reward with rich gifts those who could invent new kinds of Engines to put men to torture: so there was one named *Aruntus Paternulus*, who had devised and forged a Brazen-horse, and presented it unto the said Tyrant; that he might put into it whom he would. And in truth the first act of justice that ever he did was this, that the party himself, even the maker of it gave the first handle thereof; that he might make tryal of that torment himself, which he had devised for others. Him also he apprehended afterwards, and caused to be thrown down headlong from the hill *Tarpus*. It should seem also that such Princes as reigned with violence, were called of him *Emilii*: for so *Aristides* reponeth in the fourth Book of Italian Chronicle.

40. *Evemus* the son of *Mars* and *Storope*, took to wife *Alcippe* daughter of *Oenomaus*, who bare unto him a daughter, named *Marpissa*, whom he minded to keep a Virgin Rill; but *Apheareus* seeing her, carried her away from a dance, and fled upon it. The father made suit after, but not able to recover her: for very anguish of minde, he cast himself into the River of *Lycornus*, and thereby was immortalized: as *saith Desibeus* in the fourth Book of his Italian History.

*Anius*

*Anius* King of the Tuskans, having a fair daughter, named *Salia*; looked straightly unto her that she should continue a Maiden: but *Cathetus* one of his Nobles, seeing this *Damofel* upon a time as she disposed her self, was enamored of her, and notable to suppress the furious passion of his love, ravished her, and brought her to *Rome*. The father pursued after; but seeing that he could not overtake them, threw himself into the River, called in those days *Parusinus*, and afterwards of his name *Anio*. Now the said *Cathetus* lay with *Salia* and of her body begat *Salus* and *Latinus*; from whom are descended the noblest Families of that Country: as *Aristides* the Milesian, and *Alexander Polyhistor* write, in the third Book of the Italian History.

41. *Egeiratus*, an Ephesian born, having murdered one of his kinsmen, fled into the City *Delphi*, and demanded of *Apollo* in what place he should dwell: who made him this answer, That he was to inhabit there, whereas he saw the Peasants of the Country dancing, and crowned with Chaplets of Olive-Branches. Being arrived therefore at a certain place in *Assia*, where he saw the rural people crowned with Garlands of Olive leaves, and dancing; even there he founded a City, which he called *Elean*: as *Pythocles* the Samian writeth in the third Book of his Georgicks.

*Telegeus* the son of *Ulysses* by *Girce*, being sent for to seek his father, was advised by the Oracle to build a City there, where he should find the rustical people and husbandmen of the Country, crowned with Chaplets, and dancing together: when he was arrived therefore at a certain coast of *Italy*, seeing the Peasants adorned with boughs and branches of the wilde Olive tree, passing the time merrily, and dancing together: he built a City, which upon that occurrent he named *Primestia*; and afterwards the Romans altering the letters a little, called it *Præneste*: as *Aristotle* hath written in the third Book of the Italian History.

## The Lives of the Ten Orators.

### The Summary.

In these Lives compendiously described, *Plutarch* sheweth in part, the Government of the Athenian Commonwealth, which flourished by the means of many learned persons, in the number of whom we are to take this under written; namely, *Antipho*, *Andocides*, *Lyfias*, *Iocrates*, *Iseus*, *Æschines*, *Lycurgus*, *Demosthenes*, *Hyperides*, and *Dinarchus*: but on the other side he discovereth sufficiently the insubordination of certain Orators, how it hath engendered much confusion, ruined the most part of such Personages themselves, and finally overturned the publick estate: which he seemeth expressly to have noted and observed, in the end that every one might see, how dangerous (in the management of State affairs) he is, who hath no good parts in him but only a fine and nimble tongue. His meaning therefore is, that lively verine indeed should be joyned unto eloquence: mean while, we observe also the lightness, vanity and ingratitude of the Athenian people in many places: and in the divers complexions of these ten men here depainted: evident it is, how much available in any person, good instruction from his infancy, and how powerful good Teachers be, for to frame and fashion tender mindes unto high matters, and important to the weal-publique. In perusing and passing through this Treatise, a man may take knowledge of many points of the ancient popular Government, which serve very well to the better understanding of the Greek History; and namely, of that which concerneth Athens: As also by the recompences both demanded, and also decreed in the behalf of virtuous men, we may perceive and see among the imperfections of a people which had the Sovereignty in their hands, some moderation from time to time: which ought to make us magnifie the wisdom and providence of God, who amidst these darknes, hath maintained so long as his good pleasure was, so many States and Governments in Greece, which afterwards fell away and came to nothing, so as at this present that goodly Country is become desolate, and made thral to the most violent, wicked and wretched Naions under heaven.

## The Lives of the ten Orators.

### ANTIPHON.

*Antipho* the son of *Sapphius*, and born in the Borough and Corporation of *Rhamnus*, was brought up as a Scholar under his own father, who kept a Rhetoric School; whereunto *Alcibiades* also (by report) was wont to go and resort when he was a young Boy, who having gotten sufficiency of speech and eloquence, as some think by himself (such was the quickness of his wit, and inclination of his nature) he betook himself to affairs of State: and yet he held a School nevertheless, where he was at some difference with *Socrates* the Philosopher in matter of Learning and Oratory, not by way of contention and emulation, but in manner of reprehension, and find fault with some points; as *Xenophon* testifieth in the first Book of his Commentaries, as touching the deeds and

and sayings of *Socrates*. He penned Orations for some Citizens at their request for to be pleaded and pronounced in Judicial Courts: and as it is given out by some, was the first who gave himself to this course, and professed to do: for there is not extant one Oration written in manner of a Plea, by any Orators who lived before his time, nor by those that flourished in his days (for it was not the manner and custom to compose Orations for others) *Themistocles* (I mean) *Pericles* & *Aristides*; notwithstanding that the time presented unto them many occasions, yea and meer necessities for to do: neither was it upon their insufficiency, that they thus abstained, as it may appear by that which Historians have written of every one of these men abovementioned. Moreover, if we look into the most ancient Orators whom we can call to mind, to wit, *Alcibiades*, *Critias*, *Lysias* and *Archinon*, who have written one and the same stile, and exercised the same form and manner of pleading; it will be found that they all converted and conferred with *Antiphon*, being now very aged and far steep in years: for being a man of an excellent quick and ready wit, he was the first that made and put forth the Institutions of Oratory; so as, for his profound knowledge he was surnamed *Nestor*. And *Cecilius* in a certain Treatise which he compiled of him, conjectureth, that he had been sometime Schoolmaster to *Thucydides* the Historiographer; for that *Antipho* is so highly commended by him. In his Speeches and Orations he is very exquisite and full of perswasion, quick and subtil in his inventions: in difficult matters very artificial, affailing his adversary after a covert manner; turning his words and sayings respective to the Laws, and to move affections withal, aiming always to that which is decent and seemly, and carrying the best appearance and shew with it.

He lived about the time of the Persian war, when *Gorgias Leontinus* the great Professor in Rhetoric flourished, being somewhat younger then he was; and he continued to the subversion of the popular State and Government, which was wrought by the 400 Conspirators, wherein himself seem to have had a principal hand, for that he had the charge and command of two great Gallies at Sea, and was besides a Captain, and had the leading of certain Forces: during which time he won the victory in divers Battels, and procured unto them the aid of many Allies: also he moved that young and lustre able man of war to take arms; he rigged, manned, and set out sixty Gallies, and in all their occasions was sent Ambassador to the Lacedemonians, when as the City *Eetiona* was fortified with a wall: but after that those 400 before said were put down and overthrown, he was together with *Archipolemus* one of the 400, accused for the Conspiracy, condemned and adjudged to the punishment which is due unto Traytors. His corps was cast forth without sepulture; himself and all his posterity registered for infamous persons upon record: and yet some there be who report, that he was put to death by the thirty Tyrants, and namely among the rest, *Lysias* testifieth as much in an Oration which he made for *Antiphoes* daughters; for a little daughter he had, unto whom *Callistobus* made claim in right for his wife: and that the thirty Tyrants were they who put him to death, *Thespompus* beareth witness in the fiftenth of his Philippicks. But more modern surely was this man, and of a later time, yea and the son of *Lysidamides*, of whom *Cratinus* maketh mention, as of no wicked man in his Comedy called *Pyriac*. For how should he who before was executed by those 400, return to life again in the time of the thirty Usurpers or Tyrants: but his death is reported otherwise, namely, that being very aged, he sailed into *Cicily*, when as the Tyrannie of the former *Demys* was at the highest: and when the question was propounded at the table, which was the best brast? as some said this, and others that: He answered, that for his part he thought that brast was best, whereof the statues of *Harmodius* and *Aristogides* were made: which when *Demys* heard, he imagining that the speech imported thus much covertly, as to set on the Syracusians for to attempt some violence upon his person, commanded him to be put to death. Others report, that the said Tyrant gave order that he should be made away, upon indignation that he scoffed at his Tragedies.

There be extant in this Orators name three score Orations; whereof as *Cecilius* saith, five and twenty are untuly reported to be his. Noted he is, and taxed by *Plato* the Comical Poet, together with *Pylander*, for avarice and love of money. It is said moreover, that he composed certain Tragedies alone, and others with *Dionysius* the Tyrant, who joyined with him. At the same time also when he gave his minde unto Poetry, he devised the art of curing the griefs and maladies of the minde, like as Physicians pretend skill for to heal the diseases and pains of the body. *Cerēs*, having built a little house at *Corinib* in the Market-place, he set up a bill on the gate, wherein he made profession, That he had the skill to remedy by words, those who were vexed and grieved in spirit: and he would demand of those who were amis, the causes of their sorrow, and according thereto, to apply his comforts and consolations. Howbeit afterwards supposing this art and profession to be too base and mean for him, he turned his study to Rhetoric, and taught it. Some there be who attribute unto *Antipho* the Book of *Glaucus* the Rheneian as touching Poets; but principally is that Treatise commended which he made unto *Heredotus*; as also that which is dedicated to *Erasistratus* touching the Ideas; and the Oration of *Message* which he penned for his own self; and another again *Demophilus* the Captain, which he named *Paramonon*, for that he charged him to have broken the Laws. Also another Oration he wrote against *Hippocrates* the General Commander, and caused him to be condemned for his conumacy, in that he failed to answer at the day assigned for his tryal, that very year when *Thespompus* was Provoost of the City, under whom the four hundred Conspirators and Usurpers of the common-weal were put down and overthrown. Now the decree of the Senate, by vertue whereof ordained it was, That *Antiphon* should be judicially tryed and condemned, *Cecilius* hath put down in these terms, That the one and twentieth day of *Prytanies*, when *Demonicus of Alpece* was Secretary or Publike Notary, *Phylarchus*

\* or, Simo-  
nides.

*Phylarchus* of *Pallene* Chief Commander, upon the proposition or bill preferred by *Andron*: The Senate hath ordained as touching these persons; namely, *Archipolemus*, *Onomacles* and *Antiphon*, whom the Captains have declared against; that they went in ambassage unto *Lacedemon*, to the loſt and detriment of the City of *Athens*, and departed from the Camp, first in an enemies ship, and so passed by land by *Deſtina*; that their bodies should be attached and cast into prison, for to abide justice and punishment according to law. Item, that the Captains themselves, with certain of the Senate, to the number of ten, (such as it pleased them to chuse and nominate, should make presentments, and give in evidence, that upon the points alledged and proved, judgement might pass according. Item, that the *Themistocles* should call for the said persons judicially, the very next morow after they were committed and convent them before the Judges, after that they be chosen by lot: when and where they should accuse the Captains, with the Orators above said, of Treason; yea, and whosoever else would come in, he should be heard. Item, when sentence is concluded and pronounced against them, then the judgement of condemnation shall be executed according to the form and tenure of the law established, in case of Traytors. Under the instrument of this decree, was subscribed the condemnation of Treason in this manner: Condemned there were of Treason, *Archipolemus* the son of *Hippodamus* of *Agryle*, present; *Antiphon* the son of *Sophilus*, of *Rhamus*, likewise present; and awarded it was by the Court, that these two should be delivered over into the hands of the eleven Executors of Justice; their goods to be confiscated, the distm whereof to be consecrate unto the Goddess *Minerva*; their houses to be demolished and pulled down to the very ground; and upon the borders of the plots wherein they stood, this Superſcription to be written: Here stood the houses of *Archipolemus* and *Antiphon*, two Traytors of the State. Also, that it might not be lawful to enter to bury the body of *Archipolemus*, and of *Antiphon* within the City of *Athens*, nor in any part belonging to their Dominion or Territory. That their memory should be infamous, and all their posterity after them, as well *Baltards* as Legitimate: and that whosoever adopted any one of *Archipolemus* or *Antiphon* children for his son, himself should be held infamous. Finally, that all this should be engrossed and engraven in a column of brast, wherein also should be set down the Sentence and Decree which passed as concerning *Phylarchus*.

#### ANDOCIDES. II.

*Andocides* was son of that *Leagoras*, who sometime made a peace between the Athenians and the Lacedemonians; born in the Tribe of *Cydathene* or *Thurie*, descended from a Noble House, and as *Hellenicus* saith, even from *Mercury*; for the race of the *Ceryces* that is, *Herauls* pertained unto him; and therefore chosen he was upon a time with *Glaucus*, for to go with a fleet of twenty sail, to aid the Corycians, who warred upon the Corinthians. But after all this, accused he was of impiety and irreligion; for that he with others had mangled and defaced the Images of *Mercury*, that stood within the City: Also for that he had trespassed against the holy mysteries and sacred ceremonies of *Ceres*; in as much as being before time a wilde youth, and loosely given, he went in a mad one night, and brake certain Images of the god *Mercury*; whereupon (I say) he was judicially convicted. And because he would not deliver and bring forth to be examined upon torture, that servant of his, whom his accusers called for, he was held attaint and convict of that crime which was laid to his charge; yea, and for the second imputation charged upon him very deeply suspected: for which also he was called into question, not long after the setting forth of the great *Armada* at sea which went into *Sicily*, when the Corinthians had sent certain *Egeſians* and *Leontines*, into the City of *Athens*, unto whom the Athenians privately were to yield aid and succour, in the night season they brake all the Images of *Mercury* which stood about the Market-place; as *Cratippus* saith. Well, being suspected for offending against the sacred mysteries of *Ceres*, and thereupon judicially called to his answer, he escaped judgement of condemnation, and was acquit; so that he would discover and declare the delinquents and offenders indeed. Now having employed his whole study and endeavor thereabout, he wrought so, that he found out those who were faulty as touching the sacred mysteries aforesaid, among whom was his own father. As for all the rest, when they were convicted, he caused them to be put to death; only his fathers life he saved, although he was already in prison; promising withal, that he would do much good service unto the common-weal, wherein he failed not of his word. For *Leagoras* accused many who had robbed and embezzled the Cities Treasure, and committed other wicked parts, by the means whereof he was absolved.

Now albeit *Andocides* was in great name and reputation for managing the affairs of commonweal; yet nevertheless he set his minde to traffick and merchandize at sea; whereby he got amity, and entered into league of hospitality, with many Princes and great Potentates, but principally with the King of *Cyprus*; and it was then, that he stole and carried away a Citizens child, the daughter of *Aristides*, and his own Niece, without the privy and consent of her friends, and sent her closely for a present to the said King of *Cyprus*: but when he was upon the point to be called in question judicially for this fact, he stole her privily away again out of *Cyprus*, and brought her home to *Athens*. Hereupon the King of *Cyprus* caused hands to be laid upon him, where he was kept in prison; but he brake loose, and escaped to *Athens*, at the very time when the four hundred Conspirators and Usurpers governed the State: and being by them cast into prison, he got away again when the said *Phylarchus* was dissolved. Howbeit he was driven out of the City, when the thirty Tyrants ruled all

all, and usurped their Government. During which time of his exile, he abode in the City of *Elis*: but when *Thrasibulus* and his adherents returned into the City, he also repaired thither, and was sent in an ambassage to *Lacedæmon*; where being taken again in a trip, he was for his ill demeanor banished.

All these premises appear evidently by his Orations which he hath written; for in some of them we finde how he answereth to those imputations which were charged upon him for violating of the fore-said holy mysteries: in others, he generally craveth for the favour of the Judges, and standeth upon the terms of mercy: there is an Oration also of his extant, as touching the appeaching or discovery of those, who were faulty for those sacred ceremonies; as also his Agologic or defence against *Phæas*, and concerning peace. He flourished at the very same time that *Socrates* the Philosopher was in so great name. But born he was in the \* 78 Olympias, that year wherein *Theragenes* was in so Chief Ruler of *Athenis*; so that by this computation, he must needs be more ancient then *Lyfias* by some hundred years. There was one of the *Hermæ* that carried his name, and was called *Hermæ* of *Andocides*, for that this Image being dedicated by the Tribe or Lineage *Ægeis*, stood near unto the house where *Andocides* dwelt. This *Andocides* defrayed the charges of a solemn round dance in the name of the line or kindred *Ægeis*, which contended for the prize in the honor of *Dithyrambus* at the feast of *Bacchus*: where having obtained the victory, he consecrated a Trefect, and set it up on a high, just against *Porinus Selmus*.

His stile is plain and simple, without all art, bare and naked without any figures whatsoever.

#### LYSIAS. III.

**L**ysias the son of *Cephalus*, the son of *Lysianias*, who had likewise for his father *Cephalus*, born in *Syracuse*, but he went to dwell at *Athenis*, partly for the affection that he bare to the City, and in part through the perswasion of *Pericles* the son of *Xanthippus*, who being his friend and guest, perswaded him thereto; and the rather, for that he was a mighty man there, and exceeding rich: or as some think he came to *Athenis*, by occasion that he was banished out of *Syracuse*, at what time as the City was tyrannically oppressed by *Gelon*: so he arrived at *Athenis* that year, wherein *Philoctas* was Provoft next after *Phrasicles*, in the second year of the 82. Olympias: at his first coming brought up he was, and taught with the noblest Athenians; but after that the City sent out the colony of *Syracuse*, which afterwards was named *Turris*, he went with his eldest brother *Polemarchus* (for he had besides him two other brethren, *Eudemus* and *Brachyllus*, their father being now departed this life) to have his part set out and allotted unto him out of his fathers lands, being not fifteen years old, that very year when as *Phrasicles* was Provoft: where he remained, and was instructed by *Nicias* and *Tissias*, two *Syracusan*. Now having bought him an house, with the portion of land which fell unto his share, he lived there, in state of a Citizen, and was called to government of common-weal, when his lot came, for the space of 63 years, until the time that *Clearchus* was Provoft of *Athenis*: but the year next following, when *Callias* was Provoft, namely, in the 92 Olympias, when as the Sicilians and Athenians fought a field, by reason whereof many of their Allies stirred ake revolved, and especially those who dwelt in *Italy*, and coasted thereupon, accused he was to have favored the Athenians, and sided with them, and thereupon was banished with three other. Now being arrived at *Athenis*, in the year wherein *Callias* was Provoft next after *Clearchus*, while the four hundred Usurpers were possessed of the State, he there resided: but after the naval battle was stricken near to a place called the Goats River, when as the thirty Tyrants had the administration of the common-weal in their hands, banished he was from thence for the space of seven years. Lost his goods and his brother *Polemarchus*; himself escaped with life narrowly out of the house at a postern-gate, or back-door; in which house he had been beset with a full purpose that he should end his life there: and then he retired himself to the City *Megara*, where he abode. When as those of *Phila* had made a re-entry into the City, and chased out the Tyrants; for that he shewed himself (above all others) most forward in this enterprise, as having contributed (for the exploiting of this service) two thousand dragmes weight in silver, and two hundred targuets: and being sent besides with *Herman*, waged three hundred and two Soldies, and wrought so effectually with *Thrasibulus* the Elian, his friend and old host, that he helped him unto certain talents of silver: in regard whereof, *Thrasibulus* (upon his return and re-entry into the City) proposed unto the people, That for and in consideration of these good services, the right of free Burgeoisie should be granted unto him. This happened in the year of the Anarchy, when there was no Provoft elected, next before the Provoftship of *Euclides*. This was granted and ratified by the people; only there was one *Archinus* stood up, and impeached the proceeding thereof, as being against the law, because it was proposed unto the people, before it was consulted upon in the Senate: so the fore-said Decree was annulled and revoked. Thus being disappointed of his right of Burgeoisie, he remained nevertheless (during his life) as a Citizen, and enjoyed the same rights, franchises and privileges that other Burgeoisie did; and so dyed in the end, when he had lived the space of fourscore and three years, or as some say, threecore and sixteen; and as others write, fourcore: so that he lived to see *Demosthenes* a child. It is said, that he was born the year that *Philoctas* was Provoft. There go in his name four hundred Orations; of which number (according to *Dionysius* and *Cicero*) two hundred and thirty be of his own making indeed: in the pronouncing of all which, he failed but twice, and had the foil. There is extant also, that very Oration which he made against *Archinus*, in the maintenance and defence of the said Decree; by virtue whereof, the right of Burgeoisie

W 33

was given unto him: also another, against the thirty Tyrants. Aft he was to perswade; and in those Orations which he gave out to others, very brief and succinct. There be found like wise of his makings, certain introductions to Rhetorick, and speeches delivered publicly before the people: Letters-millire, Solemn Praises, Funeral Orations, Discourses of Love; and one defence of *Socrates*, which directly seemed to touch the Judges to the quick. His stile was thought to be plain and easie, howbeit inimitable. *Demosthenes* in one Oration which he made against *Neera*, saith, That he was named of one *Metanira*, a servant with *Neera*; but afterwards he espoused and took to wife the daughter of his brother *Brachyllus*. *Plato* himself maketh mention of him in his Book, entitled, *Phædrus*, as of an Orator passing eloquent, and more ancient then *Isocrates*. *Philistus* who was familiar with *Isocrates*, and the companion of *Lysius*, made an Epigram upon him, whereby it appeareth, that he was more ancient (as also is evident by that which *Plato* hath said) and the Epigram in this effect:

Now *Phæ* Callippes daughter, thou  
that art so eloquent;  
If ought of witty spirit thou hast,  
and what is excellent:  
For meet it is, that thou shouldst bring,  
some little *Lysias* forth:  
To blaze his fathers name abroad,  
for virtuous deeds of worth.  
Who (now transform'd, and having caught  
a body strange to see  
In other worlds for Sapience  
should now immortal be)  
My loving heart to friend now dead,  
likewise to notify;  
And to declare his virtuous life  
unto posteritie.

He composed likewise an Oration for *Iphicrates*, which he pronounced against *Harmodius*; as also another wherein he accused *Timotheus* of treason, and both the one and the other he overthrew: but afterwards when *Iphicrates* took upon him again to enquire into the doings of *Timotheus*, calling him to account for the revenues of the State which he had managed, and set in hand again with this accusation of treason, he was brought into question judicially, and made answer in his own defence by an oration that *Lysias* penned for him. And as for himself, he was acquit of the crime, and absolved; but *Timotheus* was condemned and fined to pay a great sum of money. Moreover, he rehearsed in the great Assembly and Solemnity at the Olympick Games, a long Oration, wherein he perswaded the Greeks, that they should be reconciled one to another, and joynt together for to put down the Tyrant *Dionysius*.

#### ISOCRATES. IV.

**I**socrates was the son of one *Theodorus* an Erechthian, a man reckoned in the number of mean Citizens, one who kept a sort of servants under him, who made Flutes and Hautboyes; and whose workshop he became so rich, that he was able to bring up and set out his children in worshipful manner. For other sons he had besides, to wit, *Teleippus* and *Dionemestus*; and also a little daughter named *Themis*. Hereupon it is that he was twice and flouted by the Comical Poets *Aristophanes* and *Antipus*: in regard of those flutes. He lived about the 86. Olympias, elder then *Lysimachus* the Myrrhinian by two and twenty years, and before *Plato* some seven years. During his childhood, he had as good bringing up as any Athenian whatsoever, as being the disciple and scholar of *Prodicus* the Chian, of *Gorgias* the Leontine, of *Tysias* the Syracusan, and *Theramenes* the professed Rhetorician; who being at the point to be apprehended and taken by the thirty Tyrants, and flying for refuge to the altar of *Menæus* the Counsellor, when all other friends were affrighted and amazed: onely *Isocrates* arose and helped himself for to assist and succor him, and at the first continued a long time silent. But *Theramenes* himself began and prayed him to desist; saying, that it would be more dolorous and grievous unto him, then his own calamity, in case he should see any of his friends to be troubled and endangered for the love of him. And it is said, that he helped him to compile certain Institutions of Rhetorick, at what time as he was maliciously and falsely slandered before the Judges in open Court: which Institutions are gone under the name and title of *Baton*.

When he was grown to mans estate, he forbore to meddle in State matters, and in the affairs of the common-weal; as well for that he had by nature a small and feeble voyce, as because naturally he was fastidious, timorous; and besides, his estate was much impaired, by reason that he lost his patrimony in the war against the Lacedæmonians. It appeareth that to other men he had been assitant in counsel, and giving testimony for them in places of judgement: but it is not known that he pronounced above one onely Oration, to wit, *de Aristodemus*, that is to say, concerning counterchange of goods. And having set up a publicke School, he gave himself to the study of Philosophy, and to write; where he composed his Panegyrique Oration, and certain others of the Diliberative kinde: and

and those that he wrote himself, some he read, some he penned for others; thinking thereby to exhort and stir up the Greeks to devise and perform such duties as becom'd them to do. But seeing that he misst of his purpose and intention, he gave over that course, and betook himself to keep a School: first, as some say, in *Chios*, having nine Scholars that came unto him; where when he saw that his Scholars paid him down in money his Minervals for their schooling, he wept, and said, I see well now that I am sold unto these youths: He would confer willingly with those that came to devise and talk with him, being the first that put a difference between wrangling Pleas, or contentious Orations, and serious polittick Discourses of common-weal, in which he rather employed himself. He ordain'd Magistrates in *Chios*, erecting the same form of Government there, which was in his own Country. He gathered more silver together by teaching School, then ever any Professor in Rhetorick or School-maister was known to have done; so that he was well able to defray the charges of a Gally at Sea. Of Scholars he had to the number of one hundred, and among many others, *Timotheus* the son of *Conon*, with whom he travelled abroad, and visited many Cities: He penned all those Letters which *Timotheus* sent unto the Athenians; in regard whereof he bestowed upon him a Talent of silver, the remainder of that money due by composition from *Samos*. There were besides of his Scholars *Theopompus* the Chian, and *Ephorus of Cumes*: *Asclepiades* also, who compos'd Tragical matters and arguments; and *Theodectes*, who afterwards wrote Tragedies (whose Tomb or Sepulchre is as men go toward *Cyamine*, even in the sacred way or street that leadeth to *Eleusis*, now altogether ruin'd and demolish'd: in which place he caused to be erected and set up the statues of famous Poets, together with him; of all whom there remaineth none at this day but *Homer* alone;) also *Leodamus* the Athenian; *Lacritus* the Law-giver unto the Athenians, and as some say, *Hyperides* and *Iseus*. And it is said, that *Demosthenes* also came unto him, whilst he yet taught a Rhetorick School, with an earnest purpose to learn of him, using this speech: that he was not able to pay him a thousand drachms of silver, which was the onely price that he made and demanded of every Scholar; but means he would make to give him two hundred drachms, so he might learn of him but the six part of his skill, which was a proportionable rate for the whole; unto whom *Iscrates* made this answer: We use not, *Demosthenes*, to do our business by piece-meal; but like as men are wont to sell fair fishes all whole; even so will I, if you purpose to be my Scholar, teach and deliver you mine Art full and entire, and not by halves or parcels.

He departed this life the very year that *Cleonymus* was Provost of *Athenis*; even when the news came of the discomfiture at *Cheronea*, which he heard being in the place of *Hippocrates* publick exercises; and voluntarily he procured his own death, in abtaining from all food and sustenance the space of four days, having pronounced before this abstinence of his, these three six verses which begin three Tragedies of *Enripides*:

1. King Danaus, who fifty daughters had.
2. Pelops the son of Tantalus, when he to Pisa came.
3. Cadmus wretched, the City Sidon left.

He lived 98. years, or as some say, a full hundred, and could not endure for to see *Greece* four times brought into servitude: the year before he dyed, or as some write, four years before, he wrote his Panathenack Oration: as for his Panegyrick Oration, he was in penning it ten years, and by the report of some, fifteen, which he is thought to have translated and borrowed out of *Gorgias* the Leontine and *Isias*; and the Oration concerning the counterchange of goods, he wrote when he was fourscore years old and twain: but his Phillippick Oration he set down a little before his death: when he was far stepp'd in years, he adopted for his Son *Aphareus*, the yongest of the three children of *Platamus* his wife, the daughter of *Hippias* the Orator, and profess'd Rhetorician. He was of good wealth, as well for that he called duly for money of his Scholars, as also because he received of *Nicetes* King of *Cyprus*, who was the son of *Euaergas*, the sum of twenty talents of silver for one Oration which he dedicated unto him: by occasion of this riches, he became envied, and was thrice chosen and enjoin'd to be the Captain of a Gally, and to defray the charges thereof: for the two first times he feigning himself to be sick, was excused by the means of his son; but at the third time he rose up and took the charge, wherein he spent no small sum of money. There was a Father, who talking with him about his son whom he kept at School, said, That he sent with him no other to be his Guide and Governor, but a slave of his own: unto whom *Iscrates* answered, Go your ways then, for one slave you shall have twain. He entred into contention for the prize at the solemn Games which Queen *Artamisia* exhibited at the Funerals and Tomb of her husband *Mausolus*: But this encomiastical Oration of his which he made in the praise of him, is not extant: Another Oration he penned in the praise of *Alcama*; as also a third in the commendation of the counsel *Arenpagus*. Some write, that he dyed by abstaining nine days together from all meat: others report but four; even at the time that the publick obsequies were solemnized for them who lost their lives in the battel at *Cheronea*. His adopted son *Aphareus* compos'd likewise certain Orations: entered he was together with all his lineage, and those of his blood, near unto a place called *Cynsarges*, upon a bank or knap of a little hill on the left hand, where were bestowed, the son and sister *Theodorus*, their mother also and her sister *Anaco*, Aunt unto the Orator; his adopted son, likewise *Aphareus*, together with his Cousin-germain *Socrates*, son to the aforesaid Aunt *Anaco*, *Iscrates* mothers sister: his brother *Theodorus*, who bare the name of his Father, his Nephews, or children of his adopted Son *Aphareus*, and his natural *Theodorus*: moreover, his Wife *Platamus*

*Platamus* mother to his adopted son *Aphareus*: upon all these bodies there were six tables or tombs erected of stone, which are not to be seen at this day: but there stood upon the tomb of *Iscrates* himself, a mighty great ran engraven, to the height of thirty cubits, upon which were syren or mero-maid seven cubits high, to signifie under a figure his milde nature and eloquent stile: there was besides near unto him, a table containing certain poets and his own scoll-masters: among whom was *Gorgias* looking upon an astrological sphere, and *Iscrates* himself standing close unto him: furthermore, there is erected a brazen image of his in *Eleusis*, before the entrie of the gallery *Stoa*, which *Timotheus* the son of *Conon* caused to be made, bearing this epigram or inscription:

*Timotheus upon a loving mind,  
And for to honour mutuall kindness,  
This image of Iocrates his friend,  
Erected hath unto the goddesses.*

This statue was the handy-work of *Leochares*. There go under his name threescore orations; of which five and twenty are his indeed, according to the judgement of *Diogenes*: but as *Cecilius* faith, eight and twenty; all the rest are falsly attributed unto him. So far was he off from ostentation, and so little regard had he to put forth himself and shew his sufficiency, that when upon a time there came three unto him, of purpose to hear him declame and discourse, he kept two of them with him, and the third he sent away, willing him to return the next morrow: For now (quoth he) I have a full theater in mine auditory. He was wont to say also unto his scholars and familiars: That himself taught his art for ten pounds of silver; but he would give unto him that could put into him audacity, and teach him good utterance, ten thousand. When one demanded of him how it was possible that he should make other men sufficient orators, seeing himself was nothing eloquent. Why not (quoth he) seeing that whet-stones which can not cut at all, make iron and steel sharp enough and abate cut. Some say, that he compos'd certain books as touching the art of the Rhetorick; but others are of opinion, that it was not by any method, but exercise onely, that he made his scholars good orators; this is certain, that he never demanded any money of naturall Citizens born, for their teachings. His manner was to bid his scholars to be present at the great assemblies of the City, and to relate unto him what they heard there spoken and delivered. He was wonderful heavy and sorrowful out of measure for the death of *Socrates*, so as the morrow after he mourned and put on black for him. Again, unto one who asked him what was Rhetorick? he answered: It is the art of making great matters of small, and small things of great. Being invited one day to *Nicoerone* the tyrant of *Cyprus*; as he sat at the table, those that were present, requested him to discourse of some theme; but he answered thus: For such matters wherein I have skill the time will not now serve; and in those things that fit the time, I am nothing skilful. Seeing upon a time *Sophocles* the tragical Poet, following wantonly and hunting with his eye, a young fair boy; he said: O *Sophocles* an honest man ought to contain not his hands onely, but his eyes also. When *Ephorus of Cumes* went from his school now proficiens, and able to do nothing, by reason whereof his father *Demophilus* sent him again with a second salary or minerval; *Iscrates* smiled thereat, and merrily called him *Dipporos*, that is to say, bringing his money twice; so he took great pains with the man, and would himself prompt him, and give him matter and invention for his declamatory exercise.

Inclined he was and naturally given unto the pleasures of wanton love; in regard whereof he used to lie upon a thin and hard short mattress, and to have the pillow and bolster under his head persued, and wet with the water of saffron. So long as he was in his youth he married not; but being now stricken in age and grown old, he kept a queen or harlot in his house, whose name was *Luigia*; by whom he had a little daughter, who died before she was married, when she was about twelve years old. After that, he espoused *Platamus*, the wife of the Rhetorician *Gorgias*, who had three children before, of whom he adopted *Aphareus* for his own son, as hath been said before, who caused his statue to be cast in brass, and erected it near unto the image of *Jupiter Olympius*, as it were upon a column, with this Epigram:

*This portrait of Iocrates in brass,  
His sonne adopted, Aphareus, who was,  
Erected hath to Jupiter, in view,  
Of all the world thereby to make a shew,  
That unto gods he is religious,  
And honoureth his father vertuous.*

He said, that whilst he was but a young boy, he ran a course on horse-back; for he is to be seen all in brass in the castle or citadel of the city, sitting and riding his horse, in form and proportion of a boy within the tenile Court of those Priests of *Minerva*, which attend there, to tarry the sacred secrets, not to be revealed, as some have reported. In all his life time there were two onely times contended against him: the former, for the exchange of his goods, being challenged and provoked by *Megacrides*; for the triall whereof, he appeared not personally at his day, by reason of sickness: the second action was fram'd against him by *Lyfmacchus*, for the exchange of his goods, with charge to defray the expences of maintaining a gally at sea: in which process he was cast, and forced to set out a gally at sea: There was also a painted image of his in the place called *Pompeium*. And *Aphareus* compos'd verry orations, though not many, both judicial and also deliberative. He made also tragedies, to the number of seven and thirty; whereof there be two which were contradicted. And

\* Hippias.

he began to have his works openly heard in publick place, from the year wherein *Lysistratus* was Provoist, unto that year wherein *Soficles* was in place; to eight and twenty years: in which time he caused six civil places to be acted, and twice gained the prize of victory, having set them forth by a principal Actor or Player, named *Dionysius*: and by other Actors he exhibited two more, of the Linnick kind, that is to say, full of mirth to move laughter.

There were the statues also to be seen within the Citadel, of the mother of *Isochrates* and of *Theodoris*, as also of *Anaco* her sister; of which, that of his mother is yet extant: and it standeth neer unto the image of *Hygiea*, that is to say Health; onely the inscription is changed: but the other of *Anaco* is not to be found. This *Anaco* had two sons, *Alexander* by *Canes*, and *Uficles* by *Lysias*.

## ISAËUS. V.

*Isæus* was born in *Chalcis*: and being come to *Athen*, he studied the work of *Lysias*, whom he did so neerly imitate, as well in the apt couching of his words, as in the witty device and subtilty of his inventions; that if a man were not very well practised and perfect in the stile and manner of writing of these two Orators, hardly he should be able to discern many of their Orations, and distinguish one from another. He was in greatest name, about the time of Peloponnesiack war, as may be conjectured by his Orations; and continued unto the Reign of King *Phillip*. He gave over his publick school, and went to teach *Demosthenes* privately at home, for the sum of ten thousand drachmes of silver, whereby he became very famous: and as some say, he it was that composed for *Demosthenes* certain exhortatory Orations. He left behind him three score and four Orations going in his name; whereof fifty are his indeed: also some particular introductions of his own, and rules of his Rhetorick. He was the first who began both to form and to turn the fence of his stile unto the polittick management of affairs; a thing that *Demosthenes* doth most of all imitate. Of this Orator, *Theopompus* the comick Poet maketh mention in his *Thejets*.

## AESCHINES. VI.

*Aeschines* was the son of *Atrometus*, (a man who being banished in the time of the thirty tyrants, was a means to aid the people, and to set up the popular state again) and his mothers name was *Glaucobea*. He was of the borough or tribe *Cothocis*: so that his parents were neither for nobility of race, nor yet for wealth and riches renowned in the City: but being young, and of a lully and able constitution, he fortified and confirmed the same more by bodily exercise: and finding himself to have a strong brest and clear voice; thereupon afterwards he made profession to act Tragedies, but (as *Demosthenes* said of him by way of reproach) he went after others, and could never proceed higher than to act the third and last parts in the solemnities of the Bacchanale plays under one *Aristodemus*. When he was but a boy, he taught potties the letters; namely to spel and read together with his Father: and being of some growth, he served as a common souldier in the wars. The Scholar and Auditor he was (as some think) of *Isochrates* and *Plato*; but according to *Cecilius*, of *Leodamus*. Being entered into the managing of State affairs, and that not without credit and reputation; because he made head and sided against the faction of *Demosthenes*, employed he was in many embassages; and namely unto King *Phillip*, for to treat of peace: for which, accused he was by *Demosthenes*, and charged to have been the cause that the Nations of the Phocians was rooted out, and for that he kindled war between the Amphyctions and the Amphilians, what time as he was chosen one of the deputies to be present in the assembly or diet of the Amphyctions, who made also an haven, whereby it hapned withal, that the Amphyctions put themselves into the protection of *Phillip*, who being wrought by *Aeschines*, took the matter in hand, and conquered all the territory of *Platin*: howbeit, through the port and favourable countenance of *Eubulus* the son of *Spintharus* a Probolusian, who was of great credit and reputation among the people, and spake in his behalf, he escaped, and was found unguilty, and carried off by thirty voices; although others say, that the Orators had penned their orations, and were at the point to plead; but upon the news of the overthrow at *Cheronæa*, which impeached the proceeding of the Law, the matter was not called for, nor the cause pleaded.

A certain time after, when King *Phillip* was dead, and his son *Alexander* gone forward in his expedition into *Asia*, he accused *Ctesiphon* judicially, for that he had passed a decree contrary unto the Laws, in the honour of *Demosthenes*; but having on his side not the fifth part of the suffrages and the voices of the people, he was banished out of *Athen*, and fled to *Rhodes*, because he would not pay the fine of a thousand drachmes, in which he was condemned, upon his overthrow at the bar. Others say, that over and beside, he was noted with infamy, because he would not depart out of the City; and that he retired himself to *Ephesus* unto *Alexander*. But upon the decease of *Alexander*, when there was great trouble towards, he returned to *Rhodes*, where he kept a school, and began to teach the art of Rhetorick. He read other whiles unto the *Rhodiens* (and that with adon and gesture) the oration which he had pronounced against *Ctesiphon* whereat, when all the hearers marvelled, and namely, how possibly he could be cast, if he asked such an oration: You would never wonder at the matter (quoth he) my Masters of *Rhodes*, if you had been in place and heard

Demosthenes

*Demosthenes* implending against it. He left behind him a school at *Rhodes*, which afterwards was called the *Rhodian* school. From thence he failed to *Samos*, and when he had stayed atmeine the isle, within a while after, he died. A pleasant and sweet voice he had, as may appear both by that which *Demosthenes* hath delivered of him, and also by an oration of *Demochares*.

There be found four orations under his name; one against *Timarchus*; another as touching false embassage; and a third against *Ctesiphon*, which in truth beall three his: for the fourth entitled *Dicaea*, was never penned by *Aeschines*. True it is indeed, that appointed and commanded he was to plead judicially the cause of the people of *Delos*: but he pronounced no such oration; for that *Hypirides* was chosen in stead of him, as saith *Demosthenes*. And by his own saying two brethren he had *Aphobus* and *Demochares*. He brought unto the *Athenians* the first tidings of the second victory which they obtained at *Tamynæ*, for which he was rewarded with a Crown. Some give it out that *Aeschines* was scholar to none, and never learned his Rhetorick of any Master; but being brought up to writing, and a good pen-man, he became a Clerk or notary; and so grew up to knowledge of himself by his own industry, for that he ordinarily converted in judicial Courts, and places of judgement. The first time that ever he made publick speech before the people, was against King *Phillip*; and having then audience with great applause and commendation, he was presently chosen embassador; and sent to the *Acadians*; whither when he came, he raised a power of ten thousand men against *Phillip*. He presented and indicted *Timarchus* for maintaining a brothel house; who fearing to appear judicially, and to have the cause heard, hung himself, as after a sort *Demosthenes* in some places saith. Afterwards elected he was to go in embassage unto *Phillip* with *Ctesiphon* and *Demosthenes*, about treaty of peace; wherein he carried himself better than *Demosthenes*. A second time he was chosen the tenth man in an Embassage, for to go and conclude a peace upon certain capitulations and covenantes; for which service he was judicially called to his answer and acquit, as hath been said before.

## LYCURGUS. VII.

*Lycurgus* was the son of *Lycophon*, the son of *Lycurgus*; him I mean whom the thirty tyrants led to death, by the procurement and infigation of one *Aristodemus* that came from *Batas*; who having been treasurer General of *Greece*, was banished during the popular Government. Of the borough or Tribe he was named *Batas*, and of the family or house of the *Ereobnades*. At the beginning, the scholar he was of *Plato* the Philosopher, and made profession of Philosophy: but afterwards being entered into familiar acquaintance with *Isochrates*, he became his scholar, and dealt in Affairs of State where he was great credit, as well by his deeds as words; and so put in trust he was with the manning of the Cities revenues: for Treasurer General he was the space of fifteen years; during which time, there went thorow his hands four millions of talents, or as some say, four millions six hundred and fifty talents. And it was the Orator *Stratocles* who preferred him to this honour, by propounding him unto the people. Thus lay at the first was he himself chosen Treasurer in his own name; but afterwards he nominated some one of his friends; and yet nevertheless managed all, and had the whole administration of it in his own hands; for that there was a Statute enacted and published, that none might be chosen to have the charge of the publick treasure above six years. He continued alwayes an Overfeer of the City works both Winter and Summer: and having this office and charge committed unto him provision of all necessities for the wars, he returned many things that were amiss in Common-wealth. He caused to be built for the City four hundred gallies. He made the common Hall or place for publick exercises in *Lycæum*, and planted the same round about with trees: He reared also the wrestling Hall, and finished the theater which is at the Temple of *Bacchus*; being himself in person to oversee and direct the workmen. He was reputed a man of such fidelity and so good a conscience, that there was committed upon trust into his hands, to the summe of two hundred and fifty talents of silver, by divers and sundry private persons to be kept for their use. He caused to be made many fair vessels of gold and silver to adorn and beautify the City; as also sundry images of Victory in gold. And finding many publick works unperfected and stale done, he accomplished and made an end of them all: as namely the Arsenals, the common Halls of armor and other utensiles and implements, serving for the Cities uses. He founded a wall round about the spacious cloisture, called *Panathenæik*, which he finished up to the very cope and battlements; yea and laid level and even, the great pit or chink in the ground; for that one *Dimus*, whose plot of ground it was, gave away the property which he had in it unto the City, in favour especially of *Lycurgus*, and for his sake. He had the charge and custody of the City, and commission to attache and apprehend malefactors, whom he drove all quite out of the City: in such sort that some of the Orators and subtle sophisters would say, that *Lycurgus* dypt not his pen in black ink, but in deadly blood, when he drew his wits against malefactors: in regard of which benefit unto the Common-wealth, so well beloved he was of the people, that when *Alexander* demanded what he had him delivered into his hands, the people would, not forgo him. But when as King *Phillip* made war upon the *Athenians* the second time, he went in embassage with *Polyænus* and *Demosthenes*, as well into *Peloponnesus*, as to other States and Cities. All this time he lived in good estimation among the *Athenians*, reputed evermore for a just and upright man, in such sort that in all Courts of justice, if *Lycurgus* said the word, it was held for a great prejudice and good foredoom in his behalf.

Sf 2

for

for whom he spoke. He proposed and brought in certain Laws; the one to this effect, that there should be exhibited a solemnity of plays or comedies at the feast *Chytia*, wherein the Poets should do their best, and strive a vie within the theatre for the prize; and whosoever obtained victory, should therewith have the right and freedom of Burgeoisie, a thing that before was not lawfull nor granted unto Poets; and thus he brought unto use and practise againe, a solemn game which he had discontinued. Another, that there should be made at the publick charges of the City, statues of brass for the Poets *Æschylus*, *Sophocles* and *Euripides*; that their tragedies should be exemplified and engrossed far, to be kept in the chamber of the City; and that the publick notary of the City should read them unto the players, for otherwise unlawful it was to set them. A third there was, that no Citizen nor any other person resident and an inhabitant within the City of *Athenes*, should be permitted to buy any prisoners taken in war, such as were of free condition before, to make them slaves, without the consent of their first Masters. Item, that within the haven *Pyraeum*, there should be exhibited a solemn play or game unto *Neptune*, consisting of round dances, no fewer than three: and that unto those who won the first prize, there should be given for reward no fewer than ten pound of silver and to the second, eight at the least; and to the third, not under six, according as they should be adjudged by the *Umpires*. Item, that no dams of *Athenes* might be allowed to ride in a Coach to *Eleusis*; for fear that the poor might be defaced by the rich, and herein reputed their inferiours: but in case any of them were so taken riding in a Coach, he should be fined and pay six thousand drachms: now when his own wife obeyed not his Laws, but was surprized in the manner by *Sycophants* and *Promoters*, he himself gave unto them a whole talent, with which afterwards when he was charged and accused before the people: You see yet (quoth he) my Masters of *Athenes*, that I am overtaken for giving, and not for taking silver.

He met one day as he went in the street, a publican or farmer of the forreintaxes and tribute for the City, who had laid hands upon the Philosopher *Xenocrates*, & would have led him to prison in all haste, because he paid not the duties imposed upon strangers; for which he gave the publican a rap on the head with the rod or walking staff which he had in his hand, and recovered the Philosopher out of his clutches; which done, he cast the said officer himself into prison for his labour, as having committed a great indignity unto such a personage: a few dayes after, the same Philosopher meeting with the children of *Lycurgus*: I have (quoth he unto them) my good children rendered thanks unto your father, and that right speedily, in that he is so praised and commended of all men for succouring and rescuing me. He proposed and published certain publick decrees, using the help herein of one *Eudides* an *Olynthian*, who was thought to be a very sufficient man in framing and penning such acts; and albeit he was a wealthy person, yet he never wore but one and the same kind of garment both winter and summer, yea, and the same shoes he went in every day, what need soever was. He exercised himself continually in declaiming both night and day, for that he was not fit to speak of a sudden and unprovided. Upon his bed or pallet where he lay, he had onely for his covering a sheepes skin, self and all, and under his head a boulder, to the end that the foener and with more ease, he might awake and go to his study. There was one who reproached him, for that he paid his money still unto sophisters and professed Rhetoricians, for teaching him to make orations: But (quoth he) again, if there were any would promise and undertake to professe my children and make them better, I would give him willingly not onely a thousand talents, but the one moiety of all my goods. Very bold he was and resolute to speak his mind frankly unto the people, and to tell them the truth plainly, bearing himself upon his nobility; inasmuch as one day when the *Athenians* would not suffer him to make a speech in open audience, he cried out with a loud voice: O whippers of *Corfu*, how many talents are thou worth? Another time, when some there who called *Alexander* God: and what manner of God may he be (quoth *Lycurgus*) out of whose temple whosoever go, had need to be sprinkled and drenched all over with water to purifie themselves.

After he was dead, they delivered his children into the hands of the eleven Officers for execution of justice, for that *Trasibulus* had framed an accusation, and *Menelachmus* ended them; but upon the letters of *Demosthenes*, which in the time of his exile he wrote unto the *Athenians*, advertising them that they were ill spoken of about *Lycurgus* his children, they repented themselves of that which they had done, and let them go: and verily *Democles* the scholar of *Theophrastus* justified them, and spake in their defence. Himself and some of his children were buried at the Cities charges, over and against the Temple of *Minerva Paonia*, within the Orchard or Grove of *Melanthin* the Philosopher: and found there be, even in these our dayes, certain tombes with the names of *Lycurgus* and his children written thereupon. But that which is the greatest thing that foundeth most to the praise of his Government, he raised the revenues of the Common-weal unto twelve hundred talents, whereas before they amounted but unto three-score. A little before he died, when he perceived death to approach, he caused himself to be carried into the Temple of *Cybele* the greatest mother of the gods, and into the Senate-house, desirous there to render an account of his whole administration of the Common-weal: but no man was so hardy as to come forth and charge him with any unjust and wrongful dealing, save onely *Menelachmus*: now after he had fully answered those imputations which he charged upon him, he was carried home again to his house, where he ended his dayes; reputed all his life time for a good and honest man, commended for his eloquence, and never condemned in any sute, notwithstanding many actions and accusations were framed against him.

Three

Three children he had by *Calisto*, the daughter of *Abron*, and sister to *Calanus*, the son also of *Abron*, of the burrough *Bata*, who was Treasurer of the camp during the wars that year wherein *Charondas* was Provolt: of this affinity and alliance, *Dinarchus* maketh mention, in that oration which he made against *Pasitus*. He left behind him these children, *Abron*, *Lycurgus*, and *Lycophron*; of whom *Abron* and *Lycurgus* died without issue; but *Abron* after he had with good reputation and credit, managed State matters, changed this life: and *Lycophron* having espoused *Calpimachia*, the daughter of *Philippus Axiensis*, begat a daughter named *Galesto*, married afterwards to *Cleombrotus*, the son of *Democrates*, an *Achæmanian*, who by her had a son named *Lycophron*, whom *Lycophron* the grand-father adopted for his own son; and he departed this life without children: after the decease of this *Lycophron*, *Callisto* was remarried unto *Socrates*, unto whom she bare a son, named *Symmachus*; who begat *Aristonymus* and of *Aristonymus* came *Charmides*, whose daughter was *Philippe*, and she bare a son, to wit, *Lysander Medius*, who became an interpreter also, one of the *Eumolpides*: of him and of *Timothea* the daughter of *Glauclus* descended *Laodamia* and *Medius*, who held the Priesthood of *Neptune Erechtheus*: *Philippa* also a daughter, who afterwards was a religious priestesse, devote to *Minerva*; for before time, had *Diocles* the Melitan espoused her, and she bare him a son named likewise *Diocles*, who was a Colonel of a regiment of footmen; and he took to wife *Hedile* the daughter of *Abron*, of whose body he begat *Philippide* and *Nicostrata*; and *Themistocles* the torch-bearer son of *Theophrastus* married *Nicostrata*, by whom he had *Theophrastus* and *Diocles*, notwithstanding he was Priest unto *Neptune Erechtheus*.

There be found of this Orators penning, fifteen orations. Crowned he was many times by the people: and ordained there were for him divers statues and images, whereof there was one all of brass, according to a publicke decree of the City, standing in the street *Ceranicum*, that year when *Anaxicrates* was Provolt under whom there was allowed unto himself and his son *Lycurgus*, as also to his eldest Nephew, table and diet in *Pyramneum*, by vertue of the same decree of the people: howbeit, after the decease of *Lycurgus*, *Lycophron* his eldest son made sure by law for this gift and donation. He pleaded also many times for matters of Religion, and accused *Autolycus* the Senator, and one of the high Court *Areopagus*, *Lysicles* also the Captain, and *Demades* the son of *Demius*, together with *Menelachmus*, and many others, whom he overthrew and caused to be condemned every one. Moreover, he called judiciously into question *Dipbilus*, for that he took away out of the mental nerves, those milt deposits or props which supported the weight of earth bearing upon them, by which means he enriched himself, directly against the Laws: and whereas the penalty of this crime was death, he caused him to be condemned. He distributed out of his goods, unto every Citizen of *Athenes* fifteen drachmes, or as some say, one *mina*, or pound of silver: for the total sum of his wealth amounted unto an hundred and threescor talents. He accused likewise *Aristogiton*, *Cleocrates*, and *Autolycus*, for that being no better then slaves, they carried themselves like men of free condition. This *Lycurgus* was furnished with this, that is to say, the black Stork: and men commonly would say to *Lycurgus*, *this*, like as to *Xenophon*, *Nycterus*, that is to say, the Howlet. The most ancient of this house, were descended from *Erechtheus*, the son of the Earth and of *Vulcane*; but the nearest, from *Lycomedes* and *Lycurgus*, whom the people honoured with publick funerals and obsequies. And this descent of their race, is drawn from those who were Priests of *Neptune*, and set down in a full and perfect table, which hangeth up in the Temple *Erechtheum*, and was painted by *Imenias* the *Chalcidian*; where also stand certain statues of wood, as well of *Lycurgus* as of his children, to wit, *Abron*, *Lycurgus* and *Lycophron* which sometimes were made by *Timarchus* and *Cephsidorus* the sons of *Praxiteles* the imager: he who set up an I dedicated the painted table before said, was *Abron*, unto whom by order of hereditary succession, fell the Priesthood, but he gave over his right thereto voluntarily unto his brother *Lycophron*: this is the reason that he is painted giving a three-forked mace unto his brother. Now this *Lycurgus* having caused to be engraven upon a square pillar, a brief of his whole administration of the common-weal, caused it to be planted just before the wrestling hall, for every man to see it that would. Neither could any man be found so hardy, as to accuse him for robbing the State, or inverting any thing to his own use. He proposed unto the people, that there should be a coronet given unto *Neoptolemus* the son of *Anicles*, and a statue besides, for that he undertook and promised to call (all over) the altar of *Apollo* in the market place, according to the commandment and direction of the oracle. He demanded also, that honour should be decreed for *Euanymus* the son of *Diotimus*, whose father was *Diopitkes*, in that year wherein *Cleofides* was Provolt.

## DEMOSTHENES. VIII.

*Demosthenes* the son of *Demosthenes* and of *Gleobule* the daughter of *Gylon*, of the lineage or tribe of *Peania*, being left an orphan by his father, at the age of seven years, together with a sister five years old; during the time of orphanage kept with his mother a widow, and went to school unto *Iscrates*, as some say, or as most men give out, to *Iseus* the *Chalcidian* the disciple of *Iscrates*, who lived in *Athenes*: he imitated *Thucydides* and *Plato* the Philosopher, in whose school there be that say he was first brought up: but as *Hegesias* the *Magnesian* reporteth, being advertised that *Callistratus* the son of *Empedocles*, an *Aphidian* and famous Orator, who had been Captain and Commander of a Troop of horsemen, and who had dedicated an altar to *Mercury* surnamed *Agoraios*, that is to say, the Speaker, was to make a solemn oration unto the people, craved leave of his Tutor and Schoolmaster, that he might go to hear him: and no sooner had he heard him speak, but he was in love with his eloquence.

S f 3

But



But as for this Orator, he heard him but a while, even until he left the City; for banished he was. Now after that he was departed into *Thrace*, by which time *Demosthenes* grew to be a young man, then began he to frequent the company of *Isocrates* and *Plato*: howbeit, afterwards he took home into his house *Isaeus*, whom he entertained the space of four years, and exercised himself in the imitation of his style, or (as *Cicero* reporteth in his treatise of Philosophy) he wrought for, that by the means of *Callias* the Syracusan, he recovered the Orations of *Zeus* the Amphipolitan, and by the help of *Charicles* the Charistitan, he got them also of *Alcidamus*, and those he gave himself wholly to imitate. But in process of time, when he was come to mans estate, and past a ward, seeing that his tutors and guardians allowed him not sufficiently out of his living and patrimony, he called them to account for their guardianship, that year wherein *Democritus* was Provost of *Athens*. Now three tutors or Governors he had, to wit *Aphobus*, *Theripides*, *Demophon* alias *Demea*, whom he charged more than the rest, being his uncle by the mothers side; he layed actions upon them of ten talents apiece, and so much he demanded of them by Law: he overthrew them all; but he could not come by ought of that wherein they were condemned: for neither recovered he money nor favour of the one or the other. \*\*\* When *Arifstophan* was now so aged, that he could not take pains nor attend to set out the solemn dances and shews, for which he was chosen commissary and overseer, he gave over his place, and *Demosthenes*, in his room was substituted the master of the said dances: and for that in the open theatre, as he was busie in his office about setting out and ordering the dances, *Medias* the Anagyratian, gave him a box of the ear with his fist, he sued him in an action of battery: howbeit, he gave over his suit for the sum of three thousand drachmes of silver, which *Medias* payed him. This is reported of him, that being a young man, he retired himself apart into a certain cave, where he gave himself unto his books; having caused his head to be shaven the half of it, because he might not go abroad to be seen, and to leave his book: also, that he lay upon a very straight and narrow bed, for that he would the sooner arise, and with more ease: and there he exercised and forced himself to frame his speech better: but for that he had an ill grace with him, ever as he spake, to shake and shrink up his shoulder, he remedied that, by sticking up a brooch or spit, or as some say, a dagger, to the floor over head, that for fear of pricking his shoulder, he might forget this evil custom that he had in his gesture: and according as he profited and proceeded forward in the art, he caused a mirror to be made just as big as himself, before which he used to declaim, that thereby he might observe the evil gestures or ill favoured faces that he made when he spake, and learn to reform and amend them; also, he used otherwise to go down to the water side, to the haven *Phalerum*, for to exercise himself in declaiming, even when the surging waves of the sea did beat upon the banks, to the end that he might at no time after be troubled nor put out and driven to an extasy, with the noise and clamour of the people when he should speak before them: but for that naturally he was short-winded, and his breath commonly failed him, he bestowed upon *Neoptolemus* a famous actor or stage-player, ten thousand drachmes of silver, to teach him for to pronounce long periods and sentences with one breath, and not taking his wind between.

When he began to enter into the management of the publike State, finding that the Citizens were divided into two factions; the one siding and taking part with King *Philip*; the other speaking and pleading still for their liberties and freedom, he chose to join with that which was opposit in all their doings unto *Philip*; and all his life time he continued counselling and perswading the people to succour those who were in danger to fall under the hands of *Philip*: communicating his counsels in the administration of State affairs, and devising evermore with *Hyperides*, *Nausicles*, *Polyeuctus*, and *Dionysius*; and therefore he drew into league and confederacy with the men of *Athens*, the *Thebans*, *Euboeans*, *Corinthians*, *Boeotians*, and many others besides. One day he chanced to be out and his memory to fail him, so that he was hissed at by the people in a great assembly of the City: for which disgrace he was out of heart, and ill appaid, inasmuch as in great discontentment he went home to his house; where by the way, *Eumenes* the Thracian, being now an ancient man, met with him, who cheered up *Demosthenes*, and comforted him all that he could: but most of all *Andronicus* the stage player; who said unto him: That his orations were as good as possibly might be, only he was wanting somewhat in action; and thereupon rehearsed certain places out of his oration, which he had delivered in that frequent assembly: unto whom *Demosthenes* gave good ear and credit, whereupon he betook himself unto *Andronicus*; inasmuch as afterwards when he was demanded the question which was the first point of eloquence, he answered, Action; which the second, he made answer, Action; and which was the third, he said, Action, still. Another time he put himself forth to speak in open audience of a great assembly, and was likewise whistled at, and driven out of countenance; for speaking some words that favoured too much of luty youthfulness; so that he was flouted by the comical Poets, *Antiphanes* and *Timocles*, who used to twit him with these termes:

Μὰ τὴν γῆν, καὶ ὕδρα, καὶ ποταμὸν, καὶ ἡ μέλας.

That is to say,

By the earth, by the fountains, by rivers, floods, and streams.

\* i. *Asclepiades*,  
\* ii. *Antiphanes*,  
\* iii. *Timocles*,  
\* iv. *Antiphanes*,  
\* v. *Timocles*,  
\* vi. *Antiphanes*,  
\* vii. *Timocles*,  
\* viii. *Antiphanes*,  
\* ix. *Timocles*,  
\* x. *Antiphanes*,  
\* xi. *Timocles*,  
\* xii. *Antiphanes*,  
\* xiii. *Timocles*,  
\* xiv. *Antiphanes*,  
\* xv. *Timocles*,  
\* xvi. *Antiphanes*,  
\* xvii. *Timocles*,  
\* xviii. *Antiphanes*,  
\* xix. *Timocles*,  
\* xx. *Antiphanes*,  
\* xxi. *Timocles*,  
\* xxii. *Antiphanes*,  
\* xxiii. *Timocles*,  
\* xxiv. *Antiphanes*,  
\* xxv. *Timocles*,  
\* xxvi. *Antiphanes*,  
\* xxvii. *Timocles*,  
\* xxviii. *Antiphanes*,  
\* xxix. *Timocles*,  
\* xxx. *Antiphanes*,  
\* xxxi. *Timocles*,  
\* xxxii. *Antiphanes*,  
\* xxxiii. *Timocles*,  
\* xxxiv. *Antiphanes*,  
\* xxxv. *Timocles*,  
\* xxxvi. *Antiphanes*,  
\* xxxvii. *Timocles*,  
\* xxxviii. *Antiphanes*,  
\* xxxix. *Timocles*,  
\* xl. *Antiphanes*,  
\* xli. *Timocles*,  
\* xlii. *Antiphanes*,  
\* xliiii. *Timocles*,  
\* xlv. *Antiphanes*,  
\* xlvi. *Timocles*,  
\* xlvii. *Antiphanes*,  
\* xlviii. *Timocles*,  
\* xlvix. *Antiphanes*,  
\* l. *Timocles*.

For having sworn in this manner before the people, he raised a stir and hurly-burly among them. He took his oath another time by the name of *Asclepius*, which he found also with accent in the \* second syllable; and although he did this upon error in *Prosodia*, yet he maintained and proved

proved that he had pronounced the word aright; for that *Asclepius* was *Ἀσκληπιός*, that is to say, a mild and gracious god: and for this manner of swearing was often times troubled; but after he had frequented the school of *Enbulator* the Milesian, and a Logician, he corrected and amended all. Being one day at the solemnity of the Olympian games, and hearing *Lamachus* the Tetrarch how he rehearsed an encomiastical oration in the praise of King *Philip*, and of *Alexander* his son; namely, how they invaded and over-ran the Thebans and Olynthians, he came forward, and standing close unto him, on the contrary side, alleged testimonies out of ancient Poets, importing the commendation of Thebans and Olynthians both, for the brave exploits by them achieved; which when *Lamachus* heard, he gave over and would not speak a word more, but slipped away as soon as he could out of the assembly. King *Philip* himself would say unto them who related unto him the contents and orations that he made against him: Certes, I believe verily, that if I had heard him with mine own ears pleading in this wise, I should have given the man my voice, and chosen him captain to make war upon my self. And much to the same purpose the said *Philip* was wont to liken the orations of *Demosthenes* unto soldiers, for the warlike force that appeared in them; but the speeches of *Isocrates* he compared to fencers or sword-players, for the delightful shew and flourish that they made.

Being now thirtyseven years old, counting from *Dexitheros* to *Callimachus* in the time of whose Provostship the Olynthians by their embassy required aid of the Athenians, for that they were fore plagued with the war that King *Philip* levied against them; he perswaded the people to send them succour: but in the year following, wherein *Plato* changed this life, King *Philip* utterly destroyed the Olynthians. *Xenophon* also the disciple of *Socrates*, had a knowledge of *Demosthenes*, either in his prime when he began to rise and grow up, or else in the very flour and best of his time; for *Xenophon* wrote his *Chronicles* as touching the acts and deeds of the Greeks, and specially of those affairs which passed about the time of the battle at *Mantineia*, or a little after, namely, in that year when *Charicles* was Provost; and *Demosthenes* somewhat before that, had given his tutors and guardians overthrow at the bar. When as *Æschines* upon his condemnation was fled toward *Athens*, there only in exile; *Demosthenes* being advertised thereof, made after him on horse-back; whereupon *Æschines* imagining that he should be taken prisoner, fell down at his feet, and covered his face, but *Demosthenes* willed him to arise and stand up, gave him comfortable words, and besides, put a talent of silver into his hands. He gave counsel unto the Athenians to entertain a certain number of mercenary soldiers, strangers in the isle of *Thasos*, and to this effect he failed thither as Captain with the charge of a great galley under his hand: He was chosen another time chief purveyor of corn, and being accused for demeaning himself baldly, and purloining the Cities money, he cleared himself and was acquitted. When *Philip* had forced the City *Elatis*, and was master of it, *Demosthenes* abandoned the said City, together with those who had fought in the battle of *Cheronea*; whereupon it is thought that he forsook his colours and fled; now as he made haste away, there chanced a bramble to take hold of his cassock behinde, whereat he turned back and laid unto the bramble: Sire my life and take my ransom. Upon his target he had for his mot or device. Good fortune. And verily he it was that made the Oration at the funerals of those who lost their lives in the said battle.

After this he applied his minde, and bent his chief care to the reparations of the City, and being chosen commissary for repairing the walls, he laid out of his own (besides the defraying of the Cities money) an hundred pounds of silver: over and above that, he gave ten thousand for to be employed in the setting out of shewes, games, and playes; which done, he embarked himself in a galley, and sailed up and down from coast to coast, for to levy money of the allies and confederates; for which good services he was crowned many times: first by the means and motion of *Demoteles*, *Aristonous*, and *Hyperides*; who propounded that he should be honoured with a coronet of gold, and last of all, at the instant sute of *Ctesiphon*: which decree was impeached and blamed, as contrary to the laws by *Dionysius* and *Æschines*: against whom he defended and maintained it so well, that he carried it clean away; so as his accuser had not the fifth part of the suffrages and voices of the people on his side.

Afterwards when *Alexander* was passed onward his voyage into *Asia*, and *Harpalus* fled into *Athens* with a great sum of money: at the first he would not suffer him to be entertained and kept safely; but after he was once arrived and set a land, that he had received of him a thousand good pieces of gold, called *Dariks*; then he changed his note and sung another song; for when the Athenians were minded to deliver the man into the hands of *Antipater*, he withheld them, and withal set down under his hand-writing, that his money was laid up safe in the Citadel; the summe whereof he had declared already unto the people, whereas *Harpalus* had specified it to be seven hundred and fifty talents or some what above, as saith *Philochorus*. But after this when *Harpalus* had broken prison, wherein he should have been kept, until some messenger and news came directly from *Alexander*, and was escaped and retired, as some say, to *Candie*, or as others, to *Tenarus* in *Laconia*; *Demosthenes* was called into question for corruption, bribery, and taking his money; for that he neither declared the just quantity and summe of coin that thither was brought, nor the negligence of those who had the custody of it and him: thus I say was he brought to his answer judicially by *Hyperides*, *Pytheus*, *Menekleus*, *Hymereus*, and *Patrocles*, who followed the sure foot hard, that they caused him to be condemned in the High Court and chamber of *Aristopagus*: and thus condemned he went into exile, being not able to pay five fold; for charged he was to have taken thirty talents;

talents: others say that he would not abide the issue of judgement, and therefore went voluntary before the day of trial into banishment. After this time the Athenians sent *Polyæchus* in embassy to the community of the Arcadians, for to divert and withdraw them from the league and confederacy to the Macedonians: but when *Polyæchus* could not persuade them to revolt; *Demosthenes* came upon them and shewed himself to second the motion, where he spake so effectually, that he prevailed with them: for which service he was highly admired, and thereby won such favour and reputation, that after a certain time, by virtue of a publick decree, he was called home again out of exile, and a galley was set out of purpose to bring him back to *Athens*: and the Athenians moreover ordained, that whereas he owed unto the State thirty talents, in which he was condemned, he should cause an altar to be built unto *Jupiter* the Saviour, in the port *Pyraeus*, and in so doing be held acquit and discharged. This decree was propounded by *Damon* the Phæzian his cousin German.

By this means he returned to the politick managing of affairs as before. Now when as *Antipater* was straightly besieged by the Greeks, and enclosed within the City *Linia*, whereupon the Athenians offered sacrifices for the good and joyfull tidings thereof, he chanced to let fall a word in talking with *Agæstratus*, a familiar friend of his, and to say that he was not of the same mind and opinion with other, as touching the State: For I know full well (quoth he) that the Greeks are skillfull and able both to run a short carriage, and good to make a skirmish for a spur and away; but to hold a long race, and to continue the war unto the end, they can never abide. But afterwards when *Antipater* had won *Pharalus*, and threatened the Athenians to lay siege unto their City, unless he would deliver into his hands those Orators who had inveighed against him: *Demosthenes* for fear of himself, left the City of *Athens*, and fled first into the Isle *Ægina*, for to put himself within the liberties and franchises of the temple or sanctuary, called *Æacium*: but afterwards being off-aid that he should be fetched out from thence by the eares, he passed over into *Calauria*: where having in elligence that the Athenians were resolved and had concluded to deliver those Orators, and himself principally among the rest; he rested as a poor distressed suppliant within the temple of *Neptune*: and when there came unto him thither *Archias* the pursuivant, surnamed *Phygadoneres*, that is to say, the hunter of Fugitives who was a disciple and sectary of *Anaximenes* the Philosopher, persuading him to arise, and that no doubt he should be reckoned one of the friends of *Antipater*; he answered thus: When you play a part in a tragedy, you cannot make me believe that you are the man whom you represent; no more shall you persuade me now to give ear unto your counsel: and when the other laid hands on him and would have drawn him forth by violence, those of the City would not suffer him; then said *Demosthenes* unto them: I fled not unto *Calabria* for my safety, and with any intention to save my life, but to convince the Macedonians of their impiety and violence, even against the gods; and with that he called for writing tables, and wrote this distichion, as *Isidore* the Magnesian, which the Athenians afterwards caused to be set as an Epigram over the statue:

*Had thy good heart Demosthenes,  
met with as good an hand:  
The Greeks of Macedonian sword,  
should never have had command.*

This image of his standeth neer unto the purpise or cloister, wherein is erected the altar of the twelve gods, and made it was by the hands of *Polyæchus*: but as some say, this was found written withal: *Demosthenes* to *Antipater* greeting, *Philochorus* saith, that he died of poison which he drank: but *Satyrus* the historiographer reporteth, that the pen was poisoned wherewith he began to write his Epistle, and chancing to put it into his mouth, so soon as ever he tasted thereof, died: *Strabo* writeth otherwise, namely that he standing in fear a long time of the Macedonians, was provided of poison, which he carried within a little ring or bracelet that he wore about the wrist of his arm: and there he again who say, that he killed himself by holding his wind so long, that he was overcome and stifled withal; last of all, others write that he carried a strong poison within the collet of his signet, whith he tasted, and died thereof, \*\*\* two and twenty.

When *King Philip* was dead, he came abroad wearing a fair and rich new robe, although but a while before he had buried his own daughter, foglad was he of the death of that Macedonian King. He aided the Thebians also when they warred with *Alexander*, and all other Greeks he encouraged as much as possibly he could at all times; and therefore *Alexander* after he had destroyed the City of *Thebes*, demanded of the Athenians for to have him, menacing them if they would not deliver him into his hands. And when the said King warred upon the Persians, and required of the Athenians their shipping, *Demosthenes* opposed himself and denied it: For who is able to say (quoth he) that he will not use the same shippes even against our selves that send them. He left behind him two sonnes by one wife, the daughter of one *Heliodorus* a principall Citizen. One daughter he had, who died before she was married, being but yet a young child. A sister also he had, who being married unto *Laches* the Leuconian his nephew or sisters sonne, bare *Demochares*, a valiant man in warre, and besides, for policy and eloquence inferior to none in his time. There is an image of his to be seen at this day, standing within the common hall of the City, called *Prytanæum*, on the right hand as men do enter in, and go toward the altar. The first man he was who made an oration to the people with a sword by his side girded over his robe: for in that habit it is

said, that he delivered a speech unto the Citizens, when *Antipater* came to demand their Orators: but afterwards, the Athenians both ordained allowance of diet in the *Prytanæum* for the kindred of *Demosthenes*, and also set up a statue for himself when he was dead, in the Market place; that very year when *Gorgias* was Provost, at the fute of *Demochares* his nephew or sisters son, who required those honours for his Uncle: yea, and afterwards, *Laches* the sonne of *Demochares* a *Leuconian*, made time for the like honours for himself, the year that *Pisistratus* was Provost, which was ten years after; namely: his statue for to stand in the market place, allowance of diet in the palace *Prytanæum*, as well for himself as for the eldest alwayes of his house and linage in every descent, with a privilegedge of the highest room or uppermost place at all solemn fights and games. And these decrees as touching them both, are registered, and to be seen engrossed upon record. As for the image of *Demochares*, wherof we have already spoken, it was transported into the Palace or Hall of the City named *Prytanæum*.

There be extant orations which be his indeed, to the number of threescore and five. Some say, that he lived a dissolute and riotous life, and that he would not stick to go in womans apparel, to banquet, to be one ordinarily in all masks and monimeries; whereupon he was surnamed *Batalus*: though others there are, who say that this was the name of his nourice, and that thereupon he was feared by way of flouting speech or nick-name. *Dioneges* the dogged Cynick, spied him one day in a Tavern; wherat *Demosthenes* was abashed, and retired more inward into the house: Nay (quoth *Dioneges* to him) the more you draw or shrink backward, the further still you go into the Tavern. The same *Dioneges* said to him upon a time, when he was disposed to scoff: That in words he was a Sythian, that is to say, a tough *Tartarian* and a brave Warrior; but in war, a fine and delicate surges of *Athen*. He took gold of *Ephialtes* also, being one of the Orators who went in embassy to the King of *Perisa*, and brought with him a great sum of money secretly to distribute among the Orators of *Athens*, to this end, that they might stir coals, and blow the fire, to kindle war against *Philip*: and it is said, that he for his part had at one clap of the King, three thousand daricks. He caused one *Anaxilus* of the City of *Orea*, to be apprehended, who had otherwise been his familiar friend; and being cast into prison, put him to be examined by torture, as a spie; and albeit he confessed naught, yet he sued out a writ or decree that he should be committed into the hands of the eleven executioners of justice. One day when he meant to make a speech in the full assembly of the people, they were not willing to hear him: Why (quoth he unto them) it is but a shorly tale that I purpose to tell unto you: which when they heard, they gave him audience willingly: and then began he in this manner: There was not long since (quoth he) a young man who hired an Ass in the time of Summer, from this City to *Megara*: now when it was noontime of the day, and the Sun exceeding hot, both the one and the other, as well the owner of the ass as he who hired him, would needs have the benefit of the ass shade, and stand under it, but they hindred and impeached one another: for the owner said that he had let to hire, his Ass, but not the shadow of him: the other again who hired him, pleaded that the Ass, shadow and all was in his power. Having thus begun his tale, he came down and went his way: the people then called him back, and prayed him to tell the tale out, and make an end thereof: Why my matters (quoth he) how is it, that you are so desirous that I should tel you a tale of the shadow of an Ass, and will not give me the hearing when I am to speak unto you of your affaires of great importance? *Polus* the famous actor and stage-player made his boast upon a time, that in two daies wherein he played his part, he had gotten a whole talent of silver: And I (quoth he) have gained five in one day, for holding my peace and keeping silence. His voice upon a time, when he made a speech unto the people, failed him: whereupon his audience being not well pleased, and him self somewhat troubled he said aloud unto them: You are to judge players by their pleasant and strong voice; but Orators by their good and grave sentences. *Epicles* seemed to upbraid and reproch him, for that he was always musing and premeditating: I would be ashamed (quoth he unto him) if being to speak before so great an assembly of people, I should come unprovided. It is written of him, that he never put out his lamp, that is to say, that he never ceased studying how to file and polish (as it were) his orations, until he was fifty years old. He said of himself, that he drank nothing but fair water. *Lysias* the Orator had knowledge of him: and *Isocrates* saw him to manage the affairs of State, until the battel of *Chæronæa*, yea, and some also of the Socraticall Orators. The most part of his orations he pronounced *ex tempore* and of a sudden, as if he had a ready and pregnant wit, and one who naturally was fited to speak. The first that ever propounded and put up a bill unto the people, that he should be crowned with a coronet of gold, was *Ariston*: as the Anagyratian the son of *Nicophanes*: and *Diondus* did second the motion with an oath.

## HYPERIDES. IX.

*Hyperides* the son of *Glaukipus*, who was the son of *Dionysius* of the burrough *Colytæa*, had a son who bare the name of his father *Glaukipus*, an Orator who composed certain orations, and he begat another Orator, named *Alphius*. He was at one time the scholar of *Plato* the Philosopher, of *Lycurgus* and of *Isocrates*. He dealt in the State at what time as *Alexander* the Great intended the affairs of Greece, and he crossed him as touching those captians which he demanded of the Athenians, as also about the Gallies which he required to have. He advised the people not to raise and discharge those souldiers which were entertained at *Amara*, who had for their captain, *Chares*,

\* How a  
speech this  
went a li  
tle before?  
I suppose  
this is fo  
sted in by  
some other

*Chares*, and whose friend particularly he was. He pleaded ordinarily at the first as an advocate for his fee; and was suspected to have received to have received part of that money with *Ephialtes* brought out of *Persia*. Chosen he was the Captain of one great Galley, at what time as King *Philip* went to lay siege unto the City *Bizantium*; and sent he was to aid the *Bizantines*. The very same year he took the charge of defraying the expenses of the solemn dances; whereas the rest of the Captains were exempt from all publick offices for that year. He passed a decree, that certain honours should be done unto *Demosthenes*; and when the said decrees was by *Diomedes* repealed, as made against the laws, and himself thereupon accused, yet found he was unguilty, and thereupon acquitted. Friend he was to *Demosthenes*, *Lysicles* and *Lycurgus*; howbeit, in this amity he continued not unto the end; for after that *Lysicles* and *Lycurgus* were dead, when *Demosthenes* was once called in question for taking money of *Harpalus*, he alone (for that his hands onely were free of bribery) was nominated and picked out from the rest, to frame an accusation against him, because they were all thought culpable in the same fault, and so he judiciously accused him; but himself was charged by *Aristogiton* for publishing acts contrary to the Laws, after the battel at *Cheronea*, namely; That all the inhabitants and dwellers in *Athens*, should be Burgeses of the City; that all slaves should manumitted and made free; that all sacred and holy reliques; that women and children should be bestowed within the Port or Haven *Piræum*: howbeit, absolved he was, and went cleer away. And when some there were who found fault with him; and marvelled how he should be so negligent and over-seen, as not to know so many laws which were directly opposite to the said decrees; he made this answer: If (quoth he) the arms of the *Macedonians* and the battel of *Cheronea*, had not dazzled and dimmed my sight, I had never written nor proposed such an edict. But certain it is, that after this, *Philip* being affrighted, gave the *Athenians* leave to take up the bodies of their dead that lay in the field, which before he had denied unto the heralds that came of purpose unto him out of *Lebadia*.

Afterwards, upon the defaulture at *Crannon*, when he was demanded by *Antipater*, and the people resolved to deliver him into his hands, he forsook the City, and fled into the Isle of *Ægina*, with other persons who likewise were condemned where meeting with *Demosthenes*, he desired him to hold him excused, for that he had by circumstance accused him. And when he minded to depart from thence, surprized he was by one *Archias* (named *Phygadechontes*, a man born in the City of *Thuria*, and who at the first was a professed stage-player, but then employed in the service and aid of *Antipater*: so he was apprehended perforce within the Temple of *Neptune*; notwithstanding he held the Image of the said god in his arms; and from thence brought to *Corinth* before *Antipater*; where being set upon the rack, and put to torture, he bit his tongue off with his own teeth, because he would not discover the secrets of the City, and so ended his dayes the ninth day of the month *Obolion*: howbeit, *Hemippos* saith, that as he went into *Macedonia*, he had his tongue cut out of his head, and his dead corps was cast forth unto the beasts of the field without sepulture: yet one *Alphimus* his cousin-germain, or as some say, the cousin of *Glaukippos* his son obtained licence (by the means of *Philostratus* a certain Physician) to take up his body, who burnt the same in a funeral fire; the ashes and bones whereof, he carried to *Athens* afterwards, among his kinsfolk and friends, contrary to the orders and decrees set down, both by the *Macedonians* and the *Athenians*: for by vertue thereof they were not only banished but interdicted, so as they might not be interred within their own Country. Others say, that he was carried unto the City *Chone* where others, where he died; and that his tongue was cut, and afterwards, himself murdered in manner aforesaid. Howbeit, his kinsmen and friends gathered up his bones when his corps was burnt, and buried them amongst his parents and progenitors before the gate called *Hippodæ*, according to *Hellodorus* hath recorded in the third book of his monuments. But his sepulchre at this day is quite demolished, and no token remaineth thereof to seen.

He had a singular name above all other Orators, for speaking before the people; inso-much, as some have ranged him even above *Demosthenes*. There go in his name, therefore and seventeen orations; of which, two and fifty are truly attributed unto him, and no more. Given he was exceeding much to the love of women, which was the cause that his drove his two son out of his house, and brought in thither *Myrrina* the most sumptuous and costly courtesan in those dayes: and yet in *Pyreum* he kept *Arifagora*, and at *Eleusis* (where his lands and possessions lay) he had another at command, namely, *Philetia* a *Thebaine* born, who cost him twenty pounds weight of silver. His ordinary walk was every day thorow the fish market. And when the famous Courtisan *Phryne* (whom he loved also) was called into question for Atheism and impiety, inquisition was made after him likewise; and so he was troubled with her and for her sake, as it should seem: for, so much he declareth himself in the beginning of his oration: now when she was at the very point to be condemned, he brought the woman forth in open Court before the judges, rent her clothes, and shewed unto them her bare breast; which the judges seeing to be so white and fair, in regard of her beauty very absolved and dismissed her.

He had very closely and secretly framed certain accusatory declarations against *Demosthenes*, yet so, as they came to light in this manner: for when *Hyperides* lay sick, it fortuned that *Demosthenes* came one day to his house for to visit him, where he found a book drawn full of articles against him; whereat when he was much offended, and took it in great indignation, *Hyperides* made him this answer: So long as you are my friend, this shall never hurt you; but if you become mine enemy, this

this shall be a curb to restrain you from enterprizing any thing prejudicial unto me. He put up a bill unto the people, that certain honours should be done unto *Jolas*, who gave unto *Alexander* the cup of poison. He sided with *Demosthenes*, and joined in the raising of the Lamiaack war, and made an admirable oration at the funerals of those who lost their lives therein. When King *Philip* was ready to embark and pass over into the Isle *Eubæa*, whereupon the *Athenians* were in great fear and perplexity, he gathered together in a small time a Fleet of fourty sail, by voluntary contribution, and was the first man who for himself and his son rigged and set forth two gallies of war. When there was a controversy in Law between the *Athenians* and *Delians* to be decided, unto whether of them appertained by right the Superintendence of the Temple at *Delos*, and that *Æschynus* was chosen to plead the cause, the counsel of *Æropagus* elected *Hyperides*; and his oration as touching this matter is at this day extant, entituled *The Delague oration*. Moreover, he went in embassage to *Rhodes*, where there arrived other Embassadors in the behalf of *Antipater*, whom they highly praised, as a good, milde, and gracious Prince: True it is (quoth *Hyperides* unto them again) I know well that he is good and gracious, but we have no need of him to be our Lord and Master how good and gracious were he. It is said, that in his orations he shewed no action nor gesture at all: his manner was onely to set down the case and lay open the matter plainly and simply, without troubling the judges any other-wise than with a naked narration. Sent he was likewise unto the *Elians* for to defend the cause of *Cælepus*, one of the champions at the sacred games, unto whom this imputation was laid, that by corruption he had carried away the prize, and indirectly obtained the victory. He opposed himself also against the gift which was ordained in the honour of *Phocion*, at the infant fete of *Midias* of *Anagyra*, the son of *Midias*, the year wherein *Xenius* was Provolt, the 27. day of the month of May; and in this cause he was cast and had the overthrow.

## DINARCHUS. X.

*Dinarchus* the son of *Socrates* or *Sofratus*, born as some think in the Country of *Attica*, or as others would have him, in *Corinth*, came to *Athens* very young, at what time as King *Alexander* the Great, passed with his Army into *Asia*; where he dwelt, and frequented the lecture of *Theophrastus*, who succeeded *Aristotle* in the Peripateticke school: he conversed also with *Demeitrus* the *Phalærian*, and took his time especially to enter into the administration of State affairs, after the death of *Antipater*, when the great Orators and States-men were some dead and made away, others banished and driven out of the City: and being besides friended and countenanced by *Cassanders*, he grew in short time to be exceeding rich, exalting and taking money for his orations, of those at whose request he composed them. He banded against the most renowned Orators in his time; not by putting himself forth to come in open place to speak before the people (for no gift nor grace he had therein) but by penning orations for those who made head against them. And namely when *Harpalus* had broken prison and was fled, he composed divers accusatory declarations against all such as were suspected to have taken money of him, and those he delivered into the hands of their accusers pronounced accordingly. Long time after, being accused himself to have communicated, conferred, and practised with *Antipater* and *Cassander*, about the time that the haven *Munichia* was surprised by *Antigonus* and *Demeitrus*, who placed there a garrison in that year when *Anaxicrates* was Provolt of the City, he sold most part of his goods, and made money, and when he had done, fled out of the way to *Chalcis*, where he lived as it were in exile the space will neer of 15. years; during which time, he gathered great riches, and became very wealthy, and so returned again to *Athens*, by the means of *Theophrastus*, who procured both him and other banished persons to be recalled and restored: he abode then in the house of one *Proxenus* his familiar friend; where being now very aged, and besides weak-sighted, he lost his gold that he had gotten together; and when *Proxenus* his ost would have given information thereof, and seemed to make inquisition, *Dinarchus* called him into question judicially for it; and this was the first time that ever he was known to speak & plead personally at the bar. This oration of his is now extant, and there are besides in mens hands threescore and four more acknowledged all to be his, and yet some of these are to be excepted, as namely, that against *Aristogiton*. He did imitate *Hyperides*, or as some think *Demosthenes* in regard of that pathetic spirit in moving affections, and the emphatical force with appeareth in his stile. Certainly in his figures and exornations he followeth him very evidently.

## Decrees proposed unto the people of Athens.

*Demeochares* the son of *Laches*, of the burrough *Leucon*, demandeth for *Demosthenes* the sonne of *Leontophanes* of the burrough of *Peania*, a statue of brass to be set up in the market place or common Hall of *Athens*; also allowance of diet in the palace *Pyrianæum*; and the first place or seat in all honourable assemblies for himself, and the eldest of his house in every descent

descent for ever; for that he the said *Demosthenes* hath alwaies been a benefactor to the City, and given counsel unto the people of *Athens*, in many of their honourable affairs to their behoof, so that he hath at all times exposed his goods to the service of the common-weal, and namely, of his libell and bountifull minde contributed eight talents of silver, and maintained one galley of war, at what time the people freed and delivered the isle *Eubœa*: and another, when captain *Cephalos* set out his voyage into *Hellepont*; as also a third when *Chares* and *Pabon* were sent as captains to *Byzantium* by the people. Item, for that with his own money he ransomed and redeemed many Citizens taken prisoners and captives in *Pydne*, *Metbone* and *Olynthus* by King *Phillip*. Item, for that he defraided at his own proper cost and charge, the publick plays and daunces when the tribe of the *Pandionides* failed to furnish the officers and wardens appointed thereto. Item, for that he armed many poor Citizens who had not wherewith to set themselves forth to the wars. Item, for that being chosen by the people one of the *Aediles* or *Commissaries*, for repairing the City walls, he laid out of his own purse to the value of three talents of silver; over and besides then thousand drachms which of his own money he employed, in casting of two trenches about *Pyreum*. Item, that after the disastrous battell of *Cheronea*, he gave out of his own stock one talent; and another to buy corn with all in time of a dearth and great famine. Item, for that by his effectual remonstrances, fair persuasions, holtsome counsels, and good demerits, he had induced the *Thebanes*, *Eubœans*, *Corinthians*, *Argians*, *Adians*, *Locrians*, *Bizantines*, and *Massilians*, to enter into a league as well offensive as defensive with the people of *Athens*. Item, for that he levied a power of ten thousand footmen well armed, and a thousand horsemen, over and above the contribution of monies, by the people and their allies. Item, for that being embassador, he had persuaded the associates and confederates of *Athens*, to make a contribution of money to the sum of five hundred talents and above, toward the wars. Item, for that he impeached the *Peloponnesians* for aiding King *Alexander* against the *Thebanes*; for which service he parted with his own silver, and went personally in embassy. As also in regard of many other good deserts, and worthy exploits by him achieved: in consideration likewise of much wife counsel and advice, which he hath given unto the people, and of his politick government and managing of State affairs, wherein he hath carried himself as well, yea and much better than any in his time: for the preservation of the liberty and maintenance of the authority of the people. Over and besides, in that he was banished out of his country by certain seditious usurpers, who for the time suppressed the authority of the people: and finally lost his life in *Calauria*, in the quarrel of the said people; and for the love and good will that he alwaies bare affectionately unto the commonalty of *Athens*, there being sent of purpose from *Antipater* certain fouldiers to apprehend him. Notwithstanding, which present danger wherein he stood, being now in the hands of his enemies, yet persilled he firm and fast in his hearty affection alwaies unto the people; in somuch as he never did any deed, nor let fall any word prejudiciall to his Country, or unbecoming the honour of the people, as much as he was unto his death. *Subscribed, that very year when Pytharatus was Provest.*

*Laches* the son of *Demochares*, of the borough *Leucon*, comendeth in free gift of the Senate and people of *Athens*, for *Demochares* the son of *Laches*, of the tribe or borough *Leucon*, one statue of brass to be erected in the market place: also his table and diet in the palace or City Hall *Pyriaeum* for himself, and for him that shall be the eldest of his house in every descent for ever; as also the privilege of precedence or first seat at all solemn fights and publick plaies: for that he hath alwaies been a benefactor and good counsellor unto the people of *Athens*, as having deserved well of the common-weal in these particulars; (as well in those things which he hath penned, proposed and negotiated in his embassy, as in the administration of common-weal, in that he hath caused the walls of the City to be built, made provision of harness and armor, as well offensive as defensive; of fix-bricks and engines of battery, and of artillery with shot to be discharged out of them; in that he hath well fortified the City during the wars with the *Boeotians* which continued for the space of four years: for which good service done, banished he was and chased out of the City by the tyrants, who oppressed the liberty and authority of the people: and in that being restored again and called home by an honourable decree of the said people, when *Diocles* was Provest, he was the first man who restrained the administration and management of those who made spare of their own goods, and sent embassages unto *Lysimachus*: in that also he levied for the good of the common-weal at one thirty talents, and at another a hundred talents of silver; in that he moved the people by a bill preferred unto them, for to send an embassy to King *Ptolemeus* in *Egypt*; by means whereof they that went that voyage, brought back with them fifty talents of silver for the people. Item, in that being sent embassador to *Antipater*, he received thereby twenty talents of silver, which he brought unto the people into the City of *Eleusis*, where he practised and persuaded with them to receive the same. Item, in that he suffered banishment, because he was a protector and defender of the popular State, never siding nor taking part with any faction of the usurpers; nor bearing Office or Magistracy in Common-weal, after that the said popular State was put down and abolished. Item, in that he only in his time, of all those who meddled in the affairs of State, never studied nor intended alteration, and to reduce his Country unto any another kind of Government, but popular. Item, in that by his politick counsel and administration he hath put in safety and security all judgements passed; all Laws enacted, all decrees concluded; yea and the goods and substance of all the *Athenians*: finally, in that he hath gone about and attempted nothing prejudiciall unto the popular Government, either in word or deed.

Lycophron

*Lycophron* the son of *Lycurgus*, of the Burrough or Commonalty of *Bute*, hath presented this request: That he might be allowed his diet in the Palace *Pyriaeum*, according to the free gift granted before time to his father *Lycurgus* by the people, in that year wherein *Anaxicrates* was Provest of the City, and the tribe *Antiochis* President of *Pyriaeum*: which *Stratocles* the son of *Eubulides*, of the City, and the tribe *Diomeis*, propounded it in this form: Forasmuch as *Lycurgus*, the son of *Lycophron* of *Bute*, hath received of his Ancestors (as it were) from hand to hand a certain hereditary love and affection to the people of *Athens*, and his Progenitors likewise, *Diomedes* and *Lycurgus*, both during their lives were esteemed and highly honored by the people; and after their death, had this honor done unto them in testimony of their virtue and valor, as to be entered at the publick charges of the City, in that conspicuous street called *Ceramicum*: considering also that *Lycurgus* himself (whiles he managed the affairs of the State) enacted many good and wholesome Laws for his Country, and being Treasurer-General of all the Cities Revenues, by the space of fifteen years, during that time, had the receipt and laying out of the Publick moneys, to the sum of eighteen thousand and nine hundred talents: and for that many private mens stocks were put into his hands upon trust, for the confidence they had in him, in regard of his fidelity; in regard also, that he hath disbursed and layed forth of his own moneys at sundry times, and upon divers occasions, for the benefit of the City and Commonalty, as much as amounteth in all, to six hundred and fifty talents: for that likewise in all his employments, having been ever found most trusty, just and loyal, and to carry himself as an honest man and good Citizen, he hath been many times crowned by the City: moreover, in this respect, that having been chosen by the people the Receiver of Finances, he gathered together a great mass of money, and brought the same into the common chest within the Citadel, and besides, provided ornaments for the goddess *Minerva*, to wit, images of victory all of beaten gold, vessels to carry in procession both of gold and silver, besides other jewels of fine gold for the service and worship of the said goddess, and moneys, to the number of one hundred *Canephora*; that is to say, Virgins carrying paniers or baskets with sacred *Rhiques* upon their heads. Item, for that being elected Commissary for the Munitions and Provisions necessary for the wars, he brought into the Citadel a great number of Armours and Weapons, and among the rest, fifty thousand shot, rigged and set afloat four hundred Gallies, some new built, others repaired and trimmed: over and besides, for that finding certain of the City works imperfect, to wit, the Arsenal, the Armory and the Theatre of *Bacchus*, he caused them to be made up, and withal, finished both the Cirque or running place *Panathenaeum*, and also the empaled Park for publick exercise, and built the *Lycium* likewise, and adorned the City with many fair buildings and publick edifices: whereas also, King *Alexander* the great, having already subdued all *Asia*, and intending generally to be Commander over all *Greece*, demanded to have *Lycurgus* delivered up into his hands, for that he only stood in his way, and crossed his designs, the people would not deliver him for any fear they had of *Alexander*: and for that being oft times called judicially to his answer, and to render an account of his Government and Administration in a free City, and government of a popular State, he was always found innocent and unreprouvable, not tainted with any bribery, corrupted with corruption and taking gifts for to pervert justice all his life time. To the end therefore, that all men might know that they who are well affected to the maintenance of liberty and popular Government be highly accounted of by the people whiles they live, and that after their death the City is willing to render unto them immortal thanks; in a good and happy hour, let it be ordained by the people, that *Lycurgus* the son of *Lycophron* of *Bute*, be honored for his vertue and righteousness; and that the people erect his statue all of brass in the Market-Place, unless it be in some place where the trade expressly forbiddeth it to stand. Item, that there be allowance of diet in the *Pyriaeum*, to the eldest of his house in every descent for ever. Also, that the Decrees by him proposed, shall be ratified and engroffed by the publick Notary of the City, yea, and engraven in pillars of stone, and set up in the Citadel neer unto the offerings consecrated unto the goddess *Minerva*: and for the engraving of the said pillars, the treasury of the City shall defray fifty drachmes of silver out of those moneys which are allowed for the City decrees.

### Of three sorts of Government, Monarchy, Democracy and Oligarchy.

AS I devised with my self, and purposed to put question to for to be decided by this judicious company, a matter which yesterday I discoursed of before you; me thought that I heard politick vertue in a true vision indeed (and not in the vain illusion of a dream) thus to say unto me:

*The Golden base and ground that now belongs  
Unto our work, is layed with sacred songs.*

I have already layed the foundation of a Discourse, perswading and exhorting to the management of State affairs, if now we can proceed to build upon it the Doctrine fit for such an exhortation, which is a due debt unto *Athens*: for meet it is and requisite, that after a man hath received an admonition inciting him to deal in Politick matter of common-weal,

T c

there

there should consequently be given unto him and founded in his ears the precepts of policy; the which he observing and following, may (as much as lieth in man to perform) be profitable to the commonwealth; and withal, in the mean time manage his own private business, both in safety, and also with such honor as is just and meet for him.

First and foremost therefore, we are to consider and discourse of one point; which as it is a very material precedent unto all that shall be said, so it dependeth, and is necessarily to be inferred of that which hath been delivered already; namely, what manner of policy and government is best: for as there be many sort of lives in particular men; so there are of people in general: and the life of a people or commonwealth, is the Politick State and Government thereof. Necessary it is therefore, that we declare which is simply the best; that a man of State may chuse it from among the rest; or at leastwise, if that be impossible, take that which most resembleth the best. Now there is one signification of this word *Politia*, that is to say, Policy, which is as much as Burgeoisie, that is to say, the indowment and enjoying of the right and priviledges of a City: as for example, when we say that the Megarians (by a publike Ordinance of their City) gave unto *Alexander* the great, their *Politia*, that is to say, their Burgeoisie: and when he seemed to laugh at this offer and grant of theirs, they made him answer again, That they had never decreed this honor to any, but first to *Hercules*, and now to himself: which speech of theirs he so admired, that he accepted of their gift, reputing it honorable, because it was so rare. Also the life of a Politick person, who administreth State-affairs, is called Policy; according to which sense and acceptation of the word, we commend the Policy of *Pericles* and *Bias*, that is to say, their manner of Government; but contrariwise, we discommend that of *Hippias* and *Cleon*. Moreover, others there be, who call some one worthy and memorable deed tending to the good of the common-wealth, by the name of Policy: as for example, the contribution of money, the final ending and dissolution of war, and the publishing or declaration of some notable decree: in which signification we use commonly to say, Such a man hath this day been the author of a good Policy, if haply he have done and effected some worthy things, importing the weal-publick. Once and above all these significations before specified, there is another; namely, the order and state of a City and Commonwealthe, by which are managed and administrated all the affairs thereof: and according to this sense we say, there be three sorts of Politicks, Monarchy; that is to say, Royalty, that is to say, Signory; and Democracy, that is to say, Popular Authority: of which three *Hierodotus* maketh mention in the third book of his History, comparing them together; and it seemeth that these be the most general, for all others be (as it were) the depravations and corruptions of these, according to want or excess, like as it falleth out in accords and consonances of musick, when the first and principal strings or notes are stretched over high, or let down to low: and so he divided these three Governments among those Nations which had the largest Empire, and greatest Dominion: for the Persians held the Monarchy and absolute Royalty, for that their King had plenary power in all things, not (subject to be called unto account by any person whatsoever. The Spartans or Lacedæmonians, maintained a grave and severe counsel, consisting of some few, and those the best and principal personages of the City, who managed and dispatched all affairs. The Athenians embraced a popular Government, living under their own laws, free, and without all mixture whatsoever. Now of these States and Governments, when they be faulty and out of order, the transgressions, exorbitations and excesses, be called Tyrannies, torridly oppressions of the mightier, and unbridled rule, or licentious misrule rather of the multitude: to wit, when the Prince in his absolute Royalty taketh upon him insolent pride, to commit wrong and outrage unto whom he list: when some few Senators, or Rulers, in their Signory enter into an arrogant and presumptuous Lordliness, whereby they contemn and oppress all others: also when the multitude in their popular isonomy, run into Anarchy, unruleines, disobedience, tearms of equality, and unmeasurable liberty: and in one word, when all these sorts of Government fall to rash and witless folly: like as therefore a skilful and harmonical Musician can make use of all kinde of instruments, framing and accommodating himself by art and cunning unto every one, striking each one according as he knoweth the quality and nature thereof, to give the sweetest and most pleasant sound: howbeit, if he follow the counsel of *Plato*, will pass by the Fiddels, Lute-becks, Dulcimers, the many stinged Psalteries or Virginals, the Vials likewise and the triangled Harps, preferring before all others the Lute and Citheron or Bandora: even so a good Politician, will handle with dexterity the Laconick Signory, and manage well enough *Lycargus* his Oligarchy, applying and fitting his companions in Government, who have equal authority unto himself, gently drawing and reducing them by little and little unto the bent of his bow; fensibly, he will carry himself with wisdom and discretion in the popular State, as if he had to deal with an instrument of many sounds, and as many strings, letting down and remitting some matters, setting up and extending other things in the Government, as he seeth his time, giving ease and liberty, and again, carrying a hard hand and a rigorous, as one who knoweth when to resist and withstand stoutly any proceedings: But if he were put to his choice, among these musickal instruments, as it were, of a politick Government; certes, if he be ruled by *Plato*, he would never chuse any other but that Regal and Princely Monarchie, which only is able to maintain that direct, absolute and\* lofty note (indeed) of vertue, and not suffer it either by force of necessity, or upon affectionate favor and grace, to frame itself to gain and profit; for other Governments after a sort as they be ruled by a Politician, so they rule him, and as he leadeth them, so they carry him, for that he hath no assured power over those, from whom he hath his authority, but oftentimes he is enforced to exclaim and resound these verses of *Echylus*

*Echylus* the Poet, which *Demetrius Poliorcetes* was wont to alledge unto Fortune, after that he had lost his Kingdom:

*Thou mad'st me bad and burgen freſh  
at first, but now at last,  
Thou seem'st my lovely bloom to burn,  
and beauty for to blast.*

## A Breviary of the Comparison between *Aristophanes* and *Menander*.

### The Summary.

He preferreth *Menander* an excellent Comical Poet, in all respects before *Aristophanes*, who is here described and depainted in his colours. Then examineth he in particular, what he had said before in generall. He considereth the stile, disposition, uniformity, and artificial contriving of *Menanders* Comedies, having that *Aristophanes* in comparison of him, was no better then a counterfeited cunzeener, a crafty and prying companion, ignorant, audacious, and intollerable unto all: having written his Comedies not to be read of any honest men, but only for lewd and dissolute persons.

## A Breviary of the Comparison between *Aristophanes* and *Menander*.

To speak in general, and summarily, he preferreth *Menander* by many degrees before *Aristophanes*; but to come unto particularities, see what he addeth moreover: The stile of *Aristophanes*, and his manner of language is unfavoury and unpleasant, counterfeited, base and mechanical, whereas in *Menander* there is no such thing to be seen. And verily a gross, ignorant, and unlettered Idiot may take pleasure and be delighted in *Aristophanes* his speeches; but a learned man will soon be displeased and discontented therewith. I mean, his *Antibetas* or opposite terms; his clauses ending alike, and his allusions to names, which *Menander* useth but now and then to good purpose, and with great reason and judgement, being therein very spare, wary, and religious: whereas the other ever and anon abuseth them hand over head, and out of season, without all grace or wit to commend them. Praised he is (forsooth) for these cold jests; namely, when he saith, That he had drenched over head and ears the Treasurers, who were not, *ταπιδας*, but *καπιδας*. Also, this fellow doth breath out, either malice or slanderous calumination. Again, here is one that liveth for his belly, his curals and his guts. Likewise, even for very laughter, I shall break out a laughing. Moreover, what shall I do to thee thou unhappy damned pitcher, and banished? fensibly, you women, here I shall make you wilde and savage evils, like as I am my self, who have been fed among wilde and savage wores: but these curled tresses and frised hairs surely have devoured my breast: lastly,

*Come bring him hither his target round,  
with Gorgons hideous head:  
But give me here my cake as round,  
as buckler in his hand.*

Besides many other bald jests of the like sort: for there is in the composition and texture of his words, that which is Tragical and Comical both: proud and insolent; base also and lowly, dark and mystical, and anon plain and familiar; swelled, pufft up and lofty; but afterwards, vanity, lightness, and foolishness, enough to overturn a mans stomach. Now there being in his writings such diversity, difference, and dissimilitude; yet giveth not to a King, a high and lofty language: to an Orator, eloquent and pithy speech; to a woman, a plain and simple tongue; to an ignorant and unlettered Commoner, base and lowly words; to a busie Barrister, or pragmaticall Merchant, shrewd and odious terms: but he alloteth unto every person at a venture whatsoever attributes come first to hand; so that a man cannot know nor discern by any speech, whether he be a son or a father that speaketh, a Country Peasant or a Citizen; a god or an old woman, or some demi god: whereas the stile and phrase of *Menander* is, so uniform, so consonant, and like it self, that howsoever it be conversant in sundry manners, and divers passions, howsoever it be accommodate to all sorts of persons, yet it stretcheth still one and the same, and to keep the semblance in common and familiar words, and such as are always in use. And if perhaps otherwhiles according to the matter and present occasion offered, there be required some extraordinary narration or strange bruit and unexpected noise; he setteth a wofe and openeth (as it were) all the holes of his pipe; but presently and with a seemly grace he reduceth

and composeth his voice to the natural state again. Now albeit there be in all Arts and Mysteries excellent Artisans; yet was there never known any Shoemaker to make a shoe; nor Artificer a mask or vifour; nor Taylor a robe or garment, that would fit at one time a man and woman both; a young youth, an aged person, and a varlet: but *Menander* hath so framed his phrase and speech, that proportionate it is and suitable to all nature and fizes, to each state and condition, yea, and to every age, and this was he able to perform and do in his very youth, when he began to write: for then dyed he, when he entred into his flower and best time, either of composing or setting out and publishing his works at such an age, when as the fülle (as *Aristotle* saith) is come to the very growth and height in them who make profession to pen or write ought. And if a man would consider the first Comedies of *Menander* making, and confer them with those in the midst, and which he made in his latter end, a man thereby may soon know how much he would have added to these in other, if he had lived longer: for that of them who put forth their works to be seen and read, some write to the capacity of the multitude and vulgar sort, others for men of mark and understanding; and hardly is a man able to name the Author, who can skill how to observe that which is meet and befitting two kinds of people. As for *Aristophanes* he is neither pleasing unto the common sort, nor acceptable to men of worth and judgement; but his poeie may be likened unto an old, stale, and overworn Whore, who forsooth would counterfeit and honest married wife; for as the people cannot endure his arrogance, so men of account and quality, detest his intemperance and maliciousness; whereas *Menander* on the contrary side, with a good and seemly grace, satisfieth and contenteth all, serving as a Lecture, a knowledge and exercise common to Theaters, Schools, Sports, Pastimes, Feasts, and Bankets, shewing thereby, that it poeie is one of the goodliest things that ever *Greece* brought forth; making it appear what a gay master, and how puiſſant is the dexterity of speech and language, passing throughout, with an attractive grace, which it is impossible to escape, ravishing and winning every mans ear and understanding, who hath the knowledge of the Greek tongue. For wherefore should a learned man take pains to go unto the Theater, but for *Menander* sake? when are the Theaters frequented and full of great Clerks, but when there is a masked show before of acting his Comedies? And at Banquets, for whom doth the table make room, or *Bacchus* give place more justly then for *Menander*? And as for Philosophers, great Scholars and Students, like as Painters when they have wearied their eyes with looking upon freshly, lively and bright colours, turn them to those that are verdant and green; as namely, upon herbs and flowers for to recreate and refresh their sight; even so *Menander* is he who entertained their minds and spirits (as it were) in a fair meadow full of lovely and pleasant flowers, where their itshade, fresh and cool air, with milde and comfortable winds. What is the reason that the City of *Athena* at this day is furnished with many singular Actors and Players of Comedies? even because the Comedies of *Menander* are so full of many graces and pleasant conceits, so favyor, as if they sprang forth of the very sea, out of which *Venus* herself was born: whereas the conceits and jests of *Aristophanes* are bitter and sharp withal, carrying with them a mordicative quality which doth bite, sting and exacerate where-soever they light. And verily, I wot not wherein lieth that lively dexterity which is so highly commended in him; whether in his words and phrases, or in the personages and actors: Certain, those things which he doth imitate and counterfeit, encline always to the worse part: his cunning casts and conveyances are nothing civil and gentle, but shrewd and malicious: the rusticity in clowns that he resembleth, is not natural, but affected and foolish: his merry jests to move laughter, are nothing jocund, but rather ridiculous, and to be derided: his amorous parts be not lovely and delectable, but wanton and dissolute. In sum, it seemeth this man wrote not his poeie to be read of any honest and sober person; for his filthy and lascivious terms are meet for lecherous folk, and those which are given over to all looseness, like as his bitter and spiteful speeches, for envious and malicious persons.

## Narrations of Love.

### The Summary.

IN this Discourse, Plutarch relateth five Tragical Histories, which shew the pittifull accidents that befall certain persons transported with the inordinate and irregular affection of Love; leaving thereby unto the Reader a fair and clear mirror wherein to behold the judgements of God upon those that abandon themselves to be carried away by intemperance and looseness.

## Narrations of Love.

IN the City *Alia*, situate within *Boetia*, there was sometime a young maiden of excellent beauty, named *Aristoclea*, and the daughter she was of *Theophanes*; and two young Gentlemen there were, that made suit unto her in way of marriage, to wit, *Straton* an Orchomenian, & *Callisthenes* of *Alia* as before said. Now was *Straton* the richer of the twain, & far more enamored of the damsel; for seen he had when she walked herself in the fountain of *Ereyn*, which is in *Lebadia*, against the time that she was to

carry

carry in procession to *Jupiter*, surnamed King, a sacred Panier, as the manner was of the *Canehora* to do. But *Callisthenes* had the vantage of him, and was deeper in love, for that he was besides near of his unto the Virgin. So *Theophanes* her father being doubtful what to do (for he stood in fear of *Straton*, as one, who for wealth and noble parentage went well-near beyond all the *Boetians*) resolved at length to refer the choice unto the Oracle of *Jupiter Trophonius*: but *Straton*, who was born in hand by those of the house about *Aristoclea*, that he inclined more unto him, labored earnestly, that the matron might be put unto the election of the Damsel herself: Whereupon, when *Theophanes* the father demanded of her in the face of the world, whom the loved better, and would chuse to be her husband, she preferred *Callisthenes*: whereas *Straton* shewed himself immediately not a little discontented for this repulse and disgrace; but two days after, he came unto *Theophanes* and *Callisthenes*, pretending, and saying, that he would not fall out with them, but was desirous still of their good favor and friendship: however his ill fortune had envied him the marriage of the young Virgin. They approving well of this speech, and taking his words in very good part, invited him as a guest to the wedding-feast: and while, he provided himself of a good number of his friends, and besides, no small troop of servants, whom he disposed secretly in their houses here and there, against the time that this maiden (according to the custom and manner of the Countrey) should go down to a certain fountain named *Cistoclea*, thence to sacrifice unto the Nymphs before her marriage day: now as she passed by, those who lay in ambush came all running forth from every side, and seized upon her body, but *Straton* himself principally, who drew and haled the Damsel unto him as hard as he could: *Callisthenes* again on the other side for his part (as became him) held her fast, and so did they about him: thus the silly maiden was rugged and pulled to and fro so long between them, that before they were aware, dead she was among them in their hands: upon which strange occurrence, what became of *Callisthenes*, it is not known, whether he presently made away himself, or fled into voluntary exile; for he was no more seen: as for *Straton*, in the very light of all men, there in the place, he killed himself upon the very body of the disposed Virgin.

2. There was one named *Phidon* a Peloponnesian, affixing the signory of all Peloponnesus, and being desirous that the City of *Argos* his native seat should be Lady over all others, layed an ambush for the Corinthians, to intrap them: for he sent an embassage unto *Corinth*, to demand a levy of a thousand young men, that were the lustiest and most valorous Gallants of the whole City. The Corinthians sent them accordingly, under the conduct of one of their Captains, named *Dexander*. Now the purpose of this *Phidon* was, to set upon this troop, and kill them every one, to the end that he might thereby enfeeble the Corinthians, and make the City serve his own turn (as a strong Bulwark most commodiously feared) to command and subdue all Peloponnesus. This design of his he communicated unto certain of his friends for to be put in execution accordingly; among whom there was one named *Abron*, who being a familiar friend unto *Dexander*, revealed unto him the conspiracy: Whereupon the said Regiment of a thousand young men (before they were charged by the said ambush) raised themselves, and recovered *Corinth* in safety. Then *Phidon* bestirred himself to find out the man who had thus betrayed and discovered his plot: which *Abron* fearing, withdrew himself to *Corinth*, taking with him his wife, children, and his whole family, where he settled and remained in a Village named *Melissa*, belonging to the Territory of that City: There begat he a boy whom of the very place which he inhabited, he named *Melissus*; and this *Melissus* in process of time had a son of his own, called *Alaon*, who proved the most beautiful, and withal, the modestest lad of all other youths and springals of his age; in regard whereof, many there were enamored of him; but among the rest, one especially, named *Archias*, descended lineally from the noble race of *Hercules*, and for wealth, credit, and authority, the greatest person in all *Corinth*. This *Archias*, seeing that by no fair means and persuasions he could prevail with young *Alaon*, and win his love, resolved with himself to use violence, and forcibly to ravish and carry away this fair Boy: so he came upon a time (as it were) to make merry, unto the house of *Melissus* his father, accompanied with a great train of friends, and attended upon with a good Troop of his own household-servants, where he gave the attempt to have away the Boy by force: but the father with his friends made resistance, the neighbors also came forth to rescue, and did all what they could, to hold and keep the youth with them: but what with the one side, and what with the other, poor *Alaon* was so pulled and tugged, that between them he lost his life; which done, all the rest went their ways and departed; but *Melissus* the father brought the dead corpse of his child into the Market-place of the Corinthians, presented it there unto them, and demanded justice to be done upon those who had committed this foul outrage. The Corinthians made no greater a matter of it, but only shewed, that they were sorry for his mishap; and so he returned home as he came without effect, attending and waiting for the solemn Assembly at the Isthmick-games; where being mounted up to the top of *Neptunes* Temple, he cried out against the whole race of the *Bacchiads*, and withal, rehearsed by way of commemoration, the beneficence of his father *Abron* unto them, and when he had called for vengeance unto the gods, he threw himself down headlong among the Rocks, and brake his neck. Not long after there fell out to be a great drought, and the City was fore visited with famine, inso much as the Corinthians sent unto the Oracle, for to know by what means they might be delivered from this calamity: Unto whom the God made this answer, That the wrath of *Neptune* was the cause of all their misery, who would by no means be appeased until they had revenged *Alaons* death: which *Archias* hearing (who was himself one deputed to this embassage)

T t t 3

basage)



ballage he was not willing to return again to *Corimb*, but crossed over the seas into *Sicily*, where he founded and built the City *Syracusa*, and there he begat two daughters, *Orygia* and *Syracusa*; but in the end was himself treacherously murdered by one *Telephus*, whom in his youth he had abused as his minion, and who having the conduct of a ship had sailed with him into *Sicily*.

A poor man named *Scedafus* who dwelt in *Leutira*, a village within the Territory of the Thebians, had two daughters, the name of the one was *Hippe*, and of the other *Adiletia*, or as some write, *cleid* they were, *Theano* and *Enippe*. Now this *Scedafus* was a bounteous and kind person, yea, and a good fellow in his house, and courteous to all strangers, notwithstanding he had but small store of goods about him. So therefornto to visit him two young men of *Sparta*, whom he friendly and lovingly entertained; who being fallen into fancy with his two daughters, had thus much power yet of themselves, that in regard of their father *Scedafus*, and his kindness unto them, they attempted nothing prejudicial unto the honest pudicity of the virgins for that time; but the next morning took their leave, and went directly toward the City of *Delphos*, unto the Oracle of *Apollon Pythius*, for to that purpose expressly took they this journey and pilgrimage: after that they had consulted with the God about such matters as they came for, they returned back again into their own Country; and as they passed thorough *Baotia*, took *Scedafus* house by the way, there for to lodge; who at that time was not at *Leutira*, but gone forth: howbeit his daughters according to their courtous bringing up, and their usual manner of entertainment, received these two guests into the house, who seeing their opportunity, and that they were alone, forced and deflowered the filly maidens: and after this deed, setting them exceedingly offended and angry for this villany offered unto them, so as by no means they would be appeased, they proceeded farther, and murdered them both; and when they had so done, threw them into a certain blinde pit, and so departed. *Scedafus* being returned home, found all things else in his house safe and found as he left them, only his two daughters he could not meet with, neither wist he what to say or do, until such time as a Bitch that he had begun to whine and complain, running one while to him, and another while training him as it were to the pit side, whereupon at length, he suspected that which was, and so drew forth the dead bodies of his two daughters; understanding moreover by his neighbors, that the day before they had seen going into his house those two young men of *Lacedemon*, who not long before had been lodged with him; he doubted presently that they were those who had committed this crime, and namely, when he called to minde that the first time they came, they did nothing but praise the maidens, saying, That they reputed them most happy, whose fortune should be to espouse them for their wives. Well, to *Lacedemon* he went, for to confer with the *Ephori* about this matter; and by that time that he entered within the Territory of *Argos*, he was benighted, so that he took up his lodging in a common Inn or Hostelry; within which he found another poor old man, born in the City *Oreum*, within the Province *Hesfira*, whom when *Scedafus* heard to sigh and groan grievously, yea and to fall a cursing of the Lacedemonians, he demanded, what the Lacedemonians had done unto him, that he feared thus against them; the old man set tale an end, and said, That a subject he was of the Spartans, and that when one *Aristodemus* was sent as Governor from the State of *Sparta*, into the City *Oreum*, he had dealt very cruelly, and committed many outrages and enormities: For being (quoth he) wantonly fallen in love with a son of mine, and seeing that he would not frame nor be induced to satisfy his will, he assayed to enforce him, and by violence to hale him out of the publike wrestling place, where he exercised himself with other his kins and companions: The Warden of the exercises impeached the said Governor, with the assistance of many young men, who ran into the rescue, in such sort, as for that present *Aristodemus* retired without effect; but the next morning having set out and manned a Galley of purpose, he came with a second charge, and carried away my child; and no sooner was he rowed from *Oreum*, to the other side of the water, but he offered to abuse his body; which when the youth would in no wise abide, nor yield unto, he made no more ado but cut his throat, and killed him outright in the place, which done, he returned back to *Oreum*, where he feasted his friends, and made great cheer: This accident was I soon advertised of (quoth the old man) whereupon I went and performed the last duty unto my sons; and solemnized his funeral; and so immediately put my self upon my journey toward *Sparta*, where I complained unto the *Ephori*, or Lords Controulers, declaring unto them the whole fact, but they gave no ear unto me, nor made any reckoning of my grievance. *Scedafus* hearing this tale, was ill apaid and troubled in his minde, imagining that the Spartans would make as little account of him; and therewith to requite his tale, related for his part likewise unto the stranger, his own case; who thereupon gave him counsel, not so much as once to go unto the *Ephori*, but to return immediately back unto *Baotia*, and to erect a Tomb for his two daughters. Howbeit, *Scedafus* would not be ruled by him, but held on his journey forward to *Sparta*, and opened his grief unto the Lords Controulers before said; and when he saw that they took small heed of his words, he addressed himself to the Kings of *Sparta*; yea, and afterwards to some particular Burgesses of the City, unto whom he declared the fact, and bewailed his own infortunity. But seeing that all bootred him, he ran up and down the streets of the City, stretching forth his hands up to heaven, and to the Sun, and stamping upon the ground with his feet, calling upon the furies of hel to be revenged, and at last killed himself. But in process of time the Lacedemonians paid dearly for this their injustice: for when they were grown to that greatness, that they commanded all *Greece*, and had planned their Garisons in every City; first *Eparinondas* the Theban cut the throats of those Souldiers who lay in Garrison at *Thebes*; whereupon the Lacedemonians made war upon the Thebanes, who went out with a power

power to encounter them as far as to the village of *Leutira*, taking that place for a good pretage unto them; for that before time they had been there delivered out of servitude, what time as *Amphydion* chased by *Sibinelus*, fled and retired himself unto the City of *Thebes*; where finding them subdued by the Chalcidians, and made their tributaries: After he had slain *Chalcodon* the King of the Etheans, he taxed the Thebanes of the tribute which they before had paid. So it foraged, that the Lacedemonians were discomfited and defeated, near unto the very same Monument or Tomb of the said two daughters of *Scedafus*. It is reported moreover, that a little before this battle, *Scedafus* appeared in a vision or dream unto *Pelopidas*, one of the Captains of the Theban Army, who had been altogether discouraged with certain signs and foretokens, which he judged and interpreted to portend ill; whom *Scedafus* willed to take a good heart, for that the Lacedemonians were thither come, for to suffer that punishment which they owed to him and his daughters; advising him withal, the day before he encountered with the Lacedemonians, to sacrifice a young white fole or colt, which he should finde ready even before the Sepulchre of his two daughters. And then *Pelopidas*, whiles the enemies lay yet encamped at *Tegea*, sent before unto *Leutira*, for to enquire of the said Tomb; and being informed thereof by the inhabitants of the Country, advanced forward boldly with his Army, and won the field.

A Phocian, a Boeotian born (for descended he was from *Glifias*) had a daughter named *Callirhoe*, a maiden of singular beauty, and surpassing honesty and sobriety withal. So there were to the number of thirty young Gentlemen, the noblest and best reputed of all *Baotia*, who were all suiters unto her in the way of marriage. But *Phocus* her father made always some delay or other, and found means to put off still from day to day, as fearing lest he should be forced. At last seeing how he was overpeevish with these insistant wooers: he requested them to defer the election of him that should be her husband unto the Oracle of *Apollon*. The young men taking indignation at these words and answer of his, fell upon him, and flew him: but in this affray and tumult, the young maiden escaped, and ran thorough the fields into the Country: but the young lusty suiters made after and pursued her; and the lighting upon certain husbandmen, who were laying together and piling up of wheat upon a floor in a rick, by the means of them saved herself; for the said husbandmen hid her within the corn, so as they passed by who followed in chafe after her. Thus having escaped this danger, the expected solemn feast and general assembly, called *Pambaatia*, for that all the Boeotians met together: then came she to the City of *Coronea*, and there in habit and form of a suppliant, she fate before the altar of *Minerva Ionia*; where for related unto all comers the enormous wickedness and mischief committed by her woerers, rehearsing them every one by name, and shewing in what Country each one was born. The Boeotians took pity of the Damfel, and were highly displeased and incensed against those young Gentlemen: which they hearing, fled into the City *Orchomenus*, but the Orchomenians would not receive them: by occasion whereof they meant to put themselves within *Hippote*, a pretty Town near unto *Helicon*, situate between *Thebes* and *Coronea*, which gave them entertainment. Then sent the Thebanes unto the inhabitants thereof certain persons, to call upon them for to deliver up the murderers of *Phocus*; that they might receive justice accordingly: but when they would not yield so to do, the Thebanes with other Boeotians, gathered an Army, and went against them, under the leading of *Phadus*, who at that time was the chief ruler of *Thebes*, and laid siege unto the said Town, which being otherwise strongly fortified, was in the end forced for want of water: where they stoned to death the murderers; brought the inhabitants unto bondage and slavery; raised their walls, overthrew their dwelling houses, and divided their whole territories among the Thebanes and Coroneans. The report goeth, that over night before that this Town of *Hippote* was won, there was a voyce heard from the mount *Helicon* of one discorde iterating these words: *Here I am, here I am*; which voyce the thirty wooers knew all verry well to be the speech of *Phocus*. Also the same day that they were stoned, it is said that the Monument or Tomb of this old man, which stood at *Glifias*, flowed and ran with saltion. Thus when *Phadus* the Captain, and Ruler of the Thebanes, returned from war with victory, news came unto him that his wife was delivered of a daughter; which he taking to be a good presage, named her thereupon *Niephrate*.

A Lacedemonian born, espoused a Lady named *Democrita*; by whom he was the father of two daughters, who always both giving counsel unto the City for the best things, and also ready in reason to serve, and execute the same in all occurrences presented, for the good of his Country, incurred the envy and emulation of his concurrents in the Government of the State, who with false rumors and slanderous imputations, went about to seduce the *Ephori*, buzzing into their heads, how this *Alcippe* would overthrow the laws, and change the whole State and Commonwealth of *Sparta*: in such sort as they banished him out of his Country, and would not suffer his wife with her daughters to follow him: and that which worse is, they did confiscate his goods, to the end that his daughters might have no portions to bestow them for their advancement in marriage. And notwithstanding that divers young men in regard of their fathers virtue, made means for to marry these maidens without any dowry, yet his adversaries wrought so cunningly, that they passed an act and publike Edict, forbidding expressly, that any man should seek unto them for marriage: for they alledged and pretended that their mother *Democrita* had often times made her prayers unto the Gods, that her daughters might quickly bring forth children who might be revenged for the injury done unto their father. *Democrita* then perceiving how on every side she was hardly beset and driven to a straight, observed her time, and waited a certain solemn and festival day, which the Dames of the City, with their daughters, the Virgins, with their maid-servants likewise, and little children, did celebrate: on which day, the



to let a man forward thereunto. But I wot not how, being entered into speech, we have forgotten our selves and not kept us to that which was begun yesterday, and should be continued and held on this day: for yesterday as you know very well, having agreed upon this, That all sorts of living creatures have in them some little discourse and reason, we gave good occasion and matter of a learned and pleasant disputation, unto our young Gentlemen, who love hunting to well, namely, as touching the wit and wisdom of beasts, whether they be more in them of the land, or those of the sea? which question we are, as I take it, this day to decide, in case *Aristotimus* and *Phaedimus* hold on still, which question the defiances and challenges, which yesterday they gave one another for the one of them undertook unto his friends and companions, to maintain that the earth bringeth forth beasts of more sense, capacity and understanding; and the other contrariwise promised as much in the behalf of the water.

## SOCLARUS.

That they do, *Autobulus*, they are of the same mind still to dispute it out, and here they will be anon for this very purpose; for I saw them in the morning betimes, addressing and making themselves ready; but if you think it good, before this combat begin, let us go in hand again with that which yesterday should have been handled, and was not; partly for that the time and place served not thereto; or rather because the matter was propounded unto them at the Table, and among the cups of wine, which went merrily about, and not treated of in good earnest and sadness indeed: for one there was, who seemed after a pragmatical sort to refund on the adverse part not impartially, as he came out of the Stoicks School; thus much, That like as mortal is opposite to immortal, corruptible unto incorruptible, and corporal to incorporeal; even so, contends we ought, that reasonable is contrary to unreasonable; so that if one of them be, the other ought likewise of necessity to be, and that this one only couple of contraries among so many other, ought to be left defective or imperfect.

## AUTOBULUS.

And what is he, friend *Soclarus*, who will say, that if we admit in nature, that which is reasonable, to subsist and have being; we should not likewise allow that which is unreasonable: for (no doubt) it is, and that in great measure, namely in all creatures which have no life nor soul: neither need we to seek farther for any other opposition unto that which is reasonable; for whatsoever is without life and soul, is incontinently opposite unto that which together with soul, hath the use of understanding and reason: and if any one there be who maintaineth, that nature for all this is not unperfect, in that every substance having soul is either reasonable or unreasonable: another will say unto him likewise, that a nature endued with life and soul, is not defective, namely in that, either it hath imagination, or else it without; it is either sensitive, or else hath no sense; to the end that it may have on either side these two oppositions or privations, making counterpoise one against another, about one and the same kinde, as two contrary branches arising out of one stem or trunk. And if he think him to be absurd, who demandeth that it should be granted unto him, that of a nature endued with soul, one branch should be sensitive, and another senseless; for that he thinketh that every nature which hath a soul is incontinently both sensitive, and also imaginative: yet for all this shall he have no more appearance to require that one should suppose this unto him for to be true; namely, that whatsoever hath soul, should be either reasonable or unreasonable, discoursing with those men, who held opinion that nothing hath sense, but the same hath understanding withal; and that there is not one kinde of animal creatures, but it hath some manner of opinion and discourse of reason, like as it hath sense and natural appetite: for nature, who as men say, and that right truly, maketh all things for some cause, and to some end, hath not made a living creature sensitive, only and simply to have a passive sense: but whereas there be a number of things proper and agreeable to it, and as many again for them, contrary; it could not possibly endure and continue the minute of an hour, if it knew not how to fit it self with one, and to take heed and beware of the other. So it is therefore, that sense giveth unto every animal creature the knowledge of them both indifferently: but the discretion which accompanied the said sense, in chusing, receiving, and pursuing after that which is profitable; or refusing, rejecting and flying from that which is hurtful and pernicious: is no appearance at all of reason to induce us to say, that those creatures have, if they had not withal some mean faculty and aptitude natural, to discourse, judge, conceive, comprehend, retain and remember: as for those creatures verily, from which you take altogether the gift of expectance, remembrance, election, provision, and preparation aforehand: and moreover, the faculty of hoping, fearing, desiring and refusing: good they have none at all of their eyes, of their ears, or any other sense, apprehension or imagination, in case there be no use thereof; and far better it were for them, that they were clean destitute and quite deprived of such faculties, then to suffer travel, pain and sorrow, and have not wherewith to put by and repel such inconveniences: and yet there is a discourse extant of the natural Philosopher *Stratus*, shewing by plain demonstration, that impossible it is to have any sense at all, without some discourse of reason: for many times we run over the letters in Books and Writings with our eyes; yea, and we hear the found of words with our ears, without conceiving and comprehending either the one or the other, but they fly and pass away, when as our minde is otherwise occupied: but afterwards when the minde is come again to it self and united it, it runneth and pursueth after the same, and gathereth every thing together again which was scattered: In regard whereof it was not said anils in old time:

*The minde it is, that doth both hear and see:  
As for the rest, full deaf and blinde they be.*

As

As if the motion and passion about the eyes and ears, caused no sense at all, if the minde and understanding were away. And therefore *Cleomenes* King of *Lacedemon*, being one day at a feast in *Egypt*, where there was rehearsed at the table a pretty Acroame, or ear-delight, which pleased the company very well; being demanded the question what he thought of it? and whether he judged it not very well penned and set down? As for that (quoth he) I report me unto you that heard it, and I refer it to your judgement; for my part, my minde was all the while in *Peloponnesus*. And therefore necessarily it is, that every creature which hath sense, should likewise be endued with discourse of reason and understanding, considering that by our understanding we come to sense. But fee the case that the sense hath no need at all of the understanding, to exercise their functions and operations: but when the sense hath done her part, in discerning that which is proper and familiar unto a living creature, from that which is contrary and adverse unto it, it passeth away and is gone. What is it then that remembereth and calleth to minde? what is it that seareth things noisome and offensive, and contrariwise desireth those which be good and wholesome? what is it that seeketh means to compass and get things when they are not present? what is it that deviseth and prepareth offensive forts and retreats, yea, and engines to catch and take? or contrariwise, shifts and policies to escape nets and grins layed for them, when they are at the point to be caught and surprized? and yet these men say as much as this comes to, when ever and anon in all their Introductions they dull our ears, and make our heads ache again with their definitions; for they define *sensitivus*, that is to say, a project or deliberate purpose, to be a design of bringing home some what to effect; *intelligens*, that is to say, endeavor, to be an appetite or desire before an appetite; *memorativus*, that is to say, provision, to be an action before action; *volens*, that is to say, remembrance or memory, to be the comprehension of a proposition affirmative or negative, already past; whereof the present truth was otherwise comprized by the sense: for of all these faculties, there is no such much as one reasonless (I mean) not proceeding from the discourse of reason: and yet they all concur, and are to be found in every living creature: and even so verily, they define *volens*, that is to say, intelligences, to be notions laid up apart and reserved within; but *sensitivus*, that is to say, cogitations, to be notions still in motion: as for passions, they confest and defining them all in general to be evil judgements, and false opinions, a wonder it is how they pass over so many evils and notions which are to be found in brute beasts; some proceeding from anger and cholere, others again from fear: and besides all this, envy (I may tell you) and jealousy; when as they themselves (believe me) stick not to punish their horses, and beat their dogs, when they do a fault; not rashly and inawise, but considerately, for to correct them, and make them wiser, working thereby and improving in them a displeasure with themselves proceeding from pain, which we call repentance; as touching other pleasures and delights, that which cometh by the eye, *volens*, that is to say, bewitching; that is to say, an enchantment; that which cometh by the ear, *volens*, that is to say, bewitching; and they use both the one and the other against wilde beasts; for certain it is, that Scags and Horses do joy in the found of Whistles, Flutes and Hauboes: also men call forth Crabfish, Crayfishes and grampels out of their holes perforce, with burning torches and light fire-brands: moreover, it is said, that the fish *Alse* hearing men to sing, to clap their hands, or otherwise to make a noise, will stir out of the water, and come abroad: likewise, the horn owl or buftard is (as it were) enchanted with the beholding of men dancing together in his sight, and so far overtaken he is with the delight thereof, that whiles he thinketh to counterfeit their jestures, stirring and moving his shoulders according to the measures with them, he suffereth himself (like a fool) to be taken by the fowler. As for those who of these matters speak so foolishly and absurdly, saying, that beasts rejoyce not, are not angry, nor fearful; and namely, that the Nightingale doth not stude, meditate and prepare against her singing; that the Bee hath no memory; but that the Swallow seemeth only to make provision by kinde of Providence; that the Lyon is (as it were) angry; and the Hinde given as though the were afraid: I wot not what answer they will make to those who shall urge them to this, that they may as well say, that the same creatures neither see nor hear, but seem only (as it were) to hear and see; and to have a voice; and in one word, that they live not at all, but seem to live: for I assure you (in my judgement) there are no more repugnant to evidence and daily experience then the other.

## SOCLARUS.

I think no less (*O Autobulus*) and therefore range me among those of your opinion in this point, but to compare the manners, lives, actions, behaviours and conversations of men, with those of beasts, and to affirm that beasts herein sort with us: besides, that I see in this, great indignity derogatory to man's worthiness, I doubt much, and cannot conceive how nature hath given unto them the beginning of sense, which is reason, and unto which reason is referred and doth aim, considering they cannot attain unto the end: and besides, there is not one of them all that sheweth any sign of tending thereunto of progress therein, or of desire and appetite that way.

## AUTOBULUS.

Yea, but this (my good friend *Soclarus*) is no strange and absurd thing with these men, I mean the Stoicks: for notwithstanding that they put down the natural love and affection which we have to and affirm that beasts herein sort with us: besides, that I see in this, great indignity derogatory to man's worthiness, I doubt much, and cannot conceive how nature hath given unto them the beginning of sense, which is reason, and unto which reason is referred and doth aim, considering they cannot attain unto the end: and besides, there is not one of them all that sheweth any sign of tending thereunto of progress therein, or of desire and appetite that way.

Yea, but this (my good friend *Soclarus*) is no strange and absurd thing with these men, I mean the Stoicks: for notwithstanding that they put down the natural love and affection which we have to and affirm that beasts herein sort with us: besides, that I see in this, great indignity derogatory to man's worthiness, I doubt much, and cannot conceive how nature hath given unto them the beginning of sense, which is reason, and unto which reason is referred and doth aim, considering they cannot attain unto the end: and besides, there is not one of them all that sheweth any sign of tending thereunto of progress therein, or of desire and appetite that way.

pleasure which other creatures have; howbeit, they never speed, nor attain to the end of generation. Consider again on the other side, whether it were not a ridiculous absurdity for such Philosophers as they would seem to be, to affirm and maintain, that *Socrates* and *Plato*, and such men as they, were no less vicious than any vile slave or wicked wretch in the world, but that all were foolish, witless, lascivious and unjust alike (because forsooth, all fins with them be equal) and then to lay the blame and fault in the source and beginning of virtue; that is to say, Reason, as being not pure nor perfect in brute beasts to the accomplishment of virtue: as if there were not some defect and imbecillity of reason, seeing they confess themselves that there is an imperfection in the use of reason, of which all beasts be full: for we see in many of them, that there is cowardice, intemperance, injustice and malice. Now he who affirmeth, that whatsoever is not apt and fitted by nature to receive reason aright and in ample manner, is simply not capable of reason: first he doth as much as if he maintained, that neither the Ape is capable of ill-favored deformity, nor the Tortoise of slow pace, because the one of them is not susceptible of beautiful favor, nor the other of swiftness and good footmanhip. Again, he doth not see and mark the difference between reason perfect, and simple reason; for reason simply proceedeth from nature, but honest, virtuous, and perfect reason cometh by industry, study, diligence and teaching; which is the cause that all creatures endued with a sensitive soul, are capable and susceptible of a kind of discipline and learning by the means of this faculty of discourse and reason: marry this absolute and right reason indeed which we affirm, and seek for, and is nothing else but sapience and wisdom, they are not able to name any one man that ever attained unto it. Like as therefore a difference there is between sight and sight, between flight and flight; for Hawks see otherwise than Grasshoppers do, Eagles also and Partridges fly not alike; even so all creatures endued with reason, have not the like vivacity, promptitude and nimbleness of reason, as to reach up to the highest pitch and perfection thereof: for we may observe in some beasts many evident tokens of just society, of valor, of witty industry in their provision and dispose: and contrariwise in others as many signs of insupportable violence and injustice, of cowardice and softness, as witnesseth that which now moveth the contention & debate between our young Gentlemen; for as if they both supposed there was a difference in this behalf, some of them maintain, that naturally the beasts of the land are proceeded farther in virtue; and others contrariwise affirm, the same of those in the sea and waters; a thing, very evident, whosoever will compare Storks with the river Horses; for those do nourish and feed their fathers who engendered them, whereas those do kill them, because they might ride and cover their mothers: as also who will but confer Cock Doves with Partridges; for Doves do often times squash and mar the eggs, yea, and otherwhiles kills the Hens when they come or fly, because they are not willing during that time to be troden; whereas the male Partridges take upon them part of the care and pain in sitting upon the eggs, and in their turn do keep them warm, that they chill not; yea, and that which more is, they be the first that bring meat in their bills unto the little ones newly hatched; and if happily the dam ranges abroad, carry forth too long out of the nest, the male beats and pecks her with his bill, drives her home to her eggs and young birds. As for *Antipeper* who reproacheth and rebuketh both Affes and Sheep for their filthiness, and being so negligent in keeping themselves clean, he hath forgotten (I wot not how) to speak of Ounces and Swallows: for the Ounces seek a by-place by themselves apart, where to bestow their urine, and by all means hide and conceal that fine stony substance, called *Lyncurium*, which is engendered of it: and the Swallows teach their young ones to turn their tails so, as they may meat out of their nests. Moreover, why say we not that one tree is more ignorant oruntaught than another, like as we hold, and that truly, that a Sheep is more dull of capacity than a Dog? or that this herb is more fearful than that, like as we affirm very well, that a Stag is more timorous, or rather less valorous than a Lyon: and as in things which are unmovable, we never say, that one is more slow than another; nor among such things as yield no found at all, that this hath a smaller or bigger voice than that; Semblably, it is never said, that there is less wit, more dulness, and greater intemperance in such or such things, unless it be in that kind, whereof all by nature are endued with the gift of reason, and of prudence in some measure, which puiffance and faculty being given to some more, and to others less, is that which maketh all the difference that we see. Yea marry, but there is no comparison, will some man say, between men and beasts; so infinitely surpasseth he them in fineness of wit, in justice and equity, in defending civil society, that it is wonderful. And even so (my good friend) there be many which in bigness and strength of body, in swiftness of feet, in quickness of eye-sight, and subtilty, of hearing out-go all the men in the world, and leave them far behind, and yet for all this, we are not to infer and conclude that man is blinde, that he is impotent of hand and foot, or otherwise deaf: neither hath nature deprived us altogether of big arms and bodies, or of strength both in the one and the other, although in comparison of the Elephant and the Camel, our force and bulk of body is nothing; after the same manner may we speak of beasts; if their discourse and understanding be more gross, if their wit be more dull than ours, it followeth not thereupon, that they have neither reason nor natural wit: for without all question, both they have, feeble though they be and troubled, like as an eye is otherwhiles weak, dim, and muddy: and were it not that I certainly expect, and that among our young men who are studious, learned, and very well seen in the Books of our ancient Writers, that they will alledge an infinite number of examples, the one from the land, and the other out of the sea; I could not contain my self, but recite and alledge here before you an innumerable sort of proofs and arguments, as well of the natural subtilty of beasts, as of their docility, which the beautiful and famous City of *Rome* hath afforded unto us to draw and lade up abundantly by

by whole scuppers and buckets full (as they say,) from the stately theaters of their Emperors, and the princely games exhibited there.

But let us leave this matter fresh and entire for those young men, thereby to embellish their discourse, and set out their eloquence: mean while, I would gladly examine and consider one point with you, now that we are at leisure. For I suppose, that in every part and natural power or faculty of our body, there doth beset some proper defect, some maine or malady; as namely, in the eye, blindness in the leg, lameness; in the tongue, stutting and stammering; and that which is proper to one member, is not incident unto another: for we use not to say, that a thing is become blinde, which never had power by nature to see, nor lame, which was not ordained to go; neither was there ever man who would say, that a thing stammered which never had tongue, or muffled and wharled, which naturally yieldeth no voice at all: and even so we cannot (to speak properly and truly) term that foolish, furious, or enraged, which by course of nature is not capable of understanding, discourse and reason: for impossible it is, that a part may be said to be interessed, affected or prejudiced in a thing, which never had an aptitude or natural power, that might receive diminution, privation, mutilation, or otherwise some infirmity: and yet I doubt not, but you have otherwhiles seen dogs run mad; and for mine own part I have known horses enraged; and there be moreover, who affirm that kind and other beves will be horn-wood, yea and foxes as well as dogs; but the example of dogs whereof no man makes doubt, may suffice to prove and bear witness, that this kind of beast hath reason and understanding, and the same not in small measure to be contemned, but when it chaneth that it is troubled and confounded, then comes upon them that disease which is called rage and madness. Now that at such a time we cannot perceive in them, that either their sight or their hearing is altered: but like as he that should give out of a man, who is over-charged with a melancholike humour, or given to rave and goe behind himself, that his understanding is not transported and out of order, that his discourse of reason is not out of the way, nor his brains broken, or memory corrupt, were very absurd: for that the ordinary custom and behaviour of such foolish and besettraught persons sufficiently convinceth, that they are pelt themselves, and have lost the discourse of reason; even so, who ever thinketh that mad dogs suffer any other passion, than a confusion and perurbation of that part in them, which before time was wont to imagine, discourse and remember, in such sort, that when they be thus surprized with rage, they are so foolish and foolish, as they know not their best friends, who were wont to make much of them, but flee those places of their feeding and bringing up, which they used most to haunt and to converse in, and do not so much as discern, but oversee that which is presented plain before them: this man (I say) seemeth obdolitately to strive against the truth, and not to comprehend that which daily experience doth shew.

#### SOC LARUS.

Certes, your conjecture in mine opinion is very good, and you are in the right: but the Stoicks and Peripateticks flily stand against all this, and impugn it with tooth and nail, saying: That justice cannot have any other breeding and beginning; and that impossible it is to maintain that there is any justice in the world, if it be confessed that all beasts are any ways capable of reason: for that necessarily it is, either that we do injury in not sparing them; or in case we make no use of them for our food, that impossible it were for us to live or else our life should remain destitute of such things as well it may not miss and be without. In sum, that we were to live in some sort a savage and beast-like life, if we should reject the profits and commodities which they afford. For I pass by infinite thousands and millions of the Troglodytes and Nomades, that know no other feeding, but of fl shonely and nothing else: but as for us who seem to lead a milde, civil, and more gentle life, what work were there left for us to do upon the land? what business have we at Sea? what skill or art should we exercise among the mountains? what ornament or beauty would there be in our life, if we were taught this once as a true lesson, that we ought to respect all beasts, and use all equity towards them, as being reasonable creatures as we are, and made of the same mould that we be? Certes, it were very hard to say; and therefore there is no answer to assail this doubt; no medicine or salve to heal this sore; no device to undo this knot, and difficulty, which taketh away, either all civility, or else all justice out of mans life, unless we keep that ancient limit and law, whereby God having separated (according as *Hesiodus* saith) sundry natures, sundry natures, and distinguishing every kind a part by it self.

To fishes, beasts and feathered fowles, hath granted power and might,

Of another for to feed, because they have no right,

To men alone, he justice gave therein to take delight.

Given (I say) he hath justice unto them for to exercise among themselves: and as for other living creatures, as they cannot deal justly with us; so it is certain that we cannot use injustice to them: and look who ever reject this conclusion and resolution, have left no other use, nor so much as a simple way whereby justice may enter and come among us.

#### AUTOBULUS.

Now truly my friend, you have said this very well, and even according to the mind and hearts desire of these men: howbeit we are not to give and grant unto these Philosophers (as the manner is to tie about those women who have hard travel, some *Ocytocium*, or medicinale drogue, to cause them to have more speedily and easie deliverance) this device to hang upon them, that they may with ease and without all pain, bear and bring forth justice unto us; seeing that in the main and most important points of all Philosophy, they would not allow *Epicurus* so small a thing, and so vile, as to decline

Uuuu

one

one only atome, or indivisible body never so little aside, for to make way for the stars, for living creatures, and fortune to come into the world, and that thereby our free will might be saved: for they ought either to prove by demonstration, that which is doubtfull, or to suppose that which of it self is manifest; and not to take this article as touching beasts, for to establish justice, seeing that it is neither confessed and granted unto them, nor they otherwise do prove it: for another path-way there is to bring in justice among men, which is nothing so slippery, dangerous, and full of steep downfalls, nor that which leadeth thorough the subversion and overthrow of things most evident; even that which my son and one of your familiar friends (*Soclarus*) having learned of *Plato*, doth shew and teach those who will not obstinately contest, but follow reason and learn: for that man is not altogether clear and void of injustice, in using beasts, and dealing with them as he doth, *Heraclius* and *Empedocles* receive as an undoubted truth, complaining in many places, and reproaching nature, as if he were under necessity, and a very war, having in her nothing that is simple, pure, sincere, and unmixed, but performing all her operations by many unjust accidents and passions; seeing they hold that even her generation proceeded from injustice, namely, by conjunction of mortal with immortal, and in that the thing which is engendered thereof, rejoiceth to dismember unnaturally, that which engendered it: but haply all this may seem too bitter and exceeding sharp: well, there is another gentle means, and easie remedy of this inconvenience, which doth not quite berave beasts of all use of reason, and saveth justice in those who use them as they ought; which mean and indifferent way being in times past brought in by wise men, was afterwards rejected, and wholly destroyed by a conspiracy of gourmandise and seltish pleasure together; howsoever *Pythagoras* would have recovered it again, by teaching men how they might make use and commodity of beasts, and yet do them no wrong nor injury; for they who punish and put to death those wilde beasts, which have no society nor fellowship at all with man, but rather do him much hurt and damage, commit no injustice; no more than they who make them tame and familiar, training them up to their use, and employing them in services, whereunto they are by nature most fit:

*The race of horse and asses for to breed,  
With bulls encrease, which in the fields do feed.*

whom *Prometheus* in a tragedie of *Eschylus*, saith he bestowed upon us,  
*To serve and drudge in stead of us,  
And do our work laborious.*

Neither do they any wrong, who make use of dogs to keep their flocks of goats and sheep: nor they who milk goats and sheep, and shear their fleeces for the wool, especially if they give them pasture: for it can not be said, that men can not live, or their life is utterly undone, if they have not their platters of fish, or their livers of geese, or if they cut not beets and goats in o pieces for to save up at their feasts: or if for their idle disport in theaters, or to take their pleasure in chase and hunting, they put not some to the combat and force them to fight whether they will or no; and kill crows which have no defence of their own, nor any means to make resistance: for he who needs will have his delights and pastimes, ought in all reason (as I think) to make himself merry, and solace his heart with those that can play and disport together with him; and not to do (as *Bion* said) like to little children, who joy in throwing stones at frogs, and make a game of it; mean while, the poor frogs have no pleasure in this their game; for they are sure to die for it in good earnest; even so we are not either to hunt or fish for any delight that we have in the pain, and much less in the death of other creatures: no more to take a pleasure in driving or taking them away from their whelps and young ones, a pitifull sight to behold; for they be not they that commit injustice, who use beasts, but such as misuse them unmercifully and cruelly, without any respect and commiseration.

**SOCARUS.**

Stay a while, good *Autobulus*, and put off this invective of yours unto another time; for now I see coming towards us near at hand, a crew of young Gentlemen, all great hunters and lovers of the game, whom it were neither an easie matter to drive off unto another day, neither is it needful to provoke and offend them.

**AUTOBULUS.**

True it is that you say, and I like your admonition; but as for *Eubiotus*, I know very well, and my nephew *Arionus*, the two sons also of *Dionysus* a Citizen of *Delphos*, to wit, *Æcides* and *Aristotimus*, yea, and after them, *Nicanor* the son of *Eubulamus*,

*All skilful hunters (in good faith)  
Upon the land (as Homer saith)*

and therefore (no doubt) they will side every one with *Aristotimus*, and take his part; whereas contrariwise, the others who be Islanders, and were born along the sea side, I mean *Heraclius* of *Megara*, and *Phlegon* of the Isle *Eubœa*,

*Who cunning are upon the Seas,  
And therein much themselves do please.*

Loe, how they accompany your friend *Phædimus*, and are ready to stand with him:

*As for Tydides there, 'tis hard to say,  
To whether side he will in judgement sway.*

I mean that same *Optatus*, our fellow and companion in years,  
*Who of wilde beasts on mountains slain.*

*With many first fruits and essays,  
To justify his prey,  
Hath often duly honoured.  
Diana goddess bright,  
Who clepp'd is Agrotæra,  
and is Dictynna bright.*

for so, how he commeth directly towards us, as one who will not range himself to one side more than to another. How say you, *Optatus*, do we not conjecture well, that you mean to be an indifferent arbitrator or common umpire between these two young Gentlemen.

**OPTATUS.**

Very well guessed of you *Autobulus*, I purpose so indeed; for long since was the Law of *Solon* repealed and abolished, by virtue whereof, they were punished who in a civil sedition joyned not to the one side nor to the other.

**AUTOBULUS.**

Come hither, therefore, and sit by us, that if we have need of any testimonies, we trouble not the books of *Aristotle* with dripping and turning over their leaves; for that we will refer our selves and him to that which you shall say, as justly and truly delivered, in regard of your great knowledge and experience.

**SOCARUS.**

How now my Masters, you two Gentlemen, are you agreed between your selves of the order, who shall begin first to speak?

**PHÆDIMUS.**

Yea *Soclarus*, we are at a point for that now, although we were long enough debating about it; for in the end (to use the very words of *Euripides*)  
*Lot, Fortunes child, hath this case tried,  
As one ordain'd doubts to decide.*

and hath appointed that the land-beasts cause should be pleaded before theirs of the sea:

**SOCARUS.**

Well then it is time (*Aristotimus*) that both you begin to speak, and we also to hear.

\*\*\*\*\*

In this place a great defect and breach there is in the Greek original, which cannot be made up and supplied without the help of some ancient copie, not yet extant.

The bee and the hall is for them that plead. But these destroy the spawn within the wombe, by running upon their females when they be great and near the time of casting the same. And one kind there is of spotted mullets, called thereupon *Perdæ*, which feed upon their own slime and glutinous substance that proceedeth from themselves. As for the poule or polyp fish, he eateth and gnaweth himself, sitting still all Winter

*In bonse full cold, without fire-light,  
In weall bale and wretched plight.*

Wilde is he, or so blockish and senseless, or else so gluttonous, or rather subject to all these vices together; which is the reason that *Plato* also in his book of Laws, forbiddeth citizens young men to set their minds upon fishing in the Sea, or rather he detesteth it in them, as an abominable thing, if they should take a love thereto. For no exercise there is of hardiness and valour; no proof of wit or trial of wisdom; no employment of strength, swiftness or activity of body in combats and fights with the wide mouthed sea-pikes; with congers or gultheads, like as there is in hunting upon the land, where the fierce and courageous beasts exercise the fortitude of those who encounter them, and stirring up their animosity to enter upon dangers: the wily and crafty, whet and sharpen the wits of such as set upon them, causing them to look about and bestir themselves every way with great circumspection: and the swift and light-footed, trie the able, nimble, and painful bodies of those who have them in chase: in all which respects hunting is reputed an honest and commendable exercise: whereas contrariwise, fishing hath nothing in it to commend the game, and make it honourable; neither shall you ever find my good friend, any one of the gods, desirous to be called *Congrolosimus*, that is to say, the conger killer; as *Apollo* gloried to be named *Lycobolus*, that is to say, the killer of wolves: nor any of them delighted in the name of *Triglobolus*, that is to say, the striker of barbel: like as *Diana* joyed in the epithet of *Elaphobolus*, that is to say, a shooter at stags and hinds: and no marvell, considering that it is more laudable for a Gentleman to take in chase a wilde Boar, a stag, a fallow deer, a roe buck, yea, and it were but an hare, then to buy any of these with his money: but surely it is more for his credit and reputation to go into the fish market as a cater to exchange his coin for a tunny, a lobster, or the *Avia*, then to be seen fishing for them: for the cowardise, blockishness, stupidity, want of skills and means in fishes, either offensive, or defensive, cause the taking of them to be dishonourable, unlovely, and illiberal.

In summe, forasmuch as the proofs and arguments which Philosophers alledge, to shew that beasts have some discourse and use of reason, are drawn from their noises, their actions in

preferring one thing before another, their provisions and forecasts, their memories, their affections, their tender care of their young ones, their thankfulness to those who have done them good, their hatred and rancor against them who have done them a shrewd turn: their industry to find out things necessary for them, the evident appearance of virtues in them, to wit, of fortitude, sociable equity and communion, temperance and magnanimity: Let us consider these maritime sea creatures, whether they have any one at all of these parts, or if there be any little shew thereof, it is so dark and obscure, that uneth or hardly it can be perceived, how diligent soever we be in searching after it; whereas in these terrene beasts, and such as the land breedeth, a man may conceive, yea and plainly see most clear, evident, and assured examples of each, of the qualities before said. First and foremost, behold I pray you the first setting out, the preparatives and flourishes as it were, that bulls and bears make against their combat, how they raise and cast up the dust with their feet all about them, as also how these whet and sharpen their tusks: the Elephants likewise for that one of their two teeth wherewith they root in the earth, or pluck up and cut such matter as they feed upon, is ordinarily thereby worn dull and blunt, they use it onely for these purposes, but the other they keep and reserve always sharp pointed and keen edged, for to serve their turns when they are to fight; the lion when he goeth in the forest, marcheth evermore with his paws drawn in close and turned round, hiding his cleyes and nailes within, for fear lest being worn with going, their points should be dull and blunt, as also because he would give no light by his tracts to the hunters that follow in chase; for hardly and with much ado shall you trace a lion by his foot, the print of his claws is so small that it cannot be seen, whereby they that are full upon their footing, yet miss of him, and wander a contrary way.

Ye have heard I am sure of the Ichnewon or rat of *India*, how he prepares himself against he should fight with the crocodile, no less than a legionario souldier armed at all pieces, in compleat harness, such a deal of mud, and the same hardened and baked in manner of a crust, hath he all over his body, as it were a good curace of proof.

What provision and preparation the swallows or martins make against their breeding and laying time, we daily see; namely, how in building of their nests, they lay first as a ground-work underneath, good sticks, stiff straws, and found bents, and those they entrelace afterwards with others that be more gentle and pliable; and if they see that their nests had need of some glutinous mud to glue and fodder all together, what do they? marry they flye floting to close to the water of some river, lake, or the sea, that lightly they dip their wings therewith, so that they may be onely wet, and in no wise heavy and overcharged with moisture, then they role and bask themselves in the dull, by which means they close up, binde, and knit as with parget or plaste, all chinks and breaches, and whatsoever was not well compact and united together in their nests: as for the form and figure thereof, they make them not cornered nor yielding many sides and faces, but even and smooth as possible may be, and the same round as a ball: for surely this kind of workmanship is most durable without, and of greatest capacity within, and such as giveth least hold unto other beasts abroad that lie in wait to destroy them.

The cobwebs that spiders weave, which serve for patterns, as well for our women to make their webs of cloth, as for fishers to knit and work their nets, are in many respects very admirable: first in regard of the fine threads, and the subtle weaving thereof, which are not distinct one from another, nor ranged after the order of the warps and woofe in our artificial webs upon the loom, but are continued and run all into one, in manner of a thin filme, kell, and skin, united and sodered as one would say, with I wot not what glutinous humidity mingled among, after an invisible and imperceptible manner; then the tincture and colour thereof, which maketh it seem afar off like unto some thick or dusky air, to the end that it felt might be perceived; but principally and above all, the very governing, conduct, and manning of this fabric and device made by her self, surpasseth; namely, when some little or small creature is gotten within the compass of this coil and entangled, to see how immediately the perceiveth it, and can skill quickly to pull in and draw the net; no hunter and Fowler in the world, be he never so cunning, more nimble, for to enclose the prey: all which because we daily see in our continual experience presented unto our eyes, we believe and know to be true; otherwise we would hold all to be fables: like as we think that to be a tale of the crows and ravens in *Barbary*, who when they are very thirsty, and the water settled so low where they should drink, that they cannot reach unto it, cast stones into it for to make it rise so high, as they may easily meet with it. And verily upon a time, I marvelled myself very much when I saw a dog within a ship, while the mariners were out of the way, to cast little stones into an earthen pot, which was nothing near full of oyle, how he should discourse and reason thus in his mind, that the lighter things, as namely oyle, must needs mount up and be driven aloft, when the weightier such as the stones were, went down to the bottom. As much may be said of the Bees of *Candia*, and the geese of *Cilicia*. As for the Bees, being to double a point or cape lying into the sea, which is much exposed to the winds, they ballast themselves with small grit or pretty stones, for to be able to endure the weather, and not be carried away against their wills with the wind through their lightness otherwise. And the geese aforesaid being afraid of the eagles, which have their aeries upon the high rocks, at what time as they should pass over the mountain *Taurus*, take every one within their bills a good big stone, thereby to stop and muzzle (as it were) their mouths, that being by nature clamorous and given much to gawling, they might

make no noise nor crie at all during their flight, and so in silence and safety both, get beyond the said hill. The very order that cranes keep in their flying is wonderful and memorable: for when the air is troubled and the wind aloft, they flye not as they use to do when it is fair weather and calm, either all afront, or in manner of the half moon or croissant: but presently at their first setting out, they cast themselves into a triangle with the poine forward, thereby to cut and pierce the wind that bloweth before and about them, so the end that their rank thus ranged and set in order, might not possibly be broken: afterwards when they are alighted and settled upon the ground, look whose course and charge it is to watch all night, stands upright upon one leg, and in the foot of the other claspeth a stone and holds it up a loft; for the continual straining of themselves to hold the said stones, keepeth them that long they cannot sleep: and when once they chance to let go their hold, the stone falling upon the rook, quickly awakneth her that let it fall. So that after I had seen this, I did not greatly wonder at *Hercules*, if he putting his bow under his arm hole, and clipping it hard with his mighty strong arm.

*Holding full fast in his right hand,*

*His maffe club, as sleep doth stand,*

neither marvelled I much at him who first devised the means how to open an oyster close, and hard thus, when I beheld once the crafty subtilty of *herons*: for the heron when he hath swallowed down an oyster, or other little fish, all whole and fast thus, although it put him to some trouble, yea he endureth for a time and keepeth it within his craw or gullet, until he perceive that it is mollified and relaxed by the natural heat of his body, then casteth he it up agayng by vomit, findeth it gaping and wide open, and so picketh out of it the good meat therein.

As touching the industrious provision and care of house-keeping which is in pismires, to discourse thereof in particular, and exquisitely to deliver the same, were a very hard piece of work, if not impossible; and to pass the same over in silence, argueth supine negligence: for look throughout the whole history of nature, you shall not find so small a mirror again for to represent greater things and more beautiful, being (as it were) a most pure and clear drop, wherein appeareth most apparently the full resemblance of entire vertue. Here may be seen lovely friendship and civil society: here sheweth it self the very image of valour and prowess, with painful patience and industry: here sheweth it the beholding many seeds of continence, many sparks of wisdom, and as many of righteousness. *Gilgamesh* the Philosopher, although he maintaineth not that beasts have any use of reason, made report nevertheless that he was present at the sight of such a spectacle and occurrence as this. There were (quoth he) a number of ants which went toward another ants hole, that was not their own, carrying with them the corps of a dead ant; out of which hole, there came certain other ants to meet them on the way (as it were) to parl with them, and within a while returned back and went down again; after this they came forth a second, yea a third time, and retired accordingly until in the end they brought up from beneath (as it were a ransom for the dead body) a grub or little worm; which the others received and took upon their shoulders, and after they had delivered in exchange the aforesaid corps, departed home: moreover, it is worth the observation, although it be a thing daily seen of every man, what courtesie and civility they use in meeting one another, how those who be light and carry nothing, willingly give way unto such as be charged and loaden, and suffer them to pass: likewise how they gnaw asunder and divide piece meal such burdens, as they being single, cannot bear whole, to the end that the same may be carried and transported from place to place by more in number. *Aratus* in his prognosticks setteth this down for a sign of rain toward, when they bring forth their seeds and grains, and lay them abroad to take the air:

*When ants make hast with all their eggs abroad,*

*Forth of their holes to carry them abroad.*

And yet there be some who in this place write not thus, that is to say, eggs, but thus, as if they would say, their goods, to wit, the fruits or seeds which they have gathered and laid up for their provision, when they perceive them to begin to mould or be musty, or fear that they will corrupt and putrify: But this which surpasseth all other prudence, policy and wit, is their caution and prevention which they use, that their wheat or other corn may not sprout and grow. For this is certain, that dry it cannot continue always nor found and uncorrupt, but it will in time wax soft, resolve into a milky juice, when it turneth and beginneth to swell and chit: for fear therefore that it become not a generative seed, and so by growing, loose the nature and property of food for their nourishment, they gnaw that end thereof or head, where it is wont to sprout and bud forth. For mine own part, I do not admit or believe all that which some do anatomize of their caves and holes: who give out that there is not one direct and straight way leading down therinto, nor the same easie and ready for any other creature to pass through; but there be certain secret allies, blinde-patches, crooked turnings, and hollow cranks, which meet all at the end in three holes or concavities; whereof the one forsooth is the common hall for them to meet altogether: the second is their cellar or ambry for their victuals and provision; and the third a by-room where they bestow their dead.

Well, I think it not amiss nor impertinent, if next after pismires, I bring forth upon the stage before you the Elephants, to the end that we may know the nature of this wit, and intelligence which now is in question, as well in the greatest beasts as the smallest creatures, and see how as it appeareth in the one, so it is not defective or wanting in the other. Other men I am sure do make a wonder at that which the Elephant learneth, and is taught, whose docility is exhibited unto us in the theaters, by his sundry sorts of gestures, and changes in dauncing, such as for their variety and exquisite elegance



it were very hard for men with all their memory, perfection of wit, and exercise, to remember, to express, and perform accordingly: but I for my part, me thinks, do see more clearly and evidently the prudence and sagacity of this beast, in the passions, affections, and motions which he hath of himself without teaching, as being more simple, sincere, affix natural; for not long since at Rome there were a number of them trained and exercised against the solemnity of their games and plays, in certain strange stuations, intricate motions, and hard turnings round, to go, to come, to stand, and wheel about in a trice: but among them, there was one more dull, blockish, gross, and slow; then the rest, both in conceiving, and also in retaining; by reason whereof, he being ever and anon reproached and rated with shameful words, yea, and many times beaten well for his untowardness, was found otherwhiles alone by himself in the night, repeating as it were and conning his lessons by moonshine, labouring hard for to express and attain unto that which he had been taught. Agrippa writeth, that before this time, in Syria there was an Elephant kept and nourished in a private man's house, whose Governour had allowed unto him from his master, a certain measure of barley every day for his provender; but there was not a day went over his head, wherein he robbed and deceived him not of the one half; it fortuned, that one time above the rest the master of the house would needs see the Elephant served, then his Governour poured out before him his full allowance; even the whole measure that was his due; but the Elephant casting an unhappy and untoward eye at him, divided his barley with the snout of his trunk, and put a part the one moiety thereof, shewing the best way he could devise unto his master, the wrong that the governor aforesaid had done unto him: He reporteth likewise of another, who seeing that his keeper blended earth and stones among his barley, to make the measure to seem complete; spied his time and came unto the portage pot standing over the fire, wherein was flesh a fetching for dinner, and filled it up with ashes.

Another being provoked and misused at Rome, by certain little boys, who with their bodkins and penknives used to prick and punch his snout or trunk; caught up one of them by the middle, and held him up in the air, so as it was thought he would have cruised and squeezed the guts out of his belly; they that saw the manner of it, took up a great cry incontinently for fear of the poor boy, but the Elephant set him down softly again upon the ground, in the very place where he caught him up, and doing him no hurt at all passed by; judging it a sufficient chastisement for so little a child, that he was only put in a fright: Thus much of tame and trained Elephants. As for those which are savage, and live in the wild fields at their liberty, wonderful things be reported of them, and namely as touching their passage over rivers; for the youngest and least of them all, exposing himself to hazard for the rest, leadech the way, and wadech first thorough; the other seeing him landed upon the bank on the other side, make this account, that if the least and lowest of their herd be tall enough to surmount the depth of the channel, they which are bigger & higher, have no cause to fear any thing, but that they also may get over in safety.

And since I am fallen into this argument, and proceeded so far into it, me thinks I should not forget one example of *Reinard*, for the affinity and conformity it hath with this device last rehearsed: Those who have invented fabulous tales make report, that during the great deluge, *Deucalion* used to let forth a dove out of the ark, to know what weather it was like to be abroad; for if she returned soon again, she brought news of tempest and rain, but if she flew clean away, and came no more back, she shewed thereby that it was calm and fair weather.

But true it is that the Thracians even at this day when they purpose to pass over a river frozen all over with ice, take a fox with them for their guide, to sound the way before them, whether the ice be strong enough and able to bear; the fox goes gently before, and layeth his ear close to the ice, and if by the noise of the water running underneath and coming unto his ear, he guessth that the ice is not thick nor frozen deep, but thin and weak, he maketh a stay, and returneth if a man will let him contrariwise, if he perceive by his ear no noise at all of water running under the ice, he passeth forward confidently. Surely we cannot say that this is only an exquisite quickness in the sense of hearing, without any discourse of reason, but without all question a kind of syllogism or reasoning, by consequence drawn from that natural sense in this sort: that which soundeth stirreth; that which stirreth is not frozen or congealed; that is not congealed, must needs be liquid; and whatsoever is liquid, yeldeth, and is not able to hold, ergo, &c.

The Logicians hold that the hound meeting with a quarry or cross way divided into many paths, useth a kind of argumentation or reasoning, which is called a disjunct proceeding from the enumeration of many parts; and in this manner discoureth with himself: It must needs be that the beast in chase, passed by one of these three ways; but this way it went not, nor yet the ways therefore it cannot chuse; but this way he took, for the scent of the nostrill yeldeth him no other intelligence, then of the premises; and it was the discourse of reason, which gave him to understand the necessity of the consequence or conclusion, inferred upon the said premises and suppositions. Howbeit, the dog hath need of no such testimony of Logicians; for false it is and counterfeith, because it is the smell it self and scent of the nose, which by the tract of the foot and the fluxion of the odour coming from the beast, sweareth him which way it fled, bidding farewell to these propositions either disjunct or conjunct, neither cruel it for that enumeration of parts; but by many other effects, passions, functions, offices and actions which proceed neither from the sense of seeing nor of smelling, but only from intelligence and discourse of reason, by which they are evidently performed, a man may sufficiently perceive and comprehend what is the nature of a dog, whose continence, obedience, sagacity, patience and pains-taking in chase, if I should now discourse upon, I should but make my self ridiculous unto you, who see the same daily, and have experience

experience and practise thereof continually. But this one example will I alledge unto you; namely, that during the civil wars at Rome, when a Roman Citizen was murdered, the murderers could never cut off his head, until they environed his dog round, and stabbed him to death, who guarded his master's body; and fought most fiercely for him. King *Pyrrhus* as he travelled by the way, met with a dog who kept the dead corps of his master lately slain, and understanding by the inhabitants of the place, that he had continued three daies already, and never stirred from thence, nor yet eat or drunk ought, he commanded the body to be interred, led the dog away with him, and made much of him: certain daies after, there hapned a muster or general review to be made of the fouldiers, who shewed themselves and passed before the King sitting in his chair of state, and having the said dog hard by him, who never quetched nor stirred all the whiles, until he had a fight of those persons who murdered his master; upon whom he ran immediately, baying and barking at them with open mouth and in great rage, stooping running back and making toward *Pyrrhus*, inasmuch as not only the King, but all those who were about his person, entered into great indignation that those parties were they who had killed his master; whereupon they were apprehended, put in prison, and judiciously brought to their answer upon the point, and together with other presumptions and light evidences inferred against them, they were so hardly urged, that they confessed the fact, and suffered punishment accordingly. The like (by report) did the dog of learned *Hesiodus*, who detected the sons of *Ganytor* the Naupactian, of murder committed upon the person of his master. But that which our fathers saw themselves with their own eyes, whiles they were students at Athens, is more evident than all that hath been said already. And this it was: A certain fellow had by stealth entered into the Temple of *Esculapius*, and stolen from thence the fairest and goodliest jewels both of gold and silver among the oblations there, which were most portable, and thinking that he was not eiped by any creature, made means to get away again secretly. The dog which kept the said Temple, and was named *Capparus*, did his best to bark and bay; but seeing none of the sextanes and wardens of the Church to come for all that, pursued the Church-robber as he fled away; and notwithstanding that he flung stones at him, yet gave not over his pursuit, but traced him hard at heels all the night. When day light was come, he would not approach neer unto him, but kept aloof, followed him with his eye and never lost the sight of him; and notwithstanding that he cast him bread and other meat, he would none: so the night following the thief laid him down to sleep, the dog likewise kept all night hard by him; and the morning morning when he took his way again, the dog likewise arose and went after. Met he any passengers or waiting men, he would fawn upon them and wag his tail; contrariwise he barked eagerly at the thief, and was ready to flie upon him. They who had the charge to follow with huy and cry, being informed thus much by the Travellers whom they met, as also of what bigness, colour and hair the dog was, continued their chase more willingly, and made such hot pursuit that they overtook the fellow at *Crommyon*, and from thence brought him to Athens. The dog he marched before them all and lead them the way, as jocund, pleasant, and gamefome as possibly could be, as taking great joy that this Church-robber had been the game and prey that he had hunted and gotten. The Athenians when they heard the truth of this matter related unto them, ordained that the said dog should have a certain measure of corn allowed him at the Cities charges for his bread, and gave an especial charge to the Priests of that temple, to have a care of him so long as he lived: following herein the kindness and liberality of their ancestors, which they extended in times past to a mule. For what time as *Pericles* caused to be built the Temple of *Minerva*, named *Hecatompodon*, within the castle of the City, there were, as ordinary for such buildings, conveyed thither daily stones, timber, and other stuff in carts and wagons drawn with beasts. Now when many of those mules which before time had willingly and painfully served, were now for very age discharged and sent away to pasture: one there was among the rest, who every day would come into the high broad street *Ceramicus*, and go before those draught beasts which drew up stones to the mount, yea and accompany them, as if he encouraged and hartned them to labour and travel. The people of Athens commending and admiring the good heart and industrious mind of the beast, gave order by a publick decree for his maintenance and keeping at the Cities cost, no less then they would have done for an old bruised souldier, who now was past service. And therefore we must say, that those Philosophers who hold: That there is no communion nor society of justice between unbrut beasts, say true; if they restrain their speech unto those creatures only, which live in the sea and deep bottomless waters, with whom indeed we can have no fellowship at all of good will, love and affection, as being beasts far remote from all gentleness, sweet converse, and good nature: and therefore *Homer* speaking unto a man, who seemed to be inhumane, cruel and unfociable, said elegantly thus:

The blackish blew sea I think well,  
Engendered thee, thou art so fell.

as if he would thereby give us to understand, that the sea brings forth no creature that is milde, lovely, meek and gentle: but he that should say as much and apply the former proposition unto the land-beasts, were himself cruel and savage; if I say, he denied that there was no reciprocal commerce of amity and justice between King *Lysimachus* and his dog *Hircanus*, who remained continually alone about his corps when he was dead: yea and at the time that it was burned in the funeral fire, leapt into it and was consumed into ashes with him for company. And reported it is, that there was another dog named *Alar*, did no less which *Pyrrhus* kept, I mean not the king of that name, but another private person: for.

for after his master was dead, he would never stir from the body; and when the corps was carried forth in a couch upon the bier, he leapt upon it and was born withal: and finally sprung himself in to the fire and was burnt with him.

When King Porus was fore wounded in a battle against King Alexander the Great; the Elephant upon whose back he rode and fought, drew forth with his trunk right gently for fear of doing harm, many darts, arrows and javelins wherewith he was shot; and albeit himself was grievously hurt, yet never fainted he and gave over before he perceived that his Lord the King was ready to reel and sink down, by reason of the effusion of blood which he had lost: and then fearing that he would fall from on high to the ground, he gently couched and yielded with his body downward to the earth, that he might alight with ease and without all danger.

King Alexander's horse called *Eucaphus*, all while he was bare without his saddle and caparison, would well enough abide that his keeper should mount upon his back; was he trapped once and richly set out with the Kings royal furniture, harness, and ornament, he would suffer none to sit him but Alexander alone. And if others came near him, and went about to get upon his back, he would run a front upon them snuffing, snorting and neighing, rising up all afore at them; and if they made not good haste to retire behind him and fly, he would be sure to have them under his feet and trample over them. I know full well that you think these examples are huddled together in a confused variety; but surely it is no easie matter to find any action of these noble beasts, which representeth one bare virtue and no more: for together with their kindness and natural love there is to be seen a certain desire of honour: amid their generosity a man may perceive a kind of industrious sagacity and wisdom; neither is their wit and subtilty void of courage and magnanimity: howbeit, if men be disposed to distinguish and separate one from another by themselves; the dogs do represent an example of a mild and gentle nature, together with an haughty courage and high mind, namely when they pass by and turn aside from those that submit themselves before them, according to that which *Homer* saith in one place:

*The dogs ran forth with open mouth,  
they cryed and barkt again:  
Ulysses with his staffe let fall,  
and stirr'd not again.*

For their manner is not to fight any longer against those who humbly fall down prostrate, or shew any semblance of lowly suppliants. Certes, the report of a principal Indian dog, who being for a singularity above all other, sent to fight a combat before King Alexander the Great, when there was let loose at him first a stag, then a wild boar, and afterwards a beare made no reckoning of them, nor deigned once to stir out of his place nor rise up: but when he saw a lion presented unto him, then incontinently he stood upon his feet, and addressed himself to the combat; shewing evidently that he esteemed the lion alone worthy to fight with him, and disdain'd all the rest. As for those here among us which are wont to hunt hares, if they themselves chance to kill them with fair play in the open field, they take pleasure to tear them in pieces; they lick and lap their blood full willingly: but if the hare being out of heart and in despair of her self, as many times it falleth out, employ all the force and strength that he hath in one course for all, and run her self out of breath, so as her wind is now clean gone, and she dead withal; the hounds finding her so, will not once touch her, but they keep a wagging of their tails round about her body, as if they would faye it, is not for greediness of hares flesh, but an earnest desire to winne the prize in running, that we hunt thus as we do.

As touching the craft and subtilty which is in beasts; so farasmuch as there be infinite examples thereof, overpass I will the wily pranks of foxes, wolves, cranes and jays: for common they be and every man teach them; only produce I will the testimony of wise *Thales*, the most ancient of the seven sages, who by report was not least admired for his skill and cunning, in that he discovered rightwell the craftiness in a beast, and went beyond it. There was a company of mules that had fat a load, and were carrying it from one place to another; and as they passed through the foord of a river, one of them chanced to fall under his burden into the water: the salt in his sack by this means taking wet, melted and resolved into water for the most part of it, in such sort as the mule having recovered himself upon all fours, found that he was well lightened of his load, and presently conceived what was the reason: which gave so deep an impression in his memory, that ever after, as often as he was to go thorow a river, he would be sure to stoop and couch his body low; first leaning of one side, and then of another, purposely and for the nonce to wet and drench the bags on his back which had salt in them. *Thales* hearing of this unhappy and shrewd wit of the mules commanded the mulster to fill the sacks with the same weight of wool and sponges, instead of salt; to lay them upon his back, and so to drive him with the rest. The mule left not his old wont; but when he perceived that he was overhailed now with water besides his ordinary load of wool and sponges, he took himself in the manner, and found that his craft now flood him in small stead, but did him hurt; wherupon, ever after, he would go upright whensoever he waded, and was very careful that none of his packs or carriages should once (though full against his will) touch the water.

Partridges have another kind of subtilty and craft by themselves, and the same proceedeth from a certain natural love and motherly affection to their young birds, whom, when they are yet so feeble that they cannot fly and make shift for themselves being pursued, they teach to cast themselves on

their backs, with their heels and bellies upward, and to hold either a clot of earth or some lock of straw or such like stuff, to cover and shadow their bodies withal: mean while, the old owens turn those that follow in chase another way, drawing them toward themselves in flying to and fro just before them, even at their feet, seeming (as it were) by little and little to retire, and making as though they were scarce able to arise from the earth, and as if they were ready to be taken, untill such time as they have trained the fowlers far from their little ones.

The hares when they have kindled, and be afraid of the hunters, return to their forms, and carry their leverets, some one way and some another, so as many times there is an arpent or good acre of ground distance between them, to the end that if either hound or hunter should come upon them, they might not be all in danger at once to be taken; and they themselves run up and down backward and forward in divers places, crossing this way and that way, leaving their tracks very confused, and in the end take one great leap as far as ever they can, from their forsook footings, and spring unto their form, where they rest and take their repose.

The bear being surpris'd with a certain drowsie disease, called *Pholia*, before she be altogether so heavily benumbed and stupified therewith, that she cannot well stir, maketh clean the cave into which the meaneth to retire her self: and when she is to go down into it, all the way besides which is toward it, the treadeth very lightly, bearing her self (as it were) upon her tiptoes: and being come near it, she turnes upon her back, and so citcheth forward her body as well as she can into her den.

Of red deer, the hynds commonly calve near unto high-way sides, where ravenous beasts, such as live by prey, do not ordinarily haunt. The flags when they perceive themselves to be far, well beshadowed, and good vision, seek blind corners to hide themselves in, for the better security of their lives, not trusting then to their heels and swift running.

The land-urchins are so wise and wary in defending and saving themselves, that they have thereby given occasion of this proverb:

*A thousand miles and mo,  
of crafty fox there are:  
The urchin one doth know,  
and that is singular,*

for when the urchin perceiveth Renard coming toward him,

*All of a lump, as round as bur or ball,  
His body lies, with prickles best withal:  
No means she hath, for thorny bristles thick,  
To bite, to pinch, or touch him to the quick,*

and yet more ingenious is their forecast and providence for the feeding of their little ones; for in Autumn, a little before vintage time, you shall have an urchin or hedge-hog get under a vine, and with his feet shake the stock untill the grapes from their branches be fallen upon the ground, then he rolleth himself round like a foot-ball among them, and catcheth them up with his sharp prickles; inasmuch as when we stood all of us sometime to behold the manner of it, it seemed as if a cluster of grapes had been quick, and to creep upon the ground; so beset went he and covered all over with gaps: then so soon as he is gotten into his hole or nest, he offereth them unto his young ones to eat, to take from him and lay up for store. This hole hath two faces or prospects; the one regardeth the south, the other looketh into the North. When they foresee change and alteration of weather, like as skillful ship-masters turn their sails according to the time; even so, they shut up that hole or cuttle which standeth in the wind, and set open the other; which when one of the City *Cyzicum* had once observed and learned, he got a great name and reputation of a weather wife man, as if he foreknew of himself by some singular gift, and could foretell from which coast the wind would blow.

As touching social love and fidelity, accompanied with wit and understanding, the Elephants as King *Juba* writeth, shew unto us an evident example: for they that hunt them are wont to dig deep trenches, and chase them over with a thin coat of light straw or some small brush. Now when one of the heard chanceth to fall into a trench, for many of them use to go and feed together, all the rest bring a mighty deal of stones, rammel wood, and whatsoever they can get, which they fling into the ditch for to fill it up, to the end that their fellow may have means thereby to get up again. The same writer recordeth also that Elephants use to pray unto the gods, to purify themselves with the sea water, and to adore the sun rising, by lifting up their trunked snout into the air (as if it were their hand) and all this of their own accord and untaught. And to say a truth of all beasts the Elephant is most devout and religious, as K. *Ptolemaeus Philopater* hath well testified: for after he had defeated *Antiochus*, and was minded to render condigna thanks unto the gods for so glorious a victory, among many other beasts for sacrifice, he slew four Elephants: but afterwards being much disquieted and troubled in the night with fearful dreams, and namely, that God was wroth and threatened him for such an ungodly and strange sacrifice; he made means to appease his ire by many other propitiatory oblations, and among the rest, he dedicated unto him four Elephants of brass, instead of those which were killed: to testify the sociable kindness and good nature which lions show one unto another; for the younger sort which are more able and nimble of body, lead forth with them into the chase, for to hunt and prey those that be elder and unwieldy; who when they be weary, sit them down and rest, waiting for the other;

other; who being gone forward to hunt if they meet with game and speed, then they all set up a roaring note altogether, much like unto the bellowing of bulls, and thereby call their fellows to them; which the old Lions hearing, presently run unto them, whereby they take their part, and devour they prey in common.

To speak of the amorous affections of brute beasts, some are very savage and exceeding furious: others more milde, and not altogether unlike unto the courting and wooing used between man and woman, yea, and I may say to you, smelling somewhat of wanton and venetious behaviour: and such was the love of an Elephant, a counter fute or corvill with *Aristophanes* the Grammarian, to a woman in *Alexandria*, that sold chaplets or garlands of flowers: neither did the Elephant then less affection to her than the man, for he would bring her awayes out of the fruit market, as he pulled by some apples, pears, or other fruit, and then he would stay long with her, yea, and otherwhilke put his snout, as it were his hand, with her bosome under her parley, and gently feel her soft paps and white skin about her fair breast.

A dragon also there was enamoured upon a young maiden of *Ætolia*: it would come to visit her by night, creep along the very bare skin of her body, yea, and winde about her without any harm in the world done unto her, either willingly or otherwise; and then would gently depart from her by the break of day: now when this serpent had continued thus for certain nights together ordinarily; at the last the friends of the young damoel removed her, and sent her out of the way a good way off; but the dragon for three or four nights together came not to the house, but wandered and sought up and down here and there as it should seem for the wench; in the end, with much ado, having found her out, he came and clapped her about, not in that milde and gentle manner as before time, but after a rougher sort; for having with other windings and knots bound her hands and armes fast unto her body, with the rest of his tail he flapped and beat her legs, shewing a gentle kind of amorous displeasure and anger, yet so, as it might seem he had more affection to pardon, than desire to punish her.

As for the goose in *Ægypt* which fell in love with a boy; and the goat that cast a fancy to *Glauce* the minstrel wench: because they are histories so well known, and in every mans mouth: for that also I suppose you are weary already of many tedious tales and narrations, I forbear to relate them before you: but the merles, crows, and perquoques of popinjays, which learn to prate, and yield their voice and breath to them that teach him, so pliable, so tractable and docible, for to form and expresse a certain number of letters and syllables as they would have them, me thinks they plead sufficiently, and are able to defend the cause of all other beasts, teaching us as I may say, by learning of us, that capable they be not only of the inward discourse of reason, but also of the outward gift uttered by distinct words, and an articulate voice: were it not then a meer ridiculous mockery, to compare these creatures with other dumb beasts which have not so much voice in them, as will serve to howle withall, or to expresse agroan and complaint? but how great a grace and elegance there is in the natural voices and songs of these, which they resound of themselves, without learning of any masters, the best musicians and most sufficient poets that ever were do testify, who compare their sweetest canticles and poems unto their songs of swans and nightingals: now forasmuch as to teach, sheweth greater use of reason; then to learn we are to give credit unto *Aristotle*, who saith: that brute beasts are induced also with that gift, namely, that they teach one another: for he will ch that the nightingale hath been seen to train up her young ones in singing; and this experience may serve to testify on his behalf, that those nightingals sing nothing so well, which are taken very young out of the nest, and were not fed nor brought up by their dams; for those that be nourished by them, learn withal, of them to sing, and that not for money and gain, nor yet for glory, but because they take pleasure to sing well, and love the elegance above the profit of the voice: and to this purpose report I will unto you a story which I have heard of many, as well *Greeks* as *Romans*, who were present and eye witnesses: There was a Barber within the City of *Rome*, who kept a shop over against the Temple, called *Grecofisi*, or *Forum Græcum*, and there nourished a pie, which would so talk, prate, and chafe, as it was wonderfull, counting the speech of men and women, the voice of beasts, and sound of musickall instruments, and that voluntarily of her self without the constraint of any person, only she accustomed her self so to do, and took a certain pride and glory in it, endeavouring all that she could to leave nothing unspoken, or not exprest: now it hapned that there were solemnized great funerals of one of the wealthiest personages in the City, and the corps was carried forth in a great state, with the sound of many trumpets that marched before; in which solemnity, for that the manner was that the pomp and whole company should stand still and rest a time in that very place, it fell out so, that the Trumpeters who were right cunning and excellent in their Art, stayed there, sounding melodiously all the while: the morrow after this, the pie became mute and made no noise at all, nor uttered not so much as her natural voice which she was wont to do, for to expresse her ordinary and necessary passions; inasmuch, as they who before time wondered at her voice and prating, marvelled now much more at her silence, thinking it a very strange matter to pass by the shop and hear her say nothing: so as there grew some suspicion of others prating the same art and trade, that they had given her some poison: howbeit, most men guessed that it was the violent sound of the trumpets which had made her deaf, and that together with the sense of hearing, her voice also was utter extinct: but it was neither the one nor the other; for the truth was this, as appeared afterwards: she was in a deep study,

body; and through meditation retired within her self, whilst her minde was bume and did prepare her voice like an instrument of musick, for imitation; for at length her voice came again and wakened (as it were) all on a sudden, uttering none of her old notes nor that which she was accustomed before to prate and counterfeit; only the sound of trumpets she resembled, keeping the same periods, the same stops, pauses and strains; the same changes, the same reports, and the same times and measures: a thing, that confirmed more and more that which I have said before; namely, that there is more use of reason in teaching of themselves, than in learning by another. Yet can I not contain my self, but I must needs in this place recite unto you one lesson that I my self saw a dog to take out, when I was at *Rome*: This dog served a player who professed to counterfeit many persons, and to represent sundry gestures; and among other pretty tricks which his master taught him, answerable to diverse passions, occasions and occurrences presented upon the stage, his master made an experiment with him with a drogue or medicine which was somniferous indeed and sleepey, but must be taken and supposed deadly; who rook the piece of bread wherein the said drogue was mingled, and within a little while after he had swallowed it down, he began to make as though he trembled, quaked, yea and staggered, as if he had been astonished, in the end he stretched out himself, and lay as stiff as one that dead, suffering himself to be pulled, haled, and drawn from one place to another, like a very block; according as the present argument and matter of the play required; but afterwards, when he understood by that which was said and done, that his time was come, and that he had caught his hint, then began he at the first to lie gently by little and little; as if he had newly revived or awakened, and turned out of a dead sleep, and lifting up his head, began to look about him to and fro; at which sight all the beholders wondered not a little; afterwards he arose upon his feet, and went directly to him unto whom he was to go, very jocund and merry: this pageant was performed so artificially, I cannot tell whether to say or naturally, that all those who were present, and the Emperor himself (for *Vespasian* the father was there in person, within the theater of *Marcellus*) took exceeding great pleasure, and joyed wonderfully to see it.

But peradventure we may deserve well to be mocked for our labour, praising beasts as we do so highly, for that they be so docible and apt to learn, seeing that *Democritus* sheweth and proveth, that we our selves have been Apprentices and Scholars to them in the principall things of this life; namely, spider, for spinning, weaving, denning and drawing up a rent; to the swallow, for architecture and building; to the melodious swan and thrill nightingale; for vocal musick, and all by way of imitation. As for the Art of physick, and the three kinds thereof, we may see in the nature of beasts, the greatest and most generous part of each of them: for they use not only that, which ordained drogues *Mercurius* and medicines to purge ill humours out of the body, seeing that the tortoise take azon; *Ursus*, *Canis*, *Mustela*, when they have eaten a serpent; dogs also when they be troubled with choler of the gall, purge them with a certain herbe, thereupon called dogs graze; the dragon likewise if he finde his eyes to be dim, cleareth, scoureth, and dispatcheth the cloudiness thereof with fenel; and the bear so soon as he is gon out of her den, seeketh out the first thing that she doth, the wilde herbe called *Acron*, that into say, wake-robin, for the acrimony and sharpness thereof openeth her bowels when they are grown together, yea, and at other times finding her self upon fullness, given to loath and distaste all food, she goeth to find out ants nests, where she sitteth down lilling out the tongue which is glib and soft, with kind of sweet and slimy humour, untill it be full of ants and their egges, then draweth it again, swalloweth them down, and thereby cureth her loathing stomach. Semblably it is said, that the *Egyptians* having observed their bird *Ibis*, which is the black stork, to give her self a clister of sea water, by imitation of her, did the like by themselves. Certain it is, that their Priests use to besprinkle, purifie and hollow themselves with that water out of which she hath drunk; for let any water be venomous, or otherwise hurtful and unholsonne, the *Ibis* will none of it: but also some beasts there be, which feeling themselves ill at ease, are cured by diet and abstinence; as namely wolves and lions, when they have devoured too much flesh, and are cloyed or glatted therewith, they lie downe, take their ease, cherishing and keeping themselves warme.

It is reported likewise of the tygre, that when a young kiddie was given unto her, she fasted two dayes, according to the diet which she useth, before she touched it, and the third day being very hungry, called for other food, ready to burst the cage wherein she was enclosed, and forbear to eat the said kid, supping that now she was to keep it with her, as a familiar and domestick companion. Nay, that which more is, recorded it is, that elephants practise the feat of Chyruerie; for standing bynke that are wounded in a battel, they can skill of drawing out tronchions of speeres, javelin heads, arrows and darts out of their bodies, with such dexterity and ease, that they will neither tear and hurt their flesh, nor put them to any pain whatsoever. The goats of *Candy* when they be thrust into the body with arrows or darts, fall to eat the herb *Dihamus*, and thereby thrust them out, and make them fall off with facility, and by this means they have taught women with child, that this herb hath a property to cause abortive birth, and the child in their wombe to miscarry: for the said goats are no sooner wounded, but they run presently to this herb, and never seek after any other remedy. Wonderful these things are (no doubt) howbeit less miraculous, when we consider the natures of beasts, how they be capable of Arithmetick, and have the knowledge of numbering and keeping accounts: as the kine and oxen about *Susa*; for appointed they be there to water the Kings gardens, drawing up water in buckets with a device of wheels that they turn about in manner of a windle; and every one of them for their part must draw up an hundred buckets in a day; so many they will do

just,

just, but more you shall not get of them, neither by fair means nor foul; for no sooner have they performed their task, but presently they give over, and impossible it is to force them any farther than their account: notwithstanding trial hath been made; so justly and exactly they both know, and also keep the reckoning, as *Ctesias* the Guidian hath left in writing. As for the *Lybians* they mock the *Aegyptians*, for reporting this of their beak called *Oryx*, as a great singularity, that he setteth up a certain cry that very day and hour, when as the star named by them *Sorbe*, and by us the *Dogs*, or *Sirius* doth arise: for they give out, that with them all their goats together, at the very instant when the said star mounteth up within their horizon with the sun, will be sure to turn and look into the cell: and this they hold to be an infallible sign of the revolution of that star, agreeing just with the rules and observations of the Mathematicians. But to close up and conclude at length this discourse, that it may come to an end, let us (as it were) take in hand the sacred anchor, and for a small conclusion knit up all with a brief speech of their divinity and prophetic nature. For certain it is, that one of the greatest, most noble and ancient parts of divination or soothsaying, is that which being drawn from the flight and singing of birds, they call *Augury*: and in truth the nature of these birds being so quick, so active, so spiritual, and in regard of that agility and nimbleness very pliable, and obsequent to all visions and fantasies presented, offereth it self unto God, as a proper instrument to be used and turned which way he will: one while to motion, another while into certain voices, lays and tunes, yea and into divers and sundry gestures: now to *Rop* and *flay*, anon to *drive* and *put forward*, in manner of the winds; by means whereof he impeacheth and holdeth back some actions and affections, yea and directeth others unto their end and accomplishment. And this no doubt is the reason that *Enripides* termeth all birds in general the heralds and messengers of the gods: and particularly *Socrates* said, that he was become a fellow fervitor with the swans: semblably, among the Kings, *Pyrrhus* was well pleased when as men called him the Eagle, and *Antiochus* took as great pleasure to be called the *Sacred* or the *Hawk*. Whereas contrariwise, when we are disposed to mock, to flout, or to reproach those that be dull, indocile and blockish, we call them fishes. To be short, an hundred thousand things there be that God doth shew, foretell and prognosticate unto us by the means of beasts, as well those of the land beneath, as the fowls of the air above. But who that shall plead in the behalf of fishes or water-creatures, will not be able to alledge so much as one: for, deaf they be all and dumb; \*blind also for any fore-sight or providence that they have, as being cast into a baleful place, and bottomless gulf, where impious Atheists and rebellious Titans or Giants against God are bestowed; where they have no sight of God, no more than in hell where damned souls are; where the reasonable and intellectual part of the soul is utterly extinct, and the rest that remaineth, drenched or rather drowned (as a man would say) in the most base and vile sensual part, so as they seem rather to pant than to live.

## HERACLEON.

Pluck up your brows, good *Phadimus*, open your eyes, awake your spirits, and bestir your self in the defence of us poor Islanders and maritime inhabitants: for here we have heard not a discourse I wis merrily devised to pass away the time, but a serious plea premeditated and laboured before hand, a very Rhetorical declamation which might seem well to be pronounced as the bar in judicial Court, or delivered from a pulpit and tribunal before a publick audience.

## PHADIMUS.

Now verily, good sir *Heracleon*, this a meer surpize and a manifest ambush laid craftily of set purpose; for this brave Orator (as you see) being yet fasting and sober himself; and having studied his oration all night long, hath set upon us at the disadvantage, and altogether unprovided, as being still heavy in the head, and drenched with the wine that we drank yesterday. Howbeit, we ought not now to draw back and recule for all this: for being as I am an affectionate lover of the Poet *Pindarus*, I would not for any good in the world, hear this sentence of his justly alledged against me.

*When games of prize and combats once are set,*

*Who shrinketh back, and doth pretend some let,*

*In darkness hides and deep obscurity,*

*His fame of virtue and activity.*

for at great leisure we are all, and not the dances only be at repose; but also dogs and horses, cast-nets, drags, and all manner of nets besides: yea and this day there is a general cessation given to all creatures as well on land as in the sea, for to give ear unto this disputation. And as for you my masters here, have no doubt, nor be you afraid; for I will use my liberty in a mean, and not draw out any Apology or counterplea in length, by alledging the opinions of Philosophers; the fables of the *Aegyptians*; the headless tales of the Indians or *Lybians*, without proof of any testimonies: but quickly come to the point, and look what examples be most manifest and evident to the eye, and such as shall be testified and verified by all those Mariners or Travellers that are acquainted with the Seas, some few of them I will produce. And yet verily in the proofs and arguments drawn from creatures above the ground, there is nothing to impeach the fight, the view of them being so apparent and daily presented unto our eye, whereas the sea affordeth us the fight of a few effects, within it and those hardly and with much ado (as it were) by a glance and glimmering light, hiding from us the most part of the breeding and feeding of fishes: the means also that they use, either to assail one another or to defend themselves, wherein I assure you there be actions of prudence, memory, society, and equity not a few, which because they are not known, it cannot chuse but our discourse as touching this argument will be less enriched and enlarged with examples, and so by consequence the cause more hardly defended and maintained.

Over

Once and besides, this advantage have land beasts, that by reason of their affinity as it were, and daily conversation with men, they get a tincture, as one would say from them, of their manners and fashions, and consequently enjoy a kind of nurture, teaching, discipline, and apprenticeship by imitation: which is able to dulce, allay, and mitigate all the bitterness and austerity of their nature, no less than fresh water mingled with the sea, maketh it more sweet and potable: likewise all the unfeeling wildness, and heavy unwieldiness therein, it stirreth up, when the same is once moved and set on foot by the motions that it learneth by conversing with men: whereas on the other side the life of sea-creatures being far remote and divided by long and large confines from the frequentation of men, having no help of any thing without, nor any thing to be taught it by use and customs, is altogether solitary and by it self, as nature brought it forth, so it continueth and goeth not abroad; neither mingled nor mixed with foreign fashions, and all by reason of the place, which they inhabit, and not occasioned by the quality of their own nature, for surely their nature conceiving and retaining within it self as much discipline and knowledge as it is possible for to attain unto and apprehend, exhibiteth unto many tame and familiar eels (which they call *faced*) that use to come to hand; such as are among the rest, those in the fountain *Arethusa*, besides many other fishes in divers places, which are very obedient and obsequious when they are called by their names, as is reported of *Marcus Crafus* his lamprey, for which he wept when it was dead; and when *Domitius* upon a time reproached him for it; by way of mockery in this wise: Were not you the man who wept for your lamprey when it was dead; he came upon him presently in this manner: And were not you the kind and sweet husband who having buried three wives never shed tear for the matter? the crocodiles not only know the voice of the Priests when they call unto them, and endure to be handled and stroked by them, but also yawn and offer their teeth unto them to be picked and cleaned with their hands, yea and to be powdered and rubbed all over with Linnen clothes. It is not long since that *Philinus* a right good man well reputed, after his return from his voyage out of *Aegypt*, where he had been to see the Country recounted unto us, that in the City of *Anteus* he had seen a old woman lye all upon a little pallet together with a crocodile, who very decently and modestly crept close along by her side. And it is found in old records, that when one of the Kings called *Ptolemy*, called unto the sacred crocodile, it would not come nor obey the voice of the Priests, notwithstanding they gently prayed and intreated her; a sign thought to be a prognostick and preface of his death, which soon after ensued: whereby it is plain that the kind and generation of these water beasts, is neither incapable, nor deprived of that sacred and highly esteemed science of divination and foretelling future things; considering that even in the Country of *Lycia*; between the Cities of *Phelus* and *Myze*, that is, a village called *Sura*, where I hear say, the inhabitants use to sit and behold the fishes swimming in the water, like as in other places they observe birds flying in the air, marking their lying in wait and ambush, their scudding away and pursuit after them; whereby according to a certain skill that is among them, they can foretell future things to come. But this may suffice to shew and declare that their nature is not altogether estranged from us, nor unfeeling.

As touching their proper wit, and natural prudence, wherein there is no mixture at all borrowed from other, this is in general, a great argument thereof, that there is no creature that swimmeth or lieth in the waters, except those which stick to stones, and cleave to rocks, that is so facile to be caught by man, or otherwise to be taken without trouble, as *Affs* are by *Wolves*; *Bees* by the birds *Meropes*; *Grashoppers* by *Swallows*; or *Serpents* by *Stags*, who were so easily caught up by them; in *Greece* they took the name *ἄραπος*, not *ἄραπος*, that is to say, of lightness: but *ἄραπος*, *ἄραπος*, that is to say, of drawing up a *Serpent* out of his hole. The shee calleth as it were the *Woolf*, by the foot; like as by report the *Leopard* allureth unto him the most part of *Beasts*, who are willing to approach him for the pleasure they take in his smell, and above all others the *Ape*. But sea-creatures generally all, have a certain inbred sagacity, a wary perceivance before hand, which maketh them to be suspicious and circumspect, yea, and to stand upon their guard against all forelaying; so that the art of Hunting and catching them is not a small piece of work, and a simple cunning; but that which requireth a great number of engines of all sorts, and asketh wonderful devices, and subtil flights to compass and go beyond them; and this appeareth by the experience of such things, as we have daily in our hands: For first and foremost the cane or reed of which the angle-rod is made, sheweth would not have to be big and thick, and yet they had need of such an one as is tough and strong, hence pluck up and hold the fishes, which commonly do mightily fling and struggle when they are caught; but they chuse rather that which is small and slender, for fear lest if it cast a broad shadow, it might move the doubt and suspicion that is naturally in fishes; moreover the line they make use with many water knots, but desire to have it as plain and even as possibly may be without any roughness, for that this giveth as it were some denunciation unto them of fraud and deceit: they take order likewise that the hairs which reach to the hook, should seem as white as possibly they can devise, for the whiter they be, the less are they seen in the water, for the conformity and likeness in colour to it: as for that which the Poet *Homer* saith:

*Down right to bottom of the sea,  
like plumb of lead she went,*

X x x

That

\* Kipes.

That poseth down the fishers hook,  
and holds the line extent;  
Which passing through transparent \* born,  
that rural Ox head bare,  
To greedy fishes secretly  
brings death ere they be ware.

Some misunderstanding these verses, would infer thereupon, that men in old time used the hairs of an Ox tail to make their lines withal, saying that this word *Kipes*, which commonly in Greek is taken for an horn, significth in this place hair; and that hereupon *καπες* is derived, which betokeneth to shear or cut hair; and *κipes*, that is to say, sheering or clipping; as also, that from hence it is that *Archibolus* teacheth a dairy and wanton Minion, who taketh delight in tricking and trimming the hairs, and wearing a peruke curiously set, *καπες αλφειν*. But surely, this their collection is not true, for they used, as we do, the hair of horse tails, to make their angle-lines withal, chusing those that grow either on Stone-horses or Geldings, and not of Mares, for that ever and anon they wet their tails with stallings, and by that means the hairs of them are tender, and apt to break. And *Aristotle* himself writeth, that in those verses above cited, there is no deep matter that requirith such an exquisite and curious scanning; for that (in truth) fishers use to overcast the line near unto the hook with a piece of horn, for fear lest fishes when they have swallowed down the hook, should with their teeth bite or fret a two the line. And as for the hooks, they use those that be round, for to take Mullers, and the filkes *Amie*, because they have narrow mouths; for very wary they are to avoid the longer and straiter kinde; yes, and many times the Muller suspecteth the round hook, swimming round about it, and flurrying with the tail the bait and meat that is upon it, and never lins flapping, until he have shaken it off, and then devourer it; but say, he cannot speed that way, he draws his mouth together, and with the very edge and utmost brim of his lips he nibbleth about the bait, until he have gnawn it off. The wide mouthed Sea-Pike, when he perceiveth that he is caught with the hook, sheweth herein more valor and animosity then the Elephant; for he plucketh not out of another the dart or arrow sticking the body; but maketh means to deliver himself from the said hook, shaking his head, and wringing it to and fro, until he have enlarged the wound, and made it wider; enduring most stoutly and resolutely the dolor to be thus rent and torn, and never gives over, until he have wrested and wrung the hook out of his body. The Sea-Fox, will not many times come near unto an hook, he reculeth back, and is afraid of some deceitful gull; but say that he chance to be surprized, quickly he maketh shift winde himself off again: for such is his strength, agility, and slippery moisture withal, that he will turn himself upside down with his tail upward, in such sort, that when by overturning his stomach all within is come forth, it cannot chuse but the hook loose the hold which it had and falleth forth.

These examples do shew a certain intelligence, and withal a witty and ready execution of that which is expedient for them, as need and occasion requirith. But other fishes there be, which besides this industrious sagacity in shifting for themselves, do represent a sociable nature and loving affection one unto another; as for example, the *Amie* and *Scari*: for when the *Scarus* hath swallowed down an hook, other of his fellows come leaping about him, and gnaw the line asunder; and if peradventure there be any of them gotten within a net, and entangled, their companions give them their tails without, which they hold as fast as they can with their teeth, and the other lie pulling and haling of them, until they have drawn them forth. As for the *Amie*, they come to rescue and succor one of their one kinde with more audacity, for putting the line against their back, they set to it the ridge-bone, which is sharp soothed in manner of a saw, and with it they endeavor to file and saw it twain. And verily, there is not a creature living on the land (as far as we know) that hath the heart and courage to aid their fellows being in danger of life, neither Bear, Bore, Lyon, nor Leopard. Well may those gather altogether in heaps, which are of the same kinde, and run one with another round about the cirque or show-place within the Amphitheaters: but to rescue or succor one another, neither know they the means how, nor have the courage to do it: for they fly and leap backward as far as ever they can possibly from one that is hurt or killed in their sight: As for that story, my good friend, the alledge of the Elephant, that they cast into the ditch or trench wherinto one of their company is fallen, all that ever they can get and gather together, thereby to make a bank, that he may raise himself upon, and so get forth, 'tis very strange, and far set: and because it cometh out of the books of King *Juba*, it would seem to command us (as it were) by a Royal Edict, to give credit thereto. But say it were true, there be examples of Sea-creatures enough to prove that for sociable kindness and prudence withal, there be many of them which give no place to the wisest of all those which the land affordeth; but as touching their communion and fellow-ship, we will treat thereof apart, and there anon.

To return unto our fishers: perceiving as they do, that the most part of fishes scorn the line and hook, as fiale devices, or such as be discovered, they betake themselves to fine force, and shut them up within great casting nets, like as the Persians use to serve their enemies in their wars, making this account, that if they be enclosed once within those nets, they are theirs sure enough, as if no discourse of reason in the world, no wit and policy whatsoever will serve them to escape: for with hoop-nets or cast-nets are Mullers caught, and the *Julides*, the *Marmirs* also, the *Sargis*, Sea Coggeon, and the wide mouthed Pikes: but such as plunge themselves down to the bottom of the water, called thereupon *Βορυσκα*, such

such as are the barbel, the guilthead, and the scorpions of the sea, those they use to catch and draw up with great drags and sweepnets. And verily this kind of net *Homer* calleth *Παναγρη*, which is as much to say, as catching and swooping all afore it. And yet as cunningly devised as these engines be, the sea-dogs have devices to avoid the same, as also the wide mouthed *labrax*; for when he perceiveth that the said sweepnet is a drawing along the bottom, he setteth all his strength to, scrappeth in the catch, and putteth it fly, as he maketh an hole therein; and when he hath thus digged (as it were) as deep a trench as will hide him against the incursion of the net, then he coucheth himself close within it, waiting until the net be glided over him and past. The dolphin, if he be surprized, and perceive that he is inclosed and clasped within the armes (as one would say) of a net, endureth his fortune resolutely, and never dismayeth for the matter; nay, he is very well appayed and pleased; for he is glad in his heart, that he hath so many fishes about him caught in the same net, which he may devour and make merry with at his pleasure without pains taking; and when he sees that he is drawn up near to the land, he maketh no more ado but knows a great hole in the net, and away he goes. But say that he cannot dispatch this feat so quickly, but he comes into the fishers hands, yet he dieth not for this at the first time; for they draw a rillior reed thorow the skin along his creel, and so let him go: but if he suffer himself to be taken the second time, then they beat and cudgell him well; and know him they do by the feames or skars remaining of the forsaide reed. Howbeit, this falleth out very seldom; for the most part of them, when they have been once pardoned, do acknowledge what favour they have received, and beware for ever after how they do a fault and come into danger again. But whereas there be infinit other examples of subtle flights and witty wiles which fishes have invented, both to force and prevent a peril, and also to escape out of a danger, that of the cuttle is worthy to be recited and would not be passed over in silence: for having about her neck a bladder or bag hinged, full of a black muddy liquor, which thereupon they call *Blasor*, that is to say, Ink: when she perceives her self beset and compassed about, so as she is ready to be taken, the cuttle forth from her the said ink full craftily, that by troubling the water of the sea all about her, and making it look thick and black, she might avoid the sight of the fisher, and so make an escape unfeen. Following herein the gods in *Homer*, who many times with overspreading a black cloud withdraw and steal away those whom they are minded to save: but enough of this.

Now as touching their craft and subtilty in assailing and chasing others, there be many experiments and examples presented unto our sight: for the fish called the Star, knowing full well, that whatsoever he toucheth will melt and resolve, offereth and yieldeth her body to be handled, suffering as many assaults by her, or approach near to stroke him: and as for the cramp-fish *Tarpedo*, you all know well enough her powerful property; not onely to benum and stupify those who touch her, but also to unlimb a stupefied quality, even along the maines and cords of the net, to the very hands of the fishermen who have caught her. And some there be who report thus much moreover, as having farther experience of her wonderful nature, that in case she escape and get away alive, if men do baddle aloft in the water, or dash the same upon them, they shall feel the said passion running up to the very hand, and humming their sense of feeling, as it should seem, by reason of the water which before was altered and turned in that manner. This fish therefore having an imbred knowledge hereof by nature, nevertheless shunth a front with any other; neither hazardeth himself openly: but fetching a compass about the prey which it hunteth after, shooteth forth from her these contagious influences like darts, infecting or charming rather the water first therewith, and afterwards by means thereof the fish that she layeth for; so that it can neither defend it self, nor flee and make an escape, but remaineth as it were arrested, and bound fast with chains, or utterly astoned.

The sea-frog, called the *Fisher*, which name he gat by a kind of fishing that he doth practise, is known well enough to many: and *Aristotle* saith, that the cuttle aforesaid useth likewise the same craft that he doth. His manner is to hang down as it were an angle line, a certain small string or gut from about his neck, which is of that nature, that he can let out in length a great way when it is loose, and draw it again close together very quickly when he list. Now when he perceiveth some small fish near unto him, he suffreth it to nibble the end thereof and bite it, and then by little and little privily plucketh and draweth it back toward him, until he can reach with his mouth the fish that hangeth to it.

As touching poups or puercules, and how they change their colour, *Pindarus* hath ennobled them in these verses:

His minde doth alter most mutable,  
To poultre the sea-fish skin semblable,  
Which changeth hue to all things futable,  
To live in all worlds he is pliable.

The Poet *Theophrastus* likewise:

Put on a mind like polyp fish,  
and learn so to dissemble,  
Which of the rock whereto it sticks,  
the colour doth resemble.

True it is that the chameleon also doth soon changeth colour, but it is not upon any crafty designe that he hath, nor yet for to hide himself, but only for that he is timorous; for cowardly he is by nature, and feareth every noise. Over and besides (as *Theophrastus* writeth) full he is of a deal of winde; and the body of this creature wanteth but a little of being full of lungs and lighs; whereby it may be guessed

guished, that it standeth altogether upon ventosity and wind, and so consequently very variable and subject to change: whereas that mutability of the Polype is a powerful and settled action of his, and not a momentary passion or infirmity: for he altereth his color of a deliberate purpose, using it as a sleight or device, either to conceal himself from that whereof he is afraid; or else to catch that whereof he feedeth: and by means of this deceitful wile, he preyeth upon the one that escapeth himnot, and escapeth the other that passeth by and sees him not. But to say that he eateth his own cloyes or long arms that he useth to stretch forth, is a fould lye; marry that he standeth in fear of the Lampray and the Conger, is very true: for these fishes do him many throwed turns, and he cannot require them the like, so slippery they be, and so soon gone. Like as the Lobster on the other side, if they come within his clutches, holdeth them fast, and squeezeeth them to death; for their glibby slickness serveth them in no stead against his rough cloyes; and yet if the Polype can get and entangle him once within his long laces, he dyes for it. See how nature hath given this circular vicissitude to avoid and chase one another by turns, as a very exercise and trial to make proof of their wit and sagacity.

But *Aristotimus* hath alledged unto us the Hedgehog, or land Urchin, and stood much upon I was not what forelight he hath of the winds: and a wondrous matter he hath made also of the triangular flight of Cranes. As for me, I will not produce the sea Urchans of this or that particular coat; to wit, either of *Bizantine*, or of *Cyzicum*, but generally all, in what seas soever; namely, how against a tempest and storm, when they feel that the sea will be very much troubled, they charge and ballast themselves with little stones, for fear of being overturned or driven to and fro for their lightness, by the billows and waves of the sea: and thus by the means of this weight, they remain firm and fast upon the little rocks whereto they are settled. As for the Cranes, who change their manner of flying according to the wind; I say, this is a skillful quality, not proper and peculiar to one kinde of fowls, but common unto them all; namely, to swim evermore against the waves and the current, yea, and very wary they be, that the wind blow not their tails, and raise their scales, and so hurt and offend their bodies laid bare and naked, yea and made rugged by that means. Hereupon they carry their fousers and muzzles always into the wind, and so direct their course: and thus the sea being cut aslant at their head, keepeth down their fins, and gliding smoothly over their body, lyeth their scales even, so as none of them stand flaring up. This is a thing, as I have said, common unto all fishes, except the Elope, whose nature is to swim down the wind and the water; neither feareth he that the wind will drive up his scales in so swimming, because they do not lie toward his tail, but contrary to other fishes, toward his head.

Moreover, the Tunny is so skilful in the Solstices and Equinoxes, that he hath taught men to observe them without need of any Astrological rules; for look in what place or coast of the sea the winter Tropick or Solstice findes him, there resteth he, and stirreth not, until the Equinox in the Spring. But a wonderful wisdom (quoth he) there is in the Crane, to hold a stone in his foot, that by the fall thereof he may quickly awaken. How much wiser then, my good friend *Aristotimus*, is the Dolphin; who may not abide to lie still and cease stirring, for that by nature he is in continual motion, and endeth his moving and living together: but when he hath need of sleep, he springeth up with his body to the top of the water, and turneth him upon his back with the belly upward, and so suffereth it partly to float and hull, and in part to be carried through the deep, waving to and fro, as it were, in a hanging bed, with the agitation of the sea, sleeping all the while, until he settle down to the bottom of the sea, and touch the ground: then wakeneth he, and mounting up with a jerk a second time, suffereth himself to be carried until he be settled down again; and thus hath he devised to have his repose and rest intermingled with a kinde of motion. And it is said that the Tunies do the like, and upon the same cause.

And now so far as we have shewed already the Mathematical and Astrological fore-knowledge that fishes have in the revolution and conversion of the Sun, which is confirmed likewise by the testimony of *Aristotle*, listen what skill they have in Arithmetick; but first (believe me) of the Perspective Science; whereof as it should seem, the Poet *Æschylus* was not ignorant: for thus he saith in one place:

Like Tunny fish he seems to spie,  
He doth so look with his left eye.

For Tunies in the other eye are thought to have a dim and feeble sight: and therefore when they enter into the sea of *Pontus*, they coast along the land on the right side; but contrariwise, when they come forth: wherein they do very wisely and circumspectly, to commit the custody of the body always to the better eye. Now for that they have need of Arithmetick, by reason of their society (as it may be thought) and mutual love, wherein they delight; they are come to that height and perfection in this Art, that because they take a wondrous pleasure to feed together, and to keep one with another in flocks and troops, they always cast their company into a cubick form, in manner of a battalion, solid and square every way, close, and invironed with fix equal sides or faces: and arranged in this Ordinance, as it were, of a quadrated battel do they swim, as large before as behinde, and of the one side, as of the other, in such sort, as he that lieth in espial to hunt these Tunies, if he can but take the just number how many there be of that side or front that appeareth next unto him, may presently tell what the number is of the whole troop, being assured that the depth is equal to the breadth, and the breadth even with the length.

The

The fish called in Greek \* *Hamie*, took that name, it may be thought, for their converging in companies together: and so I suppose came the *Pelamides* by their name. As for other fishes that be sociable, and love to live and are seen to converse in great companies together, no man is able to number them, they be too many. Come we rather therefore to some particular societies and inseparable fellowships that some have in living together: among which is that \* *Pinnotheres*, which coast the Philosopher *Chrysippus* so much inke in his description, for in all his books as well of moral as natural Philosophy, he is ranged foremost. As for the *Spongotheres*, I suppose he never knew, for otherwise he would not have left it out. Well, this *Pinnotheres* is a little fish, as they say, of the crabs kind, which goeth and cometh evermore with the *Nacres*, a big shell fish keeping still by it, and fits as it were a porter at his shell, which he letteth continually to stand wide open, until he spie some small fishes gotten within it, which as they are wont to take for their food: then doth he enter likewise into the *Nacres* shell, and doth to bite the fleshy substance thereof; whereupon presently the *Nacres* shutteth the shell hard, and then they two together feed upon the booty which they have gotten prisoners within this enclosure.

As touching the *Spongotheres*, a little creature it is, not like unto the crab fish as the other, but rather resembling a spider and it seemeth to rule and govern the sponge, which is altogether without life, without blood and sense; but as many other living creatures within the sea, cleaveth indeed hard for to do this need, the hath of the direction and advertisement of another: for being of a rare, hollow, and soft constitution otherwise, and full of many concavities, void and so dull of sense besides, and idle every hole; this little animal at such a time giveth a kind of warning, and with it the gathereth in her body, holdeth it fast, and devoureth the same: but much more will this sponge draw in her self when a man comes near and touches her; for then being better advertised and touched to the quick, she quicketh as it were for fear, and plucketh in her body so freight and so hard, that the divers, and such as seek after them have no final adoe, but find it to be a painful matter for to get under and cut them from the rocks.

The purple fishes keep in companies together, and make themselves a common cel, much like to the combs which bees doe frame, wherein by report, they do engender and breed: and look what they have laid up for their store and provision of victuals, to wit, mofferets, and such sea-weeds, those they put forth out of their shells, and present them unto their fellows for to eat, banqueting round as it were every one in their turn, and keeping their course to feed, one eating of anothers provision. But no great marvel it is to see such an amiable society and loving fellowship among them, considering that the most unfociable, cruel, and savage creature of all that live either in rivers or lakes or seas, I mean the crocodile, sheweth himself wonderful fellow-like and gracious in that society and dealing that is between him and the *Trochilus*. For this *Trochilus* is a little bird of the kinde of those which ordinarily haunt meeres, marishes and rivers, waiting and attending upon the crocodile as it were one of his guard: neither liveth this bird at her own finding nor upon her own provision, but of the reliques that the crocodile leaveth. The service that the doeth for it is this: when the crocodile, having pulled his body as it were with a coat of mud baked hard in manner of a crust, and like unto a champion with his hands all dully, ready to wrestle and prepared to take hold of his enemy, lyeth in wait for to surprise the crocodile asleep, she awakeneth him partly with her voice, and partly by nibbling him with her bill. Now the crocodile is so gentle and familiar with her, that he will gape with his chawes wide open, and let her enter into her mouth, taking great pleasure that she should pick his teeth and peck out the little morsels of flesh that stick between, with her pretty beak, and withal, to scarifie his gums. But when he hath had enough of this, and would shut and close his mouth again, he letteth fall the upper chaw a little, which is a warning unto the bird for to get forth: but he never bringeth both jawes together, before he know that the *Trochilus* is flown out.

There is a little fish called the guide, for quantity and proportion of shape, resembling the gudgeon, only withoutforth it seemeth like unto a bird, whose feathers for fear stand up; the scales shew so, and are so rough. This fish is ever in the company of one of these great whales, swimming before, and directing his course as if he were his pilot, for fear least he should light upon some shelves, run upon the sands in the shallows, or otherwise shoot himself into some narrow creek where he can hardly turn and get forth. The whale followeth hard after, willing to be guided, and directed by him, even as a ship by the helm: and look what other thing soever beides cometh within the chaos of this monsters mouth, be it beast, boat, or stone, down it goes all inconsequently that foul great swallow of his, and periseth into his bottomless gulfe of his panch: only this little fish he knoweth from the rest, and receiveth no his morsels, and no farther, as an anchor, for within it sleepeth; and while the fish is at repose, the whale likewise resteth still, as if he ride at anchor; no sooner is it gotten forth, but he followeth on a full, never leaving it by day nor by night, for otherwise he would wander here and there: and many of these whales there have been lost in this manner, wanting their guide and pilot, which have not themselves a land, for default of a good pilot. For we our selves have seen one of them so cast away not long since about the ille *Anticyra*: and before time by report, there was another cast upon the sands, and not far from the city *Bone*, which lay there stinking and purified; whereupon by the infection of the aire, there ensued a pestilence in those parts adjoining. What should we say? Is there any other example worthy to be compared with these societies so freightly linked, and entangled with mutual benevolence? *Aristotle* indeed reporteth great friendship

Xxx 3

and



and amity between Foxes and Serpents, joyning and combining together against their common enemy the Eagle, also between the *Orides* and Horfes; for the bird *Ovis* delighteth in their company, and to be near them, for that they may rake into their dung. For mine own part, I cannot see that the very Bees, or the Pifmires, are so industrious and careful one for another. True it is, that they travel and labour, in common for a publick weal; but to aime at any particular good, or to respect the private benefit of another, we can finde example of no beast upon the land wherefoever: but we shall perceive this difference much better, if we convert our speech to the principal duties and greatest offices of society; generation (I mean) and procreation of young: First and formost, all fishes which haunt any seas, either neer unto Lakes, or such as receiveth great Rivers into it, when they perceive their spawning time to be near, come up toward the land, and seek for that fresh water which is most quiet and least subject to agitation for that calmenesse is good for their breeding; besides, these Lakes and Rivers ordinarily have none of these monstrous Sea monsters; so as both their spawn and their young fish, is there in most safety, which is the reason that there are so many fishes bred about the Euxine sea; for that it nourisheth no Whales or other great fishes: only the Sea-calf which there is but small, and the Dolphin who is as little. Moreover, the mixture of many great Rivers which discharge themselves into the Sea, causeth the temperature of the water to be very good and fit for great belliced spawners. But most admirable of all others, is the nature of the fish Anthios, which *Homer* called the sacred fish; although some think that sacred in that place, is as great: in which sense we term the great bone, *hæm*; that is to say, sacred; whereupon the ridge bone resteth: as also the great malady, called the falling sicknesse; is termed in Greek *hæmorrhoids*, that is to say, the sacred sicknesse: others interpret it after the common and vulgar manner, namely, for that which is vowed and dedicated to some god, or otherwife abandoned: but it seemeth that *Bratophentes* so called the Guilthead or Golden eye, as appeareth by this verse of his.

*Molt swift of course, with browes as bright as gold,  
This is the fish which I doe sacred hold.*

but many take it for the Elops; for rare he is to be found, and hard to be taken: howbeit, many times he is seen about the coast of *Pamphylie*; and, whensoever the fishers can meet with any of them, and bring them home, both they themselves wear Chaplets of flowers for joy, and also they crown and adorn their Burques with garlands, yea, and at their arrival they are received with much shouting and clapping of hands; but the most part are of opinion, that the Anthios beforesaid, is he which they call the sacred fish; and so he is held to be; for that wherefoever he is, there may no hurtful nor ravening monster be found there: insomuch as the Divers plunge down into the Sea for Sponges, boldly in those coasts where these be; yea, and other fishes, both spawn and rear their young fry safely there, as having him for their pledge and warrant of all safety and security, as in a privileged place. The cause hereof is hardly to be rendered; whether it be that such hurtful fishes upon a secret antipathy in nature, doe avoid him as Elephants a Swine, and Lions a Cock; or that there be some marks and signes of those coasts which are clear of such harmful monsters, which he knoweth well and observeth, being a fish quick of wit, and as good of memory. Common it is to all females for to have a natural care and providence for their young, but in fishes, the males generally are so respective that way, and so far off from devouring the feed of their own kinde, that they continue neer unto the spawn that the females have cast, and keep the fame, as *Aristotle* hath left in writing. Some Milners there be, that follow after the spawners, and sprinkle them a little about the tail; otherwise, the spawn or fry will not be fair and great, but remain imperfect, and come to no growth. This property particularly by themselves have the Phycides, that they build their nests with the sea weeds or reits, covering and defending therewith their spawn and fry against the waves of the sea.

Dog-fishes give no place in any sort to the most tame and gentle beasts in the world, for kinde love and natural affection to their young: for first they engender spawn, and after that, a quick fry; and that not without, but within, nourishing and carrying the same within their own bodies, after a kinde of second generation; but when they are grown to any bignesse, they put them forth and teach them how to swim hard by them, and afterwards receive them by the mouth into their body, which serveth in stead of a place of abode, of nourishment and of refuge, until such time as they be so big, that they can thurst for themselves.

Moreover, the provident care of the Tortoise in the generation, nourishment and preservation of her young, is wonderful: for out she goeth of the sea, and layeth her eggs or casteth her spawn upon the bank side; but being not able to cove or sit upon them, nor to remain her self upon the land out of the sea any long time, the bestoweth them in the gravel, and afterwards covereth them with the lightest and finest sand that she can get: when the hatch thus hidden them surely, some say, that with her feet she draweth rales or lines, or else imprinteth certain prickes, which may serve for privy marks to her self to finde out the place again: others affirme, that the male turneth the females upon the back, and so leaveth the print of shell within the sand: but that which is more admirable, the observeth just the fortieth day (for in so many daies, the eggs come to their maturity, and be hatched) and then returneth to the place where knowing her own treasure by the sea, she openeth it with great joy and pleasure, as no man doth his caskets of jewels or cabinet where his gold lieth.

The Crocodiles deal much after this manner in all other points; but at what marks they aime in chusing or finding out the place where they breed, no mortal man is able to imagine or give a reason where-

upon it is commonly said, that the foreknowledge of this beast in that respect, proceedeth not from any discourse of reason, but of some supernatural divination: for going neither farther nor nearer than just to that gage and heligh where *Nileus* the river for that year will rise and cover the earth, he layeth in his eggs: so that when the peasant or country man chanceth by fortune to hit upon the Crocodiles nest, himself knoweth and telleth his neighbours how high the river will overflow that summer following: so just doth he measure the place that will be drowned with water, that hee will be sure not to be drowned while the stretch and coveit; furthermore, when her young be newly hatched, if she see any one of them (so soon as ever it is out of the shell) not to catch with the mouth one thing or other coming next in the way, be it fly, Pifmire, Gnat, Earth-worm, Straw or Grass, she straightway taketh it between her teeth, searcheth it and killeth it presently; but such as give some proof of loving her love as the wisest men judge it meet and reasonable, according to reason and discretion, shee gett with blind affection.

The Sea-calves likewise bring forth their young on the dry land; but within a while after they train them to the sea; give them a taste of the salt water, and then quickly bring them back again: thus practise they with them by little and little many times together, until they have gotten more heart and desire of themselves to delight for to live within the sea. Frogs about their breeding time, call one to another, by a certain amorous note or nuptial tunes called properly *Oologyn*. And when the male hath by this means enticed and allured the female to him, they attend and waite together for the night: and why? In the water they cannot possibly engender, and upon the land they fear to do it in the day time; dark night is no sooner come, but boldly they go forth of the water, and then without fear they claspe and embrace one another. Moreover against a shower of rain their croaking voice, such as they you shall hear more clear and shrill than ordinary, which is a most infallible signe of raime.

But oh sweet *Nepheus* what a foule fault and grosse error was I like to have committed; how absurd and ridiculous should I have made my self, if being amused and busied to speak of these Sea-calves and Frogs, I had forgotten and overpassed the wisest creature, and that which the gods love best, of all the Halcyon; what a artificial building of the Swallows, and Martins; what enter amity and *amicitia* between Doves; what skill cunning of the Bees, deserveth to be put in ballance with these Sea-fowles, some read *phalacrocorax*, that is, love to wit *Delos*, that is, love to *Diana*; which Iland floating before time, continued afterwards firme land; whereas the pleasure birds of God is such, that all seas should be still and calme without waves, winds or drop of raime falling upon them, all the while that the Halcyon laith and coveit, which is just about the Winter Solstice, when the daies be shortest: which is the reason that there is no living creature that men love so well by whose meanes seven daies they have, and seven nights even in the very heart of Winter, during which time they may safely saile, having their voyage by sea for those daies space, more secure than their travel by land. Now if I must say somewhat likewise of each particular vertue that this bird hath; first and foremost the female is so loving to the male her mate, that the tarrish not with him for one day only, but all the year long keepeth him company; and that not for shamelesse lust and wantonnesse (for she never admitteth any other male to tread her) but only upon a kinde love and tender affection; even like an honest wedded wife that keepeth onely to her husband. And when the male groweth to be for age weak and unwieldy, in such sort as he cannot follow her, but with much ado, she beareth and feedeth him in his old age; she never forsaketh nor leaveth him alone for any thing, but she taketh him upon her shoulders, carrieth him every where about, tendeth him most tenderly, and is with him still unto his dying day. Now for the affection which the beareth to her young, and the care that she hath of them and their safety: when the perceiving once that she is with eggs, presently she goeth about the building of her nest; not tempering mude or clay for to make thereof; nor daubing it upon the walls, and spreading it over the roufe as the Swallows do; nor yet employing her whole body or the most part thereof about her work, as doth the Bee, which entering into the honey-combe with her entire body; and working withal the six feet together, devideth the place into angled cells: but the Alcyon having but one instrument, one tool, one engine to work withal, even her own bill, without any thing else in the world to help her in her travel and operation; yet what workmanship she makes and what fabricks the frameth, like unto a Master Carpenter or Shipwright, hard it were to beleeve, unless a man had seen it, being indeed such a fabrick and piece of work, which onely of all other cannot be overthrow nor drowned with the sea: for first and foremost she goes and gathers a number of bones of the fish called Blone, that is to say, a Needle, which she joyneth and bindeth together, interlacing them some long-wise, others overthwart, much like as the woofe is woven upon the warps in a loome, windings, plaiting and twisting them up and down one within another; so that in the end fashioned it is in forme round, yet extended out in length like unto a fishers weile or bow-net: after the hath finished this frame, she bringeth it to some Creek, and opposeth it against the waves, where the sea gently beating and dashing upon it, teacheth her to mend that was not well compact, and to fortifie it in such places where she sees it gapeth, or is not united close by reason of the sea-water that hath undone the composition thereof: contrariwise, that which was well joyned, the sea doth so fettle and drive together, that hardly a man is able to break, dissolve or doe it injury either

either with knick of stone or dint of edged tool. But that which yet maketh it more admirable, is the proportion and form of the concavity and hole within this vessel: for framed it is, and composed in such sort, that it will receive and admit no other thing; but the very bird which made it, for nought else can enter into it, so close it is shut up, not so much as the very water of the Sea. I am assured that there is not one of you all, but he hath many times seen this net: but for mine own part, who have both viewed, touched and handled it, and that very often, I am ready to say and sing thus:

*The like at Delos once I seen,  
Was in Apollos temple seen,*

I mean the altar made all of horns, renowned amongst the seven wonders of the world; for that with-out fodder, glew, or any other matter to binde and hold the parcels together, made it was and framed of horns which grew on the right side of the head only. But O that this god would be so good and gracious unto me, being in some sort musical and an Islander, like himself, as to pardon me if I sing the praise of that fierce and may-maid so highly commended; as also gently to hear me laugh at these demands and interrogatories that these propound, who in mockery me to ask, Why *Apollo* is never called *Key-wind*; that is to say, the killer of conger, nor *Diana* his sister *Tryphonia*; that is to say, a striker of barbels, knowing that even *Venus*, borne as she was of the sea, and imitating her sacrifices near unto it, taketh no pleasure that any thing should be killed. And moreover, ye wot well enough, that in the city of *Leptis*, the priests of *Neptune* eat nothing that cometh out of the sea, as also that in the city *Eleusin*, those who are professed religious, and admitted to the holy mysteries of *Ceres*, honour the barbel; yea, and in the city of *Argos* the priestesse of *Diana* upon a devout reverence forbearth to feed of this creature; for that these barbels doe kill and destroy all that ever they can, the sea-hare, which is so venimous and so deadly a poison to man: in regard of which benefit, reported they are friendly unto mankind, and preservers of their health, and therefore honoured they be, and kept as sacrosanct: and yet you shall see in many cities of *Greece*, both temples and altars dedicated unto *Diana* furnished *Distynna*, as one would say, affected unto fishers nets: like as to *Apollo Delphinus*: for certain it is, that the place which he especially chose above all others for his abode, the posterity descended from the Cretanians came to inhabit and people, being conducted thither by the guidance of a dolphin: and not because himself (as some fabulous writers report) being transformed into a dolphin, swam before their fleet: but surely a dolphin he sent to direct those men in their navigation, and so he brought them to the bay of *Cirra*.

Also written it is in histories, that those who were sent by King *Ptolemus* furnished *Soter*, to the city *Sinope*, for to carry the god *Serapis*, together with their Captain *Dionysius*, were by force of wind and tempest driven against their will beyond the cape or promontory *Idelus*; where they had *Peloponnesus* on the right hand; and when they wandered and were tossed to and fro upon the seas, not knowing where they were, making account they were lost and cast away, there shewed himself before the prow of their ship, a dolphin, which seemed so call unto them, and who guided them unto those coasts, where there were many commodious havens and fair baies for ships to harbour, and ride in with safety; and thus he conducted and accompanied their ships from place to place, until at length he brought it within the road of *Cirra*; where after they had sacrificed for their safe arrival and landing, they understood that of two images there, they were to have away that of *Pluto*, and carry it with them, but the other of *Proserpina* to leave behind them, when they had taken only the mould and pattern thereof. Probable it is wherefore, that the god *Apollo* carried an affection to this dolphin, for that it loveth musick so well: whereupon the Poet *Pindarus* comparing himself unto the dolphin, saith that he was provoked and stirred up to musick by the leaping and dauncing of this fish.

*Like as the dolphin swims apace  
Directly forward to that place  
Whereas the pleasant swaines do sound,  
And whence their noise doth soon rebound:  
What time both winds and waves do lye  
At sea, and let no harmony.*

or rather we are to think that the god is well affected unto him, because he is so kind and loving unto man: for the only creature it is, that loveth man for his own sake, and in regard that he is a man: whereas of land-beasts, some you shall have that love none at all; others, and those that be of the tamest kinde, make much of those only, of whom they have some use and benefit; namely, such as feed them or converse with them familiarly, as the dog, the horse and the elephant: and as for swallows, received though they be in our houses, where they have entertainment, and whatsoever they need, to wit, shade, harbour and a necessary retreat for their safety, yet they be afraid of man, and shun him as if he were some savage beast; whereas the dolphin alone of all other creatures in the world, by a certain instinct of nature, carrieth that sincere affection unto man, which is so much sought for and desired by our best Philosophers, even without any respect at all of commodity: for having no need at all of mans help, yet is he nevertheless friendly and courteous unto all, and hath succoured many of their distress; as the story of *Arion* will testify, which is so famous, as no man is ignorant thereof: and even you *Aristotimus* your own self, rehearsed to very good purpose the example of *Hesiodus*: But

*But yet by your good leave, my friend,  
Of that your tale you made no end.*

for when you reported unto us the fidelity of his dog, you should have proceeded farther, and told out all, not leaving out (as you did) the narration of the Dolphins: for surely the notice that the Dog gave, by baying, barking, and running after the murderers with open mouth, was (I may tell you) but a blinde presumption, and no evident argument. About the Temple *Nemius*, the Dolphins meeting with the dead corps of a man floating up and down upon the sea, took it up and laid on their backs, shifting it from one to another by turns, as any of them were weary with the carriage, and very willingly, yea, and as it should seem, with great affection, they conveyed it as far as to the Port *Rhium*, where they laid it down upon the shore, and so made it known that there was a man murdered. *Mytilus* the Lesbian writeth, that *Enalut* the *Eolian* being fallen in fanie with a daughter of *Phineus*, who according to the Oracle of *Amphirite*, was by the daughters of *Pentheus* cast down headlong into the sea, threw himself after her; but there was a Dolphin took him up, and brought him safe into the Isle *Lebos*. Over and besides, the affection and good will which a Dolphin bare unto a young lad of the City *Lafos*, was so hot and vehement, in the highest degree, that if ever one creature was in love with another, it was he; for there was not a day went over his head, but he would dispute, play and swim with him, yea, and suffer himself to be handled and tickled by him upon his bare skin: and if the boy were disposed to mount aloft upon his back, he would not refuse, nor seem to avoid him; nay he was very well content with such a carriage, turning what way soever he reined him, or seemed to incline: and thus would he do in the presence of the Iasians, who oftentimes would all run forth to the sea side of purpose to behold this sight. Well on a day above the rest, when this lad was upon the Dolphins back, there fell an exceeding great shower of rain, together with a monstrous storm of hail; by reason whereof the poor boy fell into the sea, and there dyed: but the Dolphin took up his body dead as it was, and together with it shut himself upon the land; neither would he depart from the corps so long as there was any life in him, and so dyed, judging it greater reason to take part with him of his death, who seemed partly to be cause thereof. In remembrance of which memorable accident, the Iasians represent the History thereof stamped and printed upon their coin, to wit, a boy riding upon a Dolphin; which story hath caused that the fable or tale that goeth of *Caranus* is believed for a truth: for this *Caranus*, as they say, born in *Pares*, chanced to be upon a time at *Byzantium*, where seeing a great draught of Dolphins taken up in a casting-net by the fishers, whom they meant to kill and cut into pieces, bought them all alive, and let them go again into the sea. Not long after, it hapned that he failed homeward in a Foist of fifty oars, which had aboard (by report) a number of Pyrats and Rovers; but in the freights between *Naxos* and *Pares*, the vessel was calaway, and swallowed up in a gulf; in which shipwreck, when all the rest perished, he only was saved, by means, as they say, of a Dolphin, which coming under his body as he was newly plunged into the sea, bare him up, took him upon his back, and carried him as far as to a certain cave about *Zagyrus*, and there landed him: which place is shewed for a monument at this day, and after his name, is called *Cavanium*. Upon this occasion, *Archilachus* the Poet, is said to have made these verses:

*Of fifty men by tempest drown'd,  
And left in sea all dead behinde;  
Cæran alone alive was found,  
God Neptune was to him so kinde.*

Afterwards the said *Caranus* himself dyed; and when his kinsfolk and friends burned his corps neer the sea-side in a funeral fire, many Dolphins were discovered along the coast hard by the shore, shewing (as it were) themselves how they were come to honor his obsequies; for depart they would not, before the whole solemnity of this last duty was performed. That the Scutcheon or Shield of *Ulysses* had for the badge or ensign, a Dolphin, *Stefichorus* hath testified, but the occasion and cause thereof, the *Zacynthians* report in this manner, as *Criticus* the Historian beareth witness. *Telemachus* his son being yet an infant, chanced to slip with his feet; and as men say, to fall into a place of the sea, where it was very deep; but by the means of certain Dolphins, who took him as he fell, saved his way, and carried out of the water: whereupon his father, in a thankful regard and honor to this creature, engraved within the collar of his Signet, wherewith he sealed, the portrait of a Dolphin, and likewise carried it as his Arms upon his Shield. But forasmuch as I protested in the beginning, that I would relate to you no fables, and (I wot not how) in speaking of Dolphins, I am carried farther than I was aware, and fallen upon *Ulysses* and *Caranus*, somewhat beyond the bounds of likelihood and probability, I will set a fine upon mine own head, and even here for amends lay a straw, and make an end. You therefore, my masters, who are Judges, may when it pleaseth you proceed to your verdict.

SOCARUS.

As for us, we were of minde a good while since to say according to the sentence of *Sophocles*:

*Your talk ere while which seem'd to disagree,  
Will soon accord and joint-wisely framed be.*

for if you will, both of you, counter your arguments, proofs and reasons, which you have alledged of the one side and the other, and lay them all together in common between you, it will be seen how mightily you shall confute and put down those, who would deprive brute beasts of all understanding and discourse of reason.

Whether

## Whether the Athenians were more renowned for Martial Arms or good Letters.

## The Summary.

**WE** have here the fragments of a pleasant Discourse written in the favour of Athenian Warriors, and great Captains; which at this day hath neither beginning nor end, and in the middle is altogether maimed and unperfected: but that which the infirmity of the times hath left unto us, is such, as thereout we may gather some good, and the intention of Plutarch is therein sufficiently discovered unto us: for he sheweth that the Athenians were more famous and excellent in feats of Arms, than in the profession of Learning. Which Position may seem to be a strange Paradox, considering that Athens was reputed the habitation of the Muses: and if there were ever any brave Historians, singular Poets, and notable Orators in the world, we are to look for them in this City. Yet for all this, he taketh upon him to prove that the prowess of Athenian Captains was without all comparison more commendable and praise-worthy than all the dexterity of others, who at their leisure have written in the shade and within boufe the occurrences and accidents of the times, or exhibited pleasures and pastimes to the people upon the stage or scaffold. And to effect this intended purpose of his, he considereth in the first place, Historiographers, and adjoyneth thereto a brief Treatise of the Art of Painting: and by comparison of two persons, bringing news of a field fought, whereof the one was only a beholder and looker on; the other an actor himself, and a Soldier fighting in the battle, he sheweth that noble Captains ought to be preferred before Historians, who pen and set down their designs and executions. From History he passeth on to Poesie, both Comical and Tragical, which he reprooveth and debaseth, notwithstanding the Athenians made exceeding account thereof, giving to understand, that their valour consisted rather in martial exploits. In the last place he speaketh of Orators, and by conference of their Orations, and other reasons, proveth that these great speakers deserve not that place, as to have their words weighed in ballance against the deeds of so many politic and valiant warriors.

## Whether the Athenians were more renowned for Martial Arms or good Letters.

**W**ELL said this was (in truth) of him unto those great Captains and Commanders who succeeded him, unto whom he made way, and gave entrance to the executions of a life exploits which they performed afterwards, when himself had to their hands chaled out of Greece the barbarous King Xerxes, and delivered the Greeks out of servitude: but as well may the same be said also to those who are proud of their learning, and stand highly upon their erudition. For if you take away men of action, you shall be sure to have no Writers of them: take away the Politick Government of Pericles at home; the naval victories and trophies achieved by Themistocles, near the promontory of Rhium; the noble prowess of Nicias, about the Isle Cythera, as also before the Cities of Corinth and Megara; take away the sea-fight of Demofthenes before Pylos; the four hundred Captives and Prisoners of Cleon; the worthy deeds of Tolmias, who scoured all the coasts of Peloponnesus; the brave acts of Myronides, and the battle which he won against the Boeotians in the place called Oenophytia; and withal, you blot out the whole History of Thucydides; take away the valiant service of Alcibiades, shewed in Hellepont; the rare manhood of Thrasyllus, near unto the Helles; the happy suppression and abolition of the Tyrannical Oligarchy of the Thirty Tyrants, by Theramenes; take away the valorous endeavors of Thrasybulus and Arhippus, together with the rare designs and enterprizes executed by those seven hundred, who from Phylas rose up in arms, and were so hardy and resolute as to levy a power, and wage war against the Lordly Potentates of Sparta; and last of all Conon, who caused the Athenians to go to sea again and maintain the war; and therewithal, take away Cratippus and all his Chronicles. For as touching Xenophon, he was the writer of his own History, keeping a Book and Commentary of those occurrences and proceedings which passed under his happy conduct and direction: and (by report) he gave it out in writing, that Themistocles the Syracusan, composed the said Narration of his acts, to the end that Xenophon might win more credit, and be the better believed, writing as he did of himself, as of a stranger, and withal, gratifying another man by that means with the honor of eloquence in digesting and penning the same. All other Historians besides, as these, Cleodemus and Diyllis, Philochorus and Philarchus, may be counted as it were the actors of other mens Plays: who setting down the acts of Kings, Princes, and great Captains, throwed close vnder their memorials, to the end that themselves might have some part with them of their light and splendor. For surely there is a certain image of glory, which by a kinde of reflexion, as in a mirror, doth rebound from those who have achieved noble acts, even unto them that commit the same to writing, when as the actions of other men are represented by their reports and records.

Certes this City of Athens hath been the fruitful Mother and kinde Nourse of many and sundry Arts, whereof some the first invented and brought to light; others the gave growth, strength, honor and

and credit unto. And among the rest, the skill of Painters craie bath not been least advanced and adorned by her. For Apollodorus the Painter, the first man who devised the colours, and the manner of darkning them by the shadow, was an Athenian: over whose works was set this Epigram by his own self.

*Sooner will one, this carp and swit;  
Then do the like, or sample it.*

So were Euphranor and Nicias, Apolepidorus also, and Plistanetus the brother of Phidias, whereof some portrayed victorious Captains, others painted batels, and others drew to the life the Worthies and Demi-gods: like as Euphranor who painted noble Thebes, and set this picture as a paragon in comparison with another of Parrhasius making; saying that the Thebes of Parrhasius had eaten roses, but the Thebes had been fed with good Ox beef: for to say a truth, that picture of Parrhasius was daintily and delicately made, resembling in some sort that which Euphranor talketh of; but he that should see this of Euphranors doing, might say (not untruly) these veries out of Homer:

*The people of Erechtheus son,  
whom Pallas, daughter dear  
Of Jupiter that mighty god,  
sometime did feed, and rear.*

Euphranor also depainted the batel of horsemen before the city Mantinea, against Epaminondas, which seemeth not to be without some furious and divine insinck. The argument, and subject matter whereof was this, Epaminondas the Theban, after the batel which he won before the Town Leutras, puffed up with glory in this greatness of his, determined resolutely to insult over Sparta, which now was already down the wind, and at once to tread and trample under foot the high spirit and reputation of that City. First therefore he invaded Laconia with a mighty power of threecore and ten thousand fighting men, spoiling and harrowing the Countrey as he went; whereby he withdrew all the neighbor Nations from their confederacy and alliance with the Laedemonians. After this, when they put themselves in batel ray, and made head against him before Mantinea, he challenged and provoked them to fight: which they neither would nor durst accept, expecting aid that should come unto them from Athens. Whereupon he brake up his camp, and dislodging in the night scason secretly and contrary to all mens expectation, entred again into Laconia, in which journey and expedition he went within a litle of surprizing the City of Sparta, and winning it, as it was and without defence. But their Allies and Confederates having intelligence of his coming, came with all speed to the succor the City. Then Epaminondas made semblance that he would turn and bend his forces to the walling and spoiling of their Territory, as he had done before. Thus having by this stratagem decalld his enemies, and lulled them asleep in security, he departed suddenly by night out of Laconia, having over-run and destroyed all before him with great celerity, and presented himself with his whole Army, before them of Mantinea, who looked for nothing less than such a guest, but were in confusion for to send help to Laedemon: but he interrupting and breaking their counsels, immediately commanded the Thebans to arm, who being brave and courageous Souldiers, invested the City of Mantinea round about, struck up the alarm, and gave an assault. The Mantinians hereat astonished, rousd up and down the streets, howling and wailing, as being not able to sustain, and much less put back by great a puissance, which all at once, in manner of a violent stream, came running upon them; neither did they think of any aid or means to relieve themselves in this distress. But at the very point of this extremity, the Athenians were discovered, descending from the hills down into the plains of Mantinea, who knowing nothing of this sudden surprize, and present danger wherein the City stood, marched softly, and took leisure; but when they were advertised hereof by a vaunt Courier who took means to get forth of the City; notwithstanding they were but a handful, in comparison of the great multitude of their enemies, and withal somewhat weary with their journey, and not seconded with any other of their Allies and Associates, they advanced forward, and put themselves in order of batel against their enemies, who were in number many for one: the horsemen also for their parts being likewise arranged, set spurs to their horses, and rode hard to the gates and walls of the City, where they charged their enemies so hotly with their horses, and gave them so cruel a batel, that they were the upperhand, and rescued Mantinea out of the danger of Epaminondas. Now had Euphranor painted this conflict most lively in a table, wherein a man might have seen the furious encounter, the outrageous charge and bloody fight, wherein both horse and man seemed to puff and blow again for word.

Now I suppose you will not compare the wit or judgement of a Painter, with the courage and policy of a Captain, nor endure those, who prefer a painted batel before a glorious Trophie; or the vain shadow, before the real substance, and thing indeed: howsoever, Simonicus said that Picture was a dumb Poesie, and Poesie a speaking Picture: for look what things or actions Painters do shew as present, and in manner as they were in doing, writings do report and record as done and past; and if they differ both in matter, and also in manner of imitation, howbeit both the one and the other shoot at one end, and have the same intent and purpose. And he is counted the best Historian, who hath the skill to set out a Narration, as in a painted table with divers actions, and sundry conditions of persons, as with many images and pourtraictures. And verily this may appear in Thucydides, who throughout his whole History, contendeth to again unto this dilucidity of stile, striving to make the auditor

auditor of his words the spectator, as it were, of the deeds therein contained, and desirous to imitate in the Readers the same passions of astonishment, wonder and agony, which the very things themselves would work when they are represented to the eye. For *Demosthenes*, who put the Athenians in ordinance of battle, even upon the very lands and shore within the Creek of *Pylus*; and *Brasidas*, who halting the Pilot of his Galley to run with the prow along, walking along the barches himself, and being there wounded, and ready to yield up his vital breath, sunk down among the Galls of the Rowers: also the Lacedaemonians who fought a battel at sea, as if they had been on firm land: the Athenians likewise, who upon the land embattled themselves, and fought as if they had been within their Gallies at sea again; in the Sicilian war, the description which he maketh of the two Armies arranged on the land, hard by the Sea side, to behold their men fighting a naval battel, wherein the victory hung along time in equal balance, and inclined neither to the one side nor the other; by occasion of which doubtful issue, they were in an intolerable agony, distress, and perplexity, to behold the sundry encounters and reciprocal charges and recharges, communicating their violence and heat of contention, even to the very bodies of the beholders upon the strand, who puffing, blowing, panting, and sweating in as great pain and fear, as if they had been personally in the very conflict: the orderly disposition, the geographical description, and the lively narration which he maketh of all this, what is it but an evident representation of a picture? Now if it be not meet to compare Painters with Captains, there is as little reason to set Historians in comparison with them.

He who brought the news of the battel and victory at *Marathon*, as *Heraclides of Pontus* writeth, was one *Thersippus of Erce*, or as most Historians report it, was one *Eucleus*, who came running in a great heat from the field in his armor as he was, and knocking at the gates of the principal mens houses of *Athens*, was able to say nothing else but this, *χαίρετε*, and *χαίρετε*, that is to say, rejoice ye, all is well with us, and therewith his breath failed, and so he gave up the ghost, and yet this man came and brought tidings of that battel wherein himself was an actor. But tell me, I pray you, if there were some Goat-herd or Neat-herd, who from the top of an hill or high bank, had beheld afar off this great service, and indeed greater then any words can express, should have come into the City with news thereof, not wounded himself, nor having lost one drop of blood, and for his good tidings demand afterwards to have the same honors and memorials which were granted unto *Cynagirus*, to *Callimachus*, and *Polyzebus*, only because forsooth, he had made report of the doughty deeds, the wounds and death of these brave men; would you not think that he surpassed all the impudency that can be imagined? considering especially, that the Lacedaemonians, by report, sent unto him who brought the first word of the victory at *Mantineia*, which *Thucydides* described in his story, a piece of flesh from one of their dinners, or halls, called *Phiditia*, for a recompence of his happy news? And to say a truth, what are Historiographers else? but certain messengers to relate and declare the acts of others, having a loud and audible voice, and who by their pleasant eloquence and significant phrases, are able to set forth the matter to the best, which they take in hand: unto whom they owe indeed the reward due for good tidings, who first do light upon their compositions, and have the first reading of them: for surely, praised they be onely when they make mention of such exploits, and read they be in regard of those singular persons whom they make known, as the authors and actors thereof. Neither are they the goodly words and fine phrases in Histories that perform the deeds, or deserve to greatly to be heard: for even Poetry hath a grace, and is esteemed, for that it describeth and relateth things, as if they had been done, and which carry a resemblance of truth: and according as *Homer* in our place saith:

*Many false tales how for to tell,  
Much like to truth, she knows full well.*

And it is reported, that one of *Menanders* familiar friends said unto him upon a time: *Menander*, the Bacchanaleasts are at hand, and hast not thou yet done thy comedy? who returned him this answer, Yes, I have I, so have I, so have I, so have I, I have: for the matter thereof is laid forth, and the disposition digested already: there remaineth no more to be done, but only to set forth to the verses that must go to it. So that you see the Poets themselves reputed the things and deeds more necessary and important then words and speech. The famous Courtizan *Corinna* one day reproved *Pindarus*, who then was a young man, and took a great pride in himself, for his learning and knowledge: Thou hast no skill at all *Pindarus* (quoth she) in Poetry, for that thou dost not invent and devise fables, which is indeed the proper and peculiar work of Poetrie; as for thy tongue, it misleth some Rhetorical Figures, Catarchreses and Metaphrases, Songs, Musical Measures and Numbers, unto the matter and argument onely, as pleasant fauces to commend the same. *Pindarus* pondering well these words and admonitions of her, thought better of the matter, and thereupon out of his Poetical vein, poured out this Canticle:

*Isenius, or the lance with staff of gold,  
Sir Cadmus, or that sacred race of old,  
Which Dragons teeth they say sometime did yield,  
Of Warriors brave, when town they were in field:  
Or Hercules who was in such account,  
And his main force of body, to surmount, &c.*

Which when he had shewed to *Corinna*, the woman laughed a good, and said, That corn should be sown out of ones hand, and not immediately from out of the full sack: for in truth, much after this

for had *Pindarus* gathered and heaped up a miscellane deale of fables, and poured them forth all huddle together in this one canticle. But that poeie consisteth much in the fine invention of Fables, *Naso* himself hath written: and verily a Fable or Tale is a false narration, resembling that which is true, and therefore far remote it is from the thing indeed, if it be so, that a narration is the image of an act done, and a fable the image or shadow of a narration. Whereupon this may be inferred, that they who devise and feign fabulous deeds of armes, are so much inferior to Historiographers that make true reports, as Historiographers who relate onely such deeds come behind the actors and authors themselves. Certes this City of *Athens* had never any excellent or renowned work men in the state of Poetry, not so much as in the Lyrick part thereof, which professeth musickall odes, and songs: for *Cynethas* seemeth to have made his dithyrambes or canticles in honour of *Bacchus*, hardly and with much ado, and was himself barren and of no grace or gift at all; besides, he was so mocked and flouted by the comickal poets, that he grew to be of no reckoning and reputation, but incurred an ill and odious name: As for that part of Poetry which dealeth in representation of personages in plaies upon a stage, so small account they made at *Athens* of the Comedians and their profession; nay they disdaind and scorned it so much, that a law there was enacted, forbidding expressly, that no Senator of the counsell *Areopagus*, might make a comedy: contrariwise, the tragedy flourished, and was in much request, for delivering the best care-sport, and representing the most wonderfull spectacle that men in those dayes could heare or behold; giving both unto fictions, and affections a delectable power, which was of such a property, according to the saying of *Gorgias*: That he who deceived thereby, was more just then he who deceived not: and he who was deceived became wiser than he that was not deceived at all: the deceiver (I say) was more just, because he performed that which he promised, and the deceived person wiser; for that such as are not altogether grosse, doltish, and senseless, are soonest caught by the pleasure and delight of words.

To come now to the main point: what profit ever brought these excellent tragedies unto the City of *Athens*, comparable unto that which the prudent policy of *Themistocles* effected in causing the walls of the City to be built; or to the vigilant care and diligence of *Pericles*, who adorned the castle and citadell with so many beautifull buildings; or to the valour of *Miltiades* who delivered the City from the danger of servitude; or to the brave mind of *Cimon*, who advanced that State to the sovereignty and command of all Greece? If the Learning of *Euripides*, and the eloquence of *Sophocles*, or the sweet and pleasant tongue of *Aeschylus* had freed them from any perils and extremities, or purchased and procured them any glory more then they had before, good reason peradventure it were, to compare poetical fictions and inventions with warre-like triumphs and trophies; to set the theater against the generallys pavilion and palace; and to oppose the schooling and teaching of players, how both Comedies and Tragedies, unto prowesses and brave feates of armes. Will you that we bring in play the personages themselves? carrying with them the markes, badges and ensignes that testifie their deeds, and allow either of them entrance apart by themselves, and passage along by us. Then let them march on the one side poets with their Flutes, Harps, Lutes and Viols, singing and saying:

*Silence, my Masters, or all words of song good:  
Depart he must, there is no remedy,  
Our learning here who never under stood,  
And hath no skill in play or tragedy:  
Whose tongue's impure, or who in melody  
And dance unexpert is, that doth belong  
To service of the sacred muses nine,  
Or who is not professed by the tongue  
To Bacchus rites of Bally god Cratine.*

Let them bring with them their furniture, their vestments and players apparell, their masks, their altars, their rolling engines and devices to be turned and removed to and fro all about the stage and scaffold, together with their trevets of gold the prizes of their victories. Let them be accompanied with their traine, of players and actors, to wit *Nicostrates*, *Callipides*, *Meniscus*, and *Pellus*, and such as they, attending upon a tragedy, to trick and trim her, or to beare up her traine, and carry her lie-up, as if she were some stately and sumptuous dame; or rather as inamillars, guilders, and painters of images following after. Let there be provision made I say of habiliments, of vizards, of purple mantles and royall robes of estate, of fabricks and pageants devised to stand and be employed upon the stage of dancers, jesters, of stage keepers, wifelars and henchmen a troublesome sort and rable of grooves: and in one word let there be brought all the geere and implements belonging to such plaies exceeding costly and chargeable: such as when a Lacomian saw upon a time and wisely beheld, brake out into this speech, and that to very good purpose: O how far amiss and out of the way are the Athenians, to dispend so much money, and employ such serious study in games and fooleries: surely they defray in the furniture and setting out of a theater, as much as would serve to set afoore a royall armado at sea, and maintain a puissant army upon the land. For he that would get down and cast accompt, how much every comedy cost them, shall find that the people of *Athens* spent more in exhibiting the tragedies of *Aeschylus*, *Phemias*, of both the *Oedipodes*, and of *Antigon*, or in representing the calamities of *Media* and *Esters*, then they disbursed in their wars against the Barbarians, either to win the sovereignty and domination over them, or to defend their own freedom and liberty; for many times their great captains & commanders led forth their Souldiers to battell, having made proclamation before, for to carry with

\* *Arms* them such victuals as \* required no fire for their dressing, this is certain, that the Captains of Gallies and war-ships for their failers, having provided no other Cates, and Viands, but meal, Onions and Cheese for their Mariners, as well Rowers, as Sailers, have so embarked them and gone to sea: whereas the Wardens and Ediles who were to set forth plaies and dances have (to their great cost) fed their actors and players with delicate Eels, with tender Leccues, with Cloves of Garlicke, and with good marrow-bones, feeding them a long time before, most daintily, and whilst they did nought else but exercise their voice, scour their throats and clear their breaths, they made good cheer full merrily. And what good had these wastfull spenders of their good (spent about such vanities) in the end? If their Playes sped not well, but lost the victory, they were well mocked, and laughed at for all their pains and cost: but say they went away winners, and having the better hand, what got they by it? surely not a trevet or three footed foole, nor any other mark and monument of victory, as Demetrius said, but to remain a lamentable example of unthriften, who have laid all they had upon toys and fooleries, and left behind them their houses, like empty sepulchres, and imaginary tombs. This is the end that cometh of such expenses about Poetry; and no greater honour is to be looked for.

Now on the other side, let us behold likewise their brave Captains and Warriours: and while these pass along,

*There should indeed be silence or good words.  
They ought to void out of this company,  
Who idle live, and never drew their swords  
In field, or serv'd with care and agonie  
In common weal: whose heart would never stand  
To such Exploits, whose mind is the prefame,  
Who neither by Miltiades his hand,  
That slew the Medes nor by the Persians bane,  
Themistocles, was ever institute,  
And sworn to Lawes of Knighthood resolute.*

Yea mary, here (me thinks) I see a Martiall Mask, and brave shew toward: set out with squadrons embattell'd on land, with fleets arranged for to fight at sea, loaden and heavily charged with rich spoils and glorious Trophies.

*Alas! Alala, daughter dear,  
Of bloody VV'ars come forth and bear:*

Behold and see a Forrest of Pikes and Lances in the forefront, the very preamble and flourish before the battell: me thinks I hear one of them resound: Embrace death most hardy Knights, the best sacrifice and most sacred oblation that is, (for so faith *Epinomondas* the Thebane) fighting valiantly, and exposing your selves to the most honourable and bravest services that be in defence of Countrey, of your ancestors tombs and sepulchres, and of your Temples and Religion: me thinks also I see their victories coming toward me in solemn pomp and procession, not drawing or leading after them for their prize and reward, an ox or a goat; neither be the said victories crowned with Ivy, or smelling strong of new wine in the leers, as the Bacchantes do; but they have in their train, whole Cities, Islands, Continents and firm lands as well Mediterranean as maritime sea-coasts, together with new Colonies of ten thousand men a piece, to be planted here and there and withall, crowned they be and adorned on every side with Trophies, with triumphs, pillage and bootie of all sorts, the Ensigns, Badges & Armes that these victorious Captains give; the images also that they represent in shew, be their stately and beautiful Temples, as the Parthenon, the Hecatompedos; their City walls on the South side; the acerals to receive and lodge their ships; the beautiful Porches and Galleries; the Province of the demy ile *Chersonesus*, and the City *Amphipolis*: as for the Plain of *Marathon*, it goeth before the Laurel Garland, and Victory of *Miltiades*, *Salamis* accompanieth that of *Themistocles*, trampling under his feet, and going over the broken timber and shipwreck of a thousand Vessels: as for the Victory of *Cimon*, it bringeth with it an hundred Phenician great Gallies, from the River *Euxymedon*: that of *Demetrius*, and *Cleon*, comes from *Sphacteria*, with the Target of *Captain Brasidas* won in the field, and a number of his Souldiers captive, and bound in Chains: the Victory of *Conon*, walled the City, and that of *Thrasybulus* reduced the people with Victory and liberty from *Phyle*: the sundry Victories of *Alcibiades* let upright the State of the City, which by the unfortunate overthrow in *Sicily* reeled, and was ready to fall to the ground; and by the battels fought by *Nelus* and *Androclus* in *Lydia* and *Caria*: *Greece* saw all *Ionis* raised up again and supported. And if a man demand of each one of the other Victories, what benefit hath accrued unto the City by them? one will name the *Ile Lesbos*, and another *Samos*, one will speak of the *Euxine* Sea, and another of five hundred Gallies, and he shall have another talk of ten thousand Talents, over and above the honour and glory of Trophies. These be the causes why this city doth solemnize and celebrate so many festivall dayes, and hereupon it is, that it offereth Sacrifices, as it doth to the gods; not I wite, for the Victory of *Aeschylus* or *Sophocles*, nor for the Prize of Poetry, nor, nor when *Curcius* lay with *Alope*, or \* *Atidamus* with *Helior*: But upon the sixth of *Marathon*: and the sixth day of another [\* of another \*] moneth, maketh a solemn offering of wine unto the gods, in remembrance of that Victory which *Chabrias* obtained near unto the *Ile Naxos*: and upon the twelfth day of the same Moneth, there is another Sacrifice likewise performed in the Name of a Thanks-giving to the gods, for their Liberty recovered, because upon the

the same day those citizens which were prisoners, and in bondage within *Phyle*, came down and returned unto the City: upon the third day of March they wonne the famous field of *Plataea*: and the sixteenth day of the said March, they consecrated to *Diana*; for on that day this goddesse shone bright, and it was full Moone, to the victorious Greeks, before the *isle of Salamis*. The noble victory which they achieved before the City of *Mantineae*, made the twelfth day of September more holy, and with greater solemnity observed, for upon that day, when all other their allies and associates were discomfited and put to flight, they only by their valour wonne the field, and erected a trophie over their Enemies who were upon the point of victory. See what hath raised this City to such grandeur! Lo what hath exalted it to so high a pitch of honour! and this was the cause that *Pindarus* called the City of *Athens*, the pillar that supported *Greece*; not for that by the tragedies of *Phrynichus* or *Thespis*, it set the fortune of the Greeks upright, but in regard of this, that as himself writeth, in another place, along the coast of *Artemisium*:

*Where Athens youth as poet Pindar said,  
Of freedom first the glorious ground worke laid.*

And afterwards at *Salamis*, at *Mycalae*, and *Plataee*, having setled it firm and strong as upon a rock of diamonds, they delivered it from hand to hand unto others.

But haply some man will say: True it is indeed, all that ever Poets do, are no better than sports and pastimes: But what say you to Orateurs, they seem to have some prerogative and ought to be compared with martiall Captains: whereupon it may seem, as *Aeschines* scoffing merrily, and quipping at *Demosthenes* said: That there is some reason why the barre or pulpit for publick oration, may convenienc action and proceffe against the tribunall seat of generals, and their chaire of estate. Is it then meet and reasonable that the oration of *Hyperides* intitled *Plataica*, should be preferred before the victory which *Aristides* wonne before the City *Plataea*? or the oration of *Lysias* against the thirty tyrants, go before the massacre and execution of them performed by *Thrasybulus* and *Archias*? or that of *Aeschines* against *Timarchus*, being accused for keeping Harlots, and a brothell house, before the aide that *Phocian* brought into the City of *Byzantium*, besieged? by which buccell he impeached the Macedonians, and repressed their insolent villanies and outrages committed in abusing the children of the Athenian confederates? or shall we compare the oration of *Demosthenes* as touching the crown, with that publick and honourable coronets which *Themistocles* received for setting *Greece* free? considering that the most excellent place of all the said oration, and fullest of eloquence, is that wherein the said orator conjureth the soules of those their ancestors, and crierth them for witnesses, who in the battell of *Marathon* exposed their lives with such resolution for the safety of *Greece*? or shall we put in balance to weigh against worthy warriors, these that in schooles teach young men Rhetoricke, namely, such as *Isocrates*, *Anstiphan*, and *Isus*? But certain it is, that this City honoured those valiant Captains with publick funerals, and with great devotion gathered up the reliques of their bodies: yea, and the same orator canonized them for gods in heaven, when he swore by them, although he followed not their steps: and *Isocrates* who extolled and highly praised those who manfully fought and willing were to spend their heart-blood in the battell of *Marathon*, saying, that they made so little account of their lives, as if their own soules had been else-where, and other men in their bodies, magnifying this their Resolution, and the small reckoning which they made of this life; yet when himself was very old, upon occasion, that one asked him how he did: answered: I do even as an aged man, (having above 90. yeeres upon my back) may do; and who thinketh death to be the greatest misery in the world: and how waxed he thusold? Certes, not by filing and sharpening the edge of his sword; not by grinding and whetting the point of his speares head: not with scouring and forbishing his head-piece or morion; not with bearing armes in the field; not by rowing in the galleys: but forthwith with couching, knitting and gluing as it were together Rhetoricall tropes and figures; to wit, his *antitheta*, consisting of contraries, his *paria*, standing upon equal weight and measure of syllables, his *homopota*, precisely obtaining the like termination, and falling even of his clauses, polishing, smoothing, and perusing his periods and sentences, not with the rough hammer, and pickaxe, but with the file and planer most exactly. No marvel then, if the man could not abide the rustling of harness, and clattering of armour; no marvel (I say) if he feared the shock and encounter of two armies, who was afraid that one vowell should runne upon another, and least he should pronounce a clause or number of a sentence which wanted one poore syllable: for the very morrow after that *Miltiades* had wonne that field upon the plains of *Marathon*, he returned with his victorious Army into the City of *Athens*: and *Pericles* having vanquished and subdued the Samians within the space of nine moneths, gloried more than *Agamemnon* did, who had much ado to winne *Troie*, at the tenth yeare end; whereas *Isocrates* spends the time well near of three *Olympiades* in penning one Oracion which he called *Panegyricus*: notwithstanding all that long time, he never served in the warres, nor went in any embassage: he built no City, nor was sent out as a captain of a galley and warrenship, and yet that very time brought forth infinite warres: But during the space that *Timotheus* delivered the *isle Euboea* out of bondage; all the while that *Chabrias* warred at sea about the *island Naxos*, and *Iphicrates* desfiled and hewed in pieces one whole regiment of the Lacedaemonians, near the port of *Lechaum*, and in which time the people of *Athens* having enfranchised all Cities, ended *Greece* throughout with the same liberty of giving voices in the general assembly of the States, as they had themselves, he sat at home in his house poring at his booke, seeking out

\* The names of many, even to this present day, the City holdeth festivall the memory of that Victory, in the Plains of *Marathon*: and the sixth day of another [\* of another \*] moneth, maketh a solemn offering of wine unto the gods, in remembrance of that Victory which *Chabrias* obtained near unto the *Ile Naxos*: and upon the twelfth day of the same Moneth, there is another Sacrifice likewise performed in the Name of a Thanks-giving to the gods, for their Liberty recovered, because upon the

proper phrases and choise words for the said oration of his, in which space, *Pericles* raised great poetries, and the goodly temple *Hecatonpedes*; and yet the comical Poet *Gratinus*, scoffing even at this *Pericles*, for that he went but slowly about his works, speaketh thus as touching his wall, half done and half undone :

*In words long since our Pericles,  
hath rear'd us up a wall,  
But in effect and very deed,  
he doth nothing at all.*

Consider now I pray you a little, the base mind of this great professor of Rhetorick, who spent the ninth part of his life, in composing of one only oration : but were it meet and reasonable to compare the orations of *Demosthenes* as he was an orator, with the martial exploits of *Demosthenes*, being a captain; namely, that which he made against the inconsiderate folly of *Conon*, with the Trophies which himself erected before *Pylus*, or that which he wrote against *Ambabius*, as concerning slaves, with his worthy service, whereby he brought the Lacedæmonians to be slaves : neither in this respect, for that he composed one oration for the granting of free bourgeoisie, to those who were newly come to inhabit *Athens*, therefore he deserved as much honour as *Alcibiades* did, who combined the Mantines and Elians, in one league to be associates with the Athenians against the Lacedæmonians : and yet this must needs be confessed, that his publick orations deserved this praise, that in his *Philippiques*, he incited the Athenians to take armes, and commendeth the enterprise of *Leptines*.

## Whether of the twain is more profitable, fire or water,

### The Summarie.

**I**N this Academick declaration, *Plutarch* in the first place alledgeth the reasons which attribute more profit unto water. Secondly, he propoeth those that are in favour of the fire : whereunto he seemeth rather to incline, although he resolveth not : wherein he followeth his own manner of philosophizing upon natural causes; namely, not to dispute either for or against one thing : leaving unto the reader his own liberty, to settle unto that which he shall see to be more probable.

## Whether of the twain is more profitable, Fire or Water.

**T**He water is of all things best,  
And gold-like fire is in request.  
Thus said the Poet *Pindarus* : whereby it appeareth evidently, that he gives the second place unto fire. And with him accordeth *Hesiodus* when he saith :  
*Chaos was the firstest thing  
In all the world that had being.*

For this is certain, that the most part of ancient Philosophers called water by the name of *Chaos*, *ἡ πρώτη ὕλη*, that is to say, for that it followeth so easily. But if we should stand only upon testimonies about this question, the proof would be carried equally on both sides : for that there be in manner as many who think fire to be the primitive element, and principle of all things, and the very seed which as of itself produceth all things, so it receiveth likewise all into it self, in that universal conflagration of the world. But leaving the testimonies of men, let us consider apart the reasons of the one and the other, and see to whether side they will rather draw us. First therefore, to begin withal, may not this be laid for a ground : that a thing is to be judged more profitable, whereof we have at all times and continually need, and that in more quantity than another? as being a tool or necessary instrument, and as it were a friend at all seasons and every hour, and such as a man would say, preferreth it self evermore to do us service? As for fire, certainly, it is not alwaies commodious unto us; nay, contrariwise, it otherwhiles doth molest and trouble us : and in that regard we withdraw our selves far from it : whereas water serveth our turns both in Winter and Summer, when we are sick, and when we are whole, by night and by day : neither is there any time or season, wherein a man standeth in no need of it. And this is the reason that they call the dead, *ἀδελφός*, as one would say, *ἡ δὲ ψυχὴ*, that is to say, without juice, or wanting moisture, and so by consequence deprived of life. Moreover, without fire a man hath oft continued a long time, but without water never. And that which hath been from the first beginning and creation of man, is more profitable than that which was invented afterwards. And there is no question, but that nature hath given unto us, to wit, water, for our necessary use; but the other (I mean fire) either fortune or industry hath devised and found out as an appendant and accessory. Neither can it be said, what time of the world it was when as man had no water, nor ever read we in any records, that one of the gods, or demi-gods was the inventor thereof; for it was at the very instant with them, nay, what and we say that it gave them their being? But the use of fire was but yesterday, or the other day, to speak of, found out by *Prometheus*; so that the time was when as men lived

lived without fire; but void of water, our life never was. Now that this is no devised Poetical fiction, this daily and present life of ours doth plainly testify : for there be at this day in the world divers nations; that are maintained without fire, without house, without Hearth or Chimney, living abroad in the open wide air. And *Diogenes* the Cynick, seldom or never had any use of fire, inasmuch as having upon a time swallowed down a Polype Fifth raw : *Loe* (quoth he) my masters, how for your sake we put our selves in jeopardy; howbeit without water, there was never any man thought that either we might live honestly and civilly, or that our nature would possibly endure it. But what need is there that I should particularize thus, and go so near, as to search far into the nature of man? considering that whereas there be so many, or rather so infinite kinds of living creatures, mankind only in a manner knoweth the use of fire : whereas all the rest have their nourishment and food without the benefit of fire. Those that browse, feed, flee and creep, get their living by eating herbs, roots, fruits and flesh, all without fire : but without water there is not one that can live, neither going or creeping on the Land, nor swimming in the Sea, nor yet flying in the air. True it is, I must needs say, that *Arctophila* writeth, how some beasts there be, even of those that devour flesh, which never drink; but in truth, nourished they be by some moisture. Well then, that is more profitable without which no manner of life can consist or endure. Proceed we farther, and passe from those living creatures which are fed upon Plants, and Fruits, even unto the same that are by us and them used for food: Some of these be, which have no heat at all : others so little, as it cannot be perceived. Contrariwise, moisture is that which causeth all kind of seeds to chit, to bud, to grow, and in the end to bring forth fruit : for what need I to alledge for this purpose either wine and oil, or other liquors which we draw, press out, or milk forth out of beasts paps, which we do see daily before our eyes? considering, that even our wheat which seemeth to be a dry nutriment, is ingendered by the transmutation, putrefaction, and diffusion of moisture. Furthermore, that is to be held more profitable, which bringeth with it no hurt nor damage : but we all know that fire, if it break forth, get head and be at liberty, is the most pernicious thing in the world : whereas the nature of water of it self doth never any harm.

Again, of two things, that is held to be more commodious which is the simpler, and without preparation can yield the profit which it hath, but fire requireth alwaies some favour and matter, which is the reason, that the rich have more of it than the poore, and Princes than private persons : whereas water is so kind and courteous, that it giveth it self indifferently to all sorts of people : it hath no need at all of tool or instruments to prepare it for use; complex and perfect it is in it self, without borrowing ought abroad of others. Over and besides, that which being multiplied is it were, and augmented, loseth the utility and profit that it had, is by consequence less profitable : and such is fire, resembling herein a ravenous wild beast, which devoureth and consumeth all that it cometh near : inasmuch as it were by the industry and artificial means of him who knoweth how to use it with moderation, rather than of the own nature, that it doth any good at all : whereas water is never to be feared. Again of two things, that which can do good, being both alone, and also in the company of the other, is the more profitable of the twain : but to it is, that fire willingly admitteth not the fellowship of water, nor by the participation thereof, is any way commodious; whereas water is together with fire profitable, as we may see by the fountains of hot water how they be medicinable, and very sensibly is their help perceived. Never shall a man meet with any fire moist : but water as well hot as cold, is ever more profitable to man. Moreover, water being one of the four Elements, hath produced, as one may say, a fifth, to wit the Sea, and the same well near as profitable as any one of the rest, for many other causes besides, but principally, in regard of commerce and traffick. For whereas before time, man's life was savage, and they did not communicate one with another : this Element hath conjoynded, and made it perfect, bringing Society, and working Amity among men by mutual succours, and reciprocal contributions from one to the other. *Heraclitus* saith in one place, if there were no Sunne, there had been no light; and even as well may it be said; Were it not for the Sea, man had been the most savage creature; the most penurious and needy, yea, and the least respected in all the world; whereas now this element of the Sea hath brought the vine out of the Indians as far as Greece; and from Greece hath transported it unto the farthest Provinces : Likewise, from out of *Phenicia*, the use of Letters for Preservation of the memory of things : it hath brought wine : it hath conveyed fruits into these parts, and hath been the cause that the greatest portion of the world was not buried in ignorance. How then can it be otherwise, that water should not be more profitable, since it furnisheth us with another Element.

But on the contrary side, peradventure, a man may begin hereupon to make instance oppositely in this manner : saying, that God as a Master-workman having the four Elements before him, for to frame the Fabrick of this world withall; which being repugnant and refusing one another, earth, and water were put beneath, as the matter to be formed and fashioned; receiving order and disposition, yea, and a vegetative power to engender and breed such as is imparted unto it by the other two, air, and fire, which are they that give form and fashion unto them, yea and excite the other twain to generation, which otherwife had lien dead without any motion. But of these two, fire is the chief, and hath dominion, which a man may evidently know by this induction. For the earth if it be not enchaired by some base substance, is barren, and bringeth forth no fruit : but when as fire spreadeth it self upon it, it becometh into it a certain power, which causeth it to swell (as it were) and have an appetite to ingender. For other cause there can be none rendered why rocks, clifts, and mountains, be barren and dry, but this, that they have either no fire at all, or else participate very little the nature thereof : in summe, so far off is water from being of it self sufficient for the own preservation or generation of





with tart, and austere; and by this association, mixture and accord of colours, sounds, drogues, favours, and tastes; there are produced many compositions exceeding pleasant and delectable: for the opposition which is between habitude and privation, is always at odds and enmity, without any means of reconciliation, considering that the essence and being of the one, is the destruction of the other: whereas that fight which is occasioned by contrary powers, if it meet with fit time and season, serveth often times in good change unto arts, and to nature much more, as well in other productions and procreations, as in alterations and alterations of the air: for in the orderly governance and rule whereof, God who disposeth and disposeth them, is called Harmonical and Musical; not in regard that he maketh a friendly accord between base and treble, or a loving medley of white and black, but for that by his providence he ordereth so well the accord and discord of the Elementary heat and cold of the world, that in a certain moderation, and without excesses they strive, and yet are reconciled again, by taking from the one and the other, that which which was excessive, and reducing them both in such a temperature and estate, as appertaineth. Semblably, a man may sensibly feel cold as well as he doth heat; whereas you shall never see, hear, or touch, nor by any other sense perceive a privation, for it need to have some substance with it that doth affect the senses, and where there appeareth no substance, there we must suppose a privation, which is as it were the denial of substance, like as blindness is the negation of sight; silence of voice; void emptiness, of a body: for never shall one perceive voidness by the sense of feeling; but where there is not a body to be touched, there we must suppose vacuity: neither do we hear silence, but when we hear no noise at all, and we understand there is silence: the like we are to say of those who are blind, of the naked and disarmed, there is no sense of such privations, but rather a bare and negative of sense: and even so, we should have no feeling and perception of cold, but only where there wanted heat, there we should have imagined cold to be, in case it were nothing else but a deprivation of heat; but if it be so, that like as heat is felt by the warmth of the skin, and diffusion or dilatation of the flesh; even so is cold also by the striction, and condensation thereof, therefore it appeareth evidently, that it hath a proper, Principal, and particular source, as well as heat: over and besides, in every kind, privations one, and simple, but substances have many differences, and as many powers and faculties: for silence is never but after one sort, whereas the voice is diverse, one while troublesome, another while delightful. Senses, colours, and figures sensibly have like differences, while dispose and affect diversely the Subject which they approach unto, but that which is not palpable, not coloured, and generally not qualified with any quality, hath no diversity, but is ever alike. Now then, doth this cold resemble these privations in such sort, as it worketh no diversity in the accidents thereof? Or rather is it clean otherwise? for as sometimes there come unto bodies great and profitable pleasures by cold, so contrariwise it findeth as much hurt, as great displeasure, trouble, and encombrance thereby: by the offensive qualities thereof, the natural heat of the body is not always chased quite forth and clean gone, but oftentimes bit and pent and restrained within the body, it fighteth and maketh resistance, which combat of two contraries, is called horreur, quaking or trembling; but when the said heat is altogether vanquished, there must needs ensue a benumbing and congelation of the body, but if heat get the victory, it bringeth a certain warmth, and dilatation, with pleasure, which *Homer* by a proper term calleth *ἡμετέριον*: whereby it appeareth evidently unto every man, and as much by these accidents it is manifest, or rather more, than by any other arguments, that cold is opposite unto heat, as one substance to another, or as passion to passion; but not as privation to habitude, or negation to affirmation: and that it is not the corruption or utter destruction of heat, but a nature and puissance active by it self and powerful, to corrupt and destroy: for if it were not so, we must not have Winter to be one of the four seasons of the year; nor the North wind one of the four winds, as if the one were but a privation of the hot season, and the other of the South wind, and we shall be driven to say, that they have no proper Source, and peculiar Principle: howbeit there being in the universal world four principal bodies, which in regard of their plurality, simple nature and puissance, most men call the Elements, and suppose them to be the principles of all other bodies, to wit, fire, water, air, and earth, it followeth by necessary consequence, that there be also four primitive and simple qualities, and which be they, if they be not heat, cold, moisture, and dryness? by the means whereof, the said Elements both do and suffer all things interchangeably? And like as in the Elements and Principles of Grammar, which be: the Letters, there be be briefs, and longs; like as also in music notes, there is high and low, bass, and treble, and one of these is not the privation of the other; even so we are to think, that in these natural bodies of the Elements, there be contraries of moisture against dryness, and of cold against heat, if we will believe either reason or outward sense: or else we must say as old *Alexandres* was of opinion; that there is nothing hot or cold absolutely in substance; but we must confidently think that these be common passions of the matter coming, and occasioned after mutations: for he affirmeth that the things, which is pent, constricted, and thickened in any matter, the same is cold and that which openeth, and relaxeth it self, for so he useth this proper term *χαλερός*, is hot; and therefore it is not without some reason, that we commonly say, that a man bloweth both hot and cold, out of his mouth; for the breath is cooled when it is pressed close between the lips, but issuing forth of the mouth all open, it is hot by reason of the rarity, and laxity thereof: howbeit, *Aristotle* saith; that it was mere ignorance in him thus to say: For that when we breath with our mouths wide open, we let forth the hot air that is within us, but when we make a blast with our lips together we blow not out the breath that ariseth from our selves, but drive that Air from

that is before our mouth, which is cold, and felt before the other that cometh out of us. Seeing then that upon necessity enforced by so many reasons, we must admit a substance of cold and heat, proceed we & continue our first intent to search what is the Substance, nature, & Fountain of the afore-said Primitive Cold? They then who say that starkness and stiffness for cold, trembling and quaking of the body, and the staring and standing of hairs upright, and such like accidents and passions, are occasioned by certain triangular forms with unequal sides which are within our bodies, although they fail and miss the mark in particularity; yet to it is, that they fetch the beginning from whence they should, for surely the foundation and original of this Inquisition ought to be drawn as it were from the gods *Vesta*, after the common proverb, even from the universal nature of all things. And herein it seemeth, that a Philosopher most of all differeth from an Empirick Physician, a Husbandman, a Minister, and other such particular artificers, whom it sufficeth to know and understand the last and conjunct causes. For so it be, that a Physician do comprehend the nearest and next cause of his patients malady, for example, of an ague, that is a shooting or falling of the blood out of the veins into the arteries; and the Husbandman conceive that the cause of blasting or Maying his corn, is an hot gleam of the Sun after a shower of rain: and the player upon the flutes comprise the reason of the base sound, in the bending downward of his instrument, or the bringing of them one near unto another: it is sufficient for any of these to proceed to their proper work and operation: But a natural Philosopher who searcheth into the truth of things, only for meer knowledge and speculation, maketh not the knowledge of these last causes the end, but rather taketh from them his beginning, and ariseth from them to the primitive and highest causes. And therefore well did *Plato* and *Democritus*, who searching into the causes of heat and of heaviness, staid not the course of their inquisition, when they came to fire and earth, but referring and reducing things sensible, unto intelligible principles, proceeded forward, and never staid until they came unto the least parcels, as it were to the smallest seeds and principles thereof: Howbeit, better it were first to handle and discuss these sensible things, wherein *Empedocles*, *Straton*, and the Stoicks do repose the essences of all powers: the Stoicks attributing the primitive cold unto air, but *Empedocles* and *Straton* unto water: and another peradventure would suppose the earth rather to be the substantial subject of cold. But first let us examine the opinions of these before named. Considering then that fire is both hot and shining; it must needs be that the nature of that, which is contrary unto it, should be cold and dark: for obscurity is opposite unto brightness, like as cold to heat: and like as darkness and obscurity doth confound, and trouble the sight; even so doth cold the sense of feeling: whereas heat doth dilate the sense of him that toucheth it, like as cleanness the sight of him that seeth it: and therefore we must needs say, that the thing which is principally dark and light, is likewise cold in nature. But that the air above all things else is dim and dark, the very Poets were not ignorant; for the air they call darkness, as appeareth by these verses of *Homer*.

For why, the air stood thick the ships about.

And no moon shine from heaven shewed throughout.

And in another place:

The air anon be soon dispatched,  
and mist did drive away:

VVith that, the Sun shone out full bright,  
and batell did display.

And hereupon it is, that men call the air wanting light, *ἡμετέριον*, as one would say, *καὶ οὐδὲν*; that is to say, void of light: and the gross air which is gathered thick together, *ἡμετέριον*, by way of privation of all light. Air also is called, *ἡμετέριον* and *ἡμετέριον*, that is to say, a mist: and look what things sever hinder our sight, that we cannot see thorough, be differences all of the air; and that part of it which cannot be seen and hath no colour is called *ἡμετέριον*, that is to say, *ἡμετέριον*, to wit, invisible, *ἡμετέριον*, which is as much to say, *ἡμετέριον*, for want of colour. Like as therefore the air remaineth dark, when the light is taken from it; even so when the heat is gone, that which remaineth, is nothing but cold air. And therefore, such air by reason of coldness, is named *Tartarus*, which *Hesiodus* seemeth to insinuate by these words, *ἡμετέριον*, that is to say, the Air *Tartarus*; and to tremble and quake, he expresseth by this *ἡμετέριον*. These are the reasons alledged in this behalf. But for as much as corruption is the change of any thing into the contrary, let us consider whether it be truly said, The death of fire is the birth of air? For fire dieth as well as living creatures, either quenched by force, or by languishing and going out of it self. As for the violent quenching and extinction thereof, it is twofold evidently, that it turneth into air: for smother is a kind of air, and according as *Pindarus* writeth,

The vapour of the air thick,

Is wont against the smother to kick.

And not only that, but we may see also that when a flame beginneth to die for want of nourishment, as in lamps and burning lights, the very top and head thereof doth vanish, and resolve into dark and obscure air: and this may sufficiently be perceived, by the vapor which after we are bathed or lie in a stoup, flieth and steimeth up along our bodies, as also by that smother which ariseth by throwing cold water upon a flame, that heat when it is extinguished, is converted into air, as being naturally opposite unto fire: whereupon it followeth necessarily, that the air was first dark and cold. But that which is more, the most violent and forcible impression in bodies by cold, is congelation, which is a passion of water, and action of the air: for water of it self is given to spread and flow, as being neither solide nor compact and fast by nature; but hard it becometh, thick also and stiff, when

it is thrust close to by the air, and cold together coming between : and therefore thus we say commonly:  
*If after South, the North-wind blight do blow,  
 We shall be sure anon to have some snow.*

For the South wind prepareth the matter which is moisture, and the air of the North wind coming upon it, doth freeze and congeale the same : which appeareth manifestly in snow, for no sooner hath it evaporated, and exhaled a little the thin and cold air in it, but immediately it resolveth and runneth to water. And *Aristotle* writeth, that plates and plummetts of Lead, do melt and resolve with the cold and rigor of Winter, so soon as water only cometh unto them, and be frozen upon them. And the air (as it should seem) by pressing such bodies together with cold, breaketh and knappeth them asunder. Moreover, the water that is drawn out of a Well, or Spring, is sooner frozen and turned to Ice, than any other, for that the air hath more power over a little water, than a great deal. And if a man draw up a small quantity of water in a bucket, out of a pit or well, and let the same down again into the Well, yet so, as the vessel touch not the water, but hang in the air, and so continue there but a while, that water will be much colder than that which is in the bottom of the well : whereby it appeareth manifestly, that the primitive cause of cold, is not in water, but in air. And that so it is, the great rivers will testify, which never are frozen to the bottom, because the air is not able to pierce and enter so low, but as much as it can take hold of with the cold, either in touching or approaching near unto it, so much it frizeth and congealeth. And this is the reason that *Bartholinus* when they are to pass great rivers frozen over with Ice, send out Foxes before them : for if the Ice be not thick, but superficial, the Foxes hearing the noise of the water running underneath, return back again. Some also that are disposed to fish, do thaw and open the Ice with casting hot water upon it, and so let down their lines at the hole ; for then will the fishes come to the bait and bite. Thus it appeareth that the bottom of the river is not frozen, although the upper face thereof stand all over with an Ice, and that so strong, that the water thereby drawn and driven in so hard, is able to crush and break the boats and vessels within it ; according as they make credible relation unto us, who now do winter upon the river *Danube* with the Emperour. And yet without all these far-fet examples, the very experiments that we find in our own bodies, do testify no less : for after much bathing or sweating, alwayes we are more cold and chill ; for that our bodies being then open and resolved, we receive at the pores, cold together with air in more abundance. The same befalleth unto water it self, which both sooner cooleth and groweth also colder, after it hath been once made hot : for them more subject it is to the injury of the air : considering also that even they who sling and cast up scalding water into the air, do it for no other purpose, but to mingle it with much air. The opinion then of him, *O Phavorinus*, who assigneth the first cause of cold unto air, is founded upon such reasons and probabilities as these. As for him that ascribeth it unto water, he leaveth his ground likewise upon such principles : for in this manner writeth *Empedocles* :

*Behold the Sun how bright alwayes,  
 And hot he is beside,  
 But rain is ever black and dark,  
 And cold on every side.*

For in opposing cold to heat, as blackness unto brightness, he giveth us occasion to collect and infer, that as heat and brightness belong to one and the same substance, even so cold and blackness to another. Now that the black new proceedeth not from air, but from water, the very experience of our outward senses is able to prove : for nothing waxeth black in the air, but every thing in the water. Do but cast into the water, and drench therein a lock of wool, or piece of cloth, be it never so white, you shall when you take it forth again, see it look blackish, and so will it continue, until by heat the moisture be fully sucked up and dried, or that by the press or some weights it be squeezed out. Mark the earth, when there falleth a shower of rain, how every place whereupon the drops fall, seems black, and all the rest beside retaineth the same colour that it had before. And even water it self, the deeper that it is, the blacker hew it hath, because there is more quantity of it : but contrariwise, what part soever thereof is near unto air, the same by and by is lightsome and cheerful to the eye.

Consider among other liquid substances, how Oyl is most transparent, as wherein there is most ayr : for proof whereof, see how light it is, and this is it which causeth it to swim above all other liquors, as being carried aloft by the means of ayr. And that which is more, it maketh a calm in the Sea, when it is flung and sprinkled upon the waves, not in regard of the slippery smoothness, whereby the windes do glide over it, and will take no hold, according as *Aristotle* saith ; but for that the waves being beaten with any humor whatsoever, will spread themselves and ly even : and principally by the means of Oyl, which hath this special and peculiar property, above all other liquors, that it maketh clear, and giveth meane to see in the bottome of the waters, for that humidity openeth and cleaveth, when ayr comes in place : and not only yeeldeth a clear light within the sea to Divers, who fish-cbb in the night for spunges, and pluck them from the rocks whereto they cleave, but also in the deepest holes thereof, when they spurt it out of their mouths, the ayr then is no blacker than the water, but less cold : for trial hereof, look but upon Oyl, which of all liquors having most ayr in it, is nothing cold at all, and if it frize at all, it is but gently, by reason that the ayr incorporate within it, will not suffer it to gather and congeal hard : mark work-men also and Artificers how they do not dip and keep their Needles, Buckles, and Clasps, or other such things made of Iron, in Water, but in Oyl, for fear lest the excessive cold of the water would marr and spoile them quite. I stand

And the more hereupon, because I think it more meet to debate this disputation by such proofs, rather than by the Colours ; considering, that Snow, Hail, and Ice, are exceeding white and clear, and shall most cold ; contrariwise, pitch is hotter then honey, and yet you see it is more dark and blackish. And here I cannot chuse but wonder at those who would needs have the air to be cold, because forsooth it is dark : as also they consider not how others take and judge it hot, because it is light : for transparency and darkness, be not so familiar and near Cousins unto cold, as ponderosity and unalteredness : be proper thereto : for many things there be altogether void of heat, which notwithstanding are bright and clear : but there is no cold thing light and nimble, or mounting upward, for Clouds, them more they stand upon the nature of the air, the higher they are carried, and flie aloft, the more sooner resolve they into a liquid nature and substance, but incontinently they fall, and lose their lightness and agility, no less than their heat, when cold is ingendered in them : contrariwise, when heat cometh in place, they change their motion again to the contrary, and their substance mounteth upward so soon as it is converted into air. Neither is that supposition true as touching corruptions ; for every thing that perissheth is not transmutated into the contrary : but the truth is, all things are killed, and die by their contrary : for so fire being quenched by fire, turneth into air. And so this purpose *Archylus* the Poet said truly, although tragically, when he called water the punishment of fire, for these be his words :

*Water is my bitter nusic.*

*The water stay, which fire doth slay.*

And *Homer* in a certain *Bartell* opposed *Vulcane* to the river, and with *Neptune* matched *Apollo*, not so much by way of fabulous fiction, as by Physicall and naturall reason : and as for *Archilochus*, a wicked woman, who meant clean contrary to that which he said, and shewed, wrote elegantly in this wise.

*The crafty Ocean in right hand water cold,  
 And in the left, hot fire did closely hold.*

And among the Persians, the most effectual manner of supplication, and that which might in no wise be rejected and denied, was, if the suppliant with fire in his hand entered into a river, and there began to sing it into the water, if he might not have his request granted : and then he obtained verily his petition, but afterwards punished he was for that threatening which he used, as being wicked, wretched, and unnatural. And what Proverb is there readier in every mans mouth than to say, when we would signify an impossible thing. This is to mingle fire and water together ? which testifieth such much, that water is the mortall enemy unto fire, warring with it, punishing and quenching it, and not the air, which receiveth and entertaineth fire, and into the substance whereof it is transmutated : for if that into which a thing is turned when it perissheth, were contrary unto it, then fire should be more contrary to air then water is. For air when it doth gather and thicken is converted into water, but when it is more subtil it resolveth into fire, as also in like case, water by rarefaction is resolved into air, and by condensation becometh earth, not upon any enmity or contrariety that it hath to these both, as Luke is, but rather by reason of some amity and kindred that is between them. Well, whether way of these two it is that these Philosophers will take, they overthrow still their intent and purpose. But to say that it is the air which causeth water to frize, and become ice, it is without all fence, and most absurd : for we see that the very air it self is never congelate nor frozen, nor hardened, considering dumfries, fogs, and clouds are no congelations, but only gatherings, and thickenings of a moist and vaporous air : for the true air indeed which hath no vapour at all, and is altogether dry, admitteth so much refrigeration as may alter it to that degree, and height. And certain mountains there be which are not subject either to Clouds, Mists or Dews, for that their heads reach up to that Region of the air which is pure and exempt from all humidity : whereby it is apparent, that these gatherings, and thickening which are seen in the air beneath, proceed from cold and moisture, which is mingled therewith and runneth from else where. As for the bottoms of great rivers which be never frozen to, for great reason there is of it : for that the upper part being glazed over with ice, sufficeth not the exhalation which ariseth from beneath to passe through, but keepeth it enclosed, and striketh it downward, whereby is ingendered a certain heat in the water that runneth in the bottome. And hereof we may see a fair demonstration in this, that when the ice is broken, the water riseth up, and there mounteth with all great quantity of vapours, and exhalations ; which is the reason also that the bellies, and other concavities within the bodies of living creatures, are alwayes hotter in Winter, for that they hold and contain the heat, which the coldness of the circumstant air driveth inward. As for the drawing and flinging up of water into the air, it taketh not only the heat away from waters, but also their cold, and therefore they that desire to have their snow, or the liquors expressed out of it exceeding cold, move it as little as they can, for this stirring chaufeth away the cold both of the one & the other. But that it is the inward power of the water, and not of the air that doth it, a man may thus discourse and begin again : First, and foremost, it is not probable, that the air being so near as it is to the elementary fire, touching also as it doth that ardent revolution, and being touched of it again, hath a contrary nature and power unto it : neither is it possible that it should be so, considering that their two extremities are contrarie, yea and continue one to the other : neither foundeth it, and is conformable to reason, that nature hath fastened with one tennon (as they say) and placed so near together the killer, and that which is killed, the consumer and that which is consumed ; as if she were not the mediatrix between them of peace, unity and accord, but rather the work-Mistress, of war, debate, and discord.

For

For surely her order and custome is not to joyn front to front, substances that be altogether contrary, and open enemies one to the other; but to place between them such as participate with the one and the other, which are so seated, disposed and interlaced in the middle, as that they tend not to the destruction, but to the association of two contraries. Such a situation and region hath the air in the world, being spread under the fire, and before the water, for to accomodate and frame it self both to the one and the other, and to conjoyn and link them both together, being of it self neither hot nor cold, but it is as it were a medley and temperature of them both; not (I say) a pernicious mixture, but a gracious, which gently entervaineth and receiveth these contrary extremities. Furthermore, the air is alwaies equal, and yet the Winter is not evermore cold alike: but some parts of the world be cold and exceeding moist; others cold, and as dry, and that not casually and by fortune, but for that one and the same substance is susceptible, both of heat and cold. For the greater part of *Africa* is hot and dry, altogether without water. And those who have travelled through *Scythia*, *Thracia*, and *Pontus*, do report that there be exceeding great lakes therein, and that those kingdoms be watered with many mighty deep rivers; also that the countries in the midl between, and those parts which adjoyn upon those huge meeres, and fens be extreme cold, by reason of the vapours that arise from them. As for *Polidonius*, when he saith that the cause of that moisture is this, that the fenny and morish ayr is ever fresh and moist, he hath not solved the question which was probable, but made it more doubtful and without probability; for the air seemed not alwaies so much colder, as it is more fresh, in case cold be not engendered of moisture: and therefore *Homer* said much better:

*The winds from rivers, if that it bold,  
It alwaies bleake, and drowles full cold.*

as if he pointed with his very finger to the source and fountain of cold. Moreover, our sense doth oftentimes beguile and deceive us, as namely, when we touch wool or cloths that be cold, for we think that they be moist and wet, for that there is one substance common to both these qualities, and both these natures be neighbours and familiar. Also in those climates of the world, where the Winter is extreme hard and rough, the cold many times cracketh, and breaketh vessels of brass and of earthen; not any I mean that is void and empty, but all full, by reason that the water by the coldness thereof, doth violence unto them: howsoever *Theophrastus* thinketh, that it is the air that bursteth such vessels; using cold as it were a spike or great nail to do the feat. But take heed that this be not rather a perty, and elegant speech of his, than founding to truth; for if air were the cause, then should vessels full of pitch or milke, sooner burst than other. More likely it is therefore, that water is cold of it self, and primitively, for contrary it is to the heat of fire, in regard of that coldness, like as to the dryness thereof, in respect of humidity. To be brief, the property of fire in general, is to dissipate, divide, and segregate; but contrariwise, of water to joyn, conglutinate, unite, and binde, knitting and closing together by the vertue of moisture. And this makes me think that *Empedocles* upon this occasion, ever and anon calleth fire a pernicious debate, but water a fast amity; for fewel and food of fire, is that which turneth into fire, and every thing turneth which is moist proper and familiar; as for that which is contrary, the same is hardly to be turned, as water which of it self, it is impossible to burn, causing both green or wet herbs, as also moist or drenched wood, hardly to take fire, and so in the end with much a do, they kindle and catch fire, although the same be not light and clear, but dark, dim, and weak, because the viridity or greenness, by the means of cold, fighteth against the heat, as his natural enemy.

Pelting now and weighing these reasons, confer them with the others. But for that *Chrysippus* esteeming the air to be the Primitive Cold, in that it is dim and dark, hath made mention of those only who say, that water is more distant, and farther remote from the elementary fire, than the air, and being desirous to say somewhat against them: By the same reason (quoth he) may a man as well affirm that the earth is the said primitive cold; for that it is farthest from the elementary fire, rejecting this argument and reason as false, and altogether absurd. Me thinks that I can well shew, that the earth it self wanteth no probable proofs, laying my foundation even upon that which *Chrysippus* hath taken for the ayr: And what is that? namely, because it is principally, and above all things else obscure and dark; for if he taking to contraries of powers, thinketh of necessity the one must follow upon the other; certes, there be infinite oppositions and repugnances, between the earth and the air; for the earth is not opposite unto the ayr, as heavy unto light, nor as that which bendeth downward unto that which tendeth upward only; nor as massive, unto rare; or slow and steadfast, unto quick and moveable; but as most heavy unto most light; most massive unto most rare; and finally, as immovable in it self, unto that which moveth of it self; or as that which holdeth still the center in the mids, unto that which turneth continually round. Were it not then very absurd to say, that upon so many, and those so clear oppositions, this also of heat and cold, did not likewise jointly follow? Yes verily, but fire is clear and bright, and earth dark: nay rather it is the darkest of all things in the world, and most without light; for air is that which doth participate of the first light and brightness, which soonest of all other burneth: being also once full thereof, it distributeth that light every where, exhibiting it self as the very body of light: for as one of the *Dithyrambick* poets said.

*No sooner doth the sun appear  
In our horizon fair and clear,  
But with his lights the pallace great  
Of ayr and windes is all repleat.*

And

And then anon it descendeth lower, and imparteth one portion thereof to the Lakes, and to the seas; the very bottoms of the rivers do rejoyce and laugh for joy, so far forth as the ayr pierceth and cometh into them: the earth only, of all other bodies, is evermore destitute of light, and not penetrable with the radiant beams of Sun and Moon; well may it be warmed a little, and present it self to be warmed with the heat of the Sun, which encreaseth a little way into it, but surely the solidity of it will not admit the resplendent light thereof; only it is superficially illuminated by the Sun, for all the bowels and inward parts of it be called *Orpheus*, *Chaos*, and *Adeis*, that is to say, darkness, confusion, and hell it self: and as for *Erebus*, it is nothing else, to say a truth, but terrestrial obscurity, and thick darkness within the earth. The Poets feign the night to be the daughter of the earth; and the Mathematicians by reason and demonstration, prove, that it is no other thing, then the shadow of the earth, opposed against the Sun: for the ayr as it is full of darkness from the earth, so it is replenished with light from the Sun; and look how much of the ayr is not lightened nor illuminated, to wit, all the shadow that the earth casteth, so long is the night, more or less; and therefore both man and beast make much use of the ayr without their houses, although it be night season: and as for beasts, many of them go to relief and pasturage in the night, because the ayr hath yet some reliques and residue left of light, and a certain influence of brightness, dispersed here and there: but he that is enclosed within house, and covered with the roof thereof, is as it were blinde and full of darkness; as one enclosed round about within the earth: and verily the hides and horns of beasts, so long as they be whole and found, transmit no light through them: let them be cut, sawed, pared, and scraped, they become transparent, because ayr is admitted into them. And I think truly that the Poets dispose hereupon call the earth black, meaning thereby dark, and without light, so that the most important and principal opposition, between clear and dark, is found rather in the earth then in the ayr: But this is impertinent to our question in hand; for we have shewed already that there be many clear things which are known to be cold, and as many brown and dark which be hot.

But there be other qualities and poffances more proper unto cold, namely, ponderosity, steadiness, solidity, and immutability, of which the ayr hath not so much as one, but the earth in part hath them all more then the water. Furthermore, it may be said, that cold is that which most sensibly is hard, as making things stiff and hard: for *Theophrastus* writeth, that those fishes which be frozen, with extreme rigour of cold, if they be let fall upon the ground, break and knap in pieces, as if they were glasses or earthen vessels: And your self have heard at *Delphi*, of those who passed over the hill *Parnassus*, to succor and relieve the women called *Bacchæ*, who were surprized with a sharp pelting wind and drifts of snow; that their cloaks and mantles through extremity of cold, were as flark and stiff as pieces of wood, inso much as they brake and rent into tatters, so soon as they were about to stretch them out. To say yet more, excessive cold causeth the sinews to be so stiff, as hardly they will bend: the tongue likewise so flark, that it will not stir or utter any voyce, congealing the moist, soft, and tender parts of the body; which being seen by daily experience, they proceed to gather this consequence: Every power and faculty which getteth the matter, is wont to turn and convert into it self, that over which it is predominant: whatsoever is overcome by heat, becometh fire; that which is conquered by spirit or wind, changeth into ayr; what falleth into water, if it get not forth again, dissolveth, and in the end runneth to water. Then must it needs follow, that such things as are exceeding cold, degenerate into that primitive cold whereof we speak: now excessive cold is first; and the greatest alteration that can be devised by cold, is when a thing is congealed and made an ice, which conglutination altereth the nature of the thing so much, that in the end it becometh as hard as a stone; namely, when the cold is so predominant, as well all the moisture of it is congealed, as the heat that it had driven out perforce. Hereupon it is that the earth toward her center, and in the bottom thereof, is frozen altogether, and in manner nothing else but ice, for that the excessive cold, which never will yield and relent, there dwelleth and abideth continually, as being thrust and driven into that corner, farthest off from the elementary fire. As touching those rocks, crags, and cliffs, which we see to appear out of the earth: *Empedocles* is of opinion, that they were there set, driven up, sustained, and supported by the violence of a certain boiling and swelling fire within the bowels of the earth; but it should seem rather, that those things out of which all the heat is evaporate and flown away, be congealed and conglutinated so hard by the means of cold: and this is the cause that such crags be named in Greek *Pyra*, as one would say, congealed: toward the head and top whereof, a man shall see in them many places black again, namely, whereas the heat flew out when the time was, so as to see to, one would imagine that they had heretofore been burnt; for the nature of cold is to congeal all things; but some more, others less; but above all, those in which it is naturally as the first inherent: for like as the property of fire is to alleviate, it cannot otherwise be, but the hotter that a thing is, the more light also it is: and so the nature of moisture is so often, inso much as the moister any thing is, the softer also it is found to be: semblably, given it is to cold, to astringe and congeal: it followeth therefore of necessity, that whatsoever is most astringe and congealed, as is the truth, likewise the coldest; and look what is cold in the highest degree, the same must be principally and naturally that cold; whereof we are in question. And thereupon we must conclude, that the earth is both by nature cold, and also that primitive cold; a thing apparent and evident to our very senses; for fire and clay is colder then water: and when a man would quickly suffocate and put out a fire, he

Z z z

then with

throweth earth upon it. Black-smiths also, and such as forge iron, when they see it red hot, and at the point to melt, they strew upon it small powder, or grit of marble or other stones that have fallen from them, when they were squared and wrought, for to keep it from resolving too much, and to cool the excessive heat: the very dust also that is used to be thrown upon the bodies of wrestlers, doth cool them and refresh their sweats. Moreover, to speak of the commodity that causeth us every year to remove and change our lodgings, what is the meaning of it? winter maketh us to seek for high lodges, and such chambers as be far from the earth; contrariwise, summer bringeth us down to the Halls and Parlors beneath, driving us to seek retiring rooms, and willingly we love to live in vaults within the bosom of the earth: do we not thus, think you, directed by the instinct of nature, to seek out and acknowledge that which is naturally the primitive cold? and therefore when winter comes, we lay for houses and habitations near the sea-side, that is to say, we fly from the earth as much as we can, because of cold, and we compass our selves with the air of the sea, for that it is hot: contrariwise, in summer time, by reason of immoderate heat, we covet mediterranean places farther within the land, and far removed from the sea, not for that the air of it self is cold, but because it seemeth to spring and bud, as it were, out of the primitive cold, and to have a tincture, as I may so say, after the manner of iron from the power which is in the earth: and verily among running waters, those that arise out of rocks, and descend from Mountains, are evermore coldest: But if Wells and Pits, such as be deep, yield the coldest waters, for by reason of their profundity, the air from without is not mingled with these; and the others pass through pure and sincere earth, without the mixture of ayr among. As for example, such is the water near the cape of *Tenarus*, which they call *Styx*, destilling by little and little out of the rocks, and so gathered unto an head: which water is so extreme cold, that there is no vessel in the world will hold it, but only that which is made of an Ass's hoof; for put it into any other, it cleaveth and breaketh it. Moreover, we hear Physicians say, that to speak generally, all kinds of earth do restrain and cool: and they reckon unto us a number of minerals drawn out of entrails of the earth, which in the use of physick yield unto them an astringent and binding power: for the very element it self from whence they come, is nothing incisive, nor hath the virtue for to stir and exanimate; it is not active and quick, nor emollient, nor apt to spread; but firm, steadfast and permanent, as a square Cube or Dye, and not to removed; whereupon, being massie and ponderous as it is, the cold also thereof having a power to condense, constitute and to expresse forth all humors, procureth by the asperity and inequality of the parts, shakings, horrors and quakings in our bodies: and if it prevail more, and be predominant, so that the heat be driven out quite and extinct, it imprinteth an habitude of congelation and dead stupor. And hereupon it is, that the earth either will not burn at all, or else hardly and by little and little: whereas the ayr many times of it self sendeth forth flaming fire, it shooteth and bloweth, yea, and seemeth as inflamed, to lighten and flash: and the humidity which it hath, serveth to feed and nourish the heat thereof. For it is not the solid part of wood that burneth, but the oleous moisture thereof; which if it be once evaporate and spent, the solid substance remaineth dry, and is nothing else but ashes. As for those who labor and endeavor to shew by demonstration, that the same also is changed and consumed, for which purpose they sprinkle it with oyl, or temper it with grease, and so put it into the fire again, prevail nothing at all: for when the fatty and unctuous substance is burnt, there remain still evermore behinde, the terrestrial parts. And therefore earth being not only immovable in respect of situation, but also immutable in regard of the very substance, the ancient called it *teie*, that is to say, *Veja*, standing, as it were, sure and steadfast within the habitation of the gods: of which steadiness and congelation, the bond and link is cold, as *Archilechus* the Naturalist said: And nothing is there able to relax or mollifie it, after it hath once been baked in the fire or hardened against the Sun. As touching those who say that they feel very sensibly the winds and the water cold, but the earth not so well; surely these do consider this earth here, which is next unto us, and is no other thing in truth, than a mixture and composition of ayr, water, sun and heat; and methinks this is all one, as if a man should say, that the elementary fire is not the primitive and original heat, but rather scalding water, or an iron red hot in the fire; for that in truth there is no touching of these, or coming near unto them; as also, that of the said pure and celestial fire, they have no sensible experience nor knowledge by feeling, no more then they have of the earth which is about the centre, which we may imagine to be true, pure and natural earth, as most remote and farthest separate from all other: howbeit, we may have some guels and token thereof by their rocks here with us, which from their profundity send forth a vehement cold, which is in manner intolerable. And they likewise, who desire to drink their water passing cold, use to throw pibble stones into it, which thereby cometh to be more cold, sharp and piercing, by occasion of the great and fresh cold that ariseth from the said stones. And therefore we ought thus to think, that when our Ancients, those deep Clerks and great Scholars I mean, thought there could be no mixture of earthly things with heavenly, they never looked to places high or low, as if they hung in the scales of a balance, but unto the difference and diversity of their powers; attributing the qualities of heat, cleanness, agility, celerity and lightness, unto that immortal and eternal nature: but cold, darkness and tardity, they assigned as the unhappy lot and wretched portion of those infernal wights that are dead and perished. For the very body of a creature, all while that it doth breathe and flourish, in verdure as the Poets say, hath life and heat, but so soon as it is destitute of these, and left in the only portion and possession of the earth, it presently becometh stiff and cold, as if heat were in any other body naturally, rather then in that which is terrestrial.

Compas

Compare now, good Sir *Phavorinus*, these arguments with the reasons of other men, and if you find that they neither yield in probability, nor over-weigh them much, bid all opinions and the stiff maintaining of them farewell, and think that so farbear resolutions, and to hold off in matters obscure and uncertain, is the part of the wisest Philosopher, rather then to settle his judgement and assent to one or other.

## Natural Questions.

### The Summary.

This Collection of divers Questions taken out of Natural Philosophy, and resolved by the Author according to the Doctrine of Naturalists, being so clearly distinguished by it self, requires no long deduction: in that at the very first sight each Question may sufficiently be understood.

## Natural Questions.

1.

What is the cause that Sea-water nourisheth no trees?

Is it for the same reason, that it nourisheth no Land-creatures? for that a plant, according to the opinion of *Plato*, *Anaxagoras* and *Democritus*, is a living creature of the Land. For say that it serves for food to plants growing within the sea, as also to fishes, and is to them their drink, yet we must not infer thereupon, that it feedeth trees that be without the sea, and upon the land: for neither can it pierce down to their roots, it is so gross, nor rise up in the nature of sap, it is so heavy. That it is gross, heavy, and terrestrial, appeareth by many other reasons, and by this especially, for that it beareth up and sustaineth both vessels and swimmers more then any other.

Or is it principally for this, that whereas nothing is more offensive and hurtful to trees then dryness, the water of the sea is very delicate? which is the reason that salt withstandeth putrefaction (so much as it doth), and why the bodies of those who are washed in the sea, have incontinently their skin excoiating dry and rugged.

Or rather may it not be, for that oyl is naturally an enemy to all plants, causing as many of them are rubbed or anointed therewith to dye: Now the sea-water standeth much upon a kinde of fatness, and is very unctuous, in such sort that it will both kindle, and also increase fire: and therefore might warning and forbid to throw sea-water into flaming fire.

Or is it because the water of the sea is bitter and not potable, (by reason (as *Aristotle* saith) of the humors that are mixed with it? like as lie, which is made by casting fresh water aloft upon ashes: for turning and passing through the said ashes murther that sweet and potable quality of the water: as also within our bodies, the unnatural heats of an aque turn humors into cholour. As for those plants, woods or trees, which are said to grow within the Red-sea, if they do, certainly they bear no fruit; but nourished they are by the fresh rivers, which bring in with them a deal of mud; an argument hereof is this: for that such grow not far within the sea, but near unto the land.

2.

What might the reason be, that trees and seeds are nourished better with rain, then any other water that they can be watered withal?

Is it for that rain as it falleth, by the dint that it maketh, openeth the ground, and causeth little holes, whereby it pierceth to the roots, as *Lotus* saith?

Or is this untrue? and *Lotus* was ignorant hereof, namely, that morish plants, and such as grow in pools, as the reed Mace, Canes and Rushes, will not thrive if they want their kinde rains in due season? But true is that which *Aristotle* saith, That the rain water is all fresh and new made, whereas that of Meers and Lakes is old and stale.

Or haply, this carrieth more shew and probability with it then truth, for certain it is, that the water of Fountains, Brooks, and Rivers, come as new and fresh as they are: for as *Herodotus* saith, it is impossible for a man to enter into one and the same River twice, because new water cometh still, and runneth away continually, and yet these nourish less then rain waters.

Whither therefore the reason, because the water from heaven is light, subtile, aëreous, and mixed with kinde of spirit, which by that subtilty, penetreth soom, and is easily carried to the root of plants: and hereupon in the fall it raiseth little bubbles, because of the air and spirit enclosed within.

Or doth the rain water nourish more in this regard, that it is sooner altered and overcome by that which it nourisheth; for this is it that we call concoction properly: contrariwise, crudity and indigestion, when things are so strong and hard that they will not suffer; for such as be thin, simple, and aëreous, are most easily and soonest altered; of which kinde is rain water, for being engendered as it is in the ayr and the winds, it falleth pure and clean; whereas springing waters, are like to the earth, out of which they issue, or the places through which they pass, gathering thereby many qualities,

Zzz 2

which

which cause them to be unwilling to be digested, and more slow to be reduced by concoction, into the substance of that which is to be nourished thereby: or the other side, that rain waters be easie to be changed and transmuted, it appeareth by this, that more subject they are to corruption and putrefaction, then those either of rivers, or of pits and wells: and concoction seemeth to be a kinde of putrefaction: as Empedocles beareth witness, saying:

*When in vine-wood the water purifies,  
It turns to wine, whiles under vork it lies.*

Or rather the truest and readiest reason that can be alledged, is the sweetness and wholesomeness of rain waters, falling as they do so presently, so soon as the wind sends them down: and hereupon it is that beasts desire to drink thereof before any other: yea, and the Frogs and Paddocks expecting a rain, for joy long more shrill and merrily, ready to receive and entertain that which will season the dead and dormant waters of standing lakes, as being the very seed of all their sweetness: for *Aratus* reckoneth also for one of the signs of a shower toward, writing thus:

*When wretched brood,  
The Adders food,  
from out of standing lake,  
(The Tad-pole fires,  
I mean) desires  
fresh rain, and loud doth eake.*

\* *Constat.  
Lat. Spargi  
murmure.  
Aristoph. in  
Ran.*

What might be the cause that shepherds and other herdmen give salt unto their sheep and cattel which they feed?

It is as most men do think, to the end that they should fall the better to their meat, and so consequentely feed fat the sooner? because the acrimony of salt provoketh appetite, and opening the pores, maketh way unto the nourishment for to be digested and distributed more easily throughout the whole body? in regard whereof the Physician *Apollonius*, the son of *Herophilus*, gave counsel and prescribed lean folks, and such as thrived not in their flesh; not gross sweet wine, thick gruel, and humery, but salt fish out of the pickle, Anchovies, powdered meats, and such as were condite in brine: the subtle acrimony whereof might in manner of setting a peruke for want of hair, serve to apply nutriment through the pores of the body into those parts that need it.

Or rather may it not be for health sake? in which regard they use their cattel to lick salt, thereby to take down their rank feeding, and restrain their grossness and corpulency? for such as grow exceeding fat, are subject to breed diseases: but salt consumeth and dispatcheth this fat; and by thinness also when they are killed, they are sooner and with greater expedition flayed, because the fat which knit and bound the skin fast to the flesh, is now become more thin, gentle, and pliable through the acrimony of the salt: besides, the blood also of such as be ever licking of salt, becometh more liquid; and nothing there is within, that will gather and grow together, in case there be salt mingled therewith.

It may be moreover, that they do it for to make them more fruitful and apter for generation; for we see that Salt-Bitches, which have been fed with salt meats, are more hot, apter to grow proud, and sooner with whelp. And for this cause, those Keels and Barges that transport salt, breed greater store of mice, for that they engender the oftner.

How cometh it to pass, that of rain waters, such as fall with thunder and lightning, which thereupon be called *Asperum*, are better for to water seeds or young plants, then any other?

May it not be, because they be full of wind and ventosity, by reason of the trouble and confused agitation of the air? And the nature of wind and spirit is to stir the humidity; and by that means doth send it forth and distribute it the better?

Or is it not rather, that heat fighting against cold, is the cause of thunder and lightning in the air? which is the reason that seldom there is any thunder in winter: but contrariwise, very often in the Spring and Autumn, for the inconstant and unequal diffemperature of the ayre: which being supposed, the heat concocting the humidity, causeth it to be more pleasant and profitable unto the plants of the earth.

Or why may it not be, because it thundreth and lightneth especially and more often in the Springs, then in any other season of the year, for the reason before alledged: now the spring showers and rains are most necessary for feeds and herbs, against the summer time: whereupon those Countreys wherein there be many good ground-showers in the spring, as the Isle of *Sicily*, bring forth plenty of good fruit.

What

How is it, that there being eight kinde of \* savours, there is no more but only one of them, to wit, saltish, \* *ἡγεμονία*: that cannot be found naturally in fruits? For as touching the bitter savor, the *Olive* hath it at first; *ἀπὸ τῆς ὀλῆς*, and the *Grape* is four at the beginning: but as these fruits begin to change, and grow to their ripeness, I make the bitterness of the *Olive* turneth into a fatty and unctuous savor, and the sharp verdure of the *Grape* choice of sharpness in *Pomgranates*, changeth into sweetness. As for *Pomgranates*, some there be as also other to express Apples, which are simply sour, and never have other taste. And as for the sharp and biting savor, the object is ordinary in many roots and seeds.

But for that the salt savor is not primitive nor engendered originally, but is rather the corruption of dotho *Savours*, and in that regard cannot serve to nourish any creature, living with grass, and grain? but it is to some instead of a sauce, because it is a means that they should not upon fullness either loath or distaste that which they feed upon.

Or because, that like as they, who boil Sea-water, rid it from that salt, brackish and biting quality, so, in those that are hot by nature, the salt savor is dulled and mortified by heat?

Or rather, for that a favour or smack, according as *Plato* saith, is a water or juice passing thorough vortices of them or stalk of a plant: but we see that the Sea-water running as thorough a streiner, loseth when it is saltish, being the terrestrial and grossest part that is in it. And hereupon it is, that when as men dig affecteth along by the sea side, they meet with springs of fresh and potable water. And many there be, who the taste deep out of the very sea, fresh water and good to be drunk; namely, when it hath run thorough certain although vessels of wax, by reason that the terrestrial and saltish parts thereof be strained out. In one word, we commonly see or marke also, yea, and the carrying of Sea-water in long conduit pipes, catcheth the same, when attributed to be strained, to be potable, for that there are kept still in them the terrestrial parts, and are so: favours to be suffered to pass thorough. Which being so, very probable it is that plants neither receive from without our smell, nor any salt favour, nor if haply any such quality breed in them, do they transmute the same into their fruits; for that the conduits of their pores being very small and straight, there cannot be admitted thorough them any gross or terrestrial substance.

Or else we must say, that saltiness in some sort a kinde of bitterness, according as *Homer* signifieth in these verses:

*Bitter salt-water at mouth be cast again,  
And all therewith his head did drop again.*

And *Plato* affirmeth, that both the one and the other favour, is absterive and liquefactive; but the *Alkali*, less of the rwaun, as that which is not rough: and so it will seem that bitter differeth from salt in excess of dryness, for that the salt savor is also a great drier.

What is the cause, that if folks use ordinarily and continually to go among young trees or shrubs full of dew, those parts of their bodies which do touch the twigs of the said plants, are wont to have a scurf or mange rise upon their skin?

It is (as *Letus* saith) for that the dew by the subtilty thereof doth free and pierce the skin? Or rather, because like as the blast and mil-dew is incident to those seeds or plants that take wet and be drenched; even so, when the smooth and tender superficial parts of the skin be fretted, scarified, and dissolved a little with the dew, there ariseth a certain humor, and filleth the fretted place with a moist and angry scurf: for lighting upon those parts which have but little blood, such as be the smalls of the legs and the feet, it biteth and gnaweth the superficies of them. Now that there is in dew a certain inordinate quality, it appeareth by this, that it maketh those who are gross and corpulent, to be leaner and more spare of body; witness our women who are given to be fat, and would be fine, who gather dew with linnen cloathes, or else with locks or fleeces of wool, thinking therewith to take down and spend their fogginess, and make themselves more gant and slender.

What is the cause that Barges and other Vessels in Winter time, go more slowly upon the Rivers then at other seasons; but they do not so upon the sea?

What say you to this? May it not be, for that the ayre of Rivers being always gross and heavy, in Winter is more insipidate by reason of the circumstant cold, and so is an hindrance to the course of ships?

Or haply this accident is to be imputed to the water of Rivers, rather then to the air about them; for cold driving in and restraining the water, maketh it more heavy and gross; as we may perceive in water hour-glasses, for the water runneth out of them more lustily and slowly in winter then in summer. And *Theophrastus* writeth that in *Thracian*, near unto the mount called *Pangoon*, there is a fountain, the water whereof is twice as much heavy in winter as it is in summer, weigh it in one and the same vessel full. That the thickness of water maketh a Vessel to pass more sluggishly, it may



may appear by this, that the Barges of the River carry greater freights by far, in winter than in summer: because the water being thick, is stronger and able to bear more. As for the sea-water, it cannot be made more thick in winter, by reason of the own heat, which is the cause that it congealeth not, and if it gather any thickening, it seemeth to be very slender and little.

8.

*What is the reason that we observe, all other waters, if they be moved and troubled, are the colder, but the sea the more surging and waving, the hotter it is?*

It is because, if there be any heat in other waters, the same is a stranger unto it, and coming from without, and to the motion and agitation thereof doth dissipate and drive the same forth again: but that heat of the sea which is proper and natural to it, the winds do stir up and augment. That the sea is naturally hot, may evidently be proved by this, that it is so transparent and shining; as also for that it is not ordinarily frozen, heavy though it be and terrestrial.

9.

*What should be the cause that in winter the sea-water is less bitter and brackish in taste?*

For so (by report) writeth *Dionysus* the great conveyer of conduits, who in a Treatise of that argument, saith, that the bitterness of the sea-water is not without some sweetness, seeing that the sea receiveth so many and so great rivers: for admit that the Sun do draw up that which is fresh and potable out of it, because it is light and subtil; that is but from the upper part only: and withal, it doth more in summer than in any other season, by reason that in winter his beams are not so strong to strike, for that his heat likewise is but faint and feeble: and so a good portion of the sweetness remaining behind, doth delay that excessive bitterness and brackishness, like a medicine, that it hath. And the same befalleth unto river waters, and all other that be potable: for even such in summer time become worse: and more offensive to the taste than in winter, by how much the heat of the Sun doth resolve and dissipate the light and sweet parts thereof: but in winter it runneth always new and fresh; whereof the sea cannot chuse but have a good part, as well because it is evermore in motion, as also for that the rivers running into it, be great, and impart their fresh water unto it.

10.

*What is the reason, that men are wont to pour sea-water into their wine vessels, among the wine? And the common report goeth, that there were sometime certain Mariners and Fishermen who brought with them an Oracle, commanding to plunge and dip Bacchus in the sea: And such as dwell far from the sea, instead of sea water, put in baked plaster of Zacyanthus?*

It is to this end, that the heat thereof should help to resist the cold, that it take not away the heart of the wine? Or rather clean contrary, doth it not weaken the headiness of wine, by extinguishing the power and strength thereof?

Or it may be, that seeing wine is much subject to alteration, and will quickly turn, the terrestrial matter which is cast into it, having a natural property to restrain, to binde and to stop, doth in some sort consolidate and stay the watrish and spirital substance of it. Now the salt, together with the sea water, coming to subtilitate and conformance that which is superfluous, and naught in the wine, and not the proper substance thereof, keepeth it so, as it will not suffer any strong and evil smell or corruption to be ingendred therein: Besides all the gross and terrestrial parts of the wine, sticking and cleaving to that which setteth to the bottom, and being drawn downward with it, maketh a residence of the lees and dregs, and by consequence leaveth the rest more clear, pure, and neat.

11.

*What is the cause that those who sail upon the sea, are more sick in the stomach, than they that sail upon rivers, yea, though the weather be fair and the water calm?*

It is for that of all the senses, smelling, and of all passions, fear causeth men most to be stomach sick: for so soon as the apprehension of any peril seizeth upon a man, he trembleth and quaketh for fear, his hair standeth and standeth upright, yea, and his belly groweth to be loose. Whereas there is none of all this that troubleth those who sail or row upon the river: for why, the smell is acquainted with all fresh and potable water, neither is the sailing so perilous: whereas upon the sea men are offended with strange and unusual smells, yea, and be ever-soon afraid, how fair soever the season be, not trusting upon that which they see present, but misdoubting that which may fall out. And therefore little or nothing serveth the calm without, when the mind within is tossed, troubled, and vexed, partly with fear, and in part with distrust, drawing the body into the fellowship of like passions and perturbations.

What

12.

*What is the reason that if the sea be sprinkled aloft with oyl, there is to be seen a clear transparence, together with a calm and tranquillity within?*

Whether is it (as *Aristotle* saith) because the wind gliding and glancing over oyl which is smooth and even, hath no power to stir it, or to make any agitation. Or, this reason may well carry with it some probability as touching the outward part, and upmost superficies of the sea: but seeing that they also, by report, who plunge and dive to the bottom thereof, holding oyl within their mouths, if they spurt the same forth when they are in the bottom, have a light all about them, and are able to see clearly in the deep; a man cannot attribute the cause thereof unto the gliding over of the wind. See therefore if it may not rather be, for that the oyl by the solidity and thickness that it hath, doth drive before it, cut, and open the sea water first, being terrestrial and unequal; which after being returned and drawn together again into it self, there be left still in the midst between, certain little holes which yield unto the eyes a through-light and transparence.

Or rather is it, for that the ayr mingled within the sea, is by reason of heat, naturally lightsome and perspicuous; but when it is troubled and stirred, becometh unequal and shadowy; when as the oyl therefore by means of solidity cometh to polish and smooth the said inequality, it returneth again the own plainness and perspicuity.

13.

*What is the reason that fisher mens nets do rot in winter rather than in summer, notwithstanding that all other things putrifie more in summer than in winter?*

It is because (as *Theophrastus* supposeth) the heat then be set round about with the circumstance cold, giveth place thereto, and therefore causeth the bottom of the sea as well as of the earth, to be the hotter: which is the reason that spring waters be warmer, yea, and both lakes and rivers do reek and smelt more in winter than in summer, because the heat is kept down and driven to the bottom by the cold, which is predominant over it?

Or rather are we to say, that the nets rot not at all, but whensoever they be stiff congealed with cold which drieth them out, soon broken afterwards they are with the violence of the waves, and so seem all they were rotten and putrified indeed: for in more danger they are in cold and froly weather; and like as strings and sinews over-stretched do break, seeing especially that the sea in winter most commonly is troubled, which is the reason that they use to restrain and thicken them with certain linens, for fear they should be overmuch relaxed and resolved; for otherwise, if it were not for the doubt, being not so dyed and besetured all overs, they would sooner deceive fisher, because they could not perceive them so soon; for that the colour naturally of the lines and threads resembling the sea, is very meet to deceive within the sea.

14.

*What is the reason that the \*Dorian\*, \*pray for to have ill inning of their key?*

\*Dorian  
som: tran-  
state it

It is for this cause, because they is not well inned with, or having taken a shower? for mowen down state it is not dry, but while it is green and full of sap, and if it take wet withal, it rotteth incontinently, and is marred: whereas contrariwise, if standing corn be mowen with rain a little before the harvest, it taketh much good against both southern winds, which will not suffer the corn to gather and hit in the ear, but cause it to be loose, that it cannot ear well by means of heat, were it not by the ploughing and watering of the ground, the moisture did cool and mollifie the earth.

15.

*What is the reason that a fat, strong, and heavy clay ground, beareth wheat best: but contrariwise a light and sandy soil, is better for barley?*

May not this be a reason, that of all corn, that which is more strong and solid, requireth larger food, and the weaker less, and more slender nourishment? now it is well known that barley is more feeble and hollow grain than wheat is: in which regard it will not abide and bear plentiful moisture and strong. An argument and testimony hereof we may have of that kind of wheat which is called the re-mo-neth wheat, for that in drier grounds it liketh better, and cometh up in greater plenty: the reason is, because it is not so firm and solid as others, and therefore requirerth less nourishment: in regard whereof, also it cometh sooner to ripeness and perfection.

How

16.

*How cometh this common proverb, Sow wheat in dirt, and barley in dust?*

\* *ryller*, haply it should be *ryllous*, or *ryllous*, that is to sow, unless with barley, and is more commodious for it, being as it is, a more loose and spongy kind of younder-grain.

Or because such a temperature of the ground in regard of the heat, is more proportionable, and less hurtful unto barley, being as it is the colder grain?

Or rather, husbandmen are afraid to \*thrash their wheat upon a dry and sandy floor, because of Ants; for soon will they take to that kind of grain in a such a place. As for barley, they use left to bear it, because the corns thereof be hard to be carried and re-carried from one place to another, they are so big.

17.

*What is the cause that sisters chuse the hair of Stone-horse tails rather than of Mares, to make their angling lines?*

It is because the male, as in all other parts, so in hair also, is more strong than the female? Or rather, for that they think the hair of Mares tails, drenched and wet as it is ever and anon with their staling, is more brittle and worse than the other?

18.

*What is the reason that when the \* Calamace fish is seen in the Sea, it is a sign of a great tempest?*

It is because all soft and unscaly fishes are very impatient of cold and of foul-weather, they be so bare and naked, and have withal their flesh exceeding tender, as being covered, neither with shell nor thick skin, ne yet scale; but contrariwise, having their hardy, gristly, and bony substance within? which is the reason that all such fishes be called *Malacia*, as one would say, Soft and tender. For which cause naturally they soon foresee a tempest, and feel cold coming, for that it is offensive unto them: and therefore likewise, when the Poulpe or Polyp runneth so land, and catcheth hold of some little rocks, it is a token that there is great wind toward. And for the Calamary, he leapteth forth for to avoid the cold and the trouble or agitation of the water in the bottom of the sea: for of other soft fishes, his flesh is most tender and aptest to be pierced and hurt.

19.

*Why doth the Polyp change his colour?*

It is according to the opinion of *Tobophrastus*, because it is a fearful and timorous creature by nature; and therefore when he is troubled or amazed as his spirit turneth, so he altereth withal his colour, even as we men do? whereupon we say in the common proverb:

*The coward, in view  
Soon changeth hue.*

Or may this be a good probable conjecture of the change, but not sufficient, for the resemblance? considering that he changeth so, as he resembleth the rocks which he fettereth upon. Unto which property, *Pindarus* alluded in these verses:

*His minde doth alter most mutable,  
To Poulpe the Sea-fish skin fenable;  
Which changeth hue to each thing suitable:  
To live in all worlds he is pliable.*

And Theophrastus:

*Put on a minde like Polype fish,  
and learn so to dissemble:  
Which of the rock whereto it sticks,  
the colour doth resemble.*

Also, men usually say, such as surpass others for cunning and cantelous dealing, study and practise this: that for to save themselves, and not to be seen or known of those about them, they always will be like unto the Poulpe, and change their colours, that is to say, their manners and behavior.

Or

Or do they think such an one to make use of his colour readily, as of a garment, to change and put on another whensoever he will?

Well then, the Poulpe fish himself, by his fear may haply give the occasion and beginning of this change and passion; but the principal point of the cause consisteth in something else. And therefore weigh and consider what *Empedocles* writeth:

*Wot well, all mortal things that be,  
Diffusions have in some degree.*

For there pass away continually, many diffusions, not onely from living creatures, plants, earth and sea, but also from stones, brasse and iron: for all things perish and yield a smell, in that there runneth something always from them, and they wear continually: inasmuch as it is thought that by these diffusions are all attractions and insulations; and some suppose their embracings and connexions; others, their spillings: some their impussions, and I wot not what circumplexions and environments, to be attributed unto such diffusions; and especially from rocks and stones along the sea continually, washed and dashed with the waves, there be diffusions pass of some parcels and small fragments, the which do cleave unto other bodies, and cling about those which have their pores more strict and close, or else pass thorough such as have the same over rare and open. As for the flesh of the Polype, it is to see to, situate and spongy, like unto honey-combs, apt to receive all such diffusions and decisions from other bodies, when as then he is afraid, his wind goeth and cometh, and withal, shutteth up his body, and bringeth it together, that he may receive and retain in the superficies of his skin, the diffusions that come from that which is next it: for the rivels and wrinkles of his soft skin, which are knit with sea, are instead of crooks and bending cleys fit to entertain the diffusions and parcels lighting upon them, which scatter not here and there, but gathering upon the skin, make the superficies thereof to be of fensible colour. And that this is a true cause, it may appear by a great argument, namely, that neither the Polyp doth resemble in colour all that which is near unto it, nor the Chameleon the white colour; but both the one and the other, such things onely, as the diffusions whereof are proportionate unto their pores and small passages.

20.

*What is the cause that the tears of wilde Bores be sweet, but of Stags and Hindes, salish and unpleasant to the taste?*

Heat and cold are the cause of both; for the Stag is cold of nature, but the Bore exceeding hot and fiery: whereupon it is, that the one fleeth away, the other maketh head, and stands to it which he is assaulted, and then is it most of all that he sheddeth tears, upon a fell heart: for when play of heat (as I said before) mounteth up unto his eyes,

*His bristles stare and stand upright,  
His ardent eyes like fire are bright.*

and so the humor that distilleth from his eyes, is sweet. Others say, that these tears are pressed and wrung out from the blood being troubled, like as whey from milk: and of this opinion was *Empedocles*. And so much as the blood of the wilde Bore is black and thick in regard of heat, but that of Stags and Hindes, thin and waterish, great reason there is that the tears which pass from the one in anger, and the other in fear, should be such as is aforesaid.

21.

*What is the reason, that tame Swine do farrow often in one year, some at one time, and some at another; whereas the wilde of that kinde, bring forth Pigs but once in the year, and all of them in a manner upon the same days, and those are in the beginning of Summer: whereupon we say in our vulgar Proverb:*

*The night once past, of wilde Sows farrowing:  
'Twill rain no more be sure, for any thing.*

Yst (think you) for the plenty they have of meat; as in truth,fulness brings wantonness, and of full feeding cometh lust of breeding: for abundance of food causeth superfluity of seed, as well in living creatures as in plants. As for the wilde Swine, they seek their victuals themselves, and then with travel and fear: whereas the tame have always store thereof, either naturally growing for them, or else provided by mans industry.

Or is the cause of this difference to be attributed unto the idle life of the one, and the painful labor of the other: for the domestical and tame are sluggish, and never wander far from their Swinherds: but the other range and rove abroad among the forrests and mountains, running to and fro, dispatching quickly all the food they can get, and spending it every whit upon the subsistence of their bodies, leaving no superfluities, expedient for geniture or seed.

Or may it not be, that tame Sows do keep company, feed and go in herds together with their Bore, which provoketh their lust, and kindleth the desire to engender: according as *Empedocles* hath written of men in these verses:

The

*The sight of eye, doth kindle lust in brest,  
Of looking, liking, then loving and the rest.*

Whereas the wilde, because they live apart, and pasture not together, have no such desire and lust one to another; for their natural appetite that way is dulled and quenched.

Or rather, that is true which Aristotle saith, namely, that Homer calleth a wilde Bore *224m*, as having but one Genetory, for that the most part of them, in rubbing themselves against the trunks and stocks of trees, do crush and break their stones.

22.

*What is the reason of this usual speech: that Bears have a most sweet hand, and that their flesh is most pleasant to be eaten?*

**B**ECAUSE those parts of the body which do best concoct and digest nourishment, yield their flesh most delicate: now that concocteth and digests best, which stretcheth most, and doth greatest exercise: like as the Bear moveth most this part, for his fore-paws he useth as feet to go and run withal, he maketh use also of them as of hands to apprehend and catch any thing.

23.

*What is the cause that in the spring-time wilde beasts are hardly hunted by the sent, and followed by the trace?*

**I**S it for that Hounds, as Empedocles saith,

*By sent of nostrils, when they trace  
Wilde beasts, to finde their resting place.*

do take hold of those vapors and defluxions which the said beasts leave behinde them in the wood as they pass: but in the spring time these are confounded, or utterly extinct by many other smells of plants and shrubs, which as then be in their flower, and coming upon the ayre that the beasts make, and intermingled therewith, do trouble and deceive the sent of the hounds, whereby they are put out and at default, that they cannot truly hunt after them by their trace; which is the reason (men say) that upon the Mountain *Aetna* in *Sicily*, there is never any hunting with hounds, for that all the year long there is such abundance of flowers, both in hills and dales, growing, as it were, in a meadow or garden, whereof the place smelleth all over so sweet, that it will not suffer the hounds to catch the sent of the beasts. And verily, there goeth a tale, that *Pluto* ravished *Proserpina* as she was gathering flowers there: in which regard the inhabitants honoring the place with great reverence and devotion, never put up or hunt the beasts that pasture about that Mountain.

24.

*What is the reason, that when the Moon is at the full, it is very hard for hounds to meet with wilde beasts by the trace or sent of the footing?*

**I**S it not for the same cause before alledged, for that about the Full-Moon there is engendered store of dew: whereupon it is that the Poet *Alcman* calleth dew the daughter of *Jupiter*, and the Moon in these verses:

*Dame Dew is Nourse, whom of god Jupiter  
And lady Moon, men call the daughter.*

For the dew is nothing else but a weak and feeble rain: And why? because the heat of the Moon is but infirm: whereof it cometh to pass, that the draweth up vapors indeed from the earth, as doth the Sun, but not able to fetch them up aloft, nor there to comprehend them, letteth them fall again.

25.

*What is the cause that in a white or hoary frost, wilde beasts are hardly traced?*

**W**HETHER it is for that they being loth for very cold to range far from their dens, leave not many marks of their footings upon the ground: which is the reason that at other times they make spare of that prey which is next unto them, for fear of danger if they should be forced to range far abroad in Winter, and because they would have ready at hand about them at such an hard season to feed upon.

Or else it is requisite that the place where men do hunt, have not only the tracks of the beast to be seen, but also of force to affect the sent of the hounds, and to set their nostrils awork; but then do they move this sense of theirs, when as they are gently dissolved and dilated as it were by heat: whereas the ayre if it be extrem cold, congealing as it were the smells, will not suffer them to spread and be diffused abroad, thereby to move the sense: and hereupon it is (as folk say) that perfumes, oynments, and wines, be less fragrant and odoriferous in winter, or in cold weather, then at other times, for the ayre being it self bound and shut close, doth likewise stay within it all sense, and will not suffer them to pass forth.

What

26.

*What is the cause that brute beasts, so often as they are sick, or feel themselves amiss, seek after divers medicinable means for remedy, and using the same, finde many times help? as for example: Dogs when they be stomach sick, fall to eat a kinde of quitchy grass, because they would cast and vomit choleric; Hogs search for Gray-sibes of the river, for by feeding upon them they cure their headachs; the Tortois likewise having eaten the flesh of a Viper, eateth upon it the herb Origan; and the Bear when she is full in the stomach, and doth loath all victuals, licketh up Pissines with her tongue, which she no sooner hath swallowed down, but she is refreshed, and yet none of all this were they taught, either by experience, or some casual occasion?*

**I**S it then the smell that moveth them to seek these remedies, and like as the honey-combs by the odor stir up the Bee: and the flesh of dead Carions the Vultures, drawing and alluring them afar off: so the Gray-sibes invite unto them Swine, Origan the Tortoise, and Pissines the Bear, by certain sent and fluxions which are accommodate and familiar unto them, without any sense leading them thereto by discourse of reason, and teaching them what is good and profitable?

Or rather be they the temperatures of the bodies disposed unto sickness, that bring unto these creatures such appetites, engendering divers acrimonies, Sweetnesses, or other strange and unusual qualities: as we see it ordinary in great-bellied women, who during the time that they go with child fall to eat grit and earth with greediness: inasmuch, as expert Physicians fore-know by the sundry appetites of their Patients, whether they shall live or dye, for so *Meslieus* the Physician doth report, that in the beginning of the *Pneumony* or inflammation of the lungs, one patient of his, longing for to eat Onions, escaped that malady; and another, whose appetite stood for Figs; dyed for it, of the same disease: for that the appetites follow the temperatures, and the temperatures are proportionate to the diseases.

It standeth therefore to great reason that beasts likewise, such as are not surprized with mortal maladies, nor sick to death, have that disposition and temperature, whereby their appetites do move and provoke each one to that which is good and wholesome, yea and expedient to the cure of their sickness.

27.

*What is the cause that Must or new Wine, continueth sweet a long time, in case the vessel wherein it is kept be cold round about it?*

**I**S it because the alteration of this sweet favor into the natural taste of wine, is the very concoction of the wine; and cold hindereth the said concoction, which proceedeth from heat.

Or contrariwise, because the proper juice and natural favour of the Grape is sweet, for we say, that when the grape beginneth to ripen, when it waxeth sweet. Now cold not suffering new wine to exhale, but keeping the kinde heat thereof within, preserveth the said sweetness still. And this is the very cause that those who make their vintage in a rainy constitution of the weather, do finde that their new wine will not work so well in the vatte, because that such ebullition proceedeth of the heat, and cold doth restrain and refresh the said heat.

28.

*What is the cause that of all savage beasts, the Bear doth never lightly gnaw the net, and toil with her teeth, whereas Wolves and Foxes use ordinarily to eat the same?*

**I**S it for that her teeth grow far within her mouth, in such sort that she cannot get within the cords of the nets, having besides so great and thick lips between, that they hinder her for catching hold with her said fangs.

Or rather because the having more force in her fore-feet, which she useth instead of hands, therewith she doth tear and break the cords; or else having use both of her paws and also of her mouth: she employeth those to the bursting of the nets, and with her teeth figheth, and maketh her part good against the hunters. Besides the tumbling and rolling of her body that she doth practise, serveth her in as good stead as any thing else. And therefore seeing herself in danger to be taken within the toil many times, calteth herself round upon her head, and endeavoreth that way to escape, rather then either by paws or fangs to burst the toil.

29.

*What is the reason that we wonder not to see any sources or springs of cold water, like as we do of hot? notwithstanding it is evident that as heat is the cause of these, so is cold of the other.*

**F**OR we must not say as some hold opinion, that heat indeed is an habitude of it self, but cold nothing else but the privation of heat: for it were in truth more wonderful how that which hath no substance, should be the cause of that which hath a being. But it seemeth that nature would have us to wonder hereat, only for the rare sight hereof; and because it is not often seen, therefore we should enquire for some secret cause, and demand how that may be, which is but seldom observed.

But

But feelt thou this flarry firmament,  
So high above and infinitely vast,  
In bottom moft of water element,  
The earth beneath how is encompaffed fast.

How many ftrange and wonderful fights doth it represent unto us in the night feafon, and what beauty fheweth it onto us in the day time? and the common people wonder at the nature of thefe things \* \* As alfo at the Rain Bows, and the divers tinctures, forms and pictures of the clouds appearing by day: and how they be adorned with fundry fhapes, breaking out of them in manner of bubbles.

30.

What is the caufe that when vines or other yong plants, which be rank of leaves, and otherwife fruitful, are laid together?

It is becaufe that Goats in Greece <sup>are</sup> ~~are~~, which are exceeding fat, be lefs apt to gender, and hardly for their fatnefs can leap the females. For generative feed is the fuperfluous excrement of that nourishment which is conglutinate to the fubftantial parts of the body. Now when as any living creature or plant is in very good plight and grown groffe, it is an evident fign, that the nouriture is employed and fpent altogether in the maintenance of it felf, leaving no excrement at all, or the fame very fmall, and not good for generation.

31.

What is the reafon, that if a vine be fprinkled, and drenched with wine, efpecially that which came of the owne grape, it dryeth and withereth away?

Is there not the fame reafon hereof as of the baldnefs in great drinkers, when as the wine by means of heat, caufeth the moifture to evaporate which fhould feed the hair of their head? Or is it not rather, becaufe the very liquor of wine cometh in fome fort of putrefaction, according to the verbes of Empedocles:

When in vine-wood the water putrifies,  
It turns to wine, whiles under bark it lies.

When as then a vine cometh to be wet with wine outwardly, it is as much as if fire were put into it, which doth corrupt the natural temperature of that humor which fhould nourish it?

Or rather, pure wine, being of an astringent nature, foaketh and pierceth to the very root, where fhutting up and enclosing the pores, it empaceth the entrance of that fap (by vertue whereof, the vine is wont to bud, burge, and flourish) that it cannot run to the flock?

Or may it not be, it is clean contrary to the nature of a vine, that the liquor which once went out of it, fhould return again into it? for a liquor or humor whiles it is within the plant in the nature of a fap, may well have power to feed the fame; but that being departed, once from thence, it fhould joyn thereto again, or become a part thereof, I cannot fee how it is poffible.

\* I finde no more of thefe questions in the Greek original, or the French tranflation, but in one Latine tranflation it followeth on this wi.

32.

Why doth the Date tree onely of all others arife atch-wife, and bend upward, when a weight is laid thereupon?

Whether may it not be that the fire and fpiritual power which it hath and is predominant in it, being once provoked, and as it were angered, putteth forth it felf so much the more, and mounteth upward?

Or becaufe the poife or weight aforefaid forcing the boughs fuddenly, oppreffeth and keepeth down the airy fubftance which they have, and driveth all of it inward: but the fame afterwards having refumed ftrength again, maketh head afrefh, and more eagerly withftandeth the weight?

Or laftly, the foffer and more tender branches not able to fuftain the violence at firft, so foone as the burthen refeth quiet, by little and little lift up themfelves, and make a fhew as if they rofe up againft it.

33.

What is the reafon that pit-water is lefs nutritive then either that which arifeth out of fountains, or falleth down from heaven?

It is becaufe it is more cold, and withal hath lefs ayr in it? Or, for that it containeth much falt therein, by reafon of fuch flore of earth mingled therewith: now it is well known, that falt above all other things caufeth leannefs.

Or becaufe ftanding as it doth ftill, and not exercifed with running and ftirring, it getteth a certain malignant quality, which is hurtful and offensive to all living creatures drinking thereof; for by occafion of that hurtful quality, neither is it well concocted, nor yet can it feed or nourish any thing. And verily the fame is the very caufe that all dead waters of Pools and Mears be unwholfome, for that they cannot digeft and difpatch thofe harmful qualities which they borrow of the evil property, either of ayr or of earth.

VVy

34.

Why is the West wind held commonly to be of all other the fwaifteft, according to this verfe of Homer.

Let us likewife beftir our feet,  
As faft as weftern winds do fleet.

Is it not think you, becaufe this wind is wont to blow when the sky is very well cleafed, and the ayr exceeding clear and without all clouds; for the thickeft and impurity of the ayr, doth not (I may fay to you) a little impeach and interrupt the courfe of the wind?

Or rather, becaufe the Sun with his beams ftirring through a cold wind, is the caufe that it paffeth the faster away; for whatfoever is drawn in by the refrigerative force of the winds, the fame if it be overcome by heat as his enemy, we muft think is driven and fet forward both farther, and alfo with greater celerity.

35.

What fhould be the caufe that Bees cannot abide fmoak?

Whether is it becaufe the pores and paffages of their vital fpirits be exceeding ftreight, and if it chance that fmoak be gotten into them and there kept in and intercepted, it is enough to flop the poor Bees breath, yea and to ftangle them quite?

Or is not the acrimony and bitternefs (think you) of the fmoak in caufe? for Bees are delighted with fweet things, and in very truth they have no other nourishment; and therefore no marvel if they detest and abhor fmoak, as a thing for the bitternefs moft adverse and contrary unto them: and therefore honey-Mafters, when they make a fmoak for to drive away Bees, are wont to burn bitter herbs, as Hemlock, Centaury, &c.

36.

What might be the reafon that Bees will fower fting thofe who newly before, have committed whoredoms?

Is it not becaufe it is a creature that wonderfully delighteth in purity, cleannelfs and elegancy? and withal hath a marvellous quick fenfe of fmelling: becaufe therefore fuch unclean dealings between man and woman in regard of flefhly and beaftly luft, immoderately performed, are wont to leave behinde in the parties much filthinefs and impurity; the Bees both fooner finde them out, and alfo conceive the greater hatred againft them: hereupon it is that in Theocritus the Shepherd after a merry and pleafant manner, fendeth Venus away into Anchifes to be well flung with Bees, for her Adultery, as appeareth by thefe verbes:

Now go thy way to Ida mount,  
go to Anchifes now,  
Where mighty Oaks, where banks along  
of fquare Cyprus grow,  
Where Hives and hollow trunks of trees,  
with honey fweet abound,  
Where all the place with humming noife  
of bufie Bees refound.

And Pindarus:

Thou painfull Bee, thou pretty Creature,  
Who Honey-combs fweet angled, as they be,  
With feet doft frame, false Rhaceus and impure,  
With fting haft prick for his lewd villany.

37.

What is the caufe that Dogs follow after a ftone that is thrown at them, and biteth it, letting the man alone who flung it?

Is it becaufe he can apprehend nothing by imagination, nor call a thing to minde: which are gifts I ad vantage proper to man alone? and therefore, feing he cannot difcern nor conceive the party that offered him injury, he fuppofeth that to be his enemy which feemeth in his eye to threaten him, and of it he goes about to be revenged?

Or thinking the ftone whiles it runs along the ground, to be fome wilde beaft, according to his nature he intendeth to catch it firft: but afterwards, when he feeth himfelf deceived and put befides his reckoning, he feteth upon the man?

Or rather, doth he not hate the ftone and man both alike; but purfueth that only which is new unto him?

A a a a

What

38.

*What is the reason that at a certain time of the year, Stee Wolves do all whelp within the compass of twelve days?*

**A** Nipater in his Book containing the History of living creatures, affirmeth, that the Wolves exclude forth their young ones about the time that Mast-trees do shed their blossoms; for upon the taste thereof their wombs open: but if there be none of such blossoms to be had, then their young die within the body, and never come to light. He saith moreover, that those Countries which bring not forth Oaks and Masts, are never troubled nor spoiled with Wolves. Some there be who attribute all this to a tale that goes of *Latona*: who being with child, and finding no abiding place of rest and safety by reason of *Juno*, for the space of twelve days; during which time, she went to *Delos*, being transmutated by *Jupiter* into a Wolf, obtained at his hands, that all Wolves for ever after might within that time be delivered of their young.

39.

*How cometh it, that water seeming white aloft, sheweth to be black in the bottom?*

**I** S it, for that depth is the mother of darkness, as being that which doth dim and mar the Sun-beams before they can descend so low as it: as for the uppermost superficies of the water, because it is immediately affected by the Sun, it must needs receive the white brightness of the light; the which *Empedocles* verily approveth in these verses:

*A River in the bottom seems,  
By shade of colour black;  
The like is seen in Caves and Hales,  
By depth, where light they lack.*

Or many times the bottom of the Sea and great Rivers being full of mud, doth by the reflection of the Sun-beams represent the like colour that the said mud hath?

It is not more probable, that the water toward the bottom is not pure and sincere, but corrupted with an earthly quality, as continually carrying with it somewhat of that, by which it runneth and wherewith it is stirred; and the same feeling once to the bottom, causeth it to be more troubled and less transparent?

## Platonique Questions.

### The Summary.

**I** N these gatherings, Plutarch expoundeth the sense of divers hard places, which are found in the Disputations of Socrates, contained in the Dialogues of Plato his Disciple, but especially in *Timæus*; which may serve to allure young Students to the reading of that great Philosopher, who under the bare of words, hath delivered grave and pleasant matters.

## Platonique Questions.

I.

*What is the reason, that God other-whiles commanded Socrates to do the part of a Midwife, in helping others to be delivered of Child-birth, but forbade himself in any wise to procreate children? according as it is written in a Treatise, entitled, Theætetus. For we ought not to think, that if he had been disposed to cavil, to jest or to speak ironically in this place, he would have abused the name of God. Besides, in this self same Treatise he attributeth many other high and magnificent speeches unto Socrates, and nameth this among many others: Certes (quoth he) there be many men (right good sir) who carry this mind to me-ward, that they are disposed plainly to carp and bite me, in case at any time I seem to rid them of any foolish opinion that they have, neither think they that I do it of good will and meaning well unto them, shewing themselves herein far short of this doctrine. That no God beareth evil will to men: no more verily do I this unto them upon any malice: but surely I cannot otherwise choose, neither do I think it lawful for me either to smother up and pardon a lie, or to dissemble and suppress a truth.*

**I** S it for that he termeth his own nature, as being more judicious and inventive, by the name of God? like as *Menander* doth, saying:

*This mind, this our intelligence,  
In truth is of Divine essence.*

And

And Heraclitus:

*Mans nature we must needs confesse,  
Is heavenly and a god double.*

Or rather in very truth there was some Divine and Celestial cause, which suggested and inspired into Socrates this manner of Philosophy; whereby sitting as he did continually, and examining others, he cured them of all swelling pride, of vain errors, of presumptuous arrogance; likewise of being odious, first to themselves, and afterwards to those about them of their company: for I am fortified about his time, that a number of these Sophisters swarmed over all Greece, unto whom young Gentlemen resorting, and paying good sums of money for their salary, were filled with a great weening and opinion of themselves, with a vain persuasion of their own learning and zealous love to good Letters, spending their time in idle Disputations, and frivolous contentions, without doing any thing in the world, that was either good, honest, or profitable. Socrates therefore, who had a special gift by his manner of speech and discourse, as it were by some purgative Medicine, to argue and convince, was of greater authority and credit when he confuted others, in that he never affirmed nor pronounced resolutely any thing of his own; yea, and he pierced deeper into the souls and hearts of his hearers, by how much he seemed to seek out the truth in common, and never to favorize and maintain any opinion of his own: for this begetting of a mans own fancies, mightily impaccheth the faculty and power to judge another, for evermore the Lover is blinded in the behalf of that which he loveth: and verily, there is nothing in the world that loveth so much the own, as a man doth the opinions and reason whereof himself was the father; for surely that distribution and partition among children which is commonly said to be most just and equal, is in this case of opinions and reasons most unjust; for in the former every one must take his own, but in this he ought to choose the better, yea, though it were another mans: and therefore once again, he that fathereth somewhat of his own, becometh the worse judge of other mens: And like as there was sometimes a Sophister or great learned man, who said: That the Elians would be the better Umpires and Judges of the Sacred Olympick Games, in case there were never any Elian came in place to perform his prizes; even so, he that would be a good President to sit and determine of divers Sentences and Opinions; no reason there is in the world that he should desire to have his own Sentence crowned, nor to be one of the Parties contending, and who in truth are to be judged by him. The Grecian Captains after they had defeated the Barbarians, being assembled in Council to give their voices unto those whom they deemed worthy of reward and honour, for their Prowess; judged themselves also have done the best service, and to be the most valorous Warriours. And of Philosophers I assure you there is not one but he would do as much, unless it were Socrates, and such as he, who confess that they neither have, nor know ought of their own: for these in truth be they who only shew themselves to be uncorrupt, and competent Judges of the truth, and such as cannot be challenged: for like as the ayr within our ears if it be not firm and steady, nor clear without any voice of the own, but full of singing sounds, and ringing noises, cannot exactly comprehend that which is said unto us; even so, that which is to judge of reasons in Philosophy, if it meet with any thing that refoundeth and keepeth ag hammering within, hardly will it be able to understand that which shall be delivered without forth: for the own particular opinion which is domesticall and dwelleth at home, of what matter soever it be that is treated of, will always be the Philosopher that hitreth the Mark, and toucheth the truth best; whereas all the rest shall be thought but to opine probably the truth. Moreover, if it be true that a man is not able perfectly to comprise or know any thing, by good right and reason then did God forbid him to call forth these false Conceptions, as it were, of untrue and unconstant opinions, and forced him to reprove and detect those who ever had such: for no small profit, but right great commodity comes by such a speech as is able to deliver men from the greatest evil that is, even the spirit of error, of illusion and vanity in opinion.

*So great a gift as God of special grace,  
Gave never to Asclepius his race,*

For the Physick of Socrates was not to heal the body, but to cleanse and purifie the soul, seffered inwardly and corrupt. Contrariwise, if it beso, that the truth may be known, and that there be but one truth, he who learned it of him that found it not out, hath no less than the inventor himself; yea, and better receiveth it he, who is not persuaded that he hath it: nay, he receiveth that which is simply best of all: much like as he who having no natural children of his own body begotten, taketh the best that he can choofe, for to make his adopted child. But consider here with me, whether other kinds of Learning deserve not haply to have much study imploied in them, as namely, Poetry, Mathematicke, the art of Eloquence, and the opinions of Sophisters and great Clerks: Therefore God of that Divine power whatsoever, forbade Socrates to engender them; but as touching that which Socrates affirmed to be the only wisdom, to wit, the knowledge of God and spiritual things, which he himself calleth the amorous Science; there be no men that beget or invent it, but call the same only to remembrance: whereupon Socrates himself never taught any thing, but proposing only unto young men certain beginning of difficulties and doubts, as it were the fore-throws of Child-birth, stirred up, awakened, and drew forth their own natural wits, and inbred intelligences: and this was it that he called the Midwives Art, which brought nothing into them from without, as others would make them believe, who conferred with them, that they infused reason and understand-

Aaaa 2

ing,





of the seed or kernel, he should not speak contraries: for the very body it self being moved and altered by the feed, springeth and groweth to be such: semblably the matter void of form and indeterminate, having once been shapen by the soul, which was within, received such a form and disposition.

*What is the reason, that whereas there be bodies and figures, some consisting of right lines, and others of circular, he hath taken for the foundation and beginning of those which stand of right lines, the triangle isosceles, with two equal sides, and Scalenum, with three sides all unequal: Of which, the triangle with two even legs composed the cube or square body, which is the element and principle of the earth: and the triangle with three unequal legs made the pyramidal body, as also the tetraedron with right angles, and the cube with twenty faces, whereof the first is the element and seed of fire, the second of air, and the third of water: and yet he hath overpassed quite all bodies and figures circular: notwithstanding that he made mention of the spherical figure or round body when he said, that every one of those figures above named is apt to divide a globe or spherical body into equal parts?*

It is as some do imagine and suppose, because he attributed the Dodecaedron, that is to say, the body with twelve faces unto the Globe or round Sphere, in saying that God made use of this form and figure, in the framing of the world? for in regard of the multitude of elements, and bluntness of angles, it is farthest off from direct and right lines, whereby it is flexible, and by breaching forth round in manner of a Ball made of twelve pieces of Leather, it approacheth nearest unto roundness, and in that regard is of greatest capacity: for it contained twenty angles solid, and every one of them is comprised and environed within three flat obtuse or blunt angles, considering that every of them is composed of one right and five part: moreover compact it is and composed of twelve Pentagons, that is to say, bodies with five angles, having their angles and sides equal: of which every one of thirty principal triangles, with three unequal legs: by reason whereof, it seemeth that he followed the degrees of the Zodiac, and the days of the year together, in that division of their parts so equal and full in number.

Or may not this be the reason, that by nature the right goeth before the round? or rather, to speak more truly, that a circular line seemeth to be some vicious passion or faulty quality of the right, for we use ordinarily to say, that the right line doth bow or bend: and a circle is drawn and described by the center, and the distance from it to the circumference, which is the very place of the right line, by which it is measured out; for the circumference is on every side equally distant from the Center. Moreover, the *Conus*, which is a round Pyramid; and the *Cylindre*, which is as it were a round column or pillar of equal compass, are both made of figures with direct lines, the one, to wit, the *Conus*, by a triangle, whereof one side remaineth firm, and the other with the base goeth round about it: the *Cylindre*, when the same befalleth to a parallel. Moreover, that which is less, cometh nearest unto the beginning, and resembleth it most: but the least and simplest of all lines is the right; for of the round line that part which is within, doth crook and curb hollow, the other without doth bump and bunch. Over and besides, numbers are before figures, for unity is before a prick; seeing that a prick is in position and situation an unity, but an unity is triangular, for that every number triangular, eight times repeated or multiplied, by addition of an unity becometh quadrangular, and the same also befallth to unity; and therefore a triangle is before a circle, which being so, the right line goeth before the circular. Moreover, an element is never divided into that which is composed of it: but contrariwise, every thing else is divided and resolved into the own elements whereof it doth consist. If then the triangle is not resolved into any thing circular; but contrariwise, two diameters crossing one another, part a circle just into four parts; then we must needs infer the figure consisting of right lines, went before those which are circular: now that the right line goeth first, and the circular doth succeed and follow after, *Plato* himself hath showed by demonstration, namely when he saith, that the earth is composed of many cubes or square flat bodies, whereof every one is enclosed, and contained with right lined superficies, in such manner disposed, as yet the whole body and mass of the earth seemeth round like a globe, so that we need not to make any proper element thereof round; if it be so that bodies with right lines, conjoynd and set in some sort one to another, bringeth forth this form: Over and besides the direct line, be it little or be it great, keepeth always the same rectitude: whereas contrariwise we see the circumferences of Circles if they be small, are more coping, bending, and contract'd in their outward curvature: contrariwise, if they be great, they are more extant, lax, and spread, inasmuch as they that stand by the outward circumference of Circles, lying upon a flat superficies, touch the same underneath, partly by a prick if they be small, and in part by a line if they be large: so as a man may very well conjecture, that many right lines joynd one to another, tail to tail by piece meal, produce the circumference of a circle. But consider, whether there be none of these our circular or spherical Figures, exquisitely and exactly perfect; but in regard of the extensions and circumventions of right lines, or by reason of the exility and smallness of the parts, there can be perceived no difference, and thereupon then sheweth a circular and round figure: And therefore it is, that there is not a body here, that by nature doth move circularly, but all according to the right line; so that the round and spherical Figure is not the element of a sensible body, but of the soul and understanding, unto which he attributeth likewise the circular motion as belonging unto them naturally.

5. In

*5. In his first and missing delivered he this speech in his Book entituled Phædrus, that the nature of a wing, whereby that which is heavy and ponderous, is carried up aloft, of all other things that belong unto a body, hath a certain communion and participation with God?*

*6. Because he discourseth there of love; and love is occupied about the beauty of the body, and doth beautify for the resemblance that it hath to divinity, doth move the mind, and excite the remembrance thereof?*

*7. Whether are we to take it simply without curious searching farther into any mystery thereof? namely, that the soul being within the body, hath many faculties and powers, whereof that which is the course of reason and understanding, doth participate with the Deity, which he not unproperly and ingeniously termeth a wing, because it lifteth up the soul from things base and mortal, unto the consideration of heavenly and celestial matters.*

*8. It is that Plato in some places saith, the Anteprecipitation of motion, that is to say, the circumstance contrary debarring a body to move, in regard that there is no voidness or vacuity in nature, is the cause of these effects which we see in Physicians Ventoses and Cupping glasses; of swallowing down our Vents, of drawing of massy weights, of the course and conveyance of waters, of the fall of lightning, of the attraction that amber maketh, of the drawing of the loadstone, and of the accord and consonance of voices? Part seemeth against all reason to yield one only cause, for so many effects so divers and so different in kind. First, as touching the respiration in living creatures, by the Anteprecipitation of the ayr, he hath elsewhere sufficiently declared, but of the other effects, which seem as he saith to be miracles, and wonders in nature, and are nothing, for that they be wrought else but bodies reciprocally and by alternative course, driving one another out of place round about, and mutually succeeding in their rooms, he hath left for to be discoursed by us, how each of them particularly is done?*

*9. First and foremost for Ventoses and Cupping glasses: thus it is. The ayr that is contained within the V. Ventose, striking as it doth into the flesh, being inflamed with heat, and being now more fine and subtiler than the holes of the bras (box or glass) whereof the Ventose is made, getteth forth, not into a void place, for that is impossible, but into that other ayr which is round about the said Ventose without forth, and driveth the same from it; and that forther other before it, and thus as it were from hand to hand, whilst the one giveth place, and the other driveth continually, and so entereth into the same place which the first left, it cometh at length to fall upon the flesh which the Ventose sticketh fast unto; and by heating and inchauffing, it expresseth the humor that is within, into the V. or Cupping-glass.*

*10. The swallowing of our Viduals is after the same manner, for the cavities as well of the mouth as of the stomach, be always full of ayr: when as then, the meat is driven within the passage or gullet of the throat, partly by the tongue and partly by the glandulous parts or kernels called conies, and the muscles which now are stretched, the ayr being press'd and strained by the said meat, followeth it hard up given place, and sticking close, it is a means to help for to drive it downward.*

*11. Semblably the weighty things that be flung, as big stones and such like, cut the ayr and divide it, by reason that they were sent out and levelled with a violent force: then the ayr all about behind, according to the nature thereof, which is to follow where a place is left vacant and to fill it up, pursueth the mass or weight aforesaid that is lanced or discharged forcibly, and setteth forward the motion thereof.*

*12. The shooting and ejaculation of lightning is much what after the manner of these weights thrown in manner aforesaid, for being inflamed and set on a light fire, it flasheth out of a cloud by the violence of a broke, into the ayr, which being once open and broken, giveth place unto it, and then closing up together after it, driveth it down forcibly against the own nature.*

*13. As for Amber, we must not think that it draweth any thing to it of that which is presented before it, no more than doth the load-stone, neither that any thing coming near to the one or the other, leapech thereon. But first, as touching the said stones, it seemeth from it I wot not what strong and flammous fluxions, by which the ayr next adjoining giving back, driveth that which is before it: and the same turning round and re-entering again into the void place, doth thrust from it and withal carry with it thereon to the stone. And for Amber it hath likewise a certain flammant and flammant spirit, which when the out-side thereof is rubbed, it putteth forth by reason that the pores thereof are by that meat opened. And verily that which issueth out of it, worketh in some measure the like effect: that the Magnet or Load-stone did: and drawn there are unto it such matters near at hand as be most light and dry, by reason that the substance coming thereof is but slender and weak: neither is it self strong nor hath sufficient weight and force, for to chase and drive before it a great deal of ayr, by means whereof it might overcome greater things, as the Load-stone doth. But how is it that this ayr driveth and sendeth before it neither wood nor stone, but iron only, and so bringeth it to the Magnet? This is a doubt and difficulty that much troubleth all those who suppose that this meeting and cleaving of two bodies together, is either by the attraction of the stone, or by the natural motion of the iron. Iron is neither so hollow and spongeous as is wood, nor so fast and close, as is gold or stone, but it hath small holes, passages and rough aspects, which in regard of the unequality are well proportionate and forcible*



Neate, according as appeareth by the denomination of the dead, who are termed Νῆπτοι and Εἰρη, that is to say, inferior or infernal: and for this cause, some there be who say, that the wind which bloweth from beneath, and out of places unseen, that is to say, from the Pole Antartick, is called Νότος; that is to say, the south. Since then it is so, that there is the same proportion of contrariety between concupiscible and reasonable parts of the soul, as there is between lowest and highest, last and first; it is not possible, that reason should be the highest and principal, and not without, correspondent to Hypate, but to some other note in Music: for they who attribute unto her as unto the principal faculty and power Mese, that is to say, the mean, see not (ignorant as they be) how they take from her that which is more principal, to wit, Hypate, which cannot fit well either with Ire or Lust, for both these, the one and the other are made for to follow, and be commanded by reason, and not to command or go before reason. Moreover it should seem by nature, that anger ought to have the mean and middle place, considering that naturally reason is to command; and anger both to command and be commanded, as being on the one side subject to the discourse of reason, and on the other side, commanding lust, yea, and punishing it, when she is disobedient to reason. And like as in Grammar, those Letters which we call semi-vowels, be of a middle nature, between mute consonants and vowels: for that as they found more than the one, so they found less than the other: even so in the soul of man, wrath is not simply a meer passion, but hath many times an appearance of duty and honestly mixed with desire of revenge. And Plato himself comparing the substance of the soul unto a couple of horses drawing a chariot, and guided by a chariot man, who driveth them, and understandeth by the driver and guide, as every man well knows the discourse of reason: now of the two steeds, that of lusts and pleasures is frampold, skittish, flogging, winfling, unruly altogether, and unbroken, stiff-necked, deaf, hardly caring either for whip or spur; where as the other of ire, is for the most part tractable, and obedient to the bridle of reason, yea, and ready to joyn with it in execution of good things. And like as in a chariot with two horses, the driver or chariot-man is not in virtue and puissance the middle, but rather one of the horses, which is worse than the chariotman, and better than his fellow that draweth with him: even so likewise hath not he given the middle place unto that part which doth rule and govern in the soul, but unto that wherein there is less passion than in the first, and more reason than in the third: for this order and disposition observeth the proportion of the irascible to the reasonable part, as of Diatessaron to Hypate; and to the concupiscible, as of Dapente to Nete: also of the reasonable part to the concupiscible, as Hypate to Nete, which is Diatessaron. But if we draw reason and the discourse thereof to the mean, anger shall be farther off from lust and concupiscence, which some of the Philosophers held to be one and the self-same thing, for the great similitude and resemblance between them.

Or rather, it is but a ridiculous thing to attribute unto the places, first, middle, and last, seeing (as we do) have in a harp, lute, or stringed instrument, Hypate hath the first and highest place; but in flutes and pipes the lowest and the last: furthermore, the mean in what place, soever of the harp or lute you set it, you shall finde it soundeth always the same note still, to wit, smaller than Hypate, and bigger than Nete; for the very eye it self hath not the same situation in all creatures, but in any creature, and in what place soever it is set according to nature, always it is ordained and made for to lie. Like as therefore the Pedagogue or Governour of youth, who ordinarily cometh behind, and goeth not before his children, is notwithstanding said to lead and guide them: And the Captain of the Trojans in Homer:

*Who with the foremost in the front,  
Sometimes appear'd in fight,  
And in the rearward everwhiles,  
his men stir'd up to fight.*

As well in the one part as the other, was always the chief, and had the principal power: even so we ought not to force the parts of the soul to any places or names, but to examine and search the power and proportion of them; for that the Discourse of reason in situation should be set in the first and principal place of mans body, falleth out accidentally: but the first and principal power it hath, as being Mese or the mean, in regard of Hypate, the concupiscible part; and Nete the irascible, by letting down and setting up, by making consonance and accord, by taking from the one and the other that which is excessive; and again, by not suffering them either to be let loose and slack altogether, or to lie asleep: for mediocrity and a competent temperature, is limited by a mean; or rather to speak more properly, a principal piece of work this is, and a singular gift and puissance of reason, to make and imprint in passions, means and mediocrities, if we may so say, which are called holy and sacred, consisting in a temperature of two extremities with reason, yea and between them both by the means of reason: for the team of two steeds hath not for the mean and in the midst, that of two which is better: neither are we to imagine, that the government of them is one of the extremities; but rather we ought to think, that it is the midst and mediocrity betwixt the immoderate celerity or slowness of the two steeds; like as the power of reason which holdeth in the passions when they stir without measure and reason, and by composing and framing them unto her in measurable proportion, setteth down a mediocrity and mean between too much, and over little, between excess (I say) and defect.

*What is the reason that Plato saith: Our speech is tempered and composed of nouns and of verbs? for he seemeth to make no account of all other parts of speech besides these two: and to think that Homer in a gallant youth full humor to show his strength was afflicted to thrust them all eight into this one verse:*

αὐτῷ

\* αὐτῷ ἰσὺν ἰσχυρῶς, τὸ αὐτὸ ἄγεσθαι, ὅτι δὲ εἰρήνη;

For here you have a Pronoun, a Participle, a Noun, a Verb, a Preposition, an Article, a Conjunction, and an Adverb. For the Particle, αὐτῷ, is put in stead of the Preposition αὐτῷ, that is to say, to: and αὐτῷ, that is to say, to thy Tent, is after the manner of αὐτῷ, that is to say, to Athens: But what shall we answer in the behalf of Plato.

\* The use of this is altogether imperfect, depending of the precedent

It is for that in old time they called that αὐτῷ λόγῳ, that is to say, the first speech, which then was named πρότερον, that is to say, a Proposition, and now they term αὐτῷ, that is to say, digressing the way: which when they utter first, they either lie or speak truth. And this Proposition is compounded of a Noun and a Verb, whereof the one is called by the Logicians, πρότερον, that is to say, the case; the other, αὐτῷ, that is to say, the predicable or predicament. For when we hear one say, Socrates teacheth, and again, Socrates is turned; we say the one is true, and the other is false. and we require more words. For it is probable that men at the first had need of speech and voice articulate, when they were desirous to explain and signify: one unto another the actions and the persons and the doors thereof: like as the passions and the persons who suffer the same. Forasmuch then, as by the Verb we express sufficiently the actions and passions; and by the Noun, the persons doing or suffering it himself; it seemeth that these be the two parts of speech that he meaneth: as for the rest, a man may well and truly say, that they signify nothing, no more than do the groans, sighs and lamentations of Players in a Tragedy, yea, and many times I wena smile, a reticence or keeping silence, which observeth may well express a speech, and make it more emphatical; but surely, no necessary and significative power have they to declare ought, like as the Verb and the Noun hath: only they serve as accessory adjuncts, to vary illustrate and beautify the speech; like as they also diversify the very letters, who put to their spirits and aspirations, their accents also to some, whereby they make them long and short, and reckon them for elements and letters indeed, whereas they be passions, accidents, and diversifications of elements, rather than distinct elements by themselves; as it appeareth manifestly by this, that our ancients contented themselves sufficiently to speak and write with sixteen letters and no more. Moreover, consider and see whether we do not take the words of Plato otherwise than he delivered them; when he saith that the speech is tempered of these two parts, and not by them. Take heed (I say) we commit not the same error as he doth, who should cavill and finde fault with one for saying, that such an ointment or salve was made of wax and galbanum, alleging against him for so saying, that he left out fire and the vessel, without which a man knoweth not how to temper the said Simples or Drugs: for even so, if we should reprove him because he omitted the naming of Conjunctions, Prepositions, and other parts of speech, we were likewise to be blamed: for in truth, a speech or sentence is not compounded of these parts, but by them and not without them. For like as he, who should pronounce simply these Verbs, To beat, or, To be beaten; or otherwise these bare Nouns, Socrates or Phylargus; giveth some light (such as it is) of a thing to be conceived and understood: but he that should come out with these odd words, For, or Of, and say no more, a man cannot imagine what he meaneth thereby, nor gather any conception either of action or of body; for if there be not some other words pronounced with them or about them, they resemble naked sounds and vain noises without any significations at all: for that neither by themselves alone, nor one with another, it is possible that they should broken any thing. Nay, admit that we should conjoin, mingle and interlace together Conjunctions, Articles and Prepositions all in one, minding to make one entire body of them all, we shall seem rather to creak than speak: but so soon as a Verb is joyned to a Noun, that which resulteth thereupon is immediately a sentence and significant speech. And therefore not without good reason some do think that these two (to speak properly) be the only parts of speech. And peradventure Homer had some such meaning, and gave us so much to understand, by saying in so many places,

ἔνθ' ἂν ἴσθαι ἢ τ' ὁμῶς ἴσθαι.  
He spake the word, and with the same,  
Immediately out came the name.

For by ἔνθ', that is to say, the word, his manner is to signify a Verb: as namely in this other verse, αὐτῷ ἡ γυνὴ τῷ Διὶ θυμῷ δουλεύει; ἔστιν. Now surely woman, much to blame thou art, This word to speak, it strikes so to thy heart.

As also elsewhere:

χάρις πατρὶς αὐτῷ, ἵππας δ' ἑσθλὸν ἄλκιμον  
πατρί, ἀφ' οὗ τὸν ἑσθλὸν ἀντιπαύσας ἄλκιμον.  
Adieu good Father; guest and friend  
Farewell: And if some word unkind  
Hath been let fall, I wish it may  
By winds and storms be caught away.

For surely it is neither Conjunction, Article, nor Preposition, that can be said either unkind, or to touch the heart, but some Verb signifying a shameful deed, proceeding from an undecent and dishonest passion. And therefore you see how we are wont to praise Poets and Historiographers, or otherwise to blame and dispraise them, saying in this wise: Such a Poet hath used Attick Nouns and elegant Verbs: and contrariwise, Such an Historiographer hath used trivial and base Nouns and

and Verbs. And no man will say that either *Euclid* or *Thucydides* wrote a file consisting of Articles that were homely and bare, or otherwise elegant and Attick.

How then (may some one say) serve these parts to no purpose in our speech? Yes I wis, say I, even as much as salt in our meats, or water for our bread and gruel. *Euclid* was wont to say that fire also was an excellent kinde of sauce: and even so be these parts of speech the seasoning of our language, like as fire and salt of our broths and viands, without the which we cannot well do: and yet our speech doth not always of necessity stand in need of them: for so me thinks I may very well affirm of the Roman language, that all the world I see in manner useth at this day: for the Romans take away all Propositions, except a very few; and as for those that be called Articles, they admit not so much as one, but use their Nouns plain, and as one would say, without skirts and borders. Whereat we may wonder the less, considering that *Homer*, who for trim and beautiful verses surpassed all other Poets, set to very few Nouns any Articles, as care unto Cupes and other Vessels, for to take hold by, or as pennachs and crests upon morions: and therefore look in what verses he useth so to do, be sure they were of special mark, or else suppositions and suspected to be none of his making. As for example:

αἰσῆς ὁ μέγας δαίμονες θυρεὺς ἔσται  
τῷ Τηλέμονιδι.

This speech the courage most of all  
excited then anon,

Of Ajax, him I mean, who was  
the son of Telamon.

Again:

πῶτος, ὅρα τὸ κῆρ' ὀπίσσω φέρων ἀλάστον.

This did be that, by flying thus apace,

He might escape the V'ble that was in chace.

And a few others besides these. But in the rest which are innumerable, although there be no Article, yet the phrase of speech is thereby nothing diminished or hurt either in beauty or perspicuity. And thus we see, that neither living creature, if it be maimed or dismembered, nor instrument, nor armour, nor any thing in the world whatsoever, by the want and defect of any proper part belonging thereto, is the more beautiful or active thereby, neither more pleasant than it was therefore: whereas a speech or sentence, when all the Conjunctions be taken quite away, is many times more emphatical, yea, and carrieth a power and efficacy more patheticall and apt to move and affect, as this:

One found, unhurt, fire catching fast,

another wounded new,

Alive the held, another dead,

in sight by beels he drew.

Also this place of *Demosthenes* his Oration against *Midias*: For many things may he do who striketh, whereof, some the party who suffereth, cannot declare unto another, in gesture, in poise; by the regard of his eyes in his voice: when he wrongeth insultently in a bravery, when he off'reth injury as an enemy, when with the clutched fist, when upon the cheek, when upon the ear: this moveth, this is that removeth, that transporteth men beside themselves, who are not acquainted with outrages, who have not been used to bear such abuses. And again another place afterwards. But it is not *Midias*. He from this day is a Speaker, he maketh Orations, he railleth, exclaimeth, he passeth somewhat by his voice: Is there any election? *Midias* the Anagyrrhastian is propounded, he is nominated. *Midias* entertaineth *Plutarch* in the name of the City, he knoweth all secrets; the City is not sufficient to hold him. This is the reason that they who write of Rhetorical figures, so highly praise *Alyndeion*: whereas those who are so precise, so religious, and too observant of Grammar, that they dare not leave out one Conjunction otherwise than they were accustomed to do, The said Rhetoricians think blameworthy and to be reproved, as making the stile dull, enervate, without affection, tedious and inkfome, by reason that it runs always after one fort, without change and variety.

Now whereas Logicians have more need than any other Professors in Learning of Conjunctions copulatives, for to knit and connex their propositions, or disjunctives, to disjoin and distinguish them; like as Wain-men or Carters have need of yokes or geers; or as *Ulysses* had of Oiers in *Cyclops* his Cave to bind his sheep together: This doth not argue, nor prove that the Conjunction is a substantial member or part of speech; but a pretty instrument and means to binde and conjoin according as the very name of it doth import, and to keep and hold together not all words or sentences indifferently, but such alone as are not simply spoken: unless men will say, that the cord or girt wherewith a pack or fardel is bound, is a part of the fald pack, or the paste and glue a part of the Book; or Donatives and Largeesses, a part of polittick Government; like as *Deuades* was wont to say: That the dole of money distributed by the Poll to the Citizens in the Theaters for to see the Plays, was the very glew of the popular State. And tell me what Conjunction is that which will make of many Propositions one, by couching and knitting them together, as the Marble doth unite the Iron that is cast and melted with it by the fire; and yet I throw no man will say, that the Marble, for all that is part of the Iron, or so to be called. Howbeit, such things verily as enter into a Composition, and which be liquified together with the Drugs mingled therewith, are wont after a sort to do and suffer reciprocally from the Ingredients. But as for these Conjunctions, there be who deny that they do unite any one thing, saying: That this manner of speaking with Conjunctions is no other but a certain

certain enumeration, as if a man should reckon in order all our Mathigrates, or count the days of a month.

Moreover, of all other parts of speech, it is very evident, that the Pronoun is a kinde of Noun, not only in this respect, that it is declined with cases, as the Noun is; but also for that some of them being pronounced and uttered of things and persons determinate, do make a most proper demonstration of them accordant to their nature: neither can I see how he who hath expressly named *Socrates*, hath declared his per more, then he who said, This man here.

To comenow unto that which they term a Participle, surely it is a very medly and mixture of a Noun and a Verb, and not a part of Speech substituting alone of it self, no more then those Nouns or Names which are common to Masculine and Feminine: and these Participles are ranged with them both; with Nouns in respect of their cases, and with Verbs in regard of tenses; and verily the Logicians call such, terms reflected, as for example, *ἰσχυρὸν καὶ ὑγιεινόν*, that is to say, wisely foreseeing; a reflection of a wife foreseer: and *σοφιστικόν*, that is to say, minding sobriety, is a reflection of a sober minded person, that is to say, as if they had the nature and power of Nouns and Appellations.

As touching Prepositions, a man may liken them very well to Pennaches, Crests, or such like Ornaments above Morions or Head-Attires, or else to Balles, Predittals, and Footsteps under Satires and Pillars: forasmuch as they are not so much parts of Speech, as balles and conversant about them: but so, I pray you, whether they may not be compared to truncheons, pieces and fragments of words, like as those who when they write a running hand in haste, do not always make out the letters full, but use picks, minims and dashes. For these two Verbs *ἰσχυρὸν* and *ὑγιεινόν*, be both of them manifest clip-pings of the full and compleat words, *ἰσχυρὸς ἦναι*, and *ὑγιεινὸς ἦναι*, whereof the one significeth to enter in, the other to go forth. Likewise *σοφιστικόν*, is a plain abbreviation of *σοφιστικὸν γινώσκον*, that is to say, to be born, or have being before. Also *καθίστημι*, of *καθίστημι*, that is to say, to sit down, or cause one to sit down: Semblable *ἀποδοκῶν*, and *παρορμητός*, men are disposed to say for *ἀποδοκῶν*, and *παρορμητός*, that is to say to sling stones, and to dig throw walls, when they are disposed to make haste to speak short. And therefore a man may well say, that every one of these, excepting Noun and Verb, do some good in our speech, and help well in a sentence, but for all that, they cannot be called either parts or elements of Speech: for there is none but the Noun and Verb, as it hath been said before that maketh this composition, containing verity and falliwy, which some term Proposition, other *Atomos*, and *Plato* nameth Speech or Oracion.

## A Commentary of the Creation of the Soul, which Plato describeth in his Book *Timæus*.

### The Summary.

Among those Discourses which may exercise the wits, and buste the brains of most curious spirits, those of *Plato* may be ranged, which in divers places of his Dialogues, but especially in his *Timæus* he hath delivered, and namely, where he treateth of nature metaphysically, intermingling with a certain deep and profound manner of doctrine (as a man may perceive by his writings) his resolutions, as I may say, intricate, proceeding all from the ignorance of the sacred story, and true sense of *Moses*. As for example that which he saith as touching the soul of the world: as an absurd and fantastical opinion, if it be not handled and expounded aright. Our Author being minded in this Treatise to dispute Philosophically upon the creation of the said soul, runneth thorow Numbers, Zones, Tunes and Harmony, as well Terrestrial as Celestial, for to declare the meaning of *Plato*: but with such brevity in many places, that a man had need to read with both his eyes, and to have his minde wholly intentive and amused upon his words, for the understanding of them. Mean while, this would be considered, seeing that in such matters we have (God be thanked) sufficient to resolve us in the Word of God, and the good books of the Doctors of the Church, all this point Discourse should be read, as coming out of the hands of a man walking in darkness; and to speak no words, of one blinde himself, and following a blinde guide: to the end that instead of highly admiring the subtilities of *Plato*, as some in these days do, whose heads are not staid and well settled, we might know that the higher that man in his wisdom mounteth with his pen, far from Gods School, the less he is to be revered and accepted of.

## A Commentary of the Creation of the Soul, which Plato describeth in his Book *Timæus*.

The Father to his two Sons *AUTOBULUS* and *PLUTARCH*  
Greeting.

**F**Orasmuch as ye are of this minde, that whatsoever I have here and there said and written in divers places by way of exposition, touching that which I supposed in mine opinion *Plato* held, thought, and understood concerning the soul, ought to be reduced and brought together into one; and that I should do well to declare the same at large in a special Treatise apart by itself, because it is not a matter which otherwise is easie to be handled and managed; as also for that seeming as it doth, somewhat contrary to most of the Platonique Philosophers themselves: in which regard it had need to be well mollified. I will therefore in the first place set down the very Text of *Plato* in his own proper terms, word for word, as I finde them written in his Book, entitled, *Timæus*.

“Of that indivisible substance which always continueth about the same things; as also of that which is divisible by many bodies, he composed a third kind of substance in the midst of them both, holding partly of nature of the same, and impart of the other: and this he ordained and set in the midst between the indivisible substance conversant about the same things, and the other which is divisible by bodies. Then taking these three natures or substances, he mixed them altogether into one form or idea, and fitted perforce the nature of the other, which was untoward to be mixed, to that nature of the same. Having thus mingled them with Substance, and of three made one, he divided this whole again into such portions, as were fit and convenient: each one of them being mingled with the same, with the other, and with substance. And this division of his he began in this manner, &c.

To begin withal, if I should discourse unto you at this present what a number of disputations and contentious debates, these words have mislited unto those who took upon them to expound the same, it were for my self a piece of work endless, and for you who have read the most part of them together with me, a labor needfull. But seeing that of the most principal and excellent Professors, *Xenocrates* hath drawn some unto his opinion, in defining the substance of the soul to be a number moving it self: and others have ranged themselves to *Cranor* of *Soli*, who affirmed the soul to be tempered of the nature intellectual, and of the other which is opinionative about objects sensible; I suppose that these two sentences being well displayed and opened, will make the way, and give you an easie entrance to the understanding and finding of that which we seek for, and is in question. And verily there need not many words for the exposition of them both. For the one sort of them think that *Plato* meant nothing else, but the generation of number, by the said mixture of indivisible with divisible: for that unity is indivisible, and plurality divisible: of which twain is engendered and produced number, whiles unity doth determine plurality, and limit out an end to that which is infinite, to wit, the binary or two indeterminate: which is the reason that *Zaratas* the Master of *Pythagoras*, called two the Mother, and one the Father of number: as also, for that the better numbers be those which resembled unity: and yet for all that, this number is not the soul, because that both the motor and the moveable is wanting: but when the same and the other were mingled together, of which the one is the beginning of motion and mutation, the other of rest and station then cometh the soul: to have a being, which is as well the principal to stay and to be stayed, as it is to move and to be moved.

But *Cranor* and his followers supposing that the proper and principal operation of the soul was to judge things intelligible and sensible, together with the similitudes and dissimilitudes which they have, as well themselves, as one in respect of another, affirm, that the soul is composed of All, to the end that he may judge of all. The which All aforesaid standeth upon four principal kinds: the first is a nature intelligible, which is always one and evermore after the same fix: the second a nature palpable and mutable concerning bodies: the third the nature of the same, and the fourth the nature of the other; for the two first participate in some sort both of the same, and also of the other. But all these do joyntly and equally hold, that the soul was never after a certain time, nor ever engendered, but hath many powers and faculties, into which *Plato* resolving for speculative disputation sake, the substance of her, supposeth in word only, that she was engendered, mixed and tempered, saying moreover, that he thought as much of the world; for full well he knew, that eternal it was and ingenerable, but seeing it was not easie to comprehend how, and in what order it was found, composed, governed, and admitted, for those who at the first presupposed not the Creation and Generation either of it self, or of such things as concurred thereto, he therefore took the easie to speak in such sort.

This

This much you see in sum what they both do say: which when *Eudorus* well considered, he thought there was good probability both in the one and the other of their opinions, but for mine own part, persuaded verily I am, that neither of them twain hath touched the point, or come near unto the mind and meaning of *Plato*.

If we will use the rule of probability and verisimilitude indeed, not fully building our own proper opinions, but be willing for to say something agreeable and accordant thereto; for that mixture of the substance intelligible and sensible which they speak of giveth not us to understand thereby, that it is the Generation of the Soul, more then of any other thing whatsoever that a man may name. For the very world, and every part thereof, is compounded of a substance intelligible or spiritual, and of a substance sensible or corporal: whereof the one hath furnished the thing that is made and engendered with form and shape. the other with subject nature. And as much of the matter as is form, by participation or resemblance of the intelligible, becometh incontinently palpable and visible; but the soul is not perceptible by any sense. Neither was it ever found, that *Plato* called the soul number, but always a motion moving of it self, yea, the very fountain and beginning of motion. True it is, I confess, that embellished he hath and adorned the substance thereof with number, proportion, accord and harmony, which he hath bestowed therein, as in a subject capable and susceptible of the most beautiful form that can be imprinted therein, by those qualities before said. And I suppose it is not all one to say, that the soul is composed by number, and that the substance thereof is number: for certain it is, that it hath the substance and composition by harmony, but harmony it is none, according as himself hath shewed in his Treatise of the Soul. Moreover, altogether ignorant they are; what *Plato* meant, by the same, and the other: for they say, that the same concerneth to the generation of the soul, the power or faculty of station and rest: the other, of motion; whereas *Plato* himself, in his Book, entitled, *The Sophist*, putteth down, that which is, the same, the other, motion and station, as five distinct things differing the one from the other, severing them apart, as having nothing to do in common one with another: which they all with one accord, yea, and many more even of those who lived and conversed with *Plato*, fearing, and being mightily troubled with, do devise and imagine all that they can, biter themselves, whirling forcibly, heaving and shoving, and turning every way, as in case of some domineering thing, and not to be named, supposing that they ought either altogether, for his honor and credit to deny, or at leastwise to cover and conceal that which he had delivered, as touching the generation or creation of the world, and of the soul thereof, as if the same had not been from all eternity, nor had time out of minde their effence: whereof we have particularly spoken a part else when: and for this present suffice it shall to say by the way, that the arguing and contestation, which *Plato* comisseth himself to have used with more vehemency then his age would bear, against *Atheists* the same, I say, they confound and shuffle up, or to speak more truly, abolish altogether. For if it be so, that the world be eternal, and was never created, the reason of *Plato* falleth to the ground, namely, that the soul being more ancient then the body, and the cause and principal author of all motion and mutation, the chief Governor also and head Architect, as he himself hath said, is placed and bestowed therein. But what, and whereof the soul is, and how it is said, and to be understood, that is more ancient then the body, and before it in time, the progress of our discourse hereafter shall declare: for this point being either unknown, or not well understood, brings great difficulty, as I think, in the well conceiving, and hinderance in believing the opinion of the truth?

In the first place therefore, I will shew what mine own conceits is, proving and fortifying my sentences, and withal, mollifying the same (because at the first sight it seemeth a strange Paradox) with a probable reason: as I can devise: which done, both this interpretation and proof also of mine, I will lay unto the words of the Text out of *Plato*, and reconcile the one unto the other. For thus (in mine opinion) stands the case.

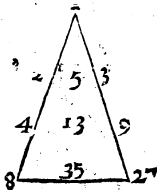
This world (quoth *Heraclitus*) there was never any god or man that made: as if in so saying he bared, that if we disavow God for Creator, we must of necessity confess, that a man was the architect and maker thereof. But much better it were therefore, that we subscribe unto *Plato*, and both say and sing aloud, that the world was created by God: for as the one is the goodliest piece of work that ever was made, so the other the most excellent workman, and greatest cause that is. Now the substance and matter whereof it was created, was never made or engendered, but was for ever, time out of minde, and from all eternity, subject unto the workman for to dispose and order it, yea, and to make as like as possible was to himself. For of nothing, and that which had no being, there could no thing be made ought: but of that which was not well made, nor as it ought to be, there may be made something that is good; to wit, an house, a garment, or an image or statue. But before the creation of the world, there was nothing but a *Chaos*, that is to say, all things in confusion and disorder: and yet was not the same without a body, without motion, or without soul: howbeit, that body which it had, was without form and confidence: and that moving that it had, was altogether rash, without reason and understanding: which was no other but a disorder of soul not guided by reason. For God created not that body which was incorporeal, nor a soul which was inanimate; like as we say that the Musician maketh not a voice, nor the Dancer motion; but the one maketh the voice sweet, accordant and harmonious; and the other, the motion to keep measure, time, and compass, with a good grace. And even so, God created not that palpable solidity of a body, nor that moving and imaginative puissance of the soul; but finding these two principles, the one dark and obscure, the other turbulent, foolish and senseless: both imperfect, disordered, and indeterminate, he so





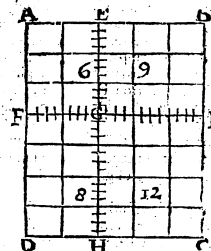
The other, when God had adorned it with numbers and proportions convenient, he ordained to be the Regent and Governess of the world, created like as it felt was also created. Now that this is the true sentence and meaning of *Plato*, and not by a fantastical manner of speculation and inquisition, as touching the Creation or Generation, as well of the world as of the soul: this, besides many others, may be an argument, that of the soul, he saith it was created and not created: of the world always, that it was engendered and created, but never eternal and not created. To prove this, we need not for to cite testimonies out of the Book *Timæus*, considering that the said Book throughout, from the one end to the other, treateth of nothing else, but of the Generation or creation of the world. And of other books, in his *Atlantick Timæus* making his prayers, nameth him who beforetime was by his work, and now by his word, God. And in his *Politique*, his *Parmenidian* giveth faith, that the world being framed and made by God, became partaker of many good things: and in case there be any evil thing in it, the same is remanent mingled within the first habitude, and estate wherein it was at first, before the constitution thereof, all irregular and disorderly. And in his Books of Commonwealth, speaking of that number, which some call the Marriage, *Socrates* began to discourse and say thus, The God (quoth he) who is created and engendered, hath his period and conversation, which the perfect number doth comprize. In which place, what can he call the God created and engendered, but the world. \*\*\*\*\*

The first copulation is of one and two, the second of three and four, the third of five and six; of which there is not one that maketh a quadrate number either by it self, or by others: the fourth is of seven and eight, which being joynted to the first, make in all the square quadrate number six and thirty.



But of those numbers which *Plato* hath set down, the quaternary, hath a more perfect and absolute generation; namely, when even numbers are multiplied by even intervals, and uneven numbers likewise by odde intervals: for first it containeth unity as the very common stock of all numbers as well even as odde, and of those under it; two and three be the first flat and plain numbers, and after them four and nine are the first squares, then follow eight and seven and twenty, the first cubique numbers, putting the unity out of this account. By which it appeareth that his will was not, that these numbers should be all set one above another directly in a right line; but apart, one after another alternatively, the even of the one side, and the odd of the other, according to the description above made. Thus shall the files or conjugations also be of like with like, and make the notable numbers, as well by composition or addition, as by multiplication of one with another: by composition, thus, Two and three make five; four and nine make thirteen; eight and seven and twenty arise to five and thirty. For of these numbers the Pythagoreans call five, *pentade*, as much to say, as a found, supposing that of the spaces and intervals of Tone, the fifth, was the first that spake or founded: thirteen they termed *triskaia*, that is to say, the Remanent or Defect, like as *Plato* did; despairing to divide a Tone in two equal portions; and five and thirty they term Harmony, for that it is composed of the first numbers cubique, proceeding from even and odde of the four numbers, to wit, six, eight, nine and twelve, containing an Arithmetical and Harmonical proportion. But this will appear more evidently by this figure here described and represented to the eyes. Suppose then there be a figure set down in form of a tile, called *Parallelgrammon*, with right angles, A.B.C.D.

Wherof



Wherof the one side (to wit, the left) A.B. is of five; the other, and namely, the longer, A.D. is of seven parts: let the left side be divided into unequal sections, to wit, two and three, three and two; and the greater into other two unequal sections, three and four to F. then draw lines from the sections, crossing directly one another, by E.G.H. and F.G.I. So A.E.G.F. shall be fix, A.B.I.G. eight, G.H.D.F. eight, and G.I.C.H. twelve. This tile-form figure called *Parallelgrammon*, being more long then broad, compassed of five and thirty parts, containeth in it all the proportion of the first accords and consonances of Musick in the number of the spaces into which it is divided. For six and eight have the proportion Epitritus, to wit, the whole and one third part; wherein consisteth the symphony Diatessaron, that is to say, a fourth. Six and nine carry the proportion Hemolon, to wit, the whole and half; and therein consisteth Diapente, that is to say, a fifth. Between six and twelve there is the double proportion, and therein consisteth Diapason, that is to say, an eighth. There is also the proportion of Tone sesquialtera, in nine and eight, which is the reason that the number five and thirty containing the proportions of Tones, the consonances also and accords, they call Harmony, which being multiplied by six, ariseth to two hundred and ten, the very full number of days wherein from month children have their perfection in the womb, and are ready to be born. Item, go to work another way, and begin by multiplication in this wise, Twice three make six, and four times nine come to fix and thirty, and seven and twenty multiplied by eight, ariseth to two hundred and sixteen. Now the perfect number is six, for that it standeth of equal parts, and in regard of the copulation of even and odde it is called the Marriage. Again, that which is more, it consisteth of the beginning and foundation of number, to wit, Unity or One, of the first even number which is two, and of the first and odde number that is three. Moreover, six and thirty is the first number both four-square and also triangular. Four-square, if it arise from the basis, six, and triangular, from eight: for it ariseth by multiplication of two quadrate numbers, to wit, of four, multiplying nine; and by addition of three cubics, one, eight, and seven and twenty, which being put together, make up six and thirty the number before described. Furthermore, it may be drawn out in form of a tile, more one way then another from the two sides, and ariseth by multiplying twelve by three, or nine by four. Now if a man take the numbers of the sides in those figures before described, to wit, six of the four-square, and eight of the triangle; nine of one of *Parallellograms*, and twelve of the other; he shall finde that they will make the proportions of all the symphonies or accords in Musick. For twelve compared with nine, will be Diatessaron, or the fourth, which is the proportion that Nete hath to Mese; but compared with eight, it is a Diapente, or a fifth, the proportion of Mese to the Mean to Hypate; with twelve, it will be Diapason, or a full eighth, which is the proportion between Nete and Hypate. As for the number of two hundred and sixteen, it is a cubique, arising from six, as the basis, and is equal to the own compass or circuit. These numbers propofed, having such virtues and properties, yet the last seven and twenty hath this peculiar quality by it self, that it is equal unto all the other before it, being put together; namely, one, two, three, four, eight, and nine. Moreover, it containeth the just number of the days of the Moons revolution. The Pythagoreans also do place the Tone of distances and intervals of sounds in this very number, which is the reason that they call *triskaia*, as one would say, the default, for that it wanteth one of being the half of twenty seven. Moreover, that these numbers contain the proportions of all the consonances and accords in Musick, it is easie to be understood; for there is the proportion double of two to one, and therein consisteth Diapason; the Hemolon or one and half of three to two, wherein is Diapente; likewise Epitritus, of four to three, and also in consisteth Diatessaron; also the triple of nine and three, wherein you shall finde Diapason and Diapente, to wit, a fifth above a duple. Item, the quadruple of eight and two wherein is Diatessaron. There is besides, the sesquialtera, of eight to nine, wherein is Triton. If then a man count the unity which is common unto the numbers as well even as odde unto four, the whole yielded; and the even numbers between it and ten, with the unity being put together make fifteen, a number triangular, arising from the basis five: as for the odde numbers, to wit, one, three, nine, and twenty seven arise to forty, if they be summed together, and this number of forty is composed of thirteen and twenty seven, by which the Mathematicians do precisely measure the intervals of musick; & maldy

in song, calling the one Diesis, and the other Tonos: and the said number of forty aritheth by way of multiplication, by the virtue of quaternary; for if you multiply four times every one of the four; first, whereas by themselves to wit, one, two, three, four, these will arise four, eight, twelve, and sixteen, which being all summed together, make forty; which number containeth besides, all the proportions of consonances and accords: for compare sixteen with twelve, you shall have the proportion Epitritus, that is to say, one and the third part, with eight duple, with four quadruple: also twelve compared to eight, hath the proportion Hemiolion, that is to say, one and a half, to four triple, which comprehend the proportions just of Diatessaron, Diapente, Diapason, and Disdiapason: Over and besides, the foresaid numbers of forty, is equal to the first two quadrats, and the two first cubick numbers taken together, for the two first squares or quadrats be one and four, the cubicks eight and twenty seven, which if they be put together, amount to forty: So that the quaternary of Plato is in the disposition thereof more ample, of greater variety and perfection then that quaternary of Pythagoras.

But forasmuch as the numbers proposed, afford not places for the medieties which are inserted, necessary it was to extend the numbers to larger terms and bonds, retaining still the same proportions: in regard whereof, we must say somewhat what they be, and treat first of these medieties. The former then, is that which both firmounting, and being also firmounted in equal number, is called in these days Arithmetical: the other which firmounteth, and is firmounted by the same parts of these extremities, is named *Hypenantia*, that is to say, subcontrary; as for example, The two limits or extremities, and the middle of the arithmetical, be six, nine, and twelve: for nine, which is in the midst, firmounteth six just as much in number as it is firmounted of twelve, that is to say, by three: but of the subcontrary, these be the extremities and the mids, six, eight, and twelve, for eight, which is the mids, firmounteth six by two, and is firmounted of twelve by four, which four is the third part of twelve, like as two is the third part of six. Thus it falleth out in the mediety Arithmetical, the mids firmounteth the one of these extremities, and is firmounted of the other, equally by the same part of the own; but in the subcontrary by the same part, not of the own, but of the extremities out gone of the one, and outgoing the other: and hereupon it is called subcontrary, and the same they likewise call harmonical, because it affordeth to the extremities the first resonances, to wit, between the greatest and the least Diapason, that is to say, an eight; between the greatest and the mids, Diapente, that is to say, a five; and between the mids and the least, Diatessaron, that is to say, a fourth: for the greatest term or extremity being set upon the note or string Netes, and the least upon Hypate, the mids will be found just upon Mese, that is to say, the mean, which maketh in regard of the greatest Diapente, and of the least Diatessaron: so that by this reason, eight shall be upon the mean, twelve upon Netes, and six upon Hypate: but how to know easily and readily these medieties aforesaid, *Endorus* hath shewed the manner plainly and simply. And first and foremost in the Arithmetical, consider thus much: for if you take the two extremities, and put them together, and then the moyete of the entire sum, the same will fall out to be the mediety Arithmetical: or take the moyete of each one of the extremities, and add them one to the other, that which aritheth thereof shall be mediety Arithmetical, in duples and triples alike: but in the subcontrary, or harmonical, if the two extremities be in the other in proportion duple, take the half of the greater, and the third part of the less, and the number arising of those two shall be the mediety Harmonical: but in case the two extremities be in proportion triple, then contrariwise a man ought to take the moyete of the less, and the third part of the greater, for then the sum will be the mediety that he looketh for: as for example, let the less extremity be in triple proportion six, and the greater eighteen, if you take the half of six, which is three, and the third part of eighteen, which is six, you shall come to nine, for the mediety which doth firmount, and is firmounted by the same part of the two extremities, that is to say, the one half. Thus you see how the medieties are taken: now the same must be interjected and placed between, for to fill and make up the places or intervals double and triple; but of the number proposed, some have no place of the middle, others, not sufficient; and therefore the manner is to augment and set them out, in retaining always still the same proportion, and so by that means make places and receptacles sufficient for to receive the said medieties or mediocrities: First therefore, for the less end or extremity, in stead of onethy put six, because of all numbers it is the first that hath a half and a third, and multiply all the numbers under by six, as it is written underneath, for to receive both the medieties in duple intervals.

12.	2.	1.	3.	18.
24.	4.		9.	54.
48.	8.		27.	162.

And as for that Plato hath said, the intervals being made *sesquialteral*, *sesquitercial*, and *sesquioctave*, out of these links in the precedent distance, he filled all the epitritus, with the interval of *sesquioctave*, leaving one part of each, and this distance of this part being less number to number, having for the terms and extremities, two hundred fifty six, and two hundred forty three, &c. Upon these words of the text, forced they were to reduce these numbers, and make them greater, for by order two ought to have *sesquioctave* proportion, seeing that six of it self could not have proportion *sesquioctave*, and if it were divided by cutting the units piece-meal, the intelligence and doctrine thereof would be very intricate and hard to be conceived, therefore he called this operation in some sort multiplication, like as in the harmonical mutation, where if you extend and augment the first number, necessarily

necessarily the description of all the other notes must be stretched out and enlarged likewise. And therefore *Endorus* following herein *Cramor*, taketh for the first number three hundred four score and four, which aritheth by multiplying threecore and four, by six: and these were induced so to do by the number threecore and four, having for the *sesquioctave*, eight, which is the proportion between threecore and four, and threecore and twelve. But it agreeth better with the Text, and the words of Plato, to suppose a moyete. For the default which they call *sesquius*, will have the *sesquioctave* proportion in the numbers which Plato hath set down, two hundred six and fifty, and two hundred three and forty, having put for the first one hundred fourcore and twelve: and if the double of it be supposed for the first, the *sesquius* shall be of the same proportion, but in number double, which five hundred and twelve hath to four hundred eighty four: for two hundred sixty and six are in epitrite or *sesquioctave* proportion to one hundred fourcore and twelve, and five hundred and twelve to four hundred fourcore and four. And verily, the reduction to this number was not without reason and proportion, but yielded a probable reason to *Cramor*: for the number of threecore and four is a cube, proceeding from the first quadrat, and a quadrat likewise, arising from the first cube, and being multiplied by three, the first odd number: the first triangular number, the first perfect number and *sesquialter*, make one hundred fourcore and twelve, which number also (as we will shew) hath his *sesquioctave*. But first of all you shall understand better what is *sesquius*, as also what is the meaning of Plato, if you call to minde a little, that which is usually taught and delivered in the Pythagoreans Schools: for Diatessa, that is to say, intervals or space in matter of song, is whatsoever is between two sounds different in Tenor or Tension Of these intervals one is called *Tonus*, to wit, that whereof the harmony Diapente firmounteth Diatessaron. Of this entire Tonus, as Musicians do hold, cut in twain, by the moyete are made two intervals, and both of them, the one as well as the other, go under the name *Hemitonion*. But the Pythagoreans do not think that it can be equally divided: whereas therefore the two sections be unequal, they call the less *sesquius*, that is to say, the default, because it is somewhat less than the one half. And therefore some Masters of Musick there be, who make the accord Diatessaron, of two Tones and a Demi-tone or *Hemitonion*: others again of two Tones and a *sesquius*. So as it seemeth that the testimony of hearing accordeth with the harmonical Musicians; and of demonstration with the Mathematicians: and their proof of demonstration goeth in this manner. This is put down by them for certain, and approved by their instruments, that Diapason hath a double proportion, Diapente a *sesquialteral*, Diatessaron a *sesquitercial*, and a Tone a *sesquioctave*. And the truth hereof, a man may try presently by an experiment, namely, by hanging two weights double, unto two strings that be equal, or by making two concavities in pipes, the one twice as long as the other, otherwise equal: for the Shawm or Hautboys, which is the longer, will sound more base and loud, as Hypate in regard of Netes: and of the two strings, that which was stretched by the heavier weight will sound higher and snaller, as Netes in comparison of Hypate: and this is the very consonance Diapason. Semblably, three compared unto twain, be it in length or in weight, will make Diapente: and four to three, Diatessaron: for the one hath the proportion epitrite, and the other hemiolion. And if the unquality of the foresaid lengths or weights be in proportion hemioctave, that is to say, of seven to eight, it will make the interval *Tonion*, not altogether an harmonical accord, howbeit (as one would say) somewhat musical and melodious: for that these sounds, if one strike, touch or sound one after another, make a pleasant noise, and delectable to the ears; but if altogether, the noise will be troublesome and offensive: whereas contrariwise, in consonances and accords, howsoever one touch them, either together, or one after another, the ear receiveth the consent, and accord with great delight. And yet this may moreover be shewed by reason, for the harmony Diapason is composed of Diapente, and of Diatessaron, like as in number the double is composed of Hemiolion and Epitritus; for twelve is in proportion of Epitritus to nine, and Hemiolion to eight, and double to six: so that the double proportion is compounded of the *sesquialteral* and the *sesquitercial*, like as Diapason of Diapente and Diatessaron: but as there Diapente is greater then Diatessaron by a Tone, so here in numbers, Hemiolion is greater then Epitritus by a *sesquioctave*. This being thus proved by demonstration, let us see now, whether our *sesquioctave* may be divided into two equal sections: for if it cannot, no more then, can the Tone; and for that eight and nine make the first proportion *sesquioctave*, and have no interval between; both the one and the other being doubled, the number falling out between, maketh two intervals; so that it appeareth, that if the two intervals be equal, the *sesquioctave* may be equally divided in twain. Now the double of nine is eighteen, and of eight, sixteen, which admit between them, seventeen. So it falleth out, that one of the intervals is greater, and the other less: for the former is of eighteen to seventeen, and the other of seventeen to sixteen. Then the *sesquioctave* proportion is divided into portions and sections unequal, and so consequently the tone also; and therefore this division being made, none of the sections is properly a *Dmytone*, but one of them by good right hath been termed by the Mathematicians *sesquius*: and this is it that Plato said: God when he filled the epitritus with *sesquioctaves*, left a portion of each: whereof there is the same reason and proportion, that two hundred fifty six, have unto two hundred forty three; for take a Diatessaron in two numbers, which have between them a proportion Epitritus, as two hundred fifty and six, to one hundred ninety two; of which let, the less number, one hundred ninety two be set upon the base note of a tetracord, & the greater, to wit, two hundred fifty and six upon the highest note: it must be shewed, that if this be filled with two *sesquioctaves*, there cometh an interval as great as is between two hundred fifty six and two hundred forty three. For if

the bafer found be stretched one tone; which is the proportion *seſquioctave*, it maketh two hundred and fixteen; and again, if it be stretched another tone, it becometh two hundred forty three, which surmounteth two hundred and sixteen by twenty and seven, and two hundred and sixteen surmounteth one hundred fourscore and twelve by four and twenty, of which the seven and twenty is the *seſquioctave* of two hundred and sixteen, and four and twenty, of one hundred fourscore and twelve: and therefore of these three numbers, the greatest *seſquioctave* is of the middle, and the middle of the least; and the distance or interval, from the least to the greatest, to wit, from one hundred fourscore and twelve, unto two hundred forty and three, two tones filled with two *seſquioctaves*: which interval being taken away, there remaineth the interval of the whole, which is between two hundred forty and three, and two hundred fifty and six, and that is thirteen: and that is the reason why they called that number *λίσμια*, that is to say, a default or residue.

For mine own part, I think verily that the sense of *Plato* is most clearly expounded and declared in these numbers. Others having put down the ends and terms of *Diatesseron*, for the treble two hundred eighty eight, and for the base, two hundred sixteen; go through with the rest proportionably, save only that they take the two defaults or remnants, between the two extremities: for the base being set up one tone or note, maketh two hundred forty three; and the treble being let down another note, becometh two hundred fifty six: for these be *seſquioctaves*, two hundred forty three, and two hundred sixteen; likewise two hundred eighty eight, and two hundred fifty six; so that either of the intervals is *Tonizans*; and there remaineth that which is between two hundred forty three, and two hundred fifty six, which is not a *Demytone*, but less: for two hundred eighty eight, is more than two hundred fifty six, by thirty two; and two hundred forty three, more than two hundred sixteen, by twenty seven; and two hundred fifty six, more than two hundred forty three, by thirteen; and both these are lesser then the advantages or surplussages by half: and therefore *Diatesseron* is found to be of two tones and a *λίσμια*, and not of two and a half. And thus you see the demonstration of this; and so it is no hard matter to understand by that which we have delivered, what is the reason why *Plato* having said, that intervals *seſquialtera*, *seſquitercia* and *seſquioctaves* are made by filling the *seſquitercia* with *seſquioctaves*; made no mention of the *seſquialtera*, but hath left them behind, namely, for that the *seſquialtera* is filled, when one putteth a *seſquioctave* to a *seſquialtera*, or rather a *seſquitercia* to a *seſquioctave*.

These things thus shewed in some sort by way of demonstration; now to fill the intervals, and to intersect the medieties, if none before had shewed the means and manner how, I would leave you to do it for your exercise; but the same having been done already by many worthy personages, and principally by *Cranton Clearchus*, and *Theodorus*, all born in the City *Seli*: It will not be impertinent to deliver somewhat as touching the difference between them; for *Theodorus* maketh not two files of numbers as the other do, but rangeth them all in the same line directly one after another, to wit, the duple and the triple: and principally he groundeth and fortifieth himself by this position (which they so call) of the substance drawn out in length, making two branches, as it were from one trunk, and not four of twain: Then he saith, that the interpositions of the medieties ought so to take place; for otherwise there would be a trouble and confusion: and anon passeth immediately from the first duple to the first triple, when they should be that which ought to fulfil the one and the other. On the other side, there maketh for *Cranton*, the position and situation of plain numbers with plain squares with squares, and cubes with cubes, which are set one against another in opposite files, not according to their range, but alternatively,

\* \* \* \* \*

which is of one sort as Idea or form; but that which is divided by bodies, is the subject and the matter; and the mixture of them both in common, is that which is complex and perfect.

As touching then the substance indivisible, which is always one, and of the same sort; we are not thus to think, that it admitteth no division for the smallness thereof, like to those little bodies called *Atomi*: but that of it which is simple, pure, and most subject to any passion or alteration whatsoever, always like it self, and after one manner, is said to be indivisible, and to have no parts; by which simplicity, when it cometh to touch in some sort, such things as be compounded, divisible, and carried to and fro, it causeth that diversity to cease, restraineth that multitude, and by means of similitude, reduceth them to one and the same habitude. And if a man be disposed to call that which is divisible by bodies, matter, as subject unto it; and participating the nature thereof, using a certain homonymy or equivocation, it mattereth not much, neither killeth it as touching the thing in question: but those who would have the corporal matter to be mixed with the indivisible substance, be in a great error: first, because *Plato* hath not now used any names thereof, for that he hath evermore used to call it receptacle to receive all, and a nurse, not divisible by bodies, but rather a body divided into individual particulars. Again, what difference would there be, between the generation of the world, and of the soul, if the constitution of the one and the other, did consist of matter and things intelligible?

Certes, *Plato* himself, as one who would in no wise admit the soul to be engendered of the body, saith, That God put all that which was corporal within her; and then, that without forth the same was enclosed round about with it: In sum, when he had framed and finished the soul according to proportion, he inferreth and annexeth afterwards a Treatise of Matter, which before when he handled the creation of the soul, he never required nor called for, because created it was without the help of matter.

The

The like to this may be said by way of confutation against *Poſidonius* and his Sectaries; for very few they were not from matter, but imagining that the substance of terms and extremities, was that which he called divisible by bodies, and joining with the intelligible, they affirmed and pronounced, that the soul is the Idea of that which is distant every way, and in all the dimensions, according to the number which containeth harmony, which is very erroneous: For the Mathematicks (quoth he) are situate between the first intelligible and sensible things: but the soul having of intelligible things an eternal essence, and of sensible objects, a passible nature: therefore meet it is that it should have a middle substance between both. But he was not ware, that God after he had made and finished the soul, used the bounds and terms of the body, for to give a form to the matter, determining the substance thereof dispersed, and not linked or contained within any limits, by environing it with superficies, composed of triangles, all joynted together. And yet more absurd then that it is to make the soul an Idea, for that that the soul is always in motion; but the Idea is immovable, neither can the Idea be joined with that which is sensible, but the soul is always linked fast with the body: besides, God did impute Idea as one who followed his pattern; but he wrought the soul as his piece of work: And that *Plato* held the soul not to be a number, but rather a thing ordained by number, we have already shewed and declared before.

But against both these opinions and their patrons, this may be opposed in common: That neither in numbers nor in terms and limits of bodies, is there any appearance or shew of that puissance, whereby the soul judgeth of that which is sensible; for the intelligence and faculty that it hath, was drawn from the participation and society of the intelligible principle: But opinions, beliefs, assents, imaginations, also to be passive and sensitive of qualities inherent in bodies, there is no man will think that they can proceed from unities, points, lines, or superficies: and yet not only the souls of mortal men have the power to judge of all the exterior qualities perceptible by the senses; but also the very soul of the world, as *Plato* saith, when it returneth circularly into herself, and toucheth any thing that is indivisible, by moving herself totally, the intellect in what respect any thing is the same, and in what regard divers and different; whereto principally each thing is meet, either to do or to suffer, where, when, and how it is affected, as well in such as are engendered, as in those that are always the same. Moreover, making a certain description with all of the ten predicaments, he declared the same more clearly afterwards: True reason (quoth he) when it meeteth with that which is sensible, and if therewith the circle of the other goeth directly to report the same, throughout the whole soul thereof, then there be engendered opinions and beliefs that be firm and true: but when it is conversant about that which is intelligible and discoursing by reason, and the Circle likewise of the same, turning roundly with facility, doth shew the same, then of necessity there is brief perfect and accomplished Science: and in whatsoever these two things be infused, if a man call it otherwise then soul, he saith any thing rather then the truth: whence cometh it then that the soul had this motion operative, which comprehendeth that which is sensible, divers and different from the other intellectual that endeth in Science? Hard it were to set this down, unless a man firmly presuppose that in this place, and at this place, he comprehendeth not the soul simply, but the soul of the world, with the parts above mentioned, of a better substance, which is indivisible; and of a worse, that he calleth divisible by bodies; which is nothing else, but an imaginative and opinionative motion, affected and accordant to that which is sensible, not engendered, but as the other, of an eternal substance: for nature having the intellectual verities, had also the faculty opinionative: but the intellectual power is unmovable, impassible, founded and set upon that substance, which abideth always in one sort: whereas the other is divisible and wandering, in as much as it toucheth a matter that is always flowing, carried to and fro, and divisible. For the matter sensible had before time no order at all, but was without all form, bound and limitation whatsoever, and the faculty therein had neither exprets opinions, articulate and distinct, nor moritious all certain and composed in order: but for the most part resembling turbulent and vain dreams, troubling that which was corporal, unless haply they fell upon any thing that was better. For between two it was, having a nature conformable, and accordant to the one and the other: challenging matter by that which is sensitive, and by the judicial part those things which are intelligible. And this declareth he himself in these proper terms: By my reckoning (quoth he) let this be the sum of the whole account, that these three things had their being three ways before the heaven was, to wit, essence, space, and generation. As for space or place, he calleth matter by that name, as it were the seat, and otherwhiles a receptacle: the essence, that which is intelligible; and the generation of the world as yet not made, can be no other thing but a substance subject to motions and alterations, situate between that which imprinteth a form, and which is imprinted, dispensing and distributing the images from thence thither: which is the reason it was called divisible, for that of necessity both the sensitive must be divided, and go with the sensible, and also the imaginative with the imaginative: For the sensitive motion being proper unto the soul, moveth toward the sensible without: but the intelligence and understanding was of it self stable, firm and immovable: howbeit being infused into the soul, and become matter and lord thereof, it rolleth and turneth upon it self, and according unto the soul, and become matter and lord thereof, that which is always permanent, and touching that compasseth a round and circular motion, about that which is the mixture and association which principally which is, and hath being. And therefore hard was the mixture and association which principally which is, and hath being, that which is every way moveable, with that which never mingled the divisible with the indivisible, that which is every way moveable, with that which never moveth, and forcing in one word the other to meet and join with the same. So the other was not motion,

no

Here is a great breach in the original.

no more then the same was station; but the beginning both of Diversity, and also of Identity, or the sameness: For the one and the other defend from divers principles, to wit, the same from unity, and the other, from binary, and were at the first mingled confusedly here in the soul; as by numbers, and proportions and mediocres harmonical: and the other being imprinted into the same, maketh difference: but the same infused into the other, causeth order; as it appeareth manifestly in the first powers of the soul, to wit, the faculties of moving and of judging. As for motion, it floweth incontinently about the heaven, diversity in identity by the revolution of the Planets, and identity in diversity by the settled order and situation of the fixed stars: for in these, the same beareth sway, and is more predominant; but contrariwise, the other, in those that be nearer to the earth. But judgement hath two principles, to wit, understandings from the same, for judging of things universal; and sense, from the other, to judge of particulars. Now reason is mingled of them both, being intelligence in things general and intelligible; but opinion only in matters sensible, using for instruments, both the senses and imaginations between, and also the memories; whereof the former make the other in the same; but the latter, the same in the other. For intelligence is the motion of the intelligent about that which is stable and permanent; but opinion is the mansion of the sentient about that which moveth. As for imagination or fancy, being a connexion of opinion to the sense, the same, placeth it in memory; and contrariwise, the other hirereth it in the difference and distinction of that which is past, and that which is present, touching both identity and diversity together.

Now the better to understand the proportion wherewith he made the soul; we must take a pattern and example, from the constitution of the body of the world: for whereas the two extremes, to wit, pure fire and earth, were by nature hard to be tempered one with another; or with another; or to wit, more truly, impossible to be mixed and incorporated together; he placed in the midst between, ayre, fire, and water before earth: and so contempered first these two mean elements, and afterwards by their help, the other extremes also, which he fitted and framed together, both with the said mean, and also with themselves one with another. And here again, the same and the other, being contrary puissances and extremities, fighting one against the other as meer enemies, he brought together, not immediately by themselves, but by putting between other substances, to wit, the indivisible, before the same, and the divisible before the other, according as in some sort the one had affinity and congruency with the other: afterwards when these were mixed together, he contempered likewise the extremes, and so warped and wove, as one would say, the whole form of the soul, making as far as it was possible, of things unlike, sensible, and of many one. But some there be who give out, that it was not well said of Plato, That the nature of the other, was hard to be mixed and tempered; considering (say they) that it is not altogether insusceptible of mutation, but a friend to it, and rather the nature of the same, being firm and hard to be turned and removed, admitteth not easily any mixture, but flesh and rejecteth it, to the end that it may remain simple, pure, and without alteration: but they who reprove this, are ignorant that the same, is the Idea of such things as be always of one sort; and the other, the Idea of those that change. Also that the effect of this, is evermore to divide, separate, and alter that which it toucheth; and in a word, to make many of one: but the effect of that is, to conjoin and unite by similitude, many things thereby into one form and puissance. Thus you see what be the powers and faculties of the soul of this universality, which entering into the frail, mortal, and passible instruments of bodies, however they be in themselves incorruptible, impasible and the same; yet in them now appeareth more the form of an indeterminate duality: but that form of the simple unity, sheweth it self more obscurely, as deeply settled within; howbeit for all that, hardly shall one see and perceive in a man, either passion altogether void of reason, or motion without understandings, wherein there is no lust, no ambition, no joy or grief: and therefore some Philosophers there be, who would have the perturbations of the minde to be reasons; as if forsooth, all desire, sorrow, and anger, were judgements. Others also do hold, that all virtues be passions: for in valor (say they) there is four, intemperance, pleasure, injustice, lucre. Howbeit, the soul being both contemplative, and also active at once, as it doth contemplate universal things; so it practiseth particulars, seeming to conceive the one by intelligence, and to perceive the other by sense: common reason seeing always the same, in the other, and likewise, the other, in the same, endeavoreth verily to sever by divers bonds and partitions, one from many; and the indivisible from the divisible, but it cannot bring it so about, as to be purely in the one or the other, for that the principles be so entangled one within another, and huddled pell-mell together.

In which regard, God hath appointed a certain receptacle for the same, and the other, of a divisible and indivisible substance, to the end, that in diversity there should be order; for this was as much as to be considered. Seeing that without this, the same should have had no diversity, and consequently no motion nor generation; neither should the other have had order, and so by consequence also, neither consistence nor generation: for if it should happen to the same, to be divers from the other, and again, to the other, to be all one with the same; such a communion and participation, would bring forth off self nothing generative, but require some third matter to receive them, and to be digested and disposed by them. And this is that which God ordained and composed first, in defining and limiting the infinity of nature, moving about bodies, by the firm steadiness of things intellectual. And like as there is one kinde of brutish voyce, not articulate nor distinct, and therefore not significant; whereas speech consisteth in voyce, that giveth to understand what is in the minde; and as harmony doth consist of many founds and intervals; the sound being simple and the same,

but

but the interval a difference and diversity of sounds, which when they be mixed and tempered together, make song and melody: Even so the passible part of the soul, was infinite, unstable, and disordinate; but afterwards became determinate, when terms and limits were set to it, and a certain form expelled to that divisible and variable diversity of motion. Thus having conceived and comprised the same, and the other, by the similitudes and dissimilitudes of numbers, making accord of difference: thereof the life of the universal world became wife and prudent, the harmony consonant, and reason drawing with her necessity, tempered with grace and persuasion, which the common folk call fatal destiny: Empedocles named concord and discord together: Heraclitus the opposite tension and harmony of the world, as of a bow or harp, wherein both ends bend one against another: Parmenides, light and darkness: Anaxagoras, understanding and infinity: Zoroaster, God, and the Devil, terming the one Oromasdes, and the other Arimanius: But Euripides did not well to use the disjunctive for the copulative, in this verse,

Jupiter, Natures necessity,  
Or humane minde, whether he be?

For in truth, that puissance which pierceth and reacheth through all things, is both necessity, and also a minde. And this is it which the Egyptians would covertly give us to understand, under the veil of their mystical fables, that when Horus was condemned and dismembered, his spirit and blood was given and awarded to his father, but his flesh and grease to his mother: But of the soul there is nothing that remaineth pure and sincere, nothing unmixt and apart from others: for as Heraclitus was wont to say: Hidden harmony, is better then the apparent: for that therein, God who tempered it, hath bestowed secretly and concealed, differences and diversities: and yet there appeareth in the unreasonable part, turbulent perturbations, in the reasonable settled order: in senses necessity and constraint; in the understanding full power and entire liberty: but the terminant and defining power, loveth the universal and indivisible, by reason of their conjunctions and consanguinity. Contrariwise, the dividing puissances, inclineth and cleaveth to particulars by the divisible. The total universality joyeth in a settled order, by the means of the same, and again, so far forth as need is, in a mutation by the means of the other: but but the difference of inclinations to honesty or dishonesty, to pleasure, or displeasure: the ravishments and transporations of the spirit in amorous persons, the combats in them, of honor against voluptuous wantonness; do evidently shew, and nothing so much, the commixtion of the nature divines, and impassible with the mortal, and passible part in bodily things: of which himself calleth the one the conception of pleasure ingenerate and inbred in us, the other an opinion induced from without, desirous of the sovereign good: for the soul of it self produceth and yieldeth passibility; but the participation of understanding cometh to it without forth, infused by the best principle and cause, which is God: so the very nature of heaven is not exempt from this double society and communions; but that a man may see how otherwhiles it doth endline and bend another way, by the revolution of the same which is more predominant, and doth govern the world: and a portion of time will come, like as it hath been often heretofore, when as the wisdom thereof shall be dulled and dazelled, yea, and laid asleep, being filled with the oblivion of that which is meet and decent for it: and that which from the beginning is familiar and conformable to the body, shall draw, weigh down, and turn back the way and course of the whole universality on the right hand: but break and undo the form thereof quite it shall not be able, but reduce it again to the better, and have a regard unto the first pattern of God, who helpeth the endeavors thereof, and is ready to reform and direct the same.

Thus it is shewed unto us in many places, that the soul is not altogether the work of God; but having a portion of evil inbred in her, she hath been brought into order and good dispose by him, who hath limited infinity by unity; to the end that it should become a substance bounded with the own terms: and hath led by the means of the same and the other, order, change, difference, and similitude: and hath contracted and wrought a society, alliance and amity of all things one with another, as far as possible was, by the means of numbers and proportions. Of which point, albeit you have heard much speech, and read many books and writings; yet I shall not do amiss, but greatly to the purpose, if briefly I discourse thereof. First setting down the words of Plato, "God (quoth he) deducted first from the universal world, one part: and then double so much; afterwards a third portion, to wit, the one, and half of the second, and the triple of the first: Soon after a fourth, to wit, the double of the second; and anon a fifth, namely the triple of the third: after that a sixth, to wit, the octuple of the first, and a seventh, which was the first seven twenty fold. This done, he filled the double and triple intervals; cutting from them also certain parcels from thence, which he interjected between these; in such sort as in every interval there were two medieties: the one surmounting, and surmounted by the same portion of the extremities; the other, surmounting by equal numbers, one of the extremities, and surmounted of another by the like. But seeing the intervals carry the proportions sesquialters, sesquitercian, and sesquioctave: of these ligaments in the first precedent divisions, he filled up all the sesquiterces with the interval of the sesquioctave, leaving of each of them one part: And this distance of the part or number being left of number to number, it had for the terms and bonds thereof, in proportion to that is between, two hundred fifty six, and two hundred forty three. Here first and formost, a question is moved as touching the quantity of these numbers: and secondly, concerning the order: and thirdly, of their power. For the quantity and sum: what they be which he taketh in

C c c c

the

the duple intervals? For the orders, to wit, whether they ought to be set and disposed all in one range, as *Theodorus* did? or rather as *Crantor*, in the figure of the letter *Lambda*,  $\Lambda$ , setting upon the point or top thereof, Unity,  $\gamma$ , the first, and then in one file apart, the duples, and the triples in another, for the use and power, namely, what they confer to the constitution and composition of the soul. As concerning the first, we will reject those who say, that it sufficeth in these proportions to consider of what nature be the intervals, and of what the midieties which fill them up, in what numbers forever a man may suppose that they have places capable between of the proportions aforesaid: for that the doctrine goeth after the same manner. And albeit that which they say, were true, yet the proof and demonstration thereof is but slender without examples, and hindereth another speculation, wherein there is contained a pleasant kinde of Learning and Philosophy. If then, beginning at Unity, we put apart by themselves the numbers duple, and the triple, as he himself teacheth us, there will be of the one side two, four, eight; on the other, three, nine, and twenty seven; which are in all seven, taking the Unity as common, and proceeding forward in multiplication unto four. For it is not in place only, but also in many others, where the consent and agreement is very evident, that is between the quaternary and the septenary. And as for that quaternity of the Pythagoreans so much voyced, and so highly by them celebrated, it is of thirty six, which hath this admirable matter in it above all others, that it is compounded of the four first even numbers, and of the four first odd numbers: and isarithely by the fourth couple or conjugation of number, ranged in order one after the other.

\* \* \* \* \*

For the first is of one and two, the second of one and three, which be odde. For setting one in the first place, as indifferent and common to both; then taketh he eight, and twenty seven, shewing, and as it were, pointing with the finger, what place he giveth to the one and the other kinde.

But to treat hereof after a more exact and exquisite manner, appertaineth unto others: But that which remaineth is proper to the subject matter in hand. For it was not upon any ostentation of skill and sufficiency in the Mathematical Arts that *Plato* hath inserted within a Treatise of Natural Philosophy, this Arithmetical and Harmonical medieties, but as a Discourse very meet and fit to serve for the composition and constitution of the soul; howsoever there be some who seek for these proportions in the twines more or less of the wandering Spheres; others rather in their distances; some in the magnitudes of the stars; and others again, after a more curious manner, in the Diameters of the Epicycles, as if that Creator had in regard thereof, and for this cause applied and fitted the soul, distributed into seven parts, unto the celestial bodies. Many there be moreover, who bring hither and accommodate to this matter the Pythagoreans inventions, tripling the distances of bodies from the midst: which they do after this manner, setting upon fire Unity; and upon the earth, opposite unto ours, three; upon the earth, nine; upon the Moon, twenty seven; upon *Mercury*, fourscore and one; upon *Venus*, two hundred forty three; and upon the Sun himself, 729. for that it is both quadrate and cube: which is the reason that they call the Sun also one while quadrate, and another while cube: and after the same sort they reduce the other stars by way of triplication. But these Philosophers do miscount greatly, and stray far from reason and proportion indeed, if so be that Geometrical demonstrations do avail ought: yet in comparison of them, well fair they who go to work another way; and albeit they prove not their positions exactly, yet (I say) they come neerer to the mark, who give out, that the Diameter of the Sun, compared to the Diameter of the earth, is in the same proportion that twelve is to one: that the Diameter or Dimetent Line of the earth is triple to that of the Moon: and the least fixed star that is to be seen, hath no less a Diameter, then the third part of the Diameter of the earth: also, that the total Globe of the earth, compared with the Sphere of the Moon, carrieth the proportion of twenty seven to one: The Diameters of *Venus* and the earth, are in double proportion, but their Globes or Spheres bear octuple proportion, to wit, eight for one. Semblably, the interval of the Elipsptick, and the shadow which causeth the Eclipse, is triplicate to the Diameter of the Moon. Also the latitude of the Moons declination from the Zodiacus on either side, is one twelfth part: Likewise that the habitudes and aspects of her to the Sun, in distances triquetres, or quadrangular, take the forms and figurations either of the Half-moon, at the first quarter, or else when she swelleth and beareth out on both sides: but after she hath passed six Signs of the Zodiacus, she maketh a full compass, and resembleth a certain Harmonical Symphony of Diapason in Hexatones. And forasmuch as the Sun about the Solstices or Tropicks, as well of Summer as Winter, moveth least, and most slowly; but contrariwise, about the two Equinoxes in Spring and Autumn, most swiftly, and exceeding much: the proportion of that which he taketh from the day, and putteth to the night; or contrariwise, is after this manner in the first thirty days; for in that space after the Solstice in Winter, he addeth to the day the six part of that exuperance, whereby the longest night surmounteth the shortest day: and in another thirty days following after that, a third part, and so forward in the rest of the days one half, until you come to the Equinox; in Spring in regard of intervals, to make even the inequality of the times. But the Chaldeans say, that Spring in regard of Autumn carrieth proportion Diatessaron, in respect of Winter Diapente, and in comparison of Summer Diapason: But if *Euripides* hath well limited the four quarters of the year when he said:

For Summer hot, four months ordained be,  
For Winter cold likewise are other four:  
Shorter is rich Autumn by one moiety,  
And pleasant Spring whilst it remain in flour.

Then the seasons do change after the proportion Diapason: Some attribute to the earth, the place of the musical note Proslambanomenos: unto the Moon Hypate: unto *Mercury* and *Lucifer* Datonos and Lichanos: the Sun they set upon Mese (they say) containing Diapason in the mids, distant from the earth one fifth or Diapente, and from the sphere of the fixed stars a fourth, or Diatesseron. But neither the pretty conceited imagination of these toucheth the truth any way, nor the reckoning and account of those other, cometh precisely to the point. Well, those who affirm that these devices agree not to the minde of *Plato*, are yet of opinion, that those other agree very well to the proportions described in the Tablature of Musicians, which consisteth of five Tetrachords, to wit, the first Hypaton, as one would say, of Base-notes; the second, Meseon, that is to say, of Means: the third, Synemmenon, that is to say, of Conjuncts; the fourth, Diezeugmenon, that is to say, of Disjuncts; and the fifth, Hyperbolæon, to wit, of the high and excellent Notes: semblably, say they, The Planets be set in five distances, whereof the one is from the Moon unto the Sun, and those which have the same revolution with him, as *Mercury* and *Venus*; a second, from these three unto the fiery Planet *Mars*; the third, from thence to *Jupiter*; the fourth, from him to *Saturn*; and the fifth reacheth unto the starry sky; so that the sounds and notes, which determine the five Tetrachords, answer to the proportion of the Planets or wandering stars. Moreover, we know very well, that the ancient Musicians, did set down no more notes but two Hypates, three Nesses, one Mese, and one Paramete: for their musical notes were equal in number to the Planets: but our modern Masters of Musick, have added that which is called Proslambanomenos, namely, lower by one note then Hypate, and enclining to the base: and so the whole composition they made Disdiapason; nor keeping and observing the order of the consonances according to nature, for Diapente is before Diatesseron, by adding one note or tone to Hypate toward the Base; whereas it is certain that *Plato* took one note to it toward the Treble: for he faith in his Books of Commonwealth, That every one of the eight Spheres hath a Syrene sitting upon it, causing the same to turn about, and that each of them hath a several and proper voice of their own: but of altogether there is contempered a certain harmony: these Syrenes being disposed to solace themselves, sing for their pleasure divine and heavenly tunes, dancing with a fixed dance, under the melodious consent of eight strings: as also there were eight principal terms as full of proportions double and triple; counting for one of these terms or limits unity to either part: but the more ancient sort have given unto us nine Muses, to wit, eight, as *Plato* himself faith, about the celestial bodies, and the ninth about the terrestrial, called forth from the rest to dulce, and set them in repose, instead of error, trouble, and inequality. Consider, now I pray you, whether the soul being become most just and most wise, doth not manage the heaven and celestial things by the accords and motions therein? And thus endured she by proportions harmonical; he images whereof are imprinted upon the bodies and visible parts of the world which are seen; but the first and principal power is visibly inserted in the soul, which sheweth her self accordant and obsequant, to the better and more divine part, all the rest consenting likewise thereto. For the Sovereign Creator, finding a disorder and confusion in the motions of this disordinate and foolish soul, being evermore at discord with herself, divided and separated some; reconciled and re-united others, using thereto numbers and proportions; by means whereof, the most deaf bodies, as blocks and stones, wood, barks of trees, and very ravenous and mawny of beasts, their guts, their galls and sinews, being framed, contempered, and mixed together in proportion, exhibit into us the figures of statues wonderful to see to, and dogues and medicines most effectual, yea, and sounds of musical instruments right admirable. And therefore *Zeno* the Citician, called forth young men to see and behold minstrels playing upon Flutes and Harps: That they might hear (quoth he) and learn, what sweet sounds and melodious noises, horns, pieces of wood, canes and reeds do yield, yea, and whatsoever matters else musical instruments be made of, when they meet with proportions and accords. As for that which the Pythagoreans were wont to say and affirm, namely, that all things resembled numbers; it would ask a long discourse for to declare it. But that all the gods who were before at discord and debate, by reason of their dissimilitude, and whatsoever else jarred, grew to accord and consonance one with another, whereof the cause was the contemperance, moderation and order of number and harmony, the very Poets were not ignorant of, who use to call such things as be friendly, amiable and pleasing, *ἁρμόνια*: but adversaries and enemies they term *ἄρμιστα*, as if discord and enmity were nothing else but disproportion: and verily that Poet, whosoever he was, that made a Funeral Ditty for *Pindarus*, when he said thus of him,

Ἀπὸ τοῦ τοῦ ἑλισσίου ἀνθ' ἑσέ, ἔστιν ὁ δῶκε.

To strangers kinde he was and affable,  
To citizens friendly and pliable.

showed very well, that he held it for a singular virtue to be sociable, and to know how to sort and agree with others: like as the same *Pindarus* himself,

Cccc 2

When

For

When God did call, he gave attendance,  
And never brag'd of all his valance.

meaning and signifying *Cadmus*. The old Theologians and Divines, who of all Philosophers are most ancient, have put into the hands of the Images of the gods, musical instruments, minding nothing less thereby, then to make this god, or that a minstrel, either to play on Lute, or to found the Flute; but because they thought there was no greater piece of work then Accord and Harmonical Symphonie could befeem the gods. Like as therefore, he that would seek for selquiterian, selquilateral or double proportions of Musick, in the neck or bridge, in the belly or back of a Lute, or in the pegs and pins thereof, were a ridiculous fool (for howsoever these parts ought to have a symmetry and proportion one to another in regard of length and thickness; yet the harmony whereof we speak, is to be considered in the sounds only.) Even so, probably it is, and standeth with great reason, that the bodies of the stars, the distances and intervals of Spheres, the celerity also of their courses and revolutions, should be proportionate one unto another, yea, and unto the whole world, as instruments of musick well set and tuned, albeit the just quantity of the measure be unknown unto us. But this we are to think, that the principal effect and efficacy of these numbers and proportions, which that great and sovereign Creator used, is the consonance, accord, and agreement of the soul in it self; with which she being endowed, she hath replenished both the heaven it self, when she was settled thereupon, with an infinite number of good things; and also disposed and ordained all things upon the earth, by seasons, by changes and mutations, tempered and measured most excellently well, and with surpassing wisdom, as well for the production and generation of all things, as for the preservation and safety of them, when they were created and made.

### An Epitome or Breviary of a Treatise as touching the Creation of the Soul, according to Plato in *Timæus*.

**T**His Treatise, entituled, *Of the Creation of the Soul*, as it is described in the Book of Plato named *Timæus*, declareth all that Plato, and the Platoniques have written of that Argument; and inserteth certain Propositions and similitudes Geometrical, which he supposeth pertinent to the speculation and intelligence of the nature of the soul: as also certain Musical and Arithmetical Theoremes. His meaning and saying is, that the first matter was brought into form and shape by the soul. He attributeth to the universal world a soul; and likewise to every living creature a soul of the own by it self, which ruleth and governeth it. He bringeth in the said soul in some sort not engendered, and yet after a sort subject to generation. But he affirmeth, that eternal matter to have been formed by God; that evil and vice is an Imp springing from the said matter, To the end (quoth he) that it might never come into mans thought, That God was the author or cause of evil.

All the rest of this Breviary, is word for word in the Treatise it self, therefore may be well spared in this place, and not rehearsed a second time.

### Of Fatal Necessity.

This little Treatise is so pitiously torn, maimed, and dismembred throughout, that a man may sooner divine and guess thereat (as I have done) then translate it. I beseech the Readers therefore, to hold me excused, in case I neither please my self, nor content them, in that which I have written.

**E**ndeavor I will, and address my self to write unto you (most dear and loving friend *Pijo*, as plainly and compendiously as possible I can) mine opinion as touching Fatal destiny, for to satisfy your request: albeit you know full well how wary and precise I am in my writing. First and foremost therefore, thus much you must understand, That this term of Fatal destiny is spoken and understood two manner of ways: the one, as it is an action, and the other, as it is a substance. In the first place, *Plato* hath figuratively drawn it forth, and under a type described it as an action, both in his Dialogue, entituled, *Phædrus*, in these words: It is an Astraitian Law or inevitable Ordinance, which always followeth and accompanieth God. And also in his Treatise called

*Timæus*,

*Timæus*, after this manner, The Laws which God hath pronounced and published to the immortal soul, in the procreation of the universal world. Likewise, in his Books of Commonwealth, he saith, That Fatal Necessity is the reason and speech of *Lachesis* the daughter of Necessity. By which places he bringeth us to understand, not tragically, but after a Theological manner, what his minde and opinion is. Now if a man (taking the said places already cited and quoted) would expound the same more familiarly in other words, he may declare the former description in *Phædrus* after this sort, namely, that Fatal Destiny is a divine reason or sentence intransgressible and inevitable, proceeding from a cause that cannot be diverted nor impeached. And according to that which he delivereth in *Timæus*, it is Law consequently ensuing upon the nature and creation of the world, by the rule whereof all things pass and are dispensed, that be done. For this is it that *Lachesis* worketh and effecteth, who is in truth the daughter of Necessity, as we have both already said, and also shall better understand, by that which we are to deliver hereafter in this and other Treatises at our leisure. Thus you see what *D. destiny* is, as it goeth for an action; but being taken for a substance, it seemeth to be the universal soul of the whole world, and admitteth a tripartite division. The first Destiny is that which erreth not; the second seemeth to erre; and the third is under heaven, and conversant about the earth: of which three, the highest is called *Clerbo*; the next under it, is named *Antopos*; and the lowest, *Lachesis*: and the receiveth the influences of her two celestial sisters, transmitting and fastning the same upon terrestrial things, which are under her government. Thus have we shewed summarily, what is to be thought and said touching *D. destiny*, being taken as a substance; namely, What it is, what parts it hath, after what sort it is, how it is ordained, and in what manner it standeth, both in respect of it self, and also in regard of us: but as concerning the particularities of all these points, there is another fable in the Poëmes of *Plato*, which covertly in some sort giveth us intelligence thereof; and the same have we assayed to explain and unfold unto you, as well as possible we can: But to return unto our *D. destiny* as it is an action, let us discourse thereof, so far as many questions, natural, moral and rational depend thereupon. Now for that we have in some sort sufficiently defined already, what it is, we are to consider consequently in order, the quality and manner thereof; howsoever, there be many that think it very strange and absurd to search therein, I say therefore, that Destiny is not infinite, but finite and determinate, however it comprehend, as it were, within a circle, the infinity of all things that are, and have been time out of minde, yea, and shall be world without end: for, neither law, nor reason, nor any divine thing whatsoever, can be infinite. And this shall you the better learn and understand, if you consider the total revolution, and the universal time, when as the eight Spheres, as *Timæus* saith, having performed their swift courses, shall return to the same head and point again, being assured by the circle of the same, which goeth always after one manner: for in this definite and determinate reason, all things, as well in heaven as in earth, the which do consist by the necessity of that above, be reduced to the same situation, and brought again to their first head and beginning. The only habitude therefore of heaven, which standeth ordained in all points, as well in regard of it self, as of the earth, and all terrestrial matters, after certain long revolutions, shall one day return, yea, and that which consequently followeth after, and those which are linked in a continuity together, bring each one by consequence that which it hath by necessity. For to make this matter more plain, let us suppose that all those things which are in and about us, be wrought and brought to pass by the course of the heavens and celestial influences, all being the very efficient cause both of that which I write now, and also of that which you are doing at this present, yea, and in that sort as you do the same: so that hereafter, when the same cause shall turn about and come again, we shall do the very same that now we do, yea, and after the same manner; yea, we shall become again the very same men. And even so it shall be with all other men: and look whatsoever shall follow in a course or train, shall likewise happen by a consequent and dependent cause: and in one word, whatsoever shall befall in any of the universal revolutions, shall become the same again. Thus apparent it is, as hath already been said, That Destiny being in some sort infinite, is nevertheless determinate and not infinite; as also, that according as we have shewed before, it is evident that it is in manner of a circle; for like as the motion of a circle in a circle, and the time that measureth it is also a circle; even so the reason of those things which are done and happen in a circle, by good right may be esteemed and said to be a circle.

This therefore, if I might else there were, sheweth unto us, in a manner, sufficiently, what is Destiny in generality, but not in particular, nor in each several respect: What then is it? It is the general, in the same kinde of reason, so as a man may compare it with Civil Law: For first and foremost, it commandeth the most part of things, if not all, at leastwise by way of supposition, and then it comprehendeth as much as is possible all matters appertaining to a City or Publike State, generally: And that we may better understand both the one and the other, let us exemplifie and consider the same in speciality: The Civil or Politick Law speaketh and ordaineth generally of a valiant man, as also of a run-away coward, and so consequently of others; howbeit, this is not to make a Law of this or that particular person; but to provide in general principally, and then of particulars by consequence, as comprized under the said general; for we may very well say, that to remunerate and recompense this or that man for his valor is lawfull as also to punish a particular person for his cowardice and forsaking his colour; for that the Law potentially and in effect, hath comprized as much, although not in express words: like as the Law (if I may so say) of Physicians, and of Masters of bodily exercises, comprehendeth special and particular points within the general: and even so doth the Law of nature, which first and principally doth determine general matters; and then particulars secondarily and by consequence.

Cccc 3

Simblably,



Sensibly, may particular and individual things in some sort be said to be defined, for that they be so by consequence with the genera's. But haply some one of those who search and enquire more curiously and exactly into these matters will hold the contrary, and say, that of particular and individual things, proceed the composition of the generals, and that the general is ordained and gathered for the particular. Now that for which another thing is, goeth always before that which is for it; but this is not the proper place to speak of these quiddities; for we are to refer them to some other; howbeit, that destiny doth not comprehend all things purely and expressly, but only such as be universal and general, is resolved upon for that which we have to say hereafter, yea, and agreeeth also to that which hath been delivered somewhat before; for that which is finite and determinate, properly agreeable to Divine Providence, is more seen in universal and general things, than in particular; of this nature is the Law of God, and such is likewise the Civil Law, whereas infinity consisteth in particulars.

After this we are to declare, what meaneth this term, By supposition: for surely destiny is to be thought such a thing. We have then called, By supposition, that which is not set down of it self, but supposed and joyned after another; and this signifyeth a suit and consequence: This is the Law or Ordinance of *Adrastia*, that is to say, a decree inevitable; unto which, if any soul can associate it self, the same shall be able to see by consequence, all that will ensue, even unto another general revolution, and be exempt from all evil; which if it may be able always to do, it shall neither sustain any damage, nor do harm. Thus you see what it is that we call, By supposition in general. Now that Fatal Destiny is of this kinde, evidently appeareth, as well by the substance as the name thereof: for it is called in Greek, *anapochin*, as if one would say *anapochin*, that is, as much as dependant and linked, and a Law it is and Ordinance, for that things therein be ordained and disposed consequently, and in manner of those which are done civilly.

Hereunto is to be annexed a Treatise of Relation, that is to say, what reference and respect hath Fatal Destiny unto Divine Providence, as also unto Fortune: Likewise, what is that which is in us; what is contingent, and such like things. Moreover, we are to decide, wherein and how it is false; wherein also, and how it is true: that all things happen and come to pass by Fatal Destiny, for it import and imply thus much, That all things are comprized and contained in Fatal Destiny, we must grant this Proposition to be true: and say one put thereto all things done among men, upon the earth, and in the very heaven, and place them within Fatal Destiny, let us grant as much for the present. But if we understand that this word Fatal (as it rather seemeth) doth import not all things, but that only which followeth and is dependant, then we may not grant and say, that all things be comprehended in Fatal Destiny; considering all that which the Law doth comprehend, and whereof it speaketh, is not lawful, nor according to law: for why? it comprizeth treason, it treateth of cowardice, of running away from ones colours and place in battel, of adultery, and many things (femible: of which we cannot say, any one is lawful: forasmuch, as even to perform valorous service in the wars, to kill Tyrants, or to exploit any virtuous deed, I would not term lawful, because properly that is lawful, which is commanded by the Law; and if the Law did command those things, how can they avoid to be rebellious and transgressors of the Law, who have not done valiant exploits in arms, have not killed Tyrants, nor performed any other notable acts of virtue? and in case they be offenders of the Law, why are they not punished accordingly? But if to punish such, be neither just nor reasonable, then consents we must, that these matters be not legal, nor according to Law; for legal and according to law is that, which is namely prescribed, set down, and expressly commanded by the Law, in any action whatsoever. Sensibly, those things only be Fatal and according to Destiny, which are done by a Divine disposition proceeding, so that Fatal Destiny may well comprize all things: howbeit many of those which be comprized therein, and in manner all that went before, to speak properly, cannot be pronounced Fatal, nor according to Fatal Destiny, which being so, we ought to declare now in order consequently, how that which is in our own power, to wit, free will, how fortune, possible, contingent, and other such like things, which be ranged and placed among the premises, may subsist safely with Fatal Destiny, and how Fatal Destiny may stand with them: for Fatal Destiny comprehendeth all, as it seemeth; and yet these things happen not by any necessity, but every of them according to their own nature. The nature of Possible, is to have a prebussistence as the gender, and to go before the contingent, and the contingents as the subject matter ought to be presupposed before the things which are in our power: for that which is in us, as a Lord and Master useth the contingent: And Fortune is of this nature, to intercur between our free will, and what is in us, by the property of contingency inclining to the one side, and to the other, which you may more easily apprehend and understand, if you consider, how every thing that is produced forth, yea, and the production it self and generation, is not without a certain puissance: and no puissance or power there is without a substance: as for example, the generation of man, and that which is produced and engendered, is not without a power, and the same is about the man, but man himself is the substance. Of the puissance or power being between, cometh the substance which is the puissant: but the production, and that which is produced, be both things possible. There being therefore these three, Puissance, Puissant, and Possible: Before Puissance can be, of necessity there must be presupposed a puissant, as the subject thereof: and even so it must needs be that puissance also subsist before that which is possible. By this deduction then, in some sort is declared, what is that which we call possible; so as we may after a gross manner define it to be, that which puissance is able to produce: and to speak more properly of the same, by

by adjoining thereto thus much, provided always, that nothing without forth do impeach or hinder it. But among possible things, some there be that never can be hindered, as namely in heaven, the rising and setting of the stars, and such like: others may be impeached, as the most part of humane affairs, yea, and many Meteors in the Ayre. As for the former, as things hapning by necessity, they be called necessary; the other for that they fall out sometime contrariwise, we term contingent; and in this sort may they be described. Necessary is that possible thing, which is opposit to impossible: contingence is that possible, whereof possible also is the contrary. For that the Sun should go down, is a thing both necessary and possible, as being contrary unto this impossibility, namely, that the Sun should not set at all: but that when the Sun is set, there should come rain, or not rain, are both of them possible and contingent. Again, of things contingent, some there be which happen oftentimes, and for the most part, others rare and feldome, some fall out indifferently, as well one way as another, even as it happeneth. And plain it is, that these be opposit and repugnant to themselves: as for those which happen usually, and very often, contrary they be to such things as chance but feldom; and these indeed for the most part, are subject to nature: but that which chanceth equally, one way as well as another, lieth in us and our will: for example sake, that under the Dog-star it should be hot and cold; the one commonly, and for the most part, the other very feldom, are things both, submitted to nature: to walk, or not to walk, and such things whereof the one and the other be subject to the free will of man, are said to be in us, and in our choice and election: but rather and more generally, they be said to be in us. For as touching this term, To be in us, it is to be understood two manner of ways, and therefore are two kinds, the one proceedeth from passion, as namely, from anger or concupiscence; the other, from discourse of reason, or judgement and understanding, which a man may properly say, to be in our election. And some reason there is, that this possible contingent which is named to be in us, and to proceed from our appetite and will, should be called so, not in the same regard, but for divers: for in respect of future time, it is called possible and contingent; but in regard of the present, it is named, In us, and in our free will: so as a man may thus define and distinguish of these things; Contingent is that which both it self and the contrary whereof is possible: that which in us, is the one part of contingent, to wit, that by nature possible goeth before contingent, and contingent subsisteth before that which in us; also, what each of them is, and whereupon they are so called, yea, and what be the qualities adjoining thereto: it remaineth now, that we should treat of Fortune, and casual adventure, and of whatsoever besides, that requireth discourse and consideration. First, this is certain, that Fortune is a kinde of cause: but among causes, some are of themselves, others by accident: as for example, of an house or ship, the proper causes and of themselves, be the Mason, Carpenter or Shipwright, but by accident, the Musician and Geometrician, yea, and whatsoever incident to the Mason, Carpenter, or Shipwright, either in regard of body or minde, or outward things: whereby it appeareth, that the essential cause which is by it self, must needs be determinate, certain and one; whereas the accidental causes are not always one and the same, but infinite and indeterminate; for many accidents in number infinite, and in nature different one from another, may be together in one and the same subject. This cause then by accident, when it is found not only in such things which are done for some end, but also in those wherein our election and will takeeth place, is called Fortune: as namely, to finde treasure when a man diggeth a hole or grave to plant a tree in, or to do and suffice any extraordinary thing, in flying, pursuing, or otherwise going and marching, or only in retiring: provided always, that he doth not to that end which enueth thereupon, but upon some other intention. And hereupon it is, that some of the ancient Philosophers have defined Fortune, to be a cause unknown, and not foreseen by mans reason: But according to the Platonicks, who come nearer unto it in reason, it is defined thus, Fortune is an accidental cause in those things that are done for some end, and which are in our election; and afterwards they adjoyn moreover, not foreseen nor known by the discourse of humane reason: although that which is rare and strange, by the same means, appeareth also in this kinde of cause by accident. But what this is, if it appear not manifestly by that opposition and contradictory disputations, yet at leastwise it will be declared most evidently, by that which is written in a Treatise of Plato, entitled, *Phedon*, where these words are found. What? Have you not heard how, and in what manner the judgement passed? Yes I wis, for one there was, who came and told us of it; whereas we marvelled very much, that seeing the Sentence of judgement was pronounced long before, he died a good while after. And what might be the cause thereof, *O Phedon*? Surely, there hapned unto him, *O Euborator*, a certain fortune: For it chanced that the day before the judgement, the prow of the Galley which the Athenians sent to kill *Deios* was crowned: In which words it is to be noted, that by this term, There hapned, you must not understand, There was; but rather, it is to be noted, upon a concurrence and meeting of many causes together, one after another. For the Priest adorned the ship with Coronets for another end and intention, and not for the love of *Socrates*; yea, and the Judges had condemned him also for some other cause: but the event it self was so strange and admirable, as if it had hapned by some providence, or by an humane creature, or rather induced by some superior nature. And thus much may suffice as touching Fortune, and the definition thereof: as also, that necessarily it ought to subsist together with some one contingent thing of those which are meant to some end; whereupon it took the name: yea, and there must be some subject before of such things which are in us and in our election.

But casual adventure reacheth and extendeth farther then Fortune: for it comprizeth both it, and also many

many other things which may chance as well one way as another: and according as the very Etymology and derivation of the word *contingent*, sheweth it is that which happeneth for and instead of another, namely, when that which was ordinary fell not out, but another thing in lieu thereof: as namely, when it chanceth to be cold weather in the Dog-days; for sometimes it falleth out to be then cold, and not without cause. In sum, like as that which is in us and arbitrary, is part of contingent; even so is fortune a part of casual or accidental adventure: and both these events are conjunct and dependent one of another; to wit, casual adventure hangeth upon contingent, and fortune upon that which is in us and arbitrary: and yet not simply and in general, but of that only which is in our election, according as hath been before said. And hereupon it is, that this casual adventure is common as well to things which have no life, as to those which are animate; whereas fortune is proper to man only, who is able to perform voluntary actions. An argument whereof is this, that to be fortunate, happy and blessed, are thought to be all one; for blessed happiness is a kinde of well doing; and to do well, properly belongeth to a man, and him that is perfect. Thus you see what things are comprized within Fatal Destiny, namely, Contingent, Possible, Election, that which is within us, fortune, casual accident, or chance and adventure, together with their circumstantial adjuncts, signified by these words, haply, peradventure or perchance: howbeit, we are not to infer, that because they be contained within destiny, therefore they be fatal.

It remaineth now to discourse of Divine Providence, considering that it self comprehendeth Fatal Destiny. This supreme and first providence therefore, is the intelligence and will of the Sovereign God, doing good unto all that is in the world; whereby all divine things universally and throughout, have been most excellently and wisely ordained and disposed. The second providence, is the intelligence and will of the second gods, who have their course through the heaven; by which, temporal and mortal things are engendered regularly and in order; as also, whatsoever pertaineth to the preservation and continuance of every kinde of thing. The third, by all probability and likelihood, may well be called the providence and prospicience of the Demons or Angels, as many as be placed and ordained about the earth as superintendents, for to observe, mark and govern mens actions. Now albeit there be seen this threefold providence, yet properly and principally that first and supreme is named Providence: so as we may be bold, and never doubt to say, howsoever herein we seem to contradict some Philosophers, That all things are done by Fatal Destiny, and by Providence, but not likewise by nature: howbeit some by providence; and that after divers sorts, these by one, and those by another; yea, and some also by Fatal Destiny. As for Fatal Destiny, it is altogether by providence; but providence in no wise by Fatal Destiny: where, by the way, this is to be noted, that in this present place I understand the principal and sovereign providence. Now whatsoever is done by another (be it what it will) is evermore after that which causeth or maketh it; even as that which is erected by Law is after the Law; like as what is done by nature, must needs succeed and come after nature. Semblably, what is done by Fatal Destiny, is after Fatal Destiny, and of necessity must be more new and modern: and therefore the supreme Providence is the ancientest of all, excepting him alone, whose intelligence it is or will, or both twain together, to wit, the sovereign Author, Creator, maker and father of all things.

"And for what cause is it, saith *Timæus*, that he hath made and framed this Fabrick of the world? for that he is all good, and in him being all good, there cannot be imprinted or engendered any evil: yet by seeing he is altogether void and free from it, his will was, that as much as possibly might be, all things should resemble himself. He then who shall receive and admit this for the most principal and proper original of the Generation and Creation of the world, such as wisemen have depicted unto us by writings, is in the right way, and doth very well. For God willing that all things (should be good, and nothing at all (to his power) evil, took all that was visible, restless as it was, and moving still rashly, confusedly, irregularly, and without order, which he brought out of confusion, and ranged into order, judging this to be every way far better than the other: for neither it was, nor is convenient and meet, for him who is himself right good, to make any thing that should not be most excellent and beautiful. Thus therefore we are to esteem that providence (I mean that which is principal and sovereign) hath constituted and ordained these things first, and then in order such as ensue and depend thereof, even as far as to the souls of men. Afterwards having thus created the universal world, he ordained eight Spheres, answering in number to so many principal Stars; and distributed to every one of them a several soul; all which he set, each one (as it were) within a Chariot over the nature of the whole, shewing unto them the Laws and Ordinances of Fatal Destiny \* \* \*

What is he then who will not believe, that by these words he believe, and declareth Fatal Destiny, and the same to be (as one would say) a Tribulation, and a Politick Constitution of Civil Laws, meet and agreeable to the souls of men? whereof afterwards he rendereth a reason. And as touching the second Providence, he doth after a sort expressly signifye the same in these words, saying, Having therefore prescribed all these Laws unto them, to the end that if afterwards there should be any default, he might be exempted from all cause of evil: he spread and sowed some upon the earth, others about the Moon, and some again upon other organs and instruments of time: after which distribution, he gave commandment and charge to the yong gods, for to frame and create mortal bodies, as also to make up and finish that which remained, and was wanting in mans soul; and when they had made perfect all that was adherent and consequent thereto, then to rule and govern after

the

the best and wisest manner possible, this mortal creature, to the end that it felt should not be the cause of the own evils and miseries: for in these words where it is said, That he might be exempted, and not the cause of any evil ensuing afterwards, he sheweth clearly and evidently to every one the cause of any Fatal Destiny. The order also and office of these petty gods declareth unto us the second providence, yea, and it seemeth that in some sort it toucheth by the way, the third providence, in case it be so, that for this purpose these Laws and Ordinances were established, because he might not be blamed or accused as the author of any evil in any one afterwards: for God himself being clear and exempt from all evil, neither hath need of Laws, nor requireth any Fatal destiny: but each one of these petty gods, led and haled by the providence of him who hath engendered them, doth their own devoir and office, belonging unto them. That this is true, and the very minde and opinion of *Plato*, appeareth manifestly in my conceit, by the testimony of those words which are reported by *Plato*, the Law-giver in his Books of Laws in this manner: If there were any man (quoth he) so by nature sufficient, or by divine fortune so happily born, that he could be able to comprehend this, he should require no Laws to command him: for no Law there is, nor Ordinance of more worth and puissance, than is Knowledge and Science: neither can he possibly be a servile slave or subject to any, who is only and indeed free by nature, but he ought to command all. For mine own part, thus I understand and interpret the sentence of *Plato*: For whereas there is a triple providence; the first, as that which hath engendered Fatal destiny, in some sort comprehendeth it: the second being engendered with it, is likewise wholly comprized in it: the third engendered after Fatal destiny, is comprized under it, in that manner, as That which is in us, and fortune, as we have already said: for those whom the assistance of the power of our Demon doth aid (according as *Socrates* saith) expounding unto *Themistocles* what is the inevitable Ordinance of *Adralia*, these (I say) are those whom you understand well enough: for they grow and come forward quickly with speed, so as, where it is said, that a Demon or an Angel doth favor any, it must be referred to the third providence; but that suddenly they grow and come to proof, it is by the power of Fatal destiny: and to be short, it is very plain and evident, that even this also is a kinde of destiny. And peradventure it may seem much more probable, that even the second providence is comprehended under destiny; yea, and in sum, all things whatsoever be made or done, considering that destiny, according to the substance thereof, hath been rightly divided by us into three parts. And verily that speech, as touching the chain and concatenation, comprehendeth the revolutions of the heavens, in the number and range of those things which happen by supposition: but verily of these points, I will not debate much, to wit, whether we are to call them, Happening by supposition, or rather conjunct unto destiny: considering that the precedent cause and commander of destiny it self, is also fatal. And thus to speak summarily, and by way of abridgement, is our opinion: but the contrary sentence unto this, ordaineth all things to be not only under destiny, but also according to destiny, and by it. Now all things accord unto the other, and that which accordeth to another, the same must be granted to be the other: according then to this opinion, contingent is said to be the first; that which is in us the second; fortune the third; accident or casual chance and adventure the fourth, together with all that dependeth thereupon, to wit, praise, blame, and those of the same kinde; the fifth and last of all, may be said to be the prayers unto the gods, together with their services and ceremonies. Moreover, as touching those which are called idle, and harvest arguments, as also that which is named beside, or against destiny, they are no better then cavils and sophistries according to this opinion; but according to the contrary sentence, the first and principal conclusion is, that nothing is done without cause, but all things depend upon precedent causes: the second, that the world is governed by nature, which conspireth and is compatible with it self; the third may seem rather to be testimonies unto these; whereof the first is divination, approved by all Nations, as being really and truly in God; the second the equanimity and patience of wise men, taking and bearing well all accidents and occurrences whatsoever, as coming by divine ordinance; the third, which is so common a speech, and divulged in every mans mouth, namely, that every Proposition is either true or false. Thus have we drawn this discourse into a small number of short Articles, to the end that we might remember and comprize in few words, the whole matter and argument of Destiny. All which points, both of the one and the other opinion, are to be discussed and examined with more diligent inquisition, whereof particularly we will treat afterwards.

## A Compendious Review and Discourse, That the Stoicks Deliver more strange Opinions then do the Poets.

### The Summary.

**A** Petty Declaration this is against the self of the Stoicks, which briefly and in a word it maketh odious; giving out in plain terms, that such persons be the loudest liars in the world: and that their opinion as touching the change and alteration of that party who range themselves unto them, is so monstrous and ridiculous; that the discovery only thereof is a sufficient refutation.

## A Compendious Review and Discourse, That the Stoicks deliver more strange Opinions, then do the Poets.

**P**indarus was reproved, for that after a strange manner, and without all sense and probability, he feigned Ceneus one of the Lapiths, to have had a body so hard, as it could not be pierced by any weapons of iron and steel, but that he remained unhurt, and so afterwards.

*Went under earth without wound,  
When with stiff foot he cleft the ground.*

But this *Lapib* of the Stoicks, to wit, their imagined wife man, being forged by them of impossibility, as of a metal harder then the Diamond, is not such an one as is not otherwhiles wounded, discaised and afflicted with pain: howbeit, as they say, he abideth still fearless, and without sorrow and heaviness; he continueth invincible, he sustaineth no force nor violence, howsoever he be wounded, what pain forever he suffereth, be he put to all tortures, or see his native Country sacked and destroyed before his face, or what calamities else beside be presented to his eyes. And verily, that Ceneus whom Pindarus describeth, notwithstanding he were smitten, and bare many strokes, yet was unwounded for all that: but the wife man whom the Stoicks imagine, although he be kept enclosed in prison, yet is not restrained of liberty: say he be pitched down from the top of a rock, yet sustaineth no violence; he is put to the strappado, to the wrack or wheel, yet for all that, is he not tormented; and albeit he fry in the fire, yet he hath no harm; nay, if in whetling he be soiled and take a fall, yet he perisheth unconquered; when he is environed within a wall, yet he is not besieged; and being sold in port-sale by the enemies, yet is he no captive, but remaineth impregnable; resembling most properly for all the world, those ships which have these goodly inscriptions in their poulders, *Happy voyages, Luckie Navigation, Saving Providence, and Remedy against all dangers*: and yet the same nevertheles be coiled in the Seas, split upon the Rocks, cast away and drowned. *Iolaus*, as the Poet *Euripides* hath feigned, by a certain prayer that he made unto the gods, of a feeble and decrepit old man, became all of a sudden a young and lusty gallant, ready for to fight a battel: but the Stoicks wife man, who longer ago then yesterday, was most hateful, wretched and wicked, all at once to day is changed into a good and virtuous person: he is of a ravelled, pale, lean and poor silly aged man, and as the Poet *Æschylus* saith,

*Who suffereth pangs in flank, in reins and back,  
With painful cramps, stretcht as upon a wrack,*

become, a lovely, fair, beautiful, and personable youth, pleasant both to God and man. *Minerva* in *Homer* rid *Ulysses* from his wrinkles, his baldness, and ill-favored deformity, that he might appear full of favor and amiable: but this wife man of their making, albeit withered old age leave not his body, but contrarywise increaseth still and grow more and more with all the difcommodities that follow it, continuing still for example sake, bunch backed, if he were to before, one eyed, and toothless, yet forthwith is not for all this, foul, deformed and ill-favored. For like, as by report, the Battelliers from good and sweet odors, seeking after sinking sent, even to the Stoicks love (conversing with the most foul ill-favored and deformed, after that by their sapience and wisdom they be turned into all beauty and favor) departeth and goeth from them. With these Stoicks, he who in the morning haply was most wicked, will prove in the evening a right honest man: and who went to bed foolish, ignorant, injurious, outrageous, intemperate, yea a very slave, a poor and needy begger, will rise the morrow morning, a King, rich, happy, chaste, just, firm and constant, nothing at all subject to variety of opinions: not for that he hath all on a sudden put forth a beard, or become under grown, as in a young and tender body: but rather engendered in a weak, soft, effeminate and inconstant soul, a perfect minde, perfect understanding, sovereign prudence, a divine disposition, comparable to the gods, a

feited

feited and assured Science, nor wandering in opinions and an immutable and stedfast habitude: neither went that lewd wickedness of his away by little and little, but all at once (I may well near say) he was transfused from a most vile beast into a demy-god, a Daemon, or a very god indeed. For so soon once as a man hath learned vertue in the Stoicks School, he may say thus unto himself:

*With what thou wilt, and what thou list to crave,  
All shall be done; do thou but ask and have.*

This vertue brings riches, this carrieth with it royalty, this giveth good fortune, this makes men happy, finding in need of nothing, contented in themselves, although they have not in all the world so much as a single drachme of silver, or one grey groat. Yet are the fables of Poets devised with more probability and likelihood of reason: for never do they leave *Hercules* altogether destitute of necessities: but it seemeth that he hath with him always one living source or other, out of which there runneth evermore foison and plenty for himself and the company about him. But he who hath once gotten the Goat *Amalthea* by the head, and that plentiful horn of abundance which the Stoicks talk of, he is rich incontinently, and yet begged his bread and victuals of others; he is a King, although for a piece of money he teacheth how to resolve Syllogisms: he only possesseth all things, albeit he pay rent for his house, buyeth his meal and meet with the silver that many times he taketh up of the *Uffurer*, or cleaveth at their hands who have just nothing of their own to give. True it is indeed, that *Ulysses* the King of *Ithaca* begged alms, but it was because he would not be known; counterfeiting all that he could

*To make himself a Begger poor,  
Like one that went from doot to door.*

Whereas he that is come out of the Stoicks School, crying aloud with open mouth, I only am a King, I am rich, and none but I, is seen oftentimes at other men doors standing with this note,

*Give Hipponax a cloak, his naked corps to fold,  
For that I quake and shiver much for cold.*

## The Contradictions of Stoick Philosophers.

### The Summary.

**P**lutarck being of the Academick Self, directly contrary to the Stoicks, examineth in this Treatise the opinions of those his adversaries, and sheweth by proper testimonies out of their own writings, and naming of Chrysippus their principal Doctor, that there is nothing firm and certain in all their Doctrine, perswading and sitting to this end the chief points of all the parts of Philosophy, not binding himself precisely to any special order, but proposing matters according as they come into his remembrance, or were presented to his eyes. Moreover, in the recital of their repugnances and contradictions, he intermingleth certain expostitions, to aggravate the absurdity of this Self of his adversaries, and to withdraw the Reader from them: which is a very proper and singular manner of declaiming and disputing against inveterate errors, and such as have a great name in the world: for in shewing that those who are reputed most able and sufficient to teach and maintain them, know not what they say, and do confound themselves, is as much as to reproach any man who doth adhere unto them, with this imputation, that he is deprived of common sense, in receiving that for a certain verity, wherein their very masters are not well resolved, or admitting that which they profess, otherwise then they say.

## The Contradictions of Stoick Philosophers.

**F**irst above all things, I would have to be seen a conformity and accord between the opinions of men and their lives: for it is not so necessary, that the Orator, according as *Lyfias* saith, and the Law, should found the same note, as requisite that the life of a Philosopher be conformable and consonant to his words and Doctrine: for the speech of a Philosopher is a voluntary and particular Law which he imposeth upon himself, if it be so to men esteem, that Philosophy is (at no doubt it is) the profession of that which is serious, grave and of weighty importance, and not a game some sport, or vain and toyish prating, devised only for to gain glory. Now we see, that *Zeno* himself hath written much by way of disputation and discourse; *Cleanthes* likewise, and *Chrysippus* most of all, concerning the Politique Government of Commonwealth, touching rule and obedience, of judgment also and pleading at the bar: and yet look into all their lives throughout, you shall not finde that ever any of them were Captains and Commanders, neither Law-givers nor Senators, and Councillors of State, ne yet Orators or Adversaries pleading judicially in Court before the Judges; nay, they were not so much as employed in any War, bearing Arms, and performing Martial Service for the defence of they Country: you shall not finde (I say) that any of them was ever sent in embassy, or bestowed any publick largesse or donative to the people;

people but remained all the time of their life (and that was not short, but very long) in a strange and foreign Countrey, feeding upon rest and repose, as if they had tasted of the herb Lotus in *Homer*, and forgotten their native soil, where they spent their time in writing Books, in holding Discourses, and in walking up and down. Hereby it manifestly appeareth, that they lived rather according the sayings and writings of others, then answerable to that which themselves judge and confesse to be their duty, having passed the whole course of their life in that quiet repose, which *Epicurus* and *Hieronymus* so highly praise and recommend. And verily to prove this to be a truth, *Chrysippus* himself in his fourth book entitled, Of Lives, is of opinion, and so hath put down in writing, that a Scholastical life, to wit, that of idle Students, differeth not from the life of voluptuous persons. And to this purpose I think it not amiss to alledge the mans speech word for word: They (quoth he) who think that this Scholastical and idle life of Students even from the first beginning, is molt of all besetting and agreeable to Philosophers, in my conceit, seem much deceived weening as they do, that they are to Philosophize for their pastime or recreation, and so to draw out in length the whole course of their life at their book in their studies, which is as much as to say in plain terms, as to live at ease and in pleasure. Neither is this opinion of theirs to be hindered and dissembled; for many of them give out as much openly, howsoever others, and those not a few deliver the same more obscurely; and yet where is he who grew old and aged more in this idle Scholastical life, then *Chrysippus*, *Cleanthes*, *Diogenes*, *Zeno* and *Antipater*? who forsook and abandoned even their native Countreys, having no cause or occasion in the world to complain of or to be discontent; onely to this end, that they might lead their lives more sweetly at their pleasure, studying and disputing with ease, and letting out their girdle slack as they list themselves. To approve this this that I say, *Aristocreon* the Disciple of *Chrysippus*, and one of his familiar friends, having caused a Statue of brasse to be erected for him, set over it these elegant Verses in manner of an Epigram:

This Image *Aristocreon*  
erected fresh and new  
For *Chrysippus*, Academick knots  
who like an ax did new.

Lo, what manner of person was *Chrysippus*, an aged man, a Philosopher, one who praised the life of Kings, and of those who are conversant in weal publike, and he who thought there was no difference between the idle Scholastical life, and the voluptuous. And yet others among them, as many I mean, as deal in State affairs, are found to be more repugnant and contradictory to the resolutions of their own Sect: for they bear rule as chief Magistrates, they are Judges, they be Senators, and sein Counsel, they ordain and publish Laws, they punish Malefactors, they honor and reward those that do well: as if they were Cities indeed wherein they govern and manage the State; as if those were Senators, Counsellors, and Judges, who yearly always are by lot created, or otherwise, to such places: Captains and Commanders who are elected by the suffrages and voices of Citizens; and as if those were to be held good Laws which *Calisthenes*, *Lycurgus* and *Solon* made: and yet the same men they avow and maintain to have been wileless fools, and lewd persons. Thus you see, how albeit they administer the common-weal, yet they be repugnant to their own Doctrine.

In like manner *Antipater*, in his Book of the dissention between *Cleanthes* and *Chrysippus*, reporteth, that *Zeno* and *Cleanthes* would never be made Citizens of *Athens*, for fear forsooth lest they might be thought to offer injury to their own Countrey. Now if they herein did well, let *Chrysippus* go, and say we nothing of him that he did amiss, in causing himself to be enrolled and immatriculated in the number of Athenian Citizens: for I will not stand much upon this point, onely this I hold, that there is a strange and wonderful repugnancy in their deeds and actions, who reserve still the bare names of their native Countreys, and yet bereave the same of their very persons and their lives, converting so far off in foreign Lands: much like as if a man who hath cast off and put away his lawful wedded wife, should dwell, live and lie ordinary with another as his Concubine, yea, and beget children of her body, and yet will in no wise espouse her, and contract marriage with her, lest, forsooth, he might seem to do wrong and injury to the former. Furthermore, *Chrysippus* in his Treatise that he made of Rhetorick, writing thus, that a wife man will in such sort plead, make Orationes to the people, and deal in State-matters, as if riches, reputation and health were simply good things, testifieth hereby and confesseth, that his precepts and resolutions induce men not to go forth of doors, nor to intermeddle in Politick and Civil affairs, and so by consequence that their Doctrine and Precepts cannot fort well with practice, nor be agreeable unto the actions of this life.

Moreover, this is one of *Zeno's* Quodlibets or Positions, That we ought not to build Temples to the honor of the gods; for that a Temple is no such holy thing, nor so highly to be esteemed, considering it is the workmanship of Masons, Carpenters, and other Artificers: neither can any work of such Artizans be prized at any worth. And yet even they who avow and approve this as a wise speech of his, are themselves professed in the religious mysteries of those Churches; they mount up to the Castle, and frequent there the sacred Temple of *Minerva*; they adore the shrines and images of the gods; they adorn the Temple with Chaplets and Garlandes, notwithstanding they be the works of Masons, Carpenters, and such like Mechanical persons. And will these men seem indeed to reprove the Epicureans, as contrary to themselves, who denying that the gods be occupied or employed in the Government of the world, yet offer sacrifice unto them, when as they check and repute themselves much

much more in sacrificing unto the gods, within their temples and upon their altars, which they maintain that they ought not to stand at all, nor once to have been built?

*Zeno* putteth down and admitteth many vertues according to their severall differences, like as *Plato* doth, to wit, prudence, fortitude, temperance and justice; saying that they be all in very deed, and in nature interperable nor distinct asunder: howbeit in reason divers and different one from another. And again when he would seem to define them severally one after another, he saith, That fortitude is prudence in the execution of matters: justice is prudence in the distribution of things, &c. as if there were no more but one sole vertue, which according to divers relations, unto affairs and actions, seemeth to differ and admit distinction. So you see, that not *Zeno* alone seemeth to be repugnant unto himself in these matters, but *Chrysippus* also, who reproveth *Ariston* for saying, that all vertues are nothing else but the divers habitudes and relations of one and the same, and yet defendeth *Zeno* when he describeth each vertue in this wise by it self.

As for *Cleanthes* in his commentaries of nature, having set this down, that the vigour and firmness of things, is the illition, and smiting of fire, which if it be in the soul so sufficient, that it is able to perform the duties presented unto it, is called strength and power, he annexeth afterwards these words: And this very power and strength (quoth he) when as it is employed in such objects wherein man is to persist, and which he ought to contain, is called Continency; it in things to be endured and supported, then it is named Fortitude; if in estimation of worthiness and desert, beareth the denomination of Justice; if in choices or refusal, it carrieth the name of Temperance. Against him who was the author of this sentence.

Forbear thy sentence for to pass,  
and judgement see thou say,  
Untill such time as thou hast beard  
what parties both can say.

*Zeno* alledged such a reason as this on the contrary side. Whether the Plaintiff, who spake in the first place hath plainly proved his cause or no, there is no need at all to hear the second, for the matter is at an end already, and the question determined: or whether he hath not proved it, all is one, for it is even the same case, whether he that is cited be so stubborn as not to appear for to be heard, or if he appear, do nothing else but cavill and wrangle: so that prove he, or prove he not his cause, needeth it to hear the second pleid. And yet even he who made this Dilemma, and wrote against the Books of Policy and common wealth that *Plato* composed, taught his scholars how to assail and avoid such Sophistical arguments, yea, and exhorted them to learn Logic with all diligence, shewing the art which sheweth them how to perform the same. Howbeit a man might come upon him by way of objection in this manner: Certes, *Plato* hath either proved or else not proved those points which he handled in his Politicks: but whether he did or no, there was no necessity at all to write against him as you did; for it was altogether vain, needless, and superfluous. And even the time may be said of Sophistical arguments and cavillations.

*Chrysippus* is of opinion, that yong Scholars and students should first learn those arts which concern speech, as Grammar, Logick, and Rhetorick; in the second place Morall Sciences; in the third Naturall Philosophy; and after all these, in the last place, to hear the doctrine as touching Religion and the Gods: which being delivered by him in many passages of his writings, it shall be sufficient to alledge that only which he hath written thus word for word in the third book of his Lives. First and foremost (quoth he) it seemeth unto me, according to the doctrine of our ancients, that of Philosophicall speculations there be three kinds; Logically, as touching speech; Ethically, concerning manners; and Physically, belonging to the nature of things: of which, that which is respective unto speech ought to precede and be ranged first; secondly, that which treateth of manners; thirdly, that which handleth naturall causes. Now of these Physicall and naturall arguments, the last is that which treateth of God: and this is the reason that the Precepts and Traditions of divine matters and religion, they called *Naturalis*, as one would say, the very last and coming in the end. Howbeit, this treatise of the Gods, which by his saying ought to be set last, himself in the very same book, rageth above manner, and setteth before all other morall questions. For neither seemeth he to speak of the ends, nor of Justice, nor of good and evil things, nor of Marriage, nor of the nouriture and education of Children, ne yet of law nor of the government of the Common-wealth, in any sort; but as they who propole and publish decrees unto Cities and States, make some preamble before of good luck, or happy fortune; so he useth the preface of *Jupiter*, of fatal destiny, of Divine providence: also, that there being but one world, the same doth consist and is maintained by one mighty power. Which points no man doth firmly believe, nor can be resolutely perswaded in, unless he wade deeply into the profoundest secrets and discourses of all naturall Philosophy. But hearken, I beseech you, a little, to that which he saith of these matters, in his third book of the Gods: It is not possible (quoth he) to find out any other fountain, and originall beginning of Justice, than from *Jupiter* and common nature: for from thence it must needs be, that every such thing is derived, if that we mean to discourse of good things and evil. Again, in his treatise of naturall positions, there is no other way, or at leastwise not a better, of proceeding to the discourse of good things and bad, nor of vertues, nor of sovereign felicity, then from common nature, and administration of the world.

D d d Morcover

Moreover, as he goeth forward in another place, We are to annex and adjoyn herunto (quoth he) a treatise of good and evil things, considering there is not a better beginning thereof, nor yet a reference and relation more proper: neither is the speculation and science of nature in any other respect requisite or necessary to be learned, but only for to know the difference of good and evil. And therefore according to Chrysippus, this natural science both goeth before, and also followeth after moral things; or to say a truth at once in more expresse terms, it were a strange and difficult inversion of order, to hold, that it is to be placed after them, considering that without it were impossible to comprehend any of the other: and a very manifest repugnance it were to affirm, that science natural is the beginning of morals, which treateth of good and evil, and yet ordain nevertheless, that it should be taught not before, but after it. Now if any man say unto me, that Chrysippus in his book intitled, *The use of speech*, hath written, that he who first learneth Logick, I mean the knowledge and Philosophy concerning words, ought not altogether for to forbear the learning of other parts, but that he ought to take a taste of them, according as he the means thereto, well may he speak a truth, but withal, confirm he shall my accusation still of his fault: for he fighteth with himself, in ordering one while that a man should learn in the last place and after all, the science that treateth of God, as if that were the reason why it was called *πρωτη*, which is as much as *prima*, that is to say, Final; another while teaching clean contrary, that the same is to be learned even with the very first, and at the beginning: for then farewell all order for ever, and welcome confusion, if we must learn all things huddled together at all times. But yet this is not the worst, for having set this down for a resolution: That the doctrine as touching good things and evil, ought to begin and proceed from the knowledge of God; yet, he will not have them who settle themselves and enter into the study of moral Philosophy, to take their beginning there: but that in learning this, to catch somewhat of that by the way, even as much as they have ease means to come by; and afterwards to repair from morall Philosophy unto Theologie, without which (he saith) there can be neither entrance nor progress in the knowledge of manners.

Moreover (he saith) that, To dispute of one and the same question, *pro & contra*, to and fro, he disalloweth not simply and in generality: but his advice is, to use the same so warily and with such discretion, as otherwhiles orators do in pleading, when they alledge the reasons of their adversaries, not to uphold and maintain the same, but only for to refute & disprove that likelihood and probability which they pretend: For otherwise (quoth he) thus to do, is the manner of those Skepticks, who be alwaies doubtful, and withhold their consent in every thing: a meer flint that serveth their turn for whatsoever they hold: but as for those who would work and establish in mens hearts, a certain science, according to which they might undoubtedly guide and conduct themselves, they ought to found and search the contrary, and from point to point by stepmeale, to direct their novices newly entered, even from the beginning to the very end: wherein there falleth out otherwhiles opportunity to make mention of contrary sentences and opinions, for to refute and resolve that which might seem to have appearance of truth; as the manner is in pleading before Judges: for these be the very words and proper terms that he useth. Now what an absurd and impertinent a thing it is, that Philosophers should think they were to put down the contrary opinions of other Philosophers, and not withal, their reasons and arguments, but only as advocates pleading at the bar to disable and weaken their proofs, and so to weary their adversaries; as if disputation were only to win the honour of victory, and not to find out a truth: we have elsewhere discoursed against him sufficiently. But that himself not here and there in his disputations, but oftentimes and in many places hath confirmed with might and main, yea, and with so great asseveration and contention, contrary resolutions, unto his own opinions, that it were a right hard matter for any man to discern, which of them he approveth most, they themselves in some sort do say, who admire the subtilty of the man, and the vivacity of his spirit, who also both think and stick not to affirm, that *Carnades* spake nothing of his own invention, but by the help and means of which arguments Chrysippus used to prove his own assertions, he returned the same contrariwise upon himself to confute his precepts, inso much as oftentimes in disputation he would, alluding to a verse in *Homer*, cry out aloud in the manner.

*Unhappy man, thus for to do:  
Thine own pure strength will work thy wo.*

as if he lay open and ministred great advantages and means against himself, to those who went about for to infringe and calumniate his opinions. But as touching those Treatises and discourses which he hath put forth, and set out against ordinary custom, his followers do so gloriously boast and joy, that they give out, if all the books of the Academicks that ever lived, were laid together, as they deserved not to be compared with that which Chrysippus wrote in calumniation of the senses: an evident sign either of their ignorance who say so, or else of their own blind self-love. Howbeit, certain it is, that afterwards being desirous to defend custome and the senses, he was found much inferior to himself, and the latter Treatise came far short of the former, and was nothing at all so pliny; in such sort as he is contradictory and repugnant to himself: whiles he alwaies prescribeth and willesh to confer and oppose contrary sentences, not as one patronizing any but making an ostentation that they be false: and afterwards sheweth himself to be a more vehement accuser, then a defender of his own proper sentences; and counselling others to take heed of repugnant

nant and contrary disputations, as those which distract and impeach their preception, himself is more studious and diligent to addresse such proofs as overthrow preception, than those which are to establish and confirm the same: and yet that he feared no lesse, he declareth plainly in the fourth book of his lives, where he writeth thus: We are not rashly nor without good respect and advisement to admit and allow repugnant disputations and contrary opinions to be propounded, nor to answer those probable arguments which are brought against true sentences; but therein we must warily go to work, and carry our selves so, as fearing alwaies lest the hearers being thereby distracted and diverted, let go this apprehension and conception, and be not of sufficient capacity to comprehend their solutions, but use such a feeble sort, as that their comprehensions be ready to falter and shake, considering that even they who customably comprehend sensible objects, and other things which depend of senses, quickly forget the same, being distracted as well by Megarian interrogatories, as by others more forcible, and in greater number. Now would I gladly demand of these Stoicks, wether they think these Megarian interrogatories more puffed than those which Chrysippus hath written in six books; or rather Chrysippus himself would be asked the question. For mark I pray you, what he hath written of the Megarian disputation in his book intitled: The use of speech, after this manner: Such a thing as befall in the disputation between *Sitilo* and *Menedemus*, both renowned personages for their learning and wisdom, and yet the whole manner of their arguing is now turned to their reproach and plain mockery: as if their arguments were either very grosse, or else too captious and sophistical: and yet good Sinneless arguments which it pleaseth you to scorn and teame the reproach of those who make such interrogatories, as containing in them notorious lewdnesse, you fear lest they should divert any from preception. And even your own self writing so many books as you do against custome whereunto you have adjoynded whatsoever you could devise and invent, labouring to surmount and surpass *Arcesilaus*: did you never expect and look to feare and terrify any of the Readers that should light upon them? For Chrysippus verily useth not only slender and naked arguments in disputing against custome, but as if he were an advocate pleading at the bar, moveth affections being passionate himself, breaking out oftentimes into these termes of giving the fool, and imputing vanity and foolishnesse; and to the end that he might leave no place for contradiction at all, but that he delivereth repugnances and speaker's contraries, thus hath he written in his Positions Natural. A man may very well, when he hath once perfectly comprised a thing, argue a little on the contrary side, and apply that difference which the matter it self doth afford: yea and otherwhiles, when he doth comprehend neither the one nor the other, discourse of either of them *pro & contra* as much as the cause will yield. Alas that treatise of his concerning the use of speech, after he had finished, we ought not to use the power and faculty of disputation, no more then arms or weapons, in things that tend to no purpose, and when the ease requireth it not, he addeth soon after these words: For we ought to employ the gift of reason and speech to the finding out of truth, and such things as resemble it: and not contrariwise howsoever many there be that are wont so to do. And peradventure by these Many, he meant those Academicks, who ever doubt and give no assent to any thing: and they verily, for that they comprehend neither the one nor the other, do argue on both parts to and fro, that it is perceptible: as if by this only or special means the truth yielded a certain comprehension of it self, if there were nothing in the world comprehensible. But you who excuse and blame them, writing the contrary to that which you conceive as touching custome, and exhorting others to do the same, & that with an affectionate defence, do plainly confesse, that you use the force of speech and eloquence, in things not only unprofitable, but also hurtfull, upon a vain ambitious humour of shewing your ready wit, like to some young Scholar.

These Stoicks affirm, that a good deed, is the Commandment of the Law, and Sin the prohibition of the Law: and therefore it is that the Law forbiddeth Fools and lewd Folk to do many things, but prescribeth them nothing; for that indeed they are not able to do ought well. And who seeth not that impossible it is for him who can do no virtuous act, to keep himself from Sin and Transgression? Therefore they make the Law repugnant to it self, if it command that which to perform is impossible, and forbid that which men as not able to avoid. For he that is not able to live honestly, cannot chuse but bear himself dishonestly; and whosoever he be, that cannot be Wise, must of necessity become a Fool: and even them selves do hold that those Lawes which are prohibitive, say the same thing, when they forbid one, and command likewise another. For that which saith, thou shalt not steal, saith verily the same, to wit, Steal not; but it forbiddeth withal to steal; and therefore the Law forbiddeth Fools and lewd Persons nothing, for otherwise it should command them somewhat. And thus they say that the Physician biddeth his Apprentise or Chyrurgion to cut or to cauterize, without adding thereto these words, handsomely, moderately, and in good time. The Musician likewise commandeth his scholar to sing or play upon the Harp a lesson, without putting thereto, in time, accord and good measure. Howbeit, they punish and chastise those that do amiss and contrary to the rules of art, for that they were wilful and enjoyed to do the thing well, but they did it ill. And even to a wife man commanding his servant to say or do a thing, if he punish him for doing it untowardly, out of season, and not as he ought, certain it is that he commanded him to perform a good duty, and not a mean and indifferent action. Now if wife men com and fools and lewd persons to do things indifferent, what should hinder them but that the commandments of the lawes may be semblable.

Moreover, that infinit or naturall motion which is called *ψυχη*, according to him, is nothing else but the reason of man, inciting him to do a thing, as himself hath written in his treatise of the Law, *Ergo*, that Diversion, contrariwise called *Απαισις*, can be nothing else but reason withdrawing a man from the doing of a thing: and therefore that inclination is a reasonable inclination: and this wary caution, is as much as the reason of a wife man, forbidding him to do a thing: for to beware, and to take heed, is the part and property of wife men and not foolles. If then the reason of a wife man be one thing, and the Law another, wife men have this wary caution repugnant unto the Law: but in case Law, and the reason of a wife man be both one, it will be found that the Law forbiddeth wife men to do those things, which they doubt and be afraid of. To foolish and wicked persons (quoth *Chrysippus*) there is nothing profitable, neither hath such an one, use or need of ought. Having delivered this sentence in his first book of perfect duties or offices, he commeth afterwards and saith, that utility or commodiousness and grace pertain and reach unto mean and indifferent things, whereof according to the Stoicks doctrine there is not one profitable: and more then that, he saith there is nothing proper, nothing meet and convenient for a foolish lewd man: and so by consequence it followeth upon these words; there is nothing strange, nothing unfitting for a wife and honest man, like as nothing fit and familiar for a lewd fool: for as goodness is proper to one, so is lewdness to the other. How cometh it then to pass that he maketh our heads to ask again, with telling us to forget in all his books as well of naturall Philosophy as morall, that presently from our nativity and birth, we be affectionate to our selves, to our proper members, and to the illuse defending from us? and in the first book of Justice he saith, that even wild beasts are propence and affected unto their young, according as their need and necessity requires, all fave filhes: for their young fry are nourished by themselves. But there is no sense, where is no sensible object, nor appropriation, where nothing is proper and familiar: for surely this appropriation seemeth to be the sense and perception of that which is familiar. And this opinion is conformable to their principles.

Moreover, *Chrysippus*, albeit in divers places he write many things contrarily, yet he accordeth to this sentence manifestly, that there is no one vice greater, nor sin more grievous than another; as also reciprocally, there is not one vertue more excellent, nor one virtuous deed which (they call perfect duty) better than another, considering that he hath this in the first book of Nature: that like as it becometh *Jupiter* well, to magnific and glorify himself and his life, as also if we may so say, to bear his head aloft, highly to esteem his own greatness, and to speak big, considering he leadeth a life worthy of grand eloquence and haughty speech: even so it becometh and becometh all honest men to do the like, considering that in no respect they be inferior to *Jupiter*. And yet himself again in the third book of Justice saith, that those who affirm pleasure to be the end and sovereign good of man, overthrow Justice; but whosoever say it is simply good, do not destroy Justice. And the very words which he useth, be these: Peradventure (quoth he) it may be, that if we leave unto Pleasure this attribute, To be simply and only good, although it be not the end of all good things, and that honesty and vertue is of the kind of those things which be eligible for themselves: haply, by this means we may save Justice, in esteeming Honesty and Justice to be a more perfect and absolute good thing than is Pleasure: but in case it be so, that the thing only which is honest is good; he erreth much who affirmeth that pleasure is good; howbeit, lesse then he who should say, that it is the end of all good things; for that as the one doth abolish and destroy utterly all Justice, the other doth so preserve and maintain it: for according to the latter of the twain, all human society perisheth, whereas the former reserveth yet some place for bonny and civil humanity. I let pass to relate what he saith in the booke entituled, Of *Jupiter*, namely, that vertues good, that they also pass, because I would not be thought to lie at vantage, and to catch at words; howsoever *Chrysippus* himself in this kind of reprehension dealeth bitterly with *Plato* and other Philosophers, for taking hold of words: but whereas he forbiddeth to praise all that is done virtuously, he giveth us to understand, that there is some difference in duties and offices. Now this is the very text in his treatise of *Jupiter*. For albeit virtuous acts be commendable, yet we are not to infer thereupon and say, that we ought to commend all that seemeth to proceed from vertue, as namely, to praise for a valliant act, the stifte stretching out of the finger: or for temperance and continency, the abstinence from an old trot, who hath one foot already in her grave; or for prudence, to understand aright and without error, that there will not make four: for he that went in hand to praise and commend a man for such things as these, should shew himself to be very bald and absurd even in the highest degree. And as much as this in a manner writeth he in the third book of the gods: For I think verily (quoth he) that the praises of such matters be impertinent and absurd, although they seem to depend of vertue, as namely, to forbear an old trot now at the pits brink, or to abide a file-biting. What other accuser should he look for then of his opinions, but himself: for if it be so, that he is absurd who commendeth these things, then must he be thought much more absurd, who supposeth each one of these virtuous deeds to be not only great, but also most magnificent. For it be a valliant act to endure the biting of a file; & likewise the part of a chaste & continent person, to abstain from carnal dealing with an old woman ready to drop into her graves: then it makes no matter, but it is all one, to praise an honest man as well for one thing as another. Moreover, in his second book of Friendship, when as he giveth a precept, that we ought not to dissolve amities for every fault or defect, he useth these very termes: For there be faults (quoth he) which we must overpass quite, & make no stay at them; other there be again, whereat we should a little stand, and take offence; and others besides, which require more chastisement; but some there are which we must think sufficient to break friendship for ever. And more then all this, in the same book he saith, that we

we ought to converse and be acquainted with some more, and with others lesse according as they be our friends more or lesse, which difference and diversity extendeth very far, inasmuch as some are worthy of such an amity, others of a greater: some deserve thus much trust and confidence, others more than it: and so it is in other matters sensible. And what other is his drift in all these places, but to put a great difference between those things, for which friendships are engendered? And yet in his Book of Honesty, to shew that there is nothing good, but that which is honest, he delivereth these words: a good thing is eligible and to be desired: that which is eligible and desirable, is also acceptable: that which is acceptable, is likewise commendable: and that which is commendable, is honest withal. Again a good thing is joyous and acceptable: joyous is venerable, & venerable is honest. But these speeches are repugnant to himself: for be it, that all that is good were laudable (and then cholly to forbear for to touch an old riveled woman, were a commendable thing) or say that every good thing were neither venerable, nor joyous and acceptable, yet his reason falleth to the ground: for how can it be that others should be thought frivolous and absurd, in praying any for such things, and himself not worthy to be mocked and laughed at, for taking joy and pleasing himself in such ridiculous toys as these?

Thus you see how he sheweth himself in most part of his writings; and yet in his disputations which he holdeth against others, he is much more careless to be contrary and repugnant to himself: for in his Treatise which he made, as touching exhortation, reproving *Plato* for saying, that it was not expedient for him to live at all, who is not taught, nor knoweth not how to live, he writeth in these very Terms: This speech of his (quoth he) is both contradictory and repugnant to it self, and besides, hath no force nor efficacy at all to exhort: for first and foremost in shewing us that it were expedient for us, not to live at all, and giving us as it were counsel to die, he exhorteth us to any thing rather than to the practice or study of philosophy, because it is not possible for a man to philosophize, unless he live: neither can he become wise, survive he never so long if he lead an idle and ignorant life. And a little after he saith further: That it is as meet and convenient also even for lewd and wicked persons to remain alive. But I care not much to set down his very words: First of all, like as vertue barely in itself considered, hath nothing in it, for which we should desire to live: even so vice hath as little, for which we ought to leave this life. What need we now turn over other books of *Chrysippus*, and drip leaf by leaf, to prove how contrary and repugnant he is to himself: for even in these which we now cite and alledge, he cometh out otherwhiles with this saying of *Antisthenes*, for which he commendeth him, namely, that a man is to be provided either of wit to understand, or else of a wile to under-stand himself: as also this other verse of *Tyrtæus*:

*The bounds of vertue first come nigh,  
Or else make chaff before to die.*

And what other meaning is there of these words, but this, that it is more expedient for foolish and lewd persons to be out of the world, than to live: and in one passage, seeming to correct *Theognis*: He should not (quoth he) have said *ἄνθρωπος εὐνοῖα, &c.*

*A man from poverty to flee,  
(O Cyrus) ought himself to cast  
Headlong from rocks most steep and high,  
Or into sea as deep and vast;*

But rather thus, *ἄνθρωπος φρόνητος, &c.*

*A man from sin and vice to flee, &c.*

What other things else seemeth he to do, than to condemn and scrape out of other mens writings, the same things, propositions and sentences, which himself hath inferred in his own books? For he reproveheth *Plato* when he proveth and sheweth, that it is better not to live at all, than to lead a life in wickedness or ignorance: and in one breath he giveth counsel to *Theognis* to set down in his Poetic, that a man ought to fling himself down headlong into the deep sea, or to break his neck from some high rock for to avoid his wickedness. And praising as he did *Antisthenes* for sending fools and wicked folk to an halter wherewith to hang themselves; he blamed him nevertheless who said, that vice was a sufficient cause, wherefore we should shorten our lives. Moreover in these books against *Plato* himself, concerning Justice, he leapech directly at the very first into a discourse as touching the gods and saith: That *Cephalus* did not divert himself from evil doing, by the fear of the gods: affirming moreover, that the discourse which he made as touching divine vengeance, might easily be infringed and refuted, for that of it self it mislitteth many arguments and probable reasons on the contrary side; as if the same resembled for all the world the fabuloustales of *Acco* and *Alphibis*, wherewith women are wont to scare their little children; and to keep them from doing shrewd turns. Thus deriding, and traducing, backbiting *Plato*, he passeth elsewhere, and in many places else alledgeth these verses out of *Euripides*:

*Well, well, though some this doctrine do deride,  
Be sure, in heaven with other gods beside,  
Sits Jupiter, the deeds of men who see,  
And will in time revenged surely be.*

Unhappily, in the first booke of Justice, when he had alledged these verses here out of *Hesiodus*, then *Saturnes* some, god *Jupiter*, great plagues from heaven did send, Even dearth and death, both which, of all the people made an end.



he faith, that the gods proceed in this wife, to the end that when the wicked be thus punished, others also advertised and taught by their example, might beware how they commit the like, or at leastwise sin less.

What should I say moreover, how in this Treatise of justice, having affirmed, that those who hold pleasure to be good, but not the sovereign end of good, may in some sort withal preserve and maintain justice, for, so much he hath put down in these very terms: For haply, admitting pleasure to be good, although not the supreme good or the end: and honestly to be of the kind of those things, which are eligible and to be desired for their own sake, we may by that means save justice, while we permit and allow that which is honest and just, to be a greater good than pleasure. Having (I say) delivered the same also in his books of pleasure: yet in his Treatise against *Plato*, reproving him for raising health in the number of good things, he affirmeth, that not only justice, but also magnanimity, temperance, and all other virtues are abolished and perish, in case we hold that either pleasure, or health, or any other thing whatsoever, can be numbered and reputed among good things, unless the same be honest. Now as touching the apologic or answer that may be made in defence of *Plato*, I have elsewhere written against *Chrysippus*: but even in this very place there is manifestly to be seen, a repugnancy and contradiction against himself: considering that one while he faith, that justice may stand well enough, if a man suppose pleasure joined with honesty to be good: and another while contrariwise, he findeth fault withall those, who repute any thing else to be good, but only that which is honest: as if thereby they abolish and overthrow all virtues. And because he would leave no means at all to falve and save his contradictions, writing of justice against *Aristotle*, he challengeth him for untruth in that he affirmeth, that if pleasure were granted to be the sovereign good, both justice were overthrown, and therewith also every virtue besides. For this is certain (quoth he) that those who are of this opinion, do indeed abolish justice: howbeit I see no let why other virtues may not stand, if not those which be of themselves expetible, yet such at leastwise as be good and vertuous really. And thereupon he proceedeth presently to name them every one severally. But it were not amiss to rectifie his own words, as he delivered them: For suppose (quoth he) that by this discourse and reason, Pleasure seem the very end of all good things, yet we are not to infer hereupon, that all is comprised under it: and therefore we must say, that neither any virtue is to be desired, nor vice to be shunned for itself, but all these things are to be referred unto a scope and mark proposed: and yet in the mean time what should hinder, but that Fortitude, Prudence, Continence, Patience, and other such virtues, may be good and expetible, like as their contraries bad and to be avoided. What man therefore was there ever, in his speeches and disputations more rash and audacious, than he? Considering that he charged the two Princes of Physophers with imputations: the one for abolishing all virtue, in that he confessed not that only to be good which is honest: and the other, in that if pleasure were supposed, and set down to be the end of good things, he thought not that all virtues except only justice, might subsist and be maintained? what a wonderful liberty, and monstrous licentiousness rather is this, in discouering of one and the same subject matter, to say and reprove that in *Aristotle*, which he setteth down himself: and afterwards in accusing *Plato*, to subvert and undo the very same? And yet in his demonstrations, as touching Justice, he affirmeth expressly that every perfect duty, is a lawful deed and a just action. Now, whatsoever is performed by Continence, by Patience, by prudence, or by Fortitude, is a perfect duty, ergo it followeth that it is likewise a lawful action. How chanceth it then that he leaveth not justice for them, in whom he admitteth Prudence, Continence, and valour, considering that all the acts which they perform according to these virtues, be perfect duties, and by consequence just and lawful operation?

Whereas *Plato*, in a certain place hath written, that injustice being a certain intestine sedition and corruption of the soul, never casteth off and loseth her power, even in those who have it within them: for the cause that a wicked man to fight with himself, the troubleth, vexeth, and tormenteth him. *Chrysippus* reproving this assertion of his, faith, that it was falsely and absurdly spoken, that any one could do wrong or injury to himself: For (quoth he) all injury and outrage must needs be to another: but afterwards forgetting himself and what he had said, in that Treatise of his entituled, The demonstrations of Justice, he affirmeth, that whosoever doth injustice, wrongeth himself, and in offering injury to another, doth himself wrong, in that he is the very cause why himself transgresseth the laws: whereas in unworthily he hurteth and woundeth his own person. Lo what he said against *Plato*, discoussing that injustice could not be against a mans self, but against another: For to be particularly and privately unjust, there must (quoth he) be many such as speak contrary one unto another: and otherwise this word injustice is taken as if it were amongst many that are, in such sort injuriously affected one to another: whereas no such matter can properly and truly agree to one alone, but in as much as it is so disposed and affected to another. But contrary to all this, in his demonstrations he argueth and reasoneth thus, to prove that the unjust man doth wrong and injury to himself: The law (quoth he) followeth expressly, to be the author or cause of transgression; but to commit injustice is a transgression: he therefore who causeth himself to do injury, transgresseth the law of himself. Now he that transgresseth against any one, doth him wrong and injury: he therefore who wrongeth any other whomsoever, doth injury to himself. Again, sin is of the kind of hurts and damages, that are done; but every man that sinneth, offendeth and sinneth against himself: and therefore, whosoever sinneth, hurteth also and endamageth himself unworthily; and if he do so, then by consequence he must needs wrong

wrong himself. Furthermore, thus also he reasoneth: He that suffreth hurt and damage by another, woundeth and offendeth himself unworthily: and what is that else but to do wrong and injury? he therefore that receiveth injury of any other whatsoever, wrongeth his own self. That the doctrine of good things and evil (which himself bringeth in and approveth) he faith, is most accordant unto mans life, yea, and connexed as much as any thing else with those prenotions and anticipations, which by nature are inbred and ingenerate in us: for, so much hath he delivered in his third book of Exhortations: but in the first book he affirmeth quite contrary, that this doctrine doth divers and withdraw a man from all things else, as if they were of no moment, nor helpful and effectual any way to the attaining of happiness and soveraign felicity. See how he accordeth herein with himself, when he affirmeth that doctrine of his which plucketh us away from life, from health, from indolence and integrity of senses; and teacheth besides that whatsoever we crave in our prayers at Gods hands, concern us not at all nor appertain unto us, to be most accordant unto humane life, and the common prenotions and inbred anticipations of knowledge above said. But to the end that no man might denie that he is repugnant and contrary to himself, loe what he faith in his third book of justice. This is (quoth he) that by reason of the surpassing grandure and beauty of our sentences, those matters which we deliver, seem fained tales and devised fables, exceeding mans power, and far beyond humane nature, how can it be that any man should more plainly confess, that he is at war with himself, than he doth, who faith that his propositions and opinions, are so extravagant and transcendent, that they resemble comets tails, and for their excellency surmount the condition and nature of man: and yet forspeak for all this, that they accord and agree passing well with humane life, yea and come nearest unto the said inbred prenotions and anticipations that are in us.

He affirmeth that the very essence and substance of felicity, is vice; writing and firmly maintaining in all his books of moral and natural philosophy, that to live in vice, is as much as to live in misery and wretchedness: but in the third book of Nature, having said before that it were better and more expedient to live a senseless fool, yea though there were no hope that ever he should become wiser, than not to live at all, he addeth afterwards thus much, For there be such good things in men, that in some sort the very evil things go before, and are better than the indifferent in the midst between. As for this, how he hath written elsewhere, that there is nothing expedient and profitable in fool, and yet in this place setteth down in plain terms, that it is expedient to live foolish and senseless, I am content to overpass; but seeing he faith now that evil things go before, and are better than the indifferent or mean (which with them of his sect are neither good nor ill) surely it is as much as if he affirmed that evil things are better than things not evil: and all one, as to say that to be wretched, is more expedient than not to be wretched: and so by that means, he is of opinion, that not to be miserable is more unprofitable than to be miserable; and if it be more unprofitable, than also it must be more hurtful and damagable. But being desirous in some sort to mollifie this absurdity, and to save this fore, he subnexeth as touching evil things, these words: My meaning is not (quoth he) that they should go before and be preferred, but reason is the thing wherewith it is better to live, although a man should ever be a fool, than not to live at all. First and foremost then, he calleth vice an evil thing, as also whatsoever doth participate of vice and nothing else. Now is vice reasonable, or nether to speak more properly, reason delinquent: so that to live with reason, if we be fools and void of wisdom, it is it else, but to live with vice: now to live as fools, is all one as to live wretched. Wherein is it then, and how cometh it about, that this should go before mean and indifferent things? for it was not admitted that happy life should go before misery: neither was it ever any part (say they) of *Chrysippus* his meaning to range and count among good things, To remain alive; no more than among bad, To depart this life: but he thought that these things were of themselves indifferent, and of middle nature; in which regard otherwhiles it is meet for happy men to leave this life, and for wretched to continue alive. And what greater contrariety can there be, as touching things eligible or refuseable, than to say that for them who are happy in the highest degree, it is fit and becoming to forsake and forsake the good things that be present, for want of some one thing that is indifferent? And yet *Chrysippus* is of this mind, that no indifferent thing is of the own nature to be desired or refused: but that we ought to chuse that only which is good, and to shun that alone which is bad: and according to their opinion, it comes to pass, that they never divert their designments or actions unto the pursuit of things desirable, nor the avoidance of things refuseable; but another mark it is that they those and aim at, namely, at those things which they neither either nor chuse, and according thereto, they live and die. *Chrysippus* avoweth and confesseth, that there is a great difference between good things and bad, as possibly may be; as needs there must, in case it be true, that as the one sort doth cause those in whom they are, to be exceeding happy, so the other, extreme wretched and miserable. Now in the first book of the end of good things, he faith that as well good things as bad, be sensible; for these be his very words. That good and evil things be perceptible by sense, we must of necessity acknowledge upon these arguments: for not only the very passions indeed of the mind, together with their parts and several kinds, to wit, sadness, fear, and such like, be sensible; but also man may have a sense of theft, adultery, and sensible sins; yea and of folly, of cowardice, and in one word, of all other vices, which are in number not a few: and not only joy, beneficence, and other dependences of vertuous offices, but also prudence, valour, and the rest of the virtues, are object to the sense. But to let pass all other absurdities contained in these words, who will not confess, but that there is a meer contradiction in that which they delivered, as touching one that becomes a wife man, and

and knows not thereof? for, considering that the present good is sensible, and much different from that which is evil, that one possibly should of a wicked person prove to be virtuous, and not know thereof, and not have sense of virtue being present, but to think that vice is still within him; how can this otherwise be, but most absurd? for either no man can be ignorant and out of doubt, whether he hath all virtues together; or else he must confess, that there is small difference and of the same hard to be discerned, between vice and virtue, felicity and infelicity, a right honest life, and a most dishonest, in case a man should pass from the one to the other, and possess one for the other, without ever knowing it.

One work he wrote, entituled, *Of lives*, and the same divided into four Books: in the fourth whereof, he saith, That a wife man medleth not with great affairs, but is occupied in his own business only, without being curious to look into other mens occasions: his very words to this purpose, be these; For min own part, of this opinion I am, that a prudent man gladly avoideth a stirring life, intermedleth little, and in his own matters only: for to deal simply in a mans own affairs, and to enter into little business in the world, be both alike commendable parts, and the properties of civil and laudable persons. And in a manner the same speeches or very like thereto, he hath delivered in the third Book of such things as be expetible, and to be chosen for themselves, in these terms: For in truth (quoth he) it seemeth, that the quiet life should be without danger, and in perfect security, which few or none of the vulgar sort are able to comprehend and understand. Wherein first and foremost, it is evident, that he cometh very near to the error of *Epicurus*, who in the government of the world disavoweth divine Providence: for that he would have God to rest in repose, idle, and not employed in any thing. And yet *Chrysippus* himself, in his first book of *Lives* saith: That a wife man willingly will take a kingdom upon him, yea, and think to make his gain and profit thereby: and if he not able to reign himself, yet he will at leastwise converse and live with a king, yea, go forth with him to war, like such as *Hydantyrus* the Scythian was, and *Leacon* of *Pontus*. But I will set down his own words, that we may see whether, like as of the treble and base strings, there ariseth a consonance of an eight: for therelike an accord in the life of a man, who hath chosen to live quietly without doing ought, or at leastwise to intermeddle in few affairs, yea, and yet afterwards accompanie the Scythians riding on horseback, and manageth the affairs of the kings of *Bosphorus* upon any occasion of need that may be presented? For as touching this point (quoth he) that a wife man will go into warlike expeditions with princes, live, and converse with them, we will consider again therelike hereafter; being as it is, a thing that as some upon the like arguments imagine not, so we for the sensible reasons admit and allow. And a little after: Not only with those who have proceeded well in the knowledge of virtue, and been sufficiently instructed and trained up in good manners, as were *Hydantyrus* and *Leacon* above said. Some there be who blame *Calisthenes* for that he passed over the seas to king *Alexander* into his camp, in hope to rectifie the city *Olynthus*, as *Aristotle* caused the city *Sagras* to be repaired, who highly commend *Ephorus Xenocrates* and *Menedemus*, who rejected *Alexander*: But *Chrysippus* driveth his wife man by the head forward, for his gain and profit, as far as to the city *Panticapeum*, and the deserts of *Scythia*. And that this is (say) for his gain and profit be shewed before, by setting down three principal means, becoming a wife man for to practise and seek his gain by: the first by a kingdom, and the beneficence of kings; the second by his friends; and the third besides these, by teaching literature: and yet in many places he wearieth us with citing this verse of *Euripides*:

For what need mortal men take pain?  
Only for things in number & train.

But in his books of *Nature* he saith: That a wife man if he have lost the greatest riches that may be, esteemeth the loss no more than it is were but a single denier of silver, or one grey goat. Howbeit, him whom he hath there so highly extolled and puffed up with glory, here he taketh down and abaseth as much, even to make him a meer mercenary pedant, and one that is fain to teach a school: for he would have him to demand and exact his salary, sometime before hand of his scholar, when he enters into his school; and otherwhile after a certain prefixed time of his schooling is come and gone: And this (quoth he) is the honestest and more civil way of the twain; but the other is the furer, namely, to make him pay his money aforehand; for that delay and giving attendance, is subject to receive wrong and fultain loss: and thus much he uttereth in these very terms: Those teachers that be of the wiser sort, call for their schoolage and minervals of their scholar, not all after one manner, but diversly: a number of them, according as the present occasion requireth, who promise not to make them wife men, and that within a year; but undertake to do what lies in them, within a set time agreed upon between them. And soon after, speaking of his wife man: He will (quoth he) know the best time: when to demand his pension, to wit, whether inconveniently upon the entrance of his scholar, as the most part do; or to give day, and set down a certain time; which manner of dealing is more subject to receive injury, howsoever it may seem more honest and civil. And how can a wife man, tell me now, be a despiser of money, in case he make a contract and bargain at a price to receive money, for delivering virtue; or if he do not deliver it, yet require his salary nevertheless, as if he had performed his part fully? Either how can he be greater than to sustain a loss and damage, if it be so that he stand so strictly upon this point, and be so wary, that he receive no wrong by the payment of his wages? For surely no man is said to be injured, who is not hurt and endamaged: and therefore how ever otherwise he hath flatly denied, that a wife man could receive wrong; yet in this book he saith, that this manner of dealing, is exposed to loss and damage.

In his book of *Common-wealth*, he affirmeth, that his citizens will never do any thing for pleasure, nor nor address and prepare themselves therefore, prailing highly *Euripides* for these verses:

We need not men but for two things, only swink?  
Bread for to eat, and water there to drink.

And soon after, he proceedeth forward, and praiseth *Diogenes*, for abusing himself, by forcing his nature to pass from him in the open street, and saying withal to the cits: that stood by: Oh, that I could shake hunger as well from my belly. What reason then is there, in the self same books to commend him for rejecting pleasure, and withal for desiring his own body as he did, so beastly in the sight of the whole world, and that for a little filthy pleasure? In his books of *Nature*, having written that nature had produced and brought forth many living creatures, for beauty only, as delighting and taking pleasure in such lovely variety, and therewith having adorned moreover, a most strange and absurd speech, namely, that the Peacock was made for his tails sake, and in regard of the beauty thereof: plain contrary to himself, in his books of *Common-wealth*, he reproveh very sharply those who keep *Peacocks* and *Nightingales*, as if he would makes laws quite contrary to the sovereign-law-giver of the world, deriding nature for taking delight, and employing as it were her study in bringing forth such creatures; unto which a wife man will give no place in his City and *Common-wealth*. For how can it otherwise be but monstrous and absurd, for to find fault with those who nourish such creatures, will it were wantonness to do so, in case he praise the divine providence for creating them? In his book of *Nature*, after he had shewed that wal-lice or panaisa serve in good stead to awaken us out of sleep; as also that mice advertise us to beware and take heed where we lay up, and bestow every thing; and that it is probable that nature taketh pleasure in producing fair creatures, and joyeth in diversity, he cometh out with this sentence word for word: This appeareth most evidently in the *Peacocks* tail: for here he signifieth that this bird was made for the tails sake, and not contrariwise; and so when the cock was once created, the hen followed after.

In his book of *Common-wealth* when he had said, that we are come almost to the painting of dung-hills, a little after: There be some (quoth he) who adorn and embellish their Cornfields, with vines climbing and growing upon trees, ranged directly in order, as also with myrtle rows; who nourish also *Peacocks* and *Doves*, yea and *Partridges*, for to hear them call and record unto them, as also *Nightingales* for their pleasant song. But I would gladly know of him, what he thinketh, and what his conceits in *Bees* and of *Honey*; for it would by good consequence follow, that he who had said, that *Punicas* and *Wal-lice* were profitably created; should also infer that *Bees* were made for no profit. Now if he allowed these a place in his *Common-wealth*, how is it that he forbiddeth his Citizens to cultivate those things which delight the ear. To be brief, like as he were very absurd who should sit and fault with those guests at a feast, who fell to eat Corns, and sweet banquetting conceits, to drink wine also, and to feed of delicate viands; and in the mean while commend the man who invited them to such dainties, and provided the same for them: even so, he who praising the divine Providence for creating delicate Fishes, deinty Birds, sweet Honey, and pleasant Wine, should reprove those who reject not these gifts, nor be content to eat bare bread, and drink sheer water, things that be ever at hand, and which are sufficient for our food, were as far out of reason, and makes no reckoning at all how he doth contradict himself, and what contrary opinions he holdeth.

Moreover, having in his *Treatise* of Exhortations said, that it was no reason, that folk should be blamed or blamed, for having to do carnally with their own mothers, daughters, or sisters; for eating any kind of meats whatsoever, for going directly out of the bed from a woman, or from a dead body and mortuary, unto attempt or sacrifice: And herein (quoth he) we ought to have a regard and get unto brute beasts, and taking example by them, to collect and conclude, that in all this, there is no absurdity at all, nor any thing against nature; for sily, and to the purpose very well a man may allege this, & compare the usage of other creatures, to these that they neither being coupled together nor engendering, nor dyng in temples, do pollute and defile the divinity. Contrary to all this, in the fifth book of *Nature* he saith: That the poet *Hesiodus* did very well to admonish and forbid us, not to piss into mountains, nor running rivers yea, and much rather to forbear to make water against an altar, or any statue of the gods: neither mattereth, or skilleth it all, if dogs, asses, and young children, do so, seeing they have no discretion, nor consideration in such things; and therefore it is very absurd to say in one place: That it is meet to consider the savage example of wild beasts; and in another, as absurd to allege the same.

Some Philosophers there be, who imagine a certain necessary motion from without, in the principal part of our soul; for that a man seemeth, to give the head and liberty unto divers inclinations, when he is forced to a thing by outward causes: which motion appeareth principally in doubtful and variable things; for when of two objects equal in power, and every way fsemblable, we are of necessity to chuse one, and there is no cause at all to incline us more to the one than to the other, this afore said necessary and adventitious puiance, coming in otherwise, and seizing upon the inclination of the soul, decideth all the doubt. Against these philosophers, *Chrysippus* disputing, as if they did violence to nature by the contrary, and by devising an effect without a cause: among sundry other examples, allegeth the cockal bone, the ballance, & many such like things which cannot fall, incline & bend now on the one side, & then on another, without some cause and difference, which is entirely in them, or else cometh from without forth: for this is generally held; that whatsoever is without cause can have no subsistence,

suppose, no more than meer hazard and chance: but in these adventitious & accessory motions, which they suppose, there are certain hidden irripituous causes which secretly move and induce our appetite & inclination even without our knowledge to one part or other: and this is that which he often repeateth in the most notable works that he hath put forth; but that which himself afterward delivereth clean contrary, because it is not exposed so openly to the view of the whole world, I will alledge *verbatim* as he hath delivered it: For in his Treatise concerning the office of a Judge, supposing for example sake, that two Curriers, who ran a course, were come both together unto the Goale, he demandeth what the Judge should do in this case; namely, whether it were lawfull for him, to give unto whether of them he pleased, the victorious branch of the Date tree? this being supposed withall, that they were both so inward and familiar with him, that he should rather gratifie them both, even out of his own in some sort, than seem to defraud either of them of the victorious Garland; which seemeth to be common to them both: Whether I say, it be lawfull for him to incline unto the one or to the other, and so favour the victory; as if they had drawn lots therefore: To incline (I say) casually, and without any reason; like as when two groats are presented unto us, every way seemable one to the other, we incline rather to that which we take. And in the sixth book of Duties, having said, that there be certain things that require no great ado, nor intensive consideration, he is of opinion, that in such cases we are to yield the choice into the casual propension of the mind, even as to the adventurous hazard of a lot: as for example; if the question be to make triall of the said two groats, one saith this is the better, and another that; but for that we are to take one of the twain without more ado and farther triall of their bitterness, we take that which comes first; and in another place he saith: In putting this to the adventure of a lot, it falleth out otherwhiles, that we hit upon the worse: in these places, the casual inclination of the mind to the first object, and the putting of the matter to the hazard of a lot, is nothing else, but to bring in a choice of things indifferent without any cause.

In the third book of Logick, having premised thus much, that *Plato*, *Aristotle*, and their successors and disciples, even as far as to *Polemon* and *Siraton*, had bestowed great study, and travelled much therein: but above all others, *Socrates*, with this addition, that a man would with wish so many and such noble personages to erre for company: he cometh in afterwards with these words: if they had (quoth he) treated and discoursed hereof curiously or by the way, a man haply might laugh at this place well enough: but since they have so seriously and exactly disputed of Logick, as if it were one of the greatest faculties, and most necessary sciences, it is not like that were so grossly deceived, being men throughout all the parts of Philosophy, so singular as we repute them to be. How is it then may a man reply and say, that you never rest baying and barking at these few worthy and excellent personages, and convincing them as you suppose to have erred? for there is no likelihood, that they writing to diligently and exactly as they have done of Logick, should of the Principles, and Elements, of the end of good things, of Justice and the gods, write carelessly and after a loose manner, howsoever you are disposed to tearm their Treatises, and Discourses, blind, repugnant to themselves, and stuffed with an innumerable sort of faults and errors. In one place he denieth that the vice *envy*, that is to say a joy to see evil happen unto another, hath any being or real subsistence: for that (quoth he) no good man was ever known to rejoyce at the harm of another: but in his second book as touching Good, having declared what Envy is, namely a grief for another mans welfare: because men are desirous to detract and debate their neighbours, to the end they might be superiours themselves; he addeth afterwards the joy for another mans harm, and that in these words: Annexed therunto (quoth he) is the joy for another mans harm, because men are desirous that their neighbours about them should be brought low for the like causes: but when they decline and turn to other naturall affections, there is engendered Pity and Mercy: In which words it appeareth that he ordaineth *δυναμικα* to be a thing really subsistent as well as envy and Pity, which notwithstanding elsewhere he said had no being at all in the world, no more than the hatred of wickedness, or the desire of filthy lucre.

Having in many places affirmed, that men are never a whit more happy, for long continuance of felicity, but that they be still as happy who enjoy felicity but one minute of an hour: in as many other places again he avoucheth the contrary, saying, that a man should not so much as put forth his finger for a transitory and momentary prudence, which endureth but a while, and passeth away like unto the flash and leam of a lightning. But it shall suffice to relate the very words, which he hath written in his sixth Book of Morall Questions as touching this matter: for when he had premised thus much, that every good thing doth not cause equal joy, nor all vertuous duties like vanity, he cometh after with these words: For if a man is to have Prudence for one moment of time; or the last day onely of his life, he should not so much as hold up or stretch out his finger for a prudence that lasteth so small a while: although no man is said to be the more blessed for long continuance of happiness; neither is eternall beatitude more expetible or desirable, than that which passeth away within a minute of an hour. Now if he had thought that prudence were a good thing bringing forth blessedness, as *Epicurus* did, a man could have found fault with nothing else but the absurdity onely of so strange an opinion and paradox. But seeing that prudence is no other thing than beatitude of it self, and even very felicity, how can it be avoided that herein there should not be a contradiction and repugnancy of speech, namely to say that transitory happiness is as eligible and as much to be desired, as that which is perpetuall: and to hold, that the felicity of one moment is worth nothing.

He affirmeth that vertues do follow and accompany one another not onely in this respect, that he who hath one, hath likewise all the rest; but also in this that he who worketh by one, worketh

withall according to the other: neither (saith he) is any man perfect, unless he be possessed of all vertues. Howbeit in the sixth Book of Morall questions, *Chrysippus* saith, that neither a good and honest man doth always bear himself valiantly, nor a naughty man behave himself cowardly, for that as certain objects be presented into mens fantasies, it becometh one man to persevere and persist in his Judgements, and another to forsake and relinquish the same, for probable he saith, it is, that even the wickedman is not always lascivious. Now in case it be, that to be a valiant man, is as much as to show valour, and to be a coward, the same that to be cowardly, they speak contraries who affirm, that a naughty person practising one vice, worketh by all together, and that a valiant man useth not always valour, nor a daftard cowardise.

He denieth Rhetorick to be an art, as touching the ornament, dispose and order of an ornament pronounced: and besides in the first book he hath thus written: And in mine opinion requisite it is, to have not onely a regard of an honest, decent and simple adorning of words, but also a care of proper gestures, actions, pauses and stayes of the voice, as also a meet confirmation of the countenance and the hands. Being as you see thus exquisite and curious in this passage: yet in the same book clear contrary, having spoken of the collision of vowels, and hitting one of them upon another: We are not onely (quoth he) to neglect this, and to thing of that which is of greater moment and importance, but also to let passe certain obscurities and defects, solecismes also and incongruities of which many others would be ashamed. Now one while to permit and allow such exquisite curioisie in the orderly dispose of a mans tongue, even as far as to the decent setting of the countenance and gesture of the hands: and another while not to balt at the committing of grosse incongruities, defects, and obscurities, is the property of a man who cares not what he saith, but speaks whatsoever comes in his head.

Over and besides in his naturall Positions, treating of those things which require the view of the eye and experience, after he had given warning that we should go warily to work, and not rashly yield our assent thereto, he saith let us not therefore, be of *Platos* opinion, to think that our liquid food, to wit, our drink passeth directly to the lungs, and our dry nourishment, that is, our meat, into the stomach: neither let us fall into such like errors as these. For mine own part, thus I think, that for a man to reprehend others, and afterwards to incur the same faults and errors which he reproved, is the greatest repugnancy, and contrariety that may be, and the foulest and most shameful fault of all others. And verily himself saith, that the connexions which are made by the ten principall Axiomes, that is to say Propositions, exceed in number ten hundred thousand; when as neither he had by himself diligently enough enquired and searched into the things, nor by other men well exercised in that art of Arithmetick, attained to the truth. And yet *Plato* had to testifie on his side, the most renowned Physicians that were, namely, *Hippocrates*, *Philition* and *Diapippus*, the disciple of *Hippocrates*: also of Poets, *Enripides*, *Alceus*, *Empolis* and *Eratothenes*, who all with one voice affirm, that the drink passeth by the lungs. And as for all the Arithmeticians well practised in the knowledge of numbers, they reprove *Chrysippus*: and *Hipparchus* among the rest, proving, and shewing that in the foresaid speech of his, he erred most grossly in his computation, if it be true, that the affirmative maketh of the said ten Axiomes to the number of 103049 connexions, and the negative 952, over and above three hundred and ten thousand. Some of the Ancients said of *Zeno* that it befell unto him as unto one who had sowed wine of his own, which he could not sell, and make away, either for vineger or wine: for that precedent of his which they call *ενονυμια*, he could not put off, neither for a thing that is good, nor so much as is indifferent. But *Chrysippus* hath made the matter far more intricate and different: for in some passages of his he saith, that they are stark mad who make no account of riches, health, voidness of pain and integrity of the body, nor care how to attain thereto; and having alledged this Verse out of *Hesiodus*,

O Perles, born of noble race,  
Thy businessse phy, and work appaies.

leaddeth thereto and saith, it were madnesse to advise the contrary, and say,

O Perles, born of noble race,  
Fly not thy work in any case.

And in his Treatise of Lives he writeth, that a wife man will court it with Kings and Princes, if he may raise his commodity and gain thereby; yes, he will keep a School, and teach for money, taking of some Scholars his Minervals aforehand, and bargaining with others for a certain time. Also in the fourth Book of his Offices he saith, that he will not stick to tumble down upon his head, and that three times, so he may be sure to have a talent for his labour. In his first Book of good things, he permiteth and granteth unto whosoever will, to call those *προνυμια*, or precedents aforesaid, Good, and the contrary thereto, Bad, in these very terms: If a man list (quoth he) according to such premeditations as these, he may call one thing good unto himself, and another thing ill; so as he have an eye and regard unto the things, and wander not inconsiderately, nor fall in the understanding of things signified, but otherwise accommodate himself to the Use and Custome of the Denomination. Having thus in this place set his Precedent so near and linked it with Good; in other passages he saith clean contrary, that some of all this concerneth us at all, but Reason doth divert and pluck us quite away from all such things: for so much hath he set down in his first Book of Exhortations. But in the third Book of Nature, he saith that some Kings and rich persons are reputed blessed and happy: which is as much, as if they were to be accounted happy, who made water in Golden Chamber-pots, or swept

th: flower. with the golden trains of their costly robes. But a good man, if he lose his whole patrimony and all his estate, weigheth it no more than the loss of a goat or single denier, and maketh no greater matter of sickness, than of stumbling, or tripping a little with his foot. And therefore, filled he hath with such contrarities, not virtue only, but also providence. For virtue will appear exceeding base, mechanical and foolish, if it be employed in things so vile and contemptible, commanding a man to fail for them as far as *Bolporus*, yea, and to throw himself upon his head. And *Jupiter* is very ridiculous, delighting to be called either *Crespius*, that is to say, The richer and donor of possessions, or *Epicarpus*, that is to say, The giver of fruits, or *Charidotes*, that is to say, The gratifier and author of favours: for that unto lewd and wicked persons he affordeth golden chamber-pots, and robes garded and bordered round about the skirts with gold; but vouchsafeth unto good men, trash hardly worth a groate, when they are become rich through the providence of *Jupiter*. And yet *Apollo* is much more ridiculous, if it be so, that he sits giving answers and oracles as touching golden, chamber-pots, gards and fringes of gold, yea and the tripping and stumbling of the foot. This repugnance and contrariety they make more evident and apparent still by their demonstration: For that (quoth they) which may be well or ill used, is neither good nor bad. Now, certain it is, that all evil and foolish persons use riches, health and strength of the body, anis: and therefore none of these may be called Good. If then, God give not virtue unto men, but Honesty commeth of it self, and yet bestoweth riches and health without virtue, surely it is upon them who will not use the same well but ill, that is to say, unprofitably, shamefully, and mischievously. And verily if the gods can give virtue, they are not good if they do not: and again, if they cannot make good men, neither are they able to help them any way, considering, that without it, there is nothing good nor profitable. For, to say that the gods judgeth those to be good by virtue, and by strength, who are otherwise good than by them, is to no purpose, but a vain conceit: for even so good men do judge the evil by virtue and by strength: so that by this reckoning, they profit men no more, than they be profited by men. And verily *Chrysippus* judgeth neither himself to be a good man, nor any either of his scholars or teachers. What is their opinion then, think you, of others, if it be not that which themselves say, namely, that they are mad and senseless fools, that they be miscreants and infidels, lawless, and in one word, come to the very height and pitch of all infidelity and misery? And yet forthwith they hold, that men so wretched and unhappy as they be, are notwithstanding governed and ruled by divine providence. Now, if the gods, changing their mind, should determine to hurt, afflict, plague, destroy, and crush us quite, they could not bring us to a worse fate and condition, than wherein we are already; according as *Chrysippus* saith, That mans life cannot be brought to a lower ebb, nor be in worse plight and case than now it is, inasmuch as if it had a tongue and voice to speak, it would pronounce these words of *Hercules*.

*Of miserie: (to say I dare be bold)*  
*So full I am, that more I cannot hold.*

And what assertions or sentences, may a man possibly find more contrary, and repugnant one against another, than those of *Chrysippus*, as touching both gods and men, when he saith, That the gods are most provident over men, and careful for their best; and men notwithstanding are in as wofull state as they may be.

Certain Pythagoreans there are, who blame him much, for that in his book of Justice he hath written of dunghil Cocks, that they were made and created profitable for man's use: For (quoth he) they awaken us out of our sleep, and raise us to our work; they hunt, kill and devour Scorpions; with their fighting they animate us to battle, imprinting in our hearts an ardent desire to their valour: and yet eat them we must, for fear that there grow upon us more pullain, than we know what otherwise to do withal. And so far forth mocketh he and scorneth those who find fault with him for delivering such sentences, that he writeth thus in his third Book of the gods, as touching *Jupiter* the Saviour, Creator and Father of Justice, Law, Equity and Peace: And like as cities (quoth he) and great towns, when they be over full of people, deduct and send from thence certain colonies, and begin to make war upon some other nations; even so God sendeth the causes, that breed plague and mortality: to which purpose he citeth the testimony of *Euripides* and other authors, who write that the Trojan war was raised by the gods, for to discharge and disburthen the world of so great a multitude of men where with it was replenished. As for all other evident absurdities delivered in these speeches, I let pass, for my purpose is not to search into all that which they have said or written amiss, but only into their contradictions and contrarities to themselves. But consider, I pray you, how *Chrysippus* hath always attributed unto the gods the goodliest names, and most plausible terms that can be devised; but contrariwise, most savage, cruel, inhumane, barbarous and Galatian deeds. For such general mortalities and carnages of men, as the Trojan war first brought, and afterward the Median and Peloponnesiack wars, are nothing like unto colonies that cities send forth to people, and inhabit other places; unless haply one would say, That such multitudes of men that die by war and pestilence, know of some cities sounded for them in hell and under the ground to be inhabited. But *Chrysippus* maketh God like unto *Deiatus* the king of *Galatia*, who having many sons, and minding to leave his realm and royal estate unto one of them and no more, made away and killed all the rest besides him, to the end that he being left alone, might be great and mighty: like as if one should prune and cut away all the branches of a vine, that the main stock might thrive and prosper the better: and yet the cutter of the vine disbrancheth it when the shoots be young, small and tender: and we also take away from a bitch many

other whelps when they be so young as that they cannot yet see, for to spare the damme: whereas *Jupiter* who hath not only suffered and permitted men to grow unto their perfect age, but also given them himself their nativity and growth, punisheth them, and plagues them afterwards, devising sundry means, and preparing many occasions of their death and destruction, when as indeed he should rather have not given unto them the causes and principles of their generation and birth. Howbeit this is as a small matter in comparison; and more grievous is that which I will now say: for there are no wars bred among men, but by occasion of some notable vice; seeing the cause of one is fleshly pleasures of another, avarice; and of a third ambition and desire of rule. And therefore, if God be the author of wars, he is by consequence the cause of wickedness, and doth provoke, excite and pervert men: and yet himself in his Treatise of Judgement, yea and his second Book of the gods, writeth that it becometh to no sense and reason that God should be the cause of any wicked and dishonest things. For like as the Lawes are never the cause of breaking and violating the Lawes, no more are gods of impiety: so that there is no likelihood at all that they should move and cause men to commit any foul and dishonest fact. Now what can there be more dishonest, than to procure and raise some to work the ruin and perdition of others, and yet *Chrysippus* saith, that God ministreth the occasions and beginnings thereof. Yea but he contrariwise (will one say) commendeth *Euripides*, for saying thus:

*If gods do ought that lewd and filthy is,*  
*They are no more accounted gods wits.*

And again,

*Soon said that is: Mens faults' excuse,*  
*Nothing more ready than gods' excuse.*

as if forthwith we did any thing else now, but compare his words and sentences together, that be opposite and meer contrary one unto another. And yet this sentence which now is here commended, is witt,

*Soon said that is, &c.*

we may alledge against *Chrysippus*, not once, nor twice, nor thrice, but ten thousand times. For first, in his Treatise of Nature, having likened the eternity of motion to a drench or potion made consistently of many herbs and spices, troubling and turning all things that be engendered, some after one sort, and some after another, thus he saith, Seeing it is so, that the government and administration of the universall world proceedeth in this sort, necessary it is, that according to it we be disposed in that manner as we are; whether it be that we are diseased against our own nature, maimed, or dismembered, Grammarians or Musicians. And again, soon after, according to this reason, we may say the like of our virtue or vice, and generally of the knowledge or ignorance of arts, as I have already said. Also within a little after, cutting off all doubt and ambiguity: There is no particular thing, nor the very least that is, which can otherwise happen than according to common nature, and the reason thereof: now that common nature, and the reason of it is fall'deth Divine Providence and *Jupiter*, there is not one, search even as far as to the Antipodes, but he knoweth: for this sentence is very rite in their mouths: And as for this verse of *Homer*,

*And as each thing thus came to passe,*  
*The will of Jove fulfilled was.*

he saith, that well and rightly he referred all to destiny, and the universall nature of the world, where by all things are governed. How is it possible then, that these two Positions should subsist together, namely, that God is in no wise the cause of any dishonest thing; and that there is nothing in the world, but never so little, that is done, but by common nature, and according to the reason thereof? For surely, among all those things that are done, necessarily there must be things dishonest: and yet *Epicurus* smeth and windeth himself on every side, imagining and devising all the subtilties that he can to unloose, set free, and deliver our voluntary free will from this motion eternal, because he would not leave vice: excusable: and without just reprehension; whereas in the mean while he openeth a wide window unto it, and giveth it liberty to plead: That committed it is not only by the necessity of destiny, but also by the reason of God, and according to the best nature that is. And thus much also more over is to be seen written word for word: For considering, that common nature reacheth unto all causes, it cannot otherwise be, but all that is done, howsoever, and in what part soever of the world, must be according to this common nature, and the reason thereof, by a certain kind of consequence without impeachment; for that there is nothing without, that can impeach the administration thereof, neither move any part, or is disposed in habitude otherwise, than according to that common nature. But what habits and motions of the parts are these? Certain it is, that the habits are the vices, and maladies of the minds, as covetousness, lechery, ambition, cowardice and injustice: as for the motions, they be the acts proceeding from thence, as Adulteries, Thefts, Treasons, Murders, and Parricides. *Chrysippus* now is of opinion. That none of all these, be they little or great, is done without the reason of *Jupiter*, or against Law, Justice, and Providence: inasmuch as to break Law, is not against Law; to wrong another, is not against Justice, nor to commit sin against Providence. And yet he affirmeth that God punisheth vice, and doth many things for the punishment of the wicked. As for example, in the second Book of the gods: Otherwhiles there happen (quoth he) unto good men grievous calamities, not by way of punishment, as to the wicked, by another kind of economy, and Disposition, like as it falleth out usually unto Cities. Again, in these words: First, we are to understand, evil things and calamities as we have said heretofore

fore; then to think, that distributed they are according to the reason and dispose of *Jupiter*, either by way of punishment, or else by some other economic of the whole world. Now surely, this is a Doctrine hard to be digested, namely, that vice being wrought by the disposition and reason of God, is also punished thereby: howbeit, this contradiction he doth still aggravate and extend in the second book of Nature, writing thus: But vice in regard of grievous accidents, hath a certain peculiar reason by it self: for after a sort it is committed by the common reason of nature, and as I may say, not unprofitably in respect of the universall world: for otherwise then so, there were no good things at all; and then proceeding to reprove those who dispute *pro & contra*, and discourse indifferently on both parts, he (I mean) who upon an ardent desire to broach alwises and in every matter some novelties and exquisite singularities above all other, saith, It is not unprofitable, to cut Purples, to play the Sycophants, or commit loose, dissolute, and mad parts: no more than it is incommodious, that there should be unprofitable members, hurtfull and wretched persons: which if it be so, what manner of god is *Jupiter*, I mean him, of whom *Chrysippus* speaketh, in case (I say) he punish a thing, which neither cometh of it self, nor unprofitably: for vice according to the reason of *Chrysippus* were altogether irreprehensible, and *Jupiter* to be blamed, if either he caused vice, as a thing unprofitable, or punished it when he had made it not unprofitably. Moreover, in the first book of Justice, speaking of the gods that they oppose themselves against the iniquities of some: But wholly (quoth he) to cut off all vice, is neither possible nor expedient, is, if it were possible, to take away all injustice, all transgression of lawes, and all folly. But how true this is, it pertaineth not to this present treatise for to enquire and discourse. But himself taking away and rooting up all vice as much as lay in him, by the means of Philosophy, which to extirp, was neither good nor expedient, doth herein that which is repugnant both to reason and alfo to God. Furthermore, in saying, that there be certain sins and iniquities, against which the gods do oppose themselves, he giveth covertly to understand, that there is some odds and inequality in sins. Over and besides, having written in many places, that there is nothing in the world to be blamed, nor that can be complained of, for that all things are made and finished by a most singular and excellent nature: there be contrariwise, sundry places wherein he leaveth and alloweth unto certain negligences reproveable, and those not in small and trifling matters. That this is true, it may appear in his third book of Substance; where having made mention that such like negligences might befall unto good and honest men; Cometh this to pass (quoth he) because there be some things whereof there is no reckoning made, like as in great houses, there must need be scattered and lost by the way some bran, yea and some few granes of wheat, although in generality the whole besides, is well enough ruled and governed? or is it because there be some evil and malignant spirits, as superintendents over such things, wherein certainly such negligences are committed, and the same reprehensible? and he saith moreover, that there is much necessity intermingled among. But I mean not herewith to stand, nor to discourse at large, but to let pass what vanity there was in him, to compare the accidents which befall to some good and virtuous persons; as for example, the condemnation of *Socrates*, the burning of *Pythagoras* quick by the Cylonians, the dolorous torments that *Zeno* endured under the tyrant *Demylus*, or those which *Antiphan* suffered at the hands of *Dionysius*, when they were by them but to death, unto the barns that he spilt and lost in great mens houses. But that there should be such wicked spirits depured by the divine providence, to have the charge of such things, must needs redound to the great reproach of God, as if he were some unwise King who committed the government of his provinces unto evil Capitaines, and rash headed Lieutenants, suffering them to abuse and wrong his best affected Subjects, and winking at their wretched negligence, having no care or regard at all of them. Again, if it be so, that there is much necessity and constraint mingled among the affaires of this world, then is not God the sovereign Lord and omnipotent master of all, neither be all things absolutely governed & ruled by his reason & counsel.

Moreover, he mightily opposeth himself against *Epicurus* and those who take from the administration of the world divine providence, confusing them, principally, by the common notions and conceptions inbred in us as touching the gods, by which perswaded we are that they be gracious benefactors unto men. And for that this is so vulgar and common a thing with them, needst it is to cite any expresse places to prove the same: And yet by his leave, all Nations do not believe that the gods be bountifull and good unto us. For do but consider what opinion the Jewes and Syrians, have of the gods: look into the writings of Poets, with how many superstitions they be fluffed. There is no man in manner to speak of, who imagineth or conceiveth in his mind, that God is either mortall and corruptible, or hath been begotten: And *Antipater of Tarsis* (to passe others over in silence) in his book of gods, hath writteth thus much word for word. But to the end (quoth he) that this discourse may be more perspicuous and clear, we will reduce into few words the opinion which we have of God. We understand therefore by God a living nature or substance happy, incorruptible, and a benefactor unto men: and afterwards in expounding each of these termes and attributes, thus he saith: And verily all men do acknowledge the gods to be immortall. It must needs be then, that by *Antipaters* saying, *Chrysippus* of all those, is none. For he doth not think any of all the gods to be incorruptible save *Jupiter* only: but supposeth that they were all engendered a like, and that one day they shall all likewise perish. This generally throughout all his books doth he deliver: howbeit one expresse passage will I alledge out of his third book of the gods. After a divers sort (quoth he) for some of them are engendered and mortall: others not engendered at all. But the proof and demonstration hereof, if it should be fetched from the head indeed, appertaineth more properly unto the

the essence of Natural Philosophy. For the Sun and Moon, and other gods of like nature, were begotten: but *Jupiter* is sempiternal. And again somewhat after: The like shall be said of *Jupiter* and other gods, as touching their corruption and generation: for some of them do perish: but as for his parts they be incorruptible. With this I would have you to compare, a little of that which *Antipater* hath written: Those (quoth he) who deprive the gods of beneficence and well doing, touch but in some part the prenotation and anticipation in the knowledge of them: and by the same reason they also who think they participate of generation and corruption. If then he be as much deceived and as absurd, who thinketh that the gods be mortall and corruptible, as he who is of opinion, that they bear no bountifull and loving affection toward men, *Chrysippus* is as far from the truth as *Epicurus* is, for that as the one bereaveth God of immortality and incorruption, so the other taketh from him beauty and liberality.

Moreover *Chrysippus* in his third Book of the gods (speaking of this point, and namely how other gods are nourished, saith thus: Other gods (quoth he) use a certain nourishment, whereby they are maintained equally: but *Jupiter* and the world after another sort, then those who are engendered and he consumed by the fire. In which place, he holdeth, that all other gods be nourished, except *Jupiter* and the world. And in the first Book of Providence, he saith that *Jupiter* groweth continually until such a time, as all things be consumed in him. For Death being the separation of the Body and Soul, seeing that the Soul of the world never departeth at all, but augmenteth continually, until it have consumed all the matter within it, we cannot say that the world dieth. Who could speak more contrary to himself, then he who saith that one and the same god is nourished and not nourished? And this we need not to infer and conclude: by necessary consequence considering that himself in the same place hath written it plainly. The world only (quoth he) is said to be of it self sufficient: because it alone hath all in it self whereof it standeth in need, of it self it is nourished and augmented, whereas other parts are transmuted and converted one into another. Nor only then is he contradictory and repugnant to himself in that he saith, other gods be nourished, all except the world and *Jupiter*, but also here in much more, when he saith that the world groweth by nourishing it self: whereas contrariwise there had been more reason to say, the world only is not augmented, having for food the destruction thereof: but on the contrary side, other gods do grow and increase, in as much as they have their nourishment from without: and rather should the world be consumed into them, if be true that the world taketh alwaies from it self, and other gods from it. The second point contained in that common notion and opinion imprinted in us as touching the gods, is that they be blessed, happy and perfect. And therefore men highly praise *Euripides* for saying thus.

If God be God indeed and really,  
He needs none of this poets verily;  
His praise in hymnes and verses for to write:  
Such duties wretched are which they endite.

Howbeit our *Chrysippus* here, in those places by me alledged saith, that the world alone is of it self sufficient, as comprehending within it all that it hath need of. What then ariseth upon this proposition, that the world is sole sufficient in it self, but this, that neither the Sun nor the Moone, nor any other of the gods whatsoever is sufficient of it self, and being thus insufficient, they cannot be blessed and happy.

*Chrysippus* is of opinion, that the Infant in the Mothers Wombe, is nourished naturally, no otherwise than a plant within the earth; but when it is born, and by the air cooled and hardened (as it were) like helle, it moveth the spirit, and becometh an animall or living Creature; & therefore it is not without good reason, that the Soul was called *ψυχή*, in regard of *ψύχω*, that is to say, refrigeration. But not forgetting to be contrary unto himself, he supposeth that the Soul is the more subtile, rare, and fine spirit of nature: For how is it possible that a subtile thing should be made of that which is gross, and that a spirit should be rarefied by refrigeration and attrition or condensation? Nay, that which more is, how cometh it about, that affirming as he doth the foul of an Infant to be engendered by the means of refrigeration, he should think the sun to become animall, being as it is of fiery nature, and ingendered of an calidation transmuted into fire? For thus he saith in his third Book of Nature: The mutation (quoth he) of fire is in this manner; by the air it is turned into water, and out of water having earth under it, some calid air, which air coming to be subtilized, the fire is produced and environeth it round about, and so the stars, they are set on fire out of these, together with the Sun what is more contrary, then to be set on fire and to be cooled? what more opposite to subtilization and rarefaction, than inspissation and condensation? the one maketh water and earth, of fire and air: the other turneth that which is moist and universall, into fire and air. And yet in one place he maketh kindling of fire, and in another refrigeration, to be the cause of quickning and giving soul unto a thing: for when the fire kindling and inflammation comes general throughout, then it liveth and is become an animall Creature; but after it cometh to be quenched & thickned, it turneth into water and earth, and so into a corporeal substance. In the first Book of Providence, he writteth thus: For the world being throughout on fire, presently it is suball, the Soul and governour of it self; but when it is turned into moisture and the foul left within it, is better a sort converted into a Soul and Body, so as it seemeth compounded of them both, then the case is altered: In which text he affirmeth plainly, that the very inanimate parts of the world by exultion and inflammation, turn and change into the foul thereof; and contrariwise

by extinction, the soul is relaxed and moistened again, and is converted into a corporeal nature. Hence to inferre that he is very absurd, one while to make of senseless things, animate and living, by way of refrigeration; and another while to transmute the most part of the soul of the world into insensible and inanimate things.

But over and above all this, the Discourse which he maketh as touching the generation of the soul, containeth a proof and demonstration contrary to his own opinion; for he saith that the soul is engendered after that the Infant is gone out of the mothers womb; for that the spirit then is transformed by refrigeration; even as the temper is gotten of Steel. Now to prove that the soul is engendered; and that after the birth of the Infant, he bringeth this for a principall Argument; Because children become like unto their Parents in behaviour and naturall inclination; wherein the contrariety that he delivereth is so evident, as that a man may see it by the very eye; for it is not possible that the soul which is engendered after birth, should be framed to the manners and disposition of the Parents before nativity; or else we must say (and fall out it will) that the soul before it was in esse, was already like unto a soul, which is all one, as that it was by similitude and resemblance, and yet was not, because as yet it had not a real substance. Now if any one do say, that it ariseth from the temperature and complexion of the bodies, that this similitude is imprinted in them, howbeit, when the souls are once engendered, they become changed, he shall overthrow the argument and proof whereby it is shewed that the soul was engendered; for hereupon it would follow, that the soul, although it were ingenerable, when it entereth from without into the body, is changed by the temperature of the like.

*Chrysippus* sometime saith, that the air is light, that it mounteth upward on high and other whiles for it again: that it is neither heavy nor light. To prove this, see what he saith in his second Book of Motion, namely, that fire having in it no ponderosity at all ascendeth aloft: semblably the air; and as the water is more conformable to the earth, so the air doth rather resemble the fire. But in his Book entitled *Naturall arts*, he bendeth to the contrary opinion, to wit, that the air hath neither ponderosity nor lightness of it self. He affirmeth that the air by nature is dark, and for that cause by consequence it is also the Primitiv Cold; and that tenebrosity or darkness, is directly opposite unto light and clearness, and the coldest thereof to the heat of fire. Moving this Discourse in the first Book of his *Naturall Questions*, contrary to all his in his Treatise of Habitudes, he saith: That these Habitudes be nothing else but airs: for that bodies (quoth he) be contained by them, and the cause why every body is contained by any habitude is such as it is, the Continent air which in iron is called hardness, in stone stiffness, in Silver whiteness, which words there is great contrariety, & as much false absurdity: for if this air remain the same fill as it is in the own nature, how cometh black in that which is not white, to be called whiteness? softness in that which is not hard, to be named hardness; or . . . in that which is not solid and massie, to be called solidity? But in case it be said, that by mixture therein it is altered, and so becometh semblable, how then can it be an habitude, a faculty, power or cause of these effects, whereby it self is brought under and subdued? for that were to suffer rather than to do; and this alteration is not of a nature containing, but of a languishing impotency, whereby it loseth all the properties and qualities of the own: and yet in every place they hold, that matter of it self idle and without motion, is subject and exposed to the receipt of qualities, which qualities are spirits, and those powers of the air, which into what parts soever of the matter they get and insinuate themselves, do give a form and imprint a figure into them. But how can they maintain this, supposing as they do, the air to be such as they say it is; for if it be an habitude and power, it will conform and shape unto it self, every body, so as it will make the same both black and soft: but if by being mixed and tempered with them, it take forms contrary unto those which it hath by nature, it followeth then, that it is the matter of matter, and neither the habitude, cause, nor power thereof.

*Chrysippus* hath written oftentimes, that without the world, there is an infinite voidness; and that this infinity hath neither beginning, middle, nor end. And this is the principall reason, whereby they refuse that motion downward of the *Atoms* by themselves, which *Epicurus* hath brought in: For in that which is infinite, there are no local differences, whereby a man may understand or specify either high or low. But in the fourth Book of Things possible, he supposeth a certain middle place and mean place between: wherein he saith the world is founded. The very Text where he affirmeth this, runneth in these words. And therefore we must say of the world that it is corruptible: and although it be very hard to prove it, yet we think rather it should be so, then otherwise. Nevertheless, this maketh much to the inducing of us to believe that it hath a certain incorruptibility, if I may so say, namely the occupation or taking up of the middle place, wherein it standeth, because it is in the mids: for if it were thought otherwise to be founded, it were altogether necessary, that essence being should take hold of it. And again, a little after: for even so in some sort hath that essence been ordained from all eternity, to occupy the middle Region, being presently at the very first such as not by another manner, yet, by attaining this place, it is eternal and subject to no corruption. These words contain one manifest repugnance and visible contrariety, considering that in them he admitteth and alloweth in that which is infinite a middle place. But there is a second also, which as it is more dark and obscure, so it implieth also a more monstrous absurdity than the other: for supposing that the world cannot continue incorruptible, if it were stated and founded in any other place of the infinity, than in the midst it appeareth manifestly that he feared, if the parts of the substance did not move and tend toward the mids, there would ensue a dissolution & corruption of the world. But this would he never have feared, if he had not thought that bodies naturally from all sides tend to the mids.

side, not of the substance, but of the place that containeth the substance; whereas he had spoken in many places, that it was a thing impossible and against nature, for that within voidness there is no difference, by which bodies can be said to move more one way than another: and that the construction of the world, is cause of the motion to the center, as also that all things from every side do bend to the mids. But to see this more plainly, it may suffice to alledge the very text in his second Book of Motion: for when he had delivered thus much, That the World is a perfect body, and the parts of the World not perfectly, because they are respective to the whole, and not of themselves. Having also discoursed as touching the motion thereof: for that it was apt and fited by nature to move it self in all parts, for to contain and preserve, and not to break, dissolve and burn it self, he saith afterwards, But the universal World tending and moving to the same point, and the parts thereof having the same motion from the nature of the body; like it is, that this first motion is naturally proper to all bodies, namely, to incline toward the mids of the World, considering that the World moveth so in regard of it self; and the parts likewise, in that they be the parts of the whole. How now my good friend, may some one say, what accident is befallen unto you, that you should forget to pronounce these words withall, That the World, in case it had not fortune for to settle in the mids, must needs have been subject to corruption and dissolution? For if it be proper and natural to the World to tend alwaies to the same mids, as also to address the parts thereof from all sides thereto, unto what place soever of the voidness it be carried and transported, certes, thus containing and embracing (as it were) it self? as it doth, it must needs continue Incorruptible, Immortal, and past all danger of fracture or dissolution: for such things as be broken, bruised, dissipated and dissolved, this is incident, by the division and dissolution of their parts, when each one runneth and retireth into their proper and natural place, out of that which is against their own nature. But you say, supposing that if the World were seated in any other place of voidness, but in the mids, there would follow a total ruin and corruption thereof; giving out also as much, and therefore imagining a middle in that where naturally there can be none, to wit, in that which is infinite, have verily quit clean and fled from these tensions, coherences and inclinations, as having in them no assured means for to maintain and hold the World together, and attributed all the cause of the eternall maintenance and preservation thereof, unto the occupation of a place. And yet, as if you took pleasure to argue and convince your self, you adjoin to the premises, thus much: In what sort every severall part moveth, as it is coherent to the rest of the body, it stands with good reason, that after the same manner it should move by it self alone; yea, for disputation sake we imagine and suppose it to be in some void part of this world: and like along kept in and enclosed on every side, it would move toward the mids, so it would continue in this same motion, although by way of disputation we should admit, that all on a sudden there should appear some vacuity, and void place round about. And is it indeed, that every part what ever it be, compassed about with voidness, forgoeth not her naturall inclination to move and tend to the mids; and should the world it self, lose some fortune and blind chance had not prepared for it a place in the mids, have lost that vigor and power which containeth and holdeth all together, and so some parts of the substance of it move one way, and some another? Now surely herein there be many other main contrarieties repugnant even to natural reason; but this particularly among the rest, encountereth the doctrine of God, and divine providence, to wit, that in attributing unto them the least and smallest causes that be, he taketh from them the most principal and greatest of all other. For what greater power can there be, than the maintenance and preservation of this universal world, or to cause the substance united together in all parts to cohere unto it self? But this according to the opinion of *Chrysippus*, happeneth by meer hazard and chance: for if the occupation of a place, is the cause of worlds incorruption and eternity, and the same chance by fortune, we must infer thereupon, that the safety of all things dependeth upon hazard and adventure, and not upon fatal destiny, and divine providence. As for his doctrine and disputation *de mundi statu*, that is to say of things possible, which *Chrysippus* hath delivered directly against that of fatal destiny, how can it chuse but be repugnant to it self: for if that be not possible, according to the opinion of *Diodorus*, which either is or shall be true, but what soever is susceptible naturally of a power to be, although the same never come into an act or esse, isto be counted possible; there will be a number of things possible, which never shall have being, by destiny invincible, inexpugnable, and surmounting all things. And therefore either this doctrine overthroweth all the force and puissance of destiny: or if it be admitted, as *Chrysippus* would have it, that which potentially may be, will fall out often times to be impossible; and whatsoever is true, shall be also necessary, as being compassed and contained by the greatest and most powerful necessity of all others; and whatsoever is false, impossible, as having the greatest and most puissant cause, withstanding and impeaching it ever for being true. For look whose destiny it is to die in the Sea, how can it be possible, that he should be susceptible of death upon the Land? And how is it possible, that he who is at *Megara* should come to *Athens*, being hindered and prohibited by fatal destiny?

Moreover, his resolutions as touching Fantasies and imaginations, repugne mainly against fatal destiny: For intending to prove that Fantastic is not an entire and absolute cause of assent, he saith, that Sages and wise men will prejudice and hurt us much, by imprinting in our minds false imaginations, it be to do that such Fantasies do absolutely cause assent. For many times will men use that which is false, unto lewd and wicked persons, representing unto them a Fantastic that is but only probable, and yet the same is not the cause of assent: for so also should it be the cause of false opinion, and of deception



tion. If then a man would transfer this reason and argument from the said wise men unto fatal destiny, saying that destiny is not the cause of assents (for so he should confess that by destiny were occasioned false assents, opinions, and deceptions, yea, and men should be endangered by destiny) certes the same doctrine and reason which exempteth a wise man from doing hurt at any time, sheweth withall that destiny is not the cause of all things. For if they neither opine nor receive detriment by destiny: certainly they do no good, they are not wise, they be not firm and constant in opinion, neither receive they any good and profit by destiny: so that this conclusion which they hold for most assured, falleth to the ground and cometh to nothing, namely, that fatal destiny is the cause of all things. Now if peradventure one say unto me, that *Chrysippus* doth not make destiny the entire and absolute cause of all things, but only a procatartical and antecedent occasion, here again will he discover how he is contradictory to himself, whereas he praiseth *Homer* excellently for saying thus of *Jupiter*:

*Take well in worth therefore what he  
to each of you shall send;  
And whether good or bad it be,  
do not with him contend.*

As also where he highly extollet *Euripides* for these verses:

*O Jupiter what cause have I to say,  
That mortal wretches we should prudent be?  
Depend we do of thee, and nothing may  
Bring to effect, but that which please thee.*

Himself also writeth many sentences accordant hereunto, and finally concludeth, that nothing doth rest and stay, nothing stir and move, be it never so little, otherwise than by the counsel and mind of *Jupiter*, whom he saith to be all one with fatal destiny. Moreover the antecedent cause is more feeble and weak, than that which is perfect and absolute, neither attaineth it to any effect, as being subdued & kept down, by others mightier than its self, rising up and making head against it. And as for fatal destiny *Chrysippus* himself pronouncing it to be a cause invincible, inflexible, and that which cannot be impeached, calleth it *Atropos* and *Adrestia*, as one would say, a cause that cannot be averted, avoided or undone. Likewise necessity and Preponement, which is as much to say as setting down, that is to say, an end and limit unto all things. How then? whether do we not say, that neither assents, virtues, vices, nor well or ill doing, lie in our free will and power: if we affirm fatal destiny to be mained or imperfect and antecedent, that is to say, a fatality determining all things, to be *Atropos*, that is to say, without power to finish and effect ought: and so the motions and habitudes of *Jupiter* will to remain imperfect and unaccomplished? for of these conclusions the one will follow, if we say that destiny is an absolute and perfect cause: and the other, in case we hold that it is only a procatartical or antecedent occasion. For being an absolute and all sufficient cause, it overthroweth that which is in us, to wit, our free will: and again, if it to be only antecedent it is marred for being effectual and without the danger of impeachment. For not in one or two places only but every where in manner throughout all his commentaries of natural Philosophy he hath written, that in particular natures and motions there be many obstacles and impediments, but in the motion of the Universal World there is none at all. And how is it possible that the motion of the Universal World should not be hindered and disturbed, reaching as it doth unto particulars, in case it be so, that they likewise be stopped and impeached. For surely the nature in general of the whole man is not at liberty and without impediment, if neither that of the foot nor of the hand, be void of obstacles: no more can the motion or course of a ship be void of let and hinderance, if there be some stay about the sails, and oars, or their works. Over and besides all this, if the fantasies and imaginations, are not imprinted in us by fatal destiny, how be they the cause of assents? Or if because it imprinteth fantasies that lead unto assent, thereupon all assents are said to be by fatal destiny, how is it possible that destiny should not be repugnant to it self? considering that in matters of greatest importance, it misdirecteth many times different fantasies and those which distract the mind into contrary opinions: whereas they affirm that those who settle unto one of the said fantasies, and hold not off their assent and approbation do erre and sin: For if they yeeld (say they) unto uncertain fantasies they flumble and fall: if unto false, they are deceived: if to such as commonly are not conceived and understood, they opine. For of necessity it must be, one of these three: either that every fantasy is not the work nor effect of destiny; or that every receipt and affection of fantasy is not void of error; or else that destiny itself is not irreprehensible. Neither can I see how it should be blameless, objecting such notions and imaginations as it doth; which to withstand and resist, were not blamable, but rather to give place and follow them: and verily in the disputations of the Stoicks against the Academicks, the main point about which both *Chrysippus* himself, and *Antipater* also contended and stood upon, was this: That we do nothing at all, nor be inclined to any action, without a precedent consent: but that these be but vaine Fictions and devised Fables and suppositions, that when any proper fantasy is presented, incontinently we are disposed, yea, and incited thereto, without yeelding or giving consent. Again, *Glycerippus* saith: That both God and the wise man do imprint false imaginations, not because they would have us to yeeld or give our consent unto them, but that we should do the thing onely, and incite our selves to that which appeareth: As for us, if we be evill by reason of our infirmity, we consent to such fancies and imaginations. Now the repugnance and contrariety in these words is easily seen; for they who would not have us to consent unto the fantasies which

be presented unto us, but only to work and do them, be he God or wise man, knoweth well enough that such fantasies are sufficient to cause us to fall to operation, and that those assents are altogether superfluous: and so if he knowing that the fantastic imprinteth no infinit in operation without consent, misdirecteth unto us false or probable fantasies: willfull and voluntary is the cause that we flumble erre, and offend, in giving our assent to such things as are not perfectly understood and comprehended.

## Of Common Conceptions against the Stoicks.

### The Summary.

HAVING shewed in my former discourse, that the Stoicks are contradictory to themselves, in all the principal articles of their doctrine, and so consequently that be needed no more but their own words to condemn them: In this dialogue he joyneth more closely to them, disputing against their rules and precepts, which he examineth and refuteth: whereas before he was content to oppugne them by their own selves. For to make entrance into this dialogue, he bringeth in *Lamprias*, requesting *Diadumenus* to rid him of those scruples that certain Stoicks had put into his head: Whereunto the other accordeth, and so they enter into the matter: The summe of whose whole discourse throughout is this: That the Stoicks would by their principles abolish many laws, and the common conceptions proceeding from thence, thereby more easily to establish their own paradoxes: whom he refuteth, dividing his dialogue into three principal parts: in the first whereof is consideration, the second, the natural; in the third, the metaphysicall or supernaturall Philosophy of the Stoicks: Howbeit he observeth no exact order nor method, in the disposition of his matters, but entrencheth out of one discourse into another, according as things were presented unto him, and came first into his mind, in such sort, as there is sufficient to content the Reader, who is desirous to know what was the self and doctrine of the Stoicks, and the manner of the ancient Academicks in their disputations: which being referred to the true mark and scope indeed, of all that which we may learn in the world, teacheth every man to humble himself before the Majesty of him who is only wise, and out of whose sacred word we ought to fetch the resolution of the questions debated here in this dialogue, but of those above the rest, which treat of manners, religion, and divinity.

## Of common conceptions against the Stoicks.

### LAMPRIAS.

IT should seem verily that you *Diadumenus* pass not much what any man, either thinks or saies of you and other Academicks, such as your self, in that you do Philosophize clean contrary to the common notions and conceptions, consenting as you do, that you make no great account of the five natural senses, from whence proceed the most part of the said common conceptions, having for their foundation and seat, the belief and assurance of the imaginations which appear unto us. But I pray you for to assay and go in hand to cure me, either by some words, or charmes and enchantments, or by what other means and kinds of physick that you know, comming as I do unto you, full in mine own conceit of great trouble and strong perturbation, so exceedingly troubled I have been, and held in perplexed suspense, I may tell you, by certain Stoicks; men otherwise the best in the world, and I may say to you, my inward and familiar friends: howbeit, ever bitterly bent, and in hostile manner set against the Academic, who for very small matters uttered by me, modestly and in good sort, withal respect and reverence, have (I will not lie unto you) reproved, checked, and taken me up very unkindly, with some hard words, and breaking forth in heat of choler, called our ancient Philosophers, Sophisters, corrupters, and perverters of good sentences in Philosophy, yea, and seducers of those who otherwise walked in the true path, and train of doctrine surely established; with many other most strange terms, both speaking and thinking of them very basely; until in the end as if they had been driven with a tempest, they fell upon the Common conceptions, reproaching those of the Academic, as if they brought along great confusion and perturbations in the said notions: and one among them there was, who was wont to say: That it was not by fortune, but by some divine Providence, that *Chrysippus* was born and came into the world, after *Arcesilaus*, and before *Carnades*: of which twain, the one was the author and promotor of the injury and outrage done unto customs; and the other flourished in the same and renown above all other Academicks. Now *Chrysippus* comming as he did between them, by his writings contrary to the doctrine of *Arcesilaus*, stopped up the way also against the powerful Blow of *Carnades*, and as he left unto the senses many aids and succours, as it were to hold our way straight: so he removed out of the way, and fully cleared all the trouble and confusion about inclinations and common conceptions, correcting each one, and reducing them into their proper place; whereupon, as whofoever afterwards would seem to make new troubles, and violently disquiet matters to him self, should not prevail nor gain ought, but incur the obloquie of the world, and be convinced.

vinced for malicious persons, and deceitful Sophisters. Having thus (I say) by these words been heated and set on fire this morning among them, I had need of some means to quench the heat as it were of an inflammation, and to rid me of these doubts, which are risen in my mind.

*Diadumenus.*

It fareth haply with you, as with many of the vulgar sort; but if you believe the Poets who give out, that the ancient City *Sipylus* in *Magresia*, was in old time destroyed and overthrow by the providence of the gods, when they chastised and punished *Tantalus*; you may as well be persuaded by our old friends the Stoicks to believe, that nature hath brought forth into the world, not by chance and fortune, but by some special divine providence, *Chrypsippus*, when she was minded to pervert and overturn the life of man and course of the world, turning all things up side down, and contrariwise down side up: for never was there man better made and framed for such a matter than he. And as *Cato* said of that *Julius Caesar* dictator, that before him there was never known any to come sober & confidate to manage affairs of state with a purpose to work the ruine of the Common-wealth: even so this man in mine opinion, with most diligence, greatest eloquence, and highest conceit of spirit seemeth as much as lieth in him to destroy and abolish custome. And there likewise against him no lesse even they who magnifie the man otherwise: namely, when they dispute against him as touching that sophisme or Syllogisme, which is called *Pseudomoros*; for to say my good friend, that the argumentation composed of contrary Propositions is not notoriously false, and again to affirm, that Syllogismes having their premises true, yea and true inductions, may yet have the contrary to their conclusions true, what conception of demonstration, or what anticipation of belief is there, which is not able to overthrow.

It is reported of the Pourcurett or Polyp fish, that in winter time he knoweth his own cleites and pendant hairy feet, but the Logick of *Chrypsippus*, which taketh away and cutteth off the principal parts of it, what other conception leaveth it behind, but that which well may be suspected? For how can that be imagined steady and sure which is built upon foundations that abide not firm, but wherein there be so many doubts and troubles? But like as they who have either dust or dirt upon their bodies, if they touch another therewith or rub against him, do not so much trouble and molest him, as they do begime and betray themselves to much the more, and seem to exasperate that ordure which pricketh and is offensive unto them; even so, some there be who blame and accuse the Academics, thinking to charge upon them those imputations, wherewith themselves are found to be more burdened: For who be they that pervert the common conceptions of the senses more, than do these Stoicks? But if you think so good, leaving off to accuse them, let us answer to those calumniation and slanders which they would seem to fasten upon us.

*Lamprias.*

Me thinks *Diadumenus* that I am this day much changed, and become full of variety: me thinks I am a man greatly altered from that I was ere while: For even now I came hither much dismayed & abashed, as being depressed, beaten down and amazed; as one having need of some advocate or other to speak for me in my behalf: whereas, now I am clean turned to an humour of accusation, and disposed to enjoy the pleasure of revenge, to see all the pack of them detected and convinced, in that they argue and dispute themselves against common conceptions and anticipations, in defence whereof they seem principally to magnifie their own sect, \* \* saying that it alone doth agree and accord with nature.

*Diadumenus.*

Begin we then first, with their most renowned propositions, which they themselves call Paradoxes, that is to say, strange and admirable opinions: avowing as it were by that name, and gently admitting such exorbitant absurdities; as for example, that such Sages as the selves are only kings, only rich and fair, only Citizens, and only Judges: or please it you that we send all this stuff to the Market of old and stale merchandise, and go in hand with the examination of these matters, which consist most in action and practise, whereof also they dispute most seriously?

*Lamprias.*

For mine own part I take this to be the better. For as touching the reputation of those paradoxes, who is not full thereof, and hath not heard it a thousand times?

*Diadumenus.*

Consider then in the first place this, whether according to common notions, they can possibly accord with nature, who think natural things to be indifferent: and that neither health, nor good plight and habitude of body nor beauty, nor clean strength be either expetible, profitable, expedient, or serving in any stead to the accomplishment of that perfection which is according to nature: nor that the contraries hereunto are to be avoided; as hurtful, to wit, maimes and mutilations of members, deformities of body, paines, shameful diseases and discaise. Of which things rehearsed, they themselves acknowledge that nature estrangeth us from some, and acquainteth us with other. The which verily is quite contrary to common intelligence, that nature should acquaint us with those things which be neither expedient, nor good, and alienate us from such as be not hurtful nor ill: and that which more is, that she should either train us to them, or withdraw us from them so far forth, as if men will in obtaining the one, or fall into the other, they should with good reason abandon this life, and for just cause depart out of the world. I suppose that this also, is by them affirmed against common sense, namely, that nature her self is a thing indifferent: and that to accord and consent with nature, hath in it some part of sovereign good. For neither to follow the rule of the Law nor to obey reason,

is good

good and honest, unless both law and reason be good and honest. But this verily is one of the least of their errors. For if *Chrypsippus* in his first Book of Exhortations hath written thus: A blessed and happy life consisteth only in living according to verities: and as for all other accessories (quoth he) they neither touch nor concern us at all, neither make they any whit to beatitude: he cannot avoid, but he must avow, that not only nature is indifferent, but also which is more, senselesse and foolish, to associate and draw us into a League with that which in no respect concerneth us, and we our selves likewise are no better than fools, to think that the sovereign felicity, is to consent and accord with nature, which leadeth and conducteth us to that which serveth nothing at all to happiness. And yet what agreeeth, and serveth sooner to common sense, than this, that as things eligible are to be chosen and desired for the profit and help of this life; so naturall things serve for to live answerable to nature? but these men say otherwise: for although this be their supposition, that to live according to nature is the utmost end of naturall good; yet they hold, that things according to nature be of themselves indifferent. Neither is this also lesse repugnant to common sense and conception, that a well affected, sensible and prudent man, is not equally enclined and affectionate to good things that be equall and alike; but as some of them be weightier nor, nor maketh any account of, so for others again he is prest to abide and endure all things, although I say the same be not greater or lesse one than another. For these things they hold to be equall, namely, for a man to fight valiantly in the defence of his Country, and chafly to turn away from a wild trot, when for very age he is at the point of death: for both the one and the other do that alike which their duty requireth. And yet for the one, as being a worthy and glorious thing, they would be prest and ready to lose their lives, whereas to boast and vaunt of the other were a shamefull and ridiculous part. And even *Chrypsippus* himself, in the Treatise which he composed of *Jupiter*, and in the third Book of the gods, saith that it were a poore, absurd and foolish thing to praise such acts, as proceeding from vertue, namely to bear valiantly the biting of a fig, or sting of a Waspe, and chafly to abstain from a crooked old woman, stooping forward and ready to tumble into her grave. Do not these Philosophers then teach and preach even against common sense and notion, when those actions which they are ashamed to commend, they avow and confesse to be excellent, and nothing in the world better? For where is that expetible, or how can that be approvable, which deserveth not that a man should praise and admire it, but is such as whoever do commend and admire the same, they are reputed no better than fots and absurd fools? And yet I suppose you will think it more against common sense and reason, that a wife and prudent man should not care nor regard to jet whether he enjoy or enjoy not the greatest goods in the world, but carry himself after one and the same manner in things indifferent, as he would in the management and administration of those good things which are so singular. For we all,

As many as on fruits do feed,

Which for our use the earth doth beed,

are of this judgement, that the thing which being present bringeth us help and profit, and if it be away, we desire to have, and find a miss of it, is good, expetible and profitable: but that which a man putteth not for, neither in earnest nor in game, and whereof he maketh no account either for his sport, pastime or commodity and ease, the same is indifferent: for by no other mark do we distinguishing a diligent, painfull and industrious man indeed, from a vain busie body, and a curious medler in many matters, than by this. That as the one travelleth and troubleth himself in unprofitable trifles or things indifferent, so the other laboureth for such as be commodious and expedient. But these Philosophers do quite contrary: for according to their doctrine, a wife and prudent man, although he meet with many conceptions and the memories of the said comprehensions, yea and remember divers things whereof he hath a certain and perfect knowledge, thinketh some few of them to concern him; and as for the rest, making no reckoning of them, he supposeth that he neither loseth nor winneth, by remembering that he had the other day the comprehension, that is to say, the certain knowledge either of *Dion* sneezing, or *Theus* playing at tennis. And yet every comprehension in a wise man, and all memory that is firm and surely settled, is presently science, yea and a great good thing, nay the greatest that is. How then? for I would gladly know, whether a wife man were secure and careless alike, when his health faileth, when some one of his senses decayeth, or is amiss, and when he loseth his goods, thinking none of all thisto touch him; or whether when he feeleth himself sick, giveth unto Physicians their fees when they come unto him; and for to gain richer, faileth to *Leucan* a great Prince and potentate about *Bosphorus*, or travelleth as far as to *Indabyrus* the Scybian king, as *Chrypsippus* saith; and of his senses, the loss some, he will not endure to live any longer? How is it then, that these men do not acknowledge and confesse that they deliver doctrine even against common notions, who about things indifferent, care, care, and travell so much; and yet take the matter indifferently, and reack not much whether they enjoy or be without great good things.

Moreover, this also is an opinion of theirs, even against common Conceptions, That he who is a man, feelth no joy, when out of the greatest evils and most grievous calamities, he entrench into a world of good things and a most blessed and happy state. And yet thus doth their wife man: for passing from extreme vice, unto exceeding great vertue; escaping also out of a most miserable life, and attaining unto the happiest condition that is, he sheweth no sign or token at all of joy: neither doth he regard a change lift up his heart, or once move him, seeing himself how he is delivered out of the greatest misery and wickedness that may be, and arrived now to a most firm assured accomplishment of all felicity and goodnesse. Again contrary it is to common sense, That this should be the greatest good of a man, namely, a constant Judgement, and immutable Resolution; and yet

yet

yet that he who is mounted up to the height and pitch of all, hath no need hereof, neither careth for it when it is come; in so much as many times he will not once put forth his finger for this assistance and stability, notwithstanding they esteem it to be the sovereign and perfect good. Neither do these Stoicks stay here, but still broach more paradoxes and strange opinions, namely, that continuance of time be never so long, augmenteth not any good thing: but if a man chance to be wife and prudent but the minute only of an hour, he is nothing inferior in felicity to him, who all his time hath lived in virtue, and led his whole life blessedly therein. Howbeit, as bravely and as stoutly as they deliver these positions, yet in the other side, they flie not to say, that transitory vertue which continueth but a while, is worth nothing: for what would it avail or benefit him who incontinently is to suffer shipwreck and to perish in the Sea, or otherwise to be thrown headlong down from some steep rock, if he were possessed of wisdom a while before? And what would it have booted *Lychar* being flung by *Hercules*, as it were out of a sling into the mids of the Sea, if suddenly he had been changed from vertue to vice? These positions therefore favour of these men, who not only Philosophize against sense and common notions, of the whole world, but also confusedly huddle their own conceits, making a mish-mash of them, and contradicting themselves, if it be so that they think, that the holding and possessing of vertue a short time, wanteth nothing of sovereign felicity, and withal, make no account of so short a vertue, as it in deed it were nothing worth. And yet this is not it that a man would wonder most at in their strange doctrine, but this rather, that they esteems, give out and say: That when this sovereign vertue and felicity is present, he that is possessed of it, hath no sense nor feeling thereof; neither perceiveth he how being ere while most miserable and foolish, he is now all at once become both wise and happy: for not only were a pretty jest, and ridiculous conceit to say; That a wife and prudent man is ignorant even of this one point, that he is wise, and knoweth not that he is now past ignorance, and want of knowledge: but also to speak all in a word; they make goodness to be of no moment, nor to carry any weight and poise with it, they make it I say very obscure, enervate and feeble, in case when it cometh, a man is not able to feel and perceive it: for according to them, it is not by nature imperceptible; and even *Chrysippus* himself hath expressly written in his books entitled, *Of the end*, That good is perceptible by sense; and as he thinketh, so he maketh proof and demonstration thereof. It remaineth therefore that it is long either of weakness or smallness, that it is not perceived, when they who have it present, feel it not, nor have any knowledge thereof. Moreover, it were very absurd to say, that the eye-sight should perceive and discern things that be but within a little, or middle colours between, and not be able to see those that be exceeding white in the highest degree; or that the sense of feeling should apprehend that which is meanly hot or warm, and yet have no sense at all of such things, as be exceeding hot. But there is more absurdity in this, that a man should comprehend that which meanly and commonly is according to nature, to wit, health, or the good plight of the body; and be ignorant again of vertue, when it is present, considering withall, that they hold it to be principally, and in the highest degree accordant to nature; for how can it otherwise be, but against common sense, to conceive well enough the difference between health and sickness, and to be ignorant of that distinction which is between wisdom and folly; but to think the one to be present when it is gone, and when a man hath the other, not to know to much, that he hath it? Now forasmuch as after that one advanced and proceeded forward as far as may be, he is changed into felicity and vertue, one of these two must of necessity follow; that either this estate of progress and profit, is neither vice nor infelicity; or else that there is no great difference and distance between vice and vertue; but that the diversity of good things and evil is very small, and unperceptible by the sense, for otherwise man could not be ignorant when they had the one or the other, or think they had the one for the other: so long then as they depart not from any contrariety of sentences, but will allow, affirm, and put down all things whatsoever, to wit, That they who profit and proceed are still fools and wicked; that they who are become wise and good, know not so much themselves, but are ignorant thereof; that there is a great difference between wisdom and folly: Think you, that they shew a wonderful constancy and uniformity in the maintenance of their sentences and doctrines?

Well, if in their doctrine they go against common sense, and are repugnant to themselves; certes, in their life, in their negotiations and affairs, they do much more: for pronouncing flattery, that those who be not wife, are all indifferently and alike, wicked, unjust, disloyal, faithless, and foolish; and yet forsooth, some of them they abhor and will not abide, but be ready to spit at them; others, they will not vouchsafe so much as to salute, if they meet with them upon the way; and some against they will credit with their monies, nominate and cleave by their voices to be magistrates, yea and bestow their daughters upon them in marriage. Now in case they hold such strange and extravagant positions in sport and game, let them pluck down their brows, and not make so many furrows as they do in their forehead: but if in earnest, and as grave Philosophers, surely, I must needs tell them, that it is against common notions, to reprove, blame, and rail upon all men alike in words, and yet to use some of them in deeds, as honest persons, and others hardly to intreat as most wicked; and for example, to admire *Chrysippus* in the highest degree, and make a god of him; but to mock and scorn *Aleximus*, although they think the men to be fools alike, and not one more or less foolish than the other. True it is I say they; and needs it must be so. But like as he who is but a cubit under the top of the water, is no less strangled and drowned, than he who lies five hundred fathom deep in the bottom of the Sea: even so they that be come within a little of vertue, are no less in vice still than those who are a great way off: and as blind folk be blind still, although haply they shall recover their eye-sight shortly af-

ter; even so they that have well proceeded and gone forward, continue fools still and stult, until such time as they have fully attained to vertue; but contrary to all this, that they who profit in the school of vertue, resemble not those who are stark blind, but such rather as see not clearly; nor are like unto those who be drowned, but unto them that swim, yea, and approach near unto the Haven; they themselves do bear witness by their deeds, and in the whole practice of their life; for otherwise they would not have used them for their Counsellors, Captains, and Law-givers, as blind men do guides for to lead them by the hands, neither would they have praised and imitated their deeds, acts, sayings and lives of some as they did, if they had seen them all drowned alike, and suffocated with folly and wickedness.

Rebelling that go by, consider these Stoicks, that you may wonder the more at them in this behalf, that by their own examples they are not taught to quit and abandon these wife men who are ignorant of themselves, and who neither know nor perceive, that they cease to be filled and strangled any longer, and begin to see the light, and being risen aloft, and gotten above vice and sin, take their winds and breath again. Also it is against common sense, that for a man furnished with all good things, and who wanteth nothing of perfect bliss and happiness, it should be meet and befitting, to make himself away and depart voluntarily out of this life; yea, and more than so; that he who neither presently hath, nor ever shall have any good thing; but contrariwise, is continually haunted and persecuted with all horrible calamities, miseries, and mishaps that can be, should not think it fit and convenient for himself, to leave and forsake this life, unless some of those things which they hold be indifferent, be presented, and do befall unto him. Well, these be the goodly rules and trim laws in the Stoicks school; and verily many of their wife men they cause indeed to go out of this life, bearing them in hand, that they shall be more blessed and happy; although by their saying a wife man is, fortunate, blessed, happy every way, sure, and secured from all danger: contrariwise, a fool and lewd man is able to say of himself,

*Of wicked parts (to say I dare be bold)*

*So full I am, that unweil I can hold.*

And yet forsooth, they think it meet and seemly for such as these to remain alive, but for those to quit this life. And good cause why, quoth *Chrysippus*, for we are not to measure our life by good things or evil, but by such as are according to nature. Seehow these Philosophers maintain ordinary customs, and teach according to common notions. Say you so (good sir) ought not he who maketh profession of looking into the estate of life and death, to search aloft and consider.

*What rule at home in house, what work there is*

*How things do stand; what goes well, what amiss.*

Should not he (I say) ponder and examine as it were by the ballance, what things incline and bend more to felicity and what to infelicity, and thereby to chuse that which is profitable? but to lay his ground and make his reckoning to live happily or no by things indifferent, which neither do good nor hurt? According to such presuppositions and principles as these, were it not convenient for him who wanteth nothing of all that is to be avoided, to chuse for to live: and contrariwise, for him to leave this life, who enjoyeth all that is to be wished for and desired? And albeit (my good friend *Lamprias*) it be a senseless absurdity, to say that those who taste of no evil, should forsake this life: yet is it more absurd & beside all reason, that for the not having of some indifferent thing, a man should call away and abandon that which is simply good; like as these men do, leaving felicity and vertue, which they presently enjoy, for default of riches and health, which they have not. And to this purpose we may wel and fitly alledge these verses out of *Homar*:

*And then from Glaucus, Jupiter*

*All wit and sense did take,*

*When he with Diomedes would*

*A foolish bargain make*

*For brazen armour to exchange*

*his own of gold most fine,*

*An hundred oxen richly worth,*

*for that which went for nine.*

And yet those armies made of Brass, were of no less use in battell, than the other of Gold: whereas the decent feature of the body and health, according to the Stoicks, yield no profit at all, nor make the one jot for felicity. Howbeit, these men for all that, are content to exchange wisdom for health, inasmuch as they hold that it would have become *Heraclius* well enough and *Phercydes*, to have cast off their wisdom and vertue, had it been in their power so to do, in case thereby they might have been rid of their maladies, the one of the lowlie disease, and the other of the Dropie. And if *Circe* had filled two cups with several medicines and potions, the one making fools of wife men, and the other, wife men of fools, *Ulysses* ought to have drunk that of folly, rather than to change his humane shape into the form of a beast, having in it wisdom withal, and by consequence felicity also. And they say, that even wisdom and prudence it self teacheth as much, and commandeth in this wife: Let me alone, and suffer me to perish, in case I must be carried to and fro in the form and shape of an Ass. But this wisdom and prudence will some man say, which prescribeth such things, is the wisdom of an ass; if to be wife and happy is of it self good, and to bear the face of an ass indifferent. There is (they say) a nation of the *Aethiopians* where a dog is their king; he is saluted by the title and name

\* Or pieces of

coyn ha-

ving the

form of an

ex stamped

upon them.

of a king, and hath all honours done unto him, and Temples dedicated, as are done unto kings. But men they be that bear rule and perform those functions, and offices which appertain unto Governors of Cities and magistrates. Is not this the very case of the Stoicks? for vertue with them hath the name, and carrieth the show and appearance of good, it alone they say, is expetible, profitable, and expedient; but they frame all their actions, they Philosophize, they live and die, according to the will, precepts, and commandment as it were of things indifferent. And yet there is not an Aethiopian so hardy as to kill that dog their king; but he sitteth upon a Throne under a cloth of estate, and is adored of them in all reverence: but these Stoicks deliver this vertue of theirs, and cause it to perish while they are wholly possessed of health and riches. But the corollarie which *Chrysippus* himself, hath for a final set unto these their doctrines, easeth me of farther pains, that I need not to stand more upon this point: For whereas (quoth he) there be in nature things good, things bad, and things mean or indifferent; there is no man, but he would chuse rather to have that which is good, then the indifferent or that which is bad: and to prove the truth hereof, let us take witness of the very gods, when as we do crave of them in our prayers and orisons, principally the possession and fruition of good things; if not, yet at leastwise the power and grace to avoid evils; but that which is neither good nor evil, we never desire for to have in stead of good; many we can be content and will to enjoy it, in lieu of evil. But this *Chrysippus* here inverting and perverting clean the order of nature, transposeth and transferreth out of the middle place between, the mean and indifferent into the last, and reducing the last bringeth it back into the midst; giving as tyrants do to wicked persons, the preeminence of superior place, with authority and credit unto evil things; enjoying us by order of law, first to seek for that which is good; secondly, for that which is evil; and last of all to repute that worst, which is neither good nor evil: as if a man should next unto heaven set hell, and reject the earth and all the elements about it into the pit of *Tartarus* beneath:

*Right far remote, where under ground  
The gulf that lies, no man can found.*

Having then said in his third book of Nature: That it is better for a man to live in the state of a fool, yea though he never should become wise, than not to live at all; he addeth thus much moreover word for word: For such are the good things of men, that even the evil things after a sort are preferred before those which are mean, and in the midst between; not that these go before, but reason, which jointly to live, availeth more, although we should continue fools all the daies of our life: yea and to be plain, albeit we should be wicked, unjust, breakers of the laws, enemies to the gods, and in one word, wretched and unhappy; for all these concur in those that live fools. Is it better then to be unhappy, than not unhappy; to suffer harm, rather than not to suffer harm; to commit injustice, than not to commit injustice; to transgress the laws, than not to transgress the laws: which is as much to say, as is it fit and expedient to do those things which are not fit and expedient; and beforeseth it to live otherwise than it becometh? Yea forthwith: For worse it is to be without reason and sensibly, than to be foolish. What aile they then, and what takes them in the head, that they will not avow and confess that to be evil, which is worse than evil? And why do they affirm that we are to avoid folly alone, if it be meet to fly no less, nay rather much more, that disposition which is not capable nor susceptible of folly? But wherefore should any man be offended and scandalized hereat, if he call to mind that which this Philosopher wrote in his second Book of Nature, where he avoucheth: That vice was not made without some good use and profit, for the whole world? But it will be better to recite this doctrine, even in his own words, to the end that you may know in what place they range vice, and what speech they make thereof, who accuse *Xenocrates* and *Speusippus*, for that they reputed not health to be an indifferent thing, nor riches unprofitable. As for vice (quoth he) it is limited in regard of other accidents beside: for it is also in some sort according to nature; and it may I say, it is not altogether unprofitable in respect of the whole, for otherwise there would not be any good; and therefore it may be inferred, that there is no good among the gods, in as much as they can have none evil: neither when at any time *Jupiter* having resolved the whole matter into himself, shall become one, and shall take away all other differences, will there be any more good, considering there will be no evil to be found. But true it is that in a dance or quier, there will be an accord and measure, although there be none in it that singeth out of tune and maketh a discord: as also health in mans body, albeit no part thereof were pained or diseased: but vertue without vice can have no generation. And like as in some medicinal concoctions, there is required the poison of a viper or such like serpent, and the gall of the beast *Hyæna*; even for there is another kind of necessary conveniency between the wickedness of *Melitus*, and the justice of *Socrates*; between the discoloured demeanor of *Cleon*, and the honest carriage of *Pericles*. And what means could *Jupiter* have made, to bring forth *Hercules* and *Lycurgus* into the world, if he had not withall made *Sardanapalus* and *Phalaris* for us? And it is a great marvel if they say not also, that the Phthisick or ulcer of the lungs, was sent among men for their good plight of body, and the gout for swift footmanship: and *Achilles* had not worn long hair, unless *Thersites* had been bald. For what difference is there between those that alledge these doctores fooleries or rave so absurdly; and such as say that loofels of life and whoredome were not unprofitable for continence, and injustice for justice? So that we had need to pray unto the gods that there might be alwaies fin and wickedness,

*False leading smooth and glosing tongue,  
Deceitful wains and fraud among.*

in

in case when these be gone, vertue depart and perish withall. But will you see now and behold the most elegant devise and pleasantest invention of his? For like as Comedies (quoth he) carry otherwhiles ridiculous Epigrams or inscriptions, which considered by themselves, are nothing worth, howbeit they give a certain grace to the whole Poeme: even so, a man may well blame and detect vice in Providence, even as a lewd Epigram composed by the express will of the Poet, surpasseth all imagination of absurdity: for if this were true, how can the gods be the givers of good things, rather than evil? or how can wickedness any more be enemy to the gods, or hated by them? or what shall we have to say and answer to such blasphemous sentences of the Poets, founding to fill in religious cases, as these:

*God once dispos'd some house to overthrow,  
Twixt men some cause and seeds of strife to sow.*

Again:

*Which of the gods twixt them did kindle fire,  
Thus to contest in terms of wrath and ire?*

Moreover, a foolish and lewd Epigram doth embellish and adorn the Comedies, serving to that end for which it was composed by the Poet, namely, to please the spectators, and to make them laugh. But *Jupiter* whom we furnished, Paternall, Fatherly, Supream, Sovereign, Just, Righteous, and according to *Findarus*, *Æschylus*, that is to say, the best and most perfect Artisan, making this world as he hath manner of a City common to gods and men, for to inhabit together with justice and vertue, in one accord and happily, what need had he, to this most holy and venerable end, of Theeves, Robbers, Murderers, Homicides, Paracides, and Tyrants? for surely vice and wickedness was not the entry of some Morisque dance or ridiculous Far-sport, carrying a delectable grace with it and pleasing to God; neither was it set unto the affairs of men, for recreation and pastime, to make them sport, or to move cord and convenience with Nature, which is so highly celebrated and commended. Furthermore, the said lewd Epigram, is but a final part of the Poem, and occupieth a very little room in a Concocted grace of such matters as seem to have been well and prettily devised: whereas all humane affairs are full thoroughout of vice: and mans life even from the very first beginning and entrie, as it were of the Prologue unto the small conclusion of all and Epilogue, yea and to the very plaudite, being disordinate, degenerate, full of perturbation and confusion, and having no one part thereof pure and unblemishable, as these Men say, is the most filthy unpleasant and odious entree of all others, that can be exhibited. And therefore gladly would I demand and learn of them, in what respect vice was made profitable to this universall world: for I suppose he will not say it was not for Divine and Civil things: because it were a meer and ridiculous mockery to affirm that unless there were bred and reared among men vice, malice, avarice and leasing, or unless we were robbed, pilled and spoiled, unless we flandered and murdered one another, the Sun would not run his ordinary course, nor the Heavens keep the set seasons, and usuall revolutions of time, ne yet the earth feared in the midst and centre of the world, yeld the causes of winde and rain. It remaineth then, that vice and sin was profitably engendered for us, and for our affairs: and haply this is in which they themselves would seem to say. And are we indeed the better in health for being insull? or have we thereby more plenty and abundance of things necessary; availeth our wickedness: ought to make us more beautifull and better equipped, or serveth it us in any stead to make us more strong and able of body? They answer No. But with a silent name onely, and a certain blind opinion and weening of these night-walking Sophisters, not like indeed unto vice which is conspicuous enough and exposed to the view of the whole world, in such sort as it is not possible that it should bring any detriment or ought that is unprofitable, and least of all, O good God, of vertue, for which we were born. And what absurdity were it to say, that the commodious instruments of the husband man, the Mariner or the Carter, should turn their turns for to attain unto their purpose and intended end: but that which hath been created by God for vertue, should corrupt, mar, and destroy vertue? But peradventure it is more than time now, to pass unto some other point, and to let this go.

*Lamprias*

Nay I beseech you good sir of all loves and for my sake do not so: For I desire to know and understand how these men bring in evil things before the good, and vice before vertue.

*Diadumenus*

You say well, and certes my friend this is a point worth the knowledge: much vain jangling and prattle verily do these men make, but in the end they come to this conclusion, that prudence is the science of good things and evil together: for that otherwise it could not stand but must needs altogether fall to the ground: For like as if we admit that there be truth, it cannot otherwise be but that filly and untruth should be likewise hardby: so it is meet and stands to good reason, that if there be good things, the evil also must have their being.

*Lamprias*

To grant the one of these not to be amiss said, yet me thinks I see of my self, that the other is clean contrary. For I discern very well the difference: because that which is not truth, must immediately be false but

Ffff

but that which is not evil, is not by and by good: For between true and false there is no mean: but between good and evil there is to wit, indifferent. Neither followeth it necessarily, that both good and evil things should have their substance together, and that if the one be, the other likewise should ensue. For it may be that nature had good, and required not the evil, so that it might have that which was neither good nor evil. But as touching the former reason, if your Academicks say ought of it, I would gladly hear from your mouth.

*Diadumenus.*

Yes marry (quoth he) much there is alledged by them, but for this present relate I will, that which is most necessary. First and foremost, a meer folly it is to think that good things and evil have their subsistence for Prudence sake. For contrariwise, when good and evil was before, then Prudence followeth as like as Physick ensued upon things holime and breading diseases, which are supposed to have been before. For surely the good and evil came not up nor were brought forth, to the end that there should be Prudence: but that faculty or power whereby we judge and discern between evil and good is called Prudence: like as the Sight is a sense which serveth to distinguish black from white, which colours had not their being first, to the end that we should have our Seeing, but contrariwise need we had of our Seeing for to discern the said colours. Secondly when the world in that generall conflagration, which they hold and talk of, shall be all on a light fire and burnt, there will remain behind nothing that is evil, but all shall then be wife and prudent: And therefore confesse they must, will they nill they, that there is Prudence although there be no evil, neither is it necessary, that if Wisdom be, evil also should have a being. But say it was absolutely so, that Prudence were the Science of evil and good, what harm or absurdity would follow, if upon the abolishing and annulling of evil things there were no Prudence any more, but some other virtue in lieu thereof, which were not the science of evil and good together, but onely of good? Like as among colours, if the black were quite perished and gon for ever, who will force us to confesse that the sense of Seeing is likewise lost? And who would impeach or debar us for saying that sight is not the sense of discerning black and white? Surely if any man would force upon us the contrary, what inconvenience and absurdity were there to answer him thus, Sir if we have not that sense that you speak of, yet have another sense and natural power instead of it, whereby we apprehend colours that be white and not white. And verily for my own part I do not think that if there were no bitter things in the world, our taste should be therefore utterly lost, or the sense of Feeling in case all dolor and pain were gon: no more am I persuaded that Prudence should be abolished, if all evil were rid out of the way. But like as those senses would remain to apprehend sweet favours and pleasant objects of feelings, so this Prudence also would continue to be the science of things good and not good. As for those who are of another opinion, let them take the name to themselves, so they leave us the thing indeed. But over and besides all this, what should hinder us to say, that the evil is in cogitation and intelligence; but good in reality and essence? like as, I suppose the gods enjoy the real presence of health, whereas they have the intelligence of the Fever and Plurisie: considering that we also, albeit we were pestered with all the evils in the world, and had no assistance at all of good things as these men say, yet we want not the understanding what is prudence, what is good, and what is good felicity.

And this is a wonderfull thing, if there being no virtue present, yet some there are who teach what Virtue is, & inform us in the comprehension thereof; whereas if there were no such thing, it is impossible to have the intelligence of it; for do but consider what they would persuade us to, who reason Philosophically against common Conceptions, namely, That by foolishness and ignorance, we comprehend Wisdom and Prudence; but Prudence without folly and ignorance, cannot conceive so much, as ignorance it self. And if nature had necessarily need of the generation of evil, Certes, one example or two at the most of evil were sufficient; or if you will have it so, requirit it was that there should be brought forth ten wicked persons, or a thousand, or ten thousand, and not such an infinite multitude of vices, as the sands of the sea, the dust, or the feathers of divers plumed birds, could not afford to great a number: but of Virtue not so much as a bare dream or vain vision. They that were the Wardens and Masters at *Lacedaemon*, of those public halles or dining places called *Phiditias*, were wont to bring forth and show openly unto their youth, two or three of their slaves called *Helots*, full of wine, and stark drunken, that they might know thereby, what a shamefull and foul thing it was to be drunken, and so take heed of that vice, and learn to be sober. But in this life there be many such examples of vice in our actions; for there is not so much as one sober unto virtue, but we all trip and stumble, nay we wander as if our brains turned round about, living shamefully in misery; and so farre forth are we intoxicated with our own reason and Self-conceits, filled with so great perturbation and folly, that we may be well and fitly likened to those Dogs which as *Aesop* tells the Tale, seeing certain skins floating above the water, gaped so greedily for to have them, that they would needs drink up all the Sea before them, for to be sure of the said skins; but ere they could come by them, they drunk so much as they burst again: and even we hoping, by reason to acquire Glory and Reputation, and thereby to attain unto Virtue, are spoiled, mard, and destroyed therewith, before we can reach thereunto, being before hand laden with a mighty deal of meer heady, and bitter vice, if it be so, as these men give it out, that even they who have made good progresse and proceeded to the end, feel for all that no Ease, no Alteration, no Remission, or Breathing time at all from Folly and Infelicity. But mark I pray again, how he who saith,

that

the Vice was not produced and brought forth into the world unprofitably, depainteth it unto you what manner of thing he described it to be, and what an heritage it is for him who hath it? For in his trade of Duties or Offices he saith: That the vicious and sinful person, hath no want nor need of any thing; that nothing is profitable, nothing meet and convenient for him. How then is vice commodious, wherewith neither health it self is expedient, nor store of money, ne yet advancement and promotion? And hath a man no need of those things, wherof some are precedent, preminent, and to be preferred, yea, and beleeve me, very profitable and commodious; others according to nature, as they themselves term them? And of all these doth no man find need, unless he become wife? And fo by this reckoning, hath the lewd and foolish man no need to become wife; neither be men thirsty or hungry, before they are made wife? So that if they be dry, have no need of water, nor if hungry, bread?

*Resembling right those gentle guests,  
who might else did require,  
But under roose to shrowd their heads,  
and warm themselves at fire.*

And so be like he had no need of covert nor of mantle, who said:

*Give Hipponax a cloak of his corps so fold,  
For why, shake and shiver hard for cold?*

But will you pronounce a paradox indeed, such an one as is extravagant and singular by it self? Say briefly then; That a wife man wanteth nought, and hath need of nothing; he is rich, he is full and fortunate, he is of himself sufficient, blessed, happy, and every way absolute. But what a dizziness and diddleness of the brain is this to say; That he who is indigent of nothing, yet hath need of the good things which he hath; and that the lewd and vicious person is indigent of many things, and yet needeth nothing? for this is the very assertion which *Chrysippus* holdeth: That wicked persons have no need, and yet are indigent, turling, shifting, and transposing the common notions, like unto Cackal bones or Cheese-men upon the board. For all men deem thus, that to have need, goeth but a farre indigence, supposing him that standeth in need of things which are not ready at hand, nor easie to be gotten, is indigent. To make this more plain, no man is said to be indigent of horns or of wings, for that he hath no need of them; but we say truly and properly, that some have need of Amour, of Money, and of Apparell, when in the penury and want of these things, they neither have them nor can come by them, to supply their necessity. But these Stoicks are so desirous to be thought always for to broach somewhat against common sense and Conception, that many times they forget themselves and slip out of their own proper opinions, so much affected they are and given to new conceits; like as in this place, if you please to cast your eye unto *Chrysippus* and look somewhat behind, calling to mind what hath heretofore been delivered.

This is one of his Positions, affirmed even against common sense, and vulgar opinion, that no evil and foolish man can find good and profit by any thing; and yet many of them by infection and teaching, proceed forward and profit; many who were slaves, become enfranchised; begged, are delivered; drunken, are guided and led by the hand; sick and diseased, are cured of their maladies; but for all this forthwith, they are never the better whatsoever is done unto them: no benefits they receive, no benefactors they have, no nor neglect those who deserve well of them: and so vicious persons are not unthankfull, no more than are good and wise men. And thus ingratitude is not at all nor hath any being; for that the good never intervert, nor misrecognize the favour and benefit which they have received; and the wicked are capable of none at all. But see (I pray you) what shift they make to save and answer all this: They say (forthwith) that grace, favour, or benefit is ranged in the number of mean things; & that to help or to be helped, appertaineth only to the wife. True it is say they, that wicked men receive also a grace or benefit. What is that? Those who have part in a benefit, have not they also a part of love and commoditie? and whereto a grace or benefit reacheth, doth nothing that is commodious and convenient, extend thither? And is there ought else that maketh a demerit or pleasure done to be a grace, than that the party who doth the pleasure should in some respect be commodious unto the needy receiver?

*Lamprias.*

But let these matters pass, and tell us what is that *episteme*, that is to say, utility, which they prize so highly, and wherof they make to great account?

*Diadumenus.*

This is a thing (I may tell you) which they revere and keep as a great matter and a singularity for their Sages only, and yet leave them not so much as the name of it. If one wife man, say they, do but put forth his finger prudently, wheresoever it be, all the wife men that are in the whole Continent of this habitable world find this *episteme* and utility by it. This is the only gift and work of the amity that is among them, and in this do determine and end the virtues of wife men, namely the intercourse of common profit and utility, passing to and fro between them. As for *Aristotle*, he doted, *Xenocratus* also doted, who taught and affirmed that men had help from the gods, help from their Parents, and help by their Teachers and Schoolmasters: but never understood they this wonderfull help and commoditie, which these wife men receive one from another, when they be moved to virtue, although they be not together, nor nor so much as know one another. And verily all men do think, that to sleep, to lay up, to keep, to dispense, and bestow, is conducing and profitable, when there is

FFFF 2

received

received profit and commodity by such things. And a good substantial householdier buys himself locks and keys, he keepeth his cellars, his closets and coffers,

*Taking great joy his chamber door  
with hand for to unlock;  
Where lies of gold and silver both,  
his treasure and his stock.*

But to gather and lay up, to keep with great care, diligence and pain, those things which are for nothing profitable, is neither honourable, nor yet seemly and honest. If then *Ulysses* being taught by *Circé* to make that fast knot, had with it tied fire and scaled up as it were, not the gifts and presents which *Alcinous* gave him, to wit, treasuries, pots, plate, clothes, apparell, and gold; but some trash, as sticks, stones, and other pelf raked together, thinking it a great felicity for him to possess and keep charily such riffs, raffs and trumperie: who would have praised and commended him for it, or imitated this foolish forecast, witlesse providence, and vain diligence? And yet this is the goodly and beautifull honesty of the Stoicks profession in general, this is their honourable gravity, this is their beatitude; and nothing else is it, but an heaping up, a keeping and preserving of things unprofitable and indifferent. For such be those which they say are according to nature; and much more those outward matters: so far as sometimes they compare the greatest riches, with fringes and Chamber-pots of gold, yea and (I assure you) otherwhiles as it falleth out, with oyl Cruets. And afterwards, like as those who think they have most insolently and proudly abused with blasphemous words and polluted the Temples, the sacred ceremonies and religious services of some gods or divine powers, presently change their note, and become penitent persons, and falling down prostrate, or sitting humbly below upon the ground, bleste and magnifie the heavenly power of the God-head; even so they, as incurring the vengeance and plague of God for their presumptuous follies, arrogant and vain speeches, are found puddering and raking again in these indifferent things, nothing indeed pertinent unto them; setting out a throat and crying as loud as they can, what a gay matter, what a goodly and honourable thing it is, to gather and lay up such commodities, and especially the communion and fellowship of enjoying and using them: also that whosoever want the same, and cannot come by them, have no reason to live any longer; but either to lay violent hands on themselves, or by long fasting and abstinence from all viands, to shorten their lives, bidding vertue farewell for ever. And these men verily, howsoever they repute *Theognis* to be a man altogether of a base and abject mind, for saying thus in verse,

*A man from poverty to flie,  
O Cyrrus, ought himself to cast  
Headlong from rocks most steep and bie,  
Or into seas as deep and vast.*

themselves mean while in prose give these exhortations, and say, that to avoid a grievous malady, and escape exceeding pain, a man ought (if he had not a sword or dagger near at hand, nor a poisoned cup of Hemlock) to cast himself into the Sea, or else fall headlong and break his neck from some steep Rock: yet affirm they, that neither the one nor the other is hurtfull, evill or unprofitable; nor maketh those miserable, who fall into such accidents. Whence then shall I begin (quoth he) what groundwork and foundation of duty shall I lay; or what shall I make the subject and matter of vertue, leaving Nature, and abandoning that which is according to Nature? And whereat (I pray you, good sir) begin *Aristotle* and *Theophrastus*? what principles take *Xenocrates* and *Polemon*? And even *Zeno* himself, hath he not followed them, in supposing Nature and that which is according to Nature, for to be the Elements of felicity? But these great Clerks verily, rested here in these things, a Eligible and Expetible, good and profitable; adjoining moreover unto them, vertue, which emploieth the same, and worketh by each of them according to their proper use; thinking in so doing, to accomplish a perfect and entire life, and to consummate that concord and agreement, which is in truth fortible and consonant unto Nature. For they made no confused mish-mash, nor were contrary to themselves, as those who leap and mount on high from the ground, and immediately fall down upon it again, and in naming the same things, meet to be chosen, and yet not Expetible; proper and convenient, and without all good; unprofitable, and yet fit for good use; nothing at all pertinent to us, and yet forthright, the very principles, of duties and offices. But looke what was the speech of these noble and famous personages, the same also was their life; their deeds (I say) were answerable and conformable to their words. Contrariwise, the Sect of these Stoicks, doth according to that crafty woman whom *Archilochus* describeth, to carry water in the one hand, and fire in the other: for in some of their doctrines and assertions they receive and admit Nature, in another they reject her: or to speak more plainly, in their acts and deeds they adhere and cleave unto those things which are according to Nature, as being Eligible and simply good; but in their disputations and discourses, they refuse and condemn the same as things indifferent, and nothing available to vertue, for the acquiring of felicity: nay, that which worke is, they give her hard and reproachfull tearments. And so far as all men generally are persuaded in their minds, that the sovereign good is a thing joyous, expetible, happy, most honourable, and of greatest dignitie, sufficient of it self, and wanting nothing. See now this sovereign good of theirs, and examine it according to this common opinion: To put forth ones finger like a sage and wife Philosopher, doth this make that joyous good? or what exoptable thing I pray you, is a prudent

a prudent torture? who casteth himself down headlong from an high rock, so he do it with a colour of reason and honesty, is he happy and fortunate? is that most honourable and of greatest price and dignity; which reason many times chafeth to reject, for another thing that of it self is not good? is that all-sufficient in it self, accomplished and perfect, which whosoever do presently enjoy, it happily he cannot obtain without, some one of these indifferent things, they will not deign to live any longer? was there ever known any discourse or disputation wherein use and ordinary custome suffered more outrage and abuse, which stealing and plucking from it the true and naturall conceptions, as legitimate children of her own, putteth in the place, Baits, Changelings, of a monstrous and savage kind, and constraineth it to love, cherish, and keep them in lieu of the other? And thus have they done in treating of good things and evil, expetible and to be avoided, proper and strange; which ought to have been more clearly and plainly distinguished, than hot from cold, or white colours from black. For the apprehensions and conceits of these qualities, are from without forth brought in by the senses naturall; but the other are within us, taking their original from those good things that we have within us. Now these men entering into the question, and common place soveraign of felicity, with their Logick subtilties, as if they were to handle the lying sophisme called *Pseudomenos*; or that wretched manner of reasoning, named *Kyriton* have not solved one of the doubts and questions which were, but moved, and raised an infinite number of others that were not there before.

Moreover, there is no man who knoweth not that there being two sorts of good thing; the one which is the very utmost end, and the other, the means to attain thereto: the one is more excellent and perfect of the twain. And *Chrysippus* himself knoweth well enough this difference, as it may appear by that which he hath written in his third Book of Good things: for he disagreeeth with those who are of opinion, that the end or soveraign good, is science; and putteth this down in his Treatise of Justice: If there be any who suppose that pleasure is the end of good things, he thinketh not that Justice can be safe; if not the final end, but simply good and no more; he is of another mind. I do not think that you would hear me at this present to rehearse his own words; for his third Book as touching Justice, is extant and to be had every where. When as they say therefore (my friend) elsewhere, that no good thing is greater or less than another, but that the final end is equal with that which is not the end, and no better than it, it is evident, that they be contrary and repugnant, not only to the common notions, but also to their own very words. And again, of two evils, the one maketh us worse than we were when it came unto us, and the other burthens us indeed, but maketh us not worse: that evil in mine opinion is the greater which maketh us worse: neither doth that more hurt, which causeth us not to be the worse. And *Chrysippus* verily confesseth, that there be certain fears, sorrows, and deceitfull illusions, which well may hurt and offend us, but not maketh us worse. But read over and peruse the first of those Books which are written against *Plato*, as concerning Justice: for in respect of other causes, it were very well done and worth your labour, to note the frivolous babbling in that place of this man, where he makes no spare to deliver all matters and Doctrines whatsoever indifferently, even those as well of his own Sect as of other strangers, flat opposite to common sense: as for example, That it is lawfull to propose two ends, and two scopes of our life, and not to referre all that ever we do unto one end. And yet more than that, is this also a common Notion, That the end verily is one, but every thing that is done, ought to have a Relation to another; and yet of necessity they must abide the one or the other. For if the first things according to nature be not expedient for themselves and the last end; but rather, the reasonable election and choice of them; and every man doth what lies in him, to have and obtain those things which are first according to nature, and all actions and operations have their reference thither, namely to acquire and enjoy the principall things according to nature: if (I say) they think so, it must needs be that without aspiring and aiming for to get and attain those things, they have another end to which they must refer the election and choice of the said things, and not the things themselves: for thus will be the end, even to know how to chuse them well and to take them wisely; but the things themselves and the enjoying of them, will be of small moment, being as a matter and subject which hath the dignity and estimation: for thus I suppose they use and put down in writing this very word to shew the difference.

*Lamprias.*

Certes you have passing well and worthily reported unto us, both what they say, and how they deliver it.

*Diadumenus.*

But mark I beseech you, how they fare like unto those who will needs strain themselves to leap over and beyond their own shadow; for they leave not behind, but carry evermore with them some absurdity in their speech, and the same far remote alwaies from common sense: for as if one should say, That an archer doth all that lieth in him, not to hit the mark, but to do all that ever he can; he might be justly taken for a man, who spake enigmatically and by dark riddle, and uttered strange and prodigious words: even so do these old dotting fooles, who with all their power endeavour to maintain, that to obtain the things according to nature, is not the end of aiming and aspiring to things according to nature; but forthright to take and chuse them; and that the desire of health and seeking after it in any man, endeth not in health of each one, but contrariwise, that health is referred to the appetite and seeking after it: saying moreover, that to Walk, to read, or speak aloud, to endure Sections or Incisions, yea and to take purging Medicines, so all be done by reason, are the



ends of health, and not it, the end of those means. Certes, these men doat, rave, and speak idly, as well as they who should say; let me go to supper, that we may sacrifice, bath, or sweat in the flogh, Nay (that which more is) that which these men say, perverteth order and custome, and containeth a confusion, shuffling and turning upside down all our affairs whatsoever: We study not say they, to walk in due time, for to concoct and digest our meats well; but we concoct and digest our meats, because we might walk in due season. Why? Hath nature given us health for Ellebore, or rather brought forth Ellebore for health sake? For what could be uttered more strange and absurd, than such propositions as these? and what difference is there between him who saith, that health was made for medicable drogues, and not drogues medicable for health, and another who holdeth, that the gathering, the choise, the composition and use of such mediciners, is to be preferred before health itself? or rather he thinks that health is not in any respect expetible: but he seeth down the very end in the peeing and handling of those medicines, affirming forsooth that appetite is the end of fridion, and not fruition of appetite: And why not (quoth he) all while there be added thereto these termes; and considerately with reason. True will we say again, if a man have regard unto the obtaining and enjoying of the thing which he pursueth; for otherwise that considerate reason is to no purpose, in case all be done for to obtain that, the fruition whereof is neither honourable nor happy.

*Lamprias.*

And since we are fallen upon this discourse, a man may say, that any thing else whatsoever, is according to common sense rather, than to hold, that without having notice or conception of good, a man may desire and pursue after it; for you see how *Chrysippus* himself driveth *Arjiston* into these streights, as to imagine and dream of a certain indifference in things tending to that which is neither good nor ill, before that the said good and ill is sufficiently known and understood; for so it might seem that this indifference must needs subsist before it be so, that a man cannot conceive the intelligence of it, unless the good were first understood, which is nothing else but the onely and soveraign good indeed.

*Diadumenus.*

But consider I pray you, and mark now this indifference \* taken out of the Stoicks schoole, and which they call *ἀδιαφορία*, after what manner, and whereby it hath given us the mean to imagine and conceive in our mind that good? for if without the said good, it is not possible to conceive and imagine the indifference respective to that which is not good; much less the intelligence of good things yieldeth any cogitation unto them, who had not before some prenoxiion of the good. But like as there is no cogitation, of the art of things which be wholesome or breeding sickness in them who had not a pre-cognition before of those things: even so it is impossible for them to conceive the science of good and evil things, who had no fore-conceit what were good and what were evil? What then is good? nothing but Prudence; and what is Prudence, nothing but Science: and so according to that old common proverb, \* *ἡ ἀρετή ἐπιστήμη*, that is to say *Jupiters* Corinth: is oftentimes applied unto their manner of reasoning. For let it be I pray you, the turning of the Pestill round about, because you may not be thought to scoffe and laugh at them, although in truth their speech is much after that manner; for it seemeth that for the intelligence of good; one hath need to understand Prudence: and again to seek for Prudence in the intelligence of good; being driven to pursue the one alwaies for the other, and so to faile both of the one and the other, which implieth a meer contrariety, that we must alwaies understand the thing before, which cannot be understood apart. Besides, there is another way, whereby a man may perceive and see, not the perversion and distortion, but the very everfiion, and destruction of all their reasons.

They hold that the very substance of good, is the reasonable and considerate election of that which is according to nature; now this election is not considerate which is directed to some end, as is before said: And what is this? Nothing else say they, but to discourse with reason in the elections of those things, which be according to nature. First and foremost then, the conception of the Sovereign good, is perished and clean gone; for this considerate discoursing in elections, is an operation depending of the habitude of good Discourse, and therefore being compelled to conceive this habitude from the end, and the end not without it, we come short of the intelligence of them both. And again, that which yet is more, by all the reason in the world, it must needs be that the said reasonable and considerate election, was the election of things good, possible and cooperant to the attaining of the end. For to chuse such things which be neither expedient, nor honourable, nor yet any way eligible; how can it stand with reason: for suppose it were as they say, that the end were a reasonable election of things which have some dignity and worthinesse, making unto felicity, see I beseech you how their Discourse and disputation ariseth unto a trim point and goodly conclusion in the end: For the end (say they) is the good Discourse, in making choise of those things which have dignity, making unto happinesse. Now when you hear these words, think you not my good friend, that this is a very strange and extravagant opinion?

*Lamprias.*

Yes verily; but I must willingly know, how this happeneth?

*Diadumenus.*

Then must you lay your ear close, and hearken with great attention, for it is not for every one to conceive this enigmatical Riddle, but hear you Sir, and make me answer: is not the end by their saying, the good Discourse in elections according to nature?

*Diadumenus*

That is their saying.

*Diadumenus.*

*Lamprias.*  
And these things which be according to nature, they chuse, (do they not) as good, or having some dignities and preferences inducing to the end, or to some other thing else.

*Diadumenus.*

I think not so: but surely, to the end.

*Lamprias.*

Having discovered thus much already, see now to what point they are come, namely; that their end is to discourse well of felicity.

*Diadumenus.*

They say directly, that they neither have nor conceive any other thing of felicity, but this preclarity of Discourse touching the elections of things, that are of worth. Howbeit some there be who say, that all this refutation is directed against *Antipater* alone, and not the whole Sect of the Stoicks, who perceiving himself to be urged and hardly pressed by *Carnadeus*, fell into these vanities and foolish shifts for his evasion.

Moreover, as touching that which is discoursed and taught in the Stoicks School, Of Love, even against common notions, it concerneth all the Suppots in general of that Sect, who have every one of them their hand in the absurdity thereof: for they avouch that young youths, are foul and deformed, if they be vicious and foolish: but the wife only are beautifull: and yet of these that are thus fair and beautifull, there was never any one yet either beloved, or lovely and amiable. And yet this is not so absurd: but they say moreover, that such as are in love with those who be foul, cease to love them when they are become fair. And who hath ever seen or known such a kind of love which should kinde and shew it self presently upon the discovery of the bodies deformity, and the souls vice: and incessantly be quenched, and vanish away after the knowledge of passing beauty, together with Justice and temperance? And verily, such I suppose do properly resemble these gnats, which love to settle upon Vinegar, fowr Wine, or the some thereof: but the good and pleasant potable Wine they care not for, but flie from it. As for that emphaticall appearance of beauty (for that is the term they give it) which they say is the alluring and attractive bait of love: first and foremost it carrieth no probability with it, nor likelihood of reason. For in those who are most foul and wicked in the high degree, there can be no such emphaticall appearance of that beauty: in case it be so as they say, that the lewdnesse of manners lieth in the face, and infecteth the visage: for there be some of them who expound this strange Position as strangely, saying that a foul person is worthy to be loved, because there is some hope and expectation, that one day he will become fair: marry when he hath gotten this beauty once, and is withall become good and honest, then he is beloved of no man. For love say they is a certain hunting, as it were after a young body, as yet rude and imperfect, howbeit framed by nature unto vertue.

*Lamprias.*

And what other things do we now, my good friend, but refuse the errors of their Sect, who do thus force pervert, and destroy all our common conceptions with their actions which be senseless, and their words and terms as unsuall and strange? for there was no person to hinder this Love of wise men toward young folk, if Affection were away: although all men and women too, both think and imagine Love to be such a passion, as the Woers of *Penelope* in *Homer* seem to acknowledge,

*Whose heat of Love was such, that in their heart*

*They wisht in bed to lie with her apart.*

Like as *Jupiter* also said to *Juno* in another place of the said Poet:  
*Come let us now to bed both go, and there with sweet delight*  
*Solace our selves: for never canst before remember I,*  
*That any Love to women fair, no nor to goddesse bright*  
*Thus tam'd my heart, or prick'd me so, with them to company.*

*Diadumenus.*

Thus you see how they expell and drive Morall Phillosophie into such matters as these,

*So intricate and tortuous,*

*So winding quite throughout,*

*That nothing founds therein found,*

*But all turns round about.*

And yet they deprave, vilipend, disgrace, and flout all others, as if they were the men alone who reformed nature and custome into their integrity as is ought to be, instituted their Speech accordingly: But nature of it self doth divert and induce, by appetitions, pursuits, inclinations and impulsions, each thing to that which is proper and fit for it. And as for the Custome of Logick, being so wrangling and contentious as it is, it receiveth no good at all nor profit: like as the Ear diseased by vain sounds is filled with thickenesse and hardnesse of hearing. Of which if you think to good we will begin anew and discourse else where another time: But now for this present, let us take in hand to run over their naturall Phillosophy, which no less troubleth and confoundeth common Anticipations, and Conceptions in the main Principles, and most important Points, than their Morall Doctrine

as touching the ends of all things First and foremost, this is apparently absurd, and against all common sense, to say that a thing is, and yet hath no being nor essence: and the things which are not, yet have a being: which though it be most absurd, they affirm even of the universal world: for putting down this supposition that there is round about the said world a certain infinite voidness; they affirm that the universal world is neither body nor bodiless: whereupon ensue that the world is, and yet hath no existence. For they call bodies only, existent: for as much as it is the property of a thing exist to do and suffer somewhat: And seeing this universal nature hath no existence; therefore it shall neither do nor suffer ought; neither shall it be in any place, for that which occupieth place is a body, but that universal thing is not a body. Moreover that which occupieth one and the same place, is said to remain and rest: and therefore the said universal nature doth not remain, for that it occupieth no place: and that which more is, it moveth not at all, first because that which moveth, ought to be in a place and room certain. Again, because whatsoever moveth, either moveth it self, or else is moved by another: now that which moveth it self hath certain inclinations either of lightness or ponderosity: which ponderosity and lightness, be either certain habitus, or faculties and powers, or else differences of each body: but that universality, is no body: whereupon it must of necessity follow that the same is neither light nor heavy, and so by good consequence hath in it no Principle or beginning of motion; neither shall it be moved of another, for without and beyond it there is nothing: so that they must be forced to say, as they do indeed, that the said universal nature doth neither rest nor move. In summe, for that according to their opinion, we must not say in any case that it is a body, and yet the Heaven, the Earth, the living Creatures, Plants, Men, and Stones, be Bodies: that which is no body is self shall by these reckonings have parts thereof, which are bodies, and that which is not ponderous, shall have parts weighty, and that which is not light shall have parts light; which is as much against common sense and conceptions, as dreams are not more considering that there is nothing so evident and agreeable to common sense than this distinction, If any thing be not animate, the same is inanimate: and again, if a thing be not inanimate, the same is animate. And yet this manifest evidence they subvert and overthrow, affirming thus as they do, that this universal frame is neither animate, nor inanimate. Over and besides, no man thinketh or imagineth that the same is imperfect, considering that there is no part thereof wanting: and yet they hold it to be imperfect. For (say they) that which is perfect, is finite and determinate; but the whole and universal world, for the infiniteness thereof is indefinite. So by their saying, something there is, that is neither perfect, nor imperfect. Moreover, neither is the said universal frame a part, because there is nothing greater than it; nor yet the whole: for that which is whole must be affirmed likewise to be digested and in order; whereas being as it is, infinite, it is indeterminate and out of order. Furthermore, *The other*, is not the cause of the universal world, for that there is no other beside it; neither is it the cause of *The other*, nor of it self, for that is not made to do any thing, and we take a cause to be that which worketh an effect. Now let case we should demand of all the men in the world, what they imagine *Nothing* to be, and what conceit they have of it, would they not say (think you) that it is that which is neither a cause it self, nor hath any cause of it; which is neither a part, nor yet the whole; neither perfect nor imperfect; neither having a soul, nor yet without a soul; neither moving nor still and quiet, nor subsisting; and neither body, nor without body? For what is all this, but *Nothing*? yet what all others do affirm and verifie of *Nothing*, the same do they alone of the universal world: so that it seemeth they make *All* and *Nothing*, both one. Thus they must be driven to say, that Time is nothing, neither Predicable, nor Proposition, nor Connexion, nor Composition, which be terms of Logick, that they use, no Philosophers so much; and yet they say, that they have no existence nor being. But (that which more is) they hold that truth, although it be, yet it hath no being nor subsistence, but is comprehended only by intelligence, is perceptible and believed, although it have no use or essence. How can this be false, and faved, but that it must surpass the most monstrous absurdity that is? But because it may not be thought that all this smelleth overmuch of the quicks and difficulties in Logick, let us treat of those which are more proper unto naturall Philosophie. Forasmuch therefore, as

*Jupiter is the first, the mid, the last, even all in all,  
By him all things begin, proceed and have their finall.*

they themselves give out, they of all men especially ought to have reformed, rectified, redressed, and reduced to the best order, the common conceptions of men as touching the gods, if haply there had crept into them any error and perplexed doubt; or if not so, yet at leastwise to have, let every man alone, and left them to the opinion which the Laws and Customes of the Countreys wherein they were born, prescribed unto them as touching Religion and Divinity.

*For neither now nor yesterday  
These deep conceits of God began,  
Time out of mind, they have been ay,  
But no man knowes where, how, nor when.*

But these Stoicks having begun even from the domestick goddess *Vesta* (as the proverb saith) to alter and change the opinion established and received in every Countrey, touching Religion and the belief of God, they have not left so much as one conceit or cogitation that way found, sincere and incorrupted. For where is or ever was the man, besides themselves, who doth not conceive in his minde, that God is Immortal and Eternal? what is more generally acknowledged in our common

common Conceptions as touching the gods, or what is pronounced with more assent and accord than such sentences as these?

*And there the gods do alwaies joy  
In heavenly blisse, without annoy.*

Alfo,

*In heaven the gods immortal ever be:  
On earth below, poor mortall men walk we.*

Again,

*Exempt from all discafe and crasse age,  
The gods do live in joy, and pain feel none:  
They fear no death, nor dread the dark passage  
Over the Frith of roaring Acheron.*

There may peradventure be found some barbarous and Savage Nations, who think of no God at all; but never was there man having a Conception and imagination of God, who esteemed him not without to be Immortal and everlasting. For even these vile wretches called *Aethiops* that is to say, *Aethiops*, such as *Diogenes*, *Theodorus*, and *Hippocritus*, gods though they were, could never finde in their hearts to say and pronounce, That God was corruptible. Only, they could not beleve and be persuaded in their mind, that there was any thing in the world not subject to corruption. Thus howsoever they admitted not a subsistence of Immortality and incorruptibility, yet retained they the common anticipation of the gods: but *Chrysippus* and *Cleantes*, having made the Heaven, the Earth, the Air and Sea to ring again, as a man would say, with their words, and filled the whole world with their writings of the gods, yet of so many gods, they make not one Immortal, but *Jupiter* only; and in him they spend and consume all the rest: so that this property in him, to resolve and kill others, is never a jot better, than to be resolved and destroyed himself. For as it is a kind of infirmity, by being changed into another soe dies; so it is no less imbecility to be maintained and nourished by the resolution of others into it self. And this is not like to many other absurdities collected and gathered by consequence out of their fundamental suppositions, or inferred upon other assertions of theirs; but even they themselves cry out with open mouth expressly in all their writings, of the gods, of providence, of destiny and nature, that all the gods had a beginning of their Essence, and shall perish and have an end by fire, melted and resolved, as if they were made of Wax or Tinn. So that to say that a man is Immortal, and that God is immortal, is all one, and the one as absurd and against common sense as the other: nay rather I cannot see what difference there will be between a man and God, in case God be defined, a reasonable animal, and corruptible: for if they oppose and come in with this their fine and subtle distinction, that man is mortal, but God not mortal, yet subject to corruption; mark what an inconvenience doth follow and depend thereupon: for of necessity they must say, either that God is Immortal and corruptible which is all; or else neither Mortal nor Immortal: then which a man cannot (if he would dispute study for it) devise a more strange and monstrous absurdity. I speak this by other; for that these men must be allowed to say any thing, neither have there escaped their tongues and pens, the most extravagant opinions in the world.

Moreover *Cleantes* minding still to fortifie and confirm that burning and conflagration of his, saith: That the Sun will make like unto himself, the Moon with all other Stars, and turn them into him. But that which of all others is most monstrous, the Moon and the other Stars, being forsooth gods, work together with the Sun, unto their own destruction, and confer somewhat to their own inflammation. Now surely this were a very mockery, and ridiculous thing for us to powre out our prayers and orations unto them for our own safety, and to repute them the Saviours of men, if it be kind and naturall for them to make hast unto their own corruption and dissolution. And yet these men cease not by all the means they can to insult over *Epicurus*, crying, *Epicurus* for shame, and redoubling. Out upon him, for that by denying the divine Providence, he troubled and confounded the generall prenomination and Conception in our minds of the gods; for that they are held and reputed by all men, not only Immortal and happy, but also humane and benigne: having a carefull eye, and due regard to the good and welfare of men, as in truth they have. Now if they who take away the Providence of God, do will all abolish the common prenomination of men as touching God; what do they then, who avouch that the gods indeed have care of us; but yet are helpful to us in nothing, neither give they us any good things, but such only as be indifferent; not ending us with virtue, but bestowing upon us riches, health, procreation of Children, and such like, of which there is not one profitable, excepting, eligible or available. Is it not certain that these overthrow the common Conceptions that are of the gods? neither rest they here, but fall to flouting, stamping, and scoffing, whiles they give out that there is one god, surnamed *Emptor*; that is to say, the superintendent over the fruits of the earth; another *Ymator*, that is to say, the Patron of generation; another *psalmos*, that is to say, the Protector of Plants; another *meteo*, and *meteo*, that is to say, the president of Physick and Divination; mean while neither is health simply good, nor generation, ne yet fertility of the ground and abundance of fruits, but indifferent, yea and unprofitable to those who have them.

The 3d. point of the common Conception of the gods is, that they differ in nothing so much from men, in felicity & vertue; but according to *Chrysippus*, they are in this respect nothing superior to men; for he holdeth that for vertue *Jupiter* is no better than *Dion*; also that *Jupiter* & *Dion* being both of them wise, do equally

equally and reciprocally help one another; for this is the good that the gods do unto men, and men likewise unto the gods, namely, when they prove wife and prudent, and not otherwise. So that if a man be not less virtuous, he is not less happy; inasmuch as he is equal unto *Jupiter* the Saviour in felicity, though otherwise unfortunate, and who for grievous maladies and dolorous dismembering of his body, is forced to make himself away, and leave his life, provided always that he be a wife man, Howbeit, such an one there neither is, nor ever hath been living upon the earth: whereas contrariwise, infinite thousands and millions there are, and have been of miserable men, and extreme unfortunate under the rule and dominion of *Jupiter*, the government and administration whereof is most excellent. And what can there be more against common sense, than to say, that *Jupiter* governing and disposing all things passing well, yet we should be exceeding miserable? If therefore (which unlawfull is once to speak) *Jupiter* would no longer be a Saviour, nor a Deliverer, nor a Protector, and furnished thereupon *Soter*, *Lycius*, and *Alexicacos*, but clean contrary unto these goodly and beautiful denominations, there can not possibly be added any more goodness to things that be, either in number or magnitude, as they say; whereas all men live in the extremity of misery and wickedness, considering that neither vice can admit no augmentation, nor misery addition: and yet this is not the worst nor greatest absurdity: but mightily angry and offended they are with *Menander* for speaking as he did thus bravely in open Theatre:

*I hold, good things exceeding mean degree,  
The greatest cause of humane misery.*

For this (say they) is against the common Conception of men; mean while themselves make God, who is good and goodness itself, to be the author of evils: for matter could not verily produce any evil of it self, being as it is without all qualities; and all those differences and varieties which it hath, it received of that which moved and formed it, to wit, reason within, which giveth it a form and shape, for that it is not made to move and shape it self. And therefore it cannot otherwise be, but that evil if it come by nothing, should proceed and have being from that which is not; or if it come by some moving cause, the same must be God. For if they think that *Jupiter* hath no power of his own parts, nor usech one according to his own proper reason; they speak against common sense, and do imagine a certain animal, whereof many parts are not obedient to his will; but use their own private actions and operations, whereunto the whole, never gave incitation, nor began in them any motion. For among those creatures which have life and soul, there is none so ill framed and composed, as that against the will thereof, either the feet should go forward, or the tongue speak, or the horn push and strike, or the teeth bite; whereof God of necessity must endure and abide the most part, if against his will, evil men being parts of himself do lie, do circumvent and beguile others, commit Burglary, break open houses, to rob their neighbors, or kill one another. And if according as *Chrysippus* saith, it is not possible that the least part should behave it self otherwise than it pleaseth *Jupiter*, and that every living thing doth rest, stay, and move, according as he leadeth, manageth, turneth, stretch, and disposeth:

*Now well I wot, this voice of his  
Sounds worse and more mischievous is.*

For more tolerable it were by a great deal to say, that ten thousand parts, through the impotence, and feebleness of *Jupiter*, committed many absurdities perforce, even against his nature and will than to avouch that there is no intemperance, no deceit and wickedness, whereof *Jupiter* is not the cause.

Moreover seeing that the world by their saying is a City, and the Sares Citizens: if it be so, there must be also Tribes and Magistracies: yea and plain it is, that the Sun must be a Senator, yea and the evening Star, some Provost, Major or Governor of the City. And I wot not well whether he who taketh in hand to confute such things, can broach and set abroad other greater absurdities in natural matters than those do, who deliver and pronounce these doctrines. Is not this a Position against common sense to affirm, that the Seed should be greater and more than that which is engendered of it? For woe verily that nature in all living creatures, and plants, even those that be of a wild and savage kind, taketh very small and slender matters, such as hardly can be seen, for the beginning and the generation of most great and huge bodies: For not only of a grain or corn of Wheat it produceth a stalk with an Ear, and of a little grape stone it bringeth forth a Vine tree, but also of a Peppin, Kernell, Acorn, or Berry, escaped and fallen by chance from a bird, as if of some sparkle it kindled and set on fire generation, it sendeth forth the stock of some bush or thorn, or else a tall and mighty body of an Oak, a Date or Pine-tree. And hereupon it is that general seed is called *Σπέρμα*, in Greek, as one would say *seeds*; that is to say, the unfolding and wrapping together of a great mass into a small quantity: also nature taketh the name of *σπέρμα*, as it were *seed*, that is to say, the inflation and definition of proportions and numbers, which are opened and loosed under it. And again, the fire which they say is the seed of the world, after that general conflagration, shall change into the own feed, the world, which from a smaller body and little mass, is extended into a great inflation and deflation, yea and moreover, occupieth an infinite space of voidness, which it filleth by his augmentation: but as it is engendered, that huge greatness retireth and setteth anon, by reason that the matter is contracted and gathered into it self upon the generation. We may hear them dispute, and read many of their books, and discourses, wherein they argue and cry out aloud against the Academicks, for confounding all things with their *Απαράστασις*, that is to say, indistinguishable identities striving and con-

ing to make in two natures, one indued with the like quality. And yet what man living is there who conceiveth and knoweth not as much? or supposest not the contrary, namely, that it were a marvellous strange thing and a very absurdity, if neither stock-dove to stock-dove, Bee to Bee, Wheat-corn to Wheat-corn, and as the common proverb goeth, one Fig unto another, hath been at all times idle and fumbleable.

But this in very deed and truth is clean contrary to all common sense, that these men hold and affirm: how in one substance, there be properly and particularly two qualified, and how the same substance having particularly one qualified, when there cometh another to it, receiveth and keepeth them both, the one as well as the other. For if we admit two, I avouch it may as well have three, four, five, and many as one will name, in one and the same substance, I say not in divers parts, but all equally and indifferently, though they were infinite, even in the whole. Now *Chrysippus* saith, that *Jupiter*, as also the world, resembleth a man, and providence the Soul: when as then that conflagration of the world shall be, *Jupiter*, who only of all the gods is Immortal, shall retire unto providence, and both twain shall remain together in the substance of the skie. But leave we now the gods for this present, and pray we unto them that they would vouchsafe to give unto the Stoicks, a common sense and understanding according with other men, and let us see now what they say as touching the Elements.

This first and foremost standeth not with the received conceit and opinion of the world, that a body should be the place of a body, and that one body should enter and pierce through another body, considering that neither the one nor the other containeth vacuity: but that which is full entered into that which is full, and that which hath no distance receiveth into it self that which is mingled with it, but that which is full and solid, hath no void distance in it self by reason of continuity. And these men verily not churling one into one, nor two nor three, nor ten together, but cast all parts of the world cut piece-meal, into one, which they first meet with, even the least that is by sense perceptible: saying moreover that it will contain the greatest that shall come unto it. Thus in a bravery after their old manner in many other things, make of that which convinceth and refelleth them, one of these sentences and resolutions, as they who take for suppositions, those things which be repugnant to common sense. And thus upon this supposal, there must needs ensue many monstrous and prodigious positions, when they once confusedly mingle whole bodies with whole: and among those absurd Paradoxes this also may go for one, That three be four. For even that which others bring in and allege for an example of that which cannot fall into mans imagination, they hold for an undoubted truth: saying, that when one cyath of wine is mingled with two of water, it wanteth not but is equal in the whole, and this confounding them together, they bring it to about, that one is made twain, by the equal mixture of one with two: for that one remaineth, and is spread as much as twain, making that which is equal to duple. Now if by the mixture with two, it taketh the measure of two in the definition, this must needs be the measure together, both of three and of four: of three, because one is mingled with twain: and of four, for that it being mingled with twain, it hath as much in quantity, as those wherewith it is mingled. This fine device hapneth unto them, because they put bodies within a body, and for that it cannot be imagined how they cause one to contain another. For, of necessity it must be that bodies making a penetration one within another by mixture, that the one should not contain, and the other be contained, nor the one receive and the other be received within. For so this should not be a commixion, but a contiguity and touching of superficies one close to another, whiles one entrench within forth, and the other encloseth without, when the other parts remain pure and entire without mixture, and so shall be one of many divers and differing asunder. But it cannot otherwise be as they would have it, that when there is a mixture, the things mingled, should not be mixed one within another: and that one self same thing being within, should not be within: and likewise in receiving, contain another: and possible it is not, that either the one or the other should be: but fall out it will, that the two which be mingled, should pierce one within the other; neither can so much as one part of the one or the other, remain by it self apart, but necessarily they be all full one of another. And here ariseth that legg of *Arcesilaus*, so much talked of in the schools, which insulteth and danceth upon their monstrous absurdities with much laughter; for if these mixtures be through the whole, what should hinder, but that if a legg be cut off, purified, cast into the Sea, and in process of time all diffused; nor only the fleet of *Antigonis* might sail in and thorow it, as said *Arcesilaus*, but also the 1200. sail of *Xerxes*, yea, and the three hundred Gallies of the Greeks might give a navall battel within the said legg? for fall it never will to be extended and spread more; and more, nor the less case within the greater, neyer will that mixture ever come to an end, nor the extremity of it touch where it will end, and so pierce northorow the whole, but will give over to be mingled: or if it be not mixed thoroughout the whole, surely the said legg will not afford room to be mingled: or if it be not mixed thoroughout the whole, falling into the Aegean or Candian-sea, changed. But if a cyath of wine, or no more but one drop, falling into the superficial parts of the water aloft, but spread throughout, in breadth, depth, and length. And verily *Chrysippus* admitteth so much in the very beginning of his first book, as touching Natural questions, saying that one drop of wine will not fall, but be mingled throughout the whole sea. And that we should not marvel so much hereat, he saith moreover, that the said drop by the means of mixture, will extend throughout the whole world: which is so absurd and without all appearance of reason, as I cannot describe so much hereat, he saith moreover, that the said drop by the means of bodies, there is no vile any thing more. And is not this also against common sense, that in the nature of bodies, there is no

supremacy,

superficial, nor first or last, to conclude and determine the magnitude of the Body? but that which is proposed as the subject, runneth on still infinitely without end, so as whatsoever is added, yet somewhat more seemeth may be put thereto? for we cannot conceive or comprehend one magnitude greater or less than another, if it be incident to both parts thus to proceed in *infinitum*, which is as much as to take away the whole nature of inequality. For of two magnitudes that be understood unequal, the one cometh first forth of the last parts, and the other goeth beyond and surpasseth; but if there be no inequality of length in them, it followeth that there will be no unevenness in the upper superficies nor asperity: for this unevenness is nothing else, but the inequality of the superficies with it self; but asperity is an inequality of the superficies with hardness. Of which qualities they allow none, who determine no body in an extrem or utmost part, but draw out all fill by a multitude of parts infinitely: and yet who knoweth not evidently, that man is compounded of a greater number of parts, then is his finger, and the world more then a man? for all men know and think as much, unless they become Stoicks: but prove they once to be Stoicks, they both say and opine the contrary: namely, that man is not composed of more parts, then is his finger, nor the world of more than a man; for section reduceth bodies into *infinitum*; and in things infinite there is neither more nor less, neither is there any multitude that surpasseth; neither shall the parts of that which is left, cease to be always subdivided still, yea and to furnish out a multitude of themselves. How then do they wind out of these difficulties and untie these knots? Certes, with great slight, very lubbily and vainly: for *Ghryppus* saith, that when we be demanded, if we have any parts, and how many there be? also whether there be compounded of other, and of how many? we are to flee unto this distinction; supposing and setting down, that the whole entire body consisteth of head, breast and legs, as if this were all that was demanded and doubted of. But if they should proceed in their interrogatories to the extrem parts: then saith he, no such answer is to be made, but we are to say, neither that they consist of any certain parts, nor likewise of how many; neither of infinite nor determinate. But I think it were better if I alleged his very own words, to the end you may see how he keepeth and observeth the common Conception, forbidding us as he doth, to think, imagine or say, of what parts, and how many each body is compounded, and that it consisteth neither of finite or infinite. For if there were a mean between finite and infinite, like as there is between good and bad, to wit, indifferent; he should pronounce what the same was, and so solve the difficulty. But, if as that which is not equal, incontinently becometh unequal; and that which is not corruptible, presently is incorruptible; so that which is not finite, is immediately infinite, I suppose that to say, A body is composed of parts neither finite or infinite, is all one as to say, that an argument is composed neither of true nor of false propositions, and a number neither of even nor odd. But after all this, vaunting himself youthfully, he leteeth not to say, that whereas a pyramid consisteth of triangles, the sides inclining to the commissure or joynt, are unequal, and yet exceed one another, in that they be bigger. Thus you see how trimly he kept and observed common Conceptions: for if there be any thing greater, and yet surpasseth not, there must be also somewhat lesse, and yet the same faileth not, and to these shall be also something unequal, that neither exceedeth nor wanteth, which is as much to say, as it shall be equal and yet unequal, not greater but yet greater, not lesse and yet lesse. See moreover I pray you a little, how he answered unto *Democritus*, disputing and doubting Physically and earnestly, if a cone or round pyramid be cut at the base thereof by the Plumb or Levell, what we ought to conceive and judge as touching the superficies of the sections whether they be equal or unequal: for if they be unequal, they will make the said cone or pyramid uneven; and admitting many deep rabbotted incisions, and rough asperities in manner of steps & grees: and if they be equal, then the sections also must be equal, and so it will be found that the round pyramid or cone shall have the same befall unto it that a cylindar hath, namely, to consist of circles equal and not unequal, which were very absurd. Herein, making *Democritus* to be an ignorant person and one who knew not what he said, he cometh in with this, and saith, that the superficies be neither equal nor unequal, but that the bodies be unequal, in that the superficies be neither equal nor unequal. Now to set down by way of ordinance and to affirm, that allowing the superficies to be unequal, it may fall out, that bodies should not be unequal, were the part of a man who permitteeth himself to have a wonderful liberty to write and speak whatsoever comes into his head. For both reason and manifest evidence, giveth us to understand quite contrary, namely, that of unequal bodies the superficies also be unequal, and the bigger that a body is, the greater is the superficies, unless the exesse whereby it surpasseth the smaller, be altogether devoid of a superficies: for if the superficies of greater bodies exceed not those of the lesse, but rather faile before they come to an end, then we must of necessity say, that a part of that body which hath an end, is without end, and not determinate: for if he alledge and say that he is driven perforce thereunto, lest the inequality of superficies might seem to make unequal incisions, there is no such cause why he should fear: for those rabbotted incision which he suspecteth in no such cause why he would fear: for rabbotted incisions which he suspecteth in a cone or round pyramid, it is the inequality of the bodies, and not of the superficies that causeth them. So that it were a ridiculous folly, by taking away the superficies, for to be convinced to leave an inequality and unevenness of the bodie. But to persist still in this matter, what can there be more contrary to common Conception, then to saie and devise such stuffe? for if we admit that one superficies is unequal nor unequal to another, we may consequently affirm that neither magnitude is equal or unequal, nor number either even or odd; considering that we can not set down nor conceive in our mind, any

mean

mean between unequal and unequal, which is neuter. Moreover, if there were any superficies neither equal nor unequal, what should let but that we may imagine circles also neither equal nor unequal? for surely these superficies of the sections of cones or round Pyramids, be circles: and if we allow thus much in circles, then we may as well admit to much of the Diameters of circles, namely, that they be neither equal nor unequal. And if this go for good, of angles likewise and triangles, of Parallelograms, and of superficies parallel or equally distant. For if longitudes be neither equal nor unequal one to another, then shall not weight, nor percussion, nor nor bodies be equal nor unequal. Furthermore, how dare they remove those who bring in vacuities, and certain indivisible bodies maintaining combat one again another, supposing that they neither stir nor stand still; when as they themselves maintain that such propositions as these be false? If any things be not equal one to the other, the same be unequal one to the other: and these things here be not equal one to the other; neither are they unequal one to the other. But forasmuch as he saith, that there is something greater, which notwithstanding surpasseth might were good reason therefore to doubt and demand, whether the same be agreeable and fitting one to the other? and if they agree, how then can either of them be the bigger? Now if it be not fortable, how is it possible that the one should not exceed, and the other come short? for these things cannot hang together, to say, that neither the one nor the other surpasseth: and it agreeth not with the greater: or to agree, and yet the one is greater than the other. For of necessity it must follow, that those who retain not, nor observe common conceptions, be troubled with such perplexities.

Or, and besides, it is against all common sense, to say that no one thing toucheth another: as also, that bodies touch one another, and yet do in no part touch. Now it must needs be, that they admit this, who allow not the least parts of a body, and so they suppose always something before that which seemeth to touch, and never cease to pass on farther still: which is the thing that they principally object against those, who defend and maintain the indivisible parcels called Atomes; namely, that there is no total touching, but that it is a mixture, considering that such indivisible bodies have no parts. How is it then, that they themselves fall not into the like inconvenience, seeing they admit no part to be either first or last? for that they say, bodies do touch one another mutually in the whole by a certain term or extremity, and not by a part, and the said term or point is no body. Then a body shall touch a body, by a thing, which is no body: and contrariwise, shall not touch, the incorporeal being between. And if it touch, it shall do likewise, and suffer somewhat, being it self a body, by that which is incorporeal and no body. For the propriety of bodies, is to do and suffer somewhat mutually, yea, and to touch one another: and if the body have a touching in part by the means of that which is incorporeal, it shall likewise have a general and total connexion, even a mixture and incorporation. Again, in these connexions and mixtures, necessary it is that terms or extremities of bodies, either continue or no continue, but perish: but both the one and the other is against common sense. For even they themselves allow not corruptions and generations of things incorporeal: and impossible it is, that there should be a mixture or total touching of bodies retaining still their proper terms and extremities. For it is this term or extremity that determineth and constitueth the nature of a body: and as mixtures (if there were no approaching nor application of parts to parts) they confound all things wholly which are mixed. And as these men say, we must admit the corruption of extremities in mixtures; and likewise again, their generations, in the distractions and Separation of them. But no man there is able to comprehend this easily: for in regard that bodies touch one another, they also are pressed, thrust and crushed one by the other. And impossible it is, that a thing incorporeal should suffer or do thus; neither can we imagine so much: yet would they constrain us to think no less. For if a sphere or ball touch a flat or plain body only by a point, certain it is, that it may be trained and rolled along the said plain or flat body, by a point. And if the foresaid ball be painted in the superficies thereof with vermilion, it shall imprint a red line only upon the same plain body; and being yellow, or of a fiery colour, it shall likewise give the same tincture to the superficies of the flat body. Now that a thing incorporeal should either give or take a colour, is against all common sense. And if we imagine a bowl of earth, of crystal or glass, to fall from on high upon a smooth body of stone, it were against all reason to think that it would not break the same into pieces, namely, when as it shall light upon that which is solid, hard, and able to make resistance: But more unreasonable it were to say, that it were broken by a term or point that is incorporeal: In such manner, as in every sort, their anticipations and common conceptions as touching things incorporeal and bodies, must needs be troubled and confounded, or rather utterly abolished, in supposing thus many things impossible.

Against common sense it is to say, that there is a future time, and a time past, but none at all present; also, that the time which was ere while, and not long since, hath a subsistence, whereas that which now is hath no being at all. And yet this is an usual and ordinary matter with these Stoick Philosophers, who admit not the least time that is between, and will not allow the present to be indivisible; but still that which a man doth think and imagine as present, they affirm the one part to be of that which is already past, and the other of the future; inasmuch, as there remaineth and is left in the middle no piece at all of the time present; in case of that which is said to be the very instant, part is attributed unto things past, and part to things to come; whereupon of necessity one of these twain must follow, that either in admitting the tense, It was, or It shall be; the tense It is, must wholly be abolished: or in admitting the present time, It is, one part thereof is past, and the other to come: as also to say, that of that which is, part is yet future, and part already past: likewise of that which now is present,

Gggg

one

one parcel is before, and another behind; in such sort as present, is that which yet is not present, and not present any more; for that is not present any longer, which is already past; nor present at all, which is yet to come: And thus in dividing the present, they must also needs say, that of the year, and of the light, part was of the year past, and part of the year to come; likewise of that which is together and at once, there is some before, and some after: For no less troubled are they, in budling and confounding after a strange manner these terms, Not yet, Already, No more, Now and not now, as if they were all one; whereas other men do conceive and think, that these terms, Ere while, or not long since, and a while after, or anon, are different parts from the present time, setting the one before, and the other after the said present. And among these, *Archidemus* who affirmeth, that the present Now, is a certain beginning, joyned or commixture of that which is already past, and near at hand to come, seeth now how in so saying, he utterly abolisheth all time; for were it true, that Now is no time, but only a term of extremity of time, and that every part of time is as it were Now, it would then, that this present Now, hath no part at all, but is resolved wholly into ends and extremities, joyned, commixtures, and beginnings. As for *Chrysippus*, willing to shew himself witty and artificial in his divisions, in that Treatise which he composed as touching voidness, and in other places affirmeth, that the Past and the Future of time subsisteth not, but hath subsisted; and that the present only hath being: But in the third, fourth, and fifth Books of Parts, he avoucheth, that of the instant or present, part is Future, and part Past; in such sort, as by this means he divideth the substance of time, into those parts of subsistent, which are not subsistent; or to speak more truly, he leaveth no part at all subsistent, if the instant and present hath no part at all, which is not either past or to come; and therefore the conceit that these men have of time, resembleth properly the holding of water in a mans hand, which runneth and fleedeth the more, by how much harder it is pressed together. Come now unto actions and motions, all light and evidence is by them darkened, troubled, and confounded; for necessarily it ensueth, that if the Instant or Present is divided into that which is past, & to come, part of that which now moveth at this instant, should partly be moved already, and in part to remove afterwards, and withal, that the beginning and end of motion should be abolished: also, that of no work there should be any thing first or last, all actions being distributed and dispersed together with time: for like, as they say, that of the present, some is past, and some to come: even so of every action in doing, some part is already done, and other respect to be done. When had then beginnings, or when shall have end, To dine, to write, and to go, if every man who dinneth, hath dined already, and shall dine: and whosoever goeth, hath gone, and shall go? and that which is (as they say) of all absurdities most monstrous, if it be granted, that he who now liveth, hath lived already, and shall live; life had neither beginnings, nor ever shall have end: but every one of us as it should seem by this reckoning, was born without beginning of life, and shall dye without giving over to live: for if there be no extrem part, but ever as one that now liveth, shall have somewhat of the present remaining for the future, it will never be untruly said, *Socrates* shall live, so long as it shall be truly said, *Socrates* liveth; so that as often as it is true, *Socrates* liveth, so often it is false, *Socrates* is dead. And therefore if it be truly said in infinite parts of time, *Socrates* shall live; in no part of time shall it ever be truly said, *Socrates* is dead. And verily what end shall there be of any work? and where shall any action it say and cease, in case as often as it shall be truly said, a thing is now doing, so often likewise it shall be truly said, It shall be done: for lyeth he shall who saith, This is the end of *Plato* writing or disputing; for that one day *Plato* shall cease to write or dispute: if at no time it be a lye to say, of him that disputeth, He shall dispute; or of him who writeth, He shall write. Moreover, of that which is done, there is no part, which either is not finished already, or shall be finished, and either is past or to come. Besides, of that which is already done, or of that which shall be done, of that which is past or future, there is no sense. And so in one word, and to speak simply, there is no sense of any thing in the world; for we neither see nor hear that which is past or to come; nor yet have we any sense of things which have been, or which shall be; no, nor although a thing should be present, if it perceptible and subject to sense, in case that which is present, be partly to come, and in part past already; if I say, one part thereof hath been, and another shall be: and yet they themselves cry out upon *Epicurus*, as if he committed some great indignity, and did violence to common conceptions, in moving as he doth all bodies with equal celerity, and admitteth no one thing swifter than another: But far more intolerable it is, and farther remote from common sense to hold, that no one thing can reach or overtake another:

No and although *Adrastus* horse  
So swift, a Tortoise slow should come.

according as we say in our common proverb: which must of necessity fall out, if things move according to Before and Behind; and in case the intervals which they pass through, be divisible into infinite parts, as these men would have them: for if the Tortoise be but one furlong before the horse, they who divide the said interval or space between into infinite parts, and move both the one and the other according to *Prisus* and *Potterius*, shall never bring the swiftest close unto the slowest, for that the slower always winneth some space or interval, before that which is divisible, into other infinite intervals: And to say, that water which is poured forth out of a cup or bowl, shall never be poured all clean out; how can this chuse but be against common sense? and doth not this consequently follow upon those things that these men avouch? for never shall a man comprehend or conceive that the motion of things infinitely divisible, according to before, hath fully performed the whole interval, but leaving always some space divisible, it will evermore make all the effusion, all the running forth or

fledding

bedding of the liquor, all the motion of a solid body; or the fall of a weighty poise, to be imperfect. Let passe many absurdities delivered in their doctrine; and touch these only, which are directly against common sense.

As for the question touching augmentation, it is very ancient: For according as *Chrysippus* saith; it was by *Epicarchus* put forth. And for that the Academicks thought it to be not very easie and ready also of a sudden to be cleared; these men come with open mouth against them, accusing them for overthrowing all anticipations, whereas they themselves keep not at all the common conceptions: that all which more is, pervert the very senses. For whereas the question is plain and simple; these men grant and allow such suppositions as these, that all particular substances flow and run, partly by yielding and sending forth somewhat out of themselves, and in part by receiving other things from without; and that by reason of the number and multitude of that which comes in, or goes out, things continue not one and the same, but become altered and divers by the forecast additions and detractations, so as their substance receiveth a change. Also that contrary to all right and reason, custom hath so far prevailed, that such mutations be called augmentations and diminutions: whereas rather they ought to be termed generations, and corruptions, for that they force an alteration of one present state and being, into another; but to grow and diminish are passions and accidents of a body, and subsist that is permanent. Which reasons and assertions being after a sort thus delivered in their Schoole, what is it that these defenders of Perspicuity and Evidence, these Canonical reformers (I say) of common notions would have? namely, that every one of us should be double like twins, or of a two-fold nature: not as the Poets feigned the Molionides, to be in some parts conjunct and united, and in other severed and disjoyned, but two bodies, having the same colour, the same shape, the same weight and place: a thing that no man ever saw before: marry these Philosophers only have perceived this duplicity, this composition and ambiguity; whereby every one of us are two subjects, the one being substance, the other

the one of them runneth and floweth continually, and yet without augmentation and diminution, or remaining in the same state such as it is; the other continueth still, and yet groweth and decreaseth, and yet suffereth all things quite contrary to the others, wherewith it is incorporate, united, and knit, leaving to the exterior sense no shew of distinct difference. And yet verily it is said of that *Lyncæus*, how in old time he had so quick and piercing and e-ye-sight, that he was able to see through rocks and bones: And one there was by report, who sitting in *Scily*, could from a watch-tower sensibly discern the ships sailing out of the Haven of *Carthage*, which was distant a day and a nights sailing with a good forewind. And as for *Callistates* and *Mymerides*, they have the name to have made *Chariots* so small, as that the wings of a fly might cover them: yea and in a miller grain or steam seed to have contained *Homers* verses. But surely this perpetual fluxion and diversity in us, there was never any person that could divide and distinguish: neither could we our selves ever finde that we were double, and that partly we ran out continually, and in part again remained alwaies one and the same, even from our nativity to our end. But I am about to deal with them more simply and plainly; for whereas they deise in every one of us four subjects, or to speak more directly, make each of us to be four, it shall suffice to take but two, for to shew their absurdity. When we do hear *Pentheus* in a Tragedy saying, that he seeth two Suns, and two Cities of *Thebes*, we deem of him, that he seeth not two, but that he doth daze and look amiss, having his discourse troubled, and understanding clean transported. And even these persons, who suppose and set down, not one City alone, but all Men, all Beasts, all Trees, Plants, Tooles, Vessels, Utensils, and Garments, to be double, and composed of two Natures; reject we not and bid farewell, as men who would force us not to understand any thing aright, but to take every thing wrong? Howbeit, haply herein they might be praded and winked at, for feigning and devising other natures of subjects, because they have no means else, for all the pains they take, to maintain and preserve their augmentations: But in the Soul, what they should aile, what their meaning might be, and upon what grounds and suppositions, they devied to frame other different sorts and kinds of bodies, and those in manner innumerable, who is able to say? or what may be the cause, unless they meant to displace, or rather to abolish and destroy altogether the common and familiar conceptions, imbred in us, for to bring in and set up new fangles, and other strange and foreign novelties? For this is wonderful extravagant and absurd, for to make bodies of virtues and vices, and besides of Sciences, Arts, Memories, Fancies, Apprehensions, Passions, Inclinations, and Affections: and to affirm that these neither lye, nor have any place subsisting in any subject, but to leave them one little hole like a prick within the heart, wherein they range and draw in, the principal part of the soul, and the discourse of reason, being choked up as it were with such a number of bodies, that even they are not able to count a great sort of them, who seem to know best how to distinguish and discern one from another. But to make these not only bodies, but also living creatures, and each endowed with reason, to make (I say) a swarm of them, and the same not gentle, mild, and tame, but so turbulent sort and rable by their malicious shrewdness, opposit and repugnant to all evidence, and all custom, what wanteth this of absurdity in the highest degree. And these men verily do hold that not only virtues and vices be animal and living creatures, nor passions alone, as anger, wrath, envy, grief, sorrow and malice, nor apprehensions only fancies, imaginations, and ignorances, nor arts and mysteries, as the Shoemakers and Smiths Craft; but also over and besides all these things, they make the very operations and actions themselves to be bodies, yea and living creatures: they would have willing to be an animal dancing likewise, shewing, saluting, & reproachful railing: and so consequently

they make laughing and weeping to be animal. And in granting these, they admit also, coughing, sneezing and groaning, yea, and withal, spitting, reaching, snitting and snuffing of the nose, and such like actions, which are as evident as the rest. And let them not think much, and take it grievously, if they be driven to this point by way of particular reasoning, calling to minde *Chrysippus*, who in his third book of Natural Questions, saith thus, What say you of the night, is it not a body: evening, morning, midnight, are they not bodies? Is not the day a body? The New-Moon is it not a body? the tenth, the fifteenth, the thirtieth day of the Moon, the month it self, Summer, Autumn, and the whole year, be they not bodies? Certes, all these things by me named they hold with tooth and nail, even against common prenotions: But as for these hereafter, they maintain contrary to their own proper conceptions, when as they would produce the hottest thing that is by refrigeration, and that which is most subtle by inspissation. For the soul is a substance most hot, and consisting of most subtil parts: which they would make by the refrigeration and condensation of the body, which, as it were, by a certain perfusion and tincture it hardeneth and altereth the spirit, from being vegetative to be animate. They say also, that the Sun is become animate, by reason of the moisture turned into an intellectual and spiritual fire. See how they imagine the Sun to be engendered and produced by refrigeration? *Xenophanes*, when one came upon a time, and told him, that he had seen *Eles* to live in hot scalding water: Why do we not seeke them then (quoth he) in cold water? If therefore they will cause heat by refrigeration, and lightness by attrition and condensation: it followeth on the other side again, by good consequence, that by keeping a certain proportion and correspondency in absurdity, they make heat by cold, thickning by dissolving, and weighty things by rarefaction. As for the very substance and generation of common conception and sense, do they not determine it even against common sense it self? For conception is a certain phantastic or apprehension; and this apprehension is an impression in the soul. The nature of the soul is an exhalation, which by reason of the rarity thereof can hardly receive an impression: and say that it did receive any, yet impossible it were to keep and retain it. For the nutriment and generation of it consisting of moist things, holdeth a continual course of succession and consumption. The commerce also and mixture of respiration with the ayr, engendreth continually some new exhalation turning and changing by the flux of ayr coming in and going forth reciprocally. For a man may imagine rather that a river of running water keepeth the forms, figures and images imprinted therein, than a spirit carried in vapors and humors, to be mingled with another spirit, or breath from without continually, as if it were idle and strange unto it. But so much forget they, or misunderstand themselves, that having defined common conceptions to be certain intelligences laid up apart: memories to be firm, permanent, and habitual impressions having fixed Sciences likewise, every way fast and sure, yet within a while after they lay under all this a foundation and base, of a certain slippery substance, easie to be dissipated, carried continually, and ever going and coming to and fro. Moreover, this notion and conception of an element and principle, all men have imprinted in their minde, that it is pure, simple, nor mingled nor composed: for, that which is mixed, cannot be an element nor a principle, but rather that, wherof it is mixed and composed.

Howbeit, these men devising God the principle of all things to be a spiritual body, and a minde or intelligence seated in matter, make him neither pure nor simple, nor uncompound, but affirm that he is composed of another, and by another. As for matter, being of it self without reason, and void of all quality, it carrieth with it simplicity, and the very natural property of a principle: and God, if it be true, that he is not without body and matter, doth participate of matter as of a principle. For if reason and matter, be all one and the same, they have not done well to define matter for to be reasonless: but if they be things different, then doth God consist of both twain, and not of a simple essence, but compounded, as having taken to his intellectual substance, a bodily nature out of matter. Furthermore, considering they call these four primitive bodies, to wit, earth, water, air, and fire, the first elements, I cannot see how they should make some of them simple, and others mixed or compounds for they hold, that the earth and water cannot contain either themselves or any other, and that it is the participation of spirit and fellowship of fire, whereupon dependeth the preservation of their unity: as for the air and fire by their own power they fortifie themselves, which being medled with the other two, give them their force, vigour and firmitude of substance. How is it then, that either earth is an element or the water, seeing neither of them both is simple, first, or sufficient to keep and preserve it self, but having need of another without to contain them always in their being, and to save them? for they have not left so much as any thought that they be a substance. But surely this reason of theirs as touching the earth, that it consisteth of it self, containeth much confusion and great uncertainty, for if the earth be of it self, how cometh it to pass that it hath need of the ayr, to binde and contain it; for so it is no more earth of it self, nor water; but the air hath by thickning and hardning matter, made thereof the earth; and contrariwise, by dissolving and mollifying it, hath created the water: and therefore we may infer thus much, that neither of these is an element, seeing that some other thing hath given them their essence and generation. Over and besides, they affirm, that substance and matter are subject to qualities, and so in manner do yield their limit and definition: and then on the other side, they make the said qualities to be bodies; wherein there is a great confusion: for if qualities have a certain proper substance, whereby they are termed and be really bodies indeed, they require no other substance, for that they have one of their own: but if they have this only under them which is common, and which they call essence or matter, certain it is, that they do but

but participate of the body; for bodies they are not. For that which is in the nature of the subject, and doth receive, must of necessity differ from those things which it receiveth, and wherof it is the subject. But these men see by the half; for they term the matter *atomos*, that is to say, without qualities: But they will not name the qualities *atoms*, that is to say, void of matter. And yet how is it possible to make a body without quality, but we must imagine a quality without a body? for that reason, which couleth a body with all manner of qualities, permitteth not the thought to comprehend any body without some quality. Either therefore he that fighteth against a bodily quality, seemeth to resist likewise a matter void of quality; or if he separate the one from the other, he parteth and divideth them both asunder. And as for that reason which some of them seem to pretend, as touching a substance which they name *atomos*, not because it is void of all quality, but because it is capable, forsooth, of every quality; it is contrary to common notion, and nothing so much. For no man taketh or imagineth that to be *atomos*, that is to say, unqualified, which is participant of all qualities, and incapable of none; nor impassible, that which is apt to receive and suffer every passion; nor immoveable, which is moveable every way. And as for this doubt, it is not solved, that howsoever we always understand matter with some quality, we conceive withal, that matter and quality be different one from the other.

## Against Colotes the Epicurean.

### The Summary.

WE have in many places before, but principally in two several Treatises of the former Tomes, perceived how Plutarch is quite contrary unto the Epicureans; and namely, in one of these Treatises he doth with a certain book (which he now expressly refuseth) where Colotes endeavoureth to prove, that a man cannot possibly live well, according to the opinions of other Philosophers, Plutarch sheweth on the contrary side, that impossible it is to lead a joyfull life after the doctrine of Epicurus, and that it is accompanied with overweening, impudency, and slanderous calumniation. And not contenting himself thus to have confuted them of purpose once or thrice, he setteth upon them in this Discourse, and particularly he copeth with Colotes, whose stob, filthiness, and impiety, he here describeth. The sum of all which Declaration, is this, That these Epicureans are not any way worthy the name of Philosophers, who contrariwise tread and trample under foot all the parts of true Philosophy discovering in their writings, as well as throughout all their lives, miserably brutality. But all that is delivered in this Treatise, may be reduced well to two principal points: The one containeth a defence or excuse of the Doctrine taught by Democritus, Empedocles, Parmenides, Socrates, and other ancient Philosophers, slandered by Colotes, who extolled far above them, the Traditions and Precepts of his Master. The other discovereth divers absurdities and strange opinions of the Epicureans, even by their own testimony: whom Plutarch refelleth fondly, handling in this Disputation many Articles of Philosophy, Natural, Moral and Supernatural; and particularly, of the Senses, of Nature, of the Atomes, of the Universal World, of the Knowledge of Man, of the Opinion of the Academicks, of the Apprehensions, Fancies, Passions, and Affections of the Soul: Of the certainty of things sensible, of the falsity and void of imaginations, of the use of Laws, of the profit of Philosophy, of the Sovereign Good, of Religion, and of other such matters, the principles wherof the Epicureans abolished, bringing in Paradoxes wonderful strange, for to suffice things confusedly, and make all uncertain. All which is marked particularly in the train and course of the Authors own words, and therefore needles it is so specific thereof any more, because I would avoid tautologies and unnecessary repetitions. True it is, that in certain resolutions Plutarch is not so firm as were to be desired: but that may be imputed to his ignorance of the true God. As for the rest, it may suffice and serve, to know the misery and wretchedness of the Epicureans: And that other Philosophers had many good parts, and delivered many beautiful speeches, wherof all virtuous persons may reap and gather great fruit in applying and referring the same to their true life. And for to close up all, he maketh a comparison between true Philosophers, and the Epicureans, proving in very many places, that Colotes, and his fellows like himself, are people not only unprofitable, but also most pernicious, and so by consequence unworthy to live in the world.



## Against Colotes the Epicurean.

**C**olotes, whom Epicurus was wont (O Saturninus) to call by way of flattering diminution, Colasarus and Colatarius, composed and put forth a little Book, which he entitled, That there could be no life at all according to the opinions of other Philosophers: and dedicated the said Book unto King Ptolemaeus. Now what came into my mind to speak against this Colotes, I suppose you would take pleasure to read the same in writings; being, as you are, a man who loveth elegance, and all honest things, especially such as concern the knowledge of antiquity, and belideth, esteemeth it the most Prince-like exercise and Royal study, to bear in mind, and have always in hand, as much as possibly may be, the Discourses of ancient Sages. Whereas therefore of late this book was in reading, one of our familiar friends, one whom you know well enough, Aristodemus by name, an Aegian born, a man exceeding passionate, and of all the Academicks a most frantick Sectary of Plato, although he carry not the *Ferula* like unto the mad supplants of Plato, I wot not how contrary to his usual manner, was very patient and silent all the while, giving ear most civilly even to the very end. But so soon as the Lecture was done: Go to now my masters (quoth he) whom were we belit to cause for to arise and fight with this fellow, in the quarrel and defence of Philosophers? For I am not of Nestor's mind, neither do I greatly praise him, for that when there was to be chosen the most valiant Warrior of those nine hardy Knights who were presented, to enter into combat with Hector hand to hand, committed the election unto Fortune, and put all to the lot: But you see also (quoth I) that even he referred himself to be ordered by the lot, to the end that the choice might pass according to the dispose and ordinance of the wisest man:

*The lot out of the Helmet then did fall,  
Of Ajax, whom themselves wish most of all.*

And yet if you command me to make election,

*How can I ever put out of minde,  
Divine Ulysses, a Prince so kinde?*

Consider therefore, and be well advised how you may be able to reffell this man. Then Aristodemus: But you know full well (quoth he) what Plato sometime did, who being offended with his Boy that waited upon him, would not himself twinge him, but caused *Speusippus* to do so much for him, saying withal, That he was in a fit of choler. And even so, I say as much to you, Take the man to you, I pray, and entreat him at your pleasure: for my self am very angry with him. Now when all the rest of the company were instant with me, and prayed me to take this charge in hand: Well I see (quoth I) that I must speak, seeing you will needs have it so: but I am afraid lest I may seem myself to be more earnestly bent against this book than it deserves, in the defence and maintenance of Socrates, against the incivility, rudeness, scurrility, and insolence of this man, who presenteth (as one would say) unto him hay, as if he were a beast, and demandeth how he may put meat into his mouth, and not into his ear: whereas haply the best way were to laugh only at him for such railing, especially consid'ring the mildness and gentle grace of Socrates in such cases. Howbeit, in regard of the whole host, beside of other Greek Philosophers, namely, Democritus, Plato, Empedocles, Parmenides, and Aristotle, who by him are foully reviled, it were not only a shame to be tongue-tied, and keeplence, but also meer sacrilege and impiety, to remanent any jot, or forbear to speak freely to the utmost in their behalf, being such as have advanced Philosophy to that honor and reputation which it hath. And verily our Parents, together with the gods, have given us our life: but to live well, we suppose, and that truly, it cometh from the Philosophers, by the means of that doctrine which we have received from them, as co-operative with law and justice, and the very bridle that doth chastise and refrain our lusts. Now to live well, is to live sociably, friendly, temperately, and justly: of which good qualities and conditions, they leave us not so much as one, who cry out with open mouth, that the sovereign good of man lieth in his belly, and that all the virtues in the world, if they were put together, they would prize no better worth than one crackt brazen piece of coyn, without pleasure, and in case all manner of delights were quite removed from them. Also, they annex hereto, their discourses, as touching the foul and the gods, wherein they hold that the soul perisheth, which it is once separate from the body: and that the gods meddle not with our affairs. Moreover the Epicureans respect other Philosophers, for that by their wisdom and sapience, they undo mans life: and they again object unto them, that they teach men to live loosely, basely, and beastly. And verily such matters as these be mingled in all the writings of Epicurus, and spread throughout his whole Philosophy. But this Colotes here having made an extract of certain words or voyces void of matter and substance, and drawn some pieces and broken fragments without reasons and arguments for to prove and confirm his doctrines, or to give light for their understanding and credit, hath made his book in manner of a shop full of all sort of wares: or of a table or stall representing strange shews and monsters: Which you (I say) know belit of all others, for that you have continually in your hands, and do read the words of ancient writers. So he seemeth unto me that like to the Lydian, he openeth not one gate, and no more upon him, but enwrappeth Epicurus in very many doubts and difficulties, and those of all other, the greatest: for he begins with Democritus, who no doubt received at his hands a goodly salary and

reward

reward for his apprenticeship, being a thing certainly known, that for a long time Epicurus called himself a Democritian, like as others also do say, and namely, Læmus, one of the Scholars, and Disciples of Epicurus, in the highest form: who in a letter which he wrote unto Lycoophon, saith, that Epicurus honored Democritus, for that he attained before him to the true and sound understanding of the world, and that in general the whole Treatise of natural things, was called Democritian, because he first laid upon the principles, and met with the primitive fountains and foundations of nature. And *Stoicorum* said directly and openly of Philosophy, That if Democritus, had not led the way, Epicurus had never arrived to wisdom and learning. Now if it be true, as this Colotes saith, That to live according to Democritus, and other Philosophers opinions, is no life at all, Epicurus was a very fool for following Democritus as he did, leading him to that doctrine whereby a man could not live. And first he reproveheth him, for that in saying that every thing is no more such then such, he made a confusion of mans life. But so far off was Democritus from holding the said opinion, namely, that nothing is rather such then such: that he oppugned Protagoras the Sophist for saying so, against whom he wrote many elegant Commentaries, full of good arguments, concluding the contrary: which our Colotes neither sees, nor so much as dreaming of, was much deceived in the right understanding of the mans words, and namely in one place where he directly saith and determineth that *πᾶσι δὲ*, is no more then *ἑκάστω*: in which place he nameth a body *δύο*, and voidness *μὴ δὲ*: meaning thereby, and giving us to understand, that voidness had a proper nature and subsistence of the own, as well as a body. But he is full of opinions, that nothing is more such then such, followeth one of the Decrees and Sentences of Epicurus, wherein he delivered, that all apprehensions and imaginations that come by sense, are true. For if when two men give out and say, the one, that the wine is hard: the other, that it is sweet and pleasant, neither of them is deceived in his sense, but speaketh true, why should the wine be rather harsh then sweet. And yet it is seen oftentimes that one and the same bath, some finde to be hot, and others cold: for that, as these command cold water, so those bid hot water to be poured in. It is said, that a certain Dame or good Wife of Lacedæmon, went upon a time to visit *Barrone* the wife of *Diogenes*, but when they approached near together, they turned away immediately one from the other: the one, as it should seem, abhorring the smell of rank butter, and the other offended with the perfume of a sweet oylment or pomander. If then the sense of one, be not more true then the sense of another, probable it is, and very like, that both water is not more cold then hot, and that the argument and the butter no more senting pleasantly, then stinking strongly. For if a man say, that it is warm thus to one, and so to another, he affirmeth before he is aware, that they be both the one and the other. And as for these Symmetries, proportions and accords of the pores or passages in the organs of the senses, whereof they talk so much: as also the divers mixtures of seeds, which they say being diffeminate and dispersed throughout all favors, odors and colours, do move the sense: do they not directly drive them to this point, that things are no more one then another? For such as think that the sense is deceived, for that they see contrary events and passions do proceed from the same objects, they pacify again, and save this objection, by teaching, that whereas all things be mingled and confounded together, yet nevertheless this is more portable and fitting to open, and that to another: whereby there is not the contraction and apprehension of one and the same quality, neither doth the object move all indifferently at once and alike in all parts, but every one meeting with those qualities onely, whereby they have all sense proportionate, they do not well to stand so flilly upon this, that a thing is coloured or not coloured, white or not white, thinking to fortifie and establish their own senses by destroying those of others. Whereas it behoveth neither to oppugn the senses, for they all touch and reach one quality or other (each one drawing as out of a lively and large fountain, from this confused mixture, that which is fit and suitable) nor accuse and blame the whole, in touching onely the parts; ne yet think that all ought to suffer the same thing, considering that one suffereth by one quality and power of it, and another by another. So that now we are to consider and search, what men they be, who bring in this opinion, as touching things that be not such rather then others, rather then those who hold, that whatsoever is sensible is a confused mixture of all qualities together, like unto a wind-instrument composed for all kinds of melodious musick? But they confess that all their senses are lost, and their judgement quite gone, if they admit any object in some sort pure and sincere, and allow not each one thing to be many.

See moreover in this place, what Discourse and Disputation *Polyenus* held with Epicurus in his Banquet as touching the heat of wine. For when he demanded in this manner, How now Epicurus, say you not that wine doth heat? One made answer, That he affirmed not universally, that wine did cause heat: and a little after, For it seemeth that wine is not universally a heater, but rather, that such a quantity of wine may be said to enchain and set such an one in heat. And then adjoining the cause, he alleged the concurrences, compressions and dispersions of the Atomes; the commixtions and conjunctions of others, when the wine cometh to be mingled with the body: & then he added this conclusion, And therefore generally we are not to say, that wine doth heat: but so much wine may well heat such a nature, and so disposed: whereas another nature is coldest in such and such a quantity. For in such a mass, there be those natures and complexions, of which, cold if need were, may be composed, and being joynted with others as occasion serveth, may cause a vertue refrigerative. And hereupon it is, that some are deceived, saying that wine universally is hot, and others again, affirming it to be universally cold. He then who saith, that the multitude, and most part of men do erre, in holding that to be simply hot, which doth heat, and that likewise to be cold, which doth cool, is deceived himself,

himself, if he thinketh not, that it followeth by good consequence upon that which he hath said, that one thing is more such than such. And afterwards he inferreth this speech, that many times wine entering into the body, bringeth with it neither a calefactive nor a refrigerative vertue; but that when the mass of the body is moved and stirred, so as there is a transposition made of the parts, then the Atomes which are effusive of heat, concur together one while into one place, and through their multitude, set the body into an heat and inflammation; but another while by dispersing and severing themselves asunder, infer coldness.

Moreover, he dissembleth not but that he is proceeded thus far, as to say, that whereas we take things to be, and do call them bitter, sweet, purgative, soporiferous, and lightfome, none of them all have any entire quality or perfect property to produce such effects, nor to be active more then passive, all while they be in the body, but that they be susceptible of sundry temperatures and differences. For even Epicurus himself, in his second Book against Theophrastus, in saying that colours are not natural unto bodies, but are engendered according to certain situations and positions, respective to the eye-sight of man, faith by this reason, that a body is no more destitute of colour, then coloured. And a little before, word for word he writeth thus. But over and beside all this, I know not how a man may say, that these bodies which be in the dark, have any colour at all: and yet oftentimes, when the air is dark is spread round about, some there be who can distinguish the diversity of colours, others perceive nothing at all, by reason of their feeble and dim-sight. Again, when we go into a dark house, we see not at our first entrance, any colours, but after we have been there a pretty while, we perceive them well enough: And therefore we are to say, that each body is not rather coloured then not coloured. If then colour be a relative, and hath being in regard of some other things, white also is a relative, and blew likewise: if these, then sweet and bitter sensibly: so that a man may truly affirm of every quality, that it is not more such, then not such. For to those who are so disposed, a thing shall be such, and to them that are not so affected, not such. So that Colotes doth all to dash and bewray both himself and his Master also, with the same mire and dirt, wherein he faith those do sick who hold that things are not more such then such. What then? doth this egregious Clerk herein only shew himself, according to the old Proverb:

*A Leech professing others for to cure,  
Whiles he himself is full of sores impure?*

No verily: but much more yet in his second reprehension, he chafeth ere he is aware Epicurus, together with Democritus, out of this life: for he giveth out that Democritus said, The Atomes are uncothe senses by a certain law and ordinance colour, by the said law sweet, and by the same law bitter: Also, that he who useth this reason, and holdeth this opinion, knoweth not himself, if he be a man? no whether he be dead or alive? To contradict these speeches, I wot not well how: but thus much I say, that this is as much inferable from the Sentences and Doctrine of Epicurus, as figure and weight by their saying from the Atomes: for what faith Democritus? That there be substances in number infinite, which are called Atomes, because they cannot be divided: howbeit different, without quality and impassible, which do move and are carried, dispersed to and fro in the infinite voidness, which when they approach one another, or concur and meet together, or else be enterlaced and enfolded one about another, then appeareth of these thus heaped and huddled together, one thing water, another fire, another a plant, and another a man: That all these be Atomes still, termed by him *Ides*, and nothing else. For there can be no generation of that which is not: no more then that which once was can become nothing, by reason that these Atomes are so firm and solid, that they can neither change nor alter, nor suffer. And therefore neither can there be colour made of those things which have no colour, nor nature or soul of such as be without quality, and are impassible. Whereupon Democritus is to be blamed, in that he confesseth not those things that be accident unto principles, but supposeth those to be principles, whereto these happen: For he should not have put down principles immutable; or at leastwise, when he had supposed them to be such, not to see withal, that therewith the generation and breeding of all qualities perisheth. And to deny an absurdity, when one seeth it, is impudence in the highest degree. As for Epicurus, he faith verily, that he supposeth the same principles that Democritus doth, but he faith not, that colour sweet, white, and other qualities are by law and ordinance. Now if he confess not that he faith, which nevertheless he said, it is no other but an old custom of his, and that which he is wont to do. For much like it is to this, that he will seem to take away divine providence, and yet he faith, that he alloweth piety and religious devotion toward God: And albeit he giveth out, that for pleasure, he maketh choice of amity and friendship, yet for his friends sake, he willingly endureth most grievous pains: also, for all he supposeth the universal world to be infinite, yet he taketh not away, above and beneath. But this is not like unto the manner of drinking one unto another at a table, where a man may take the cup in hand, and drink what he will, and so give back the rest. But in this Disputation especially, it becometh to remember well the notable Apophthegm or Saying of the wise man. Of what things the beginnings are not necessary, the ends and consequences fall out to be necessary. Necessary it was not therefore to suppose, (or to speak more cruelly) to wring from Democritus thus much, That Atomes be the principles of the whole and universal world: or when he had supposed and set down this doctrine, and withal made a glorious shew of the first probabilities and fair appearances thereof, he should likewise have swallowed that which was troublesome therein, or shewed how those bodies which have no quality, could give unto others all sorts of qualities, onely by meeting and joyning together. As for example, to speak of that which

before to hand, this that we call fire, whence came it, and how groweth it to these indivisible bodies called *Atomes*? if they had neither heat when they came, nor became hot after they met together? for the former presupposeth that they had some quality, and the latter, that they were fit to receive the same, and to suffer: But neither of them twain, ye say, fitteth well with the Atomes, in that they be incorruptible. How then? did not Plato, Aristotle, and X.ocrates produce gold of that which was not gold; and stone, of that which is not stone; yea, and many other things out of the four simple bodies called elements? Yes, I wis: but together with the said bodies there concur immediately at the first, the principles also, to the generation of every thing, bringing with them great contribution, to wit, the first qualities which be in them: afterwards, when there come to meet in one, and joyne together, dry with moist, cold with heat, solid and firm with that which is gentle and soft; that it is to say, active bodies with such as be apt to suffer, and to receive all change and alteration, then ensueth generation, which is the passage from one temperature to another; whereas this Atome or indivisible body being of it self naked and alone, is destitute of all quality and generative faculty: but when it hath to run upon others, it can make a sound and noise onely, by reason of the hardness and solidity thereof, but no other accident else: for strike they do, and are stricken again continually: and so far be they off from compoling and making by this means a living creature, a soul, or a nature, that they are not able to much as to raise a round mass or heap of themselves together: for that as they jure and beat one upon another, so they rebound and fly back again asunder. But Colotes verily, as if he dealt with some King that was ignorant and unlettered, falleth again upon Empedocles, breathing out these words:

*One thing will I say more to thee:  
there is no true nature  
Of mortal weight: of grisly death,  
no seed nor genture.  
A mixture onely first there is  
of things, then after all,  
The same grow to confusion:  
and this men Nature call.*

For mine own part, I do not see how this is repugnant and contrary unto life, among them especially who are of opinion that there is no generation of that which is not at all, nor corruption of that which is and hath being: but the meeting and union of such things as be, is called Generation; the dissolution likewise and disunion of the same, is termed death and corruption. For, that he taketh Nature for Generation, and that he meaneth so, himself hath declared, when he set Nature opposite unto Death. And if those live not, nor can live, who put generation in union, and death in disunion; what thing else do these Epicureans? And yet Empedocles, Godering, as it were, and conjoyning the elements by heats, coldness and humidities, giveth them in some sort a mixture and composition native: but they who drive together the Atomes, which they say to be immutable, sturdy and impassible, compose nothing that proceedeth from them, but rather make many, and those continual peculations of them. For their interlacing which impaecheth dissolution, doth still augment their collision: in such sort, as this is no mixture nor conglutination, but a certain troublesome striving and combace, which according to them is called Generation. And these Atomes or indivisible bodies which meet together but a moment, if one while they recule and recharge after the blow past, they are more then twice so long apart one from another, without touching or approaching, so as nothing can be made of them, not so much as the very body without a soul. But sense, soul, understanding and prudence, there is no man able to think and imagine, would he never so faint, how they can be formed of voidness, and of these Atomes: which neither of themselves apart have any quality, nor yet passion or alteration whatsoever, when they are met together, considering that this meeting is no incorporation, nor such a colition as might make a mutual mixture and conglutination, but rather jurs and reciprocal collisions: in such manner, as according to the doctrine of these folk, supposing as they do, such void, impassible, invifible, undibine and unhelpful principles, yea, and such as will not receive any mixture or incorporation whatsoever, To live, and to be a creature animal, falleth to the ground, and comes to nothing. How cometh it then, that they admit or allow Nature, Soul, and Living creature? Forsooth, even as they do an oath, a vow, prayer, sacrifice and adoration of the gods, to wit, in word and much onely: pronouncing and naming in semblance and outward appearance, that which by their principles and doctrines they quite abolish and annul. And even so, that which is born they term Nature, and that which is engendered, Generation: like as they who ordinarily call the frame of wood and timber, Wood it self, and those voyces or instruments that accord together, Symphony. And what should he mean to object such speech against Empedocles? Why trouble we and weary our selves (quoth he) in being so busie about our own selves, in defining certain things as we do, and avoiding others? for neither are we our selves, neither live we by using others. But be of good cheer, (may one haply say) my loving and sweet Colotarian: have no fear man: no man hindereth you, but that you may regard your self, teaching that the nature of Colotes, is Colotes himself and nothing else: neither that you need or desire to use certain things. As for these things among you, they be pleasures: shewing withal, that it is not the nature of Tart, Cakes and Marchpines, nor of Odors,

nor of love sports that you desire, but Tarts and Marchpanes themselves, sweet perfumes and women they be that you would have. For the Grammarian who faith, the force and strength of *Hercules* is *Hercules*, denieth not thereby that *Hercules* is: nor those who say that Symphonies, accords or opinations are bare prolations or pronouncements, affirm not there withall, that there be no sounds, nor voices, nor opinions: forasmuch as there be some, who abolishing the soul and prudence, seem not to take away either to live or to be prudent. And when *Epicurus* faith, the nature of things that have being, are the bodies and the void place of them, do we take his words, as if he meant that nature were something else than the things that be? or that things being, do shew their nature and nothing else? even as for examples sake, the nature of voidness, he is wont to call voidness: it self: yea, and I assure you, the Universal World it self, the nature of all. Now if a man should demand of him: How now *Epicurus*, say you indeed that this is voidness, and that is the nature of voidness? Yes verily, will he answer again, but this communication of names the one for another, is taken up and in use. And in truth, that the law and custom warranteth this manner of speech, I also vouch.

And what other thing I pray you hath *Empedocles*, done than taught that nature is nought else but that which is bred and engendered, nor death any thing but that which dyeth? But like as Poets utter whiles by a trope or figurative speech representing as it were the image of things say thus:

*Debate, tumult, uproar and stomach fell,  
With deadly dyes and malice there did dwell.*

Even so the common sort of men do use the termes of generation and corruption in things that are contracted together and dissolved. And so far was he from stirring or removing those things that be, or opposing himself against things of evident appearance, that he would not so much as call one word out of the accustomed use: but so far forth as any figurative fraud might hurt or endamage things, he rejected and took the same away, rendering again the usual and ordinary signification to words, as in these verses:

*And when the light is mixed thus  
with aire in heavenly skie.  
Some man is made or wilde beasts kinde,  
or birds aloft that fly:  
Or else the shrubs: and this rightly  
is cleav'd their geneture,  
But death, when as dissolved is  
the foreaid fast joynture.*

And yet I say my self, that *Colotes* having alledged thus much, knew not that *Empedocles* did not abolish men, beasts, shrubs or birds in as much as he faith, that all these are composed and finished of the Elements mixed together: But teaching and shewing them, how they were deceived, who finde fault with naming this composition a certain nature or life: and the dissolution unhappy fortune and death to be avoided, he annulled not the ordinary and usual use of words in that behalf. For mine own part I think verily that *Empedocles* doth not alter in these places the common manner of pronouncing and using the said words: but as before it was related, is really of a different minde as touching the generation of things that had no being, which some call nature. Which he especially declareth in these verses.

*Fooles as they be of small conceits,  
for far they cannot see,  
Who hope that things which never were,  
may once engendered be,  
Or fear that those which are shall dye,  
and perire utterly.*

For these verses are thundred out and do sound aloud in their hearing who have any cares at all, that he doth not abolish generation absolutely, but that alone which is of nothing: nor yet corruption simply, but that which is a total destruction, that is to say, a reduction to nothing. For unto a man who were not willing, after such a savage, rude and brutish manner but more gently to cavil, the verses following after might give a colourable occasion to charge *Empedocles* with the contrary, when he faith thus:

*No man of sense and judgement sound,  
would once conceive in minde  
That whiles we living here on earth,  
both good and bad doe finde,  
So long only we being have:  
(yet this, men life doe call)  
And birth before, or after death,  
we nothing are at all.*

Which words verily are not uttered by a man, who denyeth them their being who are borne and live, but rather by him who thinketh that they who are not yet borne, as also those that be already dead have their being. And even so *Colotes* doth not altogether reprove him for this: but he faith that according to his opinion we shall never be sick nor wounded. And how it is possible that he who faith that men before life and after life, are accompanied with good and bad indifferently, should not leave for them that be

be alive the power to suffer? What be those then, good *Colotes*, who are accompanied with this immutability, that they can neither be hurt nor diseased? Even you self, and such as you are, who be altogether made of an Atome and Voidness, for by your own sayings, neither the one nor the other hath any sense. But no force. For I hear of no harm yet. Marry here is the grief, that by this reason you have nothing in you to cause delight and pleasure, seeing that an Atome is not capable of such things as move pleasure: and Voidness is unable to be affected by them. But for as much as *Colotes* for this part would needs immediately after *Democritus* seem to inter and bury *Parmenides* for ever, and my self in putting off a little, and passing over the defence of *Parmenides*, have between both taken in hand the maintenance of that which was delivered by *Empedocles*, because methought they did more properly adhere and hang to those first imputations, let us now come again to *Parmenides*. And whereas *Colotes* chargeth him with setting abroad certain shameful Sophistries, yet hath the man thereby made Friendship, nothing less honorable, nor Voluptuousness and Sensuality more audacious and unbridled. He hath not bereft Honesty of that attractive property to draw unto it self, nor of the gift of being venerable of it self: neither hath he troubled and confounded the opinions as touching the gods. And in saying that All is One, I see not how he hath hindered our life. For when *Epicurus* him self faith, that [All] is infinite, ingenerable and incorruptible, that it cannot be augmented nor diminished, he speaketh and dispueth of All, as of some one thing. And in the beginning of his Treatise concerning this matter, having delivered that the nature of All things being, consisteth in indivisible bodies which he termeth Atomes, and in Voidness: he made a division, as it were, of one thing into two parts: whereof the one in truth is not subsistent, but termed by you impalpable, void and bodiless: whereby it cometh to pass, that even with you, All cometh to be but One: unlike you will use vain words, and void of sense, speaking of voidness, and fighting in vain, as with a shadow, against those ancient Philosophers.

But these Atomes, you will say, are according to the opinion of *Epicurus* in number infinite, and every thing that appeareth unto us, ariseth from them. Behold now what principles you put down for generation, to wit, Infinity and Voidness: whereof the one is without action, impassible and bodiless; the other, namely, Infinity, disorderly, void of reason, incomprehensible, dissolving and confounding it self, for that by reason of multitude it cannot be circumscribed nor contained within limits. But *Parmenides* hath not abolished either fire or water, or any rock, nor not the Cities (as *Colotes* faith) inhabited as well in Europe as Asia, considering that he hath both instituted an orderly disposition and digestion: and also tempering the elements together, to wit, light and dark, of them, and by them absolutely finisheth all things visible in the world, for written he hath at large of Earth, of Heaven, of Sun, Moon and Stars; as also, spoken much of mans Generation: and being as he was, a very ancient Philosopher, he hath left nothing in Physiologie unsaid, and whereof he hath not delivered both by word and writing his own doctrine, nor borrowed elsewhere, passing over the repugnancy of other received principal opinions. Moreover, he of all others first, and even before *Socrates* himself, observed and understood, that in nature there is one part subject to opinion, and another subject to intelligence. As for that which is Opinable, inconstant it is and uncertain, wandering also and carried away with sundry passions and mutations, apt to diminish and pair: to increase also and grow, and to be diversly affected, and not ever after one sort disposed to the same in sense alike. As for the intelligible part, it is of another kinde:

*For found it is, whole and not variable,  
Constant and sure, and ingenerable.*

himself faith, always like to it self, and perdurable in the own nature and essence. But *Colotes*, like a scorpion, cavilling at him, and catching at his words, without regard of the matter, not arguing against his reasons indeed, but in words only, affirmeth flatly, that *Parmenides* overthroweth all things in one word, by supposing that All is One. But he verily on the contrary side, affirmeth neither the one nature nor the other, but rendereth to each of them that which is meets, and appertaineth thereto. For the intelligible part he rangeth in the Idea of One, and of That which is, saying that it is and hath being, in regard of eternity and incorruption; that it is one, because it always resembleth itself, and receiveth no diversity. As for that part which is Sensible, he placeth it in the rank of that which is uncertain, disorderly, and ever moving. Of which two, we may see the distinct judgement in the soul, by these verses:

*The one retains to truth which is sincere,  
Persuasive, breeding Science pure and clear.*

For it concerneth that which is intelligible, and evermore alike and in the same sort.

*The other rests on mens opinions vain,  
Which breed no true belief but uncertain.*

For that it is conversant in such things as receive all manner of changes, passions, and mutabilities: And verily how possibly he should admit and leave unto us sense and opinion, and not wishal allow that which is sensible and opinable, a man is not able to shew. But forasmuch as to that which is constant indeed, it appertaineth to remain in being, and for that things sensible, one while are, and another while are not, but pass continually from one being to another, and alter their estate, inasmuch as they deserve rather some other name than this, of being: This speech as touching All; that it should be one, is not to take away the plurality of things sensible, but to shew the difference between them and those that be intelligible, which *Plato* in his Treatise of Ideas, minding to declare more plainly, gave

*Colotes*

Colotes some advantage for to take hold of him. And therefore methinks it good reason to take before me all in one train, that also which he hath spoken against him. But first let us consider the diligence, together with the deep and profound knowledge of this Philosopher *Plato*, considering that *Aristotle*, *Xenocrates*, *Theophrastus*, and all the Peripateticks have followed his doctrine. For in what blinde corner of the world uninhabited wrote he his Book? that you *Colotes* in heaping up together these criminations upon such personages, should never light upon their works, nor take in hand the Books of *Aristotle*, as touching the Heaven and the Soul: Nor those Compositions of *Theophrastus* against the Naturalists, nor that *Zoroastres* of *Heracitus*, one Book of Hell and Infernal Spirits, another of Doubts and Questions Natural: That also of *Dicaearchus* concerning the Soul. In all which Books they are contradictory and repugnant, in the main and principal points of Natural Philosophy unto *Plato*? And verily the Prince of all other Peripateticks, *Sirato*, accordeth not in many things with *Aristotle*, and maintaineth opinions clean contrary unto those of *Aristotle*, as touching Motion, Understanding, the Soul, and Generation. And in conclusion, he holdeth, that the very world is not animal; and whatsoever is natural, is consequent unto that which is casual, and according to fortune. As for the *Idea* for which *Aristotle* every where seemeth to censure *Plato*, and moveth all manner of doubts concerning them, in his *Ethicks* or Moral Discourses, in his *Physics*, in his *Exoteric* Dialogues, he is thought of some to dispute and discourse with a more contentious and opinative spirit than became a Philosopher, as if he propounded to himself for to convell and debase the Philosophy of *Plato*, so far was he from following him. What impudent and licentious railings therefore is this, that one having never known nor seen what these learned Clerks had written, and what their opinions were, should coyn and devise out of his own fingers ends, and fully charge upon them, those things which never came into their heads, and in persuading himself that he reproveth and refuteth others, to bring in a proof and evidence written with his own hand, for to argue and convince himself of ignorances, or rash and audacious impudence, saying, that those who contradict *Plato*, agree with him, and they that repugn against him do follow him? But *Plato* (quoth he) hath written, That horses are in vain counted by us horses, and men likewise. And in what odd corner of *Plato's* works hath *Colotes* found this hidden? As for us we read in all his books, that horses be horses, and men be men, and that fire even by him is esteemed fire: for he holdeth every one of these things to be sensible and opinable, and so he nameth them. But this our trim man *Colotes*, as though he wanted never a jot of the highest pitch of sapience and knowledge, presumeth, forsooth, and taketh it to be all one and the same, to say, A man is not, and A man is that which hath no being. But *Plato* thinketh that there is a wonderful great difference between these terms, Not to be at all, and To be that which is not: for the former importeth a nullity and abolishment of all substance; and the other sheweth the difference of that which is participated, and that which doth participate: which distinction and diversity they who came after, have reduced only unto a different range of Kinds, Forms, and of certain common and proper qualities or accidents, but higher than so they mounted not, falling down upon some doubts and difficulties more reasonable: for the same reason and proportion there is between the thing participated and participating, as is between the cause and the matter, the original and the image: the power and the passion. Wherein principally differeth that which is by it self, and ever the same, from that which is by another, and never keepeth one state: for that the one never shall be, nor ever was that which is by another, and for this cause, it is truly and altogether subsistent; whereas the other hath not so much as that being constant, which it hapneth to participate from another, but doth degenerate and grow out of kinde, through imbecility: in that the matter doth glide and slide about the form, receiving many passions and mutations, bending toward the image of subsistence, in such sort, as continually it moveth and shaketh to and fro. Like as therefore he who faith, that *Plato* is not the image of *Plato*, taketh not away the sense and substance of an image, but sheweth the difference between that which is of it self, and the other which is in regard of it: even so they abolish not the nature, the use nor taste of men, who say, that every one of us by participating the *Idea* of a certain common substance, is become the Image of that which giveth similitude and affinity unto our generation. For neither he who faith, that iron red hot is not fire, or the Moon, the Sun, but (to use the very words of *Parmenides*)

*A flame that bears a borrowed light,  
Wandering about the earth by night,*

doth take away the use of a burning gleed, or the nature of the Moon: But if he should affirm, that it were no body, nor illuminate, then he went against the senses, as one who admitted neither body, nor living animal, nor generation, nor sense. But he that by opinion imagineth these things to have no subsistence but by participation, and withal, how far they are short and distant from that which always being, and which gave them the power to be, considereth not amidst the sensible, but is disappointed in the intelligible: neither doth he annihilate and overthrow the passions which arise and appear in us, but sheweth unto them that are docible and follow him, that there be other more firm and stable things than these, as touching essence, for that they neither are engendered nor perily nor yet suffer ought: but teacheth more clearly and purely, noting and touching the difference by the very terms and names, calling the one sort existent, and the other breeding or ingendered. The same usually befalleth also to our late Modern Writers, who deprive many great and weighty things of this denomination of subsistence, as namely, Voidness, Time, Place, and generally the whole kind

of those speeches, wherein are comprised all things true. For these things being, they say are not; and yet they say some are; yea and use the same as well in their life, as their doctrine and Philosophy, as having subsistence and being. But I would gladly demand of this accuser of ours himself, whether he and his fellows in their affairs perceive not this difference, [whereby things be permanent and immutable in their substance, like as the yaffim of their Atomes, that they be at all times and continually after one and the same fort, by reason of their impassibility and stiffe solidity? whereas all things compounded and compact of them, be flexible, pliable, mutable, breeding and perishing: for that an infinite number of images do pass, and flow from them evermore; yea and an innumerable sort of other things, by all likelihood, from out of the ambient air do flow and have recourse unto them, for to supply and fill up the heap fill, which mass is become much altered, diversified and transverised as it were by this permutation, in that the Atomes which are in the bottom of the said mass, can never cease or give over stirring, but reciprocally beat one upon another, as they themselves affirm. So there is in things such a difference of substance as this: and yet *Epicurus* is more wise and learned than *Plato*, in that he termeth all things equally subsisting. Voidness impalpable, the Body solid and resisting, the principles, things composed: and for that he thinketh that the eternal doth not so much as participate in the common substance with that which is engendered; the immortal with that which doth perish; the natures impassible, perdurable, immutable, which never can fall or be deprived from their being, with those which have their essence in suffering or changing, & never can continue in one and the same state. Now were it so, that *Plato* had most justly of all men in the world deserved to be condemned for his error herein, yet my good friend, there should no imputation be charged upon him by these our great writers here, who speak purer or finer Greek and more exquisitely than he, but only for confounding some words and speaking improperly; nor to be blamed for abolishing the matters themselves, or taking out of this life, & esteemed because them ingendered, and not existent, as these men do.

But seeing we have passed over *Socrates*, after *Parmenides*, we must now take his defence in hand. *Colotes* then began directly at the first (as we say in the common proverb) to remove him from the sacred line or tribe: and having showed how *Cherephon* had brought an answer from the Oracle at *Delphe*, as touching *Socrates*, which we all know to be so, faith thus: As for this discourse & narration (quoth he) *Jul Cherephon*, for that it is altogether odious, suspicious, sophistical, & full of untruth, we will overpass. Then is *Plato* likewise (to say nothing of others) odious & odious, who hath put the said down in writing. Then are the Lacedaemonians more odious and intolerable, who hath kept that Oracle delivered, as touching *Lycurgus*, among their most ancient writings & authentical records. Scandalously, the discourse & narration of *Themistocles* was a sophistical & counterfeit device, whereby he persuaded the Athenians to abandon their City, and so in a navall battell defeated the barbarous Prince *Xerxes*. And even so all the noble Lawgivers and founders of Greece are to be counted odious and intolerable, who established the most part of their Temples, their Sacrifices and solemn feasts, by the answer from the Oracle of *Apollo*. But if it be so, that the Oracle brought from *Delphe* as touching *Socrates*, a man ravished with a divine and heavenly zeal to virtue, whereby he was declared and pronounced wise, more odious, famed and sophistical: by what name shall we truly and justly call your cries, your shouts, your hideous noises, your applauses and clapping of hands, your adorations and canonizations wherewith you exalt and celebrate him, who incited and exhorted you to continual pleasures one after another, who in one of his letters sent unto *Anaxarchus* hath written thus: As for me, I invite and call you to continual pleasures, and not to these vaine and unprofitable virtues, such as have nothing but turbulent hopes of uncertain fruits. And yet *Metrodorus* writing unto *Timarchus*, faith thus unto him, Come on (quoth he) let us do some goodly and honest thing for those who are fair and beautiful, so that we be not plunged in these flemable and reciprocal affections, but retiring anon out of this base and terrestrial life, let us advance our selves to these true, holy and divine ceremonies and mysteries of *Epicurus*. And even *Colotes* himself having *Epicurus* one day discoursing of natural things, fell down at his feet immediately, and took hold of his knees, as if he had been a God. And *Epicurus* likewise taking no small pride and glory herein, writeth thus unto him again: For as if you adored that which then was delivered by me, there came upon you suddenly a desire and zeal proceeding from no cause in nature, to come toward me, to prostrate your self upon the ground, to clip and kiss my knees, and to use those gestures unto me, which ordinarily they do, who worship the Gods and pray unto them: So that you have (quoth he) made me also reciprocally to desire and adore you. Certes I would find in my heart to pardon them, who say they would not spare for any cost, but give they cared not what for a table or picture, wherein they might be secretly represented to the eye this story depainted; namely, how the one lieth prostrate at the others feet, and embraceth his knees: who mutually again adoreth him, and maketh his devout prayers unto him. And yet this devotion and service of *Colotes*, how well so ever it was by him ordered and precisely observed, needed not the condign fruit thereof: for as he was not by him declared a wife man: only this blessing he had from him again, Go thy ways and walk immortal, and repose us also feebly immortal. These men knowing full well in their own consciences that they use such foolish words, ridiculous jestures, and fond passions, yet forsooth they are so bold as to call other men odious. And *Colotes* verily having given us a taste of his goodly first fruits, and wife Positions as touching Natural senses, namely, That we do eat our viands and eates, not hay or fenge, and that when the rivers be high, we ferry them in boats, but when they be low and passable, we wade easily on foot through the foord, exclaimeth & cried out afterwards: you use *O Socrates* vain speeches, you entertain those who come and speak unto you with one thing in the world, and do practise others clean contrary in deed. And say you to *Colotes* A First I would gladly know wherein the words of *Socrates* were vaine and arrogant, considering that that he was wont ordinarily to say, that he knew nothing at all, but was a learner continually, and went to search and find out the truth? But if haply you should light upon such speeches from *Socrates*, his mouth wherof were which *Epicurus* wrote unto *Idomeneus*, send us then the first fruits, for the furniture of our faced body, for us (I say) and our children: For thus it comes upon me to speak, what more insolent and foolish words could you devise to speak? And yet, that *Socrates* never said otherwise than he did he hath given us marvellous

H h h

proofs

propos in the battell of *Delium*, and in that of *Potidea*: That which he did during the time of the thirty Tyrants against *Achaeus*, and against the people of *Athens*: his poverty; his death; his carriage and demeanour in all these times and occasions, be they not answerable every way to the sayings and doctrines of *Socrates*? This had been a true proof indeed, to have shewed that he lived and did otherwise than he spake and taught, in case he had proposed the end of man to be a joyfull and pleasant life, and then lived as he did. Thus much as touching the reproachfull terms that he hath given *Socrates*. Moreover, he perceiveth not how himself is attaint even in those points which he reproveth and objected as touching things evident and apparent. For one of the positions and decrees of *Epicurus*, is, That no person ought irrevocably to believe or be persuaded to a thing, but only the wife man. Now seeing that *Colotes* became not one of the Sages, for all that adoration and worship which he performed unto *Epicurus*, let him demand first and foremost these questions. How it is, that he saith to cares, and not to hay, when he hath need of vittuals? and why he casteth a Robe about his own body, and not upon a Piller? considering that he is not assuredly persuaded, that Cares be Cares, but that a Robe is a Robe: But if he do so, namely, feed upon viduals, and wear a Robe: if he venture not to wade through rivers when they be risen and high; if he flee from Serpents and Wolves, being not in a sure belief that any thing is such as it seemeth, but doing every thing according as it appeareth unto him; the opinion as touching Senses, would not hinder *Socrates* at all, but that he might likewise use that which seemeth unto him. For bread seemed not bread unto *Colotes*, nor hay to be hay, because he had read those holy Canons and sacred rules of *Epicurus* which fell from heaven out of *Jupiter's* lap; and *Socrates* upon a vain arrogance of his own, conceived an imagination of bread that it was hay, and of hay that it was bread. For these wife men here, have better opinions and rules to go by than we. But to have sense and to receive an impression in the imagination of things evident, is common as well to ignorant persons as to Sages, for that it proceedeth from Causes that need no Discourse of Reason. Be it that Position, that our naturall senses are not certain nor sufficient enough to prove a thing, and cause belief, is no hindrance, but that every thing may appear unto us: But when we use the Senses in our Actions, according to that which appeareth, it permitteeth us not to trust them, as if they were every way true and without error: for that sufficeth in them, which is necessary and commodious for use, because there is nothing better. As for Science, Knowledge, and Perfection, which the Soul of a Philosopher desireth to have of every thing, the Senses have just none. But of these matters which *Colotes* hath charged upon many others, he will give us occasion else where to discourse thereof.

Furthermore, that wherein he doth vilipend and mock *Socrates* most, in that he demandeth the question, What is man? and in a youthfull bravery, and childishly as he saith, affirmeth that he knoweth not, it is evident that even he who derideth him, never came himself where it was, nor attained thereto: whereas *Heracles* contrariwise, as one who had done a great and worthy matter, said thus, I have been seeking out my self. And of all those sentences which are written over the gates of *Appollo's* temple at *Delphos*, this was thought to be most heavenly and divine. Know thy self: which gave unto *Socrates* occasion first to doubt and enquire thereof according as *Aristotle* hath set down in his Platonique questions. But this foolishness seemeth unto *Colotes* to be a foolish and ridiculous thing. I marvel then why he mocketh not his master likewise for doing so as often as he writeth and discourseth as touching the substance of the soul, and the beginning of that confused masse: for if that which is compounded of both, as they themselves do teach, to wit, of such a body and soul, be man, he who searcheth the nature of the soul, searcheth consequently the nature of man, even from his principall and Chief principle. Now that the same is hardly by reason to be comprehended, but by the outward sense altogether incomprehensible, let us learn not of *Socrates*, a vain-glorious man and sophistical disputer, but rather of these wise men here, who do forge and frame the substance of the Soul so far only as to the faculties extending to the flesh, whereby the liveth heat, softness, and strength to the body: of I wote not what heat and acerious spirits: never wading so far as to that which is the principall, but faint and give over in the way. For that faculty whereby the judgeth, whereby he remembereth, whereby the loveth or hateth, and in one word, that reason which wisely foreseeth and discerneth, he saith, is made of a certain quality which is nameless. Now that this nameless thing is a mere confusion of shamefull ignorance, in them that say they cannot name that, which indeed they are not able to comprehend and understand, we know well enough. But this also may well deserve pardon, as they are wont to say. For it seemeth that this is no small and light matter, neither a thing that every one can find out and reach unto, being deeply fettered in the bottom of some by-place far remote, and in some obscure and hidden corner, seeing that among so many words and terms which be in use, there is not one significant enough, and sufficient to declare and explain the same. And therefore *Socrates* was no fool nor loby, for seeking and searching what himself was, but they rather be dolts who go about enquiring after any other thing before this, the knowledge of which is so necessary and hard to be found. For hardly may he hope to attain unto the knowledge of any other thing, who is not able to understand the principall part of himself. But say we should grant and yield thus much unto him, as to confesse there is nothing so vain, so unprofitable, and so odious, as for a man to seek himself: we will be so bold as to demand, what confusion of mans life this should be, or how it is that a man cannot continue in this life, when he comes to discourse and reason thus with himself. Who and what mought I be? Am I after the manner of some Composition, confected and mingled of Soul and Body? or rather a Soul making use of the Body, as the Horse-man doth of his Horse? and not a Subject composed of Horse and Man? or whether the principall part of the Soul whereby we understand, we Discourse, we Reason, and Do every Action, is every each one of us? and all the parts besides both of Soul and Body, be nothing but the Organs and Instruments serving to this Purpose

large and faculty? Or to conclude, whether there be no substance of the Soul apart, but only a temperature and complexion of the body, so disposed, that it hath power to understand and to live. But *Socrates* herein saith he doth not overthrow the life of man, considering that all naturall Philosophers do handle this argument. Marry they be those monstrous questions that trouble the common-wealth, and turn all upside down, which are in the Dialogue *Pheadrus*, wherein he thinketh that he ought to examine and consider himself, namely whether he be a beast more savage, more subtle, cruel, and furious than ever was *Typhon*: or rather some animal more tame and gentle by nature, and endued with a portion more divine, and a condition nothing proud and insolent. But yet by these discourses and reasonings he overturneth not the life of man, but he chafeth out of it presumption and arrogance, proud and puffed up opinions and vain overweenings of a mans self: For this is that all *Typhon*, which your Master and Teacher hath made to be so great in you, warring as he doth both against the gods, and all good and godly men.

After he hath done with *Socrates* and *Plato*, he falleth in hand with the Philosopher *Stilpo*. As for the true doctrines and good discourses of the man, whereby he ordered and governed himself, his native Country, his Friends, and those Kings and Princes who affected him, and made good accounts of him, he hath not written a word: neither what Gravity and Magnanimity was in his heart, and the same accompanied with Mildness, Moderation, and Modesty: but of those little sentences or propositions which *Stilpo* was wont to use and cast forth in merriment against the Sophisters, when he was disposed to laugh and play with them, he made mention of one: and without alledging any reason against it or solving the subtilty thereof, he made a Tragedy, and kept a foul stir with him about it, saying that by him the life of man and the whole course of this world was subverted: because he said, that one thing could not be affirmed and verified of another. For how should we live (quoth *Colotes*) if we may not say a good man, or a man is a Captain, but to pronounce a party, man is good, is good, and Captain is a Captain: neither ten thousand Horsemen, nor a fenced City, but Horsemen be Horsemen, ten thousand be ten thousand, & so of the rest? But tell me I pray you, what man ever lived the worse for saying thus? And who he who having heard these words and this manner of arguing, did not conceive and understand straight waies that it was the speech of a man, disposed to make some game & dispute learnedly, or to propose unto others this Logical quill for exercise sake? It is not *Colotes*, such a grievous scandal and hainous matter as you would make it, to say man is not good, or horsemen be not a thousand: marry to affirm that god is not god as you & the rest do, who will not confesse that there is a *Jupiter* president over generation, or a *Ceres* that giveth laws, or a *Neptune* superintendent over plants, is dangerous point. This is the feperation of names & words that is pernicious, this filleth our life with contemptuous impiety, atheism, & dissolute audaciousness: For when you pluck from the gods these attributes & appellations that essentially be linked & tyed to them, you abolish therewithall holy sacrifices, divine mysteries, sacred processions & solemn feasts: for unto whom shall we perform the nuptial sacrifices called *Proteles*, unto whom we shall offer the oblations for health named *Soteria*? How shall we accomplish the rites of *Phosphoria*, the Bacchanale, & the ceremonies going before marriage, if we leave not any Priests of *Bacchus*, if we admit not *Phosphori Præfests*, & the saving gods *Soteres*? For I tell you, this toucheth the main & principall points, this breedeth error in the things themselves & not about certain base voices in the *Syntaxes* and construction of words, or use of terms. Now if these be matters that trouble & subvert this life of ours, who be they that offend, & be delinquent more in their phrase & language than you who making prepositions to be the only substance of speech, abolish altogether all simple wises, & admitting such as come next hand, you abolish in the mean while the things by them signified; whereby all discipline, doctrine, erudition, anticipations, intelligences, inclinations & assents are performed, and hold generally that all these be just nothing. But as for *Stilpo* thus the case standeth: If we affirm of an horse, to run, he doth not say that the thing affirmed which the Logicians call *Predicatum*, is all one with the *Subiectum*, of which it is affirmed; but that the essential definition of a man is one, and that of good is another: as also, to be an horse is different from to be running: For if we asked the definition of the one & the other, we will not give the same for both, & in that regard, they do amiss who affirm, the one of the other. For if a man & good were all one: likewise, an horse, & to run were both one: how cometh it pass that the term good is affirmed of some meat, drouge, or medecine, & to run likewise, of a lion & a dog? But if the *Predicatum* or thing affirmed be different, then we do not well, to say, good man, or the horse runneth. Now if *Stilpo* in these matters do exorbitate & be foully deceived, admitting no copulation at all nor connexion of such things are said to be in or about the subject, together with the said subject it self: but every one of them if it be not about the very same with that unto which it happeneth he thinketh not that the same ought to be said & affirmed thereof as an accident: & if therein he be offended with some terms, & go against the ordinary custom of speech, he doth not therefore straightwaies subvert and overthrow mans life, nor humane affairs, as all the world may see well enough.

*Colotes* now having done with the ancient Philosophers, turneth himself to those of his own time, and yet he nameth not one. Howbeit, he should have done better to have argued as well against these modern as those ancients, by name, or not at all to have named those of old time. But he who so often hath pricked *Socrates*, *Plato*, and *Peremides* with his pen, sheweth plainly, that it was for mere cowardice that he durst not be seen to deal with the living; and not upon any Modesty or Reverence that he spared their names, considering that he used them, who were more far excellent than they, in no good sort and respect. His meaning was as I suspect and guesse, to assail the Cireniques first, and then in a second place the Academicks, Sectaries of *ARCESILAU*S: for as these

were the Philosophers who doubted of all things and yielded their assent in nothing at all; so the other repelling passions and imaginations in themselves, thought that the belief proceeding from thence, was not sufficient to assure and confirm things, but faring like unto those who are besieged within a City, abandoning and forsaking all without, they keep themselves shut within their passions, using this word ordinarily, it seemeth: and of things without, affirming and pronouncing, it is. And therefore (quoth *Colotes*) they cannot live nor have the use of things. And then, playing his part as it were in a Comedy: These men (saith he) deny that a Man, a Horse and a Wall are; but they say, that they become Walls, Horses, and Men; abusing first) and formost cauteously and wickedly these terms, like slanderous and foul mouthed Sycophants: for surely this is an ordinary cast and usual with these men. But it behoved to declare the thing it self, according as they teach: for they affirm, that things become sweet, wax bitter, prove light some, or grow dark, when each of these hath the proper efficacy of these passions in it self naturally inbred, and such as can not be distracted from it. But if they be said sweet, an olive branch bitter, hail cold, meere wine hot, the air of the night dark; there be many beasts, many things, and many men, that will testify the contrary: whiles some are offended with honey and abhor it, others are delighted with the taste of the olive branch; some are burnt and singed by hail, others cooled with wine; some can not abide the light of the Sun but their sight therewith is dazzled and dimmed, others again see well enough by night. And therefore opinion persifting still and abiding in the passions, keepeth it self from offence and error: but going forth once, and busily judging or pronouncing of things exterior, it troubleth many times it self, and repugneth with others, who of the same objects receive contrary passions, and different imaginations. And as for *Colotes*, he remembereth for all the world young Children who newly begin to learn their A. B. C. forbearing used to pronounce and name the letters which they see engraven in their own battle-darts, when they find them written elsewhere, they stick at them, and are much troubled: and even so the very words and sayings which he approveth, praiseth and embraceth in the writings of *Epicurus*, he will not understand nor acknowledge, when they are uttered by others. For when there is presented unto us one Image round and another broken, they who say that the sense verily is truly informed and hath a true impression, but will not suffer us to pronounce that the Tower is round, but the Ore broken, surely they confirm thereby that their passions be their own fancies and imaginations, but they will not avow and confess, that the things without are so affected. But as they before that are to say, that they be not Horse or Wall, but become Horse and Wall; even so of necessity we must say, that the light is not printed with a round figure or triangular with three unequal sides, but not that a Tower is necessarily either triangular in that fort or round: for that the Image wherewith the light is affected may well be broken, but the Ore from whence proceedeth the Image is not broken. Seeing then there is a difference between the passion and the subject without, either we must say that the belief abideth in the passion, or else that the being, which is affirmed by the appearance is convinced of untruth, and not found to be so. And whereas they cry out and be offended and angry about the sense, they do not say that the thing without is hot, but that the passion in the sense is so: it is not all one will that which is spoken as touching the taste, as if one should say, that the thing without is not sweet, but that it is some passion and motion about the sense, that is become such? And he who saith, that he apprehendeth the imagination of a mans form, but perceiveth not that it is a man, whereupon hath he taken occasion to say so? Came it not from them who say that they receive an imagination and apprehension of a bowing form and figure, but the light doth not imagine that it is bowing and bending, neither that it is round, but some imagination and impression about the sense is become round? True it is will some one say, but as I approach near unto a Tower, or else touch an Ore, I will pronounce and affirm, that the one is streight, and the other hath many Angles and many Faces: But he when he shall come near, will confesse and say that it seemeth so and that it appeareth such unto him, but no more. O yes good Sir, and more then so, when he seeth and observeth the consequence hereupon, namely, that every fantastic and imagination is semblable of it self sufficient to procure belief, and none at all, in regard of another, but be all of equal condition. But this your opinion is come just to nothing, namely, that fantasies be all true, and none false and incredible, in case you think that these ought to pronounce affirmatively of that which is without, and believe not the other a far off no farther than in that which they suffer: for if they be of equal condition and believed alike, when they are near, and when they be far off, meet it is and just, that either all indifferently or else not these, should have the affirmative Judgement following upon them, to pronounce, that a thing is. But if there be a difference of passion in things that be near, and those which are farther off, then it is false that neither imagination nor sense is one more expresse and evident than another: like unto those which they call acretations which are nothing to the sense, but unto the opinion: so that in following them, they would have their followers to affirm and pronounce of exterior things, attributing to opinion the judgement, that a thing is, and to sense, the passion that appeareth: whereby they transpire the judgement from that which is alwaies true, unto that which falleth oftentimes to be so. But what needs there at this time to shew, the confusion and contradiction that is herein? But it seemeth that the reputation of *Arceflaus*, who of all Philosophers in his time was best beloved and most esteemed, was no small thorn in *Epicurus* his eyes, but troubled him beyond all measure: For he giveth out of him, that delivering as he did nothing of his own invention he imprinted in the minds of ignorant and unlettered men a certain opinion and conceit of him, that he was a deep Clerk, and very well seen in all kind of literature. But so far was *Arceflaus*, from affecting any glory and reputa-

tion in the world by broaching novelities or strange opinions and derogating from the ancients or affecting any thing of theirs to himself, that the Sophists in his dayes reproved and charged him for seducing upon *Socrates*, *Plato*, *Parmenides*, and *Heraclitus* the opinions as touching the retention of assent and the incomprehensibility of things who indeed never sought nor desired so much at his hands, only because he would referre the same unto such famous Personages, the better to be confirmed by the authority of their name. Howbeit for this, thanks be to *Colotes* and every one who faith, that the Academicke Doctrine was more ancient than *Arceflaus*, and was derived from others before his time unto him. But as for the retention of assent, and the doubting of all things, not so much as they verily who have greatly travelled in the matter, and have strived to that purpose for to write many great Books, and large Treatises, could ever remove or overthrow: but bringing in at the last out of the very School and Doctrine of the Stoicks, the cessation from all actions, as it were the stand *Gorgon* to scare folk withall, were weary and gave over in the plain field, after they saw once, that what attempt soever they made, and which way soever they turned themselves their infirmity and appetition was never to obseant as to become a consent and approbation, neither received sense for the beginning of propension and inclination, but seemed to prevent it self to actions, as having no need to be joynd with others. For surely with these men the Combate is lawfull and the Contest just.

For looke what words thou dost to others give,  
The like thou mayst be sure to hear believe.

And verily to speak unto *Colotes*, as touching infirmity and appetition, is all one as to found the harp before an Ass. But this point of learning would be delivered unto those who can give ear and conceive, that there be in our soul three kinds of motions, Imaginative, Appetitive, and Assenting. As for the Imaginative, we cannot take it away, would we never so faine: for as things approach, and objects be presented, we cannot chuse but be informed and receive as it were an impression and suffer by them. The Appetitive being stirred up by the Imaginative, moveth a man effectually to those things which are proper and convenient for him, as if in the principall and reasonable part thereof, there were some propension and inclination. And verily this motion do not they overthrow and annul who hold off, and keep in their Assent, doubting of every thing, but make use of this appetition or infirmity, concluding naturally every man to that which is proper and meet for him. What is the one thing then that the Academicks file and avoid? even that wherein alone there is engendered leasing, deceit and falsehood, to optine, to apply the assent, which is a yielding through imbecility to that which appeareth, and hath no true profit. For our action requireth two things, to wit the apprehension or imagination of that which is convenient and familiar, and the infirmity or appetition driving unto the same: whereof neither the one nor the other is repugnant to the cobitation of assent. For the Discourse of Reason withdraweth us from opinion, and not from Appetition or Imagination. When as therefore that which is pleasant and delectable seemeth unto us to be proper for us, and familiar, there is no need at all of opinion for to move and carry us to it, but Appetition immediately presenteth it self, which is nothing else but a motion and incitation of the mind. Now for that there must be a sense as it were of these things, and the same consisting of flesh and blood, the same pleasure and delight likewise will appear good. And therefore it will seemably seem good unto him who holdeth off his Assent, for surely he hath senses, and is made of flesh, blood, and bone, and so soon as he hath apprehended the Imagination of good, he hath an Appetite and desire thereto, doing altho ever he can, nor to miss it, nor lose the fruition thereof: but as much as is possible to cleave and adhere continually to that which is proper unto him, as being driven and drawn thereto, by Natural and not Geometrical Constraints. For these Goodly, Pleasant, Gentle and tickling Motions of the flesh, be of themselves without any other Teacher attractive enough, as they themselves forget not to say, and are able to draw and train him whosoever he be, that will not confesse nor be known, but stoutly denieth that he is made soft and pliable by them. But peradventure you will ask me how it comes to passe that one of these that are so retentive and dainty of their assent, climbeth not up some hill, but to the bairn or hot house: or when he riseth and purpoeeth to go into the market place, why he runneth not his head against a post or the wall, but taketh his way directly to the door? And ask you me this question indeed, you that hold all senses to be infallible, the apprehensions also and imaginations to be certain and true? Forsooth it is because the bairn seemeth unto him a bairn, and not a Mountain, the door also appeareth to be a door, and not the wall: And so it is to be said likewise of such other things every one: For the Doctrine delivered as touching this cobitation of assent, doth not pervert the sense, nor work in it by strange passions and motions any such change and alteration as may trouble the Imaginative Faculty. Only it taketh away and subverteth opinions, but useth all other things, according to their nature. But impossible it is not to yield consent unto apparent evidences. For to deny those things which we are verily persuaded of and do believe, is more absurd, than neither to deny nor affirm any thing at all. Who be they then that deny such things as they believe, and go against things Evident? Even they who overthrow Divination, and deny, that there is any Government by Divine Providence: they who say, that neither the Sunne is animal, nor the Moon, which all men honour and adore, to which they make their Prayers, and offer Sacrifices. As for you, do ye not annul that which is apperant to the whole World, to wit, that naturally infants and young ones, are contained within their Mothers, and Dampes? and that between pain

H h h h 3 and



and pleasure there is no mean, even against the sense and experience of all men? saying that not to be in pain, is to have pleasure; and not to do, is to suffer; as also not to joy, is to be sorrowfull? But to let passe all the rest, what is more evident, and so fully believed generally, than this, that those who have their brains troubled, and their wits distracted, or otherwise sick of melancholick disease, when they see and hear those things which they neither hear nor see? namely, when their understanding comes to be in such sort affected and transported, as to break out into these speeches?

*These women here in habit black  
yclad, hold in their hand,  
To dart at me and burn mine eyes,  
torches and fry brands.*

Also:

*Loe how she in her arms doth bear  
My another dear who me did rear.*

These verily, and a number besides of other illusions more strange and tragical than these, resembling the prodigious monsters that Empedocles describeth like anticks, which they make sport and laugh at,

*Ερωδε, \* Κερρυαυ, & Βυνυη, Αρδεσμευα.*

*That is to say,  
With crooked shanks and winding feet,  
resembling rammes in pace,  
In body made like ox or cow,  
like man before, in face.*

\* Or rather  
Κερρυαυ.

And all other sorts of monstrous shapes and strange natures, mixed together all in one, fetched from troublesome dreams, and alienations of the mind. But these men say, that none of all this is any deception or error of the sight, or vain apparition, but be all true imaginations of bodies and figures, which pass to and fro out of the inconstant air about them. Tell me now, what thing is so impossible in nature, that we need to doubt, if it be possible to believe these? For such things as never any conceived maker, or deviser of vizards, any inventive potter, glass-maker or curious painter and drawer of wonderful shapes, durst joyn together, either to deceive the beholder, or to make them sport for their pastime: these men supposing verily and in good earnest that they be really subsistent; and that which more is, affirming all firm and constant belief, all certitude of judgement and of truth, to be quite gone for ever, if such things have not their subsistence, these men I say be they, which involve all in obscurity and darkness, who overthrow all appearance, and bring into our judgement, fear and terror, into our actions doubtful suspicion; in case our ordinary and usuall actions, and such affairs of ours, which are daily ready at hand, be carried in the same imagination, belief and persuasion, that these enormous, absurd, and extravagant fantasies for the equality which they suppose in all, plucketh away more credit from things ordinary, than it addeth unto such as be uncouth and unusual which is the cause that we know Philosophers not a few, more willing to avouch, that no imagination is true, than that all be true without exception, and who distrust all men whom they had not conversed withall, all things which they had not tried, generally all speeches which they had not heard, rather than believe so much as one of these imaginations and illusions which mad and frantic folk, fanatical persons possessed with a furious spirit, or dreamers in their sleeps do apprehend. Seeing then, some imaginations we may utterly abolish, and others not, lawfull it is to retain our assent and doubt of things whether they be or no, if there were no other cause else but this discordance, which is sufficient to work in us suspicion of things, as having nothing assured and certain, but all incertitude and perturbation. As for the dissensions and differences about the infinite number of worlds, the nature of the Atomes, being indivisible bodies, and their declinations to a side, although they trouble and disquiet many men, yet this comfort there is and consolation, that in all this there is nothing near at hand to touch us, but rather every one of these questions be far remote and beyond our senses; whereas this distrust and diffidence, this perturbation and ignorance about sensible things and imaginations, presented to our eyes, our ears and our hands, this doubt I say, whether they be true or false, what opinion is it that they do not shake and make to waver, what judgement and assent do not they turn upside down? For if men, being not drunk nor intoxicated, nor otherwise troubled in their brains, but sober, well in their wits and found of judgement, professing also to write of the truth, and of the Canons and rules to judge by, in the most evident passions and motions of the sense, set down that for true which cannot possibly be false, and for false that which subsisteth, it is not to be marvelled nor thought incredible, if they give no judgement of such things which evidently appear, but rather be of contrary judgements. For a man may lesse wonder at one for affirming neither the one nor the other, and keeping himself in a mean between two opposites, than for putting down things repugnant and meer contrary. For he that neither affirmeth nor denieth, but holds himself quiet, is lesse repugnant both unto him who putteth down his opinion, than he who denieth it; and also to him that denieth it, than he who puts it down. And if it be possible to make doubt, & tick at these things, it is not impossible then to do so of others; at least wife according to you who are of opinion, that there is no difference at all between sense and sense, between imagination and imagination, and therefore this doctrine as touching the retention of belief and assent, is not as Colotes saith, a vain fable, nor a capricious toy of rash and light-headed young men, that love to jangle & prate, but a settled resolution and habituall disposition of stayed

men

men, who be wary and take heed that they mistake not any thing, and fall into inconvenience, or abandon at a venture their judgement to the senses, to conjectural and doubtful, and not suffering them to be deceived and carried away with those, who hold that things uncertain, if they seem and appear, ought to be believed as well as if they were certain, notwithstanding they see so great obscurity and incertitude in imaginations and apparent things: But rather the infinity that you put down, and the images you dream of be Fables. And as for heady rashness, and a vain humour of much babble, he commendeth in young Students, who writeth of Pythacles being not fully eighteen years of age, that there was not in all Greece, a better or more towards nature; as being one who with admiration was able most excellently to expresse the Conceptions of his mind; and that his case was much like to the incomparable beauty of women, withing and praying therefore, that all those surpassing gifts, and most rare parts might not work the young man hatred and envy.

But busy Sophisters they be, and vain fellows, who against so great and excellent Personages, dare write so impudently and proudly, and yet I confess, Plato, Aristotle, Theophrastus, and Democritus gain-sayed and contradicted those who wrote before them: Howbeit there was never man known but himself so bold, as to make a Book against all indifferently, and with such a proud Inscription as he did: And then afterwards forsooth like unto those who have offended and displeased the gods: in the end of his Book, as one confessing his faults, he saith: that they who have established Laws and Ordinances: who have created Royall Governments and Politick Rule of Cities, and States, have for the Life of man in great Quiet, Safety, and Security, yea and delivered it from dangerous troubles: which if they were abrogated and put down, we should lead a savage life like wild beasts: one would eat another as they met together; for these be the very words that he useth, though unjustly and untruly: For say a man did abolish Laws, and yet withall leave behind unrepcaled and uncondemned the Doctrines and Books of Parmenides, Socrates, Heraclitus, and Plato, we should be far for all that from devouring one another, or living a savage life; for we should fear and forbear dishonest things, we should even for virtue and honesty, honour Justice, believe that the gods, good Magistrates, and the Angels or spirits have the guarding, keeping, and superintendence of mans life, thinking all the good that is both above and under the ground, not able to counterpoise virtue, and doing willingly by reason and learning as Xenocrates was wont to say, that which now we do performe for fear of the Laws. But when shall our life become beastly, savage, and infociable? Mary when, the Laws being taken away, there shall be left remaining, Books, and Discourses, inciting and soliciting men unto pleasure: when it shall be thought and believed, that the world is not ruled and governed by Gods Providence, when they shall be deemed Sages and wife men, who spit against honesty and virtue, unless it be joyned with pleasure, and when they shall deride and mock such Sentences as these,

*In Justice is an eye,  
Which all things doth espie.*

And  
*God near doth stand,  
And sees all at hand.*

As also this old said saw; God having in his power the beginning, mid: and end of the whole world putteth directly throughout all nature, and goeth round about, attend: upon by Justice, to punish those who transgress: the Law Divine. For they that despise and contemne these Instructions as idle Fables, and suppose that the Sovereign good consisteth in the belly and other parts, whereby we enjoy pleasure, be those who had need of the Law, they ought to fear the whip, and stand in awe of some King, Prince, and Magistrate, who hath the sword of Justice in his hand, to the end that they might not de-vote their neighbour by insatiable gluttony, which upon Atheisme and impiety, would grow to ex-cel-sive outrage: For verily such is the life of brute beasts, for that they know nothing better than pleasure, they have no sense of Gods Justice, they neither honour nor regard the beauty of virtue: But if nature hath endued them with any Hardiness, Craft, and industrious Activity, they employ the same to satiate their fleshy pleasure, & accomplish their lusts, and therefore Metrodorus is reputed a great wife man, for saying, that all the fine, subtle, witty, and exquisite inventions of the soul, have been devised for to please and delight the flesh, or else for the hope to obtaine and enjoy the same; and look what art soever tendeth not thereto, is vain and to no purpose. By such discourses & Philosophical reasons as these, down go wholesome Lawes, and in place thereof enter into lions paws, wolves teeth, oxes paunches, and camels necks and throats: and for want of writings and speech, the very beasts do preach and teach such doctrines and opinions as these, with their bleating, bellowing, neighing, and braying: For all the voice that they have, is nothing but belly cheer, and the pleasure of the flesh, which they either embrace presently, or joy in the expectation thereof; unless haply there be some kind of them that de-lighteth naturally in galling, cackling, and garrulity. So that no man is able to praise those sufficiently, and to their full desert, who to repress such furious and beastly affections, have set down Law, established policy and government of State, Instituted Magistrates, and ordained wholesome Decrees and Edicts. But who be they that confound, yea, and utterly abolish all this? Are they not those who give out, that all the great Empires and Dominions in the world are nothing comparable to the Crown and Garland of \*fearless Tranquillity and Repose. Are they not those, who say, that to be a King

average haply a  
ragies, tharis to  
give disorder  
and confusion.

and to reign is to sinne, to erre, and wander out of the true way leading to felicity: yea and to this purpose write differly in these termes, we are to shew how to maintain in best fort and to keep the end of Nature: and how a man may avoid at the very first not to enter willingly and of his own accord into offices of State, and Government of the Multitude. Over and besides, these speeches also be theirs, there is no need at all henceforth for a man to labour and take pains for the Preservation of the Greeks nor in regard of wisdom, and learning to seek for to obtain a Crown at their hands, but to eat and drink, O *Timocrates*, without hurt doing to the body, or rather withall contentment of the flesh. And yet the first and most important Article of the digest and ordinance of Laws and Policy, which *Colotes* so highly commendeth, is the belief and firm persuasion of the gods, whereby *Lycurgus* in times past sanctified the Lacedemonians, *Numa* the Romanes, that ancient *Iou* the Athenians, and whereby *Deucalion* brought all the Greeks universally to Religion: which noble and renowned Personages made the people devout and affectionate zealously to the gods in Prayers, Oaths, Oracles and Prophecies, by the means of Hope and Fear together, which they imprinted in their hearts: in such fort, that if you travell through the world, well may you find Cities without Walls, without Literature, without Kings, not peopled and inhabited, without Houses, Monieffe, and such as desire no Coin, which know not what Theaters or publick Halls of bodily exercise mean: but never was there, nor ever shall be any one City cens, without Temple, Church, or Chappell, without some god or other, which useth no Prayers nor Oaths, no Prophecies and Divinations, no Sacrifices either to obtain good Blessings or to avert heavy Curses and Calamities: Nay, methinks a man should sooner find a City built in the Air, without any plot of ground whereon it is seated, than that any Common Wealth altogether void of Religion, and the opinion of the gods should either be first established, or afterwards preserved and maintained in that estate. This is it that containeth, and holdeth together all humane society, this is the foundation, prop and stay of all Laws, which they subvert and overthrow directly, who go not round about the bulw, as they say, not secretly and by circuit of covert Speeches, but openly and even at the first assault set upon the principall point of all, to wit, the opinion of God, and Religion: and then afterwards as if they were haunted with the Furies, they confesse how grievously they have sinned, in shuffling and confounding thus, all Rights, and Laws, and in abolishing the Ordinance of Justice and Policy, to the end that they might obtain no pardon. For, to slip and erre in opinion, although it be not a part of wise men, yet it is a thing incident to man: but to impute and object those faults unto others which they commit themselves, what should a man call it if he forbear the proper terms, and names that it deserth? For if in writing against *Anitodorus* or *Bion* the Sophister, he had made mention of Laws, of Policy, of Justice, and Government of Common Weal, might not one have said unto him as *Electra* did to her Furious Brother *Orestes*.

*Poor soul, be quiet, fear none ill  
Dear heart in bad see thou be still.*

cherishing and keeping warm thy poor body? As for me let them argue and expostulate with me about these points, who have lived economically or politically. And such are they all whom *Colotes* hath reviled and railed upon. Among whom *Democritus* verily in his writings admonisheth and exhorteth, both to learn Military Science, as being of all others the greatest, and also to take pains, and endure travells. Whereby men attain to much Renown and Honour. As for *Parmenides* he benefited and adorned his own Native Countrey with most excellent Laws which he ordained: in so much as the Magistrates every year when they newly enter into their Offices, bind the Citizens by an Oath, to observe the Statutes, and Laws of *Parmenides*. And *Empedocles* not onely judicially convicted and condemned the principall persons of the City wherein he dwelt, for their insolent behaviour and for distracting or embazzling the publick Treasure, but also delivered all the Territory about it from sterility and Peldence, whereunto before time it was subject, by enuring and stopping up the open passages of a certain Mountain, through which the Southern wind blew and overspread all the plain Countrey underneath. *Socrates* after he was condemned to death, when his friends had made means for him to escape; refused to take the benefit thereof, because he would maintain and confirm the authority of the Laws; chusing rather to die unjustly, than to save his life by disobeying the Laws of his Countrey. *Melissus*, being Pretor or Captain Generall of the City wherein he dwelt, detested the Athenians in a Battell at Sea. *Plato* left behind him in writing many good Discourses of the Laws, and of Civill Government: but much better imprinted he in the hearts and minds of his Disciples and familiars, which was the cause that *Dion* freed *Sicily* from the tyranny of *Dionysius*, and *Thrace* likewise was delivered by the means of *Python* and *Heracleides*, who killed King *Carys*. *Chabrias* and *Phocion*, worthy Commanders of the Athenians Army, came both out of the School *Academia*. As for *Epicurus* he sent as far as into *Asia* certain persons of purpose to taunt and revile *Timocrates*, Yea, and caused the man to be banished out of the Kings Court, only for that he had offended *Metrodorus*, his brother. And this you may read written in their own books. But *Plato* sent of those friends which were brought up under him *Aristotimus* to the Arcadians, for to ordain their Common Wealth, *Phormio* to the Elians, *Menedemus* to those of *Pyrrha*, *Eudoxus* to the Cnidians, and *Aristotle* to those of *Stagira*, who being all his Disciples, did pen and set down Laws. *Alexander* the Great requested to have from *Xenocrates* rules and precepts, as touching the Government of a Kingdom. And he who was sent unto *Alexander* from the Greeks dwelling in *Asia*, and who most of all other set him on a light fire and wheeled him to enterprise the war against the barbarous King of *Persia*.

will *Delius* an Ephesian, one of *Plato's* familiars. *Zeno* also a Schollar of *Parmenides* undertook to kill the Tyrant *Demylus*, and having no good success therein, but missing of his purpose, maintained the doctrine of *Parmenides* to be pure and fine gold rised in the fire from all base metall, shewing by the effect, that a magnanimous man is to fear nothing, but *Tirpitude* and *Dishonour*, and that they be Children and Women, or else effeminate and heartlesse men like Women, who are afraid of dolor and pain? for having bitten off his Tongue with his own teeth, he spit it in the Tyrants face. But out of the School of *Epicurus*, and of those who follow his rules and doctrines, I do not ask what tyrant killer there was or valiant man and victorious in feats of armes, what Lawgiver, what Counsellor, what King or Governor of State, either died or suffered Torture for the upholding of Right and Justice: but only which of all these Sages did ever so much as imbarke and make a voyage by sea in his Countreys service and for the good thereof? which of them went in embassage or disturbed any money thereof? or where is there extant upon record any civill action of yours in matter of government. And yet because that *Metrodorus* went down one day from the City, as far as to the Haven *Pyraeus*, and took a journey of five or six miles to aid *Mythra* the Syrian one of the King of *Persia* train and courier, who had been arrested and taken Prisoner, he wrote unto all the friends that he had in the world, of this exploit of his: and this doubty voyage *Epicurus* hath magnified and exalted in many of his Letters. What a do would they have made then, if they had done such an act as *Aristotle* did who reddified the City of his nativity *Stagira*, which had been destroyed by King *Philip*? or as *Thymistius*, who twice delivered and freed his native City being held and oppressed by Tyrants? Should not think you the river *Nilus* have foon given over to bear the paper reed, than they been weary of describing their brave deeds. And is not this a grievous matter and a great indignity, that of so many sects of Philosophers that have been, they only in manner enjoy the good things and benefits that are in Cities, without contributing any thing of their own to them? There are not any Poets, Tragedians, or Comedians, but they have endeavoured to do or say alwaies some good thing or other for the defence of Lawes and Policy: but these here, if peradventure they write ought, write of Policy, thus we should not intermeddle at all in the civill government of state: of Rhetorick, that we should not plead any cause eloquently at the bar: of Royalty, that we should avoid the conversing and living in Kings courts: neither do they name at any time those great persons who manage affairs of common weale, but by way of mockery for to debase and abolish their glory. As for example of *Epinomandis* they say that he had indeed some good thing only in name and word, but the same was but *phlox*, that is to say, as little as might be, for that is the very term that it pleaseth them to use. Moreover they sometime hear of Iron demanding why he marched up and down through out all *Peloponnesus* with his army as he did, and fat not rather quiet at home in his own house with a dainty Chappel upon his head given wholly to make in good cheer, and to sleep with his belly full in a whole skin. But methinks I should not for any thing, omit in this place to rehearse what *Metrodorus* hath written in his book of Philosophy, wherein abjuring all dealing in government of state, he saith thus; Some there be of these wise men (quoth he) who being full of vanity and arrogance, had so deep an insight into the business thereof, that in treating of the rules of good life and of vertue they suffer themselves to be carried away with the very same desires that *Lycurgus* and *Solon* fell into. What? was this vanity indeed and the abundance of vanity and pride, to set the City of *Athens* free, to reduce *Sparta* to good policy, and the government of holosome Lawes, that young men should do nothing licenciously nor get children upon Curfians and Harlots? and that Riches, wanton Delicacy, Intemperance, Loofnesse, and Dissolution, should beare no sway nor have the command in Cities, but Law only and Justice; for these were the desires of *Solon*. And thus *Metrodorus* by way of scorn and contemptuous reproach addeth thus much more for a conclusion to the rest. And therefore (quoth he) it is well becoming a Gentleman, to laugh a good and right heartily at all other men, but especially at these *Solones* and *Lycurgis*. But verily such an one were not a Gentleman *Metrodorus*, nor well born, but servile, base, unruely and dissolute, and who deserved to be scourged not with the whip which is for free born persons, but with that whipe *Armaglotes*, wherewith the manner was to whip and chastise those gilded sacrificers called *Galy*, when they did amiss in the ceremonies and sacrifices of *Cybele*, the great mother of the gods. Now that they warred not against the Lawgivers, but the very Lawes themselves, a man may hear *Selearn* of *Epicurus* for in his questions he demandeth of himself, whether a wife man being assured that no man ever should know, would and do commit any thing that the Law forbiddeth? and he maketh an answer which is not full nor an open, plain and simple affirmation, saying, do it I will; marry confesse it and be known thereof I will not. Again, writing as I suppose unto *Idomeneus*, he admonisheth him not to be abused and enthrall his life unto Lawes and the Opinions and Reputation, of Men: unless it be in this regard only that otherwise there is prepared odious whipping chere and that near at hand. Whence it be so, that they who abolish Lawes, Governments, and Policies, do withall subvert and overthrow mans life: if *Metrodorus* and *Epicurus* do no lesse, with drawing and averting their friends and followers from dealing in publick affaires and spitefully hating those who do meddle therein, miscalling and railing at the chiefe and wisest Lawgivers that ever were, yea and willing them to contemn the Lawes, so that they keep themselves out of the fear of the whip and danger of punishment, I cannot see that *Colotes* hath in any thing so much belied others, and raised false imputations against them; as he hath indeed and truly accused the doctrine and opinion of *Epicurus*.

## Of Love.

## The Summary.

**T**His Dialogue is more dangerous to be read by young than men any other Treatise of Plutarch, for that there be certain glances here and there against honest Marriage, to uphold indirectly and underhand, the cursed and detestable filthiness covertly couched under the name of the Love of young boys. But minds guarded and armed with true Chastity and the fear of God, may see evidently in this Discourse the miserable estate of the world, in that there be found patrons and advocates of so detestable a cause: such I mean as in this book are brought in under the persons of Protagenes and Pifias. Mean while they may perceive likewise in the combat of matrimoniall love against unmatrall Pedlstry not to be named, that honesty hath alwaies meenes sufficient to defend it self from being vanquished, yea and in the end to go away with the victory. Now this Treatise may be comprised in four principall points: of which, the first (After a brief Preface wherein Autobulus being requested to rehearse unto his companions certain reports which before time he had heard Plutarch his Father to deliver as touching Love, entred into the discourse) containeth the History of Imenodora, enamoured upon a young man named Bacchon; whereupon arose some difference and dispute: of which Plutarch and those of his company were chosen Arbitrators. Thereupon Protagenes seconded by Pifias, (and this is the second Point) setting himself against Imenodora, disgraceth and discreditheth the whole sex of woman kinde, and praiseth openly enough the love of males. But Daphneus answereth them so fully home and pertinently to the purpose, that he discovereth and detesteth all their filthiness, and convinceth them as abovefull it was, shewing the commodities and true pleasure of conjugal love. In this defence, assisted by Plutarch, who proveth that neither the great wealth, nor the forward affection of a Woman to a Man, causeth the marriage with her to be culpable or worthy to be blamed, by divers examples declaring that many Women under base condition, have been the occasion of great evils and calamities. But as he was minded to continue this Discourse, newes came how Bacchon was caught up and brought up into the house of Imenodora, which made Protagenes and Pifias to disloye, inasmuch as their departure gave intire into the third and principall point concerning Love what it is? what be the parts, the causes, the sundry effects and fruits thereof, admirable in all sorts of person, in altering them so as they become quite changed and others then they were before: Which is confirmed by many notable examples and similitudes. In the last point Plutarch discourseth upon this argument, and that by the Philosophy of Plato and the Egyptians, conferring the same with the doctrine of other Philosophers and Poets. Then having expressly and flatly condemned Pedlstry as a most vile and abominable thing, and adjoined certain excellent advertisements for the entertaining of Love in Wedlock, between Husband and Wife, of which he relateth one proper example, his speech endeth by occasion of a Messenger who came in place, and drew them all away to the wedding of Imenodora and Bacchon, before said.

## Of Love.

Flavianus.

**I**T was at Helicon ( & Autobulus ) was it not, that those discourses were held as touching Love, which you purpose to relate unto us at this present, upon our Request and Intreaty, whether it be that you have put them down in writing, or bear them well in remembrance, considering that you have so often required and demanded them of your father?

Autobulus.

Yes verily, in Helicon it was ( & Flavianus ) among the Muses, at what time as the Thespians solemnized the feast of Cupid, for they celebrate certain games of prize every five yeers, in the honour of Love, as well as of the Muses, and that with great pomp and magnificence.

Flavianus.

And wot you what it is that we all hear that are come to hear you, will request at your hands?

Autobulus.

No verily, but I shall know it when you have told me.

Flavianus.

Marry this it is: That you would now in this rehearsal of yours, lay aside all by-matters and reddeles preambles, as touching the description of fair Medowes, Pleasant Shades; of the crawling and winding Ivis; of rills issuing from Fountains running round about; and such like common places, that many love to insert, desirous to counterfeit and imitate the description of the river Ilissus, of the Chast-tree, and the fine greene grafs and pretty herbs growing daintily upon the ground, rising up a little with a gentle ascent, and all after the example of Plato in the beginning of his Dialogue Phaedrus, with more curiosity iwis and affectation, than grace and elegancy.

Autobulus.

What needs this narration of ours ( my good friend Flavianus ) any such Proem or Preface: for the occasion from whence arose and proceeded these discourses, requireth only an affectionate audience, and calleth for a convenient place as it were a stage and scaffold, for to relate the action: for otherwise

of

of all things else requisite in a Comedie or Enterlude, there wanteth nothing: only let us make our prayers unto the Muses Mother, Lady Memory, for to be propice unto us, and to vouchsafe her assistance, that we may not misse, but deliver the whole narration. My father long time before I was born, having newly espoused my mother, by occasion of a certain difference and variance that fell out between his parents and hers, took a journey to Thespia, with a full purpose to sacrifice unto the god of Love; and to the fast he had up with him my mother also, for that it principally appertained unto her to perform both the prayer and the sacrifice. So there accompanied him from his house, certain of his most familiar friends. Now when he was come to Thespia, he found Daphneus the Sonne of Archidamus, and Lysander who was in love with Simons daughter, a man who of all her woers was best welcome unto her and most accepted: Seclurus also the sonne of Arstus, who was come from Tibora: there was besides, Praxogenes of Tarfus, and Zenippus the Lacedemonian, both of them his old friends and good Holts, who had given him kind entertainment: and my father did moreover, that there were many of the best men in Bactria there, who were of his acquaintance. Thus as it should seem, they abode for two or three days in the City, entertaining one another gently at their leisure with discourses of Learning, one while in the common empaled Park of exercise, where the youth used to wrestle, and other whiles in the Theaters and Shew-places, keeping company together. But afterwards, for to avoid the troublesome contentions of Minstrels and Miliicians, where it appeared, that all would go by favour, such labouring there was before-hand for voices, they dislodged from thence for the most part of them, as out of an enemies Countrey, and retired themselves to Helicon, and there (sojournd and lodged among the Muses: where, the morrow morning after they were thither come, arrived and repaired unto them Antemion and Pifias, two noble Gentlemen, all doted both and affectionate unto Bacchon, surnamed the Fair, and at some variance one with another by reason of I wot not what jealousie, in regard of the affection they bare unto him. For there was in the City of Thespia, a certain Dame named Imenodora, descended of a noble house, and rich withall: yea and of wife and honest carriage besides in all her life: for continued she had no small time in widowhood without blame, reproach or touch, notwithstanding she was young, and therewithall beautiful.

This fresh widow whilst she treated of a Marriage to be made between Bacchon a young Gentleman, neighbours child, whose mother was a very familiar friend of hers, and a certain young maiden a kinswoman of her own, by often talking with him, and frequenting his company much, fell her self in some fancy with the young man: Thus both hearing and speaking much good and many kind speeches of him, and seeing besides a number of other Gentlemen, and persons of good worth to be enamoured upon him; by little and little the also fell to be in hot Love with the youth: howbeit, with a full intention and Resolution to do nothing that should be dishonest, or unbecoming her place, parentage, and reputation, but to be wedded unto Bacchon lawfully in the open sight of the world, and so to live with him in the estate of Wedlock. As the thing it self seemed at the first very strange, so the mother of the young man of one side doubted and suspected the greatness of her Sate, and the Nobility and Magnificence of her Husband and Linage, as not meet and correspondent to his Condition, for to be a Lover or to be matched there; and on the other side, some of his Companions, who used to ride forth a hunting with him, considering that the young age of Bacchon was not answerable to the years of Imenodora, buzzed many doubts in his head, and frighted him from her what they could, saying, That she might be his mother, and that one of her age was not for him; and thus by their jesting and scoffing, they hindered the Marriage more than they who laboured in good earnest to break it: for he began to enter into himself, and considering that he was yet a beardless youth, and scarcely undergrown, he was abashed and ashamed to marry a Widow. However in the end, shaking off all others, he referred himself to Antemion, and Pifias, for to tell him their minds upon the point, and to advise him for his best: Now was Antemion his cousin german, one of good yeers, and elder than himself far; and Pifias of all those that made love unto him, most austere: and therefore he both withstood the marriage, and also checked Antemion, as one who abandoned and betrayed the young man unto Imenodora. Contrariwise, Antemion charged Pifias and said he did not well, who being otherwise an honest man, yet herein imitated lewd lovers, for that he went about to put his friend beside a good bargain, who now might be sped with to great a marriage, out of so worshipfull an house, and wealthy besides; to the end that he might have the pleasure to see him a long time stripped naked in the wrestling place, fresh still, and smooth, and not having touched a woman. But because they should not by arguing thus one against another, grow by little and little into heat of choler, they chose for umpires and judges of this their controversy, my Father, and those who were of his company; and thither they came: assistant also there were unto them, other of their friends, Daphneus to the one, and Protagenes to the other, as if they had been provided of set purpose to plead a cause: As for Protagenes who sided with Pifias, he inveighed verily with open mouth against dame Imenodora: whereupon Daphneus; O Hercules (quoth he) what are we not to expect, and what thing in the world may not happen, in case it be so that Protagenes is ready here to give defiance and make war against love, who all his life both in carrell and in game, hath been wholly in love, and all for love, which hath caused him to forget his book, and to forget his natrall countrey, not as Lais did, who was but five daies journey distant? for that love of his was slow and heavy, and kept still upon the land: whereas your Cupid, Protagenes,

With

*With his light wings displayed and spread,  
Hath ever sea full swiftly fled*

from out of *Cilicia to Athens*, to see fair boys, and to go up and down with them (for to say a truth, the chief cause why *Protagenes* made a Voyage out of his own Country, and became a traveller, was at the first this and no other.) Hereat the Company took up a Laughter, and *Protagenes* I think you (quoth he) that I war not against Love, and nor rather stand in the defence of Love against lascivious wantonness, and violent intemperance, which by most shamefull acts and filthy Passions, would perforce challenge, and break into the fairest, most honest, and venerable names that be. Why (quoth *Daphneus* then) do you term marriage and the secret of marriage, to wit the lawfull conjunction of man and wife, most vile and dishonest actions, than which there can be no knot nor link in the world more sacred and holy? This bond in truth of wedlock (quoth *Protagenes*) is as it is necessary for generation, is by good right praised by Politicians and Law-givers, who recommend the same highly unto the people and common multitude; but to speak of true love indeed, there is no jot or part thereof in the society and fellowship of women: neither do I think that you and such as your selves, whose affections stand to wives or maidens, do love them no more than a filie loveth milk, or a Bee the Honey-comb; as Caters and Cooks who keep fowls in mure, and feed Calves and other such Beasts fat in dark places, and yet for all that they love them not. But like as nature leadeth and conducteth our Appetite moderately, and as much as is sufficient to bread and other viands; but the excess thereof, which maketh the naturall Appetite to be a vicious passion, is called *Gormandise*, and pampering of the flesh: even so there is naturall love in men and women both a desire to enjoy the mutual pleasure one of another: whereas the impetuous lust which cometh with a kind of force and violence, so as it hardly can be held in, is not fully called love, neither deserveth it that name: For Love if it seile upon a young, kind, and gentle heart, endeth by amity in vertue: whereas of these afflictions and lusts after women, if they have successe and speed never so well, there followeth in the end the fruit of some pleasure, the fruition and enjoying of youth and a beautifull body, and that is all. And thus much testified *Aristippus*, who when one went about to make him have a distaste and dislike of *Lian* the Courtisan, saying, that she loved him not, made this answer: I suppose (quoth he) that neither good wine nor delicate Fish loveth me, but yet (quoth he) I take pleasure and delight in drinking the one and eating the other. For surely the end of desire and appetite is pleasure and the fruition of it. But Love if it have once lost the hope and expectation of amity and kindnesse, will not continue nor cherish and make much for beauty sake, that which is irksome and odious, be it never so gallant, and in flower and prime of age, unless it bring forth and yield such fruit which is familiar unto it, even a nature disposed to amity and vertue. And therefore it is, that you may hear some husband in Comedy, speaking tragically thus unto his wife:

*Thou hast me: and I again,  
Thine hatred and disdain  
Will eas'ly bear, and this abuse  
turn to my proper gain.*

For surely, more amorous than this man is not he, who not for lucre and profit, but for the fleshly pleasure of *Venus*, endureth a curst, shrewd and froward wife, in whom there is no good nature nor kind affection. After which manner *Philippides* the Comical Poet scoffed at the Oratour *Siracocles* and mocked him in these Verses:

*She winds from thee, she turns away unkind  
Hardly thou canst once kisse her head behind.*

But if we must needs call this passion Love, yet surely it shall be an effeminate and Bastard Love, sending us into womens Chambers and Cabinets as it were to *Gynaejarges* at *Athens*, where no other youths do exercise but misbegotten bastards: or rather like as they say, there is one kind of game Falcons, or Royall Eagles bred in the mountains, which *Homer* calleth the Black Eagle for game: whereas other kinds there be of bastard Hawks, which about Pools and Meres catch fish, or seile upon heavy winged birds, and flow of flight which many times wanting their prey, make a piteous noise and lamentable cry for very hunger and famine, even so the true and naturall love of is that young boyes and sparkleth not with the ardent heat of concupiscence, as *Anacreon* saith the other of maidens and Virgins doth: it is not befecured with sweet ointments, nor tricked up and trimmed, but plain and simple always a man shall see it, without any insidious allurements in the Philosophers Schooles, or about public Parks of Exercise and wrestling places, where it hunteth kindly, and with a very quick and piercing eye after none but young friplings and springals, exciting and encouraging earnestly unto vertue, as many as are meet and worthy to have pains taken with them: whereas the other delicate and effeminate Love, that keepeth home, and stretcheth not out of doores, but keepeth continually in womens laps, under Canopies or within Curtains in womens beds and soft Pallets, seeking always after dainty delights, and pampered up with unmanly pleasures, wherein there is no reciprocal amity, nor heavenly ravishment of the spirit, is worthy to be rejected and chased far away: like as *Solon* banished it out of his Common Weale, when he expressly forbad all slaves and those of servile condition to love boyes or to be anointed in the open air without the baths, but he debarr'd them not from the company of women. For Amity is an Honest, Civill, and Laudable thing, but fleshly pleasure, base vile, and illiberal. And therefore that a servile slave should make Love to a sweet youth, it is neither Decent, Civill, nor Commendable: for this is no carnall Love, nor hurtfull any way, as

that other is of Women. *Protagenes* would have continued his speech and said more, but *Daphneus* interrupting him: Now surely, you have done it very well (quoth he) and alledged *Solon* truly for the purpose we must belike take him for the judge of a true lover, & the rule to go by, especially when he saith

*Thou shalt love Boyes, till lovely down  
upon their face doth bring,  
Catching at mouth their pleas'ant breath,  
and soft thighs cherishing.*

*Aljoyn also unto Solon* (if you think good) the Poet *Æschylus*, whereas he saith:

*'Unbankefull, man unkinde thou art  
For kisset sweet which thou hast found  
Regarding not of thy dear heart,  
The thighs so freight and buttocks round.*

Here are proper Judges indeed of Love. Others I wot well there be, who laugh at them, because they would have Lovers like to Sacrificers, Bowel-priers, and Southsayers, to cast an eye to the hanches and the loynes: but I for my part, gather from hence a very good and forcible argument in the behalf of Women: for if the company with males that is against kind, neither taketh away nor doth prejudice the amity and good will of lovers, far more probable it is that the love to Women which is according to nature, is performed by a kind of obsequious favour, and endeth in amity: for the voluntary submission of the Female to the Male, was by our ancestors, in old time, O *Protagenes*, termed, *Love*, that is to say, Grace or Favour: which is the reason that *Pindarus* saith *Vulcan* was born of *Jove* *Amor*, that is to say, without the Graces. And *Suppho* the Poet, thus speaking to a young Girl not as yet for her tender years marriageable:

*Too young (my child) you seem to me,  
Withouten Grace also to be.*

And *Hercules* was asked the question of one in these termes:

*'What did you force the maiden by compulsion,  
Or win her grace and favour with persuasion?*

whereas the submission in this kind of Males to Males, if it be against their will, is named violence and plain rape: but if it be voluntary, and that upon an off-mittine weaknesse they be so far beside their right wits as to yeeld themselves to be ridden as it were and covered, for those be *Platoes* words, in manner of foure footed beasts; I say such Love is altogether without Grace, without Decency, most filthy, Filthy, and Abominable. And therefore I suppose verily, that *Solon* poured out these Verses, when he was a lusty younger, rank of blood and full of naturall seed, as *Plato* saith: for when he was well kept in years he sung in another tune, and wrote thus;

*The sports of Venus Lady bright,  
And Bacchus now are my delight:  
In Musick eke I pleasure take:  
For why? these three men joyes do make.*

when he had retired and withdrawn his life as it were out of a troublesome (sea and tempestuous storm of *Lechery*, into the quiet calm of lawfull Marriage and study of Philosophy.

Now if we will consider better, and look nearer into the truth, the passion of Love (O *Protagenes*) be it in one sex or another, is all one and the same: but if upon a froward and contentious humour you will needs divide and distinguish them, you shall find that this Love of Boyes doth not contain it self within compass, but as one late born and out of the reasonable time of age and course of this life, a very lustard, and begotten secretly in darkness, it would wrongfully drive out the true legitimate naturall Love, which is more ancient. For it was but yesterday or two daies ago as one would say my good Friend, and namely, since young lads began in *Greece* to disrobe and turn themselves naked out of their clothes for the exercise of their bodies, that it crept into these impaled places, where youths prepared themselves for to wrestle; and there closely setting it self, lodged and was entailed; where by little and little when the wings were full grown, it became so insolent, that it could not be held in, but offe injury & outrage to that Nuptial Love, which is a coadjutress with nature, to immortalize mankind, in kindling it immediately again by generation according as the same is extinguished and put out by death. But this *Protagenes* here would seem to deny that the said Love tendeth to any pleasure: The truth is this, he is ashamed to confess, and afraid to avow so much. But there must needs be devised some pretty reason, and cleanly excuse, for the Touching, Feeling, and Handling of these faire young Boyes: Well the pretence and colour to cover all, is Amity and Vertue. He bestreth himself with dust against he should wrestle, he doth bath and wash in cold water, he knitteth and bendeth his browes full gently, he giveth it out and maketh his boast that he studieth Philosophy, that he is chaste and continent; and all this is abroad and before folke, for fear of the Lawes; but when the night comes, and that every man is retired to his rest,

*Sweet is the fruit that stoll'n is secretly,  
And gather'd close, while Keeper is not by.*

And if as *Protagenes* saith, this *Pederastim* aimeth not at carnall Conjunction; how then can it be Love, if *Venus* be not there? considering that of all other gods & goddesses, her alone *Cupid* is destined and deputed to serve and attend upon, having neither Honour, Power, nor Authority, no farther than the will import and bestow upon him. And if you say unto me, that there may be some Love without *Venus*,

like as there is drunkenness without wine, for a man may drink of a certain decoction of figs, or barley made into malt, and be drunk therewith: I answer you, that as this is but a flatulent exagitation, so the motion of such love is fruitless, unperfected, bringing loathsome satiety, and wearisome fustile foam. Whiles *Daphneus* thus spake, it appeared evidently, that *Pisias* found himself galled, and was enchauffed against him. Therefore so soon as he had made an end of his speech, after some little pause: O *Hercules* (quoth he) what intollerable impudency and inconsiderate rashness is this, that men should confesse and avow, that like dogs they betied to women by their natural parts, and so chaste and banish this good *Cupid*, out of the publick places of exercise, out of the open galleries and walks; from the pure conversation in open aire, sun-shine, and before the whole world for to be ranged and brought, to little Spades, Hatchers, Drogues, Medicines, Charms and Sorceries of these wanton and lascivious women? for to speak of chaste and honest dames, I say, it is not becoming that they should either love or beloved. And hereat verily my father said, that himself took *Protegens* by the hand, reciting this verse out of the Poet:

*Such words as these no doubt will make  
The Argives, arms anon to take.*

For surely *Pisias* through his infolency, causeth us to side with *Daphneus*, and undertake to maintain his part, seeing he so far exceedeth the bonds of all reason, as to bring into Marriage and Wedlock, a society without love, and void of that divine instinct of amity, and inspired from heaven above: which we see how we have enough to do for to maintain and hold with all the Yokes, Bitters and Biddles, of fear and shame, if this hearty affection and grace be away. Then *Pisias*, I passe little (quoth he) for all these words: and as for *Daphneus* me thinks I see how it fareth with him, as it doth with a piece of brass, which melteth not so much by force of fire, as it doth by another piece of brass melted, if a man pour the same upon it, for then anon it will be liquefied and run together with it. And even so, the beauty of *Lysandra* doth not so greatly affect and trouble him, as this, that conversing along time with one that is enflamed and full of fire, by touching her he is himself all fire: and evident it is, that unless he retire with speed unto us, he will melt and run all to liquor. But I perceive (quoth he) that I do that which *Antemion* should most desire and wish, namely, that I am offensive both to the Judges and to my self; wherefore I will hold my peace and say no more: You say true indeed (quoth *Antemion*) you do me a great pleasure, for you should at the very first have said somewhat to the point, and upon the particular matter now in question: I say therefore (quoth *Pisias* but I protest before hand, and that aloud, that for mine own part I will be no hindrance, but that every woman may have her lover) that this young man *Bacchion* had need to take heed and beware of the riches and wealth of *Isuendora*; otherwise if we watch him with such an house of too great state and magnificence, we shall ere we be aware consume him to nothing, like a piece of Time upon Brass. For a great matter I may tell you it were, if being so young as he is, and espousing a wife of mean and simple degree, he should in such a mixture hold his own, and keep the predominance as wine over water. But we may see that this gentlewoman here seemeth already to look for to command and be his Master: otherwise she would never have refused and rejected so many husbands as she hath done, of such reputation, so nobly descended, and so wealthy withall, for to woo and solicit as she doth a very boy new crept out of the shell, no better than a Page but the other day, one wits that he had more need to go to schoole still, and be under a Tutor and Governour. And hereupon it is, that those husbands who are of the wiser sort, do of themselves cast away, or else clip and cut the wings of their wives, that is to say, their goods and riches, which cause them to be proud and insolent, sumptuous and wasteful, full of shrewdness, vaine, light, and foolish; and with these wings they mount many times, take their flight and away; or if they stay at home, better it were for a man to be bound with fetters of gold, as the manner is to enchain prisoners in *Ethiopia*, than to be tied with the wealth and riches of his wife: But he hath said nothing as yet (quoth *Protegens*) hereof, nor once touched this string, namely, how in admitting this Marriage, we shall in manner invert and that ridiculously and with absurdity enough the sentence of *Hesiodus* who giveth counsel in these words:

*At thirty years (not much above  
nor under) of thine age,  
Wed thou a wife: this is the time,  
most meet for marriage:  
At fourteen years a damosel  
doth signes of ripeness show,  
At fifteen would she married be,  
and her bedfellow know.*

And we here clean contrary almost, will match a young man before he be ready for Marriage, unto a woman as old again well near as himself, as if one should set Dates or Figges upon old stocks, to make them ripe. And why not? some one will happily say; for she is enamoured upon him; the burnes and is ready to die for love of him, I marvel much who hinders her that she goeth not to his house in a Maske, that she sings not lamentable ditties at his door, and amorous plaints, that she adorneth not his Images with Garlands and Chaplets of flowers, and that she entrench not into combat with her corrivals, and win him from them all by sight and feats of activity? for these be the crafts of lovers; let her knit her browes; let her forbear to live bravely and daintily, putting on the countenance and habit meet for this passion: but if she be modest, shamefaced, sober, and honest, as that she is, she should so to do; let her sit womanly decently as it becometh, at home in her house, expect-

ing

expecting her Lovers and Woers, to come and court her there. For such a Woman as doth not dissemble, but bewaileth openly that she is in Love, a man would avoid and detest, so far would he be from taking her to be his Wife, or laying for the ground of his Marriage such shameless incontinence. Now when *Protegens* had made end of his speech, and paused a while: See you not, O *Antemion* (quoth *Daphneus*) how they make this a common cause again and matter of disputation, enforcing us to speak still of Nuptial Love, who deny not our selves to be the Maintainers thereof, nor avoid to enter into the dance, as they say, and to shew our selves to be the Champions of it? Yes marry do I (quoth *Antemion*) and pray you take upon you to defend at large this love: and withall let us have your helping hand about this point, as touching Riches, which *Pisias* urgeth especially, and wherewith he seemeth to straggle us more than with any thing else: What can we do lesse quoth my Father then; for were it not as reproach offered unto Woman kind, & would it not greatly redound to their discredit and blame, in case we would reject and cast off *Isuendora*, for her Love and her Wealth sake? But she is brave, she is sumptuous, colly, and bearing a great port: What matters that, so long as she is fair, beautiful, and young. But she is come of a noble house and highly descended? What harm of that if she live in good name, and be of good reputation? for it is not necessary that Wives to approve their beauty and wisdom, should be fower, austere, curst and shrewd: for chaste Dames and sober Matrons, do indeed detest bitterness, as an odious thing and intollerable. And yet some there be that call them stern; and say they be curst throwes unto their Husbands, when they be modest, wise, discrete, and honest. Were it not therefore best to espouse some odd *Abroion* out of *Thracia*, bought in open Market: or some *Bacchis*, a Meksian \* palling in exchange for raw bides, and prized no dearer: And yet we know there be many men, whom such Women as these hold most shamefully under their Girdles, and rule as they list: For even Minstrell Wenches of *Samos*, and such as proccesse Dancing in *Afrিকা*, *Oenanthe*, with her Tabour and Pipe, and *Agathoclea*, have over-topped Kings and Princes, the way at first no better than a poor Wench, Servant, and Concubine, to one of the great King *Ninus* Slaves: but after that the King himself had set his eye and fancy upon her, he was so devoted to her, and she again so imperiously ruled over him, and with some contempt, that she was so bold to require at his hands, that he would permit her to sit one day upon her royal Throne, under rance, that the Cloth of Estate, with the Diadem about her head and so to give audience and dispatch the affaires of the Kingdom in stead of him; which when *Ninus* had granted, and given expresse charge withall? that all his Subjects whatsoever should yield their loyall obedience to her as to his own person, yea and perform whatsoever she ordained and decreed: she carried her self with great Modesty in her first Commandements, to make tryall of the Penitenciers and Guard about her; and some inter- which she saw that they gainfaid her in nothing, but were very diligent and serviceable; she Commanded them to Arrest and Apprehend the Body of *Ninus* the King then to bind him fast, and finally to put him to death. All which when they had fully executed, she reigned indeed, and for a long time in great State and Magnificence ruled all *Assia*. And was not *Belefy* I pray you a Barbarian Woman, brought up even in the very Market among other slaves? and yet those of *Alcivndria* have certain Temples, Chappels, and Altars, which King *Protemeus*, who was en- amoured upon her, caused to be intitled by the name of *Venus Belefy*? And *Pbryne* the famous Coaness, who both here and also at *Diphos* is shrined in the same Temple and Chappell with *Cupid*, whose statue all our beaten Gold, fluneth among those of Kings and Queens; by what great dowry was it that she had all her Lovers in such subjection under her? But like as these persons through their effeminate softness and pusillanimity, became ere they were aware a very Prey & Pillage to rich Women: so on the other side, we find others of bafe degree and poor condition, who being joyned in Marriage to Noble and Rich Wives, were not utterly overthrown with such matches, nor stuck fast or abated ought of their Generosity and high Spirit; but lived alwaies loved and honoured by those Wives, yea and were Masters over them to their dying day. But he that tangleth and reduceth his Wife into a narrow compass and low estate, as if one bent a Ring to the slenderness of his finger, for fear it should drop off, resembleth those for all the world, who clip and shave the mines of their Mares, and pluck the haire off their tailer, and then drive them up water, into some River or Poole: for it is said, that when they see themselves in the water so ill favourably shorne and curtailed, they let fall their Courage, Stomack, and haughty Spirit, so as they suffer themselves afterward to be covered by Asses. And therefore like as to prefer the Riches of a Woman above her vertue, or to make choise thereof before nobility of birth were bafe and illiberal: so to reject wealth joyned with vertue and noble parentage is meer folly. King *Antemion* writing unto a Captain of his whom he put with a Garison into a Fortresse *Amichia* in *Albania*, the which he fortified with all diligence possible, commanded him not only to make the Collar and Chain strong, but the Dogg also weak and lean: giving him thereby to understand, that he should impoverish the Athenians, and take from them all means whereby they might rebell or rise against him. But a man who hath taken to Wife a rich and beautiful Woman, ought not to make her either poor, or foul and ill-favoured; but rather by his discretion, good government and wisdom, by making semblance that he is ravished with no admiration of any thing that she hath, to bear himself equall unto her and in no wise subject, giving by his good demeanour and carriage a counterpoise to the ballance for to hold her firm, or a weight rather to make her helme and bend that way which is good for them both. Now to return unto *Isuendora*, her,

years are meet for Marriage, and her person fit for breeding and bearing children, and I here say the woman is in the very flower and best of her time; for elder she is not (and with that he snook upon *Pifias*) than any of her Sisters and Corrivale, neither hath she any gray haire, as some of those that be affectionate to *Bacchus* and follow him. Now if they think themselves of a meet age to converse familiarly with him, what should hinder her but she should affect and fanfie the young man person as well (if not better) as any young maiden now have over. And verily these young folk are otherwise hard to be matched, united and conporated together, and much a doe there is but by long continuance of time, to cast aside and shake off wantonness and wildness: for at the first there is many a foul day and blustering tempest, and unthek will they abide the yoke and draw together: but especially if there be any inking or jealousie of other loves abroad, which like unto winds, when the Pilot is away, do trouble and disquiet the wedlock of such young persons as neither be willing to obey, nor have the skill to command. If it be so then, that a Nource can rule her little Babe sucking at her pap; as a Schoolmaster the Boy that is his scholar; as a Master of exercises, the young Sprigal; as a lover, the youth whom he loveth; as the Law and the Captain, a Man grown and him that is able to bear Armes; inasmuch as there is no person of what age soever without government, and at his own liberty to do what he list: What absurdity is it if a wife that hath wit and discretion, and is besides the elder, govern and direct the life of a young man her husband? being as she is profitable unto him in regard she is the wifer, and besides milde and gentle in her government, for that she loveth him? Over and besides, to conclude, we all that are Beotians (quoth he) ought both to honour *Hercules*, and also not to be offended with the Marriage of those who are in years unequal, knowing as we do that he gave his own wife *Megara* being thirty three years old, in Marriage to *Jolans* being then but sixteen years of age. As these words passed to and fro, there came (as my Father made report) one of *Pifias* companions galloping hard on horseback from out of the City bringing news of a very strang and wonderful occurrence. For *Ismenodora*, perswading her self (as probable it was) that *Bacchus* disliked not this marriage in his heart, but that he held off, for respect and reverence that he carried unto those who seemed to divert him from it, resolved, not to give over her suit, nor to cast off young men. Whereupon she sent for such of her friends, as were lusty young and adventurous Gallants, and withall her Favourits those that wished well to her love: certain women also who were inward with her and most trustful; and when she had assembled them all together in her house and communicated her mind unto them, she waited the very hour, when as *Bacchus* was wont ordinarily to passe by her doors, going well and orderly appointed forth to the publick place of wrestling. Now when he approached neer unto her house all cunilled and anointed as he was, accompanied only with two or three persons, *Ismenodora* her self stepped forth of doors, crossed the way upon him and only touched the mandilion that he had about him: which signifying being given, all at once her friends leapt forth and fair caught up this fair youth in his Mandilion and Dublet as he was, and gently carried him into her house, and immediately shut the doors fast locked. No sooner had they gotten him within doors, but the women in the house turning him out of his upper Mandilion afore said, put upon him a fair Wedding robe, and withal the servants of the house ran up and down, and adorned with Ivie and Olive branches the doors and gates not only of *Ismenodora* but also of *Bacchus* house: and with that a Minstrel Wench also passed along through the street piping and singing a wedding song. As for the Citizens of *Thebie* and the strangers who were there at that time, some of them took up a laughter, others being angry and offended heret, incited the Masters and Governours of the publick exercises (who indeed have great authority over the youth and carry a vigilant eye unto them, for to look neerly unto all their behaviours) whereupon they made no account at all of the present exercises then in hand, but leaving the Theater, to the door they came of *Ismenodora*, where they fell into hot reasoning and debating of the matter one against another. Now when the said friend of *Pifias* was come in all haste riding upon the spur with this news, as if he had brought some great tidings out of the Camp in time of war, he had no sooner uttered, painting for want of winde and in manner breathless, these words, *Ismenodora* hath ravished *Bacchus*, but *Zenopetus*, as my father told the tale, laughed heartily, and out of *Euripides* (as he was one who alwaies loved to read that Poet) pronounced this sentence:

*Well done, fair Dame: you having wealth at will,  
Are worthy wife, your mind thus to fulfill.*

But *Pifias*, rising up in great choler, cried out, O the will of God, what will be the end of this licentious liberty, which thus overthroweth our City? seeing how all the World is grown already to this passe, that through our unbidded audaciousness, we do what we list, and passe for no lawes? but why say I Lawes, for haply it is but a ridiculous thing to take indignation for the transgressing of Civil Law and Right: for even the very law of Nature is violated by the insolent rashness of women. Was there ever the like example seen in the very Isle *Lemnos*? Let us be gone (quoth he) go we and quit from hence forth the wrestling Schools, and publick place of exercises, the common hall of justice, and the Senate house, and commit all to women, if the City be so inveterate as to pur up such an indignity. So *Pifias* brake company and departed in these termes, and *Protagoras* followed after him, partly as angry as he, and in part appeasing and mitigating his mood a little. Then *Antemion*: To say a truth (quoth he) this was an audacious part of hers, and favouring somewhat of the enterprise of those Lemnian wives in old time, and no marvel; for we our selves know that the woman was exceeding amorous. Hereat *Socrates*: Why thinke you (quoth he) that this was a ravishment indeed, and plain force, and not rather a subtille device and stratageme, as it

it were of the young man himself, who hath wit at will, to colour and excuse himself, in that escaping out of the arms of his other lovers, he is fallen into the hands of a fair, young and wealthy Lady. Never say fo (quoth *Antemion*) nor entertain such an opinion of *Bacchus*: for say that he were not of a simple nature (as he is) and plain in all his dealings, yet would he never have concealed so much from me, considering that he hath made me privy to all his secrets, and knoweth full well that in these matters, I was of all other most ready to second and set forward the sute of *Ismenodora*. But a hard matter it is to withstand, not anger, as *Heracles* saith, but love: for whatsoever it be that it would have, compasse the same it will, though it be with the perill of life, though it cost both goods and reputation. For setting this thing aside, was there ever in all our City, a woman more wife, sober and modest than *Ismenodora*? when was there ever heard abroad of her, any evil report, and when went there so much as a light suspition of any dishonest act out of that house? Certes we must thinke and say, that she seems to have been surprised with some Divine instinct supernatural and above humane reason. Then laughed *Pemprides*: You say even true (quoth he) there is a certain great malady of the body, which thereupon they call sacred: is there any marvell then that the greatest and most furious passion of the mind some do term sacred and divine? but it seems unto me, that it fares with you here, as I saw it did sometimes with two neighbours in *Egypt*, who argued and debated one with another upon this point, that whereas there was presented before them in the way as they went, a serpent creeping on the ground, they were resolved both of them, that it presaged good, and was a lucky signe; but either of them took and challenged it to himself: for even fo when I see that some of you draw Love into mens chambers, and others into womens Cabinets, as a Divine and singular good thing, I nothing wonder thereat, considering that this passion is grown to such power and is so highly honoured, that even those who ought to clip the wings thereof, and chase it from them of all side, those be they that magnifie and extoll it most. And verily hitherto have I held my peace as touching this matter in question, for that I saw the Debate and Controversie was about a private cause rather than any publick matter: but now that I see how *Pifias* is departed, I would gladly hear and know of you whereat they aimed and tended, who first affirmed that Love was a god? When *Pemprides* had propounded this question, as my father addressed himself and began to make his answer, there came another messenger in place, whom *Ismenodora* had sent from the City, for to bring *Antemion* with him; for that the trouble and tumult in manner of a sedition grew more and more within the Town, by occasion that the two masters of the publick exercises, were at some difference one with another, whilst the one was of this mind that *Bacchus* was to be redeemed and delivered, the other again thought that they were to deal no farther in the matter. So *Antemion* arose incontinently and went his way with all speed and diligence possible: and then my father calling to *Pemprides* by name, and directing his speech unto him: You seem *Pemprides* (quoth he) in my conceit, to touch a very main and nice point, or rather indeed to stir a firing that would not be stirred, to wit the opinion and belief that we have, as touching the gods, in that you call for a reason and demonstration of them in particular. For the ancient faith and belief received from our ancients in the Country where we are born is sufficient, than which there can not be said or imagined a more evident Argument:

*For never was this knowledge found,  
By wit of man or sense profound.*

But this Tradition being the Base and Foundation common to all Piety and Religion, if the certitude and credit thereof received from hand to hand be shaken and moved in one only point, it becometh suspected and doubtfull in all the rest. You have heard no doubt how *Euripides* was courted and troubled for the beginning of his Tragedy *Menalippe*, in this manner.

*Zeῦ πάτερ ὅστις ὠκυμένης, &c.  
Jupiter whose name I know  
By hear-say only and no mo.*

And verily he had a great confidence in this Tragedy, being as it should seem magnificently and with exquisite elegancy penned: but for the tumultuous murmuring of the people, he changed the foregoing verses, as now they stand written:

*Zeῦ, ὃς ἀνέστης τῆς ἀνδρείας, &c.  
God Jupiter (which name in verity  
Doth sort full well to his Divinity.)*

And what difference is there by our words and disparagement, between calling the opinion which we have of *Jupiter* and of *Mercury* into question, and making doubt of *Cupid* or Love? For it is not now of late, and never before, that this God begins to call for altars, or to challenge Sacrifices: neither is he a stranger come among us from some barbarous superstition, like as certain *Atia* and *Uxor* not what *Adonis* and *Adonis*, brought in by the means of some half-men or mungrell *Hermaphrodites* and od women; and thus being closely crept in, hath met with certain honours and worships far unmeet for him, in such sort, as he may well be accused of bastardie, and under a false title to have been enrolled in the Catalogue of the gods: For my good friend, when you hear *Empedocles* saying thus,

*And equal to the rest in length  
and breadth was Amity;  
But see in sp'rt thou it behold,  
not with deceitfull eye.*

you must understand him, that he writeth thus of *Love*; for that this God is not visible, but apprehended only



only by opinion and belief, among other gods which are most ancient. Now if of all them in particular, you seek for a proof and demonstration, laying your hands upon each Temple, and making a sophtical trial by every Altar, you shall find nothing void and free from calumny and cavi-  
ous slander: for not to go far off, mark but these Verses.

But Venus wench can I see  
How great a goddess she should be: }  
Of Cupid she the mother is,  
And she alone that Love doth give }  
Whose children we (You wot well this)  
Are all who on the earth do live }

And verily, *Empedocles* called her *Ζειφυρα*, that is to say, fertile or giving life: *Sophocles*, *Andromeda*, thus is to say, fruitful, both of them using most fit and pertinent Attributes. Howbeit this great and admirable work, to wit generation, is wrought principally and directly by *Venus*, but collaterally and as an accessory by Love: which if Love be present, is pleasant and acceptable; contrariwise if Love be away, and not assent thereto, surely the act thereof remaineth altogether not expetible, dishonourable, without grace and amiable. For the Conjunction of man and woman without the affection of Love, like as hunger and thirst, which tend to nothing else but satiety and fulness, endeth in nought that is good, lovely and commendable: but the goddess *Venus* putting away all loathsome satiety of pleasure, by the means of Love engendered Amity and Friendship, yea and temperance of two in one. And hereupon it is that *Parmenides* verily affirmeth Love to be the most ancient work of *Venus*, writing thus in his Book intitled *Cosmogonia*, that is to say, the Creation of the world.

And at the first she framed Love  
Before all other gods above,

But *Hesiodus* seemeth in mine opinion more Physically to have made Love more ancient than any other whatsoever, to the end that all, the rest by it might breed and take beginning. If then we beware this Love of the due honours ordained for it, *Ceres* those which belong to *Venus* will not keep their place any longer. Neither can it be truly said that some men may wrong and reproach Love, and forbear withal to do injury unto *Venus*. For even from one and the same stage we do hear these imputations, first upon Love.

Love idle is it self, and in good troth  
Possesseth such like persons, given to sloth.

And then again upon *Venus*:

Venus (my children) hath not this only name  
Of Venus of Cyprus: for the same  
Answer right well to many an attribute,  
And surname which men unto her impute.  
For hell she is: and also violence,  
That never ends, but eye doth recompence }  
And furious rages, young folk for to incense.

Like as of the other gods, there is not one almost, that can avoid the opprobrious tongue of unlettered rusticity and ignorance. For do but consider and observe god *Mars*, who as it were in a Caldean and Astronomically table standeth in a place diametrically opposite unto Love, mark I say, what great honours men have yielded unto him, and contrariwise what reprochfull terms they give him again.

Mars is stark blind and seeth not  
(fair dames) but like wild boar,  
By turning all things upside down,  
Works mischief evermore.

*Homer* calleth him *μυαδων*, that is to say, imbued with blood and polluted with murders; likewise *Αλκωνοβραννος*, that is to say, variable and leaping from one side to another. As for *Chrysippus* by etymologizing and deriving this gods name, fasteneth upon him a criminous accusation, saying, that *Αρης* for so he is named, in Greek cometh of *αυρεω*, that is to say to murder and destroy: giving thereby occasion unto some, to think that the faculty and power in us prone to war, fight, debate, quarrell, anger, and fell stomach, is called *Αρης*, that is to say, *Mars*. Like as others also will say, that concupiscence in us, is termed *Venus*; our gift of speaking, *Mercury*; skill in arts and sciences, *Muses*; and prudence, *Minerva*. See you not how deep a pit and downfall of Atheisme and Impiety is ready to receive and swallow us up, in case we range and distribute the gods according to the passions, powers, faculties and virtues that be in vs?

If so it very well (quoth *Pempeides*;) but neither standeth it with Piety and Religion, to make gods to be passions; nor yet contrariwise, to believe that passions be gods. How think you then (quoth my father) is *Mars* a god, or a passion of ours? *Pempeides* answered, That he thought him to be a god, ruling and ordering that part of our soul wherein is seated animosity, anger and manly courage. What *Pempeides*, cried out my father then, hath that turbulent, warring, overwhart and quarrelling part in us, a Deity to be president over it, and shall this that breedeth Amity, society and peace, be without a Divine power to govern it? Is there indeed, a martiall and warlike god of arms, called thereupon *Atratinus* and *Enyalus*, who hath the superintendence and presidency of mutual murders, wherein

men

men kill and be killed; of armour, weapons, arrows, darts, and other sort of assaults and scaling walls, of sacage, pillage and booties? And is there never a god, to be a witness, guide, director and conductor of unpartial affection and matrimoniall love, which endeth in unity, concord and fellowship? There is a god of the woods and forests, named *Agroteus*, who doth aid, assist, and encourage hunters, in chasing and crying after the roe-buck, the wild goat, the hare and the hart; and they who lie in secret wait for to intercept wolves and bears in pitfalls, and to catch them with snares, make their prayers to *Agroteus*.

Who first as I have heard men say,  
Did grimes and furies for wild beasts lay.

And *Hercules* when he bent his bow, and was ready to shoot at a bird, called upon another god: and *Æscylus* reporteth,

Phœbus the hunter directed by and by,  
His arrow straight as it in air did flye.

And shall the man who hunteth after the first game in the world, even to catch friendship & amity, have no god nor demy-god, no angel to help, to favorise, and speed his enterprise and good endeavours? For mine own part, my friend *Daphneus*, I take not man to be a more base plant or viler tree, than is the oak, the mulberry tree, or the vine which *Homer* honoureth with the name of *Hemeris*, considering that in his time and season he hath a powerful instinct to bud and put forth most pleasantly, even the beauty both of body and mind. Then (quoth *Daphneus*) who ever was there before God, that thought or said the contrary? Who? answered my father: marry even all they verily, who being of opinion, that the careful industry of plowing, sowing, and planting appertaineth unto the gods:

For certain Nymphs they have high Dryades  
Whose life they say, is equall with the trees.

And as *Pindarus* writeth,

God Bacchus who the pure resplendent light  
Of Autumne is, and with his kind influence  
Doth nourish trees, and cause to grow upright,  
And fructifie at length in affluence.

Yet for all this are not persuaded that the nouriture and growth of children, and young folk, who in their prime and flour of age, are framed and shaped to singular beauty and feature of Personage, belongeth to any of the gods or demy gods. Neither by their saying, any deity or divine power, hath the care and charge of man, that as he groweth, he should shoot up straight, and arise directly to vertue; and that his naturall indument and generous ingenuity should be perverted, daunted and quelled, either for default of a careful Tutor and director, or through the lewd and corrupt behaviour of bad company about him. And verily were it not a shamefull indignity and ingratitude thus to say? and in this behalf to drive God as it were from that bounty and benignity of his to mankind, which being diffused, spread, and dispersed over all, is defectious in no part, no not in those necessary actions and occasions, whereof some have their end more needfull I wis many times than lovely or beautifull to see. As for example, even our very birth at first, is nothing lightly at all, nor pleasant, in regard of the blood and bitter pangs that do accompany it, yet hath the same a goddeff: to be the President and oversee thereof, to wit *Lucina*, called thereupon *Lockia* and *Ilithia*. Besides, better it were for a man never to have been born, than to become evil and naughty, for want of a good governor and guardian. Moreover the Deity and Divine power, leave him not man destitute when he is sick, no, nor when he is dead: but some God there is or other, that hath an office or function even then, and is powerfull in those occasions: there is one, I say, that helpeth to convey the souls of such as have ended their life, from hence into another world, and to lay them in quiet repose, for joy of bestowing and transporting of them in that sort is called *Catunastes* and *Elychopompes* according as he faileth.

The Shady night we never bare  
(The harps to sound) a fine Musician:  
Nor Prophet secrets to declare:  
Ne yet in cures, a good Physician:  
But for the souls of dead, below,  
In their due place, then to bestow.

And yet in these ministreries and functions, many odious troubles and encoembrances there be: whereas contrariwise there can be named no work more holy, no Exercise, game of price or profession of matters, whatsoever, whereof it becometh a god better to have the dispose, presidency and oversight, than is the charge and regard, to order and rule the desires of lovers, afflicting and pursuing beautifull persons in the flour and prime of their age: for herein there is nothing foul, nothing forced nor by constraint: but that gentle persuasion and attractive grace, which yielding in truth a pleasant and sweet Labour, leadeth all travell whatsoever unto vertue and amity; which neither without a god can attain unto the desired end which is meet and convenient, nor hath any other god for the guide, ruler and conductor, than Love which is the companion of the *Muses*, *Graces* and *Venus*:

For Cupid sowing secretly,  
In hearts of men a sweet desire,  
And heat of Love immediately  
By kindling mild and gentle fire.

Ac

According as *Menalippedes* saith, tempereth the pleasantest things that be with those that are most fair and beautiful. How say you *Zeuxippus*, is it not so? Yes verily (quoth he) I am altogether of that mind: for to hold the contrary were very absurd. Then (quoth my Father again) and were it not as monstrous, that whereas Amity hath four several kinds and branches, according as theancient Philosophers have divided it: The first in nature, then that of propinquity and local affinity, the third of society, and the last this of love, every one of the rest should have a god to be the President and Governour thereof, to wit, furnished either *Amor*, or *Eros*, or *Phrynis*, or *Amor*, and this amorous amity only or love, as accurd, interdicted and excommunicate, be left without a Lord and Ruler? considering that it requireth more care, solicitude and government than all the rest? It doth indeed (quoth *Zeuxippus*) and need it hath not of that which is strange, but proper and familiar, of the own.

Moreover (quoth my father) a man may here take hold by the way of *Plato* his opinion and doctrine to this purpose: to wit, that there is one kinde of fury transmitted from the body to the soul, proceeding from certain indispositions and malignant distemperatures of ill humours, or else occasioned by some hurtful winde or pernicious spirit that passeth and entrench into it, and this fury is a sharp and dangerous disease. There is another not without some divine instinct: neither is it engendered at home and within us: but a strange inspiration it is, coming from without, a very alienation of reason, sense, and understanding, the beginning and motion whereof ariseth from some better power and a certain divine puissance. And this passion in general is named *Enthusiasmus*, as one would say, a divine inspiration, for like as, *Enthus*, in Greek signifieth repletion with spirit or winde; and *Enthus*, that which is full of prudence and wit: Even so, saith he, an agitation and shaking of the soul is called *Enthusiasmus* by the participation and society of some more heavenly and divine power. Now this Enthusiasm is subdivided: for one part thereof is Propheticall, and can skill of foretelling natural things, when one is inspired and possessed by *Apollo*. A second is *Bacchanal* sent from *Bacchus*, whereof *Sophocles* speaketh in one place thus,

And see you dance.  
With Corybants.

For those furies of dame *Cybele* the mother of the gods, as also Panique terrors and frights, hold all of the *Bacchanal* sacred ceremonies. The third proceedeth from the Muses, which meeting with a tender and delicate soul, not polluted with vice, stretch up and raisest a Poetical spirit, and Musical humour: as for that raging and Martial *Enthusiasm* (for *Arimianus* it is called) that furious inspiration breathing War is well known to every man, for to proceed from god *Mars*; a fury wherein there is no grace, no musical sweetness, hindring the generation and nourishment of children, and inciting people to take armes. There remaineth one alienation more of the understanding, O *Daphne*, and an extacy or transportation of mans spirit, and the same not obscure, nor quiet and calme: concerning which I would demand of *Pemphides* here,

What god is he, that shakes the Spear  
In hand, which doth so fair fruit bear.

Even this ravishment of love, settled as well upon fair and good boys, as honest and sober dames; which is the hottest and most vehement transportation of the mind: for see you not that even the very fouldier and warriour himself, coming once to be surpris'd therewith, laid down his armes presently, and cast off his warlike fury,

For then his servants joy did make,  
And Corfalet from his shouldres take.

and himself having no more mind to Battell, sat still looking upon others that fought. And as for these *Bacchanal* motions, these wanton skipplings and frisks of the Corybants, they use to appease and stay by changing, only in dancing of the measures, the foot Trocheus into Spondeus; and in song, the Phrygian tune into the Dorique: semblably *Pythia* the Priestesse of *Apollo*, being once come down from her three-footed fabrick, upon which the recieveth that incentive spirit of fury, remaineth quiet and in calme tranquillity: whereas the rage of love, after it hath once in good earnest caught a man, and set him on fire, there is no music in the world, no charm, no lenitive song, no change of place able to stay it: for amorous persons when they be present, do love, if they be absent, do long; in the day time they follow after their sweet-hearts, by night they lie and watch at their doors; filling and sober they call upon their fair Paramours, full and drunken, they sing and chant of them: neither are Poetical fancies and inventions, as one sometimes said for their lively and effectual expression, the dreams of persons waking; but rather this may be verified of lovers imaginations, who devise and talk with their loves absent, as if they were present, they salute, embrace, chide, and expostulate with them, as if they saw them in place: for it seemeth that our ordinary sight doth depaint or other imagination with liquid and waterish colours, which quickly pass away, are gone and departed out of our minds: but the fancies and visions of Lovers being imprinted in their cogitations by fire, or enamelled, leave in their memory lively images furcly engraved, which move, live, breathe, speak, remain and continue ever after; like as *Cato* the Roman said, that the soul of the lover lived and dwelt in the soul of the loved: for that there is settled sure in him the visage, countenance, manner, nature, life, and actions of the person whom he loveth, by which being led and conducted, he quickly dispatcheth and cutteth off a long journey, as the

\* Cynicks are wont to say, fin-

\* *Menalippedes*,  
saith that  
the music  
poets,

finding a short, compendious and direct way unto unto vertue: for he passeth speedily from love to amity and friendship, being carried on end, by the favour of this God of Love, with the instinct of his affection, as it were with winde and tide, with weather and water together: In sum: I say, that this Enthusiasm or Ravishment of Lovers is not without some divine power, and that there is no other god to guide and govern it, than he whose feast we solemnize, and unto whom we sacrifice this very day; howbeit, for that we measure the greatness of a god by puissance especially and profits, according as among all humane goods, we hold Royalty and Vertue to be most divine, and do call them; it is time now to consider first and foremost, whether Love be inferiour to any other god in power? And verily *Sophocles* saith:

Venus in power doth much avail,  
To win a prize and to prevail.

Great also is the puissance of *Mars*: and verily we see the power of all other gods to be after a sort, divided in these matters two waies, the one is allecive, and causeth us to love that which is beautiful and good; the other is adversative, and maketh us to hate that which is foul and bad, which are the first impressions, that from the beginning are engraven in our minds, according as *Plato* in one place speaketh of the Idea. Let us now come to the point, and consider how the very act alone of *Venus* may be had for a great or some such small piece of silver, neither was there ever man known to endure any great travel, or to expose himself to any danger, for the enjoying of such a fleshly pleasure, unless he were amorous withall and love sick. And to forbear here to name such curtsians as *Phryne* and *Lais* were, we shall finde my good friend, that *Gnathemum* the harlot,

At lantern light in evening late,  
Waiting and calling for some mate.

many times passed by and neglected: but otherwhiles again,  
If once some sudden spirit move,  
The raging fit of fervent love,

it maketh a man to prize: and esteem the afore said pleasure which erewhile he reckoned nothing worth, comparable in value to all the talents as they say of *Tantalus* treasure, and equal to his great Seignory and Dominion; so enervate is the delight of *Venus*, and so soon bringeth it lothsome satiety, in itself not inspired with the power of love: which we may see yet more evidently by this argument; namely, that there be many men who will be content to part with others in this kinde of vaporous pleasure, yea, and can finde in their hearts to prostitute unto them not only their Mistresses and Concubines, but also their own Espoused wives; as it is reported of that *Galba* or *Cabbas* a Roman, who, if I do not mistake, invited *Mecenas* upon a time unto his house, and feasted him; where perceiving how from him to his wife there passed some wanton nods and winkings, which bewrayed that he had a mind and fanic to her, he gently rested his head upon a Pillow or Cushion, making semblance as though he would take a nap and sleep, while they dallied together: in the mean time when one of the servants which were without spying his time, came softly to the Table for to steal away some of the Wine that stood there; avast unhappy Knave (quoth *Galba*) being broad awake, and open eyed, knoweth thou not that I sleep onely for *Mecenas* sake? But peradventure this was not so large a matter, considering that the said *Galba* was no better than one of the buffons or pleasers that possess to make folk merry and to laugh. I will tell you therefore another example: At *Argos* there were two of the principal Citizens concurrents, and opposite one to the other in the Governmeat of the City, the one was named *Nicostratus*, and the other *Phaulus*; now it fortuned upon a time that King *Philip* came to the Town: and commonly thought it was, that *Phaulus* plotted and practised to attain unto some absolute principality and sovereignty in the City, by the means of his wife, who was a young and beautiful Lady, in case he could bring her once to the Kings bed, and that the might live with him. *Nicostratus* smelling and perceiving as much, walked before *Phaulus* door and about his house for the nonce, to see what he would do: who indeed having shod his wife with a paire of high shoes, cast about her a Mantle or Mandilion, and withal set upon her head a Chaper or hat after the Macedonian fashion, and dressed her every way like unto one of those Kings Pages; sent her secretly in that habit and attire unto his lodging. Now considering there hath been in times past and is at this present such a number of amorous persons and lovers, have you ever read or known that any one of them hath been the Bawd to prostitute his own love, though he might thereby have gained Sovereign Majesty, and obtained the divine honours of *Jupiter*? I verily believe, no: for why? there is not a person dare queth to contradict and oppose himself in Governmeat of State against the actions of Princes and Tyrants? But on the other side, corrivalls they have and concurrents many in love, such as will not stick to beard them in the question of fair, young and beautiful persons, whom they affect and lustie. For it is reported that *Aristogiton* the Athenian, *Antileon* the Metapontine, and *Menalippides* of *Agrigentum* never contended nor contested with the Tyrants, for all they saw them to wait and rulate the common-weale, yea, to commit many enormous outrages; but when they began once to sollicite and tempt their Paramors and Loves, then they rose up as it were in the defence of their sacred Temples and Sanctuaries, then they stood against them even with the hazard and peril of their lives. It is said, that King *Alexander* wrote unto *Theodorus* the brother of *Protes* in this wise: Convey unto me that Musical wench of thine, that sings so daintily, and receive for her ten talents, which I led by this bearer; let me have her, I say, unless thou thy self be in love with her. When *Antipatrides* another of his minious, came in a Maske on a time to his house, accompanied with

with a pretty girl that played upon the Pfaltery, and sung passing well; *Alexander* taking great delight and contentment in the said damoysel, demanded of *Antipatrid* whether he were not himself enamoured of her. And when he answered, Yes verily, and exceeding much. A mischief on thee (quoth he) leud Varlet as thou art, and the Devill take thee; but the wench he obtained from, and would not so much as touch her. But mark moreover and beholders of what power, even in Martiall feats of armes Love is: Love I say, which is not (as saith *Euripides*.

*Of nature slow, dull, fickle, inconstant,  
Nor in soft cheeks of maidens resiant.*

For a man that is possessed secretly in his heart with Love, needeth not the assistance of *Mars* when he is to encounter with his enemies in the field; but having a god of his own within him, and presuming of his presence,

Most prest he is and resolute,  
to passe through fire and seas;  
The blasts of most tempestuous winds,  
he cares not to appease,

And all for his friends sake, and according as he commandeth him. And verily, of those Children, as well Sons as Daughters, of Lady Niobe, who in a Tragedy of *Sappholes* are represented to be shot with arrows, and so killed, one there was, who called for no other to help and succour her at the point of death, but only her Paramour, in this wife :

*Oh that some God my love would send,  
My life to save and me defend.*

Ye all know, I am forewarned ye not know; and wherefore *Cleomachus* the Theſſalian did in Combat Not for my part (quoth *Pempeides*) but gladly would I hear and learn of you. And it is a ſtory (quoth my Father) a worthy the honour and the knowledge. There came to aid the Chalcidians, at what time there was war in *Theſſalia* againſt the Eſtrians, this *Cleomachus*: now the Chalcidians ſeemed to be ſtrong enough in their footmen; but much ado they had, and thought it was a difficult piece of ſervice, to break the cavalierie of their enemies, and to repel them. So they requiſted *Cleomachus* their allies and confederate, a brave Knight, and of great courage, to give the firſt charge, and to enter upon the ſide men of armes. With that, he asked the youth whom he loved moſt intirely, and who was there preſent whether he would behold this enterpriſe, and fee the conflict: and when the young man answered yea, and withall kindly kiſſing and embracing him, ſet the helmet upon his head; *Cleomachus* much more hardly and fuller of ſpirits then before, aſſembled about him a troop of the moſt valorous horſemen of all the Theſſalians, advanced forward right gallantly, and with great reſolution ſet upon the enemies, in ſuch ſort, as at the very firſt encounter he brake the front, difſarred the men of armes, and in the end put them to flight. Which diſcomfiture, when their Infanterie ſaw, they alſo fled: and to the Chalcidians woon the field, and achieved a noble victory. Howbeit, *Cleomachus* himſelf was there ſlain, and the Chalcidians ſlew his ſepulchre and monument in their Market place, upon which there ſtandeth, even at this day, a mighty pillar erected. And whereas the Chalcidians before time held his reverendy or love of young *Pylas* an infamous thing, they of all other Greeks ever after ſaid and honoured it moſt. But *Ariftotele* writeth, that *Cleomachus* indeed loſt his life after he had vanquiſhed the Eſtrians in battell: but as for him who was thus kiſſed by his lover, he ſaith that he was of *Chalcis* in *Thrace*, ſent for to aid thoſe of *Chalcis* in *Eubœa*: and hereupon it cometh that the Chalcidians uſe to chant ſuch a Caroll as this:

*Sweet Boies, fair Imps extract from noble race,  
Endued besides with youth and beauties grace,  
Envy not men of armes and bold courage,  
Fruition of your prime and flowing age :  
For here as well of Love and kinde affection,  
As of prowess, we all do make profession.*

\* Or intiu. The lover was named *Anton*, and the boy whom he loved *Philistus*, as *Dionysius* the Poet writeth in his 1<sup>st</sup> *Antia*. book \* of *Caus.*s.

And in our City of *Thebes*, O *Pemphides*, did not one *Arctas* give unto a youth whom he loved, a complete armour; the day that he was enrolled soldier, with the inscription of *Arctas* his own name? And as for *Phaenares* an amorous man and one well experienced in love matters, he changed and altered the ordinance in battell of our footmen heavily armed, reproving *Homer* as one that had no skill nor experience of Loves for ranging the Achæans by their tribes and wards, and not putting in array the lover close unto him whom he loveth: for this indeed had been the right ordinance, which *Homer* describeth in these words:

*The Morians set so close, and shield to shield.  
So joyntly touch'd that one the other held*

And this is the only battalion and army invincible. For men otherwhiles in danger abandon those of their tribe, their kindred also and such as be allied unto them : yea, and believe me they forsake their own Fathers and Children : but never was there enemy seen, that could pass through, and make way of evasion between the lover and his darling, considering that such, many times, shew their adventurous Resolutio in a bravery, and how little reckoning they make of life, unto them being

ino differe no requir'd so much at their hands. Thus *Thero* the Theffalian laying and clapping his  
left hand to a wall, drew forth his sword with the right, and cut off his own thumbe, before one whom  
he loved, and challenged his arrival to do as much, if his heart would serve him. Another chanced in  
fight to fall grooving upon his face, and when his enemy lifted up his sword to give him a mortal  
wound, he requested him to lay his hand a while until he could turn his body, that his friend, whom  
he loved, might not see him wounded in his back part. And therefore we may see, that not only the  
most martial and warlike Nations are most given to Love, to wit, the *Bœotians*, *Lacedæmonians*, and  
*Carlians*, but also divers renowned Princes and Captaines, of old time : as namely, *Meleager*, *Achilles*,  
*Argemone*, *Cinon*, *Epaminondas*. And as for the last nam'd, he had two young men whom he dearly  
loved, *Alopecius* and *Zephibodorus*, who also died with him in the field at *Mantineæ*, and was likewise  
interr'd near unto him. And when *Alopecius* became hereupon more terrible unto his enemies, and  
most resolute, *Eucubæus* the *Amphylian*, who first made head against him, resisted his fury, and smote  
him; had Horroque Honours done unto him by the *Phœacians*. To come now unto *Hercules* : hard it were  
to reckon and number his loves they were so many : But among others, men honour and worship to  
this day *Iolæus*, because they take him to have been *Hercules* his darling, in so much as upon his Tombe  
the manner is of lovers to take a corporal oath and assurance of reciprocal Love. Moreover it is re-  
ported of *Apollo*, that being skillful in *Physick*, he saved the life of *Alceus* being desperately sick, for  
the sake of *Admetus*, who as he loved her intirely being his wife, so he was as tenderly beloved of him.  
For the Poets fable, that *Apollo*, being inamoured, for pure Love.

*Did serve Admetus one whole year,  
As one that his hir'd servant were.*

And here it falleth out, in some sort well, that we have made mention of *Alceſtis* : for albeit women be not ordinarily, much dealing with *Mars*, yet the ravishment and furious fits of Love driveth them otherwhiles to enterprife somewhat againſt their own nature, even to voluntary death : and if the poetical fables are of any credit, and may go current for truth, it is evident by ſuch reports as go of \* *Alceſis* of *Proteſtlaus*, and *Euridice* the wife of *Orpheus*, that *Pinto* obeyeth no other god but only Love, noroth what they command. And verily howsoever in regard of others gods, as *Sophocles* ſaith,

He cannot skill of equity,  
of favour and of grace.  
But only with him Justice straight,  
and rigour taketh place.

Yah ha! his good respect and reverence to lovers, and to them alone he is not implacable nor inflexible.  
 And therefore a good thing it is, my friend, I confess, to be received into the religious confraternity  
 of the Eleusinian mysteries: but I fear that the confederate professed in Love, are in the other world in better  
 condition accepted with *Phno*: And this I say, one who neither am too forward in believing such  
 well, and by a certain divine fortune and good hap they hit upon the truth, saying as they do, that  
 new but lovers returne from hell unto this light: which is: but what way and how they wotnot; that  
 wandering indeed and missing of the right path, which is: of all men first by the means of Philo-  
 sophy found out and known. And yet among the *Egyptians* fables, there be certain small slender and ob-  
 scure shadowes of the truth, dispersed there are many. Howbeit they had need of an expert and well-ex-  
 perenced hunter, who by small tracts knoweth how to trace and finde out great matters. And there-  
 fore let us pass: them over,

And now that I have discoursed of the force and puissance of Love being so great as it appeareth, I come now to examine and consider the bounty and liberality thereof to mankind, nor whether it confer many benefits upon them, who are acquainted with it, and make use thereof (for notable they be and well known to all men) but whether it bringeth more and greater commodity to those that are studious of it, and amorous *For Euripides*, howsoever he were a great favourite of Love; yet so it is, that he promised and admired that in it, which of all others is least, namely when he said,

Love teacheth Musick, marke when you will,  
Though one before thereof had no skill.

For he might as well have said, that it maketh a man prudent and witty, who before was dull and foolish; yea and valiant, as hath been said, who before was a coward; like as they that by putting into fire burning peeces of wood, make them firme and straight, whereas they were before weak and tender. Similarly, every amorous person becometh liberal and magnificent, although he had been aforesime a pinching nudger. For this base avarice and michery waxeth soft and mellow by love, like as iron in the fire, in such force, as men take more pleasure to give away and bestow upon those whom they love, than they do to take and receive of others. For ye all know well how *Antony* the son of *Antebian* was enamoured upon *Alcebiades*, and when he had invited certain friends and guests of his unto a sumptuous and largely feist in his house, *Alcebiades* came thither in a Mask to make pastime; and afterwards had taken with him one half of the silver cups that stood upon the board before them, went hiswaie, which when the guests took note well, he said that the youth had behaved himself very proudly and malipertly toward him. Not so (quoth *Antony*) for he hath dealt very courteously with

\* For *Alceste* was reported to die for the love of *Admetus*, and to save his life:

with me, in that, when he might have gone away with all, he left thus much behind for me. *Zenippus* taking joy herat: O *Hercules* (quoth he) you want but a little of ridding quite out of my heart that hereditary hatred derived and received from our Ancestours, which I have taken against *Antus*, in the behalf of *Socrates* and *Philosophy*, in case he were so kinde and courteous in his Love. Be it so (quoth my Father) but let us proceed: Love is of this nature, that it maketh men otherwise melancholick, austere, and hard to be pleased or conversed withall, to become more sociable gentle, and pleasant: for as ye know well enough.

*More stately is that house in fight,  
Wherein the fire burns clear and bright.*

and even so, a man is more lightome and jocund, when he is well warmed with the heat of Love. But the vulgar sort of men are in this point somewhat perversely affected and beside all reason; for if they see a flashing celestial light in an house by night, they take it to be some divine apparition, and wonder thereat: but when they see a base, vile, and abject mind suddenly replenished with Courage, Liberty, Magnificence, desire of Honour, with Grace, Favour, and Liberality, they are not forced to say, as *Telemachus* did in *Homer*,

*Certes, some god, I know full well,  
Is now within, and here doth dwell.*

And is not this also, quoth *Daphneus* (tell me, I pray you, for the love of all the Graces) an effect of some divine cause? that a lover who regardeth not, but despiseth in a manner all other things, I say not his familiar friends only, his fellows and domestic acquaintance, but the Lawes also and Magistrates, Kings and Princes: who is afraid of nothing, admireth, esteemeth, and observeth nothing; and is besides so hardy, as to present himself before the flashing shot of piercing lightning, so soon as ever he espies his fair love,

*Like to some Cree of cravain kinde les fall,  
Or hangs the wing, and daunted is withall,*

He droups I say, his Courage is cooled, his heart is done, and all his animosity quailed quite. And here it were not impertinent to the purpose, to make mention of *Sappho* among the Muses. The Romans write in their history, that *Cacus* the Son of *Vulcan* breathed and flamed flames of fire from his mouth. And in truth the words that *Sappho* uttereth, be mixed with fire, and by her verses testifieth the ardent and flaming heat of her heart,

*Seeking for Love some Cure and remedy,  
By pleasant sound of Muses melody,*

as *Philoxenus* writeth. But *Daphneus*, unless peradventure the Love of *Lysandra* have made you to forget your old sports and delights wherewith you were wont to passe the time away, call to mind (I beseech you) and rehearse unto us those sweet verses of faire *Sappho*, wherein she saith, that when her Love came in her sight, she lost her voice presently, and was speechlesse, her body ran all over into cold sweats, she became pale and wan, she fell a trembling and quaking, her braines turned round, surprised she was with dizziness, and fell into a fainting fit of swooning.

*Thrice happy do I hold that wight,  
Who may espouse enjoy thy light,  
Of thy sweet voice to reap delight.*

*And pleasant smiles:  
Which kinde in me such a fire,  
That, as I them do much admire,  
My heart they Ravish, and desire*

*To transport the whiles.  
Thy face no sooner do I see,  
But sudden silence comes on me;  
My tongue strings all dissolve be,*

*And speech quite gone:  
Then, underneath my skin is spread  
A fiery flush of colour red;  
With that mine eyes be darkened*

*And sight yeeld none.  
Mine eares also do buzze and ring,  
And yet distinctly hear nothing;  
Cold drops of sweat run down trickling,*

*Or stand as dew:  
My joints anon and sinewes shake,  
My heart-voe pants, my flesh doth quake;  
And pale as death I doo overtake.*

*My former brow  
And thus full wan I do remain  
As flower in house that long hath laine,  
Or grass in field, which wanting raine,  
Doth quickly fade:*

*My former brow  
And thus full wan I do remain  
As flower in house that long hath laine,  
Or grass in field, which wanting raine,  
Doth quickly fade:*

*My former brow  
And thus full wan I do remain  
As flower in house that long hath laine,  
Or grass in field, which wanting raine,  
Doth quickly fade:*

*My former brow  
And thus full wan I do remain  
As flower in house that long hath laine,  
Or grass in field, which wanting raine,  
Doth quickly fade:*

*My former brow  
And thus full wan I do remain  
As flower in house that long hath laine,  
Or grass in field, which wanting raine,  
Doth quickly fade:*

*My former brow  
And thus full wan I do remain  
As flower in house that long hath laine,  
Or grass in field, which wanting raine,  
Doth quickly fade:*

*My former brow  
And thus full wan I do remain  
As flower in house that long hath laine,  
Or grass in field, which wanting raine,  
Doth quickly fade:*

*My former brow  
And thus full wan I do remain  
As flower in house that long hath laine,  
Or grass in field, which wanting raine,  
Doth quickly fade:*

*My former brow  
And thus full wan I do remain  
As flower in house that long hath laine,  
Or grass in field, which wanting raine,  
Doth quickly fade:*

*My former brow  
And thus full wan I do remain  
As flower in house that long hath laine,  
Or grass in field, which wanting raine,  
Doth quickly fade:*

*My former brow  
And thus full wan I do remain  
As flower in house that long hath laine,  
Or grass in field, which wanting raine,  
Doth quickly fade:*

*Until at length in extasie,  
Withouten sense and breath I lie;  
As if death of me suddenly*

*Surprize had made.*

When *Daphneus* had recited this sonnet: Is not this (quoth my father, in the name of *Jupiter* I beseech you) a plain possession of the mind by some heavenly power: is not this (I say) an evident motion, and every celestial ravishment of the spirit? What furious passion was there ever so great and strong, that came upon the Priestesse *Pythia*, when she mounted that three-footed fabrick, from whence the delirious Oracles? Who ever was there so far transported and carried beside himself by the Pipes and Pipes of fanatical persons supposed to be surprized by some divine spirit of fury, by the Tabour and other strange ceremonies in the service of *Cybele* the Mother of the gods? Many there be, that hold the same body, and look upon the same beauty; but the amorous person only is caught and ravished therewith. What should be the reason of it? Certes, there is some cause thereof? Verily, when *Memnon* loveth it unto us, yet we learn it not, nor understand his meaning by these verses:

*There is a malady of the mind,  
That it surpriseth fatally:  
Who smitten is therewith, doth finde  
Himself sore wounded inwardly.*

And hereof is god Love the cause, who toucheth one, and sparreth another. But that which ought indeed to have been spoken rather at the first,

*Since now it comes into my mind,  
And way out of my mouth would finde,*

*Escyllus* saith, I think not good to overpass, in silence, being a matter of so great importance. For of all things else (my good friend) in a manner, whereof we take knowledge, not by the ministry of the five natural senses; some there be, that came into credit (at the beginning) and authority, by false others, by lawes; and the rest by doctrine and discourse of reason. Now the constant beliefe and full persuasion of the gods, the first Masters, Teachers and Authors altogether therof, were Poets, Lawgivers, and in a third rank, Philosophers, who all with one accord joyntly did fet this down as verity, that Gods there be: howbeit, they are at great discord and variance, touching the number, order, nature, essence and power of them. For those whom the Philosophers acknowledge to be gods, are not subject to diseases, nor to age, neither know they what it is to feel pain or endure travel:

*Escape it is do the passage of the fith,  
O, roaring Acheron, and live in joy and mirth.*

And in that regard Philosophers admit not at all the Poetical *Elysium* and *Ara*; that is to say, contentions and reconciliations: they will not allow *Aeides* and *poies*, to be gods, nor confesse them to be the Spots of *Mars*: and in many points do they differ also and dissent from Lawgivers; as *Xenophanes* did, who said unto the Egyptians as touching *Osiris*: If you take him for a mortal man, adore him not; if you account him an immortal god, lament not for him. Again, the Poets and Lawgivers on the other side, deign not, nor will abide so much as to hear those Philosophers who of certain Ideas, numbers, unities, and spirits, make gods; neither can they possibly conceive and understand such doctrine. In this much variety there is and difference in their opinions, about this one point: but like as in old time there were three Sects or Factions in *Athens*; all adverse, opposite and malicious one unto the other, to wit, of the *Paralli*, the *Epacrii*, and *Pedagii*: yet notwithstanding, when they were assembled and met together in a general Council, they gave all their voices and suffrages to *Solon*, and elected him with one common assent their Peace-maker, their Governour, and Lawgiver, as one worthy, without any question or doubts at all, to have conferred upon him the Principality and highest degree of Vertue and Honour: even so, those three Sects differing in opinion about the gods, and giving their voices some on this side, and others on that, and not willing to subscribe one unto another, nor easily receiving that which is otherwise delivered than by themselves, be all of one and the same mind as touching this one god Love; and him the most excellent Poets, the best Lawgivers, and the Principal Philosophers, admit with one voice into the Register and Kalender of the gods, praising and exalting him highly in all their writings. And like as *Alceus* saith, that all the *Mitylenians* with one accord and general consent, chose *Pittacus* for their Sovereigne Prince and Tyrant; even so *Hesiodus*, *Hato*, and *Solon*, bring and conduct Love out of *Helicon*, into the Academy unto us, for our Kings, Prince, and President, crowned and adorned gaily with Garlands and Chaplets of flowers, honoured also, and accompanied with many shackles and couples professing amity and mutual society: not such as *Euripides* saith:

*With fetters bound and tied was,  
Far stronger than of iron and brass.*

Linking them by a cold, heavy, and massive chain of need and necessity, as a colourable veil and pretence to shame and turpitude; but such as are carried by winged *Charitos* unto the most goodly and beautiful things in the world, whereof others have treated better and more at large. When my father had thus said: See you not (quoth *Socrarus*) how being fallen now again, the second time into one and the same matter, you forced your self to turn away from it, I wot not how, avoiding to enter into this holy discourse, and (if I may be so bold to say what I think) thirsting off unjustly to pay the debt, which you have promised us? for having ere while by the way, and against your will made

Kkk

some

Come little mention of the Egyptians and of Plato; you passed them over then, and even so do you at this present: as for that which *I laro* hath written, or rather these Muses here have by him delivered, I know well you will say nothing thereof; although we should request and pray you to do it: but for that you have covertly signified thus much, that the Mythology or fables of the Egyptians accord sufficiently with the doctrine of the Platonicks concerning Love: it were against all reason that you should refuse to discover, reveal, and declare it unto us: and content will we be, in case we may hear but a little of such great and important matters. Now when the rest of the company instantly intreated likewise, my father began again and said: That the Egyptians, like as the Greeks, acknowledge two kinds of Love, the one Vulgar, the other Celestial: they believe also that there is a third beside, to wit, the Sun, and *Venus* above all they have in great admiration; as for us we see a great affinity and resemblance between Love and the Sun; for neither of them both is (as some do imagine) a material fire, but the heat of the one and the other is milde and generative; for that which proceedeth from the Sun, giveth unto bodies nouriture, light, and deliverance from cold Winter; that which cometh from the other worketh the same effects in souls: and as the Sun between two cloude, and after a foggy mist breaketh forth most ardent: even so Love after anger, fallings out, and fits of jealousy; upon attonement and reconciliation made between Lovers, is more pleasant and fervent: and look what conceit fowre have of the Sun, that it is kindled and quenched alternatively, namely, that every Evening it goeth out, and every Morning is lighted again: the same they have of Love, as being mortal, corruptible, and not permanent in one estate: moreover, that habit or constitution of the body which is not exercised and mured to endure both cold and heat, cannot abide the Sun; no more can that nature of the soul which is not well nurtured and liberally taught, be able to brook Love, without some pain and trouble: but both the one and the other is transported out of order, yea and indisposed or diseased alike, laying the weight upon the force and power of Love, and not upon their own impuissance and weakness: this only seemeth to be the difference between them; that the Sun exhibiteth and sheweth unto those upon the earth who have their eye-sight, things beautiful and good indifferently; whereas Love is the light that representeth fair things only, causing lovers to be lookers of such alone, and to turn toward them; but contrariwise to make none account of all others. Furthermore, they that attribute the name of *Venus* to the Earth, are induced thereto by no similitude nor proportion at all; for that *Venus* is divine and Celestial, but the region wherein there is a mixture of mortal with immortal, is of it self feble, dark, and shady, when the Sun shineth not upon it; like as *Venus*, when love is not assitant unto it: and therefore more credible it is, that the Moon should resemble *Venus*, and the Sun Love, rather than any other god; yet are not they therefore all one, because the body is not the same that the soul is; but divers; like as the Sun is sensible and visible; but Love spiritual and intelligible: and if this would not seem a speech somewhat harsh, a man might say, that the Sun doth clean contrary unto Love, for that it diverteth our understanding from the speculation of things intelligible, unto the beholding of objects sensible, in abusing and deceiving it by the pleasure and brightness of the sight, perswading it to seek in it, and about it, as all other things, for truth it self, and nothing else where, being ravished with the Love thereof,

*For that we see it shine so fair  
Upon the earth, amid the air,*

according as *Euripides* saith, and that for want of knowledge and experience of another life, or rather by reason of forgetfulness of those things which Love reduceth into our memory. For like as when we awake in some great and resplendent light, all highly visions and apparitions vanish away and depart, which our soul saw during sleep: even so it seemeth that the Sun doth alsonish the remembrance of such things as here happen and chance in this life; yea, and to bewitch, charm, and enchant our understanding, by reason of pleasure and admiration, so as it forgetteth what it knew in the former life: and verily there is the true and real substance of those things; but here apparitions only, by which our soul in sleep admieth, and embraceth that which is most beautiful, divine, and wonderful: but as the Poet saith;

*About the same are vaine illusions,  
Dreams manifold, and foolish visions.*

And so the mind is perswaded that all things here be goodly and precious, unless haply by good adventure it meet with some divine, honest, and chaste Love for to be her Physitian and savior; which passing from the other World by things corporal, may conduct and bring it to the truth, and to the pleasant filds thereof, wherein is seated and lodged, the perfect, pure, and natural beauty, not sophisticate with any mixture of that which is counterfeit and false; where they desire to embrace one another, and to commune together as good friends, that of long time have had no interview nor intercourse, assisted alwaies by Love, as by a Sextant, who leadeth by the hand those that are professed in some religion, shewing unto them all the holy religions and sacred ceremonies one after another. Now when they be sent hither again, the soul by it self cannot come neer and approach thereto, but by the Organ of the body: and like as, because young children of themselves are not able to comprehend intelligible things; therefore Geometricians put into their hands visible and palpable forms, of a substance incorporeal and impossible, to wit, the representations of Spheres, Cubes, or Square bodies, as also those that be *Dodecaedra*, that is to say, having twelve equal faces: even so the Celestial Love doth present and shew unto us, fair mirrors to behold therein beautiful things, howbeit mortal,

mortal, thereby to admire such as be heavenly and divine; sensible objects, for to imagine thereby those that be spiritual and intelligible. These be the several favours and beauties, fair colours, pleasant shapes, proportions and features of young persons in the flower of their age; which shining and glittering as they do, gently excite and stir up our memory, which by little and little at the first is enflamed thereby: whereby it cometh to passe that some through the folly of their friends and kinsfolks, endeavouring to extinguish this affection and passion of the mind, by force, and without reason, have enjoyed no benefit thereof; but either filled themselves with trouble and smoke, or else running with their heads forwards, into beauly and filthy pleasures, pined away and were consumed. But such as by wife and discreet discourse of reason, accompanied with honest and himself modestly, have taken from Love the burning furious and fiery heat thereof, and left behinde in the soul a splendour and light, together with a moderate heat (and not a boiling agitation thereof, stirring, as one said, a slippery motion of the seed, when as the Atomes of *Epicurus* by reason of their smoothness and tickling are driven together) which causeth a certain dilatation, wonderful generative, like as in a Plant or Tree, which putteth forth leaves, blossoms, and fruit; for that she receiveth nutriment, because the pores and passages of docility, obedience, and facility to be perswaded by entertaining gently good admonitions and remonstrances be open, such I say within a small time pierce farther, and passe beyond the bodies of those whom they Love, entering as far as into their souls, and touch their towardness, their conditions and manners, reclaiming their eyes from beholding the body, and conversing together by the communication of good discourse, behold one another by that means; provided alwaies that they have some mark and token of true beauty imprinted within their understanding; which if they cannot finde, they forsake them, and turn their Love unto others, after the manner of Bees, which leave many green leaves and fair flowers, because they can gather out of them no honey; but look when they meet with any trace, any influence, or semblance of divine beauty smiling upon them, then being ravished with delight and admiration, and drawing it unto them, they take joy and contentment in that which is truly amiable, expetible, and to be embraced of all men.

True it is that Poets seem to write the most part of that which they deliver as touching this god of Love, by way of meriment, and they sing of him as it were in a Mask; and little do they speak in good earnest touching the very truth, whether it be upon judgement and reason, or some divine instinct and inspiration: as for example among other things, that which they give out concerning the generation of this god, in this manner:

*Dame Iris with fair winged shoes,  
and golden yellow hair,  
Conceived by Sir Zephyrus,  
the mightiest god did bear.*

Unless it be so that you also are perswaded by the Grammarians, who hold that this fable was devised to expresse the variety and gay diversity, as it were of sundry colours represented in this passion of Love. For, what else should it respect (quoth *Daphneus*) Listen then said my father, and I will tell you. Forced we are, by manifest evidence to believe, that when we behold the Rain-bow, it is nothing else but a reflexion of raies and beames, which our eyes suffer, when our sight falling upon a cloud somewhat moist but even and smooth withall, and of an indifferent and mean thickness, meeteth with the Sun beames, and by way of repercussion seeth the radiant raies thereof, and the shining light about it, and so imprinteth in our mind this opinion, that such an apparition indeed is settled upon the cloud. And even such is the Sophistical device and subtle invention of love, that in the generous and toward minds of gentle lovers, it causeth a certain reflexion of memory, from beauties appearing here, and so called, in regard of that divine, lovely indeed, blessed and admirable beauty. Howbeit the common sort, pursuing and apprehending the image only thereof, expresse'd in fair persons, as well boys as young damocells, as it were in mirrors, can reap no fruit more certain and assured than a little pleasure mingled with pain amongst which is nothing else as it seemeth, but the error and wandering dizziness or conceit of most folk, who in clouds and shadows seek and hunt after the contentment of their lust and desire: much like unto young children who think to catch the Rainbow in their hands, being drawn and allured thereto by the deceitful shew presented to their eyes. Whereas the true lover indeed, who is honest and chaste, doth far otherwise: for he lieth upon his desire from thence, to a divine, spiritual and intelligible beauty: and whensoever he meeteth with the beauty of a visible body, he useth it as the instrument only of his memory, he embraceth and loveth it: by conversing also with it joyfully, and with contentment, his understanding is more and more inflamed. Such amorous persons as these, whilst they hunt these bodies here, neither rest so sitting still, in a desire and admiration of this clear beauty: nor when they are come thither after their death, return they hither again as fugitives, for to hover and keep about the doors, chambers and cabinets of young married wives, which are nothing else but vaine dreams and illusions appearing to sensual men and women given over-much to voluptuous pleasures of the body, and such as untruly be called loves. For he, who in truth is amorous, and is thither come where true beauties are, and converseth with them, as much as it is possible and lawful for a man to do, is winged anon, mounteth up on high, he is purified and sanctified, continually abiding resident above, dancing, walking and disporting alwaies about his god, until he come back again into the green and fair Meadows of the Moon and of *Venus*, where, being laid a sleep, he beginneth to receive regeneration and new nativity. But this is an higher point

K k k k 2

point and deeper matter, than we have undertaken at this present to discourse upon. To return therefore unto our Love, this property also it hath, like as all other gods, according to *Enripides*,

*To take great joy and much content,  
When men with honours him present.*

And contrawise, he is no lesse displeased, when abuse or contempt is offered unto him. For most kinde and gracious he is unto them that receive and entertain him courteously: and again as curst and shrewd to those who shew themselves stiff-necked and contumacious unto him. For neither *Jupiter* surnamed *Hospitalis*, is so ready to chastise and punish wrongs done unto guests and suppliants, nor *Jupiter Genitalis* so forward to prosecute and accomplish the Curses and Excommunications of Parents, as Love quickly heareth the prayers of those Lovers who are unthankfully requited by their Loves, being the punisher of Proud, rude, and uncivil persons. For what should one speak of *Eucheytus Leucomenides*? I mean, who even at this day is called in *Cyprus*, *Paracypsa*? And peradventure you have not heard of the punishment of *Gorgo* in *Candia*, who was served much after the manner of the said *Paracypsa*, save onely that she was turned into a stone, when she would needs look out at a window, and put forth her body to see the Corps of her Lover interred. But of this *Gorgo* there was sometime one enamoured, whose name was *Asander*, a young Gentleman, honest, and of good Parentage descended, who having been before time of wretched and wealthy Estate, was decayed much, and brought to poverty: howbeit his mind abated not to withall, that he thought himself unworthy of the best fortune that might be. Whereupon he sued unto this *Gorgo* a Kinswoman of his, by way of Marriage, notwithstanding that for her goods and riches she was much sought unto and wooed by many others: and albeit he had divers great and wealthy competitors and rivals, yet he had wrought and gained all the guardians, tutors and nearest kinsfolk of the Damofell to second his suit.

\*\*\*\*\*  
Here there is a great defect and breach in the original.  
\*\*\*\*\*

Moreover those things which are named to be the causes that ingender Love, be not proper and peculiar to the one sex or to the other, but common to them both. For those Images which from without peirce and enter into amorous persons, according to the Epicureans opinion, running to and fro, stirring and tickling the mass of the whole body, gliding and flowing into the generall seed, by certain other dispositions of the atome, it cannot be that they should do so from young Boyes, and impossible altogether from Women: unless also these fair and sacred recollections we call and refer unto that divine, true and celestiall beauty, according to the Platoniques, by the meanes of which remembrances, as with wings, the soul is mounted and carried up. What should hinder then, but that such recollections may passe as well from young Boyes as Damofels or Women? especially when as we see a good nature, chaste and honest, appear joyfully in the flower of favour and beauty, like as, according to *Aristotle*, a straight and well-fashioned shoe, sheweth the good form and proportion of the foot: which is as much to say, as when under beautiful faces, and in neat and fair bodies, they, who are skilfull in the knowledge and judgement of such things, perceive the clear and evident traces of a sincere mind not corrupt nor counterfeit. For it is no reason that a voluptuous person being demanded this question.

*For wanton Love how stands thy mind?  
To males more, or to female kind?*

and answering,

*Both hands are right with me where beauty is,  
Neither of twain to me can come amisse.*

Should seem to have made fit and pertinent answer according to his own carnall concupiscence: and that an honest and generous person should not direct his affections to the beautiful and toward disposition of a youths nature, but to the natural parts that make difference of sex. Certes he that loveth horses and is skilfull in good horsemanship, will love no lesse the generosity and swiftnesse of the horse *Poderus* than of *Achilles* the mare of *Agamemnon*. And the huntsman, taketh not pleasure onely to have good Dogges and Hounds of the male kind, but also keepeth the braches and bitches of *Candie* and *Leconis*. And shall he who loveth the beauty and sweet favour of mankind, not be indifferently affected both to the one sex and to the other, but make a difference, as in divers garments, between the love of Men and Women? And verily Men say, that Beauty is the flower and blossom of vertue. Now to say, that the feminine sex doth not flower at all, nor shew any appearance and token of a good and towardly disposition to vertue, were very absurd: for *Aeschylus* went to the purpose, when he wrote these Verses:

*A Damfellow young, if she have known  
and tasted man once carnally,  
Her eye doth it bewray anon,  
It sparkles fire suspiciously.*

Go to then: are there evident marks and signes to be seen upon the visages of Women, to testifie a malapart, bold, wanton, and corrupt nature; and contrawise, shall there be no lights shining in their faces,

to give testimony of their modesty and pudicity? Or rather, shall there be divers demonstrative evidences in many of them, but yet such as will not stir up and provoke any person to love them? Surely it is neither so nor forthere is no truth nor probability in any of them both: but every thing is common indifferently, as well in the one sex as the other, as we have shewed.

Here also there is another want in the original.

\*\*\*\*\*

O *Daphneus*, let us impugn and confute those reasons, whereupon *Zeuxippus* erewhile discoursed, supposing that Love is all one with Concupiscence, which is disordinate, and leadeeth the Soul into all foolishness and dissolution. And yet I do not think, that he is so perswaded indeed, and of that belief; but for that he hath heard oftentimes odious persons, and such as have no loveliness in them, so to say: of whom, some hold under their hands, and have at command, poor silly Women, who they have gotten for some petty dowries sake, and whom together with their monies they put to managing of domesticall affaires, and to make base, vile, and mechanicall accounts, quarrelling and brawling with them every day; and others again, having more mind and desire to get Children, than to love espoused Wives, like unto Grasshoppers, which cast their seed upon Squills, sea Onions, or such like herbs, having discharged their lust in all the haste upon any body that first comes in their way, and reaped the fruit only that they sought for, bid Marriage farewell, and make no farther account of their wedded Wives, or if they tarry and stay with them still, they regard them no more than their old shoes, making no count either to love them, or to be loved reciprocally of them. And verily *Plato* and *Aristotle*, which signifie, to love and to be loved again dearly, which differ but in one letter, from the verb *philo*, that is to say, to contain and hold together, seem unto me at the first sight, directly to import and shew a mutuall benevolence, by long time and acquaintance tempered with a kind of necessity. But look what person soever love seeth upon in Marriage, so as he be inspired once there with: at the very first, like as it is in *Plato*s Common-wealth, he will not have these words in his mouth, *Mine* and *Thine*: for simply all goods are not common among all friends, but those only who being severed apart in body, conjoin and colligate, as it were perforce, their Souls together, neither willing nor believing that they should be twain but one: and afterwards by true pudicity and reverence one unto the other, whereof Wedlock hath most need. As for that which cometh from without, carrying with it more force of Law, than voluntary obsequence and reciprocally duty, and that in regard of fear and shame,

*A piece of work, that needs the guide,  
Of many bits and helmes beside,*

requireth alwaies to have ready at hand a careful regard among those that are coupled in Matrimony: whereas in true Love there is so much Continency, Modesty, Loyalty, and Faithfulness, that although otherwhile it touch a wanton and lascivious mind, yet it diverteth it from other Lovers, and by cutting off all mallapart boldnesse, by taking down and debasing insolent Pride and untought Stubbornnesse, it placeth in lieu thereof, modest bashfulness, silence and taciturnity: it adorneth it with decent gesture, and seemly countenance, making it for ever after obedient to one lover only. Yee have heard (I am sure) of that famous and renowned Courtisan *Lais*, who was courted and sought unto by so many Lovers, and yee know well, how she inflamed and set on fire all Greece with the Love and longing desire after her; or to say more truly, how two seas thrave about her? how after that the Love of *Hippocleus* the Theffalian had seized upon her, the quit and abandoneth the Mount *Acorimibus*,

*Seated upon the river side,  
Which with great waves by it did glide;*

is one writeth of it; and flying secretly from a great Army as it were of other Lovers, she retired her flight discreetly within *Magalopolis* unto him; where other women upon very sight, envy, and jealousy, in regard of her surpassing beauty, drew her into the Temple of *Venus*, and stoned her to death: whereupon it came, as it should seem, that then at this day they call the said Temple, The Temple of *Venus* the Murderess. We our selves have known divers young Maidens, by condition no better than slaves, who never would yeeld to lie with their Master, as also sundry private persons of mean degree, who refused, yea, and disdained the company of Queens, when their hearts were once possessed with other Love, which as a Mistress had the absolute command thereof. For like as at *Rome*, when there was a Lord Dictator once chosen, all other Officers of State and Magistrates veiled bones, were presently deposed, and layed down their enignes of authority; even so those, over whom Love hath gotten the Mastery and rule, incontinently are quit, freed and delivered from all other Lords and Rulers, no otherwise than such as are devoted to the service of some religious place. And in truth, an honest and virtuous Dame, linked once unto her lawfull spouse by unfeigned Love, will sooner abide to be clipped, claped and embraced by any Wolves and Dragons, than the contraction and bedfellowship of any other man whatsoever but her own Husband. And albeit there

Kkkk 3



\* *happily* be an infinite number of examples among you here, who are all of the \* same Country, and professed Associates in one Idance, with this god Love; yet it were not well done to passe over in silence the accidents which befell unto *Camma* the Galatian Lady. This young Dame being of incomparable Beauty, was married unto a Tetrarch or great Lord of that Country named *Sinnatus*; howbeit one *Sinorix* the mightiest man of all the Galatians was enamoured upon her: but seeing that he could not prevail with the woman neither by force and perswasion, so long as her Husband lived, he made no more ado, but murdered him. *Camma* then having no other Refuge for her pudicity, nor comfort and easement of her hearts grief, made choice of the Temple of *Diana*, where she became a Religious Votary, according to the Custome of that Countrey. And verily, the most part of her time the bestowed in the worship of that goddess, and would not admit speech with any letters, many though they were, and those great Personages, who sought her Marriage: But when *Sinorix* had made means very boldly to ask her the Question, and to solicit her about that point, she seemed not to reject his motion, nor to expostulate and be offended for any thing past, as if for pure Love of her, and ardent Affection, and upon no wicked and malicious mind unto *Sinnatus*, he had been induced to do that which he did: and therefore *Sinorix* came confidently to treat with her, and demand marriage of her: the also for her part came toward the mankindly, gave him her hand, and brought him to the Altar of the said goddess, where after she had made an offering unto *Diana*, by pouring forth some little of a certain drink made of wine and honey, as it should seem empoysoned, which she had put into a Cup, the began unto *Sinorix*, and drank up the one half of it, giving the rest unto the said Galatian for to pledge her. Now when the saw that he had drunk it all off, she fetched a piteous groan, and brake forth aloud into this speech, naming withall her Husband that dead was: My most loving and dear Spouse (quoth she) I have lived thus long without thee in great sorrow and heaviness, expecting this day; but now receive me joyfully (seeing it is my good hap to be revenged for thy death upon this most wicked and ungrateful wretch) as one most glad to have lived once with thee; and to dye now with him. As for *Sinorix*, he was carried away thence in a Litter, and died soon after; but *Camma* having survived him a day, and a night, died by report most resolutely, and with exceeding joy of spirit. Considering then, that there be many such like examples, as well amongst here in Greece, as the Barbarians, who is able to endure those that reproach and revile *Venus*, as if being associate and assistant to Love, she should hinder Amity? whereas contrariwise, the company of male with male, a man may rather term intemperance and disordinate lasciviousness, crying out upon it in this manner.

*Grosse wantonnesse or filthy lust it is,  
Not Venus fair that worketh this.*

And therefore such filths and baggages as take delight to suffer themselves voluntarily thus to be abused against nature, we reckon to be the most flagitious persons in the world; no man repositeth in them any trust, no man doth them any jot of honour and reverence, nor vouchsafeth them worthy of the least part of friendship: but in very truth, according to *Sophocles*,

*Such friends as these, men are full glad  
and joy when they be gone:  
But while they have them, with and pray,  
that they were rid anon.*

As for those who being by nature lewd and naughty, have been circumvented in their youth, and forced to yield themselves and to abide this villany and abuse, all their life after abhor the sight of such wicked wantons, and deadly hate them, who have been thus disposed to draw them to this wickedness; yea and ready they are to be revenged, and to pay them home at one time or other, whensoever means and opportunity is offered: for upon this occasion *Gratulus* killed *Archelaus*, whom in his flower of youth he had thus spoiled: as also *Pytholus* slew *Alexander* the Tyrant of *Phere*. And *Pentander* the Tyrant of *Ambracia* demanded upon a time of the boy whom he kept, whether he wrenot yet with child; which indignity the youth took for to the heart, that he slew him outright in the place: whereas with women, and those especially, that be coupled and wedded wives, they be the earnest pennies as it were, and beginnings of amity, yea, and the very Obligation and Society of the most sacred and holiest Ceremonies. As for filthy pleasure it self, the least thing it is of all other: but the tumultuous Honour, Grace, Dilction and Fidelity that springeth and ariseth from it daily, is highly to be reckoned and accounted of: and therefore neither can the Delphians be noted for folly, in that they term *Venus* *ἄφρονα*, that is to say, a Chariot; by reason of this yoke-fellowship: not *Homer*, in calling this Conjunction of man and wife, *ἑνωσις*, that is to say, Amity and Friendship. *Solon* likewise is deemed by this, to have been an excellent Lawgiver, and most expert in that which concerneth marriage; when he decreed expressly that the Husband should thrice in a month at the least embrace his wife, and company in bed with her; not for carnal pleasures sake (I assure you) but like as Cities and States use, after a certain time between, to renew their Leagues and Confederacies one with another, so he would have that the alliance of marriage should oftentimes be entertained anew by such solace and delectation, after jarres, which other whiles arise and breed by some bone cast between. Yea, but there be many enormous and furious parts, will some one say, that are played by such as are in Love with women. And be there not more (I pray) by those that are enamoured upon boys? do but mark him who uttereth these passionate words:

*So often as these eyes of mine behold  
That bearded youth, that smooth and lovely boy,  
I faint and fall, then wish I him to hold  
Within mine arms, and so to dy with joy:  
And that on Tomb were set where I do lie,  
An Epigram mine end to testifie.*

But as there is a furious Passion of some men doting upon women, so there is as raging an affection in others, toward boys, but neither the one nor the other is Love. Well, most absurd it were to say that women are not provided with other virtues: for what need we to speak of their Temperance and Chastity, of their Prudence, Fidelity and Justice, considering that even Fortitude it self, constant Confidence and Resolution, yea, and Magnanimity, is in many of them very evident? Now to hold that being by nature not indisposed unto other virtues, they are untoward for Amity onely and Friendship (which is an Imputation laid upon them) is altogether beside all Reason. For well known it is, that they be loving to their Children and Husbands: and this their naturall affection, is like unto a fertile field or battell soil, capable of Amity, not unapt for perswasion, nor destitute of the Graces. And like as Poetrie having fitted unto speech Song, Meter and Rhime, as pleasant Spices to aromatize and season the same, by means whereof that profitable instruction which it yieldeth, is more attractive and effectually, as also the danger therein more inevitable: Even so nature, having endued a woman, with an amiable cast and aspect of the eye, with sweet speech, and a beautiful Countenance; hath given unto her great means, if she be lascivious and wanton, with her pleasure to deceive a man, and if she be chaste and honest, to gain the good will and favour of her Husband. *Plato* gave Counsell unto *Xenocrates* an excellent Philosopher, and a worthy Personage otherwise, howbeit in his behaviour exceeding four and austere, to sacrifice unto the Graces: and even so, a man might advise a good Matron and sober Dame, to offer Sacrifice unto Love, for his Propitious favour unto Marriage, and his Residence with her, and that her Husband, by her kind, loving demeanour unto him, may keep home, and not seek abroad to some other, and so be forced in the end to break out into such Speeches as these, out of the Comedie:

*Wretch that I am, and man unhappy I,  
So good a Wife to quit with injury!*

For in Wedlock, to love, is a better and greater thing by far, than to be loved; for it keepeth folk from falling into many faults and slips, or to say more truly, it averteeth them from all those inconveniences, which may corrupt, marre, and ruinate a Marriage: as for those passionate affections, which in the beginning of Matrimoniall Love move fire, somewhat poignant and biting, let me entreat you (good friend *Zenippus*) not to fear, for any exasperation or smart itch that they have, although to say a truth, it were no great harm, if haply by some little wound, you may come to be incorporate and united to an honest woman; like as trees, that by incision are engraffed and grow one within another: for when all is said, is not the beginning of Conception a kind of exclamation? neither can there be a mixture of two things in one, unless they mutually suffer one of the other, and be reciprocally affixed. And verily, the Mathematicall Rudiments which Children be taught, at the beginning trouble them, even as Philosophie at the first is harsh unto young men: But like as this unpleasantness continueth not always with them, no more doth that mordacious stick it among Lovers. And it seemeth, that Love at the first resembleth the mixture of two liquours, which when they begin to incorporate together, boil and work one with another: for even so Love seemeth to make a certain trouble and ebullition; but after a while that the same be once settled, and thoroughly cleaved; it bringeth unto Lovers a most firm and assured habit: and there is properly that mixture and temperance, which is called universall, and through the whole: whereas the Love of Father and friends conversing and living together, may be very well compared to the mixture which is made by the touchings and interlacings of atoms, which *Epicurus* speaketh of; and the same is subject to ruptures, Separations, and Startings asunder: neither can it possibly make that Union which matrimoniall Love and mutual Conjunction doth: for neither do there arise from any other Loves greater pleasures, nor commodities more continually one from another, ne yet is the benefit and good of any other friendship so honourable or expetible, as

*When man and wife keep house with one accord,  
And lovingly agree at bed and board.*

Especially when the Law warranteth it, and the Bond of Procreation common between them, is as firm as there is. And verily nature sheweth, that the gods themselves have need of such Love: as witness the Poets say, that the Heaven loveth the Earth; and the Naturalists hold, that the Sunne like the wife is in Love with the Moon, which every month is in Conjunction with him, by whom also the place is so conceived: In brief, need it not follow necessarily, that the Earth, which is the mother and breeder of men, of living Creatures and all Planets, shall perish and be wholly extinct: when Love, which is the hardest desire, and instinct inspired from God, shall abandon the matter, and the matter likewise fall cease to lust and seek after the Principle, and cause of her Conception?

But to the end that we may not range too far, nor use any superfluous and nugatory words, your self need not do know, that these Pederasties are of all other most uncertain, and such as use them, are wont to stand at loss much therat and say, that the Amity of such boys, is in manner of an egge divided three ways; all

and as for themselves, they resemble the wandering *Nomades* in *Scythia*, who having encamped in the spring time, and pastured where the fields be green and full of flowers, presently dislodge and depart as it were out of an Enemies Country. And yet *Bian* the Sophister was more rough and odious in his words toward such, when he termed the first down or haire appearing upon the face of beautifull youths *Harmotis*, and *Ariflogones*; for that by them Lovers were delivered out of the tyranny of such fair Persons, when they begin once to bud and put forth. But these imputations are not justly charged upon true Lovers. As for that which *Euripides* said, it was pretty, and carried some elegance with it; for as he embraced and kissed fair *Agathon*, even when his Beard began to grow, he said: that of fair persons, the very latter season of the Autumn was lovely and beautifull: But I say more than so, namely, that the loveliness of honest Women passeth not away with Rivels, Wrinkles, and hoary haire, but continueth alwaies even to their Sepulchre and Tombs of memoriall. Again, there are but few couples in that other Sex, of true Loves; But of Men and Women joyned in Wedlock, an infinite number, who to the very last hour have kept most faithfully their Loyalty and hearty Love reciprocally one unto the other. But one example among many other, which befall in our dayes, under *Vespasian* the Emperour, I will relate unto you. *Julius*, he who in *Galatæ* was the Authour of a revolt, and raised a rebellion, had many other complies, (as a Man may well think) of this conspiracy, and among the rest, one *Sabinus* a young Gentleman of an high spirit, and for Wealth and Reputation, a principall person, and of speciall mark: these Men having enterprised a great designment, failed of their purpose; and expecting no other but that they should, according to Justice, suffer due punishment according to their deserts, some killed themselves, other thinking to escape by flight, were apprehended; as for *Sabinus*, all other good and ready meanes he had to save himself, and flee unto the Barbarians in a strange Country: but lately he had taken to Wife, a most vertuous Dame, and every way right excellent, whose name in those parts was \* *Empena*, one would say in the Greek Language, *ἑμπενα*, that is to say, a Princess or great Lady; but her he could not possibly either in his Love endure to forsake, nor find meanes to take with him: whereas therefore he had at an house in the Country certain secret Vaults, and hidden Cellars deep under the ground, where he bestowed his treasure and goods in safety, and those known to two of his enfranchised servants, and no more; the rest of his Household Servitors he discharged and sent away; pretending unto them, that he was resolved to poison himself; and retaining still about him those two trusty freed-men with them he went down into those secret Caves or Vaults digged out of the ground; which done, he sent one of these enfranchised Servants of his, whose name was \* *Martalinus* unto his Wife, to let her understand that he had killed himself with poison, and that the whole house together with his Corps was burnt; for his purpose was, by the unfigured sorrow and mourning of his Wife to make the rumour that ran of his death, the better to be believed; and so it fell out in very deed: for no sooner heard she this news, but with piteous cries and dolefull lamentations, she cast her self upon the ground, where she at that time was, and lay there along for three dayes and three nights together, without meat or drink; which when *Sabinus* heard, fearing lest the Woman would by this meanes work her own death; he commanded the said *Martalinus* to round her secretly in the ear, that he was yet living, and lay hidden within the ground, requesting her withall, that she would continue still a while longer in this mournfull state, bewailing her Husbands death, yet so, as the might not be perceived to counterfeit; and verily this young Lady in all other respects performed the tragically shew of that calamity so artificially, and played her part with such dexterity, that she confirmed the opinions received and divulged of his death: but having a longing desire to see him, she went by night unto him, and came againe the same, so secretly, that no creature perceived it; and thus continued she this haunt from time to time, for the space of seven moneths, keeping company, and lying as one would say in hell under the ground with her husband; during which time, the one day disguised *Sabinus* in his apparel, and what with shaving his Beard, and knitting about his head a kerchief, she ordered the matter so, that he could not be known to them that met him: and upon hope of obtaining pardon, she brought him with her to Rome; with other stuff and carriages of hers: but when she could not speed, she retired again into the Country, and for the most part abode and conversed with him under the ground: howbeit, otherwise between, she would repair to the City, and shew her self unto other Women her friends, and of her familiar acquaintance. But that of all which other seemeth most incredible, she handled the matter so, that it was never perceived she was with child, albeit she washed and bathed ordinarily with other Dames and Wives of the City; for the oyl or ointment wherewith Women use to anoint the hair of their head, for to make the same fair and yellow like burnishing gold, hath a certain property in it to pinguish withall, to incarnate, and so to raise and rarifie the flesh, that it causeth it to be lax, and so to swell and puff up more plump: of this medicinable oyl she made no spare, but used to rub and besmeare the other parts of body, in such sort, as that by their proportionable rising, she hid her great belly, which grew more round and full every day than other. Now when her time was come, she endured the pangs and paines of her Travell in Child-birth, alone by her self, being gon down to her Husband like a Lyoness into her den, and there she suckled at her own Breast secretly, if I may so say, her male Whelps, for two Boy twins she was delivered of; of which two Sons, the one chance to be slain in *Egypt*, the other, not long since, but very lately, was with us at *Delphos*, named after his Father, *Sabinus*. Howbeit, for all this, *Vespasian* caused this Lady to be put to death; and for this Murderer of his he dearly paid, and was punished accordingly: for within a while after, his whole posterity was utterly destroyed & rooted out

\* Or *Empennace*.  
one would say in the Greek Language, *ἑμπενα*, that is to say, a Princess or great Lady; but her he could not possibly either in his Love endure to forsake, nor find meanes to take with him: whereas therefore

\* Or *Martialis*.  
he sent one of these enfranchised Servants of his, whose name was \* *Martalinus* unto his Wife, to let her understand that he had killed himself with poison, and that the whole house together with his Corps was burnt; for his purpose was, by the unfigured sorrow and mourning of his Wife to make the rumour that ran of his death, the better to be believed; and so it fell out in very deed: for no sooner heard she this news, but with piteous cries and dolefull lamentations, she cast her self upon the ground, where she at that time was, and lay there along for three dayes and three nights together, without meat or drink; which when *Sabinus* heard, fearing lest the Woman would by this meanes work her own death; he commanded the said *Martalinus* to round her secretly in the ear, that he was yet living, and lay hidden within the ground, requesting her withall, that she would continue still a while longer in this mournfull state, bewailing her Husbands death, yet so, as the might not be perceived to counterfeit; and verily this young Lady in all other respects performed the tragically shew of that calamity so artificially, and played her part with such dexterity, that she confirmed the opinions received and divulged of his death: but having a longing desire to see him, she went by night unto him, and came againe the same, so secretly, that no creature perceived it; and thus continued she this haunt from time to time, for the space of seven moneths, keeping company, and lying as one would say in hell under the ground with her husband; during which time, the one day disguised *Sabinus* in his apparel, and what with shaving his Beard, and knitting about his head a kerchief, she ordered the matter so, that he could not be known to them that met him: and upon hope of obtaining pardon, she brought him with her to Rome; with other stuff and carriages of hers: but when she could not speed, she retired again into the Country, and for the most part abode and conversed with him under the ground: howbeit, otherwise between, she would repair to the City, and shew her self unto other Women her friends, and of her familiar acquaintance. But that of all which other seemeth most incredible, she handled the matter so, that it was never perceived she was with child, albeit she washed and bathed ordinarily with other Dames and Wives of the City; for the oyl or ointment wherewith Women use to anoint the hair of their head, for to make the same fair and yellow like burnishing gold, hath a certain property in it to pinguish withall, to incarnate, and so to raise and rarifie the flesh, that it causeth it to be lax, and so to swell and puff up more plump: of this medicinable oyl she made no spare, but used to rub and besmeare the other parts of body, in such sort, as that by their proportionable rising, she hid her great belly, which grew more round and full every day than other. Now when her time was come, she endured the pangs and paines of her Travell in Child-birth, alone by her self, being gon down to her Husband like a Lyoness into her den, and there she suckled at her own Breast secretly, if I may so say, her male Whelps, for two Boy twins she was delivered of; of which two Sons, the one chance to be slain in *Egypt*, the other, not long since, but very lately, was with us at *Delphos*, named after his Father, *Sabinus*. Howbeit, for all this, *Vespasian* caused this Lady to be put to death; and for this Murderer of his he dearly paid, and was punished accordingly: for within a while after, his whole posterity was utterly destroyed & rooted out

out from the face of the Earth, so as there remained not one of his race: for there was not in those daies, and during his Empire, a more cruel and inhumane fact committed; neither was there ever any other spectacle that both gods and angels seemed more to abhor and to turn away their eyes from beholding. And yet her Grand eloquence and stout resolutions in her speech, whereby she did exasperate and provoke *Vespasian* most, was such, that it diminished much the pitiful ruth and compassion, that the beholders of the execution had of her: for when she was past hope of obtaining her husbands life, she would needs die in his turn, and required that exchange for him, saying with all, that it was a greater joy unto her, for to live in darkness and under the earth, than to see him Emperour.

And herewith (quoth my father) ended this discourse as touching Love, at what time as they were past unto *Thespiæ*, for then they might perceive coming toward them, faster than with a foot pace, a host of *Pisias* friends, named *Diogenes*; unto whom *Socrates* spake aloud, when he was yet a good way off: You bring us no news I hope *Diogenes* of War? Offe better than so (quoth he) being, at exercise, a Marriage toward; why mend you not your pace therefore, and make haile thither? for the Nuptial sacrifice stayeth only for your coming: At which words (as my father said) all the rest of the company joyed, and were exceeding glad only *Zeuxippus* shewed himself mal-content, and not well pleased; for he could not dissimble it: howbeit he was the first man that approved the act of *Imenodora*, as good and lawful: and even now he willingly set a Garland upon his own head, and put on a white Wedding robe, marching before all the company through the Market-place, to render thanks giving unto the god Love, for this Marriage. Well done (quoth my father then) I swear by *Jupiter*: goe we on all hands away, and let us be gone; that we may laugh and make our selves merry with this man, and withall adore and worship the god: for evident it is, that he taketh joy in that which hath been done, and is present with his favour and approbation to grace the Wedding.

## Of the Face appearing within the Rundle of the Moon.

### The Summary.

His Dialogue is defective in the beginning thereof. In it are brought in Sylla and Pharnaces, with some others, disputing with Plutarch, as touching one point of natural Philosophy, worthy to be considered and read over and over again, by those that take delight in such pleasant speculations meet to good men to be exercised in. The weight of this matter concerneth the Globe of the Moon, and toucheth principally this notable accident of the face which appeareth therein: by occasion whereof, divers questions depending upon the first and principal, are discussed and resolved by our Author, according as he hath comprised and understood them. But here is the mischief in this discourse, like as in many others of this second Tome, that it is not only headlesse, but maimed also and dismembred otherwise; and yet the Translator and the Author especially hath with great dexterity laid the pieces together, so as the breaches can hardly be seen, and so a man looketh very near. Now the principal matters handled here, be these that follow. After that Plutarch had refuted three opinions concerning the face in the Moon, and brought in one Lucius, maintaining his position of the Academiques, who presuppose that the Moon is terrene and consisteth of an earthly substance, he entereth into dispute against those who attribute one Centre unto the World and the Earth, labouring to confirm his own opinion: but divers arguments marked in their order: which he handleth with such a grace, that yet a man may be without, how natural Philosophy destitute of that light of Gods word (which by Moses in the first chapter of Genesis is refulgent and cleareth infinite disputations and controversies in these matters) is in a manner blinde, and stumbleth many times most grossly and absurdly. Moreover, according to the train of word and speech, which commonly in such conferences follow one upon another, they treat of the Centre and Motion of the Universal World, of the proportion thereof, and the principal parts of it, of the illumination of the Moon, of reflexions and mirours, of Eclipses, and the shadow of the Earth. Item, whether the Moon be a Globe of fire, or of what else? What is her colour? From whence proceedeth and how cometh this resemblance of a face which is observed in her? Whether she be inhabited or no? As also of her Nature and Effects. Toward the end he intermedleth a fable fetched from the Poets and ancient Natural Philosophers, for to mollifie and make more probable and credible that which had been delivered as touching those that dwell within the Moon. In sum, this Treatise giveth good proof of the quick and pregnant wit of our Author, who could enter into, and peirce through all things: whereof if he have not alwaies attained unto the truest knowledge, we should rather by all likelihood blame the iniquity of long time, which hath not permitted us to have these Books entire and whole, than the insufficiency of so deep a Clerk. To conclude, this ought to invite those that sound and search into the secrets of Nature, to joyne with that which the modern Philosophers of our time are able to write slightly and at ease of such matters, what hath been delivered by the ancients, who indeed have made the overture unto those who succeeded after them: to the end that three might be drawn out of them all, a certain firm resolution, which raiseth us up above the Moon, and all other Celestial bodies, unto the only God and sole Creator of so many admirable works, thereby to acknowledge, serve and praise him according as his Omnipotent greatness doth deserve.

## Of the face appearing in the Rundle of the Moon.

WELL, thus much said *Sylla*, for it accorded well to my speech, and depended thereupon: but I would very willingly before all things else know, what need is there to make such a preamble for to come unto these opinions, which are so current and rise in every mans mouth, as touching the face of the Moon. And why not (quoth I) considering the difficulty of these points which have driven us thither? for like as in long maladies, when we have tried ordinary remedies, and usual rules of diet, and found no help thereby, we give them over in the end, and betake our selves to lustral sacrifices and expiations, to amulets or preservatives for to be hanged about our neck, and to interpretations of dreams: even so in such obscure questions, and difficult speculations, when the common and ordinary opinions, when usual and apparent reasons will not serve nor satisfie us, necessarily it is to assay those which are more extravagant, and not to reject and despise the same, but to enchant or charm our selves, as one would say, with the discourses of our ancients, and try all means for to finde out the truth: for at the very first encounter you see, how absurd he is and intollerable, who saith, that the form or face appearing in the Moon, is an accident of our eye-sight, that by reason of weakness giveth place to the brightness thereof, which accident we call the dazzling of our eyes, not considering withal, that this should befall rather against the Sun, whose light is more resplendent, and beams more quick and piercing, according as *Empedocles* himself in one place pleasantly noteth the difference, when he saith:

*The Sun that shines so quick and bright,  
The Moon with dimme and stony light:*

for so he expresseth that milde, amiable, pleasant, and harmlesse visage of the Moon: and afterwards rendereth a reason, why those, who have obscure and feeble sight, perceive not in the Moon any different form or shape, but unto them her Circle shineth plain, even, uniform and full round about; whereas they who have more quick and piercing eyes, do more exactly observe the proportion and lineaments, and discern better the impression of a face, yea, and distinguish more perfectly and evidently the several parts: for in mine opinion it would fall out clean contrary, in case the weakness of the eye being overcome, causeth this apparition, that where the patient eye is more feeble, there the said appearance and imagination should be more expresse and evident: furthermore, the inequality therein, doth fully every way confute this reason; for this face or countenance is not to be seen in a continuant and confused shadow: But *Agessanax* the Poet, right elegantly depaitheth in some sort the same, in these words:

*All round about environed  
With fire she is illumined:  
And in the middes there doth appear,  
Like to some boy, a visage clear:  
Whose eyes to us do seem in view,  
Of colour grayish more than blew:  
The browes and forehead, tender seem,  
The cheeks all reddish one would deem.*

For intrud dark and shadowy things, compassed about with those that are shining and clear are driven downward, and the same do rise again reciprocally, being by them repulsed, and in one word, as interlaced one within another, in such sort as they represent the form of a face lively and naturally depicted: and it seemeth that there was great probability in that which *Clearcus* said against your *Aristotle*. For this *Aristotle* of yours, though he familiarly conversed with that ancient *Aristotle*, perverted and overthrew many points of the Peripateticks doctrine. Then *Apollonides*, taking upon him to speak, demanded, what opinion this might be of *Aristotle*, and upon what reason it was grounded. Surely (quoth I) it were more meet for any man else to be ignorant hereof, than for you, considering that it is grounded upon the very fundamental principles of Geometry. For this man affirmeth that the thing, which we call the face in the Moon, are the images and figures of the great Ocean, represented in the Moon (as in a mirror: for the circumference of a round circle, being reflected back every way, is wont to deceive the sight in such things as are not directly seen. And the full Moon her self is, for evenesse, smoothnesse and lustre, the most beauti-

beautiful and purest mirror in the world. Like as therefore ye hold, that the Rainbow appeareth (when our eyght is reflected back upon the Sun) in a cloud, that hath gotten smoothnesse from what liquid, and a consistence withal; even so (quoth he) a man may see in the Moon the great Ocean, with-out, not in the very place where it is situate: but from whence the reflexion by touching the light reverberate and sent back, maketh a light and apparition thereof. Which *Agessanax* hath said in another place, after this manner,

*The figure of the Ocean  
is just resembled there  
In flaming mirror, when great waves  
it doth against it rear.*

*Apollonides* then, being perswaded that it was so; a singular opinion belive me (quoth he) this was of his, and when all is said, newly and after a strange manner devised by a man, who may be thought bold and confident enough in his projects, howbeit full of wit and a great Cleare wit. But how did *Clearcus* refute the same? First and foremost (quoth I) if the main Sea or Ocean be all of one nature, then it must needs be that the current thereof is all one uniform and continuant: but the appearance of those black and dim obscurities which are observed in the face of the Moon, is not even and continuant, but there be certain isthmes or partitions between clear and bright, which divide and separt that which is shady and dark. Therefore seeing each part is distinct, and hath proper bounds and limits apart, the conjunctions and approachments of the clear to that which is dark, making a semblance of high and low, do expresse and resemble the similitude of a figure, with eyes and lips; so that of necessity we are to suppose, that there be many Oceans and main Seas, distinguished by the isthmes of firm Lands between: which is a manifest untruth. And admit that there is but one continued Sea for all, it is not credible that the image thereof should appear so dilapidate and distracted by pieces: and as for this point, the surer way is, and lesse dangerous, to demand, than to affirm ought in your presence; namely, whether the habitable Earth being equal in length and breadth, it be possible, that all the light reflected and sent back by the Moon, should equally touch the whole Ocean and all those that sail therein, and even such as seem to dwell in it, as the Britains do: seeing that your selves have maintained that the whole Earth, in proportion to the Globe or Sphere of the Moon, is no more than a very prick. As for this verily (quoth I) it is your part to regard and consider: and true it is that as touching the reverberation and reflexion of the light from the Moon, it belongeth neither to you nor to *Hipparcus*. And yet assure you, my good friend *Lamprias* (quoth *Apollonides*) there be many Naturalists, who hold it not good to affirm with *Hipparcus* that our sight is so driven back; but they suppose and affirm, that it is more like and probable that it hath a certain temperature and obeyant compact structure, than such beatings and repercussions as *Epicurus* imagineth the Atomes have. Neither do I believe that *Clearcus* would have us to suppose, that the Moon is a massive and weighty body, but Celestial and lightfomest against which you say that the refraction of our eye-sight should reach: and therefore all this reflexion, and reverberation falleth to the ground and comes to nothing. But if I should be urged, and intreated by him to receive and admit the same, I would ask him the question, how it comes to pass, that this image of the Sea is to be seen only in the body of the Moon, and not in any of the other Stars? For by all likelihood and probability, our sight should suffer the same equally in all, or just in none at all. But I pray you (quoth I, casting mine eyes upon *Lucius*) call to mind again that which was first delivered of our part, and by those of our side. Nay rather I am afraid (quoth *Lucius*) lest we may be thought to offer over much injury unto *Pharnaces*, if we should so pass over the Stoicks opinion unconfuted, and without opposing any thing against it. Why then reply somewhat upon this man (quoth I) who holdeth that the Moon is a whole mixture of the air, and of some milde fire, and then afterwards saith, that like as in a calm, there happeneth other whiles a little horror or winde, that rumbleth and bloweth upon the Sea, even so the air thereby becometh black, and thereupon is made a certain resemblance and form of a visage. Courteously done of you *Lucius* (quoth I) thus to clad and cover with fair words and good termes so absurd and false an opinion. But so did not our friend, but spake the plain truth, and said that the Stoicks disguised the Moons face making it black and blew, and filling it with dark spots and clouds, and withal invoking her by the name of *Minerva* and *Diana*, and in the mean while making her a lump as it were of paste, consisting of dark air and a fire of Charcole, that cannot burn out, nor yield light of it self, but having a body hard to be judged and known, ever smoaking and always burning like to those lightnings which by the Poets are called, lightfelle and smoaky. But that a fire of coales, such as they would have that of the Moon to be, continueth not long nor can so much as subsist, if it meet not with some solid matter, which may hold it in and withal feed and nourish it; I suppose that they know better, who in meriment say that *Vulcan* is lame and doth halt, than these Philosphers do: for that indeed fire cannot go forward without wood or fewel, no more than a lame cripple without his staff or crutches. If then the Moon be fire, how cometh it to have so much air in it? For this Region aloft which moveth round, doth not consist of air, but of some other more noble substance, which is able to subtilize and set on fire every thing beside. But in case it be afterwards engendered in it, how is it that it perisheth not by being changed and transfused by the fire into a celestial substance, but maintaineth it self, and continueth together as it were, cohabiting with the fire so long, like unto a spike or nail set fast continually in the same parte, and fitted thereto? For being rare as it is, and diffused, meet it were that it should not so abide and continue, but be dissipated and

and refolved; and to grow compact and thick it is impossible, so long as it is mixed with fire, having no earth nor water; which are the two only Elements whereby the aire will gather to a confluence and thicknesse. Moreover, the swiftnesse and violence of motion, is wont to enflame the aire that is within Stones, yea, and in Lead, as cold as it is: much more then, that which is in fire, being whirled about, and turned w<sup>th</sup> great celerity and impetuosity: for in this regard they are offended with *Empedocles*, for that he made the Moon congealed aire, in manner of Haile, and included within a Sphere of fire: and yet themselves say, that the Moon being a Sphere or Globe of fire, doth enclose and contain the aire dispersed to and fro; and that the same hath neither ruptures nor concavities, ne yet any profundities, which they admit who will have the Moon to be of earth, but forsooth superficially only, and as it were settled upon the imboffed and swelling backe thereof: which is against all reason, if it be to endure, and cannot possibly be, in case we give credit to that which we do see in full Moon: for divided it ought not to be, and separat apart, being black and dark, but either being hidden, to be altogether darkened, or else to be illuminate when the Moon is overpread by the Sun. For heretobeneath with us, the aire that is in deep pits and low caves of the earth, where the Sun-beames never come, remaineth dark and shady, without any light at all: but that which is spread about the earth, is clear, and of a lightsome colour; for by reason of the rarity thereof, it is very easie to be transmuted into every quality and faculty; but principally by the light, which if it never so little touch it, as they say, and lay hold of it, you shall see it inconceivably changed, and light throughout. This very reason therefore seemeth greatly to help and maintain the opinion of them who drive the aire into it: wot not what deep vallies and pits within the Moon; as also to confute you, who mingle and compound I know not how, her Sphere of fire and aire; for impossible it is that there should remain any shadow or obscurity in the superficies thereof, when the Sun with his brightnesse doth clear and illuminate whatsoever part of the Moon we are able to discern, and cut out with our eye-sight. And as I spake these words, even before I had made an end of my speech: See (quoth *Pharnaces*) the ordinary call of the Academy, how it is practised upon us, in that they bustle themselves evermore, and spend time in all their discourses to speak against others, but never allow the discussing and reproving of that which they deliver themselves: but if any happen to confer and dispute with them; they must plead in their own defence alwaies, and not be allowed to reply or come upon them with any accusations: for mine own part, you shall not draw me this day to render a reason of such matters as you charge upon the Stoicks, nor to speak in their behalf, before I have called you to an account, for thus turning the world upside down, as you do. Hereat *Lucius* laughings; And very well content am I good Sir, (quoth he) so to do, provided alwaies, that you accuse us not of impiety; like as *Aristarchus* thought that the Greeks ought to have called *Cleantes* the Samian into question, judiciously and to condemne him for his impiety and Atheisme, as one that shook the very foundations of the world to overthrow all, in that the man endeavouring to save and maintain those things which appear unto us above, supposed the heaven to stand still as immovable, and that it was the earth that moved round by the oblique Circle of the Zodiac, and turned about the own Axielree. As for us, we speak of our selves, and in our own behalf. But they, my good friend *Pharnaces*, who suppose that the Moon is earth, why do they turn the World upside down, more than you; who place the Earth here hanging in the aire, being far greater than the Moon, as the Mathematicians take their measure, in the accidents of Eclipses, and by the passages of the trajections of the Moon through the shadow of the Earth, collecting thereby the Magnitude thereof, and what space it taketh up? for surely the shadow of the Earth is lesse than it self, by reason that it is cast by a greater light. Now that the said shadow is streight, and pointed upward toward the end, *Homer* himself was not ignorant, but signified as much, when he called the night *σκιαν*, for the sharpnesse at the point of the said shadow; and yet the Moon as it appeareth in her Eclipses, being caught and comprehended within the compasse of that shadow, hath much ado to get out of it, by going forward in length, thrice as much as her own bignesse cometh to. Consider then, how many times greater must the Earth needs be than the Moon, if it be so, that the shadow which it casteth, where it is thickest and narrowest, is thrice as much as the Moon. But ye are afraid lest the Moon should fall, if the were away to be the Earth: (for it may be haply, that *Ashtylus* hath sealed you a warrant, and secured you for the Earth, when he said thus of *Atlas*:

*He standeth like a pillar strong and sure,  
From earth to heaven above that reaches height:  
To bear on shoulders twain, he doth endure  
A masse burden and newly weight.)*

If under the Moon there run and be spread a light and thin aire, not firm and sufficient for to sustain a solid masse: whereas according to *Pindarus*:

*To bear the earth there stand most puissant  
Columns and pillars of hard Diamant.*

And therefore *Pharnaces* for himself is out of all fear, that the Earth will fall; marry he pittieeth those who are directly and plumb under the course of the Moon, and namely the Ethiopians, and those of *Tarphane*, lest so weighty a masse should tumble down upon their heads. And yet the Moon hath one good meane and help to keep her from falling, to wit, her very motion and violent revolution, like unto those Bullets or Stones, or whatsoever weighs be put within a sling, they are sure

sure enough from slipping or falling out, so long as they be violently swong and swirled about. For every body is carried according to the natural motion thereof, if there be no other cause to empeach or turn it aside out of course: which is the reason that the Moon moveth not, according to the motion of her poise, considering the inclination thereof downward, it stayed and hindered by the violence of a circular revolution. But peradventure more cause there were to marvel, if the should stand altogether as the earth, immoveable: whereas now the Moon hath this great cause to empeach her, for not tending downward higher. As for the Earth, which hath no other motion at all to hinder it; great reason there is, that according to that only weight of the own, it should move downward, and there settle; for more heavy it is than the Moon, not so much in this regard, that greater it is, but more, for that the Moon by reason of heat and adulation of fire, is made the lighter. In brief, it appeareth by that which you say, if it be true that the Moon be fire, it hath need of earth, or some other matter to rest upon and cleave unto, for to maintain, nourish, and quicken still the power that it hath: for it cannot be conceived or imagined, how fire should be preferred without fuel, or matter combustible. And you yourselves affirm, do ye not? that the earth abideth firm and sure, without any base or pedestal to sustain and hold it up? Yes verily (quoth *Pharnaces*) being in the proper and natural place, which is the very midst and centre. For this is it whereto all heavy and weighty things do tend, incline, and are carried to, from every side, and about which they cling, and be counterpoized: but the upper region throughout, if haply there be any terrestrial and heavy matter, by violence first up thither, repelleth and casteth it down again with force incontinently, or to speak more truly, leteth it go and fall, according to the own natural inclination, which is to tend and settle downward.

For the answer and refutation whereof, I willing to give *Lucius* some reasonable time to summon his wits together, and to think upon his reasons: and calling unto *Theon* by name, Which of the Tragical Poets was it (*Theon*, quoth I) who said that Physicians

*Do bitter medicines into the body pour,  
When bitter choler they mean to purge and scour?*

And when he made me answer that it was *Sophocles*. Well (quoth I) we must permit them so to do unto necessity: but we ought not to give ear unto Philosophers, if they would maintain strange paradoxes, by other positions as absurd, or to confute admirable opinions, devise others much more extravagant and wonderful; like as these here who broach and bring in a motion, forsooth, tending unto a middle, wherein, what absurdity is there not? Hold not they that the earth is as round as a ball, and yet we see how many deep profundities, haughty subtilities and manifold inequalities it hath? affirm not they that there be antipodes dwelling opposite one unto another, and those sticking, as it were, to the sides of the earth with their heels upward, and their heads downward, all arse verse, like unto these Woodworms or Cats which hang by their sharp claws? Would not they have even us also that are here, for to go upon the ground not plumb upright, but bending or enclining sidelong, reeling and staggering like drunken folk? Do they not tell us tales, and would make us believe, that if ban and masses of iron weighing a thousand talents a piece, were let fall down into the bottom of the earth, when they came once to the middle centre thereof, will stay and rest there, albeit nothing else came against them, nor sustained them up? And if peradventure by some forcible violence they should pass beyond the said midst, they would soon rebound back thither again of their own accord? Say not they that if a man should saw off the trunks or ends of beams on either side of the earth, the same would never settle downward still throughout, but from without forth fall both into the earth, and so equally meet one another, and cling together about the heart or centre thereof? Suppose not they, that if a violent stream of water should run downward fill into the ground, when it met once with the very point or centre in the midst, which they hold to be incorporal, it would then gather together, and turn round in manner of a whirlpool, about a pole, waving to and fro there continually, like one of these pendent buckets, and, as it hangeth, wag incessantly without end? And verily some of these assertions of theirs are so absurd, that no man is able to enforce himself to imagine in his minde, although falsely, that they are possible. For this indeed is to make high and low all one: this is to turn all upside down: that those things, which be come as far as to the midst, shall be thought below and under: and what is under the middle, shall be supposed above and aloft; in such sort, as that if a man, by the sufferance and consent of the earth, stood with his navel just against the middle and centre of it, he should by this means have his head and his heels both together standing upward; and if one should come and dig through the place beyond that part of him which was above, shall in the digging be drawn downward, and that which was beneath be cast upward both at once; and if there may be imagined another to go clean contrary unto him, their feet which were opposite one unto the other, should nevertheless be said and be indeed both together, beneath and above. Thus they both carrying upon their backs, and also drawing after them, not I assure you a box or little bagger, but a fardle and pack, I swear unto you, of Jesters boxes full of so many, and so gross paradoxes and absurdities, wherewith they play pats and repays, yet they say for all this, that others erred, who place the Moon which they hold to be earth, above, and not where the midst and centre of the world is. And yet if every ponderous body, incline to the same place, and bendeth from all sides, and on

every part to the midst thereof, certainly the earth shall not appropriate and challenge unto it self weighty masses as parts thereof, because it is the middle of the world, more than in regard it is whole and entire : and the gathering together of heavy bodies about it, shall be no sign nor argument to shew that it is the middle of the world, but rather to prove and testify, that these bodies which have been taken and pulled from it, and return again, have a communication and conformity in nature with the earth. For like as the Sun converteth into it self the parts whereof it is composed, even so the earth receiveth and beareth a stone, as a part appertaining unto it, in such sort as in time every one of these things is incorporate and united with it. And if it chance that there be some other body which from the beginning was not allotted and laid unto the earth, nor plucked from it, but had apart from it, a proper confidence and peculiar nature of the own, as they may say the Moon had, what should let, but it may abide severally by it self, compacted and bound close together in all the proper parts thereof? For hereby, is not shewed demonstratively, that the earth is the middle of the whole world; and the conglobation of weighty bodies here, and their concretion which the earth, declareth unto us the manner how it is probable, that the parts which be there gathered to the body of the Moon, may there also remain. But he who driveth all earthly and ponderous things into one place, ranging them altogether, and making them the parts of one and the same body, I marvel why he attributeth not in like manner the same force and constraint unto light substances, but suffereth so many conglobations of fire to be aspart and diffused asunder, neither can I see the reason why he should not bring all the stars into one, and think that there ought to be one entire body of all those substances that fly upward, and are of fiery nature. But you Mathematicians (friend *Pollutius*) affirm that the Sun is distant from the *Primum Mobile*, and highest cope of Heaven, infinite thousands of miles : and after him, that the day star *Venus* and *Mercury*, with the other Planets, which being situate under the fix'd stars, and distant one from another, by great intervals and spaces between, do make their several revolutions : mean while, you do not think, that the world as it were, unto heavy and terrestrial bodies, a great and large place in it, and a distance one from another. But see what a ridiculous thing it were, to deny the Moon to be earth, because it is not seated in the lowest place of the world; and wishal to affirm it to be a star so far remote from the firmament and *Primum Mobile*, even a huge number of *Stadia*, as if it were plunged low into some deep gulf : for so far under other stars it is, as no man can express, and even you Mathematicians want numbers to reckon and sum the distance : and the seemeth after a sort to touch the very earth, making her revolution as the doth, so near unto the tops of high mountains, leaving behind her (as *Empedocles* saith) the very prints and tracks of her Chariot wheels upon them : for often times the sun passeth not the shadow of the earth, which is very short, and reacheth not high, by reason of the excessive greatness of the Sun that shineth upon it : and the seemeth to walk her footsteps so near unto the upper face of the earth, and in a manner within the arms of it, that the obscurity and hidness from us the light of the Sun, because the mounteth not above this shadowy, terrestrial and dark Region like unto the night, which is (as one would say) the very fringe and marches allotted to the earth. And therefore a man may be bold to say, that the Moon is within the limits and confines of the earth, feeling withal, that darkened and shadowed it is by the high crests and tops of mountains therein. But to leave all other stars, as well fixed as wanderings, consider the demonstrations of *Aristarchus*, in his Treatise of *Magnitudes and Distances*, that the distance of the Sun from us is more than that of the Moon, above eighteen fold, but under twenty : and he verily who raiseth the Moon highest, saith that she is from us, six and fifty times as far as is the centre of the earth : the distance whereof is forty thousand *fadja*. By their calculation who keep a mean, and according to this supposition, the Sun ought to be distant from the Moon more than four thousand and thirty *fadja* ten thousand times told : so far (I say) is she off from the Sun, in regard of her ponderosity, and so near approacheth she unto the earth : so that if, by places, we ought to distinguish of substances, the region and portion of the earth challengeth the Moon, and in regard of her proximity and vicinage unto it, she ought by rights to be reckoned and enrolled among the natures, affairs, and bodies terrestrial. Neither shall we do amiss in my conceit, if having given unto these bodies (that are said to be aloft) so large a space and distance, we allow also to those beneath, such a race and spacious room to run in, as is from the earth to the Moon : for as he is not moderate nor tolerable, who callth the upper superficies onely and cope of the heaven *æther*, that is to say, aloft, or superior ; and all that rest *æra*, that is to say, beneath ; so he who termeth the earth, or rather the centre of it onely, *æra*, that is to say, below or inferior, is not to be endured ; considering that the huge vastity of the world may afford, even in this region beneath, such a competent space as is meet and convenient for motion. For if one would maintain, that all above the earth is immediately to be counted high and aloft ; another presently will come upon him with this contradiction, and say, that he may as well hold, that whatsoever is beneath the *Primum Mobile*, or starry firmament, ought to be called Below. In sum, how is the earth called, The middle? and whereof is it the middle? for the universal frame of the world, called *æra*, is infinite; and this infinite which hath neither head nor foot, how can it in reason have a navil? for even that which we call the midst of any thing, is a kinde of limitation; whereas infinity is a meer privation of all limits and bounds. As for him who saith, it is not in the midst of that universality, but of the world, he is a pleasant man, if he think not withal, that the world it self is subject to the same doubts and difficulties : for the said universal frame leaveth not unto the

very

very world a middle, but is without a certain seat, without assured footing, moving in a voidness infinite, not into some one place proper unto it : and if haply it should meet with some any other cause of stay, and so abide still, the same is not according to the nature of the place. And as much may we conjecture of the Moon, that by the means of some other foul or nature, or rather of some difference, the earth continueth firm beneath, and the Moon moveth. Furthermore you see, how they are not ignorant of a great error and inconvenience : for if it be true, that whatsoever is without the centre of the earth, it skills not how, is to be counted Above and aloft, then is there a part of the world to be reckoned Below or Beneath ; but as well the earth it self, as all that is upon it, shall be above and aloft ; and to be short, every body near or about the centre, must go among those things that are aloft : neither must we reckon any thing to be under or beneath, but one prick or point, which hath no body : and the same forsooth must make head, and stand in opposition necessarily, against all the whole nature besides of the world ; in case, according to the course of nature, *æra*, and *æther*, that is to say, above and beneath, be opposite. And not onely this absurdity will follow, but also all heavy and ponderous bodies must needs lose the cause, for which they bend and incline hither : for, body there will be none, toward which it should move : And as for this prick or centre that hath no body, there is no likelihood, neither would they themselves have it so, that it should be so pulsatant and forcible, as to draw to it, and retain about it, all things. And if it be found unreasonable and repugnant to the course of nature, that the world should be all above, and nothing beneath, but a term or limit, and the same without body, without space and distance ; then this that we say, is yet more reasonable, namely, that the Region beneath, and that above, being parted distinctly one from another, have nevertheless each of them a large and spacious room to come themselves in. But suppose (if it please you) it were against nature, that terrestrial bodies should have any motion in heaven ; let us consider gently and in good terms, not after a Tragical manner, but mildly, This provech not by-and-by, that the Moon is not earth, but rather, that earth is in some place, where naturally it should not be : for the fire of the Mountain *Ætna*, is verily under the ground, against the nature of it ; howbeit, the same creatcheth not thereto to be fire. The wind contained within leather bottles, is of the own nature light and given to mount upward, but by force it cometh to be there, where naturally it ought not to be. Our very soul is felt (I beseech you in the name of *Jupiter*) is it not against nature detained within the body ; being light, in that which is heavy ; being of a fiery substance in that which is cold, as ye your selves say ; and being invisible, in that which is gross and palpable? do we therefore deny, that the soul is within the body, that it is a Divine substance under a gross and heavy mass, that in a moment it passeth thowout heaven, earth and sea : that it pierceeth and entereth within flesh, nerves and marrow ; and finally, is the cause together with the humors of infinite passion? And even this *Jupiter* of yours, such as you imagine and depaint him to be, is he not of his own nature a mighty and perpetual fire? howbeit, now he submitteth himself, and is pliable ; subject he is to all forms, and apt to admit divers mutations. Take heed therefore, and be well advised (good Sir) lest that in transferring and reducing every thing to their natural place, you do not so Philosophize, as that you will bring in a dissolution of all the world, and set on foot again that old quarrel and contention among all things which *Empedocles* writeth of; or, to speak more to the purpose, beware you raise not those ancient Titans and Gyautes, to put on arms against nature : and so consequently endeavor to receive and see again, that fabulous disorder and confusion, whereby all that is weighty, goeth one way, and whatsoever is light, another way aparts,

Where neither lightsome countenance  
of Sun, nor earth all green  
With herbs and plants, admired is,  
nor surging sea is seen,

According as *Empedocles* hath written : wherein the earth feeleth no heat, nor the water any windes ; wherein there is no ponderosity above, nor lightness beneath ; but the principles and elements of all things be by themselves solitary, without any mutual love or dilection between them ; not admitting any society or mixture together, but avoiding and turning away one from the other ; moving apart by particular motions, as being disdainful, proud, and carrying themselves in such sort ; as all things do where no god is, as *Plato* saith, that is, as those bodies are affected wherein there is no understanding nor soul, until such time as by some divine providence there come into nature a desire ; and Society, *Venus* and Love be there engendered, according to the saying of *Empedocles*, *Permetides* and *Hædæus* : to the end, that changing their natural places, and communicating reciprocally their gifts and faculties ; some driven by necessity to move, other bound to rest ; they be all forced to a better state, remitting somewhat of their power, and yielding one to another, they grow at lengths unto one accord, harmony and society. For if there had not been any other part of the world against nature, but that each one had been both in place, and for quality, as it ought naturally to be, without any change or transposition, so that there had been nothing at the first wanting, greatly doubt we what wherein was the work of divine providence ; or whereupon it is, that *Jupiter* was the father, creator, and maker. For in a camp or field, there would be no need of a man who is expert and skillful in

LIII 2

ranging





His Rays aloft the turneth clean side,  
That to the earth beneath they cannot wend:  
The earth is self the doth obscure and hide,  
So far as she in compass doth extend.

As if this light of the Sun fell upon night and darkness, and not upon another Star. And whereas Ptolemaeus saith, that in regard of the thickness and depth of the Moons body, the light of the Sun cannot through her pierce, as far as unto us, this is manifestly convinced as untrue. For the ayr as infinite as it is, and deeper by many degrees than the Moon, is nevertheless illuminated and lightened all over, and throughout by the Sun. It remaineth therefore, that according to the opinion of Empedocles, the Moon-light which appeareth unto us, cometh by the reflexion and repercussion of the Sun-beams. And hereupon it is, that the same is not with us hot and bright, as of necessity it would be, if it did proceed either from the inflammation or commixtion of two lights. But like as the Refraction or Reverberation of a Voyce, doth cause an Echo, or Resonance more obscure than is the Voyce it self, as is well pronounced; and as the raps, that shot, rebounding back again, doth give, are more milde and soft,

Even so the Sun-beams when they beat  
Upon the Moon in compass great;

yield a weak and feeble reflexion of reflexion, as one would say of light, the force thereof being much abated and resolved by the refraction and reflexion. Then Sylla: Certes, great probability this carrieth with it, that you have delivered: But the most forcible objection that is made against this Position, how think you, is it in any ways mitigated and mollified? or hath our friend here passed it over quite with silence? Whereby speak you this (quoth Lucius?) what opposition mean you? or is it the doubt and difficulty about the Moon when she appeareth the one half? Even the very same (quoth Sylla) for there is some reason, considering that all reflexion is made by equal angles, that when the Half-Moon is in the midst of Heaven, the light should not be carried from her upon the earth, but glance and fall beyond the earth: for the Sun being upon the Horizon, toucheth with his rays the Moon, and therefore being reflected and broken equally, they must light upon the opposite bound of the Horizon, and so not send the light hither; or else there shall ensue a great distortion and difference of the angle, which is impossible. Why, good Sir (quoth Lucius) I dare assure you, this hath not been overpassed, but explained already: and with that, casting his eye as he spake, upon Menelaus the Mathematician: I am amazed (quoth he) friend Menelaus, to overthrow a Mathematical Position, that is supposed and laid as a ground, and fundamental principle for oblique matters of mirrors: And yet, I must (quoth he) of necessity: for there is neither appeareth in this example, nor is generally confessed as true, that all reflexions tend to equal angles, for checked and confused it is by round embowed or embossed mirrors, when as they represent images appearing at one point of the sight, greater than themselves. This also is disproved by double or two-fold mirrors, for that when they are inclined and turned one unto the other, so as the angle be made within, each of the glasses or plain superficies, yield the resemblance of a double image, and so represent four in all from one face; two apparent, answerable to that without on the left side; and other twain obscure, and not so evident on the right side, all in the bottom of the mirrors, where they yield images, in appearance greater than the thing it self, at one point only of the sight. The same likewise is overthrowen by those mirrors which are hollow, wherein the aspect is variable: whereof Plato rendereth a reason and efficient cause: for he saith, that a mirror rising of the one side and the other, the sight doth change the reflexion, falling from the one side to the other: and therefore as the views and visions, come immediately return upon us, others gliding upon the opposite parts of the mirror, have recourse again from thence unto us, it is not possible that all reflexions should be in equal angles: so that when they come to coping and close fight, they think by these oppositions to take from the fluxions of light, carried from the Moon to the Earth, the equality of angles, supposing this to carry more probability with it, than the other. Howbeit, if we must needs yield thus much, and grant this unto our beloved Geometrian: first and foremost, by all likelihood this should befall unto those mirrors that are very smooth and exquisitely polished: whereas the Moon hath many inequalities, and asperities, in such sort, as the rays coming from the vast body of the Sun, and carried to mighty altitudes, which receive one from another, and intercommunicate the lights, as they be sent to and fro, and distributed reciprocally, are refracted, broken, and intercell all manner of ways, so as the counter-lights do meet and encounter one another, as if they came from many mirrors unto us. Moreover, if we should grant and suppose these reflexions of beams upon the superficies of the Moon, to be made by way of equal angles, there is no impossibility in the matter, but that the same rays being carried so great a way, should have their fractions, fluxions, and delations; thus thereby the light should be confused and shine the more.

Some also there be who prove by lineary demonstration, that the casteth much of her light to the earth plumb down by direct line drawn under her as she doth incline: But for a man to make such a description and delineation, reading as he doth, and discoursing as a public Auditor, especially being so frequent, it was not case, neither could it well be. In brief, I marvel (quoth he) how they came thus to alledge against us the Half-Moon, more than half-stipped or crost. For if the Sun do illuminate the mass, as a man would say, of the Moon, being of a celestial or fiery matter, surely he would leave half the Sphere or Globe thereof dark always and shadowed without light, to our sense,

but

but how little forever he toucheth her, running as he doth about, reason would give, and convenient it were that she should be wholly replenished and totally changed and turned, by that brightness of his, which spreadeth so quickly, and passeth through all so easily. For considering that wine touching water in one point only, or a drop of blood falling into some liquor, dyeth and coloureth the wine all red or purple, like unto blood: and seeing they say, that the very ayr is altered with light, nor by any defluxion or beams intermingled, but by sudden conversion and change, even in a point or prick only: how can they think that one Star coming to touch another Star, and one light another, should not be mingled immediately, nor make a confusion and mutation throughout, but to illuminate that only in the outward superficies which it toucheth? For that circle which the Sun maketh in fetching compass, and turning toward the Moon, one while falling upon the very line which parteth that which is visible in her from the invisible, another while rising up directly, in such sort, as that it both cutteth her in twain, and is cut also by her reciprocally, according to divers regards and habitudes of that which is light to the dark, causing those sundry forms in her, whereby she appeareth but half, more than half horned and croissant: This, I say, sheweth more than any thing else, that this illumination of the Moon, whereof we speak all this while, is not a mixture of two lights, but a touching only, not a collustration or gathering together of sundry lights, but an illustration thereof round about. But so far as the is not only illuminate her self, but he also sendeth back higher unto us the image of that brightness, this confirmeth us more and more in that which we say, as touching her essence substance. For never are there any reflexions and reverberations upon a thing that is rare and of subtle parts: neither may a man easily so much as imagine how light from light, or one fire should reflect and rebound from another: but needs it must be that the subject which maketh the reverberation or reflexion is firm, solid and thick, to the end there may be a blow given against it, and a rebounding also from it. To prove this, do but mark the ayr, which giveth passage unto the Sun for to pierce quite through it, neither admitteth it any repulse or driving back. Contrariwise we may see, that from wood, from stones, and from clothes or garments, hung forth against the same, he maketh many reflexions of his light, and illuminations on every side. And even so we see, that the earth by him is illuminate; for he sendeth not his beams to the very bottom thereof as in water, nor throughout the whole as in the ayr: but look what circle the Sun maketh turning about the Moon, and how much he cutteth from her, such another there is that compasseth the earth; and just so much he doth illuminate always, as he leaveth without light: for that which is illumined in the one and the other, is a little more than a Hemisphere. Give me leave therefore now to conclude after the manner of Geometricians by proportion: If, when three things there be, unto which the light of the Sun cometh, to wit, the Ayr, the Moon, and the Earth, we see that one of them is by him illuminated, not as the Ayr, but as the Earth: We must of necessity collect, that those two be of one nature, considering that of the same cause they suffer the same effects. Now when all the company highly commended Lucius for this Disputation: Passing well done of you Lucius (quoth I) you have to a proper Discourse annexed as pretty a Comparison; for we must give you your right, and not devalue the very you of that which is your due. With that smiled Lucius: I have yet (quoth he) a second proportion, which I will add unto the other, to the end that we may prove by demonstration, that the Moon wholly resembleth the Earth, not only by this, that she suffereth together with the Earth, from the same cause, the same accidents: but also, because they both do work the like effects upon the same objects. For this I am sure you will yield and grant unto me, that of all those things which are observed continued about the Sun, none do so much resemble one another, as his Eclipse doth his setting or going down; from the if you will but call to minde that meeting of the Sun and Moon together, which hath happened of late days, and beginning immediately after noon, caused many a stir from sundry parts of the sky to be sent; and wrought such a temperance or disposition in the Ayr, as is of the twilight evening and morning. But if you will not grant me the said supposition in this, our Theon here will cite and bring, I trow, Minnermus, Cydian, Archilochus: and besides them, Stesichorus and Pindarus, lamenting that in Eclipse, the world is robbed of their greatest light, which they bewail, as if it were entered, saying, that midnight was come at noon day, and that the radiant beams of the Sun, went in the way and path of darkness: but above all, he will alledge Homer, saying, that in an Eclipse, the faces and villages of men were overcast and fized upon with night and darkness: also, that the Sun was quite lost and missing out of the Heaven, being in conjunction with the Moon.

\* \* \* \* \*

And this hapneth by a natural cause, according as Homer sheweth in this verse,

Τὴν αἰὶν ἀλλήλων πάλαι, ὅς τ' ἱσθῆσαν.  
What time as Moons their interchange begin,  
As one goes out, another cometh in.

As for the rest, in mine advice, they be as certain, and do conclude as exactly as the demonstrations of the Mathematicians, to wit, that as the night is the shadow of the earth, so the Eclipse of the Sun, is Eclipse of the shadow the Moon, when as the light returneth upon it self. For the Sun going down, is hidden by the shadow from our sight by the earth, and being eclipsed, is likewise darkened by the Moon, and both the one and the other be obfuscations of darkness; that of the Sun setting, by the Earth, and the other of the Sun eclipsed, by the Moon, by the reason that the shade empacheth our light: of which premises the conclusion evidently doth follow. For if the effect be like, the efficient also be semblable in nature.

because

because necessary it is, that the same accidents or effects in the same subject, must come from the same efficient. Now if the darkness occasioned by the Eclipses, be not so deep, nor affect the ay so forcibly as doth the night, we are not to marvel thereat: for the substance of that body which maketh the night, and of it that causeth the Eclipse, may well be the same, although the greatness be not equal. For the Egyptians, I suppose, do hold, that the Moon is in bigness the 72. part of the earth: And *Anaxagoras* saith it is just as big as *Delos* compass. *Aristarchus* writeth, that the overwart Line or Diameter of the Moon, in proportion to that of the earth, is less than if 60. were compared with nineteen; and somewhat more than if a hundred and eight were compared with 43. and thereby the earth bereaveth us of all light of the Sun, to great it is. For it must be a great obstacle and opposition between, which continueth the time of a night: and the Moon albeit otherwise the hidden all the Sun, yet that Eclipse neither lasteth nor so long, nor is so universal: for there appeareth always about his circumference some light, which will not permit the darkness to be so black and deep, and altogether so obscure. *Aristotle* also, I mean the ancient Philosopher of that name, rendering a reason why there hapned Eclipses of the Moon often than of the Sun; among other causes, brings in this for one, That the Sun is Eclipsed by the obstruction of the Moon, and the Moon by that of the earth, which is much greater, and more spacious; and so by consequence is opposed very often. And *Pseudo* defined this accident thus, The Eclipse of the Sun (quoth he) is the conjunction or meeting of the Sun and the Moon, the shadow whereof doth darken our eye-sight: for there is no defect or Eclipse of the Sun's light, but unto those, whose light the shadow of the Moon hath caught, and so hindere them from seeing the Sun. Now in confessing that the shadow of the Moon reacheth down unto us, I know not what he hath left himself for to allege. Certes, impossible it is, that a Star should cast a shadow; for that which is void altogether of light, is called a shadow, and light maketh no shadow, but contrariwise, naturally riddeh it away. But what arguments besides, were alleged to this purpose (quoth he?) The Moon (quoth I then) suffereth the same Eclipse. Well done (quoth he) of you, to reduce this into my memory: But would you have me to prosecute this Disputation, as if you had already granted and set down, that the Moon is subject to Eclipses, when she is caught within the shadow of the earth; or that for a subject and argument of some declamation, and demonstration unto you, I first rehearse all the arguments one after another? Marry, do so, I pray you (quoth *Theon*) bestow your labor in such a Discourse. I had need verily (quoth he) of some persuasion, having only heard say, that when these three bodies, to wit, the Earth, the Sun, and the Moon, are directly in one right line, then happen Eclipses; for that either the Earth, taketh the Sun from the Moon, or the Moon taketh him from the Earth: for the Sun is in defect or Eclipse when the Moon, and the Moon likewise when the earth is in the midst of them: whereof the one falleth out in conjunction, the other in opposition or Full-Moon. Then (quoth *Lucius*) these be in a manner all the principal points, and the very brief of those that which hath been delivered: But to begin withal, if you think good, take in hand that firm argument which is drawn from the form and figure of the shadow, which indeed is a *Conus* or *Pyramis* (resembling a figural) with the sharp end forward, namely, when a great fire or great light being round, comprehendeth a mass likewise round, but less: and hereupon it cometh, that in Eclipses of the Moon, the circumscription of the black or darkness, from the clear and light, have always their sections round: for the approaches and applications of a round body, in what part soever, whether it give or receive those Sections, by reason of the similitude do always keep a round form, and be circular. Now to the second argument. You know well (I suppose) that the first part the Eclipsed or darkened in the Moon, is that which regardeth the East: and contrariwise in the Sun, that which looketh toward the West: for the shadow of the Earth goeth from East to West, but contrariwise the Sun and Moon, from West Eastward. The experience of the apparitions, giveth us the visible knowledge of these things: and many words there need not, to make the demonstration hereof plain and evident to be understood: by which suppositions is confirmed the cause of Eclipse: For, in as much as the Sun is Eclipsed when he is overtaken, and the Moon by meeting with that which maketh her Eclipse, by all likelihood, nay rather necessarily, the one is caught behind, the other surprized before, for that the obstructions, and imbrambation beginneth on that side on which that cometh first that maketh the said imbrambation. Now the Moon lieth upon the Sun from the West, as striving with him in course, and halting after him: but the shadow of the Earth cometh from East, as having a contrary motion. The third reason is taken from the time and greatness of the Eclipses of the Moon. For when the Sun is Eclipsed on high, and far from the Earth, the continueth but a little while in defect or want of light: but when the suffereth the same defaults being low and near unto the Earth, she is much oppressed, and slowly getteth the forth of the shade thereof: and yet when she is low, she moveth most swiftly, and being aloft, as slowly. But the cause is in the difference of the shadow, which toward the bottom or base is broader, as are the *Conus* or *Pyramides*, and so it groweth smaller and smaller taperwise, until at the top it endeth in a sharp point. And hereupon it cometh that the Moon being low, and so falling within the shadow, is compassed with greater circles of the shadow, and so passeth through the very bottom of it, and that which is most dark; but being on high, by reason of the narrow compass of the shadow, being, as it were, in a small puddle of mire, she is but a little sullied or berayed therewith, and so quickly getteth forth of it. Here I pass by the accidents and effects that have their particular causes. For we daily see that the fire, out of a shady place appeareth and shineth the rather, either by reason of the thickness of the dark ay, which admitteth

no effusions nor diffusions of the vertue of the fire, keeping in and containing within it self the substance thereof: or rather, if this be a passion of the sense, like as hot things near unto cold are felt to be more hot, and pleasures presently upon pains found more vehement; even so things clear, appear better when they are laid near unto those that be dark, by means of different passions, which do strain the imagination: but the former conjecture seemeth to be more probable: for in the Sun's shine, the whole nature of fire not only loseth his brightness, but also in giving place unto it, becometh more dull, and unwilling to burn, for that the heat of the Sun doth scatter and dissipate the force thereof. If then it were true, that the Moon had in it a feeble, and dim or dusky fire, as being a stinky Star, as the Stoicks say it is, reason it were meet, that it should not suffer any one of those accidents (but contrary all) which now we see it to suffer, namely, to be seen at that time when as it is hidden; and again to be hidden, what time as the sheweth herself: that is to say, to be covered all the rest of the time, being darkened by the ay environing it, and to shine out again for fix months, and afterwards for five months be hidden, entering within the shadow of the earth. For of 465. revolutions of Eclipsed Full Moons 404. are of fix months, and the rest of five. It must needs be then, during this time, the Moon should appear shining in the shadow: but contrariwise we see, that in the shadow Eclipsed she is, and loseth her light, which she recovereth again afterwards, when she is escaped and gotten forth of the said shadow, yea, and appeareth often in the day time; so that it is rather any thing else than a fiery body, and resembling a star. *Lucius* had no sooner thus said, but *Pharnaces* and *Apollonides* came running both together, to set upon him, and to confute his speech: but then *Pharnaces* alighted by *Apollonides* there present: Why, this (quoth he) is that which principally proveth the Moon to be a star, and to stand much upon fire, namely, that in Eclipses she is not wholly darkened, and not at all to be seen, but sheweth through the shade a certain colour, resembling a coal of fire, and the same fearful to see to, which is the very natural and proper hue of her own. As for *Apollonides*, he made instance and opposition as touching the word shadow: For that (quoth he) Mathematicians by their true use always to call the place which is not illuminated, but the heaven admitteth no shadow. Where to I made answer, that this instance of his was alleged rather against the word contentiously, than against the thing Physically, or Mathematically, for the place which is darkened and obstructed by the opposition of the earth, if a man will not call it shadow, but a place void or deprived of light, yet be it what it will, whensoever the Moon is there, you must of necessity confess, that the shadow of the earth reacheth not to that place, from whence the shadow of the Moon falling upon our sight here upon the earth, causeth the Eclipse of the Sun. And now will I come again to you *Pharnaces*: For that burnt colour, like a coal in the Moon, which you say is proper unto her, agreeth very well to a body, that hath thickness and depth: Neither use there to remain in bodies which be rare, any mark or token of a flame, nor a coal can possibly be made of a body which is not solid and able to receive deep within it the heat of fire, and the blackness of smoak: As *Homer* himself sheweth very well in one place, by these words:

*When flower of fire was gone and flown away,  
And flame extinct the coals he did sort lay.*

For the coal seemeth not properly to be fire, but a body fiery, and altered by fire, remaining still in a solid mass or substance which hath taken, as it were, deep root: whereas flames are but the setting on fire and fluxions of some nutriment or matter which is of a rare substance, and by reason of feebleness is quickly resolved and consumed. In so much, as there were not another argument so evident, to prove that the Moon is solid and terrestrial, as this, if the proper colour thereof resemble a coal of fire: But it is not so, my *Pharnaces*; for in her Eclipse she changeth diversely her colours, which Mathematicians in regard of time and place determinately distinguish in this sort. If she be eclipsed in the West, she appeareth exceeding black for three hours and an half: if in the middle of the heaven, she sheweth this light reddish or bay colour resembling fire: and after seven hours and an half, there ariseth a redness indeed. Finally, when this Eclipse hapneth in the East, and toward the Sun rising, she taketh a blew or grayish colour, which is the cause that the Poets, and namely, *Empedocles* calleth her *Glaucopis*. Considering then, that they see manifestly how the Moon changeth into so many colours in the shadow, they do very ill to attribute unto her this colour only of a burning or live coal: which intrueth a man may say to be less proper unto her than any other, and rather to be some little suffusion and remnant of light appearing and shining through a shadow: and that her proper and natural colour is black and earthy. For seeing that here below, whereas the lakes and rivers which receive the Sun beams, and by that means seem in their superficies to be some time reddish, and otherwhiles of a violet colour, the shadowy places adjoining take the same colours, and are illuminated, starting back by reason of reflexion, and divers rebated splendours. What wonder is it, if a great river (as it were) or flux of shadow falling upon a celestial sea, as a man would say of a light non fire, stilly and quiet, but stirred with innumerable stars walking over it, and besides, which admitteth diverse mixtures and mutations, doth take from the Moon the impression of sundry colours, and send the same higher unto us? For it cannot be avowed, that a star or fire should appear through a shadow either black, blew, or violet; but hills, plains, and seas, are seen to have many and sundry resemblances of colours by reflexion of the Sun running upon them, which are the very tinctures, that brightness, mingled with shadows and mist (as it were) with Painters drugs and colours, bringing

bringeth upon them: which tinctures *Homer* went about to express in some sort, and to name, when one while he calleth the waves, *ἰσάνθη*, and *ῥοῖα*, that is to say, of a violet colour, or deep red as wine, and otherwhile the sea purple: in one place the sea blew, green or grey, and the calm white: as for the tinctures and colours appearing upon the earth diversly, he hath let them pass, as I suppose, for that they be in number infinite. So, it is not like that the Moon should have but one plain, and even superficies in manner of the sea, but rather resemble naturally of all things especially the earth, and even of old *Socrates* in *Plato* seemeth to fable, whether it were, that under covert words and enigmatically he meant this here of the Moon, or spoke of some other. For it is neither incredible nor wonderful if the Moon in it having no corruption nor muddiness, but the fruition of pure light from heaven, and being full of heat, not of furious and burning fire, but of such as is mild and harmless, hath also within her fair places and marvellous pleasant mountains also, resplendent like bright flaming fire, purple tinctures or zones, gold and silver likewise good store, not dispersed here and there in the bottom thereof, but arising up to the upper face of the said plains in great abundance, or else spread over the hills and mountains, even and smooth. Now say, that the light of all these things cometh unto us through a shadow, and that after divers and sundry sorts, by reason of the variable and different mutation of the circumstant air, yet loseth not the Moon for all that, the venerable opinion that cometh of her, and the reputation of her divinity, being esteemed among men a celestial earth, or rather a feculent and troubled fire, as the Stoicks would have it, and standing much upon lees or dreggish matter. For the very first self hath barbarian honors done unto it among the Medes and Assyrians, who for very fear serve and adore such things as be noysome and hurtful, hallowing and consecrating the same about those things which are of themselves good and honorable. As for the name of the earth, there is not a Greek, but he holdeth it right worshipful, sacred and venerable: in so much as it is an ancient custom received throughout all *Greece*, to honor it as much as any other god whatsoever. And far is it from us men, to think that the Moon which we take to be a celestial earth, is a dead body without soul or spirit, and altogether void of such things, which we ought to offer as first fruits to the gods. For both by law we yield recompence and thanksgiving unto it, for those good things which we have received, and by nature we adore the same, which we acknowledge to be the most excellent for virtue, and right honorable for puissance, and therefore we think it no sin at all, to suppose the Moon to be earth. To come now unto the face that appeareth therein: like as this earth upon which we walk hath many sinuosities and valleys, even so as probable it is, that the said heavenly earth, lieth open with great deep caves, and wide chinks and ruptures, and those containing either water or obscure ayr: to the bottom thereof the light of the Sun is not able to pierce and reach, but there falleth, and sendeth to us hither a certain divided reflexion. Then *Apollonides*: Now I beseech you good Sir, even by the Moon herself, think you it is possible that there should be shadows of caves, gulle, and chinks there, and that the same should be discovered by our sight here? or do you not make reckoning of that which may come thereof? What is that (quoth I.) Marry, I will tell you, (quoth he) and albeit you are not ignorant thereof, yet may you give me the hearing. The Diameter of the Moon, according to that bigness which appeareth unto us, in the mean and ordinary distances, is twelve fingers breadth long: and every of those black and dark shadowy streaks therein, is more than half a finger, that is to say, above the four and twentieth part of the said Diameter. Now if we suppose, the whole circumference of the Moon to be thirty thousand stadia, and according to that supposition the Diameter be ten thousand, every one of those obscure and shadowy marks within her, will not be less than five hundred stadia, or thereabout. Consider then first, whether it be possible that there should be in the Moon so great profundities, and such rugged inequalities, as to make so big a shadow? and then, whether being so great, their bigness should not be defrased and seen by us? Hereupon I smiling upon him: Now I assure you *Apollonides* (quoth I) I can you thank, you have done it very well, in devising such a proper demonstration, whereby you will prove both me and your self also to be greater than those *Gyants Alcides*, I mean not at every hour of the day, but especially in the morning and evening: do you think that when the Sun maketh our shadows so long, he yieldeth unto our sense this goodly collection and argumentation, that if the thing which is shadowed be great, then that which maketh the shadow must needs be exceeding great? Neither of us twain, I wot well, hath ever been in the Isle *Lemnos*, and yet both of us have many a time heard this vulgar lambeque verse fo rise in every mans mouth:

*Ἄνεμος ἦν ὁ κλέψας Ἀπόλλωνος Βόειον,  
The Mountain Athos shall on either side,  
The Cow that stands in Lemnos hide.*

For this shadow of the hill falleth as it should seem, upon a certain brazen Image of an Heifer in that Isle, reaching in length over sea no less than 700 stadia: not because the said Mountain which maketh the shadow is of that height, but because the distance of the light causeth the shadows of bodies to be by many folds greater than the bodies are. Go to then, consider that when the Moon is at the full, as what time as she shendeth unto our eye the form of a visage most expressly, by reason of the profundity of the shadow within, then is the also farthest distant from the Sun: for the far receding and withdrawing backward of the light, is it that maketh the shadow great, and not the bigness of those inequalities, which are upon the superficies of the Moon. Moreover, you see that the excessive glittering of the Sun shining all about, will not suffer a man to see in the day time the very top of the Mountains: but the deep, hollow, and shadowy parts therein, appear very far off. It carrieth therefore

therefore no absurdity at all, that a man is not able exactly to see and discern that full light and illumination of the Moon: But that the opposition of dark shadows unto clear lights, by reason of their diversity, is more exquisitely seen. But this (quoth I) seemeth rather to check and confute that reflexion, and reverberation which is said to rebound from the Moon, for that they who stand within the rays or beams that are returned and retorted back, have means to see not only that which is illuminated, but that also which doth illuminate. For when, in the refraction of a light from the water upon some wall, the light falleth upon the very place it fell, which is thus illuminated by the reflexion, the eye seeth three things, to wit, the beams or shining light driven back, the water which maketh that reflexion, and the Sun it self, whose light hitting upon the superficies of the water, is reflected and sent back. This being generally granted as a thing evidently seen, yet by way of objection, they bid those who affirm, that the earth is illuminate from the Moon by the reflexion of the Suns light from it, to shew by night the Sun appearing in the superficies of the Moon, like as he may be seen in the day time within the water upon which he shineth, when there is the foresaid reflexion of his beams. But because he cannot then be seen, they infer, that it must be by some other manner, and not by reflexion, that the Moon is illuminate: and if there be no such reflexion, then cannot the Moon in any wise be Earth. How shall this be met withal, and what answer shall be shaped unto it (quoth *Apollonides*) for the reason of reflexion seemeth all one, and common as well to us as to you? True (quoth I) common it is in some sort, and in some sort not: but first mark, I beseech you, the comparison, how they go clean him, kam, and against the stream, as if rivers ran up hills: for the water is here beneath upon the earth, and the Moon is above and in the heaven: in such sort, as the beams reflected, make the form of their angles opposite and quite contrary one unto the other, the one carrying the head or point upward against the superficies of the Moon, the other downward to the ground. Let them not then demand and require that a mirror should render every form or face alike, nor that in every distance there should be equal, or sensible reflexion, for in so doing they would go against apparent evidence. And they who hold the Moon to be a body not smooth, even, and subtle as water is, but solid, massy, and terrestrial, I cannot conceive why they should look for to see the Sun in it as in a glass. For milk verily doth not yield such pecuniary images, nor cause reflexion of the light, by reason of the inequality and rugged asperity of the parts: How is it possible then, that the Moon should send back from it the light, as mirrors do which are more polished? And even this also, if any rare, blur, filth, or confused sport have caught them in the superficies, from whence the light being reflected is wont to receive the impression of some figure, may well be seen, but counter-light they yield none: and he who requireth, that either the Sun should appear in the Moon, or our light be redoubled against the Sun, let him require withal, that the eye be the Sun, the sight thereof the light, and man, heaven. For like it is that the reflexion of the Sun beams against the Moon, for their vehement and exceeding great brightness, should with a stroke rebound upon us: But seeing our light is weak and feeble, what marvel is it, if it neither give such a stroke as might rebound, nor maintain the continuity thereof if it leaped back again, but is broken and falleth, as not having that abundance of light, whereby it should not be disgregate and dissipated, within those uneven and unequal asperities? For it is not possible that the reflexion of our light upon water, or other sorts of mirrors, whilst the same is yet strong, and able, as being neer unto the spring from whence it cometh, should not return again upon the eye. But from the Moon, suppose there may rebound some glimmering glances, certes, they be all weak and obscure, failing in the very way, by reason of so long a distance. For otherwise, arched and hollow mirrors send back their reflected rays with more force, than they come, in such sort as many times they catch fire and do burn: whereas the imbossed and curbed mirrors made round, and bearing out like a bowl, cast from them feeble and dark rays, because they beat them not back on all sides. You see certainly, when two Rain bows appear in the heaven, by reason that one cloud doth environ and comprehend another, that the Rain-bow which compasseth the other without forth, yieldeth dim colours, and not sufficiently distinct and expressed, because the outward cloud being farther remote from our sight, maketh not a strong and forcible reflexion. And what needs there any more to be said? considering that the very light of the Sun returned and sent back by the Moon, loseth all the heat: and of his brightness there cometh unto us with much ado but a small remnant, and a portion very little and feeble. Is it impossible then that our sight running the same race, there should any parcel or residue thereof reach from the Moon back again to the Sun? for mine own part, I think not. Consider also, I beseech you (quoth I) even your own selves, that if our eye-sight were affected and disposed alike by the Water, and by the Moon, it could not otherwise be, but that the Moon should represent unto us the images of the earth, of trees, of plants, of men, and of stars, as well as water doth, and all other kinds of mirrors. Now if there be no such reflexion of our eye-sight from the Moon, as to bring back unto us those images, either for the feebleness of it, or the rugged inequality of her superficies, let us never require that it should leap back as far as to the Sun. Thus have we reported as much as our memory would carry away, whatsoever was there delivered: Now is it time to desire *Sylla*, or rather to require and exact of him, to make his narration, for that admitted he was to here this discourse upon such a condition. And therefore if you think go good, let us give over walking, and sitting down here upon these seats, make him a sedentary audience. All the company liked well of this motion. And when we had taken our place, *Thoon* thus began, Certes I am desirous (quoth he) and none of you all more, to hear what shall be said.

But before I would be very glad to understand somewhat of those who are said to dwell in the Moon, not whether there be any persons there inhabiting, but whether it be possible that any should inhabit there. For if this cannot be, then it were meer folly, and beside all reason, to say, that the Moon is earth: otherwise it would be thought to have been created in vain, and to no end: as bearing no fruits, nor affording no habitation, no place for nativity, no food or nourishment for any men or women, in regard of which cause, and for which ends we firmly hold, that this earth wherein we live, as *Plato* faith, was made and created, even to be our nurse and keeper, making the day and night distinct one from another. For you see and know, that of this matter, many things have been said as well merrily, and by way of laughter, as seriously and in good earnest. For of those who inhabit the Moon, some are said to hang by the heads under it, as if they were so many *Tantalus*'s others contrariwise, who dwell upon it, are tyed fast, like a sort of *Isians*, and turned about with such a violence, that they are in danger to be flung and shaken out. And verily the moveth not alter one single motion, but three manner of ways; whereupon the Poets call her otherwise, *revolvris* or *Trivris*, performing her course together, according to length, breadth, and depth in the Zodiack. Of which motions, the first is called, A direct revolution; the second, An oblique winding or wheeling in and out; and the third, the Mathematicians call (I wote not how) An inequality: and yet they see, that the hath no motion at all even and uniform, nor certain in all her monthly circuits and revolutions. No marvel therefore, considering the impetuosity of these motions, if there fell a Lyon sometimes out of her into *Peloponessus*: nay rather we are to wonder, why we see not every day a thousand falls of men and women, yea, and as many beasts shaken out from thence, and flung down headlong with their heels upward. For it were a meer mockery, to dispute and stand upon their habitation there, if they neither can breed nor abide there. For considering that the Egyptians and Troglodites, over whose heads the Sun standeth directly one moment only of the day in the time of the Solstices, and then presently retireth, hardly escape burning, by reason of the excessive siccity of the circumstance ay; how possibly can the men in the Moon endure twelve Summers every year, when the Sun once a month is just in their Zenith, and settleth plum over head, when the is at the full? As for winds, clouds, and rains, without which the plants of the earth can neither come nor be preserved, it passeth all imagination, that there should be any there, the ay is so subtle, dry and hot; especially, seeing that even here beneath, the highest Mountains do not admit or feel the hard and bitter Winters from year to year, but they about them being pure and clear, and without any agitation whatsoever, by reason of the subtilty and lightness, avoideth all that thickness and concretion which is among us: unless haply we will say, that like as *Minerva* infilled and dropped into *Achilles* mouth some *Nectar* and *Ambrosia*, when he received no other food; so the Moon, who both is called, and is indeed *Minerva*, nourisheth men there, bringeth forth daily for them *Ambrosia*, according as old *Phereides* was wont to say, that the very gods also were fed and nourished. As for touching that Indian root, which (as *Megasthenes* faith) certain people of *India*, who neither eat nor drink, nor have so much as mouths, whereupon they be called *Atomi*, do burn and make to smok, with the odor and perfume whereof, they live; how can they come by any such there, considering the Moon is never washed nor refreshed with rain? When *Theon* had thus said: You have (quoth I) very properly and sweetly handled this point; you have (I say) by this merry conceited jest, layed smooth and even, those bent and knit browes, the audacity (I mean) of this whole Discourse; which hath given us heart, and encouraged us to make answer: for that, if we fail and come short, we look not for straight examination, nor fear any sharp and grievous punishment. For to say a truth, they who take most offence at these matters, rejecting and discrediting the same, are not so great adversaries unto those who are most persuaded thereof; but such as will not after a milde and gentle sort consider that which is possible and probable. First and foremost therefore, this I say, that, suppose there were no men at all inhabiting the Moon, it doth not necessarily follow therefore, that the was made for nothing, and to no purpose: for were that even this earth here is not thoroughout inhabited, nor tilled in all parts: nay, there is but a little portion thereof habitable, like unto certain promontories or demy-islands arising out of the deep sea, for to breed, ingender and bring forth plants and living creatures: for of the rest, some part is so fast, waste and barren, by reason of excessive cold and heat; but in truth, the greatest portion lieth drowned under the great and main sea. But you (for the great love that you bear to *Aristarchus*, whom you admire so much, and evermore have in your hands) give no ear to *Crates*, notwithstanding that you read these verses in *Homer*:

*The ocean Sea, from whence both men  
and gods were first bred,  
With surging waves the greatest part  
of earth doth overspread.*

And yet God forbid, that these parts should be said for to have been made for nought: for the Sea doth expire and breathe forth certain milde vapors: and the most gentle and pleasant winds which arise and blow in the greatest heat of Summer, come from frozen regions, and not inhabited for extreme cold, which the snow melting and thawing by little and little do send from them, and scatter over all our Countreys. And earth (as *Plato* faith) ariseth out of the Sea in the midst, as a Guardianess and Workmistress of night and day. What should hinder then, but that the Moon also may well bewith our living creatures in it, and yet give reflexions unto the light diffused and spread about her? yea, and yield a receptacle of the stars rays which have their confluence, meeting and temperature in her,

her, whereby the concocteth the evaporations ascending from the earth, and withall, abateeth the over-ardent and fiery heat of the Sun. Over and besides, attributing as we do very much to the ancient opinion and voice which we have received from our forefathers, we will be bold to say, that the hath been reputed *Diana*, as a Virgin, barren and fruitlesse, but otherwise salutary, helpful and profitable to the world. And of all this that hath been said (my good friend *Theon*) there is nothing that doth prove and shew directly, this habitation of men in the Moon to be impossible: for her turning about being so milde, so kinde and calm, polisheth the air near unto it, it distributeth and spreadeth the same all about in so good disposition, that there is none occasion given to fear, that those who live in it should fall down or slide out of her, unless the also come down withall. As for that manifold variety of her motions, it proceedeth not from any inequality, error or confusion, but the Astronomers demonstratively shew thereby an order and course most admirable, continuing it so, that the should be fast within certain circles that turn and wind about other circles, none deviating that the her self stirreth not, others supposing that the moveth alwaies equally, smoothly and in conform celerity: for these are the ascensions of divers circles, the circumventions and turnings about, habitudes in references one to another, yea, and respective to us, which make most elegantly those orderly elevations and depressions in altitude, which appear in her motion, yea, and her digressions in latitude, all jointly with that ordinary and direct revolution of hers in longitude. As touching that exceeding heat and continuall inflammation of the Sun, you will cease (I am sure) to be afraid thereof, in case, first and foremost, you will lay to those eleven hot and evilivall conjunctions, as it were in exchange, as many oppositions when she is at the full; and then oppose unto those excessive and enormous extremities which hold not long, the continuall change and mutation, which reduceth them into a proper and peculiar temperature, taking from them that which is excessive and overmuch in both: for it seemeth very probable, that the time between is a season resembling the Springtime. Moreover, the Sun sendeth his beames into us thorow a groffe and troubled ay, calling his heat nourished and fed by evaporations; whereas the aire there, about the Moon, being subtile and transparent, doth disgregate and disperse the said beames, as having no nouriture to maintain them, nor body to settle upon.

To come now unto Trees, Woods, and Frutis; here indeed with us, they be the raines that nourish them: but in other high Countreys with you, namely, about *\*Thibes* and *Sienes*, it is not the water from heaven, but out of the earth, that feedeth them: for the earth being soaked therewith, and besides refreshed with cool winds and comfortable dewes, would be loth to compare in fertility with the best watered ground in the world, such is the goodness, virtue and temperature of the soil. And verily the trees of the same kinde with us, if they have been well watered, that is to say, if they have endured a sharp and long Winter, bring forth plenty of good fruit; but in *Libya* and with you in *Egypt*, they are soon hurt and off-ended with cold, and it they fear exceedingly. And whereas the provinces of *Gederofia* and *Trogloditis*, lying hard upon the Ocean Sea, be very barren by reason of their drouth, and are altogether without trees: yet within the Sea adjoining thereto, and which beareth upon the continent, there grow trees of a wonderful bignesse, yea, and there be that put forth fresh and green at the very bottom of the Sea: whereof some they call Olive trees, others Lawrell, and some again *Iris* hairees. As for those Plants which be called *Anancamcrotas*, after they be plucked forth of the ground where they grow, and so be hanged up, they do not only live as long as a man would have them, but (which is more) bud and put forth green leaves. Moreover, of those Plants which are set or sown, some, at namely, *Cenauris*, if they be planted or sowed in a rich or fat soil, and the same well drenched and watered, do degenerate and grow out of their natural qualitie, yea, and leave all their vertue, for that they love to grow drie, and in their proper nature and soil agreeable thereto, they thrive passing well. Others cannot so much as away with any dewes, as the most part of the Arabian plants; for wet them once, they mislike, fade and die. What marvel then if there grow within the Moon, Roots, Seeds, Plants, and Trees, that have no need either of flowers, or of Winter wind and weather, but are appropriate naturally to a subtile and drie ay, such as the summer season doth afford? And why may it not stand with good reason, that the Moon her self sends certain warm winds, and that by her shaking and agitation, as she still moveth, there should bring forth a sweet and comfortable air, fine dewes, and gentle moistures, spread and dispersed all about, sufficient to maintain the plants fresh and green: considering withall, that the of her own temperature is not ardent, nor exceeding dry, but rather soft and moist, and ingendering all humidity? For there cometh not from her unto us, any one either accident of siccity, but of moisture and of a feminine and soft constitution, many to wit, the growing and thriving of plants, the putrefaction of flesh killed, the turning of wines to be fowre, flat, and dead, the frummesse and tenderness of wood, and the easie deliverance of women in Child-birth. But I fear me, that I should move and provoke *Pharmacies* again, who all this while siteth still and sayeth nought, if I allege the cbbing and flowing, or the inundations of the great Ocean, as they themselves say, the firties, streights, and armes of the Sea, which swell and rise by the Moon, naturally given to encrease moisture and breed humours: and therefore I will direct my words toward you rather, friend *Theon*, for you say unto us, in expounding these verses of the Poet *Alcman*.

*What things on earth the dew, as Nurse doth feed,*

*Which Jupiter and Moon between them breed,*

that in this place he calleth the air *Jupiter*, and faith that being moistened by the Moon, he is converted into dew: for the Moon (my good friend) seemeth in nature to be quite contrary unto the Sun,

M m m m

not

not only in this, that whatsoever doth thicken, dry, and harden, she is wont to resolve, moisten and mollifie, but that which more is, to humect and refrigerate the heat that cometh from him, when the same lighth upon her, or is mingled with her. Therefore as well they who suppose the Moon to be a fiery and ardent body, do erre, as those who would have the Creatures there inhabiting, to have all things necessary for their generation, food and maintenance, like unto them that live here; never considering the great difference nor inequality which is in nature, wherein there be found greater and more varieties and diversities of living Creatures, one with another, than with other things: neither would there be men in the world without mouths, and whose lips are grown up together, and who were nourished also with smells only, in case men would not live without solid and substantial food. But that power of Nature, which *Ammonius* himself hath shewed us, and which *Hesiodus* under covert words hath given us to understand by these verses,

*In Malloes and in Albedels  
which grow on every ground,  
What use and profit manifolds,  
for man there may be found,*

*Epimenides* hath made plain and evident indeed and effect, teaching us, that nature sustaineth and preserveth a living Creature with very small food and maintenance: for so it may have but as much as an olive, it needs no more nourishment, but may live therewith and do full well. Now it is very like and probable, that those who dwell within the Moon, if any else be light, active and nimble of body, and easie to be nourished with any thing whatsoever: also that the Moon (as well as the Sunne, who is a Living Creature, standing much upon fire, and by many degrees greater than the Earth) is nourished and maintained as they say, by the humours which are upon the earth, like as all other flames, which are in number infinite. So light and slender they imagine those living Creatures to be, that are above and so far contented and satisfied with small necessities. But we neither see this, nor yet consider that a diverse Region, nature and temperature is meet and agreeable unto them: much like, as if when we could not our selves come near unto the Sea, nor touch and salt it, but have seen it onely afar off, and heard that the water in it is bitter, brackish, salt, and not potable, one should come and sell us, that it nourisheth a mighty number of great Creatures, of all sorts and forms, living in the bottom thereof, and that it is full of huge and monstrous beasts, which make use of the water, as we do of air; he would be thought to tell us Tales and monstrous Fables: even so it seemeth that we stand affected and disposed in these matters of the Moon, not believing that there be any men inhabiting within it. But I am verily perswaded, that they may much more marvel, seeing the Earth here afar off, as the dregges, sediment and ground as it were of the whole world, appearing unto them through moist clouds, and foggy mists, a small thing God wots and the same without light, bafe, abject, and unmovable: how the same should breed, nourish, maintain, and keep living Creatures which have motion, breathing, and vitall heat: and in case they had ever heard these verses out of *Homer*, as touching certain habitations,

*Ugly and foul, most hideous to be seen:  
Whereof the gods themselves right fearful been;  
Alfo*

*Under the earth beneath, and bell unseen,  
As far as heavens from earth removed been,*

they would think verily and say, that they had been spoken of this Earth here: and that dark hell and *Tartarus* were here situate, and far remote: as also that the Moon onely was the Earth, as being equally distant from heaven above and hell beneath. Now before I had well made an end of my speech, *Sylla* taking the words out of my mouth: Stay a while (quoth he) O *Lampris*, your speech; and hold off with your boar, as they say, for fear you run an end with your Tail upon the ground ere you be aware, and mar all the play, which for this present hath another Scene and disposition; and I myself am the actor: but before I proceed farther, I will bring forth mine Author unto you, if there be nothing to impeach me; who beginneth in this manner with a verse of *Homer*.

*Far from the Main, within the Ocean Sea,  
There lies an Island high Ogygia,*

distant from Great Britain or England Westward, five dayes sailing: And other three Iles thereto, of like distance one from the other, and from the said land bearing North-West, whereas the Sun setteth in Summer: in one of which the barbarous people of the Countrey do fable and feign that *Saturn* was detained and kept prisoner by *Jupiter*. Now for the keeping as well of it, as of those other Iles, and the whole Sea adjacent, which was called *Saturns* Sea, the Gyant *Ogygia*, or *Briareus* was placed: as also that the Main and firm Land, wherewith the great sea is bordered round about, is removed from the other Iles not so far, but from *Ogygia* five hundred *Stadia* or there about: unto which men use to row in Gallies, for that Sea is very ebbe and low, hardly to be passed by great Vessels, by reason of the huge quantity of mudd brought thither by a number of rivers, which running out of the main Continent, discharge themselves into it, raising mighty shelves and barres, whereby the Sea is choked up as it were with earth, and hardly navigable: which gave occasion of that old opinion which went thereof, that it should be frozen and stand all over with an ice. Well, the coasts along the firm land, which lie upon this Sea, are inhabited by *Greeks*, all about a mighty Bay or Gulf thereof, no lesse spacious than the huge Lake *Meotis*, the mouth or entrance whereof lieth directly opposite unto

unto that of the Caspian Sea: these people are reputed and named to be the inhabitants of the Continent or firm Land, accounting and calling all us Islanders, as dwelling in a land environed round about, and washed with the Sea. They suppose also, that they in old time who accompanied *Hercules*, and being left by him, abode there, and intermingled afterwards with the people and Nations of *Saturn*, could to revive again the Greek Nation there, well next extinguished, which being subdued and brought under the Language, Lawes, Manners and Fashions of the Barbarians, flourished again by these means, as well peopled, and recovered their ancient puissance and greatness. And hereupon it is, that the chief and principall honour, they do unto *Hercules*, but in a second place, to *Saturn*. Now when the star of *Saturn*, which we call *Phenon*, and there by his saying, *Nycturus* is entered into the sign *Taurus*, (and that it doth once in the space of 30 years) they having long before prepared all necessities for a solemne sacrifice, and a long voiage or navigation, send forth those upon whom the lot falleth, to row in that huge Sea, and to live a long time in a strange Countrey. Now when they be imbarqued and entered once into the wide and open Sea, they take their adventured fortune as it falleth out. Such as have passed the dangers of the Sea and arrived in safety, land first in those Ilands lying opposite against them, being inhabited by Greek Nations, where they see the Sun to be hidden from them, not one full hour in thirty dayes (and that is all their night) whereof the darkness is but small, as having a twilight in the West where the Sun went down, much like the dawning of the day. Having here made their abode for ninety dayes, during which space they were highly honoured and found great entertainment, as being reputed holy men and so termed, conducted they are with the winds, and transported over into the Island of *Saturn*: which is inhabited by no others but by themselves, and such as had been sent thither before time in this manner. For albeit lawfull it is for them, after they have done service unto *Saturn* the time of thirty years, to fall home again into their own Countrey; yet for the most part they chuse to remain there still in peace and rest, than to return soon, for that they be already inured and accustomed to the place: others, because without any labour and trouble of theirs, they have plenty of all things, as well for their sacrifices, as for the ordinary maintenance of such, as continually are given to their books, and to the study of Philosophy. For surely by their sayings, the nature of the Island and the mildness of the air is wonderful. And whereas some of them were willing to depart from thence, they have been stayed and impeached by a Divine power, which hath appeared unto them as unto their friends and familiars, not only in dreams and by way of outward signes, but visibly also unto many of them, by the means of familiar spirits and angels, desiring and talking with them. For they say that *Saturn* himself is personally there, within the deep cave of a great hollow rock shining and glittering like pure gold, where he lieth allec, for that *Jupiter* had devised for him sleep, instead of other chains and bonds, to keep him fast for stirring. But there be certain birds haunting the top of the said rock, which flied down from thence and carry unto him the Divine food *Ambrosia*. As for the whole Island, it is by report replenished with a most fragrant and odoriferous perfume, which out of that Cave, as from a lively fountain doth breath forth continually, and the said Demons or Angels do attend and wait upon *Saturn*, such I mean as were his Courtiers and minions, at what time as he reigned as Sovereign over gods and men; who having the skill of Prophecie and Divination, do of themselves foretell many future things: howbeit of the greatest matters and of most importance, they make report and relation after they have been down below with *Saturn*, as his dreams revealed unto them: For whatsoever *Jupiter* thinketh, and deviseth of before, *Saturn* dreameth. As for his sudden weakenings they be Titanicall passions and perturbations of the spirit in him. But his sleep is mild and sweet, wherein he sheweth his Divine and Royall nature of it self pure and incontinuate. And thither (quoth he) this stranger and friend of mine being brought, where he served god *Saturn* at his ease and repose, attained unto the skill of Astrology, so far forth as it is possible for one that had the exact knowledge of Geometry. And among other parts of Philosophy, he gave himself unto that which is called naturall. But having a longing desire to visit & see the great Island (for so they call the firm Land wherein we are) after the thirty years were past, and his successors thither arrived, taking his leave of his kindred and friends whom he had farewell, he took Sea in other respects lightly and nimbly appointed, but good store he carried with him of Voyage-provision within pots and cups of Gold. But to recount unto you in particular what adventures to him befell, how many Nations he visited, through what Countreys he travelled, how he searched into holy Writings, and was professed in all Religious Orders and holy Confraternities, one whole day would not be sufficient (I say) to rehearse, as he himself delivered the same unto us, particularizing very well of every thing: but as much as concerneth this present Discourse, listen and I will relate unto you. For he continued a long time at *Carthage*, where he was greatly honoured and respected, as also among us, for that he found sacred skins of Parchment, which at the overthrow and Sackage of the former City called great *Carthage* had been secretly conveyed thither and lain hidden a long time under the ground. So he said, that of those gods which appear unto us in heaven, we ought (and so he advised me also) to adore and worship especially the Moon, as the principall Guide and Mistress of our life. Whereat when I marvelled, and besought him to expound and declare the same more plainly: The *Greeks* (quoth he) O *Sylla*, talk very much of the gods; but in all things they say not well. As for example, first and foremost, in naming *Ceres* and *Proserpina* they do well and right: but to put them both together, and think that they are both in one and the same place, they do amiss: For the one, to wit, *Ceres*, is upon the Earth, the very Dame and Mistress of all those things that be above the ground; but the other is in the Moon, and called she is by them that inhabit

the Moon, *Core*, and *Persephone*, that is to say, *Proserpina*: *Persephone*, as one would say, *εὐφροσύνη*, for that she bringeth light and brightness; but *Core*, because the sight or apple of the eye, in which is seen the image of him who looketh into it, like as the brightness of the Sun appearing in the Moon, we call *Core*. Now whereas it is said that they go up and down wandring and seeking one the other, the same carrieth some truth with it: for they desire and long after one another when they be parted and asunder, and they embrace one the other in the dark many times. Moreover, that this *Core* or *Proserpina* is one while above in heaven, and in the light, another while in darkness and the night, is not untrue: only there is some error in reckoning and numbering the time. For we see her not six months, but every sixth month, or from six months to six months, under the Earth, as under her mother, caught with the shadow; and seldom is it found, that this should happen within five Months: for that it is impossible that she should abandon and leave *Pluto*, being his wife: according as *Homer* hath signified, although under dark and covert words, not truly saying,

But to the farthest borders of  
the Earth and utmost end,  
Even to the fair Elysian fields  
the gods then shall thee send.

For look where the shadow endeth and goeth no further, that is called the limit and end of the Earth, and thither no wicked and impure person shall ever be able to come. But good folk after their death in the world being thither carried, lead there another easie life in peace and repose: howbeit, not altogether a blessed, happy and divine life, until they die a second death: but what death this is, ask me not, my *Sylla*, for I purpose of my self to declare, and shew it unto you hereafter. The vulgar sort be of opinion that man is a subject compounded: and good reason they have so to think: but in believing that he consisteth of two parts onely, they are deceived: for they imagine that the understanding is in some sort a part of the soul: but the understanding is better than the soul, by how much the soul is better and more divine than the body. Now the Conjunction or Composition of the soul with understanding, maketh reason; but with the body, passion: whereof this is the beginning and Principle of pleasure and pain, the other of virtue and vice. Of these three conjoynd and compact in one, the Earth yieldeth for her part the body, the Moon the soul, and the Sun understanding to the generation or Creation of man; and Understanding giveth reason unto the soul; \* \* \* even as the Sun, light and brightness to the Moon. As touching the deaths which we die, the one maketh man of three ewo, and the other of two one. And the former verily is in the region and Jurisdiction of *Ceres*, which is the cause that we sacrifice unto her. Thus it cometh to passe that the Athenians called in old time those that were departed, *Διψυχους*, that is to say, *Cerales*. As for the other death it is in the Moon or Region of *Proserpina*. And as with the one terrestrial *Mercury*, so with the other Celestiall *Mercury* doth inhabit. And verily *Ceres* dissolveth and separateth the soul from the body suddenly and forcibly with violence: but *Proserpina* parteth the understanding from the soul, gently, and in long time. And hereupon it is, she is called, *Μωρητή*, as one would say, beggering one: for that the better part in a man becometh one and alone, when by her it is separated: and both the one, and the other hapneth according to nature. Every soul without understanding, as also endued with understanding, when it is departed out of the body, is ordained by fatall destiny to wander for a time, but not both alike, in a middle Region between the Earth and the Moon. For such souls as have been unjust, wicked and dissolute, suffer due punishment and pains for their sinfull defects: whereas the good and honest, untill such time as they have purified, and by expiration purged forth of them, all those infections which might be contracted by the contagion of the body, as the cause of all evils, must remain for a certain set time, in the middle Region of the air, which they call the *Middows* of *Pluto*. Afterwards, as if they were returned from some long Pilgrimage or wandring exile into their own Countrey, they have a taste of joy, such as they feel especially, who are professed in holy mysteries, mixed with trouble and admiration, and each one with their proper and peculiar hope: for it driveth and chaifeth forth many soules, which longed already after the Moon. Some take pleasure to be still beneath, and even yet look downward, as it were to the bottom: but such as be mounted aloft, and are there most surely bestowed, first as victorious, stand round about adorned with Garlands, and those made of the wings of *Euthytia*, that is to say, Constancy: because in their life time here upon earth, they had bridled and restrained the unreasonable and pisable part of the soul, and made it subject and obedient to the bridle of reason. Secondly, they resemble in sight, the rayses of the Sun. Thirdly, the soul thus ascended on high, is there confirmed and fortified by the pure Air about the Moon, where it doth gather strength and solidity, like as iron and steel by their tincture become hard. For that which hitherto was loose, rare and spongy, groweth close, compact, and firm, yea, and becometh shining and transparent, in such sort, as nourished it is with the least exhalation in the world. This is that *Heracles* meant, when he said, that the souls in *Phaeas* Region have a quick sent or smelling. And first they behold there the greatness of the Moon, her Beauty and Nature, which is not simple nor void of mixture, but as it were a Composition of a Starre, and of Earth. And as Earth mingled with a Spirituall Air and Moisture, becometh soft, and the Blood tempered with Flesh, giveth it sense; Even so say they, the Moon mingled with a Celestiall Quintessence, even to the very bottom of it, it is made Animate, Fruitfull and Generative, and withall, equally counterpoised with Ponderosity and Lightnesse. For the whole world it self, being thus Compofed of things which naturally move downward and upward, is altogether

altogether void of motion local, from place to place, which it seemeth that *Xenocrates* himself by a divine discourse of reason understood, taking the first light thereof from *Plato*. For *Plato* was he who first affirmed, that every star was compounded of fire and earth, & by the means of middle natures given in certain proportion; in as much as there is nothing object to the sense of man, which hath not in some proportion a mixture of earth & light. And *Xenocrates* said, that the Sun is compounded of fire & the first or primitive solid: the Moon of a second solid, and her proper air: in sum, throughout, neither solid alone by it self, nor the rare apart, is capable and susceptible of a soul. Thus much as touching the substance of the Moon. As for the grandeur and bignesse: thereof, it is not such as the Geometricians set down, but far greater by many degrees. And seldom doth it measure the shadow of the Earth by her greatness; not for that the same is small, but for that it bringeth a most fervent and swift motion, to the end, that quickly and with speed she might pass the dark place, and bring away with her the souls of the blessed which make haile and cry: because all the while they are within the shade, they cannot hear any more the harmony of celestiall bodies: and withall, underneath, the souls of the damned which are punished, lamenting, wailling, and howling in this shadow, are presented unto them. And this is the reason, that in the Eclipses of the Moon, many were wont to ring basons and pannes of brass, and to make a great noise and clattering about their souls. And affrighted they are to behold that which they call the face of the Moon, when they approach neer unto it, seeming to be a terrible & fearful sight, whereas it is no such matter. But like as the Earth with us hath many deep and wide gulles, as namely, one here, to wit, the Mediterranean sea, lying between *Hercules* pillars, and so running into the land higher to us: and another without, that is to say, the Caspian sea, and that also of red sea. So there be these deep concavities and vallies of the Moon, and those in number three; whereof the greatest they call the hole or gulf of *Hecate*, wherein the souls do punish, and are punished: according as they either did or sufficed hurt while they were here: the other two \* be small, to wit, the very passages, whereby the souls must go, one while to the tract of the Moon lying toward heaven, and another while some read to that which regardeth the earth. And verily, that which looketh to heaven, they call the Elysian field, whereas the other earthward to us, the field of *Proserpina*, not her, I mean, who is under the ground that is to fight against us. Howbeit, the Demons do not converse alwaies in the Moon, but descend other-ways, long-ways higher below, for the charge and superintendence of Oracles: They be assitant likewise to the mysteries and ceremonies, and those they do celebrate, having and obtravert eye to wicked deeds which they punish; and withall, ready they are to preserve the good in perils as well of War as of the Sea. In which change and function, if they themselves commit any fault, and here upon earth do ought either by unjust favour or envy, they feel the smart thereof according to their merits: for thrust down they are by unjust favour or envy, they feel the smart thereof according to their merits: for thrust down they are again to the earth, and sent with a witness into mens bodies. But of the number of the better sort, are they who Erased and accompanied *Saturn*, as they themselves report; such as in times past also were the *Idei Daedali* in *Crete*, the Corybants in *Phrygia*, and those of Beotia in the City of *Lebadia*, named *Trophonades* besides, an infinite number of others in sundry parts of the earth habitable; whose names, Temples and Honours remain and continue unto this day, but the powers and puiffances of some do fall and are quite gone, as being translated into another place, and making a most happy change: which translation some obtain sooner, other later, after that the understanding is separate from the soul: and separated it is by the love and desire to enjoy the image of the Sun, by which that divine, blessed and desirable beauty which every nature after divers sorts seeketh after, shineth. For even the very Moon turneth about continually for the love of the Sun, as longing to company and converse with him, as the very fountain of all fertility. Thus the nature of the soul is spent in the Moon, retaining only certain prints, marks and dreams, as it were, of her life: and hereof, think it was well and truly said,

The soul made busy, as one would say,  
Like to a dream, and flew away.

which it doth not immediately upon her separation from the body, but afterwards, when she is alone by her self and severed from the understanding. And in truth, of all that ever *Homer* wrot, most divinely he seemeth to have written of those who are departed this life, and be among the spirits beneath, these verses:

Next him, I knew of *Hercules*  
the strength and image plain,  
Or semblance: for himself with gods  
immortal did remain.

For like as every one of us is not ire and courage, nor fear nor yet lust, no more than flesh or humours, but that indeed whereby we discourse and understand; even so, the soul it self being cast into a form by the understanding, and giving a form unto the body, and embracing it on every side, expresseth and receiveth a certain impression and figure, so as albeit she is distinctly separate both from understanding, and also from the body, she retaineth still the form and semblance a long time, in so much as well she may be called an image. And of these souls, as I have already said, the Moon is the Element, because souls do resolve into her, like as the bodies of the dead into the Earth. As for such as have been virtuous and honest, and which loved a studious and quiet life, employed in Philosophy, without meddling in troublesome affairs, soon are resolved, for that being left and rid of understanding, and using no more corporall passions, they vanish away incontinently; but souls of ambitious persons, and such as are busy in negotiations, of amorous folk also given



to the love of beautiful bodies, and likewise of wretched people, calling still to remembrance those things which they did in their life, even as dreams in their sleep, walk wandering to and fro, like to that ghost of *Endymion*: for considering their infancancy and apostasy to be over-subj. & unto passions, the same transporteth and plucketh them from the Moon unto another generation, not suffering them quietly there to pass, and vanish away, but still allureth and calleth them away: for now is there nothing small, staid, quiet, constant and accordant, after that being once abandoned of the understanding, they come to be seized with the passions of the body: so that of such souls void of reason, came and were bred afterwards the *Titys* and *Typhons*, and namely, that *Typhon* who in times past by force and violence seized the City *Delpbos*, and overturned up-side down the Sanctuary of the Oracle there; most ungracious Vile destitute of all reason and understanding, and abandoned to all passions upon a proud spirit and violence, wherewith they were puffed up. Howbeit, at length, after long time, the Moon receiveth the souls, and composeth them: the Sun also inspiring into them again, and sowing in their vital faculty, understanding, maketh them new souls: yea, and the Earth in the third place, giveth them a new body: for nothing doth she give after death, of all that which she taketh to generation. And the Sun receiveth nothing of others, but taketh again that understanding which he gave. But the Moon giveth and receiveth, joyneth and disjoyneth, uniteth and separateth, according to her divers faculties and powers: of which, the one is named *Ilithyia*, to wit, that which joyneth: another, *Atene* or *Diana*, which parteth and divideth. Of the three fatal Sisters or Destinies, she who they name *Anpe*, is placed within the Sun, and giveth beginning of generation. *Clotho* being lodged in the Moon, is she that joyneth, minglenth and uniteth. The third and last, called *Lachesis*, is in the Earth, who also lendeth her helping-hand, and doth participate much with Fortune. For, that which is without soul, is weak in it self, and naturally exposed to all injuries, and to suffer hurt: but the understanding is soveraign over all the rest, and nothing is able to do it injury. Now the soul is of a middle nature and mixt of them both, like as the Moon was made and created by God, as a composition and mixture of things above and things beneath; keeping the same proportion to the Sun, as the Earth doth to her. And thus you have heard (quoth *Sylla*) what I learned of this stranger or traveller; which (as he said himself) he understood by those Demons, who were Chamberlaines and Servitors to *Saturn*. As for you, O *Lampris*, and the rest, you may take my relation in good or ill part, as you please.

## Why the Prophetesse Pythia giveth no answers now from the Oracle, in verse or metre.

### The Summary.

They who have so highly chanted the excellency of man, extolling the vigor of humane wit and understanding; whatsoever they do allege to that purpose, have ordinarily forgot the principal, which is to show, that all the sufficiency of his intelligence, is a furious guide; his will, a bottomlesse gulfe and pit of confusion; the light of his reason, a deep dark night; his lusts and desires, so many enraged beasts to rent and tear him in pieces, if God by some especial and singular grace, do not illumine, regenerate and conduct him. Among a million of testimonies for the proof and confirmation hereof, that which presenteth it self unto us in this Dialogue is most sufficient: for is not this wonderful, and a certain signe of a marvellous blindness of man: wisdom done, to see those, who all their life time do nothing else but seek after the soveraign good, maintain vertue, detest vices, condemn Atheists, Epicureans, and Libertines; yet to dreads, fear, yea and adore the sworn enemies of their salvation and true life, to wit, Satan the Devil? Yes verily, and that which now we read, agreeable to certain discourses hereafter following, and namely, wherein a disputation is held, wherefore the Oracles now do cease? as also what this word *El* signifieth: sheweth not only the opinion of Plutarch and some other Philosophers as touching these matters: but also the miserable state of all those who are abandoned to their own sense, and void of the knowledge of the true God. And this ought to be remembered a second time, for fear lest in reading these discourses so eloquently penned, we be turned out of the right way: but rather contrainse that we may perceive so much the better, how vain and detestable all the bable of man is, if it have for the ground and foundation, nothing but the conceits of his corrupt spirit. So then in this Dialogue, we may behold the wisdom of the Greeks, running after Satan: and taking great paines for to stir and set on foot one matter, which we ought to abhor and bury in perpetual oblivion: or to touch with all their might and main beside that which the wisdom of the flesh cannot compass. There be here divers personages who revive and set a work the Oracles of that Priestesse or Prophetesse at *Delpbos*, where was the renowned Temple of *Apollo* the chief God of that *Satana*, and wherein he exercised his trade and skill, with impostures and illusions incredible, during the space of many years. But to make this disputation of more force and validity, Plutarch after his accustomed fashion of brooding and introducing his own opinion by a bird, following the stile and manner of the Academicks writing, bringeth to *Delpbos* a stranger, whoobing together with *Basilcloes*, *Philinus*, and other assembled and occupied in beholding the statues which were there in great number, there began a discourse by way of disputation touching brass, and the property thereof. Which when it was well discussed and debated, *Diogenianus* demanded, why the ancient Oracles were delivered in homely verse, and those in evil fashion? whereto

whereto there were made divers answers tending to this point, to make us believe, that wheresoever the words himself truly, and worst couched, there we are to observe so much the more the excellency of the Author. And this confirmeth fully, that which we have already spoken as touching the illusions of the Devil, who is not content thus to abuse and deceive his slaves, but in this place hath to dole with a ridiculous and most apparent adocusness, if the eyes of those whom he thus abuseth, had never so little means to see the thousand part of his deceitful guiles, as gresse and thick as mountains. Continuing this discourse they handle afterwards the prefaces of these statues, and of others reaved in divers places for the better authorising of the Oracles; which when Boethius the Epicurian mocked, Plutarch replieth and re-entrench into a common place, concerning the gravity of these rude and ill-fashion'd Oracles; conversing them with those of *Sibylls*, and maintaining the authority of them with his companions, through all the reasons they could devise. These be in sum, the contents of this Dialogue, which comprehendeth divers matters dependent thereof, and those noted in their order: the conclusion whereof is this, that as reprobable they be, who tax the simplicity and rudeness of such Oracles, as those, who otherwise control them for their ambiguity, obliquity and obscurity.

## Why the Prophetesse Pythia giveth no answers now from the Oracle, in verse or metre.

*Basilcloes.*

Y ou have led this stranger, *Philinus*, such a walk in shewing him the statues and publick works, that you have made it very late in the evening, and I my self am weary in staying for you, and expecting when you will make an end.

*Philinus.*

No marvel, we go so softly, and keep so slow a pace, O *Basilcloes*, sowing and mowing (as they say) presently withall, our speeches after fight and combat, which sprout forth and yield unto us by the way as we go, enemies lying as it were in ambush, much like unto those men which in old time came up with tooth fowen by *Cadmus*.

*Basilcloes.*

How then? shall we fend for and intreat some one of those who were present there, or will you your self gratifie us so much, as to take the paines for to deliver unto us, what speeches those were, and who were the speakers?

*Philinus.*

I must be the man, I perceive *Basilcloes*, to do this for your sake; for hardly shall you meet with any other else throughout the whole City: for I saw the most part of them going up again together, with that stranger to *Corycium* and *Lycuria*.

*Basilcloes.*

What? is this stranger so curious and desirous to see things, and is he withall friendly and wonderful sociable?

*Philinus.*

Yes that he is, but more studious is he, and desirous to learn: neither is this most worthy of admiration in him; for he hath a kinde of mildness; accompanied with a singular good grace: his pregnancy and quick conceit minisheth unto him matter to contradict, and to propole doubts: howbeit the same is not bitter and odious in his propositions, nor leavened with any overthwart frowardness and perverse stubbornness in his answers; in such sort as a man having been but a little acquainted with him, would soon say of him:

*Certes a lewd man and a bad,*

*He never for his father bad.*

For you know well I suppose *Diogenianus*, the best man one of them in the world?

*Basilcloes.*

I know him not my self, *Philinus*: howbeit, many there be who report: as much of this young man. But upon what occasion or cause began your discourse and disputation?

*Philinus.*

Those who were our guides, conversant and exercised in the reading of Histories, rehearsed and read from one end to the other, all those compositions which they had written, without any regard of that which we requested them, namely, to Epitomize and abridge those narrations, and most part of the Epigrams. As for the stranger, he took much pleasure to see and view those fair statues; so many in number, and so artificially wrought: But he admired most of all, the fresh brightness of the brass, being such as shewd no filth nor rust that it had gathered, but carried the glossie and resplendent hew of azure: so as he seemed to be ravished and astonished when he beheld the statues of the Admirals and Captains at Sea (for at them he began) as representing naturally in their Tincture and Colour as they flood, Sea-men and Sailors in the very main and deep Sea. Whereupon had the ancient workmen (quoth he) a certain mixture by themselves, and a temper of their brass, that might give such Tincture to their works? for as touching the Corinthian brass, which is so much renowned, it is thought generally, and so given out, that it was by meer adventure and chance, that it took this goodly colour, and

not

not by any art: by occasion that the fire caught an house, wherein there was laid up some little Gold and Silver, but a great quantity of Brasse, which metals being melted together and so confused one with another, the whole masse thereof was still called brasse because there was more thereof in it, than of the other metals. Then *Theon* We have heard (quoth he) another reason, more subtle than this, namely, that when a certain brasse Founder or Copper-smith in *Corinth*, had met with a Casket or Coffer, wherein was good store of Gold, fearing lest he should be discovered, and this treasure found in his hands, he clipped it by little and little, melted and mixed it gently with his brasse, which took thereupon such an excellent and wonderful temperature, that he sold the pieces of work, thereof made, passing deer, in regard of their dainty colour, and lovely beauty, which every man set much by, and esteemed. But both this and the other is but a lying tale: for by all likelihood this *Corinthian* brasse was a certain mixture and temperature of metals, so prepared by art-like as at this day, *Arcifans* by tempering gold and silver together, make thereof a certain singular and exquisite pale yellow by it self, howbeit, in mine eyes, the same is but a wan and sickly colour, and a corrupt hue, without any beauty in the world. What other cause then might there be (quoth *Diogenianus*) as you think, that this brasse here hath such a tincture? To whom *Theon* made this answer: considering (quoth he) that of these primitive elements and most natural bodies that are, and ever shall be, to wit, fire, air, water and earth, there is not one which approacheth or toucheth these brasse works, but air only, it must of necessity be, that it is the air which doth the deed, and by reason of this air lying always close upon them, and never parting thereof, cometh this difference that they have from all others. Or rather this is a thing notoriously known of old, even before *Theogius* was born, as said the comical Poet.

But would you know by what special property and virtue the air should by touching, set such a colour upon brasse? Yes, very fain answered *Diogenianus*. Certes, so would I to, my son (quoth *Theon*) let us therefore search into the thing both together in common: and first of all, if you please, what is the cause that oyl filleth it full of rust, more than all other liquor whatsoever? for surely it cannot be truly said, that oyl of it self setteth the said rust upon it, considering it is pure and neat, not polluted with any filth when it cometh to it. No verily (quoth the young man) and there seemeth to be some other cause else, beside the oyl; for the rust meeting with oyl, which is subtle, pure, and transparent, appeareth most evidently; whereas in all other liquors, it maketh no show, nor is seen at all. Well said my son (quoth *Theon*) and like a Philosopher: but consider, if you think I go good of that reason which *Aristotle* allegeth. Marry that I will (quoth he again.) Why then I will tell you (quoth *Theon*) *Aristotle* saith, that the rust of brasse lighting upon other liquors, pierceth insensibly, and is dispersed through them, being of a rare substance, and unequal parts, not abiding close together; but by reason of the compact and fast solidity of oyl, the said rust is kept in, and abideth thrust and united together. Now then, if we also of our selves were able to presuppose such a thing, we should not altogether want some means to charm as it were and allay somewhat this doubt of ours. And when we had allowed very well of his speech, and requested him to say on and prosecute the same: he said; That the air in the City of *Delphos* was thick, fast, strong and vehement withall, by reason of the reflexion and repercussion of the mountains round about it, and besides, mordicative, as witnesseth the speedy concoction of meat that it causeth. Now this air by reason of the subtilty and incisive quality thereof, piercing into the brasse, and cutting it, forceth out of it a deal of rust, and skaleth as it were much terrible substance from it: the which it restraineth afterwards and keepeth in, for that the density and thicknesse of the air giveth it no issue: thus this rust being staid and remaining still, gathering also a substance by occasion of the quantity thereof, putteth forth this flour as it were of colour, and there with in the superficies contracteth a resplendent and shining hew. This reason of his, we approved very well; but the stranger said, that one of those suppositions alone was sufficient to make good the reason: For that subtilty (quoth he) seemeth to be somewhat contrary unto the spissitude and thicknesse, supposed in the air: and therefore it is not necessary to make any supposal thereof; for brasse of it self as it waxeth old, in tract of time exhaleth and putteth forth this rust, which the thicknesse of the air coming upon, keepeth in and doth so increase, as that through the quantity thereof, it maketh it evident and apparent. Against which objection and reply of his, *Theon* inferred thus again: And what should hinder (quoth he) that one and the same thing might not be firm or subtle, and withall thick, both at once: like as his clothes of silk, and linnen, of which *Homer* writeth thus:

*And from fait-web of linnen, ran away,  
The oyl as moist as tis and would not stay.*

Whereby he giveth us to understand, the fine spinning, and close weaving thereof, which would not suffer the oyl to rest upon it, and soak through, but to glide off and drop down, so neat were the threads, otherwise small, driven together, and so thick, that it would not let any liquor to passe through. And thusa man may allege the subtilty of the air, not only for to fetch out the rust, but also to bring it to a more pleasant and greenish colour, by mixing splendour and light together with the said deep azure. Hereupon ensued a pause and silence for a pretty while; and then the discourssers and Historians above said, alleged again the words of a certain Oracle in verse (which was delivered, if I be not deceived) as touching the Royalty and Reign of *Aegon*, an *Argive* King: Whereas *Diogenianus* said, that it had been many times in his head to marvel, at the base, rude, and homely composition of those verses, which do contain Oracles: notwithstanding that the god *Apollo* is reputed the president of the Muses and eloquence; unto whom no less appertained the beauty and

and elegance of stile and composition, than goodnesse of voice in song and melody, as who surpasseth for sweet versifying *Hesiodus* and *Homer*, both very far: and yet for all that, we see many of his Oracles, rude, base, and faulty, as well for the metre and measure, as the bare words. Then *Serapion* the Poet, who being come from *Athens*, was there present: Why (quoth he) believe you that those verses were of god *Apolloes* making? shall we suffer you to say as you do, that they come a great way short of the goodnesse of those verses which *Homer* and *Hesiodus* composed? and shall we not use them as passing well, and excellently made, correcting our own judgment as forestalled and possessed aforehand with an ill custom? Then *Boethius* the Geometrician (for you wot well that the *man* hath ranged himself already to the sect of *Epicurus*;) Heard you never (quoth he) the tale of *Paufon* the Painter: Not I verily, quoth *Serapion*. And yet worth it is the hearing, saith *Boethius*. He having bargained and undertaken to paint an Horse wallowing and tumbling on his back, drew him running on foot with all four: whereas when the party was angry and offended, who set him a work, *Paufon* laughed at him, and made him more ado, but turned the ends of the painted tale; thus when the upper end was shifted downward, the horse seemed not to run, but to tumble with his heels aloft. Semblably it falleth out (quoth *Boethius*) in certain speeches, when they are inverted and uttered the contrary way: And therefore some you shall have who will say, that the Oracles are not elegant, because they be of god *Apolloes* inditing: but contrariwise, that they be none of his, because they are but rudely made and unadvised: and as for that it is doubtful and uncertain: but this is evident and plain, that the verses of Oracles be not exquisitely couched, and labouriously ended, whereof I crave no better judge than your self *Serapion*, for you are wont to compose and write Poems, which as touching the argument and subject matter be austere and Philosophical: but for their wit, grace and elegant composition, otherwise resemble rather the verses of *Homer* and *Hesiodus*, than those of the Oracles pronounced by *Pythia* the Priestesse of *Apollo*. With that *Serapion*: We are diseased all of us (O *Boethius*) in our eyes and ears too, being wont (such is our nice and delicacy) to esteem and term fine things simply better, which are more pleasant: and peradventure ere it be long, we will finde fault with *Pythia*, for that she doth not chaunt and sing more sweetly than *Clauce* the professed minstrel and singing wench; and because she is not befmeared with odoriferous oyle, nor richly arrayed in purple robes; yea, and so we haply will take exception at her, for not burning Cinamon, *Ladanium* or Frankincense, for perfume: but only Laurel and Barmyle. And see you not faith one, how great a grace the Sapphic verses carry with them, and how they tickle the ears, and joy the hearts of the hearers? whereas *Sibylla* out of her furious and enraged mouth, as *Heracitus* saith, uttering forth and rebounding words without mirth, and provoking no laughter, nor gloriously painted and set out, nor pleasantly perfumed and spiced, hath continued with her voice a thousand years, by the means of *Apollo*, speaking by her. And *Pindarus* saith, that *Cadmus* heard from *Apollo*, not lofty and high Mulick, not sweet, not delicate, nor broken and full of variety: for an impassible and holy nature, admitteth not any pleasure: but there together with the base mulick, the most part of the delight also is cast down, and as it should seem, hath run into mens ears and possessed them. When *Serapion* had thus said: *Theon* smiling; *Serapion*, I see well (quoth he) hath done according to his old wont, and followed his own disposition and manners in this behalf: for there being offered some occasion to speak of pleasure, he hath quickly caught at it. But yet for all that, let us *Boethius*, howsoever the verses of Oracles be worse than those of *Homer*, not think that it is *Apollo* who made them; but when he hath given only the beginning of motion, then each Prophetesse is moved according as she is disposed to receive his inspiration. And verily if Oracles were to be penned down and written, and not to be barely pronounced, I do not suppose that we would reprove or blame them (taking them to be the hand-writing of the god) because they are not so curiously ended as ordinarily the Letters of Kings and Princes are. For surely, that voice is not the gods, nor the found, nor the phrase, ne yet the metre and verse, but a woman they be all. As for him, he presenteth unto her, fancies only and imaginations, kindling a light in the soul to declare things to come: and such an illumination as this, is that which they call *Embusiasmes*. But to speak in a word to you that are the Priests and Prophets of *Epicurus* (For I see well that you are now become one of that sect) there is no means to escape your hands, considering that ye impute unto the ancient Prophetesses, that they made bad faulty verses, yet reprove those modern Priestesses of these daies, who pronounce in prose and in vulgar terms the Oracles, for fear they should be artied against by you, in case they delivered their verses headlesse, without loines and curtailed. Then (quoth *Diogenianus*) I sett not with us I pray you in the name of God, but rather assill us this common doubt, and rid us of this scruple: for there is no man, but desirous to know the reason and cause, why this Oracle hath given over to make answer in verses and other speeches as it hath done? Whereto *Theon* spake thus: But now my son, we may seem to do wrong and shameful injury unto our discourssers and directors here, these Historians, in taking from them that which is their office: and therefore let be done first which belongeth to them; and afterwards you may enquire and dispute at leisure of that which you desire. Now by this time were we gone forward as far as to the statue of *Kier Hero*: and the stranger, albeit he knew well all the rest, yet so courteous he was and of so good a nature, that he gave ear with all patience to that which was related unto him: but having heard that there stood sometime a certain column of the said *Hiero* all of brasse, which fell down of it self the very day whereon *Hiero* died at *Saracusa* in *Sicilie*, he wondered thereat: and I thereupon recounted unto him other like examples; as namely, of *Hiero* the Spartan, how the day before that he lost his life in the Battel at *Leutroes*, the eyes of his statue fell out of the head: also that the two Stars

which

which *Lyfander* had dedicated after the navall battell at the River called *Agos-potamos*, were milling and not to be seen : and his very statue of stone put forth of a sudden so much wild weeds and green grass in fo great quantity that it covered and hid the face thereof. Moreover during the time of those wofull calamities which the *Athenians* sustained in *Sicilie*, not only the golden dates of a Palm tree fell down, but also the Ravens came and picked with their bills all about the Scutchion or shield of the image of *Pallas*. The *Cnidians* coroner likewise which *Philomelus* the tyrant of the *Phocæans* had given unto *Pharfabia* the fine dancing Wench, was the cause of her death : for when she had passed out of *Greece* into *Italy*, one day as she played and danced about the Church of *Apollo* in *Maropontine*, having the said coronet upon her head, the young men of the City came upon her for to have away the gold of that coronet : and striving about her one with another who should have it, tare the poor woman in pieces among them. *Aristotle* was wont to say that *Homer* was the only Poet who made and devised words that had motion, fo emphaticall they were and lively expressed; but I for my part would say, that the offerings dedicated in the city, to neat statues, jewels, & other ornaments moved together with the divine providence, do foreshew future things : neither are the same in any part vain and void of sense; but all replenished with a divine power. Then *Boethus* : I would not esse (quoth he) : for it is not sufficient belike, to enclose God once in a moneth within a mortall body, unless we thrust him also into every stone and piece of brass : as if fortune and chance were not sufficient of themselves to work such feats and accidents. What (quoth I) think you then that these things every one have any affinity with fortune and chance? & is it probable that your Atoms do glide, divide, & decline, neither before nor after, but just at the very time as each one of them who made these offerings, should fare better or worse? And *Epicurus* belike, as far as I see serveth your turn now and is profitable unto you in those things which he hath said or written three hundred years past : but this god *Apollo*, unless he imprison and immure himself (as it were) and be mixed within every thing, is not able in your opinion, to give any thing in the world the beginning of motion, nor the cause of any passion or accident whatsoever. And this was the answer which I made unto *Boethus* for that point : and in like manner spake I as touching the verses of *Sybilla*. For when we were come as far as to the rock which joyneth to the senate-house of the City, and there rested our selves, upon which rock by report the first *Sybilla* sat, being new come out of *Helicon*, where she had been fostered by the Muses, although others there be that say she arrived at *Malcom*, and was the Daughter of *Lania*, who had *Neptune* for her Father, *Serapion* made mention of certain verses of hers, wherein she praised her self saying, that she should never cease to prophesie and foretell future things, no not after her death; for that the her self should then go about in the Moon, and betwix which is called the face therein appearing : also that her breath and spirit mingled with the air should passe to and fro continually in propheticall words and voices of Oracles prognosticating : and that of her body transmuted and converted into earth, there should grow Herbs, Shrubs, and Plants, for the food and palturage of sacred beasts appointed for sacrifices : whereby they have all sorts of formes and qualities in their bowels and inwards : and by the natures whereof men may foreknow and foretell of future events. Herat *Boethus* made semblance to laugh more than before. And when *Zous* alleged, that howsoever these seemed to be fabulous matters and meer fables, yet so it was that many subversions and trasnmigrations of Greek Cities, many expeditions also and voiaiges made against them of barbarous armies, as also the overthrowes and destructions of sundry kingdomes and dominions, give testimony in the behall of ancient prophecies and predictions. And as for these late & modern accidents (quoth he) which happed at *Cumes* and *Dicaearchia*, long before chanted and foretold by way of Prophecie out of *Sybilla* books; did not the time insuing as a debt accomplish and pay? the breakings forth and eruptions of fire out of a mountain, the strange ebullitions of the sea, the casting up aloft into the air of stones and cinders by subterranean winds under the earth, the ruine and devastation of so many and those fo great Cities at one time, and that so suddenly, as they that came but the next morrow thither, could not see where they stood or were built, the place was so confuted. These strange events (I say) and occurrences, as they be hardly believed to have happened without the finger of God, so much less credible it is, that foretold and foretold they might be, without some heavenly power and divinity. Then *Boethus* : And what accident (good sir, quoth he) can there be imagined, that Time oweth not unto Nature; and what is there so strange, prodigious and unexpected, as well in the sea as upon the land, either concerning whole Cities or particular persons; but if a man foretold of them, in proceesse and tract of time the same may fall out accordingly? And yet, to speak properly, this is not retelling, but simply telling, or rather to cast forth and scatter at random in that infinity of the air, words having no original nor foundation, which wandering in this wife, Fortune otherwhiles encountereth and concurrerth with them at a very at a very venture. For there is a great difference, in my judgement, between saying thus, that a thing is happed which hath been spoken; and a thing is spoken that shall happen : for that speech which uttereth things that are not extant, containing in it self the fault and error, attendeth not by any right, the credit and approbation thereof, by the accidental event; neither useth it any true and undoubted token of prediction, with a certain foreknowledge, that happen it will when it hath been once foretold, considering that infinity is apt to produce all things; but he who guesseth well, whom the common proverb pronounceth to be the best diviner,

For whose conjecture misgath-least,  
Him I account the wisest best.

resembleth him, who traceth out and followeth by probabilities as it were by tracts and footings, that

that which is to come. But these Propheticall *Sibyls* and furious *Bacchides*, have cast at all adventure as it were, into a vast Ocean, without either judgement or conjecture, the time; yea, and have scattered at random the Nouns and Verbs; the words and speeches of passions and accidents of all sorts. And albeit some of them fortune fo to happen, yet is this or that false alike at the present time when it is uttered, although haply the same may chance afterwards to fall out truly. When *Boethus* had thus discoursed, *Serapion* replied upon him in this wife : *Boethus* (quoth he) giveth a good verdict and just sentence of those propositions which are indefinitely and without a certain subject matter in this manner pronounced. If victory be foretold unto a General, he hath vanquished : if the destruction of a City, it is overthrowen : but whereas there is expressed not only the thing that shall happen, but also the circumstances, how, when, after what sort, and wherewith, when is not this a bare guess and conjecture of that which peradventure will be; but a prefigination and denouncing peremptorily of such things as without fail shall be : as for example, that Prophecie which concerned the lameness of *Agaplanus*, in these words :

Though proud and haughty (Sparta) now,  
and found of foot thou be,  
Take heed by halting regiment,  
there come no harm to thee :  
For then shall unexpected plagues  
thy state long time assail,  
The deadly waves of fearful wars  
against thee shall prevail.

Seemably, that Oracles touching the life which the Sea made and discovered about *Thera* and *Therissa*, as also the Prophecie of the War between King *Philip* and the *Romans*, which ran in these words :

But when the race of Trojan blood,  
Phœnicians shall defeat  
In bloody fights, look then to see  
strange sights and wonders great.  
The sea shall from amid the waves  
yield fiery tempests strong,  
And flashes thick of lightning bright,  
with stony storms among;  
With that an Island shall appear,  
that never man yet knew :  
And weaker men in battel set,  
the mightier shall subdue.

For whereas the *Romans* in a small time conquered the *Carthaginians*, after they had vanquished *Annibal* in the field, and *Philip* King of the *Macedonians* gave Battel unto the *Etolians* and *Romans*, wherein he had the overthrow; also, that in the end there arose an Island out of the deep Sea, with huge leams of fire and hideous gusts : a man cannot say, that all these things happed and concurred together by fortune and meer chance; but the very train and orderly proceeding thereof, doth shew a certain prescience and fore-knowledge. Also, whereas the *Romans* were foretold the time five hundred years before, wherein they should have War with all Nations at once, the same was fulfilled when they warred against the slaves and fugitives who revolted and rebelled. For in all these, there is nothing conjectural and uncertain, nothing blinde and doubtful, that we need infinitely to seek after fortune therefore : whereas many pledges there be of experience, giving us assurance of that which is finite and determinate, shewing the very way, whereby fatal destiny doth proceed. Neither do I think any man will say, that these things being foretold with so many circumstances, jumped all together by fortune. For what else should hinder, but that a man may aswell say (*O Boethus*) that *Epicurus* wrote not his Books of principal opinions and doctrines so much approved of you, but that all the letters thereof were jumbled and huddled together by meer chance and fortune, that went to the composing and finishing of that volume? Thus discoursing in this manner, we went forward still. And when in the *Corinthian* Chappel we beheld the Date tree of brass, the only monument there remaining of all the oblations there offered, *Diogenianus* wondred to see the Frogs and Water-snakes which were wrought artificially by *Turners* hand about the butt and root thereof; and so did we likewise : because neither the Palm-tree is a Moory plant and loving the waters, like as many other trees are : neither do the Frogs any way pertain to the *Corinthians*, as a mark or ensigne given in the arms of their City : like as the *Selinuian*, by report, offered sometimes in this Temple, the herb *Smaloch* or *Parley*, called *Selinum*, all of gold : and the *Tenedians*, an hatchet, taken from the *Crabfishes* bred in their Island, near unto the Promontory called *Asterion* : for those Crabs only (as it is thought) have the figure of an hatchet imprinted upon their shell. And verily, for *Apollo* himself, we suppose that Ravens, Swans, Wolves, Hawks, or any other beasts be more acceptable than these. Now when *Serapion* alleged, that the workman hereby meant and covertly signified the nouriture and rising of the Sun out of humours and waters, which by exhalation he converteth into such creatures, whether it were that he heard this verse our of *Homer*,

Then out of sea arose the Sun,  
And left that goodly lake anon,

Or seen the Egyptians to represent the East or Sun-rising by the picture of a child sitting upon the plant *Lotus*. Thereat I laughed heartily. What mean you thus (good fair, quoth I) to thrust hither the sect of the Stoicks: came you indeed to foist slyly among our speeches and discourses, your exhalations and kindlings of the stars, not bringing down hither the Sun and the Moon, as the Thesalian Women do by their incantations but making them to spring & arise as from their first original out of the earth and the waters? For *Plato* verily, called man a celestiall plant, as rising directly from his root above, which is his head. But you in the mean time mock and deride *Empedocles*, for saying that the Sun occasioned by the reflection of the heavenly light above the earth,

*His rays with sealesse visage sends again,  
Up to the Heavens, and there doth brightly shine,*

while your selves make the Sun terrestrial, animal, or a fennish plant, ranging him among the waters and the native place of frogs. But let us brake all these matters to the tragical and strange monstrosities of the Stoicks: mean while treat we cursorily and by the way of these accessory and by-works of mechanick artificers and handicrafts men: for surely in many things they be very ingenious and witty: marry in every plot they cannot avoid the note of bald devices and aff. And curiosity in their inventions. Like as therefore he that painted *Apollo* with a cock upon his hand, signified thereby the day-break, and the time a little before the sun rising: even so a man may say that these frogs do symbolize and betoken the season of the Spring, at what time as the Sun begins to rule over the air, and to disscuse the Winter: at least waies if we must according to your opinion, understand the Sun and *Apollo* to be both, one god, and not twain. Why? (quoth *Serapion*) are you of another mind? and do you think the Sun to be one, and *Apollo* another? Yes marry do I (quoth he) as well as, that the Sun and Moon do differ. Yea and more than so: for the Moon doth not often, nor from all the world hide the Sun: whereas the Sun hath made all men together, for to be ignorant of *Apollo*: diverting the mind and cogitation by the means of the sense, and turning it from that which is, unto that which appeareth only. Then *Serapion* demanded of those Historians our guides and conductors, what was the reason that the forsaid Cell or Chapell, was not intuled by the name of *Apollo*, who dedicated it, but called the *Corinthians* Chapell. And when they held their peace, because, as I take it, they knew not the cause; I began to laugh thereat: and why should we think (quoth I) that these men knew or remembered any thing more, being astounded and amazed as they were to hear you fable and talk of the meteors or impressions in the Air? For even themselves we heard before relating, that after the tyranny of *Cypselus* was put down and overthrown, the *Corinthians* were desirous to have the inscriptions as well of the golden statue at *Pisa*, as of this Cell or Treasure-house, for to run in the name of their whole City. And verily the *Delphians* gave and granted them some according to their due desert. But for that the *Elians* envied them that privilege, therefore the *Corinthians* passed a publick decree, by virtue whereof they excluded them from the solemnity of the *Isthmian* games: And hercof it came, that never after that, any Champion out of the Territory of *Elio*, was known to shew himself to do his devoir at those *Isthmick* games. And the massacre of the *Atreides* which *Hercules* committed about the City of *Cleone*, was not the cause as some do think, why the *Elians* were debarred from thence, for contrariwise it had belonged to them for to exclude and punish by others; if for this they had incurred the displeasure of the *Corinthians*. And thus much said I for my part. Now when we were come as far as to the Hall of the *Arantians* and of *Brasidas*, our discoursing Historians and Expositors shewed us the place, where sometimes stood the obelisks of iron, which *Rhodopis* the famous Courtisan had dedicated. Whereat *Dionentanus* was in a great chafe, and brake out into these words: Now surely (quoth he) the same City (to their shame be it spoken) hath allowed unto a common strumpet a place whither to bring and where to bestow the tenth part of that salary which he got by the use of her body, and unjustly to put to death *Aesop* her fellow servant. True (quoth *Serapion*): but are you so much offended heretofore? cast up your eye and look alect: behold among the statues of brave Capitaines and glorious Kings, the image of *Muefarete*, all of beaten gold, which *Crates* faith was dedicated and set up for a Trophe of the Greeks lasciviousness. The young Gentleman, seeing it: Yea, but it was of *Phryne* that *Crates* spake so. You say true (quoth *Serapion*): for her proper name indeed was *Muefarete*: but surnamed he was *Phryne* in jest, because the looked pale or yellow like unto a kinde of Froge named in Greek *Phryne*. And thus many times surnames do drown and suppress other names. For thus the Mother of King *Alexander* the Great, who had for her name at first, *Pollyxene*, came afterwards to be as they say, *Callianax*, *Myrrale*, *Olympias* and *Stratonice*. And the Corinthian Lady *Eumetis*, men call unto this day, after her Fathers name, *Cleobulines*, and *Herophile*, of the City *Erythre*, the who had the gift of divination and could skill of prophetic; was afterwards in process of time surnamed *Sibylla*. And you have heard Graminarians say, that even *Leda* her self, was named *Mufine*, and *Orestes*, *Achens*. But how think you (quoth he) calling his eye upon *Theon*, to answer this accusation as touching *Phryne*? Then he smiling again: In such sort (quoth he) as I will charge and accuse you, for busying your self in blaming thus the light faults of the Greeks. For like as *Socrates* reproved this in *Callias*, that gave diligence only to sweet perfumes or precious odors; for he liked well enough to see the dances and gesticulations of young boyes, and could abide the sight of killings, of pleasures, buffons and jesters to make talk laugh: for methinks that you would chafe and exclude out of the Temple, one poor silly Woman who used the beauty of her own body, hardly not so honestly as he might: and in the mean time you can abide to see god *Apollo* environed round about with the first fruits, with the tenth and other oblations

otions arising from murders, wars, and pillage, and all his Temple throughout hanged with the spoils and booties gotten from the Greeks: yea, and are neither angry nor take pity when you read, over such goodly oblations, and ornaments, these most shameful inscriptions and titles: *Brasidas* and the Acanthians, of the Athenian spoils: the Athenians of the Corinthians: the Phocazans of the Theffilians: the Onesates of the Sicyonians: and the Amphylions of the Phocazans.

But peradventure it was *Praxiteles* alone who was offensive unto *Crates*, for that he had set up a monument there, of his own sweet-heart, which he had made for the love of her: whereas *Crates* contrariwise should have commended him, in that among these golden images of Kings and Princes, he had placed a Courtisan in gold, reproaching thereby and condemning riches, as the having in it nothing to be admired, and nothing venerable: for it well befecmeth Kings and great Rulers, their temperance and magnanimity; & not make shew of their golden lore and abundance of superfluous delicacies, whereof they have their part commonly who have lived most shamefully. But you allege not this example of *Crates* (quoth another of our Historians and directours) who caused a statue in gold to be made and set up here, of his woman-baker; which he did not for any proud and insolent ostentation of his riches in this Temple, but upon an honest and just occasion: for the report goeth, that *Abyates* the father of this *Crates* espoused a second wife, by whom he had other children, whom he reared and brought up. This Lady then purposing secretly to take away the life of *Crates*, gave unto the Baker store of bread, poisoning her, when he had tempered it with dough, and wrought it into bread, to serve the same up unto *Crates*. But the woman gave secret Intelligence hercof unto *Crates*, and which he had done, with the testimony, as it were, of this god himself: wherein he did well and veriously. And therefore (quoth he) meet it is and seemly, to praise and honour highly such oblations, if any have been presented and dedicated by Cities upon femorable occasions, like as the Opuntians did. For when the Tyrants of the Phocazans had broken and melted many sacred oblations both of gold and silver, and thereof coyned money, which they sent and dispersed among the Cities; the Opuntians gathered as much silver as they could, wherewith they filled a great pot, sent it hither, and made thereof an offering to *Apollo*. And I verily, for my part, do greatly commend those of *Smyrna* and *Apollonia* for sending hither certain corn-cars of gold, in token of Harvest: and more than that, the Eretrians and Magnisians, for presenting this god with the first fruits of their men and women, recognising thereby, him to be the giver, not only of the fruits which the earth yieldeth, but also of children, as being the author of generation and the lover of mankind. But I blame the Megarians as much, for that they only in manner of all the Greeks, caused to be erected here, the image of this our god, with a Lance in his hand, after the Battell with the Athenians, who upon the defeature of the Persians, held their City in possession, and were by them vanquished in fight, and disfigured thereof again. And yet true it is, that these men afterward offered unto *Apollo* a golden Plectre wherewith to play upon his Cittern or Viole, having heard (as it should seem) the Poet *Sythyinus*, speaking of the said instrument:

*Which Don't Apollo, fair and lovely Son  
Of Jupiter, doth tune in skilful wise,  
As who is wont of all things wrought and done,  
All ends with their beginnings to comprize:  
And in his hand the plectre bright as gold,  
Even glittering rays of shining Sun doth hold.*

Now when *Serapion* would have said somewhat else of these matters: A pleasure it were (quoth the stranger) to hear you devise and discourse of such like things, but I must needs demand the first promise made unto me, as touching the cause why the Prophetesse *Pythia* hath given over to make answer any longer by Oracle, in verse and metre: and therefore, if it so please you, let us successe visiting the rest of these oblations and ornaments, and rather sit wedown in this place, for to hear what can be said of this matter, being the principal point and main reason which impeacheth the credit of this Oracle: for that of necessity one of these two things must needs be: either that the Prophetesse *Pythia* approacheth not near enough to the very place where the divine power is, or else that the air which was wont to breath and inspire this infirmity, is utterly quenched, and the puissance quite gone and vanished away. When we had fetched therefore a circuit about, we saw the Earth, where we beheld the waters of the Temple, near unto the Chapel of *Tellus*, that is to say, the Earth, where we beheld the waters of the Fountain *Castilus*: and the Temple of the Muses, with admiration, in such sort as *Crates* incontinently said, that the very place it self made much for the question and doubt moved by the stranger: For in old time (quoth he) there was a Temple of the Muses even there, from whence the River springs; insumch as they used this water for the solemn libations at sacrifices, according as *Simonides* writeth in this wise:

*Where water pure is kept in basons fair  
Beneath, of Muses with their yellow hair.*

And in another place, the same *Simonides* with a little more curiosity of words, calling upon *Clio* the Muse, faith, she is the holy keeper.

The sacred ewrs, who doth superintend  
Whereby from lovely fountains do descend  
Those waters pure, which all the world admires,  
And thereof for to have a taste desires:  
As rising from those Caves Prophetically,  
That yield sweet odours most miraculously.

And therefore Eudoxus was much overcon to believe those who gave out, that this was called the water Styx. But in truth, they placed the Muses as Assistants to Divination, and the Wardens thereof, near unto that riveret, and the Temple of Tellus afore said, whereunto appertained the Oracle: whereby answers were rendered in verse and song. And some there be who say, that the Heroick verse was first heard here:

Συμμήνητες ἤνευ θυμῷ, κλέψτε τὰ μέλιθ' ὀνόμα

That is to say,

Thou pretty Bees and Birds that sing,  
Bring hither both your wax and wing;

at what time as the Oracle being forsaken and destitute of the god Apollo, lost all the Dignity and Majesty that it had. Then Serapion: These things indeed (quoth he) O Boethus, are more meet and convenient for the Muses. For we ought not to fight against God, nor together with Propheete and Divination take away both Providence and Divinity; but to seek rather for the solution of those reasons which seem contrary thereto, and in no wise to abandon and cast off that faith and Religious Belief, which hath in our Countrey, thise out of mind, passed from father to son. You say very well and truly (quoth I) good Serapion, for we despair not of Philosophie, as if it were quite overthrowen and utterly gone, because Philosophers before time, pronounced their Sentences, and published their Doctrines in verse: as for example, Orpheus, Hesiodus, Parmenides, Xenophanes, Empedocles, Thales, and afterwards ceased and gave over to scrissil all but your self, for you have into Philosophie reduced Poetrie again, to set up a loud and lofty note, for to incite and stir up young men. Neither is Alrologie of less credit and estimation, because Aristarchus, Timochares, Aristyllus, and Hipparchus have written in Prose: whereas Eudoxus, Hesiodus and Thales, wrote before them in verse of that Argument; at leastwise if it be true that Thales was the author of that Alrologie which is ascribed unto him. And Pindarus himself confesseth, that he doubted greatly of that manner of melody, which was neglected in his dayes, wondering why it was so despised. For I assure you it is no absurd thing, nor impertinent, to search the causes of such mutations: But to abolish all arts and faculties, if haply somewhat be changed or altered in them, I hold neither just nor reasonable. Then came in Thales also with his vice, adding moreover and saying, that it could not be denied, but that in this truth herein there have been great changes and mutations: howbeit, no less true it is, that even in this very place there have been many Oracles and answers delivered in Prose, and those concerning affairs, not of least Consequence, but of great importance. For as Thucydides reporteth in his History, when the Lacedæmonians demanded of the Oracle what issue there would be of the War which they waged against the Athenians? This answer was made: That they should obtain the victory, and hold still the upper hand; also that he would aid and succour them, both requested, and unrequested: and that unless they recalled home Panlanius, he would gather together \* \* \* of Silver. Scandalously, when the Athenians consulted with the Oracle about their successe in that war which they enterprised for the Conquest of Sicilie, this answer they received: that they should bring out of the City of Erythra, the Priestesse of Minerva: now the name of the said woman was Helyschia, that is to say, Repose or Quietnesse. Moreover, at what time as Dinomenes the Sicilian, would needs know of the Oracle, what should become of his sons? this answer was returned: that they should all three be Tyrants, and great Potentates: whereat when Dinomenes replied again: Yea marry, my good Lord Apollo, but peradventure they may rue that another day. Apollo answered: True indeed, and thus much morever I prophetic unto thee, for to be their destiny. And how this was fulfilled you all know: for Gelos during his Reign, had the dropsie: Hiero was diseased with the stone all the time of his Tyranny: and Thersiphibus being overtoiled with Wars and Civil Seditions in short time was dethroned and driven out of his Dominions. Moreover, Procles the Tyrant of Epidaurus, among many others, whom he had cruelly and unjustly put to death, murdered Timarchus, who fled from Athens unto him, with a great quantity of money, after he had received him into his protection, and shewed him many courtesies and kindneses at his first arrivall: him (I say) he slew, and afterwards cast into the Sea his Corps, which he had put into a chest: and howsoever other knew not of this murder, yet Cleander of Aegina, was privy thereto, and the Minister to execute the same. After this inproceeding of time, when he was fallen into troubles, and that his state began to be disquieted, he sent his brother Cleonius hither to the Oracle, to enquire secretly whether he were best to flee and retire himself out of the way. Apollo made this answer: That he granted Procles flight and retreat thither, where as he commanded his host of Aegina to bestow a Chest, or else where the Stags call their heads. The Tyrant understanding that Apollo willed him either to throw himself into the Sea, and there be drowned, or else to be entered in the ground, because Stags are wont to bury and hide their horns within the earth, when they be fallen, made no haile, but delayed the time: but after a while, when troubles grew more and more upon him, and all things went backward with him, every day worse than other, at length he fled: But the friends of Timarchus having overtaken him, slew him likewise, & flung his body into

into the sea. Furthermore (which is the greatest matter of all) those Rhethers, by vertue whereof, Igeorgus ordained the government of the Lacedæmonians Common-wealth, were delivered to him in prose. What should I speak of Alyrius, Herodotus, Philochorus, and Ister, who of all others travelled most in gathering of Oracles together, which were given in verse, and yet have penned many of them without verbe. And Theopompus, who studied, no man so much, to clear the History as touching Oracles; sharply reproveth those, who think that Pythia the Propheetesse in those dayes, gave no answers nor Propheetes in metre: which challenge of his when he minded to prove and make good, he could allege but very few examples; for that all the rest in manner were even then pronounced in prose, like as at this day, some there be that run in verse and metre. By which allegations of his, he made one above the rest notoriously divulged, which is this. There is within the province of Phocis, a certain Temple of Hercules, surnamed Misyne, as one would say, hating women: and by the ancient custom and Law of that Countrey, the priest thereof for the time being, must not in the whole year company with a woman: by occasion whereof, they chuse old men to this Priesthood: howsoever not long since, a certain young man, who was otherwise of no ill behaviour, but somewhat ambitious, and desirous of honour, and who besides loved a young Wench, attained to this prelacie or sacerdotal dignity: at the first he bridled his affection, and forbore the said damocell: howbeit, one time above the rest, when he was laid upon his bed, after he had drunk well, and been a dancing, the Wench came to visit him; and to be short, he dealt carnally with her; whereupon being much troubled in mind, and in fearful perplexity, he fled unto the Oracle, and inquired of Apollo as concerning the sin which he had committed, whether he might not be absolved for it by prayers or expiatory satisfaction? and this answer he received:

Ἐν παντί, ἀρκυεὶ ἀνθρώπων ὁδὸς;

\* All things necessary, God permitteth.

But if a man haply should grant that no answer in these days is delivered by Oracle, but in verse; yet would he be more in doubt of ancient Oracles, which sometime in metre and otherwhiles in prose gave answers. But neither the one nor the other (my Son) is strange & without reason, if so be you conceive aright and carry a pure and religious opinion of god Apollo, and do not think that the himself it was who in old time composed the verses, and at this day prompeth unto Pythia the prophecies, as if he spake through masks & visors. But this point is of such moment, that it requireth a longer discourse & farther inquiry into it: marily for this present it may suffice for our Learning, that we call to remembrance and put you in mind briefly, how the body useth many Organs or Instruments; that the Soul employeth the Body and the parts thereof, and that the Soul is the Organ or Instrument of God. Now the perfection of any Organ or Instrument, is principally to imitate & resemble that which useth it, as much as is in the power thereof: and to exhibit the work and effect of the intention in it self, and to shew the same not such as it is in the workman, pure, sincere, without passion, without error and faultlesse, but mixed and exposed to faults: for of it self obscure it is and altogether unknown to us; but it appeareth another, and by another, and is replenished with the nature of that other. And here I pass over to speak of Wax, Gold, Silver, Brasse, and all other sorts of matter and substance, which may be cast and brought into the form of a mould. For every of these verily receiveth one form of a similitude imprinted therein, but to this resemblance or representation, one adjoyneth this difference, and another that, of it self: as easily is to be seen, by the infinit diversities of formes in images, as also by the appearance of one and the same visage in divers and sundry mirrors, flat, hollow, curved, or embowed, round outwardly, which represent an infinite variety. But there is neither mirror that sheweth and expresseth the face better, nor instrument of nature more simple, obsequent and pliable, than is the Moon: howbeit receiving from the Sun a light & fiery illumination, she sendeth not the same back unto us, but mingled with somewhat of her own: whereby it changeth the colour, and hath a power or faculty far different, for no heat at all there is in it: and as for the light so weak and feeble it is that it faileth before it cometh unto us. And this I suppose to be the meaning of Heraclitus, when he saith, that the Lord, unto whom belongeth the Oracle at Delphos, doth neither speak, nor conceal, but signifye onely and give sign. Add now to these things I well said and conceived, and make this application: that the god who is here, useth Pythia, the Propheetesse, for Sight and Hearing, like as the Sun useth the Moon. He sheweth future things by a Mortall Body, and a Soul which cannot rest and lie still, as being nor able to shew her self immovable and quiet to him who stirreth and moveth her, but is troubled still more and more by the Motions, Agitations, and Passions, of her own, and which are in her self: for like as the turnings of Bodies, which together with a circular motion, fall downward, are not firm and strong, but turning as they do round by force, and tending downward by Nature, there is made of them both, a certain turbulent and irregular circumgyration: Even so the ravishment of the Spirit, called Enthusiasmus is a mixture of two motions, when the Mind is moved in the one by inspiration, and in the other naturally. For considering that of Bodies which have no Soul, and of themselves continue alwaies in one state quiet, a man cannot make use nor move them perforce, other wise than the quality of their nature will bear, nor move a cylindre like a ball, or in manner of a square cube, nor a Lute or harp, according as he doth a pipe, no more than a Trumpet after the order of a Cithern or stringed instrument: ne yet any thing else otherwise than either by art or nature each of them is fit to be used. How is it possible then to handle and manage that which is animate, which moveth of it self, is indued with will and inclination, capable also of reason; but according to the precedent Habitude, Puissance and Nature? As for example, to move one Musically, who is

N n n n 2

altogether

\* This is the Devils Divinity.

altogether ignorant and an enemy of Musick; or Grammatically, him who skilleth not of Grammar, and knoweth not a letter of the book; or Eloquently and Rhetorically, one who hath neither skill nor practise at all in Orations. Certes I cannot see or say how? And herein *Homer* also beareth witness with me, who albeit he supposed thus much, that nothing (to speak of) in the whole World, is performed and effected by any cause, unless God be at once end thereof: yet will not he make God to use all persons indifferently in every thing, but each one according to the sufficiency that he hath by Art or Nature. To prove this, see you not (quoth he) my friend *Diogenianus*, that when *Minerva* would persuade the Achæans to any thing the callers for *Ulysses*? when he is minded to trouble and marre the treaty of Peace, he seeketh out *Pandarus*? when he is disposed to discomfit and put to flight the Trojans, he addresseth her self and goeth to *Dionides*: for of these three, the last was a valiant man of person, and a brave Warrior; the second a good Archer, but yet a foolish and brainfick man; the first right Eloquent and Wise wishall: for *Homer* was not of the same mind with *Pandarus*, if to be it were *Pandarus* who made this verse,

*If God so will, in sea thou maist well sail  
Upon an burde or a wicker frail.*

But well he knew, that powers and natures be destined to divers effects, according as each one hath different motions, notwithstanding that which moveth them all, be but one. Like as therefore that faculty which moveth a living creature naturally going on foot, cannot make it to flye; nor him who sturthest and flammereth, to speak readily; ne yet him to cry big and aloud, who hath a small and slender voice: which was the reason (as I take it) that when *Bastus* was come to \* *Rome*, they sent him into *Africk*, there to plant a Colony, and People a City: for howsoever he had a flutting and tammering tongue, and was otherwise of a small voice, yet a Princely mind he carried, a Politick head he had of his own, and was a man of Wisdom and Government: even so impossible it is, that *Pythia* should have the knowledge to speak here elegantly and learnedly: for notwithstanding that she were well born and legitimate as any other, and had lived honestly and discreetly, yet being brought up in the house of poor husbandmen, the descendents into the place of the Oracle, bringing with her no art learned in School, nor any experience whatsoever. But as *Xenophon* thinketh, that a young Bride when she is brought to her husbands house, ought to be such an one as hath not seen much, and heard little; semably, *Pythia* being ignorant and unexperi in manner of all things, and a very Virgin indeed as touching her mind and soul, cometh to converse with *Apollo*. And we verily are of opinion, that God for to signifie future things, useth Herons, Wrens, Ravens, Crows, and other Birds, speaking after their manner: neither will we have Soothsayers, and Prophets, being as they are, the Messengers and Heralds of God, to expound and declare their Preditions in plain and intelligible words: but we would that the voice and dialect of the Prophetesse *Pythia*, resembling the speech of a *Chorus* in a Tragedy from a Scaffold, should pronounce her answers not in simple, plain, and trivial termes, without any grace to fet them out, but with Poetical magnificence of high and stately verses, disguised as it were with metaphors and figurative phrases, yea, and that which more is, with found of Flute and Hauc-boies: what answer make you then, as touching the old Oracles? Surely, not one alone, but many. First, the ancient *Pythia* as hath been said already, uttered & pronounced most of them in prose: secondly, that time afforded those complexions and temperatures of body, which had a propense and forward inclination to Poetic; whereto there were joynd incontinently, the alacrity, desires, affections, and dispositions of the soul, in such sort, as they were ever prest and ready, neither wanted they ought but some little beginning from without, to set them on work, and to stir the imagination and conception; whereby there might directly be drawn unto that which was meet and proper for them, not only Astrologers and Philosophers as *Philinus* say; but also such as were well soaked with Wine, and licken with some passion, who either upon pity surprising them, or joy presented unto them, might immediately slide as it were, and fall into a melodious and singing voice; inasmuch as their fauts were full of verses, and love-songs, yea and their books and compositions, amorous, and favouring of the like. And when *Euripide* said:

*Love makes men Poets, mark it when you will,  
Although before in verse they had no skill.*

He meaneth not that love putteth Poetry or Musick into a man in whom there was none before, but wakeneth, stireth and enchaineth that which before was drowie, idle, and cold. Or else my good friend, let us say, that now a daies there is not an amorous person, and one that skilleth of love, but all love is extinct and perished, because there is no man, as *Pandarus* saith,

*Who now in pleasant vaine Poetical  
His songs and ditties dote addeffe,  
Which juft in rhyme and metre fall,  
To praise his fair and sweet mistress.*

whinde them. And is it not all one to say, that there was never any woman but *Sappho* in love, nor had the gift of Prophecies, save only *Sybilles*, and *Arifonice*, or such as published their vaticinations and Prophecies in verse? For, Wine, as *Chæremus* was wont to say, is mingled and tempered with the manners of those that drink it: And this Enthusiasticke or spirit of Prophecies, like unto the ravishment of love, maketh use of that sufficiency and faculty, which it findeth ready in the subject, and moveth each one of them that are inspired therewith, according to the measure of their natural disposition: and yet as we consider God and his providence, we shall see that the change is ever to the better. For the use of speech, resembleth properly the permutation and worth of money; which is good and allowable, so long as it is used and known, being current, more or lesse, and valued diversly, as the times require. Now the time was, when the very mark and stamp (as it were) of our speech was current and approved, in metre, verses, songs and sonnets: Forasmuch as then, all History, all Doctrine of Philosophy, all Affection; and to be brief, all matter that required a more grave and stately voice, they brought to Poetry and Musick. For now, only few men, hardly, and with much a do; give ear and understand: but then, all indifferently heard, yea, and take great pleasure to hear those that sung,

*The rural ploughman with his bine,  
The sower with his nets and line.*

as *Pandarus* saith, but also most men for the great aptitude they had unto Poetry, when they would ad-mouth and make remonstrances, did it, by the means of Harp, Lute, and Song withall: if they ment to rebuke, chastise, exhort, and incite, they performed it by tales, fables, and proverbs. Moreover their hymnes to the honour and praise of the gods, their prayers and vower, their balads for joy or victory, they made in metre and musical rhim: some upon a dexterity of wit, others by use and practise. And therefore neither did *Apollo* envy this ornament and pleasant grace unto the skill of Divination, neither banished he from this three-footed-table of the Oracle the Muse so highly honoured, but rather brought it in, and stired it up as affecting and loving Poetical wits: yea, and himself manifested and infused certain imaginations, helping to put forward the lofty and learned kinde of language, as being much prized and esteemed. But afterwards, as the life of men, together with their fortunes and natures came to be changed; thrift and utility (which removeth all superfluity) took away the golden tust, and foretop of peruke, the spangled coils, caules, and attires, it cast off the fine and dainty robe, called *Xyrides*; it clipped and cut away the bush of hair growing too long; unbuckled and unlaced, the trim buskin, acquainting men with good reason, to glory in thriftinesse and frugality, against superfluous and sumptuous delicacies, yea, and to honour simplicity and modesty, rather than vaine pomp and affected curiosity: And even so, the manner of mens speech, changing also and laying aside all glorious shew, the order of writing an History there withal, presently came down as one would say from the stately Chariot of verification, to prose, and went a foot; and by the means especially of this fashion of writing and speaking at liberty, and not being tied to measures, true stories, come to be distinguished from lying fables: and Philology embracing peripatuity of stile, which was apt to teach and instruct, rather than that which by tropes and figures amused and amazed mens brains. And then *Apollo* repressed *Pythia*, that she should not any more call her fellow Citizens, *Pyrricæ*, that is to say, burning fires; nor the Spartans, *Ophioberos*, that is to say, devourers of Serpents; nor men *Oreanus*; nor River, *Orempotas*: and so by cutting off from her, Prophecies, Verses, and strange termes, circumlocutions and obscurity, he caught and inured her to speak unto those who resorted to the Oracles, as Lawes do talk with Cities, as Kings devise and commune with their people and subjects, and scholars give ear unto their School-masters, framing and applying his manner of speech and language so, as it might be full of sense and perswasive grace: for this I know we ought to learn and know that, as *Apollonius* saith

*God to the wife in heavenly things,  
Is ay a lightsome guide,  
But fools so briefly he doth reach,  
That they go alwayes wide.*

And together with plainnesse, and dilucidity, belief was so turned and altered, changing together with other things, that before time, whatsoever was not ordinary nor common, but extravagant, or obscurely and covertly spoken, the vulgar sort drawing it into an opinion of some holinesse hidden underneath, was attended therat and held it venerable: but afterwards, desirous to learn and understand things clearly and easily, and not with masks of disguised words, they began to finde fault with Poetic, wherin Oracles were clad; not only for that it was contrary and repugnant to the easie intelligence of the truth, as mingling the darknesse and shadow of obscurity with the sentence, but also for that they had Prophecies already in suspicion; saying, that Metaphors Enigmatical, and covert words, yea and the ambiguities which Poetry useth, were but shifts, retractes, and evasions to hide and cover all,



when as neither they had need thereof, nor yet received any variety [and] alteration thereby. Moreover, certain it is, that these Jugglers and Vagrant circumlocution Land-leapers, these Practisers of Legier de main, these Players as *Passe* and *Repasse*, with all the Pack of those Vagabonds, Ribauds and Jesters, who haunt the Feasts of *Cybele* and *Serapis*, have greatly discredited and brought into Obloquie the Profession of Poetry: some by their extemporall Faculty and telling Fortunes, others by way of Lotteric forthtelling, and by certain Letters and Writings, forging Oracles, which they would give to poor Varlets, and silly Women, who were soonest abused thereby, especially when they saw the same reduced into verse, and so were carried away with Poeticall terms. And from hence it is now come to passe, that Poetrie, for that she hath suffered her self to be thus to be prophand and made common, by such counsellers, Jugglers, Deceivers, Enchanters, and false Prophets, is fallen from the truth, and rejected from *Apollon* these footed Table.

And therefore I nothing wonder if otherwhiles in old time, therewas need of this double meaning, circumlocution, and obscurity: for I assure you, there was not wont to come hither one for to enquire and be resolved, about the buying of a slave in open Market: another to know what profit he should have by his traffick or Husbandry: but hither came or sent great and Puissant Cities, Kings, Princes, and Tyrants, who had no mean matters in their heads to consult with *Apollon* as concerning their important affairs; whom to provoke, displease and offend, by causing them to hear many things contrary to their will and mind, was nothing good and expedient for those who had the Charge of the Oracle: for this god obeyeth not *Euripides*, when he setteth down a Law as it were for him, saying thus:

*Phœbus himself, and none but he,*

*Ought unto men the Prophet to be.*

for the usefull mortall men to be his Ministers and under-Prophets: of whom he is to have a speciall care to preserve them, that in doing him service, they be not spoiled and slain by wicked persons: in which regard he is not willing to conceal the truth, but turning aside the naked Declaration thereof, which in Poetry receiveth many reflexions, and is divided into many parcels, he thereby did away the rigor and odious austerity therein contained. And it skilful much, that neither Tyrants should know it, nor Enemies be advertised and have intelligence thereof. For their fakes therefore, he enfolded in all his Answers, Doubts, Suspitions and Ambiguities, which from others did hide the true meaning of that which was answered. But such as came themselves to the Oracle, and gave close and heedfull ear, as whom it concerned particularly, those he deceived not, neither failed they of the right understanding thereof. And therefore a very foolish man he is, and of no Judgement, who doth take occasion of slander and calumination, if the world and estate of mens affairs being changed, this God thinketh, that he is not to aid and help men any more after his accustomed manner, but by some other. Furthermore, by the means of Poetrie and Verification, there is not in a Sentence, any greater Commodity than this, that being couched and comprised in a certain number of words and syllables measured, a man may retain and remember the same better. And necessary it was in old time, to carry away in memory many things, because there were delivered many signs and marks of places, many times and opportunities of affairs, many Temples of strange gods beyond sea, many secret Monuments, and Repositories of demi-gods hard to be found of those who sailed far from *Greece*. For in the Voyages of *Cebus* and *Candie*, \* \* \* enterprised by *Oncichus* and *Palambus*, beside many other Captains and Admirals, how many signs and Conjectures went they by, and were to observe, for to find the resting seat, and place of abode, which was ordained to every one of them? and some of them quite missed thereof: as for example, *Batus*: for his Prophecie ran thus, that unless he arrived to the right place, he should be banished. Failing therefore of the Countrey, whereto he was sent, he returned again to the Oracle in humble manner, craving his favour. And then *Apollon* answered him in this wise:

*Thou know'st thy self, as well as I can tell,*

*That someth yet in Africk thou hast been;*

*For whither sent I thee to build and dwell?*

*Nor Melibœa, that place so fertile, seen:*

*If thither now accordingly thou went,*

*Thy wisdom then greatly will I commend.*

And so he sent him away the second time. Likewise *Lysander* being altogether ignorant of the little hill *Archeleides*, of the place called *Alopecon*, as also of the river *Opietis*.

*And of the dragon son of earth by kind*

*Full craftily assailing men behind.*

all which he should have avoided, was vanquished in Battell, and slain about those very places, and that by one *Inachian* an *Altiarian*, who had for his device or arme in the Target that he bare a dragon portrayed. But I think it needlesse to recite many other ancient Oracles of this kind, which are not easily to be related, and as hardly remembered, especially among you who know them well enough. But now thanks be to God, the state of our affairs and of the world, in regard whereof men were wont to seek unto the Oracle is settled: for which I rejoyce and congratulate with you. For great Peace there is, and Repose in all parts: Warres be stayed, and there is no more need of running and wandering to and fro from one Countrey to another: Civil Diffentions and Seditions be appeased, there are no Tyrannies now exercised: neither do there reign other Maladies and

miseries

miseries of *Greece*, as in times past, which had need of Sovereign Medicines, exquisite Drouges and powerfull Confections, to remedy and redresse the same. Whereas therefore there is no variable diversity, no matter of secrecie, no dangerous affairs, but all demands be of pettie and vulgar matters, much like to these School Questions: Whether a man should marry or no? Whether a man may undertake a Voyage by Sea or no? or Whether he is to take up or put forth money for interest? where I say the greatest point, about which Cities seek unto *Apollon*, arcabout the fertility of their ground, plenty of Corn, and other Fruits of the Earth, the breed and multiplying of their Cattel, and the health of their bodies: to go about to comprise the same in verse, to perrive and forge long circuits of words, to use strange and obscure terms, to such interrogatories as require a short, simple and plain answer, were the part of an ambitious and vain glorious Sophister, who took pride in the elegant Composing of Oracles. Over and besides, *Pythia* of her self, is of a gentle and generous nature: and when the defendeth either and converteth with the god, she hath no more regard of truth than of glory, neither passeth she, whether men praise or dispraise her. And better I wis it were for us, if we also were likewise affected. But now in a great Agonie (as it were) and fearfull perplexity, left the place should lose the Reputation, which it hath had for the space of these thousand years, and doubting that some would abandon it, and cease to frequent it, as if it were the School of a Sophister, who feared to lose his credit, and to be despised, devise Apologies in defence thereof, feigning causes and reasons of things which we neither know, nor is befecoming us for to learn, and all to appease and perswade him, who complaineth, and seemeth to find fault, whereas we should rather blame him off and let him go.

*For with him first,*

*It will be worst,*

who hath such an opinion of this our God, as that he approved and esteemed these ancient Sentences of the Siger, written at the entrance of the Temple, *Know thy self, Too much of nothing*; principally for their brevity, as containing under few words a pithy Sentence well and closely couched, and (as a man would say) beaten soundly together with the hammer: but reproved and blamed Modern Oracles, for delivering most part of their answers, Briefly, Succinctly, Simply and Directly. And verily such notable Apothegmes, and sayings of the ancient Sages, resemble Rivers that run through a narrow straight, where the water is pent and kept in to close, that a man cannot see through it, and even so uneth or hardly may the bottom of their sense be founded. But if you consider what is written or said by them, who endeavour to search unto the very bottom, what every one of these Sentences doth comprehend, you shall find that hardly a man shall meet with Orations longer than they. Now the Dialect or speech of *Pythia* is such, as the Mathematicians define a straight and direct line, namely the shortest that may be between two points: and even so it bendeth not, it crooketh not, it maketh no circle, it carrieth no double sense and ambiguity, but goeth straight to the truth; and say it be subject to censure and examination, and dangerous to be misconstrued and believed amiss: yet to this day it hath never given advantage whereby it might be convinced of untruth: But in the mean time it hath furnished all this Temple full of rich Gifts, Presents and Oblations, not only of Greek Nations, but also of barbarous people, as also adorned it with the beautifull Buildings, and magnificent Fabricks of the Amphithions. For you see in some sort, many Buildings adjoynd were not before, and as many repaired and restored to their ancient perfection, which were either fallen to decay and ruined by continuance of time, or else lay confusedly out of order. And like as we see, that near unto great trees that spread much and prosper well, other smaller Plants and shrubs grow and thrive: even so together with the City of *Delphos*, *Pylæa* flourished, as being fed and maintained by the abundance and assistance, which ariseth from hence, in such sort as it beginneth to have the form and shew of solemn sacrifices of stately meetings and sacred waters, such as in a thousand years before it could never get the like. As for those that inhabited about *Galaxion* in *Boeotia*, they found and felt the gracious presence and Favour of our God by the great Plenty and Store of Milk, For,

*From all their ewes thick Milk did spin,*

*As Water fressh from lively Spring:*

*Their tubs and tunnes with Milk therein*

*Brim full they all, home fast did bring:*

*No barrels, bottles, pails of wood,*

*But full of Milk in houses stood.*

But to us he giveth better marks, and more evident tokens and apparent signes of his presence and favour, than these be; having brought our Countrey (as it were from drincless and penury, from desire and want wilderness, where it was before, to be now rich and plentiful, frequented and peopled, yea and to be in that honour and reputation, wherein we see it at this day to flourish. Certes I love my self much better, for that I was so well affected, as to put in my helping hand in this business, together with *Polycrates*, and *Petrus*: Yea and him also love in mine heart, who was the first Author unto us of this Government and Policy, and who took the pains and endeavoured to set on foot and establish most part of these things. But impossible it was, that in so small a time there should be seen so great and so evident a mutation by any industry of man whatsoever, if God himself had not been Assistent to Sanctifie and Honour this Oracle. But like as in those Times past, some men there were who found fault with the Ambiguity, Obliquity and Obscurity of Oracles; so there be

be in these dayes, others, who like Sycophants cavill at the overmuch simplicity of them; whose humorous passion is injurious and exceeding foolish. For even as little Children take more joy and pleasure to see Rain-bowes, Haloes, or Garlands about the Sun, Moon, &c. yea, and Comets or blasing Stars, than they do to behold the Sun himself or the Moon; so these persons desire to have enigmatical and dark speeches, obscure Allegories, and wrested Metaphors, which are all reflections of devination upon the Fancie and Apprehension of our mortall conceit. And if they understand not sufficiently, the cause of this change and alteration, they go their waies, and are ready to condemn the God, and not either us or ourselves, who are not able by discourse of reason to reach unto the counsell and intention of the said God.

## Of the Dæmon or familiar Spirit of Socrates.

\* A Treatise in manner of a Dialogue.

### The Summary.

\* Some add unto this title, [The delivery of the City Thebes] and in truth, that narration taketh up a good part of this Dialogue.

THE Thebans having lost their freedom and liberty by the violent proceedings of Archias, Leontidas, and other Tyrants, who banished a great number of good Citizens and Men of worth, in which Roll that name Catalogue Pelopidas was one (as appeareth in the Story of his Life, wherein Plutarch writeth of all this matter at large) it fell out at last, that the exiled persons took heart, drew to an head, and wrought, so as they recovered the City of Thebes, slew the Tyrants, and displaced the garrison of the Spartans. Which done, they dispatched their ambassages to other States and Common-wealths of Greece, for to justify this their action; and namely, among the rest, they sent Caphisias to Athens: at the request of Archidamus, a personage of great authority, related and reported the return of the banished men, the surprising of the Tyrants, and the restoring of the City to their ancient franchises; and that with discourses wonderfullly patheticall, and such as shew the singular providence of God in the preservation of States; and confession of such wicked members as disturb the publick peace. But in this recital, there is inserted, and that with good grace, a digression as touching the familiar spirit of Socrates, by occasion of a Pythagorean Philosopher newly come out of Italy to Thebes, for to take up the bones of Lyllis: for by occasion that Galaxidorus the Epicurean derided the superstition of this stranger, praising without, the wisdom and learning of Socrates, who had cleared and delivered Philosophy from all fantastical illusions of Spirits and Ghosts, Theocritus bringeth in an example of a certain prediction of this familiar Spirit. But withall, when the other had demanded the question, whether the same were an humane and naturall thing or no, the disputation began to kinde and wax hot; untill such time as Epaminondas and this stranger named Theanor came in place; and then they fell into a Discourse of Poverty and Riches, by occasion that Theanor offered silver unto the Thebans, in recompence of their kindness and good entertainment shewed unto Lyllis. And as they would have proceeded forward in this argument, there came one who ministred occasion for to return unto the former narration as touching the enterprise and exploit of the said exiled persons: in which there is intermingled again a treatise concerning the familiar Spirit of Socrates, with a large recitall of the fable of Timarchus. After which, Caphisias rehearsed the issue of the tragedy of the Tyrants, shewing thorough notable discourses of the divine wisdom, and joining therewith a consideration of Socrates his wisdom, guiding and directing to a particular plot for the good of all Greece. But in this place the Reader must remember and call to mind what his Socrates was; to wit, a Man destitute of the true knowledge of God, and therefore he is held for suspected and naught this familiar Spirit of his, if a man would receive and admit the opinion of some interloper, who suppose it was a Demon or Spirit from without; to the end that we should not rest upon revelation, inspirations and guidances of Angels, unless it be of such, the testimonies whereof are grounded upon the holy Scripture; but fly from the profane curiosity of certain fantastical heads, who by their books published abroad in print, have dared to revive and raise up againe their false opinion (which some in this age of ours have) of familiar Spirits, by whom they are sorloved as well advised and as surely taught and instructed as by the very Spirit of God, speaking unto us by his written Word.

## Of the Dæmon or familiar Spirit of Socrates.

Archidamus.

I have heard (as I remember) O Caphisias, a pretty speech of a certain Painter making a comparison of those who came to see the Pictures and Tables which he had painted: for he was wont to say, that the ignorant beholders and such as had no skill at all in the Art of Painting, resembled them who saluted a whole multitude of people all at once; but the better sort and such as were skillful, were like unto those who used to salve every one whom they meet, severally by name: for that

that the former had no exquisite insight into the works, but a superficial and generall knowledge onely; whereas the other contrariwise, judging every piece and part thereof, will not miss one jot, but peruse, consider and censure that which is well done or otherwise. Seemably it falleth out in my judgment, as touching true actions indeed, which are not painted. The Conceit and Understanding of the more idle and careless persons resteth in this bare knowledge, in case they conceive only the summary and issue of a thing; but that, of studious and diligent persons, and lovers of fair and goodly things, like unto a judicious and excellent Spectator of Vertue, as of some great and singular Art, taketh more pleasure to hear the particularities in speciall: for that the end of matters, ordinarily, hath many things common with fortune; but the good wile is better seen in causes, and in the Vertue of particular occurrences and affairs which are presented as when Valour sheweth it self not affronted, but confident and well advised in the greatest perils; where the discourse of reason is mingled with passion, which the sudden occasion of danger presented doth bring. Supposing then, that we also are of this kind of Spectators, declare you to us now in order from the beginning, how this matter did passe and proceed in the execution thereof, as also what talk and discourse was held there; for that by all likelihood you were present and for mine own part, so desirous I am to hear, that I would not fail to go as far as to Thebes for the knowledge thereof, were it not, that I am thought already of the Athenians, to worke the Bzethians more than I should.

Caphisias.

Certes, Archidamus, since you are so earnest and forward to learn how these affairs were managed, I ought in the regard of the good will which you bear unto us, before any business whatsoever (as Iudius saith) to have come hither, expressly for to relate the same unto you: but since we are hither come in embassage already, and at good leisure, whilst we attend what answer and dispatch the people of Athens will give us, in making it strange and goodly, and refusing to satisfy for a request of a personage so kind and well affectionate to his friends, were as much as to revive the old reproach imposed upon the Bzethians, to wit, that they hate good letters and learned Discourses; which reproach bid to wear away with your Socrates, and in so doing, it seemeth that we treat of affairs with two friends: and therefore see, whether the Signiors here present be disposed to hear the report of so many speeches and actions; for the narration will not be short, considering that you will me to adjoyn thereto the words that passed also.

Archidamus.

You know not the men, O Caphisias, and yet well worthy they are to be known; for noble persons they had to their Fathers, and those who had been well affected to our Country. As for him (pointing to Lythides) he is (quoth he) the Nephew of Trafasbulus; but he here, is Timarchus, the Son of Conon: those there, be the Children of Archimus; and the other, our familiar friends. So that you shall be sure to have a well willing auditory, and such as will take pleasure to hear this narration.

Caphisias.

You say well. But were I best to begin my speech, in regard of those matters that ye have already heard and known, which I would not willingly repeat.

Archidamus.

We know reasonably well, in what state the City of Thebes stood, before the return of the banished persons; and namely, how Archias and Leontidas, had secret intelligence, and comploted with Phabidas the Lacedæmonian Captain, whom they perswaded, during the time of truce, to surpris the Castle of Cadmus; and how having executed this design, they draw some Citizens out of the City, and put others in prison, or held the men in awe, whilst themselves ruled tyrannically and with violence. Whereof I had intelligence, because I was (as you wot well) host unto Melus and Pelopidas, with whom (so long as they were in exile) I was inwardly acquainted and conversed familiarly. Moreover, we have heard already, how the Lacedæmonians condemned Phabidas to pay a great fine, for that he had seized the fort Cadmia, and how they put him by, and kept him from the journey and expedition of Olynthus, and sent thither in stead of him, Lysanoridas with two other Captaines, and planned a stronger garrison within the Castle. Furthermore, we know very well, that Ithenias died not the fairest kind of death, presently upon I wot not what process framed, and an action commenced against him, for that Gorgidas advertised the banished who were here, by letters, from time to time of all matters that passed in such sort, as there remaineth for you to relate, nothing else, but the return of the said banished men, and the surprising or apprehension of the tyrants.

Caphisias.

About that time (Archidamus) all we that were of the confederacy and complotted together, used ordinarily to meet in the house Simmias, by occasion that he was retired and in cure of a wound which he had received in his Leg, where we conferred secretly of our affairs as need required; but in few and openly, discoursed matters of Learning and Philosophy, drawing unto us often times into our company, Archias, and Leontidas, men who milked not so much conferences and communications because we would remove all suspicion of such Conventicles. For Simmias having abode long time in foreign parts among the Barbarians, being returned to Thebes but a little while before, was full of all manner of News and strange Reports as touching those barbarous Nations; in somuch, as Archias when he was at leisure, willingly gave ear to his Discourses and Narrations, sitting in the Company of us young Gentlemen, as being well pleased that we should give our minds to the study

study of good Letters and Learnings, rather than busie our heads about those matters which they went about and practised in the mean while. And the very Day on which late in the Evening, and toward dark night following, the exiled persons above said were come closely under the wall, there arrived from thence unto us a messenger, whom *Phenicias* sent, one who was unknown to us all, unless it were to *Charon*, who brought us word, that to the number of twelve young Gentlemen, and those the bravest Gallants of all the banished conspirators, were already with their Hounds hunting in the forest *Cithæron*, intending to be here in the Evening; and that therefore they had sent before and dispatched a vaunt-courier of purpose, as well to advertise us thereof, as to be certified themselves who it was that should make his house ready for them to lie secret and hidden therein when they were once come; to the end that upon this foreknowledge they might set forward and go directly thither. Now as we studied and took some deliberation about this point, *Charon* of himself offered his house: whereupon, when the messenger intended to return immediately and with great speed to the exiles, *Theocritus* the Southfayer gripping me fast by the hand, and calling his eye upon *Charon*, that went before: This man (quoth he) *O Caphtias*, is no Philosopher nor deep Scholar, neither is he come to any excellent or exquisite knowledge above others, as his Brother *Epaminondas*, and yet you see how being naturally inclined, and directed withall by the Lawes, unto honour and vertue, he exposteth himself willingly unto danger of death, for the delivery and setting free of his country; whilst *Epaminondas*, who hath had better means of instruction and education to the attaining of vertue, than any other *Bæotian* whatsoever, is reifist, dull, and backward, when the question is of executing any great enterprise for the deliverance of his native country. And to what occasion of service shall he ever be so well disposed, prepared & employed, than this? Unto whom I made answer in this wise: We for our parts, most kind & gently *Theocritus*, do that which hath been thought good, resolved & concluded upon among our selves, but *Epaminondas* having not yet perswaded us, according as he thinketh it better himself, not to put these our delinquents in execution, hath good reason to go against that where-with his nature repugneth, and so he approveth not the designment whereunto he is moved and invited. For it were unreasonable to force and compell a Physician, who promisseth and undertaketh to cure a disease, without lance and fire, for to proceed to incision, cutting and cauterizing. Why (quoth *Theocritus*) doth not he approve of the conspiracy? No (quoth I) neither alloweth he that any Citizens should be put to death, unless they were condemned first judicially by order of Law: Mary, he saith, that if without massacre and effusion of Citizens blood they would enterprise the deliverance of the City, he would assist and aid them right willingly. Seeing then that he was not able to induce us for to believe his reasons, but that we followed still our own course, he requirith us to let him alone, pure, innocent, & impolluted with the blood of his Citizens, & to suffer him for to espy & attend some better occasions & opportunities, by means whereof with Justice he might procure the good of the weal publick. For Murder (quoth he) will not contain it self within limits as it ought: but *Phenicias* haply & *Pelopidas*, may bend their force principally upon the authors and heads of the tyranny, & wicked persons; but you shall have some such as *Emolpidas* and *Samiadas* hot stomached men, set on fire with choler and desire of revenge, who taking liberty by the vantage of the night, will not lay down their armes, nor put up their swords, until they have filled the whole city with bloodshed, and murdered many of the best and principall Citizens.

As I thus devised and communed with *Theocritus*, *Anaxidorus*, over-hearing some of our words (for near he was unto us): Stay (quoth he) & hold your peace, for I see *Archias* & *Lysanidas* the Spartan Captain comming from the castle *Cadmea*, & it seemeth that they make haste directly toward us. Hereupon we stayed and were still: with that *Archias* calling unto *Theocritus*, and bringing him apart by himself unto *Lysanidas*, talked with him a long while, drawing him aside a little out of the way, under the Temple of *Amphion*; in such sort, as we were in an extreme agony and perplexity, for fear lest they had an inkling or suspicion of our enterprise, or that something were discovered: and thereupon they examined *Theocritus*. As these matters thus passed, *Phylidas* (whom you *Archidamus* know) who was then the principal secretary or scribe unto *Archias*, at that time captain general of the army, being desirous of the approach of the conspirators, and withall both privy and parry with us in the complot, came in place and took me (as his manner was) by the hand, beginning with open mouth, to mock our exercises of the body & our wrestling; but afterward, drawing me aside, a good way from the others, asked me whether the banished persons would keep that appointed day or no? I made him answer, Yea. Then have I (quoth he) to very good purpose prepared a feast this day for to entertain *Archias* in my house, and so to deliver him with ease into their hands, when he shall have eaten freely, and drunk wine merrily, passing well done (quoth I) *O Phylidas*: but I beseech you withall, for to bring together all our enemies, or as many as you can. That is no easy matter (quoth he) to compass, but rather altogether impossible. For *Archias* hoping that some great Lady of honour and estate will come thither unto him, in no wise can abide that *Leontidas* should be there, so that of necessity we must divide them into sundry houses. Now if *Archias* and *Leontidas* both, be once apprehended, I suppose that the rest will soon by force remain quiet, and be very highly contented if any man will grant them safety and security of their lives. Well (quoth I) we will so do: but I pray you, what business have they with *Theocritus*, that they are so long in talk with him? I know not for a truth (quoth *Phylidas*) but have heard I that there be certain prodigious signes of unluckly and unfortunate preface unto the city of *Sparta*.

When *Theocritus* was resumed unto us again, *Phidelaus* the Halicarnian coming toward us: *Simmias* (quoth he) requested you to stay here a while for his sake: for he is an intercessor in the behalf

of *Amphiteus* by the means of *Leontidas*, that his life may be pardoned, and that instead of death, the man might be banished, this is fallen out (quoth *Theocritus*) in very good time and fity to the purpose as a man would have it: for I was minded to enquire of you what things were found within the tombe of *Alcmena*, and what shew it carried when it was opened among you: and also whether you were present when *Agessilaus* sent of purpose for to translate and carry the reliques unto *Sparta*. Present I was not my self, quoth *Phidelaus*, in person: and I was very much angry and offended with my fellow Citizens, in that I was so discarded and left out. Howbeit found there was with the bones and other reliques of the corps, a certain carquenet of brass, and that of no great bigness, and two earthen pots, containing amphora a piece full of earth which in continuance of time was grown hard and converted into stone.

Over the Sepulchre there was a Table of brass likewise, wherein were written many letters, and those of a strange and wonderful form, as being of right great antiquity: for nothing could we pick out of them, notwithstanding the letters appeared very well, after that the brass was fair washed and scoured clean, the characters were of such a making by themselves, after a barbarous fashion, and resembling nearest those of the Egyptians. Whereupon *Agessilaus* also, as men say, sent a copy of them unto the King of *Egypt*, praying him to shew the same unto their Priests, to see whether they understood them or no? But peradventure of these matters *Simmias* also is able to tell us some news, because about that time he conversed much with the said Priests in points of Philosophy. And those of the City *Alarion* are of opinion, that their great sterility, and scarcity, as also the swelling and inundation of the Lake hapned not by chance, but was the vengeante divine upon those who suffered the monument of this Sepulchre to be digged up and opened. Then *Theocritus* after he had paused a little: The Lacedæmonians likewise (quoth he) seem to have been threatened by the ire of the gods, as the prodigious signes and tokens preface no less, whereof *Lysanidas* are while talked with me: who even now is gone into the City *Alarion*, to cause the said Monument to be filled up again, and there to offer certain funeral effusions and libaments, to the ghost of *Alcmena* and *Alcus*, according to a certain Oracle; but who this *Alcus* should be, he kneweth not: and so soon as he is from thence returned, he must search also the Sepulchre of *Direce*, which none of the *Thebans* do know, unless they be those who have been Captains of the horsemen. For look who goeth out of this office, taketh with him his succellour that entereth into his place, by night, and when they two be alone together, he sheweth it unto him, and there they perform certain religious ceremonies without fire, the tokens and marks whereof, they shuffle together, and confound, as, as they be not seen; which done, they depart in the dark, and go divers waies, one from the other. But for mine own part, *O Phidelaus*, I believe verily he will never finde it out, for the most of those who have been lawfully called to the Captainship of the Cavallery, or to say more truly, even all of them are in exile, except *Gorgidas* and *Plato*, whom they will never aske the question, because they are afraid of them. And as for those who are now in place, well may they take the Lance and the Signet within the Castle of *Cadmus*; for otherwise they neither know nor can shew ought. As *Theocritus* spake these words, *Leontidas* went forth with his friends; and we entering in, *Glutius Simmias*, being set upon his bed, but I suppose he had not obtained his request, for very penfive and heavy he was; and looking wistly in the face upon us all he brake out into these words: *O Hercules*, what a world is this, to see the barbarous and savagemanners of men? And was not this then a very good answer made by old *Thales*, who being returned home, after a long Voyage, from out of a foreign countrey, and demanded what was the strangest news that he could make relation of? answered: That he had seen a Tyrant live to be an old man. For thus you see, that himself who in his own particular, had never received wrong by a Tyrant, yet in regard of the odious trouble, in conversing and having to do with them, is offended and become an enemy to all Sovereign and absolute Governments, which are not subject to render an account unto the Lawes. But haply God will see to these matters, and provide in time convenient. But know you (*Caphtias*) who this stranger may be, that is come unto you? I wot not (quoth he) whom you mean. Why (quoth he) again, *Leontidas* came and told us of a man, who was seen by night to arise from about the Tombe of *Lysis*, accompanied infinitely wife, with a great train of men, in good order, and well appointed, who lodged there and lay upon Pillars: for that there were to be seen in the morning little beds hard by the ground, made of Chaff tree and Heath or Lings. There remained also the tokens of fire, and of the libaments and oblations of milk. Moreover sometimes in the morning he demanded of all passengers whom he met, where he should finde the children of *Polyonius* dwelling in that countrey? And what stranger might this be? (quoth I): for by your report he should be some great personage, and not a private man and of mean degree. Not so (quoth *Phidelaus*) but when he comes welcome he shall be, and we will receive him courteously. But for this present, if peradventure (*Simmias*) you know any thing more than we, concerning those letters whereof we were of late in doubt, declare it unto us: for it is said that the Priests of *Egypt* understood by conference together the letters of a certain Table of brass, which *Agessilaus* not long since had from us, at what time as he caused the Tombe of *Alcmena* to be opened. I have not (quoth *Simmias*, calling another matter presently to mind) seen this said Table, *O Phidelaus*: but *Agetoridas* the Spartan carrying with him many letters from *Agessilaus* came to the City *Memphis*, and went unto the Prophet *Chonuphis*, with whom we conferred as touching Philosophy, and abode together a certain time, my self I mean, and *Plato*, with *Eltopion* the Peparethian. Thither I say arrived he as sent from King *Agessilaus*, who requested *Chonuphis*, that if he understood any thing of those

those letters which were written in the said brasse, he would interpret the same, and send it back unto him incontinently. So this Prophet was musing and studying three daies together by himself, perusing and turning all sorts of the figures and characters of ancient letters: and in the end wrote back his answer unto King *Agesilaus*, and by word of mouth told us, that the said writing gave direction and commandment unto the Greeks, to celebrate the feast, and solemnize the plaies and games in the honour of the Muses: also that the form of those characters, were the very same which had been used at the time when *Proteus* reigned in *Egypt*, which *Hercules* the son of *Amphitryo* learned: and that God by those letters advised and admonished the Greeks to live in peace and repose, instituting certain games unto the Muses, for the study of Philosophy and good literature, and disputing one against another continually, with reasons and arguments as touching justice, laying arms clean aside. As for us, we thought verily even then at the very first, that *Conus* had said well and truly; but much rather, when in our return out of *Egypt*, as we passed along *Caria*, certain persons of the Isle *Delos*, met us

holding it as most free and friendly unto the truth, rejecting and turning upon the Sophisters, all such vanity, as the very fume and smoak of Philosophy. Then *Theocritus* taking his turn to speak: How say you (quoth he) *Galaxidorus*, hath *Mellius* persuaded you, as well as he made the Judges believe, that *Socrates* dispised the gods and all divine powers? For this is that which he chargeth him with before the Athenians. In no wise (quoth he) as touching those heavenly powers: but having received from the hands of *Pythagoras* and *Empedocles*, Philosophy full of ridiculous fables, fantastical illusions, and vain superstition, he acquainted us, playing thus the Fool in good earnest, and being drunk with fury, to take up betimes, and wisely to cleave unto things of substance, yea and to acknowledge, that in so far reason consisteth the truth. But (quoth *Theocritus*) but as touching the familiar spirit of *Socrates*, what shall we think or say? Was it a cogging lie and meer fable, or what should we call it? For in mine own conceit, like as *Phoebus* seigneth that *Minerva* was evermore assistant in all the Travels and Doings of *Ulysses*, even so from the very first beginning, this divine spirit allotted unto *Socrates* a



not sit still in the house, keeping riches with watch and ward idle: for so the benefit were not beneficial, but without all grace, and the possession thereof dishonourable. To what end then shall we receive it quoth my father. It seemed of late (quoth *Epaminondas*) unto *Jason* a Captain of the Thebians, that I made him an uncivil and rustical answer; when he sent hither a great mass of gold, and requested me to take it as a gift: for I charged him plainly, that he did me great wrong, and began to pick a quarrel with me, in that he affecting and aspiring to a Monarchy, came with money to tempt and solicit me a plain Citizen, of a free City, and living under the Laws. But as for you Sir, who are come unto us as a stranger, I approve your good will, for it is honest, virtuous and becoming a Philosopher, yea, and I love and embrace it singularly well: but this I must needs say unto you, that you bring medicines and Physick drougs to men that are not sick and ail nothing. Like as therefore, if you hearing that our enemies warred upon us, were come to bring us harness, armes and weapons as well defensive as offensive for our succour; and being arrived and landed in these parts, should finde all quiet, and that we lived in peace and amity with our neighbours, you would not think that ye ought to give or leave the said armes among them that had no need nor desire thereof: even so, come you are to aid us against poverty, as if we were afflicted and distressed thereby: but it is clean contrary, for we can bear it with ease, and well content we are to have it dwell with us still in the house: and therefore we feel no want either of money or munition, against her that doth us no displeasure. But this message you shall carry back unto your fellows and brethren in the same profession beyond sea, that as they use their goods and riches most honestly in the best manner, so they have friends here also, that can make use of their poverty as well. Now for the keeping, funerals and sepulture of *Lyfis*, he hath himself sufficiently paid us therefore and discharged all, in that among many other good instructions, he taught us, not to be afraid of poverty, nor to take in ill part. To this, *Theonor* replied in this manner: Dosth it (I pray you) bewray a base mind and want of courage, to fear poverty? and is it not as absurd and as great a default in judgement, to dread and eschue riches? in case (I say) a man, not upon any found reason, but for outward disguised shew, and in a foolish humour of vanity, refuse and reject it. And what reason is there, to disfigure and debar the getting and possession of goods, by all just and honest means, as *Epaminondas* useth? But rather, forasmuch as you are ready enough in your answers, as appeareth by that which you made as touching this point, unto *Jason* the Thebalian, I demand of you first, *Epaminondas*, whether you think any kinde of giving money to be just and lawful; or no manner of taking? or that simply, both given and taken do offend and sin? Not so, quoth *Epaminondas*: but of this opinion I am, that as of other things, so of riches likewise, there is one giving and possessing, that is civil and honest; and another, dishonest and shameful. Well then, quoth *Theonor*, what say you of him who giveth willingly and with a good heart, that which he ought: doth he not give it well? The other granted and confessed it. Go to then, quoth *Theonor*, he who receiveth that which is given well and honestly, doth he not take it honestly also? or can there be a more just and lawful taking of money, than that which is received of him who giveth righteously? I suppose (quoth *Epaminondas*) there cannot be. Between two friends therefore (quoth he) *O Epaminondas*, if the one may give, the other likewise may justly take: for in battels I confesse, a man ought to turn away and decline from that enemy of whom he hath received some pleasure; but in the case of benefits and good turns, it is neither seemly nor honest, either to avoid or to reject that friend that giveth well and honestly. No in truth, quoth *Epaminondas*; but you are to consider with us, thus much, That there being in us many lusts and desires, and those of fustly things; some are natural and (as they say) inbred, budding and breeding in our flesh and about our bodies, for the entainment of those pleasures which be necessary; others be strangers, proceeding from vain opinions, which gathering strength and force by tract of time and long custome in bad nouriture, grow to such an head, that many times they pluck down and hold our souls in subjection more forcibly and with greater violence, than do those natural before said. Now reason, by good use and virtuous exercise, minisheth means, that a man may draw away and spend many of those very passions which are inbred within us; but he had need to employ all the power and strength of custome and exercise against those other concupiscences which be foreigners and come from without forth, for to consume, cut off and chastise them, by all means of repressions and retentions that be reasonable. For if the resistance which reason maketh against the appetite of eating and drinking, forceeth many times and conquereth both hunger and thirst; far more easie is it, to cut off avarice and ambition, by forbearing and abstaining those things which the same do cover, so far forth, as in the end they will be discomfited and subdued. How say you, think you not that it is so? The stranger confessed no lesse. See you not then, quoth he again, that there is a difference between an exercise, and the work unto which the exercise is addressed? And like as of the art which teacheth how to exercise the body, a man may say, that the work is the emulation, strife and contention to win the prize of the crown against the concurrent or adversary; but the exercise thereof, is the preparation that the champion makes, for to have his body apt, nimble and active thereto by continual trials of manerles: even so you will grant, that a difference there is between vertue and the exercise of vertue. The stranger said yea unto it. Then tell me first and foremost, quoth he, To abstain from vile, filthy and unlawful lusts, what think you, is it an exercise unto Continency, or rather the very work is self, and proof of continency? The very work and proof, I take it to be, quoth he again: and the exercise and accoustomance to sobriety,

temperance

Temperance and Continency, is not that which you all practise, when after you have travelled your bodies, and like brute beasts provoked your appetites, you sit down to meat, and there continue a long time, having your Tables before you furnished with exquisite viands of all sorts, but touch not one dish, leaving them afterwards for your servants to engorge themselves therewith and make merry; when you the while present some little thing, and that plain and simple, unto your appetites, which are already dulled and quenched: for the abstinence from pleasures and delights permitted, is it not an Exercise against such as are forbidden? Yes verily quoth the stranger. There is then (quoth he) my friend, a certain Exercise of Justice against avarice and covetousnesse of money; and that is not to forbear in night season to rob and spoil our neighbours houses, or to strip passengers out of their cloath: no, nor if a man do not betray his Countrey or friends for a peece of money, is he truly said to inure and exercise himself against avarice: for haply the Law and fear doth bridle and restrain his covetous desire from doing wrong or hurt to another: but he who many times abstaineth from taking just gains, and such as are granted and permitted him by the Laws, he willingly exerciseth and wonteth himself to keep far from any unjust and unlawfull taking of money. For neither is it possible, that in great pleasures and those wicked and pernicious, the soul should contain her self from the appetite thereof, if many times before being in full liberty to enjoy them, she did not despite the same: nor ease for a man to passe over and contemn wicked takings and great gains presented, who long before hath not chastised and tamed his covetous desire to have and gain, which by other hardihoods enough is nourished and bred up impudently and without all shame to lucre: for it sweleth again, and is puffed up with injustice, so as hardly and with much ado it can abstain from doing offence to any one, for to win private profit thereby: but never will it assault a personage who hath not abandoned and given himself over to receive gifts and largesses of his friends, or to take presents, and rewards of Kings; but hath renounced the very benefits allotted unto him by fortune: who also hath retired and removed himself far from avarice, and a leaping desire after a treasure discovered and seen: it will never (I say) tempt him to commit any injustice, nor trouble his thoughts and cogitations: but such an one will quietly and peaceably frame himself to do that which is honest, as having his heart more haughty, than to stoop to Law, and being privy to himself of all good things settled in his soul, sees what men they be, upon whom *Cephisus* and my self be enamoured: and this is the reason, friend *Simmias*, why we request this honest Gentleman here, the stranger, to suffer us to be sufficiently exercised in poverty, that we may attain unto such vertue. After that my brother had finished this speech, *Simmias* having twice or thrice nodded with his head: A great man no doubt (quoth he) is this *Epaminondas*, and a very great man indeed: and well may he thank his good father here *Polymis* for all; who from the first beginning, hath given his children the best education and bringing up in Philosophy: but as touching these matters, agree and accord with them, good stranger and friend. As for you *Lyfis*, let mee demand of you (if we may be so bold, as to hear and know of you) whether you purpose to remove him out of his Sepulchre, and so transport him over into *Italy*? or rather to leave him behind you, to tarry among his friends and well-willers, who no doubt will be glad of to lodge with him, when we shall be there. *Theonor* smiling upon him: It seemeth *Simmias* (quoth he) that *Lyfis* liked well of the place where he is, and is not willing to remove, for that he had no want of any good things here, by the means of *Epaminondas*: for there be certain particular sacred Ceremonies, which we observe in the sepulture of our fellow Professours in this Confraternity of the Pythagoreans, which if they have not when they be dead, me think they have not attained to that happy end which we desire. When as therefore we knew by dreams, that *Lyfis* was departed this life (for we had an infallible sign appearing unto us in our sleep, whetby we can discern whether it be the Ghost and image of one alive or dead) many had this conceit, that being departed in a forein and far Countrey, he had been otherwise entered than he ought, and therefore we were to translate him from thence where he was, to the end that being transported, he might have the due service, and accustomed obsequies belonging to our society. Being therefore come with this mind and cogitation into these parts, and incontinently conducted by those of this Countrey to this Sepulchre: about the Evening I poured out the libaments for mortuaries, for to call forth his spirit that it might come and instruct me how I might proceed in this action: and this last night passed, I saw nothing; but me thought I heard a voice saying unto me: That I should not remove that which ought not to be stirred; because the corpse of *Lyfis* had been by his friends in holy manner entered, and his soul having her doom already, had her conge and passport to go unto another Generation and Nativity, accompanied and coupled with another Demon. And verily this morning when I had conferred with *Epaminondas*; and heard the manner how he had buried *Lyfis*, I understood that he himself had been instructed by him, in the most secret points of our Religion, and how he used the same Spirit or Demon for the guidance of his life, unless I be so unexpect, that I cannot conjecture what the Pilot is by his manner of Navigation: for broad be the wayes of this life, but few they are which these Angels do direct and lead men in. When *Theonor* had thus said, he cast his eye upon *Epaminondas*, as if once again he would behold his Nature and Manners, by the inspection of his Countenance and Visage. And hereupon came in the Physician, and looked the band wherewith *Simmias* his wound was bound up, as purposing to dress him. Then *Phylidas* who came in afterwards with *Hippothendras*, willing to and *Charon*, and *Theocritus* to arise, drew us apart into a certain corner or angle of the porch,

Oooo 3

wonderfully



wonderfully troubled as it might seem by his countenance. With that, I spake unto him and said: What news *Phylidas*? No news *Cephistas* (quoth he unto me) for I forelaw my self, and foretold you as much, namely, the Slackness and Cowardise of *Hippothēnidas*, requiring you not to communicate unto him your enterprise, nor admit him into your company. Now whilst we were much amazed and astounded at these words: Say not, so good *Phylidas* (quoth he) for Gods sake; neither be you a cause both of our undoing and of the ruine of this City, by thinking rashness to be hardiness: but have patience, and suffer these men to return in safety, in case it be so by fatal destiny appointed. *Phylidas* being chafed herewith, and set in a choler: Tell me (quoth he) *Hippothēnidas*, how many think you be privy to our secrets in this designment? I know my self (quoth he) to the number of thirty at the least. If there be so many (quoth he) how cometh it to passe, that you only croffe and gainsay, yea, and hinder that which hath been concluded and agreed upon by us all? and to this purpose have dispatched a light-horseman, to ride in post unto the banished persons, (who had put themselves in their journey hitherward) charging them to return back, and that in no wise they should go forward this day? considering that the most part of those things which went to this journey, fortune it self had procured and prepared fit for their hands? Upon these words of *Phylidas*, we were all much troubled and perplexed: but *Charon* above the rest, fastning his eye upon *Hippothēnidas*, and that with a fowre and stern countenance: Of most wicked wretch that thou art, quoth he, what hast thou done unto us? No harm, said *Hippothēnidas*, in case, leaving this curst and angry voice of yours, you can be content and have patience, to hear and understand the reasons of a man as aged as your self, and having as many gray haire as you have: for if this be the point, to shew unto our fellow Citizens how hardy and courageous we are, that we make no reckoning of our lives, and care not for any perill of death, seeing we have day enough *Phylidas*, let us never stay for the dark evening, but presently, and immediately from this place run upon the tyrants with our swords drawn, let us kill and slay, let us die upon them, and make no spare of our selves: for it is no hard matter to do and suffer all this: may to deliver the City of *Thebes* out of the hands of so many armed men as hold it, to disscile and expell the garison of the Spartans, with the murder of two or three men, is not so easie a thing, (for *Phylidas* hath not provided so much wine for his feast and banquet, as will be sufficient to make fifteen hundred souldiers of *Archias* guard drunken: and say we had killed him, yet *Crippidas* and *Arcefus*, are ready at night, both of them sober enough to keep the corps du guard) why make we such haste then, to draw our friends into an evident and certain danger of present death, especially, seeing withall that our enemies be in some sort advertised of their coming and approach; for if it were not so, why was there commandment given by them to those of *Thebie*, for to be in their armes upon the third day, which is this, and ready to go with the Lacedæmonian Captaines, whensoever they gave commandment? And as for *Ambiphēus*, this very day as I understand, after their judicial proceeding against him, they minded to put to death, upon the coming of *Archias*. And are not these pregnant presumptions, that the plot and enterprise is to them discovered? Were it not better then to defer the execution of our designments a while longer, until such time as the gods be reconciled and appeased? For our Diviners and Wisards having sacrificed a Beef unto *Ceres*, pronounce that the fire of the sacrifice denounceth some great sedition and danger to the Common-weal: and that which you *Charon* particularly ought to take heed of, is this: Yesterday, and no longer since, *Hippatobodus* the Son of *Eriantes*, a man otherwise of good fort, and one who knoweth nothing at all of our enterprise, had this speech with me: *Charon* is your familiar friend, *Hippothēnidas*, but with me not greatly acquainted; advertise him therefore, if you think fit good, that he beware and look to himself, in regard of some great danger and strange accident that is toward him: For the last night, as I dreamed, me thought I saw that his house was in travell as it were of Child; that he and his friends being themselves in distress, prayed unto the gods for her delivery, standing round about her during her labour and painful travell; but the seemed to loom and rore, yea, and to cast out certain inarticulate voices, untill at the last there issued out of it a mighty fire, wherewith a great part of the City was immediately burnt, and the Castle *Cadmea*, covered all over with smoke only, but no part of the fire ascended thertoe. Lo, what the vision was, which this honest man related unto me, *Charon*: which I assure you, for the present, seeme in a great quaking and trembling; but much more when I once heard say, that this day the exiled persons were to return and be lodged here within an house of the City. In great anguish therefore I am, and in a wonderfull agony, for fear lest we engage our selves within a world of calamities and miseries, without being able to execute any exploit of importance upon our enemies, unlesse it be to make a Garboille, and to set all on a light fire: for I suppose that the City when all is done, will be ours, but *Cadmea* the Castle as it is already, will be for them. Then *Theocritus*, taking upon him to speak, and staying *Charon* who was about to reply somewhat against this *Hippothēnidas*: I interpret all this (quoth he) clean contrary: for there is not a sign that confirmeth me more in following of this enterprise (although I have had always good presages in the behalf of the banished, in all the sacrifices that I have offered) than this vision which you have rehearsed: If it be so as you say, that a great and light fire shone over all the City, and the same arising out of a friends house, and that the habitation of our Enemies, and the place of their retreat was darkened and made black again with the smoke, which never brings with it any thing better than tears and troublesome confusion: and whereas from among us there arose inarticulate

voice,

voices, (in case a man should construe it in evil part, and take exception thereat, in regard of the Voice) the same will be when our enterprise, which now is enfolded in obscure, doubtful, and uncertain suspition, shall at once both appeare, and also prevail: as for the ill signs of the sacrifices, they touch not the publick state, but those who now are most powerfull and in the greatest authority. As *Theocritus* thus was speaking eye still; I said unto *Hippothēnidas*: And whom I pray you have you sent unto the men? for if he be not too far onward on his way, we will send after to overtake him. I am notable to say of a truth *Cephistas*, whether it be possible to reach him, (quoth *Hippothēnidas*) for he hath one of the best Horses in all *Thebes* under him; and a man he is, whom ye all know very well, for he is the Master of *Melons* Chariots, and his Chariot men, one unto whom *Melons* himself from the very first discovered this plot, and made privy unto it. With that, considering and thinking with my self what man he should speak of: Is it not *Chlidon* (quoth I) O *Hippothēnidas*, he who no longer since than the last year, won the prize in the horse running, at the solemn feast of *Juno*? The same is the man quoth he. Who then is he whom I have seen this long while standing at the Hall door and looking all upon us? It is *Chlidon* himself I assure you quoth he. Now by *Hercules* I swear, could any thing have hapned worse? And with that, the man perceiving how we looked upon him, approached fair and softly from the door unto us. Then *Hippothēnidas* beckoned unto him, and nodded with his head, as willing him to speak unto us all, for that there was no danger because they were all honest men, and of our side. I know them all well enough quoth he (*Hippothēnidas*) and not finding you at home nor in the market place, I guessed by and by that you were gone toward them, and therefore I made as great haste as I could hither, to the end that you might not be ignorant of all things how they go: For so soon as you commanded me in all speed to meet with our banished Citizens in the forest, I went presently to my house for to take horse, and called unto my wife for my bridle, but she could not give it me; and to mend the matter, stayed a great while in the Chamber or Store-house where such things use to be: now after she had made a seeking & puddering in every corner within the room and could not find it, at length when she had played long enough with me, and made a fool of me, the confessed and told me plainly, that she had lent it forth to one of our neighbours, whose wife the evening before came to borrow it of her: whereupon I was in a great chafe, and gave her some curst words; but the like a shrew, payed me with as good as I lent her, and made no more ado, but cursed me in abominable terms, wishing my forth-going might be unhappy, and my home coming worse: which execrations I pray God may all light upon her own head. To be short, she provoked me so far, that in my choler I dealt her some blows for her shrewd tongue: with that, comes out a number of the Neighbours and Women especially, where after I had given and taken one for another with shame enough, at last with much ado I got away from them and came hither to pray you for to send some other Messenger to the parties you wot of: for I assure you at this present I am to much out of temper that I am not mine own man, but in manner beside my self. This wrought in us all a marvellous alteration of our wills and affections: For whereas a little before we were offended that our designments were crossed, and their coming impeached, now again upon this sudden occurrence, and the shortness of time, which allowed us no leisure to put off, and to procrastinate the matter, we were driven into an agony & fearfull perplexity. Howbeit setting a good countenance upon the matter, speaking also cheerfully unto *Hippothēnidas*, and taking him friendly by the hand, I encouraged him, and gave him to understand, that the very gods themselves seconded our intentions, and invited us to the execution of the enterprise. This done, *Phylidas* went home to his house for to give order about his feast, and withall to draw on *Archias* to drink Wine liberally and to make merry: *Charon* departed also to make ready his house for the entertainment of the banished men, against their return. Mean while *Theocritus* and I went again to *Simnias*: to the end that finding some good occasion and opportunity for the purpose, we might talk with *Epaminondas* again, who was well entered already into a pretty question, which *Galaxidorus* and *Phidolaus* a little before had begun, demanding of what substance, nature and pittance was the familiar spirit of *Socrates*, so much spoken of? Now what *Simnias* had alleged against *Galaxidorus* upon this point, we heard not: Mary thus much he said, that when he demanded upon a time of *Socrates* himself concerning the said matter, he never could get of him any answer, and therefore he never after would ask him the question, but he said that oftentimes he had been present when *Socrates* gave out that he reputed those men for vain persons, who said they had seen with their eye any divine power, and so commended therewith: but contrariwise that he could hold better with those, who said they took knowledge of such a thing by hearing a voice, speaking unto one that gave attentive ear thereto, or earnestly enquired thereof: whereupon he set our heads on work when we were apart by our selves, and made us to guess and conjecture, that this *Dæmon of Socrates*, was no Vision, but a sense of some voice, and an intelligence of words, which came unto him, by an extraordinary manner. Like as in our dreams, it is not a voice indeed that men hear lying fast asleep, but the opinion of some words that they think they hear pronounced: but this intelligence of dreams cometh in truth, to men asleep, by reason of the repose and tranquillity of the body: whereas they that be awake cannot hear, but very hardly, these divine advertisements, being troubled and disquieted with tumultuous passions, and the distraction of their affairs, by occasion whereof they cannot wholly yeild their mind and thought to hear the Revelations that the gods deliver unto them. Now *Socrates* having a pure and clear understanding

standing not tossed and turmoiled with any passion, nor mingled with the body, unless it were very little, for things necessary and no more, was easy to be touched, and so subtle, that soon it might be altered with whatsoever was objected and presented to it: now that which met with it, we may conjecture that it was not simply a voice or sound, but a very articulate speech of his *Dæmon*, which without any audible voice touched the intellectual part of his soul, together with the thing that it declared and revealed unto him. For the voice resembled a blow or stroke given unto the Soul, which by the ears is constrained to receive speech, when we speak one to another: but the intelligence or Understanding of a divine and better nature, leadeth and conducteth a generous mind by a thing that causeth it to understand without need of any other stroke: and the same mind or Soul obeyeth and yeeldeth thereto accordingly, as it either slacketh loose or stretcheth hard the instincts and inclinations, not violently by resistance which the passions make, but supple and pliable, as slack and gentle reigns. And hercof we shall not need to make any wonder, considering that we see how little helmes turn about and wind the greatest hulks and caragues that be: and again the wheelies that Potters use, being never so little touched with the hand, turn very easily: for although they be instruments without life, yet being as they are counterpoised and framed even on every side, by reason of their polished smoothnesse, they are apt to stir and yield unto the moving cause with the least moment that is. Now the Soul of man being bene and stretched out stiff with innumerable inclinations, as it were with so many cords, hath more agility than all the engines or instruments in the world, if a man hath the skill to manage and handle it with reason, after it hath taken once a little motion, that it may bend to that which conceived it: for the beginnings of instincts and passions, tend all to this intelligent and conceiving part, which being stirred and shaken, it draweth, pulleth, stretcheth and haleth the whole man: wherein we are given to understand, what force and power hath the thing that is entered into the conceit and intelligence of the mind. For bones are senseless, the sinewes, and flesh, full of humours, and the whole masse of all these parts together, heavy and ponderous, lying still without some motions. But so soon as the Soul putteth somewhat into the Understanding, and that the same moveth the inclinations thereto, it starteth up and riseth all at once, and being stretched in all parts, runneth amain, as if it had Wings, unto action. And so the manner of this moving, direction, and promptitude, is not hard, and much less, impossible to comprehend: whereby the Soul, hath no sooner understood any object, but it draweth presently with it, by instincts and inclinations, the whole masse of the body. For like as reason conceived and comprised without any voice, moveth the Understanding: even so in mine opinion, it is not such an hard matter, but that a more divine intelligence, and a Soul more excellent, should draw another inferior to it, touching it from without, like as one speech or reason may touch another, and as light, the reflection of light: For we in truth, make our conceptions and cogitations known one unto another, as if we touched them, in the dark, by means of voice: but the intelligences of *Dæmons* having their light, do shine unto those who are capable thereof, standing in need neither of nounes or verbs which men use in speaking one to the other, by which marks they see the images and resemblances of the conceptions and thoughts of the mind: but the very intelligences and cogitations indeed they know not, unless they be such as have a singular and divine light, as we have already said: and yet that which is performed by the ministry of the voice, doth in some sort help and assiste those who otherwise are incredulous. For the air being formed and stamped as it were by the impression of articulate sounds, and become throughout all speech and voice, carrieth a conception and intelligence into the mind of the hearer: and therefore according to this Similitude and Reason, what marvel is it that also which is conceived by these superiour natures altereth the air, and if the air being by reason of that quality which it hath, apt to receive impressions, signifyeth unto excellent men and such as have a rare and divine nature, the speech of him who hath conceived ought in his mind? For like as the strokes that light upon Targets or shields of brass, be heard a far off, when they proceed from the bottom in the mids within, by reason of the resonance and rebound: whereas the blows that fall upon other shields are drowned and dispersed, so as they be not heard at all: Even so the words or speeches of *Dæmons* and Spirits, although they be carried and sit to the ears of all indifferently, yet they rebound to those only, who are of a fited and stayed nature, and whose Souls are at quiet, such as we call divine and celestiall men. Now the vulgar sort have an opinion, that some *Dæmon* doth communicate a kinde of divinity unto men in their sleep: but they think it strange and a miracle incredible, if a man should say unto them, that the gods do move and affect them sensibly when they be awake, and have the full use of reason: As if a man should think that a Musician may play well upon his Harpor Lute; when all the strings be slackened and let down, but when the said instruments be set in tune, and have their strings set up, he cannot make any sound, nor play well thereupon: For they consider not the cause which is within them, to wit, their discord, trouble and confusion, whereof our familiar friend *Socrates* was exempt, according as the Oracle prophesied of him before, which during his infancy was given unto his father: for by it, he commanded he was to let him do all that came into his mind, in no wise either to force or divert him, but to suffer the instinct and Nature of the Child to have the Reigns at large, by praying only to *Jupiter Agreus*, that is to say Eloquent, and to the Muses for him: and farther than so, not to busie himself, nor to take care for *Socrates*, as if he had within him a Guide and Conductour of his life better than ten thousand Masters and Pædagogues.

Thus

Thus you see, *Philolaus*, what our Opinion and Judgement is as touching the *Dæmon* or familiar Spirit of *Socrates* both living and dead, as who reject these voices, sightings, and all such fooleries. But what we have heard *Timarchus* of *Cheronea* to discourse of this point, I wot not well whether I were best to utter and relate the same, for fear I some would think, that I loved to tell vain tales. Not so quoth *Theocritus*, but I pray you be foggod as to rehearse the same unto us: for albeit *Socrates* do not very well expresse the truth, yet in some sort they reach thereto. But first tell us, who this *Timarchus* was: for I never knew the man. And that may well be O *Simmius* (quoth *Theocritus*) for he died when he was very young, and requested earnestly of *Socrates*, to be buried, near unto *Lamprocles*, *Socrates* his Son, who departed this life but few dayes before, being a dear friend of his, and of the same age. Now this young Gentleman, being very desirous (as he was of a generous disposition, and had newly tasted of the sweetness of Philosophy) to know what was the nature and power of *Socrates* familiar Spirit, when he had imparted his mind and purpose unto me only and *Cebes*, went down into the Cave or Vault of *Trophonius*, after the usual sacrifices and accustomed complements due to that Oracle performed: where having remained for two nights and one day, informed as many men were out of all hope that ever he would come forth again, yea and his kinsfolks and friends bewailed the losse of him, one morning betimes he issued forth very glad and jocund: And then he had given thanks unto the god and adored him, so soon as he was gotten through the press of the multitude, who expected his return, he recounted unto us, many wonders strange to be heard and seen: for he said, that being descended into the place of the Oracle, he first met with much darkness, and afterwards when he had made his prayers, he lay a long time upon the ground, neither knew he for certain whether he was awake, or dreamed all the while. Howbeit, he thought he had heard a noise which light upon his head, and smote it, whereby the futures or fates thereof were disjointed and opened, by which he yeelded forth his soul: which being thus separate, was very joyous, seeing it self mingled with a transparent and pure air. And this was the first time that it seemed to breath at liberty, as if long time before untill then, it had been drawn in and bent, for then it became greater and larger than ever before, in manner of a sail spread and displayed to the full. Then he supposed that he heard (though not clearly and perfectly) as it were a noise or sound turning round about his head, and the same yeeling a sweet and pleasant voice. And as he then looked behind him he could see the earth no more, but the Isles all bright and illuminate with a mild and delicate fire, and those exchanging their places one with another, and withall, received sundry colours, as it were divers tinctures, according as that variety of change the light did alter: and they all seemed unto him in number infinite, and in quantity excessive: and albeit they were not of equal pourprie and extent, yet round they were all alike: also, to his thinkings, by their motion which was circular, the skie resounded, because unto the uniform equality of their moving, the pleasant sweetness of the voice and harmony composed and refusing of them all, was correspondent and conformable. Amid these Islands there seemed a sea or great lake diffused and spread, shining with divers mixt colours, upon a ground of grey or light blew. Moreover, of these Isles some few failed as one would say, and were carried a direct course down the water beyond the eurrent; but others, and those in number many, went aside out of the Channell, and were with such a violence drawn back, that they seemed to be swallowed under the waves. Now this Sea or Lake, was (as he thought) very deep toward the South; but on the North side full of shelves and shallow flats; in many places it swelled and overflowed the land; in others it retired and gathered in, as much for it again, and arose not to any high tides: as for the colours, in some place it was simple and sea-like; in another, not pure, but troubled and confused with mud, like unto a Meer or Lake. As concerning the force of the waves about these Isles which are carried together, the same bringeth them back a little, but never conjoineth the end to the beginning: so as they make at no time a circle entire and perfect, but gently divert the application and meeting of their ends, so as in their revolution they wind in and out, and make one crooked obliquity. To the midst of these, and toward the greatest part of the ambient air, is inclined the sea, somewhat less than eight parts of the universall continent, as he thought. And the same sea hath two mouths or entrances, whereby it receiveth two rivers of fire breaking into it, opposite one to the other, in such sort, as the blowiness thereof became whitish, by reason that the greatest part was repelled and driven back. And these things he said, that he beheld with much delight. But when he came to look downward, he perceived a mighty huge hole or gulf all round, in manner of an hollow globe cut thorow the mids, exceeding deep and horrible to see to, full of much darkness, and the same not quiet and still, but turbulent and often times boyling and warming upward, out of which there might be heard innumerable roarings and groanings of beasts, cries and wallings of an infinite number of Children, with sundry plaints and lamentations of men, and women together, besides many noises, tumults, clamors, and outcries of all sorts, and those not clear, but dull and dead, as being sent up from a great depth underneath, where with he was not a little terrified, untill such time as after a good while, there was one whom he saw not, who said thus unto him, O *Timarchus*, What is your desire to know? Who made answer: Even all, for what is there here, not admirable? True, quoth he; but as for us, little have we to do, as a small portion in those superiour regions, because they appertain to other gods: but the division of *Phrygia* being one of the four, and which we dispose and govern, you may see if you will, how it is bounded with *Styx*. And when he demanded again of him, what *Styx* was: it is (quoth he) the

the way which leadeth unto hell and the Kingdom of *Pluto*, dividing two contrary natures of Light and Darkness, with the head and top thereof; for as you see it beginneth from the bottome of Hell beneath, which it toucheth with the ore extremity, and reacheth with the other to the Light all above, and so limiteth the utmost part of the whole world, divided into four Regiments. The first, is that of life; the second of moving; the third of generation; and the fourth of corruption. The first is coupled to the second by *Unity*, in that which is not visible; the second to the third, by the mind or intelligence, in the Sunne; to the third to the fourth, by nature, in the Moon. And of every one of these Copulations, there is a Fiend or Destiny, the Daughter of Necessity, that keepeth the key. Of the first, the that is named *Atropos*, as one would say, inflexible; of the second *Clotus*, that is to say, the Spinstler; of the third in the Moon, *Lachesis*, that is to say, Lot, about which is the bending of geniture or Nativity. As for all the other lles, they have gods within them; but the Moon appertaining to the terrestrial Demons, avoideth the Confinnes of *Sisyx*, as being somewhat higher called, approached once only in an hundred seventy seven second measures: and upon the approach of this precinct of *Sisyx*, the souls cry out for fear. And why? Hell catcheth and swalloweth many of them, as they glide and slip about it; and others the Moon receiveth, and taketh up, swimming from beneath unto her; such I mean, as upon whom the end of generation fell in good and opportune time, all save those which are impure and polluted: for them with her fearful flashing and hideous roaring, she suffereth not to come near unto her; who seeing that they have missed of their intent, bewail their wofull state, and be carried down again as you see, to another generation and nativity. Why quoth *Timarchus*, I see nothing but a number of stars leaping up and down about this huge and deep gulf, some drowned and swallowed up in it, others appearing again from below. These be (quoth he) the Demons, that you see, though you know them not. And mark withall how this comes about. Every soul is endued with a portion of mind or understanding; and of man, there is not one void of reason; but look how much thereof is mingled with flesh and with passions, being altered with pleasures and dolours, it becometh unreasonable. But every soul is not mixed after one sort, some as much as another; for some are wholly plunged within the body, and being troubled and disquieted with passions, run up and down all their life time: others partly are mingled with the flesh, and in part leave out that which is most pure, & not drawn downward to the contagion of that gross part, but remaineth swimming and floating as it were aloft, touching the top or crown only of mans head; (whereas the rest is depressed downward to the bottome, and drowned there) and is in manner of a cord hanging up aloft just over the soul, which is directly and plumb under, to uphold and raise it up, so far forth as it is obdiant thereto; and not over-ruled and swayed with passions and perturbations: for that which is plunged down within the body, is called the soul; but that which is emise and uncorrupt, the vulgar fore calleth the understanding, supposing it to be within them, as in mirrors that which appeareth by way of reflexion: but those that judge aright and according to the truth, name it Demon, as being clean without them.

These stars then which you see as if they were extinct and put out, imagine and take them to be the souls which are totally drowned within bodies: and such as seem to shine out again, and to return lightsome from beneath, casting and shaking from them a certain, dark, and foggy mist, as if it were some filth and ordure, esteem the same to be such souls, as after death are retired and escaped out of the bodies: but those which are mounted on high and move to and fro in one uniform course throughout, are the Demons or spirits of men, who are said to have Intelligence and Understanding. Endeavour now therefore and strain your self to see the connexion of each one, whereby it is linked and united to the soul. When I heard this I began to take more heed, and might see stars leaping and floating upon the water, some more, some lesse, like as we observe pieces of Cork, fluewing in the sea where Fishers nets have been cast: and some of them turned in manner of spindles or bobins, as folk spin or twist therewith, yet drawing a troubled and unquall course, and not able to direct and compose the motion straight. And the voice said that those which held on a right course and orderly motion, were they whose souls were obdiant to the reigns of reason, by the means of good nurture and civill education, and such as shewed not upon the earth their Beastly, Gross, and Savage Brutishness: but that they eschew rise and fall up and down unequally and disorderly, as struggling to break out of their bounds, are those which strive against the yoke, with their disobedient and rebellious manners, occasioned by want of good bringing up, one while getting the mastery and bring them about to the right hand, another while curbed by passions and drawn away by vices, which notwithstanding they resist another time again, and with great force strive to withstand. For that Bond, which in manner of a Bridle-bite is put into the mouth as it were of the Brutish and unreasonable part of the soul, when it pulleth the same back, bringeth that which they call repentance of sine, and the shame after unlawful and prohibited pleasures, which is a grief and remorse of the soul restrained and bridled by that which governeth and commandeth it, until such time, as being thus rebuked and chastised, it become obedient and tractable like unto a beast made tame without beating or tormenting, as quickly and readily conceiving the Signs and Marks which the Demon sheweth. These therefore, as the last (long and late though it be) are ranged to the Rule of Reason. But of such are obedient at the first, and presently from their very Nativity hearken unto their proper Demon, are all the kind of prophets and diviners, who have the gift to foretell things to come, likewise

likewise holy and devout men: Of which number you have heard how the soul of *Hermodorus* the Clazomenian, was wont to abandon his body quite, and both by day and night to wander into many places; and afterwards to return into it again, having been present the while to hear and see many things done and said afar off: which it used to long, until his enemies by the treachery of his wife, surprised his body one time when the soul was gone out of it, and burnt it in his house. However, this was not true: for his Soul never departed out of his body: but the same being always obedient unto his Demon, and slackening the bond unto it, gave it means and liberty to run up and down, and to walk to and fro in many places, in such sort, as having seen and heard many things abroad, it would come and report the same unto him: But those that consumed his body as he lay asleep, are tormentured in *Tartarus* even at this day for it: which you shall know your self good young man, more certainly within these three months (quoth that voice) and for this time see you depart. When this voice had made an end of speaking, *Timarchus*, as he told the Tale himself, turned about to see who it was that spake; but feeling a great pain again in his head, as if it had been violently pressed and crushed, he was deprived of all sense and understanding, and neither knew himself nor any thing about him: But within a while after when he was come unto himself, he might see how he lay along at the Entry of the aforesaid Cave of *Trophonius*, like as he had himself at the beginning. And thus much concerning the Fable of *Timarchus*: who being returned to *Athens*, in the third month after, just as the voice foretold him, departed this life. And then we wondered hereat, and made report thereof back to *Socrates*; who rebuked and chid us, for saying nothing to him of it, witties *Timarchus* was alive; for that he would willingly himself have heard him more particularly, and examined every point at the full. Thus you have heard, *Theocritus*, a mingled Tale and History together of *Timarchus*: But see whether we shall not be faine to call for this strangers help, to the decision of this question: for very proper and meet it is for to be discussed by such devout and Religious men. And why (quoth *Theon*) doth not *Epaminondas* deliver his opinion thereof, being a man trained up, and instructed in the same Discipline and School with us. Then my father smiling at the matter: This is his nature (quoth he) my good friend, he loveth to be silent, and wary he is what he speaketh, but wonderful desirous to learn, and insatiable of hearing others. And hereupon *Spintharus* the Tarentine, who conversed familiarly with him here a long time, was wont to give out this speech of him; That he had never talked with a man, who knew more and spake lesse than he. But tell us now what you think your self, of that which hath been said. For mine own part (quoth he) I say, that this Discourse and Report of *Timarchus*, as Sacred and inviolable, ought to be consecrated unto God: and marvel I would, if any should discredit and hardly believe that which *Socrates* himself hath delivered of him; and when they name Swannes, Dragons, Dogs and Horses, Sacred, believe not that there be men Celestiall and beloved of the gods, considering they hold and say, that God is never *stupidus*, that is to say, a lover of Birds, but *φιλώψυχος*, that is to say, a lover of Mankind. Like as therefore a man who is said to be *Philippus*, that is to say a lover of Horses, taketh not a fancy, nor regardeth alike all Horses, comprised under the whole kind, but chusing alwayes some one more excellent than the rest, Rideth, Cherisheth, and maketh much of himself especially: even so those Divine Spirits which surmount our nature, make choice and take as it were out of the whole flock the best of us, upon whom they set their Brand or Mark, and them they think worthy of a more singular and exquisite education, and those they order and direct, not with Reigns and Bridles, but with Reason and Learning, and that by signs, whereof the common and Rascall sort have no Knowledge nor Experience. For neither do ordinary hounds understand the Signs, that Huntsmen use, nor every Horse the sifting and chirting of the Elcuiroy, but such only as have been taught and brought up to it; for they with the least whistling and hounding shew, know presently what they are commanded to do, and quickly be ordered as they ought. And verily, *Homer* seemeth not to be ignorant of this difference whereof we speak: for of Diviners and Soothsayers, some he calleth *ἰερωτάται*, i.e. Augurs, that is to say Authours or Observers of Birds; others *θεοί*, that is to say, Bowel-Priests, that spie into the inward of Sacrifices; and some again there be, who hearing and knowing what the gods themselves do speak, are able to declare expressly, and foretell things to come, as may appear by these verses:

King Priams dear son Helenus,  
their mind soon understood,  
And what this god and goddess both  
in counsell deemed good.

And a little after:

For thus I heard the gods to say,  
Who as immortal live for ay.

For like as they who are without, and not of the Domestical and near acquaintance of Kings, Princes, and generall Captains, do know and understand their wills and minds by the means of certain Fire-Lights, found of Trumpets, and Proclamations; but to their Faithfull, Trusty, and Familiar Friends they speak by word of mouth: Even so, God communeth and talketh with few, and these very few come but unto the common sort he giveth signs, and of these consisteth the art of Divination: for the gods receive very few men in recommendation for to adorn their lives, but those only whom they are disposed to make exceeding happy and Divine indeed: and those souls which be delivered from farther generation, and are for ever after at liberty and dismissed, free from the body, come afterwards

afterwards Demons, and take the charge and care of men, according as *Hesiodus* saith. For like as Champions, who otherwise heretofore have made profession of wrestling and other exercises of the body, after they have given over the practice thereof, by reason of their old age, leave not altogether the desire of glory by that means, nor cast off the affection in chiding the body, but take pleasure still to see other young men to exercise their bodies, exhorting and encouraging them thereto, yea, and enforcing themselves to run in the race with them: even so, they that are past the combats and travels of this life, and through the vertue of their souls come to be Demons, desiste not utterly the affairs, the speeches and studies of those that be here, but being favorable unto them who in their good endeavours aspire to the fame end that they have attained to, yea, and after a sort, banding and siding with them, do incite and exhort them to vertue, especially when they see them near unto the end of their hopes, and ready in manner to touch the fame. For this divine power of Demons, will not care and be acquainted with every man indifferently, but like as they who stand upon the shore, can do no other good unto them who swim far within the sea, and a great way from the land, but look upon them and say nothing; but to such as are near to the sea side, they run, and for their sakes, wading a little into the sea, help both with hand and voice, and so save them from drowning: even so (*Simmias*) dealeth the Demon with us; for so long as we are plunged and drowned within mundane affaires, and change many bodies, as it were for many waggons and chariots, passing out of one into another, it suffereth us to strive and labour of our selves, yea, and by our own patience and long sufferance to save our selves, and gain the Haven: but when there is a soul, which hath already by innumerable generations supported and endured long travels, and having in manner performed her course and revolution, straineth all her might and maine, with much sweet to get forth and ascend up; to it God envieth not her own proper Demon and familiar spirit to be assistant, yea, and giveth leave to any other whatsoever, that is willing thereto. Now one is desirous and ready alwaies to help and second another, yea, and forward to promote the safety thereof: the soul also for her part, giveth good ear, because she is so near, and in the end is saved; but she that obeyeth not nor hearkeneth to her own familiar and proper Demon as forsaken of it, speaketh not well in the end. This said, *Epinomandus* looking toward me: It is high time, *Cephisias*, for you (quoth he) to go into the wrestling School and place of exercise, to the end that you dispend not your companions: mean while, we (when it shall be thought good to dissolve and discontinue this meeting) will take the charge of *Theon*. Then said I, Be it so: but I suppose, that *Theonius*, together with *Galaxidorus* and my self, is willing to commune and reason with you a little. In good time (quoth he) let them speak their mind and what they will. With that, he rose up and took us apart into a winding and turning corner of the Gallery, where we came about him, and began to persuade and deal with him for to take part with us in the enterprise. He made us answer, that he knew well enough the day when the banished persons were to return; and had taken order with his friends to be ready against the time with *Gorgidas*, and to embrace the opportunity thereof: howbeit, they were not determined to take away the life of any one Citizen, not condemned by order of Law, unless some urgent necessity enforced them thereto. And otherwise, it were very meet and expedient for the criminality of *Thebes*, that there should be some not culpable of this massacre, but innocent and clear of all that then shall be committed; for so these men will be less suspected of the people, and be thought to counsel and exhort them for the best. We thought very well of this advice of his, and so he repaired againe to *Simmias*; and we went down to the place of publick exercise, where we met with our friends; and there we dealt one with another apart, as we wrestled together, questioning about one thing or another, and telling this or that, every one preparing himself to execution of the designe: and there we might see *Archias* and *Philippus* all anointed and oyled going toward the feast. For *Phyllidas* fearing that they would make haste and put *Amphitheus* to death, so soon as ever he had accomplished *Lysantridas* and sent him away, took *Archias* with him, feeding him with hope to enjoy the Lady whom he desired, and promising that she should be at the feast: whereby he persuaded him to minde no other thing, but to solace himself and make merry with those who were wont to roist and riot with him. By this time it drew toward night, the weather grew to be cold, and the wind rose high, which caused every man with more speed to retire and take house. I for my part, meeting with *Damocidas*, *Pelopidas* and *Theopompus*, entertained them; and others did the like to the rest. For after that they banished persons were passed over the mountain *Cybera*, they parted themselves; and the coldness of the weather gave them good occasion (without all suspicion) to cover their faces, and so to pass along the City undiscovered. And some of them there were, who as they entered the gates of the City, perceived it to lighten on their right hand without thunder, which they took for a good presage of safety and glory in their proceedings, as if this signe betokened, that the execution of their designment should be lightsome and honourable, but without any danger at all. Now when we were all entered in, and safe within house, to the number of eight and forty, as *Theocritus* was sacrificing apart in a little oratory or chapel by himself, he heard a great rapping and bounding at the door: and anon there was one came and brought him word, that two halberds of *Archias* guard knocked at the outward gate, as being sent in great haste to *Charon*, commanding to open them the door, as greatly offended that they had staid so long. Whereat *Charon* being grieved in mind, commanded that they should be let in presently: who meeting them, within the court with a coronet upon his head, as having newly sacrificed unto the gods, and made good cheer, demanded of these halberds, what they would? *Archias* & *Philippus* (say they) have sent us, willing and charging you with all speed

repale

repair unto them. Why, what is the matter (quoth *Charon*) that they should send for me in such haste at this time of the night; and what great news is there? We know not, said these Sergeants; but what good would you have us to carry back unto them? Marry, tell them (quoth he) that I will call off my Chapter, and put on another Robe, and presently follow after: for if I should go with you, it might be an occasion of trouble, and move some to suspect that you lead me away to Prison. You say well, answered the Officers again, do even so; for we must go another way to those Shoulders that watch and ward without the City, and deliver unto them a commendement from the head Magistrate and Aulens. Thus departed they. With that, *Charon* returned to us, and made relation of these newes, which thrust us into our dumps, and put us in a great afright, supposing for certain, that we were betrayed and our Plot detected: most of the company suspected *Hippokleides*, for that he went about to impeach the return of the exiled persons, by the means of *Chlidon*, whom he meant to send unto them: who feeling that he missed of his purpose, by all likelihood, upon a fearful and timorous heart, might reveal our conspiracy, now when it was come to the very point of execution: for come he was not with others into the house where we were all assembled; and to be short, there was not one of us all, that judged better of him than of a wicked and treacherous Traitor: howbeit, we agreed all in this, that *Charon* should go thither as he was commanded, and in any wise obey the Magistrate who had sent for him.

Then he commanding (*O Archidamus*) his own Son to be present, a stripling about fifteen years of age, and the fairest youth in all the City of *Thebes*, very laborious and affectionate to bodily exercises; and for stature and strength, surpassing all his fellows and companions of that age; made this speech unto us: My Masters and Friends, this is my Son and only Child, whom I love entirely, as you may well think; him I deliver into your hands, beseeching you in the name of the gods and all Saints in heaven, that if you find any peridious Treachery by me against you, to do him to death and not spare him. And now I humbly pray you, most valiant and hardy Knights, prepare your selves resolutely against the last Feast that ever these Tyrants shall make: abandon not, for want of Courage, your bodies to be villanously outraged and spoiled by these most leud and wicked persons, but be revenged of them, and now shew your invincible hearts, in the behalf of your Countrey. When *Charon* had delivered these words, there was not one of us all but highly commended his Magnanimity and Loyalty; but we were angry with him, in that he doubted of us that we had him in suspicion and distrust: therefore willed him to have away his Son with him. And more than that, me thinks (quoth *Pelopidas*) you have not done well & wisely for us, in that you sent him not before to some other house: for what reason or necessity is there, that he should either perish or come into perill, being found with us? and yet it is time enough to convey him away, that in case it fall out with us otherwise than well, he may grow up after his kind, for to be revenged of these Tyrants another day. It shall not be so, quoth *Charon*; he shall even stay here, and take such part of fortune as we shall do: and besides, it were no sort of honesty or honour, to leave him in danger of our enemies: And therefore my good Son (quoth he) take a good heart and a resolute, even above these years of thine, enter in Gods name into these hazards and trials that be thus necessary, together with many valiant and hardy Citizens, for the maintenance of liberty and vertue. And even yet, great hope we have, that good success will follow, and that some blessed Angel will regard and take in protection those who adventure thus for Righteousness and Justice sake. Many of us there were (*Archidamus*) whose tears trickled down their cheeks, to hear *Charon* deliver these words; but himself being inflexible and not relenting for joy, with an undanted heart, a settled countenance, and eyes still dry, put his Son into *Pelopidas* hands, embraced every one of us, shook us by the hands, and so encouraging us to proceed; went forth of the doors. Wonderful was this; but much more you would have wondered, to have seen the alacrity, cheerfull and constant resolution of his Son, as if he had been another *Neoptolemus*, who never looked pale, nor changed colour for the matter, notwithstanding so great danger presented; neither was he one jot affraid: but contrariwise, drew forth *Pelopidas* Sword out of his Scabbard, to see and try whether it was keen enough.

Whiles these matters thus passed, there comes towards us *Diotomus*, one of *Cephisodorus* friends, with a Sword by his side, and a good Cuirafon of Steel under his Robe, who having heard that *Charon* was sent for to come to *Archias*, blamed much our long delay; and whetted us on to go forthwith to the Tyrants houses: For in so doing (quoth he) we shall prevent them, by coming suddenly upon them: if not, yet better were it for us, to set upon them without doors, separate one from another, and not all in one plump, than to stay for them, enclosed all within one Parlour; and be there taken by our Enemies, like a swarm of Bees, and have all our throats cut. In like manner *Theocritus* the shipoor, urged us to make haste, saying, that all the signes of sacrifices were good, and presaged happily success with all security. Whereupon we began on all hands to take Arms, and to prepare our selves: by which time, *Charon* was returned to us, with a merry and cheerfull countenance: who smiling and looking upon us: Be of good cheer (quoth he) my Masters and Friends, all is well; there is no danger, and our affair proceedeth well: for *Archias* and *Philippus*, so soon as they heard that I was come, upon their sending for me, being already well Cup-flouten, and half drunk with Wine, so as both their minds and bodies were very far out of tune; with much ado they rose from the board, and came forth to the door unto me; Now *Charon*, quoth *Archias*, we hear that our banished men lie lurking here within the City, being secretly and by stealth entered into it. Whereat I seeming to be much amazed, Where (quoth I) are they said to be, and who? That we know not (quoth *Archias*): That is the cause why we sent for you to come before us, if haply you have heard any thing of it more certainly.

Ppp

Here

Hereupon I remaining for a while as one somewhat afflicted and pensive, coming again to my self, began thus to think, that this must needs be some headless rumour, and arising from no good ground, nor certain Author; neither was it likely to be any one of them that were privy to the complot who had discovered it, because they would not then have been ignorant of the House where they were assembled, and therefore it could not chuse but be some blind brutes blown abroad through the City, and come to their ears. So I laid unto him, that during the life of *Androclides*, we had heard many such flying tales, and vain false rumors that ran about the City and troubled us. But now (quoth he) *O Archias*, I have heard no such thing: howbeit, if it please you to command me, I will enquire and hearken farther into the thing, and if I find any matter of importance, I will come and inform you of it. It will be said of you (quoth *Phyllidas*) and it were very good *Charon*, that in those cases you be very inquisitive, and leave nothing unsearched: for why should we be careless and negligent in any thing, but rather it behooveth us to be circumspect, and to look about us on every side: providence in these cases is very requisite, and good it is to make all sure: and when he had so said, he took *Archias* and had him into the Parlour, where they be now drinking hard: and therefore my good friends, let us stay no longer; but after we have made our Prayers unto the gods, for our good speed, go about our business. *Charon* had no sooner said this, but we prayed unto the gods for their assistance, and encouraged one another to the enterprise. It was the very last time, when all men use to be at Supper: and the whistling wind arising still more and more, had brought some snow or sleet, mingled with a drizzling Rain; so as there was not one person to be seen in the Streets as we passed along. Those therefore who were appointed to assail *Leontidas* and *Hippates*, who dwell near together, went out in their Cloakes, having no Arms or Weapons, but each of them their Swords; and those were *Pelopidas*, *Democides*, and *Cephisodorus*: But *Charon*, *Melin*, and others, ordained to sit upon *Archias*, had their Breast-plates or Demy-cuirasses before them, and upon their Heads thick Chaplets, some of Firs, others of the Pine or Pitch-Tree-Branches: and part of them were clad in Womens Apparell; counterfeiting drunken persons, as if they were come in a Mask and Mumery with their Women. And that which more is, *O Archias*, fortune also making the beastly Cowardice and foolish ignorance of our Enemies equal to our hardihood, and resolute preparations, and having diversified and distinguished even from the beginning our enterprise, like a play or enterlude, with many dangerous intercurrents, was assiduous and ran with us, at the very point and upshot of the execution thereof, presenting unto us, even then a doubtfull and dangerous occurrence, as most sudden and unexpected accident: for when *Charon* after he had talked with *Archias* and *Phyllippus*, was returned to the house, and had disposed in order, for to go in hand with the execution of our designment; there was brought from hence a Letter written by *Archias* the High Priest here amongst you, unto that *Archias* his old host and friend, which declared unto him (that should be) by all likelihood, the return of the banished, and the sorplices which they were about; the house also wherein they were assembled, and all the complices who were of the conspiracy: this being by the express relation of the women, whose company he attended, albeit the messenger that brought the Letter, said it contained serious affairs, of great consequence; yet he only received it, and made no other answer but this: What selfst thou nic of serious affairs; we shall think of them to morrow; and with this, put the Letters under the Pillow; whereon he leaned, calling for the Pot again, and commanding that it should be filled; scolding *Phyllidas* ever and anon to the doore, to see if the women were yet coming. Thus whilst this hope continued and held the Feast, we came upon them, and passed along through the Parlour unto the very Hall or Parlour, where they were at Supper, and there we stayed a while at the doore, bying and viewing every one of them as they sat about the Table. Now the sight of those Chapters and Garlands which we were upon our heads, and those womens apparell, which some of us were dressed in, deceived them a little upon our first coming in such sort, as for a while there ensued silence, untill such time as *Melin* first laying hand upon his Sword *Archias*, rushed into the middle of the place: with that, *Cabirichus*, *Cymon*, who was *Archias* the Priest's right hand, by the Armes side passed by, and held him back, crying out with ill: *Phyllidas*, for no other *Melin*? But *Melin* shaking him off so, as he left his body, drew forth his Sword with ill, and ran upon *Archias*, whom being hardly able to ward, he gave not over untill he had killed outright in the place. *Cabirichus* then he upon *Phyllippus*, whom he wounded in the neck, and notwithstanding that he defended himself with the Box that stood about him upon the Table, yet *Phyllippus* mounting upon the boord, laid him along on the floor, and there under foot dispatched him. As for *Cabirichus* we take him prisoner, and entered him not to make peace with the Tyrants, but to joy with us, in delivering our Native Country from Tyranny, as he was a Sacrosaint Magistrate, and consecrated unto the gods for the good and safety of the commonwealth. But being necessarily induced to hearken unto reason, and that which was most expedient for him, because he was little better than half drunk; he hanging still in doubtfull suspense and perplexity, arose up on his feet, and presented unto us his javelin, with the head forward, which by the outcome of the place, the words with us, ever go with ill: whereupon caught hold of the javelin in the middle, and held it over my head, crying unto him, to let it go, and save himself: or else he should die for it. In this mean while, *Phyllippus*, standing on his right side, ran him through with his Sword, saying with ill, There flye thou also together with them whom thou hast slewed and spoiled up: for it were not becoming thee to wear a Coronet and Garland when there is set free, nor to offer any more sacrifices to the gods, before whom thou hast cursed thy country, by making

making prayers so often for the prosperity of her enemies. When *Cabirichus* was fallen down dead, *Phyllippus* who stood by, caught up the Sacred Javelin, and drew it out of the blood that there was left. This mischance being done, some few of the servants, who durst interpose themselves, and come between for the defence of those usurpers, we slew; but as many as were quiet, and stirred not; we kept up within a chamber, where men are wont to keep; being not willing that they should get forth and go to publish throughout the City what was done, before we knew how the world went with others.

Thus you hear how this chare was done. As for *Pelopidas* and his train, they came to the utmost gate of *Leontidas*, where they knocked as softly, as they thither came gently and with silence, and to one of the servants who heard them knock, and demanded who was there, they answered, That they were come from *Athenis*, and brought Letters unto *Leontidas* from *Calibramus*. The fervitor went and told his master so much, who being commanded to set open the gate, unbarred and unbolted it; the gate no sooner yielded from them a little, but they rushed in all at once with violence, bare down the man, and laid him along, ran a pace through the Court and Hall, and so directly passed to the Bed-chamber of *Leontidas*: who presently suspecting what the matter was, drew his dagger, and put himself forward to make resistance, and to stand upon his defence. Unjust he was, no doubt, and Tyrannical, howbeit otherwise a tall man of his hands, and of a courageous stomach: yet forgot he to overthrow the lamp, and put out the light, and in the dark to intermingle himself with those who came to assault him, and so haply to get away from them; but being eysed by them, so soon as ever the doore was open, he stabbed *Cephisodorus* in the very flank under the short ribs; and then encountering with *Pelopidas*, who would have entered second into the Chamber, he cried out aloud, and called to his servants for help: but *Sanidas*, with others about him, kept them back, and otherwise of themselves they durst not meddle nor hazard their lives to deal with the noblest persons of the City, and those who for strength and valor were known to surpass the rest. So there was a scuffling and stiff combat between *Pelopidas* and *Leontidas*, in the very portal of the Chamber doore, which was but narrow, where *Cephisodorus* fell down in the midst between them ready to dye, so that others could not come in to succor *Pelopidas*: At the last when our friend *Pelopidas* had received a little wound in his head, but given *Leontidas* many a one, he overthrew him, and flew him upon the body of *Cephisodorus*, who being yet warm, and not fully dead, saw his enemy fall, and therewith putting forth his right hand to *Pelopidas*, and bidding all the rest adieu, he joyfully yielded up his breath. When they had dispatched this business, they turned immediately from thence to *Hypates* house, and when the doore was likewise set open for them, they killed him also, as he thought to escape, and fled by the roof of the house unto his neighbors. Which done, they returned with speed directly unto us, whom they found abroad at a Gallery called *Polytylon*. After we had saluted and embraced one another, and talked a little altogether, we went first to the common Gaol; where *Phyllidas* having called forth the Gaoler: *Archias* (quoth he) and *Phyllippus* command you with all speed to bring your Prisoner *Amphitheus* unto them. The Gaoler considering that it was an unreasonable hour, and withal, perceiving that *Phyllidas* in his speeches was not very well flayed, but that he was yet chafed, and panted still unquietly upon the fresh fray that he had been at, doubting and suspecting a skirmish: When was it ever seen (quoth he) *O Phyllidas*, that the Polemarchy or chief Captains sent for a Prisoner at this time of the night? when by you? and what token or watchword bring you from them? As the Gaoler reasoned thus, *Phyllidas* made no more ado, but with an Horsemans staff or lance that he had in his hand, ran him through the sides, and laid him dead on the ground, wicked wretch that he was, whom the next morning, many a woman trampled under their feet, and spit in his face as he lay. Then brake we the Prison doore open, and first called by name unto *Amphitheus*, and afterwards to others, according as each of them was of our acquaintance and familiarity; who hearing and knowing our voyces, leapt out of their Pallets upon their feet, and willingly drew their chains and irons after them: but such a had their feet felt in the stocks, stretched forth their hands and cried unto us, beseeching they might not be left behind: and whilst we were busie in setting them loose, many of the neighbors by this time who dwelt neerer and perceived what was done, were run forth already into the streets with glad and joyful hearts. The very women also, as any of them heard ought of their acquaintance, without regard of observing the custom and manner of the Boeotians, ran out of doors one to another, and demanded of every one whom they met in the streets, what news? And as many of them as light either upon their fathers or husbands, followed them as they went, and no man impeached them in so doing: for the pitiful commiseration, the tears, prayers, and supplications, especially of honest and chaste wives, were in this case very effectual, and moved men to regard them. When things were brought to this pass, so soon as we heard, that *Epaminondas* and *Gorgidas*, with other friends, were now assembled within the Temple of *Minerva*, we went directly unto them, and thither repaired also many honest Citizens, and men of quality, flocking still more and more in great frequency. Now after relation was made unto them, how all things sped, and that they were requested to assist us in the performance and execution of that which was behinde, and for that purpose to meet all together in the common Market-place, incontinently they set up a shout, and cried unto the Citizens, *Liberty, liberty*, distributing Arms and Weapons among as many as came to joyne with them: which they took forth of the Temples and Halls, being full of the spoils of all forts, won from enemies in times past, as also out of the Armories, Furberers, and Cutlers shops there adjoining. Thither came *Hippias* likewise with a Troop of friends and servants, bringing those trumpeters with him, who were by chance come to the City against the feast of *Hercules*; and immediately





verue, and diligence of the authors, and give out, they were not done and executed by themselves. Over and besides, those who professedly and directly speak evil of one, incur the imputation of quarrelling, rash-headed and furious persons, in case they keep not within a mean; but such as do it after an oblique manner, as if they discharged bullets, or shot arrows at one side from some blind corner, charging surmises and suspicions; and then to turn behind and shift off all, by sayings, they do not believe any such thing, which they desire most of all to be believed, howsoever they disclaim all malice and evil will: over and besides their canced nature, they are stained with the note of notorious impudency. Next neighbours unto these, are they, who among imputations and blames, adjoin certain praises: as in the time of *Socrates*, one *Aristoxenus* having given him the terms of ignorant, untaught, dissolute; came in with this afterwards: but true it is that he doth no man wrong, and is worth to himself: for like as they, who will cunningly and artificially flatter otherwhiles, among many and unmeasurable praises, mingle some light reprehensions, joyning with their sweet flatteries, (as it were some tart sauce to season them) certain words frankly and freely spoken: even to the malicious person, because he would have that believed which he blameth, putteth thereto some little sprinkling of a few praises. There may be exemplified and numbered many other signs and marks of malice: but these may suffice to give unto understand the nature and intention of this Author whom now we have in hand.

First and foremost therefore to begin at heavenly wights, and as they say at *Vesta*, to the daughter of *Inachus*, whom all the Greeks think to have been deified & honoured with divine honours by the Barbarous Nations, in such sort as that she hath left her name to many Seas, and noble Ports, in regard of her great glory and renown; and opened the source (as it were) and original beginning of many Right Noble, most Famous and Royal Families; this our gentle Historiographer saith, that she yielded her self unto certain Merchants of *Phenicia*, to be carried away, for that she having been deflowered not against her will, by a Master of a Ship, feared lest she should be spied great with child; and withal belyet the Phenicians themselves, as if they gave out as much of her. He reports himself also to the testimony of the sages and wise men of *Perfia*, that the Phenicians ravished and carried her away with other women: shewing withall directly his opinion a little after, that the most noble and bravest exploits that ever the Greeks achieved, to wit, the war of *Troy*, was an enterprise begun in folly, for a lewd and naughty woman: for it is very apparent quoth he, that these women if they had not been willing themselves, they had never been so ravished, and had away as they were. And therefore we may as well say that the gods did foolishly to shew themselves angry and offended, with the Lacedæmonians for the abusing of the daughters of *Scedas* the Læstrian; as also to punish *Ajax*, for that he forced *Lady Cassandra*: for certain it is according to *Herodotus*, that if they had not been willing, they had never been deflowered: and yet himself saith that *Aristomenes* was taken alive, and carried away by the Lacedæmonians, and afterwards *Philopemen* Captain General of the Achæans tasted the same fortune, and *Attilus Regulus* the Consul of the Romans, fell likewise into the hands of his enemies: all of them such personages as hardly may be found more valiant and hardy warriors in the world. But what marvel is this, considering that men do take Leopards, and Tygres alive? Now *Herodotus* blameth the poor women, who were by force abused, and defendeth those wicked men who offered them that abuse. Besides, so much affected he is in love unto the Barbarous Nations; that he will acquit and clear *Rusrides* of that ill name which went of him, for slaying of his guests, and sacrificing men, and attributing unto all the Egyptians by his testimony, much godliness, Religion and Justice, returneth upon the Greeks this inhuman and abominable cruelty. For in his second Book he writeth that *Melampus* having received *Helena* at the hands of King *Proteus* his wife, and been by him honoured with great and rich presents, shewed himself again a most unjust and wicked man. For when the wind and weather served him not for to embark and sail away, he wrought by his report, a most cursed and detestable fact, in taking two of the inhabitants male children of that Countrey, and cut them in pieces for sacrifice: by occasion whereof being hated of the Egyptians, and pursued, he fled directly with his fleet, and departed into *Libya*. For mine own part, I wot not what Egyptian hath given this report of *Melampus*: but contrariwise I know full well, that in *Egypt* they retain still to this day many honours in the memoriall, both of him and also of his wife *Helena*. Moreover this writer holding on still his course, reporteth that the Persians learned of the Greeks, to abuse boyes carnally and contrary to kind. And yet how is it possible that the Persians should learn this vilany and filthiness of the Greeks, considering that the Persians in manner all do confesse, that the children were therein gulled, before they had ever seen the Greeks sea. Also he writeth, that the Greeks were taught by the Egyptians, their solemn pompe, feastivall processions, and publick Assemblies: likewise to adore the twelve gods: yea and that *Melampus* had learned of the same Egyptians the very name of *Dionysius*, that is to say, *Bacchus*, who taught it the others Greeks. Astouching the sacred mysteries, and secret ceremonies of *Ceres*, that they were brought out of *Egypt* by the daughters of *Danauus*: as also that the Egyptians beat themselves and are in great sorrow, yet will themselves name nothing why they do so, but remain close and keep silence in the Religious Service of the gods. As touching *Hercules* and *Bacchus* whom the Egyptians esteem as gods, and the Greeks very aged men, he maketh mention in no place of this precise observation and distinction: howsoever he saith, that this Egyptian *Hercules*, was reckoned and ranged in the second order of the gods, and *Bacchus* in the third, as those who had a beginning of their essence, and were not eternal: and yet he pronounceth those other to be gods, but unto these, he judgeth that we ought to perform anniversary funerals, as having been sometime mortal, and

and now canonized demi-gods, but in no wise to sacrifice unto them as gods. After the same manner spake he of *Pan*, overthrowing the most holy and venerable sacrifices of the Greeks by the vanities and fables which the Egyptians devised. Yet is not this the worst, nor so intolerable; for deriving the pedigree of *Hercules* from the race of *Perseus*, he holdeth, that *Perseus* was an Assyrian, according to that which the Persians say: But the Captains and Leaders of the Dorians (saith he) seem to be descended in right line from the Egyptians, and fetch their genealogie and ancestors from before *Danae* and *Arcisius*: for as concerning *Epaphus*, *Is*, *Talus* and *Argus*, he hath wholly passed over and rejected, striving to make, not only the other two *Hercules* Egyptians and Phenicians, but also this whom himself nameth to be the third, a meer stranger from Greece, and to enroll him among Barbarians, notwithstanding that of all the ancient learned men, neither *Homer*, nor *Hesiodus*, ne yet *Archilochus*, *Pindarus*, *Sitichorus*, *Alcman*, nor *Pindarus* do make mention of any *Hercules* an Egyptian or Phenician, but acknowledge one alone, to wit, our Boetian and Argive. And that which more is, among the seven sages, whom he termeth by the name of Sophisters, he will needs bear us down, that *Thales* was a Phenician born, extracted from the ancient stock of the Barbarians. And in one place, reproaching in some sort the gods, under the vizard and person of *Solon*, he hath these words: O *Cresus*, thou demandest of me as touching humane things, who know full well, that the deity is envious and full of constant incertitude: where attributing unto *Solon*, that opinion which himself had of the gods, he joyneth malice unto impiety and blasphemy. And as for *Pittacus*, using him but in light matters, and such as are of no consequence, he passeth over in the mean while, the most worthy and excellent deed that ever the man did: for when the Athenians and Mitylenians were at war about the port *Sigæum*, *Thrynon* the Captain of the Athenians having given defence, and challenged to combat hand to hand, the hardest warrior of all the Mitylenians, *Pittacus* advanced forward and presented himself to his face for to perform his devoir, where he bare himself with such dexterity, that he caught this Captain, as mighty a man as he was and tall of stature, and foentangled him, that he flew him outright. And when the Mitylenians, for this prowess of his, offered unto him goodly rich presents, he launched his javelin out of his hand as farre as ever he could, and demanded so much ground onely as he sought with that shot. And thereupon, that field, even at this day, is called *Pittacium*. But what writeth *Herodotus*, when he comes to this place? In lieu of reciting this valiant act of *Pittacus*, he recounteth the flight of *Alcous* the Poet, who slung from him his Armour and Weapons, and so ran away out of the Battell: whereby it appeareth, that in avoiding to write of virtuous and valiant acts, but in not concealing vicious and foul facts, he testifieth this side who say, that envy, to wit, a grief for the good of another, and joy in other mens harms, proceed both from one root of malice.

After all this, the Alcæonides who shewed themselves brave men and generous; and namely, by delivering their Countrey from tyranny, are by him challenged for Treason: for he saith, That they received *Pisistratus* upon his Banishment, and wrought means for his return again, upon condition, that he should espouse and marry the daughter of *Megacles*: and when the Maiden said thus unto her Mother, See my good Mother, *Pisistratus* doth not company kindly with me, as he should, and according to the law of nature and marriage; hereupon the said Alcæonides took such indignation against the Tyrant for his perverfe dealing, that they chased him into exile. Now, that the Lacedæmonians should taste as well of his malice as the Athenians had done before them, see how he defaceeth and traduceeth *Othryadæus*, a man esteemed and admired among them above all others, for his valiance: He onely (saith he) remaining alive of those three hundred, ashamed to return to *Sparta*, when all the rest of that company and consort of his were slain and left dead in the field, presently overwhelmed himself in the place under an heap of his enemies shields reared for a Trophæ, and so dyed: for a little before, he said, that the Victory between both sides rested doubtful in even Ballance; and now he witnesseth, that through the shame and basifullness of *Othryadæus*, the Lacedæmonians lost the day: for as it is a name to live being vanquished, so it is as great an honour to survive upon a victory. I forbear now to note and observe, how in describing *Cresus* every where for a foolish, vain-glorious and ridiculous person in all respects, yet nevertheless he saith, that being prisoner he taught and instructed *Cyrus*, a Prince who in prudence, vertue and magnanimity surpassed all the Kings that ever were. And having by the testimony of his own History, attributed no goodness unto *Cresus*, but this onely, that he honoured the gods with great offerings, oblations and ornaments, that he presented unto them; which very same (as himself declareth) was the most wicked and profane act in the world: for whereas his Brother *Pantaleon* and he were at great variance and debate, about succession in the Kingdome during the life of their Fathers; after that he came to the Crown, he caught one of the Nobles, a great friend and companion of his Brother *Pantaleon*, who had before-time been his adversary, and within a fullers mill all to beclawed and mangled him with Tuckers Cards and Burling Combs, so as he died therewith; and of his money which he did confiscate and seize upon, he caused those oblations and Jewels to be made which he sent as a present to the gods. Concerning *Deiues* the Median, who by his vertue and justice attained to the Kingdome, he saith, that he was not such an one indeed, but an Hypocrite, and by semblance of justice was advanced to that regal dignity. But what should I stand upon the examples of Barbarous Nations; for he hath ministered matter enough in writing onely of the Greeks. He saith, that the Athenians and many other Ionians, being ashamed of that name, were not only unwilling, but also denied utterly to be called Ionians; also, as many of them as were of the noblest blood, and descended from the very Senate and *Prytanæum* of the Athenians, begat children of

of Barbarous women, after they had killed their Fathers and former children : by occasion whereof those women made an Ordinance among themselves, which they bound with an oath, and ministered the same unto their daughters, never to eat nor drink with their Husbands, nor to call them by their names : and that the Milesians at this day be defended from the said women. And having clearly delivered thus much under hand, that those only who celebrated the feast named *Apaturia*, were indeed true Ionians : And all (quoth he) do keep and observe that solemnity, gave onely the Ephesians and Colophonians. By this lie device he doth in effect deprive these States, of the Noble Antiquity of their Nation. Hewithlikewise, that the Cumzans and Mitylenzans, were compacted and agreed withall, for a peece of Money, to deliver into the hands of *Cyrus*, *Pachyas*, one of his Captains, who had revolted from him : But I cannot say (quoth he) certainly, for how much, because the just sum is not exactly known. But he ought not by his leave to have charged upon any City of Greece such a note of Infamy, without he had been better assured thereof. And afterwards he saith, that the Inhabitants of *Chios* called him, being brought unto them out of the Temple of *Minerva Poluchus*, that is to say, Tutelar and Protectress of the City, for to deliver him unto the Persians ; which the Chians did after they had received for their hire, a peece of Land called *Atarnes*. Howbeit, *Charon*, the Lampfacinian, a more ancient Writer, when he handleth the story of *Pachyas*, saith neither the Mitylenzans, nor the Chians, for any such sacrilege : but writeth of this matter, thus, word for word : *Pachyas* (quoth he) being advertised that the Persian Army approached, fled first to *Mitylene*, and afterwards to *Chios* : and there he fell into the hands of *Cyrus*. Moreover this our Author in his third Book, describing the expedition or journey of the Lacedæmonians against *Polycrates* the Tyrant, saith that the Samians, both as of opinion and also reports, that it was by way of recompence and requital, because they had sent aid in their War against *Messene*, that the Lacedæmonians entred into Arms and warred upon the Tyrant, for to reduce the exiled persons home again, and restore them to their livings and goods : but he saith, that the Lacedæmonians deny flatly this to have been the cause : saying it was neither to set the Isle *Samos* at liberty, nor to succour the Samians, that they enterprised this War : but rather to chastise the Samians, for that they had intercepted and taken away a fair standing Cup of Gold, sent by them as a present unto King *Cresus* : and besides a goodly Cuirace or Breast-plate, sent unto them from King *Amasis*. And yet we know for certain, that in all those dayes, there was not a City in Greece so desirous of Honour, nor so infest and deadly bent against Tyrants, as *Lacedæmon* was : for what other Cup of Gold, or Cuirace was there, for which they chased out of *Corinth* and *Ambracia* the usurping race of the Cyclopidae ; banished out of *Noxos*, the Tyrant *Lygdamis* ; expelled out of *Athens*, the Children of *Pisistratus* ; drove out of *Sicione*, *Aschines* ; exiled from *Thesio*, *Symmachus* ; delivered the Phocians from *Anis* ; and turned *Aristogenes* out of *Mileus* : as for the lordly dominions over *Thesaly*, they utterly ruined and rooted out, which *Aristomenes* and *Angelus* usurped, whom they suppressed and defeated by the means of *Leotychidas* their King : But of these things I have written elsewhere more exactly and at large. Now if *Herodotus* saith true, what wanted they of extreme folly and wickedness in the high-fell degree, in disavowing and denying a most just and honourable occasion of this War, to confess that they made an invasion upon a poor and miserable Nation oppressed and afflicted under a Tyrant, and all in remembrance of a former grudge, to be revenged for a small wrong upon a base mind and mechanically avarice. Now happily he had a sting at the Lacedæmonians and gave them a blow with his pen, because in the train and consequence of the story, they came so just under it ; but the City of the Corinthians, which was clean cut of his way, he hath notwithstanding taken it with him and bespurred and dashed as he passed by, with a most grievous slander and heavy imputation. The Corinthians also (quoth he) did favour and second with great affection this voyage of the Lacedæmonians, for to requite an hainous outrage and injury, which they had received before time at the Samians hands : And that was this ; *Periander* the Tyrant of *Corinth*, sent three hundred young Boyes, that were the Sons of the most Noble persons in all *Corfu*, to King *Aliautes* for to be guided. These youths arrived in the Isle *Samos*, whom being landed the Samians taught how to sit as humble suppliants within the Temple and Sanctuary of *Diana*, and set before them for their nourishment Certain Cakes made of Sesam Seed and Honey. And this sorteth was it that our trim Historiographer calleth for great an outrage and abuse offered by the Samians unto the Corinthians ; for which he saith, the Lacedæmonians also were stirred up and provoked against them, because they had saved the children of Greeks from eviration. But surely he that fasteneth this reproach upon the Corinthians, sheweth that the City was more wicked than the tyrant himself. As for him, his desire was to be revenged of the Inhabitants of *Corfu*, who had killed his son among them : but the Corinthians, what wrong received they of the Samians, for which they should in hostile manner set upon them, who opposed themselves and empeached for inhumane and barbarous cruelty to be committed ? and namely, that they should revive and raise up again an old cankered grudge and quarrel, that had lien dead and buried the space of three Generations ; and all in favour and maintenance of Tyranny, which had lain very grievous and unsupportable upon them, and whereof, being overthrown and ruined as it is, they cease not still to abolish and do out the remembrance for ever. Lo, what outrage it was, that the Samians committed upon the Corinthians ; but what was the revenge and punishment that the Corinthians devised against the Samians ? For if in good earnest they took indignation and were offended with the Samians, it had been meet, not to have incited the Lacedæmonians, but to have diverted them rather, from laying Wars upon *Polycrates*, to the end that the Tyrant not being defeated and put down, they might not have been freed nor delivered from Tyrannicall servitude.

But

But that which more is, what occasion had the Corinthians to be angry with the Samians, who though they desired, yet they could not save the Corecyans children, considering they took no displeasure against the Cnidiens, who not only preserved, but also restored them to their Parents ? And verily the Corecyans make no great regard, nor speak ought, of the Samians in this behalf ; merry the Cnidiens, they remembered in the best manner ; for the Cnidiens they ordained honours, priviledges, and immunities, and enacted publicke decrees to ratify and confirm the same. For these Cnidiens falling to the Isle of *Samos*, arrived there, drove out of the foresaid Temple the Guard of *Periander*, took the children forth, and brought them safe to *Corfu*, according as *Antenor* the Canditor, and *Dionysius* the Chalcidian in the Book of Foundations have left in writing. Now that the Lacedæmonians undertook this expedition, not for to be quit with the Samians, and to punish them, but to deliver them rather from the tyrant, and for to save them ; I will believe no other testimony but the Samians themselves. For they affirm, that there is among them now standing, a Tomb or Monument by them erected at the publicke charges of the City, for the corps of *Archias* a Citizen of *Sparta*, whose memorial they do honour, for that in the said service he fought valiantly, and lost his life ; for which cause the posterity descended from that man, do yet unto this day, bear singular affection, and do all the pleasures they can unto the Samians, as *Herodotus* himself beareth witness. Furthermore, in his fifth Book he writeth, that *Calxibenes*, one of the most noble and principal personages of all *Athens*, perswaded the Priestess *Pythia*, to be a false Prophetesse, in moving the Lacedæmonians always by her answers that they gave out, for to deliver the City of *Athens* from the thirty Tyrants : and thus unto a most glorious piece of work and right just, he adjoineth the imputation of so great an impiety, and a damnable device of falsehood ; and withal, bereaved god *Apollo* of that prophetic which is so good and honest, yea and becoming *Themis*, who also as they say alitteth him in the Oracle. He saith also, that *Iagoras* yielded his wife unto *Cleomenes*, for to use her at his pleasure, whensoever he came unto her : and then, as his ordinary manner is, intermingling some praises among blames, because he would be the better believed : This *Iagoras* (quoth he) the son of *Tijander*, was of a noble house ; but I am not able to say of what Antiquity before time his pedigree was, but only that his kinsfolk and those of his blood, do sacrifice unto *Jupiter*, surnamed *Carus*. Now I assure you, this our Historian is a proper and pleasant conceited fellow, to send away *Iagoras* thus to the Carians, as it were to Ravens, in a mischief. And as for *Aristogiton*, he packeth him away not by a back door or Postern, but directly by the broad and open gate, as far as unto *Phanice* ; saying, that his first original came long since from the Cephryrians : but what Cephryrians throw ye ? not those in *Eubœa*, or in *Brutia*, as some do think : but he saith plainly they be Phœnicians, and that he is so periwaded of them by hear-say. And not being able to deprive the Lacedæmonians of their glory, for delivering the City of *Athens* from the servitude of the thirty Tyrants, he goeth about to obliterate quite, or at leastwise in some sort to disgrace and dishonour that most noble act, with as foul a passion, and as villanous a vice : for he saith, that they repented inconveniently, as if they had not well done, by the induction of false and supposed Oracles, thus to have chased out of their Country the Tyrants their Friends, Guels, and Allies, who promised to deliver *Athens* into their hands, and to have yielded the City unto an unthankfull people ; and that anon they sent for *Hippias*, as far as to *Sigeum*, for to reduce him to *Athens* : but the Corinthians opposed themselves, and diverted them, whilst *Soficles* discoursed and shewed how many miseries and calamities the City of *Corinth* had endured whilst *Periander* and *Cypselus* held them under their Tyrannicall Rule : and yet of all those enormous outrages which *Periander* committed, they could not name any one more wicked and cruel, than that of the three hundred children which he sent away for to be guided : Howbeit, this man darest to say, that the Corinthians were moved and provoked against the Samians, who had saved the said youths, and kept them from suffering such an indignity, and carried the remembrance thereof for revenge, as if they had done them some exceeding great injury : so full is his malice and gall of incontinency, of repugnance and contradiction in all his speeches, which ever and anon is ready to offer it self in his Narrations. After all this, coming to describe the taking of the City *Sardis*, he diminisheth, defameth, and discrediteth the exploit all that ever he can, being so armed with shameless audacity, that he termeth those Ships which the Athenians set out, and sent to succour the Kings, and to plague the Ionians, who rebelled against him, the original causes of all mischief, for that they assayed to set at liberty and deliver out of servitude, so many goodly and fair Cities of the Greeks, held forcibly under the violent Dominion of the barbarous Nations. As touching the Eretrians, he maketh mention of them only by the way, and passeth in silence a most worthy and glorious piece of service, which they performed at that time : for when all *Ionia* was now already in an uproar and hurlyburly, and the Kings Armada near at hand, they put out their Navy, and in the main Sea of *Pamphylia*, defeated in a Naval battel the Cyprians : then returning back, and leaving their Navy in the Rode before *Ephesus*, they went by land to lay Siege unto the Capital City of *Sardis*, where they beleagured *Ariaphernes* within a Castle, into which he was fled, intending thereby to raise the Siege before the City *Miletus* : which service they put in execution and performed ; causing their enemies to remove their Camp, and dislodge from thence, in a wonderful great fear and affright : but seeing a greater number of enemies to press hard upon them, they returned. Many Chroniclers report the History in this manner ; and among the rest *Lyfianus* in his Chronicle of the Eretrians. And verily it would have befecmed well, if for no other reason, yet after the taking and destruction of their City, to have added this their act of valour and prowess.

powels. Howbeit, this good Writer, contrariwise faith, that being vanquished in the field, the Barbarians followed in chase, and pursued them as far as to their ships: and yet *Charon* the Lampacian, maketh no mention thereof; but writeth thus, word for word: The Athenians (quoth he) put to Sea with a fleet of twenty Gallies, for to ayd the Ionians, and made a voyage as far as to *Sardis*, where they were matters of all, except the Kings Fortrefs or Wall; which done, they returned to *Miletus*. In the fixth booke, our *Herodotus*, after he had related thus much of the Platæans, that they had yielded and committed themselves to the protection of the Lacedæmonians, who made Remonstrance unto them, that they should do far better to range and side with the Athenians their neighbors, and able to defend them: headdeth moreover, and faith afterwards, not by way of opinion and suspicion, but as one who knew it was so indeed, that the Lacedæmonians thus advised and counselled them at that time, not for any good will and loving affection that they bare unto them, but because they were all very well appayd to see the Athenians to have their hands full, and to be matched with the *Æzotians*. If then *Herodotus* be not malicious, it cannot chuse, but that the Lacedæmonians were very cautious, fraudulent, and spitefull; and the Athenians as blockish and senseless, not to see how they were thus deluded and circumvented. The Platæans likewise were thus posted from them, not for any love or honor intended unto them; but because they might be the occasion of War. Furthermore, he is convinced to have fallily devised, and colourably pretended the excuse of the Full Moon against the Lacedæmonians, which whilst they attended and stayed for, he faith, they failed and went not in that journey of *Marathon*, to ayd the Athenians; for not onely they began a thousand voyages, and fought as many battels in the beginning of the moneth and new of the Moon, but also at this very battel of *Marathon*, which was fought the sixth day of the moneth *Boedromion*, that is to say, *November*, they missed very little, but they had arrived in due time: for they came soon enough to finde the dead bodies of those that were slain in the field, and lying still in the place: and yet thus hath he written of the Full Moon. It was impossible for them to do this out of hand, being as they were, not willing to break the Law; for that, as yet, it was but the ninth day of the moneth; and they made answer, that they might not set forth, unless the Moon were at the full. And thus these men waited for the Full Moon. But you, good Sir, transfer the Full Moon into the beginning of the Half Moon, or Second Quarter, confounding the course of Heaven, and the order of days, yea, and shuffling every thing together. Over and besides, promising in the forefront and inscription of your History, to write the deeds and affairs of the Greeks, you employ all your eloquence to magnifie and amplify the acts of the Barbarians; and making semblance to be affectionate to the Athenians, yet for all that, you make no mention at all of that solemn pomp and procession of theirs at *Agle*, which they hold even at this day, in the honor of *Hecate*, or *Proserpina*, by way of thanksgiving for the victory, the feast whereof they do celebrate: But this helpeth *Herodotus* very much to meet with that improprietion and slander that went of him, namely, that he flattered the Athenians in his story, for that he had received a great sum of money of them for that purpose: for if he had read this unto the Athenians, they would never have neglected nor let pass that wicked *Philippides*, who went to move and sollicite the Lacedæmonians to be at that battel, from which himself came, and he especially, who as he faith himself, within two days was in *Sparta*, after he had been at *Athen*, if the Athenians after the winning of the field, did not send for the ayd of their Confederates and Allies. But *Dionysus* an Athenian, none of the meanest Chroniclers, writeth, that he received of the *Athenians* the summe of Ten Talents of Silver, by vertue of an Act that *Anitus* propounded.

Moreover, many are of opinion, that *Herodotus* in his Narration of the battel of *Marathon*, himself marred the whole grace and honor of the exploit, by the number that he putteth down of them who there were slain: for he faith, that the Athenians made a vow to sacrifice unto *Proserpina* or *Diana* surnamed *Agrotera*, as many year-old Goats as they slew of the Barbarians: But when after the discomfite and overthrow, they saw that the number of the dead bodies were infinite, they made supplication to the Goddes for to be dispensed for their vow and promise, and to acquit them for five hundred every year to be killed in sacrifice for her. But to pass over this, let us see what followed after the battel. The Barbarians (quoth he) with the rest of their ships drawing back and retiring into the open Sea, and having taken a ship-board those slaves of *Eretria*, out of the lile where they had left them, doubled the point of *Sunium*, with a full purpose to prevent the Athenians before they could recover the City. And the Athenians were of opinion, that they were advised thus to do by a secret complot between them and the *Alcmæonides*, who had appointed and agreed with the *Persians* to give them a signal so soon as they were all embarked, by holding up aloft, and shewing them a shield star off. And so they fetched a compass about the Cape *Sunium*. And here I am content that he should go clear away with this, that he called those Prisoners of *Eretria* by the name of slaves, who shewed as much courage and valor in this War, yea, and as great a desire to win honor, as any Greeks whatsoever, although their vertue sped but ill, and was unworthily afflicted. And less account I make also of this, that he defamed the *Alcmæonides*, of whom were the greatest families, and noblest persons of all the City. But the worst of all is this, that the honor of this brave victory is quite overthrowen, and the issue or end of so worthy and renowned a piece of service is come just to nothing in a manner, neither seemeth it to have been any such battel, or so great an exploit, but onely a short scuffling or light skirmish with the Barbarians when they were landed, as evil willers, carpers and envious persons give out to deprave the service, if it be so, that after the battel, they fled not when they had

had cut the Cables of their Ships, permitting themselves to the wind, for to carry them as far as possibly might be from *Attica*, but that there was a Shield or Targuet lifted up aloft in the air as a Signall unto them of Treason, and that of purpose they made fail toward the City of *Athen*, in hope to surpris it: and having without any noise in great silence doubled the forehead point of *Sunium*, and were discovered a float, hovering about the Port *Phaleræ*, inasmuch as the principall and most honourable personages of the Athenians, being out of all hope to save the City, betrayed it into their hands: for afterwards he dischargeth and cleareth the *Alcmæonides*, and attributeth this Treason unto others: And certain it is (quoth he) that such a Targuet or Shield was shewed. And this he faith so confidently, as if himself had seen the thing. But impossible it is that it should be so, in case the Athenians won the victory clear; and say it had so been, the Barbarians never could have perceived its flying so: they did in great affright and danger, wounded also as they were, and chased both with Sword and Shot into their Ships, who left the field every man, and fled from the Land as fast as ever he could. But afterwards again, when he maketh semblance to answer in the behalf of the *Alcmæonides*, and to state those crimes which himself broched, and charged upon them: I wonder (quoth he) and I cannot believe the rumour of this imputation, that ever the *Alcmæonides*, by any compact with the Barbarians, shewed them the signall of a shield, as willing that the Athenians should be in subjection to the Barbarians under *Hippias*. In thus doing, he putteth me in mind and remembrance of a certain clause running in this manner: Take him you will; and having taken him, let him go you will. Semblably, first you accuse, and anon you defend: write you do and frame accusatory imputations against honourable persons, which afterwards you seem to cancel, discrediting herein (no doubt) and disbanding your self: for you have heard your own self to say, that the *Alcmæonides* set up a Targuet for a signall to the Barbarians vanquished and flying away; but in relieving them again and answering in their defence, you shew your self to be a slanderous sycophant: for if that be true which you write in this place, that the *Alcmæonides* were worse, or at leastwise, as badly affected to Tyrants, as *Callias* the Son of *Phenippus* and Father of *Hipponicus*, where will you bestow and place that conspiracy of theirs against the Commonwealth, which you have written in your former Books? saying, that they contracted alliance and affinity in marriage with *Pisistratus*; by means whereof, they wrought his return from exile to exercise Tyranny: neither would they ever have banished him again, had it not been that their daughter had complained and accused him, that he used her not according to law of marriage and of nature. Thus you see what confused variations, contradictions and repugnances there be in that imputation and suspicion of the *Alcmæonides*: but in founding out the praises of *Callias* the Son of *Phenippus*, with whom he joyneth his Son *Hipponicus*, who by the report of *Herodotus* himself, was in his time the richest man in all *Athen*, he confesseth plainly, that for to insinuate himself into the favour of *Hipponicus*, and to flatter him, without any reason or cause in the world arising out of the matter of obsequy, he brought *Callias*. All the world knows, that the Argives refused not to enter into that general confederacy and association of the Greeks, requiring onely, that they might not be over the Lacedæmonian command, nor forced to follow them, who were the greatest enemies, and those who of all men living hated them most: when it would not otherwise be, he rendereth a most malicious and spitefull cause and reason thereof, writing thus: When they saw (quoth he) that the Greeks would needs comprise them in that league, knowing full well, that the Lacedæmonians would not impart unto them any prerogative to command, they seemed to demand the communion thereof, to the end that they might have some colourable occasion and excuse to remain quiet and sit still: which he faith, that *Aristarchus* long after, remembered unto the Embassadors of the Argives, who came unto him at *Susa*, and gave this testimony unto them, That he thought there was not a City in all Greece friendlier him more than *Argos*. But soon after, as his accustomed manner is, 'fencing to rectify all, and clearly to cover the matter, he comes in with these words: Howbeit, as touching this point, I know nothing of certainty; but this I wot well, all men have their faults; and I do not believe, that the Argives have carried themselves worth of all others: but howsoever (quoth he) I am bound to say that which is commonly received, yet I believe not all: and let this stand thorough the whole course of mine History. For this also is given out abroad, That they were the Argives who solicited and sent for the King of *Persia* to levy War upon all Greece; because they were not able in Arms to make head against the Lacedæmonians, and bared not what became of them; to avoid the present discomfite and grief wherein they were: And may not a man very well return that upon himself, which he reportedly to be spoken by his Bishop, as touching the Tower Odours and rich Purple of the Persians? \* Deceitfull are the Persian Ornaments; deceitfull are their habiliments. For even so a man may very well say of him: Deceitfull are the \* phrases, deceitfull are the figures of *Herodotus* his speeches;

So intricate and tortuous,  
So winding quite thoroughout,  
As nothing found is therein found,  
But all turn's round about.

And like as Painters make their light Colours more apparent and eminent, by the shadows that they put about them; even so *Herodotus* by seeming to deny that which he affirmeth, doth enforce and amplify his calumniation so much the more; and by ambiguities and doubtful speeches, maketh his insinuations the deeper: But if the Argives would not enter into the common League with all other

Greeks,

Greeks, but held off and stood out upon a jealousie of sovereign command or emulation of vertue and valour against the Lacedæmonians; no man will say the contrary, but that they greatly dishonoured the memory of their Progenitor *Hercules*, and disgraced the Nobility of their Race. For better it had been, and more befecming, for the Siphians and Cithians, the inhabitants of two little Iles, to have defended the liberty of *Greece*, than by striving thus with the Spartans, and contending about the prerogative of command, to shift off and avoid so many combats and so honourable pieces of service. And if they were the Argives, who called the King of *Persia* into *Greece*, because their Sword was not so sharp as the Lacedæmonians was, and for that they could not make their part good with them; what is the reason, that when the said King was arrived in *Greece*, they shewed not themselves openly to band with the Medes and Persians? And if they were unwilling to be seen in the Field and Camp with the Barbarian King; why did they not, when they layed behind at home, invade the territory of the Laconians? why entred they not again upon the Thurians Countrey, or by some other means prevented and impeached the Lacedæmonians? For in so doing, they had been able greatly to have endamaged the Greeks, namely, by hindring them from coming into the field at *Platæa* with so puissant a power of Armed Footmen. But the Athenians verily in this service, he highly extollet and setteth out with glorious Titles, naming them, The saviours of *Greece*; which had been well done of him and justly, if he had not intermingled with these praises, many blames and reproachfull terms. Howbeit now, when he saith, that the Lacedæmonians were abandoned of the other Greeks, and nevertheless, thus forsaken and left alone, having undertaken many worhy exploits, dyed honourably in the field, foreseeing that the Greeks favouring the Medes, complotted and combined with King *Xerxes*; it is not evident hereby, that he gave not out those goodly words directly to praise the Athenians, but rather, that he commended them, to the end that he would condemn and defame all other Greeks? For who can now be angry and offended with him, for reviling and reproaching in such vile and bitter terms the Thebans and Phocians continually as he doth, considering that he condemneth of Treason (which never was, but as he giveth himself might have so fallen out) even those who were exposed to all perils of death for the liberties of *Greece*? And as for the Lacedæmonians themselves, he putteth a doubt into our heads, Whether they dyed manfully in fight, or rather yielded? making slight arguments, God wot, and frivolous conjectures, to impair their honour, in comparison of others thus thought at *Thermopylæ*.

Moreover, in relating the overthrow and shipwrack which hapned to the King of *Persia*'s fleet, wherein a mighty and infinit masse of Money and Mony worth was cast away: *Aminocles* a Magnesian Citizen (quoth he) and Son of *Creteus*, was mightily enriched; for he met with infinit Treasure as well in Coyn as in Plate both of Silver and Gold. But he could not passe over so much as this, and let it go, without some biting nip favouring of malice: For this man (quoth he) who other while before time was but poor and needy, by these wind-fals and unexpected cheate became very wealthy: but there befell unto him also an unhappy accident, which troubled him and disgraced his other good fortune, for that he killed his own Son. For who seeth not, that he inserteth in his History these golden words of wrecks, and of great Treasure found floating or cast upon the Sands by the Tides of the Sea, of very purpose, to make a fit room and a convenient place, wherein he might bestow the Murder committed by *Aminocles* upon the Person of his own Son. And whereas *Aristophanes* the Boetian wrote, that having demanded Money of the Thebans, he could receive none of them; and that when he went about to reason and dispute scholastically with the youth of the City in points of learning, the Magistrates (such was their rusticity and hatred of good Letters), would not suffer him: other Proof and Argument thereof he putteth down none: but *Herodotus* gave Testimony with *Aristophanes*, whilts those imputations wherewith he chargeth the Thebans, he putteth down some fallies, others ignorantly, and some again upon hatred, as one that had a quarrell against them: for he saith, that the Thebians combined and sided with the Medians at the first upon meer necessity, wherein he saith true. And prophesying as it were of other Greeks, as if they minded to betray and forsake the Lacedæmonians, he commeth in afterwards with this shift, that this was not voluntarily and with their good liking, but upon constraint and necessity, because they were surprised City by City, one after another. But yet he alloweth not unto the Thebans the excuse of the same compulsion, altho they had sent a band of five hundred men under the Conduct of Captain *Mnamias*, for to keepe the Streights of *Tempe*, and likewise unto the pass of *Thermopylæ*, as many as King *Leonidas* demanded, who only together with the Thebians stuck to him and remained with him, when he was forsaken of all other, after they saw how he was environed round about on every side. But after that the Barbarous King, having gotten all the Avenues, was entred upon their confines, and *Demaratus* the Spartan, being in right of mutuall Hospitality friendly affected to *Apaginus* a chief upholder and principall Pillar of the Oligarchy, or faction of some few, usurping principality, wrought so, as that he brought him first acquainted and afterwards into familiar friendship with the Barbarian King, while all other Greeks were embarked and at Sea, and none seen upon the land to encounter the enemies. By this mean, at the last driven they were to accept conditions of Peace, and to grow into a composition with the Barbarians, finding themselves brought to so hard termes of necessity: for neither had they Sea at hand, nor any Navy at Command as the Athenians, neither dwelt they far off from the heart of *Greece* in a most remote angle thereof, as did the Lacedæmonians, but were not above one dayes journey and an half from the Medians Royall Camp, and had already encountered in the streight passages with the Kings power, assisted only with the Spartans and Thebians, where they had the worse and

were

were defeated. And yet this our Historiographer is so just and equal, that he saith, The Lacedæmonians seeing themselves forsaken and abandoned of all their Allies, were faine to give ear unto any composition whatsoever, and to accept at a venture what was offered: and so being not able to abolish nor utterly blot out so brave and so glorious an act, nor to deny, but that it was achieved; he goeth about to discredit and deface it with this vile imputation and suspition, writing thus, The Allies then and the Confederates being sent back, returned into their Countreys, and obeyed the Commandment of *Leonidas*: only the Thebians and Thebans remained still with the Lacedæmonians: and as for the Thebans, it was full against their wills, for that *Leonidas* kept them as Hostages; but the Thebians were willing thereto, for they said, they would never forsake *Leonidas* nor his company. Sheweth he not apparently hereby, that he carrieth a spitefull and malicious minde particularly against the Thebans; whereby not only he slandereth the City falsly and unjustly, but also careth not so much, as to make the imputation seem probable, no nor to conceal at leastwise unto few men, that he might not be espied to have been privy unto himself of contradictions: for having written a little before, that *Leonidas* seeing his Confederates and Allies out of heart, and altogether discouraged to hazard the fortune of the field, commanded them to depart: a little after, cleare contrary he saith, that he kept the Thebians perforce with him, and against their wills, whom by all likelihood he should have driven from him, if they had been willing to stay, in case that he had them in jealousie and suspition, that they took part with the Medians: forcing he would not have thoe about him who were cowardly afraid, what boot was it to keep among his Souldiers men suspected? For being as he was, a King of the Spartans, and Captain-General of all the Greeks, he had not been in his right wits, nor found in judgement, if he would have stayed with him in hostage four hundred men well armed, when his own company were but three hundred in all, especially at such a time when as he saw himself hardly beset and beset with enemies, who pressed upon him at once, both before and behind. For howsoever before time he had led them about with him as Hostages, probable it is, that in such an exremity they would either have had no regard of *Leonidas*, and so departed from him, or else that *Leonidas* might have feared to be environed by them rather than by the Barbarians. Over and besides, had not King *Leonidas* been ridiculous and worthy to be laughed at, to bid other Greeks to depart, as if by tarrying they should soon after lose their lives: and to forbid the Thebans, to the end that he might keep them for the behalf of other Greeks: he, I say, who was resolved anon to dye in the field; for if he led the men about with him in such as Hostages, or no better than slaves, he never should have kept them still with thoe who were at the point to perish & be slain, but rather delivered them unto other Greeks who went from him. Now whereas there remaineth one cause yet, that a man may allege, why he retained them still with him, for that peradventure they should al die with him, this good writer hath overthrowen that also, in that he writeth thus of the honorable minde & magnanimity of *Leonidas*, word for word in this wise: *Leonidas* (quoth he) casting and considering all these matters in his minde, and desiring that this playght redound unto the Spartans alone, sent away his friendly allies every on into their own Countreys, therefore rather than because they were of diff rent mindes and opinions: for exceeding folly it had been of his part, to keep his enemies for to be partakers of that glory, from which he repelled his friends. It appeareth then by the effects, that *Leonidas* distrusted not the Thebans, nor thought amiss of them, but reputed them for his good and loyal friends: For he marched with his Army into the City of *Thebes*, and at his request obtained that which to no other was ever granted, namely, to be lodged all night, and sleep within the Temple of *Hercules*, and the next morning related unto the Thebans, the vision which appeared unto him: For he saw, as he thought, all the greatest and most principall Cities of *Greece* in a Sea, troubled and disquieted with rough windes, and violent tempests; wherein they floated and were tossed to and fro. But the City of *Thebes* surpassd all the rest, for moored it was on high up to heaven, and afterwards suddenly the sight thereof was lost, that it would no more be seen. And verily these things as a type, resembled that which long time after befell unto this City. But *Herodotus* in writing of this conflict, borrieth in silence the bravest act of *Leonidas* himself, saying thus much barely, They all lost their lives in the Streights, about the top of a certain hill. But it was far otherwise: For when they were advertised in the night that the enemies had invetted them round about, they arose and marched directly to their very Camp; yea, and advanced so far forth as they came within a little of the Kings Royall Pavillion, with a full resolution there to kill him, and to take their lives all about him. And verily down they went with all before them, killing, slaying, and setting to flight, as many as they met, even as far as to his tent. But when they could not meet with *Xerxes*, seeking as they did for him in so vast and spacious a Camp, as they wandered up and down seeking for him with much ado, at the last he wed in pike they were by the Barbarians, who on every side held in great number came about them. And albeit we will write in the life of *Leonidas*, many other noble acts and worthy sayings of his, which *Herodotus* hath not once touched, yet it shall not be amiss to quote here also by the way, some of them. Before that he and his noble Troop departed out of *Sparta* in this journey, there were exhibited solemn Funerall Games for his and their sakes, which these fathers and mothers stood to behold: and *Leonidas* himself, when one said unto him, That he led forth very few with him to fight a battell: Yea, but they are many enough (quoth he) to dye there. His wife asked him when he took his leave of her, what he had else to say? No more (quoth he) turning unto her, but this, that thou marry again with some good man, and bear him good children. When he was within the Vale or Pass of *Thermopylæ*, and there invironed, two there were in his Company of his own Race and Family, whom he desired to save: So he gave unto one of them a Letter to carry

Q 999

whither he directed it, because he would send him away: but the party would not take it at his hands, saying in great choler and indignation, I am come hither to fight like a Warrior, and not to convey Letters as a Carrier. The other he commanded for with credence, and a Message from him unto the Magistrates of *Sparta*: but he made answer not by word of mouth, but by his deed: for he took up his Shield in hand, and went directly to his place, where he was appointed to fight. Would not any man have blamed another for leaving out these things? But this writer having taken the pains to collect and put in writing the *Bafen* and *Clofe* of *Amasis*, and how he brake winde over it; the coming in of certain *Affes* which a Thief did drive; the conglary or giving of certain bottles of Wine, and many other matters of such good stuff; can never be thought, to have omitted through negligence, nor by oversight and forgetfulness, so many worthy exploits and notable sayings: but even of Peevishness, Malice and Injustice, to some. And thus he saith, that the Thebans at first being with the Greeks, fought indeed, but it was by compulsion, because they were held there by force. For it should seem forthwith, that not only *Xerxes*, but *Leontidas* also, had about him a company that followed the Camp with Whips, to scourge those I trow, who lagged behind, and these good fellows held the Thebans to it, and made them to fight against their Will: And thus he saith that they foughte force, who might have fled and gone their wayes: and that willingly they took part with the Medes, whereas there was not one came in to succour them. And alittle after, he writeth, that when others made haste to gain the Hill, the Thebans being disbanded and divided asunder, both stretched forth their hands unto the Barbarians, and as they approached near unto them, said that which was most true, namely, that they were Medians in heart, and so in token of homage and fealty, gave unto the King Water and Earth: that being kept by force they were compelled to come into this passe of *Thermopylae*, and could not do withal, that their King was wounded, but were altogether innocent thereof: By which allegations they went clear away with their matter: For they had the Theffilians witnesses of these their words and reasons. Lo how this Apology and Justification of theirs, had audience among those barbarous out-cries of so many thousand men, in those confused shouts and dissonant noises, where there was nothing but running & flying away of one side, chasing and pursuit of another: See how the witnesses were depofed, heard and examined. The Theffilians also amid the throng and rout of those that were knocked down and killed, and over those heaps of bodies which were trodden under foot (for all was done in a very gullet and narrow passage) pleaded no doubt very formally for the Thebans: for that a little before they having conquered by force of arms all *Greece*, chased them as far as to the City *Thebie*, after they had vanquished them in battell, and slain their Leader and Captain *Lettamias*. For thus much passed even at that very time between the Thebans and the Theffilians: whereas otherwise there was not so much as civill love and humanity, that appeared by mutual offices from one to the other. Bides, how is it possible that the Thebans were saved, by the testimony of the Theffilians? For the barbarous *Greeks*, as himself saith, partly killed outright such as came into their hands: and in part while their breath was yet in their bodies, by the commandement of *Xerxes*, set upon them number of the Kings marks, beginning first at the Captain himself *Leontidas*. And yet neither was *Leontidas* the Generall of the Thebans at *Thermopylae*, but *Alexander*, as *Aristophanes* writeth out of the *Annales*, and records in the archer of *Thebes*, as touching their sovereign Magistrates: and so *Nicanor* likewise the Colophonian hath put down in his Chronicle: neither was there ever any man before *Herodotus* who knew that *Xerxes* marked and branded in that manner any Theban: for this had been an excellent plea in their defence against the forefild calumination, and a very good meanes for this City to vaunt and boast of such marks given them, as if King *Xerxes* meant to punish and plague as his greatest and most mortall enemies, *Leontidas* and *Leontidas*. For he caused the one to be scourged, and his body to be hanged up when he was dead; and the other to be pricked while he was alive. And thus our Historiographer hath used this cruelty which they shewed unto *Leontidas* dead, for a manifest proof that the barbarous King hated *Leontidas* in his life time above all the men in the world. And in avouching that the Thebans who sided with the Medes at *Thermopylae* were thus branded and marked as slaves, and afterwards, being thus marked, fought eagerly in the behalf of the same Barbarians before *Platee*, me thinks he may well say as *Hippocleides* the satirist saith, unto whom, when at a feast he bestirred his legs, and hopped artificially about the tables, one said unto him, thou dancst truly. *Hippocleides* answered again, *Hippocleides* careth not greatly for the truth. In his eighth book he writeth that the Greeks being affrighted like Cowards, entered into a resolution for to fly from *Artemisium* into *Greece*: and that when those of *Euboea* besought them to tarry still a while, untill such time as they might take order how to bestow their Wives, Children and Families, they were nothing moved at their prayers, nor gave any ear unto them, untill such time as *Theffilochus* took a piece of money of them, and parted the same between *Eurybiades* and *Adamas* the Pretor or Captain of the Corinthians. And then they stayed longer, and fought a navall battell with the Barbarians. And verily *Pindarus* the Poet, albeit he was not of any confederate City, but of that which was suspected and accused to hold of the Medians side, yet when he had occasion to make mention of the battell at *Artemisium*, brake forth into this exclamation:

This is the place where Athens youth,  
Some time as writers say,  
Did with their blood, of liberty  
The glorious groundwork lay.

But

But, *Herodotus* contrariwise, by whom some give out that *Greece* hath been graced and adorned, writeth that the said victory was an act of corruption, bribery and meer theft, and that the Greeks fought against their wills, as being bought and sold by their Captains, who took money therefore. Neither is here an end of his malice. For all men in manner do acknowledge and confesse, that the Greeks having gotten the upperhand in *Sea* fight upon this coast, yet abandoned the cape *Artemisium*, and yielded it to the Barbarians, upon the news that they heard of the overthrow received at *Thermopylae*. For it had been no boot, nor to any purpose, for to have sitten still there, and kept the *Sea* for the behoof of *Greece*, considering that now the War was hard at their doors within those flightings, and *Xerxes*, Master of all the *Avenies*. But *Herodotus* teigneth, that the Greeks, before they were advertised of *Leontidas* death, held a counsel, and were in deliberation to fly: For these be his words, Being in great distress (quoth he) and the Athenians especially, who had many of their ships, even the one half of their fleet, brewedly bruised and shaken, they were in consultation to take their flight into *Greece*. But let us permit him thus to name or to reproach rather this retreat of theirs before the battell: but he termed it before a flight: And now at this present he calleth it a flight; and hereafter he will give it the name of flight, so bitterly is he bent to use this vile word, Flight. But (quoth he) there came to the Barbarians presently after this, in a Bark or light Pinnace a man of *Ejetea*, who advertised them, how the Greeks had quit the cape *Artemisium* and were fled: which because they could not believe, they kept the Messenger in Ward and late custody, and therupon put forth certain swift foists in eapial to discover the truth. What say you *Herodotus*? What it is you write? That they fled as vanquished, whom their very enemies themselves, after the battell, could not believe that they fled; as supposing them to have had the better hand a great deal? And deserveth this man to have credit given him, when he writeth of one particular person, or of one City apart by it self, who in one bare word, spoileth all *Greece* of the victory? He overthroweth and demolisheth the very Trophée and Monument, that all *Greece* erected. He abolisheth those Titles and Inscriptions, which they set up in the honor of *Diana*, on the East side of *Artemisium*, calling all this but pride and vain-glory. And as for the Epigram, it ran to this effect:

From Asia Land, all sorts of Nations stout,  
When Athens Youth, sometime in naval fight  
Had vanquished, and all these coasts about  
Dispersed their fleet; and therein put to flight  
And slain the host of Medes: Lo here in flight  
What Monuments to thee with due respect,  
Diana Virgin pure, they did erect.

He described not the order of the Battels, and how the Greeks were ranged, neither hath he shewed what place every City of theirs held, during this terrible fight at *Sea*: But in that retreat of their fleet, which he termeth a flight, he saith, that the Corinthians killed foremost, and the Athenians hindmost: he should not then have thus trodden under foot, and insulde too much over those Greeks, who took part with the Medes: He (I say) who by others is thought to be a Thurian burn, and reckoneth himself in the number of the *Halicarnassians*, and they verily being defended from the *Dorians*, come with their wives and children to make war against the Greeks. But this man is so far off from naming and alleging before the freights and necessities whereto those States were driven, who sided with the Medians, that he reporteth thus much of the Medians, how notwithstanding the Phœæans were their capital Enemies, yet they sent unto them aforehand, that they would spare their Countrey, without doing any harm or damage unto it, if they might receive from them as a reward, fifty talents of silver. And this wrote he as touching the Phœæans in these very terms: The Phœæans (quoth he) were the only men who in these quarters sided not with the Medians, for no other cause, as I find upon mature consideration, but in regard of the hatred which they bare against the Theffilians: for if the Theffilians had been afficted to the Greeks, I suppose the Phœæans would have turned to the Medes. And yet a little after, himself will say, that thirteen Cities of the Phœæans were set on fire, and burnt to ashes by the Barbarian King, their Countrey laid waste, the Temple within the City *Aber* consumed with fire, their men and women both put to the sword, as many as could not gain the top of the Mount *Parnassus*: Nevertheless, he rageth then in the number of those that most affectionately took part with the Barbarians, who indeed, chose rather to endure all extremities and miseries that war may bring, than to abandon the defence and maintenance of the honor of *Greece*. And being not able to reprove the men for any deeds committed, he busied his brains to devise false imputations, forging and framing with his pen divers surmises and suspitions against them, not willing that their intentions should be judged by their acts, if they had not been of the same minde and affection with the Theffilians, as if they would have renounced the Treason, because their Countrey was already seized by others. If then a man, who would go about to excuse the Theffilians for siding with the Medes, should say, that they were not willing thereto, but for the hatred which they bare unto the Phœæans, seeing them adhere and allied to the Greeks, therefore they took the contrary side, and clave to the Medes, even against their will and judgement: might not he seem to be an egregious flatterer, who thus in favor of others, searching honest pretences to colour and cover foul facts, perverteth the truth? Yes verily, as I think. How then can it otherwise be, but that he shall be taken for a plain Sycophant, who saith, that the Phœæans followed not the better for vertue, but because they knew the Theffilians were of a contrary minde and judgement? For he doth not turn

Qggg 2

and

and rather this slander and calumny upon others, as his manner is elsewhere to do, saying, that he heard say, &c. but he affirmeth, that in conferring all things together, himself found no other occasion thereof. He ought then to have alleged withal, his presumptions and proofs; whereby he was persuaded, that they who perform all actions fensible to the best, are yet in will and intention all one with the worst. For the occasion which he allegeth, to wit, Enmity, is frivolous, and to be laughed at, because neither the enmity that was between those of *Ægina* and the Athenians; nor that which the Chalcidians bare against the *Eretrians*; nor the Corinthians against the *Megarians*; was a bar to empeach them for joining together in the League of *Greece*, for the defence of common liberty: like as on the contrary side, the Macedonians most bitter and mortal enemies unto the Thessalonians, and those who plagued them most, diverted them not from the confederacy and alliance with the Barbarians. For the publique peril, covered and hid their private quarrels: inasmuch as abandoning and banishing their passions, they gave their consents, either to honesty for virtue, or to profit for necessity. And yet beside this necessity, wherewith they found themselves overtaken, and forced to submit themselves to the Medes, they returned again to the Greeks side: and hercof *Leocrates* the Spartan, giveth direct testimony in their behalf. Yea, and *Herodotus* himself being forced and compelled thereto, confesseth in the description of the affairs that passed at *Platea*, that the Phocians sided with the Greeks. And no marvel is it, if he be so rough and violent with such as have been infortunate; when as, even those who were present in the action, and hazarded their whole estate for the good of the Common-wealth, he transposeth into the rank of Enemies and Traitors. For the men of *Naxos* sent three Gallies or Ships of war to ayd the Barbarians in their service: but one of the Captains of those vessels, named *Democritus*, perswaded his other two fellows, to turn, and range rather on the Greeks side. See how he cannot for his life, praise, but he must withal dispraise: but look when some particular person is commended, he must needs by and by condemn a whole City and Nation: Witness hercof, among ancient Writers, *Hellanicus*, and of our modern Authors, *Ephorus*: for the one saith, that the Naxians came to succour the Greeks with six Gallies, and the other saith with five: yea, and *Herodotus* himself is convinced to have feigned and falsified this: For the particular Chroniclers of the Naxians write, that before time they had repulsed *Megabates* the Lieutenant of the Kings, who with two hundred fall arrived as their life, and there rid at anchor: Afterwards drave away *Datis* another General of his, who as he passed by, burnt their Cities. And if it be so as *Herodotus* saith elsewhere, that they themselves destroyed their City, by setting it on fire, but the people saved themselves, by flying into the Mountain, had they good cause to send ayd unto those, who were the cause of the ruine and destruction of their own Country, and not to joyd with them who fought for the common liberty? But that it was not so much to praise *Democritus*, as to blame the Naxians, that he devised this lye, he sheweth evidently by this, that he concealeth and omitteeth to speak of the valliant feats of Arms, which at that time Captain *Democritus* exploited, according as *Simonides* shewed by this Epigram,

*Democritus in the third place gave  
the charge with all his might,  
What time as Greece neer Salamis,  
with Medes at Sea did fight,  
Five ships of enemies he took:  
a sixth there chanc'd to be,  
One of the Greeks in Barbarous hands,  
and that recovered he.*

But why should any man be angry with him about the Naxians? For if there be any *Antipodes*, as some say there are, who dwell in the other Hemisphere, and go opposite unto us, I suppose that they also have heard of *Themistocles*, and the counsel that he gave unto the Greeks for to fight a naval Battle before *Salamis*, who afterwards caused a Temple to be built in the Isle of *Melitus*, unto *Diana* the Counsellor, after that the Barbarous King was discomfited. Now this kinde and gentle Chronicler of ours, refusing as much as lieth in him to avow this exploit, and to transfer the glory thereof unto another, writeth expressly thus, When things stood upon these terms, as *Themistocles* went aboard into his own Galley, there was a Citizen of *Athen* named *Mnesiphilus*, who demanded of him what they had resolved upon in their Council? And when he heard that concluded it was, to retire with their fleet unto *Siphnus*, or the Streights, there to fight a Battle at Sea even before *Peloponnesus*: I say unto you (quoth he) again, that if they remove the Navy from *Salamis*, you shall never fight more upon the Sea for any Country of your own: for every man will presently return home to his own City. And therefore if there be any device and means in the world, go your ways and endeavor to break this resolution, and if it be possible, deal so with *Eurybiades*, that he may change his minde, and carry here still. And a little after, when he had said that this advice pleased *Themistocles* wondrous much, and that without making any answer at all, he went directly to *Eurybiades*: he writeth again in these very terms: And sitting neer unto him, he relacth what counsel he had heard *Mnesiphilus* to give, taking it upon himself, and addeth more things besides. Thus see you not how in some sort he brings *Themistocles* unto an ill name and opinion of lewdness, in that he attributeth unto himself a counsel which was none of his own, but the invention of *Mnesiphilus*? And afterwards deriding still the Greeks more and more, he saith, that *Themistocles* was no such wise man, as to see what was good and expedient, but failed in his foresight, notwithstanding that for his prudence and cunning he carried the surname of

*Ulysses*. Marry, Lady *Artemisia* born in the same City that *Herodotus*, without prompting, or teaching of any person, but even of her own head, foretold *Xerxes*; that the Greeks could not hold out long, nor make head against him, but would disband and disperse themselves, and every one fly home unto his own City: Neither it is like (quoth she) if you march with your Army by Land unto *Peloponnesus*, that they will be quiet and sit still, and take no care to fight at Sea for the Athenians: Whereas, Sir, if you make haste to give them a naval battle, I fear me greatly that if your Armada receive any foil or damage, it will greatly prejudice your Land Forces. But here *Herodotus* wanted no thing but his Propheticall verses, to make *Artemisia* another *Sibylla*, prophelying of things to come so exactly. Well, in regard of this advertisement, *Xerxes* gave her commission to carry his children with him to the City of *Ephesus*: for he had forgotten before, to bring any women with him from his Royal City of *Susa*, in case his children needed a convoy of women to conduct them. But I make no account of such lies as these which he hath devised against us: yet let us only examine a little what slanders he hath raised upon others. He saith that the Athenians give out, how *Adimantus* the Captain of the Corinthians, when the enemies were at the point of giving the charge, and joyning battle, in great fear and astonishment fled, not by throwing the ship backward at the poop by little and little after a soft manner of retreat, nor yet making way of evasion, and escape closely and with silence through his enemies; but hoisting up, and spreading full sail, and turning the proes and break heads about of all his vessels at once. And then there was a Frigate or swift Pinnace sent out after him, which overtook him about the coasts of *Salamis*, out of which one cryed unto him, What *Adimantus*, do you fly indeed, and have you abandoned and betrayed the Greeks? And yet they have the better hand, according as they made their prayers unto the gods for to vanquish their enemy. Now this Frigate, we must think verily came down from heaven: for what need had he to use any such Tragick Engine or Fabrick, so work such feats, who every where else surpasseth all the Poets Tragical in the world, for lying and vanity. Well, *Adimantus* believing the said voyce, was reclaimed and returned again to the Armada, when all was done, and the business dispatched by others to his hands. Thus goes the bruit and speech among the Athenians. But the Corinthians confess not so much, saying, that they themselves were the foremost who in the vaward gave the first onset, and charged the enemy in this battle at sea: and on these side bear witness all the other Greeks. And thus dealeth this man in many other places: He sheweth slanders here and there upon one or other, to the end that he may not misbe, but light upon some, fall it out as it will, who may appear most wicked. Like as in this place he speaketh very well in his purpose. For if his slander and accusation be believed, the Corinthians shall sustain infamy: if discredited, the Athenians shall bear the dishonor: or if the Athenians have not liyed upon the Corinthians, yet himself hath spared neither of them, but told a lye of them both. For proof hercof, *Thucydides*, who bringeth in an Ambassador of *Athen*, to counsel against a Corinthian at *Lacedemon*, and speak bravely of their own worthy exploits against the Medes, and namely, of the naval battle of *Salamis*, chargeth upon the Corinthians no matter of treason nor cowardize: in abandoning their colours: for there is no likelihood, that the Athenians would have reproached the City of *Corinth* in such terms, considering that they saw it engraven in the third place after the *Lacedemonians*, and those Inscriptions of Spoils which they won from the Barbarians, were consecrated to the gods. And at *Salamis*, they permitted them to inter and bury their dead neer to the City side, as who were brave Warriors, and had been themselves most valliantly in that service, with an Inscription in Elegick Verses to this effect:

*Once (passenger) we dwelt in Corinth Town,  
Well watered with Sea on either side:  
And now our bones this Isle of renown,  
Nigh Salamis, within dry mould doth bide:  
Phœnician Ships were sunk, that here did ride.  
The Medes so stout we slew and Persians brave,  
That sacred Greece from bondage we might save.  
But their Cenotaph or Imaginary Tomb which was erected in *Siphnus*, carrieth this Epitaph:  
Lo here we lie, who with our lives set free  
All Greece, neer brought to shameful slavery.*

Likewise over the offerings which *Dionorus* one of the Captains of the Corinthian Gallies, caused to be set up in the Temple of *Latona*, there was this Supercription:

*From cruel Medes, these arms which hang in fight,  
The Mariners of Theodorus won:  
And as memorial of their naval fight,  
To Dame Latona offered them anon.*

*Adimantus* himself, whom *Herodotus* evermore doth revile and reproach, saying, That he alone of all the Captains, went away with a full purpose to fly from *Artemisium*, and would not stay until the conflict: see what honor he had?

*Friend Passenger, here lies Sir Adimant  
Entombed, by whose prowess valliant  
All Greece is crown'd with freedom at this day,  
Which else had been to thraldome brought for aye.*



For neither is it like that such honor should have been done unto him after his death, if he had been a Coward and a Traytor; neither would he ever have dared to name one of his daughters *Nausicaa*, that is to say, Victory in Battel at Sea; nor another, *Acrotion*, which is as much, as the First-fruits of Spoils won from enemies; and a third, *Alexibia*, that is to say, Aid against Force; also, to give unto his son the name of *Aristeus*, which signifieth a brave Warrior: if he had not won some glory and reputation by worthy feats of Arms. Moreover, it is not credible, I will not say, that *Herodotus*, but the meanest and most obscure Carian that is, was ignorant of that glorious and memorable prayer which in those days the Corinthian Dames alone, of all other Grecian wives made, That it might please the Goddess *Venus* to inspire their husbands with the love and desire to give battel unto the Barbarians. For this was a thing commonly known and divulged abroad, in so much as *Simonides* made an Epigram engraven over those their Images of brass, which are set up in the Temple of *Venus*, which by repute was founded in times past by *Medea*, as some say, to this end, that she herself might cease to love her husband; but as others, that *Jason* her husband might give over the love of one *Thetis*. And the said Epigram goeth in this manner:

*These Ladies here, whose Statues stand in place,  
Did whilst prayers to Goddess Venus make,  
In Greece behalf; that it might please her grace  
Them to incite, the Wars to undertake.  
Demy Venus then, for whose good womens sake  
To Median Archers expos'd not as a prey  
The Greeks, nor would their Citadel betray.*

Such matters as these, he should have written and made mention of, rather than inserted into his History, how *Aminocles* killed his own son. Over and besides, after he had satisfied himself to the full with most impudent imputations which he charged upon *Themistocles*, accusing him, that he ceased not secretly to rob and spoil the Isles, without the knowledge of the other Captains joyed in Commission with him; in the end, taketh from the Athenians the crown of principal valiance, and setteth it upon the head of the *Eginets*, writing thus: The Greeks having sent the first-fruits of their spoils and pillage unto the Temple at *Delphos*, demanded of *Apollo* in general, whether he had sufficient, and stood content with that portion of the booty: unto whom he answered, that of all other Greeks, he had received enough, and wherewith he was well pleased: But of the *Eginets* not so; at whose hands he required the chief prize and honor of prowess, which they won at the battel of *Salamis*. Thus you see he lathereth not upon the Scythians, the Persians, or Egyptians his lying tale, which he cogaeth and deviseth, as *Aeschylus* doth upon Crows, Ravens and Apes; but he useth the very person of god *Apollo Pythius*, for so to disappoint and deprive the Athenians of the first place in honor, at the battel of *Poloponnesus*; as also *Themistocles* of the second, which was adjudged unto him at *Isthmus*, or the Streights of *Poloponnesus*; for that each Captain there, attributed the highest degree of prowess to himself, and the next unto him: and thus the judgement hereof growing to an end and conclusion, by reason of the ambition of the said Captains, he saith, All the Greeks weigh'd anchor and departed, as not being willing to confer upon *Themistocles* the sovereign honor of the victory. And in his ninth and last Book, having nothing left to wreak his teen upon, and to discharge his malicious and spiteful stomach, but only the Lacedemonians, and their excellent piece of service which they performed against the Barbarians before the City of *Platea*, he writeth, That the Lacedemonians, who aforesaid feared greatly that the Athenians being solicited and perswaded by *Mardonius*, would forsake all other Greeks: now that the Streights of *Isthmus* were mired up, and their Countrey safe enough, they took no further care of others, but left them at six and seven, feasting and making Holiday at home, deluding the Ambassadors of the Athenians, and holding them off with delays, and not giving them their dispatch. And how is it then, that there went to *Platea* a thousand and five Spartans, having every one of them seven liores about him, for the guard of his person? How is it (*I say*) that they taking upon them the adventure of so great a peril, vanquished and discomfited to many thousands of Barbarians? But hearken what a probable cause he allegeth: There was (quoth he) by chance, a man at *Sparta*, named *Chileus*, who came from *Tegea* thither, and sojourned there, for that among the Ephori he had some friends, as between whom and him there was mutual Hospitality: He it was that perswaded them to bring their Forces into the field, shewing unto them that the Bulwark and Wall for the defence of *Poloponnesus*, would serve in small stead or none, if the Athenians joyned once with *Mardonius*; and this was it that drew *Pausanias* forth with his power to *Platea*; so that if some particular business haply had kept *Chileus* at home still in *Tegea*, Greece had never gotten the victory. Again, not knowing another time what to do with the Athenians: one while he excolleth their City on high, and another while he debaseth it as low, telling it to and fro, saying, that being in question about the second place of honor with the Tegeates, they made mention of the Heraclidæ, alleging their valiant acts, which before time they had achieved against the Amazoner: the Sepulchres also of the *Poloponnese*, who dyed under the very walls of the Castle *Gadmea*; and finally, that they went down to *Marathon* vaunting gloriously in words, and taking great joy that they had the conduct of the left wing or point of the Battel. Also a little after, he putteth down, that *Pausanias* and the Spartans willingly yielded the superiority of command to them, and desired them to take the charge of the right wing themselves, to the end they might confront the Persians, and give them the left: as if they had excolled themselves by their dislike, in that they were wont to encounter with the Barbarians. And verily,

albeit this is a meer mockery, to say, that they were unwilling to deal with those enemies, who were not accustomed to fight with them: yet he saith moreover, that all the other Greeks, when their Captains led them into another place for to encamp in, so soon as ever their Standards marched and advanced forward, The Horsemen (quoth he) in general fled, and would willingly have put themselves within the City *Platea*, but they fled indeed as far as to the Temple of *Juno*. Wherin he accuseth all the Greeks together of disobedience, cowardize, and treason. Finally, he writeth, that there were none but the Lacedemonians and the Tegeates who charged the Barbarians; nor any besides the Athenians, who fought with the Thebans; depriving all other Cities equally of their part in the glory of that noble exploit: for that there was not one of them who laid hand to work, but sitting all still, or leaning upon their weapons hard by, abandoned and betrayed in the meantime, without doing ought, those who fought for their safety, until that the Phliansians and the Megarians, though long it were first, hearing that *Pausanias* had the upperhand, ran in with more haste than good speed, and falling upon the Cavalry of the Thebans, where they were presently defeated and slain, without any great ado: But the Corinthians (quoth he) were not at this fray, but after the victory, keeping above on high ground among the Mountains, by that means met not with the Thebans Horsemen. For the Cavalry of the Thebans, seeing the Barbarians to fly all in a rout, put themselves forth before them, to make them way, and by this means very offensively assisted them in their flight, and all in recompence, and by way of thanksgiving, forsooth (for so you must take it) for those marks which were given them in their faces, within the Streight of *Thermopile*. But in what rank and place of this battel the Corinthians were ranged, and how they did their devoir, and quit themselves against the Barbarians before *Platea*, you may know by that which *Simonides* writeth of them in these verses:

*Around the host arranged stood,  
and in the battel main,  
Those who inhabit Ephrya,  
water'd with many a vain  
Of lively springs: Men who in feats  
of Martial Arms excel:  
And joyn with them, they that in old  
Sir Glaucus City dwell,  
Fair Corinth bright: and these their deeds  
of prowess to express,  
A stately gift of precious gold,  
did afterwards address,  
And consecrate to gods above  
in heavens: and by the same  
Much amplified their own renown,  
and their forefathers fame.*

For this he wrote of them, not by way of a Scholastical exercise, as if he taught a School in *Corinth*; nor as one who of purpose mad: a Song or Balad in praise of the City, but as a Chronicler: penning the History of these affairs in Elegiack verses to that effect. But this Writer here of ours, preventeth the conviction of a loud lye, lest he might be taken therewith, by those that should demand of him in this manner, How cometh it then to pass, that there be so many Sepulchres, Tombs, Graves, and Monuments of the dead, upon which the Platæans even to this day do solemnly celebrate the Anniversary Effusions, to the Ghosts and Souls of those that are departed, in the presence of other Greeks assisting with them? And verily in mine opinion, he seemeth yet more shamefully to charge these Nations with the crime of Treason, in these words following, And these Sepulchres or places of Burial which are seen about *Platea*, those I mean, which their posterity and successors, being alarmed of this foul fault, that their Progenitors were not at this battel, or came too late, call up, and raised on high, every man for his part in general, for the posterity sake. As for *Herrdains*, he is the only man of all others who hath heard of this absence from the battel, which is reputed Treason: But *Pausanias*, *Aristides*, the Lacedemonians and the Athenians, never knew of those Greeks who made default, and would not be at this dangerous conflict: And yet the Athenians neither impeached the *Eginets*, though they were their adversaries, that they were not comprized within the inscription, nor yet charged and convicted the Corinthians for flying from the battel at *Salamis*, considering that *Greece* beareth witness against them. And verily as *Herodotus* himself doth testify, ten years after this war of the Medes, *Cleadas* a Citizen of *Platea*, to gratifie and pleasure the *Eginets* as a friend, raised a great Mount bearing their name, as if they had been interred therein. What ailed then the Lacedemonians and Athenians, or what moved them, being so jealous one of another about this glory as they were, that they had like to have gone together by the ears presently upon the exploit performed, for erecting of a Trophæe or Monument of Victory, not to deprive them of the price of honor, who upon cowardly fear were either away, or else fled from the service, but to suffer their names to be written upon the Trophæes, Colosses and Gyant-like statues erected in memorial of them, allowing them their part in the spoils and pillage, yea, and in the end causing this Epigram or Superscription to be engraven upon a publick Altar?

*The Greeks in sign of noble victory,  
Which they sometimes won of the Persians best,  
And to retain the thankful memory  
That they then drave away from Grecian coast,  
(So resolute they were or else all had been lost)  
This common Altar built to Jupiter  
Surnamed, hereupon Deliverer.*

How now Herodotus, was it Cleades, or some other, I pray you, who in flattery of the Greeks, made this Epigram or Inscription? What need had they then to take such pains and trouble themselves in digging the ground in vain, and by casting up earth raise such Mounts and Monuments for the age to come, when as they might see their glory consecrated and immortalized in these most conspicuous and famous memorials, dedicated to the honor of the gods? And verily Pausanias, when as he intended, as men say, to usurp Tyrannical Government, in a certain oblation which he offered in the Temple of Apollo at Delphos, set this Inscription;

*Pausanias the Captain General  
Of all the Greeks, when he had conquered  
The Medes in fight, for a memorial  
This Monument to Phoebus offered.*

And albeit in some sort he communicated the glory of this execution with the Greeks, whose sovereign Captain he termed himself, yet the Greeks being not able to endure it, but utterly mistaking him therefore, the Lacedemonians above the rest sent their Ambassadors unto Delphos, and caused the said Epigram to be cut out with a chizel, and in lieu thereof, the names of the Cities, as good reason was, to be engraven: And yet what likelihood is there, that either the Greeks should take offence and discontentment for being left out in this Inscription, in case they were culpable, and privy to themselves, that they were not with others at the battle? or the Lacedemonians when they raved out and defaced the name of their General and Chief Commander, cause to be written and engraven their names, who had forsaken and left them in the midst of danger? For this were a manifest indignity, and most absurd, if when Sobares, Desipulus, and all those that performed the best service in that journey, never grieved nor complained that the Cythnians and Melians had their names recorded in those Trophees, Herodotus in attributing the honor of this battle unto three Cities only, should dash all others out, and not suffer their names to stand upon any Trophees or Consecrated Places: For whereas there were four battles given then unto the Barbarians, he saith, that the Greeks fled from the Cape Artemisium: And at the Pass or Straights of Thermopylae, whiles their King and Sovereign Captain exposed himself to the hazard of his life, they kept themselves close at home, and fate still, taking no thought for the matter, but solemnized their Olympick Games and Carnian Feasts.

Moreover, when he cometh to describe the battle at Salamis, he speaketh so much of Artemisia, that he spendeth not so many words again, in all the narration of that naval battle, and the issue thereof. Finally, astouching the journey of Platea, he saith, that all other Greeks, sitting idly at this case, knew nothing of the field fought, before all was done, according as Pigres Artimifus being pleasantly disposed to jest, writeth merrily in verse, that there was a battle between Frogs and Mice, wherein they were agreed to keep silence, and make no noise all the while they fought: to the end that no other might take any knowledge thereof: also, that the Lacedemonians were no better Warriors, nor more valiant than the Barbarians: but their hap was to defeat and vanquish them, because they were naked men, and disarmed: For Xerxes himself being present in person, if they had not been followed with whips, and scourged forward, had never been able to have made them fight with the Greeks; yea, in this journey of Platea, having changed their hearts and courages (for needs it must be so) they were nothing inferior in boldness of heart, strength of body, and resolution, to the Greeks; but it was the apparel, which wanting arms upon it, hurt them so much, and marred all, for being themselves lightly appointed, and in manner naked, they had to deal with the Lacedemonians that were heavily armed at all pieces. What honor then, or great matter of glory could redound unto the Greeks out of these four battles, in case it be so that the Lacedemonians encountered naked and unarmed men? And for the other Greeks, although they were in those parts present, yet if they knew not of the combat, until the service was done to their hands: and if the Tombs honored yearly by the several Cities belonging to them, be empty, and mockeries only of Monuments and Sepulchres; and if the Temples and Altars erected before the gods, be full of false Titles and Inscipitions; and Herodotus only knew the truth; and all men in the world besides, who have heard of the Greeks, were quite deceived by the honorable name and opinion that went of them for their singular prowess and admirable virtues: what is there then to be thought or said of Herodotus? Surely that he is an excellent Writer, and dispaireth things to the life: he is a fine man; he hath an eloquent tongue: his Discourses are full of grace, they are pleasant, beautiful, and artificial: And as it was said of a Poet or Musician in telling his tales: how ever he hath pronounced his Narration and History not with Knowledge and Learning, yet surely he hath done it elegantly, smoothly, and with an audible and clear voyce. And these, I wis, be the things that move delight, and do affect all that read him. But like as among

rolf

rolf we must beware of the venomous Flies *Cantharides*: even so we ought to take heed of distractions and backbiting of his base penning likewise of things deserving great praise, which insinuate themselves and creep under his smooth stile, polished phrase, and figurative speeches: to the end, that ere we be aware, we entertain not, nor foster in our heads, false conceits and at fard opinions of the bravest men, and noblest Cities of Greece.

## Of Musick.

### A Dialogue.

The Persons therein discoursing, Onesicrates, Soterichus, Lysias.

This Treatise, little or nothing at all concerneth the Musick of many Voyces according and interlaced together, which is in use and request at this day; but rather appertaineth to the ancient fashion, which consisteth in the accord and consonance of Song with the sense and measure of the letter, as also with the good grace of gesture: And by the stile and manner of writing, it seemeth not to be of *Plutarchus* doing.

His wife of that good man *Phocion*, was wont to say, that the jewels and ornaments wherein she joyed, were those stratagems and worthy feats of Arms which her husband *Phocion* had achieved: but I for my part may well and truly avouch, that the ornaments not onely of my self in particular, but also of all my friends and Kinsfolke in general, is the diligence of my Schoolmaster, and his affection in teaching me good Literature. For this we know full well, that the noblest exploits, and bravest pieces of service performed by great Generals and Captains in the field, can do no more but onely save from present peril or imminent danger, some small Army, or some one City, or haply at the most, one entire Nation and Countrey; but are not able to make either their Soldiers or Citizens, or their Countreymen, better in any respect: whereas on the other side, good erudition and learning, being the very substance indeed of felicity, and the efficient cause of prudence and wisdom, is found to be good and profitable, not onely to one Family, City and Nation, but generally to all mankind. By how much therefore the profit and commodity ensuing upon knowledge and good letters, is greater than that which proceedeth from all stratagems or martial fears; by so much is the remembrance and relation thereof more worthy and commendable. Now it fortuned not long since, that our gentle friend *Onesicrates* invited unto a feast in his house, the second day of the Sacred Solemnities, certain persons very expert and skilful in Musick, and among the rest, *Soterichus* of *Alexandria*, and *Lysias*, one of those who received a pension from him: And after the ordinary ceremonies and complements of such Feasts were performed, he began to make a speech unto his company after this manner: My good friends (quoth he) I suppose, that it would not beseem a Feast or Banquet, to search at this time what is the efficient cause of Mans Voyces for, a question it is, that would require better leisure, and more sobriety: but forasmuch as the best Grammarians define Voyce to be the beating or percussion of the ayre, perceptible unto the sense of hearing, and because that yesterday we enquired and disputed as touching Grammar, and found it to be an Art making proposition and very meet, to frame and shape Voyces according to lines and letters, yea, and to lay them up in writing, as in the Treasury and Store-house of Memory; let us now see what is the second Science next to it, that is meet and agreeable to the Voyce: and this I take to be Musick. For a devout and religious thing it is, yea, and a principal duty belonging unto men, for to sing the praises of the gods, who have bestowed upon them alone this gift of a distinct and articulate Voyce: which *Homer* also by his testimony hath declared in these Verses.

*Then all day long the Grecian youth  
In songs melodious,  
Besought god Phoebus of his grace,  
To be propitious:  
Phoebus I say, who from afar  
Doth shoot his arrows night,  
They chant and praise, who takes great joy,  
To hear such harmony.*

Go

Go to therefore my matters, you that are professed Musicians, relate unto this good company here that are your friends, who was the first inventor of Musick; what it is that time hath added unto it afterwards who they were that became famous by the exercise and profession of this Science; as also, to how many things, and to what, is the said study and practice profitable. Thus much as touching that which *Onofcrates* our Master moved and propounded; whereupon *Lyfias* inferred again, and said; You demand a question, good *Onofcrates*, which hath already been handled and discussed: for the most part of the Platonic Philosophers, and the best sort of the Peripateticks, have employed themselves in the writing of the ancient Musick, and of the corruption that in time crept into it. The best Grammarians also, and most cunning Musicians, have taken great pains, and travelled much in this argument; and yet there is no small discord and jar among them, as harmonical otherwise as they be about these points. *Heraclides* in his Breviary, wherein he hath collected together all the excellent Professors of Musick, writeth that *Amphion* devised first the manner of singing to the Lute or Cithern, as also, the Citharædian Poetic; for being the son of *Antiope* and *Jupiter*, his father taught him that skill. And this may be proved true, by an old evidence or record enrolled, and diligently kept in the City *Sicyone*, wherein he nameth certain Priestesses in *Argis*, as also Poets and Musicians. In the same age, he saith, there lived *Linus* also of *Eubæa*, who composed certain lamentable and doleful Ditties; *Antes* likewise of *Ambedon* in *Bæotia*, who made Hymns; and *Pierius* born in *Pieria*, who wrote Poems upon the Muses: he maketh mention besides of *Philammon* a Delphian, who reduced into Songs and Canticles the nativity of *Latona*, *Dians*, and *Apollo*; and he it was who instituted first the Quæres and Dances about the Temple of *Apollo* in *Delphos*. And as for *Thamyris* a Thracian born, he reporteth, that of all men living in those days, he had the sweetest breath, and sung most melodiously, in so much as if we may believe Poets, he challenged the Muses, and contended with them in singing. It is written moreover, that this *Thamyris* compiled in verse the War of the Titans against the gods; as also, that *Demodocus* of *Coryra* was an ancient Musician, who ended a Poem of the destruction of *Troy*, and the marriage between *Venus* and *Vulcan*: Similably, that *Pœmus* of *Ithaca* wrote in verse of the return of those Greeks from *Troy*, who came home again with *Agamemnon*. Furthermore, it is said, that the stile of those Poems above said, was not loose, and in prose, without metrical numbers, but like unto that of *Sisichorus*, and other old Poets, and Song-makers, who first made naked Ditties in Verse, and afterwards arrayed them with musical Tunes and Notes: for the same Author reporteth, that *Terpander* a maker of Songs, with Notes and Measures, to be sung unto the Lute or Cithern, according to each Law and Rule of the said measures, adorned both his own Verses, and those of *Homer* also, with harmonical Tunes, and sung them accordingly at the solemn games, wherein Musicians sing one against the other for the prize: he affirmeth likewise, that the same *Terpander* was the first who imposed names and terms to those Tunes which are to be sung to the foresaid stringed instruments; and in imitation of *Terpander*, *Clonas* first composed Songs and Set-tunes to the Flute and other wind instruments, as also the Profodies and Sonets sung at the entry of sacrifices, and that he was a Poet who made Elegiack and Hexameter Verses; also, that *Polymnestus* the Colophonian, who came after him, used likewise the same Poems. Now the Metrical Laws and Songs in measures, called in Greek *Nyctus*, which these Poets and Musicians used to the Pipes, were termed (good *Onofcrates*) in this sort, namely *Apothetos*, *Elegis*, *Comarcbius*, *Schenion*, *Cepion*, *Dios* and *Tropeus*; but in process of time, were devised others beside, called *Polymæstia*. As for the Musical Law or Tunes to be sung unto the stringed instrument, they were invented long time before those other belonging to Pipes, by *Terpander*; for he beforetime named those of the stringed instruments, *Bænius*, *Adæus*, *Trocheus*, *Oxyis*, *Cepion*, *Terpandrius* and *Tetraedus*. Furthermore, the said *Terpander* made certain Proœms, or voluntary Songs to the Lute, in Verse. Now, that Songs or Ditties to be sung unto stringed instruments, were composed in old time of Hexameter Verses, *Timotheus* giveth us to understand; for mingling the first metrical rules in his Verses, he sung the *Dithyrambick* Ditty, to the end, that he might not seem immediately at the first, to break the Laws of the ancient Musick. This *Terpander* seemeth to have been excellent in the art of playing upon the Lute, and singing to it; for we finde upon record in ancient Tables written, that four times together, one after another, he carried the prize away at the Pythian Games: and no doubt, of great antiquity he was. *Cætes*, *Glaucus* the Italian Writer, will have him to be more ancient then *Archilochus*; for so he writeth in a certain Treatise as touching the old Poets and Musicians, saying, that he followed in the second place after those who instituted first Songs unto the Flute and other Pipes. And *Alexander* in his Breviary of the Poet and Musicians of *Phrygia*, recordeth *Olympus* to be the first man who brought into Greece the feat and skill of striking the strings of instruments, and besides, those that are called *Idæi* *Dædylis*. But *Hyagnus* was the first by his saying, who played upon Pipes: after him, his son *Marfyas*, and then *Olympus*; also, that *Terpander* imitated *Homer* in Verses, and *Orpheus* in Song: as for *Marfyas*, it should seem, that he imitated none, considering that before him there was not one, but those Poets who made Ditties and Songs to Pipes, wherewith the works of *Orpheus* have no resemblance at all. Touching this *Clonas* a Composer of Songs and Tunes for the Pipe, who lived somewhat after the time of *Terpander*, he was a Tegezan born, as the Arcadians say, or rather as the Bæotians give out, a Theban. After *Terpander* and *Clonas*, *Archilochus* is ranged in a third place, howsoever other Chroniclers write, that *Arædus* the Troezenian ordained the Musick of Pipes before *Clonas*; as also, that there was one *Polymnestus* a Poet, the son of *Mela* a Colophonian, who made those Tunes and Songs which carry the name of *Polymnestus* and *Polymnestis*. True it is, that those who compiled the Tables and Records

of Musicians, make mention that *Clonas* devised these two Songs or Tunes named *Apothetos*, and *Schenion*. And as for the above named *Polymnestus*, *Pindarus* and *Alcman*, both Song-makers, made mention of him; and they report besides, that old *Philammon* of *Delphos* composed some of those Songs and Tunes to the Lute and Harp, which he attributed unto *Terpander*. In summe, the Song and Musick to the Lute and Harp, devised by *Terpander*, continued very plain and simple, unto the days of *Phrynis*: for in old time, it was not lawful to sing voluntarily, as now they do at their pleasure, tolling Instruments; nor to transfer either Harmonies or Musical numbers and measures: for according to every Song and Tune, they kept a proper and peculiar tension or stretching of the strings; which is the reason that they be called *Nyctus*, as one would say *La*, because it was not lawful to transgress in any of these Songs or Tunes, that severall kinde of tension and stretching the strings, which was usual and ordinary. For after that they had performed those Songs which appertain to the pacifying of Gods Wrath, they leapt immediately to the Poetry of *Homer* and of others, at their pleasure, which may evidently appear, by the Proœms and voluntary Tunes of *Terpander*. And verily, about this time, according as *Cæpion* the Scholar of *Terpander* reporteth, I was first formed that manner of Lute or Cithern which was called *Asias*, for that the Lesbian Minstrels and Musicians, who bordered hard upon *Asia*, used such form: and it is said, that *Periclitus* was the last Player upon such an Instrument, who won the prize at the Carnian games at *Lacedæmon*, of all those who were Lesbians born: after whose death ever after, there failed in *Lebos*, that continuall succession of such Musicians. But some there be, who are greatly deceived, to think that *Hippocax* was of the same time with *Terpander*: and it seemeth that even *Periclitus* was more ancient than *Hippocax*.

Having thus declared the old metrical Songs and Tunes jointly together, of Musicians to stringed Instruments and Pipes, let us turn now to such as properly concern those that pertain to players upon Pipes alone: for it is said, that the above named *Olympus* being a Player of the Flute and other Pipes, and came out of *Phrygia*, set a Song to his instrument in the honour and praise of *Apollo*, and the same was called *Polycephalus*: and by report, this *Olympus* descended lineally from that first *Olympus* the Scholar of *Marfyas*, who composed Ditties, and set Tunes for the worship of the gods: for this *Olympus* being the Darling of *Marfyas*, and singularly loved of him, learned likewise of him to play upon the Flute and other Pipes, and by that means brought into Greece those harmonical Tunes and Songs, which at this day the Greeks use at the solemn feasts of the gods. Others are of opinion, that the fore said Song or Tune *Polycephalus*, is to be ascribed unto *Crates* a Scholar of *Olympus*: but *Pratinas* writeth, that this Song came from another *Olympus* of later time; and as for that other kinde of Song or Tune, named *Harmation*, the first *Olympus*, Disciple to *Marfyas*, by report, composed it. And some there be who hold, that *Marfyas* was named *Masser*: others say no, and that he was called *Marfyas* only, being the Son of *Hyagnis*, who first devised the art of playing upon the Flute. And that this *Olympus* was the author of the Musick or Tune, named *Harmatias*, appeareth by the Table or Register of the ancient Poets, collected by *Glaucus*: and by the same, a man may also learn, that *Sisichorus* born in *Himera*, propoed to himself for to imitate, neither *Terpander*, nor *Antilochus*, ne yet *Thaletas*, but *Olympus*; using altogether the Law of Musick *Harmatias*, and that form of measure which is according to *Dædylus*: and that, some say, ariseth from the loud Musick called *Oribis*, but others hold, that it was the invention of the Mysians, for that there were certain ancient Pipers of the Mysians. Moreover, there is another antick Song or Tune, called *Cardias*, according to which (as *Hippocax* saith) *Minimernus* played: for at the beginning, the Minstrels and Players of Pipes, sung certain Elegies, reduced into measures and metrical Lawes, which appeareth by the Tables and Registers, that testifie what Musicians they were, that contended at the Games of Prize in the festivall Panathenack solemnities. Moreover, there was one *Sacadas* of *Argos*, a Poet that made Songs and Elegies or Ditties, reduced into measures, for to be sung; and reckoned he is among the better sort of Poets, and as it appeareth upon Record in those Registers, he won the best Game three times at the Pythian solemnities. And *Pindarus* himself maketh mention of him. And whereas there be three kinds of Tunes and measures in Musick, according to *Polymnestus* and *Sacadas*, to wit, the *Phrygian*, *Dorian*, and the *Lydian*, they say, that in every one of them *Sacadas* made a certain Election or Tune, called *Srophe*, and taught the Chorus to sing the first according to the *Dorian* Tune; the second after the *Phrygian* measures; and the third, to the *Lydian* Musick: and that this manner of Song was thereupon called *Trimeres*, by reason of the three changes, or parts: Howbeit in the Tables and Registers of the ancient Poets, which are to be seen at *Sicyone*; it is observed and noted, that it was *Clonas* who devised this Melody or Musick *Trimeres*. Now the first manner of Musick, ordained and instituted in the City of *Sparta*, by *Terpander*, was in such sort. The second was appointed as it is most generally received, by *Thaletas* the Gortynian, by *Xenodamus* the Cytherian, *Xenocritus* the Locrian, *Polymnestus* the Colophonian, and *Sacadas* the Argive; as the principall Authors and Directors: for as these were they who instituted first at *Lacedæmon*; the naked Dances called *Gymnopædia*, so in *Arædia* they ordained those that were termed *Apodixes*; and in *Argos* the *Endymatias*. As for *Thaletas*, *Xenodamus*, and *Xenocritus*, they were the Poets that composed the Songs of Victory, named *Pæans*: *Polymnestus*, of the Orchan Canticles; and *Sacadas* of the Elegies. Others say, that *Xenodamus* was the Poet who invented the Songs intuled *Hyporchœmata*, at the sound whereof, folke danced at the feasts of the gods: but he devised not the *Pæans* aforesaid, as *Pratinas* did. And even at this day, there is a Sonet extant of this very name *Xenodamus*, which is evidently *Hyporchœma*; and this kinde of Poetic *Pindarus* useth. Now that there is a difference between a *Pæan* and an *Hyporchœma*, the works of

*Pindarus* sufficiently do shew, for he hath written as well the one as the other. *Polymnestus* also made Songs and Ditties to the Flute: And in Orphian Canticles, used measures and melody, according as our harmonical Musicians give it out: As for us, we know not the truth, because our Ancients have left nothing in writing thereof. There is some doubt also, whether *Thales* of *Candæ* were a Poet that made *Pæans*: For *Glaucus* in saying, that he was after *Archilochus*, writeth indeed, that he imitated his Songs; but he extended them farther. And made them longer, inserting the measures *Maron* and *Creticus* into his melody, which *Archilochus* never used, nor *Orpheus*, nor yet *Terpander*: for it is said, that *Thales* learned this from *Olympus* his playing and piping, and was reputed a good Poet. As touching *Xenocritus* of *Locres* in *Italy*, it is not yet resolved, and for certain known, that he was a maker of *Pæans*. Certes, it is confidently said, that he took for the subject matter and argument of his Poetic Heroick deeds, in so much as some term his arguments *Dithyrambes*. *Glaucus* allured us, that *Thales* was more ancient than *Xenocritus*. And *Olympus*, as *Aristocritus* writeth, is reputed by Musicians to have been the Inventor of the Musick called *Euharmonian*: for before his time, all Musick was either *Diatonique*, or *Chromaticke*: and it is conjectured to have been invented in this manner: For *Olympus* practising the *Diatonique* Musick, and extending his song otherwhiles as far as to the note *Parhypate* *Diatonique*, sometimes from *Paramesa*, and sometime from *Mese*, and surpassing *Lichnos* *Diatonique*, observed the sweetness and beauty of such an aff-ction, and the composition arising of that proportion, and allowing it to be good, inserted it in the *Dorian* Musick: for he touched nothing of that which properly pertaineth to the *Diatonique* or *Chromaticke* kinde, neither meddled he with that which concerned harmony. And these were the beginnings of the *Euharmonique* Musick: For first of them they put a *Spondeus*, wherein no division sheweth that which is proper, unless a man having an eye unto a vehement *Spondiasm*, will conjecture and say the same to be a kinde of *Diatonos*. But manifest it is, that he will put a falsity and discord, who thus setteth it down: A falsity (I say) in that it is by one *Diesis*; next unto the prime; and a discord or dissonance: for that if a man do set in the power of *Tonizum*, that which is proper unto a vehement *Spondiasm*, it will fall out that he shall place jointly together, two *Diatoniques*, the one simple, and the other compound, for this *Euharmonique* re-enforced, and coming thick upon the *Mese*, which now adays is so much used, seemeth not to be devised by the Poet. Thus may a man soon perceive if he observe and mark one very well, who playeth upon a Pipe after the old manner: For by his good will, the *Hemitone* in the *Mese*, will be incompounded. Thus you see what were the first rudiments and beginnings of *Euharmoniques*: But afterwards the demi tone, was divided and distracted as well in *Lydian* as in *Phrygian* Musick: and it seemeth that *Olympus* hath amplified and augmented Musick, because he brought in that which never yet was found, and whereof his Predecessors all were ignorant; so that he may very well be thought the Greekish and Elegiac Musician. Semblably we are to speak of the numbers and measures in Musick called *Rhythmi*: for devised there were and found out to the rest, certain kinds and special sorts of *Rhythm*, as also there were those who ordained and instituted such measures and numbers. For the former innovation of *Terpander*, brought one very good form into Musick: *Polymnestus* after that of *Terpander* another, which he used, and yet he adhered also to that good form and figure before. Scemably did *Thales* and *Sacadas*: And these men verily were sufficient in making of these *Rhythm*, and yet departed not from that good and laudable form: But *Crexus*, *Timotheus*, and *Philoxenus*, and those about their age, were overmuch addicted to new devices, and loved novelties, in affecting that figure which in these days is called *Philamaropon*, that is to say, humane; and *Tibemations*, that is to say, positive. For antiquity embraced few strings, simplicity also, and gravity of Musick. Thus having according to my skill and ability discoursed of the primitive Musick, and of the first Authors who invented it, and by what inventions in process of time it grew to some mean perfection, I will break off my speech, and make an end, giving leave to our friend *Soterichus* for to speak in his turn, who is a man not only well studied in Musick, and as well practised therein, but also thoroughly keen in all other Learning, and Liberal Literature. For mine own part, I am better acquainted with the fingering Musick and manual practise, than otherwise.

When *Lysias* had thus said, he held his peace: and then *Soterichus* after him began thus, You have here, good *Oniscrates*, moved and exhorted us to discourse of Musick, a venerable Science, and a Profession right pleasing to the gods: and for mine own part, I greatly approve of my Master *Lysias*, as well for his good conceits and knowledge, as for his humility, whereof he hath given us a sufficient proof by recting the Authors and Inventors of the first Musick, and the writers also thereof. This will I put you in minde by the way, that in all his proofs he hath reported himself, to the Registers and Records of those who have written thereof, and to nothing else. But I am of a far other minde, and think verily that no earthly man was the Inventor of this so great good, which Musick bringeth with it unto us, but even god *Apollo* himself, who is adorned with all manner of virtues. For neither *Marsyas*, nor *Olympus*, nor yet *Hyagnis*, as some do think, devised the use of the Flute and Pipe, no more than the Lute or the Harp only, was the invention of *Apollo*: for this god devised the play both of the one and the other: which may easily be known by the dances, and solemnities of Sacrifices, which were brought in with the sound of Hautbois and Flutes, to the honor of that god: according as *Alcaeus* among many others, hath left written in one of his Hymns: moreover, his very image in the life of *Delos* testifieth as much, where he is portrayed standing thus; holding in his right hand a bow, and in his left the *Graces*, and every one of them hath an instrument of Musick; the one an Harp or Lute; another the

Shaulm

*Shaulm* or *Haubois*; and she in the midst a Flute or shrill Flute near unto her mouth. And because I would not have you to think, that I have picked this out of mine own fingers ends; both *Anticles* and *Hyler* in their Commentaries, and *Elucidaries*, of these things do quote and allege as much. As for the images aforesaid, and the dedication thereof, so ancient it is, that by report, it was made and erected in the time that *Hercules* lived. Moreover, the Child that bringeth the Lawrell out of the valley of *Tempe* to the City of *Dolphos* is accompanied with a Pipe or Player of the Hautbois: yea and the sacrifices which were wont in old time to be sent from the Hyperboreans into the Ile of *Delos*, went with a sort of Hautbois, Flutes, Pipes, and Lutes, or stringed Instruments about them. And some there be who say more than this, namely, that god *Apollo* himself played upon the Flute and Hautbois. And thus writeth *Alcman* an excellent Poet, and maker of sonnets. And *Corinna* saith furthermore, that *Apollo* was taught by *Minerva*, for to pipe. See how honourable and sacred every way Musick is, as being the very invention of the gods. And in old time they used it with great reverence, and according to the dignity thereof, like as they did all other such exercises and professions: whereas in these dayes men rejecting and disdain the majesty that it hath, in stead of Musick, namely, holy and acceptable to the gods, bring that into the theaters, which is effeminate, enervate, broken, puling and heartfull. And therefore *Plato* in his third book of his Common-wealth, is offended with such Musick, and utterly rejected the *Lydian* Harmony, which is meet for moans and lamentation, like as it is said, that the first institution and making thereof was lamentable: for *Aristoxenus* in his first book of Musick reporteth, that *Olympus* founded with the Hautbois a dolefull and funereal dump in *Lydian* Musick, upon the death of *Pythion*. And others there be who affirm, that *Melanippides* began first this time. *Pindarus* in his *Pæans* saith, that this *Lydian* Musick began first to be taught at the wedding of *Niohe*; Others, that one *Torebus* used first this Harmony, according as *Dionysius* *Lambus* writeth. The *Myxolydian* Musick also, is full of affection, and in that regard meet for tragedies. *Aristoxenus* writeth, that *Sappho* invented first this *Myxolydian* Harmony, of whom the tragedy-makers learned and joynd it with the *Dorian*: for that as one giveth a certain dignity and stately magnificence, so the other moveth affections: and a Tragedy you wot well is mixed of them both: Howbeit, in their rolls and registers, who have written of Musicians, it is said, that *Pythocides*, the Player of the Hautbois, was the first inventor of this Musick. But *Lysias* referreth the invention thereof to *Lamprocles* the Athenian, who having found &c perceived, that the disjunction is not there where in manner all others think it is, but toward that which is high and small, made such a form and figure thereof, as is from *Paramese* to *Hypate* and *Hypaton*. Likewise the *Sublydian* Musick, if it be contrary unto the *Myxolydian*, and in resemblance coming near unto the Ionique, was by report devised by *Damn* the Athenian: Now because of these two Harmonies, the one is mournfull and lamentable, the other dissonant and enervate; *Plato* had good reason to reject them both: and therefore he chose the *Dorian*, as that which is most becoming valiant, sober and temperate men: not I assure you because he was ignorant (as *Aristoxenus* saith, in his second book of Musicians and Musick) that in the other there was some thing good for a Common-wealth, and circumspect policy: for *Plato* had much applied his mind unto Musick, as having been the Scholar of *Draco* the Athenian, and *Metellus* the Argentinian; but considering as we have said before, that there was more gravity and dignity in the *Dorian* Musick, he preferred the same before the rest. And yet he wist well enough, that *Pindarus*, *Alcman*, *Simonides*, and *Bacchylides*, had written and sent many other Parthenies to the *Dorian* Musick: besides *Prosfodies* and *Pæans* also. Neither was he ignorant, that tragical Complaints, and dolefull moans, yea, and amorous ditties, were composed for to be sung in this *Dorian* Tune. But he stood sufficed and contented with those which are ended to the praise of *Mars*, and *Minerva*, and with *Spondees*; for these are sufficient to fortifie and confirm the mind of a temperate and sober man. Neither was he unskillfull in the *Lydian* Musick nor the *Ionian*; for he knew well enough that the tragedy used this kinde of Melody. Moreover, all our ancients before time, being not unexpert of all other kinds of Musick, yet contented themselves with the use of one. For ignorance or want of experience, was not the cause that they ranged themselves into so narrow a freight, and were contented with so few strings: neither are we to think that *Terpander* and *Olympus*, and they that followed their feet, for default of skill and experience, cut off the multiplicity of strings, and their variety. Witnesse hereof the Poems of *Terpander*, *Olympus*, and all their followers, and such as took their course: for being but simple, and having no more than three strings, yet are they more excellent than those which consist of many strings and be full of variety; in such sort as no man is able to imitate the manner of *Olympus*; and all those who use many strings and variety, be far more and come behind him. Now that our ancients in old time abstained from the third, in that *Spondeack* kinde, not upon ignorance, they shew sufficiently in the use of striking the strings: for never would they have used the accord and consonance with *Para-hypate*, if the use thereof had been known unto them: but certain it is, that beauty of affection which is in the *Spondeack* kinde, by the third, was it that led their sense to raise and exalt their note and song to *Paranete*: and the same reason also there is of *Nete*: For this verily they used to their stroke of the instrument, to wit, unto *Paranete* in discord, and unto *Mese* in accord. But in song they seemed not unto them, proper and fit for the *Spondeack* kinde. And not only in these, but also in *Nete* of the *Tetrachord* compound, all used so to do: For in the very stroke of the strings, they disaccorded with *Paranete*, *Paramese*, and *Lichanos*, but in song, they were assuaged thereof, for the variety that resulted thereupon. Moreover, it appeareth manifestly by the *Phyrgians*, that this was not for any

Rrrr

ignorance

ignorance of *Olympus*, or his sectaries: for they used it not only in fingerings, and in the stroke of the strings, but also in fingering at the solemn feasts of the great Mother of the gods, *Cybele*, and in some other Phrygian solemnities. I apprehend also manifestly, by the *Hypate*, that it was not for ignorance that in the Dorian Tunes they forbore this Tetrachord, for incontinently in other tunes they used it: so that it is evident: that they did it willingly. But to avoid affectation they took notice of the Dorian Musick, honoring the beauty and honesty thereof: as we may observe some such like thing in tragical Poets. For never yet to this very day, did the tragedy use Chromatick Musick, nor Rhyme: whereas the Cithern or Lute, which by many ages is more ancient than the tragedy, used it even from the very beginning. And evident it is that Chroma is of greater antiquity than is Harmony. For we must account this antiquity, whereby the one is said to be more ancient than the other, according to the use and practice of men: because in regard of the nature of these kinds one is not older than another. If then some one would say, that *Aeschylus* or *Phrynus* forbore to use Chromatick Musick upon ignorance, and for that they knew it not, were he not think you very absurd and much deceived? For the same man might as well say that *Panocrates* also was ignorant of this Chromatick kinde, because for the most part he forbore to use it: and yet in some places he used it. So that it was not for want of knowledge, but of set purpose, and upon judgement that he abstained from it. He imitated then, as he saith himself, the manner of *Pindarus* and *Simonides*, and in one words that which the modern Musicians call the ancient Musick. The like reason there is of *Tyrteus* the Mantinan, of *Andreas* the Corinthian, *Thrafallus* the Phlasiain, and of many others whom we know upon good consideration to have obtained from the Chromatick, from change and multiplicity of strings, yea and many other things interferred which are in common use, namely, Rhymes, Harmonies, Dicities, Songs, and interpretations. And not to go far for proof hereof, *Telephus* the Megarian was to great an enemy to Flutes, Pipes, and small Pipes, that he would never abide the Artificers and Pipemakers so much as to let them to the Shawm and Hautboies; and for this cause especially, he forbore to come unto the Pythick or Apollonian games of prize. In summe, if a man will conjecture that if a thing be not used, it is long of ignorance, he might condemn of ignorance many of those who live in these dayes; as for example the Dorionians, because they despite the Antigenidian kinde of Musick, for that they used it not. To the Antigenidians likewise they might impute ignorance of the Dorian Musick, for the same cause, as also the minstrels and harpers, as ignorant of the manner of *Timotheus* his Musick. For they have in manner all befallen themselves to patcheries and fallento the Poems of *Polydus*. On the other side, if a man consider arithme, and with experience make comparison between that which then was and that which now is, he shall finde that variety and diversity was in use and request even in those dayes also. For the ancient Musicians used in their numbers and measures, their variety, much more diverse and indifferent than now is: So that we may boldly say that the variety of Rhymes, the difference also and diversity of stroakes was then more variable. For men in these dayes love Skill and Knowledge, but in former times they affected numbers and measures. So that it appeareth plainly, that the ancients abstained from broken Musick and song, not because they had no skill, but for that they had no will to approve thereof. And no marvel: for many faith ones there be in the world and this our life, which are well enough known, though they be not practised: many strange they be by reason of dislike, which grew upon occasion that something was observed therein, not decent and seemly. But that it was not for ignorance, nor want of experience, that *Plato* rejected other kinds of Musick, but only because they were not becomming such a Common-wealth as his, we will hereafter: and withall that he was expert and skillfull in Harmony: For in that procreation of the soul which he describeth in the book of *Timaeus*, he declareth what study he had employed in other Mathematical studies, and in Musick besides, writing after this manner: Thus in manner (quoth he) did God at the first: And after that, he filled the double and treble intervals, in cutting off one portion from thence, and putting it between both of them: in such sort as in every interval or distance, there were two moieties. Certs, this Exordium or Proem, is a sufficient proof of skill and experience in Harmony, according as we will hear hereafter. Three sorts of primitive medieties thereto, out of which all other be drawn to wit, Arithmetical, Geometrical, and Harmonicall. Arithmetical is that which surmounteth, and is surmounted in equal number: Geometrical, in even proportion: and Harmonicall neither in reason and proportion nor in number. *Plato* therefore intending to declare Harmonically, the Harmony of the four elements of the soul, and the cause why things so divers accorded together: in each interval hath put down two medieties of the soul, and that according to Musically proportion. For in the second Diapason in Musick, two intervals there are between two extremities, whereof we will shew the proportion. For the accord Diapason consisteth in a double proportion: as for example, six and twelve will make a double proportion in number: And this interval, is from Hypate Meson, unto Nete Diezeugmenon: Now six and twelve being the two extremities: Hypate Meson containeth the number of six, and Nete Diezeugmenon that of twelve. It remaineth now, that we ought to take unto these the mean numbers between these two extremities, the extremes whereof will be found, the one in proportion Epitritos or sesquiterdian, the other Hemiolios, or sesquialteral. And these be numbers eight and nine. For eight is sesquiterdian to six; and nine is sesquialteral. Thus much as touching one of the extremes. As for the other which is twelve, it is above nine in sesquiterdian proportion, and above eight in sesquialteral. These two numbers then, being between six and twelve, and the interval Diapason compounded and consistng of Diatesseron and Diapente, it appeareth that Mese shall have the number

number of eight, and Paramese, the number of nine: which done, there will be the same habitude, from Hypate and Mese, that is from Paramese to Nete, of a disjunct Tetrachord. The same proportion is found also in numbers, for the same reason that is from six to eight, is from nine to twelve, and look what reason there is between six and nine, the same is between eight and twelve. Now between eight and six the proportion is sesquiterdian, as also between twelve and nine. But between nine and six, sesquialteral, like as between twelve and eight. Thus much may serve to shew that *Plato* was well studied and very expert in the Mathematics.

Now that Harmony is a venerable, worthy and divine thing, *Aristotle* the Disciple of *Plato* testifieth in these words: Harmony (quoth he) is Celestiall, of a beautiful and wonderful nature, and more than human: which being of it self divided into four, it hath two medieties, one Arithmetical, the other Harmonicall; and of the parts thereof the magnitudes and extremities are seen according to number and equality of measure: for accords in Song are appropriate and fitted in two Tetrachords. These be the words of *Aristotle*: who said that the body of Harmony is composed of parts dislike, and accordant verily one with another, but yet the medieties of the same agree according to reason Arithmetically: for that Nete according to Hypate, by double proportion maketh an accord and consonance of Diapason: For it hath as we have before said, Nete of twelve unities, and Hypate of six, and Paramese according with Hypate, in proportion sesquialteral of nine unities. But of Mese, we say, it hath eight unities: and the principall intervals of Musick are composed of these: to wit, Diatesseron, which consisteth of a proportion sesquiterdian, and of Diapente, which standeth upon a sesquialteral: and Diapason of a duple: For so is preserved the proportion sesquialteral, which is according to the proportion Tonizus. Thus you see how the parts of Harmony do both surmount and also are surmounted of other parts, by the same excess: and the medieties of medieties, as well according to excess in numbers, as Geometrical puissance. Thus *Aristotle* declareth them to have these and such like powers, namely that Nete surmounteth Mese by a third part, and that Hypate is sensibly surmounted of Paramese: in such sort as these excesses, are of the kinde of Relatives, which have relation to another: for they surmount and be surmounted by the same parts. And therefore by the same proportion the two extremes of Mese and Paramese, do surmount, and be surmounted, to wit, sesquiterdian and sesquialteral. And after this sort is the harmonical excess. But the excess of Nete and Mese by Arithmetically proportion, sheweth the exuperances in equal party: and even to Paramese in proportion to Hypate: for Paramese surmounteth Mese in proportion sesquialteral: Like again Nete is a double proportion of Hypate: and Paramese of Hypate in sesquialteral: and Mese sesquiterdian in regard of Hypate. See then how Harmony is composed according to *Aristotle* himself, of her parts and numbers. And so verily testified by him composed most naturally of a nature well finite as infinite: both of even and also of odd, it self and all the parts thereof: for it self naturally and whole is even, as being composed of four parts or terms: the parts whereof and their proportions, be even, odd, and even not even. For Nete it hath even of twelve unities: Paramese odd of nine unities: Mese even of eight unities, and Hypate even not even of six unities. So that Harmony thus composed both of it self and the parts thereof one to the other, as well in excess as in proportions, the whole accordeth with the whole and the parts together: And that which more is, the very senses being inserted and ingrafted in our bodies by Harmony, but principally those which are Celestiall and Divine, namely Sight and Hearing, which together with God give Understanding and Discourse of reason unto men with the voice and the lights, do represent Harmony: yea and the other inferior senses which follow them, in as much as they be senses, are likewise composed by Harmony: for all their effects they perform not without Harmony, and howsoever they be under their and lesse noble, yet they yield not for all that: for even they entering into the body accompanied with the presence of a certain Divinity, together with the discourse of reason, obtain a forcible and excellent nature. By these reasons evident it is that the ancient Greeks, made great account, and not without good cause, of being from their infancy well instructed and trained up in Musick: for they were of opinion, that they ought to frame and temper the minds of young folk unto virtue and honesty by the means of Musick, as being right profitable to all honest things, and which we should have in great recommendation, but especially and principally for the perilous hazards of war: in which case some used the Hautboies, as the Lacedaemonians, who shamed the Song called *Cablorion* to the said instruments, when they marched in ordinance of battell, for to charge their enemies. Others made their approach, for to encounter and give the first onsey with the noyse of the *Lyra*, that is to say, the Harp or such like stringed instruments. And this we shal find to have been the practice of the Candians, for a long time, for to use this kinde of Musick, when they set forth and advanced forward to the doubtfull dangers of battell. And some again contented even to our time in the use of Trumpets sound. As for the Argives, they went to wreale as the solemn games in their city called *Sibenia* with the sound of the Hautboies. And these games, were by report instituted at first in honour and memory of their King *Danaus*: and afterwards again were consecrated to the honour of *Jupiter* surnamed *Sibenius*. And verily even at this day, in the Penteatichian games of prize, the manner and custom is to play upon the Hautboies, and to sing a Song thereto, although the same be not antique nor exquisite, nor such as was wont to be played and sung in those parts as that Canticle composed sometime by *Herax*, for this kinde of Combat, and named it was *Euktema*. Well, though it be but a faint and feeble manner of song, yet somewhat, such as was, they used with the Hautboies. And in the times of great Antiquity it is said that the Greeks did not so much as know Theatrical Musick, but

for that they employed all the skill and knowledge thereof in the service and worship of the gods; and in the institution and bringing up of youth, before any Theater was built in Greece by that people; but all the Musick that yet was, they bestowed to the honour of the gods and their divine service in the Temple, also in the praises of valiant and worthy men: So that it is very probable that these terms Theater afterwards, and *Musicus* long before, were derived of *Mus*, that is to say, God. And verily in our daies Musick is grown to such an height of difference and diversity, that there is no mention made, nor memory remaining of any kinde of Musick for youth to be taught, neither doth any man set his mind thereto, or make profession thereof: but look whosoever are given to Musick, betake themselves wholly to that of Theaters for their delight. But some man may haply say unto me: What good Sir, think you that in old time they deviled no new Musick, and added nothing at all to the former? Yea I will, I confesse they did adjoyn thereto some new inventions, but it was with gravity and decency. For the Historians who wrote of these matters, attributed unto *Terpander* the Dorian Note, which before time they used not in their songs and tunes: And even so it is said that the Myxolidian tune was wholly by him devised to the rest: as also the note of the melody *Orithien*: and the song named *Orithius*, by the *Trochæus*, for founding the alarme and to encourage unto Battell.

And if it be true as *Pindarus* saith, *Terpander* was the inventor of those songs called *Scolia*, which were sung at feasts. *Archilochus* also adjoynd those rhymes or lambick measures called *Tymetra*: the translation also and change into other number and measures of a different kinde, yea, and the manner how to touch and strike them. Moreover, unto him, as first inventor, are attributed the Epodes, Tetrameter lambicks, Procræticke and Profodiackes; as also, the augmentation of the first, yea, and as some think, the Elegy it self: over and besides, the intention of Iambus unto *Pæan* Epibatos, and of the *Hærus* augmented both unto the Profodiacke, and also the Cretick. Furthermore, that of lambick notes, some be pronounced according to the stroke, others sung out. *Archilochus* was the man, by report, who shewed all this first, and afterwards, tragical Poets used the same: likewise it is said, that *Crexus* receiving it from him, transported it to be used at the Bacchanal songs, called *Diathyrambs*. And he was the first also, by their saying, who devised the stroke after the song: for that beforetime they used to sing, and strike the strings together. Likewise unto *Polymnestus* is ascribed all that kinde of note or tune, which now is called *Hy polydus*, and of him they say, that he first made the drawing out of the note longer, and the dissolution and ejection thereof much greater than before. Moreover, that *Olympus*, upon whom is fathered the invention of the Greek Musick, that is tied to laws and rules, was he who first brought up, by their saying, all the kinde of Harmony, and of rhymes or measures, the Profodiacke, wherein is contained the tune and song of *Marsias* also the *Chorus*, whereof there is great use in the solemnities of the great Mother of the gods: yea, and some there be, who make *Olympus* the author also of the measure *Bacchius*. And thus much concerning every one of the ancient tunes and songs. But *Lafus* the Harmonian, having transferred the rhymes into the order of *Diathyrambs*, and followed the multiplicity in voice of Hautboies, in using many sounds and those diffused and dispersed to and fro, brought a great change into Musick, which never was before. Specially, *Melanippides* who came after him, contained not himself in that manner of Musick which then was in use, no more than *Philoxenus* did and *Timotheus*, for he, whereas beforetime unto the daies of *Terpander* the Antifiscian, the Harp had but seven strings, distinguished it into many more sounds and strings: yea, and the sound of the Pipe or Hautboies, being simple and plain before, was changed into a Musick of more distinct variety. For in old time, unto the daies of *Melanippides* a *Diathyrambick* Poet, the players of the Hautboies were wont to receive their salaries and wages at the hands of the Poets, for that Poetry you must think, bare the greatest stroke, and had the principal place in Musick and acting of Plaies, so as the Minstrels before said were but their ministers: but afterwards, this custom was corrupted; upon occasion whereof, *Pherecrates* the Comical Poet bringeth in Musick in form and habit of a woman, with her body piteously scourged and mangled all over: and he deviseth besides, that Dame Justice demanded of her the cause why, and how she became thus misused; unto whom Poetrie or Musick maketh answer in this wise:

## Musick.

I will gladly tell, since that we pleasure take  
Toe for to hear; and I to answer make.  
One of the firsts, who did me thus displease  
And work my woe, was *Melanippides*;  
He with twelve strings my body whips so sore,  
That lost it is; and looser than before;  
Yet was this man unto me tolerable,  
And not to these my harmes now, comparable.  
For one of *Athick* land, *Cynæias* be,  
Shame come to him, and cursed may he be,  
By making turnes and winding cranks so strange  
In all his strepters, and those without the range  
Of harmony, hath me perverted so,  
That where I am, much I now do know.  
His *Diathyrambs* are framed in such guise,  
That left seem right, in shield and target wife.

And

And yet of him, one cannot truly say,

That cruelly he meant me for to slay.

Phrynis it was who set to me a woe

(His own device) that I could never rest:

Wherewith he did me winde and writhe so hard,

That I well need for ever was quite marr'd.

Out of five strings for sooth he would devise

No fewer than twelve harmonies to rise:

Well, of this man I cannot moost complain,

For what he misse, he soon repair'd again.

*Timotheus* sweet Lady (out alas)

Hath me undone: *Timotheus* it was,

Most shamefully who wrought me all despite,

He hath me torne, he hath me buried quite.

Justice.

And who might this *Timotheus* be (dear heart)

That was the cause of this thy wofull smart?

Musick.

I mean him of *Miletus*, *Pyrrhæas*

Surnam'd, his head and hair so ruddy was.

This fellow brought upon me sorrows more

Than all the rest whom I have nam'd before.

A sort be of unpleasant quavers brings,

And running points, when as he plaies or sings:

He never meets me when I walk alone

Upon the way, but me assaults anon.

Off gony robes, and thus devised bare

He teares me with twelve strings, and makes no spare.

*Aristophanes* also the Comical Poet makes mention of *Philoxenus*, and saith, that he brought songs into the dances called *Rounds*: and in this manner he deviseth, that Musick should speak and complain:

What with his *Exharmonians*,

*Niglaris* and *Hyperbolians*,

And such loud notes, I wot not what,

He hath me stult so full, as that

My voice is brittle when I speak,

Like a radish root that soon will break.

Specially, other Comical Poets have blasoned and set out in their colours, our modern Musicians, for their absurd curiosity, in hewing and cutting Musick thus by peace-meal, and mincing it so small. But that this science is of great power and efficacy, aswell to set strait and reform, as to pervert, deprave and corrupt youth in their education and learning. *Aristoxenus* hath made very plain and evident: for he saith, that of those who lived in his time, *Telestas* the Theban happened when he was young, to be brought up and instructed in the most excellent kinde of Musick, and to learn many notable ditties and songs; among which, those also of *Pindarus*, of *Dionysius* the Theban, of *Lauprius*, *Pratinas* and other Lyrical Poet, singular men in their faculty, and profession of playing cunningly upon the Harp and other stringed instruments. He had learned likewise to found the Hautboies passing well, and was sufficiently exercised and practised in all other parts of good literature: but when he was once past the flower and middle of his age, he became so far ravished and carried away with this Scenical Musick so full of variety, that he despised that excellent Musick and Poetic wherein he was nourished, and all for to learn the ditties and tunes of *Philoxenus* and *Timotheus*, and principally such of them as had most variety and novelty: and when he brook himself to compose ditties and set songs, making trial what he could do in both kinds, aswell in that of *Pindarus* and this of *Philoxenus*, he was able to perform nothing well and to the purpose in that Musick of *Philoxenus*: the reason whereof was, his excellent education from his infancy. If then a man be desirous to use Musick well and judiciously, let him imitate the old manner: and yet in the mean while furnish the same with other Sciences, learn Philosophy, as a mistress to guide and lead; for he is able to judge what kinde of measures is meet for Musick, and profitable. For whereas three principal points and kinds there be, unto which all Musick is universally divided, to wit, *Diatonos*, *Chroma*, and *Harmony*, he ought to be skillful in Poetry, which useth these several kinds, who cometh to learn Musick; and withall, he must attain to that sufficiency, as to know how to expresse and couch in writing his Poetical inventions. First and foremost therefore he is to understand, that all musical science is a certain custom and usage, which hath not yet attained so far as the knowledge to what end every thing isto be learned by him that is the scholar. Next to this it would be considered, that to this teaching and instruction, there be not yet adjoynd presently the enumeration of the measures and manners of Musick. For, the most part learn rashly and without discretion, that which seemeth good and is pleasant either to the learner or the teacher: but the better sort reject such indiscretion; as the Lacedæmonians in old time, the Mantineses likewise and the Peloponnesians: for these, making choise of one manner above the rest, or else of very few, which they took to be

R r r 3

mccc



meat for the reformation and correction of manners, *and* *no* other musick but it : which more evidently may appear, if a man will enquire and consider, what it is that every one of these Sciences taketh for the subject matter to handle : for certain it is, that the Harmonick skill containeth the knowledge of intervals, compositions, sounds, notes, and mutations of that kinde which is named *Hermosmenon*, that is to say, well befitting and convenient : neither is it possible for it to proceed farther. So that, we must not require nor exact of her, that she should be able to discern whether a Poet hath well, properly and fitly used (for example sake in musick) the Hyperdorian tune in his entrance ; the Mixolydian and the Dorian at his going forth ; and the Phrygian or Hypophrygian in the midst : for this pertaineth not at all to the subject matter of the Harmonick kinde ; and hath need of many other things : for he knoweth not well the force of the propriety. And if he be ignorant of the Chromatic kinde and Enharmonic, he shall never attain to have the perfect and absolute power of the propriety, according to which, the affection of the measures that are made are seen : for this is the office and part of the artificer. And manifest it is, that the voice of the composition called *Systema*, is one thing ; and the melody or song which is framed in the said composition, another : which to teach and whereof to treat, pertaineth not to the faculty of the Harmonick kinde. Thus much also we are to say as touching Rhythm ; for no Rhythm will ever come to have in it the power of perfect propriety : for that alwaies which is said to be proper, is in regard and reference to the affection ; whereof we affirm the cause to be either composition or mixture, or else both together : like as with *Olympus*, the Enharmonic kinde is put in the Phrygian tune, and Papon mixed with Epibacros : for this affection of the beginning hath it ingendred and brought forth in the song of *Minerva*. For when the melody and rhythm or measure was artificially set so, and the number or rhythm alone cunningly transmutated, so as a Trocheus was put in stead of a Peon ; Hereof came the Harmonick kinde of *Olympus* to be composed. Yet nevertheless, when both the Enharmonic kinde and the Phrygian tune remain : and beside these, the whole composition also, the affection received a great alteration : for that which is called Harmony in the song of *Minerva*, is far different from the affection which is in common use and experience. If then, who is expert and skilful in Musick, had wishd the faculty to judge, certain it is, that such an one would be a perfect Workman, and a passing good Master in Musick. For he who is skilful in the Dorian musick, and knoweth not how to judge and discern the propriety, he shall never know what he doth, nor be able to keep so much as the affection, considering there is some doubt as touching the judgement of Dorian melodies and tunes, whether they appertain to the subject matter of Harmony or no ? as some Dorians are of opinion. The like reason there is of all the Rhythmic skill, for he who knoweth Peon, shall not incontinently know the propriety of the use thereof, forasmuch as there is some doubt as concerning the making of Peonic rhythms, to wit, whether the Rhythmicque matter is able to judge with distinct knowledge of them ? or whether as some say, it do not extend so far ? Of necessity therefore it followeth, that there must be two knowledges at the least in him, who would make distinction and be able to judge between that which is proper and that which is strange : the one of manners and affections, for which all composition is made ; the other, of the parts and members of which the composition doth consist. Thus much therefore may suffice, to shew that neither the Harmonick, nor the Rhythmic, nor any one of these faculties of Musick, which is named particular, can be sufficient of it self alone to judge of the affection, or to discern of other qualities. Whereas therefore, *Hermosmenon*, which is as one would say, the decent and elegant temperance of voices and sounds, is divided into three kinds, which be equal in the magnitudes of compositions, in puissances of sounds, and likewise of Tetrachords : our ancients have treated but of one : for those who went before us, never considered, either of Chroma, or Diatonos, but only of Enharmonios, and that only in a magnitude of a composition, called Diapason : for of the Chroma they were at some variance and difference : but they all in manner did accord to say, that there was no more but this Harmony alone. And therefore he shall never understand that which pertaineth unto the treatise of Harmony, who hath proceeded so far as to this only knowledge : but apparent it is that he ought to follow both other particular sciences, and also the total body of Musick ; yea and the mixtions and compositions of the parts ; for he that is only Harmonical is confined within one kinde and no more. To speak therefore generally and once for all, it behoveth, that both outward sense and inward understanding concur to the judgement of the parts in Musick : Neither is one to prevent and run before another, as the senses do, which are more forward and hasty than their fellows : nor to lag behind and follow after, as those senses do which are slow and heavy of motion. And yet otherwise in some senses it falleth out upon a naturall inequality which they have, that both happen at once, to wit, they draw back, and haste forward together : we must therefore cut off these extremities from the sense, if we would have it runne joyntly with the understanding : for necessary it is, that there be alwaies three things at the least meet together in sense of hearing, to wit, the sound, the time, and the syllable or letter. And come to pass it will, that by the going of the sound, will be known the proportionable continuity, called *Hermosmenon* ; by the gate of time, the Rhythm, and by the passing and proceeding of the syllable or letter, the ditty : Now when they march altogether, there must needs be an incurion of the sense. This also is evident, that the sense not being able to distinguish and discern every one of these three things, and accompany them severally, impossible it is, that it should know or judge that which is well or amiss, in each of them particularly. First and foremost therefore, we are to take knowledge of the coherence and continuation ; for necessary it is, that there should be in the faculty and power of judging, a certain

certain continual order, for as much as good and bad be not determinately in such sounds, times, letters or syllables, severed one from the other, but in the continued suit and coherence of them, for there is a certain mixture or parts which cannot be conjoined in usage. And thus much may suffice for the consequence. After this we are to consider, that men, sufficient otherwise, and skilful Masters in Musick, are not by and by able to judge : for impossible it is to be a perfect Musician, and a judge withal of those which seem to be the parts of total Musick, as the science and skill of instruments ; likewise of song, as also of the exercise of the sense, I mean that which tendeth to the intelligence and knowledge of the well-proportioned *Hermosmenon*, and of Rhythm. Over and besides, of the Rhythmic and Harmonique treatise, and of the speculation, touching the stroke and the ditty, and what other forever there are besides. But what the causes should be, that it is not possible for one to be a Critick and able to judge, by means of these things by themselves, let us endeavour to search and know. First by this supposal, That of those things which are proposed unto us for to be judged of, some be perfect, others imperfect : Perfect, for example, every Poetical work, that is either chanted, or played upon the Pipe, or founded on the Lute and stringed instrument ; or else the interpretation or elocution of the said Poems, which they call *systema* : as is the noise of pipe, or of the voice, and such like : Unperfect, those which end hereto, and are for them ordained, as be the parts of that which is called interpretation. Secondly, by Poetic or fiction, whereof the case is alike ; because a man may as well judge if he hear the minstrel play or sing, whether his pipes accord or no, and whether his dialect or ditty be clear, or contrarywise obscure for each of these is a part of the fore said interpretation of pipes, not the end it self, but that which respecteth the end ; for the affection of the interpretations shall be judged hereby, and by all such causes, whether they be well fitted and accommodate to the Poem composed, which the agent hath taken in hand to treat of, to handle, to expresse and interpret. Semblable is the reason also of the affections and passions, which are signified in the Poems, by Poetic. Our ancients then, as those who made principal account of the affection, preferred and esteemed best that fashion of antique Musick, which was grave, not curious nor much affected. For it is said that the Argives did set down in times past a punishment for those who brake the laws of Musick, yea, and condemned him to pay a good fine, who first used more than seven strings, and who went about to bring in the use of the Mixolydian Musick. But *Pythagoras* that grave and venerable personage, reproved all judgement of Musick which is by the ear, for he said, that the intelligence and virtue thereof, was very subtle and slender, and therefore he judged thereof, not by hearing, but by proportional harmony : and he thought it sufficient to proceed as far as to Diapason, and there to stay the knowledge of Musick : Whereas Musicians in these dates disesteem and reject wholly that kinde of Musick which was in greatest reputation among our ancestors, for the gravity thereof : inasmuch as the most part of them make no reckoning of any apprehension of Enharmonic intervals and spaces. So idle and lazy they be, that they think and say, the harmonical Diels give them no appearance at all, nor representation of those things that fall under the sense of hearing ; yea, and banish it quite out of their unes and songs, counting those no better than prating, vain, and toyish persons, who have either written or spoken thereof, or used that kinde : and for proof thereof, that they say true, they suppose they have found a doubty good argument and demonstration, drawn from their own grosse stupidity and senselessness, as if all that which their sense apprehended not, must needs incontinently have no subsistence at all in nature, and be altogether unprofitable. And then moreover they hold, that there can no magnitude be apprehended by symphony and consonance of voice, as the note, the half note, and other such intervals. Mean while they do not perceive (such is their ignorance) that they may as well banish the third magnitude, the sixt, and the seventh ; whereof the first consisteth of three, the second of five, and the third of seven Diels : and generally they should reject and reprove all the intervals that be odd, as superfluous and good for nothing : inasmuch as none of them can be found by consent or symphony. And these they may be, which the least Diels doth measure in odd number : whereupon it followeth necessarily, that no division of the Tetrachord, is profitable, but this only, by which we may use all even intervals : and these verily were that of Synonon, Diatonos, and Tonic in Chroma. But to give out, or to conceive such things, were the part not of those only who contradicted that which is apparent and evident, but also of such as went against themselves : for they use more than any other such partitions of Tetrachords, wherein all the intervals be either odd or else proportionable to those that be odd : for evermore they mollifie all the notes, called *Lichani*, and *Paraneta* : yea, and they set down a little, those very notes which are steadfast and firm, by I wot not what interval, without all reason ; and together with them, they let slack also very absurdly, the Thirds and the Paranetas, and they suppose that the use of such compositions is most commendable, wherein the most part of the intervals, be without all reason and proportion, by letting down not only those sounds which naturally are wont to rise and be moved, but also some of them which are immovable : as appeareth manifestly to those who are sufficient and able to judge of such things.

To come now to the use of Musick, how meet and seemly it is for a valiant man, gentle *Homer* hath given us very well to understand : for to prove unto us how commodious Musick is in many respects, he signified and devised *Achilles* to consolet his anger which he had conceived against *Agamemnon*, by the means of Musick, which he had learned of that most prudent and wife *Chiron* : for thus he writeth :

*They found him then, within his tent,  
with sounds of Lute so still,*

*His*

His heart that was now discontent,  
to silence and to still:  
An instrument right fair in sight  
this was, and trimly wrought:  
The neck with silver richly dight  
which he himself had caught  
Out of the spoils then lately won  
of Thebes, that stately Town,  
And City of Ecton,  
when it was rased down:  
Herewith I say, he pass'd his time,  
this was his hearts delight,  
He sung, till all be praise in rhyme  
of many a valiant Knight.

Note hereby and learn (quoth *Homer*) what use we ought to make of Musick: for he sung unto the Lute, the noble exploits of brave men, and the glorious acts of worthies and demi-gods: a thing that full well becometh *Achilles* the son of most righteous *Peleus*. Over and besides, *Homer* teaching us the proper and convenient time of using Musick, found out an exercise, both profitable and pleasant for a man at leisure, and not occupied otherwise in affairs. For *Achilles* being a martial man of action, yet for the anger that he had conceived against *Agamemnon*, had no hand in the perils and hazards of War: *Homer* thought therefore that it became very well this Heroique and hardy Knight, to whet his courage by these excellent songs, to the end that he might be provided and ready against that gall and skirmish which soon after he undertook: and this no doubt he performed very well, by calling to remembrance the doubtful deeds and feats of arms achieved by others in times past. Such verily was the ancient Musick, and for this purpose it served. For we do hear that both *Hercules* made use of Musick, and also *Achilles*, with many other valourous Knights, whom *Chiron* that most sage and learned master and bringer up of youth taught, who was a teacher not of Musick only, but of justice beside and Physick. In sum, a man of wisdom and sound judgement, will thus deem, that good Sciences are not to be blamed, if haply they be not well used, but impute all fault unto them that abuse the same. And therefore if any one from his childhood, shall be well instructed and trained up in Musick, and withall employ his labour and diligence therein, he will receive and approve that which is honest and commendable: blame also he will and reject the contrary: not in Musick noly, but in all things else: and such a one will decline all unhoneft and unworthy actions, and thus reaping from Musick the greatest and best contentment that can be, he may benefit exceeding much, as well himself as his whole Countrey, using no word nor deed unseemly, but observing at all times and in every place, that which is befitting, decent, temperate and elegant. Moreover, that Cities and States best Governed by Policy and good Laws, have alwaies had a special regard of generous and good Musick, many and sundry testimonies may be alleged: and namely, a man may very well cite to this purpose *Terpander*, who suppressed in times past, the great sedition and civil discord that was in *Lacedemon*: *Thales* also the Candiott, who went as it is said, by the commandment and Oracle of *Apollo*, to *Lacedemon*, and there cured the Citizens, and delivered them from that great pestilence, which reigned in that City, and all by the means of Musick, as writeth *Plutarch*. *Homer* also himself saith, that the plague which afflicted the Greeks, was by Musick staid and appeased:

Then all day long, the Grecians youth  
in songs melodious,  
Besought god *Phœbus* of his grace,  
to be propitious:  
*Phœbus* I say, who from a far  
dost shoot his arrows nie  
They chant and praise, who takes great joy,  
to hear such harmony.

With these verses as with Corollaries, good matter I will conclude this my discourse of Musick, and the rather, because you first by the very same verses commended unto us the force and power of Musick: for in very truth, the principal and most commendable work thereof, is thanksgiving unto the gods, and the acknowledgment of their grace and favour: the second, and that which next followeth, a sanctified heart, a pure, consonant and harmonical estate of the soul. When *Soterichus* had said: Thus you have (quoth he) my good Master heard us discourse of Musick round about the board as we sit. And verily *Soterichus* was highly admired for that which he had delivered: for he shewed evidently both by his voice and visage, how much he was affected unto Musick, and what study he had employed thereto. Then my master: Over and above other things, this also I commend in you both, that you have kept your own course and place, the one as well as the other. For *Lyfias* hath furnished our feast with those things which are proper and meet for a Musician, who knoweth only to handle the Lute or Harp, and hath no farther skill than manual practice. *Soterichus* also hath taught us whatsoever concerneth both the profit and also the speculation thereof, yea and withall comprehendeth therein the power and use of Musick, whereby he hath mended our fare, and feasted us most sumptuously. And I suppose verily that both of them, have of purpose and that right willingly, left thus much unto me, as to

to draw Musick unto feasts and banquets: neither will I condemn them of timidity, as it they were ashamed so to do: For if in any part of mans life, Certes in such feasts and merry meetings it is right profitable. For according as good *Homer* saith,

Both song and dance, delight afford,  
As things that well becom the board.

Neither would I have any man to infer hereupon, that *Homer* thought Musick good for nothing else: but to delight and content the company at a feast: considering there is in those verses couched and hidden a more deep and profound meaning. For he brought Musick to those times and places, wherein it might profit and help men most, I mean the feasts and meetings of our ancients: and expedient it was to have her company there, for that she is able to divert and temper the heat and strength of wine, according as our *Aristoxenus* also else where saith: Musick (quoth he) is brought in thither, because that whereas wine is wont to pervers, and overturn as well the bodies as the minds of those who take it immoderately, Musick by that order, symmetry, and accord which is in it, reduceth them again into a contrary temperature, and dulceth all. And therefore *Homer* reporteth that our ancients used Musick as a remedy and help, at such a time. But that which is principal and in *King Musick* above all things most venerable, you have my good friend let pass and omitted. For *Pertagorus*, *Achias*, *Plato*, and all the rest of the old Philosophers do hold, that the motion of the whole World, together with the revolution of the Stars, is not performed without Musick: For they teach that God framed all things by Harmony. But to prosecute this matter more at large, this time will not permit: and besides it is a very high point and most Musical to know in every thing how to keep a mean and competent measure. This said, he sung an hymn, and after he had offered a libation of wine unto *Saturn*, and to all the gods his children, as also to the Muses, he gave his guests leave to depart.

## Of the Fortune or Vertue of King Alexander.

### The Summary.

IN this treatise and that which followeth, framed both in form of a declamation, *Plutarch* magnifieth *Alexander*, a praise-worthy Prince, for many good parts that were in him: wherein he sheweth also, that we ought to attribute unto Vertue and not to Fortune, those brave exploits which he performed. By Fortune, he meaneth that course of the affairs in this World, whereby it falleth out many times that the wisest men are not always most happy and best advanced. To prove therefore, that *Alexander* was endued with exquisite qualities for execution of those enterprises which by him were achieved afterwards and brought to an end, he compareth him in the beginning of this treatise, with the Kings of *Perlia* raised up to their greatness by Fortune: and then sheweth, that *Alexander* being an excellent Philosopher, we ought not to wonder or be astonished, if by his vertue he saw the end of many things which the most fortunate Princes of the World durst never take in hand and begin. Now the better to set out the excellency of this Philosophy of *Alexander*, he compareth his scholars with the disciples of *Plato* and *Socrates*: proving that those of this Prince surpassed the others, as much as a good deed or benefit done to an infinite number of men surmounteth a good speech or instruction given to some particular persons: the most part of whom make no account thereof. He proceedeth forward and describeth the wisdom and sufficiency of *Alexander* in politick Government, which he amplifieth by the consideration of his amiable behaviour and lovely carriage toward those Nations which by him were subdued: also by the recital of some notable sayings of his: likewise by the love and affection which he carried unto wisdom, and men of knowledge. In brief, his acts be evident proofes of his vertue, and in no wise of the tenacity and rashness of Fortune. But even in this very place, *Plutarch* hath broken off his treatise, leaving the end thereof defectuous: namely where he began to discourse of the contempt of death, and of the constant resolution of *Alexander* against the most cowardly and boisterous assaults of Fortune.

## Of the Fortune or Vertue of King Alexander.

THESE are the sayings and allegations of Fortune, affirming and proving that *Alexander* was her own peculiar piece of work, and to be ascribed unto her alone. But we must gainsay her in the name and behalf of Philosophy, or rather of *Alexander* himself: who taketh it not well, but is highly displeased, that he should be thought to have received his Empire at Fortunes hand gratis, and as a meer gift and benefit which he had bought and purchased with shedding much of his own blood, and receiving many a wound one upon another.

Who many restless nights did passe  
Without all sleep full broad awake:  
And many a bloody day there was,  
Whiles he in field did skirmish make.

Whiles he fought against forces and Armies invincible, against Nations innumerable, Rivers impassible, Rocks inaccessible, and such as no shot of arrow could ever reach; accompanied alwaies with prudent counsel, constant patience, resolute valour, and staid temperance. And verily I am persuaded, that himself would say unto Fortune, challenging unto herself the honour of his haughty and worthy acts, in this manner. Come not here either to deprave my virtue, or to deprive me of my due honour, in ascribing it unto thy self. *Darius* was indeed a piece of work made by thee, whom of a base servitor, no better than a Currier or a Lackey to a King, thou diddest advance and make the Lord of the Persians. *Sardanapalus* likewise was thy handy-work, upon whose head, when he was cading and spinning fine purple wooll among women, thou diddest set the Imperial Diadem. As for me, I mounted up and ascended as far as to *Susa* with Victory after the Battel at *Arbella*. The conquest of *Cilicia* made the way open for me to enter into *Egypt*; and the field that I won at the river *Granicus*; which I passed over going upon the dead bodies of *Mitridates* and *Spithridates* Lieutenants to the King of *Persia*, gave me entrance into *Cilicia*. Vaunt now and boast as much as thou wilt of those Kings, who never were wounded in Fight, nor lost one drop of their blood. These I say may well be counted fortunate and thy darlings, *Oebus* I mean and *Artaxerxes*, whom immediately from the very day of their nativity, thou hast entailed in the Royal Throne of *Cyprus*. But this body of mine carries the marks and tokens of fortune not favourable and gracious, but contrariwise adverse and opposite unto me. First in *Ilyricum*, I had my head broken with a great stone, and my neck bruised and crushed with a pestil. Afterwards in the journey and Battel of *Granicus*, my head was cloven with a Barbarians Cimeter. At the field fought near *Istus*, my thigh was run through with a sword: before the City of *Gaza*, I was shot through the ancle above my foot with one arrow, and into the shoulder with another, whereupon I was wounded, and falling heavy in mine armour out of my saddle, I lay there for dead upon the ground. Among the Maracadarts, my shin bone was cut in sunder with shot of quarels and arrows. Besides many a knock and wound which I gat among the Indians; and every where I met with hot service against them, until I was shot quite through the shoulder. Another time as I fought against the *Gandridæ* I had the bone of my leg cut in twain; with another shot likewise in a skirmish with the *Mallores*, I caught an arrow in my breast and bosome, which went so far, and stuck so fast, that it left the head behind: and with the rap and knock of an iron pestill my neck bone was crushed. And at what time as the scaling ladders reared against the wals brake, fortune enclosed and shut me up alone to fight and maintain combat, not against noble concurrents and renowned enemies, but obscure and simple Barbarous Souldiers, gracing and gratifying them thus far forth, as they went with in a little of taking away my life: And had not *Ptolomeus* come between and covered me with his Targuet; had not *Limeus* in defence of me opposed his own body and received many a thousand darts, and there lost his life in the place for me; had not I say the Macedonians by force of armes and resolute courage broken down the wall and laid it along, Certes that base village, that Barbarous burrow of no name, had been at this day the sepulcher of *Alexander*. Furthermore, all that journey and expedition of mine, what was it else but tempestuous stormes, extreame heat and drought, rivers of an infinite depth, mountains so exceeding high, as no bird could flie over them, monstrous beasts and so huge withal, as they were hideous and terrible to be seen, strange and savage fashions of life, revolts of disloyal States and Governours, yea and afterwards their open treasons and rebellions? And as for that which went before his voyage: all *Greece* panting still and trembling for remembrance of the Wars which they endured under his father *Philip*, now put up their head. The City of *Athens* now shaking off from their armour the dust of the Battel at *Cheronea*, began to rise again and recover themselves after that overthrow. To it joynd *Thebes* and put forth their helping hand. All *Macedonia* was suspected, and stood in doubtful termes, as inclining to *Amyntas* and the children of *Erasmus*. The *Illyrians* brake out into open Wars and made hostile invasions. The *Scythians* hung in equal ballance uncertain which side to take, expecting what their neighbours would do, that began to stir and revolt. Besides the good gold of *Persia* which had found the way into the purses of *Orators* and Governours of every City, made all *Poloponnesus* to rise in armes. The coffers of *Philip* his father were empty and had no treasure in them: but instead thereof they were indebted and paid interest as *Orestinus* writeth for \* two hundred talents. In these great wants, in such poverty and so troubled a State, see a young man newly come out of his infancy and childhood, durst hope and assuredly look, for to be Lord of *Babylon* and *Susa*: nay to speak more truly in a word, he intended in his designement the conquest of the whole World; and that with a power only of thirty thousand footmen, and four thousand horse: for no greater forces brought he into the field, as *Aristobolus* reporteth: or according as King *Ptolomeus* writeth, they were thirty thousand foot, and five thousand men of armes: or as *Arrianus* writeth it down, his Army amounted to forty thousand three hundred footmen, and five thousand five hundred horsemen. Now all the glorious means and great provision for the maintenance and entertainment of this power more or lesse, which fortune had prepared for him, came to seventy talents: as *Aristobolus* hath set it down in writing, or as *Duris* recordeth, he was furnished with money and victuals to serve for thirty daies and no longer. How then? was *Alexander* so inconsiderate, rash and void of counsel, as so enterprife War with so small means, against so puissant an Army of the Persians? No I wis: for never was there Captain, that went forth to War better appointed and with greater and more sufficient helps than he, to wit, magnanimity, prudence, temperance, and fortitude, wherewith Philosophy had furnished him, as with munition for his voyage: as being better provided for this enterprife against the Persians, by that which he had learned of his Master and Teacher *Aristotle*, than

\* That is to say, 120000 French crowns.

all patrimony and revenues which his father *Philip* had left him. Well, to believe those who write, *Alexander* himself would otherwhils say, that the *Ilias* and *Odyssæa* of *Homer* accompanied him as his voyage. provision to the Wars, may be easily ended, for the reverence and honour which we owe unto *Homer*: but if a man should say, that *Homer's Ilias* and *Odyssæa*, were unto him an ornament of his travels, or an honest pastime and recreation at his leisure, and that the true institution of his voyage, provision indeed for the maintenance of his Wars, were the discourses and precepts which he had learned out of Philosophy, and the treatises or commentaries as touching confidence and resolution: of prowesse, valour, magnanimity and temperance, we are ready to mock and deride him: and why? because forsooth he hath written nothing of Syllogismes, of Axiomes, or of Elements and principles of Geometry; because he hath not used to walk in the School of *Lyceum*, nor positions and disputed of questions in the Academy: for these be the things whereby they measure the true Philosophy, who think that it consisteth in words and not in deeds. And yet *Pythagoras* himself taught, nor *Socrates*, nor *Arceslaus*, nor *Carnades*: who all, in deeds, were molt renowned Philosophers: neither were they employed and occupied in so great Wars, in reducing Barbarous Nations to civility, or in founding and building great Cities, among savage Nations; neither travell'd they through the world visiting lawlesse and cruel people, to teach them to live peaceably and in order, nor had never heard of peace or of laws: but these great and famous personages, for all the leisure and rest that they had from employments and buisness affairs, left all writing for Sophisters only: How can it then be, that they were reputed Philosophers? Surely it arose either upon their sayings which they delivered, or the manner of life that they led, and the actions which they did, or else the doctrine which they taught. Let us now therefore judge of *Alexander* also accordingly, by the same: for it will be found and seen by the words which he said, the deeds that he wrought, and the lessons which he taught, that he was some great Philosopher: and in the first place, if you think good, consider (which at first sight may seem most strange and wonderful) what disciples *Alexander* had and compare them with the scholars of *Plato* or of *Socrates*. These men taught those, who were of quick wit, and spake the same language that they did; and if they had nothing else, yet understood they at leastwise the Greek tongue: howbeit for all this, many of their auditors and disciples there were whom they could never persuade to their rules and precepts: but such as *Critias*, *Alcibiades*, *Cyriphobus*, rejected and shook off all their doctrine, as the bit of a bridle, and turned another way. Whereas, if you mark and consider the discipline of *Alexander*, you shall finde, that he taught the *Hyracians* to contract Marriage and live in Wedlock; the *Arachosians* to Till the ground and follow husbandry; the *Sogdians* he perswaded to nourish their aged Fathers, and not to kill them; the *Persians* to reverence and honour their Mothers, and not to Marry them as they did before. O the admirable Philosophy of their Prince! By means whereof, the Indians adore and worship the gods of *Greece*: the *Scythians* bury their dead and eat them up. We wonder at the powerful and effectual speech of *Carnades*, for that he knew how to make *Cilicianus*, named before *Adribal*, and a *Carthaginian* born, to conform himself to the Greeks fashion and language. We admire the emphatical gift of *Zeno*, who was able to perswade *Diogenes* the *Babylonian*, to give himself to the study of Philosophy. But while *Alexander* conquered *Athens*, and reduced it to civility, *Homer* was read ordinarily: the sons of the Persians, Sufians, and Gedrosians, chanted the Tragedies of *Euripides* and *Sophocles*. As for *Socrates*, condemned he was and put to death by the Athenians, at the sure of lycophants and promoters, who entorned against him, that he had brought into *Athens* new gods: whereas by the means of *Alexander*, the inhabitants of *Badra* and the Mountain *Caucasus*, even at this present, adore the gods of *Greece*. *Plato* hath left in writing one form of Policy and Government of Common wealth, but he could never perswade so much as one man to use and follow it, so harsh and austere it was found to be: But *Alexander* having founded above threecore and ten Cities among the barbarous Nations, and sowed throughout all *Asia*, the mystery of sacrifices, and ceremonies of Divine service which were used in *Greece*, reclaimed them from their savage and brutish life. And verily, few there be among us, who read and peruse the laws of *Plato*: whereas there be infinite thousands and millions of men, who have used, and do at this day practice: those of *Alexander* ordaining: and such Nations were much more happy whom he conquered and subdued, than they that escaped his puissance. For these had never any person who eased and delivered them out of their miserable life, but the other were forced by the conquerour to lead a blissful life: in such sort, at that which *Theophrastus* sometime said, when being banished out of *Athens*, and fled to the King of *Persia*, at whose hands having received rich gift, and the donation besides of three Cities which paid him yearly tribute, one for bread, another for wine, and the third for his meat and other viands; he spake thus unto his sons: Oh, how had we been undone, if we had not been undone! The fame may more fully be verified of those who were then subdued by *Alexander*: Never had they been civilized, if by him they had not been vanquished and brought under his subjection: there had been no City *Alexandria* built in *Egypt*; no *Seleucia* in *Mesopotamia*; no *Prophetasia* in the *Sogdians* Countrey; no *Bucephalia* among the Indians; neither should the mountain *Caucasus* have had near unto it the City *Hellas*, inhabited and peopled: by the means of which Cities, their rude bestiality being first staid and held under, by little and little was extinct, and by custom of the better, changed the worse. To conclude therefore, if Philosophers stand most upon this point, and bear themselves aloft, for that they are able to dulce and reform rude manners, and not polished before by any doctrine. And if it be seen that *Alexander* hath altered and brought into order an infinite number of wilde Nations, and brutish natures, good reason there is, that he should be esteemed an excellent Philosopher.

Moreover,

Moreover, that Policy and form of Government so highly esteemed, which Zeno the first founder of the Stoicks first devised, tendeth to this one principal point, that we who are men, should not live divided by Cities, Towns and divers Countries, separated by distinct Laws, Rights, and Customs in several, but think all men our fellow-Citizens, and of the same Country: also that there ought to be but one kind of life, like as there is but one World, as if we were all of the same flock under one herdsman, feeding in a common pasture. Zeno hath set this down in writings, as a very dream and imaginary Idea, of a Common-wealth well-governed by Philosophical laws; but Alexander hath put that in real execution and practice, which the other had figured and drawn out in words: for he did not as his Master Aristotle gave him counsel to do: namely, to carry himself towards the Greeks as a father; and towards the Barbarians as a Lord: likewise, to have regard and care of some, as of his friends and kindred; but to make use of others, as if they were brute beasts or plants, and no better: for in so doing he should have pestered his Dominions and Empire with banishments; which are evermore the seed of War, of Factions and seditious most dangerous: but taking himself to be sent down from Heaven, as a common reformer, reconciler, and governour of the whole World; such as he could not draw to accord and agreement, by reason and speech, he compelled by force of armes, and so from every side reduced all into one; causing them to drink round (as one would say) of one and the same cup of amity and good fellowship, wherein he tempered and mixed together their lives and manners, their marriages and fashions of life, commanding all men living to think the whole Earth habitable, to be their Country: his Camp their Citadel and Castle of defence; all good men to be their kindred and allies; all lewd persons, strangers and aliens. He commanded them moreover, to distinguish Greeks and Barbarians, not by their Mantle, round Targuet, Cimeter, Turbants, or high-crown'd Chapelets; but to mark and discern by virtue of *Barbary* by vice: In reputed all virtuous folk Greeks; and all vicious persons Barbarians: to think also their habiliments and apparel common, their tables common, their marriages besides and manner of life common, as being united all, by the mixture of blood and communion of children. Demetrius verily the Corinthian, one of the friends that used to give entertainment to King Philip, when he saw Alexander in the City of *Susa*, greatly rejoiced thereat, in so much as for very joy of heart, the tears ran down his cheeks, and he brake forth into these words: That the Greeks before departed out of this life, were deprived of exceeding contentment, and hearty delights; in that they had not seen Alexander sitting upon the regal Throne of *Darius*. For mine own part verily, I would not repute them very happy, for seeing such a sight as that, considering it is the gift of Fortune, and as much as that befalleth ordinarily to meaner Kings; but I assure you, much pleasure could have taken, if I had beheld those goodly and fiered espousals, when under the roof of one Pavilion, seated all over, and wrought with Gold, he entertained at once, all at one common Feast and Table, a hundred Persian Brides, married to an hundred Bridgemen of *Greece* and *Macedonie*: at which solemnity himself being Crowned with a Chaplet of flowers, was the first that began to sing the Nuptial song Hymenaeus, as a canticle of general amity, when two of the greatest and most puissant Nations of the World came to be joynd in alliance together by Marriage, being himself spouse unto one, but the maker of all their Marriages, yea, and common father and mediator to them all, being the means of that knot and conjunction. For willingly I would have said; O barbarous, senselesse and blockish *Xerxes*, that tookst so great paines, and all to no purpose, about making a Bridge over *Hellepont*. For after this manner should wife Kings and prudent Princes, conjoin *Europe* and *Asia* together, not with wood and timber; not with boats and barges, nor with those linkes and bonds which have neither life nor mutuall affection; but by lawfull love, by chaste and honest wedlock, by communication also of children, to unite and associate two Nations together. To this comely ornament Alexander had an eye, when he would not admit the habiliments and robes of the Medes, but the attire and apparel of the Persians, as being far more bold, modest and decent than the other: for rejecting and casting aside that outlandish, unusefull pompous and tragical exorbit in the barbarous habit, to wit, the copped Turbant, Tiara, the fide and superfluous purple mantle Candies, their wide breeches and slack sloppes Anaxyrides; he wore himself a certain kinde of robe, composed partly of the Macedonian, and in part of the Persian habit, according as *Eratosthenes* hath written. As a Philosopher he made use of things indifferent, neither good simply, nor ill; and as a gracious Ruler and courteous King, he won the love and heart of those whom he had subdued, by gracing and honouring upon his own person their apparel: to the end that they should continue fast unto him, and firm in loyalty; loving the Macedonians as their natural Lords, and not hating them, as tyrannizing enemies. For it would have bewraied a foolish mind, and withall disdainful and proud, to have made great account of a self-coloured homely mantle, and withall, to have taken offence as a rich coat, embroidered all over with purple; or contrariwise, to have had this in admiration, and the other in contempt; like unto some infant or little child, keeping still precisely to that apparel, which the custome of the Countrey as a Nurse or Foster mother hath once put on: whereas we see, that husfmen who use to chase Deere, are wont to clad themselves with skines and hides of those wilde beasts which they have taken; as for example, of Staggs and Hindes: Foulers also, that lie for to catch Birds, cast upon themselves, garbancies, and coats of featherwork, or belee with wings and feathers. Those who wear red clothes, beware how they come in the way of Bulls: and such as be clothed in white, are as careful not to be seen of Elephants for that these beasts fare as though they were wood and mad at the sight of such colours. Now if so great a King as Alexander was, minding to tame warlike Nations, like unto wilde beasts, or to dulce and

and keep them gentle, who were so fierce and untractable, used those Rybes and Habiliments which were proper, usual and familiar to them; and all to gain their hearts by little & little, mollifying by that mean the fierceness of their courages, pacifying their displeasures, and dispelling their grimaces and audacities: Would any man blame or reprove, and no rather honor and admire his Politick wisdom, therein with a little change and altering of his garments, he had the dexterity and skill to gain all *Asia*, which he did, making himself, thus by his Armour, Master and Lord of their bodies; and by this apparell alluring and winning their hearts. And yet these men commend *Aristippus* the Philosopher, and Disciple of *Socrates* for that one while wearing a poor, thin and shredbare cloak, and another while putting on a rich mantel of Tissue wrought and died at *Miletus*, he knew how to keep decorum, and decently to behave himself; as well in the one garments as the other: mean while, they blame and condemn Alexander, in that as he honored the habit of his own Countrey, so he disdaind the apparell of another, which he had conquered by Arms, intending thereby to lay the groundwork and foundation of greater matters: for his design and purpose was not to over-run and waste *Asia*, as a Captain and Ring-leader of a Rable of Thieves, and Robbers would do, nor to sack and rack, harry and worry it, as the prey and booty of unexpected and unhoped for felicity; like as afterwards *Annibal* did by *Italy*; and before time, the *Trierians* dealt by *Ionie*; and the *Scythians* by *Asia*, who made havock and waste as they went: but as one, who meant to range all the Nations upon earth, under the obedience of one and the same reason, and to reduce all men to the same policy, as Citizens under Government of a Common-weal, therefore thus he composed and transformed himself in his aspect and habit. And if that great God, who sent the soul of Alexander from heaven to earth below, had not so suddenly called it away again unto himself; peradventure there had been but one Law to rule and overlook all men living, the whole world haply had been governed by one and the same justice, as a common light to illustrate all places: whereas now, those parts of the earth, which never had a sight of Alexander, remain in the shadow of darkness, as destitute of the very light of the Sun: and therefore the very first project of his expedition and voyage sheweth, that he carried the minde of a true Philosopher indeed, who aimed not at the gaining for himself dainty delights, and costly pleasures, but intended to procure and compass an universal peace, concord, unity and society of all men living one with another.

In the second place consider we his words and sentences; for that in other Kings and Potentates also, their manners and intentions of their minde, are principally betrayed by their speeches. Antigone the elder, when a certain Sophist upon a time presented and pronounced unto him certain Commentaries and Treatises which he had composed as touching Justice: Good fellow (quoth he) thou art a fool, to preach unto me of Justice, when thou seest me bending mine ordinance against the Cities of other Princes, and battering their walls as I do. Dions also the Tyrant was wont to say, that we should deceive children with Dics and Cockal-bones, but beguile men with oaths: And upon the Tomb of *Sardanapalus* was engraven this Epitaph:

What I did eat and drink, I have:  
The spots also remain  
Which Lady Venus did vouchsafe,  
all else I count but vain.

Who can deny, but that by the last of those speeches and apophthegms, sensual lust and voluptuousness was authorized; by the second, Atheism and impiety; and by the first, Injustice and Avarice? Now if you take away from the sayings of Alexander his Royal Crown and Diadem, the addition of *Jupiter Ammon* whose son he was stiled to be, and the Nobility of his birth, certes you would say they were the sage sentences of *Socrates*, *Plato*, or *Pythagoras*. For we must not stand upon the brave titles and proud inscriptions which Poets have devised to be imprinted or engraven upon his Pictures, Images and Statues, having an eye and regard not to shew the modesty, but to magnifie the puissance of Alexander: as for example;

This Image here that stands in brass so bright,  
Of Alexander is the Portraict right:  
Up toward heaven be both his eyes doth cast,  
And unto love seems that to speak at last:  
Mine is the earth, by conquest I it hold:  
Thou Jupiter in heaven maist be bold.

And another:

Of Jupiter that heavenly God of might,  
The son am I (Great Alexander might.)

These were the glorious Titles which glavering Poets, I say, in flattery of his fortune fattered upon him. But if a man would recount the true apophthegms indeed of Alexander, he may do well to begin first at those which he delivered in his childhood: for being in footmanship the swiftest of all other young lads of his age, when his familiar play-felers and mates were in hand with him very earnestly to run a course at the Olympian Games for a prize, he demanded of them again, whether he should meet with Kings there for his concurrents in the race; and when they answered, No: Then were the match (quoth he) not equally nor indifferently made, wherein if I have the worse, a King shall be foiled; and if I gain the victory, I shall but conquer private persons. When his father Philip chanced in a battel against the Triballians to be run thorow the thigh with a Lance; and albeit,

SSSS

that

that he escaped danger of death, yet was much grievously and dismayed, so limp and halt, shewn as he did: Be of good heart, good father (quoth he) will go abroad boldly in the sight of the whole world, that at every step you tread and shew forward, you may be put in mind of your valour and virtue. How say you now, proceed not these words from a Philosopher's mind? and how they then are an heart, which being revivified with a divine instinct and ardour love of good and honest things, search not for the defects of the body? For how greatly, think you joyous and gloried he in the wounds that he received in his own person, who in every of them bore the testimony and memorial of some Nation subdued, some Battle won, of some Cities forced by assault, or of some kingdoms that yielded to his merciful Conqueror, he never took care to cover and hide his scars, but carried them about him, and shewed them wherever he went, as so many marks and tokens engraved, to testify his virtue and prowess. And if at any time there grew some comparison, either by way of serious disputation in points of learning, or in table talk, at touching the verses of *Homer*, which of them were best: when some seemed to commend this verse, others that, he would evermore prefer this, above all other:

Ἄμφοτερον, βασιλεύς τ' ἀγαθός, καὶ πόλις τ' ἀρχαία.

A Prince right good, and gracious,

A Knight withal most valourous,

as making this account, that the traffic which another had given to King *Agamemnon* beforetime, flood for a Law unto himself; in which, as he would say, this *Howler* in that one verte had recommended the virtue of *Agamemnon*, and prophesied the prowess of *Alexander*. And therefore, so often as he passed over the Straights of *Hellspont*, his manner was to go and visit *Troy*, where the reprinted unto his own minde, the worthy feats of *Arms* which shone brave *Princes* and noble *Worthies* performed, who fought there. And when one of that Country promised to bestow upon him in free gift, if he would accept it, the *Harp of Paris*: I have no need (quoth he) of it, for I have already, that of *Achilles*: to the sound whereof he was wont for his recreation,

The praises for to sing and chant,

Of dourty Knights and valiant :

whereas this here of Paris, warbled a wanton and feminine harmony, to which he used to sing Sonnets and Balads of love.

Now most certain it is, that to love wisdom, and to have in esteem, Sages and Learned persons, is an infallible sign of a Philosophical spirit. And this was in *Alexander*, if ever in any other Prince: for what kindnesses and affection he carried to his Tutor and Master, *Aristotle*; also, that he did as great honor unto *Anaxarchus* the skilful Musician, as to no favorite and familiar friend the like; I have already shewed elsewhere. The first time that ever *Eyrho* the Elian talked and conferred with him, he gave unto the man ten thousand pieces of gold. *Unto Xenocrates* one of *Plato's* Disciples, he sent a present of fifty talents. And as most Historiographers do report, he made *Onesicritus*, one of *Diogenes* his Scholars, his Admiral at Sea. And himself meeting upon a time with *Diogenes* as *Corinth*, where he communed with him, he wondered at his manner of life, and had his gravity in such admiration, that many a time after, in speaking of him, he would say, Were I not *Alexander*, I would be *Diogenes*: which was as much to say as thus, I could willingly employ my whole life, and spend my time at my Book and in Contemplation, but that I am determined to be a Philosopher in deed and action. He said not, If I were not a King, I could finde in my heart to be *Diogenes*: nor, If I were not rich, and one that loved to go gay and in sumptuous Robes, &c. For he never in his life preferred Fortune before Wisdom; nor the Purple Mantle of Estate, or the Royal Diadem, before a Scrip, and a poor threadbare Philosophers Cloak; but simply this was his saying, Were I not *Alexander*, I would be *Diogenes*; that is to say, Had I not persuaded to my self to join together in mutual society, Barbarous Nations with the Greeks, and by travelling in voyage thorow the earth, to pollish and make civil what savage people soever I finde, searching from one end of the world to another, and visiting all the coasts of the Sea, to join *Macedonia* unto the Ocean, to fow, as it were, Greece in all parts, and to spread thoroughout all Nations peace and justice, yet would I not sit still idle in delights, and take my pleasure, but imitate the simplicity and frugality of *Diogenes*. But now pardon me, I pray thee, *O Diogenes*: I follow *Hercules*, I take the way of *Perseus*, I tread the trace of good *Bacchus*, my Stock-father and Author of my Race and Progeny; I would gladly, that the Greeks might once more dance with Victory among the Indians, and reduce into the memory and remembrance of those Mountainers and Savage Nations who dwell beyond the Mountain *Caucasus*, the jollie feasts and merriments of the *Bacchanals*. And even there, by report, there be those who follow a certain strict austere and naked profession of wisdom, called thereupon *Gymnosophists*, holy men, living according to their own Laws, devoted altogether to a contemplative service of God, making less account of this world than *Diogenes* doth, and living more barely, as having no need at all of bag and wallet; for, no provision make they of victuals, because the earth furnisheth them always with that which is new and fresh to their hand: the Rivers afford them drink; the leaves falling from trees, and the green grass of the earth together, serve for their beds: by my means hath they know *Diogenes*, and *Diogenes* them. I must also alter the stamp of the coin, and instead of a Barbarian mark, sign is after the Greek manner, and according to their Commonwealth. Well, thus much of his words and sayings: Come we now to his deeds. And do they seem to carry before them the blinde rashness and temerity of Fortune, and bare force of arms and violences of the hand? or rather, of the one side, great prowess and justice; on the other side, much clemency and lenity, together with good order and rare prudence,

prudence, of one managing all things by folly, discreet and confederate judgement? Ceres, I am not able to fay and discern in all his acts thus much, as to pronounce, That this was a deed of valour; that, of humanity; and another, of patience or continence: but every exploit of his, seemeth to have been mingled and compounded of all vertues in one, to confirm the famous sentence and opinion of the Stoicks, That every act, a wise man doth effect by all vertues joyntly together. True it is indeed, that in each action there is one vertue or other, eminent and predominant above all others; but the fame inciteth and directeth the rest to the same end: and even so we may see in the acts of *Alexander*, That as his martial valour is humane, so his humanity is valorous; his bounty is thrifty, his liberality frugal; his cholour soon appeased, his heat quickly cold; his loves temperate, his passions not idle; and his travels not without their solace and recreation; who, evermore tempered feasts with war, military expeditions with games, masks and sports; who interlaced among his fignes of Cities, Warlike exploits and executions; festival Bacchanals, Wedding and Nuptial Songs of *Hymeneus*. Who was there ever, greater enemy to those that do wrong, or more merciful and gracious to the afflicted? Who ever carried himself more heavy to stiff-necked and obdurate persons; and more friendly again; to humble Suppliants? And here in this place it comes into my minde, for to allege and cite the saying of King *Porus*, who being brought Prisoner before King *Alexander*, and demanded by him, in what manner he wished that he should use him: Royally (quoth he) O *Alexander*. And when *Alexander* replied again, and asked what he had else to say, Nothing, quoth *Porus*; for in that one word, *Royally*, is comprized all. And even so, methinks, that in all the actions of *Alexander*, a man may use this for a reffrein or furburden, All Philosophically. For this indeed containeth all. He was enamored of *Roxane*, the daughter of *Oxiathres*; by occasion that he saw her to dance with a good grace among other captive Ladies: howbeit, he would not force her, nor offer any violence to her dishonour; but espoused her for his wife: wherein he did as a Philosopher. When he saw his enemy *Darius* lying dead, with many an arrow and dart sticking in his body, he neither sacrificed to the gods, nor sounded the triumph for joy, that so long a war by his death was come to an end; but taking the mantle from his own shoulders, cast it over the dead corps, as if he would thereby have covered and hid the wofull destiny of a King. And this also was done like a Philosopher. He received one day a Letter of Secrets from his own Mother, which while he perused, it chanced that *Hephestion* also sitting at that time by him, read it simply together with him, and thought nothing, *Alexander* debarred him not; only he took the signet from his own finger, fer it to his mouth, sealing, as it were, his silence, by the faith that he owed unto a friend. See how herein he flewed the part of a Philosopher: for if these be not Philosophical acts, I know not what else be. *Socrates* was well enough content, that fair *Alcibiades* should lie with him; but *Alexander*, when *Philoxenus* his Lieutenant General over the Sea coasts of *Asia*, wrote unto him, that there was a young Boy within his Government in *Ionia*, for sweet favour and beauty incomparable, demanding of him by his Letters to know his pleasure, whether he should send the said Youth unto him, he wrote sharply unto him, in this wise: What hast thou known by me, most leud and wicked Varlet as thou art, that thou shouldst preface thus to allure and entice me with such pleasures? *Xenocrates* we have in admiration, for turning back a present of fifty talents, which *Alexander* sent unto him; and shall we not wonder as well at the give? Shall we not think, that he made as small account of money, who gave so liberally, as he who refused it? *Xenocrates* had no need of riches, professing as he did Philosophy; but *Alexander* had use therefore, even in regard of Philosophy, because he might exercise his liberality in bestowing the same so bountifully upon such persons. We honor the remembrance of those, who have left behind them testimonies of their contempt of death: and how often, think you, hath *Alexander* delivered as much, when he saw the darts and arrows flying to thick about his ears, and himself preffed hard upon by the violence of enemies? We are perwaded verily, that there is in all men whatsoever, some light of good judgement; for that nature herself frameth them to discern that which is good and honest: but a difference there is between the common sort and Philosophers, for that Philosophers excel the rest in this, that their judgements be more firm, settled and resolute in dangers than others; whereas the vulgar sort are not armed and fortified beforehand with such deep impressions and resolutions as these.

ET; འཁོར་འཁོར་, &c.

The best presage by augury and bird-flight,

15, in defence of Countrey for to fight.

## Again

*This full account all men must make,*

death one day their end to take.

But the occurrences and occasions of perils presented unto them, do break their discourse of reason; and the imaginations of dangers imminent, do drive out all counsel and confiderate judgement. For fear doth not onely mask and astonish the memory, as *Thucydides* saith, but also driveth out every good intention, all motions and endeavors of well doing; whereas Philosophy bindeth them fast with cords round about, that they cannot stir.

\* The end  
of this  
Treatise is  
lost.

## Of the Fortune or Vertue of King Alexander.

## The second Oration.

## The Summary.

**P**lutarch doth prosecute in this Declaration, the Argument and Discourse begun in the former: the sum whereof is this, That the Vertue of Alexander surmounted his Fortune, which was always in manner contrary unto him. But before that he entreib into this matter, he opposeth unto the sufficiency and singular parts of this Prince, the base demeanor and brutish wilany of certain other Kings and Potentates, adjoining over and besides thus much, That all his exercises and employments, are proofs every one of his dauntly courage and magnanimity. Then discourseth he particularly, in what account and reputation good Workmen were with Alexander, and what his self-conceit was of his own works in comparison of theirs. Afterwards, he cometh to shew, that if Alexander be considered from his very first beginning to his last end, he will be found, to be the very handy-work of Valor and Fortitude. In proceeding forward, he saith, That fortune received more honor by Alexander than he by Her. The which is verified by considering the state of his Army, after his death. Upon this, he entreib into a Common-place of mans greatness, which serveth to clear and illustrate the former points and matters handled. And by the consideration of the evil carriage and government of many other Princes, as by a foil, he giveth a most beautiful lustre unto the Vertues of Alexander, which he doth perspire in particular. This done, he answereth those, who object that Fortune raised Alexander to that greatness. And to give the mightier force and weight to the reasons by him produced, he disputeth against Fortune her self: wherein he examineth his several exploits, wherein as Vertue is evidently seen to accompany and assist, so Fortune to oppose her self and resist him. And this doth be particularize at large. After this Digression he cometh again to his precedent matter, and bringeth out new proofs of the vertue and magnanimity of this mighty Monarch, even from his youth unto his dying day; comparing him as a Paragon, with the swift Sages, and most valiant Warriors both of Persia and of Greece; Shewing also, that he surpasseth them all, in Continency, Liberality, Piety, Prudence, Justice, Benificence and Valor. For the last point, he relateth the great jeopardy wherein Alexander was plunged one time among the rest, out of which, Vertue caused him to retire safe, as it were in despite of Fortune; which is the very conclusion of this Treatise, confirming the principal intention of our Authors, which is to prove that the foresaid Grandeur of Alexander ought not to be ascribed unto Fortune, but to Vertue.

## The Fortune or Vertue of King Alexander.

## The second Oration.

**W**E forgot yesterday (as it should seem) among other matters to say, that the age wherein Alexander lived was in this respect happy, for that it brought forth many excellent Arts, and as many great and singular wits: or rather it may be said, that this was not so much the good fortune of Alexander, as of those Cunning Artificians and rare Spirits, to have for their Witness and Spectator such a personage, who both knew best how to judge truly of good workmanship, and also was most able to reward the same as liberally. And verily to this purpose reported it is, that sometime after, in the age ensuing, when *Archestratus* a fine headed Poet and a pleasant, lived in great want and penury, for that no man made any reckoning of him to his desert, there came one unto him, and said, Had it been thy hap *Archestratus*, to have lived in the days of Alexander, he would for every verse of thine, have bestowed upon thee either *Cyprus* or *Phoenice*. Certes, for mine own part, thus I conceive of it, that the Artificers and Workmen living in that age, became so famous and excellent, not so much under Alexander, as by Alexander. For it is the good temperature of the weather, and subtilty of the ambient ayre, that causeth abundance and plenty of fruits: but the gracious countenance, the favor, honor, bounty and humanity of a Prince, is it that provoketh and fireth up good Arts, yea, and advanceth excellent wits: whereas contrariwise all the same languisheth, decayeth, is extinguished and periseth clean by the envy, avarice, spary pinching, and peevish forwardness of Rulers, and those in Authority. And here I must call to minde the report that goeth of *Dionysius* the Tyrant, who hearing one day a famous Minstrel playing pasing well upon the Lute, and as sweetly singing thereto, said openly, that he would bestow upon him for a reward a talent of silver. The morrow after comes this Musician to call for the money according to promise: Unto whom

*Dionysius*

*Dionysius* made this answer, *Sirra* (quoth he) yesterday as I took contentment by thee so long as I heard thee play and sing: & I am sure I did thee a pleasure again in the hope of this promise: Thou were payed theretore presently for the delight which thou gavest me, by the joy that thou receivdest from me: go thy ways therefore, thou hast thy reward already. Alexander, the Tyrant of *Phera* (whom indeed I should call by this addition only, *Tyrant*, and not *Asian* and contaminare fo good a name at Alexander, by filling therewith so wicked a wretch :) This Tyrant, I say, whiles he beheld one day an excellent Player sating in a Tragedy, was so much moved with a certain tickling delight coming upon him, that his heart began to relent even upon a tender commiseration and pity: whereupon he suddenly left the Theater, made haste away, and went faster than an ordinary pace until he was out of sight, saying wretchedly, that it were a great indignity for him to be seen for to weep and shed tears, in compassion of the miseries and calamities of *Queen Hecuba*, or *Lady Polyxena*, who every day caused so many Citizens and Subjects throats to be cut. This monstrous Tyrant was so mischievously bent, that he went within a litle of punishing that excellent Actor most grievously, because he had mollified his hard heart, and made it melt like a piece of iron in the furnace. *Archelaus* King of *Macedonie*, seemed to be not very free of gift, whereupon *Timotheus* the Musician singing to the Harp, would oftentimes glance at him, and iterate this pretty scoff as the foot of his Song:

*This earth-bred metals, silver bright*

*Thou art praise Sir, as your whole delight.*

But *Archelaus* met with him *ex tempore* again, and replied not unwittingly, in this wise,

*And thou as faine wouldst silver have;*

*And dost as shamelessly in crave.*

\* *Anst.*

\* *Anst.*

As for a King of the *Scythians*, having taken prisoner in war, that famous Minstrel *Ismenias*, commanded him to sound upon his Flute or Pipe, whiles he sat at dinner. Now when all the company besides wondered at his excellent musick, and applauded him for his good playing, he himself ware a great oath, that he took more pleasure to hear his horse neigh, so unmusical were his ears, and so far removed from the Muses: so much also was his minde set upon the stable and manger, fitter indeed to hear Asses bray, than Horses neigh. What honor then or advancement may a cunning Artizan, or so absolute a Master in musick hope for at the hands of such Kings? Certes no more than from those who would seem themselves to be skillful, yea, and dare contend with Professors in the sufficiency of their Arts; and therefore upon envy or malice seek to overthrow and deprave those that indeed be excellent Artists. Such an *Ugly* was *Dionysius* above-named (whom here I must bring in again) who caused the Poet *Philostratus* to be cast into the Prison or Dungeon called *Latomie*, that is to say, the Quarries, because when *Dionysius* had put into his hands a Tragedy of his own making, commanding him to review and correct the same, he dashed it out and interlined it all from the beginning to the end. And even *Philip* also King of *Macedonie*, for that late it was ere he gave his minde to musick, was in this behalf unlike himself, and not answerable to his greatness otherwise. Howbeit, upon an opinion that he had of his own skill that way, he would needs (as the report goeth) enter into disputation with a professed Musician and Player of Instruments, and argue about the strokes and stops, points and notes, and such like terms, yea, and seem forthwith to control him in his own Arts; whereat the Minstrel smiling pleasantly upon him: God forbid *Sir* (quoth he) that you a King, should ever be so unfortunate, and at so low an ebb, as to have more skill in these matters than I. But Alexander knowing full well what things he should be a Spectator and Auditor of, as also what he ought himself to practise and execute with his own hand, studied continually to be expert and accomplished in feats of Arms, endeavoring, as the Poet *Æchylus* saith,

*Most manfully his standings good to make:*

*And terribly to force his foes to quake.*

And this indeed was the Hereditary Art which he received by succession from his Ancestors *Æacides*, and *Hercules*: as for other Sciences, he honored them in other men, without any emulation at all for their profession: and as he highly commended any excellency or grace therein, so for no pleasure and delight that he took thereby, was he easily surprized with any affection for to follow the same. In his time there flourished two noble Tragedians above the rest, *Thespis* and *Athenodorus*; who when they contended one against another for the prize, who could act the better, the Kings of *Cyprus* decayed the charges belonging to this solemn spectacle and pageant; but the principal and most renowned Captains were Judges to decide the quarrel. In the end, when *Athenodorus* was declared Victor; Alexander, who stood better affected to *Thespis*: I would I had (quoth he) lost the one half of my Kingdom, so I had not seen *Thespis* take the foil; howbeit, he neither expostulated with the Umpires, nor complained of their judgements; for howsoever he thought that himself ought in other respects to outgo all, yet he was to yield and give place to Justice. Among Comedians in those days, there was one *Lycan* a Scaphean: This Actor in playing his part before him in a Comedy, had interlaced handsomely a Verse, wherein he seemed cleanly to crave some reward: Alexander laughed at the conceit of the fellow, and gave him ten Tallents. Many excellent Harpers there were, and Players of the Lute, and one *Arion* among others, who in a certain battel running in to rescue and succor him, fought manfully, and there was slain, and fell dead at his foot: Alexander hereupon caused his Statue to be made in brass, and to be set up in the Temple of *Apollo Pythius*, holding a Lute in the one hand, and a Lance in the other. In so doing he not only honored the man, but also musick, as being an Art which breedeth animosity in mens hearts, filling those with a certain ravishment of spirit and courageous heart to fight valiantly, who are naturally framed and bred up to action:

STT 3

for





hazzardeth not his own person, first before his Army, who honoreth not nor regardeth his friends, who taketh no pity of his enemies captive, who is not in his pleasures continent, in his occasions and affairs vigilant, in his victories soon pacified, and easie to be compounded with, and last of all, who in his prosperity and good success is not kinde and courteous. How can a man possibly be great, what power and authority to ever he have, if he be foolish, vicious, and wicked withal? for in one word, take vertue from a man otherwise fortunate, he is every way mean, and of base account; mean in his gifts and donations; by reason of niggardize; mean in his travels, in regard of his cowardize and tendernes; mean in the sight of the gods, because of his superstition; mean among good men, for his envy; mean with valiant warriors, in respect of his timorousness; and mean in the conceit of honest women, considering his dissolute voluptuousness. For like as unskillful workmen, who set little statues upon great bases and large pedestals, thus thereby the smallness of their statues so much the more: even so when Fortune raiseth up a man of base mind into high place, and to an estate wherein he is to be seen of the whole world, she discovereth his wants, she discrediteth and dishonoreth him the rather, waving and shaking every way through his levity. So that, by this we must confess, that greatness lieth not in the bare profession, but in the well using of good things: For many times it falleth out, that very infants from their cradle, inherit the Realms and Signories of their Fathers; like as *Charillus* did, whom *Lycurgus* his Uncle brought in his swaddling-bands into the Common Hall *Phiditium*, where the Lords of *Sparta* were wont to dine together, let him in the Royal Throne, and in the head of himself, declared and proclaimed him King of *Lacedemon*. Now was not this Babe for all this, great: but he rather might be accounted a great person, who rendering unto the new born Infant his Fathers honor due unto him, would not intervert and derive it upon himself, and so defraud his Nephew thereof. As for *Arideus*, who could make him a great man, whom differing intruth nothing from a Babe, *Melager* swaddled indeed and enwrapped onely within a purple Robe and Royal Mantle of Estate, and so entailed him in the Throne of *Alexander*: wherein he did very well, to give the world to understand within a few days after, how men reign by vertue, and how by fortune: for he subrogated in the place of a true Prince that managed the Empire indeed, a very counterfeit Player and Actor of a Kings part: to speak more truly, he brought a mute and dumb Diadem to walk through the world for a time, as it were upon a Stage. The Comical \* Poet said;

\* Aristoph.

Avery woman may well a burden bear,  
If first a man upon her do it rear.

But a man may contrariwise say, that a silly woman or a young childe may take up, yea, and charge upon the shoulders of another, a Seignory, a Realm, a great Estate and Empire, as *Bagoas* the Eunuch took and laid upon *Oarxes* and *Darius* the Kingdom of the Persians: Marry, when as one hath taken upon him a mighty power and dominion, to bear, to wield and manage the same, and not under the weight and heavy load of affairs belonging thereto, to be overwhelmed, brused, or wrested away: that is the act of a man endued with vertue, understanding and courage, such an one as *Alexander* was: howbeit some there be who reproach him that he loved wine too well, and would be drunk. But this great gift he had, that in his important affairs he was sober, neither was he drunk and overseen, nor ever forgot himself, and grew to any outrage, for all the Puissance, Authority and Liberty that he had; whereof others when they had some part and little taste, could not hold and contain themselves: For,

No sooner are their purses stuf  
With coyn; or they to honor brought,  
But they anon with pride are pufte,  
And soon bewray that they be naught:  
They kick, they wine, they sting and prance,  
None may stand safely in their way,  
If Fortune once their house advance  
Some unexpected power to sway.

*Clytus* for having sunk three or four Gallies of the Greeks, near the Isle *Amorgus*, would needs be filled with the name of *Neptune*, and a three-tined Mace carried before him. *Demetrius*, upon whom Fortune had bestowed a little skirt or lappet (as it were) which he rare from *Alexanders* Dominion, was well content to hear himself called *Jupiter*, *Kubla Khan*, that is to say, the Vawter. Cities sent unto him not Ambassadors, but *Theatres*, forsooth, that is to say, especial persons deputed for to consult with the gods: And his answers to them, must be termed (I would not else) Oracles. And *Lysimachus* who held the coasts of *Thracia*, which was but the border or edge of *Alexanders* Kingdom, grew to that height of surly pride, and intollerable arrogancy, that he would break out into these words, Now the Bizintines come to do homage unto me, seeing how I reach and touch the sky with my lance. At which speech of his, *Pasades* standing by, could not forbear, but say unto the company, Let us be gone, my Masters, with all speed, lest this man bore an hole in heaven with the point of his lance. But what should we speak more of these persons? who might be allowed in some sort to carry an haughty minde, and bear their heads aloft, in regard of *Alexander*, whose Souldiers they were? seeing that *Clearchus* the Tyrant of *Herathia*, carried upon his Scepter as his device, the resemblance of lightning, and one of his sons he named *Megasthenes*, that is to say, a Thunderbolt. And *Derys* the younger, called himself the son of *Apollo*, in a certain Epigram to this effect:

Doris

Doris the Nymph, by Phœbus did conceive,  
And from them both my birth I do derive.

And in truth, *Derys* the elder, the natural father of this man, who put to death ten thousand of his own Citizens and Subjects (if not more) who for very envy betrayed his own brother into the hands of his enemies; who had not the patience to stay for his own mothers death, an aged woman, and who by the course of nature, would have dyed within few days after, but smothered and stopped her breath; who also himself wrote in a Tragedy of his own making,

For why? know this, that Lordly Tyranny  
The mother is of wrong and villany.

Forsooth, of three daughters which he had, named one *Arete*, that is to say, Vertue; another, *Sophrosyne*, that is to say, Temperance; and a third, *Dicæolyné*, that is to say, Justice. Some there were, who needs would be surnamed *Euergetes*, that is to say, Benefactors; others, *Soteres*, that is to say, Saviours. Some called themselves *Callinici*, that is to say, Victorious; others, *Megalé*, that is to say, Great. And yea as glorious additions as they carried in their stiles, who is able to express in words, such marriages following thick one in the neck of another, spending the long day continually, like a sort of Stallions among a number of women, as if they had been a Steud of so many Mares; their unkind abusing of fair Boys, their violent rapes and enforcements of young Damocles, their drumming and laboring with a sort of effeminate and women-like wantons, their dice playing in the day time, their piping and founding the Flute in open Theatres, their nights spent in suppers, and whole days in Kingdinner; But *Alexander* gat up, and sat to his dinner by the break of day, and went not to supper before it was late in the evening; he drank and made good cheer when he had first sacrificed to the gods; he played at dice with *Midias*, one time, whiles he had a fever upon him; his pallimes and recitations were, to travel and march upon the way, and withal, to learn how to shoot an arrow, how to lance a dart, how to mount a chariot nimble, and dismount again with facility. *Roxane* he espoused without dadd, onely for pure love, and to content his fancy and affection; but *Statira* the daughter of *Darius* he took to wife upon policy, because the state of his Kingdom and affairs required such a match; for expedient it was, thus to mix and unite two Nations together. As for other Ladies and women of *Persia*, he went as far beyond them in chastity and continence, as he did the Persian men in valor and fortitude; for he never would so much as see one of them against her will; and those whom he saw he less regarded than such as he never set eye upon: and whereas otherwise to all persons he was courteous and popular, to such onely as were fair and beautiful, he showed himself strange, and used them in some sort proudly. As touching the wife of *Darius*, a Lady of surpassing beauty, he would not endure so much as one word that tended to the praise thereof; yet when she was dead, he performed her funerals with so sumptuous and Prince-like Obsequies, he mourned and bewailed her death so pitiously, that as his kindnes in that behalf made the world mistrust and suspect his chastity, so his beautiful courtship incurred the obloquy and imputation of injustice. And verily, *Darius* was at the first moved to conceive jealousy and a sinister opinion of him that way, considering he had the woman in his hands, and was besides, a gallant young Prince: for he also was one of them, who were persuaded that *Alexander* held the tenure of his mighty Dominion and Monarchy, by the goodnes and favor of Fortune; but after he knew the truth once, upon diligent search and inquiry by all circumstances into the thing: Well (quoth he) the Persians state I perceive is not utterly overthrowen, neither will any man repute us plain cowards and effeminate persons, for being vanquished by such an enemy: for mine own part, my first will and principal prayer unto the gods is, that they would vouchsafe me fortunate success, and at the last, an happy victory of this war, to the end that I may surmount *Alexander* in beneficence; for an earnest desire I have and an emulation, to show my self more milde and gracious toward him, than he is to me: toward: but if all be gone with me and my house, then, O *Jupiter*, the Protector of the Persians, and ye other titular gods and Patrons of Kings and Kingdoms, suffer not any other but him, to be enthronized in the Royal seat of *Cyrus*. Certes, this was a very adoption of *Alexander*, that passed in the presence, and by the testimony of the gods. See what Victories are achieved by Vertue.

After he now (if you will) unto Fortune, the journey of *Arbela*, the battel fought in *Cilicia*, and all other such like exploits performed by force of Arms: let it be, that the fortune it was of War which shook the City of *Tyrrus*, and made it quake before him, and opened *Egypt* unto him; grant that by the help of Fortune *Halicarnassus* fell to the ground, and *Miletus* was forced and won; that *Mazæus* abandoned the River *Euphrates*, and left it disurnished of Garisons; and that all the Plains about *Babylon* were overpread with dead bodies: yet it was not Fortune that made him temperate, neither was he continent by the means of Fortune; Fortune it was not, that kept and preserved his soul as within a Fortres inexpugnable, so as neither pleasures could it surprize and captivate, nor lusts and fleshly desires wound or touch. And these were the very means whereby he vanquished and put to flight the person of *Darius* himself. All the rest were, the discomfiture of his great Barbe-horses, the overthrow and loss of his Armor, Skirmishes, Battels, Murders, Executions, Massacres and Flights of his men. But the great foil and defeature indeed, most confessed, and against which least exception can be taken, was that wherein *Darius* himself was overthrowen; namely, when as he yielded unto the vertue of *Alexander*, to his Magnitude, Fortitude and Justice, admiring that heart of his, invincible of pleasure, unconquered by travels, and Ingratitudes and liberality immatchable. For in shields and spears, in pikes and targuets, in shouts and alarms, in giving the charge, and in buckling together

ther with the clattering of armor, right hardy and undaunted, as well as he, were *Tarrius* the son of *Dionemus*, *Antigenes* of *Pellen*, and *Philotas* the son of *Parmeno*: but against tickling pleasures, against the attractive allurements of women, against flattering silver and gold, they were no better, nor had more rule of themselves than slaves and captives. For *Tarrius* at what time as *Alexander* undertook to pay all the debts of the Macedonians, and to make satisfaction unto all those who had lent any money, falsely belied himself, saying, he was in debt, and withal suborned and brought forth a certain *Uffurer*, to the very table where this discharge was made, who took it upon him, that he was a Creditor of his. And afterwards when *Tarrius* was detected and convicted hereof, he had made himself away for very shame and compunction of heart, but that *Alexander* being advertised thereof, pardoned his fault, yea, and permitted him also to keep the silver still, that he had disbursed for his counterfeit debts, calling to minde, how at what time as his father *Philip* laid siege to the City *Perinthus*, the said *Tarrius* in a skirmish was shot into the eye, and would not suffer the same to be dressed, nor the shaft to be plucked forth, before the enemies were put to flight. *Antigenes* causing himself to be enrolled, and his name registred among others, who were sent back again from the Camp into *Macedonia*, by occasion of sickness or maim, whereby they were not serviceable: being found afterward to ail nothing, but to counterfeit sickness, who otherwise was a good Soldier, and carried the marks of many a scar in his body to be seen, offended *Alexander* hereby; and when the King demanded the reason, why he had so done; he conked by and by, that he was in love with a young woman named *Telissipha*, whom he purposed to follow and accompany, being minded to go to the sea-coast, for that he could not find in his heart to be far from her. Then *Alexander* asked him, to whom the wench pertained, and who was to be dealt with, for to make her stay: *Antigenes* answered, she was her own woman, and of free condition: Why then (quoth *Alexander*) let us perfwade her to tarry still by fair promises, and good gifts; for in no wise force her we may. So easie was he to pardon and bear with love, in any other rather than in himself. The first cause of the unfortunate fall of *Philotas* the son of *Parmeno*, was in some sort his own intemperance: for there was a young woman born in the City of *Pella*, named *Antigene*, who in the sacrifice of the City of *Damascus*, was taken Prisoner among other Captives, and indeed had been thither brought before by *Autophrades*, who surprized her at Sea, as she sailed from the coast of *Macedonia*, toward the Isle *Samobrace*: fair she was, and well-favored to see to; and so far had she entangled *Philotas* with her love, after he came once to be acquainted with her, that being a man otherwise as hard as iron, and like to the very back, he had so mollified and made him pliable, that in the midst of his pleasures, poor man, he was no master of himself and his own heart, but lying open unto the woman, revealed many secrets unto her, and let fall foolish words in her hearing: For what had that *Philip* been (would he sometimes say) but for *Parmeno*: and what were this *Alexander* here, without *Philotas*? what would become of his high addition, *Jupiter Ammonius*, where were those Dragons of him, if we were not well pleased with him? *Antigene* told these speeches unto another woman, one of her familiar friends; and she reported them again to *Craterus*: *Craterus* brought *Antigene* herself secretly unto *Alexander*: and verily *Alexander* touched not her body, but obtained from her: howbeit, by her means, founding *Philotas*, and coming within him, he discovered fully what he was: yet in seven years space and more, he never either at any feast where he drank wine liberally, and was thought otherwhiles to be drunk, made he shew of this suspicion conceived of him, or in his anger, being of nature hasty and choleric; or to his friend *Hephestion*, unto whom he was wont to disclose all, and make partaker otherwhise of his secrets: for one day by report, having opened a letter of secrets, sent from his own mother, as he read it to himself, *Hephestion* held his head close to, and read it gently together with him; neither had he the heart to forbid him: only after he had suffred him to read it through, he took the signet from his own finger, set it to his mouth, as it were to seal up his lips, that he should say nothing. But if a man should go about to rehearse at large all the notable examples, whereby it might be proved that this Prince used the greatness of his power exceeding well, and as most worthily became a King; his strength and voyce would fail him: for say, that by the goodness and favor of Fortune he became great; yet greater he is, in that he used his fortune aright, and wisely as he should: and the more that a man collecteth his good fortune, the more doth he amplify that virtue of his, for which he was worthy of such fortune.

But now it is high time, that I should proceed to the beginning of his growth, and the first entry of his mighty power: wherein I consider and look every way about me, what act of fortune is therein, whereby men should suppose and maintain, that *Alexander* arose to such greatness? How now? Tell me, I beseech you for the love of God, placed him in the Royal Throne of *Cyprus*, without drawing a sword, without striking one stroke, without bloodshed, without wounds, without a field fought, or expedition of arms made? by the neighing (forthoof) of an horse, as sometime the did by that first *Darius*, the son of *Hystaspes*? or was it some kinde husband won by the flattering persuasion of his wife, that crowned him King? like as the same *Darius* made *Xerxes* King, induced by his wife *Atossa*; or haply the Royal Diadem came of it self to his very gates, as it came unto *Parsyatis*, by the means of *Bagoas* the Eunuch; who did no more for it, but change and put off his Lackies Mandilion, put himself presently in the Royal Robe, and set upon his head the pointed Turbant, named *Cybalis*: Or all on a sudden, beyond all expectation, by the fortunate fall of a lor, and the meer benefit of fortune, he became the Monarch of the whole earth; like as at *Athen* their Officers *Th. Smethe*, and *Archontes* are created by lottery. But would you know how men come to be

Kings

King by the means of Fortune? This one example will tell you. The race of the *Heraclidæ*, descending lineally from *Hercules*, out of which they were wont at *Argos* from time to time to elect their Kings, chanced to fail, and be utterly extinct: whereupon, when they had sent out to the Oracle of *Delphi*, for to demand and enquire what to do in this case; this answer was made, That an Eagle should direct them what was to be done. Some few days after an Eagle was seen soaring aloft in the sky, and at length to settle upon the house of one named *Egon*: and thus was *Egon* declared for their King. Will you have another? He who reigned for the time in the City *Paphos*, was found to be wicked, unjust, violent, and a great oppressor of his people: whereupon *Alexander* deposed him, and put in his Regal State and Dignity; and when he had so done, sought for another to rule in his stead, out of the house and family of the *Cinyrades*, which was thought in manner to be worn out, and utterly extinct: howbeit, advertised he was, that there remained of that race no more but one obscure and poor man: of whom there was no reckoning in the world made; and he dwelt in a certain garden unregarded, where he lived in very mean estate. Presently he sent forth to seek for this man: they who were put in commission hereabout, found him there indeed, watering certain beds of Leeks, and such like words and pot-herbs. The man was wonderfully troubled and affrighted to see these Souldiers come toward him, and especially when they said, that he must come and speak with *Alexander* the King: Thus was he brought unto him, in a simple thin linnen Walcoat, and presently proclaimed King of *Paphos*, received the purple Royal Robe, and was reckoned in the number of those who are called the Kings Minions: and his name was *Alymnus*. Lo how Fortune maketh men Kings, only by altering their robes, by permutation of their names, and changing their Copies a little, all on a sudden, quickly in a trice, with great facility, beyond all hope, and without any expectation at all. Come now unto *Alexander*, what great matter did he ever attain unto without his desert? what hapned unto him without the sweat of his brow, nay without the effusion of his blood? what had he gratis, that he paid not for? what got he, that did not cost him pains and travel? Drunk he hath of Rivers stained and coloured with blood; passed he hath over them upon bridges made of dead bodies; for very hunger he hath been glad to eat of grass and green herbs, the first he could finde growing; he hath with much digging and searching, discovered nations buried under deep snow, and cities lying in caves within the ground: failed he hath upon seas, warring and fighting against him: and travelling over the dry lands of the *Gedrosians* and *Arachosians*, he saw trees & plants growing within the sea, before any upon the land. Now if a man might be allowed to address his speech unto Fortune, unto some person in the defence of *Alexander*, might not one say unto her? When & where was it that thou ever madest way for the affairs of *Alexander*? what fortresses wan he through thy favor, without the loss of blood? what city or town didst thou cause to be yielded unto him without a garison? or what army, without their weapons? where found he ever through thy grace any Kings sluggish and slothful; any captain careless and negligent; any warder or porter of the gates drowsie and sleepy? nay, he never met with river that had found passible, winter that was tolerable, or summer that was not painful and irksome. Go thy ways, go to *Antiochus* the son of *Seleucus*: to *Artaxerxes* the brother of *Cyrus* to *Ptolemeus Philadelphus*. These were they, whom their fathers in their life time declared heirs apparent, yea, and crowned them Kings: these won fields and battels, for which never eye shed tear: these kept holiday continually: these celebrated festival solemnities daily in theaters, with all manner of pomps and goodly sights: every one of these reigned in all prosperity, until they were very aged: whereas *Alexander* (if there were nothing else) lo how his body is wounded and pitiously mangled, from the crown of his head, to the sole of his foot, gashed here, thrust in there, dry beaten, bruised and broken with all manner of hostile weapons,

With lance and spear, with sword most keen,

With stones that big and massive been.

At the River *Granicus*, his Armet or Morion was cleft with a Curtace, as far as to the hair of his head: before the Town of *Gaza* he was shot into the shoulder with a dart: in the *Maragandians* Country, his shin was wounded with a javelin, inasmuch as the greater bone thereof was so broken and shattered, that it came out at the wound: in *Hircania* he gave a knock with a great stone behind in his neck, which shook his head off, as that his eye-sight was dimmed thereby, so as for certain days, he was afraid that he should have been stark blinde for ever: in a skirmish with the *Assians*, his ankle was wounded with an Indian dart; at what time when he saw it to bleed, he turned unto his Flatterers and Parasites, and shewing them the place, smiled and said, This is very blood indeed,

And not that humor, say all what you will,

Which from the gods most blessed doth distill.

As the battel of *Issus* his thigh was pierced with a sword, even by King *Darius* himself, as *Chares* writeth, who came to cloze with him at hand fight. And *Alexander* himself writing simply and the plain truth to *Antipater*, I my self also caught a stab with a short sword in my thigh, but thanked be God (quoth he) I had no great hurt thereby either at the present or afterwards. Fighting against the *Mullians*, he was wounded with a dart two cubits long, that being driven through his Curcase entred in at his breast, and came out again at his neck, according as *Aristobolus* hath left in writing. Having passed over the River *Tanais*, for to march against the *Scythians*, when he had defeated them in battel, he followed the chase, and pursued them on horse-back for a hundred and fifty stadia, notwithstanding all the while he was troubled with a sore lask or flux of the belly. Now truly, Fortune, much beholden is *Alexander* unto thee for advancing his estate: Is it thy making of him great, by suffering him thus to be pierced thorow on every side? Here is a fair upholding of him indeed to lay open

open thus all the parts of his body: clean contrary to that which *Minerva* did unto *Meneas*, who with her hand turned aside all the shot of the enemies, and made them light upon his Armor, where it was most sure, and of the best proof, to wit, upon his Cuirass, his Bowdric, or Belt, or upon his Helmet; and by that means brake the force of the stroke before it could come to the bare body: (soe all the harm it could do, was but a little to rase the skin, and let out some small drop, and a few drops of blood: but thus contrariwise, he left exposed his naked and unarmed parts, and those most dangerous to be wounded, causing the shot to enter so far, as to go thorow the very bone, envenoming and hemming in his body round, besetting his eyes and feet, impeaching him for chasing his enemies, and hemming the train of his victories, and overturning all his hopes. Certes I am of this opinion, that there never was King who had Fortune more adverse and a shrewder stepdame than his, though he hath been cunct, envious, and spitefull enough to many besides: for whereas he hath fallen upon others violently like a Thunderbolt or shot of Lightning, whom he hath cut off and destroyed, yet others violently her malice and hatred unto *Alexander* hath been cankred, obstinate and implacable, even as it was before him unto *Hercules*. For what Typhons or monstrous Gynets of prodigious stature hath he not raised up as concurrents to fight with him? What enemies hath not the fortified & furnished against him with infinite store of Arms, with deep Rivers, with craggy Rocks, or with extraordinary strength of most savage Beasts? Now if the courage of *Alexander* had not been undaunted, and the same arising from exceeding great virtue, firmly grounded and fortified thereupon to encounter fortune, how could it otherwise have been, but the same should have failed and given over, as being wearied and toiled out with fighting for many battels in array, arming his Souldiers so daily, laying siege so many times unto Cities and Towns, chasing and pursuing his enemies so often, checked with so many revolts and rebellions, crossed so commonly with infinite Treasons, Conspiracies and Insurrections of Nations; troubled with such a sort of stiff necked Kings who shook off the yoke of Alliance? and in one word, while he conquered *Bactra*, *Macedonia*, and the Scythians, among faithless and treacherous Nations, who waited always to spy some opportunity and occasion to do him a displeasure, and who like to the Serpent *Hydra*, as fast as one head was cut off, put forth another, and so continually raised fresh and new wars? I shall seem to tell you one thing very strange and incredible, howbeit most true: Fortune it was, and nothing but Fortune, by whose malign and cross aspect, he went very near of losing that opinion that went of him, namely, that he was the son of *Jupiter Ammon*. For what man was there ever extract and descended from the seed of the gods, who exploited more laborious, more difficult and dangerous combats? unless it were *Hercules* again the son of *Jupiter*? And yet one outrageous and violent man there was who set him awork, enjoying him to take fell Lions, to hunt wilde Bores, to chase away ravenous Fowls, to the end that he should have no time to be employed in greater affairs while he visited the world, namely, in punishing such as *Anteus*, and in repressing the ordinary murders which that Tyrant *Esiris*, and such like, committed upon the persons of Guests and Travellers. But it was no other thing than virtue alone that commanded *Alexander* to enterprize and exploit such a piece of work as befelmed to great a King, and one derived from a Divine Race: the end whereof was not a mass of gold to be carried along after him upon ten thousand Camels backs, nor the superfluous delights of *Media*, nor sumptuous and delicate Tables, nor fair and beautiful Ladies, nor the good and pleasant Wines of *Calydonia*, nor the dainty Fish of *Hircania* out of the Caspian Sea: but to reduce the whole world to be govern'd, and the same order, to be obedient to one Empire, and to be ruled by the same manner of life. And verily this desire was inbred in him, this was nourished and grew up with him from his very infancy. There came Ambassadors upon a time from the King of *Persia* to his father *Philip*, who at the same time was not in the Countrey, but gone forth: *Alexander* gave them honorable entertainment: very courteously, as became his fathers son: but this especially was observed in him, that he did not ask them childish questions, as other Boys did, to wit, about golden Vines trailed from one tree to another, nor of the pendant Gardens at *Babylon* hanging above in the ayre, yet what Robes and sumptuous Habillments their Kings did wear? But all his talk and conference with them, was concerning matters most important for the state of an Empire: inquisite he was, what forces and power of men the King of *Persia* could bring out into the field and maintain; in what ward of the battel the King himself was arranged when he fought a field: much like unto that *Ulysses* in *Homers*, who demanded of *Dolon* (as touching *Hector*)

*His Martial Arms, where doth he lay?*

*His Horses, tell me, where stand they?*

Which be the readiest and shortest ways for those who would travel from the coasts of the Mediterranean Sea up into the high Countreys? Insomuch as these strangers, the Ambassadors, wondered exceedingly, and said, Now surely, this child is the \* great King, and ours the rich. No sooner was his father *Philip* departed this life, but presently his heart served him to pass over the Straights of *Helle*, and being already fed with his hopes, and forward in the preparation and provision of his voyage, he made what speed he could to set foot into *Asia*. But see here how Fortune crossed his designs: he averted him quite, and drew him back again, raising a thousand troubles and busie occasions to stay and hinder his intended course. First the caused those barbarous Nations bordering and adjoining upon him, to rise up in Armes, and thereby held him occupied in the Wars against the *Illyrians* and *Tribalians*: by the means whereof, he was halied away as far as to *Scythia*, and the Nations inhabiting along the River *Danubie*, who diverted him clean from his affairs intended in the high Provinces of *Asia*. Howbeit having overrun these Countreys, and dispatched all difficulties with great perils, and

\* For the King of *Persia* was called the great King.

most dangerous Battels, he set in hand again with his former enterprize, and made halte to his passage and voyage a second time. But lo, even there also Fortune excited the City of *Thebes* against him, and laid the War of the Greeks in his way to stop his expedition, driving him to extreame streights and to every hard exigent, by fire and sword to be revenged of a people that were his own Countreymen, and of the same Kinred and Nation, the issue whereof was most grievous and lamentable. Having exploited this, he crossed the Seas as the last, furnished with provision of money and victuals, as *Phylarchus* writeth: to serve for thirty daies and no longer, or as *Arijobolus* reporteth, having only seventy talents of silver to defray the whole charges of the voyage. For of his own domain and possessions at home, as also of the Crown revenues, he had bestowed the most part upon his friends and followers: only *Pedracus* would receive nothing at his hands, but when he made offer to give him his part with the rest, demanded thus of him: B it what reserve you for your self, *Alexander*? Who answered, My hopes. Why then (quoth he) I will take part thereof: for it is not reason that we should receive your goods, but wait for the pillage of *Darius*. And what were those hopes of *Alexander*, upon which he passed over into *Asia*? Surely not a power measured by the strong wals of many rich and populous Cities, nor Fleets of ships sailing through the mountains, not whips and fetters, testifying the folly and madnesse of barbarous Peoples, who thought thereby to punish and chastise the raging Sea. But for external means without himself, a resolution of prowess in a small power of armed men well trusted and compact together, an emulation to excell one another among young men of the same age, a contention and strife for vertue and glory in those that were his minions about him: But the great hopes indeed and most assured were in his own person, to wit, his devout religion to Godward, the trusty confidence and affiance that he had in his friends, frugality, continence, bounty, contempt of death, magnanimity and resolution, humanity, courtisie, affable intertainment, a simple nature, plain without plaits, not feigned and counterfeit, constancy in his counsell, celerity in his execution, sovereignty and priority in honour, and a resolute purpose to accomplish any honest duty and office. For *Homers* did not well and decently, to compose and frame the beautiful personage of *Agamemnon*, as the pattern of a perfect Prince out of three images, after this manner,

*For eyes and head, much like he was in fight  
To Iove, who takes in lightning such delight:  
God Mars in waste and loines resembled he:  
In brast compar'd to Neptune he may be.*

But the nature of *Alexander* (in case that God who made or created him, formed and compounded it of many virtues) may we not well and truly say, that he ended with the courageous spirit of *Cyrus*, the sober temperance of *Agesilaus*, the quick wit and pregnant conceit of *Themistocles*, the approved skill and experience of *Philip*, the valourous boldnesse of *Brasidas*, the rare eloquence and sufficiency of *Pericles* in State matters and politick Government? For to speak of those in ancient times, more continence he was and chaste, than *Agamemnon*, who preferred a captive concubine before his own espoused and lawful wife: as for *Alexander*, he abstained from those women whom he took prisoners in War, and would not touch one of them before he had wedded her: more magnanimous than *Achilles*, who for a little money yielded the dead corps of *Hector* to be ransomed; whereas *Alexander* defraied great summes in the funerals and interring of *Darius* body. Again, *Achilles* took of his friends, for the appeasing of his choler, gifts and presents after a mercenary manner: but *Alexander* enriched his very enemies, when he had gotten the Victory. More religious he was than *Diomedes*, a man who was evermore ready to fight against the gods: whereas he thought all victory and happy success came by the grace and favour of the gods. Dearer he was to his neer kinsfolk and friends, and more entirely beloved than *Ulysses*, whose mother died for sorrow and griefe of heart: whereas when *Alexander* died, his very enemies mother, for kinde affection and good will died with him for company. In somme, if it was by the indulgence of Fortune, that *Solon* established the common-wealth of *Athenes* so well at home, that *Aristides* was so just: then farewell vertue for ever; then is there no work at all effected by her; but only it is a vain name and speech that goeth of her, passing with some shew of glory and reputation through the life of man: feigned and devised by these prating Sophisters, cunning Law-givers and Statists. Now if every one of these persons, and such like, was poor or rich, feeble or strong, foul or fair, of long life or short, by the means of Fortune; again, in case each of them shewed himself a great Captain in the field, a great Politician or wise Law-giver, a great Governour and Ruler in the City and Common-wealth, by their vertue and the direction of reason within them; then consider (I pray you) what *Alexander* was in comparison of them all: *Solon* intreated at *Athenes*, a general cutting off and cancelling of all debts, which he called *Eurythia*, which is as much to say, as A discharge of burdens; but *Alexander* out of his own purse paid all debts in the name of debtors, due unto their creditors. *Pericles* having imposed a tax and tribute upon the Greeke, with the money raised by that levy, beautified the Citadell or Castle of *Athenes* with Temples and Chapels; whereas *Alexander* sent of the pillage and treasure which he gat from the Barbarians, to the number of ten thousand talents into *Greece*, with commandement to build therewith sacred Temples to the honour of the gods. *Brasidas* was a great name and reputation of valour among the Greeks, for that he passed from one end to another through his enemies Camp, pitched along the Sea side before the Town *Methon*: but that wonderfull leap that *Alexander* made into a Town of the Oxydrages, which to them that hear it, is incredible, and to as many as saw it, was most fearful; namely,

namely, at what time he cast himself from the battlements of the walls among his enemies, ready to receive him with Pikes, with Javelins, with Darts and naked Swords; whereto may a man compare, but unto a very flash of lightning breaking violently out of a Cloud, and being carried with the wind lightest upon the ground, resembling a spirit or apparition, resplendent all about with flaming and burning armours; inasmuch as at the first sight, men that saw it were so affrighted, as they ran backward and fled: but that after they belied it was but one man setting upon many, then they came again, and made head against him. Here fortune shewed (no doubt) many plain and evident proofs of her speciall good will to *Alexander*; namely, first when she put him into an ignoble, base and barbarous Town, and there inclosed him sure enough within the walls thereof; then, after that those without made haste to rescue him, and reared their scaling ladders against the walls for to get over and come unto him, she caused them all to break and fall in pieces, whereby she overthrew & cast them down who were climed half way up: again, of those three only whose hap it was to mount up to the top before the ladders brake, and who flung themselves desperately down, and stood about the King, to guard his person, she fell upon one immediately and killed him in the place, before he could do his Master any service: a second overwhelmed with a Cloud of Arrows and Darts, was so near death, that he could do no more, but only see and feel. All this while, the Macedonians without, ran to the walls with a great noise and out-cry, but all in vain, for artillery they had none, nor any ordnance or engines of battery; only they layed at the walls with their naked swords and bare hands: and so earnestly they were to get in, that they would have made way with their teeth, if it had been possible. Mean while, this fortunate Prince, upon whom Fortune attended at an inch, ready now to accompany and defend him, you may be sure, as at all times else, was taken and caught as a wild beast within Toiles, abandoned & left alone, without aid and succour, not I wis to win the City of *Susa* or of *Babylon*, nor to conquer the Province of *Bactria*, nor to seize upon that mighty body of King *Perseus*: for of great and renowned attempts, although the end alwaies prove not happy, yet there can redound no infamy. But to say a truth, Fortune was in his behalf so spitefull and envious, but on the other side so good, and gracious to the Barbarians, so adverse I say she was to *Alexander*, that she went about as much as lay in her, to make him not only lose his life and body, but also to forfeit his honour and glory: for if he had been left lying dead along the river *Euphrates*, or *Hydaspes*, it had been no great disgrace and indignity: neither had it been so dishonourable unto him, when he came to joyn with *Darius* hand to hand, if he had been massacred among a number of great horses, with the Swords, Glaives, and battle-axes of the Persians fighting for the Empire: no, nor when he was mounted upon the walls of *Babylon*, if he had taken the foile and been put by his great hope of forcing the City: for in that sort, lost *Pelopidas*, and *Epaminondas* their lives; and their death was rather an act of virtue, than an accident of infortune, whiles they gave the attempt to execute so great exploits, and to gain so worthy a prize. But as touching Fortune, which now we examine and consider; what piece of work effected this? In a barbarous Country far removed, on the further side of a river, within the walls of a base village in comparison, to shut up and inclose the King and Sovereign Lord of the earth, that he might perish there shamefully, by the hands and rude weapons of a multitude of Barbarous Rascals, who should knock him down with Clubs and Staves, and pelt him with whatsoever came next hand; for wounded he was in the head with a bill that clove his Helmet quite thorow, and with a mighty Arrow which one discharged out of a bow, his breast-plate was pierced quite thorow, wherof the steel that was without his body weighed him down heavily: but the iron head which stuck fast in the bones about one of his Paps, was four fingers broad and five long. And to make up the full measure of all mischiefs, whiles he defended himself right manfully before, and when the fellow who had shot the foresaid Arrow adventured to approach him with his sword, to dispatch him out right with a dead thrust, him he got within, & with his Dagger gave him such a stab, as he layed him along and killed him out of hand: but see the malice of Fortune, there runs me forth out of a mill-houfe or bake-houfe there by, another Villain with a Peltre, and coming behind him, gave him such a fouce upon the very neck-bones, that he was astonish'd therewith, and there lay along in a swoon, having lost his sight and other senses for a time. But Virtue it was that assisted him, which gave both unto himself a good heart, and also unto his friends strength, resolution and diligence to succour him: For *Linnæus*, *Ptolemy*, and *Leontatus*, with as many besides, as either had clambered over the walls, or broken thorow, came in and put themselves between him and his enemies: they with their valour were to him instead of a wall and rampier; they for more affection and love unto their King, exposed their bodies, their forces and their lives before him, unto all dangers whatsoever. For it is not by Fortune, that there be men who voluntarily present themselves to present death, but it is for the love of Virtue; like as he that being drunk (as it were) the amorous portion of naturall love and affection, is alwaies about their King, and stick close unto him. Now say there had been one there without the danger of shot, to have seen this fight at his pleasure, would not he have said, that he had beheld a notable combat of fortune against virtue? wherein the Barbarians by the help of Fortune prevailed above their deserts; & the Greeks by means of Virtue resisted above their power: and if the former get the upper hand, it would be thought the work of Fortune and of some maligne and envious Spirit; but if these become superior, Virtue, Fortitude, Faith and Friendship should carry away the Honour of Victory; for nothing else accompanied *Alexander* in this place. As for the rest of his Forces and Provisions, his Armies, his Horses, and his fleets, Fortune set the wall of this vile Town between him and them. Well, the Macedonians in the end defeated these Barbarians, beat the place down over their Heads, and raised it quite,

and

and buried them in the ruins and fall thereof. But what good did all this to *Alexander* in this case? Garbed he might well be and that speedily away out of their hands, with the arrow sticking still in his bosom; but the war was yet close within his ribs, the arrow was yet fast as a spike or great nail, so bind it as it were the cuirace to his body; for, whosoever went about to pluck it out of the wound, as from the root, the head would not follow withall, considering it was driven so fure into that solid breast bone which is over the heart; neither durst any faw off that part of the steile that was without, for fear of flaking, cleaving, and cracking the said bone by that means so much the more, and by that means also, cause exceeding and intolerable paines, beside the effusion of much blood out of the bottom of the wound: himself seeing his people about him a long time uncertain what to do, set in hand to hack the shaft a two with his dagger, close to the superficies of his cuirace aforesaid, and so to cut it off clean, but his hand failed him, and had not strength sufficient for to do the deed, for it grew heavy and be-gummed with the inflammation of the wound: whereupon he commanded his Chirurgeons to set to their hands boldly and fear nought, encouraging (thus hurt as he was) those that were found and unwounded, chiding and rebuking some that kept a weeping about him and benighted him; others he called Traytors, who durst not help him in this distresse; he cried also unto his Minions and familiars, Let no man be timorous and cowardly for me, no not though my life lie on it: I shall never be thought and believed not to fear dying, if you be afraid of my death: \*

I suspect  
this to be  
an abrupt  
breach of  
this Ora-  
tion, and  
not a per-  
fect con-  
clusion.

## Of Isis and Osiris.

### The Summary.

THE Wisdom and Learning of the Egyptians hath been much recommended unto us by ancient Writers, and not without great good cause: considering that Egypt hath been the Source and Fountain from whence have flowed into the world arts and liberal sciences, as a man may gather by the testimony of the first Poets and Philosophers: that ever were: But time, which consumes all things, hath bereft us of the knowledge of such wisdom: or if there remain still with us any thing at all, it is but in fragments and pieces scattered here and there, wherof many times we must divine or guess, and that is all. But in recompence thereof, Plutarch, a man careful to preserve all goodly and great things, hath by the means of this discourse touching Isis and Osiris, maintained and kept entire a good part of the Egyptians doctrine: which he is not content to set down literally and there an end, but hath adjoyned thereto also an interpretation thereof, according to the mystical sense of the Istaic Priests: discovering in few words an infinite number of secrets hidden under ridiculous and monstrous fables, in such sort, as we may call this treatise a commentary of the Egyptians Theologie and Philosophy. As for the contents thereof, a man may reduce it into three principall parts: In the first, which may serve instead of a preface, he yeldeth a reason of his enterprise, and upon the consideration of the nature, virtue, continuance, and abstinence of Isis Priests, there is an entry made to the revealall of the fable concerning Isis and Osiris. But before he toucheth it, he sheweth the reason why the Egyptians have thus darkly enfolded their divinity. Which done, he cometh to describe in particular the said fable, relating it according to the letter: which is the second part of this book. In the third he expoundeth the fable it self: and first discovereth the principles of the said Egyptian Philosophy, by a sort of Temples, Sepulchres, and Sacrifices. Afterwards having refused certain contrary opinions, he speaketh of Demons, ranging Isis, Osiris, and Typhon, in the number of them. After this Theological exposition, he considereth the fable according to naturall Philosophy, meaning by Osiris the river Nilus, and all other power of moisture whatsoever: by Typhon, Drin-  
nisi: and by Isis that nature which preserveth and governeth the world. Where he maketh a comparison between Bichus of Greece, and Osiris of Egypt, applying all unto naturall causes. Then expoundeth he the fable more fully and in particular manner, conferring, this interpretation thereof with that of the Stoicks: whereupon he doth accommodate and fit all to the course of the Moon, as she groweth and decreaseth, to the rising also and inundation of Nilus, making of all the former opinions a certain mixture, from whence he draweth the explication of the Fable. By occasion wherof, he enteth into a disputation as touching the principles and beginnings of all things, setting down twaine, and alleging for the proof and confirmation of his speech, the testimony of the ancient Mages and Philosophers: which done, he enteth into a discourse of Osiris, Isis, and Typhon, referring and reducing all into Physick and Metaphysick, with a certain conference or comparison of Platons doctrine with that of the Egyptians, which maketh him take in hand a particular Treatise of matter, form, the Idea, of generation also and corruption. Having thus examined and discussed the Egyptians Theologie and Philosophy, he ariseth to the more hidden and secret mysteries of the Istaic Priests, and then descendeth again to the consideration of naturall causes, especially of the state of the Moon, and drawing compendiously into one word, all his precedent discourse, he declareth what we ought to understand by Isis, Osiris, and Typhon. Consequently he adjoyneth three observations, to make this treatise more pleasant and profitable: withdrawing thereby the Reader, and plucking him back both from superstition and Atheism. Then having condemned the Greeks for being tainted with the same folly that the Egyptians were addicted to, he brancheth many opinions concerning the transformation of the Pagans gods into sundry sorts of beasts; discovering thereby the dotage and follies, arising from this argument and matter

most corruptly understood: and stretching the same yet farther, he rendreth a reason of that honour which the Egyptians did to such creatures: whereupon he would not have us in any wise to rest, but rather to look into the divinity represented by them. And for an end he entrencheth into an allegoricall discourse, of the habiliments, perfumes, and divers odoriferous consecrations made every day in the Temple of Isis: but more especially he treateth of one named Cyphi: wherein there be to the number of sixteen ingredients: which composition they use in their very drink, observing therein as in all the rest of their superstitions, a million of ceremonies, whereof he doth particularly: especially in the third part of this discourse, even to the very end thereof. All the premises being reduced to their right use, do shew the vanity of men abandoned and given over to their own senses: and prove, that all their sufficiency is nothing but blockish folly, and their intelligence a dark and smirke night, when the brightnesse and light of Gods Word doth sail them. For the more appearance they have both of celestiall and also human wisdom, the more appeareth their blind superstition. in such sort, as instead of resting upon the Creatour, they remain fixed upon the Creatures, and have a longing and languishing desire after discourses void of true instructions and consolations: which ought to incite so much the more all Christians to make great account of the effectuall grace offered unto them in the meditation and practice of true Philosophy, as well naturall as divine.

## Of Isis and Osiris.

**M**EN that are wise, or have any wit in them (*O Clea*) ought by prayer to crave all good things at the hand of the gods: but that which we most wish for, and desire to obtain by their means, is the very knowledge of them, so far forth as it is lawfull for men to have: for that there is no gift either greater for men to receive, or more magnificall and befitting the gods to give, than the knowledge of the truth: for God bestoweth upon men all things else, whereof they stand in need, but this he reserveth to himself, and keepeth for his own use. Neither is the godhead and divine power in this regard counted happy and blessed, because it possideth a great quantity of Gold or Silver, nor puissant in respect of thunder and lightning, but for prudence, and wisdom. And verily of all those things which *Homer* hath well delivered, this simply is the best and most elegant speech, when as touching *Jupiter* and *Neptune*, he saith thus:

(said) and shewing divine things to them who are justly surnamed *Hierophori*, and *Hierojoli*, that is to say, religious, and wearing the habits of holiness and religion. And these be they that carry in their mind, and keep enclosed as within a box or casket, the holy doctrine of the gods, pure and cleansed from all superstition and affected curiosity: who also of that opinion which is held of the gods, declare some which are obscure and dark, others also which be clear and lightsome; like as be those which are reported as touching their holy and religious habit. And therefore whereas the religious priests of *Isis*, after they be dead, are thus clad with these holy habiliments; it is a mark and signe witnessing unto us, that this sacred doctrine is with them, and that they be departed out of this world into another, and carry nothing with them but it: for neither to wear a long beard, nor to put on a frize rugge and course gabardine (*dame Clea*) makes a Philosopher; no more doth the surplice and linnen vestment or shaven, an Ilique priest. But he indeed is a priest of *Isis*, who after he hath seen and received by law and custom, those things which are shewed and practised in the religious ceremonies about these gods, searcheth and diligently enquireth, by the means of this holy doctrine, and discourse of reason, into the truth of the said ceremonies. For very few there be among them, who understand and know the cause of this ceremony, which is of all other the smallest, and yet most commonly observed; namely, why the Ilique priests shave their heads, and wear no haire upon them; as also wherefore they go in vestments of Linnen? And some of them there be, who care not at all for any knowledge of such matters: yet others say, they forbear to put on any garments of wooll, like as they do to eat the flesh of those sheep which carry the said wooll, upon a reverence they bear unto them: semblably, that they cause their heads to be shaven in token of dole and sorrow likewise that they wear surplices and vestments of linnen, in regard of the colour that the flower of linc or flax beareth, which resembleth properly that celestiall azure-sky that environeth the whole world. But to say a truth, there is but one cause indeed of all: for lawfull it is not for a man who is pure and clean, to touch any thing (as *Plato* saith) which is impure and unclean. Now it is well known, that all the superfluities and excrements of our food and nourishment, be foul and impure, and of such be engendred and grow, wooll, hair, shagge and nailes: and therefore a meer ridiculous mockery it were, if when in their expiatory sanctifications and divine services, they cast off their hair, being shaven and made smooth all their bodies over, they should then be clad and arrayed with the superfluous excrements of beasts: for we must think that *Hesiodus* the Poet when he writeth thus,



ants which in times past warred against the gods; of whom after they were slain, when their blood was mixed with the earth, the Vine-tree sprang; and this is the cause, say they, why those who be drunk lose the use of their wit and reason, as being full of the blood of their progenitors. Now that the Egyptian priests both hold and affirm thus much, *Eudoxus* hath delivered in the second book of his Geography. As concerning fishes of the sea, they do not every one of them abstain from all indifferently; but some forbear the kind, and some another: as for example, the Oxyrinchites will eat of none that is taken with an hook; for adorning as they do, a fish named Oxyrinchus, they are in doubt and fear lest the hook should be unclean, if haply the said fish swallowed it down with the bait. The Slenites will not touch the fish Phagrus, for it should seem that it is found, when *Nileus* begins to flow; and therefore the said fish by his appearing, signifieth the tising and inundation of *Nileus*, whereof they be exceeding joyous, holding him for a certain and sure messenger. But the priests abstain from all fishes in general: and whereas upon the ninth day of the first month, all other inhabitants of *Egypt*, feed upon a certain broiled or roasted fish before their doors: the priests in no wise taste thereof; marry they burn fishes before the gates of their houses; and two reasons they have: the one holy, fine and fable, which I will deliver hereafter: as that which accordeth and agreeth very well to the sacred discourses as touching *Osiris* and *Typhon*: the other plain, vulgar and common, represented by the fish, which is none of the viands that be necessary, rare and exquisite, according as *Homer* beareth witness, when he brings not in the Phaeacians delicate men and loving to feed daintily, nor the Ithacians, Islanders, to eat fish at their feasts: no nor the mates and fellow travellers with *Ulysses*, during the time of their long Navigation and Voyage by Sea, before they were brought to extremum necessity. To be brief, the very Sea it self they think to be produced a part by fire, without the bounds and limits of nature, as being no portion nor element of the world, but a strange excrement, a corrupte superfluity, and unkinde malady: For nothing absurd and against reason, nothing fabulous and superstitious, (as some untuly think) was intended or served as a sacred signe in their holy ceremonies, but they were all marks grounded upon causes and reasons moral; and the same profitable for this life, or else not without some historical or natural elegancy. As for example, that which is said of the Onion; for that *Dilys*, the foster-father of *Isis*, fell into the River of *Nileus*, and was there drowned, as he was reaching at Onions and could not come by them, it is a meet fable and carryeth no fault or probability in the world: but the truth is this, the priests of *Isis* hate the Onion and avoid it as a thing abominable, because they have observed, that it never groweth nor thriveth well to any benefice but in the decrease and wain of the Moon: Neither is it meet and fit for those who would lead an holy and sanctified life, or for such as celebrate solemn feasts and holidays, because it provoketh thirst in the former; and in the other causeth tears, if they feed thereupon. And for the same reason they take the Sow to be a prophane and unclean beast, for that ordinarily she goeth a brimming and admitteth the Bore, when the Moon is past the Full: and look how many drink of her milk, they break out into a kinde of leprosie or dry skurf all over their bodies. As touching the tale which they infer, who once in their lives do sacrifice a Sow when the Moon is in the Full, and then eat her flesh: namely that *Typhon* hunting and chasing the wilde Swine at the Full of the Moon, chanced to light upon an ark or coffin of wood, wherein was the body of *Osiris*, which he dismembered and threw away by piece-meal, all men admit not thereof, supposing that it is a fable, as many others be, misheard and misunderstood. But this for certain it hold, that our ancients in old time so much hated and abhorred all excessive delicacy, superfluous and costly delights and voluptuous pleasures, that they laid within the Temple of the City of *Thebes* in *Egypt* there stood a square column or pillar, wherein were engraven certain curses and execrations against their King *Mimis*, who was the first that turned and averted the Egyptians quite from their simple and frugal manner of life, without money, without sumptuous fare and chargeable delights. It is said also that *Techmatis* the father of *Bocchorus*, in an expedition or journey against the Arabians, when it chanced that his carriages were far behinde and came not in due time to the place where he incamped, was content to make his supper of whatsoever he could get, and so to take up with a very small and simple pittance, yea and after supper to lie upon a corse and homely pallet, where he slept all night very soundly, and never awoke: whereupon, he ever after loved sobriety of life and frugality, and cursed the forefaid King *Mimis*: which malediction of his being by the priests of that time approved, he caused to be engraven upon the pillar abovesaid. Now their Kings were created either out of the order of their priests, or else out of the degree of Knights and Warriors; for that the one estate was honoured and accounted noble for valour, the other for wisdom and knowledge. And look whomsoever they chose from out of the order of Knighthood, presently after his election he was admitted unto the College of priests, and unto him were disclosed and communicated the secrets of their Philosophy, which under the veil of fables and dark speeches couched and covered many mysteries, through which the light of the truth is some forth too dimly appeareth. And this themselves seem to signify and give us to understand, by setting forth ordinarily before the porches and gates of their Temples, certain Springs: meaning thereby, that all their Theology containeth under enigmatical and covert words, the secrets of wisdom. In the City of *Sais*, the image of *Minerva* which they take to be *Isis*, had such an Inscription over it, as this: I am all that which hath been, which is, and which shall be, and never any man was able to draw open my veil. Moreover many there be of opinion, that the proper name of *Jupiter* in the Egyptians language is *Ammon*, of which we have in Greek, derived the word *Ammon*: whereupon we surname *Jupiter*, *Ammon*; but *Manetho* who was an Egyptian himself of the City of *Sabota*, supposeth that by this word is signified, a thing hidden, or occultation: and

and *Hecataeus* the Abderite affirmeth, that the Egyptians used this tearm among themselves, when they called one unto another, for it was a vocative word, and for that they imagined the Prince and Sovereign of the gods to be the same: that *Pan*, that is to say an universal nature, and therefore unseen, hidden and unknown, they prayed and besought him for to disclose and make himself known unto them, by calling him *Ammon*. See then, how the Egyptians were very strict and precise, in not profaning their wisdom, nor publishing that learning of theirs which concerned the gods. And this the great *Sages* and most learned Clerks of all *Greece* do testify, by name, *Solon*, *Thales*, *Plato*, *Eudoxus*, *Pythagoras*, and as some let not to say, *Lycurgus* himself; who all travelled of a deliberate purpose into *Egypt*, for to confer with the Priests of that Country. For it is constantly held that *Eudoxus* was the audacious of *Gnomonius* the Priest of *Memphis*, *Solon* of *Souchis* the Priest of *Sais*, *Pythagoras* of *Oenupheus* the Priest of *Helopolis*. And verily this *Pythagoras* last named, was highly esteemed among those men, like as himself had them in great admiration, in so much as he of all others seemed most to imitate their manner of mystical speaking under covert words, and to involve his doctrine and sentences within figurative and enigmatical words: for the characters which are called Hieroglyphicks in *Egypt*, be in manner all of them, like to these precepts of *Pythagoras*: Eat not upon a stool or chair; Sit not over a bushell; Plant no Date tree; Stir not the fire in the house, nor rake into it with a sword. And we think, that whereas the Pythagoreans call *Unity*, *Apollo*; *Two*, *Diana*; the number of seven, *Minerva*; and the first cubick, *Neptune*; this resembleth very neer, that which the Egyptians consecrate and dedicate in their Temples, and agreeth with that which they do and write. For their King and Lord *Osiris*, they depainge and pourtray, by an eye and a Scepter: and some there be, who make this interpretation of the name *Osiris*, as if it signified, having many eyes, for that *Os* in the Egyptian tongue, betokeneth many, and *Iris*, an eye. As for heaven, they describe by a young countenance, by reason of the perpetuity thereof, whereby it never waxeth old. And *Iris*, they set out by an heart, having under it an heart with fire burning upon it. In the City of *Thebes* there stood up certain Images without hands, resembling Judges; and the Chief or President among them, was blindfolded or hoodwinked, to give us to understand, that Justice should neither be corrupted with bribery, nor partial and respective of persons. In the signet or seal-ring of their martial and military men, there was engraven the portrature of the great Fly called the Beecill, because in that kinde there is no female, but they be all males: they blow or cast their seed in form of a pellet or round ball, under dung; which they prepare to be a place, not for their food more, than for their brood. Whensoever therefore you shall hear the Egyptians tell tales of the gods, to wit, of their sagrant and wandering periginations, or of their dismemberings, and other such like fabulous fictions, you must call to mind, that which you have before said; and never think that they mean any such thing in or hath been done according to that literal sense: for they do not say, that *Mercury* properly is a Dog, but inasmuch as the nature of this beast is to be wary, watchfull, vigilant, and wise, able to distinguish by his taking knowledge and semblance of ignorance; a friend and familiar from an enemy and stranger: therefore (as *Plato* saith) they attributed and likened him to the most eloquent of all the gods. Neither do they think, when they describe the Sun, that out of the bark of the tree *Lotus* there ariseth a babe new born; but in this wise do they represent unto us the Sun rising, giving thus much to understand covertly, that the light and illumination of the Sun proceedeth out of the waters of the sea: for even after the same manner the most cruell and terrible King of the Persians, *Darius*, who put to death many of his Nobles and Subjects, and in the end slew their Beef *Apis*, and eat him at the feast, together, with his friends, they called *The sword*; and even at this day, in the register and catalogue of their Kings, he goeth under that name; not signifying thereby his proper substance; but to expresse his hard and fell nature, his mischievous disposition, they compared him to a bloody instrument and weapon made to murder men. In hearing then and receiving after this manner, that which shall be told unto you as touching the gods after an holy religious manner, in doing also and observing alwaies diligently the accustomed rites, ordained for the sacred service of the gods, and believing firmly, that you can not perform any sacrifice or liturgy more pleasing unto them, than to study for to have a sound and true opinion of them: by this means you shall avoid superstition, which is a great sin as impiety and Atheism. Now the fable of *Isis* and *Osiris*, is as briefly as may be, by touching off many superfluous matters that serve to no purpose, delivered in this wise: It is said, that dame *Rhea*, at what time as *Saturnus* lay secretly with her, was espied by the Sun, who cursed her; and among other maledictions, prayed that the might not be delivered, nor bring forth Child, neither in any month or year: but *Mercury*, being inamour'd of this goddess, companied likewise with her; and afterwards, as he played at Dice with the Moon and won from her the seventieth part of every one of her illuminations, which being all put together, make five intire dayes, he added the same unto the three hundred and threescore dayes of the year; and so those odd dayes the Egyptians do call at this present, the dayes of the Epact, celebrating and solemnizing them as the birth-dayes of their gods: for that when the full time of *Rhea* was expired, upon the first day of them was *Osiris* born; at whose birth a voice was heard, That the Lord of the whole world now came into light: and some say, that a certain woman named *Pumyle*, as she went to fetch water for the Temple of *Jupiter* in the City of *Thebes*, heard this voice, commanding her to proclaim aloud, That the Great King and Benefactor *Osiris* was now born: also, for that *Saturnus* committed this Babe *Osiris* into her hands for to be nourished, therefore in honour of her name there was a feivall day solemnized, named thereupon *Pumyle*, much like unto that which is called *Phallopria* unto *Priapus*. On the second day she was delivered of *Areveris*, who is *Apollo*, whom some likewise call the elder *Orus*. Upon the third day she brought forth

\* Or Nephthys.

forth *Typhon*, but he came not at the just time nor at the right place, but brake thorow his mother's side, and issued forth as the wound. On the fourth day *Isis* born, in a watery place called *Panbyra*. And the fifth day she was delivered of *Nephthys*, who of some is named also *Telene* and *Panmus*; others call her *Nice*. Now it is said, that the conceived *Osiris* and *Aroeris* by the Sun, *Isis* by *Mercury*, *Typhon* and *Nephthys* by *Saturn*, which is the cause that the Kings reputed the child of these intercalary dates to be defamorous and dismal, dispatched no affairs thereupon, neither did they cherish themselves by meat and drink or otherwise, until night: that *Nephthys* was honoured by *Typhon*; that *Isis* and *Osiris* were in love in their mothers belly before they were born, and lay together secretly and stealth; and some give out, that by this means *Aroeris* was begotten and born, who by the Egyptians is called *Orus*, the elder, and by the Greeks, *Apollo*. Well, during the time that *Osiris* reigned King in Egypt, immediately he brought the Egyptians from their needy, poor and savage kinde of life, by teaching them how to sow and plant their grounds, by establishing good Laws among them, and by showing how they should worship and serve God. Afterwards, he travelled throughout the World, reducing the whole Earth to civility, by force of armes least of all, but winning and gaining the most Nations by effectual remonstrances and sweet persuasion couched in songs, and with all manner of Musick; whereupon the Greeks were of opinion, that he and *Bacchus* were both one. Furthermore, the tale goes, that in the absence of *Osiris*, *Typhon* stirred not, nor made any commotion, for that *Isis* gave good order to the contrary, and was of sufficient power to prevent and withstand all innovations; but when he was returned, *Typhon* conspired a conspiracy against him, having drawn into his confederacy seventy two complices, besides a certain Queen of *Ethiopia*, who likewise combined with him, and her name was *Aso*. Now when he had secretly taken the just measure and proportion of *Osiris* body, and caused a coffer or hutch to be made of the same length, and that most curiously and artificially wrought and set out to the eye, he took order, that it should be brought into the Hall, where he made a great feast unto the whole company. Every man took great pleasure with admiration, to behold such a singular exquisite piece of work; and *Typhon* in a merriment, stood up and promised that he would bestow it upon him, whose body was meet and fit for it: hereupon, all the company one after another assayed whose body would fit it; but it was not found proportionate nor of a just size to any of all the rest: at length, *Osiris* gat up into it, and layed him there along; with that, the conspirators ran to it, and let down the lid and cover thereof upon him, and partly with nails, and partly with melted lead which they poured aloft, they made it sure enough; and when they had so done, carried it forth to the river side, and let it down into the sea, at the very mouth of *Nilus* named *Taniticus*; which is the reason, that the said mouth is even to this day odious and execrable among the Egyptians, inasmuch as they call it *Catapbyssus*, that is to say, Abominable, or to be spit at. Over and besides, it is said, that this fell out to be done upon the seventeenth day of the month named *Athy*, during which month, the Sun entrench into the sign *Scorpio*, and in the eight and twentieth year of *Osiris* reign: howbeit, others affirm, that he lived in deed, but reigned not so long. Now the first that had an inkling and intelligence of this heinous act, were the Panes and Satyres inhabiting about *Chemis*, who began to whisper one unto another, and to talk thereof; which is the reason, that all sudden tumults and troubles of the multitude and common people, be called Panique affrights. Moreover, it followeth on in the tale, that *Isis* being advertised hereof, immediately cut off one of the tresses of her hair, and put on mourning weeds in that place which now is called the City *Coptus*, in remembrance thereof; howsoever others say, that this word *Coptus*, betokeneth Privation, for that *castus* in Greek, signifieth as much as to deprive. In this doleful habit she wandered up and down in great perplexity to hear tidings of *Osiris*, and whomsoever she met withall, she failed not to enquire of them; and she missed not so much as little children playing together, but asked them, whether they had seen any such coffer: at length, the sight of those children who had seen it indeed, and they directed her to the mouth of the river *Nilus*, where the complices and associates of *Typhon* had let the said vessel into the sea. And ever since that time, the Egyptians are of opinion, that young children have the gift of revealing secrets, and they take all their words which they pass in play and sport, as oaths and prelates, but especially within the Temple, what matter soever it be that they prattle of. Moreover, when *Isis* understood that *Osiris* fell in love with his sister *Nephthys*, thinking this was *Isis* and so carnally accompanied with her, and withall, found a good token thereof, to wit, a chaplet or garland of Meliots which he had left with *Nephthys*, she went forth to seek her babe (for presently upon the birth of the infant, for fear of *Typhon* he hid it) and when with much ado and with great pains taken, *Isis* had found it, by the means of certain hounds which brought her to the place where he was, she reared and brought it up, in such sort, as when he came to some biggness, he became her guide and squire, named *Anubis*, who also is said to keep the gods, like as dogs guard men. After this, she heard news of the forefaid coffer, and namely, that the waves of the sea had by tides cast it upon the coast of *Byblus*, where, by a billow of water it was gently brought close to the foot of a shrub or plant called \* *Erice*: now this *Erice* or *Tamarix* in a small time grew so fair, and spread forth so large and big branches withall, that it \* compassed, enclosed and covered the said coffer all over, so as it could not be seen. The King of *Byblus* wondering to see this plant so big, caused the branches to be lopped off, that covered the forefaid coffin not seen, and of the trunk or body thereof, made a pillar to sustain the roof of his house: whereof *Isis* by report being advertised by a certain divine spirit or wind of flying fame, came to *Byblus*, where she sat her down by a certain fountain, all heavy and in distress, pitifully weeping to her selfe her tale the word unto any creature, only the Queen's waiting maids and women that came by, she saluted and made much of, plaining and broiding the

\* *Erice* Or some such shrub.

Some translate this, as if the ark were inclosed within the trunk of the plant.

the tresses of her hair most exquisitely, and casting from her into them a marvellous sweet and pleasant scent issuing from her body, whiles she dressed them. The Queen perceiving her woman thus curiously & trimly set out, had an earnest desire to see this stranger, as well for that she yielded such an odoriferous smell from her body, as because she was so skillful in dressing their heads: so she sent for the woman, and being grown into some familiar acquaintance with her, made her the Nurse and governess of her young son: now the Kings name was *Malcander*, and the Queens, *Astarte*, or rather *Sais*, or as some will have it, *Nemanois*, which is as much to say in the greek tongue, as *Athenais*. And the spees hee goes, that *Isis* suckled and nourished this infant, by putting her finger instead of the breast-head or nipple, into the mouth thereof; also, that in the night season she burnt all away that was mortal of his body; and in the end, was her self metamorphized and turned a Swallow, flying, and lamenting after a moaning manner about the pillar aforesaid, until such time as the Queen observing this, and crying out when she saw the body of her child on a light fire, bereaved it of immortality. Then *Isis* being discovered to be a goddess, craved the pillar of wood: which she cut down with facility, and took from underneath the trunk of the *Tamarix* or *Erice*, which she anointed with perfumed oile, and enwrapped within a linen cloth, and gave it to the Kings for to be kept: whereof it cometh, that the Byblians even at this day reverence this piece of wood, which lieth consecrate within the Temple of *Isis*. Furthermore, it is said, that in the end the \* light upon the coffer, over which she wept and lamented so much; that the youngelt of the Kings sons died for very pity of her but the her self accompanied with the eldest of them, together with the coffer, embarked, took sea and departed. But when the river *Phearus* turned the wind from what roughly about the dawning of the day, *Isis* was so much displeased and angry, that she dried it quite. And so soon as she came unto a solitary place, where she was by her self alone, she opened the coffer, where finding the corps of *Osiris*, she laid her face close to his, embraced it and wept. Herewith came the child (oldly behind and espied what she was doing: whom when she perceived, she looked back, casting an untoward eye, and beheld him with such an angry aspect, that the poor infant not able to endure so terrible a look, died upon it. Some say it was not so; but that he fell into the sea, in manner aforesaid, and was honoured for the Goddess sake, and that he is the same whom the Egyptians chant at their feasts, under the name of *Maneros*. But others give out, that this child was named *Palesium*, and that the City *Pelusijs* was built in remembrance of him by the Goddess *Isis*, and so took the name after him; and how this *Maneros* whom they so celebrate in their songs, was the first inventor of Musick. Howbeit others there are again, who affirm that this was the name of no person, but a kinde of dialect or language proper and agreeable unto those who drink and banquet together, as if a man should say, In good hour & happily may this or that come. For the Egyptians were wont ordinarily to use this term *Maneros* in such a sense: like as no doubt the dry skeletons or dead corps of a man which they used to carry about and shew in a bier or coffin at the table, was not the representation or memoriall of this accident which befell unto *Osiris*, as some do imagine, but served as an admonition to put the guests in mind to be merry & take their pleasure, & joy in those things which were present; for that soon after they should be like unto it. This I say was the reason that it was brought in at their feasts and merry meetings. Furthermore, when *Isis* was gon to see her son *Horus*, who was fostered & brought up in the City *Butus*, and had laid the forefaid coffer with *Osiris* body out of the way, *Typhon* fortun'd as he hunted in a clear moon-shine night to meet with it, and taking knowledge of the body, cut it into fourteen pieces & flung them here and there one from another: which when *Isis* understood, she searched for them in a Boat or Punt made of papyrus reed, all over the mores and marshes: whereof it comes that the Crocodiles never hurt those who sail or row in vessels made of that plant, whether it be that they are afraid of it, or reverence it to this Goddess: false, I know not. And thus you may know the reason, why there be found many sepulchres of *Osiris* in the Country of Egypt, for ever as she found any piece of him, she caused a Tomb to be made for it: others say no: but that she made many images of him, which she let in every City, as if she had bestowed among them his very body indeed: to the end that in many places he might be honoured: and that if haply *Typhon* when he fought for the true Sepulchre of *Osiris*, (having vanquished and overcome *Horus*) many of them being reported and shewed, he might not know which was it, and so give over seeking farther. Over and besides, the report goes, that *Isis* found all other parts of *Osiris* body but only his privy member, for that it was immediately cast into a River, and the Fishes named *Lepidus*, *Phagus*, and *Oxyrinchus* devoured it: for which cause *Isis* dresseth them above all other Fishes: but instead of that natural part, she made a counterfeite one, called *Phallus*, which she consecrated: and in the honour thereof the Egyptians hold a solemn feast. After all this it followeth in the Fable, that *Osiris* being returned out of the infernal parts, appeared unto *Horus*, for to exercise, instruct and train him against the battell: of whom he demanded what he thought to be the most beautiful thing in the world: who answered, To be revenged of the wrong and injury which had been done to a mans Parents. Secondly, what beast he thought most pretious to go into the field withall: unto whom *Horus* should make answer, The Horie: whereat *Osiris* marvelled, and asked him why he named the Horie, and not the Lyon rather: Because (quoth *Horus*) the Lyon serveth him in good feed, who stands upon his own guard and defence onely, and hath need of aid: but the Horie is good to defeat the enemy quite, to follow him in chase, and take him prisoner. When *Osiris* heard him say so, he took great pleasure and contentment herein, judging hereby that his Son was sufficiently appointed and prepared to give battell unto his enemies. And verily it is said that among many that daily revolved from *Typhon* and sided with *Horus*, even the very concubine of *Typhon* named *Theris* was one, who came unto him: & when a certain \* Serpent followed after & \* pursued

\* meant evil.

\* *Cobra*.



Giving us hereby thus much to understand, that the Demons have a mixt nature, and a will or affection, which is not equal, nor always alike. And hereupon it is, that Plato verily attributeth unto the Olympian and celestial gods, all that which is dexterous and odde : but unto the Demons, whatsoever is sinister and even. And Xenocrates holdeth, that those daies which be unlucky and dismal, those festival solemnities likewise, which have any beatings or knocking and clumping of breathe, or fasting, or otherwise any cursed speeches and filthy words, are not meet for the honour and worship either of gods or of good Demons : but he supposeth that there be in the air about us, certain natures great and puissant ; howbeit, froward, malicious and unfociable, which take some pleasure in such matters ; and when they have obtained and gotten too much to be done for their sake, they go about no farther mischief, nor wait any shewder turnes : whereas contrariwise, both Hesiodus calleth the pure and holy Demons, such also as be the good angels and keepers of men,

*Givers of wealth and opulence, as whom  
This regall gift and honour doth become.*

And Plato also termeth this kinde of Demons or Angels, *Mercurial*, that is to say, expeditious or interpretours, and ministerial, having a middle nature between gods and men, who as mediators, present the prayers and petitions of men here unto the gods in heaven, and from thence transmitt and convey unto us upon earth, the oracles and revelations of hidden and future things, as also their donations of goods and riches. As for *Empedocles*, he saith, that these Demons or Fiends, are punished, and tormented for their sins and offences which they have committed, as may appear by these his verses :

*For why? the power of air and skies,  
did to the feaventh chace :  
The sea them cast up, of the earth,  
even to the outward face :  
The earth them sends unto the beams  
of never-tired Sun,  
The Sun to air, whence first they came,  
doth fling them down anon :  
Thus past to and fro, twice seas  
beneath, and heav'n above,  
From one they to another passe :  
not one yet doth them love.*

untill such time as being thus in this Purgatory chastised and cleansed, they recover again that place, estate and degree which is meet for them and according to their nature. These things and such like for all the world they say, are reported of *Typhon*, who upon envy and malice committed many outrages, and having thus made a trouble and confusion in all things, filled sea and land with wofull calamities and miseries, but was punished for it in the end. For *Isis* the wife and sister of *Osiris* in revenge plagued him in extinguishting and repelling his fury and rage : and yet neglected the not the travels and pains of her own which she endured, her trudging also and wandering to and fro, nor many other acts of great wisdom and prowess suffered her to be buried in silence and oblivion : but inserting the same among the most holy ceremonies of sacrifices, as examples, images, memorials and resemblances of the accidents hapning in those times, she consecrated an enigmment, instruction and consolation of piety and devout religion to godward, as well for men as women afflicted with miseries. By reason whereof she and her husband *Osiris* of good Demons were transmuted for their vertue into gods, like as afterwards were *Hercules* and *Bacchus*, who in regard thereof, and not without reason, have honours decreed for them both of gods and also of Demons intermingled together, as those who in all places were puissant, but most powerfull both upon and also under the earth. For they say that *Serapis* is nothing else but *Pluto*, and *Isis* the same that *Proserpina*, as *Archemachus* of *Eubœa* and *Heraclius* of *Pontus* testifie, and he thinketh that the Oracle in the City *Cumœis*, is that of father *Dis* or *Pluto*. King *Ptolemaeus* surnamed *Soter*, that is to say, saviour, caused that huge statue or colosse of *Pluto* which was in the City *Sinope*, to be taken from thence, not knowing, nor having seen before of what form and shape it was, but only that as he dreamed he thought that he saw *Serapis*, commanding him whithall speed possible to transport him into *Alexandria*. Now the King not knowing where this statue was, nor where to finde it, in this doubtfull perplexity related his vision aforesaid unto his friends about him, and chanced to meet with one *Sosibius* a great traveller and a man who had been in many places, and he said that in the City of *Sinope* he had seen such a statue as the King described unto them. Whereupon *Ptolemaeus* sent *Stoteles* and *Diomyus*, who in long time, and with great travel, and not without the especiall grace of the divine providence, stole away the said colosse and brought it with them : Now when it was come to *Alexandria* and there King *Timæus* the great Cosmographer and Antiquary, and *Manetion* of the Province *Sehennitis*, guessed it by all conjectures to be the image of *Pluto*, and namely by *Cerberus* the Hell-dog and the Dragon about him, perwading the King that it could be the image of no other god but of *Serapis*. For it came not from thence with that name ; but being brought into *Alexandria*, it took the name *Serapis*, by which the Egyptians do name *Pluto*. And yet *Heraclius* verily the Naturalist saith, that *Hades* and *Diomyus*, that is to say, *Pluto* and *Bacchus*, be the same. And in truth when they are disposed to play the fools and be mad, they are carried away to this opinion. For they who suppose that *Hades*, that is to say, *Pluto*, is said to be the body, and as it were the sepulchre of the soul, as if it seemed to be foolish and drunken all the while she is within it, me thinks they do allegorize : but

very

very baldly. And better it were yet to bring *Osiris* and *Bacchus* together, yea and to reconcile *Serapis* unto *Osiris*, in saying that after he hath changed his nature, he became to have this denomination. And therefore this name *Serapis* is common to all, as they know very well who are professed in the sacred religion of *Osiris*. For we ought not to give ear and credit to the Books and Writings of the Phrygians, wherein we find, that there was one *Charopos* the Daughter of *Hercules*, and that of *Iscariot*, a Son of *Hercules* was engendered *Typhon* : neither yet to make account of *Phylarchus* who writeth, that *Bacchus* was the first, who from the Indians drave two Bees, whereof the one was named *Apis*, the other *Osiris* : That *Serapis* is the proper name of him who ruleth and embellisheth the universal world, and is derived of the word *Sairin*, which some say, significth as much as to beautify and adorn. For these be absurd toys delivered by *Phylarchus* : but more monstrous and senseless, are their absurdities who write, that *Serapis* is no god, but that it is the Coffin or Sepulchre of *Apis*, that is so called : as also that there be certain two leaved braten Gates in *Aemphibis*, bearing the names of *Lebe* and *Ceynus*, that is to say, Oblivion and Waiting, which being set open when they inter and bury *Apis*, in the opening make a great found and rude noise : which is the cause that we lay hand upon every Copper or braten vessell when it resoundeth so, to stay the noise thereof. Yet is there some appearance of truth and reason in their opinion, who hold that it was derived of these verbs *σάω* and *αἶψα*, which significth to move, as being that which moveth the whole frame of the world. The Priests for the most part hold, that *Serapis* is a word compounded of *Osiris* and *Apis* together, giving this explication withall and teaching us, that we ought to believe *Apis* to be an elegant image of the Soul of *Osiris*. For mine own part I *Serapis* be an Egyptian name, I suppose rather that it betokeneth, joy and mirth : And I ground my conjecture upon this, that the Egyptians ordinarily call the feast of joy and gladnesse, termed among the Athenians *Charmosyna*, by the name of *Sairin*. For Plato himself saith, that *Hades* which significth *Pluto*, being the Son of *Aidos*, that is to say, of Shamefastnesse and Reverence, is a mild and gracious god to those who are toward him. And very true it is, that in the Egyptians language, many other proper names are significant, and carry their reason with them : as namely that infernall place under the Earth, into which they imagine the Souls of the dead do descend after they be departed, they call *Aemphibis*, which term is as much to say, as taking & giving ; but whether this word be one of those, which in old time came out of *Greece* and were transported thither, we will consider and discuss better hereafter : Now for this present let us prosecute that which remaineth of this opinion now in hand. For *Osiris* and *Isis* of good Demons were translated into the number of the gods : And as for the puissance of *Typhon* oppressed and quelled, howbeit panting as yet at the last gasp and striving as it were with the pangs of death, they have certain Ceremonies and Sacrifices, to pacifie and appease. Other Feasts also there be again on the contrary side, wherein they insult over him, debate and defame him what they can : In so much as men of a ruddy colour they deride & make of them a laughing stock. And as for the inhabitants of *Coptos*, they use at a certain Feast to throw an Ass headlong down from the pitch of an high rock, because *Typhon* was ruddy and of a red Asse colour. The Busrutians and Lycopolites forbear to found any Trumpets, because they resemble the braying of an Ass : and generally they take an Ass to be an unclean beast and demoniacall, for the resemblance in hiew that it hath with him : and when they make certain Cakes in their Sacrifices of the moneths *Payni* and *Phaophis*, they work them in pastry with the print upon them of an Ass-bound. Also in their solemn Sacrifice to the Sun, they command as many as will be there to worship that god, not to wear any brooches or jewels of gold about their bodies, nor to give any Meat or Provander unto an Ass : what need I say he have thereof. It seemeth also, that the Pythagoreans themselves are of opinion, that *Typhon* was some fiend or demoniacall power : for they say that *Typhon* was born in the even number of six and fifty : again, that the triangular number or figure, is the puissance of *Pluto*, *Bacchus*, and *Mars* : of the quadrangle, is the power of *Rhea*, *Venus*, *Ceres*, *Vesta*, and *Juno* : that of twelve angles belongeth to the might of *Jupiter* : but that of fifty six angles is the force of *Typhon*, as *Eudoxus* hath left in writing. But the Egyptians supposing that *Typhon* was of a reddish colour, do kill for Sacrifice unto him, Kine & Oxen of the same colour, observing withall so precisely, that if they have but one hair black or white, they be not sacrificable : for they think such Sacrifices not acceptable, but contrariwise displeasing unto the gods, imagining they be the bodies which have received the Souls of lewd and wicked persons, transformed into other Creatures. And therefore after they have cursed the head of such a Sacrifice, they cut it off and cast it into the River, at least waies in old time : but now they give it unto strangers. But the Ox which they mean to sacrifice indeed, the Priests called *Sphragitis*, that is to say, the Sealers, come : and mark it with their Seal, which as *Castor* writeth, was the image of a man kneeling, with his hands drawn back and bound behind him, and having a sword set to his throat : Semblably they use the name of an Ass also, as hath been said, for his uncivill rudenesse and Insolency, no lesse than in regard of his colour, wherein he resembleth *Typhon* ; and therefore the Egyptians gave unto *Ochus* a King of the Persians, whom they hated above all others as most cursed and abominable, the surname of Ass : whereof *Ochus* being advertised and saying withall, This Ass shall devour your Ox ; caused presently their Beef *Apis* to be killed and sacrificed, as *Dimon* hath left in writing. As for those who say, that *Typhon* after he had lost the field, fled six daies journey upon an Ass back, and having by this means escaped, begat two Sons, *Hierophylus* and *Judeus*, evident it is herein that they would draw the story of the Jews into this fable. And thus much of the allegorick conjectures which this tale doth afford. But now from another head, let us (of those who are able to discourse somewhat Philosophically and with reason)

V v v v v  
confer

consider first and foremost such as deal most simply in this behalf. And these be they that say, like as the Greeks allegorize that *Saturn* is time, *Juno* the air, and the generation of *Vulcan*, is the transmutation of Air into fire; even so they give out that by *Osiris* the Egyptians mean *Nilus*, which lieth and keepeth company with *Isis*, that is to say, the Earth: That *Typhon* is the Sea, into which *Nilus* falling loseth himself, and is dispatched hence and there, unless it be that portion thereof, which the Earth receiveth, and whereby it is made fertile. And upon the River *Nilus* there is a sacred lamentation, even from the days of *Saturn*: wherein there is lamenting, how *Nilus* springing and growing on the left hand, decayeth and is lost on the right: For the Egyptians do think, that the east part where the day appeareth, be the forefront and face of the World, that the North part is the right hand, and the South part the left. This *Nilus*, therefore arising on the left hand, and lost in the Sea on the right hand, is said truly to have his birth and generation in the left side, but his death and corruption in the right. And this is the reason why the Priests of Egypt have the Sea in abomination, and term Salt the fume and froth of *Typhon*. And among those things which are interdicted and forbidden this is one, that no Salt be used at the board; by reason whereof they never salute any Pilots or Sailors, for that they keep ordinarily the Sea, and get their living by it. This also is one of the principall causes, why they abhor Fishes; in such sort as when they would describe hatred, they draw or portray a Fish: like as in the porch before the Temple of *Minerva* within the City *Sai*, there was portrayed and engraven, an Infant, an old Man; after them a Falcon or some such Hawk, and close thereto a Fish, and last of all a River-Horse: which Hieroglyphicks, do symbolize and signifie thus much in effect. O all ye that come into the World, and go out of it: God hateth himselfe unjustice. For by the Hawk they understand God, by the Fish Hatred, and by the River-Horse impudent Violence and Villany, because it is said that he killeth his Father, and after that, forceth his own Mother and covereth her. And semblably it should seem, that the saying of the Pythagoreans, who give out that the Sea is a tear of *Saturn*, under covert words do mean, that it is impure and unclean. Thus have I been willing by the way to allege thus much, although it be without the train of our Fable, because they fall within the compass of a vulgar and common received History. But to return to our matter: the Priests, as many as be of the wiser and more learned sort, understand by *Osiris*, not only the River *Nilus*, and by *Typhon* the Sea: but also by the former, they signifie in one word and simply, all Vertue and power that produceth moisture and Water, taking it to be the materiall cause of generation, and the nature generative of feed: and by *Typhon* they represent all desiccative Vertue, all heat of fire and drinnes, as the very thing that is fully opposite and adverse to humidity: and hereupon it is, that they hold *Typhon* to be red of hair and of skin yellow: and by the same reason they willingly would not encounter or meet upon the way men of that hew, no nor delight to speak unto such. Contrariwise they feign *Osiris* to be of a black colour, because all Water, causeth the Earth, Clothes and Clouds to appear black with which it is mingled. Also the moisture that is in young foole maketh their hair black; but grise of hoariness, which seemeth to be a pale yellow, cometh by reason of siccity unto those who be past their flower, and now in their declining age: also the Spring time is green, fresh, pleasant, and generative: but the latter season of Autumn, for want of moisture, is an enemy to plants, and breedeth diseases in man and beast.

To speak also of that Ox or Beef named *Mnevis*, which is kept and nourished in *Heliopolis* at the common charges of the City, consecrated unto *Osiris*, and which some say, was the sire of *Apis*; black he is of hair, and honoured in a second degree after *Apis*. Moreover, the whole Land of Egypt is of all others exceeding black, such a black I mean, as that is of the eye, which they call *Chemis*, and they liken it to the heart; for hot and moist it is, and inclineth to the left and South parts of the Earth, like as the heart lieth most to the left side of a man. They affirm also, that the Sun and Moon are not mounted upon Chariots, but within Barges and Boats continually do move and sail as it were round about the World; giving us thereby covertly to understand, that they be bred and nourished by moisture. Furthermore, they think, that *Homer* (like as *Thales* also) being taught out of the Egyptians learning, doth hold and set down this position, That Water is the element and principle that engendereth all things: for they say, that *Osiris* is the Ocean, and *Isis*, *Tethys*, as one would say, the Nourish that suckleth and feedeth the whole World. For the Greeks call the ejaculation or casting forth of natural seed, *Amnis*, like as the conjunction of male and female *Amnis* also: likewise *am*, which in Greek signifieth a Son, is derived of the word *Amis*, that is to say, Water, and *Amis* betokeneth also to rain. Moreover, *Bacchus* they surname *Hys*, as one would say, the Lord and Ruler of the moist nature; and he is no other than *Osiris*. Furthermore, whereas we pronounce his name *Osiris*, *Hellenicus* putteth it down *Hyris*, saying, that he heard the very Priests themselves of Egypt pronounce it so. And thus verily calleth he the said god in every place, not without good heed of reason, having regard unto his nature and invention. But that *Osiris* is the same god that *Bacchus*, who should in all reason better know than your self (O *Clea*) considering that in the City of *Delphi* you are the Mistress and Lady Prioresse as it were of the religious Thyades, and from your infancy have been a Votary and Nun consecrated by your Father and Mother to the service of *Osiris*. But if in regard of others, we must allege testimonies, let us not meddle with their hidden secrets; howbeit, that which the Priests do in publick when they inter *Apis*, having brought his Corps in a Boat or Punt, differeth not at all from the Ceremonies of *Bacchus*: for, clad they be in Stags skins, they carry Javelins in their hands, they keep a loud crying, and of shaking their Bodies very unquietly, much after the manner of those who are transported with the fanatical & sacred fury of *Bacchus*. And what reason else should there be, that many Nations of Greece portray the statue of *Bacchus* with a Bulls head? and the Dames

among

among the Elians in their prayers and invocations do call unto him, beseeching this god to come unto them with his bulls foot? yea and the *Argives* commonly surname *Bacchus Eugene*, which is as much to say, as the son of a Cow; or engendred by a Bull: and that which more is, they invoke and call upon him out of the water with found of Trumpets, calling into a deep gulf, a Lamb, as the Portier, under the name of *Pylaeobus*. Their Trumpets they hide within their Javelins, called *Tyris*, according as *Socrates* hath written in his books of sacred Ceremonies. Moreover, the Tyrranical acts, and that whole, entire and sacred night, accord with that which is reported as touching the dismembering of *Osiris*, and the resurrection or renovation of his life: in like manner, those matters which concern his buriall. For the Egyptians shew in many places the sepulchres of *Osiris*; and the *Diphris* think, they have the bones and reliques of *Bacchus* among them, interred and bestowed near unto the Oracle: and his religious Priests call vnto him a secret sacrifice within the Temple of *Apollo*, when the Thyades who are the Priestesses begin to chant the sonnet of \* *Licities*. Now that the Greeks are of opinion, that *Bacchus* is the Lord and Governor, not of wine liquor only, but also of every other nature which is moist and liquid, the testimony of *Pindarus* is sufficient, when he saith thus: *Bacchus*

Taking the charge of trees that grow,  
Doth cause them for to bud and blow;  
The verdure fresh, and beautey pure  
Of lovely fruits he doth procure.

One of the  
Names of  
Bacchus.

And therefore it is, that those who serve and worship *Osiris* are streightly forbidden and charged, not to destroy any fruitfull Tree, nor to stop the head of any Fountain. And not only the River *Nilus*, but all water and moisture whatsoever in generall, they call the essence of *Osiris*: by reason whereof, before their sacrifices they carry alwaies in procession a Pot or Pitcher of Water, in honour of the said god.

They describe also a King and the Southern or Meridional Climat of the World, by a Fig-tree leaf, which Fig-leaf signifieth the imbibition and motion of all things: besides, it seemeth naturally to resemble the member of generation. Also, when they solemnize the feast called *Panoptia*, which as before hath been said, was instituted in the honour of *Priapus*, they shew and carry about in procession an image or statue, the genital member whereof, is thrice as big as the ordinary: for this god of theirs is the beginning of all things; and every such principle, by generation multiplieth it self. Now, we are wont moreover to say, Thrice, for many times, to wit, a finite number for an infinite, as when we use the word *Tricentarius*; that is to say, Thrice happy, for the most happy; and Three bonds, for infinite; unless peradventure this ternary or threefold number was expressly and properly chosen by our ancients. For the nature of moisture being the principle that engendereth all things, from the beginning hath engendered these three elements or primitive bodies, Earth, Air, and Fire. For that branch which is set unto the fable, to wit, that *Typhon* slung the genital member of *Osiris* into the River, that *Isis* could not finde it, but caused one to be made to resemble it, and when she was provided thereof, ordained that it should be honoured and carried in a solemn pomp; tendeth to this, for to teach us, that the generative and productive vertue of god, had moisture at the first for the matter, and by the means of the said humidity, was mixed with those things which were apt for generation. Another branch there is yet, growing to this Fable, namely, that one *Apophis* brother to the Sun, warred against *Jupiter*; that *Osiris* aided *Jupiter*, and helped him to defeat his enemy; in regard of which merit he adopted him for his Son, and named him *Dionysus*, that is to say *Bacchus*. Now the Mythology of this fable, as it evidently appeareth, accordeth covertly, with the truth of Nature: for the Egyptians call the wind *Jupiter*, unto which nothing is more contrary, than siccity, and that which is fiery; and that is not the Sun, although some consanguinity it hath unto it: but moisture coming to extinguish the extremity of that drinnes, fortifieth and augmenteth those vapors, which nourish the wind and keep it in force. Moreover, the Greeks consecrate the Ivy unto *Bacchus*, and the same is named among the Egyptians, *Chenosis*, which word, (as they say) signifieth in the Egyptian tongue, the plant of *Osiris*: at leastwise *Ariston* who inrolled a colony of the Athenians, affirmeth that he light upon an epistle of *Anaxarchus*, wherein he found as much; as also, that *Bacchus* was the Son of a water Nymph, *Naias*. Other Egyptians also there be, who hold, that *Bacchus* was the Son of *Isis*, and that he was not called *Osiris*, but *Asaphus*, in the letter *Alpha*, which word signifieth power: or valour. And thus much giveth *Hermes* to understand, in his first book of Egyptian acts; where he saith also, that *Osiris* by interpretation, is as much, as \* stout, or mighty. Here I forbear to alleage *Manus*, who referreth and ascribeth unto *Epaphus*, *Bacchus*, *Osiris*, and *Serapis*. I overpass *Anticles* likewise, who affirmeth, that *Isis* was the Daughter of *Prometheus*, and married unto *Bacchus*. For the very particular properties that we have said were in their feasts and sacrifices, yield a more clear evidence and proof, than any allegations of witnesses whatsoever. Also they hold, that among the Stars, the dog or *Sirius* was consecrated unto *Isis*, the which star draweth the water. And they know the Lion, with whose head having the mouth gaping and wide open, they adorn the Doors and Gates of their Temples, for that the River *Nilus* riseth,

So soon as in the circle Zodiacke,  
The Sun and Leo signe, encounter make.

And as they both hold and affirm, *Nilus* to be the essence of *Osiris*, even so they are of Opinion, that the Body of *Isis* is the Earth or Land of Egypt; and yet not all of it, but so much as

V v v v

Nilus

*Nilus* overfloweth, and by commixtion maketh fertile and fruitful: of which conjunction, they say, that *Orus* was ingendred, which is nothing else but the temperature and disposition of the Air, nourishing and maintaining all things. They say also, that this *Orus* was nourished within the Mores near unto the City *Butus*, by the Goddesse *Lanua*: for that the earth being well drenched and watered, bringeth forth and nourisheth vapors, which overcome, extinguish, and repress (nothing so much) great siccity and drincif. Furthermore, they call the Marches and borders of the Land, the confines also of the coasts which touch the sea, *Nephtys*: and this is the reason why they name *Nephtys*, *Telentea*, that is to say, finall or last; and say that he was married unto *Typhon*. And when *Nilus* breaketh out and overturneth his banks so, as he approacheth these borders, this they call the unlawful conjunction or adultery of *Osiris*, with *Nephtys*, the which is known by certain plants growing there, among which is the Melilot: by the seed whereof, faith the tale, when it was fixed and left behind, began *Typhon* to perceive the wrong that was done unto him in his marriage. And hereupon they say, that *Orus* was the legitimate Son of *Isis*, but *Amnis* was born by *Nephtys* in bastardy. And verily in the succession of Kings they record *Nephtys* married unto *Typhon*, to have been at first barren. Now if this be not meant of a Woman, but of a Goddesse, they understand under these enigmatical speeches, a Land altogether barren and unfruitfull, by reason of hardnesse and stiff solidity. The lying in wait of *Typhon* to surprize *Osiris*, his usurped rule and tyranny, is nothing else but the force of drincif, which was very mighty, which dissipated also and spent all that humidity that both engendred and also encrease *Nilus* to that height. As for that *Queen of Ethiopia*, who came to aid and assist him, she betokeneth the Southerly winds, coming from *Ethiopia*: for when these have the upper hand of the Etesian winds, which blow from the North, and drive the clouds into *Ethiopia*, and to hinder those flowers and glutts of rain which poure out of the clouds, and make the River *Nilus* to swell: then *Typhon*, that is to say, Drought, is said to win the better, and to burn up all, and to having gotten the mastery clean of *Nilus*, who by reason of his weaknesse and feeblenesse, is driven in, and forced to retire a contrary way, he chafeth him, poor and low into the sea. For whereas the Fable faith, that *Osiris* was that last within an Ark or Coffin, there is no other thing signified thereby, but this departure back of the water, and the hiding thereof within the sea: which is the cause also, that they say *Osiris* went out of sight in the month *Athy*, and was no more seen; at what time as when all the Etesian winds are laid and given over to blow, *Nilus* returneth unto his channell, leaving the land discovered and bare. And now by this time as the night groweth longer, the darkness encrease, like as the force of the light doth diminish and is impaired: and then the Priests among other ceremonies, testifying their sadnesse and heavy cheer, bring forth and draw a Beec with golden horns, whom they all cover with a fine veil of black silk, thereby to represent the heavy dole and mourning of the Goddesse for *Osiris*: (For thus they think, that the said Beec is the image of *Osiris*: and the vestment of black aforesaid, testifying the earth, doth signify *Isis*) and this they exhibit they four daies together; to wit, from the seventh unto the tenth following: And why? Four things there be for which they make demonstration of grief and sorrow: the first is the River *Nilus*, for that he seemeth to retire and fall: the second are the North-winds, which now are husht and still, by reason of the Southern-winds, that gain the mastery over them: the third is the Day, for that now is waxeth shorter than the night: and last of all, the discovering and nakednesse of the earth, together with the deffolving of trees, which at the very same time begin to shed and lose their leaves. After this, upon the nineteenth day at night, they go down to the sea side, and then the Priests revelled in their faced Stoles and Habits, carry forth with them, a consecrated Chell, wherein there is a vessill of gold, into which they take and poure fresh and potable water; and wish that, all those who are present set up a note and shout, as if they had found *Osiris* again: then they take a piece of fatty and fertile earth, and together with the water, knead and work it into a paste, mixing therewith most precious odors, perfumes and spices, whereof they make a little image in form of the Moon croissant, which they deck with Robes and adorn, shewing thereby evidently that they take these gods to be the substance of Water and Earth.

Thus when *Isis* had recovered *Osiris*, nourished *Orus*, and brought him up to some growth, so that he now became strengthened and fortified, by Exhalations, Vapors, Mists and Clouds, *Typhon* verily was vanquished, howbeit, not slain, for that the goddesse, which is the Lady of the Earth, would not permit and suffer, that the power or nature which is contrary unto moisture, should be utterly abolished: only she did slacken and let down the vehement force thereof, willing that this combat and strife should still continue; because the world would not have been entire and perfect, if the nature of fire had been once extinct and gone. And if this go not current among them, there is no reason and probability, that any one should project this assertion also, namely, that *Typhon* in times past overcame one part of *Osiris*: for that in old time, *Egypt* was *sea*: whereupon it is, that even at this day, within the mines wherein men dig for metals, yea, and among the mountains, there is found great store of sea fish. Likewise, all the Fountains, Wells, and Pits (and those are many in number) carry a brackish, saltish and bitter water, as if some remnant or residue of the old sea were reserved, which ran thither. But in process of time, *Orus* subdued *Typhon*, that is to say, when the seasonable raine came, which tempered the excessive heat, *Nilus* expelled and drove forth the sea, discovered the Champion ground, & filled it continually more & more by new deluges and inundations, that layed some still unto it. And hereof, the daily experience, is presented unto our eyes; for we perceive even at this day, that the overflows and rising of the River, bringing new mud, and adding fresh earth still by little and little, the sea giveth place and retireth: and

as the deep in it is filled more and more, so the superficies riseth higher, by the continuall selves that the Nile casts up; by which means, the Sea runneth backward: yea, the very isle of *Pharus*, which *Homer* knew by his days to lie far within the Sea, even a daies sailing from the continent and firm land of *Egypt*, is now a very part thereof: not for that it removed & approached neerer and neerer to the Land; but because the Sea which was between, gave place unto the River that continually made new Earth with the mud that it brought, and so maintained and augmented the main Land. But these things resemble very near, the Theologicalical interpretations that the Stoicks give out: for they hold, that the generative and nutritive Spirit, is *Bacchus*; but that which striketh and divideth, is *Hercules*; that which receiveth, is *Ammon*; that which entrench and pierceth into the earth, is *Ceres* and *Proserpine*; and that which doth penetrate farther and passe thorough the Sea, is *Neptune*. Others, who mingle among naturall causes and reasons, some drawn from the Mathematicks, and principally from Astrology, think that *Typhon* is the Solar Circle or Sphere of the Sun; and that *Osiris* is that of the Moon; inasmuch as the Moon hath a generative and vegeable light, multiplying that sweet and comfortable moisture which is so meet for the generation of living Creatures, of Trees and Plants: but the Sun having in it a pure fiery flame indeed without any mixture or rebatement at all, heateh and drieth that which the earth bringeth forth, yea, and whatsoever is verdant and in the flower; inasmuch as by his inflammation he causeth the greater part of the earth to be wholly desert and inhabitable, and many times subdueth the very Moon. And therefore the Egyptians, evermore name *Typhon*, *Seth*, which is as much to say, as ruling Lordly, and oppressing with violence. And after their fabulous manner they say, that *Hercules* sitting as it were upon the Sun, goeth about the world with him; and *Mercury* likewise with the Moon: by reason whereof, the works and effects of the Moon resemble those acts which are performed by Eloquence and Wisdom: but those of the Sun are compared to such as be exploited by force and puissance. And the Stoicks say, that the Sun is lighted and set on fire by the Sea, and therewith nourished: but they be the Fountains and Lakes which send up unto the Moon a mild, sweet and delicate vapor. The Egyptians feign, that the death of *Osiris* hapned on the seventeenth day of the month, on which day, better than upon any other, he is judged to be at the full: and this is the reason why the Pythagoreans call this day, *The oblation*, and of all other numbers they most abhor and detest it: for whereas sixteen is a number quadrangular or four-square, and eighteen longer one way than another; which numbers only of those that be plain, happen for to have the ambient unities, that environ them, equal to the spaces contained and comprehended within them; seventeen, which falleth between, separateth and disjoyneth the one from the other, and being cut into unequal intervalls, distrusteth the proportion of equall parts. And some there be who say, that *Osiris* lived, others that he reigned, eight and twenty year: for so many lights there be of the Moon, and so many daies doth the turn about her own Circle: and therefore in those Ceremonies which they call The Sepulture of *Osiris*, they cut a piece of Wood, and make a certain Coffin or Case in manner of the Moon Croissant, for that as the approacheth near to the Sun, he becometh pointed and cornered, untill in the end he come to nothing, and is no more seen. And as for the dismembred of *Osiris* into fourteen pieces, they signify unto us under the covert veil of these words. The daies wherein the said Planet is in the wane, and decreaseth even unto the change, when he is renewed again. And that day on which the first appeareth, by passing by and escaping the rates of the Sun, they call an imperfect good: for *Osiris* is a doer of good: and this name signifieth many things, but principally an active and beneficial power, as they say: and as for the other name *Omphis*, *Hermes* faith, that it betokeneth as much as a Benefactor. Also, they are of opinion, that the risings and inundations of the River *Nilus*, answer in proportion to the course of the Moon; for the greatest height that it groweth unto in the Country of *Elephantine*, is eight and twenty cubits; for so many illuminations there be, or daies, in every revolution of the Moon: and the lowest gage about *Mendes* and *Xois*, six cubits, which answereth to the first quarter: but the mean between, about the City *Memphis*, when it is just at the full, cometh to fourteen cubits, correspondent to the full Moon. They hold moreover, Apis to be the lively image of *Osiris*, and that he is engendered and bred at what time as the generative light descendeth from the Moon and toucheth the Cow desirous of the male; and therefore Apis resembleth the formes of the Moon, having many white spots obscured and darkened with the shadows of black. And this is the reason, why they solemnize a feast in the new Moon of the month Phenoth, which they call The ingress or entrance of *Osiris* to the Moon; and this is the beginning of the Spring season: and thus they put the power of *Osiris* in the Moon. They say also, that *Isis* (which is no other thing but generation) lieth with him; and so they name the Moon, Mother of the world; saying, that she is a double nature, male and female: female, in that she doth conceive and is replenished by the Sun; and male, in this regard that she sendeth forth and sprinkleth in the Air, the seeds and principles of generation: for that the dry dilmeasure and corruption of *Typhon*, is not always superfluous, but often times vanquished by generation, and howsoever tied it be an bound, yet it riseth fresh again, and fighteth against *Orus*, who is nothing else but the terrestrial World, which is not altogether free from corruption, nor yet exempt from generation. Others there be, who would have all this fiction covertly to represent no other thing but the Eclipses: for the Moon is Eclipsed, when she is at the full directly opposite to the Sun, and cometh to fall upon the shadow of the Earth: like as they say, *Osiris* was put into the Chell or Coffin aforesaid. On the other side, the seemeth to hide and darken the light of the Sun, upon certain thirtieth daies, but yet doth not wholly abolish the Sun, no more then *Isis* doth kill *Typhon*: but when *Nephtys* bringeth forth *Ana-*



his, Isis putteth her self in place: for *Nephtys* is that which is under the earth and unseen; but *Isis* that which is above, and appeareth unto us: and the circle named *Horizon*, which is common to them both, and parteth the two Hemispheres, is named *Anubis*, and in form resembleth a Dogg: for why? a Dogg fetch as well by night as by day: so that it should seem, that *Anubis* among the Egyptians hath the like power that *Proserpine* among the Greeks, being both celestially and terrestrial. Others there be, who think, that *Anubis* is *Saturn*, and because he is conceived with all things, and bringeth them forth, which in Greek the word *κυνος*, significth, therefore he is named *Kynos*, that is to say a Dogg. So that there is some hidden and mysticall secret in it, that causeth some, even still to reverence and adore a Dogg: for the time was, when more worship was done unto it in *Egypt*, than to any other beast; but after that *Cambyses* had killed *Apis*, cut him in pieces, and flung the same here and there, no other Creature would come near to tast thereof, save the Dogg only; whereupon he lost that prerogative and preeminence to be more honoured than other Beasts. Others there are, who would have the shadow of the earth, which causeth the Moon to be eclipsed when she enereth into it, to be named *Typhon*. And therefore me thinks, it were not amiss to say, that in particular there is not any one of these Expositions and Interpretations perfect by it self and right, but all of them together carry some good construction: for it is neither Drought alone, nor Wind, nor Scare yet darknesse; but all that is noisome and hurtfull whatsoever, and which hath a speciall part to hurt and destroy, is called *Typhon*. Neither must we put the principles of the whole World into Bodies that have no Life and Soul; as *Democritus* and *Epicurus* do: nor yet set down for the Workman and Framers of the first matter, a certain reason and providence, without quality (as do the Stoicks;) such a thing as hath a subsistence before and above all, and commandeth all: for impossible it is, that one sole cause, good or bad, should be the beginning of all things together; for God is not the cause of any evil, and the coageneration of the world pendeth contrary waies, like as the composition of a Lute or Bow, as *Heraclitus* saith, and according to *Euripides*,

*No things can be by themselves good or bad:*

*That things do well, a mixture must be had:*

And therefore this opinion so very ancient, is defended from Theologians and Law-givers, unto Poets and Philosophers, the certain author and beginning whereof, is not yet known: howbeit, so firmly grounded in the persuasion and belief of men, that hard it is to suppress or abolish the same; so commonly divulged not only in Conferences, Disputation, and ordinary speeches abroad, but also in sacrifices and divine ceremonies of gods service, in many places, as well among Barbarians as Greeks, to wit, that neither this World flooth and waveth at adventure, without the government of Providence and Reason, nor Reason only it is that guideth, directeth, and holdeth it (as it were) with certain Helmes or bits of Obedience, but many things there be confused and mixed, good and bad together: or to speak more plainly, there is nothing here beneath that nature produceth and bringeth forth, which of it self is pure and simple: neither is there one Drawer of two Tunes, to disperse and distribute abroad the affairs of this world, like as a Taverner or Vintner doth his Wines or other Liquors, brewing and tempering one with another. But this life is conducted by two Principles and Powers, adverse one unto another; for the one leadeth to the right hand directly, the other contrariwise turneth us aside and putteth us back: and so this life it mixt, and the very World it self, if not all throughout, yet at leastwise, this beneath about the earth, and under the Moon, is unquall, variable, and subject to all mutations that possibly may be. For if nothing there is, that can be without a precedent cause, and that which of it self is good can never minister any cause of evil; necessary it is, that nature hath some peculiar cause and beginning by it self, of good as well as of bad. And of this opinion are most part of the Ancients, and those of the wisest sort. For some think there be two gods as it were of a contrary mystery and profession; the one author of all good things, and the other of bad. Others there be who call the better of them God; and the other Demon, that is to say, Devil, as *Zoroaster* the Magician did, who by report, was five thousand years before the war of *Troy*. This *Zoroaster* (I say) named the good god *Oromazes*, and the other *Arimanius*. Moreover, he gave out, that the one resembled light, more than any sensible thing else whatsoever: the other darknesse and ignorance: and also that there is one in the mids between them, named *Mithres*: (and hereupon it is, that the Persians call an Intercessor or Mediator, *Mithres*.) He teacheth us also to sacrifice unto the one of them, for petition of good things, and for thanksgiving: but to the other, for to divert and turn away sinister and evil accidents. To which purpose they used to stamp in a mortar a certain herb which they call *Onomi*, calling upon *Pluto* and the darknesse: then they temper it with the blood of a Woolf, which they have killed in sacrifice: this done, they carry it away, and throw it into a dark corner, where the Sun never shineth. For this conceit they have, that of Herbs and Plants, some appertain unto the good god, and others to the evil Demon or Devil. Semblably of living Creatures, Dogs, Birds, and land Urchins, belong to their good god: but those of the Water, to the evil fiend. And for this cause they repute those very happy, who can kill the greatest number of them. Howbeit these Sages and wise Men report many fabulous things of the gods: as for example, that *Oromazes* is engendered of the clearest and purest light, and *Arimanius* of deep darknesse: also that they war one upon another. And the former of these created six other gods, the first of Benevolence, the second of Verity, the third of good Discipline and publick Law; and of the rest behind, one of Wisdom, another of Riches; and the sixth, which also is the last, the maker of joy for good and honest deeds. But the latter produceth as many other

\* That is to say, *Arimanius*.

in number, concurs as it were of adverse operation to the former above named. Afterwards when *Oromazes* had augmented and amplified himself three times, he removed as far from the Sun, as the Sun is distant from the Earth, adorning and embellishing the Heavens with Stars; and one Star above the rest he ordained to be the Guide, Mistress, and Overler of them all, to wit, *Sirius*, that is to say, the Dog-star. Then, after he had made four and twenty other Gods, he incloseth them all within an Egg. But the other, brought forth by *Arimanius*, who were also in equal number, never ceased until they had pierced and made a hole into the said smooth and polished Egg: and so after that, evil things became mingled pell-mell with good. But there will be time come predestinated fatally, when this *Arimanius*, who brings into the world Plague and Famine, shall of necessity be rooted out and utterly destroyed for ever, even by them; and the Earth shall become plain, even, and uniform: neither shall there be any other but one life, and one Common-wealth of men, all happy and speaking one and the same Language. *Theopompus* also writeth, that according to the wife *Magi*, these two gods must for three thousand years, conquer one after another, and for three thousand years be conquered again by turns: and then for the space of another three thousand years, levie mutuall wars, and fight battels one against the other, whiles the one shall subvert and overthrow that which the other hath set up: untill in the end *Pluto* shall faint, give over, and perish: then shall men be all in happy estate, they shall need no more food, nor cast any shadow from them; and that god who hath wrought and effected all this, shall repose himself, and rest in quiet, nor long (I say) for a god, but a moderate time as one would say for a man taking his sleep and rest. And thus much as touching the fable devised by the *Magi*. But the Chaldeans affirm that of the gods, whom they call Planets or wandering Stars, two there be that are beneficial and doers of good; two again mischievous and workers of evil; and three there are of a mean nature and common. As for the opinion of the Greeks, concerning this point, there is no man I suppose ignorant thereof: namely, that there be two portions or parts of the world, the one good allotted unto *Jupiter Olympius*, that is to say, Celestiall; another bad, appertaining to *Pluto*, Infernall. They fable moreover, and feign, that the goddess *Harmonia*, that is to say, Accord, was engendered of *Mars* and *Venus*: of whom, the one is cruel, grim, and quarrellous; the other mild, lovely, and generative. Now consider the Philosophers themselves, how they agree herein: For *Heraclitus* directly and diversly nameth war, the Father, King, and Lord of all the world; saying, that *Homer* when he wiseth and prayeth,

*Both out of Heaven and Earth to banish war,*

*That God and Men no more might be at jar,*

wist not how (ere he was aware) he cursed the generation and production of all things, which indeed have their effience and being by the sight and antipathie in nature. He was ignorant that the Sun would not pass the bounds and limits appointed unto him; for otherwise the furies and cursed tongues which are the Ministresses and Coadjutresses of Justice would find him out. As for *Empedocles*, he saith, that the beginning and principle which worketh good, is Love and Amity, yea, and otherwhiles is called Harmony by *Metaps*: but the cause of evil,

*Malice, Hatred, cankered spite,*

*Quarrell, Debate, and bloody fight.*

Come now to the Pythagoreans, they demonstrate and specify the same by many names: for they call the good principle, One, finite, permanent or quiet, straight or direct, odd, quadrat or square, right and lightsome: but the bad, twain, infinite, moving, crooked, even, longer one way more than another, unequal, left and dark, as if these were the Fountains of generation. *Anaxagoras* calleth them the Mind or Understanding and Infinity. *Aristotle* termeth the one Form, the other Privation. And *Plato* under dark and covert termes hiding his opinion, in many places calleth the former of these two contrary principles, *The Same*, and the Latter, *The other*. But in the Bookes of his Lawes, which he wrote when he was now well steep in years, he giveth them no more any obscure and ambiguous names, neither describeth he them symbolically and by enigmaticall and intricate means, but in proper and plain terms, he saith, that this work is not moved and managed by one sole cause, but haply by many, or at leastwise no fewer than twain: whereof the one is the Creatour and worker of good, the other opposite unto it and operative of contrary effects. He leaveth also and alloweth a third cause between, which is neither without Soul nor reasonless; yet yet unmoveable of it self, as some think, but adjacent and adherent to the other twain, howbeit inclining alwaies to the better, as having a desire and appetite thereto, which it pursueth and followeth, as that which hereafter we will deliver shall show more manifestly, which Treatise shall reconcile the Egyptian Theology with the Greeks Philosophy, and reduce them to a very good concordance: for that the Generation, Composition, and Constitution of this World is mingled of contrary powers, howbeit the same not of equal force: for the better is predominant: but impossible it is that the evil should utterly perish and be abolished, so deeply it is imprinted in the Body, and so far inbred in the Soul of the universal World, in opposition alwaies to the better, and to war against it. Now then, in the Soul, Reason and Understanding, which is the Guide, and Mistress of all the best things, is *Osiris*. Also in the Earth, in the Winds, in Water, Sky and the Stars, that which is well ordained, stayed, disposed and digested in good sort, by temperate Seasons and Revolutions, the same is called the defluxion of *Osiris*, and the very apparent image of him: Contrariwise, the passionate, violent, unreasonable, brutish, rash and foolish part of the Soul, is *Typhon*: Semblably in the bodily nature, that which is extraordinarily adventurous, unholmes and diseased, as for example,

the troubled air and tempestuous indispersions of the weather, the obscuration or Eclipse of the Sun, the defect of the Moon and her occultation, be as it were the excursions, deviations out of course, and dislocations: and all of them be *Typhons*, as the very interpretation of the Egyptian word significeth no lesse: for *Typhon* they name *Sety*, which is as much to say, as violent and oppressing after a Lordly manner. It importeth also many times reversion, and otherwhiles an insultation or supplantation. Moreover some there be who say, that one of *Typhons* familiar friends was named *Beban*. But *Maenius* affirmeth, that *Typhon* himself was called *Beban*, which word by interpretation is as much as cohibition, restraint or impeachment, as if the puissance and power of *Typhon* were to stay and withstand the affairs that are in good way of proceeding, and tend as they should do, to a good end. And hereupon it is that of tame Beasts they dedicate and attribute unto him, the most grosse and indocible of all others, namely an Asse: but of wild Beasts the most cruell and savage of all others, as the Crocodiles and River-horses. As for the Asse, we have spoken before of him. In the City of *Mercury*, named *Hermopolis*, they shew unto us the image of *Typhon*, portrayed under the form of a River-horse, upon whom sitteth an Hawk, fighting with a Serpent. By the foresaid Horse they represent *Typhon*: and by the Hawk, the power and authority which *Typhon* having gotten by force maketh no care oftentimes both to trouble and also to trouble others by his malice. And therefore, when they solemnize a sacrifice, the seventh day of the month *Tybi*, which they call the coming of *Isis* out of *Phenicia*, they devise upon their hallowed Cakes for sacrifice, a River-horse, as it were tied and bound. In the City of *Apollo*, the manner and custom confirmed by Law was, that every one must eat of a Crocodile: and upon a certain day they have a solemn chase and hunting of them, when they kill as many of them as they can, and then cast them all before the Temple: and they say, that *Typhon* being become a Crocodile hath escaped from *Orus*: attributing all dangerous wicked Beasts, all hurtfull plants and violent passions unto *Typhon*, as if they were his works, his parts or operations. Contrariwise they portray and depict unto us *Osiris*, by a Scepter and an Eye upon it: meaning by the Eye Foresight and Providence, by the Scepter authority and puissance: like as *Homer* nameth *Jupiter* who is the Prince, Lord and Ruler of all the world, *Hypatos*, that is Sovereign and *Megeghas*, that is, Foreseeing: giving us to understand, by Sovereign, his supreme Power, by foreseeing his Prudence and Wisdom. They represent *Osiris* also many times by an Hawk, for that the hawk hath a wonderful clean and quick sight, his flight also is as swift, and he is wont naturally to sustain his self with very little food. And more than that (by report) when the flieth over dead bodies unburied, he casteth mould and earth upon their Eyes. And look whensoever he flieth down to the River for to drink the fletcher upon her waters straight upright, but when he hath drunk the layeth them plain and even again, by which it appeareth that fate the hawk is and hath escaped the Crocodile: For if the Crocodile seize upon her and catch her up, her pinnach abideth stiff and upright as before. But generally throughout wheresoever the image of *Osiris* is exhibited in the form of a man, they portray him with the natural members of generation stiff and straight, prefiguring thereby the generative and nutritive virtue. The habillment also, where-with they clad his images is bright, shining like fire: for they repute the Sun to be a body representing the power of goodnesse, as being the visible matter of a spiritual and intellectuall substance. And therefore their opinion deserveth to be rejected who attribute unto *Typhon* the first age of the Sun, considering that unto him properly appertaineth nothing that is resplendent, healthfull and comfortable, no disposition, no generation or motion which is ordered with measure or digested by reason: But either in the air or upon the earth there be any unseasonable disposition of winds, of weather, or water, it hapneth when the primitive cause of a disordinate and indeterminate power commeth to exhalasse the kinde vapors and exhalations. Moreover in the sacred hymns of *Osiris*, they invoke and call upon him who lieth at repose hidden within the armes of the Sun. Also upon the thirtieth day of the month *Epiphy*, they solemnize the feast of the Nativity or birth of *Osiris*: Eyes: at what time as the Sun and Moon be in the same direct line: as being perswaded that not only the Moon but the Sun also is the Eye and Signet of *Osiris*: Likewise upon the twentieth eighth day of the month *Phaopi*, they celebrate another feast of the Sun as of a husband or flaves, and that is after the *Aequinox* in Autumn, giving covertly thereby to understand, that the Sun hath need of an appuy or supporter to rest upon and to strengthen him, because his heat then begins to decay and languish sensibly, his light also to diminish and decline obliquely from us. Moreover about the Solstice or middle of Winter, they carry about his Temple seven times a Cow: and this procession is called the seeking of *Osiris*, or the Revolution of the Sun, as if the goddess then desired the waters of Winter: And so many times they do it, for that the course of the Sun, from the Winter Solstice unto the Summer Solstice is performed in the seventh month. It is said moreover, that \* *Horus* the Sun of *Isis* was the first who sacrificed unto the Sun, the fourteenth day of the month, according as is written in a certain book as touching the Nativity of *Horus*: howsoever every day they offer incense and sweet odors unto the Sun three times: First at the Sun Rising, Rosin: Secondly about Noon, Myrrh: And Thirdly at the Sun Setting, a certain composition named Kipi. The mysticall meaning of which Perfumes and Odors, I will hereafter declare: but they are perswaded that in all this they worship and honor the Sun. But what need is there to gather and collect a number of such matters as these? seeing there be some who openly maintain that *Osiris* is the Sun, and that the Greeks call him *Sirius*, but the Article which the Egyptians put before, to wit, [O] is the cause that so much is not evidently perceived: as also that *Isis* is nothing else but the Moon: and of her images those that have horns upon them, signify no other thing but the Moon Croissant: but such as are covered and clad in black, broken those days wherein the is hidden

or

ordarkened, namely, when the runneth after the Sun: which is the reason that in love matters they invoke the Moon. And *Eudoxus* himself saith, that *Isis* is the president over amatorious folk. And verily in these ceremonies there is some probability and likelihood of truth. But to say that *Typhon* is the Sun, is to absurd, that we ought not so much as give ear to those who affirm so. But return we now to our former matter. For *Isis* is the feminine part of nature, apt to receive all generation, upon which occasion called she is by *Plato*, the Nurse, and *Pandectes*, that is to say, capable of all: yea and the common sort name her *Amyriomys*, which is as much to say, as having an infinite number of names, for that she receiveth all formes and shapes, according as it pleaseth that first reason to convert and turn her. Moreover, there is imprinted in her naturally, a love of the first and principall essence, which is nothing else but the sovereign good, and it the desireth, seeketh, and pursueth after. Contrariwise, she flieth and repelleth from her, any part and portion that proceedeth from ill. And howsoever she be the subject matter, and meet place apt to receive as well one as the other, yet of it self, enclined she is alwaies rather to the better, and applieth her self to engender the same yea, and to disseminate and sow the defluxions and similitudes thereof, wherein she taketh pleasure and rejoiceth, when she hath conceived and is great therewith, ready to be delivered. For this is a representation and description of the substance engendered in matter, and nothing else but an imitation of that which is. And therefore you may see it is not besides the purpose, that they imagine and devise the Soul of *Osiris* to be eternall and immortal: but as for the body, that *Typhon* many times doth tear, mangle, and abolish it, that it cannot be seen: and that *Isis* goeth goeth up and down, wandering here and there, gathering together the dismembred pieces thereof, for that which is good and spiritual, by consequence is not any waies subject to change and alteration: but that which is sensible and material doth yield from it self certain images, admitting withall and receiving sundry proportions, forms, and similitudes, like as the prints and stamps of scales set upon wax, do not continue and remain alwaies, but are subject to changes, alteration, disorder, and trouble, and this same was chased from the superior region, and sent down hither, where it fighteth against *Horus* whom *Isis* engendered sensible, as being the very Image of the spiritual and intellectuall world. And hereupon it is, that *Typhon* is said to accuse him of Bastardy, as being nothing pure and sincere, like unto his father, to wit, Reason and Understanding; which of it self is simple, and not medled with any passion: but in the matter adulterate and degenerate, by reason that it is corporall. Howbeit, in the end the victory is on *Mercurys* side, for he is the discourse of reason, which testifieth unto us, and sheweth, that nature hath produced this world materiall metamorphosed to the spiritual form: for the nativity of *Apollo*, engendered between *Isis* and *Osiris*, whiles the gods were yet in the belly of *Rhea*, symbolizeth thus much, that before the world was evidently brought to light and fully accomplished, the matter of reason, being found naturally of it self rude and unperfected, brought forth the first generation: for which cause they say, that god being as yet lame, was born and begotten in darkness, whom they call the elder *Horus*. For the world yet it was not, but an image only and design of the world, and a bare fantasie of that which should be. But this *Horus* here is determinate, definite and perfect, who killeth not *Typhon* right out, but taketh from him his force and puissance that he can do little or nothing. And hereupon it is, that (by report) in the City *Coptus*, the image of *Horus* holdeth in one hand the genital member of *Typhon*: and they fable belides, that *Mercury* having bereft him of his sinewes, made thereof strings for his harp, and so used them. Hereby they teach, that reason framing the whole world, set it in time, and brought it to accord, forming it of those parts which before were at jar and discord: howbeit removed not, nor abolished altogether the pernicious and hurtfull nature, but accomplished the vertue thereof. And therefore it is, that it being feeble and weak, wrought also (as it were) and intermingled or interlaced with those parts and members which be subject to passions and mutations, causeth Earthquakes, and Tremblings, excessive Heats, and extreme Dineils, with extraordinary Winds in the Air, besides Thunder, Lightnings, and fiery Tempests. It imposeth moreover the Waters and winds, infecting them with Pestilence, reaching up and bearing the head aloft, as far as to the Moon, obscuring and darkning many times even that which is by nature clean and shining. And thus the Egyptians do both think and say, that *Typhon* sometime strook the Eye of *Horus*, and another while plucked it out of his head and devoured it, and then afterwards delivered it again unto the Sun. By the striking aforesaid, they mean ænigmatically the wane or decrease of the Moon monthly: by the totall privation of the Eyes, they understand her eclipse and defect of light: which the Sun doth remedy by relumination of her straight waies, as soon as she is gotten past the shade of the earth. But the principal & more divine nature is composed and consisteth of three things, to wit, of an intellectuall nature, of matter, and a compound of them both, which we call the world. Now, this intellectuall part, *Plato* nameth *Idea*, the pattern also of the Father: as for matter, he termeth it a Mother, Nurse, a foundation also and a plot or place for generation: and that which is produced of both, he is wont to call the issue and thing procreant. And a man may very well conjecture, that the Egyptians compared the nature of the whole world, especially to this, as the fairest triangle of all other. And *Plato* in his books of Policy or Common-wealth, seemeth also to have used the same, when he composeth and describeth his nuptiall figure: which triangle is of this sort: that the side which maketh the right angle, is of three, the basis of four, and the third line called *Hypotenuse* of five, equivalent in power to the other two that comprehend it: so that the line which directly falleth plumb upon the base, must answer proportionably to the male: the base to the female, and the *Hypotenuse* to the issue of them both. And verily, *Osiris* representeth the beginning and principle: *Isis* that which

which receiveth; and *Horus* the compound of both. For the number of three is: the first odd and perfect; the quaternary is the first square or quadrat number, composed of the first even number, which is two; and five resembleth purely the Father, and in part the Mother, as consisting both of two and three. And it shall seem also that the very name *Isis*, which is the universall world, was deriv'd of *Isis*, that is to say, five, and so in Greek *πενταράδης*, in old time signified as much as to number: and that which more is, five being multiplied in it self, maketh a quadrat number, to wit twenty five, which is just as many letters as the Egyptians have in their Alphabet, and to many yeers *Apis* also lived. And as for *Horus*, they used to call him *Kaimon*, which is as much to say, as fecund, for that this world is fertile and visible. *Isis* likewise is sometimes called Mouth, otherwhiles *Achyri* or *Methyer*. And by the first of these names, they signify a Mother: by the second, the fair house of *Horus*, like as *Plato* termeth it to be the place capable of generation: the third is compounded of Full and the cause: for Matter is full of the world, as being married and keeping company with the first principle, which is good, pure, and beautifully adorned. It should seem hapsly also, that the Poet *Hesiodus*, when he saith, that all things at the first were Chaos, Earth, Tartarus, and Love, grounded upon no other principles than those, which are signified by these names, meaning by the Earth *Isis*; by Love *Osiris*; and by Tartarus *Typhon*; as we have made demonstration. For by *Chaos* it seems that he would understand some place and receptacle of the world. Moreover, in some sort these matters require the fable of *Plato*, which in his book intitled *Symposium*, *Socrates* inferred, namely, wherein he setteth down the generation of Love: saying that *Penia*, that is to say, Poverty, desirous to have Children, went and lay with *Pores*, that is to say, riches, and flattered him, by whom she conceived with Child, and brought forth Love: who naturally is long and variable; and begotten of a Father who is good, wise, and all-sufficient; and of a Mother who is poor, needy, and for want, desirous of another, and evermore seeking and following after it. For the foresaid *Pores*, is no other, but the first thing amiable, desirable, perfect and sufficient. As for *Penia*, it is matter, which of it self is evermore bare, needy, wanting that which is good, whereby at length it is conceived with Child, after whom she hath a longing desire, and evermore ready to receive somewhat of him. Now *Horus* engendred between them (which is the world) is not eternall, nor impassible, nor incorruptible, but being evermore in generation, he endeavoureth by vicissitude of mutations, and by periodical passion, to continue always young, as if he should never die and perish. But of such fables as these we must make use, not as of reasons, altogether really subsisting: but so as we take out of each of them, that which is meet and convenient to our purpose. When as therefore we say Matter, we are not to rely upon the opinions of some Philosophers, and to think it for to be a body without soul, without quality, continuing in it self idle, and without all action whatsoever; for we call oil the matter of a perfume or ointment; and gold the matter of an image or statue, which notwithstanding is not void of all similitude: and even so we say, that the very soul and understanding of a man, is the matter of Virtue and of Science, which we give unto reason, for to bring into order, and adorn. And some there were, who affirmed the mind or understanding to be the proper place of forms, and as it were, the expresse mould of intelligible things: like as there be Naturalists who hold, that the seed of a woman hath not the power of a principle serving to the generation of man, but standeth instead of matter and nourishment only: according unto whom, we also being grounded herein, are to think that this goddesse having the fruition of the first and chief god, and conversing with him continually, for the love of those good things and vertues which are in him, is nothing adverse unto him, but loveth him as her true spouse and lawfull Husband: and like as we sa, that an honest wife who enjoyeth ordinarily the company of her Husband, loveth him never the lesse, but hath still a mind unto him; even so giveth not she over to be enamoured upon him, although she be continually where he is, and replenished with his principall and most sincere parts. But when and whereas *Typhon* in the end thrusteth himself between, and setteth upon the extreme parts, then and there the seemeth to be sad and heavy, and thereupon is said to mourn and lament, yea and seek up certain remedies and pieces of *Osiris*, and ever as he can find any, the receiveth and arrayeth them with all diligence, and as they are ready to perish and corrupt, she carefully tendeth and keepeth them close, like as again she produceth and bringeth forth other things to light of her self. For the reasons, the Ides and the influences of God, which are in Heaven and amongst the Stars, do there continue and remain: but those which be disseminate among the sensible and passible bodies, in the Earth and in the Sea, diffused into the plants and living Creatures, the same dying and being buried, do many times revive and rise again fresh by the means of generations. And hereupon the fable saith thus much more, that *Typhon*, cohabited and lyeth with *Nephthys*, and that *Osiris* also by stealth and secretly, keepeth company with her: for the corruptive and destroying power, doth principally possesse the extreme parts of that matter which they name *Nephthys* and death: and the generative and preserving vertue, conferreth into it life itself, and the same weak and feeble, as being married and destroyed by *Typhon*: unless it be so much as *Isis* gathereth up and saveth, which she also nourisheth and maintaineth. But in one word, and to speak more generally, he is still better, as *Plato* and *Aristotle* are of opinion: for the natural puissance to engender and to preserve, moveth toward him as to a substance and being: whereas, that force of killing and destroying moveth behind, toward non subsistence: which is the reason, that they call the one *Isis*, that is to say, a motion animate and wife; as if the word were deriv'd of *Isis*, which signifieth to move by a certain science and reason, for a barbarous word it is not. But like as the general name of all gods and goddesse, to wit, *Theos*, is deriv'd of *θεω* *τὸ* *σταθ*, that is to say,

say, of visible, and *αὐτὸ* *τὸ* *σταθ*, that is to say, of running; even so, both we and also the Egyptians, have called this goddesse *Isis*, and *Isis*, of intelligence and motion together. Semblably *Plato* saith, that in old time, when they said *Isis*, they meant *Osiris*, that is to say, sacredly like as *Nesfis* also & *Phonessis*, quasi *φύσις*; that is to say, the stirring & motion of the Understanding, being carried & going forward: & they imposed this word *Osiris*, to those who have found out and discovered Goodness and Vertue: but contrariwise, have by reproachfull names noted such things as impeach binder and flay the course of natural things, binding them so, as they can not go forward, to wit, *κακία*, Vice, *αἰσέλις*, Indigence, *δυσία*, Covetousness, and *αἰσέλις*, Grief, as if they kept them from *Isis*, or *Isis*, that is to say, free progress and proceeding forward. As for *Osiris*, a word it is composed of *οὐρανός* and *Isis*, that is to say, holy and sacred; for he is the common reason or Idea, of things above in Heaven, and beneath: of which our ancients were wont to call the one, *fort*, *Isis*, that is to say, sacred; and the other *Isis*, that is to say, holy. The reason also which moveth celestial things, and such as move upward, is called *Anubis*; & otherwhiles *Harmambis*; as if the one game were meet for those above, & the other for them beneath: whereupon they sacrificed unto the former a white Cock, & to the other a yellow or of fawn colour; for that they thought those things above pure simple and shining; but those beneath, mixed of a medly colour. Neither are we to marvel, that these terms are disguised to the fashion of Greek words; for an infinite number of more there be, which have been transported out of Greece with those men who departed from thence into exile, & there remain until this day as strangers without their native Country: whereof some there be which cause Poetry to be slandered, for calling them into use, as if it spake barbarously, namely, by those who term such Poetical and obscure words, *Colas*. But in the Books of *Hermes* or *Mercury*, so called, there is written by report, thus much concerning sacred names, namely, that the power ordained over the circular motion & revolution of the Sun, the Egyptians call *Horus*, & the Greeks *Apollō*: that which is over the wind, some name *Osiris*, others *Sarapis*, and some again in the Egyptian language *Sabti*, which signifieth as much as conception or to be with Child: and thereupon it is, that by a little deflection of the name, in the Greek tongue that Canticular or Dog-fish is called *Kory*, which is thought appropriate unto *Isis*. Well I wot, that we are not to strive as touching names, yet would I rather give place unto the Egyptians about the name *Sarapis* than *Osiris*; for this is a meer Greek word, whereas the other is a stranger: but as well the one as the other signifyeth the same power of Divinity. And hereto accordeth the Egyptian language; for many times they term *Isis* by the name of *Minerva*, which in their tongue signifieth as much, as I am come of my self. And *Typhon*, as we have already said, is named *Sib*, *Bebon*, and *Sny*, which words broken all, a violent flay and impeachment, a contrariety and a diversion or turning aside another way. Moreover, they call the Loadstone or Siderite, the bone of *Horus*; like as Iron, the bone of *Typhon*, as *Manethus* is mine Author: for as the Iron seemeth otherwhiles to follow the said Loadstone, and sufferech it self to be drawn by it, and many times for it again, returneth back and is repelled to the contrary: even so, the good and comfortable motion of the World endued with reason, by persuasive speeches doth convert, draw into it, and mollifie that hardness of *Typhon*: but otherwhiles again, the same returneth back into it self, and is hidden in the depth of penury and impossibility. Over and besides, *Eudoxus* saith, that the Egyptians devise of *Jupiter* this fiction, that both his legs being grown together in one, that he could not go at all, for very lame he kept in a desert Wilderness: but *Isis*, by cutting and dividing the same parts of the body, brought him to his sound and upright going again. Which Fable giveth us covertly thus to understand, that the Understanding and Reason of God in it self going invisibly, and after an unseen manner, proceedeth to generation by the means of motion. And verily, that brazen Timbrel which they founded and rung at the Sacrifices of *Isis*, named *Sistrum*, sheweth evidently, that all things ought to move, that is to say, to better and shake, and never cease moving, but to be awakened and raised, as if otherwise they were drowsie, lay asleep and languished: for is said that they turn back and repulse *Typhon* with their Timbrels aforesaid, meaning thereby, that whereas Corruption doth bind and flay nature, generation again unbindeth and stretch it work by the means of motion. Now the said *Sistrum* being in the upper part round, the curvature and work thereof comprehendeth four things that are stirred and moved: for that part of the World which is subject to Generation and Corruption, is comprehended under the sphere of the Moon, within which all things move and alter by the means of the four Elements, Fire, Earth, Water and Air. Upon the *Abis* or rundle of the *Sistrum* toward the top, they engrave the form of a Cat with a mans face; but beneath, under those things which are shaken, one while they engrave the visage of *Isis*, another while of *Nephthys*; signifying by these two faces, Nativity and Death: for these be the motions and mutations of the Elements. By the Cat, they understand the Moon, for the variety of the skin, for the operation and work in the night season, and for the fruitfulness of this Creature: for it is said, that at first she beareth one Kitting, at the second time two, the third time three, then four, afterwards five, and so to seven; so that in all she bringeth forth 28, which are the dayes of every Moon. And howsoever this may seem fabulous, yet for certain it is true, that the apuls or sights of these Cats are full and large when the Moon is at full; but contrariwise, draw in and become smaller as the Moon is in the wane. As for the visage of a man, which they attribute unto the Cat, they represent thereby the wily subtilty and reason about the mutations of the Moon. But to knit up all this matter in few words, reason would, that we should think neither the Sun nor the Water, neither Earth nor Heaven to be *Isis* or *Osiris*; no more than exceeding Drought, extreme Heat, Fire and Sea, is *Typhon*: but simply, whatsoever in such things is out of measure and extraordinary either in excess or defect, we ought to attribute it unto *Typhon*: contrariwise, all that

that is well disposed, ordered, good and profitable, we must believe it to be the work verily of *Isis*, but the Image, example and reason of *Osiris* : which we honour and adore in this sort, we shall not fin or do amide : and that which more is, we shall remove and stay the unbelief and doubtfull scrupulosity of *Endow*, who asked the reason, why *Ceres* had no charge and superintendence over Love matters, but that care lay upon *Isis*, and why *Bacchus* could neither make the River *Nilus* to swell and overflow, nor govern and rule the dead : for if we should allege one generall and common reason for all, we deem these gods to have been ordained for the pottion and dispensation of good things, and whatsoever in nature is good and beautiful, it is by the grace and means of these deities ; while the one yeeldeth the first principles, and the other receiveth and \* distributeth the same : by which means we shall be able to satisfie the multitude, and meet with those mechanickall and odious fellows ; whether they delight in the change and variety of the air, according to the seasons of the year, or in the procreation of fruit, or in the fierce and illings, appropriating and applying thereto what hath been delivered of these gods ; wherein they take pleasure, saying, that *Osiris* is interred, when the seed is covered in the ground ; that he reviveth and riseth again to light ; when it beginneth to sprout. And hereupon it is said, that *Isis* when she perceived her self to be conceived and with Child, hangeth about her neck a preservative the sixth day of the month *Phaophi*, and is delivered of *Harpocrates* about the Solstice of Winter, being as yet imperfect, and cometh to maturity in the prime of the first flowers and buds ; which is the reason that they offer unto her the first fruits of Lentile new sprung and solemnize the Feast and Holidays of her Childbirth and lying in after the Equinox of the Spring : for when the vulgar sort hear this, they rest herein, take contentment, and believe it straightwaies, drawing a probability for belief, out of ordinary things which are daily ready at hand. And verily, herein there is no inconvenience, if first and formost they make these gods common, and not proper and peculiar unto the Egyptians, neither comprise *Nilus* only and the Land which *Nilus* watereth, under these names, nor in naming their Meeres, Lakes and Lotes, and the nativity of their gods, deprive all other men of those great gods, among whom there is neither *Nilus*, nor *Butus*, nor *Memphis* ; yet nevertheless acknowledge and have in reverence the goddess *Isis* and other gods about her, of whom they have learned not long since to name some with the Egyptian appellations : but time out of mind they knew their vertue and power, in regard whereof they have honoured and adored them. Secondly, which is a far greater matter, to the end they should take heed and be afraid, lest ere they are aware, they dissolve and displace these divine powers in Rivers, Winds, Sowing, Plowing and other passions and alterations of the earth ; as they do, who hold, that *Bacchus* is Wine, *Vulcan* the flame of Fire, and *Proserpina* (as *Cleantes* said in one place) the Spirit that bloweth and pierceth thorow the fruits of the Earth. A Poet there was, who writing of Reapers and Mowers, said :

*What time young men their hands to Ceres put,  
And her with booke and sickle by piece meal cut.*

And in no respect differ they from those, who think the Sails, Cables, Cordage and Anchor, are the Pilots, or that the Thred and Yarn, the warp and woof, be the Weaver ; or that the Goblet and position Cup, the Perfume or the Mede and honied water, is the Physician. But verily in so doing, they imprint absurd and blasphemous opinions of the gods, tending to Atheism and impiety, attributing the names of gods unto nature and things senseless, lifeless and corruptible, which of necessity men use as they need them ; and cannot chuse but mar and destroy the same. For we must in no wise think that these very things be gods ; for nothing can be a god which hath no Soul, and is subject to man and under his hand : but thereby we know, that they be gods who give us them to use, and for to be perdurable and sufficient : not these in one place, and those in another, neither Barbarians nor Greeks, neither Meridionall nor Septentrionall ; but like as the Sun and Moon, the Heaven, Earth, and Sea are common unto all, but yet in divers places called by sundry names : even so of one and the same intelligence that ordereth the whole World, of the same providence which dispenseth and governeth all, of the ministeriall powers subordinate over all, sundry honors and appellations according to the diversity of Laws have been appointed. And the Priests and religious, professed in such Ceremonies, use Mysteries and Sacraments, some obscure, others more plain and evident, to train our Understanding to the knowledge of the Deity : howbeit, without perill and danger ; for not that some misfing the right way, are fallen into superstition ; and others avoiding superstition as it were a Bogg or Quavermire, have run before they could take heed, upon the rock of impiety. And therefore, it behoveth us in this case especially to be inducted by the direction of Philosophy, which may guide us in these holy Contemplations, that we may worthily and religiously think of every thing said and done to the end, that it befall not unto us as unto *Theodorus*, who said, that the doctrine which he tendered and reached out with the right hand, some of his Scholars received and took with the left ; even so, by taking in a wrong sense and otherwise than is meet and convenient, that which the Laws have ordained touching Feasts and Sacrifices, we grossly offend. For, that all things ought to have a reference unto reason, a man may see and know by themselves : for celebrating a Feast unto *Mercury* the nineteenth day of the first month, they eat hony and figs, saying withall, this Mo, *Sweet is the truth*. As to that Phyladery or preservative, which they seing *Isis* to wear when she is with Child, by interpretation it significeth, A true voice. As for *Harpocrates*, we must not imagin him to be some young god, and not come to ripe years, nor yet a man ; but he is the superintendent and reformer of mens Language as touching the gods, being yet new, imperfect, and not distinct nor articulate ; which is the reason, that he holdeth a seal-ring before his mouth, as a sign and mark of taciturnity and silence.

[Alfo

Alfo in the month *Mesori*, they represent unto him certain kinds of Pulse, saying withall, The tongue is Fortune : The tongue is Dæmon. Now of all Plants which *Egypt* bringeth forth, they consecrate the Peach-tree unto him especially, because the fruit resemblen an Heart, and the least a Tongue : For of all those things which naturally are in man, there is nothing more divine than the Tongue and Speech, as touching the gods principally, neither in any thing cometh he nearer unto beatitude : and therefore I advise and require every man who repairth hither and cometh down to this Oracle, to entertain holy thoughts in his heart, and to utter seemly words with his tongue, whereas the common sort of people in their publick feasts and solemn processions do many ridiculous things, notwithstanding they proclame and pronounce formerly by the voyce of the Cryer and B-cle in the beginning of such solemnities, to keep silence, or speak none but good words : and yet afterwards they cease not but to give out most blasphemous speeches, and to think as basely of the gods. How then shall men behave and demean themselves in those heavy and mournfull sacrifices from whence all mirth and laughter is banished, if it be not lawfull either to omit any thing of the accustomed and usual Ceremonies, or to confound and mingle the opinions of the gods with absurd and false suspitions ? The Greeks do many fable things unto the Egyptians even in manner at the very same time : For at *Athen* in the feast called *Theophoria* to the honour of *Ceres*, the Women do fast, sitting upon the ground : And the Boeotians make a rising and removing of the houses of *Achea*, naming this feast *ἰσχυρὸν*, that is to say, odious : as if *Ceres* were in heaviness and sorrow for the descent of her Daughter *Proserpina* into Hell : and this is that month wherein the Stars called *Pleiades* appear, and when the husbandmen begin to sow, which the Egyptians name *Athy*, the Athenians *Ἰανεισιον*, and the Boeotians *Danatrios*, as one would say *Cerealis*. And *Theopompus* writeth, that the people inhabiting Weltward, do both think and also call the Winter *Saturn*, the Summer *Venus*, and the Spring *Proserpina* : and that of *Saturn* and *Venus* all things be ingendered. The Phrygians also imagining that God lieth all Winter, and lieth awake in the Summer ; thereupon celebrate in one season, the feast of lying in bed and sleeping ; in the other of experection or waking, and that with much drinking and belly cheer. But the Paphlagonians say, that he is bound & kept in ward as a Prisoner during Winter, and in the Spring enlarged again and set at liberty when he beginneth to stir and move. Now the very time giveth us occasion to suspect, that the heavy countenance and austerity which they shew, is because the fruits of the earth be then hidden : which fruits our Ancients in times past never thought to be gods, but the profitable and necessary gifts of the gods, availing much to live civilly, and not after a savage and beastly manner. But at what time of the year as they saw the fruits from the trees to fall and fall at once ; and those which themselves had sown, with much ado, by little and little opening and cleaving the earth with their own hands and so covering and hilling the same, without any assured hope what would betide thereupon, and whether the same would come to any proof and perfection or no, they did many things like unto those that commit dead bodies to the earth, and mourn therefore. Moreover, like as we say, that he who bueth the books of *Plato*, bueth *Plato* : and who is the actor of *Menander* Comedies, is said to act and play *Menander* : Semblably, they did not spare and forbear to give the names of the celestiall gods unto their gifts and inventions, honouring the same with all reverence, for the use and need they had of them. But they who come after, taking this grossly and foolishly, and upon ignorance unskillfully returning upon the gods the accidents of their fruits ; not only called their preference and fruition, the nativity of the gods ; and their absence or want of them, the death and departure of the gods ; but also believed so much, and were persuaded fully so : In such wise as they have filled themselves with many absurd, lewd and confused opinions of the said gods. And yet verily, the error and absurdity of their opinions they had evidently before their eyes presented by *Xenophanes* the Colophonian, or other Philosophers after him, who admonished the Egyptians, that if they reputed them gods, they should not lament for them : and if they mourned, they should not take them for gods : as also it was a ridiculous mockery, in their lamentations to pray unto them for to produce new fruits and bring them unto perfection for them, to the end that they might be consumed again and lamented for. But the case stands not so : for they bewail the fruits that are gone and spent, but they pray unto the gods, the Authors and givers thereof, that they would vouchsafe to bestow upon them new, and make them grow in supply of those which were perished and lost. Right well therefore was it said of the Philosophers, that those who have not learned to hear and take words aright, receive also and use the things themselves amiss : as for example, the Greeks who were not taught nor accustomed to call the statues of brasse and stony or painted images, the statues and images made to the honour of the gods, but the gods themselves : and afterward were so bold, as to say, that *Lachares* depolled and stripped *Minerva* out of her clothes, and that *Dionysius* the Tyrant polled *Apollo* who had a peruke or bush of golden hair ; also that *Jupiter Capitolinus* during the civil war was burnt and consumed with fire. And thus they see not, how in so doing they draw and admit false and erroneous opinions which follow upon such manner of speeches. And herein the Egyptians of all other Nations have faulted most, about the beasts which they honour and worship. For the Greeks verily in this point both believe and also speak well, saying that the Dove is a bird sacred unto *Venus*, the Dragon to *Minerva*, the Raven or Crow to *Apollo*, and the Dog to *Diana*, according to that which *Enripides* said ;

*The goddess Diana shining by night,  
In a Dogs portrait will take much delight.*

X x x x

But

But the Egyptian, at least with the common sort of them, worshipping and honouring these very beasts as if they were gods themselves, have not onely pestered with laughter and ridiculous mockery their Leturgy and divine service, (for Ignorance and Folly in this case is the least sin of all others) but also there is crept into the midst of men a strong opinion, which hath so far possessed the simple and weaker sort, as that it bringeth them to meer superstition. And as for such as be of more quick and witty capacity, & who besides are more audacious, those it driveth headlong into beastly cogitations and Atheistical discourses: And therefore I hold it not amiss, cursorily and by the way to annex hereto such things as carry some probability and likelihood with them. For to say, that the gods for fear of *Typhon* were turned into these Creatures, as if they thought to hide themselves within the bodies of the black Storks called *Ibides*, of Dogges and Haukes, passeth all the monstrous wonders and fictions of tales that can be devised. Likewise to hold, that the Souls of those who are departed, so many as remain still in being, are regenerate again onely in the Bodies of these beasts, is as absurd and incredible as the other. And as for those who will seem to render a civill and politick reason hereof; some give out that *Osiris* in a great expedition or voyage of his, having divided his army into many parts (such as in Greek are called *λοχοι* and *μηραι*, that is to say, bands and companies) he gave unto every of them for their severall ensignes the portraictures and images of beasts: and each band afterwards honoured their own and had in reverence as some holy and sacred thing. Others affirm, that the Kings who succeeded after *Osiris*, for to terrifie their enemies went forth to battell, carrying before them, the heads of such beasts made in gold and silver, upon their armes. Some there be again, who allege, that there was one of these their subtil and fine-headed Kings, who knowing that the Egyptians of their own nature were lightly disposed, ready to revolt and given to change and innovations, also that by reason of their great multitude, their power was hardly to be restrained and in manner invincible, in case they joynt together in counsel, and drew joyntly in one common line, therefore he sowed among them a perpetual superstition, which gave occasion of dissention and enmity among them; that never could be appeased: For when he had given commandement unto them, for to have in reverence those beasts which naturally disagreed and warred together, even such as were ready to eat and devour one another, whilst every one endeavoured alwaies to succour and maintain their own, & were moved to anger if any wrong or displeasure were done to those which they affected; they fell together themselves by the ears ere they were aware, and killed one another, for the enmity and quarrell which was between those beasts whom they adored, and so fostered mutuall and mortall hatred. For even at this day, of all the Egyptians the Lycopolitans onely, eat Mutton, because the Woolf whom they adore as a god is enemy unto sheep. And verily in this our age, the Oxyrinchites, because the \* Cynopolites, that is to say, the inhabitants of the City *Cynopolis*, eat the Fish named *Oxyrinchos*, that is to say, with the sharp beak, whensoever they can intrap or catch a Dogge, make no more ado but kill him for a Sacrifice and eat him when they have done. Upon which occasion having levied war one against the other, and done much mischief mutually, after they had been withstanding one another, and done

\* Who worship the Dogge.

the Fly called the Bittill they reverence, because they observe in them I wot not what hide himself in pages (like as in drops of water we perceive the resemblance of the Sun) of the divine power. For many there be even yet, who both think and say, that the Male Wezill engendereth with the Female by her ear, and that she bringeth forth her young at the mouth: which symbolizeth as they say, and representeth the making and generation of speech. As for the Bettills, they hold, that throughout all their kinde is no Female, but all the Males do blow or cast their seed into a certain globus or round matter in form of balls, which they drive from them and roll to and fro contrariwise, like as the Sun, when he moveth himself from the West to the East, seemeth to turn about the Heaven clean contrary. The *Aspid* also they compare to the planet of the Sun, because he doth never age and wax old, but moveth in all facility, readinesse and celerity without the means of any instruments of motion. Neither is the Crocodile set so much by among them, without some probable cause: For they say that in some respect he is the very image representing God: as being the only Creature in the world which hath no tongue: for as much as divine speech needeth neither voice nor tongue:

*But through the paths of Justice walks  
with still and silent pace,  
Directing right all mortall things,  
in their due time and place.*

And of all beasts living within the water, the Crocodile onely (as men say) hath over his eyes a certain thin film or transparent web to cover them, which commeth down from his forehead in such sort, as that he can see and not be seen, wherein he is conformable and like unto the sovereign of all the gods. Moreover look in what place the Female is discharged of her spawn, there is the utmost mark and limite of the rising and inundation of *Nilus*: for being not able to lay their eggs in the water, and afraid withall to sit far off, they have a most perfect and exquisite foresight of that which will be, in so much as they make use of the Rivers approach when they lay: and whilst they sit and cove, their eggs be preserved dry, and are never drenched with the water. A hundred eggs they lay, in so many dayes they hatch, and as many years live they, which are longest lived: And this is the first and principall number that they use who treat of celestially matters. Moreover, as touching those beasts which are honoured for both causes, we have spoken before of the Dogge: but the *Ibis* or black Stork, besides that it killeth those Serpents whose prick and sting is deadly, she was the first that taught us the use of that evacuation or cleansing the Body by Clystire, which is so ordinary in Physick: for perceived she is to purge, cleanse, and mundifie her self in that sort: whereupon the most religious Priests, and those who are of greatest experience, when they would be purified, take for their holy water to sprinkle themselves with, the very same out of which the *Ibis* drinketh, for the never drinks of impoisoned and infected water, neither will she come near unto it. Moreover, with her two Legs standing at large one from the other, and her bill together, she maketh an absolute triangle with three even sides, be-

nature, reputed them alwaies as the instrument and artificiall workmanship of God, who ruleth and governeth the universall world: neither ought we to think, that any thing void of life, and destitute of sense, can be more worthy or excellent than that which is indued with life and senses: no not although a man hung never so much Gold or a number of rich Emraulds about it: for it is neither colour nor figures, nor polished bodies, that deify doth inhabit in: but whatsoever doth not participate life, nor is by nature capable thereof, is of a more base and abject condition than the very dead. But that nature which liveth and feeth, which also in it self hath the beginning of motion and knowledge of that which is proper and meet, as also of that which is strange unto it, the same (I say) hath drawn some influence and portion of that wise providence, whereby the universall world is governed, as *Heracitus*, faith. And therefore the deity is no lesse represented in such natures, than in works made of brass and stone, which are likewise subject to corruption and alteration, but over and besides, they are naturally void of all sense and understanding. Thus much of that opinion, as touching the worship of beasts, which I approve for best.

Moreover the habiliments of *Isis*, be of different tinctures and colours: for her whole power consisteth and is employed in matter which receiveth all formes, and becometh all manner of things, to wit, Light, Darknesse, Day, Night, Fire, Water, Life, Death, Beginning and End. But the robes of *Osiris*, have neither shade nor variety, but are of one simple colour, even that which is lightsome and bright. For the first and primitive cause is simple; the principle or beginning, is without all mixture, as being spirituall and intelligible. Whereupon it is that they make a few but once for all of all his habiliments, which when they have done they lay them up again and bestow them safe, and keep them so faithfully, that no man may see or handle them: whereas contrariwise they use those of *Isis* many times: For that sensible things be in usage, and seeing they are ready and ever in hand, and be subject evermore to alternative alterations, therefore they be laid abroad and displayed, for to be seen often. But the intelligence of that which is spiritual and intellectuall, pure, simple, and holy, shining as a flash of lightning, offereth it self unto the soul but once, for to be touched and seen. And therefore *Plato* & *Aristotle* call this part of Philosophy *ἑκστασις*, for that those who discourse of reason, have passed beyond all matters subject to mingled & variable opinions, leape at length to the contemplation of this first principle, which is simple and not material: and after they have in some sort attained to the pure and sincere truth of it, they suppose that their Philosophy as now accomplished is come to final perfection. And that with the Priests in these days are very precise & wary to shew, keeping it hidden and secret, with so great care and diligence, allowing not so much as a sight thereof secretly and by the way: also that this god reigneth and ruleth over the dead, and is no other than he whom the *Greeks* name *Hades* and *Pluto*: the common people not understanding how this is true, are much troubled; thinking it very strange that the holy and sacred *Osiris* should dwell within or under the earth, where their bodies lie who are thought to be come unto their final end. But he verily is most far removed from the earth, without stain or pollution, pure and void of all substance or nature, that may admit death or any corruption whatsoever. Howbeit the Souls of men, so long as they be here beneath clad within bodies and passions, can have no participation of God, unless it be so much only as they may attain unto the intelligence of by the study of Philosophy, and the same is but in manner of a dark dream. But when they shall be delivered from these bonds, and passe into this holy place, where there is no passion, nor passible form: then, the same God is their Conductor and King: then they cleave unto him, as much as possibly they can: him they contemplate and behold without satiety: desiring that Beauty, which it is not possible for men to utter and expresse: whereof according to the old tales, *Isis* was alwaies enamoured: and having pursued after it untill she enjoyed the same, she afterwards became replenished with all Goodnesse and Beauty that here may be engendered. And thus much may suffice for that sense and interpretation which is most befitting the gods. Now if we must besides speak as I promised before, of the incense and odors which are burnt every day: let a man consider first in his mind and take this with him, that the Egyptians were men evermore most studious in those matters which made for the health of their bodies, but principally in this regard, they had in recommendation those that concerned the Ceremonies of divine service in their sanctifications, and in their ordinary life and conversation; wherein they have no lesse regard unto wholeness than to holiness. For they think it neither lawfull nor befitting to serve that essence which is altogether pure, every way found and impolluted, either with Bodies or Souls corrupt with inward forces, and subject to secret maladies. Seeing then, that the Air, which we most commonly use, and within which we alwaies converse, is not evermore alike disposed nor in the same temperature: but in the night is thickened and made grosse, whereby it compresseth and draweth the body into a kinde of sadness and peniveness, as if it were overcast with dark mists and weighed down: so soon as ever they be up in the morning, they burn incense by kindling Rofin, for to cleanse and purifie the air by this rarefaction and subtilization, awaking as it were and raising by this means, the inbred spirits of our Bodies which were languishing and drowie: for that in this odor there is a forceable vertue which vehemently striketh upon the senses. Again, about Noon, perceiving that the Sun draweth forcibly out of the earth by his heat, great quantity of strong vapours, which be intermingled with the air, then they burn Myrrh: For the heat of this aromatical gum and odor is such, as that it dissipateth and dissipeth whatsoever is grosse, thick and muddy in the air. And verily in the time of Pestilence Physicians think to remedy the same by making great fires, being of this opinion, that the flame doth subtiliate and rarefie the air: which it effecteth no doubt the better in case they burn

twice,

sweet-wood, as of the Cypress-trees, of Juniper, or \* Pitch-tree. And hereupon reported it is that the Physician *Acron*, when there reigned a grievous Plague at *Athenis*, was a great name and reputation, by causing good fires to be made about the sick persons; for he saved many by that means. And *Aristotle* writeth, that the sweet scents and good smells of Perfumes, Oynments, Flowers, and fragrant Meadows, serve no less for health than for delight and pleasure. For that by their heat and mildness they gently dissolve and open the substance of the brain, which naturally is cold, and, as it were, congealed. Again, if it be so that the Egyptians call Myrrh in their Language *Bal*, which if a man interpret, signifieth as much as the dissolving and chasing away of idle talk and raving; this also may serve for a testimony to confirm that which we say. As for that Composition among them named *Cypri*, it is a Confection or Mixture receiving sixteen Ingredients. For there jenter into it, Honey, Wine, Raisins, Cypereous, Rofin, Myrrh, Alpalathus and Scellil. Moreover, the sweet ruth Schiznos, Bitumen, Moss, and the Dock: Besides two sorts of the Juniper Berries, the greater and the less, Cardamomum and Galamus. All these species are compounded together, not at a venture, and as it cometh into their heads: but there be read certain sacred writings unto the Apothecaries and Perfumers, all the while that they mix them. As for this number, although it be quadrate, and made of a square, and onely of the numbers equal, maketh the space contained within, equal to his circumference, we are not to think that this is any way material to the vertue thereof: but most of the simples that go to this Composition being Aromatical, cast a pleasant breath from them, and yield a delectable and wholesome vapor, by which the ayr is altered: and withal, the body being moved with this evaporation, is gently prepared to repose, and raketh an attractive temperature of sleep, in letting slack and unbinding the bonds of cares, weariness and sorrows incident in the day time, and that without the help of surfeit and drunkenness: polishing and smoothing the imaginative part of the brain which receiveth dreams in manner of a mirror, causing the same to be pure and neat, as much, or rather more, than the sound of Harp, Lute, Viol, or any other Instruments of Musick; which the Pythagoreans used for to procure sleep, enchanting by that device, and dulcing the unreasonable part of the soul which is subject to passions. For sweet Odors, as they do many times excite and stir up the sense when it is dull, and beginneth to fail: so contrariwise, they make the same as often drowsie and heavy, yea, and bring it to quietness, whilst those Aromatical smells by reason of their smoothness are spread and diffused in the body: According as some Physicians say, that sleep is engendered in us, when the vapour of the food which we have received, creepeth gently along the noble parts and principal bowels, and as it toucheth them, causeth a kinde of tickling which lulleteth them asleep. This *Cypri* they use in drink, as a Composition to season their cups, and as an ointment besides: for they hold, that being taken in drink, it scoureth the guts within, and maketh the belly laxative: and being applied outwardly, as a liniment, it mollifieth the body. Over and above all this, Rofin is the work of the Sun: but Myrrh they gather by the Moon light, out of those Plants from which it doth distill: But of those simples whereof *Cypri* is compounded, some there be which love the night better, as many, I mean, as be nourished by cold winds, shadows, dews and moisture: For the brightness and light of the day is one and simple: and *Pindarus* faith, that the Sun is seen through the pure and solitary ayr: whereas the ayr of the night is a compound and mixture of many lights and powers, as if there were a confluence of many seeds from every far running into one. By good right therefore they burn these simple Perfumes in the day, as those which are engendered by the vertue of the Sun: But this being mingled of all sorts, and of divers qualities, they set on fire about the evening, and beginning of the night.

## Of the Oracles that have ceased to give Answer.

### The Summary.

The Spirit of Error hath endeavored always and assailed the best he can, to maintain his Power and Dominion in the world, having after the revolt and fall of Adam, been furnished with instruments of all sorts, to Tyrannize over his Slaves. In which number we are to range the Oracles and Predictions of certain Idols erected in many places by his instigation; by means whereof, this sworn enemy to the glory of the true God, hath much prevailed. But when it pleased our heavenly Father to give us his Son for to be our Saviour, who descending from heaven to earth, took upon him our humane nature, wherein he sustained the pain and punishment due for our sins, to deliver us out of hell, and by vertue of his merits, to give us entrance into the Kingdom of heaven, the truth of his grace being published and made known in the world by the preaching of the Apostles and their faithful Successors; the Devil and his Angels, who had in many parts and places of the world abused and deceived poor Idolaters, were forced to acknowledge their Sovereign, and to keep silence, if suffer him to speak unto those whom he meant to call unto Salvation, or else to make them unexcusable, if they refused to bear his voice. This cessation of the Oracles put the Priests and Sacrificers of the Paines to the great trouble, and wonderful perplexity, in the time of the Roman Emperors: whilst some imputed the cause to this, others to that. But our Author in this Treatise discov'ers upon this Question, shewing thereby,

XXXX 3

how



how great and lamentable is the blindness of mans reason and wisdom, when it thinketh to attain unto the secrets of God. For all the speeches of the Philosophers, whom he bringeth in hereas. Interlocutors, are meer tales and fables devised for the nonce, which every Christian man of any mean judgement will at the first sight condemn. Yet thus much good there is in this discourse, that the Epicureans are here taxed and condemned in sundry passages. As touching the Contents of this Conference, the occasion thereof ariseth from the speech of Demetrius and Cleombrotus, who were come unto the Temple of Apollo: for the one of them having received a wonder as touching the Temple of Jupiter Ammon, moveth thereby a farther desire of Disputation: but before they enter into it, they continue still the former speech, of the course and motion of the Sun. Afterwards, they come to the main point; namely, Why all the Oracles of Greece (excepting that only of Lebadaia) ceased? To which demand, Platinensis a Cynique Philosopher answereth, That the wickedness of Leuena is the cause thereof. Ammonius contrariwise attributeth all unto the Wars which had consumed the Pilgrims that used to resort unto the said Oracles. Lamprias propoeth one opinion, and Cleombrotus inferring another of his, fall into a Discourse and Common-place as touching Demons, whom he verily rangeeth between gods and men, disputing of their nature, according to the Philosophy of the Greeks. Then he proveth, that these Demons have the charge of Oracles, but by reason that they departed out of one Country into another, or dyed, these Oracles gave over. To this purpose he telleth a notable tale as touching the death of Oracles. After this, Ammonius consulteth the Epicureans, who hold, That there be no Demons. And upon the confirmation of the former Position, they enter together into the examination of the opinions of the Epicureans and Platonists, concerning the number of the Worlds, to wit, whether they be many or infinite; growing to this resolution after long dispute, that there be many, and namely, to the number of five. Which done, Demetrius resuming the principal question, moveth also a new one, Why the Demons have this power to speak by Oracles? Unto which there be many and divers answers made, which determine all in one Treatise according to the Platonist Philosophy, of the Principal, Efficient, and Final cause of those things that are effected by reason, and particularly of Divinations and Preditions: for which, he maketh to concur, the Earth, the Sun, Exhalations, Demons, and the Soul of man. Now all the intention and drift of Plutarch groweth to this point, That the Earth being incited and moved by a natural vertue, and that which is proper unto it, and in no wise divine and perdurable, hath brought forth certain powers of Divination: That these Inspirations breathing and arising out of the Earth, have touched the understandings of men with such efficacy, as that they have caused them to foresee future things afar off, and long ere they happen; yea, and have addressed and framed them to give answer both in verse and prose. Item, That like as there be certain grounds and lands more fertile one than the other, or producing some particular things according to the divers and peculiar property of each: There be also certain places and tracts of the world endued with this temperature, which both ingender, and also incite these Emblematic and Divining Spirits. Furthermore, that this puissance is meer divine indeed; howbeit, not perpetual, eternal, unmoveable, nor that which is for ever perdurable: But by process and succession of time, doth diminish and decay by little and little, untill at length, through age, it consumeth to nothing. Semblably, that this great number of Spirits are not engendered incessantly, neither proceed they forward, or retire back continually; but this vertue of the Earth moveth of it self in certain Revolutions, and by that means is enobased and puffed up: And after that in time it hath gathered abundance of new vapors, it filleth the caves and holes so full, until they discharge and send them up again. Whereupon it cometh to pass, that the exhalations stirred in the said caves, and desirous to issue forth, after that they have been beaten back again, violently assail the foundations, and stir the Temples built upon them, in such sort, as being shaken, as it were, by earthquakes, more or less in one place than another, according to the overtures and passages made for the exhalation, they stude issue through the streights, break forth with forcible violence, and so produce these Oracles. In sum, the intention and minde of Plutarch is to prove, that the beginnings, progress, and end of these Oracles proceed all from natural causes, to wit, the exhalations of the Earth. Wherein he is fully and grossly deceived, considering that such Oracles in Greece have been inspired by the Devil, who hath kept an open shop there of imposture, deceit, and the most horrible seductions that can be devised. For mine own part, I impute this whole discourse of Plutarch unto the ignorance of the true God, the very mother of this despatch, which bringeth forth this present Treatise, saved by the Pagans; for to darken the refulgent light of that great King of the world and his truth: which hath disguised and brought to nothing all the subtil devices of Satan, who triumphed over all Greece by the means of his Oracles. Thus after large discourses upon these matters, Plutarch concludeth the whole Disputation: the Conclusion whereof, he enricheth with an accident that befall unto the Prophetess of Delphi: where a man may evidently see the imposture and fraud of Devils, and of malicious Spirits (and those be the Demons which Plutarch would design) and their horrible tyranny over men destitute of Gods grace.

of

## Of the Oracles that ceased to give Answers.

Here goeth a Tale, my friend Terentius Priscus, that in times past certain Eagles, or else Swans, flying from the utmost ends of the earth opposite one unto the other, toward the middest thereof, encountered and met together at the very place where the Temple of Apollo Pythius was built, even that which is called *Omphalos*, that is to say, the Navel. And that afterwards, Epimenides the Phælian being desirous to know whether this Fable was true, fought unto the Oracle for to be resolved: but having received from the god a doubtful and uncertain answer; by reason thereof made these verses:

Now sure in mids of Land or Sea,  
there is no Navel such;  
Or if there be, the gods it know:  
men must not see so much.

And verily the god Apollo chastised and punished him well enough, for being so curious as to search into the tryal or proof of an old received Tale, as if it had been some antique Picture. But true it is, that in our days, a little before the Solemnity of the Pythique games, which were held during the Magistracy of Callistratus, there were two devout and holy Personages, who coming from the contrary ends of the earth, met together in the City of Delphi: the one was Demetrius the Grammarian, who came from as far as Britain, minding to return unto *Tarsus* in Cilicia, the City of his nativity; and the other, Cleombrotus the Lacedemonian, who had travelled and wandered long time in Egypt, within the Troglodytisque Province, and sailed a good way up into the Red-Sea, not for any Traffique or Negotiation of Merchandize, but only as a Traveller that desired to see the world, and to learn new fashions abroad. For having wherewith sufficiently to maintain himself, and not caring to gather more than might serve his own turn, he employed that time which he had, this way, and gathered together a certain history, as the subject matter and ground of that Philosophy, which propoed for the end thereof (as he himself said) Theologic. This man having not long before been at the Temple and Oracle of Jupiter Ammon, made semblance as if he wondered not much at any thing he saw there; only he reported unto us a strange thing, worth the observation, and better to be considered of, which he learned of the Priests there, as touching the burning Lamp that never goeth out: for by their saying, every year it spendeth less oyl than another. Whereby they gather certainly (quoth he) the inequality of the years, whereby the latter is evermore shorter than the former: for great probability there is, that seeing less oyl is consumed, the time also is in proportion so much less. Now when all the company there present made a wonder hereat, Demetrius among the rest made a very jest of it, and said it was a meer mockery to search into the knowledge of matters so high, by such slight and small presumptions: for this was not, as *Alcæus* said, to paint a Lyon by measure of his claw or paw, but to move and alter heaven, and earth, and all the world, by the conjecture only of a wick and lamp; yea, and to overthrow at once all the Mathematical Sciences. It is neither so nor so, good Sir, quoth Cleombrotus; for neither the one nor the other will trouble these men. For first, they will never yield and give place unto the Mathematicians in the certitude of their proofs; for sooner may the Mathematicians misreckon the time, and mist in their calculation and accounts, in such long motions and revolutions so far remote and distant, than they fail in the measure of the oyl which they observe continually, and mark most precisely, in regard of that which they see so strange and against all discourse of reason. Again, not to grant and allow (O Demetrius) that petty things may many times serve for signs and arguments of great important matters, would hinder and prejudice many Arts, considering that it is as much as to take away the proofs from many demonstrations, conclusions and preditions. And verily, even you that are Grammarians, will seem to verifie and avow one point which is not of the least consequence; namely, that those Heroick Princes and Worthies, who were at the Trojan war, used to shave their hair, and keep the skin smooth with the razor; because, forsooth, in reading of *Homer*, you meet with some place where he maketh mention barely of the razor. Semblably, that in those days men used to put forth their money upon usury, for that in one passage the said Poet writeth thus:

Whereas my debt is neither new nor small:  
But as days come and go, it grows withal.

\* ὀφειλάει  
ἄται

Meaning by the verb ὀφειλάει, that his debt did grow unto him by the interest for use. Furthermore, because ever and anon the same *Homer* attributeth unto the night, the Epithete ὄφει, which significeth Quick and sharp; you Grammarians are much affected to this word, saying, He understandeth thereby, that the shadow of the earth being round, groweth point-wife or sharp as the end, in manner of a Cone or Pyramid. And what is he, who standing upon this point, that small things may not be the proofs and signs of greater matters; will approve this argument in Physik: namely, that when there is a multitude of Spiders seen, it doth prognosticate a pestilent Summer: or in the Spring season, when the leaves of the Olive tree resemble the Crows feet? Who (I say) will ever abide to take the measure of

of the Sun's body, by Clepsydras or Water-dials, with a gallon or pinte of water? or that a Tyle-formed Tablet, making a sharp angle by the plumb, enclining upon a plain superficies, should shew the just measure of the elevation of pole from the Horizon, which always is to be seen in our Hemisphere? Lo, what the Priests and Prophets in those parts may allege and say. And therefore we ought to produce some other reasons against them, in case we would maintain the course of the Sun to be constant and unvariable, as we hold here in these Countreys. And not of the Sun only, (cried out with a loud voice *Ammonius* the Philosopher, who was then in place) but also of the whole heaven, which by this reckoning cometh in question. For if it be granted, that the years decrease: the race of the Sun which he runneth between the one Tropique and the other, must of necessity be cut shorter, and taked out up to great a part of the Horizon, as the Mathematicians set down; but that it becometh shorter and less, according as the Southern or Meridional parts be contracted, and gather always toward the Septentrional and Northern. Whereupon it will ensue, that our Summer will be shorter, and the temperature of the ay by consequence colder; by reason that the Sun turneth more inwardly, and describeth greater Parallels, or Equidistant Circles, than those be about the Tropicks, at the longest and shortest days of the year. Moreover, this would follow hereupon, that the Gnomons in the Dials at *Syene* in *Egypt*, will be more shadowless at the Summer Tropick or Solstice: and many of the fixed Stars will run under one another: some also of them will be forced for want of room to run one upon another, and be huddled pell-mell together. And if they shall say, that when other stars hold their own, and keep their ordinary courses, the Sun only observeth no order in his motions, they cannot allege any cause that should so much as hasten his motion alone among so many others as there be, but they shall trouble and disquiet most of those things which are seen evidently above: and namely, those generally which happen unto the Moon in regard of the Sun. So that we shall have no need of those, who observe the measures of oyl, for to prove the diversity of the years; because the Eclipses both of the Moon and Sun will sufficiently shew if there be any at all, for that the Sun shall many times meet with the Moon, and the Moon reciprocally fall as often within the shadow of the earth: so as we shall need no more to display and discover the vanity and falsity of this reason. Yea, but I my self (quoth *Cleombrotus*) have seen the said measure of oyl, for they shewed many of them unto me; and that of this present year when I was with them, appeared to be much less than those in the years past. So that *Ammonius* made answer in this wise: And how is it that other men who adore the inextinguishable fire, who keep and preserve the flame religiously for the space of an infinite number of years, one after another, could not as well perceive and observe so much? And say that a man should admit this report of yours to be true, as touching the measures of the oyl: were it not much better to ascribe the cause thereof unto some coldness or moisture of the ay; or rather contrariwise to some dryness and heat, by reason whereof, the fire in the Lamp being enfeebled, is not able to spend so much nutriment, and therefore hath no need thereof? For I have heard it many times affirmed by some, That in Winter the fire burneth much better, as being more stronger and more fortified, by reason that the heat thereof is drawn in, more united and driven closer by the exterior cold: whereas great heats and droughts do weaken the strength thereof, so as it becometh faint, loose, and raw, without any great vehemency and vigour; nay, if a man kindle it against the Sun-shine, the operation of it is less, hardly catcheth it hold of the wood or fuel, and more slowly consumeth it the same. But most of all, a man may lay the cause upon the oyl it self; for it goeth not against reason to say, that in old time the oyl was of less nutriment, and stood more upon the waterish substance than now it doth, as pressed out of Olives which grew upon young trees: but afterwards being better concocted, and riper in the fruit, coming of Plants more perfect and fully grown in the same quantity, was more effectual, and able longer to nourish and maintain the fire. Thus you see how a man may save and save that supposition of the Ammonian Priests, although it seem very strange and wonderfully extravagant. After that *Ammonius* had finished his speech. Nay, rather (quoth I) *Cleombrotus*, I beseech you tell us somewhat of the Oracle: for there hath gone a great name, time out of minde, of the Deity resident there; but now it seemeth that the reputation thereof is clean gone. And when *Cleombrotus* made no answer hereto, but held down his head, and call his eyes upon the ground. There is no need (quoth *Demetrius*) to demand or make any question of the Oracles there, when as we see the Oracles in these parts to fail, or rather indeed (all save one or two) brought to nothing. This rather would be enquired into, what the cause should be, that generally they all do cease? For to what purpose should we speak of others, considering that *Bæotia* it self, which heretofore in old time resounded and rung again with Oracles, now is quite void of them, as if the Springs and fountains were dried up, and a great scarcity and drought of Oracles had come over the whole Land? For there is not at this dry, go throughout all *Bæotia* (unless it be only in *Lebadia*) one place where a man may, would he never so fain, draw any divination, what need forer he hath of any Oracle: for all other parts are either muse, or altogether desolate and forlorn. And yes in the time of the Medes War, the Oracle of *Prous Apollo* was in great request, and that of *Amphiaræus* was in no less reputation; for both the one and the other was sought unto. And in that of *Prous Apollo*, when the Priest or Prophet who served in the Oracle, used the *Æolian* Language, and made answer unto those who were sent thither by the Barbarians, inasmuch as none of the assistants understood one word, this Enthusiasm or Divine inspiration, covertly gave thereby thus much to understand, that these Oracles pertained nothing unto the Barbarians; neither were they permitted to have the ordinary Greek Language at their command. As for that of *Amphiaræus*, the servant who was thither sent, falling asleep

sleep within the sanctuary, thought as he dreamed, that he saw and heard the minister of the god, as if with his word and voice he seemed at the first to drive him out, and command him to depart forth of the Temple, saying, that his god was not there; but afterwards to thrust him away with both his hands: but in the end, seeing that he staid still, took up a great stone, and therewith smote him upon the head. And verily all this answered just to that which afterwards befell, and was a very prediction and denunciation of a future accident: for *Mardæus* was vanquished not by the King himself, but by the Tutor or Lieutenant of the King of *Lacedæmon*, who at that time had the conduct and command of the Greeks army, and with a stone felled to the ground, according as the Lydian servant aforesaid imagined in his sleep that he was smitten with a stone. There flourished likewise about the same time the Oracle of *Tegyæ*, where the reports goeth that the god *Apollo* himself was born: and verily two rivers there are that run near one to the other, whereof the one some at this day call *Phænis*, that is to say, the Date-tree; the other *Elæa*, that is to say, the Olive-tree. At this Oracle, during the time of the Medes war, when the Prophet *Echecrates* there served, god *Apollo* answered by his mouth, that the Greeks should have the honour of the victory in this war, and continue superior. Also in the time of the Peloponnesiac war, when the Delians were driven out of their island, there was brought unto them an answer from the Oracle at *Delphi*; by virtue whereof, commanded they were, to search and seek out the place where *Apollo* was born, and there to perform certain sacrifices: whereat, when they marvelled; and in great perplexity demanded again, whether *Apollo* were born any where else, but among them? the Prophetess *Pythia* added moreover and said: That a Crow should tell them the place. Whereupon these Deputies who were sent unto the Oracle, in their return homeward chanced to pass through the City *Chæroneæ*, where they heard their Hostess in whose house they lodged, talking with some Passengers and Guests, (who were going to *Tegyæ*) as touching the Oracle, and when they departed and took their leave, they saluted her, and bad her farewell in these terms: Adieu dame *Crow*, but that was the Woman's name, which signifieth as much as *Crow*. By this means they understood the meaning of the foresaid Oracle or answer of *Pythia*: and so when they had sacrificed at *Tegyæ*, not long after they were restored and returned into their native Country. Moreover, there were other apparitions besides of Oracles, more fresh and later, than those which we have alleged; but now they are altogether ceased: so that it were not amiss, considering that we are met near unto *Apollo Pythius*, for to inquire into the cause of this so great change and alteration. As we thus communed and talked together, we were now by this time gone out of the Temple, so far as to the very gates of the Onidian hill: and when we were entered into it, we found, those friends of ours sitting there within, whom we desired to meet withal, and who attended our coming. Now when all the rest were at leisure, and had nothing else to do (being at such a time of the day) but either to anoint their bodies, or else to look upon the Champions and Wrestlers, who there exercised themselves; *Demetrius* after a smiling manner began and said:

What? were I best to tell a lie,  
Or make report of truth shall I?

It seemeth as far as I can perceive, that you have in hand no matter of great consequence: for I saw you sitting at your ease, and it appeareth by your cheerful and pleasant looks, that you have no busie thoughts hammering in your heads: True it is indeed (quoth *Heraclæus* the Megarian) for we are not in a serious argument and disputation about the verb *ἄλλω*, whether in the Future tense it should looke one of the two *Lamdaes*? neither reason we about these two comparatives *ἄλλω* and *ἄλλω*, (that is to say, Worse and Better) of what Positives they should come? nor of what Primitives these two Superlatives *ἄλλω* and *ἄλλω*, (that is to say, Worst and Best) be derived? For these questions and such like, are those that make men knit and bend their brows: but of all other matters we may reason and Philosophize well enough and quietly, without making any furrows in our foreheads, and looking with an austere and four Countenance for the matter upon the company present with us. Why then (quoth *Demetrius*) admit and receive us into your society, and together with us, entertain the question also, which erewhile was moved among us, being as it is, meet for this place, and in regard of god *Apollo*, pertinent unto us all as many as we be: but I beseech you of all loves, let us have no frowning nor knitting of brows whiles we reason upon the point. Now when we were first intermingled one with another, and that *Demetrius* hath propounded the foresaid question, immediately *Didymus* the Cynique Philosopher, surnamed *Plantæades*, started up, and stood upon his feet; and after he had stamped with his staff twice or thrice upon the floor, cried out in this manner: O God! Come you hither with this question indeed, as if it were a matter so hard to be decided, and had need of some long and deep inquisition? for a great marvel no doubt it is, if seeing so much sin and wickedness is spread over the face of the VWhole world at this day, not only shame and just indignation or Nemesis (according as *Hesiodus* prophesied before) have abandoned mans life; but also the Providence of God being dilapidated and carrying away with it all the Oracles that be, is clean departed and gone for ever! But contrariwise I will put forth unto you another matter to be decided, namely, how it comes to passe, that they have not rather already given over every one? and why *Hercules* is not come again, or some other of the gods, and hath not long since plucked up and carried away the three-footed table and all, being so full ordinarily of shamefull, villainous and impious demands, propofed there daily to *Apollo*? whiles some prefer matters to him as a Sophister, to trie what he can say; others ask him concerning Treasure hidden; some again, would be resolved of succession in Heritages, and of incestuous and unlawful Marriages? Inasmuch as now *Pythagoras* is manifestly convinced of error and lying,

Icing, who said, that men were then best, and excelled in goodness, when they presented themselves before the gods: for such things as it would well becom to hide and conceal in the presence only of some ancient personages, (I mean the foul maladies and passions of the Soul) the same they discover and lay abroad naked before Apollo. And as he would have gone forward still, and prosecuted this theme, both *Heracles* plucked him by the Cloak, and I also (who of all the Company was most familiar and inward with him) Peace (quoth I) my good friend *Plataniades*, and cease to provoke *Apollo* against you: for a choleric and teftic god he is, and not mild and gracious; but according as *Pindarus* said very well:

*Mildem'd he is, and thought amiss: To be  
Most kind to men, and full of lenity.*

And were he either the Sun, or the Lord and Father of the Sun, or a substance beyond all visible natures, it is not like and probable, that he would disdain to speak any more unto men at this day living, of whose Generation, Nativity, Nourishment, Being, and Understanding, he is the cause and author: neither is it credible, that the Divine Providence, which is a good, kinde, and tender Mother, produceth and preserveth all things for our use, should suffer her felt to be malicious, in this matter only of Divination and Prophecies; and upon an old grudge and rankor, to bereave us of that which at first she gave us, as if forsooth even then when Oracles were rife in all parts of the world, there was not in it mighty a multitude of men, the greater number of wicked. And therefore make Pythick truce (as they say) for the while with vice and wickedness, which you are ever wont to chaffice and rebuke in all your speeches, and come and sit down here by us again, that together with us you may search out some other cause of this general Eclipse and Cessation of Oracles, which now is in question: but withall remember that you keep this god *Apollo* propitious, and move him not to wrath and displeasure.

But these words of mine wrought so with *Plataniades*, that without any word replying, out of the doors he went his wayes. Now when the Company sat still for a pretty while in great silence, *Ammonius* at length directing his speech to me: I beseech you (quoth he) *Lamprias*, take better heed unto that which we do, and look more nearly into the matter of this our disputation, to the end that we clear the god altogether, and make him to be no cause at all that the Oracles do cease. For he who attributeth this Cessation unto any other cause than the Will and Ordinance of God, giveth us occasion to suspect him also, that he thinketh they never were nor be at this present by his disposition, but rather by some other means: for no other cause and puissance there is, more noble, more mighty, or more excellent, which might be able to destroy and abolish Divination, if it were the work of God. And as touching the discourse that *Plataniades* made, it pleaseth me never a whit: neither can I approve thereof, as well for other causes, as for that he admitteth a certain inequality and inconsistency in the god. For one while he maketh him to detest and abhor Vice, and another while to allow and accept thereof: much like unto some King or Tyrant rather, who at one gate driveth out wicked persons, and receiving them in at another doth negotiate with them. But seeing it is so, that the greatest work which can be, sufficient in it self, nothing superfluous, but fully accomplished every way, is most becoming the dignity and majesty of the gods, let this principle be supposed and layed for a ground, and then a man in mine opinion may very well say, that of this general defect & common scarcity of men, which evil seditions and wars before time have brought generally into the world, *Greece* hath felt the greatest part: inasmuch as at this very day, hardly is all *Greece* able to make three thousand men for the wars, which are no more in number than one City in times past (to wit, *Megara*) set forth and sent to the battell of *Plataea*: and therefore, whereas the god *Apollo* in this our age hath left many Oracles, which in ancient time were much frequented, if one should infer hereupon and say, that this argueth no other thing but that *Greece* is now much depopulate and dispeopled, in comparison of that which it was in old time, I would like well of his invention, and furnish him sufficiently with matter to discourse upon. For what would it boot, and what good would come of it, if there were now an Oracle at *Tegyra*, as sometime there was, or about *Phoen*? whereas all the day long a man shall peradventure meet with one, and that is all, keeping and feeding Cattell there. And verily it is found written in histories, that this very place of the Oracle where we now are, which of all others in *Greece* is for Antiquity right ancient, and for Reputation most noble and renowned, was in times past for a great while desert and unfrequented; nay unaccessable altogether, in regard of a most venomous and dangerous beast, even a Dragon which haunted it. But those who write this, do not collect hereupon the Cessation of the Oracle aright, but argue clean contrary: for it was the solitude and infrequency of the place that brought the Dragon thither, rather than the Dragon that caused the said desert solitariness. But afterwards when it pleased God, that *Greece* was fortified again and replenished with many Cities and this place well peopled and frequented, they used two Prophetesses, who one after the other in their course descended into the Cave and there sat: yea and a third there was besides chosen, as a suffragane or assistant to sit by them and help if need were: but now there is but one Prophetess in all, and yet we complain not; for the only is sufficient for all comers that have any occasion to use the Oracle. And therefore we are in no wise to blame or accuse the god: for that Divination and Spirit of Prophecy which remaineth there at this day, is sufficient for all, and sendeth all Suters away well contented, as having their full dispatch and answer for whatsoever they demand. Like as therefore *Agamemnon* in *Homer* had nine Heraclits or Crets about him, and yet hardly with them could he contain and keep in order the assembly of the Greeks being so frequent as then it was; but now within these few dayes, you shall hear the voice of one man alone

alone able to refund over the whole Theater, and to reach unto all the people there contained: even so, we must think, that this Divination and Spirit of Prophecy in those dayes used many Organs and voices to speak unto the people, being a greater multitude than now there be. And therefore we should on the other side rather wonder, if God would suffer to run in vain like waste waters, this propheticall Divination: or to refund again, like as the desert Rocks in the wide Fields and Mountains ring with the resonance and echoes of herd mens hollaring, and beasts bellowing. When *Ammonius* had thus said, and I held my peace, *Cleombrotus* addressing his speech unto me: And grant you indeed (quoth he) thus much, that it is the god *Apollo*, who is the Author and Overthrower also of these Oracles? Not so, answered I for I maintain and hold, that God was never the cause of abolishing any Oracle or Divination whatsoever: but contrariwise, like as where he produceth and preparch many other things for one use and behoof, nature bringeth in the corruption and utter privation of some; or to say more truly, matter being it self privation, or subject thereto, avoideth many time and dissolveth that which a more excellent cause hath composed: even so I suppose there be some other cause, which darken and abolish the virtue of Divination, considering that God bestoweth upon men many fair and goodly gifts, but nothing perdurable and immortal: in such sort as the very workes of the gods do die, but not themselves, according as *Sophocles* saith. And verily the Philosophers and Naturalists, who are well exercised in the knowledge of Nature and the primitive matter, ought indeed to search into the substance, property and puissance of Oracles, but to reserve the originall and principall cause for God, as very meet and requisite it is that it should be. For very foolish and childish it is that the God himself, like unto those Spirits speaking within the bellies of puff bladders, such as in old time they called Engastrimythes, and Enyrceles, and be now termed Pythons, entred into the bodies of Prophets, spake by their mouths, and used their tongues and voices as Organs and instruments of speech: for he that thus intermedleth God among the occasions and necessities of men, maketh no more as he ought of his majesty, neither carrieth he that respect as is meet, to the preservation of the dignity and greatness of his power and virtue. Then *Cleombrotus*: You say very well and truly (quoth he): but for as much as it is a difficult matter to comprise and define in what manner, and how far forth, and to what point we ought to imploy this Divine Providence: in my conceit, they who are of this mind, that simply God is the cause of nothing at all in the world, and they again, that make him wholly the Author of all things; hold not a mean and indifferent course, but both of them miss the very point of decent mediocrity. Certes as they say passing well, who hold that *Plato* having invented and devised that element or subject, upon which grow and be ingendered qualities the which one while is called the primitive matter, and other while Nature, delivered Philosophers from many great difficulties: even for me thinks, they who ordained a certain kinde by themselves of Demons, between God and men, have afforded many more doubts and greater ambiguities by finding out that bond and link (as it were) which joyneth us and them together in society: Were it the opinion that came from the ancient Magi and Zoroastres, or rather a Thracian Doctrine delivered by *Orpheus*; or else an Egyptian or Phrygian tradition, as we may conjecture by seeing the sacrifices both in the one Country and the other: wherein, among other holy and divine Ceremonies, it seemeth there were certain dolorful ceremonies of mourning and sorrow intermingled, favouring of mortality. And verily of the Greeks, *Homer* hath used these two names indifferently, terming the Gods Demons, and the Demons likewise Gods. But *Hesiodus* was the first who purely and distinctly hath set down four kinds of reasonable natures, to wit, the Gods: then the Demons, and those many in number and all good: the Heroes and Men; for the Demi-gods are ranged in the number of those Heroick worthies. But others hold, that there is a transmutation as well of Bodies as Souls: and like as we may observe, that of earth is ingendered Waters, of Water Air, and of Air, Fire, whilst the nature of the substance still mounteth on high: even so the better Souls are changed, first from Men to Heroes or Demi-gods, and afterwards from them to Demons, and of Demons some few after a long time, being well refined and purified by vertue, came to participate the Divination of the gods. Yet unto some it befalleth, that being not able to hold and contain, they suffer themselves to slide and fall into mortall bodies again, where they lead an obscure and dark life, like unto a smoaky vapour. As for *Hesiodus*, he thinketh verily, that even the Demons also, after certain revolutions of time, shall dye: for speaking in the person of one of their Nymphs called *Naiades*, covertly and under significantall terms he designeth their time, in this wise:

*Nine\* ages of men\* in their flower, doth live  
The\* railing Crow: four times the Stags surmount  
The life of Crows: to Ravens dark nature give,  
A three fold age of Stags by true account:  
One Phoenix lives as long as Ravens nine:  
But you fair Nymphs, the daughters verily  
Of mighty Jove and of nature divine,  
The Phoenix years ten-fold do multiply.*

But they that understand not well, what the Poet meaneth by this word *ages*, make the totall sum of this time to amount unto an exceeding great number of years. For in truth it is but one year and no more. And so by that reckoning, the whole arithmetically to nine thousand seven hundred and twenty years; which is the very life of the Demons. And many Mathematicians there be, by whose computation it is less. But more than so *Pindarus* would not have it, when he saith, that the Nymphs

\* *αἰῶνες*  
\* *ῥαίοντες*  
\* *καρπυῖες*  
or *Κρυπῖες*



gods be reported and sung in fables or hymnes, certes they be all of them no passions and accidents that befell to gods indeed, but to some Dæmons, whose fortunes were recorded in memoriall of their vertue and puissance : neither meant the Poet *Aeschylus* (a god) when he said :

*Apollo chaste, who now is fled,  
And out of heaven banished ;*

Nor *Admetus* in *Sophocles* :

*My chaunting Cock that crows so shrill,  
Hath raised him and brought to mill.*

Also the Divines and Theologians of *Delphi*, are in a great error, and far from the truth, who think, that sometimes in this place, there was a combat between *Apollo* and a Dragon, about the hold and possession of this Oracle. They are to blame also, who suffer Poets and Oratours, striving one against another in their Theatres, to act or relate such matters : as if of purpose and expressly they come to

do, that there be Dæmons ; but when you will needs maintain that they be neither lewd nor mortall, you cannot make it good that they be at all. For wherein I pray you do they differ from gods, in case they be in substance incorruptible, and in vertue impassible, or not subject to sin ? Hereupon *Heracleon*, when he had mused with himself, not saying a word, and studied what answer to make, *Cleombrotus* went on and said : It is not *Empedocles* who hath given out there were evill Dæmons, but *Plato* also himself, *Xenocrates* also, and *Chrysippus* ; yea and *Democritus*, when he wished and prayed that he might meet with lucky images, both knew and gave us (no doubt) thereby to understand, that he thought there were others of them crooked and shrewd, and such as were badly affected and had evill intentions. But as touching the death of such, and how they are mortall, I have heard it reported by a Man who was no Fool nor a vain lying Person : and that was *Epitaphes*, the Father of *Emilianus* the Oratour, whom some of you (I dare well say) have heard to plead and declame. This *Epitaphes* was my Fellow-citizen, and had been my Schoolmaster in Grammar, and this narration he related : That minding upon a time to make a voyage by sea into *Italy*, he was imbarqued in a

and fortune. Certes, if it be lawfull to laugh, and that we must needs make game in matters of Philosophy, we should rather mock those who bring into their disputations of natural questions, I was not what Deaf, Blind, Dumb and inanimate Images; remaining I know not where, and continuing in appearance infinite revolutions of years, wandering round about and going to and fro: which say they, issue and flow from bodies partly yet living, and partly from those who long ago were dead, burnt, yea and rotten and putrified to nothing. These men (I say) we should do well to laugh at, who draw such ridiculous toys and vain shadows as these, into the serious disputations of nature.

Meanwhile forsooth, offended they are and angry, if a man should say there be Demons: and that not only in nature but in reason also it standeth with good congruity, they should continue and endure a long time. These speeches thus passed, *Ammonius* began in this wise: \* *Cleombrotus* in mine opinion (quoth he) hath spoken very well: and what should impeach us, but that we may admit and receive his sentence, being so grave as it is, and most becoming a Philosopher? For reject it once, we shall be forced to reject also and deny many things which are, and usually happen, whereof no certain cause and reason can be delivered: and if it be admitted, it draweth after it no train and consequence of any impossibility whatsoever, nor of that which is not subsistent. But as touching that one point, which I have heard the Epicureans allege against *Empedocles*, and the Demons which he bringeth in, namely: That they cannot possibly be happy and long lived, being evil and finfull as they are, for that vice by nature is blind, and of it self falleth ordinarily headlong into perils and inconveniences which destroy the life: this is a very foolish opposition: for by the same reason they must confesse, that *Epicurus* was worse than *Gorgias* the Sophister; and *Meivodorus*, than *Alexis* the Comical Poet: for this Poet lived twice as long as *Meivodorus*; and that Sophister, longer than *Epicurus*, by a third part of his age. For it is in another respect, that we say Virtue is pleasant, and Vice feeble, not in regard of the lasting continuance or dissolution of the body: for we see that of Beasts there be many dull slow and blockish of spirit; many also by nature libidinous, unruly and disordered, which live longer than those that are full of wit, wily, wary and wise. And therefore they conclude notwithstanding, in saying, that the divine nature enjoyeth immortality, by taking heed and avoiding those things that be noyome and mischievous. For it behooved, in the divine nature which is blessed and happy, to have set down an impossibility of being subject to all Corruption and Alteration, and that it standeth in no need of care and labour to maintain the said nature. But peradventure it seemeth not to stand with good manners and civility, to dispute thus against those that are not present to make answer for themselves: it were meet therefore, that *Cleombrotus* should refuse and take in hand that speech again, which he gave over and layed aside of late, as touching the departure and translation of these Demons from one place to another. Then *Cleombrotus*: Yes marry, quoth he: but I would marvel, if this discourse of mine would not seem unto you much more absurd than the former delivered already: and yet it seemeth to be grounded upon natural reason, and *Plato* himself hath made the overture thereto, not absolutely pronouncing and affirming so much; but after the manner of a doubtfull opinion and under cover words, casting out a certain wary conjecture tending that way, although among other Philosophers it hath been disclaimed and cryed out against. But forasmuch as there is set a Cup on the board, full of reasons and tales mingled together, and for that a man shall hardly meet in any place again with more courteous and gracious hearers, among whom he may pass and put away such narrations, as pieces of foren coine, and strange money: I will not think much to gratifie you thus far forth, as to acquaint you with a narration that I heard a stranger and a Barbarian relate: whom (after many a journey made to and fro for to finde him out, and much money given by me for to hear where he was) I met with at length by good hap, near unto the Red-sea. His manner was to speak and converse with men but once in the year: all the rest of his time (as he said himself) he spent among the Nymphs, Nomades and Demons. Well, with much ado I light upon him, I communed with him, and he used me courteously. The fairest man he was to see to, of all that ever I set eye on: neither was he subject to any disease: once every month he fed upon a medicinable and bitter fruit of a certain herb: and this was the fare he lived upon. A good linguist he was, and used to speak many languages but with me he talked commonly in Greek, after the Dorick Dialect. His speech differed not so much from Song and Metre: and whensoever he opened his mouth for to speak, there issued forth of it so sweet and fragrant a breath, that all the place about was filled therewith, and smelled most pleasantly. As for his other learning and knowledge, yea, the skill of all histories, he had the same all the year long: but as touching the gift of Divination, he was inspired therewith one day every year, and no more; and then he went down to the Sea side and prophesied of things to come: and thither resorted unto him the Princes and great Lords of that Country, yea and Secretaries of forein Kings who there attended his coming at a day prefixed: which done, he returned. This personage then attributed unto Demons the Spirit of Divination and Prophecy: most pleasure took he in hearing and speaking of *Delphi*: and look whatsoever we hold here as touching *Bacchus*, what adventures befell unto him, and what Sacrifices were performed by us in his honour, he had been informed thereof, and knew all well enough, saying withall: That as these were great accidents, that happened to Demons; so likewise was that, which men reported of the Serpent *Pylhon*: whom he that slew, was neither banished for nine years, nor fled into the valley of *Tempe*, but was chased out of this world, and went into another: from whence (after nine revolutions of the great year) being returned all purified and *Phabus* indeed, that is to say, clear and bright, he recovered the superintendence of the Delphick Oracle, which during that while was left to the custody of *Themis*. The same was the cause (said he) of *Titons* and *Typhons*. For

For he affirmed, they were the battels of Demons against Demons: the flights and banishments also of those who were vanquished: or rather the punishments inflicted by the gods upon as many as had committed such outrages as *Typhon* had done against *Osiris*, and *Saturn* against *Caelus* or the heaven: whose \* or Colours honours were the more obscure or abolished altogether, by reason that themselves were translated into another world. For I understand and hear, that the *Solymans* who border hard upon the *Lycians*, highly honoured *Saturn* when the time was: but after that he having slain their Princes, *Arifalus*, *Dryus*, and *Trefebius*, fled and departed into some other Country (for whether he knew they knew not) they made no more any reckoning of him: but *Arifalus* and the other, they termed by the name of *Beltari*; that is to say, severe gods: and in truth, the *Lycians* at this day, as well in publick as private, utter and recite the form of all their curses and execrations in their names.

Many other semblable examples a man may draw out of Theologicall writings, as touching the gods. Now if we call some of these Demons by the usual and ordinary names of the gods, we ought not to marvel thereof (quoth this stranger unto me:) for look unto which of the gods they do retain, upon whom they depend, and by whose means they have honour and puissance; by their names they love to be called: like as here among us men, one is called *Jovius* of *Jupiter*; another, *Palladius* or *Athenus* of *Minerva*; a third, *Apollonius* of *Apollo*; or *Dionysius* and *Hermans* of *Bacchus* and *Mercury*. And verily, some there be who although they be named thus adventure, yet answer very slyly to such denominations; but many have gotten the denominations of the gods, which agree not unto them, but are transposed wrong and misgiven. Herewith *Cleombrotus* paused: and the speech that he had delivered seemed very strange unto all the company. Then *Heraclitus* demanded of him, whether this doctrine concerned *Plato*? and how it was, that *Plato* had given the overture and beginning of such matter? You do well (quoth *Cleombrotus*) to put me in mind hereof, and to reduce it into my memory. First and foremost therefore, he condemneth evermore the infinity of worlds: marry about the just and precise number of them he doubteth: and howsoever he seems to yield a probability and appearance of truth unto those who have set down five, and attributed to every element one; yet himself sticketh still to one, which seemeth indeed to be the peculiar opinion of *Plato*: whereas other Philosophers also have always mightily feared to admit a multitude of worlds; as if necessary it were, that those who stayed not by the means of matter in one, but went out of it once, could not chuse but fall presently into this indeterminate and troublesome infinity. But this your stranger, (quoth I) determined he nothing of this multitude of worlds, otherwise than *Plato* did? or all the whiles that you conversed with him, did you never move the question thereof unto him, to know what his opinion was thereof? Think you (quoth *Cleombrotus*) that I failed herein, and was not (howsoever otherwise I behaved myself) a diligent Scholar and affectionate Auditor of his in these matters, especially seeing he was so affable, and shewed himself so courteous unto me? But as touching this point, he said: That neither the number of the worlds was infinite, nor yet true it was, that there were no more but one, or five in all: for there were 183, and those ordered and ranged in a form Triangular; of which Triangle every side contained threecore worlds; and of the three remaining still, every corner thereof had one: that they were so ordered, as one touched and intertained another, in manner of those who are in a ring dance: that the plain within the Triangle, is as it were the foundation and altar common to all the worlds, which is called The Plain or Field of Truth: and within it lie immovable the designs, reasons, forms, idæ and examples of all things that ever were or shall be: and about them is eternity, whereof time is a portion, which as a riveret, runneth from thence to those things that are done in time. Now the sight and contemplation of these things was presented unto the souls of men, if they lived well in this world, and that but once in ten thousand years: as for our mysteries here beneath, and all our best and most sacred ceremonies, they were but a dream in comparison of that spectacle & holy ceremonies. Moreover, he said: That for the good things there, and for to enjoy the sight of those beauties, men employed their study in Philosophy here: or else all their pains taken was but in vain, and their travell lost. And verily (quoth he) I heard him discourse of these matters plainly and without any art, no otherwise than if it had been some Religion wherein I was to be professed, in which he instructed me without using any proof and demonstration of his doctrine. Then I (turning to *Demetrius*) called unto him, and asked what were the words that the woens of *Penelope* spake, when they beheld with admiration *Ulysses* handling his bow? And when *Demetrius* had prompted unto me the verse out of *Homer*: Surely (quoth I) it comes into my mind to say the very same of this stranger:

Surely, this fellow, as I ween,  
Some \* prying spie or theef hath been.

not of bowers, as he said of *Ulysses*, but of sentences, resolutions and discourses of Philosophy: he hath been conversant, I say, no doubt in all manner of literature: and I warrant you, no stranger nor Barbarian born, but a Grecian, thorowly furnished with all knowledge and doctrine of the Greeks, And verily, this number of the worlds whereof he talketh, bewraith not an Egyptian nor an Indian, but savoureth of some Dorian out of *Sicilie*, and namely, of *Petron*, born in the City of *Himera*, who wrote a little Book of this argument; which I have not read my self, neither do I know whether it be now extant: but *Hippis* the Rhegine (of whom *Phanias* the Erelian maketh mention) writeth, that this was the opinion and doctrine of *Petron*; namely, that there were 183 worlds, which ranne one another in order and train: but what he meant by this Reaching one another in order or train, he declared

Y y y y 3

\* Some say,  
some read  
that it is  
to say a haue-  
ter.



clared not; neither annexed he any other probable reason thereof. Then *Demetrius*: And what likelihood or probability (quoth he) may there be in such matters, considering that *Plato* himself alleging no argument or conjecture that carrieth with it any shew of truth and reason, hath by that means overthrowen that opinion? And yet (quoth *Heraclitus*) we have heard you Grammarians say, that *Homer* was the first Author of this opinion, as if he divided the universall frame of All into five worlds; to wit, Heaven, Water, Air, Earth, and Olympus: of which, he leaveth two to be common, namely, Earth, to All beneath; and Olympus, to All above: but the three in the midst between them, he attributeth unto three gods. Semblably, it seemeth that *Plato* allotting unto the principall parts and members of the said universall nature, the first forms and most excellent figures of the bodies, called them five worlds: to wit, of the Earth, the Water, the Air, the Fire, and finally, of that which comprehendeth the other: and that he called the form of *Dodecaedron*, that is to say, with twelve bases or faces, which amply extendeth it self, is very capable and moveable, as being a figure proper and meet for the animall motions and revolutions of the foules. What need we at this present (quoth *Demetrius*) to meddle with *Homer*? we have had fables enough already, if that be good. As for *Plato*, he is far enough off from naming those five different substances of the world, five worlds; considering that even in that very place where he disputeth against those who maintain an infinite number of worlds, he affirmeth there is but one created by God, and beloved by him, as his only begotten child, composed of all nature, having one entire body, sufficient in it self, and standing in need of nothing else. Whereupon a man may very well wonder and think it strange, that having himself delivered a truth, he should give occasion to others thereby, to take hold of a false opinion, and wherein there is no appearance of reason. For, if hee had not stuck hard to this unity of the world, in some sort he might have laid the foundation for those who hold them to be infinite: but that he should precisely affirm there were five, and neither more nor fewer, is exceeding absurd, and farre from all probability; unless haply, you (quoth he, casting his eye upon me) can say somewhat to this point. How now (quoth I then) are you minded thus to leave your first disputation of Oracles, as if it were fully finished and ended, and to enter upon another matter of such difficulty? Nay (quoth *Demetrius*) we will not passe it over so; but this here that presenteth it self now, and taketh us as it were by the hand, we cannot put by: for we will not dwell long upon it, but only touch it so, and handle it by the way, as that we may find out some probability, and then will we presently return unto our former question proposed in the beginning! First and formost therefore, I say: The reasons which permit us not to allow an infinite number of worlds, impeach us not, but that we admit more than one. For as well in many worlds as in one, there may be divination, there may be providence, and the least interurrence of fortune: but the most part of the greatest and principall things shall have and take their generations, changes and mutations ordinarily: which cannot possibly be in that infinity of worlds. Over and besides, more consonant it is to reason, and accordeth better with the nature of God, to say, that the world is not created by him, one onely and solitary: for being (as he is) perfectly and absolutely good, there is no vertue wanting in him, and least of all others that which concerneth justice and amity; which as they be of themselves most beautifull, so they are best befitted the gods. Now such is the nature of God; that he hath nothing either unprofitable or in vain and without use: and therefore needs there must be beside and without him, other gods and other worlds, unto whom and which he may extend those sociall vertues that he hath. For neither in regard of himself, nor of any part in him, needeth he to use justice, gracious favour and bounty, but unto others. So that it is not likely that this world sholdeth and moveth without a friend, without a neighbour, and without any society and communication, in a vast and infinite voidnesse; especially seeing we behold how nature enfoldeth, environeth, and comprehendeth all things, in their severall genders and distinct kinds, as it were within vessels or the husks and covertures of their seeds. For look throughout the universall nature, there is nothing to be found one in number, but it hath the notion and reason of the essence and being thereof, common to others: neither hath any thing such and such a denomination, but beside the common notion it is by some particular qualities distinct from others of the same kind. Now the world is not called so in common: then must be such in particular: and qualified it is in particular, and distinguished by certain differences, from other worlds of the same kind, and yet hath a peculiar form of the own. Moreover, considering there is in the whole world, neither man alone, nor horse, nor star, ne yet God or Dæmon solitary: what should hinder us to say, that nature admitteth not one onely world, but hath many? Now if any man shall object unto me and say, that in nature there is but one earth, or one sea: I answer, that he is much deceived and overseen, in not perceiving the evidence that is of similar parts: for we divide the earth into parts similar, that is to say, of the semblable and the same denomination, like as we do the sea also; for all the parts of the earth are called earth, and of the sea likewise: but no part of the world is world, for that it is composed of divers and different natures. For as touching that inconvenience which some especially fear, who spend all matter within one world, lest forsooth if there remained any thing without, it should trouble the composition and frame thereof, by the jumbles and refractions that it would make: surely there is no such cause why they should fear; for when there be many worlds, and each of them particularly having one definite and determinate measure and limit of their substance and matter, no part thereof will be without order and good disposition, nothing will remain superfluous, as an excrement without, to hinder or impeach; for that the reason which belongeth to each world, being able to rule and govern the matter that is allotted thereto, will not suf-

fer

fer any thing to go out of course and order, and wandering to and fro, for to hit and run upon another world; nor likewise that from another ought should come for to rush upon it, because in nature there is nothing in quantity infinite and inordinate, nor in motion without reason and order. But say there should happily be some fluxus or efflux that passeth from one world to another, the same is a brotherly sweet and amiable communication, and such as very well agreeth to all: much like unto the lights of stars, and the influences of their temperatures, which are the cause that they themselves do joy in beholding one another with a kind and favourable aspect; yea and yield unto the gods, which in every star be many (and those good) means to entertain and embrace one another most friendly. For in all this, verily, there is nothing impossible, nothing fabulous nor contrary unto reason: unless peradventure some there be who will suspect and fear the reason and sentence of *Aristotle*, as consonant unto nature. For if as he saith, every body hath a proper and naturall place of the own; by reason thereof necessarily it must be, that the earth from all parts should tend toward the midst, and the water afterward upon it, serving (by means of their weight and ponderosity) instead of a foundation to other elements of a lighter substance. And therefore (quoth he) if there were many worlds, it would fall out oftentimes that the earth should be found situate above air and fire, and as often under them: likewise the air and fire sometime under, otherwhiles in their naturall places, and again in others contrary to their nature. Which being impossible, as he thinketh, it must follow of necessity, that there be neither two nor more worlds, but one alone, to wit, this which we visibly see composed of all sorts of substance, and disposed according to nature, as is meet and convenient for diversity of bodies. But in all this there is more apparent probability than verity indeed. For the better proof hereof, consider I pray you my good friend *Demetrius*, that when he saith, among simple bodies some tend directly to the midst, that is to say downward: others from the midst, that is to say upward: and a third sort move round about the midst and circularly: in what respect taketh hee the midst? Certain it is, not in regard of voidnesse, for there is no such thing in nature, even by his own opinion: again, according unto those that admit it, middle can it have none, no more than first or last: For there be ends and extremities: and that which is infinite must consequently be also without an end. But suppose, that some one of them should enforce us to admit a middle in that voidnesse, impossible it is to conceive and imagine the difference in motions of bodies toward it: because there is not in that voidnesse any puissance attractive of bodies; nor yet within the same bodies, any deliberation or inclination and affection to tend from all sides to this middle. But so less impossible is it to apprehend, that of bodies having no soul any should move of themselves to an incorporall place, and having no difference of situation; than it is that the same should draw them or give them any motion or inclination to it. It remaineth then, that this middle ought to be understood not locally but corporally, that is to say not in regard of place, but of body. For, seeing this world is an union, or mass compounded of many bodies different and unlike conjoined together; it must needs be, that their diversities engender motions discrepant and differing one from the other: which appeareth by this, that every of these bodies changing substance, change their place also withall. For the subtilization and rarefaction distributeth round about the matter which ariseth from the midst and ascendeth on high: contrariwise, condensation and conflation depresseth and driveth it downward to the middle. But of this point, we need not discourse any more in this place. For what cause soever a man shall suppose to produce such passions and mutations, the same shall contain in it a several world: for that each of them hath an earth and sea of the own, each one hath her own proper middle, as also passions and alterations of bodies, together with a nature and power which preserveth and maintaineth every one in their place and being. For that which is without, whether it have nothing at all, or else an infinite voidnesse, middle can it afford none, as we have said before: but there being many worlds, each of them hath a proper middle a part: in such sort, as in every one there shall be motions proper unto bodies, some falling down to the midst, others mounting aloft from the midst, others moving round about the midst, according as they themselves do distinguish motions. And hee who would have, that there being many middles, weighty bodies from all parts should tend unto one alone; may very well be compared unto him, who would have the blood of many men to run from all parts into one vein: likewise that all their brains should be contained within one and the same membran or pannicle; supposing it a great inconvenience and absurdity, if of naturall bodies all that are solid be not in one and the same place, and the rare also in another. Absurd is he that thus saith; and no less foolish were the other, who thinketh much and is offended, if the whole should have all parts, in their order, range and situation naturall. For it were a very grosse absurdity for a man to say, there were a world, which had the Moon in it so situate, as if a man should carry his brain in his heeles, and his heart in the temples of his head: but there were no absurdity nor inconvenience, if in setting down many distinct worlds and those separate one from another, a man should distinguish withall and separate their parts. For in every of them, the earth, the sea, and the skie, shall be to placed and situate in their naturall seats, as it is meet and appertaineth: and each of those worlds shall have superior, inferior, circular, and a centre in the midst; not in regard of another world nor of that which is without, but in it self and in respect of it self. And as for the supposition which some make of a stone without the world, it cannot be imagined how possibly it should either rest or move: for how can it hang still, seeing it is ponderous and weighty? or move toward the midst of the world as other heavy bodies, considering it is neither part of it, nor counted in the substance thereof?

As concerning that earth which is contained in another world and fast bound, we need not to make doubt

doubt and question, how it should not fall down hither by reason of the weight, nor be plucked away from the whole; as fecing as we do, that it hath a natural strength to contain every part thereof. For if we shall take high and low, not within and in respect of the world, but without forth, we shall be driven unto the same difficulties and distresses, which *Epicurus* is fallen into, who maketh his little Atomes or indivisible bodies to move and tend toward those places which are under foot: as if either his voidness had feet, or the infinity which he speaketh of, permit a man to imagine either high or low. And therefore some cause there is to marvel as *Chrysippus*, or rather to enquire and demand what fantastic hath come into his head, and moved him to say, that this world is seated and placed directly in the midst; & that the substance thereof, from all eternity having taken up and occupied the place of the midst, yet nevertheless it is so compact and tied together that it endureth always, and is (as one would say) immortalized: for so much hath he written in his fourth Book *de Divinatione*, that is to say, Of possible things; dreaming (to no purpose) of a middle place in that vast emptiness: and yet more absurdly attributing unto that middle (which is not, nor hath any subsistence) the cause of the world's continuance and stability; especially having written thus much many times in other places, that the substance is governed and maintained partly by the motions tending to the midst, and partly by others from the midst of it. As for other oppositions besides, that the Stoicks make, who is there that feareth them? as namely, when they demand, How it is possible to maintain one fatal necessity, and one divine providence? and how it can otherwise be, but that there should be many *DEI*s and *ZENES*, that is *Joves* and *Jupiters*, if we grant that there be many worlds: For to begin withall, it is an inconvenience, to allow many such *Joves* and *Jupiters*, their opinions verily be far more absurd: for they devise an infinite sort of *Suns*, *Moons*, *Apollons*, *Dianes* and *Neptunes*, in innumerable conversions and revolutions of worlds. Moreover, what necessity is there, to enforce us to avow many *Jupiters*, if there be many worlds? and not rather, in every of them a several god, as a sovereign governor and ruler of the whole, furnished with all understanding and reason, as he whom we surmount the Lord and Father of all things? Or what should hinder, but that all worlds might be subject to the providence and destiny of *Jupiter*: and he reciprocally have an eye to oversee all, to direct, direct and conduct all, in ministering unto them the principles, beginnings, seeds and reasons of all things that are done and made? For it being so that we do see even here many times, a body composed of many other distinct bodies; as for example, the assembly or congregation of a City, an Army, and a dance; in every one of which bodies there is life, prudence, and intelligence, as *Chrysippus* thinketh: impossible it is not likewise, that in this universal nature, there should be sensibility, yea and a hundred worlds, using all one and the same reason, and correspondent to one beginning. But contrariwise, this order and disposition is best befitting the gods. For we ought not to make the gods like unto the Kings of a swarm of Bees, which go not forth, but keep within the hive; nor to hold them enclosed and imprisoned (as it were) rather, and shut up fast within Matter, as these men do, who would have the gods to be certain habitations or dispositions of the air; and supposing them to be powers of waters and of fire infused and mixed within, make them to arise and be engendered together with the world, and so afterwards, to be burnt likewise with it, not allowing them to be loose and at liberty, like as Coachmen and Pilots are; but in manner of Statues or Images are set fast unto their Bases with Nails, and sodered with Lead: even so they enclose the gods within bodily matter, and pin them hard thereto; so as being joynted (as it were) sure unto it, they participate therewith all changes and alterations, even to final corruption and dissolution. Yet is this opinion far more grave, religious and magnificent, in my conceit: to hold that the gods be of themselves free, and without all command of any other power. And like as the fiery light *Caster* and *Pellux* succour those who are tossed in a tempest, and by their coming and presence

*Alay the surging waves of sea below,  
And still the blustering winds aloft that blow;*

and not failing themselves, nor partaking the same perils with the Mariners, but onely appearing in the air above, save those that were in danger: even so the gods for their pleasure go from one world to another, to visit them; and together with nature, rule and govern every one of them. For *Jupiter* verily in *Homers*, call not his eyes far from the City of *Troy*, either into *Thracia*, or the Nomades and vagrant Scythians along the river *Ister* or *Danubius*: but the true *Jupiter* indeed hath many fair passages and goodly changes befitting his Majesty out of one world into another, neither looking into the infinite voidness without, nor beholding himself and nothing else, as some have thought; but considering the deeds of men and of gods, the motions also and revolutions of the Stars in their spheres. For surely, the Deity is not offended with variety, nor hath mutations: but taketh much pleasure therein, as a man may grieve by the circulations, conversions and changes which appear in the heaven. I conclude therefore, that the infinity of worlds is a very senseless and false conceit, such as in no wise will bear and admit any god, but employeth fortune and chance in the managing of all things: but contrariwise, the administration & providence of a certain quantity and determinate number of worlds, seemeth unto me neither in majesty and worthiness inferior, nor in travell more laborious, than this which is employed and restrained to the direction of one alone; which is transformed, renewed & metamorphosed (as it were) an infinite sort of times. After I had delivered this speech, I paused and held my peace. Then *Philippus*, making no long stay; As for me, I will not greedily have nor stand upon it (quoth he) whether the truth be so or otherwise; but in case we force God out of the superintendence

of one onely world, how is it, that we make him to be Creator of five worlds, neither more nor less? and what the peculiar and special reason is of this number to a plurality of worlds, rather than of any other, I would more willingly know, than the occasion or cause, why this Most Excellent is consecrated in this Temple. For it is neither a triangular, nor a quadrat, nor a perfect, ne yet a cubique number: neither seemeth it to represent any other elegance unto those, who love and esteem such speculations as these.

And as for the Argument inferred from the number of Elements, which *Plato* himself obscurely and under covert terms touched, it is very hard to comprehend; neither doth it carry and shew any probability, whereby he should be induced to conclude, and draw in a consequence: that like it is, considering in matter there be engendered five sorts of regular bodies, having equall angles, equal sides, and environed with equall superficies; there should seemably of these five bodies, be five worlds made and formed, from the very first beginning. And yet (quoth I) it should seem, that *Theodorus* the Solian, expounding the Mathematicks of *Plato*, handled this matter not amiss, nor misinterpreted the place; and thus goeth he to work: The Pyramid, Octaedron, Dodecaedron, and Icoaedron (which *Plato* setteth down for the first Bodies) are right beautiful all, both for their proportions, and also for their equalities: neither is there left for nature any other, to devise & form better than they, or indeed answerable and like unto them. Howbeit they have not all either the same constitution, nor the like original: for the least verily and smallest of the five is the Pyramid; the greatest and that which consisteth of most parts, is Dodecaedron; and of the other two behind, the Icoaedron is bigger by two fold and more, than Octaedron, if you compare their number of triangles. And therefore impossible it is, that they should be all made at once of one and the same matter; for the small and feeble, and such as in composition are more simple than the rest, were more pliable no doubt, & obedient unto the hand of workmen, who moved and formed the matter, and therefore by all consequence sooner made and brought into subsistence, than those which had more parts and a greater mass: of bodies of which, and namely of such as had more labourious makings, and a busier composition, is Dodecaedron. Whereupon it followeth necessarily, that Pyramid only was the first body: and not any of the other, as being by nature created and produced afterwards. But the remedy and means to save and avoid this absurdity also, is to separate and divide the matter into five worlds: for here the Pyramid came forth first; then the Octaedron, and elsewhere the Icoaedron; and in every of these worlds, out of that which came first into esse, the rest drew their original, by the concretion of parts, which causeth them all to change into all, according as *Plato* doth insinuate, discoursing by examples in manner throughout all: but it shall suffice us briefly to learn thus much. For Air is engendered by the extinction of Fire: and the same again being subtilized and rarefied, produceth Fire. Now in the seeds of these two, a man may know their passions, and the transmutations of all. The seminary or beginning of Fire is the Pyramid, composed of four and twenty first triangles: but the seminary of the Air is Octaedron, consisting of triangles of the same kinde, in number forty eight. And thus the one Element of Air, standeth upon two of Fire, composed and conjoynted together: and again, one Body or Element of the Air, is divided and parted into twain of fire: which becoming to be thickened and coarsate more still in it self, turneth into the form of Water; in such sort as throughout, that which cometh first into light, giveth alwaies a ready and easie generation unto all the rest, by way of change and transmutation: and so, that never remaineth solitary and alone which is first; but as one mass: and constitution hath the primitive and antecedent motion in another of original beginning: so in all there is kept one name and denomination. Now surely (quoth *Ammonius*) it is stoutly done of *Theodorus*, and he hath quite himself very well, in fetching about this matter so indolently. But I would much marvel if these presuppositions of his making, do not overthrow and refute one another: for he would have, that their five worlds were not composed all at once together; but that the smallest and most feeble which required least workmanship in the making, came forth first: then as a thing consequent, and not repugnant at all, he supposeth that the matter doth not thrust forth alwaies, into effence, that which is most feeble and simple; but that otherwhiles the thickest, the most gross, and heaviest parts, shew first in generation. But over and besides all this, after a supposall made, there be five primitive Bodies or Elements, and consequently thereupon five Worlds; he applyeth not his truth and probability but unto four only. For as touching the Cube, he subtilizeth and removeth it quite away, as they do who play at nine holes, and who tumble little round stones: for that such a square and quadrat body every way is naturally unfit, either to turn into them, or to yield them any means to turn unto it, for that the triangles of which they be composed, are not of the same kinde: for all the rest do in a common consist of a demi-triangle, as the base; but the proper subject whereof this Cube particularly standeth, is the triangle Isosceles, which admitteth no inclination unto a demi-triangle, nor possibly can be incorporate or united to it. Now if it be so, that of those five Bodies there be consequently five Worlds, and that in each one of those Worlds the beginning of their generation and constitution, is that Body which is first produced and brought to light: it would come to pass, that where the Cube cometh forth first for the generation of the rest, none of the other Bodies can possibly be there, forasmuch as the nature of it is not to turn or change into any one of them. For let us suppose here to allege, that the Element or principle whereof Dodecaedron is composed, is not that triangle which is called Scalanon, with three unequal sides, but some other as they say, however *Plato* hath made his Pyramid, Octaedron, and Icoaedron of it: And therefore (quoth *Ammonius*, smiling thereat)

either

either you must dissolve these objections, or else allege some new matter as touching the question now presently in hand. Then answered I: For mine own part I am not able at this time any thing that carrieth more probability: but peradventure it were better for a man to yield reasons of his own opinion rather, than of another's. To begin again therefore I say, that nature being parted and divided as the first in two parts, the one sensible, mutable, subject to generation and corruption, and variety every way; the other spiritual and intelligible, and continuing evermore in one and the same state, it were very strange and absurd my good friends, first to say that the spiritual nature receiveth division, and hath diversity and difference in it: and then to think much and grow into heat of choler and anger, if a man allow not the passible and corporall nature wholly united and incorporate in it self, without dividing or separating it into many parts. For more meet it were yet, and reasonable, that natures permanent and divine should cohere unto themselves inseparably, and avoid as much as is possible all distraction and division: and yet this force and power of *The Other*, meddling also even with these, causeth in spiritual and intellectuall things, greater dislocations and dissimilitudes in form and essentiall reason, than are the locall distances in those corporall natures. And therefore *Plato* confuting those who hold this position, that all is one, affirmeth these five grounds and principles of all, to wit, *Essence and Being, The Same, The Other*, and after all, *Motion, and Station*. Admit these five, no marvel is it, if nature of those five bodily Elements hath framed proper figures and representations for every one of them, not simple and pure, but so, as every one of them is most participant of each of those properties and puissances. For, plain and evident it is that the Cube is most meet and fortible unto station and repose, in regard of the stability and stedy firmities of those broad and flat faces which it hath. As for the *Pyramid*, who seeth not and acknowledgeth not incontinently in it the nature of fire, ever moving in those long and slender sides and sharp angles that it hath? Also the nature of *Dodecaedron* apt to comprehend all other figures, may seem properly to be the image representing *Ens*, or That which is, in respect of corporall essence. Of the other twain, *Icosaedron* resembling *The Other, Or Diverse*: but *Octaedron*, hath a principle reference to the form of *The Same*. And so by this reckoning, the one of them produceth forth Air, capable of all substance in one form; and the one other exhibited unto us Water, which by temperature may turn inso all sorts of qualities. Now if so be that nature requireth in all things and throughout all, an equal and uniform distribution, very probable it is, that there be also five worlds, and neither more nor fewer, than there be moulds or patterns: to the end that each example or pattern may hold the first place and principall puissance in each world, like as they have in the first constitution and composition of bodies. And this may stand in some sort for an Answer, and to satisfie him who marvelleth, how we divide that nature which is subject to generation and alteration, into so many kinds: but yet I beseech you, consider and weigh with men more diligently this argument. Certain it is, that of those two first and supreme principles, I mean *Unity*, and *Binary*, or *Duality*; this latter being the Element and originall primitive of all deformity, disorder and confusion, is called Infinity: but contrariwise the nature of *Unity*, determining and limiting the void infinity, which hath no proportion nor termination, reduceth it into a good form, and maketh it in some sort capable and apt to receive a denomination, which alwaies accompanieth sensible things. And verily these two generall principles shew themselves; first in number, or rather indeed to speak generally, no multitude is called number, until such time as *Unity* coming to be imprinted as the form in matter, cutteth off from indeterminat Infinity, that which is superfluous, here more and there lesse; for then each multitude becometh and is made number, when as it is once determined and limited by *Unity*: but if a man take *Unity* away, then the infinity and indeterminat Duality, coming again in place to confound all, maketh it to be without Order, without Grace, without Number, and without Measure. Now considering it is so, that the form is not the destruction of matter, but rather the Figure Ornament and Order thereof; it must needs be, that both these principles are within number, from which proceedeth the chief dissimilitude and greatest difference. For the infinity and indeterminat principles, to wit, *Duality*, is the author and cause of the even number; but better, to wit *Unity*, is the Father (as one would say) of the odd number; so as the first even number is two, and the first odd number three, of which is compounded five, by conjunction common to both, but in the own puissance odd. For it behoved and necessary it was, in as much as that which is corporall and sensible for composition sake, is divided into many parts by the power and force of *The Other*, that is to say, of Diversity, that it should be neither the first even number, nor yet the first uneven or odd, but a third consisting of both: to the end that it might be procreate of both principles, to wit, of that which ingendreth the even number, and of that which produceth the odd; for it could not be, that the one should be parted from the other, because that both of them have the nature and puissance of a principle. These two principles then being conjoint together, the better being the mightier, is opposed unto the indeterminat infinity, which divideth the corporall nature; and so the matter being divided, the *Unity* interposing it self between, impeacheth the universall nature, that it was not divided and parted into two equal portions: but there was a plurality of worlds caused by *The Other*, that is to say, by Diversity, and difference of that which is infinite and determinate; but this plurality was brought into an odd and uneven number, by the vertue and puissance of *The Same*, and that which finite, because the better principle suffered not nature to extend farther than was expedient. For if one had been pure and simple without mixture, the matter should have had no separation at all; but in as much as it was mixed with *Duality*, which is a divisive nature, it hath received indeed and suffered by this means separation and

division

division: howbeit, stayed is hath in good time, because the odde was the matter and superiour over the even. This was the reason that our ancients in old time were wont to use the verb *Pempassibhai*, when they would signifie to number or to reckon: And I think verily that this word *πεντα*, that is to say, All, was derived of *Πεντε*, that is to say, Five, and not without good reason, because that five is compounded of the two first numbers 3, and when other numbers afterwards be multiplied by others, they produce divers numbers: whereas five if it be multiplied by an even number and doubled, bringeth forth Ten, a perfect number; but if by the odde, it representeth it self again. Here I omit to say, that it is composed of the two first quadrate numbers, to wit of *Unity* and Four; and that it is the first number which is equivalent to the two before it, in such sort as it compoundeth the fairest triangle of those that have right angles, and is the first number that containeth the sequilateral proportion. For haply these reasons be not well suitable nor proper unto the discourse of this present matter: but this rather is more convenient to allege, that in this number, there is a natural vertue and faculty of dividing, and that nature divideth many things by this number. For even in our own selves the hath placed five exterior senses, as also five parts of the soul, to wit, naturall, sensitive, concupiscible, irascible, and reasonable: likewise so many fingers in either hand. Also the genitall seed is at the most distributed into five portions: for in no History it is found written, that a woman was delivered of more than five Children at one birth. The Egyptians also in their Fables do report, that the goddess *Rhea* brought forth five gods and goddesses: signifying hereby under covert words, that of one and the same matter five worlds were procreate. Come to the universall fabrick and frame of nature, the earth is divided into five zones: the Heaven also in five Circles, two Arctiques, two Tropicks, and one Equinoctiall in the midst. Moreover five revolutions there be of the Planets or wandering Stars: for that the Sun, *Venus*, and *Mercury* run together in one race. Furthermore the very world it self is composed harmonically respective to five. Like as even among us our musickall accord and concert consisteth of the posture of five tetra chords, ranged orderly one after another, to wit, of *Hy-pates, Meses, Synnemenez, Diezeugmenes*, and *Hyperbolize* likewise. The intervals likewise in Song which we use, be five in number, *Diesis, Semitonion, Tonus, Trimitonion*, and *Ditonon*. So as, it seemeth that nature taketh more pleasure in making all things according to the number of five, than after a Spheerickall or round form; as *Aristotle* writeth. But what is the cause will some one say, that *Plato* hath reduced the number of five worlds to the five primitive figures of regular bodies, saying, that God in ordaining and describing the whole world used the Quinary construction? and yet afterwards having proposed the doubtfull question of the number of worlds (to wit, whether we should hold, there was but one, or rather that there were five in truth?) he sheweth plainly that his conjecture is grounded upon this very argument. If therefore we ought to apply the probability to his mind and opinion, then of necessity with the diversity of these figures and bodies there must ensue presently a difference also of motions, according as he himself teacheth, affirming: Whatsoever is subtilized or thickened, with the alteration of substance, changeth withall the place. For so, if of the air is ingendred fire, namely when the *Octaedron* is dissolved and parted into *Pyramides*: and contrariwise air of fire being driven close and thrust together into the force of *octaedron*: it is not possible that it should be in the place where it was afore, but flie and run into another, as being forced and driven out of the former, and so fight against whatsoever standeth in the way and maketh resistance. And yet more fully and evidently declareth he the same by a similitude and example of such things, as by fans or such like Instruments whereby Corn is cleaved and shaken out, or winowed and tryed from the rest: saying, that even so the elements shaking the matter, and likewise shaken by it, went alwayes to bring like to like, and some took up this place, others that, before the universall world was of them composed as now it is. The generall matter therefore being in such estate then (as by good likelihood All must needs be where god is away) presently the first five qualities, or rather the first five bodies, having every one of them their proper inclinations and peculiar motions, went apart not wholly and altogether, nor severed sincerely afunder one from another, for that when all was huddled pell-mell confusedly, such as were surmounted and vanquished, went evermore even against their nature with the mightier and those which Conquered. And therefore when some were haled one way, and others carried another way, it hapned that they made as many portions and distinctions in number, just as there were divers kinds of those first bodies: the one of fire, and yet the same not pure, but carrying the form of fire: another of a celestiall nature, not sincere heaven indeed, but standing much of the sky: a third of earth, and yet not simply and wholly earth, but rather earthly. But principally, there was a communication of air and water, as we have said heretofore, for that these went their wayes filled with many divers kinds. For it was not God who separated and disposed the substance, but having found it so rashly and confusedly dissipated of it self, and each part carried diversly in so great disorder, he digested and arranged it by Symmetry and competent proportion. Then, after he had set over every one, Reason as a guardian and governer, he made as many worlds as there were kinds of those first bodies subsistent. And thus let this discourse for *Ammonius* sake, be dedicated as it were to the grace and favour of *Plato*. For mine own part, I will never stand so precisely upon this number of worlds: marry of this mind I am rather, that their opinion who hold that there be more worlds than one (howbeit not infinite but determinate) is not more absurd than either of the other, but founded upon as much reason as they: seeing as I do, that Matter of the own nature is spread and diffused into many parts, not resting in one, and yet not permitted by reason, to run in infinitum. And therefore, especially here (if else where) putting our selves in mind of the Academy and the

the precept thereof, let us not be over-credulous, but as in a slippery place restrain our assent and belief: only in this point of infinity of worlds, let us stand firm and see we fall not, but keep our selves upright. When I had delivered these reasons above said: Believe me (quoth *Demetrius*) *Lamprias* giveth us a good and wise admonition, For

*The gods, for to deceive us men, devise  
Right many meanes, not of false Sophistries,*

as *Euripides* saith: but of their deeds and works, when we presume and dare pronounce of so high and great matters, as if we knew them certainly. But as the man himself said even now, we must recall our speech unto the argument which was first proposed. For that which heretofore hath been said, namely that the Oracles are become mute, and lye still without any validity, because the *Dæmons* which were wont to govern them, be retired and gone, like as Instruments of Musick yield no sound and harmony when the Musicians handle them not: this (I say) giveth occasion to move another question of greater importance, as touching the cause and power, by which the *Dæmons* use to make their Prophecies and Prophetesses to be ravished with an Enthusiasm or divine Fury, and full of fantastical Visions. For it is to no purpose to say, that the Oracles are silent, because they be abandoned and forsaken of the *Dæmons*; unless we be first persuaded, that when they be present and preside over them, they set them a work, and cause them to speak and prophesie. Then *Ammonius* taking his turn to speak: Think you (quoth he) that these *Dæmons* be called any thing else,

*Then spirits clad with substance of the air,  
Which walk about the earth, now here now there,*

as saith *Hesiodus*? For it seemeth unto me, that look how one man differeth from another, playing either in a Comedy or a Tragedy: the same difference sheweth in the soul, which is arrayed and clothed within a body during this life. There is nothing therefore herein, either strange or without appearance of reason, if soules meeting with other soules, imprint in them Visions and Fancies of future things: like as we also shew many accidents done and past, yea and foretell and prognosticate of such as are to come, not all by lively voyce, but some by Letters and Writings, nay by touching onely and the regard of the eye; unless peradventure, you have somewhat else (as *Lamprias*) to say against this. For it was not long since told us, that you had much disputation and conference with certain strangers in *Lebadia*; but he who related this news unto us, could not call exactly to mind what talk passed between you. Marvell not thereto (quoth I) for many affairs and occurrences fell out at once between, by occasion that the Oracle was open, and a sacrifice solemnized, which caused our speeches to be dispersed, distracted and scattered disorderly. But now (quoth *Ammonius*) your Auditors be at good leisure, willing also to ask questions and to learn, not delirious to contest and contradict in a litigious and quarrelsome humor; before whom you may have good leave to speak what you will, and for that liberty of speech have pardon at their hands and be held excused, as you see. Now when the rest of the company invited and exhorted me likewise, after some pause made and silence for a while, I began again in this manner: Certes (quoth I). O *Ammonius*, it fortuneth so, I wot not how, that even your self gave the overture and first occasion of those discourses which then and there were held. For it *Dæmons* be spirits and soules separate from bodies, and having no fellowship with them (as your self said, following herein the divine Poet *Hesiodus*, who calleth them,

*Pure spirits, here walking on the earth at large;  
Of mortall men, who have the care and charge)*

why deprive we those spirits and soules which are within the bodies, of this same puissance, whereby the *Dæmons* are able to foresee and foretell things to come? For it is not like, that the soules acquired any new propriety or power, when they have abandoned the bodies, wherewith they were not endued before: but think we must that they had the same parts and faculties alwayes, although worse I must needs say, when they be mixt with bodies. And some of them verily appear not at all, but be hidden: others are but obscure and feeble, such as heavily and slowly perform their operations (much like unto those who be through a thick mist, or move in some moist and waterish substance) desiring greatly to be cured, and to recover that faculty which is their own: to be discharged also and cleared of that which hindreth and defraudeth them of it. For the soul, even while it is bound and tyed to the body, hath indeed a power to foresee and know future things: but blinded it is with the terrestrial mixture of corporall substance; for that, like as the Sun becometh not then to be clear, and not afore, when he is past the clouds; but being of himself alwayes shining, he seemeth unto us dark and troubled through a mist: even so the soul, getteth not then a new power of divination and prophesie, when she departeth out of the body, as if she were escaped out of a cloud; but having the same before, is dimmed and obscured by the commixtion and confusion with that which is mortall and corruptible. Neither ought we to make a wonder hereto, and think it incredible, seeing as we do (if there were nothing else in the soul) how that faculty which we call Memory, is equipollent and answerable in an opposite respect unto the puissance of divination; and considering the great effect thereof, in preserving and keeping things past, or rather indeed keeping them whiles they be. For to say truly, of that which is once passed nothing remaineth nor subsisteth in esse, were they actions, words, or passions: for all things be transitory and passe away as soon as they are, because time, in manner of a current or stream,

stream, carrieth all away before it: but this memorative faculty of the soul catching hold thereof I know not how, and staying it for slipping away, giveth an imagination of essence and being to those things, which in truth are not. For the Oracle verily which was given to the Thebaisians as touching the City *Arna*, willed them to utter and speak

*That which the blinde se: clear,  
And what the deaf do hear.*

But memory is unto us the hearing of the deaf, and the sight likewise of the blinde; in such sort, as no marvel it is (as I have already said) if our soul in retaining still things which are no more, doth anticipate many of those also, which are not yet. And such objects indeed concern it rather, and therewith is it affected more. For she bendeth and inclineth towards things that are to come: whereas of such as be already past and come to their end, she is freed and delivered, but only that she remembereth them. Our soules then having this puissance in them inbred and natural, though feeble, obscure, and hardly able to expresse and represent their imaginations; yet nevertheless some of them shew and put them forth many times in dreams, and in certain sacred ceremonies and mysteries: namely, when the body is well purified, or receiveth a fit temperature therefore, or else for that reasonable, and speculative faculty being then freed from the cares of things present, joyneth with the unreasonable and imaginative part, and turneth it to think upon the future. For I approve not that which *Euripides* saith:

*I hold him for Divinator best,  
Who in conjectures misseth least;*

but he verily who is directed by the reasonable and intelligent part of the soul, and followeth the conduct and leading thereof by all probability. Now that power or faculty of Divination (like unto a pair of blank writing Tables, wherein there is nothing written) void of reason, and not determinate of it self, but only apt and meet to receive fancies, affections, and preferences, without any discourse of reason, or ratiocination, hitteeth upon that which is to come, at what time as it is most removed from that which is present; and in this extasie it is transmutated, by a certain temperature and disposition of the body, which we call *Enthusiasm* or inspiration. Now such a disposition as this, many times the body of it self hath; but the Earth putteth forth and yieldeth unto men the fountes and fountains of many other powers and faculties: some of which transport them out of their wits, bringing maladies, contagions, and mortalities: others again be sometime good, kinde, and profitable, as they know full well who make experience thereof. But this spring, this winds, or Propheticall spirit of Divination, is most Divine and holy, whether it arise and breath up alone by it self through the Air, or be drawn up with some liquid humour. For coming once to be infused and mixed within the body, it causeth a strange temperature and unufull disposition in the soules: the property whereof, a right hard manner it is to declare exactly, and expresse certainly; but a man in reason may attain thereto by conjecture: surely waies: for by heat and dilatation, it openeth (I wot not what) little holes, by which in all likelihood the imaginative faculty is set on work about future things; much like as wine which working and boiling in the body fureth up, and among others motions, it revealeth and discovereth many hidden secrets. For the fury of *Bacchus* and of drunkenness, if we may believe *Euripides*, containeth much Divination: when the soul being enchaufed and enflamed, expelleth all fear, which humane wisdom bringeth in, and by that means many times averteeth, and quencheth the Divine inspiration. And herewithall a man may allege very well, and not without great reason, that society coming intermingled with heat, subtilizeth the spirit, and maketh it pure, and of the nature of fire (for according to *Heraclitus*, the soul it self is of a dry constitution;) whereas humidity doth not only dim the sight, and dull the hearing, but also being mingled with the air, and touching the superficies of mirrors, darkeneth the brightnesse of the one, and taketh away the light of the other. On the contrary side, it is not impossible that by some refrigeration and condensation of this spirit, after the manner of the tincture and hardnesse of iron, this part of the soul which doth prognosticate, should shew it self and get a perfect edge. And like as Tinne being melted with Brasse (which of it self is a metal in the Ore, rare, spongiouse, and full of little holes) doth drive it neerer, and maketh it more massie and solid, and withall, causeth it to look more bright and refulgent: even so, if we no inconvenience to hinder, but that this Propheticall exhalation having some congruence and affinity with the soules, should fill up that which is lax and empty, and drive it close together more inwardly. For many things there be, that have a resemblance and congruity unto the other: thus the Bean is sortable unto the purple dye; Salt-nitre likewise helpeth much the tincture of a rich scarlet or crimson colour, if it be mixed therewith, according also as *Empedocles* said:

*And with the flower of Saffron red,  
Fine Flax and Silk are coloured.*

And we have heard you speak (good friend *Demetrius*) of the River *Cydnus*, and the sacred cutting Knife of *Apollo* in *Tarsus*; and namely, how the said River only cleareth that Iron whereof the Knife is made, neither is there any other water in the World able to scour that Knife: like as in the City *Olympia*, they temper the axes that cometh of the sacrifices, with the water of the River *Alpheus*, and make thereof a mortar, wherewith they plaister the Altar there; but if they assay to do it with the water of any other River else, it will not stick to, nor binde one jot. No marvel therefore it is, if the Earth sending

sending up ours of it many exhalations, these only are found to transport the souls with an Enthusiasm or Divine fury, and represent the imaginations and fancies of future things. But without all question and contradiction, the report that goeth of the Oracle in this place, accordeth well to this purpose. For it is said, that this Propheticall and Divining power here, shewed it self first, by occasion of a certain herdman, who chanced here to fall; who thereupon began to cast forth certain fantastical cries and voices, as if he had been possessed with such a Divine inspiration. Whereof the neighbours and those that came about him, at first made no account; but afterwards, when they saw that it fell out so indeed, as he had foretold, they had the man in great admiration; and the greatest Clarks and Wise men of all the Delphians, calling to remembrance his name, gave out that it was *Corax*. So that, it seemeth to me, that the soul admitteth this temperate and mixture with this Propheticall spirit, as the sight of the eye is affected with the light. For albeit the eye hath naturally a property and power to see, yet the same is not effectual without the light: even so the soul having this puissance and faculty, to foresee future things, like unto the eye had need of some proper and convenient thing to kindle it as it were, and set an edge upon it. And hereupon it is, that many of our ancients have thought *Apollo*, and the Sun, to be one and the same god. They also who know what this beautiful and wise proportion is, and will do honor to it: look what reference or respect there is of the body to the soul, of the sight to light, and of the \* understanding to the truth, the same force and power they esteemed there is of the Sun's power unto the nature of *Apollo*: saying, that he is the issue and geniture proceeding from *Apollo* who is eternal, and who continually bringeth him forth. For like as the one kindles, bringeth forth and stretch up the vital power and virtue of the sense: even so doth the other by the Propheticall virtue of the soul. They therefore who thought that it was one and the self-same god, by good right dedicated and consecrated this Oracle unto *Apollo*, and unto the Earth: judging, that the Sun it was which wrought that temperate, and imprinted this disposition in the Earth, whereof arose this Propheticall evaporation. And verily as *Hesiodus* upon good consideration, and with much more reason than some Philosophers, called the Earth,

*The ground-work sure  
Of all nature:*

even so we deem it to be eternal, immortal, and incorruptible: marry of the virtues and faculties which are in it, we hold that some fall in one place, and others breed a new and engender in another: and great probability there is, that there be transmutations and changes, from one place to another, and that such revolutions as these, in the course and process of long time, turn and return circularly often is it; as a man may conjecture, and certainly collect by such things as manifestly do appear. For in divers and sundry Countries, we see that Lakes and whole Rivers, yea and many more Fountains and Springs of hot waters, have failed and been quite lost, as being fled out of our sight, and hidden within the Earth; but afterwards in the very same places they have in time shewed themselves again, or else run hard by. And of metal Mines, we know that some have been spent clean and emptied, as namely, those of Silver about the Territory of *Atica*: seemingly the veins of Brass Oar in *Euboea*, out of which they forged sometime the best Swords, that were hardened with the tincture of cold water: according to which the Poet *Æchylus* said:

*He took in hand the keen and dour blade,  
Which of Euboean steel sometime was made.*

The Rock also and Quarry in *Carylia*, it is not long since it gave over to bring forth certain bals or bottoms of soft stone, which they use to spin and draw into thread, in manner of Flax: for I suppose that some of you have seen Towels, Napkins, Nets, Cauls, Kerchiefs and Coifes woven of such thread, which would not burn and consume in the fire, but when they were foul and soiled with occupying, folk flung them into the fire, and took them forth again clean and fair: but now all this is quite gone, and hardly within the said dell shall a man meet with some few hairy threads of that matter, running here and there among the hard stones digged out from thence. Now of all these things *Aristotle* and his Sectaries hold: That an exhalation within the Earth, is the only efficient cause, with which of necessity such effects must fall and pass from place to place; as also otherwhiles, breed again therewith. Seemably are we to think of the spirits and exhalations Propheticall which issue out of the Earth: namely, that they have not a nature immortal, and such as cannot age or waxe old, but subject to change and alteration. For probable it is, that the great gluttons of Rain and extraordinary floods, have extinguished them quite, and that by the terrible fall of Thunder-boulds the places were smitten, and they whithall dissipated and dispatched: but principally, when the ground hath been shaken with Earthquakes, and thereupon settled downward and fallen in, with trouble and confusion of whatsoever was below; it cannot chuse but such exhalations contained within the hollow caves of the Earth, either changed their place and were driven forth, or utterly were stifled and choaked. And so in this place also, they remained and appeared some tokens of that great Earth-quake, which overthrow the City and staid the Oracle here: like as, by report in the City *Orethomeneis*, there was a Plague which swept away a number of people; and therewith the Oracle of *Tirefias* the Prophet, failed for ever, and so continueth at this day mute and to no effect. And whether the like befall unto the Oracles which were wont to be in *Cilicia*, as we hear say, no man can more certainly inform us than you *Demetrius*. Then *Demetrius*: How things stand now at this present, I wot not; for I have been a Traveller and out of my native Country a long time, as ye all know: but when I was in those parts, both that of *Mopsus*, and also the other of *Amphilochus*, flourished and were in great request. And as for the

Oracle

Oracle of *Mopsus*, I am able to make report unto you of a most strange and wonderful event thereof, for that I was my self present. The Governour of *Cilicia* is of himself doubtful and wavering, whether there be gods or no? upon infirmity, as I take it, of miscredence and unbelief (for otherwise he was a naughty man, a violent oppressor, and scorner of religion.) But having about him certain Epicureans, who standing much upon their goodly and beautiful Physiolophy forsooth (as they term it) or else all were marred, scoff at such things; he sent one of his anarchized or freed servants unto the Oracle of *Mopsus* indeed, howbeit, making semblance as if he were an epial, to discover the Camp of his Enemies: he sent him (I say) with a letter surely sealed, wherein he had written without the privacy of any person whatsoever, a question or demand to be presented unto the Oracle. This messenger, after the order and custom of the place, remaining all night within the Sanctuary of the Temple, fell there asleep, and rehearsed the morrow morning what a dream he had; and namely, that he thought he saw a fair and beautiful man to present himself unto him, and say unto him this only word *Black*; and no more: for presently he went his way out of his sight. Now we that were there, thought this to be a foolish and absurd toy, neither wilt we what to make of it. But the Governour afore said was much astonished therat, and being stricken with a great remorse and prick of conscience, worshipped *Mopsus*, and held his Oracle most venerable; for opening the letter, he shewed publicly the demand contained therein, which went in these words: *Shall I sacrifice unto thee a white Bull, or a black?* inasmuch as the very Epicureans themselves who conversed with him, were much abashed and ashamed. So he offered the sacrifice accordingly, and ever afterwards to his dying day honoured *Mopsus* right devoutly.

*Demetrius* having thus said, held his peace: but I desirous to conclude this whole dispute with some collary, turned again and cast mine eye upon *Philippus* and *Ammonius* who sat together. Now they seemed as if they had some what to speak unto me, and thereupon I staid my self again. With that, *Ammonius*: *Philip* (quoth he) *O Lamprias*, hath somwhat yet to say of the question which hath been all this while debated. For he is of opinion, as many others beside him are, that *Apollo* is no other god than the Sun, but even the very same. But the doubt which I move, is greater and of more important matters. For I wot not how erewhile, in the train of our discourse, we took from the gods all Division and ascribed the same in plain termes to Demons and Angels: and now we will seem to thrust them out again from hence, and to dislodge them of the Oracle and three-footed Table of which they were possessed; conferring the beginning and principal cause of Prophecies, or rather indeed the very substance and power it self, upon winds, vapours, and exhalations. For even those temperatures, heats, tinctures, and consolations (if I may so say) which have been talked of, remove our minde and opinion farther off fill from the gods, and puts into our heads this imagination and conceit of such a cause, as *Euripides* devised Cyclops to allege in the Tragedy bearing his name:

*The earth must needs bring forth grass, this is flat,  
Will she or will she, and feed my cattle fat.*

This only is the difference, because he saith not that he sacrificed his beasts unto the gods, but unto himself and his belly, the greatest of all the Demons: but we both sacrifice and also power forth our prayers unto them, for to have their answer from the Oracles: and to what purpose I pray you, if it be true, that our own souls bring with them a Propheticall faculty and virtue of Divination, and the cause which doth excite and actuate the same, be some temperature of the air, or rather of winds? What means then, the sacred institutions and creations of these religious Prophetesses ordained for the pronouncing of answers? And what is the reason that they give no answer at all, unless the host or sacrifice to be killed, tremble all over even from the very feet, and shake whilles the libaments and effusions of hallowed liquors be poured upon it? For it is not enough to wag the head, as other beasts do which are slain for sacrifice, but this quaking, panting and shivering must be throughout all the parts of the body, and that with a trembling noise. For if this be wanting, they say the Oracle giveth no answer, neither do they so much as bring in the religious Priestesse *Pythia*. And yet it were probable that they should both do and think thus, who attribute the greatest part of this Propheticall inspiration, either to God or Demon. But according as you say, there is no reason or likelihood thereof: for the exhalation that ariseth out of the ground, whether the beast tremble or no, will always if it be present, cause a ravishment and transportation of the spirit, and evermore dispose the soul alike, not only of *Pythia*, but also of any body else that first cometh or is presented. And thereupon it followeth, that a meer folly it is, to employ one silly woman in the Oracle, and to put her to it (poor soul) to be a Votary and live a pure maiden all the daies of her life, sequestered from the company of man. And as for that *Corax*, whom the Delphians name to have been the first that chancing to fall into this chink or crevice of the ground, gave the banell of the virtue and property of the place, in mine opinion he differed nothing at all from other Goatherds, or Shepherds, nor excelled them one whit: at least wise if this be a truth that is reported of him, and not a meer fable and vain fiction, as I suppose it is no better. And verily when I consider and discourse in my self, how many good things this Oracle hath been cause of unto the Greeks, as well in their Wars and Martial affairs, as in the foundations of Cities, in distresses of Famine and Pestilence, me thinks it were a very indignity and unworthy part, to attribute the invention and original thereof unto meer Fortune and Chance, and not unto God and Divine Providence. But upon this point, I would gladly, *O Lamprias*, (quoth he) have you to dispute and discourse a little: how say you *Philippus*, may it please

Zzzz 2

you

you to have patience the while? Most willingly (quoth *Philippus*) for my part: and so much I may be bold also to promise in the behalf of all the company, for I see well that the question by you proposed hath moved them all. And as for my self (quoth I) *O Philippus*, it hath not only moved, but also astonished and dismayed me, for that in this so notable Assembly and Conference of so many Worthy personages, I may seem above mine age, in bearing my self and taking pride in the probability of my words, to overthrow or to call into question any of those things, which truly have been delivered, or religiously believed as touching God and Divine matters. But forsake you I will, and in the defence of my self produce for my witness and advocate both, *Plato*. For this Philosopher reproved old *Alexander*, in that being to much addicted too natural causes, and entangled with them; following also and pursuing all ways, that which necessarily is effected in the passions and affections of natural bodies, he overpassed the final and efficient causes, for which and by which, things are done, and those are indeed the better causes, and principles of greater importance: whereas himself either before, or else most of all other Philosophers hath prosecuted them both: attributing unto God the beginning of all things wrought by reason: and not depriving in the mean while the matter of those causes which are necessary unto the work done: but acknowledging herein, that the adorning & dispose of all this World sensible, dependeth not upon one simple cause alone, as being pure and uncompound, but was engendered and took Essence, when matter was coupled and conjoyined with reason. That this is so, do but consider first, the works wrought by the hand of Artisans: as for example, (not to go farther for the matter) that at same foot here and Basis for much renowned, of the standing Cup, among other ornaments and oblations of this Temple (which *Herodotus* called, *Hypocriseridon*) this hath for the material cause verily, Fire, Iron, the mollifying by the means of Fire, and the tincture or dipping in water, without which this piece of work could not possibly have been wrought. But the more principal cause and mistress indeed, which moved all this, and did work by all these, was Art and Reason applied unto the work. And verily we see that over such pieces, whether they be Pictures or other Representations of things, the name of the Artificer and Workman is written, as for example:

*This picture Polygnotus drew,  
of Troy won long before,  
Who father had Aglaophon,  
and was in Thebes born.*

And verily he it was indeed as you see, who painted the destruction of *Troy*: but without colours ground, confused and mingled one with another, impossible had it been for him to have exhibited such a Picture, so fair and beautiful to the eye as it is. If then some one come now and will needs meddle with the material cause, searching into the alterations and mutations thereof, particularizing of *Sinopre* mixed with *Ochre*, or *Cerule* with black, doth he impair or diminish the glory of the Painter *Polygnotus*? He also, who discourses how Iron is hardened, and by what means mollified: and how being made soft and tender in the Fire, it yieldeth and obeyeth them who by beating and knocking drive it out in length and breadth: and afterwards being dipped and plunged into fresh waters still, by the actual coldness of the said water (for that the fire heats had softened and rarified it before) is it thrust close together and Condensate: by means whereof it getteth that stiff, compact and hard temper of Steel, which *Homer* calleth the very force of Iron: reserveth he for the Workman any thing less hereby, in the principal cause and operation of his work? I suppose he doth not. For some there be who make proof and trial of Physick drugs, and yet I know they condemn not thereby the skill of Physick: like as *Plato* also himself, when he saith: That we do see, because the light of our eye is mixed with the clearness of the Sun; and hear by the percussion and beating of the air; doth not deny that we have the faculty of seeing and power of hearing by reason and providence. For in sum, as I have said and do still averre, whereas all generation proceedeth of two causes, the most ancient Theologians and Poets, vouchsafed to set their mind upon the better only, and that which was more excellent, chaunting evermore this common refrain and foot (as it were) of the song in all things and actions whatsoever:

*Jove is the first, the midst, the last:  
all things of him depend:  
By him begin they, and proceed;  
in him they come to end.*

After other necessary and natural causes they never sought farther, nor came near unto them: whereas the modern Philosophers who succeeded after them and were named Naturalists, took a contrary course; and turning clean aside from that most excellent and Divine principle, ascribed all unto bodies, unto passions also of bodies, and I wot not what percussions, mutations and temperatures. And thus it is come to pass, that as well the one sort as the other, are in their opinions defective and come short of that which they should. For as these either of ignorance know not, or of negligence regard not to set down the efficient principal cause, whereby, and from which: to the other before, leave out the material causes, of which; and the instrumentall means, by which things are done. But he who first manifestly touched both causes, and coupled with the reason that freely worketh and moveth, the matter which necessarily is subject and suffereth; he (I say) for himself and us, and furthereth all calamitations, and putteth by all firmities and suspicions whatsoever. For we became not Divinators either of God, or of reason: for as much as we grant unto it for the subject matter, the soul of man, and

and for an instrument and pleasure (as it were) to set it a work, we allow a spirit or winds, and an exhalation Enthusiastick. First and foremost, the Earth it is that engendereth such exhalations: then, that which giveth unto the Earth all power and virtue of this temperature and mutation is the Sun, who (as we have learned by tradition from our forefathers) is a god. After this we adjoin thereto, the Demons as superintendants, overseers and keepers of this temperature (as if it were some Harmony and concordance) who in due and convenient time let down and slack, or else set up and stretch hard the virtue of this exhalation: taking from it otherwhiles the over-active efficacy that it hath to torment the soul and transport it beside it self: tempering therewith a motive virtue without working any pain, or hurt and damage to them that are inspired and possessed therewith. Wherein we think, we do nothing that seemeth either absurd or impossible: neither in killing sacrifices before we come to move the Oracles, and adorning them with Coronets of flowers, and pouring upon them sacred liquors and libations, do we ought that is contrary to this discourse and opinion of ours. For the Priests and Sacrificers, and whosoever have the charge to kill the beast, and to pour upon it the holy libations of Wine or other liquors; who also observe and consider the emotion, trembling and the whole demeanor thereof, do the same for no other end or cause but to have a signe, that God giveth ear unto their demand. For necessary it is that the beast sacrificed unto the gods be pure, sound, entire, immaculate, and uncorrupt both in soul and body. And verily, for the body it is no hard matter to judge and know the marks: as for the soul they make an experiment, by setting before Bule, meal: by presenting unto Swine, cich-pease: for if they will not fall so, nor tall thereof, it is a certain token that they be not right. For the Goat, cold water is the trial. Now if the beast make no flesh and semblance of being moved or affected, when as the said water is poured aloft on it, be sure the soul thereof is not disposed as it ought to be by nature.

Now, say it go for current and be constantly believed, that it is an undoubted and infallible signe, that the God will give answer, when the host or sacrifice thus drenched doth stir; and contrariwise, that he will not answer, if the beast queth not: I see nothing herein repugnant unto that, which we have before delivered. For every natural power produceth the effect for which it is ordained, better or worse, according as the time and season is more less convenient: and probable it is, that God giveth us certain signes, whereby we may know when the opportunity is past. For mine own part, I am of this mind, that the very exhalation it self which ariseth out of the Earth, is not always of the same sort; but at one time is slack and feeble, at another stretched out and strong. And the argument which maketh me thus to judge, I may easily confirm and verifie by the testimony of many strangers, and of all those Ministers who serve in the Temple. For the chamber or room, wherein they are set and give attendance who come to demand the answer of the Oracle, is filled therow (not often, nor at certain times, but as it falleth out after some space between) with so fragrant an odour and pleasant breath, as the most precious Ointments and sweetest Perfumes in the World can yield no better. And this ariseth from the Sanctuary and Vault of the Temple, as out of some Source and lively Fountain: and very like it is, that it is heat, or at leastwise some other puffsance, that sendeth it forth. Now if peradventure, this may seem unto you not probable nor to sound of truth: yet will ye as leastwise confesse unto me, that the Prophetesse *Pythia* hath that part of the soul, unto which this wind or Prophetick spirit approacheth, disposed some time in this sort and otherwhiles in that, and keepeth not always the same temperature, as in Harmony immutable. For many troubles and passions there be that possess her body, and enter likewise in her soul, some apparant; but more secret and unseen: with which the finding her self seized and replenished, better it were for her not to present and exhibit herself to this divine inspiration of god, being not altogether clean and pure from all perturbations; like unto an instrument of Musick well set in tune and sounding sweetly, but passinate and out of order. For neither wine doth surprise the drunken man always alike, and as much at one as one time as at another; nor the sound of the Flute or Shalme affecteth after one and the same sort all times, him who naturally is given to be soon ravished with divine inspiration: but the same persons are one time more, and another while less transported beside themselves; and drunken likewise, more or less. The reason is, because in their bodies there is a divers temperature: but principally, in imaginative part of the soul, and which receiveth the images and fantasies, is possessed by the body, and subject to change with it, as appeareth evidently by dreams: for sometimes there appear many visions: and fantasies of all sorts in our sleeps; otherwhiles again, we are free from all such illusions, and rest in great quietness and tranquillity. We our selves know this *Cleon* here of *Daulia*, who all his life time (and many years he lived) never (as he said himself) dreamed nor saw any vision in his sleep: and of those in former times, we have heard as much reported of *Thrasymachus* the Hierian. The cause whereof, was the temperature of the body: whereas contrariwise it is seen, that the complexion of Melancholick persons is apt to dream much, and subject to many illusions in the night; although it seemeth their dreams and visions to be more regular, and fall out truer than others, for that such persons touching their imaginative faculty with one fantasy or other, it cannot chuse but they meet with the truth otherwhiles: much like as when a man shoots many shafts, it goeth hard for it he hit not the mark with one. When as therefore the imaginative part and the prophetick faculty is well disposed and suitable with the temperature of the exhalation, as it were with some medicinale potion; then of necessity there must be engendered within the bodies of Prophets and Enthusiasts or Divine fury: contrariwise; when there is no such proportionate disposition, there can be no prophetical inspiration: or if there be, it is fantastical, unreasonable, violent and troublesome: as we know, how of late it befell so that *Pythia* or



Prophets, who is newly departed. For there being many pilgrims and strangers come from foreign parts to consult with the Oracle, it is said, that the host or beak to be sacrificed, did endure the first libaments and liquors that were poured upon it, never stirring thereat nor once queching for the matter: but after that the Priests and Sacrificers poured fill, and never gave over to cast liquor on, beyond all measure; at length (after great laving and drenching of it) hardly and with much ado it yielded and trembled a little. But what hapned hereupon to the Prophetesse or Pythias aforesaid? Went she did indeed down into the cave or hole, against her will (as they said) and with no alacrity at all: but incontinently, when she was come up again, at the very first words and answers that she pronounced, it was well known by the horfness of her voice, that she could not endure the violence of possession, being replenished with a malign and mute spirit, much like unto a ship carried away under full sailer with a blustering gale of winds. Inomuch as in the end being exceedingly troubled, and with a fearful and hideous cry, making haste to get out, she flung herself down, and fell upon the earth: so that not only the forefaid pilgrims fled for fear, but Nicander also the High-priest, and other Sacrificers and religious Ministers that were present. Who notwithstanding afterwards taking heart unto them, and entering again into the place, took her up lying still in an extasie besides herself: and in very truth, she lived not many daies after. And therefore it is, that the said Pythias keepeth her body pure and clean from the company of man, and forbidden she is to converse or have commerce all her life time with any stranger. Also, before they come to the Oracle, they observe certain signes; for that they think it is known unto the God, when her body is prepared and disposed to receive (without danger of her person) this Enthufiasm. For the force and vertue of this exhalation, doth not move and incite all sorts of persons, nor the same alwaies after one manner, nor yet as much at one time as at another: but giveth only a beginning, and setteth to (as it were) a march to kindle it, as we have said before; even unto those only who are prepared and framed beforehand to suffer and receive this alteration. Now this exhalation (without all question) is Divine and Celestiall: howbeit for all that, not such as may not fail and cease, nor incorruptible, nor subject to age and decay, nor able to last and endure for ever: and under it, all things suffer violence, which are between the Earth and the Moons, according to our doctrine: however others there be who affirm, that those things also which are above, are not able to resist it; but being wearied an eternal infinite time, are quickly changed and renewed (as one would say) by a second birth and regeneration. But of these matters (quoth I) advise you I would and my self also, eschew to call to mind, and consider often this discourse, for that they be points exposed to many reprehensions, and sundry objections may be alleged against them. All which, the time will not suffer us now to prosecute at large: and therefore let us put them off unto another opportunity, together with the doubts and questions which Philippus moved as touching Apollo and the Sun.

## What signifieth this word E I, engraven over the door of Apollo's Temple in the City of Delphi.

### The Summary.

**A**mong infinite testimonies of the fury of malign Spirits and evil Angels (who having been created at first good, kept not their original, but fell from the degree and state of happinesse, wherein continue by the grace and favour of God the good Angels, who minister and attend upon those who shall receive the substantia of Salvation and everlasting life) these may be reckoned for the chief and principally, that such reprobate spirits and accursed fiends, endeavour and practise by all means possible to make themselves to be adored by men: and saim would they be set in the throne of him, who having imprisoned and tied them fast in a deep dungeon, with the chain of darkness, reserveth them to the judgement of that great day of Doom. And so far proceeded they in pride and presumption, as to cause themselves to be filed by the name of God's yeas, and to be adorned with those titles, which are due and appertain unto the Eternall, their Sovereign Judge. Their devices and artificiall means to bring this about, be wonderfull, and of exceeding variety: according as the infinite numbers of Idols swarming in all parts, and so many strange and uncouth superstitions, wherewith the World hath been diffused unto this present day, do testify and give evident proof. But if there be any place in the whole Earth, wherein Satan hath continually shewed his furious rage against God and man, it is Greece: and above all, in that renowned Temple of Delphi, which was the common seat, upon which this cursed enemy hath received the homage of an infinite number of people of all sorts and qualities, under the colour and pretence of resolving their doubtful questions. Here then especially presumed he, and was so bold, as to take upon him the name of God: and for to reach thereby, hath set out and garnished his Oracle, with ambiguous speeches, shrewd and sennons, intermingling some truths among lies: even as it pleased the just Judge of the World: to let reign loose unto this notorious flatterer, and to give him power for to deceive and abuse the World: as also by certain notable sayings (as these) Know thy self, Nothing too much; and such like, he hath kept bound unto him, persons of high spirit and great conceits, causing them to think, that in delivering so wisely precepts for the rule and direction of this life, it must needs be the true friend of mankind, yea, and the very heavenly wisdom, that

spake

spake by these Oracles. But his audacious pride, together with most intolerable impudence, hath appeared in the inscription of this bare word, E I, upon the porch of the Temple of Apollo in Delphi, in that he pretended title, and claimed thereby (according to the last interpretation thereof in this present discourse) to put himself in the place of the eternal God: who only is, and giveth Being unto all things. And that which worke is, the blindness was so horrible, even of the wisest Sages, that this opinion hath been seated in their heads whiles this Tyrant possessed them, in such sort, as they took pleasure to suffer themselves: so to be deceived by him. But hereby good cause have we to praise our God, who hath discovered and laid open to us such impostures, and maketh his Majesty known unto us by his word, to be the only true and eternal Deity: in adoring and worshipping whom, we may safely and truly say E I, that is to say, Thou art: as contrariwise, the deceitful wiles and illusions of Satan and his complices, do declare how fearful and horrible the judgement of God is upon such rebellious spirits. Now if some over-busie and curious heads, will here dispute and reason against the justice of him who is the disposer of all things, and enterprize to controule that eternal wisdom which governeth the World, for having mercy upon such as it pleaseth him, and suffering to fall from so excellent an estate the Apostate and disobedient Angels, and yet permitting them to have such a powerful and over the worst part of Adams children; we answer in one word: Man, what art thou, that thus wilt plead against God? Shall the thing formed, say unto him who formed it, Why hast thou made me so? Hath not the Potter full power to make of the same masse of earth or clay, one vessel for honour, and another for dishonour? The judgments of God are unsearchable, they have neither bottom nor brink: the riches of his wisdom and knowledge are inscrutable, and beyond all computation: his wiles are hidden and impossible to be found out. If then there be any place in the consideration of the secrets of God, where we ought to be retentive, wary and discreet, it is in this, where every man hath just occasion to think upon this notable lesson and advertisement: Not to presume for to know over and above that which he should, but to be wise unto sobriety: and that no man ought to be puffed up with pride, but rather to fear. Moreover, as touching the contents of this discourse, the Author having used an honest and decent Preface, saith in general: That by this present inscription, Apollo intended to make himself known, and to incite every man to inquire into time. But herein the enemy of mankind sheweth his audacity and boldnesse sufficiently, as also how he deludeth and mocketh his slaves: in that after he had deprived them of right and sound judgment, he stirreth them up to know, who be is: which is as much as if one should pluck out the eyes, and cut in twain the Ham-strings of a Traveller or Wandering man; and then bid him seek out his way, and go onward on his journey. Now he brings in four divers personages, delivering their minds as touching this Mot, E I. Lamprias opining in the first place, thinketh that the first and principal wise Sages of Greece devised it, for that they would be known and discerned from others. Ammonius secondly, reserveth and applieth it to the Wilkes and Questions of those who resort unto the Oracle. Theon the third, attributeth this mystery unto Logick, and doth all that possibly he can to maintain his opinion. Euthrophus the Mathematician speaking in the fourth place, and seconded by Plutarch, Philosophizeth at large upon the number of 5. represented by the letter E: be discourseth and runneth through all the Mathematicks, and divers parts of Philosophy, and all to approve and make good his conceit: but his drift and end is, to shew under the mystical sense of numbers, the perfection of his Apollo, which he draweth and fetcheth both from the consideration of his titles, epithets and attributes. But Ammonius gathering together their voices, and closing or stopping up the disputation, seemeth to hit the mark: proving by most strong and learned reasons, that Apollo would by this word instruct pilgrims, how they ought to salute and call him, to wit, in saying thus, E I: that is to say, Thou art be: which is opposite unto that salutation which this false god (usurping the name of the true Jehovah, or alwaies Existent) greeteth men with, in setting just before their eyes, in the entry and forefront of his Temple, these two words, Γνωθι σεαυτον: that is to say, Know thy self. Having enriched this with two evident proofes, the one taken from the uncertain condition of creatures; the other from the firmitude and true estate or being of the Creator; he exhorteth his fellows to lift up themselves to the contemplation of the Essence of God, and to honour the Sun, his expresse Image. Which done, be resolveth certain contrary opinions: and after a new confirmation of his discourse, he endeth where he first began; to wit, that the knowledge of God and our selves, are opposite in such sort, as yet nevertheless they must meet and concur in us. But all the application of this discourse unto Apollo (whom you must take for the very Devil) in no wise is fit and agreeable. And herein a man may see better yet, what madnesse and folly is the wisdom of man: and in how thick and palpable darkness they groping with their hands before them, who are no otherwise guided than by the discourse of their own reason. Which reacheth us once again to adore the secrets of God: to recognize and apprehend his mercies in the matter of our Salvation: to dread also his justice, which sheweth it self in the deplorable and piteous blindness of so many Nations: even from the time that sin first entred into the World, unto this present day.

Zzzz 4

What

*What signifieth this word EI, engraven over the door of Apolloes Temple in the City of Delphi.*

**I** Light of late in my reading (friend *Sarapion*) upon certain pretty [lambique] verses, not unelegantly endited, which *Dicaearchus* supposeth that the Poet *Euripides* delivered unto King *Archelaus*, to this effect:

*No gifts will I to you present,  
Since poor I am, and wealth you have:  
Lest I for folly, of you be shrewt,  
Or by such giving seem to crave.*

For he, who of that little means which he hath, bestoweth some small present upon them that are rich & possesse much, gratifieth them nothing at all, nor deserveth any thanks: and that which worse is, because no man will believe that he giveth (be it never so little) for nothing, he incurreth the suspicion and obloquie of being cautelous, illiberal, and simply naught. But forasmuch as the gifts that be in the nature of silver, gold and temporal goods, be in regard of beauty and liberal courtesie, far inferior to those which go in the kinde of good letters, and proceed from learning: it standeth well with honesty, both to give such, and also to demand the like of those who receive the same. And therefore, in sending presently unto you, and for your sake unto those friends about you in those parts, certain discourses gathered together as touching the Temple and Oracle of *Apollo Pythius*, as an offering of first fruits; I confesse that I expect from you others again, both more in number and better in value, considering that you live in a great City, have more leisure, and enjoy the benefit of more books, and all sort of Scholasticall conferences and learned exercises. And verily it seemeth, that our good and kinde *Apollo* doth indeed remedy, ease and assill the doubtful difficulties ordinarily incident to this life of ours, by giving answer unto those who repair unto his Oracle: but such as concern matter of learning, he putteth forth and propoeth himself unto that part of our minde, which naturally is given to Philosophize and study wisdom, imprinting therein a covetous desire to know and understand the truth: as may appear by many other examples, and namely, in this petty mot, EI, consecrated in his Temple. For it is not like, that it was by meer chance and adventure, nor by a Lottery (as it were) of letters shuffled together, that this word alone should have the preeminence with this god, as to precede and go before all others; ne yet, that it should have the honour to be consecrated unto God, or dedicated in the Temple as a thing of special regard for to be seen and beheld: but it must needs be, that either the first learned men (who at the beginning had the charge of this Temple) knew some particular and exquisite property in this word, or else used it as a device to symbolize some matter of singularity, or covertly to signifie a thing of great consequence. Having therefore many times before, closely

der these inscriptions standing in the forefront of this Temple: *Know thy self*, and *Nothing too much*: what a number of questions and learned disputations they have moved: also, what a multitude of goodly discourses have sprung and proceeded from such writings, as out of some seed or grain or corn. And this will I say unto you, that the matter now in question, is no lesse fertile and plentiful, than any one of the other.

When *Ammonius* had thus said, my brother *Lamprias* began in this wise: And yet (quoth he) the reason which we all have heard as touching this question, is very plain and short. For reported it is, that those ancient Sages or Wise men, who by some are named Sophisters, were indeed of themselves no more than five: to wit, *Chilon*, *Tales*, *Solon*, *Bias*, and *Pittacus*. But when first *Cleobulus* the Tyrant of the Lindians, and then *Periander* the Tyrant likewise of *Corinth* (who had neither of them any one jot of vertue or wisdom) by the greatnesse of their power, by the number of their friends, and by many benefits and demerits whereby they obliged their adherents, acquired forcibly this reputation, in despite of all they usurped the name of Sages: and to this purpose caused to be spread sown and divulged throughout all Greece certain odde sentences and notable sayings, as well as those of the others, wherewith the former Sages above named were discontented. Howbeit for all this, these five Wisemen would in no hand discover and convince their vanity, nor yet openly contest and enter into terms of quarrel with them about this reputation; ne yet debate the matter against so mighty personages, who had so great means of countenance in the world: but being assembled upon a time in this place, after conference together they consecrated and dedicated here the letter [E] which as it standeth sixth in the order of the Alphabet, so in number it signifieth five: as if they testified and deposed here before the god, that they were but five; protesting that the sixth and seventh they rejected and excluded out of their society, as who had no right to belong unto them. Now that this conjecture is not beside the purpose, a man may know, who hath but heard them speak who have the charge and superintendence of this Temple; namely, how they call that EI, which is written in gold, the EI of *Livia Augusta* the Emperesse and wife of *Augustus Caesar*: the other in brass, the EI of the Athenians: and the first, which is most ancient, and for the matter and substance thereof no better than cut in wood, at this very day they name, the EI of the Sages; as being dedicated not by one of them alone, but by all together. Hereat *Ammonius* pleasantly smiled, as supposing this to be the proper and peculiar conceit of *Lamprias* himself, howsoever he seemed to father it upon others, feigning that he heard it else where, to the end that he might not be called to account, and put to the maintenance and defence thereof. Then another of the company who were there present, said that this was much like unto a foolish toy which a Chaldean stranger, and by profession an Astrologer, not long since set abroad: That seven letters there were forsooth in all the Alphabet, which were vocall and of themselves rendered a voice: like as seven Sars there were in the Heaven, which had their proper motions apart, at liberty, and not bound and linked to others. Also that among those vocall letters or vowels, E was the second; even as the Sun of all the Planets was next unto the Moon: and that all the Greeks in manner, with one accord, hold *Apollo* and the Sun, to be both one. But this, when all is done, favourerth altogether of his country's table of iudicial Astronomy, and of his triviall discoursing head.

ἀγαθὸν τὸν Δελφῶνα:

Desirous also in their need

Of children, for their joy and need:

as also in Homer

ὣς ἔφη καὶ ἰδὼν ἄνθρωπος:

As I will now, even thus disgrace,

And fail thy strength in present place.

Where the signifieth just nothing. Thus you see, how in this little word EI there is an operative power sufficiently declared. When *Nicander* had delivered these words, *Theon* (for I presuppose you know him, being a familiar friend of ours) demanded of *Ammonius*, whether Logick might have the liberty to speak in her one defence, being thus wronged and trodden under foot? when *Ammonius* would him to speak hardly, and to say all that he could, and for to help her out of the mire: Certes, quoth he, there be many Oracles which bear witness: and evidently shew, that god *Apollo* is a most skilful Logician. For in some sort it belongeth to one and the same Artist, both to move doubtful ambiguities, and also to assail and clear the same. Moreover, according as *Plato* said, that there being in old time an Oracle given unto the Greeks, that they should double the Altar within the Temple of *Delos*, (which is a piece of work for an expert Geometrician to perform, and who had the very habit and perfection of that Art) it was not that indeed which the god commanded the Greeks to do, but he enjoined them to study Geometry: even so, in giving otherwhiles ambiguous answers, and doubtful Oracles, he recommendeth thereby and augmenteth so much the more, the credit of Logick, as being a Science right necessary for as many as would gladly understand his speech. Now in Logick this Conjunction EI, that is to say, If (which is so apt to continue a speech and proposition) hath a great force, as being that which giveth form unto that proposition, which is most agreeable to discourse of reason and argumentation. And verily of this nature be all these Hypothetical propositions, copulative, disjunctive, &c. And who can deny it? considering that the very brute beasts themselves have in some sort a certain knowledge and intelligence of the subsistence of things: but Nature hath given to man alone the notice of consequence, and the judgment for to know how to discern that which followeth upon every thing. For, that it is day; and that it is light, the very Wolves, Dogs, and Cocks do perceive: but that, if it be day of necessity it must make the air light, there is no creature save only man, that knoweth: for he alone hath intelligence of the beginning and of the end, of the antecedent and the consequent, of the proceeding and finishing of things: as also of the coherence and bringing together of both ends and extremes, of the conference of one to another; what habitude, correspondence, or difference there is between: and this is it, whereof all demonstrations take their chief original and beginnings. Now since it is so, that all Philosophy whatsoever, consisteth in the knowledge of the truth; and the light which cleareth the truth, is demonstration; and the beginning of demonstration, is the coherence and knitting of propositions together: by good right that power which maketh and maintaineth this, was dedicated and consecrated by the Sages and Wise men unto this god, who above all others loveth the truth. Again, this god is a Diviner and Prophet; but the Art of Divining is as touching future things, by the means of such as are either present or past. For as nothing is done or made without cause; so there is nothing foreknown without a precedent reason: but so far as all that is, dependeth and followeth upon that which hath been; and consequently all that shall be, hath a fate and dependence of that which is, by a certain continuity, which proceedeth from the beginning to the end: he who hath the skill to see into causes, and by natural reason how to compose and joyn them together, knoweth and is able to discourse

What things are now, what shall hereafter come,

As also what are past, both all and some;

according as *Homer* saith: who very well and wisely seeth in the first place the present, then the future, and that which is past. For of the present dependeth all Syllogism and reasoning, and that by the virtue and efficacy of a conjunction: for that if this thing be, such a thing went before: and consequently, if this be, that shall be. For all the artificial fear and skill of discourse and argument, is the knowledge of consequence, as hath been said already: but it is the sense, that giveth anticipation unto the discourse of reason. And therefore although haply it may seem to stand little with decent honesty, yet I will not be afraid to affirm that this Reason properly is the Tripode or three-footed table, as one would say, or Oracle of truth: namely, when the Disputer supposeth a consequence upon that which was premised and went before: and then afterwards assuming that which is extant and subsistent, cometh in the end to induce and infer a final conclusion of his demonstration. Now if it be so, that *Apollo Pythius*, as the report goeth, loveth Music, and be delighted in the singing of Swans, and found of Lute and Harp; what marvel is it then, if for the affliction that he beareth unto Logick, he likewise embrace and love that part of speech, which he seeth Philosophers most willingly and oftentimes to use? *Heraclitus* before that he had loosed the bands wherewith *Prometheus* was tied, and having not as yet conferred and talked with *Chiron* and *Atlas* two great Sophisters and professors of disputation, but being a young man still, and a plain Boeotian, abolished all Logick at first, and scoffed at this little *MOI EI*: but soon after seemed as if he would pluck away by force the three-footed Table of *Apollo*, yea and contend with the god, about the Art of Divining; for that together with age, and process of time he proceeded so far, as that he became by that means a most skilfull Prophet, and as *sublime*

and excellent a Logician. When *Theon* had made an end of this speech, *Eutrophus* the Athenian, as I take it, directed his words unto us and said: See you not how valiantly *Theon* defendeth the Art of Logick, and hath in manner gotten on the Lions skin of *Heraclitus*? It is not therefore decent, that we who in one word refer all affairs, all natures and principles joyntly together, as well of divine as of humane things into number, and making it the Author, Master, and Ruler even of such matters, as simply are most fair and precious, should sit still and say never a word: but rather for our part, offer the fruits of the Mathematics unto god *Apollo*. For we say and affirm that this letter E, or if self, neither in puissance, nor in form, ne yet in name and pronunciation, hath any thing in it above other letters: howbeit we think, that preferred it hath been before all the rest, in this regard, that it is a character and mark of the number five, which is in all things of greatest virtue and validity, and is named *Pemptas*. Whereupon our Sages and great Clerks in times past, when they would expresse the verb [to number] used *Pemptasin*, as one would say, to count and reckon by fives. And verily *Eutrophus* in saying thus, addressed his speech unto me, not merrily but in good earnest, for that I was very afflicted and much addicted then unto the Mathematicks; but yet so, as in all things I observed and kept still the old rule, *Too much of nothing*, as being a Scholar of the Academy School. I answered therefore, that *Eutrophus* had solved passing well the difficulty of the question by this number. For seeing it is so (quoth I) that number in generality is divided into even and odde, Unity is in power and efficacy common to them both: in such sort, as being put unto the even, it maketh it odde; and likewise added to the odde, causeth the same to be even. Now the beginning and ground of even numbers is Two; and of odde, Three is the first: of which being joyned together is engendered Five, which by good right is highly honoured, as being the first compound of the first simple numbers, whereupon it is worthily named *Tetras*, that is to say, Marriage; because the even number hath some resemblance to the Female, and the odde a reference to the Male. For in the sections and divisions of numbers into equal parts, the even is altogether clean parted and severed asunder, leaving a certain void space between the parts, as a beginning of capacity apt to receive somewhat more: contrariwise in the odde number, if a man do as much by it, and cut it into two numbers, there remaineth always somewhat in the midst between, fit for subdivision, yea and generation of new numbers: whereby it appeareth that more generative it is than the other. And whensoever it cometh to be mixed with the other, it carrieth the preeminence, and is master always, but never mastered. For what mixture soever you make of them twain, you shall never come thereby to an even number: but mix and compose them as often and in what manner you will, there shall arise always thereof an odde number. And that which more is both the one and the other added to it self, or compounded with it self, sheweth the difference that is between them. For never shall you see an even number joyned with another that is even, to produce an odde; for it goeth not out of his proper nature, as having not the power to beget any other than it self, so feeble it is and imperfect: but odde numbers coupled and mingled with others that be odde, bring forth many even numbers, so powerful it is to engender every way. As for all the other properties and different puissances of numbers, the time will not now serve to discourse thoroughly of them all. But hereby you see, wherefore the ancient Pythagorean Philosophers called Five, the Marriage; as being compounded of the first Male and of the first Female. The same also is sometime named *Nature*; for that being multiplied by it self, it falleth out still to determine in it self. For like as Nature taking a grain of Wheat in the nature of seed, and so dissolving it, produceth many forms and divers kinds of things between, through which the puffeth and proceedeth, untill at last she bringeth her work to an end; and when all is done sheweth a corn of Wheat again, rendering the first beginning, in the end of all: even so, when other numbers multiply themselves, and end by growing and multiplication in other numbers, only five and six, if they be multiplied by themselves, do bring forth and regenerate likewise themselves: for six times six, maketh thirty six; and five times five, ariseth to twenty five. But take thus much withall again, that six doth this but once and after a manner only, when of it self it becometh that \* four square number: but unto five the same befall, when it is multiplied by it self; and besides particularly, it hath this property, that by addition of it self it produceth also it self, in as much as it maketh ten; which it doth alternatively, and holdeth on this course in infinitum, as far as any numbers will extend: so as this number resembleth, that principle or first cause, which doth conduct and govern this Universal World. For like as it is of the own self preserveth the World; and reciprocally, of the World returneth into it self, according as *Heraclitus* said of the Fire:

Πῦρ ἀνταναστασεν, καὶ αὖτις αὖτις ἀνίσταται:

Fire into all things first doth turn,

And all things shall to fire return:

like as Gold is exchanged for Wares, and Wares for Gold: even so the meeting of five with it self, howsoever it be, can engender and bring forth nothing either imperfect or strange; but all the changes that it hath, be limited and certain. For either it begeth it self, or else produceth ten; that is to say, that which is proper and familiar, or else perfect and accomplished.

Now if a man should come unto me and demand: What is all this (good Sir) unto *Apollo*? I will answer again: That this concerneth not *Apollo* alone, but \* *Bacchus* also, who hath no less to do with the City of *Delphos*, nor is of less authority there, than *Apollo* himself. For we have heard the Theologians (partly in verse and partly in prose) sing and say, That this god being of his own nature incor-

\* For 5 times 5 maketh 25.

\* That is to say, 36 made of 4 times 9.

\* Alluding to the proverb, *πῦρ ἀνταναστασεν*.

\* *αὖτις ἀνίσταται*, which is not to the purpose.

incorruptible and immortal: yet, I wot not by what sentence and reason fatal he is transfused and changed in many sorts. Sometime he is all on a light fire, and causeth all things to be of the same nature, and like unto all things: otherwhiles most variable, in all manner of forms, passions and passions all different, and becometh (as now he is) the World; so called by a most common and best known name. But the Sigs and Wiser sort, willingly to conceal and keep these secrets hidden from common people, name this mutation and change of his into fire, *Apollo*; signifying thereby, a kinde of sole unity whereunto it reduceth all things, and negation of plurality: and *Phæbus* likewise; be-taken thereby his purity and cleanness from filth and pollution. As for his conversion into windes, water, earth, stars, and into sundry kinds of plants and living creatures, together with the order and disposition thereof, such as we see; all this passion (I say) and mutation, they covertly do signifie under the name of a certain distraction and dismembring: and in these regards, they call himself *Dionylus*, *Zagreus*, *Nyctelus*, *Iodætes*. They exhibit also and counterfeite I wot not what deaths, destructions and dis-paritions; regenerations also, and resurrections: which be fables all, and ænigmatical fixions, devised for to represent the foresaid mutations. And verily, to *Bacchus* they do chant in their songs certain Dithyrambick ditties and tunes, full of passion and change, with motions and agitations to and fro. For according as *Bacchylus* saith.

*The Dithyrambe with clamours dissonant,  
Sorts well with Bacchus, where he is resant:*

But unto the other (that is to say, *Apollo*) they sing the *Pæan*, which is a setled kinde of song, and Musick modest and sober. Moreover, in all their Pictures and Portraiture of Images and Statues, they make *Apollo* alwaies with a young face and never aging; but the other, to wit, *Bacchus*, they represent in many shapes, and as many forms and vitages. And in one word, to the one they attribute a constancy uniform and evermore the same, a regular order, a serious and sincere gravity: but unto the other, mixed sports, games, wantonness and infoleny; in sum such a gravity as is int' mixed with fury, madnesse and inequality: they invoke and call upon him by the name of *Bacchus Eulius*:

*Bacchus (I say) surnamed Eulius,  
Who women doth to rage incite:  
And in such service furious,  
And frantick worship, takes delight:*

noting hereby not unfily and without good purpose that which is proper to the one and the other mutation. But for that the time of the revolutions in these changes is not equal and alike, but of the one (which is called *Coro*, and signifieth plenty or fatiety) longer; and of the other (named *Chresisus*, which brokenness want and necessity) shorter: observing even herein the proportion, they use the cantil: *Pæan*, during all the rest of the year in their sacrifices; but in the beginning of Winter, they sing up the *Dithyrambe*, and down goeth *Pæan*; and so invoke this god for three months space in stead of the other, supposing that there is the same proportion of the configuration of the World to the restoring and reparation thereof, as is of three to one. But peradventure we have dwelt longer upon this point than we should, considering the time: howbeit this is certain, that they attribute the number of five unto this god *Apollo*, as proper and peculiar unto him; saying, that one while it begetheth it self by multiplication, as fire; and another while maketh of it self ten, as the World. Moreover, think we not, that this number hath no society with Musick, which is so agreeable unto this god, as nothing so much? Certes, Harmony is (to say as once) occupied most of all about accords, which we call Symphonies; and that those are in number five, and no more, reason proveth, and experience will convince it to be so, even unto him who shall make the trial, either with strings or pipe-holes, by the very sense of hearing only, without any other reason. For all these accords take their generation by proportion in number. Now the proportion of the Musick or Symphony Diatessaron, is Epitritos or Seiquintal, that is to say, the whole and a third part over: of Diapente, Hemolios or Seiquintalateral, that is to say, the whole and half as much more: of Diapason, duple: of Diapason with Diapente together, triple; and of Diatessaron, quadruple. And as for that which the Musicians bring in over and above these, to wit, Diapason and Diatessaron (for so they name it) they are not worthy to be admitted and received, as transcending all mean and measure to gratify forsooth the unreasonable pleasure of the ear against all proportion, and breaking as it were the ordinance of the Law.

To pass therefore the five postures of the Tetrachords, as also the first five Tones, Tropes, Changes, Notes, or Harmonies, (call them what you will) for that they change and alter by setting up or letting down the strings, more or less, or by streining or easing the voice; all the rest are considered as Bases and Trebles. For see you not that there being many, or rather infinite intervals, yet five there be only used in song; namely, Diefis, Hemitonium, Tonos, Trifemitonium, and Ditonos? Neither is there any space or interval greater or less in Voices, distinguished by Base and Treble, high and low, that can be expressed in song. But to passe by many other such things (quoth I) only *Plato* I will alleges, who affirmeth, that there is indeed but one World: marry if there were more in number, and not the same one alone; it must needs be that there are five in all, and not one more. But grant that there be no more in truth than one, as *Aristotle* holdeth; yet so it is, that the same seemeth to be composed and coagmented in some sort of five other Worlds: wherefore one is that of Earth, another of Water, the third of Fire, the fourth of Air; as for the fifth, some call it Heaven, others light, and some again, the Sky; and there be, who name it a quintessence: unto which only it is proper and natural (of all other bodies) to turn round, not by violent force, nor otherwise by chance: and adventure. *Plato* therefore

therefore observing and knowing well enough, that the most beautifull and perfect figures of regular bodies which be in the World and within compass of Nature, are five in number (namely, the Pyramis, the Cube, the Octaedron, Icosaedron and Dodecaedron) hath very fity appropriated and attributed each of these noble figures unto one or other of those first bodies. Others there be also who apply the equality of the natural Senses, which likewise be in number five, unto the said primitive bodies: to wit, Touching, which is firm, solid and hard, to Earth; Tasting, which judgeth of the qualitate of Savors by the means of moisture, to Water; Hearing, to the Air; for that the Air being beaten upon in the voice and found to the Ears: of the other twain, Smelling hath for the object Sent or Odour, which being in manner of a perfume, is engendered and elevated by Heat, and therefore holdeth of the Fire; as for the Sight, which is clear and bright, by a certain affinity and consanguinity which it hath with the Heaven and with Light, hath a temperature and complexion mingled of the one and the other: neither is there in any living Creature other sense, nor in the whole World any other nature and substance simple and uncompound; but a marvellous distribution there is and congruity of five to five, as it evidently appeareth.

When I had thus said, and made a stop withall, after a little pause between: O what a fault (quoth I) O *Euthyphrus*, had I like to have committed: for I went within a little of passing over *Homer* altogether, as if he had not been the first that divided the World into five parts; allotting three of them which are in the middes unto three gods, and the other two which be the extremes (namely, Heaven and Earth, whereof the one is the limit of things beneath, the other the bound of things above) in common and not distributed like the others. But our speech must remember to return again, as *Euclid* saith, from whence it hath digressed. For they who magnific the quaternary or number of four, teach not amiss nor beside the purpose, that every solid body hath taken the beginning and generation by reason of it. For it being so, that every solid consisteth in length and breadth, having withall a depth: before length there is to be supposed a posture and situation of a point or prick, answerable to unity in numbers; and Longitude without breadth is called a line; and the moving of a line into breadth, and the procreation of a Superficies thereby, consisteth of three: afterwards, when there is adjoynted there to profundity or depth, the augmentation groweth by four, untill it become a perfect solidity. So that every man seeth, that the Quaternary having brought Nature to this point, as to perform and accomplish a body, in giving it a double Magnitude or mass, with firm solidity apt to make resistance, leaveth it afterwards destitute of the thing which is greatest and principal. For that which is without a soul, to speak plain, is in manner of an Orphan, imperfect and good for nothing, so long as it is without a soul to use and guide it: but the motion or disposition which putteth in the soul, ingenerated by means of the number of five, is it that bringeth perfection and consummation unto Nature. Whereby it appeareth that there is an essence more excellent than the four, inasmuch as a living body endued with a soul, is of a more noble nature, than that which hath none: but more than four, the beauty and excellent power of this number five, proceeding yet farther, would not suffice a body animate to be extended into infinite kinds, but hath given unto us five divers sorts of animate and living natures in all. For there be Gods; Demons, or Angels; Demi-gods, or Heroes: then after these, a fourth kinde, of Men; and last of all, in the fifth place, is that of brute Beasts and unreasonable. Furthermore, if you commaund and divide the soul according to Nature, the first and obscurest part or puissance thereof, is the vegetative or nutritive faculty: the second is the sensitive: then the appetitive: after it the irascible, wherein is engendered anger. Now when it is once come unto that power which discoureteth by reason, and bringeth Nature as it were to perfection, there it reflecteth in the fifth, as in the very pitch and top of all. Since then this number hath so many, and those so great puiſſances and faculties, the very Generation thereof is beautiful to be considered; I mean not that whereof we have already heretofore discoursed, when we said, that composed it was of two and three, but that which is made by the conjunction of the first principle, with the first square and quadrate number. And what is that principle or beginning of all numbers? even one or Unity; and that first quadrate is Four; and of these twain (as a man would say) of form and matter) being brought to perfection, is procreated this Quinary or number of five. Now if it be true, as some do hold, that Unity it self is quadrate and four-square, as being that which is the power of it self, and determineth in it self, then five being thus compounded of the two first quadrate numbers, ought so much the rather to be esteemed so noble and excellent as none can be comparable unto it. And yet there is one excellency behinde, that passeth all those which went before. But I fear me (quoth I) lest if the same be uttered, it would debate in some sort the honour of our *Plato*, like as himself said, the honour and authority of *Anaxagoras* was depressed and put down by the name of the Moon, who attributed unto himself the first invention of the Moons illuminations by the Sun; whereas it was a very ancient opinion long before he was born. How say you, hath he not said thus much in his Dialogue entitled *Cratylus*? Yes verily, answered *Euthyphrus*; but I see not the like consequence for all that. But you know (quoth I) that in his book entitled, *The Sophist*, he stretch down five most principal beginnings of all things: to wit, That which is: *The Lawe*: *The other*: *The fourth*: and *Rest* for the fifth. Moreover in his Dialogue *Philebus*, he bringeth in another kinde of partition and division of these principles, where he saith: That one is Infinite: another Finite, or the end; and of the mixture of these twain, is made and accomplished all generation; as for the cause whereby they are mixed, he putteth it for the fourth kinde: but leaveth to our conjecture the fifth: by the means whereof, that which is composed and mixed is redivided, and separates again. And for mine own part, I suppose verily, that these principles be the figures and images (as it were) of those beings: to wit, of *That which is*, *The thing* engendered

engendered: of Motion, Infinite: of Rest, the End or Finis: of The same, the Cause that mixeth: of The other, the Cause that doth separate. But say they be divers principles, and not the same: yet howsoever it be, there are always still five kinds, and five differences of the said principles. Some of them before Plato, being of the same opinion; or having heard so much of another, consecrated two E E unto the god of this Temple, as a very sign to symbolize that number which comprehendeth all. And peradventure, having heard also, that Good appeareth in five kinds: whereof the first is *Mean or Measure*; the second, *Symmetry or Proportion*; the third, *Understanding*; the fourth, *The Sciences, Arts and True Opinions*, which are in the soul; the fifth, *Pure and Sincere Pleasure*, without mixture of any trouble and pain: they raised there, reciting this verse out of *Orpheus*:

*But at the sixth age cease your song:  
It beseemeth not to chaunt so long.*

After these discourses passed between us: Yet one brief word more (quoth he) will I say unto *Nicanor*, and those about him;

*For sing I will  
To men of skill.*

The sixth day of the month when you lead the Prophetesse *Pythia* into some Hall named *Prytanium*, the first casting of lots among you, of three, tendeth to five: for the casteth three; and you, two: how say you it is not so? Yes verily, quoth *Nicanor*: but the cause hereof we dare not reveal and declare unto others. Well then (quoth I, smileing thus) untill such time as god permiteth us after we are become holy and consecrate, for to know the truth thereof, mean while let that also be added unto the praises which have been alleged in the recommendation of the number Five.

Thus ended the discourse as touching the commendations attributed unto the number of five, by the Arithmeticians and Mathematicians, as far as I can remember or call to mind. And *Ammonius* (as he was a man who bestowed not the worst and least part of his time in Mathematick Philosophy) took no small pleasure in the hearing of such discourses, and said: Needless! it is and to no purpose, to stand much upon the precise and exact confutation of that which these young men here have alleged, unless it be that every number will afford you also sufficient matter and argument of praise, if you will but take the pains to look into them: for, to say nothing of others, a whole day would not be enough to expresse in words all the virtues and properties of the sacred number Seven, dedicated to *Apollo*. And moreover we shall seem to pronounce against the Sages and Wiscemen, that they fight both against common law received, and all antiquity of time; if disliking the number of seven of that preeminence, whereof it is in possession, they should consecrate Five unto *Apollo*, as more meet and befitting for him. And therefore mine opinion is, that this writing E I signifieth neither number, nor order, nor conjunction, nor any other defective particle; but is an entire salutation of it self, and a compellation of the God: which together with the very utterance and pronunciation of the word induceth the Speaker to think of the greatness and power of him, who seemeth to salute and greet every one of us when we come hither, with these words *ἑὸν εὖρωμαι*. Know thy self, which signifieth no less, than if he said *εὖρωμαι*, that is to say, All hail, or god save you: and we again to render the like, answer him E I, that is to say, *Thou art*; yielding unto him not a false, but a true appellation and title, which only and to him alone appertaineth, namely, that he is. For in very truth, and to speak as it is, we who are mortal men, have no part at all of being indeed, because that all humane nature being ever in the midst between generation and corruption, giveth but an obscure appearance, a dark shadow, a weak and uncertain opinion of it self. And if peradventure you bend your mind, and cogitation for to comprehend a substance and essence thereof, you shall do as much good as if you would clutch water in your hand with a bent fist; for the more you seem to gripe and presse together that which of the own nature is fluid and runneth out, to much the more shall you leese of that which you will clasp and hold: and even so, all things being subject to alteration, and to passe from one change unto another, reason seeking for a real substance is deceived, as not able to apprehend any thing subsistent in truth and permanent; for that every thing tendeth to a being before it, or beginneth to die so soon as it is engendered. For, as *Heracitus* was wont to say, a man cannot possibly enter twice into one and the same River: no more is he able to finde any mortal substance twice in one and the same estate. Such is the suddenness and celerity of change, that no sooner is it diffipated but it gathereth again anon, or rather indeed not again, nor anon, but at once it both subsisteth and also ceaseth to be, it cometh and goeth together; in such sort, as that which beginneth to breed, never reacheth to the perfection of being, for that in very deed this generation is never accomplished, nor resteth as being come to a full end and perfection of being, but continually changeth and moveth from one to another: even as of humane seed, first there is gathered within the Mothers Wombe a fruit or masse without form; then an Infant having some form and shape; afterwards being out of the Mothers belly it is a sucking Babe, anon it proves to be a Lad or Boy, within a while a Stripling or Sprigling, then a Youth, afterwards a Man grown, consequently an elderly and ancient person, and last of all a crooked old Man: so that the former ages and precedent generations be always abolished by the subsequent, and those that follow. But we like ridiculous fools be afraid of one kinde of death, when as we have already died so many deaths, and do nothing daily and hourly but die still. For not only (as *Heracitus* saith) the death of fire is the life of air; and the end of air, the beginning of water: but much more evidently we may observe the same in our selves. The floure of our years dieth and passeth away when old age cometh: youth endeth in the floure of lusty and perfect age: childhood determineth in youth: infancy in childhood. Yesterday dieth

dieth in this day, and this day will be dead by to morrow: neither continueth any man alwaies one and the same, but we are engendered many, according as the matter glideth, turneth and is driven about one image, mould or pattern common to all figures. For, were it not so, but that we continued still the same, how is it that we take delight now in these things, whereas we joyed before in others? how is it that we love and hate, praise and dispraise contrary things? how cometh it to passe that we use divers speeches, fall into different discourses, and are in sundry affections; retain not the same visage, one countenance, one mind, and one thought? For there is no likelihood at all, that without change a man should entertain other passions; and look who is changed, he continueth not the same; and if he be not the same, he is not at all: but together with changing from the same, he changeth also to be simply, for that continually he is altered from one to another: and by consequence our sense is deceived mistaking that which appeareth, for that which is indeed; and all for want of knowledge, what it is to be. But what is it (in truth) to be? Surely to be eternal, that is to say, which never had beginning in generation, nor shall have end by corruption; and in which, time never worketh any mutation. For a moveable and mutable thing is time, appearing (as it were) in a shadow with the matter which runneth and floweth continually, never remaining stable, permanent and solid, but may be compared unto a leaking vessel, containing in it (after a sort) generations and corruptions. And to it properly belong these termes: *Before, and after: Hath been, and shall be*: which prettily at the very first sight do evidently shew, that time hath no being. For it were a great folly and manifest absurdity to say, that a thing is, which as yet cometh not into esse, or hath already ceased to be. And as for these words, *Present, Instant, Now, &c.* by which it seemeth that principally we ground and maintain the intelligence of Time, reason discovereth the same, and immediately overthroweth it; for inconcintently it is thrust out and dispatched, into future, and past: so that it fareth with us in this case as with those who would see a thing very far distant; for of necessity the visual beames of his sight do fail before they can reach thereto. Now if the same befall to nature which is measured, that unto time which measureth it; there is nothing in it permanent nor subsistent, but all things therein be either breeding or dying, according as they have reference unto time. And therefore it may not be allowed to say of that which is, it hath been, or it shall be: for these termes be certain inclinations, passages, departures and changes, of that which cannot endure nor continue in being. Whereupon, we are to conclude, that God alone is (and that, not according to any measure of time, but respective to eternity) immutable and unmovable, not gaged within the compass of time, nor subject either to inclination or declination any way: before whom nothing ever was, nor after whom ought shall be, nothing future, nothing past, nothing elder, nothing younger: but being one really, by this *Present* or *Now*, accomplisheth his eternity and being alwaies. Neither is there any thing, that may truly be said to be, but he alone, nor of him may be verified, He hath been, or shall be, for that he is without beginning and end. In this manner therefore we ought in our worship and adoration, to salute and invoke him, saying, E I: that is to say, Thou art; unless a man will rather, according as some of the ancients used to do, salve him by this title E I E N, that is to say, Thou art one: for god is not many, as every one of us, who are a confused heap and masse composed, or rather thrust together of infinite diversities and differences proceeding from all sorts of alterations: but as that which is, ought to be one; so that which is one, ought to be: for alternative diversity being the difference of that which is, departeth from it, and giveth to the engendering of that which is not. And therefore very rightly agreeeth unto this god, the first of his names, as also the second and the third: for *Apollo* he is called, as denying and disavowing *πλεονεξία*, that is to say, plurality and multitude: likewise, *ἑῷς*, which is as much as to say, as One alone: thirdly, *ῥαβδός*, by which name, they called in the old time, All that was clean and pure, without mixture and pollution. And seemingly even at this day, the Thesallians (if I be not deceived) say, that their Priests upon certain vacant daies, when they keep forth of their Temples and live apart privately to themselves, *πορεύονται*. Now that which is one, is also pure and sincere: for pollution cometh by occasion that one thing is mingled with another: like as *Homer* speaking in one place of *Yvorie* having a tincture of red, said it was polluted; and the word that he useth is *μεινύει*. Dieth also, when they would expresse that their colours be medicines or mixed, use the word *σύνεσται*, that is to say, to be corrupted; and the very mixture they term *σύνεσις*, that is to say, Corruption. It behoveth therefore, that the thing which is sincere and incorruptible, should be also one and simple, without all mixture whatsoever. In which regard, they who think that *Apollo* and the Sun be both one god, are worthy to be made much of and loved for their good conceit and pleasant wit, because they repose the notion of god in that which of all things they know and desire, they honour and reverence most. And now, so long as we are in this life, as if we dreamed the most beautiful dream that a man could imagine of this god *Apollo*, let us excite and stir up our minds to passe yet farther and mount higher, for to contemplate and behold that which is above our selves, in adoring principally indeed his essence: into it, for to produce and bring forth; representing in some sort, by his brightness some obscure resemblances and dark shews of his clemency, benignity, and blessedness, as far forth as it is possible for a sensible nature, to shew an intellectual; and for that which is moveable, to expresse that which is stable and permanent. Moreover, as touching I wot not what extasies and leaping forth of himself and his own nature, certain strange alterations likewise, as namely, when he catcheth fire and withall dismembereth and eateth himself, as they say: as also that he stretcheth, dilateth and spreadeth forth; and contrariwise how he gathereth and draweth in himself here below, into the Earth, the Sea, the Winds,

the Stars, and uncouth accidents of Beasts and Plants; they be such absurdities, as are not to be named without impiety. Or else if we admit them, he will become worse than the little Boy whom the Poets feign, playing upon the Sea shore with an heap of sand, which he first raised, and then cast down again and scattered abroad: if (I say) he should continually play at this game like fast and loose, namely, in framing the World first, where before it was not; and then anon destroying it, so soon as it is made. For contrariwise, how much or how little soever of him is infused into the World, the same in some sort containeth and confirmeth the substance thereof, maintaining the corporal nature of it, which otherwise by reason of infirmity and weakness, tendeth alwaies to corruption. In my conceit therefore, against this opinion principally hath been directly opposed this Mot, and denomination of god, EI; that is to say, *Thou art*: as giving good testimony in his behalf, that in him there is never any change or mutation. But either to do, or suffer this, as is before said, belongeth to any other god or rather indeed to any other Dæmon, ordained to have the superintendence of that nature, which is subject both to generation and corruption: as may appear immediately by the significations of their names, which are quite contrary and directly do contradict one the other. For our god here is named *Apollo*, the other *Pluto*: as if one would say, *Not Many*; and *Many*. The one is cleped *Delius* that is, clear and evident: the other *Aidonius*, that is to say, obscure, blinde, and unseen. Again the former, is named *Phæbus*, which is as much as *Shining* or resplendent: but the latter *Scotius*, which is all one with *Dark*. About him are seated the Muses and *Mnemofyne*, that is to say, Memory: but near to this are *Lethe*, that is to say, Oblivion and Silence. Our *Apollo*, is surnamed *Thebrius* and *Phœneus*, of Seeing and Shewing: but *Pluto* is

\* *aidonius*.

who also is

*The Lord of night so \* bleak and dark,  
Of idle sleeps that cannot wake;*

*To gods and men most odious,  
And to them as malicious.*

Of whom *Pindarus* said not unpleasantly:

*Condemn'd of all he was, for that  
He never any child begat.*

And therefore *Euripides* to this purpose spake right well:

*Soul-songs, dirges, libations funeral,  
Fair Phœbus please not, he likes them not at all.*

And before him, *Stesichorus*:

*Apollo joys in merry songs,  
in dances, sports and plays:  
But Pluto takes delight in fights,  
in groanes and plaints alwaies.*

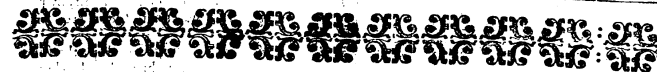
And *Sophocles* seemeth evidently to attribute unto either of them their Musick Instruments, by these verses:

*The Psaltery and pleasant Lute,  
With doleful mones do not well suit:*

For very late it was, and but the other day to speak of, that the Pipe and Hautboies durst presume to sound, and be heard in matters of mirth and delight: but in former times it drew folk to mourning and sorrow, to heavy Funerals and Convoies of the dead, and in such cases and services employed it was, as were not very honorable, nor jocund and delectable; howsoever after, it came to be intermingled in all occasions one with another. Marry they especially, who confusedly have huddled the worship of the gods with the service of Dæmons, brought those instruments in request and reputation.

But to conclude, it seemeth that this Mot EI, is somewhat contrary unto the precept *Tristis eternis*, and yet after a sort to accord and agree therewith. For as the one is a word of devout admiration and reverent worship directed to God, as eternal and everlasting: so the other is an advertisement given unto men mortal, to put them in mind of their frail and weak nature.

AN



# EXPLANATION

Sundry hard Words and obscure Terms, in this  
Translation of *Plutarch*, in favour of the unlearned Reader; after  
the order of the Alphabet.

**A.** *Plus*, A forename among the Romans.



*Abrutice*, A dainty kinde of meat, with the *Medes* and other Barbarous Nations, sharp and quick of taste to provoke and please the appetite, composed of Leeks, Garlick, Cressets, Scovy, Pomgranate kernels, and such like.

*Academy*, A shady place full of Groves, a mile distant from *Athens*, where *Plato* the Philosopher was born, and wherein he taught. Of it, the Academicke Philosophers took their name; whose manner was to discourse and dispute of all questions, but to determine and resolve of nothing. And for the great concourse of Scholars to that place, our Universities are named Academies.

*Ædiles*, Certain Magistrates or Officers in *Rome*: of two sorts; *Plebei* and *Curules*. *Plebei*, of the Commons only, two in number, more ancient than the others, chosen by the people alone, to second and assist the Tribunes of the Commons, as their right hands. This name they took of the charge which they had to maintain Temples and Chapels: albeit they registered the Sanctions and Acts of the people, called *Publici*, and kept the same in their own custody; were Clerks of the Market, and looked to weights and measures, &c. yea, and exhibited the games and plaies named *Plebei*. *Curules* were likewise two, elected out of the order and degree of the *Patritii*: so called of the Ivory chair wherein they were allowed to sit, as Officers of greater state; and by vertue whereof, in some cases, and at certain times, they might exercise civill jurisdiction. It belonged to these to see forth the solemnities, called *Ludi Magni* or *Romani*. Overseers they were of the buildings thoroughout the City, as well publick as private, in manner of the *Alynomi* in *Athens*: they had regard to the publick vaults, sinks, conveniences, and conduits of the waters that served the City, as also to the Arsenall, &c. They had power likewise to attach the bodies of great persons: and were charged to see to the Provision of Corn and Victuals. At the first, none but of noble families or Patricians were

advanced to this place: but in proceesse of time, Commoners also attained thereto. More of them, and how in *Julius Cæsar*'s time there were elected six *Ædiles*, whereof two were named *Cereals*. See *Alex. ab Alexandro*, lib: 4: cap. 4.

*Ægnetick*, *Mna* or *Mina*, Seems to be the antient Coyner Money of *Greece*: for they were the first that Coyined Money: and of them came *νμισμα* or *μισος*. *Cælius Rhodig.*

*Bolus Modus*, In Musick, a certain simple, plain and mild tune, apt to procure sleep.

*Æquinox*, That time of the year, when the daies and nights are of equal length; which happeneth twice in the year, to wit, in March and September.

*Æstival*, Of the Summer: as the *Æstival* Solstice or Tropick of the Sun, when he is come nearest to us, and returns Southward from us.

*Aloide* or *Aloidae*, were *Orbus* and *Ephialtes*, two Giants, so named of *Aloeus* the Giant they supposed father: for of his wife *Epimèdia*, *Nep-tune* begat them. It is said, that every month they grew nine fingers.

*Alphabets*, The order or row of Greek letters as they stand; so called of *Alpha* and *Beta*, the two first letters: and it answers to our A.B.C.

*Alternative*, By course or turns, one after another going and coming, &c.

*Amphitryones*, Were a certain solemn counsel of State in *Greece*, who held twice in the year a meeting, in the Spring and Autumne, at *Thermopylae*; being assembled from the 12 flourishing Cities of *Greece*, there to consult of most important affairs.

*Amphitheatre*, A spacious show-place; in form round, and as it were of two Theatres. See *Theatre*.

*Amphora*, A measure in *Rome* of liquors only. It seems to take that name of the two ears it had, of either side one: it contained eight *Congios*, which are somewhat under as many of our wine Gallons.

*Amulets* or *Amulets*, Preservatives hung about the neck, or otherwise worn, against witchcraft, poison, ciebiting, sickness, or any other evils.

*Anarchy*, The state of a City or Countrey without a Ruler, lack of Government.

*Andria*, A society of men, meeting together in some publick

(A A A A)



## An Explanation of certain obscure Words.

publick Hall to eat and drink : Instituted first among the Thebans, like the *Phiditia* in *Lacedaemon*.

*Annales*, Histories, Records, or Chronicles containing things done from year to year.

*Anniversary*, Commemg once every year, at a certain time : as the Nativity of *Christ*, &c.

*Antarctic*, opposite to the Arcticke. See *Arctic*.

*Amitide*, A medicine, properly taken inwardly against a poyson or some pestilent and venomous disease : A Counterpoyson or preservative.

*Antipathy*, A repugnance in nature, by reason of contrary affections ; whereby some cannot abide the smell of *Roses*, others the sight of a *Cat*, &c.

*Antiperistasis*, A Cohibition or Refrain on every side ; whereby either cold or heat is made stronger in it self by refraining the contrary : as the natural heat of our bodies in winter, through the coldness of the air compassing it about ; likewise, the coldness of the middle region of the Air in Summer, by occasion of the heat on both sides, causing Thunder and *Hail*, &c.

*Antiphrasis*, A noyfe of contrary sounds.

*Antipodes*, Those people who inhabit under and beneath our Hemisphere, and go with their feet full against ours.

*Apathy*, Impassibility, or voidness of all affections and passions.

*Apaturia*, A Feast solemnized for the space of four dayes at *Athens* in the honour of *Bacchus*. So called of *Apate*, Deceit : because *Xanthus* the Boeotian was in single fight slain deceitfully by *Thimoetes* the Athenian. For the tale goes, that whilst they were in combat, *Bacchus* appeared behind *Xanthus*, clad in Goats skin : and when *Thimoetes* charged his concurrent for coming into the field with an assitant, as he looked back, he was killed by *Thimoetes*.

*Apology*, A Plea for the defence or excuse of any person.

*Apothegm*, A short sententious speech.

*Apoplexy*, A disease coming suddenly in manner of a stroke, with an universall astonishment and deprivation of sense and motion, which either causeth death quickly, or else ends in a dead palsy.

*Archontes*, Were chief magistrates at *Athens*, at first every tenth year ; and afterwards yearly chosen by lot, to whom the rule of the common-wealth in their popular state was committed : of whom the first was named *Bacchides*, King : the second, *Archon*, Ruler : the third, *Polemarchus* : and the other six *Thesmotheles*.

*Arcticke*, Northernly, so called of *Arctos* in Greek, which signifies the Bear, that is, those conspicuous seven stars in the North, named *Charlewaains* wain ; near to which is that pole or point of the imaginary axle-tree, about which the heavens turn : which thereupon is named, The pole Arcticke : and over against it, underneath our Hemisphere, is the other pole, called *Antarcticke*, in the South part of the world.

*Aristocracy*, A form of Government, or a State wherein the Nobles and best men are Rulers :

To *Aromatize*, To season or make pleasant, by putting thereto some Sweet and Odoriferous Spices.

*Astragalus Mastix*, A Scourge or whip, the flings whereof are ice and wrought with ankle-bones, called *Astragali*, thereby to give a more grievous lash.

*Atom*, Indivisible bodies like motes in the Sun beams ; of which *Democritus* and *Epicurus* imagined all things to be made.

*Attick pure*, The most fine and eloquent : for in *Athens* they spake the purest Greek ; in somuch as *Thucydides* called it *ἰσχυρὴ ἰσάδα*, Greece of Greece, as one would say, the very quintessence of Greece.

*Averrunci*, or *Averruncani*, Were gods among the Romans, supposed to put by and chase away evils and calamities : such as *Hercules* and *Apollon* among the Greeks, called therefore *Apotropei*. *Auspices*, *Plutarch* seems to take for *Augures*, that is, Certain Priests or Soothsayers, who, by the inspection and observation of Birds, did foretell future things.

*Axiomes*, Were principall propositions in Logicke, of as great authority and force as *Maxims* in law : and it should seem those *Maxims* are derived corruptly from *Axiomes*.

## B

*Bacchanalia*, named also *Dionysia*, Certain licentious festivall solemnities in honor of *Bacchus*, performed as first by day light, and afterward in the night, with all manner of filthy wantonness : Instituted first in *Athens*, and other Cities of Greece every three years : in Egypt also : at last they were taken up in Italy and at Rome.

*Bacchiade*, A noble family in *Corinth*, who for the space almost of 200. years there ruled.

*Bacchylides*, A Song or Dunc, which seemeth to take name of a famous Tragedian Poet named *Bacchylus*, who devised and purified it ; as *Pyladion*, of *Pyliades*, as notable a Comedian.

*Barbarism*, A rude and corrupt manner of speech, full of barbarous and obnoxious words.

*Basis*, The flat, Piedfall or Foot of a Column, Pillar, Statue, or such like, whereon it stands.

*Basarches*, or *Basitarche*, The sovereign Magistrate or Ruler of the Boeotians.

*Bætius*, A kinde of Measure or Note in Musick used in *Bætia*.

## C

*Caius*, A common forename to many families in Rome, and *Caia* to the Woman kinde : as usual as *John* and *Jane* with us, as appears by this form of speech usual in Marriages, *Where thou art Caius, I will be Caia*.

*Calends*, See *Kalends*.

*Callistres*, Hardnesse in manner of Brawn, as in the skin of hands or feet, occasioned by much labour and travell.

*Cancerous*, Resembling a certain hard tumor or swelling occasioned by melancholick humor, named *Cancers*, for the likeness it hath to the Crab-fish, (in Latin *Cancer*) partly, for the swelling Veins appearing

## An Explanation of certain obscure words.

appearing about it, like the sheet of clois of the said fish : partly for that it is not easily removed, no more than the Crab, if it once settle to a place : & lastly, because the color is not much unlike. This smelling if it break out into an Ulcer, hardly admits any cure, and by some is called a Woolf.

*Candy*, A kinde of dainty meat made with Honey and Milk.

*Candy*, An Ornament of the Persians, Medians, and other East Nations ; much like a Diadem.

*Catamvie*, A Boy abused against kind : A Gany mede.

*Cataplasmy*, A Poultice or grosse manner of Plaster.

To *Cauterize*, To burn or scar with a red hot iron, or other metall.

*Cenotaph*, An empty Tomb or Sepulchre, wherein no corps is interred.

*Censors*, Magistrates of State in Rome, whose charge was to value and estimate mens goods, and enroll them accordingly in their severall ranges : to demise to certain Farmers called Publicans, the publick profits of the City for a rent, and to put forth the City works unto them, to be undertaken at a price. Also to oversee mens manners, whereby oft times the time deprived Senators of their dignity : take from Gentlemen their horses of service and Rings : displace Commanders out of their own tribe : disable them for giving voyces ; and make them *Exarii*.

*Centre*, The middle of a Circle or Globe, equally distant from the circumference thereof.

*Centumviri*, A certain Court of Judges in Rome, chosen three out of every tribe. And though there were 35. tribes, and the whole number by that account amounted to a hundred and five ; yet in round reckoning, and by custom, they went under the name of a hundred, and therefore were called *Centumviri*.

*Cercopes*, Certain ridiculous people inhabiting the Island *Pinkusa*, having tails like monkeys, good for nought but to make sport.

*Chalons*, A small piece of brasa money ; the eight part or (as some say) the sixth, of the Attick *Obolus* : somewhat better than half a Farthing or a Cue.

*Chromatick Musick*, Was a soft delicate and effeminate, full of descant, fained voyces and quaverings, as some are of opinion. Others say it consisted much of discords, to render it more delightful in the discord.

*Cidaris*, An Ornament of the head, which in *Persia*, *Media*, and *Armenia*, the Kings and High Priests wore, with blew band or ribbon about it, beset with white spots.

*Cinara*, A Family descended from *Cinaras*. Some read *Cinnyrada*, and *Cinnyras*.

*Circumgyration*, A turning or winding round.

*Cu*, A forename to some houses in Rome.

*Colian earie*, So called of *Colias* a promontory or hill in the territory of *Attica*.

*Collegue*, A Fellow or Companion in office.

*Colonies*, Were Towns wherein the Romans placed Citizens of their own to inhabit, either as Freeholders, or tenants and undertakers ; endowed

with franchises and liberties diversly : Erected first by *Romulus*.

*Comedia vetus*, Licentiously abused all manner of persons, not forbearing to name and traduce upon the Stage even the best men, such as noble *Pericles*, wife *Solon*, and just *Aristides* : nay it spared not the very State it self and body of the Common-wealth ; whereupon at length it was condemned.

*Concion*, Orations or Speeches made openly before the body of the people, such properly as the *Tribunes* of the Commons used to them.

*Congarium*, a dole or liberal gift of some Prince or Noble person bestowed upon the people. It took name of that measure *Congius*, much about our gallon, which was given in Oyl or Wine, by the Poll : but afterwards, any other such gift or distribution, whether it were in other vitals, or in money, went under that name.

*Consuls*, two in number, Sovereign Magistrates in Rome, succeeding the place of Kings, with the same authority, and soail enignes : only they were chosen yearly.

*Contiguat*, To raister or plant a house.

*Contusio*, Bruises, dry beatings, or crushes.

*Convulsions*, Plucking or shooting pains : Cramps.

*Codax*, A lascivious and unseemly kind of Dance, used in Comedies at the first, but milked afterwards and rejected.

*Criticks*, Grammarians, who took upon them to censure and judge Poems and other works of Authors : such as *Aristarchus* was.

*Critical dayes*, In Physick are observed according to the motion of the humour and the Moon, in which the disease shewes some notable alteration, to life or death, as if the patient had than his doom. In which regard we say, the seventh day is a King ; but the sixth, a Tyrant.

*Cube*, A square figure : as in Geonitry, the Dye, having six Faces four square and even : in Arithmetick, a number multiplied in it self ; as nine arising of three threes, and sixteen, of four times four.

*Curvature*, A Bending or Crookednesse ; Also a Rundle.

*Collary*, An overdeal, or overmeasure, given more than is due or was promised.

*Curule chair*, A seat of estate among the Romans made of Ivory ; whereupon certain Magistrates were called *Curules*, who were allowed to sit thereon : as also triumphs were named *Curules*, when those that triumphed were gloriously seen in such a chair, drawn with a Chariot, for distinction of Oration, wherein Captains rod on horse back only.

*Cyath*, A small measure of liquid things : the twelfth part of *Sextarius*, which was much about our wine quart. So that a *Cyath* may go for three good spoonfulls, and answers in weight to an ounce and half, with the better.

*Cynick Philosophers*, Such as *Anisibines*, *Diogenes*, and their followers were : so named of *Cynepargies*, a grove or school without *Athens*, where they taught : or rather of their dogged and curish manner of biting and barking at men, in noting their lives over rudely.

## An Explanation of certain obscure Words.

D

**D** *Decius*, A forename. For *Decius*, although it were the Gentile name of an house in Rome, yet grew afterwards to be a forename, as *Paulus*; and likewise forenames at the first, in process of time, came to name Families.

**D** *Decimus*, A forename to certain Romans, as namely to *Brutus* surnamed *Albinus*, one of the conspirators that killed *Julius Cæsar*.

**Decade**, That which contains ten: as the *Decades* of *Livy*, which consist every one of ten Books.

**Democracy**, A free State, or popular Government; wherein every Citizen is capable of sovereign Magistracy.

**Defecative**, Drying, or having the power to dry. **Diateseron**, A Consonance or Concord in Musick, called a fourth, whereof there are four in the scale which compriseth fifteen strings: it answereth to the proportion *Epirritus*, for it consists of three & one third part.

**Diapente**, A Consonance or Concord in Musick, called a fifth, answers to the proportion *Hemiliolus*, or *Sequitertia*: for three contains two and a half; three and two make five.

**Diapason**, A perfect Consonance containing two fourths; or made of *Diateseron* and *Diapente*, As if it consisted of all: an Eighth. It answers to dupe proportion, or *Diaplasion*.

**Dis Diapason**, A dupe eight; or quadruple fourth; which was counted in old time the greatest Sytem in the Musick scale.

**Diastema**, The interval in the scale of Musick. Also the rest or Time, of which and of sounds or notes *Diastemick* Musick consists.

**Diazugmenon**, Of disjuncts in Musick.

**Diaphoreticall**, or *Diphoreticall*, That sends forth humors or excessive sweat, whereby the spirits are spent, and the body much weakened, as in the disease *Cardiaca*.

**Diaconick Musick**, Keeps a mean temperature between Chromatick, and Enharmonick: and may go for plain song, or our Musick.

**Diatonon**, A note in Musick. *Diatonon Hypaton*, D. SOL. R. E. *Diatonon Meson*.

**Diator**, A Sovereign Magistrate above all others in Rome, from whom no appeal was granted, meer absolute and King-like; but that his time of rule was limited within six months ordinarily: so named, because he only said the word and it was done; or for that he was *Dictus*, that is to say, nominated by one of the *Consuls*, usually in some time of great danger of the state, and not otherwise cl. dtd.

**Diets**, The quarter of a note in Musick; or the least time or accent, G. SOL. R. E. U. T.

**Dionysius in Corinth**, An usual Proverb in Greece, applied to such as are in their prosperous estate, so proud and insolent, as they forget themselves and oppress their inferiors; putting them in mind that they may have a fall, as well as *Dionysius*, who having been a mighty and absolute Monarch of *Sicily*, was driven at last to teach

a Grammar and Music school in *Cormo*.

**Dithyrambs**, Were Songs or Hymns in honor of *Bacchus*, who was surnamed *Dithyrambus*, either because he was not twice, and came into this world at two doors; once out of his mother *Semelen* womb; and a second time out of his Father *Jupiter* Thigh: or else of *Lythrambus* as *Pindarus* writes. For when *Jupiter* had sowed him within his Thigh, at what time he should come forth again, he cried forth, *ἄβι παῖπα: ἄβι παῖπα*, that is, *Undo the seam, Undo the seam*. The Poets who composed such Hymns were called *Dithyrambiques*, whose verses and words were dark and intricate.

**Divination**, Soothsaying, or foretelling of future things.

**Dulichus**, A long carriage or race, containing twelve, or (as some say) 24, *Stadia*.

**Dorian**, or *Dorick Musick*, Was grave and sober: so called, for that the *Dorians* first devised and most used it.

**Drachmæ**, or *Dram*, The eight part of an ounce. Also a piece of money valued at seven pence half penny in Silver, and in Gold much about a french Crown. The Roman *Denarius* was equivalent to it.

E

**E** *ECHO*, A resonance, or rebounding of the last part of the voice or words delivered.

**Echopæan**, A Song of Echo supposed to be a Nymph not visible, but wonderfully beloved of *Pan*, the Heardsmens god.

**Ecliptick**, Making or occasioning an Eclipse.

**Elegie**, A Lamentable and Dolefull Dirty, composed of unequall verses, as the *Hexameter* and *Pentameter*; which are called *Elegick*.

**Elenchi**, Subtile arguments devised to reprove or confute.

**Elote**, The common slaves that the Lacedæmonians used, and employed in base ministreries, as publick executions, &c.

**Elucidaries**, Expositions or Declarations of things that are obscure and dark.

**Embrocations**, a devise that Physicians have to foment the head or any other part, with some liquor falling from aloft upon it, in manner of rain, whence it took name.

**Emphaticall**, Expresse and very significative.

**Empirick Physicians**, Who without regard either of the cause in a disease, or the constitution and nature of the Patient, go boldly to work with those means and medicines whereof they had experience in others, fall it out as it will.

**Empusa**, A certain vain and fantastical illusion, sent by the Devil, or as the *Painims* say, by *Hecate*, to fright infortunate people. It appears in divers forms, and seems to go with one Leg, (whereupon it took the name, *quasi Empusæ*;) for it has one Foot or Leg of brass, the other of an Affe; and therefore it is named also *brachion*, or *brachialis*.

**Encomiasticall**, Pertaining to the praise of a thing or person.

**Endrome**, A kinde of bickering or conflict. Also a coarse

## An Explanation of certain obscure words.

course Mantle, which Wrestlers and Runners flung upon them, when they were anointings and after they had exercised.

**Eudymatia**, A kinde of Dance or Musickall Note.

**Enharmonion**, one of the three general sorts of Musick: song of many parts, or a curious conceit of fundry tunes.

**Enthymemes**, Unperfect Syllogisms, or short reasonings, when one of the premises is not expressed, yet so understood as the conclusion nevertheless is inferred.

**Epele**, The day put to, or set in, to make the leap year.

**Ephori**, Certain Magistrates, or Superintendents, for the people of *Sparta*, in opposition to the Kings, and to take down their regall power: such as were the Tribunes of the Commons at Rome, ordained to abridge the Consuls absolute authority.

**Epiæli**, Fevers of the Quotidian kinde, that is, continuall: they have unequall diffeperature, both of cold and heat at once: but the heat seems to be mild and gentle at the first: whereupon they took that name. These Fevers also, for the same reason are called *epipneustici*.

**Epidemical diseases**, Such as are occasioned by some common cause, and therefore spread, and take hold of all persons indifferently in a Tract or City: as the Pestilence.

**To Epitomize**, To relate or pen a thing briefly, by way of an Abbreviary.

**Epirritus**, The proportion *Sequitertia*, whereby Eight exceeds Six, namely by a Third part.

**Etymologie**, The knowledge of the original of words, and from whence they be derived.

**Eviration**, Gelding or disabling for the act of generation.

**Exharmonians**, Discords or dissonances in Musick.

**Extasie**, or *Ectasie*, A trance or transportation of the mind, occasioned by Rage, Admiration, Fear, &c.

F

**F** *Latulent*, Windy, or engendering winds: as Pease and Beans, are flatulent meat.

**Fomentations in Physick**, are properly devised, to be applied to any grievous part: either to comfort and cherish it; or to allay the pain; or else to open the pores of the skin, and make way for Plasters and Ointments to work their effects the better. They are laid to by the means of Bladders, Spunges, wollen Clothes, Quilts, and such like.

**Fungosity**, A light and hollow substance, such as we may perceive, in Spunges, Mulberries, fustie Bals, Elder, Pitch, &c.

G

**G** *Alli*, The Furious Priests of Dame *Cybele*, the great mother of the gods, honored in *Phrygia*: it is supposed they took that name of *Gallus* the River; of whose water if they drank liberally,

they fell into a furious rage and cut off their own Genitors.

**Græcistesi**, A withdrawing Gallery, or place in Rome, near to the Senate-house *Curia Hostilia*: where Greeks and other forein Embassadors staid and gave attendance.

**Gymnasticall**, Belonging the publick places of exercise, where youth was trained up to wrestling and other feats of activity: which places were called *Gymnasia*.

**Gymnick games or plays**, performed & practised by those who were naked.

**Gymnopolia**, or *Gymnopolia*, A certain Dance, that the Lacedæmonian Children were trained in, barefoot; until they proceeded to another more warlike, called *Pyrrhica*.

**Gymnosophists**, Philosophers of *India*, who went naked, and led a bide, a most austere and precise life.

H

**H** *Habit*, In our bodies, is either the substantiall constitution thereof; whereby we term the evil Habit (in Greek) *κακία*, when as the body mislikes and thrives not; and the good Habit, *εὐγία*, when it prospers; or else the outward parts; and so we say Sweats, Pocks, Meazles, and Scalls, are driven forth to the Habit of the Body by strength of nature.

**Harmonickall Musick**, See *Enharmonia*.

**Hemiliolus**, Proportion *sequitertia*: containing the whole and half; as twelve to eight.

**Hemisphære**, The half Sphære or Globe, used commonly for that part of the Heaven which is in our sight.

**Hexameters**, A verse consisting of six measures, called Feet.

**Hexatons**, Having six tones or six strings.

**Hieroglyphicks**, The Egyptians sacred Philosophy, delivered not in Characters and Letters, but under the form of living creatures and other things engraven.

**Holocaust**, A whole burnt Sacrifice: whereas ordinarily they burnt upon the Altar, only the inwards of the beast.

**Homonymy**, The double or manifold signification of a word or sentence, which is the occasion of ambiguity and doubts.

**Horizon**, That circle that determines our sight, and divides the one half of the sphere of heaven above, from that which is under, out of our sight.

**Horoscope**, The observation of the hour and time of ones Nativity, together with the figure of the heavens at that very instant; and that foresooth in the East.

**Hypate**, *Hypaton*, Principall of Principals. A base string in a Musickall instrument: or a note in the scale of Musick, B, M I.

**Hypate Meson**, A mean string or note in Musick: principall of Means, E, I, A, M I.

**Hypate**, The base string in a Lute or other stringed instrument; so called, because it is seated highest and is principall. And yet it may seem in vocal Musick, as *Lambinus* takes it in *Horace* to be the small treble, by that which he writes of (aaaaa g) *Tigellus*

## An Explanation of certain obscure Words.

**Tigellus**, who sung, *Is Bacche, modis summa Voce, modis bee, refonas chordis que quatuor ima*: where, by *summa* he means the Treble, and *ima* the Base. **Alfo Boetius** (as *Erasmus* upon the proverb *Diapafon*, observ) writes the contrary, namely, that *Hypate* is the lowest or Base; and *Nete* the highest or Treble. Neither doth *Plutarch* seem to agree always with himself in these terms.

**Hyperbolyeum**, A term in Musick, belonging to their scale, and appropriate to the Trebles; it signifies Excellent or exceeding.

**Hyperchema**, An Hymn or Dance to *Apollo*, performed by children with a noise of Pipes before them, in the time of Pestilence, and thereupon it was also called *Pean*.

**Hypothetical propositions**, such as are pronounced with a supposition.

### I

**Iambus**, A measure or foot in Verse, consisting of two syllables, the former short, the other long: it is put also for the Verse made thereof.

**Iambick Verses**, are those which stand upon such Feet. If of four, they are called *Quaternarii*: if of five, *Senarii*: if of eight, *Oligarii*. Now, for that this kind of foot runs very quick, two of them together are reckoned but for one measure: and therefore the said Verses are termed also *Dimeiri*, *Trimetri*, and *Tetrametri*, as if they had but Two, Three, and Four feet or Measures.

**Icosaedron**, A Geometrical solid body, representing twenty sides or faces, distinguished by their severall lines and angles.

**Ideæ**, The forms of things settled in the divine intelligence or heavenly mind, according to which, as patterns, by *Plato's* doctrine, all things were made.

**Idei Dæmii**, Were certain servitors to *Cybele*, brethren all, called otherwise *Gorybantæ* and *Curetes*. But whether they were Demons, fanatical men, or censuring impostors, is not agreed among writers: nor how many they were or why so called. See *Natalis Comes Mytholog*.

\* But here I must not forget to note, that in the line instead of *Idæi dæmii*: some read *Idæi dæmii*, that is to say, of their own fingers. *Idæi* Rhodigi, *Idæi* Antiq. Lib. 17. Cap. 12. **Identy**, That is to say, The sameness, or being the very same.

**Idæi**, or *Idæi*, Eight dayes in every moneth, derived of an old word *Idæo* to divide, for that they commonly fall out about the middle of the moneth, namely upon the thirteenth or fifteenth dayes, according to *Horace*: *Idæi tibi sunt agendæ: Quæ dies mensis Quæritur maxime, fides Aprilis*.

To **Incarinate**, to make flesh, or help the flesh to grow: and so certain salves or medicines are called *Incarnative*.

To **Incrassate**, to make thick and gross.

**Intercalary dayes**, Set or put between, as the od day in the Leap year.

**Interstice**, The space or distance between.

**Innubration**, A shadowing.

**Ionic Musick**, Gallant and galliardlike: pleasant or delectable.

**Isonomie**, An equality of government under the same Laws, indifferently ministered to all persons: As also an equality of right which all men enjoy in one state: And an equal distribution to all persons, not according to Arithmetically, but Geometrically proportion.

**Isthmus**, A narrow bank of Land lying between two Seas, as namely that of *Corinib* and *Peloponnesus*; and by Analogy thereto, all such are so called. By a metaphor also, other things that serve as partitions, are so termed.

**Isthmick Games**, Were those which were performed near *Corinib* upon the *Isthmus*: instituted as some think, by *Theseus*, to the honour of *Melicerta*, otherwise named *Palemon* and *Perionimus*.

### K

**Kalends**, Was among the Romans the first day of the Month, or the very day of the New Moon, which commonly did fall out together: *Nemena*, in Greek But so called and *τὸ καλὸν*, that is, a *Calends*, because the Priest used then to call the people to the court *Calabra*, and there to pronounce unto them how many dayes there were to the *Nones*, &c.

### L

**L. Uctius**, A forename to divers Families in Rome.

To **Lacimize**, to imitate the *Lacedæmonians*, either in their and pithy speech, or in hard life.

**Lacitude**, Weariness.

**Lateral motions**, Moving to a side; for distinction of those that are circular, mounting upright, or descending downward.

**Libations**, or *Libamenti*, Affairs of sacrifices, or offerings to the gods; especially of liquid things, as Wine.

**Lichæus**, A string of an Instrument or Note in Musick: *Index*: In an instrument, the foregoing string, or Third: in the *GAM-UT*, or scales *D, SOL, RE*, and *G, SOL, RE, UT*, according to the Addition of *Hypaton*, or *Meson*.

**Liturgia**, Any publick function: but more particularly for the ministry in the Church, about divine service and worship of God.

**Lydius Modus**, *Lydian* Musick, Dolefull and Lamentable.

**Lycæum**, or *Lycium*, A famous place near *Atheni*, where *Aristotle* taught Philosophy. His followers, because they conferred and disputed walking in this *Lycium*, were called *Peripateticks*.

**Lyrick Poets**, Such as composed Ditties and Songs to be sung to the Lute, Harp, or such like stringed instrument.

## An Explanation of certain obscure words.

### M

**M. MARCUS M. Manlius**, with the note of *Apollitrophus*, Forenames of sundry houses in Rome.

**Medimnus**, A Measure containing six *Modii*, Roman; and may go with us for a Bull-hell and three pecks of London Measure, or there about.

**Megarian Questions**, Such as were pronounced and debated among the Philosophers *Megareses*: for there was a sect of them, taking name of the place; like as the *Cyrenaicks*: for *Euclides*, and *Stilpo* were *Megarians*.

**Mercenaries**, Hirelings, or such as take wages.

**Mise**, The middle string or mean, it ends on eight, and begins the other, in the scale of Musick. In the *GAM-UT*, A, L A, M I, R E.

**Metamorphosed**, Transmuted and changed.

**Metaphysicks**, Supernatural. The first and principal part of Philosophy in the intention, although it be last attained, as unto which all other Knowledge serves, and is to be referred. The Philosophers Theology or Divinity, treating of intelligible and visible things.

**Meteors**, Impetuous gathered in the Air above; as Thunder, Lightning, Blasting Stars, and such like.

**Mimi**, Were Actors upon the Stage representing ridiculously the speech and gesture of others; Jesters and Vices in a play: Also certain Poem or Playes, more lascivious than Comedies, and fuller of obscene wantonness. The Authors of such were called *Minographi*, as *Luberius*.

**Mina**, or *Mias*, A Weight, answering to *Libra*, a Pound. Also a coin valued at so much.

**Minervall**, The stipend or wages paid to a School-master for the institution and teaching of Scholars; derived from *Minerva*, the president of learning and good arts.

**Mixedian tunes**, Lamentable and Pittifull: meet for Tragedies.

**Monarchy**, The absolute government of a State, by one Prince; Royalty.

**Mordacive**, Biting and stinging, as Mustard seed, Pellicitory of Spain.

**Muscles**, The brawny or fleshy parts of the Body.

**Mythology**, A fabulous Narration: or the delivery of matters by way of Fables and Tales.

### N

**Nemeia**, Certain solemn Games instituted in the honour of *Hercules*, for killing a Lion in the Forest of *Nemea*; or as some think, in remembrance of *Archemorus* a young Babe killed by a Serpent.

**Nete**, The lowest or last string in an instrument, answering to the treble, and opposite to *Hypate*. Some take it clean contrary, for the base. See *Hypate*: and *Erasmus* upon the Adage, *Dis-Disapafon*.

**Note Diezeugmenon**, A treble string or note of Musick, last of disjoyned. E, L A, M I.

**Note Hyperboleum**, the last of trebles, A, L A, M I, R E.

**Note Symmenonon** or *Syezeugmenon*, The last of the Conjunx: a string or note in Musick, D, L A, SOL.

**Niglar**, Are thought to be Notes or Tunes in Musick, powerfull to encourage. See *Scholiast* in *Aristoph*.

**Nones**, Were certain dayes in the moneth; so called because they always began the ninth day before the Ides, honoured by the Romans both for the birth day of King *Servius*, & also for the chafing out of the Kings: for otherwise it was not festival; according as *Ovid* writes, *Nonarum tutela Deo caret*.

**Novary number**, That is Nine.

### O

**Obolus**, A certain Weight: half a *Scriptol* or *Scrupul*, the sixth part of a drachm or some what better in Greece: also a small coin, current for eight *Chalcis*, which in Silver is a Penny farthing.

**Oblædæra**, A Geometrical body of eight Bases, sides or faces, distinct by their angles.

**Oeconomie**, House-government: or the administration and dispose of household affairs.

**Oligarchie**, A state of government, wherein a few, and those properly of the wealthier sort, rule the Common wealth.

**Olympiads**, were the space of those five years, according to which the Grecians reckoned the time: as the Romans did by their *Lustræ* and Christians, by the year of our Lord.

**Olympick or Olympian Games**, were instituted first by *Hercules* in the honour of *Jupiter Olympius*; or of *Pelop*, as some think: and celebrated with a solemn affluence and concourse from all parts of Greece, once every five years, between *Pisa* and *Elis*, in a plain called *Olympia*: where also stood the Temple of *Jupiter Olympius*.

**Oracle**, An answer or sentence given by the Devil, or the supposed gods of the heathen: also the place where such answers were delivered.

**Organ**, An Instrument. And our body is said to be Organically, because the Soul performs her operations by the parts thereof, as instruments.

**Ortion Nomus**, In Musick a Tune or song exceeding high and incentive; which when *Timotheus* sung before King *Alexander*, he was so moved and incited, that presently he leapt forth and took arms.

**Orthography**, That part of Grammar which teacheth the feat of writing truly: also, true writing it self.

**Ostracism**, In *Atheni* a condemnation and confining for ten years space of that person, who was thought to grow greater in wealth, reputation, and opinion of virtue or otherwise, than the Democracy or free popular estate would bear, ordained first by *Calisthenes*; who for his labour was himself first condemned. It took name from *Ostrakos*, a shell or little posthard, wherein his name was written, whom any of the people were in that behalf off ended with, and meant to expell the City. And if the major part of the people noted one in this manner, he was sent away. It differed

## An Explanation of certain obscure words.

differed from banishment, because no person, by *Otracism*, lost goods or land: Again the time was limited, and the certain place set down, where he should abide. In this sort *Attilides* the just, valiant *Themistocles* and other good men were driven out.

*Oxyrynchos*, A fish so called, of a long sharp beak or snout that it hath.

P

**P***aeon*, the name of *Apollo*. An hymn also to *Apollo* and *Diana*, to avert Plague, War, or any Calamity: *Paen* to *paenon*, which signifies to strike or heal, or of *paenon*, to stay or make to cease, *Pederasty*, The loving of young boys: commonly taken in the ill part, as signifying the abuse of them against kinds.

*Pegnia*, Pleasant Poems or merry ditties for delight.

*Paen*, *Paeon*, or *Paen*, The name of *Apollo*; and of a metrical foot in verse, of which *Paen* hymns are composed: and it is duple, to wit of four Syllables, either the first long, and the other three short; or the first short and the other three long: also an Epithet of *Apollo*.

To *Palliat*, To cover or hide: and such cures are called *Palliatives*, which reach not to the root or cause of the disease, but give a shew only of a perfect cure; as when a sore is healed outwardly, and festers underneath. Thus sweet Pomanders *Palliat* a stinking breath, occasioned by a corrupt stomach or diseased lungs and such like.

*P. Publius*, A forename to some Roman Families.

*Panathenaea*, A solemnity held at *Athen*: wherein the whole City, Men, Women, and Children, were assembled. And such Games, Dances, and Plays as were then exhibited; or what Orations were: then and there made, they called *Panathenaeic*. Of two sorts these solemnities were: once every year; and once every fifth year, which were called the greater.

*Panacration*, *Plutarch* takes for an exercise of activity or mixt game of fist-fight and wrestling. Howbeit other Writers will have it to be an exercise of Wrestling, wherein one endeavour with hand and foot, and by all parts of his body to foil his adversary: as also the practise of all the five feats of activity, called *Pentathlon* and *Quinqueterium*: to wit, \* *Boxing*, Wrestling, Running, Leaping, and Coiting.

\* Or throwing the Dart.

*Panacratist*, One that is skilful and professed in the said *Panacration*.

*Parameis*, Next the mean or middle string. A note in Music: B, F, A, B, M, I, in space.

*Parante Hyperbolean*, A treble string or note in Music: the last save one of the twelve: G, S, O, L, R, E, U, T.

*Panegyric*, Feasts, Games, Fairs, Marts, Pompes, Shewes, or any such solemnities, performed or exhibited, before the general assembly of a whole Nation: such as were the *Olympick*, *Pythick*, *Isthmick*, and *Nemean* games in Greece.

Orations likewise to the praise of any person, at such an assembly, are called *Panegyric*. *Paradox*, A strange or admirable opinion held against the common conceit of men: such as the Stoicks maintained.

*Period*, A circuit or compass certainly kept: as we may observe in the course of Sun and Moon, and in the revolution of times and seasons: in some ages also and other sicknesses, that keep a just time of their return, called therefore *Periodicall*. Also the end of a full sentence is called a Period.

*Paracete Diezeugmenon*, A treble string or note in Music: the last save one of Disjuncts: D, L, A, S, O, L, R, E.

*Paracete Synemmenon* or *Syzaugmenon*: C, S, O, L, F, A.

*Parhypate Hypatin*, Subprincipal of Principals. A string or Note in Music: C, F, A, U, T.

*Parhypate Meson*, Sub principal of means: a string or note in Music: F, F, A, U, T.

*Paripatetik*, A tract of Philoklaret, the follower of *Aristotle*: See *Liesum*.

*Phiditia*, Were publick halls in *Lacedaemon*, where all sorts of Citizens, rich and poor, one with another meet to eat and drink together, at the publick charges and had equal parts allowed.

*Philippick*, Were invective Orations made by *Demosthenes* the Orator, against *Philip* King of *Macedony*, for the liberty of *Greece*. And hereupon all invectives may be called *Philippick*, as those were of *M. Tullius Cicero* against *Antony*.

*Phrygian Modus*, *Phrygian* tune or Music, otherwise called *Barbarian*; moving to devotion, used in sacrifices and religious worship of the gods: for so some interpret *Enthron*, in *Lucian*: others take it for incensing and stirring to fury. To *Pinguis*, to make fat.

*Plethorick pligh*, The state of the body, which being full of blood and other humors, needs evacuation: whether the said fullness be, *ad vasa*, as the Physicians say, when the said blood and humors are otherwise commendable, but offending only in quality: or, *ad vires*, when the same are disordered and offensive to nature, and therefore would be rid away; which state is also called *Cacochymia*.

*Polemarchus*, One of the nine *Archontes* or head Magistrates in the popular state of *Athen*, chosen as the rest yearly. Who notwithstanding that he retained the name of *Polemarchus*, that is Captain General in the field, such as in the sovereign government of the Kings, were employed in wars and Martial service under them: yet it appears that they had civil jurisdiction, and ministered Justice, between Citizens and Aliens, of whom there were many in *Athen*; like as the *Archon* for the time being, was Judge for the Citizens only. He had two Assistants, named *Paradi*, who sat in Commission with him.

*Poleocles*, A surname of *Demetrius*, a valiant King or *Macedony* and son of King *Antigon*: which addition was given him for besieging so many Cities.

*Polypragmon*,

## An Explanation of certain obscure words.

*Polypragmon*, A curious busy-body, who loves to meddle in many matters.

*Pores*, The little holes of the skin through which sweat passeth, and fumes breath forth.

*Positions*, Such Sentences or opinions as are held in disputation.

*Prætor*, One of the superior Magistrates of *Rome*. In the City he ruled as L. Chief Justice, and exercised civil Jurisdiction: Abroad in the Province, he commanded as Lord Governour, Deputy, or Lieutenant General: In the field, he was L. General, as well as the Consul. At last, the name of Consul, Prætor, and Judge, was all one.

*Primitives*, First fruits:

*Problems*, Questions propounded, to be discussed. *Procatartick causes* of sickness, Such as are evident and coming from without, which yeeld occasion of disease, but do not maintain the same: as the heat of the Sun causing Headach or the Ague.

*Prognostick*, Foreknowing and foretelling: as the signes in a disease which foreshew death or recovery.

*Proscription*, an outlawing of persons in *Rome*, with confiscation of their Goods, and selling the same in portale: and depriving them of publick protection.

*Proslambomen*, A, R, E, a term in Music, signifying (a string or note) taken in or to: for otherwise of two *Heptachords*, there would not arise 15, to admit a place in the middle for *Mese*, the Mean, to take part of two *Eightys*, or two *Diapasons*.

*Prosdia*, A certain Hymn or Tune thereto, in manner of supplication to the gods, and namely to *Apollo* and *Diana*, at such time as a sacrifice was to be brought and presented before the Altar.

*Proteles*, The sacrifice before marriage: as also the gifts that ceremoniously went before.

*Prytanæum*, A stately place within the Castell of *Athen*, wherein was a court held for judgement in certain causes; where also they who had done the Common-wealth singular service, were allowed their Diet at the Cities charges, which was accounted the greatest Honour that could be.

*Pylation*, In Music a kind of note bearing the name of *Pyades*, a comical Poet, and skillfull Master in Music.

*Pyramidal*, Form'd like the *Pyramis*, which is a geometrical body, solid, broad beneath, and rising up on all sides, flat and plain, to a sharp point, like the spire of a steeple. It takes the name of *py*, that is, *Fire*, which naturally has that figure.

*Pythia*, or *Phœbia*, The Priestesse or Prophetesse, who pronounced the answers at the Oracle of *Apollo Pythicus* at *Delpbos*: took the name of *Pythia* there slain by him and lying purified: or of *Pythia*, To ask and demand; for the resort of people thither to be resolved by him of their doubts.

*Pythicks*, or *Pythian* games, were celebrated to the honor of *Apollo*, near the City of *Delpbos*, with great solemnity: instituted first by *Diomedes* &

yearly renewed, in memory of *Apollo's* vanquishing the great Dragon *Python*.

Q

**Q***UINTUS*, A Forename of divers Romans.

*Quintuary*, The number of Four, likewise *verses* and *verses*, so highly celebrated by the *Pythagoreans*, comprising in it the proportion *Eptiron*, whereof consisteth the Musickall harmony \* *Diateseron*; for it contains three and the third part of three: also *Diapason*, because it comprehends two duple, whence ariseth the Musick *Diapason*: and *Disdiapason* being doubled, which is an Eight and the perfect harmony, according to the proverb, *anarr' bera's*: also in that, it contains all numbers within it, For One, Two, Three, and Four, arise to Ten, beyond which we cannot ascend but by repetition of former numbers.

*Quætors*, inferior Officers in *Rome* in manner of Treasurers: whose charge was to receive and lay out the Cities money & R-revenues of state: of which sort there were *Urbanis*, for the City itself: *Provinciales*, for the Provinces: and *Cæsarienses*, for the camp and their wars.

*Quinqueterium*, named in Greek *Pentathlon*. Five exercises or feats of Activity among the Greeks practised at their solemn games: namely \* *Boxing*, *Wrestling*, *Coiting*, *Running*, *Wrestling*, and *Leaping*. See *Panacration*. \* *Some put instead hereof Fist-fight.*

R

**R***Adicall moisture*, Is the substantiall humidity in living bodies; which is so united with natural heat, that the one maintains the other, and both preserve life.

To *Rarefie*, To make more subtil, light, and thin.

*Recidivation*, A Relapse or falling back into a sickness, which was in the way of recovery, and commonly is more dangerous than the former: *Recidiva prior radice*.

*Regents*, Professours in Liberal Sciences and in Philosophy: a term usual in the Universities.

*Reverberation*, A smiting or driving back.

*Rhapody*, A sowing together or conjoining of those Poems and Verses especially heroic or hexameter, which before were loose and scattered: such were those of *Homer*, when they were reduced into one intire body of *Ilias* and *Odyssea*. Those Poets also, who recite or pronounce such Verses, were termed *Rhapsodi*.

*Rivals* and *Corrivals*, Counter suters: or those who make love together, unto one and the same Woman.

To *Ruminare*, To ponder and consider, or revolve a thing in Minde: a borrowed speech from beasts that chew the cud.

**S**

Serg. } *Sergius* } Forenames to certain Families  
 Serv. } *Servius* } in Rome.  
 Sex. } *Sextus* }

*Styptic*, Ascribed to such things as by a certain harsh Taste, do shew they are astringent: as the Fruit called *Medlars*, and *Aalum* especially, which thereupon is called *Stypteria*. And *Stypticitie* is such a quality.

**Syntax,** The construction and coherence of words and parts of Speech by Concord and Regime.

ropes, In speech, the using of words otherwise than in their primitive and natural signification; which many times giveth a grace to the Sentence.

Tutslot

**T**

**Ternary**, The number of three.

## An Explanation of certain obscure words.

*Tutelar*, Protectors and Defenders. So were the Gods, or Goddesses among the *Painini* called, whom they beleev'd to have a special care of any City or Country.

*Type*, A Figure, under which is signified some other thing.

V.

*Veſtall Virgins*, were certain Nuns or Votaries, instituted first by *Numa Pompilius*,

King of *Rome*, in honor of *Veſta* the Goddess; whose charge was to keep the sacred fire from going forth. Chosen they were between six and ten of their age; and were enjoy'd Virginity for thirty years; after it was lawfull for them to be married: but if in the mean while they committed Fornication, they were buried alive.

*Unſtim*, Anointing.



# A N I N D E X

Referring to the Principall Matters Contained

IN THE

## M O R A L S

OF

## P L U T A R C H.



Or Alpha, why the first letter in the Alphabet. 645  
What it signifies. ib.

*Abaris*, A book of *Heraclides*. 15

*Abrote*, the wife of *Nisus*. 731

*Abyrtace*. 577

*Academiq* ies. 914. 915

*Acce* Larentia, one a curisan, and another the nurse of *Romulus* & *Remus*. 705

*Acce* Larentia housed at *Rome*. 705

*Acce* Larentia surnamed *Fabula*, how she came renowned. 705

*Adherit* esse to *Tarantius*, 706. made *Rome* her heir. ib.

*Acco* and *Alphito*. 871

*Acce* phat, verses in *Homer*. 115

*Acce* fander, a *Lybian* Chronicler. 587

*Aetheron*, what it signifies. 424

*Achilles* well seen in *Physick*. 28. 590. Praised himself without blame. 250. commended for avoiding occasions of anger. 33. his continency. 36. charged by *Ulysses* for sitting idly in *Scylla*. 38. of an implacable nature. 590. noted for anger and cruelty. 20. he loved not wine-bibbing. 590. whom he invited to the funeral feast of *Patroclus*. 644. noted for his fell nature. 88. his discretion between *Menelaus* and *Antilochus*. 531. he kept an hungry Table. 614. he digested his choler by *Adulphick*. 1027. noted for a wanton Catamite. 469. killed by *Paris*. 850

*Achill* um. 736

*Achra* des, wilde pears. 739

*Acidula*. 738

*Acra* tisma, that is, a break-fast, whereof it is derived. 635

*Acra* tisma and *Ariston* supposed to be both one. 635

*Acro* ames or *Ear*-sports, which be allowed at supper time. 621

*Acron* the Physician, how he cured the plague. 1073

*Acro* tatus his *Apophthegmes*. 373. 395

*Acton* the Son of *Melissus*, a most beautiful youth. 773. his pitifull death. 773

*Alion* all in all in *Eloquence*. 752

*Actur*, the dogge of one *Pyrrhus*. 789

*Alive* life. 8

*Ades*, what it signifies. 499

*Adiaphora*. 57

*Adimantus*, a noble Captain, defeated by *Herodotus*. 1023

what names *Adimantos* gave unto his children. 1023

*Adipha*. 278

*Admetus*. 935

Admirable things not to be disordered. 593

Admiration of other men in a mean. 45

To Admire nothing, Nil admirari. 48

*Adonis* thought to be *Bacchus*. 583

*Adra* stia. 860

*Adra* stia and *Atropos* whereof derived. 884

*Adra* stus reviled by *Alcemon*. 197. he requiteth *Alcemon*. ib.

*Adultery* of *Mars* and *Venus* in *Homer*, what it signifies. 20

*Adultery* strange in *Sparta*. 412

*Acacium*, a privileged place. 764

*Acacus* a judge of the dead. 438

*Aean* tis a tribe at *Athens*. 541

never adjudged to the last place, 541 highly praised. ib.

(bbbbb) whereof

FINIS.



# THE TABLE.

whereof is took, the name 542  
 Aegeria the nymph 520  
 Aegipan 748  
 Aegipans whence they come 467  
 Aegles wings consume other feathers 593  
 Aegon, how he came to be King of the Argives 1043  
 Aegyptians neither sow nor eat Beans 637  
 Aegyptian Priests abstain from Salt 597. and Fish 638  
 Aegyptian Kings how chosen 1050  
 Aegypt in old time, Sea 1061  
 Aemilli, who they were called 750  
 Aemilius a Tyrant 750  
 Aemilius Censorinus a bloody Prince 750  
 Aemilius kills himself 747  
 Aeneas at sacrifice covered his head 698  
 Aeneas their wandering 891  
 Aeneas their voyage 736  
 Aeneas, who they be 739  
 Aequality which is commendable. 630  
 Aequality 557  
 Aequality of sins held by Stoicks 62  
 Aequiuall circle 672  
 Aechines the Oratour, his Parentage 758  
 Aechines the oratour first acted tragedies. 758. his employments in State affairs ibid banished. ib. 763. his oration against Ctesiphon. ib. his saying to the Rhodians as touching Demosthenes. 754 his school at Rhodes. ib. his death. ib. his orations. ib. he endured Timarchus. ibid. his education and first rising. 759  
 Aescle, what fiend or Demon 130  
 Aeschilus wrote his tragedies being well heat with wine 626 his speech of a Champion at the Isthmick games. 31. his tragedies conceived by the influence of Bacchus. ib. embued in a strange Country 228  
 Aesculapius the patron of Physicians. 816. his Temple why without the City of Rome 721  
 Aescops Fox and the Urcbin. 323

Aescops with his tale. 277. his fable of the dog 278  
 Aescops executed by the Delphians. 451. his death revenged and expiated. ib.  
 Aescops Hen and the Cat 155  
 Aescops dogs and the skins 892  
 Aethe, a fair mare. 86  
 Aether, the ikie 671  
 In Acthiopia they live not long. 685  
 Aetna full of flowers 828  
 Affability commendeth children and young folk. 10. commendable in rulers 316  
 Affections not to be clean rooted out 63  
 Aiazawmaw, what day it was. 643  
 Agamedes & Trophonius built the Temple at Delphi.  
 Agamemnon clogged with cares. 122  
 Agamemnon noted for Pederastie. 467  
 Agamemnon murdered treacherously. 665. noted in Homer for pride. 20  
 Agamemnon his person, how compounded 1045  
 Agamemnor how he behaved himself at a merry meeting.  
 Aganide skilful in Astronomie.  
 Agathocles his Apophthegms. 335  
 being of base parentage, he came to be a great Monarch. 253. his patience. 104  
 Agave enraged 238  
 Aged rulers ought to be mild unto younger persons growing up under them 324  
 Aged rulers patterns to younger. 323  
 Age of man what it is 1081  
 Agenor his sacred grove 940  
 Agenorides an ancient Physician. 560  
 Agesticus his apophthegms 366  
 Agestilus the brother of Themistocles: his valour and resolution 742  
 K. Agestilus fined for giving presents to the Senators of Sparta newly created. 148. he avoided the occasions of wantonness. 24. his lameness. 970. of whom he desired to be commended. 76. his Apophthegms. 349. he would have no statues made for

him after his death. ibid. commended in his old age by Xenophon 317  
 Agestilus the Great, his Apophthegms 365  
 Agestilus noted for partiality. 366. his sober diet. 367. his continency. ibid. his sufferance of pain and travail. 367. his temperance. ibid. his faithfull love to his Country. 365. his tenderness over his children. ib. his notable stratagem. 368. he served under K. Nechaneus in Egypt. 371. 372. his death. ibid. his letter for a friend. 370 the perverting of justice. 226 too much addicted to his friends 297  
 K. Agestipolis his Apophthegms. 372  
 Agestipolis the Son of Paulianus his Apophthegms 372  
 Agias given to belly cheer 557  
 Agis a worthy Prince 372  
 Apophthegms 349  
 Agis the younger his Apophthegms. 349  
 Agis the Son of Archidamus his Apophthegms 372  
 Agis the younger, his apophthegms. 350  
 Agis the last King of the Lacedaemonians his Apophthegms 373  
 1. his death. ib.  
 Agis the Argive a cunning flatterer about K. Alexander the Great. 81  
 Aglaonice, well seen in Astrologie, how she deluded the wives of Thestias 2081  
 Agrioma, the feast 736  
 Agronia 617  
 Agroteros 931  
 Agroters, a surname of Diana. 1066  
 Agrypina talkative 170  
 Ajax Telamonius how he came in the twentieth place to the lottery. 648. his fear compared with that of Dolon 62  
 Algos Potamoi 970  
 Argomum, what place 672  
 Argus what it signifies 616  
 Argus what it signifies in some Poets 24  
 Arianus who they be 734  
 Air how made. 662. the primitive cold 814  
 Air or Spirit the beginning of all things. 660. why called Quies. 815  
 Air

Air the very body and substance of voice 631  
 Argomum what it signifies in Homer 604  
 Aix 729  
 Al, what parts it bath 319  
 Ale a counterfeit wine 562  
 Alalcomenz the name of a City in Ithacchia 738  
 Alalcomenz in Buxotia ib.  
 Alastor 733  
 Alastores 1082  
 Alcamenes his Apophthegms 373  
 Alcathoe 735  
 Alceitis cured by Apollo 935  
 Alcibiades of loose behaviour 288  
 Alcibiades a notable flatterer 73. his Apophthegms 345  
 he had no good utterance. 207  
 Alcione the son of King Antigonus, a forward Knight. 436  
 Alcepus and his daughters, their punishment 775  
 Alcyons the birds 555  
 Alcyon a bird of the sea of a wonderful nature. 801. how she busied her nests 179  
 Alcmæon the debased and traduced by Herodotus 1003  
 Alcmæon the Poet 222  
 Alcmæon's tombe opened 978  
 Alenax, how declared K. of Thestias 157  
 K. Alexander the great winketh at his Sisters follies. 306. his respect to Timoclea. 475  
 his Apophthegms. 338. his magnanimity. ib. his activity. ib. his continency. ib. his magnificence. ib. his bounty and liberality. 338. he noteth the Mithians. ib. his gracious thankfulness to Tarras. 141. his frugality and sobriety in diet. 339. entituled Jupiter Ammons son. ibid. he reproverth his flatterers. ib. he pardoneth an Indian his archer. 340. his censure of Antipater. 339. his continence. ib. he presumeth not to be compared with Hercules. 340. his respect of those who were in love. 340. whereby he acknowledged himself mortall. 628. 87. he honoured Craterus most, and affected Hephæstion best. 340. his death-day observed. 618. his demeanour to King

# THE TABLE.

Porus. 340. his ambitious humour. 526. 121. hee used to sit long at meat. 537  
 he drank wine liberally. ib. he wiseth to be Diogenes. 245. his flesh yielded a sweet smell. 537. his moderate carriage 10 Philotas. 1042  
 he died with a surfeit of drinking. 503. how hee was crucified by Fortune. 1045. hee would not see King Darius his wife, a beautifull Lady. 117. he was favorable to other mens loves. 1042. his picture drawn by Appelles. 1036. his statue cast in brass by Lysippus ibid. his bounty to Persian women. 390. whether he were given to much drinking. 537. he intended a voyage into Italy. 526. his sorrow compared with that of Plato. 62  
 he forsooth the love of Antipatrida. 934. he contenteth with Fortune. 1029. how he reproverth his flatterers. 1042  
 Alexander nothing beholden to Fortune 1029  
 Alexander his misfortunes and crosses in war 1030  
 The means that Alexander had to conquer the world. 2030.  
 how he entertained the Persian Ambassadors in his Fathers absence. 1045. what small helps he had by Fortune. 1030  
 Alexander the great, a Philosopher. 1031. he is compared with Hercules. 1041. how he joynd Persia and Greece together. 1032. his adverse fortune in a Town of the Oxidates. 1046. Epigrams and statues of him. 1033.  
 his hopes of conquest whereupon grounded. 1045. his Apophthegms. 1033. his kindness and thankfulness to Aristotle his Master. 1034 how hee honored Anaxarchus the Mathematician. ibid. his bounty to Pyrrhus and others. ibid. his saying of Diogenes. ib. his many virtues joynd together in his actions. 1035. he espoused Roxane. 1040. his behavior toward the dead corps of King Darius. 1035. his continency. ibid. 1045. his liberality compared with others. 1035. his affection to good arts and Artists.

Janus. 1036. his answer to the famous architect Stallicrates. 1036. he graced Fortune. 1. 36. his sobriety and mild carriage of himself. 1037. his temperance in diet. 1057  
 his exercise and recreations. ib. he espoused Darius the daughter of Darius. 1041. his hard adventures and dangers. 1043. compared with other Princes. 1041. 145  
 Alexander Tyrant of Phrygia, his bloody mind. 1045  
 Alexander Tyrant of Phrygia. 352. killed by Pytholane. 922  
 Alexander the Mollian 56  
 Alexandridas his Apophthegms. 373  
 Alexidimus bastard son of Thestias 270  
 Alexus an old Poet. 317 what pleasures he admitteth for principall. 23  
 Alibantes 81  
 Alibas, what body 643  
 Alimon a composition 278  
 Alima 278  
 Aliteri who they were 116  
 Aliterios 733  
 Allegories in Poets 20  
 Allia field 72  
 Allendisies 72  
 Almonds bitter prevent drunkenness. 538. they kill Foxes, their virtues and properties otherwise 538  
 Aloiaide what Gyants 918  
 Aloia a fish 781  
 Alphabet letters coupled together, how many syllables they will make 600  
 Alpheus the river, of what use the water is 1093  
 Altar of horns in Delos, a wonder 802  
 Altar of Jupiter Idæus. 743  
 Altus of divers significations. 24  
 Alysson the herb, what virtue it hath 561  
 Anaxomus how he came to be K. of Paphos. 1043  
 K. Amasis honoureth Polycritus, his Sister and Mother 415  
 Ambar, how it draweth straws &c. 817  
 Ambition defined 318  
 Ambitious men forced to praise themselves. 490  
 Ambrosia 278. 960  
 Ammenthes what it signifies. 8097  
 Amoc.

# THE TABLE.

Anacæon the Musician 6  
 Anæstir sacrificed men for the  
 prolonging of her life 221  
 Anæstir flowers, why so called  
 563. their virtue 15  
 Amiz or Hamiz, certain fishes,  
 whereof they take their name.  
 789  
 Amity and Enmity the beginning  
 of all things 727  
 Aminocles enriched by ship-  
 wrack 1008  
 Amnemonces who they be  
 728  
 Amoun and Ammon names of  
 Jupiter 1051  
 Amphiarus 743  
 Amphiarus commended 35  
 419. he comforteth the wo-  
 ther of Archemorus 428  
 Amphitryonæ 615  
 Amphidamus his funeral. 587  
 Amphidamas 275  
 Amphithea kills her self.  
 749  
 Amphion, of what Musick he  
 was Author 1018  
 Amphissa women their virtuous  
 act 404  
 Amphitheus delivered out of pri-  
 son 999  
 Amphitrite, a name of the sea.  
 1071  
 Apocæ what it is 563  
 Anacamperotes, what plants  
 961  
 Anacharis the Philosopher had  
 no certain place of abode 276  
 put his right hand to his mouth,  
 &c. 161  
 Anacreon his odes 622  
 Anaxagoras his opinion of the first  
 principle of all things. 660.  
 how he took the death of his  
 Son. 435. 109. why he  
 was thought impious 219  
 Anaxander his Apophthegms and  
 Epigrams 373  
 Anaxarchus tortured by Nico-  
 creon. 62. he flattereth A-  
 lexander. 242. reproved by  
 Timon. 59. a loose and in-  
 temperate person 616  
 Anaxilas his Apophthegms.  
 373  
 Anaximander his opinion of men  
 and fish. 639. his opinion of  
 the first principle. 660. his  
 opinion of God 665  
 Anaximenes confuted by Aristo-  
 tele. 995. his opinion of the  
 first principle 660  
 Anchucus the Son of Midas, his

resolute death 743  
 Ancient men how to accept of dig-  
 nities 326  
 Ancus Martius King of Rome.  
 521  
 Andorides the orator his paren-  
 tage, acts and life. 753. ac-  
 cused for impiety. ib. acquit.  
 753. he saved his own father  
 from death. ibid. a great sta-  
 tist and a Merchant besides. ib.  
 arrested by the King of Cyprus.  
 ibid. banished. ibid. his ora-  
 tions and writings. 754.  
 when he flourished ib.  
 Andreia 624  
 Androclidas his Apophthegms.  
 374  
 Androcides how he painted the  
 gulf of Scylla 578  
 Anger the sinews of the soul. 62  
 how it differeth from other pas-  
 sions. 95. how it may be  
 appeased. 99. how set on fire  
 ibid. compend with other  
 passions. 100. &c. who are  
 subject unto it. 102. ibid.  
 mixed with other passions.  
 108. to prevent it, as great  
 a virtue as to bridle it. 33.  
 to be repressed at the first.  
 99. upon what subject it  
 worketh. 100. how it alter-  
 eth countenance, voice and  
 gesture. 100. compounded of  
 many passions. 108. it banish-  
 eth reason 446  
 Angle lines why made of Stone-  
 horse tails 826. 796  
 Anlo the river whereof it took the  
 name 751  
 Animal creatures subject to ge-  
 neration and corruption. 692.  
 of sundry sorts ib.  
 Annibal his Apophthegm of Fab.  
 Maximus. 353. he scisseth at  
 footbaying by beasts entrail.  
 229. vanquished in Italy.  
 543  
 Anointing in open air forbidden  
 at Rome 77  
 Anointing against the fire and  
 Jun 509  
 Awa. 950  
 Answers to demands how to be  
 made 168. of three sorts.  
 169  
 Antagoras a Poet 341  
 Antagoras a stout shepherd. 741  
 An ahidas his Apophthegms.  
 374. how he reorted a  
 sciss upon an Athenian. 299

his Apophthegm to King Age-  
 silaus 374  
 Antælike pole 671  
 Anties and Anthedonia 732  
 Anties an ancient Musician.  
 1018  
 Anthedon what it is 731  
 Anthias the fish, why called sacred  
 800  
 Anthistemon what month 643  
 Anticla the Mother of Ulysses.  
 738  
 Antigènes enamored upon Tele-  
 sippus, was kindly used by King  
 Alexander 340  
 Antigonus the elder, how he took  
 his sons death. 436. being an  
 aged King, yet governed well.  
 335. his answer unto a Sophis-  
 ter. 1033  
 Antigonus the younger, his brave  
 speech of himself. 744. his A-  
 pophthegms. 342. his piety  
 and kindness to his Father. ib.  
 Antigonus the third his Apoph-  
 thegms. 342. his comency.  
 ib.  
 Antigonus the elder, his justice.  
 343. his patience. ibid.  
 his Magnificence. ibid. he  
 reproveh a Rhetorician. 343  
 reproved by the Poet Antago-  
 ras. 342. his Apophthegms.  
 342. his martial justice. ib.  
 wary to prevent the occasion of  
 sin. ib. what use he made  
 of his sickness. 341. his coun-  
 sell to a Captain of his garrison.  
 917. he acknowledgeth his  
 mortality. ib. how he repressed  
 his anger. 102. his patience.  
 104. his secrecy. 162. his  
 answer to an impudent begger.  
 138  
 Antiochus one of the Ephori, his  
 Apophthegm 350. 374  
 K. Antiochus Hierax loving to  
 his brother Seleucus. 343. he  
 loved to be called Hierax.  
 793. 794  
 Antiochus the great, his Apoph-  
 thegms. 343. he beseegeth  
 Hierusalem, and honoureth a  
 feast of the Jews ibid.  
 Antipater Calamobas, a Philo-  
 sopher. 171  
 Antipater his bashfulness causeth  
 his death. 136. his answer to  
 Phocion 85  
 Antipatrides rebuked by K. Alex-  
 ander the great. 339  
 Antiprictasis what effects it  
 worketh 837  
 Antiphæra an Aethian boy, maid  
 servant

# THE TABLE.

servant of Ino. 696  
 Antiphæra the orator his pregnant  
 wit. 751. his parentage and  
 life. 344. he penned orati-  
 ons for others. 752. he wrote  
 the institutions of oratory 752  
 for his eloquence surnamed  
 Nestor. 752. his stile and  
 manner of writing and speaking.  
 ib. the time wherein he lived.  
 ib. his martial acts. ib. his  
 Embassie. ib. condemned and  
 executed for a Traytour. ibid.  
 his Apophthegm to Denys the  
 Tyrant. ib. how many ora-  
 tions he made. ibid. he wrote tra-  
 gædies. ib. he professed himself  
 a Physician of the soul. ib. other  
 works and treatises of his.  
 753. the judicall processe and  
 decree of his condemnation. ib.  
 inconsiderate in his speech be-  
 fore Denys 89  
 Antipathies of divers sorts in na-  
 ture 554  
 Antisthenes what he would have  
 us to wish unto our enemies.  
 1038  
 Antipodes 942  
 Antisthenes his answer 299  
 his Apophthegm 199  
 great peace maker 528  
 Antithea 839  
 Anton 934  
 Antonius his overthrow by Cleo-  
 patra. 519. enamoured of  
 Queen Cleopatra. 82  
 abused by flatterers. ib. 76  
 Antron Coratius his History.  
 796  
 Anabias born 1052  
 Anytus loved Alcibiades.  
 945  
 Anytus a scophant 246  
 Aorne a strong castle 340  
 Apaties what they be 62  
 Apaturia, a feast 1004  
 Apelices what wind 679  
 Apelles his Apophthegm to a  
 Painter 7  
 Apsa what feat of activity.  
 587  
 Aphabroma what it is 731  
 Aphether who he is 728  
 Apioi 739  
 Apis how ingendered. 628. killed  
 by Ochus. 1058  
 Apis how he is interred 1058  
 Amelotes, what dances 1019  
 Apollo why called Delius and  
 Pythius. 499. he was the  
 prize personally. 633. a favo-  
 urer of games of prize. ibid.  
 surnamed Pytes ib.

Apollo the Runner. ib. surnamed  
 Pæan or Musagetes 613  
 Apollo when born, why named  
 Hebdomagines. 618. his two  
 nourish, Alæchia and Corytha-  
 lia. 570. why surnamed Loxias  
 87  
 Apollo painted with a Cock on  
 his hand 972  
 Apollo the Author of Musick.  
 968. his Image in Deloi how  
 portrayed 1020  
 Apollo what attributes he hath,  
 and the reason thereof 1098  
 Apollo affectionate to Logick as  
 well as to Musick 1102  
 Apollo and Bacchus compared  
 together 1093  
 Apollo, why so called. 1107. why  
 called Luos. ib. why Phœbus  
 ibid.  
 Apollo and the Sun supposed to be  
 both one 1094  
 Apollo compared with Pluto  
 1108  
 Apollodorus troubled in conscien-  
 ce 450  
 Apollodorus an excellent Painter  
 805  
 Queen Apollonis rejoiced in the  
 love of her brother 145  
 Apollonius the Physician his  
 counsell for lean folk 822  
 Apollonius his son commend. 418  
 Apollonius kind to his brother  
 Sotion 153  
 Apophthendonei who they be  
 729  
 Apotropæi what gods they be  
 619  
 Appius Claudius the blind 327  
 his speech in the Senate. ib.  
 Application of verses and senten-  
 ces in Poets 37  
 April consecrated to Venus  
 720  
 Apopis, the brother of the Sun  
 1060  
 Apples why named *Malpoma*  
 595  
 Apple trees, why called *Malpoma*.  
 595  
 Aræni Acta, what it is 734  
 Arcadians, reputeth themselves most  
 ancient 721  
 Arceilaus, son of Battus, unlike  
 his father. 415. surnamed  
 Chalepos. ib. poisoned by La-  
 archus ib.  
 Arceilaus the Philosopher defend-  
 ed against Colotes. 917  
 he flattereth Battus out of his  
 school. 76. his patience.  
 107. a true friend to Appeli

184  
 Archelaus, King of Macedony  
 his answer to Timotheus the  
 Musician 1037  
 Archetetrast, a fine Poet not ve-  
 rified 1037  
 Archias, a valiant Spartan bo-  
 noured by the Samians 999  
 Archias, the Corinthian his no-  
 rious outrage 766 773  
 Archias, murdered by Telephus  
 his minion. 774. he built Syra-  
 chusa in Sicily ib.  
 Archias Phygadothere, a nota-  
 ble catcl pol 756  
 Archias, an high Priest 958  
 Archias, the ruler of the Thebans  
 negligent of the state 533  
 Archias, tyrannized in Thebes.  
 961. killed by Micon.  
 981  
 Archelaus, his opinion of the first  
 principles 660  
 K. Archelaus, how he served an  
 impudent craver. 137. his A-  
 pophthegm 356  
 Archidamus his Apophthegm  
 349  
 Archidamus the son of Zeuxida-  
 mus his Apophthegms 374  
 Archidamus the son of Archelaus  
 his Apophthegms 375  
 K. Archidamus fined for mar-  
 rying a little woman 2  
 Archilochus an ancient Poet and  
 Musician 817. 1010  
 Archilochus what he added to  
 Musick 1024  
 Archimedes how studious in ge-  
 nery 318  
 Archiptolemus condemned and  
 executed, with Antiphon  
 753  
 Architas represseth his anger 446  
 his patience 10  
 Arctique pole 72  
 Arctos, the bears, a star, repre-  
 sent Typhon 1054  
 Ardalus 217  
 Ardetas a lover 934  
 Arctaphila her virtuous deed.  
 410. her defence for suspicion  
 of preparing poison to kill her  
 husband ib.  
 Argei at Rome what Images  
 704  
 Argleonis the Mother of Brasia-  
 das, her Apophthegms 395  
 Argoi, the name of all Greeks.  
 704  
 Argos women, their virtuous act.  
 400  
 Arizus, an unworthy Prince.  
 1039  
 (b b b b b 3) Arizus

## THE TABLE.

Aridæus, a young Prince, unfit to rule 337  
Aridices his bitter scoff 308  
Arizæus his Apophtegms 374  
Arimanus 854  
Arimanius a martial Enthusiast 932  
Arimanius, what God 1063  
Arimes his kindness to Xerxes his brother 332  
Ariobarzanes, son of Darius, a traitor executed by his father. 741  
Arion his History 282  
Ariopagus 325  
Aristæus, what God 931  
Aristarchum, a Temple of Diana 739  
Aristinus, what answer he had from the Oracle 697  
Aristides kind to Cimon 318  
his Apophtegms. 345. see stood upon his own boldness. ib. at enmity with Themistocles. 316. he lyeth it down for the Common wealth. ib.  
Aristippus his Apophtegms as touching the education of children. §. his answer as touching Laïs the courtesan. 926  
A sitippus and Acchides at a jar : how they agreed. 108  
Aristoclea her tragical History. 774  
Aristocrates punished long after, for betraying the Messinians. 414  
Aristocracies allow no orators at bar to move passions 60  
Aristodemus fearful and melancholic 243  
Aristodemus usurper's tyranny over Cumæ. 415 243  
Aristodemus, Socrates his shadow at a feast 616  
Aristodemus, tyrant of Argos. kills himself. 218. his willow. 777. surname Malacox §16. murdered by conspirators. ibid.  
A. Irologon, a promoter, condemned 347  
Aristomache a Poetress 507  
Aristomenes poisoned by Peolomæus 93  
Ariston his opinion of virtue. 54  
Ariston his Apophtegms. 374  
Asper a dinner, whereof it is derived 635  
Ariston punished by God for Ja-  
cride 414  
Aristonicus a harper, honoured after his death by K. Alxin. der 1036  
Asitrophanes discommended in comparison of Menander. 772  
Aristotimus a cruell Tyrant over the Elians. 4. 6. his treacherous villainy toward the wives of Elis. 407. murdered by conspirators idim his wife king ber fell 467  
Aristotle how he dealt with prais- ing fellows. 159. rediecteth Sagria his native City. 920. his opinion of God. 655. his opinion as touching the principles of all things 662  
Aristotle a Master in his speech 28  
Aristotle the younger, his opinion as touching the face in the Moon. 913. 447  
Arithmetick 836  
Arithmeticall proportion chaced out of Lacedæmon by Lycurgus 619  
Arius a great favorite of Augustus Czâr 303  
Atoveris born 152  
Atraphas 161  
Arlinoe, how she was comforted by a Philosopher for the death of her son 429  
Arlinoe 76  
Artaxerxes accepted a small present graciously 332  
Artax rex Long-hand his Apophtegms 332  
Artaxerxes Mnemon his Apoph- tegms and behaviour 333  
Artemisium the Promontory. 711  
Artemisia a lady, aduisher of Xerxes 1013  
Artemia, what is to say, Diana, why so called 96  
Article, a part of speech seldom e used by Homer 842  
Arte from whence they proceed. 191  
Artyni, who they be 727  
Arumicus carnally abused his wife daughter, and sacrificed by her 757  
Aruncius Paterculius executed worthily by Aemilius Cenforinus. 750  
Apis the serpent why honoured among the Egyptians 1077  
The Asps, why honoured among the Jewes 374  
Adæ and korjes having apples &  
fingers a lovely, be joint with disease Bulmoen 663. what is the reason thereof 665  
Afander 911  
Alaron 528  
Alcanius vanquished Mezentius 717  
Alia what it was 1019  
Alia a Queen of Arabia 1052  
Altopius a darling of Epaminondas 935  
Alphodel 298  
Alphybbly of lusty gallants 735  
Affine and the prohibition thereof argued pro & cont. 2  
Alfiare, Queen of Byblon in Egypt 1053  
After, a notable archer 743  
Ahoni people of India 965  
Ailologie is contained under Geometry 685  
Ailrology 845  
Alyciacidas his Apophtegms 375  
Ayndeton 842  
Ate 284  
Atcas the King of the Scythians his Apophtegms 333  
Atcas mislikest Musick. iud. enemy anno idleme. 329  
Atcopomorus King of the Gauls 748  
Athamas and Agaue enraged 216  
Athenians more renowned for martial feats than good letters 814  
Athenians of what disposition they be 356  
Athenians why they suppress the second day of August 154  
reproved by a Laconian for plays. 809  
A home and Arica bigly com- mended 287  
The Athenians would not break open King Philips letters to his wife 287  
Athens divided into three regions. 286 the number and name of good arts 815  
Athenians abuse Sylla and his wife with ill language 161  
Achond rus his kindeesse to his babbe Zo no 149  
Atheism and superstition compared 214  
Abori.  
Atheisti who they were 663  
Atheismi maintained by Epicuri-  
rus 477

THE TABLE.

Atheism. 214. *what it is*. *ibid.*  
it arose from *superstitions*.  
220. *how engendered*. 214.  
Aethos the mountain 951. 9. 8  
Atlas 951  
Atomi 495. 6. 1  
Athyri *what it signifies* 1. 69  
Autopos 858. 653. *her*  
*judgment*. 966. *what she is*  
*and where she keeps* 993  
K. Atlas died upon his birth  
day 628  
Attalus his reciprocal love to his  
brother Eumenes 155  
Attalus a King, ruled and led by  
Philophæneus 325  
Attalus espoused the wife of his  
brother yet living 343  
Avarice how it differs from o-  
gerint 174  
Against Avarice 2. 6  
Averruncius, See Apotropeus.  
Aurgus *why they be* 7. 6. *why not*  
*degraded* *ib.*  
Aurgus forbidden to observe bird  
flight, if they had an ulcer a-  
bout them 715  
Aurgus and Aulpius *why they*  
*bad their lantern open*. 716  
After Augustus no bird flight ob-  
served 7. 6  
Of Augustus the second day suppres-  
sed by the Athenians on the  
Kalendar 649  
Augustus Cæsar first Emperor  
of Rome 519  
Augustus Cæsar his Apothe-  
osis. 361. *how he paid his*  
*father Cæsar Legacies* *ibid.*  
his clemency to the Alexandri-  
ans. *ib.* his affection to Ari-  
us. *ib.* his anger noted by Athe-  
nodorus. *ibid.* his Prayer  
for his nephew Tiberius Cæ-  
sar. 519. *fortunes darling*.  
*ib.*  
Aurum. 738  
In Aurum we are more hungry  
than in any other time of the  
year 546  
Autumne called *quintoxis* 643  
Axiomata ten, by compaction how  
many propositions they bring  
forth 877  
B  
Baccharis the herb, *what vertue*  
*it hath in garlands* 560  
Bacchiade 773  
Bacchon the fair 924  
Bacchus *why called by the Ro-*  
*mans Liber pater*. 885. 1. *why*  
*he had many Nymphs to be*  
*his nurses*. 571. *surmamed*  
*Diontreus*. 599. *the Son or*  
*Father of oblivion*. 615. *why*  
*called Eleuther and Lylius*.  
Bacchanals *how they were per-*  
*formed in old time* 176  
Bacchus how he cometh to have  
many denominations 1104  
Bacchus patron of husbandry.  
613. *not soon by winch*  
*dances at Rome*. 703. *What is*  
*all this to Bacchus?* a proverb  
*whereupon it arose* 597  
Bacclæ *why they use time and*  
*metter* 5. 6  
Bacche 573  
Bacchus taken to be the Jews god.  
584. *surmamed Læzus and*  
*Cho æris*. 592. *he was a good*  
*Cæptain*. 592. a Physician.  
561. *why surmamed Mithyma-*  
*nus*. 562. *surmamed d Lylius*  
*or Libes and wherefore*. 561  
*what is the end thereof*. 574  
*why named Phœus*. 595  
Bacchus *surmamed Bugenes*  
*1059*  
Bacchus portrayed with a bull's  
head 1059  
Bacchus the Nymphs of all mu-  
sic 1. 59  
Bactrians desire to have their dead  
bodies devoured by birds of the  
air. 2. 6  
Baines and stoupes. 513. *in old*  
*time very temperat*. 642  
*the occasion of many diseases*  
642  
Balance not to be passed over  
12  
Bal *what it signifies in the*  
*Aethiopian language* 1073  
Banishment of Bulimus 6. 6  
Banishment how to be made tole-  
rable. 226. no mark of infam-  
y. 227. *freemeth to be con-*  
*demned by Enripides* *ib.*  
Banished persons *we are all in*  
*this world* 231  
Banquet of the seven Sages 268  
Barbarians and Greeks compared  
53  
Birrell the fish honored 800  
Barbers *be commonly praters*  
65  
a prattling Barber, checked K.  
Archelus 335  
Barber to K. Dionysius *crues*  
*crused for his talkative tongue*.  
165. Barbers *shops drive ban-*  
*quets*. 591. a Barber *huddled*  
*in his kind for his bawling*  
*tongue* 165  
Barly likes well in sandy ground  
834  
Barrenesse in women how occasion-  
ned 69  
Evill Baulfulness cause of much  
sin and danger 135  
over-much Baulfulness how to  
be avoided. 136. Baulful-  
ness. 131. of two sorts. 60  
Baulfulness to be avoided in  
diet 5. 4  
Bathing in cold water upon exer-  
cise. 515. Bathing in hot  
water. b. Bathing and sweat-  
ing before meat 505  
Bithyllion 22  
Bittus the Son of Arcellus 4. 6  
Bittus a buffon or jester 635  
Bittus *surmamed Dæmon* 405  
Bittus 978  
Beats *abstained from* 13  
Bear a subtil beast. 792. *why*  
*they are said to have a sweet*  
*taste*. 817. *why they gnaw*  
*not the net*. 829. *tender over*  
*their young* 179  
A Bearded comet 677  
Beasts have taught us Physick  
and all the parts thereof. 793  
Beasts capable of vertue. 466  
decible and apt to learn arts.  
466. able to teach. *ibid.* we  
ought to have pity of them  
467. brute Beasts teach Pa-  
rents natural kinde. 179  
Beasts brains in old time  
ripped. 632. they cure  
themselves by Physick. 819  
Beasts of land their propertie-  
ties. 786. *what beasts will be*  
*made*. 783. *beasts not sacrifi-*  
*cied without their own consent*.  
639 skillful in Arithmatick.  
793. kind to their young. 179  
Beasts wilder, *what use men*  
*make of them*. 195. of land  
or water, *whether have*  
*use of reason*. 779. Beasts  
have use of reason. 781. 783  
*how to be used without injury*.  
785. *how they came first to*  
*be killed*. 739. *whether they*  
*feed more simply than we*. 574  
*whether more healthfull than*  
*men* 574

# THE TABLE.

Beauty the blossom of vertue 940. beauty of what worth beauty of women called <i>Amore</i> 941. 597 beauty without vertue nor commendable	39	Betæon	1060	B-bon	ib.	Bed of married folk composeth many quarrels between them 265 bed-clothes to be shuffed when we be newly risen	637	Bees of Candie how witty they be 786. Bees cannot abide smoke. 831. they sting unchaste persons. ib. the Bee a wife creature	171	The Beestill site what it signififieth hieroglyphically. 1051. why honoured by the Egyptians	1073	Beer a counterfeit wine	562	Begged flesh, what is meant by it	730	Bellerophon's continent every way	606	Bellerophon commended for his continence	55. 115	he slew Chimarchus	402	not rewarded by Jobates	ib.	Belshre	917	The Belles of dead men how they be served by the Egyptians.	463. of belly & belly cheer pro & contra 278. 279. belly pleasures most esteemed by Epicurus and Metrodorus. 488. belly bait no ears	509	Bepolitanus strangely escaped execution	405	Berronice and the good wife of Lacedæmon	99	Bassus deterred for killing his father	448	Bias his answer to a prattling fellow. 160. his answer to King Amasis. 269. his Apophthegm touching the most dangerous Beast	39	Binarie number. 661. Binarie number or Two called contention	1071	Biton his answer to Thocognir. 23. his Apophthegm 209 his saying of Philosophy	7	Bur& bath divers significations	24	Birds why they have no wezill flap 610. Birds how they drink 610. skillfull in divination 798. taught to imitate mans voice	792	Biton and Cleobis rewarded with death. 426. See Cleobis. Bitternesse what effects it worketh	537	A Blab of his tongue how he was served by K. Seleucus	165	Blacknesse cometh of water	86	Black potage at Lacedæmon	392	Bladder answereth to the wind- pipe, like as the guts to the we- zand	610	Blames properly imputed for vice.	39	Blasfing Stars	677	The Blessed state of good folk de- parted	432	Blitconians sacrificed a man	719	Blushing face, better than pale	32	Bocchoris a K. of Egypt.	153	Bowed.	735	Bodily health by two arts pre- served	7	Body fitter to entertain pain than pleasure. 480. body feeble no hinderance to aged rulers.	318. bodies what they be 913. bodies smallest. 666. body, cause of all vices and ca- lamities. 426. body may well have an action against the soul 513. much injured by the soul	348	Bocotarchie	548. noted for gluttony.	472	Bocotians reprobed for hating good letters	1076	Boldnesse in children and youth	7	Bona a goddesse at Rome	761	Books of Philosophers to be read by young men	8	Boreas what winde	679	Bottizans their virgins' song.	ib.	Brasidas his saying of a filly mouse	207	Brasidas his Apophthegms. 348 his death and commendation	ibid.	A Bracon spike keeps dead be- dies from putrefaction	571	Brasse, swords or spears wound with lesse hurt	572	Brasse why called <i>Eschion</i> , and <i>No-</i> 64. 572. why it is so resonant	631	Brasse of Corinth	969	Bread a present remedy for fair- ing	606	Brennus King of the Gallogreeks	745	Brethren how they are to divide their patrimony. 149. one Brother ought not to steal his Fathers heart from another 148. they are to excuse one an- other to their Parents. 148. how they should carry themselves in regard of age	152	Briaricus a Giant, the same that Ogygius	962	Bride lifted over the threshold of her husbands dore	704	bridegrome cometh first to his bride without a light	714	bride why she eateth a quince before she enter into the beds chamber. 715. brides hair parted with a javelin	720	Brimstone why called in Greek Iov.	576	Brion a famous runner	127	Brotherly amity a strange thing	143	Brutus surprized with the hunger Scaurus. 66. his gracious thank- fulness to the Apollonians	ibid.	Decim. Brutus why hee sacrificed to the dead in December	705	Brutus beheaded his own Son	744	The Bryer hisse <i>Kuacore</i> .	731	Bubulci the name at Rome, how it came	708	Bucephalus K. Alexanders horse 790. how he was wont to ride him	318	Buggery in brute beasts not known	467	Building costly forbidden by Ly- curgus	472. 721	Bulb root	577	Bula and Bears how they prepare to fight	786	Bula afraid of yed clothes	266	tied to fig-trees become lame	605	Bulla what ornament or jewell is why worn by Romans chil- dren	713	Bulimus and <i>Bulimus</i> , a fainting of the heart, and no hunger	616	Bulimus what it signififieth	605	Bulimos the disease, what it is, and whereupon it proceedeth	606	Buprostis	607	Buris	605
---	----	--------	------	-------	-----	--	-----	---	-----	--	------	-------------------------	-----	-----------------------------------	-----	--------------------------------------	-----	---	---------	--------------------	-----	-------------------------	-----	---------	-----	--	--	-----	---	-----	---	----	--	-----	--	----	---	------	--	---	---------------------------------	----	---	-----	--	-----	--	-----	----------------------------	----	---------------------------	-----	---	-----	-----------------------------------	----	----------------	-----	--	-----	------------------------------	-----	---------------------------------	----	--------------------------	-----	--------	-----	--	---	---	---	-----	-------------	--------------------------	-----	---	------	---------------------------------	---	-------------------------	-----	--	---	-------------------	-----	--------------------------------	-----	--------------------------------------	-----	---	-------	---	-----	---	-----	---	-----	-------------------	-----	---	-----	---------------------------------	-----	---	-----	---	-----	---	-----	---	-----	---	-----	---------------------------------------	-----	-----------------------	-----	---------------------------------	-----	--	-------	---	-----	-----------------------------	-----	----------------------------------	-----	--	-----	---	-----	-----------------------------------	-----	--	----------	-----------	-----	---	-----	----------------------------	-----	-------------------------------	-----	--	-----	--	-----	------------------------------	-----	---	-----	-----------	-----	-------	-----

# THE TABLE.

Basis his resolution for his Coun- try	352	Amian not to be eased of his Bur- den	637	Basilis sacrificeth strangers and guests. 750. killed by Hercules.	ib.	Byfatia killeth her self	748	Byfius what wind	799	Buzygion	265	wherein employed	554	Callipides a vain jester.	375	Callirrhoe a beautifull damojell, her weill History. 778. shee hanged her self	7-8	Callithenes refused to pidge Alexander the great. 99 in disfavour with K. Alexander.	537. his Apophthegm against quaffing.	ib.	Callithenes killeth himself upon the body of Ariltochia his bride.	775	Callisto, what Demon	130	Callistratus a friendly man in his house and keeping great Hoshi- tality.	580	Callixenus a Sympant	246	Sea Calves their properties.	831	Gambles upon a vain jealousie put his brother to death.	149	Calistrium, what melody among the Lacedæmonians	1123	Casual adamicus what it is	660	Catac. utæ	732	Cataminis bate Pederas's moist dewly	942	Canapustion, a month of the river	1052	Nilus, why fo called	134	Catapha what it is	932	Cataphaltes, what God	750	Cathartes ravisheth Salia	265	Cats can abide no sweet perfumes.	356. an enemy to gluttony.	Cato the elder his Apophthegms.	ib.	Cato his accusation and plea. 316 his Apophthegm of Julius Cæsar Dictator	885	Cato Uicentius killed himself 243. more carefull of his Soldiers than of himself. ib.	356	Cato being a boy, very inquisitive of his Teachers	30	Cato the elder his severity	356	Cato the elder his own image made	39	Cato the younger his upright dea- ling against Murena	200	A Cat, why hee symbolizeth the Moon	1068	Carulus Luctatius his Apoph- thegms	561	Cauding Furæ	743	Cause, what it is	666	Cauls of three forts	ib.	Cause efficient, chief	ib.	Cause	ib.
---	-----	--	-----	---	-----	--------------------------	-----	------------------	-----	----------	-----	------------------	-----	---------------------------	-----	--	-----	--	--	-----	---	-----	----------------------	-----	---	-----	----------------------	-----	------------------------------	-----	--	-----	--	------	----------------------------	-----	------------	-----	---	-----	-----------------------------------	------	----------------------	-----	--------------------	-----	-----------------------	-----	---------------------------	-----	-----------------------------------	----------------------------	---------------------------------	-----	---	-----	---	-----	---	----	-----------------------------	-----	--------------------------------------	----	--	-----	--	------	--	-----	--------------	-----	-------------------	-----	----------------------	-----	------------------------	-----	-------	-----

C	Abirichus Cyamistos 998 killed by Thcopompus.	ib.	Cabiri	546	Cabbas or Galba, a bawd	933	and merry buffon withall	ib.	Cacias the wind gathereth cloud.	157	Cæcilius Metellus Macedonicus, his rare felicity	518	Cæcilius Metellus his apo- thegms	359	Cænia, that is to say, A supper, whereof derived	636	Cæneus the Lapith	203. 865	Cæpio and Cato Brethren, agree well together	153	Cæpion an ancient Musician.	1320	Cæsar commended by Cicero for erecting again the statues of Pompeius. 199. hee made head against Mar. Crassus.	516	C. Cæsar his apophthegms	363	he putteth away his wife Pom- peia.	ibid.	Caius and Caiæ	793	Caiæ Cæcilia a virtuous & beau- tiful Lady, her brazen image in the temple of Sanctus.	74	Cakes of Samos	503	Calamarius fish forceth with tem- pest	825	Calamoboa, why Antipater was so called	171	Calauria, what place	732	Calbia a cruel woman burned quick	405	Calendæ. See Kalendæ.	405	Callicles answer	332	Callicrates	94	Callicratidas his Apophthegms	378. his death	ib.	Callimachus stood slain upon his feet	741	Callimici, a surname of certain Princes.	1139	Calliope the Muse	652
---	--	-----	--------	-----	-------------------------	-----	--------------------------	-----	----------------------------------	-----	---	-----	--------------------------------------	-----	---	-----	-------------------	----------	---	-----	-----------------------------	------	---	-----	--------------------------	-----	--	-------	----------------	-----	--	----	----------------	-----	---	-----	---	-----	----------------------	-----	--------------------------------------	-----	-----------------------	-----	------------------	-----	-------------	----	-------------------------------	----------------	-----	--	-----	---	------	-------------------	-----

## THE TABLE.

<i>Causes materiall and efficient.</i>	<i>their names, and why so called.</i>	<i>Cholera the disease</i>	640
<i>Cecrops why said to have a double face</i>	197	<i>Chebr youth ought to suppress</i>	10.
<i>Celænz a City in Phrygia</i>	364	<i>the wheistone of fortune</i>	36
<i>Celæus a great House-keeper.</i>	742	<i>Choruphis a Prophet in Memphis</i>	983. 1051
<i>Censurs at Rome, if one died, other gave up their places.</i>	579	<i>Chresinosyne</i>	1104
<i>what first work they undertook after they were sworn</i>	722	<i>Chrestos, what it signifies</i>	728
<i>their charge.</i>	722	<i>Chrythologos who it is</i>	728
<i>Centaures whence they come.</i>	723	<i>Chromaticke Musick</i>	623
<i>Centaury the herb</i>	469	<i>Chrylantas commended by Cyrus for sparing to kill his enemy.</i>	706
<i>Ceraunophoros, an image representing King Alexander.</i>	911	<i>Chryseis</i>	29
<i>Cerberus</i>	721	<i>Chryssippus taxed for nice subtilty</i>	34
<i>Cercaphus</i>	733	<i>Chryssippus his contradictory opinions. 867. to what purpose born</i>	882
<i>Cercopres</i>	81	<i>Chryssippus brought in a superfluous plurality of virtues. 54 his statue and the Epigram to it.</i>	866
<i>Cerdous what God</i>	127	<i>Chthonie, what Demon.</i>	130
<i>Ceres differeth from Proserpina.</i>	561	<i>Church robber detected by his tongue</i>	166
<i>Cerona what composition</i>	551	<i>Cicero his scoff. 544. noted for praising himself</i>	249
<i>Ceres worshipped in the same temple with Neptune</i>	580	<i>Cicero his Apophthegms 362 the reason of his name. ib. he is not ashamed of it</i>	ib.
<i>Ceres surnamed Anysidora patronesse of agriculture</i>	553	<i>Cich people forbidden to be eaten.</i>	721.
<i>Ceres Galligenia</i>	734	<i>their detraction in Greek</i>	ib.
<i>Chiron how he altered the prospect of Chironia</i>	113	<i>Cidre, what drink</i>	562
<i>Chabrias his Apophthegms</i>	346	<i>Cimon incestuous at first, proved a good Ruler.</i>	447
<i>Chalcedonian dames their modesty</i>	739	<i>Cimon why blamed</i>	288
<i>Chalcitis, a mineral medicinable.</i>	572	<i>Cimmerians believe there is no sun</i>	219
<i>Chalcedrye</i>	584	<i>Cinesias how he rebuked the Poet Timotheus.</i>	23. 622
<i>Chaldeans, what they think of the Gods</i>	1063	<i>Cinifones</i>	976
<i>Chameleon change his colour upon fear</i>	800	<i>Cinna stoned to death</i>	748
<i>Change in States difficult &amp; dangerous</i>	286. 288	<i>Cio women their virtuous all and chastity</i>	404
<i>Chaos</i>	529. 819. 844	<i>Circle</i>	837
<i>whereof derived, and what it signifies</i>	810. 1058	<i>The Cirque Flaminius why so called</i>	714
<i>Charadrius, a bird curing jaundice</i>	593	<i>Cleanthes did grind at the mill.</i>	235
<i>Chares, a personable man</i>	320	<i>Cleanthes thought that the heaven stood still and the earth was void</i>	948
<i>Charicles &amp; Antiochus how they parted their Fathers goods.</i>	794	<i>Cleanthes hard to learn. 52. noted for playing with Homers verses 34. his contradiction.</i>	867
<i>Charidotes the surname of Mercury</i>	740	<i>Cleanthes and Chryssippus contradictory to themselves</i>	866
<i>Charilla</i>	730	<i>Cleanthes and Anaximenes praised</i>	1071. 794
<i>Charillus his Apophthegms.</i>	386. 348		
<i>Charillus an infant, protected by his nurse Lycurgus</i>	1039		
<i>Charites or Graces, what were</i>			

## THE TABLE.

<i>Bised to correct Poeticall verses by change of some words</i>	36	<i>Clitus his vain glory.</i>	1038
<i>Clearchus his countenance encouraged his souldiers.</i>	90.	<i>Conscience among the Egyptians.</i>	942
<i>to ansterity. 530. a Tyrant.</i>	243.	<i>Conscience a sufficient witness.</i>	133
<i>his insolent pride.</i>	1040	<i>Conscience clear a singular joy.</i>	108
<i>Clearchus the Philosopher contemporary Aristotle Junior, about the Moons face.</i>	947	<i>Peace of Conscience a sovereign joy.</i>	495
<i>Clemency what it is.</i>	87	<i>Consualia a festivall day at Rome.</i>	66
<i>Cleobis and Biton kind to their Mother. 426. deemed by Solon happy.</i>	79	<i>Consular place at the board honorable. 529. the reasons why</i>	ib.
<i>Cleobuline a studious and virtuous damoiselle, named also Eunimilis.</i>	270	<i>Consuls at Rome, when first installed. 701. not admitted to triumphall feasts.</i>	718
<i>Cleobulus, usurped the name of a sage, and was none indeed.</i>	278	<i>Consultation of serious matters at the Table and Wine</i>	624
<i>Cleodemus a Physician.</i>	275	<i>Contentment of mind in poor Crates the Philosopher.</i>	122
<i>Cleomachus the Thebanian his death. 934. his Sepulcher.</i>	934	<i>Continence and temperance how they differ.</i>	57
<i>Cleombrotus the son of Paufanias, his apophthegm.</i>	378	<i>Continency in beasts compared with the chastity of men and women.</i>	428
<i>Cleombrotus a great Traveller.</i>	1075	<i>Contingent how defined.</i>	860
<i>Cleomenes the sonne of Anaxandrides his Apophthegms.</i>	349.	<i>Contradictions of Stoick Philosophers.</i>	865. 866
<i>349. punished for his perjury and treachery.</i>	ib.	<i>Contulius the Son of Florentia</i>	749
<i>Cleomenes repelled from the walls of Argos by women.</i>	379	<i>Conus</i>	636
<i>Cleomenes the sonne of Cleombrotus his apophthegms.</i>	379	<i>Cophene, a young damoiselle saved the Megarians from being massacred. 401. married to Nymphæus.</i>	ib.
<i>Cleon being entred into government rejected all his former friends.</i>	295	<i>Coptos a City in Egypt why so called.</i>	1053
<i>Cleopatra. 519. banished and restored.</i>	524	<i>Corax alias Collocidas. 453 murdered Archilochus.</i>	ib.
<i>A Cleopdyre.</i>	687	<i>Comedian condemned by the Athenians.</i>	807
<i>Climacides and Colacides what women</i>	71	<i>Comedia Vetus banished out of feasts.</i>	622
<i>Clio. 652. wherein employed.</i>	654	<i>Comedia Nova commended at banquets.</i>	ib.
<i>Clitomachus the Grammarian could abide no amatorious matters.</i>	620	<i>Company of friends at meales commended.</i>	608
<i>Clelia her virtuous deed. 404. highly honored by k. Portena.</i>	405	<i>Company bad, children must avoid</i>	12
<i>Clonas an ancient Musician.</i>	1033	<i>Comparatives used for positives.</i>	591
<i>Clotho</i>	553. 859	<i>Conception how it cometh.</i>	682
<i>Clotho her function. 969. what she is.</i>	994	<i>Conception of children.</i>	181
<i>Clouds how engendered.</i>	678	<i>Concordance of Poetic and Philosophy.</i>	496
<i>Clusia flang her self from an high Tower.</i>	745	<i>Conflagration of the world.</i>	661
<i>Clysters commended.</i>	513.	<i>Conipodes who they be.</i>	727
<i>first devised by the bird Ibis.</i>	1071. 794	<i>Conjunctions, a part of speech not much misused.</i>	842
		<i>Conjunction of man and wife why</i>	ib.

# THE TABLE.

# The Table.

rathes ten ounces, that is to  
 say, about a pint.  
 Coys a Prince given to anger,  
 how he restrained it. 333  
 Covenants: what manner of  
 self. 137  
 Council of State in Lacedæmon  
 how called. 323  
 the law of native Country surpa-  
 sed all others. 346  
 Who voluntary left their own  
 Countries. 227  
 Native Country called Mater.  
 325  
 Crædaphoria what feast. 584  
 Crædiar what time of song.  
 1019  
 Cramp-fish Torpedo how subtilis.  
 496  
 Cranes what order they keep in  
 flying. 787  
 Crantor his opinion as touching  
 the soul of the world. 843  
 M. Cræstus why he was said to  
 carry by on his back. 715  
 Cræstus bitterly taunted and  
 checked Donatius 197. ac-  
 cused for incontinency. 198  
 Crætaïadas. 732  
 Crates his treacherous part with  
 Orgallus. 314. he is put to death.  
 314  
 Crates the philosopher joyeth in  
 his poverty. 122. called Thi-  
 rapæuticæ. 548. his epi-  
 gram opposed to Sardapapulus  
 his epistaph. 254. he for-  
 sook the world. 237. his excla-  
 mation against negligent fa-  
 thers in the education of chil-  
 dren. 5  
 Crætevas why he killed Archelaus.  
 943  
 Against importunate Cravers.  
 139  
 Credit in a City won at the first  
 and suddenly. 294  
 Creteins his honest carriage to his  
 concurrent Heracles for the  
 god of the Commonwealth. 298  
 Creteus what he added to Musick.  
 944  
 Criffon the Himeræan, a flatterer.  
 79  
 Crætolaus killed his Sister Demo-  
 doce. 746  
 Cræcædille resembled God, and  
 honoured by the Egyptians.  
 1070  
 Cræcædiles tame and familiar.  
 785. 792. their manner of breed-  
 ing and their foreknowledge.  
 801

Cræsus erected the statue of his  
 woman Rakei in beaten Gold.  
 473  
 the Croymonian fow. 467  
 Crores of Barbary, how crasy  
 they be. 786  
 Crores age. 1080  
 Crasly in men whence it arose.  
 779  
 Crasly in killing brute beasts  
 for our food, condemned.  
 472  
 Cræstias the hero. 401  
 Cræstians conspire against the  
 Melians. 401  
 Cæcæ. 622. how to be doubted.  
 619  
 Cæthin-seed to be sown with  
 curra. 611  
 Cupid or love, highly honoured by  
 the Thespians. 914  
 Curiosity fostereth anger mix-  
 ed with envy and malice.  
 109  
 Curious persons ought to look into  
 themselves. 111  
 Against Curiosity the apophthegm  
 of an Egyptian. 112  
 Curious folk wherein they love to  
 intermeddle. 112  
 Curiosity in other mens matters  
 how to be avoided. 113  
 Manius Curcius his Apoph-  
 thegms. 352  
 Curcius a Roman Knight. 743  
 he despoileth his own daughter  
 Cyane. 744  
 Cattle-fish, how crasy. 799  
 Cyanippus killed himself. 755  
 Cybele the great Mother of the  
 gods. 921  
 Cydippe. 737  
 Cydnus the river, of what virtue  
 the water is. 193  
 Cylindre. 837  
 Cynegeyus lost both his hands.  
 742  
 Cynecias the Poet. 89  
 Cynofarges at Athens. 906  
 Cyon the dog-star, representeth his.  
 1055  
 Cyphi the composition, of what  
 and how many ingredients it  
 consisteth. 1073  
 Cyphi how the Egyptians use  
 it, when it is burnt for per-  
 fume. ib.  
 Cypellus miraculously saved. 284  
 how he took that name.  
 ibid.  
 Cyrenais philosopher. 914  
 Cyrus banished the sight of fair  
 Panthea. 34. 117. beloved of  
 the Persians. 332. how he ex-  
 ercised himself with his play-  
 feres 171. his apophthegms.  
 332  
 Cyrus the younger his policy to win  
 the Lacedæmonians unto him.  
 332

## D

Demons, how long they  
 live. 1080. sundry sorts  
 of them, and their divers offices.  
 1082  
 Demons of what nature they be.  
 1080  
 Demons who they be. 996. of  
 what nature. 1056  
 Demons about the Moon.  
 965  
 Demons how they speak with  
 men. 994  
 Demons. 665  
 The attribute Demoniæus how  
 Homer useth. 1056  
 Demons of sundry kinds. 120  
 Demons twain allotted to every  
 one of us. 120  
 Day at Rome began at midnight.  
 720  
 Daiphantus. 399  
 Dætes what reports in Homer.  
 557. why so called. ib.  
 Dætes what manner of drinking.  
 217  
 Dætes who they were. ib.  
 Dætes of Rome debarred from  
 riding in Coches. 711. put  
 no cookery, nor grinding of  
 corn. 720  
 Dæmidas his apophthegm. 375  
 Dæmis his apophthegm. 375  
 Dæmocrates an impudent jester.  
 291  
 Dæmonidas his apophthegm.  
 340. 375  
 Dæmoteles murdered. 739  
 Dærius father of Xerxes, hated  
 himself. 324. his apoph-  
 thegms. 332. heremitted cer-  
 tain taxes imposed upon his  
 subject. ib.  
 Dærius fortunes minion. 1049  
 Dærius came up of nothing. ib.  
 Dærius his commendation of King  
 Alexander. 1041  
 Dærius the fenne of Hyflasper,  
 how he attained to the Crown.  
 1042  
 Darknesse whether it be  
 visible. 685  
 Darknesse about the oak what it  
 meaneth. 732  
 Darnell

Darnell seeds forbidden in fires for Debe a fime in Persia  
 234  
 Decolique warre raised by Alci-  
 biades 345  
 Demetreioi, why the dead are  
 called 964  
 Demetrius his vaine glory 1040  
 Decias vowed himselfe for his  
 army 246  
 Decius cared not for  
 Democritus what is 771  
 Democritus and her daughters  
 their wofull end 779  
 Democritus studious in search-  
 ing the causes of things 499  
 Democritus commended 1000  
 Democritus the orator never  
 drank wine 649  
 Democritus his opinion as touching  
 Atomes 910  
 Democritus a brave captain 1012  
 Demodorus an ancient Musici-  
 an 1018  
 Democritus, sapper, whereof deriv'd  
 Democritus the orator never  
 drank wine 649  
 Democritus his opinion as touching  
 Atomes 910  
 Democritus a brave captain 1012  
 Demodorus an ancient Musici-  
 an 1018  
 Democritus, sapper, whereof deriv'd  
 Democritus the orator never  
 drank wine 649  
 Democritus his opinion as touching  
 Atomes 910  
 Democritus a brave captain 1012  
 Demodorus an ancient Musici-  
 an 1018  
 Democritus, sapper, whereof deriv'd  
 Democritus the orator never  
 drank wine 649  
 Democritus his opinion as touching  
 Atomes 910  
 Democritus a brave captain 1012  
 Demodorus an ancient Musici-  
 an 1018  
 Democritus, sapper, whereof deriv'd  
 Democritus the orator never  
 drank wine 649  
 Democritus his opinion as touching  
 Atomes 910  
 Democritus a brave captain 1012  
 Demodorus an ancient Musici-  
 an 1018  
 Democritus, sapper, whereof deriv'd  
 Democritus the orator never  
 drank wine 649  
 Democritus his opinion as touching  
 Atomes 910  
 Democritus a brave captain 1012  
 Demodorus an ancient Musici-  
 an 1018  
 Democritus, sapper, whereof deriv'd  
 Democritus the orator never  
 drank wine 649  
 Democritus his opinion as touching  
 Atomes 910  
 Democritus a brave captain 1012  
 Demodorus an ancient Musici-  
 an 1018  
 Democritus, sapper, whereof deriv'd  
 Democritus the orator never  
 drank wine 649  
 Democritus his opinion as touching  
 Atomes 910  
 Democritus a brave captain 1012  
 Demodorus an ancient Musici-  
 an 1018  
 Democritus, sapper, whereof deriv'd  
 Democritus the orator never  
 drank wine 649  
 Democritus his opinion as touching  
 Atomes 910  
 Democritus a brave captain 1012  
 Demodorus an ancient Musici-  
 an 1018  
 Democritus, sapper, whereof deriv'd  
 Democritus the orator never  
 drank wine 649  
 Democritus his opinion as touching  
 Atomes 910  
 Democritus a brave captain 1012  
 Demodorus an ancient Musici-  
 an 1018  
 Democritus, sapper, whereof deriv'd  
 Democritus the orator never  
 drank wine 649  
 Democritus his opinion as touching  
 Atomes 910  
 Democritus a brave captain 1012  
 Demodorus an ancient Musici-  
 an 1018  
 Democritus, sapper, whereof deriv'd  
 Democritus the orator never  
 drank wine 649  
 Democritus his opinion as touching  
 Atomes 910  
 Democritus a brave captain 1012  
 Demodorus an ancient Musici-  
 an 1018  
 Democritus, sapper, whereof deriv'd  
 Democritus the orator never  
 drank wine 649  
 Democritus his opinion as touching  
 Atomes 910  
 Democritus a brave captain 1012  
 Demodorus an ancient Musici-  
 an 1018  
 Democritus, sapper, whereof deriv'd  
 Democritus the orator never  
 drank wine 649  
 Democritus his opinion as touching  
 Atomes 910  
 Democritus a brave captain 1012  
 Demodorus an ancient Musici-  
 an 1018  
 Democritus, sapper, whereof deriv'd  
 Democritus the orator never  
 drank wine 649  
 Democritus his opinion as touching  
 Atomes 910  
 Democritus a brave captain 1012  
 Demodorus an ancient Musici-  
 an 1018  
 Democritus, sapper, whereof deriv'd  
 Democritus the orator never  
 drank wine 649  
 Democritus his opinion as touching  
 Atomes 910  
 Democritus a brave captain 1012  
 Demodorus an ancient Musici-  
 an 1018  
 Democritus, sapper, whereof deriv'd  
 Democritus the orator never  
 drank wine 649  
 Democritus his opinion as touching  
 Atomes 910  
 Democritus a brave captain 1012  
 Demodorus an ancient Musici-  
 an 1018  
 Democritus, sapper, whereof deriv'd  
 Democritus the orator never  
 drank wine 649  
 Democritus his opinion as touching  
 Atomes 910  
 Democritus a brave captain 1012  
 Demodorus an ancient Musici-  
 an 1018  
 Democritus, sapper, whereof deriv'd  
 Democritus the orator never  
 drank wine 649  
 Democritus his opinion as touching  
 Atomes 910  
 Democritus a brave captain 1012  
 Demodorus an ancient Musici-  
 an 1018  
 Democritus, sapper, whereof deriv'd  
 Democritus the orator never  
 drank wine 649  
 Democritus his opinion as touching  
 Atomes 910  
 Democritus a brave captain 1012  
 Demodorus an ancient Musici-  
 an 1018  
 Democritus, sapper, whereof deriv'd  
 Democritus the orator never  
 drank wine 649  
 Democritus his opinion as touching  
 Atomes 910  
 Democritus a brave captain 1012  
 Demodorus an ancient Musici-  
 an 1018  
 Democritus, sapper, whereof deriv'd  
 Democritus the orator never  
 drank wine 649  
 Democritus his opinion as touching  
 Atomes 910  
 Democritus a brave captain 1012  
 Demodorus an ancient Musici-  
 an 1018  
 Democritus, sapper, whereof deriv'd  
 Democritus the orator never  
 drank wine 649  
 Democritus his opinion as touching  
 Atomes 910  
 Democritus a brave captain 1012  
 Demodorus an ancient Musici-  
 an 1018  
 Democritus, sapper, whereof deriv'd  
 Democritus the orator never  
 drank wine 649  
 Democritus his opinion as touching  
 Atomes 910  
 Democritus a brave captain 1012  
 Demodorus an ancient Musici-  
 an 1018  
 Democritus, sapper, whereof deriv'd  
 Democritus the orator never  
 drank wine 649  
 Democritus his opinion as touching  
 Atomes 910  
 Democritus a brave captain 1012  
 Demodorus an ancient Musici-  
 an 1018  
 Democritus, sapper, whereof deriv'd  
 Democritus the orator never  
 drank wine 649  
 Democritus his opinion as touching  
 Atomes 910  
 Democritus a brave captain 1012  
 Demodorus an ancient Musici-  
 an 1018  
 Democritus, sapper, whereof deriv'd  
 Democritus the orator never  
 drank wine 649  
 Democritus his opinion as touching  
 Atomes 910  
 Democritus a brave captain 1012  
 Demodorus an ancient Musici-  
 an 1018  
 Democritus, sapper, whereof deriv'd  
 Democritus the orator never  
 drank wine 649  
 Democritus his opinion as touching  
 Atomes 910  
 Democritus a brave captain 1012  
 Demodorus an ancient Musici-  
 an 1018  
 Democritus, sapper, whereof deriv'd  
 Democritus the orator never  
 drank wine 649  
 Democritus his opinion as touching  
 Atomes 910  
 Democritus a brave captain 1012  
 Demodorus an ancient Musici-  
 an 1018  
 Democritus, sapper, whereof deriv'd  
 Democritus the orator never  
 drank wine 649  
 Democritus his opinion as touching  
 Atomes 910  
 Democritus a brave captain 1012  
 Demodorus an ancient Musici-  
 an 1018  
 Democritus, sapper, whereof deriv'd  
 Democritus the orator never  
 drank wine 649  
 Democritus his opinion as touching  
 Atomes 910  
 Democritus a brave captain 1012  
 Demodorus an ancient Musici-  
 an 1018  
 Democritus, sapper, whereof deriv'd  
 Democritus the orator never  
 drank wine 649  
 Democritus his opinion as touching  
 Atomes 910  
 Democritus a brave captain 1012  
 Demodorus an ancient Musici-  
 an 1018  
 Democritus, sapper, whereof deriv'd  
 Democritus the orator never  
 drank wine 649  
 Democritus his opinion as touching  
 Atomes 910  
 Democritus a brave captain 1012  
 Demodorus an ancient Musici-  
 an 1018  
 Democritus, sapper, whereof deriv'd  
 Democritus the orator never  
 drank wine 649  
 Democritus his opinion as touching  
 Atomes 910  
 Democritus a brave captain 1012  
 Demodorus an ancient Musici-  
 an 1018  
 Democritus, sapper, whereof deriv'd  
 Democritus the orator never  
 drank wine 649  
 Democritus his opinion as touching  
 Atomes 910  
 Democritus a brave captain 1012  
 Demodorus an ancient Musici-  
 an 1018  
 Democritus, sapper, whereof deriv'd  
 Democritus the orator never  
 drank wine 649  
 Democritus his opinion as touching  
 Atomes 910  
 Democritus a brave captain 1012  
 Demodorus an ancient Musici-  
 an 1018  
 Democritus, sapper, whereof deriv'd  
 Democritus the orator never  
 drank wine 649  
 Democritus his opinion as touching  
 Atomes 910  
 Democritus a brave captain 1012  
 Demodorus an ancient Musici-  
 an 1018  
 Democritus, sapper, whereof deriv'd  
 Democritus the orator never  
 drank wine 649  
 Democritus his opinion as touching  
 Atomes 910  
 Democritus a brave captain 1012  
 Demodorus an ancient Musici-  
 an 1018  
 Democritus, sapper, whereof deriv'd  
 Democritus the orator never  
 drank wine 649  
 Democritus his opinion as touching  
 Atomes 910  
 Democritus a brave captain 1012  
 Demodorus an ancient Musici-  
 an 1018  
 Democritus, sapper, whereof deriv'd  
 Democritus the orator never  
 drank wine 649  
 Democritus his opinion as touching  
 Atomes 910  
 Democritus a brave captain 1012  
 Demodorus an ancient Musici-  
 an 1018  
 Democritus, sapper, whereof deriv'd  
 Democritus the orator never  
 drank wine 649  
 Democritus his opinion as touching  
 Atomes 910  
 Democritus a brave captain 1012  
 Demodorus an ancient Musici-  
 an 1018  
 Democritus, sapper, whereof deriv'd  
 Democritus the orator never  
 drank wine 649  
 Democritus his opinion as touching  
 Atomes 910  
 Democritus a brave captain 1012  
 Demodorus an ancient Musici-  
 an 1018  
 Democritus, sapper, whereof deriv'd  
 Democritus the orator never  
 drank wine 649  
 Democritus his opinion as touching  
 Atomes 910  
 Democritus a brave captain 1012  
 Demodorus an ancient Musici-  
 an 1018  
 Democritus, sapper, whereof deriv'd  
 Democritus the orator never  
 drank wine 649  
 Democritus his opinion as touching  
 Atomes 910  
 Democritus a brave captain 1012  
 Demodorus an ancient Musici-  
 an 1018  
 Democritus, sapper, whereof deriv'd  
 Democritus the orator never  
 drank wine 649  
 Democritus his opinion as touching  
 Atomes 910  
 Democritus a brave captain 1012  
 Demodorus an ancient Musici-  
 an 1018  
 Democritus, sapper, whereof deriv'd  
 Democritus the orator never  
 drank wine 649  
 Democritus his opinion as touching  
 Atomes 910  
 Democritus a brave captain 1012  
 Demodorus an ancient Musici-  
 an 1018  
 Democritus, sapper, whereof deriv'd  
 Democritus the orator never  
 drank wine 649  
 Democritus his opinion as touching  
 Atomes 910  
 Democritus a brave captain 1012  
 Demodorus an ancient Musici-  
 an 1018  
 Democritus, sapper, whereof deriv'd  
 Democritus the orator never  
 drank wine 649  
 Democritus his opinion as touching  
 Atomes 910  
 Democritus a brave captain 1012  
 Demodorus an ancient Musici-  
 an 1018  
 Democritus, sapper, whereof deriv'd  
 Democritus the orator never  
 drank wine 649  
 Democritus his opinion as touching  
 Atomes 910  
 Democritus a brave captain 1012  
 Demodorus an ancient Musici-  
 an 1018  
 Democritus, sapper, whereof deriv'd  
 Democritus the orator never  
 drank wine 649  
 Democritus his opinion as touching  
 Atomes 910  
 Democritus a brave captain 1012  
 Demodorus an ancient Musici-  
 an 1018  
 Democritus, sapper, whereof deriv'd  
 Democritus the orator never  
 drank wine 649  
 Democritus his opinion as touching  
 Atomes 910  
 Democritus a brave captain 1012  
 Demodorus an ancient Musici-  
 an 1018  
 Democritus, sapper, whereof deriv'd  
 Democritus the orator never  
 drank wine 649  
 Democritus his opinion as touching  
 Atomes 910  
 Democritus a brave captain 1012  
 Demodorus an ancient Musici-  
 an 1018  
 Democritus, sapper, whereof deriv'd  
 Democritus the orator never  
 drank wine 649  
 Democritus his opinion as touching  
 Atomes 910  
 Democritus a brave captain 1012  
 Demodorus an ancient Musici-  
 an 1018  
 Democritus, sapper, whereof deriv'd  
 Democritus the orator never  
 drank wine 649  
 Democritus his opinion as touching  
 Atomes 910  
 Democritus a brave captain 1012  
 Demodorus an ancient Musici-  
 an 1018  
 Democritus, sapper, whereof deriv'd  
 Democritus the orator never  
 drank wine 649  
 Democritus his opinion as touching  
 Atomes 910  
 Democritus a brave captain 1012  
 Demodorus an ancient Musici-  
 an 1018  
 Democritus, sapper, whereof deriv'd  
 Democritus the orator never  
 drank wine 649  
 Democritus his opinion as touching  
 Atomes 910  
 Democritus a brave captain 1012  
 Demodorus an ancient Musici-  
 an 1018  
 Democritus, sapper, whereof deriv'd  
 Democritus the orator never  
 drank wine 649  
 Democritus his opinion as touching  
 Atomes 910  
 Democritus a brave captain 1012  
 Demodorus an ancient Musici-  
 an 1018  
 Democritus, sapper, whereof deriv'd  
 Democritus the orator never  
 drank wine 649  
 Democritus his opinion as touching  
 Atomes 910  
 Democritus a brave captain 1012  
 Demodorus an ancient Musici-  
 an 1018  
 Democritus, sapper, whereof deriv'd  
 Democritus the orator never  
 drank wine 649  
 Democritus his opinion as touching  
 Atomes 910  
 Democritus a brave captain 1012  
 Demodorus an ancient Musici-  
 an 1018  
 Democritus, sapper, whereof deriv'd  
 Democritus the orator never  
 drank wine 649  
 Democritus his opinion as touching  
 Atomes 910  
 Democritus a brave captain 1012  
 Demodorus an ancient Musici-  
 an 1018  
 Democritus, sapper, whereof deriv'd  
 Democritus the orator never  
 drank wine 649  
 Democritus his opinion as touching  
 Atomes 910  
 Democritus a brave captain 1012  
 Demodorus an ancient Musici-  
 an 1018  
 Democritus, sapper, whereof deriv'd  
 Democritus the orator never  
 drank wine 649  
 Democritus his opinion as touching  
 Atomes 910  
 Democritus a brave captain 1012  
 Demodorus an ancient Musici-  
 an 1018  
 Democritus, sapper, whereof deriv'd  
 Democritus the orator never  
 drank wine 649  
 Democritus his opinion as touching  
 Atomes 910  
 Democritus a brave captain 1012  
 Demodorus an ancient Musici-  
 an 1018  
 Democritus, sapper, whereof deriv'd  
 Democritus the orator never  
 drank wine 649  
 Democritus his opinion as touching  
 Atomes 910  
 Democritus a brave captain 1012  
 Demodorus an ancient Musici-  
 an 1018  
 Democritus, sapper, whereof deriv'd  
 Democritus the orator never  
 drank wine 649  
 Democritus his opinion as touching  
 Atomes 910  
 Democritus a brave captain 1012  
 Demodorus an ancient Musici-  
 an 1018  
 Democritus, sapper, whereof deriv'd  
 Democritus the orator never  
 drank wine 649  
 Democritus his opinion as touching  
 Atomes 910  
 Democritus a brave captain 1012  
 Demodorus an ancient Musici-  
 an 1018  
 Democritus, sapper, whereof deriv'd  
 Democritus the orator never  
 drank wine 649  
 Democritus his opinion as touching  
 Atomes 910  
 Democritus a brave captain 1012  
 Demodorus an ancient Musici-  
 an 1018  
 Democritus, sapper, whereof deriv'd  
 Democritus the orator never  
 drank wine 649  
 Democritus his opinion as touching  
 Atomes 910  
 Democritus a brave captain 1012  
 Demodorus an ancient Musici-  
 an 1018  
 Democritus, sapper, whereof deriv'd  
 Democritus the orator never  
 drank wine 649  
 Democritus his opinion as touching  
 Atomes 910  
 Democritus a brave captain 1012  
 Demodorus an ancient Musici-  
 an 1018  
 Democritus, sapper, whereof deriv'd  
 Democritus the orator never  
 drank wine 649  
 Democritus his opinion as touching  
 Atomes 910  
 Democritus a brave captain 1012  
 Demodorus an ancient Musici-  
 an 1018  
 Democritus, sapper, whereof deriv'd  
 Democritus the orator never  
 drank wine 649  
 Democritus his opinion as touching  
 Atomes 910  
 Democritus a brave captain 1012  
 Demodorus an ancient Musici-  
 an 1018  
 Democritus, sapper, whereof deriv'd  
 Democritus the orator never  
 drank wine 649  
 Democritus his opinion as touching  
 Atomes 910  
 Democritus a brave captain 1012  
 Demodorus an ancient Musici-  
 an 1018  
 Democritus, sapper, whereof deriv'd  
 Democritus the orator never  
 drank wine 649  
 Democritus his opinion as touching  
 Atomes 910  
 Democritus a brave captain 1012  
 Demodorus an ancient Musici-  
 an 1018  
 Democritus, sapper, whereof deriv'd  
 Democritus the orator never  
 drank wine 649  
 Democritus his opinion as touching  
 Atomes 910  
 Democritus a brave captain 1012  
 Demodorus an ancient Musici-  
 an 1018  
 Democritus, sapper, whereof deriv'd  
 Democritus the orator never  
 drank wine 649  
 Democritus his opinion as touching  
 Atomes 910  
 Democritus a brave captain 1012  
 Demodorus an ancient Musici-  
 an 1018  
 Democritus, sapper, whereof deriv'd  
 Democritus the orator never  
 drank wine 649  
 Democritus his opinion as touching  
 Atomes 910  
 Democritus a brave captain 1012  
 Demodorus an ancient Musici-  
 an 1018  
 Democritus, sapper, whereof deriv'd  
 Democritus the orator never  
 drank wine 649  
 Democritus his opinion as touching  
 Atomes 910  
 Democritus a brave captain 1012  
 Demodorus an ancient Musici-  
 an 1018  
 Democritus, sapper, whereof deriv'd  
 Democritus the orator never  
 drank wine 649  
 Democritus his opinion as touching  
 Atomes 910  
 Democritus a brave captain 1012  
 Demodorus an ancient Musici-  
 an 1018  
 Democritus, sapper, whereof deriv'd  
 Democritus the orator never  
 drank wine 649  
 Democritus his opinion as touching  
 Atomes 910  
 Democritus a brave captain 1012  
 Demodorus an ancient Musici-  
 an 1018  
 Democritus, sapper, whereof deriv'd  
 Democritus the orator never  
 drank wine 649  
 Democritus his opinion as touching  
 Atomes 910  
 Democritus a brave captain 1012  
 Demodorus an ancient Musici-  
 an 1018  
 Democritus, sapper, whereof deriv'd  
 Democritus the orator never  
 drank wine 649  
 Democritus his opinion as touching  
 Atomes 910  
 Democritus a brave captain 1012  
 Demodorus an ancient Musici-  
 an 1018  
 Democritus, sapper, whereof deriv'd  
 Democritus the orator never  
 drank wine 649  
 Democritus his opinion as touching  
 Atomes 910  
 Democritus a brave captain 1012  
 Demodorus an ancient Musici-  
 an 1018  
 Democritus, sapper, whereof deriv'd  
 Democritus the orator never  
 drank wine 649  
 Democritus his opinion as touching  
 Atomes 910  
 Democritus a brave captain 1012  
 Demodorus an ancient Musici-  
 an 1018  
 Democritus, sapper, whereof deriv'd  
 Democritus the orator never  
 drank wine 649  
 Democritus his opinion as touching  
 Atomes 910  
 Democritus a brave captain 1012  
 Demodorus an ancient Musici-  
 an 1018  
 Democritus, sapper, whereof deriv'd  
 Democritus the orator never  
 drank wine 649  
 Democritus his opinion as touching  
 Atomes 910  
 Democritus a brave captain 1012  
 Demodorus an ancient Musici-  
 an 1018  
 Democritus, sapper, whereof deriv'd  
 Democritus the orator never  
 drank wine 649  
 Democritus his opinion as touching  
 Atomes 910  
 Democritus a brave captain 1012  
 Demodorus an ancient Musici-  
 an 1018  
 Democritus, sapper, whereof deriv'd  
 Democritus the orator never  
 drank wine 649  
 Democritus his opinion as touching  
 Atomes 910  
 Democritus a brave captain 1012  
 Demodorus an ancient Musici-  
 an 1018  
 Democritus, sapper, whereof deriv'd  
 Democritus the orator never  
 drank wine 649  
 Democritus his opinion as touching  
 Atomes 910  
 Democritus a brave captain 1012  
 Demodorus an ancient Musici-  
 an 1018  
 Democritus, sapper, whereof deriv'd  
 Democritus the orator never  
 drank wine 649  
 Democritus his opinion as touching  
 Atomes 910  
 Democritus a brave captain 1012  
 Demodorus an ancient Musici-  
 an 1018  
 Democritus, sapper, whereof deriv'd  
 Democritus the orator never  
 drank wine 649  
 Democritus his opinion as touching  
 Atomes 910  
 Democritus a brave captain 1012  
 Demodorus an ancient Musici-  
 an 1018  
 Democritus, sapper, whereof deriv'd  
 Democritus the orator never  
 drank wine 649  
 Democritus his opinion as touching  
 Atomes 910  
 Democritus a brave captain 1012  
 Demodorus an ancient Musici-  
 an 1018  
 Democritus, sapper, whereof deriv'd  
 Democritus the orator never  
 drank wine 649  
 Democritus his opinion as touching  
 Atomes 910  
 Democritus a brave captain 1012  
 Demodorus an ancient Musici-  
 an 1018  
 Democritus, sapper, whereof deriv'd  
 Democritus the orator never  
 drank wine 649  
 Democritus his opinion as touching  
 Atomes 910  
 Democritus a brave captain 1012  
 Demodorus an ancient Musici-  
 an 1018  
 Democritus, sapper, whereof deriv'd  
 Democritus the orator never  
 drank wine 649  
 Democritus his opinion as touching  
 Atomes 910  
 Democritus a brave captain 1012  
 Demodorus an ancient Musici-  
 an 1018  
 Democritus, sapper, whereof deriv'd  
 Democritus the orator never  
 drank wine 649  
 Democritus his opinion as touching  
 Atomes 910  
 Democritus a brave captain 1012  
 Demodorus an ancient Musici-  
 an 1018  
 Democritus, sapper, whereof deriv'd  
 Democritus the orator never  
 drank wine 649  
 Democritus his opinion as touching  
 Atomes 910  
 Democritus a brave captain 1012  
 Demodorus an ancient Musici-  
 an 1018  
 Democritus, sapper, whereof deriv'd  
 Democritus the orator never  
 drank wine 649  
 Democritus his opinion as touching  
 Atomes 910  
 Democritus a brave captain 1012  
 Demodorus an ancient Musici-  
 an 1018  
 Democritus, sapper, whereof deriv'd  
 Democritus the orator never  
 drank wine 649  
 Democritus his opinion as touching  
 Atomes 910  
 Democritus a brave captain 1012



## The Table.

no	ibid	Diana but one 652 the same that	his speech to a younger with
Condemned and banished	ibid	the Moon 557 her attributes	a Taverner
Recalled home by a public de-	ibid	given by Timotheus 23 her	Diogenes the Cynick his answer
crece	ibid	temple within the Aventine	as touching his banishment
He fleeth and taketh Sanctuary	ibid	hills, why beautified with Cowes	224 he contemned slavery
	ibid	bornes	246
His answer as touching premedi-	ibid	Diana Chalceceus 375 fur-	Diogenes master to Antisthenes
ated speech 6 his name, with his	ibid	named Dictynna	209
own Epigram 766 his death ibid	ibid	Διωνυσίου how defined	546
His issue	ibid	Διαποσει, what symphony in Mu-	Diogenes rebuketh Sophocles
Honours done unto him after death	ibid	sick	about the mysteries of Ceres, his
	ibid	Διapranei, what symphony in Mu-	apophthegms as touching
He first made an oration with a	ibid	sicke	revenge of an emine 23 concern-
sword by his side 766 his ora-	ibid	Διapranei, in tempering wine and	ing filthy wantonnesse 875 1 his
tions	ibid	water	franke speech to King Philip
	ibid	Διαphantus his apophthegme	229
Surnamed Batalus for his riotous	ibid	Διατελλaron, what symphony in	Diogenetus fanstich Polycrite
life ib. scoffed at by Dioge-	ibid	Musicke	408
nes the Cynick 767 his tale	ibid	Διατελλaron in tempering wine	Dion how he took the death of
of theaffe and the shadow 767	ibid	water	his owne sonne 433 through
his apophthegme to Polus the	ibid	Διατονικη Musicke	foolish basfulness came to his
great actor	ibid	Διατριον in tempering wine and	death 136 his apophthegms
He studied his orations much ibid	ibid	water	336
how he took the death of his on-	ibid	Διωνυσιον	Dionysius See Denys
ly dambler	ibid	Διαιαρχια the citie perished	Dionysius Eleutheris
	ibid	Διαιαρχια	725
Denary or Ten, the perfection of	ibid	Διαιαρχια	Diocuri, two starres
numbers	ibid	Διαιαρχια	673
Deniall of unjust and unlawful	ibid	Διαιαρχια	Dioxippus rebuked by Dioge-
requests	ibid	Διαιαρχια	nes for his wandering and
Denys the Tyrant	ibid	Διαιαρχια	wanton etc 116 his opinion as
Denys of Sicily abused by flate-	ibid	Διαιαρχια	touching the passage of our
revsers 77 how he served amuse-	ibid	Διαιαρχια	meats and drinks
ment	ibid	Διαιαρχια	897
	ibid	Διαιαρχια	849
Denys the tyrants wife and chil-	ibid	Διαιαρχια	Discontentednesse in Alexander
dren cruelly abused by the Ita-	ibid	Διαιαρχια	the great
lians 311 his cruelty to Philoxe-	ibid	Διαιαρχια	121
nus the Poet	ibid	Διαιαρχια	Discourse of reason what it is
	ibid	Διαιαρχια	686
Denys the elder could not abide	ibid	Διαιαρχια	Diseases of a strange manner
idleness 325 how he named	ibid	Διαιαρχια	640
his three daughters 1039 his	ibid	Διαιαρχια	Diseases of the body which be
witty apophthegms 334 the	ibid	Διαιαρχια	worst
younger his apophthegms 335	ibid	Διαιαρχια	257
his apophthegms 1033 his safe	ibid	Διαιαρχια	Diseases of the soules worse than
nigardise to an excellent Musi-	ibid	Διαιαρχια	those of the body
cian 1035 his proud vain glory	ibid	Διαιαρχια	257
	ibid	Διαιαρχια	Diseases have their avatars, first
	ibid	Διαιαρχια	for forerunners
	ibid	Διαιαρχια	506
	ibid	Διαιαρχια	639
Dercillidas his apophthegme	ibid	Διαιαρχια	Diseases new how they come
	ibid	Διαιαρχια	639
Deris what Damon	ibid	Διαιαρχια	Diseases which were first
	ibid	Διαιαρχια	640
Defines three	ibid	Διαιαρχια	Dish of sowes papi
	ibid	Διαιαρχια	505
Destiny or fatall necessitie	ibid	Διαιαρχια	Dism or tenth of goods, why of-
	ibid	Διαιαρχια	ferred to Hercules
	ibid	Διαιαρχια	700
What it is 669 substance thereof	ibid	Διαιαρχια	Disputation, what manner of ex-
	ibid	Διαιαρχια	ercise
what it is	ibid	Διαιαρχια	508
Deucalion his deluge	ibid	Διαιαρχια	Dismutation after meales
	ibid	Διαιαρχια	511
Dexicreon a confeming Mount-	ibid	Διαιαρχια	Distances betwene Sun, Moon
banck for Merchaut-venturer	ibid	Διαιαρχια	950
	ibid	Διαιαρχια	Diogenes the Sinopian, a Philo-
	ibid	Διαιαρχια	sopher, abandoned the World
Diagoras or Melos	ibid	Διαιαρχια	1104 they sort well with Bac-
	ibid	Διαιαρχια	chus
Dialogues in Plato of two sorts	ibid	Διαιαρχια	1088
621 whether they ought to be	ibid	Διαιαρχια	Diversitie
rehearsed at supper time	ibid	Διαιαρχια	54
	ibid	Διαιαρχια	Divine what things be called
	ibid	Διαιαρχια	597
Dianes temple at Rome,	ibid	Διαιαρχια	Divine knowledge or Doctrine of
men do not enter into	ibid	Διαιαρχια	the gods seven-fold
	ibid	Διαιαρχια	663
	ibid	Διαιαρχια	Divine

## The Table.

Divine providence what it is	939	C. Domitius his apophthegm	355	Eare delights are dangerous	798
Divine providence denied by the Epicureans	492	he overthrew King Antiochus	ibid	Eare sports how to be used	611
Divine service most delectable	ibid	Dorian Musick commanded by Plato	1020	when to be used at feasts	622
Divine power author of no ill, nor subtill thereto	491	Dorians pray to have an ill bay harvest	825	Eares of children and young men how to be defended	47
Divination of many Kinds	688	Dorixenus who it is	731	Early eating condemned in all times	635
Divination by dreames	642	Cocke Doves squall their hens eggs	781	Earth whether it be the element of cold	818
Divination denied by the Epicurians	490	Dragon consecrated to Bacchus	573	Earth called Etia or Velta wherefore	920
Docane, what images they were	143	A Dragon enamoured of a young damosell	792	Earth by god not alwaies placed below	537
Doctrine and life ought to go together	865	who never Dreamed in all their life time	1098	Earth whether but one or more	679
Decadecron	836, 1086	Dreames to be considered in case of headb	503	Earth what prerogative it hath	1094
Dogs sacrificed by the Greeke in all expiations	715	Dreames how they come	688	what it is	679
Heracles 720 not allowed to come into the Castle of Athens	706	to be regarded	210	its situation	679
706 esteemed no cleane creatures	726	Dreames in Autumn little to be regarded	642	loosely	679
726 sacrificed to infernal gods and to Mars.	726	how to be observed in the progress of verine	210	Earth whether it move or no	680
Sea dogs how kind they be to their young ones	179, 800	Drink whether it passe through our lungs	609	Earthquake how oftened	634
Dog how subtill beis	786	the wagen of war	669	Earth corrupt water	634
Dogs their admirable qualities	790	Drinke which are to be taken heed of	504	it is causeth diversity of waters	634
a Dog discovers the murder of his master	ibid	Drinking leisurly moistneth the belly	609	Earth for the most part not inhabited	906
a Dog detects the murder of Heciodus	ibid	Drinke five or three but not four	570	Echemythia	111
Dogs gentle and courageous withall	791	Dromocleides a great states man in Athens	288	Echeneis a fish	554
an Indian dog of rare magnanimitie	791	Drunkennesse what persons it sootest afflicteth	537	how these flies a ship	555
a Dog counterfeited a part in a play	795	Drunkennesse is dotage	627	Echo how it is caused	687
Dogs crucified at Rome	524	Faults committed in Drunkennesse hardly punished	276	In Eclipses of the moon why they rung basons	965
a Dog saluted at King in Ethiopia	ibid	Half a drunke more brainfeist then those who are thorow drunke	569	Eclipses of the Sun	954
a Dog resembles Anubis	1062	Drunkennesse most to blame for imtemperate speech	160	Eclipses why more of the Moon then of the Sun	955
a Dog why so much honored in Egypt	1062	defined 160	joone brings age	the cause	956
Dogs why they pursue the stone that is thrown at them	821	Dryades, what Nymphs	921	Education of what power it is	5
a Dog why he resembles Mercutric	1051	Duality the author of disorder and of even numbers	1090	Eeles coming to land	794
Dolphin loving to mankind	283	Duplicity of the soul	54	Eeles bred without generation of male or female	511
615, 803 delighted in Musick	ibid	Dying is a kind of staining or infection	624	Egge or hen, whether was before	549
Dolphin spared by fishers	285	Dysopia what it is	134	Eggs resemble the principles of all things	549
a Dolphin saved a maidens life	1283	E		The Egge whereof came Caltor and Pollux	550
a Dolphin, the armes Vlysses bore in his shield	803	Eares give passage to verine to enter into young mens minds	43	E. signifieth the number five	1099
Dolphin how affectionate to a boy of Jafos	803	Eight resembleth the female	724	Er, written upon the temple at Delphi what it signifies	1098
Dolphin how crafty and hard to be caught		Er, in gold, in brasse, and in wood		Er, a stone	284
Dolphin in continuall motion		Er, as much as Eion		Er, of what force it is in logic	1101
		Er, is preferred before other letters			1106
					1107

### The Table.

**E**lephas the first auklike number Emulation that it is good 611 his valiant exploits abid  
724 Enalus enamoured of a virgin did his magnanimity 249  
**E**lephas figuratively both the frisk and fine ad for sacrifice 284 his apophthegms 350  
the vice of the olive 26 Encenima what it is 733 he could not abide fat and corpulence  
**E**lephas the city whereof it took the Encyclica what sciences 7 lent foulness abid  
name 750 Endome the name of a canticle his sobriety and frugality ibid  
**E**lephantolia a feast when instituted 399-73 Endimatia what dance 1024 defaced by the epicureans 923  
**E**lephas who they be 732 Engallynthi what they bee 1019 his apophthegm 512  
**E**leatra concubine to Deiotarus 1080 admired in commending himself 249  
50 In England or great Britain why Epaphus 106  
**E**legie whose invention 1225 men live long 695 Ephyppus 736  
**E**lements 4814 which be elements by enemies we may take profit 308 Ephori by whom brought into Sparta 241 grace by the Kings  
659, 663 25 of enemies how to be revenged 196  
**E**lements before elements 666 Emeterides 730 Epiali what feavers 132  
**E**leon 736 Entelechia 659 Entering of other things with the dead corps 495  
**E**lephas how they be prepared 786 No entering the reliques of tri-  
for fight 789 their umphous persons within the ci-  
**E**lephas docible 789 their umphous persons within the ci-  
wis, patience and mildnesse of Rome 717 Epicharm rebuked King Hiero 89  
790 Enthusiasme 1093 100 sharply 89  
**E**lephant of L. Porus how doubtful Enthusiasme 530 of sundry furies Epiceranis 683  
unto him ibid 932 what kinde of fury 931 Epicureans, enemies to policies,  
**E**lephas witty and loving to rhetorick and royall government 921  
their fellows 791 devious and Envy 876 Envy a cause of mean-  
religions ibid discontent 128 Epicurus honored by his favo-  
full of love and amorous, they can Envy among brethren 151 rites and seltaries 490  
abide no white garments 266 how it may be avoided 151 Epicures given wholly to pleasures  
**E**lephantiasis a disease not long Envy and hatred differ 192 488  
known 689 Envy what it is 192 Epicures life confused ib.  
**E**leutheræ 736 Envious men be pitifull 194 Epicurus his favorites 497  
**E**leuthera what feast 749 Envy hurtful especially to scholars his consolatory reasons in praise, he  
Eliaus why exalted from the and heavens 44 maintains the mortality of the  
Isternick games at Corinth Envy of divers sorts 44 soule 497  
792 Envious eye hath power to be- Epicurus his vanity 50 wonder-  
**E**lieus the father of Eunotus witch 593 fully respected and loved of his  
brothers 153  
**E**llebor root clefeth melancholie 319 compared to smoke 108 Epicurus a Democration 909  
541 how it is to be quenched 320 collauded by his favorites 915  
**E**llebor 75 Envy not excusable in old his opinion touching the primi-  
Elops the chely fish swimming age 329 ples of the world 661  
downe the stream and windes in young persons bath many pra- 913  
800 tenfes 329 of the gods 665  
**E**loquence becometh old men Enyalius what god 12 Enyalyndia what use it hath  
322 in Princes most necessary Epacii a saltein in Athens 659  
289 937 Epimenides 478  
**E**lpenor 736 Epact daies 1052 Epimenides how long he slept 316  
**E**lpenor his ghost 680 Epaneetus his apophthegm 376 Epimetheus 125  
**E**lipstick Philosopher 548 Epaminondas behaveth his own 745 Enayaxos, the surname of Diana  
**E**lyfius the father of Euthynous son 426 Epaminondas his commendation 839  
426 Epaminondas 44 Epitetejus the Sycopanth, first put  
**E**lysian field in the Moone 965 Epaminondas accused of a capi-  
tall crime 475  
**E**merepes his apophthegm 376 Empoia her rare love to her hus-  
**E**mpora her rare love to her hus- bit pale 304  
band 944 ib. cruelly put to death his death 352  
by Vespasian 945 Epaminondas the nickname of Epitherez his narration as touch-  
**E**mputa 491 a talkative fellow 171 ing the great Pan 1083  
**E**mpedocles his opinion touching Epaminondas had a grace in de-  
the first principles 659 911 nying his friends request 345  
how they averred a Pessimistion how careful for the Thebanes 595  
a good common wealths man 920 Epithymodeipni who they be 595  
reputed a reproachfull sciffe upon Callistratus 351

Epitritos

### The Table.

<b>Epiritios, what proportion</b>	848	<b>Eumertis. See Cleobuline</b>		<b>F</b>
<b>Erixaxaxia.</b>	848	<b>Eumolpus instituted the sacred ceremonies at Eleusis</b>	230	
<b>Epotion what part of phlogis</b>	517	<b>Eunomia</b>	517	<b>F</b> Abia committed adultery with Petronius Valentius
<b>Erato, how employed</b>	613	<b>Eunottus 737 murdered by his brethren of Oebna</b>	737	750 shee killed her husband
<b>Erebus</b>	89	<b>Evocation of tincler gods out of their places</b>	712	ibid
<b>Erechtheus sacrificed his own daughter</b>	755	<b>Eupathies what they be</b>	62	<b>F</b> abius Maximus his policy in wearing Annibal by delays
<b>Eretrians wives roste flesh against the sun</b>	734	<b>Euphranor and Parrhasius painters compared</b>	805	353 his apophthegms, his courteous valiant of a amorous soldier, otherwise valiant ib. his death
<b>Ereane who shee is</b>	191	<b>Euphranor his notable picture of the battell at Mantinea</b>	805	742 he despised scoties and frumps
<b>the surname of Minerva</b>	564	<b>Euphrone a name of the night</b>	625	<b>F</b> abius Fabricianus the sonne of Fabia killed her mother and the adulteress
<b>Erinnyes</b>	458	<b>the reason thereof</b>	117	750
<b>Εριννυες, who they be</b>	610	<b>Euripides his day of death and birth observed</b>	628	<b>F</b> able of the fox and the Leopard
<b>Erivall why called Caiathar</b>	738	<b>his speech to a foolish and ignorant fellow</b>	50	257
<b>Eryngiam the herbe, what a vertue it hath</b>	238	<b>being held in the hande as goats for going</b>	611	<b>F</b> able of the ox and the camel
	611	<b>city</b>	227	517
<b>Eryxo her venous ail</b>	415	<b>Eurycles</b>	1080	<b>T</b> hemistocles his fable of the feast and the morrow
<b>Eteocles his saying as touching his Kingdome</b>	504	<b>Eurycratidas his Apophthegms</b>	377	<b>C</b> Fabricius his apophthegms
<b>Etefifz what minds</b>	679	<b>Euridyce a noble and vertuous lady</b>	14	553 his contempt of money lib. he mistaketh treason even against his enemies
<b>Ethos</b>	446	<b>Eurydice.</b>	994	ibid
<b>Eubeean brasse the best</b>	1097	<b>Eutclidas bewitched by himselfe</b>	596	<b>F</b> aculty in the soule what it is
<b>Eubecidas his apophthegms</b>	376	<b>Euterpe what she is allotted to</b>	652	56
<b>Eubulus a good politician</b>	349	<b>what she is allotted to</b>	652	712
<b>Eubulus the surname of Bacchus</b>	624	<b>Εὐθυμοσύνη in Hesiodus what it is</b>	612	<b>F</b> aire meanes to be used with children
<b>Eucarpus a surname of Venus</b>	265	<b>Euthynous died suddenly</b>	426	9
<b>Euchnamus the Amphiphan</b>	935	<b>Eutroia her daughters twaine destroyed by Saturn</b>	744	<b>F</b> ame or rumor had a temple at Rome
<b>Eucles how he repress his brother anger</b>	108	<b>Eutropion king Antigonus his Cooke highly advanced</b>	11	518
<b>lothio fall out with his brother</b>	ibid	<b>Euxine sea why so replenished with fishes</b>	800	<b>F</b> asting long, why it procureth rather thirst than hunger
<b>Eucteus and Eulizes the minions of K. Perſius</b>	91	<b>Euthyntetus and Leucumantis Exercise of body fit for health</b>	940	598
<b>Eudamidas his apophthegms</b>	376	<b>meat for students</b>	ibid	<b>F</b> atall destiny how to be understood
<b>Eudorus as touching the soule of the world</b>	843	<b>Exercise of body for youth</b>	8	540
<b>Eudoxus studious in Astronomy</b>	484	<b>Expedition or quick execution</b>	243	958, 886
<b>Evemerus the atheist</b>	663	<b>Experience what it is</b>	684	<b>F</b> aters love their daughters better than their sons
<b>Euergetes a fit attribute for princes</b>	252	<b>Experience what it is</b>	684	263 their folly in chusing governors and teachers for their children
<b>Euergetes a surname of some prince of exile or banishment</b>	1040	<b>Extrimities in all changes</b>	513	taxed for their negligence in his behalfe
<b>Eupie</b>	285	<b>Ere of the master seeds the seede</b>	12	they ought no to be answered unto their children
<b>Eumæus kept a good house</b>	614	<b>Ere of the master seeds the seede</b>	12	the care in chusing wives for their sons
<b>Eumenes reported to be dead</b>	343	<b>Ere of the master seeds the seede</b>	12	14 they are to give good example to their children
<b>his mild behaviour to his brother Attalus</b>	ibid	<b>Ere of the master seeds the seede</b>	12	14
<b>his Stratagems by secrecy</b>	162	<b>Ere of the master seeds the seede</b>	12	<b>F</b> atnes occasioned by cold
		<b>Ere of the master seeds the seede</b>	12	562
		<b>Ere of the master seeds the seede</b>	12	<b>F</b> auns his speech against the Greeks
		<b>Ere of the master seeds the seede</b>	12	750 killed by Hercules
		<b>Ere of the master seeds the seede</b>	12	ibid
		<b>Ere of the master seeds the seede</b>	12	<b>F</b> ear of God how to be limited
		<b>Ere of the master seeds the seede</b>	12	491
		<b>Ere of the master seeds the seede</b>	12	<b>F</b> ear for compared with other passions
		<b>Ere of the master seeds the seede</b>	12	214 why it is named in Greece
		<b>Ere of the master seeds the seede</b>	12	Εὐχαι, and ῥέλος
		<b>Ere of the master seeds the seede</b>	12	ibid
		<b>Ere of the master seeds the seede</b>	12	<b>F</b> ealt, what is the end
		<b>Ere of the master seeds the seede</b>	12	535
		<b>Ere of the master seeds the seede</b>	12	<b>P</b> hosphory not to be banished from beginning of love
		<b>Ere of the master seeds the seede</b>	12	593
		<b>Ere of the master seeds the seede</b>	12	<b>F</b> east
		<b>Ere of the master seeds the seede</b>	12	616

CCCC 3

## Festivals

### The Table.

Feetfall danc at Athens or martial victories	808	males, but upon extremity	649	Tiberius Caesar Flattered under liberty of speech	480	81	
Feasts have two presidents, bungeo and Bacchus	592	Fifth adored as god by the Syrians	640	Flatterers how they abused Antioch	82	compared to gadflies and ticks	76
Feasts ought to make new friends	574	Fifth among the Egyptians symbolized by a serpent	1058	Flatterers tame and wild			82
a Feast of what proportion for number of guests it should be	590	Fifth a name implying blackness	756	Flatterers about Demetrius			311
at a Feast consideration would be had of room and sitting at each	591	Fishes and their properties described	796	Flavius whipped his wife	791		791
a Feast-master what person he ought to be	534	Fishes very obnoxious 744 used in divination	ibid	Fleish Pythagoras forbade to be eaten			470
February	714	ibid how ready they be to beleeve one another	797	Fleish eating might be well dispensed with in the first age of the world			471, 472
February the month, what it signifies	713	why they swim for the most part against the stream	798	Fleish eating condemned in men			473
Feet 713 the twelfth and last month of the year	701	how kind to their young fry	782, 781	Fleish killed hanging upon a fig-tree soon becomes tender			607
Feeding apart or in common whether is more commendable	556	Fift-light or buxus the first exercise by Homers reckoning	552	it sooner corrupteth in the Moone than in the Sunne (line			571
Feeding without fullness	509	Five the number, what prerogative it hath	1103	Flour of stoxes or weightie things how performed			837
Females whether they send forth seed in the act of generation	689	how they are begotten	ibid	Flours of trees may be gathered			562
Fenestella agate	521	ibid	526	Flyes will not be tamed			637
Fenestra a gate at Rome	706	Fenestra a gate at Rome	706	Food fit for students			509
Ferula a stalk why put into the hands of drunken folks	625	Ferula consecrated to Bacchus	526	Forme			659
Ferula consecrated to Bacchus	526	Flamen Dialis why he might not touch meale nor leaven	725	Fortune what it is			57
Fever what it is 695 an accessory or symptome of other diseases	694	bidden to touch raw flesh	ibid	Fortitude of brute beasts compared with mens valour			467
Figs why sweet and the tree bitter	596	he might not touch nor name a goat or dogge	ibid	Fortitude in men not natural			468
the sacred Figtree at Athen	614	of an altar or sanituarie	725	Fortune by whom attended when she pleads against vertue			518
Figtree juice hot 607 it curdles the milke	ibid	not permitted to touch an Ivy tree, nor to go under a vine	726	Fortune not sufficient to make miserie			246
Figtree never bloweth iv, never smitten with lightning	596	Flamen Dialis not admitted to sue for government of estate	727	Fortune in greatest favour with Venus			518
Figtree Ruminates	519	Flamina	720	Fortune primigenia			426, 725
Figtree leaf what it signifies	1059	Flamin or priest of Jupiter	720	Fortuna virilis			519
Figure what it is	667	up his sacerdotall dignity of his wife	709	Fortune a word unknown to Poets			26
Figures of the elements	ibid	Flaminus circus	714	Fortune had many temples at Rome			518
Fish diet best for sickly and weak stomachs	580	Flaminia via	ibid	Fortune although it differeth from misfortune, yet it produceth like effects			628
Fish more deinty and costly than flesh	ibid	Flatterers the overthrow of young men; 13 they are deapined in their colours	14	Fortuna vicatua			520
sea Fish most pleasant and wholesome	581	Flattery to whom most hurtful	ibid	Fortune with divers attributes			716
abstinence from Flesh	280	what Flatterers be most dangerous	71	Fortune 519 by whom entitled			522
certaine Fishes why called Ellopes	638	Flatterers how they be discovered	74	Fortune much honoured by King Servius Tellius			716
Fishes mute and dumb	ibid	the Flatterers of Denys	72	Fortuna muliebris or Feminine			519
Pythagoras forbade to eat them, gluttony	639	Flatterers abused the world by frankesse of speech	80	Fortune when erected			522
Fishes hermesse creatures	ibid	Flatterers of King Ptolemus	80	Fortune and short Fortune			
Fish not eaten by Vlycles and his	ibid						

## The Table.

with their temples	716	and dyed with his wife	164	Gelon scoffed at by Alcinous to his	334
temple of Fortuna foris, where	519	Functiōs meet for aged Rulers	325	name : 57 his apophthegms	334
built	519	Furciferi, who they were	715	he reclaimed the Carthaginians	334
Fortune what it is 669 how it	ibid	Furie of divers forts	715	from sacrificing children to	334
differeth from rash adventure	ibid	Five the best sauce 700, 505 ar-	715	Saurine ibid a warlike Prince	334
Fortune favorable to Julius Cæ-	519	gued to be better than wa-	715	ibid	334
lar	519	ter 810 found out by Prome-	715	ibid	334
Fortune envious great felicitie	412	theus 810 the principle of all	715	Genitsmana a goddess at Rome	334
against Fortune	188	things 661 worshipped by the	715	710 a dogge sacrificed unto her	334
Fortune and vertue at debate	516	Algyptians and Medes 957 how	715	ibid	334
Fortuna obsequens	521	maas 811 in old time might	715	Generation and corruption	669
Fortune cometh to plead against	515	God placed aloft 532 distrust	715	Generation what it is 830, 831	669
verine	515	manner of water 612 why it all	715	Generation and creation differ	834
Fortune favorable to Ser. Iul-	522	was so religiously preferred	715	Generation on a token of mor-	628
lus	522	was 614 not to be digg-	715	ality	628
Fortune private	521	ed into with a sword 12 Iron-	715	Geometrical proportion allowed	628
Fortune in what manner shee	516	ger in Winter, and more feeble	715	in Lacedæmon by Lycurgus	628
came to the city of Rome	522	in Summer 1076 seemeth to	715	Geometric commended 629 in	628
Fortune the virgine	522	have life	715	what subjects or objects it is oc-	629
Fortune good hope	522		715	cupied	629
Fortune, as it were hope	ibid		715	Geomori who they were	740
the Fox of : cunctus	466		715	Figes that it is so, Honour, why	332
Fox more storied than the leopard	257		715	is termed in Greeke	332
utility in passing over ri-	788		715	figosits why old men be so called	ibid
vers frozen	788		715	ibid	ibid
Frankish speech becoming a ruler	798		715	Geryones or Geryon, a wonder-	307
extremities, it becometh not	798		715	full giant	307
flatterer	798		715	ibid	307
Frankish speech to friends how to be	87		715	Gidri a her willany 749 the bang-	ibid
used	87		715	et her selfe	ibid
in Frankish speech security and bu-	87		715	Glafe with what heat it is best	557
sing is to be avoided	87		715	melted and wrought	557
Free will	860		715	Glauca with childe by Deima-	731
of Friends but few paires	183		715	chus	731
a Friend why he is called Erato-	183		715	Glauca a riverer of her name	ibid
in Greeke	183		715	ibid	ibid
Friend the word how to be taken	573		715	Glaucoipis, why the Moone is cal-	957
	573		715	led so	957
Friendship true how many things	185		715	Glaucois his foolish bargain with	890
it requireth	185		715	Diomedes	890
Friendship ought not to be in a	187		715	Lucius Glauco lost both his hands	741
move	187		715	ibid	741
Friends how to be used by a magi-	299		715	Glory of what account it is	6
strate	299		715	Glosses	24
Friends how they may be denied	390		715	Glottæ	1067
in their unlawful suits	390		715	Gluttons abroad, flury at home	504
Friendship not unprofane	701		715	Gnathanium the name of an bar-	ibid
Friends may praise friends as well	701		715	lot	933
as blame them	701		715	Gnatho a smell-feast	616
Friends how they differ from	701		715	Gnatho the Sicilian, a glutton	497
flatterers	701		715	ibid	497
Friend how they differ from	701		715	Go to Athens	735
flatterers	701		715	Goats very subject to the falling	716
Friend how they differ from	701		715	sickness	716
flatterers	701		715	Goats rivers, a place so called	716
Friend how they differ from	701		715	Goats of Candie, cured by Diocri-	469
flatterers	701		715	nus	469
Friend how they differ from	701		715	Goats commanding their pasto-	574
flatterers	701		715	ral	574
Friend how they differ from	701		715	Goats feeding	792
flatterers	701		715	ibid	792
Friend how they differ from	701		715	Goats	792
flatterers	701		715		792

### The Table.

God how he is called Father and  
Creator 628  
God 664  
Gods and Goddesses how they dif-  
fer 618  
how God is said by Plato to pra-  
ctise Geometry continually 669  
how he framed the world 662  
Gods manage his great affairs only  
300  
Gods nature what it is according  
to Plutarch 218  
God seems to deferre punishment  
for causes to him best known  
445  
God immortall 900  
God is not Philonins, but Philan-  
thropos 925  
God not the author of evil 845  
God described by Antipater 878  
Gods, which were begotten, which  
not 878  
God what he is 662, 663  
notion of God how it came 663  
God his nature described 1085  
Gods worship in three sorts 663  
Gods the Sunne and Moone, why  
called 663  
God good and profitable 663  
Gods bad and hurtfull ibid  
Gods fabulous 664  
what God is, Sundry opinions of  
Philosophers 665  
God the father and maker of al  
things 834  
Tortoise 781  
Goldsmiths with what fire they  
melt and work their gold 592  
God what he maketh no good found  
650  
Good or Xēnos, what it signifies 710  
Good or bad things simply 887  
to good men what epithets and ad-  
ditions Homer giveth 1096  
A Goose in love with a boy 792  
Geese silent as the fute over the  
mount Taurus 166  
Geese of Cilicia, how witty they  
are 786  
Geese saved the Capitall of Rome 525  
carried in a shew at Rome 525  
how they restrain their own  
gagling ibid  
Gorgias Leontius the great  
Rhetorician 752 his apoph-  
thegm of Tragedies 808  
Gorgias could not keep his owne  
house in peace 265  
Gorgo the wife of Leonidas a  
dame 384 her apoph-  
thegm ibid  
Gorgo the daughter of Cleome-  
nes her apophthegms 395  
Gorgon and Alander 940  
Governours of youth how to be  
chosen 4  
Government policie the best 770  
of Governments the exorbitations  
manded by Lycurgus 770  
C. Gracchus 385 by what de-  
vice he did moderate his voice  
in pleading 101  
Graces, why placed with Venus  
and Mercury 250 their names  
240  
Grammar what art it is 1018  
Graßhoppers sacred and musickall  
616  
Greece in Plutarchs time fallen  
to a low ebbe 1079  
Greekes and Galatians buried  
quick by the Romans 719  
Greekes what opinion they have of  
the gods 1063  
Greeks compared with the Aegy-  
ptians in matters of religion  
1070  
Guests ought to fort well together  
592  
Guests sit close at first a bare  
at large towards the end 592  
Guests invited ought to be of ac-  
quaintance 617  
Guests invited coming last to feast  
635  
A Guest ought to come prepared  
to a feast 269  
Guests how to be placed at a feast  
528 how to be placed at the  
table 531 allowed their chap-  
lets of flowers 557  
Whether it be commendable for  
guests to wear garlands 559  
Of guests a multitude to be avoi-  
ded at a feast 591  
The guide a fish 799  
Gordianile in men taxed by  
Corymbus 549  
Gifts new betweene wife and hus-  
band 698  
No gifts from fence in law or fa-  
ther in law 698  
Gynnaſia the overthrow of  
Greece 707  
Gymnopaedia what dance  
1902  
Gymnophists 1034  
Gyrtius her apophthegms 395

## The Table.

Romans worshipped the gods with	Hemionus	859	Herondas his apothegms	377
their Heads covered, but men	Hemlock a poison	966	Heros what feast	730
bare heads	698	Hemi having laid an egg	turne	1081
Health what it is	695	round about &c.	611	Herons how crafty they are to ge
Health of what price	6	in defence of their chickens	7	the meat of oysters
Health the best fance	505	by	180	Helioidus whose Poet
what means maintained	506	Heiphellion inward with king	1048	He murdered, and his murder de
Health and pleasure agree well	506	Alexander	390	He skilfull in Physick
gether	574	Healed by King Alexander	279	
Health how it is accompt of	574	Heptaphonos a gallery in Olyn	974	
Hearts not to be eaten	62	Heptaphonos a gallery in Olyn	974	
Heat naturall maintained most	62	Heptaphonos a gallery in Olyn	974	
by moisture	598	Heptaphonos a gallery in Olyn	974	
Heat purifies things	614	Heptaphonos a gallery in Olyn	974	
Heat by fire of divers kinds and	598	Heptaphonos a gallery in Olyn	974	
fundr operations	557	Heptaphonos a gallery in Olyn	974	
Heaven how shee Egyptians po	105	Heptaphonos a gallery in Olyn	974	
tray	672	Heptaphonos a gallery in Olyn	974	
Heaven how made	672	Heptaphonos a gallery in Olyn	974	
Heaven becom full	672	Heptaphonos a gallery in Olyn	974	
Heaven what substance it hath	672	Heptaphonos a gallery in Olyn	974	
672	672	Heptaphonos a gallery in Olyn	974	
Heaven how many circles di	672	Heptaphonos a gallery in Olyn	974	
vided	672	Heptaphonos a gallery in Olyn	974	
Heat much and say little	44	Heptaphonos a gallery in Olyn	974	
Hearing how to be employed	35	Heptaphonos a gallery in Olyn	974	
prefereth the greatest passions	43	Heptaphonos a gallery in Olyn	974	
to the mind	43	Heptaphonos a gallery in Olyn	974	
fore speech	43	Heptaphonos a gallery in Olyn	974	
Hearers how they should be quali	44	Heptaphonos a gallery in Olyn	974	
fied	44	Heptaphonos a gallery in Olyn	974	
quester enuy and ambition	44	Heptaphonos a gallery in Olyn	974	
how they should behave them	44	Heptaphonos a gallery in Olyn	974	
selves in praising the speaker	44	Heptaphonos a gallery in Olyn	974	
Hebius Toleix	748	Heptaphonos a gallery in Olyn	974	
Hecates gaffe in the Moon	965	Heptaphonos a gallery in Olyn	974	
Hecatompeden a temple at Mi	790	Heptaphonos a gallery in Olyn	974	
nera in Athens	790	Heptaphonos a gallery in Olyn	974	
Hecatompethia	280	Heptaphonos a gallery in Olyn	974	
Hector noted for presumption	4	Heptaphonos a gallery in Olyn	974	
Hegeias caused his scholars to	183	Heptaphonos a gallery in Olyn	974	
pne themselves	183	Heptaphonos a gallery in Olyn	974	
Hegeippus surnamed Crobilus	346	Heptaphonos a gallery in Olyn	974	
his apothegms	346	Heptaphonos a gallery in Olyn	974	
Helbia a veillat nunne smitten	719	Heptaphonos a gallery in Olyn	974	
with lightning	549	Heptaphonos a gallery in Olyn	974	
Helena escaped sacrificing	527	Heptaphonos a gallery in Olyn	974	
how in Homer she freeth her	527	Heptaphonos a gallery in Olyn	974	
cups	527	Heptaphonos a gallery in Olyn	974	
Helepolis an engine of batter	341	Heptaphonos a gallery in Olyn	974	
Heliop what Damon	130	Heptaphonos a gallery in Olyn	974	
Hellonemus	1055	Heptaphonos a gallery in Olyn	974	
Hellancus a valiant citizen of	407	Heptaphonos a gallery in Olyn	974	
Elis	407	Heptaphonos a gallery in Olyn	974	
Hemerides	631	Heptaphonos a gallery in Olyn	974	
Hemeris the vine	931	Heptaphonos a gallery in Olyn	974	
Hemolion what proportion	847	Heptaphonos a gallery in Olyn	974	
847	847	Heptaphonos a gallery in Olyn	974	
Hemionus	1055	Heptaphonos a gallery in Olyn	974	
Hellancus a valiant citizen of	407	Heptaphonos a gallery in Olyn	974	
Elis	407	Heptaphonos a gallery in Olyn	974	
Hemerides	631	Heptaphonos a gallery in Olyn	974	
Hemeris the vine	931	Heptaphonos a gallery in Olyn	974	
Hemolion what proportion	847	Heptaphonos a gallery in Olyn	974	
847	847	Heptaphonos a gallery in Olyn	974	
Hemionus	1055	Heptaphonos a gallery in Olyn	974	
Hellancus a valiant citizen of	407	Heptaphonos a gallery in Olyn	974	
Elis	407	Heptaphonos a gallery in Olyn	974	
Hemerides	631	Heptaphonos a gallery in Olyn	974	
Hemeris the vine	931	Heptaphonos a gallery in Olyn	974	
Hemolion what proportion	847	Heptaphonos a gallery in Olyn	974	
847	847	Heptaphonos a gallery in Olyn	974	
Hemionus	1055	Heptaphonos a gallery in Olyn	974	
Hellancus a valiant citizen of	407	Heptaphonos a gallery in Olyn	974	
Elis	407	Heptaphonos a gallery in Olyn	974	
Hemerides	631	Heptaphonos a gallery in Olyn	974	
Hemeris the vine	931	Heptaphonos a gallery in Olyn	974	
Hemolion what proportion	847	Heptaphonos a gallery in Olyn	974	
847	847	Heptaphonos a gallery in Olyn	974	
Hemionus	1055	Heptaphonos a gallery in Olyn	974	
Hellancus a valiant citizen of	407	Heptaphonos a gallery in Olyn	974	
Elis	407	Heptaphonos a gallery in Olyn	974	
Hemerides	631	Heptaphonos a gallery in Olyn	974	
Hemeris the vine	931	Heptaphonos a gallery in Olyn	974	
Hemolion what proportion	847	Heptaphonos a gallery in Olyn	974	
847	847	Heptaphonos a gallery in Olyn	974	
Hemionus	1055	Heptaphonos a gallery in Olyn	974	
Hellancus a valiant citizen of	407	Heptaphonos a gallery in Olyn	974	
Elis	407	Heptaphonos a gallery in Olyn	974	
Hemerides	631	Heptaphonos a gallery in Olyn	974	
Hemeris the vine	931	Heptaphonos a gallery in Olyn	974	
Hemolion what proportion	847	Heptaphonos a gallery in Olyn	974	
847	847	Heptaphonos a gallery in Olyn	974	
Hemionus	1055	Heptaphonos a gallery in Olyn	974	
Hellancus a valiant citizen of	407	Heptaphonos a gallery in Olyn	974	
Elis	407	Heptaphonos a gallery in Olyn	974	
Hemerides	631	Heptaphonos a gallery in Olyn	974	
Hemeris the vine	931	Heptaphonos a gallery in Olyn	974	
Hemolion what proportion	847	Heptaphonos a gallery in Olyn	974	
847	847	Heptaphonos a gallery in Olyn	974	
Hemionus	1055	Heptaphonos a gallery in Olyn	974	
Hellancus a valiant citizen of	407	Heptaphonos a gallery in Olyn	974	
Elis	407	Heptaphonos a gallery in Olyn	974	
Hemerides	631	Heptaphonos a gallery in Olyn	974	
Hemeris the vine	931	Heptaphonos a gallery in Olyn	974	
Hemolion what proportion	847	Heptaphonos a gallery in Olyn	974	
847	847	Heptaphonos a gallery in Olyn	974	
Hemionus	1055	Heptaphonos a gallery in Olyn	974	
Hellancus a valiant citizen of	407	Heptaphonos a gallery in Olyn	974	
Elis	407	Heptaphonos a gallery in Olyn	974	
Hemerides	631	Heptaphonos a gallery in Olyn	974	
Hemeris the vine	931	Heptaphonos a gallery in Olyn	974	
Hemolion what proportion	847	Heptaphonos a gallery in Olyn	974	
847	847	Heptaphonos a gallery in Olyn	974	
Hemionus	1055	Heptaphonos a gallery in Olyn	974	
Hellancus a valiant citizen of	407	Heptaphonos a gallery in Olyn	974	
Elis	407	Heptaphonos a gallery in Olyn	974	
Hemerides	631	Heptaphonos a gallery in Olyn	974	
Hemeris the vine	931	Heptaphonos a gallery in Olyn	974	
Hemolion what proportion	847	Heptaphonos a gallery in Olyn	974	
847	847	Heptaphonos a gallery in Olyn	974	
Hemionus	1055	Heptaphonos a gallery in Olyn	974	
Hellancus a valiant citizen of	407	Heptaphonos a gallery in Olyn	974	
Elis	407	Heptaphonos a gallery in Olyn	974	
Hemerides	631	Heptaphonos a gallery in Olyn	974	
Hemeris the vine	931	Heptaphonos a gallery in Olyn	974	
Hemolion what proportion	847	Heptaphonos a gallery in Olyn	974	
847	847	Heptaphonos a gallery in Olyn	974	
Hemionus	1055	Heptaphonos a gallery in Olyn	974	
Hellancus a valiant citizen of	407	Heptaphonos a gallery in Olyn	974	
Elis	407	Heptaphonos a gallery in Olyn	974	
Hemerides	631	Heptaphonos a gallery in Olyn	974	
Hemeris the vine	931	Heptaphonos a gallery in Olyn	974	
Hemolion what proportion	847	Heptaphonos a gallery in Olyn	974	
847	847	Heptaphonos a gallery in Olyn	974	
Hemionus	1055	Heptaphonos a gallery in Olyn	974	
Hellancus a valiant citizen of	407	Heptaphonos a gallery in Olyn	974	
Elis	407	Heptaphonos a gallery in Olyn	974	
Hemerides	631	Heptaphonos a gallery in Olyn	974	
Hemeris the vine	931	Heptaphonos a gallery in Olyn	974	
Hemolion what proportion	847	Heptaphonos a gallery in Olyn	974	
847	847	Heptaphonos a gallery in Olyn	974	
Hemionus	1055	Heptaphonos a gallery in Olyn	974	
Hellancus a valiant citizen of	407	Heptaphonos a gallery in Olyn	974	
Elis	407	Heptaphonos a gallery in Olyn	974	
Hemerides	631	Heptaphonos a gallery in Olyn	974	
Hemeris the vine	931	Heptaphonos a gallery in Olyn	974	
Hemolion what proportion	847	Heptaphonos a gallery in Olyn	974	
847	847	Heptaphonos a gallery in Olyn	974	
Hemionus	1055	Heptaphonos a gallery in Olyn	974	
Hellancus a valiant citizen of	407	Heptaphonos a gallery in Olyn	974	
Elis	407	Heptaphonos a gallery in Olyn	974	
Hemerides	631	Heptaphonos a gallery in Olyn	974	
Hemeris the vine	931	Heptaphonos a gallery in Olyn	974	
Hemolion what proportion	847	Heptaphonos a gallery in Olyn	974	
847	847	Heptaphonos a gallery in Olyn	974	
Hemionus	1055	Heptaphonos a gallery in Olyn	974	
Hellancus a valiant citizen of	407	Heptaphonos a gallery in Olyn	974	
Elis	407	Heptaphonos a gallery in Olyn	974	
Hemerides	631	Heptaphonos a gallery in Olyn	974	
Hemeris the vine	931	Heptaphonos a gallery in Olyn	974	
Hemolion what proportion	847	Heptaphonos a gallery in Olyn	974	
847	847	Heptaphonos a gallery in Olyn	974	
Hemionus	1055	Heptaphonos a gallery in Olyn	974	
Hellancus a valiant citizen of	407	Heptaphonos a gallery in Olyn	974	
Elis	407	Heptaphonos a gallery in Olyn	974	
Hemerides	631	Heptaphonos a gallery in Olyn	974	
Hemeris the vine	931	Heptaphonos a gallery in Olyn	974	
Hemolion what proportion	847	Heptaphonos a gallery in Olyn	974	
847	847	Heptaphonos a gallery in Olyn	974	
Hemionus	1055	Heptaphonos a gallery in Olyn	974	
Hellancus a valiant citizen of	407	Heptaphonos a gallery in Olyn	974	
Elis	407	Heptaphonos a gallery in Olyn	974	
Hemerides	631	Heptaphonos a gallery in Olyn	974	
Hemeris the vine	931	Heptaphonos a gallery in Olyn	974	
Hemolion what proportion	847	Heptaphonos a gallery in Olyn	974	
847	847	Heptaphonos a gallery in Olyn	974	
Hemionus	1055	Heptaphonos a gallery in Olyn	974	
Hellancus a valiant citizen of	407	Heptaphonos a gallery in Olyn	974	
Elis	407	Heptaphonos a gallery in Olyn	974	
Hemerides	631	Heptaphonos a gallery in Olyn	974	
Hemeris the vine	931	Heptaphonos a gallery in Olyn	974	
Hemolion what proportion	847	Heptaphonos a gallery in Olyn	974	
847	847	Heptaphonos a gallery in Olyn	974	
Hemionus	1055	Heptaphonos a gallery in Olyn	974	
Hellancus a valiant citizen of	407	Heptaphonos a gallery in Olyn	974	
Elis	407	Heptaphonos a gallery in Olyn	974	
Hemerides	631	Heptaphonos a gallery in Olyn	974	
Hemeris the vine	931	Heptaphonos a gallery in Olyn	974	
Hemolion what proportion	847	Heptaphonos a gallery in Olyn	974	
847	847	Heptaphonos a gallery in Olyn	974	
Hemionus	1055	Heptaphonos a gallery in Olyn	974	
Hellancus a valiant citizen of	407	Heptaphonos a gallery in Olyn	974	
Elis	407	Heptaphonos a gallery in Olyn	974	
Hemerides	631	Heptaphonos a gallery in Olyn	974	
Hemeris the vine	931	Heptaphonos a gallery in Olyn	974	
Hemolion what proportion	847	Heptaphonos a gallery in Olyn	974	
847	847	Heptaphonos a gallery in Olyn	974	
Hemionus	1055	Heptaphonos a gallery in Olyn	974	
Hellancus a valiant citizen of	407	Heptaphonos a gallery in Olyn	974	
Elis	407	Heptaphonos a gallery in Olyn	974	
Hemerides	631	Heptaphonos a gallery in Olyn	974	
Hemeris the vine	931	Heptaphonos a gallery in Olyn	974	
Hemolion what proportion	847	Heptaphonos a gallery in Olyn	974	
847	847	Heptaphonos a gallery in Olyn	974	
Hemionus	1055	Heptaphonos a gallery in Olyn	974	
Hellancus a valiant citizen of	407	Heptaphonos a gallery in Olyn	974	
Elis	407	Heptaphonos a gallery in Olyn	974	
Hemerides	631	Heptaphonos a gallery in Olyn	974	
Hemeris the vine	931	Heptaphonos a gallery in Olyn	974	
Hemolion what proportion	847	Heptaphonos a gallery in Olyn	974	
847	847	Heptaphonos a gallery in Olyn	974	
Hemionus	1055	Heptaphonos a gallery in Olyn	974	
Hellancus a valiant citizen of	407	Heptaphonos a gallery in Olyn	974	
Elis	407	Heptaphonos a gallery in Olyn	974	
Hemerides	631	Heptaphonos a gallery in Olyn	974	
Hemeris the vine	931	Heptaphonos a gallery in Olyn	974	
Hemolion what proportion	847	Heptaphonos a gallery in Olyn	974	
847	847	Heptaphonos a gallery in Olyn	974	
Hemionus	1055	Heptaphonos a gallery in Olyn	974	
Hellancus a valiant citizen of	407	Heptaphonos a gallery in Olyn	974	
Elis	407	Heptaphonos a gallery in Olyn	974	
Hemerides	631	Heptaphonos a gallery in Olyn	974	
Hemeris the vine	931	Heptaphonos a gallery in Olyn	974	
Hemolion what proportion	847	Heptaphonos a gallery in Olyn	974	
847	847	Heptaphonos a gallery in Olyn	974	
Hemionus	1055	Heptaphonos a gallery in Olyn	974	
Hellancus a valiant citizen of	407	Heptaphonos a gallery in Olyn	974	
Elis	407	Heptaphonos a gallery in Olyn	974	
Hemerides	631	Heptaphonos a gallery in Olyn	974	
Hemeris the vine	931	Heptaphonos a gallery in Olyn	974	
Hemolion what proportion	847	Heptaphonos a gallery in Olyn	974	
847	847	Heptaphonos a gallery in Olyn	974	
Hemionus	1055	Heptaphonos a gallery in Olyn	974	
Hellancus a valiant citizen of	407	Heptaphonos a gallery in Olyn	974	
Elis	407	Heptaphonos a gallery in Olyn	974	
Hemerides	631	Heptaphonos a gallery in Olyn	974	
Hemeris the vine	931	Heptaphonos a gallery in Olyn	974	
Hemolion what proportion	847	Heptaphonos a gallery in Olyn	974	
847	847	Heptaphonos a gallery in Olyn	974	
Hemionus	1055	Heptaphonos a gallery in Olyn	974	
Hellancus a valiant citizen of	407	Heptaphonos a gallery in Olyn	974	
Elis	407	Heptaphonos a gallery in Olyn	974	
Hemerides	631	Heptaphonos a gallery in Olyn	974	
Hemeris the vine	931	Heptaphonos a gallery in Olyn	974	
Hemolion what proportion	847	Heptaphonos a gallery in Olyn	974	
847	847	Heptaphonos a gallery in Olyn	974	
Hemionus	1055	Heptaphonos a gallery in Olyn	974	
Hellancus a valiant citizen of	407	Heptaphonos a gallery in Olyn	974	
Elis	407	Heptaphonos a gallery in Olyn	974	
Hemerides	631	Heptaphonos a gallery in Olyn	974	
Hemeris the vine	931	Heptaphonos a gallery in Olyn	974	
Hemolion what proportion	847	Heptaphonos a gallery in Olyn	974	
847	847	Heptaphonos a gallery in Olyn	974	
Hemionus	1055	Heptaphonos a gallery in Olyn	974	
Hellancus a valiant citizen of	407	Heptaphonos a gallery in Olyn	974	
Elis	407	Heptaphonos a gallery in Olyn	974	
Hemerides	631	Heptaphonos a gallery in Olyn	974	
Hemeris the vine	931	Heptaphonos a gallery in Olyn	974	
Hemolion what proportion	847	Heptaphonos a gallery in Olyn	974	
847	847	Heptaphonos a gallery in Olyn	974	
Hemionus	1055	Heptaphonos a gallery in Olyn	974	
Hellancus a valiant citizen of	407	Heptaphonos a gallery in Olyn		

## Notes

## The Table.

[illegible]

## The Table.

169 what significations is bath  
 800  
 Janus with two faces 700  
 Janus temple shut and open at  
 Rome 521  
 Jests, which men can abide best  
 545  
 Jests without biting  
 Of Jests and pretty scoffes sundry  
 sorts 545  
 Jews how superstitious they were  
 Infortunity not to be upbraided  
 218  
 why they abstaine from eating injury to a mans selfe  
 swins flesh 582  
 they have swine in abomination  
 582  
 The Jewes feasts 583  
 Ignorance is odious 499  
 Islands inhabited by great people  
 226  
 Ilithia a surname of Diana 557  
 Inoculation or grafting in the bud  
 965, 934  
 Image works exhibited at feasts  
 and banquetts 623  
 Images and statues refreshed by  
 the Centaurs 723  
 Images devised by Democritus  
 644  
 Imaginations or fantasies whether  
 they be true 683  
 Imagination what it is  
 Imaginable 684  
 Imaginative 685  
 Imagined or fantasie  
 Imitation in bad things 74  
 Imitation 27  
 L. Imber of Thymbris 748  
 Immortality of the soul 455  
 Immortality without knowledge  
 and wisdom is not life 1049  
 Imperfections of the bodie not to  
 be imputed by way of reproach  
 39  
 Impiety for atheisme  
 Inachus the river 738  
 Incense burned by the Egyptians  
 1072  
 Indian dames burnt with their  
 husbands in one funerall fire  
 246  
 loving to their husbands  
 246  
 Indian Sages die voluntarily  
 246  
 The Indian root  
 Indifferent things what they be  
 966  
 Indolence condemned 409  
 Indolence of the Epicures  
 431  
 Indos a sophistical argument 510  
 Infants bewitched by some men  
 93  
 Infants in the wombe whether  
 animal or no 691  
 Ironia that Socrates used  
 691  
 what parts of theirs Irreligion brings in  
 is first perfected in the wombe  
 691  
 born at seven months  
 691  
 how they are vitall & like to live  
 691  
 Infants live not  
 692  
 Infants new borne helpelesse  
 184  
 Infinity the principle of all  
 sorts 659  
 Infortunity not to be upbraided  
 218  
 why they abstaine from eating injury to a mans selfe  
 swins flesh 582  
 they have swine in abomination  
 582  
 The Jewes feasts 583  
 Ignorance is odious 499  
 Islands inhabited by great people  
 226  
 Ilithia a surname of Diana 557  
 Inoculation or grafting in the bud  
 965, 934  
 Image works exhibited at feasts  
 and banquetts 623  
 Images and statues refreshed by  
 the Centaurs 723  
 Images devised by Democritus  
 644  
 Imaginations or fantasies whether  
 they be true 683  
 Imagination what it is  
 Imaginable 684  
 Imaginative 685  
 Imagined or fantasie  
 Imitation in bad things 74  
 Imitation 27  
 L. Imber of Thymbris 748  
 Immortality of the soul 455  
 Immortality without knowledge  
 and wisdom is not life 1049  
 Imperfections of the bodie not to  
 be imputed by way of reproach  
 39  
 Impiety for atheisme  
 Inachus the river 738  
 Incense burned by the Egyptians  
 1072  
 Indian dames burnt with their  
 husbands in one funerall fire  
 246  
 loving to their husbands  
 246  
 Indian Sages die voluntarily  
 246  
 The Indian root  
 Indifferent things what they be  
 966  
 Indolence condemned 409  
 Indolence of the Epicures  
 431  
 Indos a sophistical argument 510  
 Infants bewitched by some men  
 93  
 Infants in the wombe whether  
 animal or no 691  
 Ironia that Socrates used  
 691  
 what parts of theirs Irreligion brings in  
 is first perfected in the wombe  
 691  
 born at seven months  
 691  
 how they are vitall & like to live  
 691  
 Infants live not  
 692  
 Infants new borne helpelesse  
 184  
 Infinity the principle of all  
 sorts 659  
 Infortunity not to be upbraided  
 218  
 why they abstaine from eating injury to a mans selfe  
 swins flesh 582  
 they have swine in abomination  
 582  
 The Jewes feasts 583  
 Ignorance is odious 499  
 Islands inhabited by great people  
 226  
 Ilithia a surname of Diana 557  
 Inoculation or grafting in the bud  
 965, 934  
 Image works exhibited at feasts  
 and banquetts 623  
 Images and statues refreshed by  
 the Centaurs 723  
 Images devised by Democritus  
 644  
 Imaginations or fantasies whether  
 they be true 683  
 Imagination what it is  
 Imaginable 684  
 Imaginative 685  
 Imagined or fantasie  
 Imitation in bad things 74  
 Imitation 27  
 L. Imber of Thymbris 748  
 Immortality of the soul 455  
 Immortality without knowledge  
 and wisdom is not life 1049  
 Imperfections of the bodie not to  
 be imputed by way of reproach  
 39  
 Impiety for atheisme  
 Inachus the river 738  
 Incense burned by the Egyptians  
 1072  
 Indian dames burnt with their  
 husbands in one funerall fire  
 246  
 loving to their husbands  
 246  
 Indian Sages die voluntarily  
 246  
 The Indian root  
 Indifferent things what they be  
 966  
 Indolence condemned 409  
 Indolence of the Epicures  
 431  
 Indos a sophistical argument 510  
 Infants bewitched by some men  
 93  
 Infants in the wombe whether  
 animal or no 691  
 Ironia that Socrates used  
 691  
 what parts of theirs Irreligion brings in  
 is first perfected in the wombe  
 691  
 born at seven months  
 691  
 how they are vitall & like to live  
 691  
 Infants live not  
 692  
 Infants new borne helpelesse  
 184  
 Infinity the principle of all  
 sorts 659  
 Infortunity not to be upbraided  
 218  
 why they abstaine from eating injury to a mans selfe  
 swins flesh 582  
 they have swine in abomination  
 582  
 The Jewes feasts 583  
 Ignorance is odious 499  
 Islands inhabited by great people  
 226  
 Ilithia a surname of Diana 557  
 Inoculation or grafting in the bud  
 965, 934  
 Image works exhibited at feasts  
 and banquetts 623  
 Images and statues refreshed by  
 the Centaurs 723  
 Images devised by Democritus  
 644  
 Imaginations or fantasies whether  
 they be true 683  
 Imagination what it is  
 Imaginable 684  
 Imaginative 685  
 Imagined or fantasie  
 Imitation in bad things 74  
 Imitation 27  
 L. Imber of Thymbris 748  
 Immortality of the soul 455  
 Immortality without knowledge  
 and wisdom is not life 1049  
 Imperfections of the bodie not to  
 be imputed by way of reproach  
 39  
 Impiety for atheisme  
 Inachus the river 738  
 Incense burned by the Egyptians  
 1072  
 Indian dames burnt with their  
 husbands in one funerall fire  
 246  
 loving to their husbands  
 246  
 Indian Sages die voluntarily  
 246  
 The Indian root  
 Indifferent things what they be  
 966  
 Indolence condemned 409  
 Indolence of the Epicures  
 431  
 Indos a sophistical argument 510  
 Infants bewitched by some men  
 93  
 Infants in the wombe whether  
 animal or no 691  
 Ironia that Socrates used  
 691  
 what parts of theirs Irreligion brings in  
 is first perfected in the wombe  
 691  
 born at seven months  
 691  
 how they are vitall & like to live  
 691  
 Infants live not  
 692  
 Infants new borne helpelesse  
 184  
 Infinity the principle of all  
 sorts 659  
 Infortunity not to be upbraided  
 218  
 why they abstaine from eating injury to a mans selfe  
 swins flesh 582  
 they have swine in abomination  
 582  
 The Jewes feasts 583  
 Ignorance is odious 499  
 Islands inhabited by great people  
 226  
 Ilithia a surname of Diana 557  
 Inoculation or grafting in the bud  
 965, 934  
 Image works exhibited at feasts  
 and banquetts 623  
 Images and statues refreshed by  
 the Centaurs 723  
 Images devised by Democritus  
 644  
 Imaginations or fantasies whether  
 they be true 683  
 Imagination what it is  
 Imaginable 684  
 Imaginative 685  
 Imagined or fantasie  
 Imitation in bad things 74  
 Imitation 27  
 L. Imber of Thymbris 748  
 Immortality of the soul 455  
 Immortality without knowledge  
 and wisdom is not life 1049  
 Imperfections of the bodie not to  
 be imputed by way of reproach  
 39  
 Impiety for atheisme  
 Inachus the river 738  
 Incense burned by the Egyptians  
 1072  
 Indian dames burnt with their  
 husbands in one funerall fire  
 246  
 loving to their husbands  
 246  
 Indian Sages die voluntarily  
 246  
 The Indian root  
 Indifferent things what they be  
 966  
 Indolence condemned 409  
 Indolence of the Epicures  
 431  
 Indos a sophistical argument 510  
 Infants bewitched by some men  
 93  
 Infants in the wombe whether  
 animal or no 691  
 Ironia that Socrates used  
 691  
 what parts of theirs Irreligion brings in  
 is first perfected in the wombe  
 691  
 born at seven months  
 691  
 how they are vitall & like to live  
 691  
 Infants live not  
 692  
 Infants new borne helpelesse  
 184  
 Infinity the principle of all  
 sorts 659  
 Infortunity not to be upbraided  
 218  
 why they abstaine from eating injury to a mans selfe  
 swins flesh 582  
 they have swine in abomination  
 582  
 The Jewes feasts 583  
 Ignorance is odious 499  
 Islands inhabited by great people  
 226  
 Ilithia a surname of Diana 557  
 Inoculation or grafting in the bud  
 965, 934  
 Image works exhibited at feasts  
 and banquetts 623  
 Images and statues refreshed by  
 the Centaurs 723  
 Images devised by Democritus  
 644  
 Imaginations or fantasies whether  
 they be true 683  
 Imagination what it is  
 Imaginable 684  
 Imaginative 685  
 Imagined or fantasie  
 Imitation in bad things 74  
 Imitation 27  
 L. Imber of Thymbris 748  
 Immortality of the soul

### The Table.

*the sonne* of Canon 799 his  
orations ibid  
*bis apophthegm* 925 he married  
for the death of Socrates ibid  
*he esteemed* Ephorus Diphorus  
ibid  
given naturally to wantonnesse  
799 his stature erected in braile  
by Aparchus bis adopted son  
ibid  
his pillowe 758  
Hofecleses 836  
Ithinia the name of the Admirall  
galle of Antigonous 590  
Hyfomique games 590  
Itachacia 735  
Judeus the Sonne of Typhon  
1058  
Judges how portraited in Augur  
1058  
K. Jugurtha led prisoner by Syria  
304  
Julia law, at touching adulteries  
363  
Julius Drusus a man of great integrity  
288  
Julius Cezar beholding of fortune  
508  
June the month, dedicated to  
Juno 720  
Juno why she is so called 717  
Juno had but one nurse, Eunoea  
671  
Juno Lucina ibid  
Juno aire 662  
Junos Priestesse or Flamina ever sad  
720  
Juno Gamelia : 62 no beast being  
ing gall sacrificed to her ibid  
Junos dressing herselfe in Homer, what it meaneth 21  
Jupiter Olympius 1106  
Jupiter Agoræus 99  
Jupiter compared with Neptune  
1048  
Jupiter Labradeus in Caria his  
image 732  
Jupiter Hostalis 228  
Jupiters Statue without eares  
1071  
Jupiter Tarfus 743  
Jupiter Altraux 258  
Jupiters Priests or Flamin ii not  
anointed abroad in the air  
725 why called Flamin 707  
he might not sweare 727  
Jupiter, fire 653  
Jupiter Carius 105  
Jupiter had two nurses, Ida and  
Adraftia 570  
Jupiter Stenias 1024  
Jupiters sacrifices why Minos was  
called 235  
Jupiter bad divers exceptions as why women Kiss the Lips of their  
ming Poets, 251  
Jupiter the onely immortal God,  
conjured all the rest 597  
Jupiter Katastatis 1040  
Justice is fortitude, whether the  
greater vertue 340  
Justice or Injustice in beasts  
783  
Justice what it is 57 the end of  
the law 242  
Justice neglected by Magistrates  
the overthrow of States 267  
whether there bee any in beasts  
Joy garlands, what use they have  
560 whether it to bee hot or  
cold 561 it would not grow a  
bout Babylon 561 Ivy chap-  
lets, why used in Winter 562  
that Iuy is cold 563  
Ivy berries intoxicate the braine  
564  
why the wood growth  
torious, why it is alwaies greene  
562  
Ivy consecrated to Bacchus 560  
to be rejected from the sacrifice  
and temples of celestiall gods  
726 fit for frantiecke felke  
Labour, see Diligence  
Lixion loved Juno 239 in Euripides represented a goddess made  
26  
K  
Kaimin, what it signifies  
1066  
Karotins, in poets of divers significacions  
27  
Kalends Δεῖσις, what place 590  
Kalends, whereof they took the  
name 700, 702  
Κατανα, what exercise or feat of  
athletics 587  
κατάλοιπα 557  
καρυκία ibid  
Kaiva the walnut tree, why so cal.  
led 562  
κάτω 1051  
καλαβόν 611  
Κιλανίος 781  
Killing of a man but upon necessity.  
tie. 706  
To be a King, what a trouble and  
burden it is 313  
Kings abused by flatterers and  
parasites 77  
Kings sometimes learne nothing well  
but to ride on horse 79  
King ought to be milde and gra.  
cious 104  
Kissing the eare 45  
Kissing of kinsfolk by women, how  
it sitt came up 398  
L  
Laetus the famous Sumner 293  
Latras advanced scupper 294  
Laxas the Latrans scinner 294  
who pronounce in stead of R.  
711  
Learchus usurped the tyrannie  
of Cyrene 416 murdered  
ibid  
Labotas his Apophthegms 379  
Labour with Alacrity 58  
Labour, see Diligence  
Lacedamonians bonnifull to the  
Smyrnians 86 their modesty to  
them ibid  
how they feared to their Children  
from drunkenness, they shew-  
ed their filoz drunketto their  
children 892 why they sacrific-  
ed to the Muses before battell  
105  
Lacedemonian apophthegms 365  
their reverence old age 391  
Lacedemonians customs and ord-  
er 393 how they lost their  
ancient reputation  
Lacedemonian womens apphi-  
thymes 395  
Lacedamonians forbid torch-  
lights 392  
the Laconisme or short speech of  
the Lacedemonians 85  
Lachesares arrogant over the A-  
thenians 480  
Lachelis her function 967  
Lachelis 557,  
653, 559,  
Lacesates a fast friend to Cephal-  
ocres, and made no show thereof  
85  
Lacydes noted for effeminate  
wantonnesse 200  
Larus the famous Scipper 293  
Latus advanced scunner 294

### The Table.

Laelodius	622	Leonidas the sonne of Anaxan-	Life of man transitory and varie-
Lais a famous courtesan	591	dridas his apophthegm	ble
Lais became a married wife	591	his valiant death	742
stoned to death for envie her	ibid	heart all hairy	ib.
beaviey	ibid	his wifon with the temple of	Lightning how it is shot forth
Lamachus 312 his apophthegm	Hercules at Thebes 1009	his	838
Lamentation for the dead bow	345	noble acts and notable apoph-	Lightning 577 what effects it
to be moderat.d	theems	1009	worketh
Lamia the witch	113	Leontidas together with Archias	bodies smitten with Lightning
Lamps, why the Romans never	valiant man 998 he killeth folk	A. a purisane	ib.
put forth but suffer to go out of	Cephalodorus	ib.	Lightning
their owne accord	716	he was killed himself by Pelopi-	what things be smitten with
	613	das	999
the golden Lampe of Minerva	Leontis a tribe	540	Lightning how it cometh
Lampe burning continually at the	628	Lyctichidas the first his apoph-	Line or flux the herbe
temple of Japiter Ammon	Lyctichidas the sonne of Arilton	invenor	1018
1075 why teile oyle was em-	his apophthegms	380	Lion how stout he is in defence of
fumed therein every year then	Lichenorius, an epithet of A-	his whelps	179
other	ib.&c. pollio	1098	Lion why the Egyptians conse-
Lampon 612 the rich merchant	Lethe	460	crated to the sun
	319	500	Lions heads gaping, force for
Lamplice, the daughter of Man-	Admet that is to say, the common	flouts of fountains in Egypt	382
dron, her verminous ait	409	wealth	714
honoured as a goddess	ib	Letters in Egypt invented by	Lion how he goeth in the foref
	ib	Mericure	646
Lamplacum the city how it took	Letters in the Alphabet just	24	Lions kind one to another
that name	404	how they arise	640
Epithet of the Stoicks	763	Assurava the gorge or vesand	open in the porches of the E-
Lares, what images	910	610	gyptians temple
Largesses	310	Leucippe	736
Latus, what he commeth to mind	Leucippide	739	Literature compared with the
	1025	Leucippus killed by Parmander	gifts of fortune and nature
Lauria what presents they weie	7	8	Liver diseased, how it is discov-
Law of what power it is	242	Leucomantis	739
	243	Levites whereof they took that	red
Leena her rare taciturnitie	Leucothea what it is	54	Lochagis his apophthegms
Leager	162	Leucothea kind to her sisters chil-	380
Lead why it causeth water to be	739	dren	537
more cold	102	Leucothea or Matutines temple	118
Lead plates & plummets seem to	admitther no maide servant to	enter into it	700
sweat and melt in hard winters	Liberalitie what it is	58	Locusts engendered in Sicillio
Leander bewitched with the love	Libitina, supposed to bee Venus	710	Loade-stone how it draweth iron
of Aretophilas daughter 500	her temple how employed	ibid	Elogick or Dialtick
hee exerciseth tyrannie	ibid	Libs, what wind	657
betrayed by Actaphila into the	P. Licinius vanquished by Perie-	679	Lotos the herbe in Homer
hands of Anabus 406 put to	us 355 his demand of Perseus	Love of young boies committed	973
death	ibid	Lictors officers of Rome, who fo	Love of what power it is 239
Leaves of trees not be plucked	called	714	240
Left-hand Aufpices presage best	Life and language ought to be	against Love drinks	260
Aquila	717	cw in a governer	288
Lenity of parents to their Chil-	Life is but an illusion	460	quickly young
dren	13	mended	438
Leon the sonne of Euctatidas his	Life hidden or unknown, a sen-	Love truly described	932
apophthegms	380	since full of absurdities	Love of boies compared with that
Leon the Bizantine a merry con-	ceited person	292	Love of life three sorts
			long Life not be st
			439
			Love a violent affection
			927
			Love nuptiall commendad
			ib.
			935
			Love a violent affection
			927

D d d d d



### The Table.

Cato his <i>ſaying of Lovers</i> 932	ed all vices: to be cut down 64	Lyfias the orator his <i>pauereage</i>
The <i>hounty and goodneſſe of Love</i> 935	he <i>bronght in baſe coine</i> 381	and <i>place of nativity</i> 754
935 how it come to be called	<i>buſt by Alexander</i> ibid	his <i>education</i> ibid his <i>troubles</i> and
aged 929	his <i>patience</i> 382 his <i>ordinances</i>	<i>exploits</i> 754 his <i>age and death</i>
Love an <i>ancient god</i> 930	in <i>Sparta</i> 382 he <i>ordained ſacrifices</i> of leaſt coſt 331	ib.
Love <i>covereth defects and imperfections</i> 930	honoured by the <i>oracle of Apollo</i> 493	Lyfias the orator, his <i>orations</i>
Love the <i>moſt ancient worke of Venus</i> 930	not <i>blamed for praifing</i> himſelfe 250	and <i>writings</i> 755 his <i>ſtile</i> ib.
Lovers be <i>flatterers</i> 761	Lycurgus the orator his <i>parentage</i> 761	his <i>education</i> ibid
Love teacheth <i>Mankind &amp;c.</i> 536	his <i>ſtate affairs</i> ib.	450 his <i>apophyegms</i> ib.
Love reſembleth <i>drunkenneſſe</i> his <i>fidelity and reputation</i> 536	his <i>building for the city</i> 435	ib.
Love what <i>reſemblance it hath with the ſun</i> 938	loved of the <i>people</i> 761	a <i>ſevere</i> iuſticer 1056
why <i>Lovers be Poets</i> 536	his <i>authority</i> ib.	Lybis his <i>religions</i> 987
Lovers how they can <i>away</i> with his <i>ordinances and lawes</i> 547	he <i>enabled that Poet</i> might bee free <i>burgieſſe</i> 760	Lytius the <i>ſurname of</i> Baccus 277
Loxias one of the <i>ſurnames of Apollo</i> 87	Lycurgus <i>ordained to perpetuate</i> the <i>tragedies of</i> Elchylus	M
Lucar what <i>mony among the Romans</i> 721	Sophocles and Euripides ib.	Macareus i deſtowreth his own ſiſter 757
Lucifer the <i>ſtar</i> 675	he <i>refuſed Xenocrates the Philoſopher</i> for going to priſon 762	Macedonians <i>plaine ſpoken men</i> 337
Lucina 932	he <i>ſaw his wife from</i> the <i>danger of lawe</i> ib.	their <i>army after Alexander</i> deſtroyed compared to Cy-clops 341
Lucullus the <i>Roman Lady</i> 404	his <i>ſuperſtitioſitie</i> 361	Macellum a <i>famous theſe at Rome</i> 711
Lucullus noted by <i>Pompey for</i> his <i>ſuperſtitioſitie</i> 361	he <i>led by him</i> meant <i>friendſhip</i> ib.	Macellum the <i>ſhamblers there</i> ib.
Callithrenes 325	his <i>valour</i> his <i>painfull ſtandie</i> ib.	Mæmetas 711
360 given to <i>pleaſure</i> 361	his <i>apophyegms</i> ib.	Magas how he <i>dealt with Philizmon</i> 124
kinde to his <i>younger brother</i> his <i>children ended and acquit</i> 150	his <i>death and ſepulcher</i> 244	Magi ſe <i>ſages what they think of Oremæzes and Airmaæzes</i> 1063
why <i>blamed</i> 244	he <i>was advanced the</i> weale publicke 762	Magi the <i>tyrants of Perſia</i> 369
Lungs full of <i>pipes and holes to tranſmit liquors and ſolid meats</i> 610	his <i>innocencie</i> 762	Magiſtracy ſhewes a <i>man</i> 360
Luperci at <i>Rome</i> why they <i>ſacrifice a dog</i> 714	his <i>crown and ſtatues</i> ib.	May the <i>months why ſo called</i> 720
Lupercalia ibid	honours <i>decreed for him</i> and <i>his</i> ib.	Maidens <i>not permitted to marry upon a feaſtiſh day</i> 715
Luſts and appetites of <i>ſundry ſorts</i> 461	his <i>wealth and bounty</i> 985	Maiden-haire the <i>herbe why all greene</i> 562
Lutatius Catulus erected an <i>altar to Saturn</i> 714	ſurnamed <i>Ibis</i> ib.	Mallacos what it <i>ſignifieth</i> 416
Lycaons <i>ſonnes</i> Eleuther and Le-badius 737	Lylian <i>muſicke</i> reſjected 1020	Maladies <i>new come and old depart</i> 642
Lycaum 738	Lyde the <i>wife of Callimachus</i> 413	Maladies <i>new and ſtrange whereof they proceed</i> 642
Lycas a <i>booke of Arifton</i> his <i>making</i> 15	Lyde the <i>Elegie of his compoſition</i> 414	Maladies of the <i>ſoule compared with thoſe of the body</i> 257
Lycian <i>women</i> their <i>vertues</i> 402	Lydiads <i>ſirſt an uſurping tyrant</i> proved afterwards a <i>good prince</i> 447	Malcander <i>king of</i> Byblos 1053
Lycia <i>overflowed by the ſea</i> 402	Lying in <i>children to be avoided</i> 11	Males <i>how begotten</i> 689
Lyeicus a <i>traytor</i> troubled long after his <i>treachery</i> committed 444	Lyncus <i>quick-fighted</i> 196	Male <i>children and female how they be formed in the wombe</i> 693
Lycophanes what it is at <i>Lacedæmon</i> 391	Lyncurium 782	Mallowes 278
Lycopades what <i>herbes</i> 555	Lyfander his <i>refuſed jewels ſent</i> to his <i>daughters</i> 349	Man why <i>called</i> 518
why they be <i>fuller of ſtomack</i> then others 555	Lyfander <i>flame by</i> Inachion for want of <i>underſtanding</i> an <i>oracle</i> 978	Man
Lycurgus his <i>apophyegms</i> at <i>teaching education</i> 3 his <i>apophyegms</i> 382 and 348 his <i>example of two whelps</i> 3 he cauſed	Lyſanoridas <i>combined with the tyrants of</i> Thebes 883	
	Lyſanoridas put to <i>death</i> 1000	

### The Table.

*Man most miserable.* 257  
*Man and most unhappy.* 258  
*Man's life full of miseries.* 422  
*Men divided in three sorts.* 426  
*made to as good.* 323  
*Mentaine in the art of generation.* 691  
*Men a what age they come to perfection.* 693  
*Of Men in the Moon.* 959  
*Mandragoras cold and powerful sleep.* 565  
*Mandragoras growing near to a vine.* 16  
*Maneros who it was.* 1054  
*Manis a King.* 1056  
*Manica, ibid. his pride and arrogance 1040. how he was scolded by Patides.* ibid  
*Manli might not be surmised.* ibid  
*Marci.* 721  
*M. Manlius sought to be King of Rome.* ibid  
*Manius Imperiosus beheaded by his own son.* 745  
*Battel of Mantinea described.* 806  
*Mantous.* 127  
*Marcellinus unthankful to Cn. Pompeius 361. checked by him.* ibid  
*Marcellus his Apophthegme as touching the gods of Tarantum.* 353  
*March in old time the first month.* 701  
*Marriage in kindred forbidden at Rome.* 697-726  
*Marriage love discredited by Protagenes 935. maintained by Diphneus.* ibid  
*Marriage, a number.* ibid  
*Marriage with a rich and wealthy wife argued.* 927  
*Marriage with a wife younger or elder.* ibid  
*No Marriages at Rome in May.* 720  
*Marriage with the cousin german how permitted.* 697  
*Of Marriage precepts.* 259  
*Married folk ought to have a reverent regard one of another.* 260  
*C. Marius defeated the Cimbrians 523. his Apophthegms 359. he crucified his daughter Calpurnia 747. he endured the cutting of his varices. ibid. his justice.* ibid  
*Marius and Sylla, how they first fell out.* 360  
*Marius Gurgus.* 742  
*Marpissa ravished by Aphareus.* 750  
*Mars and Venus commit adulery.* 750  
*so. defended himself. and tawnt with Sylvia.* 748  
*what is there by in Homer. 21. what Epithets and attributes he hath. 930. his Etymology.* ibid  
*Mars opposite unto love.* 931  
*Mars hath divers acceptations in poets.* 25  
*Mars what God.* 933  
*Marfias the minstrel dresse his hood or muzzel for his cheek whilst he piped. 101. why punished by Apollo.* ibid  
*Martial men ought to be strong of body.* 322  
*Martius Coriolanus.* 521  
*Malainus an aged King.* 324  
*Malides a renowned Prince.* 1056  
*Massacre in Argos.* 302  
*Mathematicks what pleasure they afford.* 484  
*Mathematicks. 834. of three kind.* 653  
*Mathematical five solid bodies.* 671  
*Mater. 630, 666. the Mater, not the man, to be regarded.* 44  
*Meal an unperfect and raw thing. 725. why called Mylephaton.* 725  
*Meats which are to be refused.* 503  
*for the Medes, leave somewhat.* 614  
*Medica the herb.* 479  
*Medicivory means, how to be taken.* 56  
*Mediterranean Sea.* 956  
*Medius an arch physician and flatterer in King Alexanders Court.* 86  
*Megabactes a faire Catamit.* 369  
*Megabyzus prettily reproved by Apelles.* 79, 127  
*Megall, a surname of some Prince.* 1040  
*Megarians infolency against their principal burgeois.* 732  
*Megisto her vertuous deed.* 406  
*Megisto the mother of Timoleon, her wife speech.* 407  
*Melancholick persons great dreamers, and their dreams most significant.* 1098  
*Melanippides what he altered in Miffick.* 1015  
*Melancholick disposition preface the sickness.* 507  
*Melanthius his Apophthegme of a ragaed.* 46  
*Melanthius his speech concerning fictions in Athens.* 21  
*Melanthius checketh Gorgias.* 265  
*Melanthius the flattering parasite of King Alexander Phraeus.* 71  
*Melanthia what it is.* 54  
*Melanuri.* 12  
*Melicerates ledy cleft up with a weick.* 550  
*Melchirus a flattering tearme.* 76  
*Melliere what he is.* 328  
*Meliponda.* 584  
*Meliphilus the Philosopher a good Statist and martial man.* 922  
*Melissa wife to Perander.* 371  
*Melissus the son of Abron killed himself.* 775  
*Melon one of the conspirators against Archias the Thebaine.* 998  
*Melos women their vertuous art.* 401  
*Memnon his Apophthegme.* 333  
*Memory in children to be exercised.* 9  
*Memory how profitable it is. 10. the Mother of the Muses. 924. of what power it is.* 1093  
*Menalippe a Tragedy of Euripides.* 950  
*Menander his Comedies praised. 622. much commended before Aristophanes. 772. his untimely death.* 773  
*Menander a wise and mild Prince 310. highly honoured by his subjects.* ibid  
*Menecrates a vain-glorious Physician. 349, 369. reproved by Agellanus.* 349, 370.  
*Menedemus sheweth the doore against his friends sonne. 76 his opinion of vertue.* 53  
*Menelaus and Paris enter combat.* 650  
*Menelaus and Helena debased by Herodorus.* 1001  
*Menelaus came unbidden to Agamemnon his feast.* 615  
*Menelaus in Homer portrayed by Minerva.* 1044  
*Meniscus what it is.* 1044

## The Table.

MENTIS a Temple at Rome, 521, when it was dedicated.	himself.	220	the meanes of Demetrius.
ibid	Milanesse of Euclides his brother.	209	Mitres, who bee was and what it signifies.
Mercury terrestrial and celestial.	Milefia the daughter of Scedains.	777	Mixolydian musick who invented.
Mercury is come, what it meaneth.	Milefian maidens troubled with melancholy.	403	how their rage was repressed.
Mercury, why he is inspired near to the Graces.	Milichius an attribute to God.	104	Military exercises fit for youth.
Mercurial Demons.	Milk not properly called moist, as oil is.	606	Milk, in women how it is made, and whereto it serveth.
Mercury Hegemon.	Milk-way, or Galaxia.	209	Milk how students should use in their diet.
Mercury the author of Grammar and Musick.	Miltiades a tyrant at first, proved a good Captain.	447	Mimi.
Mele.	a MIND, the efficient cause of all things.	224	Minerva rebuked for piping.
Meformaldes.	Minerva flung away her pipes.	101	Minerva Chalicticos.
Messenger reporting news of the victory at Marathon.	Minerva provident.	313	Minerva Itonia.
Messenger of the victory at Mantinea, how rewarded.	Minerva but one.	653	Minerva Optelitis.
Messor an attribute of Iupiter in Homer what it signifies.	Mine and Thine.	262	Molionides, &c., massacred by Hercules.
Metaphors.	Mine and Thine reproved by Plato.	ibid	Molpus the minstrel.
Metaphor sacrificeth his owne daughter.	King Minos a Judge among the dead.	438	Monarchia what it is.
162, checked by Cicero.	438, why he was called Iupiter Oarites.	238	Monarchy what it is.
Meteors what they be.	Mitotauras whence they come.	469	Monarchy terms or purgations of women.
Meteor and meteor.	Minstrels at Rome disguised in women's apparel.	736	Monarchy attributed to Iuno.
Methides sepulture in Egypt.	Minstrel pipes forsake Rome.	ib	Monogenes the name of Proletina, and the reason thereof.
Methyer, what it signifies.	Minstrel wenches whether they are to be admitted to sober feasts.	620	Monophagi in Aegina.
Metiochus a favourite of Pericles.	Minyas his daughters enraged.	736	Monsters how engendered.
Merocles challenged the Kings of Persia.	Mirrors and the resemblance in them.	685	Mons with the stamp of Ianus.
246, he contemned poverty.	Mirrors of divers sorts and their reflexions.	950	face and the propensity of sleep.
ibid	Mirth to be joined with serious affairs.	536	Many with the stamp of a Bee, Sheep, and a Swine.
Metrodorus his letters commending bodily pleasure.	Milogyne a Temple of Hercules.	975	Moon at full what effects it hath.
488, professeth ignorance in history and poetry.	Mithridates, one who for eating and drinking won the best game.	537	Moon slow, and of a feeble heat.
485, his grosse opinion of pleasure.	537, surnamed Dionysius.	ib	Moons upon the shoulders of the noblest Senators in Rome.
he vaunteth for rescuing Myrrha.	K. Mithridates escaped death by	716	Moon of what substance it is.
921, he scorneth Lycurgus Solon, and such.	ibid	959	Moon
ibid			
Metal mines that have failed to bring forth Ore.			
Mezentius King of the Tuscans.			
Micra her virtuous dead.			
most barbarously misused by one Lucius.			
ibid			
Mice of the water detected of Zoroastres and the Magi.			
Mice conceiv'd by licking salt.			
ibid			
Midas upon a melancholy killed			

## The Table.

the type of this world's mutability.	716	thens.	614	Musick Chromatick.	486
Moon a most pure mirror.	946	Mules why barren.	691	Musick harmonical.	486
at full Moon women have cast their child-birth.	717	a Mule rewarded at Athens.	ibid	Musick highly regarded in old time.	1024
whether the Moon bee earth.	948, 951	a Muller hard to be caught.	788	Musick commend'd.	216
the Moons substance.	675	Mulius.	521	Musick fitter for merry banquets then for sorrow and sadness.	621
the Moon whether it be a dimme fire.	947	Multitude not to be flattered and pleased.	5	the use of Musick.	1026
the Moons three motions.	962	Mummus moved to pity with the verses cited by a young Lad.	644	Mist or new Wine doth not soove inebriate or make drunk.	568
her magnitude.	956	Murderers of the Poet Ibycus revealed by their own words.	166	how it continueth sweet long.	829
from the Sun.	ibid	Musica, what houses.	117	Mutability of this life.	420
Moon why it falleth not.	948	Muses why called in Greekusæa, how they be severally employed.	656	Mycalæ the blind mouse deified by the Egyptians.	582
the Moons form or figure.	675	Muses three, named Hypate, Mæse, and Nete.	653	Myconos what it is.	530
Moon within the confines of the earth.	651	Muses why nine.	ibid	Mymætes, an attribute to God.	105
her seven shapes.	676	Muses at first but three.	652	Myrtioninus, an attribute of Ius.	700
her illuminations.	ibid	they be many.	653	Myro her piteous death.	407
her monthly occultations.	ib	Muses named Mæadæ.	552	Myronides his Apophthegme.	344
how she is illumined from the Sun.	954	Musromes of Italy.	504	Mirth burnt in perfume by the Egyptians at noon.	1072
the Moons face, or unequal apparition therein.	676	Musromes whether they breed by thunder.	577	Mirthina a sumptuous Strumpet.	766
the face appearing in the Moon, and the cause thereof.	946	Musical discourses rejected by Epicurus.	486	Myrtle why not used in the Chapel of the goddess Bona.	699
the Moon hath divers denominations.	1082	Musick how to be employed.	1018	consecrated to Venus.	ibid
the Moon inhabited.	675, 960, 961, &c.	Musick arising from three causes.	536	it is always green.	562
the Moon worketh moist effects.	962	Musick used in war among the Lacedæmonians.	394	Mylon his Apophthegme to Chilon.	719
the Moon is named Pseudophænes.	676	Musick or melody of three kinds.	653		
Moon-shine hurtful to babes, and for sleep.	653	Musick { Phrygian, } 1022			
Moon how farre distant from the Sun.	676	{ Dorian, } 1022			
the tale of the Moon and her mother.	278	{ Lydian, } 1022			
Moral vertue what it is.	54	Musick sorteth well with martial Knights.	1036		
Morrows after Kalends, Nones, and Ides, dismal days.	701	Musick why used at feasts.	1028		
Motes in the Sun.	610	Musick necessary in the managing of the state.	1027		
Mothers love their sons better then their daughters.	264	the effects of Musick in a common wealth.	ibid		
they ought to suckle their own babes.	3, how tender they be over their infants.	laws of Musick, not to be broken.	106		
Moony with the stamp of a Bee, Sheep, and a Swine.	708	Musical notes, Mæse, Hypate and Nete, answerable to the three faculties of mans soul.	840		
Moon at full what effects it hath.	557	Musick doth inebriate more then wine.	614		
Moon slow, and of a feeble heat.	953	Musicks complaint to Injustice.	1025		
Moons upon the shoulders of the noblest Senators in Rome.	716	Musicians ditties of what matter they are to be made.	21		
Moon of what substance it is.	967, 959	Musick plain commended in Lacedæmon.	392		
Moon					

N

Names among the Romanes men have three, women two.

Fore-Names when given to the Roman children.

Fore-Names how they be written.

Names of gods, how to be taken in Poets.

Names of vertues attributed to vices the overthrow of states.

Namertes his Apophthegme.

Naphtha about Babylon.

Narcissus, why the Daffodill is so called.

Narrations Historical, resembling pictures.

Nature country which is properly called.

Nature what it is.

Dddd 3

Natural

## The Table.

Natural bear how it is excited.	502	Nestor and Calchas compared together.	32	male, 723, the first square triangle number.	ibid
Natural is finite; unnatural infinite.	641	Nestor mild in rebuking, 327 why esteemed above Lacties, or Peleus.	320	Nicbe over-forsown for the loss of her children. 433, her children stume by Latona.	219
Natural Philosophy wherein it consisteth.	658	Nette, 653, how it is derived.	840	The Lady Niobes daughters killed.	934
Natural things.	659	Nets why they rot more in Winter than in Summer.	824	Nifus built the City Nifra.	
Nawne contented with a little.		News forbidden to be harkened after in the City Locri.	114	Nobility of wlat stem.	731
Nature of what power for attaining to virtues.	2	Nicanor won by the liberality of King Philip.	336	Nobility of birth alone, not commended.	46
Nauplius afflicted by the Chalcidians.	735	Nicias that is to say, victory, whereof it is derived.	632	Nobis, what they be.	781
Nauicaa in Homer, how to be praised or blamed.	29	Nicias the Captain by his superstition overt brown.	218	Noise from without sooner heard within than contrariwise.	831
Nauicaa by Homer washing her cloaths.	640	Nicias the painter how much addicted to his work.	318	Noqui, why Lawes be so called.	558
Nautia.	505	Nicocles King of Cyprus his liberality to Iocates.	758	Noqui in musick of sundry sorts.	519
Neera the wife of Hyppicreon enamoured of Promedon.	403	Nicocrates his tyranny. 410, murdered by Daphnis.	411	Nones.	762
Necessitas non habet legem.	320	Nicola certain dates, why so called.	632	After Noone Romans made no League or Treaty of peace.	719
Necessity.	653, 845	Nicolaus a Peripatetic Philosopher.	ibid	Noses hawked in estimation among the Persians, and why?	331
Of Necessity what is the essence.	669	Nicomedes King of Bythmia made himselfe vassal to the Romans.	1038	No thing too much.	433, 284. This Mot hath ministered matter of many questions and disputations.
Necessary defined.	861	Nicostratus his Apophthegme.	350	Nothing.	1101
Necessity what it is.	660	Nicostratus a concurrent of Phaulus, and detector of his bandery.	350	Notions of divers sorts.	898
Nedra in Homer.	813	Nicturus a star, the same that Phanon or Saturn.	964	Notus the winde, why so called.	840
Negligence corrupteth the goodness of Nature.	2	Nicotrata the daughter of Phodrus.	779	Nurses who are to be chosen.	3
good Neighbors, a great treasure.	344	Niger the great Rhetorician died with overtraining his voice.	509	Nourishment and growth in animal creatures.	695
Nemeanus what it signifyeth.	1053	Nightingales teach their young ones to sing.	792	Nourishment or feeding of infants.	3
Nemetes what Demon.	150	Niloxenus.	269	Nurture, see education.	835
Nemesis what it is.	630	Nilus water is thought to pingulise and make corpulent.	1049	Novv.	ibid
Nepenthes.	528	Nilus water why drawn in the night by sailors for their drink.	634	Nymphalvia, 701, named, Non.	ibid
Nephalia, 712, 50, what sacrifices.	510	Nessus the Centaure.	712	Nymphs age.	1080
Nephece or Nephis born.	1052	Nessus the water.	662	Nymphs Nomades.	1083
what other names shee hath.	ibid	Nestor fed the ambitious humour of Ulysses.	543		
Neptune Equestris.	709				
Neptune why portrayed with a threeforked mace.	ibid				
Neptune surnamed Phytalmios.	638, 590, surnamed agorastion.				
Neptune and Iupiter compared together.	34				
Neptune many times vanquished.	649				
Nero abused and corrupted by flatterers.	81				
his soul tormented in hell.	461				
he hardly escaped murdering.	161				
Nessus the Centaure.	712				
Nessus the water.	662				
Nestor fed the ambitious humour of Ulysses.	543				

Nundine

## The Table.

Nundina what they were.	708	Old age bereft of bodily pleasures.	316	from Oracles why poese is rejected.	976
Nympha in breeding of bees what it is.	449	Old age whereof it cometh.	694	Oracles why given in verse and obscurely in old time.	977, 978
Nymphæus a Captaine of the Melians.	401	Old age hath recreations. 317, it is freed from envy.	318	Oracles why more plain of late time then before.	ib.
Nymphs age.	1080	Old age how to be feared from contempt.	319	an Oracle bidding the Greeks to double the altar at Delos.	983
Nymphs Nomades.	1083	Old men fit for to be Rulers.	ibid	Oracle of Lebadia.	1076
		Old age how it is commendable for government.	320	Oracles why for the most part they ceased.	ibid
		Old men unfit to marry.	ibid	Oracle of Ptoas Apollo.	ibid
		Old age why honoured most in Lacedæmon.	228	Oracle of Amphiarus.	1077
		Old age not unfit for government.	314, it should not be idle.	Oracle of Tegyra.	ibid
		Old folk why they drink meer wine.	ibid	Oracle at Delphi in old time not frequented.	1076
		538, wherefore dull in all senses.	ibid	there: sons discussing why Oracles cease.	1092
		Old folk see better as far off.	538, they love to be asked many questions.	Oracles by what mean they be performed.	1093
		Old men soon drunken.	ibid	Oracle at Delphi, by what occasion it began first.	1094
		Old men dry.	563, why called in Greek, Theysses.	Oracle of Tyrelas how it came to fault.	1095
		Old age to what accidents subject.	564	Oracles of Mopius and of Amphilocheus.	ibid
		Oligarchy what it is.	771	Oracle of Mopius, how it was tried by the government of Cilicia.	ibid
		Olive tree wood, for what fire it serveth best.	557	Orators pleading at the Pythick games for the prize.	587
		Olympus an ancient musician.	1020	Oratory wherein it consisteth.	653
		Q. Olympias words of a Thessalian woman whom the King her husband lov'd.	262, her speech of a young gentleman newly married.	Orator, whereof der v d.	709
		Odsurs smell better a farre off.	538	Orators and warriors compared together.	726
		Oeconomy. See House government.		Order in the composition of the world.	550
		Oedipus overtrown by his own curiosity. 117, he plucketh out his own eyes.	183	Order belongeth to God.	552
		Oenomaus loved to have a race of good horses.	739	Order in fests.	550
		Oenuphis the Priest and Prophet of Heliopolis in Egypt.	887	the Order of setting guests at the table.	551
		Oecolycus his funerals.	736	Onobatis, who she was.	728
		Oconoloe.	720	Onochus King of the Amians.	736, killed by his own men.
		Oconus the sonne of Lyfimbicus.	962	Onomades his counsel to have always some adversaries.	301, a great politician. ibid. his Apophthegmes.
		Ogygie what Island.	962	Onion what star.	1055
		Orages who they be.	24	Onolcelis how engendered.	749
		Orages of divers significations.	24, an Onion commended by Homer.	Opium what it is, and the force thereof.	561
		Ona. An Onion commended by Homer.	580	as the Oracles why they made a great found with bassons, &c.	699
		Onions rejected by Ihs Priests, and why.	1050	Oracles of Apollo delivered in rude verse.	969
		Oak branches made the Civic coronet at Rome.	720	Oracle at Delphi why it hath given over to answer in verse.	970
		Oaks honoured.	614	Oracles delivered in prose.	974
		The Old age of divers Princes and Rulers, happy in their government.	315		

## The Table.

Orus or Horus the elder, the same that Apollo. 1052	Orus his answers to his father Otrius. 1054. hee vanquished Typhon in jundry battels. 1054	Oryx a beest observing the Dog-stars rising. 744	Otrius what he signifieth. 637	Otrius, how the name is derived. 1067, 1064, 1051. how he is portrayed. ibid	Otrius the Sonne, and Isis the Moon. 1052	of Otrius and Isis the Fable 1052	Otrius borne. ibid. hee reduced Egypt to civility. 1052. supposed to be Bacchus. ibid	found by Isis. 1054. why there be many monuments and sepulchres of his. ibid. his body, where interred. 1055. his corps dismembered by Typhon. 1054	Otrius, Isis, and Typhon allegorized. 1058	Otrius shut up in a chise, what it signifieth. 1061	Otrius his sepulchre. 1062. how he is portrayed Hieroglyphically. 1064. his policy to vanquish his enemies and to rule his subjects. 1070	Otrius robes. 1072	Otriusus. 117	Otriusus, who they be. 118	the Oath that the judges in Egypt took. 333	Oaths not rashly to be taken. 703	Oath of the Pythagoreans. 660	The Other. 843	Othryades his valour. 742	Othryades tranduced by Herodotus. 1003	Otis a bird delighting in the fellowship of horses. 783	Overweening in young men is to be rid away. 42	Ovili, how the name came at Rome. 708	Oxyrynchos, what people. 1050	Oxyrynchos, what fish. ibid	Oyl caught transparency and transparency in the sea. 824	Oyl why Homer calleth Moist. 606	Oyl the only moist and liquid thing that will burn. 606	Oyl best in the top of the vessel. 612	Oyl will not be mingled with any liquor. 553, 613	Oyl an enemy unto plants. 553.
Orus or Horus the elder, the same that Apollo. 1052	Orus his answers to his father Otrius. 1054. hee vanquished Typhon in jundry battels. 1054	Oryx a beest observing the Dog-stars rising. 744	Otrius what he signifieth. 637	Otrius, how the name is derived. 1067, 1064, 1051. how he is portrayed. ibid	Otrius the Sonne, and Isis the Moon. 1052	of Otrius and Isis the Fable 1052	Otrius borne. ibid. hee reduced Egypt to civility. 1052. supposed to be Bacchus. ibid	found by Isis. 1054. why there be many monuments and sepulchres of his. ibid. his body, where interred. 1055. his corps dismembered by Typhon. 1054	Otrius, Isis, and Typhon allegorized. 1058	Otrius shut up in a chise, what it signifieth. 1061	Otrius his sepulchre. 1062. how he is portrayed Hieroglyphically. 1064. his policy to vanquish his enemies and to rule his subjects. 1070	Otrius robes. 1072	Otriusus. 117	Otriusus, who they be. 118	the Oath that the judges in Egypt took. 333	Oaths not rashly to be taken. 703	Oath of the Pythagoreans. 660	The Other. 843	Othryades his valour. 742	Othryades tranduced by Herodotus. 1003	Otis a bird delighting in the fellowship of horses. 783	Overweening in young men is to be rid away. 42	Ovili, how the name came at Rome. 708	Oxyrynchos, what people. 1050	Oxyrynchos, what fish. ibid	Oyl caught transparency and transparency in the sea. 824	Oyl why Homer calleth Moist. 606	Oyl the only moist and liquid thing that will burn. 606	Oyl best in the top of the vessel. 612	Oyl will not be mingled with any liquor. 553, 613	Oyl an enemy unto plants. 553.

P

Orus or Horus the elder, the same that Apollo. 1052	Orus his answers to his father Otrius. 1054. hee vanquished Typhon in jundry battels. 1054	Oryx a beest observing the Dog-stars rising. 744	Otrius what he signifieth. 637	Otrius, how the name is derived. 1067, 1064, 1051. how he is portrayed. ibid	Otrius the Sonne, and Isis the Moon. 1052	of Otrius and Isis the Fable 1052	Otrius borne. ibid. hee reduced Egypt to civility. 1052. supposed to be Bacchus. ibid	found by Isis. 1054. why there be many monuments and sepulchres of his. ibid. his body, where interred. 1055. his corps dismembered by Typhon. 1054	Otrius, Isis, and Typhon allegorized. 1058	Otrius shut up in a chise, what it signifieth. 1061	Otrius his sepulchre. 1062. how he is portrayed Hieroglyphically. 1064. his policy to vanquish his enemies and to rule his subjects. 1070	Otrius robes. 1072	Otriusus. 117	Otriusus, who they be. 118	the Oath that the judges in Egypt took. 333	Oaths not rashly to be taken. 703	Oath of the Pythagoreans. 660	The Other. 843	Othryades his valour. 742	Othryades tranduced by Herodotus. 1003	Otis a bird delighting in the fellowship of horses. 783	Overweening in young men is to be rid away. 42	Ovili, how the name came at Rome. 708	Oxyrynchos, what people. 1050	Oxyrynchos, what fish. ibid	Oyl caught transparency and transparency in the sea. 824	Oyl why Homer calleth Moist. 606	Oyl the only moist and liquid thing that will burn. 606	Oyl best in the top of the vessel. 612	Oyl will not be mingled with any liquor. 553, 613	Oyl an enemy unto plants. 553.
Orus or Horus the elder, the same that Apollo. 1052	Orus his answers to his father Otrius. 1054. hee vanquished Typhon in jundry battels. 1054	Oryx a beest observing the Dog-stars rising. 744	Otrius what he signifieth. 637	Otrius, how the name is derived. 1067, 1064, 1051. how he is portrayed. ibid	Otrius the Sonne, and Isis the Moon. 1052	of Otrius and Isis the Fable 1052	Otrius borne. ibid. hee reduced Egypt to civility. 1052. supposed to be Bacchus. ibid	found by Isis. 1054. why there be many monuments and sepulchres of his. ibid. his body, where interred. 1055. his corps dismembered by Typhon. 1054	Otrius, Isis, and Typhon allegorized. 1058	Otrius shut up in a chise, what it signifieth. 1061	Otrius his sepulchre. 1062. how he is portrayed Hieroglyphically. 1064. his policy to vanquish his enemies and to rule his subjects. 1070	Otrius robes. 1072	Otriusus. 117	Otriusus, who they be. 118	the Oath that the judges in Egypt took. 333	Oaths not rashly to be taken. 703	Oath of the Pythagoreans. 660	The Other. 843	Othryades his valour. 742	Othryades tranduced by Herodotus. 1003	Otis a bird delighting in the fellowship of horses. 783	Overweening in young men is to be rid away. 42	Ovili, how the name came at Rome. 708	Oxyrynchos, what people. 1050	Oxyrynchos, what fish. ibid	Oyl caught transparency and transparency in the sea. 824	Oyl why Homer calleth Moist. 606	Oyl the only moist and liquid thing that will burn. 606	Oyl best in the top of the vessel. 612	Oyl will not be mingled with any liquor. 553, 613	Oyl an enemy unto plants. 553.

## The Table.

see, but not indeed. 586	Pateacion, a notable thief. 23	Pater patratus who he was. 713	Pantheus of Socrates. 10. 107.	King Agathocles. 107. of King Antigonus. 104. of Archytas. 107. of Archytas and Plato. 10	Pantheus commended. 199	Pantheus what it signifieth. ibid	Pantheus and Patres Confcripti at Rome, who they were. 713	Patroclus his funeral obsequies and games of prize. 587	Patroclus commended himself. 255	Paulus Emilius his Apophthegmes. 355. the offe that hee observed of his daughter Tertia. ibid his infortuny in the losse of his children. 356. his contempt of gold and silver. ibid compared with King Pericles. 130	curious in the dispo of feast. 529. his fortune. 510	Paulanias his treason and death. 744	Paulanias the son of Cleombrotus his Apophthegmes. 385	Paulanias the son of Plistonax his Apophthegmes. 385	Paulanias troubled in conscience for the abuse and murder of Cleonice. 450	Panion the Painter, and the tale of him. 968	Plach dedicated to Harpocrates. 1069	Pedetes. 740	Pedias a faction in Athens. 938	Pegasus Bellerophon's horse. 135	Painting a mute Poetie. 79	Painters excellent, were Athenians. 805	a Painter who had painted cocks workfully. 86	Peitho. 517. her image why placed with Venus. 259	Relamides fibres, why so called. 333	Pelias Achilles spear, Patrocles would not meddle with. 80	Pelopidas his Apophthegmes. 352	Pequasades, what it signifieth. 1066	Pequasades. 1090, 1105	Peque came Talsu. 1090	Pentagons. 816	Pentathus. 587	Peneleus. 736	People are to be led by the ears. 289	Peptomene, whereof derived. 882	Perdicca his moderation toward King Alexander. 1045	Periander why he burnt in his wives funerals her habiliments. 495. master of the banquet of the seven Sages. 268. hee was none of the seven Sages. 1099	Periander tyrant of Ambracia, killed by his own Ganymede or Catamite. 942	Pericles noted by Cratinus for his flowell. 809. hee praist himself without blame and envie. 253. why he disrobed the image of Maerva. 233	his Apophthegmes. 345	his Apophthegme as touching speech not premeditate. 6	how he admonished himself. 534	surnamed Olympius. 436	how he bare the death of his two sons. ibid	Pericles eloquent. 388. a singular politician. 300	Periclitus an ancient Musician. 1010	Peripneumonia. 610	Periclylasmus. 715	Persephone or Proserpina. 965	Persian women their promesse. 400	Persian Kings allow their slaves and dogs to be served from their own table. 614	Persian King how he entertained Antalcides the Lacedaemonian. 624	Persian Kings of what water they drink. 224	Persian King called by the Asians the great King. 339	Persian Kings not drunken in the presence of their wives. 261. they count all slaves but their wives. 242	Persians not merry at the board in their wives presence. 527	Persian Sages procure their owne death. 329	Persuasion. 653	Pestilence remedied by making great fires. 1072	the great Pestilence at Athens in Thucydides. 641	Petron maintaineth 183. worlds. 1085	Petromus a flatterer about Nero. 337	the Emperor. 81	Phaeacians in Homer Penelopes woovers, eat no fish. 638	Phadra compasseth the death of Hippolitus. 749	Phadus a Captain of the Thebans. 779	Phaenician Letters in number 16. invented by Cadmus. 646	Phanion what star. 673. the same that Saturn. 964	Phaethon what star. 673	Phagilus who it is. 731	Phagrus the fish. 188	Phalaris hated of the Agrigentines. 311	Phalaris tyrant. 750	Phalaris abused by flatterers. 77. he justly executed Perillus. 750	Phallus. 176, 1054	Phailephoria what feast. 1052	Phaneus, an Epithet of Apollo. 114	Phantasm whereof derived. 684	Pharos the Isle, become part of the continent of Egypt. 1061	Pharicum a poison. 246	Pharalicia her piteous death. 970	Pharynx, what pipe it is. 710	Phaulius an Argive prostituted his own wife. 933	Phryx signifieth both the beech tree and the mast. 26	Phemius a musician. 1018	Phemius King of the Emians. 731	Phiditia. 89, 270, 460, 609	Phidon his notorious treachery. 775	Philadelphus a fit Epithet for a Prince. 252	Phlammon an ancient musician. 1018	Philanthropon what music. 1010	Philemon an old Poet. 317	Philemon how he was punished by Magas. 62	Philippus tyrannizing in Thebes with Archias, murdered by Charon and Lythineus. 998	Philip, Callias his tesser. 542	King Philip of Macedony reproved by a Musician. 547. 1036	his commendation and Apophthegmes. 336	his Apophthegme as touching the Greek revolting from him to T. Quintius. 1000.	he suspecteth his owne prosperity. 337	disgraceful
--------------------------	--------------------------------	--------------------------------	--------------------------------	---	-------------------------	-----------------------------------	--	---	----------------------------------	---	--	--------------------------------------	--	--	--	--	--------------------------------------	--------------	---------------------------------	----------------------------------	----------------------------	---	---	---	--------------------------------------	--	---------------------------------	--------------------------------------	------------------------	------------------------	----------------	----------------	---------------	---------------------------------------	---------------------------------	---	---	---	--	-----------------------	---	--------------------------------	------------------------	---	--	--------------------------------------	--------------------	--------------------	-------------------------------	-----------------------------------	--	---	---	---	---	--	---	-----------------	---	---	--------------------------------------	--------------------------------------	-----------------	---	--	--------------------------------------	--	---	-------------------------	-------------------------	-----------------------	---	----------------------	---	--------------------	-------------------------------	------------------------------------	-------------------------------	--	------------------------	-----------------------------------	-------------------------------	--	---	--------------------------	---------------------------------	-----------------------------	-------------------------------------	--	------------------------------------	--------------------------------	---------------------------	---	---	---------------------------------	---	--	--	--	-------------

## The Table.

disgraceful of fortune. 412. his his clemency. <i>ibid.</i> how he sa- ved the credit of his host that in- vited him. 533, his patience. <i>ibid.</i> his bounty to Nicanor. 336. made better by flanders of enemies. <i>ibid.</i> his pleasant conceit to his Chirurgian. <i>ibid.</i> he playeth with the names He- cateros, and Amphoterus. <i>ibid.</i> his comparison of Demo- sthenes Orations with Ilocra- tes. 762. his counsell to his sonne Alexander. 337. his liberality. 338. his demeanor at Chironia. 626. hee re- commendeth to Alexander the Philosopher Aristotle. 337. wounded in the eye. 742. hee checketh a Judge commended unto him by Antipater. <i>ibid.</i> his behaviour to Machetas in case of wrong and judgement. 338. noted for raising the City Olynthus. 45. his upright- ness in judgement. 338. his trust in Antipater. <i>ibid.</i> re- proved mildly by a minstrel. <i>ibid.</i> 1. his disagreement with his wife and sonne. taxed by Dema- rius. <i>ibid.</i> reproved by an old woman. 348	Of Philoophy three parts. 653. 807 Philosophy Active or Practic. 658 Philosophers how to be deemed. 1031 Philosophers, their sundry opinions of the gods, and principles of the world. 1064, 1063 Philotas a minion of King Alex- ander, by his own folly over- thrown. 1042 Philotimus his answer to a pa- ient of his. 48 Philoxenus the sonne of Eryxis a glutton. 498 Philoxenus solliciteth King Alex- ander to wantonness. 490 Philoxenus the Musician made a sute of all that he had. 237 Philocon. 740 Phœbus. 409 Phocion his poverty. 346 croste into the common people. <i>ibid.</i> how he took his death. 347 Phocion compared with Demo- sthenes. 292. a just ruler. 347 his magnanimity at his death. <i>ibid.</i> hee reitorced a scuffle upon Demades. 347. commended for his selfe-praise. 346. aged and yet a good ruler. 347. a frugal man. 174	Phryne the famous courtesan, a- solved by the Judges for her beauty. 766 See more of her. 504, 927, 973 her children Leccatus and Par- thanius strangely sited. Phrynichus and Euclylus brought into Tragedies narrations pathet- ical. 558 Phrynis an ancient Musician. 1018 Phthois. Phthoræ, what they be. 634 Phygadotheres, the name given to a Pursuant. 763 Phylactes a Gaster in Cumes. 727 Phyllidas conspireth with Pello- pidas and others to surprize and murder the tyrants of Thebes. 981. and other of the Tyrants of Thebes. 991 Phylonome deflowred by Mars. 150 Phyfica a City. 731 A Physician challenged all men to drinking, and by what means. 537 Physicians reproved by Paulanus. 385 Phyficke how it began first. 502 Physicians we ought to be unto our selves. 614 Phythalmius. 54 Phytmelon what it signifieth. 729	Piænes 347 his patience toward Thraibulus 348 his apoph- thegms <i>ibid.</i> his speech to the peo- ple 527 Pimæres industrious 787 their cave and holes 788 Pistites wine 588 Pity, that gave answers in ora- cles, what kind of men she was. <i>ibid.</i> Pithia when she was restrained from verse and poetical terms 975, 976 Pit-water why lesse nutritive then other 830 Pittacus his answer to the King of Lydia 149 crossed with a browed wife 126 Pittacium a piece of ground 1003 Pittacus grinding corne 278 mo- dest in receiving honours 309 debauched by Hierodotus 1002 Pittacus elected Ruler by all the Mætylenians 938 Pittacus his valour 1005 Pitch-tree garlands 589 Pitch consecrated both to Neptune and to Bacchus 589 the reason thereof 590 Pitch accented well with wine and wine vessels 510 Place, what it is 668 Distribution of Place at feasts and meetings observed in old time 530 observed among the gods and goddesses 530 Places at a feast how to be disposed 526 which be most honorable 527 Places at a table 279 of curious and sumptuous Plates the speech of a Lacedæmonian 621 Planctæ what rocks 278 Plants and herbs that can abide no wet 961 Plants whether they be animals or no 694 how they grow <i>ibid.</i> Platoes suppers commended by Timotheus Plato reprefsed his own anger 425, 426 excused and commended 610 another Chieftain, 10 cure the soule 618 his censure of Lyfias oration 49 his supposed faiber Apollo <i>ibid.</i> his opinion touching the principles of all things 550 his nativity or or birth day solemnized 617 his fable of Eris and Harmoni- us how to be understood 648 his text Timæus expounded	843 Poets in old time had their com- bates for the best game 587 916 a good politician 920 Poets and Poetriesse wan the victory at the solemn games 587 Poetry referred to Musick 655 Poets and Philoophers com- pared 21 Poetrie an inducement and train- ning to Philoophy 45 Poetry standeth more upon fine invention of fables than words 5 or verses 807 Poets wicked in Poets, how to be reconciled 23 Poets wicked in Poets how to be read <i>ibid.</i> Pogonias the bearded blazing star 677 Polemon a ruffian reclaimed by Xenocrates 94 Polemon a great Antiquary 587 Polemon by his patience repre- sented the anger of another 108 Poletes who 734 Politic or government of the Persians 771 Politic or government of the Spartans 771 of the Athenians <i>ibid.</i> Politic and Politicians 286 Pollis 402 Politick government joynd with Philoophy 7 Politix hath many significations 772 Politions feast 533 Polium a stinking herbe 75 Pollux kinde to his brother Ca- stor 150 kinde to a picke-thanke for whispering a tale against his brother 149 Polys his answer to the Tro- ians and Greeks 333 Polus a famous allour in Trage- dies 317 Polliager a notorious bandet to his owne wife 29 Polyarchus brother of Eryxo complotteb to murder Larc- chus 415 Polycephales what song 1018 Polyeritidas his apophthegm 386 Polycrete died for joy 408 Polycrite her vertuous deed <i>ib.</i> Polyerithus a great Architect 736 Polydorus
---	---	---	--	--

## The Table.

thenians 347 his patience toward Thraibulus 348 his apoph- thegms <i>ibid.</i> his speech to the peo- ple 527 Pimæres industrious 787 their cave and holes 788 Pistites wine 588 Pity, that gave answers in ora- cles, what kind of men she was. <i>ibid.</i> Pithia when she was restrained from verse and poetical terms 975, 976 Pit-water why lesse nutritive then other 830 Pittacus his answer to the King of Lydia 149 crossed with a browed wife 126 Pittacium a piece of ground 1003 Pittacus grinding corne 278 mo- dest in receiving honours 309 debauched by Hierodotus 1002 Pittacus elected Ruler by all the Mætylenians 938 Pittacus his valour 1005 Pitch-tree garlands 589 Pitch consecrated both to Neptune and to Bacchus 589 the reason thereof 590 Pitch accented well with wine and wine vessels 510 Place, what it is 668 Distribution of Place at feasts and meetings observed in old time 530 observed among the gods and goddesses 530 Places at a feast how to be disposed 526 which be most honorable 527 Places at a table 279 of curious and sumptuous Plates the speech of a Lacedæmonian 621 Planctæ what rocks 278 Plants and herbs that can abide no wet 961 Plants whether they be animals or no 694 how they grow <i>ibid.</i> Platoes suppers commended by Timotheus Plato reprefsed his own anger 425, 426 excused and commended 610 another Chieftain, 10 cure the soule 618 his censure of Lyfias oration 49 his supposed faiber Apollo <i>ibid.</i> his opinion touching the principles of all things 550 his nativity or or birth day solemnized 617 his fable of Eris and Harmoni- us how to be understood 648 his text Timæus expounded	843 Poets in old time had their com- bates for the best game 587 916 a good politician 920 Poets and Poetriesse wan the victory at the solemn games 587 Poetry referred to Musick 655 Poets and Philoophers com- pared 21 Poetrie an inducement and train- ning to Philoophy 45 Poetry standeth more upon fine invention of fables than words 5 or verses 807 Poets wicked in Poets, how to be reconciled 23 Poets wicked in Poets how to be read <i>ibid.</i> Pogonias the bearded blazing star 677 Polemon a ruffian reclaimed by Xenocrates 94 Polemon a great Antiquary 587 Polemon by his patience repre- sented the anger of another 108 Poletes who 734 Politic or government of the Persians 771 Politic or government of the Spartans 771 of the Athenians <i>ibid.</i> Politic and Politicians 286 Pollis 402 Politick government joynd with Philoophy 7 Politix hath many significations 772 Politions feast 533 Polium a stinking herbe 75 Pollux kinde to his brother Ca- stor 150 kinde to a picke-thanke for whispering a tale against his brother 149 Polys his answer to the Tro- ians and Greeks 333 Polus a famous allour in Trage- dies 317 Polliager a notorious bandet to his owne wife 29 Polyarchus brother of Eryxo complotteb to murder Larc- chus 415 Polycephales what song 1018 Polyeritidas his apophthegm 386 Polycrete died for joy 408 Polycrite her vertuous deed <i>ib.</i> Polyerithus a great Architect 736 Polydorus
--	--

# The Table.

Polydorus the sonne of Alcama- nus his apophthegms	red 1028 how they serve in speech 843	Prives flowers what vertue they have 503
Polymnestus a Musician	386 Praise by another is pleasing 262	Proba cania what they be 503
Polysperchon how he entertained 529 an impudent craver	1018 Praise the best found 316	Procles the tyrant of Epidaurus 593
Polymnus	815 selfe-Praise odious 16	Proclus the first that erected a library. 486
the Polyps head	16 Praisers to be taken heed of 77	Prolomæus Kεgυvov. 450
Polyp fish how he changeth colour	816 Cicero misliked, and Scipio com- mended for selfe-Praise	K. Prolomæus Philopater sacri- ficed Elephants. 791
Polymester murderer of Polydo- tus	249 of progresse in vertue and philo- sophy the signs 204, 205	K. Prolomæus abused by slaver- ers. 77. a lover of learning. 81.
Polyzelus how he became blinde	741 Promethea 517	bee represseth his anger. 103
Pomgranates why called 3-lyova	505 Praise and dispraise how to be u- sed in the education of Children	Prolomæus Soter translated the Colosse of Sarapis unto Alexan- dria. 1057
C. Pompeius an enemy to belly obese 360 his clemencie to the Mamertines surnamed	10 Praise overmuch hurtful to them Prometheus the author of wis- dome and foresight 1048	Pulse, why forbidden to bee eaten. 721
Magnus by Sylla ibid his name confirmed by Servilius	37 Praise properly due to vertue Promises of friend, and flatterers how they differ 85	Punishment ought to be inflicted at leisure. 445
361 noted for effeminate wan- sonnesse 199 his apophthegms	636 Prandium, that is to say, a dinner whereof derived 313, 32	Punishment of servants how to bee ordered. 104
361 his marshall just ce ibid he died the same day of the year whereon he was borne	518 Prater is traitour to himselfe Pronome a kinde of Nounne 843	Purgation for students. 511
518 killed by Prolomæus	642 much Prating gave occasion that Athens was forced by assault	Purgative physick taught us by brave benefits. 794
C. Pompilius his apophthegme	162 Proposition consisteth of Nounne and Verbe 840	Purgatory of the Panims and Philosophers. 966
110-11 who they be	261 Prentice or Prinelle the citie why so called 751	Purple, death in Homer. 11
Popee juce	751 Prentice refuse for his commu- nity 304	Purple fishes how sociable they be. 800
Popular government which is best	320 Presbeion what it is 118	Putrefaction what it is. 634
Popular piase to be avoided	37 Prestler 710	Pyanepion what month. 1066
Porcius Selinus	753 Prelitties or Laris 710	Pyladion. 622
Porcena his patients behaviour to Muteus	103 portrated with dogs by them ib. tormenting spirits or Devils	Pylaechos. 1059
Porcena made peace with the Ro- mans	742 Pirnces unlearned compared to Colossi 243	the Pyramis was the first body. 1088
Port of the dragon	734 Prince the image of God 243	Pyramid. 671
Portij, or Porcij the name at Rome how it arose	708 Princes hardly admit good coun- sell 242	Pyramus a like. 655
Porus to King Alexander	103 Princes why they be named 240 their secrets not to be enquired into 1066	Pyramid stoned to death. 748
of Poros and Penia the fable	1066 Princes vigilans over their sub- jects 243	Pyraichmes King of the Euboe- ans. 743. his horses. ibid
K. Porus his answer to Alexan- der the Great	1033 what prince most happy 273, 274 Effence or being of all 1085	Pyroeis, what star. 673
Postumia a Vestall nunne accus- ed for incontinencie 198 obce- ked for her light behaviour	198 ciples 53 The other Motion Station 630	Pytho his Apophthegme. 209
Postumius Albinus defeated by the Boe being removed from the Principles three of the world	630 the wisdome of men 468	Pythias sacrificed to his benefa- ctor. 735
fore, why the ashes are to be con- served	660 Prudence of beasts compared with the wisdome of men 468	K. Pyrrhus delighted to be called the Eagle. 794. his Apophtheg- mes. 735
Poverty in rulers not to be dissi- muled 311 how it is esteemed	661 Principle and element how they differ 1106	Pyrophiion. 343
Præpositi how they may be spa- riation	661 Privation 932	Pyryus what it signifieth. 729
		Pythagoras sacrificed an Ox for the invention of one Theorem. 630
		Pythagoras his precepts smell of the Egyptian Hieroglyphicks. 1051
		Pythagoras a Tuscan borne. 636
		Pythagoras how much addited to Geometry. 484. he condemned cruelty to dumb beasts. 200. he ransomed a draught of fishes. 639
		the first author of the name of Psyche.

# The Table.

Philosophers. 660. he taught in Italy. 661. his opinion of God.	665 ibid	Questors at Rome entertained Embassadors. 708
Pythagorean precepts.	665	A Quince why eaten by the new brides. 259
Pythagoras abode long in Egypt.	638	Quintertium. 646
Pythagorical dark sentences ex- pounded. 12		Quintessence. 662, 665
Pythagorean precepts not to be taken literally. 726		Quintilis, what month. 701. the same that July. 702
Pythagoreans pitiful unto dumb beasts. 200 785		Quintus his Apophthegmes. 355
Pythes the rich. 417. his virtu- ous wife. ibid. his strange death. ibid		a parle between him and King Philip. ibid. he set free all the Greek captives. ibid. his merry sale of his host at Chalkis. ibid his jest at touching Philopomen. ibid
Pytheas his Apophthegme.	346	Quires three in Lacedæmon. 253
what befell unto Pythia the Pro- phetesse at the Delphick Oracle.	1095	Quirinalia, the feast of fooler. 720
Pythia how she is to be chosen and disposed. 979, 1095		Quiris, a spear or javelin. ibid
Pythick games which were most ancient. 586		the name of Mars. ibid
Pythocles unmeasurably praised by Colotes and the Epicurems.	918	Quiritis the name of Iuno. ibid
Pythogea, what day it is. 568		
Pythones what they be. 1080		R
Pythius an Epithet of Apollo. 499, 940		Rain how engendered. 678
Python modest in his selfe praises. 251. how he avoided envy. 251		Rain-water nourisheth plants and feeds most. 821
Python wounded by Apollo. 730		Raines which be best for seeds or young plants. 822
		Rain showers named coenades. 577
		Rainbow. 678. how it appeareth. 938. how it is represented to our eye-sight. 678
		Raria. 265
		Rational or verbal Philosophy. 658
		Ravens age. 1079
		Reading what manner of exercise. 509
		A Reading school first taught by Sp. Carbilus. 712
		To teach for to Read and spell, an honourable office. 712
		Reasoni ought to guide and rule our free will. 44
		Reason or discipline powerful to attain vertue. 2
		Reason given to man in lieu of ma- ny other parts. 290
		Of Reasonable natures four kinds. 1080
		Reason how divided. 655
		Reasoning or disputing at the sa- ble. 510
		Rebukes and checks at wise mens hands be well taken. 88
		Recreation and repose to be allow- ed children in due time. 9
		Recreations allowed Governours and States-men. 318
		Recreations and pastimes allowed by Plato. 513
		Red fca. 965
		Regulus



## The Table.

Regulus a Pancratiast died with bathing and drinking upon it.	521	Roma a Trojan Lady.	398	Ruma,	520
Religious men have great comfort in the exercise of their religion.	493	Rome City whether beholden more to vertue than to fortune.	515	Rumina, a Goddess at Rome.	712
Religion the foundation of all policy and government.	919	Rome the work of fortune and ver- jointly together.	516	Rusticus his gravity.	218
Religion in the good, breedeth no desperate fear.	36	Rome the pillar of the whol world.	ibid	Rust of brass how caused.	968
Religion a mean between impiety and superstition.	221	Rome why founded and reared by the favour of fortune.	518	Rutilius a proud Usurer. 235, re- proved he is by Mufonius.	ibid
Remorse of conscience in divers.	449	Rome much subject to scarsefires.	709	S	
Repentance and remorse of con- science.	132	The Roman Demon.	523	Abbas feast of the Iewes.	584
Repletion or emptinesse, whether is more to be feared.	576	Roman Kings left their Crown to none of their children.	123	Sabbat whercof it cometh.	ibid
Repletion cause of most diseases.	506	Roman words derived from the Greeks.	636	Sabine maidens ravished.	704
Reproof of others, a thing inci- dent to old folk.	256	Romans, of their return home gave intelligence before hand to their wives.	704	Sabinus the husband of Empona.	944
Respiration how it is performed.	687	The Romanes fortunate affairs under the conduct of Cn. Pom- peius.	522	Saboi.	ibid
Revenge not best performed in an- ger.	104	Roman tongue used in all Coun- tries.	843	Sacadasan ancient Poet and mu- sician.	1019
Revenge not to be done speedily. 448. how it should be taken.	105	Romulus a martial Prince.	701	Sacred fish.	800
Revenge of enemies to forbear, is commendable.	201	Romulus and Remus their birth and generation ascribed to for- tune. 519. when begotten.	ibid	Sacred fish of children.	210
Rex Sacrorum at Rome.	713	Romulus and Remus wonder- fully preserved, how reared and brought up.	519, 520,	Sacrificing of men and women.	221
Rhadamanthus a judge of the dead.	438	Romulus translated.	519	Sacrifice how to be observed at the Oracle of Delphi.	1098
Rheius killed his brother Simulus. 756. banished by his father.	ibid	Romulus killed Remus.	702	Sacrilege strangely detected by one offender himself.	161
Rhetana her enterprise.	757	Romulus murdered by the Senate.	748	Saffron chapters what use they have.	561
Rhetorick hath three parts.	646	The Rose garland of what use it is.	560, 561	Sages in old time accounted iu- ven, were in truth but fire.	1099
Rhetra.	370	Rose, why called Pædus in Greek.	564	Sailers and sea men love to as- cend the coast of the sea.	542
Rhetra delivered by Lycurgus in prose.	974	Rosin burnt by Egyptians in the morning.	1072	Salamina a ship.	300
Rhodopis the Harlot and her be- liefs.	972	Rue growing near unto a fig tree is not so strong scented.	592	Salmatica besieged by Anniball.	403
Riches how to be regarded. 5. how to be used.	176	Rue why called Tinidave in Greek.	561	Salt highly commended. 581. pro- vokes appetite to meat and drink.	581
A Riddle as touching a Phrygian slave.	272	Rubbings or frictions which be good for students.	509	about Salt and Cumin a proverb.	596
Riddle of the King of Ethiopia unto Amasis King of Egypt.	273	Rulers ought not to depend above their living and ability.	312	Salt-fish washed in sea water is the fresher and sweeter.	540
Riddle of Cleobuline.	273	Rulers ought to love mildly and without hate. 288. how they may help and advance their friends.	298.	of Savours only the Saltish is not found in fruits.	823
Pyrdavon, what it signifieth.	24	Rulers ought to love mildly and without hate. 288. how they may help and advance their friends.	298.	Salts called xacres.	597
Pyrdavon in Musick.	1023	Rulers ought to love mildly and without hate. 288. how they may help and advance their friends.	298.	Salt why so highly honoured.	596
Right line.	837	Rulers ought to love mildly and without hate. 288. how they may help and advance their friends.	298.	it provokes wonton lust.	597
A Ring worn strait.	927	Rulers ought to love mildly and without hate. 288. how they may help and advance their friends.	298.	why called divine.	ibid
Rods and Axes why born before the head magistrates at Rome.	718	Rulers ought to love mildly and without hate. 288. how they may help and advance their friends.	298.	Salt why given to beasts.	831
Riot, youth ought to avoid.	10	Rulers must banish from themselves avarice. 308. they ought to be void of ambition.	ibid	Salt provokes appetite to food.	ibid
				it maintaineth health.	ibid
				abateth corpulency.	ibid
				it moveth to generation.	ibid
				the S A M E.	843
				Sambicus a miserable man.	729
				Sanctus a god at Rome.	704
				Saosis Queen of Byblos in Egypt.	1053
				Sapience.	642

## The Table.

Sapience, what it is.	57,	a Scholastical life.	866	Sedition at Syracusa.	314
Sapphoes sits in love.	936	Silurus and his eighty sonnes.	86	Sedition at Sardis.	ibid
Sapphoes verser.	560 937	Scilurus persuaded his children to marry.	333	Seed falling upon ox horns why they prove hard and untoward.	611
Sarapis who he was.	1057	Scolia certain songs.	529. sung at feasts.	Seed what it is.	550
Serapis or Sarapis the same that Pluto.	1058	Scipio not well thought of for leaving out Mummius a a scell.	305, why blamed otherwise.	Seed-mum a to be spared.	503
Sardanapalus his Epitaph.	1039	Scipio the elder his apophthegmes.	354. a great student.	Seed-mum whether it be a body.	ib.
Sardanapalus an effeminate person, advanced by fortune.	1039.	Scipio the younger his Apoph- thegmes.	357. his commendation.	Seed-mum three seasons.	265
Sardinians port sale.	710	Scipio the advice of Lilius.	357. not blamed in praising him- self.	Seeing in the night how it cometh.	288
Saturn the Romans sacrificed bare-headed.	699	Scipio the advice of Lilius.	357. not blamed in praising him- self.	Seleucus Callinicus how he served a blab of his tongue.	540
Saturn kept in prison by Jupiter.	964	Scipio the advice of Lilius.	357. not blamed in praising him- self.	Sella Carulis.	718
Saturn counted a terrestrial or subteranean god.	699	Scipio the advice of Lilius.	357. not blamed in praising him- self.	Self-pa-ae. 252. in what cases allowed.	253. See more in praise.
Saturn the father of verity.	ibid	Scipio the advice of Lilius.	357. not blamed in praising him- self.	Semiramis of late degree became a Queen, her brave acts.	1038.
Saturns reign.	ibid	Scipio the advice of Lilius.	357. not blamed in praising him- self.	her presumptuous ambition.	926. her sepulchre and epitaph.
The Island of Saturn.	965	Scipio the advice of Lilius.	357. not blamed in praising him- self.	P. Sempronius why he drowned his wife.	700
Saturnalia (lennized in Decem- ber).	705	Scipio the advice of Lilius.	357. not blamed in praising him- self.	Senate of Rome why so called.	322
Saturns Temple the treasury at Rome. 707. the arches for records. 708. in his reign there was justice and peace.	ibid	Scipio the advice of Lilius.	357. not blamed in praising him- self.	Senies inserted in our bodies by harmony.	1024
why portrayed with a sickle in his hand.	ibid	Scipio the advice of Lilius.	357. not blamed in praising him- self.	Senie what it is.	683
Saturn supposed to eat the prey members of Caelum or Ouranos.	708	Scipio the advice of Lilius.	357. not blamed in praising him- self.	Senies how many.	ibid
Saturn a stranger in Italy.	ibid	Scipio the advice of Lilius.	357. not blamed in praising him- self.	Senies common.	685
in Saturns Temple Emblassadors are registered.	ibid	Scipio the advice of Lilius.	357. not blamed in praising him- self.	Senten es over the Temple porch at Delphi.	731
Saturn kept prisoner after by Briar- reus.	1084	Scipio the advice of Lilius.	357. not blamed in praising him- self.	Septerian what feast.	731
Sauces provoking appetite, are to be avoided.	505	Scipio the advice of Lilius.	357. not blamed in praising him- self.	Septimontium what festival fo- lemnity.	715
Scalenon.	836	Scipio the advice of Lilius.	357. not blamed in praising him- self.	Sepulchre of Children.	733
Scamander.	738	Scipio the advice of Lilius.	357. not blamed in praising him- self.	Sepulchre of evry.	407
Scammonia a violent purgative.	512	Scipio the advice of Lilius.	357. not blamed in praising him- self.	Sermons, how to be heard with profit.	47
Scaurus his uprightness shewed to Domitius his enemy.	200	Scipio the advice of Lilius.	357. not blamed in praising him- self.	Servius Tullius a favourite of fortune. 522. strangely borne.	ibid.
Scaurus mistaked treachery even toward his enemy.	201	Scipio the advice of Lilius.	357. not blamed in praising him- self.	ibid. how he came to the crown.	ibid
Scellains, his lamentable History, and of his daughters.	776. his daughters deflowered.	Scipio the advice of Lilius.	357. not blamed in praising him- self.	Seth, what it signifieth.	1063
Scellains, his lamentable History, and of his daughters.	776. his daughters deflowered.	Scipio the advice of Lilius.	357. not blamed in praising him- self.	Sextilis what month at Rome.	1061
Scellains, his lamentable History, and of his daughters.	776. his daughters deflowered.	Scipio the advice of Lilius.	357. not blamed in praising him- self.	Sextilis is August.	706
Scellains, his lamentable History, and of his daughters.	776. his daughters deflowered.	Scipio the advice of Lilius.	357. not blamed in praising him- self.	Sextius a great student in Philoso- phy.	205
Scellains, his lamentable History, and of his daughters.	776. his daughters deflowered.	Scipio the advice of Lilius.	357. not blamed in praising him- self.	Shedons at a f. f. 559. who theye.	615. how they began
Scellains, his lamentable History, and of his daughters.	776. his daughters deflowered.	Scipio the advice of Lilius.	357. not blamed in praising him- self.	Secrets revealed the cause of much ruine.	161
Scellains, his lamentable History, and of his daughters.	776. his daughters deflowered.	Scipio the advice of Lilius.	357. not blamed in praising him- self.	Section of bodies.	667
Scellains, his lamentable History, and of his daughters.	776. his daughters deflowered.	Scipio the advice of Lilius.	357. not blamed in praising him- self.	Seditions how to be prevented.	314
Scellains, his lamentable History, and of his daughters.	776. his daughters deflowered.	Scipio the advice of Lilius.	357. not blamed in praising him- self.	and appeared.	317
Scellains, his lamentable History, and of his daughters.	776. his daughters deflowered.	Scipio the advice of Lilius.	357. not blamed in praising him- self.	Sedition dangerous at Delphi.	313
Scellains, his lamentable History, and of his daughters.	776. his daughters deflowered.	Scipio the advice of Lilius.	357. not blamed in praising him- self.	Sheep woolf-bitten why theyeeld sweetest	35

## The Table.

Sweetest flesh, 555, whether their wool breed lice. <i>ibid</i>	Smelts. 1073	hee held them infamous who in a civil contention took neither part. 313
Sybilla the Prophetesse. 966,	Smalack if it be trodden upon groweth the better. 611	Solon abused and discredited by his friends, 206, whom hee deemed happy. 79
Sickness how to be prevented, 507, how immediately occasion- ed. 695	Smalack wreath used for coronets in the Rithmic games, 590, why given with provender to Achilles horses. 592	Solon chosen jointly by all the fa- milies in Athens. 938
Sight how it is caused, 685	Smelling how it is effected, 694	Soluble how the body is to be made, is brutish. 581
Signs twelve, in the Zodiac they le deficiat. 692	Smilax a plant whereof the shadow is brutish. 581	Sons entered their Parents with heads covered, but Daughters bare-headed. 699
Sideritis the Load-stone. 1068	Smy one of the names of Typhon. 1067	Son his a Priest or Prophet of Isis in Egypt. 1051
Silenus caught by King Midas in- structeth him of life and death. 432	Smyrna enamoured of her own fa- ther Cinyras. 755	Soothsayers of divers sorts. 995
Sileni. 81	Snow how it is commeth. 678	Sophocles his answer as touching venery, 174, hee took joy in his old age. 321, hee rejoiceth for being disabled for wanton plea- sures. 532
Silence for 5. years enjoyed by the Pythagoreans. 120	Snow from out of Egypt. 666, why it thaweth so soon upon Egipt. 562	Sorrow a violent passion. 420
Silence commended. 160, 200	Snow keepeth flesh long sweet. 634	Sorrow for the dead. 427, to be rested at the first. 439
Silence of Zeno, 160, commen- dable in young men. 11	Snow preserved in warm things, as chaffe, and cloathes. 602, a most subtil and piercing substance 607	Sotades paid for his lawfull tongue. 11
Silon the bold. 521	Socrates permitted to doe what he would in his infancy, by direction from the Oracle. 989	Soteres. 837, 1040
Simonides his sage admonition to Paulanias, 412, his saying of silence and speaking, 504, hee devised four letters in the Al- phabet. 646	Socrates guided by his familiar. <i>ibid</i>	Soteria. 914
Simonides aged, 316, in his old age covetous. 318	Socrates his patience, and repres- sing choler, 10, oppositeto Alex- is the Poet. 23	Sotia or Sothis a star. 793
Sinatrus espoused Camma, 412	Socrates had a familiar. 493	Sothis what star. 1055
Sinistrum in Latine what it signi- feth, and whereof it is derived. 717	Socrates the wrestler, his precept as touching health. 509, 501	Spring and fountains dried up. 1094
Sinorix enamoured of Camma, 412, hee murdereth Sinatus. 412	Socrates the Philosopher his opi- on of the first principles. 662	Soul of man what it is according to sundry Philosophers. 54
Sinus equal according to the Sto- icks. 61	Socrates his familiar spirit, 980, his birth day solemnized, 627, he drunk poison willingly, 246, whether freezing were the fami- liar of Socrates, 985, hee brid- leth anger, 908, hee is defended against Colotes, 916, a good States-man and maintainer of Laws, 920, replete and con- stant in all his courses, 985, why he is named a Midwife or Physi- cian. 832	Soul of the world. <i>ibid</i>
Sipylus a City in Magnesia. 888	Socrates why hee was condemned and put to death, 1031, his A- pophthegme of the great King of Persia, 5, his enemies were odi- ous to the world, 193, how hee cooled his thirst, endured the shrewdnesse of Xantippe. 199	Soul of man how divided. 682
Siramines a Persian his Apoph- thegme. 331	Socrates and Plato both of one o- pinion. 662	Soul what it is. 838
Sirenes in Homer. 654	what they thought of God. 665	Soule of the world what it is. 845
Sirenes upon the stars and spheres. 653, 935	Solon opposeth himself against the designs of Plutarchus. 327	Soules infants when and how en- gendered. 881
why the Muses were called Si- renes. 654		Soule a chiefe instrument of God. 975, 84
Sisachthia in Athens what it was. 296, instituted by Solon. 1046		Soul sickness worse then disease of the body. 257
Sirius the dog star. 840		Substance of the Soul. 682
Sistrum what it signifieth. 1067		Soul hath two parts <i>ibid</i>
Six a perfect number and the mar- riage. 843		Soules estate after this life. 966
Skie called xgib. 663		Soule reasonable where it is seated. 684
Scoff's which they be wherein men delight to be scoffed. 544		Soules motion. 683
Sleep to be regarded in case of health. 507		Soule whether immortal or no. <i>ibid</i>
Sleep after supper. 510		Soules not affected only according to the body. 585
Sleep procured by cold. 565		Soules delights and food apart from the body. <i>ibid</i>
how occasioned, 693, whether it be common to body and soule. 694		Soule why it is supposed to be a light. 499
Sleep how procured by aromatical		Soules of good men after this life. 499, 500

## The Table.

Soules of the wicked after this life. 500.	his device to portray King Alex- ander. 1023	Stratocles agree to politicians at A- thens, 286, hee deluded the A- thenians. 288
Soule why called xgib. 881	A States-man what kind of person he ought to be. 287	Stratonice wife of Deiotarus, her kindnesse unto her husband. 413
Soule his device to beguile his en- emies. 386	A States-man or Governor, whe- ther hee may execute base and mean offices for the Common- wealt. 500	Straton his disloyalty unto Theo- phanes and Callithenes. 775
Sp. what it signifieth. 724	States-men are to consider the na- tures and humours of the Sub- jects under them. 288,	Strato his Apophthegme of Me- nedemus and his Scholars. 128
Space or room what it is. 668	A States-man ought first to re- form himselfe, 289, when and how he may scoff. 293	Stratoniceus his Apophthegme of the Iste Scriphos, 224, his speech concerning banishment, 225, how he taxed the Rhodians. 174
Spadix, what it is. 632	How States-men may rise to cre- dit and reputation. 294,	A wife of straw or hey why tied to the homes of cut sheafes. 552
wild Sparage adorned the new brides head. 211	Speeches short and pithy of the L- acedemonians. 85	Strength of body how to be regar- d. 5
Speech of two sorts. 237	Speculative Philosophy. 658	Struchias a scoffing slaverer. 77
Speeches premeditate performed before those which are extem- pore. 5	Speritis his resolution for his coun- try. 390	Stryx, and the wter thereof. 819
Speech with what moderation to be used. 6	Speusippus reclaimed by his Ma- ster Plato. 157	Styx what it is. 994
Speeches short and pithy of the L- acedemonians. 85	Sphagitides. 541	Sulpitius Gallus why he put away his wife. 700
Speculative Philosophy. 658	Sphinges whence they came. 468	Summer. 679
Speritis his resolution for his coun- try. 390	Sphinx held the rock. 465	The Suns substance, 673, his circle <i>ibid</i> , his magnitude, 674, his com- pare or figure. <i>ibid</i>
Speusippus reclaimed by his Ma- ster Plato. 157	Sphinges why portrayed upon the church porches in Egypt. 1050	Sun-steeds or Tropicks. 674
Sphagitides. 541	Sphingus whereof derived. 940	Sun-stain appearing in Pontus. 679
Sphinges whence they came. 468	Sthenelus and Diomedes compar- ed. 32	Sunnes Eclipse how occasioned. 674
Sphinx held the rock. 465	Sthenelus commended for praising himselfe. 249	The Sunne the Image of God. 243
Sphinges why portrayed upon the church porches in Egypt. 1050	Sthenius a resolute man for his country. 360	Sun rising how portrayed among the Egyptians. 972, 1051
Sphingus whereof derived. 940	Sthenon. 304	Sunne and Moon row in Europe. 1059
Sphragitile, what Priest. 1058	Stilbon what star. 672	to the Sun incense burned three times a day. 1064
Spiders how they weave their cob- webs. 786	Stilpo his Apophthegme of King Demetrius, His dream of Nep- tune. <i>ibid</i>	The folly of Superstitious persons. 215
Sphintharus his commendation of Epinomondas. 443	Stoicks opinion of God, 665, biter- ly bent against the Academi- cks, 887, repugnant to com- mon sense and notions both in doctrine and manners. 889,	Superstitious folk compared with Atheists. 216
Sphongotheres what fish, and his nature. 799	903, they lead a voluptuous life. 886	Of Superstition. 214
Sports admitted at feasts. 535	Stones lying within the earth, more pliable and easie to be wrought. 682	what it is. 494
Spoiles of enemies suffered all Rome to run to decay. 706	Stone why it reboundeth not. 650	how it is bred. 214
Springs of hot water be wondered at. 829	Stone flakes whereof Nipery is made. 1094	Be Surety, and be sure to pay. 285
Sputti, who they be. 724	Storks do us some service. 637	Suretship dangerous. 136
Spunges of the sea and their pro- perties. 798	Storks do us some service. 637	Surfers how cured. 509
Stags weep salt tears, but wild Beares shed sweet drops. 611,	Storks why honoured by the The- salians. <i>ibid</i>	Surnames drowne other names. 973
why called in Greek xazoi, 796	Storkus a surname of Mars. 931	Swallows how they build. 786
their natural wit. 791	Statorius a famous Architect. 931	Swallows why to be kept out of our houses. 636, umbra k- ful

## The Table.

full and disloyal. 637. they will not be amended. ibid.	old Tables in old time, what they were. 642.	Telephus healed by that which wounded him. 52.
Swallowing of our virginals how it is performed. 837.	Table, the foundation of the house. 279.	Telephorus encouraged. 229.
Sweet and pleasant how they differ. 565.	a Table furnished with meats and drink commended. ibid.	Tektira, what it signifies. 865.
Swine ear the Egyptians land instead of a plough. 582. subject to leprose and the scurfe Plora. 583. love not to look up into the air. ibid.	Table talk of two sorts. 541.	Telcutia mother of Pedretus. 396.
Swine tame why they farrow oftener than the wild. 827.	Table discourses of learning highly commended. 598.	Tellus deemed by Solon happy. 79.
Sword-fight at Pisa in old time. 590.	Table talk ought to be used with discretion. 608.	Tellus the goddesse her Chapel. 973.
Sybarites how they invite women to a feast. 269.	Tacturnity. 159. commended. 44. of a Romane Servant. 164.	Tellula her nolle acts. 490.
Sycophants who they be. 115.	Talasia and Talolos. 704.	Tellusinus. 521.
A Sycophant first put to death at Athens. 779. compared with curious busi-bodies. 115.	Talassio a word used at weddings. 764.	Temenus. 739.
Cornelius Sylla Fortunes minion and adopted son. 517. he sur-named himself Felix. ibid.	Talassius an active Gentleman. 704.	Temon his stratagem. 732.
his file. ibid.	Tale of the Fox and Crane out of Egypt. 548.	Temperance what it is. 58. how it differeth from continency. 59.
Sylla Faelix his Apophthegme. 360. he advanced Pompeius and envied not his glory. envied by Marius. 160. he sur-named himself Epaphroditus. 251.	Tanagra. 736.	Temperance of brute beasts compared with that of men. 466.
Sylvanus. 748.	Tanaquil wife to Tarquinius Priscus. 522.	Temperance of brute beasts compared with that of men. 466.
Sylvia mother of Romulus and Remus. 86.	Tanaquilis or Tanaquil a wife Lady. 706.	Tenes and Tenedians. 736.
The Symbolical speech of Heraclitus. 86.	Tantalian riches. 246.	Tenes slain by Achilles. ibid.
Sympathy in man and wife commended. 262.	Taphosiris in Egypt. 1027.	L. Terentius redeemed by S. Sippo the Elder. 354. he wore a cap in the triumph of S. Sippo. ibid.
Symphonies in Musick five, with their proportions. 1104.	Tarpeia betrayed the Capitol. 745.	Teres his Apophthegme. 333.
Sympotica and Sympotica how they differ. 542.	Tarquin the proud deposed and banished 404. he warreth upon the Romans. ibid.	Tereus. 637.
Syncritimus what it is among the Candiors. 156.	Tarquinus Priscus. 517. his promise. 723.	Teribatus how devoted to the K. of Persia. 218.
Synoris murdered Sinnatus. Poysoned by Camma. 112. 1941.	Tartaria a false confessor. 1041.	no beast sacrificed to Terminus. 700.
Syllitia what they be, and by whom instituted. 384.	Tartarians desired to be devoured of dogs. 246.	Terminus a god. ibid.
	Tartarus for the damned. 437.	Terminalia. ibid.
	Tarantius. 705.	Ternary number. 601.
	Tarantius how it is performed. 686.	Ternary number, or three, called Justice. 1072.
	Tarantius and merry scoffs how to be used by a States-man. 299.	Terpander an ancient Musician. 1024.
	Taxis an Indian King, his conference with King Alexander. 340.	Terpichore the Muse, who loveth dancers. 564.
	Tear of wild Boars sweet. 827.	Tetractys the famous quaternary of the Pythagoreans, called the World. 1072.
	Stags and Hinds satirish. 827.	Thales his error. 659. the first author of Philosophy. 12. he travelled into Egypt. ibid. his opinion of God. 665.
	Technatis King of Egypt loved frugality. 1050.	Thales how he answered his mother, as touching marriage. 563. he found out the height of the Pyramids in Egypt. 269. admired of K. Amasis. ibid. accused unto him. ibid.
	Telamon killeth his brother Phocus. 748.	Thalia wherein employed. 655.
	Telechus his Apophthegme. 348.	Thamus pronounced, that the great Pan was dead. 1084.
	Telecrus his Apophthegme. 386.	Thargelia. 928.
	Telegonus the sonne of Ulysses by Circe. 750.	Thamyris the musician challenged the Muses in song. 1018.
	Telemachus his discretion. 175.	Thamyris
	Telemachus bewaileth that hee hath no brother. 152.	
	Telephus cured by his enemies spear. 198.	

## The Table.

Thamyris the musician how he suffered in his anger. 100.	Theodorus Atheos. 122.	1. quenched and slacked by sleep. 599.
Thaumas the father of the rain-bow. 678.	Theodorus neglected the sepulture of his body. 246.	Thirst not allayed by meat. 600.
Theacidas his Apophthegme. 377.	Theodorus being banished how he answered King Lytimachus. 229.	Tiberius declared heir apparent by Augustus. 363. his Apophthegme. 514.
Theagenes a vain-glorious champion. 500.	Theopompus first instituted the Ephori. 241. his Apophthegme. 348. 377.	Tides of the Sea how occasional. 681.
Theagenes died in the quarrel of his country. ibid.	Theophrastus twice saved his country. 920.	Tigranes King of Armenia his base mind. 1038.
Theano a chaste and sober matron. 263.	Theori. 741.	Tigers love not to hear drums and tibors. 266.
Theano, daughter of Scedanius. 777.	Thera and Therasia. 970.	Time, what it is. 839. 668. the instrument of Time. ibid. essence of Time. 668.
Theatrical sports banished. 212.	Theramenis his buskin. 313.	Timagenes jesteth too broad with Augustus Caesar. 90.
Theatre, whereof the word come. 1024.	Thesbe the wife of Alexander, put to death by his colleague in government. 412.	Timarchus murdered by Procles. 974.
Thebe the wife of Alexander, put to death by his colleague in government. 412.	Thesander, Captaine of the Argives. 742.	Timarchus his tale as touching the familiar spirit of Socrates. 993.
Theclamenes his Apophthegme. 1020.	Thesales and Achilles compared. 313.	how he died. 995.
Themistias his Apophthegme. 377.	Therycion his Apophthegme. 377.	Timber not to be fallen in the full moon. 557.
Themistocles his Apophthegme. 443. riotous in his youth. ibid.	Thesbeus banished from Athens. 280. 30. his temple there. 805.	Timoclea her vertuous deed. 414.
reclaimed by the prowess of Mil-tiades. ib. his stratagem to save Greece. ibid.	Thesbeus his pictures. 805.	Timoleon. 305. his speech of Smallach Coronets. 591. modest in praising himself. 296.
Themistocles in his government over-ruled much by his friends. 211.	Thesphoria. 1069.	Timon the brother of Plutarch. 154.
Themistocles and Aristides, laid by all private quarrels, for the good of the weale publick. 345.	Theos the general name of God. 157. whereof derived. 1067.	Timons Nurse of Cilicia. 641.
suspected for a traitor to the state of Greece. 198. his Apophthegme as touching his banishment. 224. he banisheth not to blazon his owne vertues before the Athenians. 250. 288.	A Theophrastus Apophthegme as touching Theophrastus. 625.	Timotheus a Poet and Musician, emboldened by Euripides. 328.
his words as touching Militiades. 198. hee lived richly in exile. 224.	Theophrastus how he became a new man. 457. his tale. ibid.	his vain-glory. 248. his speech of Chares a tall and personable man. 346. a fortunate Captain. ibid.
Themistocles for his wisdom sur-named Ulysses. 123. de-praved by Herodotus. ibid.	Thetis the mother of Achilles. 896. 50. she complaineth of Apollo. 17.	his Apophthegme. ibid.
his Apophthegme to his sonnes. 1031.	Thetis, of divers significations. 25.	Timotheus his Apophthegme of the Academy fore. 506.
Themis. 240.	Θη, the name of the night. 949.	Timotheus the musician rebuked by K. Archelaus for craving. 336.
Themotcles Captaine conspira-tour against Aristodemus. 417.	Thooa what Damon. 130.	Timoxena the daughter of Plutarch. 442.
Theodestes awanton person, how he salved is love. 615.	Thrace signifieth many times. 1058.	Tireias his ghost. 648.
Theodorus his saying of his schoolers. 1061.	Thucydides commended for his dilicidity of stile. 806.	Tisaphernes compounded with Agelaeus. 366. his treachery. ibid.
Theoclymenus furious. 685.	Thunder, how caused. 677.	Titans. 1083.
Theocritus the sophister punished for his intemperate speech. 11.	822. what things are good against it. 577.	Titus the emperor given over-much to bathing. 508.
Theodorus counterfeiting the breaking of a wheele. 19.	Thunder. 1061.	Tityus and Typhonnes. 966.
	Thyades, religious Priestesses. 1059.	Themachus his policy. 748.
	Thyath what sacrifices. 593.	Tongue naturally seated, against much prattle. 159.
	Thybiens, eye-biters. 584.	Tongue the best and worst peece of all the body. 43. 163.
	Thyrsophoria what feast. 584.	Tongue
	Thyrsus whereof it proceedeth. 599.	

## The Table.

Tongue one, earst twin.	44	Trojans settled in Italy.	
Tongue lavish hath undone many states.	161	Troilus the page of Heciodus, and a rock of that name.	283
how to frame the Tongue in making answers.	167, 168.	Trophæes of Sylla.	517
Tongue an hard matter to bride.	11	Trojan, whereof derived.	599
		Trophonades, what Demons.	965
Tongue lavish compared with other infirmities.	199	Trophonius and Agamedes rewarded with death.	426
Tone.	849	Trophonius Oracle and Cave.	993
Toredorix a Tetrarch of Galatia.	413.	Trojan.	446
executed by Mithridates.	414	Troyan what it signifieth.	604
Tortoises of the sea, their manner of breeding.	800	Truth a commendable quality in young folk.	11
Tortoises of the land cured by the herb Origan.	468	Truth but one, lyes be infinite.	641
Troyan, what it signifieth in vines and other things.	830	Truth and the knowledge thereof is incomparable.	1047
Tragedies condemned at feasts and banquets.	622	The plain or field of truth.	1084
Tragedy what manner of deceit.	16	Tullus Hostilius executeth Metellus Sueticius.	743
		The two twins in heaven full of destinies.	221
Tragedy what it was at first.	529	Tuney fish not ignorant of Astronomy.	798.
Tragedians compared with Captains.	808	skifful in Arithmetick and perspective.	ibid
Tranquillity of mind, 121, what is the fountain thereof.	122, 123	Turkian women their vertuous all.	401
Transmigration of souls into new bodies.	476	Tutelar god of the Romans not to be named or enquired after.	712
Trees bearing Pitch or Resin will not be grafted in the fentchion.	554.	Tutors and teachers of children how to be chosen.	4
they will bear no imp of another tree.	ibid	Twins how engendered.	690
they be unfruitful.	555	Tynnicus the Lacedæmon how hee took the death of his son.	389
Trees growing within the Sea.	961	Typhon, a Meteor.	678
Trees some shed their leaves, others not: and why.		Typhonii.	1070
Triangles of three sorts what they represent.	1081.	Typhon.	917
	562.	Typhon, what it signifieth.	1064
Triangle named Pallas.	1071	Typhon born, 1052, he conspired against Oflris, ibid, his outrages.	1057.
Tribunes at Rome why they wore no embroidered purple robes.	718	repressed and plagued by Isis.	ibid
counted no Magistrates.	ib.	Typhon of a ruddy colour.	1058.
Tribunate a popular function.	718	how portrayed in Hermopolis.	1064
a sanctuary to the commons.	ib.	Venus sports in day time not to be used.	567.
irrevocable and sacred.	ibid	at what time to be used.	566
Trimeres what musick.	1019	Venus why she is said to be borne of the sea.	597
Triodius or Trivia why the Moon is called.	960	Venus the goddess, on whether band wounded by Diomedes.	747
Trochilus and the Crocodile their society.	800	Venus Epitolaria.	522
Tritons sea gods why so called.	1071	Venus Epitimbia.	700
	875	Venus her image with a Tortoise.	1071
Trojan warre why caused by the gods.	398	Venus to be used with temperance.	508
Trojan dames their worthy deeds.	398	Venus how she came to the Spartans.	516
Trojans and Greeks compared together.	32	Venus enervate without Love.	933
		Veneralia a solemn feast.	709
		Ver-de-gris of what effect it is.	572
			362
		Persefauited by Cicero.	Verfet

## V

Valerius Poplicola.	708
Valerius Poplicola suspected for afflicting the Kingdom of Rome.	720
Valerius Torquatus.	743
exiled.	747
Valeria her vertuous all.	404
Valeria Tullulanaria enamoured of her own father.	747
Valerius killeth himself.	ibid
Valeria Luperca, destined to be sacrificed.	749.
she had a gift to cure the sick.	ibid
Valties within the Moon three.	965
Valiant men may be slaine by conards.	800
Variety acco deth to Nature.	535
Ventoies and cupping glasses, the reason of their attraction.	837
Venus image why placed hardly Mercury.	359
Venus Belesite.	927
Venus what attribute shee hath.	950
Venus why called Harma.	942
Venus and Love how they differ.	930
Venus image among the Elains upon a Tortoise shell.	263
Temple of Venus the murderess.	941
Of Venus the end.	277
Sophocles joyed, that by age hee was bereaved of the sports of Venus.	321
Venus how to be used.	510
Venus of Dexicreon.	740
Venus altogether to be abandoned.	567
Venus sports in day time not to be used.	567.
at what time to be used.	566
Venus why she is said to be borne of the sea.	597
Venus the goddess, on whether band wounded by Diomedes.	747
Venus Epitolaria.	522
Venus Epitimbia.	700
Venus her image with a Tortoise.	1071
Venus to be used with temperance.	508
Venus how she came to the Spartans.	516
Venus enervate without Love.	933
Veneralia a solemn feast.	709
Ver-de-gris of what effect it is.	572
	362
Persefauited by Cicero.	Verfet

## The Table.

Verfes cited to good purpose.	644
Verfes unfit, and unseasonably cited.	ibid
Virtue moral differing from contemplative.	54
Virtue a exercise of vertue, how they differ.	988
Virtue no more then one.	54
Virtue by what means accomplish'd.	2
Virtue excellet other gifts.	5
Virtues commendable in young men.	10
Virtue and vice of what power they be.	66
Temple of Vertue at Rome when built.	521
Virtue may be learned.	1517
progreffe from vice to Vertue.	202
proceeding in Vertue by degrees.	203
Virtue what it is.	54, 55
Virtue standeth upon two grounds.	13
Virtues Temples at Rome.	517
Virtue taken diversly among the Poets.	261
Virtue and Fortune at debate.	515
compared together.	516.
the advantage to plead against Fortune.	ibid
Vespasian his cruelty to Lady Empoia.	866
Vessels more slow in Winter upon rivers then upon the sea.	823
Vestall Nuns three, for incontinent life convicted and punished.	557
Vestall virgins committing fornication, why buried quick at Rome.	721
Vestall Nuns at Rome of three sorts.	328
Virtue in Greek whereof it is derived.	1059
variety of Viands better then simple feeding.	572
Viands of sea or land, which be better.	580
Viands simple, more wholesome then of divers sorts.	572
Viands rare and dainty.	503
Vice what it is.	56
Vice sufficient for infortunity.	245
Vice according to the Stoicks, profitable for the world.	891, 892.
Victor at games of prize how honoured in Lacedæmon.	553
Vinegar most contrary to fire.	565
Violet gay lands of what use.	561
Visible subtilties.	834
Ulysses highly commended for his silence.	162.
he was meritorious of his own deeds.	254.
he inhabited Italy.	731

## W

Waking out of sleep how occasioned.	693
Walls of Cities set out by the plow.	703
Walls of Rome held to be sacred, but not their City gates.	702.
Walking after supper.	511
Wanton words, as well as filthy deeds to be avoided.	30
War, knoweth no stint.	338
gentle civil War and friendly between the Megarians.	731
War the Father and Protector of the world.	1063
Water and fire compared together.	810
Water argued to be more profitable then fire.	ibid
Water once lent, becometh colder afterwards.	601, 816
Water is the primitive cold or element of cold.	817
Waters which be most unwholesome.	830
Waters why black in the bottom and white above.	831
Water how it runneth.	837
Water, galls resembling rainbows, or sundry Suns.	679
Water what kind of drink.	509
Water of the sea unwholesome.	541
Water how made more cold.	601
Water frish compared with sea water for scouring.	540
Water of lakes and pools in summer not potable.	634
Water the principle of all things.	583
569, the reasons proving the same.	ibid
Water how made.	720
Wealth alone not commendable.	38
Wedlock what conjunction it is.	263
Wedlock precepts.	259, 800.
new wedded Wives bidden to touch fire and water.	695
at Weddings why five torches or wax-lights are lighted.	695
at Wedding suppers many guests and why.	579
Wheat why honored among the Egyptians.	1070
Wheat home.	636
the We land pipe.	610
West wind swift.	830
Whales cast away for want of the guide, a fish.	800
Wheat	ibid

## The Table.

Wheat iouth cloy ground. 825	year first tasted or set abroad. 643	World one, 662, how Plato proves it. 1089, 663
three month Wheat. ibid	Wine sparity drunk by the Egyptian Kings. 1050	more Worlds then one. 1088
Wheat hot. 607	White cloaths purest and least costly. 703	World not incorruptible. 603
in Whiter they mourned in Argos. ibid	Wine is cold. 909, 564	Worlds infinite. ibid
Widows might be wedded upon a festival day. 725	Wine compared to God. 637	infinity of Worlds condemn'd. 1087, 1088
a Wife ought not to be aved by her husband. 261, she ought to be most sen by her husband. 262	Wine how it is caus'd. 679	World round. 662
a Wife ought to keep the house. 654	Wildom and Fortune produce like effects. 516	VVorlds in number five. 1086
of a little Wife an Apophthegme. 147	the Wise man of the Stoicks described. 863	VVorld why call'd a zoë. 670
the new Wife decketh with woole the door of her husband's house. 704	Wildom what it is. 191, to be preferred before all worldly things. 1048	VVorlds whether one or infinite. ibid
a Wife must frame her selfe to her husband. 261	Wool more pliable if it be gently handled. 540	VVorlds not one nor five, but 183. 1085
Wives in Egypt wear no shoes. how a Wife ought to carry her selfe toward her husband. 261, 264	Wolves whelp, all in twelve days. 1031	VVorld and Whole, not both one. 670
Winde eggs. 43, 44	Women not soon drunk, and the reason thereof. 563, their temperature moist. ibid	VVorld and the parts thereof compared to a mans body. 879
Winde what they be. 679	Women are hotter then men. 561	VVorld what it is. 5, 0
Wine liberally taken what effects it worketh. 160	one Womans body put to ten dead mens bodies in a funeral fire. 564	VVorlds in number five, how proved. 1089
Wine how it killeth the wine. 800	that Women are colder then men. ibid	VVorld what form or figure it hath. 670
Wine how hot, and how it is cold. 565, 910	Women why they conceive not at all times. 160	VVorld whether it be animate or endued with soul. ibid
Wine how students should use. 510	a Woman beareth five children at the most at one birth. 695	VVorlds five, which they be. 1105
Wine the best drink. ibid	Women why they wear white at funerals in Rome. 702	1, whether it be corruptible or eternal. 670
Wine what effects it worketh. 558, 626, it discovereth the secrets of the heart. 558	a pretty tale of a talkative Woman. 163	VVorld whereof it is nourished. ibid
Wine a singular medicine. 561	Women can keep no secret counsell. 164	VVorlds five, proportionate to the five senses. 1105
that Wine is cold. 565	Women are best adorned with vertue and literature. 267	VVorlds fabrick at which element it began. 671
Wine new. See Must.	Womens vertuous deeds. 396	VVorlds fabrick in what order it was framed. ibid
Wine whether it should ranne through a strainer before it be drunk. 604	Women publicly praised at Rome. ibid	VVorld why it copeth or bendeth. ibid
Wine called at the first Trōē by the name of Lees. 603	Women of Salmatica their vertuous all. 398	the VVorld to come both joyes for good men. 496
Wine best, in the midst of the v f. 612	a Woman of Galatias love to Toredorix. 414	Worlds six, right and left. 672
Wine why poured forth at Rome before the Temple of Venus. 708	Wooden dog among the Locrians. 732	the Worlds conflagration. 1081
Wine hurt with wind and air. 612	Wood-pecker a bird why so much esteemed at Rome. 701	World created by God. 844
Wine the foundation of government and counsel in Greece. 625	Wood-pecker fed Romulus and Remus. 791, consecrated to Mars wherefore. ibid	the Worlds general conflagration held by the Stoicks. 898
Wine in Greck, why called in G. 625	Words filthy are to be avoided by child en. 9	Worship of brute beasts excus'd. 1080
Wine and the vine came of Giants blood spild upon the ground. 1050	a Word, occasion of much mischief. 200	Wrathfulnesse what it is. 98
Wine is talkative. 626	Words compared with deeds. 331	Wrestling whether it were the most ancient Gymnick exercise. 551
Wine worketh boldnesse and confidence. ibid	Words the lightest things in the world. 528, 162	
Wine causeth a self conceit and opinion of wisdom. ibid	Words have wings. 163	
Wine new at what time of the	World, of what principles it was composed. 1062	
	World how it was made. 66	
	in the World four regiments. 994	

## The Table.

verment of the Kingdom. 920	Young men are to be governed with greater care then children. 110	ments. 56
Xenocrite her vertuous deed. 416	what vices they be subject. 13	Zeno the disciple of Parmenides undertook to kill the tyrant Demytus. 121
she conspireth the death of Aristodemus the Tyrant. ibid	Tou g men how they sleep at Lacedamon. 391, how they demeaned themselves to their elders at Lacedamon. 392	Zeno bit off his own tongue. 962
Xenophanes his saying of the Egyptian Otiris. 221	Young ladies permitted to steal at Lacedamon. 393	contrary to himselfe. 945
Xenophon reporteth his own acts. 306, 221	Young folk drunk resemble old men. 563	Zeno the Citiian honoured by Antigonus the younger. 343
Xenophon the Philosopher beloved of King Agefilas. 368, how he took the death of his son. 436	Touh ought not to be over-bold, nor ye to fear a ful. 6, how they should read the books of Sages. 7	Zeno his valorous resolution. 921
Xenophon called Nycterus. 763	Tout. 110 obey. 322	his opinion as touching the principles of all things. 894, 662
he penmeth the History of himself. 805	Touth brought up hardly at Lacedamon. 392	his answer to the Persian Embassadour as touching taciturnity. 160
Xerxes menaceth Athos. 100, he died for sorrow that his own sons were at deadly discord. 145	Touth what it signifieth in composition. 595	Zephiodorus a minion of Epaminondas. 935
Xerxes and Ariamenes brethren how they strove for the Crown. 154, how they were agreed. ibid	Touth what it signifieth. 623	Zephyrus, what wind. 568
Xerxes his policy to keep down rebellion and mutinous subjects. 332	Touth what it signifieth. 623	646
his Apophthegmes. ibid, his clemency unto two Lacedamonians. 390	Touth what it signifieth. 623	Zous bath many significations. 25
Xerxes his barbarous cruelty unto rich Pythes. 417	Touth what it signifieth. 623	Zeuxidamus his Apophthegmes. 377
Xuthus. 733	Touth what it signifieth. 623	Zodiack Circle. 662, how it poseth. 671, the obliquity thereof who first observed. 671
		Zoilus a Priest died of a little ulcer. 736
		Zoilus taxeth Homer for incongruity. 591
		Zones of the heaven. 672
		Zones. 4, 684
		Zona Torrida. 680
		Zopodotes, an attribute given at Pittacus. 635
		Zopodotes. 635
		Zoroaltres never fed of any thing but of Milk. 572
		Zoroaltres very ancient. 1063
		Zoëteiv 3 kégaiv, what it signifieth in Homer. 592

## Y

Yeare why it is called the age of man. 1081, of Jupiter. 676, of the Sun, ibid, of Mercury and Venus. ibid, of the Moon, ibid the Year or revolution of Saturn. 676

the great Year. 717

Years dedicated to Jupiter. 561

Yeugh tree shade him hurtful. 561

## Z

Aleucus his laws highly reputed among the Locrians. 251

Zarates the master of Pythagoras. 843

Zeipetus King of the Euthynians. 739

Zō, that is to say, To live. 811

Zeno his opinion of vertue. 54, he lost all that he had. 122

Zeno traineth his scholars to the hearing of the musick of instruments.

## FINIS.